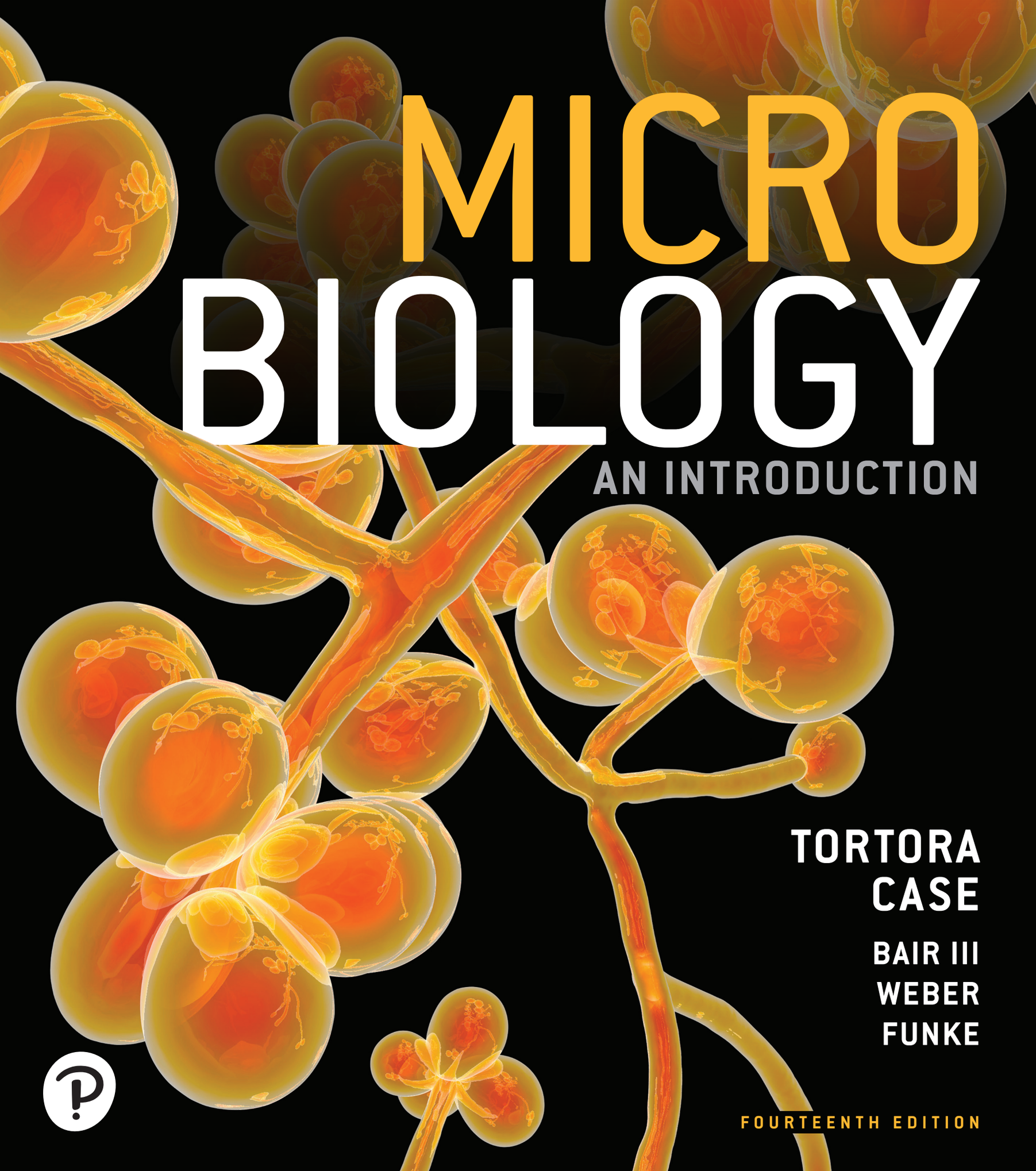

MICRO
BIOLOGY
AN INTRODUCTION
TORTORA
CASE
BAIR III
WEBER
FUNKE
FOURTEENTH EDITION

This page intentionally left blank

MICRO BIOLOGY

AN INTRODUCTION

FOURTEENTH EDITION

Gerard J. Tortora
BERGEN COMMUNITY COLLEGE

Christine L. Case
SKYLINE COLLEGE

Warner B. Bair III
LONE STAR COLLEGE-CYFAIR

Derek Weber
RARITAN VALLEY COMMUNITY COLLEGE

Berdell R. Funke
NORTH DAKOTA STATE UNIVERSITY

Content Development: Matt Walker, Laura Bonnazoli
Content Management: Lara Braun
Content Production: Mike Early, Laura Perry, Tod Regan, Ziki Dekel, Lucinda Bingham, Mireille Pfeffer, Straive, Lachina Creative
Product Management: Serina Beauplarnt, Jennifer McGill Walker
Product Marketing: Tim Galligan, Courtney Davis
Rights and Permissions: Ben Ferrini; Straive, Matt Perry

Please contact https://support.pearson.com/getsupport/s/ with any queries on this content

Cover Image by Kateryna Kon/Shutterstock

Copyright © 2023, 2019, by Pearson Education, Inc. or its affiliates, 221 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030. All Rights Reserved. Manufactured in the United States of America. This publication is protected by copyright, and permission should be obtained from the publisher prior to any prohibited reproduction, storage in a retrieval system, or transmission in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise. For information regarding permissions, request forms, and the appropriate contacts within the Pearson Education Global Rights and Permissions department, please visit www.pearsoned.com/permissions/.

Acknowledgments of third-party content appear on the appropriate page within the text on page C-1, which constitutes an extension of this copyright page.

PEARSON are exclusive trademarks owned by Pearson Education, Inc. or its affiliates in the U.S. and/or other countries.

Unless otherwise indicated herein, any third-party trademarks, logos, or icons that may appear in this work are the property of their respective owners, and any references to third-party trademarks, logos, icons, or other trade dress are for demonstrative or descriptive purposes only. Such references are not intended to imply any sponsorship, endorsement, authorization, or promotion of Pearson's products by the owners of such marks, or any relationship between the owner and Pearson Education, Inc., or its affiliates, authors, licensees, or distributors.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Cataloging-in-Publication Data is available on file at the Library of Congress.

ScoutAutomatedPrintCode

Pearson

Rental
ISBN-10: 0137941617
ISBN-13: 9780137941612

Pearson's Commitment to Diversity, Equity, and Inclusion

Pearson is dedicated to creating bias-free content that reflects the diversity, depth, and breadth of all learners' lived experiences.

We embrace the many dimensions of diversity, including but not limited to race, ethnicity, gender, sex, sexual orientation, socioeconomic status, ability, age, and religious or political beliefs.

Education is a powerful force for equity and change in our world. It has the potential to deliver opportunities that improve lives and enable economic mobility. As we work with authors to create content for every product and service, we acknowledge our responsibility to demonstrate inclusivity and incorporate diverse scholarship so that everyone can achieve their potential through learning. As the world's leading learning company, we have a duty to help drive change and live up to our purpose to help more people create a better life for themselves and to create a better world.

Our ambition is to purposefully contribute to a world where:

- Everyone has an equitable and lifelong opportunity to succeed through learning.
- Our educational content accurately reflects the histories and lived experiences of the learners we serve.
- Our educational products and services are inclusive and represent the rich diversity of learners.
- Our educational content prompts deeper discussions with students and motivates them to expand their own learning (and worldview).

Accessibility

We are also committed to providing products that are fully accessible to all learners. As per Pearson's guidelines for accessible educational Web media, we test and retest the capabilities of our products against the highest standards for every release, following the WCAG guidelines in developing new products for copyright year 2022 and beyond.

You can learn more about Pearson's commitment to accessibility at **https://www.pearson.com/us/accessibility.html**

Contact Us

While we work hard to present unbiased, fully accessible content, we want to hear from you about any concerns or needs with this Pearson product so that we can investigate and address them.

Please contact us with concerns about any potential bias at **https://www.pearson.com/report-bias.html**

For accessibility-related issues, such as using assistive technology with Pearson products, alternative text requests, or accessibility documentation, email the Pearson Disability Support team at **disability.support@pearson.com**

Pearson

About the Authors

Gerard J. Tortora (Chapters 1–5 and 14–16) Jerry Tortora is professor of biology and former biology coordinator at Bergen Community College in Paramus, New Jersey. He received his bachelor's degree in biology from Fairleigh Dickinson University and his master's degree in science education from Montclair State College. He has been a member of many professional organizations, including the American Society of Microbiology (ASM), the Human Anatomy and Physiology Society (HAPS), the American Association for the Advancement of Science (AAAS), the National Education Association (NEA), and the Metropolitan Association of College and University Biologists (MACUB).

Above all, Jerry is devoted to his students and their aspirations. In recognition of this commitment, MACUB presented Jerry with the organization's 1992 President's Memorial Award. In 1995, he was selected as one of the finest faculty scholars of Bergen Community College and was named Distinguished Faculty Scholar. In 1996, he received a National Institute for Staff and Organizational Development (NISOD) excellence award from the University of Texas and was selected to represent Bergen Community College in a campaign to increase awareness of the contributions of community colleges to higher education.

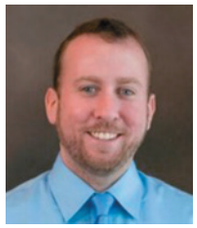
Jerry is the author of several best-selling science textbooks and laboratory manuals, a calling that often requires an additional 40 hours per week beyond his full-time teaching responsibilities. Nevertheless, he still makes time for four or five weekly aerobic workouts. He also enjoys attending opera performances at the Metropolitan Opera House, Broadway plays, and concerts. He spends his quiet time at his beach home on the New Jersey Shore.

To all my children, the most important gift I have: Lynne, Gerard Jr., Kenneth, Anthony, and Drew, whose love and support have been such an important part of my personal life and professional career.

Christine L. Case (Chapters 6–13 and 20–28) Chris Case taught microbiology at Skyline College in San Bruno, California for 51 years. She received her Ed.D. in curriculum and instruction from Nova Southeastern University and her M.A. in microbiology from San Francisco State University. She was Director for the Society for Industrial Microbiology and is an active member of the ASM. She received the ASM and California Hayward outstanding educator awards. Chris received the SACNAS Distinguished Community College Mentor Award for her commitment to her students, several of whom have presented at undergraduate research conferences and won awards. Chris contributes regularly to the professional literature, develops innovative educational methodologies, and maintains a personal and professional commitment to conservation and the importance of science in society. Chris is also an avid photographer, and many of her photographs appear in this book.

I owe my deepest gratitude to Don Biederman and our three children, Daniel, Jonathan, and Andrea, for their unconditional love and unwavering support.

Warner B. Bair III (In-the-Clinic videos, eText Media Integration, eText assessments, Dynamic Study Modules) Warner Bair is a professor of biology at Lone Star College–CyFair in Cypress, Texas. He has a bachelor of science in general biology and a Ph.D. in cancer biology, both from the University of Arizona. He has over 10 years of higher education teaching experience, teaching both general biology and microbiology classes. Warner is the recipient of multiple educational awards, including the National Institute for Staff and Organizational Development (NISOD) excellence award from the University of Texas and the League for Innovation in the Community College John and Suanne Roueche Excellence Award. Warner has previously authored Interactive Microbiology® videos and activities for the Mastering Microbiology website and is a member of the American Society for Microbiology (ASM). He is also a certified Instructional Skill Workshop (ISW) facilitator, where he assists other professors in the development of engaging and active classroom instruction. When not working, Warner enjoys outdoor activities and travel. Warner would like to thank his wife, Meaghan, and daughter, Aisling, for their support and understanding of the many late nights and long weekends he spends pursuing his writing.



Derek Weber (In-the-Clinic videos, eText Media Integration, eText assessments, Dynamic Study Modules) Derek Weber is a professor of biology and microbiology at Raritan Valley Community College in Somerville, New Jersey. He received his B.S. in chemistry from Moravian College and his Ph.D. in biomolecular chemistry from the University of Wisconsin–Madison. His current scholarly work focuses on the use of instructional technology in a flipped classroom to create a more active and engaging learning environment. Derek has received multiple awards for these efforts, including the Award for Innovative Excellence in Teaching, Learning and Technology at the International Teaching and Learning Conference. As part of his commitment to foster learning communities, Derek shares his work at state and national conferences and is a regular attendee at the annual American Society for Microbiology Conference for Undergraduate Educators (ASMCUE). He has previously authored MicroBooster Video Tutorials, available in MasteringMicrobiology, which remediate students on basic concepts in biology and chemistry as they apply to microbiology. Derek is grateful to his wife Lara and his children Andrew, James, and Lilly for their unconditional love and support.

Berdell R. Funke (1926–2020) Bert Funke received his Ph.D., M.S., and B.S. in microbiology from Kansas State University. He spent his professional years as a professor of microbiology at North Dakota State University. He taught introductory microbiology, including laboratory sections, general microbiology, food microbiology, soil microbiology, clinical parasitology, and pathogenic microbiology. As a research scientist in the Experiment Station at North Dakota State, he published numerous papers in soil microbiology and food microbiology. In December 2019 Bert received an honorary doctorate from NDSU. The Bison statue he was given at the awards ceremony was a source of great pride for him. His name will live on at NDSU through the Berdell Funke Microbiology Scholarship and the Dr. Berdell Funke Medal of Excellence in Microbiology, which is presented each year to an outstanding graduate. We thank Bert and his family for his contributions over the past thirty years to the first edition of Microbiology, An Introduction, and its subsequent editions.

Preface

Since the publication of the first edition nearly 30 years ago, well over 1 million students have used *Microbiology: An Introduction* at colleges and universities around the world, making it the leading microbiology textbook for non-majors. The fourteenth edition continues to be a comprehensive beginning text, assuming no previous study of biology or chemistry. The text is appropriate for students in a wide variety of programs, including the allied health sciences, biological sciences, environmental science, animal science, forestry, agriculture, nutrition science, and the liberal arts.

The fourteenth edition has retained the features that have made this book so popular:

- **An appropriate balance between microbiological fundamentals and applications, and between medical applications and other applied areas of microbiology.** Basic microbiological principles are given greater emphasis, and health-related applications are featured.
- **Straightforward presentation of complex topics.** Each section of the text is written with the student in mind.
- **Clear, accurate, and pedagogically effective illustrations and photos.** Step-by-step diagrams that closely coordinate with narrative descriptions aid student comprehension of concepts.
- **Flexible organization.** We have organized the book in what we think is a useful fashion while recognizing that the material might be effectively presented in other sequences. For instructors who wish to use a different order, we have made each chapter as independent as possible and have included numerous cross-references. The Instructor's Guide provides detailed guidelines for organizing the material in several other ways.
- **Clear presentation of data regarding disease incidence.** Graphs and other disease statistics include the most current data available.
- **Big Picture core topic features.** These two-page spreads focus on the most challenging topics for students to master: metabolism (Chapter 5), genetics (Chapter 8), and immunology (Chapter 16). Each spread breaks down these important concepts into manageable steps and gives students a clear learning framework for the related chapters. Each refers the student to a related MicroFlix video accessible through MasteringMicrobiology.
- **Big Picture public health features.** These two-page spreads appear within each chapter in Part Four, Microorganisms and Human Disease (Chapters 21–26), as well as Chapters 18 (Practical Applications of Immunology), 19 (Disorders of the Immune System), and 27 (Environmental Microbiology). Each spread focuses on one significant public health aspect of microbiology.
- **ASM guidelines.** The American Society for Microbiology has released six underlying concepts and 27 related topics to provide a framework for key microbiological topics deemed to be of lasting importance beyond the classroom. The thirteenth edition explains the themes and competencies at the beginning of the book and incorporates callouts when chapter content matches one of these 27 topics. Doing so addresses two key challenges: it helps students and instructors focus on the enduring principles of the course, and it provides another pedagogical tool for instructors to assess students' understanding and encourage critical thinking.
- **Cutting-edge media integration.** MasteringMicrobiology (www.masteringmicrobiology.com) provides unprecedented, cutting-edge assessment resources for instructors as well as self-study tools for students. Big Picture Coaching Activities are paired with the book's Core Topics and Clinical Features. Interactive Microbiology is a dynamic suite of interactive tutorials and animations that teach key concepts in microbiology; and MicroBoosters are brief video tutorials that cover key concepts that some students may need to review or relearn.

New to the Fourteenth Edition

The fourteenth edition focuses on big-picture concepts and themes in microbiology, encouraging students to visualize and synthesize more difficult topics such as microbial metabolism, immunology, and microbial genetics.

The fourteenth edition meets all students at their respective levels of skill and understanding while addressing the biggest challenges that instructors face. Updates to the thirteenth edition enhance the book's consistent pedagogy and clear explanations. Some of the highlights follow.

- **Exploring the Microbiome.** Each chapter has a box featuring an aspect of microbiome study related to the chapter. Most feature the human microbiome. The boxes are designed to show the importance of microorganisms in health, their importance to life on Earth, and how research on the microbiome is being done.
- **In the Clinic videos accompanying each chapter opener.** In the Clinic scenarios that appear at the start of every chapter include critical-thinking questions that encourage students to think as health care professionals would in various clinical scenarios and spark student interest in the forthcoming chapter content. For the thirteenth edition, videos have been produced for the In the Clinic features for Chapters 1 through 20 and are accessible through Mastering Microbiology.

- Updated nomenclature and taxonomy according to *Bergey's Manual of Systematics of Archaea and Bacteria* and International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses.
- **Big Picture features.** Big Picture features include Vaccine-Preventable Diseases (Chapter 18), Vertical Transmission: Mother to Child (Chapter 22), and Global warming (Chapter 27).
- **Reworked immunology coverage in Chapters 17, 18, and 19.** New art and more straightforward discussions make this challenging and critical material easier for students to understand and retain.
- **Updated terminology.** We have adopted the official anatomical terms (per *Termiologies Anatomica*) and cytological and histological terms (per *Terminologia Histologia*).

Chapter-by-Chapter Revisions International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses:

Data in text, tables, and figures have been updated. Other key changes to each chapter are summarized below.

Chapter 1

- Contributions to the control of disease before Semelweis, Lister, and Pasteur are introduced.
- The Emerging Infectious Diseases section has been updated to include coronaviruses and poxviruses.
- The relevance and importance of microbiology is emphasized in the Third Golden Age of Microbiology.

Chapter 2

- Chemical formulae for functional groups are included.
- Alpha- and beta-amino acids are defined.

Chapter 3

- Diagrams of paths of light through various microscopes are revised.

Chapter 4

- The descriptions of prokaryotic cell inclusions have been revised.

Chapter 5

- The discussion of ATP yield during prokaryotic aerobic respiration is revised.
- The clinical focus box on nontuberculous mycobacteria is updated.
- Included a brief discussion of electronegativity sequences in electron transport chain.

Chapter 6

- Discussions of chemically defined media and biofilms are revised.
- Added a new photo of the catalase test.

Chapter 7

- A new Clinical Focus box is included.
- Discussions of chloramines and silver are updated.
- A new Exploring the Microbiome feature discusses the effect of increased disinfection and sanitization during the COVID-19 pandemic.

Chapter 8

- The function of methylase is included.
- circRNA is discussed.
- The functions of miRNA are updated.

Chapter 9

- Forensic microbiology is revised.
- The list of agricultural products is updated.

Chapter 10

- Next generation sequencing is included.

Chapter 11

- Classification and nomenclature are updated to *Bergey's Manual of Systematics of Archaea and Bacteria*.

Chapter 12

- The taxonomy of eugleoids and dinoflagellates is updated.
- Updated classification of Mucoromycota.

Chapter 13

- Virus names adopted by the International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses are used
- Coronoviridae are discussed.

Chapter 14

- A discussion on severity or duration of disease is included
- Reproductive number (R_0) is explained.

Chapter 15

- Discussions of genotoxins and membrane-disrupting toxins are revised.
- The discussion of pathological properties of fungi and algae is revised.

Chapter 16

- The discussion of resting macrophages is revised.
- Mast cell is defined.

Chapter 17

- This chapter is heavily revised to update the science of immunology and include discussion of SARS-CoV-2 and COVID-19 where appropriate.

Chapter 18

- Discussions of DNA vaccines and recombinant vaccines are revised.
- mRNA vaccines are discussed and a new figure is included.
- The Clinical Focus box is updated.

Chapter 19

- The chapter is revised.
- The tissue tying figure has been redrawn.

Chapter 20

- A new figure showing how to determine MIC and MBC is included.
- Antiviral drugs include COVID-19 chemotherapy.
- A new class of antibiotics, *acyldepsipeptide*, is included.
- In the Clinical Focus box, data on antibiotics in animal feed have been updated.

Chapter 21

- The monkeypox discussion is updated.
- All data are updated.

Chapter 22

- A new figure shows the incidence of infant and foodborne botulism.
- The discussion of prion-caused diseases has been revised.
- All data are updated.

Chapter 23

- *Candida auris* sepsis is included.
- All data are updated.

Chapter 24

- All data, laboratory tests, and drug treatments have been updated.
- *Alphacoronavirus* and *Betacoronavirus* strains are updated.
- A discussion of COVID-19 is included.

Chapter 25

- All data, laboratory tests, and drug treatments are updated.
- Paratyphoid fever in included.

Chapter 26

- All data, laboratory tests, and drug treatments have been updated.
- A new figure shows use of Gram staining to diagnose candidiasis.

Chapter 27

- Microbial recycling of e-waste is discussed.

Chapter 28

- A discussion of single-cell protein and meat substitutes has been added.

Acknowledgments

In preparing this textbook, we have benefited from the guidance and advice of a large number of microbiology instructors across the country. These reviewers have provided constructive criticism and valuable suggestions at various stages of the revision. We gratefully acknowledge our debt to these individuals. Special thanks to retired epidemiologist Joel A. Harrison, Ph.D., M.P.H. for his thorough review and editorial suggestions.

Contributor

Special thanks to Mary Niles, *University of San Francisco*, for her work on Chapters 17, 18, and 19.

Reviewers

Barbara Zingg, *Las Positas College*
Camille Paxton, *Asheville-Buncombe Technical Community College*
Cana Ross, *Lee College*
Cathy Hunt, *KCTCS*
Cristy Tower-Gilchrist, *Emory University*
Emily Jackson, *University of Nevada, Reno*
Gabriela Gorelik, *University of South Alabama*
Greg Abel, *Texas State University*
Ines Rauschenbach, *Rutgers University*
Jinghe Mao, *Tougaloo College*
Kim Van Vliet, *St. John River State College*
Lahn Bloodworth, *Florida State College, Jacksonville*
Marissa Stanton, *University of Nebraska-Lincoln*
Michael Leonardo, *Coe College*
Michelle LaPorte, *St. Louis Community College*
Paul Himes, *University of Louisville*
Sheela Huddle, *Harrisburg Area Community College*
Shima Chaudhary, *South Texas College*
Stephanie Burks, *Hinds Community College*
Susan Wang, *Case Western University*
Suzanne Long, *Monroe Community College*

We also thank the staff at Pearson Education for their dedication to excellence. Commercial Product Manager Jennifer McGill Walker and Content Manager Lara Braun helped us understand the needs of the market and how to meet them. Shagun Verma helped coordinate the reviews for the "In the Clinic" video tutors. Serina Beauparlant was a fabulous partner internally and externally to ensure that we were successful with the 14th edition. And many thanks to our amazing develop editor, Laura Bonazzoli.

Laura Perry managed the book from beginning to end. She expertly guided the team through the editorial phase, and then oversaw the production team and process. Mary Tindle expertly guided the text through the production process and managed the day-to-day workflow. The talented staff at Lachina gracefully managed the high volume and complex updates of our art and photo program. The skilled team at Straive moved this book through the composition process.

Courtney Davis, Tim Galligan, Yez Alayan, Kelly Galli, Adam Goldstein, Tim Wilson, Rosemary Morton, Jennifer Key and the entire Pearson sales force did a stellar job presenting this book to instructors and students and ensuring its unwavering status as the best-selling microbiology textbook. We would like to acknowledge our spouses and families, who have provided invaluable support throughout the writing process.

Finally, we have an enduring appreciation for our students, whose comments and suggestions provide insight and remind us of their needs. This text is for them.

Gerard J. Tortora
Warner Bair, III
Christine Case
Derek Weber

Brief Contents

PART ONE Fundamentals of Microbiology

1 The Microbial World and You 1
2 Chemical Principles 24
3 Observing Microorganisms Through a Microscope 51
4 Functional Anatomy of Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Cells 72
5 Microbial Metabolism 107
6 Microbial Growth 151
7 The Control of Microbial Growth 179
8 Microbial Genetics 205
9 Biotechnology and DNA Technology 243

PART TWO A Survey of the Microbial World

10 Classification of Microorganisms 270
11 The Prokaryotes: Domains Bacteria and Archaea 296
12 The Eukaryotes: Fungi, Algae, Protozoa, and Helminths 325
13 Viruses, Viroids, and Prions 363

PART THREE Interaction between Microbe and Host

14 Principles of Disease and Epidemiology 395
15 Microbial Mechanisms of Pathogenicity 427
16 Innate Immunity: Nonspecific Defenses of the Host 450
17 Adaptive Immunity: Specific Defenses of the Host 480
18 Practical Applications of Immunology 503
19 Disorders Associated with the Immune System 528
20 Antimicrobial Drugs 560

PART FOUR Microorganisms and Human Disease

21 Microbial Diseases of the Skin and Eyes 592
22 Microbial Diseases of the Nervous System 622
23 Microbial Diseases of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems 654
24 Microbial Diseases of the Respiratory System 693
25 Microbial Diseases of the Digestive System 728
26 Microbial Diseases of the Urinary and Genital Systems 768

PART FIVE Environmental and Applied Microbiology

27 Environmental Microbiology 794
28 Applied and Industrial Microbiology 819

All chapter content is tagged to ASM Curriculum Guidelines for Undergraduate Microbiology

Exploring the Microbiome

1 How Does Your Microbiome Grow? 3
2 Feed Our Intestinal Bacteria, Feed Ourselves: A Tale of Two Starches 37
3 Obtaining a More Accurate Picture of Our Microbiota 67
4 Eukaryotes Are Microbiota, Too 94
5 Do Artificial Sweeteners (and the Intestinal Microbiota That Love Them) Promote Diabetes? 132
6 Circadian Rhythms and Microbiota Growth Cycles 169
7 Increased Use of Disinfectants and Sanitizers: Doing More Harm Than Good? 192
8 Horizontal Gene Transfer and the Unintended Consequences of Antibiotic Usage 231
9 Crime Scene Investigation and Your Microbiome 262
10 Techniques for Identifying Members of Your Microbiome 291
11 Microbiome in Space 321
12 The Mycobiome 337
13 The Human Virome 366
14 Connections between Birth, Microbiome, and Other Health Conditions 397
15 Skin Microbiota Interactions and the Making of MRSA 431
16 The Microbiome's Shaping of Innate Immunity 457
17 The Relationship between Your Immune Cells and Skin Microbiota 495
18 Diversity May Enhance Response to Oral Vaccines 509
19 The Link between Blood Type and Composition of the Intestinal Microbiome 536
20 Looking to the Microbiome for the Next Great Antibiotic 587
21 Normal Skin Microbiota and Our Immune System: Allies in "Skin Wars" 596
22 Microbes Impacting the CNS 647
23 Is Blood Sterile? 657
24 Discovering the Microbiome of the Lungs 696
25 Sorting Out Good Neighbors from Bad in the Digestive Canal 730
26 Resident Microbes of the Urinary System 771
27 Resident Microbes of Earth's Most Extreme Environments 802
28 Using Bacteria to Stop the Spread of Zika Virus 834

Contents

PART ONE Fundamentals of Microbiology

1 The Microbial World and You 1

Microbes in Our Lives 2
Roles of Microbes 2 • The Microbiome 2

Naming and Classifying Microorganisms 4
Nomenclature 4 • Types of Microorganisms 4 • Classification of Microorganisms 6

A Brief History of Microbiology 6
The First Observations 6 • The Debate over Spontaneous Generation 7 • The Theory of Biogenesis 8 • The First Golden Age of Microbiology 9 • The Second Golden Age of Microbiology 11 • The Third Golden Age of Microbiology 14

Microbes and Human Welfare 14
Recycling Vital Elements 15 • Sewage Treatment: Using Microbes to Recycle Water 15 • Bioremediation: Using Microbes to Clean Up Pollutants 15 • Insect Pest Control by Microorganisms 15 • Biotechnology and Recombinant DNA Technology 15

Microbes and Human Disease 16
Biofilms 16 • Infectious Diseases 17 • Emerging Infectious Diseases 17

Study Outline 20 • Study Questions 21

2 Chemical Principles 24

The Structure of Atoms 25
Chemical Elements 25 • Electronic Configurations 26

How Atoms Form Molecules: Chemical Bonds 27
Ionic Bonds 27 • Covalent Bonds 27 • Hydrogen Bonds 28 • Molecular Mass and Moles 29

Chemical Reactions 30
Energy in Chemical Reactions 30 • Synthesis Reactions 30 • Decomposition Reactions 30 • Exchange Reactions 30 • The Reversibility of Chemical Reactions 30

Inorganic Compounds 31
Water 31 • Acids, Bases, and Salts 32 • Acid–Base Balance: The Concept of pH 32

Organic Compounds 33
Structure and Chemistry 34 • Carbohydrates 35 • Lipids 36 • Proteins 40 • Nucleic Acids 44 • Adenosine Triphosphate (ATP) 46

Study Outline 47 • Study Questions 49

3 Observing Microorganisms Through a Microscope 51

Units of Measurement 52

Microscopy: The Instruments 52
Light Microscopy 52 • Two-Photon Microscopy 58 • Super-Resolution Light Microscopy 58 • Scanning Acoustic Microscopy 59 • Electron Microscopy 59 • Scanned-Probe Microscopy 61

Preparation of Specimens for Light Microscopy 61
Preparing Smears for Staining 64 • Simple Stains 65 • Differential Stains 65 • Special Stains 66

Study Outline 69 • Study Questions 70

4 Functional Anatomy of Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Cells 72

Comparing Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Cells: An Overview 73

The Size, Shape, and Arrangement of Bacterial Cells 73

Structures External to the Cell Wall 75
Glycocalyx 75 • Flagella and Archaella 77 • Axial Filaments 79 • Fimbriae and Pili 79

The Cell Wall 80
Composition and Characteristics 80 • Cell Walls and the Gram Stain Mechanism 83 • Atypical Cell Walls 83 • Damage to the Cell Wall 83

Structures Internal to the Cell Wall 85
The Plasma (Cytoplasmic) Membrane 85 • The Movement of Materials across Membranes 87 • Cytoplasm 90 • The Nucleoid 90 • Ribosomes 90 • Inclusions 91 • Endospores 92

Flagella and Cilia 96

The Cell Wall and Glycocalyx 96

The Plasma (Cytoplasmic) Membrane 97

Cytoplasm 98

Ribosomes 98

Organelles 98
The Nucleus 98 • Endoplasmic Reticulum 99 • Golgi Complex 100 • Lysosomes 100 • Vacuoles 100 • Mitochondria 101 • Chloroplasts 101 • Peroxisomes 101 • Centrosome 102

The Evolution of Eukaryotes 102

Study Outline 103 • Study Questions 105

5 Microbial Metabolism 107

Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions 110

Enzymes 111

Collision Theory 111 • Enzymes and Chemical Reactions 111 • Enzyme Specificity and Efficiency 112 • Naming Enzymes 113 • Enzyme Components 113 • Factors Influencing Enzymatic Activity 114 • Feedback Inhibition 116 • Ribozymes 116

Energy Production 117

Oxidation-Reduction Reactions 117 • The Generation of ATP 118 • Metabolic Pathways of Energy Production 119

Carbohydrate Catabolism 119

Glycolysis 121 • Additional Pathways to Glycolysis 121 • Cellular Respiration 123 • Fermentation 128

Lipid and Protein Catabolism 133

Biochemical Tests and Bacterial Identification 134

Photosynthesis 135

The Light-Dependent Reactions: Photophosphorylation 136 • The Light-Independent Reactions: The Calvin-Benson Cycle 137

A Summary of Energy Production Mechanisms 138

Metabolic Diversity among Organisms 138

Photoautotrophs 139 • Photoheterotrophs 140 • Chemoautotrophs 140 • Chemoheterotrophs 140

Metabolic Pathways of Energy Use 140

Polysaccharide Biosynthesis 142 • Lipid Biosynthesis 142 • Amino Acid and Protein Biosynthesis 143 • Purine and Pyrimidine Biosynthesis 143

The Integration of Metabolism 143

Study Outline 145 • Study Questions 148

6 Microbial Growth 151

The Requirements for Growth 152

Physical Requirements 152 • Chemical Requirements 155

Biofilms 158

Culture Media 159

Chemically Defined Media 160 • Complex Media 161 • Anaerobic Growth Media and Methods 161 • Special Culture Techniques 162 • Selective and Differential Media 162 • Enrichment Culture 163

Obtaining Pure Cultures 164

Preserving Bacterial Cultures 165

The Growth of Bacterial Cultures 166

Bacterial Division 166 • Generation Time 166 • Logarithmic Representation of Bacterial Populations 166 • Phases of Growth 167 • Direct Measurement of Microbial Growth 169 • Estimating Bacterial Numbers by Indirect Methods 173

Study Outline 175 • Study Questions 176

7 The Control of Microbial Growth 179

The Terminology of Microbial Control 180

The Rate of Microbial Death 181

Actions of Microbial Control Agents 181

Physical Methods of Microbial Control 183

Heat 183 • Filtration 186 • Low Temperatures 186 • High Pressure 187 • Desiccation 187 • Osmotic Pressure 187 • Radiation 187

Chemical Methods of Microbial Control 188

Principles of Effective Disinfection 189 • Evaluating a Disinfectant 190 • Types of Disinfectants 190

Microbial Characteristics and Microbial Control 199

Study Outline 201 • Study Questions 203

8 Microbial Genetics 205

Structure and Function of the Genetic Material 208

Genotype and Phenotype 208 • DNA and Chromosomes 209 • The Flow of Genetic Information 209 • DNA Replication 209 • RNA and Protein Synthesis 213

The Regulation of Bacterial Gene Expression 218

Pre-transcriptional Control 218 • Post-transcriptional Control 221

Changes in Genetic Material 222

Mutation 223 • Types of Mutations 223 • Mutagens 224 • The Frequency of Mutation 227 • Identifying Mutants 227 • Identifying Chemical Carcinogens 227

Genetic Transfer and Recombination 230

Plasmids and Transposons 230 • Transformation in Bacteria 233 • Conjugation in Bacteria 235 • Transduction in Bacteria 236

Genes and Evolution 238

Study Outline 239 • Study Questions 241

9 Biotechnology and DNA Technology 243

Introduction to Biotechnology 244

Recombinant DNA Technology 244 • An Overview of Recombinant DNA Procedures 244

Tools of Biotechnology 246

Selection 246 • Mutation 246 • Restriction Enzymes 246 • Vectors 247 • Polymerase Chain Reaction 248

Techniques of Genetic Modification 249

Inserting Foreign DNA into Cells 250 • Obtaining DNA 251 • Selecting a Clone 253 • Making a Gene Product 254

Applications of DNA Technology 255
Therapeutic Applications 256 • Genome Projects 257 • Scientific Applications 259 • Agricultural Applications 261
Safety Issues and the Ethics of Using DNA Technology 264
Study Outline 266 • Study Questions 267

PART TWO A Survey of the Microbial World

10 Classification of Microorganisms 270

The Study of Phylogenetic Relationships 271
The Three Domains 271 • A Phylogenetic Tree 274
Classification of Organisms 275
Scientific Nomenclature 275 • The Taxonomic Hierarchy 276 • Classification of Prokaryotes 276 • Classification of Eukaryotes 276 • Classification of Viruses 278
Methods of Classifying and Identifying Microorganisms 278
Conventional Identification 279 • Biochemical Tests 279 • Serology 282 • Phage Typing 284 • Molecular Profiles 285 • Flow Cytometry 286 • Whole Genome Sequencing 286 • Nucleic Acid Hybridization 286 • Putting Classification Methods Together 289
Study Outline 292 • Study Questions 293

11 The Prokaryotes: Domains Bacteria and Archaea 296

The Prokaryotic Groups 297
The Gram-Negative Bacteria 298
Pseudomonadota 298 • The Other Gram-Negative Bacteria 308
The Gram-Positive Bacteria 313
Bacillota (Low G + C Gram-Positive Bacteria) 313 • Mycoplasmatota (Low G + C Gram-Positive Bacteria) 316 • Actinomycetota (High G + C Gram-Positive Bacteria) 317 • Deinococcota (High G + C Gram-Positive Bacteria) 318
Diversity within the Archaea 319
Discoveries Illustrating the Range of Diversity 320
Study Outline 322 • Study Questions 323

12 The Eukaryotes: Fungi, Algae, Protozoa, and Helminths 325

Fungi 326
Characteristics of Fungi 327 • Medically Important Fungi 331 • Fungal Diseases 333 • Economic Effects of Fungi 335
Lichens 337
Algae 338
Characteristics of Algae 339 • Selected Phyla of Algae 339 • Roles of Algae in Nature 343
Protozoa 343
Characteristics of Protozoa 343 • Medically Important Protozoa 344
Slime Molds 348
Helminths 350
Characteristics of Helminths 350 • Platyhelminths 351 • Nematodes 354
Arthropods as Vectors 357
Study Outline 359 • Study Questions 361

13 Viruses, Viroids, and Prions 363

General Characteristics of Viruses 364
Distinctive Features of Viruses 364 • Host Range 364 • Viral Size 365
Viral Structure 365
Nucleic Acid 365 • Capsid and Envelope 366 • General Morphology 367
Taxonomy of Viruses 368
Isolation, Cultivation, and Identification of Viruses 372
Growing Bacteriophages in the Laboratory 372 • Growing Animal Viruses in the Laboratory 373 • Viral Identification 374
Viral Multiplication 375
Multiplication of Bacteriophages 375 • Multiplication of Animal Viruses 379
Viruses and Cancer 386
The Transformation of Normal Cells into Tumor Cells 386 • DNA Oncogenic Viruses 387 • RNA Oncogenic Viruses 387 • Viruses to Treat Cancer 388
Latent and Persistent Viral Infections 388
Plant Viruses and Viroids 388
Prions 390
Study Outline 391 • Study Questions 393

PART THREE Interaction between Microbe and Host

14 Principles of Disease and Epidemiology 395

Pathology, Infection, and Disease 396
Human Microbiome 396
Factors Influencing the Normal Microbiota 396 • Relationships between the Normal Microbiota and the Host 399 • Opportunistic Microorganisms 400 • Cooperation among Microorganisms 400

The Etiology of Infectious Diseases 400
Koch's Postulates 400 • Exceptions to Koch's Postulates 401
Classifying Infectious Diseases 402
Occurrence of a Disease 402 • Severity or Duration of a Disease 403 • Extent of Host Involvement 404
Patterns of Disease 405
Predisposing Factors 405 • Development of Disease 406
The Spread of Infection 406
Reservoirs of Infection 407 • Transmission of Disease 407
Healthcare-Associated Infections (HAIs) 411
Microorganisms in the Hospital 411 • Compromised Host 412 • Chain of Transmission 412 • Control of Healthcare-Associated Infections 413
Emerging Infectious Diseases 414
Epidemiology 417
Evolution of Epidemiology 417 • Roles of Epidemiology 417 • Types of Epidemiology 418 • Case Reporting 419 • The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) 419
Study Outline 422 • Study Questions 424

15 Microbial Mechanisms of Pathogenicity 427

How Microorganisms Enter a Host 428
Portals of Entry 428 • The Preferred Portal of Entry 429 • Numbers of Invading Microbes 429 • Adherence 430
How Bacterial Pathogens Penetrate Host Defenses 431
Capsules 431 • Cell Wall Components 432 • Enzymes 432 • Antigenic Variation 432 • Penetration into the Host 433 • Biofilms 433
How Bacterial Pathogens Damage Host Cells 434
Using the Host's Nutrients: Siderophores 434 • Direct Damage 434 • Production of Toxins 434 • Plasmids, Lysogeny, and Pathogenicity 440
Pathogenic Properties of Viruses 440
Viral Mechanisms for Evading Host Defenses 440 • Cytopathic Effects of Viruses 441
Pathogenic Properties of Fungi, Protozoa, Helminths, and Algae 443
Fungi 443 • Protozoa 443 • Helminths 444 • Algae 444
Portals of Exit 444
Study Outline 446 • Study Questions 447

16 Innate Immunity: Nonspecific Defenses of the Host 450

The Concept of Immunity 451
Physical Factors 451
Chemical Factors 455
Normal Microbiota and Innate Immunity 456
Formed Elements in Blood 458
The Lymphoid System 460
Phagocytes 462
Actions of Phagocytic Cells 462 • The Mechanism of Phagocytosis 462
Inflammation 464
Vasodilation and Increased Permeability of Blood Vessels 465 • Phagocyte Migration and Phagocytosis 466 • Tissue Repair 467
Fever 467
Antimicrobial Substances 468
The Complement System 468 • Interferons 472 • Iron-Binding Proteins 473 • Antimicrobial Peptides 474 • Other Factors 474
Study Outline 477 • Study Questions 478

17 Adaptive Immunity: Specific Defenses of the Host 480

The Adaptive Immune System 481
Dual Nature of the Adaptive Immune System 481
Overview of Humoral Immunity 481 • Overview of Cellular Immunity 481
Cytokines: Chemical Messengers of Immune Cells 482
Antigens and Antibodies 483
Antigens 483 • Antibodies 484
Humoral Immunity Response Process 487
Activation and Clonal Expansion of Antibody-Producing Cells 487 • The Diversity of Antibodies 488
Results of Antigen–Antibody Interaction 489
Cellular Immunity Response Process 490
Antigen-Presenting Cells (APCs) 491 • Classes of T Cells 492
Nonspecific Cells and Extracellular Killing by the Adaptive Immune System 496
Immunological Memory 497
Types of Adaptive Immunity 498
Study Outline 500 • Study Questions 501

18 Practical Applications of Immunology 503

Vaccines 504
Principles and Effects of Vaccination 504 • Types of Vaccines and Their Characteristics 505 • Vaccine Production, Administration, and Safety 508
Diagnostic Immunology 511
Use of Monoclonal Antibodies 512 • Precipitation Reactions 514 • Agglutination Reactions 515 • Neutralization Reactions 516 • Complement-Fixation Reactions 517 • Fluorescent-Antibody

Techniques 518 • Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbent Assay (ELISA) 520 • Western Blotting (Immunoblotting) 520 • Rapid Antigen Tests 521 • The Future of Diagnostic and Therapeutic Immunology 521

Study Outline 524 • Study Questions 525

19 Disorders Associated with the Immune System 528

Hypersensitivity 529

Allergies and the Microbiome 529 • Type I (Anaphylactic) Reactions 529 • Type II (Cytotoxic) Reactions 535 • Type III (Immune Complex) Reactions 538 • Type IV (Delayed Cell-Mediated) Reactions 539

Autoimmune Diseases 540

Cytotoxic Autoimmune Reactions 540 • Immune Complex Autoimmune Reactions 541 • Cell-Mediated Autoimmune Reactions 542

Reactions to Transplantation 542

The Role of HLA 542 • Privileged Sites and Privileged Tissue 543 • Stem Cells 544 • Bone Marrow Transplants 544 • Grafts 545 • Immunosuppression to Prevent Transplant Rejection 545

The Immune System and Cancer 546

Role of Immune Surveillance in Cancer 546 • Immunotherapy for Cancer 546

Immunodeficiencies 547

Congenital Immunodeficiencies 548 • Acquired Immunodeficiencies 548

Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS) 549

The Origin of AIDS 549 • HIV Infection 549 • Diagnostic Methods 553 • HIV Transmission 553 • AIDS Worldwide 554 • Preventing and Treating AIDS 554

Study Outline 557 • Study Questions 558

20 Antimicrobial Drugs 560

The History of Chemotherapy 561

Antibiotic Discovery in the Twentieth Century 561 • Antibiotics in Use Today 561

Spectrum of Antimicrobial Activity 562

The Action of Antimicrobial Drugs 563

Inhibiting Cell Wall Synthesis 563 • Inhibiting Protein Synthesis 564 • Injuring the Plasma Membrane 564 • Inhibiting Nucleic Acid Synthesis 564 • Inhibiting the Synthesis of Essential Metabolites 565

Common Antimicrobial Drugs 566

Antibacterial Antibiotics: Inhibitors of Cell Wall Synthesis 566 • Inhibitors of Protein Synthesis 571 • Injury to Membranes 573 • Nucleic Acid Synthesis Inhibitors 573 • Competitive Inhibition of Essential Metabolites 574 • Antifungal Drugs 575 • Antiviral Drugs 577 • Antiprotozoal and Antihelminthic Drugs 578

Tests to Guide Chemotherapy 579

The Diffusion Methods 580 • Broth Dilution Tests 580

Resistance to Antimicrobial Drugs 581

Mechanisms of Resistance 582 • Antibiotic Misuse 584 • Cost and Prevention of Resistance 584

Antibiotic Safety 585

Effects of Combinations of Drugs 585

Future of Antimicrobial Agents 585

Study Outline 588 • Study Questions 590

PART FOUR Microorganisms and Human Disease

21 Microbial Diseases of the Skin and Eyes 592

Structure and Function of the Skin 593

Layers and Secretions of the Skin 593 • Mucous Membranes 593

Normal Microbiota of the Skin 594

Microbial Diseases of the Skin 594

Bacterial Diseases of the Skin 594 • Viral Diseases of the Skin 604 • Fungal Diseases of the Skin and Nails 610 • Parasitic Infestation of the Skin 611

Microbial Diseases of the Eye 613

Inflammation of the Eye Membranes: Conjunctivitis 613 • Bacterial Diseases of the Eye 613 • Other Infectious Diseases of the Eye 614

Study Outline 618 • Study Questions 619

22 Microbial Diseases of the Nervous System 622

Structure and Function of the Nervous System 623

Bacterial Diseases of the Nervous System 624

Bacterial Meningitis 625 • Tetanus 628 • Botulism 630 • Leprosy 632

Viral Diseases of the Nervous System 634

Poliomyelitis 634 • Rabies 635 • Arboviral Encephalitis 637 • Zika Virus Disease 639

Fungal Disease of the Nervous System 642

Cryptococcus neoformans Meningitis (Cryptococcosis) 642

Protozoan Diseases of the Nervous System 644

African Trypanosomiasis 644 • Amebic Meningoencephalitis 645

Nervous System Diseases Caused by Prions 646
Diseases Caused by Unidentified Agents 648
Study Outline 650 • Study Questions 651

23 Microbial Diseases of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems 654

Structure and Function of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems 655
Bacterial Diseases of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems 656
Sepsis and Septic Shock 656 • Bacterial Infections of the Heart 658 • Tularemia 660 • Brucellosis (Undulant Fever) 660 • Anthrax 661 • Gangrene 663 • Systemic Diseases Caused by Bites and Scratches 664 • Vector-Transmitted Diseases 665
Viral Diseases of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems 673
Burkitt's Lymphoma 673 • Infectious Mononucleosis 674 • Other Diseases and Epstein-Barr Virus 674 • *Cytomegalovirus* Infections 674 • Chikungunya 675 • Classic Viral Hemorrhagic Fevers 675 • Emerging Viral Hemorrhagic Fevers 678
Fungal Disease of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems 679
Candida auris Sepsis 679
Protozoan Diseases of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems 679
Chagas Disease (American Trypanosomiasis) 679 • Toxoplasmosis 681 • Malaria 682 • Leishmaniasis 685 • Babesiosis 685
Helminthic Disease of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems 686
Schistosomiasis 686
Disease of Unknown Etiology 688
Kawasaki Syndrome 688
Study Outline 688 • Study Questions 691

24 Microbial Diseases of the Respiratory System 693

Structure and Function of the Respiratory System 694
Normal Microbiota of the Respiratory System 695
Bacterial Diseases of the Upper Respiratory System 696
Streptococcal Pharyngitis (Strep Throat) 696 • Scarlet Fever 697 • Diphtheria 697 • Otitis Media 698
Viral Disease of the Upper Respiratory System 698
The Common Cold 698
Bacterial Diseases of the Lower Respiratory System 700
Pertussis (Whooping Cough) 700 • Tuberculosis 701 • Bacterial Pneumonias 707 • Melioidosis 712
Viral Diseases of the Lower Respiratory System 713
Viral Pneumonia 713 • COVID-19 714 • Respiratory Syncytial Virus (RSV) 715 • Influenza (Flu) 716
Fungal Diseases of the Lower Respiratory System 719
Histoplasmosis 719 • Coccidioidomycosis 719 • *Pneumocystis* Pneumonia 721 • Blastomycosis (North American Blastomycosis) 722 • Other Fungi Involved in Respiratory Disease 722
Study Outline 724 • Study Questions 726

25 Microbial Diseases of the Digestive System 728

Structure and Function of the Digestive System 729
Normal Microbiota of the Digestive System 729
Bacterial Diseases of the Mouth 731
Dental Caries (Tooth Decay) 731 • Periodontal Disease 733
Bacterial Diseases of the Lower Digestive System 734
Staphylococcal Food Poisoning (Staphylococcal Enterotoxicosis) 735 • Shigellosis (Bacillary Dysentery) 735 • Salmonellosis (*Salmonella* Gastroenteritis) 736 • Typhoid Fever and Paratyphoid Fever 739 • Cholera 739 • Noncholera Vibrios 740 • *Escherichia coli* Gastroenteritis 740 • Traveler's Diarrhea 744 • Campylobacteriosis (*Campylobacter* Gastroenteritis) 744 • *Helicobacter* Peptic Ulcer Disease 744 • *Yersinia* Gastroenteritis 745 • *Clostridium perfringens* Gastroenteritis 745 • *Clostridioides difficile*–Associated Diarrhea 746 • *Bacillus cereus* Gastroenteritis 746
Viral Diseases of the Digestive System 746
Mumps 746 • Hepatitis 747 • Viral Gastroenteritis 752
Fungal Diseases of the Digestive System 754
Protozoan Diseases of the Digestive System 754
Giardiasis 756 • Cryptosporidiosis 756 • Cyclosporiasis 757 • Amebic Dysentery (Amebiasis) 757
Helminthic Diseases of the Digestive System 758
Tapeworms 758 • Hydatid Disease 759 • Nematodes 760
Study Outline 763 • Study Questions 765

26 Microbial Diseases of the Urinary and Genital Systems 768

Structure and Function of the Urinary System 769
Structure and Function of the Genital Systems 769
Normal Microbiota of the Urinary and Genital Systems 770
Bacterial Diseases of the Urinary System 771
Cystitis 772 • Pyelonephritis 772 • Leptospirosis 772
Bacterial Diseases of the Genital Systems 774
Gonorrhea 774 • Nongonococcal Urethritis (NGU) 778 • Pelvic Inflammatory Disease (PID) 779 • Syphilis 780

• Lymphogranuloma Venereum (LGV) 783 • Chancroid (Soft Chancre) 783 • Bacterial Vaginosis 784

Viral Diseases of the Genital Systems 784

Genital Herpes 784 • Neonatal Herpes 785 • Genital Warts 785 • AIDS 786

Fungal Disease of the Genital Systems 786

Candidiasis 786

Protozoal Disease of the Genital Systems 788

Trichomoniasis 788

Study Outline 790 • Study Questions 792

PART FIVE Environmental and Applied Microbiology

27 Environmental Microbiology 794

Microbial Habitats and Symbiosis 795

Soil Microbiology and Biogeochemical Cycles 795

The Carbon Cycle 796 • The Nitrogen Cycle 797 • The Sulfur Cycle 800 • Life without Sunshine 800 • The Phosphorus Cycle 801 • The Degradation of Synthetic Chemicals in Soil and Water 801

Aquatic Microbiology and Sewage Treatment 804

Aquatic Microorganisms 804 • The Role of Microorganisms in Water Quality 805 • Water Treatment 807 • Sewage (Wastewater) Treatment 808

Study Outline 816 • Study Questions 817

28 Applied and Industrial Microbiology 819

Food Microbiology 820

Foods and Disease 820 • Industrial Food Canning 821 • Aseptic Packaging 822 • Radiation and Industrial Food Preservation 822 • High-Pressure Food Preservation 824 • The Role of Microorganisms in Food Production 824

Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology 827

Fermentation Technology 827 • Industrial Products 829 • Alternative Energy Sources Using Microorganisms 832 • Biofuels 833 • Industrial Microbiology and the Future 834

Study Outline 835 • Study Questions 836

Answers to Knowledge and Comprehension Study Questions AN-1

Appendix A Metabolic Pathways AP-1

Appendix B Exponents, Exponential Notation, Logarithms, and Generation Time AP-7

Appendix C Methods for Taking Clinical Samples AP-8

Appendix D Pronunciation Rules and Word Roots AP-9

Appendix E Classification of Prokaryotes According to *Bergey's Manual* AP-13

Glossary G-1

Credits C-1

Trademark Attributions T-1

Taxonomic Guide to Diseases TG-1

Index I-1

Features

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

1 How Does Your Microbiome Grow? 3

2 Feed Our Intestinal Bacteria, Feed Ourselves: A Tale of Two Starches 37

3 Obtaining a More Accurate Picture of Our Microbiota 67

4 Eukaryotes Are Microbiota, Too 94

5 Do Artificial Sweeteners (and the Intestinal Microbiota That Love Them) Promote Diabetes? 132

6 Circadian Rhythms and Microbiota Growth Cycles 169

7 Increased Use of Disinfectants and Sanitizers: Doing More Harm Than Good? 192

8 Horizontal Gene Transfer and the Unintended Consequences of Antibiotic Usage 231

9 Crime Scene Investigation and Your Microbiome 262

10 Techniques for Identifying Members of Your Microbiome 291

11 Microbiome in Space 321

12 The Mycobiome 337

13 The Human Virome 366

14 Connections between Birth, Microbiome, and Other Health Conditions 397

15 Skin Microbiota Interactions and the Making of MRSA 431

16 The Microbiome's Shaping of Innate Immunity 457

17 The Relationship between Your Immune Cells and Skin Microbiota 495

18 Diversity May Enhance Response to Oral Vaccines 509

19 The Link between Blood Type and Composition of the Intestinal Microbiome 536

20 Looking to the Microbiome for the Next Great Antibiotic 587

21 Normal Skin Microbiota and Our Immune System: Allies in "Skin Wars" 596

22 Microbes Impacting the CNS 647

23 Is Blood Sterile? 657

24 Discovering the Microbiome of the Lungs 696

25 Sorting Out Good Neighbors from Bad in the Digestive Canal 730

26 Resident Microbes of the Urinary System 771

27 Resident Microbes of Earth's Most Extreme Environments 802

28 Using Bacteria to Stop the Spread of Zika Virus 834

BIG PICTURE DISEASES

Metabolism 108

Genetics 206

Immunity 452

Vaccine-Preventable Diseases 522

The Hygiene Hypothesis 532

Neglected Tropical Diseases 616

Vertical Transmission: Infection During Pregnancy 640

Climate Change and Disease 676

Bioterrorism 702

Cholera After Natural Disasters 742

STI Home Test Kits 776

Microbial Solutions to Climate Change 814

FOUNDATION FIGURES

Disproving Spontaneous Generation 8

The Structure of DNA 45

Microscopes and Magnification 54

The Structure of a Prokaryotic Cell 76

An Overview of Respiration and Fermentation 120

Understanding the Bacterial Growth Curve 168

Understanding the Microbial Death Curve 182

The Flow of Genetic Information 210

A Typical Genetic Modification Procedure 245

Three-Domain System 272

Exploring Pathogenic Eukaryotes 326

Replication of a DNA-Containing Animal Virus 381

Koch's Postulates: Understanding Disease 401

Mechanisms of Exotoxins and Endotoxins 436

Microbial Mechanisms of Pathogenicity 445

The Phases of Phagocytosis 463

Outcomes of Complement Activation 471

The Dual Nature of the Adaptive Immune System 499

The Production of Monoclonal Antibodies 513

The Progression of HIV Infection 552

Major Action Modes of Antibacterial Drugs 563

Bacterial Resistance to Antibiotics 582

LIFE CYCLE FIGURES

Figure 11.11 Myxococcales 307

Figure 11.15 Chlamydias 311

Figure 12.7 The Life Cycle of *Rhizopus*, a mucoromycete 331
Figure 12.8 The Life Cycle of *Encephalitozoon*, a Microsporidian 332
Figure 12.9 The Life Cycle of *Penicillium*, an Ascomycete 333
Figure 12.10 A Generalized Life Cycle of a Basidiomycete 334
Figure 12.13 Green Algae 340
Figure 12.16 Oomycotes 342
Figure 12.20 The Life Cycle of *Plasmodium vivax*, the Apicomplexan That Causes Malaria 346
Figure 12.22 The Generalized Life Cycle of a Cellular Slime Mold 349
Figure 12.23 The Life Cycle of a Plasmodial Slime Mold 350
Figure 12.26 The Life Cycle of the Lung Fluke, *Paragonimus* spp. 352
Figure 12.28 The Life Cycle of the Tapeworm, *Echinococcus* 355
Figure 23.13 The Life Cycle of the Tick Vector of Lyme Disease 669
Figure 23.16 The Life Cycle of the Tick Vector (*Dermacentor* spp.) of Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever 672
Figure 23.23 The Life Cycle of *Toxoplasma gondii*, the Cause of Toxoplasmosis 681
Figure 23.27 Schistosomiasis 687
Figure 24.18 The Life Cycle of *Coccidioides immitis*, the Cause of Coccidioidomycosis 720
Figure 24.19 The U.S. endemic area for coccidioidomycosis 720
Figure 25.26 The Life Cycle of *Trichinella spiralis*, the Causative Agent of Trichinellosis 762

CLINICAL FOCUS

Nontuberculous Mycobacteria Infection Following Surgery 141
Infection Following Improper Disinfection 198
Tracking Zika Virus 219
Norovirus—Who Is Responsible for the Outbreak? 265
Mass Deaths of Marine Mammals Spur Veterinary Microbiology 281
The Most Frequent Cause of Recreational Waterborne Diarrhea 353
Influenza: Crossing the Species Barrier 369
Healthcare-Associated Infections 420
Serum Collection 475
Measles: A World Health Problem 510
A Delayed Rash 541
Antibiotics in Animal Feed Linked to Human Disease 586
Infections in the Gym 598
A Neurological Disease 638
A Sick Child 663
Outbreak 713
A Foodborne Infection 738
Survival of the Fittest 779

DISEASES IN FOCUS

21.1 Macular Rashes 601
21.2 Vesicular and Pustular Rashes 602
21.3 Patchy Redness and Pimple-Like Conditions 603
21.4 Microbial Diseases of the Eye 614
22.1 Meningitis and Encephalitis 629
22.2 Types of Arboviral Encephalitis 643
22.3 Microbial Diseases with Neurological Symptoms, Including Paralysis 649
23.1 Human-Reservoir Infections 662
23.2 Infections from Animal Reservoirs Transmitted by Direct Contact 666
23.3 Infections Transmitted by Vectors 668
23.4 Viral Hemorrhagic Fevers 680
23.5 Infections Transmitted by Soil and Water 686
24.1 Microbial Diseases of the Upper Respiratory System 699
24.2 Common Bacterial Pneumonias 709
24.3 Microbial Diseases of the Lower Respiratory System 723
25.1 Bacterial Diseases of the Mouth 734
25.2 Bacterial Diseases of the Lower Digestive System 748
25.3 Characteristics of Viral Hepatitis 750
25.4 Viral Diseases of the Digestive System 754
25.5 Fungal, Protozoan, and Helminthic Diseases of the Lower Digestive System 755
26.1 Bacterial Diseases of the Urinary System 772
26.2 Characteristics of the Most Common Types of Vaginitis and Vaginosis 787
26.3 Microbial Diseases of the Genital Systems 789

ASM Recommended Curriculum Guidelines for Undergraduate Microbiology

The American Society for Microbiology (ASM) endorses a concept-based curriculum for introductory microbiology, emphasizing skills and concepts that remain important long after students exit the course. The ASM *Curriculum Guidelines for Undergraduate Microbiology Education* provide a framework for key microbiological topics and agree with scientific literacy reports from the American Association for the Advancement of Science and Howard Hughes Medical Institute. This textbook references part one of curriculum guidelines throughout chapters. When a discussion touches on one of the concepts, readers will see the ASM icon, along with a summary of the relevant statement.

ASM Guideline Concepts and Statements

Evolution

- Cells, organelles (e.g., mitochondria and chloroplasts), and all major metabolic pathways evolved from early prokaryotic cells.
- Mutations and horizontal gene transfer, with the immense variety of microenvironments, have selected for a huge diversity of microorganisms.
- Human impact on the environment influences the evolution of microorganisms (e.g., emerging diseases and the selection of antibiotic resistance).
- The traditional concept of species is not readily applicable to microbes due to asexual reproduction and the frequent occurrence of horizontal gene transfer.
- The evolutionary relatedness of organisms is best reflected in phylogenetic trees.

Cell Structure and Function

- The structure and function of microorganisms have been revealed by the use of microscopy (including brightfield, phase contrast, fluorescent, and electron).
- Bacteria have unique cell structures that can be targets for antibiotics, immunity, and phage infection.
- Bacteria and Archaea have specialized structures (e.g. flagella, endospores, and pili) that often confer critical capabilities.
- While microscopic eukaryotes (for example, fungi, protozoa, and algae) carry out some of the same processes as bacteria, many of the cellular properties are fundamentally different.
- The replication cycles of viruses (lytic and lysogenic) differ among viruses and are determined by their unique structures and genomes.

Metabolic Pathways

- Bacteria and Archaea exhibit extensive, and often unique, metabolic diversity (e.g., nitrogen fixation, methane production, anoxygenic photosynthesis).
- The interactions of microorganisms among themselves and with their environment are determined by their metabolic abilities (e.g., quorum sensing, oxygen consumption, nitrogen transformations).
- The survival and growth of any microorganism in a given environment depend on its metabolic characteristics.
- The growth of microorganisms can be controlled by physical, chemical, mechanical, or biological means.

Information Flow and Genetics

- Genetic variations can impact microbial functions (e.g., in biofilm formation, pathogenicity, and drug resistance).
- Although the central dogma is universal in all cells, the processes of replication, transcription, and translation differ in Bacteria, Archaea, and Eukaryotes.
- The regulation of gene expression is influenced by external and internal molecular cues and/or signals.
- The synthesis of viral genetic material and proteins is dependent on host cells.
- Cell genomes can be manipulated to alter cell function.

Microbial Systems

- Microorganisms are ubiquitous and live in diverse and dynamic ecosystems.
- Most bacteria in nature live in biofilm communities.
- Microorganisms and their environment interact with and modify each other.
- Microorganisms, cellular and viral, can interact with both human and nonhuman hosts in beneficial, neutral, or detrimental ways.

Impact of Microorganisms

- Microbes are essential for life as we know it and the processes that support life (e.g., in biogeochemical cycles and plant and/or animal microbiota).
- Microorganisms provide essential models that give us fundamental knowledge about life processes.
- Humans utilize and harness microorganisms and their products.
- Because the true diversity of microbial life is largely unknown, its effects and potential benefits have not been fully explored.

1 The Microbial World and You

The overall theme of this textbook is the relationship between microbes—very small organisms that usually require a microscope to be seen—and our lives. We've all heard of epidemics of infectious diseases such as plague or smallpox that wiped out populations. However, there are many positive examples of human-microbe interactions. For example, we use microbial fermentation to ensure safe food supplies, and the human microbiome, a group of microbes that lives in and on our bodies, helps keep us healthy. We begin this chapter by discussing how organisms are named and classified and then follow with a short history of microbiology. Next, we discuss the incredible diversity of microorganisms and their ecological importance, noting how they recycle chemical elements such as carbon and nitrogen among the soil, organisms, and the atmosphere. We also examine how microbes are used to treat sewage, clean pollutants, control pests, and produce foods, chemicals, and drugs. Finally, we will discuss microbes as the cause of diseases such as COVID-19, avian (bird) flu, MPOX, and diarrhea, and we examine the growing public health problem of antibiotic-resistant bacteria.

ASM: Microorganisms provide essential models that give us fundamental knowledge about life processes.

Shown in the photograph are *Staphylococcus aureus* (STAF-i-lō-kok'kus OR-ē-us) bacteria on human nasal epithelial cells. These bacteria generally live harmlessly on skin or inside the nose. Misuse of antibiotics, however, allows the survival of bacteria with antibiotic-resistance genes, such as methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA). As illustrated in the Clinical Case, an infection caused by these bacteria is resistant to antibiotic treatment.

◀ ***Staphylococcus aureus*** **bacteria on skin cell culture.**

In the Clinic

As the nurse practitioner in a rural hospital, you are reviewing a microscope slide of a skin scraping from a 12-year-old girl. The slide shows branched, intertwined nucleated hyphae. The girl has dry, scaly, itchy patches on her arms. **What is causing her skin problem?**

Hint: Read about types of microorganisms ahead.

Microbes in Our Lives

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

1-1 List several ways in which microbes affect our lives.

1-2 Define *microbiome*, *normal microbiota*, and *transient microbiota*.

For many people, the words *germ* and *microbe* bring to mind a group of tiny creatures that do not quite fit into any of the categories in that old question, "Is it animal, vegetable, or mineral?" *Germ* actually comes from the Latin word *germen*, meaning to spout from, or germinate. Think of wheat germ, the plant embryo from which the plant grows. The term was first used in relation to microbes in the nineteenth century to explain the rapidly growing cells that caused disease. **Microbes**, also called **microorganisms**, are minute living things that are usually too small to be seen with the unaided eye. The group includes bacteria, fungi (yeasts and molds), protozoa, and microscopic algae (Chapters 11 and 12). It also includes viruses, which are noncellular entities sometimes regarded as straddling the border between life and nonlife, and prions, abnormal forms of naturally occurring proteins in the brain that cause various neurodegenerative diseases in humans and other animals (Chapter 13).

Roles of Microbes

We tend to associate microorganisms only with infections and inconveniences such as spoiled food. However, the majority actually help maintain the balance of life in our environment. Marine and freshwater microorganisms form the basis of the food chain in oceans, lakes, and rivers. Soil microbes break down wastes and incorporate nitrogen gas from the air into organic compounds, thereby recycling chemical elements among soil, water, living organisms, and air. Certain microbes play important roles in *photosynthesis*, a food- and oxygen-generating process that is critical to life on Earth.

Microorganisms also have many commercial applications. They are used in the synthesis of such chemical products as vitamins, organic acids, enzymes, alcohols, and many drugs. For example, microbes are used to produce acetone and butanol, and the vitamins B_2 (riboflavin) and B_{12} (cobalamin) are made biochemically. The process by which microbes produce acetone and butanol was discovered in 1914 by Chaim Weizmann, a Russian-born chemist working in England. With the outbreak of World War I in August of that year, the production of acetone became very important for making cordite (a smokeless form of gunpowder used in munitions). Weizmann's discovery played a significant role in determining the outcome of the war.

The food industry also uses microbes in producing, for example, vinegar, sauerkraut, pickles, soy sauce, cheese, yogurt, bread, and alcoholic beverages. In addition, enzymes from microbes can now be manipulated to cause the microbes to produce substances they normally don't synthesize, including cellulose, human insulin, and proteins for vaccines.

The Microbiome

An adult human is composed of about 30 trillion body cells and harbors another 40 trillion bacterial cells. Microbes that live stably in and on the human body are called the human **microbiome**, or **microbiota**. Humans and many other animals depend on these microbes to maintain good health. Bacteria in our intestines, including *Escherichia coli*, aid digestion (see **Exploring the Microbiome**) and even synthesize some vitamins that our bodies require, including B vitamins for metabolism and vitamin K for blood clotting. They also prevent the growth of **pathogenic** (disease-causing) species that might otherwise take up residence, and they seem to have a role in training our immune system to know which foreign invaders to attack and which to leave alone. (See Chapter 14 for more details on relationships between normal microbiota and the host.)

Even before birth, our bodies begin to be populated with bacteria. As newborns, we acquire viruses, fungi, and bacteria (**Figure 1.1**). For example, *E. coli* and other bacteria acquired from foods take residence in the large intestine. Many factors influence where and whether a microbe can indefinitely colonize the body as benign **normal microbiota** or be only a fleeting member of its community (known as **transient microbiota**). Microbes can colonize only those body sites that can supply the appropriate nutrients. Temperature, pH, and the presence or absence of chemical compounds are some factors that influence what types of microbes can flourish.

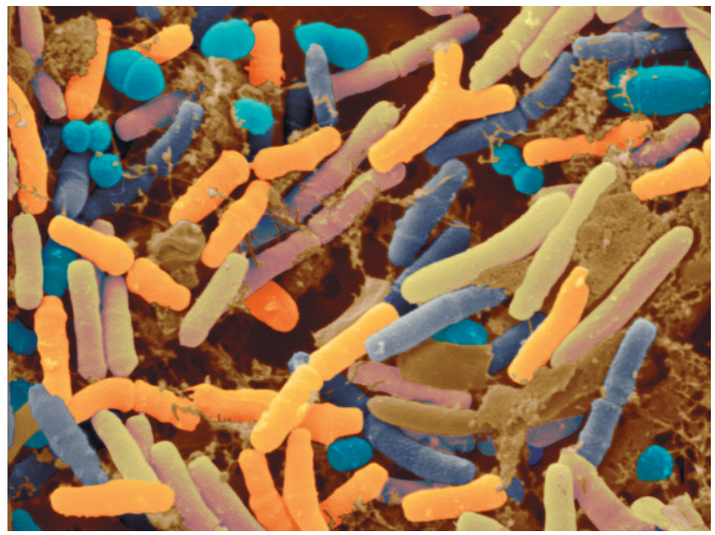


Figure 1.1 Several types of bacteria found as part of the normal microbiota in an infant's intestine.

Q How do we benefit from the production of vitamin K by microbes?

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME How Does Your Microbiome Grow?

The specific traits of microbes that reside in human intestines can vary greatly—even within the same microbial species. Take *Bacteroides*, a bacterium commonly found in the large intestine of humans worldwide. The strain residing in Japanese people produces specialized enzymes that break down nori, the red algae used as the wrap component of sushi. These enzymes are not produced by *Bacteroides* found in the intestines of people from North America.

How did the Japanese *Bacteroides* acquire the ability to digest algae? It's thought the skill hails from *Zobellia galactanivorans*, a marine bacterium that lives on this alga. Not surprisingly, *Zobellia* readily breaks down the alga's main carbohydrate with enzymes. Because people living in Japan have regularly consumed algae for thousands of years, *Zobellia* routinely met up with *Bacteroides* that lived in the human intestine. Bacteria can swap genes with other species—a process called *horizontal gene transfer*—and at some point, *Zobellia* must have given *Bacteroides* the genes to produce algae-digesting enzymes. (For more on horizontal gene transfer, see Chapter 8.)

In an island nation where algae are an important dietary component, the ability to extract more nutrition from algal carbohydrates would give an intestinal microbe a competitive advantage over others that couldn't use it as a food source. Over time, this *Bacteroides* strain became dominant within the large intestine of people living in Japan.

You may be wondering whether North American sushi eaters can expect their own *Bacteroides* to shift to the algae-eating variety, too. Researchers say this is unlikely. In the past, the Japanese diet included raw algae, which allowed for living *Zobellia* to reach the large intestine. By contrast, the algae used in foods today is usually roasted or dried; these processes kill any bacteria that may be present on the surface.

***Porphyra*, an alga commonly used in sushi.**

To determine the makeup of typical microbiota of various areas of the body, and to understand the relationship between changes in the microbiome and human diseases, were the goals of the **Human Microbiome Project**, (2007–2016). Likewise, the **National Microbiome Initiative** launched in 2016 to expand our understanding of the role microbes play in different ecosystems, including soil, plants, aquatic environments, and the human body. Throughout the book, look for stories related to the human microbiome, highlighted in the Exploring the Microbiome feature boxes.

Our realization that many microbes are not only harmless to humans, but actually essential, has replaced the traditional view that the only good microbe was a dead one. In fact, only a minority of microorganisms are pathogenic to humans. Although anyone planning to enter a health care profession needs to know how to prevent the transmission and spread of pathogenic microbes, it's also important to appreciate that pathogenicity is just one aspect of our full relationship with microbes.

Today we understand that microorganisms are found almost everywhere. Yet not long ago, before the invention of the microscope, microbes were unknown to scientists. Next we'll look at the major groups of microbes and how they are named and classified. After that, we'll examine a few historic milestones in microbiology that have changed our lives.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **1-1*** Describe some of the destructive and beneficial actions of microbes.
- **1-2** What percentage of all the cells in the human body are bacterial cells?

CLINICAL CASE A Simple Spider Bite?

Andrea is a normally healthy 22-year-old college student who lives at home with her mother and younger sister, a high school gymnast. She is trying to work on a paper for her psychology class but is having a hard time because a red, swollen sore on her right wrist is making typing difficult. "Why won't this spider bite heal?" she wonders. "It's been there for days!" She makes an appointment with her doctor so she can show him the painful lesion. Although Andrea does not have a fever, she does have an elevated white blood cell count that indicates a bacterial infection. Andrea's doctor suspects that this isn't a spider bite at all, but a staph infection. He prescribes a β-lactam antibiotic, cephalosporin. Learn more about the development of Andrea's illness on the following pages.

What is staph? Read on to find out.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5

*The numbers preceding Check Your Understanding questions refer to the corresponding Learning Objectives.

Naming and Classifying Microorganisms

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

1-3 Recognize the system of scientific nomenclature that uses two names: a genus and a specific epithet.

1-4 Differentiate the major characteristics of each group of microorganisms.

1-5 List the three domains.

Nomenclature

The system of nomenclature (naming) for organisms in use today was established in 1735 by Carolus Linnaeus. Scientific names are latinized because Latin was the language traditionally used by scholars. Scientific nomenclature assigns each organism two names—the **genus** (plural: **genera**) is the first name and is always capitalized; the **specific epithet** (**species** name) follows and is not capitalized. The organism is referred to by both the genus and the specific epithet, and both names are underlined or italicized. By custom, after a scientific name has been mentioned once, it can be abbreviated with the initial of the genus followed by the specific epithet.

Scientific names can, among other things, describe an organism, honor a researcher, or identify the habitat of a species. For example, consider *S. aureus*, a bacterium commonly found on human skin. *Staphylo-* describes the clustered arrangement of the cells; *-coccus* indicates that they are shaped like spheres. The specific epithet, *aureus*, is Latin for golden, the color of many colonies of this bacterium. The genus of the bacterium *Escherichia coli* (esh'er-IK-ē-ah KŌ-lī, or KŌ-lē) is named for a physician, Theodor Escherich, whereas its specific epithet, *coli*, reminds us that *E. coli* live in the colon, or large intestine. Table 1.1 contains more examples.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

1-3 Distinguish a genus from a specific epithet.

Types of Microorganisms

In health care, it is important to know the different types of microorganisms in order to treat infections. For example, antibiotics can be used to treat bacterial infections but have no effect on viruses or other microbes. Here is an overview of the main types of microorganisms. (The classification and identification of microorganisms are discussed in Chapter 10.)

Bacteria

Bacteria (singular: **bacterium**) are relatively simple, single-celled (unicellular) organisms. Because their genetic material is not enclosed in a special nuclear membrane, bacterial cells are called **prokaryotes** (prō-KAR-e-ōts), from Greek words meaning prenucleus. Prokaryotes include both bacteria and archaea.

Bacterial cells generally appear in one of several shapes. *Bacillus* (bah-SIL-lus) (rodlike), illustrated in **Figure 1.2a**, *coccus* (KOK-kus) (spherical or ovoid), and *spiral* (corkscrew or curved) are among the most common shapes, but some bacteria are star-shaped or square (see Figures 4.1 through 4.5). Individual bacteria may form pairs, chains, clusters, or other groupings; such formations are usually characteristic of a particular genus or species of bacteria.

Bacteria are enclosed in cell walls that are largely composed of a carbohydrate and protein complex called *peptidoglycan*.

TABLE 1.1 Making Scientific Names Familiar

Use the word roots guide to find out what the name means. The name will not seem so strange if you translate it. When you encounter a new name, practice saying it out loud (guidelines for pronunciation are given in Appendix D). The exact pronunciation is not as important as the familiarity you will gain.

Following are some examples of microbial names you may encounter in the popular press as well as in the lab.

	Pronunciation	Source of Genus Name	Source of Specific Epithet
Salmonella enterica (bacterium)	sal'mō-NEL-lah en-TER-i-kah	Honors public health microbiologist Daniel Salmon	Found in the intestines (*entero-*)
Streptococcus pyogenes (bacterium)	strep'tō-KOK-kus pī-AH-jen-ēz	Appearance of cells in chains (*strepto-*)	Forms pus (*pyo-*)
Saccharomyces cerevisiae (yeast)	sak'kar-ō-MĪ-sēz se-ri-VIS-ē-ī	Fungus (*-myces*) that uses sugar (*saccharo-*)	Makes beer (*cerevisia*)
Penicillium chrysogenum (fungus)	pen'i-SIL-lē-um krī-SO-jen-um	Tuftlike or paintbrush (*penicill-*) appearance microscopically	Produces a yellow (*chryso-*) pigment
Trypanosoma cruzi (protozoan)	tri'pa-nō-SŌ-mah KROOZ-ē	Corkscrew- (*trypano-*, borer; *soma-*, body)	Honors epidemiologist Oswaldo Cruz

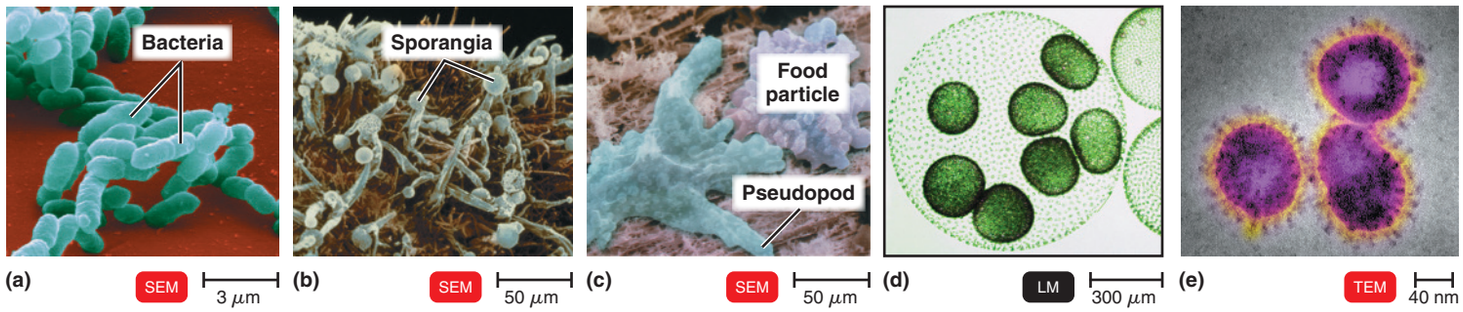


Figure 1.2 Types of microorganisms. **(a)** The rod-shaped bacterium *Haemophilus influenzae*, one of the bacterial causes of pneumonia. **(b)** *Mucor*, a common bread mold, is a type of fungus. When released from sporangia, spores that land on a favorable surface germinate into a network of hyphae (filaments) that absorb nutrients. **(c)** An ameba, a type of protozoan, approaching a food particle. **(d)** The pond alga *Volvox*. **(e)** Coronavirus *SARS-CoV-2* (COVID-19 virus). *NOTE:* Throughout the book, a red icon under a micrograph indicates that the micrograph has been artificially colored. TEM (transmission electron microscope), SEM (scanning electron microscope), and LM (light microscope) are discussed in detail in Chapter 3.

Q How are bacteria, archaea, fungi, protozoa, algae, and viruses distinguished on the basis of structure?

(By contrast, cellulose is the main substance of plant and algal cell walls.) Bacteria generally reproduce by dividing into two equal cells; this process is called *binary fission*. For nutrition, most bacteria use organic chemicals, which in nature can be derived from either dead or living organisms. Some bacteria can manufacture their own food by photosynthesis, and some can derive nutrition from inorganic substances. Many bacteria can "swim" by using moving appendages called *flagella*. (For a complete discussion of bacteria, see Chapter 11.)

Archaea

Like bacteria, **archaea** (ar-KĒ-ah) consist of prokaryotic cells, but if they have cell walls, the walls lack peptidoglycan. Archaea, often found in extreme environments, are divided into three main groups. The *methanogens* produce methane as a waste product from respiration. The *extreme halophiles* (*halo* = salt; *philic* = loving) live in extremely salty environments such as the Great Salt Lake and the Dead Sea. The *extreme thermophiles* (*therm* = heat) live in hot sulfurous water, such as hot springs at Yellowstone National Park. Archaea are not known to cause disease in humans.

Fungi

Fungi (singular: **fungus**) are **eukaryotes** (ū-KAR-ē-ōts), organisms whose cells have a distinct nucleus containing the cell's genetic material (DNA), surrounded by a special envelope called the *nuclear membrane*. Organisms in the Kingdom Fungi may be unicellular or multicellular (see Chapter 12). Large multicellular fungi, such as mushrooms, may look somewhat like plants, but unlike most plants, fungi cannot carry out photosynthesis. True fungi have cell walls composed primarily of a substance called *chitin*. The unicellular forms of fungi, *yeasts*, are oval microorganisms that are larger than bacteria. The most typical fungi are *molds* (Figure 1.2b). Molds form visible masses called *mycelia*, which are composed of long filaments (*hyphae*) that branch and intertwine. The cottony growths sometimes found on bread and fruit are mold mycelia. Fungi can reproduce sexually or asexually. They obtain nourishment by absorbing organic material from their environment—whether soil, seawater, freshwater, or an animal or plant host. Organisms called *slime molds* are not actually molds but ameba-like protozoa (see Chapter 12).

Protozoa

Protozoa (singular: **protozoan**) are unicellular eukaryotic microbes (see Chapter 12). Protozoa move by pseudopods, flagella, or cilia. Amebae (Figure 1.2c) move by using extensions of their cytoplasm called *pseudopods* (false feet). Other protozoa have long *flagella* or numerous shorter appendages for locomotion called *cilia*. Protozoa have a variety of shapes and live either as free entities or as *parasites* (organisms that derive nutrients from living hosts) that absorb or ingest organic compounds from their environment. Some protozoa, such as *Euglena* (ū-GLĒ-nah), are photosynthetic. They use light as a source of energy and carbon dioxide as their chief source of carbon to produce sugars. Protozoa can reproduce sexually or asexually.

Algae

Algae (singular: **alga**) are photosynthetic eukaryotes with a wide variety of shapes and both sexual and asexual reproductive forms (Figure 1.2d). The algae of interest to microbiologists are usually unicellular (see Chapter 12). The cell walls of many algae are composed of a carbohydrate called *cellulose*. Algae are abundant in freshwater and saltwater, in soil, and in association with plants. As photosynthesizers, algae need light, water, and carbon dioxide for food production and growth, but they do not generally require organic compounds from the

environment. As a result of photosynthesis, algae produce oxygen and carbohydrates that are then utilized by other organisms, including animals. Thus, they play an important role in the balance of nature.

Viruses

Viruses (Figure 1.2e) are very different from the other microbial groups mentioned here. They are acellular (that is, they are not cells), and most are so small that they can be seen only with an electron microscope. Structurally very simple, viruses contain a core made of only one type of nucleic acid, either DNA or RNA. This core is surrounded by a protein coat, which is sometimes encased by a lipid membrane called an *envelope*. All living cells have RNA *and* DNA, can carry out chemical reactions, and can reproduce as self-sufficient units. In contrast, viruses can reproduce only by using the cellular machinery of other organisms. Thus, on the one hand, viruses are considered to be living only when they multiply within host cells they infect. In this sense, viruses are parasites of other forms of life. On the other hand, viruses are not considered to be living because they are inert outside living hosts. (Viruses will be discussed in detail in Chapter 13.)

Multicellular Animal Parasites

Although multicellular animal parasites are not strictly microorganisms, they are of medical importance and therefore will be discussed in this text. Animal parasites are eukaryotes. The two major groups of parasitic worms are the flatworms and the roundworms, collectively called **helminths** (see Chapter 12). During some stages of their life cycle, helminths are microscopic in size. Laboratory identification of these organisms includes many of the same techniques used for identifying microbes.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

1-4 Which groups of microbes are prokaryotes? Which are eukaryotes?

Classification of Microorganisms

Before the existence of microbes was known, all organisms were grouped into either the animal kingdom or the plant kingdom. When microscopic organisms with characteristics of animals and plants were discovered late in the seventeenth century, a new system of classification was needed. Still, biologists couldn't agree on the criteria for classifying these new organisms until the late 1970s.

In 1978, Carl Woese devised a system of classification based on the cellular organization of organisms. It groups all organisms in three domains as follows:

1. Bacteria (cell walls contain a protein–carbohydrate complex called peptidoglycan)
2. Archaea (cell walls, if present, lack peptidoglycan)
3. Eukarya, which includes the following:
   - Protists (slime molds, protozoa, and algae)
   - Fungi (unicellular yeasts, multicellular molds, and mushrooms)
   - Plants (mosses, ferns, conifers, and flowering plants)
   - Animals (sponges, worms, insects, and vertebrates)

Classification will be discussed in more detail in Chapters 10 through 12.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

1-5 What are the three domains?

A Brief History of Microbiology

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

1-6 Explain the importance of observations made by Hooke and van Leeuwenhoek.

1-7 Compare spontaneous generation and biogenesis.

1-8 Identify the contributions to microbiology made by Needham, Spallanzani, Virchow, and Pasteur.

1-9 Explain how Pasteur's work influenced Lister and Koch.

1-10 Identify the importance of Koch's postulates.

1-11 Identify the importance of Jenner's work.

1-12 Identify the contributions to microbiology made by Ehrlich and Fleming.

1-13 Define *bacteriology*, *mycology*, *parasitology*, *immunology*, and *virology*.

1-14 Explain the importance of microbial genetics, molecular biology, and genomics.

Bacterial ancestors were the first living cells to appear on Earth. For most of human history, people knew little about the true causes, transmission, and effective treatment of disease. Let's look now at some key developments in microbiology that have spurred the field to its current technological state.

The First Observations

In 1665, after observing a thin slice of cork through a crude microscope, Englishman Robert Hooke reported that life's smallest structural units were "little boxes," or "cells." Using his improved microscope, Hooke later saw individual cells. Hooke's discovery marked the beginning of the **cell theory**—the theory that *all living things are composed of cells.*

Though Hooke's microscope was capable of showing large cells, it lacked the resolution that would have allowed him to see microbes clearly. Dutch merchant and amateur scientist Anton van Leeuwenhoek was probably the first to observe live microorganisms through the magnifying lenses of the more

than 400 microscopes he constructed. Between 1673 and 1723, he wrote about the "animalcules" he saw through his simple, single-lens microscopes. Van Leeuwenhoek made detailed drawings of organisms he found in rainwater, feces, and material scraped from teeth. These drawings have since been identified as representations of bacteria and protozoa (Figure 1.3).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

1-6 What is the cell theory?

The Debate over Spontaneous Generation

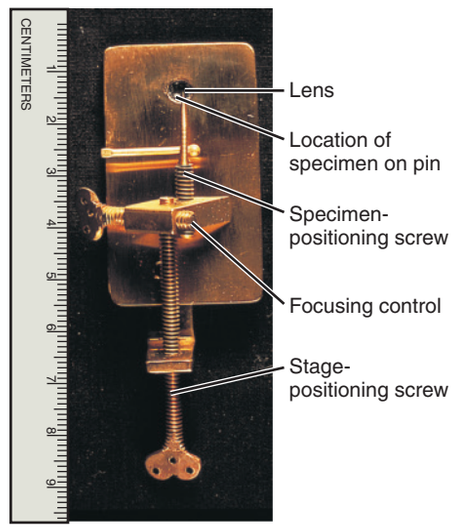
After van Leeuwenhoek discovered the previously "invisible" world of microorganisms, the scientific community became interested in the origins of these tiny living things. Until the second half of the nineteenth century, many scientists and philosophers believed that some forms of life could arise spontaneously from nonliving matter; they called this hypothetical process **spontaneous generation**. Not much more than 100 years ago, people commonly believed that toads, snakes, and mice could be born of moist soil; that flies could emerge from manure; and that maggots (which we now know are the larvae of flies) could arise from decaying corpses.

Physician Francesco Redi set out in 1668 to demonstrate that maggots did not arise spontaneously. Redi filled two jars with decaying meat. The first was left unsealed, allowing flies to lay eggs on the meat, which developed into larvae. The second jar was sealed, and because the flies could not get inside, no maggots appeared. Still, Redi's antagonists were not convinced; they claimed that fresh air was needed for spontaneous generation. So Redi set up a second experiment, in which he covered a jar with a fine net instead of sealing it. No larvae appeared in the gauze-covered jar, even though air was present.

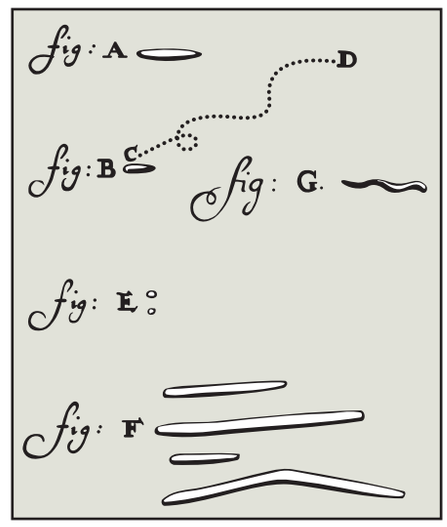
Redi's results were a serious blow to the long-held belief that large forms of life could arise from nonlife. However, many scientists still believed that small organisms, such as van Leeuwenhoek's "animalcules," were simple enough to generate from nonliving materials.

The case for spontaneous generation of microorganisms seemed to be strengthened in 1745, when John Needham found that even after he heated chicken broth and corn broth before pouring them into covered flasks, the cooled solutions were soon teeming with microorganisms. Needham claimed that microbes developed spontaneously from the fluids. Twenty years later, Lazzaro Spallanzani suggested that microorganisms from the air probably entered Needham's solutions after they were boiled. Spallanzani showed that nutrient fluids heated *after* being sealed in a flask did not develop microbial growth. Needham responded by claiming the "vital force" necessary for spontaneous generation had been destroyed by the heat and was kept out of the flasks by the seals.

(a) Van Leeuwenhoek using his microscope



(b) Microscope replica



(c) Drawings of bacteria

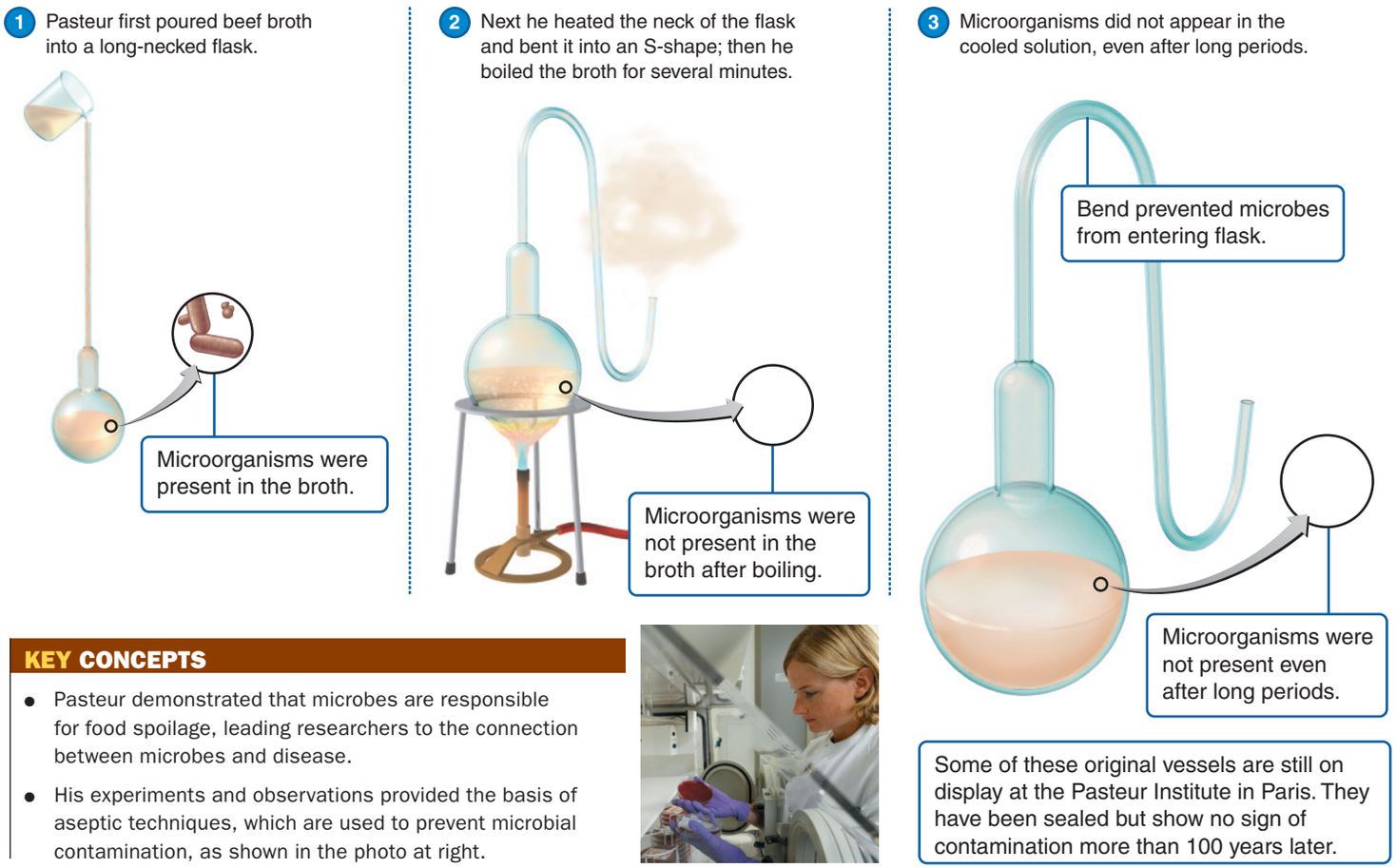
Figure 1.3 Anton van Leeuwenhoek's microscopic observations. **(a)** By holding his brass microscope toward a source of light, van Leeuwenhoek was able to observe living organisms too small to be seen with the unaided eye. **(b)** The specimen was placed on the tip of the adjustable point and viewed from the other side through the tiny, nearly spherical lens. The highest magnification possible with his microscopes was about 300 × (times). **(c)** Some of van Leeuwenhoek's drawings of bacteria, made in 1683. The letters represent various shapes of bacteria. C–D represents a path of motion he observed.

Q Why was van Leeuwenhoek's discovery so important?

FOUNDATION FIGURE 1.4

Disproving Spontaneous Generation

According to the hypothesis of spontaneous generation, life can arise spontaneously from nonliving matter, such as dead corpses and soil. Pasteur's experiment, described below, demonstrated that microbes are present in nonliving matter—air, liquids, and solids.



KEY CONCEPTS

- Pasteur demonstrated that microbes are responsible for food spoilage, leading researchers to the connection between microbes and disease.
- His experiments and observations provided the basis of aseptic techniques, which are used to prevent microbial contamination, as shown in the photo at right.

Some of these original vessels are still on display at the Pasteur Institute in Paris. They have been sealed but show no sign of contamination more than 100 years later.

Spallanzani's observations were also criticized on the grounds that there was not enough oxygen in the sealed flasks to support microbial life.

The Theory of Biogenesis

In 1858 Rudolf Virchow challenged the case for spontaneous generation with the concept of **biogenesis**, hypothesizing that living cells arise only from preexisting living cells. Because he could offer no scientific proof, arguments about spontaneous generation continued until 1861, when the issue was finally resolved by the French scientist Louis Pasteur.

Pasteur demonstrated that microorganisms are present in the air and can contaminate sterile solutions, but that air itself does not create microbes. He filled several short-necked flasks with beef broth and then boiled their contents. Some were then left open and allowed to cool. In a few days, these flasks were found to be contaminated with microbes. The other flasks, sealed after boiling, were free of microorganisms. From these results, Pasteur reasoned that microbes in the air were the agents responsible for contaminating nonliving matter.

Pasteur next placed broth in open-ended, long-necked flasks and bent the necks into S-shaped curves (**Figure 1.4**). The contents of these flasks were then boiled and cooled. The broth in the flasks did not decay and showed no signs of life, even after months. Pasteur's unique design allowed air to pass into the flask, but the curved neck trapped any airborne microorganisms that might contaminate the broth. (Some of these original vessels are still on display at the Pasteur Institute in Paris. They have been sealed but, like the flask in Figure 1.4, show no sign of contamination more than 100 years later.)

Pasteur showed that microorganisms can be present in nonliving matter—on solids, in liquids, and in the air. Furthermore,

he demonstrated conclusively that microbial life can be destroyed by heat and that methods can be devised to block the access of airborne microorganisms to nutrient environments. These discoveries form the basis of **aseptic techniques**, procedures that prevent contamination by unwanted microorganisms, which are now the standard practice in laboratory and many medical procedures. Modern aseptic techniques are among the first and most important concepts that a beginning microbiologist learns.

Pasteur's work offered proof of biogenesis. His evidence showed that microorganisms cannot originate from mystical forces present in nonliving materials. Rather, any appearance of "spontaneous" life in nonliving solutions can be attributed to microorganisms that were already present in the air or in the fluids themselves. Scientists now believe that a form of spontaneous generation probably did occur on the primitive Earth when life first began, but they agree that this does not happen under today's environmental conditions.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **1-7** What evidence supported spontaneous generation?
- **1-8** How was spontaneous generation disproved?

The First Golden Age of Microbiology

The period from 1857 to 1914 has been appropriately named the First Golden Age of Microbiology. Rapid advances, spearheaded mainly by Pasteur and Robert Koch, led to the establishment of microbiology. Discoveries included both the agents of many diseases and the role of immunity in preventing and curing disease. During this productive period, microbiologists studied the chemical activities of microorganisms, improved the techniques for performing microscopy and culturing microorganisms, and developed vaccines and surgical techniques. Some of the major events that occurred during the First Golden Age of Microbiology are listed in Figure 1.5.

Fermentation and Pasteurization

One of the key steps that established the relationship between microorganisms and disease occurred when a group of French merchants asked Pasteur to find out why wine and beer soured. They hoped to develop a method that would prevent spoilage when those beverages were shipped long distances. At the time, many scientists believed that air converted the sugars in these

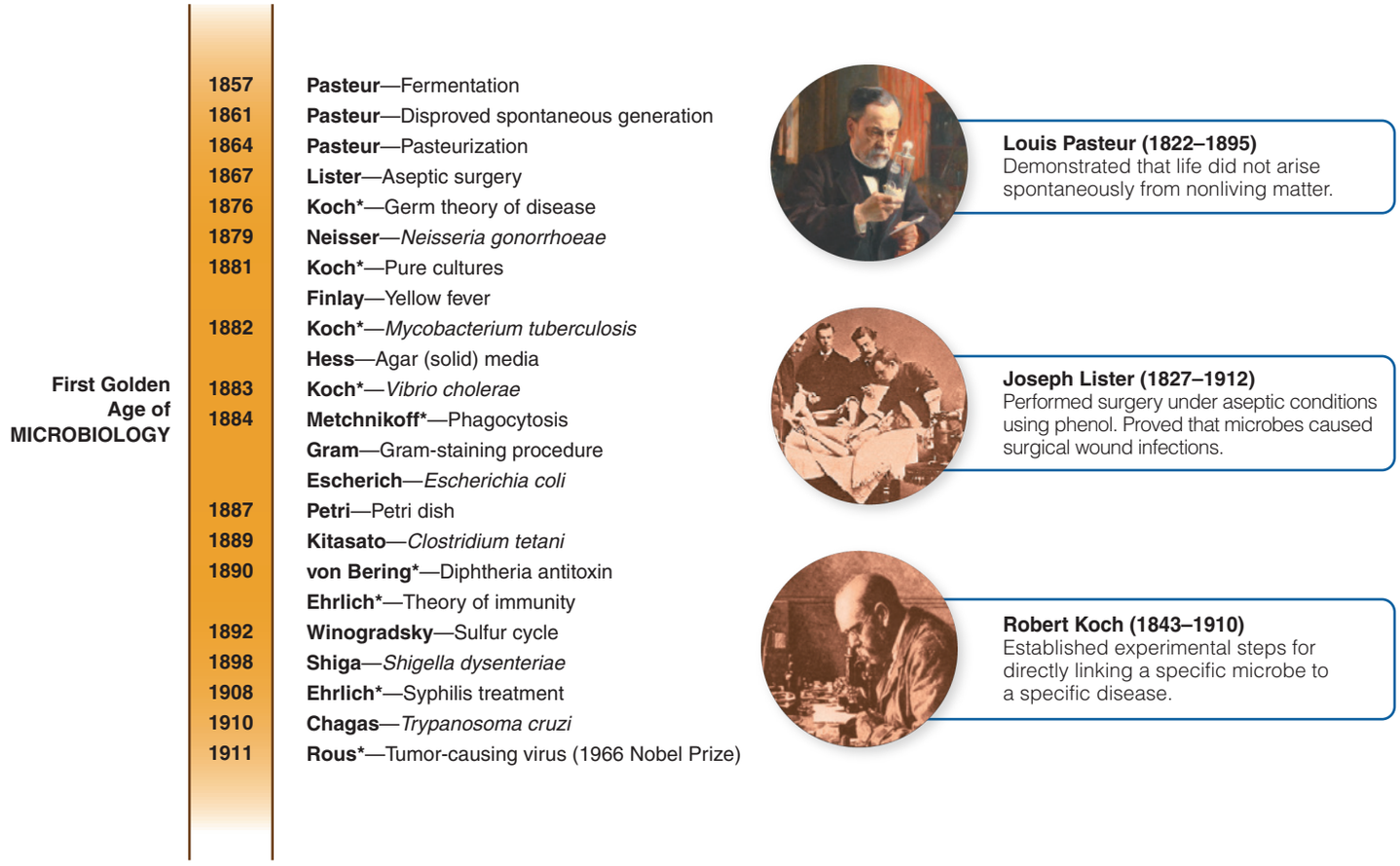


Figure 1.5 Milestones in the First Golden Age of Microbiology. An asterisk (*) indicates a Nobel laureate.

Q Why do you think the First Golden Age of Microbiology occurred when it did?

fluids into alcohol. Pasteur found instead that microorganisms called yeasts convert the sugars to alcohol in the absence of air. This process, called **fermentation** (see Chapter 5), is used to make wine and beer. Souring and spoilage are caused by different microorganisms, called bacteria. In the presence of air, bacteria change the alcohol into vinegar (acetic acid).

Pasteur's solution to the spoilage problem was to heat the beer and wine just enough to kill most of the bacteria that caused the spoilage. The process, called **pasteurization**, is now commonly used to reduce spoilage and kill potentially harmful bacteria in milk and other beverages as well as in some alcoholic beverages.

The Germ Theory of Disease

Before the time of Pasteur, effective treatments for many diseases were discovered by trial and error, but the causes of the diseases were unknown. In the tenth century, Islamic scholars wrote that contagious diseases could be transmitted by breath, food, water, and clothing. The most important of these scholars, Ibn Sina, suggested 40-day quarantines to reduce the spread of disease. Still, centuries passed before Pasteur's discovery that yeasts play a crucial role in fermentation became the first link between the activity of a microorganism and physical and chemical changes in organic materials. This discovery alerted scientists to the possibility that microorganisms might have similar relationships with plants and animals—specifically, that microorganisms might cause disease. This idea was known as the **germ theory of disease**.

The germ theory met great resistance at first—for centuries, disease was believed to be punishment for an individual's crimes or misdeeds. When the inhabitants of an entire village became ill, people often blamed the disease on demons appearing as foul odors from sewage or on poisonous vapors from swamps. Most people born in Pasteur's time found it inconceivable that "invisible" microbes could travel through the air to infect plants and animals or remain on clothing and bedding to be transmitted from one person to another. Despite these doubts, scientists gradually accumulated the information needed to support the new germ theory.

In 1865, Pasteur was called upon to help fight silkworm disease, which was ruining the silk industry in Europe. Decades earlier, amateur microscopist Agostino Bassi had proved that another silkworm disease was caused by a fungus. Using data provided by Bassi, Pasteur found that the more recent infection was caused by a protozoan, and he developed a method for recognizing afflicted silkworm moths.

In the 1860s, Joseph Lister, an English surgeon, applied the germ theory to medical procedures. Lister was aware that in the 1840s, the Hungarian physician Ignaz Semmelweis had demonstrated that physicians, who at the time did not disinfect their hands, routinely transmitted infections (puerperal, or childbirth, fever) from one obstetrical patient to another. Lister had also heard of Pasteur's work connecting microbes to animal diseases. Disinfectants were not used at the time, but Lister knew that phenol (carbolic acid) kills bacteria, so he began treating surgical wounds with a phenol solution. The practice so reduced the incidence of infections and deaths that other surgeons quickly adopted it. His findings proved that microorganisms cause surgical wound infections.

The first proof that bacteria actually cause disease came from Robert Koch (kōk) in 1876. Koch, a German physician, was Pasteur's rival in the race to discover the cause of anthrax, a disease that was destroying cattle and sheep in Europe. Koch discovered rod-shaped bacteria, now known as *Bacillus anthracis* (bah-SIL-lus an-THRĀ-sis), in the blood of cattle that had died of anthrax. He cultured the bacteria on nutrients and then injected samples of the culture into healthy animals. When these animals became sick and died, Koch isolated the bacteria in their blood and compared them with the originally isolated bacteria. He found that the two sets of blood cultures contained the same bacteria.

Koch thus established **Koch's postulates**, a sequence of experimental steps for directly relating a specific microbe to a specific disease (see Figure 14.3). During the past 100 years, these same criteria have been invaluable in investigations proving that specific microorganisms cause many diseases. Koch's postulates, their limitations, and their application to disease will be discussed in greater detail in Chapter 14.

Vaccination

Often a treatment or preventive procedure is developed before scientists know why it works. The smallpox vaccine is an example. Almost 70 years before Koch established that a specific microorganism causes anthrax, Edward Jenner, a young British physician, embarked on an experiment to find a way to protect people from smallpox. The disease periodically swept through Europe, killing thousands, and it wiped out 90% of the Native Americans on the East Coast when European settlers first brought the infection to the New World.

When a young milkmaid informed Jenner that she couldn't get smallpox because she already had been sick from cowpox—a much milder disease—he decided to put the girl's story to the test. First Jenner collected scrapings from cowpox blisters. Then he inoculated a healthy 8-year-old volunteer with the cowpox material by scratching the child's arm with a pox-contaminated needle. The scratch turned into a raised bump. In a few days, the volunteer became mildly sick but recovered and never again contracted either cowpox or smallpox. The protection from disease provided by vaccination (or by recovery from the disease itself) is called **immunity**. (We will discuss the mechanisms of immunity in Chapter 17.)

Years after Jenner's experiment, Pasteur discovered why vaccinations work. He found that the bacterium that causes fowl cholera lost its ability to cause disease (lost its *virulence*, or became *avirulent*) after it was grown in the laboratory for long periods. However, it—and other microorganisms with decreased virulence—was able to induce immunity against subsequent infections by its virulent counterparts. The discovery of this phenomenon provided a clue to Jenner's successful experiment with cowpox. Both cowpox and smallpox are caused by viruses. Even

though cowpox virus is not a laboratory-produced derivative of smallpox virus, it is so closely related to the smallpox virus that it can induce immunity to both viruses. Pasteur used the term *vaccine* for cultures of avirulent microorganisms used for preventive inoculation. (The Latin word *vacca* means cow—thus, the term *vaccine* honored Jenner's earlier cowpox inoculation work.)

Jenner's experiment was actually not the first time a living viral agent—in this case, the cowpox virus—was used to produce immunity. Starting in the 1500s, physicians in China had immunized patients from smallpox by removing scales from drying pustules of a person suffering from a mild case of smallpox, grinding the scales to a fine powder, and inserting the powder into the nose of the person to be protected.

Some vaccines are still produced from avirulent microbial strains that stimulate immunity to the related virulent strain. Other vaccines are made from killed virulent microbes, from isolated components of virulent microorganisms, or by genetic engineering techniques. In Chapter 18, we discuss how the various vaccines against COVID-19 work.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **1-9** Summarize in your own words the germ theory of disease.
- **1-10** What is the importance of Koch's postulates?
- **1-11** What is the significance of Jenner's discovery?

The Second Golden Age of Microbiology

After the relationship between microorganisms and disease was established, medical microbiologists next focused on the search for substances that could destroy pathogenic microorganisms without damaging the infected animal or human.

Treatment of disease using chemical substances is called **chemotherapy**. (The term also commonly refers to chemical treatment of noninfectious diseases, such as cancer.) Chemicals produced naturally by bacteria and fungi that act against bacteria are called **antibiotics**. Chemotherapeutic agents prepared from chemicals in the laboratory are called **synthetic drugs**. The success of chemotherapy is based on the fact that some chemicals are more poisonous to microorganisms than to the hosts infected by the microbes. Antimicrobial therapy will be discussed in further detail in Chapter 20.

The First Synthetic Drugs

Paul Ehrlich was the imaginative thinker who fired the first shot in the chemotherapy revolution. As a medical student, Ehrlich speculated about a "magic bullet" that could hunt down and destroy a pathogen without harming the infected host. In 1910, after testing hundreds of substances, he found a chemotherapeutic agent called *salvarsan*, an arsenic derivative effective against syphilis. The agent was named *salvarsan* because it was considered to offer salvation from syphilis and it contained arsenic. Before this discovery, the only known chemical in Europe's medical arsenal was an extract from the bark of a South American tree, *quinine*, which had been used by Spanish conquistadors to treat malaria.

By the late 1930s, researchers had developed several other synthetic drugs that could destroy microorganisms. Most of these drugs were derivatives of dyes. This came about because the dyes synthesized and manufactured for fabrics were routinely tested for antimicrobial qualities by microbiologists looking for a "magic bullet." In addition, *sulfonamides* (sulfa drugs) were synthesized at about the same time.

A Fortunate Accident—Antibiotics

The first antibiotic was discovered by accident. Alexander Fleming, a Scottish physician and bacteriologist, almost tossed out some culture plates that had been contaminated by mold. Fortunately, he noticed the curious pattern of growth on the plates—a clear area where bacterial growth had been inhibited encircled the mold (Figure 1.6). Fleming was looking at a mold that inhibited growth of a bacterium. The mold became known as *Penicillium chrysogenum* (pen'i-SIL-lē-um krī-SO-jen-um), and the mold's active inhibitor was called *penicillin*. Thus, penicillin is an antibiotic produced by a fungus. The Second Golden Age of Microbiology began in the 1940s, when the enormous usefulness of penicillin became apparent and the drug came into common use.

Since these early discoveries, thousands of other antibiotics have been discovered. Unfortunately, use of antibiotics and other chemotherapeutic drugs is not without problems. Many antimicrobial chemicals kill pathogenic microbes but also damage the infected host. For reasons we will discuss later, toxicity to humans is a particular problem in the development of drugs for treating viral diseases. Viral growth depends on life processes of normal host cells. Thus, there are very few successful antiviral drugs, because a drug that would interfere with viral reproduction would also likely affect uninfected cells of the body.

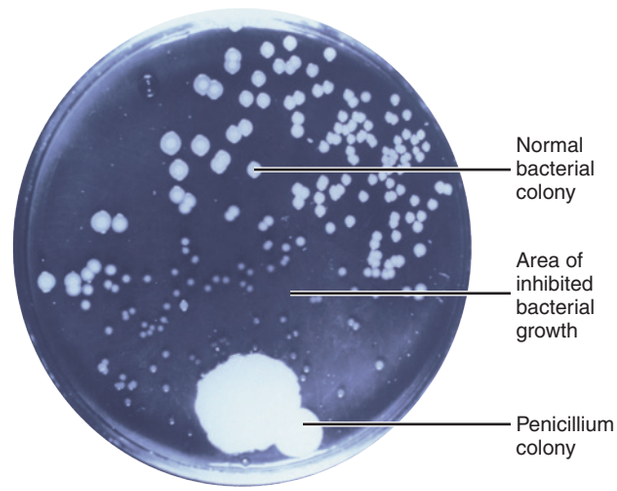


Figure 1.6 The discovery of penicillin. Alexander Fleming took this photograph in 1928. The colony of *Penicillium* mold accidentally contaminated the plate and inhibited nearby bacterial growth.

Q Why do you think penicillin is no longer as effective as it once was?

Over the years, more and more microbes also developed resistance to antibiotics that were once very effective against them. Drug resistance results from genetic changes in microbes that enable them to tolerate a certain amount of an antibiotic that would normally inhibit them (see the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 26). For example, a microbe might produce enzymes that inactivate antibiotics, or a microbe might undergo changes to its surface that prevent an antibiotic from attaching to it or entering it.

The recent appearance of vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus* and *Enterococcus faecalis* (en′ter-ō-KOK-kus fē-KĀ-lis) has alarmed health care professionals because it indicates that some previously treatable bacterial infections may soon be impossible to treat with antibiotics.

The quest to solve drug resistance, identify viruses, and develop vaccines requires sophisticated research techniques and correlated studies that were never dreamed of in the days of Koch and Pasteur. Other microbiologists also use these techniques to investigate industrial applications and roles of microorganisms in the environment.

Bacteriology, Mycology, and Parasitology

The groundwork laid during the First Golden Age of Microbiology provided the basis for several monumental achievements in the years following that era (**Figure 1.7**). New branches of microbiology were developed, including immunology and virology.

Second Golden Age of MICROBIOLOGY

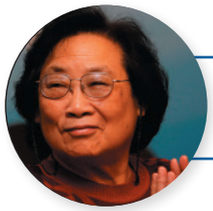
1940s **Fleming, Chain, and Florey**—Penicillin
1950s **Waksman**—Streptomycin
H. Krebs—Chemical steps of the Krebs cycle
Enders, Weller, and Robbins—Poliovirus cultured in cell cultures
Beadle and Tatum—Genetic control of biochemical reactions
1960s **Medawar**—Acquired immune tolerance
1980s **Sanger and Gilbert**—Techniques for sequencing DNA
Jerne, Köhler, and Milstein—Technique for producing monoclonal (single pure) antibodies
Tonegawa—Genetics of antibody production
Bishop and Varmus—Cancer-causing genes (oncogenes)

Third Golden Age of MICROBIOLOGY

1990s **Murray and Thomas**—First successful transplants using immunosuppressive drugs
Fischer and E. Krebs—Enzymes that regulate cell growth (protein kinases)
Roberts and Sharp—Genes can be present in separated segments of DNA
Mullis—Polymerase chain reaction that amplifies (make multiple copies of) DNA
Doherty and Zinkernagel—Cell-mediated immunity
2000s **Agre and MacKinnon**—Water and ion channels in plasma membranes
Marshall and Warren—*Helicobacter pylori* as the cause of peptic ulcers
Barré-Sinoussi and Montagnier—Discovery of HIV
2010s **Ramakrishnan, Steitz, and Yonath**—Detailed structure and function of ribosomes
Beutler, Hoffmann, and Steinman—Innate immunity; dendritic cells in adaptive immunity
Tu—Treatment for malaria
2020s **Campbell and Omura**—Discovery of ivermectin
Charpentier and Doudna—Genome editing
Alter, Houghton, and Rice—Discovery of hepatitis C virus

César Milstein (1927–2002)
Fused cancerous cells with antibody-producing cells to produce a hybrid cell that grows continuously and produces therapeutic antibodies.

Françoise Barré-Sinoussi (1947–)
Discovered a virus in a patient with swollen lymph nodes; the virus was human immunodeficiency virus.

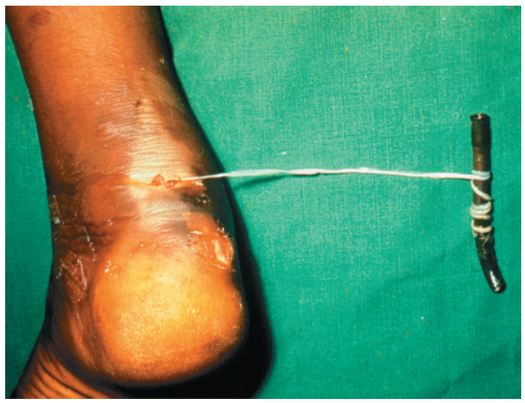


Youyou Tu (1930–)
Extracted artemisinin from a Chinese sage plant. Artemisinin inhibits the malaria parasite.

Emmanuelle Charpentier (1968–) and Jennifer Douda (1964–)
Developed the gene editing technique CRISPR/Cas9.

Figure 1.7 Second and Third Golden Ages of Microbiology. All researchers listed are Nobel laureates.

Q What advances occurred during the Second Golden Age of Microbiology?



(a) A parasitic guinea worm (*Dracunculus medinensis*) is removed from the subcutaneous tissue of a patient by winding it onto a stick. This procedure may have been used for the design of the symbol in part (b).

(b) Rod of Asclepius, symbol of the medical profession

Figure 1.8 Parasitology: the study of protozoa and parasitic worms.

Q How do you think parasitic worms survive and live off a human host?

Bacteriology, the study of bacteria, began with van Leeuwenhoek's first examination of tooth scrapings. New pathogenic bacteria are still discovered regularly. Many bacteriologists, like Pasteur, look at the roles of bacteria in food and the environment. One intriguing discovery came in 1997, when Heide Schulz discovered a bacterium large enough to be seen with the unaided eye (0.2 mm wide). This bacterium, named *Thiomargarita namibiensis* (THĪ-ō-mar-ga-rē-tah nah′mib-ē-EN-sis), lives in mud on the African coast. *Thiomargarita* is unusual because of its size and its ecological niche. The bacterium consumes hydrogen sulfide, which would be toxic to mud-dwelling animals (Figure 11.28).

Mycology, the study of fungi, includes medical, agricultural, and ecological branches. Fungal infection rates have been rising during the past decade, accounting for 10% of hospital-acquired infections. Climatic and environmental changes (severe drought) are thought to account for the tenfold increase in *Coccidioides immitis* (kok′sid-ē-OY-dēz IM-mi-tis) infections in California. New techniques for diagnosing and treating fungal infections are currently being investigated.

Parasitology is the study of protozoa and parasitic worms. Because many parasitic worms are large enough to be seen with the unaided eye, they have been known for thousands of years. It has been speculated that the medical symbol, the rod of Asclepius, represents the removal of parasitic guinea worms (Figure 1.8). Asclepius was a Greek physician who practiced about 1200 B.C.E. and was deified as the god of medicine.

The clearing of rain forests has exposed laborers to previously undiscovered parasites. Parasitic diseases unknown until recently are also being found in patients whose immune systems have been suppressed by organ transplants, cancer chemotherapy, or AIDS.

Immunology

Immunology is the study of immunity. Knowledge about the immune system has accumulated steadily and expanded rapidly. Vaccines are now available for numerous diseases, including measles, rubella (German measles), mumps, chickenpox, pneumococcal pneumonia, tetanus, tuberculosis, influenza, whooping cough, polio, and hepatitis B. The smallpox vaccine was so effective that the disease has been eliminated. Public health officials estimate that polio could be eradicated within a few years because of the polio vaccine.

A major advance in immunology occurred in 1933, when Rebecca Lancefield (Figure 1.9) proposed that streptococci be classified according to serotypes (variants within a species) based on certain components in the cell walls of the bacteria. This allowed for prevention of the variety of diseases caused by *Streptococcus pyogenes*, such as sore throat (strep throat), scarlet fever, and septicemia (blood poisoning).

In 1960, interferons, substances generated by the body's own immune system, were discovered. Interferons inhibit replication of viruses and have triggered considerable research related to the treatment of viral diseases and cancer. One of today's biggest challenges for immunologists is learning how the immune system might be stimulated to ward off the virus responsible for AIDS, a disease that destroys the immune system.

Virology

The study of viruses, **virology**, originated during the First Golden Age of Microbiology. In 1892, Dmitri Iwanowski reported that the organism that caused mosaic disease of tobacco was so small

Figure 1.9 Rebecca Lancefield (1895–1981), who discovered differences in the chemical composition of a polysaccharide in the cell walls of many pathogenic streptococci. Rapid laboratory tests using immunologic techniques now identify and classify streptococci into Lancefield groups based on this carbohydrate.

Q Why is it important to identify streptococci quickly?

that it passed through filters fine enough to stop all known bacteria. At the time, Iwanowski was not aware that the organism in question was a virus. In 1935, Wendell Stanley demonstrated that the organism, called tobacco mosaic virus (TMV), was fundamentally different from other microbes and so simple and homogeneous that it could be crystallized like a chemical compound. Stanley's work facilitated the study of viral structure and chemistry. Since the development of the electron microscope in the 1930s, microbiologists have been able to observe the structure of viruses in detail, and today much is known about their structure and activity.

Molecular Genetics

Once science turned to the study of unicellular life, rapid progress was made in genetics. **Microbial genetics** studies the mechanisms by which microorganisms inherit traits, and **molecular biology** looks at how genetic information is carried in molecules of DNA.

In the 1940s, George W. Beadle and Edward L. Tatum demonstrated the relationship between genes and enzymes; DNA was established as the hereditary material by Oswald Avery, Colin MacLeod, and Maclyn McCarty. Joshua Lederberg and Edward L. Tatum discovered that genetic material could be transferred from one bacterium to another by a process called conjugation. Then in the 1950s, James Watson and Francis Crick proposed a model for the structure and replication of DNA. In the early 1960s, François Jacob and Jacques Monod discovered messenger RNA (ribonucleic acid), a chemical involved in protein synthesis, and later they made the first major discoveries about the regulation of gene function in bacteria. During the same period, scientists were able to break the genetic code and thus understand how the information for protein synthesis in messenger RNA is translated into the amino acid sequence for making proteins.

Although molecular genetics encompasses all organisms, much of our knowledge of how genes determine specific traits has been revealed through experiments with bacteria. Unicellular organisms, primarily bacteria, have several advantages for genetic and biochemical research. Bacteria are less complex than plants and animals, and many bacteria can reproduce in less than an hour, so scientists can cultivate very large numbers of bacteria for study in a relatively short time.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **1-12** What was Ehrlich's "magic bullet"?
- **1-13** Define *bacteriology*, *mycology*, *parasitology*, *immunology*, and *virology*.

The Third Golden Age of Microbiology

Evolutionary biologist Stephen Jay Gould once said that we now live in the "age of bacteria." The bacteria aren't new, but our understanding of their importance to the Earth and to our health is. New DNA-sequencing tools and computers allow investigators to study all the DNA in an organism, helping them to identify genes and their functions and to study the evolution of antibiotic resistance in bacteria. Moreover, through **genomics**, the study of all of an organism's genes, scientists are able to classify bacteria and fungi according to their genetic relationships with other bacteria, fungi, and protozoa. These microorganisms were originally classified according to a limited number of visible characteristics. The tools of genomics are being used to identify microbes in the ocean, on leaves, and on humans, many of which are newly discovered and haven't been grown in laboratories.

Discoveries being made during the Third Golden Age of Microbiology are also demonstrating the importance of microbiomes, introduced earlier. These studies are in their infancy. The Exploring the Microbiome boxes throughout this textbook discuss current findings on the relationship between microbes and human health. We also include some studies of natural and built environments to emphasize that environmental microbiomes are important to the Earth's ecosystems as well as to humans. Exploring the Microbiome boxes also show you how microbes are studied through genomics and metabolism. Each describes a discovery and usually ends with a question about what is yet to be discovered to understand whether a change in the microbiome is the cause or result of a disease.

Microorganisms can now be genetically modified to manufacture large amounts of human hormones and other urgently needed medical substances. This development had its origins in the late 1960s, when Paul Berg showed that fragments of human or animal DNA (genes) that code for important proteins can be attached to bacterial DNA. The resulting hybrid was the first example of **recombinant DNA**. **Recombinant DNA (rDNA) technology** inserts recombinant DNA into bacteria (or other microbes) to make large quantities of a desired protein. The development of recombinant DNA technology has revolutionized research and practical applications in all areas of microbiology.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **1-14** Differentiate microbial genetics, molecular biology, and genomics.

Microbes and Human Welfare

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

1-15 List at least four beneficial activities of microorganisms.

1-16 Name two examples of biotechnology that use recombinant DNA technology and two examples that do not.

As mentioned earlier, only a minority of all microorganisms are pathogenic. Microbes that cause food spoilage—such as soft spots on fruits and vegetables, decomposition of meats, and

rancidity of fats and oils—are also a minority. The vast majority of microbes benefit humans, other animals, and plants in many ways. For example, microbes produce methane and ethanol that can be used as alternative fuels to generate electricity and power vehicles. Biotechnology companies are using bacterial enzymes to break down plant cellulose so that yeast can metabolize the resulting simple sugars and produce ethanol. The following sections introduce some of these beneficial activities. In later chapters, we will discuss these activities in greater detail.

ASM: Microbes are essential for life as we know it and the processes that support life.

ASM: Humans utilize and harness microorganisms and their products.

Recycling Vital Elements

Discoveries made by two microbiologists in the 1880s have formed the basis for today's understanding of the biogeochemical cycles that support life on Earth. Martinus Beijerinck and Sergei Winogradsky were the first to show how bacteria help recycle vital elements between the soil and the atmosphere. **Microbial ecology**, the study of the relationship between microorganisms and their environment, originated with the work of these scientists. Today, microbial ecology has branched out and includes the study of how microbial populations interact with plants and animals in various environments. Among the concerns of microbial ecologists are water pollution and toxic chemicals in the environment.

The chemical elements carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, sulfur, and phosphorus are essential for life and abundant, but not necessarily accessible to plants and animals. Microorganisms are primarily responsible for converting these elements into forms that plants and animals can use. For example, bacteria and fungi return carbon dioxide to the atmosphere when they decompose organic wastes and dead plants and animals. Algae, cyanobacteria, and higher plants use the carbon dioxide during photosynthesis to produce carbohydrates used by animals, fungi, and bacteria. Nitrogen is abundant in the atmosphere but is not usable by plants and animals. Only bacteria can naturally convert atmospheric nitrogen to a form available to plants and animals.

Sewage Treatment: Using Microbes to Recycle Water

Our society's growing awareness of the need to preserve the environment has made people more conscious of the responsibility to recycle precious water and prevent pollution of rivers and oceans. One major pollutant is sewage, which consists of human excrement, wastewater, industrial wastes, and surface runoff. Sewage is about 99.9% water, with a few hundredths of 1% suspended solids. The remainder is a variety of dissolved materials.

Sewage treatment plants remove the undesirable materials and harmful microorganisms. Treatments combine various physical processes with the action of beneficial microbes. Large solids such as paper, wood, glass, gravel, and plastic are removed from sewage; left behind are liquid and organic materials that bacteria convert into such by-products as carbon dioxide, nitrates, phosphates, sulfates, ammonia, hydrogen sulfide, and methane. (We will discuss sewage treatment in detail in Chapter 27.)

Bioremediation: Using Microbes to Clean Up Pollutants

In 1988, scientists began using microbes to clean up pollutants and toxic wastes produced by various industrial processes. For example, some bacteria can actually use pollutants as energy sources; others produce enzymes that break down toxins into less harmful substances. By using bacteria in these ways—a process known as **bioremediation**—toxins can be removed from underground wells, chemical spills, toxic waste sites, and oil spills, such as the massive oil spill from a British Petroleum offshore drilling rig in the Gulf of Mexico in 2010. In addition, bacterial enzymes are used in drain cleaners to remove clogs without adding harmful chemicals to the environment. In some cases, microorganisms indigenous to the environment are used; in others, genetically modified microbes are used. Among the most commonly used microbes are certain species of bacteria of the genera *Pseudomonas* and *Bacillus*. *Bacillus* enzymes are also used in household detergents to remove spots from clothing.

Insect Pest Control by Microorganisms

Besides spreading diseases, insects can cause devastating crop damage. Insect pest control is therefore important for both agriculture and the prevention of human disease.

The bacterium *Bacillus thuringiensis* (ther-IN-jē-en-sis) has been used extensively in the United States to control such pests as alfalfa caterpillars, bollworms, corn borers, cabbageworms, tobacco budworms, and fruit tree leaf rollers. It is incorporated into a dusting powder that is applied to the crops these insects eat. The bacteria produce protein crystals that are toxic to the digestive systems of the insects. The toxin gene also has been inserted into some plants to make them insect resistant.

By using microbial rather than chemical insect control, farmers can avoid harming the environment. In contrast, many chemical insecticides, such as DDT, remain in the soil as toxic pollutants and are eventually incorporated into the food chain.

Biotechnology and Recombinant DNA Technology

Earlier we touched on the commercial use of microorganisms to produce some common foods and chemicals. Such

practical applications of microbiology are called **biotechnology**. Although biotechnology has been used in some form for centuries, techniques have become much more sophisticated in the past few decades. In the last several years, biotechnology has undergone a revolution through the advent of recombinant DNA technology to expand the potential of bacteria, viruses, and yeast and other fungi as miniature biochemical factories. Cultured plant and animal cells, as well as intact plants and animals, are also used as recombinant cells and organisms.

The applications of recombinant DNA technology are increasing with each passing year. Recombinant DNA techniques have been used thus far to produce a number of natural proteins, vaccines, and enzymes. Such substances have great potential for medical use; some of them are described in Table 9.2.

A very exciting and important outcome of recombinant DNA techniques is **gene therapy**—inserting a missing gene or replacing a defective one in human cells. This technique uses an enzyme or harmless virus to carry the missing or new gene into certain host cells, where the gene is picked up and inserted into the appropriate chromosome. Since 1990, gene therapy has been used to treat patients with adenosine deaminase (ADA) deficiency, a cause of severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID), in which cells of the immune system are inactive or missing; Duchenne's muscular dystrophy, a muscle-destroying disease; cystic fibrosis, a disease of the secreting portions of the respiratory passages, pancreas, salivary glands, and sweat glands; and LDL-receptor deficiency, a condition in which low-density lipoprotein (LDL) receptors are defective and LDL cannot enter cells. The LDL remains in the blood in high concentrations and leads to fatty plaque formation in blood vessels, increasing the risk of atherosclerosis and coronary heart disease. Results of gene therapy are still being evaluated. Other genetic diseases may also be treatable by gene therapy in the future, including hemophilia, an inability of the blood to clot normally; diabetes, elevated blood sugar levels; and sickle cell disease, caused by an abnormal kind of hemoglobin, a protein in red blood cells.

Recombinant DNA techniques have also been applied to agriculture. For example, genetically altered strains of bacteria have been developed to protect fruit against frost damage, and bacteria are being modified to control insects that damage crops. Recombinant DNA has also been used to improve the appearance, flavor, and shelf life of fruits and vegetables. Potential agricultural uses of recombinant DNA include drought resistance, resistance to insects and microbial diseases, and increased temperature tolerance in crops.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **1-15** Name two beneficial uses of bacteria.
- **1-16** Differentiate biotechnology from recombinant DNA technology.

Microbes and Human Disease

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

1-17 Define *resistance*.

1-18 Define *biofilm*.

1-19 Define *emerging infectious disease*.

When is a microbe a welcome part of a healthy human, and when is it a harbinger of disease? The distinction between health and disease is in large part a balance between the natural defenses of the body and the disease-producing properties of microorganisms. Whether our bodies overcome the offensive tactics of a particular microbe depends on our **resistance**—the ability to ward off diseases. Important resistance is provided by the barrier of the skin, mucous membranes, and the defensive cells and chemicals of our immune system (Chapters 16–19). Sometimes, when our natural defenses are not strong enough to overcome an invader, they have to be supplemented by antibiotics or other drugs.

Biofilms

In nature, microorganisms may exist as single cells that float or swim independently in a liquid, or they may attach to each other and/or some usually solid surface. This latter form is called a **biofilm**, a complex aggregation of microbes. The slime covering a rock in a lake is a biofilm. Use your tongue to feel the biofilm on your teeth. Biofilms can be beneficial. They protect your mucous membranes from harmful microbes, and biofilms in lakes are an important food for aquatic animals. Biofilms can also be harmful. They can clog water pipes, and on medical implants such as joint prostheses and catheters (**Figure 1.10**), they can cause such infections as endocarditis (inflammation of the heart). Bacteria in biofilms are often resistant to antibiotics because the biofilm offers a protective barrier. Biofilms will be discussed in Chapter 6.

CLINICAL CASE

"Staph" is the common name for *S. aureus* bacteria, which are carried on the skin of about 30% of the human population. Although Andrea is diligent about taking her antibiotic as prescribed, she doesn't seem to be improving. After 3 days, the lesion on her wrist is even larger than before and is now draining yellow pus. Andrea also develops a fever. Her mother insists that she call her doctor to tell him about the latest developments.

Why does Andrea's infection persist after treatment?

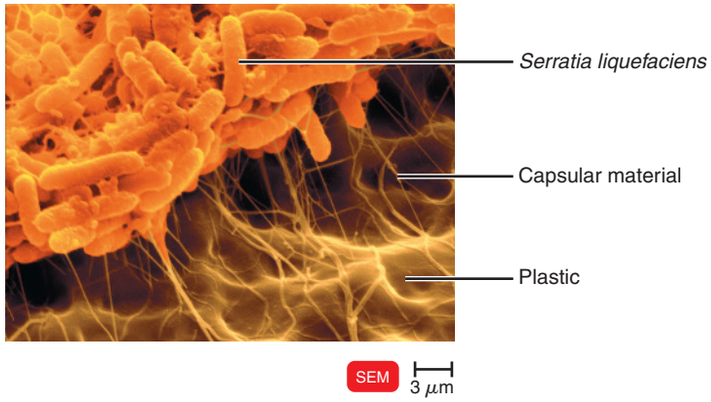


Figure 1.10 Biofilm on a piece of plastic. Bacteria stick to solid surfaces, forming a slimy layer. The filaments in the photo may be capsular material. Bacteria that break away from biofilms on medical implants can cause infections.

Q How does a biofilm's protective barrier make it resistant to antibiotics?

Infectious Diseases

An **infectious disease** is a disease in which pathogens invade a susceptible host, such as a human or an animal. In the process, the pathogen carries out at least part of its life cycle inside the host, and disease frequently results. By the end of World War II, many people believed that infectious diseases were under control. They thought malaria would be eradicated through the use of the insecticide DDT to kill mosquitoes; that a vaccine would prevent outbreaks of measles, pertussis, and other infectious diseases of childhood; and that improved sanitation measures would stop the transmission of cholera. Expectations did not match reality: Malaria is far from eradicated; since 1986, outbreaks have been identified throughout the United States, and the disease infects over 200 million people worldwide. Vaccination has decreased the incidence of measles, pertussis, and many other vaccine-preventable diseases, but the presence of unvaccinated people means that outbreaks still occur. And cholera outbreaks still occur in parts of the world lacking adequate sanitation infrastructure.

Emerging Infectious Diseases

Recent outbreaks of COVID-19 and MPOX point to the fact that infectious diseases are not disappearing, but rather seem to be emerging or reemerging. **Emerging infectious diseases (EIDs)** are diseases that are new or changing and are either increasing in incidence or have the potential to increase in the near future. Some of the factors that have contributed to the development of EIDs are evolutionary changes in existing organisms (e.g., antibiotic-resistant bacteria) and the spread of known diseases to new geographic regions or populations by modern transportation. The majority of EIDs are zoonoses, that is, pathogens transmitted from nonhuman animals to humans. These EIDs result from increased human exposure to new, unusual infectious agents in areas that are undergoing ecologic changes such as deforestation and construction (e.g., Venezuelan hemorrhagic virus). Some EIDs are due to changes in the pathogen's ecology. For example, in the past, Powassan virus (POWV) was transmitted by ticks that don't usually bite humans. However, the virus recently became established in the same deer ticks that transmit Lyme disease. An increasing number of incidents in recent years highlights the extent of the problem.

Coronavirus Disease-2019

Coronaviruses are a large family of viruses that can cause illnesses ranging from the common cold to respiratory failure. The term *corona*, meaning crown, refers to the crown-like spikes on the surface of the virus (Figure 1.2e). **Coronavirus disease-2019**, also known as **COVID-19** (*CO*rona*VI*rus *D*isease-20*19*), was first recognized in December 2019 in China and was declared a *pandemic* (a disease affecting a large number of people worldwide) in March 2020. It is caused by a new coronavirus called severe acute respiratory coronavirus-2 (SARS-CoV-2). However, this was actually the third emergence of a zoonotic *Coronavirus* in the twenty-first century. In 2002, an outbreak of pneumonia occurred in China and spread to nearly 30 countries. The disease was called **severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS)** and the pathogen SARS-*Coronavirus*. In 2012, a second respiratory syndrome linked to a coronavirus emerged in Saudi Arabia. Called **Middle East respiratory syndrome (MERS)**, it is caused by MERS-*Coronavirus*. MERS quickly spread to Europe and Asia, and two travel-associated cases occurred in the United States. Since 2014, there have been 2589 confirmed human cases and 893 deaths. In contrast, COVID-19 has caused more than 6.5 million deaths worldwide. As the emergence of these related pathogens shows, viruses constantly change through mutation. These mutations can result in the emergence of new variants that are more easily transmitted or cause more severe disease. Some variants emerge and disappear, whereas others persist.

MPOX Disease

MPOX is a viral disease that causes a flu-like illness and painful rash. The pathogen is an *Orthopoxvirus*, a genus that includes the smallpox virus, an often-fatal disease that has been eradicated. The MPOX virus is found naturally in rodents, and the disease is endemic is 16 countries in west and central Africa. In 2022, the disease appeared in over 30 thousand people in nonendemic countries, including the United States, Australia, and several countries in western Europe, and the World Health Organization declared it a global public health emergency. These infections were not associated with travel; they were transmitted human-to-human by prolonged direct contact. A vaccine and effective chemotherapy are available.

Zika Virus Disease

In 2015, the world became aware of Zika virus disease. Zika virus is spread by the bite of an infected *Aedes* mosquito; sexual transmission has also occurred. Zika is a mild disease usually presenting with fever, rash, and joint pain. However, Zika infection during pregnancy can cause severe birth defects in a fetus. The virus was discovered in 1947 in the Zika Forest of Uganda, but until 2007, only 14 cases of Zika virus disease were known. The first Zika epidemic occurred on the island of Yap in Micronesia in 2007, when 73% of the people became infected. Between 2013 and 2015, Zika epidemics occurred in French Polynesia and Brazil. Nearly 5000 cases of Zika have occurred in the United States. Until mid-2016, they were all acquired during travel to endemic areas (except one laboratory-acquired infection). However, the first U.S. cases of transmission by mosquitoes occurred during the summer of 2016 when 224 people were infected.

Influenza

Influenza A viruses are found in many different animals, including ducks, chickens, pigs, whales, horses, and seals. Normally, each subtype of influenza A virus is specific to certain species. However, influenza A viruses normally seen in one species sometimes can cross over and cause illness in another species, and all subtypes of influenza A virus can infect pigs. Although it is unusual for people to get influenza infections directly from animals, sporadic human infections and outbreaks caused by certain avian influenza A viruses and pig influenza viruses have been reported. Fortunately, those viruses have not yet evolved to be transmitted successfully among humans.

Two influenza A viruses have emerged in the past two decades as pathogens of concern. **H1N1 influenza (flu)**, also known as *swine flu*, is caused by a new strain called *influenza H1N1*. This strain was first detected in the United States in 2009, and that same year WHO declared H1N1 flu to be a pandemic. **Avian influenza A (H5N1)**, or **bird flu**, caught the attention of the public in 2003, when it killed millions of poultry and 24 people in southeast Asia. Avian influenza viruses occur in birds worldwide. In 2013, a different avian influenza, H7N9, sickened 131 people in China. In 2015, two cases of H7N9 were reported in Canada.

Human infections with swine and avian influenza viruses have not resulted in sustained human-to-human transmission. However, because influenza viruses have the potential to change and gain the ability to spread easily between people, monitoring for human infection and person-to-person transmission is important (see the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 13).

Antibiotic-Resistant Infections

Antibiotics are critical in treating bacterial infections. However, years of overuse and misuse of these drugs have created environments in which antibiotic-resistant bacteria thrive. Random mutations in bacterial genes can make a bacterium resistant to an antibiotic. In the presence of that antibiotic, this bacterium has an advantage over other, susceptible bacteria and is able to proliferate. Antibiotic-resistant bacteria have become a global health crisis.

S. aureus causes a wide range of human infections from pimples and boils to pneumonia, food poisoning, and surgical wound infections, and it is a significant cause of hospital-associated infections. After penicillin's initial success in treating *S. aureus* infection, penicillin-resistant *S. aureus* became a major threat in hospitals in the 1950s, requiring the use of methicillin. In the 1980s, **methicillin-resistant *S. aureus***, called **MRSA**, emerged and became endemic in many hospitals, leading to increasing use of vancomycin. In the late 1990s, *S. aureus* infections that were less sensitive to vancomycin (**vancomycin-intermediate *S. aureus***, or **VISA**) were reported. In 2002, the first infection caused by **vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus* (VRSA)** in a patient in the United States was reported.

In 2004, emergence of a new epidemic strain of *Clostridioides difficile* (klo-strid-ē-OY-dēz DIF-fi-sē-il) was reported. The epidemic strain produces more toxins than others and is more resistant to antibiotics. In the United States, *C. difficile* infections kill nearly 29,000 people a year. Nearly all of the *C. difficile* infections occur in health care settings, where the infection is frequently transmitted between patients via health care personnel whose hands are contaminated after contact with infected patients or their surrounding environment.

In 2021, the World Health Organization (WHO) reported that in China, India, and the Russian Federation, about 20% of all individuals with tuberculosis (TB) had the multidrug-resistant form of the disease (MDR-TB). Multidrug-resistant TB is caused by bacteria that are resistant to at least the antibiotics isoniazid and rifampicin, traditionally the most effective drugs against tuberculosis.

CLINICAL CASE

The *S. aureus* bacterium responsible for Andrea's infection is resistant to the β-lactam antibiotic prescribed by Andrea's doctor. Concerned about what his patient is telling him, Andrea's doctor calls the local hospital to let them know he is sending a patient over. In the emergency department, a nurse swabs Andrea's wound and sends it to the hospital lab for culturing. The culture shows that Andrea's infection is caused by methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA). MRSA produces β-lactamase, an enzyme that destroys β-lactam antibiotics. The attending physician surgically drains the pus from the sore on Andrea's wrist.

How does antibiotic resistance develop?

The antibacterial substances added to various household cleaning products inhibit bacterial growth when used correctly. However, wiping every household surface with these antibacterial agents creates an environment in which the resistant bacteria survive. Unfortunately, when you really need to disinfect your homes and hands—for example, when a family member comes home from a hospital and is still vulnerable to infection—you may encounter mainly resistant bacteria.

Routine housecleaning and handwashing are necessary, but standard soaps and detergents (without added antibacterials) are fine for these tasks. In addition, quickly evaporating chemicals, such as chlorine bleach, alcohol, ammonia, and hydrogen peroxide, remove potentially pathogenic bacteria but do not leave residues that encourage the growth of resistant bacteria.

Ebola Virus Disease

First detected in 1976 in Sudan and the Democratic Republic of the Congo (formerly Zaire), **Ebola virus disease** causes fever, hemorrhaging, and blood clotting in vessels. These outbreaks were caused by different strains of the virus: Sudan *Ebolavirus* and Zaire *Ebolavirus*. One-quarter of the infected people were health care workers. By 1994, when an outbreak in the Côte d'Ivoire occurred, the method of human-to-human transmission was better understood to be close personal contact with infectious blood or other body fluids or tissue (see Chapter 23); thus, this epidemic was controlled through use of protective equipment and educational measures in the community.

CLINICAL CASE

Mutations develop randomly in bacteria; some mutations are lethal, some have no effect, and some may be beneficial. Once these mutations develop, the offspring of the mutated parent cell also carry the same mutation. Because they have an advantage in the presence of the antibiotic, bacteria that are resistant to antibiotics soon outnumber those that are susceptible to antibiotic therapy. The widespread use of antibiotics selectively allows the resistant bacteria to grow, whereas the susceptible bacteria are killed. Eventually, almost the entire population of bacteria is resistant to the antibiotic.

The emergency department physician prescribes a different antibiotic, vancomycin, which will kill the MRSA in Andrea's wrist. She also explains to Andrea what MRSA is and why it's important they find out where Andrea acquired the potentially lethal bacteria.

What can the emergency department physician tell Andrea about MRSA?

In 2014, a new outbreak in West Africa occurred that became a global epidemic. The countries Sierra Leone, Guinea, and Liberia experienced the worst impacts, with over 28,000 people infected over the next 2 years. Over one-third of those infected died. A small number of health care workers from the United States and Europe who had been working with Ebola patients in Africa brought the disease back with them to their home countries, sparking fears that the disease would gain a foothold elsewhere in the world; however, widespread disease did not occur. Two Ebola vaccines are now available.

Marburg Virus

Recorded cases of **Marburg virus**, another hemorrhagic fever virus, are rare. The first cases, in 1967, were laboratory workers in Europe who handled African green monkeys from Uganda. Fourteen outbreaks were identified in Africa between 1975 and 2021 involving 1 to 252 people, with 57% mortality. African fruit bats are the natural reservoir for the *Marburgvirus*, and microbiologists suspect that bats are also the reservoir for *Ebolavirus*.

Undoubtedly, new diseases will emerge in the coming decades. Moreover, infectious diseases once controlled or even eradicated may reemerge because of antibiotic resistance (see the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 26), the breakdown of public health measures such as vaccination programs (see the Big Picture in Chapter 18), or the use of microorganisms as weapons (see the Big Picture in Chapter 24). But just as microbiological techniques helped researchers in the fight against syphilis and smallpox, they will help control the spread of emerging infectious diseases in the twenty-first century. Emerging infectious diseases will be discussed further in Chapter 14.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **1-17** Differentiate normal microbiota from microbes causing infectious disease.
- **1-18** Why are biofilms important?
- **1-19** What factors contribute to the emergence of an infectious disease?

* * *

The diseases we have mentioned are caused by viruses, bacteria, and protozoa—types of microorganisms. This book introduces you to the enormous variety of microscopic organisms. It shows you how microbiologists use specific techniques and procedures to study the microbes that cause such diseases as COVID-19, AIDS, and diarrhea—and diseases that have yet to be discovered. You will also learn how the body responds to microbial infection and how certain drugs combat microbial diseases. Finally, you will learn about the many beneficial roles that microbes play in the world around us.

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

The first MRSA was healthcare–associated MRSA (HA-MRSA), transmitted between staff and patients in health care settings. In the 1990s, infections by a genetically different strain, community-associated MRSA (CA-MRSA), emerged as a major cause of skin disease in the United States. CA-MRSA enters skin abrasions from environmental surfaces or other people. Andrea has never been hospitalized before now, so they are able to rule out the hospital as the source of infection. Her college courses are all online, so she didn't contract MRSA at the university, either. The local health department sends someone to her family home to swab for the bacteria there.

MRSA is isolated from Andrea's living room sofa, but how did it get there? A representative from the health department, knowing that clusters of CA-MRSA infections have been seen among athletes, suggests swabbing the mats used by the gymnasts at the school Andrea's sister attends. The cultures come back positive for MRSA. Andrea's sister, although not infected, transferred the bacteria from her skin to the sofa, where Andrea laid her arm. (A person can carry MRSA on the skin without becoming infected.) The bacteria entered through a scratch on Andrea's wrist.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 **Part 5**

Study Outline

Microbes in Our Lives (pp. 2–3)

1. Living things too small to be seen with the unaided eye are called microorganisms.
2. Microorganisms are important in maintaining Earth's ecological balance.
3. Everyone has microorganisms in and on the body; these make up the normal microbiota or human microbiome. The normal microbiota are needed to maintain good health.
4. Some microorganisms are used to produce foods and chemicals.
5. Some microorganisms cause disease.

Naming and Classifying Microorganisms (pp. 4–6)

Nomenclature (p. 4)

1. In a nomenclature system designed by Carolus Linnaeus (1735), each living organism is assigned two names.
2. The two names consist of a genus and a specific epithet, both of which are underlined or italicized.

Types of Microorganisms (pp. 4–6)

3. Bacteria are unicellular organisms. Because they have no nucleus, the cells are described as prokaryotic.
4. Most bacteria have a peptidoglycan cell wall; they divide by binary fission, and they may possess flagella.
5. Bacteria can use a wide range of chemical substances for their nutrition.
6. Archaea consist of prokaryotic cells; they lack peptidoglycan in their cell walls.
7. Archaea include methanogens, extreme halophiles, and extreme thermophiles.
8. Fungi (mushrooms, molds, and yeasts) have eukaryotic cells (cells with a true nucleus). Most fungi are multicellular.
9. Fungi obtain nutrients by absorbing organic material from their environment.
10. Protozoa are unicellular eukaryotes.
11. Protozoa obtain nourishment by absorption or ingestion through specialized structures.
12. Algae are unicellular or multicellular eukaryotes that obtain nourishment by photosynthesis.
13. Algae produce oxygen and carbohydrates that are used by other organisms.
14. Viruses are noncellular entities that are parasites of cells.
15. Viruses consist of a nucleic acid core (DNA or RNA) surrounded by a protein coat. An envelope may surround the coat.
16. The principal groups of multicellular animal parasites are flatworms and roundworms, collectively called helminths.
17. The microscopic stages in the life cycle of helminths are identified by traditional microbiological procedures.

Classification of Microorganisms (p. 6)

18. All organisms are classified into one of three domains: Bacteria, Archaea, and Eukarya. Eukarya include protists, fungi, plants, and animals.

A Brief History of Microbiology (pp. 6–14)

The First Observations (pp. 6–7)

1. Hooke's observations laid the groundwork for development of the cell theory, the concept that all living things are composed of cells.
2. Anton van Leeuwenhoek, using a simple microscope, was the first to observe microorganisms (1673).

The Debate over Spontaneous Generation (pp. 7–8)

3. Until the mid-1880s, many people believed in spontaneous generation, the idea that living organisms could arise from nonliving matter.
4. Francesco Redi demonstrated that maggots appear on decaying meat only when flies are able to lay eggs on the meat (1668).
5. John Needham claimed that microorganisms could arise spontaneously from heated nutrient broth (1745).
6. Lazzaro Spallanzani repeated Needham's experiments and suggested that Needham's results were due to microorganisms in the air entering his broth (1765).

The Theory of Biogenesis (pp. 8–9)

7. Rudolf Virchow introduced the concept of biogenesis: living cells can arise only from preexisting cells (1858).
8. Louis Pasteur demonstrated that microorganisms are in the air everywhere and offered proof of biogenesis (1861).
9. Pasteur's discoveries led to the development of aseptic techniques used in laboratory and medical procedures to prevent contamination by microorganisms.

The First Golden Age of Microbiology (pp. 9–11)

10. The science of microbiology advanced rapidly between 1857 and 1914.
11. Pasteur found that yeasts ferment sugars to alcohol and that bacteria can oxidize the alcohol to acetic acid.
12. A heating process called pasteurization is used to kill bacteria in some alcoholic beverages and milk.
13. Agostino Bassi (1835) and Pasteur (1865) showed a causal relationship between microorganisms and disease.
14. Joseph Lister introduced the use of a disinfectant to clean surgical wounds in order to control infections in humans (1860s).
15. Robert Koch proved that microorganisms cause disease. He used a sequence of procedures, now called Koch's postulates (1876), that are used today to prove that a particular microorganism causes a particular disease.
16. In 1798, Edward Jenner demonstrated that inoculation with cowpox material provides humans with immunity to smallpox.
17. About 1880, Pasteur discovered that avirulent bacteria could be used as a vaccine for fowl cholera.
18. Modern vaccines are prepared from living avirulent microorganisms or killed pathogens, from isolated components of pathogens, and by recombinant DNA techniques.

The Second Golden Age of Microbiology (pp. 11–14)

19. The Second Golden Age began with the discovery of penicillin's effectiveness against infections.
20. Two types of chemotherapeutic agents are synthetic drugs (chemically prepared in the laboratory) and antibiotics (substances produced naturally by bacteria and fungi that inhibit the growth of bacteria).
21. Paul Ehrlich introduced an arsenic-containing chemical called salvarsan to treat syphilis (1910).
22. Alexander Fleming observed that a *Penicillium* fungus inhibited the growth of a bacterial culture. He named the active ingredient penicillin (1928).
23. Bacteriology is the study of bacteria, mycology is the study of fungi, and parasitology is the study of parasitic protozoa and worms.
24. Developing a vaccine against HIV is among the current research interests in immunology.
25. New techniques in molecular biology and microscopy have provided tools for advancing our knowledge of virology.
26. The development of recombinant DNA technology has helped advance all areas of microbiology.

The Third Golden Age of Microbiology (p. 14)

27. Microbiologists are using genomics, the study of all of an organism's genes, to study microbiomes in different environments and to develop new applications of recombinant DNA technology.
28. Researchers are tackling the problem of drug-resistant microbes.

Microbes and Human Welfare (pp. 14–16)

1. Microorganisms degrade dead plants and animals and recycle chemical elements to be used by living plants and animals.
2. Bacteria are used to decompose organic matter in sewage.
3. Bioremediation processes use bacteria to clean up toxic wastes.
4. Bacteria that cause diseases in insects are being used as biological controls of insect pests. Biological controls are specific for the pest and do not harm the environment.
5. Using microbes to make products such as foods and chemicals is called biotechnology.
6. Using recombinant DNA, bacteria can produce important substances such as proteins, vaccines, and enzymes.
7. In gene therapy, viruses are used to carry replacements for defective or missing genes into human cells.
8. Genetically modified bacteria are used in agriculture to protect plants from frost and insects and to improve the shelf life of produce.

Microbes and Human Disease (pp. 16–20)

1. The disease-producing properties of a species of microbe and the host's resistance are important factors in determining whether a person will contract a disease.
2. Bacterial communities that form slimy layers on surfaces are called biofilms.
3. An infectious disease is one in which pathogens invade a susceptible host.
4. An emerging infectious disease (EID) is a new or changing disease showing an increase in incidence in the recent past or a potential to increase in the near future.

Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. How did the idea of spontaneous generation come about?
2. Briefly state the role microorganisms play in each of the following:
   - **a.** biological control of pests
   - **b.** recycling of elements
   - **c.** normal microbiota
   - **d.** sewage treatment
   - **e.** human insulin production
   - **f.** vaccine production
   - **g.** biofilms

3. Into which field of microbiology would the following scientists best fit?

Researcher Who	Field
____ **a.** Grows microbes to produce fermented foods.	**1.** Biotechnology
____ **b.** Studies the causative agent of Ebola virus disease	**2.** Immunology
____ **c.** Studies the production of human proteins by bacteria	**3.** Microbial ecology
____ **d.** Studies the symptoms of AIDS	**4.** Microbial genetics
____ **e.** Studies the production of toxin by *E. coli*	**5.** Microbial physiology
____ **f.** Studies biodegradation of pollutants	**6.** Molecular biology
____ **g.** Develops gene therapy for a disease	**7.** Mycology
____ **h.** Studies the fungus *Candida albicans*	**8.** Virology

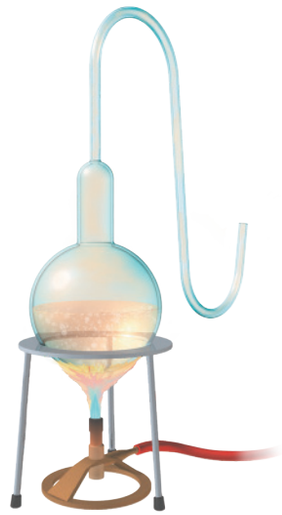
4. Match the microorganisms in column A to their descriptions in column B.

Column A	Column B
____ **a.** Archaea	**1.** Not composed of cells
____ **b.** Algae	**2.** Cell wall made of chitin
____ **c.** Bacteria	**3.** Cell wall made of peptidoglycan
____ **d.** Fungi	**4.** Cell wall made of cellulose; photosynthetic
____ **e.** Helminths	**5.** Unicellular, complex cell structure lacking a cell wall
____ **f.** Protozoa	**6.** Multicellular animals
____ **g.** Viruses	**7.** Prokaryote without peptidoglycan cell wall

5. Match the people in column A to their contribution toward the advancement of microbiology, in column B.

Column A	Column B
____ **a.** Avery, MacLeod, and McCarty	**1.** Developed vaccine against smallpox
____ **b.** Beadle and Tatum	**2.** Discovered how DNA controls protein synthesis in a cell
____ **c.** Berg	**3.** Discovered penicillin
____ **d.** Ehrlich	**4.** Discovered that DNA can be transferred from one bacterium to another
____ **e.** Fleming	**5.** Disproved spontaneous generation
____ **f.** Hooke	**6.** First to characterize a virus
____ **g.** Iwanowski	**7.** First to use disinfectants in surgical procedures
____ **h.** Jacob and Monod	**8.** First to observe bacteria
____ **i.** Jenner	**9.** First to observe cells in plant material and name them
____ **j.** Koch	**10.** Observed that viruses are filterable material
____ **k.** Lancefield	**11.** Proved that DNA is the hereditary material
____ **l.** Lederberg and Tatum	**12.** Proved that microorganisms can cause disease
____ **m.** Lister	**13.** Said living cells arise from preexisting living cells
____ **n.** Pasteur	**14.** Showed that genes code for enzymes
____ **o.** Stanley	**15.** Spliced animal DNA to bacterial DNA
____ **p.** van Leeuwenhoek	**16.** Used bacteria to produce acetone
____ **q.** Virchow	**17.** Used the first synthetic chemotherapeutic agent
____ **r.** Weizmann	**18.** Proposed a classification system for streptococci based on antigens in their cell walls

6. It is possible to purchase the following microorganisms in a retail store. Provide a reason for buying each.
   a. *Bacillus thuringiensis*
   b. *Saccharomyces*
7. NAME IT What type of microorganism has a peptidoglycan cell wall, has DNA that is not contained in a nucleus, and has flagella?
8. DRAW IT Show where airborne microbes ended up in Pasteur's experiment.



Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following is a scientific name?
   a. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*
   b. Tubercle bacillus
2. Which of the following is *not* a characteristic of bacteria?
   a. are prokaryotic
   b. have peptidoglycan cell walls
   c. have the same shape
   d. grow by binary fission
   e. have the ability to move
3. Which of the following is the most important element of Koch's germ theory of disease? The animal shows disease symptoms when
   a. the animal has been in contact with a sick animal.
   b. the animal has a lowered resistance.
   c. a microorganism is observed in the animal.
   d. a microorganism is inoculated into the animal.
   e. microorganisms can be cultured from the animal.
4. Recombinant DNA is
   a. DNA in bacteria.
   b. the study of how genes work.
   c. the DNA resulting when genes of two different organisms are mixed.
   d. the use of bacteria in the production of foods.
   e. the production of proteins by genes.
5. Which of the following statements is the best definition of *biogenesis*?
   a. Nonliving matter gives rise to living organisms.
   b. Living cells can only arise from preexisting cells.
   c. A vital force is necessary for life.
   d. Air is necessary for living organisms.
   e. Microorganisms can be generated from nonliving matter.

6. Which of the following is a beneficial activity of microorganisms?
   a. Some microorganisms are used as food for humans.
   b. Some microorganisms use carbon dioxide.
   c. Some microorganisms provide nitrogen for plant growth.
   d. Some microorganisms are used in sewage treatment processes.
   e. all of the above
7. It has been said that bacteria are essential for the existence of life on Earth. Which of the following is the essential function performed by bacteria?
   a. control insect populations
   b. directly provide food for humans
   c. decompose organic material and recycle elements
   d. cause disease
   e. produce human hormones such as insulin
8. Which of the following is an example of bioremediation?
   a. application of oil-degrading bacteria to an oil spill
   b. application of bacteria to a crop to prevent frost damage
   c. fixation of gaseous nitrogen into usable nitrogen
   d. production by bacteria of a human protein such as interferon
   e. all of the above
9. Spallanzani's conclusion about spontaneous generation was challenged because Antoine Lavoisier had just shown that oxygen was the vital component of air. Which of the following statements is true?
   a. All life requires air.
   b. Only disease-causing organisms require air.
   c. Some microbes do not require air.
   d. Pasteur kept air out of his biogenesis experiments.
   e. Lavoisier was mistaken.
10. Which of the following statements about *E. coli* is *false*?
    a. *E. coli* was the first disease-causing bacterium identified by Koch.
    b. *E. coli* is part of the normal microbiome of humans.
    c. *E. coli* is beneficial in human intestines.
    d. *E. coli* gets nutrients from intestinal contents.
    e. None of the above; all the statements are true.

Analysis

1. How did the theory of biogenesis lead the way for the germ theory of disease?
2. Even though the germ theory of disease was not demonstrated until 1876, why did Semmelweis (1840) and Lister (1867) argue for the use of aseptic techniques?
3. The genus name of a bacterium is "erwinia," and the specific epithet is "amylovora." Write the scientific name of this organism correctly. Using this name as an example, explain how scientific names are chosen.
4. Find at least three supermarket products made by microorganisms. (*Hint:* The label will state the scientific name of the organism or include the word *culture*, *fermented*, or *brewed*.)
5. In the 1960s, many physicians and the public believed that infectious diseases were retreating and would be fully conquered. Discuss why this didn't happen. Is it possible?

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. The prevalence of arthritis in the United States is 1 in 100,000 children. However, 1 in 10 children in Lyme, Connecticut, developed arthritis between June and September 1973. Allen Steere, a rheumatologist at Yale University, investigated the cases in Lyme and found that 25% of the patients remembered having a skin rash during their arthritic episode and that the disease was treatable with penicillin. Steere concluded that this was a new infectious disease and did not have an environmental, genetic, or immunologic cause.
   a. What was the factor that caused Steere to reach his conclusion?
   b. What is the disease?
   c. Why was the disease more prevalent between June and September?
2. In 1864, Lister observed that patients typically recovered completely from simple fractures but that compound fractures, in which parts of the broken bone pierce the skin, had "disastrous consequences." He knew that the application of phenol (carbolic acid) to fields in the town of Carlisle prevented cattle disease. Lister treated compound fractures with phenol, and his patients recovered without complications. How was Lister influenced by Pasteur's work? Why was Koch's work still needed?
3. Discuss whether antibacterial soaps and detergents should be used in the home.

2 Chemical Principles

Like all organisms, microorganisms use nutrients to make chemical building blocks for growth and other functions essential to life. For most microorganisms, synthesizing these building blocks requires them to break down nutrient substances and use the energy released to assemble the resulting molecular fragments into new substances.

We see evidence of these microbial chemical reactions in the world routinely, from a fallen tree rotting on the forest floor to milk going sour in the refrigerator. Although most people give little thought to the causes of such things, the chemistry of microbes is one of the most important concerns of microbiologists. Knowledge of chemistry is essential to understanding what roles microorganisms play in nature, how they cause disease, how methods for diagnosing disease are developed, how the body's defenses combat infection, and how antibiotics and vaccines are produced to combat the harmful effects of microbes.

The *Bacillus anthracis* (bah-SIL-lus an-THRĀ-sis) bacteria in the photograph make a capsule that is not readily digested by animal cells. As discussed in the Clinical Case, these bacteria can grow in mammals by avoiding host defenses. Growing *B. anthracis* bacteria produce a toxin. Researchers are investigating ways to identify unique chemicals made by *B. anthracis* to detect the manufacture or use of biological weapons. To understand the changes that occur in microorganisms and the changes microbes make in the world around us, we need to know how molecules are formed and how they interact.

▶ ***Bacillus anthracis*** **bacteria produce heat-resistant endospores (red).**

In the Clinic

As the health advisory nurse at a health services company, you receive a call from a man who is concerned that his blood sugar levels have not decreased, even though he has switched to using organic sugar. **How would you respond to the man?**

Hint: Read about important biological molecules later in this chapter.

The Structure of Atoms

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

2-1 Describe the structure of an atom and its relation to the physical properties of elements.

All matter, whether air, rock, or a living organism, is made up of small units called atoms. An **atom** is the smallest component of a substance, and it cannot be subdivided into smaller substances without losing its properties. Atoms combine to form **molecules**. Living cells are made up of molecules, some of which are very complex. The science of the interaction between atoms and molecules is called **chemistry**.

Atoms are the smallest units of matter that enter into chemical reactions. Every atom has a centrally located **nucleus** and negatively (−) charged particles called **electrons** that move around the nucleus in regions called *electron shells* (Figure 2.1). The nucleus is made up of positively (+) charged particles called **protons** and uncharged (neutral) particles called **neutrons**. The nucleus, therefore, bears a net positive charge. All atoms contain an equal number of electrons and protons. Because the total positive charge of the nucleus equals the total negative charge of the electrons, each atom is electrically neutral.

The nucleus of most atoms is stable—that is, it does not change spontaneously—and nuclei do not participate in chemical reactions. The number of protons in an atomic nucleus ranges from one (in a hydrogen atom) to more than 100 (in the largest atoms known). Atoms are often listed by their **atomic number**, the number of protons in the nucleus. Protons and neutrons are approximately the same weight, which is about 1840 times that of an electron, and the total number of protons and neutrons in an atom is its approximate **atomic mass**.

Chemical Elements

All atoms with the same number of protons behave the same way chemically and are classified as the same **chemical element**. Each element has its own name and a one- or two-letter symbol, usually derived from the English or Latin name for the element. For example, the symbol for the element hydrogen is H, and the symbol for carbon is C. The symbol for sodium is Na—the first two letters of its Latin name, *natrium*; make sure to distinguish it from nitrogen, N, and from sulfur, S. There are 92 naturally occurring elements. However, only about 26 elements are commonly found in living things. Table 2.1 identifies 13 of these.

Most elements have several **isotopes**—atoms with different numbers of neutrons in their nuclei. All isotopes of an element have the same number of protons, but their atomic masses differ because of the difference in the number of neutrons. For example, in a natural sample of oxygen, all the atoms contain eight protons. However, 99.76% of the atoms have eight neutrons, 0.04% contain nine neutrons, and the remaining 0.2% contain ten neutrons. Therefore, the three isotopes composing a natural sample of oxygen have atomic masses of 16, 17, and 18, although all will have the atomic number 8. Atomic numbers are written as a subscript to the left of an element's chemical symbol. Atomic masses are written as a superscript above the atomic number. Thus, natural oxygen isotopes are represented as ${}^{16}_{8}\mathrm{O}$, ${}^{17}_{8}\mathrm{O}$, and ${}^{18}_{8}\mathrm{O}$. Isotopes of certain elements are extremely useful in biological research, medical diagnosis, the treatment of some disorders, and some methods of sterilization.

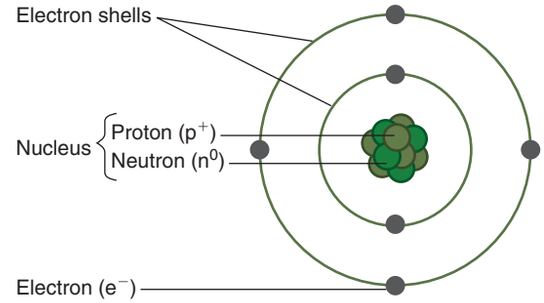


Figure 2.1 The structure of an atom. In this simplified diagram of a carbon atom, note the central location of the nucleus. The nucleus contains six neutrons and six protons, although not all the neutrons are visible in this view. The six electrons move about the nucleus in regions called electron shells, shown here as circles.

Q What is the atomic number of this atom?

CLINICAL CASE Drumming Up Dust

Jonathan, a 52-year-old drummer, is doing his best to ignore the cold sweat that is breaking out all over his body. He and his bandmates are performing in a local Philadelphia nightclub, and they are just about finished with the second set of the evening. Jonathan hasn't been feeling well for a while, actually; he has been weak and short of breath for the last 3 days or so. Jonathan makes it to the end of the song, but the noise from the clapping and cheering audience seems to come from far away. He stands up to bow and collapses. He is admitted to a local emergency department with a mild fever and severe shaking. He is able to tell the admitting nurse that he also has had a dry cough for the last few days. The attending physician orders a chest X-ray and sputum culture. Jonathan is diagnosed with bilateral pneumonia caused by *B. anthracis*. The attending physician is astonished by this diagnosis.

How did Jonathan become infected by *B. anthracis*? Read on to find out.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4

TABLE 2.1 The Elements of Life*

Element	Symbol	Atomic Number	Approximate Atomic Mass
Hydrogen	H	1	1
Carbon	C	6	12
Nitrogen	N	7	14
Oxygen	O	8	16
Sodium	Na	11	23
Magnesium	Mg	12	24
Phosphorus	P	15	31
Sulfur	S	16	32
Chlorine	Cl	17	35
Potassium	K	19	39
Calcium	Ca	20	40
Iron	Fe	26	56
Iodine	I	53	127

*Hydrogen, carbon, nitrogen, and oxygen are the most abundant chemical elements in living organisms.

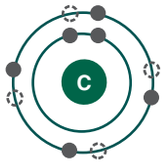
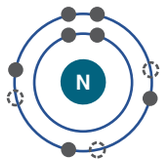
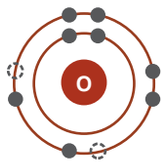
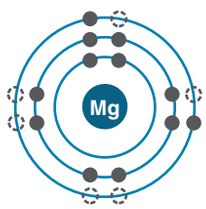
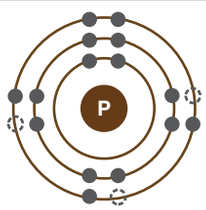
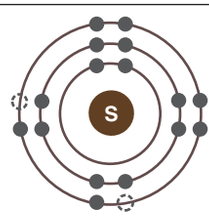
Electronic Configurations

In an atom, electrons are arranged in **electron shells**, which are regions corresponding to different **energy levels**. The arrangement is called an **electronic configuration**. Shells are layered outward from the nucleus, and each shell can hold a characteristic maximum number of electrons—two electrons in the innermost shell (lowest energy level), eight electrons in the second shell, and eight electrons in the third shell, if it is the atom's outermost (valence) shell. The fourth, fifth, and sixth electron shells can each accommodate 18 electrons, although there are some exceptions to this generalization. Table 2.2 shows the electronic configurations for atoms of some elements found in living organisms.

The number of electrons in the outermost shell determines an atom's tendency to react with other atoms. An atom can give up, accept, or share electrons with other atoms to fill the outermost shell. When its outer shell is filled, the atom is chemically stable, or inert: it does not tend to react with other atoms. Helium (atomic number 2) and neon (atomic number 10) are examples of atoms of inert gases whose outer shells are filled.

When an atom's outer electron shell is only partially filled, the atom is chemically unstable. These unstable atoms react with other atoms, depending, in part, on the degree to which the outer energy levels are filled. Notice the number of electrons in the outer energy levels of the atoms in Table 2.2. We will see later how the number correlates with the chemical reactivity of the elements.

TABLE 2.2 Electronic Configurations for the Atoms of Some Elements Found in Living Organisms

Element	Diagram	Number of Valence (Outermost) Shell Electrons	Number of Unfilled Spaces (empty circles)	Maximum Number of Bonds Formed
Hydrogen		1	1	1
Carbon		4	4	4
Nitrogen		5	3	5
Oxygen		6	2	2
Magnesium		2	6	2
Phosphorus		5	3	5
Sulfur		6	2	6

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

2-1 How does $^{14}_{6}C$ differ from $^{12}_{6}C$? What is the atomic number of each carbon atom? The atomic mass?

How Atoms Form Molecules: Chemical Bonds

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

2-2 Define *ionic bond*, *covalent bond*, *hydrogen bond*, *molecular mass*, and *mole*.

When the outermost energy level of an atom is not completely filled by electrons, you can think of it as having either unfilled spaces or extra electrons in that energy level, depending on whether it is easier for the atom to gain or lose electrons. For example, an atom of oxygen, with two electrons in the first energy level and six in the second, has two unfilled spaces in the second electron shell; in contrast, an atom of magnesium has two extra electrons in its outermost shell. The most chemically stable configuration for any atom is to have its outermost shell filled. Therefore, for these two atoms to attain that state, oxygen must gain two electrons, and magnesium must lose two electrons. Because all atoms tend to combine so that the extra electrons in the outermost shell of one atom fill the spaces of the outermost shell of the other atom, oxygen and magnesium readily combine so that the outermost shell of each atom has the full complement of eight electrons.

The **valence**, or combining capacity, of an atom is the number of extra or missing electrons in its outermost electron shell. For example, hydrogen has a valence of 1 (one unfilled space, or one extra electron), oxygen has a valence of 2 (two unfilled spaces), carbon has a valence of 4 (four unfilled spaces, or four extra electrons), and magnesium has a valence of 2 (two extra electrons).

Basically, atoms achieve the full complement of electrons in their outermost energy shells by combining to form molecules, which are made up of atoms of one or more elements. A molecule that contains at least two different kinds of atoms, such as H_2O (the water molecule), is called a **compound**. In H_2O the subscript 2 indicates that there are two atoms of hydrogen; the absence of a subscript indicates that there is only one atom of oxygen. Molecules hold together because the valence electrons of the combining atoms form attractive forces, called **chemical bonds**, between the atomic nuclei. Therefore, valence may also be viewed as the bonding capacity of an element.

In general, atoms form bonds in one of two ways: by either gaining or losing electrons from their outer electron shell, or by sharing outer electrons. When atoms have gained or lost outer electrons, the chemical bond is called an *ionic bond*. When outer electrons are shared, the bond is called a *covalent bond*. Although we will discuss ionic and covalent bonds separately, the kinds of bonds actually found in molecules do not belong entirely to either category. Instead, bonds range from the highly ionic to the highly covalent.

Ionic Bonds

Atoms are electrically neutral when the number of positive charges (protons) equals the number of negative charges (electrons). But when an isolated atom gains or loses electrons, this balance is upset. If the atom gains electrons, it acquires an overall negative charge; if the atom loses electrons, it acquires an overall positive charge. Such a negatively or positively charged atom (or group of atoms) is called an **ion**.

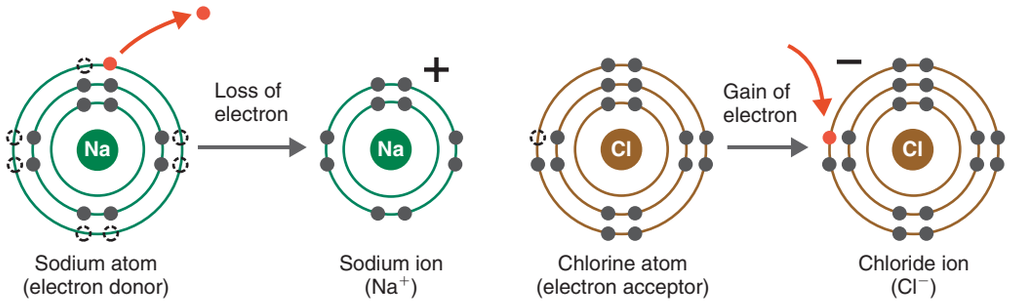
Consider the following examples. Sodium (Na) has 11 protons and 11 electrons, with one electron in its outer electron shell. Sodium tends to lose the single outer electron; it is an *electron donor* (**Figure 2.2a**). When sodium donates an electron to another atom, it is left with 11 protons and only 10 electrons and so has an overall charge of +1. This positively charged sodium atom is called a sodium ion and is written as Na^+. Chlorine (Cl) has a total of 17 electrons, 7 of them in the outer electron shell. Because this outer shell can hold 8 electrons, chlorine tends to pick up an electron that has been lost by another atom; it is an *electron acceptor* (see Figure 2.2a). By accepting an electron, chlorine totals 18 electrons. However, it still has only 17 protons in its nucleus. The chloride ion therefore has a charge of −1 and is written as Cl^-.

The opposite charges of the sodium ion (Na^+) and chloride ion (Cl^-) attract each other. The attraction, an ionic bond, holds the two atoms together, and a molecule is formed (Figure 2.2b). The formation of this molecule, called sodium chloride (NaCl), or table salt, is a common example of ionic bonding. Thus, an **ionic bond** is an attraction between ions of opposite charge that holds them together to form a stable molecule. Put another way, an ionic bond is an attraction between atoms in which one atom loses electrons and another atom gains electrons. Strong ionic bonds, such as those that hold Na^+ and Cl^- together in salt crystals, have limited importance in living cells. But the weaker ionic bonds formed in aqueous (water) solutions are important in biochemical reactions in microbes and other organisms. For example, weaker ionic bonds assume a role in certain antigen–antibody reactions—that is, reactions in which molecules produced by the immune system (antibodies) combine with foreign substances (antigens) to combat infection.

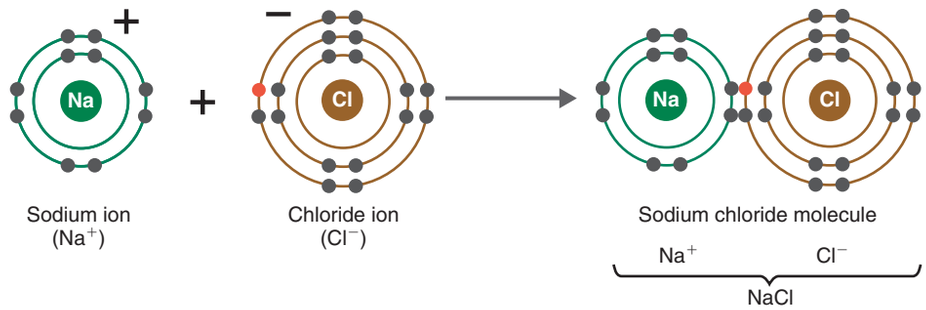
In general, an atom whose outer electron shell is less than half-filled will lose electrons and form positively charged ions, called **cations**. Examples of cations are the potassium ion (K^+), calcium ion (Ca^{2+}), and sodium ion (Na^+). When an atom's outer electron shell is more than half-filled, the atom will gain electrons and form negatively charged ions, called **anions**. Examples are the iodide ion (I^-), chloride ion (Cl^-), and sulfide ion (S^{2-}).

Covalent Bonds

A **covalent bond** is a chemical bond formed by two atoms sharing one or more pairs of electrons. Covalent bonds are stronger



(a) A sodium atom (Na) loses one electron to an electron acceptor and forms a sodium ion (Na^+). A chlorine atom (Cl) accepts one electron from an electron donor to become a chloride ion (Cl^-).



(b) The sodium and chloride ions are attracted because of their opposite charges and are held together by an ionic bond to form a molecule of sodium chloride.

Figure 2.2 Ionic bond formation.

Q What is an ionic bond?

and far more common in organisms than are true ionic bonds. In the hydrogen molecule, H_2, two hydrogen atoms share a pair of electrons. Each hydrogen atom has its own electron plus one electron from the other atom (Figure 2.3a). The shared pair of electrons actually orbits the nuclei of both atoms. Therefore, the outer electron shells of both atoms are filled. Atoms that share only one pair of electrons form a *single covalent bond*. For simplicity, a single covalent bond is expressed as a single line between the atoms (H—H). Atoms that share two pairs of electrons form a *double covalent bond*, expressed as two single lines (═). A *triple covalent bond*, expressed as three single lines (≡), occurs when atoms share three pairs of electrons.

The principles of covalent bonding that apply to atoms of the same element also apply to atoms of different elements. Methane (CH_4) is an example of covalent bonding between atoms of different elements (Figure 2.3b). The outer electron shell of the carbon atom can hold eight electrons but has only four; each hydrogen atom can hold two electrons but has only one. Consequently, in the methane molecule the carbon atom gains four hydrogen electrons to complete its outer shell, and each hydrogen atom completes its pair by sharing one electron from the carbon atom. Each outer electron of the carbon atom orbits both the carbon nucleus and a hydrogen nucleus. Each hydrogen electron orbits both its own nucleus and the carbon nucleus.

Elements such as hydrogen and carbon, whose outer electron shells are half-filled, form covalent bonds quite easily. In fact, in living organisms, carbon almost always forms covalent bonds; it almost never becomes an ion. *Remember*: Covalent bonds are formed by the *sharing* of electrons between atoms. Ionic bonds are formed by *attraction* between atoms that have lost or gained electrons and are therefore positively or negatively charged.

Hydrogen Bonds

Another chemical bond of special importance to all organisms is the **hydrogen bond**, in which a hydrogen atom of one molecule is attracted to an oxygen or nitrogen atom in another molecule or another part of the same molecule. Such bonds are weak and do not bind atoms into molecules. However, they do serve as bridges between different molecules or between various portions of the same molecule.

When hydrogen combines with atoms of oxygen or nitrogen, the relatively large nucleus of these larger oxygen or nitrogen atoms has more protons and attracts the hydrogen electron more strongly than does the small hydrogen nucleus. Thus, in a molecule of water (H_2O), all the electrons tend to be closer to the oxygen nucleus than to the hydrogen nuclei. As a result, the oxygen portion of the molecule has a slightly negative charge, and the hydrogen portion of the molecule has a slightly positive charge (Figure 2.4a). When the positively charged end

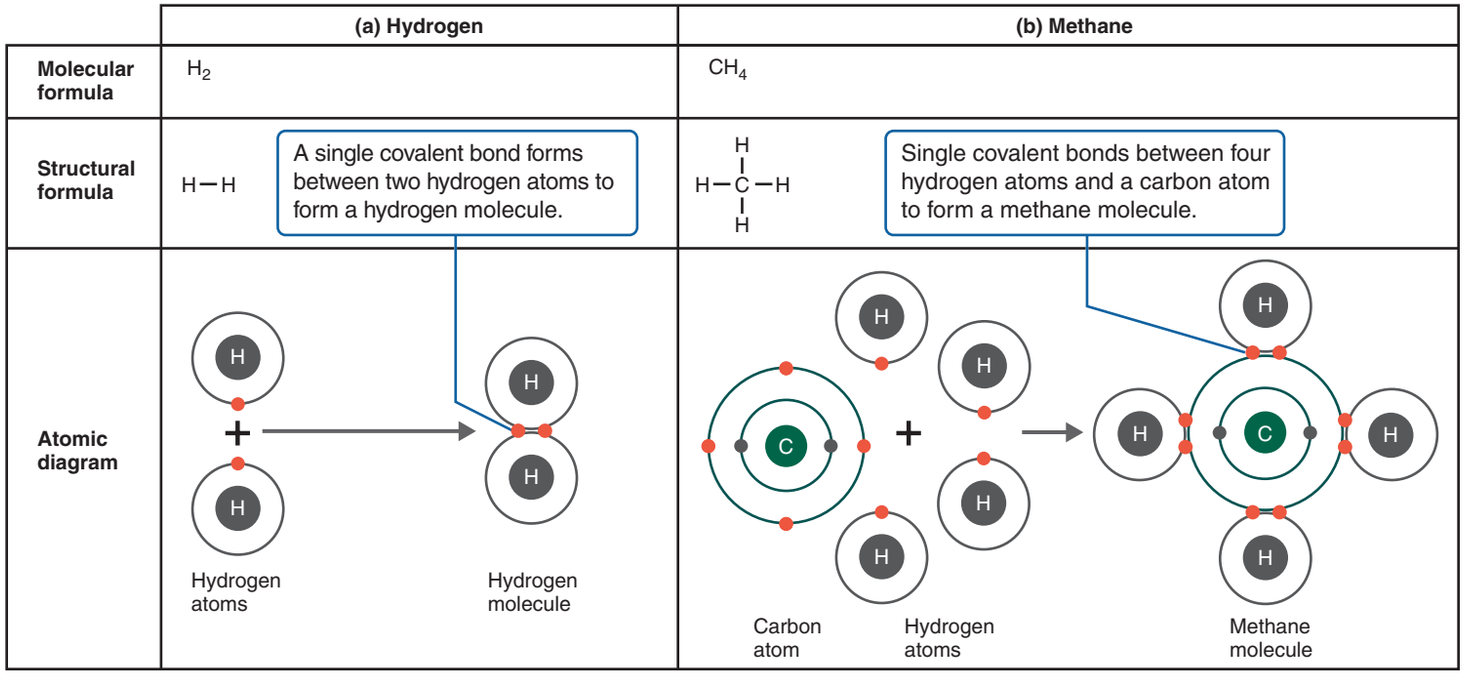


Figure 2.3 Covalent bond formation. The molecular formula shows the number and types of atoms in a molecule. The number of atoms in each molecule is noted by subscripts. In structural formulas, each covalent bond is written as a straight line between the symbols for two atoms.

Q What is a covalent bond?

of one molecule is attracted to the negatively charged end of another molecule, a hydrogen bond is formed (Figure 2.4b). This attraction can also occur between hydrogen and other atoms of the same molecule, especially in large molecules, but oxygen and nitrogen are the elements most frequently involved in hydrogen bonding.

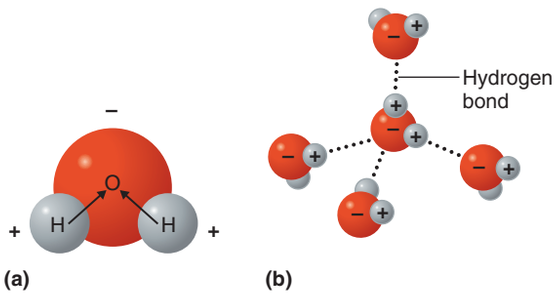


Figure 2.4 Hydrogen bond formation in water. (a) In a water molecule, the electrons of the hydrogen atoms are strongly attracted to the oxygen atom. Therefore, the part of the water molecule containing the oxygen atom has a slightly negative charge, and the part containing hydrogen atoms has a slightly positive charge. **(b)** In a hydrogen bond between water molecules, the hydrogen of one water molecule is attracted to the oxygen of another water molecule. Many water molecules may be attracted to each other by hydrogen bonds (black dots).

Q Which chemical elements are usually involved in hydrogen bonding?

Hydrogen bonds are considerably weaker than either ionic or covalent bonds; they have only about 5% of the strength of covalent bonds. Consequently, hydrogen bonds are formed and broken relatively easily. This property accounts for the temporary bonding that occurs between certain atoms of large and complex molecules, such as proteins and nucleic acids. Even though hydrogen bonds are relatively weak, large molecules containing several hundred of these bonds have considerable strength and stability. A summary of ionic, covalent, and hydrogen bonds is shown in Table 2.3.

Molecular Mass and Moles

You have seen that bond formation usually results in the creation of molecules. Molecules are often discussed in terms of units of measure called molecular mass and moles. The **molecular mass** of a molecule is the sum of the atomic masses of all its atoms. For example, the molecular mass of H_2O is 18: $(2 \times 1) + 16$. In the laboratory, we measure molecular mass using a unit called the mole. One **mole** of a substance is its molecular mass expressed in grams. The unit of molecular mass is referred to as either a **dalton (Da)** or an **atomic mass unit (amu)**. For example, 1 mole of water weighs 18 grams because the molecular mass of H_2O is 18 da or 18 amu.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

2-2 Differentiate an ionic bond from a covalent bond.

TABLE 2.3 Comparison among Ionic, Covalent, and Hydrogen Bonds

Type of Bond	Definition and Importance
Ionic	An *attraction* between ions of opposite charge that holds them together to form a stable molecule. Weaker ionic bonds are important in biochemical reactions such as antigen–antibody reactions.
Covalent	A bond formed by two atoms that *share* one or more pairs of electrons. Covalent bonds are the most common type of chemical bond in organisms and are responsible for holding together the atoms of most molecules in organisms.
Hydrogen	A relatively weak bond in which a hydrogen atom that is covalently bonded to one oxygen or nitrogen atom is attracted to another oxygen or nitrogen atom. Hydrogen bonds do not bind atoms into molecules, but serve as *bridges between different molecules* or different portions of the same molecule, for example, within proteins and nucleic acids.

Chemical Reactions

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

2-3 Diagram three basic types of chemical reactions.

As we said earlier, **chemical reactions** involve the making or breaking of bonds between atoms. After a chemical reaction, the total number of atoms remains the same, but there are new molecules with new properties because the atoms have been rearranged.

Energy in Chemical Reactions

All chemical bonds require energy to form or break. It is important to note that initially, *activation energy* is needed to break a bond. In the chemical reactions of metabolism, energy is released when new bonds are formed after the original bonds break; this is the energy cells use to do work. A chemical reaction that absorbs more energy than it releases is called an **endergonic reaction** (*endo* = within), meaning that energy is directed inward. A chemical reaction that releases more energy than it absorbs is called an **exergonic reaction** (*exo* = out), meaning that energy is directed outward.

In this section we will look at three basic types of chemical reactions common to all living cells. By becoming familiar with these reactions, you will be able to understand the specific chemical reactions we will discuss later (particularly in Chapter 5).

Synthesis Reactions

When two or more atoms, ions, or molecules combine to form new and larger molecules, the reaction is called a **synthesis reaction**. To synthesize means to put together, and a synthesis reaction *forms new bonds*. Synthesis reactions can be expressed in the following way:

reactants *combine to form* *products*

A + B ⟶ AB

Atom, ion, or molecule A; Atom, ion, or molecule B; New molecule AB

The combining substances, A and B, are called the *reactants;* the substance formed by the combination, AB, is the *product*. The *arrow* indicates the direction in which the reaction proceeds.

Pathways of synthesis reactions in living organisms are collectively called anabolic reactions, or simply **anabolism** (an-AB-ō-liz-um). The combining of sugar molecules to form starch and of amino acids to form proteins are two examples of anabolism.

Decomposition Reactions

The reverse of a synthesis reaction is a **decomposition reaction**. To decompose means to break down into smaller parts, and in a decomposition reaction *bonds are broken*. Typically, decomposition reactions split large molecules into smaller molecules, ions, or atoms. A decomposition reaction occurs in the following way:

reactant *breaks down into* *products*

AB ⟶ A + B

Molecule AB; Atom, ion, or molecule A; Atom, ion, or molecule B

Decomposition reactions that occur in living organisms are collectively called catabolic reactions, or simply **catabolism** (ka-TAB-ō-liz-um). An example of catabolism is the breakdown of sucrose (table sugar) into simpler sugars, glucose and fructose, during digestion.

Exchange Reactions

All chemical reactions are based on synthesis and decomposition. Many reactions, such as **exchange reactions**, are actually part synthesis and part decomposition. An exchange reaction works in the following way:

reactants *recombine to form* *products*

AB + CD ⟶ AD + BC

First, the bonds between A and B and between C and D are broken in a decomposition process. New bonds are then formed between A and D and between B and C in a synthesis process. For example, an exchange reaction occurs when sodium hydroxide (NaOH) and hydrochloric acid (HCl) react to form table salt (NaCl) and water (H_2O), as follows:

$$NaOH + HCl \longrightarrow NaCl + H_2O$$

The Reversibility of Chemical Reactions

All chemical reactions are, in theory, reversible; that is, they can occur in either direction. In practice, however, some reactions reverse more easily than others. A chemical reaction that

is readily reversible (when the end product can revert to the original molecules) is termed a **reversible reaction** and is indicated by two arrows, as shown here:

$$\underset{\text{A + B}}{\textit{reactants}} \quad \underset{\text{break down into}}{\overset{\text{combine to form}}{\rightleftharpoons}} \quad \underset{\text{AB}}{\textit{product}}$$

Some reversible reactions occur because neither the reactants nor the end products are very stable. Other reactions reverse only under special conditions:

$$\underset{\text{A + B}}{\textit{reactants}} \quad \underset{\text{water}}{\overset{\text{heat}}{\rightleftharpoons}} \quad \underset{\text{AB}}{\textit{product}}$$

Whatever is written above or below the arrows indicates the special condition under which the reaction in that direction occurs. In this case, A and B react to produce AB only when heat is applied, and AB breaks down into A and B only in the presence of water. See Figure 2.8 for another example.

In Chapter 5 we will examine the various factors that affect chemical reactions.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

2-3 The following chemical reaction is used to remove chlorine from water. What type of reaction is it?

$$HClO + Na_2SO_3 \longrightarrow Na_2SO_4 + HCl$$

Important Biological Molecules

Biologists and chemists divide compounds into two principal classes: inorganic and organic. **Inorganic compounds** are defined as molecules, usually small and structurally simple, which typically lack carbon and in which ionic bonds may play an important role. Inorganic compounds include water, molecular oxygen (O_2), carbon dioxide, and many salts, acids, and bases.

Organic compounds always contain carbon and hydrogen and typically are structurally complex. Carbon is a unique element because it has four electrons in its outer shell and four unfilled spaces. It can combine with a variety of atoms, including other carbon atoms, to form straight or branched chains and rings. Carbon chains form the basis of many organic compounds in living cells, including sugars, amino acids, and vitamins. Organic compounds are held together mostly or entirely by covalent bonds. Some organic molecules, such as polysaccharides, proteins, and nucleic acids, are very large and usually contain thousands of atoms. Such giant molecules are called *macromolecules*. In the following section we will discuss inorganic and organic compounds that are essential for cells.

Inorganic Compounds

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

2-4 List several properties of water that are important to living systems.

2-5 Define *acid*, *base*, *salt*, and *pH*.

Water

All living organisms require a wide variety of inorganic compounds for growth, repair, maintenance, and reproduction. Water is one of the most important, as well as one of the most abundant, of these compounds, and it is particularly vital to microorganisms. Outside the cell, nutrients are dissolved in water, which facilitates their passage through cell membranes. Inside the cell, water is the medium for most chemical reactions. In fact, water is by far the most abundant component of almost all living cells. On average, water makes up 65–75% of every cell. Simply stated, no organism can survive without water.

Water has structural and chemical properties that make it particularly suitable for its role in living cells. As we discussed, the total charge on the water molecule is neutral, but the oxygen region of the molecule has a slightly negative charge, and the hydrogen region has a slightly positive charge (see Figure 2.4a). Any molecule having such an unequal distribution of charges is called a **polar molecule**. The polar nature of water gives it four characteristics that make it a useful medium for living cells.

First, every water molecule is capable of forming four hydrogen bonds with nearby water molecules (see Figure 2.4b). This property results in a strong attraction between water molecules that makes water an excellent temperature buffer. A great deal of heat is required to separate water molecules from each other to form water vapor; thus, water has a relatively high boiling point $(100°C, 212°F)$. Because water has such a high boiling point, it exists in the liquid state on most of the Earth's surface. Conversely, water temperatures must drop significantly in order for it to freeze.

Second, the hydrogen bonding between water molecules affects the density of water, depending on whether it occurs as ice or a liquid. For example, the hydrogen bonds in the crystalline structure of water (ice) make ice take up more space. As a result, ice is less dense—it has fewer molecules—than an equal volume of liquid water. For this reason, ice floats and can serve as an insulating layer on the surfaces of lakes and streams that harbor living organisms.

Third, the polarity of water makes it an excellent dissolving medium, or **solvent**. Many polar substances undergo **dissociation**, or separation, into individual molecules in water—that is, they dissolve. The negative part of the water molecules

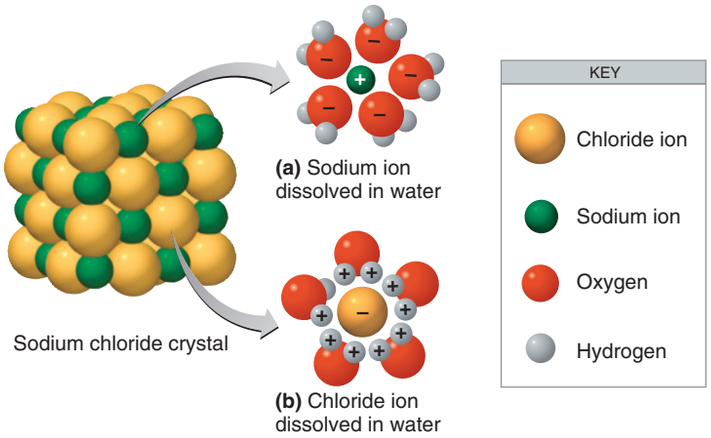


Figure 2.5 How water acts as a solvent for sodium chloride (NaCl). **(a)** The positively charged sodium ion (Na^+) is attracted to the negative part of the water molecule. **(b)** The negatively charged chloride ion (Cl^-) is attracted to the positive part of the water molecule. In the presence of water molecules, the bonds between the Na^+ and Cl^- are disrupted, and the NaCl dissolves in the water.

Q What happens during ionization?

is attracted to the positive part of the molecules in the **solute**, or dissolving substance, and the positive part of the water molecules is attracted to the negative part of the solute molecules. Substances (such as salts) that are composed of atoms (or groups of atoms) held together by ionic bonds tend to dissociate into separate cations and anions in water. Thus, the polarity of water allows molecules of many different substances to separate and become surrounded by water molecules (Figure 2.5).

Fourth, polarity accounts for water's characteristic role as a reactant or product in many chemical reactions. Its polarity facilitates the splitting of water molecules in digestion and the rejoining of hydrogen ions (H^+) and hydroxide ions (OH^-). Water is a key reactant in the digestive processes of organisms, whereby larger molecules are broken down into smaller ones. Water molecules are also involved in synthesis reactions; water is an important source of the hydrogen and oxygen that are incorporated into numerous organic compounds in living cells.

Acids, Bases, and Salts

As we saw in Figure 2.5, when inorganic salts such as sodium chloride (NaCl) are dissolved in water, they undergo **ionization** or *dissociation*; that is, they break apart into ions. Substances called acids and bases show similar behavior.

An **acid** can be defined as a substance that dissociates into one or more hydrogen ions (H^+) and one or more negative ions (anions). Thus, an acid can also be defined as a proton (H^+) donor. A **base** dissociates into one or more negatively charged hydroxide ions (OH^-) and one or more positive ions (cations). A base can be defined as a proton acceptor because it can accept, or combine with, protons. Thus, sodium hydroxide (NaOH) is a base because it dissociates to release OH^-, which has a strong attraction for protons and is among the most important proton acceptors. A **salt** is a substance that dissociates in water into cations and anions, neither of which is H^+ or OH^-. Figure 2.6 shows common examples of each type of compound and how they dissociate in water.

Acid–Base Balance: The Concept of pH

An organism must maintain a fairly constant balance of acids and bases to remain healthy. For example, if a particular acid or base concentration is too high or too low, enzymes change in shape and no longer effectively promote chemical reactions in a cell. In the aqueous environment within organisms, acids dissociate into hydrogen ions (H^+) and anions. Bases, in contrast, dissociate into hydroxide ions (OH^-) and cations. The more hydrogen ions that are free in a solution, the more acidic the solution is. Conversely, the more hydroxide ions that are free in a solution, the more basic, or alkaline, it is.

Biochemical reactions—that is, chemical reactions in living systems—are extremely sensitive to even small changes in the acidity or alkalinity of the environments in which they occur. In fact, H^+ and OH^- are involved in almost all biochemical processes, and any deviation from a cell's narrow band of normal H^+ and OH^- concentrations can dramatically modify the cell's functions. For this reason, the acids and bases that are continually formed in an organism must be kept in balance.

It is convenient to express the amount of H^+ in a solution by a logarithmic **pH** scale, which ranges from 0 to 14 (Figure 2.7). The term *pH* means potential of hydrogen. On a logarithmic scale, a change of one whole number represents a *tenfold* change from the previous concentration. Thus, a solution of pH 1 has ten times more hydrogen ions than a solution of pH 2 and has 100 times more hydrogen ions than a solution of pH 3.

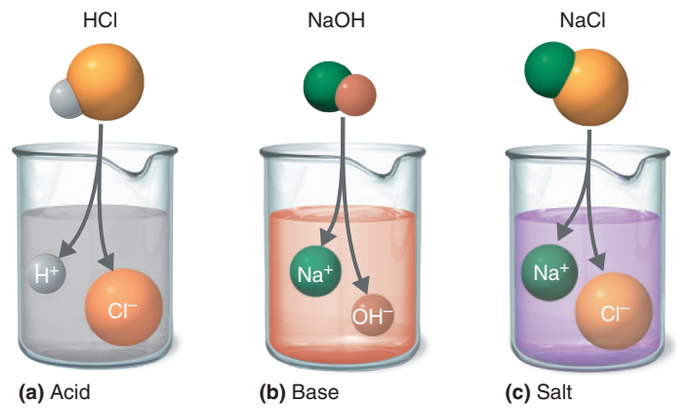


Figure 2.6 Acids, bases, and salts. **(a)** In water, hydrochloric acid (HCl) dissociates into H^+ and Cl^-. **(b)** Sodium hydroxide (NaOH), a base, dissociates into OH^- and Na^+ in water. **(c)** In water, table salt (NaCl) dissociates into positive ions (Na^+) and negative ions (Cl^-), neither of which are H^+ or OH^-.

Q How do acids and bases differ?

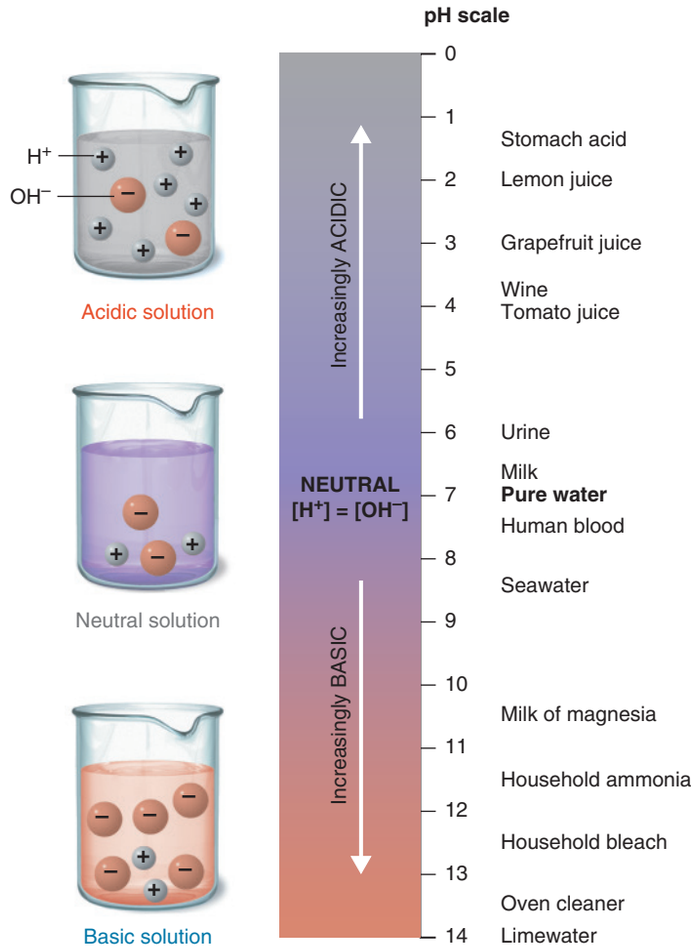


Figure 2.7 The pH scale. As pH values decrease from 14 to 0, the H^+ concentration increases. Thus, the lower the pH, the more acidic the solution; the higher the pH, the more basic the solution. If the pH value of a solution is below 7, the solution is acidic; if the pH is above 7, the solution is basic (alkaline). The approximate pH values of some human body fluids and common substances are shown next to the pH scale.

Q At what pH are the concentrations of H^+ and OH^- equal?

A solution's pH is calculated as $-\log_{10}[H^+]$, the negative logarithm to the base 10 of the hydrogen ion concentration (denoted by brackets), determined in moles per liter $[H^+]$. For example, if the H^+ concentration of a solution is 1.0×10^{-4} moles/liter, or 10^{-4}, its pH equals $-\log_{10} 10^{-4} = -(-4) = 4$; this is about the pH value of wine (see Appendix B). The pH values of some human body fluids and other common substances are also shown in Figure 2.7. In the laboratory, you will usually measure the pH of a solution with a pH meter or with chemical test papers.

Acidic solutions contain more H^+ than OH^- and have a pH lower than 7. If a solution has more OH^- than H^+, it is a basic, or alkaline, solution. In pure water, a small percentage of the molecules are dissociated into H^+ and OH^-, so it has a pH of 7. Because the concentrations of H^+ and OH^- are equal, this pH is said to be the pH of a neutral solution.

Keep in mind that the pH of a solution can be changed. We can increase its acidity by adding substances that will increase the concentration of hydrogen ions. As a living organism takes up nutrients, carries out chemical reactions, and excretes wastes, its balance of acids and bases tends to change, and the pH fluctuates. Fortunately, organisms possess natural pH **buffers**, compounds that help keep the pH from changing drastically. But the pH in our environment's water and soil can be altered by waste products from organisms, pollutants from industry, or fertilizers used in agricultural fields or gardens. When bacteria are grown in a laboratory medium, they excrete waste products such as acids that can alter the pH of the medium. If this effect were to continue, the medium would become acidic enough to inhibit bacterial enzymes and kill the bacteria. To prevent this problem, pH buffers are added to the culture medium. We will learn more about culture media and buffers in Chapter 6.

Different microbes function best within different pH ranges, but most organisms grow best in environments with a pH value between 6.5 and 8.5. Among microbes, fungi are best able to tolerate acidic conditions, whereas the prokaryotes called cyanobacteria tend to do well in alkaline habitats. *Cutibacterium acnes* (kyu-tē-bak-TI-rē-um AK-nēz), a bacterium that causes acne, has as its natural environment human skin, which tends to be slightly acidic, with a pH of about 4. *Acidithiobacillus ferrooxidans* (a′sid-ē-thī′ō-bah-SIL-lus fer′rō-OKS-i-danz) is a bacterium that metabolizes elemental sulfur and produces sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4). Its pH range for optimum growth is from 1 to 3.5. The sulfuric acid produced by this bacterium in mine water is important in dissolving uranium and copper from low-grade ore (see Chapter 28).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

2-4 Why is the polarity of a water molecule important?

2-5 Antacids neutralize acid by the following reaction.

$$Mg(OH)_2 + 2HCl \rightarrow MgCl_2 + H_2O$$

Identify the acid, base, and salt.

Organic Compounds

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

2-6 Distinguish organic and inorganic compounds.

2-7 Define *functional group*.

2-8 Identify the building blocks of carbohydrates.

2-9 Differentiate simple lipids, complex lipids, and steroids.

2-10 Identify the building blocks and structure of proteins.

2-11 Identify the building blocks of nucleic acids.

2-12 Describe the role of ATP in cellular activities.

Inorganic compounds, excluding water, constitute about 1–1.5% of living cells. These relatively simple components, whose molecules have only a few atoms, cannot be used by cells to perform complex biological functions. Organic compounds, whose carbon atoms can combine in an enormous variety of ways with other carbon atoms and with atoms of other elements, are relatively complex and thus are capable of more complex biological functions.

Structure and Chemistry

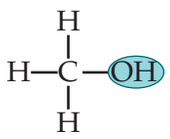
In the formation of organic molecules, carbon's four outer electrons can participate in up to four covalent bonds, and carbon atoms can bond to each other to form straight-chain, branched-chain, or ring structures.

In addition to carbon, the most common elements in organic compounds are hydrogen (which can form one bond), oxygen (two bonds), and nitrogen (three bonds). Sulfur (two bonds) and phosphorus (five bonds) appear less often. Other elements are found, but only in relatively few organic compounds. The elements that are most abundant in living organisms are the same as those that are most abundant in organic compounds (see Table 2.1).

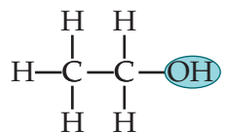
The chain of carbon atoms in an organic molecule is called the **carbon skeleton**; a huge number of combinations is possible for carbon skeletons. Most of these carbons are bonded to hydrogen atoms. The bonding of other elements with carbon and hydrogen forms characteristic **functional groups**, specific groups of atoms that are most commonly involved in chemical reactions and are responsible for most of the characteristic chemical properties and many of the physical properties of a particular organic compound (Table 2.4).

Different functional groups confer different properties on organic molecules. Here are some examples: The hydroxyl group of alcohols is hydrophilic (water-loving) and thus attracts water molecules to it. This attraction helps dissolve organic molecules containing hydroxyl groups. Because the carboxyl group is a source of hydrogen ions, molecules containing it have acidic properties. Amino groups, by contrast, function as bases because they readily accept hydrogen ions. The sulfhydryl group helps stabilize the intricate structure of many proteins.

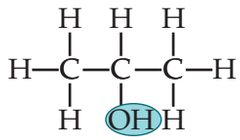
Functional groups help us classify organic compounds. For example, the —OH group is present in each of the following molecules:



Methanol

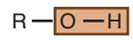
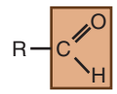
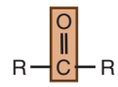
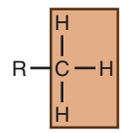
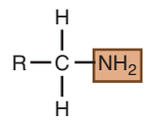
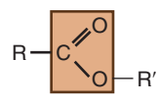
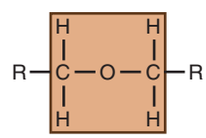
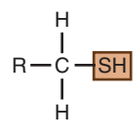
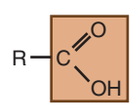
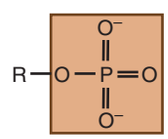


Ethanol



Isopropanol

TABLE 2.4 Representative Functional Groups and the Compounds in Which They Are Found

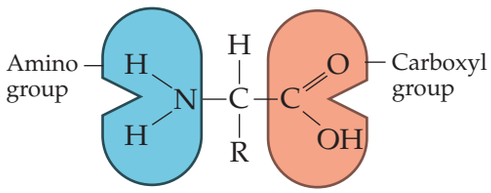
Structure	Formula	Name of Group	Biological Importance
	—OH	Alcohol (hydroxyl)	Lipids; carbohydrates
	—CHO	Aldehyde*	Reducing sugars such as glucose; polysaccharides
	—CO	Ketone*	Metabolic intermediates
	—CH_3	Methyl	DNA; energy metabolism
	—NH_2	Amino	Proteins
	—COO—	Ester	Bacterial and eukaryotic plasma membranes
	—C—O—C—	Ether	Archaeal plasma membranes
	—SH	Sulfhydryl	Energy metabolism; protein structure
	—COOH	Carboxyl	Organic acids; lipids; proteins
	—PO_4^-	Phosphate	ATP; DNA

*In an aldehyde, a C═O is at the end of a molecule, in contrast to the internal C═O in a ketone.

Because the characteristic reactivity of the molecules is based on the —OH group, they are grouped together in a class called alcohols. The —OH group is called the *hydroxyl group* and is not to be confused with the *hydroxide ion* (OH^-) of bases. The hydroxyl group of alcohols does not ionize at neutral pH; it is covalently bonded to a carbon atom.

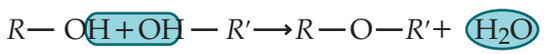
When a class of compounds is characterized by a certain functional group, the letter *R* can be used to stand for the remainder of the molecule. For example, alcohols as a general group may be written as R—OH.

Frequently, more than one functional group is found in a single molecule. For example, an amino acid molecule contains both amino and carboxyl groups. The amino acid glycine has the following structure:



Most of the organic compounds found in living organisms are quite complex; a large number of carbon atoms form the skeleton, and many functional groups are attached. In organic compounds, it is important that each of the four bonds of carbon be satisfied (attached to another atom) and that each of the attaching atoms have its characteristic number of bonds satisfied. Because of this, such molecules are chemically stable.

Small organic molecules can be combined into very large molecules called **macromolecules** (*macro* = large). Macromolecules are usually **polymers** (*poly* = many; *mers* = parts): polymers are formed by covalent bonding of many repeating small molecules called **monomers** (*mono* = one). When two monomers join together, the reaction usually involves the elimination of a hydrogen atom from one monomer and a hydroxyl group from the other; the hydrogen atom and the hydroxyl group combine to produce water:

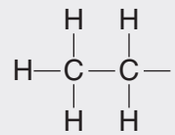


This type of exchange reaction is called **dehydration synthesis** (*de* = from; *hydro* = water), or a **condensation reaction**, because a molecule of water is released (Figure 2.8a). Such macromolecules as carbohydrates, lipids, proteins, and nucleic acids are assembled in the cell, essentially by dehydration synthesis. However, other molecules must also participate to provide energy for bond formation. ATP, the cell's chief energy provider, is discussed at the end of this chapter.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

2-6 Define *organic*.

2-7 Add the appropriate functional group(s) to the following ethyl group to produce each of the following compounds: ethanol, acetic acid, acetaldehyde, ethanolamine, and diethyl ether.



Carbohydrates

The **carbohydrates** are a large and diverse group of organic compounds that includes sugars and starches. Carbohydrates perform a number of major functions in living systems. For instance, one type of sugar (deoxyribose) is a building block of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), the molecule that carries hereditary information. Other sugars are needed for the cell walls. Simple carbohydrates are used in the synthesis of amino acids and fats or fatlike substances, which are used to build cell membranes and other structures. Macromolecular carbohydrates function as food reserves. The principal function of carbohydrates, however, is to fuel cell activities with a ready source of energy.

Carbohydrates are made up of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen atoms. The ratio of hydrogen to oxygen atoms is always 2:1 in simple carbohydrates. This ratio can be seen in the formulas for the carbohydrates ribose ($C_5H_{10}O_5$), glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$), and sucrose ($C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$). Although there are exceptions, the

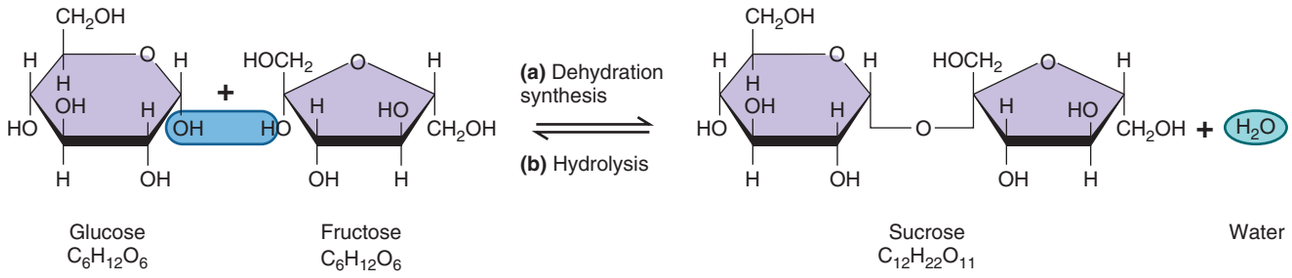


Figure 2.8 Dehydration synthesis and hydrolysis. **(a)** In dehydration synthesis (left to right), the monosaccharides glucose and fructose combine to form a molecule of the disaccharide sucrose. A molecule of water is released in the reaction. **(b)** In hydrolysis (right to left), the sucrose molecule breaks down into the smaller molecules glucose and fructose. For the hydrolysis reaction to proceed, water must be added to the sucrose.

Q What is the difference between a polymer and a monomer?

general formula for carbohydrates is $(CH_2O)_n$, where *n* indicates that there are three or more CH_2O units. Carbohydrates can be classified into three major groups on the basis of size: monosaccharides, disaccharides, and polysaccharides.

Monosaccharides

Simple sugars are called **monosaccharides** (*sacchar* = sugar); each molecule contains three to seven carbon atoms. The number of carbon atoms in the molecule of a simple sugar is indicated by the prefix in its name. For example, simple sugars with three carbons are called trioses. There are also tetroses (four-carbon sugars), pentoses (five-carbon sugars), hexoses (six-carbon sugars), and heptoses (seven-carbon sugars). Pentoses and hexoses are extremely important to living organisms. Deoxyribose is a pentose found in DNA. Glucose, a very common hexose, is the main energy-supplying molecule of living cells.

Disaccharides

Disaccharides (*di* = two) are formed when two monosaccharides bond in a dehydration synthesis reaction.* For example, molecules of two monosaccharides, glucose and fructose, combine to form a molecule of the disaccharide sucrose (table sugar) and a molecule of water (see Figure 2.8a). Similarly, the dehydration synthesis of the monosaccharides glucose and galactose forms the disaccharide lactose (milk sugar).

It may seem odd that glucose and fructose have the same chemical formula (see Figure 2.8), even though they are different monosaccharides. The positions of the oxygens and carbons differ in the two different molecules; consequently, the molecules have different physical and chemical properties. Two molecules with the same chemical formula but different structures and properties are called **isomers** (*iso* = same).

Disaccharides can be broken down into smaller, simpler molecules when water is added. This chemical reaction, the reverse of dehydration synthesis, is called **hydrolysis** (*hydro* = water; *lysis* = to loosen) (Figure 2.8b). A molecule of sucrose, for example, may be hydrolyzed (digested) into its components of glucose and fructose by reacting with the H^+ and OH^- of water.

As you will see in Chapter 4, the cell walls of bacterial cells are composed of disaccharides and proteins, which together are called peptidoglycan.

Polysaccharides

Carbohydrates in the third major group, the **polysaccharides**, consist of tens or hundreds of monosaccharides joined through dehydration synthesis. Polysaccharides often have side chains branching off the main structure and are classified as macromolecules. Like disaccharides, polysaccharides can be split apart into their constituent sugars through hydrolysis. Unlike monosaccharides and disaccharides, however, they usually lack the characteristic sweetness of sugars such as fructose and sucrose and usually are not soluble in water.

One important polysaccharide is *glycogen*, which is composed of glucose subunits and is synthesized as a storage material by animals and some bacteria. *Cellulose*, another important glucose polymer, is the main component of the cell walls of plants and most algae. Although cellulose is the most abundant carbohydrate on Earth, animals cannot digest it. Cellulose can be digested by only a few organisms that have the appropriate enzyme. The polysaccharide *dextran* is produced as a sugary slime by certain bacteria; it is used clinically in a blood plasma substitute. *Chitin* is a polysaccharide that makes up part of the cell wall of most fungi and the exoskeletons of lobsters, crabs, and insects. *Starch* is a polymer of glucose produced by plants and used as food by humans. Digestion of starch by intestinal bacteria is important to human health (see **Exploring the Microbiome**).

Many animals, including humans, produce enzymes called *amylases* that can break the bonds between the glucose molecules in glycogen. However, this enzyme cannot break the bonds in cellulose. Bacteria and fungi that produce enzymes called *cellulases* can digest cellulose. Cellulases from the fungus *Trichoderma* (TRIK-ō-der-mah) are used for a variety of industrial purposes. One of the more unusual uses is producing stone-washed or distressed denim. Because washing the fabric with rocks would damage washing machines, cellulase is used to digest, and therefore soften, the cotton.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

2-8 Give an example of a monosaccharide, a disaccharide, and a polysaccharide.

Lipids

If lipids were suddenly to disappear from the Earth, all living cells would collapse in a pool of fluid, because lipids are essential to the structure and function of membranes that separate living cells from their environment. **Lipids** (*lip* = fat) are a second major group of organic compounds found in living matter. Like carbohydrates, they are composed of atoms of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, but lipids lack the 2:1 ratio between hydrogen and oxygen atoms. Even though lipids are a very diverse group of compounds, they share one common characteristic: they are *nonpolar* molecules so, unlike water, do not have a positive and a negative end (pole). Therefore, most lipids are insoluble in water but dissolve readily in nonpolar solvents, such as ether and chloroform. Lipids provide the structure of cell membranes and some cell walls and function in energy storage.

*Carbohydrates composed of 2 to about 20 monosaccharides are called **oligosaccharides** (*oligo* = few). Disaccharides are the most common oligosaccharides.

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

Feed Our Intestinal Bacteria, Feed Ourselves: A Tale of Two Starches

Structurally speaking, starch found in plants appears either as a many-branched chain called amylopectin or as a straight-chained variety called amylose. Amylopectin-rich foods common to our diet include sticky rice and waxy varieties of corn and potatoes. Foods containing high levels of amylose include beans and other legumes and whole grains. Although both are starches, they produce markedly different effects when we eat them.

In the small intestine, enzymes rapidly convert amylopectin into glucose, which is the preferred carbohydrate for many essential metabolic reactions our cells conduct. By contrast, amylose's structure has less surface area for enzymes to react with, making it more resistant to digestion. Because it isn't easily broken down in our small intestine, the amylose starch continues through the digestive canal to the colon, where it's available for bacteria living there to ferment.

You might assume that amylopectin, the starch that is easily broken down, must be the best type for us to eat. However, feeding our microbiome amylose seems to provide excellent health benefits. Amylose-fermenting bacteria, including members of the *Prevotella* and *Lachnospira* genera, produce short-chain fatty acids. Several types of these molecules are important players in how our intestinal cells absorb electrolytes (ions).

Research also suggests that butyrate, one type of short-chain fatty acid linked to *Prevotella* metabolism, may protect us against colorectal cancer. In another study, mice were treated with antibiotics and then inoculated with pathogenic *Clostridioides difficile* bacteria. What happened to the animals next was stark: some rapidly developed lethal infections, while others were colonized by the bacteria but experienced only mild disease. The fate of the study mice seemed to come down to their microbiome composition before *C. difficile* was introduced. Mice with large numbers of *Lachnospira* bacteria were more likely to survive, whereas those with intestinal microbiomes dominated by *Escherichia coli* were much more likely to die.

Helpful *Prevotella* species thrive in the intestines by fermenting amylose we can't digest.

Simple Lipids

Simple lipids are commonly called *fats*. The simple lipids occurring most often in living organisms are *triglycerides*, which contain an alcohol called *glycerol* bonded to three compounds known as *fatty acids*. Glycerol has three carbon atoms to which are attached three hydroxyl (—OH) groups (**Figure 2.9a**). Fatty acids consist of long hydrocarbon chains (composed only of carbon and hydrogen atoms) ending in a carboxyl (—COOH, organic acid) group (Figure 2.9b). Most common fatty acids contain an even number of carbon atoms.

Different types of fat molecules are formed when a molecule of glycerol combines with one to three fatty acid molecules. The number of fatty acid molecules determines whether the fat molecule is a monoglyceride, diglyceride, or triglyceride (Figure 2.9c). In the reaction, one to three molecules of water are formed (dehydration), depending on the number of fatty acid molecules reacting. The chemical bond formed where the water molecule is removed is called an *ester linkage*. In the reverse reaction, hydrolysis, a fat molecule is broken down into its component glycerol and fatty acid molecules.

Because the fatty acids that form lipids have different structures, there is a wide variety of lipids. For example, three molecules of fatty acid A might combine with a glycerol molecule. Or one molecule each of fatty acids A, B, and C might unite with a glycerol molecule (see Figure 2.9c).

The primary function of lipids is to form plasma membranes that enclose cells. A plasma membrane supports the cell and allows nutrients and wastes to pass in and out; therefore, the lipids must maintain the same viscosity, regardless of the surrounding temperature. The membrane must be about as viscous as olive oil, without getting too fluid when warmed or too thick when cooled. As everyone who has ever cooked a meal knows, animal fats (such as butter) are usually solid at room temperature, whereas vegetable oils are usually liquid at room temperature. The difference in their respective melting points is due to the degrees of saturation of the fatty acid chains. A fatty acid is said to be *saturated* when it has no double bonds, in which case the carbon skeleton contains the maximum number of hydrogen atoms (see the stearic and palmitic acids in Figure 2.9c). Saturated chains become solid more easily because they are

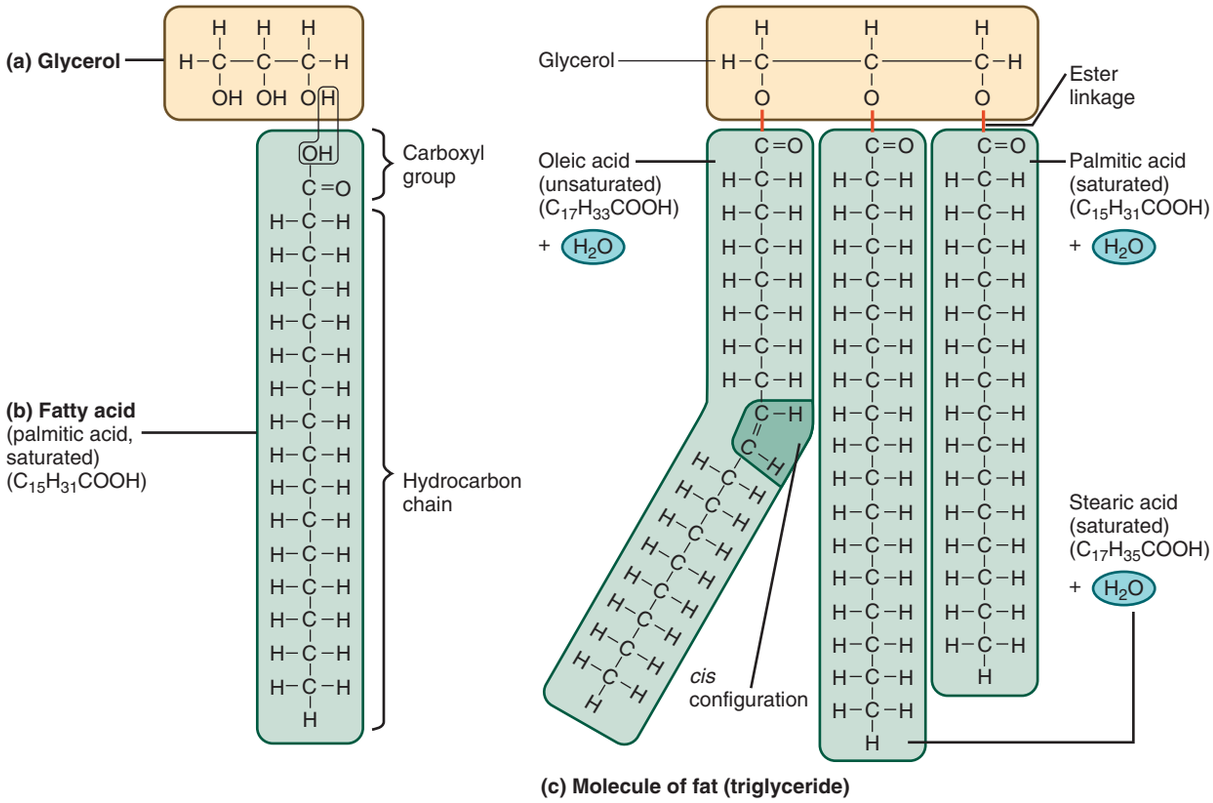


Figure 2.9 Structural formulas of simple lipids. **(a)** Glycerol. **(b)** Palmitic acid, a saturated fatty acid. **(c)** The chemical combination of a molecule of glycerol and three fatty acid molecules (palmitic, stearic, and oleic in this example) forms one molecule of fat (triglyceride) and three molecules of water in a dehydration synthesis reaction. Oleic acid is a *cis* fatty acid. The bond between glycerol and each fatty acid is called an ester linkage. The addition of three water molecules to a fat forms glycerol and three fatty acid molecules in a hydrolysis reaction.

Q How do saturated and unsaturated fatty acids differ?

relatively straight and are thus able to pack together more closely than unsaturated chains. The double bonds of *unsaturated* chains create kinks in the chain, which keep the chains apart from one another (see the oleic acid Figure 2.9c). Notice in Figure 2.9c that the two H atoms on either side of the double bond in oleic acid are on the same side of the unsaturated fatty acid. Such an unsaturated fatty acid is called a *cis* fatty acid. If, instead, the H atoms are on opposite sides of the double bond, the unsaturated acid is called a *trans* fatty acid.

Complex Lipids

Complex lipids contain such elements as phosphorus, nitrogen, and sulfur, in addition to the carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen found in simple lipids. The complex lipids called *phospholipids* are made up of glycerol, two fatty acids, and, in place of a third fatty acid, a phosphate group bonded to one of several organic groups (**Figure 2.10a**). Phospholipids are the lipids that build membranes; they are essential to a cell's survival. Phospholipids have polar as well as nonpolar regions (Figure 2.10a and b; see also Figure 4.14). When placed in water, phospholipid molecules twist themselves in such a way that all polar (hydrophilic) portions orient themselves toward the polar water molecules, with which they then form hydrogen bonds. (Recall that *hydrophilic* means water-loving.) This forms the basic structure of a plasma membrane (Figure 2.10c). Polar portions consist of a phosphate group and glycerol. In contrast to the polar regions, all nonpolar (hydrophobic) parts of the phospholipid make contact only with the nonpolar portions of neighboring molecules. (*Hydrophobic* means water-fearing.) Nonpolar portions consist of fatty acids. This characteristic behavior makes phospholipids particularly suitable for their role as a major component of the membranes that enclose cells. Phospholipids enable the membrane to act as a barrier that separates the contents of the cell from the water-based environment in which it lives.

Some complex lipids are useful in identifying certain bacteria. For example, the cell wall of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (mī′kō-bak-TI-rē-um too′ber-kū-LŌ-sis), the bacterium that causes tuberculosis, is distinguished by its lipid-rich content. The cell wall contains complex lipids such as waxes and glycolipids (lipids with carbohydrates attached) that give the bacterium distinctive

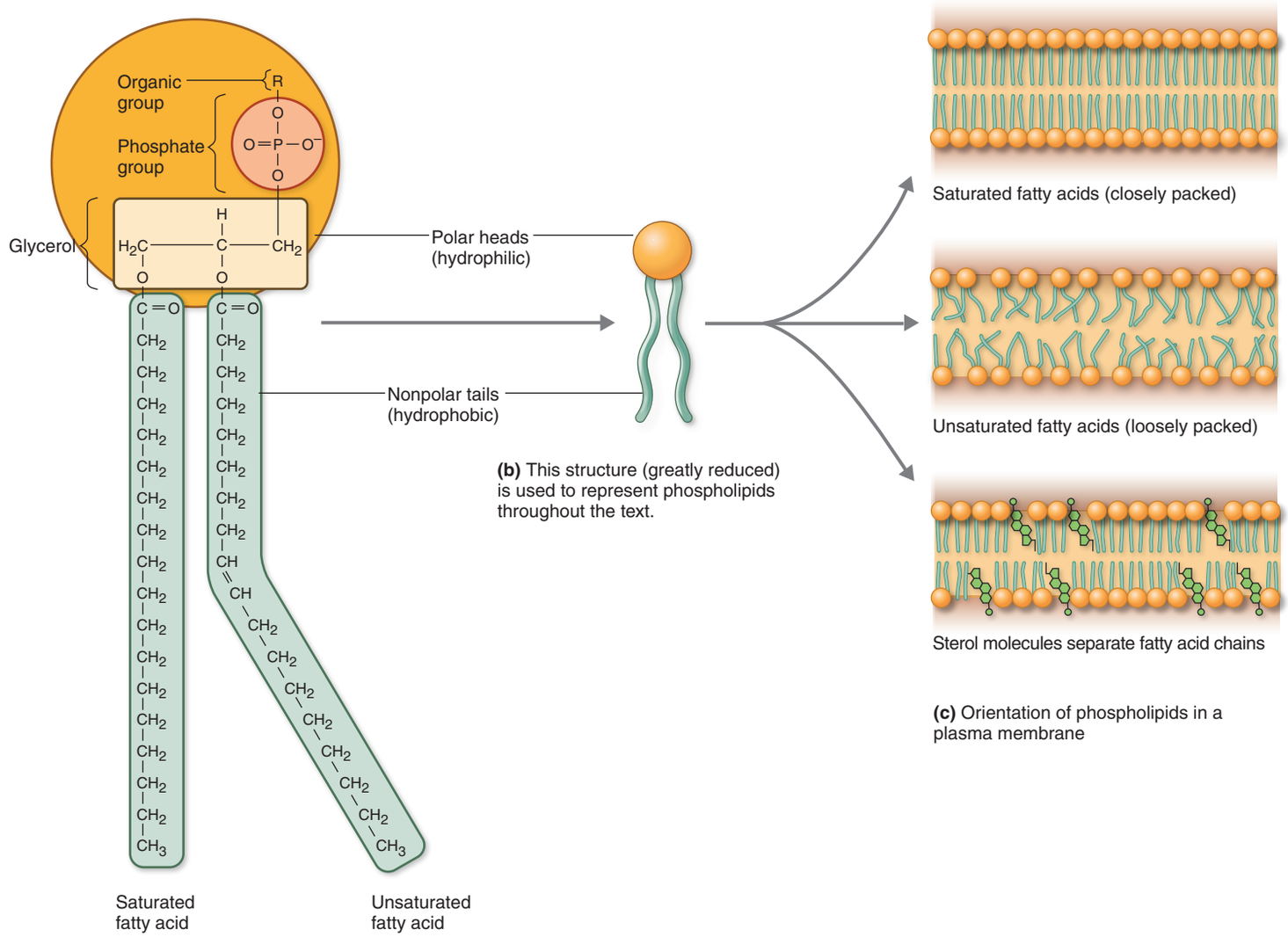


Figure 2.10 Phospholipid and orientation, showing saturated and unsaturated fatty acids and the molecules' polarity.

Q Where are phospholipids found in cells?

staining characteristics. Cell walls rich in such complex lipids are characteristic of all members of the genus *Mycobacterium*.

Steroids

Steroids are structurally very different from lipids. Figure 2.11 shows the structure of the steroid cholesterol, with the four interconnected carbon rings that are characteristic of steroids. When an —OH group is attached to one of the rings, the steroid is called a *sterol* (an alcohol). Sterols are important constituents of the plasma membranes of animal cells and of one group of bacteria (mycoplasmas), and they are also found in fungi and plants. One example is *ergosterol*, a steroid found in the plasma membranes of fungi. The sterols separate the fatty

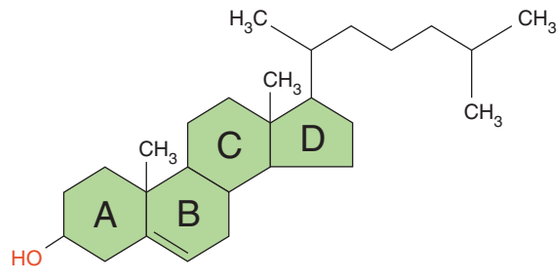


Figure 2.11 Cholesterol, a steroid. Note the four "fused" carbon rings (labeled A–D), which are characteristic of steroid molecules. The hydrogen atoms attached to the carbons at the corners of the rings have been omitted. The —OH group (colored red) makes this molecule a sterol.

Q Where are sterols found in cells?

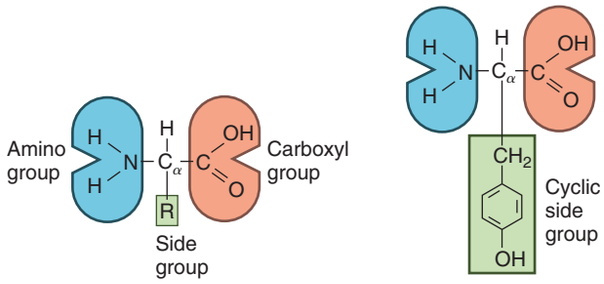


Figure 2.12 Amino acid structure. **(a)** The general structural formula for an amino acid. The alpha-carbon (C_a) is shown in the center. Different amino acids have different R groups, also called side groups. **(b)** Structural formula for the amino acid tyrosine, which has a cyclic side group.

Q What distinguishes one amino acid from another?

acid chains and thus prevent the packing that would harden the plasma membrane at low temperatures (see Figure 2.10c).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

2-9 How do simple lipids differ from complex lipids?

Proteins

Proteins are organic molecules that contain carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen. Some also contain sulfur. If you were to separate and weigh all the groups of organic compounds in a living cell, the proteins would tip the scale. Hundreds of different proteins can be found in any single cell, and together they make up 50% or more of a cell's dry weight.

Proteins are essential ingredients in all aspects of cell structure and function. *Enzymes* are the proteins that speed up biochemical reactions. But proteins have other functions as well. *Transporter proteins* help transport certain chemicals into and out of cells. Other proteins, such as the *bacteriocins* produced by many bacteria, kill other bacteria. Certain *toxins*, called exotoxins, produced by some disease-causing microorganisms are also proteins. Some proteins play a role in the *contraction* of animal muscle cells and the *movement* of microbial and other types of cells. Other proteins are integral parts of *cell structures* such as walls, membranes, and cytoplasmic components. Still others, such as the *hormones* of certain organisms, have regulatory functions. As we will see in Chapter 17, proteins called *antibodies* play a role in vertebrate immune systems.

Amino Acids

Just as monosaccharides are the building blocks of larger carbohydrate molecules, and just as fatty acids and glycerol are the building blocks of fats, **amino acids** are the building blocks of proteins. Amino acids contain at least one carboxyl (—COOH) group and one amino ($—NH_2$) group attached to the same carbon atom (Figure 2.12a). If the amino group is attached to the first (alpha) carbon atom, written C_α, then the amino acid is referred to as an *alpha-amino acid*. If, instead, the amino group is attached to the second (beta) carbon, written C_β, then the amino acid is called a *beta-amino acid*. The majority of metabolically important amino acids are alpha-amino acids. Also attached to the alpha-carbon is a side group (R group), which is the amino acid's distinguishing feature. The side group can be a hydrogen atom, an unbranched or branched chain of atoms, or a ring structure that is cyclic (all carbon) or heterocyclic (containing an atom other than carbon). Figure 2.12b shows the structural formula of tyrosine, an amino acid that has a cyclic side group. The side group can also contain functional groups, such as the sulfhydryl group (—SH), the hydroxyl group (—OH), or additional carboxyl or amino groups. These side groups and the carboxyl and alpha-amino groups affect the total structure of a protein, described later. The structures and standard abbreviations of the 20 amino acids found in proteins are shown in Table 2.5.

Most amino acids exist in either of two configurations called **stereoisomers**, designated by D and L. These configurations are mirror images, corresponding to "right-handed" (D) and "left-handed" (L) three-dimensional shapes (Figure 2.13). The amino

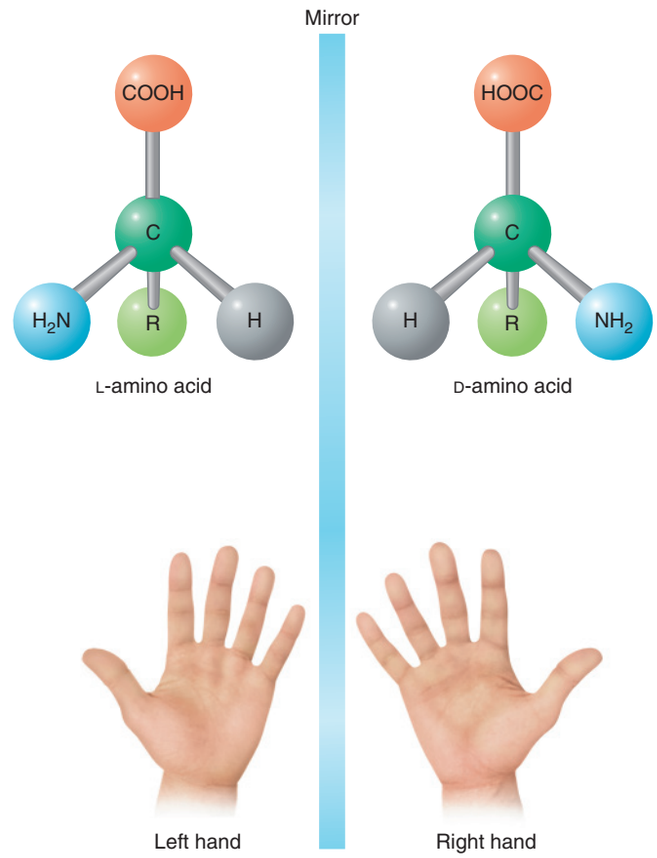
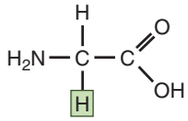
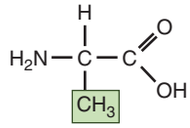
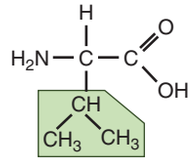
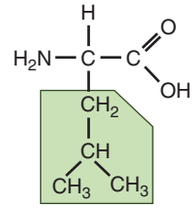
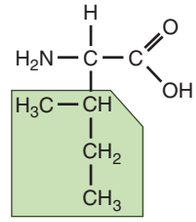
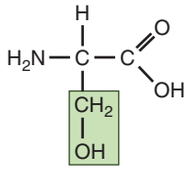
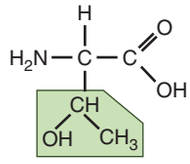
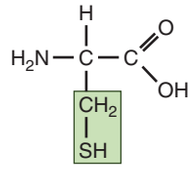
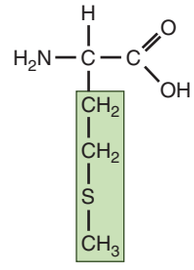
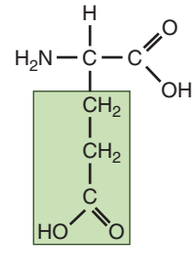
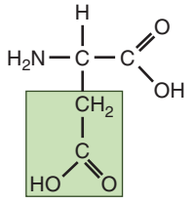
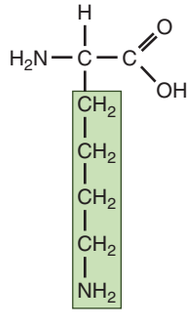
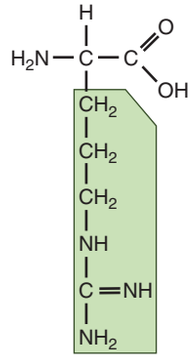
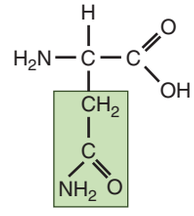
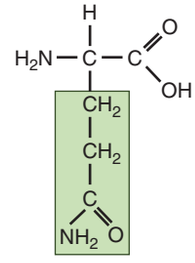
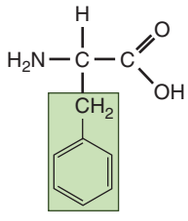
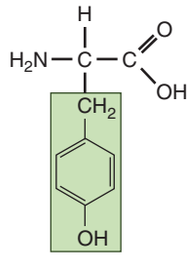
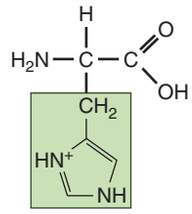
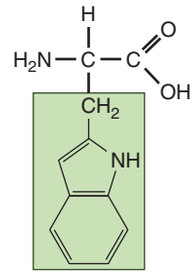
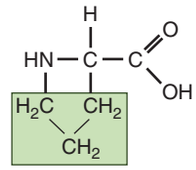


Figure 2.13 The L- and D-isomers of an amino acid, shown with ball-and-stick models. The two isomers, like left and right hands, are mirror images of each other and cannot be superimposed on one another. (Try it!)

Q Which isomer is always found in proteins?

TABLE 2.5 The 20 Amino Acids Found in Proteins*

Glycine (Gly, G)	**Alanine (Ala, A)**	**Valine (Val, V)**	**Leucine (Leu, L)**	**Isoleucine (Ile, I)**
				
Hydrogen atom	Unbranched chain	Branched chain	Branched chain	Branched chain
Serine (Ser, S)	**Threonine (Thr, T)**	**Cysteine (Cys, C)**	**Methionine (Met, M)**	**Glutamic acid (Glu, E)**
				
Hydroxyl (—OH) group	Hydroxyl (—OH) group	Sulphur-containing (—SH) group	Thioether (SC) group	Additional carboxyl (—COOH) group, acidic
Aspartic acid (Asp, D)	**Lysine (Lys, K)**	**Arginine (Arg, R)**	**Asparagine (Asn, N)**	**Glutamine (Gln, Q)**
				
Additional carboxyl (—COOH) group, acidic	Additional amino ($—NH_2$) group, basic	Additional amino ($—NH_2$) group, basic	Additional amino ($—NH_2$) group, basic	Additional amino ($—NH_2$) group, basic
Phenylalanine (Phe, F)	**Tyrosine (Tyr, Y)**	**Histidine (His, H)**	**Tryptophan (Trp, W)**	**Proline (Pro, P)**
				
Cyclic	Cyclic	Heterocyclic	Heterocyclic	Heterocyclic

*Shown are the amino acid names, including the three-letter and one-letter abbreviations in parentheses (above), their structural formulas (center), and characteristic R group (in green). Notice that cysteine and methionine are the only amino acids that contain sulfur.

CLINICAL CASE

While Jonathan is in intensive care, his wife, DeeAnn, and adult daughter talk with his physician and an investigator from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) to find the source of Jonathan's *B. anthracis* infection. Environmental investigations uncover *B. anthracis* at Jonathan's home, in his van, and in his workplace, but neither his wife nor children show signs of infection. His bandmates are also tested; they are all negative for *B. anthracis*. The CDC investigator explains to Jonathan's family that *B. anthracis* forms endospores that can survive in soil for up to 60 years. It is rare in humans; however, grazing animals and people who handle their hides or other by-products can become infected. *B. anthracis* cells have capsules that are composed of poly-D-glutamic acid.

Why are the capsules resistant to digestion by phagocytes? (Phagocytes are white blood cells that engulf and destroy bacteria.)

Part 1 | Part 2 | Part 3 | Part 4

acids found in proteins are always the L-isomers (except for glycine, the simplest amino acid, which does not have stereoisomers). However, D-amino acids occasionally occur in nature—for example, in certain bacterial cell walls and antibiotics.

Although only 20 different amino acids occur naturally in proteins, a single protein molecule can contain from 50 to a few thousand of amino acid molecules, which can be arranged in an almost infinite number of ways to make proteins of different lengths, compositions, and structures. The number of proteins is practically endless, and every living cell produces many different proteins.

Peptide Bonds

Amino acids bond between the carbon atom of the carboxyl (—COOH) group of one amino acid and the nitrogen atom of the amino ($—NH_2$) group of another (**Figure 2.14**). The bonds between amino acids are called **peptide bonds**. For every peptide bond formed between two amino acids, one water molecule is released; thus, peptide bonds are formed by dehydration synthesis. The resulting compound in Figure 2.14 is called a *dipeptide* because it consists of two amino acids joined by a peptide bond. Adding another amino acid to a dipeptide would form a *tripeptide*. Further additions of amino acids would produce a long, chainlike molecule called a *peptide* (4 to 9 amino acids) or *polypeptide* (10 to 2000 or more amino acids).

Levels of Protein Structure

Proteins vary tremendously in structure. Different proteins have different architectures and different three-dimensional shapes. This variation in structure is directly related to their diverse functions.

When a cell makes a protein, the polypeptide chain folds spontaneously to assume a certain shape. One reason for folding of the polypeptide is that some parts of a protein are attracted to water, and other parts are repelled by it. In practically every case, the function of a protein depends on its ability to recognize and bind to some other molecule. For example, an enzyme binds specifically with its substrate. A hormonal protein binds to a receptor on a cell whose function it will alter. An antibody binds to an antigen (foreign substance) that has invaded the body. The unique shape of each protein permits it to interact with specific other molecules and thereby to carry out specific functions.

Proteins are described in terms of four levels of organization: primary, secondary, tertiary, and quaternary (**Figure 2.15**). 1 The *primary structure* is the unique sequence in which the amino acids are linked together to form a polypeptide chain. This sequence is genetically determined. Alterations in sequence can have profound metabolic effects. For example, a single incorrect amino acid in a blood protein can produce the deformed hemoglobin molecule characteristic of sickle cell disease. But proteins do not exist as long, straight chains. Each polypeptide chain folds and coils in specific ways into a relatively compact structure with a characteristic three-dimensional shape.

2 A protein's *secondary structure* is the localized, repetitious twisting or folding of the polypeptide chain. This aspect of a protein's shape results from hydrogen bonds joining the atoms of peptide bonds at different locations along the polypeptide chain. The two types of secondary protein structures are clockwise spirals called *helices* (singular: *helix*) and pleated sheets, which form from roughly parallel portions of the chain. Both structures are held together by hydrogen bonds between oxygen or nitrogen atoms that are part of the polypeptide's backbone.

3 *Tertiary structure* refers to the overall three-dimensional structure of a polypeptide chain. The folding is not repetitive or predictable, as in secondary structure. Whereas secondary structure involves hydrogen bonding between atoms of the amino and carboxyl groups involved in the peptide bonds, tertiary structure involves several interactions between various amino acid side groups in the polypeptide chain. For example, amino acids with nonpolar (hydrophobic) side groups usually interact at the core of the protein, out of contact with water.

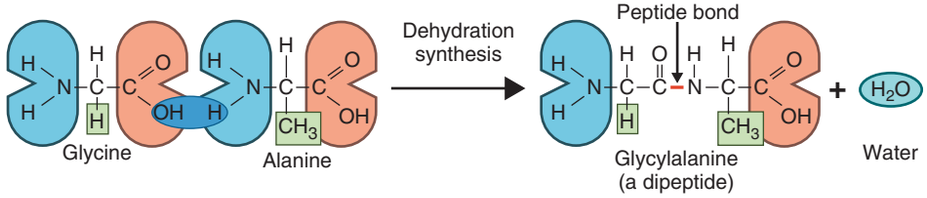


Figure 2.14 Peptide bond formation by dehydration synthesis. The amino acids glycine and alanine combine to form a dipeptide. The newly formed bond between the carbon atom of glycine and the nitrogen atom of alanine is called a peptide bond.

Q How are amino acids related to proteins?

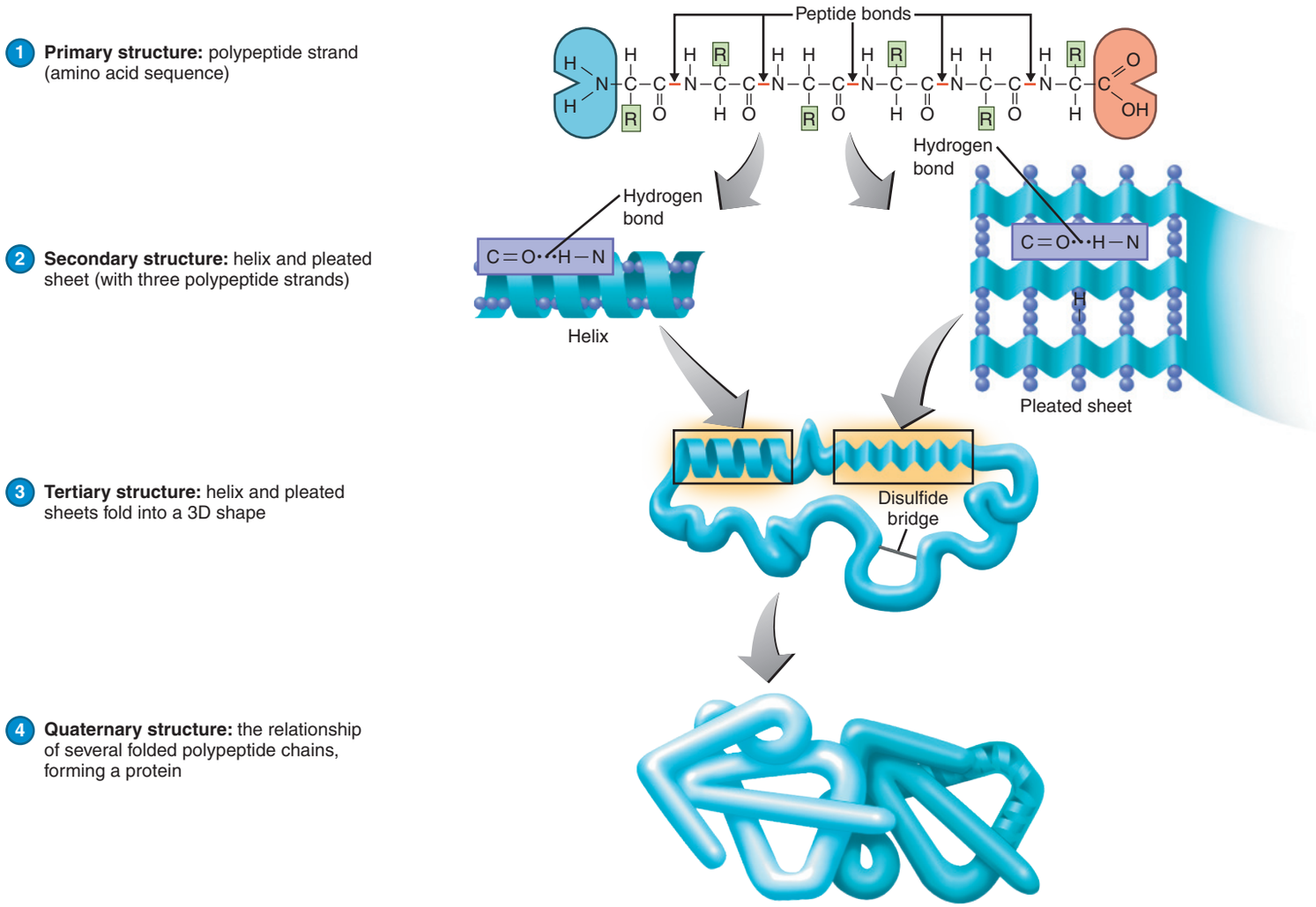


Figure 2.15 Protein structure. 1 Primary structure, the amino acid sequence. 2 Secondary structures: helix and pleated sheet. 3 Tertiary structure, the overall three-dimensional folding of a polypeptide chain. 4 Quaternary structure, the relationship between several polypeptide chains that make up a protein. Shown here is the quaternary structure of a hypothetical protein composed of two polypeptide chains.

Q What property of a protein enables it to carry out specific functions?

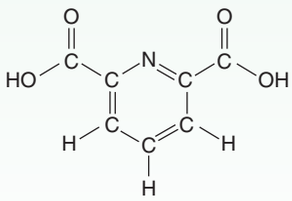
This *hydrophobic interaction* helps contribute to tertiary structure. Hydrogen bonds between side groups, and ionic bonds between oppositely charged side groups, also contribute to tertiary structure. Proteins that contain the amino acid cysteine form strong covalent bonds called *disulfide bridges*. These bridges form when two cysteine molecules are brought close together by the folding of the protein. Cysteine molecules contain sulfhydryl groups (—SH), and the sulfur of one cysteine molecule bonds to the sulfur on another, forming (by the removal of hydrogen atoms) a disulfide bridge (S—S) that holds parts of the protein together.

4 Some proteins have a *quaternary structure*, which consists of an aggregation of two or more individual polypeptide chains (subunits) that operate as a single functional unit. Figure 2.15 shows a hypothetical protein consisting of two polypeptide chains. More commonly, proteins have three or more kinds of polypeptide subunits. The bonds that hold a quaternary structure together are basically the same as those that maintain tertiary structure. The overall shape of a protein may be globular (compact and roughly spherical) or fibrous (threadlike). Examples of quaternary proteins are hemoglobin (the oxygen-carrying compound in red blood cells), microfilaments (which generate movement and provide mechanical support in cells), microtubules (which provide movement of eukaryotic organelles and flagella), the virus coat, and DNA polymerase (an enzyme involved in the synthesis of DNA strands).

If a protein encounters a hostile environment in terms of temperature, pH, or salt concentrations, it may unravel and lose its characteristic shape. This process is called **denaturation**

CLINICAL CASE

The host's phagocytes cannot easily digest D-forms of amino acids, such as D-glutamic acid found in the capsules of *B. anthracis*. Therefore, infection can develop. The CDC investigator's mention of animal hides gives DeeAnn an idea. Jonathan plays West African drums called *djembe*; the drum skins are made from dried imported goat hides from West Africa. Although most of these hides are legally imported, some slip through the cracks. It's possible that the hides on Jonathan's drums have been illegally imported and therefore have not been inspected by the U.S. Department of Agriculture. To create *djembe* drums, the hides are soaked in water, stretched over the drum body, and then scraped and sanded. The scraping and sanding generate a large amount of aerosolized dust as the hides dry. Sometimes this dust contains *B. anthracis* endospores, which contain dipicolinic acid.



What is the functional group in dipicolinic acid? See the figure above.

Part 1 | Part 2 | **Part 3** | Part 4

(see Figure 5.6). As a result of denaturation, the protein is no longer functional. This process will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 5 with regard to denaturation of enzymes.

The proteins we have been discussing are *simple proteins*, which contain only amino acids. *Conjugated proteins* are combinations of amino acids with other organic or inorganic components. Conjugated proteins are named by their non–amino acid component. Thus, glycoproteins contain sugars, nucleoproteins contain nucleic acids, metalloproteins contain metal atoms, lipoproteins contain lipids, and phosphoproteins contain phosphate groups. Phosphoproteins are important regulators of activity in eukaryotic cells. Bacterial synthesis of phosphoproteins may be important for the survival of bacteria such as *Legionella pneumophila* that grow inside host cells.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

2-10 What two functional groups are in all amino acids?

Nucleic Acids

Nucleic acids are organic compounds that carry genetic information; their name is derived from the fact that they were first discovered in the cell nucleus. In 1944, three American microbiologists—Oswald Avery, Colin MacLeod, and Maclyn McCarty—discovered that a compound called **deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)** is the substance of which genes are made. Nine years later, James Watson and Francis Crick, working with molecular models and X-ray information supplied by Maurice Wilkins and Rosalind Franklin, identified the physical structure of DNA. In addition, Crick suggested a mechanism for DNA replication and how it works as the hereditary material. DNA and another substance called **ribonucleic acid (RNA)** are together referred to as **nucleic acids**. DNA and RNA are the only two naturally occurring nucleic acids.

Just as amino acids are the structural units of proteins, nucleotides are the structural units of nucleic acids. Each **nucleotide** has three parts: a heterocyclic nitrogen-containing compound, a pentose (five-carbon) sugar (either **deoxyribose** or **ribose**), and a phosphate group (phosphoric acid). The nitrogen-containing bases are heterocyclic compounds made up of carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen atoms. The bases are named adenine (A), thymine (T), cytosine (C), guanine (G), and uracil (U). A and G are double-ring structures called **purines**, whereas T, C, and U are single-ring structures referred to as **pyrimidines**.

Nucleotides are named according to their nitrogen-containing base. Thus, a nucleotide containing thymine is a *thymine nucleotide*, one containing adenine is an *adenine nucleotide*, and so on. The term **nucleoside** refers to the combination of a purine or pyrimidine plus a pentose sugar; it does not contain a phosphate group.

DNA

According to the model proposed by Watson and Crick, a DNA molecule consists of two long strands wrapped around each other to form a **double helix** (Figure 2.16). The double helix looks like a twisted ladder, and each strand is composed of many nucleotides.

Every strand of DNA composing the double helix has a "backbone" consisting of alternating deoxyribose sugar and phosphate groups. The deoxyribose of one nucleotide is joined to the phosphate group of the next. The nitrogen-containing bases make up the rungs of the ladder. Note that the purine A is always paired with the pyrimidine T and that the purine G is always paired with the pyrimidine C. The bases are held together by hydrogen bonds; A and T are held by two hydrogen bonds, and G and C by three. DNA does not contain uracil (U).

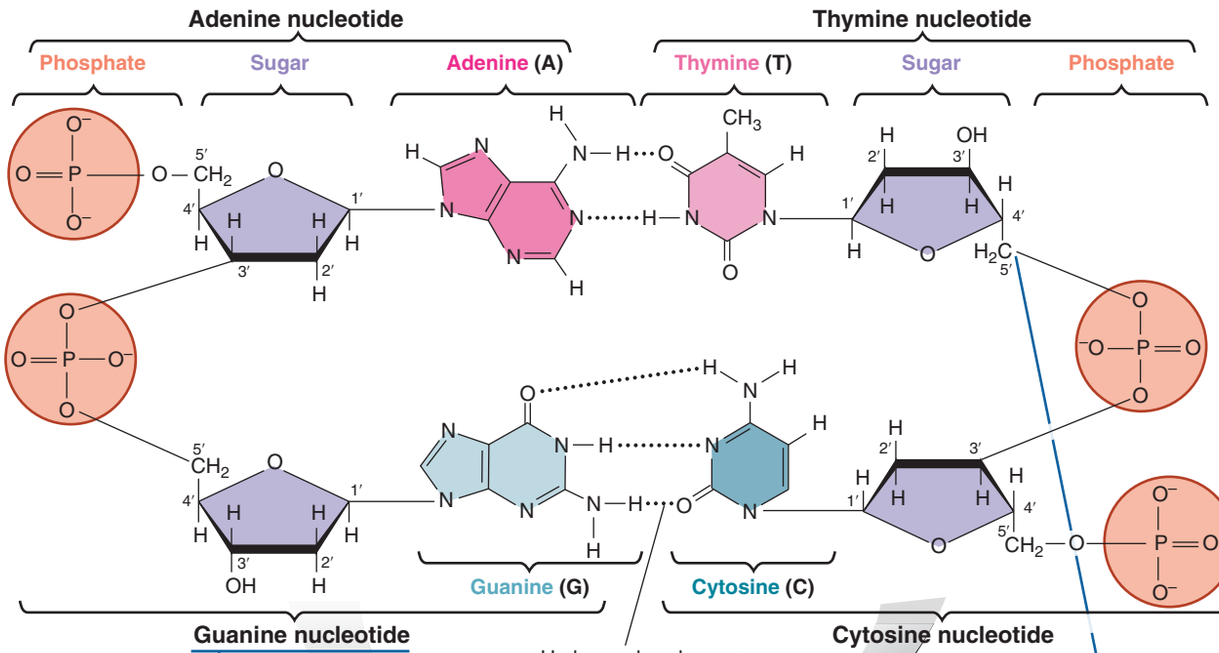
The order in which the nitrogen base pairs occur along the backbone is extremely specific and in fact contains the genetic instructions for the organism. Nucleotides form genes, and a single DNA molecule may contain thousands of genes. By coding for the assembly of amino acids into proteins, genes determine all hereditary traits, and they control all the activities that take place within cells.

One very important consequence of nitrogen-containing base pairing is that if the sequence of bases of one strand is known, then the sequence of the other strand is also known. For example, if one strand has the sequence . . . ATGC . . . , then the other strand has the sequence . . . TACG . . . . Because the

FOUNDATION FIGURE 2.16

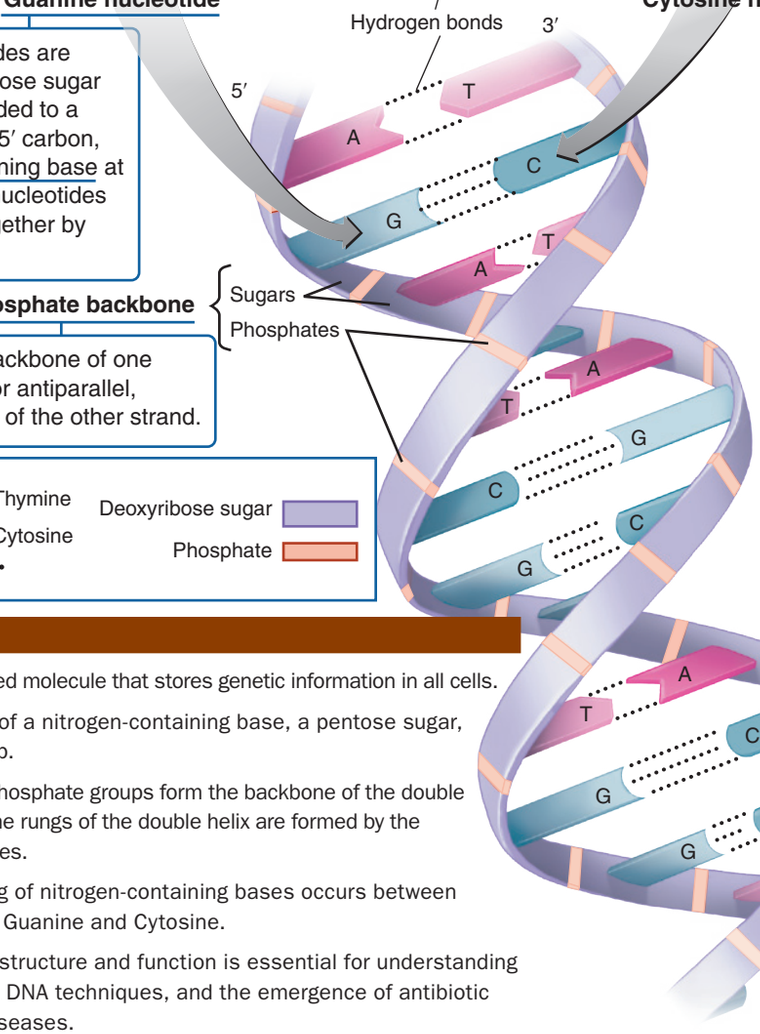
The Structure of DNA

Adenine, Thymine, Cytosine, and Guanine are nitrogenous bases, or nucleobases.



Individual DNA nucleotides are composed of a deoxyribose sugar molecule covalently bonded to a phosphate group at the 5′ carbon, and to a nitrogen-containing base at the 1′ carbon. The two nucleotides shown here are held together by hydrogen bonds.

The carbon atoms in the sugars are identified by adding a marker, ′ (for example, 5′, pronounced "5-prime"). This differentiates them from the carbon atoms in the nucleobases, such as thymine.



Sugar-phosphate backbone

The sugar-phosphate backbone of one strand is upside down, or antiparallel, relative to the backbone of the other strand.

DNA double helix

DNA's double-helical, ladderlike form is made up of many nucleotide base pairs, forming the rungs, and the repeating sugar-phosphate combination, forming the backbone.

Key

Adenine A T Thymine
Guanine G C Cytosine
Hydrogen bond ••••••••••
Deoxyribose sugar
Phosphate

KEY CONCEPTS

- DNA is a double-stranded molecule that stores genetic information in all cells.
- A nucleotide consists of a nitrogen-containing base, a pentose sugar, and a phosphate group.
- Alternating sugar and phosphate groups form the backbone of the double helix (twisted ladder); the rungs of the double helix are formed by the nitrogen-containing bases.
- Complementary pairing of nitrogen-containing bases occurs between Adenine and Thymine; Guanine and Cytosine.
- Familiarity with DNA's structure and function is essential for understanding genetics, recombinant DNA techniques, and the emergence of antibiotic resistance and new diseases.

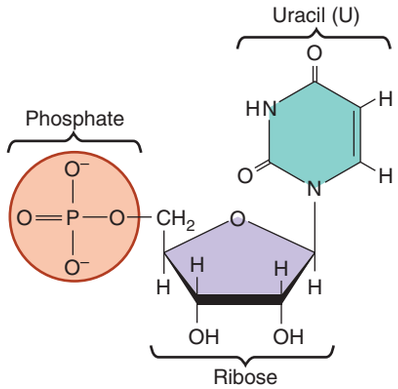


Figure 2.17 A uracil nucleotide of RNA.

Q How are DNA and RNA similar in structure?

sequence of bases of one strand is determined by the sequence of bases of the other, the bases are said to be *complementary*. The actual transfer of information becomes possible because of DNA's unique structure and will be discussed further in Chapter 8.

RNA

RNA, the second principal kind of nucleic acid, differs from DNA in several respects. Whereas DNA is double-stranded, RNA is usually single-stranded. The five-carbon sugar in the RNA nucleotide is ribose, which has one more oxygen atom than deoxyribose. Also, one of RNA's bases is uracil (U) instead of thymine (Figure 2.17). The other three bases (A, G, C) are the same as DNA. Three major kinds of RNA have been identified in cells. They are **messenger RNA (mRNA)**, **ribosomal RNA (rRNA)**, and **transfer RNA (tRNA)**, each of which has a specific role in protein synthesis (see Chapter 8). As you will see in Chapter 13, RNA is also a carrier of genetic codes in some viruses, and a type of RNA participates in a process called **RNA interference (RNAi)**, in which genes are silenced or deactivated as part of regulatory or defense systems.

DNA and RNA are compared in Table 2.6.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

2-11 How do DNA and RNA differ?

Adenosine Triphosphate (ATP)

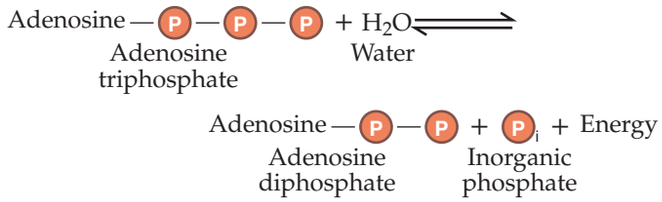
Adenosine triphosphate (ATP) is the principal energy-carrying molecule of all cells; thus, it is indispensable to cell survival. It stores the chemical energy released by some chemical reactions, and it provides the energy for reactions that require energy. ATP consists of an adenosine unit, composed of adenine and ribose, with three phosphate groups (P) attached (Figure 2.18). In other words, it is an adenine nucleotide (also called adenosine monophosphate, or AMP) with two extra phosphate groups. ATP is called a high-energy molecule because it releases a large

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

The functional group in dipicolinic acid is carboxyl. *B. anthracis* infection is contracted by contact, ingestion, or inhalation of the endospores. In Jonathan's case, the process of stretching, scraping, and sanding the goat hides had created dust that settled on the drum skin and any surrounding crevices. *B. anthracis* endospores became airborne, or aerosolized, whenever Jonathan beat on the drum. He makes a full recovery, and from now on he makes certain that all parts of any drum he purchases have been legally imported.

Part 1 | Part 2 | Part 3 | **Part 4**

amount of usable energy when the third phosphate group is hydrolyzed, leaving **adenosine diphosphate (ADP)** and inorganic phosphate. This reaction can be represented as follows:



A cell's supply of ATP at any particular time is limited. Whenever the supply needs replenishing, the reaction goes in the reverse direction; the addition of a phosphate group to ADP and the input of energy produces more ATP. The energy required to attach the terminal phosphate group to ADP is supplied by the cell's various oxidation reactions, particularly the oxidation of glucose. ATP can be made in every cell, where its potential energy is released when needed.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

2-12 Which can provide more energy for a cell and why: ATP or ADP?

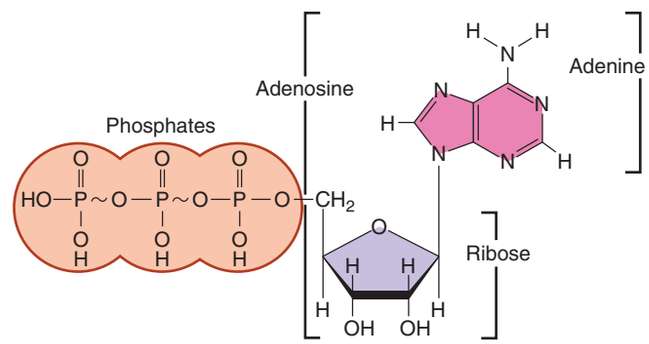


Figure 2.18 The structure of ATP. High-energy phosphate bonds are indicated by wavy lines. When ATP breaks down to ADP and inorganic phosphate, a large amount of chemical energy is released for use in other chemical reactions.

Q How is ATP similar to a nucleotide in RNA? In DNA?

TABLE 2.6 Comparison between DNA and RNA

Backbone	DNA	RNA
Strands	Double-stranded in cells and most DNA viruses to form a double helix; single-stranded in some viruses (parvoviruses).	Single-stranded in cells and most RNA viruses; double-stranded in some viruses (reoviruses).
Composition	The sugar is deoxyribose. The nitrogen-containing bases are cytosine (C), guanine (G), adenine (A), and thymine (T).	The sugar is ribose. The nitrogen-containing bases are cytosine (C), guanine (G), adenine (A), and uracil (U).
Function	Protein synthesis. Determines all hereditary traits.	Protein synthesis. Genetic code of some viruses. Gene deactivation.

Study Outline

Introduction (p. 24)

1. The science of the interaction between atoms and molecules is called chemistry.
2. The metabolic activities of microorganisms involve complex chemical reactions.
3. Microbes break down nutrients to obtain energy and to make new cells.

The Structure of Atoms (pp. 25–26)

1. An atom is the smallest unit of a chemical element that exhibits the properties of that element.
2. Atoms consist of a nucleus, which contains protons and neutrons, and electrons, which move around the nucleus.
3. The atomic number is the number of protons in the nucleus; the total number of protons and neutrons is the atomic mass.

Chemical Elements (pp. 25–26)

4. Atoms with the same number of protons and the same chemical behavior are classified as the same chemical element.
5. Chemical elements are designated by abbreviations called chemical symbols.
6. About 26 elements are commonly found in living cells.
7. Atoms that have the same atomic number (are of the same element) but different atomic masses are called isotopes.

Electronic Configurations (p. 26)

8. In an atom, electrons are arranged around the nucleus in electron shells.
9. Each shell can hold a characteristic maximum number of electrons.
10. The chemical properties of an atom are due largely to the number of electrons in its outermost (valence) shell.

How Atoms Form Molecules: Chemical Bonds

(pp. 27–30)

1. Molecules are made up of two or more atoms; molecules consisting of at least two different kinds of atoms are called compounds.
2. Atoms form molecules in order to fill their outermost electron shells.
3. Attractive forces that bind two atoms together are called chemical bonds.
4. The combining capacity of an atom—the number of chemical bonds the atom can form with other atoms—is its valence.

Ionic Bonds (pp. 27–28)

5. A positively or negatively charged atom or group of atoms is called an ion.
6. A chemical attraction between ions of opposite charge is called an ionic bond.
7. To form an ionic bond, one ion is an electron donor, and the other ion is an electron acceptor.

Covalent Bonds (pp. 27–29)

8. In a covalent bond, atoms share pairs of electrons.
9. Covalent bonds are stronger than ionic bonds and are far more common in organic molecules.

Hydrogen Bonds (pp. 28–30)

10. A hydrogen bond exists when a hydrogen atom covalently bonded to one oxygen or nitrogen atom is attracted to another oxygen or nitrogen atom.
11. Hydrogen bonds form weak links between different molecules or between parts of the same large molecule.

Molecular Mass and Moles (p. 29)

12. The molecular mass is the sum of the atomic masses of all the atoms in a molecule.
13. A mole of an atom, ion, or molecule is equal to its atomic or molecular mass expressed in grams.

Chemical Reactions (pp. 30–31)

1. Chemical reactions are the making or breaking of chemical bonds between atoms.
2. A change of energy occurs during chemical reactions.
3. Endergonic reactions require more energy than they release; exergonic reactions release more energy.
4. In a synthesis reaction, atoms, ions, or molecules are combined to form a larger molecule.
5. In a decomposition reaction, a larger molecule is broken down into its component molecules, ions, or atoms.
6. In an exchange reaction, two molecules are decomposed, and their subunits are used to synthesize two new molecules.
7. The products of reversible reactions can readily revert to form the original reactants.

Important Biological Molecules (pp. 31–47)

Inorganic Compounds (pp. 31–33)

1. Inorganic compounds are usually small, ionically bonded molecules.

Water (pp. 31–32)

2. Water is the most abundant substance in cells.
3. Because water is a polar molecule, it is an excellent solvent.
4. Water is a reactant in many of the decomposition reactions of digestion.
5. Water is an excellent temperature buffer.

Acids, Bases, and Salts (p. 32)

6. An acid dissociates into H^+ and anions.
7. A base dissociates into OH^- and cations.
8. A salt dissociates into negative and positive ions, neither of which is H^+ or OH^-.

Acid–Base Balance: The Concept of pH (pp. 32–33)

9. The term *pH* refers to the concentration of H^+ in a solution.
10. A solution of pH 7 is neutral; a pH value below 7 indicates acidity; pH above 7 indicates alkalinity.
11. The pH inside a cell and in culture media is stabilized with pH buffers.

Organic Compounds (pp. 33–47)

1. Organic compounds always contain carbon and hydrogen.
2. Carbon atoms form up to four bonds with other atoms.
3. Organic compounds are mostly or entirely covalently bonded.

Structure and Chemistry (pp. 34–35)

4. A chain of carbon atoms forms a carbon skeleton.
5. Functional groups of atoms are responsible for most of the properties of organic molecules.
6. The letter *R* may be used to denote the remainder of an organic molecule.
7. Frequently encountered classes of molecules are R—OH (alcohols) and R—COOH (organic acids).
8. Small organic molecules may combine into very large molecules called macromolecules.
9. Monomers usually bond together by dehydration synthesis, or condensation reactions, that form water and a polymer.
10. Organic molecules may be broken down by hydrolysis, a reaction involving the splitting of water molecules.

Carbohydrates (pp. 35–36)

11. Carbohydrates are compounds consisting of atoms of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, with hydrogen and oxygen in a 2:1 ratio.
12. Monosaccharides contain from three to seven carbon atoms.
13. Isomers are two molecules with the same chemical formula but different structures and properties—for example, glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$) and fructose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$).
14. Monosaccharides may form disaccharides and polysaccharides by dehydration synthesis.

Lipids (pp. 36–40)

15. Lipids are a diverse group of compounds distinguished by their insolubility in water.
16. Simple lipids consist of a molecule of glycerol and three molecules of fatty acids.
17. A saturated lipid has no double bonds between carbon atoms in the fatty acids; an unsaturated lipid has one or more double bonds. Saturated lipids have higher melting points than unsaturated lipids.
18. Phospholipids are complex lipids consisting of glycerol, two fatty acids, and a phosphate group.
19. Steroids have four interconnected carbon ring structures; sterols have a functional hydroxyl group.

Proteins (pp. 40–44)

20. Amino acids are the building blocks of proteins.
21. Amino acids consist of carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, and sometimes sulfur.
22. Twenty amino acids occur naturally in proteins.
23. By linking amino acids, peptide bonds (formed by dehydration synthesis) allow the formation of polypeptide chains.
24. Proteins have four levels of structure: primary (sequence of amino acids), secondary (helices or pleated), tertiary (overall three-dimensional structure of a polypeptide), and quaternary (two or more polypeptide chains).
25. Conjugated proteins consist of amino acids combined with inorganic or other organic compounds.

Nucleic Acids (pp. 44–46, 47)

26. Nucleic acids—DNA and RNA—are macromolecules consisting of repeating nucleotides.
27. A nucleotide is composed of a pentose, a phosphate group, and a nitrogen-containing base. A nucleoside is composed of a pentose and a nitrogen-containing base.
28. A DNA nucleotide consists of deoxyribose (a pentose), a phosphate group, and one of the following nitrogen-containing bases: thymine or cytosine (pyrimidines) or adenine or guanine (purines).
29. DNA consists of two strands of nucleotides wound in a double helix. The strands are held together by hydrogen bonds between purine and pyrimidine nucleotides: A-T and G-C.
30. Genes consist of sequences of nucleotides.
31. An RNA nucleotide consists of ribose (a pentose), a phosphate group, and one of the following nitrogen-containing bases: cytosine, guanine, adenine, or uracil (pyrimidine).

Adenosine Triphosphate (ATP) (p. 46)

32. ATP stores chemical energy for various cellular activities.
33. ATP consists of an adenosine unit and three phosphate groups. When the bond to ATP's terminal phosphate group is hydrolyzed, energy is released.
34. The energy from oxidation reactions is used to regenerate ATP from ADP and inorganic phosphate.

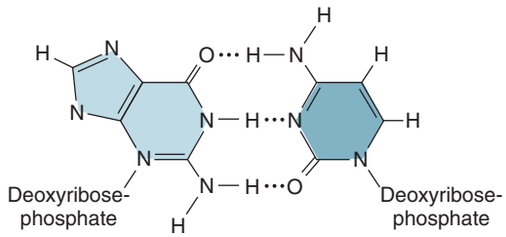
Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the back of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

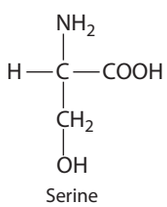
1. What is a chemical element?
2. DRAW IT Diagram the electronic configuration of a carbon atom.
3. What type of bond holds the following atoms together?
   a. Li^+ and Cl^- in LiCl
   b. carbon and oxygen atoms in methanol
   c. oxygen atoms in O_2
   d. a hydrogen atom of one nucleotide to a nitrogen or oxygen atom of another nucleotide in:



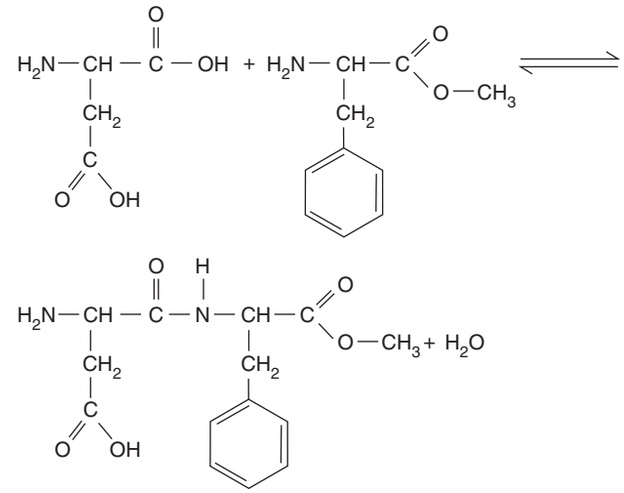
4. Classify the following types of chemical reactions.
   a. glucose + fructose → sucrose + H_2O
   b. lactose → glucose + galactose
   c. $NH_4Cl + H_2O \rightarrow NH_4OH + HCl$
   d. ATP $\rightleftharpoons$ ADP + P_i
5. Bacteria use the enzyme urease to obtain nitrogen in a form they can use from urea in the following reaction:

$$\underset{\text{Urea}}{CO(NH_2)_2} + H_2O \rightarrow \underset{\text{Ammonia}}{2NH_3} + \underset{\text{Carbon dioxide}}{CO_2}$$

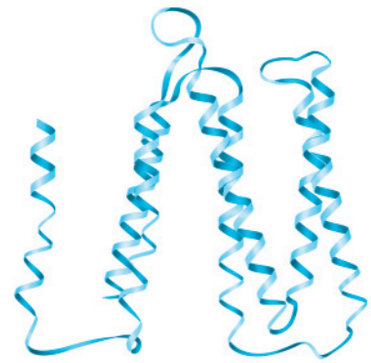
   What purpose does the enzyme serve in this reaction? What type of reaction is this?
6. Classify the following as subunits of either a carbohydrate, lipid, protein, or nucleic acid.
   a. $CH3—(CH_2)_7—CH{=}CH—(CH_2)_7—COOH$
   Oleic acid
   b.



   Serine
   c. $C_6H_{12}O_6$
   d. Thymine nucleotide
7. DRAW IT The artificial sweetener aspartame, or NutraSweet®, is made by joining aspartic acid to methylated phenylalanine, as shown in the following.



   a. What types of molecules are aspartic acid and phenylalanine?
   b. What direction is the hydrolysis reaction (left to right or right to left)?
   c. What direction is the dehydration synthesis reaction?
   d. Circle the atoms involved in the formation of water.
   e. Identify the peptide bond.
8. DRAW IT The following diagram shows the bacteriorhodopsin protein. Indicate the regions of primary, secondary, and tertiary structure. Does this protein have quaternary structure?



9. DRAW IT Draw a simple lipid, and show how it could be modified to a phospholipid.
10. NAME IT What type of microorganism has a chitin cell wall, has DNA that is contained in a nucleus, and has ergosterol in its plasma membrane?

Multiple Choice

Radioisotopes are frequently used to label molecules in a cell. The fate of atoms and molecules in a cell can then be followed. This process is the basis for questions 1–3.

1. Assume *E. coli* bacteria are grown in a nutrient medium containing the radioisotope ^{16}N. After a 48-hour incubation period, the ^{16}N would most likely be found in the *E. coli*'s
   a. carbohydrates.
   b. lipids.
   c. proteins.
   d. water.
   e. none of the above
2. If *Pseudomonas* bacteria are supplied with radioactively labeled cytosine, after a 24-hour incubation period this cytosine would most likely be found in the cells'
   a. carbohydrates.
   b. DNA.
   c. lipids.
   d. water.
   e. proteins.
3. If *E. coli* were grown in a medium containing the radioactive isotope ^{32}P, the ^{32}P would be found in all of the following molecules of the cell *except*
   a. ATP.
   b. carbohydrates.
   c. DNA.
   d. plasma membrane.
   e. complex lipids.
4. The optimum pH of *Acidithiobacillus* bacteria (pH 3) is _____ times more acid than blood (pH 7).
   a. 4
   b. 10
   c. 100
   d. 1000
   e. 10,000
5. The best definition of ATP is that it is
   a. a molecule stored for food use.
   b. a molecule that supplies energy to do work.
   c. a molecule stored for an energy reserve.
   d. a molecule used as a source of phosphate.
6. Which of the following is an organic molecule?
   a. H_2O (water)
   b. O_2 (oxygen)
   c. $C_{18}H_{29}SO_3$ (Styrofoam)
   d. FeO (iron oxide)
   e. $F_2C{=}CF_2$ (Teflon)

Classify each of the molecules on the left as an acid, base, or salt. The dissociation products of the molecules are shown to help you.

7. $HNO_3 \rightarrow H^+ + NO_3^-$
   a. acid **b.** base **c.** salt
8. $H_2SO_4 \rightarrow 2H^+ + SO_4^{2-}$
9. $NaOH \rightarrow Na^+ + OH^-$
10. $MgSO_4 \rightarrow Mg^{2+} + SO_4^{2-}$

Analysis

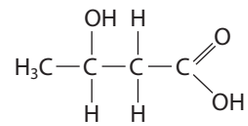
1. When you blow bubbles into a glass of water, the following reactions take place:

$$H_2O + CO_2 \xrightarrow{A} H_2CO_3 \xrightarrow{B} H^+ + HCO_3^-$$

   a. What type of reaction is *A*?
   b. What does reaction *B* tell you about the type of molecule H_2CO_3 is?
2. What are the common structural characteristics of ATP and DNA molecules?
3. What happens to the relative amount of unsaturated lipids in the plasma membrane when *E. coli* bacteria grown at 25°C are then grown at 37°C?
4. Giraffes, termites, and koalas eat only plant matter. Because animals cannot digest cellulose, how do you suppose these animals get nutrition from the leaves and wood they eat?

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. *Ralstonia* bacteria make poly-β-hydroxybutyrate (PHB), which is used to make a biodegradable plastic. PHB consists of many of the monomers shown in the following diagram. What type of molecule is PHB? What is the most likely reason a cell would store this molecule?



2. *Acidithiobacillus ferrooxidans* was responsible for destroying buildings in the Midwest by causing changes in the earth. The original rock, which contained lime ($CaCO_3$) and pyrite (FeS_2), expanded as bacterial metabolism caused gypsum ($CaSO_4$) crystals to form. How did *A. ferrooxidans* bring about the change from lime to gypsum?
3. Newborns are tested for phenylketonuria (PKU), an inherited disease. Individuals with this disease are missing an enzyme to convert phenylalanine (phe) to tyrosine (tyr); the resulting accumulation of phe can cause developmental disorders, brain damage, and seizures. The Guthrie test for PKU involves culturing *Bacillus subtilis*, which requires phe to grow. The bacteria are grown on media with a drop of the baby's blood.
   a. What type of chemical is phenylalanine?
   b. What does "no growth" in the Guthrie test mean?
   c. Why must individuals with PKU avoid the sweetener aspartame?
4. The antibiotic amphotericin B causes leaks in cells by combining with sterols in the plasma membrane. Would you expect to use amphotericin B against a bacterial infection? A fungal infection? Offer a reason why amphotericin B has severe side effects in humans.
5. You can smell sulfur when boiling eggs. What amino acids do you expect in the egg?

Observing Microorganisms Through a Microscope 3

Microorganisms are much too small to be seen with the unaided eye; they must be observed with a microscope. The word *microscope* is derived from the Latin word *micro* (small) and the Greek word *skopos* (to look at). Modern microbiologists use microscopes that produce, with great clarity, magnifications that range from ten to thousands of times greater than those of van Leeuwenhoek's single lens (see Figure 1.3c). This chapter describes how different types of microscopes function and why one type might be used in preference to another. *Helicobacter pylori* (HĒ-lik-ō-bak'ter PĪ-lor-ē), shown in the photograph, is a spiral-shaped bacterium that was first seen in cadaver stomachs in 1886. The bacterium was largely ignored until the resolving ability of microscopes was improved. Microscopic examination of these bacteria is described in the Clinical Case.

Some microbes are more readily visible than others because of their larger size or more easily observable features. Many microbes, however, must undergo several staining procedures before their cell walls, capsules, and other structures lose their colorless natural state. The last part of this chapter explains some of the more commonly used methods of preparing specimens for examination through a light microscope.

You may wonder how we are going to sort, count, and measure the specimens we will study. To answer these questions, this chapter opens with a discussion of how to use the metric system for measuring microbes.

◀ ***Helicobacter pylori*** **bacteria live in the human stomach and can cause ulcers.**

In the Clinic

Mike is one of your regular patients at the homeless clinic where you are a volunteer nurse. He has a severe cough and is quite thin. Last week you sent Mike's sputum sample to the laboratory and requested a Gram stain and acid-fast stain. The stain results are now posted in his chart: It says "acid-fast +." **What infection does Mike have?**

Hint: Read the acid-fast stain section ahead.

Units of Measurement

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

3-1 List the units used to measure microorganisms.

When measuring microorganisms, we use the metric system. A major advantage of the metric system is that units relate to each other by factors of 10. Thus, 1 meter (m) equals 10 decimeters (dm) or 100 centimeters (cm) or 1000 millimeters (mm). Units in the U.S. system of measure do not have the advantage of easy conversion by a single factor of 10. For example, 3 feet, or 36 inches, equals 1 yard.

Microorganisms are measured in even smaller units, such as micrometers and nanometers. A **micrometer** (μm) equals 0.000001 m (10^{-6} m). The prefix *micro* indicates the unit following it should be divided by 1 million, or 10^{6} (see the "Exponential Notation" section in Appendix B). A **nanometer (nm)** equals 0.000000001 m (10^{-9} m). Angstrom (Å) was previously used for 10^{-10} m, or 0.1 nm, but the term has been replaced with the appropriate nanometers.

Table 3.1 presents the basic metric units of length and some U.S. equivalents.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

3-1 How many nanometers is 10 mm?

Microscopy: The Instruments

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

3-2 Diagram the path of light through a compound microscope.

3-3 Define *total magnification* and *resolution.*

3-4 Identify a use for darkfield, phase-contrast, differential interference contrast, fluorescence, confocal, two-photon, and scanning acoustic microscopy, and compare each with brightfield illumination.

3-5 Explain how electron microscopy differs from light microscopy.

3-6 Identify uses for the transmission electron microscope (TEM), scanning electron microscope (SEM), and scanned-probe microscopes.

The simple microscope used by van Leeuwenhoek in the seventeenth century had only one lens and was similar to a magnifying glass. However, van Leeuwenhoek was the best lens grinder in the world in his day. His lenses were ground with such precision that a single lens could magnify a microbe 300×. His simple microscopes enabled him to be the first person to see bacteria (see Figure 1.3).

Contemporaries of van Leeuwenhoek, such as Robert Hooke, built compound microscopes, which have multiple lenses. In fact, a Dutch spectacle maker, Zaccharias Janssen, is credited with making the first compound microscope around 1600. However, these early compound microscopes were of poor quality and could not be used to see bacteria. It was not until about 1830 that Joseph Jackson Lister (the father of Joseph Lister) developed a significantly better microscope. Various improvements to Lister's microscope resulted in the development of the modern compound microscope, the kind used in microbiology laboratories today. Microscopic studies of live specimens have revealed dramatic interactions between microbes.

Light Microscopy

Light microscopy refers to the use of any kind of microscope that uses visible light to observe specimens. Here we examine several types of light microscopy.

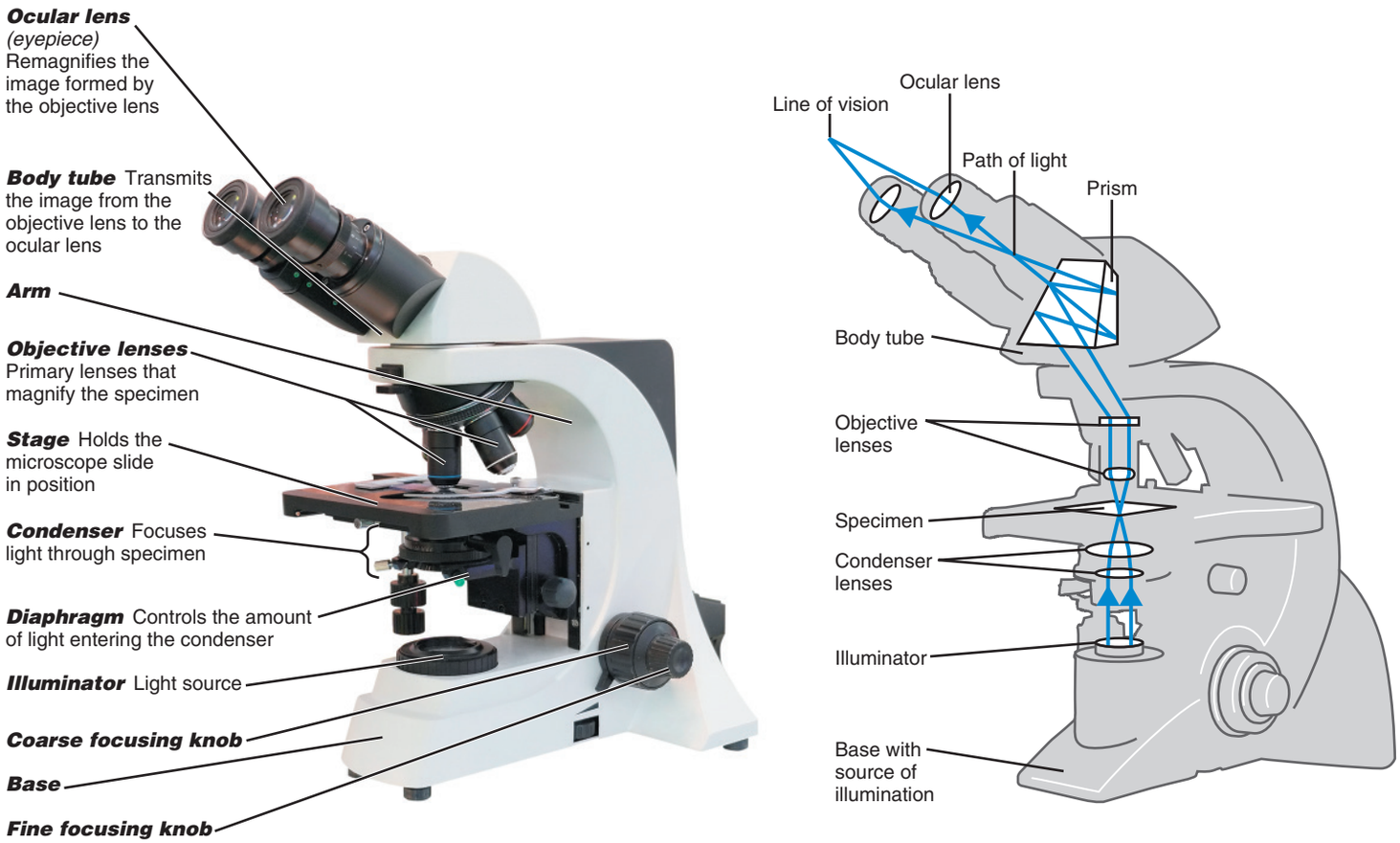
Compound Light Microscopy

A modern **compound light microscope (LM)** has a series of lenses and uses visible light as its source of illumination (Figure 3.1a). With a compound light microscope, we can examine very small specimens as well as some of their fine detail. A series of finely ground lenses (Figure 3.1b) forms a clearly focused image that is many times larger than the specimen itself. This magnification is achieved when light rays from an **illuminator**, the

ASM: The structure and function of microorganisms have been revealed by the use of microscopy (including brightfield phase-contrast, fluorescent, and electron).

TABLE 3.1 Metric Units of Length and U.S. Equivalent

Metric Unit	Meaning of Prefix	Metric Equivalent	U.S. Equivalent
1 kilometer (km)	*kilo* = 1000	1000 m = 10^{3} m	3280.84 ft or 0.62 mi; 1 mi = 1.61 km
1 meter (m)		Standard unit of length	39.37 in or 3.28 ft or 1.09 yd
1 decimeter (dm)	*deci* = 1/10	0.1 m = 10^{-1} m	3.94 in
1 centimeter (cm)	*centi* = 1/100	0.01 m = 10^{-2} m	0.394 in; 1 in = 2.54 cm
1 millimeter (mm)	*milli* = 1/1000	0.001 m = 10^{-3} m	
1 micrometer (mm)	*micro* = 1/1,000,000	0.000001 m = 10^{-6} m	
1 nanometer (nm)	*nano* = 1/1,000,000,000	0.000000001 m = 10^{-9} m	
1 picometer (pm)	*pico* = 1/1,000,000,000,000	0.000000000001 m = 10^{-12} m	



(a) Principal parts and functions

(b) The path of light (bottom to top)

Figure 3.1 The compound light microscope.

Q What is the total magnification of a compound light microscope with objective lens magnification of 40× and ocular lens of 10×?

light source, pass through a **condenser**, which has lenses that direct the light rays through the specimen. From here, light rays pass into the **objective lenses**, the lenses closest to the specimen. The image of the specimen is magnified again by the **ocular lens**, or *eyepiece*.

We can calculate the **total magnification** of a specimen by multiplying the objective lens magnification (power) by the ocular lens magnification (power). Most microscopes used in microbiology have several objective lenses, including 10× (low power), 40× (high power), and 100× (oil immersion). Most ocular lenses magnify specimens by a factor of 10. Multiplying the magnification of a specific objective lens with that of the ocular, we see that the total magnifications would be 100× for low power, 400× for high power, and 1000× for oil immersion.

Resolution (also called *resolving power*) is the ability of the lenses to distinguish fine detail and structure. Specifically, it refers to the ability of the lenses to distinguish two points that are a specified distance apart. For example, if a microscope has

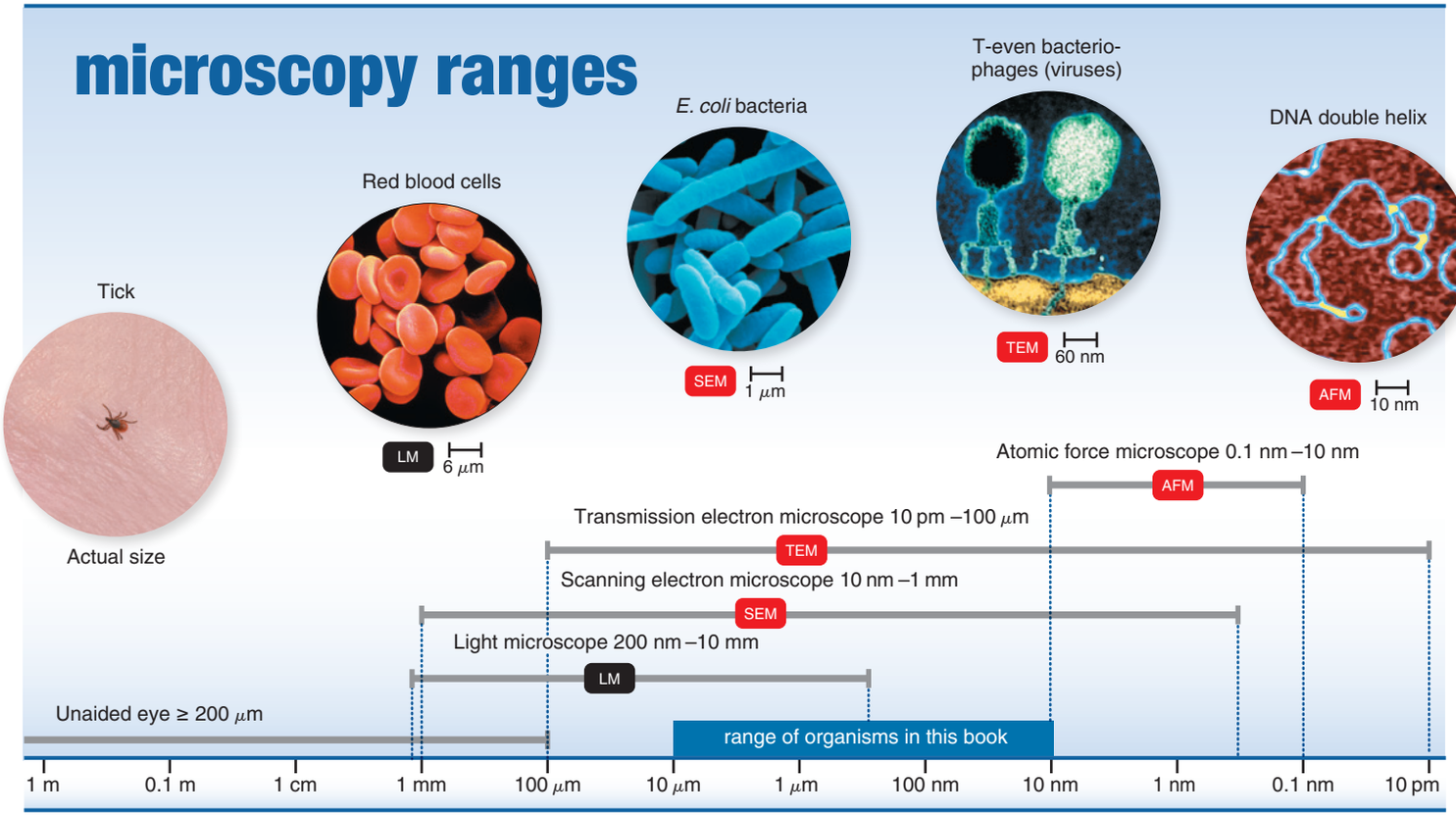
CLINICAL CASE Microscopic Mayhem

Maryanne, a 42-year-old marketing executive and mother of three, has been experiencing recurrent stomach pain, which seems to be getting worse. She jokes that she should buy stock in Pepto-Bismol, because she buys so much of it. At her son's urging, she makes an appointment to see her primary care physician. After hearing that Maryanne feels better immediately after taking Pepto-Bismol, the doctor suspects Maryanne may have a peptic ulcer associated with *Helicobacter pylori*.

What is *H. pylori*? Read on to find out.

FOUNDATION FIGURE 3.2

Microscopes and Magnification



KEY CONCEPTS

- Microscopes are used to magnify small objects.
- Because different microscopes have different resolution ranges, the size of a specimen determines which microscopes can be used to view the specimen effectively.
- Most micrographs shown in this textbook (like the ones above) have size bars and symbols to help you identify the actual size of the specimen and the type of microscope used for that image.
- A red icon indicates that a micrograph has been artificially colorized.
- Resolution increases with decreasing wavelength.

MICRO TIP

If a bacterium is 1 micrometer long and your index finger is 6.5 cm long, how many of the bacteria can you place end-to-end on your finger? Answer: 65,000.

a resolving power of 0.4 nm, it can distinguish two points if they are at least 0.4 nm apart. A general principle of microscopy is that the shorter the wavelength of light used in the instrument, the greater the resolution. The white light used in a compound light microscope has a relatively long wavelength and cannot resolve structures smaller than about 0.2 μm. This and other considerations limit the magnification achieved by the best compound light microscopes to about 1500×. By comparison, van Leeuwenhoek's tiny spherical lenses had a resolution of 1 μm. Figure 3.2 shows various specimens that can be resolved by the human eye and microscopes.

To obtain a clear, finely detailed image under a compound light microscope, specimens must contrast sharply with their *medium* (the substance in which they are suspended). To attain such contrast, we must change the refractive index of specimens from that of their medium. The **refractive index** is a measure of the light-bending ability of a medium. We change the refractive index of specimens by staining them, a procedure we will discuss shortly. Light rays move in a straight line through a single medium. After the specimen is stained, the specimen and its medium have different refractive indexes. When light rays pass through the two materials

(the specimen and its medium), the rays change direction (refract) from a straight path by bending or changing angle at the boundary between the materials. This increases the image's contrast between the specimen and the medium. As the light rays travel away from the specimen, they spread out and enter the objective lens, and the image is thereby magnified.

To achieve high magnification (1000×) with good resolution, the objective lens must be small. Although we want light traveling through the specimen and medium to refract differently, we do not want to lose light rays after they have passed through the stained specimen. To preserve the direction of light rays at the highest magnification, immersion oil is placed between the glass slide and the oil immersion objective lens (Figure 3.3). The immersion oil has the same refractive index as glass, so the oil becomes part of the optics of the glass of the microscope. Unless immersion oil is used, light rays are refracted as they enter the air from the slide, and the objective lens would have to be increased in diameter to capture most of them. The oil has the same effect as increasing the objective lens diameter; therefore, it improves the resolving power of the lenses. If oil is not used with an oil immersion objective lens, the image has poor resolution and becomes fuzzy.

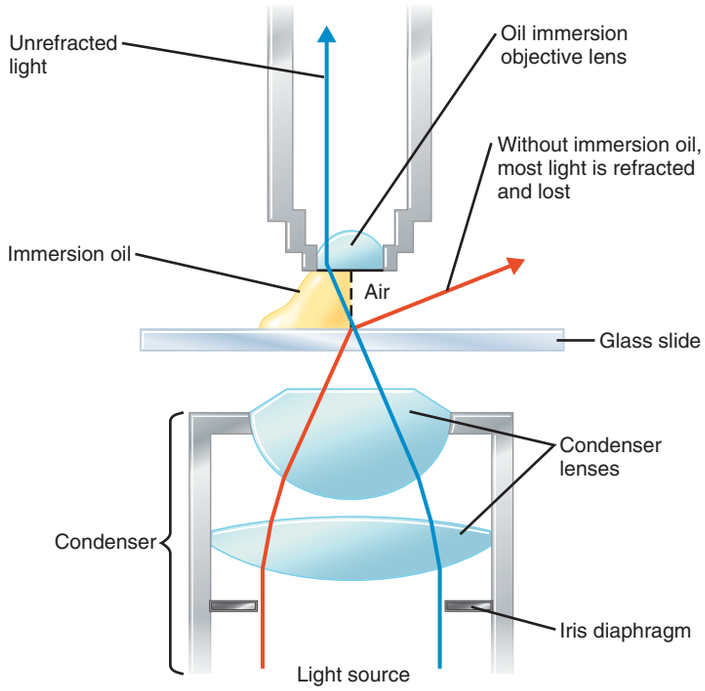


Figure 3.3 Refraction in the compound microscope using an oil immersion objective lens. Because the refractive indexes of the glass microscope slide and immersion oil are the same, the light rays do not refract when passing from one to the other when an oil immersion objective lens is used. Use of immersion oil is necessary at magnifications greater than 900×.

Q Why is immersion oil necessary at 1000× but not with the lower power objectives?

Under usual operating conditions, the field of vision in a compound light microscope is brightly illuminated. By focusing the light, the condenser produces a **brightfield illumination** (Figure 3.4a).

It is not always desirable to stain a specimen, but an unstained cell has little contrast with its surroundings and is therefore difficult to see. Unstained cells are more easily observed with the modified compound microscopes described in the next section.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **3-2** Through what lenses does light pass in a compound microscope?
- **3-3** What does it mean when a microscope has a resolution of 0.2 nm?

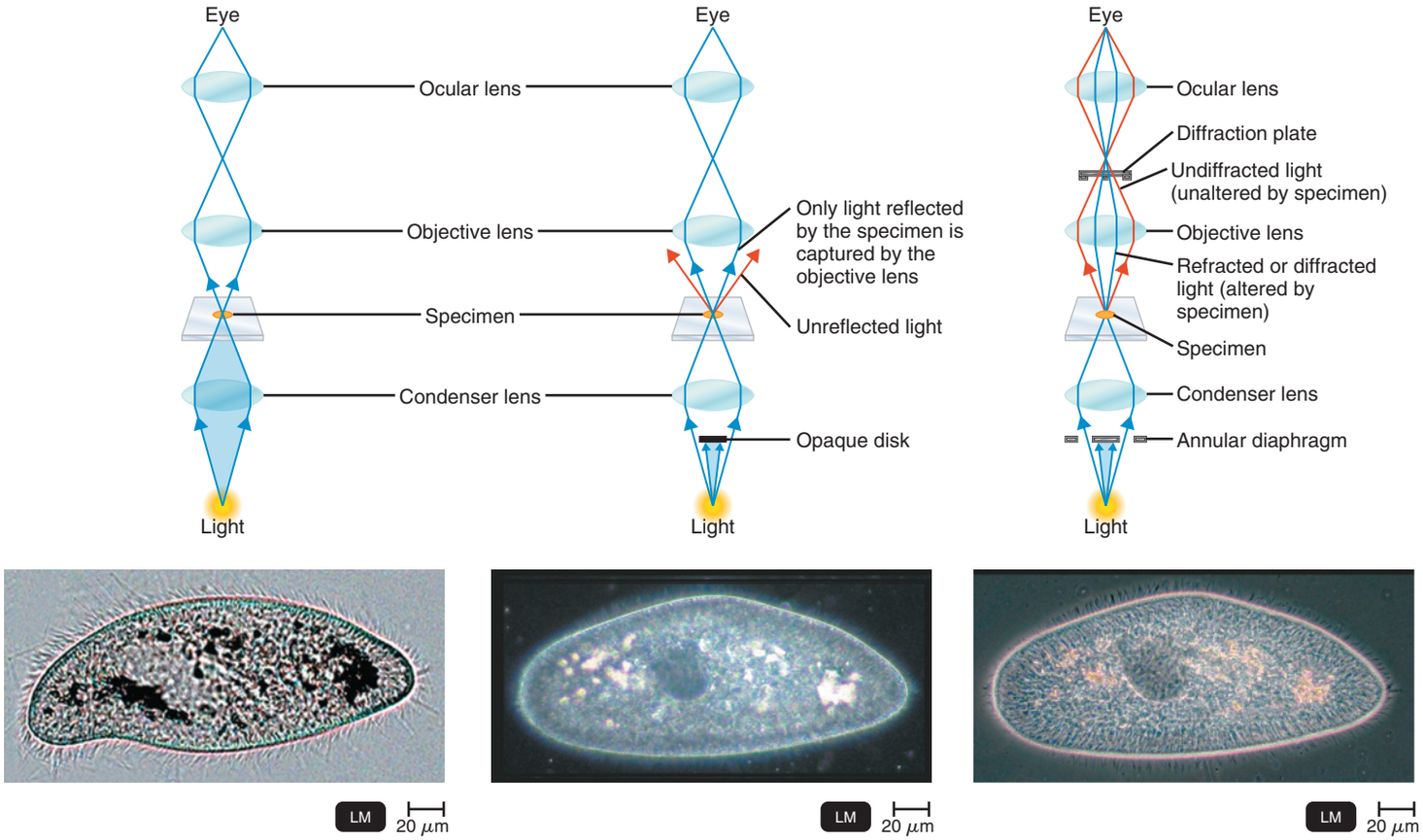
Darkfield Microscopy

A **darkfield microscope** is used to examine live microorganisms that either are invisible in the ordinary light microscope, cannot be stained by standard methods, or are so distorted by staining that their characteristics are obscured. A darkfield microscope uses a darkfield condenser that contains an opaque disk. The disk blocks light that would enter the objective lens directly. Only light that is reflected off (turned away from) the specimen enters the objective lens. Because there is no direct background light, the specimen appears light against a black background—the dark field (Figure 3.4b). This technique is frequently used to examine unstained microorganisms suspended in liquid. One use for darkfield microscopy is the examination of very thin spirochetes, such as *Treponema pallidum* (trep-ō-NĒ-mah PAL-li-dum), the causative agent of syphilis.

Phase-Contrast Microscopy

Another way to observe microorganisms is with a **phase-contrast microscope**. Phase-contrast microscopy is especially useful because the internal structures of a cell become more sharply defined, permitting detailed examination of *living* microorganisms. In addition, it isn't necessary to fix (attach the microbes to the microscope slide) or stain the specimen—procedures that could distort or kill the microorganisms.

In a phase-contrast microscope, one set of light rays comes directly from the light source. The other set comes from light that is reflected, refracted, or diffracted from a particular structure in the specimen. (*Diffraction* is the scattering of light rays as they "touch" a specimen's edge. The diffracted rays are bent away from the parallel light rays that pass farther from the specimen.) When all the light rays—direct, reflected, refracted, and diffracted—are brought together, they form an image of the specimen on the



(a) Brightfield. (Top) The path of light in brightfield microscopy, the type of illumination produced by regular compound light microscopes. (Bottom) Brightfield illumination shows internal structures and the outline of the transparent pellicle (external covering).

(b) Darkfield. (Top) The darkfield microscope uses a special condenser with an opaque disk that eliminates all light in the center of the beam. The only light that reaches the specimen comes in at an angle; thus, only light reflected by the specimen (blue lines) reaches the objective lens. (Bottom) Against the black background seen with darkfield microscopy, edges of the cell are bright, some internal structures seem to sparkle, and the pellicle is almost visible.

(c) Phase-contrast. (Top) In phase-contrast microscopy, the specimen is illuminated by light passing through an annular (ring-shaped) diaphragm. Direct light rays (unaltered by the specimen) travel a different path from light rays that are reflected or diffracted as they pass through the specimen. These two sets of rays are combined at the eye. Reflected or diffracted light rays are indicated in blue; direct rays are red. (Bottom) Phase-contrast microscopy shows greater differentiation of internal structures and clearly shows the pellicle.

Figure 3.4 Brightfield, darkfield, and phase-contrast microscopy. The photographs compare the protozoan *Paramecium* using these three different microscopy techniques.

Q What are the advantages of brightfield, darkfield, and phase-contrast microscopy?

ocular lens, containing areas that are relatively light (in phase), through shades of gray, to black (out of phase; Figure 3.4c).

Differential Interference Contrast (DIC) Microscopy

Differential interference contrast (DIC) microscopy is similar to phase-contrast microscopy in that it uses differences in refractive indexes. However, a DIC microscope uses two beams of light instead of one. In addition, prisms split each light beam, adding contrasting colors to the specimen. Therefore, the resolution of a DIC microscope is higher than that of a standard phase-contrast microscope. Also, the image is brightly colored and appears nearly three-dimensional (Figure 3.5).

Fluorescence Microscopy

Fluorescence microscopy takes advantage of **fluorescence**, the ability of substances to absorb short wavelengths of light (ultraviolet) and give off light at a longer wavelength (visible). Some organisms fluoresce naturally under ultraviolet light; if the specimen to be viewed does not naturally fluoresce, it is stained with one of a group of fluorescent dyes called *fluorochromes*. When microorganisms stained with a fluorochrome are examined under a fluorescence microscope with an ultraviolet or near-ultraviolet light source, they appear as luminescent, bright objects against a dark background.

Figure 3.5 Differential interference contrast (DIC) microscopy. Like phase-contrast, DIC uses differences in refractive indexes to produce an image, in this case a *Paramecium.* The colors in the image are produced by prisms that split the two light beams used in this process.

Q Why is a DIC micrograph brightly colored?

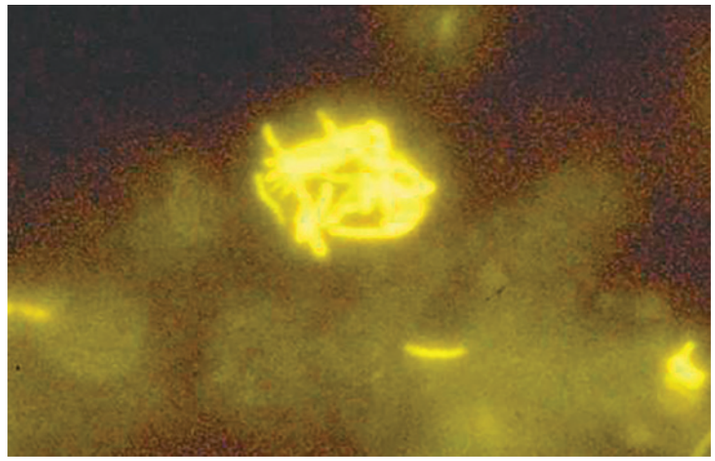


Figure 3.6 Fluorescence microscopy. *M. tuberculosis* bacteria appear as yellow cells in a sputum sample stained with the fluorochrome auramine O.

Q Why are the bacterial cells fluorescing?

Fluorochromes have special attractions for different microorganisms. For example, the fluorochrome auramine O, which glows yellow when exposed to ultraviolet light, is strongly absorbed by *Mycobacterium* (mī′kō-bak-TI-rē-um) *tuberculosis*, the bacterium that causes tuberculosis. When the dye is applied to a sample of material suspected of containing the bacterium, the bacterium can be detected by the appearance of bright yellow organisms against a dark background (Figure 3.6). *Bacillus anthracis*, the causative agent of anthrax, appears apple green when stained with another fluorochrome, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC).

The principal use of fluorescence microscopy is a diagnostic technique called the **fluorescent-antibody (FA) technique**, or **immunofluorescence**. **Antibodies** are natural defense molecules that are produced by humans and many animals in reaction to a foreign substance, or **antigen**. Fluorescent antibodies for a particular antigen are obtained as follows: an animal is injected with a specific antigen, such as a bacterium, and the animal then begins to produce antibodies against that antigen. After a sufficient time, the antibodies are removed from the serum of the animal. Next, as shown in Figure 3.7a,

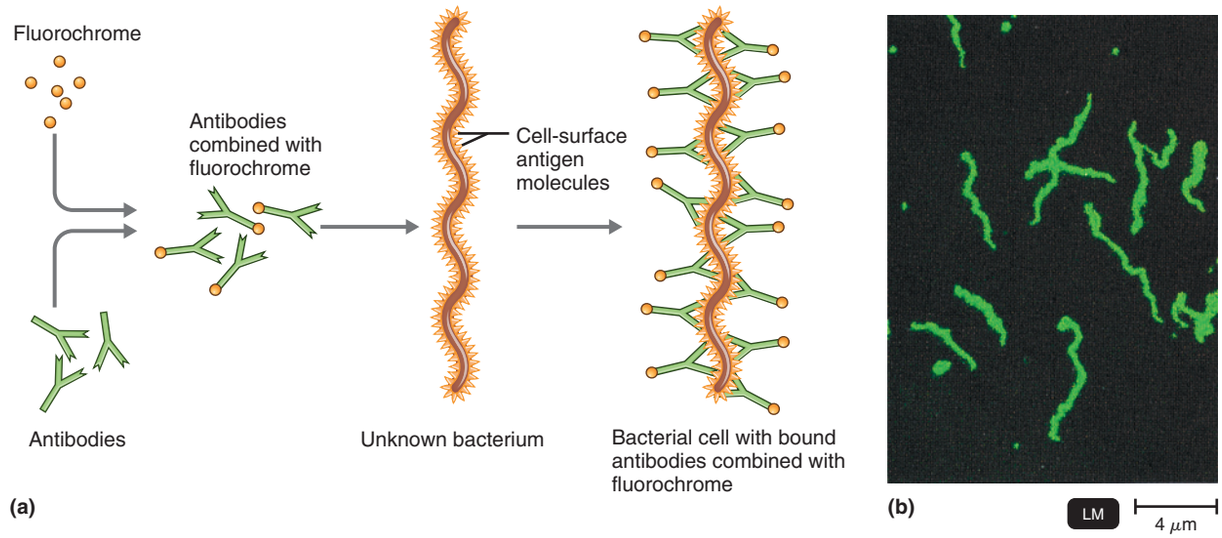


Figure 3.7 The principle of immunofluorescence. (a) A type of fluorochrome is combined with antibodies against a specific type of bacterium. Bacterial cells suspected to be the specific type are placed on a microscope slide, and the fluorescent antibodies are added. If the bacterial cells are the type suspected, the antibodies attach to them, and the cells fluoresce when illuminated with ultraviolet light. **(b)** In the fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption (FTA-ABS) test for syphilis shown here, *T. pallidum* shows up as green cells against a darker background.

Q Why won't other bacteria fluoresce in the FTA-ABS test?

a fluorochrome is chemically combined with the antibodies. These fluorescent antibodies are then added to a microscope slide containing an unknown bacterium. If this unknown bacterium is the same bacterium that was injected into the animal, the fluorescent antibodies will bind to antigens on the surface of the bacterium, causing it to fluoresce.

This technique can detect bacteria or other pathogenic microorganisms, even within cells, tissues, or other clinical specimens (Figure 3.7b). Of paramount importance, it can be used to identify a microbe in minutes. Immunofluorescence is especially useful in diagnosing syphilis and rabies. We will say more about antigen–antibody reactions and immunofluorescence in Chapter 18.

Confocal Microscopy

Confocal microscopy is a technique in light microscopy used to reconstruct three-dimensional images. Like fluorescent microscopy, specimens are stained with fluorochromes so they will emit, or return, light. But instead of illuminating the entire field, one plane of a small region of a specimen is illuminated with a short-wavelength (blue) light, which passes the returned light through an aperture aligned with the illuminated region. Each plane corresponds to an image of a fine slice that has been physically cut from a specimen. Successive planes of about 0.5 μm are illuminated until the entire specimen has been scanned. Because confocal microscopy uses a pinhole aperture, it eliminates blurring that occurs with other microscopes. As a result, exceptionally clear two-dimensional images can be obtained, with improved resolution of up to 40% over that of other microscopes.

Most confocal microscopes are used in conjunction with computers to construct three-dimensional images. The scanned planes of a specimen, which resemble a stack of images, are converted to a digital form that can be used by a computer to construct a three-dimensional representation. The reconstructed images can be rotated and viewed in any orientation. This technique has been used to obtain three-dimensional images of entire cells and cellular components (Figure 3.8). In addition, confocal microscopy can be used to evaluate cellular physiology by monitoring the distributions and concentrations of substances such as ATP and calcium ions.

Two-Photon Microscopy

As in confocal microscopy, specimens are stained with a fluorochrome for **two-photon microscopy (TPM)***. Two-photon microscopy uses long-wavelength (far red) light, and therefore two photons, instead of one, are needed to excite the fluorochrome to emit light. The longer wavelength allows imaging of living cells in tissues up to 1 mm (1000 μm) deep (Figure 3.9). Confocal microscopy can image cells in detail only to a depth of less than 100 μm. Additionally, the longer wavelength is less likely to generate singlet oxygen, which damages cells. Another advantage of TPM is that it can track the activity of cells in real time. For example, cells of the immune system have been observed responding to an antigen.

*A photon is the smallest unit of light.

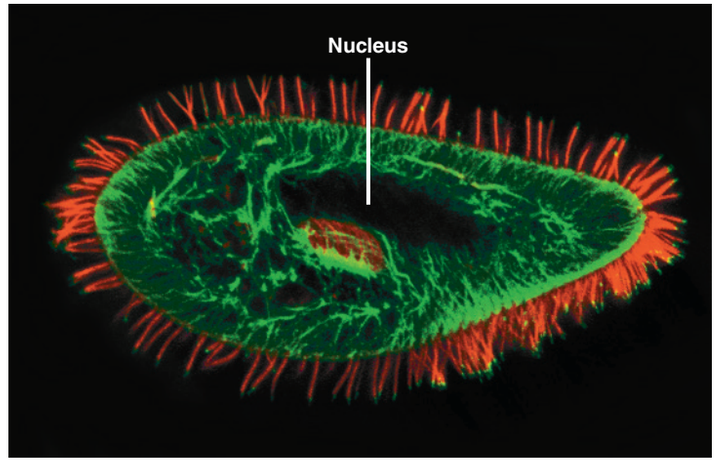


Figure 3.8 Confocal microscopy. Confocal microscopy produces three-dimensional images and can be used to look inside cells. Shown here is the nucleus in *Paramecium*.

Q What are the advantages of confocal microscopy?

Super-Resolution Light Microscopy

Until recently, the maximum resolution for light microscopes was 0.2 μm. However, in 2014, the Nobel Prize in Chemistry

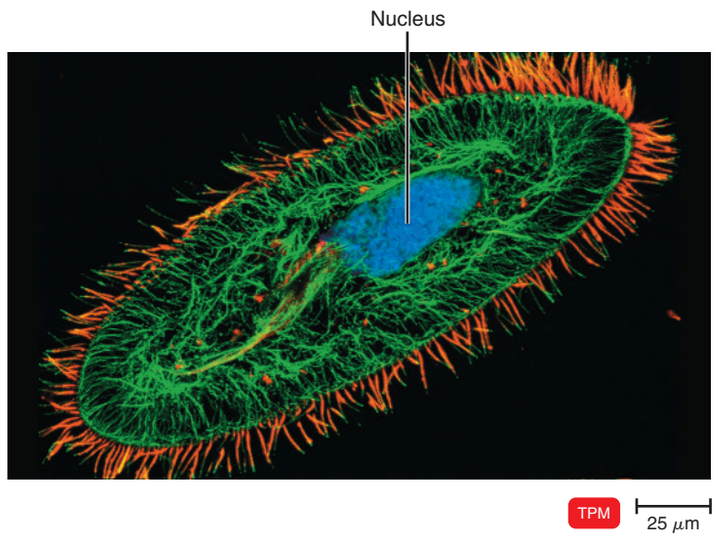


Figure 3.9 Two-photon microscopy (TPM). This procedure makes it possible to view cells up to 1 mm deep in detail. This image shows a *Paramecium*. Immunofluorescence is used to show microtubules (green) and the nucleus (blue).

Q What are the differences between TPM and confocal microscopy?

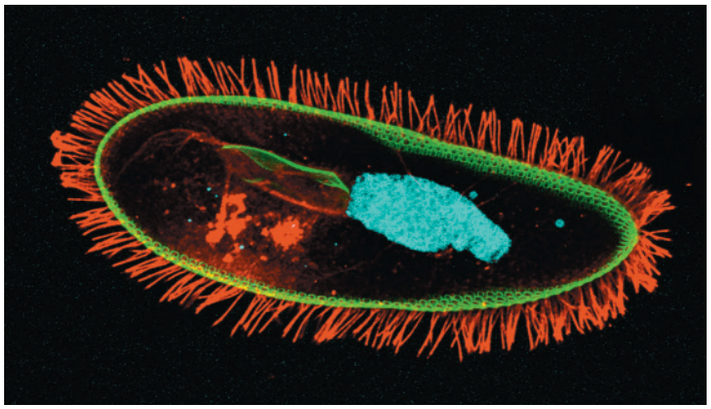


Figure 3.10 Super-resolution light microscopy. Super-resolution light microscopy scans cells one nanometer at a time to provide resolution of less than 0.1 μm.

Q What is the advantage of super-resolution light microscopy?

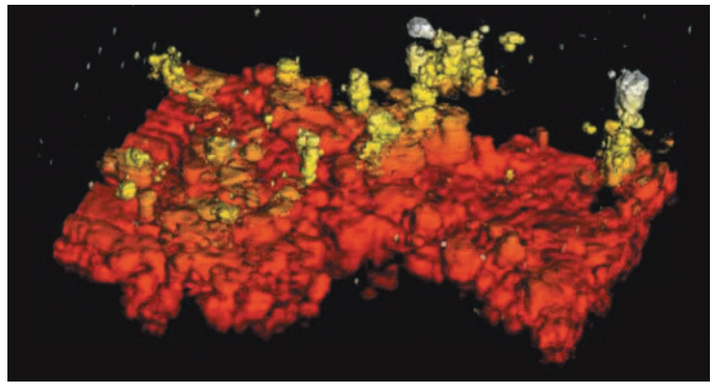


Figure 3.11 Scanning acoustic microscopy (SAM) of a bacterial biofilm on glass. Scanning acoustic microscopy essentially consists of interpreting the action of sound waves through a specimen. © 2006 IEEE.

Q What is the principal use of SAM?

was awarded to Eric Betzig, Stefan Hell, and William Moerner for the development of a microscope that uses two laser beams. In **super-resolution light microscopy**, one wavelength stimulates fluorescent molecules to glow, and another wavelength cancels out all fluorescence except for that in one nanometer. Cells can be stained with fluorescent dyes that are specific for certain molecules such as DNA or protein, allowing even a single molecule to be tracked in a cell. A computer tells the microscope to scan the specimen nanometer by nanometer and then puts the images together (Figure 3.10).

Scanning Acoustic Microscopy

Scanning acoustic microscopy (SAM) basically consists of interpreting the action of a sound wave sent through a specimen. A sound wave of a specific frequency travels through the specimen, and a portion of it is reflected back every time it hits an interface within the material. The resolution is about 1 μm. SAM is used to study living cells attached to another surface, such as cancer cells, arterial plaque, and bacterial biofilms that foul equipment (Figure 3.11).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

3-4 How are brightfield, darkfield, phase-contrast, and fluorescence microscopy similar?

Electron Microscopy

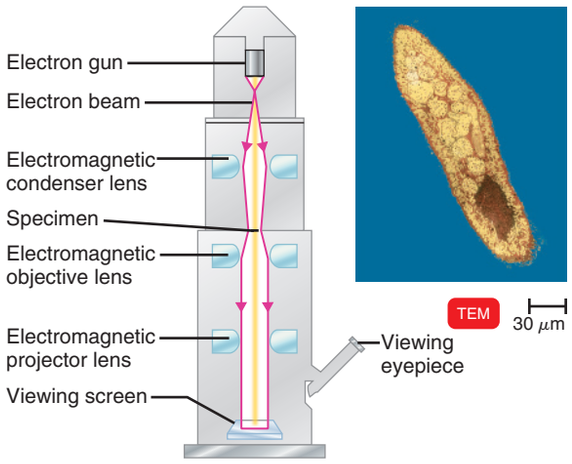
Objects smaller than about 0.2 μm, such as viruses or the internal structures of cells, must be examined with an **electron microscope**. In electron microscopy, a beam of electrons is used instead of light. Like light, free electrons travel in waves. The resolving power of the electron microscope is far greater than that of the other microscopes described here so far. The better resolution of electron microscopes is due to the shorter wavelengths of electrons; the wavelengths of electrons are about 100,000 times smaller than the wavelengths of visible light. Thus, electron microscopes are used to examine structures too small to be resolved with light microscopes. Images produced by electron microscopes are always black and white, but they may be colored artificially to accentuate certain details.

Instead of using glass lenses, an electron microscope uses electromagnetic lenses to focus a beam of electrons onto a specimen. There are two types: the transmission electron microscope and the scanning electron microscope.

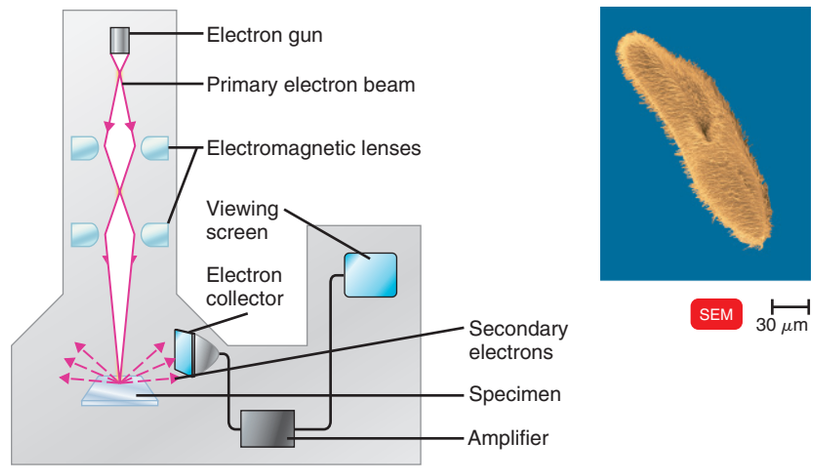
Transmission Electron Microscopy

In the **transmission electron microscope (TEM)**, a finely focused beam of electrons from an electron gun passes through a specially prepared, ultrathin section of the specimen (Figure 3.12a). The beam is focused on a small area of the specimen by an electromagnetic condenser lens that performs roughly the same function as the condenser of a light microscope—directing the beam of electrons in a straight line to illuminate the specimen.

Instead of being placed on a glass slide, as in light microscopes, the specimen is usually placed on a copper mesh grid. The beam of electrons passes through the specimen and then through an electromagnetic objective lens, which magnifies the image. Finally, the electrons are focused by an electromagnetic projector lens (rather than by an ocular lens as in a light microscope) onto a viewing screen and saved as a digital image. The final image, called a *transmission electron micrograph*, appears as many light and dark areas, depending on the number of electrons absorbed by different areas of the specimen.



(a) Transmission. (Left) In a transmission electron microscope, electrons pass through the specimen and are scattered. Magnetic lenses focus the image onto a fluorescent screen. (Right) This colorized transmission electron micrograph (TEM) shows a thin slice of *Paramecium*. In this type of microscopy, the internal structures present in the slice can be seen.



(b) Scanning. (Left) In a scanning electron microscope, primary electrons sweep across the specimen and knock electrons from its surface. These secondary electrons are picked up by a collector, amplified, and transmitted onto a viewing screen. (Right) In this colorized scanning electron micrograph (SEM), the surface structures of *Paramecium* can be seen. Note the three-dimensional appearance of this cell, in contrast to the two-dimensional appearance of the transmission electron micrograph in part (a).

Figure 3.12 Transmission and scanning electron microscopy. The illustrations show a *Paramecium* viewed with both of these types of microscopes. Although electron micrographs are normally black and white, these and other electron micrographs in this book have been artificially colorized for emphasis.

Q How do TEM and SEM images of the same organism differ?

The transmission electron microscope can resolve objects as close together as 0.2 nm, and objects are generally magnified 10,000 to 10,000,000×. Because most microscopic specimens are so thin, the contrast between their ultrastructures and the background is weak. Contrast can be greatly enhanced by using a "dye" that absorbs electrons and produces a darker image in the stained region. Salts of various heavy metals, such as lead, osmium, tungsten, and uranium, are commonly used as stains. These metals can be fixed onto the specimen (*positive staining*) or used to increase the electron opacity of the surrounding field (*negative staining*). Negative staining is useful for the study of the very smallest specimens, such as virus particles, bacterial flagella, and protein molecules.

In addition to positive and negative staining, a microbe can be viewed by a TEM technique called *shadow casting*. In this procedure, a heavy metal such as platinum or gold is sprayed at an angle of about 45° so that it strikes the microbe from only one side. The metal piles up on one side of the specimen, and the uncoated area on the opposite side of the specimen leaves a clear area behind it as a shadow. This provides a general idea of the size and shape of the specimen (see the TEM in Figure 11.9a).

Transmission electron microscopy has high resolution and is extremely valuable for examining different layers of specimens. However, it does have certain disadvantages. Because electrons have limited penetrating power, only a very thin section of a specimen (about 100 nm) can be studied effectively. Thus, the specimen has no three-dimensional aspect. In addition, specimens must be fixed, dehydrated, and viewed under a high vacuum to prevent electron scattering. These treatments not only kill the specimen, but also cause shrinkage and distortion, sometimes to the extent that there may appear

CLINICAL CASE

H. pylori is a spiral-shaped, gram-negative bacterium with multiple flagella. It is the most common cause of peptic ulcers in humans and can also cause stomach cancer. The first electron micrograph of *H. pylori* was viewed in the 1980s, when Australian physician Robin Warren used an electron microscope to see *H. pylori* in stomach tissue.

Why was an electron microscope necessary to see the *H. pylori* bacteria?

to be additional structures in a prepared cell. Structures that appear as a result of the preparation method are called *artifacts*.

Scanning Electron Microscopy

The **scanning electron microscope (SEM)** overcomes the sectioning problems associated with a transmission electron microscope. It provides striking three-dimensional views of specimens (Figure 3.12b). An electron gun produces a finely focused beam of electrons called the primary electron beam. These electrons pass through electromagnetic lenses and are directed over the surface of the specimen. The primary electron beam knocks electrons out of the surface of the specimen, and the secondary electrons thus produced are transmitted to an electron collector, amplified, and used to produce an image on a viewing screen. This is saved as a digital image called a *scanning electron micrograph*. The SEM is especially useful in studying the surface structures of intact cells and viruses. In practice, it can resolve objects as close together as 0.5 nm, and objects are generally magnified 1000 to 500,000×.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

3-5 Why do electron microscopes have greater resolution than light microscopes?

Scanned-Probe Microscopy

Since the early 1980s, several new types of microscopes, called **scanned-probe microscopes**, have been developed. They use various kinds of probes to examine the surface of a specimen using electric current, which does not modify the specimen or expose it to damaging, high-energy radiation. Such microscopes can be used to map atomic and molecular shapes, to characterize magnetic and chemical properties, and to determine temperature variations inside cells. Among the new scanned-probe microscopes are the scanning tunneling microscope and the atomic force microscope, discussed next.

Scanning Tunneling Microscopy

Scanning tunneling microscopy (STM) uses a thin tungsten probe that scans a specimen and produces an image that reveals the bumps and depressions of the atoms on the surface of the specimen (Figure 3.13a). The resolving power of an STM is much greater than that of an electron microscope; it can resolve features as small as an atom. Moreover, special preparation of the specimen for observation is not needed. STMs are used to provide incredibly detailed views of molecules such as DNA.

Atomic Force Microscopy

In **atomic force microscopy (AFM)**, a metal-and-diamond probe is gently forced down onto a specimen. As the probe moves along the surface of the specimen, its movements are recorded, and a three-dimensional image is produced (Figure 3.13b).

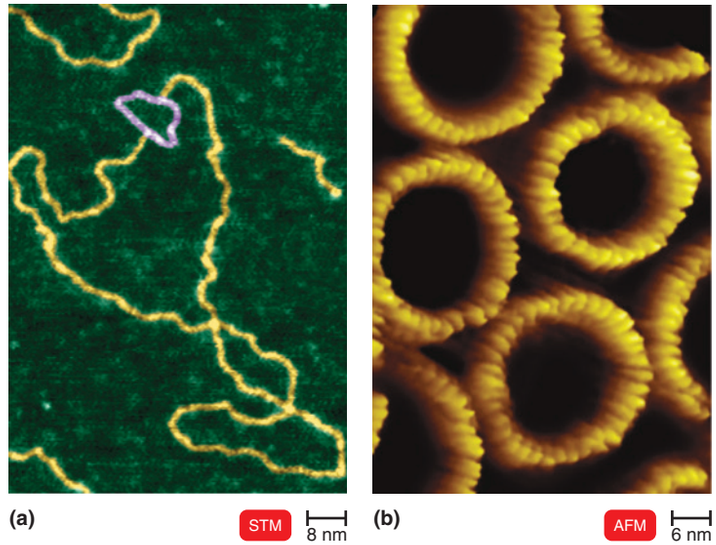


Figure 3.13 Scanned-probe microscopy. **(a)** Scanning tunneling microscopy (STM) image of a double-stranded DNA molecule. **(b)** Atomic force microscopy (AFM) image of perfringolysin O toxin from *Clostridium perfringens*. This protein makes holes in human plasma membranes.

Q What is the principle employed in scanned-probe microscopy?

As with STM, AFM does not require special specimen preparation. AFM is used to image biological substances in nearly atomic detail and molecular processes such as the assembly of fibrin, a component of a blood clot.

The various types of microscopy just described are summarized in Table 3.2.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

3-6 For what is TEM used? SEM? Scanned-probe microscopy?

Preparation of Specimens for Light Microscopy

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **3-7** Differentiate an acidic dye from a basic dye.
- **3-8** Explain the purpose of simple staining.
- **3-9** List Gram stain steps, and describe the appearance of gram-positive and gram-negative cells after each step.
- **3-10** Compare and contrast the Gram stain and the acid-fast stain.
- **3-11** Explain why each of the following is used: capsule stain, endospore stain, flagella stain.

Most microorganisms appear almost colorless when viewed through brightfield microscopy, so we must prepare them for observation. One way is to stain (color) the specimen. Next, we discuss several different staining procedures.

TABLE 3.2 A Summary of Various Types of Microscopes

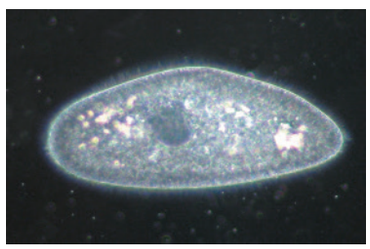
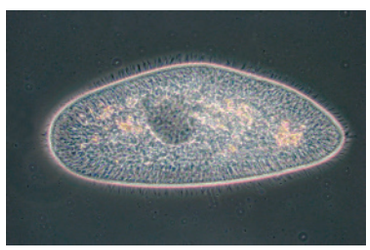
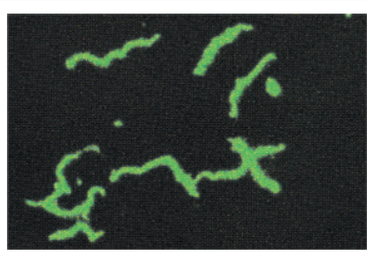
Microscope Type	Distinguishing Features	Typical Image	Principal Uses
Light			
Brightfield	Uses visible light as a source of illumination; cannot resolve structures smaller than about 0.2 μm; specimen appears against a bright background. Inexpensive and easy to use.	*Paramecium* LM 25 μm	To observe various stained specimens and to count microbes; does not resolve very small specimens, such as viruses.
Darkfield	Uses a special condenser with an opaque disk that blocks light from entering the objective lens directly; light reflected by the specimen enters the objective lens, and the specimen appears light against a black background. No staining required.	 *Paramecium* LM 25 μm	To examine living microorganisms that are invisible in brightfield microscopy, do not stain easily, or are distorted by staining; frequently used to detect *T. pallidum* in the diagnosis of syphilis.
Phase-contrast	Uses a special condenser containing an annular (ring-shaped) diaphragm. The diaphragm allows direct light to pass through the condenser, focusing light on the specimen and a diffraction plate in the objective lens. All light rays that pass through the specimen are brought together to produce the image. No staining required.	 *Paramecium* LM 25 μm	To facilitate detailed examination of the internal structures of living specimens.
Differential interference contrast (DIC)	Like phase-contrast, uses differences in refractive indexes to produce images. Uses two beams of light separated by prisms; the specimen appears colored as a result of the prism effect. No staining required.	*Paramecium* LM 23 μm	To provide three-dimensional images.
Fluorescence	Uses an ultraviolet or near-ultraviolet source of illumination that causes fluorescent compounds in a specimen to emit light.	 *T. pallidum* LM 2 μm	For fluorescent-antibody techniques (immunofluorescence) to rapidly detect and identify microbes in tissues or clinical specimens.

TABLE 3.2 (*continued*)

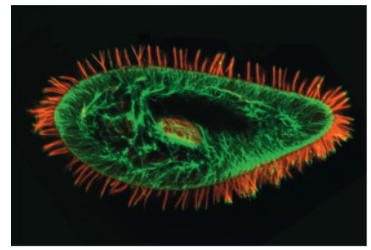
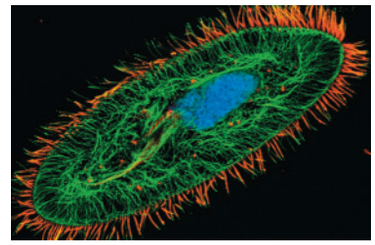
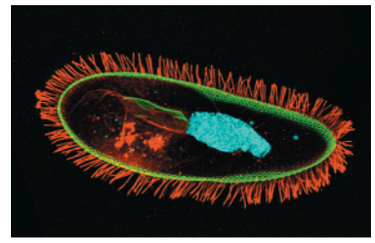
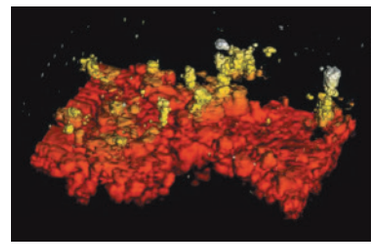
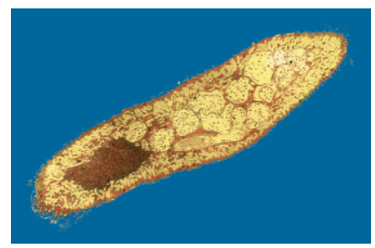
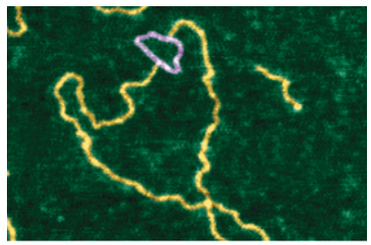
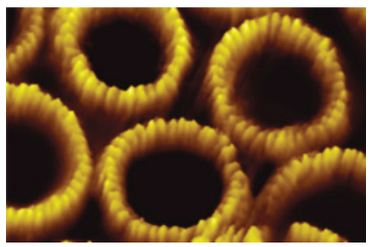
Microscope Type	Distinguishing Features	Typical Image	Principal Uses
Confocal	Uses a single photon of ultraviolet light to illuminate one 0.5-μm plane of a specimen at a time.	 *Paramecium* CF 25 μm	To obtain two- and three-dimensional images of cells for biomedical applications.
Two-Photon	Uses two photons of far red light to illuminate a specimen.	 *Paramecium* TPM 22 μm	To image living cells, up to depth of 1000 μm, reduce phototoxicity, and observe cell activity in real time.
Super-Resolution Light Microscopy	Uses two laser lights to illuminate one nanometer at a time.	 *Paramecium* SRM 25 μm	To observe the locations of molecules in cells.
Scanning Acoustic	Uses a sound wave of specific frequency that travels through the specimen with a portion being reflected when it hits an interface within the material.	 Biofilm SAM 180 μm	To examine living cells attached to another surface, such as cancer cells, arterial plaque, and biofilms.
Electron			
Transmission	Uses a beam of electrons instead of light; electrons pass through the specimen; because of the shorter wavelength of electrons, structures as small as 0.2 nm can be resolved. The image produced is two-dimensional.	 *Paramecium* TEM 25 μm	To examine viruses or the internal ultrastructure in thin sections of cells (usually magnified 10,000–10,000,000×).

TABLE 3.2 (*continued*)

Microscope Type	Distinguishing Features	Typical Image	Principal Uses
Scanning	Uses a beam of electrons instead of light; electrons are reflected from the specimen; because of the shorter wavelength of electrons, structures as small as 0.5 nm can be resolved. The image produced appears three-dimensional.	*Paramecium* SEM 25 μm	To study the surface features of cells and viruses (usually magnified 1000–500,000×).
Scanned-Probe			
Scanning tunneling	Uses a thin metal probe that scans a specimen and produces an image that reveals the bumps and depressions of the atoms on the surface of the specimen (to 0.1 nm). Resolving power is much greater than that of an electron microscope. No special preparation required.	 DNA STM 10 nm	Provides very detailed views of molecules inside cells.
Atomic force	Uses a metal-and-diamond probe that is gently forced down along the surface of the specimen. Produces a three-dimensional image. No special preparation required.	 Perfringolysin O toxin from *C. perfringens* AFM 9 nm	Provides three-dimensional images of biological specimens at high resolution in nearly atomic detail and can measure physical properties of biological specimens and molecular processes.

Preparing Smears for Staining

Most initial observations of microorganisms are made with stained preparations. **Staining** simply means coloring the microorganisms with a dye that emphasizes certain structures. Before the microorganisms can be stained, however, they must be **fixed** (attached) to the microscope slide. Fixing simultaneously kills the microorganisms and fixes them to the slide. It also preserves various parts of microbes in their natural state with only minimal distortion.

When a specimen is to be fixed, a thin film of material containing the microorganisms is spread over the surface of the slide. This film, called a **smear**, is allowed to air dry. In most staining procedures the slide is then fixed by passing it through the flame of a Bunsen burner several times, smear side up, or by covering the slide with methanol for 1 minute. Stain is applied and then washed off with water; then the slide is blotted with absorbent paper. Without fixing, the stain might wash the microbes off the slide. The stained microorganisms are now ready for microscopic examination.

Stains are salts composed of a positive and a negative ion, one of which is colored and is known as the *chromophore*. The color of so-called **basic dyes** is in the cation; in **acidic dyes**, it is in the anion. Bacteria are slightly negatively charged. Thus, the colored cation in a basic dye is attracted to the negatively charged bacterial cell. Basic dyes, which include crystal violet, methylene blue, malachite green, and safranin, are more commonly used than acidic dyes. Acidic dyes are not attracted to most types of bacteria because the dye's negative ions are repelled by the negatively charged bacterial surface, so the stain colors the background instead. Preparing colorless bacteria against a colored background is called **negative staining**. It is valuable for observing overall cell shapes, sizes, and capsules because the cells are made highly visible against a contrasting dark background (see Figure 3.16a). Distortions of cell size and shape are minimized because fixing

isn't necessary and the cells don't pick up the stain. Examples of acidic dyes are eosin, acid fuchsin, and nigrosin.

To apply acidic or basic dyes, microbiologists use three kinds of staining techniques: simple, differential, and special.

Simple Stains

A **simple stain** is an aqueous or alcohol solution of a single basic dye. Although different dyes bind specifically to different parts of cells, the primary purpose of a simple stain is to highlight the entire microorganism so that cellular shapes and basic structures are visible. The stain is applied to the fixed smear for a certain length of time and then washed off. The slide is dried and examined. Occasionally, a chemical is added to the solution to intensify the stain; such an additive is called a **mordant**. One function of a mordant is to increase the affinity of a stain for a biological specimen; another is to coat a structure (such as a flagellum) to make it thicker and easier to see after it is stained with a dye. Some of the simple stains commonly used in the laboratory are methylene blue, carbolfuchsin, crystal violet, and safranin.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **3-7** Why doesn't a negative stain color a cell?
- **3-8** Why is fixing necessary for most staining procedures?

Differential Stains

Unlike simple stains, **differential stains** react differently with different kinds of bacteria and thus can be used to distinguish them. The differential stains most frequently used for bacteria are the Gram stain and the acid-fast stain.

Gram Stain

The **Gram stain** was developed in 1884 by the Danish bacteriologist Hans Christian Gram. It is one of the most useful staining procedures because it classifies bacteria into two large groups: gram-positive and gram-negative.

In this procedure (Figure 3.14a):

1. A heat-fixed smear is covered with a basic purple dye, usually crystal violet. Because the purple stain imparts its color to all cells, it is referred to as a **primary stain**.
2. After a short time, the purple dye is washed off, and the smear is covered with iodine, a mordant. When the iodine is washed off, both gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria appear dark violet or purple.
3. Next, the slide is washed with alcohol or an alcohol-acetone solution. This solution is a **decolorizing agent**, which removes the purple from the cells of some species but not from others.
4. The alcohol is rinsed off, and the slide is then stained with safranin, a basic red dye, which functions as a counterstain. The smear is washed again, blotted dry, and examined microscopically.

The purple dye and the iodine combine in the cell wall of each bacterium and color it dark violet or purple. Bacteria that retain this color after the alcohol has attempted to decolorize them are classified as **gram-positive bacteria**; bacteria that lose

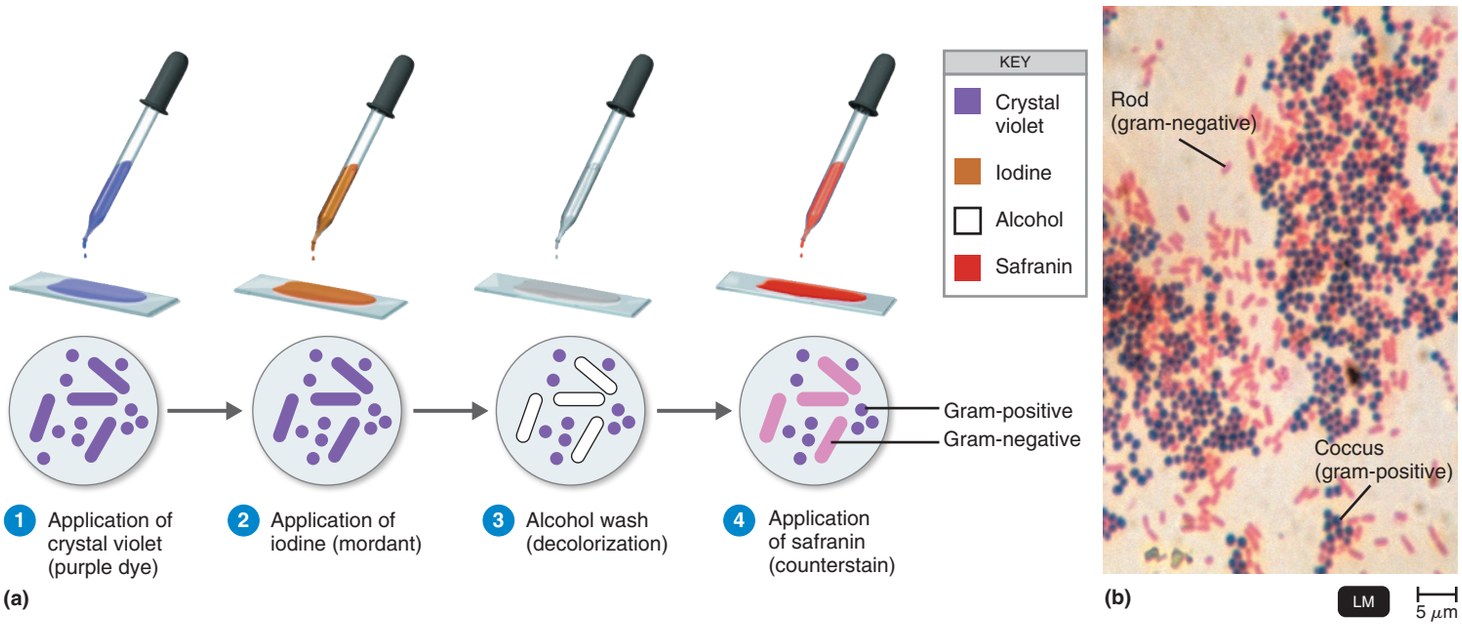


Figure 3.14 Gram staining. (a) Procedure. **(b)** Micrograph of Gram-stained bacteria. The cocci (purple) are gram-positive, and the rods (pink) are gram-negative.

Q How can the Gram reaction be useful in prescribing antibiotic treatment?

the dark violet or purple color after decolorization are classified as **gram-negative bacteria** (Figure 3.14b). Because gram-negative bacteria are colorless after the alcohol wash, they are no longer visible. This is why the basic dye safranin is applied; it turns the gram-negative bacteria pink. Stains such as safranin that have a contrasting color to the primary stain are called **counterstains**. Because gram-positive bacteria retain the original purple stain, they are not affected by the safranin counterstain.

As you will see in Chapter 4, different kinds of bacteria react differently to the Gram stain because structural differences in their cell walls affect the retention or escape of a combination of crystal violet and iodine, called the crystal violet–iodine (CV–I) complex. Among other differences, gram-positive bacteria have a thicker peptidoglycan cell wall (disaccharides and amino acids) than gram-negative bacteria. In addition, gram-negative bacteria contain a layer of lipopolysaccharide (lipids and polysaccharides) as part of their cell wall (see Figure 4.13). When applied to both gram-positive and gram-negative cells, crystal violet and then iodine readily enter the cell walls. Inside the cell walls, the crystal violet and iodine combine to form CV–I. Crystal violet or iodine alone is water soluble and will drain out of the cell. However, CV–I is insoluble in water, so it doesn't easily leave the cell wall. Consequently, gram-positive cells retain the color of the crystal violet dye. In gram-negative cells, however, the alcohol wash disrupts the outer lipopolysaccharide layer, and the CV–I complex is washed out of the thin layer of peptidoglycan. As a result, gram-negative cells are colorless until counterstained with safranin, after which they are pink.

The Gram method is one of the most important staining techniques in medical microbiology. But Gram staining results are not universally applicable, because some bacterial cells stain poorly or not at all. The Gram reaction is most consistent when it is used on young, growing bacteria. Because of these limitations, Gram staining may overestimate the number of gram-negative bacteria in the human intestine (see **Exploring the Microbiome**).

The Gram reaction of a bacterium can provide valuable information for the treatment of disease. Gram-positive bacteria tend to be killed easily by penicillins and cephalosporins. Gram-negative bacteria are generally more resistant because the antibiotics cannot penetrate the lipopolysaccharide layer. Some resistance to these antibiotics among both gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria is due to bacterial inactivation of the antibiotics.

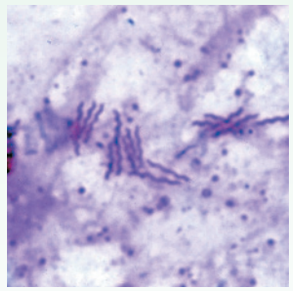
Acid-Fast Stain

Another important differential stain (one that differentiates bacteria into distinctive groups) is the **acid-fast stain**, which binds strongly only to bacteria that have a waxy material in their cell walls. Microbiologists use this stain to identify all bacteria in the genus *Mycobacterium*, including the two important pathogens: *M. tuberculosis,* the causative agent of tuberculosis, and *Mycobacterium leprae* (LEP-rī), the causative agent of leprosy. This stain is also used to identify the pathogenic strains of the genus *Nocardia* (nō-KAR-dē-ah). Bacteria in the genera *Mycobacterium* and *Nocardia* are acid-fast.

In the acid-fast staining procedure, the red dye carbolfuchsin is applied to a fixed smear, and the slide is gently heated for several minutes. (Heating enhances penetration and retention of the dye.) Then the slide is cooled and washed with water. The smear is next treated with acid-alcohol, a decolorizer, which removes the red stain from bacteria that are not acid-fast. The acid-fast microorganisms retain the pink or red color because the carbolfuchsin is more soluble in the cell wall lipids than in the acid-alcohol (**Figure 3.15**). In non–acid-fast bacteria, whose cell walls lack the lipid components, the carbolfuchsin is rapidly removed during decolorization, leaving the cells colorless. The smear is then stained with a methylene blue counterstain. Non–acid-fast cells appear blue after the counterstain is applied.

CLINICAL CASE

The resolving power of the electron microscope is much greater than that of a light microscope. The higher resolution provided unequivocal proof of the presence of spiral bacteria.



Although bismuth (the key ingredient in Pepto-Bismol) kills *H. pylori*, it is not a cure. Maryanne's physician prescribes the antibiotic clarithromycin. However, 1 week after finishing treatment, Maryanne's symptoms continue. To determine the extent of tissue damage, her physician orders a stomach biopsy to obtain a sample of the mucous lining of Maryanne's stomach. The lab uses light microscopy and a hematoxylin and eosin tissue stain to view the sample.

What does the stain in the photo show?

Part 1 Part 2 **Part 3** Part 4

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **3-9** Why is the Gram stain so useful?
- **3-10** Which stain would be used to identify microbes in the genera *Mycobacterium* and *Nocardia*?

Special Stains

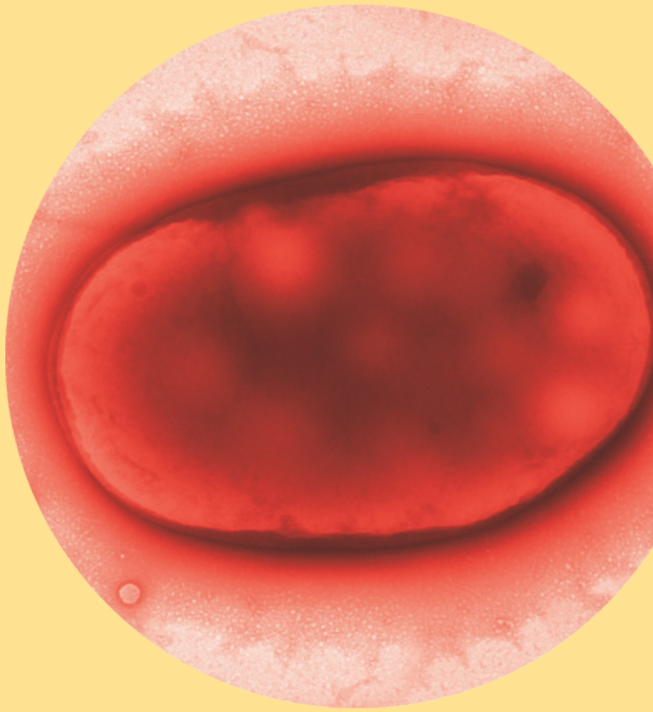
Special stains are used to color parts of microorganisms, such as endospores, flagella, or capsules.

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME Obtaining a More Accurate Picture of Our Microbiota

Studying the relationship between intestinal microbiota, human health, and disease is a challenge. First, it's difficult to come up with growth media outside the body that can support the array of species found in the body. Additionally, many species residing in the human gut are obligate anaerobes, meaning that exposure to the oxygen in air kills them. So even though many bacteria pass out of the body routinely in feces, one cannot simply inoculate nutrient agar with a fecal sample and expect cells to begin growing in the lab. Culture techniques for anaerobic samples do exist, but they are difficult and expensive. So, some researchers have tried tackling this problem by using microscopy in new ways.

In one study, fecal samples were diluted, spread on a slide, heat fixed, Gram stained, and examined with oil immersion light microscopy. Samples were also examined via transmission electron microscopy (TEM). Scientists then categorized the microbes they viewed.

Each microscopy technique revealed a variety of organisms in the samples. Light microscopy revealed many gram-negative prokaryotes, which comprised 58 to 68% of the organisms categorized. However, under TEM, gram-positive bacteria predominated, making up 51 to 52% of the organisms seen. The scientists concluded that Gram staining overestimated the gram-negative bacteria because some gram-positive cells, called gram-variable, are easily decolorized.



***Microvirga* was discovered in human intestines in 2016. It is nearly twice as long as other bacteria.**

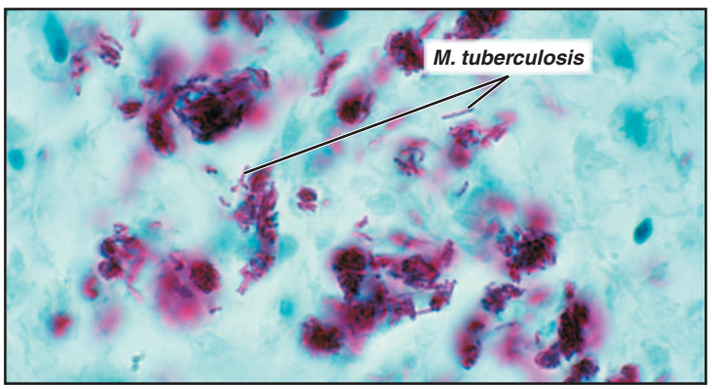


Figure 3.15 Acid-fast bacteria. The *M. tuberculosis* bacteria in a lung have been stained pink or red with an acid-fast stain.

Q Why is *M. tuberculosis* easily identified by the acid-fast stain?

Negative Staining for Capsules

Many microorganisms contain a gelatinous covering called a **capsule**. (We will discuss capsules in our examination of the prokaryotic cell in Chapter 4.) In medical microbiology, demonstrating the presence of a capsule is a means of determining the organism's **virulence**, the degree to which a pathogen can cause disease.

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

The tissue sample shows the *H. pylori* is still present in Maryanne's stomach lining. Suspecting the bacteria are resistant to clarithromycin, Maryanne's physician now prescribes tetracycline and metronidazole. This time, Maryanne's symptoms do not return. Soon, she feels like her old self again and is back in the office full-time.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 **Part 4**

Capsule staining is more difficult than other types of staining procedures because capsular materials are water soluble and may be dislodged or removed during rigorous washing. To demonstrate the presence of capsules, a microbiologist can mix the bacteria in a solution containing a fine colloidal suspension* of colored particles (usually india ink or nigrosin) to provide a contrasting background and then stain the cells with a simple stain, such as safranin (Figure 3.16a). Because of their chemical composition, capsules do not accept most biological dyes, such as safranin, and thus appear as halos surrounding each stained bacterial cell.

*A colloidal suspension consists of finely divided solid material dispersed in a liquid.

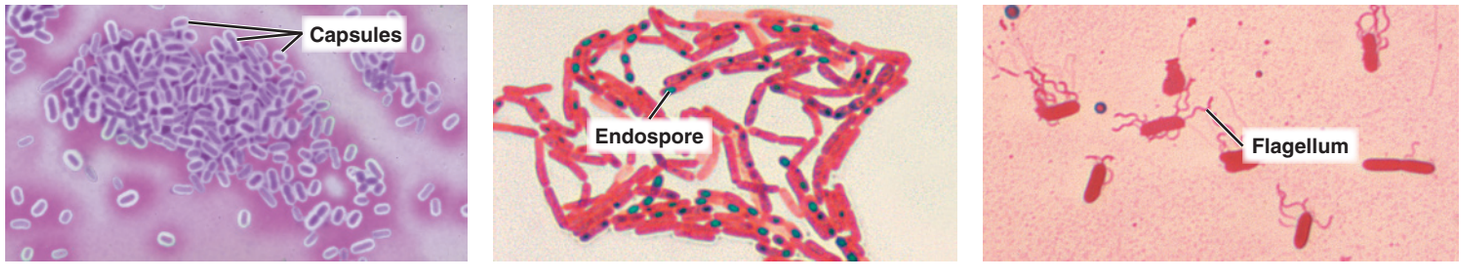


Figure 3.16 Special staining. **(a)** Capsule staining provides a contrasting background, so the capsules of these bacteria, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, show up as light areas surrounding the stained cells. **(b)** Endospores are seen as green ovals in these rod-shaped cells of the bacterium *Bacillus anthracis*, using the Schaeffer-Fulton endospore stain. **(c)** Flagella appear as wavy extensions from the ends of these cells of *B. pumilus* bacteria. In relation to the body of the cell, the flagella are much thicker than normal because layers of the stain have accumulated from treatment of the specimen with a mordant.

Q **Of what value are capsules, endospores, and flagella to bacteria?**

Endospore (Spore) Staining

An **endospore** is a special resistant, dormant structure formed within a cell that protects a bacterium from adverse environmental conditions. Although endospores are relatively uncommon in bacterial cells, they can be formed by a few genera of bacteria, including *Clostridium*. *Clostridium* includes the causative agents of botulism and tetanus. Endospores cannot be stained by ordinary methods, such as simple staining and Gram staining, because the dyes don't penetrate the endospore's wall.

The most commonly used endospore stain is the *Schaeffer-Fulton endospore stain* (Figure 3.16b). Malachite green, the primary stain, is applied to a heat-fixed smear and heated to steaming for about 5 minutes. The heat helps the stain penetrate the endospore wall. Then the preparation is washed for about 30 seconds with water to remove the malachite green from all of the cells' parts except the endospores. Next, safranin, a counterstain, is applied to the smear to stain portions of the cell other than endospores. In a properly prepared smear,

TABLE 3.3 A Summary of Various Stains and Their Uses

Stain	Principal Uses
Simple (methylene blue, carbolfuchsin, crystal violet, safranin)	Used to highlight microorganisms to determine cellular shapes and arrangements. Aqueous or alcohol solution of a single basic dye stains cells. (Sometimes a mordant is added to intensify the stain.)
Differential	Used to distinguish different kinds of bacteria.
Gram	Classifies bacteria into two large groups: gram-positive and gram-negative. Gram-positive bacteria retain the crystal violet stain and appear purple. Gram-negative bacteria do not retain the crystal violet stain; they remain colorless until counterstained with safranin and then appear pink.
Acid-fast	Used to identify *Mycobacterium* species and some species of *Nocardia*. Acid-fast bacteria, once stained with carbolfuchsin and treated with acid-alcohol, remain pink or red because they retain the carbolfuchsin stain. Non–acid-fast bacteria, when stained and treated the same way and then stained with methylene blue, appear blue because they lose the carbolfuchsin stain and are then able to accept the methylene blue stain.
Special	Used to color and isolate various structures, such as capsules, endospores, and flagella; sometimes used as a diagnostic aid.
Negative	Used to demonstrate the presence of capsules. Because capsules do not accept most stains, they appear as unstained halos around bacterial cells and stand out against a contrasting background.
Endospore	Used to detect the presence of endospores in bacteria. When malachite green is applied to a heat-fixed smear of bacterial cells, the stain penetrates the endospores and stains them green. When safranin (red) is then applied, it stains the remainder of the cells red or pink.
Flagella	Used to demonstrate the presence of flagella. A mordant is used to build up the diameters of flagella until they become visible microscopically when stained with carbolfuchsin.

the endospores appear green within red or pink cells. Because endospores are highly refractive, they can be detected under the light microscope when unstained, but without a special stain, they cannot be differentiated from areas of stored material (inclusions) in cells.

Flagella Staining

Bacterial **flagella** (singular: **flagellum**) are structures of locomotion too small to be seen with a light microscope without staining. A tedious and delicate staining procedure uses a mordant and the stain carbolfuchsin to build up the diameters of the flagella until they become visible under the light microscope (Figure 3.16c). Microbiologists use the number and arrangement of flagella as diagnostic aids.

You have probably noticed that the classification of stains just presented has some degree of overlap. For example, whereas negative staining is clearly a special stain used to demonstrate the presence of a capsule, it is also a differential stain that distinguishes microbes with a capsule from those without a capsule.

A summary of stains is presented in Table 3.3. In the next chapters we will take a closer look at the structure of microbes and how they protect, nourish, and reproduce themselves.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

3-11 How do unstained endospores appear? Stained endospores?

Study Outline

Units of Measurement (p. 52)

1. Microorganisms are measured in micrometers, μm (10^{-6} m), and in nanometers, nm (10^{-9} m).

Microscopy: The Instruments (pp. 52–64)

1. A simple microscope consists of one lens; a compound microscope has multiple lenses.

Light Microscopy (pp. 52–58)

2. The most common microscope used in microbiology is the compound light microscope (LM).
3. The total magnification of a specimen is calculated by multiplying the magnification of the objective lens by the magnification of the ocular lens.
4. The compound light microscope uses visible light.
5. The maximum resolution, or resolving power (the ability to distinguish two points) of a compound light microscope is 0.2 μm; maximum magnification is 1500×.
6. Specimens are stained to increase the difference between the refractive indexes of the specimen and the medium.
7. Immersion oil is used with the oil immersion lens to reduce light loss between the slide and the lens.
8. Brightfield illumination is used for stained smears.
9. Unstained cells are more productively observed using darkfield, phase-contrast, or DIC microscopy.
10. The darkfield microscope shows a light silhouette of an organism against a dark background. It is most useful for detecting the presence of extremely small organisms.
11. A phase-contrast microscope brings light rays that pass through the specimen together (in phase) to form an image of the specimen on the ocular lens. It allows the detailed observation of living organisms.
12. The DIC microscope provides a colored, three-dimensional image of living cells.
13. In fluorescence microscopy, specimens are first stained with fluorochromes and then viewed through a compound microscope by using an ultraviolet light source. The microorganisms appear as bright objects against a dark background.
14. Fluorescence microscopy is used primarily in a diagnostic procedure called fluorescent-antibody (FA) technique, or immunofluorescence.
15. In confocal microscopy, a specimen is stained with a fluorescent dye and illuminated with short-wavelength (ultraviolet) light.

Two-Photon Microscopy (p. 58)

16. In TPM, a live specimen is stained with a fluorescent dye and illuminated with long-wavelength (far red) light.

Super-Resolution Light Microscopy (pp. 58–59)

17. Super-resolution light microscopy uses two lasers to excite fluorescent molecules.
18. When a computer is used to process the images, two-dimensional and three-dimensional images of cells can be produced.

Scanning Acoustic Microscopy (p. 59)

19. Scanning acoustic microscopy (SAM) is based on the interpretation of sound waves through a specimen.
20. It is used to study living cells attached to surfaces such as biofilms.

Electron Microscopy (pp. 59–61)

21. Instead of light, a beam of electrons is used with an electron microscope.
22. Instead of glass lenses, electromagnets control focus, illumination, and magnification.
23. Thin sections of organisms can be seen in an electron micrograph produced using a transmission electron microscope (TEM). Magnification: 10,000–10,000,000×. Resolving power: 10 pm.
24. Three-dimensional views of the surfaces of whole microorganisms can be obtained with a scanning electron microscope (SEM). Magnification: 1000–500,000×. Resolution: 10 nm.

Scanned-Probe Microscopy (p. 61–64)

25. Scanning tunneling microscopy (STM) and atomic force microscopy (AFM) produce three-dimensional images of the surface of a molecule.

Preparation of Specimens for Light Microscopy

(pp. 61–69)

Preparing Smears for Staining (pp. 64–65)

1. Staining means coloring a microorganism with a dye to make some structures more visible.
2. Fixing uses heat or methanol to kill and attach microorganisms to a slide.
3. A smear is a thin film of material used for microscopic examination.
4. Bacteria are negatively charged, and the colored positive ion of a basic dye will stain bacterial cells.
5. The colored negative ion of an acidic dye will stain the background of a bacterial smear; a negative stain is produced.

Simple Stains (p. 65)

6. A simple stain is an aqueous or alcohol solution of a single basic dye.
7. A mordant may be used to improve bonding between the stain and the specimen.

Differential Stains (pp. 65–66)

8. Differential stains, such as the Gram stain and acid-fast stain, differentiate bacteria according to their reactions to the stains.
9. The Gram stain procedure uses a purple stain, iodine as a mordant, an alcohol decolorizer, and a red counterstain.
10. Gram-positive bacteria remain purple after decolorization. Gram-negative bacteria are decolorized and appear pink from the counterstain.
11. Acid-fast microbes, such as members of the genera *Mycobacterium* and *Nocardia*, retain carbolfuchsin after acid-alcohol decolorization and appear red; non–acid-fast microbes take up the methylene blue counterstain and appear blue.

Special Stains (pp. 66–69)

12. Negative staining is used to make microbial capsules visible.
13. The endospore stain and flagella stain are special stains that are used to visualize specific structures in bacterial cells.

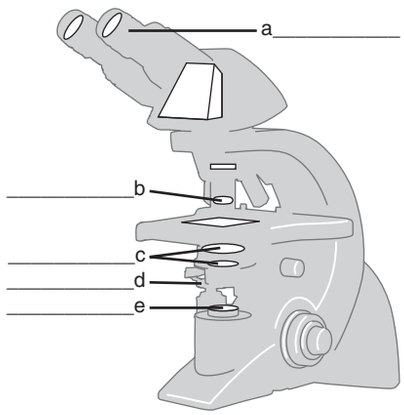
Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the back of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. Fill in the following blanks.
   a. 1 μm = _____ m
   b. 1 _____ = 10^{-9} *m*
   c. 1 μm = _____ nm
2. Which type of microscope would be best to use to observe each of the following?
   a. a stained bacterial smear
   b. unstained bacterial cells: the cells are small, and no detail is needed
   c. unstained live tissue when it is desirable to see some intracellular detail
   d. a sample that emits light when illuminated with ultraviolet light
   e. intracellular detail of a cell that is 1 μm long
   f. unstained live cells in which intracellular structures are shown in color
3. DRAW IT Label the parts of the compound light microscope in the following figure, and then draw the path of light from the illuminator to your eye.



4. Calculate the total magnification of the nucleus of a cell being observed through a compound light microscope with a 10× ocular lens and an oil immersion lens.
5. The maximum magnification of a compound microscope is (a) _____; that of an electron microscope, (b) _____. The maximum resolution of a compound microscope is (c) _____; that of an electron microscope, (d) _____. One advantage of a scanning electron microscope over a transmission electron microscope is (e) _____.
6. Why is a mordant used in the Gram stain? In the flagella stain?
7. What is the purpose of a counterstain in the acid-fast stain?
8. What is the purpose of a decolorizer in the Gram stain? In the acid-fast stain?
9. Fill in the following table regarding the Gram stain:

	Appearance after This Step	
Steps	**Gram-Positive Cells**	**Gram-Negative Cells**
Crystal violet	a. _____	e. _____
Iodine	b. _____	f. _____
Alcohol-acetone	c. _____	g. _____
Safranin	d. _____	h. _____

10. DRAW IT A sputum sample from Calle, a 30-year-old Asian elephant, was smeared onto a slide and air dried. The smear was fixed, covered with carbolfuchsin, and heated for 5 minutes. After washing with water, acid-alcohol was placed on the smear for 30 seconds. Finally, the smear was stained with methylene blue for 30 seconds, washed with water, and dried. On examination at 1000×, the zoo veterinarian saw red rods on the slide. What microbe do these results suggest?

Multiple Choice

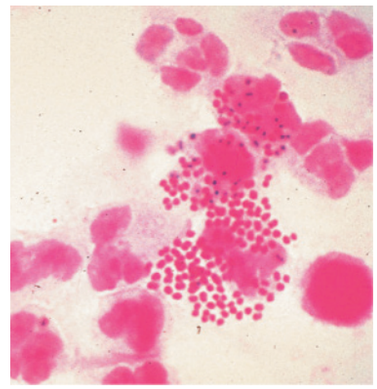
1. Assume you stain *Bacillus* by applying malachite green with heat and then counterstain with safranin. Through the microscope, the green structures are
   a. cell walls. **b.** capsules. **c.** endospores. **d.** flagella. **e.** impossible to identify.
2. Three-dimensional images of live cells can be produced with
   a. darkfield microscopy. **b.** fluorescence microscopy. **c.** transmission electron microscopy. **d.** confocal microscopy. **e.** phase-contrast microscopy.
3. Carbolfuchsin can be used as a simple stain and a negative stain. As a simple stain, the pH is
   a. 2. **b.** higher than the negative stain. **c.** lower than the negative stain. **d.** the same as the negative stain.
4. Looking at the cell of a photosynthetic microorganism, you observe the chloroplasts are green in brightfield microscopy and red in fluorescence microscopy. You conclude:
   a. chlorophyll is fluorescent. **b.** the magnification has distorted the image. **c.** you're not looking at the same structure in both microscopes. **d.** the stain masked the green color. **e.** none of the above
5. Which of the following is *not* a functionally analogous pair of stains?
   a. nigrosin and malachite green **b.** crystal violet and carbolfuchsin **c.** safranin and methylene blue **d.** ethanol-acetone and acid-alcohol **e.** All of the above pairs are functionally analogous.
6. Which of the following pairs is *mismatched*?
   a. capsule—negative stain **b.** cell arrangement—simple stain **c.** cell size—negative stain **d.** Gram stain—bacterial identification **e.** none of the above
7. Assume you stain *Clostridium* by applying a basic stain, carbolfuchsin, with heat, decolorizing with acid-alcohol, and counterstaining with an acidic stain, nigrosin. Through the microscope, the endospores are __1__, and the cells are stained __2__.
   a. 1—red; 2—black **b.** 1—black; 2—colorless **c.** 1—colorless; 2—black **d.** 1—red; 2—colorless **e.** 1—black; 2—red
8. Assume that you are viewing a Gram-stained field of red cocci and blue rods through the microscope. You can safely conclude that you have
   a. made a mistake in staining. **b.** two different species. **c.** old bacterial cells. **d.** young bacterial cells. **e.** none of the above
9. In 1996, scientists described a new tapeworm parasite that had killed at least one person. The initial examination of the patient's abdominal mass was most likely made using
   a. brightfield microscopy. **b.** darkfield microscopy. **c.** electron microscopy. **d.** phase-contrast microscopy. **e.** fluorescence microscopy.
10. Which of the following is *not* a modification of a compound light microscope?
    a. brightfield microscopy **b.** darkfield microscopy **c.** electron microscopy **d.** phase-contrast microscopy **e.** fluorescence microscopy

Analysis

1. In a Gram stain, a step could be omitted and still allow differentiation between gram-positive and gram-negative cells. What is it?
2. Using a compound light microscope with a resolving power of 0.3 μm, a 10× ocular lens, and a 100× oil immersion lens, would you be able to discern two objects separated by 3 μm? 0.3 μm? 300 nm?
3. Why isn't the Gram stain used on acid-fast bacteria? If you did Gram stain acid-fast bacteria, what would their Gram reaction be? What is the Gram reaction of non–acid-fast bacteria?
4. Endospores can be seen as refractile structures in unstained cells and as colorless areas in Gram-stained cells. Why is it necessary to do an endospore stain to verify the presence of endospores?

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. In 1882, German bacteriologist Paul Erhlich described a method for staining *Mycobacterium* and noted, "It may be that all disinfecting agents which are acidic will be without effect on this [tubercle] bacillus, and one will have to be limited to alkaline agents." How did he reach this conclusion without testing disinfectants?
2. Laboratory diagnosis of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* infection is based on microscopic examination of Gram-stained pus. Locate the bacteria in this light micrograph. What is the disease?



3. Assume that you are viewing a Gram-stained sample of vaginal discharge. Large (10 μm) nucleated red cells are coated with small (0.5 μm wide by 1.5 μm long) blue cells on their surfaces. What is the most likely explanation for the red and blue cells?

4 Functional Anatomy of Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Cells

Despite their complexity and variety, all living cells can be classified into two groups, prokaryotes and eukaryotes, based on certain structural and functional characteristics. In general, prokaryotes are structurally simpler and smaller than eukaryotes. The DNA (genetic material) of prokaryotes is usually a single, circularly arranged chromosome and is not surrounded by a membrane; the DNA of eukaryotes is found in multiple chromosomes in a membrane-enclosed nucleus.

Plants and animals are entirely composed of eukaryotic cells. In the microbial world, bacteria and archaea are prokaryotes. Other cellular microbes—fungi (yeasts and molds), protozoa, and algae—are eukaryotes. Both eukaryotic and prokaryotic cells can have a sticky glycocalyx surrounding them. In nature, most bacteria are found sticking to solid surfaces, including other cells, rather than free-floating. The glycocalyx is the glue that holds the cells in place. In contrast, *Escherichia coli* bacteria use their fimbriae—filamentous projections from the cells—to attach to the urinary bladder, resulting in infection, as described in the Clinical Case.

▶ ***Serratia*** **bacteria adhere to plastic using strands of glycocalyx (yellow).**

In the Clinic

As a pediatric nurse, you see an 8-year-old patient, Sophia, who has just been diagnosed with a urinary tract infection (UTI). You explain to Sophia's mother that UTIs are quite common in children, especially girls. When you give the mother a prescription for *nitrofurantoin*, she asks why Sophia can't just have penicillin again—that was the drug she received last winter to treat a chest infection. **How would you answer the mother's question?**

Hint: Read about the cell wall ahead.

Comparing Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Cells: An Overview

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

4-1 Compare the cell structure of prokaryotes and eukaryotes.

Prokaryotes and eukaryotes both contain nucleic acids, proteins, lipids, and carbohydrates. They use the same kinds of chemical reactions to metabolize food, build proteins, and store energy. It is primarily the structure of their cell walls and ribosomes, and the absence of *organelles* (specialized cellular structures that have specific functions), that distinguish prokaryotes from eukaryotes. The chief distinguishing characteristics of **prokaryotes** (from the Greek words meaning prenucleus) are as follows:

1. Typically their DNA is not enclosed within a membrane and is usually a singular, circularly arranged chromosome. *Gemmata obscuriglobus* has a double membrane around its nucleus. (Some bacteria, such as *Vibrio cholerae* (VIB-rē-ō KOL-er-ī), have two chromosomes, and some bacteria have a linearly arranged chromosome.)
2. Their DNA is not associated with histones (special chromosomal proteins found in eukaryotes); other proteins are associated with their DNA.
3. They generally lack organelles. Advances in microscopy reveal a few microcompartments in bacteria (for example, some inclusions). However, these structures are surrounded by membranes made of proteins or lipids and not a phospholipid bilayer. Prokaryotes lack phospholipid-membrane-enclosed organelles such as nuclei, mitochondria, and chloroplasts.
4. Their cell walls almost always contain the complex polysaccharide peptidoglycan.
5. They usually divide by **binary fission**, where DNA is copied, and the cell splits into two cells. This involves fewer structures and processes than eukaryotic cell division.

Eukaryotes (from the Greek words meaning true nucleus) have the following distinguishing characteristics:

1. Their DNA is found in the cell's nucleus, which is separated from the cytoplasm by a nuclear membrane, and the DNA is found in multiple chromosomes.
2. Their DNA is consistently associated with chromosomal proteins called histones and with nonhistones.
3. They have a number of membrane-enclosed organelles, including mitochondria, endoplasmic reticulum, Golgi complex, lysosomes, and sometimes chloroplasts (all discussed shortly).
4. Their cell walls, when present, are chemically simple.
5. Cell division usually involves mitosis, in which chromosomes replicate and an identical set is distributed into each of two nuclei. Division of the cytoplasm and other organelles follows so that the two cells produced are identical to each other.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

4-1 What is the main feature that distinguishes prokaryotes from eukaryotes?

The Prokaryotic Cell

Prokaryotes make up a vast group of very small unicellular organisms that include bacteria and archaea. The majority are bacteria. Although bacteria and archaea look similar, their chemical composition is different. The thousands of species of bacteria are differentiated by many factors, including morphology (shape), chemical composition, nutritional requirements, biochemical activities, and sources of energy. It is estimated that 99% of the bacteria in nature exist in biofilms (see Chapter 6).

The Size, Shape, and Arrangement of Bacterial Cells

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

4-2 Identify the three basic shapes of bacteria.

Most bacteria range from 0.2 to 2.0 μm in diameter and from 2 to 8 μm in length. They may be a spherical-shaped **coccus** (plural: **cocci**, meaning berries), a rod-shaped **bacillus** (plural: **bacilli**, meaning little rods or walking sticks), or a **spiral**.

CLINICAL CASE Infection Detection

Irene Matthews, an infection control nurse, is in a quandary. Three patients in her hospital have contracted postprocedure bacterial septicemia. All have a fever and dangerously low blood pressure. The patients are in different units and had different procedures. The first patient, Mateo, a 32-year-old construction worker, is recovering from rotator cuff surgery. He is in relatively good health, otherwise. The second patient, Jessie, a 16-year-old student in intensive care, is in critical condition following an automobile accident. She is on a ventilator and cannot breathe on her own. The third patient, Ysabella, a 57-year-old grandmother, is recovering from coronary artery bypass surgery. As far as Irene can tell, the only thing these patients have in common is the infectious agent—*Klebsiella pneumoniae*.

How can three patients in different parts of a hospital contract *K. pneumoniae*? Read on to find out.

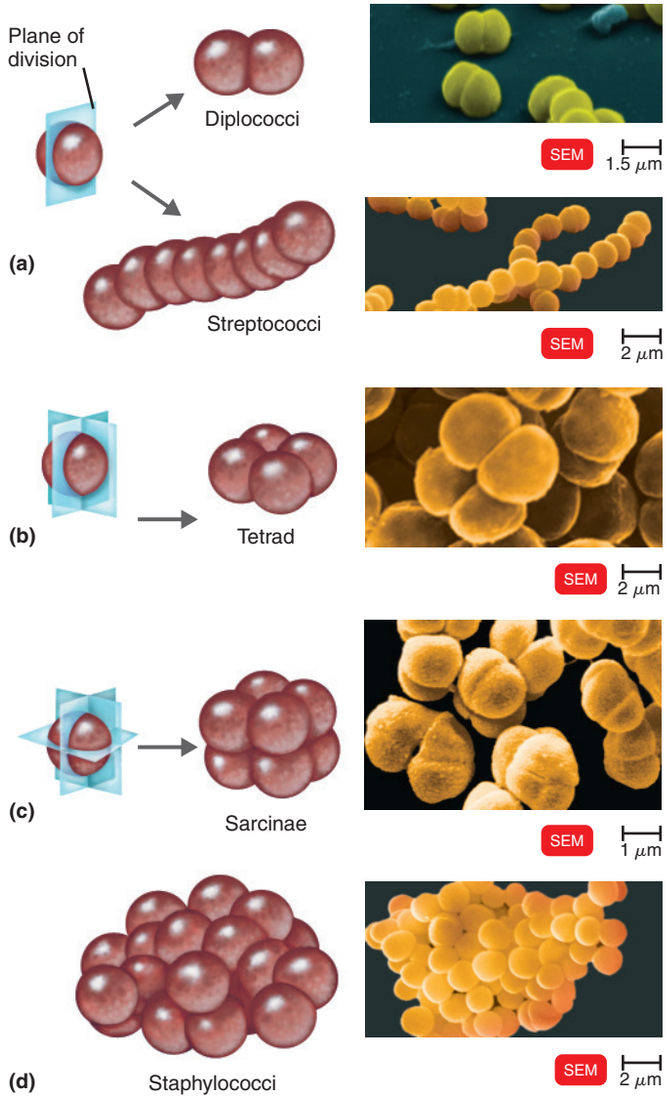


Figure 4.1 Arrangements of cocci. **(a)** Division in one plane produces diplococci and streptococci. **(b)** Division in two planes produces tetrads. **(c)** Division in three planes produces sarcinae, and **(d)** division in multiple planes produces staphylococci.

Q How do planes of division determine cell arrangement?

Cocci are usually round but can be oval, elongated, or flattened on one side. When cocci divide to reproduce, the cells can remain attached to one another. Cocci that remain in pairs after dividing are called **diplococci**; those that divide and remain attached in chainlike patterns are called **streptococci** (Figure 4.1a). Those that divide in two planes and remain in groups of four are known as **tetrads** (Figure 4.1b). Those that divide in three planes and remain attached in cubelike groups of eight are called **sarcinae** (Figure 4.1c). Those that divide in multiple planes and form grapelike clusters are called **staphylococci** (Figure 4.1d). These group characteristics are frequently helpful in identifying certain cocci.

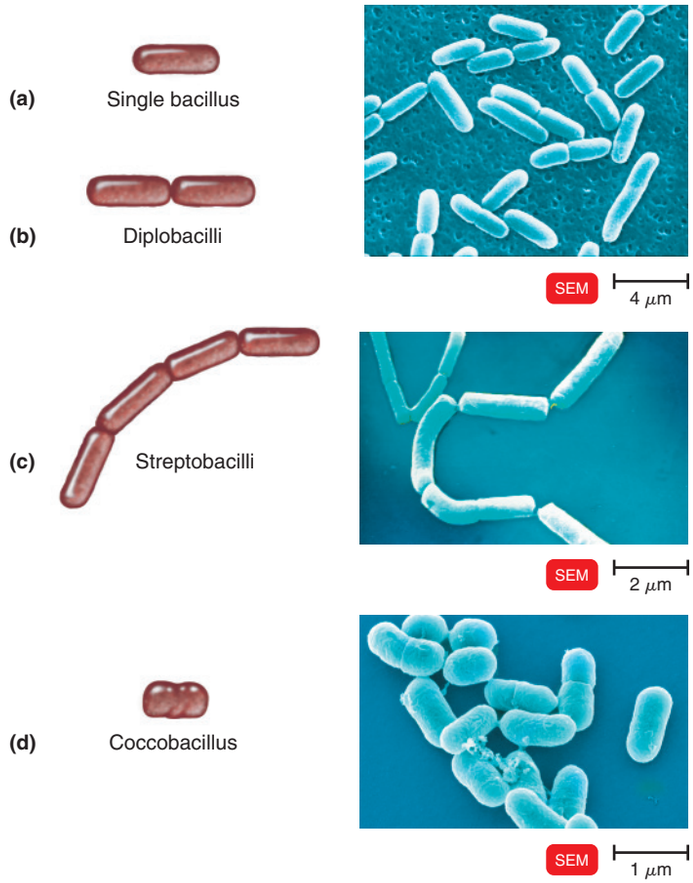


Figure 4.2 Bacilli. **(a)** Single bacilli. **(b)** Diplobacilli. In the top micrograph, a few joined pairs of bacilli could serve as examples of diplobacilli. **(c)** Streptobacilli. **(d)** Coccobacilli.

Q Why don't bacilli form tetrads or clusters?

Bacilli divide only across their short axis, so there are fewer groupings of bacilli than of cocci. Most bacilli appear as single rods, called **single bacilli** (Figure 4.2a). **Diplobacilli** appear in pairs after division (Figure 4.2b), and **streptobacilli** occur in chains (Figure 4.2c). Some bacilli look like straws. Others have tapered ends. Still others are oval and look so much like cocci that they are called **coccobacilli** (Figure 4.2d).

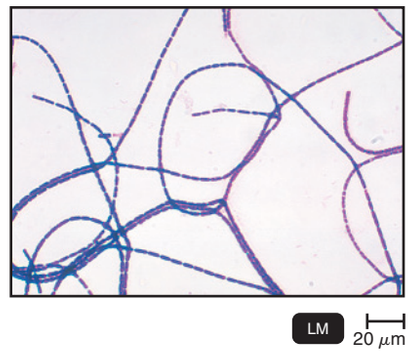


Figure 4.3 Gram-stained *Bacillus anthracis*. As *Bacillus* cells age, their walls thin, and their Gram reaction is variable.

Q What is the difference between the term bacillus and *Bacillus*?

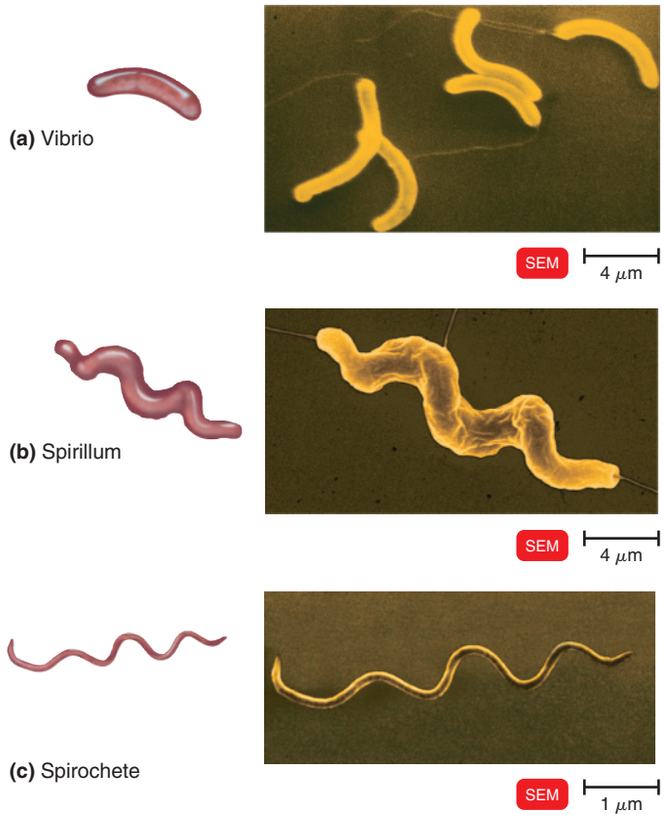


Figure 4.4 Spiral bacteria.

Q What is the distinguishing feature of spirochete bacteria?

"Bacillus" has two meanings in microbiology. As we have just used it, bacillus refers to a bacterial shape. When capitalized and italicized, it refers to a specific genus. For example, the bacterium *Bacillus anthracis* is the causative agent of anthrax. Bacillus cells often form long, twisted chains of cells (Figure 4.3).

Spiral bacteria have one or more twists; they are never straight. Bacteria that look like curved rods are called **vibrios** (Figure 4.4a). Others, called **spirilla** (singular: **spirillum**), have a helical shape, like a corkscrew, and fairly rigid bodies (Figure 4.4b). Yet another group of spirals are helical and flexible; they are called **spirochetes** (Figure 4.4c). Unlike the spirilla, which use propeller-like external appendages called flagella to move, spirochetes move by means of axial filaments, which resemble flagella but are contained within a flexible external sheath. There are also star-shaped and rectangular prokaryotes (Figure 4.5).

The shape of a bacterium is determined by heredity. Genetically, most bacteria are **monomorphic**; that is, they maintain a single shape. However, a number of environmental conditions can alter that shape. If the shape is altered, identification becomes difficult. Moreover, some bacteria, such as *Rhizobium* (rī-ZŌ-bē-um) and *Corynebacterium* (kor'ī-nē-bak-TI-rē-um), are genetically **pleomorphic**, which means they can have many shapes, not just one.

The structure of a typical prokaryotic cell is shown in Figure 4.6. We will discuss structures external to the cell wall, the cell wall itself, and structures internal to the cell wall.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

✓ **4-2** How can you identify streptococci with a microscope?

Structures External to the Cell Wall

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

4-3 Describe the structure and function of the glycocalyx.

4-4 Differentiate flagella, axial filaments, fimbriae, and pili.

Among the possible structures external to the prokaryotic cell wall are the glycocalyx, flagella, axial filaments, fimbriae, and pili.

Glycocalyx

Many prokaryotes secrete on their surface a substance called glycocalyx. **Glycocalyx** (meaning sugar coat) is the general term used for substances that surround cells. The bacterial glycocalyx is a viscous (sticky), gelatinous polymer that is external to the cell wall and composed of polysaccharide, polypeptide, or both. Its chemical composition varies widely with the species. For the most part, it is made inside the cell and secreted to the cell surface. If the substance is organized and is firmly attached to the

ASM: Bacteria have unique cell structures that are targets for antibiotics, immunity, and phage infection.

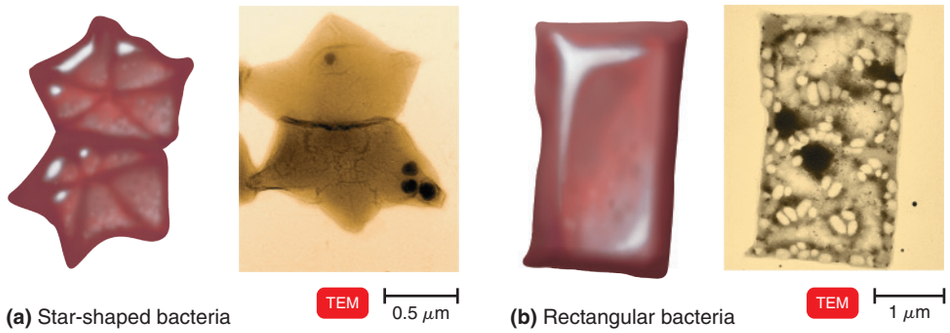
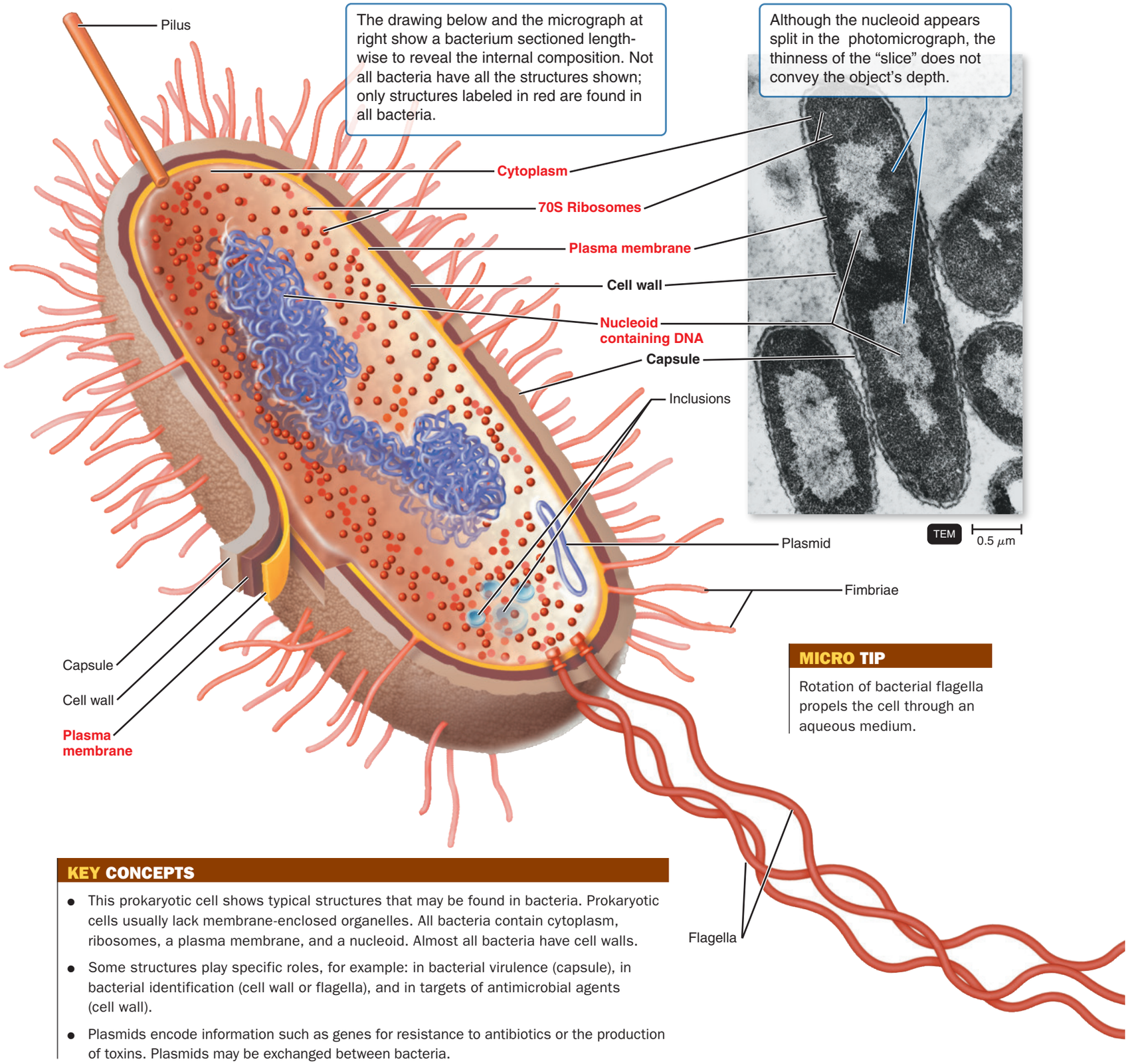


Figure 4.5 Star-shaped and rectangular prokaryotes. **(a)** *Stella* (star-shaped). **(b)** *Haloarcula*, a genus of halophilic archaea (rectangular cells).

Q What are the common bacterial shapes?

FOUNDATION FIGURE 4.6

The Structure of a Prokaryotic Cell

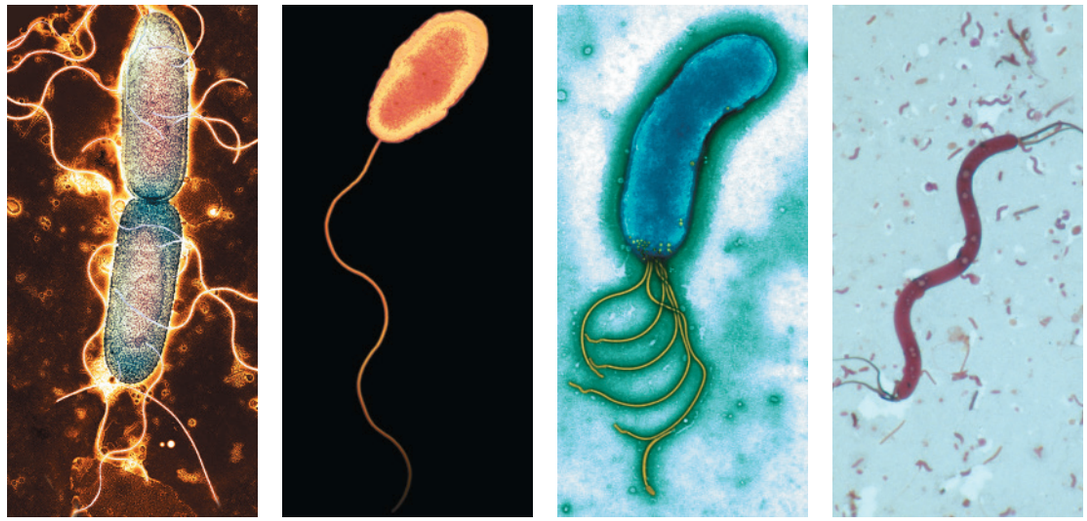


MICRO TIP

Rotation of bacterial flagella propels the cell through an aqueous medium.

KEY CONCEPTS

- This prokaryotic cell shows typical structures that may be found in bacteria. Prokaryotic cells usually lack membrane-enclosed organelles. All bacteria contain cytoplasm, ribosomes, a plasma membrane, and a nucleoid. Almost all bacteria have cell walls.
- Some structures play specific roles, for example: in bacterial virulence (capsule), in bacterial identification (cell wall or flagella), and in targets of antimicrobial agents (cell wall).
- Plasmids encode information such as genes for resistance to antibiotics or the production of toxins. Plasmids may be exchanged between bacteria.



(a) Peritrichous **(b)** Monotrichous and polar **(c)** Lophotrichous and polar **(d)** Amphitrichous and polar

Figure 4.7 Arrangements of bacterial flagella.
(a) Peritrichous. **(b)–(d)** Polar.

Q Not all bacteria have flagella. What are bacteria without flagella called?

cell wall, the glycocalyx is described as a **capsule**. The presence of a capsule can be determined by using negative staining, described in Chapter 3 (see Figure 3.16a). If the substance is unorganized and only loosely attached to the cell wall, the glycocalyx is described as a **slime layer**.

In certain species, capsules are important in contributing to bacterial virulence (the degree to which a pathogen causes disease). Capsules often protect pathogenic bacteria from phagocytosis by the cells of the host. (As you will see later, phagocytosis is the ingestion and digestion of microorganisms and other solid particles.) For example, *B. anthracis* produces a capsule of D-glutamic acid. (Recall from Chapter 2 that the D forms of amino acids are unusual.) Because only encapsulated *B. anthracis* causes anthrax, it is speculated that the capsule may prevent it from being destroyed by phagocytosis.

Another example involves *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (strep′tō-KOK-kus noo-MŌ-nē-ī), which causes pneumonia only when the cells are protected by a polysaccharide capsule. Unencapsulated *S. pneumoniae* cells cannot cause pneumonia and are readily phagocytized. The polysaccharide capsule of *Klebsiella* also prevents phagocytosis and allows the bacterium to adhere to and colonize the respiratory tract.

The glycocalyx is a very important component of biofilms (see Chapter 6). A glycocalyx that helps cells in a biofilm attach to their target environment and to each other is called an **extracellular polymeric substance (EPS)**. The EPS protects the cells within it, facilitates communication among them, and enables the cells to survive by attaching to various surfaces in their natural environment.

Through attachment, bacteria can grow on diverse surfaces such as rocks in fast-moving streams, plant roots, human teeth, medical implants, water pipes, and even other bacteria. *Streptococcus mutans* (MŪ-tanz), an important cause of dental caries, attaches itself to the surface of teeth by a glycocalyx. *S. mutans* may use its capsule as a source of nutrition by breaking it down and utilizing the sugars when energy stores are low. *V. cholerae*, the cause of cholera, produces a glycocalyx that helps it attach to the cells of the small intestine. A glycocalyx also can protect a cell against dehydration, and its viscosity may inhibit the movement of nutrients out of the cell.

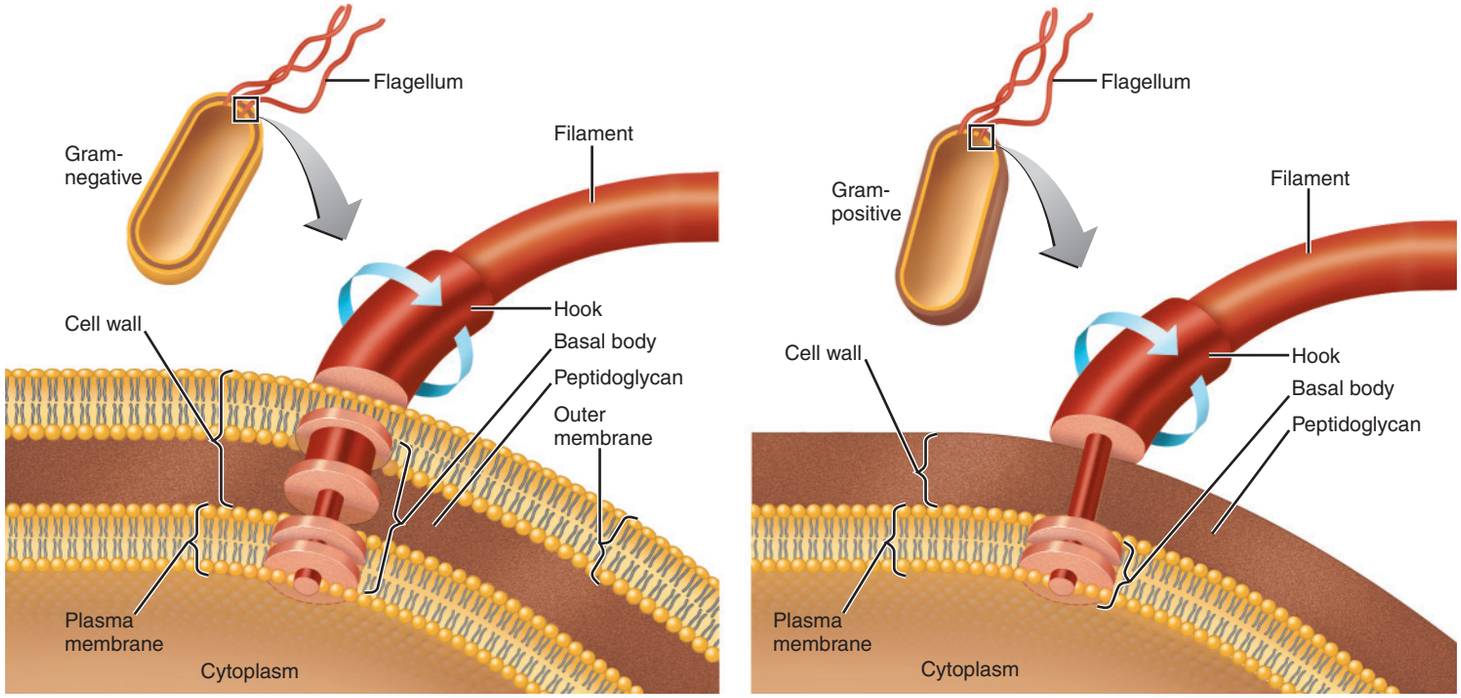
Flagella and Archaella

Motile bacterial cells have flagella, whereas motile archaeal cells have archaella.

Flagella

Some bacterial cells have **flagella** (singular: **flagellum**), which are long filamentous appendages that propel bacteria. Bacteria that lack flagella are referred to as **atrichous** (without projections). Flagella may be **peritrichous** (distributed over the entire cell; Figure 4.7a) or **polar** (at one or both poles or ends of the cell). If polar, flagella may be **monotrichous** (a single flagellum at one pole; Figure 4.7b), **lophotrichous** (a tuft of flagella coming from one pole; Figure 4.7c), or **amphitrichous** (flagella at both poles of the cell; Figure 4.7d).

A flagellum has three basic parts (Figure 4.8). The long outermost region, the *filament*, is constant in diameter and contains the globular (roughly spherical) protein *flagellin* arranged in several chains that intertwine and form a helix around a hollow core. In most bacteria, filaments are not covered by a membrane or sheath, as in eukaryotic cells. The filament is attached to a slightly wider *hook*, consisting of a different protein. The third portion of a flagellum is the *basal body*, which anchors the flagellum to the cell wall and plasma membrane.



(a) Parts and attachment of a flagellum of a gram-negative bacterium

(b) Parts and attachment of a flagellum of a gram-positive bacterium

Figure 4.8 The structure of a bacterial flagellum. The parts and attachment of a flagellum of a gram-negative bacterium and gram-positive bacterium are shown in these highly schematic diagrams.

Q How do the basal bodies of gram-negative and gram-positive bacteria differ?

The basal body is composed of a small central rod inserted into a series of rings. Gram-negative bacteria contain two pairs of rings; the outer pair of rings is anchored to various portions of the cell wall, and the inner pair of rings is anchored to the plasma membrane. In gram-positive bacteria, only the inner pair is present. As you will see later, the flagella (and cilia) of eukaryotic cells are more complex than those of bacteria.

Each bacterial flagellum is a semirigid, helical structure that moves the cell by rotating from the basal body. The rotation of a flagellum is either clockwise or counterclockwise around its long axis. (Eukaryotic flagella, by contrast, undulate in a wavelike motion.) The movement of a bacterial flagellum results from rotation of its basal body and is similar to the movement of the shaft of an electric motor. As the flagella rotate, they form a bundle that pushes against the surrounding liquid and propels the bacterium. Flagellar rotation depends on the cell's continuous generation of energy.

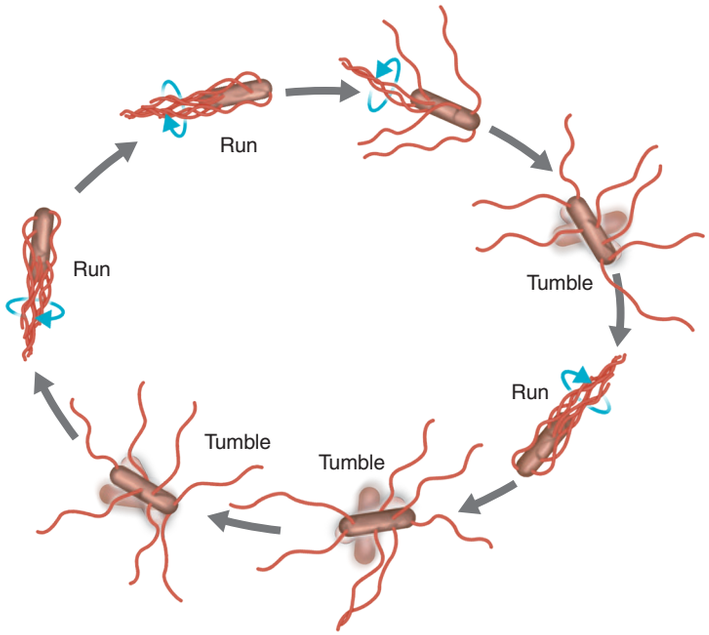
Bacterial cells can alter the speed and direction of rotation of flagella and thus are capable of various patterns of **motility**, the ability of an organism to move by itself. When a bacterium moves in one direction for a length of time, the movement is called a "run" or "swim." "Runs" are interrupted by periodic, abrupt, random changes in direction called "tumbles." Then, a "run" resumes. "Tumbles" are caused by a reversal of flagellar rotation (Figure 4.9a). Some species of bacteria endowed with many flagella—*Proteus* (PRŌ-tē-us), for example (Figure 4.9b)—can "swarm," or show rapid wavelike movement across a solid culture medium (Figure 4.9c).

One advantage of motility is that it enables a bacterium to move toward a favorable environment or away from an adverse one. The movement of a bacterium toward or away from a particular stimulus is called **taxis**. Such stimuli include chemicals (**chemotaxis**) and light (**phototaxis**). Motile bacteria contain receptors in various locations in the cytoplasm and plasma membrane. These receptors pick up stimuli, such as oxygen, ribose, and galactose. In response to the stimuli, information is passed to the flagella. If the chemotactic signal is positive, called an *attractant*, the bacteria move toward the stimulus with many runs and few tumbles. If the chemotactic signal is negative, called a *repellent*, the frequency of tumbles increases as the bacteria move away from the stimulus.

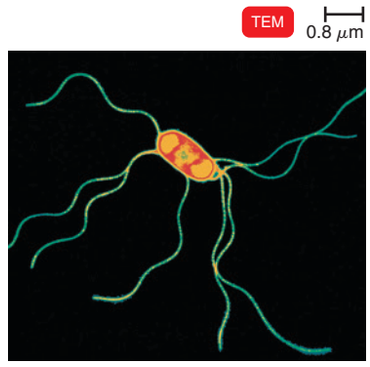
The flagellar protein called **H antigen** is useful for distinguishing among **serovars**, or variations within a species, of gram-negative bacteria (see Chapter 11). For example, there are at least 50 different H antigens for *E. coli*. The serovar identified as *E. coli* O157:H7 is associated with foodborne epidemics.

Archaella

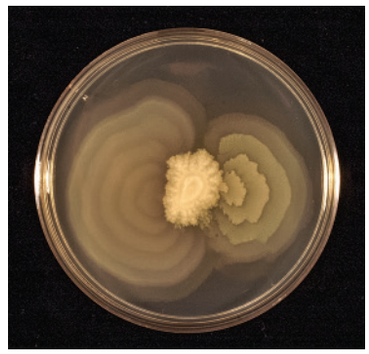
Motile archaeal cells have **archaella** (singular: **archaellum**). Archaella share similarities with bacterial flagella and pili (discussed later). A knoblike structure anchors archaella to the cell. Archaella rotate like flagella, an action that pushes the



(a) A bacterium running and tumbling. Notice that the direction of flagellar rotation (blue arrows) determines which of these movements occurs. Gray arrows indicate direction of movement of the microbe.



(b) A ***Proteus*** cell in the swarming stage may have more than 1000 peritrichous flagella.



(c) Swarming colonies of *Proteus mirabilis*.

Figure 4.9 Flagella and bacterial motility.

Q Do bacterial flagella push or pull a cell?

cell through water, and, like pili, archaella use ATP for energy and lack a cytoplasmic core. Archaella consist of glycoproteins called archaellins.

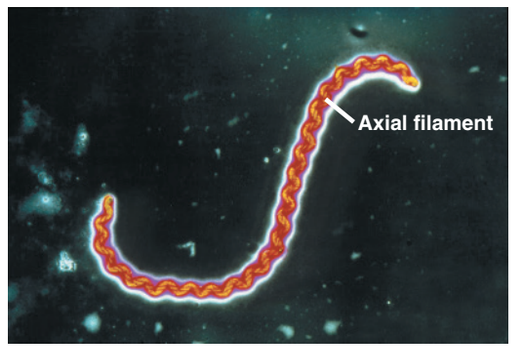
Axial Filaments

Spirochetes are a group of bacteria that have unique structure and motility. One of the best-known spirochetes is *Treponema pallidum* (trep-ō-NĒ-mah PAL-li-dum), the causative agent of syphilis. Another spirochete is *Borreliella burgdorferi* (bor-rē-lē-EL-lah), the causative agent of Lyme disease. Spirochetes move by means of **axial filaments**, or **endoflagella**, bundles of fibrils that arise at the ends of the cell beneath an outer sheath and spiral around the cell (Figure 4.10).

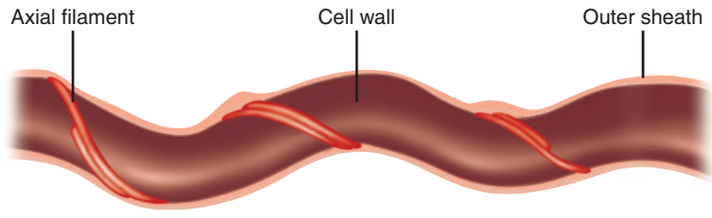
Axial filaments, which are anchored at one end of the spirochete, have a structure similar to that of flagella. The rotation of the filaments produces a movement of the outer sheath that propels the spirochetes in a spiral motion. This type of movement is similar to the way a corkscrew moves through a cork. This corkscrew motion probably enables a bacterium such as *T. pallidum* to move effectively through bodily fluids.

Fimbriae and Pili

Many gram-negative bacteria contain hairlike appendages that are shorter, straighter, and thinner than flagella. These structures, which consist of a protein called *pilin* arranged helically around a central core, are divided into two types, fimbriae and



(a) A photomicrograph of the spirochete *Leptospira*, showing an axial filament



(b) A diagram of axial filaments wrapping around part of a spirochete

Figure 4.10 Axial filaments.

Q How are endoflagella different from flagella?

pili, having very different functions. (Some microbiologists use the two terms interchangeably to refer to all such structures, but we distinguish between them.)

Fimbriae (singular: **fimbria**) can occur at the poles of the bacterial cell or can be evenly distributed over the entire surface of the cell. They can number anywhere from a few to several hundred per cell (Figure 4.11). Fimbriae have a tendency to adhere to each other and to surfaces. As a result, they are involved in forming biofilms and other aggregations on the surfaces of liquids, glass, and rocks. Fimbriae can also help bacteria adhere to epithelial surfaces in the body. For example, fimbriae on the bacterium *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (nī-SE-rē-ah go-nōr-RĒ-ī), the causative agent of gonorrhea, help the microbe colonize mucous membranes. Once colonization occurs, the bacteria can cause disease. The fimbriae of *E. coli* O157 enable this bacterium to adhere to the lining of the small intestine, where it causes a severe watery diarrhea. When fimbriae are absent (because of genetic mutation), colonization cannot happen, and no disease ensues.

ASM: Bacteria and archaea have specialized structures (flagella, endospores, and pili) that often confer critical capabilities.

Pili (singular: **pilus**) are usually longer than fimbriae and number only one or two per cell. Pili are involved in motility and DNA transfer. In one type of motility, called **twitching motility**, a pilus extends by the addition of subunits of pilin, makes contact with a surface or another cell, and then retracts (powerstroke) as the pilin subunits are disassembled. This is called the *grappling hook model* of twitching motility and results in short, jerky, intermittent movements. Twitching motility has been observed in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *N. gonorrhoeae*, and some strains of *E. coli*. The other type of motility associated with pili is **gliding motility**, the smooth gliding movement of myxobacteria. Although the exact mechanism is unknown for most myxobacteria, some utilize pilus retraction. Gliding motility provides a means for microbes to travel in environments with a low water content, such as biofilms and soil.

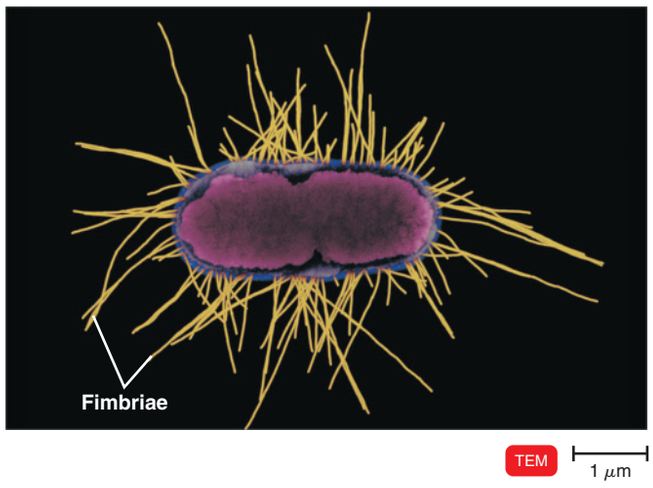


Figure 4.11 Fimbriae. The fimbriae seem to bristle from this *E. coli* cell, which is beginning to divide.

Q Why are fimbriae necessary for colonization?

Some pili are used to bring bacteria together, allowing the transfer of DNA from one cell to another, a process called conjugation. Such pili are called **conjugation (sex) pili** (see Figure 8.29a). In this process, the conjugation pilus of one bacterium called an F^+ cell connects to receptors on the surface of another bacterium of its own species or a different species. The two cells make physical contact, and DNA from the F^+ cell is transferred to the other cell. The exchanged DNA can add a new function to the recipient cell, such as antibiotic resistance or the ability to digest its medium more efficiently.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **4-3** Why are bacterial capsules medically important?
- **4-4** How do bacteria move?

The Cell Wall

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **4-5** Compare and contrast the cell walls of gram-positive bacteria, gram-negative bacteria, acid-fast bacteria, archaea, and mycoplasmas.
- **4-6** Compare and contrast archaea and mycoplasmas.
- **4-7** Differentiate protoplast, spheroplast, and L form.

The **cell wall** of the bacterial cell is a complex, semirigid structure responsible for the shape of the cell. Almost all prokaryotes have a cell wall that surrounds the underlying, fragile plasma (cytoplasmic) membrane and protects it and the interior of the cell from adverse changes in the outside environment (see Figure 4.6).

The major function of the cell wall is to prevent bacterial cells from rupturing when the water pressure inside the cell is greater than that outside the cell (see Figure 4.18d). It also helps maintain the shape of a bacterium and serves as a point of anchorage for flagella. As the volume of a bacterial cell increases, its plasma membrane and cell wall extend as needed. Clinically, the cell wall is important because it contributes to the ability of some species to cause disease and is the site of action of some antibiotics. In addition, the chemical composition of the cell wall is used to differentiate major types of bacteria.

Although the cells of some eukaryotes, including plants, algae, and fungi, have cell walls, their walls differ chemically from those of prokaryotes, are simpler in structure, and are less rigid.

Composition and Characteristics

The bacterial cell wall is composed of a macromolecular network called **peptidoglycan** (also known as *murein*), which is present either alone or in combination with other substances.

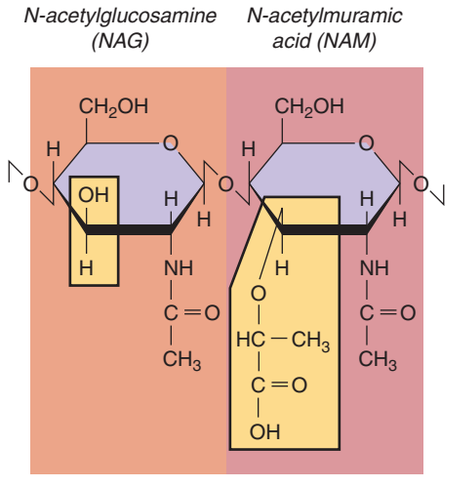


Figure 4.12 ***N*-acetylglucosamine (NAG) and *N*-acetylmuramic acid (NAM) joined as in a peptidoglycan.** The gold areas show the differences between the two molecules. The linkage between them is called a β-1,4 linkage.

Q **What kind of molecules are these: carbohydrates, lipids, or proteins?**

Peptidoglycan consists of a repeating disaccharide connected by polypeptides to form a lattice that surrounds and protects the entire cell. The disaccharide portion is made up of monosaccharides called *N*-acetylglucosamine (NAG) and *N*-acetylmuramic acid (NAM) (from *murus*, meaning wall), which are related to glucose. The structural formulas for NAG and NAM are shown in Figure 4.12.

The various components of peptidoglycan are assembled in the cell wall (Figure 4.13a). Alternating NAM and NAG molecules are linked in rows of 10 to 65 sugars to form a carbohydrate "backbone" (the glycan portion of peptidoglycan). Adjacent rows are linked by **polypeptides** (the peptide portion of peptidoglycan). Although the structure of the polypeptide link varies, it always includes *tetrapeptide side chains*, which consist of four amino acids attached to NAMs in the backbone. The amino acids occur in an alternating pattern of D and L forms (see Figure 2.13). This is unique because the amino acids found in other proteins are L forms. Parallel tetrapeptide side chains may be directly bonded to each other or linked by a *peptide cross-bridge*, consisting of a short chain of amino acids.

Penicillin interferes with the final linking of the peptidoglycan rows by peptide cross-bridges (see Figure 4.13a). As a result, the cell wall is greatly weakened and the cell undergoes **lysis**, destruction caused by rupture of the plasma membrane and the loss of cytoplasm.

Gram-Positive Cell Walls

In most gram-positive bacteria, the cell wall consists of many layers of peptidoglycan, forming a thick, rigid structure (Figure 4.13b). By contrast, gram-negative cell walls contain only a thin layer of peptidoglycan (Figure 4.13c). The space between the cell wall and plasma membrane of gram-positive bacteria is the periplasmic space. It contains the granular layer, which is composed of lipoteichoic acid. In addition, the cell walls of gram-positive bacteria contain *teichoic acids*, which consist primarily of an alcohol (such as glycerol or ribitol) and phosphate. There are two classes of teichoic acids: *lipoteichoic acid*, which spans the peptidoglycan layer and is linked to the plasma membrane, and *wall teichoic acid*, which is linked to the peptidoglycan layer. Because of their negative charge (from the phosphate groups), teichoic acids may bind and regulate the movement of cations (positive ions) into and out of the cell. They may also assume a role in cell growth, preventing extensive wall breakdown and possible cell lysis. Finally, teichoic acids provide much of the wall's antigenic specificity and thus make it possible to identify gram-positive bacteria by certain laboratory tests (see Chapter 10). Similarly, the cell walls of gram-positive streptococci are covered with various polysaccharides that allow them to be grouped into medically significant types.

Gram-Negative Cell Walls

The cell walls of gram-negative bacteria consist of one or a very few layers of peptidoglycan and an outer membrane (see Figure 4.13c). The peptidoglycan is bonded to lipoproteins in the outer membrane and is in the *periplasm*, a gel-like fluid in the periplasmic space of gram-negative bacteria, the region between the outer membrane and the plasma membrane. The periplasm contains a high concentration of degradative enzymes and transport proteins. Gram-negative cell walls do not contain teichoic acids. Because the cell walls of gram-negative bacteria contain only a small amount of peptidoglycan, they are more susceptible to mechanical breakage.

The *outer membrane* of the gram-negative cell consists of lipopolysaccharides (LPS), lipoproteins, and phospholipids (see Figure 4.13c). The outer membrane has several specialized functions. Its strong negative charge is an important factor in evading phagocytosis and the actions of complement (which lyses cells and promotes phagocytosis), two components of the defenses of the host (discussed in detail in Chapter 16). The outer membrane also provides a barrier to detergents, heavy metals, bile salts, certain dyes, antibiotics (for example, penicillin), and digestive enzymes such as lysozyme.

However, the outer membrane doesn't block all environmental substances because nutrients must enter to sustain the metabolism of the cell. Part of the permeability of the outer membrane is due to proteins in the membrane, called **porins**, that form channels. Porins permit the passage of molecules such as nucleotides, disaccharides, peptides, amino acids, vitamin B_{12}, and iron.

The **lipopolysaccharide (LPS)** of the outer membrane is a large, complex molecule that contains lipids and carbohydrates and consists of three components: (1) lipid A, (2) a core polysaccharide, and (3) an O polysaccharide. **Lipid A** is the lipid portion of the LPS and is embedded in the top layer of the outer membrane. When gram-negative bacteria die, they release lipid A,

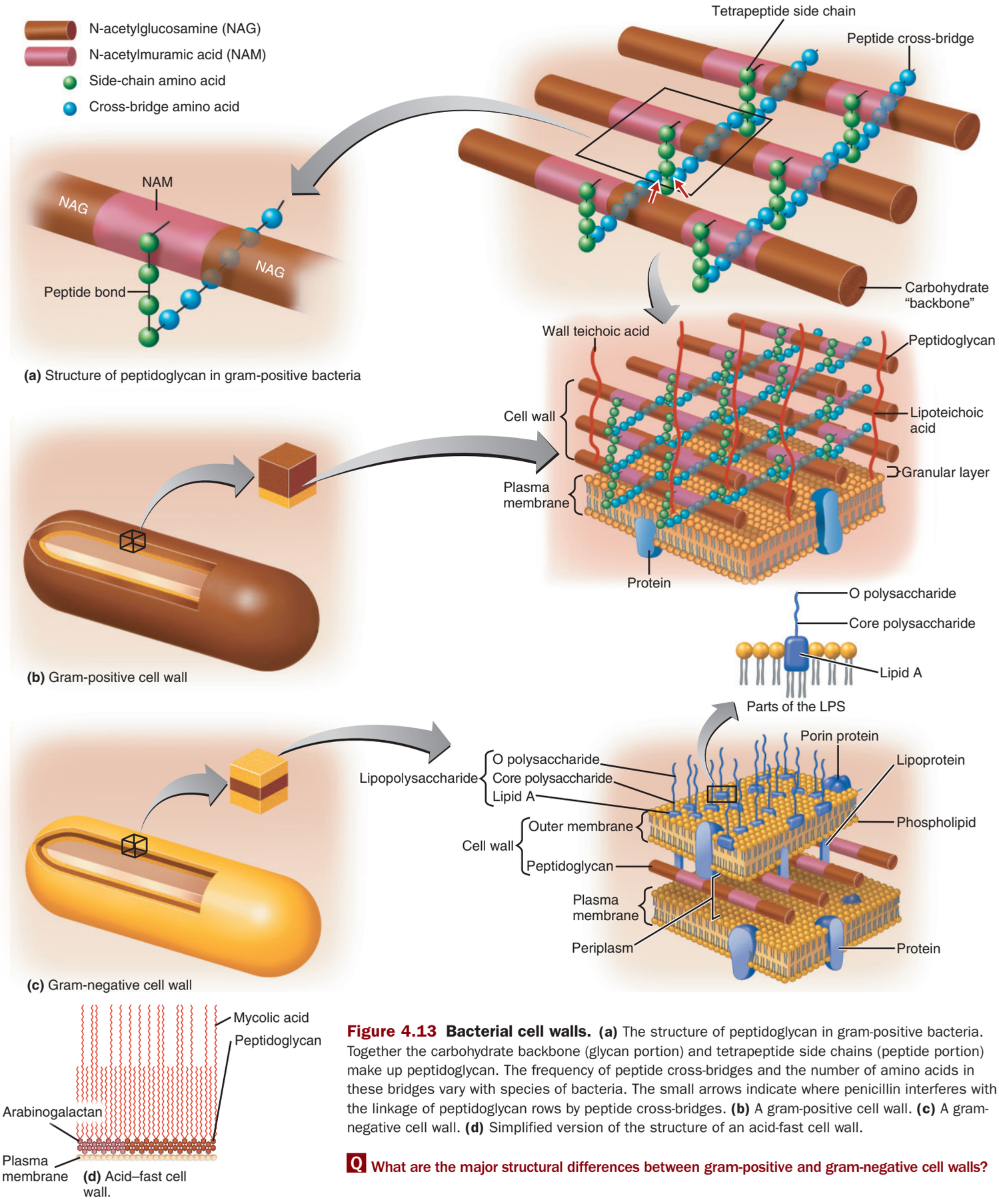


Figure 4.13 Bacterial cell walls. **(a)** The structure of peptidoglycan in gram-positive bacteria. Together the carbohydrate backbone (glycan portion) and tetrapeptide side chains (peptide portion) make up peptidoglycan. The frequency of peptide cross-bridges and the number of amino acids in these bridges vary with species of bacteria. The small arrows indicate where penicillin interferes with the linkage of peptidoglycan rows by peptide cross-bridges. **(b)** A gram-positive cell wall. **(c)** A gram-negative cell wall. **(d)** Simplified version of the structure of an acid-fast cell wall.

Q What are the major structural differences between gram-positive and gram-negative cell walls?

CLINICAL CASE

Irene reviews what she knows about gram-negative *K. pneumoniae* bacteria. Although this bacterium is part of normal intestinal microbiota, outside its typical environment it can cause serious infection. *K. pneumoniae* accounts for about 8% of all healthcare–associated infections. Irene surmises that the bacteria had to come from the hospital somewhere.

What is causing the patients' fever and low blood pressure?

Part 1 | **Part 2** | Part 3 | Part 4 | Part 5

which functions as an endotoxin (Chapter 15). Lipid A is responsible for the symptoms associated with infections by gram-negative bacteria, such as fever, dilation of blood vessels, shock, and blood clotting. The **core polysaccharide** is attached to lipid A and contains unusual sugars. Its role is structural—to provide stability. The **O polysaccharide** extends outward from the core polysaccharide and is composed of sugar molecules. The O polysaccharide functions as an antigen and is useful for distinguishing serovars of gram-negative bacteria. For example, the foodborne pathogen *E. coli* O157:H7 is distinguished from other serovars by certain laboratory tests that test for these specific antigens. This antigenic role is comparable to that of teichoic acids in gram-positive cells.

Cell Walls and the Gram Stain Mechanism

Now that you've studied the Gram stain (in Chapter 3) and the chemistry of the bacterial cell wall (in the previous section), it's easier to understand how the Gram stain works. The mechanism of the Gram stain is based on differences in the cell wall structure of gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and how each reacts to various reagents (substances used for producing a chemical reaction). Crystal violet, the primary stain, stains both gram-positive and gram-negative cells purple because the dye combines with the peptidoglycan. When iodine (the mordant) is applied, it forms large crystals with the dye that are not soluble in water. The application of alcohol dissolves the outer membrane of gram-negative cells, and the crystal-violet iodine is washed out of the thin peptidoglycan layer. Because gram-negative bacteria are colorless after the alcohol wash, the addition of safranin (the counterstain) turns the cells pink or red. Safranin provides a contrasting color to the primary stain (crystal violet). Although gram-positive and gram-negative cells both absorb safranin, the pink or red color of safranin is masked by the darker purple dye previously absorbed by gram-positive cells.

In any population of cells, some gram-positive cells will give a gram-negative response. These cells are usually dead. However, there are a few gram-positive genera that show an increasing number of gram-negative cells as the culture ages. *Bacillus* and *Clostridium* are examples and are often described as *gram-variable* (see Figure 4.3).

Table 4.1 compares some of the characteristics of gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria.

Atypical Cell Walls

Among prokaryotes, certain types of cells have no walls, very little wall material, or acid-fast walls.

Bacteria with No Cell Wall

Bacteria lacking a cell wall include members of the genus *Mycoplasma* (mī-kō-PLAZ-mah) and related organisms (see Figure 11.24). Mycoplasmas are the smallest known bacteria that can grow and reproduce outside living host cells. Because of their size and because they have no cell walls, they pass through most bacterial filters and were first mistaken for viruses. Their plasma membranes are unique among bacteria in having lipids called *sterols*, which are thought to help protect them from lysis (rupture).

Archaea

Archaea may lack walls or may have unusual walls composed of polysaccharides and proteins but not peptidoglycan. These walls do, however, contain a substance similar to peptidoglycan called *pseudomurein*. Pseudomurein contains *N*-acetyltalosaminuronic acid instead of NAM and lacks the D-amino acids found in bacterial cell walls. Archaea generally cannot be Gram-stained but appear gram-negative because they do not contain peptidoglycan.

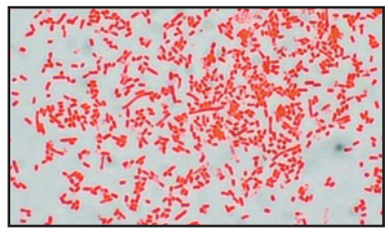
Bacteria with an Acid-Fast Cell Wall

Recall from Chapter 3 that the acid-fast stain is used to identify all bacteria of the genus *Mycobacterium* and pathogenic species of *Nocardia*. These bacteria contain high concentrations (60%) of a hydrophobic waxy lipid (**mycolic acid**) in their cell wall that prevents the uptake of dyes, including those used in the Gram stain. The mycolic acid forms a layer outside of a thin layer of peptidoglycan (Figure 4.13d). The mycolic acid and peptidoglycan are held together by a polysaccharide, arabinogalactan. The hydrophobic waxy cell wall causes broth cultures of *Mycobacterium* to clump and stick to the walls of the flask. Acid-fast bacteria can be stained with carbolfuchsin, which penetrates bacteria more effectively when heated. The carbolfuchsin penetrates the cell wall, binds to the cytoplasm, and resists removal by washing with acid-alcohol. Acid-fast bacteria retain the red color of carbolfuchsin because it's more soluble in the cell wall's mycolic acid than in the acid-alcohol. If the mycolic acid layer is removed from the cell wall of acid-fast bacteria, they will stain gram-positive with the Gram stain.

Damage to the Cell Wall

Chemicals that damage bacterial cell walls, or interfere with their synthesis, often do not harm the cells of an animal host because the bacterial cell wall is made of chemicals unlike those in eukaryotic cells. Thus, cell wall synthesis is the target

TABLE 4.1 Some Comparative Characteristics of Gram-Positive and Gram-Negative Bacteria

Characteristic	Gram-Positive	Gram-Negative
	LM 12 μm	 LM 15 μm
Gram Reaction	Retain crystal violet dye and stain blue or purple	Can be decolorized with alcohol-acetone; appear red or pink after counterstain (safranin)
Peptidoglycan Layer	Thick (multilayered)	Thin (single-layered)
Teichoic Acids	Present in many	Absent
Periplasmic Space	Granular layer	Periplasm
Outer Membrane	Absent	Present
Lipopolysaccharide (LPS) Content	Virtually none	High
Lipid and Lipoprotein Content	Low (acid-fast bacteria have lipids linked to peptidoglycan)	High (because of presence of outer membrane)
Flagellar Structure	2 rings in basal body	4 rings in basal body
Toxins Produced	Exotoxins	Endotoxin and exotoxins
Resistance to Physical Disruption	High	Low
Cell Wall Disruption by Lysozyme	High	Low (requires pretreatment to destabilize outer membrane)
Susceptibility to Penicillin and Sulfonamide	High	Low
Susceptibility to Streptomycin, Chloramphenicol, and Tetracycline	Low	High
Inhibition by Basic Dyes	High	Low
Susceptibility to Anionic Detergents	High	Low
Resistance to Sodium Azide (a preservative in aqueous laboratory reagents)	High	Low
Resistance to Drying	High	Low

for some antimicrobial drugs. One way the cell wall can be damaged is by exposure to the digestive enzyme *lysozyme*. This enzyme occurs naturally in some eukaryotic cells and is a constituent of perspiration, tears, mucus, and saliva. Lysozyme is particularly active on the major cell wall components of most gram-positive bacteria, making them vulnerable to lysis. Lysozyme catalyzes hydrolysis of the bonds between the sugars in the repeating disaccharide "backbone" of peptidoglycan. This act is analogous to cutting the steel supports of a bridge with a cutting torch: the gram-positive cell wall is almost completely destroyed by lysozyme. The cellular contents that remain surrounded by the plasma membrane may remain intact if lysis does not occur; this wall-less cell is termed a **protoplast**. Typically, a protoplast is spherical and is still capable of carrying on metabolism.

Some members of the genus *Proteus*, as well as other genera, can lose their cell walls and swell into irregularly shaped cells called **L forms**, named for the Lister Institute, where they were discovered. They may form spontaneously or develop in response to penicillin (which inhibits cell wall formation) or lysozyme (which removes the cell wall). L forms can live and divide repeatedly or return to the walled state.

When lysozyme is applied to gram-negative cells, usually the wall is not destroyed to the same extent as in gram-positive cells; some of the outer membrane also remains. In this case, the cellular contents, plasma membrane, and remaining outer wall layer are called a **spheroplast**, also a spherical structure. For lysozyme to exert its effect on gram-negative cells, the cells must first be treated with EDTA (ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid). EDTA weakens ionic bonds in the outer membrane and thereby damages it, giving the lysozyme access to the peptidoglycan layer.

Protoplasts, spheroplasts, and L forms burst in pure water or very dilute salt or sugar solutions because the water molecules from the surrounding fluid rapidly move into and enlarge the cell, which has a much lower internal concentration of water. This rupturing, called **osmotic lysis**, will be discussed in detail shortly.

CLINICAL CASE

The outer membrane of *K. pneumoniae*'s gram-negative cell wall contains the endotoxin lipid A, which causes fever and capillary dilation.

Irene works with Joe's, Jessie's, and Maureen's physicians to combat this potentially deadly infection. Irene is particularly concerned about Jessie because of her already weakened respiratory condition. All three patients are treated with a β-lactam antibiotic, imipenem. *Klebsiella* bacteria are resistant to many antibiotics, but imipenem seems to be working for Joe and Maureen. Jessie, however, is getting worse.

Why are Jessie's symptoms worsening if the bacteria are being killed?

Part 1 | Part 2 | **Part 3** | Part 4 | Part 5

As noted earlier, certain antibiotics, such as penicillin, destroy bacteria by interfering with the formation of the peptide cross-bridges of peptidoglycan, thus preventing the formation of a functional cell wall. Most gram-negative bacteria are not as susceptible to penicillin as gram-positive bacteria are because the outer membrane of gram-negative bacteria forms a barrier that inhibits the entry of this and other substances, and gram-negative bacteria have fewer peptide cross-bridges. However, gram-negative bacteria are quite susceptible to some β-lactam antibiotics that penetrate the outer membrane better than penicillin. Antibiotics will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 20.

Outer membrane vesicles (OMVs) are formed from the outer membrane of gram-negative bacteria. OMVs contain enzymes that can hydrolyze large molecules such as proteins that can't enter the cells. **Extracellular vesicles (EVs)** made from the plasma membrane have also been seen in gram-positive bacteria. Several enzymes have been found in these vesicles, including enzymes that digest β-lactam antibiotics. The mechanism by which EVs pass through the cell wall is not known.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **4-5** Why are drugs that target cell wall synthesis useful?
- **4-6** Why are mycoplasmas resistant to antibiotics that interfere with cell wall synthesis?
- **4-7** How do protoplasts differ from L forms?

Structures Internal to the Cell Wall

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **4-8** Describe the structure, chemistry, and functions of the prokaryotic plasma membrane.
- **4-9** Define *simple diffusion*, *facilitated diffusion*, *osmosis*, *active transport*, and *group translocation*.
- **4-10** Identify the functions of the nucleoid and ribosomes.
- **4-11** Identify the functions of four inclusions.
- **4-12** Describe the functions of endospores, sporulation, and endospore germination.

Thus far, we have discussed the prokaryotic cell wall and structures external to it. We will now look inside the prokaryotic cell and discuss the structures and functions of the plasma membrane and components within the cytoplasm of the cell.

The Plasma (Cytoplasmic) Membrane

The **plasma (cytoplasmic) membrane** (or *inner membrane*) is a thin structure lying inside the cell wall and enclosing the cytoplasm of the cell (see Figure 4.6). The plasma membrane of prokaryotes consists primarily of phospholipids (see Figure 2.10), which are the most abundant chemicals in the membrane, and proteins. Eukaryotic plasma membranes also contain carbohydrates and sterols, such as cholesterol. Because they lack sterols, prokaryotic plasma membranes are less rigid than eukaryotic membranes. One exception is the wall-less prokaryote *Mycoplasma* bacteria, which contain membrane sterols.

Structure

Prokaryotic and eukaryotic plasma membranes (and the outer membranes of gram-negative bacteria) are two-layered structures (**Figure 4.14a**). The phospholipid molecules are arranged in two parallel rows, called a *lipid bilayer* (Figure 4.14b). Each phospholipid molecule (see Chapter 2) contains a polar head, composed of a phosphate group and glycerol that is hydrophilic (water-loving) and soluble in water, and nonpolar tails, composed of fatty acids that are hydrophobic (water-fearing) and insoluble in water (Figure 4.14c). The polar heads are on the two surfaces of the lipid bilayer, and the nonpolar tails are in the interior of the bilayer.

The protein molecules in the membrane can be arranged in a variety of ways. Some, called *peripheral proteins*, lie at the inner or outer surface of the membrane and are easily removed from the membrane by mild treatments. They may function as enzymes that catalyze chemical reactions, as a "scaffold" for support, and as mediators of changes in membrane shape during movement. Other proteins, called *integral proteins*, can be removed from the membrane only after disrupting the lipid bilayer (by using detergents, for example). Most integral proteins penetrate the membrane completely and are called *transmembrane proteins*. Some integral proteins are channels that have a pore, or hole, through which substances enter and exit the cell.

Many of the proteins and some of the lipids on the outer surface of the plasma membrane have carbohydrates attached to them. Proteins attached to carbohydrates are called **glycoproteins**, and lipids attached to carbohydrates are called **glycolipids**. Both glycoproteins and glycolipids help protect and lubricate the cell and are involved in cell-to-cell interactions. For example, glycoproteins play a role in certain infectious diseases. The influenza virus and the toxins that cause cholera

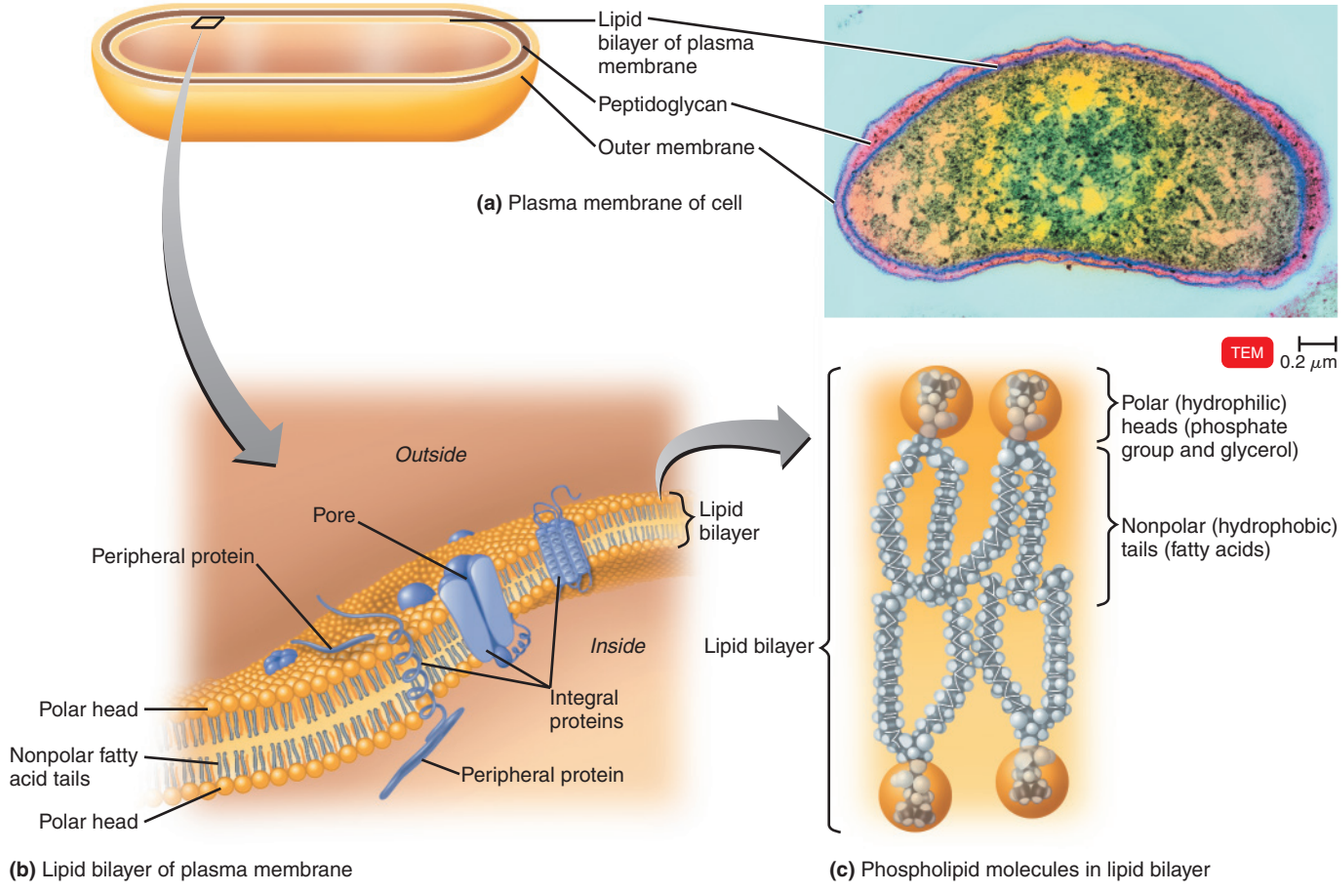


Figure 4.14 Plasma membrane. **(a)** A diagram and micrograph showing the lipid bilayer forming the inner plasma membrane of the gram-negative bacterium *V. cholerae*. Layers of the cell wall, including the outer membrane, can be seen outside the inner membrane. **(b)** A portion of the inner membrane showing the lipid bilayer and proteins. The outer membrane of gram-negative bacteria is also a lipid bilayer. **(c)** Space-filling models of several phospholipid molecules as they are arranged in the lipid bilayer.

Q **What is the difference between a peripheral and an integral protein?**

and botulism enter their target eukaryotic cells by first binding to glycoproteins on their plasma membranes.

Studies have demonstrated that the phospholipid and protein molecules in plasma membranes are not static but move quite freely within the membrane surface. This movement is most probably associated with the many functions performed by the plasma membrane. Because the fatty acid tails cling together, phospholipids in the presence of water form a self-sealing bilayer; as a result, breaks and tears in the membrane heal themselves. The membrane must be about as viscous as olive oil, which allows membrane proteins to move freely enough to perform their functions without destroying the structure of the membrane. This dynamic arrangement of phospholipids and proteins is referred to as the **fluid mosaic model**.

Functions

The most important function of the plasma membrane is to serve as a selective barrier through which materials enter and exit the cell. In this function, plasma membranes have **selective permeability** (sometimes called *semipermeability*). This term indicates that certain molecules and ions are allowed to pass through the membrane but others are stopped. The permeability of the membrane depends on several factors. Large molecules (such as proteins) cannot pass through the plasma membrane, possibly because these molecules are larger than the pores in integral proteins that function as channels. But smaller molecules (such as water, oxygen, carbon dioxide, and some simple sugars) usually pass through easily. Ions penetrate the membrane very slowly. Substances that dissolve easily in lipids (such as oxygen, carbon dioxide, and nonpolar organic molecules) enter and exit more easily than other substances because the membrane consists mostly of phospholipids. The movement of materials across plasma membranes also depends on transporter molecules, which will be described shortly.

Plasma membranes are also important to the breakdown of nutrients and the production of energy. The plasma membranes of bacteria contain enzymes capable of catalyzing the chemical reactions that break down nutrients and produce ATP. In some bacteria, pigments and enzymes involved in photosynthesis are found in infoldings of the plasma membrane that extend

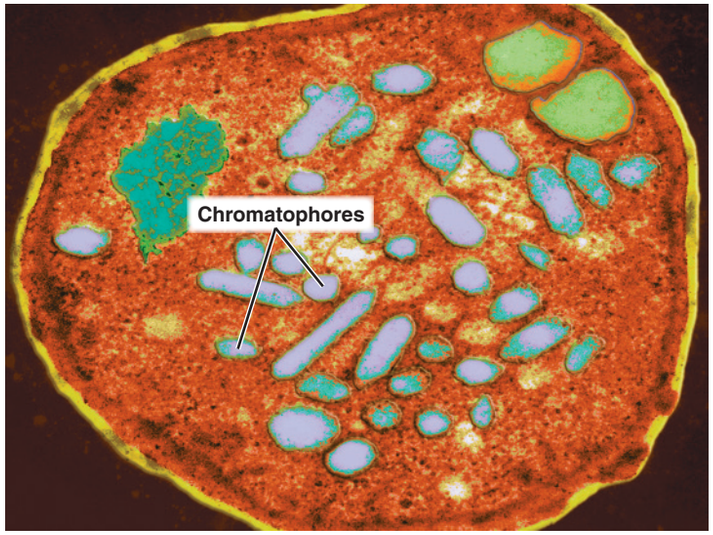


Figure 4.15 Chromatophores. In this micrograph of a purple sulfur bacterium, the chromatophores are clearly visible.

Q What is the function of chromatophores?

into the cytoplasm. These membranous structures are called **chromatophores** (Figure 4.15). In contrast, the photosynthetic thylakoid membranes of cyanobacteria may be completely separate from the plasma membrane as are true organelles. These thylakoid membranes resemble the membranes in chloroplasts (as discussed with eukaryotic cells).

When viewed with an electron microscope, bacterial plasma membranes often appear to contain one or more large, irregular folds called **mesosomes**. Many functions have been proposed for mesosomes. New electron microscope techniques suggest that mesosomes form when the plasma membrane is damaged. Damage can result from the microscope-preparation or antibiotics.

Destruction of the Plasma Membrane by Antimicrobial Agents

Because the plasma membrane is vital to the bacterial cell, it is not surprising that several antimicrobial agents exert their effects at this site. In addition to the chemicals that damage the cell wall and thereby indirectly expose the membrane to injury, many compounds specifically damage plasma membranes. These compounds include certain alcohols and quaternary ammonium compounds (see Chapter 7), which are used as disinfectants. By disrupting the membrane's phospholipids, a group of antibiotics known as the *polymyxins* cause leakage of intracellular contents and subsequent cell death. This mechanism will be discussed in Chapter 20.

The Movement of Materials across Membranes

Materials move across plasma membranes of both prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells by two kinds of processes: passive and active. In *passive processes*, substances cross the membrane from an area of high concentration to an area of low concentration (move with the concentration gradient, or difference), without any expenditure of energy by the cell. In *active processes*, the cell must use energy to move substances from areas of low concentration to areas of high concentration (against the concentration gradient).

Passive Processes

Passive processes include simple diffusion, facilitated diffusion, and osmosis.

Simple diffusion is the net (overall) movement of molecules or ions from an area of high concentration to an area of low concentration (Figure 4.16 and Figure 4.17a). The movement continues until the molecules or ions are evenly distributed. The point of even distribution is called *equilibrium*. Cells rely on simple diffusion to transport certain small molecules, such as oxygen and carbon dioxide, across their cell membranes.

In **facilitated diffusion**, integral membrane proteins function as channels or carriers that facilitate the movement of ions or large molecules across the plasma membrane. Such integral proteins are called *transporter proteins* or *permeases*. Facilitated diffusion is similar to simple diffusion in that the cell *does not* expend energy, because the substance moves from a high to a low concentration. The process differs from simple diffusion in its use of transporters. Some transporters permit the passage of mostly small, inorganic ions that are too hydrophilic to penetrate the nonpolar interior of the lipid bilayer (Figure 4.17b). These transporters, which are common in prokaryotes, are nonspecific and allow a wide variety of ions or small molecules to pass through channels in integrated membrane proteins. Other

(a) (b)

Figure 4.16 The principle of simple diffusion. **(a)** After a dye pellet is put into a beaker of water, the molecules of dye in the pellet diffuse into the water from an area of high dye concentration to areas of low dye concentration. **(b)** The dye potassium permanganate in the process of diffusing.

Q Why are passive processes important to a cell?

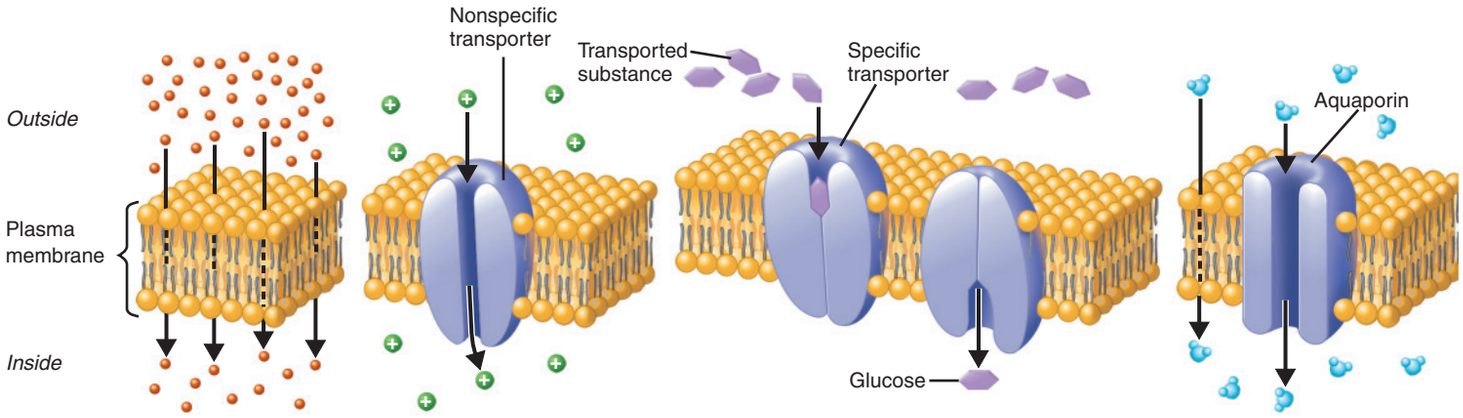


Figure 4.17 Passive processes.

Q How does simple diffusion differ from facilitated diffusion?

transporters, which are common in eukaryotes, are specific and transport only specific, usually larger, molecules, such as simple sugars (glucose, fructose, and galactose) and vitamins. In this process, the transported substance binds to a specific transporter (integrated membrane protein) on the outer surface of the plasma membrane, which undergoes a change of shape; then the transporter releases the substance on the other side of the membrane (Figure 4.17c).

In some cases, molecules that bacteria need are too large to be transported into the cells by these methods. Most bacteria, however, produce enzymes that can break down large molecules into simpler ones (such as proteins into amino acids, or polysaccharides into simple sugars). Such enzymes, which are released by the bacteria into the surrounding medium, are appropriately called *extracellular enzymes*. Once the enzymes degrade the large molecules, the subunits move into the cell with the help of transporters. For example, specific carriers retrieve DNA bases, such as the purine guanine, from extracellular media (substances outside the cell) and bring them into the cell's cytoplasm.

Osmosis is the net movement of water molecules across a selectively permeable membrane from an area with a high concentration of water molecules (low concentration of solute molecules) to an area of low concentration of water molecules (high concentration of solute molecules). Water molecules may pass through plasma membranes by moving through the lipid bilayer by simple diffusion or through integral membrane proteins, called *aquaporins*, that function as water channels (Figure 4.17d).

Osmosis may be demonstrated with the apparatus shown in Figure 4.18a. A sack constructed from cellophane, which is a selectively permeable membrane, is filled with a solution of 20% sucrose (table sugar). The cellophane sack is placed into a beaker containing distilled water. Initially, the concentrations of water on either side of the membrane are different. Because of the sucrose molecules, the concentration of water is lower inside the cellophane sack. Therefore, water moves from the beaker (where its concentration is higher) into the cellophane sack (where its concentration is lower).

Sugar does not move out of the cellophane sack into the beaker, however, because the cellophane is impermeable to molecules of sugar—the sugar molecules are too large to go through the pores of the membrane. As water moves into the cellophane sack, the sugar solution becomes increasingly dilute, and, because the cellophane sack has expanded to its limit as a result of an increased volume of water, water begins to move up the glass tube. In time, the water that has accumulated in the cellophane sack and the glass tube exerts a downward pressure that forces water molecules out of the cellophane sack and back into the beaker. This movement of water through a selectively permeable membrane produces osmotic pressure. **Osmotic pressure** is the pressure required to prevent the movement of pure water (water with no solutes) into a solution containing some solutes. In other words, osmotic pressure is the pressure needed to stop the flow of water across the selectively permeable membrane (cellophane). When water molecules leave and enter the cellophane sack at the same rate, equilibrium is reached (Figure 4.18b).

A bacterial cell may be subjected to any of three kinds of osmotic solutions: isotonic, hypotonic, or hypertonic. An **isotonic solution** is a medium in which the overall concentration of solutes equals that found inside a cell (*iso* means equal). Water leaves and enters the cell at the same rate (no net change); the cell's contents are in equilibrium with the solution outside the cytoplasmic membrane (Figure 4.18c).

Earlier we mentioned that lysozyme and certain antibiotics (such as penicillin) damage bacterial cell walls, causing the cells to rupture, or lyse. Such rupturing occurs because bacterial cytoplasm usually contains such a high concentration of solutes

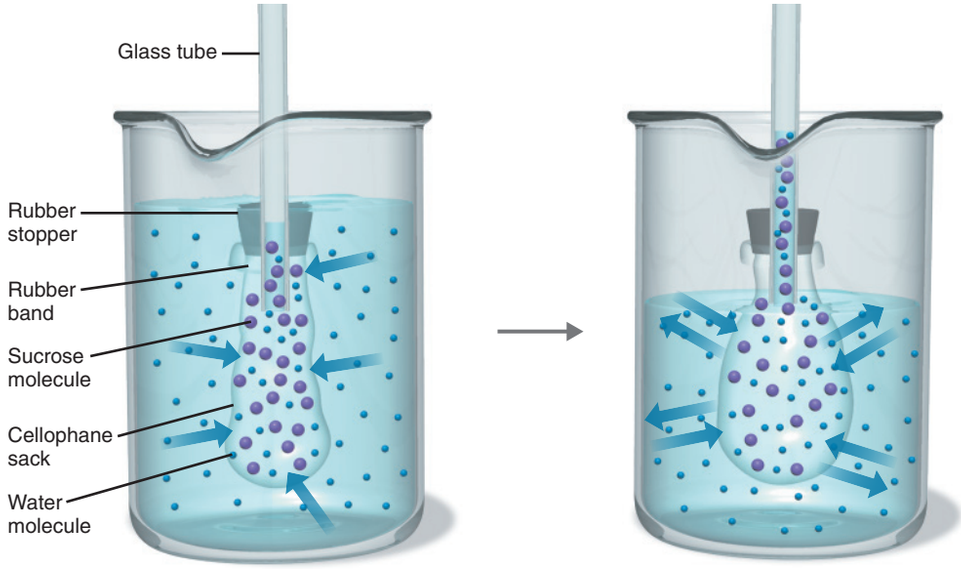
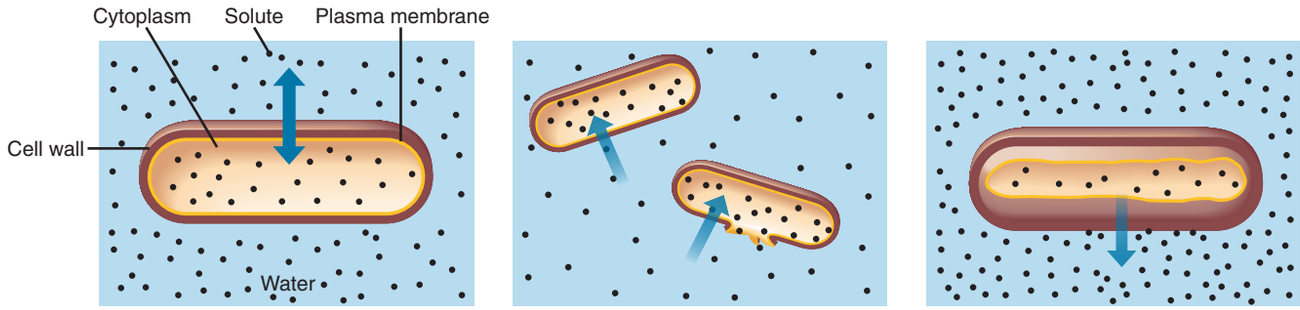


Figure 4.18 The principle of osmosis. **(a)** Setup at the beginning of an osmotic pressure experiment. Water molecules start to move from the beaker into the sack along the concentration gradient. **(b)** Setup at equilibrium. The osmotic pressure exerted by the solution in the sack pushes water molecules from the sack back into the beaker to balance the rate of water entry into the sack. The height of the solution in the glass tube at equilibrium is a measure of the osmotic pressure. **(c)–(e)** The effects of various solutions on bacterial cells.

Q Why is osmosis important?



(c) Isotonic solution. No net movement of water occurs.

(d) Hypotonic solution. Water moves into the cell. If the cell wall is strong, it contains the swelling. If the cell wall is weak or damaged, the cell bursts (osmotic lysis).

(e) Hypertonic solution. Water moves out of the cell, causing its cytoplasm to shrink (plasmolysis).

that additional water enters the cell by osmosis. The damaged (or removed) cell wall cannot constrain the swelling of the cytoplasmic membrane, and the membrane bursts. This is an example of osmotic lysis caused by immersion in a hypotonic solution. A **hypotonic solution** outside the cell is a medium whose concentration of solutes is lower than that inside the cell (*hypo* means under or less). Most bacteria live in hypotonic solutions, and the cell wall protects the cell from lysis. Cells with weak cell walls, such as gram-negative bacteria, may burst or undergo osmotic lysis as a result of excessive water intake (Figure 4.18d).

A **hypertonic solution** is a medium having a higher concentration of solutes than that inside the cell (*hyper* means above or more). Most bacterial cells placed in a hypertonic solution shrink and collapse or *plasmolyze* because water leaves the cells by osmosis (Figure 4.18e). Keep in mind that the terms *isotonic*, *hypotonic*, and *hypertonic* describe the concentration of solutions outside the cell *relative to* the concentration inside the cell.

Active Processes

Simple diffusion and facilitated diffusion are useful mechanisms for transporting substances into cells when the concentrations of the substances are greater outside the cell. However, when a bacterial cell is in an environment in which nutrients are in low concentration, the cell must use active processes, such as active transport and group translocation, to accumulate the needed substances.

In performing **active transport**, the cell *uses energy* in the form of ATP to move substances across the plasma membrane. Among the substances actively transported are ions (for example, Na^+, K^+, H^+, Ca^{2+}, and Cl^-), amino acids, and simple sugars. Although these substances can also be moved into cells by passive processes, their movement by active processes can go against the concentration gradient, allowing a cell to accumulate needed materials. The movement of a substance in active transport is usually from outside to inside, even though the concentration might be much higher inside the cell. Like facilitated diffusion,

active transport depends on transporter proteins in the plasma membrane (see Figure 4.17b, c). There appears to be a different transporter for each substance or group of closely related substances. Active transport enables microbes to move substances across the plasma membrane at a constant rate, even if they are in short supply.

In active transport, the substance that crosses the plasma membrane is not altered by transport across the membrane. In **group translocation**, a special form of active transport that occurs exclusively in prokaryotes, the substance is chemically altered during transport across the membrane. Once the substance is altered and inside the cell, the plasma membrane is impermeable to it, so it remains inside the cell. This important mechanism enables a cell to accumulate various substances even though they may be in low concentrations outside the cell. Group translocation requires energy supplied by high-energy phosphate compounds, such as phosphoenolpyruvic acid (PEP).

One example of group translocation is the transport of the sugar glucose, which is often used in growth media for bacteria. While a specific carrier protein is transporting the glucose molecule across the membrane, a phosphate group is added to the sugar. This phosphorylated form of glucose, which cannot be transported out, can then be used in the cell's metabolic pathways.

Some eukaryotic cells (those without cell walls) can use three additional active transport processes called phagocytosis, pinocytosis, and receptor-mediated endocytosis. These processes, which do not occur in bacteria, are explained later in this chapter.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **4-8** Which agents can cause injury to the bacterial plasma membrane?
- **4-9** How are simple diffusion and facilitated diffusion similar? How are they different?

Cytoplasm

For a prokaryotic cell, the term **cytoplasm** refers to the substance of the cell inside the plasma membrane (see Figure 4.6). Cytoplasm is about 80% water and contains primarily proteins (enzymes), carbohydrates, lipids, inorganic ions, and many low-molecular-mass compounds. Inorganic ions are present in much higher concentrations in cytoplasm than in most media. Cytoplasm is thick, aqueous, semitransparent, and elastic. The major structures in the cytoplasm of prokaryotes are a nucleoid (containing DNA), particles called ribosomes, and reserve deposits called inclusions.

The term **cytoskeleton** is a collective term for a series of fibers (small rods and cylinders) in the cytoplasm. Not long ago, it was believed that the absence of a cytoskeleton was a distinguishing feature of prokaryotes. However, use of atomic force microscopy shows that prokaryotic cells have a cytoskeleton similar to that of eukaryotes. Components include MreB and ParM, cresetin, and FtsZ, which correspond to the microfilaments, intermediate filaments, and microtubules of the eukaryotic cytoskeleton, respectively. The prokaryotic cytoskeleton assumes roles in cell division, maintaining cell shape, growth, DNA movement, and alignment of inclusions. The cytoplasm of prokaryotes is not capable of cytoplasmic streaming, which will be described later.

The Nucleoid

The **nucleoid** of a bacterial cell (see Figure 4.6) usually contains a single long, continuous, and frequently circularly arranged thread of double-stranded DNA called the **bacterial chromosome**. This is the cell's genetic information, which carries all the information required for the cell's structures and functions. Unlike the chromosomes of eukaryotic cells, bacterial chromosomes are not surrounded by a nuclear envelope (membrane) and do not include histones. The nucleoid can be spherical, elongated, or dumbbell-shaped. In actively growing bacteria, as much as 20% of the cell volume is occupied by DNA because such cells presynthesize DNA for future cells. The chromosome is attached to the plasma membrane. Proteins in the plasma membrane are believed to be responsible for replication of the DNA and segregation of the new chromosomes to offspring cells during cell division.

In addition to the bacterial chromosome, bacteria often contain small, usually circular, double-stranded DNA molecules called **plasmids** (see Figure 8.25). These molecules are extrachromosomal genetic elements; that is, they are not connected to the main bacterial chromosome, and they replicate independently of chromosomal DNA. Research indicates that plasmids are associated with plasma membrane proteins. Plasmids usually contain from 5 to 100 genes that are generally not crucial for the survival of the bacterium under normal environmental conditions; plasmids may be gained or lost without harming the cell. Under certain conditions, however, plasmids are an advantage to cells. Plasmids may carry genes for such activities as antibiotic resistance, tolerance to toxic metals, the production of toxins, and the synthesis of enzymes. Plasmids can be transferred from one bacterium to another. In fact, plasmid DNA is used for gene manipulation in biotechnology.

Ribosomes

All eukaryotic and prokaryotic cells contain **ribosomes**, where protein synthesis takes place. Cells that have high rates of protein synthesis, such as those that are actively growing, have a large number of ribosomes. The cytoplasm of a prokaryotic cell contains tens of thousands of ribosomes, giving the cytoplasm a granular appearance (see Figure 4.6).

Ribosomes are composed of two subunits, each of which consists of protein and a type of RNA called *ribosomal RNA (rRNA)*. Prokaryotic ribosomes differ from eukaryotic ribosomes in the number of proteins and rRNA molecules they contain; they are also somewhat smaller and less dense than ribosomes of eukaryotic cells. Accordingly, prokaryotic ribosomes are

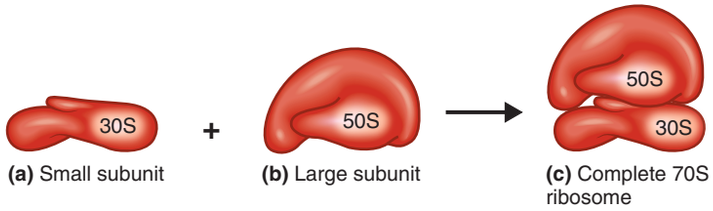


Figure 4.19 The prokaryotic ribosome. **(a)** A small 30S subunit and **(b)** a large 50S subunit make up **(c)** the complete 70S prokaryotic ribosome.

Q What is the importance of the differences between prokaryotic and eukaryotic ribosomes with regard to antibiotic therapy?

called 70S ribosomes (Figure 4.19), and those of eukaryotic cells are known as 80S ribosomes. The letter S refers to Svedberg units, which indicate the relative rate of sedimentation during ultra-high-speed centrifugation. Sedimentation rate is a function of the size, weight, and shape of a particle. The subunits of a 70S ribosome are a small 30S subunit containing one molecule of rRNA and a larger 50S subunit containing two molecules of rRNA. (Note that the 70S "value" is not the sum of 30S plus 50S. The apparent arithmetic error here has often puzzled students. However, you can think of a Svedberg unit as a unit of size rather than weight. Therefore, the combination here of 50S and 30S is not the same as combining 50 grams and 30 grams.)

Several antibiotics work by inhibiting protein synthesis at prokaryotic ribosomes. Antibiotics such as streptomycin and gentamicin attach to the 30S subunit and interfere with protein synthesis. Other antibiotics, such as erythromycin and chloramphenicol, interfere with protein synthesis by attaching to the 50S subunit. Because of differences in prokaryotic and eukaryotic ribosomes, the microbial cell can be killed by the antibiotic while the eukaryotic host cell remains unaffected.

Inclusions

Within the cytoplasm of prokaryotic cells are several kinds of reserve deposits, known as **inclusions**. Cells may accumulate certain nutrients when they are plentiful and use them when the environment is deficient. Evidence suggests that macromolecules concentrated in inclusions avoid the increase in osmotic pressure that would result if the molecules were dispersed in the cytoplasm. Some inclusions are common to a wide variety of bacteria, whereas others are limited to a small number of species and therefore serve as a basis for identification. Some inclusions, such as magnetosomes, are enclosed by a membrane derived from the plasma membrane, while other inclusions, such as carboxysomes, are enclosed in protein complexes.

Metachromatic Granules

Metachromatic granules are large inclusions that take their name from the fact that they sometimes stain red with certain blue dyes such as methylene blue. Collectively they are known as **volutin**. Volutin represents a reserve of inorganic phosphate (polyphosphate) that can be used in the synthesis of ATP. It is generally formed by cells that grow in phosphate-rich environments. Metachromatic granules are found in algae, fungi, and protozoa, as well as in bacteria. These granules are characteristic of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, the causative agent of diphtheria; thus, they have diagnostic significance.

Polysaccharide Granules

Inclusions known as **polysaccharide granules** typically consist of glycogen and starch, and their presence can be demonstrated when iodine is applied to the cells. In the presence of iodine, glycogen granules appear reddish brown and starch granules appear blue.

Lipid Inclusions

Lipid inclusions appear in various species of *Mycobacterium*, *Bacillus*, *Azotobacter* (ah-ZŌ-tō-bak-ter), *Spirillum* (spī-RIL-lum), and other genera. A common lipid-storage material, one unique to bacteria, is the polymer *poly-β-hydroxybutyric acid*. Lipid inclusions are revealed by staining cells with fat-soluble dyes, such as Sudan dyes.

Sulfur Granules

Certain bacteria—for example, the "sulfur bacteria" that belong to the genus *Acidithiobacillus*—derive energy by oxidizing sulfur and sulfur-containing compounds. These bacteria may deposit **sulfur granules** in the cell, where they serve as an energy reserve.

CLINICAL CASE

The antibiotic killed the bacteria, but endotoxin is released when the cells die, causing Jessie's condition to worsen. Jessie's physician prescribes polymyxin, an antibiotic that does not cause release of endotoxin, and to which Jessie responds favorably.

As Irene sits with Jessie, she notices another patient being fed ice chips by a relative. On a hunch, Irene hurries back to her office to find out whether the ice machines had been swabbed. They have not. She immediately orders the machines to be swabbed and cultured. Her hunch turns out to be correct: the samples are positive for *K. pneumoniae*. Bacteria growing in the hospital's water pipes entered the ice machine with incoming water.

How can *K. pneumoniae* grow in water pipes?

Part 1 | Part 2 | Part 3 | **Part 4** | Part 5

Carboxysomes

Carboxysomes are intracellular structures that consist of a shell of thousands of protein subunits enclosing enzymes involved in carbon dioxide fixation—the process of making sugars using carbon dioxide. This arrangement permits the sequestering of metabolic pathways within bacterial cells and prevents the escape of toxic or volatile intermediates into the cytoplasm.

Among the bacteria containing carboxysomes are cyanobacteria, nitrifying bacteria, and acidithiobacilli. Even though cyanobacteria comprise only about 0.2% of the photosynthetic biomass, they perform about 35% of global carbon dioxide fixation.

Gas Vacuoles

Gas vacuoles are air-filled cavities that consist of rows of several individual *gas vesicles*, which are hollow cylinders covered by protein. They provide buoyancy so that cells can remain at the depth in the water appropriate for them to receive sufficient amounts of oxygen, light, and nutrients. The bacteria descend by collapsing the gas vesicles and ascend when gas vesicles inflate. Bacteria that have gas vacuoles include cyanobacteria, anoxygenic photosynthetic bacteria (which do not produce oxygen during photosynthesis), and halobacteria (which can survive in salt concentrations of more than 25%). Gas vacuoles help photosynthetic bacteria to obtain optimal light and oxygen by bringing them closer to the surface and help halobacteria float in saltwater. The most dramatic evidence of flotation due to gas vacuoles is seen in cyanobacteria that form massive accumulations (blooms) in lakes.

Magnetosomes

Magnetosomes consist of magnetic crystals of magnetite or iron oxide (Fe_3O_4) surrounded by a phospholipid bilayer formed by invaginations of the plasma membrane. They range in shape from square to rectangular to spike-shaped. Arranged in a chain, magnetosomes act like magnets and cause bacteria that contain them to passively align and swim along the Earth's magnetic field lines like miniature motile compass needles (Figure 4.20). It is presumed that magnetosomes may help bacteria move downward to locate and maintain a suitable attachment site for growth and survival. In vitro, magnetosomes can decompose hydrogen peroxide, which forms in cells in the presence of oxygen. Researchers speculate that magnetosomes may protect the cell from hydrogen peroxide accumulation. Magnetosomes display a number of potential applications for targeted cancer therapies, such as localized drug delivery, magnetic hyperthermia, and tumor monitoring. Several gram-negative bacteria, such as *Magnetospirillum magnetotacticum* (Figure 4.20) produce magnetosomes.

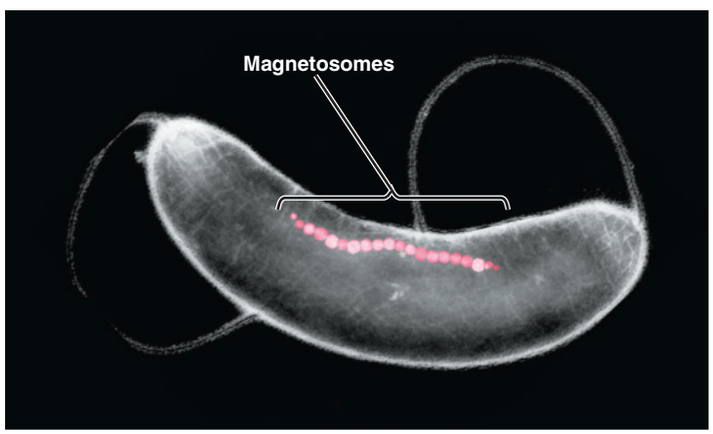


Figure 4.20 Magnetosomes. This micrograph of *M. magnetotacticum* shows a chain of magnetosomes. This bacterium is usually found in shallow freshwater mud.

Q How do magnetosomes behave like magnets?

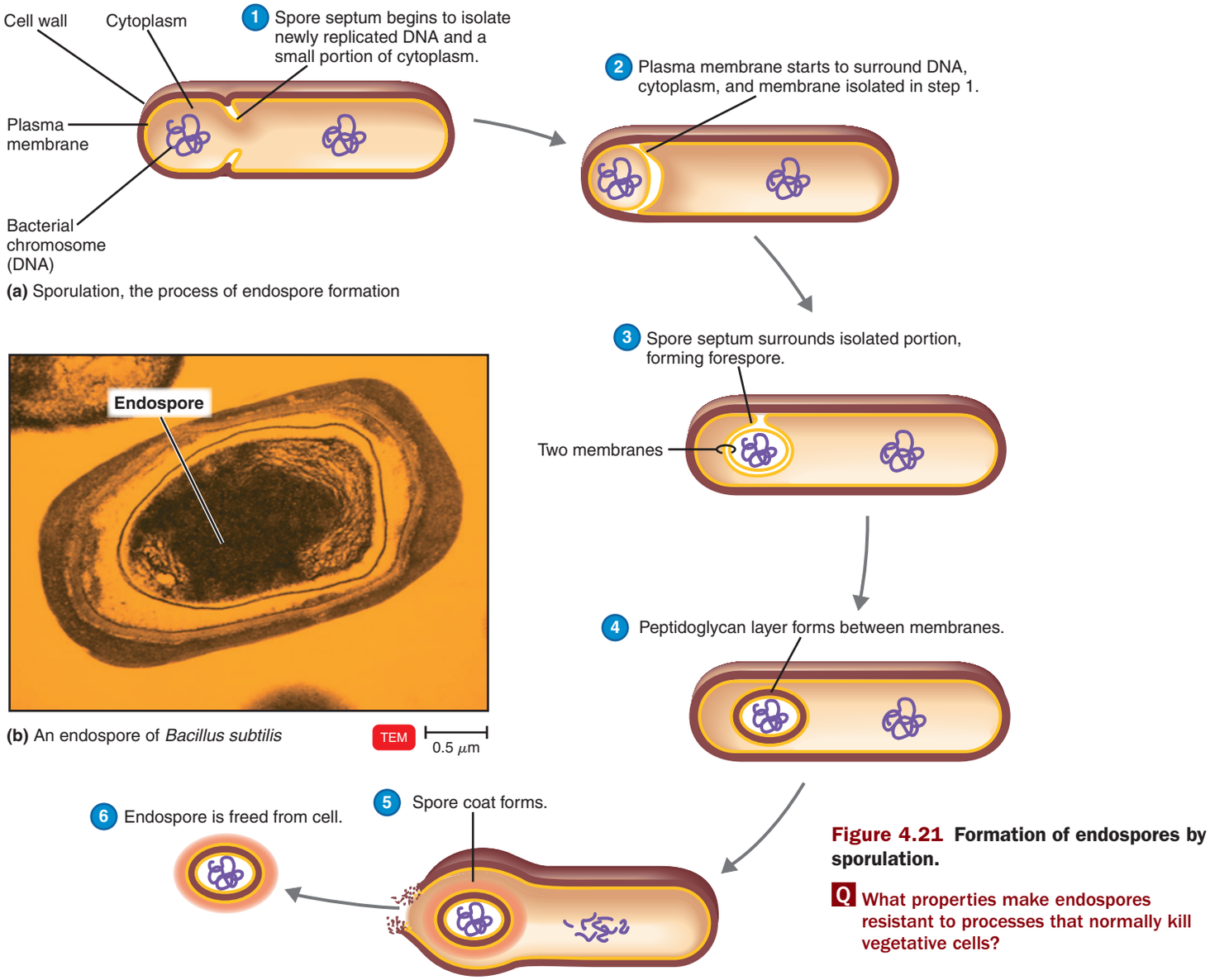
Endospores

When essential nutrients are depleted, certain gram-positive bacteria, such as those of the genera *Clostridium* and *Bacillus*, form specialized "resting" cells called **endospores** (Figure 4.21). As you will see later, some members of the genus *Clostridium* cause diseases such as gangrene, tetanus, botulism, and food poisoning. Some members of the genus *Bacillus* cause anthrax and food poisoning. Unique to bacteria, endospores are highly durable dehydrated cells with thick walls and additional layers. They are formed internal to the bacterial cell membrane.

When released into the environment, they can survive extreme heat, lack of water, and exposure to many toxic chemicals and radiation. For example, 7500-year-old endospores of *Thermoactinomyces vulgaris* (ther′mō-ak-tin-ō-MĪ-sēz vul-GAR-is) from the freezing muds of Elk Lake in Minnesota have germinated when rewarmed and placed in a nutrient medium, and 25- to 40-million-year-old endospores found in the gut of a stingless bee entombed in amber (hardened tree resin) in the Dominican Republic are reported to have germinated when placed in nutrient media. Although true endospores are found in gram-positive bacteria, one gram-negative species, *Coxiella burnetii* (KOKS-ē-el-lah ber-NE-tē-ē), the cause of Q fever (usually a mild disease with flulike symptoms), forms endospore-like structures that resist heat and chemicals and can be stained with endospore stains (see Figure 24.13).

The process of endospore formation within a vegetative cell takes several hours and is known as **sporulation** or **sporogenesis** (Figure 4.21a). Vegetative cells of endospore-forming bacteria begin sporulation when a key nutrient, such as the carbon or nitrogen source, becomes scarce or unavailable. In the first observable stage of sporulation, a newly replicated bacterial chromosome and a small portion of cytoplasm are isolated by an ingrowth of the plasma membrane called a *spore septum*. The spore septum becomes a double-layered membrane that surrounds the chromosome and cytoplasm. This structure, entirely enclosed within the original cell, is called a *forespore*. Thick layers of peptidoglycan are laid down between the two membrane layers. Then a thick *spore coat* of protein forms around the outside membrane; this coat is responsible for the resistance of endospores to many harsh chemicals. The original cell is degraded, and the endospore is released.

The diameter of the endospore may be the same as, smaller than, or larger than the diameter of the vegetative cell. Depending on the species, the endospore might be located *terminally* (at one end), *subterminally* (near one end), or *centrally* (Figure 4.21b) inside



(a) Sporulation, the process of endospore formation

(b) An endospore of *Bacillus subtilis*

Figure 4.21 Formation of endospores by sporulation.

Q What properties make endospores resistant to processes that normally kill vegetative cells?

the vegetative cell. When the endospore matures, the vegetative cell wall ruptures (lyses), killing the cell, and the endospore is freed.

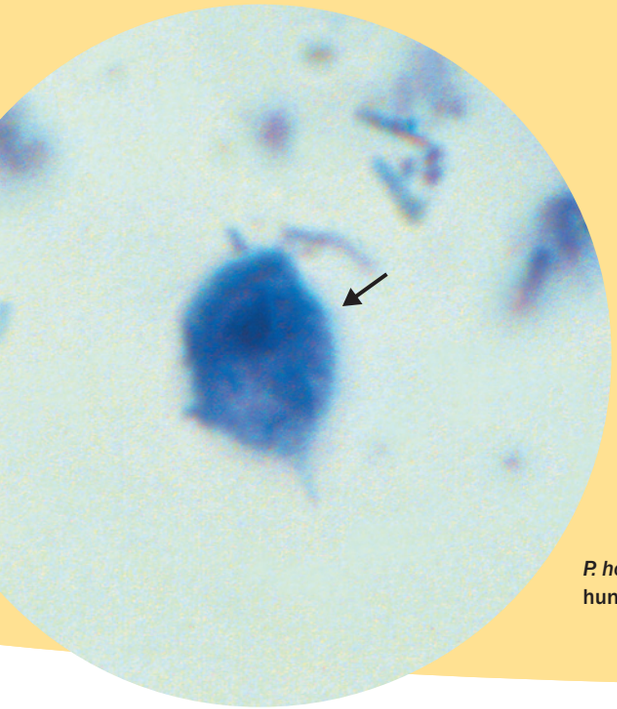
Most of the water present in the forespore cytoplasm is eliminated by the time sporulation is complete, and endospores do not carry out metabolic reactions. The endospore contains a large amount of an organic acid called *dipicolinic acid* (DPA), which is accompanied by a large number of calcium ions. Evidence indicates that DPA protects the endospore DNA against damage. The highly dehydrated endospore core contains only DNA, small amounts of RNA, ribosomes, enzymes, and a few important small molecules. These cellular components are essential for resuming metabolism later.

Endospores can remain dormant for thousands of years. An endospore returns to its vegetative state by a process called **germination**. Germination is triggered by high heat, such as is used in canning, or small triggering molecules called *germinants*. Germinants identified to date are alanine and inosine (a nucleotide). The endospore's enzymes then break down the extra layers surrounding the endospore, water enters, and metabolism resumes. Because one vegetative cell forms a single endospore, which, after germination, remains one cell, sporulation in bacteria is *not* a means of reproduction. This process does not increase the number of cells. Bacterial endospores differ from spores formed by (prokaryotic) actinomycetes and the eukaryotic fungi and algae, which detach from the parent and develop into another organism and, therefore, represent reproduction.

Endospores are important from a clinical viewpoint and in the food industry because they're resistant to processes that normally kill vegetative cells. Such processes include heating, desiccation, use of chemicals, and radiation. Whereas most vegetative cells are killed by temperatures above 70°C, endospores can survive in boiling water for several hours or more. Endospores of thermophilic (heat-loving) bacteria can survive in boiling water for 19 hours. Endospore-forming bacteria are a

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME Eukaryotes Are Microbiota, Too

The vast majority of research being conducted on the microbiome revolves around prokaryotes. However, several eukaryotic protozoa, collectively called the *eukaryome*, are also part of the human microbiome.



P. hominis **(at the arrow) is a nonpathogenic protozoan in the human intestines.**

Retortamonas intestinalis, *Pentatrichomonas hominis*, and *Enteromonas hominis* have all been found living in the large intestines of healthy individuals without causing disease. The exact location within the large intestine may be important to the protozoa's ability to cause disease. Parasitic protozoa, such as *Giardia*, attach to the intestinal lining, whereas harmless protozoa are more likely to stay in the inside space of the intestine without attaching to cells.

Diversity of organisms in the eukaryome is higher in countries with less rigorous sanitation and hygiene practices. In contrast, the decreased diversity of the eukaryome among people living in industrialized nations is assumed to be due to improved hygiene and the availability of medications. At the same time, the incidence of autoimmune diseases such as Crohn's disease and irritable bowel syndrome is higher in industrialized countries than in countries with greater incidence of eukaryotic infections (pathogenic and otherwise). Scientists now believe that the eukaryome in particular may be important in setting the sensitivity of the human immune response and that removal of certain parts of our microbiota during childhood may lead the body to "overrespond," and initiate autoimmune disorders.

More work needs to be done to characterize the eukaryome and to learn about the full range of effects, both positive and negative, that occur in the body when certain microbes are present or absent. Completely avoiding contact with microbes in childhood may be counterproductive for our long-term health.

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

It is the glycocalyx that enables bacteria in water to stick inside a pipe. The bacteria grow slowly in the nutrient-poor tap water but do not get washed away by the flowing water. A slimy layer of bacteria can accumulate in a pipe. Irene discovers that the disinfectant in the hospital's water supply was inadequate to prevent bacterial growth. Some bacteria can get dislodged by flowing water, and even normally harmless bacteria can infect a surgical incision or weakened host.

Part 1 | Part 2 | Part 3 | Part 4 | **Part 5**

problem in the food industry because they are likely to survive underprocessing, and if conditions for growth occur, some species produce toxins and disease. Special methods for controlling organisms that produce endospores are discussed in Chapter 7.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

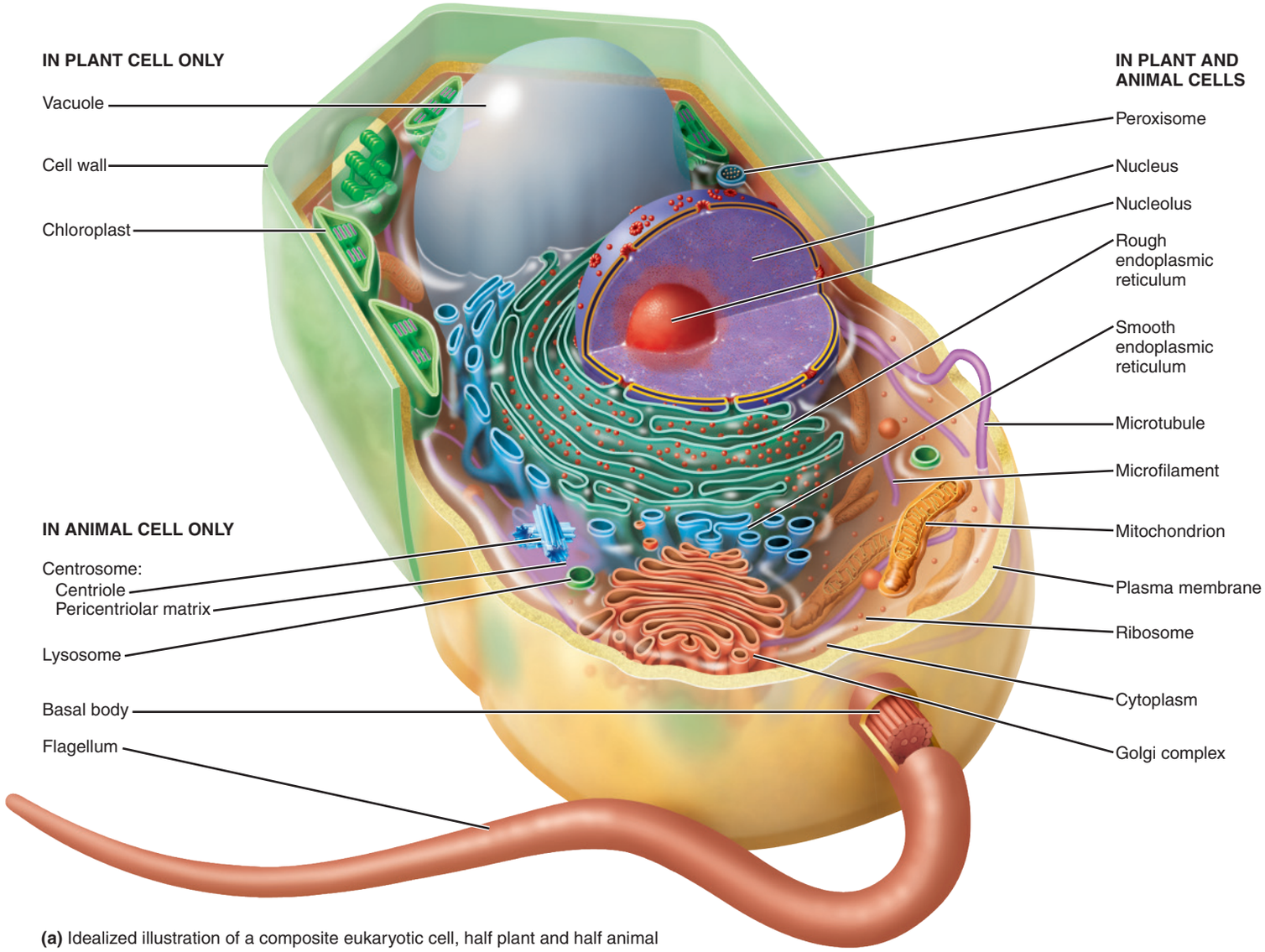
- **4-10** Where is the DNA located in a prokaryotic cell?
- **4-11** What is the general function of inclusions?
- **4-12** Under what conditions do endospores form?

* * *

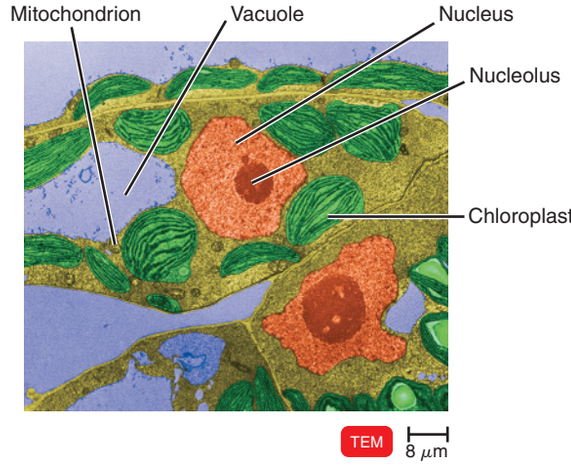
Having examined the functional anatomy of the prokaryotic cell, we will now look at the functional anatomy of the eukaryotic cell.

The Eukaryotic Cell

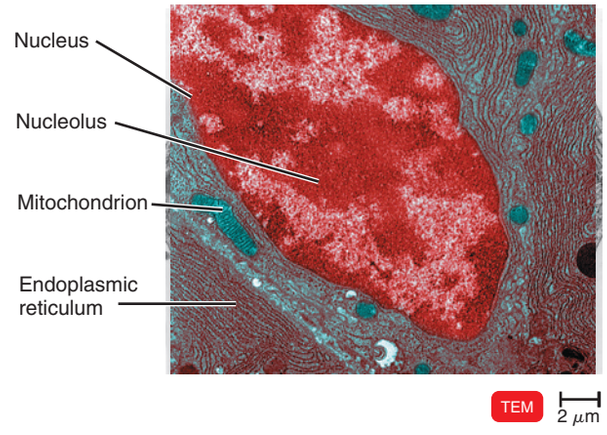
As mentioned earlier, eukaryotic organisms include algae, protozoa, fungi, plants, and animals. Some eukaryotes cause disease, but others are part of the normal human microbiome (see **Exploring the Microbiome**). The eukaryotic cell is typically larger and structurally more complex than the prokaryotic cell (**Figure 4.22**). When the structure of the prokaryotic cell in Figure 4.6 is compared with that of the eukaryotic cell, the differences between the two types of cells become apparent.



(a) Idealized illustration of a composite eukaryotic cell, half plant and half animal



(b) Transmission electron micrograph of plant cell



(c) Transmission electron micrograph of animal cell

Figure 4.22 Eukaryotic cells showing typical structures.

Q What kingdoms contain eukaryotic organisms?

TABLE 4.2 Principal Differences between Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Cells

Characteristic	Prokaryotic	Eukaryotic
Size of Cell	Typically 0.2–2.0 μm in diameter	Typically 10–100 μm in diameter
Nucleus	Typically no nuclear membrane or nucleoli except *Gemmata* (see Figure 11.16)	True nucleus, consisting of nuclear membrane and nucleoli
Membrane-Enclosed Organelles	Relatively few	Present; examples include nuclei, lysosomes, Golgi complex, endoplasmic reticulum, mitochondria, and chloroplasts
Flagella	Consist of two protein building blocks	Complex; consist of multiple microtubules
Glycocalyx	Present as a capsule or slime layer	Present in some cells that lack a cell wall
Cell Wall	Usually present; chemically complex (typical bacterial cell wall includes peptidoglycan)	When present, chemically simple (includes cellulose and chitin)
Plasma Membrane	Carbohydrates and generally lacks sterols	Sterols and carbohydrates that serve as receptors
Cytoplasm	Cytoskeleton (MreB and ParM, cresetin, and FtsZ proteins); no cytoplasmic streaming	Cytoskeleton (microfilaments, intermediate filaments, and microtubules); cytoplasmic streaming
Ribosomes	Smaller size (70S)	Larger size (80S); smaller size (70S) in organelles
Chromosome (DNA)	Usually single circular chromosome; typically lacks histones	Multiple linear chromosomes with histones
Cell Division	Binary fission	Involves mitosis
Sexual Recombination	None; transfer of DNA only	Involves meiosis

The principal differences between prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells are summarized in Table 4.2.

The following discussion of eukaryotic cells will parallel our discussion of prokaryotic cells by starting with structures that extend to the outside of the cell.

ASM: While microscopic eukaryotes (for example, fungi, protozoa, and algae) carry out some of the same processes as bacteria, many of the cellular properties are fundamentally different.

Flagella and Cilia

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

4-13 Differentiate prokaryotic and eukaryotic flagella.

Many types of eukaryotic cells have projections that are used for cellular locomotion or for moving substances along the surface of the cell. These projections contain cytoplasm and are enclosed by the plasma membrane. If the projections are few and are long in relation to the size of the cell, they are called **flagella**. If the projections are numerous and short, they are called **cilia** (singular: **cilium**).

Algae of the genus *Euglena* (ū-GLĒ-nah) use a flagellum for locomotion, whereas protozoa, such as *Tetrahymena* (tet′rah-HĪ-me-nah), use cilia for locomotion (Figure 4.23a and Figure 4.23b). Both flagella and cilia are anchored to the plasma membrane by a basal body, and both consist of nine pairs of microtubules (doublets) arranged in a ring, plus another two microtubules in the center of the ring, an arrangement called a *9 + 2 array* (Figure 4.23c). **Microtubules** are long, hollow tubes made up of a protein called *tubulin*. A prokaryotic flagellum rotates, but a eukaryotic flagellum moves in a wavelike manner (Figure 4.23d). To help keep foreign material out of the lungs, ciliated cells of the human respiratory system move the material along the surface of the cells in the bronchial tubes and trachea toward the throat and mouth (see Figure 16.3).

The Cell Wall and Glycocalyx

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

4-14 Compare and contrast prokaryotic and eukaryotic cell walls and glycocalyxes.

Most eukaryotic cells have cell walls, although they are generally much simpler than those of prokaryotic cells. Many algae have cell walls consisting of the polysaccharide *cellulose* (as do all plants); other chemicals may be present as well. Cell walls of some fungi also contain cellulose, but in most fungi the principal structural component of the cell wall is the polysaccharide *chitin*, a polymer of *N*-acetylglucosamine (NAG) units. (Chitin is also the main structural component of the exoskeleton of crustaceans and insects.) The cell walls of yeasts contain the polysaccharides *glucan* and *mannan*. In eukaryotes that lack a cell wall, the plasma

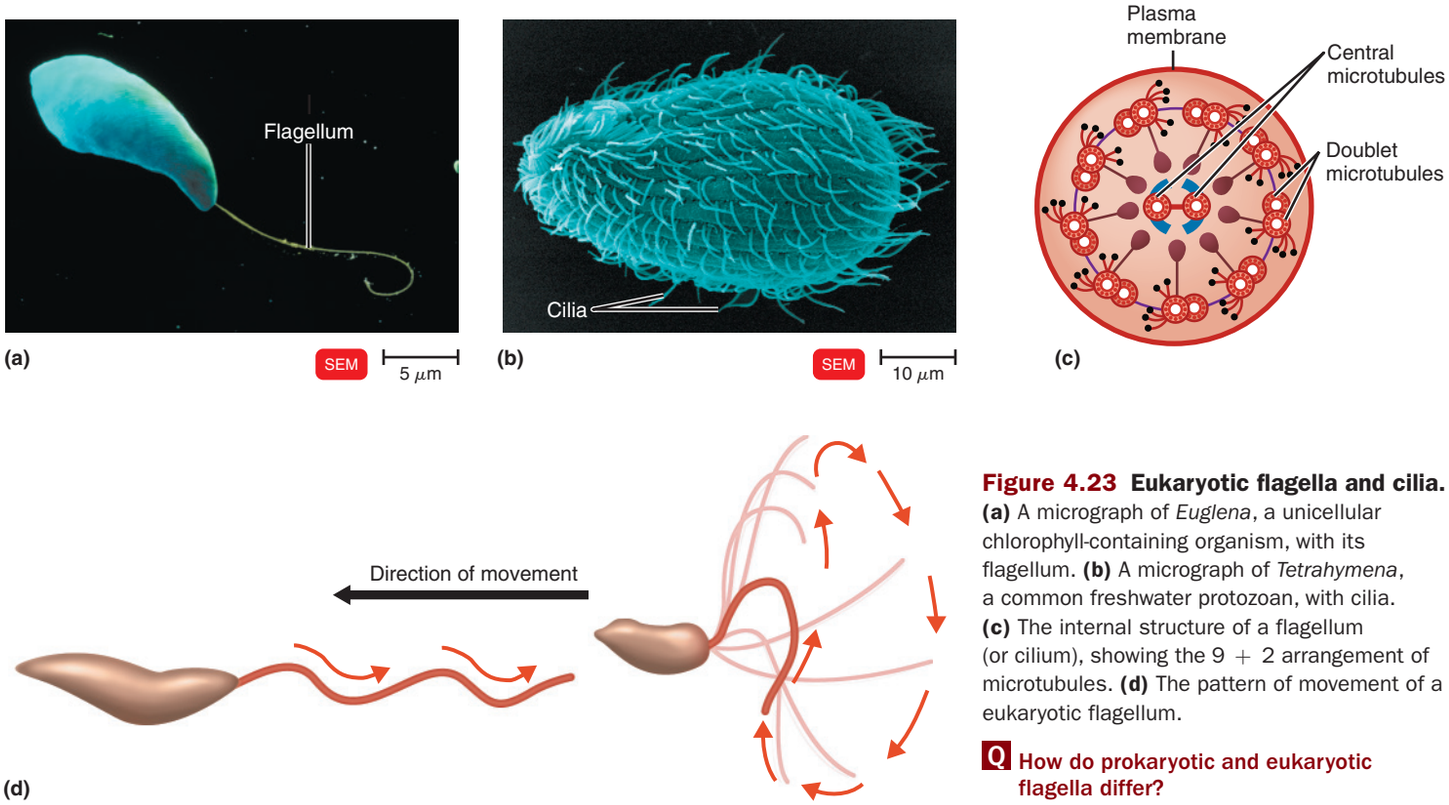


Figure 4.23 Eukaryotic flagella and cilia. **(a)** A micrograph of *Euglena*, a unicellular chlorophyll-containing organism, with its flagellum. **(b)** A micrograph of *Tetrahymena*, a common freshwater protozoan, with cilia. **(c)** The internal structure of a flagellum (or cilium), showing the 9 + 2 arrangement of microtubules. **(d)** The pattern of movement of a eukaryotic flagellum.

Q How do prokaryotic and eukaryotic flagella differ?

membrane may be the outer covering; however, cells that have direct contact with the environment may have coatings outside the plasma membrane. Protozoa do not have a typical cell wall; instead, they have a flexible outer protein covering called a *pellicle*.

In other eukaryotic cells, including animal cells, the plasma membrane is covered by a **glycocalyx**, a layer of material containing substantial amounts of sticky carbohydrates. Some of these carbohydrates are covalently bonded to proteins and lipids in the plasma membrane, forming glycoproteins and glycolipids that anchor the glycocalyx to the cell. The glycocalyx strengthens the cell surface, helps attach cells together, and may contribute to cell–cell recognition.

Eukaryotic cells do not contain peptidoglycan, the framework of the prokaryotic cell wall. This is significant medically because antibiotics, such as penicillins and cephalosporins, act against peptidoglycan and therefore do not affect human eukaryotic cells.

The Plasma (Cytoplasmic) Membrane

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

4-15 Compare and contrast prokaryotic and eukaryotic plasma membranes.

The **plasma (cytoplasmic) membrane** of eukaryotic and prokaryotic cells is very similar in function and basic structure. There are, however, differences in the types of proteins found in the membranes. Eukaryotic membranes also contain carbohydrates, which serve as attachment sites for bacteria and as receptor sites that assume a role in such functions as cell–cell recognition. Eukaryotic plasma membranes also contain *sterols*, complex lipids not found in prokaryotic plasma membranes (with the exception of *Mycoplasma* cells). Sterols seem to be associated with the ability of the membranes to resist lysis resulting from increased osmotic pressure.

Substances can cross eukaryotic and prokaryotic plasma membranes by simple diffusion, facilitated diffusion, osmosis, or active transport. Group translocation does not occur in eukaryotic cells. However, eukaryotic cells can use a mechanism called **endocytosis**. This occurs when a segment of the plasma membrane surrounds a particle or large molecule, encloses it, and brings it into the cell.

The three types of endocytosis are phagocytosis, pinocytosis, and receptor-mediated endocytosis. During *phagocytosis*, cellular projections called pseudopods engulf particles and bring them into the cell. Phagocytosis is used by white blood cells to destroy bacteria and foreign substances (see Figure 16.8, and further discussion in Chapter 16). In *pinocytosis*, the plasma membrane folds inward, bringing extracellular fluid into the cell, along with whatever substances are dissolved in the fluid. In *receptor-mediated endocytosis*, substances (ligands) bind to receptors in the membrane. When binding occurs, the membrane folds inward. Receptor-mediated endocytosis is one of the ways viruses can enter animal cells (see Figure 13.14a).

Cytoplasm

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

4-16 Compare and contrast prokaryotic and eukaryotic cytoplasms.

The **cytoplasm** of eukaryotic cells encompasses the substance inside the plasma membrane and outside the nucleus (see Figure 4.22). The cytoplasm is the substance in which various cellular components are found. (The term **cytosol** refers to the fluid portion of cytoplasm.) The **cytoskeleton** of eukaryotes consists of small rods (*microfilaments* and *intermediate filaments*) and cylinders (*microtubules*). Recall these correspond to the MreB and ParM, crescentin, and FtsZ of the prokaryotic cytoskeleton, respectively. The cytoskeleton of eukaryotes provides support, shape, and assistance in transporting substances through the cell (and even in moving the entire cell, as in phagocytosis). The movement of eukaryotic cytoplasm from one part of the cell to another, which helps distribute nutrients and move the cell over a surface, is called **cytoplasmic streaming**. Another difference between prokaryotic and eukaryotic cytoplasm is that many of the important enzymes found in the cytoplasmic fluid of prokaryotes are sequestered in the organelles of eukaryotes.

Ribosomes

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

4-17 Compare the structure and function of eukaryotic and prokaryotic ribosomes.

Attached to the outer surface of the rough endoplasmic reticulum (discussed later) and nuclear membrane and also found free in the cytoplasm are **ribosomes** (see Figure 4.19). As in prokaryotes, ribosomes are the sites of protein synthesis in the cell.

The ribosomes of eukaryotic cells are somewhat larger and denser than those of prokaryotic cells. These eukaryotic ribosomes are 80S ribosomes, each of which consists of a large 60S subunit containing three molecules of rRNA and a smaller 40S subunit with one molecule of rRNA. The subunits are made separately in the nucleolus (discussed shortly) and once produced, exit the nucleus and join together in the cytosol. In contrast, prokaryotic ribosomes are synthesized in the cytoplasm. Chloroplasts and mitochondria, two organelles found in eukaryotic cells, contain 70S ribosomes, which indicates their evolution from prokaryotes. (This theory is discussed later in this chapter.) The role of ribosomes in protein synthesis will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 8.

Some ribosomes, called *free ribosomes*, are unattached to any structure in the cytoplasm. Primarily, free ribosomes synthesize proteins used *inside* the cell. Other ribosomes, called *membrane-bound ribosomes*, attach to the endoplasmic reticulum. These ribosomes synthesize proteins destined for insertion in the plasma membrane or for export from the cell. Ribosomes located within mitochondria synthesize mitochondrial proteins.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **4-13–4-16** Identify at least one significant difference between eukaryotic and prokaryotic flagella and cilia, cell walls, plasma membranes, and cytoplasm.
- **4-17** The antibiotic erythromycin binds with the 50S portion of a ribosome. What effect does this have on a prokaryotic cell? On a eukaryotic cell?

Organelles

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

4-18 Define *organelle*.

4-19 Describe the functions of the nucleus, endoplasmic reticulum, Golgi complex, lysosomes, vacuoles, mitochondria, chloroplasts, peroxisomes, and centrosomes.

Organelles are structures with specific shapes and specialized functions and are characteristic of eukaryotic cells. They include the nucleus, endoplasmic reticulum, Golgi complex, lysosomes, vacuoles, mitochondria, chloroplasts, peroxisomes, and centrosomes. Not all of the organelles described are found in all cells, and certain cells have their own type and distribution of organelles based on specialization, age, and level of activity.

The Nucleus

The most characteristic eukaryotic organelle is the nucleus (see Figure 4.22). The **nucleus** (**Figure 4.24**) is usually spherical or oval, is frequently the largest structure in the cell, and contains almost all of the cell's hereditary information (DNA). Some DNA is also found in mitochondria and in the chloroplasts of photosynthetic organisms.

The nucleus is surrounded by a double membrane called the **nuclear envelope**. Both membranes resemble the plasma membrane in structure. Tiny channels in the membrane called **nuclear pores** allow the nucleus to communicate with the cytoplasm (Figure 4.24b). Nuclear pores control the movement of substances between the nucleus and cytoplasm. Within the nuclear envelope are one or more spherical bodies called **nucleoli** (singular: **nucleolus**). Nucleoli are actually condensed regions of chromosomes where ribosomal RNA is synthesized. Ribosomal RNA is an essential component of ribosomes.

The nucleus also contains most of the cell's DNA, which is combined with several proteins, including some basic proteins called **histones** and nonhistones. The combination of about 165 base pairs of DNA and 9 molecules of histones is referred to as a *nucleosome*. When the cell is not reproducing, the DNA and its associated proteins appear as a threadlike mass called **chromatin**. During nuclear division, the chromatin coils into shorter and thicker rodlike bodies called **chromosomes**.

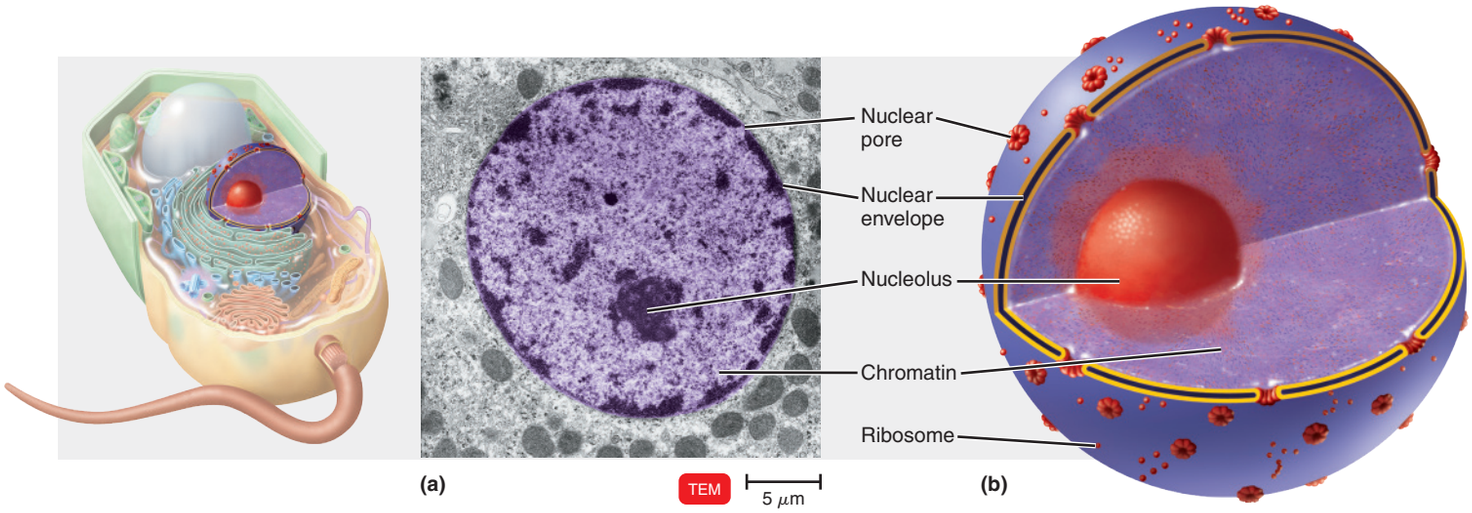


Figure 4.24 The eukaryotic nucleus. **(a)** A micrograph of a nucleus. **(b)** Drawing of details of a nucleus.

Q What keeps the nucleus suspended in the cell?

Prokaryotic chromosomes do not undergo this process, do not have histones, and are not enclosed in a nuclear envelope.

Eukaryotic cells require two elaborate mechanisms, mitosis and meiosis, to segregate chromosomes prior to cell division. Neither process occurs in prokaryotic cells.

Endoplasmic Reticulum

Within the cytoplasm of eukaryotic cells is the **endoplasmic reticulum**, or **ER**, an extensive network of flattened membranous sacs or tubules called **cisterns** (Figure 4.25). The ER network is continuous with the nuclear envelope (see Figure 4.22a).

Most eukaryotic cells contain two distinct, but interrelated, forms of ER that differ in structure and function. The membrane of **rough ER** is continuous with the nuclear membrane and usually unfolds into a series of flattened sacs. The outer surface of rough ER is studded with ribosomes, the sites of protein synthesis. Proteins synthesized by ribosomes that are attached to rough ER enter cisterns within the ER for processing and sorting. In some cases, enzymes within the cisterns attach the proteins to carbohydrates to form glycoproteins. In other cases, enzymes attach the proteins to phospholipids, also synthesized by rough ER. These molecules may be incorporated into

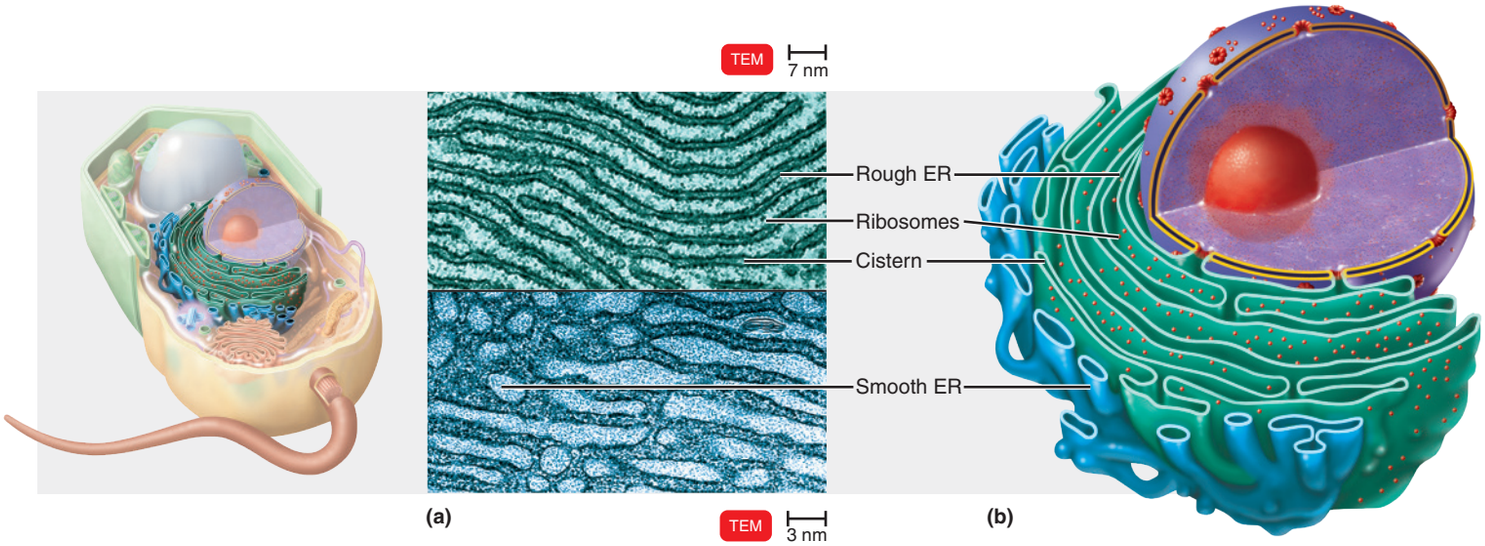


Figure 4.25 Endoplasmic reticulum. **(a)** A micrograph of the rough and smooth endoplasmic reticulum and ribosomes. **(b)** A drawing of details of the endoplasmic reticulum.

Q What functions of the smooth ER and rough ER are similar?

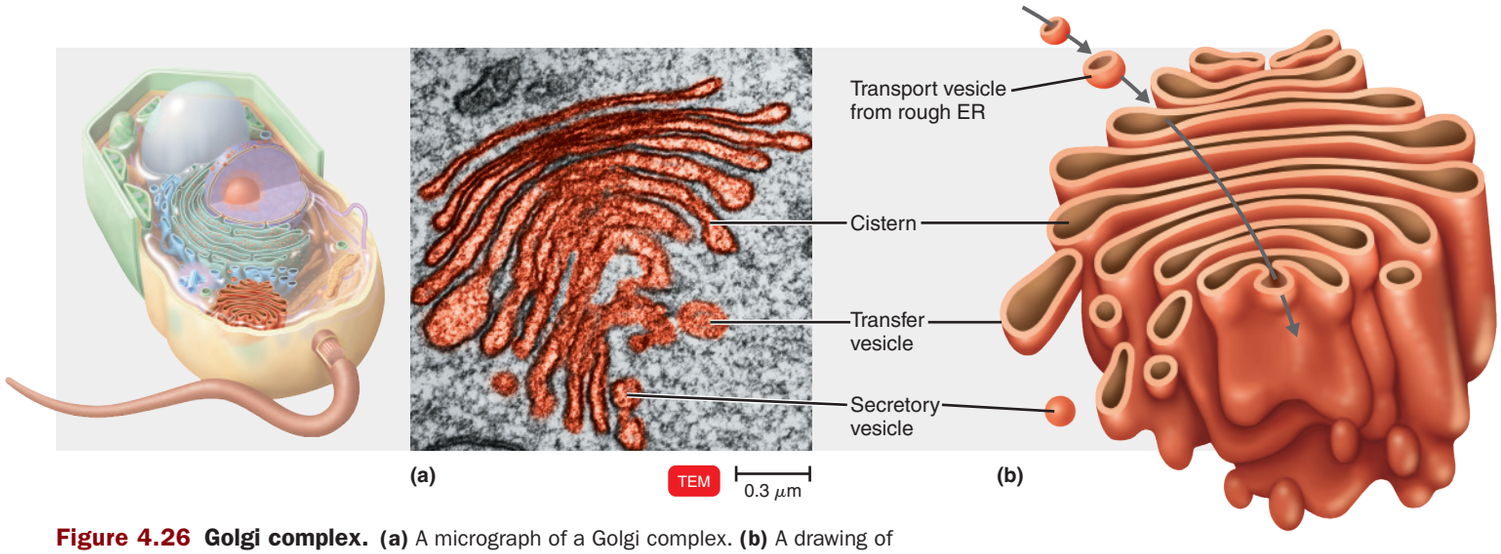


Figure 4.26 Golgi complex. **(a)** A micrograph of a Golgi complex. **(b)** A drawing of details of a Golgi complex.

Q What is the function of the Golgi complex?

organelle membranes or the plasma membrane. Thus, rough ER is a factory for synthesizing secretory proteins and membrane molecules.

Smooth ER extends from the rough ER to form a network of membrane tubules (see Figure 4.25). Unlike rough ER, smooth ER does not have ribosomes on the outer surface of its membrane. However, smooth ER contains unique enzymes that make it functionally more diverse than rough ER. Although it does not synthesize proteins, smooth ER does synthesize phospholipids, as does rough ER. Smooth ER also synthesizes fats and steroids, such as estrogens and testosterone. In liver cells, enzymes of the smooth ER help release glucose into the bloodstream and inactivate or detoxify drugs and other potentially harmful substances (for example, alcohol). In muscle cells, calcium ions released from the sarcoplasmic reticulum, a form of smooth ER, trigger the contraction process.

Golgi Complex

Most of the proteins synthesized by ribosomes attached to rough ER are ultimately transported to other regions of the cell. The first step in the transport pathway is through an organelle called the **Golgi complex**. It consists of 3 to 20 cisterns that resemble a stack of pita bread (Figure 4.26). The cisterns are often curved, giving the Golgi complex a cuplike shape.

Proteins synthesized by ribosomes on the rough ER are surrounded by a portion of the ER membrane, which eventually buds from the membrane surface to form a **transport vesicle**. The transport vesicle fuses with a cistern of the Golgi complex, releasing proteins into the cistern. The proteins are modified and move from one cistern to another via **transfer vesicles** that bud from the edges of the cisterns. Enzymes in the cisterns modify the proteins to form glycoproteins, glycolipids, and lipoproteins. Some of the processed proteins leave the cisterns in **secretory vesicles**, which detach from the cistern and deliver the proteins to the plasma membrane, where they are discharged by exocytosis. Other processed proteins leave the cisterns in vesicles that deliver their contents to the plasma membrane for incorporation into the membrane. Finally, some processed proteins leave the cisterns in vesicles that are called **storage vesicles**. The major storage vesicle is a lysosome, whose structure and functions are discussed next.

Lysosomes

Lysosomes are found only in animal cells. Formed from Golgi complexes, they look like membrane-enclosed spheres. Unlike the nucleus, lysosomes have only a single membrane and lack internal structure (see Figure 4.22). But they contain as many as 40 different kinds of digestive enzymes capable of breaking down various molecules. Moreover, these enzymes can digest bacteria that enter the cell. Human white blood cells, which use phagocytosis to ingest bacteria, contain large numbers of lysosomes.

Vacuoles

A **vacuole** (see Figure 4.22) is a space or cavity in the cytoplasm of a cell that is enclosed by a membrane called a *tonoplast*. Plant cells have a large central vacuole. In plant cells, vacuoles may occupy 5 to 90% of the cell volume, depending on the type of cell. Vacuoles are derived from the Golgi complex and have several diverse functions. Some vacuoles serve as temporary storage organelles for substances such as proteins, sugars, organic acids, and inorganic ions. Other vacuoles form during endocytosis to help bring food into the cell. Many cells also store metabolic wastes and poisons that would

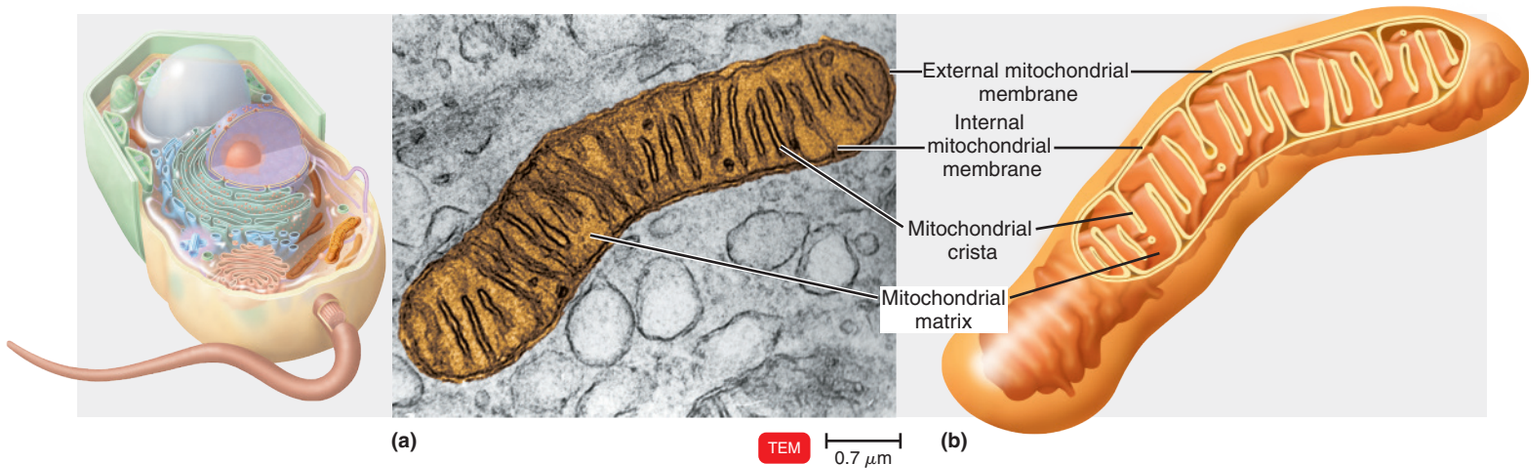


Figure 4.27 Mitochondria. **(a)** A micrograph of a mitochondrion from a rat pancreas cell. **(b)** A drawing of details of a mitochondrion.

Q How are mitochondria similar to prokaryotic cells?

otherwise be injurious if they accumulated in the cytoplasm. Finally, vacuoles may take up and excrete water, preventing osmotic lysis.

Mitochondria

Elongated, irregularly shaped organelles called **mitochondria** (singular: **mitochondrion**) appear throughout the cytoplasm of most eukaryotic cells (see Figure 4.22). The number of mitochondria per cell varies greatly among different types of cells. For example, the protozoan *Giardia* has no mitochondria, whereas liver cells contain 1000 to 2000 per cell. A mitochondrion has two membranes similar in structure to the plasma membrane (Figure 4.27). The external mitochondrial membrane is smooth, but the internal mitochondrial membrane is arranged in a series of folds called **mitochondrial cristae** (singular: **crista**). The center of the mitochondrion is a semifluid substance called the **mitochondrial matrix**. Because of the nature and arrangement of the cristae, the internal mitochondrial membrane provides an enormous surface area on which chemical reactions can occur. Some proteins that function in cellular respiration, including the enzyme that makes ATP, are located on the mitochondrial cristae of the internal mitochondrial membrane, and many of the metabolic steps involved in cellular respiration are concentrated in the matrix (see Chapter 5). Mitochondria are often called the "powerhouses of the cell" because of their central role in ATP production.

Mitochondria contain 70S ribosomes and some DNA of their own, as well as the machinery necessary to replicate, transcribe, and translate the information encoded by their DNA. A cell acquires mitochondria in the cytoplasm from the parent cell. These mitochondria can reproduce more or less on their own by growing and dividing in two.

Chloroplasts

Algae and green plants contain a unique organelle called a **chloroplast** (Figure 4.28), a double membrane-enclosed structure that contains both the pigment chlorophyll and the enzymes required for photosynthesis (see Chapter 5). The chlorophyll is contained in flattened membrane sacs called **thylakoids**; stacks of thylakoids are called **grana** (singular: **granum**). The internal fluid of a chloroplast is the **stroma** (see Figure 4.28).

Like mitochondria, chloroplasts contain 70S ribosomes, DNA, and enzymes involved in protein synthesis. They are capable of multiplying on their own within the cell. The way both chloroplasts and mitochondria multiply—by increasing in size and then dividing in two—is strikingly reminiscent of bacterial multiplication (Chapter 6).

Peroxisomes

Organelles similar in structure to lysosomes, but smaller, are called **peroxisomes** (see Figure 4.22). Peroxisomes most likely form by budding off the ER. They can increase in number by division of preexisting peroxisomes in the cytoplasm, which were distributed throughout the cell during division of the parent cell.

Peroxisomes contain one or more enzymes that can oxidize various organic substances. For example, substances such as amino acids and fatty acids are oxidized in peroxisomes as part of normal metabolism. In addition, enzymes in peroxisomes oxidize toxic substances, such as alcohol. A by-product of the oxidation reactions is hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2), a potentially toxic compound. However, peroxisomes also contain the enzyme *catalase*, which decomposes H_2O_2 (see Chapter 6). Because the generation and degradation of H_2O_2 occurs within the same organelle, peroxisomes protect other parts of the cell from the toxic effects of H_2O_2.

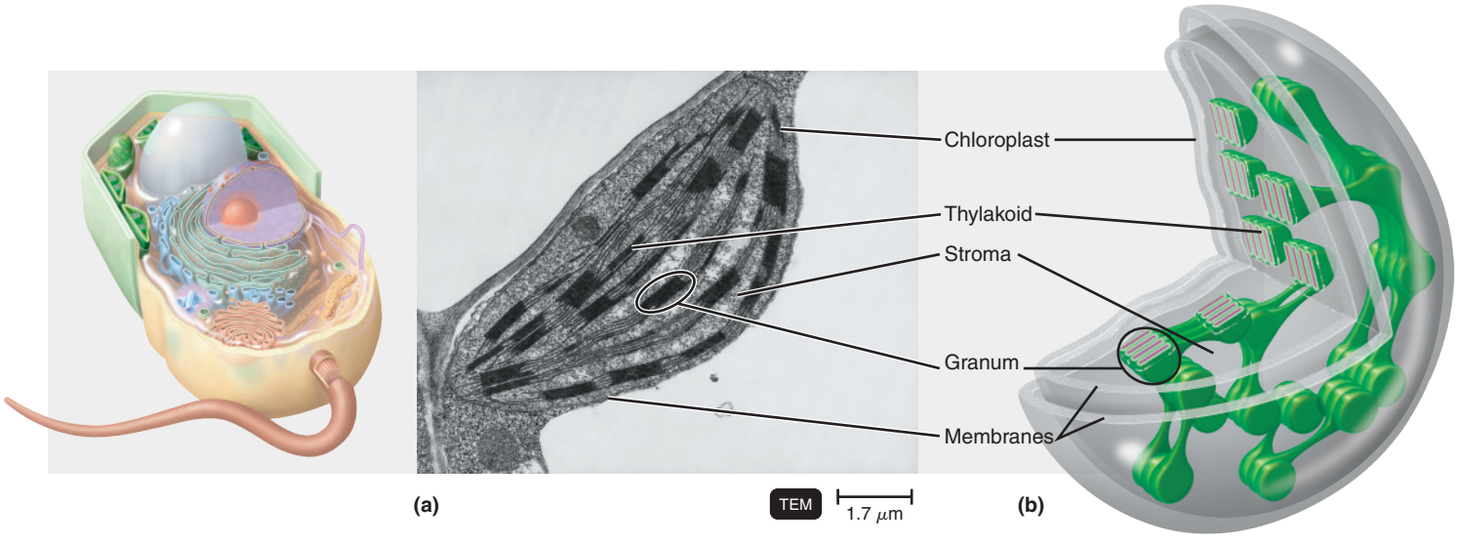


Figure 4.28 Chloroplasts. Photosynthesis occurs in chloroplasts; the light-trapping pigments are located on the thylakoids. **(a)** A micrograph of chloroplasts in a plant cell. **(b)** A drawing of details of a chloroplast, showing grana.

Q What are the similarities between chloroplasts and prokaryotic cells?

Centrosome

The **centrosome**, located near the nucleus in animal cells, consists of two components: the pericentriolar matrix and centrioles (see Figure 4.22). The *pericentriolar matrix* is a region of the cytosol composed of a dense network of small protein fibers. Within the pericentriolar matrix is a pair of cylindrical structures called *centrioles*, each of which is composed of nine clusters of three microtubules (triplets) arranged in a circular pattern, an arrangement called a *9 + 0 array*. The 9 refers to the nine triplets of microtubules, and the 0 refers to the absence of microtubules in the center. The long axis of one centriole is at a right angle to the long axis of the other. The centrosome is the organizing center for the mitotic spindle, which plays a critical role in cell division.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **4-18** Compare the structure of the nucleus of a eukaryote and the nucleoid of a prokaryote.
- **4-19** How do rough and smooth ER compare structurally and functionally?

The Evolution of Eukaryotes

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

4-20 Discuss evidence that supports the endosymbiotic theory of eukaryotic evolution.

Biologists generally believe that life arose on Earth in the form of very simple organisms, similar to prokaryotic cells, about 3.5 to 4 billion years ago. About 2.5 billion years ago, the first eukaryotic cells evolved from prokaryotic cells. Recall that prokaryotes and eukaryotes differ mainly in that eukaryotes contain highly specialized organelles. The theory explaining the origin of eukaryotes from prokaryotes, pioneered by Lynn Margulis, is the **endosymbiotic theory**. According to this theory, larger bacterial cells lost their cell walls and engulfed smaller bacterial cells. This relationship, in which one organism lives within another, is called *endosymbiosis* (*symbiosis* = living together).

ASM: Cells, organelles (e.g., mitochondria and chloroplasts) and all major metabolic pathways evolved from early prokaryotic cells.

According to the endosymbiotic theory, the ancestral eukaryote developed a rudimentary nucleus when the plasma membrane folded around the chromosome (see Figure 10.2). This cell, called a nucleoplasm, may have ingested aerobic bacteria. Some ingested bacteria lived inside the host nucleoplasm. This arrangement evolved into a symbiotic relationship in which the host nucleoplasm supplied nutrients and the endosymbiotic bacterium produced energy that could be used by the nucleoplasm. Similarly, chloroplasts may be descendants of photosynthetic prokaryotes ingested by this early nucleoplasm.

Studies comparing prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells provide evidence for the endosymbiotic theory. For example, both mitochondria and chloroplasts resemble bacteria in size and shape. These organelles contain circular DNA, which is typical of prokaryotes, and the organelles can reproduce independently of their host cell. Moreover, mitochondrial and chloroplast ribosomes resemble those of prokaryotes, and their mechanism of protein synthesis is more similar to that found in bacteria than

eukaryotes. Finally, the same antibiotics that inhibit protein synthesis on ribosomes in bacteria also inhibit protein synthesis on ribosomes in mitochondria and chloroplasts.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

4-20 Which three organelles are not associated with the Golgi complex? What does this suggest about their origin?

Study Outline

Comparing Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Cells: An Overview (p. 73)

1. Prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells are similar in their chemical composition and chemical reactions.
2. Prokaryotic cells typically lack membrane-enclosed organelles (including a nucleus).
3. Peptidoglycan is found in prokaryotic cell walls but not in eukaryotic cell walls.
4. Eukaryotic cells have a membrane-bound nucleus and other organelles.

The Prokaryotic Cell (pp. 73–94)

1. Bacteria are unicellular, and most of them multiply by binary fission.
2. Bacterial species are differentiated by morphology, chemical composition, nutritional requirements, biochemical activities, and source of energy.

The Size, Shape, and Arrangement of Bacterial Cells (pp. 73–76)

1. Most bacteria are 0.2 to 2.0 μm in diameter and 2 to 8 μm in length.
2. The three basic bacterial shapes are coccus (spherical), bacillus (rod-shaped), and spiral (twisted).
3. Pleomorphic bacteria can assume several shapes.

Structures External to the Cell Wall (pp. 75–80)

Glycocalyx (pp. 75–77)

1. The glycocalyx (capsule, slime layer, or extracellular polysaccharide) is a gelatinous polysaccharide and/or polypeptide covering.
2. Capsules may protect pathogens from phagocytosis.
3. Capsules enable adherence to surfaces, prevent desiccation, and may provide nutrients.

Flagella and Archaella (pp. 77–79)

4. Bacterial flagella and archaeal archaella rotate to push the cell.
5. Flagella are relatively long filamentous appendages consisting of a filament, hook, and basal body.
6. Motile bacteria exhibit taxis; positive taxis is movement toward an attractant, and negative taxis is movement away from a repellent.
7. The flagellar protein called H antigen is useful in distinguishing serovars of gram-negative bacteria.

Axial Filaments (p. 79)

8. Spiral cells that move by means of an axial filament (endoflagellum) are called spirochetes.
9. Axial filaments are similar to flagella, except that they wrap around the cell.

Fimbriae and Pili (pp. 79–80)

10. Fimbriae help cells adhere to surfaces.
11. Pili are involved in twitching motility and DNA transfer.

The Cell Wall (pp. 80–85)

Composition and Characteristics (pp. 80–83)

1. The cell wall surrounds the plasma membrane and protects the cell from changes in water pressure.
2. The bacterial cell wall consists of peptidoglycan, a polymer consisting of NAG and NAM and short chains of amino acids.
3. Gram-positive cell walls consist of many layers of peptidoglycan and also contain teichoic acids.
4. Gram-negative bacteria have a lipopolysaccharide-lipoprotein-phospholipid outer membrane surrounding a thin peptidoglycan layer.
5. The outer membrane protects the cell from phagocytosis and from penicillin, lysozyme, and other chemicals.
6. Porins are proteins that permit small molecules to pass through the outer membrane; specific channel proteins allow other molecules to move through the outer membrane.
7. The lipopolysaccharide component of the outer membrane consists of sugars (O polysaccharides), which function as antigens, and lipid A, which is an endotoxin.

Cell Walls and the Gram Stain Mechanism (pp. 83–84)

8. The crystal violet–iodine complex combines with peptidoglycan.
9. The decolorizer removes the lipid outer membrane of gram-negative bacteria and washes out the crystal violet.

Atypical Cell Walls (p. 83)

10. *Mycoplasma* is a bacterial genus that naturally lacks cell walls.
11. Archaea have pseudomurein; they lack peptidoglycan.
12. Acid-fast cell walls have a layer of mycolic acid outside a thin peptidoglycan layer.

Damage to the Cell Wall (pp. 83–85)

13. In the presence of lysozyme, gram-positive cell walls are destroyed, and the remaining cellular contents are referred to as a protoplast.
14. In the presence of lysozyme, gram-negative cell walls are not completely destroyed, and the remaining cellular contents are referred to as a spheroplast.
15. L forms are gram-positive or gram-negative bacteria that do not have a cell wall.
16. Antibiotics such as penicillin interfere with cell wall synthesis.

Structures Internal to the Cell Wall (pp. 85–94)

The Plasma (Cytoplasmic) Membrane (pp. 85–87)

1. The plasma membrane encloses the cytoplasm and is a lipid bilayer with peripheral and integral proteins (the fluid mosaic model).
2. The plasma membrane is selectively permeable.
3. Plasma membranes contain enzymes for metabolic reactions, such as nutrient breakdown, energy production, and photosynthesis.
4. Mesosomes, irregular infoldings of the plasma membrane, are artifacts, not true cell structures.
5. Plasma membranes can be destroyed by certain alcohols and polymyxins.

The Movement of Materials across Membranes (pp. 87–90)

6. Movement across the membrane may be by passive processes, in which materials move from areas of higher to lower concentration, and no energy is expended by the cell.
7. In simple diffusion, molecules and ions move until equilibrium is reached.
8. In facilitated diffusion, substances are transported by transporter proteins across membranes from areas of high to low concentration.
9. Osmosis is the movement of water from areas of low to high solute concentration across a selectively permeable membrane until equilibrium is reached.
10. In active transport, materials move from areas of low to high concentration by transporter proteins, and the cell must expend energy.
11. In group translocation, energy is expended to modify chemicals and transport them across the membrane.

Cytoplasm (p. 90)

12. Cytoplasm is the fluid component inside the plasma membrane.
13. The cytoplasm is mostly water, with inorganic and organic molecules, DNA, ribosomes, inclusions, and cytoskeleton proteins.
14. A cytoskeleton is present, but cytoplasmic streaming does not occur.

The Nucleoid (p. 90)

15. The nucleoid contains the DNA of the bacterial chromosome.
16. Bacteria can also contain plasmids, which are circular, extrachromosomal DNA molecules.

Ribosomes (pp. 90–91)

17. The cytoplasm of a prokaryote contains numerous 70S ribosomes; ribosomes consist of rRNA and protein.
18. Protein synthesis occurs at ribosomes; it can be inhibited by certain antibiotics.

Inclusions (pp. 91–92)

19. Inclusions are reserve deposits found in prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells.
20. Among the inclusions found in bacteria are metachromatic granules (inorganic phosphate), polysaccharide granules (usually glycogen or starch), lipid inclusions, sulfur granules, carboxysomes (ribulose 1,5-diphosphate carboxylase), gas vacuoles, and magnetosomes (Fe_3O_4).

Endospores (pp. 92–94)

21. Endospores are resting structures formed by some bacteria; they allow survival during adverse environmental conditions.

The Eukaryotic Cell (pp. 94–103)

Flagella and Cilia (pp. 96–97)

1. Flagella are few and long in relation to cell size; cilia are numerous and short.
2. Flagella and cilia are used for motility, and cilia also move substances along the surface of the cells.
3. Both flagella and cilia consist of an arrangement of nine pairs and two single microtubules.

The Cell Wall and Glycocalyx (pp. 96–97)

1. The cell walls of many algae and some fungi contain cellulose.
2. The main material of fungal cell walls is chitin.
3. Yeast cell walls consist of glucan and mannan.
4. Animal cells are surrounded by a glycocalyx, which strengthens the cell and provides a means of attachment to other cells.

The Plasma (Cytoplasmic) Membrane (p. 97)

1. Like the prokaryotic plasma membrane, the eukaryotic plasma membrane is a phospholipid bilayer containing proteins.
2. Eukaryotic plasma membranes contain carbohydrates attached to the proteins and sterols not found in prokaryotic cells (except *Mycoplasma* bacteria).
3. Eukaryotic cells can move materials across the plasma membrane by the passive processes and active transport used by prokaryotes, and by endocytosis (phagocytosis, pinocytosis, and receptor-mediated endocytosis).

Cytoplasm (p. 98)

1. The cytoplasm of eukaryotic cells includes everything inside the plasma membrane and external to the nucleus.
2. The chemical characteristics of the cytoplasm of eukaryotic cells resemble those of the cytoplasm of prokaryotic cells.
3. Eukaryotic cytoplasm has a cytoskeleton and exhibits cytoplasmic streaming.

Ribosomes (p. 98)

1. 80S ribosomes are found in the cytoplasm or attached to the rough endoplasmic reticulum.

Organelles (pp. 98–102)

1. Organelles are specialized membrane-enclosed structures in the cytoplasm of eukaryotic cells.
2. The nucleus, which contains DNA in the form of chromosomes, is the most characteristic eukaryotic organelle.
3. The nuclear envelope is connected to a system of membranes in the cytoplasm called the endoplasmic reticulum (ER).
4. The ER provides a surface for chemical reactions and serves as a transport network. Protein synthesis and transport occur on the rough ER; lipid synthesis occurs on the smooth ER.
5. The Golgi complex consists of flattened sacs called cisterns. It functions in membrane formation and protein secretion.
6. Lysosomes are formed from Golgi complexes. They store digestive enzymes.

7. Vacuoles are membrane-enclosed cavities derived from the Golgi complex or endocytosis. They are usually found in plant cells that store various substances.
8. Mitochondria are the primary sites of ATP production. They contain 70S ribosomes and DNA, and they multiply by binary fission.
9. Chloroplasts contain chlorophyll and enzymes for photosynthesis. Like mitochondria, they contain 70S ribosomes and DNA and multiply by binary fission.
10. A variety of organic compounds are oxidized in peroxisomes. Catalase in peroxisomes destroys H_2O_2.
11. The centrosome, consisting of the pericentriolar matrix and centrioles, organizes the mitotic spindle. Centrioles are 9 triplet microtubules involved in formation of the mitotic spindle during cell division.

The Evolution of Eukaryotes (pp. 102–103)

1. According to the endosymbiotic theory, eukaryotic cells evolved from symbiotic prokaryotes living inside other prokaryotic cells.

Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the back of the textbook.

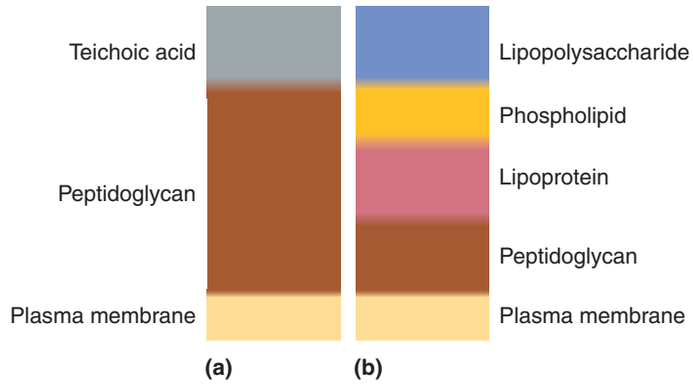
Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. DRAW IT Diagram each of the following flagellar arrangements:
   a. lophotrichous
   b. monotrichous
   c. peritrichous
   d. amphitrichous
   e. polar
2. Endospore formation is called (a) _____. It is initiated by (b) _____. Formation of a new cell from an endospore is called (c) _____. This process is triggered by (d) _____.
3. DRAW IT Draw the bacterial shapes listed in (a), (b), and (c). Then draw the shapes in (d), (e), and (f), showing how they are special conditions of a, b, and c, respectively.
   a. spiral
   b. bacillus
   c. coccus
   d. spirochetes
   e. staphylococci
   f. streptobacilli
4. Match the structures in column A to their functions in column B.

Column A	Column B
_____ **a.** Cell wall	**1.** Attachment to surfaces
_____ **b.** Endospore	**2.** Motility
_____ **c.** Fimbriae	**3.** Protection from osmotic lysis
_____ **d.** Flagella	**4.** Protection from phagocytes
_____ **e.** Glycocalyx	**5.** Resting
_____ **f.** Pili	**6.** Protein synthesis
_____ **g.** Plasma membrane	**7.** Selective permeability
_____ **h.** Ribosomes	**8.** Transfer of genetic material

5. Why is an endospore called a resting structure? Of what advantage is an endospore to a bacterial cell?
6. Compare and contrast the following:
   a. simple diffusion and facilitated diffusion
   b. active transport and facilitated diffusion
   c. active transport and group translocation
7. Answer the following questions using the diagrams provided, which represent cross sections of bacterial cell walls.
   a. Which diagram represents a gram-positive bacterium? How can you tell?



   b. Explain how the Gram stain works to distinguish these two types of cell walls.
   c. Why does penicillin have no effect on most gram-negative cells?
   d. How do essential molecules enter cells through each wall?
   e. Which cell wall is toxic to humans?
8. Starch is readily metabolized by many cells, but a starch molecule is too large to cross the plasma membrane. How does a cell obtain the glucose molecules from a starch polymer? How does the cell transport these glucose molecules across the plasma membrane?
9. Match the characteristics of eukaryotic cells in column A with their functions in column B.

Column A	Column B
_____ **a.** Pericentriolar matrix	**1.** Digestive enzyme storage
_____ **b.** Chloroplasts	**2.** Oxidation of fatty acids
_____ **c.** Golgi complex	**3.** Microtubule formation
_____ **d.** Lysosomes	**4.** Photosynthesis
_____ **e.** Mitochondria	**5.** Protein synthesis
_____ **f.** Peroxisomes	**6.** Cellular respiration
_____ **g.** Rough ER	**7.** Secretion

10. NAME IT What group of microbes is characterized by cells that form filaments, reproduce by spores, and have peptidoglycan in their cell walls?

Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following is *not* a distinguishing characteristic of prokaryotic cells?
   a. They usually have a single, circular chromosome.
   b. They have 70S ribosomes.
   c. They have cell walls containing peptidoglycan.
   d. Their DNA is not associated with histones.
   e. They lack a plasma membrane.

   Use the following choices to answer questions 2–4.
   a. No change will result; the solution is isotonic.
   b. Water will move into the cell.
   c. Water will move out of the cell.
   d. The cell will undergo osmotic lysis.
   e. Sucrose will move into the cell from an area of higher concentration to one of lower concentration.
2. Which statement best describes what happens when a gram-positive bacterium is placed in distilled water and penicillin?
3. Which statement best describes what happens when a gram-negative bacterium is placed in distilled water and penicillin?
4. Which statement best describes what happens when a gram-positive bacterium is placed in an aqueous solution of lysozyme and 10% sucrose?
5. Which of the following statements best describes what happens to a cell exposed to polymyxins that destroy phospholipids?
   a. In an isotonic solution, nothing will happen.
   b. In a hypotonic solution, the cell will lyse.
   c. Water will move into the cell.
   d. Intracellular contents will leak from the cell.
   e. Any of the above might happen.
6. Which of the following is *false* about fimbriae?
   a. They are composed of protein.
   b. They may be used for attachment.
   c. They are found on gram-negative cells.
   d. They are composed of pilin.
   e. They may be used for motility.
7. Which of the following pairs is *mismatched*?
   a. glycocalyx—adherence
   b. pili—reproduction
   c. cell wall—toxin
   d. cell wall—protection
   e. plasma membrane—transport
8. Which of the following pairs is *mismatched*?
   a. metachromatic granules—stored phosphates
   b. polysaccharide granules—stored starch
   c. lipid inclusions—poly-β-hydroxybutyric acid
   d. sulfur granules—energy reserve
   e. ribosomes—protein storage
9. You have isolated a motile, gram-positive cell with no visible nucleus. You can assume this cell has
   a. ribosomes.
   b. mitochondria.
   c. an endoplasmic reticulum.
   d. a Golgi complex.
   e. all of the above
10. The antibiotic amphotericin B disrupts plasma membranes by combining with sterols; it will affect all of the following cells *except*
    a. animal cells.
    b. gram-negative bacterial cells.
    c. fungal cells.
    d. *Mycoplasma* cells.
    e. plant cells.

Analysis

1. How can prokaryotic cells be smaller than eukaryotic cells and still carry on all the functions of life?
2. The smallest eukaryotic cell is the motile alga *Ostreococcus*. What is the minimum number of organelles this alga must have?
3. Two types of prokaryotic cells have been distinguished: bacteria and archaea. How do these cells differ from each other? How are they similar?
4. In 1985, a 0.5-mm cell was discovered in surgeonfish and named *Epulopiscium fishelsoni* (see Figure 11.20). It was presumed to be a protozoan. In 1993, researchers determined that *Epulopiscium* is actually a gram-positive bacterium. Why do you suppose this organism was initially identified as a protozoan? What evidence would change the classification to bacterium?
5. When *E. coli* cells are exposed to a hypertonic solution, the bacteria produce a transporter protein that can move K^+ (potassium ions) into the cell. Of what value is the active transport of K^+, which requires ATP?

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. *Clostridium botulinum* is a strict anaerobe; that is, it is killed by the molecular oxygen (O_2) present in air. Humans can die of botulism from eating foods in which *C. botulinum* is growing. How does this bacterium survive on plants picked for human consumption? Why are home-canned foods most often the source of botulism?
2. A South San Francisco child enjoyed bath time at home because of the colorful orange and red water. The water did not have this rusty color at its source, and the water department could not culture the *Acidithiobacillus* bacteria responsible for the rusty color from the source. How were the bacteria getting into the household water? What bacterial structures make this possible?
3. Live cultures of *Bacillus thuringiensis* (Dipel®) and *B. subtilis* (Kodiak®) are sold as pesticides. What bacterial structures make it possible to package and sell these bacteria? For what purpose is each product used? (*Hint*: Refer to Chapter 11.)

5 Microbial Metabolism

Now that you are familiar with the structure of prokaryotic cells, we can discuss the activities that enable these microbes to thrive. The life-support processes of even the most structurally simple organism involve a large number of complex biochemical reactions. Most, although not all, of the biochemical processes of bacteria also occur in eukaryotic microbes and in the cells of multicellular organisms, including humans. However, the reactions that are unique to bacteria are fascinating because they allow microorganisms to do things we cannot do. For example, some bacteria can live on cellulose, whereas others can live on petroleum. Through their metabolism, bacteria recycle elements after other organisms have used them. Still other bacteria can live on diets of inorganic substances such as carbon dioxide, iron, sulfur, hydrogen gas, and ammonia. Microbial metabolism allows some microorganisms to grow in or on the human body, as shown in dental plaque in the photograph. An example of the bacterial metabolism that contributes to dental caries is discussed in the Clinical Case. This chapter examines some representative chemical reactions that either produce energy (the catabolic reactions) or use energy (the anabolic reactions) in microorganisms. We will also look at how these various reactions are integrated within the cell. The **Big Picture** feature on the next page highlights key principles of metabolism that are explained in greater detail throughout the chapter.

ASM: The interactions of microorganisms among themselves and with their environment are determined by their metabolic abilities.

◀ **Dental plaque of bacteria (pink) embedded in a glycoprotein matrix.**

In the Clinic

As the nurse researcher in a large medical center, you are working with the gastroenterology physicians on a project to study the effect of diet on intestinal gas. People in the test group who developed the most gas ate broccoli and beans, which are high in raffinose and stachyose, and eggs, which are high in methionine and cysteine. Intestinal gas is composed of CO_2, CH_4, H_2S, and H_2. **How are these gases produced?**

Hint: Read about carbohydrates amino acids, carbohydrate catabolism, and protein catabolism ahead.

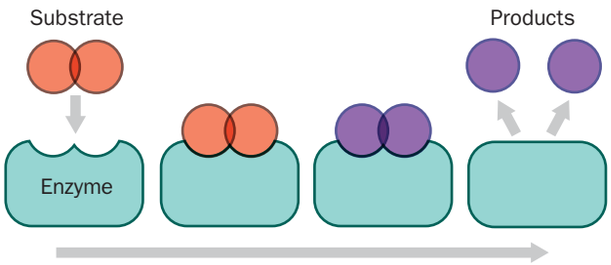
BIG PICTURE

Metabolism

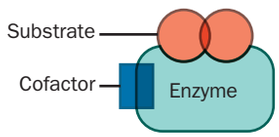
Metabolism is the buildup and breakdown of nutrients within a cell. These chemical reactions provide energy and create substances that sustain life.

Two key players in metabolism are **enzymes** and the molecule **adenosine triphosphate (ATP)**.

Enzymes catalyze reactions for specific molecules called **substrates**. During enzymatic reactions, substrates are transformed into new substances called **products**.

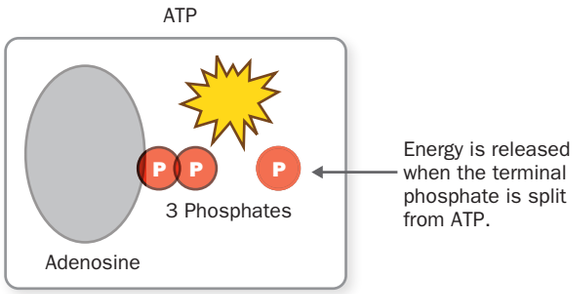


Enzymes, which are generally proteins, may need other nonprotein molecules called cofactors to work. Inorganic cofactors include metal ions. Organic cofactors, or coenzymes, include the electron carriers FAD, NAD+ and NADP+.



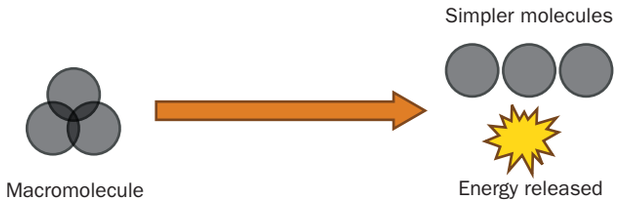
However, without energy, certain reactions will never occur, even if enzymes are present. **Adenosine triphosphate (ATP)** is a molecule that cells use to manage energy needs.

If a reaction results in excess energy, some can be captured in the form of ATP's bonds. A cell can then break those same bonds and use the released energy to fuel other reactions.



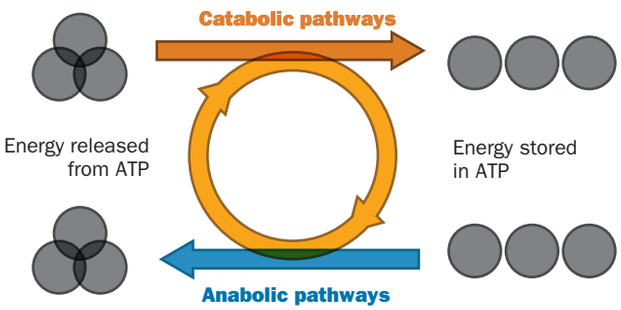
The chemistry of metabolism can seem overwhelming at first, with *pathways*, or sets of many coordinated reactions, working together toward common goals. But the basic rules of metabolism are actually quite simple. Pathways can be categorized into two general types—**catabolic** and **anabolic**.

Catabolic pathways break down macromolecules into simple component parts, releasing energy in the process.

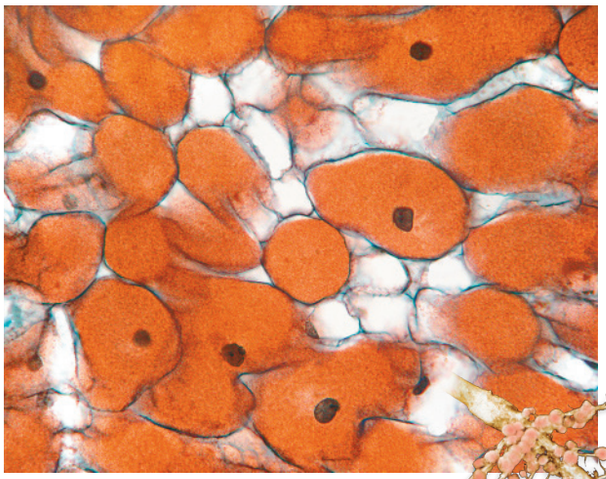


Anabolic pathways build up macromolecules by combining simpler molecules, using energy in the process.

In other words, catabolic and anabolic pathways are linked by **energy**. Catabolic reactions provide the energy needed for anabolic reactions.

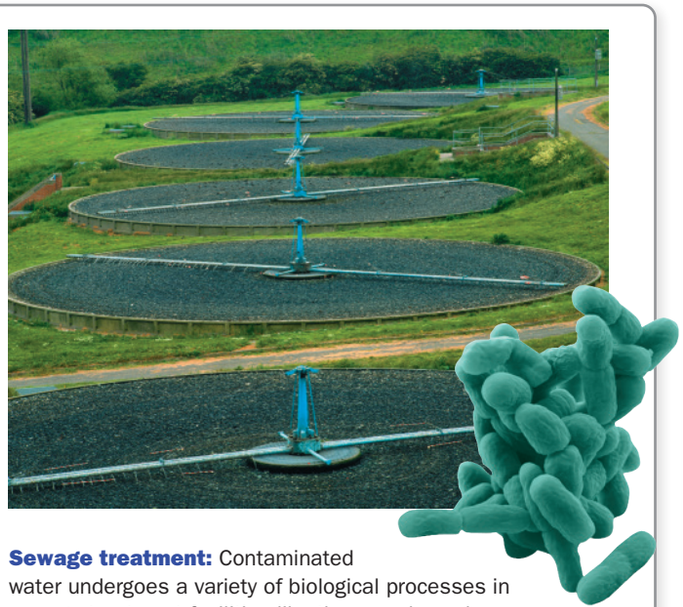


Although microbial metabolism can cause disease and food spoilage, many pathways are beneficial rather than pathogenic.



Nitrogen cycle: Nitrogen is a key component in proteins, DNA and RNA, and plant chlorophyll. But without microbes, there would be little nitrogen available for most life forms. Certain bacteria (such as these *Rhizobium*, above, within a soybean root nodule, shown at right) in the soil convert nitrogen from the atmosphere into forms that other life forms can use.

Beverages and food: Various bacteria and yeasts (such as *Saccharomyces cerevisiae,* shown at right) carry out catabolic reactions called fermentation. Beer, wine, and foods such as cheeses, yogurt, pickles, sauerkraut, and soy sauce tap microbial metabolism as a crucial part of production.



Sewage treatment: Contaminated water undergoes a variety of biological processes in sewage treatment facilities like the one shown here. Many bacteria, including some species of cyanobacteria (shown on the right) play a role in removing harmful organic matter.

Drugs: The pharmaceutical industry usesa variety of bacteria and fungi in the production of antibiotics such as penicillin (derived from the *Penicillium* fungus, shown on the right). Bacitracin, erythromycin, and other treatments such as vaccines, vitamins, and enzymes are also derived from microbial metabolism.

KEY CONCEPTS

- Enzymes facilitate metabolic reactions.
- ATP is used by microbes and other cells to manage energy needs.
- Catabolic reactions couple with ATP synthesis.
- Anabolic reactions couple with ATP breakdown.

Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

5-1 Define *metabolism* and describe the fundamental differences between anabolism and catabolism.

5-2 Identify the role of ATP as an intermediate between catabolism and anabolism.

We use the term **metabolism** to refer to the sum of all chemical reactions within a living organism. Because chemical reactions either release or require energy, metabolism can be viewed as an energy-balancing act. Accordingly, metabolism can be divided into two classes of chemical reactions: those that release energy and those that require energy.

In living cells, the enzyme-regulated chemical reactions that release energy are generally the ones involved in **catabolism**, the breakdown of complex organic compounds into simpler ones. These reactions are called *catabolic*, or *degradative*, reactions. Catabolic reactions are generally *hydrolytic* reactions (reactions that use water and in which chemical bonds are broken), and they are *exergonic* (produce more energy than they consume). An example of catabolism occurs when cells break down sugars into carbon dioxide and water.

The enzyme-regulated energy-requiring reactions are mostly involved in **anabolism**, the building of complex organic molecules from simpler ones. These reactions are called *anabolic*, or *biosynthetic*, reactions. Anabolic processes often involve *dehydration synthesis* reactions (reactions that release water), and they are *endergonic* (consume more energy than they produce). Examples of anabolic processes are the formation of proteins from amino acids, nucleic acids from nucleotides, and polysaccharides from simple sugars. These biosynthetic reactions generate the materials for cell growth.

Catabolic reactions provide building blocks for anabolic reactions and furnish the energy needed to drive anabolic reactions. This coupling of energy-requiring and energy-releasing reactions is made possible through the molecule adenosine triphosphate (ATP). (You can review its structure in Figure 2.18.) ATP stores energy derived from catabolic reactions and releases it later to drive anabolic reactions and perform other cellular work. Remember that a molecule of ATP consists of an adenine, a ribose, and three phosphate groups. When the terminal phosphate group is split from ATP, adenosine diphosphate (ADP) is formed, and energy is released to drive anabolic reactions. Using P to represent a phosphate group (P_i represents inorganic phosphate, which is not bound to any other molecule), we write this reaction as follows:

$$ATP \rightarrow ADP + P_i + \text{energy}$$

Then, the energy from catabolic reactions is used to combine ADP and a P_i to resynthesize ATP:

$$ADP + P_i + \text{energy} \rightarrow ATP$$

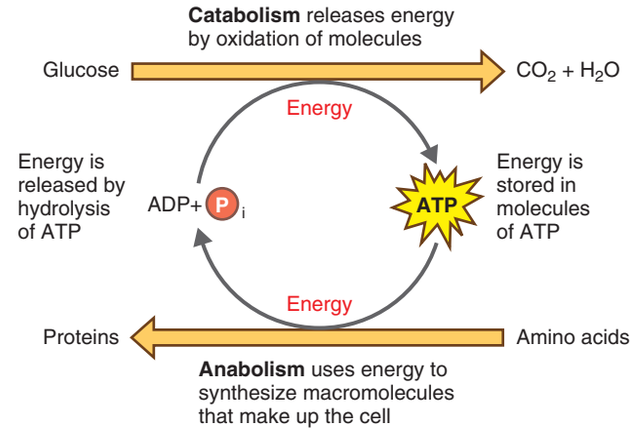


Figure 5.1 The role of ATP in coupling anabolic and catabolic reactions. When complex molecules are split apart (catabolism), some of the energy is transferred to and trapped in ATP, and the rest is given off as heat. When simple molecules are combined to form complex molecules (anabolism), ATP provides the energy for synthesis, and again some energy is given off as heat.

Q How does ATP provide the energy for synthesis?

Thus, anabolic reactions are coupled to ATP breakdown, and catabolic reactions are coupled to ATP synthesis. This concept of coupled reactions is very important; you will see why by the end of this chapter. For now, you should know that the chemical composition of a living cell is constantly changing: some molecules are broken down while others are being synthesized. This balanced flow of chemicals and energy maintains the life of a cell.

The role of ATP in coupling anabolic and catabolic reactions is shown in Figure 5.1. Only part of the energy released in catabolism is actually available for cellular functions because part of the energy is lost to the environment as heat. Because the cell must use energy to maintain life, it has a continuous need for new external sources of energy.

CLINICAL CASE More Than a Sweet Tooth

Dr. Antonia Rivera is a pediatric dentist in St. Louis, Missouri. Her latest patient, 7-year-old Micah Thompson, has just left the office with strict instructions about brushing and flossing regularly. What most worries Dr. Rivera, however, is that Micah is her seventh patient this week to present with multiple dental caries, or cavities. Dr. Rivera is used to seeing some increase in tooth decay after Halloween and Easter, but why are all these children getting cavities in the middle of the summer? When possible, she has been speaking to each of the patient's parents or grandparents, but no one has noticed anything out of the ordinary in the children's diets.

Why do so many of Dr. Rivera's patients have multiple dental caries? Read on to find out.

Before we discuss how cells produce energy, let's first consider the principal properties of a group of proteins involved in almost all biologically important chemical reactions: enzymes. A cell's **metabolic pathways** (sequences of chemical reactions) are determined by its enzymes, which are in turn determined by the cell's genetic makeup.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **5-1** Distinguish catabolism from anabolism.
- **5-2** How is ATP an intermediate between catabolism and anabolism?

Enzymes

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

5-3 Identify the components of an enzyme.
5-4 Describe the mechanism of enzymatic action.
5-5 List the factors that influence enzymatic activity.
5-6 Distinguish competitive and noncompetitive inhibition.
5-7 Define *ribozyme*.

Collision Theory

Chemical reactions occur when chemical bonds are formed or broken. For reactions to take place, atoms, ions, or molecules must collide. The **collision theory** explains how chemical reactions occur and how certain factors affect the rates of those reactions. The basis of the collision theory is that all atoms, ions, and molecules are continuously moving and colliding with one another. The energy transferred by the particles in the collision can disrupt their electron structures enough to break chemical bonds or form new bonds.

Several factors determine whether a collision will cause a chemical reaction: the velocities of the colliding particles, their energy, and their specific chemical configurations. Up to a point, the higher the particles' velocities, the more probable that their collision will cause a reaction. Also, each chemical reaction requires a specific level of energy. But even if colliding particles possess the minimum energy needed for reaction, no reaction will take place unless the particles are properly oriented toward each other.

Let's assume that molecules of substance AB (the reactant) are to be converted to molecules of substances A and B (the products). In a given population of molecules of substance AB, at a specific temperature, some molecules possess relatively little energy; the majority of the population possesses an average amount of energy; and a small portion of the population has high energy. If only the high-energy AB molecules are able to react and be converted to A and B molecules, then only relatively few molecules at any one time will react in a collision. The collision energy required for a chemical reaction is its **activation energy**, which is the amount of energy needed to disrupt the stable electronic configuration of any specific molecule so that the electrons can be rearranged.

The **reaction rate**—the frequency of collisions containing sufficient energy to bring about a reaction—depends on the number of reactant molecules at or above the activation energy level. One way to increase the reaction rate of a substance is to raise its temperature. By causing the molecules to move faster, heat increases both the frequency of collisions and the number of molecules that attain activation energy. The number of collisions also increases when pressure is increased or when the reactants are more concentrated (because the distance between molecules is thereby decreased). In living systems, enzymes increase the reaction rate without raising the temperature.

Enzymes and Chemical Reactions

Substances that can speed up a chemical reaction without being permanently altered themselves are called **catalysts**. In living cells, **enzymes** serve as biological catalysts. As catalysts, each enzyme acts on a specific substance, called the enzyme's **substrate** (or substrates, when there are two or more reactants), and each catalyzes only one reaction. For example, sucrose (table sugar) is the substrate of the enzyme sucrase, which catalyzes the hydrolysis of sucrose to glucose and fructose.

As catalysts, enzymes typically accelerate chemical reactions by lowering their activation energy (Figure 5.2). The

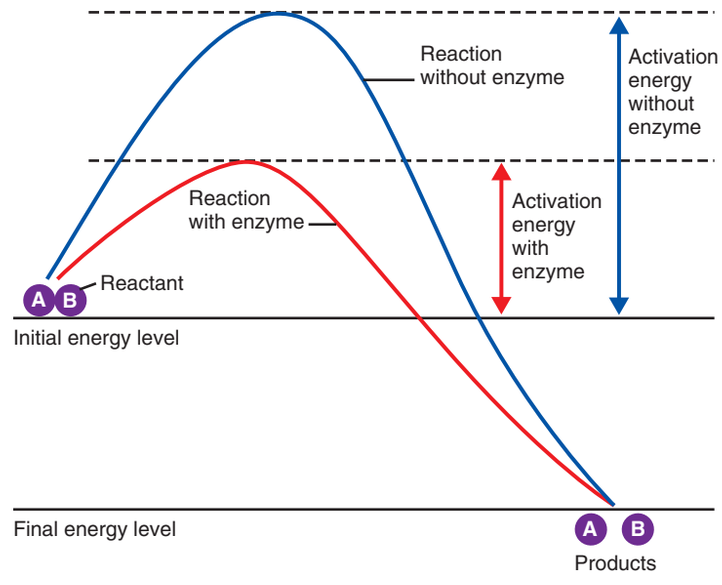
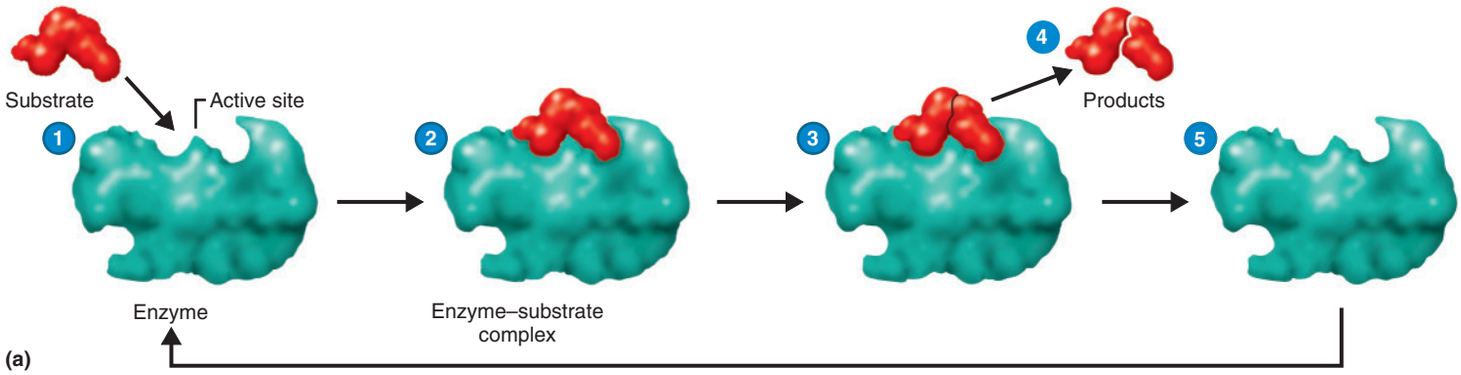


Figure 5.2 Energy requirements of a chemical reaction. This graph shows the progress of the reaction AB → A + B both without (blue line) and with (red line) an enzyme. The presence of an enzyme lowers the activation energy of the reaction (see arrows). Thus, more molecules of reactant AB are converted to products A and B because more molecules of reactant AB possess the activation energy needed for the reaction.

Q Why does a chemical reaction require increased activation energy without an enzyme as a biological catalyst?



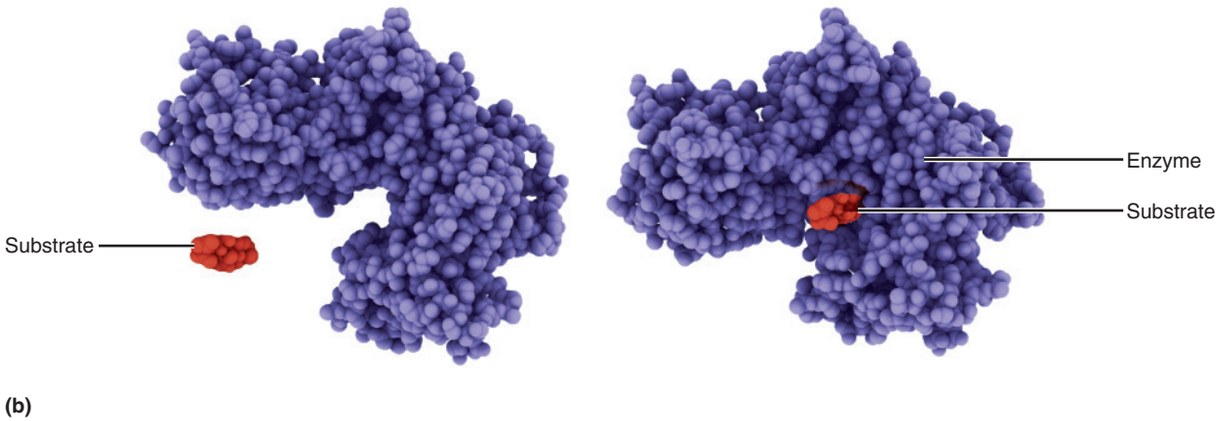


Figure 5.3 The mechanism of enzymatic action. **(a)** 1 The substrate contacts the active site on the enzyme to form 2 an enzyme–substrate complex. 3 The substrate is then transformed into products, 4 the products are released, and 5 the enzyme is recovered unchanged. In the example shown, the transformation into products involves a breakdown of the substrate into two products. Other transformations may occur, however. **(b)** Left: A molecular model of the enzyme in step 1 of part (a). The active site of the enzyme can be seen here as a groove on the surface of the protein. Right: As the enzyme and substrate meet in step 2 of part (a), the enzyme changes shape slightly to fit together more tightly with the substrate.

Q Give an example of enzymatic specificity.

enzyme therefore speeds up the reaction by increasing the number of AB molecules that attain sufficient activation energy to react. The general sequence of events in enzyme action is as follows (Figure 5.3a).

1. The surface of the substrate contacts a specific region of the surface of the enzyme molecule, called the *active site*.
2. A temporary intermediate compound forms, called an **enzyme–substrate complex**. The enzyme orients the substrate into a position that increases the probability of reaction, which enables the collisions to be more effective.
3. The substrate molecule is transformed by the rearrangement of existing atoms, the breakdown of the substrate molecule, or in combination with another substrate molecule.
4. The transformed substrate molecules—the products of the reaction—are released from the enzyme molecule because they no longer fit in the active site of the enzyme.
5. The unchanged enzyme is now free to react with other substrate molecules.

An enzyme's ability to accelerate a reaction without the need for an increase in temperature is crucial to living systems because a significant temperature increase would destroy cellular proteins. The crucial function of enzymes, therefore, is to speed up biochemical reactions at a temperature that is compatible with the normal functioning of the cell.

Enzyme Specificity and Efficiency

Enzymes have specificity for particular substrates. For example, a specific enzyme may be able to hydrolyze a peptide bond only between two specific amino acids. Other enzymes can hydrolyze starch but not cellulose; even though both starch and cellulose are polysaccharides composed of glucose subunits, the

orientations of the subunits in the two polysaccharides differ. Each of the thousands of known enzymes have this specificity because the three-dimensional shape of the specific amino acids of the active site fits the substrate somewhat as a lock fits with its key (Figure 5.3b). The unique configuration of each enzyme enables it to "find" the correct substrate from among the diverse molecules in a cell. However, the active site and substrate are flexible, and they change shape somewhat as they meet to fit together more tightly. The substrate is usually much smaller than the enzyme, and relatively few of the enzyme's amino acids make up the active site. A certain compound can be a substrate for several different enzymes that catalyze different reactions, so the fate of a compound depends on the enzyme that acts on it. At least four different enzymes can act on glucose 6-phosphate, a molecule important in cell metabolism, and each reaction will yield a different product.

Enzymes are extremely efficient. Under optimum conditions, they can catalyze reactions at rates 10^8 to 10^{10} times (up to 10 billion times) higher than those of comparable reactions without enzymes. The **turnover number** (the maximum number of substrate molecules an enzyme molecule converts to product each second) is generally between 1 and 10,000 and can be as high as 500,000. For example, the enzyme DNA polymerase I, which participates in the synthesis of DNA, has a turnover number of 15, whereas the enzyme lactate dehydrogenase, which removes hydrogen atoms from lactic acid, has a turnover number of 1000.

Many enzymes exist in the cell in both active and inactive forms. The rate at which enzymes switch between these two forms is determined by the cellular environment.

Naming Enzymes

The names of enzymes usually end in *-ase*. All enzymes can be grouped into six classes, according to the type of chemical reaction they catalyze (Table 5.1). Enzymes within each of the major classes are named according to the more specific types of reactions they assist. For example, the class called *oxidoreductases* is involved with oxidation-reduction reactions (described shortly). Enzymes in the oxidoreductase class that remove hydrogen (H) from a substrate are called *dehydrogenases;* those that add electrons to molecular oxygen (O_2) are called *oxidases*. As you will see later, dehydrogenase and oxidase enzymes have even more specific names, such as lactate dehydrogenase and cytochrome oxidase, depending on the specific substrates on which they act.

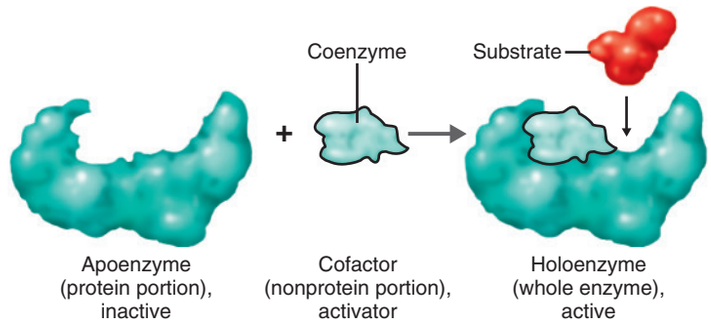


Figure 5.4 Components of a holoenzyme. Many enzymes require both an apoenzyme (protein portion) and a cofactor (nonprotein portion) to become active. The cofactor can be a metal ion, or if it is an organic molecule, it is called a coenzyme (as shown here). The apoenzyme and cofactor together make up the holoenzyme, or whole enzyme. The substrate is the reactant acted upon by the enzyme.

Q How does the enzyme–substrate complex lower the activation energy of the reaction?

Enzyme Components

Although some enzymes consist entirely of proteins, most consist of both a protein portion, called an **apoenzyme**, and a nonprotein component, called a **cofactor**. Ions of iron, zinc, magnesium, or calcium are examples of cofactors. If the cofactor is an organic molecule, it is called a **coenzyme**. Apoenzymes are inactive by themselves; they must be activated by cofactors. Together, the apoenzyme and cofactor form a **holoenzyme**, or whole, active enzyme (Figure 5.4). If the cofactor is removed, the apoenzyme will not function.

TABLE 5.1 Enzyme Classification Based on Type of Chemical Reaction Catalyzed

Class	Type of Chemical Reaction Catalyzed	Examples
Oxidoreductase	Oxidation-reduction, in which oxygen and hydrogen are gained or lost	Cytochrome oxidase, lactate dehydrogenase
Transferase	Transfer of functional groups, such as an amino group, acetyl group, or phosphate group	Acetate kinase, alanine deaminase
Hydrolase	Hydrolysis (addition of water)	Lipase, sucrase
Lyase	Removal of groups of atoms without hydrolysis	Oxalate decarboxylase, isocitrate lyase
Isomerase	Rearrangement of atoms within a molecule	Glucose-phosphate isomerase, alanine racemase
Ligase	Joining of two molecules (using energy usually derived from the breakdown of ATP)	Acetyl-CoA synthetase, DNA ligase

TABLE 5.2 Selected Vitamins and Their Coenzymatic Functions

Vitamin	Function
Vitamin B_1 (Thiamine)	Part of coenzyme cocarboxylase; has many functions, including the metabolism of pyruvic acid
Vitamin B_2 (Riboflavin)	Coenzyme in flavoproteins; active in electron transfers
Niacin (Nicotinic Acid, B_3)	Part of NAD molecule*; active in electron transfers
Vitamin B_6 (Pyridoxine)	Coenzyme in amino acid metabolism
Vitamin B_{12} (Cyanocobalamin)	Coenzyme (methyl cyanocobalamide) involved in the transfer of methyl groups; active in amino acid metabolism
Pantothenic Acid (B_5)	Part of coenzyme A molecule; involved in the metabolism of pyruvic acid and lipids
Biotin (B_7)	Involved in carbon dioxide fixation reactions and fatty acid synthesis
Folic Acid (B_9)	Coenzyme used in the synthesis of purines and pyrimidines
Vitamin E	Needed for cellular and macromolecular syntheses
Vitamin K	Coenzyme used in electron transport

*NAD = nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide.

Cofactors may help catalyze a reaction by forming a bridge between an enzyme and its substrate. For example, magnesium (Mg^{2+}) is required by many phosphorylating enzymes (enzymes that transfer a phosphate group from ATP to another substrate). The Mg^{2+} can form a link between the enzyme and the ATP molecule. Most trace elements required by living cells are probably used in some such way to activate cellular enzymes.

Coenzymes may assist the enzyme by accepting atoms removed from the substrate or by donating atoms required by the substrate. Some coenzymes act as electron carriers, removing electrons from the substrate and donating them to other molecules in subsequent reactions. Many coenzymes are derived from vitamins (Table 5.2). Two of the most important coenzymes in cellular metabolism are **nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide** (**NAD^+**) and **nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate** (**$NADP^+$**). Both compounds contain derivatives of the B vitamin niacin (nicotinic acid), and both function as electron carriers. Whereas NAD^+ is primarily involved in catabolic (energy-yielding) reactions, $NADP^+$ is primarily involved in anabolic (energy-requiring) reactions. The flavin coenzymes, such as **flavin mononucleotide (FMN)** and **flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD)**, contain derivatives of the B vitamin riboflavin and are also electron carriers. Another important coenzyme, **coenzyme A (CoA)**, contains a derivative of pantothenic acid, another B vitamin. This coenzyme plays an important role in the synthesis and breakdown of fats and in a series of oxidizing reactions called the Krebs cycle. We will come across all of these coenzymes in our discussion of metabolism later in the chapter.

Factors Influencing Enzymatic Activity

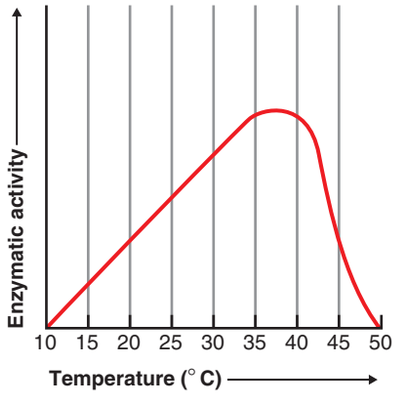
Enzymes are subject to various cellular controls. Two primary types are the control of enzyme *synthesis* (see Chapter 8) and the control of enzyme *activity* (how much enzyme is present versus how active it is).

Several factors influence the activity of an enzyme. Among the more important are temperature, pH, substrate concentration, and the presence or absence of inhibitors.

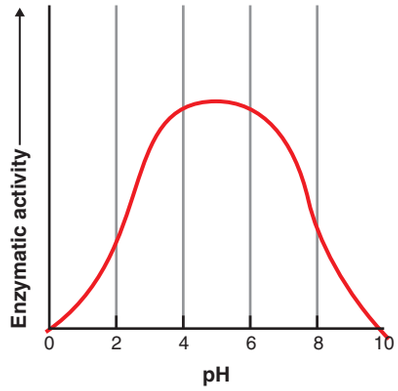
Temperature

The rate of most chemical reactions increases as the temperature increases. Molecules move more slowly at lower temperatures than at higher temperatures and so may not have enough energy to cause a chemical reaction. For enzymatic reactions, however, elevation beyond a certain temperature (the optimal temperature) drastically reduces the rate of reaction (Figure 5.5a). The optimal temperature for most disease-producing bacteria in the human body is between 35°C and 40°C. The rate of reaction declines beyond the optimal temperature because of the enzyme's **denaturation**, the loss of its characteristic three-dimensional structure (tertiary configuration) (Figure 5.6). Denaturation of a protein involves the breakage of hydrogen bonds and other noncovalent bonds; a common example is the transformation of uncooked egg white (a protein called albumin) to a hardened state by heat.

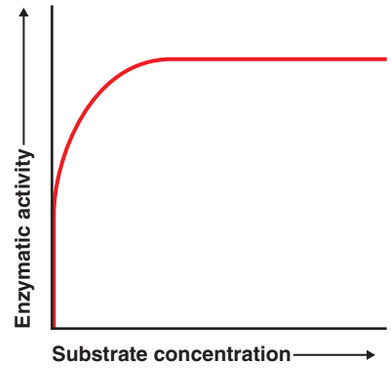
Denaturation of an enzyme changes the arrangement of the amino acids in the active site, altering its shape and causing the enzyme to lose its catalytic ability. In some cases, denaturation is partially or fully reversible. However, if denaturation continues until the enzyme has lost its solubility and coagulates, the enzyme cannot regain its original properties. Enzymes can also be denatured by concentrated acids, bases, heavy-metal ions (such as lead, arsenic, or mercury), alcohol, and ultraviolet radiation.



(a) Temperature. The enzymatic activity (rate of reaction catalyzed by the enzyme) increases with increasing temperature until the enzyme, a protein, is denatured by heat and inactivated. At this point, the reaction rate falls steeply.



(b) pH. The enzyme illustrated is most active at about pH 5.0.



(c) Substrate concentration. With increasing concentration of substrate molecules, the rate of reaction increases until the active sites on all the enzyme molecules are filled, at which point the maximum rate of reaction is reached.

Figure 5.5 Factors that influence enzymatic activity, plotted for a hypothetical enzyme.

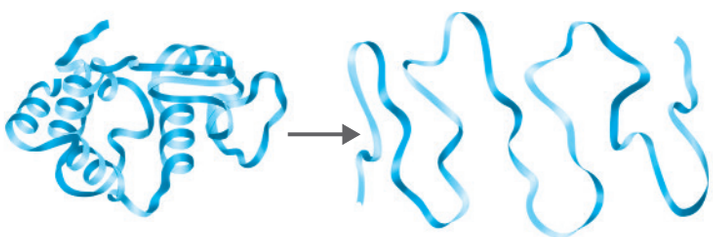
Q How will this enzyme act at 25°C? At 45°C? At pH 7?

pH

Typically, enzymes have an optimum pH at which they are most active. Above or below this pH value, enzyme activity, and therefore the reaction rate, decline (Figure 5.5b). When the H^+ concentration (pH) in the medium is changed drastically, the protein's three-dimensional structure is altered. Extreme changes in pH can cause denaturation. Acids (and bases) alter a protein's three-dimensional structure because the H^+ (and OH^-) compete with hydrogen and ionic bonds in an enzyme, resulting in the enzyme's denaturation.

Substrate Concentration

Under conditions of high substrate concentration, an enzyme is said to be in **saturation**; that is, its active site is always occupied by substrate or product molecules, and it's catalyzing a specific reaction at its maximum rate. This maximum rate can be attained only when the concentration of substrate(s) is extremely high. In this condition, a further increase in substrate concentration will not affect the reaction rate because all active sites are already in use (Figure 5.5c). Under normal cellular conditions, enzymes are not saturated with substrate(s). At any given time, many of the enzyme molecules are inactive for lack of substrate; thus, the substrate concentration is likely to influence the rate of reaction.



Active (functional) protein Denatured protein

Figure 5.6 Denaturation of a protein. Breakage of the noncovalent bonds (such as hydrogen bonds) that hold the active protein in its three-dimensional shape renders the denatured protein nonfunctional.

Q When is denaturation irreversible?

Inhibitors

An effective way to control the growth of bacteria is to control, or inhibit, their enzymes. Certain poisons, such as cyanide, arsenic, and mercury, combine with enzymes and prevent the bacteria from functioning. As a result, the cells stop functioning and die.

Enzyme inhibitors are classified as either competitive or noncompetitive inhibitors (Figure 5.7). **Competitive inhibitors** fill the active site of an enzyme and compete with the normal substrate for the active site. A competitive inhibitor can do this because its shape and chemical structure are similar to those of the normal substrate (Figure 5.7b). However, unlike the substrate, it does not undergo any reaction to form products. Some competitive inhibitors bind irreversibly to amino acids in the active site, preventing any further interactions with the substrate. Others bind reversibly, alternately occupying and leaving the active site; these slow the enzyme's interaction with the substrate. Increasing the substrate concentration can overcome reversible competitive inhibition. As active sites become available, more substrate molecules than competitive inhibitor molecules are available to attach to the active sites of enzymes.

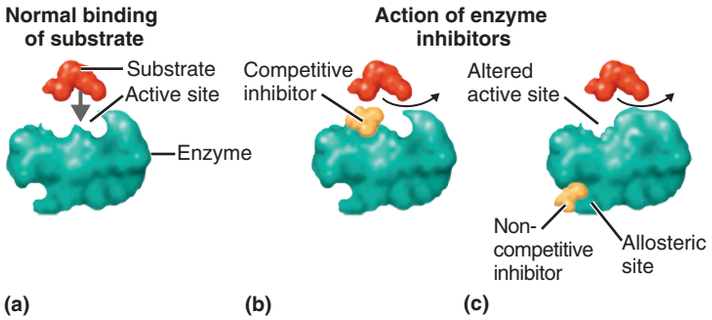
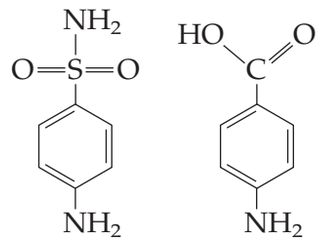


Figure 5.7 Enzyme inhibitors. **(a)** An uninhibited enzyme and its normal substrate. **(b)** A competitive inhibitor. **(c)** One type of noncompetitive inhibitor, causing allosteric inhibition.

Q How do competitive inhibitors operate in comparison to noncompetitive inhibitors?

One good example of a competitive inhibitor is sulfanilamide (a potent antibacterial drug), which inhibits the enzyme whose normal substrate is *para*-aminobenzoic acid (PABA):



Sulfanilamide PABA

PABA is an essential nutrient used by many bacteria in the synthesis of folic acid, a vitamin that functions as a coenzyme. When sulfanilamide is administered to bacteria, the enzyme that normally converts PABA to folic acid combines instead with the sulfanilamide. Folic acid is not synthesized, and the bacteria cannot grow. Because human cells do not use PABA to make their folic acid, sulfanilamide can kill bacteria but does not harm human cells.

Noncompetitive inhibitors do not compete with the substrate for the enzyme's active site; instead, they interact with another part of the enzyme (Figure 5.7c). In this process, called **allosteric** ("other space") **inhibition**, the inhibitor binds to a site on the enzyme other than the substrate's binding site, called the **allosteric site**. This binding causes the active site to change its shape, making it nonfunctional. As a result, the enzyme's activity is reduced. This effect can be either reversible or irreversible, depending on whether the active site can return to its original shape. In some cases, allosteric interactions can activate an enzyme rather than inhibit it. Another type of noncompetitive inhibition can operate on enzymes that require metal ions for their activity. Certain chemicals can bind or tie up the metal ion activators and thus prevent an enzymatic reaction. Cyanide can bind the iron in iron-containing enzymes, and fluoride can bind calcium or magnesium. Substances such as cyanide and fluoride are sometimes called *enzyme poisons* because they permanently inactivate enzymes.

Feedback Inhibition

Noncompetitive, or allosteric, inhibitors play a role in a type of biochemical control called **feedback inhibition**, or **end-product inhibition**. This control mechanism stops the cell from making more of a substance than it needs and thereby wasting chemical resources. In some metabolic reactions, several steps are required for the synthesis of a particular chemical compound, called the **end-product**. The process is similar to an assembly line, with each step catalyzed by a separate enzyme (Figure 5.8). In many metabolic pathways, the end-product can allosterically inhibit the activity of one of the enzymes earlier in the pathway.

Feedback inhibition generally acts on the first enzyme in a metabolic pathway (similar to shutting down an assembly line by stopping the first worker). Because the enzyme is inhibited, the product of the first enzymatic reaction in the pathway is not synthesized. Because that unsynthesized product would normally be the substrate for the second enzyme in the pathway, the second reaction stops immediately as well. Thus, even though only the first enzyme in the pathway is inhibited, the entire pathway shuts down, and no new end-product is formed. By inhibiting the first enzyme in the pathway, the cell also keeps metabolic intermediates from accumulating. As the cell uses up the existing end-product, the first enzyme's allosteric site remains unbound more frequently, and the pathway resumes activity.

The bacterium *Escherichia coli* can be used to demonstrate feedback inhibition in the synthesis of the amino acid isoleucine, which is required for the cell growth. In this metabolic pathway, the amino acid threonine is enzymatically converted to isoleucine in five steps. If isoleucine is added to the growth medium for *E. coli*, it inhibits the first enzyme in the pathway, and the bacteria stop synthesizing isoleucine. This condition is maintained until the supply of isoleucine is depleted. This type of feedback inhibition is also involved in regulating the cells' production of other amino acids, as well as vitamins, purines, and pyrimidines.

Ribozymes

Prior to 1982, it was believed that only protein molecules had enzymatic activity. Then researchers working on microbes discovered a unique type of RNA called a **ribozyme**. Like protein

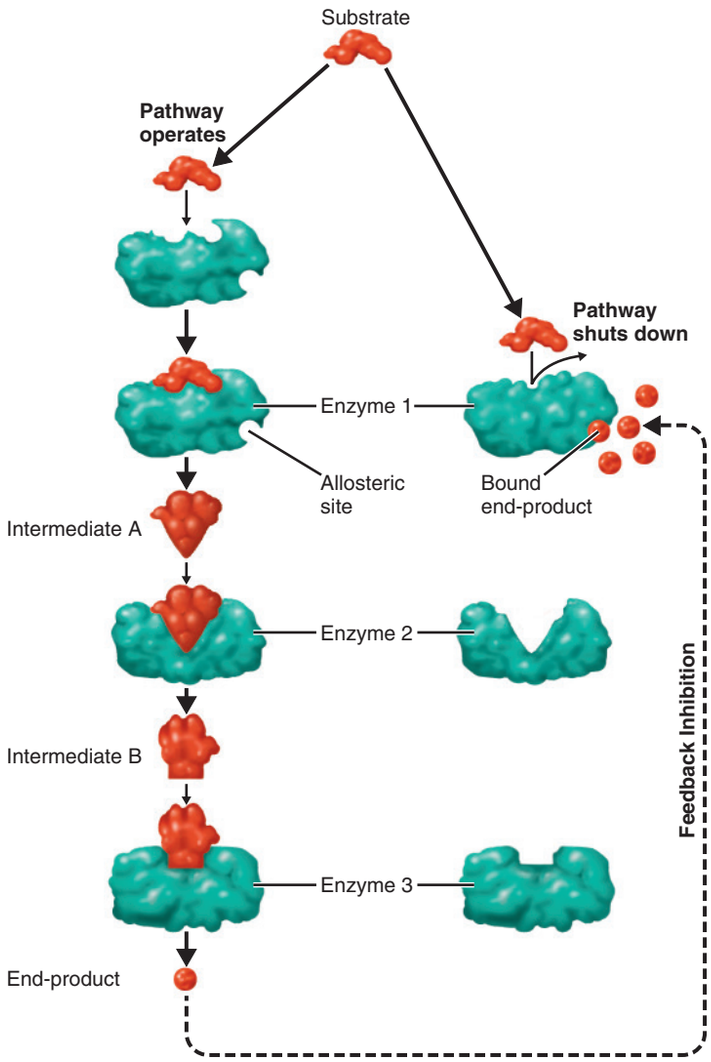


Figure 5.8 **Feedback inhibition.**

Q **Explain the differences between competitive inhibition and feedback inhibition.**

enzymes, ribozymes function as catalysts, have active sites that bind to substrates, and are not used up in a chemical reaction. Ribozymes cut and splice RNA and are involved in protein synthesis at ribosomes.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **5-3** What is a coenzyme?
- **5-4** Why is enzyme specificity important?
- **5-5** What happens to an enzyme below its optimal temperature? Above its optimal temperature?
- **5-6** Why is feedback inhibition noncompetitive inhibition?
- **5-7** What is a ribozyme?

Energy Production

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **5-8** Explain the term *oxidation-reduction*.
- **5-9** List and provide examples of three types of phosphorylation reactions that generate ATP.
- **5-10** Explain the overall function of metabolic pathways.

Nutrient molecules, like all molecules, have energy associated with the electrons that form bonds between their atoms. When it's spread throughout the molecule, this energy is difficult for the cell to use. Various reactions in catabolic pathways, however, concentrate the energy into the bonds of ATP, which serves as a convenient energy carrier. ATP is generally referred to as having "high-energy" bonds. Actually, a better term is probably *unstable bonds*, because the amount of energy in these bonds is not exceptionally large, but it can be released quickly and easily. In a sense, ATP is similar to a highly flammable liquid such as kerosene. Although a large log might eventually burn to produce more heat than a cup of kerosene, the kerosene is easier to ignite and provides heat more quickly and conveniently. In a similar way, the "high-energy" unstable bonds of ATP provide the cell with readily available energy for anabolic reactions.

Before discussing the catabolic pathways, we will consider two general aspects of energy production: the concept of oxidation-reduction and the mechanisms of ATP generation.

Oxidation-Reduction Reactions

Oxidation is the removal of electrons (e^-) from an atom or molecule, a reaction that often produces energy. Figure 5.9 shows an example of an oxidation in which molecule A loses an electron to molecule B. Molecule A has undergone oxidation (meaning that it has lost one or more electrons), whereas molecule B has undergone **reduction** (meaning that it has gained one or more electrons).* Oxidation and reduction reactions are always coupled: each time one substance is oxidized, another is simultaneously reduced. The pairing of these reactions is called **oxidation-reduction** or a **redox reaction**.

In many cellular oxidations, protons (hydrogen ions, H^+) and electrons are removed at the same time; this is equivalent to the removal of hydrogen atoms, because a hydrogen atom is made up of one proton and one electron (see Table 2.2).

* The terms do not seem logical until one considers the history of the discovery of these reactions. When mercury is heated, it gains weight as mercuric oxide is formed; this was called *oxidation*. Later it was determined that the mercury actually *lost* electrons, and the observed *gain* in oxygen was a direct result of this. Oxidation, therefore, is a *loss* of electrons, and reduction is a *gain* of electrons, but the gain and loss of electrons is not usually apparent as chemical-reaction equations are usually written. For example, in this chapter's equations for aerobic respiration, notice that each carbon in glucose had only one oxygen originally, and later, as carbon dioxide, each carbon now has two oxygens. However, the gain or loss of electrons is not apparent in the equations.

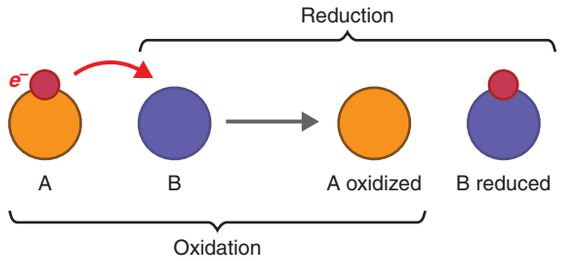


Figure 5.9 Oxidation-reduction. An electron is transferred from molecule A to molecule B. In the process, molecule A is oxidized, and molecule B is reduced.

Q How do oxidation and reduction differ?

Because most biological oxidations involve the loss of hydrogen atoms, they are also called **dehydrogenation** reactions. Figure 5.10 shows an example of a biological oxidation. An organic molecule is oxidized by the loss of two hydrogen atoms, and a molecule of NAD^+ is reduced. Remember that NAD^+ assists enzymes by accepting hydrogen atoms that have been removed from the substrate, in this case the organic molecule. As shown in Figure 5.10, NAD^+ accepts two electrons and one proton. One proton (H^+) is left over and is released into the surrounding medium. The reduced coenzyme, NADH, contains more energy than NAD^+. This energy can be used to generate ATP in later reactions.

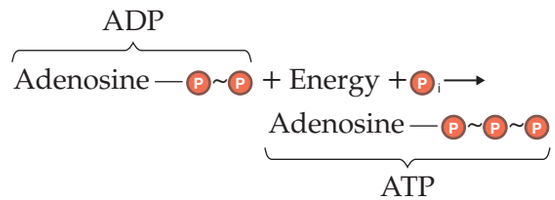
It's important to remember that cells use biological oxidation-reduction reactions in catabolism to extract energy from nutrient molecules. Cells take nutrients, some of which serve as energy sources, and degrade them from highly reduced compounds (with many hydrogen atoms) to highly oxidized compounds. For example, when a cell oxidizes a molecule of glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$) to CO_2 and H_2O, the energy in the glucose molecule is removed in a stepwise manner and ultimately is trapped by ATP, which can then serve as an energy source for energy-requiring reactions. Compounds such as glucose that have many hydrogen atoms are highly reduced compounds, containing a large amount of potential energy. Thus, glucose is a valuable nutrient for organisms.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

5-8 Why is glucose such an important molecule for organisms?

The Generation of ATP

Much of the energy released during oxidation-reduction reactions is trapped within the cell by the formation of ATP. Specifically, an inorganic phosphate group, P_i, is added to ADP with the input of energy to form ATP:



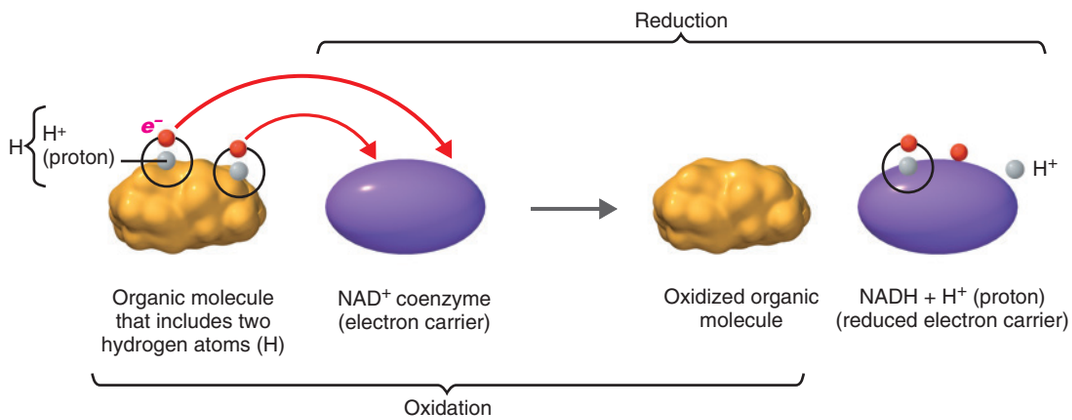
The symbol ~ designates a "high-energy" bond that can readily be broken to release usable energy. The high-energy bond that attaches the third P contains the energy stored in this reaction, in a sense. When this P is removed, usable energy is released. The addition of P to a chemical compound is called **phosphorylation**. Organisms use three mechanisms of phosphorylation to generate ATP from ADP.

Substrate-Level Phosphorylation

In **substrate-level phosphorylation**, ATP is usually generated when a high-energy P is directly transferred from a phosphorylated compound (a substrate) to ADP. Generally, the P has acquired its energy during an earlier reaction in which the substrate itself was oxidized. The following example shows only the carbon skeleton and the P of a typical substrate:

Figure 5.10 Representative biological oxidation. Two electrons and two protons (altogether equivalent to two hydrogen atoms) are transferred from an organic substrate molecule to a coenzyme, NAD^+. NAD^+ actually receives one hydrogen atom and two electrons, and one proton is released into the medium. NAD^+ is reduced to NADH, which is a more energy-rich molecule.

Q How do organisms use oxidation-reduction reactions?



Oxidative Phosphorylation

In **oxidative phosphorylation**, electrons are transferred from organic compounds to one group of electron carriers (usually to NAD^+ and FAD). Then the electrons are passed through a series of different electron carriers to molecules of oxygen (O_2) or other oxidized inorganic and organic molecules. This process occurs in the plasma membrane of prokaryotes and in the inner mitochondrial membrane of eukaryotes. The sequence of electron carriers used in oxidative phosphorylation is called an **electron transport chain (system)** (see Figure 5.14). The transfer of electrons from one electron carrier to the next releases energy, some of which is used to generate ATP from ADP through a process called **chemiosmosis**, to be described shortly.

Photophosphorylation

The third mechanism of phosphorylation, **photophosphorylation**, occurs only in photosynthetic cells, which contain light-trapping pigments such as chlorophylls. In photosynthesis, organic molecules, especially sugars, are synthesized with the energy of light from the energy-poor building blocks, carbon dioxide and water. Photophosphorylation starts this process by converting light energy to the chemical energy of ATP and NADPH, which, in turn, are used to synthesize organic molecules. As in oxidative phosphorylation, an electron transport chain is involved.

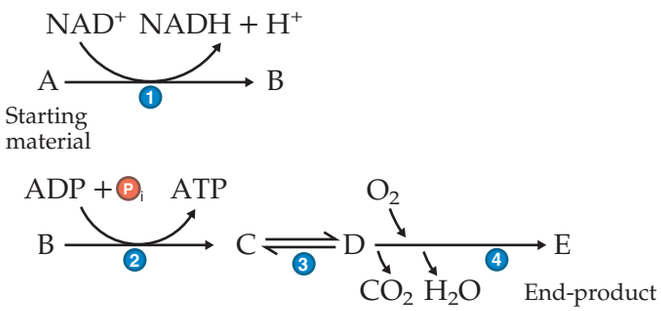
CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

5-9 Outline the three ways that ATP is generated.

Metabolic Pathways of Energy Production

Organisms release and store energy from organic molecules by a series of controlled reactions rather than in a single burst. If the energy were released all at once as a large amount of heat, it could not be readily used to drive chemical reactions and would, in fact, damage the cell. To extract energy from organic compounds and store it in chemical form, organisms pass electrons from one compound to another through a series of oxidation-reduction reactions.

As noted earlier, a sequence of enzymatically catalyzed chemical reactions occurring in a cell is called a metabolic pathway. Following is a hypothetical metabolic pathway that converts starting material A to end-product E in a series of five steps.



1. Molecule A converts to molecule B. The curved arrow indicates that the reduction of coenzyme NAD^+ to NADH is coupled to that reaction; the electrons and protons come from molecule A.
2. Similarly, the arrow shows a coupling of two reactions. As B is converted to C, ADP is converted to ATP; the energy needed comes from B as it transforms into C.
3. The reaction converting C to D is readily reversible, as indicated by the double arrow.
4. The arrow leading from O_2 indicates that O_2 is a reactant. The arrows leading to CO_2 and H_2O indicate that these substances are secondary products produced in the reaction, in addition to E, the end-product that (presumably) interests us the most.

Secondary products, such as CO_2 and H_2O, are sometimes called *by-products* or *waste products*.

Keep in mind that almost every reaction in a metabolic pathway is catalyzed by a specific enzyme; sometimes the name of the enzyme is printed near the arrow.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

5-10 What is the purpose of metabolic pathways?

Carbohydrate Catabolism

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

5-11 Describe the chemical reactions of glycolysis.

5-12 Identify the functions of the pentose phosphate and Entner-Doudoroff pathways.

5-13 Explain the products of the Krebs cycle.

5-14 Describe the chemiosmotic mechanism of ATP generation.

5-15 Compare and contrast aerobic and anaerobic respiration.

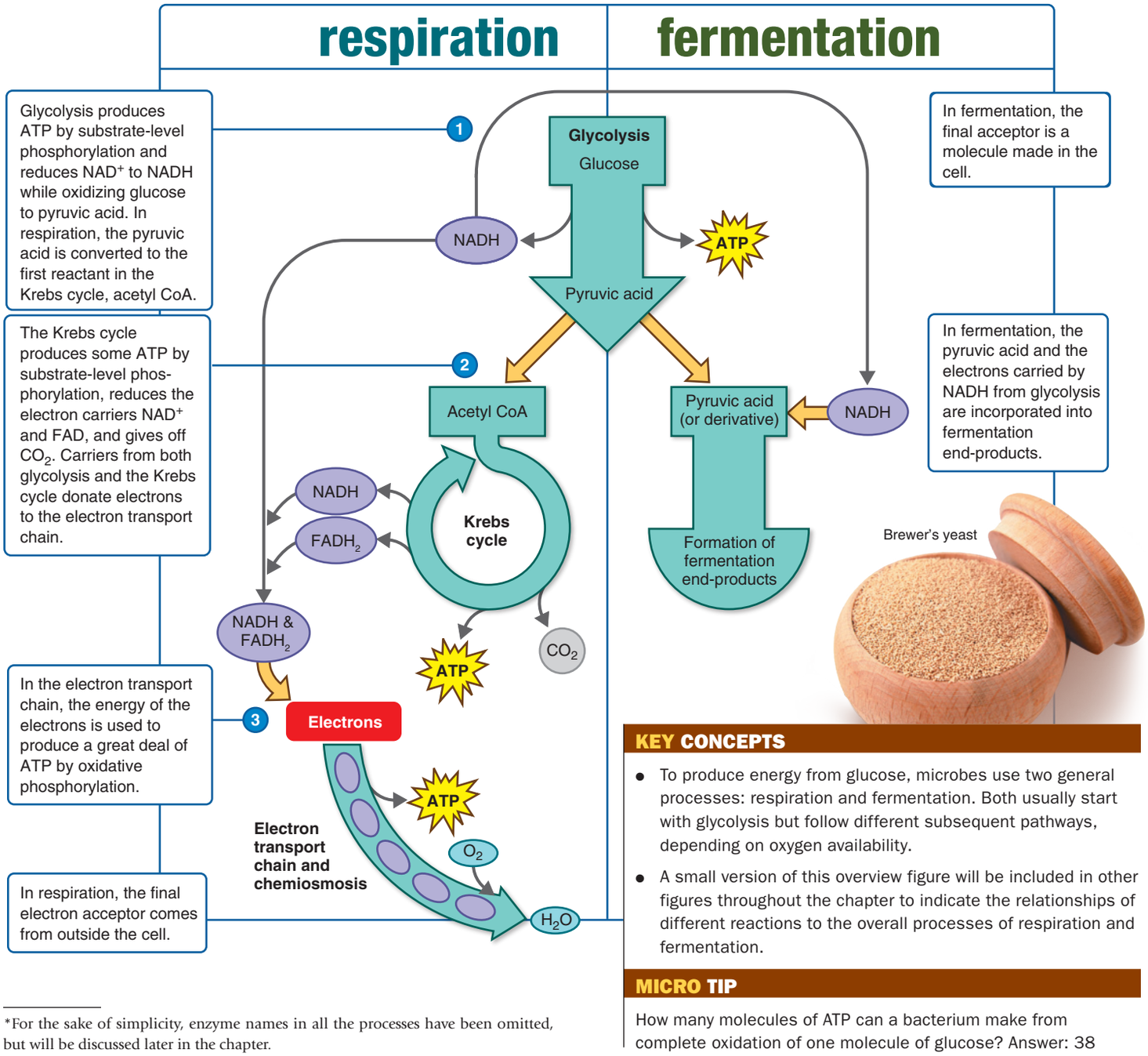
5-16 Describe the chemical reactions of, and list some products of, fermentation.

Most microorganisms oxidize carbohydrates as their primary source of cellular energy. **Carbohydrate catabolism**, the breakdown of carbohydrate molecules to produce energy, is therefore of great importance in cell metabolism. Glucose is the most common carbohydrate energy source used by cells. Microorganisms can also catabolize various lipids and proteins for energy production.

To produce energy from glucose, microorganisms use two general processes: *cellular respiration* and *fermentation*. (In discussing cellular respiration, we frequently refer to the process simply as respiration, but it should not be confused with breathing.) Both cellular respiration and fermentation usually start with the same first step, glycolysis, but follow different subsequent pathways (Figure 5.11). Before examining the details of glycolysis, respiration, and fermentation, we will first look at a general overview of the processes.

FOUNDATION FIGURE 5.11

An Overview of Respiration and Fermentation*



KEY CONCEPTS

- To produce energy from glucose, microbes use two general processes: respiration and fermentation. Both usually start with glycolysis but follow different subsequent pathways, depending on oxygen availability.
- A small version of this overview figure will be included in other figures throughout the chapter to indicate the relationships of different reactions to the overall processes of respiration and fermentation.

MICRO TIP

How many molecules of ATP can a bacterium make from complete oxidation of one molecule of glucose? Answer: 38

*For the sake of simplicity, enzyme names in all the processes have been omitted, but will be discussed later in the chapter.

As shown in Figure 5.11, the respiration of glucose typically occurs in three principal stages: glycolysis, the Krebs cycle, and the electron transport chain (system).

1. Glycolysis is the oxidation of glucose to pyruvic acid with the production of some ATP and energy-containing NADH.
2. The Krebs cycle is the oxidation of acetyl CoA (a derivative of pyruvic acid) to carbon dioxide, with the production of some ATP, energy-containing NADH, and another reduced electron carrier, $FADH_2$ (the reduced form of flavin adenine dinucleotide).
3. In the electron transport chain (system), NADH and $FADH_2$ are oxidized, contributing the electrons they have carried from the substrates to a "cascade" of oxidation-reduction reactions involving a series of additional electron

carriers. Energy from these reactions is used to generate a considerable amount of ATP. In respiration, most of the ATP is generated in the third step.

Because respiration involves a long series of oxidation-reduction reactions, the entire process can be thought of as involving a flow of electrons from the energy-rich glucose molecule to the relatively energy-poor CO_2 and H_2O molecules. The coupling of ATP production to this flow is somewhat analogous to producing electrical power by using energy from a flowing stream. Carrying the analogy further, you could imagine a stream flowing down a gentle slope during glycolysis and the Krebs cycle, supplying energy to turn two old-fashioned waterwheels. Then the stream rushes down a steep slope in the electron transport chain, supplying energy for a large modern power plant. In a similar way, glycolysis and the Krebs cycle generate a small amount of ATP and also supply the electrons that generate a great deal of ATP at the electron transport chain stage.

Typically, the initial stage of fermentation is also glycolysis (Figure 5.11). However, once glycolysis has taken place, the pyruvic acid is converted into one or more different products, depending on the type of cell. These products might include alcohol (ethanol) and lactic acid. Unlike respiration, there is no Krebs cycle or electron transport chain in fermentation. Accordingly, the ATP yield, which comes only from glycolysis, is much lower.

Glycolysis

Glycolysis, the oxidation of glucose to pyruvic acid, is usually the first stage in carbohydrate catabolism. Most microorganisms use this pathway; in fact, it occurs in most living cells.

Glycolysis is also called the *Embden-Meyerhof pathway*. The word *glycolysis* means splitting of sugar, and this is exactly what happens. The enzymes of glycolysis catalyze the splitting of glucose, a six-carbon sugar, into two three-carbon sugars. These sugars are then oxidized, releasing energy, and their atoms are rearranged to form two molecules of pyruvic acid. During glycolysis NAD^+ is reduced to NADH, and there is a net production of two ATP molecules by substrate-level phosphorylation. Glycolysis does not require oxygen; it can occur whether oxygen is present or not. This pathway is a series of ten chemical reactions, each catalyzed by a different enzyme. The steps are outlined in Figure 5.12; see also Figure A.2 in Appendix A for a more detailed representation of glycolysis.

To summarize the process, glycolysis consists of two basic stages, a preparatory stage and an energy-conserving stage:

1. First, in the preparatory stage (steps 1–4 in Figure 5.12), two molecules of ATP are used as a six-carbon glucose molecule is phosphorylated, restructured, and split into two three-carbon compounds: glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (GP) and dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP). 5 DHAP is readily converted to GP. (The reverse reaction may also occur.) The conversion of DHAP into GP means that from this point on in glycolysis, two molecules of GP are fed into the remaining chemical reactions.
2. In the energy-conserving stage (steps 6–10), the two three-carbon molecules are oxidized in several steps to two molecules of pyruvic acid. In these reactions, two molecules of NAD^+ are reduced to NADH, and four molecules of ATP are formed by substrate-level phosphorylation.

Because two molecules of ATP were needed to get glycolysis started and four molecules of ATP are generated by the process, *there is a net gain of two molecules of ATP for each molecule of glucose that is oxidized*.

Additional Pathways to Glycolysis

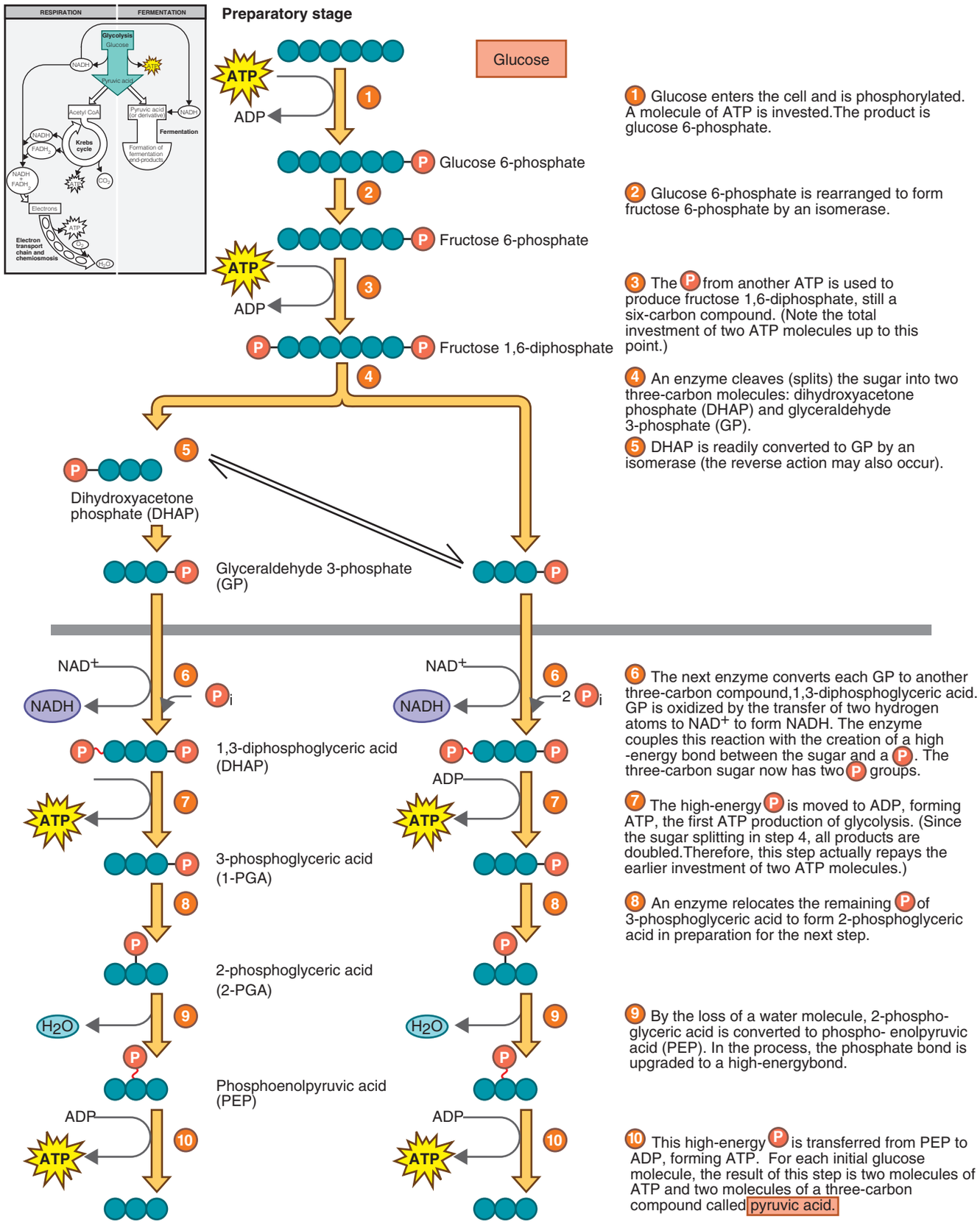
Many bacteria have another pathway in addition to glycolysis for the oxidation of glucose. The most common alternative is the *pentose phosphate pathway;* another alternative is the *Entner-Doudoroff pathway.*

The Pentose Phosphate Pathway

The **pentose phosphate pathway** (or *hexose monophosphate shunt*) operates simultaneously with glycolysis and provides a means for the breakdown of five-carbon sugars (pentoses) as well as glucose (see Figure A.3 in Appendix A for a more detailed representation of the pentose phosphate pathway). A key feature of this pathway is that it produces important intermediate pentoses used in the synthesis of (1) nucleic acids, (2) glucose from carbon dioxide in photosynthesis, and (3) certain amino acids. The pathway is an important producer of the reduced coenzyme NADPH from $NADP^+$. The pentose phosphate pathway yields a net gain of only one molecule of ATP for each molecule of glucose oxidized. Bacteria that use the pentose phosphate pathway include *Bacillus subtilis* (SUH-til-us), *E. coli*, *Leuconostoc mesenteroides* (loo-kō-NOS-tok mes'en-TER-oi-dēz), and *Enterococcus faecalis* (fē-KĀ-lis). This pathway also takes place in human cells.

The Entner-Doudoroff Pathway

From each molecule of glucose, the **Entner-Doudoroff pathway** produces one NADPH, one NADH, and one ATP for use in cellular biosynthetic reactions (see Figure A.4 in Appendix A for a more detailed representation). Bacteria that have the enzymes for the Entner-Doudoroff pathway can metabolize glucose without either glycolysis or the pentose phosphate pathway. The Entner-Doudoroff pathway is found in some gram-negative bacteria, including *Rhizobium* (rī-ZŌ-bē-um), *Pseudomonas* (soo'dō-MŌ-nas), *Agrobacterium* (A-grō-bak-ti'rē-um), and cyanobacteria; it is generally not found among gram-positive bacteria. This pathway also occurs in archaea, algae, and plants. Tests for the ability to oxidize glucose by this pathway are sometimes used to identify *Pseudomonas* in the clinical laboratory.



1 Glucose enters the cell and is phosphorylated. A molecule of ATP is invested.The product is glucose 6-phosphate.

2 Glucose 6-phosphate is rearranged to form fructose 6-phosphate by an isomerase.

3 The P from another ATP is used to produce fructose 1,6-diphosphate, still a six-carbon compound. (Note the total investment of two ATP molecules up to this point.)

4 An enzyme cleaves (splits) the sugar into two three-carbon molecules: dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP) and glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (GP).

5 DHAP is readily converted to GP by an isomerase (the reverse action may also occur).

6 The next enzyme converts each GP to another three-carbon compound,1,3-diphosphoglyceric acid. GP is oxidized by the transfer of two hydrogen atoms to NAD^+ to form NADH. The enzyme couples this reaction with the creation of a high -energy bond between the sugar and a P. The three-carbon sugar now has two P groups.

7 The high-energy P is moved to ADP, forming ATP, the first ATP production of glycolysis. (Since the sugar splitting in step 4, all products are doubled.Therefore, this step actually repays the earlier investment of two ATP molecules.)

8 An enzyme relocates the remaining P of 3-phosphoglyceric acid to form 2-phosphoglyceric acid in preparation for the next step.

9 By the loss of a water molecule, 2-phospho-glyceric acid is converted to phospho- enolpyruvic acid (PEP). In the process, the phosphate bond is upgraded to a high-energybond.

10 This high-energy P is transferred from PEP to ADP, forming ATP. For each initial glucose molecule, the result of this step is two molecules of ATP and two molecules of a three-carbon compound called pyruvic acid.

Figure 5.12 An outline of the reactions of glycolysis (Embden-Meyerhof pathway). The inset indicates the relationship of glycolysis to the overall processes of respiration and fermentation. A more detailed version of glycolysis is presented in Figure A.2 in Appendix A.

Q What is glycolysis?

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **5-11** What happens during the preparatory and energy-conserving stages of glycolysis?
- **5-12** What is the value of the pentose phosphate and Entner-Doudoroff pathways if they produce only one ATP molecule?

Cellular Respiration

After glucose has been broken down to pyruvic acid, the pyruvic acid can be channeled into the next step of either fermentation or cellular respiration (see Figure 5.11). **Cellular respiration**, or simply **respiration**, is defined as an ATP-generating process in which molecules are oxidized and the final electron acceptor comes from outside the cell and is (almost always) an inorganic molecule. An essential feature of respiration is the operation of an electron transport chain.

There are two types of respiration, depending on whether an organism is an **aerobe**, which uses oxygen, or an **anaerobe**, which does not use oxygen and may even be killed by it. In **aerobic respiration**, the final electron acceptor is O_2; in **anaerobic respiration**, the final electron acceptor is an inorganic molecule other than O_2 or, rarely, an organic molecule. First we will describe respiration as it typically occurs in an aerobic cell.

Aerobic Respiration

The Krebs Cycle The **Krebs cycle**, also called the *tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle* or *citric acid cycle*, is a series of biochemical reactions in which the large amount of potential chemical energy stored in acetyl CoA is released step by step. In this cycle, a series of oxidations and reductions transfer that potential energy, in the form of electrons, to electron carrier coenzymes, chiefly NAD^+ and $FADH_2$ (Figure 5.13). The pyruvic acid derivatives are oxidized; the coenzymes are reduced.

Pyruvic acid, the product of glycolysis, cannot enter the Krebs cycle directly. In a transition step, it must lose the carboxyl (−COOH) group and become a two-carbon compound (Figure 5.13). This process, called **decarboxylation**, releases one CO_2. The two-carbon compound, called an *acetyl group*, attaches to coenzyme A through a high-energy bond; the resulting complex is known as *acetyl coenzyme A (acetyl CoA)*. During this reaction, pyruvic acid is also oxidized, and NAD^+ is reduced to NADH.

Remember that the oxidation of one glucose molecule produces two molecules of pyruvic acid, so for each molecule of glucose, two molecules of CO_2 are released, two molecules of NADH are produced, and two molecules of acetyl CoA are formed. Once the pyruvic acid has undergone decarboxylation and its derivative (the acetyl group) has attached to CoA, the resulting acetyl CoA is ready to enter the Krebs cycle.

As acetyl CoA enters the Krebs cycle, CoA detaches from the acetyl group. The acetyl group combines with a preexisting four-carbon compound called oxaloacetic acid to form citric acid. This synthesis reaction requires energy, which is provided by the cleavage of the high-energy bond between the acetyl group and CoA. The formation of citric acid is thus the first step in the Krebs cycle. The major chemical reactions of this cycle are outlined in Figure 5.13 (also see Figure A.5 in Appendix A for a more detailed representation of the Krebs cycle). Keep in mind that each reaction is catalyzed by a specific enzyme.

The chemical reactions of the Krebs cycle fall into several general categories; one of these is decarboxylation. For example, in step 3, isocitric acid is decarboxylated to a compound called α-ketoglutaric acid. Another decarboxylation takes place in step 4. All three carbon atoms in pyruvic acid are eventually released as CO_2 by the Krebs cycle. The conversion to CO_2 of all six carbon atoms contained in the original glucose molecule is completed in two turns of the Krebs cycle.

Another general category of Krebs cycle chemical reactions is oxidation-reduction. For example, in step 3, isocitric acid is oxidized. Hydrogen atoms are also released in the Krebs cycle in steps 4, 6, and 8 and are picked up by the coenzymes NAD^+ and FAD. Because NAD^+ picks up two electrons but only one additional proton, its reduced form is represented as NADH; however, FAD picks up two complete hydrogen atoms and is reduced to $FADH_2$.

If we look at the Krebs cycle as a whole, we see that for every two molecules of acetyl CoA that enter the cycle, four molecules of CO_2 are liberated by decarboxylation, six molecules of NADH and two molecules of $FADH_2$ are produced by oxidation-reduction reactions, and two molecules of ATP are generated by substrate-level phosphorylation. A molecule of guanosine triphosphate (GTP), formed from guanosine diphosphate (GDP + P_i), is similar to ATP and serves as an intermediary at this point in the cycle. Many of the intermediates in the Krebs cycle also play a role in other pathways, especially in amino acid biosynthesis.

The CO_2 produced in the Krebs cycle is ultimately liberated into the atmosphere as a gaseous by-product of aerobic respiration. (Humans produce CO_2 from the Krebs cycle in most cells of the body and discharge it through the lungs during exhalation.) The reduced coenzymes NADH and $FADH_2$ are the most important products of the Krebs cycle because they contain most of the energy that was originally stored in glucose. During the next phase of respiration, a series of oxidation-reduction reactions indirectly transfer the energy stored in those coenzymes to ATP. These reactions are collectively called the electron transport chain.

The Electron Transport Chain (System) An **electron transport chain (electron transport system)** consists of a sequence of carrier molecules that are capable of oxidation and reduction. As electrons are passed through the chain, there occurs

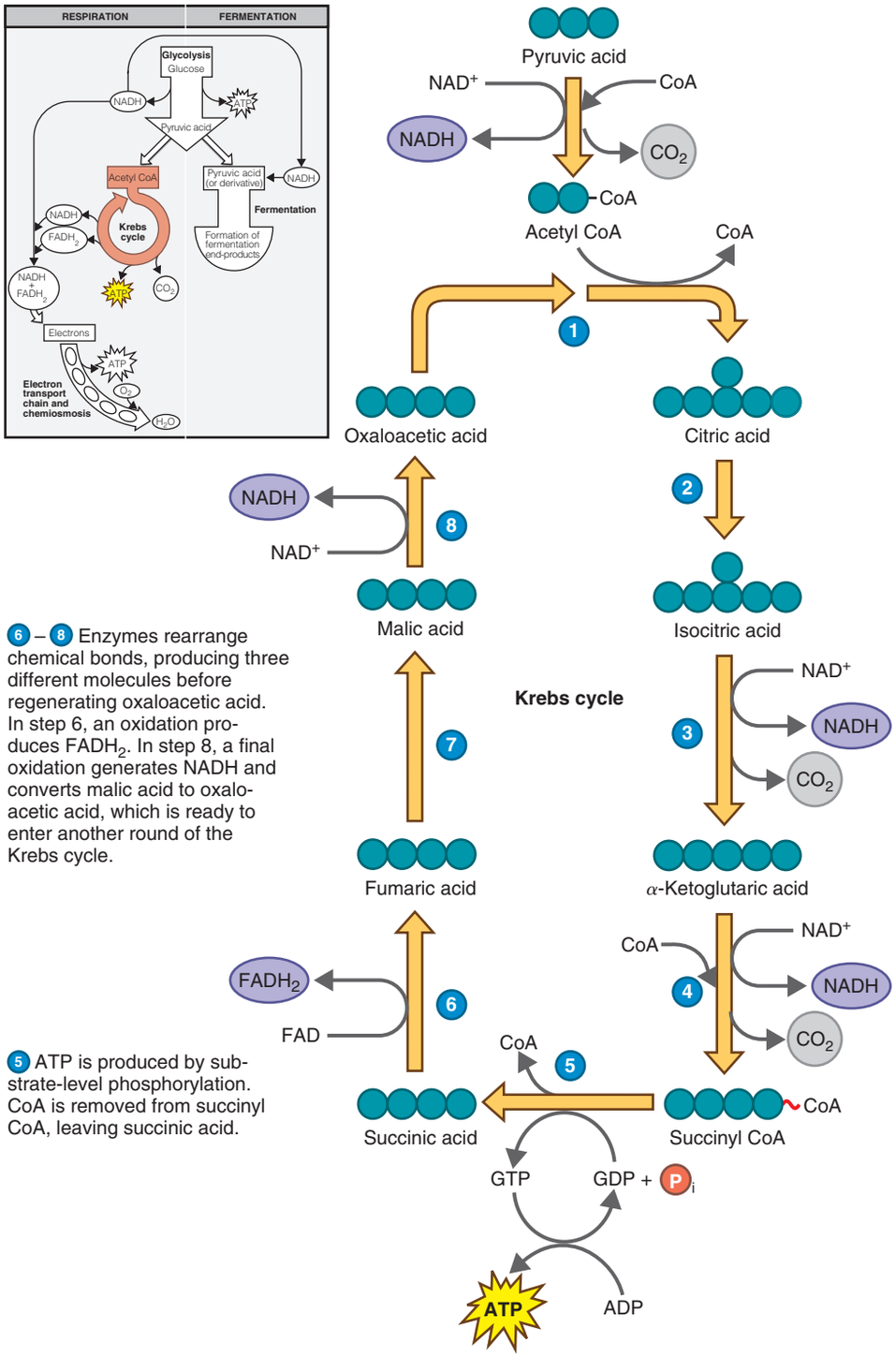


Figure 5.13 The Krebs cycle. The inset indicates the relationship of the Krebs cycle to the overall process of respiration. A more detailed version of the Krebs cycle is presented in Figure A.5 in Appendix A.

Q What are the products of the Krebs cycle?

1 A turn of the cycle begins as enzymes strip off the CoA portion from acetyl CoA and combine the remaining two-carbon acetyl group with oxaloacetic acid. Adding the acetyl group produces the six-carbon molecule citric acid.

2 – 4 Oxidations generate NADH. Step 2 is a rearrangement. Steps 3 and 4 combine oxidations and decarboxylations to dispose of two carbon atoms that came from oxaloacetic acid. The carbons are released as CO_2, and the oxidations generate NADH from NAD^+. During the second oxidation (step 4), CoA is added into the cycle, forming the compound succinyl CoA.

6 – 8 Enzymes rearrange chemical bonds, producing three different molecules before regenerating oxaloacetic acid. In step 6, an oxidation produces $FADH_2$. In step 8, a final oxidation generates NADH and converts malic acid to oxaloacetic acid, which is ready to enter another round of the Krebs cycle.

5 ATP is produced by substrate-level phosphorylation. CoA is removed from succinyl CoA, leaving succinic acid.

a stepwise release of energy, which is used to drive the chemiosmotic generation of ATP, to be described shortly. The final oxidation is irreversible. In eukaryotic cells, the electron transport chain is contained in the inner mitochondrial membrane; in prokaryotic cells, it is found in the plasma membrane.

There are three classes of carrier molecules in electron transport chains:

Flavoproteins contain flavin, a coenzyme derived from riboflavin (vitamin B_2). They are capable of performing alternating oxidations and reductions. One important flavin coenzyme is flavin mononucleotide (FMN). **Ubiquinones**, or **coenzyme Q (Q)**, are small nonprotein carriers. **Cytochromes** are proteins with an iron-containing group (heme). The iron (Fe) is capable of existing alternately as a reduced form (Fe^{2+}) and an oxidized form (Fe^{3+}). The cytochromes involved in

electron transport chains include cytochrome *b* (cyt *b*), cytochrome c_1 (cyt c_1), cytochrome *c* (cyt *c*), cytochrome *a* (cyt *a*), and cytochrome a_3 (cyt a_3).

The electron transport chains of bacteria are somewhat diverse, in that the particular carriers used by a bacterium and the order in which they function may differ from those of other bacteria and from those of eukaryotic mitochondrial systems. Even a single bacterium may have several types of electron transport chains. However, keep in mind that all electron transport chains achieve the same basic goal: to release energy while electrons are transferred from higher-energy compounds to lower-energy compounds. Much is known about the electron transport chain in the mitochondria of eukaryotic cells, so we'll describe its steps here.

1. High-energy electrons transfer from NADH to FMN, the first carrier in the chain (**Figure 5.14**). A hydrogen atom with two electrons passes to FMN, which picks up an additional H^+ from the surrounding aqueous medium. As a result NADH is oxidized to NAD^+, and FMN is reduced to $FMNH_2$.
2. $FMNH_2$ passes $2H^+$ to the other side of the mitochondrial membrane (see Figure 5.16) and passes two electrons to Q. As a result, $FMNH_2$ is oxidized to FMN. Q also picks up an additional $2H^+$ from the surrounding aqueous medium and releases it on the other side of the membrane.
3. Electrons are passed successively from Q to cyt *b*, cyt c_1, cyt *c*, cyt *a*, and cyt a_3. Each cytochrome in the chain is reduced as it picks up electrons and is oxidized as it gives up electrons. The last cytochrome, cyt a_3, passes its electrons to molecular oxygen (O_2), which becomes negatively charged and picks up protons from the surrounding medium to form H_2O.

An important feature of the electron transport chain is that the electron carriers are sequenced in terms of electronegativity—that is, the tendency to acquire electrons. As you progress along the chain, each electron carrier has a greater electronegativity than the one before it. For example, the cyt *b* in Figure 5.14 has a greater affinity for electrons than the Q. Notice that Figure 5.14 shows $FADH_2$, which is derived from the Krebs cycle, as another source of electrons. However, $FADH_2$ adds its electrons to the electron transport chain at a lower level than NADH. Because of this, the electron transport chain produces about one-third less energy for ATP generation when $FADH_2$ donates electrons than when NADH is involved.

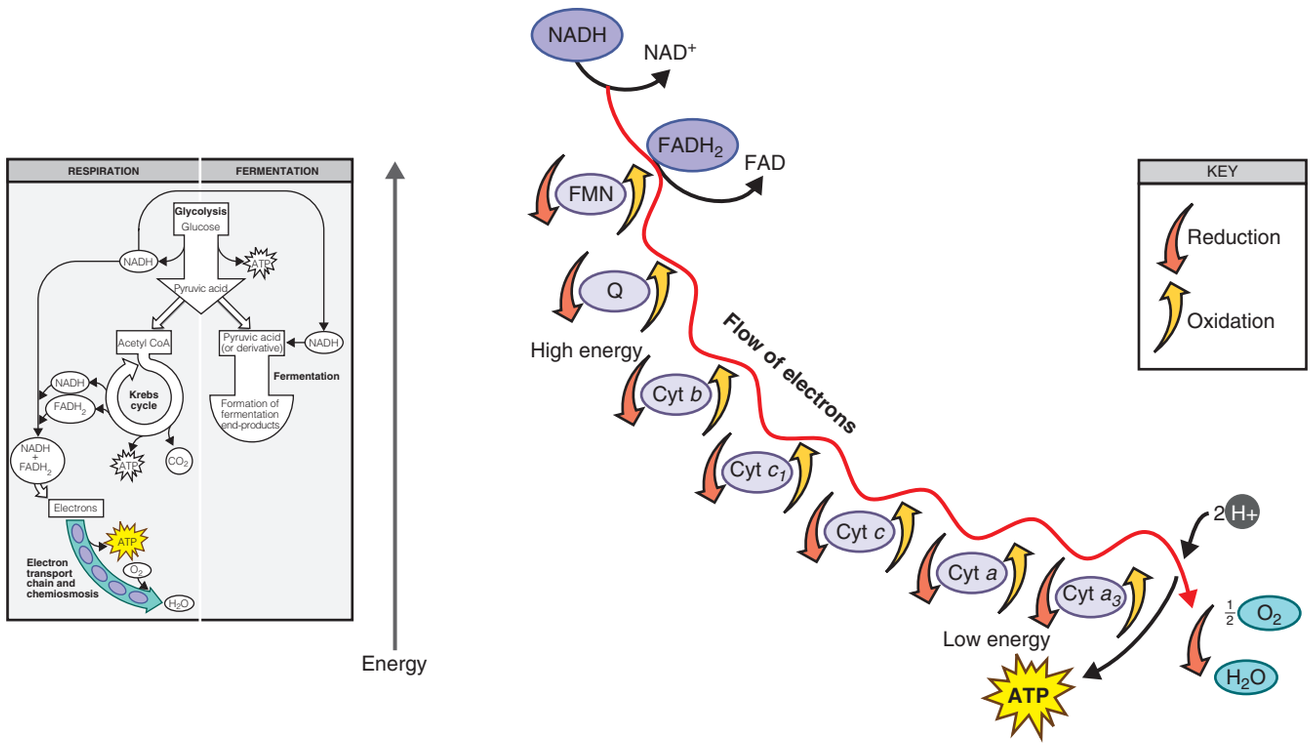


Figure 5.14 An electron transport chain (system). The inset indicates the relationship of the electron transport chain to the overall process of respiration. In the mitochondrial electron transport chain shown, the electrons pass along the chain in a gradual and stepwise fashion, so energy is released in manageable quantities (see Figure 5.16 to learn where ATP is formed).

Q How many ATPs can be made from the oxidation of one NADH in the electron transport chain?

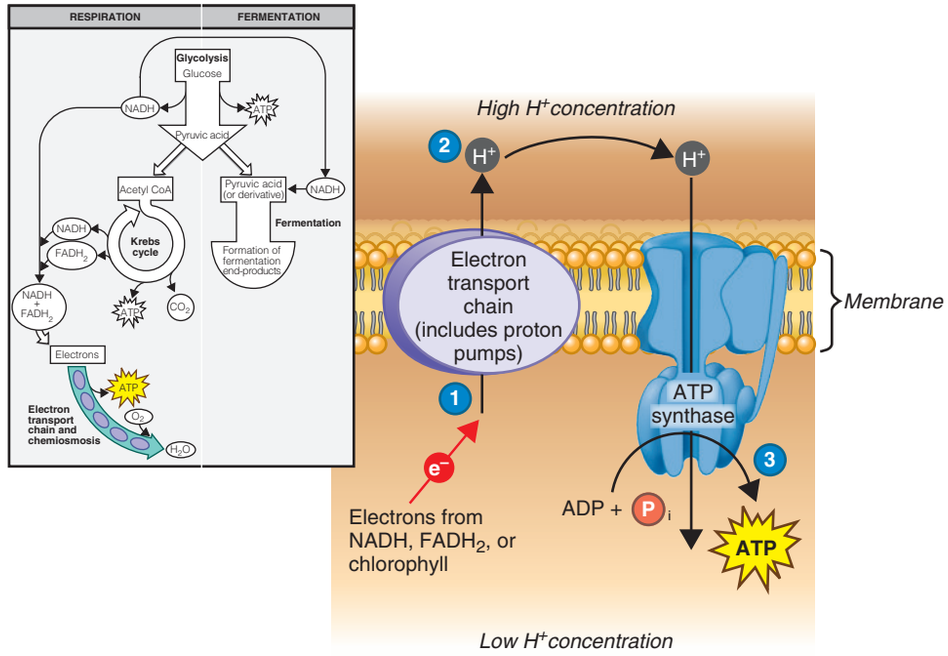


Figure 5.15 Chemiosmosis. An overview of the mechanism of chemiosmosis. The membrane shown could be a prokaryotic plasma membrane, a eukaryotic mitochondrial membrane, or a photosynthetic thylakoid. The numbered steps are described in the text.

Q What is the proton motive force?

In the electron transport chain are carriers, such as FMN and Q, that *accept and release both protons and electrons*, and other carriers, such as cytochromes, that transfer electrons only. Electron flow down the chain is accompanied at several points by the active transport (pumping) of protons from the matrix side of the inner mitochondrial membrane to the opposite side of the membrane. The result is a buildup of protons on one side of the membrane. Just as water behind a dam stores energy that can be used to generate electricity, this buildup of protons provides energy that the chemiosmotic mechanism uses to generate ATP.

The Chemiosmotic Mechanism of ATP Generation ATP synthesis using the electron transport chain is called **chemiosmosis**, and it involves **oxidative phosphorylation**. To understand chemiosmosis, we need to review several concepts related to the movement of materials across membranes. (See Chapter 4.) Substances diffuse passively across membranes from areas of high concentration to areas of low concentration; this diffusion along a concentration gradient yields energy. The movement of substances *against* a concentration gradient *requires* energy that is usually provided by ATP. In chemiosmosis, the energy released when a substance moves along a gradient is used to *synthesize* ATP. The "substance" in this case refers to protons. In respiration, chemiosmosis is responsible for most of the ATP that is generated. The steps of chemiosmosis are as follows (**Figure 5.15**):

1. As energetic electrons from NADH (or chlorophyll) pass down the electron transport chain, some of the carriers actively transport protons across the membrane. Such carrier molecules are called *proton pumps*.
2. The phospholipid membrane is normally impermeable to protons, so this one-directional pumping establishes a proton gradient (a difference in the concentrations of protons on the two sides of the membrane). In addition to a concentration gradient, there is an electrical charge gradient. The excess H^+ on one side of the membrane makes that side positively charged compared with the other side. The resulting electrochemical gradient has potential energy, called the *proton motive force*.
3. The protons on the side of the membrane with the higher proton concentration can diffuse across the membrane only through special protein channels that contain an enzyme called *ATP synthase*. When this flow occurs, energy is released and is used by the enzyme to synthesize ATP from ADP and P_i.

The detailed steps that show how the electron transport chain operates in eukaryotes to drive the chemiosmotic mechanism are as follows (**Figure 5.16**):

1. Energetic electrons from NADH pass down the electron transport chains. Within the inner mitochondrial membrane, the carriers of the electron transport chain are organized into three complexes, with Q transporting electrons between the first and second complexes, and cyt *c* transporting them between the second and third complexes.
2. Three components of the system pump protons. At the end of the chain, electrons join with protons and oxygen (O_2) in the matrix fluid to form water (H_2O). Thus, O_2 is the final electron acceptor in aerobic respiration.

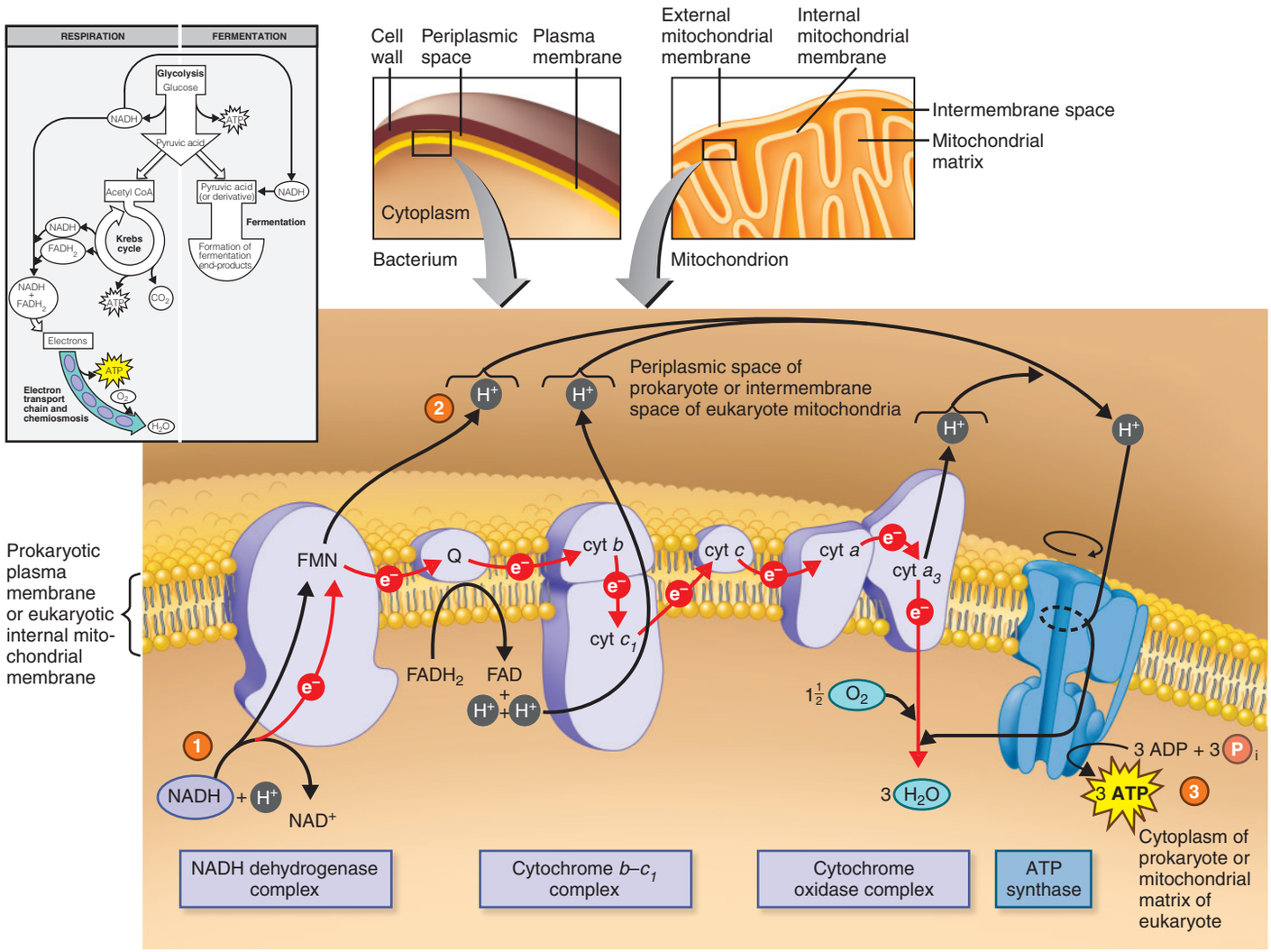


Figure 5.16 Electron transport and the chemiosmotic generation of ATP. Electron carriers are organized into three complexes, and protons (H+) are pumped across the membrane at three points. In a prokaryotic cell, protons are pumped across the plasma membrane from the cytoplasmic side. In a eukaryotic cell, they are pumped from the matrix side of the mitochondrial membrane to the opposite side. The flow of electrons is indicated with red arrows.

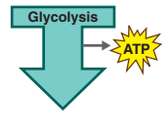
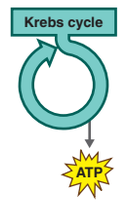
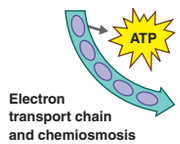
Q **Where does chemiosmosis occur in eukaryotes? In prokaryotes?**

3 Both prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells use the chemiosmotic mechanism to generate energy for ATP production. However, in eukaryotic cells, the inner mitochondrial membrane contains the electron transport carriers and ATP synthase. In most prokaryotic cells, the plasma membrane does so. An electron transport chain also operates in photophosphorylation and is located in the thylakoid membrane of cyanobacteria and eukaryotic chloroplasts.

A Summary of Aerobic Respiration The electron transport chain regenerates NAD^+ and FAD, which can be used again in glycolysis and the Krebs cycle. The various electron transfers in the electron transport chain generate about 34 molecules of ATP from each molecule of glucose oxidized: approximately three from each of the ten molecules of NADH (a total of 30), and approximately two from each of the two molecules of $FADH_2$ (a total of four). In aerobic respiration among prokaryotes, each molecule of glucose generates 38 ATP molecules: 34 from chemiosmosis plus 4 generated by oxidation in glycolysis and the Krebs cycle. Table 5.3 provides a detailed accounting of the ATP yield during prokaryotic aerobic respiration, and Figure 5.17 presents a summary of the stages of aerobic respiration in prokaryotes.

Aerobic respiration among eukaryotes produces a total of only 36 molecules of ATP. There are 2 fewer ATPs than in prokaryotes because NADH produced in the cytoplasm cannot enter mitochondria. Some energy is lost when the membrane transporter protein moves the electrons from NADH across the mitochondrial membranes. No such separation exists in

TABLE 5.3 ATP Yield during Prokaryotic Aerobic Respiration of One Glucose Molecule

Source		Electron Carrier	ATP Yield (Method)
Glycolysis Oxidation of glucose to pyruvic acid		Produces 2 NADH	2 ATP (substrate-level phosphorylation)
Transition Step Formation of acetyl CoA		Produces 2 NADH	
Krebs Cycle		Produces 6 NADH Produced 2 $FADH_2$	2 GTP (equivalent to 2 ATP by substrate-level phosphorylation of 2 ADP)
Electron Transport Chain Oxidation-reduction		2 NADH from glycolysis 2 NADH from transition step 6 NADH from Krebs cycle 2 $FADH_2$ from Krebs cycle	6 ATP (oxidative phosphorylation) 6 ATP (oxidative phosphorylation) 18 ATP (oxidative phosphorylation) 4 ATP (oxidative phosphorylation) Total: 38 ATP

prokaryotes. We can now summarize the overall reaction for aerobic respiration in prokaryotes as follows:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\,O_2 + 38\,ADP + 38\,P_i \longrightarrow 6\,CO_2 + 6\,H_2O + 38\,ATP$$

Glucose Oxygen — Carbon dioxide Water

In our discussion of aerobic respiration, you were introduced to numerous enzymes and chemical reactions. However, once you get past the names and functions of all the enzymes, look at the overall concept—**the oxidation of a substrate to release the energy**. This occurs initially with the conversion of energy into NADH and $FADH_2$, then the electron transport chain carriers, and finally into ATP.

Anaerobic Respiration

Like aerobic respiration, anaerobic respiration involves the oxidation of a substrate. However, the final electron acceptor in the electron transport chain is an inorganic substance other than oxygen (O_2). Some bacteria, such as *Pseudomonas* and *Bacillus*, can use a nitrate ion (NO_3^-) as a final electron acceptor; the nitrate ion is reduced to a nitrite ion (NO_2^-), nitrous oxide (N_2O), or nitrogen gas (N_2). Other bacteria, such as *Desulfovibrio* (dē-sul-fō-VIB-rē-ō), use sulfate (SO_4^{2-}) as the final electron acceptor to form hydrogen sulfide (H_2S). Some archaea use carbon dioxide to form methane (CH_4). Anaerobic respiration by bacteria using nitrate and sulfate as final acceptors is essential for the nitrogen and sulfur cycles that occur in nature. The amount of ATP generated in anaerobic respiration varies with the organism and the pathway. Because only part of the Krebs cycle operates under anaerobic conditions, and because only some of the carriers in the electron transport chain participate in anaerobic respiration, the ATP yield is never as high as in aerobic respiration. Accordingly, anaerobes tend to grow more slowly than aerobes.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **5-13** What are the principal products of the Krebs cycle?
- **5-14** How do carrier molecules function in the electron transport chain?
- **5-15** Compare the energy yield (ATP) of aerobic and anaerobic respiration.

Fermentation

After glucose has been oxidized into pyruvic acid, the pyruvic acid can be completely broken down in respiration, as previously described, or it can be converted to an organic product in fermentation, whereupon NAD^+ and $NADP^+$ are regenerated and can enter another round of glycolysis (see Figure 5.11). **Fermentation** is defined as a process that

1. releases energy from sugars or other organic molecules;
2. does not require oxygen (but can occur in its presence);
3. does not require the use of the Krebs cycle or an electron transport chain;
4. uses an organic molecule synthesized in the cell as the final electron acceptor.

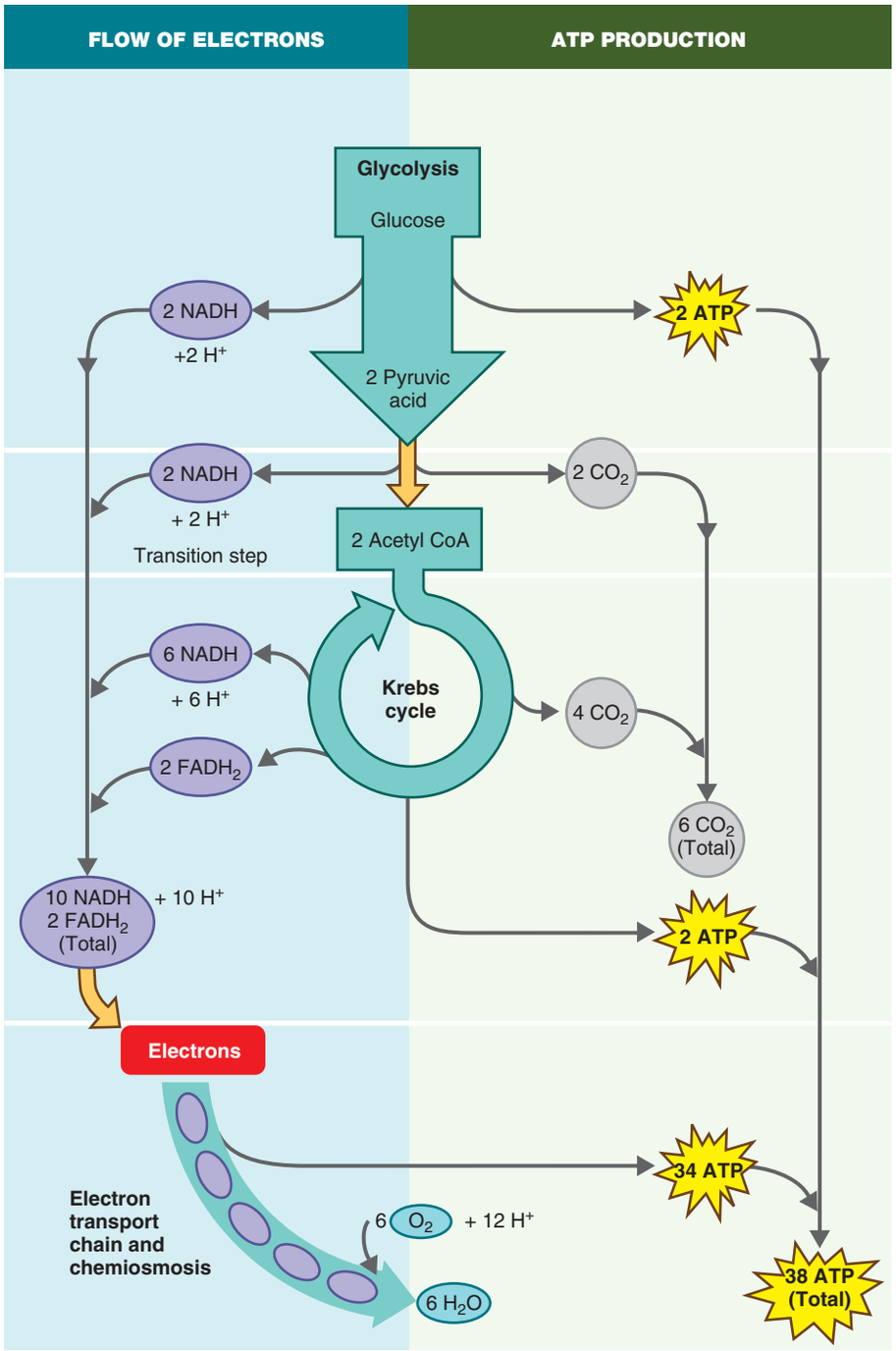


Figure 5.17 A summary of aerobic respiration in prokaryotes. Glucose is broken down completely to carbon dioxide and water, and ATP is generated. This process has three major phases: glycolysis, the Krebs cycle, and the electron transport chain. The transition step links glycolysis and the Krebs cycle. The key event in aerobic respiration is that electrons are picked up from intermediates of glycolysis and the Krebs cycle by NAD^+ or FAD and are carried by NADH or $FADH_2$ to the electron transport chain. NADH is also produced during the conversion of pyruvic acid to acetyl CoA. Most of the ATP generated by aerobic respiration is made by the chemiosmotic mechanism during the electron transport chain phase; this is called oxidative phosphorylation.

Q How do aerobic and anaerobic respiration differ?

Fermentation produces only small amounts of ATP (only one or two ATP molecules for each molecule of starting material) because much of the original energy in glucose remains in the chemical bonds of the organic end-products, such as lactic acid or ethanol. However, the advantage of fermentation for a cell is that it produces ATP quickly.

During fermentation, electrons are transferred (along with protons) from reduced coenzymes (NADH, NADPH) to pyruvic acid or its derivatives (Figure 5.18a). Those final electron acceptors are reduced to the end-products shown in Figure 5.18b. An essential function of fermentation is to ensure a steady supply of NAD^+ and $NADP^+$ so that glycolysis can continue. In fermentation, ATP is generated only during glycolysis.

The aforementioned lactic acid is the same substance associated with muscle fatigue in your body. During strenuous exercise, the cardiovascular system cannot supply enough oxygen to skeletal muscles and the heart for them to generate sufficient energy. In such cases, muscles shift from aerobic

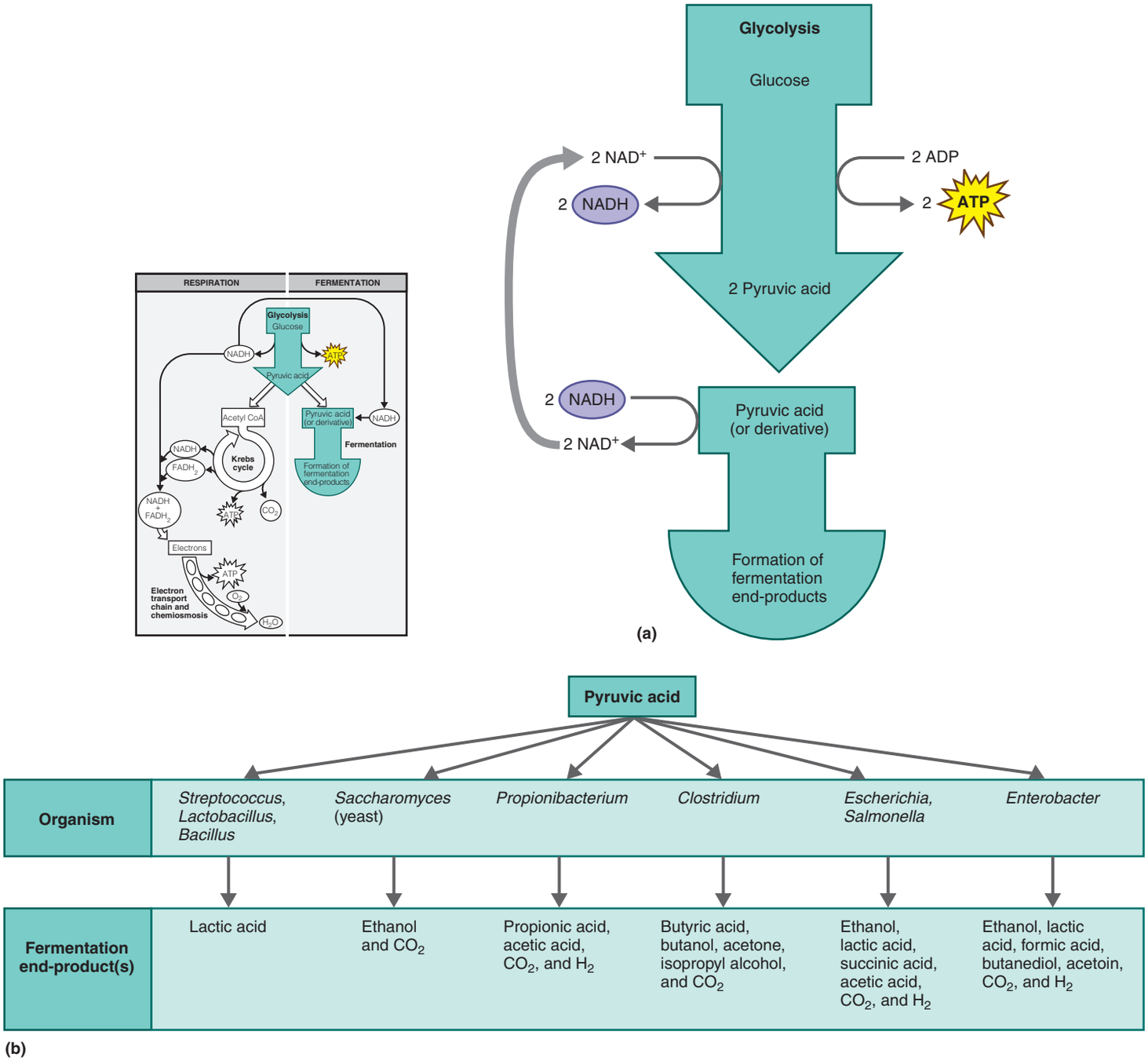


Figure 5.18 Fermentation. The inset indicates the relationship of fermentation to the overall energy-producing processes. **(a)** An overview of fermentation. The first step is glycolysis, the conversion of glucose to pyruvic acid. In the second step, the reduced coenzymes from glycolysis (NADH) or its alternative (NADPH) donate their electrons and hydrogen ions to pyruvic acid or a derivative to form a fermentation end-product and reoxidize the NADH to be available for glycolysis. **(b)** End-products of various microbial fermentations.

Q During which phase of fermentation is ATP generated?

respiration to fermentation. In the absence of oxygen, pyruvic acid is oxidized to lactic acid.

Microorganisms can ferment various substrates; the end-products depend on the particular microorganism, the substrate, and the enzymes that are present and active. Chemical analyses of these end-products are useful in identifying microorganisms. Two of the more important processes are lactic acid fermentation and alcohol fermentation.

Lactic Acid Fermentation

During glycolysis, which is the first phase of **lactic acid fermentation**, a molecule of glucose is oxidized to two molecules

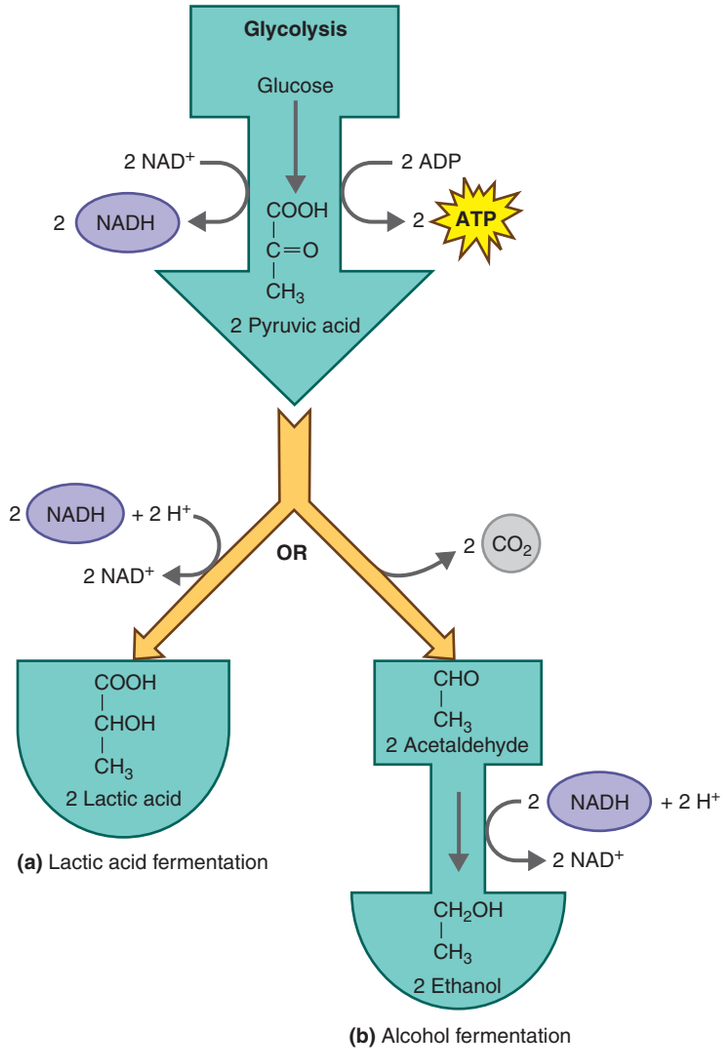


Figure 5.19 Types of fermentation.

Q **What is the difference between homolactic and heterolactic fermentation?**

of pyruvic acid (Figure 5.19). This oxidation generates the energy that is used to form the two molecules of ATP. In the next step, the two molecules of pyruvic acid are reduced by two molecules of NADH to form two molecules of lactic acid (Figure 5.19a). Because lactic acid is the end-product of the reaction, it undergoes no further oxidation, and most of the energy produced by the reaction remains stored in the lactic acid. Thus, this fermentation yields only a small amount of energy.

Two important genera of lactic acid bacteria are *Streptococcus* and *Lactobacillus* (lak'tō-bah-SIL-lus). Because these microbes produce only lactic acid, they are referred to as **homolactic** (or *homofermentative*). Lactic acid fermentation can result in food spoilage. However, the process can also produce yogurt from milk, sauerkraut from fresh cabbage, and pickles from cucumbers. The homolactic fermenters in the human intestine are important for health. (See Exploring the Microbiome.)

CLINICAL CASE

Feeling certain that there must be some connection between the increase in dental caries and the activities of her patients, Dr. Rivera starts to ask more questions about the children's activities. She finds out that they all attend a summer program at the same church in a nearby neighborhood. She also discovers that the culprit isn't candy, but bubblegum. The camp counselors have been giving out bubblegum as an incentive for attendance and good behavior. Although Dr. Rivera is pleased to hear that her patients have all been behaving themselves, she is concerned about the amount of bubblegum they have been chewing on a daily basis. The sucrose in gum causes a decrease in the pH of saliva, and the acid erodes the tooth enamel, thus exposing the tooth to bacterial decay.

If the pH of gum and sucrose is 7, what lowers the salivary pH?

Part 1 | Part 2 | Part 3 | Part 4

Organisms that produce lactic acid as well as other acids or alcohols are known as **heterolactic** (or *heterofermentative*) and often use the pentose phosphate pathway.

Alcohol Fermentation

Alcohol fermentation also begins with the glycolysis of a molecule of glucose to yield two molecules of pyruvic acid and two molecules of ATP. In the next reaction, the two molecules of pyruvic acid are converted to two molecules of acetaldehyde and two molecules of CO_2 (Figure 5.19b). The two molecules of acetaldehyde are reduced by two molecules of NADH to form two molecules of ethanol. Again, alcohol fermentation is a low-energy-yield process because most of the energy contained in the initial glucose molecule remains in the ethanol, the end-product.

Alcohol fermentation is carried out by a number of bacteria and yeasts. The ethanol and carbon dioxide produced by the yeast *Saccharomyces* (sak'kar-ō-MĪ-sēz) are waste products for yeast cells but are useful to humans. Ethanol made by yeasts is the alcohol in alcoholic beverages and fuel to produce electricity and carbon dioxide made by yeasts causes bread dough to rise.

Table 5.4 lists some of the various microbial fermentations used by industry to convert inexpensive raw materials into useful end-products. Table 5.5 provides a summary comparison of aerobic respiration, anaerobic respiration, and fermentation.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

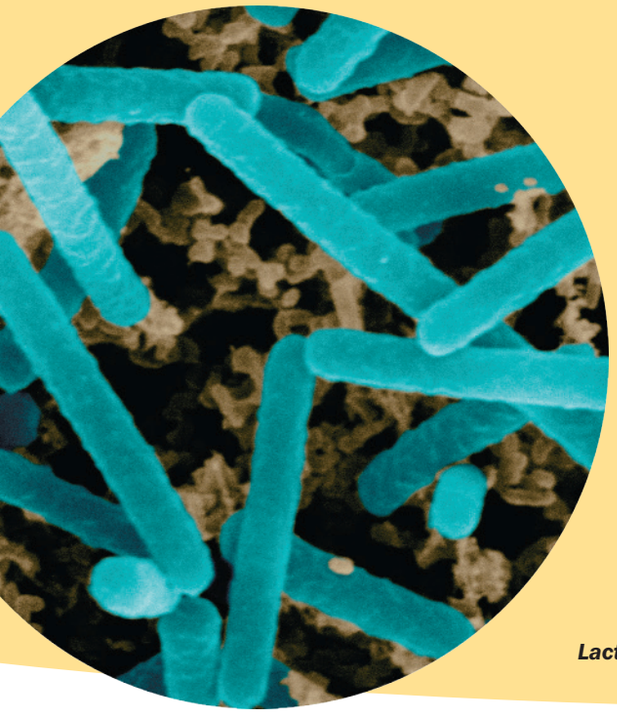
5-16 List four compounds that can be made from pyruvic acid by an organism that uses fermentation.

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME Do Artificial Sweeteners (and the Intestinal Microbiota That Love Them) Promote Diabetes?

For years, beverages made with artificial sweeteners were embraced by people with diabetes and people trying to lose weight because, unlike sugar, artificial sweeteners don't impact blood glucose levels and don't provide calories. However, several studies have shown that artificial sweeteners may actually increase the risk of nondiabetics developing the disease. One study published by the American Diabetes Association found that daily consumption of diet soda was associated with a 67% greater relative risk of developing type 2 diabetes.

Undigestible by humans, artificial sweeteners provide zero calories to us when we consume them. But they are a great source of nutrients for *Bacteroides* bacteria living in the colon. As *Bacterioides* break down the sweeteners and increase in numbers, other types of microbiota simultaneously decline. Among these are *Lactobacillus* bacteria. Studies indicate that high *Lactobacillus* levels in the intestine are associated with decreased blood sugar levels. The exact mechanism remains unclear, but it is hypothesized that decreases in the population of *Lactobacillus* bacteria lead to higher blood glucose levels, thereby forcing the body to produce more insulin to control the rising blood glucose. Prolonged high insulin levels may lead to insulin resistance, a condition in which the body stops responding appropriately to the hormone. Insulin resistance is the hallmark sign of type 2 diabetes.

Recent and current research are exploring whether ingesting probiotics with *Lactobacillus acidophilus* and *Bifidobacterium animalis* may be a useful treatment for type 2 diabetes. Initial studies were promising, showing that these species might lower blood glucose levels. If proven effective, one day bacteria could be key weapons in preventing a deadly disease.



Lactobacillus acidophilus.

TABLE 5.4 Some Industrial Uses for Different Types of Fermentations*

Fermentation End-Product(s)	Industrial or Commercial Use	Starting Material	Microorganism
Ethanol	Beer, wine	Starch, sugar	*Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (yeast, a fungus)
	Fuel	Agricultural wastes	*S. cerevisiae* (yeast)
Acetic Acid	Vinegar	Ethanol	*Acetobacter*
Lactic Acid	Cheese, yogurt	Milk	*Lactobacillus, Streptococcus*
	Rye bread	Grain, sugar	*Lactobacillus delbrueckii*
	Sauerkraut	Cabbage	*Lactobacillus plantarum*
	Summer sausage	Meat	*Pediococcus*
Propionic Acid and Carbon Dioxide	Swiss cheese	Lactic acid	*Propionibacterium freudenreichii*
Acetone and Butanol	Pharmaceutical, industrial uses	Molasses	*Clostridium acetobutylicum*
Citric Acid	Flavoring	Molasses	*Aspergillus* (fungus)
Methane	Fuel	Acetic acid	*Methanosarcina* (archaeon)
Sorbose	Vitamin C (ascorbic acid)	Sorbitol	*Gluconobacter*

*Unless otherwise noted, the microorganisms listed are bacteria.

TABLE 5.5 Aerobic Respiration, Anaerobic Respiration, and Fermentation

Energy-Producing Process	Growth Conditions	Final Hydrogen (Electron) Acceptor	Type of Phosphorylation Used to Generate ATP	ATP Molecules Produced per Glucose Molecule
Aerobic Respiration	Aerobic	Molecular oxygen (O_2)	Substrate-level and oxidative	36 (eukaryotes) 38 (prokaryotes)
Anaerobic Respiration	Anaerobic	Usually an inorganic substance (such as NO_3^-, SO_4^{2-}, or CO_3^{2-}) but not molecular oxygen (O_2)	Substrate-level and oxidative	Variable (fewer than 38 but more than 2)
Fermentation	Aerobic or anaerobic	An organic molecule	Substrate-level	2

Lipid and Protein Catabolism

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

5-17 Describe how lipids and proteins undergo catabolism.

Our discussion of energy production has emphasized the oxidation of glucose, the main energy-supplying carbohydrate. However, microbes also oxidize lipids and proteins, and the oxidations of all these nutrients are related.

Recall that fats are lipids consisting of fatty acids and glycerol. Microbes produce extracellular enzymes called *lipases* that break fats down into their fatty acid and glycerol components. Each component is then metabolized separately (Figure 5.20). Glycerol undergoes glycolysis, whereas fatty acids undergo beta-oxidation, a process in which two carbons are removed at a time to form acetyl CoA. The Krebs cycle then continues the oxidation of both glycerol and fatty acids. The process is completed in the electron transport chain. Interestingly, many bacteria that hydrolyze fatty acids can use the same enzymes to degrade petroleum products. Whereas beta-oxidation (fatty acid oxidation) of petroleum is a nuisance when these bacteria grow in a fuel storage tank, it is beneficial when they grow in oil-contaminated soil.

Proteins are too large to pass unaided through plasma membranes. Microbes produce extracellular *proteases* and *peptidases*, enzymes that break down proteins into their component amino acids, which can cross the membranes. However, before amino acids can be catabolized, they must be enzymatically converted to other substances that can enter the Krebs cycle. In one such conversion, called **deamination**, the amino group of an amino acid is removed and converted to an ammonium ion (NH_4^+), which can be excreted from the cell. The remaining organic acid can enter the Krebs cycle after other conversions involving decarboxylation (the removal of —COOH) and **desulfurization** (removal of —SH).

A summary of the interrelationships of carbohydrate, lipid, and protein catabolism is shown in Figure 5.21.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

5-17 What are the end-products of lipid and protein catabolism?

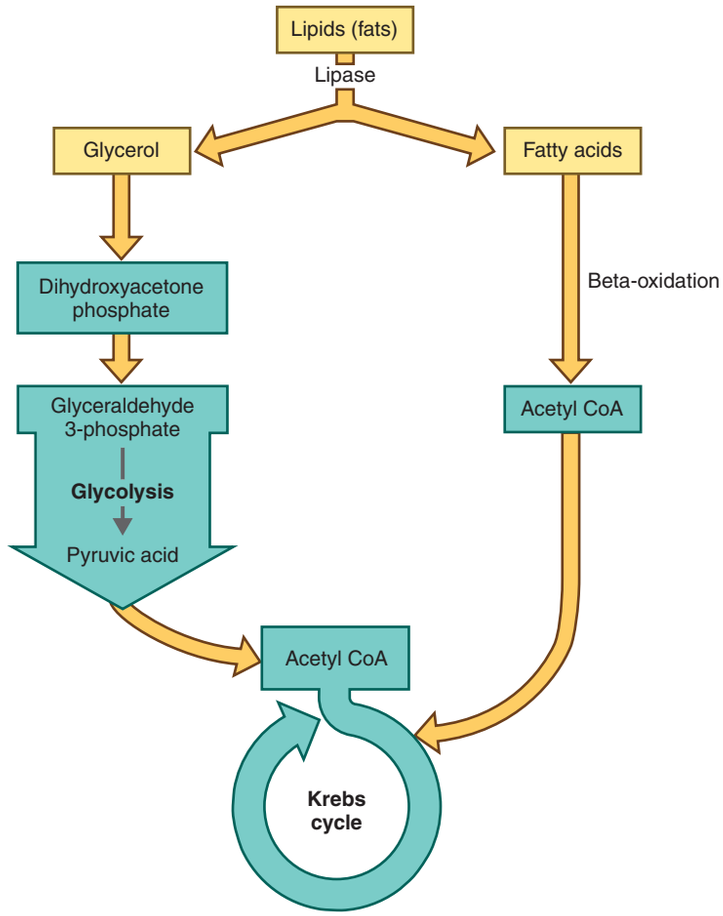


Figure 5.20 Lipid catabolism. Glycerol is converted into dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP) and catabolized via glycolysis and the Krebs cycle. Fatty acids undergo beta-oxidation, in which carbon fragments are split off two at a time to form acetyl CoA, which is catabolized via the Krebs cycle.

Q What is the role of lipases?

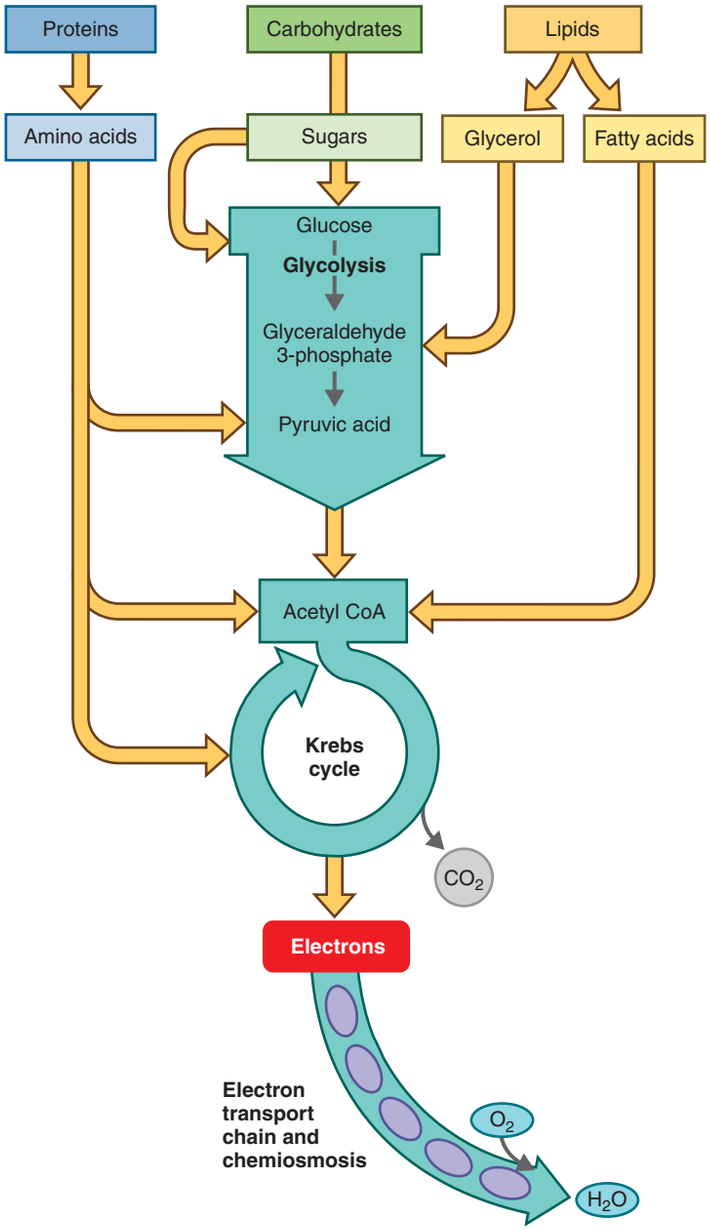


Figure 5.21 Catabolism of various organic molecules. Proteins, carbohydrates, and lipids can all be sources of electrons and protons for respiration. These food molecules enter glycolysis or the Krebs cycle at various points.

Q What are the catabolic pathways through which high-energy electrons from all kinds of organic molecules flow on their energy-releasing pathways?

Biochemical Tests and Bacterial Identification

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

5-18 Provide two examples of the use of biochemical tests to identify bacteria in the laboratory.

Different species of bacteria and yeasts produce different enzymes. Biochemical tests designed to detect the presence of these characteristic enzymes are frequently used to distinguish different microbial species. One type of biochemical test detects amino-acid catabolizing enzymes involved in decarboxylation and dehydrogenation (Figure 5.22).

Another biochemical test is a **fermentation test** (Figure 5.23). The test medium contains protein, a single carbohydrate, a pH indicator, and an inverted Durham tube, which is used to capture gas. Bacteria inoculated into the tube can use the protein or carbohydrate as a carbon and energy source. If they catabolize the carbohydrate and produce acid, the pH indicator changes color. Some organisms produce gas as well as acid from carbohydrate catabolism. The presence of a bubble in the Durham tube indicates gas formation.

E. coli ferments the carbohydrate sorbitol. The pathogenic *E. coli* O157 strain, however, does not ferment sorbitol, a characteristic that differentiates it from nonpathogenic, commensal *E. coli*.

Another example of the use of biochemical tests is shown in Figure 10.8.

In some instances, the waste products of one microorganism can be used as a carbon and energy source by another species. *Acetobacter* (ah-sē′tō-BAK-ter) bacteria oxidize ethanol made by yeast. *Propionibacterium* (prō′-pē-on-ē-bak-TI-rē-um) can use lactic acid produced by other bacteria. Propionibacteria convert lactic acid to pyruvic acid in preparation for the Krebs cycle. During the Krebs cycle, propionic acid and CO_2 are made. The holes in Swiss cheese are formed by the accumulation of CO_2 gas.

Biochemical tests are used to identify bacteria that cause disease. All aerobic bacteria use the electron transport chain (ETC), but their ETCs are not all identical. Some bacteria have

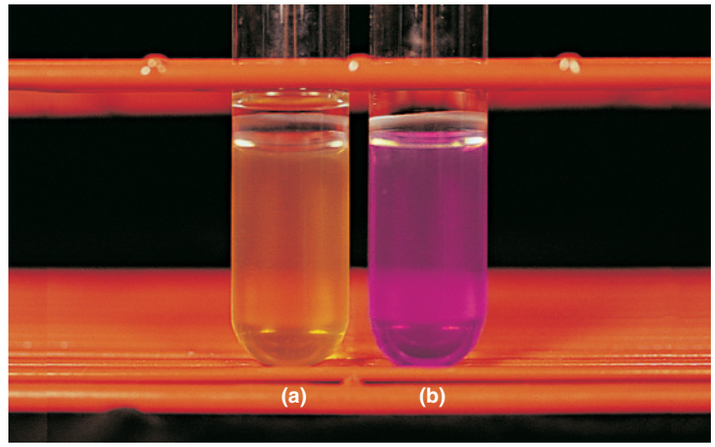


Figure 5.22 Detecting amino acid catabolizing enzymes in the lab. Bacteria are inoculated into tubes containing glucose, bromocresol purple (a pH indicator), and a specific amino acid. **(a)** The pH indicator turns to yellow when bacteria produce acid from glucose. **(b)** Alkaline products from decarboxylation turn the indicator to purple.

Q What is decarboxylation?

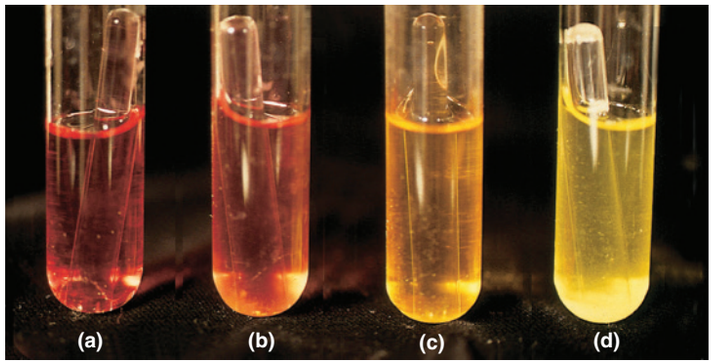


Figure 5.23 A fermentation test. **(a)** An uninoculated fermentation tube containing the carbohydrate mannitol, peptone (hydrolyzed protein), and phenol red (a pH indicator). **(b)** *Staphylococcus epidermidis* grew on the protein but did not use the carbohydrate. This organism is described as mannitol −. **(c)** *Staphylococcus aureus* produced acid but not gas. This species is mannitol +. **(d)** *E. coli* is also mannitol + and produced acid and gas from mannitol. The gas is trapped in the inverted Durham tube.

Q What is the *S. epidermidis* using as its energy source?

cytochrome *c*, but others do not. In the former, *cytochrome c oxidase* is the last enzyme, which transfers electrons to oxygen. The oxidase test is routinely used to quickly identify *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. *Neisseria* is positive for cytochrome oxidase. The oxidase test can also be used to distinguish some gram-negative rods: *Pseudomonas* is oxidase-positive, and *Escherichia* is oxidase-negative.

It can be helpful clinically to distinguish between bacteria that cause similar symptoms. For example, both *Shigella* and *E. coli* can cause dysentery—an intestinal infection characterized by severe diarrhea. *Shigella* is differentiated from *E. coli* by biochemical tests. Unlike *E. coli*, *Shigella* bacteria do not produce gas from lactose. Similarly, *Salmonella* bacteria—another cause of diarrhea—are readily distinguishable from *E. coli* by the production of hydrogen sulfide (H_2S). Hydrogen sulfide is released when the *Salmonella* bacteria remove sulfur from sulfur-containing amino acids (Figure 5.24).

The Clinical Focus box describes how biochemical tests were used to determine the cause of a patient's infection following a surgical procedure.

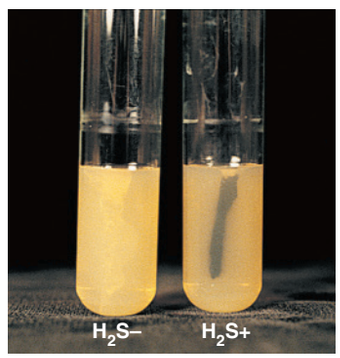


Figure 5.24 Use of peptone iron agar to detect the production of H_2S. Peptone is hydrolyzed protein consisting of amino acids. H_2S produced in the tube precipitates with iron in the medium as ferrous sulfide.

Q What chemical reaction causes the release of H_2S?

CLINICAL CASE

Dental caries are caused by oral streptococci, including *S. mutans*, *S. salivarius*, and *S. sobrinus*, that attach to tooth surfaces. Oral streptococci ferment sucrose and produce lactic acid, which lowers the salivary pH. Dr. Rivera decides to ask the camp counselors to substitute the bubblegum with a sugarless gum made with xylitol. A study has shown that chewing gum sweetened with xylitol, a naturally occurring sugar alcohol, can significantly lower the number of dental caries in children because it lowers the number of *S. mutans* in the mouth.

Why might xylitol reduce the number of *S. mutans*?

Part 1 Part 2 **Part 3** Part 4

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

5-18 On what biochemical basis are *Pseudomonas* and *Escherichia* differentiated?

Photosynthesis

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

5-19 Compare and contrast cyclic and noncyclic photophosphorylation.

5-20 Compare and contrast the light-dependent and light-independent reactions of photosynthesis.

5-21 Compare and contrast oxidative phosphorylation and photophosphorylation.

In all of the metabolic pathways just discussed, organisms obtain energy for cellular work by oxidizing organic compounds. But where do organisms obtain these organic compounds? Some, including animals and many microbes, feed on matter produced by other organisms. For example, bacteria may catabolize compounds from dead plants and animals, or they may obtain nourishment from a living host.

Other organisms synthesize complex organic compounds from simple inorganic substances. The major mechanism for such synthesis is a process called **photosynthesis**, which is carried out by plants and many microbes. Essentially, photosynthesis is the conversion of light energy from the sun into chemical energy. The chemical energy is then used to convert CO_2 from the atmosphere to more reduced carbon compounds, primarily sugars. The word *photosynthesis* summarizes the process: *photo* means light, and *synthesis* refers to the assembly of organic compounds. This synthesis of sugars by using carbon atoms from CO_2 gas is also called **carbon fixation**. Continuation of life as we know it on Earth depends on the recycling of carbon in this way (see Figure 27.2). Cyanobacteria, algae, and green plants all contribute to this vital recycling with photosynthesis.

Photosynthesis can be summarized with the following equations:

1. Plants, algae, and cyanobacteria use water as a hydrogen donor, releasing O_2.

$$6\ CO_2 + 12\ H_2O + \text{Light energy} \rightarrow C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\ H_2O + 6\ O_2$$

2. Purple sulfur and green sulfur bacteria use H_2S as a hydrogen donor, producing sulfur granules.

$$6\ CO_2 + 12\ H_2S + \text{Light energy} \rightarrow C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\ H_2O + 12\ S$$

In the course of photosynthesis, electrons are taken from hydrogen atoms, an energy-poor molecule, and incorporated into sugar, an energy-rich molecule. The energy boost is supplied by light energy, although indirectly.

Photosynthesis takes place in two stages. In the first stage, called the **light-dependent (light) reactions**, light energy is used to convert ADP and P to ATP. In addition, in the predominant form of the light-dependent reactions, the electron carrier $NADP^+$ is reduced to NADPH. The coenzyme NADPH, like NADH, is an energy-rich carrier of electrons. In the second stage, the **light-independent (dark) reactions**, these electrons are used along with energy from ATP to reduce CO_2 to sugar.

The Light-Dependent Reactions: Photophosphorylation

Photophosphorylation is one of the three ways ATP is formed, and it occurs only in photosynthetic cells. In this mechanism, light energy is absorbed by chlorophyll molecules in the photosynthetic cell, exciting some of the molecules' electrons. The chlorophyll principally used by green plants, algae, and cyanobacteria is *chlorophyll a*. It is located in the membranous thylakoids of chloroplasts in algae and green plants (see Figure 4.28) and in the thylakoids found in the photosynthetic structures of cyanobacteria. Other bacteria use *bacteriochlorophylls* located in the plasma membrane.

The excited electrons jump from the chlorophyll to the first of a series of carrier molecules, an electron transport chain similar to that used in respiration. As electrons are passed along the series of carriers, protons are pumped across the membrane, and ADP is converted to ATP by chemiosmosis. Chlorophyll and other pigments are packed into thylakoids and are called **photosystems**. *Photosystem II* is so numbered because even though it was most likely the first photosystem to evolve, it was the second one discovered. It contains chlorophyll that is sensitive to wavelengths of light of 680 nm. The chlorophyll in *photosystem I* is sensitive to wavelengths of light of 700 nm. In **cyclic photophosphorylation**, the electrons released from

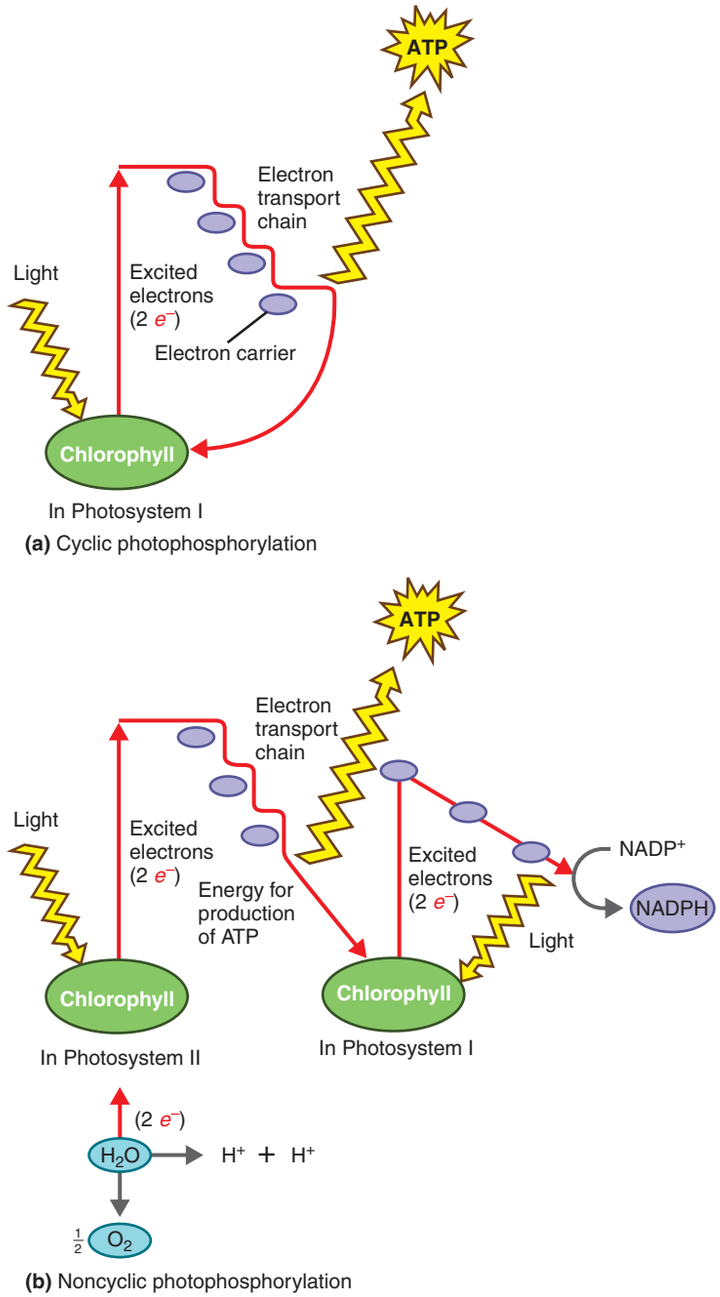


Figure 5.25 Photophosphorylation. **(a)** In cyclic photophosphorylation, electrons released from chlorophyll by light in photosystem I return to chlorophyll after passage along the electron transport chain. The energy from electron transfer is used to synthesize ATP. **(b)** In noncyclic photophosphorylation, electrons released from chlorophyll in photosystem II are replaced by electrons from the hydrogen atoms in water. This process also releases hydrogen ions. Electrons from chlorophyll in photosystem I are passed along the electron transport chain to the electron acceptor $NADP^+$. $NADP^+$ combines with electrons and with hydrogen ions from water, forming NADPH.

Q How are oxidative phosphorylation and photophosphorylation similar?

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

S. mutans cannot ferment xylitol; consequently, it doesn't grow and can't produce acid in the mouth. The camp counselors agree to switch to sugarless gum made with xylitol, and Dr. Rivera is pleased. She understands that there will be other sources of sucrose in the children's diets, but at least her patients are no longer going to be adversely affected by the camp's well-intentioned incentives. Researchers are still investigating ways that antimicrobials and vaccines can be used to reduce bacterial colonization. However, reducing consumption of sucrose-containing gum and candy may be an effective preventive measure in the mouth.

Part 1 | Part 2 | Part 3 | **Part 4**

chlorophyll in photosystem I eventually return to chlorophyll (Figure 5.25a). That is, the electrons in photosystem I remain in photosystem I. In **noncyclic photophosphorylation**, which is used in oxygenic organisms, both photosystems are required. The electrons released from the chlorophyll in photosystem II and photosystem I do not return to chlorophyll but become incorporated into NADPH (Figure 5.25b). The electrons lost from chlorophyll are replaced by electrons from H_2O. To summarize: the products of noncyclic photophosphorylation are ATP (formed by chemiosmosis using energy released in an electron transport chain), O_2 (from water molecules), and NADPH (carrying electrons from chlorophyll and protons derived from water).

The Light-Independent Reactions: The Calvin-Benson Cycle

The light-independent reactions are so named because they don't require light. They include a complex cyclic pathway called the **Calvin-Benson cycle**, in which CO_2 is "fixed"—that is, it's used to synthesize sugars (Figure 5.26; see also Figure A.1 in Appendix A).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **5-19** How is photosynthesis important to catabolism?
- **5-20** What is made during the light-dependent reactions?
- **5-21** How are oxidative phosphorylation and photophosphorylation similar?

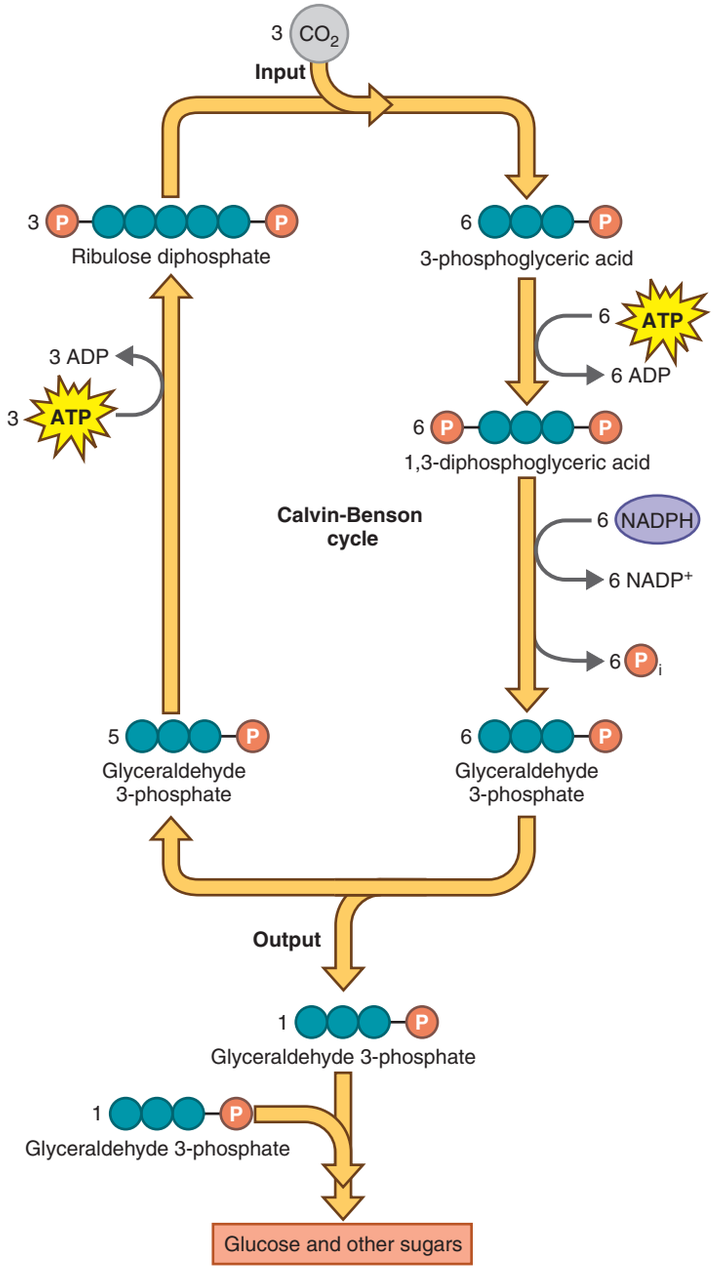


Figure 5.26 A simplified version of the Calvin-Benson cycle. This diagram shows three turns of the cycle, in which three molecules of CO_2 are fixed and one molecule of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate is produced and leaves the cycle. Two molecules of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate are needed to make one molecule of glucose. Therefore, the cycle must turn six times for each glucose molecule produced, requiring a total investment of 6 molecules of CO_2, 18 molecules of ATP, and 12 molecules of NADPH. A more detailed version of this cycle is presented in Figure A.1 in Appendix A.

Q In the Calvin-Benson cycle, which molecule is used to synthesize sugars?

A Summary of Energy Production Mechanisms

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

5-22 Write a sentence to summarize energy production in cells.

In the living world, energy passes from one organism to another as the potential energy contained in the bonds of chemical compounds. Organisms obtain the energy from oxidation reactions. To obtain energy in a usable form, a cell must have an electron (or hydrogen) donor, which serves as an initial energy source within the cell. Electron donors are diverse and can include photosynthetic pigments, glucose or other organic compounds, elemental sulfur, ammonia, or hydrogen gas (Figure 5.27). Next, electrons removed from the chemical energy sources are transferred to electron carriers, such as the coenzymes NAD^+, $NADP^+$, and FAD. This transfer is an oxidation-reduction reaction; the initial energy source is oxidized as this first electron carrier is reduced. During this phase, some ATP is produced. In the third stage, electrons are transferred from electron carriers to their final electron acceptors in further oxidation-reduction reactions, producing more ATP.

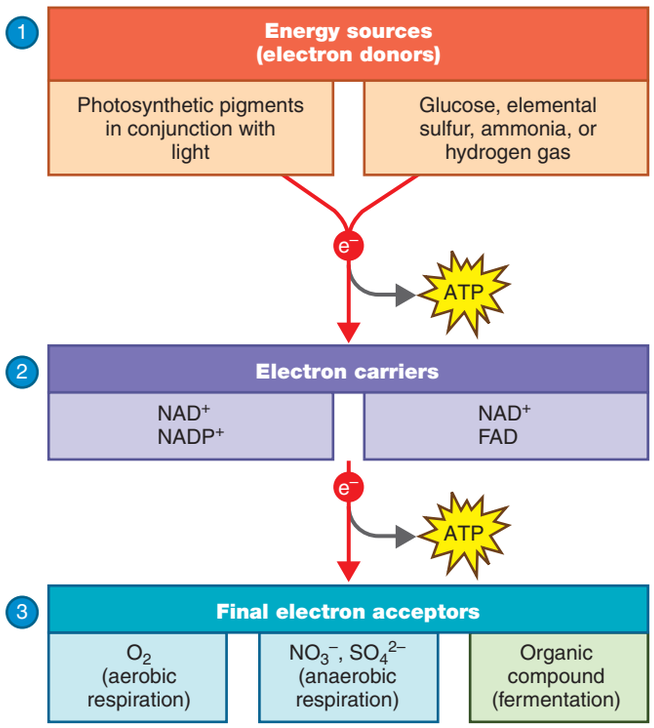


Figure 5.27 Requirements of ATP production. The production of ATP requires 1 an energy source (electron donor), 2 the transfer of electrons to an electron carrier during an oxidation-reduction reaction, and 3 the transfer of electrons to a final electron acceptor.

Q Are energy-generating reactions oxidations or reductions?

In aerobic respiration, oxygen (O_2) serves as the final electron acceptor. In anaerobic respiration, substances from the environment other than oxygen, such as nitrate ions (NO_3^-) or sulfate ions (SO_4^{2-}), serve as the final electron acceptors. In fermentation, compounds in the cytoplasm serve as the final electron acceptors. In aerobic and anaerobic respiration, a series of electron carriers called an electron transport chain releases energy that is used by the mechanism of chemiosmosis to synthesize ATP. Regardless of their energy sources, all organisms use similar oxidation-reduction reactions to transfer electrons and similar mechanisms to use the energy released to produce ATP.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

5-22 Summarize how oxidation enables organisms to get energy from glucose, sulfur, or sunlight.

Metabolic Diversity among Organisms

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

5-23 Categorize the various nutritional patterns among organisms according to carbon source and mechanisms of carbohydrate catabolism and ATP generation.

We have looked in detail at some of the energy-generating metabolic pathways that are used by animals and plants, as well as by many microbes. Some microbes can sustain themselves on inorganic substances by using pathways that are unavailable to either plants or animals. All organisms, including microbes, can be classified metabolically according to their *nutritional pattern*—their source of energy and their source of carbon.

ASM: Bacteria and Archaea exhibit extensive, and often unique, metabolic diversity.

First considering the energy source, we can generally classify organisms as phototrophs or chemotrophs. **Phototrophs** use light as their primary energy source, whereas **chemotrophs** depend on oxidation-reduction reactions of inorganic or organic compounds for energy. For their principal carbon source, **autotrophs** (self-feeders) use carbon dioxide, and **heterotrophs** (feeders on others) require an organic carbon source. Autotrophs are also referred to as *lithotrophs* (rock eating), and heterotrophs are also referred to as *organotrophs*.

If we combine the energy and carbon sources, we derive the following nutritional classifications for organisms: *photoautotrophs*, *photoheterotrophs*, *chemoautotrophs*, and *chemoheterotrophs* (Figure 5.28). Almost all of the medically important microorganisms discussed in this book are chemoheterotrophs. Typically, infectious organisms catabolize substances obtained from the host.

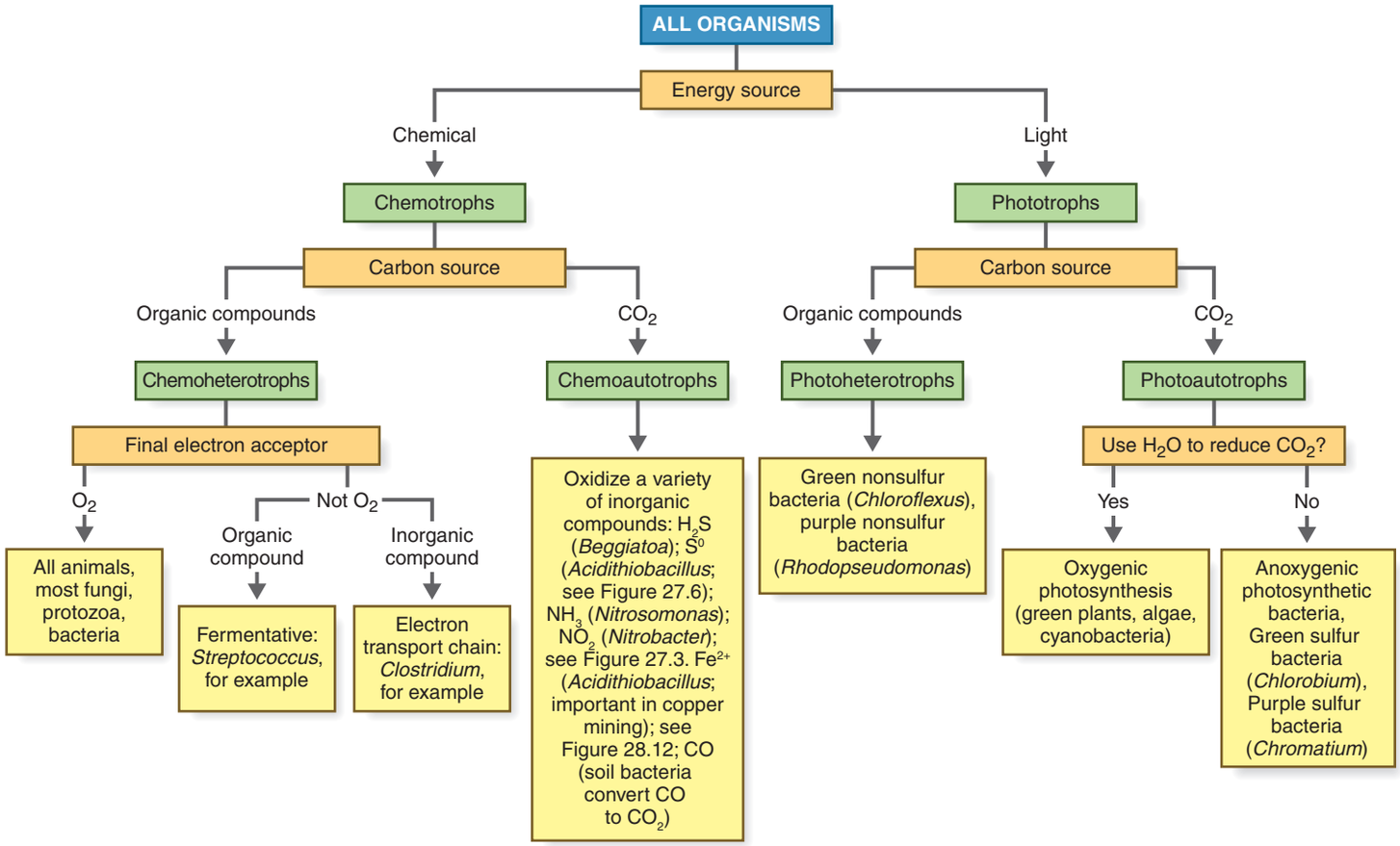


Figure 5.28 **A nutritional classification of organisms.**

Q What is the basic difference between chemotrophs and phototrophs?

Photoautotrophs

Photoautotrophs use light as a source of energy and carbon dioxide as their chief source of carbon. They include photosynthetic bacteria (green and purple bacteria and cyanobacteria), algae, and green plants. In the photosynthetic reactions of cyanobacteria, algae, and green plants, the hydrogen atoms of water are used in the Calvin-Benson cycle to reduce carbon dioxide, and oxygen gas is given off. Because this photosynthetic process produces O_2 it is sometimes called **oxygenic**.

In addition to the cyanobacteria (see Figure 11.13), there are several other families of photosynthetic prokaryotes. Each is classified according to the way it reduces CO_2. These bacteria cannot use H_2O to reduce CO_2 and cannot carry on photosynthesis when oxygen is present (they must have an anaerobic environment). Consequently, their photosynthetic process does not produce O_2 and is called **anoxygenic**. The anoxygenic photoautotrophs are the green and purple bacteria. The **green sulfur bacteria**, such as *Chlorobium* (klor-Ō-bē-um), use sulfur (S), sulfur compounds (such as hydrogen sulfide, H_2S), or hydrogen gas (H_2) to reduce carbon dioxide and form organic compounds. Applying the energy from light and the appropriate enzymes, these bacteria oxidize sulfide (S^{2-}) or sulfur (S) to sulfate (SO_4^{2-}) or oxidize hydrogen gas to water (H_2O). The **purple sulfur bacteria**, such as *Chromatium* (krō-MĀ-shum), also use sulfur, sulfur compounds, or hydrogen gas to reduce carbon dioxide. They are distinguished from the green sulfur bacteria by their type of chlorophyll, location of stored sulfur, and ribosomal RNA.

The chlorophylls used by these photosynthetic bacteria, called *bacteriochlorophylls*, absorb light at longer wavelengths than that absorbed by chlorophyll *a*. Bacteriochlorophylls of green sulfur bacteria are found in vesicles called *chlorosomes* (or *chlorobium vesicles*) underlying and attached to the plasma membrane. In the purple sulfur bacteria, the bacteriochlorophylls are located in invaginations of the plasma membrane (*chromatophores*).

Table 5.6 summarizes several characteristics that distinguish eukaryotic photosynthesis from prokaryotic photosynthesis.

TABLE 5.6 Photosynthesis Compared in Selected Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes

Characteristic	Eukaryotes	Prokaryotes		
	Algae, Plants	**Cyanobacteria**	**Green Sulfur Bacteria**	**Purple Sulfur Bacteria**
Substance That Reduces CO_2	H atoms of H_2O	H atoms of H_2O	Sulfur, sulfur compounds, H_2 gas	Sulfur, sulfur compounds, H_2 gas
Oxygen Production	Oxygenic	Oxygenic (and anoxygenic)	Anoxygenic	Anoxygenic
Type of Chlorophyll	Chlorophyll *a*	Chlorophyll *a*	Bacteriochlorophyll *a*	Bacteriochlorophyll *a* or *b*
Site of Photosynthesis	Thylakoids in chloroplasts	Thylakoids	Chlorosomes	Chromatophores
Environment	Aerobic	Aerobic (and anaerobic)	Anaerobic	Anaerobic

Photoheterotrophs

Photoheterotrophs use light as a source of energy but cannot convert carbon dioxide to sugar; rather, they use organic compounds, such as alcohols, fatty acids, other organic acids, and carbohydrates, as sources of carbon. Photoheterotrophs are anoxygenic. The **green nonsulfur bacteria**, such as *Chloroflexus* (klor-ō-FLEX-us), and **purple nonsulfur bacteria**, such as *Rhodopseudomonas* (rō′dō-soo′dō-MŌ-nas), are photoheterotrophs.

Chemoautotrophs

Chemoautotrophs use the electrons from reduced inorganic compounds as a source of energy, and they use CO_2 as their principal source of carbon. They fix CO_2 in the Calvin-Benson Cycle (see Figure 5.26). Inorganic sources of energy for these organisms include hydrogen sulfide (H_2S) for *Beggiatoa* (BEJ-jē-ah-tō-ah); elemental sulfur (S) for *Acidithiobacillus thiooxidans*; ammonia (NH_3) for *Nitrosomonas* (NĪ-trō-sō-mō-nas); nitrite ions (NO_2^-) for *Nitrobacter* (ni′trō-BAK-ter); molecular hydrogen (H_2) for *Aquifex* (AH-kwa-feks); ferrous iron (Fe^{2+}) for *Acidithiobacillus ferrooxidans*; and carbon monoxide (CO) for *Pseudomonas carboxydohydrogena* (kar-box′id-ō-hī-DRO-je-nah). The energy derived from the oxidation of these inorganic compounds is eventually stored in ATP by oxidative phosphorylation.

Chemoheterotrophs

When we discuss photoautotrophs, photoheterotrophs, and chemoautotrophs, it's easy to categorize the energy and carbon sources because they occur as separate entities. However, in chemoheterotrophs, the distinction isn't as clear because the energy and carbon sources are usually the same organic compound—glucose, for example. **Chemoheterotrophs** specifically use the electrons from hydrogen atoms in organic compounds as their energy source.

Heterotrophs are further classified according to their source of organic molecules. **Saprophytes** live on dead organic matter, and **parasites** derive nutrients from a living host. Most bacteria, and all fungi and animals, are chemoheterotrophs.

Bacteria and fungi can use a wide variety of organic compounds for carbon and energy sources. This is why they can live in diverse environments. Understanding microbial diversity is scientifically interesting and economically important. In some situations microbial growth is undesirable, such as when rubber-degrading bacteria destroy a gasket or shoe sole. However, these same bacteria might be beneficial if they decomposed discarded rubber products, such as used tires. *Rhodococcus erythropolis* (rō-dō-KOK-kus er′i-THROP-ō-lis) is widely distributed in soil and can cause disease in humans and other animals. However, this species is able to replace sulfur atoms in petroleum with atoms of oxygen. Removing sulfur from crude oil is an important step in the oil-refining process. Sulfur corrodes equipment and pipelines and contributes to acid precipitation and pollution-related respiratory problems in people. Researchers are investigating *Rhodococcus* to remove sulfur from petroleum and coal.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

5-23 Almost all medically important microbes belong to which of the four aforementioned groups?

* * *

We will next consider how cells use ATP pathways for the synthesis of organic compounds such as carbohydrates, lipids, proteins, and nucleic acids.

Metabolic Pathways of Energy Use

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

5-24 Describe the major types of anabolism and their relationship to catabolism.

Up to now we've been considering energy production. Through the oxidation of organic molecules, organisms produce energy by aerobic respiration, anaerobic respiration, and fermentation.

CLINICAL FOCUS Nontuberculous Mycobacteria Infection Following Surgery

As you read through this box, you will encounter a series of questions that laboratory technicians ask themselves as they identify bacteria. Try to answer each question before going on to the next one.

1. Julia, a 42-year-old female, complained of abdominal pain 3 weeks after abdominoplasty ("tummy tuck") surgery. She developed a fever of 39°C and a distended abdomen. A CT scan showed several abscesses on her abdominal wall. Tigecycline and clarithromycin were prescribed. No organisms were seen in a Gram stain or acid-fast stain. Cultures grew acid-fast rods after 7 days. Acid-fast bacteria that grow within a week belong to a group called rapidly growing mycobacteria (RGM) and are found in soil and water.

   What disease is usually associated with *Mycobacterium*? How might someone get an infection caused by a rapidly growing *Mycobacterium*?

2. Tuberculosis is most often thought of when one hears the name *Mycobacterium*. Healthcare-associated infections due to *Mycobacterium* are usually of the skin and the soft tissues under the skin and are caused by rapidly growing mycobacteria. People who have an open wound or receive an injection without appropriate skin disinfection may be at risk for RGM infection.

   What is the next step?

3. The lab results confirm that acid-fast bacteria are indeed present in Julia's abdominal cavity. The laboratory now needs to identify the *Mycobacterium* species. Speciation of mycobacteria is done by biochemical testing in reference laboratories (**Figure A**) and confirmed by testing of bacterial DNA or mycolic acid analysis. The bacteria need to be grown in culture media. Slowly growing mycobacteria may take up to 6 weeks to form colonies.

   After colonies have been isolated, what is the next step?

4. One week later, the laboratory results show that the bacteria are growing rapidly. According to the identification scheme, the citrate test (**Figure B**) should be performed.

   What is the result shown in Figure B?

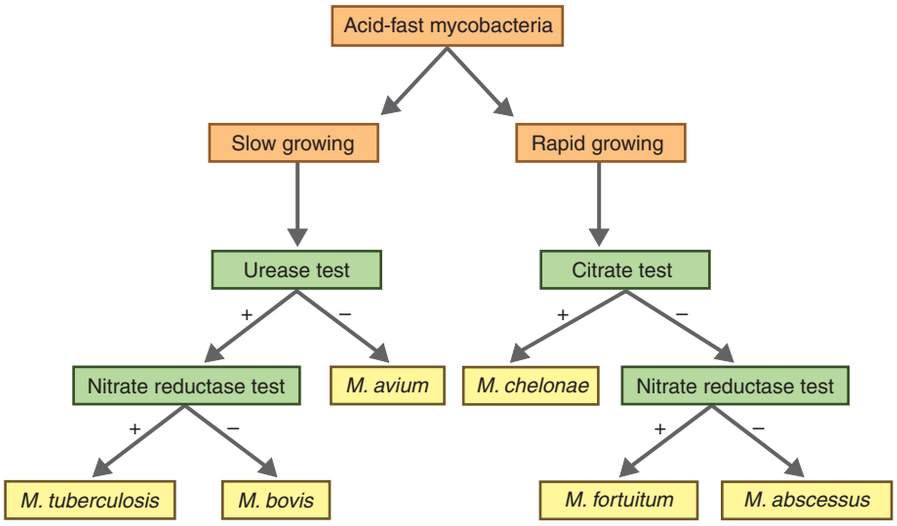


Figure 5.A An identification scheme for selected species of mycobacteria.

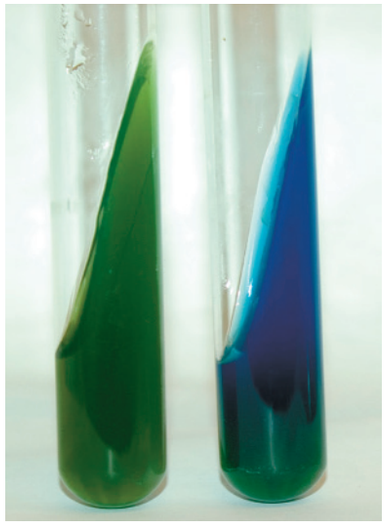


Figure 5.B The citrate test. In a positive test, bacteria that can use citrate as their carbon source will grow. The use of citrate will raise the pH, and the indicator in the medium turns to blue.

5. Because the citrate test is negative, the nitrate reduction test is performed. It shows that the bacteria do not produce the enzyme nitrate reductase. Julia's physician lets her know that they are very close to identifying the pathogen that is causing her illness.

   What is the bacterium?

6. *M. abscessus* can cause a variety of infections. Healthcare-associated infections due to this bacterium are usually of the skin and the soft tissues under the skin. It is also a cause of serious lung infections in people with various chronic lung diseases, such as cystic fibrosis. Since 2013, the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) has conducted several investigations of serious complications among medical tourists (i.e., persons whose primary purpose for international travel is medical care) upon their return to the United States.

Source: Adapted from *MMWR* 67(12): 369–370, March 30, 2018.

Much of this energy is given off as heat. The complete metabolic oxidation of glucose to carbon dioxide and water is considered a very efficient process, but about 45% of the energy of glucose is lost as heat. Cells use the remaining energy, which is trapped in the bonds of ATP, in a variety of ways. Microbes use ATP to provide energy for the transport of substances across plasma membranes by active transport. (See Chapter 4.) Microbes also use some of their energy for flagellar motion (also discussed in Chapter 4). Most of the ATP, however, is used in biosynthesis—the production of needed cellular components, usually from simpler molecules. Biosynthesis is a continuous process in cells and, in general, is faster in prokaryotic cells than in eukaryotic cells.

Autotrophs build their organic compounds by fixing carbon dioxide in the Calvin-Benson cycle (see Figure 5.26). This requires both energy (ATP) and electrons (from the oxidation of NADPH). Heterotrophs, by contrast, must have a ready source of organic compounds for biosynthesis. The cells use these compounds as both the carbon source and the energy source. We will next consider the biosynthesis of a few representative classes of biological molecules: carbohydrates, lipids, amino acids, purines, and pyrimidines. As we do so, keep in mind that synthesis reactions require a net input of energy.

Polysaccharide Biosynthesis

Microorganisms synthesize sugars and polysaccharides. The carbon atoms required to synthesize glucose are derived from the intermediates produced during processes such as glycolysis and the Krebs cycle and from lipids or amino acids. After synthesizing glucose (or other simple sugars), bacteria may assemble it into more complex polysaccharides, such as glycogen. For bacteria to build glucose into glycogen, glucose units must be phosphorylated and linked by dehydration synthesis. The product of glucose phosphorylation is glucose 6-phosphate. Such a process involves the expenditure of energy, usually in the form of ATP. In order for bacteria to synthesize glycogen, a molecule of ATP is added to glucose 6-phosphate to form *adenosine diphosphoglucose (ADPG)* (**Figure 5.29**). Once ADPG is synthesized, it is linked with similar units to form glycogen.

Using a nucleotide called uridine triphosphate (UTP) as a source of energy and glucose 6-phosphate, animals synthesize glycogen (and many other carbohydrates) from *uridine diphosphoglucose, UDPG* (see Figure 5.29). A compound related to UDPG, called *UDP-N-acetylglucosamine (UDPNAc)*, is a key starting material in the biosynthesis of peptidoglycan, the substance that forms bacterial cell walls. UDPNAc is formed from fructose 6-phosphate, and the reaction also uses UTP.

Lipid Biosynthesis

Because lipids vary considerably in chemical composition, they are synthesized by a variety of routes. Cells synthesize fats by joining glycerol and fatty acids. The glycerol portion of the fat is derived from dihydroxyacetone phosphate, an intermediate

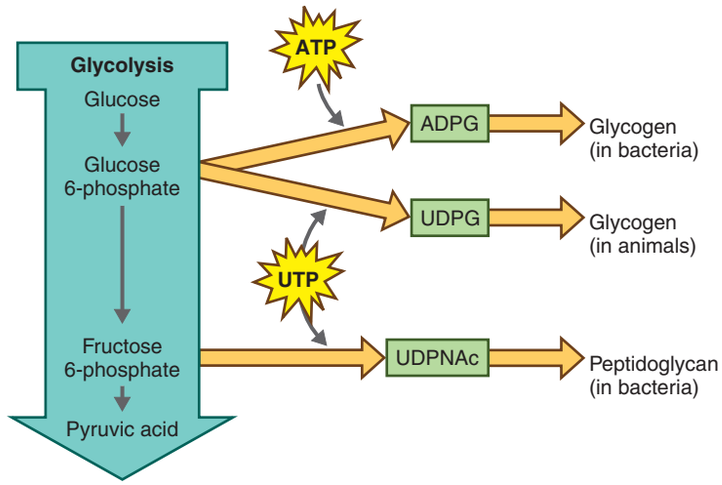


Figure 5.29 The biosynthesis of polysaccharides.

Q How are polysaccharides used in cells?

formed during glycolysis. Fatty acids, which are long-chain hydrocarbons (hydrogen linked to carbon), are built up when two-carbon fragments of acetyl CoA are successively added to each other (**Figure 5.30**). As with polysaccharide synthesis, the building units of fats and other lipids are linked via dehydration synthesis reactions that require energy, not always in the form of ATP.

The most important role of lipids is to serve as structural components of biological membranes, and most membrane

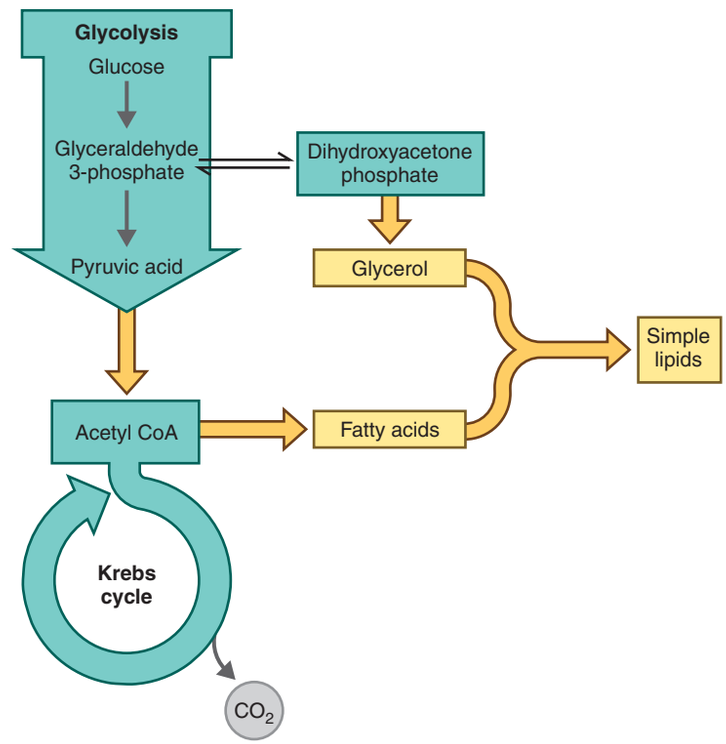


Figure 5.30 The biosynthesis of simple lipids.

Q What is the primary use of lipids in cells?

lipids are phospholipids. A lipid of a very different structure, cholesterol, is also found in plasma membranes of eukaryotic cells. Waxes are lipids that are important components of the cell wall of acid-fast bacteria. Other lipids, such as carotenoids, provide the red, orange, and yellow pigments of some microorganisms. Some lipids form portions of chlorophyll molecules. Lipids also function in energy storage. Recall that the breakdown products of lipids after biological oxidation feed into the Krebs cycle.

Amino Acid and Protein Biosynthesis

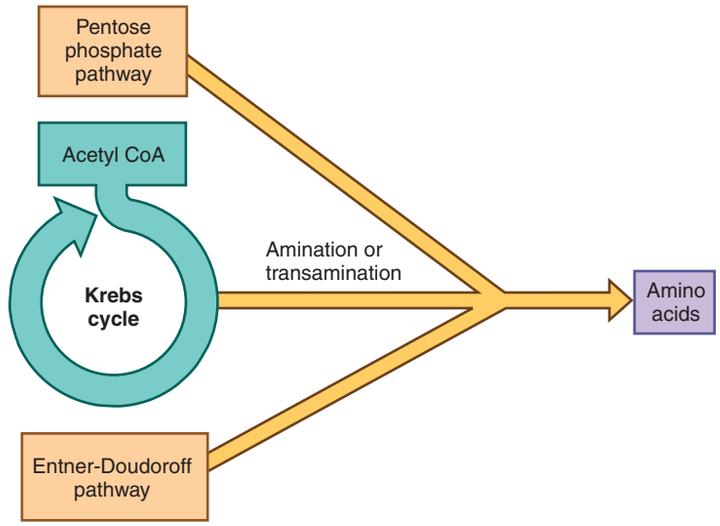
Amino acids are required for protein biosynthesis. Some microbes, such as *E. coli*, contain the enzymes necessary to use starting materials, such as glucose and inorganic salts, for the synthesis of all the amino acids they need. Organisms with the necessary enzymes can synthesize all amino acids directly or indirectly from intermediates of carbohydrate metabolism (Figure 5.31a). Other microbes require that the environment provide some preformed amino acids.

Although intermediates from the other catabolic pathways can be used to synthesize amino acids, an important source of the precursors used in amino acid synthesis is the Krebs cycle. Adding an amine group to pyruvic acid or to an appropriate organic acid of the Krebs cycle converts the acid into an amino acid. This process is called **amination**. If the amine group comes from a preexisting amino acid, the process is called **transamination** (Figure 5.31b).

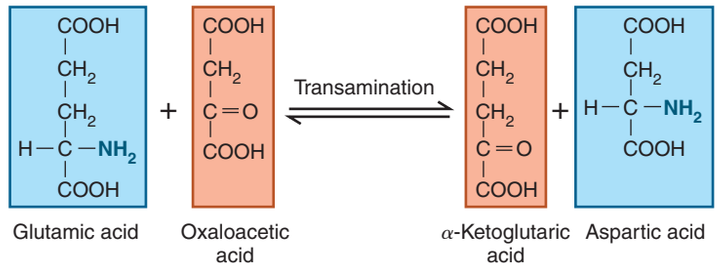
Most amino acids within cells are destined to be building blocks for protein synthesis. Proteins play major roles in the cell as enzymes, structural components, and toxins, to name just a few uses. The joining of amino acids to form proteins involves dehydration synthesis and requires energy in the form of ATP. The mechanism of protein synthesis involves genes and is discussed in Chapter 8.

Purine and Pyrimidine Biosynthesis

The informational molecules DNA and RNA consist of repeating units called *nucleotides*, each of which consists of a purine or pyrimidine, a pentose (five-carbon sugar), and a phosphate group. (See Chapter 2.) The five-carbon sugars of nucleotides are derived from either the pentose phosphate pathway or the Entner-Doudoroff pathway. Certain amino acids—aspartic acid, glycine, and glutamine—made from intermediates produced during glycolysis and in the Krebs cycle participate in the biosyntheses of purines and pyrimidines (Figure 5.32). The carbon and nitrogen atoms derived from these amino acids form the purine and pyrimidine rings, and the energy for synthesis is provided by ATP. DNA contains all the information necessary to determine the specific structures and functions of cells. Both RNA and DNA are required for protein synthesis. In addition, nucleotides such as ATP, NAD^+, and $NADP^+$ assume roles in stimulating and inhibiting the rate of cellular metabolism. The synthesis of DNA and RNA from nucleotides will be discussed in Chapter 8.



(a) Amino acid biosynthesis



(b) Process of transamination

Figure 5.31 The biosynthesis of amino acids. **(a)** Pathways of amino acid biosynthesis through amination or transamination of intermediates of carbohydrate metabolism from the Krebs cycle, pentose phosphate pathway, and Entner-Doudoroff pathway. **(b)** Transamination, a process by which new amino acids are made with the amine groups from old amino acids. Glutamic acid and aspartic acid are both amino acids; the other two compounds are intermediates in the Krebs cycle.

Q What is the function of amino acids in cells?

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

5-24 Where do amino acids required for protein synthesis come from?

The Integration of Metabolism

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

5-25 Define *amphibolic pathways.*

We have seen thus far that the metabolic processes of microbes produce energy from light, inorganic compounds, and organic compounds. Reactions also occur in which energy is used for

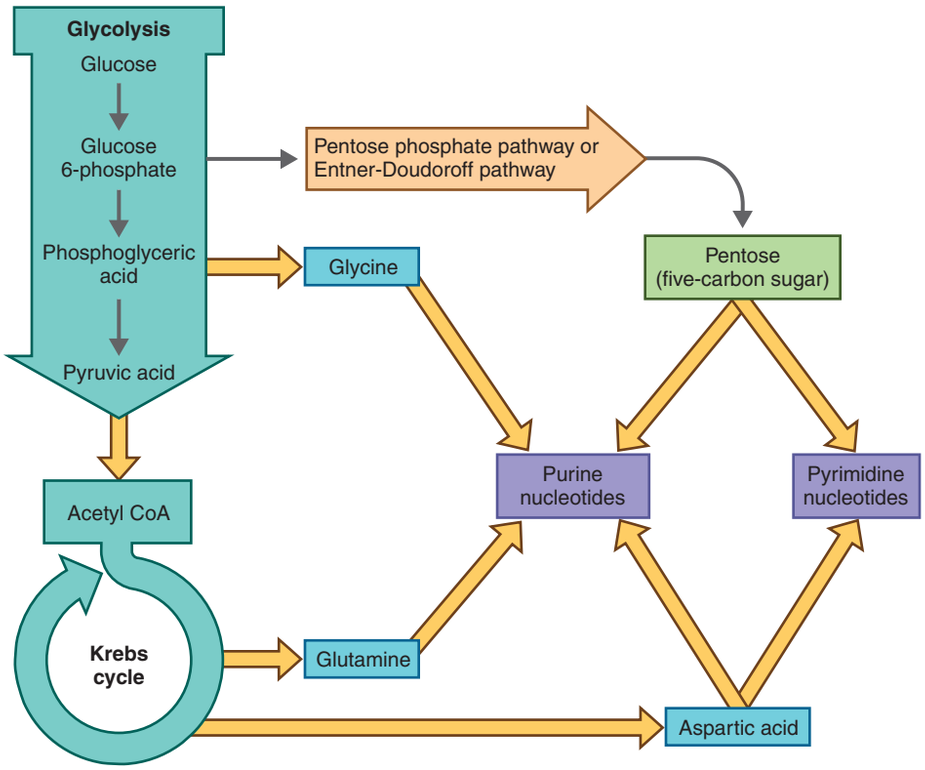


Figure 5.32 **The biosynthesis of purine and pyrimidine nucleotides.**

Q What are the functions of nucleotides in a cell?

biosynthesis. With such a variety of activity, you might imagine that anabolic and catabolic reactions occur independently of each other in space and time. Actually, anabolic and catabolic reactions are joined through a group of common intermediates (identified as key intermediates in Figure 5.33). Both anabolic and catabolic reactions also share some metabolic pathways, such as the Krebs cycle. For example, reactions in the Krebs cycle not only participate in the oxidation of glucose but also produce intermediates that can be converted to amino acids. Metabolic pathways that function in both anabolism and catabolism are called **amphibolic pathways**, meaning that they are dual-purpose.

Amphibolic pathways bridge the reactions that lead to the breakdown and synthesis of carbohydrates, lipids, proteins, and nucleotides. Such pathways enable simultaneous reactions to occur in which the breakdown product formed in one reaction is used in another reaction to synthesize a different compound, and vice versa. Because various intermediates are common to both anabolic and catabolic reactions, mechanisms exist that regulate synthesis and breakdown pathways and allow these reactions to occur simultaneously. One such mechanism involves the use of different coenzymes for opposite pathways. For example, NAD^+ is involved in catabolic reactions, whereas $NADP^+$ is involved in anabolic reactions. Enzymes can also coordinate anabolic and catabolic reactions by accelerating or inhibiting the rates of biochemical reactions.

The energy stores of a cell can also affect the rates of biochemical reactions. For example, if ATP begins to accumulate, feedback inhibition to an enzyme shuts down glycolysis; this control helps to synchronize the rates of glycolysis and the Krebs cycle. Thus, if citric acid consumption increases, either because of a demand for more ATP or because anabolic pathways are draining off intermediates of the Krebs cycle, glycolysis accelerates and meets the demand.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

5-25 Summarize the integration of metabolic pathways using peptidoglycan synthesis as an example.

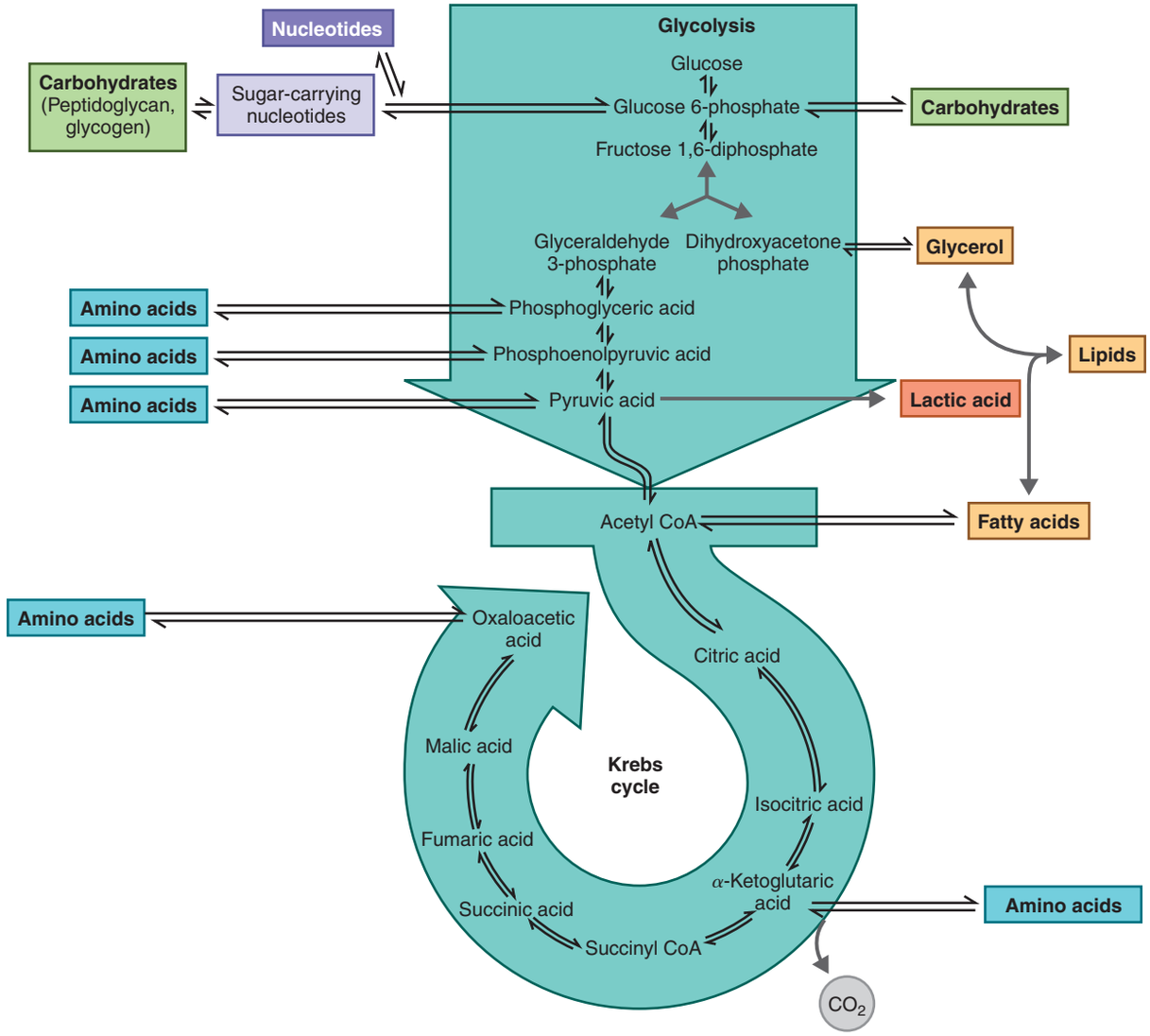


Figure 5.33 The integration of metabolism. Key intermediates are shown. Although not indicated in the figure, amino acids and ribose are used in the synthesis of purine and pyrimidine nucleotides (see Figure 5.32). The double arrows indicate amphibolic pathways.

Q What is the purpose of an amphibolic pathway?

Study Outline

Catabolic and Anabolic Reactions (pp. 110–111)

1. The sum of all chemical reactions within a living organism is known as metabolism.
2. Catabolism refers to chemical reactions that result in the breakdown of more complex organic molecules into simpler substances. Catabolic reactions usually release energy.
3. Anabolism refers to chemical reactions in which simpler substances are combined to form more complex molecules. Anabolic reactions usually require energy.
4. The energy of catabolic reactions is used to drive anabolic reactions.
5. The energy for chemical reactions is stored in ATP.

Enzymes (pp. 111–117)

1. Chemical reactions depend on collisions between reactants, which must provide enough energy (activation energy) to break or make chemical bonds.
2. Enzymes are proteins produced by living cells. They catalyze chemical reactions by lowering the activation energy.

3. Enzymes are generally globular proteins with characteristic three-dimensional shapes.
4. Enzymes are efficient, can operate at relatively low temperatures, and are subject to various cellular controls.
5. When an enzyme and substrate combine, the substrate is transformed, and the enzyme is recovered.
6. Enzymes are characterized by specificity, which is a function of their active sites.

Naming Enzymes (p. 113)

7. Enzyme names usually end in *-ase*.
8. The six classes of enzymes are defined on the basis of the types of reactions they catalyze.

Enzyme Components (pp. 113–114)

9. Most enzymes are holoenzymes, consisting of a protein portion (apoenzyme) and a nonprotein portion (cofactor).
10. The cofactor can be a metal ion (iron, copper, magnesium, manganese, zinc, calcium, or cobalt) or a complex organic molecule known as a coenzyme (NAD^+, $NADP^+$, FMN, FAD, or coenzyme A).

Factors Influencing Enzymatic Activity (pp. 114–116)

11. At high temperatures, enzymes undergo denaturation and lose their catalytic properties; at low temperatures, the reaction rate decreases.
12. The pH at which enzymatic activity is maximal is known as the optimum pH.
13. Enzymatic activity increases as substrate concentration increases until the enzymes are saturated.
14. Competitive inhibitors compete with the normal substrate for the active site of the enzyme. Noncompetitive inhibitors act on other parts of the apoenzyme or on the cofactor and decrease the enzyme's ability to combine with the normal substrate.

Feedback Inhibition (p. 116)

15. Feedback inhibition occurs when the end-product of a metabolic pathway inhibits an enzyme's activity near the start of the pathway.

Ribozymes (pp. 116–117)

16. Ribozymes are enzymatic RNA molecules involved in protein synthesis.

Energy Production (pp. 117–119)

Oxidation-Reduction Reactions (pp. 117–118)

1. Oxidation is the removal of one or more electrons from a substrate. Protons (H^+) are often removed with the electrons.
2. Reduction of a substrate refers to its gain of one or more electrons.
3. Each time a substance is oxidized, another is simultaneously reduced.
4. NAD^+ is the oxidized form; NADH is the reduced form.
5. Glucose is a reduced molecule; energy is released during a cell's oxidation of glucose.

The Generation of ATP (pp. 118–119)

6. Energy released during certain metabolic reactions can be trapped to form ATP from ADP and P_i (phosphate). Addition of a P_i molecule is called phosphorylation.
7. During substrate-level phosphorylation, a high-energy P from an intermediate in catabolism is added to ADP.
8. During oxidative phosphorylation, energy is released as electrons are passed to a series of electron acceptors (an electron transport chain) and finally to O_2 or another inorganic compound.
9. During photophosphorylation, energy from light is trapped by chlorophyll, and electrons are passed through a series of electron acceptors. The electron transfer releases energy used for the synthesis of ATP.

Metabolic Pathways of Energy Production (p. 199)

10. A series of enzymatically catalyzed chemical reactions called metabolic pathways store energy in and release energy from organic molecules.

Carbohydrate Catabolism (pp. 119–133)

1. Most of a cell's energy is produced from the oxidation of carbohydrates.
2. The two major types of carbohydrate catabolism are respiration, in which a sugar is completely broken down, and fermentation, in which the sugar is partially broken down.

Glycolysis (p. 121)

3. The most common pathway for the oxidation of glucose is glycolysis. Pyruvic acid is the end-product.
4. Glycolysis yields two ATP and two NADH molecules from one glucose molecule.

Additional Pathways to Glycolysis (pp. 121–123)

5. The pentose phosphate pathway is used to oxidize five-carbon sugars; one ATP and 12 NADPH molecules are produced from one glucose molecule.
6. The Entner-Doudoroff pathway yields one ATP and two NADPH molecules from oxidation of one glucose molecule.

Cellular Respiration (pp. 123–128)

7. During respiration, organic molecules are oxidized. Energy is generated from oxidations in the electron transport chain.
8. In aerobic respiration, O_2 functions as the final electron acceptor.
9. In anaerobic respiration, the final electron acceptor is not O_2; the electron acceptors in anaerobic respiration include NO_3^-, SO_4^{2-}, and CO_3^{2-}.
10. Decarboxylation of pyruvic acid produces one CO_2 molecule and one acetyl group.
11. Two-carbon acetyl groups are oxidized in the Krebs cycle. Electrons are picked up by NAD^+ and FAD for the electron transport chain.
12. Oxidation of one molecule of glucose produces six molecules of NADH, two molecules of $FADH_2$, and two molecules of ATP.
13. Decarboxylation produces six molecules of CO_2 in the Krebs cycle.
14. NADH and $FADH_2$ carry electrons to the electron transport chain.
15. The electron transport chain consists of carriers, including flavoproteins, cytochromes, and ubiquinones.

16. Protons being pumped across the membrane generate a proton motive force as electrons move through a series of acceptors or carriers.
17. Energy produced from movement of the protons back across the membrane is used by ATP synthase to make ATP from ADP and P_i.
18. In eukaryotes, electron carriers are located in the inner mitochondrial membrane; in prokaryotes, electron carriers are in the plasma membrane.
19. In aerobic prokaryotes, 38 ATP molecules can be produced from complete oxidation of a glucose molecule in glycolysis, the Krebs cycle, and the electron transport chain.
20. In eukaryotes, 36 ATP molecules are produced from complete oxidation of a glucose molecule.
21. The total ATP yield in anaerobic respiration is less than in aerobic respiration because only part of the Krebs cycle operates under anaerobic conditions.

Fermentation (pp. 128–133)

22. Fermentation releases energy from sugars or other organic molecules by oxidation.
23. O_2 is not required in fermentation.
24. Two ATP molecules are produced by substrate-level phosphorylation.
25. Electrons removed from the substrate reduce NAD^+.
26. The final electron acceptor is a substance from inside the cell.
27. In lactic acid fermentation, pyruvic acid is reduced by NADH to lactic acid.
28. In alcohol fermentation, acetaldehyde is reduced by NADH to produce ethanol.
29. Heterolactic fermenters can use the pentose phosphate pathway to produce lactic acid and ethanol.

Lipid and Protein Catabolism (pp. 133–134)

1. Lipases hydrolyze lipids into glycerol and fatty acids.
2. Fatty acids and other hydrocarbons are catabolized by beta-oxidation.
3. Catabolic products can be further broken down in glycolysis and the Krebs cycle.
4. Before amino acids can be catabolized, they must be converted to various substances that enter the Krebs cycle.
5. Transamination, decarboxylation, and desulfurization reactions convert the amino acids to be catabolized.

Biochemical Tests and Bacterial Identification (pp. 134–135)

1. Bacteria and yeast can be identified by detecting action of their enzymes.
2. Fermentation tests are used to determine whether an organism can ferment a carbohydrate to produce acid and gas.

Photosynthesis (pp. 135–137)

1. Photosynthesis is the conversion of light energy from the sun into chemical energy; the chemical energy is used for carbon fixation.

The Light-Dependent Reactions: Photophosphorylation (pp. 136–137)

2. Chlorophyll *a* is used by green plants, algae, and cyanobacteria.
3. Electrons from chlorophyll pass through an electron transport chain, from which ATP is produced by chemiosmosis.
4. Photosystems are made up of chlorophyll and other pigments packed into thylakoid membranes.
5. In cyclic photophosphorylation, the electrons return to the chlorophyll.
6. In noncyclic photophosphorylation, the electrons are used to reduce $NADP^+$. The electrons from H_2O replace those lost from chlorophyll.
7. When H_2O is oxidized by green plants, algae, and cyanobacteria, O_2 is produced; when H_2S is oxidized by the sulfur bacteria, S^0 granules are produced.

The Light-Independent Reactions: The Calvin-Benson Cycle (p. 137)

8. CO_2 is used to synthesize sugars in the Calvin-Benson cycle.

A Summary of Energy Production Mechanisms (p. 138)

1. Sunlight is converted to chemical energy in oxidation reactions carried on by phototrophs. Chemotrophs can get energy from organic and inorganic compounds.
2. In oxidation-reduction reactions, energy is derived from the transfer of electrons.
3. To produce energy, a cell needs an electron donor (organic or inorganic), a system of electron carriers, and a final electron acceptor (organic or inorganic).

Metabolic Diversity among Organisms (pp. 138–140)

1. Photoautotrophs obtain energy by photophosphorylation and fix carbon from CO_2 via the Calvin-Benson cycle to synthesize organic compounds.
2. Cyanobacteria are oxygenic phototrophs. Green sulfur bacteria and purple sulfur bacteria are anoxygenic phototrophs.
3. Photoheterotrophs use light as an energy source and an organic compound for their carbon source and electron donor.
4. Chemoautotrophs use inorganic compounds as their energy source and carbon dioxide as their carbon source.
5. Chemoheterotrophs use complex organic molecules as their carbon and energy sources.

Metabolic Pathways of Energy Use (pp. 140–144)

Polysaccharide Biosynthesis (p. 142)

1. In bacteria, glycogen is formed from ADPG.
2. UDPNAc is the starting material for the biosynthesis of peptidoglycan.

Lipid Biosynthesis (pp. 142–143)

3. Lipids are synthesized from fatty acids and glycerol.

4. Glycerol is derived from dihydroxyacetone phosphate in glycolysis, and fatty acids are built from acetyl CoA.

Amino Acid and Protein Biosynthesis (p. 143)

5. Amino acids are required for protein biosynthesis.
6. All amino acids can be synthesized either directly or indirectly from intermediates of carbohydrate metabolism, particularly from the Krebs cycle.

Purine and Pyrimidine Biosynthesis (pp. 143–144)

7. The sugars composing nucleotides are derived from either the pentose phosphate pathway or the Entner-Doudoroff pathway.
8. Carbon and nitrogen atoms from certain amino acids form the backbones of the purines and pyrimidines.

The Integration of Metabolism (pp. 143–145)

1. Anabolic and catabolic reactions are integrated through a group of common intermediates.
2. Such integrated metabolic pathways are referred to as amphibolic pathways.

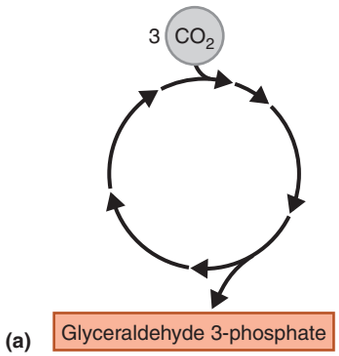
Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the back of the textbook.

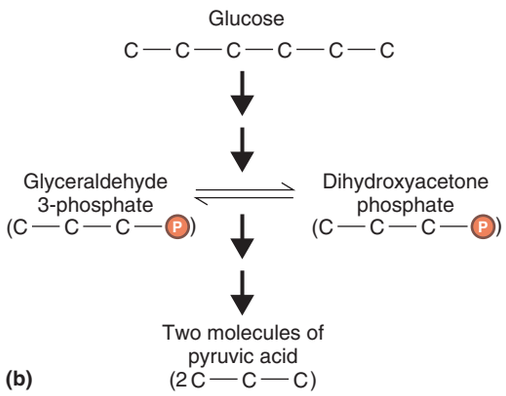
Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

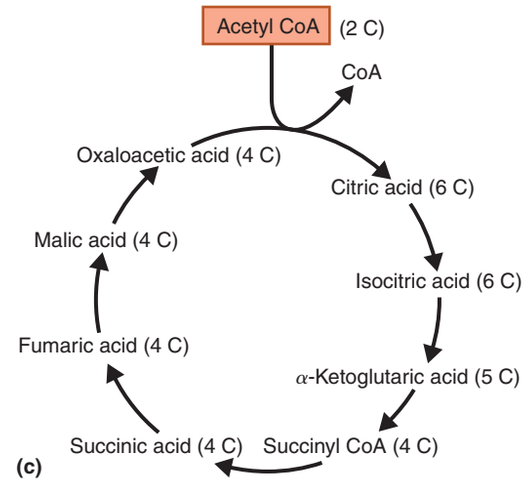
Use the following diagrams (a), (b), and (c) for question 1.



(a)

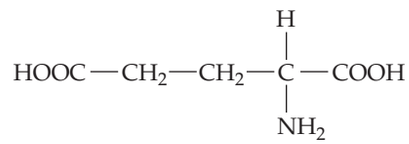


(b)



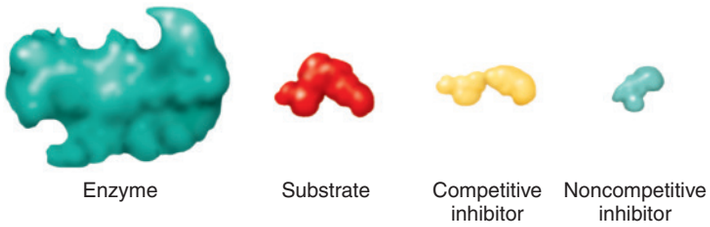
(c)

1. Name pathways diagrammed in parts (a), (b), and (c) of the figure.
   - **a.** Show where glycerol is catabolized and where fatty acids are catabolized.
   - **b.** Show where glutamic acid (an amino acid) is catabolized:

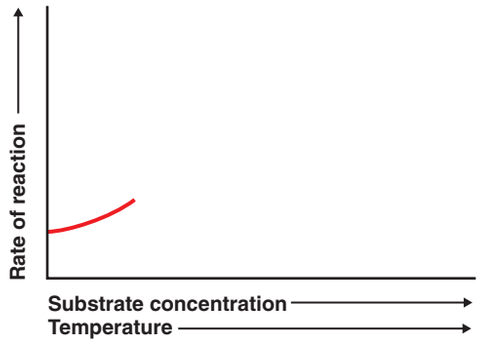


   - **c.** Show how these pathways are related.
   - **d.** Where is ATP required in pathways (a) and (b)?
   - **e.** Where is CO_2 released in pathways (b) and (c)?
   - **f.** Show where a long-chain hydrocarbon such as petroleum is catabolized.
   - **g.** Where is NADH (or $FADH_2$ or NADPH) used and produced in these pathways?
   - **h.** Identify four places where anabolic and catabolic pathways are integrated.

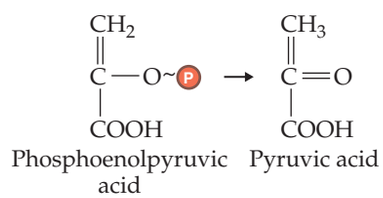
2. DRAW IT Using the following diagrams, show each of the following:
   a. where the substrate will bind
   b. where the competitive inhibitor will bind
   c. where the noncompetitive inhibitor will bind
   d. which of the four elements could be the inhibitor in feedback inhibition
   e. What effect will the reactions in (a), (b), and (c) have?



3. DRAW IT An enzyme and substrate are combined. The rate of reaction begins as shown in the following graph. To complete the graph, show the effect of increasing substrate concentration on a constant enzyme concentration. Show the effect of increasing temperature.



4. Define *oxidation-reduction*, and differentiate the following terms:
   a. aerobic and anaerobic respiration
   b. respiration and fermentation
   c. cyclic and noncyclic photophosphorylation
5. There are three mechanisms for the phosphorylation of ADP to produce ATP. Write the name of the mechanism that describes each of the reactions in the following table.

ATP Generated by	Reaction
a. _____	An electron, liberated from chlorophyll by light, is passed down an electron transport chain.
b.	Cytochrome *c* passes two electrons to cytochrome *a*.
c. _____	 Phosphoenolpyruvic acid → Pyruvic acid

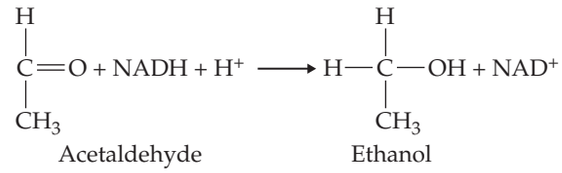
6. All of the energy-producing biochemical reactions that occur in cells, such as photophosphorylation and glycolysis, are _____ reactions.
7. Fill in the following table with the carbon source and energy source of each type of organism.

Organism	Carbon Source	Energy Source
Photoautotroph	a. _____	b. _____
Photoheterotroph	c. _____	d. _____
Chemoautotroph	e. _____	f. _____
Chemoheterotroph	g. _____	h. _____

8. Write your own definition of the chemiosmotic mechanism of ATP generation. On Figure 5.16, mark the following using the appropriate letter:
   a. the acidic side of the membrane
   b. the side with a positive electrical charge
   c. potential energy
   d. kinetic energy
9. Why must NADH be reoxidized? How does this happen in an organism that uses respiration? Fermentation?
10. NAME IT What nutritional type is a colorless microbe that uses the Calvin-Benson cycle, uses H_2 as the electron donor to its ETC, and uses elemental S as the final electron acceptor in the ETC?

Multiple Choice

1. Which substance in the following reaction is being reduced?



   a. acetaldehyde
   b. NADH
   c. ethanol
   d. NAD^+
2. Which of the following reactions produces the most molecules of ATP during aerobic metabolism?
   a. glucose → glucose 6-phosphate
   b. phosphoenolpyruvic acid → pyruvic acid
   c. glucose → pyruvic acid
   d. acetyl CoA → $CO_2 + H_2O$
   e. succinic acid → fumaric acid
3. Which of the following processes does *not* generate ATP?
   a. photophosphorylation
   b. the Calvin-Benson cycle
   c. oxidative phosphorylation
   d. substrate-level phosphorylation
   e. All of the above generate ATP
4. Which of the following compounds has the greatest amount of energy for a cell?
   a. CO_2
   b. ATP
   c. glucose
   d. O_2
   e. lactic acid

5. Which of the following is the best definition of the Krebs cycle?
   a. the oxidation of pyruvic acid
   b. the way cells produce CO_2
   c. a series of chemical reactions in which NADH is produced from the oxidation of pyruvic acid
   d. a method of producing ATP by phosphorylating ADP
   e. a series of chemical reactions in which ATP is produced from the oxidation of pyruvic acid
6. Which of the following is the best definition of *cellular respiration*?
   a. a sequence of redox reactions with O_2 as the final electron acceptor
   b. a sequence of redox reactions with the final electron acceptor from the environment
   c. a method of generating ATP
   d. the complete oxidation of glucose to CO_2 and H_2O
   e. a series of reactions in which pyruvic acid is oxidized to CO_2 and H_2O

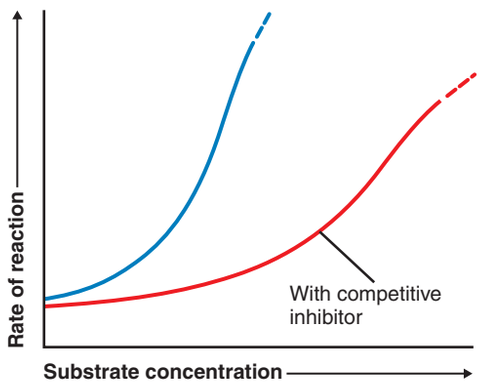
Use the following choices to answer questions 7–10.

   a. *E. coli* growing in glucose broth at 35°C with O_2 for 5 days
   b. *E. coli* growing in glucose broth at 35°C without O_2 for 5 days
   c. both a and b
   d. neither a nor b

7. Which culture produces the most lactic acid?
8. Which culture produces the most ATP?
9. Which culture uses NAD^+?
10. Which culture uses the most glucose?

Analysis

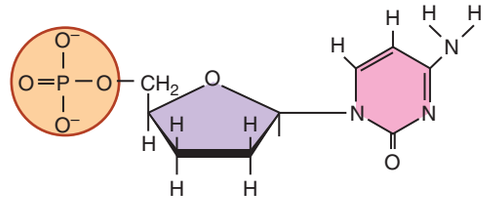
1. Explain why, even under ideal conditions, *Streptococcus* grows slowly.
2. The following graph shows the normal rate of reaction of an enzyme and its substrate (blue) and the rate when an excess of competitive inhibitor is present (red). Explain why the graph appears as it does.



3. Compare and contrast carbohydrate catabolism and energy production in the following bacteria:
   a. *Pseudomonas*, an aerobic chemoheterotroph
   b. *Spirulina*, an oxygenic photoautotroph
   c. *Ectothiorhodospira*, an anoxygenic photoautotroph
4. How much ATP could be obtained from the complete oxidation of one molecule of glucose? From one molecule of butterfat containing one glycerol and three 12-carbon chains?
5. The chemoautotroph *Acidithiobacillus* can obtain energy from the oxidation of arsenic ($As^{3+} \rightarrow As^{5+}$). How does this reaction provide energy? How can humans put this bacterium to use?

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. *Haemophilus influenzae* requires hemin (X factor) to synthesize cytochromes and NAD^+ (V factor) from other cells. For what does it use these two growth factors? What diseases does *H. influenzae* cause?
2. The drug Hivid, also called ddC, inhibits DNA synthesis. It is used to treat HIV infection and AIDS. Compare the following illustration of ddC to the structure of DNA nucleotides in Figure 2.16. How does this drug work?



3. The bacterial enzyme streptokinase is used to digest fibrin (blood clots) in patients with atherosclerosis. Why doesn't injection of streptokinase cause a streptococcal infection? How do we know the streptokinase will digest fibrin only and not good tissues?

6 Microbial Growth

When we talk about microbial growth, we are really referring to the *number* of cells, not the *size* of the cells. Microbes that are "growing" are increasing in number, accumulating into **colonies** (groups of cells large enough to be seen without a microscope) of hundreds of thousands of cells or *populations* of billions of cells. Although individual cells approximately double in size during their lifetime, this change is not very significant compared with the size increases observed during the lifetime of plants and animals.

Many bacteria survive and grow slowly in nutrient-poor environments by forming biofilms. The *S. marcescens* bacteria in the photo may form biofilms on urinary catheters or on contact lenses. Biofilms are frequently sources of healthcare-associated infections such as the one described in the Clinical Case.

Microbial populations can become incredibly large in a very short time. By understanding the conditions necessary for microbial growth, we can determine how to control the growth of microbes that cause diseases and food spoilage. We can also learn how to encourage the growth of helpful microbes and those we wish to study.

In this chapter we will examine the physical and chemical requirements for microbial growth, the various kinds of culture media, bacterial cell division, the phases of microbial growth, and the methods of measuring microbial growth.

◀ ***Serratia marcescens*** **bacteria on a cracker. This gram-negative rod produces the pigment prodigiosin, causing bright red colonies when the bacteria grow at room temperature.**

In the Clinic

As a nurse in a plastic surgery clinic, you instruct patients on postsurgical care of their sutures. You tell patients to wash hands before removing bandages, to wash gently around the surgical site with soap and water, and to swab the wound with hydrogen peroxide. **One day a patient calls, alarmed that the hydrogen peroxide caused her wound to bubble. What would you tell the patient?**

Hint: Read about catalase under Oxygen later in this chapter.

The Requirements for Growth

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

6-1 Classify microbes into five groups on the basis of preferred temperature range.

6-2 Identify how and why the pH of culture media is controlled.

6-3 Explain the importance of osmotic pressure to microbial growth.

6-4 Name a use for each of the four elements (carbon, nitrogen, sulfur, and phosphorus) needed in large amounts for microbial growth.

6-5 Explain how microbes are classified on the basis of oxygen requirements.

6-6 Identify ways in which aerobes avoid damage by toxic forms of oxygen.

The requirements for microbial growth can be divided into two main categories: physical and chemical. Physical aspects include temperature, pH, and osmotic pressure. Chemical requirements include sources of carbon, nitrogen, sulfur, phosphorus, trace elements, oxygen, and organic growth factors.

ASM: The survival and growth of any microorganism in a given environment depends on its metabolic characteristics.

Physical Requirements

Temperature

Most microorganisms grow well at the temperatures that humans favor. However, certain bacteria are capable of growing at extremes of temperature that would hinder the survival of almost all eukaryotic organisms.

Most bacteria grow only within a limited range of temperatures. Microorganisms are classified into three primary groups on the basis of their preferred temperature range: **psychrophiles** (cold-loving microbes), **mesophiles** (moderate-temperature–loving microbes), and **thermophiles** (heat-loving microbes). Bacteria grow poorly at the high and low temperature extremes within their range, which typically are only about 30°C apart. The **minimum growth temperature** is the lowest temperature at which the species will grow. The **optimum growth temperature** is the temperature at which the species grows best. The **maximum growth temperature** is the highest temperature at which growth is possible. By graphing the growth response over a temperature range, we can see that the optimum growth temperature is usually near the top of the range; above that temperature, the rate of growth drops off rapidly (Figure 6.1). This happens presumably because the high temperature has inactivated necessary enzymatic systems of the cell.

The ranges and maximum growth temperatures that define bacteria as psychrophiles, mesophiles, or thermophiles are not rigidly defined. Psychrophiles, for example, were originally considered simply to be organisms capable of growing at 0°C. However, there seem to be two fairly distinct groups capable of growth at that temperature. One group, composed of psychrophiles in the strictest sense, can grow at 0°C but has an optimum growth temperature of about 15°C. Most of these organisms are so sensitive to higher temperatures that they will not even grow in a reasonably warm room (25°C). Found mostly in the oceans' depths or in certain polar regions, such organisms seldom cause problems in food preservation. The other group that can grow at 0°C has higher optimum temperatures, usually 20–30°C and cannot grow above about 40°C. Organisms of this type are much more common than psychrophiles and are the most likely to be encountered in low-temperature food spoilage because they grow fairly well at refrigerator temperatures. We will use the term **psychrotrophs**, which food microbiologists favor, for this group of spoilage microorganisms.

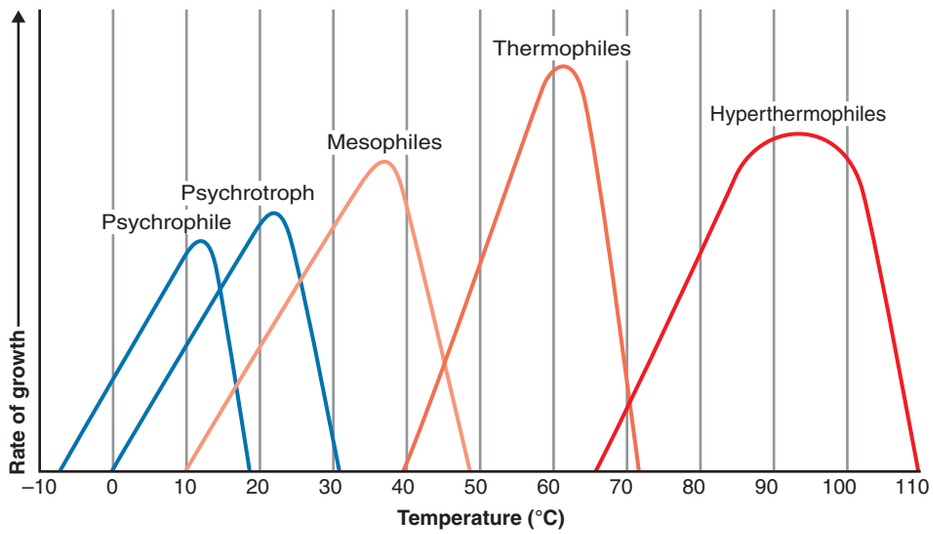


Figure 6.1 Typical growth rates of different types of microorganisms in response to temperature. The peak of the curve represents optimum growth (fastest reproduction). Notice that the reproductive rate drops off very quickly at temperatures only a little above the optimum. At either extreme of the temperature range, the reproductive rate is much lower than the rate at the optimum temperature.

Q Why is it difficult to define *psychrophile, mesophile,* and *thermophile*?

Refrigeration is the most common method of preserving household food supplies. It is based on the principle that microbial reproductive rates decrease at low temperatures. Although microbes usually survive even subfreezing temperatures (they might become entirely dormant), they gradually decline in number. Some species decline faster than others. Psychrotrophs do not grow well at low temperatures, except in comparison with other organisms; given time, however, they are able to slowly degrade food. Such spoilage might take the form of mold mycelium, bacterial slime on food surfaces, or off-tastes or off-colors in foods. The temperature inside a properly set refrigerator will greatly slow the growth of most spoilage organisms and will entirely prevent the growth of all but a few pathogenic bacteria. Figure 6.2 illustrates the importance of low temperatures for preventing the growth of spoilage and disease organisms. When large amounts of food must be refrigerated, it is important to remember that a large quantity of warm food cools at a relatively slow rate (Figure 6.3); thus, foods should be divided into smaller portions before refrigerating.

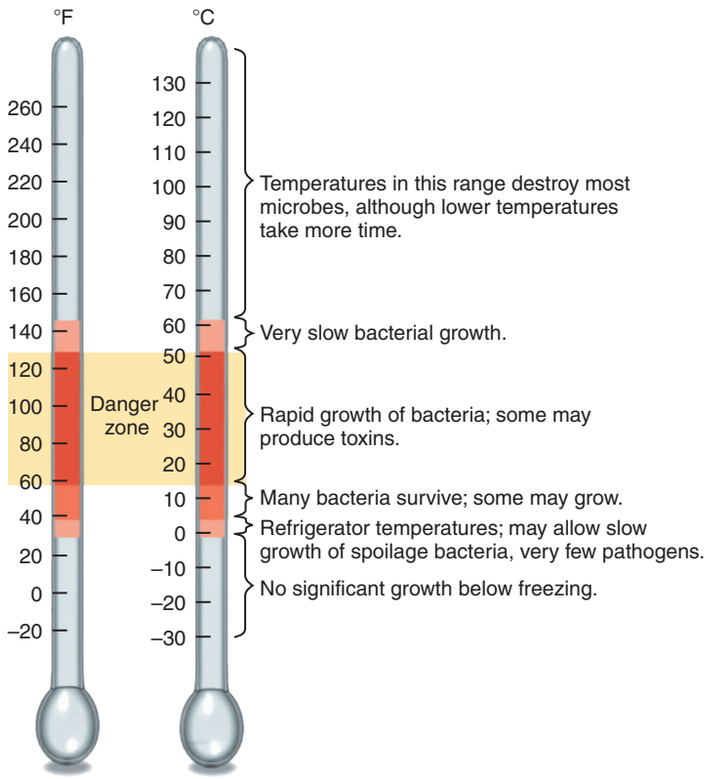


Figure 6.2 Temperatures for food safety. The basic principle of refrigeration is that low temperatures decrease microbial reproduction rates. In contrast, heating foods to high temperatures destroys most microbes. There are always some exceptions to the temperature responses shown here; for example, certain bacteria grow well at high temperatures that would kill most bacteria, and a few bacteria can actually grow at temperatures well below freezing.

Q **Which bacterium would theoretically be more likely to grow at refrigerator temperatures: a human intestinal pathogen or a soilborne plant pathogen?**

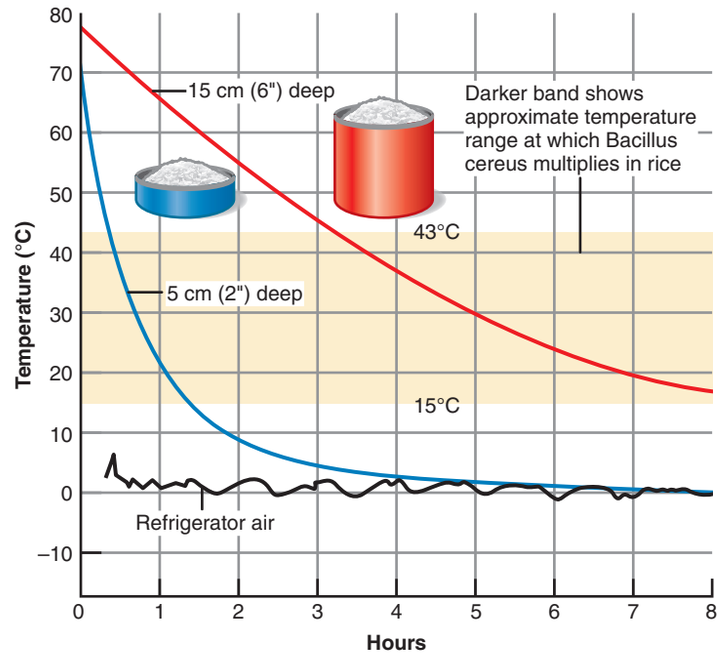


Figure 6.3 The effect of the amount of food on its cooling rate in a refrigerator and its chance of spoilage. Notice that in this example, the pan of rice with a depth of 5 cm (2 in) cooled through the incubation temperature range of the *Bacillus cereus* in about 1 hour, whereas the pan of rice with a depth of 15 cm (6 in) remained in this temperature range for about 5 hours.

Q **Given a shallow pan and a deep pot with the same volume, which would cool faster? Why?**

Mesophiles, with an optimum growth temperature of 25–40°C, are the most common type of microbe. Organisms that have adapted to live in the bodies of animals usually have an optimum temperature close to that of their hosts. The optimum temperature for many pathogenic bacteria is about 37°C, and incubators for clinical cultures are usually set at about this

CLINICAL CASE Glowing in the Dark

Reginald MacGruder, an investigator at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) in Atlanta, Georgia, has a mystery on his hands. Earlier this year, he was involved in the recall of an intravenous heparin solution that was blamed for causing *Pseudomonas fluorescens* bloodstream infections in patients in four different states. It seemed that everything was under control, but now, 3 months after the recall, 19 patients in two other states develop the same *P. fluorescens* bloodstream infections. It makes no sense to Dr. MacGruder; how could this infection be popping up again so soon after the recall? Could another heparin batch be tainted?

What is *P. fluorescens*? Read on to find out.

temperature. The mesophiles include most of the common spoilage and disease organisms.

Thermophiles are microorganisms capable of growth at high temperatures. Many of these organisms have an optimum growth temperature of 50–60°C, about the temperature of water from a hot water tap. Such temperatures can also be reached in sunlit soil and in thermal waters such as hot springs. Remarkably, many thermophiles cannot grow at temperatures below about 45°C. Endospores formed by thermophilic bacteria are unusually heat resistant and may survive the usual heat treatment given canned goods. Although elevated storage temperatures may cause surviving endospores to germinate and grow, thereby spoiling the food, these thermophilic bacteria are not considered a public health problem. Thermophiles are important in organic compost piles (see Figure 27.8), in which the temperature can rise rapidly to 50–60°C.

Some microbes, members of the Archaea (see Chapter 1), have an optimum growth temperature of 80°C or higher. These organisms are called **hyperthermophiles** or, sometimes, **extreme thermophiles**. Most of these organisms live in hot springs associated with volcanic activity, and sulfur is usually important in their metabolic activity. The known record for bacterial growth and replication at high temperatures is about 121°C near deep-sea hydrothermal vents. The immense pressure in the ocean depths prevents water from boiling even at temperatures well above 100°C.

pH

Recall from Chapter 2 that the pH refers to the acidity or alkalinity of a solution. Most bacteria grow best in a narrow pH range near neutrality, between pH 6.5 and 7.5. Very few bacteria grow at an acidic pH below about pH 4. This is why a number of foods, such as sauerkraut, pickles, and many cheeses, are preserved from spoilage by acids produced by bacterial fermentation. Nonetheless, some bacteria, called **acidophiles**, are remarkably tolerant of acidity. One type of chemoautotrophic bacteria, which is found in the drainage water from coal mines and oxidizes sulfur to form sulfuric acid, can survive at pH 1. Molds and yeasts will grow over a greater pH range than bacteria will, but the optimum pH of molds and yeasts is generally below that of bacteria, usually about pH 5 to 6. Alkalinity also inhibits microbial growth but is rarely used to preserve foods.

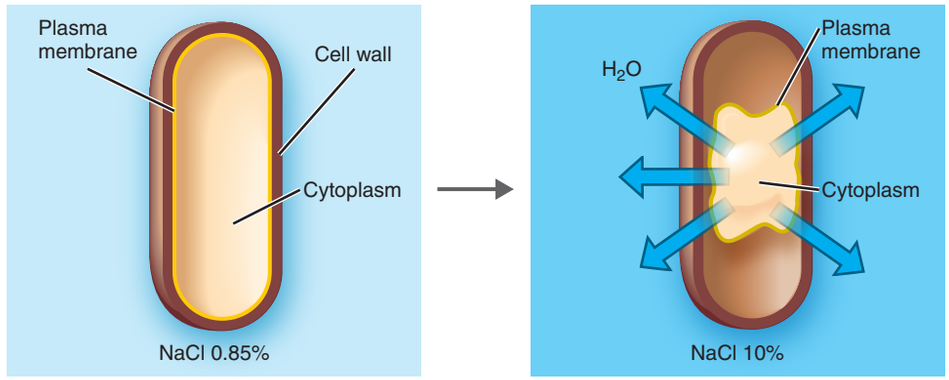
When bacteria are cultured in the laboratory, they often produce acids that eventually interfere with their own growth. To neutralize the acids and maintain the proper pH, chemical buffers are included in the growth medium. The peptides and amino acids in some media act as buffers, and many media also contain phosphate salts. Phosphate salts have the advantage of exhibiting their buffering effect in the pH growth range of most bacteria. They are also nontoxic; in fact, they provide phosphorus, an essential nutrient.

Osmotic Pressure

Microorganisms obtain almost all their nutrients in solution from the surrounding water. Thus, they require water for growth, and their composition is 80–90% water. High osmotic pressures have the effect of removing necessary water from a cell. When a microbial cell is in a solution whose concentration of solutes is higher than in the cell (the environment is *hypertonic* to the cell), the cellular water passes out through the plasma membrane to the high solute concentration. (See the discussion of osmosis in Chapter 4 and review Figure 4.18 for the three types of solution environments a cell may encounter.) This osmotic loss of water causes **plasmolysis**, or shrinkage of the cell's cytoplasm (Figure 6.4).

Figure 6.4 Plasmolysis.

Q Why is sugar added to fruit to make jams and jellies?



(a) Cell in isotonic solution. Under these conditions, the solute concentration in the cell is equivalent to a solute concentration of 0.85% sodium chloride (NaCl).

(b) Plasmolyzed cell in hypertonic solution. If the concentration of solutes such as NaCl is higher in the surrounding medium than in the cell (the environment is hypertonic), water tends to leave the cell. Growth of the cell is inhibited.

The growth of the cell is inhibited as the plasma membrane pulls away from the cell wall. Thus, the addition of salts (or other solutes) to a solution, and the resulting increase in osmotic pressure, can be used to preserve foods. Salted fish, honey, and sweetened condensed milk are preserved largely by this mechanism; the high salt or sugar concentrations draw water out of any microbial cells that are present and thus prevent their growth.

Some organisms, called **extreme halophiles**, have adapted so well to high salt concentrations that they actually require them for growth. In this case, they may be termed **obligate halophiles**. Organisms from such saline waters as the Dead Sea often require nearly 30% salt, and the inoculating loop (a device for handling bacteria in the laboratory) used to transfer them must first be dipped into a saturated salt solution. More common are **facultative halophiles**, which do not require high salt concentrations but are able to grow at salt concentrations up to 2%, a concentration that inhibits the growth of many other organisms. A few species of facultative halophiles can tolerate even 15% salt.

Most microorganisms, however, must be grown in a medium that is nearly all water. For example, the concentration of agar (a complex polysaccharide isolated from marine algae) used to solidify microbial growth media is usually about 1.5%. If markedly higher concentrations are used, the increased osmotic pressure can inhibit the growth of some bacteria.

If the osmotic pressure is unusually low (the environment is *hypotonic*)—such as in distilled water, for example—water tends to enter the cell rather than leave it. Some microbes that have a relatively weak cell wall may be lysed by such treatment.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **6-1** Why are hyperthermophiles that grow at temperatures above 100°C seemingly limited to oceanic depths?
- **6-2** Other than controlling acidity, what is an advantage of using phosphate salts as buffers in growth media?
- **6-3** Before the development of modern food-preservation techniques such as pasteurization and canning, why might people have used techniques that rely on osmotic pressure?

Chemical Requirements

Carbon

Besides water, one of the most important requirements for microbial growth is carbon. Carbon is the structural backbone of living matter; it is needed for all the organic compounds that make up a living cell. Half the dry weight of a typical bacterial cell is carbon. Chemoheterotrophs get most of their carbon from the source of their energy—organic materials such as proteins, carbohydrates, and lipids. Chemoautotrophs and photoautotrophs derive their carbon from carbon dioxide.

Nitrogen, Sulfur, and Phosphorus

In addition to carbon, microorganisms need other elements to synthesize cellular material. For example, protein synthesis requires considerable amounts of nitrogen as well as some sulfur. The syntheses of DNA and RNA also require nitrogen and some phosphorus, as does the synthesis of ATP, the molecule so important for the storage and transfer of chemical energy within the cell. Nitrogen makes up about 14% of the dry weight of a bacterial cell, and sulfur and phosphorus together constitute about another 4%.

Organisms use nitrogen primarily to form the amino group of the amino acids of proteins. Many bacteria meet this requirement by decomposing protein-containing material and reincorporating the amino acids into newly synthesized proteins and other nitrogen-containing compounds. Other bacteria use nitrogen from ammonium ions (NH_4^+), which are already in the reduced form and are usually found in organic cellular material. Still other bacteria are able to derive nitrogen from nitrates (compounds that dissociate to give the nitrate ion, NO_3^-, in solution).

Some important bacteria, including many of the photosynthesizing cyanobacteria (see Chapter 11), use gaseous nitrogen (N_2) directly from the atmosphere. This process is called **nitrogen fixation**. Some organisms that can use this method are free-living, mostly in the soil, but others live cooperatively in symbiosis with the roots of legumes such as clover, soybeans, alfalfa, beans, and peas. The nitrogen fixed in the symbiosis is used by both the plant and the bacterium (see Chapter 27).

Sulfur is used to synthesize the sulfur-containing amino acids methionine and cysteine and vitamins such as thiamine and biotin. Important natural sources of sulfur include the sulfate ion (SO_4^{2-}), hydrogen sulfide, and the sulfur-containing amino acids.

Phosphorus is essential for the synthesis of nucleic acids and the phospholipids of cell membranes. Among other places, it is also found in the energy bonds of ATP. A source of phosphorus is the phosphate ion (PO_4^{3-}). Potassium, magnesium, and calcium are also elements that microorganisms require, often as cofactors for enzymes (see Chapter 5).

Trace Elements

Microbes require very small amounts of other mineral elements, such as iron, copper, molybdenum, and zinc; these are referred to as **trace elements**. Most are essential for the functions of certain enzymes, usually as cofactors. Although these elements are sometimes added to a laboratory medium, they are usually assumed to be naturally present in tap water and other components of media. Even most distilled waters contain adequate amounts, but tap water is sometimes specified to ensure that these trace minerals will be present in culture media.

Oxygen

We are accustomed to thinking of molecular oxygen (O_2) as a necessity of life, but it is actually a poisonous gas. Very little

TABLE 6.1 The Effect of Oxygen on the Growth of Various Types of Bacteria

	a. Obligate Aerobes	b. Facultative Anaerobes	c. Obligate Anaerobes	d. Aerotolerant Anaerobes	e. Microaerophiles
Effect of Oxygen on Growth	Only aerobic growth; oxygen required.	Both aerobic and anaerobic growth; greater growth in presence of oxygen.	Only anaerobic growth; growth ceases in presence of oxygen.	Only anaerobic growth, but it can continue in presence of oxygen.	Only aerobic growth; oxygen required in low concentration.
Bacterial Growth in Tube of Solid Growth Medium					
Explanation of Growth Patterns	Growth occurs only where high concentrations of oxygen have diffused into the medium.	Growth is best where most oxygen is present, but occurs throughout tube.	Growth occurs only where there is no oxygen.	Growth occurs evenly; oxygen has no effect.	Growth occurs only where a low concentration of oxygen has diffused into medium.
Explanation of Oxygen's Effects	Presence of enzymes catalase and superoxide dismutase (SOD) allows toxic forms of oxygen to be neutralized; can use oxygen.	Presence of enzymes catalase and SOD allows toxic forms of oxygen to be neutralized; can use oxygen.	Lacks enzymes to neutralize harmful forms of oxygen; cannot tolerate oxygen.	Presence of one enzyme, SOD, allows harmful forms of oxygen to be partially neutralized; tolerates oxygen.	Produce lethal amounts of toxic forms of oxygen if exposed to normal atmospheric oxygen.

molecular oxygen existed in the atmosphere during most of Earth's history—in fact, it is possible that life could not have arisen had oxygen been present. However, many current forms of life have metabolic systems that require oxygen for aerobic respiration. Hydrogen atoms that have been stripped from organic compounds combine with oxygen to form water, as shown in Figure 5.14. This process yields a great deal of energy while neutralizing a potentially toxic gas—a very neat solution, all in all.

Microbes that use molecular oxygen (aerobes) extract more energy from nutrients than microbes that do not use oxygen (anaerobes). Organisms that require oxygen to live are called **obligate aerobes** (Table 6.1a).

Obligate aerobes are at a disadvantage because oxygen is poorly soluble in the water of their environment. Therefore, many of the aerobic bacteria have developed, or retained, the ability to continue growing in the absence of oxygen. Such organisms are called **facultative anaerobes** (Table 6.1b). In other words, facultative anaerobes can use oxygen when it is present but are able to continue growth by using fermentation or anaerobic respiration when oxygen is not available. However, their efficiency in producing energy decreases in the absence of oxygen. An example of facultative anaerobes is the familiar *Escherichia coli* that are found in the human intestinal tract. Many yeasts are also facultative anaerobes. When growing anaerobically, yeast use fermentation to produce energy, whereas many bacteria use anaerobic respiration. (See the discussion of anaerobic respiration in Chapter 5).

Anaerobes (Table 6.1c) are bacteria that are unable to use molecular oxygen for energy-yielding reactions. In fact, most are harmed by it. The genus *Clostridium* (klo-STRID-ē-um), which contains the species that cause tetanus and botulism, is the most familiar example. *Clostridium* obtains energy by anaerobic respiration.

Understanding how organisms can be harmed by oxygen requires a brief discussion of the toxic forms of oxygen:

1. **Singlet oxygen** ($^1O_2^-$) is normal molecular oxygen (O_2) that has been boosted into a higher-energy state and is extremely reactive.
2. **Superoxide radicals** ($\cdot O_2$), or **superoxide anions**, are formed in small amounts during the normal respiration of organisms that use oxygen as a final electron acceptor, forming water. One of a group of toxic metabolic by-products known as free radicals, they are indicated by using a dot before the element to note the unpaired electron. In the presence of oxygen, anaerobes also appear to form some superoxide radicals, which are so toxic to cellular components that all organisms attempting to grow in atmospheric oxygen must produce an enzyme, **superoxide dismutase (SOD)**, to neutralize them. Their toxicity is caused by their great instability, which leads

them to steal an electron from a neighboring molecule, which in turn becomes a radical and steals an electron, and so on. Aerobic bacteria, facultative anaerobes growing aerobically, and aerotolerant anaerobes (discussed shortly) produce SOD, with which they convert the superoxide radical into molecular oxygen (O_2) and hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2):

$$\cdot O_2 + \cdot O_2 + 2\,H^+ \longrightarrow H_2O_2 + O_2$$

3. The hydrogen peroxide produced in this reaction contains the **peroxide anion** (O_2^{2-}) and is also toxic. It is the active ingredient in the antimicrobial agents hydrogen peroxide and benzoyl peroxide. (See Chapter 7.) Because the hydrogen peroxide produced during normal aerobic respiration is toxic, microbes have developed enzymes to neutralize it. The most familiar of these is **catalase**, which converts it into water and oxygen:

$$2\,H_2O_2 \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O + O_2$$

Catalase is easily detected by its action on hydrogen peroxide. When a drop of hydrogen peroxide is added to a colony of bacterial cells producing catalase, oxygen bubbles are released (Figure 6.5). Anyone who has put hydrogen peroxide on a wound will recognize that cells in human tissue also contain catalase. The other enzyme that breaks down hydrogen peroxide is **peroxidase**, which differs from catalase in that its reaction does not produce oxygen:

$$H_2O_2 + 2\,H^+ \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O$$

Another important form of reactive oxygen is **ozone** (O_3) (discussed in Chapter 7).

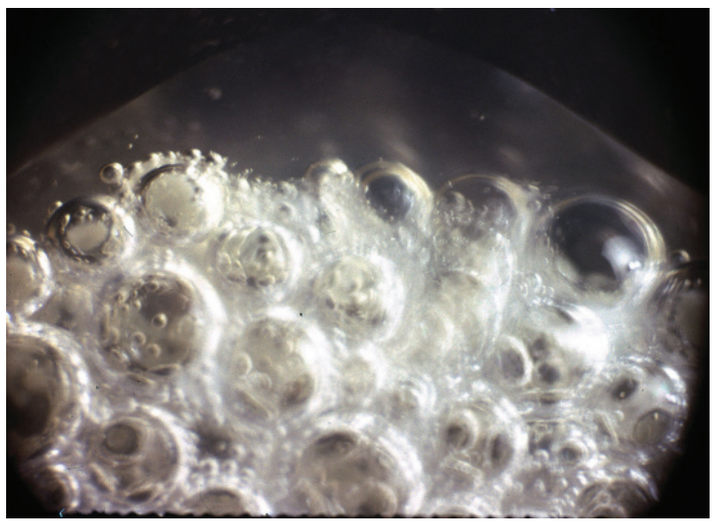


Figure 6.5 Catalase test. The presence of catalase is indicated by bubbling of a colony or cell suspension after the addition of hydrogen peroxide.

Q What is in the bubbles?

4. The **hydroxyl radical** ($\cdot OH$) is another intermediate form of oxygen and probably the most reactive free radical. It is formed in the cellular cytoplasm by ionizing radiation. Most aerobic respiration produces traces of hydroxyl radicals, but they are transient.

These toxic forms of oxygen are an essential component of one of the body's most important defenses against pathogens, phagocytosis (see Figure 16.7). In the phagolysosome of the phagocytic cell, ingested pathogens are killed by exposure to singlet oxygen, superoxide radicals, peroxide anions of hydrogen peroxide, hydroxyl radicals, and other oxidative compounds.

Obligate anaerobes usually produce neither superoxide dismutase nor catalase. Because aerobic conditions probably lead to an accumulation of superoxide radicals in their cytoplasm, obligate anaerobes are extremely sensitive to oxygen.

Aerotolerant anaerobes (Table 6.1d) are fermentative and cannot use oxygen for growth, but they tolerate it fairly well. On the surface of a solid medium, they will grow without the use of special techniques (discussed later) required for obligate anaerobes. Common examples of lactic acid–producing aerotolerant anaerobes are the lactobacilli used in the production of many acidic fermented foods, such as pickles and cheese. In the laboratory, they are handled and grown much like any other bacteria, but they make no use of the oxygen in the air. These bacteria can tolerate oxygen because they possess SOD or an equivalent system that neutralizes the toxic forms of oxygen previously discussed.

A few bacteria are **microaerophiles** (Table 6.1e). They are aerobic; they require oxygen. However, they grow only in oxygen concentrations lower than those in air. In a test tube of solid nutrient medium, they grow only at a depth where small amounts of oxygen have diffused into the medium; they do not grow near the oxygen-rich surface or below the narrow zone of adequate oxygen. This limited tolerance is probably due to their sensitivity to superoxide radicals and peroxides, which they produce in lethal concentrations under oxygen-rich conditions.

Organic Growth Factors

Essential organic compounds an organism is unable to synthesize are known as **organic growth factors**; they must be directly obtained from the environment. One group of organic growth factors for humans is vitamins. Most vitamins function as coenzymes, the organic cofactors required by certain enzymes in order to function (See Table 5.2). Many bacteria can synthesize all their own vitamins and do not depend on outside sources. However, some bacteria lack the enzymes needed for the synthesis of certain vitamins, and for them those vitamins are organic growth factors. Other organic growth factors required by some bacteria are amino acids, purines, and pyrimidines.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **6-4** If bacterial cells were given a sulfur source containing radioactive sulfur (^{35}S) in their culture media, in what molecules would the ^{35}S be found in the cells?
- **6-5** How would one determine whether a microbe is a strict anaerobe?
- **6-6** Oxygen is so pervasive in the environment that it would be very difficult for a microbe to always avoid physical contact with it. What, therefore, is the most obvious way for a microbe to avoid damage?

Biofilms

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

6-7 Describe the formation of biofilms and their potential for causing infection.

In nature, microorganisms seldom live in the isolated single-species colonies that we see on laboratory plates. They more typically live in communities called **biofilms**, which are a thin, slimy layer encasing bacteria that adheres to a surface. This fact was not well appreciated until the development of confocal microscopy (see Chapter 3) made the three-dimensional structure of biofilms more visible.

Cell-to-cell chemical communication, or **quorum sensing**, allows bacteria to coordinate their activity and group together into communities that provide benefits not unlike those of multicellular organisms. Therefore, biofilms are not just bacterial slime layers but biological systems; the bacteria are organized into a coordinated, functional community. Biofilms are usually attached to a surface, such as a rock in a pond, a human tooth (plaque; see Figure 25.3), or a catheter. This community might be of a single species or of a diverse group of microorganisms. Trillions of pieces of plastic, about 5 mm in diameter, float on the world's oceans. Biofilms consisting of hundreds of species of bacteria and algae have been found in biofilms on these pieces of plastic. Interestingly, different species are found on different types of plastic (e.g., polypropylene or polyethylene). Biofilms also might take other, more varied forms. In fast-flowing streams, the biofilm might be in the form of filamentous streamers. Within a biofilm community, the bacteria are able to share nutrients and are sheltered from harmful factors in the environment, such as desiccation, antibiotics, and the body's immune system. The close proximity of microorganisms within a biofilm might also have the advantage of facilitating the transfer of genetic information by, for example, conjugation.

ASM: Most bacteria in nature live in biofilm communities.

A biofilm usually begins to form when a free-swimming (*planktonic*) bacterium attaches to a surface. Cell density is then increased via the process of quorum sensing. In law, a quorum is the minimum number of members necessary to conduct business. As just noted, quorum sensing is the ability of bacteria to communicate and coordinate behavior. Bacteria that use quorum sensing produce and secrete a signaling chemical called an *inducer*. As the inducer diffuses into the surrounding medium, other bacterial cells move toward the source and begin producing inducer. The concentration of inducer increases as cell numbers increase. This, in turn, attracts more cells and initiates synthesis of more inducer.

The cells in a biofilm produce an extracellular matrix consisting of polysaccharides, proteins, and extracellular DNA (Figure 6.6). If these bacteria grew in a uniformly thick monolayer, they would become overcrowded, nutrients would not be available in lower depths, and toxic wastes could accumulate. Microorganisms in biofilm communities sometimes avoid these problems by forming pillar-like structures (Figure 6.6) with channels between them, through which water can carry incoming nutrients and outgoing wastes. A biofilm also can be considered a *hydrogel*, which is a complex polymer containing many times its dry weight in water. This constitutes a primitive circulatory system. Individual microbes and clumps of slime occasionally leave the established biofilm and move to a new location, where the biofilm becomes extended. Such a biofilm is generally composed of a surface layer about 10 μm thick, with pillars that extend up to 200 μm above it.

The microorganisms in biofilms can work cooperatively to carry out complex tasks. An example is myxobacteria, which are found in decaying organic material and freshwater throughout the world. Although they are bacteria, many myxobacteria never exist as individual cells. *Myxococcus xanthus* cells, for example, appear to hunt in packs. In their natural aqueous habitat, they form spherical colonies that surround prey bacteria, secrete digestive enzymes, and absorb the prey's nutrients.

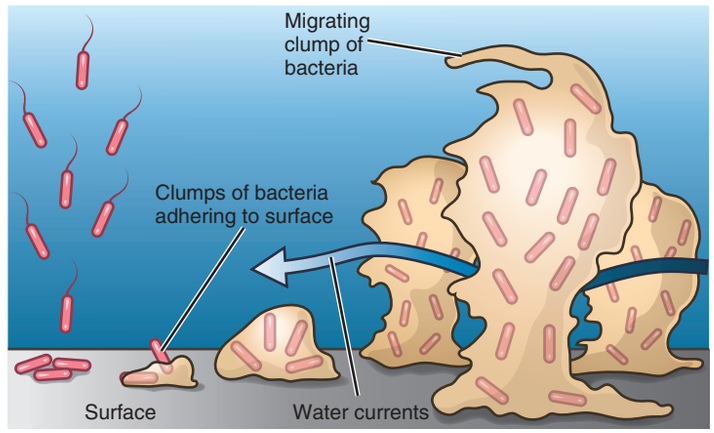


Figure 6.6 Biofilm formation.

Q What is quorum sensing?

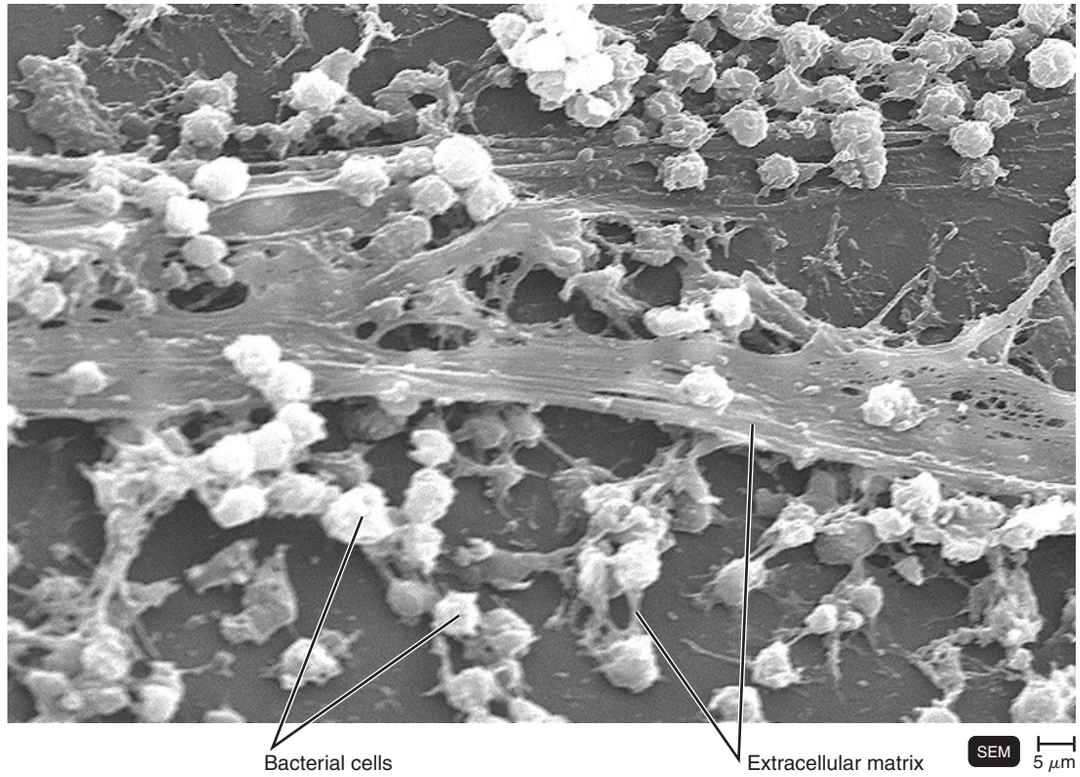


Figure 6.7 ***Staphylococcus aureus*** **biofilm growing on the inside of a patient's medical catheter.** Notice the sticky extracellular matrix secreted by the bacteria.

Q **Why is the prevention of biofilms important in a health care environment?**

On solid substrates, other myxobacterial cells glide over the surface, leaving slime trails that are followed by other cells. When food is scarce, the cells aggregate to form a mass. Cells within the mass differentiate into a fruiting body that consists of a slime stalk and clusters of spores (see Figure 11.11).

Biofilms are an important factor in human health. For example, microbes in biofilms are probably 1000 times more resistant to microbicides. Experts at the CDC estimate that 70% of human bacterial infections involve biofilms. Most healthcare-associated infections are probably related to biofilms on medical catheters (**Figure 6.7** and Figure 21.3). In fact, biofilms form on almost all indwelling medical devices, including mechanical heart valves. Biofilms, which also can be formed by fungi such as *Candida*, are encountered in many disease conditions, such as infections related to the use of contact lenses, dental caries (see Figure 25.3), and infections by pseudomonad bacteria (see Chapter 11).

One approach to preventing biofilm formation is to incorporate antimicrobials into surfaces on which biofilms might form. Because the inducers that allow quorum sensing are essential to biofilm formation, research is underway to determine the makeup of these inducers and perhaps block them. Another approach involves the discovery that lactoferrin (see Chapter 15), which is abundant in many human secretions, can inhibit biofilm formation. Lactoferrin binds iron, making it unavailable to bacteria. The lack of iron inhibits the surface motility essential for the aggregation of the bacteria into biofilms. Loss of lactoferrin in patients with cystic fibrosis allows pseudomonad biofilms and recurring lung infections in these patients.

Most laboratory methods in microbiology today use organisms being cultured in their planktonic mode. However, microbiologists now predict that there will be an increasing focus on how microorganisms actually live in relation to one another and that this will be considered in industrial and medical research.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

6-7 Explain how biofilm formation is beneficial to a pathogen.

Culture Media

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

6-8 Distinguish chemically defined and complex media.

6-9 Identify one use of each of the following: selective, differential, and enrichment media.

6-10 Justify the use of each of the following: anaerobic techniques, living host cells, and candle jars.

6-11 Differentiate biosafety levels 1, 2, 3, and 4.

A nutrient material prepared for the growth of microorganisms in a laboratory is called a **culture medium**. Some bacteria can grow well on just about any culture medium; others require special media, and still others cannot grow on any nonliving medium yet developed. Microbes that are introduced into a culture medium to initiate growth are called an **inoculum**. The microbes that grow and multiply in or on a culture medium are referred to as a **culture**.

Suppose we want to grow a culture of a certain microorganism, perhaps the microbes from a particular clinical specimen. What criteria must the culture medium meet? First, it must contain the right nutrients for the specific microorganism we want to grow. It should also contain sufficient moisture, a properly adjusted pH, and a suitable level of oxygen, perhaps none at all. The medium must initially be **sterile**—that is, it must initially contain no living microorganisms—so that the culture will contain only the microbes (and their offspring) we add to the medium. Finally, the growing culture should be incubated at the proper temperature.

A wide variety of media are available for the growth of microorganisms in the laboratory. Most of these media, which are available from commercial sources, have premixed components and require only the addition of water and then sterilization. Media are constantly being developed or revised for use in the isolation and identification of bacteria that are of interest to researchers in such fields as food, water, and clinical microbiology.

When it is desirable to grow bacteria on a solid medium, a solidifying agent such as agar is added to the medium. A complex polysaccharide derived from a marine alga, **agar** has long been used as a thickener in foods such as jellies and ice cream.

Agar has some important properties that make it valuable to microbiology, and no satisfactory substitute has yet been found. Few microbes can degrade agar, so it remains solid. Also, agar liquefies at about 100°C (the boiling point of water) and at sea level remains liquid until the temperature drops to about 40°C. For laboratory use, liquefied agar is held in water baths at about 50°C. At this temperature, it does not injure most bacteria when it is poured over them (as shown in Figure 6.19a). Once the agar has solidified, it can be incubated at temperatures approaching 100°C before it again liquefies; this property is particularly useful when thermophilic bacteria are being grown.

Agar media are usually contained in test tubes or *Petri dishes*. The test tubes are called *slants* when their contents are allowed to solidify with the tube held at an angle so that a large surface area for growth is available. When the agar solidifies in a vertical tube, it is called a *deep*. Petri dishes, named for their inventor, are shallow dishes with a lid that nests over the bottom to prevent contamination; when filled, they are called *Petri* (or culture) *plates*.

Chemically Defined Media

To support microbial growth, a medium must provide an energy source, as well as sources of carbon, nitrogen, sulfur, phosphorus, and any organic growth factors the organism is unable to synthesize. A **chemically defined medium** is one whose exact chemical composition is known. For a chemoheterotroph, the chemically defined medium must contain organic compounds that serve as a source of carbon and energy and essential inorganic compounds. For example, as shown in Table 6.2, glucose is included in the medium for growing the chemoheterotroph *E. coli*. The inorganic salts maintain osmotic pressure and provide the necessary cofactors for enzymes. Bacteria that grow on this medium use the sulfate to produce sulfur-containing amino acids and the phosphate for nucleotide synthesis. The bacteria synthesize the organic growth factors (amino acids, purines and pyrimidines, and vitamins) needed for growth.

Unlike *E. coli*, some bacteria need many growth factors in their media; these are characterized as *fastidious*. As Table 6.3 shows,

TABLE 6.2 A Chemically Defined Medium for Growing a Typical Chemoheterotroph, Such as *E. coli*

Constituent	Amount
Glucose	5.0 g
Ammonium phosphate, monobasic ($NH_4H_2PO_4$)	1.0 g
Sodium chloride (NaCl)	5.0 g
Magnesium sulfate ($MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$)	0.2 g
Potassium phosphate, dibasic (K_2HPO_4)	1.0 g
Water	1 liter

TABLE 6.3 Defined Culture Medium for *Leuconostoc mesenteroides*

Carbon and Energy
Glucose, 25 g
Salts
NH_4Cl, 3.0 g
K_2HPO_4*, 0.6 g
KH_2PO_4*, 0.6 g
$MgSO_4$, 0.1 g
Amino Acids, 100–200 μg each
Alanine, arginine, asparagine, aspartate, cysteine, glutamate, glutamine, glycine, histidine, isoleucine, leucine, lysine, methionine, phenylalanine, proline, serine, threonine, tryptophan, tyrosine, valine
Purines and Pyrimidines, 10 mg of each
Adenine, guanine, uracil, xanthine
Vitamins, 0.01–1 mg each
Biotin, folate, nicotinic acid, pyridoxal, pyridoxamine, pyridoxine, riboflavin, thiamine, pantothenate, *p*-aminobenzoic acid
Trace Elements, 2–10 μg each
Fe, Co, Mn, Zn, Cu, Ni, Mo
Buffer, pH 7
Sodium acetate, 25 g
Distilled Water, 1000 ml
*Also serves as buffer.

many organic growth factors must be provided in the chemically defined medium used to cultivate a fastidious species of *Leuconostoc*. Because organisms of this type, such as *Leuconostoc* and *Lactobacillus* (Chapter 11), cannot make their own vitamins, they are sometimes used in tests to determine the concentration of a particular vitamin in a given substance. To perform such a *microbiological assay*, a growth medium is prepared that contains all the growth requirements of the bacterium except the vitamin being assayed. Then the medium, test substance, and bacterium are combined, and the growth of bacteria is measured. Bacterial growth, which is reflected by the amount of lactic acid produced, will be proportional to the amount of vitamin in the test substance. The more lactic acid, the more the *Lactobacillus* cells have been able to grow, so the more vitamin is present.

Complex Media

Chemically defined media are usually reserved for laboratory experimental work or for the growth of autotrophic bacteria. Most heterotrophic bacteria and fungi, such as you would work with in an introductory lab course, are routinely grown on **complex media** made up of nutrient extracts from yeasts, meat, or plants, or digestive products of proteins from these and other sources. The exact chemical composition varies slightly from batch to batch. Table 6.4 shows one widely used recipe.

In complex media, the energy, carbon, nitrogen, and sulfur requirements of the growing microorganisms are provided primarily by protein. Proteins are large, relatively insoluble molecules that only a minority of microorganisms can utilize directly. Partial digestion by acids or enzymes reduces proteins to shorter amino acid chains called *peptones*. These small, soluble fragments can be digested by most bacteria.

Vitamins and other organic growth factors are provided by meat extracts or yeast extracts. The soluble vitamins and minerals from the meats or yeasts are dissolved in the extracting water, which is then evaporated, so these factors are concentrated. (These extracts also supplement the organic nitrogen and carbon compounds.) Yeast extracts are particularly rich in the B vitamins. **Nutrient broth** is a complex medium in liquid form. When agar is added, it is called **nutrient agar**. (This terminology can be confusing; just remember that agar itself is not a nutrient.)

TABLE 6.4 Composition of Nutrient Agar, a Complex Medium for the Growth of Heterotrophic Bacteria

Constituent	Amount
Peptone (partially digested protein)	5.0 g
Beef extract	3.0 g
Sodium chloride	8.0 g
Agar	15.0 g
Water	1 liter

Anaerobic Growth Media and Methods

The cultivation of anaerobic bacteria poses a special problem. Because anaerobes might be killed by exposure to oxygen, special media called **reducing media** must be used. These media contain ingredients, such as sodium thioglycolate, that chemically combine with dissolved oxygen and deplete the oxygen in the culture medium. To routinely grow and maintain pure cultures of obligate anaerobes, microbiologists use reducing media stored in ordinary, tightly capped test tubes. These media are heated shortly before use to drive off absorbed oxygen.

When the culture must be grown in Petri plates to observe individual colonies, several methods are available. Laboratories that work with relatively few culture plates at a time can use systems that can incubate the microorganisms in sealed boxes and jars in which the oxygen is chemically removed after the culture plates have been introduced and the container sealed as shown in Figure 6.8. In one system, the packet of chemicals (the active ingredient is ascorbic acid) is simply opened to expose it

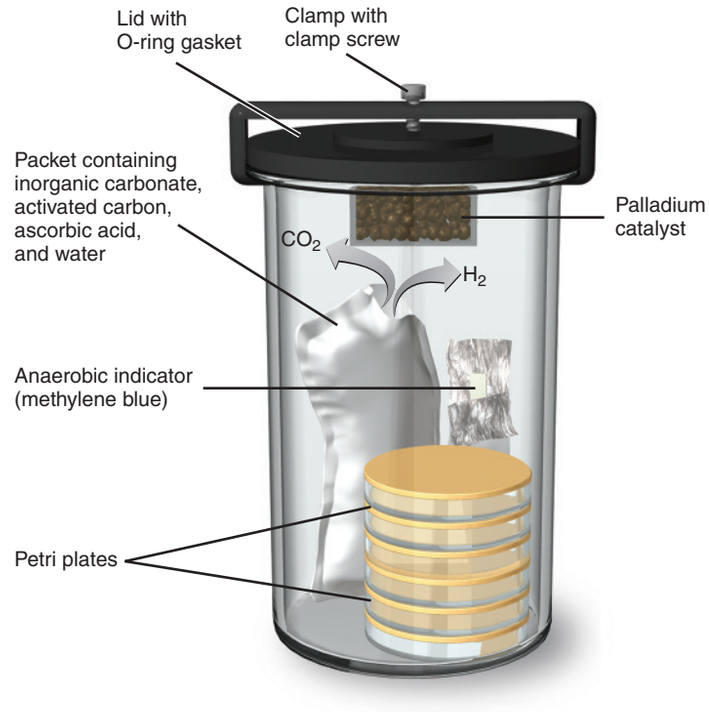


Figure 6.8 A jar for cultivating anaerobic bacteria on Petri plates. When water is mixed with the chemical packet containing sodium bicarbonate and sodium borohydride, hydrogen and carbon dioxide are generated. Reacting on the surface of a palladium catalyst in a screened reaction chamber, the hydrogen and atmospheric oxygen in the jar combine to form water. The oxygen is thus removed. Also in the jar is an anaerobic indicator containing methylene blue, which is blue when oxidized and turns colorless when the oxygen is removed (as shown here).

Q What is the technical name for bacteria that require a higher-than-atmospheric-concentration of CO_2 for growth?

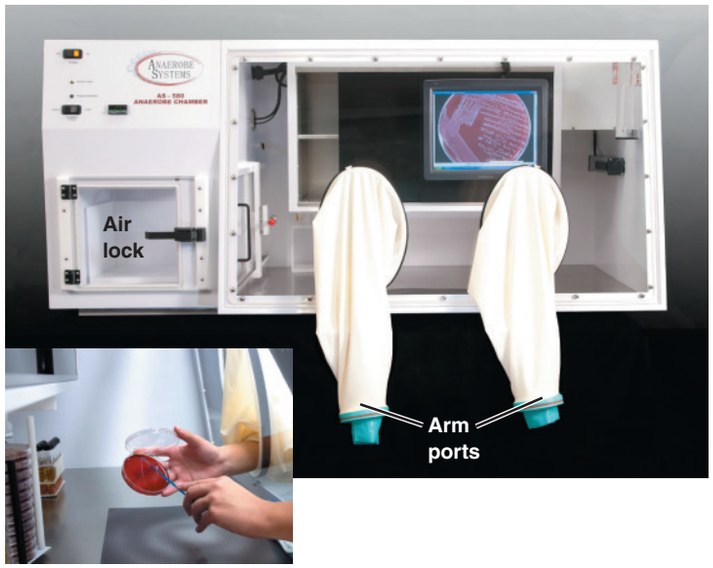


Figure 6.9 An anaerobic chamber. Materials are introduced through the small doors in the air-lock chamber at the left. The operator works through arm ports in airtight sleeves. The airtight sleeves extend into the cabinet when it is in use. This unit also features an internal camera and monitor.

Q In what way would an anaerobic chamber resemble the Space Station Laboratory orbiting in the vacuum of space?

to oxygen in the container's atmosphere. The atmosphere in such containers usually has less than 1% oxygen, about 18% CO_2, and no hydrogen. In a recently introduced system, each individual Petri plate (OxyPlate™) has an airtight seal to become an anaerobic chamber. The medium in the plate contains an enzyme, oxyrase, which combines oxygen with hydrogen, removing oxygen as water is formed.

Laboratories that have a large volume of work with anaerobes often use an anaerobic chamber, such as that shown in Figure 6.9. The chamber is filled with inert gases (typically about 85% N_2, 10% H_2, and 5% CO_2) and is equipped with air locks to introduce cultures and materials.

Special Culture Techniques

Many bacteria have never been successfully grown on artificial laboratory media. *Mycobacterium leprae*, the leprosy bacillus, is now usually grown in armadillos, which have a relatively low body temperature that matches the requirements of the microbe. Another example is the syphilis spirochete, although certain nonpathogenic strains of this microbe have been grown on laboratory media. With few exceptions, the obligate intracellular bacteria, such as the rickettsias and the chlamydias, do not grow on artificial media. Like viruses, they can reproduce only in a living host cell. See the discussion of cell culture in Chapter 13.

Many clinical laboratories have special *carbon dioxide incubators* in which to grow aerobic bacteria that require concentrations of CO_2 higher or lower than that found in the atmosphere. Desired CO_2 levels are maintained by electronic controls. High CO_2 levels are also obtained with simple *candle jars*. Cultures are placed in a large, sealed jar containing a lighted candle, which consumes oxygen. The candle stops burning when the air in the jar has a lowered concentration of oxygen (at about 17% O_2, still adequate for the growth of aerobic bacteria). An elevated concentration of CO_2 (about 3%) is also present. Microbes that grow better at high CO_2 concentrations are called **capnophiles**. The low-oxygen, high-CO_2 conditions resemble those found in the intestinal tract, respiratory tract, and other body tissues where pathogenic bacteria grow. Capnophiles convert the CO_2 to bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) using carbonic anhydrase. Although bicarbonate may be used in the synthesis of oxaloacetic acid from pyruvic acid for the Krebs cycle, there is strong evidence that capnophiles primarily use bicarbonate to adjust pH.

Candle jars are still used occasionally, but more often commercially available chemical packets are used to generate carbon dioxide atmospheres in containers. When only one or two Petri plates of cultures are to be incubated, clinical laboratory investigators often use small plastic bags with self-contained chemical gas generators that are activated by crushing the packet or moistening it with a few milliliters of water. These packets are sometimes specially designed to provide precise concentrations of carbon dioxide (usually higher than can be obtained in candle jars) and oxygen for culturing organisms such as the microaerophilic and capnophilic *Campylobacter* bacteria (see Chapter 11).

Selective and Differential Media

In clinical and public health microbiology, it is frequently necessary to detect the presence of specific microorganisms associated with disease or poor sanitation. For this task, selective and differential media are used. **Selective media** are designed to suppress the growth of unwanted bacteria and encourage the growth of the desired microbes. For example, bismuth sulfite agar is one medium used to isolate the typhoid bacterium, the gram-negative *Salmonella* Typhi (TĪ-fē), from feces. Bismuth sulfite inhibits gram-positive bacteria and most gram-negative intestinal bacteria (other than *Salmonella* Typhi), as well. Sabouraud's dextrose agar, which has a pH of 5.6, is used to isolate fungi that outgrow most bacteria at this pH.

Differential media make it easier to distinguish colonies of the desired organism from other colonies growing on the same plate. Similarly, pure cultures of microorganisms have identifiable reactions with differential media in tubes or plates. Blood agar (which contains red blood cells) is a medium that microbiologists often use to identify bacterial species that destroy red blood cells. These species, such as *Streptococcus pyogenes* (pī-AH-jen-ēz), the bacterium that causes strep throat, show a clear ring around their colonies where they have lysed the surrounding blood cells (Figure 6.10).

Sometimes, selective and differential characteristics are combined in a single medium. Suppose we want to isolate the common bacterium *Staphylococcus aureus*, found in the nasal passages.

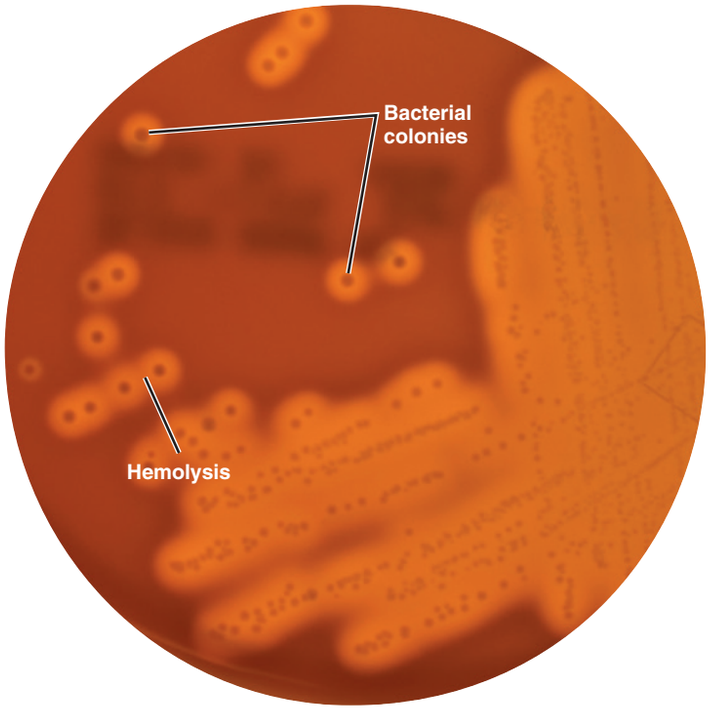


Figure 6.10 Blood agar, a differential medium containing red blood cells. The bacteria have lysed the red blood cells (beta-hemolysis), causing the clear areas around the colonies.

Q Of what value are hemolysins to pathogens?

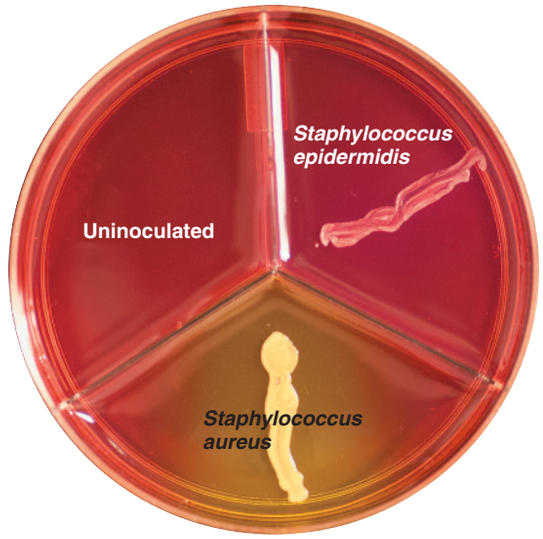


Figure 6.11 Differential medium. The medium shown is mannitol salt agar. Bacteria capable of fermenting the mannitol in the medium to acid (*S. aureus*) cause the medium to change color to yellow. This **differentiates** between bacteria that can ferment mannitol and those that cannot. Actually, this medium is also **selective** because the high salt concentration prevents the growth of most bacteria but not *Staphylococcus* spp.

Q Are bacteria capable of growing at a high osmotic pressure likely to be capable of growing in the mucus found in nostrils?

This organism has a tolerance for high concentrations of sodium chloride; it can also ferment the carbohydrate mannitol to form acid. Mannitol salt agar contains 7.5% sodium chloride, which will discourage the growth of competing organisms and thus *select for* (favor the growth of) *S. aureus*. This salty medium also contains a pH indicator that changes color if the mannitol in the medium is fermented to acid; the mannitol-fermenting colonies of *S. aureus* are thus *differentiated from* colonies of bacteria that do not ferment mannitol. Bacteria that grow at the high salt concentration *and* ferment mannitol to acid can be readily identified by the color change (Figure 6.11). These are probably colonies of *S. aureus*, and their identification can be confirmed by additional tests. Differential media are also used to identify toxin-producing strains of *E. coli*, as discussed in Chapter 5.

Enrichment Culture

Because bacteria present in small numbers can be missed, especially if other bacteria are present in much larger numbers, it is sometimes necessary to use an **enrichment culture**. This is often the case for soil or fecal samples. The medium (enrichment medium) for an enrichment culture is usually liquid and provides nutrients and environmental conditions that favor the growth of a particular microbe but not others. In this sense, it is also a selective medium, but it is designed to increase very small numbers of the desired type of organism to detectable levels.

Suppose we want to isolate from a soil sample a microbe that can grow on phenol and is present in much smaller numbers than other species. If the soil sample is placed in a liquid enrichment medium in which phenol is the only source of carbon and energy, microbes unable to metabolize phenol will not grow. The culture medium is allowed to incubate for a few days, and then a small amount of it is transferred into another flask of the same medium. After a series of such transfers, the surviving population will consist of bacteria capable of metabolizing phenol. The bacteria are given time to grow in the medium between transfers; this is the enrichment stage. Any nutrients in the original inoculum are rapidly diluted out with the successive transfers. When the last dilution is streaked onto a solid medium of the same composition, only those colonies of organisms capable of using phenol should grow. A remarkable aspect of this particular technique is that phenol is normally lethal to most bacteria.

Table 6.5 summarizes the purposes of the main types of culture media.

Biosafety Levels

Some microorganisms, such as *Ebolavirus*, are so dangerous that they can be handled only under extraordinary systems of containment called *biosafety level 4 (BSL-4)*. BSL-4 labs are popularly known as "the hot zone." Only four such labs exists in the United States. The lab is a sealed environment within a larger building and has an atmosphere under negative pressure, so

TABLE 6.5 Culture Media

Type	Purpose
Chemically Defined	Growth of chemoautotrophs and photoautotrophs; microbiological assays
Complex	Growth of most chemoheterotrophic organisms
Reducing	Growth of obligate anaerobes
Selective	Suppression of unwanted microbes; encouraging desired microbes
Differential	Differentiation of colonies of desired microbes from others
Enrichment	Similar to selective media but designed to increase numbers of desired microbes to detectable levels

that aerosols containing pathogens will not escape. Both intake and exhaust air is filtered through high-efficiency particulate air filters (see HEPA filters, Chapter 7); the exhaust air is filtered twice. All waste materials leaving the lab are rendered noninfectious. The personnel wear "space suits" that are connected to an air supply (Figure 6.12).

Less dangerous organisms are handled at lower levels of biosafety. For example, a basic microbiology teaching laboratory might be BSL-1. Organisms that present a moderate risk of infection can be handled at BSL-2 levels, that is, on open laboratory benchtops with appropriate gloves, lab coats, or possibly face and eye protection. BSL-3 labs are intended for highly infectious airborne pathogens such as the tuberculosis agent. Biological safety cabinets similar in appearance to the anaerobic chamber shown in Figure 6.9 are used. The laboratory itself is negatively pressurized and equipped with air filters to prevent release of the pathogen.

Figure 6.12 Technicians in a biosafety level 4 (BSL-4) laboratory. Personnel working in a BSL-4 facility wear a "space suit" that is connected to an outside air supply. Air pressure in the suit is higher than the atmosphere, preventing microbes from entering the suit.

Q If a technician were working with pathogenic prions, how would material leaving the lab be rendered noninfectious? (*Hint*: See Chapter 7.)

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **6-8** Could humans exist on chemically defined media, at least under laboratory conditions?
- **6-9** EMB agar contains methylene blue that inhibits gram-positive bacteria; lactose-fermenting bacteria produce colored colonies. Is EMB an enrichment, selective, or differential medium?
- **6-10** Could Louis Pasteur, in the 1800s, have grown rabies viruses in cell culture instead of in living animals?
- **6-11** What BSL is your laboratory?

Obtaining Pure Cultures

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

6-12 Define *pure culture*.

6-13 Describe how pure cultures can be isolated by using the streak plate method.

Most infectious materials, such as pus, sputum, and urine, contain several different kinds of bacteria; so do samples of soil, water, or food. If these materials are plated out onto the surface of a solid medium, colonies will form that are exact copies of the original organism. A visible colony theoretically arises from a single spore or vegetative cell or from a group of the same microorganisms attached to one another in clumps or chains. Estimates are that only about 1% of bacteria in ecosystems produce colonies by conventional culture methods. Microbial colonies often have a distinctive appearance that distinguishes one microbe from another (see Figure 6.10). The bacteria must be distributed widely enough so that the colonies are visibly separated from each other.

Most bacteriological work requires pure cultures, or clones, of bacteria. The isolation method most commonly used to get pure cultures is the **streak plate method** (Figure 6.13). A sterile inoculating loop is dipped into a mixed culture that contains more than one type of microbe and is streaked in a pattern over the surface of the nutrient medium. As the pattern is traced, bacteria are rubbed off the loop onto the medium. The last cells to be rubbed off the loop are far enough apart to grow into isolated colonies. These colonies can be picked up with an inoculating loop and transferred to a test tube of nutrient medium to form a pure culture containing only one type of bacterium.

CLINICAL CASE

P. fluorescens is an aerobic, gram-negative rod that grows best between 25°C and 30°C and grows poorly at the standard hospital microbiology incubation temperatures (35°C to 37°C). The bacteria are so named because they produce a pigment that fluoresces under ultraviolet light. While reviewing the facts of the latest outbreak, Dr. MacGruder learns that most recent patients were last exposed to the contaminated heparin 84 to 421 days before onset of their infections. On-site investigations confirmed that the patients' clinics are no longer using the recalled heparin and had, in fact, returned all unused inventory. Concluding that these patients did not develop infections during the previous outbreak, Dr. MacGruder must look for a new source of infection. The patients all have indwelling venous catheters: tubes that are inserted into a vein for long-term delivery of concentrated solutions, such as anticancer drugs.

Dr. MacGruder orders cultures of the new heparin being used, but the results do not recover any organisms. He then orders blood and catheter cultures from each of the patients.

Illuminated with white light | Illuminated with ultraviolet light

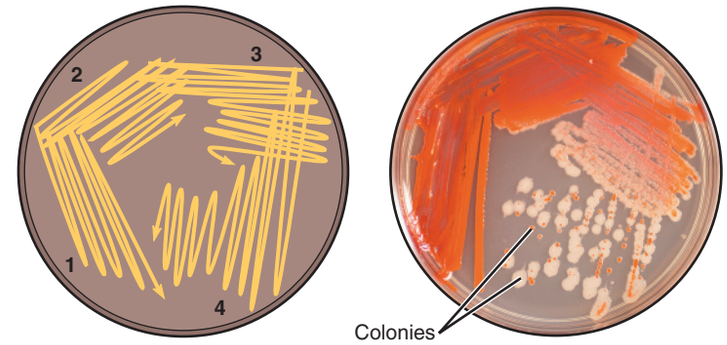
The organism cultured from both the patients' blood and their catheters is shown in the figure. What organism is it?

Part 1 | **Part 2** | Part 3 | Part 4

The streak plate method works well when the organism to be isolated is present in large numbers relative to the total population. However, when the microbe to be isolated is present only in very small numbers, its numbers must be greatly increased by selective enrichment before it can be isolated with the streak plate method.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **6-12** Can you think of any reason why a colony does not grow to an infinite size, or at least fill the confines of the Petri plate?
- **6-13** Could a pure culture of bacteria be obtained by the streak plate method if there were only one desired microbe in a bacterial suspension of billions?



(a) (b)

Figure 6.13 The streak plate method for isolating pure bacterial cultures. **(a)** Arrows indicate the direction of streaking. Streak series 1 is made from the original bacterial culture. The inoculating loop is sterilized following each streak series. In series 2, 3, and 4 the loop picks up bacteria from the previous series, diluting the number of cells each time. There are numerous variants of such patterns. **(b)** In series 4 of this example, notice that well-isolated colonies of bacteria of two different types, red and white, have been obtained.

Q **Is a colony formed as a result of streaking a plate always derived from a single bacterium? Why or why not?**

Preserving Bacterial Cultures

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

6-14 Explain how microorganisms are preserved by deep-freezing and lyophilization (freeze-drying).

Refrigeration can be used for the short-term storage of bacterial cultures. Two common methods of preserving microbial cultures for long periods are deep-freezing and lyophilization. **Deep-freezing** is a process in which a pure culture of microbes is placed in a suspending liquid and quick-frozen at temperatures ranging from −50°C to −95°C. The culture can usually be thawed and grown even several years later. During **lyophilization (freeze-drying)**, a suspension of microbes is quickly frozen at temperatures ranging from −54°C to −72°C, and the water is removed by a high vacuum. The vacuum causes the ice to turn directly to vapor in a process called sublimation. While under vacuum, the container is sealed by melting the glass with a high-temperature torch. The remaining powderlike residue that contains the surviving microbes can be stored for years. The organisms can be revived at any time by hydration with a suitable liquid nutrient medium.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **6-14** If the Space Station in Earth orbit suddenly ruptured, the humans on board would die instantly from cold and the vacuum of space. Would all the bacteria in the capsule also be killed?

The Growth of Bacterial Cultures

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

6-15 Define *bacterial growth*, including *binary fission*.

6-16 Compare the phases of microbial growth, and describe their relation to generation time.

6-17 Explain four direct methods of measuring cell growth.

6-18 Differentiate direct and indirect methods of measuring cell growth.

6-19 Explain three indirect methods of measuring cell growth.

Being able to represent graphically the enormous populations resulting from the growth of bacterial cultures is an essential part of microbiology. It is also necessary to be able to determine microbial numbers, either directly, by counting, or indirectly, by measuring their metabolic activity.

Bacterial Division

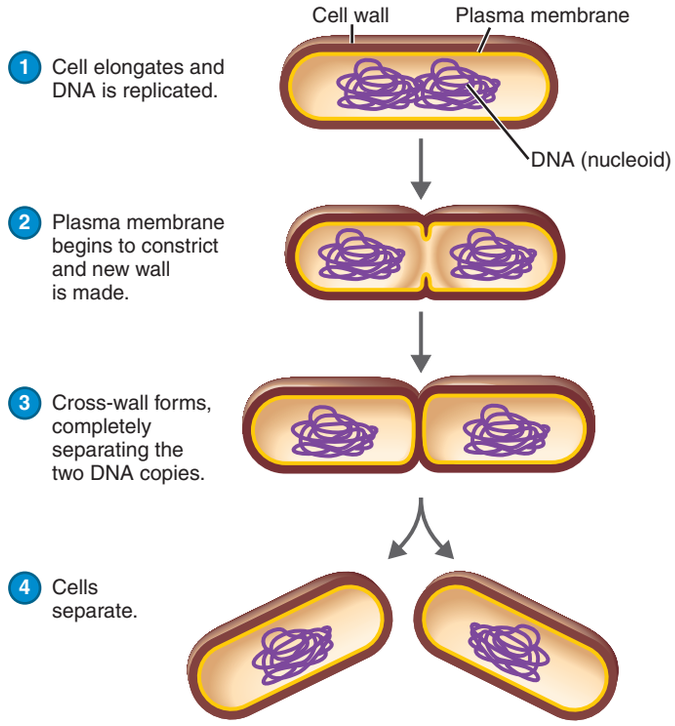
As we mentioned at the beginning of the chapter, bacterial growth refers to an increase in bacterial numbers, not an increase in the size of the individual cells. Bacteria normally reproduce by **binary fission** (Figure 6.14).

A few bacterial species reproduce by **budding**; they form a small initial outgrowth (a bud) that enlarges until its size approaches that of the parent cell, and then it separates. Some filamentous bacteria (certain actinomycetes) reproduce by producing chains of conidiospores (see Figure 11.25) (asexual spores) carried externally at the tips of the filaments. A few filamentous species simply fragment, and the fragments initiate the growth of new cells.

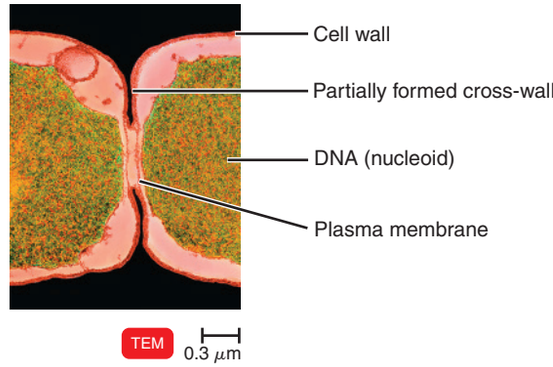
Generation Time

For purposes of calculating the generation time of bacteria, we will consider only reproduction by binary fission, which is by far the most common method. As you can see in Figure 6.15, one cell's division produces two cells, two cells' divisions produce four cells, and so on. When the number of cells in each generation is expressed as a power of 2, the exponent tells the number of doublings (generations) that have occurred.

The time required for a cell to divide (and its population to double) is called the **generation time**. It varies considerably among organisms and with environmental conditions, such as temperature. Most bacteria have a generation time of 1 to 3 hours; others require more than 24 hours per generation. (The math required to calculate generation times is presented in Appendix B.) If binary fission continues unchecked, an enormous number of cells will be produced. If a doubling occurred every 20 minutes—which is the case for *E. coli* under favorable conditions—after 20 generations a single initial cell would increase to over 1 million cells. This would require a little less than 7 hours. In 30 generations, or 10 hours, the population would be 1 billion, and in 24 hours it would be a number



(a) A diagram of the sequence of cell division



(b) A thin section of an *E.coli* cell starting to divide

Figure 6.14 Binary fission in bacteria.

Q In what way is budding different from binary fission?

trailed by 21 zeros. It is difficult to graph population changes of such enormous magnitude by using arithmetic numbers. This is why logarithmic scales are generally used to graph bacterial growth. Understanding logarithmic representations of bacterial populations requires some use of mathematics and is necessary for anyone studying microbiology. (See Appendix B.)

Logarithmic Representation of Bacterial Populations

To illustrate the difference between logarithmic and arithmetic graphing of bacterial populations, let's express 20 bacterial generations both logarithmically and arithmetically. In five

Numbers of Cells	Numbers Expressed as a Power of 2	Visual Representation of Numbers
1	2^0	●
2	2^1	●●
4	2^2	●●●●
8	2^3	●●●●●●●●
16	2^4	●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●
32	2^5	●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●●

(a) Visual representation of increase in bacterial number over five generations. The number of bacteria doubles in each generation. The superscript indicates the generation; that is, 2^5 = 5 generations.

Generation Number	Number of Cells	Log_{10} of Number of Cells
0	2^0 = 1	0
5	2^5 = 32	1.51
10	2^{10} = 1,024	3.01
15	2^{15} = 32,768	4.52
16	2^{16} = 65,536	4.82
17	2^{17} = 131,072	5.12
18	2^{18} = 262,144	5.42
19	2^{19} = 524,288	5.72
20	2^{20} = 1,048,576	6.02

(b) Conversion of the number of cells in a population into the logarithmic expression of this number. To arrive at the numbers in the center column, use the y^x key on your calculator. Enter 2 on the calculator; press y^x; enter 5; then press the = sign. The calculator will show the number 32. Thus, the fifth-generation population of bacteria will total 32 cells. To arrive at the numbers in the right-hand column, use the log key on your calculator. Enter the number 32; then press the log key. The calculator will show, rounded off, that the $\log_{10}$ of 32 is 1.51.

Figure 6.15 Cell division.

Q If a single bacterium reproduced every 30 minutes, how many would there be in 2 hours?

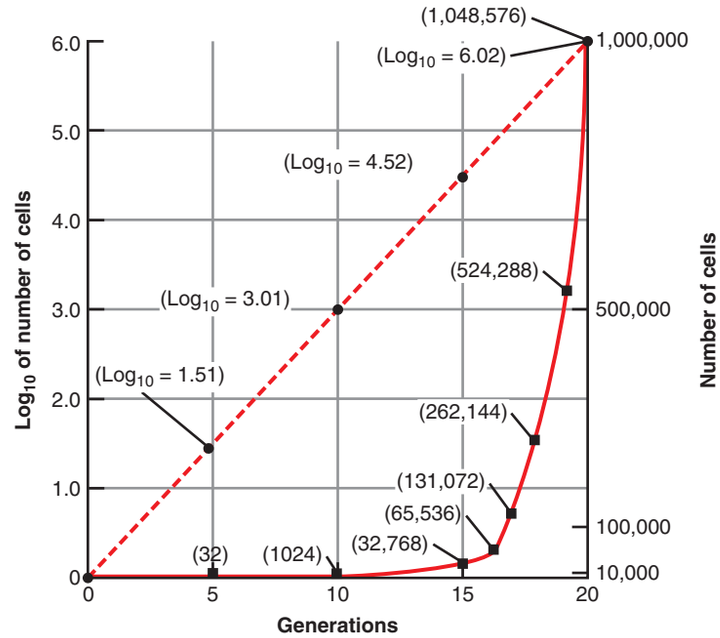


Figure 6.16 A growth curve for an exponentially increasing population, plotted logarithmically (dashed line) and arithmetically (solid line). For demonstration purposes, this graph has been drawn so that the arithmetic and logarithmic curves intersect at 1 million cells. This figure demonstrates why it is necessary to graph changes in the immense numbers of bacterial populations by logarithmic plots rather than by arithmetic numbers. For example, note that at ten generations, the line representing arithmetic numbers has not even perceptibly left the baseline, whereas the logarithmic plot point for the tenth generation (3.01) is halfway up the graph.

Q If the arithmetic numbers (solid line) were plotted for two more generations, would the line still be on the page?

generations (2^5), there would be 32 cells; in ten generations (2^{10}), there would be 1024 cells, and so on. (If your calculator has a y^x key and a log key, you can duplicate the numbers in the third column of Figure 6.15.)

In Figure 6.16, notice that the arithmetically plotted line (solid) does not clearly show the population changes in the early stages of the growth curve at this scale. In fact, the first ten generations do not even appear to leave the baseline, whereas the logarithmic plot point for the tenth generation (3.01) is halfway up the graph. Furthermore, another one or two arithmetic generations graphed to the same scale would greatly increase the height of the graph and take the line off the page.

The dashed line in Figure 6.16 shows how these plotting problems can be avoided by graphing the $\log_{10}$ of the population numbers. The $\log_{10}$ of the population is plotted at 5, 10, 15, and 20 generations. Notice that a straight line is formed and that a thousand times this population (1,000,000,000, or $\log_{10}$ = 9.0) could be accommodated in relatively little extra space. However, this advantage is obtained at the cost of distorting our "commonsense" perception of the actual situation. We are not accustomed to thinking in logarithmic relationships, but it is necessary for a proper understanding of graphs of microbial populations.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

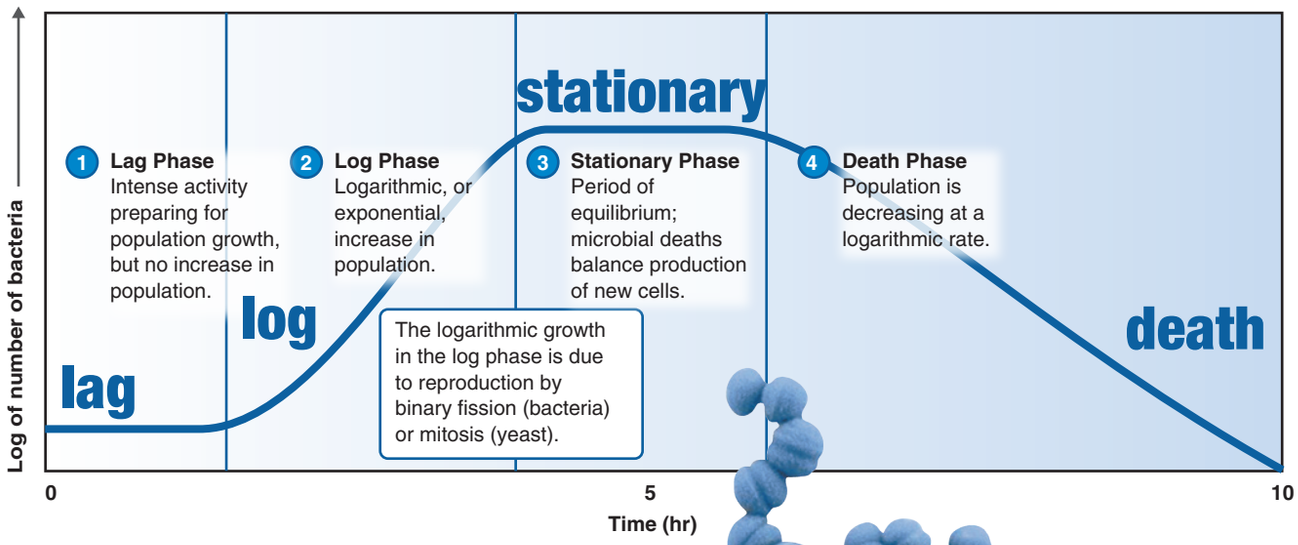
6-15 Can a complex organism, such as a beetle, reproduce by binary fission?

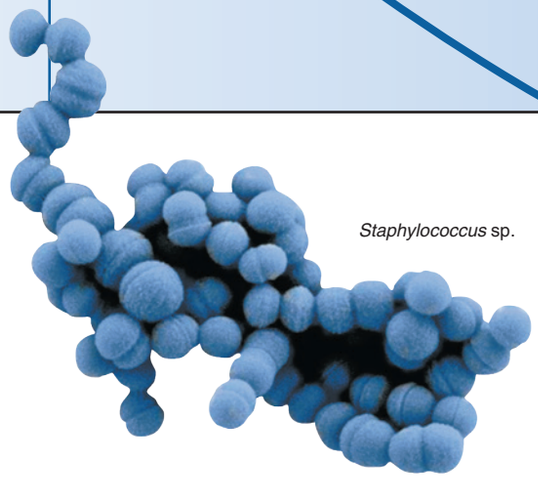
Phases of Growth

When a few bacteria are inoculated into an environment such as the large intestine (see Exploring the Microbiome) or a liquid growth medium and the population is counted at intervals, it is possible to plot a **bacterial growth curve** that shows the growth of the cells over time (Figure 6.17). There are four basic phases of growth: the lag, log, stationary, and death phases.

FOUNDATION FIGURE 6.17

Understanding the Bacterial Growth Curve





Staphylococcus sp.

KEY CONCEPTS

- Bacterial and yeast populations follow a sequential series of growth phases: the lag, log, stationary, and death phases.
- Knowledge of the bacterial growth curve is critical to understanding population dynamics and population control in the course of infectious diseases, in food preservation and spoilage, and in industrial microbiology processes, such as ethanol production.

The Lag Phase

For a while, the number of cells changes very little because the cells do not immediately reproduce in a new medium. This period of little or no cell division, called the **lag phase**, can last for 1 hour or several days. During this time, the cells are not dormant; they are undergoing a period of intense metabolic activity involving, in particular, synthesis of enzymes and various other molecules. (The situation is analogous to a factory being equipped to produce automobiles; there is considerable tooling-up activity but no immediate increase in the number of automobiles.)

The Log Phase

Eventually, the cells begin to divide and enter a period of growth, or logarithmic increase, called the **log phase**, or **exponential growth phase**. Cellular reproduction is most active during this period, and generation time (intervals during which the population doubles) reaches a constant minimum. Because the generation time is constant, a logarithmic plot of growth during the log phase is a straight line. The log phase is the time when cells are most active metabolically and is important for industrial purposes when microbial cells or a compound produced by microbial cells needs to be produced efficiently.

The Stationary Phase

If exponential growth continued unchecked, startlingly large numbers of cells could arise. For example, a single bacterium (at a weight of 9.5×10^{-13} g per cell) dividing every 20 minutes for only 25.5 hours can theoretically produce a population equivalent in weight to that of an 80,000-ton aircraft carrier. In reality, this does not happen. Instead, the growth rate slows, and the number of microbial deaths begins to rise. Eventually, the number of cell deaths balances the number of new cells, and the population stabilizes. This period of equilibrium is called the **stationary phase**.

Exponential growth stops because the bacteria approach the **carrying capacity**, the number of organisms that an environment can support. Carrying capacity is controlled by available nutrients, accumulation of wastes, and space. When a population exceeds the carrying capacity, it will run out of nutrients and space.

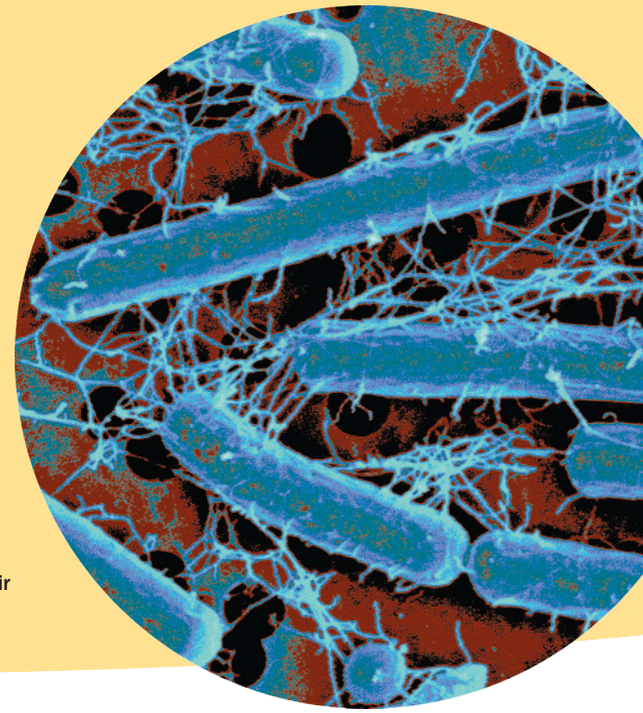
EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

Circadian Rhythms and Microbiota Growth Cycles

It's strange to think that microbes, especially those deep within us that never see the light of day, may grow at different rates depending on what time it is. But circadian rhythms—cyclical changes in a host that roughly follow a 24-hour cycle—do impact microbiota growth and, therefore, human health.

Studies show that introducing bacteria to a germ-free animal results in colonization of the host with the expected growth curve. For instance, when germ-free zebrafish were inoculated with intestinal bacteria, populations grew from the few starting cells to many thousands, following the timing and stages expected for those particular species: first came a lag phase with no increase in cell numbers, followed by a log phase with exponential growth, and then a stationary phase once the environmental carrying capacity was reached.

However, the hosts' activities lead to fascinating changes in the growth curve. Results of studies on mice and humans show that the stationary phase is altered by sleep changes such as those caused by jet lag. In a normal cycle, bacteria in the order Clostridiales dominated the intestinal microbiota during the active time of hosts. During resting time, *Lactobacillus* was more prevalent. But when the host's clock is disrupted by jet lag, the change in eating and activity causes dysbiosis, or a change in the microbiota. These disruptions seem capable of causing problems with the host over time. Surprisingly, the combination of microbiome species found in mice and humans with dysbiosis appeared to cause obesity when transferred and grown in germ-free mice.



***Lactobacillus* species like the one shown here seem to grow the best when their host is resting.**

The Death Phase

The number of deaths eventually exceeds the number of new cells formed, and the population enters the **death phase**, or **logarithmic decline phase**. This phase continues until the population is diminished to a tiny fraction of the number of cells in the previous phase or until the population dies out entirely. Some species pass through the entire series of phases in only a few days; others retain some surviving cells almost indefinitely. Microbial death will be discussed further in Chapter 7.

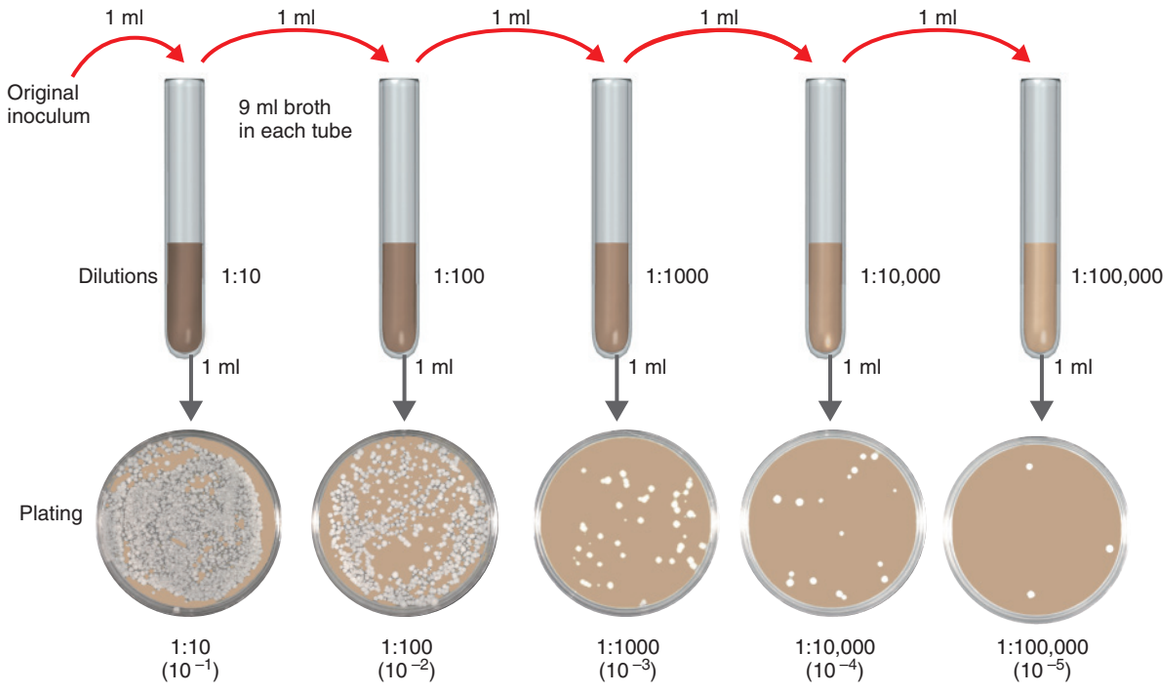
CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

6-16 If two mice started a family within a fixed enclosure, with a fixed food supply, would the population curve be the same as a bacterial growth curve?

Direct Measurement of Microbial Growth

The growth of microbial populations can be measured in a number of ways. Some methods measure cell numbers; other methods measure the population's total mass, which is often directly proportional to cell numbers. Population numbers are usually recorded as the number of cells in a milliliter of liquid or in a gram of solid material. Because bacterial populations are usually very large, most methods of counting them are based on direct or indirect counts of very small samples; calculations then determine the size of the total population. Assume, for example, that a millionth of a milliliter (10^{-6} ml) of sour milk is found to contain 70 bacterial cells. Then there must be 70 times 1 million, or 70 million, cells per milliliter.

However, it is not practical to measure out a millionth of a milliliter of liquid or a millionth of a gram of food. Therefore, the procedure is done indirectly, in a series of dilutions. For example, if we add 1 ml of milk to 99 ml of water, each milliliter of this dilution now has one-hundredth as many bacteria as each milliliter of the original sample had. By making a series of such dilutions, we can readily estimate the number of bacteria in our original sample. To count microbial populations in solid foods (such as hamburger), a homogenate of one part food to nine parts water is finely ground in a food blender. Samples of this initial one-tenth dilution can then be transferred with a pipette for further dilutions or cell counts.



Calculation: Number of colonies on plate × reciprocal of dilution of sample = number of bacteria/ml
(For example, if 54 colonies are on a plate of 1:1000 dilution, then the count is 54 × 1000 = 54,000 bacteria/ml in sample.)

Figure 6.18 Serial dilutions and plate counts. In serial dilutions, the original inoculum is diluted in a series of dilution tubes. In our example, each succeeding dilution tube will have only one-tenth the number of microbial cells as the preceding tube. Then, samples of the dilution are used to inoculate Petri plates, on which colonies grow and can be counted. This count is then used to estimate the number of bacteria in the original sample.

Q **Why were the dilutions of 1:10,000 and 1:100,000 not counted? Theoretically, how many colonies should appear on the 1:100 plate?**

Plate Counts

The most frequently used method of measuring bacterial populations is the **plate count**. An important advantage of this method is that it measures the number of viable cells. One disadvantage may be that it takes some time, usually 24 hours or more, for visible colonies to form. This can be a serious problem in some applications, such as quality control of milk, when it is not possible to hold a particular lot for this length of time.

Plate counts assume that each live bacterium grows and divides to produce a single colony. This is not always true, because bacteria frequently grow linked in chains or as clumps (see Figure 4.1). Therefore, a colony often results, not from a single bacterium, but from short segments of a chain or from a bacterial clump. To reflect this reality, plate counts are often reported as **colony-forming units (CFUs)**.

When a plate count is performed, it is important that only a limited number of colonies develop in the plate. When too many colonies are present, some cells are overcrowded and do not develop; these conditions cause inaccuracies in the count. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration convention is to count only plates with 25 to 250 colonies, but many microbiologists prefer plates with 30 to 300 colonies. To ensure that some colony counts will be within this range, the original inoculum is diluted several times in a process called **serial dilution** (Figure 6.18).

Serial Dilutions Let's say, for example, that a milk sample has 10,000 bacteria per milliliter. If 1 ml of this sample were plated out, there would theoretically be 10,000 colonies formed in the Petri plate of medium. Obviously, this would not produce a countable plate. If 1 ml of this sample were transferred to a tube containing 9 ml of sterile water, each milliliter of fluid in this tube would now contain 1000 bacteria. If 1 ml of this sample were inoculated into a Petri plate, there would still be too many potential colonies to count on a plate. Therefore, another serial dilution could be made. One milliliter containing 1000 bacteria would be transferred to a second tube of 9 ml of water. Each milliliter of this tube would now contain only 100 bacteria, and if 1 ml of the contents of this tube were

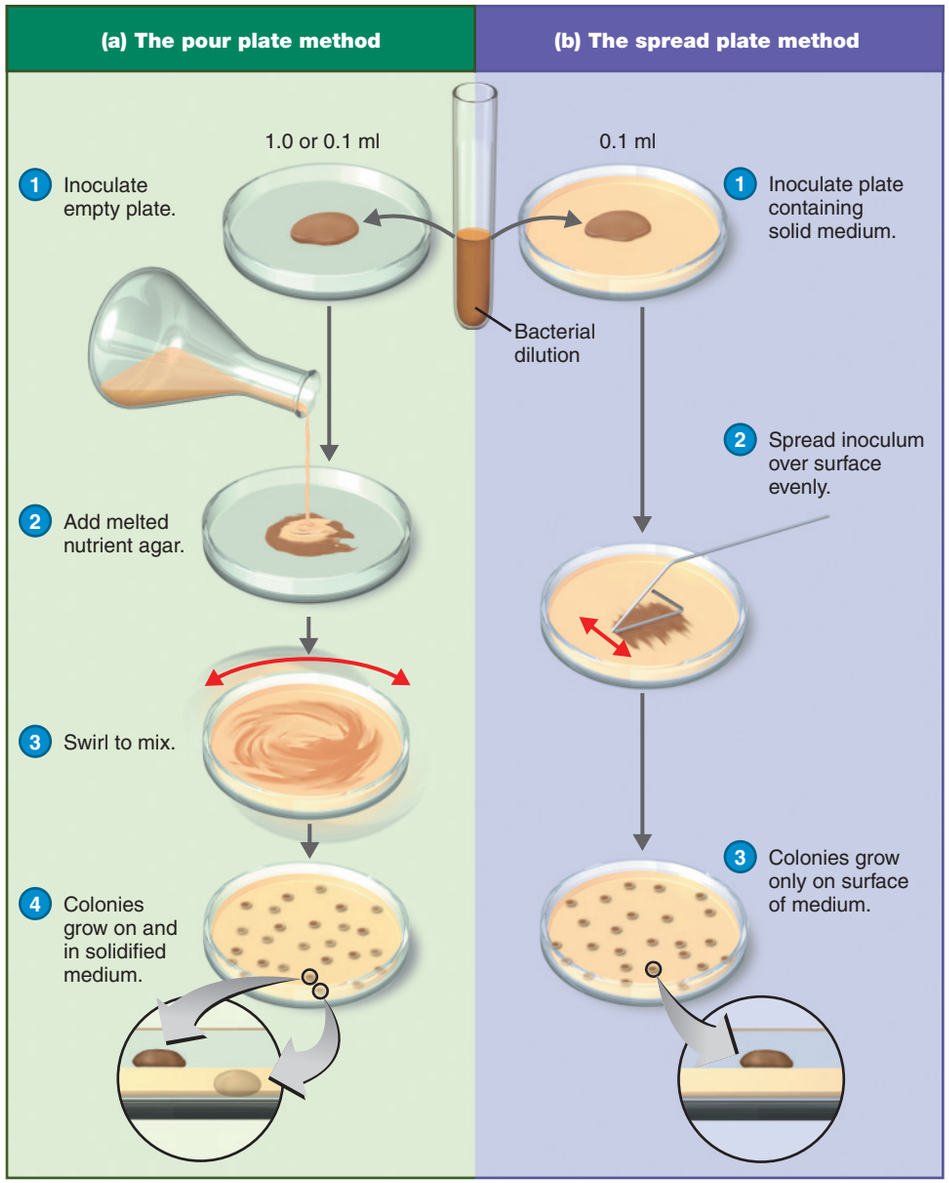


Figure 6.19 Methods of preparing plates for plate counts. **(a)** The pour plate method. **(b)** The spread plate method.

Q In what instances would the pour plate method be more appropriate than the spread plate method?

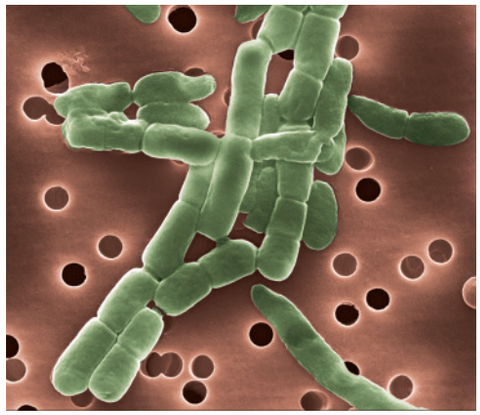
plated out, potentially 100 colonies would be formed—an easily countable number.

Pour Plates and Spread Plates A plate count is done by either the pour plate method or the spread plate method. The **pour plate method** follows the procedure shown in Figure 6.19a. Either 1 ml or 0.1 ml of dilutions of the bacterial suspension is introduced into a Petri dish. The nutrient medium, in which the agar is kept liquid by holding it in a water bath at about 50°C, is poured over the sample, which is then mixed into the medium by gentle agitation of the plate. When the agar solidifies, the plate is incubated. With the pour plate technique, colonies will grow within the nutrient agar (from cells suspended in the nutrient medium as the agar solidifies) as well as on the surface of the agar plate.

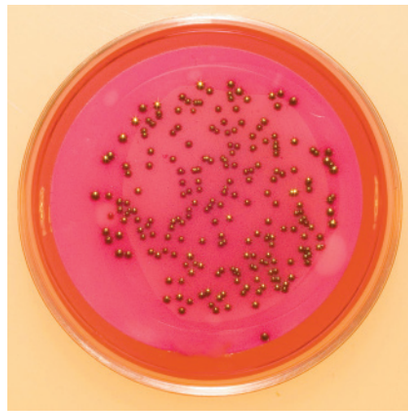
This technique has some drawbacks because some relatively heat-sensitive microorganisms may be damaged by the melted agar and will therefore be unable to form colonies. Also, when certain differential media are used, the distinctive appearance of the colony on the surface is essential for diagnostic purposes. Colonies that form beneath the surface of a pour plate are not satisfactory for such tests. To avoid these problems, the **spread plate method** is frequently used instead (Figure 6.19b). A 0.1-ml inoculum is added to the surface of a prepoured, solidified agar medium. The inoculum is then spread uniformly over the surface of the medium with a specially shaped, sterilized plastic or metal rod. This method positions all the colonies on the surface and avoids contact between the cells and melted agar.

Figure 6.20 Counting bacteria by filtration. (See Figure 7.4.)

Q Could you make a pour plate in the usual Petri dish with a 10-ml inoculum? Why or why not?



(a) The bacterial populations in bodies of water can be determined by passing a sample through a membrane filter. Here, the bacteria in a 100-ml water sample have been sieved out onto the surface of a membrane filter. These bacteria form visible colonies when placed on the surface of a suitable medium.



(b) A membrane filter with bacteria on its surface, as described in (a), has been placed on Endo agar. This medium is selective for gram-negative bacteria; lactose fermenters, such as the coliforms, form distinctive colonies. There are 214 colonies visible, so we would record 214 bacteria per 100 ml in the water sample.

Filtration

When the quantity of bacteria is very small, as in lakes or relatively pure streams, bacteria can be counted by **filtration** methods (Figure 6.20). In this technique, at least 100 ml of water are passed through a thin membrane filter whose pores are too small to allow bacteria to pass. Thus, the bacteria are filtered out and retained on the surface of the filter. This filter is then transferred to a Petri dish containing nutrient medium, where colonies arise from the bacteria on the filter's surface. This method is applied frequently to detection and enumeration of coliform bacteria, which are indicators of fecal contamination of food or water (see Chapter 27). The colonies formed by these bacteria are distinctive when a differential nutrient medium is used. (The colonies shown in Figure 6.20b are examples of coliforms.)

The Most Probable Number (MPN) Method

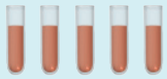
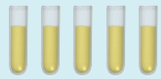
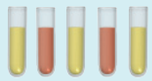
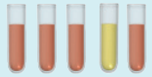
Another method for determining the number of bacteria in a sample is the **most probable number (MPN) method**, illustrated in Figure 6.21. This statistical estimating technique is based on the fact that the greater the number of bacteria in a sample, the more dilution is needed to reduce the density to the point at which no bacteria are left to grow in the tubes in a dilution series. The MPN method is most useful when the microbes being counted will not grow on solid media (such as the chemoautotrophic nitrifying bacteria). It is also useful when the growth of bacteria in a liquid differential medium is used to identify the microbes (such as coliform bacteria, which selectively ferment lactose to acid, in water testing). The MPN is only a statement that there is a 95% chance that the bacterial population falls within a certain range and that the MPN is statistically the most probable number.

Direct Microscopic Count

In the method known as the **direct microscopic count**, a measured volume of a bacterial suspension is placed within a defined area on a microscope slide. Because of time considerations, this method is often used to count the number of bacteria in milk. A 0.01-ml sample is spread over a marked square centimeter of slide, stain is added so that the bacteria can be seen, and the sample is viewed under the oil immersion objective lens. The area of the viewing field of this objective can be determined. Once the number of bacteria has been counted in several different fields, the average number of bacteria per viewing field can be calculated. From these data, the number of bacteria in the square centimeter over which the sample was spread can also be calculated. Because this area on the slide contained 0.01 ml of sample, the number of bacteria in each milliliter of the suspension is the number of bacteria in the sample times 100.

A specially designed slide called a *Petroff-Hausser cell counter* is used in direct microscopic counts (Figure 6.22).

Motile bacteria are difficult to count by this method, and, as happens with other microscopic methods, dead cells are about as likely to be counted as live ones. In addition to these disadvantages, a rather high concentration of cells is required to be countable—about 10 million bacteria per milliliter. The chief advantage of microscopic counts is that no incubation time is required, and they are usually reserved for applications in which time is the primary consideration. This advantage also holds for *electronic cell counters*, sometimes known as *Coulter counters*, which automatically count the number of cells in a measured volume of liquid. These instruments are used in some research laboratories and hospitals.

Nutrient Medium Set (5 Tubes for Set)	Inoculum amount added	Number of Positive Tubes in Each Set
Set 1 	10 ml	5 
Set 2	1 ml	3 
Set 3	0.1 ml	1 

(a) Most probable number (MPN) dilution series

Combination of Positives	MPN Index/ 100 ml	95% Confidence Limits	
		Lower	Upper
4-2-0	22	6.8	50
4-2-1	26	9.8	70
4-3-0	27	9.9	70
4-3-1	33	10	70
4-4-0	34	14	100
5-0-0	23		70
5-0-1	31	10	70
5-0-2	43	14	100
5-1-0	33	10	100
5-1-1	46	14	120
5-1-2	63	22	150
5-2-0	49	15	150
5-2-1	70	22	170
5-2-2	94	34	230
5-3-0	79	22	220
5-3-1	110	34	250
5-3-2	140	52	400

(b) MPN table. MPN tables enable us to calculate for a sample the microbial numbers that are statistically likely to lead to such a result. The number of positive (yellow) tubes is recorded for each set: in the shaded example, 5, 3, and 1. If we look up this combination in an MPN table, we find that the MPN index per 100 ml is 110. Statistically, this means that 95% of the water samples that give this result contain 34–250 bacteria, with 110 being the most probable number.

Figure 6.21 The most probable number (MPN) method.

Q Under what circumstances is the MPN method used to determine the number of bacteria in a sample?

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

6-17 Why is it difficult to measure realistically the growth of a filamentous mold isolate by the plate count method?

Estimating Bacterial Numbers by Indirect Methods

It is not always necessary to count microbial cells to estimate their numbers. In science and industry, microbial numbers and activity are determined by some of the following indirect means as well.

Turbidity

For some types of experimental work, estimating **turbidity** is a practical way of monitoring bacterial growth. As bacteria multiply in a liquid medium, the medium becomes turbid, or cloudy with cells.

The instrument used to measure turbidity is a *spectrophotometer* (or colorimeter). In the spectrophotometer, a beam of light is transmitted through a bacterial suspension to a light-sensitive detector (Figure 6.23). As bacterial numbers increase, less light will reach the detector. This change of light will register on the instrument's scale as the *percentage of transmission* (*%T*). Also printed on the instrument's scale is a logarithmic expression called the *absorbance* (sometimes called *optical density*, or *OD*). The absorbance is used to plot bacterial growth. When the bacteria are in logarithmic growth or decline, a graph of absorbance versus time will form an approximately straight line. If absorbance readings are matched with plate counts of the same culture, this correlation can be used in future estimations of bacterial numbers obtained by measuring turbidity.

More than a million cells per milliliter must be present for the first traces of turbidity to be visible. About 10 million to 100 million cells per milliliter are needed to make a suspension turbid enough to be read on a spectrophotometer. Therefore, turbidity is not a useful measure of contamination of liquids by relatively small numbers of bacteria.

Metabolic Activity

Another indirect way to estimate bacterial numbers is to measure a population's *metabolic activity*. This method assumes that the amount of a certain metabolic product, such as acid, CO_2, ATP, or DNA, is in direct proportion to the number of bacteria present. An example of a practical application of a metabolic test is the microbiological assay (see the previous section on Complex Media), in which acid production is used to determine amounts of vitamins.

CLINICAL CASE

The bacteria in the blood and catheter cultures fluoresce under ultraviolet light. The results from the culture show that *P. fluorescens* is present in the blood of 15 patients, in 17 catheters, and in the blood and catheters of 4 patients. The bacteria survived even after the heparin recall. Dr. MacGruder would like to have some idea how many bacteria are colonizing a patient's catheter. Because the amount of nutrients in a patient's catheter is minimal, he concludes that the bacteria grow slowly. He does some calculations based on the assumption that five *Pseudomonas* cells, with a generation time of 35 hours, may have been originally introduced into the catheters.

Approximately how many cells would there be after a month?

Figure 6.22 Direct microscopic count of bacteria with a Petroff-Hausser cell counter. The average number of cells within a large square multiplied by a factor of 1,250,000 gives the number of bacteria per milliliter.

Q This type of counting, despite its obvious disadvantages, is often used in estimating the bacterial population in dairy products. Why?

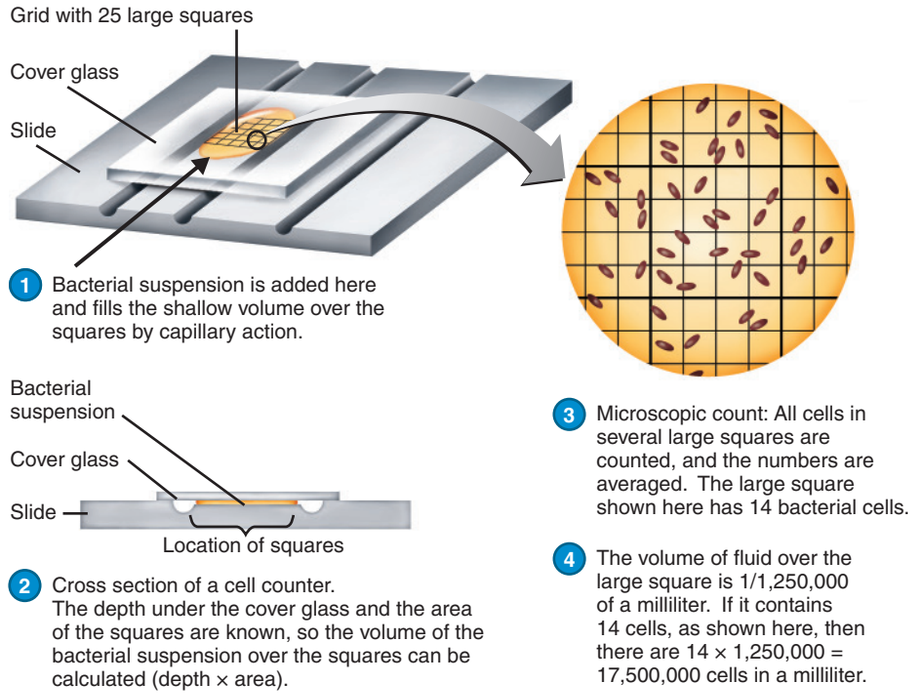
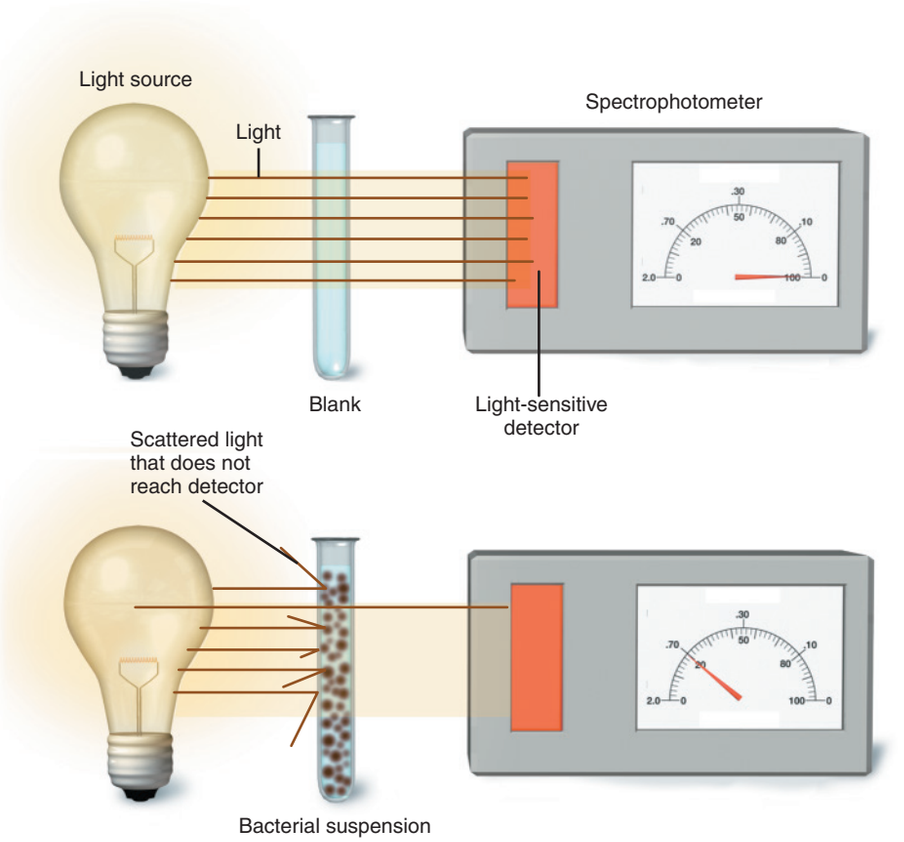


Figure 6.23 Turbidity estimation of bacterial numbers. The amount of light striking the light-sensitive detector on the spectrophotometer is inversely proportional to the number of bacteria under standardized conditions. The less light transmitted, the more bacteria in the sample. The turbidity of the sample could be reported as either 20% transmittance or 0.7 absorbance. Readings in absorbance are a logarithmic function and are sometimes useful in plotting data.

Q Why is turbidity more useful in measuring contamination of liquids by large numbers, rather than small numbers, of bacteria?



Dry Weight

For filamentous bacteria and molds, the usual measuring methods are less satisfactory. A plate count would not measure this increase in filamentous mass. In plate counts of actinomycetes (see Figure 11.25) and molds, usually the number of asexual spores is counted instead. This is not a good measure of growth. One of the better ways to measure the growth of filamentous organisms is by *dry weight*. In this procedure, the fungus is removed from the growth medium, filtered to remove extraneous material, and dried in a desiccator. It is then weighed. For bacteria, the same basic procedure is followed.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **6-18** Direct methods usually require an incubation time for a colony. Why is this not always feasible for analyzing foods?
- **6-19** If there is no good method for chemically analyzing a product for its vitamin content, what is a feasible method of determining the presence of a vitamin in the product?

* * *

You now have a basic understanding of the requirements for, and measurements of, microbial growth. In Chapter 7, we will look at how this growth is controlled in laboratories, hospitals, industry, and our homes.

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

Biofilms are dense accumulations of cells. Five cells might go through 20 generations in a month, producing 7.79×10^6 cells. Now Dr. MacGruder knows that the *P. fluorescens* bacteria are present in the patients' indwelling catheters. He orders the catheters to be replaced and has the CDC examine the used catheters with scanning electron microscopy. They discover that the *P. fluorescens* colonized the inside of the catheters by forming biofilms. In his report to the CDC, Dr. MacGruder explains that the *P. fluorescens* bacteria may have entered the bloodstreams of these patients at the same time as the first outbreak, but not in sufficient quantities to cause symptoms at that time. Biofilm formation enabled the bacteria to persist in the patients' catheters. He notes that previous electron microscopy studies indicate that nearly all indwelling vascular catheters become colonized by microorganisms that are embedded in a biofilm layer and that heparin has been reported to stimulate biofilm formation.

Dr. MacGruder concludes that the bacteria in the biofilm were dislodged by subsequent uncontaminated intravenous solutions and released into the bloodstream, finally causing infections months after initial colonization.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 **Part 4**

Study Outline

The Requirements for Growth (pp. 152–158)

1. The growth of a population is an increase in the number of cells. Colonies are groups of cells large enough to be seen without a microscope.
2. The requirements for microbial growth are both physical and chemical.

Physical Requirements (pp. 152–155)

3. On the basis of preferred temperature ranges, microbes are classified as psychrophiles (cold-loving), mesophiles (moderate-temperature–loving), and thermophiles (heat-loving).
4. The minimum growth temperature is the lowest temperature at which a species will grow, the optimum growth temperature is the temperature at which it grows best, and the maximum growth temperature is the highest temperature at which growth is possible.
5. Most bacteria grow best at a pH value between 6.5 and 7.5.
6. In a hypertonic solution, most microbes undergo plasmolysis; halophiles can tolerate high salt concentrations.

Chemical Requirements (pp. 155–158)

7. All organisms require a carbon source; chemoheterotrophs use an organic molecule, and autotrophs typically use carbon dioxide.
8. Nitrogen is needed for protein and nucleic acid synthesis. Nitrogen can be obtained from the decomposition of proteins or from NH_4^+ or NO_3^-; a few bacteria are capable of nitrogen (N_2) fixation.
9. On the basis of oxygen requirements, organisms are classified as obligate aerobes, facultative anaerobes, obligate anaerobes, aerotolerant anaerobes, and microaerophiles.
10. Aerobes, facultative anaerobes, and aerotolerant anaerobes must have the enzymes superoxide dismutase ($2 \cdot O_2 + 2\ H^+ \longrightarrow O_2 + H_2O_2$) and either catalase ($2\ H_2O_2 \longrightarrow 2\ H_2O + O_2$) or peroxidase ($H_2O_2 + 2\ H^+ \longrightarrow 2\ H_2O$).
11. Other chemicals required for microbial growth include sulfur, phosphorus, trace elements, and, for some microorganisms, organic growth factors.

Biofilms (pp. 158–159)

1. Microbes adhere to surfaces and accumulate as biofilms on solid surfaces in contact with water.
2. Most bacteria live in biofilms.
3. Microbes in biofilms are more resistant to antibiotics than are free-swimming microbes.

Culture Media (pp. 159–164)

1. A culture medium is any material prepared for the growth of bacteria in a laboratory.
2. Microbes that grow and multiply in or on a culture medium are known as a culture.
3. Agar is a common solidifying agent for a culture medium.

Chemically Defined Media (pp. 160–161)

4. A chemically defined medium is one in which the exact chemical composition is known.

Complex Media (p. 161)

5. A complex medium is one in which the exact chemical composition varies slightly from batch to batch.

Anaerobic Growth Media and Methods (pp. 161–162)

6. Reducing media chemically remove molecular oxygen (O_2) that might interfere with the growth of anaerobes.
7. Petri plates can be incubated in an anaerobic jar, anaerobic chamber, or OxyPlate™.

Special Culture Techniques (p. 162)

8. Some parasitic and fastidious bacteria must be cultured in living animals or in cell cultures.
9. CO_2 incubators or chemical CO_2 generators are used to grow capnophilic bacteria that require an increased CO_2 concentration.

Selective and Differential Media (pp. 162–163)

10. By inhibiting unwanted organisms with salts, dyes, or other chemicals, selective media allow growth of only the desired microbes.
11. Differential media are used to distinguish different organisms.

Enrichment Culture (pp. 163–164)

12. An enrichment culture is used to encourage the growth of a particular microorganism in a mixed culture.

Biosafety Levels (pp. 163–164)

13. Procedures and equipment to minimize exposure to pathogenic microorganisms are designated as biosafety levels 1 through 4.

Obtaining Pure Cultures (pp. 164–165)

1. A pure culture consists of only one species or strain of microbe.
2. Pure cultures are usually obtained by the streak plate method.

Preserving Bacterial Cultures (p. 165)

1. Microbes can be preserved for long periods of time by deep-freezing or lyophilization (freeze-drying).

The Growth of Bacterial Cultures (pp. 166–175)

Bacterial Division (p. 166)

1. The normal reproductive method of bacteria is binary fission, in which a single cell divides into two identical cells.
2. Some bacteria reproduce by budding, aerial spore formation, or fragmentation.

Generation Time (p. 166)

3. The time required for a cell to divide or a population to double is known as the generation time.

Logarithmic Representation of Bacterial Populations (pp. 166–167)

4. Bacterial division occurs according to a logarithmic progression (two cells, four cells, eight cells, and so on).

Phases of Growth (pp. 167–169)

5. During the lag phase, there is little or no change in the number of cells, but metabolic activity is high.
6. During the log phase, the bacteria multiply at the fastest rate possible under the conditions provided.
7. During the stationary phase, there is an equilibrium between cell division and death.
8. During the death phase, the number of deaths exceeds the number of new cells formed.

Direct Measurement of Microbial Growth (pp. 169–173)

9. A heterotrophic plate count reflects the number of viable microbes and assumes that each bacterium grows into a single colony; plate counts are reported as number of colony-forming units (CFU).
10. A plate count may be done by either the pour plate method or the spread plate method.
11. In filtration, bacteria are retained on the surface of a membrane filter and then transferred to a culture medium to grow and subsequently be counted.
12. The most probable number (MPN) method can be used for microbes that will grow in a liquid medium; it is a statistical estimation.
13. In a direct microscopic count, the microbes in a measured volume of a bacterial suspension are counted with the use of a specially designed slide.

Estimating Bacterial Numbers by Indirect Methods (pp. 173–175)

14. A spectrophotometer is used to determine turbidity by measuring the amount of light that passes through a suspension of cells.
15. An indirect way of estimating bacterial numbers is measuring the metabolic activity of the population (for example, acid production).
16. For filamentous organisms such as fungi, measuring dry weight is a convenient method of growth measurement.

Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the back of the textbook.

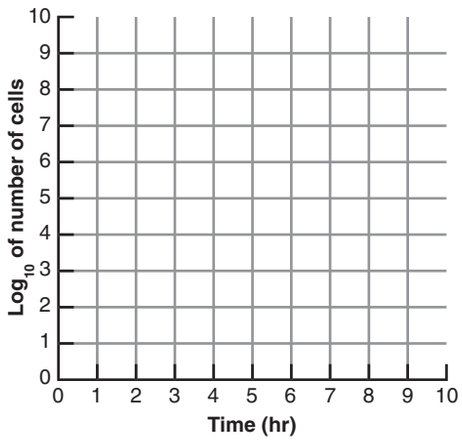
Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. Describe binary fission.
2. Macronutrients (needed in relatively large amounts) are often listed as CHONPS. What does each of these letters indicate, and why are they needed by the cell?
3. Define and explain the importance of each of the following:
   a. catalase
   b. hydrogen peroxide
   c. peroxidase

d. superoxide radical
e. superoxide dismutase

4. Seven methods of measuring microbial growth were explained in this chapter. Categorize each as either a direct or an indirect method.
5. By deep-freezing, bacteria can be stored without harm for extended periods. Why do refrigeration and freezing preserve foods?
6. A pastry chef accidentally inoculated a cream pie with six *S. aureus* cells. If *S. aureus* has a generation time of 60 minutes, how many cells would be in the cream pie after 7 hours?
7. Nitrogen and phosphorus added to beaches following an oil spill encourage the growth of natural oil-degrading bacteria. Explain why the bacteria do not grow if nitrogen and phosphorus are not added.
8. Differentiate complex and chemically defined media.
9. DRAW IT Draw the following growth curves for *E. coli*, starting with 100 cells with a generation time of 30 minutes at 35°C, 60 minutes at 20°C, and 3 hours at 5°C.
   a. The cells are incubated for 5 hours at 35°C.
   b. After 5 hours, the temperature is changed to 20°C for 2 hours.
   c. After 5 hours at 35°C, the temperature is changed to 5°C for 2 hours followed by 35°C for 5 hours.



10. NAME IT A prokaryotic cell hitched a ride to Earth on a space shuttle from some unknown planet. The organism is a psychrophile, an obligate halophile, and an obligate aerobe. Based on the characteristics of the microbe, describe the planet.

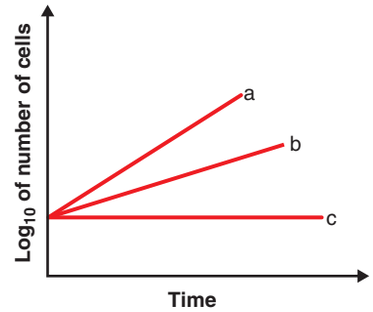
Multiple Choice

Use the following information to answer questions 1 and 2. Two culture media were inoculated with four different bacteria. After incubation, the following results were obtained:

Organism	Medium 1	Medium 2
E. coli	Red colonies	No growth
S. aureus	No growth	Growth
Staphylococcus epidermidis	No growth	Growth
Salmonella enterica	Colorless colonies	No growth

1. Medium 1 is
   a. selective.
   b. differential.
   c. both selective and differential.
2. Medium 2 is
   a. selective.
   b. differential.
   c. both selective and differential.

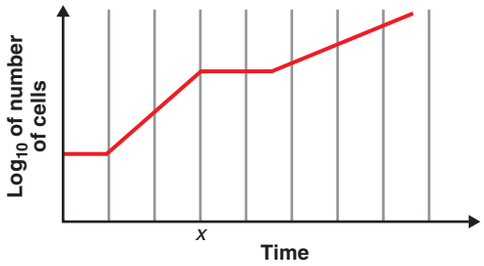
Use the following graph to answer questions 3 and 4.



3. Which of the lines best depicts the log phase of a thermophile incubated at room temperature?
4. Which of the lines best depicts the log phase of *Listeria monocytogenes* growing in a human?
5. Assume you inoculated 100 facultatively anaerobic cells onto nutrient agar and incubated the plate aerobically. You then inoculated 100 cells of the same species onto nutrient agar and incubated the second plate anaerobically. After incubation for 24 hours, you should have
   a. more colonies on the aerobic plate.
   b. more colonies on the anaerobic plate.
   c. the same number of colonies on both plates.
6. The term *trace elements* refers to
   a. the elements CHONPS.
   b. vitamins.
   c. nitrogen, phosphorus, and sulfur.
   d. small mineral requirements.
   e. toxic substances.
7. Which one of the following temperatures would most likely kill a mesophile?
   a. −50°C
   b. 0°C
   c. 9°C
   d. 37°C
   e. 60°C
8. Which of the following is *not* a characteristic of biofilms?
   a. antibiotic resistance
   b. hydrogel
   c. iron deficiency
   d. quorum sensing
9. Which of the following types of media would *not* be used to culture aerobes?
   a. selective media
   b. reducing media
   c. enrichment media
   d. differential media
   e. complex media
10. An organism that has peroxidase and superoxide dismutase but lacks catalase is most likely an
    a. aerobe.
    b. aerotolerant anaerobe.
    c. obligate anaerobe.

Analysis

1. *E. coli* was incubated with aeration in a nutrient medium containing two carbon sources, and the following growth curve was made from this culture.
   a. Explain what happened at the time marked *x*.
   b. Which substrate provided "better" growth conditions for the bacteria? How can you tell?



2. *Clostridium* and *Streptococcus* are both catalase-negative. *Streptococcus* grows by fermentation. Why is *Clostridium* killed by oxygen, whereas *Streptococcus* is not?
3. Most laboratory media contain a fermentable carbohydrate and peptone because the majority of bacteria require carbon, nitrogen, and energy sources in these forms. How are these three needs met by glucose–minimal salts medium? (*Hint*: See Table 6.2.)
4. Flask A contains yeast cells in glucose–minimal salts broth incubated at 30°C with aeration. Flask B contains yeast cells in glucose–minimal salts broth incubated at 30°C in an anaerobic jar. The yeasts are facultative anaerobes.
   a. Which culture produced more ATP?
   b. Which culture produced more alcohol?
   c. Which culture had the shorter generation time?
   d. Which culture had the greater cell mass?
   e. Which culture had the higher absorbance?

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. Assume that after washing your hands, you leave ten bacterial cells on a new bar of soap. You then decide to do a plate count of the soap after it was left in the soap dish for 24 hours. You dilute 1 g of the soap 1:10^6 and plate it on heterotrophic plate count agar. After 24 hours of incubation, there are 168 colonies. How many bacteria were on the soap? How did they get there?
2. Heat lamps are commonly used to maintain foods at about 50°C for as long as 12 hours in cafeteria serving lines. The following experiment was conducted to determine whether this practice poses a potential health hazard.

   Beef cubes were surface-inoculated with 500,000 bacterial cells and incubated at 43–53°C to establish temperature limits for bacterial growth. The following results were obtained from heterotrophic plate counts performed on beef cubes at 6 and 12 hours after inoculation:

		Bacteria per Gram of Beef After	
	Temp. (°C)	**6 hr**	**12 hr**
S. aureus	43	140,000,000	740,000,000
	51	810,000	59,000
	53	650	300
Salmonella Typhimurium	43	3,200,000	10,000,000
	51	950,000	83,000
	53	1,200	300
Clostridium perfringens	43	1,200,000	3,600,000
	51	120,000	3,800
	53	300	300

   Draw the growth curves for each organism. What holding temperature would you recommend? Assuming that cooking kills bacteria in foods, how could these bacteria contaminate the cooked foods? What disease does each organism cause? (*Hint*: See Chapter 25.)
3. The number of bacteria in saliva samples was determined by collecting the saliva, making serial dilutions, and inoculating nutrient agar by the pour plate method. The plates were incubated aerobically for 48 hours at 37°C.

	Bacteria per ml Saliva	
	Before Using Mouthwash	**After Using Mouthwash**
Mouthwash 1	13.1×10^6	10.9×10^6
Mouthwash 2	11.7×10^6	14.2×10^5
Mouthwash 3	9.3×10^5	7.7×10^5

   What can you conclude from these data? Did all the bacteria present in each saliva sample grow?

The Control of Microbial Growth 7

The scientific control of microbial growth began only about 150 years ago. In the 1840s, the Hungarian physician Ignaz Semmelweis was ridiculed for suggesting that physicians should wash their hands to prevent childbirth-related puerperal fever. Until then, ignorance of microbes was such that, during the American Civil War, a surgeon might have cleaned his scalpel on his boot sole between incisions. Recall from Chapter 1 that, in the 1860s, Pasteur's work on microorganisms led scientists to believe that microbes were a possible cause of disease. The English physician Joseph Lister used this thinking to develop some of the first microbial control practices for medical procedures. These practices included washing hands with microbe-killing chloride of lime [$Ca(OCl)_2$] and using the techniques of **aseptic surgery** to prevent microbial contamination of surgical wounds. Until that time, hospital-acquired infections, or *nosocomial infections*, were the cause of death in at least 10% of surgical cases and as many as 25% of deaths following childbirth. We now know that handwashing is the best way to prevent transmission of pathogens such as the norovirus in the photo. Controlling noroviruses on environmental surfaces is the topic of the Clinical Case.

Over the last century, scientists have continued to develop a variety of physical methods and chemical agents to control microbial growth. In Chapter 20, we will discuss methods for controlling microbes once infection has occurred, focusing mainly on antibiotic chemotherapy.

◀ Norovirus can be spread on environmental surfaces.

In the Clinic

As a hospital's infection control nurse, you become aware that 15 patients developed *Clostridioides difficile* infections within a month. This rate of infection is 10 per 1000 patients—nearly 300% higher than the average of 2.7 cases per 1000 patients seen in previous months. You request that housekeeping clean rooms and equipment with a hypochlorite-based disinfectant rather than the standard hospital (quat) disinfectant normally used. The next month, the rate of infection is 3 cases per 1000. **Did your cleaning program work? How did you reach your conclusion?**

Hint: Read about chlorines and quats later in this chapter; see Table 7.7.

The Terminology of Microbial Control

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

7-1 Define the following key terms related to microbial control: *sterilization*, *disinfection*, *antisepsis*, *degerming*, *sanitization*, *biocide*, *germicide*, *bacteriostasis*, and *asepsis*.

A word frequently used, and misused, in discussions about the control of microbial growth is *sterilization*. **Sterilization** is the removal or destruction of *all* living microorganisms. Heating is the most common method used for killing microbes, including the most resistant forms, such as endospores. A sterilizing agent is called a **sterilant**. Liquids or gases can be sterilized by filtration.

ASM: The growth of microorganisms can be controlled by physical, chemical, mechanical, or biological means.

One would think that canned food in the supermarket is completely sterile. In reality, the heat treatment required to ensure absolute sterility would unnecessarily degrade the quality of the food. Instead, food is subjected only to enough heat to destroy the endospores of *Clostridium botulinum* (BO-tū-lī′num), which can produce a deadly toxin. This limited heat treatment is termed **commercial sterilization**. The endospores of a number of thermophilic bacteria, capable of causing food spoilage but not human disease, are considerably more resistant to heat than *C. botulinum*. If present, they will survive, but their survival is usually of no practical consequence; they will not grow at normal food storage temperatures. If canned foods in a supermarket were incubated at temperatures in the growth range of these thermophiles (above about 45°C), significant food spoilage would occur.

Complete sterilization is often not required in other settings. For example, the body's normal defenses can cope with a few microbes entering a surgical wound. A drinking glass or a fork in a restaurant requires only enough microbial control to prevent the transmission of possibly pathogenic microbes from one person to another.

Control directed at destroying harmful microorganisms is called **disinfection**. The term usually refers to the destruction of vegetative (non–endospore-forming) pathogens, which is not the same thing as complete sterility. Disinfection might make use of chemicals, ultraviolet radiation, boiling water, or steam. In practice, the term is most commonly applied to the use of a chemical (a *disinfectant*) to treat an inert surface or substance. When this treatment is directed at living tissue, it is called **antisepsis**, and the chemical is then called an *antiseptic*. Therefore, in practice the same chemical might be called a disinfectant for one use and an antiseptic for another. Of course, many chemicals suitable for wiping a tabletop would be too harsh to use on living tissue.

There are modifications of disinfection and antisepsis. For example, when someone is about to receive an injection, the skin is swabbed with alcohol—the process of **degerming** (or *degermation*), which mostly results in the mechanical removal, rather than the killing, of most of the microbes in a limited area. Restaurant glassware, china, and tableware are subjected to **sanitization**, which is intended to lower microbial counts to safe public health levels and minimize the chances of disease transmission from one user to another. This is usually accomplished by high-temperature washing or, in the case of glassware in a bar, washing in a sink followed by a dip in a chemical disinfectant.

Table 7.1 summarizes the terminology relating to the control of microbial growth.

Names of treatments that cause the outright death of microbes have the suffix *-cide*, meaning kill. A **biocide**, or **germicide**, kills microorganisms (usually with certain exceptions, such as endospores); a *fungicide* kills fungi; a *virucide* inactivates viruses; and so on. Other treatments only inhibit the growth and multiplication of bacteria; their names have the suffix *-stat* or *-stasis*, meaning to stop or to steady, as in **bacteriostasis**. Once a bacteriostatic agent is removed, growth might resume.

Sepsis, from the Greek for decay or putrid, indicates bacterial contamination, as in septic tanks for sewage treatment. (The term is also used to describe a disease condition; see Chapter 23.) *Aseptic* describes an object or area free of pathogens. **Asepsis** is the absence of significant contamination (see Chapter 1). Aseptic techniques are important in surgery to minimize contamination from the instruments, the operating personnel, and the patient.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

7-1 The usual definition of *sterilization* is the removal or destruction of all forms of microbial life; how could there be practical exceptions to this simple definition?

CLINICAL CASE A School Epidemic

It is 9:00 A.M. on a Wednesday morning, and Amy Garza, the school nurse at Westview Elementary School in Rockville, Maryland, has been on the phone since she came in to work at 7:00 A.M. So far this morning, she has received seven reports of students unable to attend school today because of some sort of gastrointestinal ailment. They all have the same symptoms: nausea and vomiting, diarrhea, and a low-grade fever. As Amy picks up the phone to call the principal to give her an update, she receives her eighth call of the day. Keith Jackson, a first-grade teacher who has been out sick since Monday, calls to tell Amy that his physician sent his stool sample to the laboratory for testing, and the results have now come back positive for norovirus.

What is norovirus? Read on to find out.

TABLE 7.1 Terminology Relating to the Control of Microbial Growth

	Definition	Comments
Sterilization	Destruction or removal of all forms of microbial life, including endospores but with the possible exception of prions.	Usually done by steam under pressure or a sterilizing gas, such as ethylene oxide.
Commercial Sterilization	Sufficient heat treatment to kill endospores of *C. botulinum* in canned food.	More-resistant endospores of thermophilic bacteria may survive, but they will not germinate and grow under normal storage conditions.
Disinfection	Destruction of vegetative pathogens on inanimate objects.	May make use of physical or chemical methods.
Antisepsis	Destruction of vegetative pathogens on living tissue.	Treatment is almost always by chemical antimicrobials.
Degerming	Removal of microbes from a limited area, such as the skin around an injection site.	Mostly a mechanical removal by soap and water or an alcohol-soaked swab.
Sanitization	Treatment is intended to lower microbial counts on eating and drinking utensils to safe public health levels.	May be done with high-temperature washing or by dipping into a chemical disinfectant.

The Rate of Microbial Death

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

7-2 Describe the patterns of microbial death caused by treatments with microbial control agents.

When bacterial populations are heated or treated with antimicrobial chemicals, they usually die at a constant rate. For example, suppose a population of 1 million microbes has been treated for 1 minute, and 90% of the population has died. We are now left with 100,000 microbes. If the population is treated for another minute, 90% of *those* microbes die, and we are left with 10,000 survivors. In other words, for each minute the treatment is applied, 90% of the remaining population is killed (Table 7.2). If the death curve is plotted logarithmically, the death rate is constant, as shown by the straight line in Figure 7.1a.

Several factors influence the effectiveness of antimicrobial treatments:

- *The number of microbes*. The more microbes there are to begin with, the longer it takes to eliminate the entire population (Figure 7.1b).
- *Environmental influences*. Most disinfectants work somewhat better in warm solutions. Heat is measurably more effective under acidic conditions.
- *Organic matter often inhibits the action of chemical antimicrobials*. In hospitals, the presence of organic matter in blood, vomitus, or feces influences the selection of disinfectants. Microbes in surface biofilms, when they are encased in the mucoid matrix (see Chapter 6), are difficult for biocides to reach effectively. Because their activity is due to temperature-dependent chemical reactions, disinfectants work somewhat better under warm conditions. The nature of the suspending medium is also a factor in heat treatment. Fats and proteins are especially protective; during heat treatment, a medium rich in these substances protects microbes, which will then have a higher survival rate.
- *Time of exposure*. Chemical antimicrobials often require extended exposure to affect more-resistant microbes or endospores. See the discussion of equivalent treatments ahead.
- *Microbial characteristics*. The concluding section of this chapter discusses how microbial characteristics such as cell wall composition and endospores affect the choice of chemical and physical control methods.

TABLE 7.2 Microbial Exponential Death Rate: An Example

Time (min)	Deaths per Minute	Number of Survivors
0	0	1,000,000
1	900,000	100,000
2	90,000	10,000
3	9000	1000
4	900	100
5	90	10
6	9	1

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

7-2 How is it possible that a solution containing a million bacteria would take longer to sterilize than one containing a half-million bacteria?

Actions of Microbial Control Agents

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

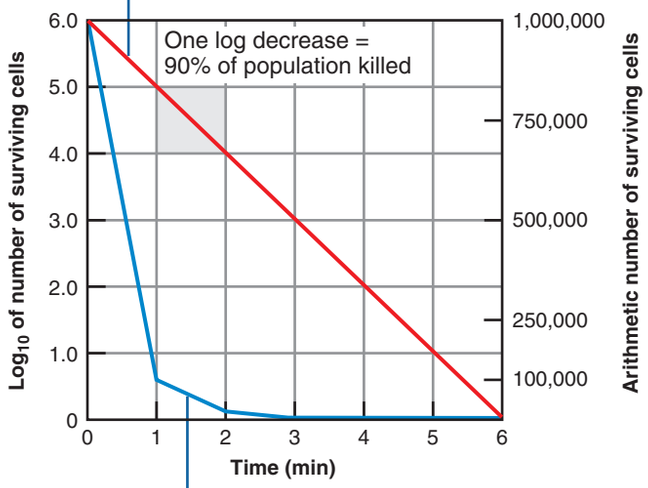
7-3 Describe the effects of microbial control agents on cellular structures.

This section provides an overview of the three primary ways various agents kill or inhibit microbes—by damaging their plasma membrane, their enzymes, or their nucleic acids.

FOUNDATION FIGURE 7.1

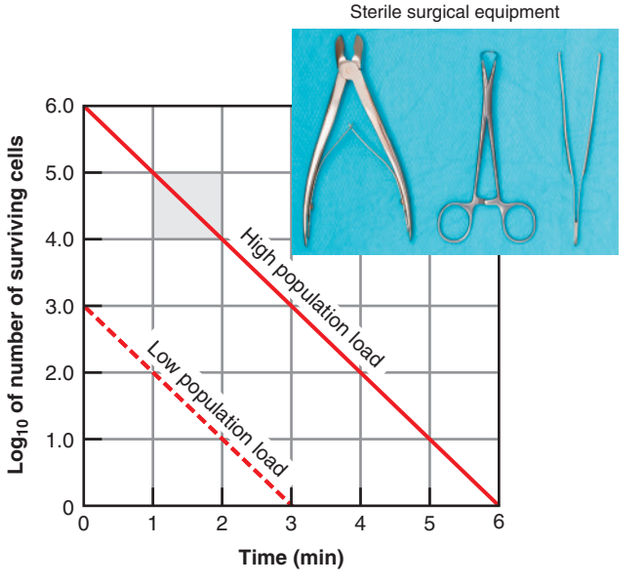
Understanding the Microbial Death Curve

Plotting the typical microbial death curve **logarithmically** (**red line**) results in a straight line.



(a) Plotting the typical microbial death curve **arithmetically** (**blue line**) is impractical: at 3 minutes the population of 1000 cells would only be a hundredth of the graphed distance between 100,000 and the baseline.

Sterile surgical equipment



(b) Logarithmic plotting (**red**) reveals that if the rate of killing is the same, it will take longer to kill all members of a larger population than a smaller one, whether using heat or chemical treatments.

KEY CONCEPTS

- Bacterial populations usually die at a constant rate when heated or when treated with antimicrobial chemicals.
- It is necessary to use logarithmic numbers to graph bacterial populations effectively.
- Understanding logarithmic death curves for microbial populations, including the elements of time and the size of the initial population, is especially useful in food preservation and in the sterilization of media or medical supplies.

Foods preserved by heat

A microorganism's plasma membrane (see Figure 4.14), located just inside the cell wall, is the target of many microbial control agents. This membrane actively regulates the passage of nutrients into the cell and the elimination of wastes from the cell. Damage to the lipids or proteins of the plasma membrane by antimicrobial agents causes cellular contents to leak into the surrounding medium and interferes with the growth of the cell.

Bacteria are sometimes thought of as "little bags of enzymes." Enzymes, which are primarily protein, are vital to all cellular activities; thus, destroying its enzymes destroys the cell. Recall that the functional properties of proteins are the result of their three-dimensional shape (see Figure 2.15). This shape is maintained by chemical bonds that link adjoining portions of the amino acid chain as it folds back and forth upon itself. Some of those bonds are hydrogen bonds, which are susceptible to breakage by heat or certain chemicals; breakage results in denaturation of the protein. Covalent bonds are stronger but are also subject to attack. For example, disulfide bridges, which play an important role in protein structure by joining amino acids with exposed sulfhydryl (—SH) groups, can be broken by certain chemicals or by sufficient heat.

The nucleic acids DNA and RNA are the carriers of the cell's genetic information. Damage to these nucleic acids by heat, radiation, or chemicals is frequently lethal to the cell; the cell can no longer replicate, nor can it carry out normal metabolic functions such as the synthesis of enzymes.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

7-3 Would a chemical microbial control agent that affects plasma membranes affect humans?

Physical Methods of Microbial Control

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

7-4 Compare the effectiveness of moist heat (boiling, autoclaving, pasteurization) and dry heat.

7-5 Describe how filtration, low temperatures, high pressure, desiccation, and osmotic pressure suppress microbial growth.

7-6 Explain how radiation kills cells.

As early as the Stone Age, humans likely were already using some physical methods of microbial control to preserve foods. Drying (desiccation) and salting (osmotic pressure) were probably among the earliest techniques.

When selecting methods of microbial control, one must consider what else, besides the microbes, a particular method will affect. For example, heat might inactivate certain vitamins or antibiotics in a solution. Repeated heating damages many laboratory and hospital materials, such as rubber and latex tubing. There are also economic considerations; for example, it may be less expensive to use presterilized, disposable plasticware than to repeatedly wash and resterilize glassware.

Heat

A visit to any supermarket will demonstrate that heat-preserved canned goods represent one of the most common methods of food preservation. Heat is also usually used to sterilize laboratory media and glassware and hospital instruments.

Heat resistance varies among different microbes; these differences can be expressed through the concept of thermal death point. **Thermal death point (TDP)** is the lowest temperature at which all the microorganisms in a particular liquid suspension will be killed in 10 minutes.

Another factor to be considered in sterilization is the length of time required. This is expressed as **thermal death time (TDT)**, the minimal length of time for all bacteria in a particular liquid culture to be killed at a given temperature. Both TDP and TDT are useful guidelines that indicate the severity of treatment required to kill a given population of bacteria.

Decimal reduction time (DRT), or *D value*, is a third concept related to bacterial heat resistance. DRT is the time, in minutes, in which 90% (one log) of a population of bacteria at a given temperature will be killed (in Table 7.2 and Figure 7.1a, DRT is 1 minute). Chapter 28 describes an important application of DRT in the canning industry.

Moist Heat Sterilization

Moist heat kills microorganisms primarily by denaturing proteins (see Figure 5.6), which is caused by breakage of the hydrogen bonds that hold the proteins in their three-dimensional structure. This coagulation process is familiar to anyone who has watched an egg white frying.

One type of moist heat is boiling, which kills vegetative forms of bacterial pathogens, many viruses, and fungi and their spores within about 10 minutes, usually much faster. Free-flowing (unpressurized) steam is essentially the same temperature as boiling water. Endospores and some viruses, however, are not destroyed this quickly. For example, some bacterial endospores can resist boiling for more than 20 hours. Boiling is therefore not a reliable sterilization procedure. However, brief boiling, even at high altitudes (where air pressure is lower than at sea level), will kill most pathogens. The use of boiling to sanitize glass baby bottles is a familiar example.

Reliable sterilization with moist heat requires temperatures above that of boiling water. These high temperatures are most commonly achieved by using steam under pressure in an **autoclave** (Figure 7.2). The higher the pressure in the autoclave, the higher the temperature. (You may be familiar with this relationship if you have ever used a pressure cooker for home canning or to speed up the cooking of beans.)

For example, when free-flowing steam at a temperature of 100°C is placed under a pressure of 1 atmosphere above sea level pressure—that is, about 15 pounds of pressure per square inch (psi)—the temperature rises to 121°C. Increasing the pressure to 20 psi raises the temperature to 126°C. The relationship between temperature and pressure is shown in Table 7.3.

Sterilization in an autoclave is most effective when the organisms either are contacted by the steam directly or are contained in a small volume of aqueous (primarily water) liquid. Under these conditions, steam at a pressure of about 15 psi (121°C) will kill *all* organisms (except prions) and their endospores in about 15 minutes. Sterilizing the surface of a solid requires that steam actually contact it. To sterilize dry glassware, bandages, and the like, care must be taken to ensure that steam contacts all surfaces. For example, aluminum foil is impervious to steam and should not be used to wrap dry materials that are to be sterilized; paper should be used instead (Figure 7.3). Care should also be taken to avoid trapping air in the bottom of a dry container: trapped air will not be replaced by steam, because steam is lighter than air. The trapped air is the equivalent of a small hot-air oven, which, as we will see shortly, requires a higher temperature and longer time to sterilize materials. Containers that can trap air should be placed in a tipped position so that the steam will force out the air. Products that do not permit penetration by moisture, such as mineral oil or petroleum jelly, are not sterilized by the same methods used to sterilize aqueous solutions.

Autoclaving is the preferred method of sterilization in health care environments, unless the material to be sterilized can be damaged by heat or moisture. It is used to sterilize culture media, instruments, dressings, intravenous equipment,

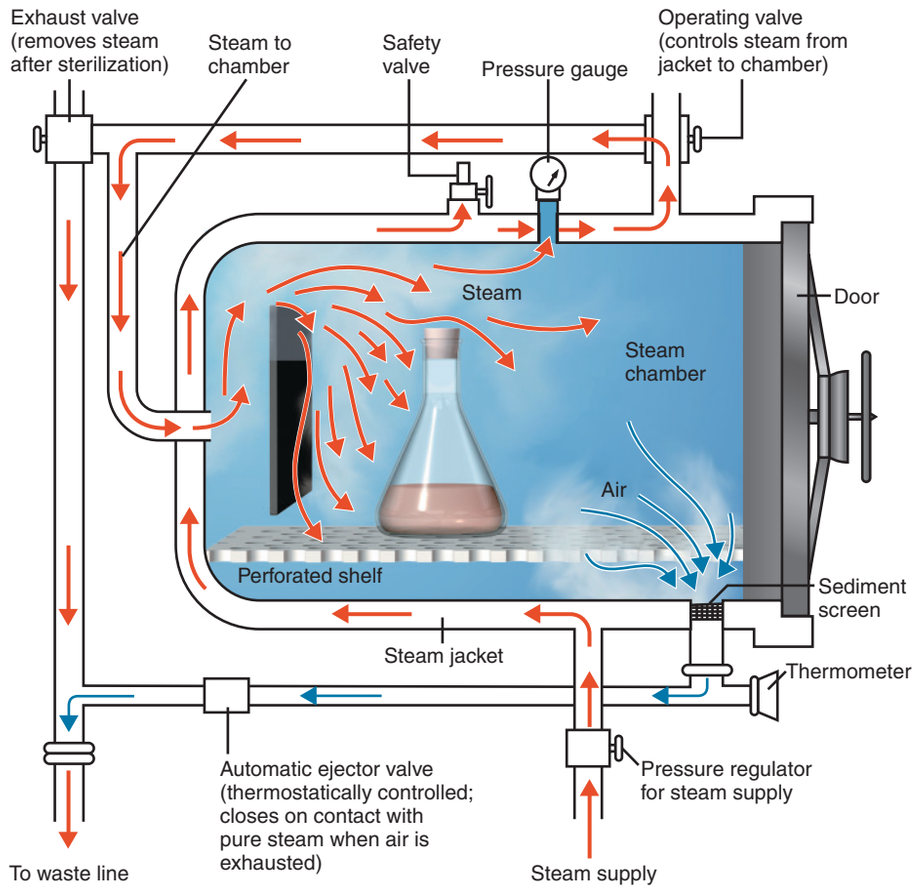


Figure 7.2 An autoclave. The entering steam forces the air out of the bottom (blue arrows). The automatic ejector valve remains open as long as an air-steam mixture is passing out of the waste line. When all the air has been ejected, the higher temperature of the pure steam closes the valve, and the pressure in the chamber increases.

Q How would an empty, uncapped flask be positioned for sterilization in an autoclave?

Figure 7.3 Examples of sterilization indicators. The strips indicate whether the item has been properly sterilized. The word *NOT* appears if heating has been inadequate. In the illustration, the indicator that was wrapped with aluminum foil was not sterilized because steam couldn't penetrate the foil.

Q What should have been used to wrap the items instead of aluminum foil?

applicators, solutions, syringes, transfusion equipment, and numerous other items that can withstand high temperatures and pressures.

Autoclaving is also used in industry—for example, in food production. Large industrial autoclaves are called *retorts*. Heat requires extra time to reach the center of solid materials, such as canned meats, because such materials do not develop the

TABLE 7.3 The Relationship between the Pressure and Temperature of Steam at Sea Level*

Pressure (psi in Excess of Atmospheric Pressure)	Temperature (°C)
0	100
5	110
10	116
15	121
20	126
30	135

*At higher altitudes, the atmospheric pressure is less, a phenomenon that must be taken into account in operating an autoclave. For example, to reach sterilizing temperatures (121°C) in Denver, Colorado, whose altitude is 5280 feet (1600 meters), the pressure shown on the autoclave gauge would need to be higher than the 15 psi shown in the table.

efficient heat-distributing convection currents that occur in liquids. Heating large containers also requires extra time. Table 7.4 shows the different time requirements for sterilizing liquids in various container sizes.

Several commercially available methods can indicate whether heat treatment has achieved sterilization. Some of these are chemical reactions in which an indicator changes color when the proper times and temperatures have been reached (Figure 7.3). In some designs, the word *sterile* or *autoclaved* appears on wrappings or tapes. This test has a practical advantage; it does not require an incubation time for growth of a test organism, which is important if the sterilized product is intended for immediate consumption. A widely used test consists of preparations of specified species of bacterial endospores impregnated into paper strips. After the strips are autoclaved, they can then be aseptically inoculated into culture media. Growth in the culture media indicates survival of the endospores and therefore inadequate processing. Other designs use endospore suspensions that can be released, after heating, into a surrounding culture medium within the same vial.

Steam under pressure fails to sterilize when the air is not completely exhausted. This can happen with the premature closing of the autoclave's automatic ejector valve (see Figure 7.2). The principles of heat sterilization have a direct bearing on home canning. As anyone familiar with home canning knows, the steam must flow vigorously out of the valve in the lid for several minutes to carry with it all the air before the pressure cooker is sealed. If the air is not completely exhausted, the container will not reach the temperature expected for a given pressure. Because of the possibility of botulism, a kind of food poisoning resulting from improper canning methods (see Chapter 22), anyone doing home canning should obtain reliable directions and follow them exactly.

Pasteurization

In the early days of microbiology, Louis Pasteur found a practical method of preventing the spoilage of beer and wine (see Chapter 1). Pasteur used mild heating, which was sufficient to kill the organisms that caused the particular spoilage problem without seriously damaging the taste of the product. The same principle was later applied to milk to produce what we now call pasteurized milk. The intent of **pasteurization** of milk was to eliminate pathogenic microbes. It also lowers microbial numbers, which prolongs milk's good quality under refrigeration. Many relatively heat-resistant (**thermoduric**) bacteria survive pasteurization, but these are unlikely to cause disease or cause refrigerated milk to spoil.

Products other than milk, such as ice cream, yogurt, and beer, all have their own pasteurization times and temperatures, which often differ considerably. There are several reasons for these variations. For example, heating is less efficient in foods that are more viscous, and fats in food can have a protective effect on microorganisms. The dairy industry routinely uses a test to determine whether products have been pasteurized: the *phosphatase test* (phosphatase is an enzyme naturally present in milk). If the product has been pasteurized, phosphatase will have been inactivated.

Most milk pasteurization today uses temperatures of at least 72°C, but for only 15 seconds. This treatment, known as **high-temperature short-time (HTST) pasteurization**, is applied as the milk flows continuously past a heat exchanger. In addition to killing pathogens, HTST pasteurization lowers total bacterial counts, so the milk keeps well under refrigeration.

Sterilization

Milk can also be sterilized—something quite different from pasteurization—by **ultra-high-temperature (UHT) treatments**. It can then be stored for several months without refrigeration (also see *commercial sterilization*, Chapter 28). UHT-treated milk is widely available in Europe and in parts of the world where refrigeration facilities are not always available. In the United States, UHT is sometimes used on the small containers of coffee creamers found in restaurants. To avoid giving the milk a cooked taste, the process prevents the milk from touching a surface hotter than the milk itself. Usually, the milk is sprayed through a nozzle into a chamber filled with high-temperature steam under pressure. A small volume of fluid sprayed into an atmosphere of high-temperature steam exposes a relatively large surface area on the fluid droplets to heating by the steam; sterilizing temperatures are therefore reached almost instantaneously. After reaching a temperature of 140°C for 4 seconds, the milk is rapidly cooled in a vacuum chamber. It is then packaged in a presterilized, airtight container. The same process is frequently used to sterilize juice.

TABLE 7.4 The Effect of Container Size on Autoclave Sterilization Times for Liquid Solutions*

Container Size	Liquid Volume	Sterilization Time (min)
Test tube: 18 × 150 mm	10 ml	15
Erlenmeyer flask: 125 ml	95 ml	15
Erlenmeyer flask: 2000 ml	1500 ml	30
Fermentation bottle: 9000 ml	6750 ml	70

*Sterilization times in the autoclave include the time for the contents of the containers to reach sterilization temperatures. For smaller containers, this is only 5 min or less, but for a 9000-ml bottle, it might be as much as 70 min. Liquids in an autoclave boil vigorously, so their containers usually are filled only up to 75% of capacity.

The heat treatments we have just discussed illustrate the concept of **equivalent treatments**: as the temperature is increased, much less time is needed to kill the same number of microbes. For example, suppose that the destruction of highly resistant endospores might take 70 minutes at 115°C, whereas, in this hypothetical example, only 7 minutes might be needed at 125°C. Both treatments yield the same result.

Dry Heat Sterilization

Dry heat kills by oxidation effects. A simple analogy is the slow charring of paper in a heated oven, even when the temperature remains below the ignition point of paper. One of the simplest methods of dry heat sterilization is direct **flaming**. You will use this procedure many times in the microbiology laboratory when you sterilize inoculating loops. To effectively sterilize the inoculating loop, you heat the wire to a red glow. A similar principle is used in *incineration*, an effective way to sterilize and dispose of contaminated paper cups, bags, and dressings.

Another form of dry heat sterilization is **hot-air sterilization**. Items to be sterilized by this procedure are placed in an oven. Generally, a temperature of about 170°C maintained for nearly 2 hours ensures sterilization. The longer period and higher temperature (relative to moist heat) are required because the heat in water is more readily transferred to a cool body than is the heat in air. For example, imagine the different effects of immersing your hand in boiling water at 100°C (212°F) and of holding it in a hot-air oven at the same temperature for the same amount of time.

Filtration

Filtration is the passage of a liquid or gas through a screenlike material with pores small enough to retain microorganisms (often the same apparatus used for counting; see Figure 6.20). A vacuum is created in the receiving flask; air pressure then forces the liquid through the filter. Filtration is used to sterilize heat-sensitive materials, such as some culture media, enzymes, vaccines, and antibiotic solutions.

Some operating theaters and rooms occupied by burn patients receive filtered air to lower the numbers of airborne microbes. **High-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters** remove almost all microorganisms larger than about 0.3 μm in diameter.

In the early days of microbiology, hollow candle-shaped filters of unglazed porcelain were used to filter liquids. The long and indirect passageways through the walls of the filter adsorbed the bacteria. Unseen pathogens that passed through the filters (causing such diseases as rabies) were called *filterable viruses*. (See the discussion of filtration in modern water treatment in Chapter 27.)

In recent years, **membrane filters**, composed of such substances as cellulose esters or plastic esters, have become popular for industrial and laboratory use (Figure 7.4). These filters are only 0.1 mm thick. The pores of membrane filters, for example, 0.22-μm and 0.45-μm sizes, are intended for bacteria. Some very flexible bacteria, such as spirochetes, or the wall-less mycoplasma will sometimes pass through such filters, however. Filters are available with pores as small as 0.05 μm, a size that will retain viruses and even some large protein molecules.

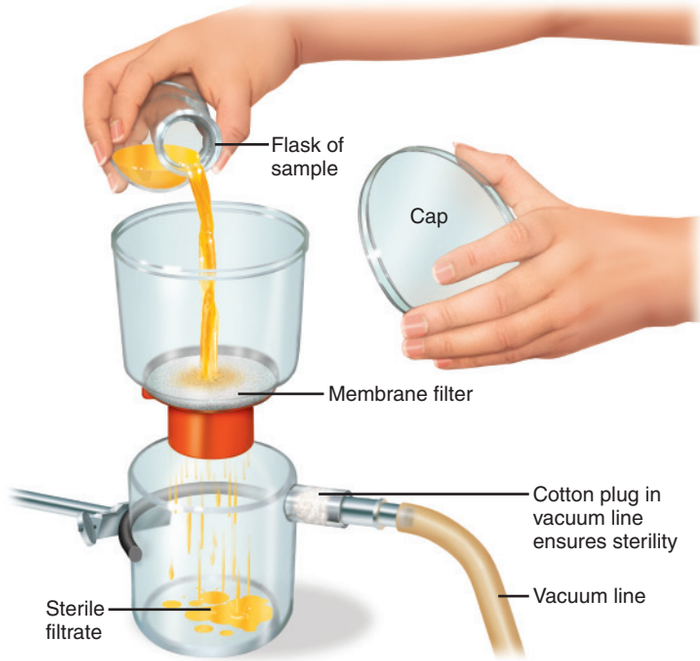


Figure 7.4 Filter sterilization with a disposable, presterilized plastic unit. The sample is placed into the upper chamber and forced through the membrane filter by a vacuum in the lower chamber. Pores in the membrane filter are smaller than the bacteria, so bacteria are retained on the filter. The sterilized sample can then be decanted from the lower chamber. Similar equipment with removable filter disks is used to count bacteria in samples (see Figure 6.20).

Q How is a plastic filtration apparatus presterilized? (Assume the plastic cannot be heat sterilized.)

Low Temperatures

The effect of low temperatures on microorganisms depends on the particular microbe and the intensity of the application. For example, at temperatures of ordinary refrigerators (0–7°C), the metabolic rate of most microbes is so reduced that they cannot reproduce or synthesize toxins. In other words, ordinary refrigeration has a bacteriostatic effect. Yet psychrotrophs do grow slowly at refrigerator temperatures and will alter the appearance and taste of foods over time. For example, a single microbe reproducing only three times a day would reach a population of more than 2 million within a week. Pathogenic bacteria generally will not grow at refrigerator temperatures, but *Listeria* is one important exception (see the discussion of listeriosis in Chapter 22).

For long-term microbial control, freezing is more effective than refrigeration; however, many substances, including certain vaccines and foods, remain unfrozen until −2°C or lower, and some *Pseudomonas* bacteria can grow at temperatures several degrees below freezing. Rapidly attained subfreezing temperatures tend to render microbes dormant but do not necessarily kill them. Slow freezing is more harmful to bacteria; the ice crystals that form and grow disrupt the cellular and molecular structure of the bacteria. Thawing, being inherently slower, is actually the most damaging part of a freeze-thaw cycle. Once frozen, one-third of the population of some vegetative bacteria might survive a year, whereas other species might have very few survivors after this time. Many eukaryotic parasites, such as the roundworms that cause human trichinellosis, are killed by several days of freezing temperatures. Some important temperatures associated with microorganisms and food spoilage are shown in Figure 6.2.

High Pressure

High pressure applied to liquid suspensions is transferred instantly and evenly throughout the sample. If the pressure is high enough, it alters the molecular structures of proteins and carbohydrates, resulting in the rapid inactivation of vegetative bacterial cells. Endospores are relatively resistant to high pressure. Fruit juices preserved by high-pressure treatments are sold in Japan and the United States. An advantage is that these treatments preserve the flavors, colors, and nutrient values of the products.

Desiccation

In the absence of water, known as **desiccation**, microorganisms cannot grow or reproduce but can remain viable for years. Then, when water is made available to them, they can resume their growth and division. This is the principle that underlies lyophilization, or freeze-drying, a laboratory process for preserving microbes described in Chapter 6. Certain foods are also freeze-dried (for example, coffee and some fruit additives for dry cereals).

The resistance of vegetative cells to desiccation varies with the species and the organism's environment. For example, the gonorrhea bacterium can withstand desiccation for only about an hour, but the tuberculosis bacterium can remain viable for months. Viruses are generally resistant to desiccation, but they are not as resistant as bacterial endospores, some of which have survived for centuries. This ability of certain dried microbes and endospores to remain viable is important in a hospital setting. Dust, clothing, bedding, and dressings might contain infectious microbes in dried mucus, urine, pus, and feces.

Osmotic Pressure

The use of high concentrations of salts and sugars to preserve food is based on the effects of *osmotic pressure*. High concentrations of these substances create a hypertonic environment that causes water to leave the microbial cell (see Figure 6.4). This process resembles preservation by desiccation, in that both methods deny the cell the moisture it needs for growth. In the food industry, for example, concentrated salt solutions are used to cure meats, and thick sugar solutions are used to preserve fruits in jellies and jams.

As a general rule, molds and yeasts are much more capable than bacteria of growing in materials with low moisture or high osmotic pressures. This property of molds, sometimes combined with their ability to grow under acidic conditions, is the reason that molds, rather than bacteria, cause spoilage of fruits and grains. It is also part of the reason molds are able to form mildew on a damp wall or a shower curtain.

Radiation

Radiation has various effects on cells, depending on its wavelength, intensity, and duration. Radiation that kills microorganisms (sterilizing radiation) is of two types: ionizing and nonionizing.

Ionizing radiation—gamma rays, X rays, and high-energy electron beams—has a wavelength shorter than that of nonionizing radiation, less than about 1 nm. Therefore, it carries much more energy (**Figure 7.5**). *Gamma rays* are emitted by certain radioactive elements such as cobalt. Electron beams are produced by accelerating electrons to high energies in special machines, and *X rays*, which are produced by machines in a manner similar to the production of electron beams, are similar to gamma rays. Gamma rays penetrate deeply but may require hours to sterilize large masses; *high-energy electron beams* have much lower penetrating power but usually require only a few seconds of exposure. The principal effect of ionizing radiation is the ionization of water, which forms highly reactive hydroxyl radicals (see the discussion of toxic forms of oxygen in Chapter 6). These radicals kill organisms by reacting with organic cellular components, especially DNA, and damaging them.

The so-called target theory of damage by radiation supposes that ionizing particles, or packets of energy, pass through or close to vital portions of the cell; these constitute "hits." One, or a few, hits may only cause nonlethal mutations, some of them conceivably useful. More hits are likely to cause sufficient mutations to kill the microbe.

The food industry is expanding the use of radiation for food preservation (discussed more fully in Chapter 28). Low-level ionizing radiation, used for years in many countries, has been approved in the United States for processing spices and certain meats and vegetables. Ionizing radiation, especially high-energy electron beams, is also used to sterilize pharmaceuticals and disposable dental and medical supplies, such as plastic syringes, surgical gloves, suturing materials, and catheters. As a protection against bioterrorism, the postal service often uses electron beam radiation to sterilize certain classes of mail.

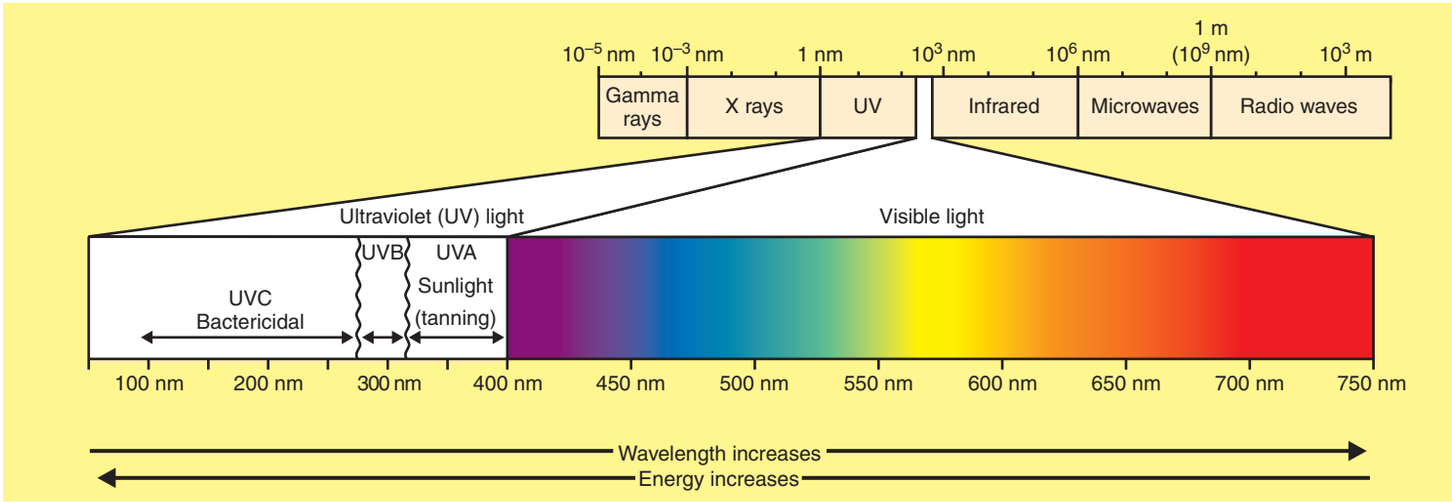


Figure 7.5 The radiant energy spectrum. Visible light and other forms of radiant energy radiate through space as waves of various lengths. Ionizing radiation, such as gamma rays and X rays, has a wavelength shorter than 1 nm. Nonionizing radiation, such as ultraviolet (UV) light, has a wavelength between 1 nm and about 380 nm, where the visible spectrum begins.

Q How might increased UV radiation affect the Earth's ecosystems?

Nonionizing radiation has a wavelength longer than that of ionizing radiation, usually greater than about 1 nm. The best example of nonionizing radiation is ultraviolet (UV) light. UV light damages the DNA of exposed cells by causing bonds to form between adjacent pyrimidine bases, usually thymines, in DNA chains (see Figure 8.21). These *thymine dimers* inhibit correct replication of the DNA during cell reproduction. The UV wavelengths most effective for killing microorganisms are about 260 nm (UVC); these specific wavelengths are absorbed by cellular DNA. UV radiation is also used to control microbes in the air. A UVC, or "germicidal," lamp is commonly used in hospital rooms, nurseries, operating rooms, and cafeterias. The lamps must be pointed up to avoid skin and eye damage or used when a room is unoccupied. UV light is also used to disinfect vaccines and other medical products. UVC light inactivates many viruses, including SARS-CoV-2. A major disadvantage of UV light as a disinfectant is that the radiation is not very penetrating, so the organisms to be killed must be directly exposed to the rays. Organisms protected by solids and such coverings as paper, glass, and textiles are not affected. Another potential problem is that UV light can damage human eyes, and prolonged exposure can cause burns and skin cancer in humans.

Sunlight contains some UV radiation, but the shorter (UVC) wavelengths—those most effective against bacteria—are screened out by the ozone layer of the atmosphere. The antimicrobial effect of sunlight is due almost entirely to the formation of singlet oxygen in the cytoplasm (see Chapter 6). Many pigments produced by bacteria provide protection from sunlight.

Visible blue light (470 nm) kills a wide range of bacteria and fungi and is used to treat acne vulgaris. The use of blue light for surface decontamination in clinical settings is being investigated. The antimicrobial effect of blue light is due to formation of singlet oxygen.

Microwaves do not have much direct effect on microorganisms, and bacteria can readily be isolated from the interior of recently operated microwave ovens. However, moisture-containing foods are heated by microwave action, and the heat will kill most vegetative pathogens. Solid foods heat unevenly because of the uneven distribution of moisture. For this reason, pork cooked in a microwave oven has been responsible for outbreaks of trichinellosis.

Table 7.5 summarizes the physical methods of microbial control.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **7-4** How is microbial growth in canned foods prevented?
- **7-5** Why would a can of pork take longer to sterilize at a given temperature than a can of soup that contained pieces of pork?
- **7-6** What is the connection between the killing effect of radiation and hydroxyl radical forms of oxygen?

Chemical Methods of Microbial Control

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **7-7** List the factors related to effective disinfection.
- **7-8** Interpret the results of use-dilution tests and the disk-diffusion method.
- **7-9** Identify the methods of action and preferred uses of chemical disinfectants.

TABLE 7.5 Physical Methods Used to Control Microbial Growth

Methods	Mechanism of Action	Comment
Heat		
1. Moist heat		
a. Boiling or flowing steam	Protein denaturation	Kills vegetative bacterial and fungal pathogens and many viruses within 10 min; less effective on endospores.
b. Autoclaving	Protein denaturation	Very effective method of sterilization; at about 15 psi of pressure (121°C), all vegetative cells and their endospores are killed in about 15 min.
2. Pasteurization	Protein denaturation	Heat treatment for milk (72°C for about 15 sec) that kills all vegetative pathogens and most spoilage bacteria.
3. Dry heat		
a. Direct flaming	Burning contaminants to ashes	Very effective method of sterilization. Used for inoculating loops.
b. Incineration	Burning to ashes	Very effective method of sterilization. Used for disposal of contaminated dressings, animal carcasses, and paper.
c. Hot-air sterilization	Oxidation	Very effective method of sterilization but requires temperature of 170°C for about 2 hr. Used for empty glassware.
Filtration	Separation of bacteria from suspending liquid	Removes microbes by passage of a liquid or gas through a screenlike material; most filters in use consist of cellulose acetate or nitrocellulose. Useful for sterilizing liquids (e.g., enzymes, vaccines) that are destroyed by heat.
Cold		
1. Refrigeration	Decreased chemical reactions and possible changes in proteins	Has a bacteriostatic effect.
2. Deep-freezing (see Chapter 6)	Decreased chemical reactions and possible changes in proteins	An effective method for preserving microbial cultures, food, and drugs.
3. Lyophilization (see Chapter 6)	Decreased chemical reactions and possible changes in proteins	Most effective method for long-term preservation of microbial cultures, food, and drugs.
High Pressure	Alteration of molecular structure of proteins and carbohydrates	Preserves colors, flavors, and nutrient values of fruit juices.
Desiccation	Disruption of metabolism	Involves removing water from microbes; primarily bacteriostatic.
Osmotic Pressure	Plasmolysis	Results in loss of water from microbial cells.
Radiation		
1. Ionizing	Destruction of DNA	Used for sterilizing pharmaceuticals and medical and dental supplies.
2. Nonionizing	Damage to DNA	Radiation is not very penetrating.

7-10 Differentiate halogens used as antiseptics from halogens used as disinfectants.

7-11 Identify the appropriate uses for surface-active agents.

7-12 List the advantages of glutaraldehyde over other chemical disinfectants.

7-13 Identify gaseous chemosterilants.

Chemical agents are used to control the growth of microbes on both living tissue and inanimate objects. Unfortunately, few chemical agents achieve sterility; most of them merely reduce microbial populations to safe levels or remove vegetative forms of pathogens from objects. A common problem in disinfection is the selection of an agent. No single disinfectant is appropriate for all circumstances.

Principles of Effective Disinfection

By reading the label, we can learn a great deal about a disinfectant's properties. Usually the label indicates what groups of organisms the disinfectant is effective against. Remember that the concentration of a disinfectant affects its action, so it should always be diluted exactly as specified by the manufacturer. Physical conditions can also affect the action of disinfectants. The activity of most disinfectants increases as the temperature increases, for example, but too high a temperature could inactivate the disinfectant.

Also consider the nature of the material being disinfected. For example, are organic materials present that might interfere with the action of the disinfectant? Similarly, the pH of the medium often affects a disinfectant's activity. Chlorine is most effective at

pH 6, which is too acidic for skin and eyes. Chlorine is ineffective at pH > 8. Therefore, the pH of swimming pools is maintained at 7–7.4 for comfort while still allowing disinfection.

Another important consideration is whether the disinfectant will easily make contact with the microbes. An area might need to be scrubbed and rinsed before the disinfectant is applied. In general, disinfection is a gradual process. Thus, to be effective, a disinfectant might need to be left on a surface for several hours.

Evaluating a Disinfectant

Two methods are used to evaluate the effectiveness of disinfectants and antiseptics: the use-dilution test and the disk-diffusion method.

Use-Dilution Tests

The current standard for evaluation is the Association of Official Analytical Chemists' **use-dilution test**. Metal or glass cylinders (8 mm × 10 mm) are dipped into standardized cultures of the test bacteria grown in liquid media, removed, and dried at 37°C for a short time. The dried cultures are then placed into a solution of the disinfectant at the concentration recommended by the manufacturer and left there for 10 minutes at 20°C. Following this exposure, the cylinders are transferred to a medium that permits the growth of any surviving bacteria. The number of cultures that grow indicates the effectiveness of the disinfectant.

Variations of this method are used for testing the effectiveness of antimicrobial agents against endospores, viruses, fungi, and mycobacteria that cause tuberculosis because they are difficult to control with chemicals. Also, tests of antimicrobials intended for special purposes, such as dairy utensil disinfection, can use specific test microorganisms.

The Disk-Diffusion Method

The **disk-diffusion method** is used in teaching laboratories to evaluate the efficacy of a chemical agent. A disk of filter paper is soaked with a chemical and placed on an agar plate that has been previously inoculated and incubated with the test organism. After incubation, if the chemical is effective, a clear zone representing inhibition of growth can be seen around the disk (Figure 7.6).

Disks containing antibiotics are commercially available and used to determine microbial susceptibility to antibiotics (see Figure 20.17).

Types of Disinfectants

Phenol and Phenolics

Lister was the first to use **phenol** (carbolic acid) to control surgical infections in the operating room. Its use had been suggested by

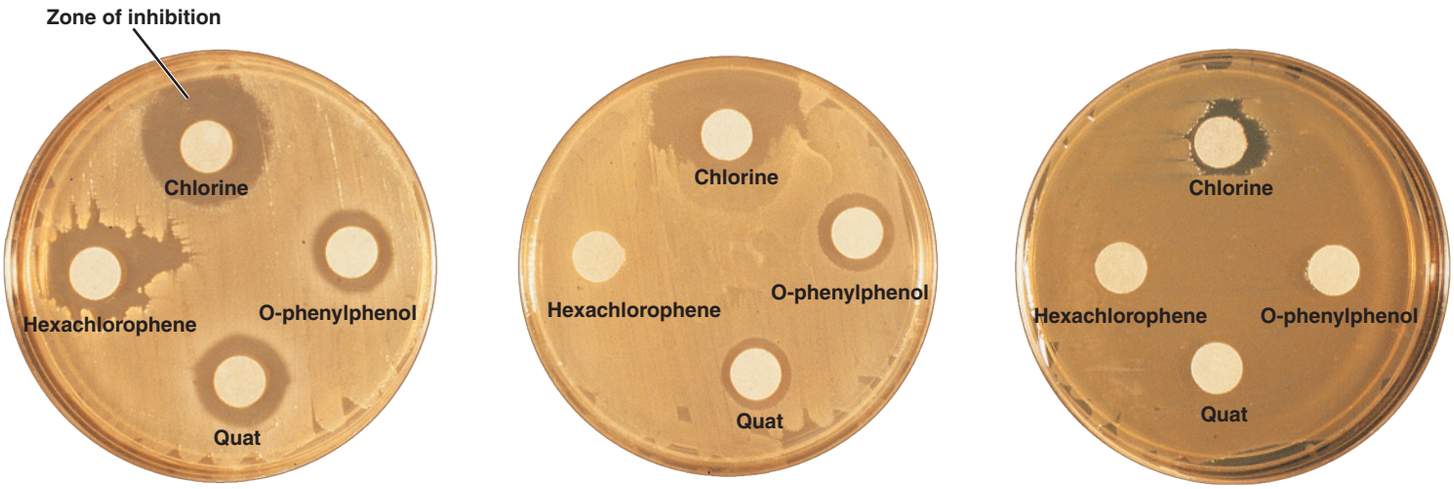


Figure 7.6 Evaluation of disinfectants by the disk-diffusion method. In this experiment, paper disks are soaked in a solution of disinfectant and placed on the surface of a nutrient medium on which a culture of test bacteria has been spread to produce uniform growth.

At the top of each plate, the tests show that chlorine (as sodium hypochlorite) was effective against all the test bacteria but was more effective against gram-positive bacteria.

At the bottom row of each plate, the tests show that the quaternary ammonium compound ("quat") was also more effective against the gram-positive bacteria, but it did not affect the pseudomonads at all.

At the left side of each plate, the tests show that hexachlorophene was effective against gram-positive bacteria only.

At the right sides, O-phenylphenol was ineffective against pseudomonads but was almost equally effective against the gram-positive bacteria and the gram-negative bacteria.

All four chemicals worked against the gram-positive test bacteria, but only one of the four chemicals affected pseudomonads.

Q Why are the pseudomonads less affected by the four chemicals shown in the figure?

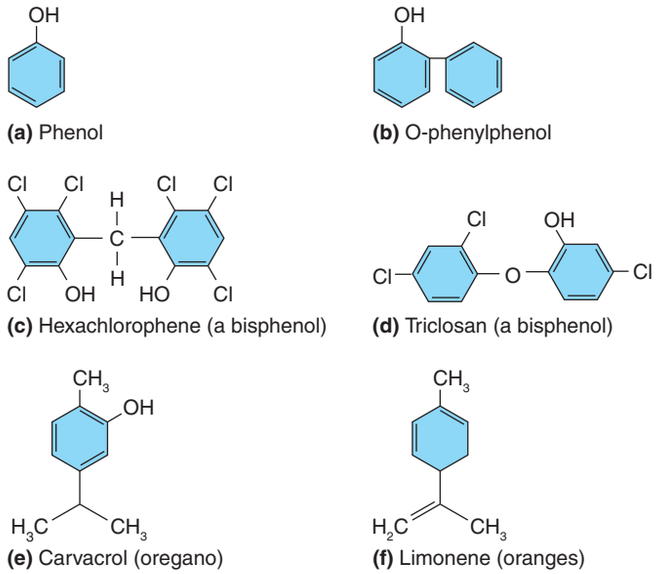


Figure 7.7 The structure of phenol (a), phenolics (b and e), bisphenols (c and d), and terpenes (f). Terpenes lack the hydroxyl group of phenol.

Q **Spice traders became wealthy in the fifteenth century because spices were more valuable than gold. Why were spices so important?**

its effectiveness in controlling odor in sewage. It is now rarely used as an antiseptic or disinfectant because it irritates the skin and has a disagreeable odor. It is often used in throat lozenges for its local anesthetic effect but has little antimicrobial effect at the low concentrations used. At concentrations above 1% (such as in some throat sprays), however, phenol has a significant antibacterial effect. The structure of a phenol molecule is shown in Figure 7.7a.

Derivatives of phenol, called **phenolics**, contain a molecule of phenol that has been chemically altered to reduce its irritating qualities or increase its antibacterial activity in combination with a soap or detergent. Phenolics exert antimicrobial activity by injuring lipid-containing plasma membranes, which results in leakage of cellular contents. The cell wall of mycobacteria, which cause tuberculosis and leprosy, are rich in lipids, which make them susceptible to phenol derivatives. A useful property of phenolics as disinfectants is that they remain active in the presence of organic compounds, are stable, and persist for long periods after application. For these reasons, phenolics are suitable agents for disinfecting pus, saliva, and feces.

One of the most frequently used phenolics is derived from coal tar, a group of chemicals called *cresols*. A very important cresol is *O-phenylphenol* (see Figure 7.6 and Figure 7.7b), the main ingredient in most formulations of Lysol®. Cresols are very good surface disinfectants.

Bisphenols

Bisphenols are derivatives of phenol that contain two phenolic groups connected by a bridge (*bis* indicates *two*). One bisphenol, *hexachlorophene* (Figure 7.6 and Figure 7.7c), is an ingredient of a prescription lotion, pHisoHex®, used for surgical and hospital microbial control procedures. Gram-positive staphylococci and streptococci, which can cause skin infections in newborns, are particularly susceptible to hexachlorophene, so it is often used to control such infections in nurseries.

Triclosan (Figure 7.7d) was a widely used bisphenol in antibacterial soaps, toothpastes, and mouthwashes. Triclosan had even been incorporated into kitchen cutting boards and the handles of knives and other plastic kitchenware. Its use was so widespread that resistant bacteria were reported. This, along with concerns regarding triclosan's effects on the human microbiome, led the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in 2016 to ban its use in over-the counter products. In 2017, the FDA stated it was not generally safe for use in health care settings. The one exception is toothpaste; triclosan has been shown to reduce plaque and gingivitis. Triclosan inhibits an enzyme needed for the biosynthesis of fatty acids (lipids), which mainly affects the integrity of the plasma membrane. It is especially effective against gram-positive bacteria but there is no evidence that triclosan washes are any better than soap and water.

Biguanides

Biguanides have a broad spectrum of activity, with a mode of action primarily affecting bacterial cell membranes. They are especially effective against gram-positive bacteria. Biguanides are also effective against gram-negative bacteria, with the significant exception of most pseudomonads. Biguanides are not sporicidal but have some activity against enveloped viruses. The best-known biguanide is *chlorhexidine*, which is frequently used for microbial control on skin and mucous membranes. Combined with a detergent or alcohol, chlorhexidine is very often used for surgical hand scrubs and preoperative skin preparation in patients. *Alexidine* is a similar biguanide and is more rapid in its action than chlorhexidine. Eventually, alexidine is expected to replace povidone-iodine in many applications (see the halogen discussion later).

Plant extracts

Plant parts such as seeds or bark have been used for centuries as food preservatives. These plant parts are called **spices**. **Essential oils (EOs)** are a mixture of hydrocarbons extracted from plants. You may be familiar with many EOs—peppermint oil, pine oil, and orange oil are examples. EOs were used for centuries in traditional medicine and for preserving food. They are now undergoing renewed interest because they are not toxic in the concentrations used, have pleasant odors, and are biodegradable. Their antimicrobial action is primarily due to phenolics (Figure 7.7e) and terpenes (Figure 7.7f); however, EOs exhibit a wide range of antimicrobial activity corresponding to the types of plants from which they are derived. Generally, EOs have greater activity against gram-positive bacteria than against gram-negative bacteria. Pine oil and tea tree oil have

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

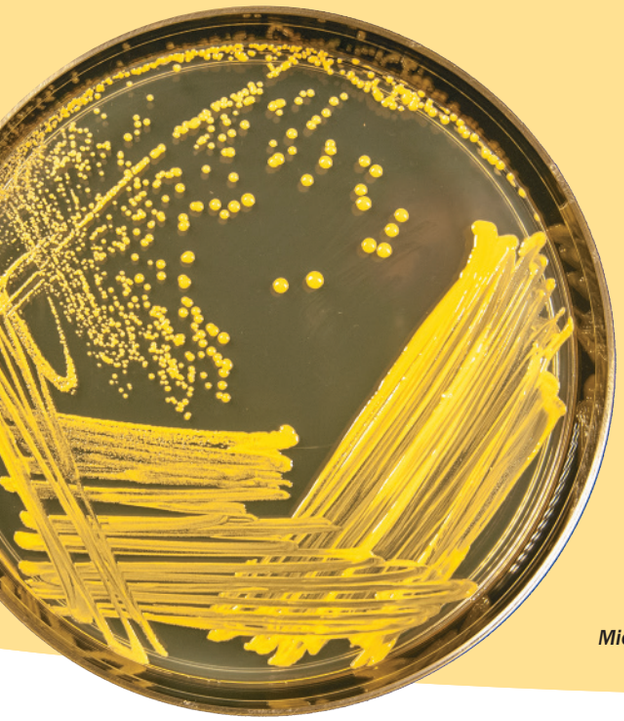
Increased Use of Disinfectants and Sanitizers: Doing More Harm Than Good?

The COVID-19 pandemic led to use of disinfectants and sanitizers in unprecedented amounts to control the spread of COVID-19. This increased use occurred in hospitals, homes, and community settings. Although such products can provide some protection from SARS-CoV-2 infection, using them excessively has negative consequences. In 2020, the first full year of the pandemic, the number of healthcare-associated *Staphylococcus aureus* infections increased 46–47% over the previous year. Moreover, disinfectants can select for growth of antibiotic-resistant bacteria, and indeed the number of community-acquired methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) infections increased.

An additional concern with increased use of disinfectants and sanitizers is their effect on the normal microbiome of the environment in which they're used. In one hospital study, environmental surfaces were cleaned with either a disinfectant or soap and water every 2 weeks. After 8 months, bacteria in the microbiome of each environment were counted using plate counts, then classified by RNA analysis. Each surface was then inoculated with pathogenic *Escherichia coli*, *S. aureus*, or *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and incubated for 24 hours at 37°C. On surfaces cleaned with the disinfectant, the pathogens outcompeted the normal microbiome organisms. In contrast, the microbiome organisms outcompeted the pathogens on surfaces cleaned with plain soap.

A Canadian study showed that frequent home use of disinfectants caused changes in infants' microbiomes, including an increase in Lachnospiraceae in infants' intestines. Bacteria in the Lachnospiraceae are associated with diabetes and obesity.

Micrococcus luteus is a normal member of the human skin microbiome. This bacterium is rarely associated with infection. The yellow pigment produced by *M. luteus* inhibits growth of *S. aureus* in culture media. Recently, *M. luteus* was shown to make an antiviral compound that inhibits SARS-CoV-2. There are still many questions: Will excessive use of disinfectants reduce this bacterium and other microbiome organisms? Does *M. luteus* protect its host from infection? Will commensal bacteria be sources of new antiviral compounds?



Micrococcus luteus.

a broad spectrum of activity, including killing gram-negative bacteria and fungi. Some EOs are used to disinfect hard surfaces such as countertops, and some can be used on skin. Their use against viruses on environmental surfaces is being studied.

Halogens

The **halogens** are a group of five chemically related elements that occupy group 17 of the periodic table. Of these, iodine and chlorine are particularly effective antimicrobial agents, both alone and as constituents of inorganic or organic compounds.

Iodine (I_2) is one of the oldest and most effective antiseptics. It is active against all kinds of bacteria, many endospores, various fungi, and some viruses. Although its method of action isn't known, iodine combines with amino acids and unsaturated fatty acids, thereby altering their structure and ability to function.

Iodine is available as a **tincture**—that is, in solution in aqueous alcohol—and as an iodophor. An **iodophor** is a combination of iodine and an organic molecule, from which the iodine is released slowly. Iodophors have the antimicrobial activity of iodine, but they do not stain and are less irritating. The most common commercial preparation is Betadine®, which is a *povidone-iodine*. Povidone is a surface-active iodophor that improves the wetting action and serves as a reservoir of free iodine. Iodines are used mainly for skin disinfection and wound treatment. Many campers are familiar with using iodine for water treatment; it is even used to disinfect drinking water on the International Space Station.

Chlorine (Cl_2), as a gas or in combination with other chemicals, is another widely used disinfectant. Its germicidal action is caused by the hypochlorous acid (HOCl) and hypochlorite ion that form when chlorine is added to water:

(1)

$$\underset{\text{Chlorine}}{Cl_2} + \underset{\text{Water}}{H_2O} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{Hydrogen ion}}{H^+} + \underset{\text{Chloride ion}}{Cl^-} + \underset{\text{Hypochlorous acid}}{HOCl}$$

(2)

$$\underset{\text{Hypochlorous acid}}{HOCl} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{Hydrogen ion}}{H^+} + \underset{\text{Hypochlorite ion}}{OCl^-}$$

Hypochlorite is a strong oxidizing agent that prevents much of the cellular enzyme system from functioning. Hypochlorous acid is the most effective form of chlorine because it is neutral in electrical charge and diffuses as rapidly as water through the cell wall. Because of its negative charge, the hypochlorite ion (OCl^-) cannot enter the cell freely. See the **Clinical Focus** box.

A liquid form of compressed chlorine gas is used extensively for disinfecting municipal drinking water, water in swimming pools, and sewage. Several compounds of chlorine are also effective disinfectants. For example, solutions of *calcium hypochlorite* [$Ca(OCl)_2$] are used to disinfect dairy equipment and restaurant eating utensils. This compound, once called chloride of lime, was used as early as 1825—long before the concept of a germ theory for disease—to soak hospital dressings in Paris hospitals. It was also the disinfectant Semmelweis used in the 1840s to control hospital infections during childbirth, as mentioned in Chapter 1. Another chlorine compound, *sodium hypochlorite* (NaOCl; see Figure 7.6), is used as a household disinfectant and bleach (Clorox®), and as a disinfectant in dairies, food-processing establishments, and hemodialysis systems. When the quality of drinking water is in question, household bleach can provide a rough equivalent of municipal chlorination: After two drops of bleach are added to a liter of water (four drops if the water is cloudy) and the mixture has sat for 30 minutes, the water is considered safe for drinking under emergency conditions.

Chloramine (NH_2Cl) is a relatively stable compound that releases chlorine over long periods. It is more stable and less irritating than hypochlorite or chlorine gas, and is less likely to react with organic compounds in the water than hypochlorite. Chloramine is used to treat drinking water in several cities in the United States and Europe. (It is toxic to aquarium fish, but pet shops sell chemicals to neutralize it.) U.S. military forces in the field are issued tablets (Chlor-Floc®) that contain a chloramine combined with an agent that flocculates (coagulates) suspended materials in a water sample, causing them to settle out, clarifying the water. Chloramine is also used to sanitize eating utensils and food-manufacturing equipment.

Alcohols

Alcohols effectively kill bacteria and fungi but not endospores and nonenveloped viruses. Alcohol usually denatures protein, but it can also disrupt membranes and dissolve many lipids, including the lipid component of enveloped viruses. One advantage of alcohols is that they act and then evaporate rapidly, leaving no residue. However, when the skin is swabbed (degermed) before an injection, most of the microbial control activity comes from simply wiping away dirt and microorganisms, along with skin oils. Moreover, alcohols are unsatisfactory antiseptics when applied to wounds. They cause coagulation of a layer of protein under which bacteria can continue to grow.

TABLE 7.6 Biocidal Action of Various Concentrations of Ethanol in Aqueous Solution against *Streptococcus pyogenes*

Concentration of Ethanol (%)	Time of Exposure (sec)				
	10	20	30	40	50
100	G	G	G	G	G
95	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG
90	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG
80	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG
70	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG
60	NG	NG	NG	NG	NG
50	G	G	NG	NG	NG
40	G	G	G	G	G

Note:
G = growth
NG = no growth

Two of the most commonly used alcohols are ethanol and isopropanol. The recommended optimum concentration of *ethanol* is 70%, but concentrations between 60% and 95% seem to kill as well (Table 7.6). Pure ethanol is less effective than aqueous solutions (ethanol mixed with water) because denaturation requires water. *Isopropanol*, often sold as rubbing alcohol, is slightly superior to ethanol as an antiseptic and disinfectant. Moreover, it is less volatile, less expensive, and more easily obtained than ethanol.

Alcohol-based (about 62% alcohol) hand sanitizers such as Purell® and Germ-X® are very popular for use on hands that are not visibly soiled; the product should be rubbed over the surfaces of the hands and fingers until they are dry. Claims that products will kill 99.9% of germs should be viewed with caution; such effectiveness is seldom reached under typical user's conditions. Also, certain pathogens, such as the spore-forming *C. difficile* and viruses that lack a lipid envelope, are comparatively resistant to alcohol-based hand sanitizers. (See the earlier **Exploring the Microbiome**.)

Ethanol and isopropanol are often used to enhance the effectiveness of other chemical agents; preparations including them are called **tinctures**. For example, an aqueous solution of Zephiran® (an antiseptic discussed shortly) kills about 40% of the population of a test organism in 2 minutes, whereas a tincture of Zephiran® kills about 85% in the same period. To compare the effectiveness of tinctures and aqueous solutions, see Figure 7.10.

Heavy Metals and Their Compounds

Several heavy metals, including silver, mercury, and copper, can be biocidal or antiseptic. The ability of very small amounts of heavy metals, especially silver and copper, to exert antimicrobial

Figure 7.8 Oligodynamic action of heavy metals. Clear zones where bacterial growth has been inhibited are seen around the sombrero charm (pushed aside), the dime, and the penny. The charm and the dime contain silver; the penny contains copper.

Q The coins used in this demonstration were minted many years ago; why were more contemporary coins not used?

activity is referred to as **oligodynamic action** (*oligo* means few). Centuries ago, Egyptians found that using copper water jugs or putting silver coins in water barrels served to keep the water clean of unwanted organic growths. This action can be demonstrated by placing a coin or other clean piece of metal containing silver or copper on a culture on an inoculated Petri plate. Extremely small amounts of metal diffuse from the coin and inhibit the growth of bacteria for some distance around the coin (Figure 7.8). This effect is produced by the action of heavy-metal ions on microbes. Although the exact method of action of metal ions isn't known, some data show that the ions alter membrane permeability and protein structure.

Silver is used as an antiseptic in a 1% *silver nitrate* solution. At one time, many states required that the eyes of newborns be treated with a few drops of silver nitrate to guard against an infection of the eyes called ophthalmia neonatorum, which the infants might have contracted as they passed through the birth canal. In the United States, antibiotics have replaced silver nitrate for this purpose although silver nitrate is still used in many parts of the world.

Silver-impregnated dressings that slowly release silver ions have proven especially useful against the antibiotic-resistant bacteria that commonly colonize wounds. A combination of silver and the drug sulfadiazine, *silver-sulfadiazine*, is the most common formulation of a topical cream for use on burns. Silver is also used to prevent the growth of biofilms on indwelling devices such as catheters, which are a common source of hospital infections.

Surfacine® is a relatively new antimicrobial for application to surfaces, either animate or inanimate. It contains water-insoluble silver iodide in a polymer carrier and is very persistent, lasting at least 13 days. When a bacterium contacts the surface, the cell's outer membrane is recognized, and a lethal amount of silver ions is released.

The enthusiasm for incorporating silver in all manner of consumer products is increasing. Among the newer products being sold are plastic food containers infused with silver nanoparticles, which are intended to keep food fresher, and silver-infused athletic shirts and socks, which are claimed to minimize odors.

Inorganic mercury compounds, such as *mercuric chloride*, have a long history of use as disinfectants. They have a very broad spectrum of activity; their effect is primarily bacteriostatic. However, their use is now limited because of their toxicity and ineffectiveness in organic matter.

Although there is increased interest in using copper to prevent transmission of pathogens on surfaces in the clinical environment, copper's antimicrobial properties are more commonly applied in industry. Copper in the form of *copper sulfate* or other copper-containing additives is used chiefly to destroy green algae (algicide) that grow in reservoirs, stock ponds, swimming pools, and fish tanks. If the water does not contain excessive organic matter, copper compounds are effective in concentrations of one part per million of water. To prevent mildew, copper compounds such as *copper 8-hydroxyquinoline* are sometimes included in paint. Mixtures based on copper ions (known as Bordeaux mixture) have long been used to control fungal diseases of plants.

Silver and copper ions are used to disinfect drinking water and swimming pools and to control *Legionella* in hospital water supplies. Silver and copper electrodes release Ag^{+} and Cu^{2+} ions when an electric current is applied.

Another metal used as an antimicrobial is zinc. The effect of trace amounts of zinc can be seen on weathered roofs of buildings downslope from galvanized (zinc-coated) fittings. The color of the roof is lighter where biological growth, mostly algae, is impeded. Copper- and zinc-treated roofing shingles are available. *Zinc chloride* is a common ingredient in mouthwashes, and *zinc pyrithione* is an ingredient in antidandruff shampoos.

Surface-Active Agents

Surface-active agents, or **surfactants**, can decrease surface tension among molecules of a liquid. Such agents include soaps and detergents.

Soaps and Detergents Soap has little value as an antiseptic, but it does have an important function in the mechanical removal of microbes through scrubbing. The skin normally contains dead cells, dust, dried sweat, microbes, and oily secretions from oil glands. Soap breaks the oily film into tiny droplets, a process called *emulsification*, and the water and soap

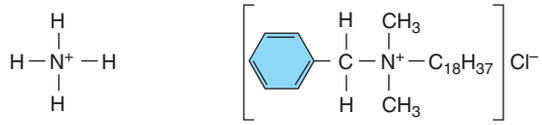


Figure 7.9 The ammonium ion and a quaternary ammonium compound, benzalkonium chloride (Zephiran®). Notice how other groups replace the hydrogens of the ammonium ion.

Q Are quats more effective against gram-positive or gram-negative bacteria?

together lift up the emulsified oil and debris and float them away as the lather is washed off. In this sense, soaps are good degerming agents. Washing hands with soap and water is an effective sanitation method. Use soap and *warm* water (if possible), and rub hands together for 20 seconds (imagine singing "Happy Birthday" twice through). Then rinse, dry with a paper towel or air dryer, and try to use a paper towel to turn off the faucet.

Acid-Anionic Sanitizers *Acid-anionic* sanitizers are very important in cleaning food-processing facilities, especially dairy utensils and equipment. They are usually combinations of phosphoric acid with a surface-active agent. Their sanitizing ability is related to the negatively charged portion (anion) of the molecule, which reacts with the plasma membrane. These sanitizers, which act on a wide spectrum of microbes, including troublesome thermoduric bacteria, are odorless, nontoxic, noncorrosive, and fast acting.

Quaternary Ammonium Compounds (Quats) The most widely used surface-active agents are the cationic detergents, especially the **quaternary ammonium compounds (quats)**. Their bactericidal action is largely due to disruption of the cell membrane. Their name is derived from the fact that they are modifications of the four-valence ammonium ion, NH_4^+ (Figure 7.9). Quaternary ammonium compounds are strongly bactericidal against gram-positive bacteria and less active against gram-negative bacteria (see Figure 7.6).

Quats are also fungicidal, amebicidal, and virucidal against enveloped viruses. They do not kill endospores or mycobacteria. Their chemical mode of action is unknown, but they probably affect the plasma membrane. They change the cell's permeability and cause the loss of essential cytoplasmic constituents, such as potassium.

Two popular quats are Zephiran®, a brand name of *benzalkonium chloride* (see Figure 7.9), and Cēpacol®, a brand name of *cetylpyridinium chloride*. They are strongly antimicrobial, colorless, odorless, tasteless, stable, easily diluted, and nontoxic, except at high concentrations. If your mouthwash bottle fills with foam when shaken, the mouthwash probably contains a quat. However, organic matter interferes with their activity, and quats are rapidly neutralized by soaps and anionic detergents.

Anyone involved in medical applications of quats should remember that certain bacteria, such as some species of *Pseudomonas*, not only survive in quaternary ammonium compounds but also actively grow by using the compounds for carbon and energy. These microbes are resistant not only to the disinfectant solution but also to gauze and bandages moistened with it because the fibers tend to neutralize the quats.

Before we move on to the next group of chemical agents, refer to Figure 7.10, which compares the effectiveness of some of the antiseptics we have discussed so far.

Chemical Food Preservatives

Chemical preservatives are frequently added to foods to retard spoilage. *Sulfur dioxide* (SO_2) has long been used as a disinfectant, especially in winemaking. Homer's *Odyssey*, written nearly 2800 years ago, mentions its use. Among the more common additives are sodium benzoate, potassium sorbate, and calcium propionate. These chemicals are salts of organic acids, which the body readily metabolizes and which

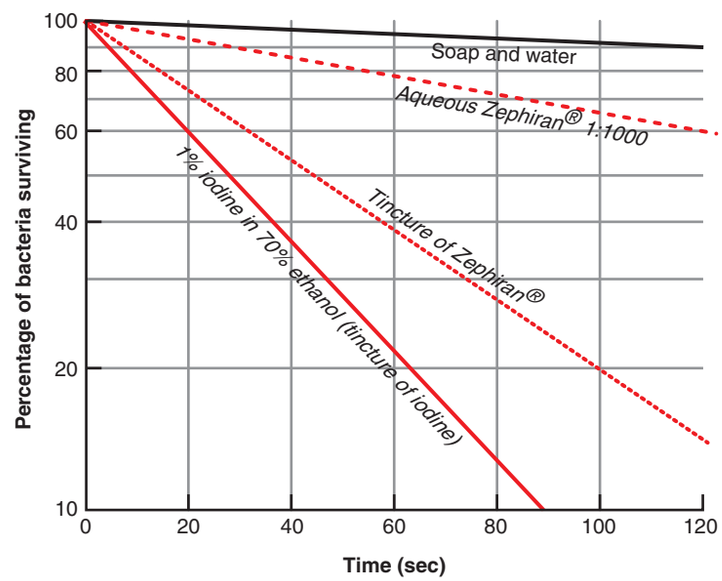


Figure 7.10 A comparison of the effectiveness of various antiseptics. The steeper the downward slope of the killing curve, the more effective the antiseptic. A 1% iodine in 70% ethanol solution is the most effective; soap and water are the least effective. Notice that a tincture of Zephiran® is more effective than an aqueous solution of the same antiseptic.

Q Why is the tincture of Zephiran® more effective than the aqueous solution?

are generally judged to be safe in foods. *Sorbate* and *benzoate* prevent molds from growing in certain acidic foods, such as cheese and soft drinks. Such foods, usually with a pH of 5.5 or lower, are most susceptible to spoilage by molds. *Propionate*, an effective fungistat used in bread, prevents the growth of surface molds and the *Bacillus* bacteria that produce the mucuslike secretion that causes ropy bread. These organic acids inhibit mold growth, not by affecting the pH but by interfering with the mold's metabolism or the integrity of the plasma membrane.

Sodium nitrate and *sodium nitrite* are added to many meat products, such as ham, bacon, hot dogs, and sausage. The active ingredient is sodium nitrite, which certain bacteria in the meats can also produce from sodium nitrate by anaerobic respiration. The nitrite has two main functions: to preserve the pleasing red color of the meat by reacting with blood components in the meat, and to prevent the germination and growth of any botulism endospores that might be present. Nitrite selectively inhibits certain iron-containing enzymes of *C. botulinum*. There has been some concern that the reaction of nitrites with amino acids can form certain carcinogenic products known as **nitrosamines**, and the amount of nitrites added to foods has generally been reduced in recent years for this reason. However, the use of nitrites continues because of their established value in preventing botulism. Because nitrosamines are formed in the body from other sources, the added risk posed by a limited use of nitrates and nitrites in meats is lower than was once thought.

Antibiotics

The antimicrobials discussed in this chapter are not useful for ingestion or injection to treat disease. Two antibiotics have considerable use in food preservation, but neither is of value for clinical purposes: *Nisin* is often added to cheese to inhibit the growth of certain endospore-forming spoilage bacteria. It is an example of a bacteriocin, a protein that is produced by one bacterium and inhibits another (see Chapter 8). Nisin is present naturally in small amounts in many dairy products. It is tasteless, readily digested, and nontoxic. *Natamycin* (pimaricin) is an antifungal agent made by *Streptomyces natalensis*. It is approved for use in foods, mostly cheese.

Aldehydes

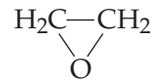
Aldehydes are among the most effective antimicrobials. Two examples are formaldehyde and glutaraldehyde. They inactivate proteins by forming covalent cross-links with several organic functional groups on proteins (—NH_2 —OH, —COOH, and —SH). *Formaldehyde gas* polymerizes into insoluble paraformaldehyde; therefore, it is stored in water. A 37% aqueous solution of formaldehyde gas is available as *formalin*. Formalin was once used extensively to preserve biological specimens; however, exposure to formalin has been associated with increased cancer risk.

Glutaraldehyde is a chemical relative of formaldehyde that is less irritating, does not cause cancer in laboratory studies, and is more effective than formaldehyde. Glutaraldehyde is used to disinfect hospital instruments, including endoscopes and respiratory therapy equipment, but only after they have been carefully cleaned. When used in a 2% solution (Cidex®), glutaraldehyde is bactericidal, tuberculocidal, and virucidal in 10 minutes and sporicidal in 3 to 10 hours. Glutaraldehyde is one of the few liquid chemical disinfectants that can be considered a sterilizing agent. For practical purposes, 30 minutes is often considered the maximum time allowed for a sporicide to act, which is a criterion glutaraldehyde cannot meet. Both glutaraldehyde and formalin are used by morticians for embalming.

A possible replacement for glutaraldehyde for many uses is *ortho-phthalaldehyde* (OPA), which is more effective against many microbes and has fewer irritating properties.

Gaseous Chemosterilants

Sterilization with liquid chemicals is possible, but even sporicidal chemicals such as glutaraldehyde are usually not considered to be practical sterilants. However, the gaseous chemosterilants are frequently used as substitutes for physical sterilization processes. Their application requires a closed chamber similar to a steam autoclave. Probably the most familiar example is *ethylene oxide*:



CLINICAL CASE

Norovirus, a nonenveloped virus, is one cause of acute gastroenteritis. It can be spread by consuming fecally contaminated food or water, coming in direct contact with an infected person, or touching a contaminated surface. Amy is able to rule out foodborne transmission immediately because the small private school does not have a school lunch program; all students and staff bring their lunches from home. After meeting with the principal, Amy speaks to the custodial staff and directs them to use a quat to clean the school. She asks them to pay special attention to areas with high potential for fecal contamination, especially toilet seats, flush handles, toilet stall inner door handles, and restroom door inner handles. Amy is sure she has avoided a major outbreak, but by Friday, 42 students and six more staff members call in to report similar symptoms.

Why didn't the quat work to kill the virus?

Its activity depends on *alkylation*, that is, replacing the proteins' labile hydrogen atoms in a chemical group (such as —SH, —COOH, or —CH_2CH_2OH) with a chemical radical. This leads to cross-linking of nucleic acids and proteins and inhibits vital cellular functions. Ethylene oxide kills all microbes and endospores but requires a lengthy exposure period of several hours. It is toxic and explosive in its pure form, so it is usually mixed with a nonflammable gas, such as carbon dioxide. Among its advantages is that it carries out sterilization at ambient temperatures and is highly penetrating. Larger hospitals often are able to sterilize even mattresses in special ethylene oxide sterilizers.

Chlorine dioxide is a short-lived gas that is usually manufactured at the place of use. Notably, it has been used to fumigate enclosed building areas contaminated with endospores of anthrax. It is much more stable in aqueous solution. Its most common use is in water treatment prior to chlorination, where its purpose is to remove, or reduce the formation of, certain carcinogenic compounds sometimes formed in the chlorination of water.

The food-processing industry makes wide use of chlorine dioxide solution as a surface disinfectant because it does not leave residual tastes or odors. As a disinfectant, it has a broad spectrum of activity against bacteria and viruses and at high concentrations is even effective against cysts and endospores. At low concentrations, chlorine dioxide can be used as an antiseptic.

Plasmas

In addition to the traditional three states of matter—liquid, gas, and solid—a fourth state of matter exists, called plasma. **Plasma** is a state of matter in which a gas is excited, in this case by an electromagnetic field, to make a mixture of nuclei with assorted electrical charges and free electrons. Health care facilities are increasingly facing the challenge of sterilizing metal or plastic surgical instruments used for many newer procedures in arthroscopic or laparoscopic surgery. Such devices have long, hollow tubes, many with an interior diameter of only a few millimeters, and are difficult to sterilize. *Plasma sterilization* is a reliable method for this. The instruments are placed in a container in which a combination of a vacuum, electromagnetic field, and chemicals such as hydrogen peroxide (sometimes with peracetic acid, discussed later) form the plasma. Such plasmas have many free radicals that quickly destroy even endospore-forming microbes. The advantage of plasma sterilization, which has elements of both physical and chemical sterilization, is that it requires only low temperatures; however, it is relatively expensive.

Supercritical Fluids

The use of supercritical fluids in sterilization combines chemical and physical methods. When carbon dioxide is compressed into a "supercritical" state, it has properties of both a liquid (with increased solubility) and a gas (with a lowered surface tension). Organisms exposed to *supercritical carbon dioxide* are inactivated, including most vegetative organisms that cause spoilage and foodborne illness. Even endospore inactivation requires a temperature of only about 45°C. Used for a number of years in treating certain foods, supercritical carbon dioxide has more recently been used to decontaminate medical implants, such as bone, tendons, or ligaments taken from donor patients.

Peroxygens and Other Forms of Oxygen

Peroxygens are a group of oxidizing agents that includes hydrogen peroxide and peracetic acid.

Hydrogen peroxide is an antiseptic found in many household medicine cabinets and in hospital supply rooms. It is not a good antiseptic for open wounds. It can damage human cells before catalase, which is present in human cells, breaks it down to water and gaseous oxygen (see Chapter 6). However, hydrogen peroxide does effectively disinfect inanimate objects; in such applications, it is even sporicidal at high concentrations. On a nonliving surface, the normally protective enzymes of aerobic bacteria and facultative anaerobes are overwhelmed by high concentrations of peroxide. *Improved hydrogen peroxide* products contain an added surfactant. This provides cleaning and increases the antimicrobial activity of hydrogen peroxide.

Because of its antiseptic properties and its rapid degradation into harmless water and oxygen, hydrogen peroxide is increasingly used in the food industry for aseptic packaging (see Chapter 28). The packaging material passes through a hot solution of the chemical before being assembled into a container. In addition, many wearers of contact lenses are familiar with hydrogen peroxide's use as a disinfectant. After the lens is disinfected, a platinum catalyst in the lens-disinfecting kit destroys residual hydrogen peroxide so that it does not persist on the lens, where it might cause eye irritation. Hydrogen peroxide is also used to sterilize components of spacecraft before flight to prevent contamination of landing sites.

Heated, gaseous hydrogen peroxide can be used as a sterilant of atmosphere and surfaces. Hospital rooms, for example, can be decontaminated quickly and routinely with vaporizing equipment available under the brand name Bioquell. The room is sealed with the vapor-generating apparatus inside and the controls on the outside. Once the sealed room has undergone a decontamination cycle, the hydrogen peroxide vapor is catalytically converted into water vapor and oxygen.

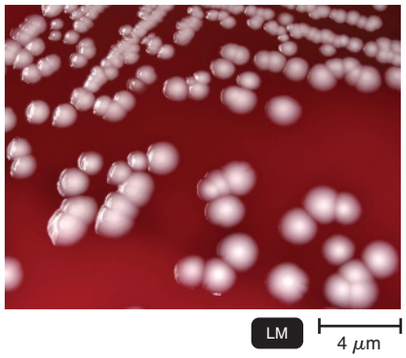
Peracetic acid (*peroxyacetic acid*, or *PAA*) is one of the most effective liquid chemical sporicides available and can be used as a sterilant. Its mode of action is similar to that of hydrogen peroxide. It is generally effective on endospores and viruses within 30 minutes and kills vegetative bacteria and fungi in less than 5 minutes. PAA has many applications in the disinfection of food-processing and medical equipment, especially endoscopes, because it leaves no toxic residues (only water and small amounts of acetic acid) and is minimally affected by the presence of organic matter. The FDA has also approved use of PAA for the washing of fruits and vegetables.

CLINICAL FOCUS Infection Following Improper Disinfection

As you read through this box, you will encounter a series of questions that infection control officers ask themselves as they track the source of infection. Try to answer each question before going on to the next one.

1. Dr. Priya Agarwal, an infectious disease physician in a large hospital, called the department of health to report 55 patients currently infected with hospital-acquired antibiotic-resistant *Acinetobacter baumenii*. *Acinetobacter* bacteria rarely cause infections outside the health care environment. The bacteria can cause infections in the blood, urinary tract, lungs (pneumonia), and wounds. They can also colonize in a patient without causing symptoms.

   Where are *Acinetobacter* normally found? (Hint: See Chapter 11.)



Acinetobacter growing on sheep blood agar.

2. *Acinetobacter* are usually found in soil and water. In Dr. Agarwal's report, she noted that all 55 patients were in the same intensive care unit, and 50% had confirmed COVID-19. The patients were positive for *Acinetobacter* on day 3 of their hospitalization, and none had prior *Acinetobacter* infection. Seventy-four percent had a tube inserted into their trachea to assist their breathing. *Acinetobacter*-positive patients had ventilator-associated pneumonia (29%), or infections of the bloodstream (21%) or bone (9%). *Acinetobacter* colonized the remaining 41% without causing symptoms. Healthcare-associated infections often occur when the patient breathes saliva into the lungs.

   What did Dr. Agarwal need to do to determine the source of the infection?

3. Dr. Agarwal ordered cultures from the inside surface of ventilator tubing and all surfaces in the ICU. She also requested information on environmental cleaning and staff asepsis procedures. A chlorhexidine soap was at the sinks, and alcohol-based hand sanitizer was available at each bed. Environmental cleaning was performed daily with a 2000 ppm hypochlorite solution prepared each week.

   What type of disinfectant is hypochlorite?

4. Hypochlorite (bleach) is an oxidizing agent and 1000 ppm kills *Acinetobacter*. Dr. Agarwal discovered that the chlorine cleaning solution had been stored uncovered for 1 week. She knew that the active chlorine (Cl^-) evaporates at a rate of 0.75 g per day.

   What did Dr. Agarwal's calculations reveal? What should Dr. Agarwal tell the hospital staff about preventing future infections?

5. **Dr. Agarwal calculated that the active chlorine evaporated from the open container in 3 days.** Dr. Agarwal posted hand-hygiene and universal precaution reminders for clinical staff. A cleaning protocol was established that included daily cleaning with use of a new disposable cloth for each patient area. A new 2000 ppm hypochlorite solution was made every 24 hours and stored in a closed container to prevent evaporation. This decreased the infection rate from 55 to 2 per 1000 hospital admissions.

Source: Adapted from *MMWR* 69(48): 1827–1831, December 4, 2020.

CLINICAL CASE

Quats are virucidal against enveloped viruses. By Monday, a total of 103 out of 266 staff and students call in sick with vomiting and diarrhea. With almost half the school either out sick or returning to school after being sick, Amy decides to call the Maryland State Health Department. After going over her records with a health department statistician, she finds out that the most significant risk factors for infection are contact with an ill person or being in the first grade. All but five first-graders have reported sick with diarrheal illness. Because the school is so small, the first-grade classroom also houses the computer lab for the school. Both students and staff share these computers. The health department sends someone to swab the first-grade classroom, and norovirus is cultured from a computer mouse.

How did the virus get from a computer mouse in the first-grade classroom to all the other grades and staff?

Other oxidizing agents include *benzoyl peroxide,* which is probably most familiar as the main ingredient in over-the-counter medications for acne. *Ozone* (O_3) is a highly reactive form of oxygen that is generated by passing oxygen through high-voltage electrical discharges. It is responsible for the air's fresh odor after a lightning storm, in the vicinity of electrical sparking, or around an ultraviolet light. Ozone is often used to supplement chlorine in the disinfection of water because it helps neutralize tastes and odors. Although ozone is a more effective killing agent than chlorine, its residual activity is difficult to maintain in water because the ozone breaks down.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **7-7** If you wanted to disinfect a surface contaminated by vomit and a surface contaminated by a sneeze, why would your choice of disinfectant make a difference?
- **7-8** Which is more likely to be used in a medical clinic laboratory, a use-dilution test or a disk-diffusion test?

- **7-9** Why is alcohol effective against some viruses and not others?
- **7-10** Is Betadine® an antiseptic or a disinfectant when it is used on skin?
- **7-11** What characteristics make surface-active agents attractive to the dairy industry?
- **7-12** What chemical disinfectants can be considered sporicides?
- **7-13** What gaseous chemicals are used to sterilize?

Microbial Characteristics and Microbial Control

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

7-14 Explain how the type of microbe affects the control of microbial growth.

Many biocides tend to be more effective against gram-positive bacteria, as a group, than against gram-negative bacteria. A principal factor in this relative resistance to biocides is the external lipopolysaccharide layer of gram-negative bacteria. Within gram-negative bacteria, members of the genera *Pseudomonas* and *Burkholderia* are of special interest. These closely related bacteria are unusually resistant to biocides (see Figure 7.6) and will even grow actively in some disinfectants and antiseptics, most notably the quaternary ammonium compounds. These bacteria are also resistant to many antibiotics (see Chapter 20). This resistance to chemical antimicrobials is related mostly to the characteristics of their *porins* (structural openings in the wall of gram-negative bacteria; see Figure 4.13c). Porins are highly selective of molecules that they permit to enter the cell.

The mycobacteria are another group of non–endospore-forming bacteria that exhibit greater-than-normal resistance to chemical biocides. This group includes *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, the pathogen that causes tuberculosis. The cell wall of this organism and other members of this genus have a waxy, lipid-rich component. Instruction labels on disinfectants often state whether they are tuberculocidal—that is, effective against mycobacteria. Special tuberculocidal tests have been developed to evaluate the effectiveness of biocides against this bacterial group.

Bacterial endospores are affected by relatively few biocides. (The activity of the major chemical antimicrobial groups against mycobacteria and endospores is summarized in Table 7.7.) The cysts and oocysts of protozoa are also relatively resistant to chemical disinfection.

The resistance of viruses to biocides largely depends on the presence or absence of an envelope. Antimicrobials that are lipid-soluble are more likely to be effective against enveloped viruses. The label of such an agent will indicate that it is effective against lipophilic viruses. Nonenveloped viruses, which have only a protein coat, are more resistant—fewer biocides are active against them.

TABLE 7.7 Effectiveness of Chemical Antimicrobials against Endospores and Mycobacteria

Chemical Agent	Effect against Endospores	Effect against Mycobacteria
Glutaraldehyde	Fair	Good
Chlorines	Fair	Fair
Alcohols	Poor	Good
Iodine	Poor	Good
Phenolics	Poor	Good
Chlorhexidine	None	Fair
Bisphenols	None	None
Quats	None	None
Silver	None	None

A special problem, not yet completely solved, is the reliable killing of prions. Prions are infectious proteins that are the cause of neurological diseases known as transmissible spongiform encephalopathies, such as the popularly named mad cow disease (see Chapter 22). To destroy prions, infected animal carcasses are incinerated. A major problem is the disinfection of surgical instruments exposed to prion contamination. Normal autoclaving has proven to be inadequate. The World Health Organization (WHO) and the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) have recommended the combined use of a solution of sodium hydroxide and autoclaving at 121°C for 1 hour or 134°C for 18 minutes. Disposable instruments should be incinerated.

In summary, it is important to remember that microbial control methods, especially biocides, are not uniformly effective against all microbes.

Table 7.8 summarizes chemical agents used to control microbial growth.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **7-14** The presence or absence of endospores has an obvious effect on microbial control, but why are gram-negative bacteria more resistant to chemical biocides than gram-positive bacteria?

As noted earlier, the compounds discussed in this chapter are not generally useful in the treatment of diseases. Antibiotics and the pathogens against which they are active will be discussed in Chapter 20.

TABLE 7.8 Chemical Agents Used to Control Microbial Growth

Chemical Agent	Mechanism of Action	Preferred Use
Phenol	Disruption of plasma membrane, denaturation of enzymes.	Seldom used as a disinfectant or antiseptic because of its irritating qualities and disagreeable odor. Used as a standard of comparison.
Phenolics	Disruption of plasma membrane, denaturation of enzymes.	Environmental surfaces, instruments, skin surfaces, and mucous membranes.
Bisphenols	Probably, disruption of plasma membrane.	Disinfectant hand soaps and skin lotions.
Biguanides (Chlorhexidine)	Disruption of plasma membrane.	Skin disinfection, especially for surgical hand scrubbing. Bactericidal.
Terpenes (plant essential oils)	Disruption of plasma membrane.	Used in foods and disinfecting hard surfaces.
Halogens	Iodine inhibits protein function and is a strong oxidizing agent; chlorine forms the strong oxidizing agent hypochlorous acid, which alters cellular components.	Iodine is an effective antiseptic available as a tincture and an iodophor; chlorine gas is used to disinfect water; chlorine compounds are used to disinfect dairy equipment, eating utensils, household items, and glassware.
Alcohols	Protein denaturation and lipid dissolution.	Bactericidal and fungicidal, but not effective against endospores or nonenveloped viruses. When the skin is swabbed with alcohol before an injection, most of the disinfecting action probably comes from a simple wiping away (degerming) of dirt and some microbes.
Heavy Metals and Their Compounds	Denaturation of enzymes and other essential proteins.	Silver nitrate may be used to prevent ophthalmia neonatorum; silver-sulfadiazine is used as a topical cream on burns; copper sulfate is an algicide.
Soaps and Detergents	Mechanical removal of microbes through scrubbing.	Skin degerming and removal of debris.
Acid-Anionic Sanitizers	Disrupt plasma membrane.	Sanitizers in dairy and food-processing industries.
Quaternary Ammonium Compounds (Cationic Detergents)	Enzyme inhibition, protein denaturation, and disruption of plasma membranes.	Antiseptic for skin. Bactericidal, bacteriostatic, fungicidal, and virucidal against enveloped viruses. Used on instruments, utensils, rubber goods.
Organic Acids	Metabolic inhibition, mostly affecting molds; action not related to their acidity.	Control mold and bacterial growth in foods. Sorbate and benzoate effective at low pH; propionate used in bread.
Nitrates/Nitrites	Active ingredient is nitrite, which is produced by bacterial action on nitrate. Nitrite inhibits certain iron-containing enzymes of anaerobes.	Meat products such as ham, bacon, hot dogs, sausage. Prevents growth of *C. botulinum* in food; also imparts a red color.
Aldehydes	Protein denaturation.	Glutaraldehyde (Cidex®) is less irritating than formaldehyde and is used for disinfecting medical equipment.
Ethylene Oxide and Other Gaseous Sterilants	Inhibits vital cellular functions.	Mainly for sterilization of materials that would be damaged by heat.
Plasma Sterilization	Inhibits vital cellular functions.	Especially useful for tubular medical instruments.
Supercritical Fluids	Inhibits vital cellular functions.	Especially useful for sterilizing organic medical implants.
Peroxygens and Other Forms of Oxygen	Oxidation.	Contaminated water and surfaces.

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

Norovirus is an extremely contagious virus and can spread quickly from person to person. It is also nonenveloped, so it cannot be easily destroyed by a biocide. Amy asks the principal if, once the school is back to full capacity, she can hold an assembly to discuss the importance of handwashing with the students and staff. Proper washing with soap and water can eliminate the transmission of norovirus to other people or surfaces. Amy also meets again with the custodial staff to discuss the health department's recommendations. According to the health department, when cleaning environmental surfaces that are visibly soiled with feces or vomitus, the staff should wear masks and gloves, use a disposable towel that has been soaked in dilute detergent to wipe the surface for at least 10 seconds, and then apply a 1:10 household bleach solution for at least 1 minute. Computer keyboards and other electronics that can't be wetted should be cleaned with an alcohol or chlorine wipe. Although Amy knows this won't be the last time her school is affected by a virus, she is certain she has taken a positive step toward protecting her students and staff from this particular virus.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4

Study Outline

The Terminology of Microbial Control (pp. 180–181)

1. The control of microbial growth can prevent infections and food spoilage.
2. Sterilization is the process of removing or destroying all microbial life on an object.
3. Commercial sterilization is heat treatment of canned foods to destroy *C. botulinum* endospores.
4. Disinfection is the process of reducing or inhibiting microbial growth on a nonliving surface.
5. Antisepsis is the process of reducing or inhibiting microorganisms on living tissue.
6. Sanitization lowers microbial counts to safe public health levels.
7. The suffix *-cide* means to kill; the suffix *-stat* means to inhibit.
8. Sepsis is bacterial contamination.

The Rate of Microbial Death (pp. 181–182)

1. Bacterial populations subjected to heat or antimicrobial chemicals usually die at a constant rate.
2. Such a death curve, when plotted logarithmically, shows this constant death rate as a straight line.
3. The time it takes to kill a microbial population is proportional to the number of microbes.
4. Microbial species and life-cycle phases (e.g., endospores) have different susceptibilities to physical and chemical controls.
5. Organic matter may interfere with heat treatments and chemical control agents.
6. Longer exposure to lower heat can produce the same effect as shorter time at higher heat.

Actions of Microbial Control Agents (pp. 181–182)

1. The susceptibility of the plasma membrane is due to its lipid and protein components.
2. Certain chemical control agents damage the plasma membrane by altering its permeability.
3. Some microbial control agents damage cellular proteins by breaking hydrogen bonds and covalent bonds.
4. Other agents interfere with DNA and RNA and protein synthesis.

Physical Methods of Microbial Control (pp. 183–189)

Heat (pp. 183–186)

1. Heat is frequently used to kill microorganisms.
2. Moist heat kills microbes by denaturing enzymes.
3. Thermal death point (TDP) is the lowest temperature at which all the microbes in a liquid culture will be killed in 10 minutes.
4. Thermal death time (TDT) is the length of time required to kill all bacteria in a liquid culture at a given temperature.
5. Decimal reduction time (DRT) is the length of time in which 90% of a bacterial population will be killed at a given temperature.
6. Boiling (100°C) kills many vegetative cells and viruses within 10 minutes.
7. Autoclaving (steam under pressure) is the most effective method of moist heat sterilization. The steam must directly contact the material to be sterilized.
8. In HTST pasteurization, a high temperature is used for a short time (72°C for 15 seconds) to destroy pathogens without altering the flavor of the food. Ultra-high-temperature (UHT) sterilization (140°C for 4 seconds) is used to sterilize dairy products and juice.
9. Methods of dry heat sterilization include direct flaming, incineration, and hot-air sterilization. Dry heat kills by oxidation.
10. Different methods that produce the same effect (reduction in microbial growth) are called equivalent treatments.

Filtration (p. 186)

11. Filtration is the passage of a liquid or gas through a filter with pores small enough to retain microbes.
12. Microbes can be removed from air by high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters.
13. Membrane filters composed of cellulose acetate or nitrocellulose are commonly used to filter out bacteria, viruses, and even large proteins.

Low Temperatures (pp. 186–187)

14. The effectiveness of low temperatures depends on the particular microorganism and the intensity of the application.
15. Most microorganisms do not reproduce at ordinary refrigerator temperatures (0–7°C).
16. Many microbes survive (but do not grow) at the subzero temperatures used to store foods.

High Pressure (p. 187)

17. High pressure denatures proteins and alters carbohydrate structure in vegetative cells.

Desiccation (p. 187)

18. In the absence of water, microorganisms cannot grow but can remain viable.
19. Viruses and endospores can resist desiccation.

Osmotic Pressure (p. 187)

20. Microorganisms in high concentrations of salts and sugars undergo plasmolysis.
21. Molds and yeasts are more capable than bacteria of growing in materials with low moisture or high osmotic pressure.

Radiation (pp. 187–188)

22. The effects of radiation depend on its wavelength, intensity, and duration.
23. Ionizing radiation (gamma rays, X rays, and high-energy electron beams) penetrates liquids and other materials and exerts its effect primarily by ionizing water and forming highly reactive hydroxyl radicals.
24. Ultraviolet (UV) radiation, a form of nonionizing radiation, has a low degree of penetration and causes cell damage by making thymine dimers in DNA that interfere with DNA replication; the most effective germicidal wavelength is 260 nm.
25. Microwaves can kill microbes indirectly as the food or other substance gets hot.

Chemical Methods of Microbial Control (pp. 188–199)

1. Chemical agents are used on living tissue (as antiseptics) and on inanimate objects (as disinfectants).
2. Few chemical agents achieve sterility.

Principles of Effective Disinfection (pp. 189–190)

3. Careful attention should be paid to the properties and concentration of the disinfectant to be used.
4. The presence of organic matter, degree of contact with microorganisms, temperature, and pH should also be considered.

Evaluating a Disinfectant (p. 190)

5. The use-dilution test is used to determine bacterial survival in the manufacturer's recommended dilution of a disinfectant.
6. The use-dilution test can also be used to evaluate the effectiveness of agents against viruses, endospore-forming bacteria, mycobacteria, and fungi.
7. In the disk-diffusion method, a disk of filter paper is soaked with a chemical and placed on an inoculated agar plate; a zone of inhibition indicates effectiveness.

Types of Disinfectants (pp. 190–199)

8. Phenolics exert their action by injuring plasma membranes and denaturing enzymes.
9. The bisphenol hexachlorophene is used as a skin disinfectant.
10. Biguanides damage plasma membranes of vegetative cells.
11. Terpenes and phenolics in essential oils of plants have antimicrobial activity.
12. Iodine combines with certain amino acids and fatty acids; this may inactivate enzymes and other cellular proteins.
13. The germicidal action of chlorine is based on the formation of hypochlorous acid when chlorine is added to water.
14. Alcohols exert their action by denaturing proteins and dissolving lipids.
15. In tinctures, alcohols enhance the effectiveness of other antimicrobial chemicals.
16. Silver, mercury, copper, and zinc exert their antimicrobial action through oligodynamic action. When heavy metal ions combine with sulfhydryl (—SH) groups, proteins are denatured.
17. Soaps have limited germicidal action but assist in removing microorganisms.
18. Acid-anionic detergents are used to clean dairy equipment.
19. Quats are cationic detergents attached to NH_4^+ that disrupt plasma membranes.
20. SO_2, sorbate, benzoate, and propionate inhibit fungal metabolism and are used as food preservatives.
21. Nitrate and nitrite salts prevent germination of *C. botulinum* endospores in meats.
22. Nisin and natamycin are antimicrobials made by bacteria and used to preserve foods, especially cheese.
23. Aldehydes such as formaldehyde and glutaraldehyde are among the most effective chemical disinfectants. They exert their antimicrobial effect by inactivating proteins.
24. Ethylene oxide is the gas most frequently used for sterilization. It penetrates most materials and kills all microorganisms by protein denaturation.
25. Free radicals in plasma gases are used to sterilize plastic instruments.
26. Supercritical fluids, which have properties of liquid and gas, can sterilize at low temperatures.
27. Hydrogen peroxide, peracetic acid, benzoyl peroxide, and ozone exert their antimicrobial effect by oxidizing molecules inside cells.

Microbial Characteristics and Microbial Control (pp. 199–201)

1. Gram-negative bacteria are generally more resistant than gram-positive bacteria to disinfectants and antiseptics.
2. Mycobacteria, endospores, and protozoan cysts and oocysts are very resistant to disinfectants and antiseptics.
3. Nonenveloped viruses are generally more resistant than enveloped viruses to disinfectants and antiseptics.
4. Prions are resistant to disinfection and autoclaving.

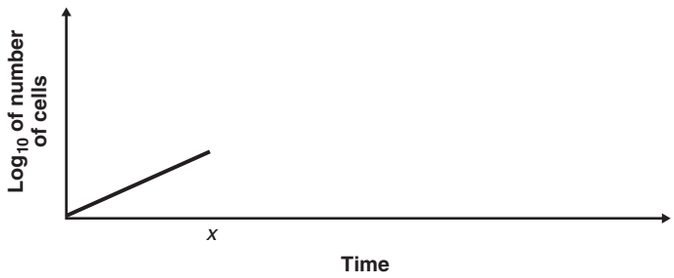
Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the back of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. The thermal death time for a suspension of *Bacillus subtilis* endospores is 30 minutes in dry heat and less than 10 minutes in an autoclave. Which type of heat is more effective? Why?
2. If pasteurization does not achieve sterilization, why is pasteurization used to treat food?
3. Thermal death point is not considered an accurate measure of the effectiveness of heat sterilization. List three factors that can alter thermal death point.
4. The antimicrobial effect of gamma radiation is due to (a) _____. The antimicrobial effect of ultraviolet radiation is due to (b) _____.
5. DRAW IT A bacterial culture was in log phase in the following figure. At time *x*, an antibacterial compound was added to the culture. Draw the lines indicating the addition of a bactericidal compound and a bacteriostatic compound. Explain why the viable count does not immediately drop to zero at *x*.



6. How do autoclaving, hot air, and pasteurization illustrate the concept of equivalent treatments?
7. How do salts and sugars preserve foods? Why are these considered physical rather than chemical methods of microbial control? Name one food that is preserved with sugar and one preserved with salt. How do you account for the occasional growth of *Penicillium* mold in jelly, which is 50% sucrose?
8. The use-dilution values for two disinfectants tested under the same conditions are as follows: Disinfectant A—1:2; Disinfectant B—1:10,000. If both disinfectants are designed for the same purpose, which would you select?
9. A large hospital washes burn patients in a stainless steel tub. After each patient, the tub is cleaned with a quat. It was noticed that 14 of 20 burn patients acquired *Pseudomonas* infections after being bathed. Provide an explanation for this high rate of infection.
10. NAME IT What bacteria have porins, are resistant to bisphenols, and survive and may grow in quats?

Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following does *not* kill endospores?
   a. autoclaving
   b. incineration
   c. hot-air sterilization
   d. pasteurization
   e. All of the above kill endospores.
2. Which of the following is most effective for sterilizing mattresses and plastic Petri dishes?
   a. chlorine
   b. ethylene oxide
   c. glutaraldehyde
   d. autoclaving
   e. nonionizing radiation
3. Which of these disinfectants does *not* act by disrupting the plasma membrane?
   a. phenolics
   b. phenol
   c. quats
   d. halogens
   e. biguanides
4. Which of the following *cannot* be used to sterilize a heat-labile solution stored in a plastic container?
   a. gamma radiation
   b. ethylene oxide
   c. supercritical fluids
   d. autoclaving
   e. short-wavelength radiation
5. Which of the following is used to control microbial growth in foods?
   a. organic acids
   b. alcohols
   c. aldehydes
   d. heavy metals
   e. all of the above

Use the following information to answer questions 6 and 7. The data were obtained from a use-dilution test comparing four disinfectants against *Salmonella* Choleraesuis. *G* = growth, *NG* = no growth

	Bacterial Growth after Exposure to			
Dilution	**Disinfectant A**	**Disinfectant B**	**Disinfectant C**	**Disinfectant D**
1:2	NG	G	NG	NG
1:4	NG	G	NG	G
1:8	NG	G	G	G
1:16	G	G	G	G

6. Which disinfectant is the most effective?
7. Which disinfectant(s) is (are) bactericidal?
   a. A, B, C, and D
   b. A, C, and D
   c. A only
   d. B only
   e. none of the above
8. Which of the following is *not* a characteristic of quaternary ammonium compounds?
   a. bactericidal against gram-positive bacteria
   b. sporicidal
   c. amebicidal
   d. fungicidal
   e. kills enveloped viruses

9. You and your classmates are trying to determine how a disinfectant might kill cells. You observe that when you spill the disinfectant in a tube of reduced litmus milk, the litmus turns blue again. You suggest to your classmates that
   a. the disinfectant might inhibit cell wall synthesis.
   b. the disinfectant might oxidize molecules.
   c. the disinfectant might inhibit protein synthesis.
   d. the disinfectant might denature proteins.
   e. the disinfectant might damage DNA.
10. Which of the following is most likely to be bactericidal?
   a. membrane filtration
   b. ionizing radiation
   c. lyophilization (freeze-drying)
   d. deep-freezing
   e. all of the above

Analysis

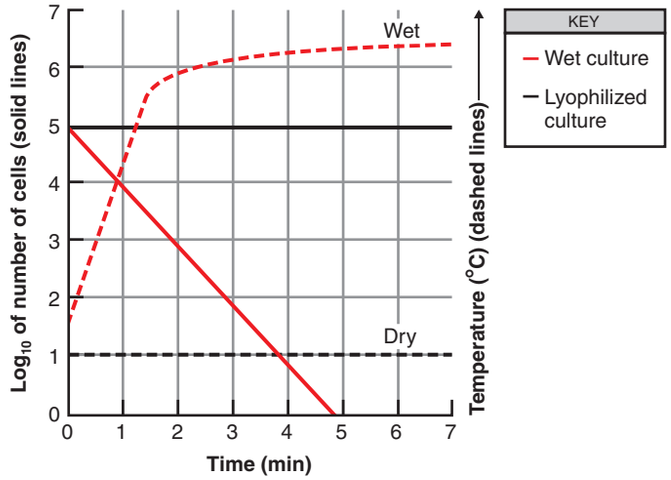
1. The disk-diffusion method was used to evaluate three disinfectants. The results were as follows:

Disinfectant	Zone of Inhibition
X	0 mm
Y	5 mm
Z	10 mm

   a. Which disinfectant was the most effective against the organism?
   b. Can you determine whether compound Y was bactericidal or bacteriostatic?
2. For each of the following bacteria, explain why it is often resistant to disinfectants.
   a. *Mycobacterium*
   b. *Pseudomonas*
   c. *Bacillus*
3. A use-dilution test was used to evaluate two disinfectants against *Salmonella* Choleraesuis. The results were as follows:

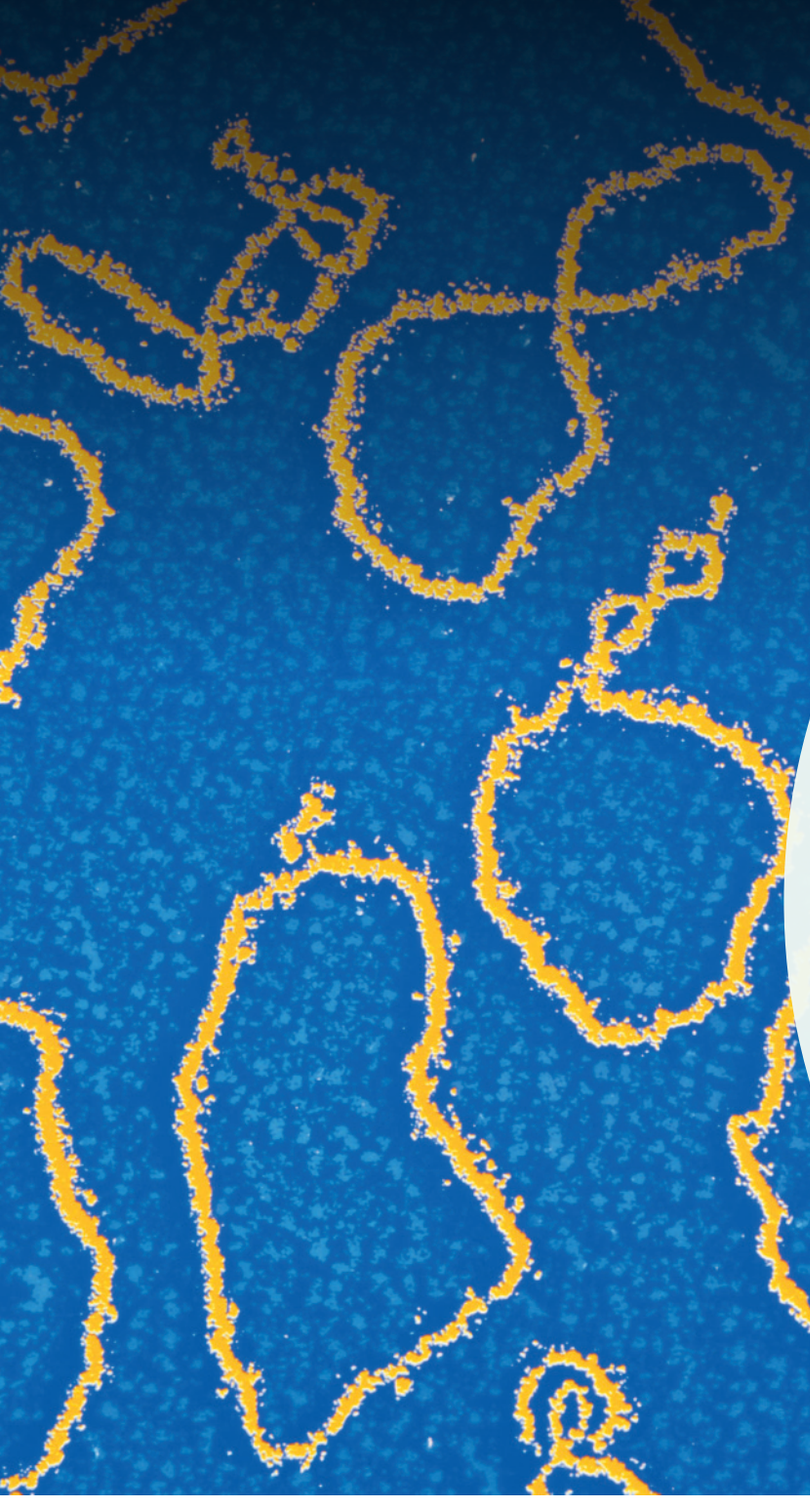
	Bacterial Growth after Exposures		
Time of Exposure (min)	Disinfectant A	Disinfectant B Diluted with Distilled Water	Disinfectant B Diluted with Tap Water
10	G	NG	G
20	G	NG	NG
30	NG	NG	NG

   a. Which disinfectant was the most effective?
   b. Which disinfectant should be used against *Staphylococcus*?
4. To determine the lethal action of microwave radiation, two 10^5 suspensions of *E. coli* were prepared. One cell suspension was exposed to microwave radiation while wet, whereas the other was lyophilized (freeze-dried) and then exposed to radiation. The results are shown in the following figure. Dashed lines indicate the temperature of the samples. What is the most likely method of lethal action of microwave radiation? How do you suppose these data might differ for *Clostridium*?



Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. *Entamoeba histolytica* and *Giardia duodenalis* were isolated from the stool sample of a 45-year-old patient, and *Shigella sonnei* was isolated from the stool sample of an 18-year-old patient. Both patients experienced diarrhea and severe abdominal cramps. Prior to onset of digestive symptoms, both had been treated by the same chiropractor, who had administered colonic irrigations (enemas) to them. The device used for this treatment was a gravity-dependent apparatus using 12 liters of tap water. There were no check valves to prevent backflow, so all parts of the apparatus could have become contaminated with feces during each colonic treatment. The chiropractor provided colonic treatment to four or five patients per day. Between patients, the adaptor piece that is inserted into the rectum was placed in a "hot-water sterilizer."
   What two errors did the chiropractor make?
2. Between March 9 and April 12, five chronic peritoneal dialysis patients at one hospital became infected with *P. aeruginosa*. Four patients developed peritonitis (inflammation of the abdominal cavity), and one developed a skin infection at the catheter insertion site. All patients with peritonitis had low-grade fever, cloudy peritoneal fluid, and abdominal pain. All patients had permanent indwelling peritoneal catheters, which the nurse wiped with gauze that had been soaked with an iodophor solution each time the catheter was connected to or disconnected from the machine tubing. Aliquots of the iodophor were transferred from stock bottles to small in-use bottles. Cultures from the dialysate concentrate and the internal areas of the dialysis machines were negative; iodophor from a small in-use plastic container yielded a pure culture of *P. aeruginosa*.
   What improper technique led to this infection?
3. You are investigating a national outbreak of *Ralstonia mannitolilytica* associated with use of a contaminated oxygen-delivery device among pediatric patients. The device adds moisture to and warms the oxygen. Each hospital followed the manufacturer's recommendation to use a detergent to clean the reusable components of the device between patients. Tap water is permitted in the device because the device uses a reusable 0.01-μm filter as a biological barrier between the air and water compartments. *Ralstonia* is a gram-negative rod commonly found in water.
   Why did disinfection fail?
   What do you recommend for disinfecting? The device cannot be autoclaved.



8 Microbial Genetics

Virtually all the microbial traits you have read about in earlier chapters are controlled or influenced by heredity. The inherited characteristics of microbes include shape, structural features, metabolism, ability to move, and interactions with other organisms. Individual organisms transmit these characteristics to their offspring through genes.

The development of antibiotic resistance in microorganisms is often carried on plasmids such as those in the photo, which are readily transferred between bacterial cells. They are responsible for the emergence of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and the recent emergence of carbapenem-resistant *Klebsiella pneumoniae*. The emergence of vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus* (VRSA) poses a serious threat to patient care. In this chapter you will see how VRSA acquired this characteristic.

Emerging diseases provide another reason why it is important to understand genetics. New diseases are the results of genetic changes in some existing organism; for example, *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 acquired the genes for Shiga toxin from *Shigella*.

Currently, microbiologists are using genetics to study unculturable microbes and the relationship between hosts and microbes.

The **Big Picture** provides an overview of key principles of genetics that are explained in detail throughout the chapter.

◀ **Plasmids exist in cells separate from chromosomes.**

In the Clinic

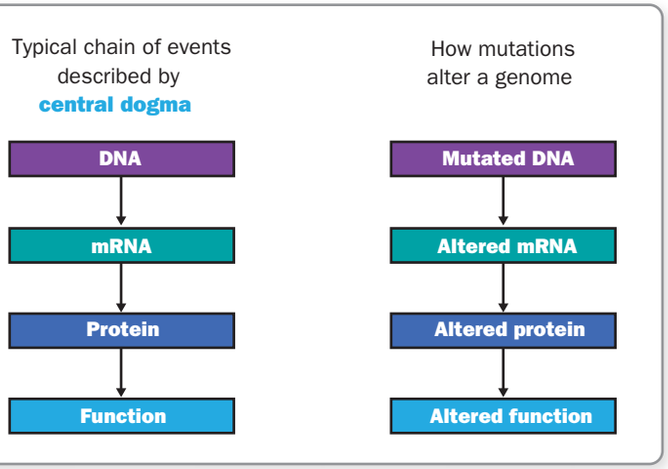
As a nurse at a U.S. military hospital, you treat injured service members. You notice that wounds infected by *Acinetobacter baumannii* are not responding to antibiotics. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention reports that the antibiotic-resistance genes found in *A. baumannii* are the same as those in *Pseudomonas, Salmonella*, and *Escherichia*. Cephalosporin-resistance genes are on the chromosome, tetracycline resistance is encoded by a plasmid, and streptomycin resistance is associated with a transposon. **Can you suggest mechanisms by which *Acinetobacter* acquired this resistance?**

Hint: Read about genetic recombination later in this chapter.

Genetics

Genetics is the science of heredity. It includes the study of genes: how they are replicated, expressed, and passed on from one generation to another.

The **central dogma** of molecular biology describes how, typically, DNA is transcribed to messenger RNA, which, in turn, is translated into proteins that carry out vital cellular functions. Mutations introduce change into this process—ultimately leading to new or lost functions.



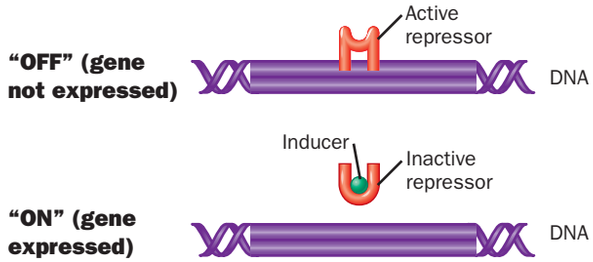
Mutations can be caused by **base substitutions** or **frameshift mutations**.

In **base substitution mutations**, a single DNA base pair is altered.

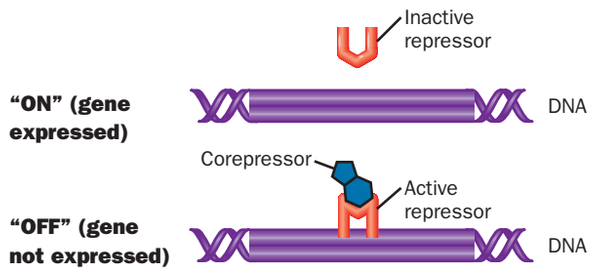
In **frameshift mutations**, DNA base pairs are added or removed from the sequence, causing a shift in the sequence reading.

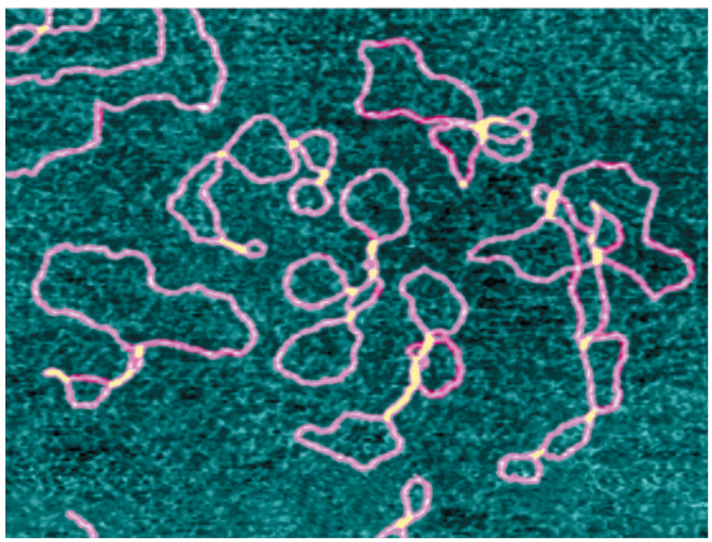
Groups of genes in operons can be **inducible** or **repressible**.

An **inducible operon** includes genes that are in the "off" mode, with the repressor bound to the DNA, and is turned "on" by the environmental inducer.



A **repressible operon** includes genes that are in the "on" mode, without the repressor bound to the DNA, and is turned "off" by the environmental corepressor and repressor.

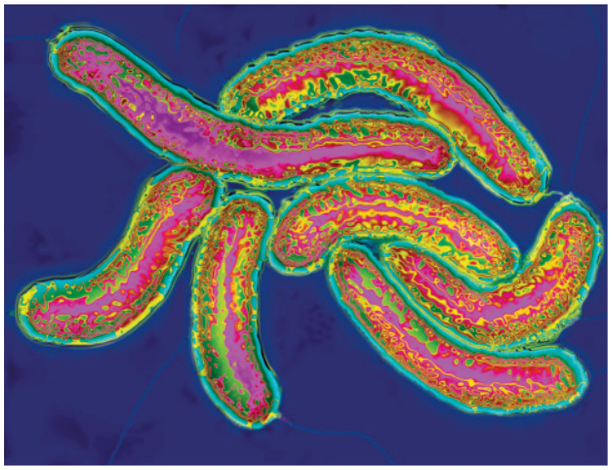




AFM 7 μm

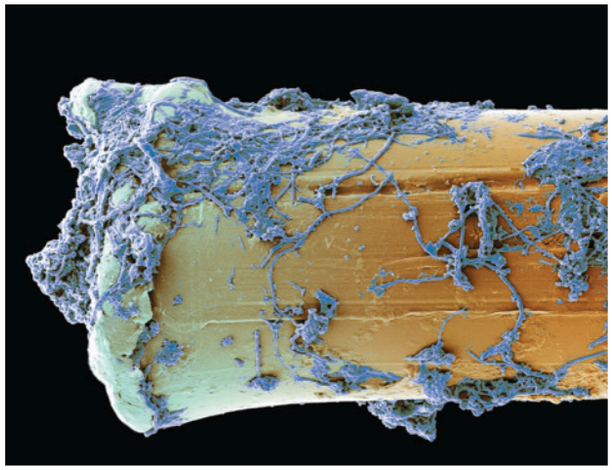
Atomic force micrograph showing DNA molecules.

Alteration of bacterial genes and/or gene expression may cause disease, prevent disease treatment, or be manipulated for human benefit.



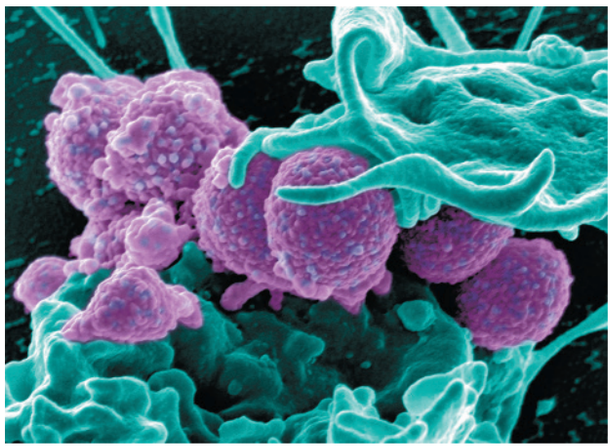
TEM 0.4 μm

Diseases: Many bacterial diseases are caused by the presence of toxic proteins that damage human tissue. These toxic proteins are coded for by genes. *Vibrio cholerae*, shown above, produces an enterotoxin that causes diarrhea and severe dehydration, which can be fatal if left untreated.



SEM 5 μm

Biofilms: Biofilms, such as the one seen here growing on a toothbrush bristle, are produced by altered bacterial gene expression when populations are large enough. Various *Streptococcus* species, including *S. mutans,* form biofilms on teeth and gums, contributing to the development of dental plaque and dental caries.



SEM 0.3 μm

Antibiotic resistance: Mutations in the bacterial genome are one of the first steps toward the development of antibiotic resistance. This process has occurred with *Staphylococcus aureus,* which is currently resistant to beta-lactam antibiotics such as penicillin. Methicillin was introduced to treat penicillin-resistant *S. aureus.* Methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA), shown in purple above, is now a leading cause of healthcare-associated infections.

Biotechnology: Scientists can alter a microorganism's genome, adding genes that will produce human proteins used in treating disease. Insulin, used for treatment of diabetes, is produced in this manner.

KEY CONCEPTS

- DNA expression leads to cell function via the production of proteins.
- Genes in operons are turned on or off together.
- Mutations alter DNA sequences.
- DNA mutations can change bacterial function.

Structure and Function of the Genetic Material

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

8-1 Define *genetics*, *genome*, *chromosome*, *gene*, *genetic code*, *genotype*, *phenotype*, and *genomics*.

8-2 Explain how DNA serves as genetic information.

8-3 Describe the process of DNA replication.

8-4 Describe protein synthesis, including transcription, RNA processing, and translation.

8-5 Compare protein synthesis in prokaryotes and eukaryotes.

Genetics is the science of heredity. It includes the study of genes: how they carry information, how they replicate and pass to subsequent generations of cells or between organisms, and how the expression of their information within an organism determines its characteristics. The genetic information in a cell is called the **genome**. A cell's genome includes its chromosomes and plasmids. **Chromosomes** are structures containing DNA that physically carry hereditary information; the chromosomes contain the genes. **Genes** are segments of DNA (except in some viruses, in which they are made of RNA) that code for functional products. Usually these products are proteins, but they can also be various types of RNA.

We saw in Chapter 2 that DNA is a macromolecule composed of repeating units called *nucleotides*. Each nucleotide consists of a nucleobase (adenine, thymine, cytosine, or guanine), deoxyribose (a pentose sugar), and a phosphate group (see Figure 2.16). The DNA within a cell exists as long strands of nucleotides twisted together in pairs to form a double helix. Each strand has a string of alternating sugar and phosphate groups (its *sugar-phosphate backbone*), and a nitrogenous base is attached to each sugar in the backbone. The two strands are held together by hydrogen bonds between their nitrogenous bases. The **base pairs** always occur in a specific way: adenine always pairs with thymine, and cytosine always pairs with guanine. Because of this specific base pairing, the base sequence of one DNA strand determines the base sequence of the other strand. The two strands of DNA are thus *complementary*.

The structure of DNA helps explain two primary features of biological information storage. First, the linear sequence of bases provides the actual information. Genetic information is encoded by the sequence of bases along a strand of DNA, in much the same way as our written language uses a linear sequence of letters to form words and sentences. The genetic language, however, uses an alphabet with only four letters—the four kinds of nucleobases in DNA (or RNA). But 1000 of these four bases, the number contained in an average-sized gene, can be arranged in 4^{1000} different ways. This astronomically large number explains how genes can be varied enough to provide all the information a cell needs to grow and perform its functions. The **genetic code**, the set of rules that determines how a nucleotide sequence is converted into the amino acid sequence of a protein, is discussed in more detail later in this chapter.

Second, the complementary structure allows for the precise duplication of DNA during cell division. Each offspring cell receives one of the original strands from the parent, thus ensuring one strand that functions correctly.

Much of cellular metabolism is concerned with translating the genetic message of genes into specific proteins. A gene is usually copied to make a messenger RNA (mRNA) molecule, which ultimately results in the formation of a protein. When the ultimate molecule that a gene encodes (a protein, for example) has been produced, we say that the gene has been **expressed**. The flow of genetic information can be shown as flowing from DNA to RNA to proteins, as follows:

Francis Crick called this theory the **central dogma** in 1956, when he first proposed that the sequence of nucleotides in DNA determines the sequence of amino acids in a protein.

ASM: Although the central dogma is universal in all cells, the processes differ in prokaryotes and eukaryotes, as we shall see in this chapter.

Genotype and Phenotype

The **genotype** of an organism is its genetic makeup—all its DNA—the information that codes for all the particular characteristics of the organism. The genotype represents *potential*

CLINICAL CASE Where There's Smoke

Marcel DuBois, a 70-year-old grandfather of 12, quietly hangs up the phone. His doctor has just called him with the results of his stool DNA test that he undertook at the Mayo Clinic last week. Marcel's doctor suggested this new, noninvasive screening tool for colorectal cancer because Marcel is not comfortable with the colonoscopy procedure and usually tries to postpone getting one. The stool DNA test, however, uses stool samples, which contain cells that have been shed from the colon lining. The DNA from these cells is tested for DNA markers that may indicate the presence of precancerous polyps or cancerous tumors. Marcel makes an appointment to come in to see his doctor the next afternoon.

Once in the office, the doctor explains to Marcel and his wife, Janice, that the stool DNA test detected the presence of serrated colorectal polyps. This type of polyp is usually difficult to see with a colonoscopy because it is not raised and can be the same color as the colon wall.

How can DNA show whether a person has cancer?

Read on to find out.

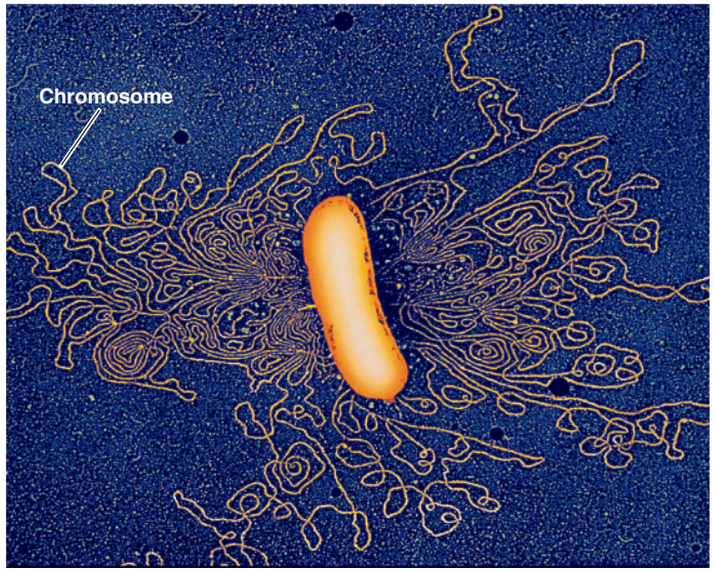


Figure 8.1 A prokaryotic chromosome.

Q How many times longer than the 2-μm cell is the chromosome?

properties, but not the properties themselves. **Phenotype** refers to *actual, expressed* properties, such as the organism's ability to perform a particular chemical reaction. Phenotype, then, is the manifestation of genotype. For example, *E. coli* with the *stx* gene can produce the stx (Shiga toxin) protein.*

In a sense, an organism's phenotype is its collection of proteins, because most of a cell's properties derive from the structures and functions of proteins. In microbes, most proteins are either *enzymatic* (catalyze particular reactions) or *structural* (participate in large functional complexes such as membranes or flagella). Even phenotypes that depend on structural macromolecules such as lipids or polysaccharides rely indirectly on proteins. For instance, the structure of a complex lipid or polysaccharide molecule results from catalytic activities of enzymes that synthesize, process, and degrade those molecules. Thus, saying that phenotypes are due to proteins is a useful simplification.

DNA and Chromosomes

Bacteria typically have a single circular chromosome consisting of a single circular molecule of DNA with associated proteins. The chromosome is looped and folded and attached at one or several points to the plasma membrane. The DNA of *E. coli* has about 4.6 million base pairs and is about 1 mm long—1000 times longer than a 1-μm cell (Figure 8.1). However, the chromosome takes up only about 10% of the cell's volume because the DNA is twisted, or *supercoiled*.

*Gene names are italicized, but the protein name is not italicized.

The entire genome does not consist of back-to-back genes. Noncoding regions called **short tandem repeats (STRs)** occur in most genomes, including that of *E. coli*. STRs are repeating sequences of two- to five-base sequences. These are used for diagnosing genetic diseases and paternity testing (discussed in Chapter 9).

New technologies now allow rapid determination of complete base sequences of chromosomes. Computers are used to search for *open reading frames*, that is, regions of DNA that are likely to encode a protein. As you will see later, these are base sequences between start and stop codons. The sequencing and molecular characterization of genomes is called **genomics**. The use of genomics to track Zika virus is described in the Clinical Focus box.

The Flow of Genetic Information

DNA replication makes possible the flow of genetic information from one generation to the next. This is called **vertical gene transfer**. As shown in Figure 8.2, the DNA of a cell replicates before cell division so that each offspring cell receives a chromosome identical to the parent's. Within each metabolizing cell, the genetic information contained in DNA also flows in another way: it is transcribed into mRNA and then translated into protein. We describe these processes of transcription and translation later in this chapter.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 8-1 Give a clinical application of genomics.
- 8-2 Why is the base pairing in DNA important?

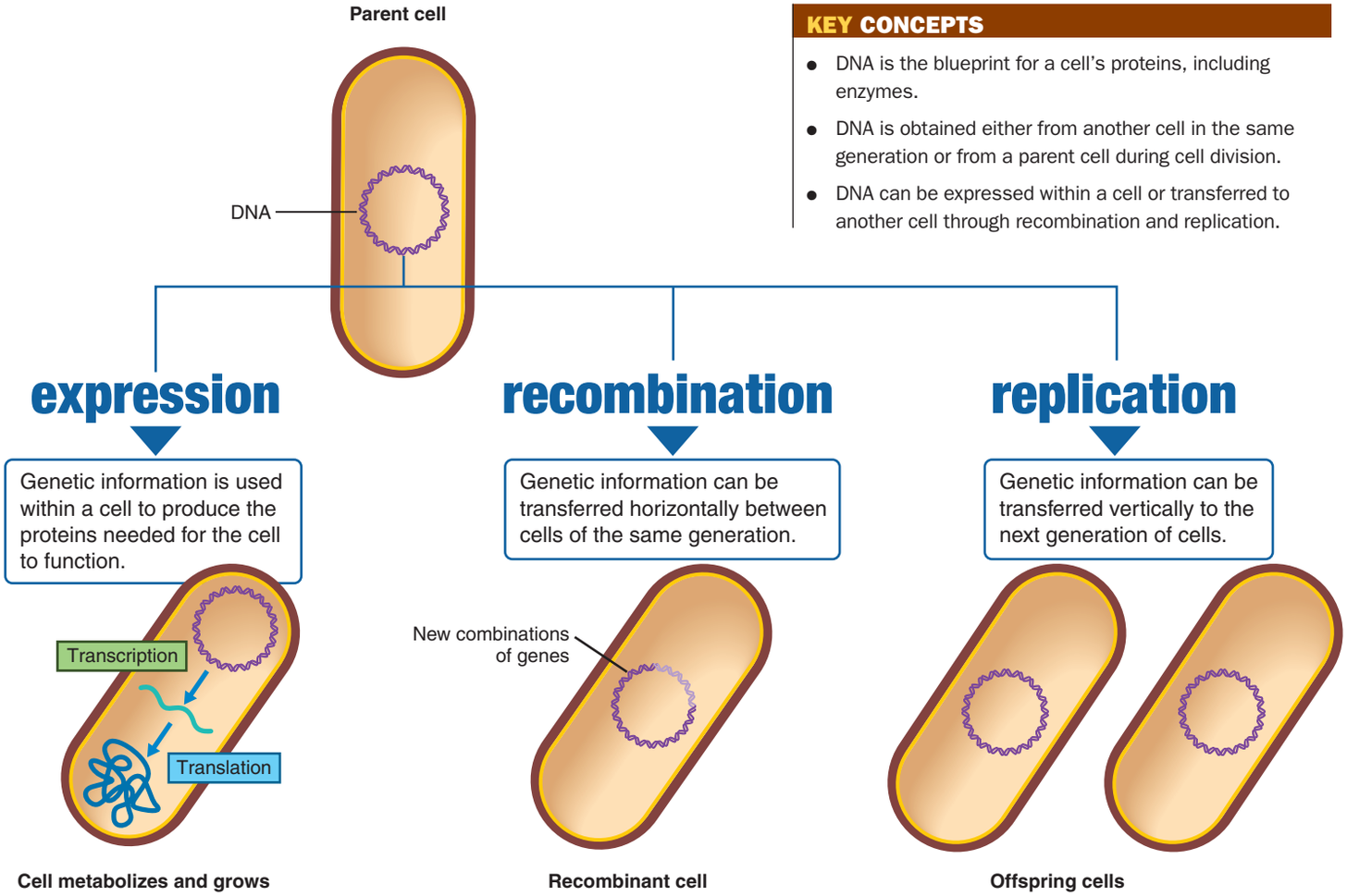
DNA Replication

In DNA replication, one "parental" double-stranded DNA molecule is converted to two identical DNA molecules. The complementary structure of the nitrogenous base sequences in the DNA molecule is the key to understanding DNA replication. Because the bases along the two strands of double-helical DNA are complementary, one strand can act as a template for the production of the other strand (Figure 8.3a).

DNA replication requires the presence of several cellular proteins that direct a particular sequence of events. Enzymes involved in DNA replication and other processes are listed in Table 8.1. When replication begins, the supercoiling is relaxed by *topoisomerase* or *gyrase*. The two strands of parental DNA are unwound by *helicase* and separated from each other in one small DNA segment after another. Free nucleotides present in the cell cytoplasm are matched up to the exposed bases of the single-stranded parental DNA. Where thymine is present on the original strand, only adenine can fit into place on the new strand; where guanine is present on the original strand, only cytosine can fit into place, and so on. Any bases that are improperly base-paired are removed and replaced by replication enzymes. Once aligned, the newly added nucleotide is joined to the growing DNA strand by an enzyme called

FOUNDATION FIGURE 8.2

The Flow of Genetic Information



DNA polymerase. However, DNA polymerase cannot initiate the synthesis; it can only add DNA nucleotides to the end of an already existing chain that is base-paired with the template strand. Primase starts a short complementary RNA chain using the parental DNA strand as a template. The new DNA strand will start from the end of the RNA primer, which is destroyed by the DNA polymerase. Then the parental DNA is unwound a bit further to allow the addition of the next nucleotides. The point at which replication occurs is called the *replication fork*.

As the replication fork moves along the parental DNA, each of the unwound single strands combines with new nucleotides. The original strand and this newly synthesized complementary strand then rewind. Because each new double-stranded DNA molecule contains one original (conserved) strand and one new strand, the process of replication is referred to as **semiconservative replication**.

Before looking at DNA replication in more detail, let's discuss the structure of DNA (see Figure 2.16 for an overview). It is important to understand that the paired DNA strands are oriented in opposite directions (antiparallel) relative to each other. The carbon atoms of the sugar component of each nucleotide are numbered 1′ (pronounced "one prime") to 5′. For the paired bases to be next to each other, the sugar components in one strand are upside down relative to the other. The end with the hydroxyl attached to the 3′ carbon is called the 3′ end of the DNA strand; the end having a phosphate attached to the 5′ carbon is called the 5′ end. The way in which the two strands fit together dictates that the 5′ → 3′ direction of one strand runs counter to the 5′ → 3′ direction of the other strand (Figure 8.3b). This structure of DNA affects the replication process because DNA polymerases can add new nucleotides to the 3′ end only. Therefore, as the replication fork moves along the parental DNA, the two new strands must grow in different directions.

One new strand, called the *leading strand*, is synthesized continuously in the 5′ → 3′ direction (from a template parental strand running 3′ → 5′). In contrast, the *lagging strand* of the new DNA is synthesized discontinuously in fragments of about 1000 nucleotides, called **Okazaki fragments**. These must be joined later to make the continuous strand.

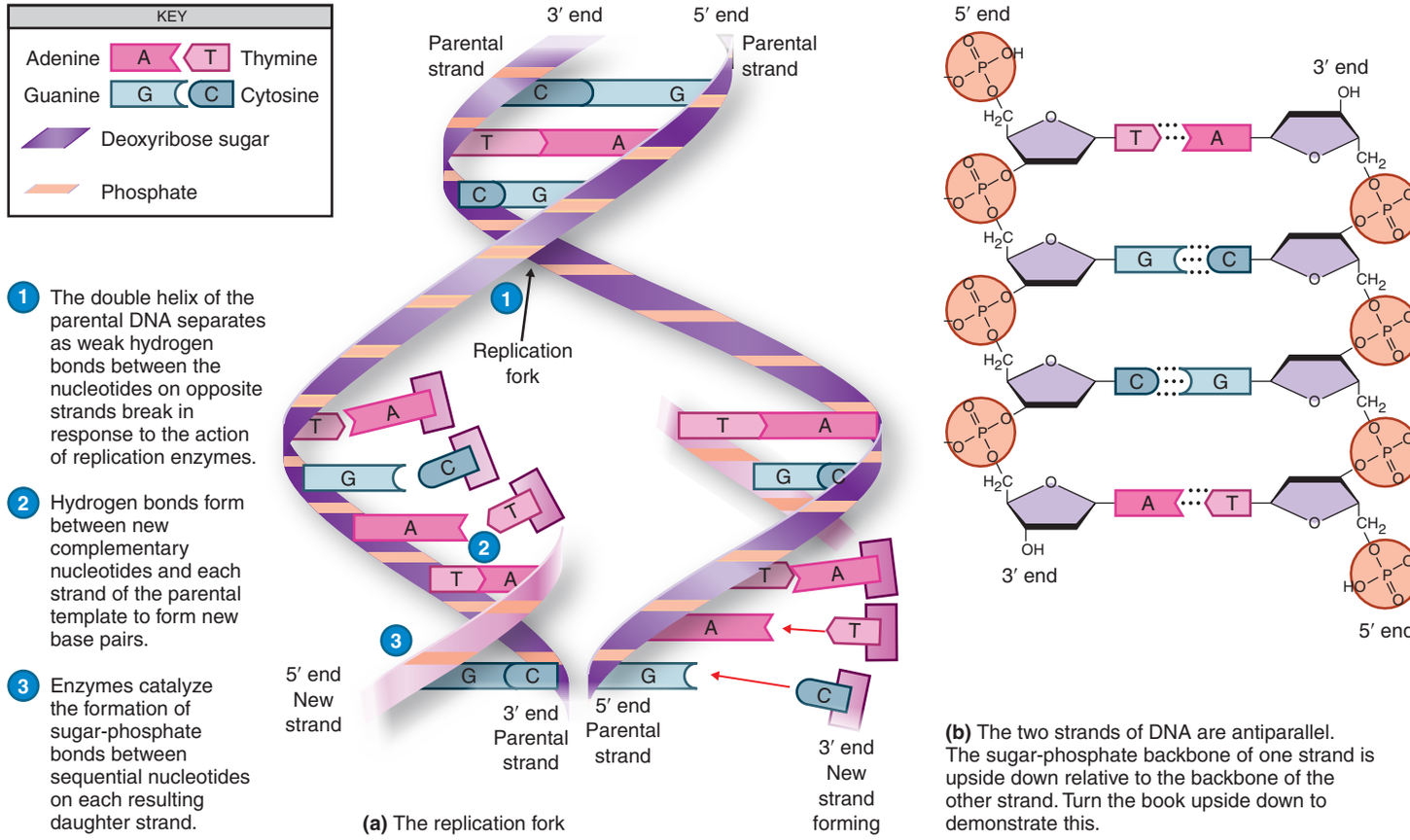


Figure 8.3 DNA replication.

Q What is the advantage of semiconservative replication?

TABLE 8.1 Important Enzymes in DNA Replication, Expression, and Repair

DNA Gyrase	Relaxes supercoiling ahead of the replication fork
DNA Ligase	Makes covalent bonds to join DNA strands; Okazaki fragments, and new segments in excision repair
DNA Polymerases	Synthesize DNA; proofread and facilitate repair of DNA
Endonucleases	Cut DNA backbone in a strand of DNA; facilitate repair and insertions
Exonucleases	Cut DNA from an exposed end of DNA; facilitate repair
Helicase	Unwinds double-stranded DNA
Methylase	Adds methyl group to selected bases in newly made DNA
Photolyase	Uses visible light energy to separate UV-induced pyrimidine dimers
Primase	An RNA polymerase that makes RNA primers from a DNA template
Ribozyme	RNA enzyme that removes introns and splices exons together
RNA Polymerase	Copies RNA from a DNA template
snRNP	RNA-protein complex that removes introns and splices exons together
Topoisomerase or Gyrase	Relaxes supercoiling ahead of the replication fork; separates DNA circles at the end of DNA replication
Transposase	Cuts DNA backbone, leaving single-stranded “sticky ends”

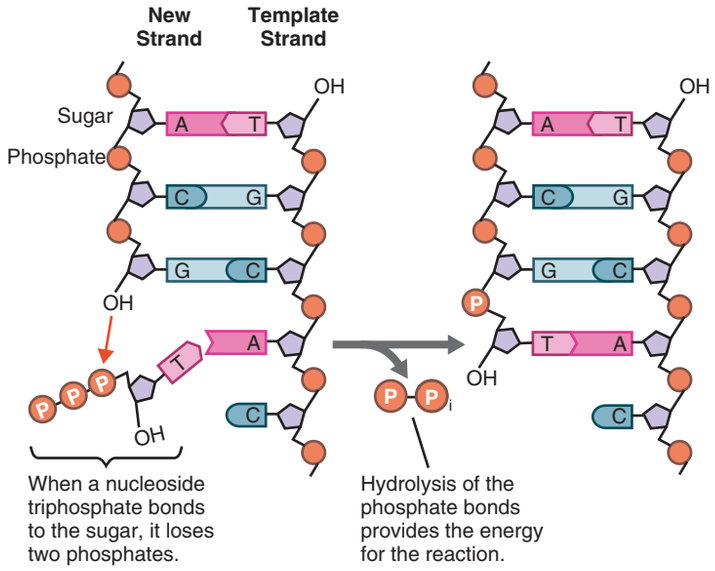


Figure 8.4 **Adding a nucleotide to DNA.**

Q Why is one strand "upside down" relative to the other strand? Why can't both strands "face" the same way?

Energy Needs

DNA replication requires a great deal of energy. The energy is supplied from the nucleotides, which are actually nucleoside triphosphates. You already know about ATP; the only difference between ATP and the adenine nucleotide in DNA is the sugar component. Deoxyribose is the sugar in the nucleosides used to synthesize DNA, and nucleoside triphosphates with ribose are used to synthesize RNA. Two phosphate groups are removed to add the nucleotide to a growing strand of DNA; hydrolysis of the nucleoside is exergonic and provides energy to make the new bonds in the DNA strand (Figure 8.4).

Figure 8.5 provides more detail about the many steps that go into this complex process.

DNA replication by some bacteria, such as *E. coli*, goes *bidirectionally* around the chromosome (Figure 8.6). Two replication forks move in opposite directions away from the origin of replication. Because the bacterial chromosome is a closed loop, the replication forks eventually meet when replication is completed. The two loops must be separated by a topoisomerase. Much evidence shows an association between the bacterial plasma membrane and the origin of replication: After duplication, if each copy of the origin binds to the membrane at opposite poles, then each offspring cell receives one copy of the DNA molecule—that is, one complete chromosome.

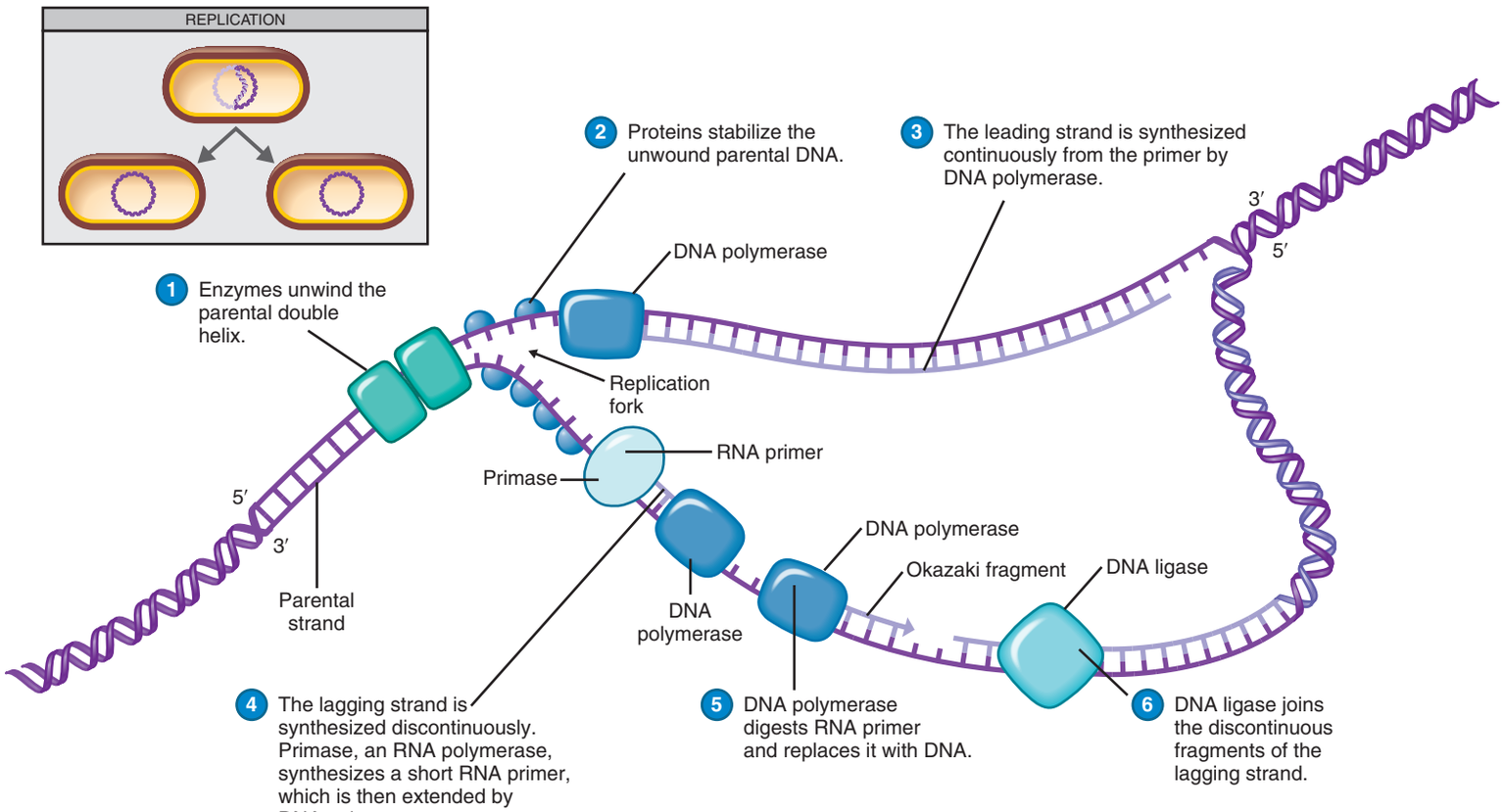
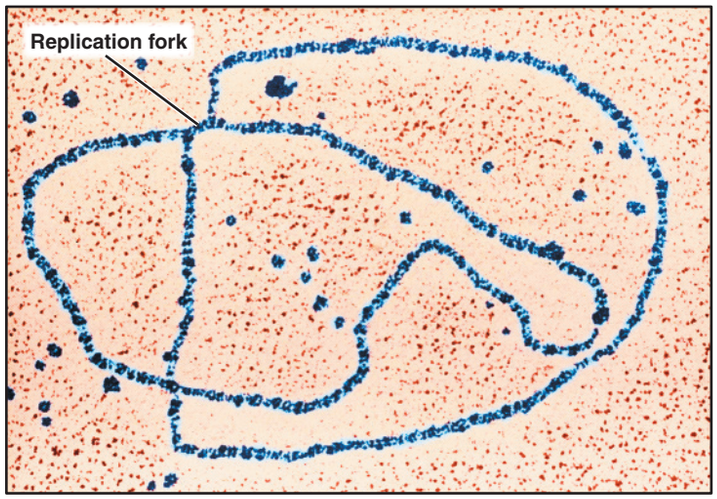
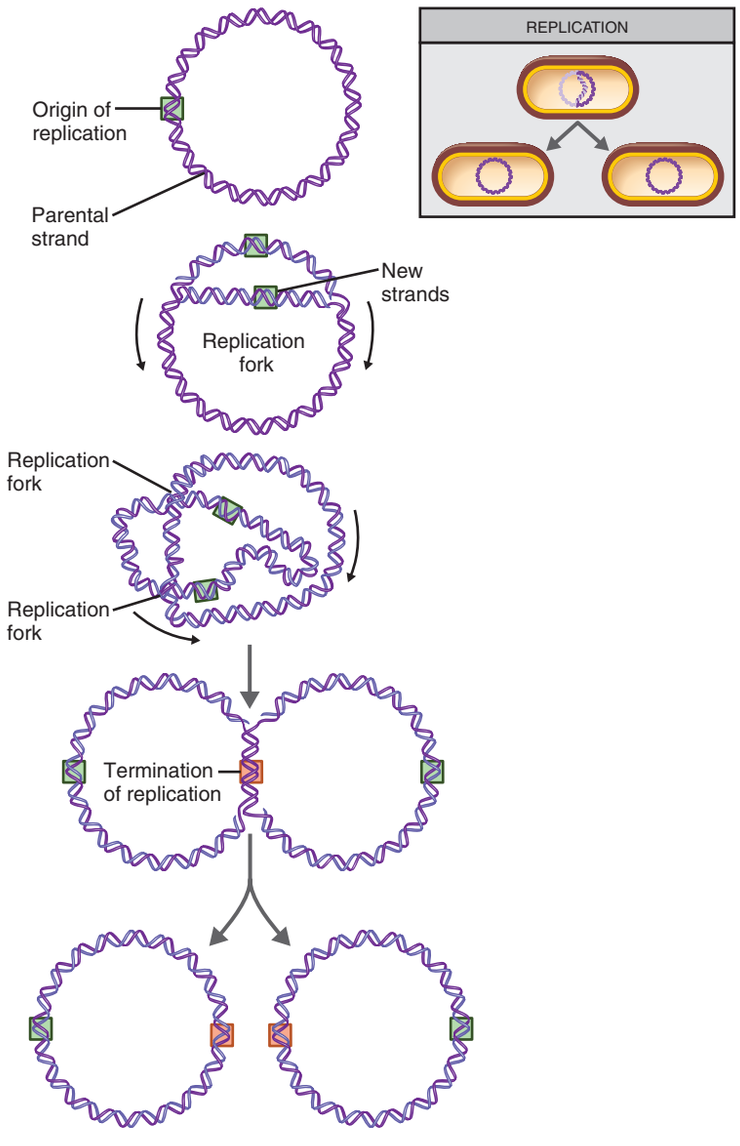


Figure 8.5 **A summary of events at the DNA replication fork.**

Q Why is one strand of DNA synthesized discontinuously?



(a) An *E. coli* chromosome in the process of replicating



(b) Bidirectional replication of a circular bacterial DNA molecule

Figure 8.6 Replication of bacterial DNA.

Q What is the origin of replication?

DNA replication is an amazingly accurate process. Typically, mistakes are made at a rate of only 1 in every 10 billion bases incorporated. Such accuracy is largely due to the *proofreading* capability of DNA polymerase. As each new base is added, the enzyme evaluates whether it forms the proper complementary base-pairing structure. If not, the enzyme excises the improper base and replaces it with the correct one. Mismatched nucleotides that evade this proofreading are removed and replaced by a different mechanism. In this **mismatch repair**, a nuclease removes the incorrect bases, and the resulting gap is filled by DNA polymerase and DNA ligase. In this way, DNA can be replicated very accurately, allowing each newly synthesized chromosome to be virtually identical to the parental DNA.

For many years, biologists questioned how an incorrect base could be distinguished from a correct base if it was not physically distorted. In 1970, Hamilton Smith provided the answer with the discovery of **methylases**. These enzymes add a methyl group to selected bases soon after a DNA strand is made. When that strand is copied, a repair endonuclease can cut only the new, nonmethylated strand of the mismatched pair.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

8-3 Describe DNA replication, including the functions of DNA gyrase, DNA ligase, and DNA polymerase.

RNA and Protein Synthesis

How is the information in DNA used to make the proteins that control cell activities? In the process of *transcription*, genetic information in DNA is copied, or transcribed, into a complementary base sequence of RNA. The cell then uses the information encoded in this RNA to synthesize specific proteins through the process of *translation*. We now take a closer look at these two processes as they occur in a bacterial cell.

Transcription in Prokaryotes

Transcription is the synthesis of a complementary strand of **messenger RNA (mRNA)** from a DNA template. This strand of newly synthesized mRNA then carries the coded information for making the specific protein to ribosomes, where proteins are synthesized. We will discuss transcription in prokaryotic cells here. Transcription in eukaryotes is discussed shortly.

Ribosomal RNA (rRNA) and transfer RNA (tRNA) are also produced by transcription of the appropriate genes. rRNA forms an integral part of ribosomes, the cellular machinery for protein synthesis. **Transfer RNA (tRNA)** is also involved in protein synthesis, as we will see.

During transcription, a strand of mRNA is synthesized using a specific portion of the cell's DNA as a template. In other words, the genetic information stored in the sequence of

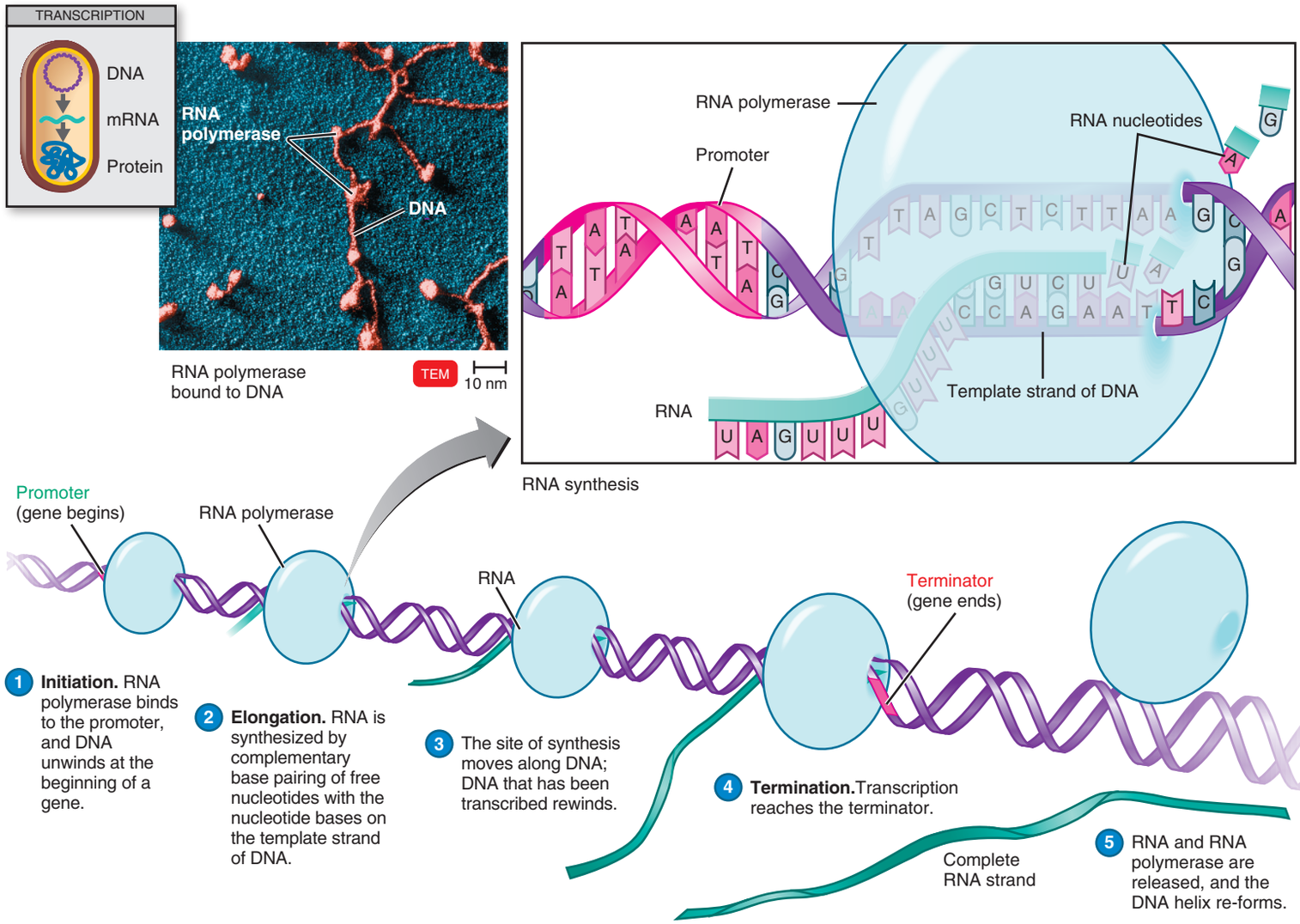


Figure 8.7 The process of transcription. The orienting diagram indicates the relationship of transcription to the overall flow of genetic information within a cell.

Q When does transcription stop?

nucleobases of DNA is rewritten so that the same information appears in the base sequence of mRNA.

As in DNA replication, a guanine (G) in the DNA template dictates a cytosine (C) in the mRNA being added, and a C in the DNA template dictates a G in the mRNA. Likewise, a thymine (T) in the DNA template dictates an adenine (A) in the mRNA. However, an adenine in the DNA template dictates a uracil (U) in the mRNA, because RNA contains uracil instead of thymine. (Uracil has a chemical structure slightly different from thymine, but it base-pairs in the same way.) If, for example, the template portion of DNA has the base sequence 3′-ATGCAT, the newly synthesized mRNA strand will have the complementary base sequence 5′-UACGUA.

The process of transcription requires both an enzyme called *RNA polymerase* and a supply of RNA nucleotides (Figure 8.7).

Initiation. Transcription begins when RNA polymerase binds to the DNA at a site called the **promoter**. Only one of the two DNA strands serves as the template for mRNA synthesis for a given gene. RNA polymerase unwinds the DNA and begins copying at the start point.

Elongation. RNA polymerase moves, unwinding the DNA and elongating the mRNA transcript in the $5' \rightarrow 3'$ direction.

Termination. RNA synthesis continues until RNA polymerase reaches a site on the DNA called the **terminator**, and the mRNA transcript is released.

Transcription allows the cell to produce short-term copies of genes that can be used as the direct source of information for protein synthesis. Messenger RNA acts as an intermediate between the permanent storage form, DNA, and the process that uses the information, translation.

Translation

We have seen how the genetic information in DNA transfers to mRNA during transcription. Now we will see how mRNA serves as the source of information for the synthesis of proteins. Protein synthesis is called **translation** because it involves decoding the "language" of nucleic acids and converting it into the "language" of proteins.

The language of mRNA is in the form of **codons**, groups of three nucleotides, such as AUG, GGC, or AAA. The sequence of codons on an mRNA molecule determines the sequence of amino acids that will be in the protein being synthesized. Each codon "codes" for a particular amino acid. This is the genetic code (Figure 8.8).

Codons are written in terms of their base sequence in mRNA. Notice in Figure 8.8 that there are 64 possible codons but only 20 amino acids. This means that most amino acids are signaled by several alternative codons, a situation referred to as the **degeneracy** of the code. For example, leucine has six codons, and alanine has four codons. Degeneracy allows for a certain amount of misreading of, or mutation in, the DNA without affecting the protein ultimately produced.

Of the 64 codons, 61 are sense codons, and 3 are nonsense codons. **Sense codons** code for amino acids, and **nonsense codons** (also called *stop codons*) do not. Rather, the nonsense codons—UAA, UAG, and UGA—signal the end of the protein molecule's synthesis. The start codon that initiates the synthesis of the protein molecule is AUG, which is also the codon for methionine. In bacteria, the start AUG codes for formylmethionine rather than the methionine found in other parts of the protein. The initiating methionine is often removed later, so not all proteins contain methionine.

During translation, codons of an mRNA are "read" sequentially; and, in response to each codon, the appropriate amino acid is assembled into a growing chain. The site of translation is the ribosome; tRNA molecules both recognize the specific codons and transport the required amino acids to the ribosome for assembly.

Each tRNA molecule has an **anticodon**, a sequence of three bases that is complementary to a codon. In this way, a tRNA molecule can base-pair with its associated codon. Each tRNA can also carry on its other end the amino acid encoded by the codon that the tRNA recognizes. The functions of the ribosome are to direct the orderly binding of tRNAs to codons and to assemble the amino acids brought there into a chain, ultimately producing a protein.

Figure 8.9 shows the details of translation. The process begins when the two ribosomal subunits bind to the mRNA and a tRNA with the anticodon UAC. This sets up the start codon (AUG) in the proper position—the **P (peptide) site**—to allow translation to begin. The next tRNA, carrying the second amino acid, enters at the **A (amino)-site**, where the two amino acids are joined. After the ribosome joins the first two amino acids with a peptide bond, the ribosome moves along the mRNA, putting the new peptide in the **P (peptide) site**. The first tRNA

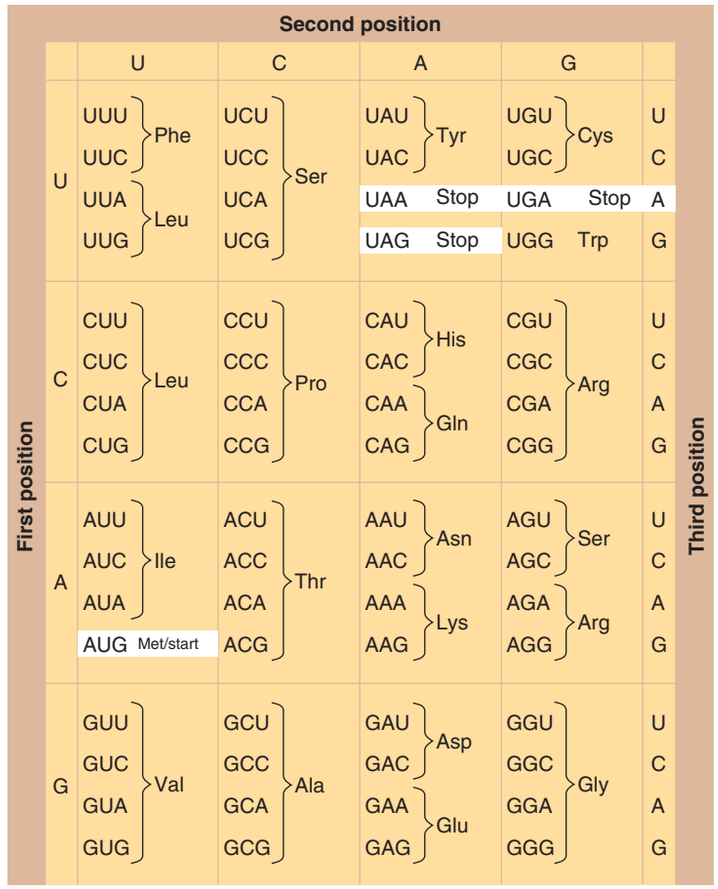


Figure 8.8 The genetic code. The three nucleotides in an mRNA codon are designated, respectively, as the first position, second position, and third position of the codon on the mRNA. Each set of three nucleotides specifies a particular amino acid, represented by a three-letter abbreviation (see Table 2.5). The codon AUG, which specifies the amino acid methionine, is also the start of protein synthesis. The word *Stop* identifies the nonsense codons that signal the termination of protein synthesis.

Q What is the advantage of the degeneracy of the genetic code?

molecule leaves the ribosome (at the **E (exit) site**. The ribosome then moves along the mRNA to the next codon. As the proper amino acids are brought into line one by one, peptide bonds are formed between them, and a polypeptide chain results. (Also see Figure 2.14.) Translation ends when one of the three nonsense codons in the mRNA is reached. The ribosome then comes apart into its two subunits, and the mRNA and newly synthesized polypeptide is released. The ribosome, the mRNA, and the tRNAs are then available to be used again.

The ribosome moves along the mRNA in the $5' \rightarrow 3'$ direction. As a ribosome moves along the mRNA, it will soon allow the start codon to be exposed. Additional ribosomes can then assemble and begin synthesizing protein. In this way, there are usually a number of ribosomes attached to a single mRNA, all at various stages of protein synthesis. In prokaryotic cells, the translation of mRNA into protein can begin even before

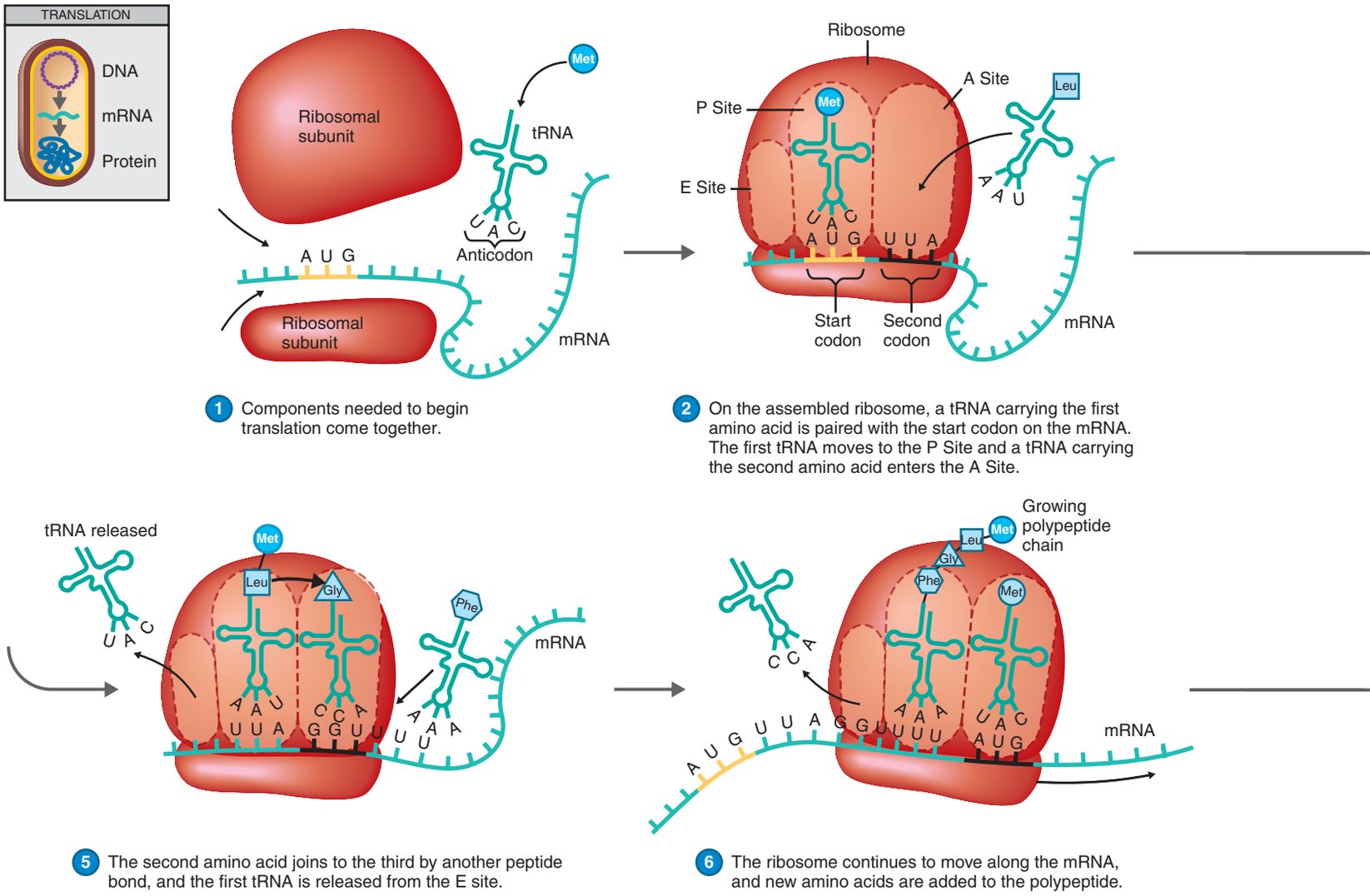


Figure 8.9 The process of translation.
The overall goal of translation is to produce proteins using mRNAs as the source of biological information. The complex cycle of events illustrated here shows the primary role of tRNA and ribosomes in the decoding of this information. The ribosome acts as the site where the mRNA-encoded information is decoded, as well as the site where individual amino acids are connected into polypeptide chains. The tRNA molecules act as the actual "translators"—one end of each tRNA recognizes a specific mRNA codon, while the other end carries the amino acid encoded by that codon.

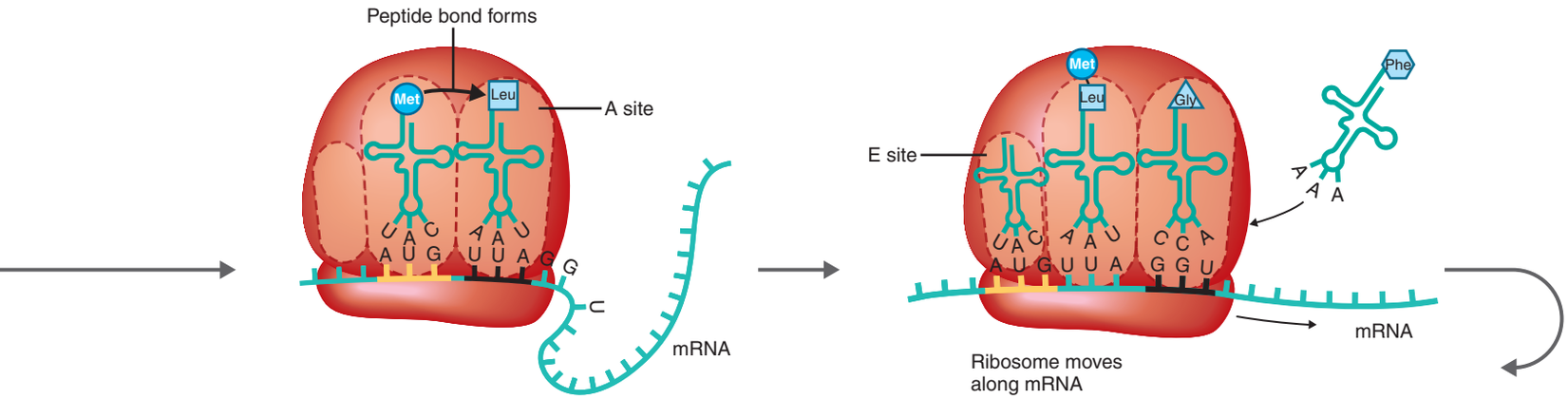
Q When does translation stop?

transcription is complete (Figure 8.10). Because mRNA is produced in the cytoplasm in prokaryotes, the start codons of an mRNA being transcribed are available to ribosomes before the entire mRNA molecule is even made.

Transcription in Eukaryotes

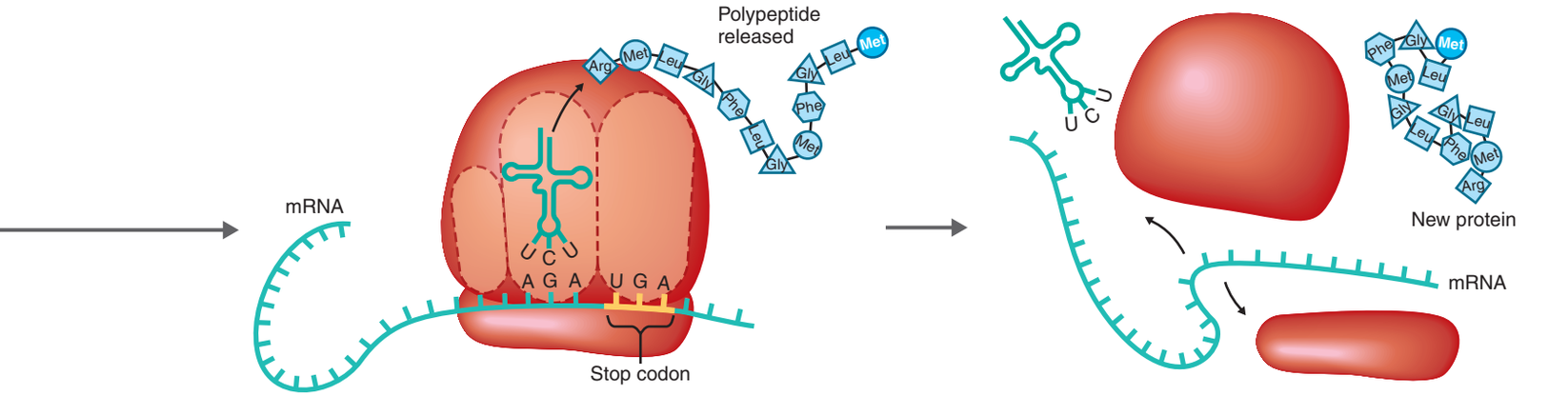
In eukaryotic cells, transcription takes place in the nucleus. The mRNA must be completely synthesized and moved through the nuclear membrane to the cytoplasm before translation can begin. In addition, the RNA undergoes processing before it leaves the nucleus. In eukaryotic cells, the regions of genes that code for proteins are often interrupted by noncoding DNA. Thus, eukaryotic genes are composed of **exons**, the regions of DNA *expressed*, and **introns**, the *intervening* regions of DNA that do not encode protein. In the nucleus, RNA polymerase synthesizes a molecule called an RNA transcript that contains copies of the introns. Particles called **small nuclear ribonucleoproteins**, abbreviated **snRNPs** and pronounced "snurps," remove the introns and splice the exons together. In some organisms, the introns act as ribozymes to catalyze their own removal (Figure 8.11). The introns can splice together to form circular RNA (*circRNA*) molecules. The function of circRNA molecules isn't known, but they can be translated and their products may enhance transcription of the genes from which they were produced.

* * *



3 The second codon of the mRNA pairs with a tRNA carrying the second amino acid at the A site. The first amino acid joins to the second by a peptide bond. This attaches the polypeptide to the tRNA in the A-site.

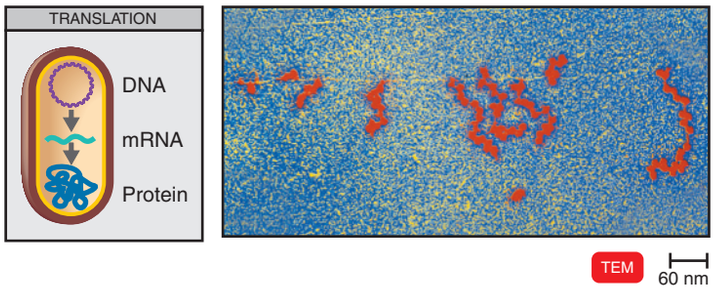
4 The ribosome moves along the mRNA until the second tRNA is in the P site. The next codon to be translated is brought into the A site. The first tRNA now occupies the E site.



7 When the ribosome reaches a stop codon, the polypeptide is released.

8 Finally, the last tRNA is released, and the ribosome comes apart. The released polypeptide forms a new protein.

Figure 8.9 The process of translation. (*continued*)



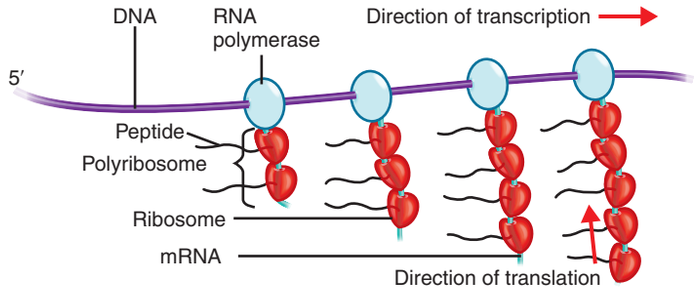


Figure 8.10 Simultaneous transcription and translation in bacteria. Many molecules of mRNA are being synthesized simultaneously. The longest mRNA molecules were the first to be transcribed at the promoter. Note the ribosomes attached to the newly forming mRNA. The micrograph shows a polyribosome (many ribosomes) in a single bacterial gene.

Q Why can translation begin before transcription is complete in prokaryotes but not in eukaryotes?

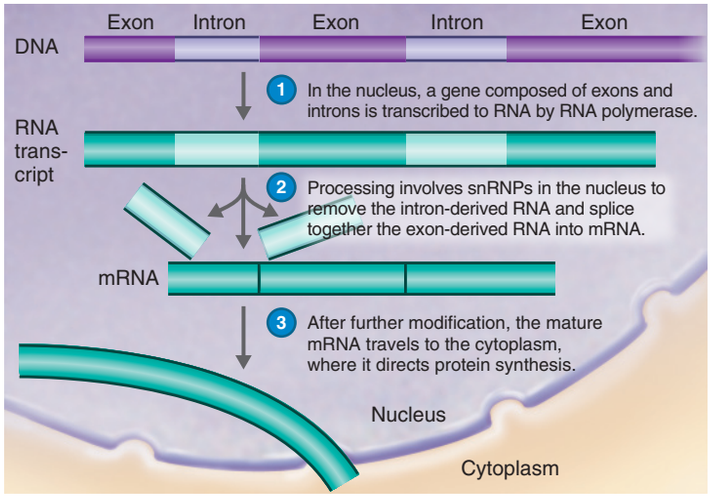


Figure 8.11 RNA processing in eukaryotic cells.

Q Why can't the RNA transcript be used for translation?

To summarize, genes are the units of biological information encoded by the sequence of nucleotide bases in DNA. A gene is expressed, or turned into a product within the cell, through the processes of transcription and translation. The genetic information carried in DNA is transferred to a temporary mRNA molecule by transcription. Then, during translation, the mRNA directs the assembly of amino acids into a polypeptide chain: a ribosome attaches to mRNA, tRNAs deliver the amino acids to the ribosome as directed by the mRNA codon sequence, and the ribosome assembles the amino acids into the chain that will be the newly synthesized protein.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **8-4** What is the role of the promoter, terminator, and mRNA in transcription?
- **8-5** How does mRNA production in eukaryotes differ from the process in prokaryotes?

The Regulation of Bacterial Gene Expression

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

8-6 Define *operon*.

8-7 Explain pre-transcriptional regulation of gene expression in bacteria.

8-8 Explain post-transcriptional regulation of gene expression.

A cell's genetic and metabolic machineries are integrated and interdependent. The bacterial cell carries out an enormous number of metabolic reactions (see Chapter 5). The common feature of all metabolic reactions is that they are catalyzed by enzymes that are proteins synthesized via transcription and translation. Feedback inhibition stops a cell from performing unneeded chemical reactions (Chapter 5) by stopping enzymes that have already been synthesized. We will now look at how chemical reactions are regulated by controlling gene expression.

ASM: The regulation of gene expression is influenced by external and internal molecular cues and/or signals.

Many genes, perhaps 60–80%, are not regulated but are instead *constitutive*, meaning that their products are constantly produced at a fixed rate. Usually these genes, which are effectively turned on all the time, encode enzymes that the cell needs in fairly large amounts for its major life processes. Glycolysis enzymes are examples. But because protein synthesis requires a huge amount of energy, cells save energy by making only those enzymes and other proteins needed at a particular time. The production of such enzymes is regulated so that they are present only when needed. *Trypanosoma*, the protozoan parasite that causes African sleeping sickness, has hundreds of genes coding for surface glycoproteins. Each protozoan cell turns on only one glycoprotein gene at a time. As the host's immune system kills parasites with one type of surface molecule, parasites expressing a different surface glycoprotein can continue to grow.

Pre-transcriptional Control

Two genetic control mechanisms known as induction and repression regulate the transcription of mRNA and, consequently, the synthesis of enzymes from them. These mechanisms control the formation and amounts of enzymes in the cell, not the activities of the enzymes.

The Operon Model of Gene Expression

Details of the control of gene expression by induction and repression are described by the operon theory formulated in the 1960s by François Jacob and Jacques Monod. An **operon** is a group of genes that are transcribed together and controlled by one promoter. In an **inducible operon**, transcription must be turned on. In contrast, in a **repressible operon**, transcription is usually on and must be turned off.

We'll look first at an inducible operon, using the *lac* operon as an example. In *E. coli*, three enzymes of the *lac* operon are needed to metabolize lactose. These include β-galactosidase as well as lac permease, which is involved in the transport of lactose into the cell, and transacetylase, which adds an acetyl group to galactose. This may prevent its transport out of the cell.

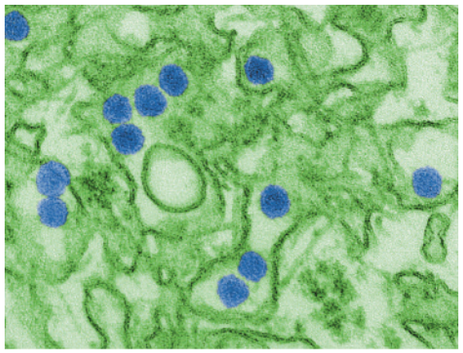
The genes for the three enzymes involved in lactose uptake and utilization are next to each other on the bacterial chromosome and are regulated together (**Figure 8.12**). These genes, which determine the structures of proteins, are called *structural genes* to distinguish them from an adjoining control

CLINICAL FOCUS Tracking Zika Virus

In 2014, Brazilian physicians reported clusters of patients with fever and rash. Reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) was used to detect dengue, chikungunya, West Nile, and Zika viruses. Public health officials were relieved when the cause was identified as Zika virus (ZIKV) because ZIKV had never made anyone sick enough to go to the hospital. ZIKV is an arbovirus (*ar*thropod-*bo*rne virus) that is spread between susceptible vertebrate hosts by blood-feeding arthropods, such as mosquitoes. Some patients reported having rashes and achy joints, but these symptoms weren't long-lasting, and Zika virus disease was common. However, at the time of the 2014 outbreak, local health officials saw a fourfold increase in microcephaly in newborns, indicating that the fetal brain had not developed at the same rate as the body.

Adriana Melo, an obstetrician, sent samples of amniotic fluid from two patients to be tested. RT-PCR confirmed the presence of ZIKV. By 2016, nearly 5000 cases of microcephaly had been reported in Brazil.

This Old World *Flavivirus* was first identified in 1947 in monkeys in the Zika Forest of Uganda. Prior to 2000, only 14 human cases had been documented in the world. In 2007, an outbreak occurred on the island of Yap in Micronesia. Over 70% of Yap residents were infected with ZIKV. However, no deaths or neurological complications were reported.



Flavivirus Zika virus TEM 40 μm

The ZIKV genome consists of a positive, single-stranded RNA consisting of 10,794 base pairs. (Positive RNA can act as mRNA and be translated.) The polyprotein encoded by the genome is cut to produce the proteins that make up the virus. The virus has acquired several mutations, and researchers are using these mutations to determine the virus's journey around the world.

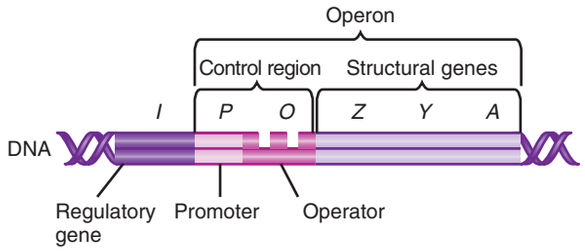
1. Using the portions of the genomes (shown below) that encode viral proteins, can you determine how similar these viruses are? Can you figure out its movement around the world?
   Determine the amino acids encoded, and group the viruses based on percentage of similarity to the Uganda strain.
2. Based on amino acids, there are two groups called clades.
   Can you identify the two groups?
3. The two clades are the African and Asian.
   Calculate the percentage of difference between nucleotides to see how the viruses are related within their clade.
4. The virus in the Americas is most closely related to the Asian strain that circulated in French Polynesia.

Source: GenBank genome sequences.

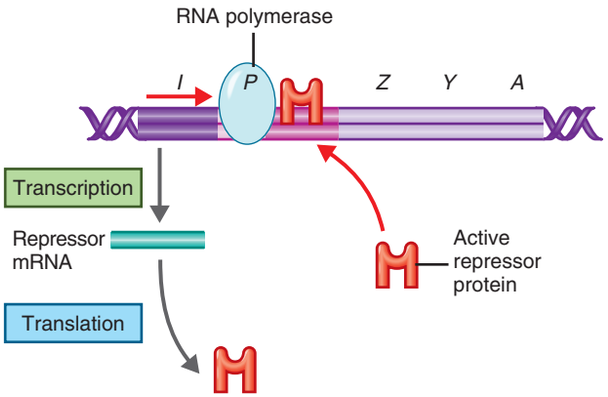
	Amino Acids (see Table 2.5)																		
Brazil	K	K	R	R	S	A	E	T	S	G	L	L	L	T	A	M	A	V	S	K
Colombia	K	K	R	R	S	A	E	T	S	G	L	L	L	T	A	M	A	V	N	K
French Polynesia	K	K	R	R	G	A	D	T	S	L	L	L	L	T	A	M	A	V	S	K
Haiti	K	K	R	R	G	A	D	T	S	L	L	L	L	T	A	M	A	I	S	K
Mexico	K	K	R	R	S	A	E	T	S	L	L	L	L	T	A	M	A	V	N	E
Micronesia	K	K	R	R	G	A	D	T	S	L	L	L	L	T	A	M	A	I	S	K
Nigeria	R	K	R	R	G	A	D	T	S	L	L	L	L	T	V	M	A	I	S	K
Uganda 1947	R	K	R	R	G	A	D	A	S	L	L	L	L	T	V	M	A	I	S	K
United States	K	K	R	R	G	A	E	T	S	L	L	L	L	T	A	M	A	V	S	K

region on the DNA. When lactose is introduced into the culture medium, the *lac* structural genes are all transcribed and translated rapidly and simultaneously. We will now see how this regulation occurs.

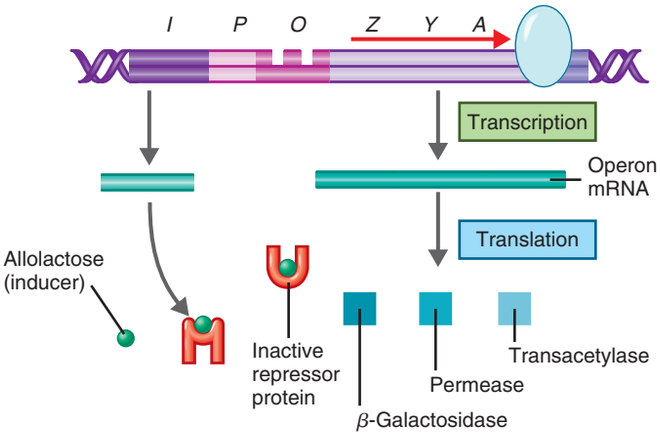
In the control region of the *lac* operon are two relatively short segments of DNA. One, the promoter, is the segment where RNA polymerase initiates transcription. The other is the **operator**, which is like a traffic light that acts as a go or stop signal for transcription of the structural genes. A set of operator and promoter sites and the structural genes they control define an operon; thus, the combination of the three *lac* structural genes and the adjoining control regions makes up the *lac* operon.



1 Structure of the operon. The operon consists of the promoter (*P*) and operator (*O*) sites and structural genes that code for the protein. The operon is regulated by the product of the regulatory gene (*I*).



2 Repressor active, operon off. The repressor protein binds with the operator, preventing transcription from the operon.



3 Repressor inactive, operon on. When the inducer allolactose (an isomer of lactose) binds to the repressor protein, the inactivated repressor can no longer block transcription. The structural genes are transcribed, ultimately resulting in the production of the enzymes needed for lactose catabolism.

Figure 8.12 An inducible operon. Lactose-digesting enzymes are produced in the presence of lactose. In *E. coli*, the genes for the three enzymes are in the *lac* operon. β-galactosidase is encoded by *lacZ*. The *lacY* gene encodes the lac permease, and *lacA* encodes transacetylase.

Q What causes transcription of an inducible enzyme?

A regulatory gene called the *I gene* encodes a repressor protein that switches inducible and repressible operons on or off. In the absence of lactose, this repressor protein binds to the operator site, thus preventing transcription. If lactose is present, the repressor binds to a metabolite of lactose instead of to the operator, and lactose-digesting enzymes are transcribed.

As noted earlier, in repressible operons, the structural genes are transcribed until they are turned off (Figure 8.13). The genes for the enzymes involved in the synthesis of tryptophan are regulated in this manner. The structural genes are transcribed and translated, leading to tryptophan synthesis. When excess tryptophan is present, the tryptophan acts as a **corepressor** binding to the repressor protein. The repressor protein can now bind to the operator, stopping further tryptophan synthesis.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

8-6 Use the following metabolic pathway to answer the questions that follow it.

Substrate A $\xrightarrow{\text{enzyme } a}$ Intermediate B $\xrightarrow{\text{enzyme } b}$ End-product C

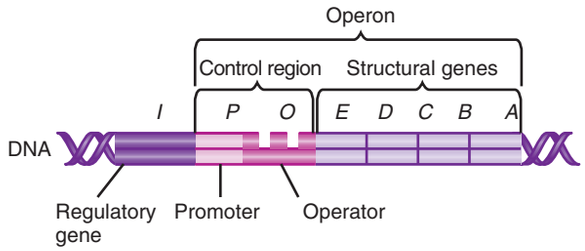
a. If enzyme *a* is inducible and is not being synthesized at present, a (1) _____ protein must be bound tightly to the (2) _____ site. When the inducer is present, it will bind to the (3) _____ so that (4) _____ can occur.

b. If enzyme *a* is repressible, end-product *C*, called a (1) _____, causes the (2) _____ to bind to the (3) _____. What causes repression to end?

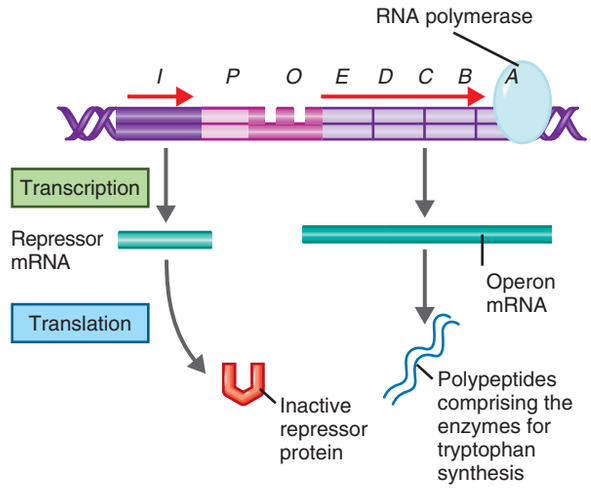
Positive Regulation

Regulation of the lactose operon also depends on the level of glucose in the medium, which in turn controls the intracellular level of the small molecule **cyclic AMP (cAMP)**, a substance derived from ATP that serves as a cellular alarm signal. Enzymes that metabolize glucose are constitutive, and cells grow at their maximal rate with glucose as their carbon source because they can use it most efficiently (Figure 8.14). When glucose is no longer available, cAMP accumulates in the cell. The cAMP binds to the allosteric site of *catabolic activator protein (CAP)*. CAP then binds to the *lac* promoter, which initiates transcription by making it easier for RNA polymerase to bind to the promoter. Thus transcription of the *lac* operon requires both the presence of lactose and the absence of glucose (Figure 8.15).

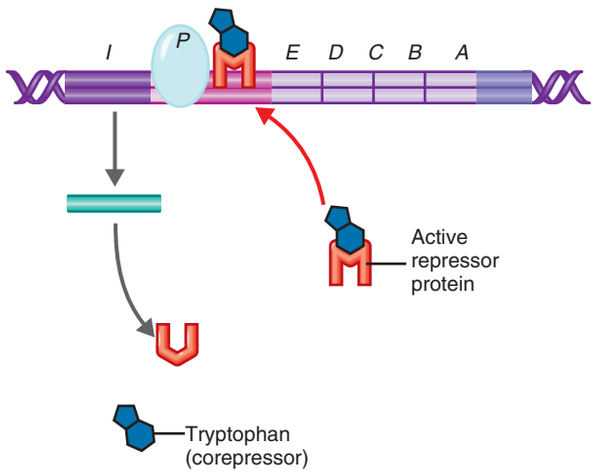
Cyclic AMP is an example of an *alarmone*, a chemical alarm signal that promotes a cell's response to environmental or nutritional stress. (In this case, the stress is the lack of glucose.) The same mechanism involving cAMP allows the cell to use other sugars. Inhibition of the metabolism of alternative carbon sources by glucose is termed **catabolite repression**



1 **Structure of the operon.** The operon consists of the promoter (*P*) and operator (*O*) sites and structural genes that code for the protein. The operon is regulated by the product of the regulatory gene (*I*).



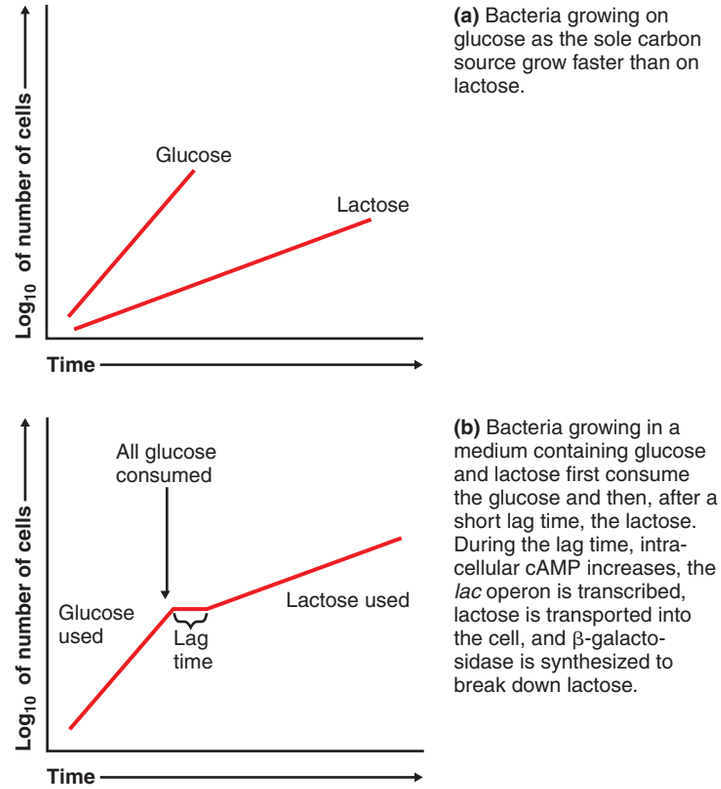
2 **Repressor inactive, operon on.** The repressor is inactive, and transcription and translation proceed, leading to the synthesis of tryptophan.



3 **Repressor active, operon off.** When the corepressor tryptophan binds to the repressor protein, the activated repressor binds with the operator, preventing transcription from the operon.

Figure 8.13 A repressible operon. Tryptophan, an amino acid, is produced by anabolic enzymes encoded by five structural genes. Accumulation of tryptophan represses transcription of these genes, preventing further synthesis of tryptophan. The *E. coli trp* operon is shown here.

Q What causes transcription of a repressible enzyme?



(a) Bacteria growing on glucose as the sole carbon source grow faster than on lactose.

(b) Bacteria growing in a medium containing glucose and lactose first consume the glucose and then, after a short lag time, the lactose. During the lag time, intracellular cAMP increases, the *lac* operon is transcribed, lactose is transported into the cell, and β-galactosidase is synthesized to break down lactose.

Figure 8.14 The growth rate of *E. coli* on glucose and lactose.

Q When both glucose and lactose are present, why will cells use glucose first?

(or the *glucose effect*). When glucose is available, the level of cAMP in the cell is low, and consequently CAP is not bound.

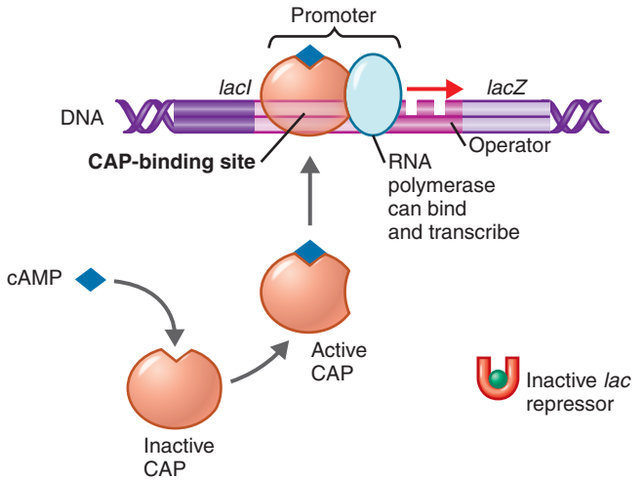
Epigenetic Control

Eukaryotic and bacterial cells can turn genes off by methylating certain nucleotides—that is, by adding a methyl group ($—CH_3$). The methylated (off) genes are passed to offspring cells. Unlike mutations, this isn't permanent, and the genes can be turned on in a later generation. This is called *epigenetic inheritance* (*epigenetic* = on genes). Epigenetics explains why bacteria behave differently in a biofilm.

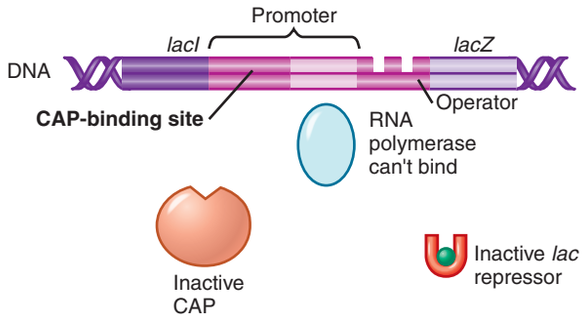
Post-transcriptional Control

Some regulatory mechanisms stop protein synthesis after transcription has occurred. A part of an mRNA molecule, called a **riboswitch**, that binds to a substrate can change the mRNA structure. Depending on the type of change, translation can be initiated or stopped. Both eukaryotes and prokaryotes use riboswitches to control expression of some genes.

Single-stranded RNA molecules of approximately 22 nucleotides, called **microRNAs (miRNAs)**, inhibit protein production in eukaryotic cells. In humans, miRNAs produced



(a) Lactose present, glucose scarce (cAMP level high). If glucose is scarce, the high level of cAMP activates CAP, and the *lac* operon produces large amounts of mRNA for sythesis of lactose-digesting enzymes.



(b) Lactose present, glucose present (cAMP level low). When glucose is present, cAMP is scarce, and CAP is unable to stimulate transcription.

Figure 8.15 Positive regulation of the *lac* operon.

Q **Will transcription of the *lac* operon occur in the presence of lactose and glucose? In the presence of lactose and the absence of glucose? In the presence of glucose and the absence of lactose?**

during development allow different cells to produce different proteins. Heart cells and skin cells have the same genes, but the cells in each organ produce different proteins because of miRNAs produced in each cell type during development. Protein synthesis is inhibited when an miRNA base-pairs with a complementary mRNA, forming a double-stranded RNA. This double-stranded RNA is enzymatically destroyed so that the mRNA-encoded protein is not made (**Figure 8.16**). MiRNAs are also involved in the immune response to infection. Researchers recently discovered that host-produced miRNAs affect growth of intestinal bacteria; that is, different miRNAs promote growth of different bacterial phyla. Similar short RNAs in bacteria enable the cell to cope with environmental stressors, such as low temperature or oxidative damage. The action of another type of RNA, siRNA, is similar and is discussed in Chapter 9.

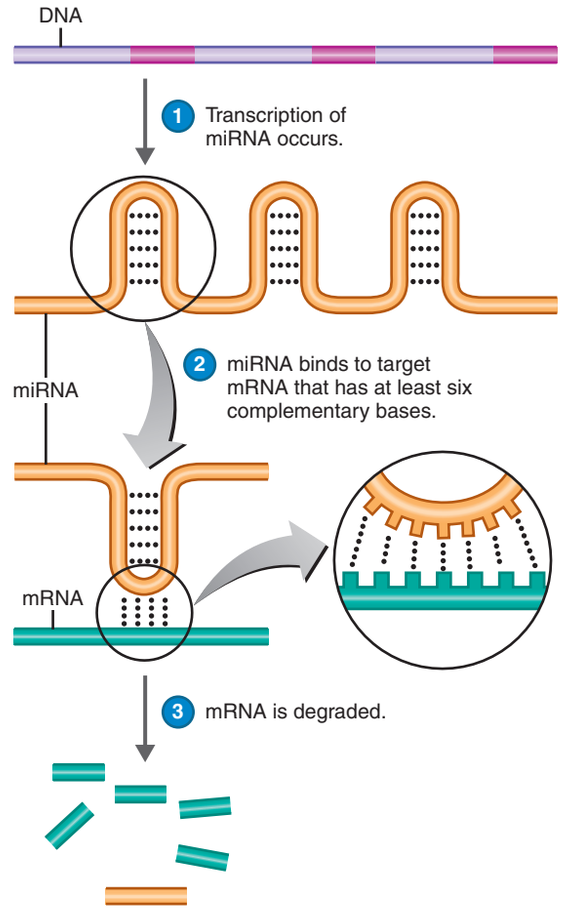


Figure 8.16 MicroRNAs control a wide range of activities in cells.

Q **In mammals, some miRNAs hybridize with viral RNA. What would happen if a mutation occurred in the miRNA gene?**

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **8-7** What is the role of cAMP in regulating gene expression?
- **8-8** How does miRNA stop protein synthesis?

Changes in Genetic Material

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **8-9** Classify mutations by type.
- **8-10** Describe two ways mutations can be repaired.
- **8-11** Describe the effect of mutagens on the mutation rate.
- **8-12** Outline the methods of direct and indirect selection of mutants.
- **8-13** Identify the purpose of and outline the procedure for the Ames test.

A cell's DNA can be changed by mutations or by horizontal gene transfer. Changes in DNA result in genetic variations that can impact microbial function (e.g., biofilm formation, pathogenicity, and antibiotic resistance). Survival and reproduction

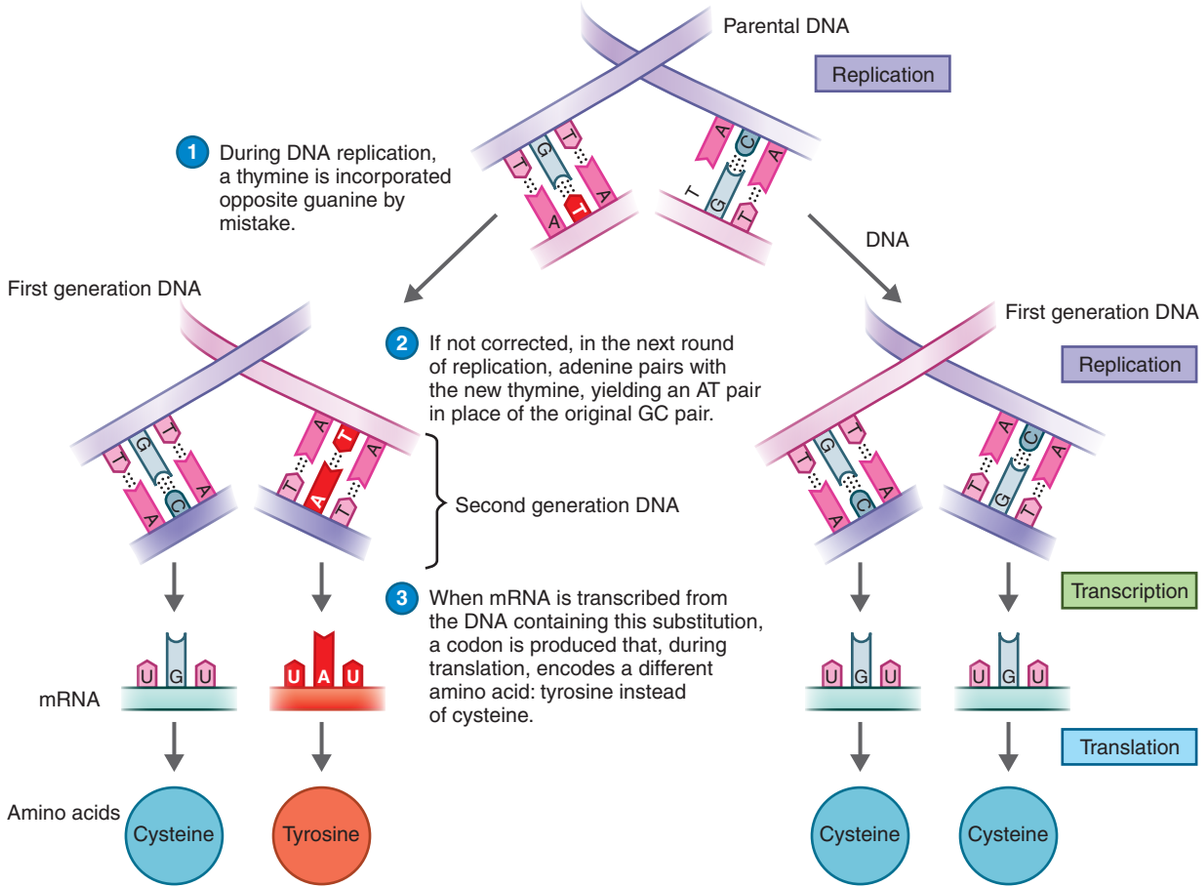


Figure 8.17 Base substitutions. This mutation leads to an altered protein in a grandchild cell.

Q Does a base substitution always result in a different amino acid?

of the bacteria with a new genotype can be favored by natural and human-influenced environments and result in a huge diversity of microorganisms. The survival of new genotypes is called **natural selection**.

Mutation

A **mutation** is a permanent change in the base sequence of DNA. Such a change will sometimes cause a change in the product encoded by that gene. For example, when the gene for an enzyme mutates, the enzyme encoded by the gene may become inactive or less active because its amino acid sequence has changed. Such a change in genotype may be disadvantageous, or even lethal, if the cell loses a phenotypic trait it needs. However, a mutation can be beneficial if, for instance, the altered enzyme encoded by the mutant gene has a new or enhanced activity that benefits the cell. See the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 26.

Types of Mutations

Many simple mutations are silent (neutral); the change in DNA base sequence causes no change in the activity of the product encoded by the gene. Silent mutations commonly occur when one nucleotide is substituted for another in the DNA, especially at a location corresponding to the third position of the mRNA codon. Because of the degeneracy of the genetic code, the resulting new codon might still code for the same amino acid. Even if the amino acid is changed, the function of the protein may not change if the amino acid is in a nonvital portion of the protein, or is chemically very similar to the original amino acid.

The most common type of mutation involving single base pairs is **base substitution** (or *point mutation*), in which a single base at one point in the DNA sequence is replaced with a different base. When the DNA replicates, the result is a substituted base pair (Figure 8.17). For example, AT might be substituted for GC, or CG for GC. If a base substitution occurs within a gene that codes for a protein, the mRNA transcribed from the gene will carry an incorrect base at that position. When the mRNA is translated into protein, the incorrect base may cause the insertion of an incorrect amino acid in the protein. If the base substitution results in an amino acid substitution in

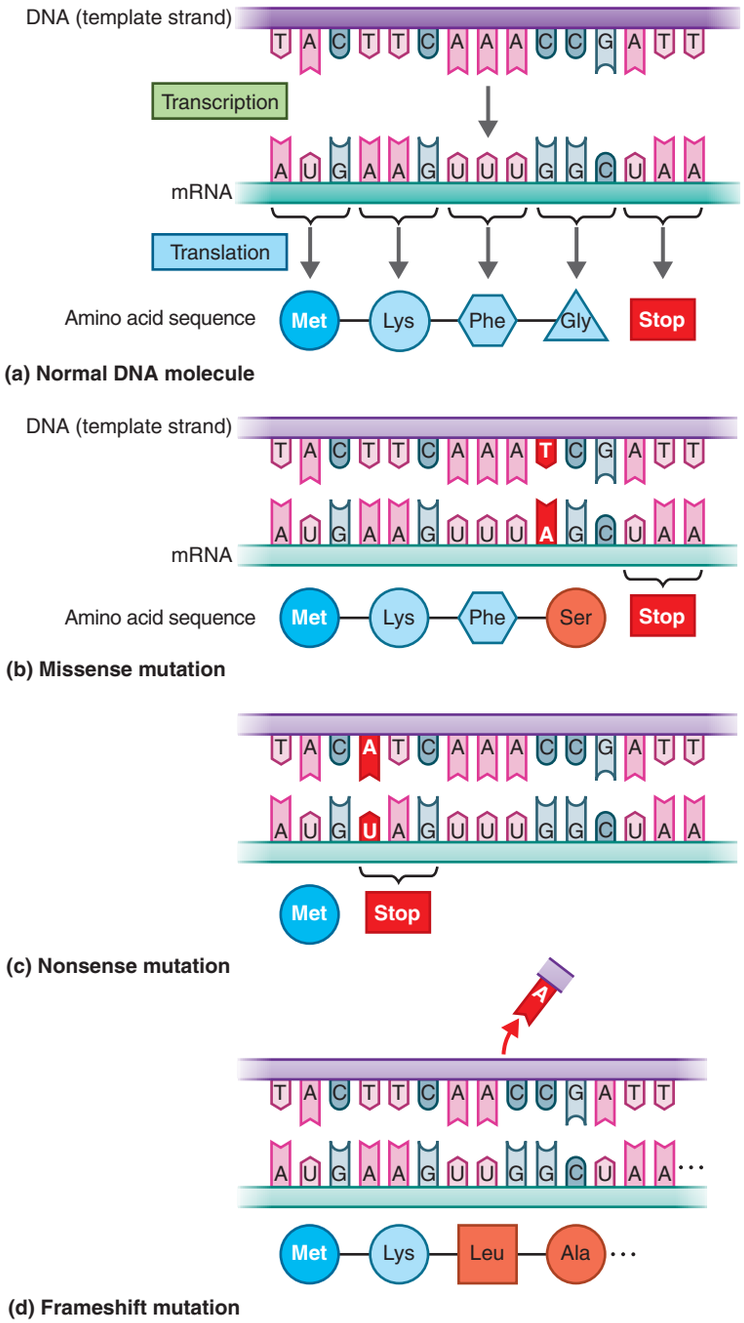


Figure 8.18 Types of mutations and their effects on the amino acid sequences of proteins.

Q What happens if base 9 in (a) is changed to a C?

the synthesized protein, this change in the DNA is known as a **missense mutation** (Figure 8.18a and Figure 8.18b).

The effects of such mutations can be dramatic. For example, sickle cell disease is caused by a single change in the gene for globin, the protein component of hemoglobin. Hemoglobin is primarily responsible for transporting oxygen from the lungs to the tissues. A single change from an A to a T at a specific site results in the change from glutamic acid to valine in the protein. This causes the shape of the hemoglobin molecule to change under conditions of low oxygen, which, in turn, alters the shape of the red blood cells.

By creating a nonsense (stop) codon in the middle of an mRNA molecule, some base substitutions effectively prevent the synthesis of a complete functional protein; only a fragment is synthesized. A base substitution resulting in a nonsense codon is thus called a **nonsense mutation** (Figure 8.18c).

Besides base-pair mutations, there are also changes in DNA called **frameshift mutations**, in which one or a few nucleotide pairs are deleted or inserted in the DNA (Figure 8.18d). This mutation can shift the "translational reading frame"—that is, the three-by-three grouping of nucleotides recognized as codons by the tRNAs during translation. For example, deleting one nucleotide pair in the middle of a gene causes changes in many amino acids downstream from the site of the original mutation. Frameshift mutations almost always result in a long stretch of altered amino acids and the production of an inactive protein from the mutated gene. In most cases, a nonsense codon will eventually be encountered and thereby terminate translation.

Base substitutions and frameshift mutations may occur spontaneously because of occasional mistakes made during DNA replication. These **spontaneous mutations** apparently occur in the absence of any mutation-causing agents.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

8-9 How can a mutation be beneficial?

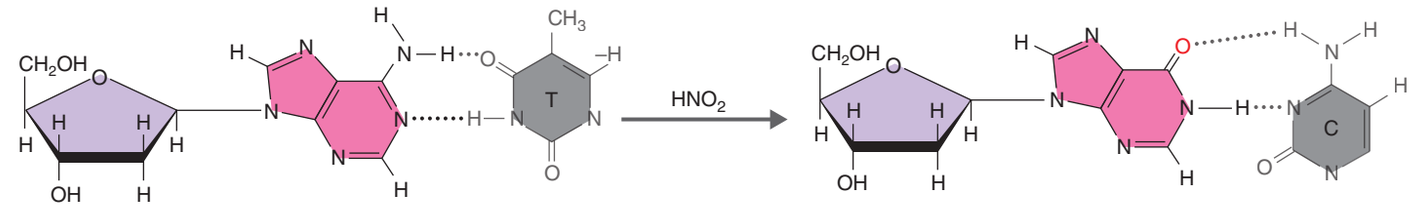
Mutagens

Agents in the environment, such as certain chemicals and radiation, that directly or indirectly bring about mutations are called **mutagens**.

Chemical Mutagens

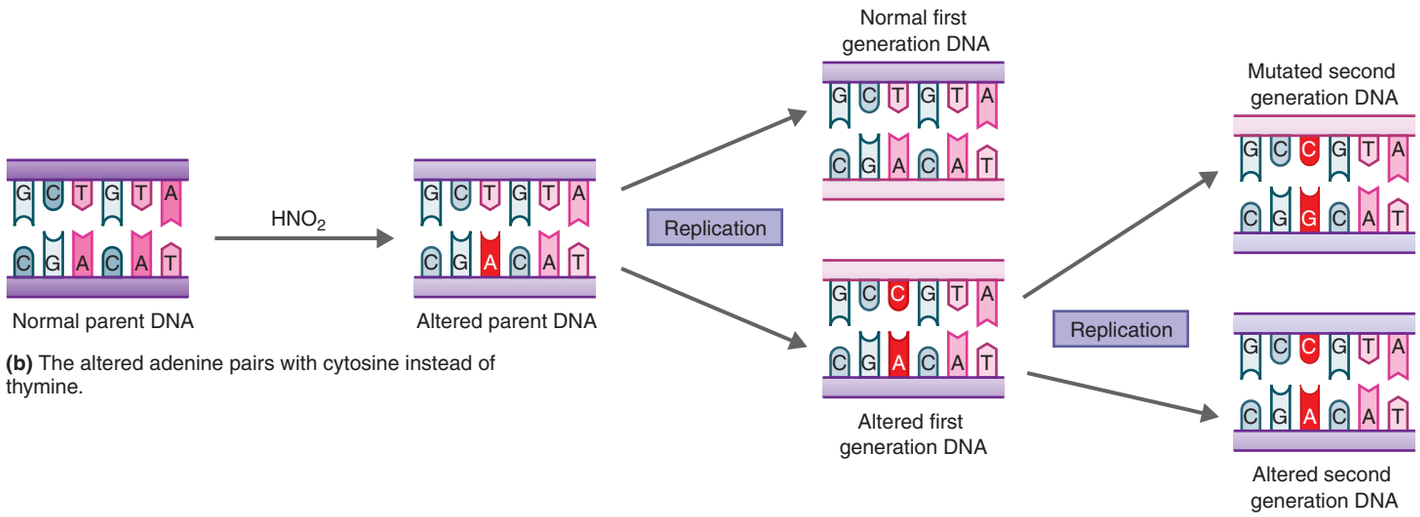
One of the many chemicals known to be a mutagen is nitrous acid. Figure 8.19 shows how exposing DNA to nitrous acid can convert the base adenine to a form that pairs with cytosine instead of the usual thymine. When DNA containing such modified adenines replicates, one newly synthesized DNA molecule will have a base-pair sequence different from that of the parent DNA. Eventually, some AT base pairs of the parent will have been changed to GC base pairs in a grandchild cell. Nitrous acid makes a specific base-pair change in DNA. Like all mutagens, it alters DNA at random locations.

Another type of chemical mutagen is the **nucleoside analog**. These molecules are structurally similar to normal nitrogenous bases, but they have slightly altered base-pairing



(a) Adenine nucleoside normally base-pairs by hydrogen bonds with an oxygen and a hydrogen of a thymine or uracil nucleotide.

Altered adenine will hydrogen bond with a hydrogen and a nitrogen of a cytosine nucleotide.



(b) The altered adenine pairs with cytosine instead of thymine.

Figure 8.19 Oxidation of nucleotides makes a mutagen. The nitrous acid emitted into the air by burning fossil fuels oxidizes adenine.

Q What is a mutagen?

properties. Examples, 2-aminopurine and 5-bromouracil, are shown in Figure 8.20. When nucleoside analogs are given to growing cells, the analogs are randomly incorporated into cellular DNA in place of the normal bases. Then, during

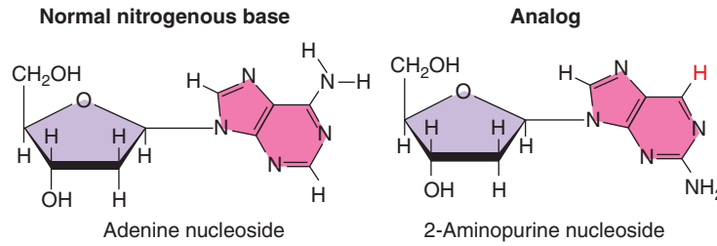
CLINICAL CASE

A person's DNA can undergo mutations. One improper nucleotide in DNA creates a mutation, which could alter the function of the gene. Cancer is abnormal cell growth caused by mutations. These mutations can be inherited or acquired.

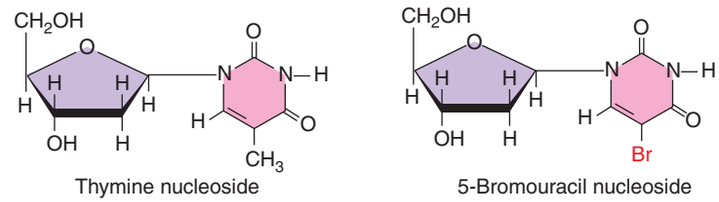
As Marcel and his wife, Janice, drive home from the doctor's office, they review Marcel's family history. Marcel's brother, Robert, passed away from colon cancer 10 years ago, but Marcel has always been the picture of health. Even at 70, he hasn't given a thought to retiring from the Memphis barbeque restaurant that he and Robert co-owned until Robert's death.

What factors may have contributed to Marcel's colon cancer?

Part 1 **Part 2** Part 3 Part 4



(a) The 2-aminopurine is incorporated into DNA in place of adenine but can pair with cytosine, so an AT pair becomes a CG pair.



(b) The 5-bromouracil is used as an anticancer drug because it is mistaken for thymine by cellular enzymes but pairs with cytosine. In the next DNA replication, an AT pair becomes a GC pair.

Figure 8.20 Nucleoside analogs and the nitrogenous bases they replace. A nucleoside is phosphorylated, and the resulting nucleotide used to synthesize DNA.

Q Why do these drugs kill cells?

DNA replication, the analogs cause mistakes in base pairing. The incorrectly paired bases will be copied during subsequent replication of the DNA, resulting in base-pair substitutions in the progeny cells. Some antiviral and antitumor drugs are nucleoside analogs, including AZT (azidothymidine), used to treat HIV infection.

Still other chemical mutagens cause small deletions or insertions, which can result in frameshifts. For instance, under certain conditions, benzopyrene, which is present in smoke and soot, is an effective *frameshift mutagen*. Aflatoxin—produced by *Aspergillus flavus* (a-sper-JIL-lus FLĀ-vus), a mold that grows on peanuts and grain—is a frameshift mutagen. Frameshift mutagens usually have the right size and chemical properties to slip between the stacked base pairs of the DNA double helix. They may work by slightly offsetting the two strands of DNA, leaving a gap or bulge in one strand or the other. When the staggered DNA strands are copied during DNA synthesis, one or more base pairs can be inserted or deleted in the new double-stranded DNA. Interestingly, frameshift mutagens are often potent carcinogens.

Radiation

X rays and gamma rays are forms of radiation that are potent mutagens because of their ability to ionize atoms and molecules. The penetrating rays of ionizing radiation cause electrons to pop out of their usual shells (see Chapter 2). These electrons bombard other molecules and cause more damage, and many of the resulting ions and free radicals (molecular fragments with unpaired electrons) are very reactive. Some of these ions oxidize bases in DNA, resulting in errors in DNA replication and repair that produce mutations (see Figure 8.19). An even more serious outcome is the breakage of covalent bonds in the sugar-phosphate backbone of DNA, which causes physical breaks in chromosomes.

Another form of mutagenic radiation is ultraviolet (UV) light, a nonionizing component of ordinary sunlight. However, the most mutagenic component of UV light (wavelength 260 nm) is screened out by the ozone layer of the atmosphere. The most important effect of direct UV light on DNA is the formation of harmful covalent bonds between pyrimidine bases. Adjacent thymines in a DNA strand can cross-link to form distortions called *thymine dimers* (Figure 8.21, step 1). Such dimers, unless repaired, may cause serious damage or death to the cell because it cannot properly transcribe or replicate such DNA.

Bacteria and other organisms have enzymes that can repair UV-induced damage. **Photolyases**, also known as *light-repair enzymes*, use visible light energy to separate the dimer back to the original two thymines. **Nucleotide excision repair**, shown in Figure 8.21, steps 2–4, is not restricted to UV-induced damage; it can repair mutations from other causes as well. Enzymes cut out the incorrect base and fill in the gap with newly synthesized DNA that is complementary to the correct strand.

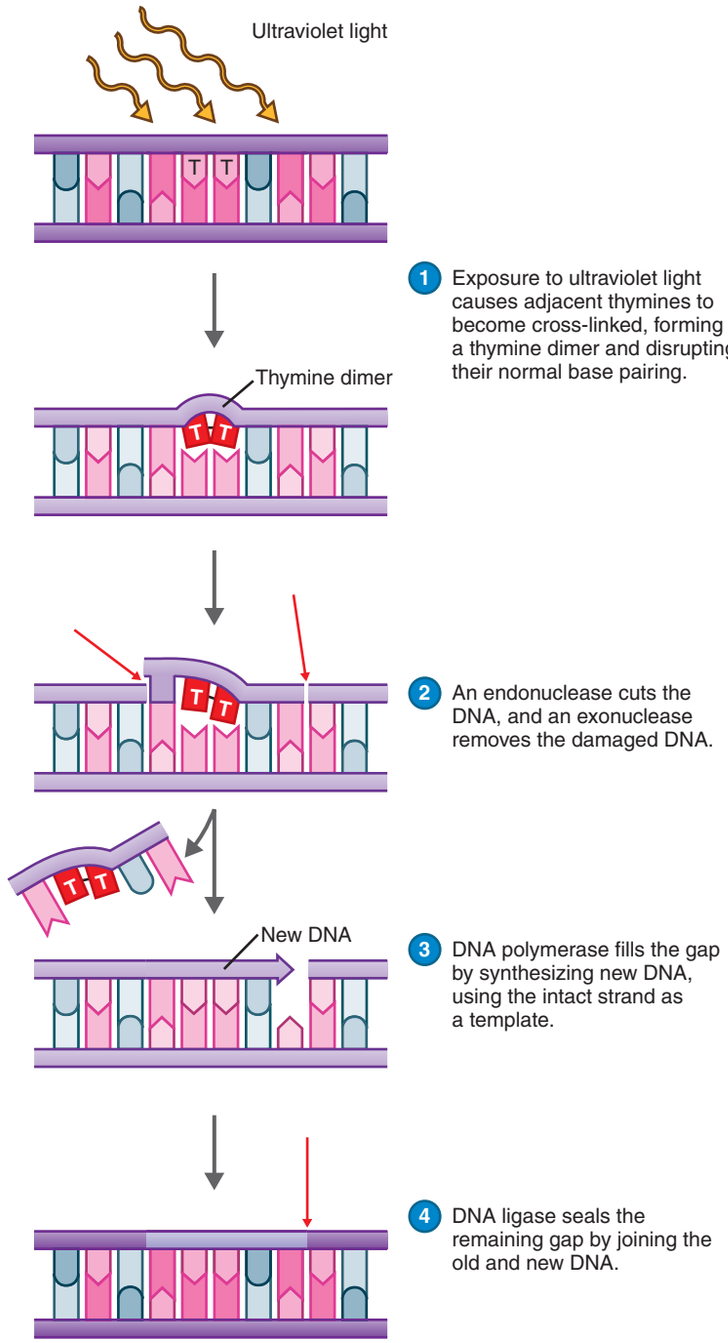


Figure 8.21 The creation and repair of a thymine dimer caused by ultraviolet light. After exposure to UV light, adjacent thymines can become cross-linked, forming a thymine dimer. In the absence of visible light, the nucleotide excision repair mechanism is used in a cell to repair the damage.

Q How do excision repair enzymes "know" which strand is incorrect?

The Frequency of Mutation

The **mutation rate** is the probability that a gene will mutate when a cell divides. The rate is usually stated as a power of 10, and because mutations are very rare, the exponent is always a negative number. For example, if there is one chance in a million that a gene will mutate when the cell divides, the mutation rate is 1/1,000,000, which is expressed as 10^{-6}. Spontaneous mistakes in DNA replication occur at a very low rate, perhaps only once in 10^9 replicated base pairs (a mutation rate of one in a billion). Because the average gene has about 10^3 base pairs, the spontaneous rate of mutation is about one in 10^6 (a million) replicated genes.

Mutations usually occur more or less randomly along a chromosome. The occurrence of random mutations at low frequency is an essential aspect of the adaptation of species to their environment, because evolution requires that genetic diversity be generated randomly and at a low rate. For example, in a bacterial population of significant size—say, greater than 10^7 cells—a few new mutant cells will always be produced in every generation. Most mutations either are harmful and likely to be removed from the gene pool when the individual cell dies or are neutral. However, a few mutations may be beneficial. For example, a mutation that confers antibiotic resistance is beneficial to a population of bacteria that is regularly exposed to antibiotics. Once such a trait has appeared through mutation, cells carrying the mutated gene are more likely than other cells to survive and reproduce as long as the environment stays the same. Soon most of the cells in the population will have the gene; an evolutionary change will have occurred, although on a small scale.

A mutagen usually increases the spontaneous rate of mutation, which is about one in 10^6 replicated genes, by a factor of 10 to 1000 times. In other words, in the presence of a mutagen, the normal rate of 10^{-6} mutations per replicated gene becomes a rate of 10^{-5} to 10^{-3} per replicated gene. Mutagens are used experimentally to enhance the production of mutant cells for research on the genetic properties of microorganisms and for commercial purposes.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **8-10** How can mutations be repaired?
- **8-11** How do mutagens affect the mutation rate?

Identifying Mutants

Cells with specific mutations are always rare compared with other cells in the population. The problem is detecting such a rare event. Typically, mutants are detected by selecting or testing for an altered phenotype.

Such experiments are usually performed with bacteria because they reproduce rapidly, so large numbers of organisms (more than 10^9 per milliliter of nutrient broth) can easily be used. Furthermore, because bacteria generally have only one copy of each gene per cell, the effects of a mutated gene are not masked by the presence of a normal version of the gene, as in many eukaryotic organisms.

Positive (direct) selection involves the detection of mutant cells by rejection of the unmutated parent cells. For example, suppose we were trying to find mutant bacteria that are resistant to penicillin. When the bacterial cells are plated on a medium containing penicillin, the mutant can be identified directly. The few cells in the population that are resistant (mutants) will grow and form colonies, whereas the normal, penicillin-sensitive parental cells cannot grow.

To identify mutations in other kinds of genes, **negative (indirect) selection** can be used. This process selects a cell that cannot perform a certain function, using the technique of **replica plating**. For example, suppose we wanted to use replica plating to identify a bacterial cell that has lost the ability to synthesize the amino acid histidine (Figure 8.22). First, about 100 bacterial cells are inoculated onto an agar plate. This plate, called the master plate, contains a medium with histidine on which all cells will grow. After 18 to 24 hours of incubation, each cell reproduces to form a colony. Then a pad of sterile material, such as latex, filter paper, or velvet, is pressed over the master plate, and some of the cells from each colony adhere to the velvet. Next, the velvet is pressed down onto two (or more) sterile plates. One plate contains a medium without histidine, and one contains a medium with histidine on which the original, nonmutant bacteria can grow. Any colony that grows on the medium with histidine on the master plate but that cannot synthesize its own histidine will not be able to grow on the medium without histidine. The mutant colony can then be identified on the master plate. Of course, because mutants are so rare (even those induced by mutagens), many plates must be screened with this technique to isolate a specific mutant.

Replica plating is a very effective means of isolating mutants that require one or more new growth factors. Any mutant microorganism having a nutritional requirement that is absent in the parent is known as an **auxotroph**. For example, an auxotroph may lack an enzyme needed to synthesize a particular amino acid and will therefore require that amino acid as a growth factor in its nutrient medium.

Identifying Chemical Carcinogens

Many known mutagens have been found to be **carcinogens**, substances that cause cancer in animals, including humans.

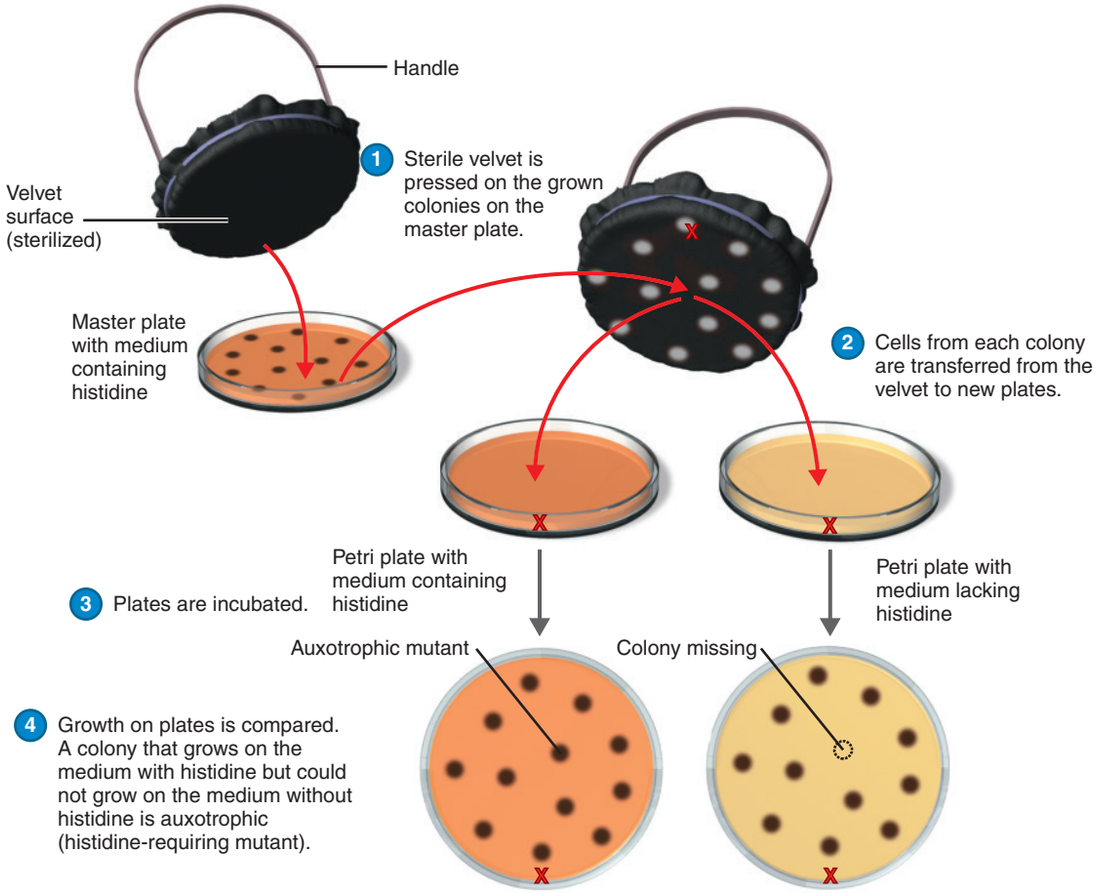


Figure 8.22 Replica plating. In this example, the auxotrophic mutant cannot synthesize histidine. Notice that the plates must be carefully marked (with an X here) to maintain orientation so that colony positions are known in relation to the original master plate.

Q What is an auxotroph?

In recent years, chemicals in the environment, the workplace, and the diet have been implicated as causes of cancer in humans. Animal testing procedures are time-consuming and expensive, so some faster and less expensive procedures for preliminary screening of potential carcinogens that do not use animals have been developed. One of these, called the **Ames test**, uses bacteria as carcinogen indicators.

The Ames test is based on the observation that exposure of mutant bacteria to mutagenic substances may cause new mutations that reverse the effect (the change in phenotype) of the original mutation. These are called *reversions*. Specifically, the test measures the reversion of histidine auxotrophs of *Salmonella* (so-called his^- cells, mutants that have lost the ability to synthesize histidine) to histidine-synthesizing cells (his^+) after treatment with a mutagen (**Figure 8.23**). Bacteria are incubated in both the presence and absence of the substance being tested. Because animal enzymes must activate many chemicals into forms that are chemically reactive for mutagenic or carcinogenic activity to appear, the chemical to be tested and the mutant bacteria are incubated together with rat liver extract, a rich source of

CLINICAL CASE

Not all mutations are inherited; some are induced by genotoxins, that is, chemicals that damage a cell's genetic material. Marcel is not overweight and has never smoked. Researchers have known since the 1970s that people who consume charred meat and meat products are more likely to develop colon cancer. The suspect cancer-causing chemicals are aromatic amines that form during high-heat cooking.

Marcel has owned his Memphis barbeque restaurant for over 50 years. He is a hands-on type of employer and is always in the kitchen overseeing the cooking process. All of his barbequed meat is seared over high heat and then slow-cooked for hours. Marcel is considered the expert in this technique, but now it seems as if his profession could be a factor in his disease.

What test can be used to determine whether a chemical is genotoxic?

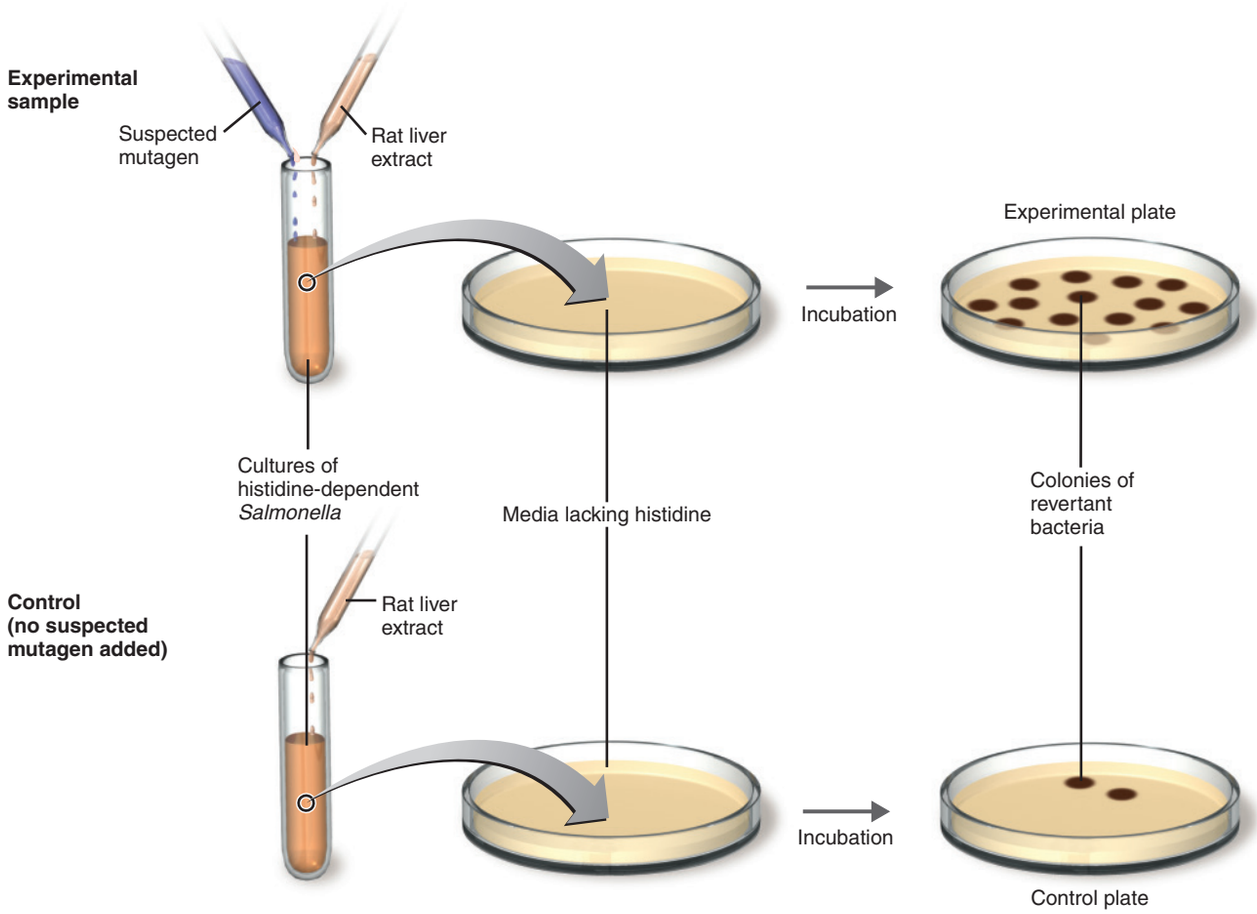


Figure 8.23 The Ames reverse gene mutation test.

Q Do all mutagens cause cancer?

activation enzymes. If the substance being tested is mutagenic, it will cause the reversion of his^- bacteria to his^+ bacteria at a rate higher than the spontaneous reversion rate. The number of observed revertants indicates the degree to which a substance is mutagenic and therefore possibly carcinogenic.

The Ames test can be performed in liquid media with a pH indicator in a 96-well plate. Several potential mutagens or different concentrations of mutagens can be qualitatively tested in different wells. Bacterial growth is determined by a color change of the pH indicator. The Ames test is routinely used to evaluate new chemicals and air and water pollutants.

About 90% of the substances found by the Ames test to be mutagenic have also been shown to be carcinogenic in animals. By the same token, the more mutagenic substances have generally been found to be more carcinogenic.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **8-12** How would you isolate an antibiotic-resistant bacterium? An antibiotic-sensitive bacterium?
- **8-13** What is the principle behind the Ames test?

Genetic Transfer and Recombination

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

8-14 Describe the functions of plasmids and transposons.

8-15 Differentiate horizontal and vertical gene transfer.

8-16 Compare the mechanisms of genetic recombination in bacteria.

Genetic recombination refers to the exchange of genes between two DNA molecules to form new combinations of genes on a chromosome. Figure 8.24 shows one mechanism for genetic recombination. If a cell picks up foreign DNA (called donor DNA in the figure), some of it could insert into the cell's chromosome—a process called **crossing over**—and some of the genes carried by the chromosome will be shuffled. The DNA has recombined, so that the chromosome now carries a portion of the donor's DNA.

If A and B represent DNA from different individuals, how are they brought close enough together to recombine? In eukaryotes, genetic recombination is an ordered process that usually occurs as part of the sexual cycle of the organism. Crossing over generally takes place during the formation of reproductive cells, such that these cells contain recombinant DNA. In bacteria, genetic recombination can happen in a number of ways, which we will discuss in the following sections.

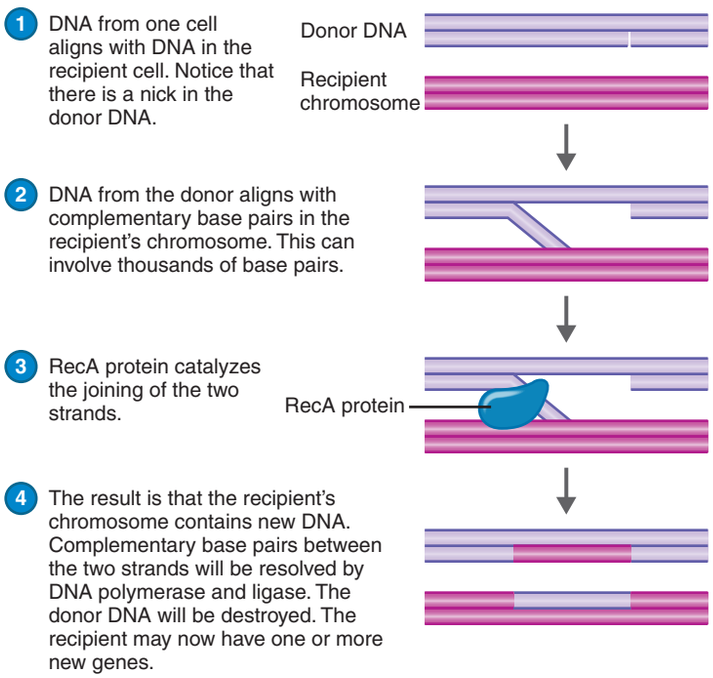


Figure 8.24 Genetic recombination by crossing over. Foreign DNA can be inserted into a chromosome by breaking and rejoining the chromosome. This can insert one or more new genes into the chromosome.

Q What type of enzyme breaks the DNA?

Like mutation, genetic recombination contributes to a population's genetic diversity, which is the source of variation in evolution. In highly evolved organisms such as present-day microbes, recombination is more likely to be beneficial than mutation because recombination will less likely destroy a gene's function and may bring together combinations of genes that enable the organism to carry out a valuable new function.

ASM: Genetic variations can impact microbial functions (e.g., in biofilm formation, pathogenicity, and drug resistance).

The major protein that constitutes the flagella of *Salmonella* is also one of the primary proteins that causes our immune systems to respond. However, these bacteria have the capability of producing two different flagellar proteins. As our immune system mounts a response against those cells containing one form of the flagellar protein, those organisms producing the second are not affected. Which flagellar protein is produced is determined by a recombination event that apparently occurs somewhat randomly within the chromosomal DNA. Thus, by altering the flagellar protein produced, *Salmonella* can better avoid the defenses of the host.

Vertical gene transfer occurs when genes are passed from an organism to its offspring. Plants and animals transmit their genes by vertical transmission. Bacteria can pass their genes not only to their offspring, but also laterally, to other microbes of the same generation. This is known as **horizontal gene transfer** (see Figure 8.2). Horizontal gene transfer between normal microbiota and pathogens may be important in the spread of antibiotic resistance. Horizontal gene transfer between bacteria occurs in several ways. In all of the mechanisms, the transfer involves a **donor cell** that gives a portion of its total DNA to a **recipient cell**. Once transferred, part of the donor's DNA can be incorporated into the recipient's DNA; the remainder is degraded by cellular enzymes. The recipient cell that incorporates donor DNA into its own DNA is called a *recombinant*. The transfer of genetic material between bacteria is by no means a frequent event; it may occur in only 1% or less of an entire population.

Genetic transfer can occur via plasmids and transposons, transformation, conjunction, or transduction. Let's examine in detail these specific types of genetic transfer.

Plasmids and Transposons

Plasmids and transposons are genetic elements that exist outside chromosomes. They occur in both prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms, but this discussion focuses on their role in genetic change in prokaryotes. Plasmids and transposons are called **mobile genetic elements** because they can move from one chromosome to another or from one cell to another.

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

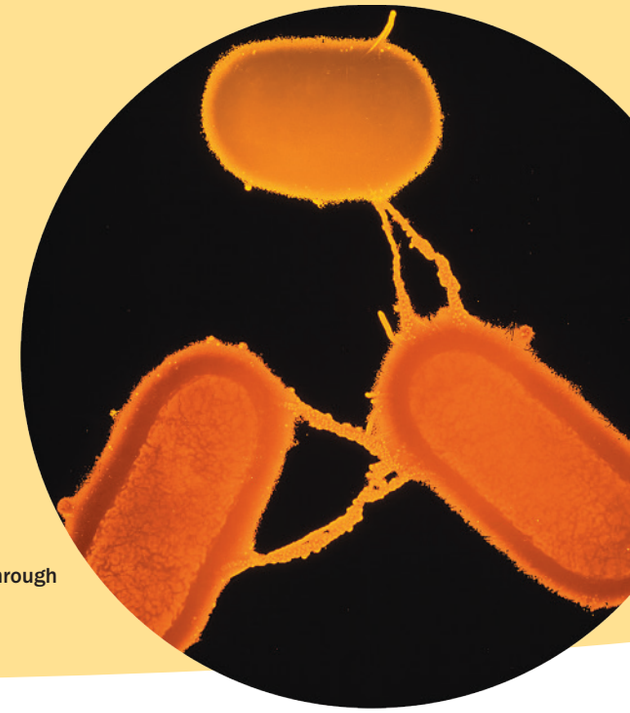
Horizontal Gene Transfer and the Unintended Consequences of Antibiotic Usage

The number of antibiotic-resistant bacteria in our intestinal microbiome increases with age. The reason: exposure to antibiotics. In the presence of a bacteria-killing drug, a resistant mutant will grow while the nonresistant, or susceptible, bacteria die off. So over the human life span, which includes many episodes of illnesses and treatments, we end up populated with more and more antibiotic-resistant microbes.

At first, this seems like a desirable effect. For instance, if beneficial intestinal microbes survive a course of drugs meant to treat your pneumonia, then you may not experience medication side effects such as GI discomfort or diarrhea. Unfortunately, recent evidence shows that a drug-resistant microbiome may actually threaten us in ways we previously didn't understand.

Scientists suspect that drug resistance in pathogenic bacteria often originates from drug-resistant normal microbiota. Nearly half of the resistance genes identified in intestinal bacteria are identical to resistance genes found in pathogens. Swapping of genes between species that come in contact with each other (horizontal gene transfer) happens easily in the intestines, where large numbers of different microbes mingle. In one study, *E. coli* bacteria that were resistant to the drugs sulfonamide and ampicillin were found residing in volunteers who ingested *E. coli* bacteria that were susceptible to these antibiotics. How could this be? The researchers traced the drug-resistance genes to a plasmid found in *E. coli* that had resided in the volunteers before the study—the resistant bacteria had transferred the plasmid to the drug-susceptible bacteria once the different strains met up in the intestine. Likewise, resistance to the drug vancomycin is believed to have transferred from the commensal bacterium *Enterococcus faecalis* to pathogenic strains of *S. aureus*. The resistance gene was found on a conjugative plasmid in both species.

Antibiotics remain an essential part of modern health care. However, these days, weighing whether an antibiotic is truly needed is all the more important.



Plasmids can be transferred between unrelated bacteria through cytoplasmic bridges between cells.

Plasmids

Recall from Chapter 4 that plasmids are self-replicating, gene-containing, circular pieces of DNA about 1–5% the size of the bacterial chromosome (**Figure 8.25**). They are found mainly in bacteria but also in some eukaryotic microorganisms, such as *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. The F factor is a **conjugative plasmid** that carries genes for sex pili and for the transfer of the plasmid to another cell. Although plasmids are usually dispensable, under certain conditions genes carried by plasmids can be crucial to the survival and growth of the cell. For example, **dissimilation plasmids** code for enzymes that trigger the catabolism of certain unusual sugars and hydrocarbons. Some species of *Pseudomonas* can actually use such exotic substances as toluene, camphor, and petroleum as primary carbon and energy sources because they have catabolic enzymes encoded by genes carried on plasmids. Such specialized capabilities permit the survival of those microorganisms in very diverse and challenging environments. Because of their ability to degrade and detoxify a variety of unusual compounds, many of them are being investigated for possible use in the cleanup of environmental wastes.

Other plasmids encode proteins that enhance the pathogenicity of a bacterium. The strain of *E. coli* that causes infant diarrhea and traveler's diarrhea carries plasmids that code for toxin production and for bacterial attachment to intestinal cells. Without these plasmids, *E. coli* is a harmless resident of the large intestine; with them, it is pathogenic. Other plasmid-encoded toxins include the exfoliative toxin of *S. aureus, Clostridium tetani* neurotoxin, and toxins of *Bacillus anthracis*. Still other plasmids contain genes for the synthesis of **bacteriocins**, toxic proteins that kill other bacteria. These plasmids have been found in many bacterial genera, and they are useful markers for the identification of certain bacteria in clinical laboratories.

Resistance factors (R factors) are plasmids that have significant medical importance. They were first discovered in Japan in the late 1950s after several dysentery epidemics. In some of these epidemics, the infectious agent was resistant to the usual antibiotic. Following isolation, the pathogen was also found to

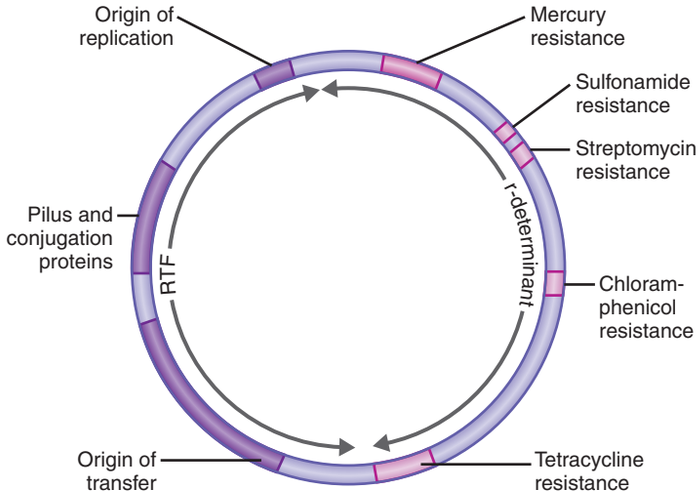


Figure 8.25 R factor, a type of plasmid. **(a)** A diagram of R factor R1. This plasmid consists of about 97,000 nucleotides and has two parts: the RTF contains genes needed for plasmid replication and transfer of the plasmid by conjugation, and the r-determinant carries genes for resistance to four different antibiotics (sulfonamide, streptomycin, chloramphenicol, tetracycline) and to mercury. **(b)** Plasmids from *E. coli* bacteria.

Q Why are R factors important in the treatment of infectious diseases?

be resistant to a number of other antibiotics. In addition, other normal bacteria from the patients (such as *E. coli*) proved to be resistant as well. Researchers soon discovered that these bacteria acquired resistance through the spread of genes from one organism to another. The plasmids that mediated this transfer are R factors.

R factors carry genes that confer upon their host cell resistance to antibiotics, heavy metals, or cellular toxins. Many R factors contain two groups of genes. One group is called the **resistance transfer factor (RTF)** and includes genes for plasmid replication and conjugation. The other group, the **r-determinant**, has the resistance genes; it codes for the production of enzymes that inactivate certain drugs or toxic substances (Figure 8.25a). Different R factors, when present in the same cell, can recombine to produce R factors with new combinations of genes in their r-determinants.

In some cases, the accumulation of resistance genes on a single plasmid is quite remarkable. For example, Figure 8.25a shows a genetic map of resistance plasmid R100. This particular plasmid can be transferred between a number of enteric genera, including *Escherichia, Klebsiella,* and *Salmonella*.

R factors present serious problems for treating infectious diseases with antibiotics. The widespread use of antibiotics in medicine and agriculture (see the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 20) has led to the preferential survival (selection) of bacteria that have R factors, so populations of resistant bacteria grow larger and larger. The transfer of resistance between bacterial cells of a population, and even between bacteria of different genera, also contributes to the problem. The ability to reproduce sexually with members of its own species defines a eukaryotic species. However, a bacterial species can conjugate and transfer plasmids to other species. *Neisseria* may have acquired its penicillinase-producing plasmid from *Streptococcus,* and *Agrobacterium* can transfer plasmids to plant cells (see Figure 9.20). Nonconjugative plasmids may be transferred from one cell to another by inserting themselves into a conjugative plasmid or a chromosome or by transformation when released from a dead cell. Insertion is made possible by an insertion sequence, which will be discussed shortly.

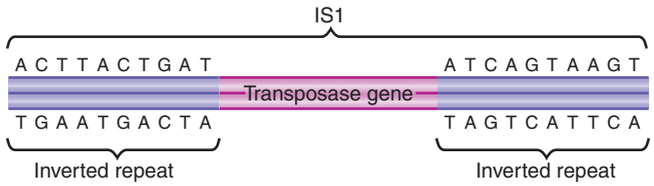
Plasmids are an important tool for genetic engineering, discussed in Chapter 9.

Transposons

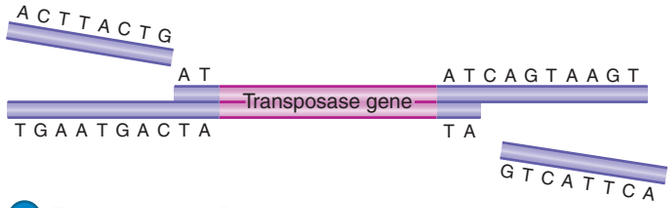
Transposons are small segments of DNA that can move (be "transposed") from one region of a DNA molecule to another. These pieces of DNA are 700 to 40,000 base pairs long.

In the 1950s, American geneticist Barbara McClintock discovered transposons in corn, but they occur in all organisms and have been studied most thoroughly in microorganisms. They may move from one site to another site on the same chromosome or to another chromosome or plasmid. As you might imagine, the frequent movement of transposons could wreak havoc inside a cell. For example, as transposons move about on chromosomes, they may insert themselves *within* genes, inactivating them. Fortunately, transposition occurs relatively rarely. The frequency of transposition is comparable to the spontaneous mutation rate that occurs in bacteria—that is, from 10^{-5} to 10^{-7} per generation.

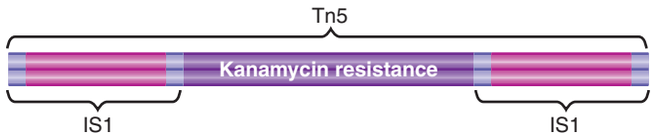
All transposons contain the information for their own transposition. As shown in Figure 8.26a, the simplest transposons, also called **insertion sequences (IS)**, contain only a gene that codes for an enzyme (*transposase,* which catalyzes the cutting and resealing of DNA that occurs in transposition) and recognition sites. *Recognition sites* are short inverted repeat sequences of DNA that the enzyme recognizes as recombination sites between the transposon and the chromosome. Class 2 transposons insert themselves into a chromosome. Class 1 transposons



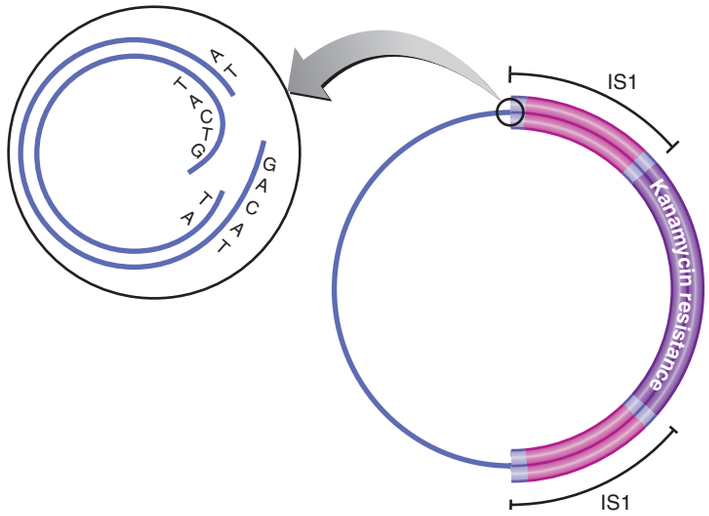
(a) An insertion sequence (IS), the simplest transposon, contains a gene for transposase, the enzyme that catalyzes transposition. The tranposase gene is bounded at each end by inverted repeat sequences that function as recognition sites for the transposon. IS1 is one example of an insertion sequence, shown here with simplified IR sequences.



1 Transposase cuts DNA, leaving sticky ends.



(b) Complex transposons carry other genetic material in addition to transposase genes. The example shown here, Tn5, carries the gene for kanamycin resistance and has complete copies of the insertion sequence IS1 at each end.



2 Sticky ends of transposon and target DNA anneal.

(c) Insertion of the transposon Tn5 into R100 plasmid

Figure 8.26 Class 2 transposons and insertion.

Q Why are transposons sometimes referred to as "jumping genes"?

are copied to RNA by reverse transcriptase, which is discussed in Chapter 13 and then back to DNA for insertion.

Complex transposons also carry other genes not connected with the transposition process. For example, bacterial transposons may contain genes for enterotoxin or for antibiotic resistance (Figure 8.26b). Plasmids such as R factors are frequently made up of a collection of transposons (Figure 8.26c).

Transposons with antibiotic resistance genes are of practical interest, but there is no limitation on the kinds of genes that transposons can have. Thus, transposons provide a natural mechanism for the movement of genes from one chromosome to another. Furthermore, because they may be carried between cells on plasmids or viruses, they can also spread from one organism—or even species—to another. For example, vancomycin resistance was transferred from *E. faecalis* to *S. aureus* via a transposon called Tn1546. Transposons are thus a potentially powerful mediator of evolution in organisms.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

8-14 What types of genes do plasmids carry?

Transformation in Bacteria

During the process of **transformation**, genes are transferred from one bacterium to another as "naked" DNA in solution—that is, DNA not within a cell. This process was first demonstrated over 70 years ago, although it was not understood at the time. Not only did transformation show that genetic material could be transferred from one bacterial cell to another, but study of this phenomenon eventually led to the conclusion that DNA is the genetic material. The initial experiment on transformation was performed by Frederick Griffith in England in 1928 while he was working with two strains of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. One, a virulent strain, has a polysaccharide capsule that prevents phagocytosis. The bacteria grow and cause pneumonia. The other, an avirulent strain, lacks the capsule and does not cause disease.

Griffith was interested in determining whether injections of heat-killed bacteria of the encapsulated strain could be used to vaccinate mice against pneumonia. As he expected, injections of living encapsulated bacteria killed the mouse (Figure 8.27a); injections of live nonencapsulated bacteria (Figure 8.27b) or dead encapsulated bacteria (Figure 8.27c) did not kill the mouse. However, when the dead encapsulated bacteria were mixed with live nonencapsulated bacteria and injected into the mice, many of the mice died. In the blood of the dead mice, Griffith found living, encapsulated bacteria. Hereditary material (genes) from the dead bacteria had entered the live cells and changed them genetically so that their progeny were encapsulated and therefore virulent (Figure 8.27d).

Subsequent investigations based on Griffith's research revealed that bacterial transformation could be carried out without mice. A broth was inoculated with live nonencapsulated bacteria. Dead encapsulated bacteria were then added to

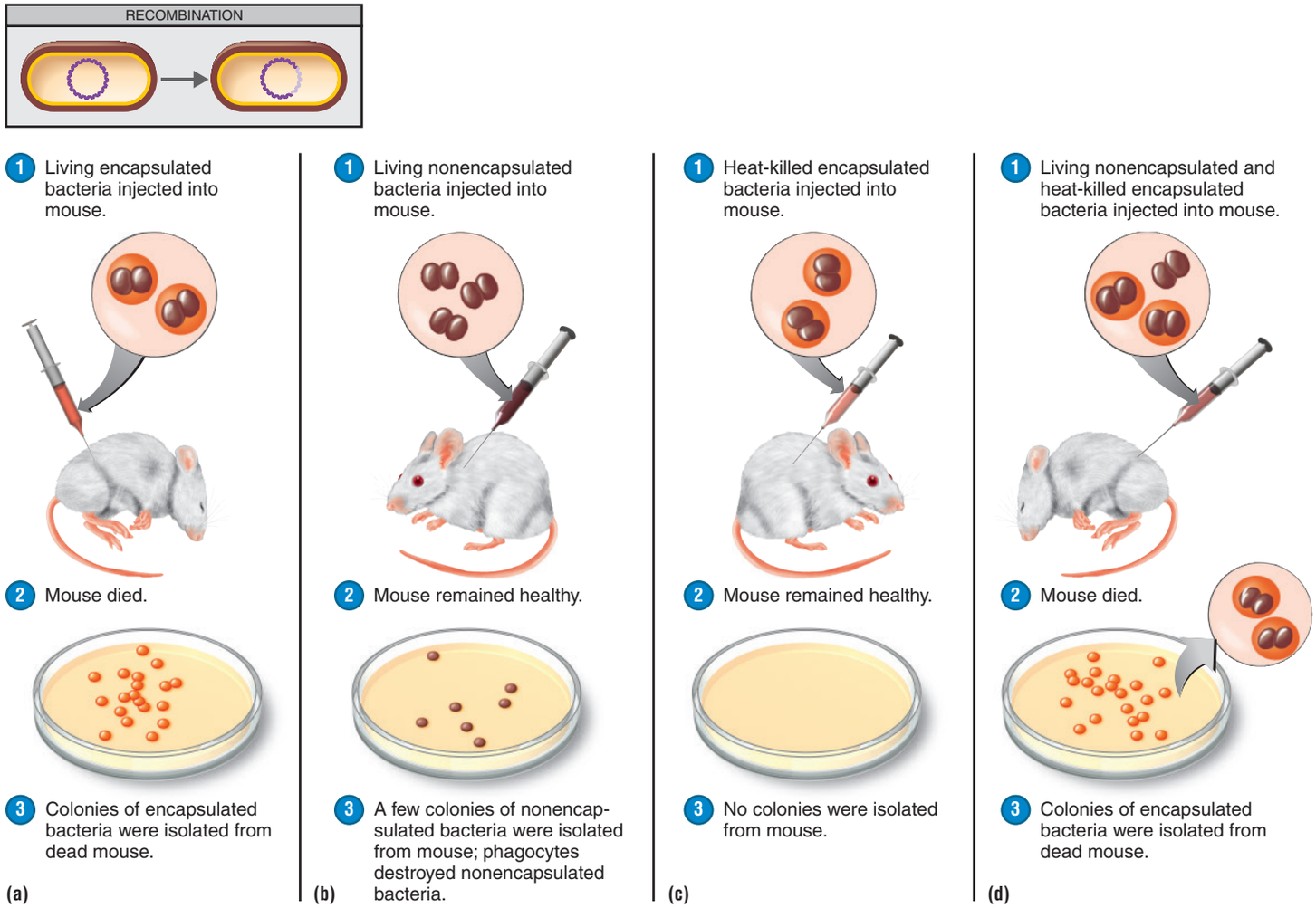


Figure 8.27 Griffith's experiment demonstrating genetic transformation.
(a) Living encapsulated bacteria caused disease and death when injected into a mouse. **(b)** Living nonencapsulated bacteria are readily destroyed by the phagocytic defenses of the host, so the mouse remained healthy after injection. **(c)** After being killed by heat, encapsulated bacteria lost the ability to cause disease. **(d)** However, the combination of living nonencapsulated bacteria and heat-killed encapsulated bacteria (neither of which alone causes disease) did cause disease. Somehow, the live nonencapsulated bacteria were transformed by the dead encapsulated bacteria so that they acquired the ability to form capsules and therefore cause disease. Subsequent experiments proved the transforming factor to be DNA.

Q Why did encapsulated bacteria kill the mouse while nonencapsulated bacteria did not? What killed the mouse in (d)?

the broth. After incubation, the culture was found to contain living bacteria that were encapsulated and virulent. The nonencapsulated bacteria had been transformed; they had acquired a new hereditary trait by incorporating genes from the killed encapsulated bacteria.

The next step was to extract various chemical components from the killed cells to determine which component caused the transformation. These crucial experiments were performed in the United States by Oswald T. Avery and his associates Colin M. MacLeod and Maclyn McCarty. After years of research, they announced in 1944 that the component responsible for transforming harmless *S. pneumoniae* into virulent strains was DNA. Their results provided one of the conclusive indications that DNA was indeed the carrier of genetic information.

Since the time of Griffith's experiment, considerable information has been gathered about transformation. In nature, some bacteria, perhaps after death and cell lysis, release their DNA into the environment. Other bacteria can then encounter the DNA and, depending on the particular species and growth conditions, take up fragments of DNA and integrate them into their own chromosomes by

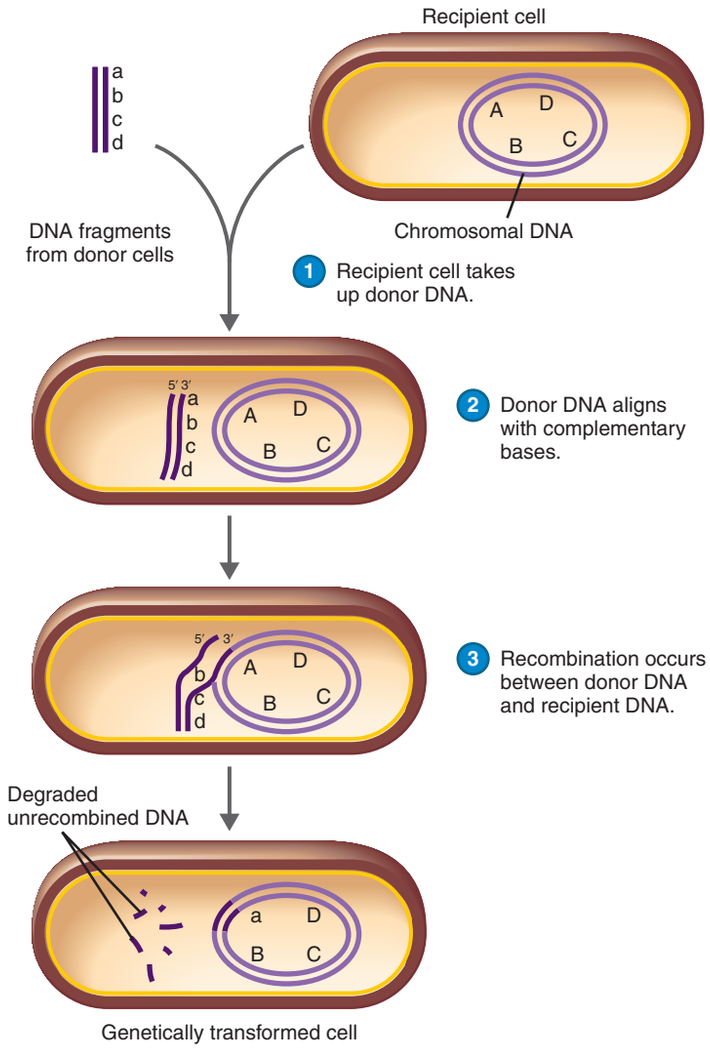


Figure 8.28 The mechanism of genetic transformation in bacteria. Some similarity is needed for the donor and recipient to align. Genes *a*, *b*, *c*, and *d* may be mutations of genes *A*, *B*, *C*, and *D*.

Q What type of enzyme cuts the donor DNA?

recombination. A protein called *RecA* binds to the cell's DNA and then to donor DNA, causing the exchange of strands. A recipient cell with this new combination of genes is a kind of hybrid, or recombinant cell (Figure 8.28). All the descendants of such a recombinant cell will be identical to it. Transformation occurs naturally among very few genera of bacteria, including *Bacillus*, *Haemophilus* (hē-MAH-fil-us), *Neisseria*, *Acinetobacter* (a-sin-Ē-tō-bak′ter), and certain strains of the genera *Streptococcus* and *Staphylococcus*. These cells actively take in DNA from the environment.

When a recipient cell can take up the donor DNA, it is said to be **competent**. In the laboratory, cells can be made competent by making pores in the membrane with Ca^{2+}.

Conjugation in Bacteria

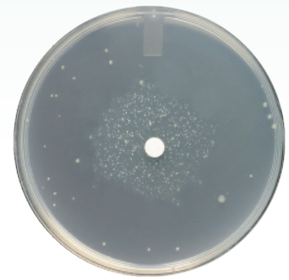
Another mechanism by which genetic material is transferred from one bacterium to another is known as **conjugation**. Conjugation is mediated by a *conjugative plasmid*.

Conjugation differs from transformation in two major ways. First, conjugation requires direct cell-to-cell contact. Second, the conjugating cells must generally be of opposite mating type; donor cells must carry the plasmid, and recipient cells usually do not. In gram-negative bacteria, the plasmid carries genes that code for the synthesis of *sex pili*, projections from the donor's cell surface that contact the recipient and help bring the two cells into direct contact (Figure 8.29a). Gram-positive bacterial cells produce sticky surface molecules that cause cells to come into direct contact with each other. In the process of conjugation, the plasmid is replicated during the transfer of a single-stranded copy of the plasmid DNA to the recipient, where the complementary strand is synthesized (Figure 8.29b).

Because most experimental work on conjugation has been done with *E. coli*, we will describe the process in this organism. In *E. coli*, the **F factor (fertility factor)** was the first plasmid observed to be transferred between cells during conjugation. Donors carrying F factors (F^+ cells) transfer the plasmid to recipients (F^- cells),

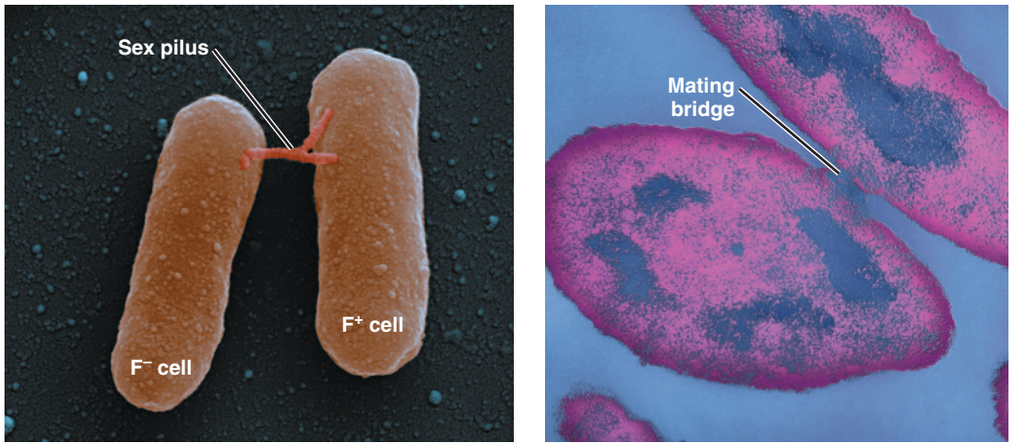
CLINICAL CASE Resolved

The Ames test allows rapid screening of chemicals for genotoxicity. The his^- mutant *Salmonella* bacteria used in the Ames test are spread over glucose–minimal salts agar plates. A paper disk saturated with 2-aminofluorene (2-AF), an aromatic amine, is placed on the culture. The figure, for example, shows that reversion of the his^- mutation allowed the *Salmonella* to grow. This indicates that the chemical is mutagenic and is therefore potentially carcinogenic.



There are studies indicating that 2-AF activated by enzymes is more damaging than 2-AF alone, suggesting that the interaction between diet and intestinal microbiota is more likely to cause cancer than just diet. Variations in diet produce little change in the kinds of bacteria in the intestine, but they produce dramatic changes in the metabolic activity of the bacteria.

The detection of serrated colorectal polyps from Marcel's stool DNA test led to a diagnosis of an early, rather than late, stage of colorectal cancer. The offending polyps are found and removed, and Marcel undergoes chemotherapy to kill any missed cancer cells in his colon.



(a) Gram-negative bacteria. **(b)** Gram-positive bacteria.

Figure 8.29 Bacterial conjugation.

Q What is an F^+ cell?

which become F^+ cells as a result (Figure 8.30a). In some cells carrying F factors, the factor integrates into the chromosome, converting the F^+ cell to an **Hfr cell** (high frequency of recombination) (Figure 8.30b). When conjugation occurs between an Hfr cell and an F^- cell, the Hfr cell's chromosome (with its integrated F factor) replicates, and a parental strand of the chromosome is transferred to the recipient cell (Figure 8.30c). Replication of the Hfr chromosome begins in the middle of the integrated F factor, and a small piece of the F factor leads the chromosomal genes into the F^- cell. Usually, the chromosome breaks before it is completely transferred. Once within the recipient cell, donor DNA can recombine with the recipient's DNA. (Donor DNA that is not integrated is degraded.) Therefore, by conjugation with an Hfr cell, an F^- cell may acquire new versions of chromosomal genes (just as in transformation). However, it remains an F^- cell because it did not receive a complete F factor during conjugation.

Conjugation is used to map the location of genes on a bacterial chromosome (Figure 8.31). The genes for the synthesis of threonine (*thr*) and leucine (*leu*) are first, reading clockwise from 0. Their locations were determined by conjugation experiments. Assume that conjugation is allowed for only 1 minute between an Hfr strain that is his^+, pro^+, thr^+, and leu^+, and an F^- strain that is his^-, pro^-, thr^-, and leu^-. If the F^- acquired the ability to synthesize threonine, then the *thr* gene is located early in the chromosome, between 0 and 1 minute. If after 2 minutes the F^- cell now becomes thr^+ and leu^+, the order of these two genes on the chromosome must be *thr, leu*.

Transduction in Bacteria

A third mechanism of genetic transfer between bacteria is **transduction**. In this process, bacterial DNA is transferred from a donor cell to a recipient cell inside a virus that infects bacteria, called a **bacteriophage**, or **phage**. (Phages will be discussed further in Chapter 13.)

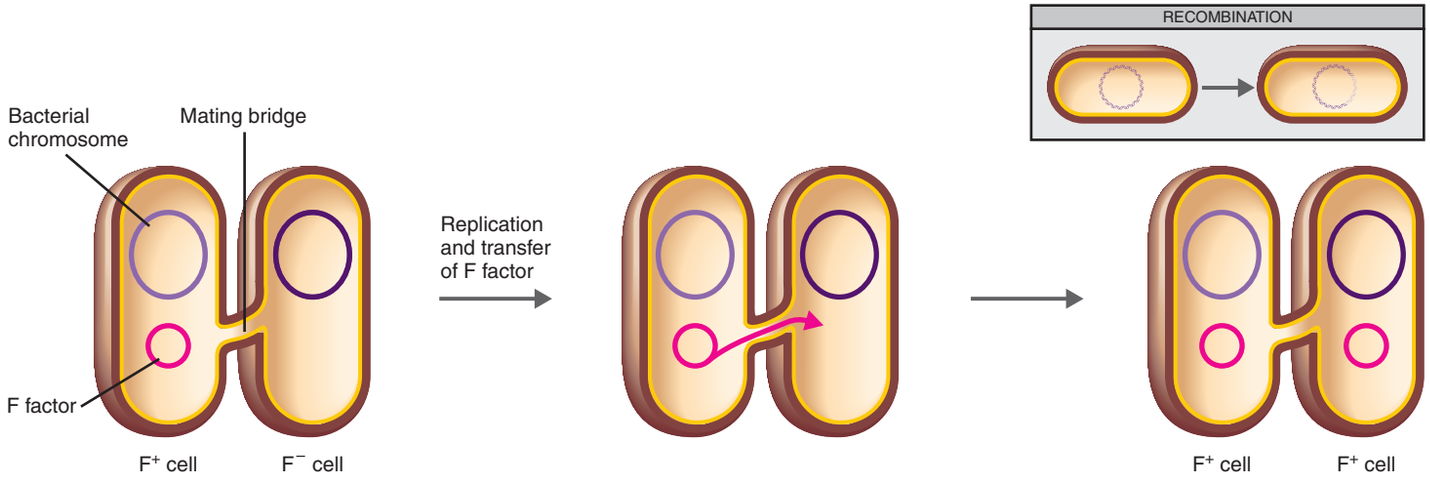
To understand how transduction works, we will consider the life cycle of one type of transducing phage of *E. coli*; this phage carries out **generalized transduction** (Figure 8.32).

During phage reproduction, phage DNA and proteins are synthesized by the host bacterial cell. The phage DNA is typically packaged inside the phage protein coat. However, as shown in Figure 8.32 step 3, pieces of bacterial DNA may also be packaged inside the phage. When this occurs, lysis of the bacterial cell releases phages carrying bacteria DNA, plasmid DNA, or even DNA from another virus. These phages can then go on to infect new host cells.

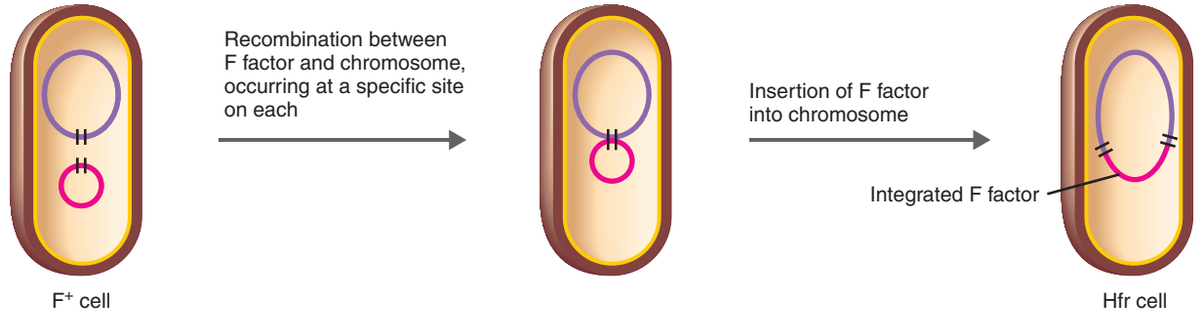
All genes contained within a bacterium infected by a generalized transducing phage are equally likely to be packaged in a phage coat and transferred. In another type of transduction, called **specialized transduction**, only certain bacterial genes are transferred. Specialized transduction is discussed in Chapter 13. In one type of specialized transduction, the phage codes for certain toxins produced by their bacterial hosts, such as diphtheria toxin for *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* (kor'ī-nē-bak-TI-rē-um dif-THI-rē-ī), erythrogenic toxin for *Streptococcus pyogenes*, and Shiga toxin for *E. coli* O157:H7.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

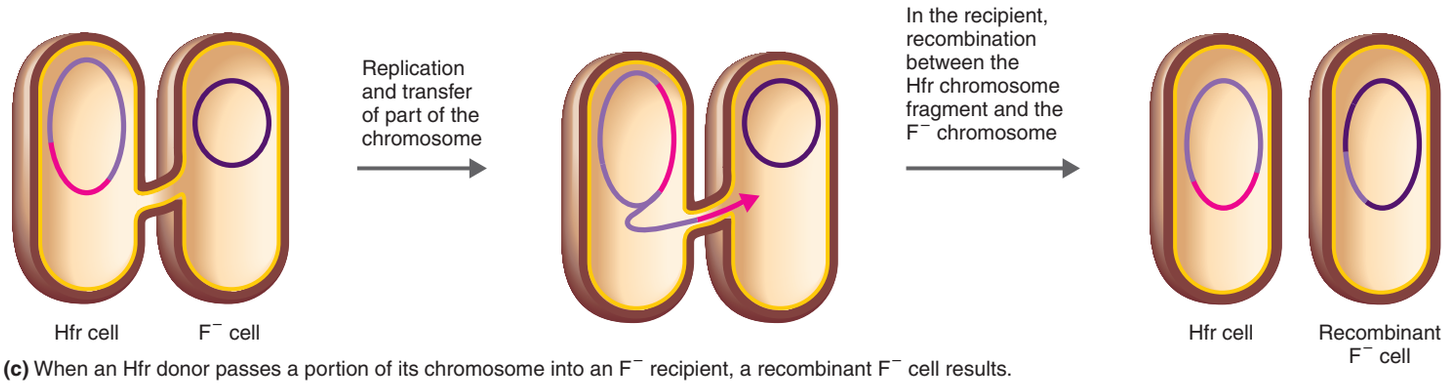
- **8-15** Differentiate horizontal and vertical gene transfer.
- **8-16** Compare conjugation between the following pairs: $F^+ \times F^-$, Hfr $\times$ F^-.



(a) When an F factor (a plasmid) is transferred from a donor (F^+) to a recipient (F^-), the F^- cell is converted to an F^+ cell.



(b) When an F factor becomes integrated into the chromosome of an F^+ cell, it makes the cell a high frequency of recombination (Hfr) cell.



(c) When an Hfr donor passes a portion of its chromosome into an F^- recipient, a recombinant F^- cell results.

Figure 8.30 Conjugation in *E. coli*.

Q Do bacteria reproduce during conjugation?

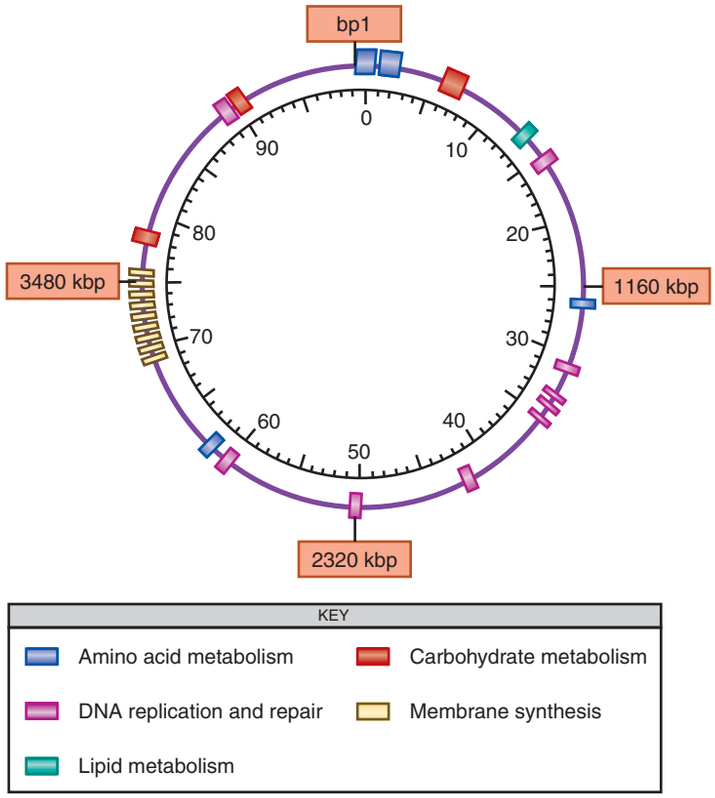


Figure 8.31 A genetic map of the chromosome of *E. coli*. This map is made by observing recombinant cells after conjugation. The numbers inside the circle indicate the number of minutes it takes to transfer the genes during mating between two cells; the numbers in colored boxes indicate the number of base pairs. 1 kbp = 1000 base pairs.

Q How many minutes of conjugation would be needed to transfer genes for membrane synthesis on this chromosome?

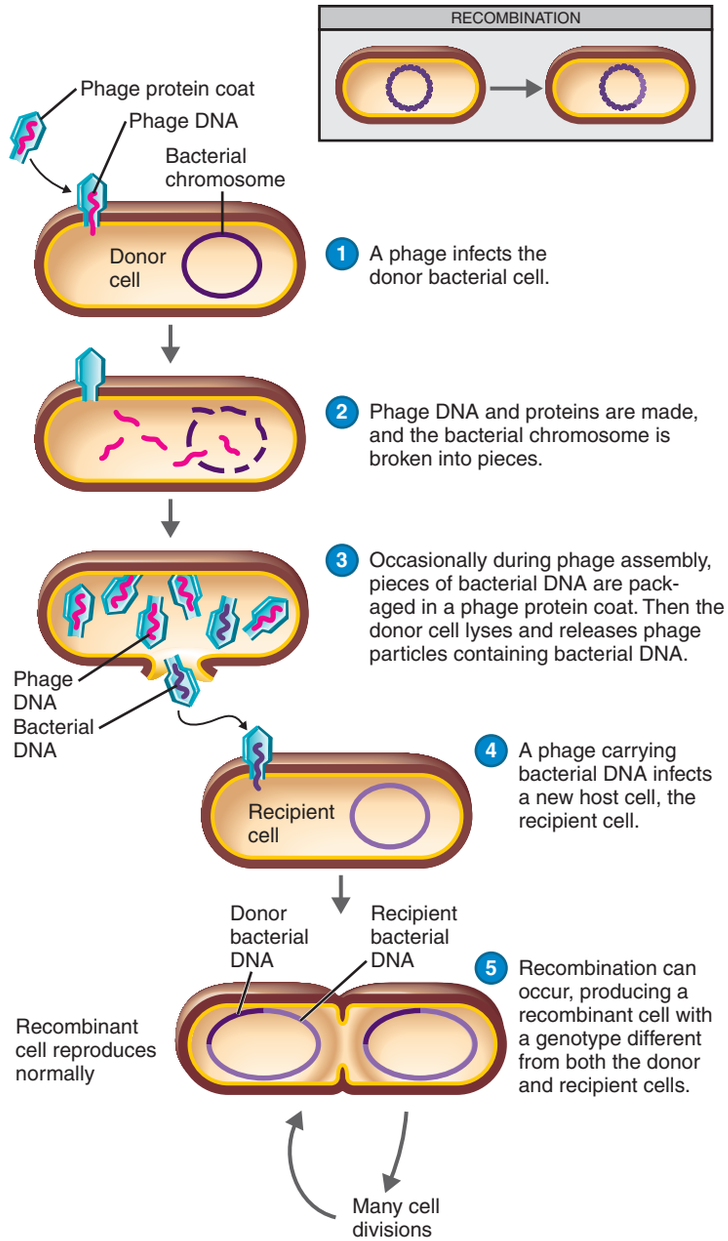


Figure 8.32 Transduction by a bacteriophage. Shown here is generalized transduction, in which any bacterial DNA can be transferred from one cell to another. Specialized transduction is shown in Figure 13.13.

Q How could *E. coli* acquire the Shiga toxin gene?

Genes and Evolution

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

8-17 Discuss how genetic mutation and recombination provide material for natural selection to act upon.

We have now seen how gene activity can be controlled by the cell's internal regulatory mechanisms and how genes themselves can be altered or rearranged by mutation, transposition, and recombination. All these processes provide diversity in the descendants of cells. Diversity provides the raw material for evolution, and natural selection provides its driving force. Natural selection will act on diverse populations to ensure the survival of those fit for that particular environment. The different kinds of microorganisms that exist today are the result of a long history of evolution. Microorganisms have continually changed by alterations in their genetic properties and acquisition of adaptations to many different habitats. See **Exploring the Microbiome** (in this chapter) and the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 26 for examples of natural selection.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

8-17 Natural selection means that the environment favors survival of some genotypes. From where does diversity in genotypes come?

Study Outline

Structure and Function of the Genetic Material (pp. 208–218)

1. Genetics is the study of what genes are, how they carry information, how their information is expressed, and how they are replicated and passed to subsequent generations or other organisms.
2. DNA in cells exists as a double-stranded helix; the two strands are held together by hydrogen bonds between specific nitrogenous base pairs: AT and CG.
3. A gene is a sequence of nucleotides that encodes a functional product, usually a protein.
4. The DNA in a cell is duplicated before the cell divides, so each offspring cell receives the same genetic information.

Genotype and Phenotype (pp. 208–209)

5. Genotype is the genetic composition of an organism, its entire complement of DNA.
6. Phenotype is the expression of the genes: the proteins of the cell and the properties they confer on the organism.

DNA and Chromosomes (p. 209)

7. The DNA in a chromosome exists as one long double helix associated with various proteins that regulate genetic activity.
8. Genomics is the molecular characterization of genomes.

The Flow of Genetic Information (pp. 209–210)

9. Following cell division, each offspring cell receives a chromosome that is virtually identical to the parent's.
10. Information contained in the DNA is transcribed into RNA and translated into proteins.

DNA Replication (pp. 209–213)

11. During DNA replication, the two strands of the double helix separate at the replication fork, and each strand is used as a template by DNA polymerases to synthesize two new strands of DNA according to the rules of complementary base pairing.
12. The result of DNA replication is two new strands of DNA, each having a base sequence complementary to one of the original strands.
13. Because each double-stranded DNA molecule contains one original and one new strand, the replication process is called semiconservative.
14. DNA is synthesized in one direction, designated $5' \rightarrow 3'$. At the replication fork, the leading strand is synthesized continuously and the lagging strand discontinuously.
15. Methylases add a methyl group to selected bases soon after a DNA strand is made.
16. DNA polymerase proofreads new molecules of DNA and removes mismatched bases before continuing DNA synthesis.

RNA and Protein Synthesis (pp. 213–218)

17. During transcription, the enzyme RNA polymerase synthesizes a strand of RNA from one strand of double-stranded DNA, which serves as a template.
18. RNA is synthesized from nucleotides containing the bases A, C, G, and U, which pair with the bases of the DNA strand being transcribed.
19. RNA polymerase binds the promoter; transcription begins at AUG; the region of DNA that is the end point of transcription is the terminator; RNA is synthesized in the $5' \rightarrow 3'$ direction.
20. Translation is the process in which the information in the nucleotide base sequence of mRNA is used to dictate the amino acid sequence of a protein.
21. The mRNA associates with ribosomes, which consist of rRNA and protein.
22. Three-base codons of mRNA specify amino acids.
23. The genetic code refers to the relationship among the nucleotide base sequence of DNA, the corresponding codons of mRNA, and the amino acids for which the codons code.
24. Specific amino acids are attached to molecules of tRNA. Another portion of the tRNA has a base triplet called an anticodon.
25. The base pairing of codon and anticodon at the ribosome results in specific amino acids being brought to the site of protein synthesis.
26. The ribosome moves along the mRNA strand as amino acids are joined to form a growing polypeptide; mRNA is read in the $5' \rightarrow 3'$ direction.
27. Translation ends when the ribosome reaches a stop codon on the mRNA.

The Regulation of Bacterial Gene Expression (pp. 218–222)

1. Regulating protein synthesis at the gene level is energy-efficient because proteins are synthesized only as they are needed.
2. Constitutive genes are expressed at a fixed rate. Examples are genes for the enzymes in glycolysis.

Pre-transcriptional Control (pp. 218–221)

3. In bacteria, a group of coordinately regulated structural genes with related metabolic functions, plus the promoter and operator sites that control their transcription, is called an operon.
4. In the operon model for an inducible system, a regulatory gene codes for the repressor protein.
5. When the inducer is absent, the repressor binds to the operator, no mRNA is synthesized, and transcription does not occur.
6. When the inducer is present, it binds to the repressor so that it cannot bind to the operator; thus, mRNA is made, and enzyme synthesis is induced.
7. In repressible systems, the repressor requires a corepressor in order to bind to the operator site; thus, the corepressor controls transcription and the resulting enzyme synthesis.
8. Transcription of structural genes for catabolic enzymes (such as β-galactosidase) is induced by the absence of glucose. Cyclic AMP and CRP must bind to a promoter in the presence of an alternative carbohydrate.
9. Methylated nucleotides are not transcribed in epigenetic control.

Post-transcriptional Control (pp. 221–222)

10. Following transcription, mRNA can act as a riboswitch, thereby regulating translation.
11. Protein synthesis in eukaryotic cells is inhibited when microRNAs combine with mRNA; the resulting double-stranded RNA is destroyed.

Changes in Genetic Material (pp. 222–229)

1. Mutations and horizontal gene transfer can change a bacterium's genotype.

Mutation (p. 223)

2. A mutation is a change in the nitrogenous base sequence of DNA; that change causes a change in the product coded for by the mutated gene.
3. Many mutations are neutral, some are disadvantageous, and others are beneficial.

Types of Mutations (pp. 223–224)

4. A base substitution occurs when one base pair in DNA is replaced with a different base pair.
5. Alterations in DNA can result in missense mutations, frameshift, or nonsense mutations.
6. Spontaneous mutations occur without the presence of any mutagen.

Mutagens (pp. 224–226)

7. Mutagens are agents in the environment that cause permanent changes in DNA.
8. Ionizing radiation causes the formation of ions and free radicals that react with DNA; base substitutions or breakage of the sugar-phosphate backbone results.
9. Ultraviolet (UV) radiation is nonionizing; however, it can cause bonding between adjacent thymines resulting in thymine dimers.

The Frequency of Mutation (p. 227)

10. Mutation rate is the probability that a gene will mutate when a cell divides; the rate is expressed as 10 to a negative power.
11. A low rate of spontaneous mutations is beneficial in providing the genetic diversity needed for evolution.

Identifying Mutants (p. 227)

12. Mutants can be detected by selecting or testing for an altered phenotype.
13. Positive selection involves the selection of mutant cells and the rejection of nonmutated cells.
14. Replica plating is used for negative selection—to detect, for example, auxotrophs that have nutritional requirements not possessed by the parent (nonmutated) cell.

Identifying Chemical Carcinogens (pp. 227–229)

15. The Ames test is a relatively inexpensive and rapid test for identifying possible chemical carcinogens.
16. The test assumes that a mutant cell can revert to a normal cell in the presence of a mutagen and that many mutagens are carcinogens.

Genetic Transfer and Recombination (pp. 230–238)

1. Genetic recombination, the rearrangement of genes from separate groups of genes, usually involves DNA from different organisms; it contributes to genetic diversity.
2. In crossing over, genes from two chromosomes are recombined into one chromosome containing some genes from each original chromosome.
3. Vertical gene transfer occurs during reproduction when genes are passed from an organism to its offspring.
4. Horizontal gene transfer in bacteria involves a portion of the cell's DNA being transferred from donor to recipient.
5. When some of the donor's DNA has been integrated into the recipient's DNA, the resultant cell is called a recombinant.

Plasmids and Transposons (pp. 230–233)

6. Plasmids are self-replicating circular molecules of DNA carrying genes that are not usually essential for the cell's survival.
7. There are several types of plasmids, including conjugative plasmids, dissimilation plasmids, plasmids carrying genes for toxins or bacteriocins, and resistance factors.
8. Transposons are small segments of DNA that can move from one region to another region of the same chromosome or to a different chromosome or a plasmid.
9. Complex transposons can carry any type of gene, including antibiotic-resistance genes, and are thus a natural mechanism for moving genes from one chromosome to another.

Transformation in Bacteria (pp. 233–235)

10. During the process of transformation, genes are transferred from one bacterium to another as "naked" DNA in solution.

Conjugation in Bacteria (pp. 235–238)

11. Conjugation requires contact between living cells.
12. One type of genetic donor cell is an F^+; recipient cells are F^-. F cells contain plasmids called F factors; these are transferred to the F^- cells during conjugation.

Transduction in Bacteria (pp. 236–238)

13. In this process, DNA is passed from one bacterium to another in a bacteriophage and is then incorporated into the recipient's DNA.
14. In generalized transduction, any bacterial genes can be transferred.

Genes and Evolution (p. 238)

1. Diversity is the precondition for evolution.
2. Genetic mutation and recombination provide diversity of organisms, and the process of natural selection allows the growth of those best adapted to a given environment.

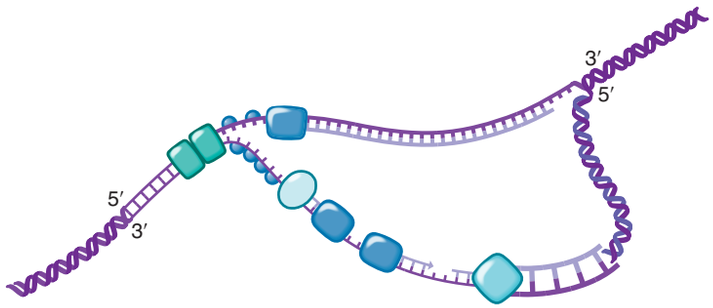
Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. Briefly describe the components of DNA, and explain its functional relationship to RNA and protein.
2. DRAW IT Identify and mark each of the following on the portion of DNA undergoing replication: replication fork, DNA polymerase, RNA primer, parent strands, leading strand, lagging strand, the direction of replication on each strand, and the 5′ end of each strand.



3. Match the following examples of mutagens.

Column A	Column B
_____ **a.** A mutagen that is incorporated into DNA in place of a normal base	**1.** Frameshift mutagen
_____ **b.** A mutagen that causes the formation of highly reactive ions	**2.** Nucleoside analog
_____ **c.** A mutagen that alters adenine so that it base-pairs with cytosine	**3.** Base-pair mutagen
_____ **d.** A mutagen that causes insertions	**4.** Ionizing radiation
_____ **e.** A mutagen that causes the formation of pyrimidine dimers	**5.** Nonionizing radiation

4. The following is a code for a strand of DNA.

DNA	3′	A	T	A	T	_	_	_	T	T	T	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
mRNA												C	G	U				U	G	A
tRNA														U	G	G				
Amino Acid						Met	_____													

ATAT = Promoter sequence

   a. Using the genetic code provided in Figure 8.8, fill in the blanks to complete the segment of DNA shown.
   b. Fill in the blanks to complete the sequence of amino acids coded for by this strand of DNA.
   c. Write the code for the complementary strand of DNA completed in part (a).
   d. What would be the effect if C were substituted for T at base 10?
   e. What would be the effect if A were substituted for G at base 11?
   f. What would be the effect if G were substituted for T at base 14?
   g. What would be the effect if C were inserted between bases 9 and 10?
   h. How would UV radiation affect this strand of DNA?
   i. Identify a nonsense sequence in this strand of DNA.
5. When iron is not available, *E. coli* can stop synthesis of all proteins, such as superoxide dismutase and succinate dehydrogenase, that require iron. Describe a mechanism for this regulation.
6. Identify when (before transcription, after transcription but before translation, after translation) each of the following regulatory mechanisms functions.
   a. ATP combines with an enzyme, altering its shape.
   b. A short RNA is synthesized that is complementary to mRNA.
   c. Methylation of DNA occurs.
   d. An inducer combines with a repressor.
7. Which sequence is the best target for damage by UV radiation: AGGCAA, CTTTGA, or GUAAAU? Why aren't all bacteria killed when they are exposed to sunlight?
8. You are provided with cultures with the following characteristics:
   Culture 1: F^+, genotype A^+ B^+ C^+
   Culture 2: F^-, genotype A^- B^- C^-
   a. Indicate the possible genotypes of a recombinant cell resulting from the conjugation of cultures 1 and 2.
   b. Indicate the possible genotypes of a recombinant cell resulting from conjugation of the two cultures after the F^+ has become an Hfr cell.
9. Why are mutation and recombination important in the process of natural selection and the evolution of organisms?
10. NAME IT Normally a commensal in the human intestine, this bacterium became pathogenic after acquiring a toxin gene from a *Shigella* bacterium.

Multiple Choice

Match the following terms to the definitions in questions 1 and 2.

   a. conjugation
   b. transcription
   c. transduction
   d. transformation
   e. translation

1. Transfer of DNA from a donor to a recipient cell by a bacteriophage.
2. Transfer of DNA from a donor to a recipient as naked DNA in solution.
3. Feedback inhibition differs from repression because feedback inhibition
   a. is less precise.
   b. is slower acting.
   c. stops the action of preexisting enzymes.
   d. stops the synthesis of new enzymes.
   e. all of the above

4. Bacteria can acquire antibiotic resistance by all of the following *except*
   a. mutation.
   b. insertion of transposons.
   c. conjugation.
   d. snRNPs.
   e. transformation.
5. Suppose you inoculate three flasks of minimal salts broth with *E. coli*. Flask A contains glucose. Flask B contains glucose and lactose. Flask C contains lactose. After a few hours of incubation, you test the flasks for the presence of β-galactosidase. Which flask(s) do you predict will have this enzyme?
   a. A
   b. B
   c. C
   d. A and B
   e. B and C
6. Plasmids differ from transposons in that plasmids
   a. become inserted into chromosomes.
   b. are self-replicated outside the chromosome.
   c. move from chromosome to chromosome.
   d. carry genes for antibiotic resistance.
   e. none of the above

Use the following choices to answer questions 7 and 8:
   a. catabolite repression
   b. DNA polymerase
   c. induction
   d. repression
   e. translation

7. Mechanism by which the presence of glucose inhibits the *lac* operon.
8. The mechanism by which lactose controls the *lac* operon.
9. Two offspring cells are most likely to inherit which one of the following from the parent cell?
   a. a change in a nucleotide in mRNA
   b. a change in a nucleotide in tRNA
   c. a change in a nucleotide in rRNA
   d. a change in a nucleotide in DNA
   e. a change in a protein
10. Which of the following is *not* a method of horizontal gene transfer?
    a. binary fission
    b. conjugation
    c. integration of a transposon
    d. transduction
    e. transformation

Analysis

1. Nucleoside analogs and ionizing radiation are used in treating cancer. These mutagens can cause cancer, so why do you suppose they are used to treat the disease?
2. Replication of the *E. coli* chromosome takes 40 to 45 minutes, but the organism has a generation time of 26 minutes. How does the cell have time to make complete chromosomes for each offspring cell?
3. *Pseudomonas* has a plasmid containing the *mer* operon, which includes the gene for mercuric reductase. This enzyme catalyzes the reduction of the mercuric ion Hg^{2+} to the uncharged form of mercury, Hg^0. Hg^{2+} is quite toxic to cells; Hg^0 is not.
   a. What do you suppose is the inducer for this operon?
   b. The protein encoded by one of the *mer* genes binds Hg^{2+} in the periplasm and brings it into the cell. Why would a cell bring in a toxin?

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. Ciprofloxacin, erythromycin, and acyclovir are used to treat microbial infections. Ciprofloxacin inhibits DNA gyrase. Erythromycin binds in front of the A site on the 50S subunit of a ribosome. Acyclovir is a guanine analog.
   a. What steps in protein synthesis are inhibited by each drug?
   b. Which drug is more effective against bacteria? Why?
   c. Which drugs will have effects on the host's cells? Why?
   d. Use the index to identify the disease for which acyclovir is primarily used. Why is it more effective than erythromycin for treating this disease?
2. HIV, the virus that causes AIDS, was isolated from three individuals, and the amino acid sequences for the viral coat were determined. Of the amino acid sequences shown below, which two of the viruses are most closely related? How can these amino acid sequences be used to identify the source of a virus?

Patient	Viral Amino Acid Sequence											
A	Asn	Gln	Thr	Ala	Ala	Ser	Lys	Asn	Ile	Asp	Ala	Leu
B	Asn	Leu	His	Ser	Asp	Lys	Ile	Asn	Ile	Ile	Leu	Leu
C	Asn	Gln	Thr	Ala	Asp	Ser	Ile	Val	Ile	Asp	Ala	Leu

3. Human herpesvirus-8 (HHV-8) is common in parts of Africa, the Middle East, and the Mediterranean, but is rare elsewhere except in people with AIDS. Genetic analyses indicate that the African strain is not changing, whereas the Western strain is accumulating changes. Using the portions of the HHV-8 genomes (shown below) that encode one of the viral proteins, how similar are these two viruses? What mechanism can account for the changes? What disease does HHV-8 cause?

Western	3′-ATGGAGTTCTTCTGGACAAGA
African	3′-AT A A AC TT T TTCT T GACAA CG

Biotechnology and DNA Technology 9

For thousands of years, people have consumed foods produced by the action of microorganisms. Bread, chocolate, and soy sauce are some of the best-known examples. But it was only just over 150 years ago that scientists showed that microorganisms are responsible for these products. This knowledge opened the way for using microorganisms to produce other important products. Since World War I, microbes have been used to produce a variety of chemicals, such as ethanol, acetone, and citric acid. Since World War II, microorganisms have been grown to produce antibiotics. More recently, microbes and their enzymes are replacing a variety of chemical processes involved in manufacturing such products as paper, textiles, and fructose. Using microbes or their enzymes instead of chemical syntheses offers several advantages. Microbes may use inexpensive, abundant raw materials; microbes work at normal temperatures and pressure, thereby avoiding the need for expensive and dangerous systems; and microbes don't produce toxic, hard-to-treat wastes. In the past 30 years, DNA technology has been added to the tools used to make products. More recently, use of DNA technology to make vaccines that protect against COVID-19 has become a high-profile pursuit. (Vaccine production is covered in detail in Chapter 18.)

In this chapter you will learn the tools and techniques that are used to research and develop a product. You will also learn how DNA technology is used to track outbreaks of infectious disease and to provide evidence for courts of law in forensic microbiology. The Clinical Case illustrates the use of DNA technology to track HIV (see the photo).

◀ **Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) (yellow) budding from a host cell.**

In the Clinic

A crime suspect claims he is innocent. His clothing became bloodstained, he says, when he tried to resuscitate the victim. The pattern of blood on the suspect may have resulted from striking the victim, but it is also consistent with spatter from the victim's nose and mouth during CPR. As a forensic nurse for a police department, you collect bloodstained fabric from the suspect and a blood sample from the crime scene. You request PCR for streptococci on both samples. The test is positive for the fabric, but negative for the blood at the scene.

How can a PCR test detect evidence of *Streptococcus* bacteria in such small samples? Do these results help or hurt the suspect?

Hint: Read about the polymerase chain reaction technique.

Introduction to Biotechnology

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

9-1 Compare and contrast biotechnology, genetic modification, and recombinant DNA technology.

9-2 Identify the roles of a clone and a vector in making recombinant DNA.

Biotechnology is the use of microorganisms, cells, or cell components to make a product. Microbes have been used in the commercial production of foods, vaccines, antibiotics, and vitamins for years. Bacteria are also used in mining to extract valuable elements from ore (see Figure 28.12). Additionally, animal cells have been used to produce viral vaccines since the 1950s.

Until the 1980s, products made by living cells were all made by naturally occurring cells; the role of scientists was to find the appropriate cell and develop a method for their large-scale cultivation. Now, microorganisms and plants are being used as "factories" to produce chemicals that the organisms don't naturally make. This is accomplished by inserting, deleting, or modifying genes with **recombinant DNA (rDNA) technology**, which is sometimes called *genetic engineering*. The development of rDNA technology is expanding the practical applications of biotechnology almost beyond imagination.

ASM: Cell genomes can be manipulated to alter cell function.

Recombinant DNA Technology

Recombination of DNA occurs naturally in microbes (see Chapter 8). In the 1970s and 1980s, scientists developed artificial techniques for making rDNA for human uses.

A gene from one organism can be inserted into the DNA of a bacterium or a yeast. In many cases, the recipient can then be made to express the gene, which may code for a commercially useful product. Thus, bacteria with genes for human insulin are now being used to produce insulin for treating diabetes, and a vaccine for hepatitis B is being made by yeast carrying a gene for part of the hepatitis virus (the yeast produces a viral coat protein). Scientists hope that such an approach may prove useful in producing vaccines against other infectious agents, thus eliminating the need to use whole organisms, as in conventional vaccines.

The rDNA techniques can also be used to make thousands of copies of the same DNA molecule—to *amplify* DNA—thus generating sufficient DNA for various kinds of experimentation and analysis. This technique has practical application for identifying microbes, such as viruses, that can't be cultured.

An Overview of Recombinant DNA Procedures

An overview of some of the procedures typically used for making rDNA, along with some promising applications, is shown in Figure 9.1. A **vector** is a DNA molecule that transports foreign DNA into a cell. (See more on vectors later.) The gene of interest is inserted into the vector DNA in vitro. In Figure 9.1, the vector is a plasmid. The DNA molecule chosen as a vector must be self-replicating, such as a plasmid or a viral genome. This recombinant vector DNA is taken up by a cell such as a bacterium, where it can multiply. The cell containing the recombinant vector is then grown in culture to form a **clone** of many genetically identical cells, each of which carries copies of the vector, and therefore many copies of the gene of interest. This is why DNA vectors are often called *gene-cloning vectors*, or simply *cloning vectors*. (In addition to referring to a culture of identical cells, the word *clone* is also routinely used as a verb, to describe the entire process, as in "to clone a gene.")

The final step varies according to whether the gene itself, or the product of the gene, is of interest. From the cell clone, the researcher may isolate ("harvest") large quantities of the gene of interest, which may then be used for a variety of purposes. The gene may even be inserted into another vector for introduction into another kind of cell (such as a plant or animal cell). Alternatively, if the gene of interest is expressed (transcribed and translated) in the cell clone, its protein product can be harvested and used for a variety of purposes.

The advantages of using rDNA for obtaining such proteins is illustrated by one of its early successes, the production of human growth hormone (hGH) in *Escherichia coli* bacteria. Some individuals don't produce adequate amounts of hGH, so their growth is stunted. As growth hormone of other animals is not effective in humans, in the past, hGH had to be obtained from human pituitary glands at autopsy. This practice was not only expensive but also dangerous because on several occasions

CLINICAL CASE No Ordinary Checkup

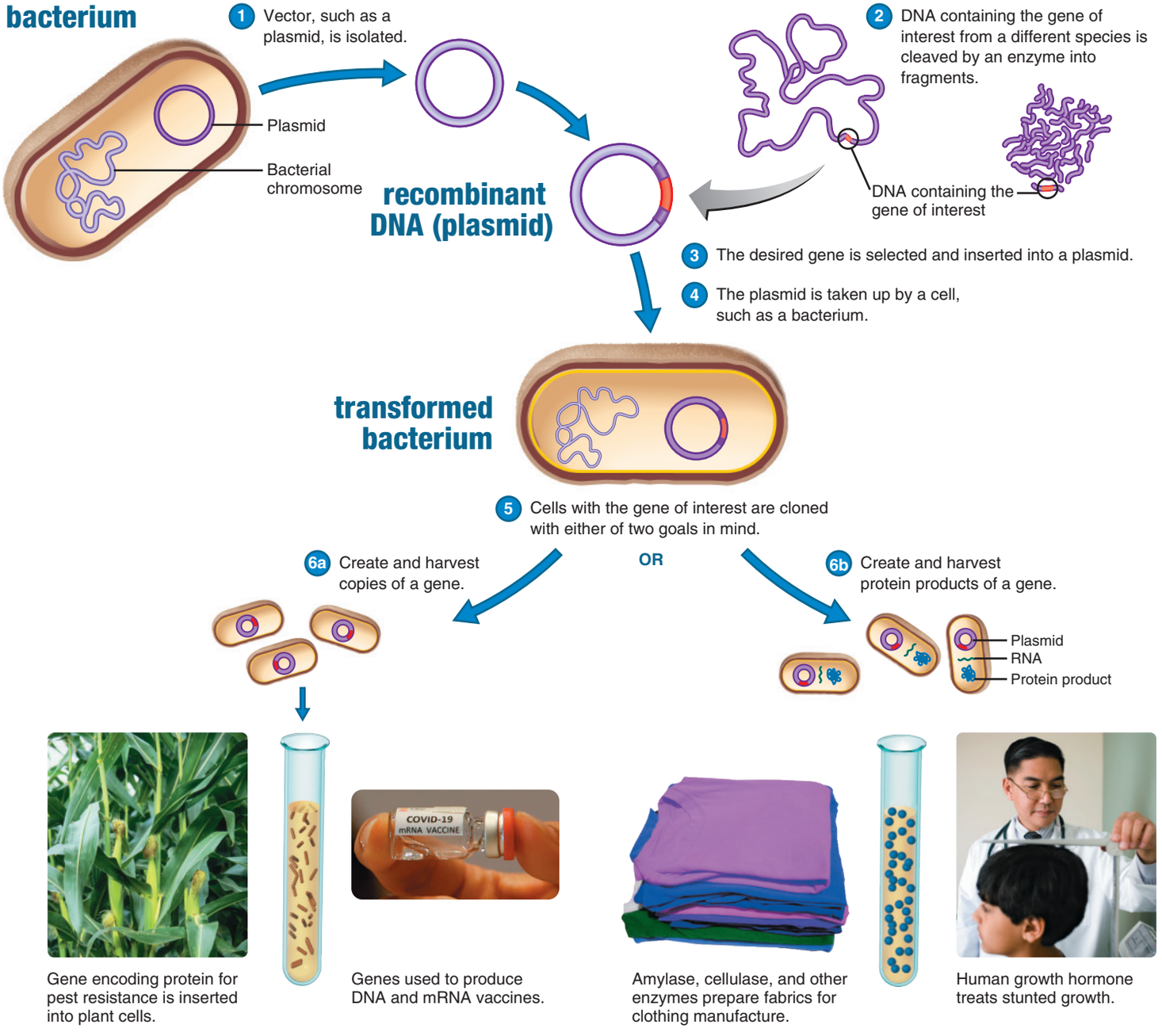
Dr. B. is closing his dental practice after 20 years. Four years ago, he went to his family doctor because of debilitating exhaustion. He thought he had a flu virus that he could not shake, and he was also having night sweats. His doctor ordered myriad blood tests, but only one came back positive. Dr. B. had HIV. Although he immediately began an HIV treatment regimen, 1 year later he was diagnosed with AIDS. Now, 2 years later, Dr. B. is very ill and can no longer work.

Dr. B. lets his employees know the situation and suggests that they all get tested for HIV. All of Dr. B.'s employees, including the hygienists, test negative. Dr. B. also writes an open letter to his patients informing them of his decision to close his practice and why he is doing so. This letter prompts 400 former patients to be tested for HIV, seven of whom test positive for antibodies against HIV.

What type of test can determine whether these patients contracted HIV from Dr. B.? Read on to find out.

FOUNDATION FIGURE 9.1

A Typical Genetic Modification Procedure



Gene encoding protein for pest resistance is inserted into plant cells.

Genes used to produce DNA and mRNA vaccines.

Amylase, cellulase, and other enzymes prepare fabrics for clothing manufacture.

Human growth hormone treats stunted growth.

KEY CONCEPTS

- Genes from one organism's cells can be inserted and expressed in another organism's cells.
- Genetically modified cells can be used to create a wide variety of useful products and applications.

neurological diseases were transmitted with the hormone. Human growth hormone produced by genetically modified *E. coli* is a pure and cost-effective product. Recombinant DNA techniques also result in faster production of the hormone than traditional methods might allow.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **9-1** Differentiate biotechnology and rDNA technology.
- **9-2** In one sentence, describe how a vector and clone are used.

Tools of Biotechnology

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

9-3 Compare selection and mutation.

9-4 Define *restriction enzymes*, and outline how they are used to make rDNA.

9-5 List the four properties of vectors.

9-6 Describe the use of plasmid and viral vectors.

9-7 Outline the steps in PCR, and provide an example of its use.

Research scientists and technicians isolate bacteria and fungi from natural environments such as soil and water to find, or *select*, the organisms that produce a desired product. The selected organism can be mutated to make more product or to make a better product.

Selection

In nature, organisms with characteristics that enhance survival are more likely to survive and reproduce than variants that lack the desirable traits. This is called *natural selection*. Humans use **artificial selection** to select desirable breeds of animals or strains of plants to cultivate. As microbiologists learned how to isolate and grow microorganisms in pure culture, they were able to select the ones that could accomplish a desired objective, such as brewing beer more efficiently or producing a new antibiotic. Over 2000 strains of antibiotic-producing bacteria have been discovered by testing soil bacteria and selecting the strains that produce an antibiotic.

Mutation

Mutations are responsible for much of the diversity of life (see Chapter 8). A bacterium with a mutation that confers resistance to an antibiotic will survive and reproduce in the presence of that antibiotic. Biologists working with antibiotic-producing microbes discovered that they could create new strains by exposing microbes to mutagens. After random mutations were created in penicillin-producing *Penicillium* by exposing fungal cultures to radiation, the highest-yielding variant among the survivors was selected for another exposure to a mutagen. Using mutations, biologists increased the amount of penicillin the fungus produced by over 1000 times.

Screening each mutant for penicillin production is a tedious process. **Site-directed mutagenesis** targets specific sites and can be used to make a specific change in a gene. Suppose you determine that changing one amino acid will make a laundry enzyme work better in cold water. Using the genetic code (see Figure 8.8), you could, using the techniques described next, produce the sequence of DNA that encodes that amino acid and insert it into that enzyme's gene.

The science of molecular genetics has advanced to such a degree that many routine cloning procedures are performed using prepackaged materials and procedures that are very much like cookbook recipes. Scientists have a grab bag of methods from which to choose, depending on the ultimate application of their experiments. Next we describe some of the most important tools and techniques, and later we will consider some applications.

Restriction Enzymes

Recombinant DNA technology has its technical roots in the discovery of **restriction enzymes**, a special class of DNA-cutting enzymes that exist in many bacteria. First isolated in 1970, restriction enzymes in nature had actually been observed earlier, when certain bacteriophages were found to have a restricted host range. If these phages were used to infect bacteria other than their usual hosts, restriction enzymes in the new host destroyed almost all the phage DNA. Restriction enzymes protect a bacterial cell by hydrolyzing phage DNA. The bacterial DNA is protected from digestion because the cell **methylates** (adds methyl groups to) some of the cytosines in its DNA. The purified forms of these bacterial enzymes are used in today's laboratories.

What is important for rDNA techniques is that a restriction enzyme recognizes and cuts, or *digests*, only one particular sequence of nucleotide bases in DNA, and it cuts this sequence the same way each time. Typical restriction enzymes used in cloning experiments recognize four-, six-, or eight-base sequences. Hundreds of restriction enzymes are known, each producing DNA fragments with characteristic ends. A few restriction enzymes are listed in Table 9.1. You can see they are named for their bacterial source. Some of these

TABLE 9.1 Selected Restriction Enzymes Used in rDNA Technology

Enzyme	Bacterial Source	Recognition Sequence
*Bam*HI	*Bacillus amyloliquefaciens*	G↓GG A T C C C C T A G↑ G
*Eco*RI	*Escherichia coli*	G↓GA A T T C C T T A A↑ G
*Hae*III	*Haemophilus aegyptius*	G G↓C C C C↑ G G
*Hin*dIII	*Haemophilus influenzae*	A↓A G C T T T T C G A↑ A

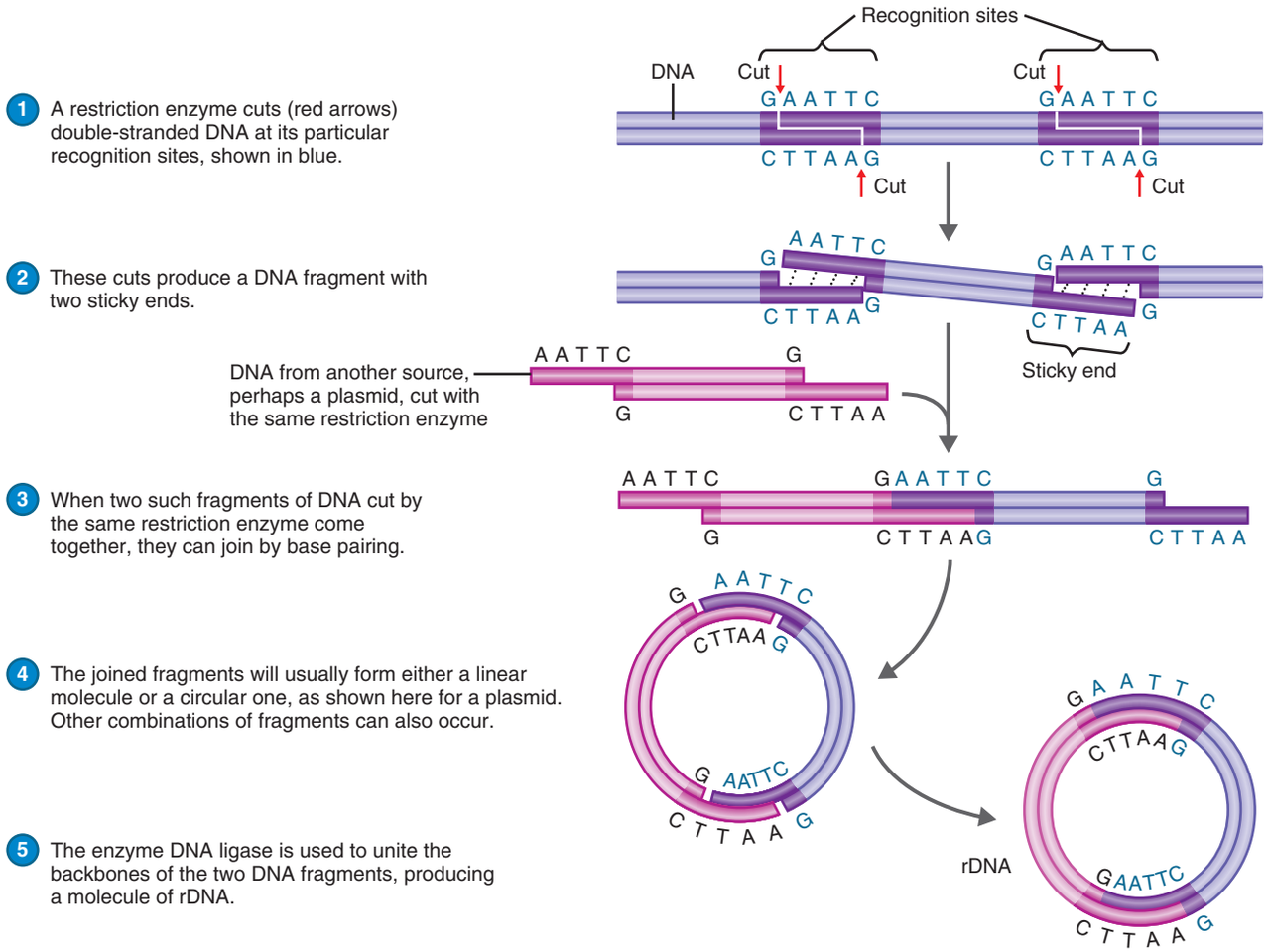


Figure 9.2 A restriction enzyme's role in making rDNA.

Q Why are restriction enzymes used to make rDNA?

enzymes (e.g., *Hae*III) cut both strands of DNA in the same place, producing **blunt ends**, and others make staggered cuts in the two strands—cuts that are not directly opposite each other (Figure 9.2). These staggered ends, or **sticky ends**, are most useful in rDNA because they can be used to join two different pieces of DNA that were cut by the same restriction enzyme. The sticky ends "stick" to stretches of single-stranded DNA by complementary base pairing.

Notice in Figure 9.2 that the darker base sequences on the two strands are the same but run in opposite directions. Staggered cuts leave stretches of single-stranded DNA at the ends of the DNA fragments. If two fragments of DNA from different sources have been produced by the action of the same restriction enzyme, the two pieces will have identical sets of sticky ends and can be spliced (recombined) in vitro. The sticky ends join spontaneously by hydrogen bonding (base pairing). The enzyme DNA ligase is used to covalently link the backbones of the DNA pieces, producing an rDNA molecule.

Vectors

Many different types of DNA molecules can serve as vectors, provided they have certain properties. The most important property is self-replication; that is, once in a cell, a vector must be capable of replicating. Any DNA that is inserted in the vector will be replicated in the process. Thus, vectors serve as vehicles for the replication of desired DNA sequences.

Vectors also need to be large enough to be manipulated outside the cell during rDNA procedures. Smaller vectors are more easily manipulated than larger DNA molecules, which tend to be more fragile. Preservation is another important property of vectors. The DNA molecule's circular form protects the vector's DNA from being destroyed by its recipient.

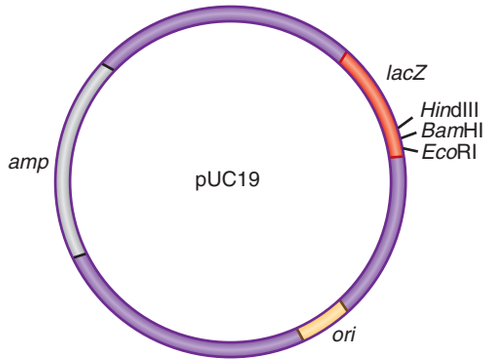


Figure 9.3 A plasmid used for cloning. A plasmid vector used for cloning in the bacterium *E. coli* is pUC19. An origin of replication (*ori*) allows the plasmid to be self-replicating. Two genes, one encoding resistance to the antibiotic ampicillin (*amp*) and one encoding the enzyme β-galactosidase (*lacZ*), serve as marker genes. Foreign DNA can be inserted at the restriction enzyme sites.

Q What is a vector in rDNA technology?

Notice in Figure 9.3 that the DNA of a plasmid is circular. Another preservation mechanism occurs when a virus's DNA inserts itself quickly into the chromosome of the host.

When it is necessary to retrieve cells that contain the vector, a marker gene in the vector often helps make selection easy. Common selectable marker genes are for antibiotic resistance or for an enzyme that carries out an easily identified reaction.

Plasmids are one of the primary vectors in use, particularly variants of R factor plasmids. Plasmid DNA can be cut with the same restriction enzymes as the DNA that will be cloned, so that all pieces of the DNA will have the same sticky ends. When the pieces are mixed, the DNA to be cloned will be inserted into the plasmid (Figure 9.2). Note that other fragment combinations can occur as well, including the plasmid reforming a circle with no DNA inserted.

Some plasmids are capable of existing in several different species. They are called **shuttle vectors** and can be used to move cloned DNA sequences among organisms, such as among bacterial, yeast, and mammalian cells, or among bacterial, fungal, and plant cells. Shuttle vectors can be very useful in the process of genetically modifying multicellular organisms—for example, when herbicide resistance genes are inserted into plants.

A different kind of vector is viral DNA. This type of vector can usually accept much larger pieces of foreign DNA than plasmids can. After the DNA has been inserted into the viral vector, it can be cloned in the virus's host cells. The choice of a suitable vector depends on many factors, including the organism that will receive the new gene and the size of the DNA to be cloned. Retroviruses, adenoviruses, and herpesviruses are being used to insert corrective genes into human cells that have defective genes. Gene therapy is discussed later in this chapter.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **9-3** How are selection and mutation used in biotechnology?
- **9-4** What is the value of restriction enzymes in rDNA technology?
- **9-5** What criteria must a vector meet?
- **9-6** Why is a vector used in rDNA technology?

Polymerase Chain Reaction

The **polymerase chain reaction (PCR)** is a technique by which small samples of DNA can be quickly amplified (increased) to quantities that are large enough for analysis. Starting with just one gene-sized piece of DNA, PCR can be used to make billions of copies in only a few hours. The PCR process is shown in Figure 9.4.

Each strand of the target DNA will serve as a template for DNA synthesis. Added to this DNA are a supply of the four nucleotides (for assembly into new DNA) and DNA polymerase, the enzyme for catalyzing the synthesis (see Chapter 8). Short pieces of nucleic acid called primers are also added to help start the reaction. The primers are complementary to the ends of the target DNA and will hybridize to the fragments to be amplified. Then, the polymerase synthesizes new complementary strands. After each cycle of synthesis, the DNA is heated to convert all the new DNA into single strands. In turn, each newly synthesized DNA strand serves as a template for more new DNA.

As a result, the process proceeds exponentially. All of the necessary reagents are added to a tube, which is placed in a *thermal cycler.* The thermal cycler can be set for the desired temperatures, times, and number of cycles. Use of an automated thermal cycler is made possible by the use of DNA polymerase taken from a thermophilic bacterium such as *Thermus aquaticus;* the enzyme from such organisms can survive the heating phase without being destroyed. Thirty cycles, completed in just a few hours, will increase the amount of target DNA by more than a billion times.

The amplified DNA can be seen by gel electrophoresis. In *real-time PCR,* or *quantitative PCR* (*qPCR*), the newly made DNA is tagged with a fluorescent dye, so that the levels of fluorescence can be measured after every PCR cycle (that's the *real-time* aspect). Another PCR procedure called *reverse-transcription (RT-PCR)* uses viral RNA or a cell's mRNA as the template. The enzyme, reverse transcriptase, makes DNA from the RNA template, and the DNA is then amplified.

Note that PCR can only be used to amplify relatively small, specific sequences of DNA as determined by the choice of primers. It cannot be used to amplify an entire genome.

PCR can be applied to any situation that requires the amplification of DNA. Especially noteworthy are diagnostic tests that use PCR to detect the presence of infectious agents in situations in which they would otherwise be undetectable.

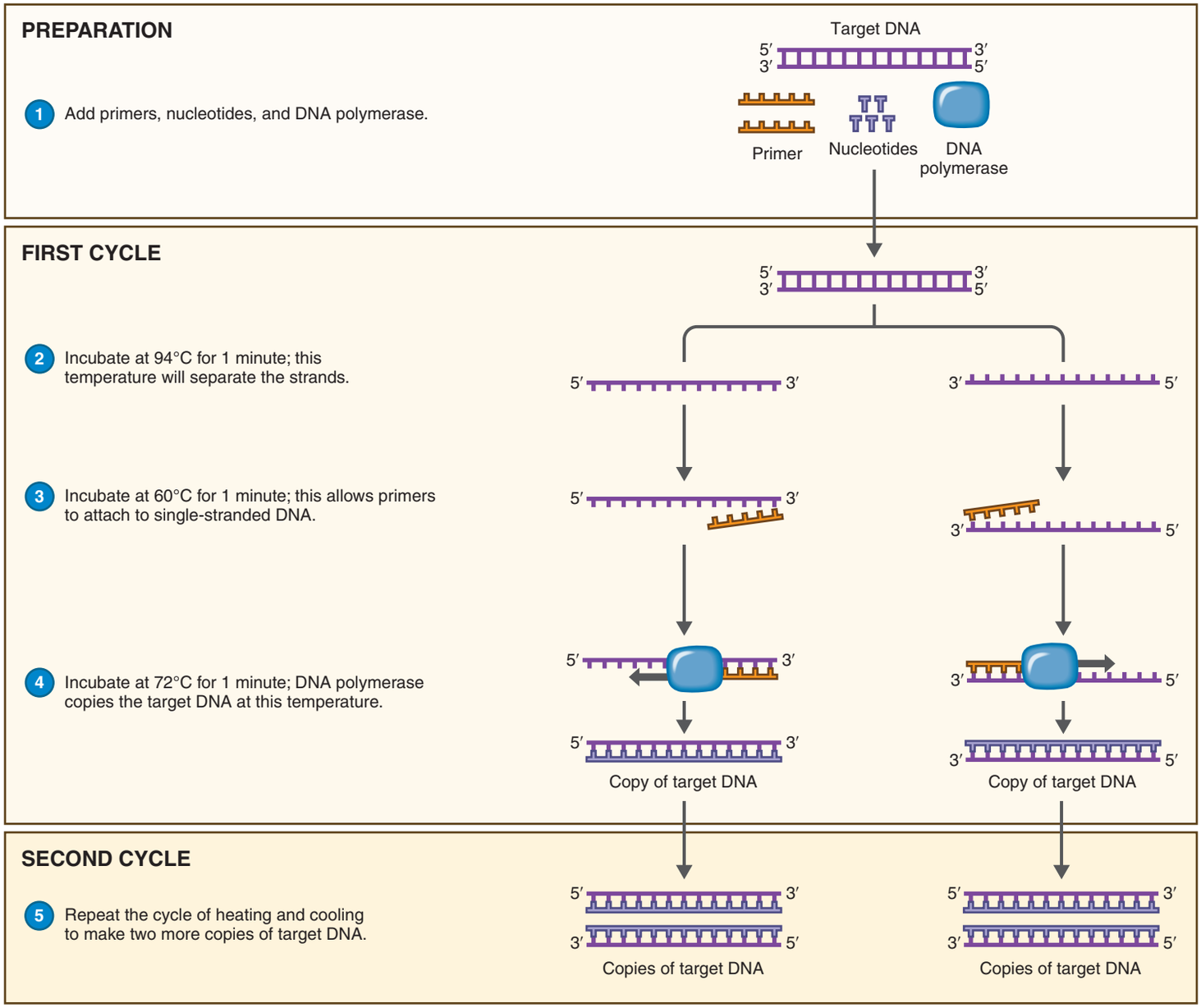


Figure 9.4 The polymerase chain reaction. Deoxynucleotides (dNTPs) base-pair with the target DNA: adenine pairs with thymine, and cytosine pairs with guanine.

Q How does *reverse-transcription PCR* differ from this figure?

A qPCR test provides rapid identification of drug-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Otherwise, this bacterium can take up to 6 weeks to culture, leaving patients untreated for a significant period of time. And an RT-qPCR test is used to diagnose COVID-19.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

9-7 For what is each of the following used in PCR: primer, DNA polymerase, 94°C?

Techniques of Genetic Modification

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

9-8 Describe five ways of getting DNA into a cell.

9-9 Describe how a genomic library is made.

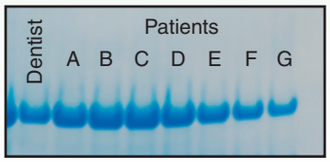
9-10 Differentiate cDNA from synthetic DNA.

9-11 Explain how each of the following is used to locate a clone: antibiotic-resistance genes, DNA probes, gene products.

9-12 List one advantage of modifying each of the following: *E. coli*, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, mammalian cells, plant cells.

CLINICAL CASE

Reverse-transcription PCR using a primer for an HIV gene can be used to amplify DNA for analysis. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) interviews the dentist's seven former patients about their risk factors for contracting HIV. Five out of the seven have no identified risk factors for HIV other than having had invasive procedures performed on them by Dr. B. The CDC then performs reverse-transcription PCR on DNA from white blood cells in Dr. B.'s peripheral blood and the seven HIV-positive patients (see the figure).



What can be concluded from the PCR amplification in the figure?

Part 1 | **Part 2** | Part 3 | Part 4 | Part 5

Inserting Foreign DNA into Cells

Recombinant DNA procedures require that DNA molecules be manipulated outside the cell and then returned to living cells. There are several ways to introduce DNA into cells. The choice of method is usually determined by the type of vector and host cell being used.

In nature, plasmids are usually transferred between closely related microbes by cell-to-cell contact, such as in conjugation. To modify a cell, a plasmid must be inserted into a cell by **transformation**, a procedure during which cells can take up DNA from the surrounding environment (see Chapter 8). Many cell types, including *E. coli*, yeast, and mammalian cells, do not naturally transform; however, simple chemical treatments can make all of these cell types *competent*, or able to take up external DNA. For *E. coli*, the procedure for making cells competent is to soak them in a solution of calcium chloride for a brief period. Following this treatment, the now-competent cells are mixed with the cloned DNA and given a mild heat shock. Some of these cells will then take up the DNA.

There are other ways to transfer DNA to cells. A process called **electroporation** uses an electrical current to form microscopic pores in the membranes of cells; the DNA then enters the cells through the pores. Electroporation is generally applicable to all cells; those with cell walls often must be converted to protoplasts first. **Protoplasts** are produced by enzymatically removing the cell wall, thereby allowing more direct access to the plasma membrane.

The process of **protoplast fusion** also takes advantage of the properties of protoplasts. Protoplasts in solution fuse at a low but significant rate; the addition of polyethylene glycol increases the frequency of fusion (Figure 9.5). In the new hybrid cell, the DNA derived from the two "parent" cells may undergo

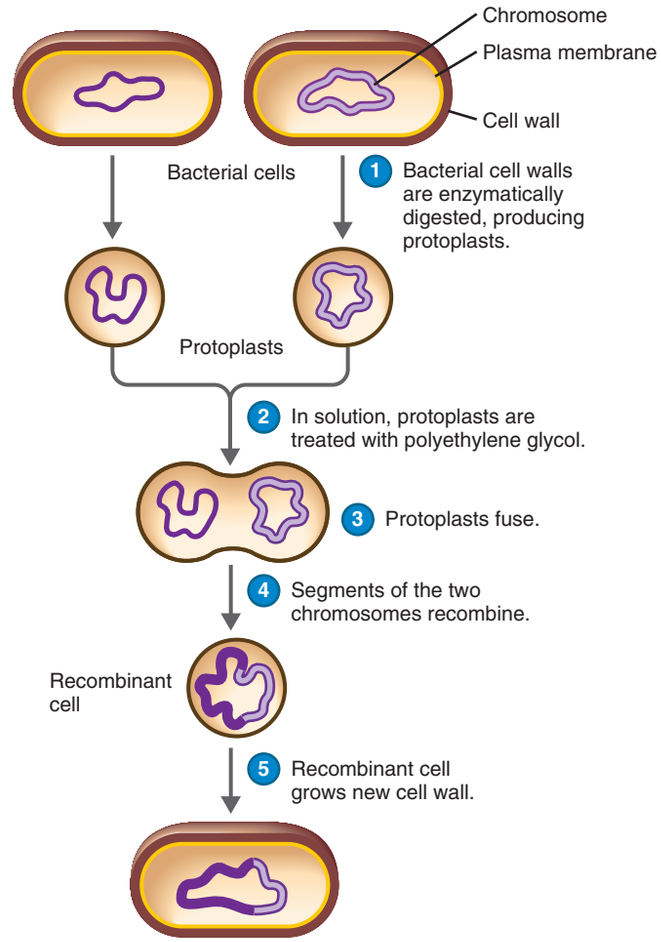


Figure 9.5 Protoplast fusion. Removal of the cell wall leaves only the delicate plasma membranes, which will fuse together, allowing the exchange of DNA.

Q What is a protoplast?

natural recombination. This method is especially valuable in the genetic manipulation of plant and algal cells.

A remarkable way of introducing foreign DNA into plant cells is to literally shoot it directly through the thick cellulose walls using a gene gun (Figure 9.6). Microscopic particles of tungsten or gold are coated with DNA and propelled, like bullets, by a burst of helium through the plant cell walls. Some of the cells express the introduced DNA as though it were their own.

DNA can be introduced directly into an animal cell by **microinjection**. This technique requires the use of a glass micropipette with a diameter that is much smaller than the cell. The micropipette punctures the plasma membrane, and DNA can be injected through it (Figure 9.7).

Thus, there is a great variety of restriction enzymes, vectors, and methods of inserting DNA into cells. But foreign DNA will survive only if it's either present on a self-replicating vector or incorporated into one of the cell's chromosomes by recombination.

Figure 9.6 A gene gun, which can be used to insert DNA-coated "bullets" into a cell.

Q Name four other methods of inserting DNA into a cell.

Obtaining DNA

We have seen how genes can be cloned into vectors by using restriction enzymes and how genes can be transformed or transferred into a variety of cell types. But how do biologists obtain the genes they are interested in? There are two main sources of genes: (1) genomic libraries containing either natural copies of genes or cDNA copies of genes made from mRNA, and (2) synthetic DNA.

Figure 9.7 The microinjection of foreign DNA into an egg. The egg is first immobilized by applying mild suction to the large, blunt, holding pipette (right). Several hundred copies of the gene of interest are then injected into the nucleus of the cell through the tiny end of the micropipette (left).

Q Why is microinjection impractical for bacterial and fungal cells?

Genomic Libraries

Isolating specific genes as individual pieces of DNA is seldom practical. Therefore, researchers interested in genes from a particular organism start by extracting the organism's DNA, which can be obtained from cells of any organism, whether plant, animal, or microbe. Cell walls are removed from plant and bacterial cells using cellulase or lysozyme, then a detergent is used to disrupt the membrane, resulting in cell lysis. DNA is then precipitated in alcohol. This process results in a DNA mass that includes the organism's entire genome. After the DNA is digested by restriction enzymes, the restriction fragments are then spliced into plasmid or phage vectors, and the recombinant vectors are introduced into bacterial cells. The goal is to make a collection of clones large enough to ensure that at least one clone exists for every gene in the organism. This collection of clones containing different DNA fragments is called a **genomic library**; each "book" is a bacterial or phage strain that contains a fragment of the genome (Figure 9.8). Such libraries are essential for maintaining and retrieving DNA clones; they can even be purchased commercially.

Cloning genes from eukaryotic organisms presents a specific problem. Genes of eukaryotic cells generally contain both **exons**, stretches of DNA that code for protein, and **introns**, intervening stretches of DNA that do not code for protein.

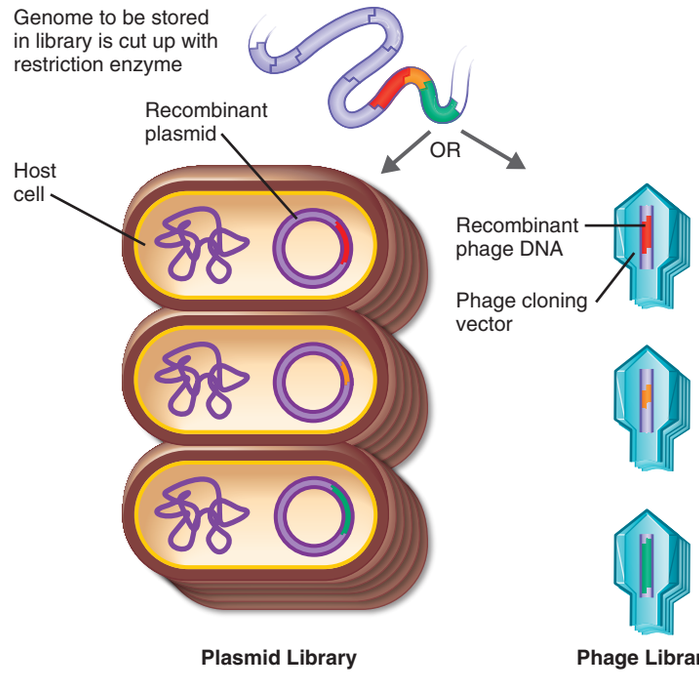


Figure 9.8 Genomic libraries. Each fragment of DNA, containing about one gene, is carried by a vector, either a plasmid within a bacterial cell or a phage.

Q Differentiate a restriction fragment from a gene.

When the RNA transcript of such a gene is converted to mRNA, the introns are removed (see Figure 8.11). To clone genes from eukaryotic cells, it's desirable to use a version of the gene that lacks introns because a gene that includes introns may be too large to work with easily. In addition, if such a gene is put into a bacterial cell, the bacterium usually won't be able to remove the introns from the RNA transcript. Therefore, it won't be able to make the correct protein product. However, an artificial gene that contains only exons can be produced by using an enzyme called **reverse transcriptase** to synthesize **complementary DNA (cDNA)** from an mRNA template (Figure 9.9). This synthesis is the reverse of the normal DNA-to-RNA transcription process. A DNA copy of mRNA is produced by reverse transcriptase. Following this, the mRNA is enzymatically digested away. DNA polymerase then synthesizes a complementary strand of DNA, creating a double-stranded piece of DNA containing the information from the mRNA. Molecules of cDNA produced from a mixture of all the mRNAs from a tissue or cell type can then be cloned to form a cDNA library.

The cDNA method is the most common method of obtaining eukaryotic genes. A difficulty with this method is that long molecules of mRNA may not be completely reverse-transcribed into DNA; the reverse transcription often aborts, forming only parts of the desired gene.

Synthetic DNA

Under certain circumstances, genes can be made in vitro with the help of DNA synthesis machines (Figure 9.10). A keyboard on the machine is used to enter the desired sequence of nucleotides, much as letters are entered into a word processor to compose a sentence. A microprocessor controls the synthesis of the DNA from stored supplies of nucleotides and the other necessary reagents. A short chain of about 200 nucleotides, called an *oligonucleotide*, can be synthesized by this method. Unless the gene is very small, at least several chains must be synthesized separately and linked together to form an entire gene.

The difficulty of this approach, of course, is that the sequence of the gene must be known before it can be synthesized. If the gene hasn't already been isolated, then the only way to predict the DNA sequence is by knowing the amino acid sequence of the gene's protein product. If this amino acid sequence is known, in principle you can work backward through the genetic code to obtain the DNA sequence. Unfortunately, the degeneracy of the code prevents definitive determination; thus,

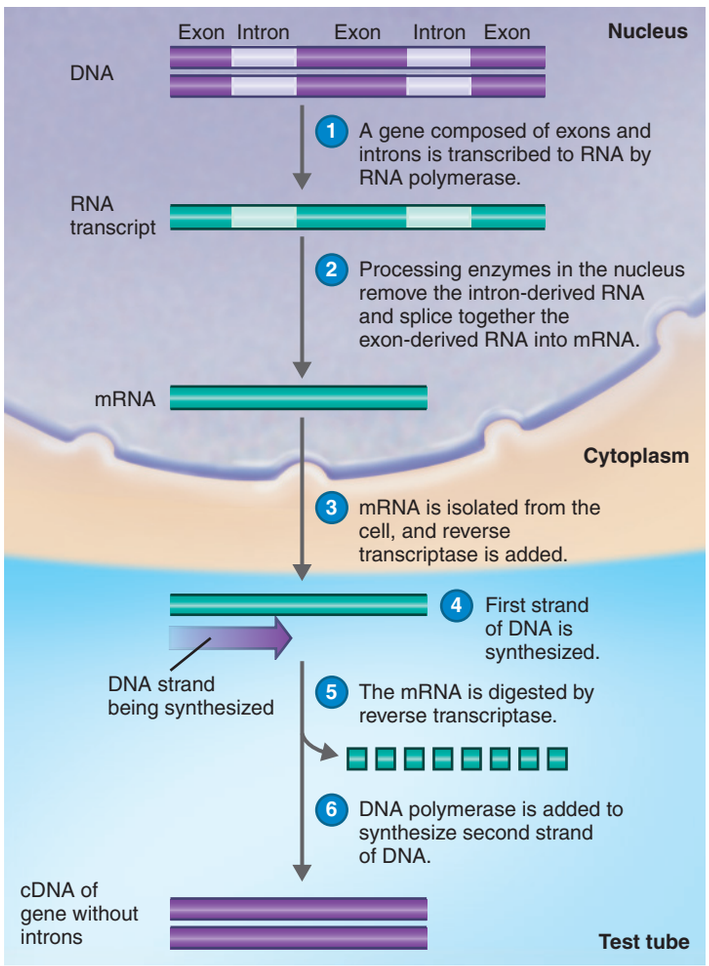


Figure 9.9 Making complementary DNA (cDNA) for a eukaryotic gene. Reverse transcriptase catalyzes the synthesis of double-stranded DNA from an RNA template.

Q How does reverse transcriptase differ from DNA polymerase?

Figure 9.10 A DNA synthesis machine. Short sequences of DNA can be synthesized by instruments such as this one.

Q What four reagents (in the brown bottles) are necessary to synthesize DNA?

CLINICAL CASE

The primer amplifies all eight samples and confirms that Dr. B. and seven of his former patients are all infected with HIV. The CDC then sequences the amplified DNA and compares the sequencing to an HIV isolate from Cleveland (local control) and an isolate from Haiti (outlier). A portion of the coding (5′ to 3′) is shown here.

Patient A	GCTTG	GGCTG	GCGCT	GAAGT	GAGA
Patient B	GCTAT	TGCTG	GCGCT	GAATT	GCAC
Patient C	GCCAT	AGCTG	GCGCA	GAAGT	GCAC
Patient D	GCTAT	TGGCG	TGGCT	GACAG	AGAA
Patient E	GCACC	TGCTG	GCGCT	GAAGT	GAAA
Patient F	CAGAT	TGTGT	TGATT	GAACC	TCAC
Patient G	GCTAT	TGCTG	GCGCT	GAAGT	GAAA
Dentist	GCTAT	TGCTG	GCGCT	GAAGT	GCAC
Local control	CAGAC	TACTG	CTAGG	AAAAA	TATT
Outlier	GAAGA	CGAAA	GGACT	GCTAT	TCAG

What is the percent similarity among the viruses?

Part 1 | Part 2 | **Part 3** | Part 4 | Part 5

if the protein contains a leucine, for example, which of the six codons for leucine is the one in the gene?

For these reasons, it's rare to clone a gene by synthesizing it directly, although some commercial products such as insulin, interferon, and somatostatin are produced from chemically synthesized genes. Desired restriction sites are added to the synthetic genes so the genes can be inserted into plasmid vectors and cloned in *E. coli*. Synthetic DNA plays a much more useful role in selection procedures, as we will see.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **9-8** Contrast the five ways of putting DNA into a cell.
- **9-9** What is the purpose of a genomic library?
- **9-10** Why isn't cDNA synthetic?

Selecting a Clone

In cloning, it's necessary to select the particular cell that contains the specific gene of interest. This is difficult to do because out of millions of cells, only a very few might contain the desired gene. Here we'll examine a typical screening procedure known as *blue-white screening*, from the color of the bacterial colonies formed at the end of the screening process.

The plasmid vector used contains a gene (*amp*) encoding resistance to the antibiotic ampicillin. The host bacterium won't be able to grow on the test medium, which contains ampicillin, unless the vector has transferred the ampicillin-resistance gene. The plasmid vector also contains a second gene, this one for the enzyme β-galactosidase (*lacZ*). Notice in Figure 9.3 that there are several sites in *lacZ* that can be cut by restriction enzymes.

In the blue-white screening procedure shown in **Figure 9.11**, a library of bacteria is cultured in a medium called ampicillin and X-gal. This medium contains two essential components other than those necessary to support normal bacterial growth. One is the antibiotic ampicillin, which prevents the growth of any bacterium that has not successfully received the ampicillin-resistance gene from the plasmid. The other, called X-gal, is a substrate for β-galactosidase.

Only bacteria that picked up the plasmid will grow because they are now ampicillin resistant. Bacteria that picked up the

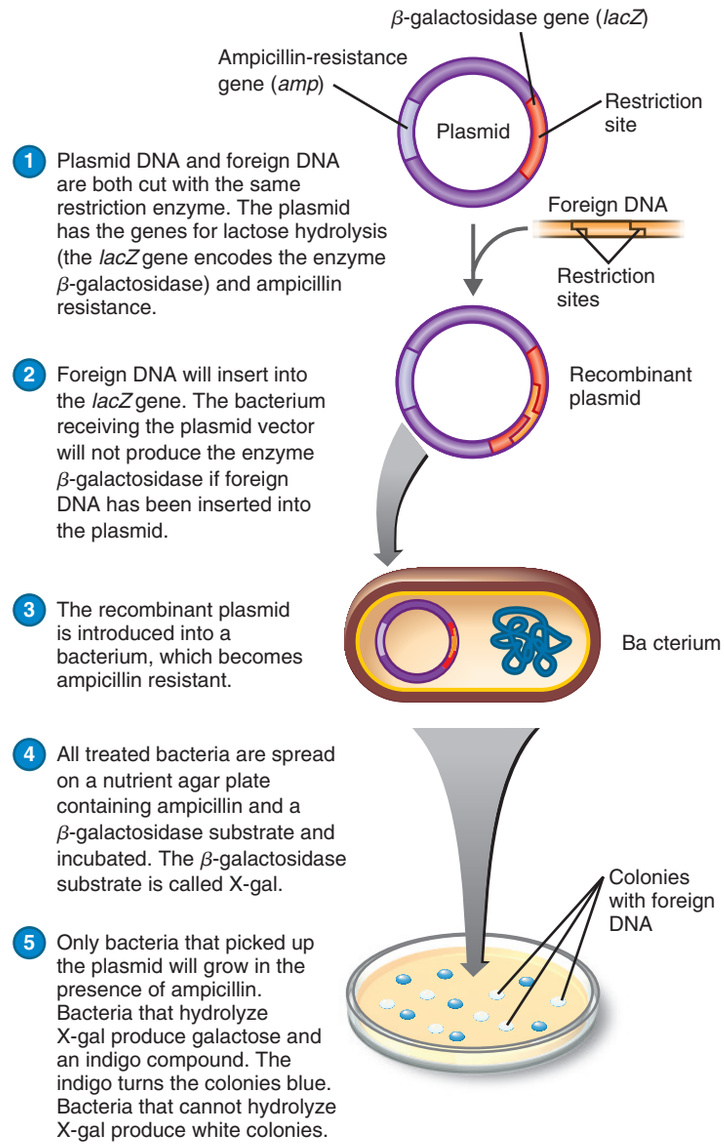


Figure 9.11 Blue-white screening, one method of selecting recombinant bacteria.

Q Why are some colonies blue and others white?

recombinant plasmid—in which the new gene was inserted into the *lacZ* gene—will not hydrolyze lactose and will produce white colonies. If a bacterium received the original plasmid containing the intact *lacZ* gene, the cells will hydrolyze X-gal to produce a blue-colored compound; the colony will be blue.

What remains to be done can still be difficult. The above procedure has isolated white colonies known to contain foreign DNA, but it is still not known whether it's the desired fragment of foreign DNA. A second procedure is needed to identify these bacteria. If the foreign DNA in the plasmid encodes the production of an identifiable product, the bacterial isolate only needs to be grown in culture and tested. However, in some cases the gene itself must be identified in the host bacterium.

Colony hybridization is a common method of identifying cells that carry a specific cloned gene. **DNA probes**, short segments of single-stranded DNA that are complementary to the desired gene, are synthesized. If the DNA probe finds a match, it will adhere to the target gene. The DNA probe is labeled with an enzyme or fluorescent dye so its presence can be detected. A typical colony hybridization experiment is shown in Figure 9.12. An array of DNA probes arranged in a DNA chip can be used to identify pathogens (see Figure 10.17).

Making a Gene Product

We have just seen how to identify cells carrying a particular gene. Gene products are frequently the reason for genetic modification. Most of the earliest work in genetic modification used *E. coli* to synthesize the gene products. *E. coli* is easily grown, and researchers are very familiar with the bacterium and its genetics. For example, some inducible promoters, such as that of the *lac* operon, have been cloned, and cloned genes can be attached to such promoters. The synthesis of great amounts of the cloned gene product can then be directed by the addition of an inducer. Such a method has been used to produce gamma interferon in *E. coli* (Figure 9.13). However, *E. coli* also has several disadvantages. Like other gram-negative bacteria, it produces endotoxins as part of the outer layer of its cell wall. Because endotoxins cause fever and shock in mammals, their accidental presence in products intended for human use would be a serious problem.

Another disadvantage of *E. coli* is it doesn't usually secrete protein products. To obtain a product, cells must usually be broken open and the product purified from the resulting "soup" of cell components. Recovering the product from such a mixture is expensive when done on an industrial scale. It's more economical to have an organism secrete the product so it can be recovered continuously from the growth medium. One approach has been to link the product to a natural *E. coli* protein that the bacterium does secrete. However, gram-positive

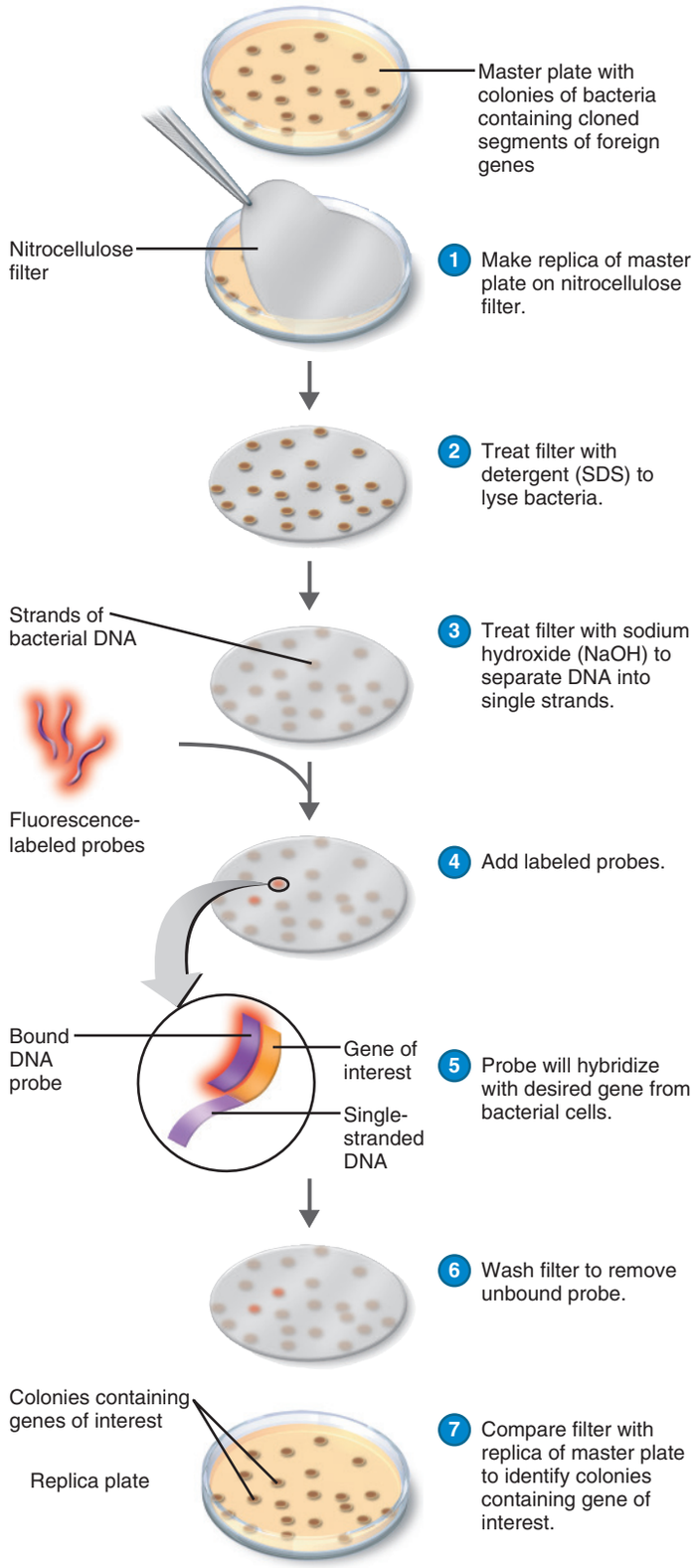


Figure 9.12 Colony hybridization: using a DNA probe to identify a cloned gene of interest.

Q What is a DNA probe?

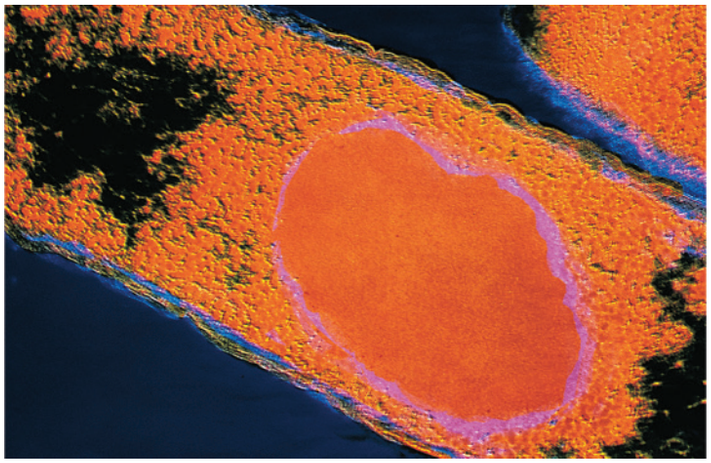


Figure 9.13 ***E. coli*** **genetically modified to produce gamma interferon, a human protein that promotes an immune response.** The product, visible here as a red mass in a violet ring, can be released by lysis of the cell.

Q **What is one advantage of using *E. coli* for genetic engineering? One disadvantage?**

bacteria, such as *Bacillus subtilis,* are more likely to secrete their products and are often preferred industrially for that reason.

Another microbe being used as a vehicle for expressing rDNA is baker's yeast, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae.* Its genome is only about four times larger than that of *E. coli* and is probably the best understood eukaryotic genome. Yeasts may carry plasmids, which are easily transferred into yeast cells whose cell walls have been removed. As eukaryotic cells, yeasts may be more successful in expressing foreign eukaryotic genes than bacteria. Furthermore, yeasts are likely to continuously secrete the product. Because of all these factors, yeasts have become the eukaryotic workhorse of biotechnology.

Mammalian cells in culture, even human cells, can be genetically modified much like bacteria to produce various products. Scientists have developed effective methods of growing certain mammalian cells in culture as hosts for growing viruses (see Chapter 13). Mammalian cells are often the best suited to making protein products for medical use because the cells secrete their products, and there's a low risk of toxins or allergens. Using mammalian cells to make foreign gene products on an industrial scale often requires a preliminary step of cloning the gene in bacteria. Consider the example of colony-stimulating factor (CSF). A protein produced naturally in tiny amounts by white blood cells, CSF is valuable because it stimulates the growth of certain cells that protect against infection. To produce huge amounts of CSF industrially, the gene is first inserted into a plasmid. Bacteria are used to make multiple copies of the plasmid (see Figure 9.1), and the resulting recombinant plasmids are then inserted into mammalian cells that are grown in bottles.

Plant cells can also be grown in culture, altered by rDNA techniques, and then used to generate genetically modified plants. Such plants may prove useful as sources of valuable products, such as plant alkaloids (the painkiller codeine, for example), the isoprenoids that are the basis of synthetic rubber, and melanin (the animal skin pigment) for use in sunscreens. Genetically modified plants have many advantages for the production of human therapeutic agents, including vaccines and antibodies. The advantages include large-scale, low-cost agricultural production and a low risk of product contamination by mammalian pathogens or cancer-causing genes. Genetically modifying plants often requires use of a bacterium. We'll return to the topic of genetically modified plants later in the chapter.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **9-11** How are recombinant clones identified?
- **9-12** What types of cells are used for cloning rDNA?

Applications of DNA Technology

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

9-13 List at least five applications of DNA technology.

9-14 Define RNAi.

9-15 Discuss the value of genome projects.

9-16 Define the following terms: *shotgun sequencing, bioinformatics, proteomics.*

9-17 Diagram the Southern blotting procedure, and provide an example of its use.

9-18 Diagram DNA fingerprinting, and provide an example of its use.

9-19 Outline genetic engineering with *Agrobacterium.*

CLINICAL CASE

The sequences from Dr. B. and patients A, B, C, E, and G share 87.5% of the nucleotide sequence, which is comparable to reported similarities for known linked infections.

Identify the amino acids encoded by the viral DNA. Did this change the percent similarity? (Hint: Refer to Figure 8.8).

We have now described the entire sequence of events in cloning a gene. As indicated earlier, such cloned genes can be applied in a variety of ways. One is to produce useful substances more efficiently and less expensively. Another is to obtain information from the cloned DNA that is useful for either basic research, medicine, or forensics. A third is to use cloned genes to alter the characteristics of cells or organisms.

Therapeutic Applications

An extremely valuable pharmaceutical product is the hormone insulin, a small protein produced by the pancreas that controls the body's uptake of glucose from blood. For many years, people with insulin-dependent diabetes controlled their disease by injecting insulin obtained from the pancreases of slaughtered animals. Obtaining this insulin is an expensive process, and the insulin from animals is not as effective as human insulin.

Because of the value of human insulin and the protein's small size, producing human insulin by rDNA techniques was an early goal for the pharmaceutical industry. To produce the hormone, synthetic genes were first constructed for each of the two short polypeptide chains that make up the insulin molecule. The small size of these chains—only 21 and 30 amino acids long—made it possible to use synthetic genes. Following the procedure described earlier, each of the two synthetic genes was inserted into a plasmid vector and linked to the end of a gene coding for the bacterial enzyme β-galactosidase, so that the insulin polypeptide was coproduced with the enzyme. Two different *E. coli* bacterial cultures were used, one to produce each of the insulin polypeptide chains. The polypeptides were then recovered from the bacteria, separated from the β-galactosidase, and chemically joined to make human insulin. This accomplishment was one of the early commercial successes of DNA technology, and it illustrates a number of the principles and procedures discussed in this chapter.

Another human hormone that is now being produced commercially by genetic modification of *E. coli* is somatostatin. At one time 500,000 sheep brains were needed to produce 5 mg of animal somatostatin for experimental purposes. By contrast, only 8 liters of a genetically modified bacterial culture are now required to obtain the equivalent amount of the human hormone.

Gene therapy may eventually provide cures for some genetic diseases. It is possible to imagine removing some cells from a person and transforming them with a normal gene to replace a defective or mutated gene. When these cells are returned to the person, they should function normally. For example, gene therapy has been used to treat hemophilia B and severe combined immunodeficiency. Adenoviruses and retroviruses are used most often to deliver genes; however, some researchers are working with plasmid vectors. An attenuated retrovirus was used as the vector when the first gene therapy to treat hemophilia in humans was performed in 1990. Glybera® is a gene therapy drug licensed in Europe to treat lipoprotein lipase deficiency. It uses an adenovirus to deliver the lipase gene to cells.

Gene editing is a promising technology to correct genetic mutations at precise locations. Gene editing uses *CRISPR* (pronounced "crisper"), which stands for *c*lustered *r*egularly *i*nterspaced *s*hort *p*alindromic *r*epeats. CRISPR-associated enzymes (CAS) are found in archaea and bacteria, where they destroy foreign DNA. The CRISPR technique opens up new avenues for disease treatment by allowing three basic actions: CRISPR can introduce a desired mutation, remove a specific gene, or insert foreign DNA.

An example of how the technique can be used is as follows: A small RNA molecule, complementary to the desired target, is attached to a CAS enzyme and DNA to be inserted. The guide RNA-CAS is inserted into the target cell by electroporation or microinjection. Inside the cell, the guide RNA binds to complementary DNA, and then the CAS cuts the DNA. This inactivates the gene. The cell's DNA polymerase and DNA ligase reattach the ends. Any DNA attached to the guide RNA is attached by the DNA ligase.

CRISPR is used to modify a patient's or donor's T cells (see Chapter 17) to fight cancer. These cells are called chimeric antigen receptor T cells (CAR-T) because they are modified to produce a receptor that binds to cancer cells. Five cancer-fighting CAR-T products are now available to treat certain types of myeloma and lymphoma. In addition, in 2021 a clinical trial began for a sickle-cell disease treatment that uses gene editing to correct the gene responsible for the disease.

Gene silencing is a natural process that occurs in a wide variety of eukaryotes and is apparently a defense against viruses and transposons. Gene silencing is similar to miRNA (see Figure 8.16) in that a gene encoding a small piece of RNA is transcribed. Following transcription, RNAs called **small interfering RNAs (siRNAs)** are formed after processing by an enzyme called *Dicer*. The siRNA molecules bind to mRNA, which is then destroyed by proteins called the **RNA-induced silencing complex (RISC)**, thus *silencing* the expression of a gene (Figure 9.14). New technology called **RNA interference (RNAi)** inserts a DNA encoding siRNA against the gene of interest into a cell. When transferred into a cell, the cell produces the desired siRNA. The expression of siRNA in the target cell may be used to silence genes of interest. Currently siRNA drugs are approved to treat three inherited conditions.

The importance of rDNA technology to medical research cannot be emphasized enough. Artificial blood for use in transfusions can now be prepared with human hemoglobin produced in genetically modified pigs. Sheep have also been genetically modified to produce a number of drugs in their milk. This procedure has no apparent effect upon the sheep, and they provide a ready source of raw material for the product that does not require sacrificing animals.

Vaccine Applications

Vaccine development and production are discussed in detail in Chapter 18. However, several vaccine types that relate to DNA technology are described briefly here.

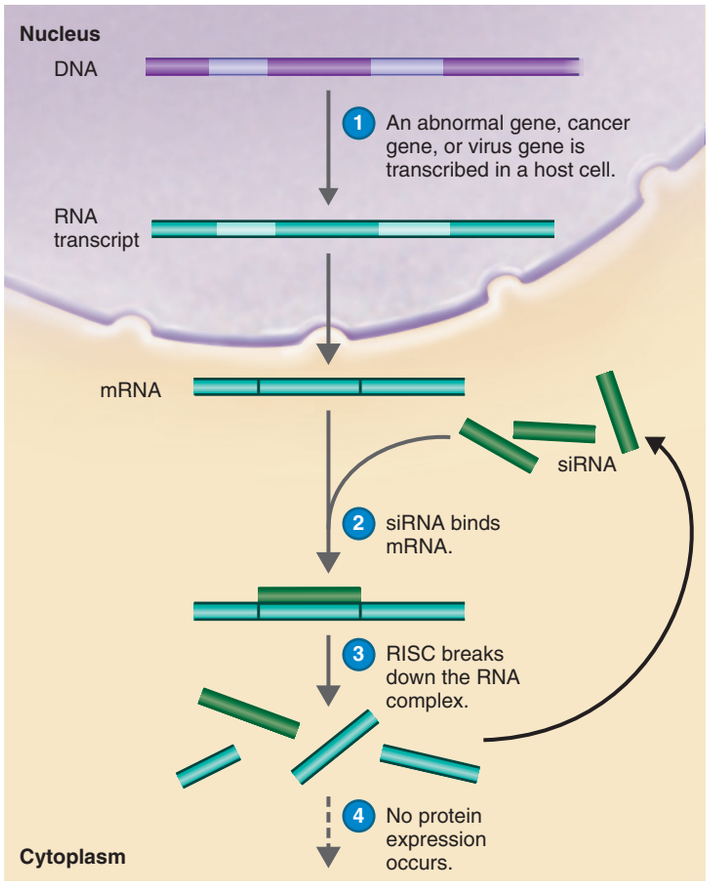


Figure 9.14 Gene silencing could provide treatments for a wide range of diseases.

Q Does RNAi act during or after transcription?

Subunit vaccines, consisting only of a protein portion of a pathogen, are being made by genetically modifying cells. Subunit vaccines have been produced for a number of diseases, notably hepatitis B and COVID-19. The Novavax COVID-19 vaccine is produced in moth cells. One of the advantages of a subunit vaccine is that there is no chance that the vaccine will cause an infection. The protein is harvested from genetically modified cells and purified for use as a vaccine.

DNA vaccines are usually circular plasmids that include a gene encoding a viral protein that's under the transcriptional control of a promoter region active in human cells. The plasmids are then cloned in bacteria. A DNA vaccine to protect against Zika virus disease is currently in clinical trials.

Animal viruses such as vaccinia virus can be genetically modified to carry a gene for another microbe's surface protein. When injected, the virus acts as a vaccine against the other microbe. The Janssen (Johnson & Johnson) COVID-19 vaccine contains a genetically modified adenovirus to insert mRNA into human cells. Other COVID-19 vaccines, including Moderna and Pfizer-BioNTech options, are **mRNA vaccines**. The target coronavirus spike protein gene is synthetically manufactured and inserted into in a plasmid. Multiple copies of the plasmid are produced by *E. coli*. The plasmids are purified, the two strands of plasmid DNA are separated, and reverse transcriptase produces mRNA, which is used in the vaccine. The COVID-19 mRNA is translated by muscle cells to produce a viral protein, and the host produces antibodies against the protein. Table 9.2 lists some other important rDNA products used in medical therapy.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **9-13** Explain how DNA technology can be used to treat disease and to prevent disease.
- **9-14** What is gene silencing?

Genome Projects

The first genome to be sequenced was from a bacteriophage in 1977. In 1995, the genome of a free-living cell—*Haemophilus influenzae*—was sequenced. Since then, nearly 150,000 prokaryotic genomes and over 3000 eukaryotic genomes have been sequenced.

In **shotgun sequencing**, small pieces of a genome of a free-living cell are sequenced, and the sequences are then assembled using a computer. Any gaps between the pieces then have to be found and sequenced (Figure 9.15). The equipment used for *next-generation sequencing* can sequence all of the fragments

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

The amino acid sequence reflects the nucleotide sequence. Analysis of the amino acid signature pattern confirms that the viruses from the dentist and patients are closely related. HIV has a high mutation rate, so HIVs from different individuals are genetically distinct. Dr. B.'s HIV is different from the local control and from the outlier. Dr. B.'s amino acid sequences and those of patients A, B, C, E, and G are distinct from those in the control and in the outlier and from two dental patients with known behavioral risks for HIV infection.

PCR makes it possible to track transmission of disease between individuals, communities, and countries. This tracking works best with pathogens that have enough genetic variation to identify different strains.

* * *

Dr. B. died before the mode of transmission could be established. But in the era when he practiced dentistry, it was not always the norm to wear gloves when performing procedures. Patient interviews indicated that Dr. B. didn't like to wear gloves. It is likely that HIV was transmitted when a cut on the doctor's bare hands allowed the virus to enter patients' gums. Today the CDC and state health departments ask dental care providers to use universal precautions, including wearing gloves and masks and sterilizing equipment that is to be reused. Had Dr. B. used standard precautions, it is extremely unlikely he would have infected patients.

TABLE 9.2 Some Pharmaceutical Products of rDNA

Product	Comments
Cervical Cancer Vaccine	Consists of (HPV) viral proteins produced by *S. cerevisiae*
Epidermal Growth Factor (EGF)	Heals wounds, burns, ulcers; produced by *E. coli*
Erythropoietin (EPO)	Treatment of anemia; produced by mammalian cell culture
Interferon	
IFN–α	Therapy for leukemia, melanoma, and hepatitis; produced by *E. coli* and *S. cerevisiae* (yeast)
IFN–β	Treatment for multiple sclerosis; produced by mammalian cell culture
IFN–γ	Treatment of chronic granulomatous disease; produced by *E. coli*
COVID-19 Vaccine	Consists of spike protein produced by moth cell culture
Hepatitis B Vaccine	Produced by *S. cerevisiae* that carries hepatitis-virus gene on a plasmid
Human Growth Hormone (hGH)	Treats growth deficiencies in children; produced by *E. coli*
Human Insulin	Therapy for diabetes; better tolerated than insulin extracted from animals; produced by *E. coli*
Influenza Vaccine	Vaccine consists of proteins made by *E. coli* or *S. cerevisiae* carrying virus genes
Interleukins	Regulate the immune system; possible treatment for cancer; produced by *E. coli*
Orthoclone OKT3 **Muromonab-CD3**	Monoclonal antibody used in transplant patients to help suppress the immune system, reducing the chance of tissue rejection; produced by mouse cells
Pulmozyme (rhDNase)	Enzyme used to break down mucous secretions in cystic fibrosis patients; produced by mammalian cell culture
Relaxin	Human hormone relaxes the uterus during childbirth; produced by *E. coli*
Superoxide Dismutase (SOD)	Minimizes damage caused by oxygen free radicals when blood is resupplied to oxygen-deprived tissues; produced by *S. cerevisiae* and *Komagataella pastoris* (yeast)
Taxol	Plant product used for treating ovarian cancer; produced in *E. coli*
Tissue Plasminogen Activator	Dissolves the fibrin of blood clots; therapy for heart attacks; produced by mammalian cell culture
Tumor Necrosis Factor (TNF)	Causes disintegration of tumor cells; produced by *E. coli*
Veterinary Use	
Canine Distemper Vaccine	Canarypox virus carrying canine distemper virus genes
Feline Leukemia Vaccine	Canarypox virus carrying feline leukemia virus genes

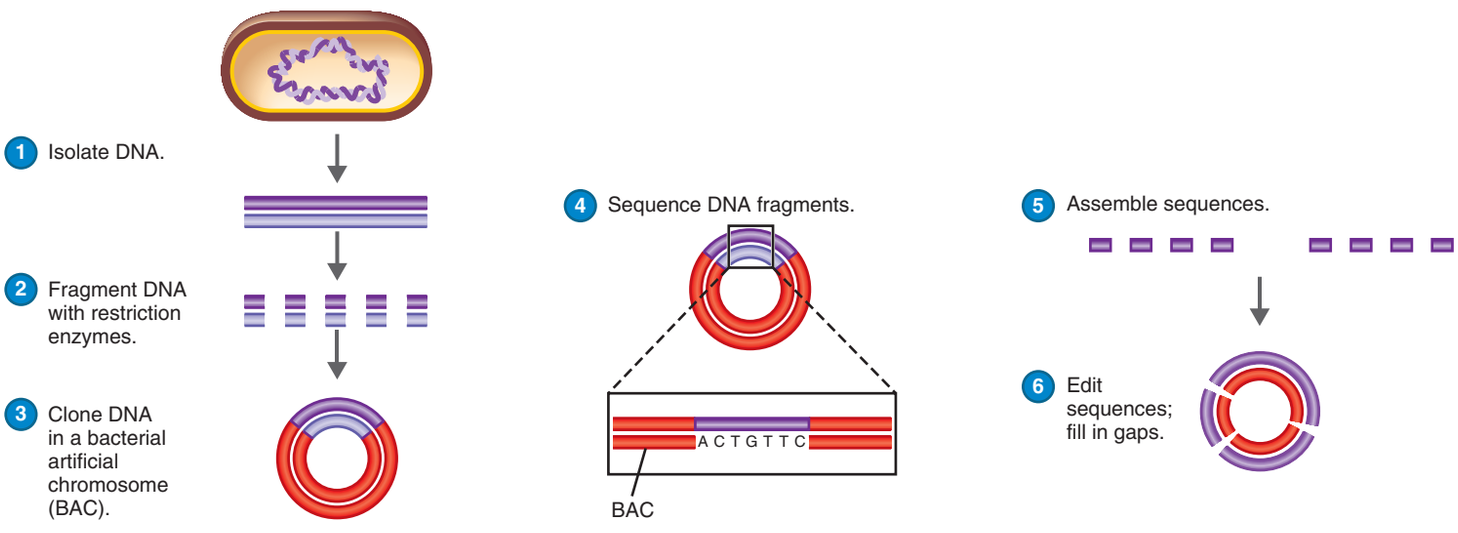


Figure 9.15 Shotgun sequencing. In this technique, a genome is cut into pieces, and each piece is sequenced. Then the pieces are fit together. There may be gaps if a specific DNA fragment was not sequenced.

Q Does this technique identify genes and their locations?

at the same time so that entire genomes can be determined in a few days. This technique can be used on environmental samples to study the genomes of microorganisms that haven't been cultured. The study of genetic material taken directly from environmental samples is called **metagenomics**.

The Human Genome Project was an international 13-year effort, formally begun in October 1990 and completed in 2003. The goal of the project was to sequence the entire human genome, approximately 3 billion nucleotide pairs, comprising 20,000 to 25,000 genes. Thousands of people in 18 countries participated. Researchers collected blood (female) or sperm (male) samples from a large number of donors. Only a few samples were processed as DNA resources, and the source names are protected so that neither donors nor scientists knew whose samples were used. Development of shotgun sequencing greatly speeded the process, and 99% of the genome has been sequenced.

One surprising finding was that less than 2% of the genome encodes a functional product—the other 98% includes miRNA genes, viral remnants, repetitive sequences (called *short tandem repeats*), introns, the chromosome ends (called *telomeres*), and transposons (Chapter 8).

The next goal of researchers is the Human Proteome Project, which will map all the proteins expressed in human cells. Even before it is completed, however, it's yielding data that are of immense value to our understanding of biology. It will also eventually be of great medical benefit, especially for the diagnosis and treatment of genetic diseases.

Scientific Applications

Recombinant DNA technology can be used to make products, but this isn't its only important application. Because of its ability to produce many copies of DNA, it can serve as a sort of DNA "printing press." Once a large amount of a particular piece of DNA is available, various analytic techniques, discussed in this section, can be used to "read" the information contained in the DNA.

In 2010, researchers synthesized the smallest known cellular genome during the Minimal Genome Project. A copy of the *Mycoplasma mycoides* genome was synthesized and transplanted into a *Mycoplasma capricolum* cell that had had its own DNA removed. The modified cell produced *M. mycoides* proteins. This experiment showed that large-scale changes to a genome can be made and that an existing cell will accept this DNA.

DNA sequencing has produced an enormous amount of information that spawned the new field of **bioinformatics**, the science of understanding the function of genes through computer-assisted analysis. DNA sequences are stored in web-based databases referred to as GenBank. Genomic information can be searched with computer programs to find specific sequences or to look for similar patterns in the genomes of different organisms. Microbial genes are now being searched to identify molecules that are the virulence factors of pathogens. By comparing genomes, researchers discovered that *Chlamydia trachomatis* (tra-KŌ-ma-tis) produces a toxin similar to that of *Clostridioides difficile*.

The next goal is to identify the proteins encoded by these genes. **Proteomics** is the science of determining all of the proteins expressed in a cell.

Reverse genetics is an approach to discovering the function of a gene from a genetic sequence. Reverse genetics attempts to connect a given genetic sequence with specific effects on the organism. For example, if you mutate or block a gene (see the earlier discussions of gene editing and gene silencing), you can then look for a characteristic the organism lost.

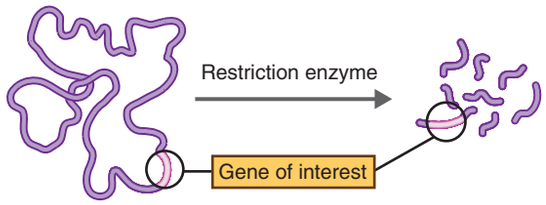
An example of the use of human DNA sequencing is the identification and cloning of the mutant gene that causes cystic fibrosis (CF). CF is characterized by the oversecretion of mucus, leading to blocked respiratory passageways. The sequence of the mutated gene can be used as a diagnostic tool in a hybridization technique called **Southern blotting** (Figure 9.16), named for Ed Southern, who developed the technique in 1975.

In this technique, subject DNA is digested with a restriction enzyme, yielding thousands of *restriction fragments* of various sizes. The fragments are separated by **gel electrophoresis**, then put in a well at one end of a layer of agarose gel. When an electrical current is applied, the different-sized fragments migrate through the gel at different rates. Fragments are transferred onto a filter by blotting and are exposed to a labeled probe made from the cloned gene of interest, in this case the CF gene. The probe will hybridize to this mutant gene but not to the normal gene. Fragments to which the probe binds are identified by a colored dye. With this method, any person's DNA can be tested for the presence of the mutated gene.

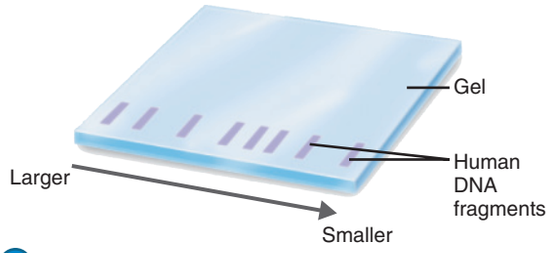
Genetic testing can now be used to screen for several hundred genetic diseases. Such screening procedures can be performed on prospective parents and also on fetal tissue. Two of the more commonly screened genes are those associated with inherited forms of breast cancer and the gene responsible for Huntington's disease. Genetic testing can help a physician prescribe the correct medication for a patient. The drug Herceptin, for example, is effective only in breast cancer patients with a specific nucleotide sequence in the HER2 gene.

Forensic Microbiology

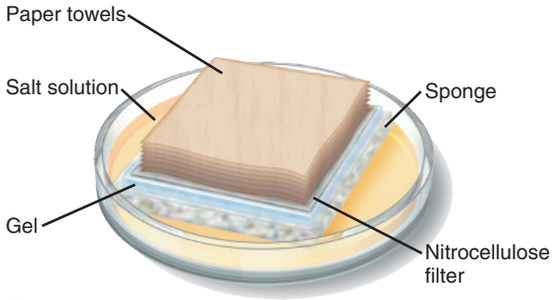
The genomics of pathogens has become a mainstay of monitoring, preventing, and controlling infectious disease (Figure 9.17). The use of genomics to trace a disease outbreak is described in the Clinical Focus box. The new field of **forensic microbiology** developed because hospitals, food manufacturers, and individuals can be sued in courts of law and because microorganisms can be used as weapons. In the 2001 anthrax attacks in the United States, DNA fingerprints of *Bacillus anthracis* were used to track the source and then the alleged attacker. Northern Arizona University researchers determined that the *B. anthracis*



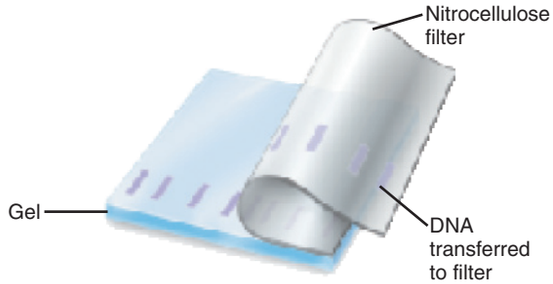
1 DNA containing the gene of interest is extracted from human cells and cut into fragments by restriction enzymes. Fragments are called restriction fragment length polymorphisms, or RFLPs (pronounced "rif-lips").



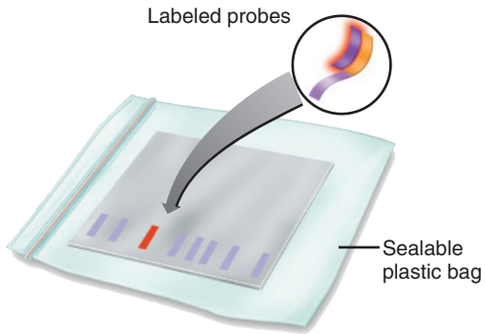
2 The fragments are separated according to size by gel electrophoresis. Each band contains many copies of a particular DNA fragment. The bands are invisible but can be made visible by staining.



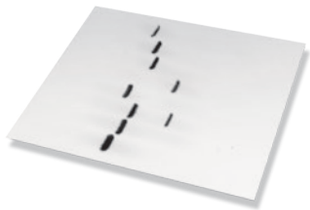
3 The DNA bands are transferred to a nitrocellulose filter by blotting. The solution passes through the gel and filter to the paper towels by capillary action.



4 This produces a nitrocellulose filter with DNA fragments positioned exactly as on the gel.



5 The filter is exposed to a labeled probe for a specific gene. The probe will base-pair (hybridize) with a short sequence present on the gene.



6 The fragment containing the gene of interest is identified by a band on the filter.

Figure 9.16 Southern blotting.

Q What is the purpose of Southern blotting?

endospores used in a 1993 attack by a cult in Japan were actually a nonpathogenic vaccine strain. No one was hurt when those endospores were released. Currently, a DNA database is being developed for microorganisms that could be used in biological crimes.

DNA chips (see Figure 10.18) or *PCR microarrays* that can screen a sample for multiple pathogens at once are now being used. In a DNA chip, up to 22 primers from different microorganisms can be used to initiate the PCR. A suspect microorganism is identified if DNA is copied from one of the primers. At the CDC, PulseNet uses PCR to track outbreaks of foodborne diseases. In some cases, PCR using specific primers can be used to track a bacterial strain to locate the source of an outbreak. A disadvantage of these techniques is they do not provide an isolate to use to test for antibiotic-resistance or toxin production.

Microbial forensics has been used in court. In the 1990s, DNA fingerprints of HIV were used for the first time to obtain a rape conviction. Since then, a physician was convicted of injecting his former lover with HIV from one of his patients, based on the DNA fingerprint of the HIV.

The requirements to prove in a court of law the source of a microbe are stricter than for the medical community. For example, to prove intent to commit harm requires collecting evidence properly and establishing a chain of custody of that

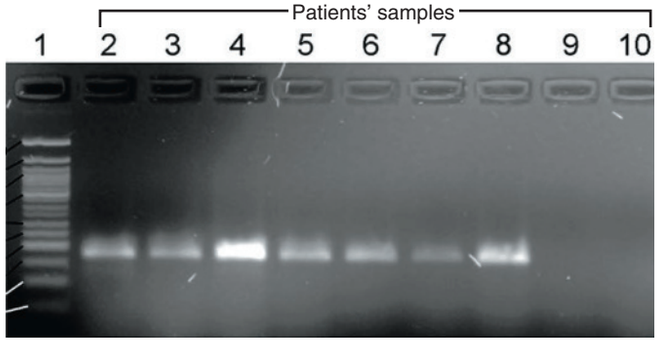


Figure 9.17 DNA fingerprints used to identify COVID-19 in patients. This figure shows results of RT-PCR amplified patterns using a SARS-CoV-2 virus primer of nasopharyngeal swabs from several patients. Lane 1 is a DNA size ladder. Lanes 2-8 are positive for SARS-CoV-2. Lanes 9-10 are negative.

Q What is forensic microbiology?

evidence. Microbial properties that are unimportant in public health may be important clues in forensic investigations. The genetic fingerprint of sexually transmitted pathogens, for instance, has been used as evidence in sexual abuse and rape cases. Recent research suggests that a person's microbiome can be used to identify individuals involved in a crime. This chapter's In the Clinic video offers an example of the use of bacterial genomics in a criminal investigation.

Nanotechnology

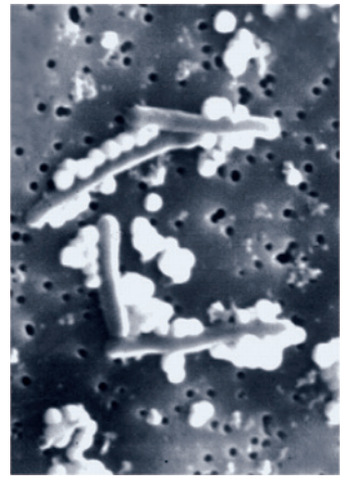
Nanotechnology deals with the design and manufacture of extremely small electronic circuits and mechanical devices built at the molecular level of matter. Molecule-sized robots or computers can detect contamination in food, diseases in plants, or biological weapons. However, the small machines require small (a nanometer is 10^{-9} meters; 1000 nm fit in 1 μm) wires and components. Bacteria may provide the needed small metals without producing the toxic waste associated with chemical manufacture. Bacteria have been isolated that make nanoparticles from a variety of elements, including gold, silver, selenium, and cadmium (Figure 9.18). Nanotechnology research is growing, with researchers developing innovative ways of using bacteria to produce nanospheres for potential drug targeting and delivery. Researchers with the U.S. Department of Energy are using bacteria in nanoscale electrical circuits to make hydrogen gas. Swedish researchers are using *Acetobacter xylinum* to build cellulose nanofibers for artificial blood vessels.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **9-15, 9-16** How are DNA sequencing, bioinformatics, and proteomics related to genome projects?
- **9-17** What is Southern blotting?
- **9-18** Why does PCR result in a DNA fingerprint?

Figure 9.18 *Bacillus* cells growing on selenium oxide (SeO_3^{2-}) form chains of elemental selenium.

Q What might bacteria provide for nanotechnology?



Agricultural Applications

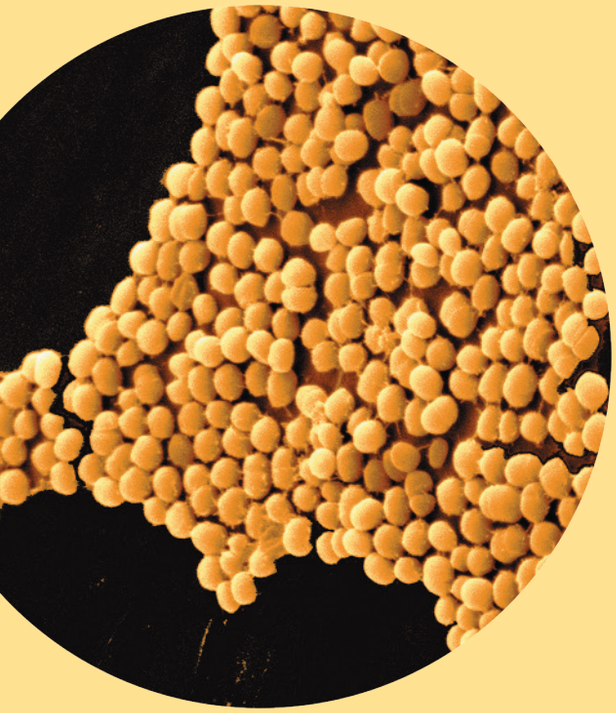
The process of selecting for genetically desirable plants has always been time-consuming. Conventional plant cross-breeding is laborious and involves waiting for the planted seed to germinate, grow, and mature to learn whether the plant has the desired traits. Plant breeding has been revolutionized by the use of plant cells grown in culture. Clones of plant cells, including cells that have been genetically altered by rDNA techniques, can be grown in large numbers. These cells can then be induced to regenerate whole plants, from which seeds can be harvested.

Recombinant DNA can be introduced into plant cells in several ways. Previously we mentioned protoplast fusion and gene guns, which use DNA-coated "bullets." The most elegant method, however, makes use of a plasmid called the **Ti plasmid** (*Ti* stands for tumor-inducing), which occurs naturally in the bacterium *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* (TOO-mah-fas'ē-enz). This bacterium infects certain plants, in which the Ti plasmid causes the formation of a tumorlike growth called a crown gall (Figure 9.19). A part of the Ti plasmid, called T-DNA, integrates into the genome of the infected plant. The T-DNA stimulates local cellular growth (the crown gall) and simultaneously causes the production of certain products used by the bacteria as a source of nutritional carbon and nitrogen.

For plant scientists, the attraction of the Ti plasmid is that it provides a vehicle for introducing rDNA into a plant (Figure 9.20). A scientist can insert foreign genes into the T-DNA, put the recombinant plasmid back into the *Agrobacterium* cell, and use the bacterium to insert the recombinant Ti plasmid into a plant cell. The plant cell with the foreign gene can then be used to generate a new plant. With luck, the new plant will express the foreign gene. Unfortunately, *Agrobacterium*'s ability to infect grasses is limited, so it cannot be used to improve grains such as wheat, rice, or corn.

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

Crime Scene Investigation and Your Microbiome



Fingerprints, blood types, and DNA can all be used with crime scene investigations (CSI). Each technique uses unique profiles from the human body to draw conclusions about a person's actions or whereabouts. Now the microbiome might become the next CSI tool.

Even after we wash our hands, certain bacteria persist. These microbes can also be transferred to objects in the home or office or to other people we live with. But which microbes commonly live on the body also varies greatly throughout the population as a whole—meaning that the microbiome can become a unique identifier in certain situations.

A research project called The Home Microbiome Project followed seven families and their pets over 6 weeks. Researchers discovered distinct microbial communities in each house. Couples and their young children shared most of their microbial community. When three of the families moved, it took less than a day for the new house to have the same microbial population as the old one.

In another study, it was shown that a person's "microbiome fingerprint" remains fairly consistent over time. All this research suggests that microbiome composition may be the basis for a reliable forensic tool. Microbiome profiles could be used to track whether a person lived somewhere, used a particular cell phone, or walked over a surface. Humans also exchange microbes during intercourse, so microbes on pubic hair might also provide evidence of sexual assault.

Microbiota, like this skin biofilm, may one day be another crime scene "fingerprint."

Figure 9.19 Crown gall disease on a rose plant. The tumorlike growth is stimulated by a gene on the Ti plasmid that *A. tumefaciens* inserted into a plant cell.

Q What are some of the agricultural applications of rDNA technology?

Noteworthy accomplishments of this approach are the introduction into plants of resistance to the herbicide glyphosate. Normally, the herbicide kills both weeds and useful plants by inhibiting an enzyme necessary for making certain essential amino acids. Some *Salmonella* bacteria happen to have this enzyme, but are resistant to the herbicide. When the DNA for this enzyme is introduced into a crop plant, the crop becomes resistant to the herbicide, which then kills only the weeds. The Bt gene from *Bacillus thuringiensis* has been inserted into a variety of crop plants, including cotton and potatoes, so insects that eat the plants will be killed. Resistance to drought, viral infection, and several other environmental stresses has also been engineered into crop plants.

In recent years, researchers have used CRISPR gene-editing to modify food crops. Gene editing can be used to inactivate a gene, modify an existing gene, or insert a new gene. In 2021, a tomato that has a high concentration of γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) was approved. The tomato genome was edited to inactivate the gene that encodes destruction of GABA. In 2022, the FDA approved CRISPR-edited cattle. Researchers modified genes in the animals to produce shorter hair that will help the animals tolerate hot weather.

An example of a genetically modified bacterium now in agricultural use is *Pseudomonas fluorescens* that has been engineered

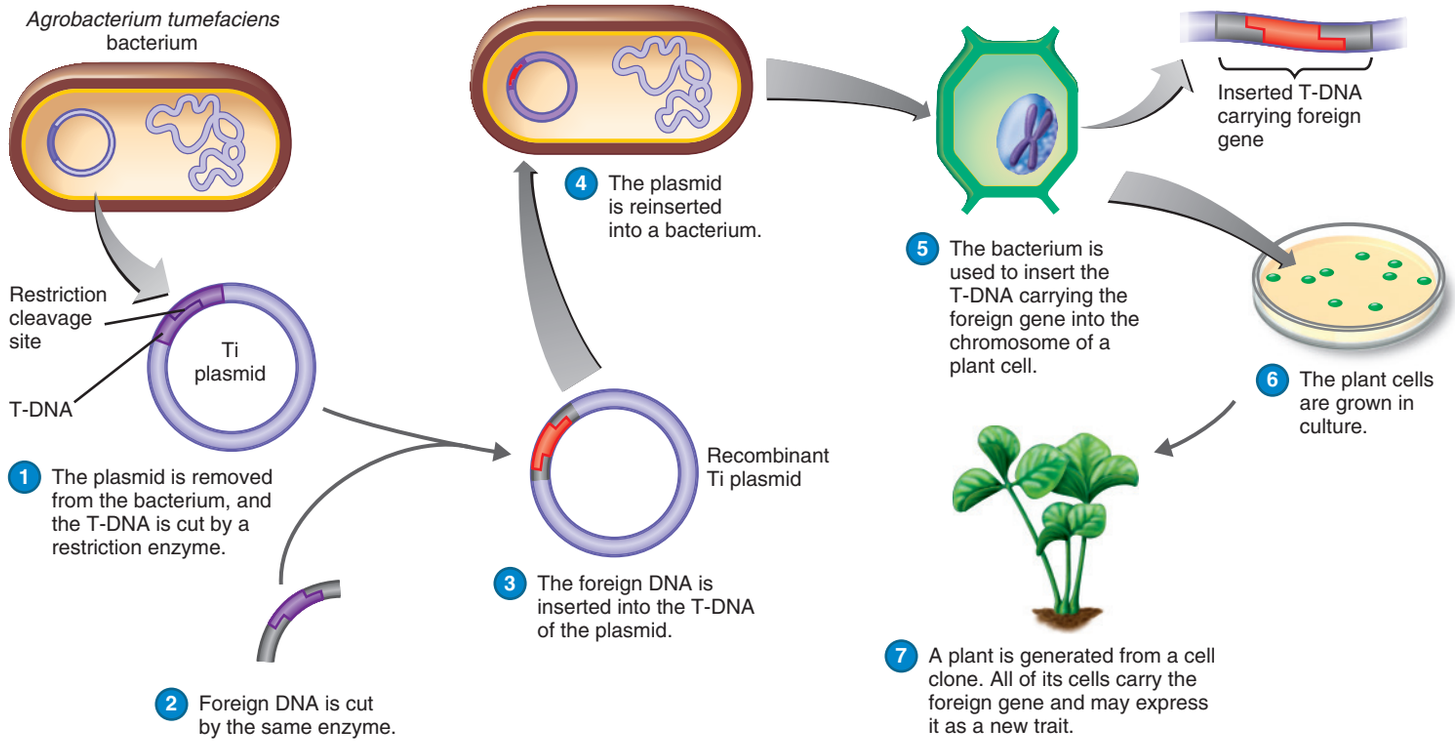


Figure 9.20 Using the Ti plasmid as a vector for genetic modification in plants.

Q Why is the Ti plasmid important to biotechnology?

to produce Bt toxin, normally produced by *B. thuringiensis*. The genetically altered *Pseudomonas,* which produces much more toxin than *B. thuringiensis,* can be added to plant seeds and in time will enter the vascular system of the growing plant. Its toxin is ingested by the feeding insect larvae and kills them (but is harmless to humans and other warm-blooded animals).

Animal husbandry has also benefited from rDNA technology to develop disease-resistant food animals. Techniques for making cattle resistant to bovine spongiform encephalopathy and chickens and pigs resistant to avian influenza are currently being researched.

Table 9.3 lists several rDNA products used in agriculture and animal husbandry.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

9-19 Of what value is the plant pathogen *Agrobacterium*?

TABLE 9.3 Some Agriculturally Important Products of rDNA Technology

Product	Comments
AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTS	
Button mushroom (*Agaricus bisporus*)	Gene for polyphenol oxidase, which causes browning, is deleted.
Bt cotton and Bt corn	Plants have toxin-producing gene from *B. thuringiensis*; toxin kills insects that eat plants.
Tomatoes	Gene for GABA breakdown deleted.
Potatoes	Antisense gene blocks pectin degradation, so fruits have longer shelf life. Produce less acrylamide when cooked.
Cut flowers	Genes for purple or orange flowers from other plant species; RNAi inhibits ethylene production to prolong shelf life.
Rainbow papaya	Virus coat protein genes expressed by plant cells protect the plant from papaya ringspot virus.
ANIMAL PRODUCTS	
Aedes aegypti	Male mosquito with a gene that causes larvae to die; used to control spread of Zika virus.
Atlantic salmon	Salmon grow faster with a gene from Chinook salmon and promoter from another (pout) fish.
GloFish®	Brightly colored fluorescent aquarium fish with the color-protein genes from marine invertebrates.
Cattle	Gene for hair modified to tolerate climate change.

Safety Issues and the Ethics of Using DNA Technology

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

9-20 List the advantages of, and problems associated with, the use of genetic modification techniques.

There will always be concern about the safety of any new technology, and genetic modification and biotechnology are certainly no exceptions. One reason for this concern is that it's nearly impossible to prove that something is entirely safe under all conceivable conditions. People worry that the same techniques that can alter a microbe or plant to make them useful to humans could also inadvertently make them pathogenic to humans or otherwise dangerous to living organisms or could create an ecological nightmare. Therefore, laboratories engaged in rDNA research must meet rigorous standards of control to avoid either accidental release of genetically modified organisms into the environment or exposure of humans to any risk of infection. To reduce risk further, microbiologists engaged in genetic modification often delete from the microbes' genomes certain genes that are essential for growth in environments outside the laboratory. Genetically modified microorganisms intended for use in the environment (in agriculture, for example) may be engineered to contain genes that eventually turn on to produce a toxin that kills the microbes, thus ensuring that they will not survive in the environment for very long after they have accomplished their task.

The safety issues in agricultural biotechnology are similar to those concerning chemical pesticides: toxicity to humans and to nonpest species. Although not shown to be harmful, genetically modified foods have not been popular with consumers. In 1999, researchers in Ohio noticed that humans may develop allergies to *B. thuringiensis* (Bt) toxin after working in fields sprayed with the insecticide. And an Iowa study showed that the caterpillar stage of Monarch butterflies could be killed by ingesting windblown Bt-carrying pollen that landed on milkweed, the caterpillars' normal food. Crop plants can be genetically modified for herbicide resistance so that fields can be sprayed to eliminate weeds without killing the desired crop. However, if the modified plants pollinate related weed species, weeds could become resistant to herbicides, making it more difficult to control unwanted plants. An unanswered question is whether releasing genetically modified organisms will alter evolution as genes move to wild species.

These developing technologies also raise a variety of ethical issues. Genetic testing for diseases is becoming routine. Who should have access to this information? Should employers have the right to know the results of such tests? How can we be assured that such information will not be used to discriminate against certain groups? Should individuals be told they will get an incurable disease? If so, when?

Genetic counseling, which provides advice and counseling to prospective parents with family histories of genetic disease, is becoming more important in considerations about whether to have children.

There are probably just as many harmful applications of a new technology as there are helpful ones. It is particularly easy to imagine DNA technology being used to develop new and powerful biological weapons. In addition, because such research efforts are performed under top-secret conditions, it is virtually impossible for the general public to learn of them.

Perhaps more than most new technologies, molecular genetics holds the promise of affecting human life in previously unimaginable ways. It is important that society and individuals be given every opportunity to understand the potential impact of these new developments.

Like the invention of the microscope, the development of DNA techniques is causing profound changes in science, agriculture, and human health care. With this technology not quite 50 years old, it is difficult to predict exactly what changes will occur. However, it is likely that within another 30 years, many of the treatments and diagnostic methods discussed in this book will have been replaced by far more powerful techniques based on the unprecedented ability to manipulate DNA precisely.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

9-20 Identify two advantages and two problems associated with genetically modified organisms.

CLINICAL FOCUS Norovirus—Who Is Responsible for the Outbreak?

As you read through this box, you will encounter a series of questions that microbiologists ask themselves as they trace a disease outbreak. Whether the microbiologist is called as an expert witness in court will depend on whether a lawsuit is filed. Try to answer each question before going on to the next one.

1. On May 7, Nadia Koehler, a microbiologist at a county health department, is notified of a gastroenteritis outbreak among 115 people. The case is defined as vomiting and diarrhea and fever, cramps, or nausea.

   What information does Nadia need?

2. Nadia needs to find out where the ill people have been in the past 48 hours. After several interviews, Nadia finds out that the ill people include 23 school employees, 55 publishing company employees, 9 employees of a social service organization, and 28 other people (see **Figure A**).

   Now what does Nadia need to know?

3. Next, Nadia finds out what these 115 people have in common. In her investigation, Nadia discovers that on May 2, the school staff had been served a party-sized sandwich catered by a national franchise restaurant. On May 3, the publishing company and social service staff luncheons were catered by the same restaurant. The remaining 28 people ate sandwiches at the same restaurant, at varying times between these two days.

   What does Nadia do next?

4. Nadia analyzes exposures to 16 food items; the results show that eating lettuce is significantly associated with illness.

   What is Nadia's next step?

5. Nadia then requests a reverse-transcription PCR (RT-PCR) using a norovirus primer to be done on stool samples (**Figure B**).

   What did Nadia conclude?

6. RT-PCR confirmed norovirus infection. Nadia's next request is for a sequence analysis to be performed on 21 stool specimens. The results demonstrated 100% sequence homology for the 21 specimens.

   What should Nadia do next?

7. Nadia learns that a food handler employed by the restaurant had experienced vomiting and diarrhea on May 1. The food handler believes he had acquired the illness from his child. The child's illness was traced to an ill cousin who had been exposed to norovirus at a child-care center. The food handler's vomiting ended by the early morning of May 2, and he returned to work at the restaurant later that morning.

   What should Nadia look for now?

8. Now Nadia compares the virus strains from the food handler to the ones from the ill customers. She requests a sequence analysis on viruses from the food handler and eight ill customers. They are identical to the strains identified in step 6.

   Where does Nadia look next?

9. Nadia looks for any areas in the restaurant that still may be contaminated by the norovirus. She finds out that the lettuce was sliced each morning by the food handler who had been sick. Nadia's inspection reveals that the food preparation sink is also used for handwashing. The sink was not sanitized before and after the lettuce was washed. The health department closes the restaurant until it can be cleaned with the proper sanitizers.

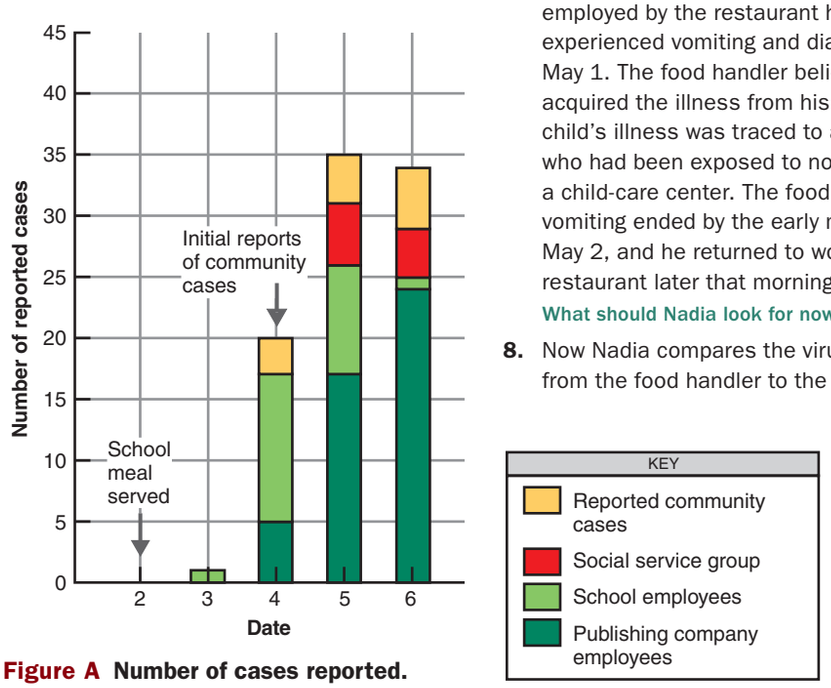


Figure A **Number of cases reported.**

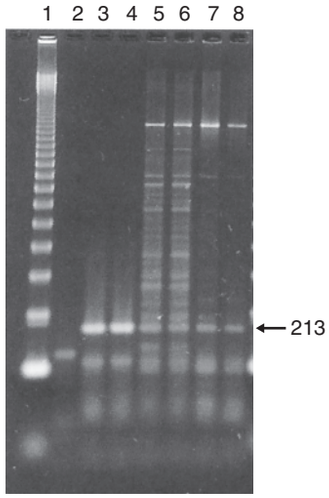


Figure B **Results of PCR of patient samples. Lane 1, 123-bp size ladders. Lane 2, negative RT-PCR control; Lanes 3–8, patient samples. Norovirus is identified by the 213-bp band of DNA.**

Noroviruses are the most common cause of outbreaks of acute gastroenteritis worldwide. Annually, norovirus causes 20 million cases of gastroenteritis. Between August 1, 2021, and March 5, 2022, 488 norovirus outbreaks in the United States were reported.

Source: Adapted from CDC, Foodborne Outbreak Online Database (FOOD).

Study Outline

Introduction to Biotechnology (pp. 244–245)

1. Biotechnology is the use of microorganisms, cells, or cell components to make a product.

Recombinant DNA Technology (p. 244)

2. Closely related organisms can exchange genes in natural recombination.
3. Genes can be transferred among unrelated species via laboratory manipulation, called rDNA technology.
4. Recombinant DNA is DNA that has been artificially manipulated to combine genes from two different sources.

An Overview of Recombinant DNA Procedures (pp. 244–245)

5. A desired gene is inserted into a DNA vector, such as a plasmid or a viral genome.
6. The vector inserts the DNA into a new cell, which is grown to form a clone.
7. Large quantities of the gene product can be harvested from the clone.

Tools of Biotechnology (pp. 246–249)

Selection (p. 246)

1. Microbes with desirable traits are selected for culturing by artificial selection.

Mutation (p. 246)

2. Mutagens are used to cause mutations that might result in a microbe with desirable traits.
3. Site-directed mutagenesis is used to change a specific codon in a gene.

Restriction Enzymes (pp. 246–247)

4. Prepackaged kits are available for rDNA techniques.
5. A restriction enzyme recognizes and cuts only one particular nucleotide sequence in DNA.
6. Some restriction enzymes produce sticky ends, short stretches of single-stranded DNA at the ends of the DNA fragments.
7. Fragments of DNA produced by the same restriction enzyme will spontaneously join by base pairing. DNA ligase can covalently link the DNA backbones.

Vectors (pp. 247–248)

8. Vectors are DNA used to transfer other DNA between cells.
9. A plasmid containing a new gene can be inserted into a cell by transformation.
10. A virus containing a new gene can insert the gene into a cell.

Polymerase Chain Reaction (pp. 248–249)

11. The polymerase chain reaction (PCR) is used to make multiple copies of a desired piece of DNA enzymatically.
12. PCR can be used to increase the amounts of DNA in samples to detectable levels. This may allow sequencing of genes, the diagnosis of genetic diseases, or the detection of viruses.

Techniques of Genetic Modification (pp. 249–255)

Inserting Foreign DNA into Cells (pp. 250–251)

1. Cells can take up naked DNA by transformation. Chemical treatments are used to make cells that are not naturally competent take up DNA.
2. Pores made in protoplasts and animal cells by electric current in the process of electroporation can provide entrance for new pieces of DNA.
3. Protoplast fusion is the joining of cells whose cell walls have been removed.
4. Foreign DNA can be introduced into plant cells by shooting DNA-coated particles into the cells or by using a thin micropipette.

Obtaining DNA (pp. 251–253)

5. Genomic libraries can be made by cutting up an entire genome with restriction enzymes and inserting the fragments into bacterial plasmids or phages.
6. Complementary DNA (cDNA) made from mRNA by reverse transcription can be cloned in genomic libraries.
7. Synthetic DNA can be made in vitro by a DNA synthesis machine.

Selecting a Clone (pp. 253–254)

8. Antibiotic-resistance markers on plasmid vectors are used to identify cells containing the engineered vector by direct selection.
9. In blue-white screening, the vector contains the genes for ampicillin resistance and β-galactosidase.
10. The desired gene is inserted into the β-galactosidase gene site, destroying the gene.
11. Clones containing the recombinant vector will be resistant to ampicillin and unable to hydrolyze X-gal (white colonies).
12. Clones containing foreign DNA can be tested for the desired gene product.
13. A short piece of labeled DNA called a DNA probe can be used to identify clones carrying the desired gene.

Making a Gene Product (pp. 254–255)

14. *E. coli* is used to produce proteins using rDNA because *E. coli* is easily grown, and its genomics are well understood.
15. Efforts must be made to ensure that *E. coli*'s endotoxin does not contaminate a product intended for human use.
16. To recover the product, *E. coli* must be lysed, or the gene must be linked to a gene that produces a naturally secreted protein.
17. Yeasts can be genetically modified and are likely to secrete a gene product continuously.

18. Genetically modified mammalian cells can be grown to produce proteins such as hormones for medical use.
19. Genetically modified plant cells can be grown and used to produce plants with new properties.

Applications of DNA Technology (pp. 255–263)

1. Cloned DNA is used to produce products, study the cloned DNA, and alter the phenotype of an organism.

Therapeutic Applications (pp. 256–257)

2. Synthetic genes linked to the β-galactosidase gene (*lacZ*) in a plasmid vector were inserted into *E. coli*, allowing *E. coli* to produce and secrete the two polypeptides used to make human insulin.
3. Cells and viruses can be modified to produce a pathogen's surface protein, which can be used as a vaccine.
4. DNA and mRNA vaccines are produced from rDNA cloned in bacteria.
5. Gene editing using CRISPR can be used to replace a defective or missing gene.
6. RNAi may be useful to prevent expression of abnormal proteins.

Genome Projects (pp. 257–259)

7. Nucleotide sequences of genomes from more than 1000 organisms, including humans, have been completed.
8. This leads to determining the proteins produced in a cell.

Scientific Applications (pp. 259–261)

9. DNA can be used to increase understanding of DNA, for genetic fingerprinting, and for gene therapy.
10. DNA sequencing machines are used to determine the nucleotide base sequence of restriction fragments. The results are assembled by a computer.
11. Bioinformatics is the use of computer applications to study genetic data; proteomics is the study of a cell's proteins.
12. Southern blotting can be used to locate a gene in a cell.
13. DNA probes can be used to quickly identify a pathogen in body tissue or food.
14. Forensic microbiologists use DNA fingerprinting to identify the source of bacterial or viral pathogens.
15. Bacteria may be used to make nano-sized materials for nanotechnology machines.

Agricultural Applications (pp. 261–263)

16. Cells from plants with desirable characteristics can be cloned to produce many identical cells. These cells can then be used to produce whole plants from which seeds can be harvested.
17. Plant cells can be modified by using the Ti plasmid vector. The tumor-producing T genes are replaced with desired genes, and the rDNA is inserted into *Agrobacterium*. The bacterium naturally transforms its plant hosts.
18. Antisense DNA can prevent expression of unwanted proteins.

Safety Issues and the Ethics of Using DNA Technology (pp. 264–265)

1. Strict safety standards are used to avoid the accidental release of genetically modified microorganisms.
2. Some microbes used in rDNA cloning have been altered so that they cannot survive outside the laboratory.
3. Microorganisms intended for use in the environment may be modified to contain genes that cause the microbes to die after a period of time so that the organisms do not persist in the environment.
4. Genetic testing raises a number of ethical questions: Should employers have access to a person's genetic records? Will genetic information be used to discriminate against people? Will genetic counseling be available to everyone?
5. Genetically modified crops must be safe for consumption and for release in the environment.

Study Questions

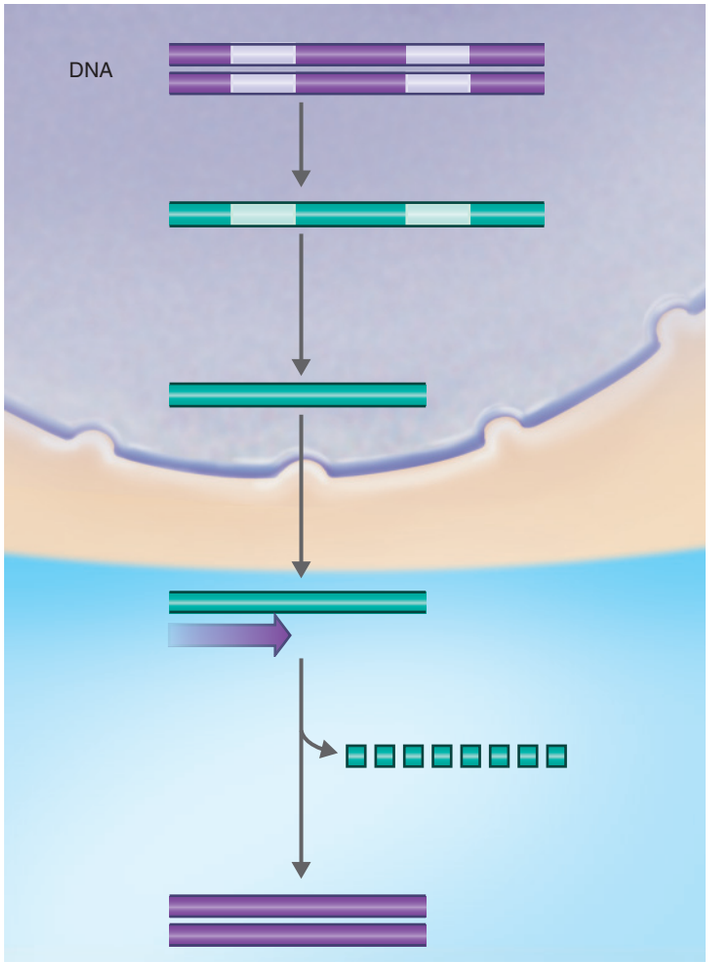
For answers to Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. Compare and contrast the following terms:
   a. *cDNA* and *gene*
   b. *DNA probe* and *gene*
   c. *DNA polymerase* and *DNA ligase*
   d. *rDNA* and *cDNA*
   e. *genome* and *proteome*
2. Differentiate the following terms. Which one is "hit and miss"—that is, does *not* add a specific gene to a cell?
   a. protoplast fusion
   b. gene gun
   c. microinjection
   d. electroporation
3. Some commonly used restriction enzymes are listed in Table 9.1.
   a. Indicate which enzymes produce sticky ends.
   b. Of what value are sticky ends in making rDNA?
4. Suppose you want multiple copies of a gene you have synthesized. How would you obtain the necessary copies by cloning? By PCR?

5. DRAW IT Identify and mark each of the following in making cDNA: transcription, RNA processing, reverse transcription, DNA polymerase, cDNA.



6. Describe an rDNA experiment in two or three sentences. Use the following terms: intron, exon, DNA, mRNA, cDNA, RNA polymerase, reverse transcriptase.
7. List at least two examples of the use of rDNA in medicine and in agriculture.
8. You are attempting to insert a gene for saltwater tolerance into a plant by using the Ti plasmid. In addition to the desired gene, you add a gene for tetracycline resistance (*tet*) to the plasmid. What is the purpose of the *tet* gene?
9. How does RNAi "silence" a gene?
10. NAME IT This virus family, normally associated with AIDS, may be useful for gene therapy.

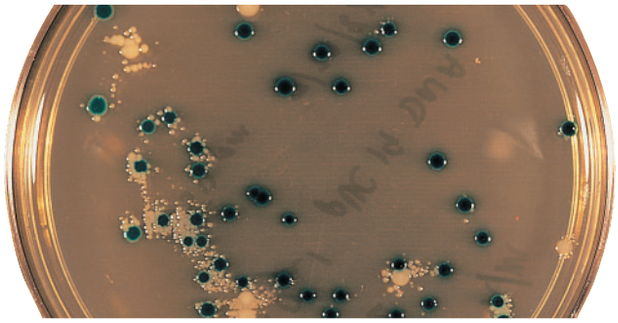
Multiple Choice

1. Restriction enzymes were first discovered with the observation that
   a. DNA is restricted to the nucleus.
   b. bacteriophage DNA is destroyed in a host cell.
   c. foreign DNA is kept out of a cell.
   d. foreign DNA is restricted to the cytoplasm.
   e. all of the above
2. The DNA probe, 3′-GGCTTA, will hybridize with which of the following?
   a. 5′-CCGUUA
   b. 5′-CCGAAT
   c. 5′-GGCTTA
   d. 3′-CCGAAT
   e. 3′-GGCAAU
3. Which of the following is the fourth basic step to genetically modify a cell?
   a. transformation
   b. ligation
   c. plasmid cleavage
   d. restriction-enzyme digestion of gene
   e. isolation of gene
4. The following enzymes are used to make cDNA. What is the second enzyme used to make cDNA?
   a. reverse transcriptase
   b. ribozyme
   c. RNA polymerase
   d. DNA polymerase
5. If you put a gene in a virus, the next step in genetic modification would be
   a. insertion of a plasmid.
   b. transformation.
   c. transduction.
   d. PCR.
   e. Southern blotting.
6. You have a small gene that you want replicated by PCR. You add fluorescent dye-labeled nucleotides to the PCR thermal cycler. After three replication cycles, what percentage of the DNA single strands will fluoresce?
   a. 0%
   b. 12.5%
   c. 50%
   d. 87.5%
   e. 100%

   Match the following choices to the statements in questions 7 through 10.
   a. antisense
   b. clone
   c. library
   d. Southern blot
   e. vector
7. Pieces of human DNA stored in yeast cells.
8. A population of cells carrying a desired plasmid.
9. Self-replicating DNA for transmitting a gene from one organism to another.
10. DNA that hybridizes with mRNA.

Analysis

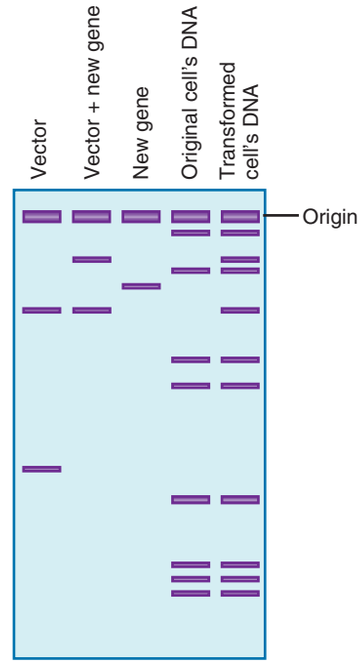
1. Design an experiment using vaccinia virus to make a vaccine against the AIDS virus (HIV).
2. Why did the use of DNA polymerase from the bacterium *Thermus aquaticus* allow researchers to add the necessary reagents to tubes in a preprogrammed heating block?
3. The following picture shows bacterial colonies growing on X-gal plus ampicillin in a blue-white screening test. Which colonies have the recombinant plasmid? The small satellite colonies do not have the plasmid. Why did they start growing on the medium 48 hours after the larger colonies?



Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. PCR has been used to examine oysters for the presence of *Vibrio cholerae*. Oysters from different areas were homogenized, and DNA was extracted from the homogenates. The DNA was digested by the restriction enzyme *Hin*cII. A primer for the hemolysin gene of *V. cholerae* was used for the PCR reaction. After PCR, each sample was electrophoresed and stained with a probe for the hemolysin gene. Which of the oyster samples were (was) positive for *V. cholerae*? How can you tell? Why look for *V. cholerae* in oysters? What is the advantage of PCR over conventional biochemical tests to identify the bacteria?

2. Using the restriction enzyme *Eco*RI, the following gel electrophoresis patterns were obtained from digests of various DNA molecules from a transformation experiment. Can you conclude from these data that transformation occurred? Explain why or why not.



10 Classification of Microorganisms

The science of classification, especially the classification of living forms, is called *taxonomy* (from the Greek for orderly arrangement). The objective of taxonomy is to classify living organisms—that is, to establish the relationships between one group of organisms and another and to differentiate them. There may be as many as 10 million different living organisms, but fewer than 20% have been discovered, much less identified and classified.

Taxonomy also provides a common reference for identifying organisms already classified. For example, when a bacterium suspected of causing a specific disease is isolated from a patient, characteristics of that isolate are matched to lists of characteristics of previously classified bacteria to identify the isolate (see the **Clinical Focus** box). Finally, taxonomy is a basic and necessary tool for scientists, providing a universal language of communication.

Modern taxonomy is an exciting and dynamic field. The ability to rapidly sequence DNA has led to new insights into classification and evolution and has given rise to the current Third Golden Age of Microbiology (Chapter 1). In this chapter, you will learn the various classification systems, the different criteria used for classification, and tests that are used to identify microorganisms that have already been classified. The contribution of taxonomy in shedding new light on previously discovered organisms, such as the *Salmonella enterica* shown in the photograph, will be discussed in this chapter.

▶ ***Salmonella enterica*** **bacteria.** ***S. enterica*** **includes over 2500 serovars, many of which cause gastroenteritis.**

In the Clinic

As a hospice nurse, you are caring for a 75-year-old patient undergoing chemotherapy for cancer who recently developed pneumonia. The patient remains home due to illness, and none of his visitors have been sick. While at the patient's house to collect a sputum sample for the laboratory, you notice the man's dog also has a cough. You end up swabbing the pet's nose and sending that sample in, too. **The cultures for both man and dog grow gram-negative, oxidase-positive, urease- and H_2S positive bacteria. What is the causative agent of these infections?**

Hint: Look at the figure covering biochemical tests in the Clinical Focus box later in this chapter to narrow the possibilities.

The Study of Phylogenetic Relationships

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

10-1 Define *taxonomy*, *taxon*, and *phylogeny*.

10-2 Discuss the limitations of a two-kingdom classification system.

10-3 Identify the contributions of Linnaeus, Whittaker, and Woese.

10-4 Discuss the advantages of the three-domain system.

10-5 List the characteristics of the Bacteria, Archaea, and Eukarya domains.

Biologists have identified more than 1.7 million different organisms; however, it is estimated that there are 8.7 million species on Earth, including 0.8–1.6 million species of prokaryotes. Among these many and diverse organisms are many similarities. For example, all organisms are composed of cells surrounded by a plasma membrane, use ATP for energy, and store their genetic information in DNA. These similarities are the result of evolution, or descent from a common ancestor. In 1859, the English naturalist Charles Darwin proposed that natural selection was responsible for the similarities as well as the differences among organisms. The differences can be attributed to the survival of organisms with traits best suited to a particular environment.

To facilitate research, scholarship, and communication, we use **taxonomy**—that is, we put organisms into categories, or **taxa** (singular: *taxon*), to show degrees of similarities among organisms. **Systematics**, or **phylogeny**, is the study of the evolutionary history of organisms, and the hierarchy of taxa reflects their evolutionary, or *phylogenetic*, relationships.

The way we have classified organisms has changed greatly over the centuries. From the time of Aristotle, living organisms were categorized in just two ways, as either plants or animals. In 1735 Carolus Linnaeus introduced a formal system of classification with two kingdoms—Plantae and Animalia. As the biological sciences developed, a *natural classification* system—one that groups organisms based on ancestral relationships and allows us to see the order in life—was sought. In the 1800s, Carl von Nägeli proposed that bacteria and fungi be placed in the plant kingdom while Ernst Haeckel proposed the Kingdom Protista, to include bacteria, protozoa, algae, and fungi. For 100 years, biologists continued to follow von Nägeli's placement of bacteria and fungi in the plant kingdom—ironic, given that DNA sequencing shows that fungi are closer to animals than plants. Fungi were placed in their own kingdom in 1959.

The term *prokaryote* was introduced in 1937 to distinguish cells having no nucleus from the nucleated cells of plants and animals. In 1968, Robert G. E. Murray proposed the Kingdom Prokaryotae.

In 1969, Robert H. Whittaker founded the five-kingdom system in which prokaryotes were placed in the Kingdom Prokaryotae, or Monera, and eukaryotes comprised the other four kingdoms. The Kingdom Prokaryotae had been based on microscopic observations. Subsequent advances in molecular biology revealed that there are actually two types of prokaryotic cells and one type of eukaryotic cell.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **10-1** Of what value are taxonomy and systematics?
- **10-2, 10-3** Why shouldn't bacteria be placed in the plant kingdom?

The Three Domains

The discovery of three cell types was based on the observations that ribosomes are not the same in all cells (see Chapter 4). Ribosomes are present in all cells. Comparing the sequences of nucleotides in ribosomal RNA (discussed shortly) from different kinds of cells shows that there are three distinctly different cell groups: the eukaryotes and two different types of prokaryotes—the bacteria and the archaea.

In 1978, Carl R. Woese proposed elevating the three cell types to a level above kingdom, called domain. Woese believed that the archaea and the bacteria, although similar in appearance, should form their own separate domains on the evolutionary tree (**Figure 10.1**). In addition to differences in rRNA, the three domains differ in membrane lipid structure, transfer RNA molecules, and sensitivity to antibiotics (**Table 10.1**).

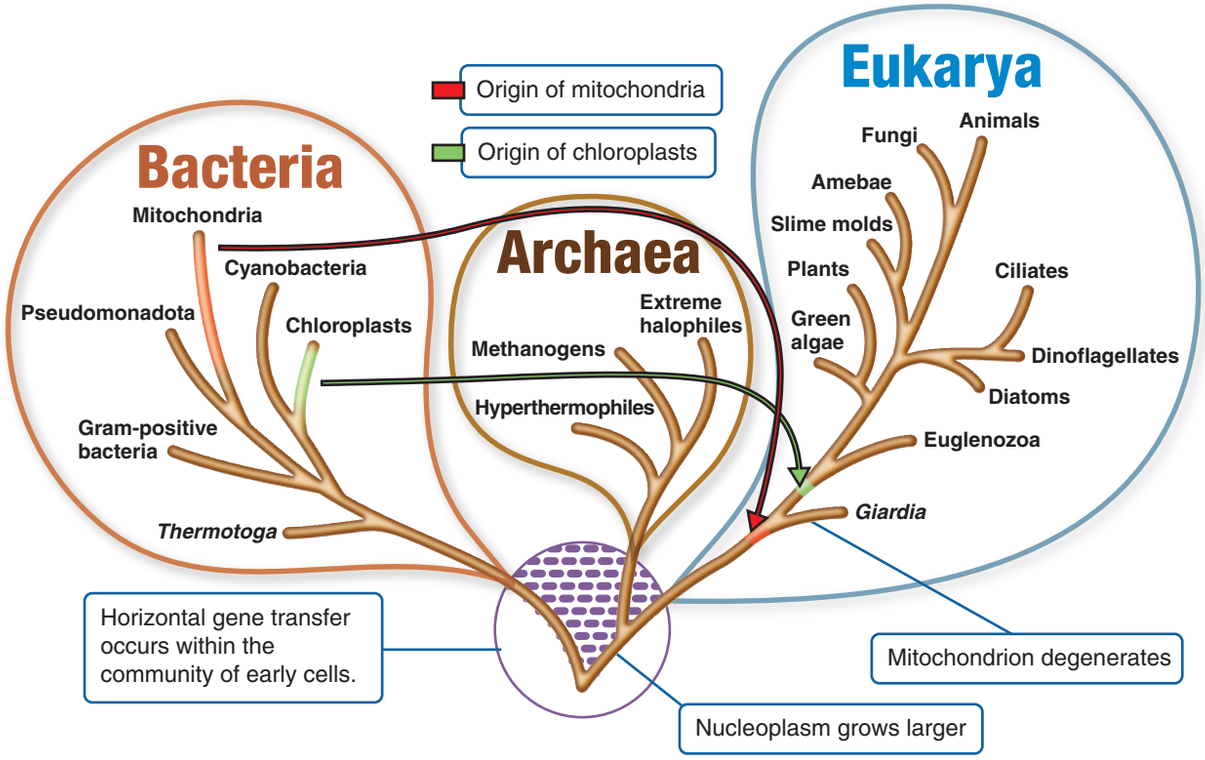
In this widely accepted scheme, animals, plants, and fungi are kingdoms in the Domain **Eukarya**. The Domain **Bacteria** includes all of the pathogenic prokaryotes as well as many of the nonpathogenic prokaryotes found in soil and water. The photoautotrophic prokaryotes are also in this domain. The Domain **Archaea** includes prokaryotes that do not have peptidoglycan in their cell walls. They often live in extreme environments and carry out unusual metabolic processes. Archaea include three major groups:

1. Methanogens, strict anaerobes that produce methane (CH_4) from carbon dioxide and hydrogen
2. Extreme halophiles, which require high concentrations of salt for survival
3. Hyperthermophiles, which normally grow in extremely hot environments

The evolutionary relationship of the three domains is the subject of current research by biologists. Based on rRNA analysis, three cell lineages clearly emerged as cells were forming

FOUNDATION FIGURE 10.1

Three-Domain System



KEY CONCEPTS

- All organisms evolved from cells that formed over 3.5 billion years ago.
- The DNA passed on from ancestors is described as conserved.
- The Domain Eukarya includes the Kingdoms Fungi, Plantae, and Animalia, as well as protists. The Domains Bacteria and Archaea are prokaryotes.

3.5 billion years ago. That led to the Archaea, the Bacteria, and what eventually became the nucleoplasm of the eukaryotes. However, the three cell lines were not isolated from each other; horizontal gene transfer (Chapter 8) appears to have occurred among them. Analysis of complete genomes shows that each domain shares genes with other domains. One-quarter of the genes of the bacterium *Thermotoga* were probably acquired from an archaeon. Gene transfer also has been seen between eukaryotic hosts and their prokaryote symbionts.

The oldest known fossils are the remains of prokaryotes that lived more than 3.5 billion years ago. Eukaryotic cells evolved more recently, about 2.5 billion years ago. According to the endosymbiotic theory, eukaryotic cells evolved from prokaryotic cells living inside one another, as endosymbionts (see Chapter 4). In fact, the similarities between prokaryotic cells and eukaryotic organelles provide striking evidence for this endosymbiotic relationship (Table 10.2).

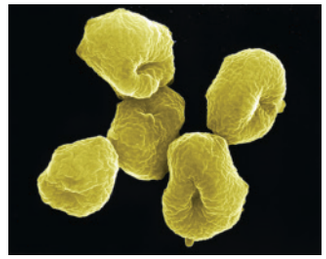
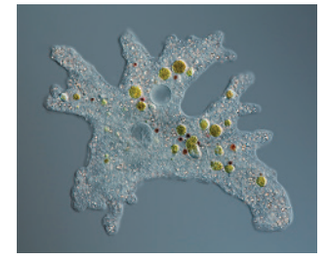
CLINICAL CASE Full-Flavor Outbreak

Monica Jackson, a 32-year-old production assistant at an Austin, Texas, television station, has made an appointment with the nurse practitioner at her physician's office. Monica tells the nurse practitioner that she has had diarrhea, nausea, and abdominal cramping for almost 12 hours. She also feels tired and has a low-grade fever. Monica felt fine one minute, and the next she was violently ill. Monica informs the nurse practitioner that she and her good friend, who is also sick, had been at the same luncheon the day before. The nurse practitioner takes a stool sample and sends it to the hospital laboratory for analysis.

What will the laboratory do first to look for a bacterial pathogen? Read on to find out.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

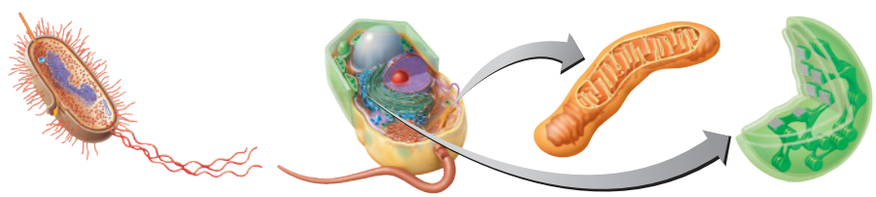
TABLE 10.1 Some Characteristics of Archaea, Bacteria, and Eukarya

	Archaea	Bacteria	Eukarya
	 SEM 1 μm	SEM 1 μm	 LM 50 μm
	Sulfolobus sp.	*Escherichia coli*	*Amoeba proteus*
Cell Type	Prokaryotic	Prokaryotic	Eukaryotic
Cell Wall	Varies in composition; contains no peptidoglycan	Contains peptidoglycan	Varies in composition; contains carbohydrates
Membrane Lipids	Composed of branched carbon chains attached to glycerol by ether linkage	Composed of straight carbon chains attached to glycerol by ester linkage	Composed of straight carbon chains attached to glycerol by ester linkage
First Amino Acid in Protein Synthesis	Methionine	Formylmethionine	Methionine
Antibiotic Sensitivity	No	Yes	No
rRNA Loop*	Lacking	Present	Lacking
Common Arm of tRNA†?	Lacking	Present	Present

*Binds to ribosomal protein; found in all bacteria.
†A sequence of bases in tRNA found in all eukaryotes and bacteria: guanine-thymine-pseudouridine-cytosine-guanine.

TABLE 10.2 Prokaryotic Cells and Eukaryotic Organelles Compared

	Prokaryotic Cell	Eukaryotic Cell	Eukaryotic Organelles (Mitochondria and Chloroplasts)
DNA	One circular; some two circular; some linear	Linear	Circular
Histones	In archaea	Yes	No
First Amino Acid in Protein Synthesis	Formylmethionine (bacteria) Methionine (archaea)	Methionine	Formylmethionine
Ribosomes	70S	80S	70S
Growth	Binary fission	Mitosis	Binary fission



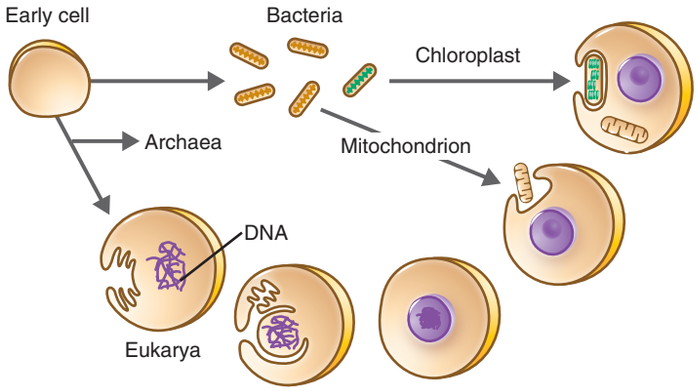


Figure 10.2 A model of the origin of eukaryotes. Invagination of the plasma membrane may have formed the nuclear envelope and endoplasmic reticulum. Similarities, including rRNA sequences, indicate that endosymbiotic prokaryotes gave rise to mitochondria and chloroplasts.

Q How many membranes make up the nuclear envelope of a eukaryotic cell?

The original nucleoplasmic cell was prokaryotic. However, infoldings in its plasma membrane may have surrounded the nuclear region to produce a true nucleus (Figure 10.2). French researchers provided support for this hypothesis with their observations of a true nucleus in *Gemmata* bacteria (see Figure 11.16). Over time, the nucleoplasm's chromosome may have acquired pieces such as transposons (Chapter 8) and pieces of virus genomes. In some cells, this large chromosome may have fragmented into smaller linear chromosomes. Perhaps cells with linear chromosomes had an advantage in cell division over those with a large, unwieldy circular chromosome.

That nucleoplasmic cell provided the original host in which endosymbiotic bacteria developed into organelles (see the Chapter 4 section on evolution of eukaryotes). An example of a modern prokaryote living in a eukaryotic cell is shown in Figure 10.3. The cyanobacterium-like cell and its eukaryotic host require each other for survival.

Taxonomy provides tools for clarifying the evolution of organisms, as well as their interrelationships. New organisms are being discovered every day, and taxonomists continue to search for a natural classification system that reflects phylogenetic relationships.

A Phylogenetic Tree

In a phylogenetic tree, grouping organisms according to common properties implies that a group of organisms evolved from a common ancestor; each species retains some of the characteristics of the ancestor. Some of the information used to classify and determine phylogenetic relationships in higher organisms comes from fossils. Bones, shells, or stems that contain mineral matter or have left imprints in rock that was once mud are examples of fossils.

ASM: The evolutionary relatedness of organisms is best reflected in phylogenetic trees.

The structures of most microorganisms are not readily fossilized. Some exceptions are the following:

- A unicellular marine alga whose fossilized colonies form the White Cliffs of Dover, England.
- Stromatolites, the fossilized remains of filamentous bacteria and sediments that flourished between 0.5 and 2 billion years ago (Figure 10.4a and Figure 10.4b).
- Cyanobacteria-like fossils found in rocks that are 3.0 to 3.5 billion years old. These are widely believed to be the oldest known fossils (Figure 10.4c).

Because fossil evidence isn't available for most prokaryotes, their phylogeny must be based on other evidence. In one notable exception, scientists may have isolated living bacteria and yeast that are 25 to 40 million years old. In 1995, the American microbiologist Raul Cano and his colleagues reported growing *Lysinibacillus sphaericus* and other as-yet unidentified microorganisms that survived embedded in amber (fossilized plant resin) for millions of years. If confirmed, this discovery should provide more information about the evolution of microorganisms.

Similarities in genomes can be used to group organisms into taxa and to provide a timeline for the emergence of taxa. This is especially important for microorganisms that usually don't leave fossil evidence. This concept of a molecular clock based on the differences in amino acids in hemoglobin among different animals was first proposed in the 1960s. A **molecular clock** for evolution is based on nucleotide sequences in the

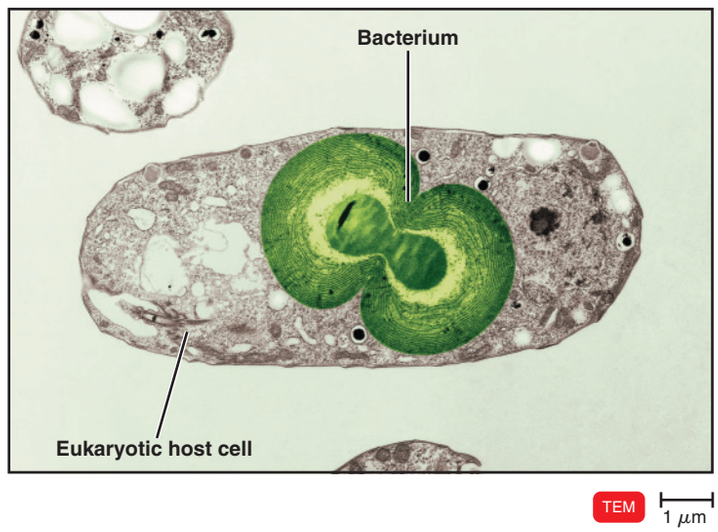
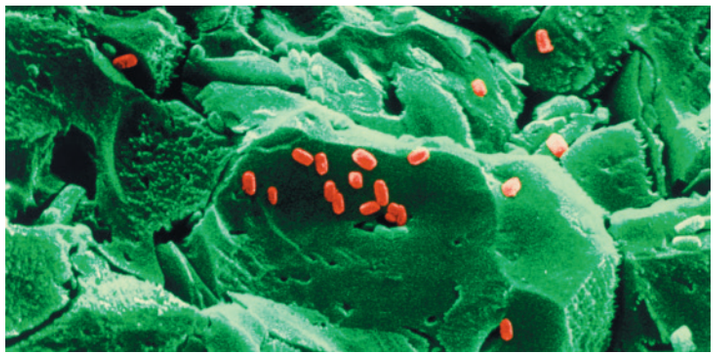


Figure 10.3 ***Cyanophora paradoxa.*** This organism, in which the eukaryotic host and the bacterium require each other for survival, provides a modern example of how eukaryotic cells might have evolved.

Q What features do chloroplasts, mitochondria, and bacteria have in common?

(a) Bacterial communities form rocklike pillars called stromatolites. These began growing about 3000 years ago. 30 cm

(b) Cut section through a fossilized stomatolite that flourished 2 billion years ago 2 cm



(c) Rod-shaped prokaryotes from the Early Precambrian (3.5 billion years ago) of South Africa SEM 5 μm

Figure 10.4 Fossilized prokaryotes.

Q What evidence is used to determine the phylogeny of prokaryotes?

genomes of organisms. Mutations accumulate in a genome at a constant rate. Some genes, such as those for rRNA, have few mutations—these are highly conserved genes. Other regions of a genome change with no apparent effect on the organism. Comparing the number of mutations between two organisms with the expected rate of change provides an estimate of when the two diverged from a common ancestor. This technique was used to track the path of Zika virus to the United States (see the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 8) and is now being used to track the origin and development of strains of SARS-CoV-2.

Conclusions from rRNA sequencing and DNA hybridization studies (discussed later in this chapter) of selected orders and families of eukaryotes are in agreement with the fossil records. This has encouraged scientists to use rRNA and genome sequencing to gain a better understanding of the evolutionary relationships among prokaryotic groups.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **10-4** What evidence supports classifying organisms into three domains?
- **10-5** Compare archaea and bacteria; bacteria and eukarya; and archaea and eukarya.

Classification of Organisms

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

10-6 Explain why scientific names are used.
10-7 List the major taxa.
10-8 Differentiate *culture*, *clone*, and *strain*.
10-9 List the major characteristics used to differentiate the three kingdoms of multicellular Eukarya.
10-10 Define *protist*.
10-11 Differentiate eukaryotic, prokaryotic, and viral species.

Living organisms are grouped according to similar characteristics (classification), and each organism is assigned a unique scientific name. The rules for classifying and naming, which are used by biologists worldwide, are discussed next.

Scientific Nomenclature

In a world inhabited by millions of living organisms, biologists must be sure they know exactly which organism is being discussed. We cannot use common names because the same name is often used for many different organisms in different locales. For example, there are two different organisms with the common name Spanish moss, and neither one is actually a moss. Plus, common names can be misleading and are in different languages. A system of scientific names was developed to solve this problem.

Every organism is assigned two names (Chapter 1). These names are the **genus** name and **specific epithet (species)**, and both names are printed underlined or italicized. The genus name is always capitalized and is always a noun. The species name is lowercase and is usually an adjective. Because this system gives two names to each organism, the system is called **binomial nomenclature**.

Let's consider some examples. Our own genus and specific epithet are *Homo sapiens* (HŌ-mō SĀ-pē-enz). The genus means man; the specific epithet means wise. A mold that contaminates bread is called *Rhizopus stolonifer* (RĪ-zō-pus stō-LON-i-fer). *Rhizo-* (root) describes rootlike structures on the fungus; *stolo-* (a shoot) describes the long hyphae. Table 1.1 contains more examples.

Binomials are used by scientists and health care workers worldwide, regardless of their native language. This nomenclature enables them to share knowledge efficiently and accurately. Several scientific entities are responsible for establishing rules governing the naming of organisms. Scientific names are taken from Latin (a genus name can be taken from Greek) or latinized by the addition of the appropriate suffix. Suffixes for order and family are *-ales* and *-aceae*, respectively.

As new laboratory techniques make more detailed characterizations of microbes possible, two genera may be reclassified as a single genus, or a genus may be divided into two or more genera. For example, rRNA analysis indicated that "Streptococcus faecalis" was only distantly related to the other streptococcal species; consequently, a new genus called *Enterococcus* was created, and this species was renamed *E. faecalis*. Making the transition to a new name can be confusing, so the old name is often written in parentheses. For example, a physician looking for information on the cause of a patient's pneumonia-like symptoms (melioidosis) would find the bacterial name *Burkholderia (Pseudomonas) pseudomallei* (berk-HŌL-der'ē-ah soo-dō-MAL-lē-ē).

The Taxonomic Hierarchy

All organisms can be grouped into a series of subdivisions that make up the taxonomic hierarchy. Linnaeus developed this hierarchy for his classification of plants and animals. A **eukaryotic species** is a group of closely related organisms that breed among themselves. (Bacterial species are defined slightly differently and will be discussed shortly.) A genus consists of species that differ from each other in certain ways but are related by descent. For example, *Quercus* (KWER-kus), the genus name for oak, consists of all types of oak trees (white oak, red oak, bur oak, velvet oak, and so on). Even though each species of oak differs from every other species, they are all related genetically. Just as a number of species make up a genus, related genera make up a **family**. A group of similar families constitutes an **order**, and a group of similar orders makes up a **class**. Related classes, in turn, make up a **phylum**. Thus, a particular organism (or species) has a genus name and specific epithet and belongs to a family, order, class, and phylum.

All phyla that are related to each other make up a **kingdom**, and related kingdoms are grouped into a **domain** (Figure 10.5).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **10-6** Using *E. coli* and *Entamoeba coli* as examples, explain why the genus name must be written out on first use. Why is binomial nomenclature preferable to common names?
- **10-7** Find the gram-positive bacteria *Staphylococcus* in Appendix E. To which bacteria is this genus more closely related: *Bacillus* or *Streptococcus*?

Classification of Prokaryotes

The taxonomic classification scheme for prokaryotes is found in *Bergey's Manual of Systematics of Archaea and Bacteria* (see Appendix E). In *Bergey's Manual*, prokaryotes are divided into two domains: Bacteria and Archaea. Each domain is divided into phyla. Remember, the classification is based on similarities in rRNA nucleotide sequences. Classes are divided into orders; orders, into families; families, into genera; and genera, into species.

As mentioned earlier, a prokaryotic species is defined somewhat differently from a eukaryotic species. Unlike reproduction in eukaryotic organisms, cell division in bacteria is not directly tied to conjugation, which is infrequent and does not always need to be species-specific. As such the term **prokaryotic species** is defined simply as a population of cells with a high degree of genomic similarity. The members of a bacterial species are nearly indistinguishable from each other but are distinguishable from members of other species, usually on the basis of several features. As you know, bacteria grown in media are called a culture. A pure culture is often a **clone**, a population of cells derived from a single parent cell. All cells in the clone should be identical, but in some cases, pure cultures of the same species are not identical in all ways. Each such group is called a **strain**. Strains are identified by numbers, letters, or names that follow the specific epithet.

ASM: The traditional concept of species is not readily applicable to microbes due to asexual reproduction and the frequent occurrence of horizontal gene transfer.

Bergey's Manual provides a reference for identifying bacteria in the laboratory, as well as a classification scheme for prokaryotes. One scheme for the evolutionary relationships of bacteria is shown in Figure 10.6. Characteristics used to identify bacteria are discussed in Chapter 11.

Classification of Eukaryotes

Some kingdoms in the domain Eukarya are shown in Figure 10.1.

In 1969, simple eukaryotic organisms, mostly unicellular, were grouped as the kingdom Protista, a catchall kingdom for a variety of organisms. Historically, eukaryotic organisms that didn't fit into other kingdoms were placed in the Protista. Approximately 200,000 species of protists have been identified thus far, and these organisms are nutritionally quite diverse—from photosynthetic to obligate intracellular parasite. Ribosomal RNA sequencing is making it possible to divide protists into groups based on their descent from common ancestors. Consequently, the organisms once classified as protists are being divided into **clades**, or genetically related groups. For convenience, we'll continue to use the term *protist* to refer to unicellular eukaryotes and their close relatives. These organisms will be discussed in Chapter 12.

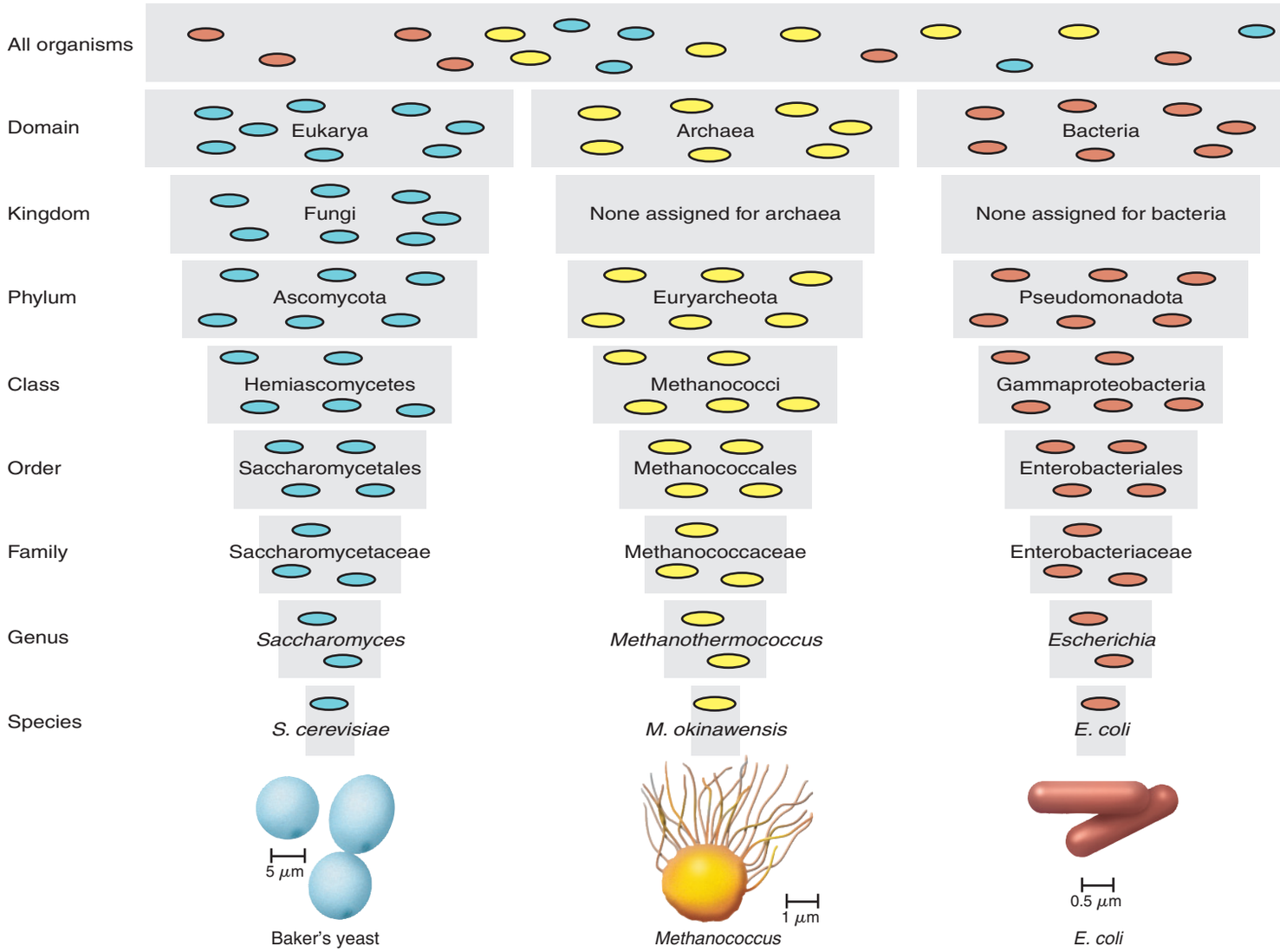


Figure 10.5 The taxonomic hierarchy. Organisms are grouped according to relatedness. Species that are closely related are grouped into a genus. For example, the baker's yeast, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, belongs to the genus that includes sourdough yeast (*S. exiguus*). Related genera, such as *Saccharomyces* and *Candida*, are placed in a family, and so on. Each group is more comprehensive. The domain Eukarya includes all organisms with eukaryotic cells.

Q What is the biological definition of *family*?

Fungi, plants, and animals make up the three kingdoms of more complex eukaryotic organisms, most of which are multicellular.

The Kingdom **Fungi** includes the unicellular yeasts, multicellular molds, and macroscopic species such as mushrooms. A fungus absorbs dissolved organic matter through its plasma membrane to obtain raw materials for vital functions. The cells of a multicellular fungus are commonly joined to form thin tubes called *hyphae*. Fungi develop from spores or from fragments of hyphae. (See Figure 12.2.)

The Kingdom **Plantae** (plants) includes mosses, ferns, conifers, and flowering plants. All members of this kingdom are multicellular. To obtain energy, a plant uses photosynthesis, a process that converts carbon dioxide and water into organic molecules used by the cell.

The kingdom of multicellular organisms called **Animalia** (animals) includes sponges, various worms, insects, and animals with backbones (vertebrates). Animals obtain nutrients and energy by ingesting organic matter through a mouth of some kind.

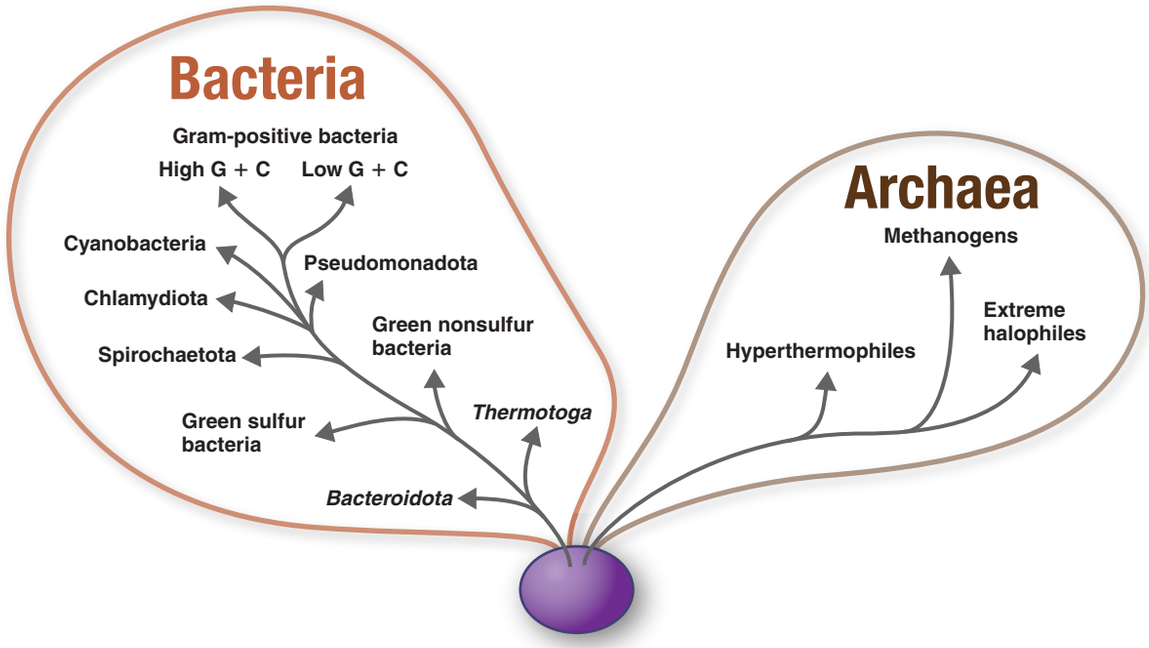


Figure 10.6 Phylogenetic relationships of prokaryotes. Arrows indicate major lines of descent of prokaryotic groups. Selected phyla are indicated.

Q Members of which phylum can be identified by Gram staining?

Classification of Viruses

Viruses aren't classified as part of any of the three domains. They aren't composed of cells, and don't precisely fit a clearcut definition of a living organism because they must take over the anabolic machinery of living host cells to multiply (see Chapter 13). However, viruses are a major cause of disease, and their classification is important. A viral genome can direct biosynthesis inside a host cell, and some viral genomes can be incorporated into the host genome. The ecological niche of a virus is its specific host cell, so viruses may be more closely related to their hosts than to other viruses. The International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses defines a **viral species** as a population of viruses with similar characteristics that can be distinguished from other species by multiple methods (including morphology, genes, enzymes, and ecological niche).

Viruses are obligatory intracellular parasites. Viral genes carried in the genomes of other organisms provide a record of viral evolution. Recent analysis shows that bornavirus and retrovirus genes integrated into mammals, including humans, at least 40 million years ago. There are three hypotheses on the origin of viruses: (1) They arose from independently replicating strands of nucleic acids (such as plasmids). (2) They developed from degenerative cells that, through many generations, gradually lost the ability to survive independently but could survive when associated with another cell. (3) They coevolved with host cells.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **10-8** Use the terms *species*, *culture*, *clone*, and *strain* in one sentence to describe growing methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA).
- **10-9** You discover a new multicellular, nucleated, heterotrophic organism with cell walls. To what kingdom does it belong?
- **10-10** Write your own definition of *protist*.
- **10-11** Why doesn't the definition of *viral species* work for bacteria?

Methods of Classifying and Identifying Microorganisms

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **10-12** Compare and contrast classification and identification.
- **10-13** Explain the purpose of *Bergey's Manual*.
- **10-14** Describe how staining and biochemical tests are used to identify bacteria.
- **10-15** Explain how serological tests and phage typing can be used to identify an unknown bacterium.
- **10-16** Describe how a newly discovered microbe can be classified by DNA sequencing, DNA fingerprinting, and PCR.

10-17 Describe how microorganisms can be identified by nucleic acid hybridization, Southern blotting, DNA chips, ribotyping, and FISH.

10-18 Differentiate a dichotomous key from a cladogram.

A classification scheme provides a list of characteristics and a means for comparison to aid in the identification of an organism. Once an organism is identified, it can be placed into a previously devised classification scheme. Microorganisms are *identified* for practical purposes—for example, to determine an appropriate treatment for an infection. They are not necessarily identified by the same techniques by which they are *classified*. Most identification procedures are easily performed in a laboratory and use as few procedures or tests as possible. Protozoa, parasitic worms, and fungi can usually be identified microscopically. Most prokaryotic organisms don't have distinguishing morphological features or even much variation in size and shape. Consequently, microbiologists have developed a variety of methods to test metabolic reactions and other characteristics to identify prokaryotes.

Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology has been a widely used reference since the first edition was published in 1923. *Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology* does not classify bacteria according to evolutionary relatedness but instead provides identification (determinative) schemes based on such criteria as cell wall composition, morphology, differential staining, oxygen requirements, and biochemical testing.* The majority of Bacteria and Archaea haven't been cultured, and scientists estimate that only 1% of these microbes have been discovered.

Medical microbiology (the branch of microbiology dealing with human pathogens) has dominated the interest in microbes, and this interest is reflected in many identification schemes. However, to put the pathogenic properties of bacteria in perspective, of the more than 30,000 named species, fewer than 5% are human pathogens.

We next discuss several criteria and methods for the classification and routine identification of microorganisms. In addition to properties of the organism itself, the source and habitat of a bacterial isolate are part of the identification processes. In clinical microbiology, a physician will swab a patient's pus or tissue surface. The swab is inserted into a tube of transport medium. **Transport media** are usually not nutritive and are designed to prolong viability of fastidious pathogens. The physician will note the type of specimen and test(s) requested on a lab requisition form (Figure 10.7). The lab technician's results will help the physician begin treatment (see the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 5).

*Both *Bergey's Manual of Systematics of Archaea and Bacteria and Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology* are referred to simply as *Bergey's Manual*; the complete titles are used when the information under discussion is found in one but not the other, for example, an identification table.

Conventional Identification

Morphology and staining contribute to conventional identification of microorganisms.

Morphology

Morphological (structural) characteristics have helped taxonomists classify organisms for 200 years. Higher organisms are frequently classified according to observed anatomical detail. But many microorganisms look too similar to be classified by their structures alone. Organisms that might differ in metabolic or physiological properties may look alike under a microscope. Literally hundreds of bacterial species are small rods or small cocci.

Larger size and the presence of intracellular structures don't always mean easy classification, however. *Pneumocystis* (noo-mō-SIS-tis) pneumonia is the most common opportunistic infection that accompanies AIDS and other diseases that compromise the immune system. Until the AIDS epidemic, the causative agent of this infection, *P. jirovecii* (ye-rō-VET-zē-ē) [formerly "*P. carinii*" (kar-I-nē-ē)] was rarely seen in humans. *Pneumocystis* lacks structures that can be easily used for identification (see Figure 24.20), and its taxonomic position has been uncertain since its discovery in 1909. It was originally classified as a protozoan; however, in 1988 rRNA sequencing showed that *Pneumocystis* is actually a member of the Kingdom Fungi. Treatments now include antifungal agents.

Cell morphology tells us little about phylogenetic relationships. However, morphological characteristics are still useful in identifying bacteria. For example, differences in such structures as endospores or flagella can be helpful.

Differential Staining

One of the first steps in identifying bacteria is differential staining (see Chapter 3). Most bacteria are either gram-positive or gram-negative. Other differential stains, such as the acid-fast stain, can be useful for a more limited group of microorganisms. Recall that these stains are based on the chemical composition of cell walls and therefore are not useful in identifying either the wall-less bacteria or the archaea with unusual walls. Microscopic examination of a Gram stain or an acid-fast stain is used to obtain information quickly in the clinical environment. Acid-fast staining is the "gold standard" for diagnosis of tuberculosis.

Biochemical Tests

Generally, bacteria are grown in culture before identification testing is performed. Enzymatic activities are widely used to differentiate bacteria. Even closely related bacteria can usually be separated into distinct species by subjecting them to biochemical tests. For example, biochemical tests are used to identify bacteria in humans and in marine mammals

MICROBIOLOGY REQUISITION

Lab:

Date, time received:

Date:

Time:

Slip prepared by:

Physician name:

Collected by:

Patient ID#:

DO NOT WRITE BELOW THIS LINE

USE SEPARATE SLIP FOR EACH REQUEST

GRAM STAIN REPORT

- ☐ GRAM POS. COCCI, GROUPS
- ☐ GRAM POS. COCCI, PAIRS/CHAIN
- ☐ GRAM POS. RODS
- ☒ GRAM NEG. COCCI
- ☐ GRAM NEG. RODS
- ☐ GRAM NEG. COCCOBACILLI
- ☐ YEAST
- ☐ OTHER

- ☐ NO GROWTH
- ☐ NO GROWTH IN ___DAYS
- ☐ MIXED MICROBIOTA
- ☐ SPECIMEN IMPROPERLY COLLECTED OR TRANSPORTED
- ☐ ___DIFFERENT TYPES OF ORGANISMS
- ☐ NEGATIVE FOR *SALMONELLA, SHIGELLA,* AND *CAMPYLOBACTER*
- ☐ NO OVA, CYSTS, OR PARASITES SEEN
- ☒ OXIDASE-POSITIVE GRAM-NEGATIVE DIPLOCOCCI
- ☐ PRESUMPTIVE BETA STREP GROUP A BY BACITRACIN

SOURCE OF SPECIMEN

- ☐ BLOOD
- ☐ CEREBROSPINAL FLUID
- ☐ FLUID (Specify Source) _____
- ☐ THROAT
- ☐ SPUTUM, expectorated
- ☐ OTHER Respiratory (Describe) _____
- ☐ URINE, Clean Catch Midstream
- ☐ URINE, Indwelling Catheter
- ☐ URINE, Straight Catheter
- ☐ URINE, Entire First Morning
- ☐ URINE, Other (Describe) _____
- ☐ STOOL
- ☑ GU (Specify Source) _____ *vag.*
- ☐ ABSCESS (Specify Source) _____
- ☐ TISSUE (Specify Source) _____
- ☐ ULCER (Specify Source) _____
- ☐ WOUND (Specify Source) _____
- ☐ STERILIZER TEST

TEST(S) REQUESTED

Bacterial

- ☐ **Routine culture;** Gram stain, anaerobic culture, susceptibility testing. Throats done for Gp A Strep.
- ☐ *Legionella* culture
- ☐ *Bartonella*
- ☐ Blood Culture

Other Non-Routine Cultures

- ☐ *E. coli* O157:H7
- ☐ *Vibrio*
- ☐ *Yersinia*
- ☑ *H. ducreyi*
- ☐ *B. pertussis*
- ☐ Other _____

Screening Cultures

- ☑ Gonococci
- ☐ Group B Strep
- ☐ Group A Strep
- ☐ Other _____

☐ **ACID-FAST BACILLI**

☐ **FUNGAL**

VIRAL

- ☐ Routine culture
- ☐ Herpes simplex
- ☐ Direct FA for _____

PARASITOLOGY

- ☐ Exam for intestinal ova and parasites
- ☐ *Giardia* immunoassay
- ☐ *Cryptosporidium*
- ☐ Pinworm prep
- ☐ Blood parasites
- ☐ Filaria concentration
- ☐ *Trichomonas*
- ☐ Other _____

TOXIN ASSAY

- ☐ *Clostridioides difficile*

DIRECT (Antigen Detection)

- ☐ Cryptococcal antigen-CSF only
- ☐ Bacterial antigens (Specify) _____

SPECIAL

- ☑ Antimicrobial tests (MIC)

Filled out by one person | **Filled out by different person**

Figure 10.7 A clinical microbiology lab report form. In health care, morphology and differential staining are important in determining the proper treatment for microbial diseases. A clinician completes the form to identify the sample and specific tests. In this case, a genitourinary sample will be examined for sexually transmitted infections. The red notations are the lab technician's report of the Gram stain and culture results. (Minimal inhibitory concentration [MIC] of antibiotics will be discussed in Chapter 20.)

Q What diseases are suspected if the "acid-fast bacilli" box is checked?

(see Figure 10.8 and the Clinical Focus boxes in Chapters 5 and 10). In the clinical laboratory, culturing is necessary to determine antibiotic-susceptibility of a pathogen. These techniques are discussed in Chapter 20. Moreover, biochemical tests can provide insight into a species' niche in the ecosystem. For example, a bacterium that can fix nitrogen gas or oxidize elemental sulfur will provide important nutrients for plants and animals (see Chapter 27).

In diagnosing an infection, clinicians must identify a particular species and even a particular strain to proceed with proper treatment. A limitation of biochemical testing is that mutations and plasmid acquisition can result in strains with different characteristics. Unless a large number of tests is used, an organism could be incorrectly identified. To this end, specific series of biochemical tests have been developed for fast identification in hospital laboratories.

CLINICAL FOCUS Mass Deaths of Marine Mammals Spur Veterinary Microbiology

Over the past 20 years, thousands of marine mammals have died unexpectedly all over the world from a variety of infectious diseases. Notable outbreaks and problems include

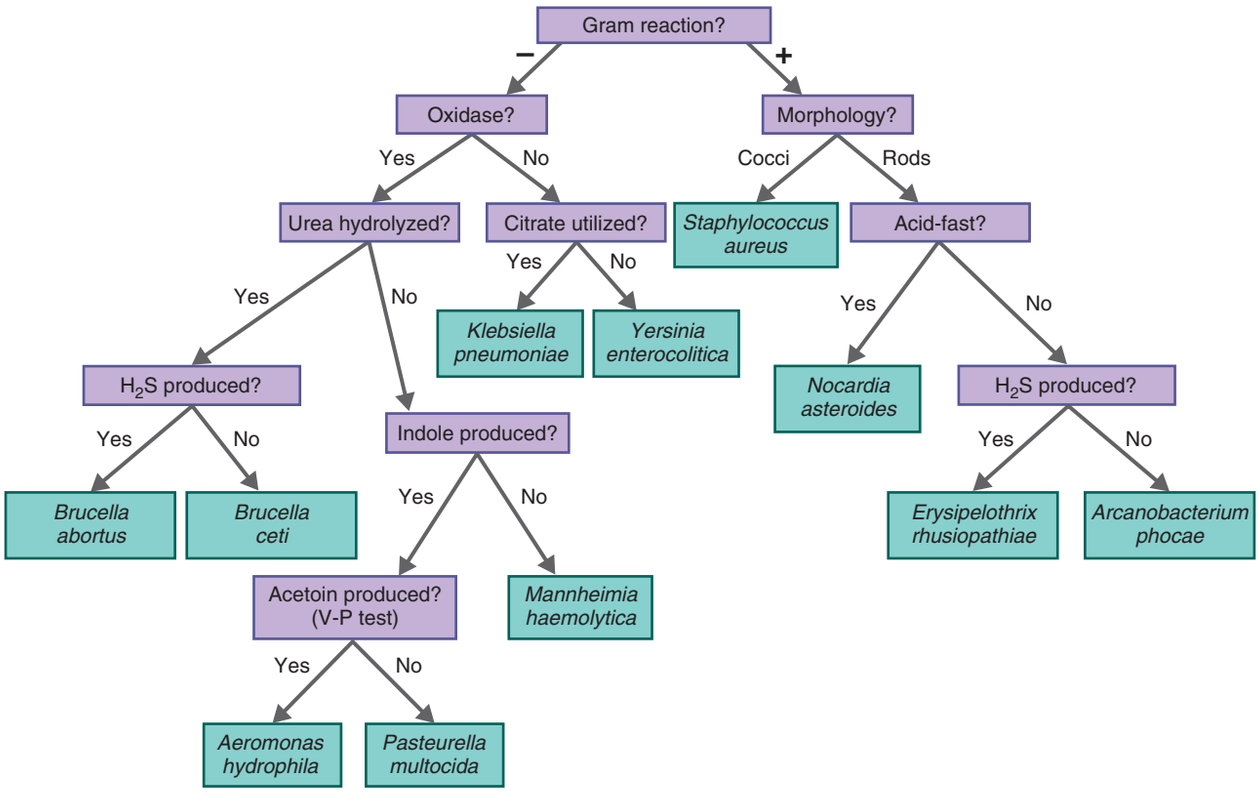
- The deaths of over 500 bottlenose dolphins along the mid-Atlantic coast due to *Brucella* spp. during 2010–2013.
- In 2018, leptospirosis affected nearly 300 California sea lions.
- The deaths of over 100 harbor seals along the New England coast in 2011 due to influenza A H3N8.
- The 2013 deaths of hundreds of bottlenose dolphins in the Atlantic Ocean from cetacean morbillivirus, likely transmitted to dolphins from pilot whales.
- Canine distemper virus killed more than 10,000 Caspian seals in 2000.

Information Is Scarce

Such issues are the concern of veterinary microbiology, which until recently has been a neglected branch of medical microbiology. Although the diseases of cattle, chickens, and mink have been studied, partly because of their availability to researchers, the microbiology of wild animals, especially marine mammals, is a relatively new field. Gathering samples from animals that live in the open ocean and performing bacteriological analyses on them is very difficult. The animals being studied are those that have been stranded and those that come onto the shore to breed, such as the northern fur sea lion.

Microbiologists are identifying bacteria in marine mammals by using conventional test batteries (see the figure) and genomic data of known species. The FISH technique is being used to find new species of bacteria in marine mammals (discussed later in this chapter).

Veterinary microbiologists hope that studying the microbiology of wild animals, including marine mammals, will improve wildlife management and also provide models for studying human diseases.

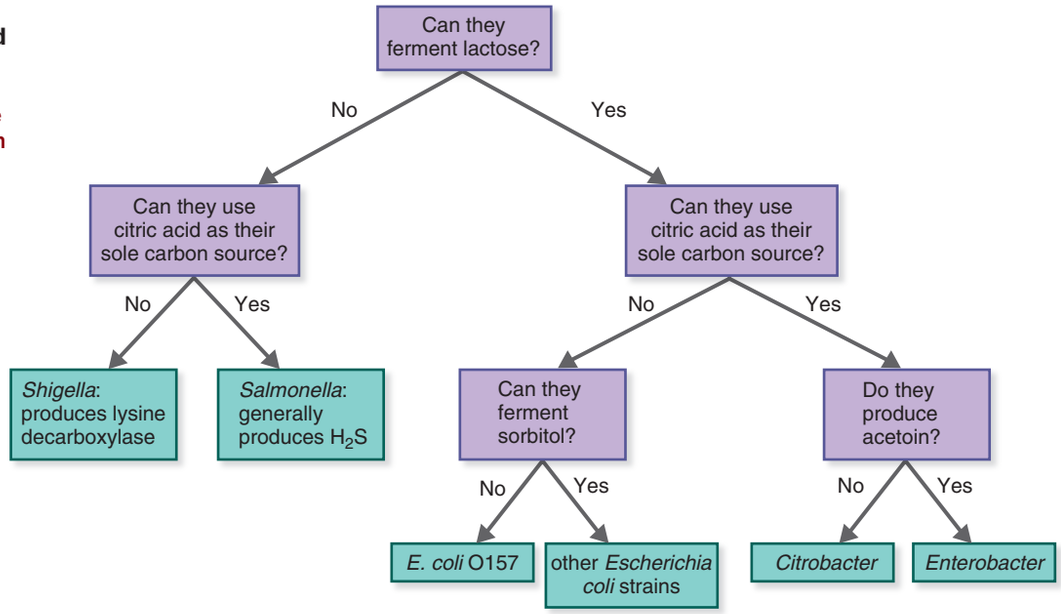


Biochemical tests used to identify selected species of human pathogens isolated from marine mammals.

Q Assume you isolated a gram-negative rod that is oxidase-positive, is indole-negative, and does not produce urease or acetoin. What is the bacterium?

Figure 10.8 The use of metabolic characteristics to identify selected genera of enteric bacteria.

Q Assume you have a gram-negative bacterium that produces acid from lactose and cannot use citric acid as its sole carbon source. What is the bacterium?



These **rapid identification methods** were developed in the 1970s for groups of medically important bacteria as well as for yeasts and other fungi. Such tools are designed to perform several biochemical tests simultaneously and can identify bacteria within 4 to 24 hours. This is sometimes called **numerical identification** because the results of each test are assigned a number. In the simplest form, a positive test would be assigned a value of 1, and a negative is assigned a value of 0. In most commercial testing kits, test results are assigned numbers ranging from 1 to 4 that are based on the relative reliability and importance of each test, and the resulting total is compared to a database of known organisms.

In the example shown in Figure 10.9, an unknown enteric bacterium is inoculated into a tube designed to perform 15 biochemical tests. After incubation, results in each compartment are recorded. Notice that each test is assigned a value; a code number is derived from scoring all the tests. Fermentation of glucose is important, and a positive reaction is valued at 4, compared with the production of indole, which has a value of 1. A computerized interpretation of the simultaneous test results is essential and is provided by the manufacturer.

Automated rapid identification for medically important bacteria and yeasts became available in 1980s. Cells from a single colony are lysed, and their proteins are extracted in acetonitrile. Cellular proteins in the extract are read using a mass spectrophotometer that measures the molecular mass of proteins in the sample (Figure 10.10). The data obtained are then compared to commercial databases. These systems work well for commonly encountered organisms because their "protein profiles" are in databases, These limitations should be overcome as databases are expanded.

The time needed to identify bacteria can be reduced considerably by the use of selective and differential media or by rapid identification methods. Selective media contain ingredients that suppress the growth of competing organisms and encourage the growth of desired ones, and differential media allow the desired organism to form a colony that is somehow distinctive (see Chapter 6).

Serology

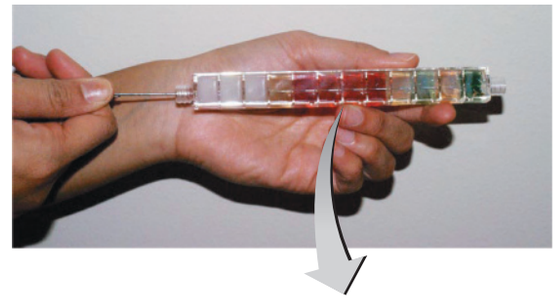
Serology is the science that studies serum and immune responses that are evident in serum (see Chapter 18). Microorganisms that enter an animal's body stimulate it to form antibodies, which are immune-system proteins that circulate in the blood and combine in a highly specific way with the bacteria that caused their production. For example, the immune system of a rabbit injected with killed typhoid bacteria (antigens) responds by producing antibodies against typhoid bacteria. Solutions of

CLINICAL CASE

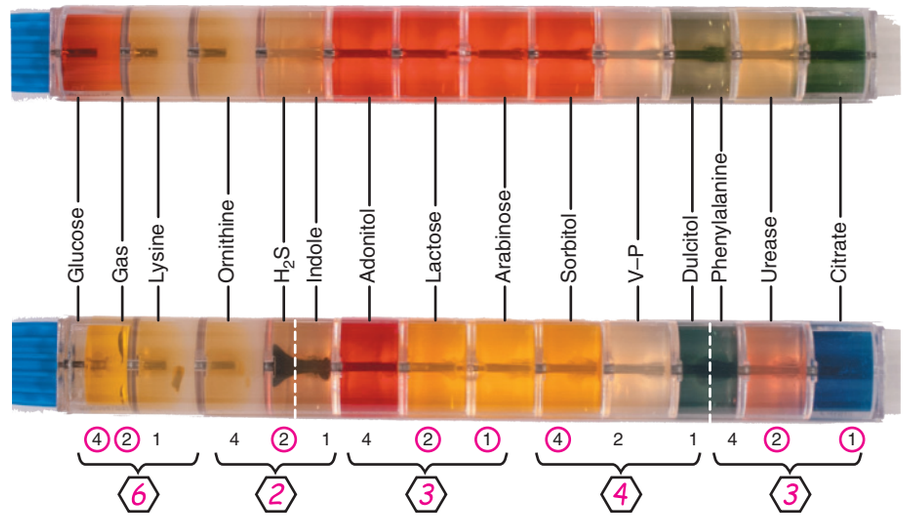
The laboratory cannot just Gram stain a stool sample to look for a bacterial pathogen. The large number of gram-negative rods would be indistinguishable in a Gram stain made directly from feces. The stool sample should be cultured on selective and differential media to distinguish among bacteria in the stool. Monica's stool sample is cultured on bismuth sulfite agar. Black colonies are present on the agar after 24 hours.

Can gram-positive bacteria grow on this medium? Refer to Chapter 6 if you need a hint.

1 One tube containing media for 15 biochemical tests is inoculated with an unknown enteric bacterium.



2 After incubation, the tube is observed for results.



3 The value for each positive test is circled, and the numbers from each group of tests are added to give the code number.

4 Comparing the resultant code number with a computerized listing shows that the organism in the tube is *Citrobacter freundii*.

Code Number	Microorganism	Atypical Test Results
62342	*Citrobacter freundii*	Citrate
62343	*Citrobacter freundii*	None

Figure 10.9 One type of rapid identification method for bacteria: EnteroPluri test from BD Diagnostics. This example shows results for a typical strain of *C. freundii;* however, other strains may produce different test results, which are listed in the Atypical Test Results column.

Q How can one species have two different code numbers?

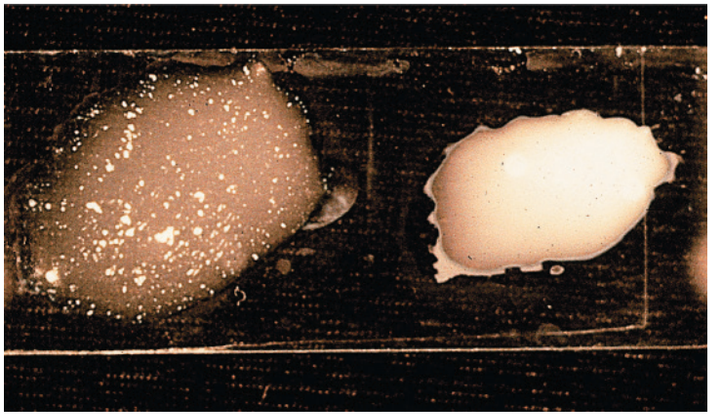
such antibodies used in the identification of many medically important microorganisms are commercially available; such a solution is called an **antiserum** (plural: *antisera*). If an unknown bacterium is isolated from a patient, it can be tested against known antisera and often is identified quickly.

In a procedure called a **slide agglutination test**, samples of an unknown bacterium are placed in a drop of saline on each of several slides. Then a different known antiserum is added to each sample. The bacteria agglutinate (clump) when mixed with antibodies that were produced in response to that species or strain of bacterium; a positive test is indicated by the presence of agglutination. Positive and negative slide agglutination tests are shown in Figure 10.11.

Serological testing can differentiate among microbial species as well as strains within species. Strains with different antigens are called **serotypes**, **serovars**, or **biovars**. (See the discussion of

Figure 10.10 Cellular proteins detected by mass spectrophotometry create a spectrum that can be compared to a database.

Q Identify one advantage and one disadvantage of automated systems.



(a) Positive test **(b)** Negative test

Figure 10.11 A slide agglutination test. **(a)** In a positive test, the grainy appearance is due to the clumping (agglutination) of the bacteria. **(b)** In a negative test, the bacteria are still evenly distributed in the saline and antiserum.

Q Agglutination results when the bacteria are mixed with _____.

CLINICAL CASE

Bismuth sulfite agar inhibits the growth of gram-positive bacteria; it is used to distinguish among gram-negative bacteria. The culture from Monica's stool sample reveals that she has been infected with *Salmonella* bacteria. There are only two species of *Salmonella: S. enterica* and *S. bongori.* Monica's infection is caused by *S. enterica*; however, there are over 2500 serovars of *S. enterica* that can infect people. Upon receiving the results from the lab, Monica's nurse practitioner calls the Texas Department of Health Services to inform them of her patient's diagnosis and to let them know that Monica's friend has the same symptoms. It is important that the department of health identify the serovar to determine whether there is an outbreak from one source and to trace that source.

How will the department of health identify the correct *S. enterica* serovar?

Escherichia and *Salmonella* serovars in Chapter 11.) As mentioned in Chapter 1, Rebecca Lancefield was able to classify streptococcal serotypes by studying serological reactions. She found that the different antigens in the cell walls of various serotypes of streptococci stimulate the formation of different antibodies. In contrast, because closely related bacteria also produce some of the same antigens, serological testing can be used to screen bacterial isolates for possible similarities. If an antiserum reacts with proteins from different bacterial species or strains, these bacteria can be tested further for relatedness.

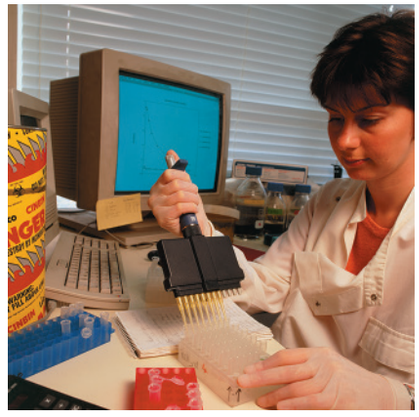
A test called the **enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA)** is widely used because it is fast and specific. ELISA tests done in a laboratory can be read by a computer scanner (Figure 10.12; see also Figure 18.12). In a direct ELISA, known antibodies are placed in (and adhere to) the wells of a microplate, and an unknown type of bacterium or virus is added to each well. A reaction between the known antibodies and the bacteria provides identification of the bacteria. The rapid, at-home COVID-19 tests use the ELISA technique. Antibodies in the paper strip react with SARS-CoV-2 antigens in the sample (Figure 10.13). An ELISA is also used in AIDS testing to detect the presence of antibodies against human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), the virus that causes AIDS (see Figure 19.14).

Phage Typing

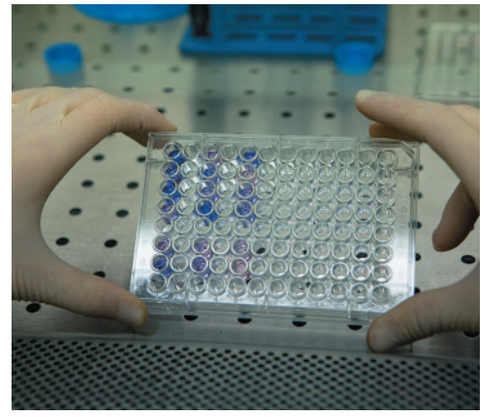
Like serological testing, phage typing looks for similarities among bacteria. Both techniques are useful in tracing the origin and course of a disease outbreak. **Phage typing** is a test for determining to which phages a bacterium is susceptible.

Figure 10.12 An ELISA test.

Q What are the similarities between the slide agglutination test and the ELISA test?



(a) A technician uses a micropipette to add samples to a microplate for an ELISA.



(b) ELISA results are then read using a spectrophotometer.

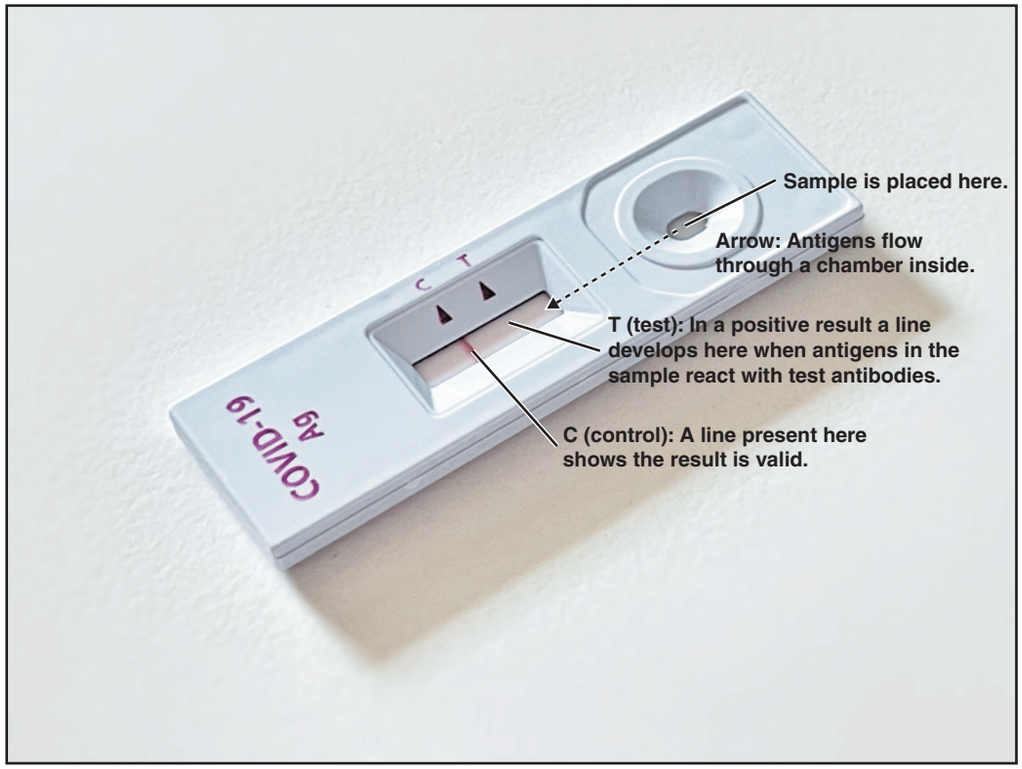


Figure 10.13 A rapid at-home ELISA test for SARS-CoV-2.

Q What is used to detect the virus in this test?

Bacteriophages (phages) are bacterial viruses that usually cause lysis of the bacterial cells they infect (Chapter 13). Highly specialized, they usually infect only members of a particular species or even particular strains within a species. One bacterial strain might be susceptible to two different phages, whereas another strain of the same species might be susceptible to those two phages plus a third phage. Bacteriophages will be discussed further in Chapter 13.

Phage typing is used to trace the spread of infections caused by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, *Yersinia pestis*, *Bacillus anthracis*, and *S. aureus*. One version of this procedure starts with a plate totally covered with bacteria growing on agar. A drop of each different phage type to be used in the test is then placed on the bacteria. Wherever the phages are able to infect and lyse the bacterial cells, clearings in the bacterial growth (called plaques) appear (Figure 10.14). Such a test might show, for instance, that bacteria isolated from a surgical wound have the same pattern of phage sensitivity as those isolated from the operating surgeon or surgical nurses. This result establishes that the surgeon or a nurse is the source of infection.

Molecular Profiles

Bacteria synthesize a wide variety of fatty acids, and in general, these fatty acids are constant for a particular species. Commercial systems have been designed to separate cellular fatty acids to compare them to fatty acid profiles of known organisms. Fatty acid profiles, called **FAME** (*f*atty *a*cid *m*ethyl *e*ster), are widely used in clinical and public health laboratories. Protein patterns of cells can be determined by MALDI

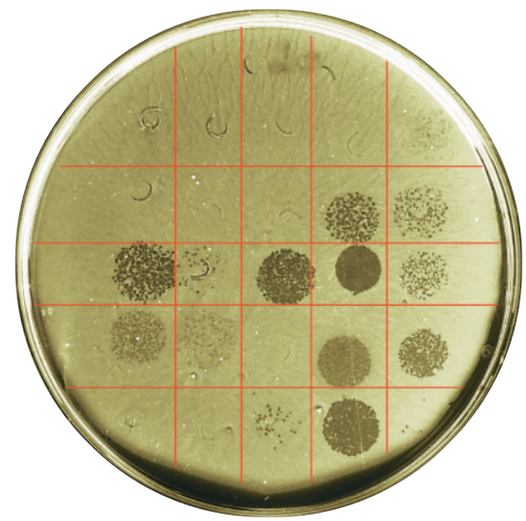


Figure 10.14 Phage typing of a strain of *Salmonella enterica*. The tested strain was grown over the entire plate. A different bacteriophage was added to each grid square. Plaques, or areas of lysis, were produced by bacteriophages, indicating that the strain of *S. enterica* was sensitive to infection by these phages.

Q What is being identified in phage typing?

(matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization). These methods require a reference database that contains the profiles of the unknown organism being identified.

Flow Cytometry

Flow cytometry can be used to identify bacteria in a sample without culturing the bacteria. In a *flow cytometer*, a moving fluid containing bacteria is forced through a small opening (see Figure 18.11). The simplest method detects the presence of bacteria by detecting the difference in electrical conductivity between cells and the surrounding medium. If the fluid passing through the opening is illuminated by a laser, the scattering of light provides information about the cell size, shape, density, and surface, which is analyzed by a computer. Fluorescence can be used to detect naturally fluorescent cells, such as *Pseudomonas*, or cells tagged with fluorescent dyes.

Tests that use flow cytometry to detect *Listeria* or *Salmonella* in milk save time because the bacteria don't need to be cultured for identification. Antibodies against *Listeria* or *Salmonella* can be labeled with a fluorescent dye and added to the milk to be tested. The milk is passed through the flow cytometer, which records the fluorescence of the antibody-labeled cells.

Whole Genome Sequencing

Taxonomists are using an organism's **DNA base composition** to draw conclusions about relatedness. This base composition is usually expressed as the percentage of guanine plus cytosine (G + C). The base composition of a single species is theoretically a fixed property; thus, a comparison of the G + C content in different species can reveal the degree of species relatedness. Each guanine (G) in DNA has a complementary cytosine (C) (see Chapter 8). Similarly, each adenine (A) in the DNA has a complementary thymine (T). Therefore, the percentage of DNA bases that are GC pairs also tells us the percentage that are AT pairs (GC + AT = 100%). Two organisms that are closely related and have many identical or similar genes will have similar amounts of the various bases in their DNA. However, if there is a difference of more than 10% in their percentage of GC pairs (for example, if one bacterium's DNA contains 40% GC and another bacterium has 60% GC), then these two organisms probably aren't related. Of course, two organisms that have the same percentage of GC aren't necessarily closely related; other supporting data are needed to draw conclusions about their phylogenetic relationship.

DNA sequencing was developed in the 1970s by Frederick Sanger. Faster, automated *next generation sequencing* (Chapter 9) is now used for both classification and identification. Genetic sequences of hundreds of organisms are compiled in databases that can be used online through the NCBI Genome Database. In 2022, researchers discovered 174 new bacterial species in the human microbiome using DNA sequencing. Many of the new organisms discovered by sequencing DNA in environmental samples cannot be grown in a laboratory. Bacteria that have not been cultured cannot be included in *Bergey's Manual*.

Nucleic Acid Hybridization

If a double-stranded molecule of DNA is subjected to heat, the complementary strands will separate as the hydrogen bonds between the bases break. If the single strands are then cooled slowly, they will reunite to form a double-stranded molecule identical to the original double strand. (This reunion occurs because the single strands have complementary sequences.) When this technique is applied to separated DNA strands from two different organisms, it is possible to determine the extent of similarity between the base sequences of the two organisms. This method is known as **DNA-DNA hybridization**. The procedure assumes that if two species are similar or related, a major portion of their nucleic acid sequences will also be similar. The procedure measures the ability of DNA strands from one organism to hybridize (bind through complementary base pairing) with the DNA strands of another organism (Figure 10.15). Hybridization of 70% or more indicates the two

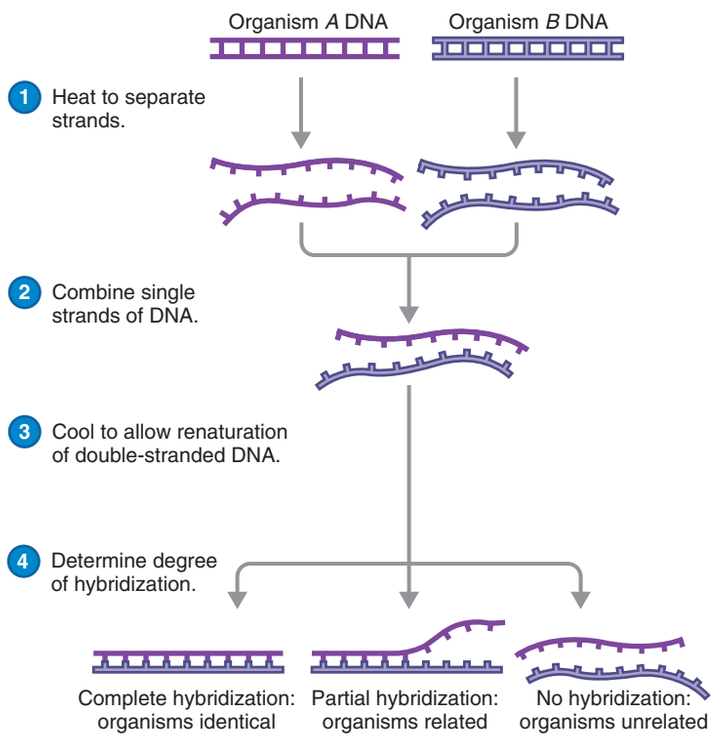


Figure 10.15 DNA-DNA hybridization. The greater the amount of pairing between DNA strands from different organisms (hybridization), the more closely the organisms are related.

Q What is the principle involved in DNA probes?

organisms belong to the same species. DNA-DNA hybridization has been the standard criterion for classifying prokaryotes, but is being replaced by whole-genome sequencing. Nucleic acid hybridization reactions are the basis of several techniques (described next) that are used to detect the presence of specific microorganisms.

Nucleic Acid Amplification Tests (NAATs)

When a microorganism cannot be cultured by conventional methods, the causative agent of an infectious disease might not be recognized. However, **nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs)** can be used to increase the amount of microbial DNA to levels that can be tested by gel electrophoresis. NAATs use PCR, reverse-transcription PCR, and real-time PCR (see Chapter 9). If a primer for a specific microorganism is used, the presence of amplified DNA indicates that the microorganism is present.

In 1992, researchers used PCR to determine the causative agent of Whipple's disease, which was previously an unknown bacterium now named *Tropheryma whipplei* (trō-fer-Ē-mah WHIP-plē-ī). Whipple's disease was first described in 1907 by George Whipple as a gastrointestinal and nervous system disorder caused by an unknown bacillus. No one has been able to culture the bacterium to identify it; thus PCR provides the only reliable methods of diagnosing and treating the disease.

Primers for genes that show variation between two or more species are used for PCR to produce a *DNA fingerprint* to identify pathogenic microbes (they are also used to identify suspects in criminal investigations). PCR made possible several discoveries. For example, in 1992, Raul Cano used PCR to amplify DNA from *Bacillus*-related bacteria in amber that was 25 to 40 million years old. The primers were made from rRNA sequences in living *Niallia circulans* to amplify DNA coding for rRNA in the amber. These primers will cause amplification of DNA from other species related to *Bacillus* but do not cause amplification of DNA from other bacteria that might be present, such as *Escherichia* or *Pseudomonas*. The DNA was sequenced after amplification. This information was used to determine the relationships between the ancient bacteria and modern bacteria.

Reverse transcription PCR is used to diagnose COVID-19 by amplifying viral RNA in a patient's sample (**Figure 10.16**). This technique is being used to find SARS-CoV-2, poliovirus, and MPOX virus in sewage. The presence of pathogens in sewage is used to determine the prevalence of a disease in the local population. PCR is used to identify the source of rabies viruses as well (see the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 22).

Southern Blotting

Nucleic acid hybridization can be used to identify unknown microorganisms by **Southern blotting** (see Figure 9.16). In addition, rapid identification methods using **DNA probes** are being developed. One method involves breaking DNA extracted from *Salmonella* into fragments with a restriction enzyme, then selecting a specific fragment as the probe for *Salmonella* (**Figure 10.17**). This fragment must be able to hybridize with the DNA of all *Salmonella* strains, but not with the DNA of closely related enteric bacteria.

CLINICAL CASE

Salmonella serovars are identified by serotyping with antisera against previously isolated serovars. The department of health identifies the serovar; Monica and her friend are infected with *Salmonella* Oranienburg bacteria. By now, the department of health has been inundated with calls; over 200 additional cases of *Salmonella* Oranienburg infection have been identified and reported from all over the state of Texas.

How can the department of health determine whether these 200 cases are related?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 **Part 4** Part 5 Part 6

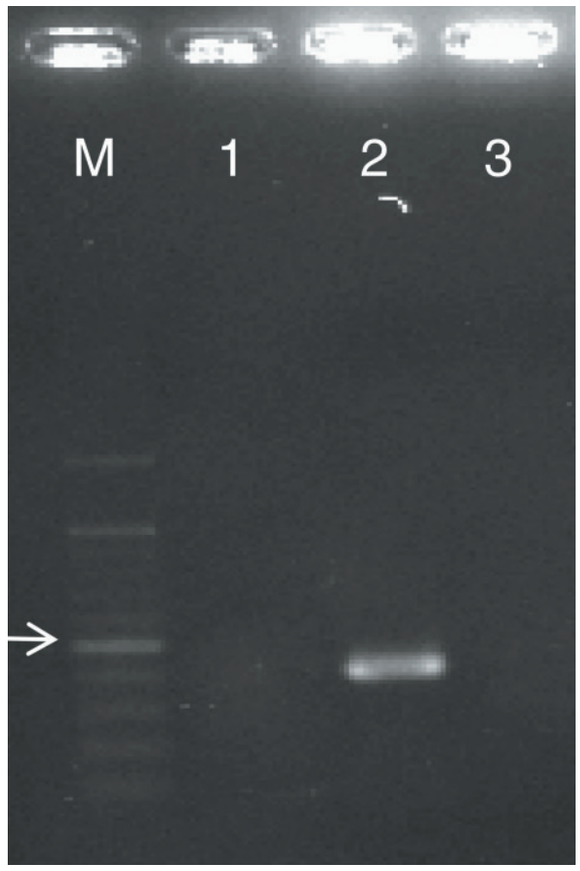
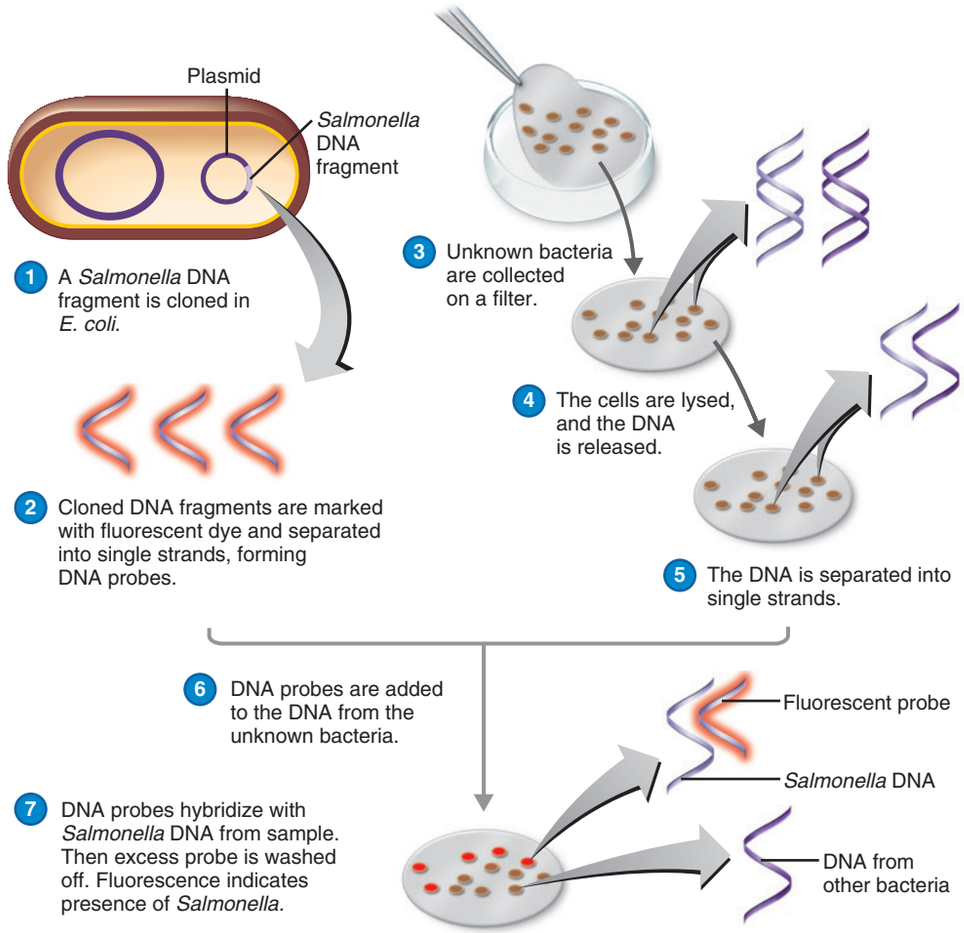


Figure 10.16 A common *Coronavirus strain*, HKU1, is identified in a patient using reverse transcription PCR with *Coronavirus* HKU1 primers. Lane M: DNA size markers, arrow at 500 base pairs. Lane 1: Negative control, Lane 2: Patent sample using. Lane 3. Patient sample using coronavirus OC43 primer.

Q How is PCR used to identify a pathogen?

Figure 10.17 A DNA probe used to identify bacteria. Southern blotting is used to detect specific DNA. This modification of the Southern blot is used to detect *Salmonella*.

Q Why do the DNA probe and cellular DNA hybridize?



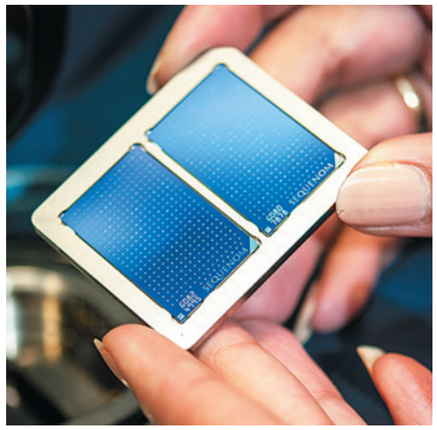
DNA Chips

An exciting technology is the **DNA chip**, or **microarray**, which can quickly detect a pathogen in a host or the environment by identifying a gene that is unique to that pathogen (Figure 10.18). The DNA chip is composed of DNA probes. A sample containing DNA from an unknown organism is labeled with a fluorescent dye and added to the chip. Hybridization between the probe DNA and DNA in the sample is detected by fluorescence.

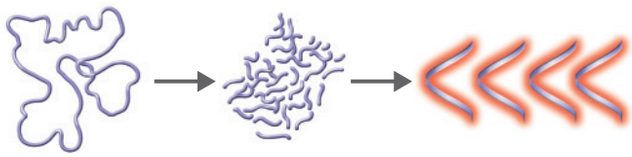
Ribotyping and Ribosomal RNA Sequencing Ribotyping is currently being used to determine the phylogenetic relationships among organisms. There are several advantages to using rRNA. First, all cells contain ribosomes. Second, RNA genes have undergone few changes over time, so all members of a domain, phylum—and, in some cases, a genus—have the same "signature" sequences in their rRNA. The rRNA used most often is a component of the smaller portion of ribosomes. A third advantage of rRNA sequencing is that cells don't have to be cultured in the laboratory.

DNA can be amplified by PCR using an rRNA primer for specific signature sequences. The amplified fragments are subsequently cut with one or more restriction enzymes and separated by electrophoresis. The resulting band patterns can then be compared. The rRNA genes in the amplified fragments can be sequenced to determine evolutionary relationships between organisms. This technique is useful for classifying a newly discovered organism to domain or phylum or to determine the general types of organisms present in one environment. More specific probes are needed to identify individual species, however (see Chapter 9).

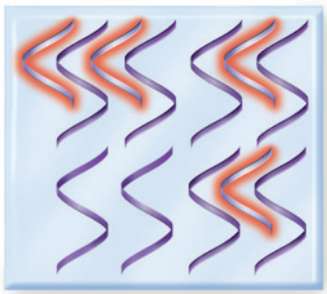
Fluorescent In Situ Hybridization (FISH) Fluorescent dye–labeled RNA or DNA probes are used to stain microorganisms in place, or in situ. This technique is called **fluorescent in situ hybridization, or FISH**. Cells are treated so the probe enters the cells and reacts with target DNA in the cell (in situ). FISH is used to determine the identity, abundance, and relative activity of microorganisms in an environment and can be used to detect bacteria that have not yet been cultured. Using FISH, researchers discovered a tiny bacterium called *Pelagibacter* (pel-AJ-ē-bak-ter) in the ocean and determined that it's in the



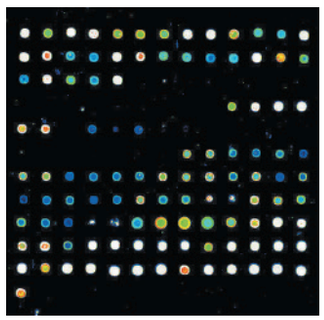
(a) A DNA chip can be manufactured to contain hundreds of thousands of synthetic single-stranded DNA sequences. Assume that each DNA sequence was unique to a different gene.



(b) Unknown DNA from a sample is separated into single strands, enzymatically cut, and labeled with a fluorescent dye.



(c) The unknown DNA is inserted into the chip and allowed to hybridize with the DNA on the chip.



(d) The tagged DNA will bind only to the complementary DNA on the chip. The bound DNA will be detected by its dye and analyzed by a computer. In this *Salmonella* antimicrobial-resistance gene microarray, *Salmonella* Typhimurium–specific antibiotic-resistance gene probes are green, *Salmonella* Typhi–specific resistance gene probes are red, and antibiotic-resistance genes found in both serovars appear yellow. Blue indicates absence of the gene.

Figure 10.18 DNA chip. This DNA chip contains probes for antibiotic-resistance genes. It is used to detect antibiotic-resistant bacteria in samples collected from animals on a farm or in slaughter facilities.

Q What is on the chip to make it specific for a particular microorganism?

Alphaproteobacteria (see Chapter 11). As probes are developed, FISH can be used to detect bacteria in drinking water or bacteria in a patient without the normal 24-hour or longer wait required to culture the bacteria (Figure 10.19).

Putting Classification Methods Together

Morphological characteristics, differential staining, and biochemical testing were the only identification tools available just a few years ago. Technological advancements are making it possible to use nucleic acid analysis techniques, once reserved for classification, for routine identification. Information obtained about microbes is used to identify and classify the organisms (see Exploring the Microbiome). Two methods of using the information are described next.

Dichotomous Keys

Dichotomous keys are widely used for identification. In a dichotomous key, identification is based on successive questions, and each question has two possible answers (*dichotomous* means cut in two). After answering one question, the investigator is directed to another question until an organism is identified. Although these keys often have little to do with phylogenetic relationships, they're invaluable for identification. For example, a dichotomous key for bacteria could begin with an easily determined characteristic, such as cell shape, and move on to Gram reaction and the ability to ferment a sugar. Dichotomous keys are shown in Figure 10.8 and in the Clinical Focus boxes in Chapters 5 and 10.

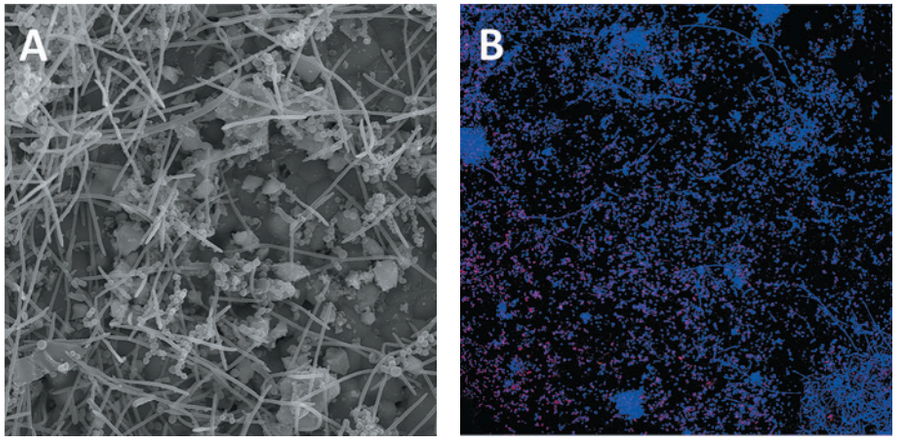
CLINICAL CASE

Salmonella isolates from each of the infected people are sent to the state's public health laboratory for DNA fingerprinting. The DNA fingerprints are then sent to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). At the CDC, computer software compares each of the *Salmonella* DNA fingerprints to determine whether all the cases of *Salmonella* Oranienburg are identical. At this point, the CDC has received over 1,000 samples from 39 states, indicating a potential nationwide outbreak. Following is a figure of a microbiologist evaluating a genome sequence at the CDC's Division of Foodborne, Waterborne, and Environmental Diseases.

What is the value of whole genome sequencing if the *Salmonella* strain is identified by serotyping?

Figure 10.19 FISH, or fluorescent in situ hybridization. A DNA or RNA probe attached to fluorescent dyes is used to identify chromosomes. Bacteria in a multispecies biofilm are visible with a scanning electron microscope **(a)**. *Porphyromonas gingivalis* bacteria **(red)** are identified in the biofilm with a fluorescent-labeled probe that hybridizes with a specific sequence of DNA **(b)**.

Q What is stained using the FISH technique?



(a) Multispecies biofilm.

(b) Multispecies biofilm in a fluorescence microscope.

Cladograms

Cladograms are maps that show evolutionary relationships among organisms (*clado-* means branch). Cladograms are shown in Figures 10.1 and 10.6. Each branch point on the cladogram is defined by a feature shared by various species on that branch. Historically, cladograms for vertebrates were made using fossil evidence; however, rRNA sequences are now being used to confirm fossil-based assumptions. As we said earlier, most microorganisms don't leave fossils; therefore, rRNA sequencing is primarily used to make cladograms for microorganisms. The small rRNA subunit used has 1500 bases, and computer programs do the calculations. The steps for constructing a cladogram are shown in Figure 10.20.

1. Two rRNA sequences are aligned.
2. The percentage of similarity between the sequences is calculated.
3. Then the horizontal branches are drawn in a length proportional to the calculated percent similarity. All species beyond a node (branch point) have similar rRNA sequences, suggesting that they arose from an ancestor at that node.

Figure 10.20 Building a cladogram.

Q Why do *L. brevis* and *L. acidophilus* branch from the same node?

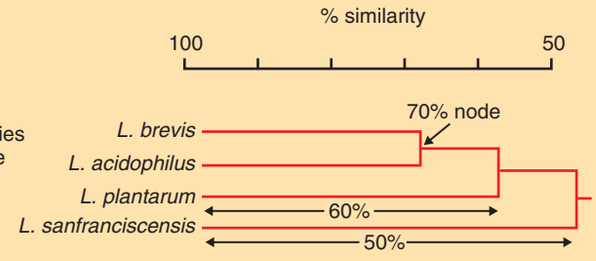
1 Determine the sequence of bases in an rRNA molecule for each organism. Only a short sequence of bases is shown for this example.

Lactobacillus brevis	AGUCCAGAGC
L. sanfranciscensis	GUAAAAGAGC
L. acidophilus	AGCGGAGAGC
L. plantarum	ACGUUAGAGC

2 Calculate the percentage of similarity in the nucleotide bases between pairs of species. For example, there is a 70% similarity between the sequences for *L. brevis* and *L. acidophilus*.

	Percent similarity
L. brevis → *L. sanfranciscensis*	50%
L. brevis → *L. acidophilus*	70%
L. brevis → *L. plantarum*	60%
L. sanfranciscensis → *L. acidophilus*	50%
L. sanfranciscensis → *L. plantarum*	50%
L. plantarum → *L. acidophilus*	60%

3 Construct a cladogram. The length of the horizontal lines corresponds to the percent similarity values. Each branch point, or node, in the cladogram represents an ancestor common to all species beyond that node. Each node is defined by a similarity in rRNA present in all species beyond that branch point.



EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

Techniques for Identifying Members of Your Microbiome

In the past, the main way to identify a microbe from your microbiome—say, a bacterium in your intestines—would be to take a sample, isolate a species, grow it as a pure culture on the appropriate media, and then examine it under a microscope. But not every microbe can be grown in the lab. DNA analysis expands what members of the microbial community we can see and study.

In prokaryotes, studying ribosomal DNA allows us to identify and compare relatedness of microbial species. The 16S gene, which makes up part of the 30S ribosomal subunit, is highly conserved from an evolutionary standpoint. (In other words, it has not changed much over time in a given species.) Looking at a microbe's 16S gene is therefore useful. Although complete genome sequences, not just 16S genes, are needed to identify a species, the more similar the 16S gene is to another known microbe's, the more closely related the two species are. Automated systems using genetic analysis have been developed. These systems can rapidly recognize individual organisms from a mixed sample and are thus useful for identifying members of the intestinal microbiome, where a wide variety of bacteria coexist.

Genetic identification techniques have revolutionized the study of microbes. However, that doesn't mean Petri plates and microscopes are now obsolete. Genetic analysis isn't appropriate for all situations and won't tell us all the information we may want to know about a microbe in a sample. For example, genetic analysis may not detect species if they are low in number in the sample. Additionally, differences within a species, such as a new antibiotic-resistance gene, can be identified only by culturing. Growing bacteria is also essential to understanding their metabolism and their relationship to their host—both crucial factors when it comes to studying microbiota. So in the end, we need both new and old techniques to properly study the microbiome.

Microbes grown from a 5-year-old's handprint.

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

Early in this outbreak, there was a cluster of *Salmonella* Oranienburg illness due to consumption of raw onions. The CDC uses whole genome sequencing to determine whether clusters of *Salmonella* infections are from a common source. In conjunction with the CDC and the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, the multiple companies recall yellow, red, and white onions. Monica and her friend fully recover. Tracing *Salmonella* infections to their source is essential because *Salmonella* can be transmitted through a variety of foods. It causes an estimated 1.35 million illnesses and 420 deaths annually in the United States.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 **Part 6**

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **10-13** What is in *Bergey's Manual*?
- **10-14** Design a rapid test for a *S. aureus*. (*Hint:* See Figure 6.11.)
- **10-15** What is identified by phage typing?
- **10-16** Why does PCR identify a microbe?
- **10-17** Which techniques involve nucleic acid hybridization?
- **10-12, 10-18** Is a cladogram used for identification or classification?

Study Outline

Introduction (p. 270)

1. Taxonomy is the science of the classification of organisms. Its goal is to show relationships among organisms.
2. Taxonomy also provides a means of identifying organisms.

The Study of Phylogenetic Relationships (pp. 271–275)

1. Phylogeny is the evolutionary history of a group of organisms.
2. The taxonomic hierarchy shows evolutionary, or phylogenetic, relationships among organisms.
3. Bacteria were separated into the Kingdom Prokaryotae in 1968.
4. Living organisms were divided into five kingdoms in 1969.

The Three Domains (pp. 271–274)

5. Living organisms are currently classified into three domains. A domain can be divided into kingdoms.
6. In this system, plants, animals, and fungi belong to the Domain Eukarya.
7. Bacteria (with peptidoglycan) form a second domain.
8. Archaea (with unusual cell walls) are placed in the Domain Archaea.

A Phylogenetic Tree (pp. 274–275)

9. Organisms are grouped into taxa according to phylogenetic relationships (from a common ancestor).
10. Some of the information for eukaryotic relationships is obtained from the fossil record.
11. Prokaryotic relationships are determined by rRNA sequencing.

Classification of Organisms (pp. 275–278)

Scientific Nomenclature (p. 275–276)

1. According to scientific nomenclature, each organism is assigned two names, or a binomial: a genus and a specific epithet, or species.

The Taxonomic Hierarchy (pp. 276–277)

2. A eukaryotic species is a group of organisms that interbreed with each other but do not breed with individuals of another species.
3. Similar species are grouped into a genus; similar genera are grouped into a family; families, into an order; orders, into a class; classes, into a phylum; phyla, into a kingdom; and kingdoms, into a domain.

Classification of Prokaryotes (pp. 276–278)

4. *Bergey's Manual of Systematics of Archaea and Bacteria* is the standard reference on bacterial classification.
5. A group of bacteria derived from a single cell is called a strain.
6. Closely related strains constitute a bacterial species.

Classification of Eukaryotes (pp. 276–278)

7. Eukaryotic organisms may be classified into the Kingdom Fungi, Plantae, or Animalia.
8. Protists are mostly unicellular organisms; these organisms are currently being assigned to clades of genetically related groups.
9. Fungi are absorptive chemoheterotrophs that develop from spores.
10. Multicellular photoautotrophs are placed in the Kingdom Plantae.
11. Multicellular ingestive heterotrophs are classified as Animalia.

Classification of Viruses (p. 278)

12. Viruses are not placed in a kingdom. They are not composed of cells and do not have ribosomes.
13. A viral species is a population of viruses with similar characteristics that occupies a particular ecological niche.

Methods of Classifying and Identifying Microorganisms (pp. 278–291)

1. *Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology* is the standard reference for laboratory identification of bacteria.
2. Morphological characteristics are useful in identifying microorganisms, especially when aided by differential staining techniques.
3. The presence of various enzymes, as determined by biochemical tests, is used in identifying bacteria and yeasts.
4. Serological tests, involving the reactions of microorganisms with specific antibodies, are useful in determining the identity of strains and species, as well as relationships among organisms. ELISA and slide agglutination are examples of serological tests.
5. Phage typing is the identification of bacterial species and strains by determining their susceptibility to various phages.
6. Fatty acid profiles can be used to identify some organisms.
7. Flow cytometry measures physical and chemical characteristics of cells.
8. The percentage of GC base pairs in the nucleic acid of cells can be used in the classification of organisms.
9. The number and sizes of DNA fragments, or DNA fingerprints, produced by restriction enzymes are used to determine genetic similarities.
10. Single strands of DNA from related organisms will hydrogen-bond to form a double-stranded molecule; this bonding is called nucleic acid hybridization.
11. NAATs can be used to amplify a small amount of microbial DNA in a sample.
12. PCR, Southern blotting, DNA chips, and FISH are examples of nucleic acid hybridization techniques.
13. The sequence of bases in ribosomal RNA can be used in the classification of organisms.
14. Dichotomous keys are used for identifying organisms. Cladograms show phylogenetic relationships among organisms.

Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. Which of the following organisms are most closely related? Are any two the same species? On what did you base your answer?

Characteristic	A	B	C	D
Morphology	Rod	Coccus	Rod	Rod
Gram Reaction	+	−	−	+
Glucose Utilization	Fermentative	Oxidative	Fermentative	Fermentative
Cytochrome Oxidase	Present	Present	Absent	Absent
GC Moles %	48–52	23–40	50–54	49–53

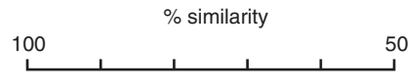
2. Here is some additional information on the organisms in question 1:

Organism	% DNA Hybridization
A and B	5–15
A and C	5–15
A and D	70–90
B and C	10–20
B and D	2–5

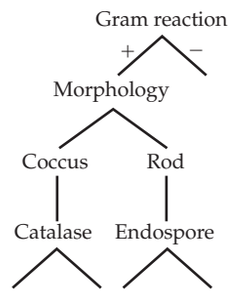
Which of these organisms are most closely related? Compare this answer with your response to review question 1.

3. DRAW IT Use the following rRNA information to construct a cladogram for some of the organisms used in question 4. What is the purpose of a cladogram? How does your cladogram differ from a dichotomous key for these organisms?

	Similarity in rRNA Bases
P. aeruginosa—M. pneumoniae	52%
P. aeruginosa—C. botulinum	52%
P. aeruginosa—E. coli	79%
M. pneumoniae—C. botulinum	65%
M. pneumoniae—E. coli	52%
E. coli—C. botulinum	52%



4. DRAW IT Use the information in the following table to complete the dichotomous key to these organisms. What is the purpose of a dichotomous key? Look up each genus in Chapter 11, and provide an example of why this organism is of interest to humans.



	Morphology	Gram Reaction	Acid from Glucose	Growth in Air (21% O_2)	Motile by Peritrichous Flagella	Presence of Cytochrome Oxidase	Produce Catalase
Staphylococcus aureus	Coccus	+	+	+	−	−	+
Streptococcus pyogenes	Coccus	+	+	+	−	−	−
Mycoplasma pneumoniae	Coccus	−	+	+ (Colonies < 1 mm)	−	−	+
Clostridium botulinum	Rod	+	+	−	+	−	−
Escherichia coli	Rod	−	+	+	+	−	+
Pseudomonas aeruginosa	Rod	−	+	+	−	+	+
Campylobacter fetus	Vibrio	−	−	−	−	+	+
Listeria monocytogenes	Rod	+	+	+	+	−	+

5. NAME IT Use the key in the Clinical Focus box to identify the gram-negative, oxidase-positive rod causing pneumonia in a sea otter. It is H_2S-positive, indole-negative, and urease-positive.

Multiple Choice

1. *Bergey's Manual of Systematics of Archaea and Bacteria* differs from *Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology* in that the former
   a. groups bacteria into species.
   b. groups bacteria according to phylogenetic relationships.
   c. groups bacteria according to pathogenic properties.
   d. groups bacteria into 19 species.
   e. all of the above
2. *Bacillus* and *Lactobacillus* are not in the same order. This indicates that which one of the following is *not* sufficient to assign an organism to a taxon?
   a. biochemical characteristics
   b. amino acid sequencing
   c. phage typing
   d. serology
   e. morphological characteristics
3. Which of the following is used to classify organisms into the Kingdom Fungi?
   a. ability to photosynthesize; possess a cell wall
   b. unicellular; possess cell wall; prokaryotic
   c. unicellular; lacking cell wall; eukaryotic
   d. absorptive; possess cell wall; eukaryotic
   e. ingestive; lacking cell wall; multicellular; prokaryotic
4. Which of the following is *false* about scientific nomenclature?
   a. Each name is specific.
   b. Names vary with geographical location.
   c. The names are standardized.
   d. Each name consists of a genus and specific epithet.
   e. It was first designed by Linnaeus.
5. You could identify an unknown bacterium by all of the following *except*
   a. hybridizing a DNA probe from a known bacterium with the unknown's DNA.
   b. making a fatty acid profile of the unknown.
   c. specific antiserum agglutinating the unknown.
   d. ribosomal RNA sequencing.
   e. percentage of guanine + cytosine.
6. The wall-less mycoplasmas are considered to be related to gram-positive bacteria. Which of the following would provide the most compelling evidence for this?
   a. They share common rRNA sequences.
   b. Some gram-positive bacteria and some mycoplasmas produce catalase.
   c. Both groups are prokaryotic.
   d. Some gram-positive bacteria and some mycoplasmas have coccus-shaped cells.
   e. Both groups contain human pathogens.

Use the following choices to answer questions 7 and 8.

a. Animalia
b. Fungi
c. Plantae
d. Bacillota (gram-positive bacteria)
e. Pseudomonadota (gram-negative bacteria)

7. Into which group would you place a multicellular organism that has a mouth and lives inside the human liver?
8. Into which group would you place a photosynthetic organism that lacks a nucleus and has a thin peptidoglycan wall surrounded by an outer membrane?

Use the following choices to answer questions 9 and 10.

1. 9 + 2 flagella
2. 70S ribosome
3. fimbria
4. nucleus
5. peptidoglycan
6. plasma membrane

9. Which is (are) found in all three domains?
   a. 2, 6
   b. 5
   c. 2, 4, 6
   d. 1, 3, 5
   e. all six
10. Which is (are) found *only* in prokaryotes?
    a. 1, 4, 6
    b. 3, 5
    c. 1, 2
    d. 4
    e. 2, 4, 5

Analysis

1. The GC content of *Micrococcus* is 66–75 moles %, and of *Staphylococcus*, 30–40 moles %. According to this information, would you conclude that these two genera are closely related?
2. Describe the use of a DNA probe and PCR for:
   a. rapid identification of an unknown bacterium.
   b. determining which of a group of bacteria are most closely related.
3. SF medium is a selective medium, developed in the 1940s, to test for fecal contamination of milk and water. Only certain gram-positive cocci can grow in this medium. Why is it named SF? Using this medium, which genus will you culture? (*Hint*: Refer to the discussion of Scientific Nomenclature.)

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. A 55-year-old veterinarian was admitted to a hospital with a 2-day history of fever, chest pain, and cough. Gram-positive cocci were detected in his sputum, and he was treated for lobar pneumonia with penicillin. The next day, another Gram stain of his sputum revealed gram-negative rods, and he was switched to ampicillin and gentamicin. A sputum culture showed biochemically inactive gram-negative rods identified as *Pantoea (Enterobacter) agglomerans*. After fluorescent-antibody staining and phage typing, *Y. pestis* was identified in the patient's sputum and blood, and chloramphenicol and tetracycline were administered. The patient died 3 days after admission to the hospital. Tetracycline was given to his 220 contacts (hospital personnel, family, and co-workers). What disease did the patient have? Discuss what went wrong in the diagnosis and how his death might have been prevented. Why were the 220 other people treated? (*Hint*: Refer to Chapter 23.)
2. A 6-year-old girl was admitted to a hospital with endocarditis. Blood cultures showed a gram-positive, aerobic rod identified by the hospital laboratory as *Corynebacterium xerosis*. The girl died after 6 weeks of treatment with intravenous penicillin and chloramphenicol. The bacterium was tested by another laboratory

and identified as *C. diphtheriae*. The following test results were obtained by each laboratory:

	Hospital Lab	Other Lab
Catalase	+	+
Nitrate reduction	+	+
Urea hydrolysis	−	−
Esculin hydrolysis	−	−
Glucose fermentation	+	+
Sucrose fermentation	−	+
Serological test for toxin production	Not done	+

Provide a possible explanation for the incorrect identification. What are the potential public health consequences of misidentifying *C. diphtheriae*? (*Hint*: Refer to Chapter 24.)

3. Using the following information, create a dichotomous key for distinguishing these unicellular organisms. Which cause human disease?

	Mitochondria?	Chlorophyll?	Nutritional Type?	Motile?
Euglena	+	+	Both	+
Giardia	−	−	Heterotroph	+
Nosema	−	−	Heterotroph	−
Pfiesteria	+	+	Autotroph	+
Trichomonas	−	−	Heterotroph	+
Trypanosoma	+	−	Heterotroph	+

Using the additional information shown next, create a cladogram for these organisms. Do your two keys differ? Explain why. Which key is more useful for laboratory identification? For classification?

	rRNA base #																			
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
Euglena	C	C	A	G	G	U	U	G	U	U	C	C	A	G	U	U	U	U	A	A
Giardia	C	C	A	U	A	U	U	U	U	U	G	A	C	G	A	A	G	G	U	C
Nosema	C	C	A	U	A	U	U	U	U	U	A	A	C	G	A	A	G	G	C	C
Pfiesteria	C	C	A	A	C	U	U	A	U	U	C	C	A	G	U	U	U	C	A	G
Trichomonas	C	C	A	U	A	U	U	U	U	U	G	A	C	G	A	A	G	G	G	C
Trypanosoma	C	C	A	C	G	U	U	G	U	U	C	C	A	G	U	U	U	A	A	A

11 The Prokaryotes: Domains Bacteria and Archaea

When biologists first encountered microscopic bacteria, they were puzzled as to how to classify them. Bacteria were clearly not animals or rooted plants. Attempts to build a taxonomic system for bacteria based on the phylogenetic system developed for plants and animals failed (see Chapter 10). In the earlier editions of *Bergey's Manual*, the main publication that focuses on classification, bacteria were grouped by morphology (rod, coccus), staining reactions, presence of endospores, and other obvious features. Although this system had its practical uses, it also had many limitations, somewhat like grouping bats and birds together on the basis of their having wings.

The knowledge of bacteria at the molecular level has now expanded to such a degree that it is possible to base the latest edition of *Bergey's Manual* on a phylogenetic system. For example, the genera *Rickettsia* and *Chlamydia* were once grouped together by their common requirement for intracellular growth. Members of the genus *Chlamydia* are now found in a phylum named Chlamydiota, but the rickettsias are grouped in a distant phylum, Proteobacteria, in the Alphaproteobacteria class. Some microbiologists find such changes upsetting, but they reflect important differences, primarily in the ribosomal RNA (rRNA) of the microbes, a genetic component that is slow to change and performs the same functions in all organisms. This is discussed in Chapter 10.

Pathogenic bacteria isolated from patients, such as the *Streptococcus pyogenes* shown in the photo, must be identified quickly. Laboratory identification of bacterial species usually starts with Gram staining and morphology. Identification of this bacterium is discussed in the Clinical Case.

▶ ***Streptococcus pyogenes*** **bacteria showing a typical chain arrangement.**

In the Clinic

As a perioperative clinical nurse specialist, you need to identify the source of infection in seven cardiovascular surgery patients. Nutrient-agar cultures from the patients grow red colonies consisting of gram-negative bacteria. You take cultures of selected hospital staff, and the same bacterium is cultured from a scrub nurse who wears artificial fingernails. **Removal of the fingernails ends the outbreak. What is the causative agent of the outbreak?**

Hint: The red pigment produced by this bacterium is distinctive. (See Serratia *later in this chapter)*

The Prokaryotic Groups

In the current edition of *Bergey's Manual*, the prokaryotes are grouped into two **domains**, the **Archaea** and the **Bacteria**. Spelled without capitalization, archaea and bacteria denote organisms that fit into these domains. Each domain is divided into phyla, each phylum into classes, each class into orders, each order into families, each family into genera, and finally, each genus into species. Note that bacteria are also commonly distinguished by whether they are gram-negative or gram-positive.

ASM: Mutations and horizontal gene transfer, with the immense variety of microenvironments, have selected for a huge diversity of microorganisms.

Although prokaryotic phyla have been used in *Bergey's Manual*, in 2021 the International Committee on Systematics of Prokaryotes ruled that phylum names should end in -ota. The phyla discussed in this chapter are summarized in Table 11.1 (see also Appendix E).

Domain Bacteria

Most of us think of bacteria as invisible, potentially harmful little creatures. Actually, relatively few species of bacteria cause disease in humans, animals, plants, or any other organisms. Once you have completed a course in microbiology, you'll realize that without bacteria, life as we know it would be impossible. In this chapter, you'll learn how bacterial groups are differentiated from each other and how important bacteria are in the world. Our discussion in this chapter emphasizes bacteria considered to be of practical importance, those that are important in medicine, or those that illustrate biologically unusual or interesting principles.

The Learning Objectives and Check Your Understanding questions throughout this chapter will help you to become familiar with these organisms and to look for similarities and differences between organisms. You'll also learn to draw dichotomous keys to differentiate the bacteria.

TABLE 11.1 Classification of Selected Prokaryotes*

Domain	Phyla	Selected Classes	Notes
BACTERIA			
(Gram-Negative)	Pseudomonadota	· Alphaproteobacteria	Includes *Ehrlichia* and *Rickettsia*
	(Proteobacteria)	· Betaproteobacteria	Includes *Bordetella* and *Burkholderia*
		· Gammaproteobacteria	Includes *Vibrio, Salmonella*, *Helicobacter*, and *Escherichia, Pseudomonas*
		· Deltaproteobacteria	Includes *Bdellovibrio*
	Campylobacterota	· Campylobacterales	*Campylobacter* and *Helicobacter*
	Cyanobacteria	· Cyanobacteria	Oxygenic photosynthetic bacteria
	Chlorobiota	· Chlorobia	Photosynthetic; anoxygenic; green sulfur bacteria
	Chloroflexota	· Chloroflexi	Include anoxygenic, photosynthetic, filamentous green nonsulfur bacteria
	Chlamydiota	· Chlamydiae	Grow only in eukaryotic host cells
	Planctomycetota	· Planctomycetia	Aquatic bacteria; some are stalked
	Bacteroidota	· Bacteroidetes	Phylum members include opportunistic pathogens
	Fusobacteriota	· Fusobacteria	Class includes pathogens that cause syphilis and Lyme disease
	Spirochaetota	· Spirochaetia	
BACTERIA			
(Gram-Positive)	Bacillota	· Bacilli	Low G + C gram-positive rods and cocci
	(Firmicutes)	· Clostridia	Low G + C wall-less bacteria
	Mycoplasmatota	· Mollicutes	Anaerobic; some cause tissue necrosis and septicemia in humans
	Actinomycetota	· Actinobacteria	Members include radiation- and heat-resistant genera
	Deinococcota	· Deinococci	
ARCHAEA			
	Thermoproteota	· Thermoprotei	Thermophiles and hyperthermophiles
	Euryarchaeota	· Methanobacteria	Methanobacteria are important sources of methane
		· Halobacteria	Require high salt concentrations

*For a complete list of genera discussed in this text, see Appendix E.

The Gram-Negative Bacteria

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

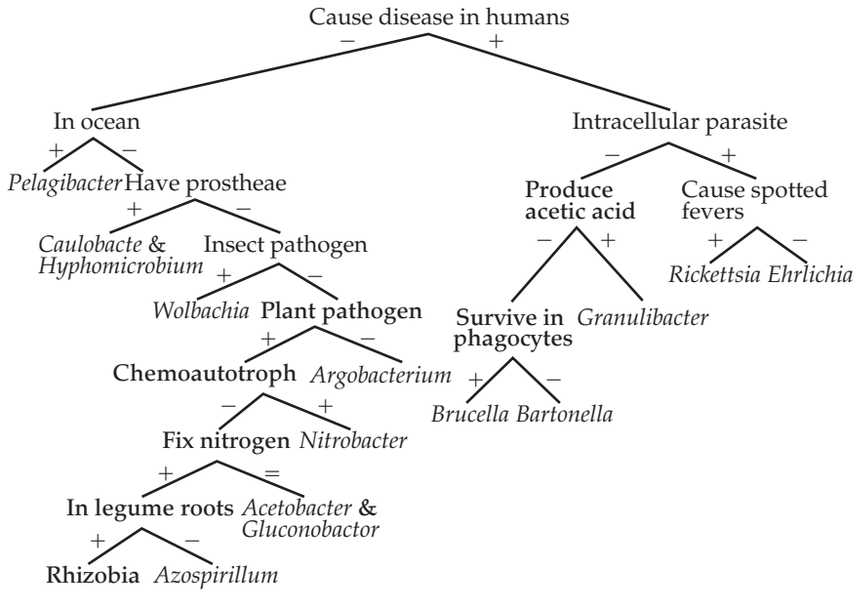
11-1 Differentiate the Alphaproteobacteria described in this chapter by drawing a dichotomous key. We've drawn the first of these dichotomous keys (for Alphaproteobacteria) for you as an example (on the right).

11-2 Differentiate the Betaproteobacteria described in this chapter by drawing a dichotomous key.

11-3 Differentiate the Gammaproteobacteria described in this chapter by drawing a dichotomous key.

11-4 Differentiate the Deltaproteobacteria described in this chapter by drawing a dichotomous key.

11-5 Differentiate the Campylobacterota described in this chapter by drawing a dichotomous key.



Pseudomonadota

The **Pseudomonadota**, which include most of the gram-negative, chemoheterotrophic bacteria, are presumed to have arisen from a common photosynthetic ancestor. They are now the largest taxonomic group of bacteria. However, few are now photosynthetic; other metabolic and nutritional capacities have arisen to replace this characteristic. The phylogenetic relationship in these groups is based upon rRNA studies. The former name "Proteobacteria" was taken from the mythological Greek god Proteus, who could assume many shapes. The Pseudomonadota are separated into five classes: Alphaproteobacteria, Betaproteobacteria, Gammaproteobacteria, Deltaproteobacteria, and Campylobacterota.

The Alphaproteobacteria

As a group, the Alphaproteobacteria includes most of the proteobacteria that are capable of growth with very low levels of nutrients. Some have unusual morphology, including protrusions such as stalks or buds known as **prosthecae**. The Alphaproteobacteria also include agriculturally important bacteria capable of nitrogen fixation in symbiosis with plants, and several plant and human pathogens.

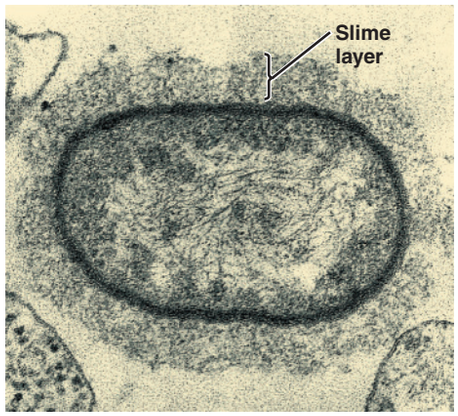
Pelagibacter One of the most abundant microorganisms on Earth, certainly in the ocean environment, is *Pelagibacter ubique* (pel-AJ-ē-bak-ter OO-bēk). It is a member of a group of marine microbes named SAR 11 because of their original discovery in the Sargasso Sea. *P. ubique* is the first member of this group to be successfully cultivated. Its genome has been sequenced and found to have only 1354 genes. This number is very low for a free-living organism, although several mycoplasmas (discussed later in this chapter) have even fewer genes. Bacteria in a symbiotic relationship have lower metabolic requirements and have the smallest genomes. The bacterium is extremely small, a little over 0.3 μm diameter. Its small size and minimal genome probably give it a competitive advantage for survival in low-nutrient environments. In fact, it seems to be the most abundant living organism in the oceans on the basis of weight. (Part of its name, *ubique*, is derived from *ubiquitous*.) Its sheer numbers must give it an important role in the Earth's carbon cycle.

Azospirillum Agricultural microbiologists have been interested in members of the genus *Azospirillum* (ā-zō-spī-RIL-lum), a soil bacterium that grows in close association with the roots of many plants, especially tropical grasses. It uses nutrients excreted by the plants and in return fixes nitrogen from the atmosphere. This form of nitrogen fixation is most significant

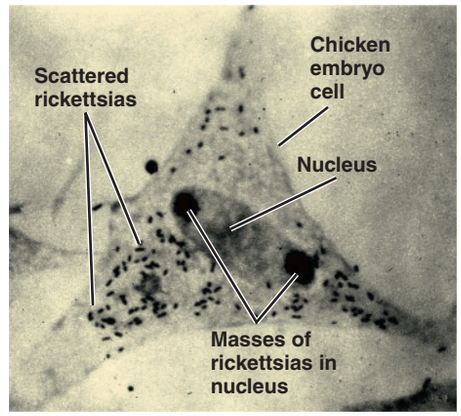
CLINICAL CASE Mercy

Sheree Walker, a neonatologist at a local hospital, is checking on Mercy, a 48-hour-old infant girl. Mercy was delivered normally at 39 weeks and appeared to be a healthy baby. In the last 2 days, however, she has taken a bad turn and is admitted to the neonatal intensive care unit (NICU). Mercy is limp, has difficulty breathing, and has a body temperature of 35°C; but her lungs are clear, and her heart exam is normal. Dr. Walker speaks with Mercy's mother, who confirms that she received appropriate prenatal care and has no other medical problems. Dr. Walker orders a lumbar puncture for Mercy to check her cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) for possible infection. The report back from the lab shows blood in Mercy's CSF. Dr. Walker diagnoses Mercy with meningitis and then orders a venous blood culture to check for bacteria.

What bacteria could be the cause of Mercy's meningitis? Read on to find out.



(a) A rickettsial cell that has just been released from a host cell



(b) Rickettsias grow only within a host cell, such as the chicken embryo cell shown here. Note the scattered rickettsias within the cell and the compact masses of rickettsias in the cell nucleus.

Figure 11.1 Rickettsias.

Q How are rickettsias transmitted from one host to another?

in tropical grasses and in sugarcane, although the organism can be isolated from the root system of many temperate-climate plants, such as corn. The prefix *azo-* is frequently encountered in nitrogen-fixing genera of bacteria. It's derived from *a* (without) and *zo* (life), in reference to the early days of chemistry, when oxygen was removed, by a burning candle, from an experimental atmosphere. Presumably, mammalian life wasn't possible in this nitrogen-rich atmosphere. Hence, nitrogen came to be associated with absence of life.

Acetobacteraceae *Acetobacter* (ah-SĒ-tō-bak-ter) and *Gluconobacter* (glū-konʹō-BAK-ter) are industrially important aerobic organisms that convert ethanol into acetic acid (vinegar). The recently identified *Granulibacter* (GRAN-ū-li-bak-ter) is an emerging pathogen found in patients with chronic granulomatous disease.

Rickettsia In the first edition of *Bergey's Manual*, the genera *Rickettsia*, *Coxiella*, and *Chlamydia* were grouped closely because they are all obligate intracellular parasites—that is, they reproduce only within a mammalian cell. We now know that they are widely separated. Rickettsias, chlamydias, and viruses are compared in Table 13.1.

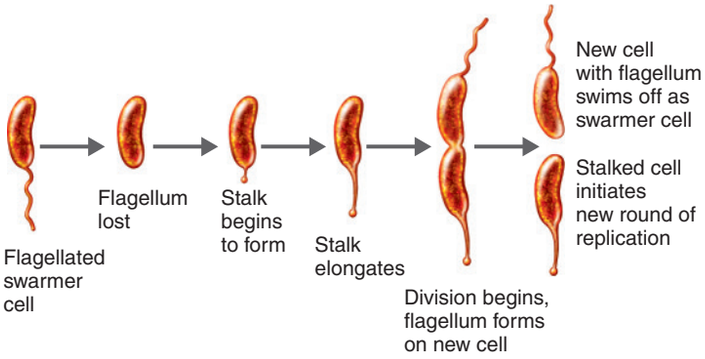
The rickettsias are gram-negative rod-shaped bacteria, or coccobacilli (Figure 11.1a). One distinguishing feature of most rickettsias is that they are transmitted to humans by insect and tick bites, unlike the *Coxiella* (discussed later with Gammaproteobacteria). Rickettsia enter their host cell by inducing phagocytosis. They quickly enter the cytoplasm of the cell and begin reproducing by binary fission (Figure 11.1b). They can usually be cultivated artificially in cell culture or chick embryos (Chapter 13).

The rickettsias are responsible for a number of diseases known as the spotted fever rickettsioses. These include epidemic typhus, caused by *Rickettsia prowazekii* (ri-KET-sē-ah prou-wah-ZE-kē-ē) and transmitted by lice (Figure 12.32a); endemic murine typhus, caused by *R. typhi* (TĪ-fē) and transmitted by rat fleas (Figure 12.32b); and Rocky Mountain spotted fever, caused by *R. rickettsii* (ri-KET-sē-ē) and transmitted by ticks (Figure 12.31). In humans, rickettsial infections damage the permeability of blood capillaries, which results in a characteristic spotted rash.

Ehrlichia Ehrlichiae are gram-negative, rickettsia-like bacteria that live obligately within white blood cells. *Ehrlichia* (er-LIK-ē-ah) species are transmitted by ticks to humans and cause ehrlichiosis, a sometimes fatal disease (Chapter 23).

Caulobacter* and *Hyphomicrobium Members of the genus *Caulobacter* (kah-lō-BAK-ter) are found in low-nutrient aquatic environments, such as lakes. They feature stalks that anchor the organisms to surfaces (Figure 11.2). This arrangement increases their nutrient uptake because they are exposed to a continuously changing flow of water and because the stalk increases the surface-to-volume ratio of the cell. Also, if the surface to which they anchor is a living host, these bacteria can use the host's excretions as nutrients. When the nutrient concentration is exceptionally low, the size of the stalk increases, evidently to provide an even greater surface area for nutrient absorption.

Budding bacteria don't divide by binary fission into two nearly identical cells. The budding process resembles the asexual reproductive processes of many yeasts (see Figure 12.4). The parent cell retains its identity while the bud increases in size until it separates as a complete new cell. An example is the genus *Hyphomicrobium* (hīʹfō-mĪ-KRŌ-bē-um), as shown in Figure 11.3. These bacteria, like the caulobacteria, are found in low-nutrient aquatic environments and have even been found growing in laboratory water baths. Both *Caulobacter* and *Hyphomicrobium* produce prominent prosthecae.



(a)

(b)

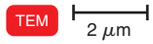


Figure 11.2 ***Caulobacter.***

Q What is the competitive advantage provided by attaching to a surface?

Spacey Rhizobium, Bradyrhizobium,* and *Agrobacterium The *Rhizobium* (rī-ZŌ-bē-um) and *Bradyrhizobium* (brā′dē-rī-ZŌ-bē-um) are two of the more important genera of a group of agriculturally important bacteria that specifically infect the roots of leguminous plants, such as beans, peas, or clover. For simplicity these bacteria are known by the common name of **rhizobia**. The presence of rhizobia in the roots leads to formation of nodules in which the rhizobia and plant form a symbiotic relationship, resulting in the fixation of nitrogen from the air for use by the plant (see Figure 27.5).

Like rhizobia, the genus *Agrobacterium* (a-grō-bak-TI-rē-um) has the ability to invade plants. However, these bacteria do not induce root nodules or fix nitrogen. Of particular interest is *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*. This is a plant pathogen that causes a disease called crown gall; the crown is the area of the plant where the roots and stem merge. The tumorlike gall is induced when *A. tumefaciens* inserts a plasmid containing bacterial genetic information into the plant's chromosomal DNA (see Figure 9.19). For this reason, microbial geneticists are very interested in this organism. Plasmids are the most common vector that scientists use to carry new genes into a plant cell because the thick wall of plants is especially difficult to penetrate (see Figure 9.20).

Bartonella The genus *Bartonella* (BAR-tō-nel-lah) contains several members that are human pathogens. The best-known is *Bartonella henselae*, a gram-negative bacillus that causes cat-scratch disease (Chapter 23).

Brucella *Brucella* (broo-SEL-lah) bacteria are small nonmotile coccobacilli. All species of *Brucella* are obligate parasites of mammals and cause the disease brucellosis (Chapter 23). Of medical interest is the ability of *Brucella* to survive phagocytosis, an important element of the body's defense against bacteria (see Chapter 16).

Nitrobacter* and *Nitrosomonas *Nitrobacter* (ni′trō-BAK-ter) and *Nitrosomonas* (NĪ-trō-sō-mō-nas) are genera of nitrifying bacteria that are of great importance to the environment and to agriculture. They are chemoautotrophs capable of using inorganic chemicals as energy sources and carbon dioxide as the only source of carbon, from which they synthesize all of their complex chemical makeup. The energy sources of the genera *Nitrobacter* and *Nitrosomonas* (the latter is a member of the Betaproteobacteria) are reduced nitrogenous compounds. *Nitrosomonas* species oxidize ammonium (NH_4^+) to nitrite (NO_2^-), which is in turn oxidized by *Nitrobacter* species to nitrates (NO_3^-) in the process of *nitrification*. Nitrate is important to agriculture; it's a nitrogen form that's highly mobile in soil and therefore likely to be encountered and used by plants.

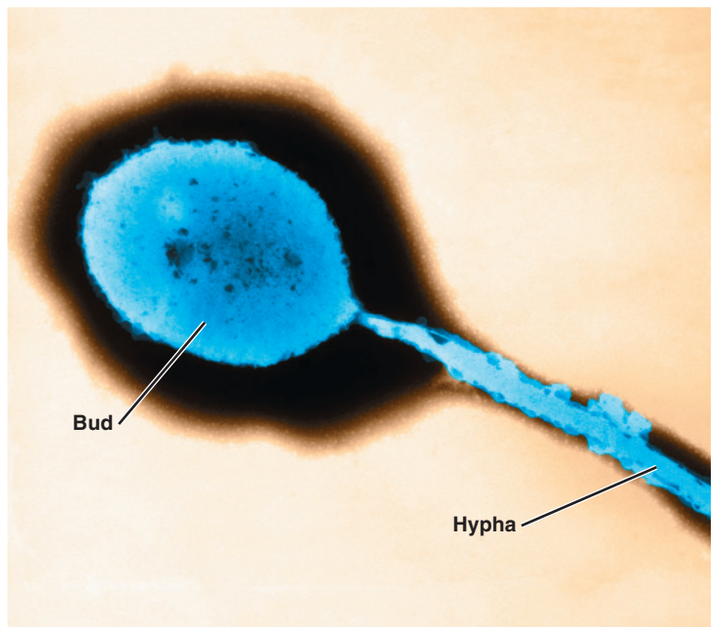


Figure 11.3 ***Hyphomicrobium*, a type of budding bacterium.**

Q Most bacteria do not reproduce by budding; what method do they use?

Wolbachia *Wolbachia* (wol-BAK-ē-ah) is probably the most common infectious bacterial genus in the world; they live only inside the cells of their hosts, usually insects (a relationship known as *endosymbiosis*). Therefore, *Wolbachia* escapes detection by the usual culture methods. *Wolbachia* interferes with reproduction and egg development in infected insects. *Wolbachia*-infected male *Aedes aegypti* mosquitoes are being released in several places including Brazil, Florida, California, and southeast Asia to prevent the spread of Zika, chikungunya, and dengue viruses. (See Exploring the Microbiome in Chapter 28.)

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

11-1 Make a dichotomous key to distinguish the Alphaproteobacteria described in this chapter. (*Hint*: See the completed example earlier in this section.)

The Betaproteobacteria

The Betaproteobacteria often use nutrient substances that diffuse away from areas of anaerobic decomposition of organic matter, such as hydrogen gas, ammonia, and methane. Several important pathogenic bacteria are found in this group.

Spirillum The genus *Spirillum* (spī-RIL-lum) is found mainly in freshwater. *Spirillum* bacteria are motile by conventional polar flagella, an important morphological distinction from the helical spirochetes (discussed shortly), which use axial filaments. The spirilla are relatively large, gram-negative, aerobic bacteria. *Spirillum volutans* (VOL-ū-tanz) is often used as a demonstration slide when microbiology students are first introduced to the operation of the microscope (Figure 11.4).

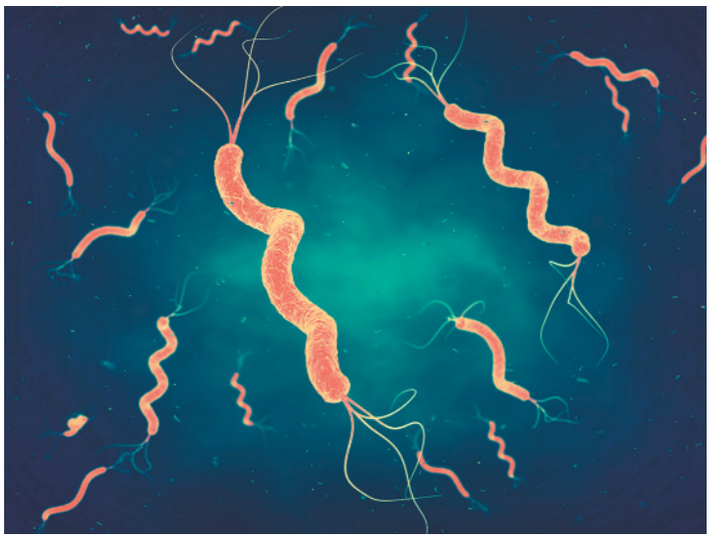


Figure 11.4 ***Spirillum volutans.*** These large helical bacteria are found in aquatic environments. Note the polar flagella.

Q Is this bacterium motile? How can you tell?

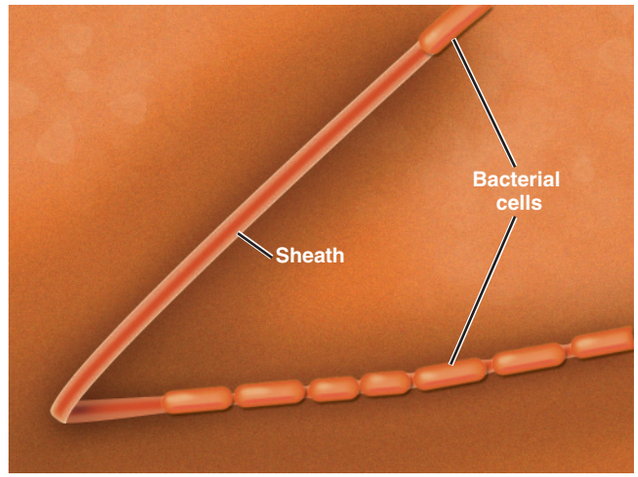


Figure 11.5 ***Sphaerotilus natans.*** These sheathed bacteria are found in dilute sewage and aquatic environments. They form elongated sheaths in which the bacteria live. The bacteria have flagella (not visible here) and can eventually swim free of the sheath.

Q How does the sheath help the cell?

Sphaerotilus Sheathed bacteria, which include *Sphaerotilus natans* (sfer-O-ti-lus NĀ-tanz), are found in freshwater and in sewage. These gram-negative bacteria with polar flagella form a hollow, filamentous sheath in which to live (Figure 11.5). Sheaths are protective and also aid in nutrient accumulation. *Sphaerotilus* probably contributes to bulking, a phenomenon in which sewer sludge floats; this is a significant problem in sewage treatment (see Chapter 27).

Burkholderia The genus *Burkholderia* was formerly grouped with the genus *Pseudomonas*, which is now classified under the Gammaproteobacteria. Like the pseudomonads, almost all *Burkholderia* species are motile by a single polar flagellum or tuft of flagella. The best-known species is the aerobic, gram-negative rod *Burkholderia cepacia* (berk-HŌL-der'ē-ah se-PĀ-sē-ah). It has an extraordinary nutritional spectrum and is capable of degrading more than 100 different organic molecules. This capability is often a factor in the contamination of equipment and drugs in hospitals; these bacteria may actually grow in disinfectant solutions (see the Clinical Case in Chapter 15). *B. cepacia* is also a problem for people with the genetic lung disease cystic fibrosis, in whom it metabolizes accumulated respiratory secretions.

Burkholderia pseudomallei (soo'dō-MAL-lē-ē) is a resident in moist soils and is the cause of a severe disease (melioidosis) endemic in southeast Asia and northern Australia (Chapter 24).

Bordetella Of special importance is the nonmotile, aerobic, gram-negative rod *Bordetella pertussis* (bor'de-TEL-lah per-TUS-sis). This serious pathogen is the cause of pertussis, or whooping cough (Chapter 24).

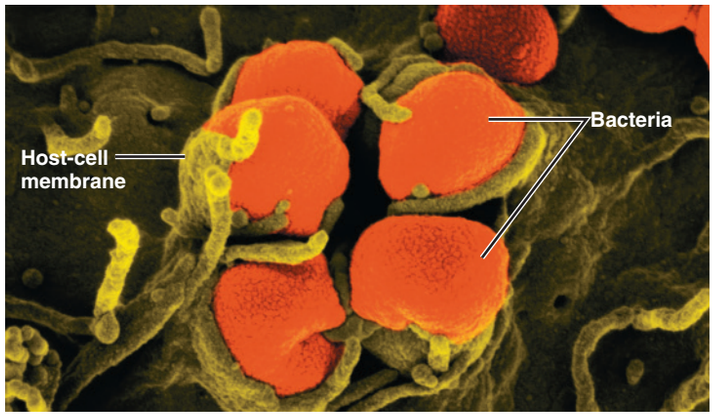


Figure 11.6 The gram-negative coccus *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. This bacterium uses fimbriae and an outer membrane protein called Opa to attach to host cells. After the (red) bacterium attaches, the (green) host cell membrane surrounds it.

Q How do fimbriae contribute to pathogenicity?

Neisseria Bacteria of the genus *Neisseria* (nī-SE-rē-ah) are aerobic, gram-negative cocci that usually inhabit the mucous membranes of mammals. Pathogenic species include the gonococcus bacterium *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (go-nōr-RĒ-ī), the causative agent of gonorrhoea (Figure 11.6 and the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 26), and *N. meningitidis* (ME-nin-ji-ti-dis), the agent of meningococcal meningitis (Chapter 22).

Zoogloea The genus *Zoogloea* (zō-ō-GLĒ-ah) is important in the context of aerobic sewage-treatment processes, such as the activated sludge system. As they grow, *Zoogloea* bacteria form fluffy, slimy masses that are essential to the proper operation of such systems.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

11-2 Make a dichotomous key to distinguish the Betaproteobacteria described in this chapter.

The Gammaproteobacteria

The Gammaproteobacteria constitute the largest subgroup of the proteobacteria and include a great variety of physiological types.

Acidithiobacillus *Acidithiobacillus* (a′sid-ē-thi′ō-bah-SIL-lus) species and other sulfur-oxidizing bacteria are important in the sulfur cycle (see Figure 27.6). These chemoautotrophic bacteria are capable of obtaining energy by oxidizing the reduced forms of sulfur, such as hydrogen sulfide (H_2S), or elemental sulfur (S^0), into sulfates (SO_4^{2-}).

Thiotrichales Members of the order Thiotrichales include *Thiomargarita namibiensis*, which not only is the largest known bacterium but also exhibits several unusual characteristics. (See the discussion of microbial diversity later in this chapter.) Other members of this order include the nutritionally distinctive genus *Beggiatoa* and *Francisella tularensis*, the pathogen causing tularemia.

Beggiatoa *Beggiatoa* species (BEJ-jē-ah-tō-ah), are an unusual genus that grows only in aquatic sediments at the interface between the aerobic and anaerobic layers. Morphologically, the genus resembles certain filamentous cyanobacteria (Figure 11.13a), but it is not photosynthetic. Its motility is enabled by the production of slime, which attaches to the surface on which movement occurs and provides lubrication, allowing the organism to glide.

Nutritionally, *Beggiatoa* use hydrogen sulfide (H_2S) as an energy source and accumulates internal granules of sulfur. The ability of this organism to obtain energy from an inorganic compound was an important factor in the discovery of chemoautotrophic metabolism.

Francisella *Francisella* (FRAN-sis-el-lah) is a genus of small, pleomorphic bacteria that grow only on complex media enriched with blood or tissue extracts. *Francisella tularensis* (TOO-lar-en-sis) causes the disease tularemia. (See the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 23.)

Pseudomonadales Members of the order Pseudomonadales are gram-negative aerobic rods or cocci. The most important genus in this group is *Pseudomonas*. The order also includes *Azotobacter*, *Azomonas*, *Moraxella*, and *Acinetobacter*.

Pseudomonas A very important genus, *Pseudomonas* (soo′dō-MŌ-nas) consists of aerobic, gram-negative rods that are motile by polar flagella, either single or in tufts (Figure 11.7). Pseudomonads are very common in soil and other natural environments.

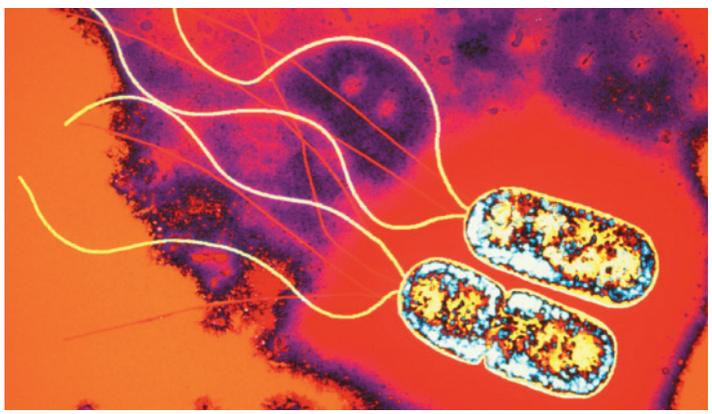


Figure 11.7 *Pseudomonas*. This photo of a pair of *Pseudomonas* bacteria shows polar flagella that are a characteristic of the genus. In some species, only a single flagellum is present (see Figure 4.7b). Note that one cell (on the bottom) is beginning to divide.

Q How does the nutritional diversity of these bacteria make them a problem in hospitals?

Many species of pseudomonads excrete extracellular, water-soluble pigments that diffuse into their media. One species, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (Ā-roo-ji'nō-sah), produces a soluble, blue-green pigmentation. Under certain conditions, particularly in weakened hosts, this organism can infect the urinary tract, burns, and wounds, and can cause blood infections (sepsis; Chapter 23), abscesses, and meningitis. Other pseudomonads produce soluble fluorescent pigments that glow when illuminated by ultraviolet light. One species, *P. syringae* (ser-IN-gī), is an occasional plant pathogen. (Some species of *Pseudomonas* have been transferred, based upon rRNA studies, to the genus *Burkholderia*, which was discussed previously with the Betaproteobacteria.)

Pseudomonads have almost as much genetic capacity as the eukaryotic yeasts and almost half as much as a fruit fly. Although these bacteria are less efficient than some other heterotrophic bacteria in utilizing many of the more common nutrients, they compensate for this by making use of their genetic capabilities. For example, pseudomonads synthesize an unusually large number of enzymes and can metabolize a wide variety of substrates. Therefore, they probably contribute significantly to the decomposition of uncommon chemicals, such as pesticides, that are added to soil.

In hospitals and other places where pharmaceutical agents are prepared, the ability of pseudomonads to grow on minute traces of unusual carbon sources, such as soap residues or cap-liner adhesives found in a solution, has been unexpectedly troublesome. Pseudomonads are even capable of growth in some antiseptics, such as quaternary ammonium compounds. Their resistance to most antibiotics has also been a source of medical concern. This resistance is probably related to the characteristics of the cell wall porins, which control the entrance of molecules through the cell wall (see Chapter 4). The large genome of pseudomonads also codes for several very efficient efflux pump systems (Chapter 20) that eject antibiotics from the cell before they can function. Pseudomonads are responsible for about one in ten healthcare-associated infections (see Chapter 14), especially among infections in burn units. People with cystic fibrosis are also especially prone to infections by *Pseudomonas* and the closely related *Burkholderia*.

Although pseudomonads are classified as aerobic, some are capable of substituting nitrate for oxygen as a terminal electron in anaerobic respiration (see Chapter 5). In this way, pseudomonads cause important losses of valuable nitrogen in fertilizer and soil. Nitrate (NO_3^-) is the form of nitrogen fertilizer most easily used by plants. Under anaerobic conditions, as in water-logged soil, pseudomonads eventually convert this valuable nitrate into nitrogen gas (N_2), which is lost to the atmosphere (see Figure 27.3).

Many pseudomonads can grow at refrigerator temperatures. This characteristic, combined with their ability to utilize proteins and lipids, makes them an important contributor to food spoilage.

Azotobacter and Azomonas Some nitrogen-fixing bacteria, such as *Azotobacter* (a-ZŌ-tō-bak-ter) and *Azomonas* (ā-zō-MŌ-nas), are free-living in soil. These large, ovoid, heavily capsulated bacteria are frequently used in laboratory demonstrations of nitrogen fixation. However, to fix agriculturally significant amounts of nitrogen, they would require energy sources, such as carbohydrates, that are in limited supply in soil.

Moraxella Members of the genus *Moraxella* (MOR-ax-el-lah) are strictly aerobic coccobacilli—that is, intermediate in shape between cocci and rods. *Moraxella lacunata* (LAH-koo-nah-tah) is implicated in conjunctivitis, an inflammation of the conjunctiva, the membrane that covers the eye and lines the eyelids (Chapter 21).

Acinetobacter The genus *Acinetobacter* (ah-sin-Ē-tō-bak'ter) is aerobic and typically forms pairs. The bacteria occur naturally in soil and water. A member of this genus, *Acinetobacter baumannii* (BŌ-man-nē-ē), is an increasing concern to the medical community because of the rapidity with which it becomes resistant to antibiotics. Some strains are resistant to most available antibiotics. (See the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 7.) *A. baumannii* is an opportunistic pathogen primarily found in health care settings. The antibiotic resistance of the pathogen, combined with the weakened health of infected patients, has resulted in an unusually high mortality rate. *A. baumannii* is primarily a respiratory pathogen, but it also infects skin, soft tissues, and wounds and occasionally invades the bloodstream. It is more environmentally hardy than most gram-negative bacteria, and once established in a health care setting, it becomes difficult to eliminate.

Legionellales The genera *Legionella* and *Coxiella* are placed in the same order, Legionellales. Because the *Coxiella* share an intracellular lifestyle with the rickettsial bacteria, they were previously considered rickettsial in nature and grouped with them. *Legionella* bacteria grow readily on suitable artificial media.

Legionella *Legionella* (lē-JEN-el-lah) bacteria were originally isolated during a search for the cause of an outbreak of pneumonia now known as legionellosis (Chapter 24). The search was difficult because these bacteria didn't grow on the laboratory isolation media then available. After intensive effort, special media were developed that enabled researchers to isolate and culture the first *Legionella*. Microbes of this genus are now known to be relatively common in streams, and they colonize such habitats as warm-water supply lines in hospitals and water in the cooling towers of air conditioning systems. (See the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 24.) An ability to survive and reproduce within aquatic amebae often makes them difficult to eradicate in water systems.

Coxiella *Coxiella* bacteria require a mammalian host cell to reproduce. *Coxiella* is most commonly transmitted by contaminated milk. *Coxiella burnetii* (KOKS-ē-el-lah ber-NE-tē-ē) causes Q fever (Chapter 24). It has a sporelike body (see Figure 24.13), which might explain the bacterium's relatively high resistance to the stresses of airborne transmission and heat treatment.

Vibrionales Members of the order Vibrionales are facultatively anaerobic gram-negative rods. They are found mostly in aquatic habitats. *Vibrio* (VIB-rē-ō) species are rods that are often slightly curved (**Figure 11.8**). One important pathogen is *Vibrio cholerae* (KOL-er-ī), the causative agent of cholera (Chapter 25). The disease is characterized by a profuse and watery diarrhea. *V. parahaemolyticus* (par'ah-hē-mō-LI-ti-kus) causes a less serious form of gastroenteritis. Usually inhabiting coastal waters, it's transmitted to humans mostly by raw or undercooked shellfish.

Enterobacteriales The members of the order Enterobacteriales are facultatively anaerobic, gram-negative rods that are, if motile, peritrichously flagellated. Morphologically, the rods are straight. This is an important bacterial group, often commonly called **enterics**. This reflects the fact that they inhabit the intestines of humans and other animals. Most enterics are active fermenters of glucose and other carbohydrates.

Because of the clinical importance of enterics, there are many techniques to isolate and identify them. An identification method for some enterics is shown in Figure 10.9, which incorporates a modern tool using 15 biochemical tests. Biochemical tests are especially important in clinical laboratory work and in food and water microbiology.

Enterics have fimbriae that help them adhere to surfaces or mucous membranes. Specialized sex pili aid in the exchange between cells of genetic information, which often includes antibiotic resistance (see Figures 8.29a and 8.30).

Enterics, like many bacteria, produce proteins called bacteriocins that cause the lysis of closely related species of bacteria. Bacteriocins may help maintain the ecological balance of various enterics in the intestines. Important genera of the Enterobactericeae are discussed next.

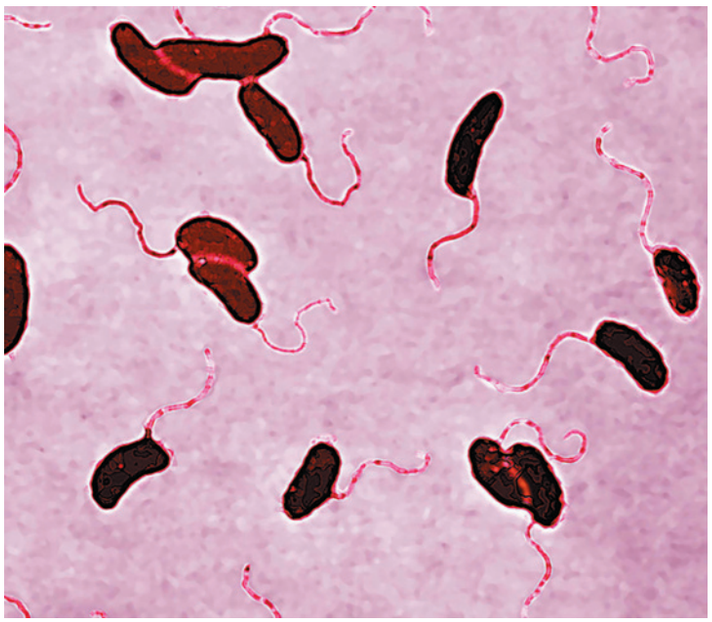


Figure 11.8 ***Vibrio cholerae.*** Notice the curvature of these rods, which is a characteristic of the genus.

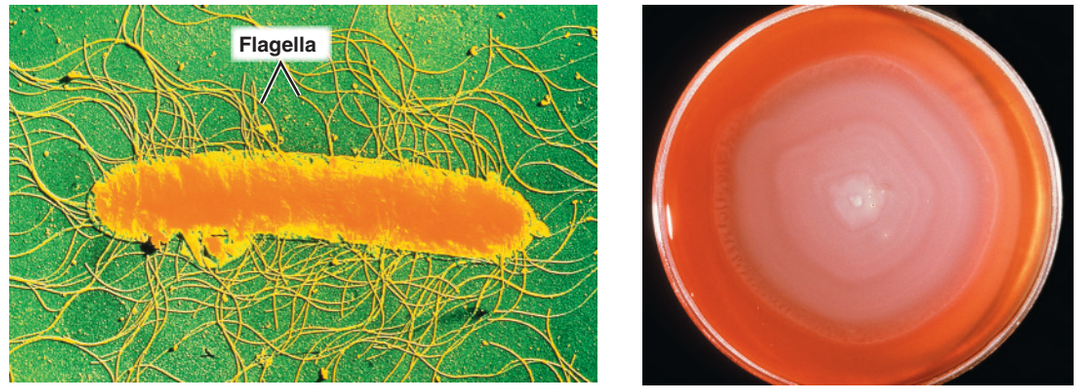
Q What is the flagellar arrangement of these cells?

Escherichia The bacterial species *Escherichia coli* is a common inhabitant of the human intestinal tract and is probably the most familiar organism in microbiology. A great deal is known about the biochemistry and genetics of *E. coli*, and it continues to be an important tool for basic biological research—many researchers consider it almost a laboratory pet. Its presence in water or food is an indication of fecal contamination (see Chapter 27). *E. coli* is not usually pathogenic. However, it can be a cause of urinary tract infections, and certain strains produce enterotoxins that cause traveler's diarrhea (Chapter 25) and occasionally cause very serious foodborne disease (see *E. coli* O157:H7). A newly identified emerging pathogenic species, *E. albertii*, has been associated with sporadic infections in humans, birds, and calves.

Salmonella Almost all members of the genus *Salmonella* (sal'mōn-EL-lah) are potentially pathogenic. Accordingly, there are extensive biochemical and serological tests to clinically isolate and identify salmonellae. Salmonellae are common inhabitants of the intestinal tracts of many animals, especially poultry and cattle. Under unsanitary conditions, they can contaminate food.

There are only two species of *Salmonella*: *S. enterica* and *S. bongori*. *S. bongori* (BON-gor-ē) is found in the environment. It was originally isolated from a lizard in the town of Bongor in the African desert nation of Chad—and is rarely found in humans. *S. enterica* (en-TER-i-kah) bacteria are infectious to warm-blooded animals. *S. enterica* includes more than 2500 **serovars**, that is, *serological varieties*. The term **serotype** is often used to mean the same thing. By way of explanation of these terms, when salmonellae are injected into appropriate animals, their flagella, capsules, and cell walls serve as *antigens* that cause the animals to form *antibodies* in their blood that are specific for each of these structures. Thus, *serological* means are used to differentiate the microorganisms. Serology is discussed more fully in Chapter 18, but for now it's sufficient to state that it can be used to differentiate and identify bacteria.

A serovar such as *Salmonella* Typhimurium (tī-fi-MYER-ē-um) is not a species and should be more properly written as "*Salmonella enterica* serovar Typhimurium." The convention



(a) *Proteus mirabilis* with peritrichous flagella

(b) A swarming colony of *Proteus mirabilis*, showing concentric rings of growth

Figure 11.9 ***Proteus mirabilis.*** Chemical communication between bacterial cells causes changes from cells adapted to swimming in fluid (few flagella) to cells that are able to move on surfaces (numerous flagella). The concentric growth **(b)** results from periodic synchronized conversion to the highly flagellated form capable of movement on surfaces.

Q The photo of the *Proteus* cell is probably a swarmer cell. How would you confirm swarming capability?

now used when referring to serovars of *Salmonella enterica* is to follow the genus name with the nonitalicized serovar name, for example, *Salmonella* Typhimurium.

Specific antibodies, which are available commercially, can be used to differentiate *Salmonella* serovars by a system known as the Kauffmann-White scheme. This scheme designates an organism by numbers and letters that correspond to specific antigens of the organism's capsule, cell wall, and flagella, which are identified by the letters K, O, and H, respectively. Numbers represent the specific antigen. For example, the antigenic formula for the bacterium *Salmonella* Typhimurium is O1,4,[5],12:H,i,1,2.* Many salmonellae are named only by their antigenic formulas. Serovars can be further differentiated by special biochemical or physiological properties into **biovars**, or **biotypes**.

Typhoid fever, caused by *Salmonella* Typhi (TĪ-fē), is the most severe illness caused by any member of the genus *Salmonella* (Chapter 25). A less severe gastrointestinal disease caused by other *S. enterica* serovars is called salmonellosis. Salmonellosis is one of the most common forms of foodborne illness. (See the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 25.)

Shigella Species of *Shigella* (shi-GEL-lah) are responsible for a disease called bacillary dysentery, or shigellosis (Chapter 25). Unlike salmonellae, they are found only in humans. Some strains of *Shigella* can cause life-threatening dysentery.

Klebsiella Members of the genus *Klebsiella* (kleb-SĒ-el-lah) are commonly found in soil or water. Many isolates are capable of fixing nitrogen from the atmosphere, which has been proposed as being a nutritional advantage in isolated populations with little protein nitrogen in their diet. The species *Klebsiella pneumoniae* (noo-MŌ-nē-ī) occasionally causes a serious form of pneumonia in humans.

Serratia *Serratia marcescens* (ser-RĀ-shah mar-SE-sens) is a bacterial species distinguished by its production of red pigment. In hospital situations, the organism can be found on catheters, in saline irrigation solutions, and in other supposedly sterile solutions. Such contamination is probably the cause of many urinary and respiratory tract infections in hospitals.

Proteus Colonies of *Proteus* (PRŌ-tē-us) bacteria growing on agar exhibit a swarming type of growth. Swarmer cells with many flagella (Figure 11.9a) move outward on the edges of the colony and then revert to normal cells with only a few flagella and reduced motility. Periodically, new generations of highly motile swarmer cells develop, and the process is repeated. As a result, a *Proteus* colony has the distinctive appearance of a series of concentric rings (Figure 11.9b). This genus of bacteria is implicated in many infections of the urinary tract and in wounds.

Yersinia *Yersinia pestis* (yer-SIN-ē-ah PES-tis) causes plague, the Black Death of medieval Europe (Chapter 23). Urban rats in some parts of the world and ground squirrels in the American

* The letters derive from the original German usage. Colonies that spread in a thin film over the agar surface were described by the German word for film, *Hauch*. The motility needed to form a film implied the presence of flagella, and the letter H came to be assigned to the antigens of flagella. Clear nonmotile bacteria were described as *ohne Hauch*, without film, and the O came to be assigned to the cell surface or body antigens. An antigen in square brackets may or may not be present. This terminology is also used in the naming of *E. coli* O157:H7, *V. cholerae* O:1, and others.

Southwest carry these bacteria. Fleas usually transmit the organisms among animals and to humans, although contact with respiratory droplets from infected animals and people can be involved in transmission.

Erwinia *Erwinia* (er-WI-nē-ah) species are primarily plant pathogens. These species produce enzymes that hydrolyze the pectin between individual plant cells. This causes the plant cells to separate from each other, a disease that plant pathologists term *soft rot*.

Enterobacter Two *Enterobacter* (en'ter-ō-BAK-ter) species, *E. cloacae* (KLŌ-ā-kī), and *E. aerogenes* (ar-O-jen-ēz), can cause urinary tract infections and healthcare-associated infections. They are widely distributed in humans and animals, as well as in water, sewage, and soil.

Cronobacter The genus *Cronobacter* (krō-nō-BAK-ter) was introduced in 2007, and there are now seven named species. These bacteria are facultatively anaerobic and generally motile. The type species is *Cronobacter sakazakii* (sa-kah-ZAH-kē-ē), which was previously known as *Enterobacter sakazakii*. This organism can cause diarrhea and urinary tract infections. It is widespread in a range of environments and foods. Most cases occur in adults, although life-threatening sepsis and meningitis can occur in infants. Outbreaks have been associated with contaminated infant formulas.

Pasteurellales The bacteria in the order Pasteurellales are nonmotile; they are best known as human and animal pathogens.

Pasteurella The genus *Pasteurella* (pas-tyer-EL-lah) is primarily known as a pathogen of domestic animals. It causes sepsis in cattle, fowl cholera in chickens and other fowl, and pneumonia in several types of animals. The best-known species is *Pasteurella multocida* (mul-tō-SID-ah), which can be transmitted to humans by dog and cat bites.

Haemophilus *Haemophilus* (hē-MAH-fil-us) is a very important genus of pathogenic bacteria. These organisms inhabit the mucous membranes of the upper respiratory tract, mouth, vagina, and intestinal tract. The best-known species that affects humans is *Haemophilus influenzae* (IN-flū-en-zī), named long ago because of the erroneous belief that it was responsible for influenza.

The name *Haemophilus* is derived from the bacteria's requirement for blood (*hemo* = blood) in their culture medium. They are unable to synthesize important parts of the cytochrome system needed for respiration, and they obtain these substances from the heme fraction, known as the **X factor**, of blood hemoglobin. The culture medium must also supply the cofactor nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (from either NAD^+ or $NADP^+$), which is known as **V factor**. Clinical laboratories use tests for the requirement of X and V factors to identify isolates as *Haemophilus* species.

H. influenzae is responsible for several important diseases. It has been a common cause of meningitis in young children and is a frequent cause of earaches. Other clinical conditions caused by *H. influenzae* include epiglottitis (a life-threatening condition in which the epiglottis becomes infected and inflamed), septic arthritis in children, bronchitis, and pneumonia. *Haemophilus ducreyi* (doo-KRĀ-ē) is the cause of the sexually transmitted disease chancroid (Chapter 26).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

11-3 Make a dichotomous key to distinguish the orders of Gammaproteobacteria described in this chapter.

The Deltaproteobacteria

The Deltaproteobacteria are distinctive in that they include some bacteria that are predators on other bacteria. Bacteria in this group are also important contributors to the sulfur cycle.

Bdellovibrio *Bdellovibrio* (del-lō-VIB-rē-ō) is a particularly interesting genus. It attacks other gram-negative bacteria. It attaches tightly (*bdella* = leech; **Figure 11.10**), and after penetrating the cell wall, it reproduces within the periplasm. There, the cell elongates into a tight spiral, which then fragments almost simultaneously into several individual flagellated cells. The host cell then lyses, releasing the *Bdellovibrio* cells.

Desulfovibrionales Members of the order Desulfovibrionales are sulfur-reducing bacteria. They are obligately anaerobic bacteria

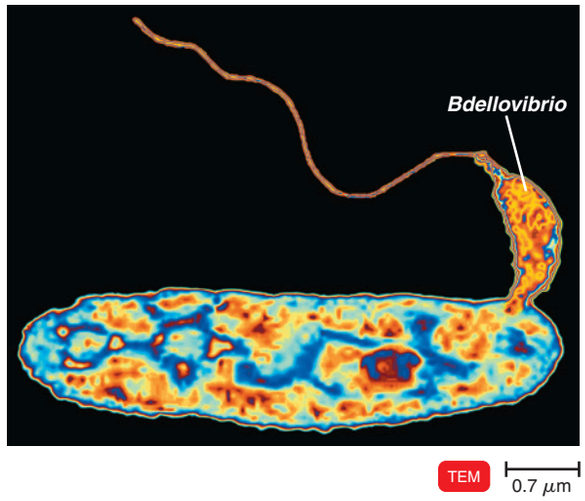


Figure 11.10 Bdellovibrio bacteriovorus. The small orange bacterium is *B. bacteriovorus*. It is attacking a larger bacterial cell.

Q Would this bacterium attack *Staphylococcus aureus*?

that use oxidized forms of sulfur, such as sulfates (SO_4^{2-}) or elemental sulfur (S^0), rather than oxygen as electron acceptors. The product of this reduction is hydrogen sulfide (H_2S). (Because the H_2S is not assimilated as a nutrient, this type of metabolism is termed *dissimilatory*.) The activity of these bacteria releases millions of tons of H_2S into the atmosphere every year and plays a key part in the sulfur cycle (see Figure 27.6). Sulfur-oxidizing bacteria such as *Beggiatoa* are able to use H_2S either as part of photosynthesis or as an autotrophic energy source.

Desulfovibrio (de'sul-fō-VIB-rē-ō), the best-studied sulfur-reducing genus, is found in anaerobic sediments and in the intestinal tracts of humans and animals. Sulfur-reducing and sulfate-reducing bacteria use organic compounds such as lactate, ethanol, or fatty acids as electron donors. This reduces sulfur or sulfate to H_2S. When H_2S reacts with iron, it forms insoluble iron sulfide (FeS), which is responsible for the black color of many sediments.

Myxococcales In earlier editions of *Bergey's Manual*, the Myxococcales were classified among the fruiting and gliding bacteria. They illustrate the most complex life cycle of all bacteria, part of which is predatory upon other bacteria.

Vegetative cells of the myxobacteria (*myxo* = mucus) move by gliding and leave behind a slime trail. *Myxococcus xanthus* (mix'ō-KOK-us ZAN-thus) and *M. fulvus* (FUL-vus) are well-studied representatives of the genus *Myxococcus*. As they move, their source of nutrition is the bacteria they encounter, enzymatically lyse, and digest. Large numbers of these gram-negative microbes eventually aggregate (**Figure 11.11**). Where the moving cells aggregate, they differentiate and form a macroscopic stalked fruiting body that contains large numbers of resting cells called *myxospores*. Differentiation is usually triggered by low nutrients. Under proper conditions, usually a change in nutrients, the myxospores germinate and form new vegetative gliding cells. You might note the resemblance to the life cycle of the eukaryotic cellular slime molds in Figure 12.22.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

11-4 Make a dichotomous key to distinguish the Deltaproteobacteria described in this chapter.

The Campylobacterota

The Campylobacterota are slender gram-negative rods that are helical or curved. We will discuss the two important genera, both of which are motile by means of flagella and are microaerophilic.

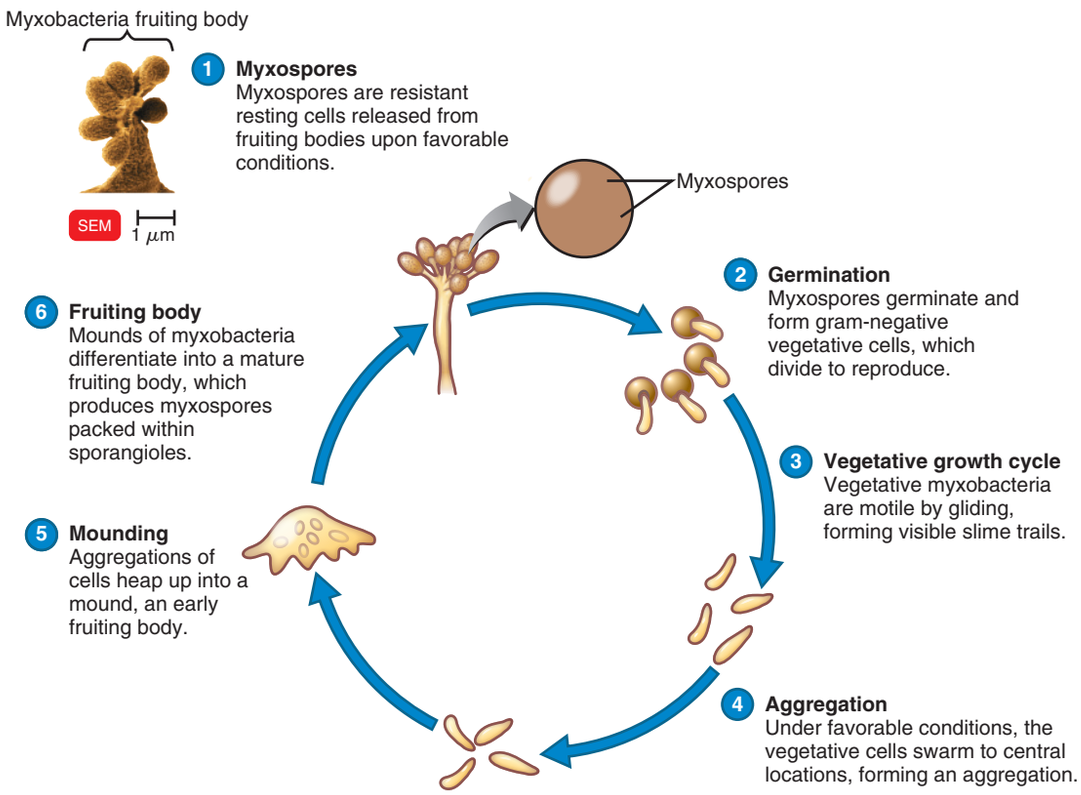


Figure 11.11 **Myxococcales.**

Q What is the feeding stage of this organism?

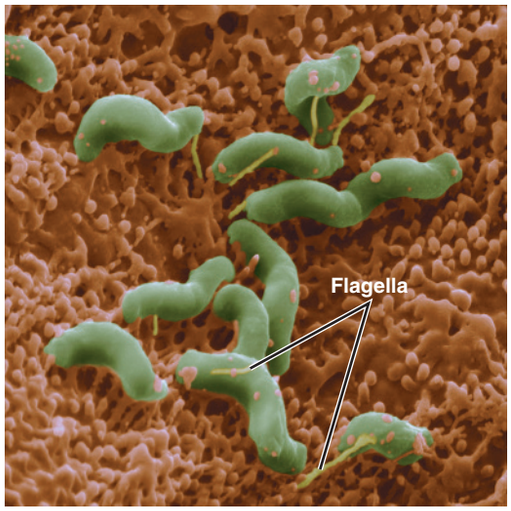


Figure 11.12 ***Helicobacter pylori* on stomach cells.** *H. pylori*, a curved rod, is an example of a helical bacterium that does not make a complete twist.

Q How do helical bacteria differ from spirochetes?

Campylobacter *Campylobacter* (KAM-pi-lō-bak-ter) bacteria are microaerophilic vibrios; each cell has one polar flagellum. One species, *C. fetus* (FĒ-tus), causes spontaneous abortion in domestic animals. Another species, *C. jejuni* (je-JU-nē), is a leading cause of outbreaks of foodborne intestinal disease.

Helicobacter *Helicobacter* bacteria are microaerophilic curved rods with multiple flagella. The species *Helicobacter pylori* (HĒ-lik-ō-bak′ter pī-LOR-ē) has been identified as the most common cause of peptic ulcers in humans and a cause of stomach cancer (Figure 11.12; see also Figure 25.12).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **11-5** Make a dichotomous key to distinguish the Campylobacterota described in this chapter.

The Other Gram-Negative Bacteria

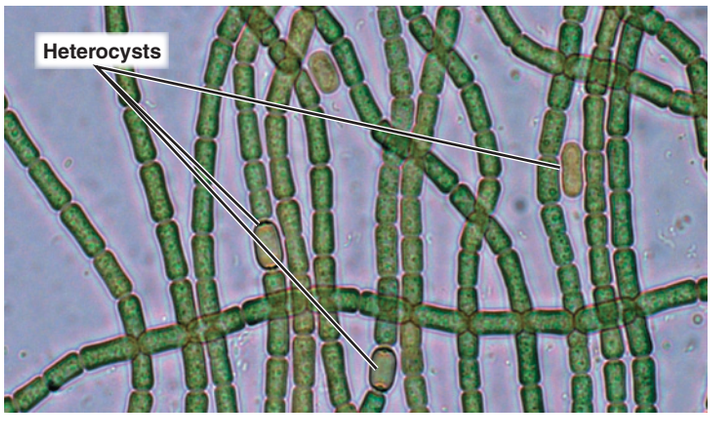
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **11-6** Differentiate planctomycetes, chlamydias, Bacteroidetes, *Cytophaga*, and Fusobacteria by drawing a dichotomous key.
- **11-7** Compare and contrast purple and green photosynthetic bacteria with the cyanobacteria.
- **11-8** Describe the features of spirochetes

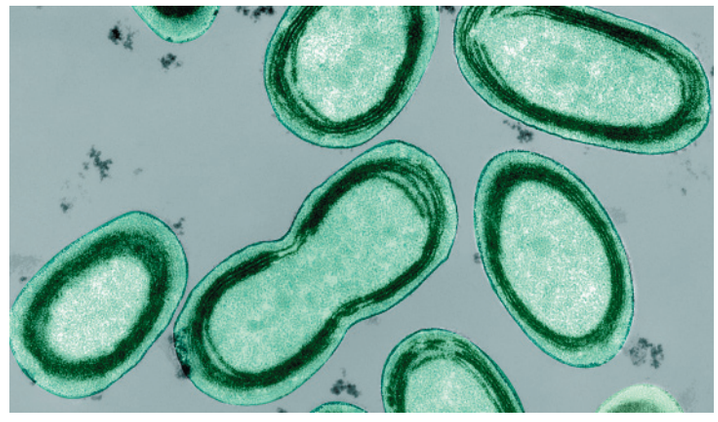
A number of important gram-negative bacteria are not closely related to the gram-negative proteobacteria. These are discussed here.

Cyanobacteria (The Oxygenic Photosynthetic Bacteria)

The cyanobacteria, named for their characteristic blue-green (*cyan*) pigmentation, were once called blue-green algae. Although they resemble the eukaryotic algae and often occupy the same environmental niches, this is a misnomer because they are bacteria. However, cyanobacteria do carry out oxygenic photosynthesis, as do the eukaryotic plants and algae (see Chapter 12). Many of the cyanobacteria are capable of fixing nitrogen from the atmosphere. In most cases, this activity is located in specialized cells called **heterocysts**, which contain enzymes that fix nitrogen gas (N_2) into ammonium (NH_4^+) that can be used by the growing cell (Figure 11.13a). Species that grow in water usually have gas vacuoles that provide buoyancy, helping the cell float at



(a) Filamentous cyanobacterium showing heterocysts, in which nitrogen-fixing activity is located



(b) The unicellular, nonfilamentous cyanobacterium Prochlorococcus may be the world's most abundant photosynthetic organism. *(Electron micrograph courtesy of Claire Ting, Williams College)*

Figure 11.13 **Cyanobacteria.**

Q What does *anoxygenic* mean?

a level that provides a favorable environment. Cyanobacteria that move about on solid surfaces use gliding motility.

Cyanobacteria are morphologically varied. They range from unicellular forms that divide by simple binary fission (Figure 11.13b), to colonial forms that divide by multiple fission, to filamentous forms (see Figure 11.13a) that reproduce by fragmentation of the filaments. The filamentous forms usually exhibit some differentiation of cells that are often bound together within an envelope or sheath.

At less than 1 μm, the cyanobacterium *Prochlorococcus* (prō-KLŌR-ō-kok-kus) is the smallest known photosynthesizer. It is one of the most abundant organisms on Earth, comprising most of the photosynthetic population in tropical and subtropical oceans. *Prochlorococcus* possesses a variety of pigments that enable it to grow as deep as 200 m, where very little oxygen is available. Evidence indicates that oxygenic cyanobacteria played an important part in the development of life on Earth, which originally had very little free oxygen that would support life as we are familiar with it. Fossil evidence indicates that when cyanobacteria first appeared, the atmosphere contained only about 0.1% free oxygen. When oxygen-producing eukaryotic plants appeared millions of years later, the concentration of oxygen was more than 10%, and the atmosphere we breathe today contains about 20%. The increase presumably was a result of photosynthetic activity by cyanobacteria. Cyanobacteria occupy environmental niches similar to those occupied by the eukaryotic algae (see Figure 12.12). The environmental role of cyanobacteria is presented more fully in Chapter 27, in the discussion of eutrophication (the nutritional overenrichment of bodies of water). Several cyanobacteria produce toxins that sicken humans and other animals swimming in water containing large numbers of cyanobacteria. (See the discussions of harmful algal blooms in Chapters 15 and 27.)

The Phyla Chlorobi and Chloroflexi (The Anoxygenic Photosynthetic Bacteria)

The photosynthetic bacteria are taxonomically confusing, but they represent some interesting ecological niches. The phyla Cyanobacteria, Chlorobi, and Chloroflexi are gram-negative, but they are not included in the proteobacteria. Members of the photosynthetic phylum Chlorobi (representative genus: *Chlorobium*) are called **green sulfur bacteria**. Members of the phylum Chloroflexi (representative genus: *Chloroflexus*) are called **green nonsulfur bacteria**. Both these varieties of bacteria produce no oxygen during photosynthesis. The photosynthesizing bacteria are summarized in Table 11.2.

However, there are photosynthetic gram-negative bacteria that *are* genetically included in the proteobacteria. These are the **purple sulfur bacteria** (Gammaproteobacteria) and the **purple nonsulfur bacteria** (Alphaproteobacteria and Betaproteobacteria).

In these bacterial groups, the term *sulfur bacteria* indicates that the microbes can use H_2S as an electron donor (see the equations that follow). If classified as *nonsulfur bacteria*, the microbes have at least a limited capability of phototrophic growth, but without the production of oxygen. Cyanobacteria, as well as eukaryotic plants and algae, produce oxygen (O_2) from water (H_2O) as they carry out photosynthesis:

$$(1)\ 2H_2O + CO_2 \xrightarrow{\text{light}} (CH_2O)_n + H_2O + O_2$$

The *purple sulfur bacteria* and *green sulfur bacteria* use reduced sulfur compounds, such as hydrogen sulfide (H_2S), instead of water, and they produce granules of sulfur (S^0) rather than oxygen, as follows:

$$(2)\ 2H_2S + CO_2 \xrightarrow{\text{light}} (CH_2O)_n + H_2O + 2S^0$$

Chromatium (krō-MĀ-shum), shown in (Figure 11.14), is a representative genus. At one time, an important question in biology concerned the source of the oxygen produced by plant photosynthesis: was it from CO_2 or from H_2O? Until the introduction of radioisotope tracers, which traced the oxygen in water and carbon dioxide and settled the question, comparison of

TABLE 11.2 Selected Characteristics of Photosynthesizing Bacteria

Common Name	Example	Phylum	Comments	Electron Donor for CO_2 Reduction	Oxygenic or Anoxygenic
Cyanobacteria	*Prochlorococcus*	Cyanobacteria	Plantlike photosynthesis; some use bacterial photosynthesis under anaerobic conditions	Usually H_2O	Usually oxygenic
Green nonsulfur bacteria	*Chloroflexus*	Chloroflexota	Grow chemoheterotrophically in aerobic environments	Organic compounds	Anoxygenic
Green sulfur bacteria	*Chlorobium*	Chlorobiota	Deposit sulfur granules inside cells	Usually H_2S	Anoxygenic
Purple nonsulfur bacteria	*Rhodospirillum*	Pseudomonadota	Can grow chemoheterotrophically as well	Organic compounds	Anoxygenic
Purple sulfur bacteria	*Chromatium*	Pseudomonadota	Deposit sulfur granules inside cells	Usually H_2S	Anoxygenic

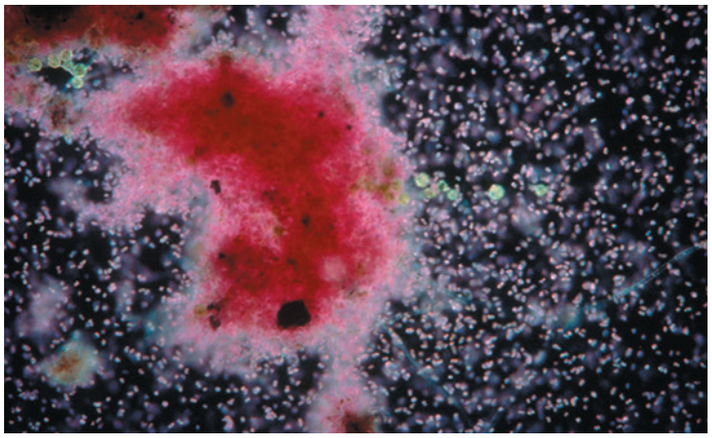


Figure 11.14 Purple sulfur bacteria. The purple color of these *Chromatium* cells is due to carotenoid pigments. These pigments capture light energy and transfer electrons to bacteriochlorophyll.

Q How does the photosynthesis of cyanobacteria differ from that of the purple sulfur bacteria?

equations 1 and 2 was the best evidence that the oxygen source was H_2O. It is also important to compare these two equations to understand how reduced sulfur compounds, such as H_2S, can substitute for H_2O in photosynthesis. See "Life Without Sunshine" in Chapter 27.

Other photoautotrophs, the *purple nonsulfur bacteria* and *green nonsulfur bacteria*, use organic compounds, such as acids and carbohydrates, for the photosynthetic reduction of carbon dioxide. Morphologically, the photosynthetic bacteria are very diverse, with spirals, rods, cocci, and even budding forms.

Chlamydiae

Members of the phylum Chlamydiota are grouped with other genetically similar bacteria that do not contain peptidoglycan in their cell walls. We will discuss only the genus *Chlamydia*. Earlier editions of *Bergey's Manual* grouped these bacteria with the rickettsial bacteria because they all grow intracellularly within host cells. The rickettsias are now classified according to their genetic content with the Alphaproteobacteria.

Chlamydia have a unique developmental cycle that is perhaps their most distinguishing characteristic (**Figure 11.15a**). They are gram-negative coccoid bacteria (Figure 11.15b). The **elementary body** shown in Figure 11.15 is the infective agent. Chlamydias are transmitted to humans by interpersonal contact or by airborne respiratory routes. The chlamydias can be cultivated in laboratory animals, in cell cultures, or in the yolk sac of embryonated chicken eggs.

Three species of the chlamydias are significant pathogens for humans. *Chlamydia trachomatis* (kla-MI-dē-ah tra-KŌ-ma-tis) is the best-known pathogen of the group and is responsible for more than one major disease. These include trachoma, one of the most common causes of blindness in humans in countries with low access to health care (Chapter 21). It is also considered the primary causative agent of both nongonococcal urethritis, which may be the most common sexually transmitted infection (STI) in the United States, and lymphogranuloma venereum, another STI (Chapter 26). *C. psittaci* (SIT-tah-sē) is the causative agent of the respiratory disease psittacosis (ornithosis) (Chapter 24). *C. pneumoniae* (noo-MŌ-nē-ī) is the cause of a mild form of pneumonia that is especially prevalent in young adults.

Planctomycetes

The planctomycetes, a group of gram-negative, budding bacteria, are said to "blur the definition of what bacteria are." Although their DNA places them among the bacteria, they resemble the archaea in the makeup of their cell walls, and some even have organelles that resemble the nucleus of a eukaryotic cell. The members of the genus *Planctomyces* are aquatic bacteria that produce stalks resembling *Caulobacter* (Figure 11.2) and have cell walls similar to those of the archaea, that is, without peptidoglycan.

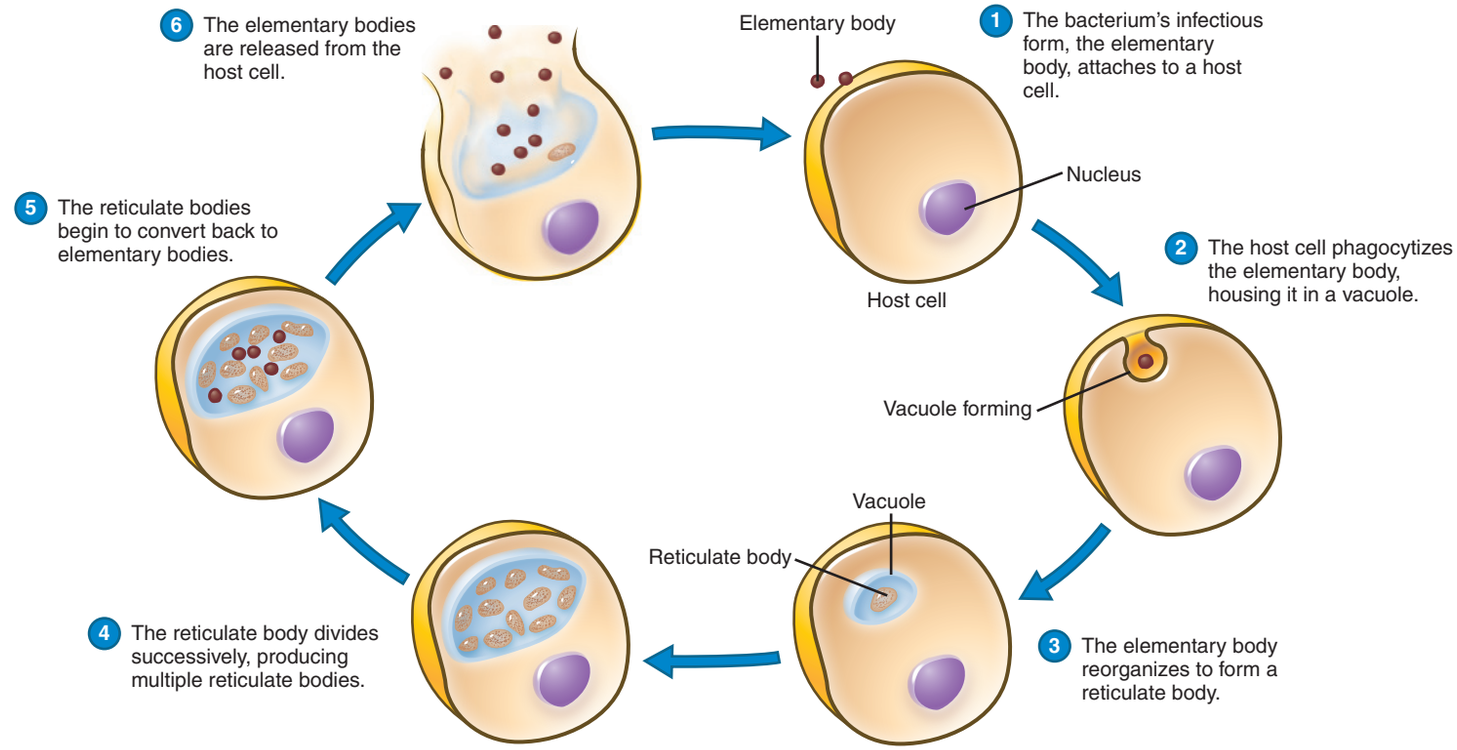
One species of planctomycetes, *Gemmata obscuriglobus* (JEM-mah-tah OB-scyer-i-glō'bus), has a double internal membrane around its DNA, resembling a eukaryotic nucleus (**Figure 11.16**). Biologists wonder whether this might make *Gemmata* a model for the origin of the eukaryotic nucleus.

Bacteroidota

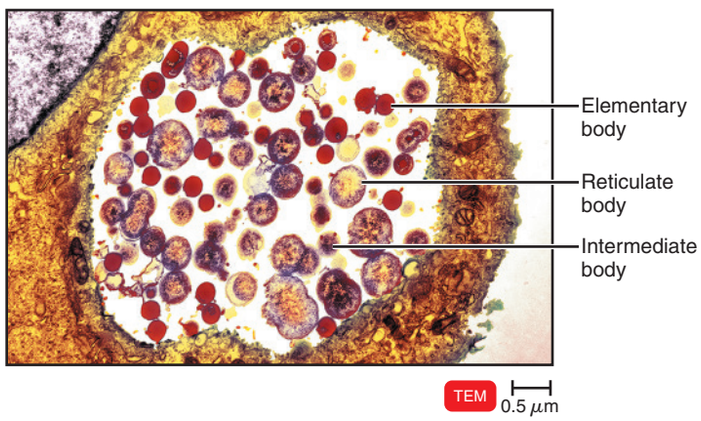
The phylum Bacteroidota includes several genera of aerobic or anaerobic bacteria. Bacteroidetes are common members of the human microbiome, especially the digestive canal. The genus *Prevotella* is found in the human mouth, and the genus *Elizabethkingia* is an emerging cause of healthcare-associated infections.

Bacteroides Bacteria of the genus *Bacteroides* (bak-ter-OI-dēz) live in the human intestinal tract in numbers approaching 1 billion per gram of feces. Some *Bacteroides* species also reside in anaerobic habitats such as the gingival crevice of the gums (see Figure 25.2) and are also frequently recovered from deep-tissue infections. *Bacteroides* bacteria are gram-negative, are nonmotile, and do not form endospores. Infections caused by *Bacteroides* often result from puncture wounds or surgery. *Bacteroides* are a frequent cause of peritonitis, an inflammation of the peritoneum resulting from a perforated bowel.

Cytophaga Members of the genus *Cytophaga* (sī-TO-fa-gah) are important in the degradation of cellulose and chitin, which are both abundant in soil. Gliding motility places the microbe in close contact with these substrates, resulting in very efficient enzymatic action.



(a) Life cycle of the chlamydias, which takes about 48 hours to complete



(b) Micrograph of *Chlamydia psittaci* in the cytoplasm of a host cell. The **elementary bodies** are the infectious stage; they are dense, dark, and relatively small. **Reticulate bodies,** the form in which chlamydias reproduce within the host cell, are larger with a speckled appearance. **Intermediate bodies,** a stage between the two, have a dark center.

Figure 11.15 Chlamydias.

Q Which stage of the life cycle is infectious to humans?

Fusobacteria

The fusiform bacteria comprise another phylum of anaerobes. These bacteria are often pleomorphic but, as their name suggests, may be spindle-shaped (*fuso* = spindle). Members of the genus *Fusobacterium* (fu′-so-bak-TI-rē-um) are long, slender, gram-negative rods with pointed rather than blunt ends (Figure 11.17). In humans, they are found most often in the gingival crevice of the gums and may be responsible for some dental abscesses.

Spirochaetes

The spirochetes have a coiled morphology, resembling a metal spring; some are more tightly coiled than others. The most distinctive characteristic of this phylum, however, is the cells' method of motility, which makes use of two or more axial filaments (or *endoflagella*) enclosed in the space between an outer sheath and the body of the cell. One end of each axial filament is attached near one of the cell's poles (see Figure 4.10 and Figure 11.18). By rotating its axial filament, the cell rotates in the opposite direction, like a corkscrew, which is very efficient in moving the organism through liquids. For bacteria, this is more difficult than it might seem. At the scale of a bacterium, water is as viscous as molasses is to a human. However, a bacterium can typically move about 100 times its body length in a second (or about 50 μm/sec); by comparison, a large, fast fish, such as a tuna, can move only about 10 times its body length in this time.

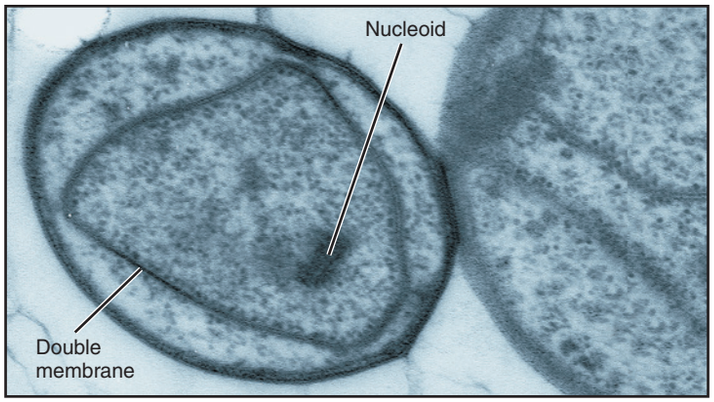


Figure 11.16 ***Gemmata obscuriglobus.*** This planctomycete exhibits a double membrane surrounding its nucleoid, which resembles a eukaryotic nucleus.

Q Can you see a resemblance between the double membrane around the nucleoid in this photo and the membrane around the nuclear envelope shown in Figure 4.24?

Many spirochetes are found in the human oral cavity and are probably among the first microorganisms described by van Leeuwenhoek in the 1600s. An extraordinary location for spirochetes is on the surfaces of some of the cellulose-digesting protozoa found in termites, where they may function as substitutes for flagella.

Treponema The spirochetes include a number of important pathogenic bacteria. The best known is the genus *Treponema* (trep-ō-NĒ-mah), which includes *Treponema pallidum* (PAL-li-dum), the cause of syphilis (Chapter 26).

Figure 11.17 ***Fusobacterium.*** This is a common anaerobic rod found in the human intestine. Notice the characteristic pointed ends.

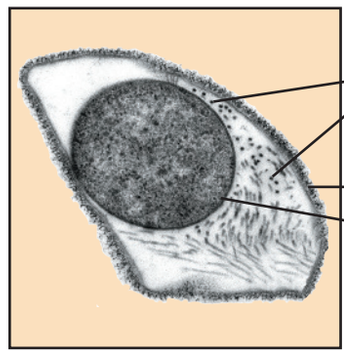
Q In what other place in the human body do you often find *Fusobacterium*?

Borrelia and Borreliella Members of the genus *Borrelia* (bor-RĒ-lē-ah) cause relapsing fever and Lyme disease and *Borreliella* spp. cause Lyme disease (Chapter 23), serious diseases that are usually transmitted by ticks or lice.

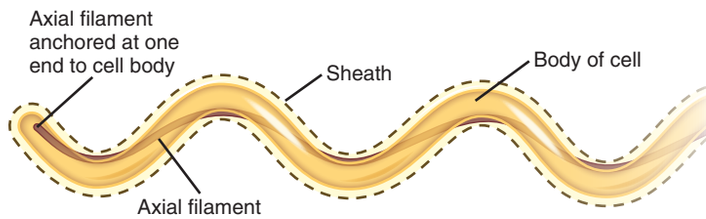
Leptospira Leptospirosis is a disease usually spread to humans by water contaminated by *Leptospira* (lep-tō-SPĪ-rah) species (Chapter 26). The bacteria are excreted in the urine of dogs, rats, and swine, so domestic dogs and cats are routinely immunized against leptospirosis. The tightly coiled cells of *Leptospira* are shown in Figure 26.4.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **11-6** Which gram-negative group has a life cycle that includes different stages?
- **11-7** Both the purple and green photosynthetic bacteria and the photosynthetic cyanobacteria use plantlike CO_2 fixation to make carbohydrates. In what way does the photosynthesis carried out by these two groups differ from plant photosynthesis?
- **11-8** The axial filament distinguishes what genera of bacteria?



(a) This cross section of a spirochete shows numerous axial filaments between the dark cell and the outer sheath.



(b) The end of an axial filament (endoflagellum) is attached to the cell and extends through most of the length of the cell. Another axial filament is attached to the opposite end of the cell. These axial filaments do not extend away from the cell but remain between the body of the cell and the external sheath. Their contractions and relaxations cause the helical cell to rotate in a corkscrew fashion.

Figure 11.18 Spirochetes. Spirochetes are helical and have axial filaments under an outer sheath that enables them to move by a corkscrew-like rotation.

Q How does a spirochete's motility differ from that of *Spirillum* (see Figure 11.4)?

The Gram-Positive Bacteria

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

11-9 Differentiate the genera of Bacillota, Mycoplasmatota, and Deinococcota described in this chapter by drawing a dichotomous key.

11-10 Differentiate the genera actinobacteria described in this chapter by drawing a dichotomous key.

The gram-positive bacteria can be divided into two groups: those that have a high G + C ratio, and those that have a low G + C ratio (guanine plus cytosine; see "Nucleic Acids," in Chapter 2). To illustrate the variations in G + C ratio, the genus *Streptococcus* has a low G + C content of 33 to 44%, and the genus *Clostridium* has a low content of 21 to 54%. Included with the gram-positive, low G + C bacteria are the mycoplasmas, even though they lack a cell wall and therefore do not have a Gram reaction. Their G + C ratio is 23 to 40%.

By contrast, filamentous actinomycetes of the genus *Streptomyces* have a high G + C content of 69 to 73%. Gram-positive bacteria of a more conventional morphology, such as the genera *Corynebacterium* and *Mycobacterium*, have a G + C content of 51 to 63% and 62 to 70%, respectively.

Bacillota (Low G + C Gram-Positive Bacteria)

Low G + C gram-positive bacteria are assigned to the phylum Bacillota. This group includes important endospore-forming bacteria such as the genera *Clostridium*, *Clostridioides*, and *Bacillus*. Also of extreme importance in medical microbiology are the genera *Staphylococcus*, *Enterococcus*, and *Streptococcus*. In industrial microbiology, the genus *Lactobacillus*, which produces lactic acid, is well known.

Clostridiales

Clostridium Members of the genus *Clostridium* (klo-STRID-ē-um) are obligate anaerobes. The rod-shaped cells contain endospores that usually distend the cell (**Figure 11.19**). The formation of endospores by bacteria is important to both medicine and the food industry because of the endospore's resistance to heat and many chemicals. Diseases associated with clostridia include tetanus (Chapter 22), caused by *C. tetani* (TE-tan-ē); botulism (Chapter 22), caused by *C. botulinum* (bo-tū-LI-num); and gas gangrene (Chapter 23), caused by *C. perfringens* (per-FRIN-jenz) and other clostridia. *C. perfringens* is also the cause of a common form of foodborne diarrhea.

Clostridioides In 2015, one important clostridial species was reclassified to a new genus, *Clostridioides*, because it is genetically distinct from the other clostridia. *Clostridioides difficile* (DIF-fi-sē-il), commonly known as "C. diff," is an inhabitant of the intestinal tract that can cause a serious diarrhea (Chapter 25). This occurs only when antibiotic therapy alters the normal intestinal microbiota, allowing overgrowth by toxin-producing *C. difficile*.

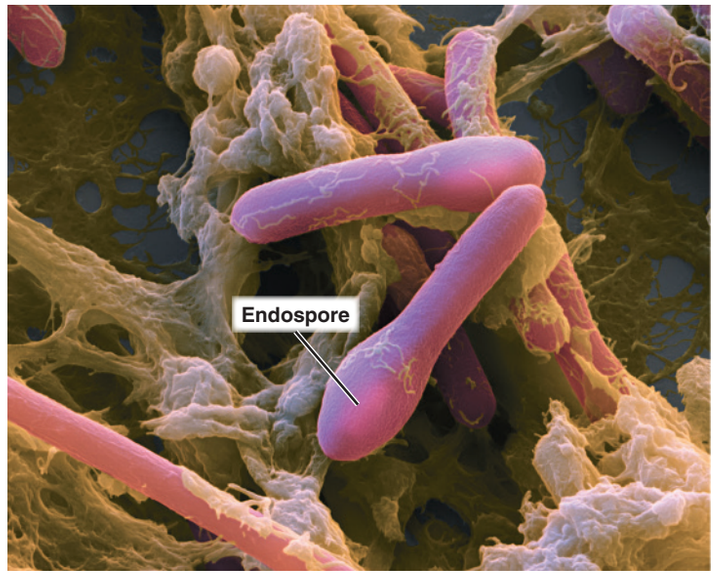


Figure 11.19 ***Clostridium botulinum.*** The endospores of clostridia usually distend the cell wall, as seen in some of these cells.

Q What physiological characteristic of *Clostridium* makes it a problem in contamination of deep wounds?

Epulopiscium Biologists have long considered bacteria to be small by necessity because they lack the nutrient transport systems used by eukaryotic organisms and because they depend on simple diffusion to obtain nutrients. These characteristics would seem to critically limit size. So, when a cigar-shaped organism living symbiotically in the gut of the Red Sea surgeonfish was first observed in 1985, it was assumed to be a protozoan. Certainly, its size suggested this: the organism was as large as 80 μm × 600 μm—over half a millimeter in length—large enough to be seen with the unaided eye (**Figure 11.20**). Compared to the familiar bacterium *E. coli*, which is about 1 μm × 2 μm, this organism would be about a million times larger in volume.

Further investigation of the new organism showed that certain external structures thought to resemble the cilia of protozoa were actually similar to bacterial flagella, and it didn't have a membrane-enclosed nucleus. Ribosomal RNA analysis conclusively placed *Epulopiscium* (ep'ū-lō-PIS-sē-um) with the prokaryotes. (The name means "guest at the banquet of a fish." It is literally bathed in semidigested food.) It most closely resembles gram-positive bacteria of the genus *Clostridium*. Strangely, the species *Epulopiscium fishelsoni* (fish-el-SŌ-ne) doesn't reproduce by binary fission. Second-generation cells are formed within the cell and released through a slit opening in the parent cell. This may be related to the evolutionary development of sporulation.

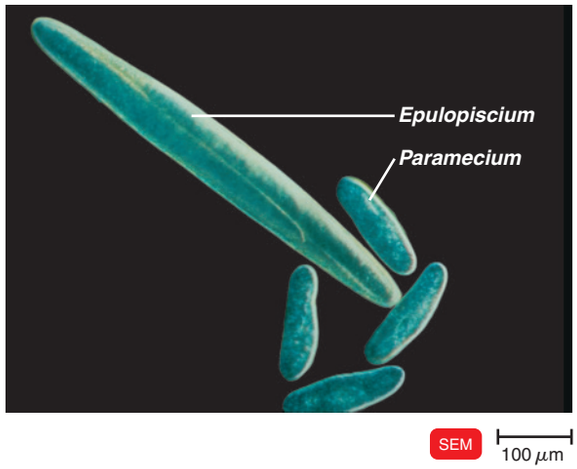


Figure 11.20 A giant prokaryote, *Epulopiscium* sp. *Paramecium*, a protozoan, is shown for comparison. Protozoa are normally larger than bacterial cells.

Q Why is *Epulopiscium* not in the same domain as *Paramecium*?

Recently it was discovered that this bacterium does not rely on diffusion to distribute nutrients within the cell. Instead, it makes use of its larger genetic capacity—it has 25 times as much DNA as a human cell and as many as 85,000 copies of at least one gene—to manufacture proteins at internal sites where they are needed. (We describe another, more recently discovered, giant bacterium, *Thiomargarita*, later in this chapter. See Figure 11.28.)

Bacillales

The order Bacillales includes several important genera of gram-positive rods and cocci.

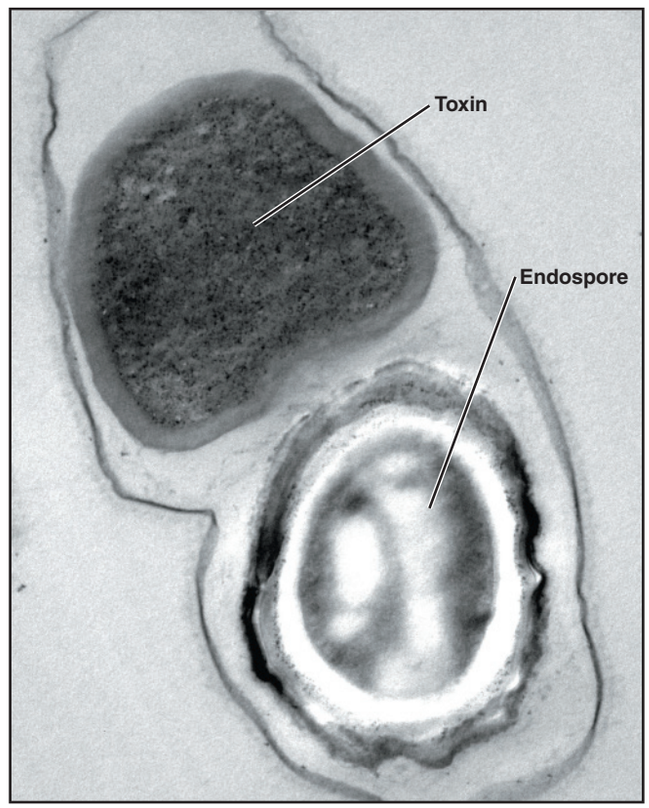
Bacillus Bacteria of the genus *Bacillus* are typically rods that produce endospores. They are common in soil, and only a few are pathogenic to humans. Several species produce antibiotics.

Bacillus anthracis (bah-SIL-lus an-THRĀ-sis) causes anthrax, a disease of cattle, sheep, and horses that can be transmitted to humans (Chapter 23). It's often mentioned as a possible agent of biological warfare. The anthrax bacillus is a nonmotile facultative anaerobe, often forming chains in culture. The centrally located endospore does not distend the walls. *Bacillus thuringiensis* (ther-IN-jē-en-sis) is probably the best-known microbial insect pathogen (Figure 11.21). It produces intracellular crystals when it sporulates. Commercial preparations containing endospores and crystalline toxin (Bt) of this bacterium are sold in gardening supply shops to be sprayed on plants. *Bacillus cereus* (SEER-ē-us) is a common bacterium in the environment and occasionally is identified as a cause of food poisoning, especially in starchy foods such as rice (Chapter 25).

The three species of the genus *Bacillus* that we have just described are dramatically different in important ways, especially their disease-causing properties. However, they are so closely related that taxonomists consider them to be variants of a single species.

Staphylococcus Staphylococci typically occur in grapelike clusters (Figure 11.22). The most important staphylococcal species is *S. aureus* (STAF-i-lō-kok'kus OR-ē-us), which is named for its yellow-pigmented colonies (*aureus* = golden). Members of this species are facultative anaerobes.

Some characteristics of the staphylococci account for their pathogenicity, which takes many forms. They grow comparatively well under conditions of high osmotic pressure and low moisture, which partially explains why they can grow and survive in nasal secretions (many of us carry the bacteria in our nostrils) and on the skin. This also explains how *S. aureus* can grow in some foods with high osmotic pressure (such as ham and other cured meats) or in low-moisture foods that tend to inhibit the growth of other organisms. The yellow pigment probably confers some protection from the antimicrobial effects of sunlight. The wide variety of diseases caused by *S. aureus* are described in Part Four of this textbook.



Bacillus thuringiensis. The protein shown next to the endospore, called a parasporal body, is toxic to an insect that ingests it.

Figure 11.21 *Bacillus*.

Q What structure is made by both *Clostridium* and *Bacillus*?

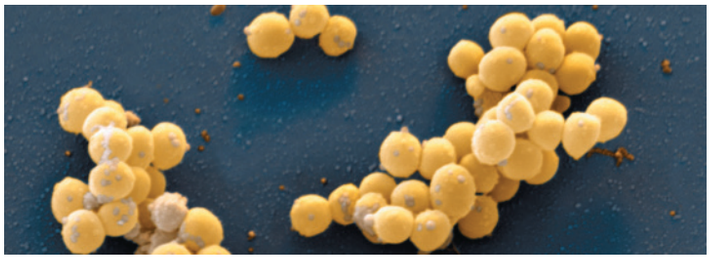


Figure 11.22 ***Staphylococcus aureus.*** Notice the grapelike clusters of these gram-positive cocci.

Q What is an environmental advantage of a pigment?

Lactobacillales

Several important genera are found in the order Lactobacillales. The genera *Enterococcus* and *Listeria* are more conventional metabolically. Both are facultative anaerobes, and several species are important pathogens.

Lactobacillus The genus *Lactobacillus* is a representative of the industrially important lactic acid–producing bacteria. Most lack a cytochrome system and are unable to use oxygen as an electron acceptor. Unlike most obligate anaerobes, though, they are aerotolerant and capable of growth in the presence of oxygen. They grow poorly compared to oxygen-utilizing microbes. However, the production of lactic acid from simple carbohydrates inhibits the growth of competing organisms and allows them to grow competitively despite their inefficient metabolism. In humans, bacteria of the genus *Lactobacillus* (lak'tō-bah-SIL-lus) are located in the vagina, intestinal tract, and oral cavity. Lactobacilli are used commercially in the production of sauerkraut, pickles, soy sauce, and yogurt. Typically, a succession of lactobacilli, each more acid tolerant than its predecessor, participates in these lactic acid fermentations.

Streptococcus The genus *Streptococcus* (strep'tō-KOK-kus) shares the metabolic characteristics of the genus *Lactobacillus*. Members of this genus are spherical, gram-positive bacteria that typically appear in chains (**Figure 11.23**). They are a taxonomically complex group that includes several industrially important species; however, the streptococci are best known for their pathogenicity. They are probably responsible for more illnesses and a greater variety of diseases than any other group of bacteria.

Pathogenic streptococci produce several extracellular substances that contribute to their pathogenicity. Among them are products that destroy phagocytic cells that ingest them. Enzymes produced by some streptococci spread infections by digesting the host's connective tissue, which may also result in extensive tissue destruction. (See the discussion of necrotizing fasciitis in Chapter 21.) Also, bacterial enzymes digest the fibrin (a threadlike protein) of blood clots, allowing infections to spread from the sites of injury.

A few nonpathogenic species of streptococci are important in the production of dairy products (see Chapter 28).

Beta-hemolytic streptococci A useful basis for classifying some streptococci is their colonial appearance when grown on blood agar. The *beta-hemolytic* species produce a hemolysin that forms a clear zone of hemolysis on blood agar (see Figure 6.10). This group includes the principal pathogen of the streptococci, *Streptococcus pyogenes* (pī-AH-jen-ēz), also known as the beta-hemolytic group A streptococcus. Group A represents one of an antigenic group (A through G) within the hemolytic streptococci. Among the diseases caused by *S. pyogenes* are scarlet fever, pharyngitis (sore throat), erysipelas, impetigo, and rheumatic fever. The most important virulence factor is the M protein on the bacterial surface (see Figure 21.6) by which the bacteria avoid phagocytosis. Another member of the beta-hemolytic streptococci is *Streptococcus agalactiae* (ā-gal-AK-tē-ī), in the beta-hemolytic group B. It is the only species with the group B antigen and is the cause of an important disease of the newborn, neonatal sepsis (Chapter 23).

Alpha-hemolytic streptococci Certain streptococci are not beta-hemolytic, but when grown on blood agar, their colonies are surrounded by a distinctive greening. These are the *alpha-hemolytic* streptococci. The greening represents a partial destruction of the red blood cells caused mostly by the action

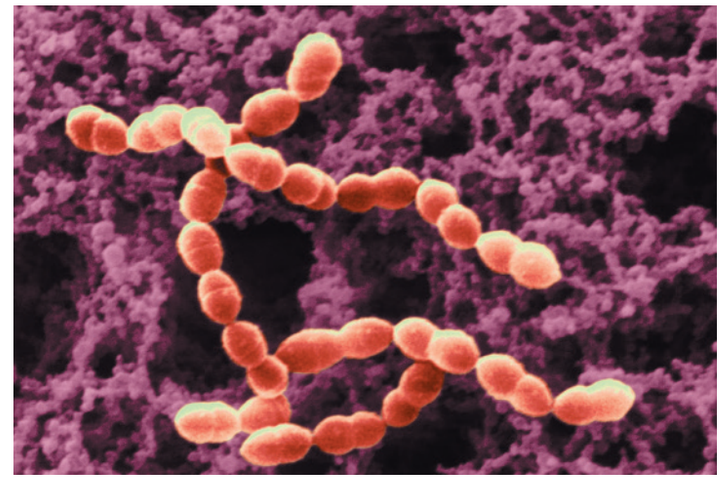


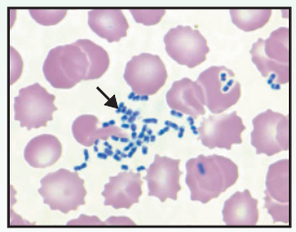
Figure 11.23 **Streptococcus.** Notice the chains of cells characteristic of most streptococci. Many of the spherical cells are dividing and are somewhat oval in appearance—especially when viewed with a light microscope, which has lower magnification than this electron micrograph.

Q How does the arrangement of *Streptococcus* differ from *Staphylococcus*?

of bacteria-produced hydrogen peroxide, but it appears only when the bacteria grow in the presence of oxygen. The most important pathogen in this group is *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, the cause of pneumococcal pneumonia (Chapter 24). Also included among the alpha-hemolytic streptococci are species of streptococci called *viridans streptococci*. However, not all species form the alpha-hemolytic greening (*virescent* = green), so this isn't really a satisfactory group name. Probably the most significant pathogen of the group is *Streptococcus mutans* (MŪ-tanz), the primary cause of dental caries (Chapter 25).

CLINICAL CASE

Two species of bacteria that can cause bacterial meningitis are *Neisseria meningitidis* and *S. pneumoniae*. Dr. Walker then requests that the lab perform a Gram stain of Mercy's CSF and venous blood. Following is the Gram stain of Mercy's venous blood.



What do you see that would cause you to modify your list of possible causes?

Part 1 | **Part 2** | Part 3 | Part 4 | Part 5

Enterococcus and Listeria The genera *Enterococcus* and *Listeria* are more conventional metabolically. Both are facultative anaerobes, and several species are important pathogens.

The enterococci are adapted to areas of the body that are rich in nutrients but low in oxygen, such as the intestines, vagina, and oral cavity. They are found in large numbers in human stool. Because they are relatively hardy microbes, they persist as contaminants in a hospital environment, on hands, bedding, and even as a fecal aerosol. In recent years they have become a leading cause of healthcare-associated infections, especially because of their high resistance to most antibiotics. Two species, *Enterococcus faecalis* (en'ter-ō-KOK-kus fē-KĀ-lis) and *Enterococcus faecium* (FĒ-sē-um), are responsible for much of the infections of surgical wounds and the urinary tract. In medical settings they frequently enter the bloodstream through invasive procedures, such as indwelling catheters (see Chapter 14).

The pathogenic species of the genus *Listeria*, *Listeria monocytogenes* (lis-TEER-ē-ah mon'ō-sī-TO-je-nēz), can contaminate food, especially dairy products. Important characteristics of *L. monocytogenes* are that it survives within phagocytic cells and is capable of growth at refrigeration temperatures. If infection occurs during pregnancy, the organism poses the threat of stillbirth or serious damage to the fetus.

Mycoplasmatota (Low G + C Gram-Positive Bacteria)

The Mycoplasmatota phylum includes wall-less bacteria called mycoplasmas. Once grouped with the Bacillota because of their low G + C content, mycoplasmas are now in their own phylum, Mycoplasmatota. The mycoplasmas are highly pleomorphic because they lack a cell wall (**Figure 11.24**) and can produce filaments that resemble fungi, hence their name (*mykes* = fungus, and *plasma* = formed).

Cells of the genus *Mycoplasma* (mī-kō-PLAZ-mah) are very small, ranging in size from 0.1 to 0.25 μm, with a cell volume that is only about 5% of that of a typical bacillus. Because

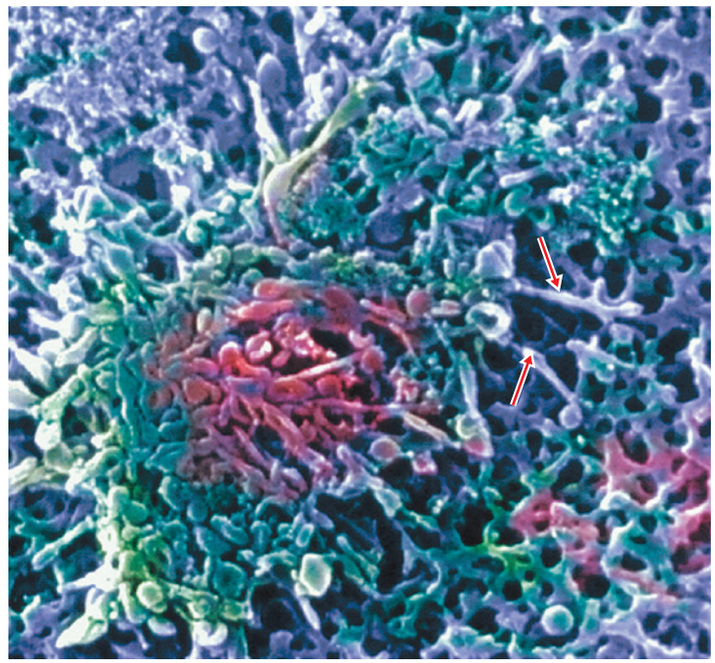


Figure 11.24 ***Mycoplasma pneumoniae.*** This micrograph shows the filamentous growth of *M. pneumoniae*. This bacterium does not have a cell wall; the cell membrane is the outermost layer. The cells are so small that they cannot be examined by light microscopy. Individual cells (arrows) have extensions at each end that probably aid in gliding motility and in attachment to the host cells. This species depends on the host for survival, and they do not survive as free-living organisms.

Q How can the cell structure of mycoplasmas account for their pleomorphism?

their size and plasticity allowed them to pass through filters that retained bacteria, they were originally considered viruses. Mycoplasmas may represent the smallest self-replicating organisms that are capable of a free-living existence. One species has only 517 genes; the minimum necessary is between 265 and 350. Studies of their DNA suggest that they are genetically related to the gram-positive Lactobacillales but have gradually lost genetic material. The term *degenerative evolution* has been used to describe this process.

The most significant human pathogen among the mycoplasmas is *M. pneumoniae* (noo-MŌ-nē-ī), which is the cause of a common form of mild pneumonia.

Mycoplasmas can be grown on artificial media that provide them with sterols (if necessary) and other special nutritional or physical requirements. Colonies are less than 1 mm in diameter and have a characteristic "fried egg" appearance when viewed under magnification (see Figure 24.12). For many purposes, cell culture methods are often more satisfactory. In fact, mycoplasmas grow so well by this method that they are a frequent contamination problem in cell culture laboratories.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

11-9 To which genus is *Enterococcus* more closely related: *Staphylococcus* or *Lactobacillus*?

Actinomycetota (High G + C Gram-Positive Bacteria)

High G + C gram-positive bacteria are in the phylum Actinomycetota. Many bacteria in this phylum are highly pleomorphic in their morphology; the genera *Corynebacterium* and *Gardnerella*, for example, and several genera such as *Streptomyces* grow only as extended, often-branching filaments. Several important pathogenic genera are found in the Actinomycetota, such as the *Mycobacterium* species causing tuberculosis and leprosy. The genera *Streptomyces*, *Frankia*, *Actinomyces*, and *Nocardia* are often informally called actinomycetes (from the Greek *actino* = ray) because they have a radiate, or starlike, form of growth by reason of their often-branching filaments. Superficially, their morphology resembles that of filamentous fungi; however, the actinomycetes are prokaryotic cells, and their filaments have a diameter much smaller than that of the eukaryotic molds. Some actinomycetes further resemble molds by their possession of externally carried asexual spores that are used for reproduction. Filamentous bacteria, like filamentous fungi, are very common inhabitants in soil, where a filamentous pattern of growth has advantages. The filamentous organism can bridge water-free gaps between soil particles to move to a new nutritional site. This morphology also gives the organism a much higher surface-to-volume ratio and improves its ability to absorb nutrients in the highly competitive soil environment.

Mycobacterium The mycobacteria are aerobic, non–endospore-forming rods. The name *myco*, meaning funguslike, was derived from their occasional exhibition of filamentous growth (see Figure 24.7). Many of the characteristics of mycobacteria, such as acid-fast staining, drug resistance, and pathogenicity, are related to their distinctive cell wall. The mycobacterial cell wall has a thick peptidoglycan layer like gram-positive cells and an outer lipid layer resembling a gram-negative wall (see Figure 4.13d). However, the outermost lipopolysaccharide layer in mycobacteria is replaced by mycolic acids, which form a waxy, water-resistant layer. This makes the bacteria resistant to stresses such as drying. Also, few antimicrobial drugs are able to enter the cell. Nutrients enter the cell through this layer very slowly, which is a factor in the slow growth rate of mycobacteria; it sometimes takes weeks for visible colonies to appear. The mycobacteria include the important pathogens *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (mī'kō-bak-TI-rē-um too'ber-kū-LŌ-sis), which causes tuberculosis (Chapter 24), and *M. leprae* (LEP-rī), which causes leprosy (Chapter 22).

The mycobacteria are generally separated into two groups: (1) the slow growers, such as *M. tuberculosis*, and (2) the fast, or rapid, growers, which form visible colonies on appropriate media within 7 days. (See the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 5.) The slow-growing mycobacteria are more likely to be pathogenic to humans. The rapidly growing group also contains a number of occasional, nontuberculous human pathogens, which most commonly infect wounds. However, these mycobacteria are more likely to be nonpathogenic soil and water microbes.

Nocardia The genus *Nocardia* (nō-KAR-dē-ah) morphologically resembles *Actinomyces*; however, these bacteria are aerobic. To reproduce, they form rudimentary filaments, which fragment into short rods. The structure of their cell wall resembles that of the mycobacteria; therefore, they are often acid-fast. *Nocardia* species are common in soil. Some species, such as *Nocardia asteroides* (AS-teroid-ēz), occasionally cause a chronic, difficult-to-treat pulmonary infection. *N. asteroides* is also one of the causative agents of mycetoma, a localized destructive infection of the feet or hands.

Corynebacterium The corynebacteria (*coryne* = club-shaped) tend to be pleomorphic, and their morphology often varies with the age of the cells. The best-known species is *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* (kor'ī-nē-bak-TI-rē-um dif-THI-rē-ī), the causative agent of diphtheria (Chapter 24).

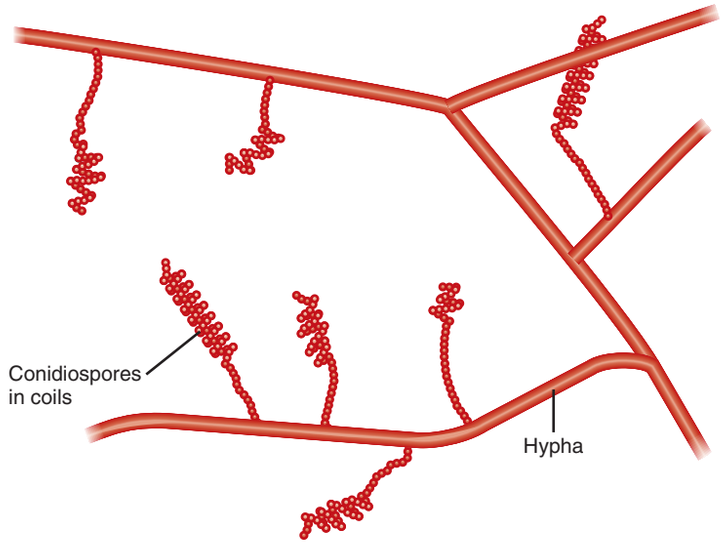
Propionibacterium The name of the genus *Propionibacterium* (pro-pē'on-ē-bak-TI-rē-um) is derived from the organism's ability to form propionic acid; some species are important in the fermentation of Swiss cheese. The propionibacteria found on the skin are now in the genus *Cutibacterium* (kyu-tē-bak-TI-rē-um). *C. acnes* (AK-nēz) bacteria are commonly found on human skin and are implicated as the primary bacterial cause of acne.

CLINICAL CASE

The Gram stain of Mercy's venous blood shows gram-positive cocci among the red blood cells. Needing to identify the species of bacteria that is causing Mercy's meningitis, the lab then cultures the cocci on blood agar. See following for the results.

Based on this new information, what bacteria are responsible for Mercy's meningitis? (Hint: See Figure 6.10.)

Part 1 | Part 2 | **Part 3** | Part 4 | Part 5



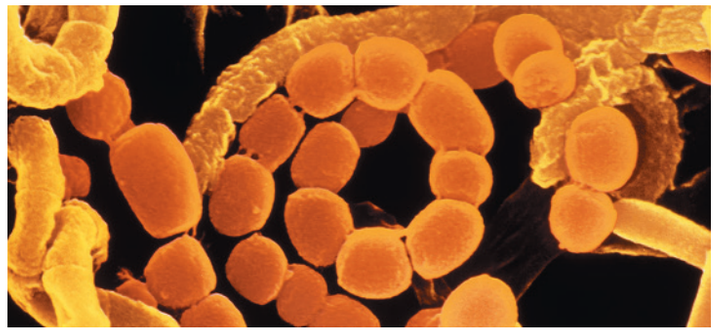
(a) Drawing of a typical streptomycete showing filamentous, branching hyphae with asexual reproductive conidiospores at the filament tips

Gardnerella *Gardnerella vaginalis* (gard-ne-REL-lah vaj-i-NA-lis) is a bacterium that causes one of the most common forms of vaginitis (Chapter 26). There has always been some difficulty in assigning a taxonomic position in this species, which is gram-variable and exhibits a highly pleomorphic morphology.

Frankia The genus *Frankia* (FRANK-ē-ah) causes nitrogen-fixing nodules to form in alder tree roots, much as rhizobia cause nodules on the roots of legumes (see Figure 27.5).

Streptomyces The genus *Streptomyces* (strep'tō-MĪ-sēs) is the best known of the actinomycetes and is one of the bacteria most commonly isolated from soil (**Figure 11.25**). The reproductive asexual spores of *Streptomyces* are formed at the ends of aerial filaments. If each spore lands on a suitable substrate, it is capable of germinating into a new colony. These organisms are strict aerobes. They often produce extracellular enzymes that enable them to utilize proteins, polysaccharides (such as starch and cellulose), and many other organic materials found in soil. *Streptomyces* bacteria characteristically produce a gaseous compound called *geosmin*, which gives fresh soil its typical musty odor. Species of *Streptomyces* are valuable because they produce most of our commercial antibiotics (see Table 20.1). This has led to intensive study of the genus—there are nearly 500 described species.

Actinomyces The genus *Actinomyces* (ak-tin-ō-MĪ-sēs) consists of facultative anaerobes that are found in the mouth and throat of humans and animals. They occasionally form filaments called *hyphae* that can fragment (**Figure 11.26**). One species, *Actinomyces israelii* (is-RĀ-lē-ē), causes actinomycosis, a tissue-destroying disease usually affecting the head, neck, or lungs.



(b) Cells of *Actinomyces* often have bulbous ends (dark purple)

Figure 11.25 ***Streptomyces.***

Q **Why is *Streptomyces* not classified with fungi?**

Deinococcota (High G + C Gram-Positive Bacteria)

The Deinococcota phylum includes two species that have been widely studied because of their resistance to extremes in the environment. They stain gram-positive but have a cell wall that differs slightly in chemical structure from those of other gram-positives.

Deinococcus radiodurans (dī-NŌ-kok-kus RĀ-dē-ō-der-anz) is exceptionally resistant to radiation, even more so than endospores. It can survive exposure to radiation doses as high as 15,000 Grays (see Chapter 28), which is 1500 times the radiation dosage that would kill a human. The mechanism for this extraordinary resistance lies in a unique arrangement of its DNA that facilitates rapid repair of radiation damage. It is similarly resistant to many mutagenic chemicals.

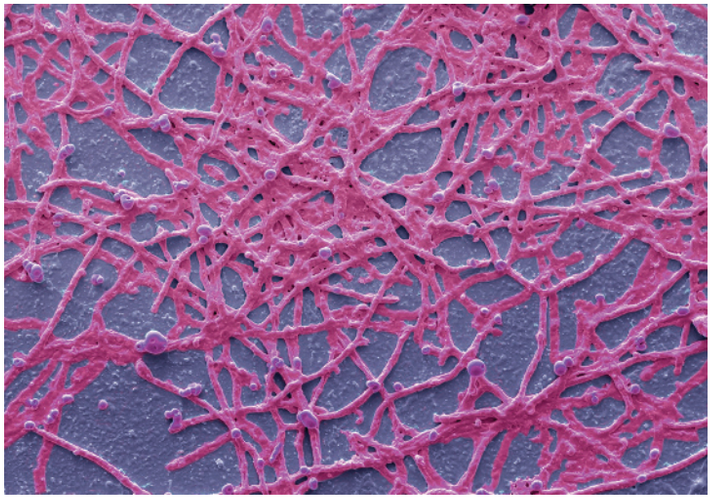


Figure 11.26 ***Actinomyces.*** Notice the branched filamentous hyphae.

Q Why are these bacteria not classified as fungi?

Thermus aquaticus (THER-mus ah-KWA-ti-kus), another unique member of this group, is a bacterium that is unusually heat stable. It was isolated from a hot spring in Yellowstone National Park and is the source of the heat-resistant enzyme *Taq polymerase*, which is essential to the polymerase chain reaction (PCR). This is the method by which traces of DNA are amplified and used for identification (see Figure 9.4).

CLINICAL CASE

The blood agar and Gram stain results show beta-hemolytic streptococci. Dr. Walker sends a request to the lab for Lancefield typing (see Chapter 1) of the blood culture to find out which *Streptococcus* species is causing Mercy's meningitis. The results confirm the presence of the group B Lancefield antigen, thus verifying a diagnosis of group B *Streptococcus* (GBS), or *S. agalactiae*, infection. Although Mercy's mother tested negative for GBS when she was pregnant, Dr. Walker asks that Mercy's mother be retested. This time the results come back positive.

What is GBS?

Part 1 | Part 2 | Part 3 | **Part 4** | Part 5

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

11-10 What group of bacteria makes most of the commercially important antibiotics?

Domain Archaea

In the late 1970s, a distinctive type of prokaryotic cell was discovered. Most strikingly, the cell walls of these prokaryotes lacked the peptidoglycan common to most bacteria. It soon became clear that they also shared many rRNA sequences, and the sequences were different from both those of the Domain Bacteria and the Domain Eukarya. These differences were so significant that these organisms now constitute a new taxonomic grouping, the Domain Archaea.

Diversity within the Archaea

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

11-11 Name a habitat for each group of archaea.

This exceptionally interesting group of prokaryotes is highly diverse. Most archaea are of conventional morphology, that is, rods, cocci, and helices, but some are of very unusual morphology, as illustrated in Figure 11.27. Some are gram-positive, others gram-negative; some may divide by binary fission, others by fragmentation or budding; a few lack cell walls. There are no known pathogenic archaea. Cultivated members of the archaea (singular: *archaeon*) can be placed into four physiological or nutritional groups.

Physiologically, archaea are found under extreme environmental conditions. **Extremophiles**, as they are known, include halophiles, thermophiles, and acidophiles.

Halophiles thrive in salt concentrations of more than 25%, such as found in the Great Salt Lake and solar evaporating

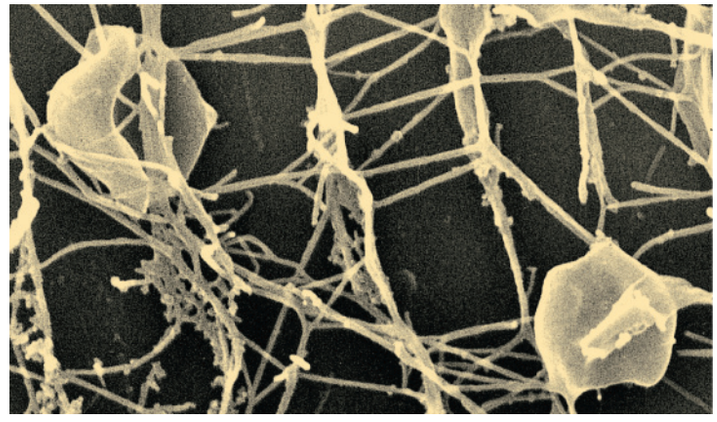


Figure 11.27 **Archaea.** *Pyrodictium abyssi*, an unusual member of the archaea found growing in deep-ocean sediment at a temperature of 110°C. The cells are disk-shaped with a network of tubules (cannulae). Most archaea are more conventional in their morphology.

Q Do the terms included in the name, *pyro* and *abyssi*, suggest a basis for the naming of this bacterium?

ponds. Examples of these are found in the genus *Halobacterium* (hā-lō-bak-TI-rē-um), some of which may even require such salt concentrations in order to grow.

The optimal growth temperatures of extremely thermophilic archaea is 80°C or higher. The present record growth temperature is 121°C, established by archaea growing near a hydrothermal vent at 2000 meters deep in the ocean. See Exploring the Microbiome in Chapter 27.

Acidophilic archaea can be found growing at pH values approaching zero and frequently at elevated temperatures, as well. An example is *Sulfolobus* (SUL-fō-lō-bus), whose optimal pH is about 2 and optimal temperature is more than 70°C.

Nutritionally, the ocean contains numerous *nitrifying* archaea that oxidize ammonia for energy. Some might also be found in soils. Methanogens are strictly anaerobic archaea that produce methane as an end-product by combining hydrogen (H_2) with carbon dioxide (CO_2). See the Big Picture in Chapter 27. There are no known bacterial methanogens. These archaea are of considerable economic importance when they are used in sewage treatment (see the discussion of sludge digestion in Chapter 27). Methanogens are also part of the microbiota of the human colon, vagina, and mouth.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

11-11 What kind of archaea would populate solar evaporating ponds?

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

GBS is often part of the normal intestinal or genitourinary microbiota, but it can cause disease in immunocompromised individuals. GBS emerged as a major cause of neonatal bacterial sepsis in the 1970s and is a leading infectious cause of neonatal morbidity in the United States. The bacterium, a common colonizer of the female genital tract, can be acquired by the fetus during passage through the birth canal. Prevention includes prenatal screening for GBS at 35 to 37 weeks' gestation and administering antibiotics to carriers during labor. Although Mercy's mother tested negative during her pregnancy, her results were a rare false negative. Mercy is put on intravenous antibiotics and remains in the hospital for 10 days until the infection clears. She is sent home after 2 weeks and is now a healthy, happy 2-month-old girl.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5

Microbial Diversity

The Earth provides a seemingly infinite number of environmental niches, and novel life forms have evolved to fill them. It is estimated there may be one trillion species of bacteria. Many of the microbes that exist in these niches cannot be cultivated by conventional methods on conventional growth media and have remained unknown. In recent years, however, isolation and identification methods have become much more sophisticated, and microbes that fill these niches are being identified—many without being cultivated. For example, see the discussion of *Pelagibacter* in this chapter and the iChip in Figure 28.10. The effects of space travel on bacteria are being studied as the human microbiome is now going on spaceflights; see **Exploring the Microbiome**.

ASM: Microorganisms are ubiquitous and live in diverse and dynamic ecosystems. Because the true diversity of microbial life is largely unknown, its effects and potential benefits have not been fully explored.

Discoveries Illustrating the Range of Diversity

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

11-12 List two factors that contribute to the limits of our knowledge of microbial diversity.

Earlier in this chapter, we described the giant bacterium *Epulopiscium*. In 1999, another, even larger, giant bacterium was discovered 100 meters deep in the sediments of the coastal waters off Namibia, on the southwestern coast of Africa. Named *Thiomargarita namibiensis* (THĪ-ō-mar-gah-rē-tah nah'mib-ē-EN-sis), meaning "sulfur pearl of Namibia," these spherical organisms, classified with the Gammaproteobacteria, are as large as 750 μm in diameter (**Figure 11.28**). This is a bit larger than the size of a period at the end of this sentence. In 2022, the 1-centimeter long *Thiomargarita magnifica* was discovered growing in a mangrove thicket.

As we have mentioned, a factor that limits the size of prokaryotic cells is that nutrients must enter the cytoplasm by simple diffusion. *Thiomargarita* minimizes this problem by resembling a fluid-filled balloon, the vacuole in the interior being surrounded by a relatively thin outer layer of cytoplasm. This cytoplasm is equal in volume to that of most other prokaryotes. Its energy source is essentially hydrogen sulfide, which is plentiful in the sediments in which it is normally found, and nitrate, which it must extract intermittently from nitrate-rich seawaters when storms stir the loose sediment. The cell's interior vacuole, which makes up about 98% of the bacterium's volume, serves as a storage space to hold the nitrate between recharging of its supply. The cell's energy is derived

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME Microbiome in Space

Since space exploration began, scientists have worried about potential human-microbe interactions beyond Earth. In the 1960s, caution over "space germ" contamination led to 30-day quarantines of astronauts, equipment, and samples upon return from lunar missions. Today, scientists are equally concerned that spacecraft such as the Mars landers might inadvertently contaminate other planets we visit. But although equipment can often be sterilized before entering space, the human microbiome travels with us wherever we go and spreads to the surfaces we frequently touch.

The physical environment within a spacecraft is different from Earth's—there's less gravity and more ionizing radiation. Being in space depresses cells in the immune system, and antibiotics seem to lose potency. Meanwhile, *Salmonella* Typhimurium and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* grown on the Atlantis space shuttle were more virulent than the same strains grown on Earth. Studies have shown that bacteria grown in space often take on different biofilm structures from those seen on Earth.

To date, only one astronaut has developed a serious microbial infection while in space, with the cause identified as *P. aeruginosa*. But could the microbiome that is so essential to us on Earth become a traitor in space? Astronauts stationed on the International Space Station are conducting the Astronaut Microbiome Project to find out. Because air within the space station is filtered, it's possible to examine the debris that is strained out and identify microbes in it. Actinobacteria are the most abundant bacteria on the International Space Station. *Ralstonia eutropha* and *P. aeruginosa* were also detected. Saliva samples showed an increase in *Prevotella* and an increase in antibiotic-resistance genes during space flight. These returned to normal post-flight. Samples taken from various body sites, as well as fecal samples of astronauts before, during, and after a space mission, will be analyzed during the Astronaut Microbiome Project, so we can identify other microbial changes that may take place in space.

Cultures of *P. aeruginosa* grown in space showed a "column and canopy" structure never seen before in cultures grown on Earth.

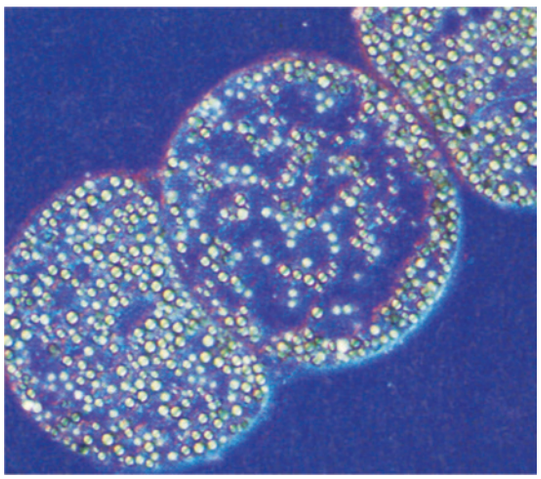


Figure 11.28 *Thiomargarita namibiensis*. This micrograph shows the intracellular sulfur granules in the thin layer of cytoplasm near the cell membrane. Sulfur accumulates when the bacterium oxidizes H_2S.

Q Would a bacterium of this size be theoretically possible if the interior were cytoplasm rather than a fluid-filled vacuole?

from the oxidation of hydrogen sulfide; the nitrate, although a source of nutritional nitrogen, primarily serves as an electron acceptor in the absence of oxygen.

The discovery of uniquely large bacteria has raised the question of how large a prokaryotic cell can be and still absorb nutrients. At the other extreme, is there a lower limit for the size of microorganisms—especially their genome? There are reports of bacteria as small as 0.02 to 0.08 μm (nanobacteria) found in deep rock formations and even blood vessels and kidney stones. Most microbiologists have concluded that these are nonliving particles that have crystallized from minerals. Theoretical considerations have been used to calculate that a cell with a significant metabolism would have to have a diameter of at least 0.1 μm. Certain bacteria have extraordinarily small genomes. For example, *Carsonella ruddii* (KAR-son-el-lah RUD-dē-ē) is a bacterium that lives in a *symbiotic relationship* with its insect host, a sap-eating psyllid (plant louse), and requires less genetic capability than would a free-living microbe. It has only 182 genes, which is close to the 151 genes that is the calculated theoretical minimum even for a microbe in such a symbiotic relationship. (Compare this with the minimal

genetic requirements of the *free-living* mycoplasmas. *C. ruddii* is not completely parasitic in its relationship with its host insect because it supplies the host with some essential amino acids. It is therefore probably in the evolutionary process of becoming an organelle, like the mitochondria of eukaryotic cells (see Figure 10.2).

Microbiologists have described about 30,000 bacterial species. About 600 new species have been identified each year for the past few years. The most recently discovered bacteria are being found in environmental samples from the Arctic Ocean to the Taklimakan Desert to the human microbiome. Despite such discoveries, the true number of bacterial species may be in the millions. Recently, researchers have been using the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) to help them estimate numbers of bacterial species living in soil. First, they use PCR to make millions of copies of genes found at random in a soil sample. Then, by comparing the genes found in many repetitions of this process, researchers can estimate the number of different bacterial species in such a sample. One report indicates that a single gram of soil may contain 10,000 or so bacterial types.

Two factors limit our ability to identify new species. Many bacteria in soil or water, or elsewhere in nature, cannot be cultivated with the media and conditions normally used for bacterial growth. Moreover, some bacteria are part of complex food chains and can grow only in the presence of other microbes that supply specific growth requirements. Thus, millions of bacterial species remain yet to be discovered.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

11-12 How can you detect the presence of a bacterium that cannot be cultured?

Study Outline

Introduction (p. 296)

1. *Bergey's Manual* categorizes bacteria into taxa based on rRNA sequences.
2. *Bergey's Manual* lists identifying characteristics such as Gram stain reaction, cellular morphology, oxygen requirements, and nutritional properties.

The Prokaryotic Groups (p. 297)

1. Prokaryotic organisms are classified into two domains: Archaea and Bacteria.

Domain Bacteria (pp. 297–319)

1. Bacteria are essential to life on Earth.

The Gram-Negative Bacteria (pp. 298–312)

The Pseudomonadota (pp. 298–308)

1. Members of the phylum Pseudomonadota (formerly Proteobacteria) are gram-negative.
2. Alphaproteobacteria include nitrogen-fixing bacteria, chemoautotrophs, and chemoheterotrophs.
3. Betaproteobacteria include chemoautotrophs and chemoheterotrophs.
4. Pseudomonadales, Legionellales, Vibrionales, Enterobacteriales, and Pasteurellales are classified as Gammaproteobacteria.
5. *Bdellovibrio* and *Myxococcus* in the Deltaproteobacteria prey on other bacteria.
6. Campylobacterota include *Campylobacter* and *Helicobacter*.

The Other Gram-Negative Bacteria (pp. 308–312)

7. Cyanobacteria are photoautotrophs that use light energy and CO_2 and do produce O_2.
8. Purple and green photosynthetic bacteria are photoautotrophs that use light energy and CO_2 and do not produce O_2.
9. Planctomycetes, Chlamydiae, Spirochetes, Bacteroidetes, and Fusobacteria are phyla of gram-negative, chemoheterotrophic bacteria.

The Gram-Positive Bacteria (pp. 313–319)

1. Gram-positive bacteria are divided into those that have low G + C ratio and those that have high G + C ratio.
2. Low G + C gram-positive bacteria (Bacillota and Mycoplasmatota) include common soil bacteria, the lactic acid bacteria, and several human pathogens.
3. High G + C gram-positive bacteria include mycobacteria, corynebacteria, actinomycetes, and Deinococcus-Thermus, which are resistant to environmental extremes.

Domain Archaea (pp. 319–320)

1. Extreme halophiles, extreme thermophiles, acidophiles, and methanogens are included in the Archaea.

Microbial Diversity (pp. 320–322)

1. Few of the estimated number of different prokaryotes have been isolated and identified.
2. PCR can be used to uncover the presence—though not the identity—of bacteria that can't be cultured in the laboratory.
3. Limitations on bacterial species identification include the inability of researchers to duplicate in a lab the conditions favoring microbial growth within ecosystems.

Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the book.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. The following outline can be used to identify important bacteria. Fill in a representative genus in the space provided.

	Representative Genus
I. Gram-positive	
A. Endospore-forming rod	
1. Obligate anaerobe	(a) _____
2. Not obligate anaerobe	(b) _____
B. Non–endospore-forming	
1. Cells are rods	
a. Produce conidiospores	(c) _____
b. Acid-fast	(d) _____
2. Cells are cocci	
a. Lack cytochrome system	(e) _____
b. Use aerobic respiration	(f) _____
II. Gram-negative	
A. Cells are helical or curved	
1. Axial filament	(g) _____
2. No axial filament	(h) _____
B. Cells are rods	
1. Aerobic, nonfermenting	(i) _____
2. Facultatively anaerobic	(j) _____
III. Lack cell walls	(k) _____
IV. Obligate intracellular parasites	
A. Transmitted by ticks	(l) _____
B. Reticulate bodies in host cells	(m) _____

2. Compare and contrast each of the following:
   a. Cyanobacteria and algae
   b. Actinomycetes and fungi
   c. *Bacillus* and *Lactobacillus*
   d. *Pseudomonas* and *Escherichia*
   e. *Leptospira* and *Spirillum*
   f. *Escherichia* and *Bacteroides*
   g. *Rickettsia* and *Chlamydia*
   h. *Mycobacterium* and *Mycoplasma*
3. DRAW IT Draw a key to differentiate the following bacteria: cyanobacteria, *Cytophaga*, *Desulfovibrio*, *Frankia*, *Hyphomicrobium*, methanogens, myxobacteria, *Nitrobacter*, purple bacteria, *Sphaerotilus*, and *Sulfolobus*.
4. NAME IT These organisms are important in sewage treatment and can produce a fuel used for home heating and for generating electricity.

Multiple Choice

1. If you Gram-stained the bacteria that live in the human intestine, you would expect to find mostly
   a. gram-positive cocci.
   b. gram-negative rods.
   c. gram-positive, endospore-forming rods.
   d. gram-negative, nitrogen-fixing bacteria.
   e. all of the above.
2. Which of the following does *not* belong with the others?
   a. Enterobacteriales
   b. Lactobacillales
   c. Legionellales
   d. Pasteurellales
   e. Vibrionales
3. Pathogenic bacteria can be
   a. motile.
   b. rods.
   c. cocci.
   d. anaerobic.
   e. all of the above.
4. Which of the following is an intracellular parasite?
   a. *Rickettsia*
   b. *Mycobacterium*
   c. *Bacillus*
   d. *Staphylococcus*
   e. *Streptococcus*
5. Which of the following terms is the most specific?
   a. bacillus
   b. *Bacillus*
   c. gram-positive
   d. endospore-forming rods and cocci
   e. anaerobic
6. Which one of the following does *not* belong with the others?
   a. *Enterococcus*
   b. *Lactobacillus*
   c. *Staphylococcus*
   d. *Streptococcus*
   e. All are grouped together.
7. Which of the following pairs is *mismatched*?
   a. anaerobic endospore-forming gram-positive rods—*Clostridium*
   b. facultatively anaerobic gram-negative rods—*Escherichia*
   c. facultatively anaerobic gram-negative rods—*Shigella*
   d. pleomorphic gram-positive rods—*Corynebacterium*
   e. spirochete—*Helicobacter*
8. *Spirillum* is *not* classified as a spirochete because spirochetes
   a. do not cause disease.
   b. possess axial filaments.
   c. possess flagella.
   d. are prokaryotes.
   e. none of the above
9. When *Legionella* was newly discovered, why was it classified with the pseudomonads?
   a. It is a pathogen.
   b. It is an aerobic gram-negative rod.
   c. It is difficult to culture.
   d. It is found in water.
   e. none of the above
10. Unlike purple and green phototrophic bacteria, cyanobacteria
    a. produce oxygen during photosynthesis.
    b. do not require light.
    c. use H_2S as an electron donor.
    d. have a membrane-enclosed nucleus.
    e. all of the above

Analysis

1. Use of culture-independent techniques such as rRNA sequencing and FISH have increased our understanding of microbial diversity without cultivation. Do microbiologists still need to attempt to grow new species? Briefly explain.
2. To which of the following is the photosynthetic bacterium *Chromatium* most closely related? Briefly explain why.
   a. cyanobacteria
   b. *Chloroflexus*
   c. *Escherichia*
3. Bacteria are single-celled organisms that must absorb their nutrients by simple diffusion. The dimensions of *Thiomargarita namibiensis* are several hundred times larger than those of most bacteria, much too large for simple diffusion to operate. How does the bacterium solve this problem?

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. After contact with a patient's spinal fluid, a lab technician developed fever, nausea, and purple lesions on his neck and extremities. A throat culture grew gram-negative diplococci. What is the genus of the bacteria?
2. Between April 1 and May 15 of one year, 22 children in three states developed diarrhea, fever, and vomiting. The children had each received pet ducklings. Gram-negative, facultatively anaerobic bacteria were isolated from both the patients' and the ducks' feces; the bacteria were identified as serovar C2. What is the genus of these bacteria?
3. A pregnant patient complaining of lower abdominal pain with a temperature of 39°C gave birth soon after to a stillborn baby. Blood cultures from the infant revealed gram-positive rods. The patient had eaten unheated hot dogs during pregnancy. Which organism is most likely involved?

The Eukaryotes: Fungi, Algae, Protozoa, and Helminths 12

One-third of the world's population, more than 2 billion people, suffer from parasitic diseases. Malaria kills 1 million people, mostly children, annually. An additional 500 million people are infected with intestinal protozoa and helminths. Although these infections are most common in tropical climates, parasitic diseases also affect millions of people in the United States. Over 1 million new cases of the parasitic disease trichomoniasis are reported annually in the United States, and 60 million people are infected with the parasite *Trypanosoma cruzi*. Climate change is contributing to the spread of parasitic diseases because the insects that transmit parasites are moving to new areas that are becoming warmer. Additionally, parasites present in soil may mature faster, and increased precipitation may protect the eggs and larvae from drying out. In contrast, warmer, drier summers may be responsible for emergence of the fungal pathogen *Cryptococcus gattii* (see the photograph) in North America, as discussed in the Clinical Case.

In this chapter, we examine the eukaryotic microorganisms that affect humans: fungi, algae, protozoa, parasitic helminths, and the arthropods that transmit diseases. (For a comparison of their characteristics, see **Figure 12.1**.) We also discuss lichens and slime molds.

◀ ***Cryptococcus gattii* fungus is a newly emerged human pathogen in Canada and the United States.**

In the Clinic

As a Peace Corps nurse in West Africa, you meet a 4-year-old girl with a particularly swollen stomach. The girl's mother shows you a large (10-cm) white worm that the girl coughed up. The worm is cylindrical with tapered ends. **What is the worm? How did she contract it?**

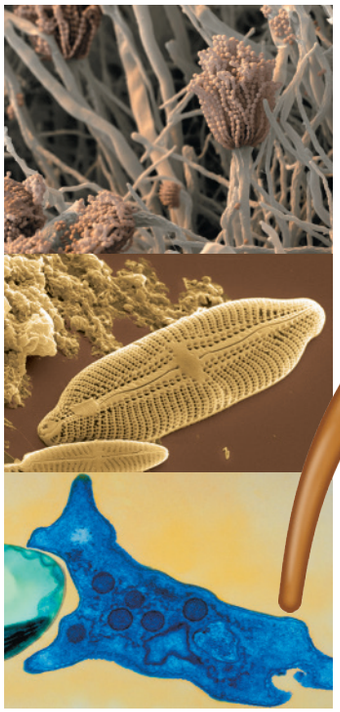
Hint: Read about helminths later in this chapter.

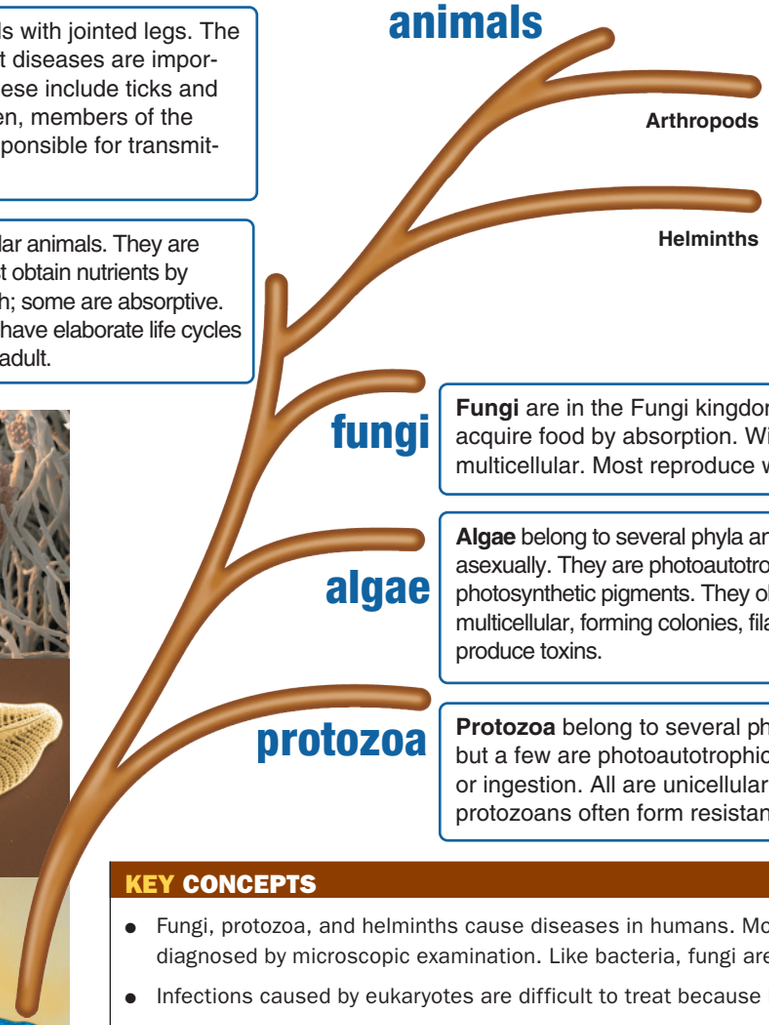
FOUNDATION FIGURE 12.1

Exploring Pathogenic Eukaryotes

Arthropods are animals with jointed legs. The arthropods that transmit diseases are important in microbiology. These include ticks and some insects; most often, members of the mosquito family are responsible for transmitting disease.

Helminths are multicellular animals. They are chemoheterotrophs. Most obtain nutrients by ingestion through a mouth; some are absorptive. Parasitic helminths often have elaborate life cycles including egg, larva, and adult.





Fungi are in the Fungi kingdom. They are chemoheterotrophs and acquire food by absorption. With the exception of yeasts, fungi are multicellular. Most reproduce with sexual and asexual spores.

Algae belong to several phyla and can reproduce both sexually and asexually. They are photoautotrophs and produce several different photosynthetic pigments. They obtain nutrients by diffusion. Some are multicellular, forming colonies, filaments, or even tissues. A few produce toxins.

Protozoa belong to several phyla. Most are chemoheterotrophic, but a few are photoautotrophic. They obtain nutrients by absorption or ingestion. All are unicellular, and many are motile. Parasitic protozoans often form resistant cysts.

KEY CONCEPTS

- Fungi, protozoa, and helminths cause diseases in humans. Most of these diseases are diagnosed by microscopic examination. Like bacteria, fungi are cultured on laboratory media.
- Infections caused by eukaryotes are difficult to treat because humans have eukaryotic cells.
- Algal diseases of humans are not infectious; they are intoxications because the symptoms result from ingesting algal toxins.
- Arthropods that transmit infectious diseases are called vectors. Arthropod-borne diseases such as West Nile encephalitis are best controlled by limiting exposure to the arthropod.

Fungi

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

12-1 List the defining characteristics of fungi.

12-2 Differentiate asexual from sexual reproduction, and describe each of these processes in fungi.

12-3 List defining characteristics of the four medically important phyla of fungi.

12-4 Identify two beneficial and two harmful effects of fungi.

Of the more than 100,000 species of fungi, only about 200 are pathogenic to humans and animals. However, over the last 10 years, the incidence of serious fungal infections has been increasing. These infections are occurring in health care settings and in people with compromised immune systems, and often involve fungi normally found in and on the human body. In addition, thousands of fungal diseases afflict economically important plants, costing more than $1 billion annually.

TABLE 12.1 Selected Features of Fungi and Bacteria Compared

	Fungi	Bacteria
Cell Type	Eukaryotic	Prokaryotic
Cell Membrane	Sterols present	Sterols absent, except in *Mycoplasma*
Cell Wall	Glucans; mannans; chitin (no peptidoglycan)	Peptidoglycan
Spores	Sexual and asexual reproductive spores	Endospores (not for reproduction); some asexual reproductive spores
Metabolism	Limited to heterotrophic; aerobic, facultatively anaerobic	Heterotrophic, autotrophic; aerobic, facultatively anaerobic, anaerobic

Fungi are also beneficial. They're important in the food chain because they decompose dead plant matter, thereby recycling vital elements. The hard parts of plants, which animals can't digest, are decomposed primarily by fungi through the use of extracellular enzymes, such as cellulases. Nearly all plants depend on symbiotic fungi, known as **mycorrhizae**, which help their roots absorb minerals and water from the soil (see Chapter 27). Fungi are also valuable to animals. Fungi-farming ants cultivate fungi that break down cellulose and wood from plants, providing glucose that the ants can then digest. Humans use fungi for food (mushrooms) and to produce foods (bread and citric acid) and drugs (alcohol and penicillin).

The study of fungi is called **mycology**. A fungal pathogen must be accurately identified if the disease is to be properly treated and its spread prevented. We will first look at the structures that are the basis of fungal identification in a clinical laboratory. Then we will explore their life cycles and nutritional needs. All fungi are chemoheterotrophs, requiring organic compounds for energy and carbon. Fungi are aerobic or facultatively anaerobic; only a few anaerobic fungi are known.

Table 12.1 lists the basic differences between fungi and bacteria.

Characteristics of Fungi

Identifying yeasts and bacteria requires biochemical tests. However, multicellular fungi are identified on the basis of physical appearance, including colony characteristics and reproductive spores.

Vegetative Structures

Fungal colonies are described as **vegetative** structures because they're composed of the cells involved in catabolism and growth. Some of the vegetative cells may develop into reproductive cells called spores.

Molds and Fleshy Fungi The **thallus** (body) of a mold or fleshy fungus (mushroom) consists of long filaments of cells joined together; these filaments are called **hyphae** (singular: **hypha**). Hyphae can grow to immense proportions. Using DNA fingerprinting, scientists mapped the hyphae of a single fungus in Oregon (a mushroom) that extended over 4 square miles.

In most molds, the hyphae contain cross-walls called **septa** (singular: **septum**), which divide them into distinct, uninucleate (one-nucleus) cell-like units. These hyphae are called **septate hyphae** (Figure 12.2a). In a few classes of fungi, the hyphae contain no septa and appear as long, continuous cells with many nuclei. These are called **coenocytic hyphae** (Figure 12.2b). Even in fungi with septate hyphae, there are usually openings in the septa that make the cytoplasm of adjacent "cells" continuous; these fungi are actually coenocytic organisms, too.

Hyphae grow by elongating at the tips (Figure 12.2c). Each part of a hypha is capable of growth, and when a fragment breaks off, it can elongate to form a new hypha. Thus, the fragmentation of hyphae is a form of asexual reproduction. In the laboratory, fungi are usually grown from fragments obtained from a fungal thallus.

The portion of a hypha that obtains nutrients is called the *vegetative hypha;* the portion concerned with reproduction is the *reproductive* or *aerial hypha,* so named because it projects above the surface of the medium on which the fungus is growing.

CLINICAL CASE Man's Best Friend

Ethan, a 26-year-old computer programmer, is coaxing his dog, Waldo, into his truck. Waldo is very ill, and Ethan is taking him to the veterinary clinic in Bellingham, Washington, to get Waldo checked out. Waldo not only has nasal discharge, noisy breathing, coughing, and sneezing, but also is losing weight and having difficulty walking. Ethan already had to look all over the property to find Waldo, and by the time he locates him in the barn, carries him to the driveway, and lifts the 60-pound Labrador into the bed of his truck, he has to stop to rest. As a matter of fact, he thinks to himself that he hasn't been feeling much better than Waldo these days! Ethan assumes that he has been fighting some sort of infection as well.

The veterinarian examines Waldo and prescribes fluconazole, an antifungal agent. Ethan, very tired by this point, takes Waldo home. They both lie down to get some rest.

What type of infection could Waldo have? Read on to find out.

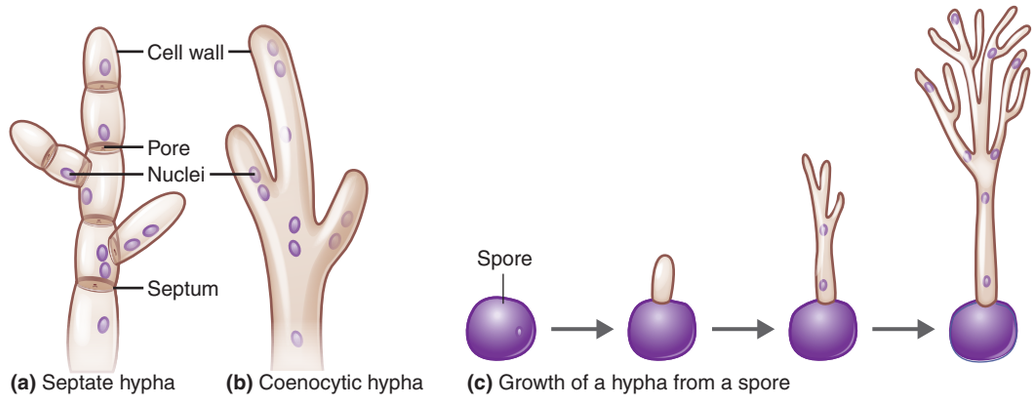


Figure 12.2 Characteristics of fungal hyphae. **(a)** Septate hyphae have cross-walls, or septa, dividing the hyphae into cell-like units. **(b)** Coenocytic hyphae lack septa. **(c)** Hyphae grow by elongating at the tips.

Q What is a hypha? A mycelium?

Aerial hyphae often bear reproductive spores (Figure 12.3a), discussed later. When environmental conditions are suitable, the hyphae grow to form a filamentous mass called a **mycelium**, which is visible to the unaided eye (Figure 12.3b).

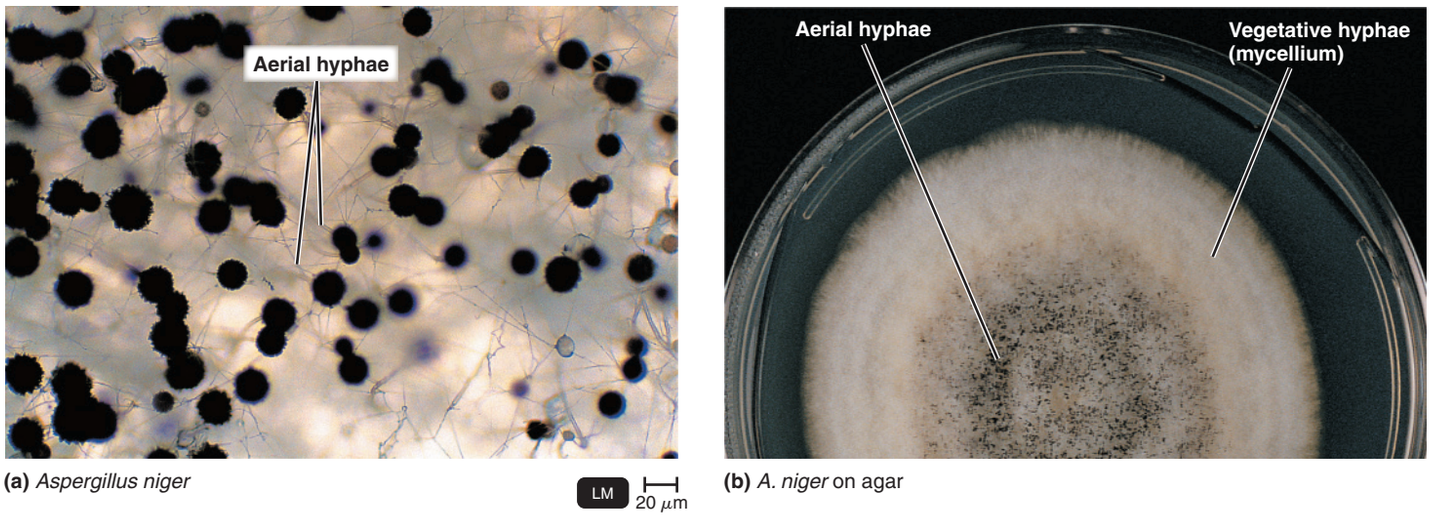
Yeasts **Yeasts** are nonfilamentous, unicellular fungi that are typically spherical or oval. Like molds, yeasts are widely distributed in nature; they are frequently found as a white powdery coating on fruits and leaves. Yeasts can be distinguished by their method of asexual reproduction as either budding yeasts or fission yeasts.

Budding yeasts, such as *Saccharomyces* (sak-kar-ō′MI-′sēz), divide unevenly. In budding (Figure 12.4), the parent cell forms a protuberance (bud) on its outer surface. As the bud elongates, the parent cell's nucleus divides, and one nucleus migrates into the bud. Cell wall material is then laid down between the bud and parent cell, and the bud eventually breaks away.

One yeast cell can in time produce up to 24 new cells by budding. Some yeasts produce buds that fail to detach; these buds form a short chain of cells called a **pseudohypha**. *Candida albicans* (KAN-di-dah AL-bi-kanz) attaches to human epithelial cells as a yeast but usually requires pseudohyphae to invade deeper tissues (see Figure 21.17a).

Fission yeasts, such as *Schizosaccharomyces* (SKI-zō-sak′kar-ō′mī-sēz), divide evenly to produce two new cells. During fission, the parent cell elongates, its nucleus divides, and two offspring cells are produced. Increases in the number of yeast cells on a solid medium produce a colony similar to a bacterial colony.

Yeasts are capable of facultative anaerobic growth, which allows these fungi to survive in various environments. If given access to oxygen, yeasts perform aerobic respiration to metabolize carbohydrates into carbon dioxide and water; denied oxygen, they ferment carbohydrates and produce ethanol and carbon dioxide. This fermentation is used in the brewing, wine-making, and baking industries. *Saccharomyces* species produce ethanol in brewed beverages and carbon dioxide for leavening bread dough.



(a) *Aspergillus niger* **(b)** *A. niger* on agar

Figure 12.3 Fungal thallus consist of a mass of hyphae. **(a)** A photomicrograph of aerial hyphae, showing reproductive spores. **(b)** A colony of *Aspergillus niger* grown on a glucose agar plate, showing both vegetative and aerial hyphae.

Q How do fungal colonies differ from bacterial colonies?

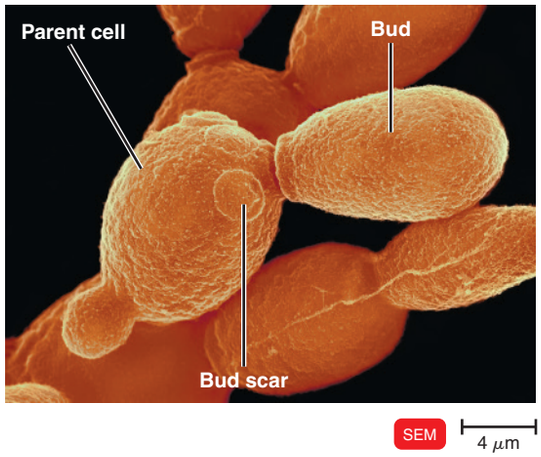


Figure 12.4 A budding yeast. A micrograph of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* in various stages of budding.

Q How does a bud differ from a spore?

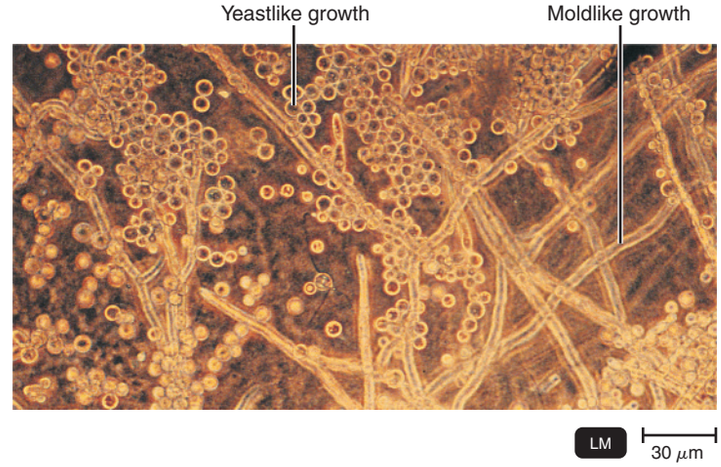


Figure 12.5 Fungal dimorphism. Dimorphism in the fungus *Mucor indicus* depends on CO_2 concentration. On the agar surface, *Mucor* exhibits yeastlike growth, but in the agar where CO_2 from metabolism has accumulated, it is moldlike.

Q What is fungal dimorphism?

Dimorphic Fungi Some fungi, most notably the pathogenic species, exhibit **dimorphism**—two forms of growth. Such fungi can grow either as a mold or as a yeast. The moldlike forms produce vegetative and aerial hyphae; the yeastlike forms reproduce by budding. Dimorphism in pathogenic fungi is temperature-dependent: at 37°C, the fungus is yeastlike, and at 25°C, it is moldlike. (See Figure 24.15.) However, the appearance of the dimorphic (in this instance, nonpathogenic) fungus shown in Figure 12.5 changes with CO_2 concentration.

Life Cycle

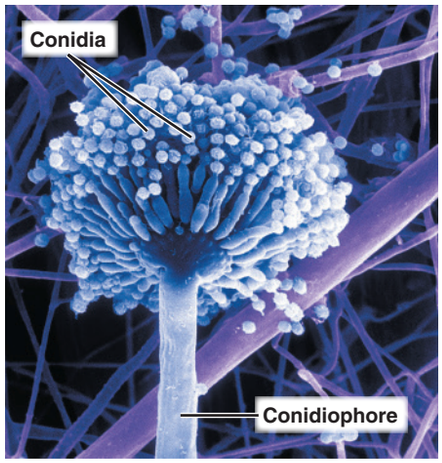
Recall that filamentous fungi can reproduce asexually by fragmentation of their hyphae, and yeasts can reproduce asexually by budding or fission. In addition, both sexual and asexual reproduction in fungi occur by the formation of **spores**. In fact, fungi are usually identified by spore type.

Fungal spores are quite different from bacterial endospores. Bacterial endospores allow a bacterial cell to survive adverse environmental conditions. A single vegetative bacterial cell forms one endospore, which eventually germinates to produce a single vegetative bacterial cell. This process isn't reproduction because it doesn't increase the total number of bacterial cells. But after a fungus forms a spore, the spore detaches from the parent and germinates (see Figure 12.2c). Unlike the bacterial endospore, this is a true reproductive spore; a second organism grows from the spore. Although fungal spores can survive for extended periods in dry or hot environments, most do not exhibit the extreme tolerance and longevity of bacterial endospores.

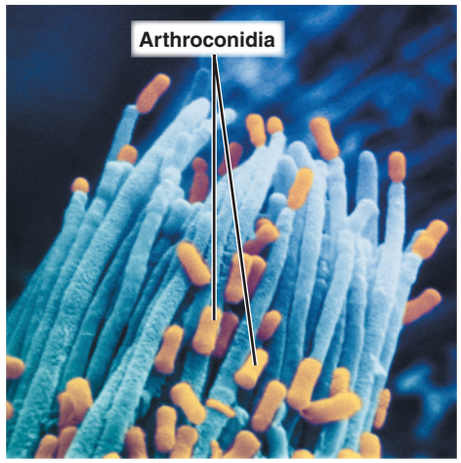
Fungal spores are formed in a number of different ways, depending on the species. In some yeast, spores are formed by cell division of the parent cell. Fungal spores can be either asexual or sexual. **Asexual spores** are formed by the hyphae of a single organism. When these spores germinate, they become organisms that are genetically identical to the parent. **Sexual spores** result from the fusion of nuclei from two separate organisms of opposite mating strains of the same species of fungus. Because sexual spores require two opposite mating strains, they are made less frequently than asexual spores. Organisms that grow from sexual spores will have genetic characteristics of both parental strains. Because spores are of considerable importance in identifying fungi, next we'll look at some of the various types of asexual and sexual spores.

Asexual Spores Asexual spores are produced by an individual fungus through mitosis and subsequent cell division; there is no fusion of the nuclei of cells. Two types of asexual spores are produced by fungi. One type is a **conidiospore**, or **conidium** (plural: *conidia*), a unicellular or multicellular spore that is not enclosed in a sac (Figure 12.6a). Conidia are produced in a chain at the end of a **conidiophore**. Such spores are produced by *Penicillium* and *Aspergillus* (as-per-JIL-lus). Conidia formed by the fragmentation of a septate hypha into single, slightly thickened cells are called **arthroconidia** (Figure 12.6b). One species that produces such spores is *Coccidioides immitis* (KOK-sid-ē-oi-dēz IM-mi-tis) (see Figure 24.17). Another type of conidium, **blastoconidia**, are formed from the buds of its parent cell (Figure 12.6c). Such spores are found in some yeasts, such as *Candida* and *Cryptococcus*. A **chlamydoconidium** is a thick-walled spore formed by rounding and enlargement within a hyphal segment (Figure 12.6d). A fungus that produces chlamydoconidia is the yeast *Candida albicans*.

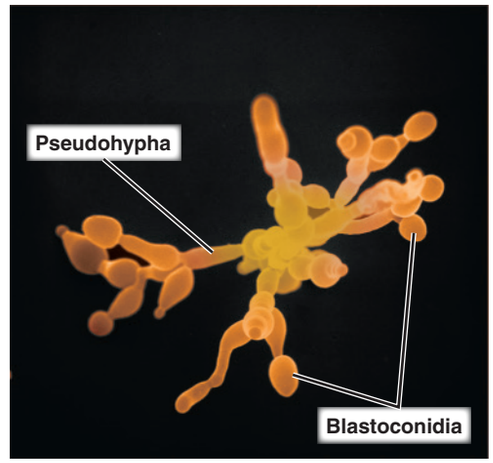
The other type of asexual spore is a **sporangiospore**, formed within a **sporangium**, or sac, at the end of an aerial hypha called a **sporangiophore**. The sporangium can contain hundreds of sporangiospores (Figure 12.6e). Such spores are produced by *Rhizopus*.



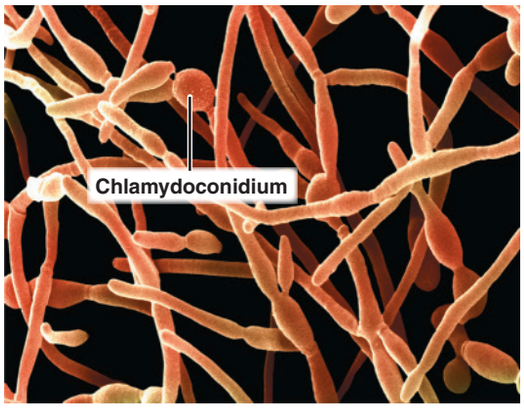
(a) Conidia are arranged in chains at the end of an *Aspergillus niger* conidiophore. SEM 12 μm



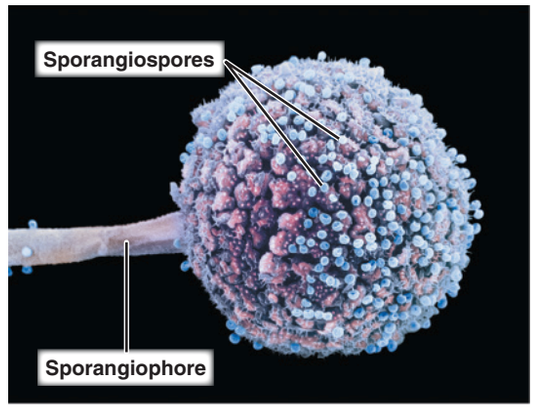
(b) Fragmentation of hyphae results in the formation of arthroconidia in *Ceratocystis ulmi*. SEM 2.5 μm



(c) Blastoconidia are formed from the buds of a parent cell of *Candida albicans*. SEM 13 μm



(d) Chlamydoconidia are thick-walled cells within hyphae of this *Candida albicans*. SEM 5 μm



(e) Sporangiospores are formed within a sporangium of *Rhizopus stolonifer*. SEM 5 μm

Figure 12.6 Representative asexual spores.

Q What are the green powdery structures on moldy food?

Sexual Spores A fungal sexual spore results from sexual reproduction, which consists of three phases:

1. **Plasmogamy**. A haploid nucleus of a donor cell (+) penetrates the cytoplasm of a recipient cell (−).
2. **Karyogamy**. The (+) and (−) nuclei fuse to form a diploid zygote nucleus.
3. **Meiosis**. The diploid nucleus gives rise to haploid nuclei (sexual spores), some of which may be genetic recombinants.

The sexual spores produced by fungi characterize the phyla. Clinical identification, however, is based on microscopic examination of asexual spores because most fungi exhibit only asexual spores in laboratory settings.

Environmental and Nutritional Adaptations

Fungi are generally adapted to environments that would be hostile to bacteria. However, they are chemoheterotrophs and are similar to bacteria in that they absorb nutrients rather than ingesting them as animals do. Overall, fungi differ from bacteria in their environmental requirements and nutritional characteristics in the following ways:

- Fungi usually grow better in an environment with a pH of about 5, which is too acidic for the growth of most common bacteria.
- A wide range of oxic/anoxic requirements is seen among the bacteria. In contrast, almost all molds are aerobic. Most yeasts are facultative anaerobes.
- Most fungi are more resistant to osmotic pressure than bacteria; most can therefore grow in relatively high sugar or salt concentrations.
- Fungi can grow on substances with a very low moisture content, generally too low to support the growth of bacteria.

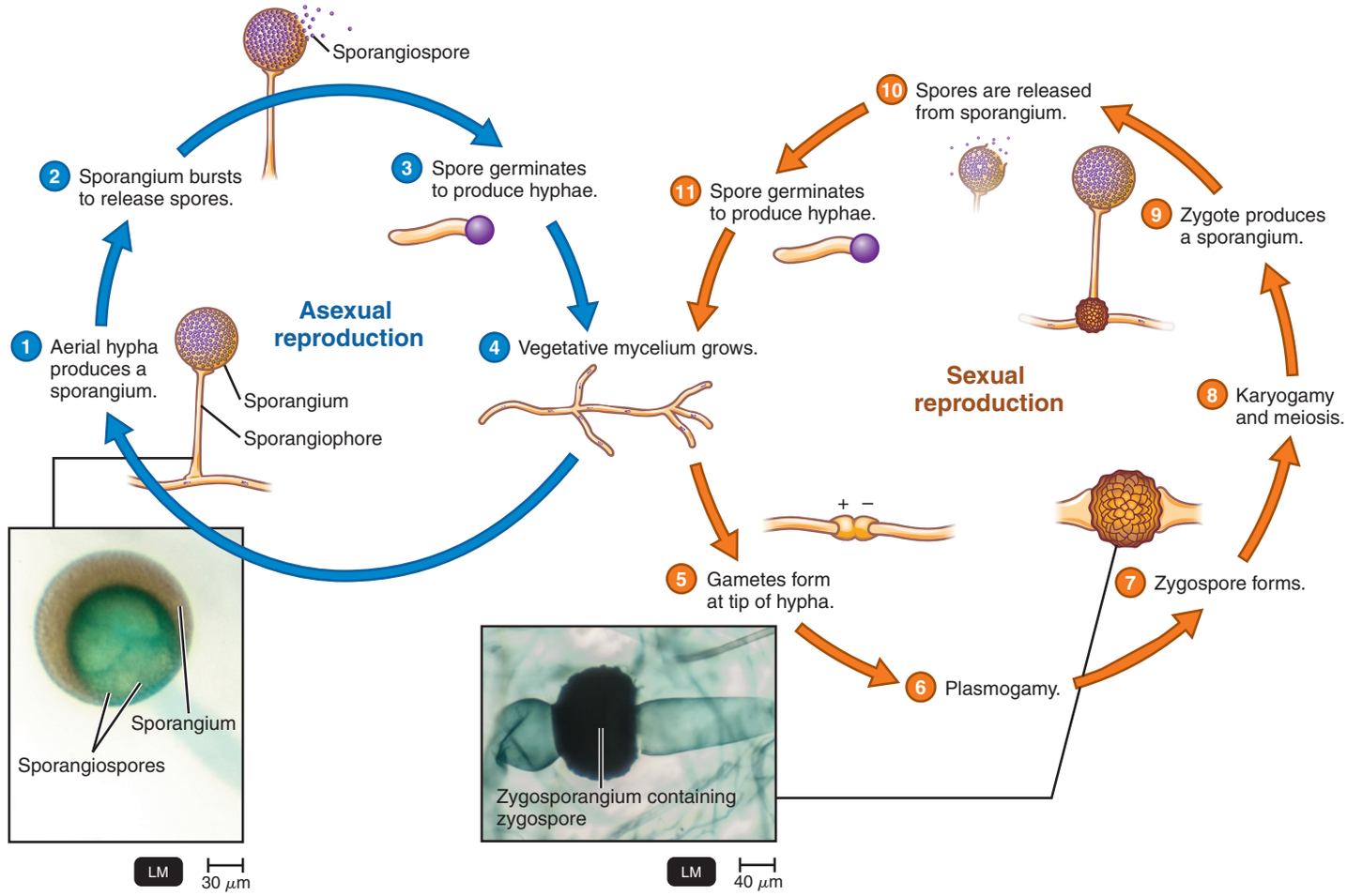


Figure 12.7 The life cycle of *Rhizopus*, a mucoromycete. This fungus will reproduce asexually most of the time. Two opposite mating strains (designated + and −) are necessary for sexual reproduction.

Q What is an opportunistic mycosis?

- Fungi require somewhat less nitrogen than bacteria for an equivalent amount of growth.
- Fungi are often capable of metabolizing complex carbohydrates, such as lignin (a component of wood), that most bacteria can't use for nutrients.

These characteristics enable fungi to grow on such unlikely substrates as bathroom walls, shoe leather, and discarded newspapers.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **12-1** Assume you isolated a single-celled organism that has a cell wall. How would you determine that it is a fungus and not a bacterium?
- **12-2** Contrast the mechanism of sexual and asexual spore formation.

Medically Important Fungi

This section provides an overview of medically important phyla of fungi. The actual diseases they cause will be studied in Chapters 21 through 26. Note that only a relatively small number of fungi cause disease and some fungi protect us against infection (see **Exploring the Microbiome**).

The genera named in the following phyla include many that are readily found as contaminants in foods and in laboratory bacterial cultures. Although these genera are not all of primary medical importance, they are typical examples of their respective groups.

Mucoromycota

The Mucoromycota, or conjugation fungi, are saprophytic molds that have coenocytic hyphae. An example is *Rhizopus stolonifer*, the common black bread mold. The asexual spores of *Rhizopus* are sporangiospores (**Figure 12.7**). The dark sporangiospores inside

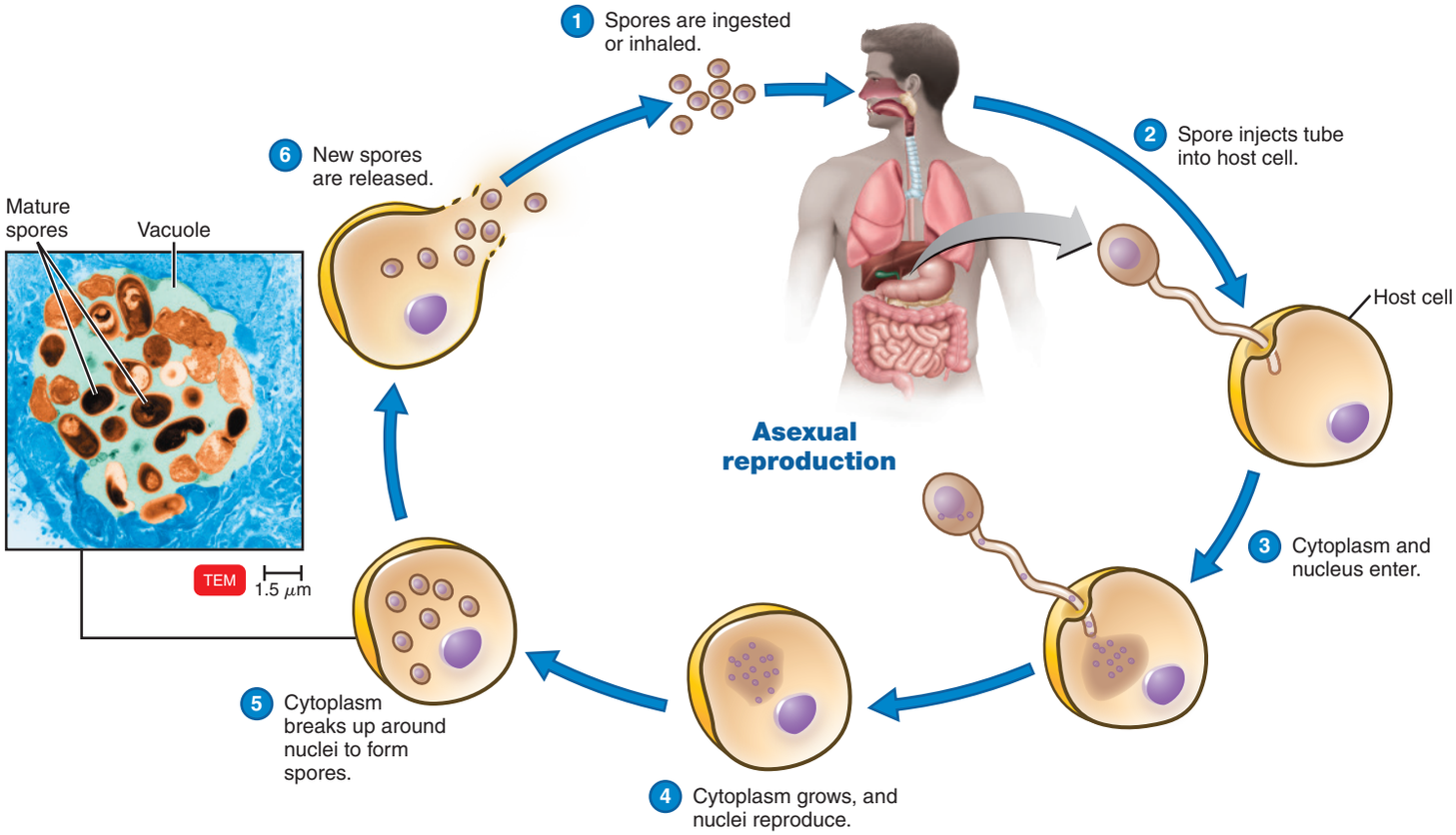


Figure 12.8 The life cycle of *Encephalitozoon*, a microsporidian. Microsporidiosis is an emerging opportunistic infection in immunocompromised patients and older adults. *E. intestinalis* causes diarrhea. Sexual reproduction has not been observed.

Q Why were microsporidia so difficult to classify?

the sporangium give *Rhizopus* its descriptive common name, black bread mold. When the sporangium breaks open, the sporangiospores are dispersed. If they fall on a suitable medium, they will germinate into a new mold thallus.

The sexual spores are zygospores. A **zygospore** is a large spore enclosed in a thick wall (Figure 12.7, step 7). This type of spore forms when the nuclei of two cells that are morphologically similar to each other fuse.

Microsporidia

Microsporidia are unusual eukaryotes because they lack mitochondria. They also don't have microtubules (see Chapter 4), and they're obligate intracellular parasites. In 1857, when they were discovered, microsporidians were classified as fungi. They were reclassified as protists in 1983 because they lack mitochondria. Recent genome sequencing, however, reveals that the microsporidians are fungi. Sexual reproduction has not been observed but probably occurs within the host (Figure 12.8). Microsporidia have been reported to be the cause of a number of human diseases, including chronic diarrhea and keratoconjunctivitis (inflammation of the conjunctiva near the cornea), most notably in people with AIDS.

Ascomycota

The Ascomycota, or sac fungi, include molds with septate hyphae and some yeasts. Their asexual spores are usually conidia produced in long chains from the conidiophore. The term *conidia* means dust, and these spores freely detach from the chain at the slightest disturbance and float in the air like dust.

An **ascospore** forms when the nuclei of two cells that can be either morphologically similar or dissimilar fuse. These spores are produced in a saclike structure called an **ascus** (Figure 12.9, lower right). The members of this phylum are called sac fungi because of the ascus.

Basidiomycota

The Basidiomycota, or club fungi, also possess septate hyphae. This phylum includes fungi that produce mushrooms. **Basidiospores** are formed externally on a base pedestal called

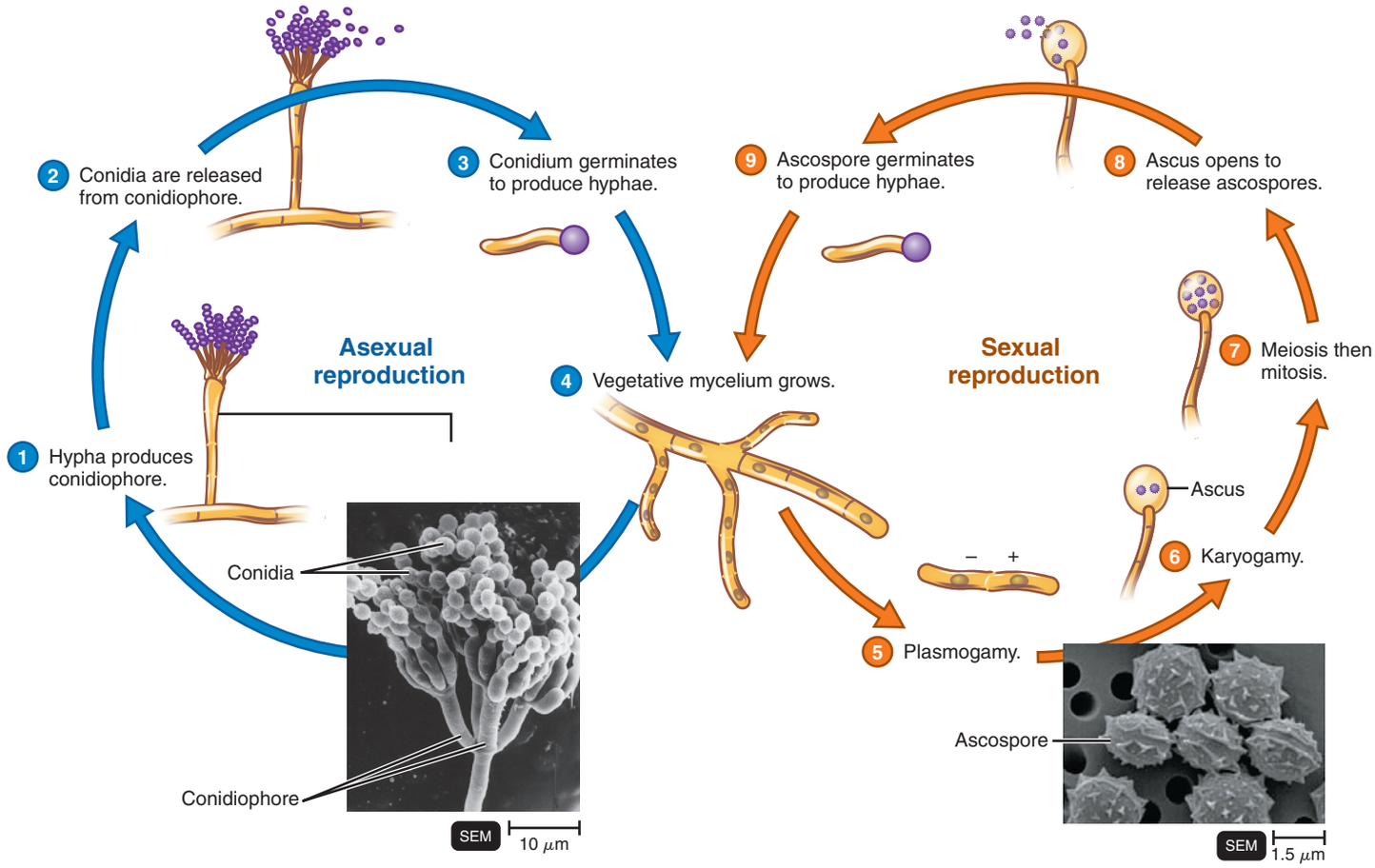


Figure 12.9 The life cycle of *Penicillium*, an ascomycete. Occasionally, when two opposite mating cells from two different strains (+ and −) fuse, sexual reproduction occurs.

Q Name one ascomycete that can infect humans.

a **basidium** (Figure 12.10). (The common name of the fungus is derived from the club shape of the basidium.) There are usually four basidiospores per basidium. Some of the basidiomycota produce asexual conidiospores.

* * *

Historically, fungi whose sexual cycle had not been observed were put in a "holding category" called *Deuteromycota*. Now, mycologists are sequencing rRNA genes to classify these organisms. Most of these previously unclassified deuteromycetes are ascomycotes, and a few are basidiomycetes.

Table 12.2 lists some fungi that cause human diseases.

Fungal Diseases

Any fungal infection is called a **mycosis**. Mycoses are generally chronic (long-lasting) infections because fungi grow slowly. Mycoses are classified into five groups according to the degree of tissue involvement and mode of entry into the host: systemic, subcutaneous, cutaneous, superficial, or opportunistic. Fungi are related to animals (as we saw in Chapter 10); consequently, drugs that affect fungal cells may also affect animal cells, making fungal infections of humans and other animals often difficult to treat. Some fungi cause disease by producing toxins, and those are discussed in Chapter 15.

CLINICAL CASE

For the past week Ethan has had shortness of breath, fever, chills, headache, night sweats, loss of appetite, nausea, and muscle pain. He has no other symptoms and is treated with amoxicillin for a presumed lower respiratory tract infection. After 3 days, despite the antibiotic, Ethan's respiratory rate increases, and his physician orders a chest X-ray exam. The X-ray film shows that Ethan has a mass in his lungs.

Both Ethan and his dog seem to have acquired the same infection. Make a short list of possible pathogens based on this new information.

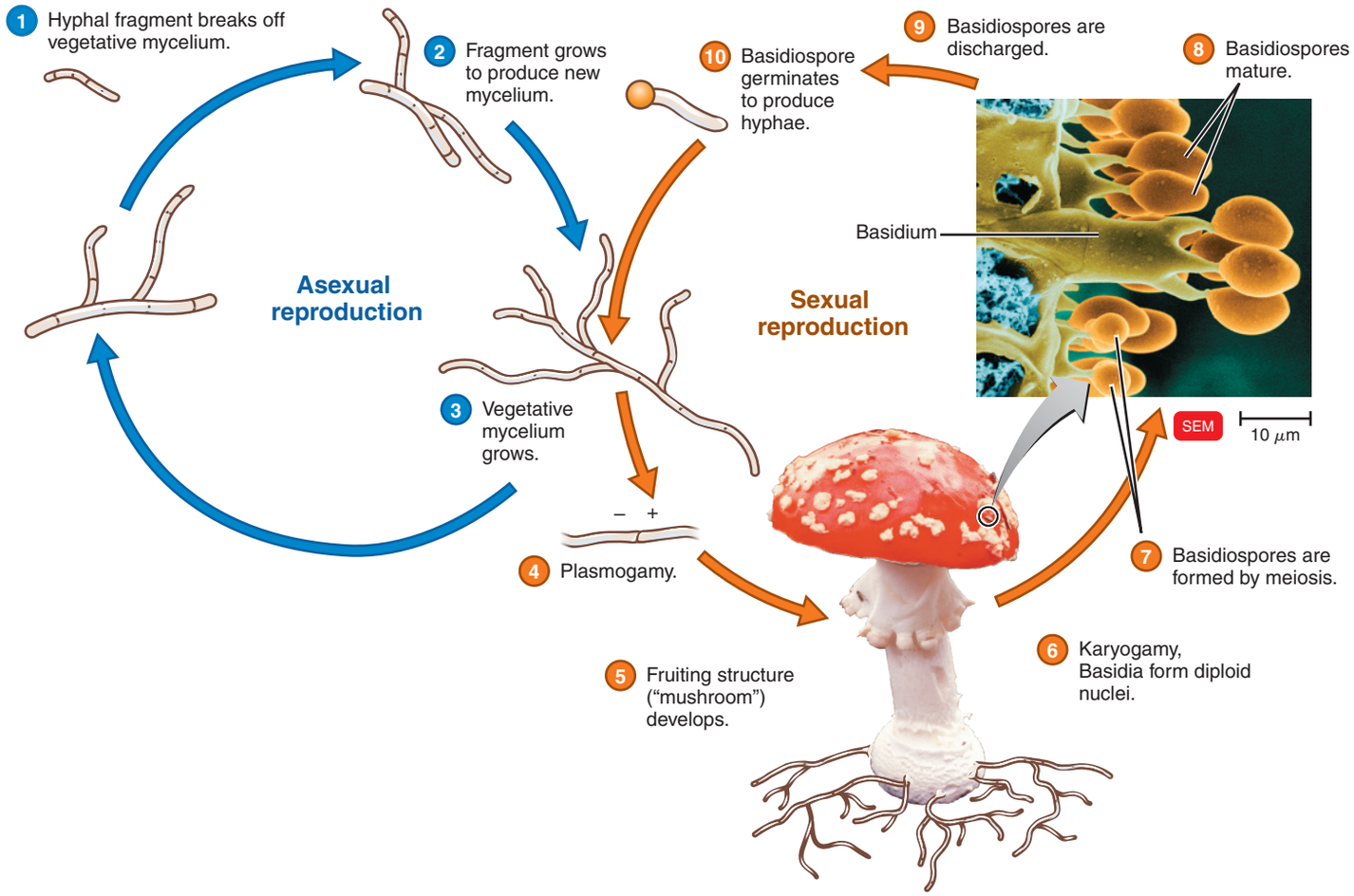


Figure 12.10 A generalized life cycle of a basidiomycete. Mushrooms appear after cells from two mating strains (+ and −) have fused.

Q On what basis are fungi classified into phyla?

Systemic mycoses are fungal infections deep within the body. They are not restricted to any particular region of the body but can affect a number of tissues and organs. Systemic mycoses are usually caused by fungi that live in the soil. The spores are transmitted by inhalation; these infections typically begin in the lungs and then spread to other body tissues. They are not contagious from animal to human or from human to human. Two systemic mycoses, histoplasmosis and coccidioidomycosis, are discussed in Chapter 24.

Subcutaneous mycoses are fungal infections beneath the skin caused by saprophytic fungi that live in soil and on vegetation. Sporotrichosis is a subcutaneous infection acquired by gardeners and farmers (Chapter 21). Infection occurs by direct implantation of spores or mycelial fragments into a puncture wound in the skin.

Fungi that infect only the epidermis, hair, and nails are called **dermatophytes**, and their infections are called *dermatomycoses* or **cutaneous mycoses** (see Figure 21.16). Dermatophytes secrete keratinase, an enzyme that degrades **keratin**, a protein found in hair, skin, and nails. Infection is transmitted from human to human or from animal to human by direct contact or by contact with infected hairs and epidermal cells (as from barber shop clippers or shower room floors).

The fungi that cause **superficial mycoses** are localized along hair shafts and in superficial (surface) epidermal cells. These infections are prevalent in tropical climates.

An **opportunistic pathogen** is generally harmless in its normal habitat—which may include in or on the human body—but can become pathogenic in a host who is seriously debilitated or traumatized, who is under treatment with broad-spectrum antibiotics, whose immune system is suppressed by drugs or by an immune disorder, or who has a lung disease.

Pneumocystis is an opportunistic pathogen in individuals with compromised immune systems and causes the most common

TABLE 12.2 Characteristics of Some Pathogenic Fungi

Phylum	Growth Characteristics	Asexual Spore Types	Human Pathogens	Habitat	Type of Mycosis
Mucoromycota	Coenocytic (Nonseptate hyphae)	Sporangiospores	*Rhizopus* *Mucor*	Ubiquitous Ubiquitous	Systemic Systemic
Microsporidia	No hyphae	Nonmotile spores	*Encephalitozoon* *Nosema*	Humans, other animals	Diarrhea keratoconjunctivitis
Ascomycota	Septate hyphae	Conidia	*Aspergillus* *Claviceps purpurea*	Ubiquitous Grasses	Systemic Toxin ingestion
	Dimorphic	Conidia	*Blastomyces dermatitidis*	Soil, decomposing matter	Systemic
			Histoplasma capsulatum	Soil	Systemic
			Stachybotrys	Soil	Systemic
			Sporothrix schenckii	Soil	Subcutaneous
		Arthroconidia	*Coccidioides immitis*	Soil	Systemic
	Septate hyphae, strong affinity for keratin	Arthroconidia, chlamydoconidia	*Microsporum* *Trichophyton* *Epidermophyton*	Soil, animals Soil, animals Soil, humans	Cutaneous Cutaneous Cutaneous
	Yeastlike, pseudohyphae	Chlamydoconidia, blastoconidia	*Candida albicans*	Humans	Cutaneous, mucocutaneous, systemic
	Unicellular	Chlamydoconidia	*C. auris*	Humans	Bloodstream infections
		None	*Pneumocystis*	Human lungs	Pneumonia
Basidiomycota	Septate hyphae; includes rusts and smuts, and plant pathogens; yeastlike encapsulated cells	Conidia	*Cryptococcus*	Soil, bird feces	Systemic
			Malassezia	Human skin	Cutaneous
			Amanita	Soil	Toxin ingestion

life-threatening infection in people with AIDS (see Figure 24.20). It was first classified as a protozoan, but recent studies of its RNA reveal it's a unicellular ascomycete. Another example of an opportunistic pathogen is the fungus *Stachybotrys* (STA-kē-bah-tris), which normally grows on cellulose found in dead plants but in recent years has been found growing on water-damaged walls of homes.

Mucoromycosis is an opportunistic mycosis caused by *Rhizopus* and *Mucor* (MŪ-kor); the infection occurs mostly in patients who have diabetes mellitus, have leukemia, or are undergoing treatment with immunosuppressive drugs. Aspergillosis is also an opportunistic mycosis; it is caused by *Aspergillus* (see Figure 12.3). This disease occurs in people who have debilitating lung diseases or cancer and have inhaled *Aspergillus* spores. Opportunistic infections by *Cryptococcus* and *Penicillium* can cause fatal diseases in people with AIDS. These opportunistic fungi may be transmitted from one person to an uninfected person but do not usually infect immunocompetent people.

Yeast infection, or candidiasis, is most frequently caused by *C. albicans* and may occur as vulvovaginal candidiasis or thrush, a mucocutaneous candidiasis. Candidiasis frequently occurs in newborns, in people with AIDS, and in people being treated with broad-spectrum antibiotics (see Figure 21.17). The CDC has alerted health care facilities about the worldwide emergence of an invasive multi-drug-resistant fungus, *Candida auris* (OR-is), which causes infections of the bloodstream, wounds, and the ear.

Some fungi cause disease by producing toxins. These toxins are discussed in Chapter 15.

Economic Effects of Fungi

Fungi have been used in biotechnology for many years. Here are some examples:

- *Aspergillus niger* (NĪ-jer) has been used to produce citric acid for foods and beverages since 1914.

CLINICAL CASE

Ethan's physician, suspecting that Ethan has a fungal infection, orders a biopsy of the lung mass. Figure A and Figure B show the microscopic examination and a culture from the biopsied tissue.

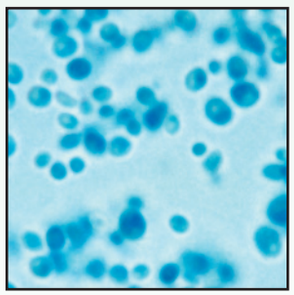


Figure A Microscopic examination from lung mass.

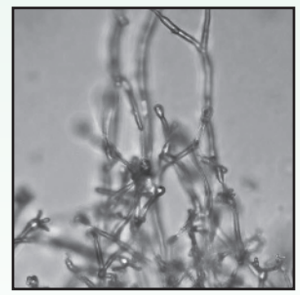


Figure B Microscopic appearance of culture.

Based on the figures, what is the most likely pathogen?

Part 1 | Part 2 | **Part 3**

- The commonly used drugs called statins that inhibit cholesterol synthesis are produced by *Aspergillus terreus*.
- The yeast *S. cerevisiae* is used to make bread and wine. It is also genetically modified to produce a variety of helpful proteins, including hepatitis B vaccine.
- Cyclosporine, used to prevent transplant rejections, is produced by *Tolypocladium inflatum* (tōl-pō-KLĀ-dē-um in-FLĀ-tum).
- *Trichoderma* is used commercially to produce the enzyme cellulase, which is used to remove plant cell walls to produce a clear fruit juice.
- When the anticancer drug taxol, which is produced by yew trees, was discovered, there was concern that the yew forests of the U.S. Northwest coast would be decimated to harvest the drug. However, the fungus *Taxomyces* (TAKS-ō-mī-sēz) also produces taxol.
- Penicillin is produced by *Penicillium chrysogenum*, and cephanosporins are produced by a different ascomycete *Acremonium* (ak-ri-MŌ-nē-um) *chrysogenum*.
- The fungus *Coniothyrium minitans* (kon′ē-ō-THER-ē-um MIN-i-tanz) provides an alternative to chemical pesticides. It feeds on fungi that destroy soybeans and other bean crops.

In contrast to these beneficial effects, fungi can have undesirable effects for agriculture because of their nutritional adaptations. As most of us have observed, mold spoilage of fruits, grains, and vegetables is relatively common, but bacterial spoilage of such foods is not. There is little moisture on the unbroken surfaces of such foods, and the interiors of fruits are too acidic for many bacteria to grow there. Jams and jellies also tend to be acidic, and they have a high osmotic pressure from the sugars they contain. These factors all discourage bacterial growth but readily support the growth of molds.

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

Cryptococcus gattii, an emerging fungal infection in the United States, is a dimorphic fungus found in the soil. It grows as a yeast at 37°C and produces hyphae at 25°C. Based on the yeastlike appearance and presence of hyphae, the lab confirms the presence of *C. gattii* in Ethan's lung mass. Ethan regularly takes Waldo hiking in the Douglas fir forests of the Pacific Northwest, so it isn't possible to know exactly where or when they contracted their infections. Since the first reported case in 1999, over 200 cases have been reported in British Columbia, Canada, and the United States Pacific Northwest; 96 people and 100 companion animal cases have been confirmed since 2004.

Ethan is placed on intravenous therapy with the antifungal agents amphotericin B and flucytosine. After a 6-week hospital stay, Ethan and Waldo are back at home and almost ready to go hiking again.

Part 1 | Part 2 | Part 3 | **Part 4**

The spreading chestnut tree, of which Longfellow wrote, no longer grows in the United States except in a few widely isolated locations; a fungal blight killed virtually all of them. This blight was caused by the ascomycete *Cryphonectria parasitica* (kri-fō-NEK-trē-ah par-ah-SI-ti-kah), which was introduced from China around 1904. The fungus allows the tree roots to live and put forth shoots regularly, but then it kills the shoots just as regularly. *Cryphonectria*-resistant chestnuts are being developed. Another imported fungal plant disease is Dutch elm disease, caused by *Ceratocystis ulmi* (ser-AH-tō-sis-tis UL-mē). Carried from tree to tree by a bark beetle, the fungus blocks the afflicted tree's circulation. The disease has devastated the American elm population.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **12-3** List the asexual and sexual spores made by mucoromycetes, ascomycetes, and basidiomycetes.
- **12-4** Why are microsporidia classified as fungi?
- **12-4** Are yeasts beneficial or harmful?

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

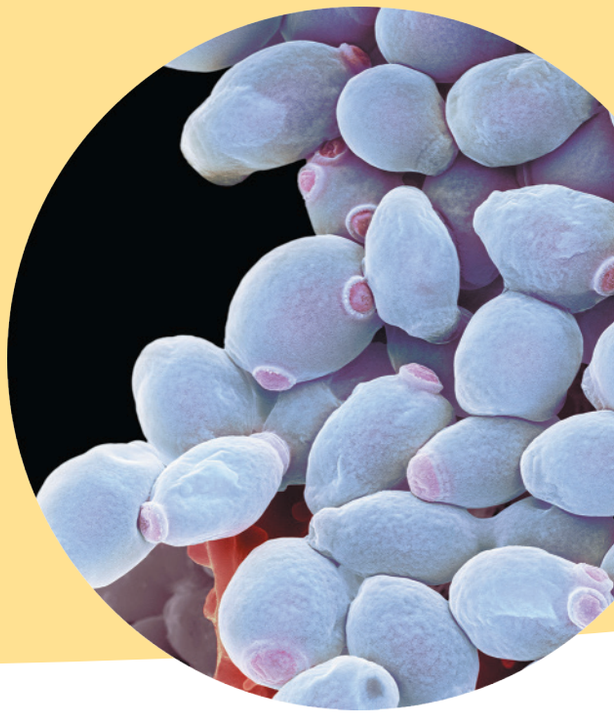
The Mycobiome

Just as viruses and bacteria are members of a healthy human microbiome, so are fungi. But unlike the bacterial portion of the microbiome, the so-called mycobiome is just beginning to be studied.

Members of the yeast genus *Candida* are the most common fungi that live as normal microbiota in the mouth, intestine, and vagina. The most diverse population of fungi is found in the mouth, where 101 species have been identified. In addition to *Candida*, the oral mycobiome includes *Saccharomyces*, *Cladosporium,* and *Pichia*. *Saccharomyces* and *Cladosporium* are common in the intestines, and *Malassezia* is the most abundant genus living on the skin.

Certain members of the mycobiome are well-known opportunistic pathogens. *C. albicans* can proliferate and cause vaginal infections after other members of the microbiome die off from a course of antimicrobial drugs. Diet may affect intestinal fungi. *Candida* increased and *Saccharomyces* decreased in the intestines of mice fed a high-fat diet. Although early exposure to microbes provides protection against asthma and allergies, recent studies have shown that the presence of the fungus *Pichia* in an infant's intestine increases the risk of developing asthma.

Understanding how fungi among the mycobiome interact with each other is important. For instance, a decrease in oral *Pichia* abundance coincides with an increase in *Candida* growth in people with AIDS—this observation led to the discovery that *Pichia* secretes several proteins that inhibit *Candida*. Likewise, noting how fungi and bacteria within the microbiome compete with each other is also a key area of research. The yeast *Saccharomyces boulardii*, for example, makes a protease (enzyme) that digests *Clostridioides difficile* toxin. *C. difficile* is a tough-to-treat bacterium that causes diarrhea after antibiotics kill off other members of the intestinal microbiome. Additionally, *S. boulardii* prevents attachment of the intestinal pathogens *Salmonella* and *Shigella* and decreases the inflammatory response in colitis.



Micrograph of *C. albicans* yeast

Lichens

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

12-5 List the distinguishing characteristics of lichens, and describe their nutritional needs.

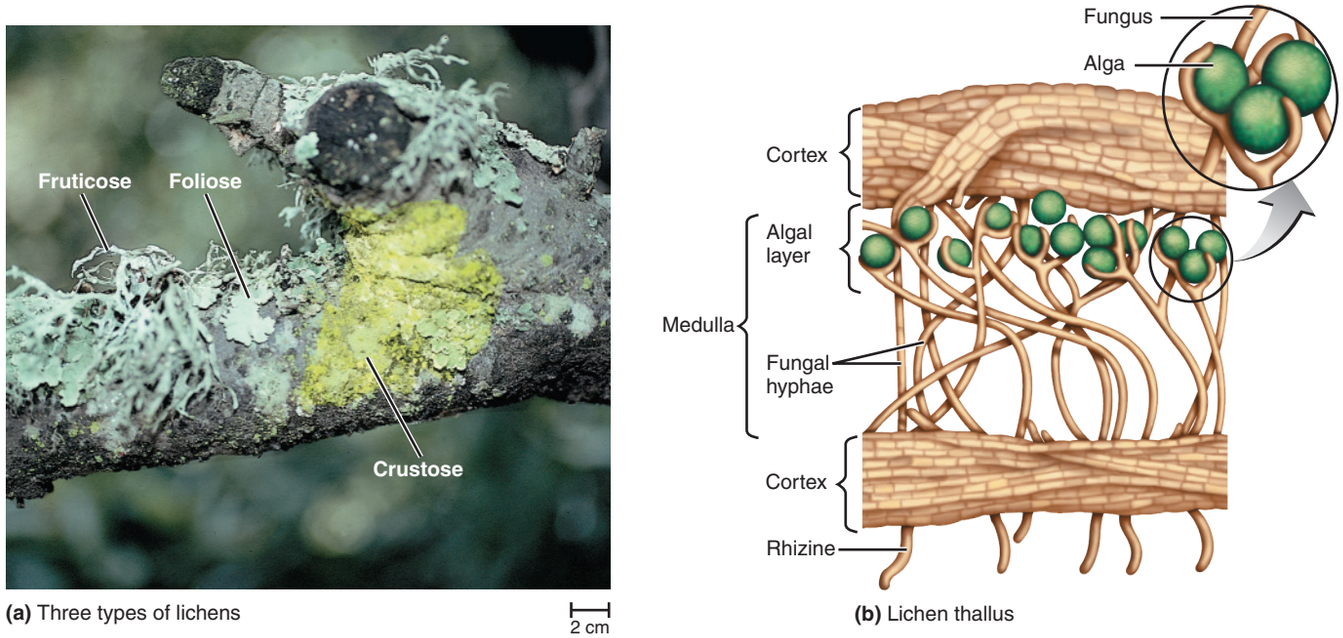
12-6 Describe the roles of the fungus and the alga in a lichen.

A **lichen** is a combination of a green alga (or a cyanobacterium) and a fungus. Lichens are placed in the Kingdom Fungi and are classified according to the fungal partner, most often an ascomycete. The two organisms exist in a *mutualistic* relationship, in which each partner benefits. The lichen is very different from either the alga or fungus growing alone, and if the partners are separated, the lichen no longer exists.

Approximately 13,500 species of lichens occupy quite diverse habitats. Because they can inhabit areas in which neither fungi nor algae could survive alone, lichens are often the first life forms to colonize newly exposed soil or rock. Lichens secrete organic acids that chemically weather rock, and they accumulate nutrients needed for plant growth. Also found on trees, concrete structures, and rooftops, lichens are some of the slowest-growing organisms on Earth.

Lichens can be grouped into three morphologic categories (Figure 12.11a). *Crustose lichens* grow flush or encrusted onto the substratum; *foliose lichens* are more leaflike; and *fruticose lichens* have fingerlike projections. The lichen's thallus, or body, forms when fungal hyphae grow around algal cells to become the **medulla** (Figure 12.11b). Fungal hyphae project below the lichen body to form **rhizines**, or holdfasts. Fungal hyphae also form a **cortex**, or protective covering, over the algal layer and sometimes under it as well. Interestingly, the lichen cortex has a microbiome that includes yeast and heterotrophic bacteria. After incorporation into a lichen thallus, the alga continues to grow, and the growing hyphae can incorporate new algal cells.

When the algal partner is cultured separately in vitro, about 1% of the carbohydrates produced during photosynthesis are released into the culture medium; however, when the alga is associated with a fungus, the algal plasma membrane is more permeable, and up to 60% of the products of photosynthesis



(a) Three types of lichens

(b) Lichen thallus

Figure 12.11 Lichens. The lichen medulla is composed of fungal hyphae surrounding the algal layer. The protective cortex is a layer of fungal hyphae that covers the surface and sometimes the bottom of the lichen.

Q In what ways are lichens unique?

are released to the fungus or are found as end-products of fungal metabolism. The fungus clearly benefits from this association. The alga, while giving up valuable nutrients, is in turn compensated; it receives from the fungus both attachment (rhizines) and protection from desiccation (cortex).

Lichens had considerable economic importance in ancient Greece and other parts of Europe as dyes for clothing. Erythrolitmin, the dye used in litmus paper to indicate changes in pH, is extracted from a variety of lichens. Moreover, usnic acid from *Usnea* is used as an antimicrobial agent in China. Some lichens or their acids can cause allergic contact dermatitis in humans.

Populations of lichens readily incorporate cations (positively charged ions) into their thalli. Therefore, the concentrations and types of cations in the atmosphere can be determined by chemical analyses of lichen thalli. In addition, the presence or absence of species that are quite sensitive to pollutants can be used to ascertain air quality. A 1985 study in the Cuyahoga Valley in Ohio revealed that 81% of the 172 lichen species that were present in 1917 were gone. Because this area is severely affected by air pollution, the inference is that air pollutants, primarily sulfur dioxide (the major contributor to acid precipitation), caused the death of sensitive species.

Lichens are the major food for tundra herbivores such as caribou and reindeer. After the 1986 Chernobyl nuclear disaster, 70,000 reindeer in Lapland that had been raised for food had to be destroyed because of high levels of radiation. The lichens on which the reindeer fed had absorbed radioactive cesium-137, which had spread in the air.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **12-5** What is the role of lichens in nature?
- **12-6** What is the role of the fungus in a lichen?

Algae

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **12-7** List the defining characteristics of algae.
- **12-8** List the outstanding characteristics of the phyla that include algae discussed in this chapter.
- **12-9** Identify two beneficial and two harmful effects of algae.

Algae are familiar as the large brown kelp in coastal waters, the green scum in a puddle, and the green stains on soil or on rocks. A few algae are responsible for food poisonings. Some algae are unicellular; others form chains of cells (are filamentous); and a few have thalli.

"Algae" is a common name and not a taxonomic group; it is a way to describe photoautotrophs that lack the roots, stems, and leaves of plants. Historically algae were considered plants, but they lack the embryos of true plants. Algae are classified by DNA typing of their rRNA genes, structures, pigments, and other qualities (Table 12.3). They are currently grouped into superclades.

TABLE 12.3 Characteristics of Selected Algae

	Brown Algae	Diatoms	Dinoflagellates	Water Molds	Euglenoids	Red Algae	Green Algae
Superclade	SAR*	SAR	SAR	SAR	Excavata	Archaeplastida	Archaeplastida
Phylum	Phaeophyta	Bacillariophyta	Dinoflagellata	Oomycota	Euglenozoa	Rhodophyta	Chlorophyta
Color	Brownish	Brownish	Brownish	Colorless, white	Green	Reddish	Green
Cell Wall	Cellulose and alginic acid	Pectin and silica	Cellulose in membrane	Cellulose	None	Cellulose	Cellulose
Cell Arrangement	Multicellular	Unicellular	Unicellular	Multicellular	Unicellular	Multicellular (most)	Unicellular and multicellular
Photosynthetic Pigments	Chlorophyll *a* and *c*, xanthophylls	Chlorophyll *a* and *c*, carotene, xanthophylls	Chlorophyll *a* and *c*, carotene, xanthins	None	Chlorophyll *a* and *b*	Chlorophyll *a* and *d*, phycobiliproteins	Chlorophyll *a* and *b*
Sexual Reproduction	Yes	Yes	In a few	Yes (similar to Mucoromycota)	No	Yes	Yes
Storage Material	Carbohydrate	Oil	Starch	None	Glucose polymer	Glucose polymer	Starch
Pathogenicity	None	Toxins	Toxins	Parasitic	None	A few produce toxins	None

*SAR stands for Stramenopiles, Alveolates, Rhizaria.

Characteristics of Algae

Again, algae are relatively simple eukaryotic photoautotrophs that lack the tissues (roots, stem, and leaves) of plants. The identification of unicellular and filamentous algae requires microscopic examination.

Habitats

Algae are mostly aquatic, and most are found in the ocean, although some thrive in soil or on trees when sufficient moisture is available there. Water is necessary for physical support, reproduction, and the diffusion of nutrients. Generally, algae are found in cool temperate waters, although the large floating mats of the brown alga *Sargassum* (sar-GAS-sum) are found in the subtropical Sargasso Sea, and some species of brown algae grow in Antarctic waters. Algal habitats depend on the availability of appropriate nutrients, wavelengths of light, and surfaces on which they can grow. Unusual habitats include the hair of both the sedentary South American sloth and the polar bear. Probable locations for representative algae are shown in Figure 12.12a.

Vegetative Structures

The body of a multicellular alga is called a thallus. Thalli of the larger multicellular algae, those commonly called seaweeds, consist of branched **holdfasts** (which anchor the alga to a rock), stemlike and often hollow **stipes**, and leaflike **blades** (Figure 12.12b). The cells covering the thallus can carry out photosynthesis. The thallus lacks the conductive tissue (xylem and phloem) characteristic of vascular plants; algae absorb nutrients from the water over their entire surface. The stipe is not lignified or woody, so it does not offer the support of a plant's stem; instead, the surrounding water supports the algal thallus; some algae are also buoyed by a floating, gas-filled bladder called a *pneumatocyst*.

Life Cycle

All algae can reproduce asexually. Multicellular algae with thalli and filamentous forms can fragment; each piece is capable of forming a new thallus or filament. When a unicellular alga divides, its nucleus divides (mitosis), and the two nuclei move to opposite parts of the cell. The cell then divides into two complete cells (cytokinesis).

Algae can also reproduce sexually (Figure 12.13). In some species, asexual reproduction may occur for several generations and then, under different conditions, the same species reproduce sexually. Other species alternate generations so that the offspring resulting from sexual reproduction reproduce asexually, and the next generation then reproduces sexually.

Nutrition

Most algae are photosynthetic; however, the oomycotes, or fungal-like algae, are chemoheterotrophs. Photosynthetic algae are found throughout the photic (light) zone of bodies of water. Chlorophyll *a* (a light-trapping pigment) and accessory pigments involved in photosynthesis are responsible for the distinctive colors of many algae.

Following are descriptions of some phyla of algae.

Selected Phyla of Algae

The *brown algae*, or kelp, are macroscopic; some reach lengths of 50 m (see Figure 12.12b). Most brown algae are found in coastal waters. Brown algae have a phenomenal growth rate. Some grow at rates exceeding 20 cm per day and therefore can

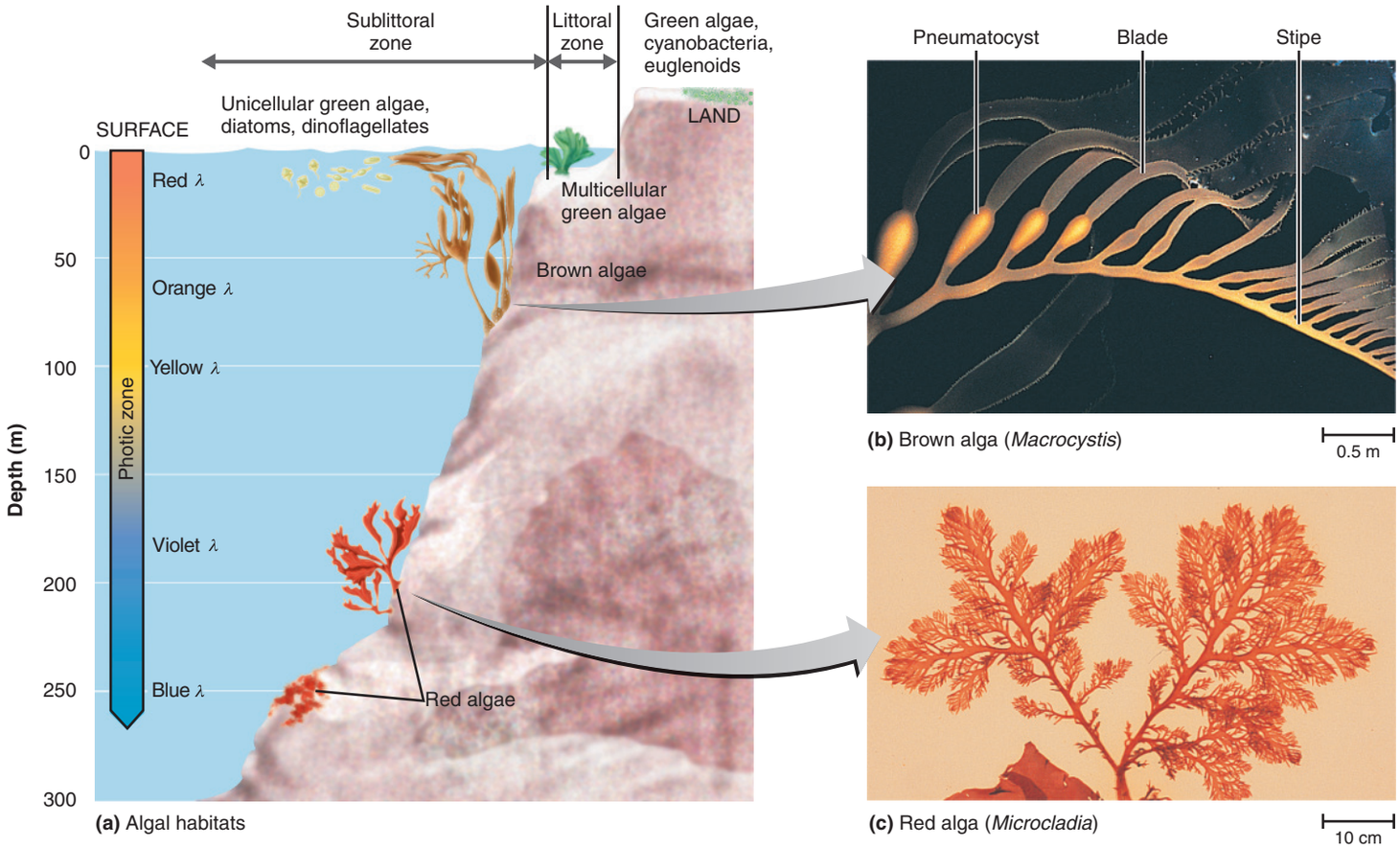


Figure 12.12 Algae and their habitats. **(a)** Although unicellular and filamentous algae can be found on land, they frequently exist in marine and freshwater environments as plankton. Multicellular green, brown, and red algae require a suitable attachment site, adequate water for support, and light of the appropriate wavelengths. **(b)** *Macrocystis porifera,* a brown alga. The hollow stipe and gas-filled pneumatocysts hold the thallus upright, ensuring that sufficient sunlight is received for growth. **(c)** *Microcladia,* a red alga. The delicately branched red algae get their color from phycobiliprotein accessory pigments.

Q What red alga is toxic for humans?

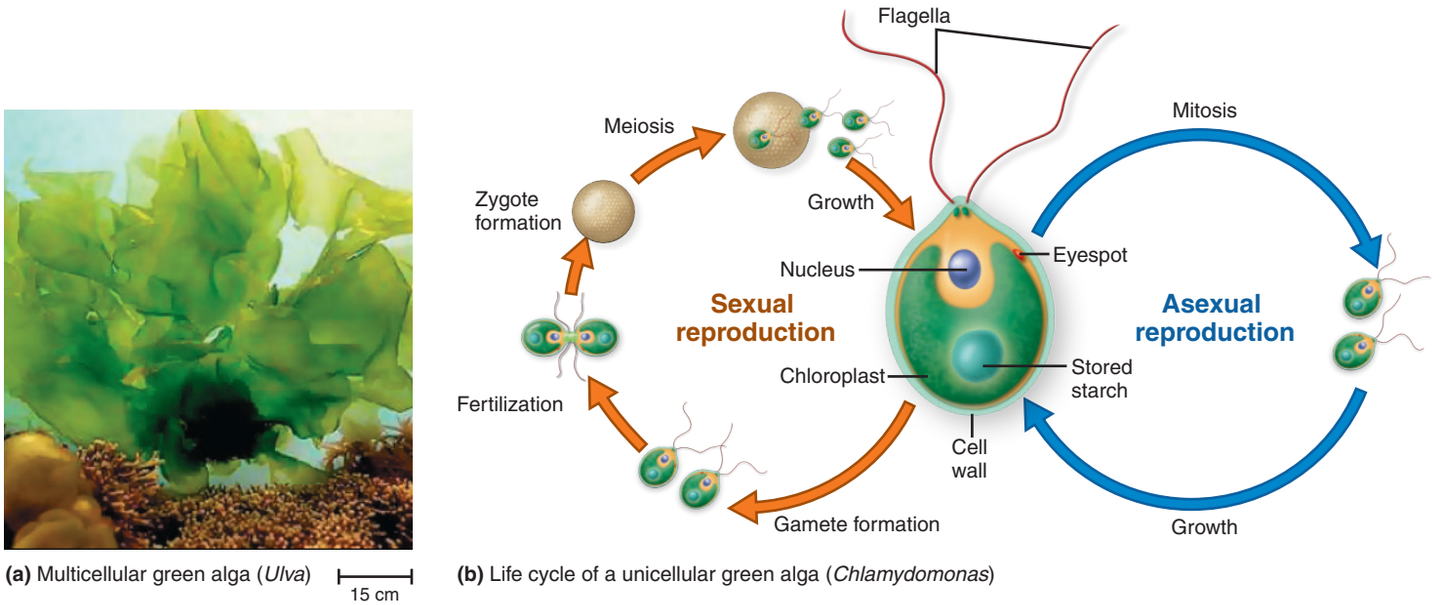


Figure 12.13 Green algae. **(a)** The multicellular green alga *Ulva.* **(b)** The life cycle of the unicellular green alga *Chlamydomonas.* Two whiplike flagella propel this cell.

Q What is the primary role of algae in the ecosystem?

be harvested regularly. **Algin**, a thickener used in many foods (such as ice cream and cake decorations), is extracted from their cell walls. Algin is also used in the production of a wide variety of nonfood goods, including rubber tires and hand lotion. The brown alga *Laminaria japonica* is used to induce vaginal dilation before surgical entry into the uterus through the vagina.

Most *red algae* have delicately branched thalli and can live at greater ocean depths than other algae (see Figure 12.12c). The thalli of a few red algae form crustlike coatings on rocks and shells. The red pigments enable red algae to absorb the blue light that penetrates deepest into the ocean. The agar used in microbiological media is extracted from many red algae. Another gelatinous material, carrageenan, comes from a species of red algae commonly called Irish moss. Carrageenan and agar are used as thickening agents in evaporated milk, ice cream, and pharmaceuticals. *Gracilaria* species, which grow in the Pacific Ocean, are used by humans for food. However, some members of this genus can produce a lethal toxin.

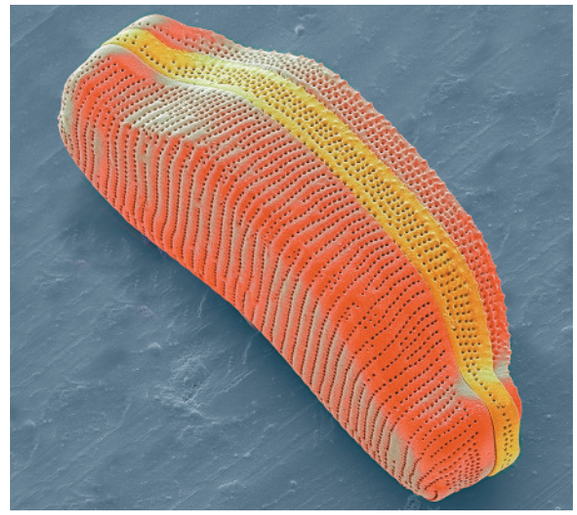
Green algae have cellulose cell walls, contain chlorophyll *a* and *b*, and store starch, as plants do (see Figure 12.13a). Green algae are believed to have given rise to terrestrial plants. Most green algae are microscopic, although they may be either unicellular or multicellular. Some filamentous kinds form grass-green scum in ponds.

Euglenoids are photoautotrophs in the Euglenozoa. This phylum also includes chemoheterotrophic parasites that are discussed later (see Figure 12.18c). Euglenoids have a semirigid protein layer called a *pellicle* under the plasma membrane, and they move by means of a flagellum at the anterior end. Most euglenoids also have a red *eyespot* at the anterior end. This carotenoid-containing organelle senses light and directs the cell in the appropriate direction by using a *preemergent flagellum*. Some euglenoids are facultative chemoheterotrophs. In the dark, they ingest organic matter through a cytostome.

Diatoms, dinoflagellates, and water molds are grouped into a superclade. *Diatoms* (**Figure 12.14**) are unicellular or filamentous algae with complex cell walls that consist of pectin and a layer of silica. The two parts of the wall fit together like the halves of a Petri dish. The distinctive patterns of the walls are a useful tool in diatom identification. Diatoms store energy captured through photosynthesis in the form of oil.

Some diatoms produce a neurotoxin called domoic acid. The first reported outbreak of a neurological disease caused by diatoms was reported in 1987 in Canada. Amnesic shellfish poisoning affected people who ate mussels that had been feeding on diatoms. Since 1991, hundreds of marine birds and sea lions have died from the same **domoic acid toxicosis** in California.

Dinoflagellates are unicellular algae that are members of a large group of free-floating aquatic organisms collectively called **plankton** (**Figure 12.15**). They have a rigid structure that is due to cellulose embedded in their plasma membrane. Some



(a) ***Eunotia***, a freshwater diatom that grows in acidic water

(b) Asexual reproduction of a diatom

Figure 12.14 Diatoms. **(a)** In this micrograph of *Eunotia serra*, notice how the two parts of the cell wall fit together. **(b)** Asexual reproduction in a diatom. During mitosis, each offspring cell retains one-half of the cell wall from the parent (yellow) and must synthesize the remaining half (pink).

Q What human disease is caused by diatoms?

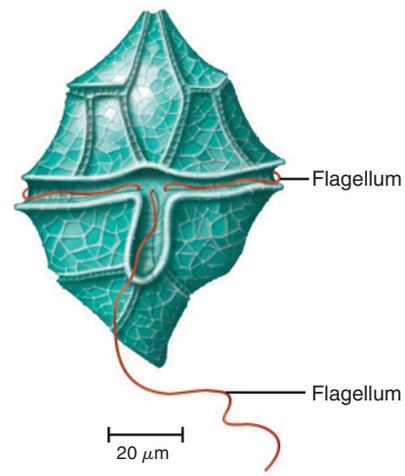


Figure 12.15 *Peridinium*, a dinoflagellate. Like all dinoflagellates, *Peridinium* has two flagella in perpendicular, opposing grooves. When the two flagella beat simultaneously, they cause the cell to spin.

Q What human diseases are caused by dinoflagellates?

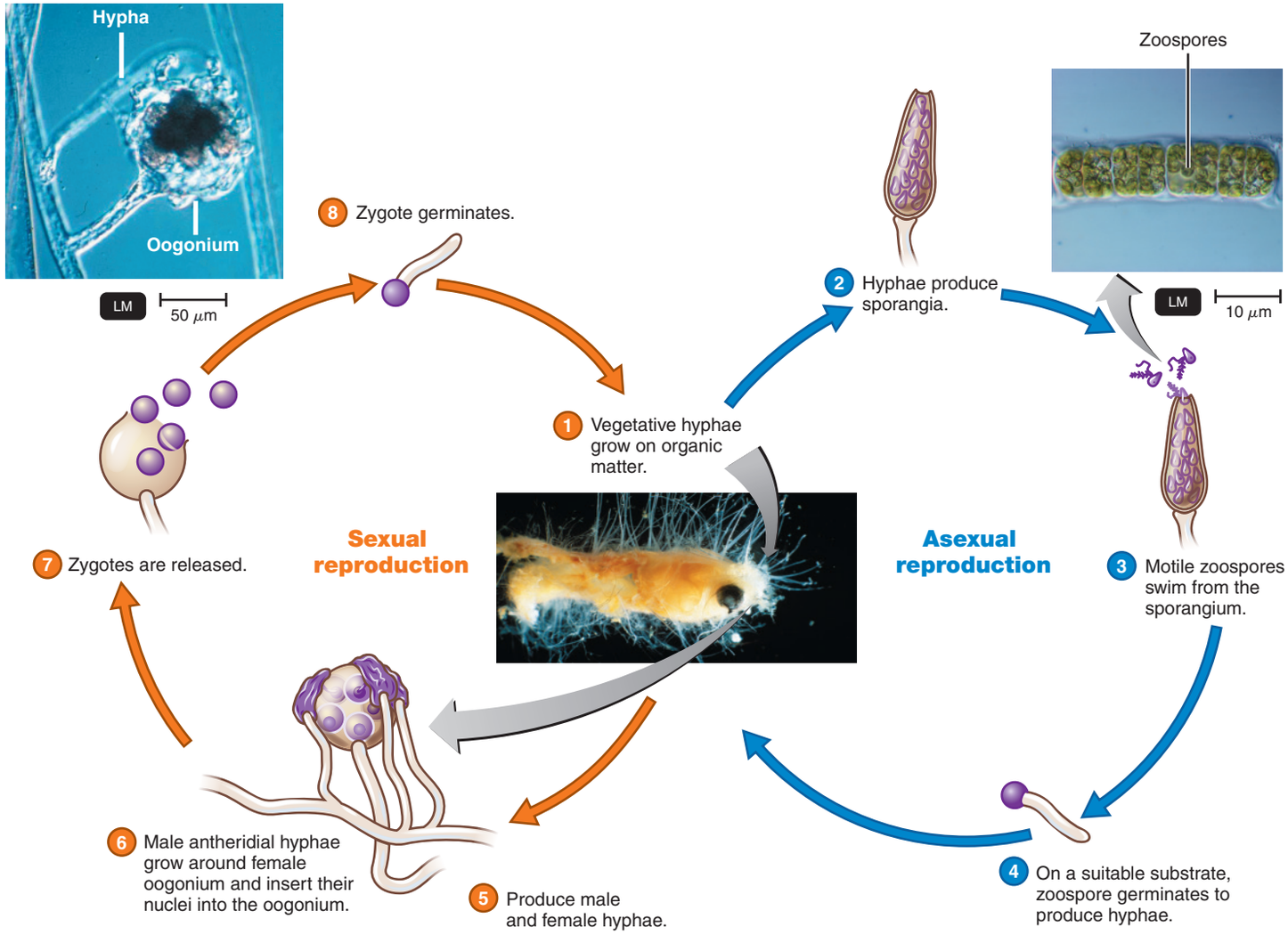


Figure 12.16 Oomycotes. These fungus-like algae are common decomposers in freshwater. A few cause diseases of fish and terrestrial plants. Note the fuzzy mycelium of *Saprolegnia ferax* on the fish.

Q Is this oomycote more closely related to *Penicillium* or to diatoms?

dinoflagellates produce neurotoxins that can be harmful to humans and other animals when the algae grow excessively. In the last 20 years, a worldwide increase in toxic marine algae has killed millions of fish, hundreds of marine mammals, and even some humans. *Gambierdiscis* is one example of a neurotoxin-producing dinoflagellate. It causes ciguatera disease in humans who eat fish that ingested large numbers of this dinoflagellate. As just noted, algae can harm fish as well; for example, when fish swim through large numbers of the dinoflagellate *Karenia brevis* (kar-en-Ē-ah BREV-is), the algae trapped in the gills of the fish release a neurotoxin that stops the fish from breathing.

Another phylum of algae are the *water molds*, or *Oomycota*. Most are decomposers. They form cottony masses on dead algae and animals, usually in freshwater (Figure 12.16). Asexually, the oomycotes resemble the mucoromycete fungi in that they produce spores in a sporangium (spore sac). However, oomycote spores, called **zoospores** (Figure 12.16, top right), have two flagella; fungi do not have flagella. Because of their superficial similarity to fungi, oomycotes were previously classified with the fungi. Their cellulose cell walls always raised the question about their relationship to algae, and recent DNA analyses have confirmed that oomycotes are more closely related to diatoms and dinoflagellates than to fungi. Many of the terrestrial oomycotes are plant parasites. The USDA inspects imported plants for white rust disease caused by an oomycote. Often travelers, or even commercial plant importers, do not realize that one little blossom or seedling could carry a pest that is capable of causing millions of dollars' worth of damage to U.S. agriculture.

In Ireland during the mid-1800s, 1 million people died when the country's potato crop failed. The alga that caused the great potato blight, *Phytophthora infestans* (fī-TOF-thor-ah in-FES-tans), was one of the first microorganisms to be associated with a disease. Today, *Phytophthora* spp. infect soybeans, potatoes, and cocoa worldwide. Vegetative hyphae produce motile zoospores as well as specialized sex hyphae (see Figure 12.16). Decades ago, all U.S. strains were one mating type ("sex") called A1. But in the 1990s, the other mating type, A2, was identified in the United States. When in close proximity, A1 and A2 will differentiate to produce haploid gametes that can mate to form a zygote. When the zygote germinates, the resulting alga will have genes from both parents.

In Australia, *P. cinnamoni* has infected about 20% of one species of *Eucalyptus* tree. *Phytophthora* spp. were introduced into the United States in the 1990s and cause widespread damage to fruit and vegetable crops. "Sudden oak death" caused by *P. ramorum* has killed millions of trees in California since it was introduced in the 1990s.

Roles of Algae in Nature

Algae are an important part of any aquatic food chain. Using the energy produced in photophosphorylation, they fix carbon dioxide in the atmosphere into carbohydrates that can be consumed by chemoheterotrophs. Molecular oxygen (O_2) is a by-product of their photosynthesis. The top few meters of any body of water contain planktonic algae. As 75% of the Earth is covered with water, it is estimated that 50–80% of the Earth's O_2 is produced by planktonic algae.

Seasonal changes in nutrients, light, and temperature cause fluctuations in algal populations; periodic increases in numbers of planktonic algae are called **algal blooms**. (Harmful alga blooms are discussed in Chapter 15.) Blooms of dinoflagellates are responsible for seasonal red tides. Blooms of a certain few species indicate that the water in which they grow is polluted because these algae thrive in high concentrations of nitrogen and phosphorus from agriculture and sewage. When algae die, the decomposition of the large numbers of cells associated with an algal bloom depletes the level of dissolved oxygen in the water. (This phenomenon is discussed in Chapter 27.)

Much of the world's petroleum was formed from diatoms and other planktonic organisms that lived 300 million years ago. When such organisms died and were buried by sediments, the organic molecules they contained were not decomposed. Instead, heat and pressure resulting from the Earth's geologic movements altered the oil stored in the cells, as well as the cell membranes. Oxygen and other elements were eliminated, leaving a residue of hydrocarbons in the form of petroleum and natural gas deposits.

Many unicellular algae are symbionts in animals. The giant clam *Tridacna* (trī-DAK-nah) has evolved special organs that host dinoflagellates. As the clam sits in shallow water, the algae proliferate in these organs when they are exposed to the sun. The algae release glycerol into the clam's bloodstream, thus supplying the clam's carbohydrate requirement. In addition, evidence suggests that the clam gets essential proteins by phagocytizing old algae.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **12-7** How do algae differ from bacteria? From fungi?
- **12-8, 12-9** List the cell wall composition and diseases caused by the following algae: diatoms, dinoflagellates, oomycotes.

Protozoa

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

12-10 List the defining characteristics of protozoa.

12-11 Describe the outstanding characteristics of the phyla of protozoa discussed in this chapter, and give an example of each.

12-12 Differentiate an intermediate host from a definitive host.

Protozoa are unicellular, eukaryotic organisms. Among the protozoa are many variations on eukaryotic cell structure, as we shall see. Protozoa inhabit water and soil. The feeding and growing stage, or **trophozoite**, feeds upon bacteria and small particulate nutrients. Some protozoa are part of the normal microbiota of animals. See Exploring the Microbiome in Chapter 4. Of the over 50,000 species of protozoa, relatively few cause human disease. Those few, however, have significant health and economic impact. Malaria, for example, is caused by the protozoan *Plasmodium* and is the fourth leading cause of death in children in Africa. Researchers at the U.S. Department of Agriculture are studying an apicomplexan protozoan that reduces egg production by fire ants. The hope is the protozoan can control fire ants, which cause millions of dollars in agricultural damage each year and can cause painful stings.

Characteristics of Protozoa

The term *protozoa* means "first animals," in reference to the organism's animal-like nutrition. However, protozoa are quite different from animals—a few are photosynthetic, and many have complex life cycles that enable them to get from one host to the next. Protozoa are now classified into the same superclades as algae, based on DNA analyses (see Table 12.4).

Life Cycle

Reproduction Protozoa reproduce asexually by fission, budding, or schizogony. **Schizogony** is multiple fission; the nucleus undergoes multiple divisions before the cell divides. After many nuclei are formed, a small portion of cytoplasm concentrates around each nucleus, and then the single cell separates into offspring cells.

Sexual reproduction has been observed in some protozoa. The ciliates, such as *Paramecium*, reproduce sexually by **conjugation**

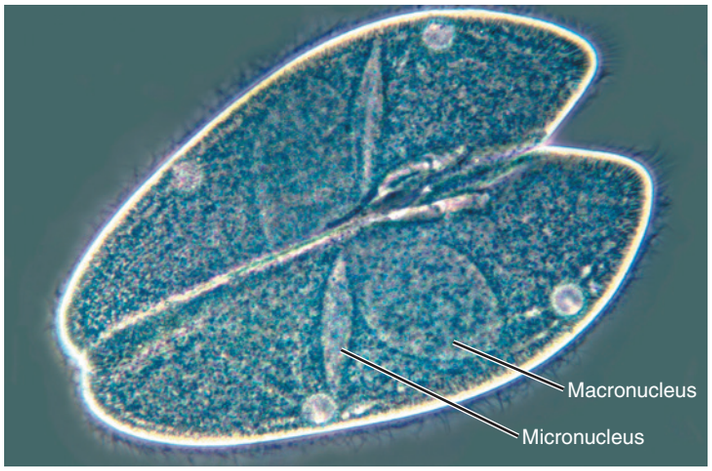


Figure 12.17 Conjugation in the ciliate protozoan *Paramecium*. Sexual reproduction in ciliates is by conjugation. Each cell has two nuclei: a micronucleus and a macronucleus. The micronucleus is haploid and is specialized for conjugation. One micronucleus from each cell will migrate to the other cell during conjugation. Both cells will then go on to produce two offspring cells.

Q Does conjugation result in more cells?

(Figure 12.17), which is very different from the bacterial process of the same name (see Figure 8.30). During protozoan conjugation, two cells fuse, the micronucleus of each undergoes meiosis, and a haploid nucleus (micronucleus) from each cell migrates to the other cell. Each migrating haploid micronucleus fuses with the haploid micronucleus within the other cell. The parent cells separate, each now a fertilized cell. When the cells later divide, they produce offspring cells with recombined DNA. Some protozoa produce **gametes (gametocytes)**, which are haploid sex cells. During reproduction, two gametes fuse to form a diploid zygote.

Encystment Under certain adverse conditions, some protozoa produce a protective capsule called a **cyst**. A cyst permits the organism to survive when food, moisture, or oxygen are lacking, when temperatures are not suitable, or when toxic chemicals are present. A cyst also enables a parasitic species to survive outside a host. This is important because parasitic protozoa may have to be excreted from one host in order to get to a new host. The cyst formed by members of the phylum Apicomplexa is called an **oocyst**. It is a reproductive structure in which new cells are produced asexually.

Nutrition

Protozoa are mostly aerobic heterotrophs, although many intestinal protozoa are capable of anaerobic growth. Two chlorophyll-containing groups, dinoflagellates and euglenoids, are often studied with algae. Remember that algae and protozoa are not taxonomic groups; they are common names used to describe some physical characteristics.

All protozoa live in areas with a large supply of water. Some protozoa transport food across the plasma membrane. However, some have a protective covering, or *pellicle*, and thus require specialized structures to take in food. Ciliates take in food by waving their cilia toward a mouthlike opening called a **cytostome**. Amebae engulf food by surrounding it with pseudopods and phagocytizing it. In all protozoa, digestion takes place in membrane-enclosed **vacuoles**, and waste may be eliminated through the plasma membrane or through a specialized **anal pore**.

Medically Important Protozoa

The biology of protozoa is discussed in this chapter. Diseases caused by protozoa are described in Part Four, Microorganisms and Human Disease.

Protozoa are a large and diverse group. Current schemes of classifying protozoan species into phyla are based on DNA data and morphology. As more information is obtained, some of the phyla discussed here may be grouped to form kingdoms.

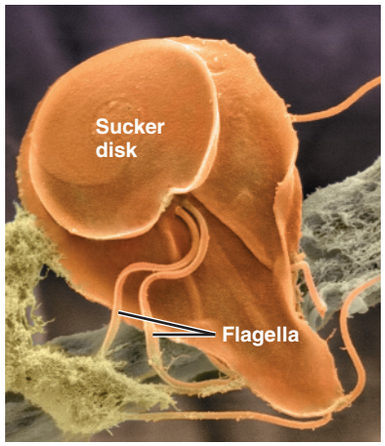
Excavata

Single-celled eukaryotes with a feeding groove in the cytoskeleton have been placed in the superclade Excavata. Most are spindle-shaped and possess flagella (Figure 12.18). This superclade includes two phyla that lack mitochondria—Diplomonad and Parabasalid—and the phylum Euglenozoa, which has mitochondria.

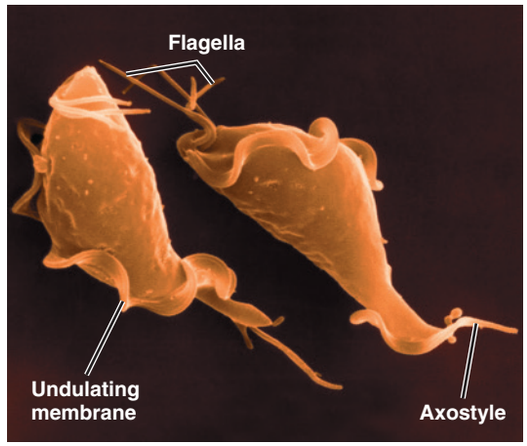
Diplomonad Members of the phylum Diplomonad have two nuclei and two sets of four flagella, but they lack mitochondria. An example is *Giardia duodenalis* (JAR-dē-ah doo-ah-den-AL-is), sometimes called *G. lamblia* or *G. intestinalis*. The parasite (Figure 12.18a and Figure 25.16a) is found in the small intestine of humans and other mammals. It is excreted in the feces as a cyst (Figure 25.16b) and survives in the environment before being ingested by the next host. Diagnosis of giardiasis, the disease caused by *G. duodenalis*, is often based on the identification of cysts in feces.

Parabasalid Another human parasite that lacks mitochondria is the Parabasalid *Trichomonas vaginalis* (TRIK-ō-mō-nas vaj-i-NA-lis), shown in Figure 12.18b and Figure 26.16. Like some other flagellates, *T. vaginalis* has an **undulating membrane**, which consists of a membrane bordered by a flagellum. *T. vaginalis* does not have a cyst stage and must be transferred from host to host quickly before desiccation occurs. *T. vaginalis* is found in the vagina and in the male urinary tract. It is usually transmitted by sexual intercourse but can also be transmitted by toilet facilities or towels.

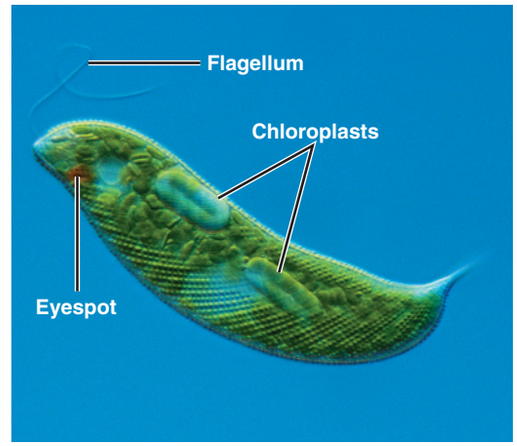
Euglenozoa Two groups of flagellated cells are included in the **Euglenozoa** based on rRNA genes, disk-shaped mitochondria, and absence of sexual reproduction. These include the euglenoids that were discussed with the algae, and the hemoflagellates. Also referred to as blood parasites, the **hemoflagellates** are transmitted by the bites of blood-feeding insects and are found in the circulatory system of the bitten host. To survive in this viscous fluid, hemoflagellates usually have long, slender



(a) *Giardia duodenalis.* This parasite has eight flagella and a ventral sucker disk that the parasite uses to attach itself to the intestine. SEM 3 μm



(b) *Trichomonas vaginalis.* This flagellate causes urinary and genital tract infections. Notice the small undulating membrane. This flagellate does not have a cyst stage. SEM 7.5 μm



(c) *Euglena.* Euglenoids are autotrophs. Semirigid rings supporting the pellicle allow *Euglena* to change shape. SEM 10 μm

Figure 12.18 Members of the superclade Excavata are spindle-shaped and have flagella.

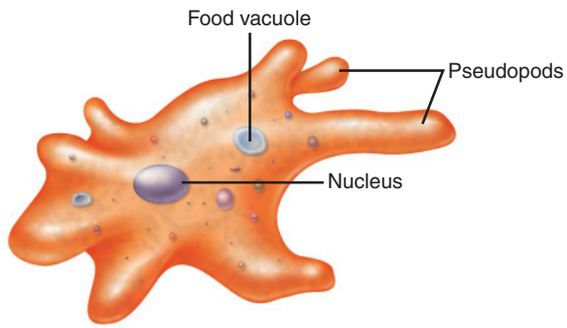
Q How does *Giardia* obtain energy without mitochondria?

bodies and an undulating membrane. The genus *Trypanosoma* (TRI-pa-nō-sō-mah) includes the species that causes African sleeping sickness, *T. brucei* (BROOS-e-ē), which is transmitted by the tsetse fly. *T. cruzi* (KROOZ-ē; see Figure 23.22), the causative agent of Chagas disease, is transmitted by the "kissing bug," so named because it bites on the face (see Figure 12.32d). After entering the insect, the trypanosome rapidly multiplies by schizogony. If the insect then defecates while biting a human, it can release trypanosomes that can contaminate the bite wound.

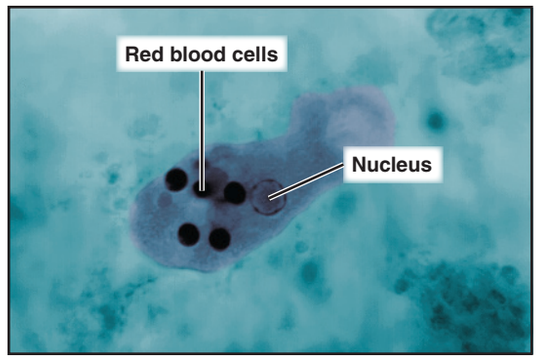
Amoebozoa

The **amebae** (phylum Amoebozoa) move by extending blunt, lobelike projections of the cytoplasm called **pseudopods** (Figure 12.19a). Any number of pseudopods can flow from one side of the ameba, and the rest of the cell will flow toward the pseudopods.

Entamoeba histolytica (en-tah-MĒ-bah his-tō-LI-ti-kah) is the only pathogenic ameba found in the human intestine. As many as 10% of the human population may be colonized by this ameba. New techniques, including DNA analyses and lectin binding, have revealed that the amebae thought to be *E. histolytica* are actually two distinct species. The nonpathogenic species, *E. dispar* (DIS-par) is most common. The invasive *E. histolytica* (Figure 12.19b) causes amebic dysentery. In the human intestine, *E. histolytica* uses proteins called lectins to attach to the galactose of the plasma membrane and causes cell lysis. *E. dispar* does not have galactose-binding lectins. *Entamoeba* is transmitted between humans through ingestion of the cysts that are excreted in the feces of the infected person. *Acanthamoeba* (ah-kan-thah-MĒ-bah) growing in water, including tap water, can infect the cornea,



(a) *Amoeba proteus*



(b) *Entamoeba histolytica* LM 5 μm

Figure 12.19 Amebae. (a) To move and to engulf food, amebae (such as this *Amoeba proteus*) extend cytoplasmic structures called pseudopods. Food vacuoles are created when pseudopods surround food and bring it into the cell. **(b)** *E. histolytica.* The presence of ingested red blood cells is diagnostic for *Entamoeba.*

Q How do amebic dysentery and bacillary dysentery differ?

causing blindness, and the brain, causing a disease called granulomatous amebic encephalitis (see Figure 22.17b).

Since 1990, *Balamuthia* (bal-ah-MOO-thē-ah) has been reported as another cause of granulomatous amebic encephalitis in the United States and other countries. The ameba most often infects immunocompromised people. Like *Acanthamoeba*, *Balamuthia* is a free-living ameba found in water and is not transmitted from human to human (see Figure 22.17c).

Apicomplexa

Members of the phylum **Apicomplexa** are not motile in their mature forms and are obligate intracellular parasites. Apicomplexans are characterized by the presence of a complex of special organelles at the apexes (tips) of their cells (hence the phylum name). The organelles in these apical complexes contain enzymes that penetrate the host's tissues.

Apicomplexans have a complex life cycle that involves transmission between several hosts. An example of an apicomplexan is *Plasmodium* (plaz-MŌ-dē-um), the causative agent of malaria. Annually, around 250 million new cases occur, resulting in 600,000 deaths. The complex life cycle of *Plasmodium* makes it difficult to develop a vaccine against malaria. A recently approved vaccine containing proteins from two stages in the life cycle reduced severe malaria by 30% in vaccinated children.

Plasmodium grows by sexual reproduction in the *Anopheles* (an-AH-fe-lēz) mosquito (**Figure 12.20**). When an *Anopheles* carrying the infective stage of *Plasmodium*, called a **sporozoite**, bites a human, sporozoites can be injected into the human. The sporozoites undergo schizogony in liver cells and produce thousands of trophozoites called **merozoites**, which infect red blood cells. The young merozoite looks like a ring in which the nucleus and cytoplasm are visible. This is called a **ring stage** (see Figure 23.25b).

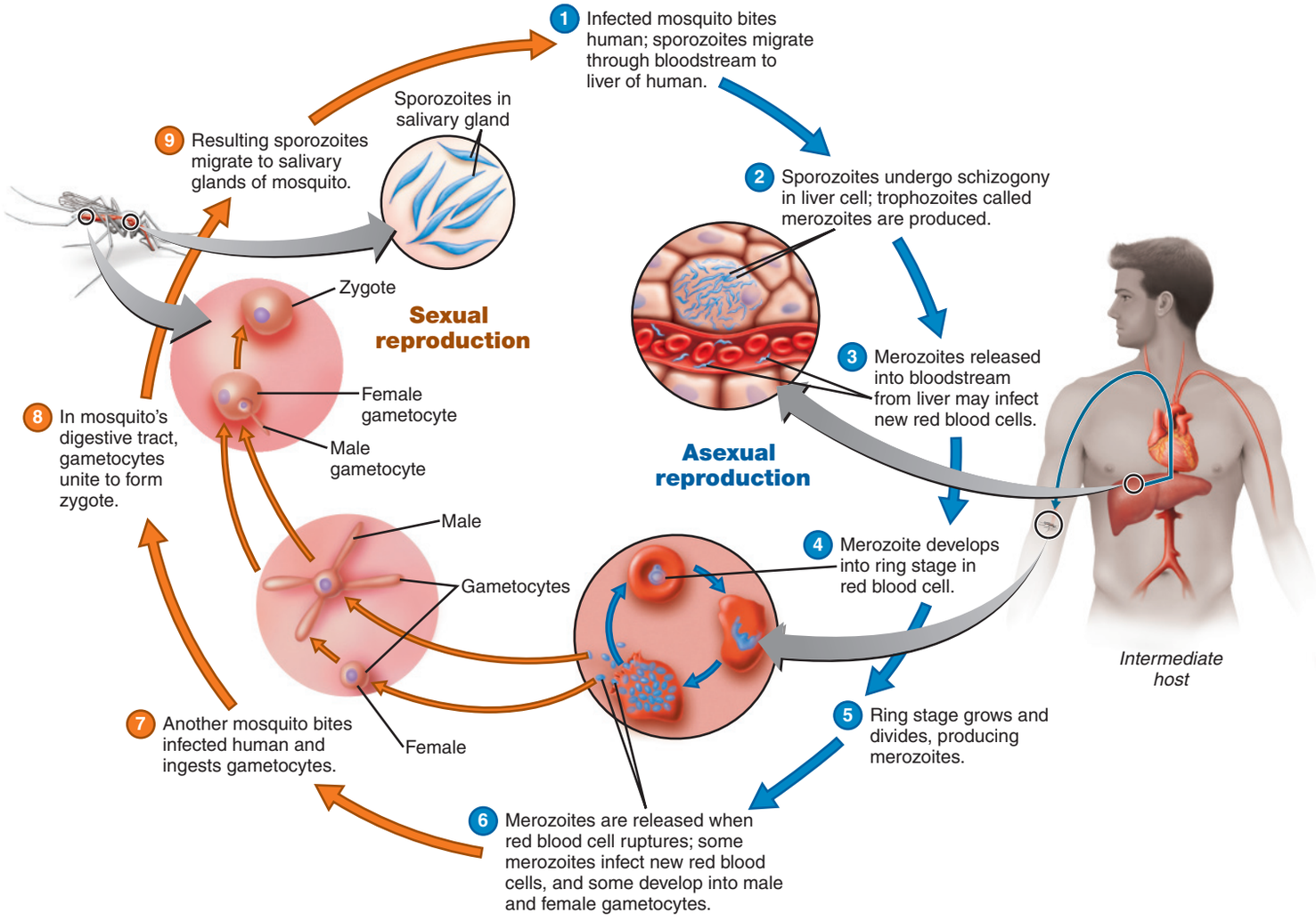


Figure 12.20 The life cycle of *Plasmodium vivax*, the apicomplexan that causes malaria. Asexual reproduction (schizogony) of the parasite takes place in the liver and in the red blood cells of a human host. Sexual reproduction occurs in the intestine of an *Anopheles* mosquito after the mosquito has ingested gametocytes.

Q What is the definitive host for *Plasmodium*?

The red blood cells eventually rupture and release more merozoites. Upon release of the merozoites, their waste products, which cause fever and chills, are also released. Most of the merozoites infect new red blood cells and perpetuate their cycle of asexual reproduction. However, some develop into male and female sexual forms (gametocytes). Even though the gametocytes themselves cause no further damage, they can be picked up by the bite of another *Anopheles* mosquito; they then enter the mosquito's intestine and begin their sexual cycle. Their progeny can then be injected into a new human host by the biting mosquito.

The mosquito is the **definitive host** because it harbors the sexually reproducing stage of *Plasmodium*. The host in which the parasite undergoes asexual reproduction (in this case, the human) is the **intermediate host**.

Malaria is diagnosed in the laboratory by microscopic observation of thick blood smears for the presence of *Plasmodium* (see Figure 23.25). A peculiar characteristic of malaria is that the interval between periods of fever caused by the release of merozoites is always the same for a given species of *Plasmodium* and is always a multiple of 24 hours. The reason and mechanism for such precision have intrigued scientists. After all, why should a parasite need a biological clock? *Plasmodium*'s development is regulated by the host's body temperature, which normally fluctuates over a 24-hour period. The parasite's careful timing ensures that gametocytes are mature at night, when *Anopheles* mosquitoes are feeding, and thereby facilitates transmission of the parasite to a new host.

Another apicomplexan parasite of red blood cells is *Babesia microti* (bah-BĒ-sē-ah mi-KRŌ-tē). *Babesia* causes fever and anemia in immunosuppressed individuals. In the United States, it is transmitted by the tick *Ixodes scapularis* (IKS-ō-des skap-ū-LAR-is).

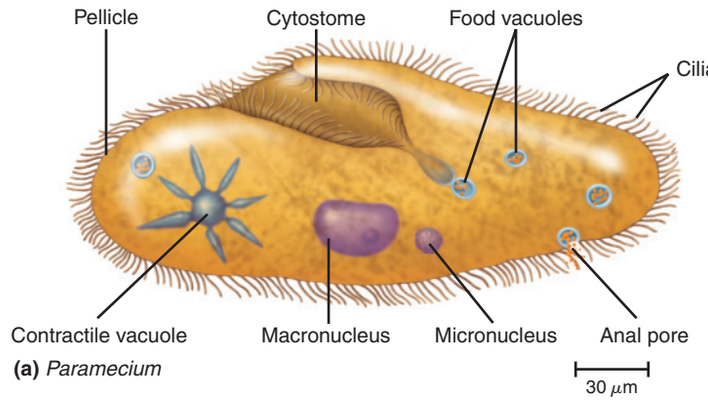
Toxoplasma gondii (toks-ō-PLAZ-mah GON-dē-ē) is another apicomplexan intracellular parasite of humans. The life cycle of this parasite involves domestic cats. The trophozoites, called **tachyzoites**, reproduce sexually and asexually in an infected cat, and **oocysts**, each containing eight sporozoites, are excreted with feces. If the oocysts are ingested by humans or other animals, the sporozoites emerge as tachyzoites, which can reproduce in the tissues of the new host (see Figure 23.23). *T. gondii* is dangerous during pregnancy because it can cause congenital infections in utero. Tissue examination and observation of *T. gondii* are used for diagnosis. Antibodies may be detected by ELISA and by indirect fluorescent-antibody tests (see Chapter 18).

Cryptosporidium (KRIP-tō-spor-i'dē-um) lives inside the cells lining the small intestine and can be transmitted to humans through the feces of cows, rodents, dogs, and cats. Inside the host cell, each *Cryptosporidium* organism forms four oocysts (see Figure 25.17), each containing four sporozoites. When the oocyst ruptures, sporozoites may infect new cells in the host or be released with the feces. In 1993, *Cryptosporidium* infected 400,000 people in Milwaukee. See the **Clinical Focus** box.

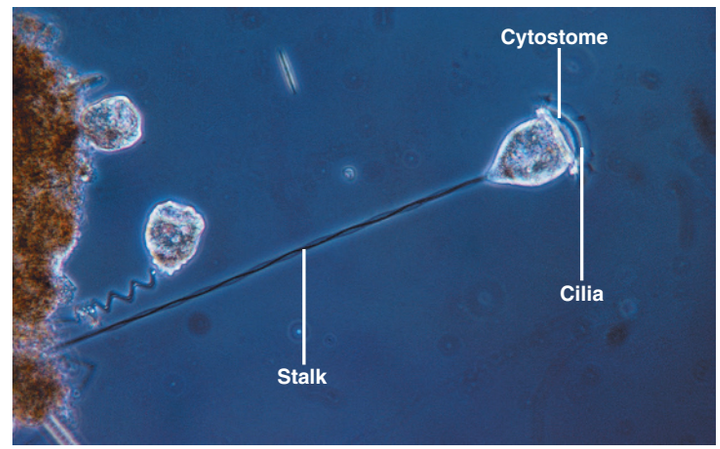
During the 1980s, epidemics of waterborne diarrhea were identified on every continent except Antarctica. The causative agent was misidentified as a cyanobacterium because the outbreaks occurred during warm months and the disease agent looked like a prokaryotic cell. In the 1990s, following a multistate outbreak associated with raspberries, the organism was identified as an apicomplexan similar to *Cryptosporidium*. In 2020, the new parasite, *Cyclospora cayetanensis* (sī-klō-SPOR-ah kī'ah-tan-EN-sis), was responsible for more than 2000 cases of diarrhea associated with fresh produce in the United States and Canada.

Ciliates

Ciliates have cilia that are similar to but shorter than flagella. The cilia are arranged in precise rows on the cell (**Figure 12.21**). They are moved in unison to propel the cell through its environment and to bring food particles to the mouthlike cytostome.



(a) *Paramecium*



(b) *Vorticella*

Figure 12.21 Ciliates. **(a)** *Paramecium* is covered with rows of cilia. Food enters through the cytostome, is digested in food vacuoles, and undigested materials leave via the anal pore. Contractile vacuoles release excess water. The macronucleus is involved with protein synthesis and other ongoing cellular activities. The micronucleus functions in sexual reproduction. **(b)** *Vorticella* attaches to objects in water by the base of its stalk. The springlike stalk can expand, allowing *Vorticella* to feed in different areas. Cilia surround its cytostome.

Q What ciliate can cause disease in humans?

TABLE 12.4 Some Representative Pathogenic Protozoa

Superclade	Phylum	Human Pathogens	Distinguishing Features	Disease	Source of Human Infections
Excavata	Diplomonads	*Giardia duodenalis*	Two nuclei, eight flagella	Giardial enteritis	Fecal contamination of drinking water
	Parabasalids	*Trichomonas vaginalis*	No encysting stage	Urethritis, vaginitis	Contact with vaginal-urethral discharge
	Euglenozoa	*Leishmania*	Flagellated form in sand fly; ovoid form in vertebrate host	Leishmaniasis	Sand fly bite (*Phlebotomus*)
		Naegleria fowleri	Flagellated and ameboid forms	Meningoencephalitis	Water (during swimming)
		Trypanosoma cruzi	Undulating membrane	Chagas disease	*Triatoma* bite (kissing bug)
		T. brucei gambiense, T. b. rhodesiense		African trypanosomiasis	Tsetse fly bite
Amorphea	Amoebozoa	*Acanthamoeba*	Pseudopods	Granulomatous amebic encephalitis	Water
		Entamoeba histolytica, E. dispar		Amebic dysentery	Fecal contamination of drinking water
		Balamuthia		Granulomatous amebic encephalitis	Water
SAR*	Apicomplexa	*Babesia microti*	Complex life cycles may require multiple hosts	Babesiosis	Domestic animals, ticks
		Cryptosporidium		Diarrhea	Water, humans, other animals
		Cyclospora		Diarrhea	Water
		Cystoisospora belli		Diarrhea	Contaminated food or water
		Plasmodium		Malaria	*Anopheles* mosquito bite
		Toxoplasma gondii		Toxoplasmosis	Cats; beef; congenital
	Dinoflagellata	*Alexandrium*	Photosynthetic	Paralytic shellfish poisoning	Ingestion of dinoflagellates in mollusks or fish
		Gambierdiscus		Ciguatera	
		Pfiesteria		*Pfiesteria*-human illness syndrome	
	Bacillariophyta	*Pseudo-nitzschia*	Photosynthetic	Amnesic shellfish poisoning	Ingestion of diatoms in mollusks
	Ciliophora	*Balantidium coli*	Only parasitic ciliate of humans	Balantidial dysentery	Fecal contamination of drinking water

*SAR stands for Stramenopiles, Alveolates, Rhizaria.

The only ciliate that is a human parasite is *Balantidium coli* (bal′an-TID-ē-um KO-lē), the causative agent of a severe, though rare, type of dysentery. When the host ingests cysts, they enter the large intestine, into which the trophozoites are released. The trophozoites produce proteases and other substances that destroy host cells. The trophozoite feeds on host cells and tissue fragments. Its cysts are excreted with feces.

Table 12.4 lists some typical parasitic protozoa and the diseases they cause.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **12-10** Identify three differences between protozoa and animals.
- **12-11** Do protozoa have mitochondria?
- **12-12** Where does *Plasmodium* undergo sexual reproduction?

Slime Molds

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

12-13 Compare and contrast cellular slime molds and plasmodial slime molds.

Slime molds are closely related to amebae and are placed in the phylum Amoebozoa. There are two taxa of slime molds: cellular and plasmodial.

Cellular slime molds are typical eukaryotic cells that resemble amebae. In the life cycle of cellular slime molds (Figure 12.22), the ameboid cells live and grow by ingesting fungi and bacteria by phagocytosis. Cellular slime molds are of interest to biologists who study cellular migration and aggregation because when conditions are unfavorable, large numbers of ameboid cells aggregate to form a single structure. This aggregation occurs because

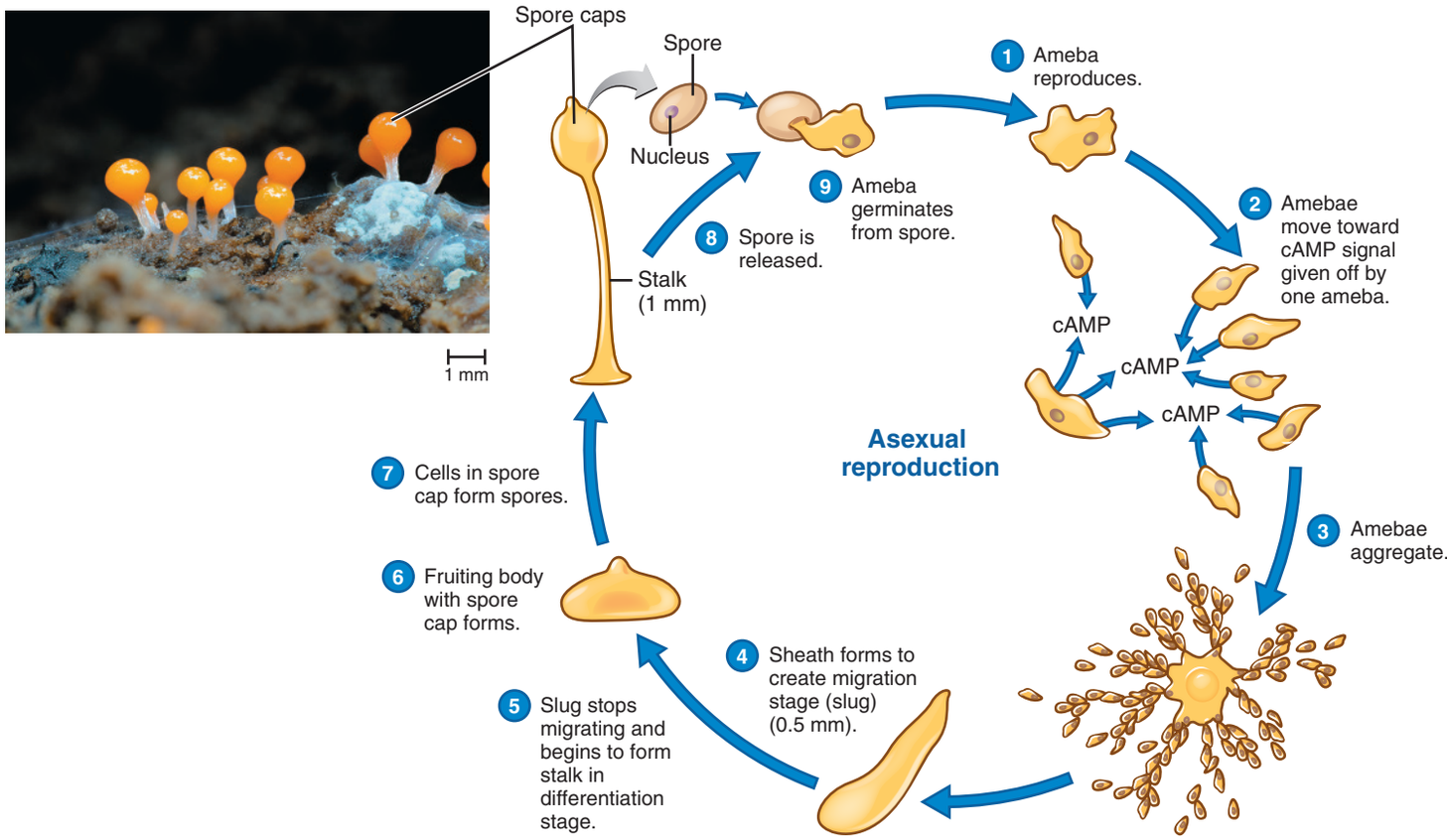


Figure 12.22 The generalized life cycle of a cellular slime mold. The micrograph shows a spore cap of *Hemitrichia*.

Q What characteristics do slime molds share with protozoa? With fungi?

some individual amebae produce the chemical cyclic AMP (cAMP), toward which the other amebae migrate. Some of the ameboid cells form a stalk; others swarm up the stalk to form a spore cap, and most of these differentiate into spores. When spores are released under favorable conditions, they germinate to form single amebae.

In 1973, a Dallas resident discovered a pulsating red blob in his backyard. The news media claimed that a "new life form" had been found. For some people, the "creature" evoked spine-chilling recollections of an old science fiction movie. Before imaginations got carried away too far, biologists calmed everyone's worst fears (or dashed their highest hopes). The amorphous mass was merely a plasmodial slime mold, they explained. But its unusually large size—46 cm in diameter—startled even scientists.

Plasmodial slime molds were first scientifically reported in 1729. A plasmodial slime mold exists as a mass of protoplasm with many nuclei (it is multinucleated). This mass of protoplasm is called a **plasmodium** (Figure 12.23). The entire plasmodium moves as a giant ameba; it engulfs organic debris and bacteria. Biologists have found that musclelike proteins forming microfilaments account for the movement of the plasmodium.

When plasmodial slime molds are grown in laboratories, a phenomenon called **cytoplasmic streaming** is observed, during which the protoplasm within the plasmodium moves and changes both its speed and direction so that the oxygen and nutrients are evenly distributed. The plasmodium continues to grow as long as there is enough food and moisture for it to thrive.

When either is in short supply, the plasmodium separates into many groups of protoplasm; each of these groups forms a stalked sporangium, in which haploid spores (a resistant, resting form of the slime mold) develop. When conditions improve, these spores germinate, fuse to form diploid cells, and develop into a multinucleated plasmodium.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

12-13 Why are slime molds classified with amebae and not fungi?

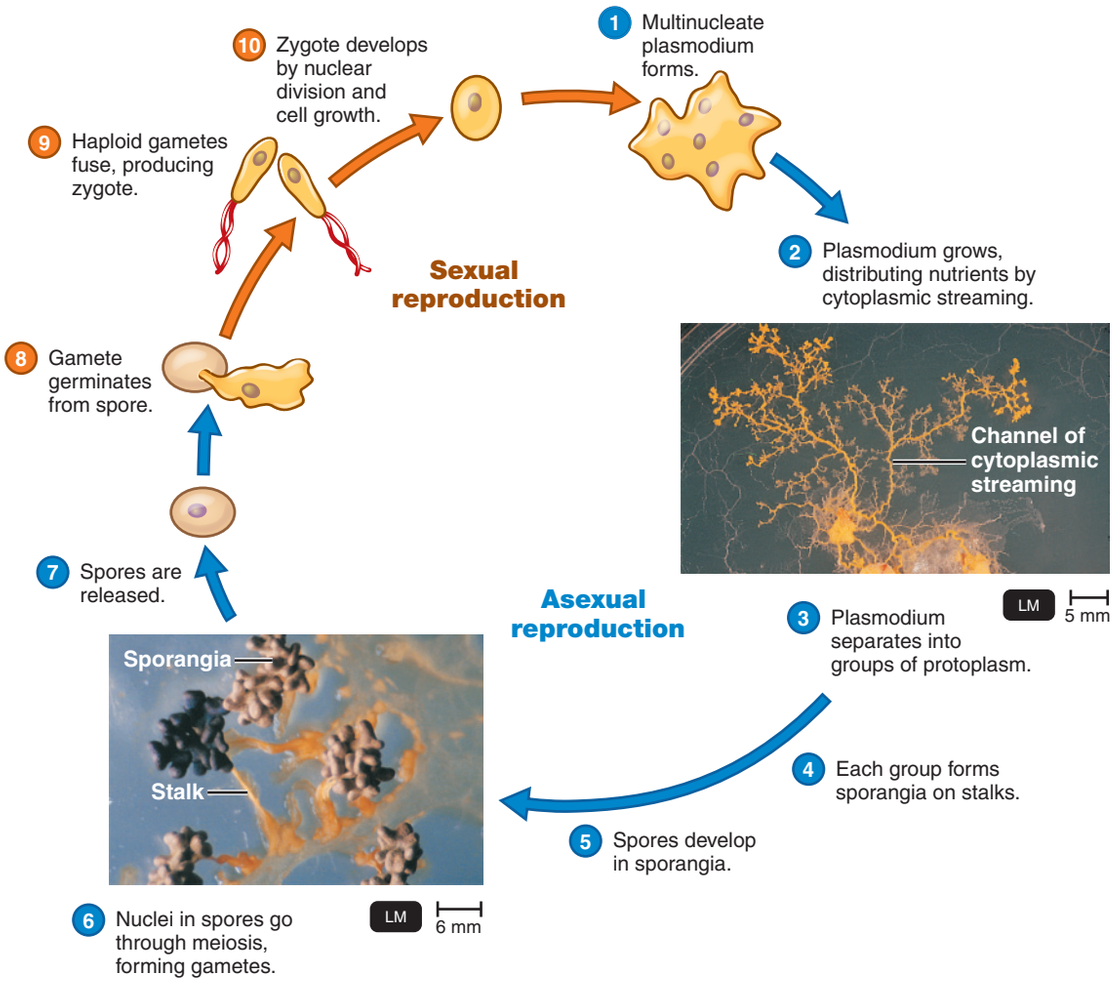


Figure 12.23 The life cycle of a plasmodial slime mold. *Physarum* is pictured in the photomicrographs.

Q How do cellular and plasmodial slime molds differ?

Helminths

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

12-14 List the distinguishing characteristics of parasitic helminths.

12-15 Provide a rationale for the elaborate life cycle of parasitic worms.

12-16 List the characteristics of the two classes of parasitic platyhelminths, and give an example of each.

12-17 Describe a parasitic infection in which humans serve as a definitive host, as an intermediate host, and as both.

12-18 List the characteristics of parasitic nematodes, and give an example of infective eggs and infective larvae.

12-19 Compare and contrast platyhelminths and nematodes.

A number of parasitic animals spend part or all of their lives in humans. Most of these animals belong to two phyla: Platyhelminthes (flatworms) and Nematoda (roundworms). These worms are commonly called **helminths**. There are also free-living species in these phyla, but we'll limit our discussion to the parasitic species. Diseases caused by parasitic worms are discussed in Part Four.

Characteristics of Helminths

Helminths are multicellular eukaryotic animals that generally possess digestive, circulatory, nervous, excretory, and reproductive systems.

Distinguishing Features of Parasitic Helminths

Parasitic helminths must be highly specialized to live inside their hosts. The following generalizations distinguish parasitic helminths from their free-living relatives:

1. *They may lack a digestive system.* They can absorb nutrients from the host's food, body fluids, and tissues.
2. *Their nervous system is reduced.* They do not need an extensive nervous system because they do not have to search for food or respond much to their environment. The environment within a host is fairly constant.
3. *Their means of locomotion is occasionally reduced or completely lacking.* Because they are transferred from host to host, they don't need to search actively for a suitable habitat.
4. *The reproductive system is often complex.* Individuals produce large numbers of eggs, by which a suitable host is infected.

Life Cycle

The life cycle of parasitic helminths can be extremely complex, involving a succession of intermediate hosts for completion of each **larval** (developmental) stage of the parasite and a definitive host for the adult parasite.

Adult helminths may be **dioecious**; male reproductive organs are in one individual, and female reproductive organs are in another. In those species, reproduction occurs only when two adults of the opposite mating strain (male and female) are in the same host.

Adult helminths may also be **monoecious**, or **hermaphroditic**—one animal has both male and female reproductive organs. Two hermaphrodites may copulate and simultaneously fertilize each other. A few types of hermaphrodites fertilize themselves.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **12-14** Why are drugs for parasitic helminths often toxic to the host?
- **12-15** Of what value is the complicated life cycle of parasitic helminths?

Figure 12.24 Infection by a parasitic platyhelminth. An increase in the trematode *Ribeiroia* in recent years has caused deformities in frogs. Frogs with multiple limbs have been found from Minnesota to California. *Ribeiroia* trematode free-swimming larvae, cercariae, infect tadpoles. The encysted metacercariae displace developing limb buds, causing abnormal limb development. The increase in the parasite may be due to fertilizer runoff and warmer water that increases algae, which are food for the parasite's intermediate host snail.

Q What tailed stage of the parasite lives in a snail?

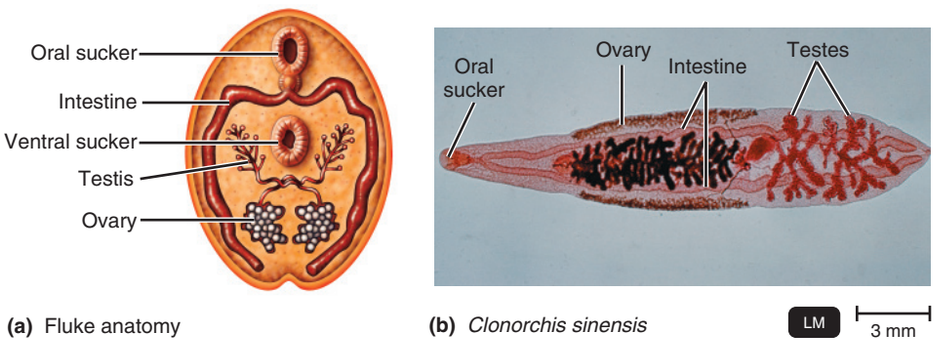
Platyhelminths

Members of the phylum Platyhelminthes, the **flatworms**, are dorsoventrally flattened. The classes of parasitic flatworms include the trematodes and cestodes. These parasites cause disease or developmental disturbances in a wide variety of animals (Figure 12.24).

Trematodes

Trematodes, or **flukes**, often have flat, leaf-shaped bodies with a ventral sucker and an oral sucker (Figure 12.25). The suckers hold the organism in place. Flukes obtain food by absorbing it through their nonliving outer covering, called the **cuticle**. Flukes are given common names according to the tissue of the definitive host in which the adults live (for example, lung fluke, liver fluke, blood fluke). The Asian liver fluke *Clonorchis sinensis* (klon-OR-kis sin-EN-sis) is occasionally seen in immigrants in the United States, but it cannot be transmitted because its intermediate hosts are not in the United States.

To exemplify a fluke's life cycle, let's look at the lung fluke, *Paragonimus* spp. (par-ah-GO-nē-mus). *Paragonimus* species occur throughout the world. *P. kellicotti* (kel-li-KOT-tē), endemic in the United States, has been associated with eating raw crayfish on river raft trips. Humans acquire the infection from eating undercooked meat containing the encysted larvae, **metacercariae**, that hatch in the human intestine. The larvae migrate and can penetrate the diaphragm, reaching the lungs, where they mature into adults. The adult lung fluke lives in the bronchioles of humans and other mammals and is approximately 6 mm wide and 12 mm long. The hermaphroditic adults liberate



(a) Fluke anatomy

(b) *Clonorchis sinensis*

Figure 12.25 Flukes. **(a)** General anatomy of an adult fluke, shown in cross section. The oral and ventral suckers attach the fluke to the host. The mouth is located in the center of the oral sucker. Flukes are hermaphroditic; each animal contains both testes and ovaries. **(b)** The Asian liver fluke *Clonorchis sinensis*. Notice the incomplete digestive system. Heavy infestations may block bile ducts from the liver.

Q Why is the flatworm digestive system called "incomplete"?

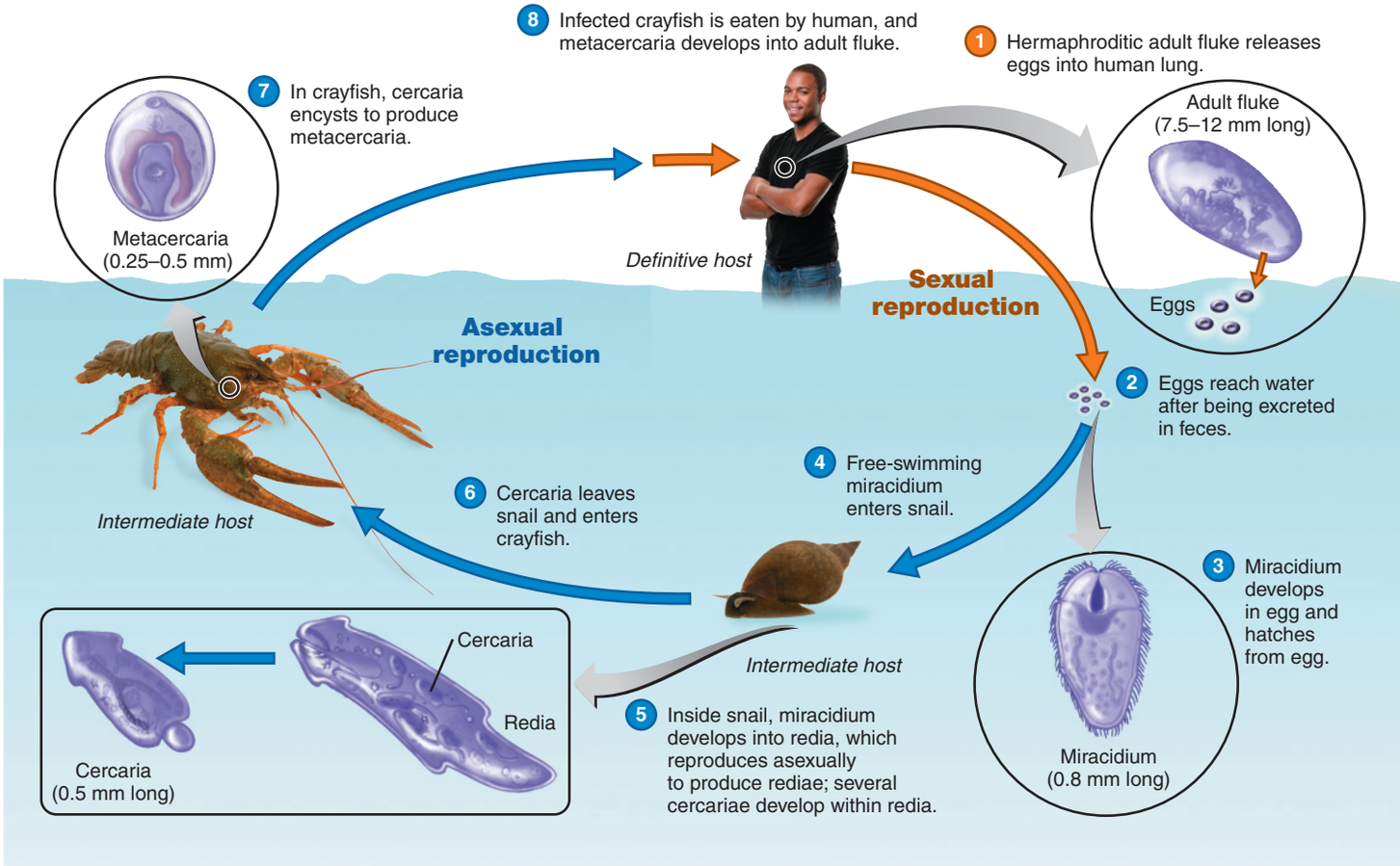


Figure 12.26 The life cycle of the lung fluke, *Paragonimus* spp. The trematode reproduces sexually in a human and asexually in a snail, its first intermediate host. Larvae encysted in the second intermediate host, freshwater crabs and crayfish, infect humans and other mammals when ingested. Also see the *Schistosoma* life cycle in Figure 23.27.

Q Of what value is this complex life cycle to *Paragonimus*?

eggs into the bronchi. Because sputum that contains eggs is frequently swallowed, the eggs are usually excreted in feces of the definitive host. If the life cycle is to continue, the eggs must reach a body of water. A series of steps occurs that ensure adult flukes can mature in the lungs of a new host. The life cycle is shown in Figure 12.26.

In a laboratory diagnosis, sputum and feces are examined microscopically for fluke eggs. Infection results from eating undercooked freshwater crustaceans, and the disease can be prevented by thoroughly cooking crayfish and freshwater crabs.

The free-swimming larvae, **cercariae**, of the blood fluke *Schistosoma* (shis-tō-SŌ-mah) are not ingested. Instead, they burrow through the skin of the human host and enter the circulatory system. The adults are found in certain abdominal and pelvic veins. The disease schistosomiasis is a major world health problem; it will be discussed further in Chapter 23.

Cestodes

Cestodes, or **tapeworms**, are intestinal parasites. Their structure is shown in Figure 12.27. The head, or **scolex** (plural: *scoleces*), has suckers for attaching to the intestinal mucosa of the definitive host; some species also have small hooks for attachment. Tapeworms do not ingest the tissues of their hosts; in fact, they completely lack a digestive system. To obtain nutrients from the small intestine, they absorb food through their cuticle. The body consists of segments called **proglottids**. Proglottids are continually produced by the neck region of the scolex, as long as the scolex is attached and alive. Each mature proglottid contains both male and female reproductive organs. The proglottids farthest away from the scolex are the mature ones containing fertilized eggs. Mature proglottids are essentially bags of eggs, each of which is infective to the proper intermediate host.

CLINICAL FOCUS The Most Frequent Cause of Recreational Waterborne Diarrhea

As you read through this box, you'll encounter a series of questions that microbiologists ask themselves as they try to diagnose a disease. Try to answer each question before going on to the next one.

1. One week after her birthday party, 8-year-old Chloe had watery diarrhea, vomiting, and abdominal cramping. Her mother took her to the pediatrician because Chloe's symptoms weren't going away on their own.

   What diseases are possible? (*Hint:* **See Diseases in Focus 25.2 and 25.5.**)

2. Possible diseases included giardiasis, cryptosporidiosis, cyclosporiasis, and amebic dysentery. Chloe's pediatrician took a stool sample from Chloe and sent it to the lab for testing. The result of acid-fast staining of her stool is shown in **Figure A**.

   What is the disease?

3. The acid-fast staining stains the *Cryptosporidium* oocysts red, therefore making them easy to identify. In this case, the sporozoites are made visible inside the oocyst at the arrow. The oocysts are infectious immediately upon being excreted in feces.

   What else do you need to know?

4. Chloe's birthday party was held at a community water park. Chloe's mother immediately followed up with the parents of the other children who attended the party. She found out that the other 20 children also had watery diarrhea, vomiting, or abdominal cramps. All the children recovered from the infection 2 to 10 days after becoming ill.

   How is this disease transmitted?

5. *Cryptosporidium* infection is transmitted by the fecal–oral route. It results from ingesting *Cryptosporidium* oocysts through the consumption of fecally contaminated food or water or through direct person-to-person or animal-to-person contact. The infectious dose is low; feeding studies have demonstrated that ingesting as few as 10 to 30 oocysts can cause infection in healthy persons. Infected persons have been reported to shed 10^8 to 10^9 oocysts in a single bowel movement and to excrete oocysts for up to 50 days after cessation of diarrhea.

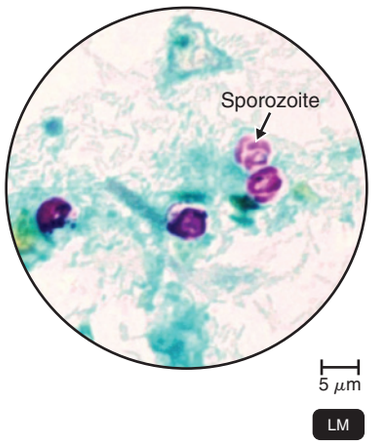


Figure A **Acid-fast stain of Chloe's feces.**

6. *Cryptosporidium* has emerged as the most frequently recognized cause of recreational water-associated outbreaks of gastroenteritis, even in venues with disinfected water. It became a reportable disease in 1994 (**Figure B**).

   How can *Cryptosporidium* outbreaks be prevented?

Cryptosporidium species are known to be resistant to most chemical disinfectants, such as chlorine. Recommendations to reduce the risk of infection include the following:

- Do not swim during and for 2 weeks after diarrheal illness.
- Avoid swallowing pool water.
- Wash hands after using the restroom or changing diapers.

Source: Adapted from *MMWR* 70(20), 733–738, May 21, 2021.

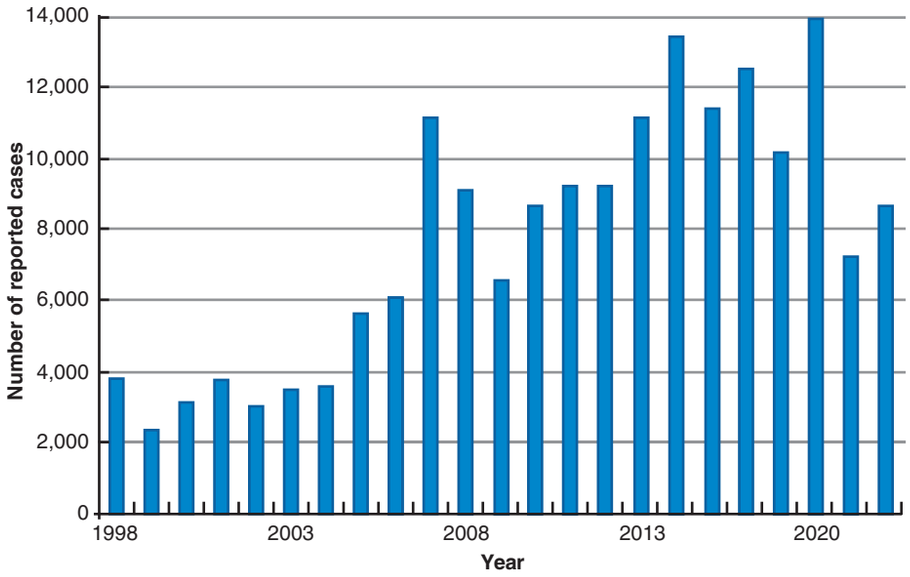


Figure B **Reported cases of cryptosporidiosis in the United States. CDC.**

Humans as Definitive Cestode Hosts The adults of *Taenia saginata* (TE-nē-ah sa-jin-AH-tah), the beef tapeworm, live in humans and can reach a length of 6 m. The scolex is about 2 mm long and is followed by a thousand or more proglottids. The feces of an infected human contain mature proglottids, each of which contains thousands of eggs. As the proglottids wriggle away from the fecal material, they increase their chances of being ingested by an animal that is grazing. Upon ingestion by cattle,

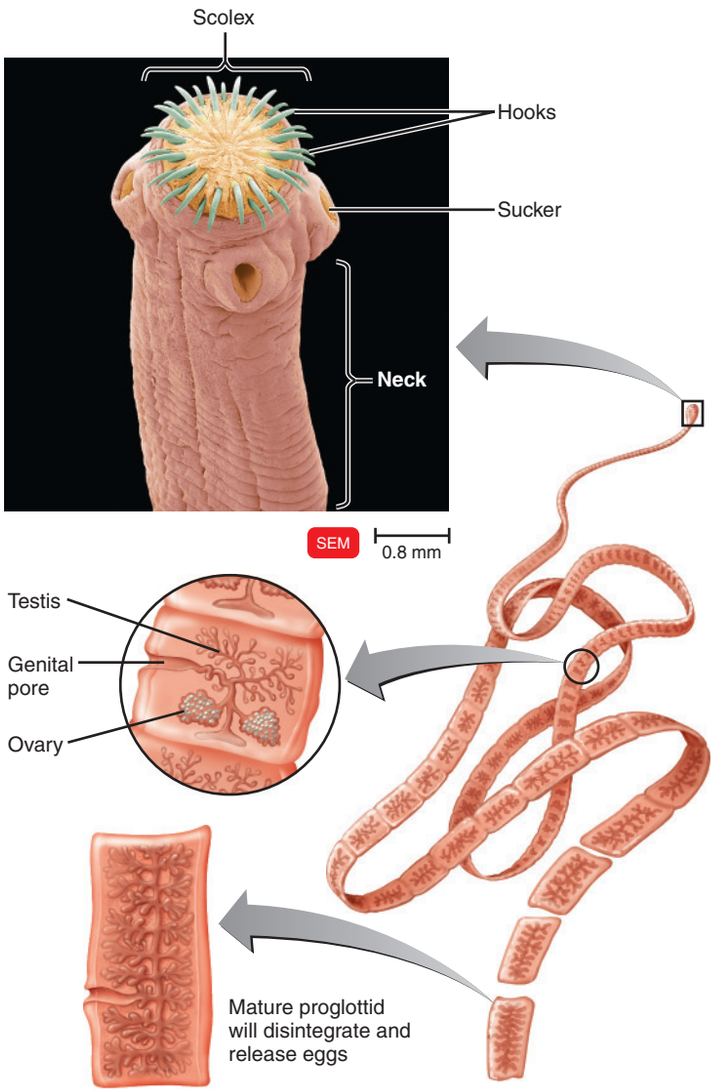


Figure 12.27 General anatomy of an adult tapeworm. The scolex, shown in the micrograph, consists of suckers and hooks that attach to the host's tissues. The body lengthens as new proglottids form at the neck. Each mature proglottid contains both testes and ovaries.

Q What are the similarities between tapeworms and flukes?

the larvae hatch from the eggs and bore through the intestinal wall. The larvae migrate to muscle (meat), in which they encyst as **cysticerci**. When the cysticerci are ingested by humans, all but the scolex is digested. The scolex anchors itself in the small intestine and begins producing proglottids.

Diagnosis of tapeworm infection in humans is based on the presence of mature proglottids and eggs in feces (Figure 25.22). Cysticerci can be seen macroscopically in meat; their presence is referred to as "measly beef." Inspecting beef that is intended for human consumption for "measly" appearance is one way to prevent infections by beef tapeworm. Another method of prevention is to avoid the use of untreated human sewage as fertilizer in grazing pastures.

Humans are the only known definitive host of the pork tapeworm, *Taenia solium*. Adult worms living in the human intestine produce eggs, which are passed out in feces. When eggs are eaten by pigs, the larval helminth encysts in the pig's muscles; humans become infected when they eat undercooked pork. The human-pig-human cycle of *T. solium* is common in Latin America, Asia, and Africa. In the United States, however, *T. solium* is virtually nonexistent in pigs; the parasite is transmitted from human to human. Eggs shed by one person and ingested by another person hatch, and the larvae encyst in the brain and other parts of the body, causing cysticercosis (see Figure 25.21). The human hosting *T. solium*'s larvae is serving as an intermediate host. Approximately 7% of the few hundred cases reported in recent years were acquired by people who had never been outside the United States. They may have become infected through household contact with people who were born in or had traveled in other countries.

Humans as Intermediate Cestode Hosts Humans can be intermediate hosts for *Echinococcus granulosus* (ē-KĪ-nō-kok'kus gran-u-LŌ-sus), shown in Figure 12.28. Dogs and other carnivorous mammals are the definitive hosts for this minute (2–8 mm) tapeworm.

1. Eggs are excreted with feces.
2. Eggs are ingested by deer, sheep, or humans. Humans can also become infected by contaminating their hands with dog feces or saliva from a dog that has licked itself.
3. The eggs hatch in the human's small intestine, and the larvae migrate to the liver or lungs.
4. The larva develops into a **hydatid cyst**. The cyst contains "brood capsules," from which thousands of scoleces might be produced.
5. Humans are a dead end for the parasite, but in the wild, the cysts might be in a deer that is eaten by a wolf.
6. The scoleces would be able to attach themselves in the wolf's intestine and produce proglottids.

Diagnosis of hydatid cysts is frequently made only on autopsy, although X rays can detect the cysts (see Figure 25.23).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

12-16 Differentiate *Paragonimus* and *Taenia*.

Nematodes

Members of the phylum Nematoda, the **roundworms**, are cylindrical and tapered at each end. Roundworms have a *complete* digestive system, consisting of a mouth, an intestine, and an anus. Most species are dioecious. Males are smaller than females and have one or two hardened **spicules** on their posterior ends. Spicules are used to guide sperm to the female's genital pore.

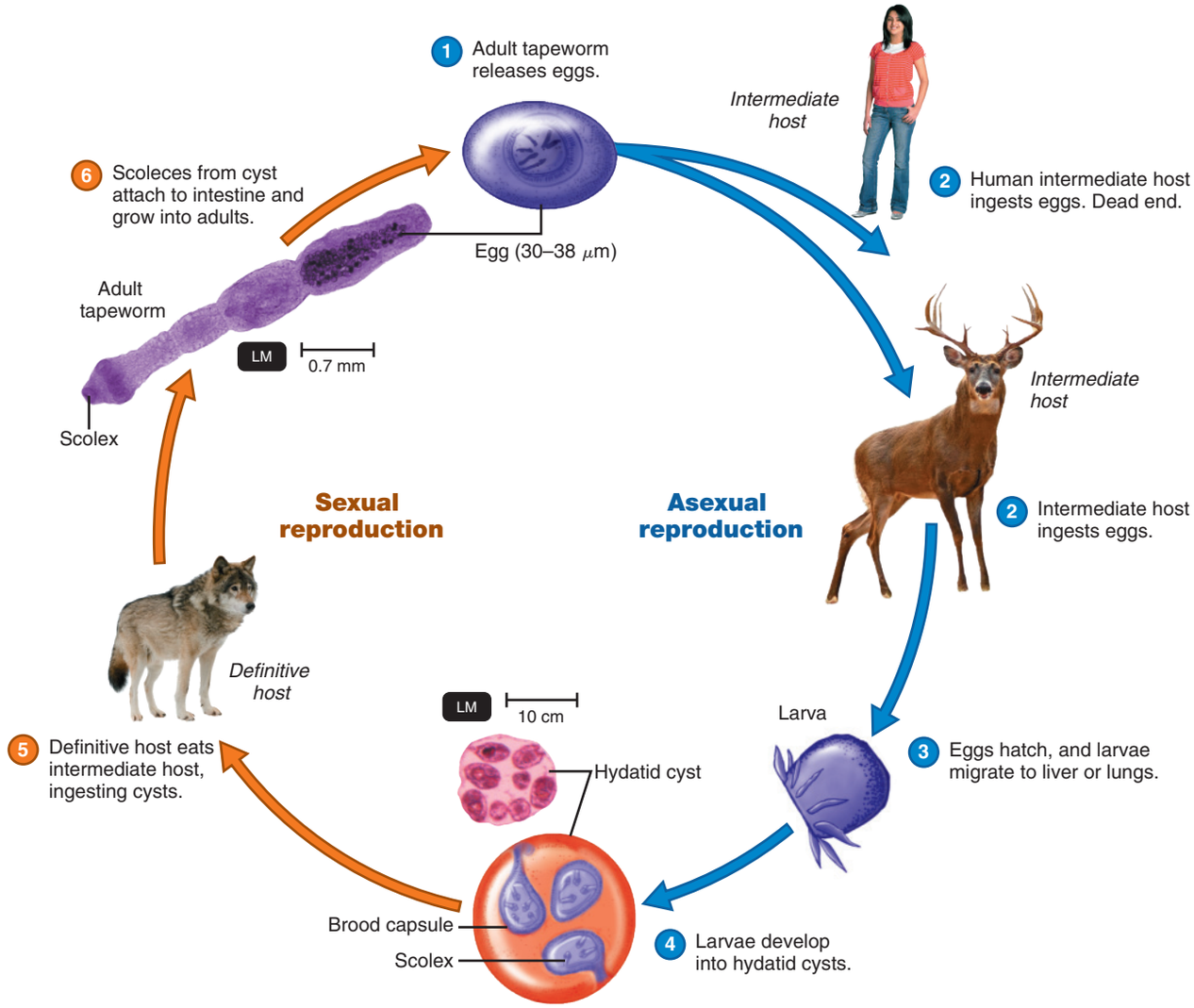


Figure 12.28 The life cycle of the tapeworm, *Echinococcus*. Dogs are the most common definitive host of *E. granulosus*, but in the wild, the definitive host is commonly a wolf. The parasite can complete its life cycle only if the cysts are ingested by a definitive host that eats the intermediate host.

Q Why isn't being in a human of benefit to *Echinococcus*?

Some species of nematodes are free-living in soil and water, and others are parasites of plants and animals. Some nematodes pass their entire life cycle, from egg to mature adult, in a single host.

Intestinal roundworms are the most common causes of chronic infectious diseases. The most common are *Ascaris*, hookworms, and whipworms, infecting more than 2 billion people worldwide. Nematode infections of humans can be divided into two categories: those in which the egg is infective, and those in which the larva is infective.

Eggs Infective for Humans

Ascaris lumbricoides (AS-kar-is lum-bri-KOY-dēz) is a large nematode (30 cm in length) that infects over 1 billion people worldwide (Figure 25.25). It is dioecious with **sexual dimorphism**; that is, the male and female worms look distinctly different, the male being smaller with a curled tail. The adult *Ascaris* lives in the small intestines of humans exclusively; it feeds primarily on semidigested food. Eggs, excreted with feces, can survive in the soil for long periods until accidentally ingested by another host. The eggs hatch in the small intestine of the host. The larvae then burrow out of the intestine and enter the blood. They are carried to the lungs, where they grow. The larvae will then be coughed up, swallowed, and returned to the small intestine, where they mature into adults.

Raccoon roundworm, *Baylisascaris procyonis*, is an emerging roundworm in North America. Raccoons are the definitive host, although the adult roundworm can also live in domestic dogs.

Eggs are shed with feces and ingested by an intermediate host, usually a rabbit. The ingested eggs hatch in the intestines of rabbits and humans. The larvae migrate through a variety of tissues, causing a condition called *larva migrans*. Infection often results in severe neurological symptoms or death. Larva migrans can also be caused by *Toxocara canis* (from dogs) and *T. cati* (from cats). These companion animals are the intermediate and definitive hosts, but humans can become infected by ingesting *Toxocara* eggs shed in the animals' feces. It is estimated that 14% of the U.S. population has been infected. Children are most likely to be infected, probably because they play in soil and sandboxes, where animal feces can be found.

One billion people worldwide are infected with *Trichuris trichiura* (Trik-YER-is TRIK-ē-yer-a), or whipworm. The worms are spread from person to person by fecal–oral transmission or through feces-contaminated food. The disease occurs most often in areas with tropical weather and poor sanitation practices and among children.

The pinworm *Enterobius vermicularis* (en-te-RŌ-bē-us ver-mi-kū-LAR-is) spends its entire life in a human host (Figure 12.29). Adult pinworms are found in the large intestine. From there, the female pinworm migrates to the anus to deposit her eggs on the perianal skin. The eggs can be ingested by the host or by another person exposed through contaminated clothing or bedding.

Larvae Infective for Humans

A few nematode larvae live in soil and can enter a human host directly through the skin. *Strongyloides* (stron-gel-OI-dēz) nematodes infect 30 to 100 million people worldwide. Most infections are limited to a rash where the nematode entered, but the larvae can migrate to the intestine, causing abdominal pain, or to the lungs, causing a cough.

Adult hookworms, *Necator americanus* (ne-KĀ-tor ah-mer-i-KĀ-nus) and *Ancylostoma duodenale* (an'sil-ō-STO-mah DOO-ah-den-al-ē), live in the small intestine of humans (Figure 25.24); the eggs are excreted in feces. The larvae hatch in the soil, where they feed on bacteria. A larva enters its host by penetrating the host's skin. It then enters a blood or lymph vessel, which carries it to the lungs. It is coughed up in sputum, swallowed, and finally carried to the small intestine.

Trichinellosis is caused by a nematode that the host acquires by eating encysted larvae in undercooked meat of infected animals. The nematode, *Dirofilaria immitis* (dir-ō -fil-AIR-ē-ah IM-mi-tis), is spread from host to host through the bites of *Aedes* mosquitoes. It primarily affects dogs and cats, but it can infect humans causing dirofilariasis. In humas the infections most often affects the skin or lungs. Larvae injected by the mosquito migrate to various organs, where they mature into adults. The parasitic worm is called a **heartworm** because the adult

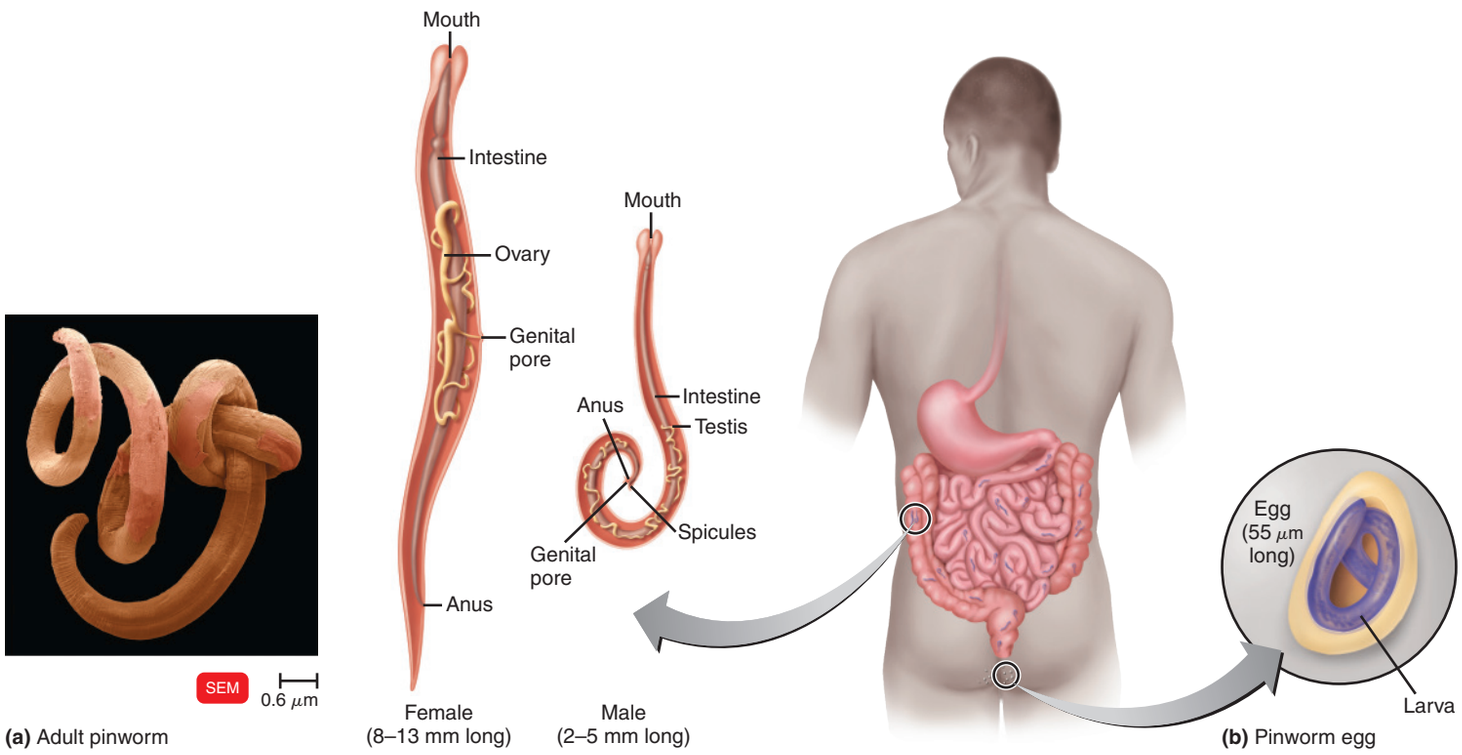


Figure 12.29 The pinworm, *Enterobius vermicularis*. **(a)** Adult pinworms live in the large intestine of humans. Most roundworms are dioecious, and the female (left and photomicrograph) is often distinctly larger than the male (right). **(b)** Pinworm eggs are deposited by the female on the perianal skin at night.

Q Are humans the definitive or intermediate host for pinworms?

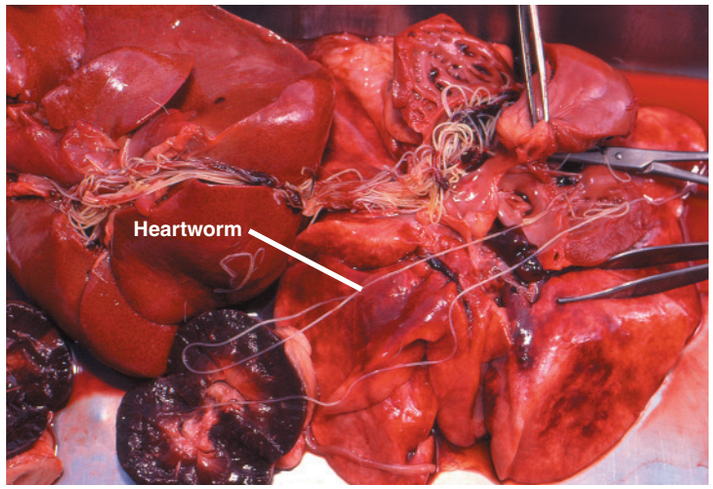


Figure 12.30 The heartworm, *Dirofilaria immitis*. Four adult *D. immitis* in the right ventricle of a dog's heart. Each worm is 12–30 cm long.

Q How do roundworms and flatworms differ?

stage is often in the animal host's heart, where it can kill its host through congestive heart failure (**Figure 12.30**). The disease occurs on every continent except Antarctica. *Wolbachia* bacteria appear to be essential to development of the worm embryos.

Four genera of roundworms called *anisakines*, or wriggly worms, can be transmitted to humans from infected fish and squid. Anisakine larvae are in the fish's intestinal mesenteries and migrate to the muscle when the fish dies. Freezing or thorough cooking will kill the larvae.

Table 12.5 lists representative parasitic helminths of each phylum and class and the diseases they cause.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **12-17** What is the definitive host for *Enterobius*?
- **12-18** What stage of *D. immitis* is infectious for dogs and cats?
- **12-19** You find a parasitic worm in a baby's diapers. How would you know whether it's a *Taenia* or a *Necator*?

Arthropods as Vectors

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

12-20 Define and identify *arthropod vectors*.

12-21 Differentiate a tick from a mosquito, and name a disease transmitted by each.

Arthropods are animals characterized by segmented bodies, hard external skeletons, and jointed legs. With nearly 1 million species, this is the largest phylum in the animal kingdom. Although arthropods are not microbes themselves, we will briefly describe them here because a few suck the blood of humans and other animals and can transmit microbial diseases while doing so. Arthropods that carry pathogenic microorganisms are called **vectors**. Scabies and pediculosis are diseases that are caused by arthropods themselves (see Chapter 21).

Representative classes of arthropods include the following:

- Arachnida (eight legs): spiders, mites, ticks
- Crustacea (four antennae): crabs, crayfish
- Insecta (six legs): bees, flies, lice

Table 12.6 lists those arthropods that are important vectors, and **Figures 12.31** and **12.32** illustrate some of them. These insects and ticks reside on an animal only when they are feeding. An exception to this is the louse, which spends its entire life on its host and cannot survive for long away from a host.

Some vectors are just a mechanical means of transport for a pathogen. For example, houseflies lay their eggs on decaying organic matter, such as feces. While doing so, a housefly can pick up a pathogen on its feet or body and transport the pathogen to our food.

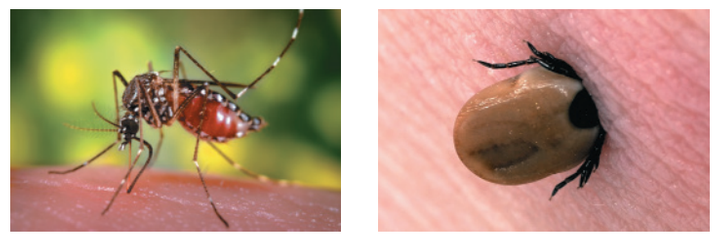
Some parasites multiply in their vectors. When this happens, the parasites can accumulate in the vector's feces or saliva. Large numbers of parasites can then be deposited on or in the host while the vector is feeding there. The spirochete that causes Lyme disease is transmitted by ticks in this manner (see Chapter 23), and the West Nile virus is transmitted in the same way by mosquitoes (see Chapter 22).

As discussed earlier, *Plasmodium* is an example of a parasite that requires that its vector also be the definitive host. *Plasmodium* can sexually reproduce only in the gut of an *Anopheles* mosquito. *Plasmodium* is introduced into a human host with the mosquito's saliva, which acts as an anticoagulant that keeps blood flowing.

To eliminate vectorborne diseases, health workers focus on eradicating the vectors.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **12-20** Vectors can be divided into three major types, according to the roles they play for the parasite. List the three types of vectors and a disease transmitted by each.
- **12-21** Assume you see an arthropod on your arm. How will you determine whether it is a tick or an insect?



(a) Mosquito filled with human blood. **(b)** Tick engorged with blood.

Figure 12.31 Blood-sucking mosquitoes and ticks. Mosquitoes are the vector for several pathogens to humans, including Zika virus, malaria, and dengue virus. Ticks are the vector for Lyme disease.

Q When is a vector also a definitive host?

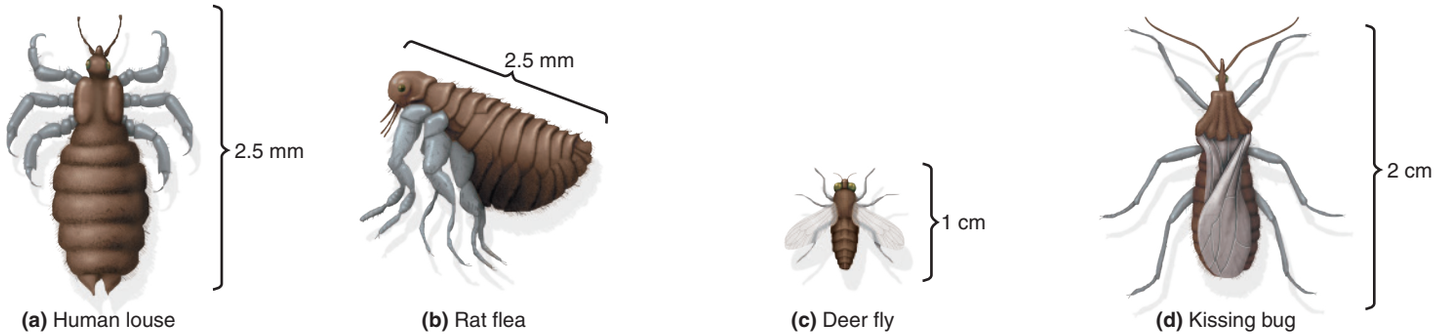


Figure 12.32 Arthropod vectors. **(a)** The human louse, *Pediculus.* **(b)** The rat flea, *Xenopsylla.* **(c)** The deer fly, *Chrysops.* **(d)** The kissing bug, *Triatoma.*

Q Name one pathogen carried by each of these vectors.

TABLE 12.5 Representative Parasitic Helminths

Phylum	Class	Human Parasites	Intermediate Host	Definitive Host Site	Stage Passed to Humans; Method	Disease	Figure Reference
Platyhelminthes	**Trematodes**	*Paragonimus*	Freshwater snails and crayfish	Humans; lungs	Metacercaria in crustaceans; ingested	Paragonimiasis (lung fluke)	12.26
		Schistosoma	Freshwater snails	Humans	Cercariae; through skin	Schistosomiasis	23.27 23.28
	Cestodes	*Echinococcus granulosus*	Humans	Dogs and other animals; intestines	Eggs from other animals; ingested	Hydatidosis	12.28 25.23
		Taenia saginata	Cattle	Humans; small intestine	Cysticerci in beef; ingested	Tapeworm	25.22a
		T. solium	Humans; pigs	Humans	Eggs; ingested	Neurocysticercosis	—
Nematoda							
Eggs infective for humans		*Ascaris lumbricoides*	—	Humans; small intestine	Eggs; ingested	Ascariasis	25.25
		Baylisascaris procyonis	Rabbits	Raccoons; large intestine	Eggs; ingested	Raccoon roundworm	—
		Toxocara canis, T. cati	Dogs, cats	Dogs, cats; small intestine	Eggs; ingested	Toxocariasis	
		Trichuris trichiura	—	Humans, pigs, and other mammals; small intestine	Larvae; ingested	Whipworm	25.22f
		Enterobius vermicularis	—	Humans; large intestine	Eggs; ingested	Pinworm	12.29
Larvae infective for humans		*Strongyloides stercoralis*	Soil	Humans	Larvae; through skin	Strongyloidiasis	—
		Necator americanus	—	Humans; small intestine	Larvae; through skin	Hookworm	—
		Ancylostoma duodenale	—	Humans; small intestine	Larvae; through skin	Hookworm	25.24
		Trichinella spiralis	Humans and other mammals	Humans; small intestine	Larvae; ingested	Trichinellosis	25.26
		Dirofilaria immitis	Humans; dogs; cats	Mosquito	Larvae injected by mosquito	Dirofilariasis	12.30
		Anisakines	Marine fish and squid	Marine mammals	Larvae in fish; ingested	Anisakiasis (sashimi worms)	—
		Angiostrongylus cantonensis	Freshwater snails	Rodents	Larvae in water or snail; ingested		—

TABLE 12.6 Important Arthropod Vectors of Human Diseases

Class	Order	Vector	Disease	Figure Reference
Arachnida	Mites and ticks	*Dermacentor* (tick)	Rocky Mountain spotted fever	—
		Ixodes (tick)	Lyme disease, babesiosis, ehrlichiosis	12.31b
		Ornithodorus (tick)	Relapsing fever	—
Insecta	Sucking lice	*Pediculus* (human louse)	Epidemic typhus, relapsing fever	12.32a
	Fleas	*Xenopsylla* (rat flea)	Endemic murine typhus, plague	12.32b
	True flies (Diptera)	*Chrysops* (deer fly)	Tularemia	12.32c
		Aedes (mosquito)	Dengue, Zika virus disease, heartworm	12.31a
		Anopheles (mosquito)	Malaria	—
		Culex (mosquito)	Arboviral encephalitis	—
		Glossina (tsetse fly)	African trypanosomiasis	—
	True bugs (Hemiptera)	*Triatoma* (kissing bug)	Chagas disease	12.32d

Study Outline

Fungi (pp. 326–337)

1. Mycology is the study of fungi.
2. The number of serious fungal infections is increasing.
3. Fungi are aerobic or facultatively anaerobic chemoheterotrophs.
4. Most fungi are decomposers, and a few are parasites of plants and animals.

Characteristics of Fungi (pp. 327–331)

5. A fungal thallus consists of filaments of cells called hyphae; a mass of hyphae is called a mycelium.
6. Yeasts are unicellular fungi. To reproduce, fission yeasts divide symmetrically, whereas budding yeasts divide asymmetrically.
7. Buds that do not separate from the parent cell form pseudohyphae.
8. Pathogenic dimorphic fungi are yeastlike at 37°C and moldlike at 25°C.
9. Fungi are classified according to rRNA.
10. Sporangiospores and conidiospores are produced asexually.
11. Sexual spores are usually produced in response to special circumstances, often changes in the environment.
12. Fungi can grow in acidic, low-moisture, aerobic environments.
13. They are able to metabolize complex carbohydrates.

Medically Important Fungi (pp. 331–334)

14. The Mucoromycota have coenocytic hyphae and produce sporangiospores and zygospores.
15. Microsporidia lack mitochondria and microtubules.
16. The Ascomycota have septate hyphae and produce ascospores and frequently conidiospores.
17. Basidiomycota have septate hyphae and produce basidiospores; some produce conidiospores.

Fungal Diseases (pp. 333–335)

18. Systemic mycoses are fungal infections deep within the body that affect many tissues and organs.
19. Subcutaneous mycoses are fungal infections beneath the skin.
20. Cutaneous mycoses affect keratin-containing tissues such as hair, nails, and skin.
21. Superficial mycoses are localized on hair shafts and superficial skin cells.
22. Opportunistic mycoses are caused by fungi that are not usually pathogenic.
23. Opportunistic mycoses can infect any tissues. However, they are usually systemic.

Economic Effects of Fungi (pp. 335–337)

24. *Saccharomyces* and *Trichoderma* are used in the production of foods.
25. Mold spoilage of fruits, grains, and vegetables is more common than bacterial spoilage of these products.
26. Many fungi cause diseases in plants.

Lichens (pp. 337–338)

1. A lichen is a mutualistic combination of an alga (or a cyanobacterium) and a fungus.
2. The alga photosynthesizes, providing carbohydrates for the lichen; the fungus provides a holdfast.
3. Lichens colonize habitats that are unsuitable for either the alga or the fungus alone.
4. Lichens may be classified on the basis of morphology as crustose, foliose, or fruticose.

Algae (pp. 338–343)

1. Algae are unicellular, filamentous, or multicellular (thallic).
2. Most algae live in aquatic environments.

Characteristics of Algae (pp. 339–340)

3. Algae are eukaryotic; most are photoautotrophs.
4. The thallus of multicellular algae usually consists of a stipe, a holdfast, and blades.

5. Algae reproduce asexually by cell division and fragmentation.
6. Many algae reproduce sexually.
7. Photoautotrophic algae produce oxygen.
8. Algae are classified according to their structures and pigments.

Selected Phyla of Algae (pp. 339–343)

9. Brown algae (kelp) may be harvested for algin.
10. Red algae grow deeper in the ocean than other algae.
11. Green algae have cellulose and chlorophyll *a* and *b* and store starch.
12. Euglenoids (e.g., *Euglena*) have a semirigid pellicle and a red eyespot.
13. Diatoms are unicellular and have pectin and silica cell walls; some cause amnesic shellfish poisoning.
14. Some dinoflagellates produce neurotoxins that cause ciguatera.
15. The oomycotes are heterotrophic; they include decomposers and pathogens.

Roles of Algae in Nature (p. 343)

16. Algae are the primary producers in aquatic food chains.
17. Planktonic algae produce most of the molecular oxygen in the Earth's atmosphere.
18. Petroleum is the fossil remains of planktonic algae.
19. Unicellular algae are symbionts in such animals as *Tridacna*.

Protozoa (pp. 343–348)

1. Protozoa are unicellular, eukaryotic chemoheterotrophs.
2. Protozoa are found in soil and water and as normal microbiota in animals.

Characteristics of Protozoa (pp. 343–344)

3. The vegetative form is called a trophozoite.
4. Asexual reproduction is by fission, budding, or schizogony.
5. Sexual reproduction is by conjugation.
6. During ciliate conjugation, two haploid nuclei fuse to produce a zygote.
7. Some protozoa can produce a cyst that provides protection during adverse environmental conditions.
8. Protozoa have complex cells with a pellicle, a cytostome, and an anal pore.

Medically Important Protozoa (pp. 344–348)

9. *Trichomonas* and *Giardia* lack mitochondria and have flagella.
10. Euglenozoa move by means of flagella and lack sexual reproduction; they include *Trypanosoma*.
11. Amebae include *Entamoeba* and *Acanthamoeba*.
12. Apicomplexa have apical organelles for penetrating host tissue; they include *Plasmodium* and *Cryptosporidium*.
13. Ciliates move by means of cilia; *B. coli* is the only human parasitic ciliate.

Slime Molds (pp. 348–350)

1. Cellular slime molds resemble amebae and ingest bacteria by phagocytosis.
2. Plasmodial slime molds consist of a multinucleated mass of protoplasm that engulfs organic debris and bacteria as it moves.

Helminths (pp. 350–357)

1. Parasitic flatworms belong to the phylum Platyhelminthes.
2. Parasitic roundworms belong to the phylum Nematoda.

Characteristics of Helminths (pp. 350–351)

3. Helminths are multicellular animals; a few are parasites of humans.
4. The anatomy and life cycle of parasitic helminths are modified for parasitism.
5. The adult stage of a parasitic helminth is found in the definitive host.
6. Each larval stage of a parasitic helminth requires an intermediate host.
7. Helminths can be monoecious or dioecious.

Platyhelminths (pp. 351–354)

8. Flatworms are dorsoventrally flattened animals; parasitic flatworms may lack a digestive system.
9. Adult trematodes, or flukes, have an oral and ventral sucker with which they attach to host tissue.
10. Eggs of trematodes hatch into free-swimming miracidia that enter the first intermediate host; two generations of rediae develop; the rediae become cercariae that bore out of the first intermediate host and penetrate the second intermediate host; cercariae encyst as metacercariae; the metacercariae develop into adults in the definitive host.
11. A cestode, or tapeworm, consists of a scolex (head) and proglottids.
12. Humans serve as the definitive host for the beef tapeworm, and cattle are the intermediate host.
13. Humans serve as the definitive host and can be an intermediate host for the pork tapeworm.
14. Humans serve as the intermediate host for *E. granulosus*; the definitive hosts include dogs, wolves, and foxes.

Nematodes (pp. 354–357)

15. Roundworms have a complete digestive system.
16. The nematodes that infect humans with their eggs include *Ascaris*, *Trichuris*, and *Enterobius*.
17. The nematodes that infect humans with their larvae include hookworms and *Trichinella*.

Arthropods as Vectors (pp. 357–359)

1. Jointed-legged animals, including ticks and insects, belong to the phylum Arthropoda.
2. Arthropods that carry diseases are called vectors.
3. Vectorborne diseases are most effectively eliminated by controlling or eradicating the vectors.

Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

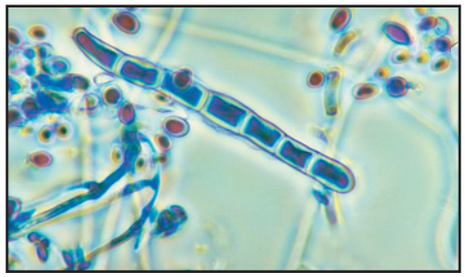
Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. Following is a list of fungi, their methods of entry into the body, and sites of infections they cause. Categorize each type of mycosis as cutaneous, opportunistic, subcutaneous, superficial, or systemic.

Genus	Method of Entry	Site of Infection	Mycosis
Blastomyces	Inhalation	Lungs	**(a)** _____
Sporothrix	Puncture	Ulcerative lesions	**(b)** _____
Microsporum	Contact	Fingernails	**(c)** _____
Trichosporon	Contact	Hair shafts	**(d)** _____
Aspergillus	Inhalation	Lungs	**(e)** _____

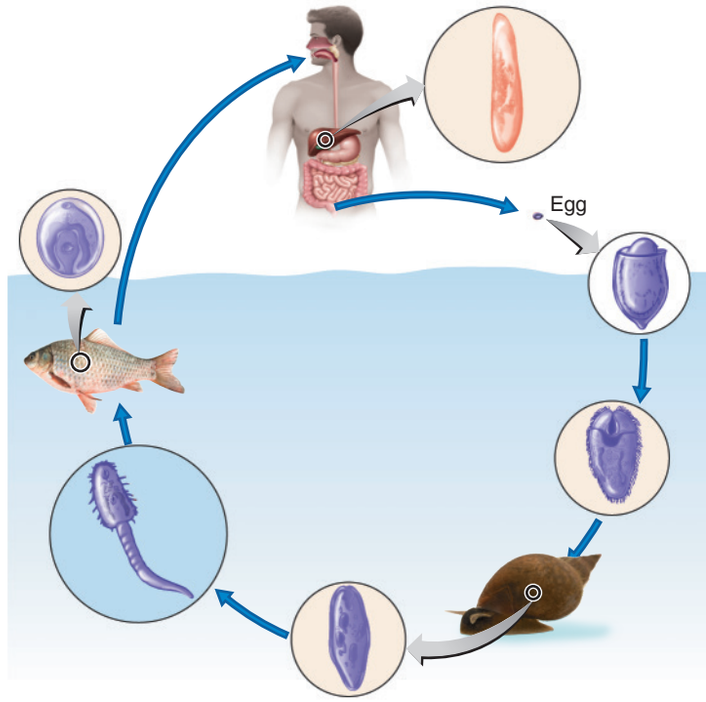
2. A mixed culture of *Escherichia coli* and *Penicillium chrysogenum* is inoculated onto the following culture media. On which medium would you expect each to grow? Why?
   a. 0.5% peptone in tap water
   b. 10% glucose in tap water
3. NAME IT Identify the structures of this eukaryote, which has an affinity for keratin.



4. Briefly discuss the importance of lichens in nature. Briefly discuss the importance of algae in nature.
5. Differentiate cellular and plasmodial slime molds. How does each survive adverse environmental conditions?
6. Complete the following table.

Phylum	Method of Motility	One Human Parasite
Diplomonads	**(a)** _____	**(b)** _____
Microsporidia	**(c)** _____	**(d)** _____
Amebae	**(e)** _____	**(f)** _____
Apicomplexa	**(g)** _____	**(h)** _____
Ciliates	**(i)** _____	**(j)** _____
Euglenozoa	**(k)** _____	**(l)** _____
Parabasalids	**(m)** _____	**(n)** _____

7. Why is it significant that *Trichomonas* does not have a cyst stage? Name a protozoan parasite that does have a cyst stage.
8. By what means are helminthic parasites transmitted to humans?
9. Most roundworms are dioecious. What does this term mean? To what phylum do roundworms belong?
10. DRAW IT A generalized life cycle of the liver fluke *Clonorchis sinensis* is shown here. Label the fluke's stages. Identify the intermediate host(s). Identify the definitive host(s). To what phylum and class does this animal belong?



Multiple Choice

1. How many phyla are represented in the following list of organisms: *Echinococcus*, *Cyclospora*, *Aspergillus*, *Taenia*, *Toxoplasma*, *Trichinella*?
   a. 1
   b. 2
   c. 3
   d. 4
   e. 5

Use the following choices to answer questions 2 and 3:
1. metacercaria
2. redia
3. adult
4. miracidium
5. cercaria

2. Put the preceding stages in order of development, beginning with the egg.
   a. 5, 4, 1, 2, 3
   b. 4, 2, 5, 1, 3
   c. 2, 5, 4, 3, 1
   d. 3, 4, 5, 1, 2
   e. 2, 4, 5, 1, 3
3. If a snail is the first intermediate host of a parasite with these stages, which stage would be found in the snail?
   a. 1
   b. 2
   c. 3
   d. 4
   e. 5

4. Fleas are the intermediate host for *Dipylidium caninum* tapeworm, and dogs are the definitive host. Which stage of the parasite could be found in the flea?
   a. cysticercus larva
   b. proglottids
   c. scolex
   d. adult
5. Which of the following statements about yeasts are true?
   1. Yeasts are fungi.
   2. Yeasts can form pseudohyphae.
   3. Yeasts reproduce asexually by budding.
   4. Yeasts are facultatively anaerobic.
   5. All yeasts are pathogenic.
   6. All yeasts are dimorphic.

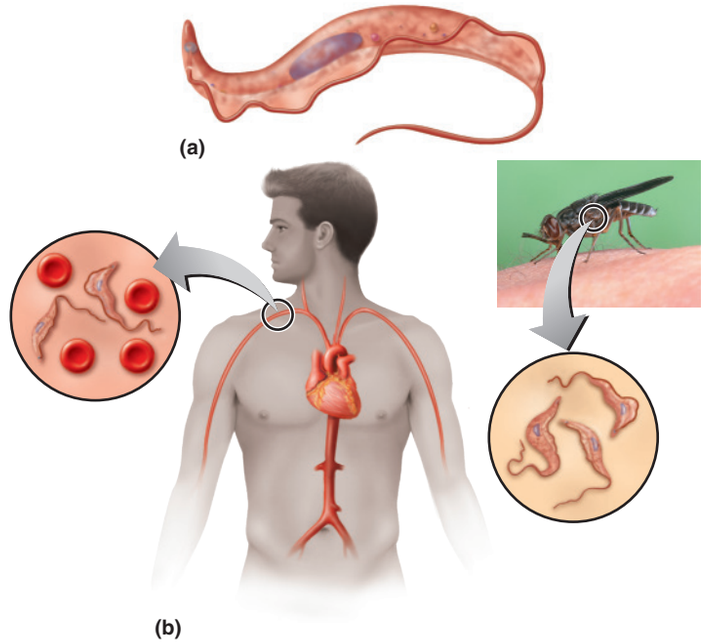
   a. 1, 2, 3, 4
   b. 3, 4, 5, 6
   c. 2, 3, 4, 5
   d. 1, 3, 5, 6
   e. 2, 3, 4
6. Which of the following events follows cell fusion in an ascomycete?
   a. conidiophore formation
   b. conidiospore germination
   c. ascus opening
   d. ascospore formation
   e. conidiospore release
7. The definitive host for *Plasmodium vivax* is
   a. human.
   b. *Anopheles*.
   c. a sporocyte.
   d. a gametocyte.

Use the following choices to answer questions 8–10:
   a. Apicomplexa
   b. ciliates
   c. dinoflagellates
   d. Microsporidia

8. These are obligate intracellular parasites that lack mitochondria.
9. These are nonmotile parasites with special organelles for penetrating host tissue.
10. These photosynthetic organisms can produce neurotoxins.

Analysis

1. *Alexandrium* (red tide) has been called a plant, protist, protozoan, and alga in the past. Now it's in the SAR clade, along with *Plasmodium* and *Paramecium*. Are all SAR members photosynthetic? Are any? Explain why it has been so difficult to accurately classify *Alexandrium*.
2. The life cycle of the fish tapeworm *Diphyllobothrium* is similar to that of *Taenia saginata*, except that the intermediate host is fish. Describe the life cycle and method of transmission to humans. Why are freshwater fish more likely to be a source of tapeworm infection than marine fish?
3. *Trypanosoma brucei gambiense*—part (a) in the figure—is the causative agent of African sleeping sickness. To what phylum does it belong? Part (b) shows a simplified life cycle for *T. b. gambiense*. Identify the host and vector of this parasite.



Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. A child developed generalized seizures. A CT scan revealed a single brain lesion consistent with a tumor. Biopsy of the lesion showed a cysticercus. The patient lived in South Carolina and had never traveled outside the state. What parasite caused this disease? How is this disease transmitted? How might it be prevented?
2. A California farmer developed a low-grade fever, myalgia, and cough. A chest X-ray exam revealed an infiltrate in the lung. Microscopic examination of the sputum revealed round, budding cells. A sputum culture grew mycelia and arthroconidia. What organism is most likely the cause of the symptoms? How is this disease transmitted? How might it be prevented?
3. An adolescent in California complained of remittent fever, chills, and headaches. A blood smear revealed ring-shaped cells in the teen's red blood cells. The infection was successfully treated with primaquine and chloroquine. The patient lives near the San Luis Rey River and has no history of foreign travel, blood transfusion, or intravenous drug use. What is the disease? How was it acquired?

13 Viruses, Viroids, and Prions

Viruses are too small to be seen with a light microscope and can't be cultured outside their hosts. Therefore, although viral diseases aren't new, the viruses themselves couldn't be studied until the twentieth century. In 1886, the Dutch chemist Adolf Mayer showed that tobacco mosaic disease (TMD) was transmissible from a diseased plant to a healthy plant. In 1892, in an attempt to isolate the cause of TMD, the Russian bacteriologist Dimitri Iwanowski filtered the sap of diseased plants through a porcelain filter that was designed to retain bacteria. He expected to find the microbe trapped in the filter; instead, he found that the infectious agent had passed through the minute pores of the filter. When he infected healthy plants with the filtered fluid, they contracted TMD. The first human disease associated with a filterable agent was yellow fever.

Advances in molecular biological techniques in the 1980s and 1990s led to the recognition of several new viruses, including human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) in 1983, severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus (SARS-CoV) in 2003, and SARS-CoV-2 in 2020. The pathogen responsible for viral hepatitis, one of the most common infectious diseases in the world, was also identified via molecular techniques. Several different hepatitis viruses have been identified, including the bloodborne hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus, and the foodborne hepatitis A virus (see the photo), discussed in the Clinical Case and summarized in Diseases in Focus 25.3.

The World Health Organization's list of the top 10 emerging pathogens likely to cause severe outbreaks in the near future are all viral diseases. These include highly pathogenic human coronaviruses, several hemorrhagic fever viruses, Zika virus, and Nipah virus. Human diseases caused by viruses will be discussed in Part Four. In this chapter, we'll study the biology of viruses.

◀ **Hepatitis A virus is transmitted by ingestion.**

In the Clinic

A woman brings her 8-month-old daughter into the urgent care clinic where you work as a nurse practitioner. The baby has a runny nose and a fever of 39°C. The child's ears and lungs are free of infection. The woman is annoyed because she has already taken her daughter to see her pediatrician. She requested an antibiotic, but the doctor refused to prescribe it. She once again requests that the baby receive antibiotics. **Will you prescribe the medication the mother wants? Explain why or why not—and how you would discuss this with the mother.**

Hint: Read about virus structure later in this chapter.

General Characteristics of Viruses

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

13-1 Differentiate a virus from a bacterium.

One hundred years ago, researchers couldn't imagine submicroscopic pathogens, so they described invisible infectious agents as *contagium vivum fluidum*—contagious fluid. By the 1930s, scientists had begun using the word *virus*, the Latin word for poison, to describe these filterable agents. The nature of viruses, however, remained elusive until 1935, when Wendell Stanley, an American chemist, isolated tobacco mosaic virus, making it possible for the first time to carry out chemical and structural studies on a purified virus. At about the same time, the invention of the electron microscope made it possible to see viruses.

The question of whether viruses are living organisms has an ambiguous answer. Life can be defined as a complex set of processes resulting from the actions of proteins specified by nucleic acids. The nucleic acids of living cells are in action all the time. Because viruses are inert outside living host cells, in this sense they aren't considered living organisms. However, once viruses enter a host cell, the viral nucleic acids become active, and viral multiplication results. In this sense, viruses are alive when they multiply in the host cells they infect. From a clinical point of view, viruses are alive because they cause infection and disease, just as pathogenic bacteria, fungi, and protozoa do. Depending on one's viewpoint, a virus may be regarded as an exceptionally complex aggregation of nonliving chemicals, or as an exceptionally simple living microorganism.

Distinctive Features of Viruses

How, then, do we define *virus*? Viruses were originally distinguished from other infectious agents because they are especially small (filterable) and because they are **obligatory intracellular parasites**—that is, they absolutely require living host cells in order to multiply. However, both of these properties are shared by certain small bacteria, such as some rickettsias. Viruses and bacteria are compared in Table 13.1.

The truly distinctive features of viruses are now known to relate to their simple structural organization and their mechanism of multiplication. Accordingly, **viruses** are entities that

- Contain a single type of nucleic acid, either DNA or RNA, but not both.
- Contain a protein coat (sometimes itself enclosed by an envelope of lipids, proteins, and carbohydrates) that surrounds the nucleic acid.
- Multiply inside living cells by using the synthesizing machinery of the cell.
- Cause the synthesis of specialized structures that can transfer the viral nucleic acid to other cells.

TABLE 13.1 Viruses and Bacteria Compared

	Bacteria		
	Typical Bacteria	Rickettsias/ Chlamydias	Viruses
Intracellular Parasite	No	Yes	Yes
Plasma Membrane	Yes	Yes	No
Binary Fission	Yes	Yes	No
Pass through Bacteriological Filters	No	No/Yes	Yes
Possess Both DNA and RNA	Yes	Yes	No
ATP-Generating Metabolism	Yes	Yes/No	No
Ribosomes	Yes	Yes	No
Sensitive to Antibiotics	Yes	Yes	No
Sensitive to Interferon	No	No	Yes

Viruses have few or no enzymes of their own for metabolism; for example, they lack enzymes for protein synthesis and ATP generation. To multiply, viruses must take over the metabolic machinery of the host cell. This fact has considerable medical significance for the development of antiviral drugs, because most drugs that would interfere with viral multiplication would also interfere with the functioning of the host cell and therefore are too toxic for clinical use. (Antiviral drugs are discussed in Chapter 20.)

Host Range

The **host range** of a virus is the spectrum of host cells the virus can infect. There are viruses that infect invertebrates, vertebrates, plants, protists, fungi, and bacteria; however, most viruses are able to infect specific types of cells of only one host species. In rare cases, viruses cross the host-species barrier, thus expanding their host range. An example is described in the Clinical Focus box. In this chapter, we're concerned mainly with viruses that infect either humans or bacteria. Viruses that infect bacteria are called **bacteriophages**, or **phages**.

The particular host range of a virus is determined by the virus's requirements for its specific attachment to the host cell and the availability within the potential host of cellular factors required for viral multiplication. For the virus to infect the host cell, the outer surface of the virus must chemically interact with specific receptor sites on the surface of the cell. The two complementary components are held together by weak bonds, such as hydrogen bonds. The combination of many attachment and receptor sites leads to a strong association between host cell and virus. For some bacteriophages, the receptor site is part of the cell wall of the host; in other cases, it is part of the fimbriae or flagella. For animal viruses, the receptor sites are on the plasma membranes of the host cells.

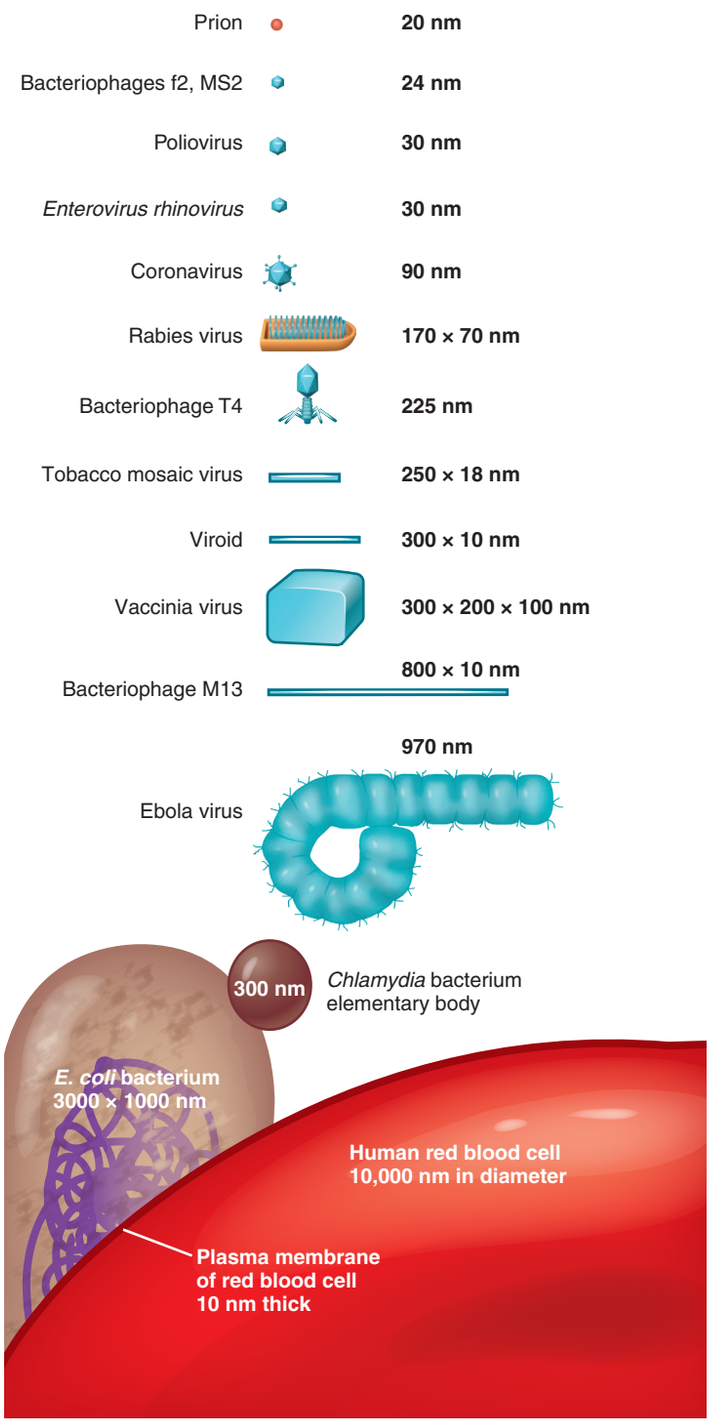


Figure 13.1 Virus sizes. The sizes of several viruses (teal blue) and bacteria (brown) are compared with a human red blood cell, shown below the microbes. A prion (orange; discussed later in this chapter) is also shown. Dimensions are given in nanometers (nm) and are either diameters or length by width.

Q How do viruses differ from bacteria?

Viral Size

Viral sizes are determined with the aid of electron microscopy. Different viruses vary considerably in size. Although most are quite a bit smaller than bacteria, some of the larger viruses (such as the vaccinia virus) are about the same size as some very small bacteria (such as the mycoplasmas, rickettsias, and chlamydias). Viruses range from 20 to 1000 nm in length. The comparative sizes of several viruses and bacteria are shown in Figure 13.1.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

13-1 How could the small size of viruses have helped researchers detect viruses before the invention of the electron microscope?

Viral Structure

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

13-2 Describe the chemical and physical structure of both an enveloped and a nonenveloped virus.

A **virion** is a complete, fully developed, infectious viral particle composed of nucleic acid and surrounded by a protein coat outside a host cell. Viruses are classified by their nucleic acid and by differences in the structures of their coats.

Nucleic Acid

In contrast to prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells, in which DNA is always the primary genetic material (and RNA plays an auxiliary role), viral genes are encoded by either DNA or RNA—but never both. The genome of a virus can be single-stranded or double-stranded. Thus, there are viruses with the familiar double-stranded DNA, with single-stranded DNA, with double-stranded RNA, and with single-stranded RNA. Depending on the virus, the nucleic acid can be linear or circular. In some viruses (such as the influenza virus), the nucleic acid is in several separate segments.

CLINICAL CASE An Inconvenient Outbreak

Tina Markham, a 42-year-old pharmaceutical sales representative, has been home from work because of a very high, persistent fever (40°C). She is taking medications to reduce the fever, but they work only for a few hours. Tina makes an appointment to see her physician; he notices right away that Tina's skin is jaundiced. When he palpates her abdomen, she winces in pain; it is very tender. Sensing an issue with her liver, Tina's physician sends a blood sample to the local laboratory for a liver function test (LFT). The results show abnormal findings.

What disease could be causing Tina's symptoms? Read on to find out.

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

The Human Virome

The *human virome* is the viral portion of the microbiome. A healthy human harbors up to 10 permanent infectious viruses. These viruses are found in the same sites as the majority of the bacterial microbiome—the mouth, nose, skin, vagina, and intestines—and include latent and persistent viruses.

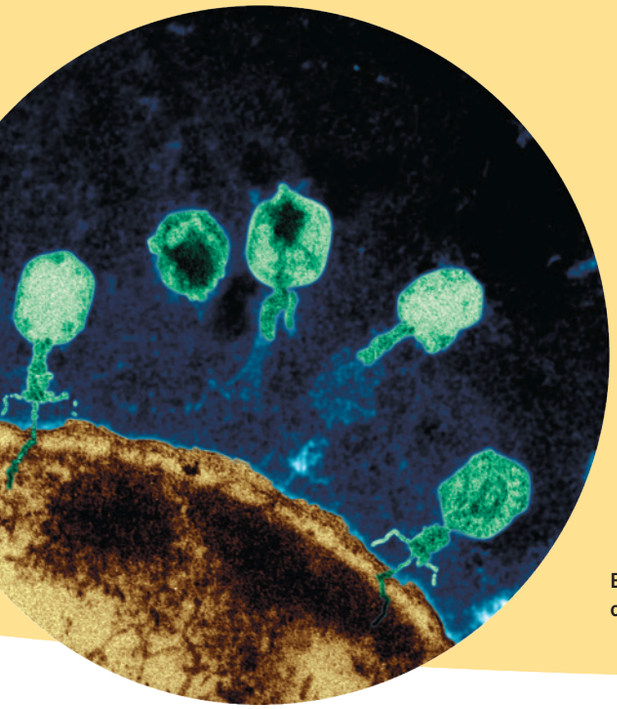
Retrovirus genetic material integrated into human chromosomes makes up about 8% of the human genome. However, the vast majority of the human virome consists of bacteriophages. Bacteriophages affect human health and disease by controlling growth of normal and pathogenic bacteria.

For example, large numbers of bacteriophages are present in mucus of the mouth and intestine. Mucus is normally considered a physical barrier to infection that protects underlying epithelial tissue. The exact ways phages impact their human environments is not fully understood yet, but it's likely that these phage interactions fall under two basic scenarios within the virome.

In the first scenario, "kill the winner," bacteriophages kill bacterial colonizers in the body. The capsids of some bacteriophages adhere to specific mucus glycoproteins. This puts the bacteriophage where it can encounter the bacterial cells that are its ultimate host. The bacteriophage benefits by having a host for reproduction, and the human host benefits by having the bacteriophage prevent colonization by pathogens.

In the second scenario, "kill the competition," some bacteriophages may protect the bacterial microbiome from invasion by other bacteria vying to gain a foothold in the area. For example, in the intestines, *Enterococcus* bacteria release lytic bacteriophages, from prophages (discussed later in the chapter), when competing enterococci are present—thus killing the competition.

There is cell-culture evidence that the common cold, a mild infection caused by *Enterovirus rhinovirus*, provides some protection against influenza and COVID-19 three days later. Research suggests that this effect most likely isn't due to competition between viruses but to interferons produced in response to the rhinovirus.



Bacteriophages infecting an *Escherichia coli* bacteria cell—a common member of our intestinal microbiota.

The percentage of nucleic acid in relation to protein is about 1% for the influenza virus and about 50% for certain bacteriophages. The total amount of nucleic acid varies from a few thousand nucleotides (or pairs) to as many as 250,000 nucleotides. (In contrast, *E. coli*'s chromosome consists of approximately 4 million nucleotide pairs.)

Capsid and Envelope

The nucleic acid of a virus is protected by a protein coat called the **capsid** (Figure 13.2a). The structure of the capsid is ultimately determined by the viral nucleic acid and accounts for most of the mass of a virus, especially of small ones. Each capsid is composed of protein subunits called **capsomeres**. In some viruses, the proteins composing the capsomeres are of a single type; in other viruses, several types of protein may be present. Individual capsomeres are often visible in electron micrographs (see Figure 13.2b for an example). The arrangement of capsomeres is characteristic of a particular type of virus.

In some viruses, the capsid is covered by an **envelope** (Figure 13.3a), which usually consists of some combination of lipids, proteins, and carbohydrates. Some animal viruses are

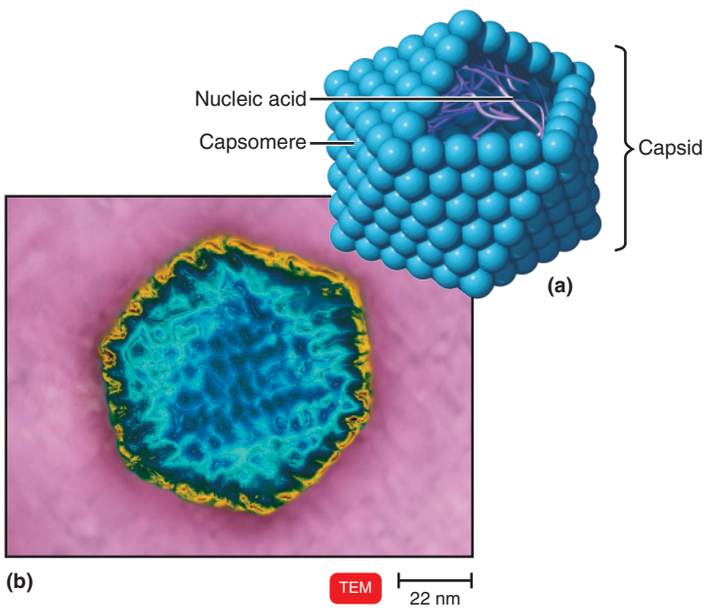


Figure 13.2 Morphology of a nonenveloped polyhedral virus. **(a)** A diagram of a polyhedral (icosahedral) virus. **(b)** A micrograph of the adenovirus *Mastadenovirus*. Individual capsomeres are visible.

Q What is the chemical composition of a capsid?

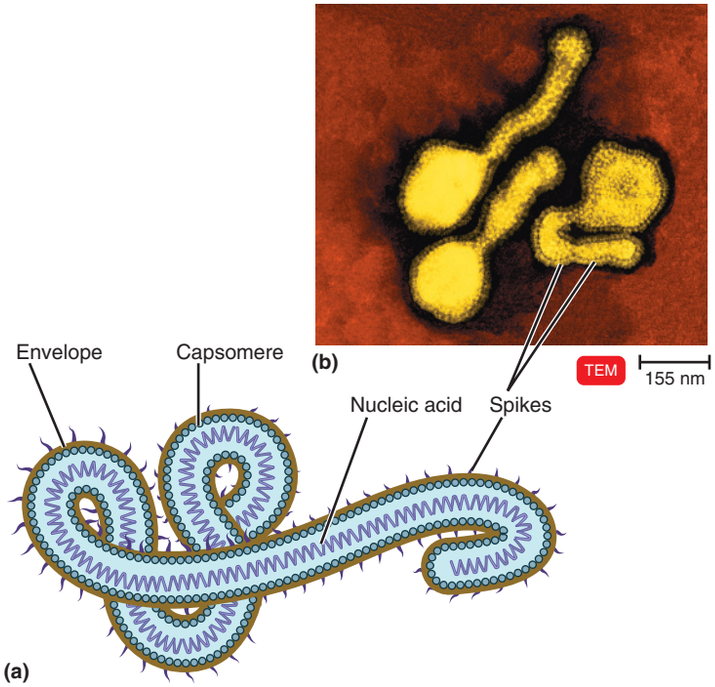


Figure 13.3 Morphology of an enveloped helical virus. **(a)** A diagram of an enveloped helical virus. **(b)** A micrograph of *Marburgvirus*. Notice the spikes projecting from the outer surface of the envelope (see Chapter 23).

Q What is the nucleic acid in a virus?

released from the host cell by an extrusion process that coats the virus with a layer of the host cell's plasma membrane; that layer becomes the viral envelope. In many cases, the envelope contains proteins determined by the viral nucleic acid and materials derived from normal host cell components.

Depending on the virus, envelopes may or may not be covered by **spikes**, which are carbohydrate-protein complexes that project from the surface of the envelope. Some viruses attach to host cells by means of spikes. Spikes are such a reliable characteristic of some viruses that they can be used as a means of identification. The ability of certain viruses, such as *Alphainfluenzavirus*, to clump red blood cells is associated with spikes. Such viruses bind to red blood cells and form bridges between them. The resulting clumping is called *hemagglutination* and is the basis for several useful laboratory tests. (See Figure 18.8.)

Viruses whose capsids aren't covered by an envelope are known as **nonenveloped viruses** (see Figure 13.2). The capsid of a nonenveloped virus protects the nucleic acid from nuclease enzymes in biological fluids and promotes the virus's attachment to susceptible host cells.

When the host has been infected by a virus, the host's immune system is stimulated to produce antibodies (proteins that react with the surface proteins of the virus, discussed in Chapter 17). This interaction between host antibodies and virus proteins should inactivate the virus and stop the infection. However, some viruses can escape antibodies because regions of the genes that code for these viruses' surface proteins are susceptible to mutations. The progeny of mutant viruses have altered surface proteins, such that the antibodies aren't able to react with them. This is called **antigenic drift**. Nearly 5000 mutations were described in the spike proteins of SARS-CoV-2 between 2019 and 2022. These mutations have resulted in various strains of the virus, such as delta and omicron, circulating in the human population. Influenza virus frequently undergoes such changes in its spikes. This is why you can get influenza and COVID-19 more than once. Although you may have produced antibodies to one strain, the virus can mutate and infect you again.

General Morphology

Viruses may be classified into several different morphological types on the basis of their capsid architecture. The structure of these capsids has been revealed by electron microscopy and a technique called X-ray crystallography.

Helical Viruses

Helical viruses resemble long rods that may be rigid or flexible. The viral nucleic acid is found within a hollow, cylindrical capsid that has a helical structure (**Figure 13.4**). The viruses that cause rabies and Ebola virus disease are helical viruses.

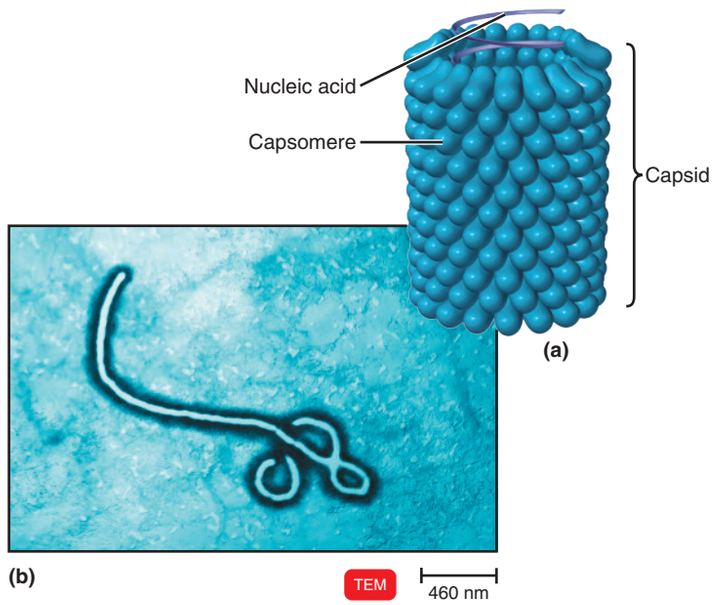


Figure 13.4 Morphology of a helical virus. **(a)** A diagram of a portion of a helical virus. A row of capsomeres has been removed to reveal the nucleic acid. **(b)** A micrograph of Ebola virus, a filovirus, showing a helical rodlike shape.

Q What is the chemical composition of a capsomere?

Polyhedral Viruses

Many animal, plant, and bacterial viruses are polyhedral, or many-sided, viruses. The capsid of most polyhedral viruses is in the shape of an *icosahedron*, a regular polyhedron with 20 triangular faces and 12 corners (see Figure 13.2a). The capsomeres of each face form an equilateral triangle. An example of a polyhedral virus in the shape of an icosahedron is the adenovirus (shown in Figure 13.2b). Another icosahedral virus is the poliovirus.

Enveloped Viruses

As noted earlier, the capsid of some viruses is covered by an envelope. Enveloped viruses are roughly spherical. When helical or polyhedral viruses are enclosed by envelopes, they are called *enveloped helical* or *enveloped polyhedral viruses*. An example of an enveloped helical virus is *Marburgvirus* (see Figure 13.3b). An example of an enveloped polyhedral (icosahedral) virus is SARS-CoV-2 (see Figure 24.14).

Complex Viruses

Some viruses, particularly bacterial viruses, have complicated structures and are called **complex viruses**. One example of a complex virus is a bacteriophage. Some bacteriophages have capsids to which additional structures are attached. In Figure 13.5a, notice that the capsid (head) is polyhedral and that the tail sheath is helical. The head contains the nucleic acid. Later in the chapter, we'll discuss the functions of the other structures, such as the tail sheath, tail fibers, baseplate, and pin. Another example of complex viruses are poxviruses, which don't contain clearly identifiable capsids but do have several coats around the nucleic acid (Figure 13.5b).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

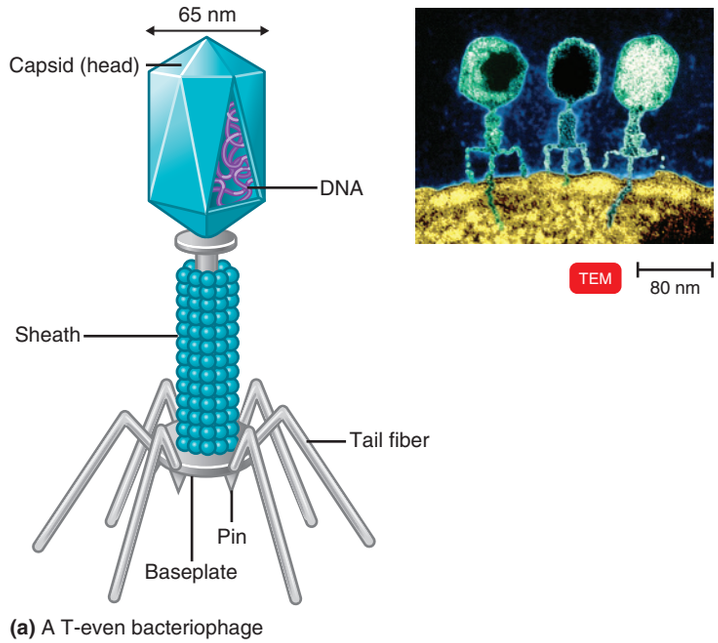
- **13-2** Diagram a nonenveloped polyhedral virus that has spikes.

Taxonomy of Viruses

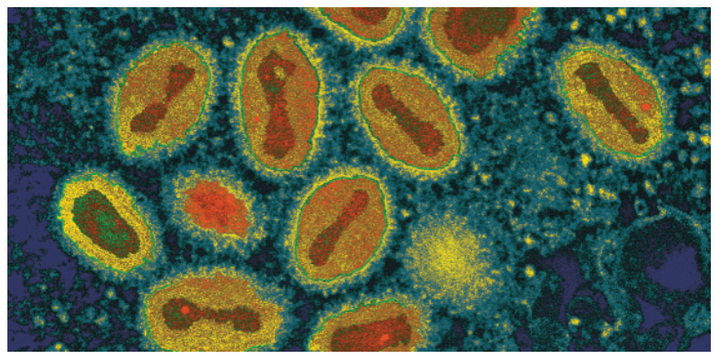
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **13-3** Define *viral species*.
- **13-4** Give an example of a family, genus, and common name for a virus.

Just as we need taxonomic categories of plants, animals, and bacteria, we need viral taxonomy to help us organize and understand these newly discovered organisms. The oldest classification of viruses is based on symptomatology, such as for diseases that affect the respiratory system. This system was convenient but not scientifically acceptable because the same virus may cause more than one disease, depending on the tissue affected. In addition, this system artificially grouped viruses that don't infect humans.



(a) A T-even bacteriophage



(b) *Orthopoxvirus*

Figure 13.5 Morphology of complex viruses. **(a)** A diagram and micrograph of a T-even bacteriophage. **(b)** A micrograph of variola virus, a species in the genus *Orthopoxvirus*, which causes smallpox.

Q What is the value of a capsid to a virus?

The taxonomy of cellular organisms uses the rRNA gene that is found in all cells, but viruses don't share a single conserved gene, so such a taxonomy would not apply. A system of classifying viruses was developed by David Baltimore in 1971. The Baltimore classification system is based on a virus's nucleic acid and how its mRNA is produced. It includes the seven groups shown in Table 13.2. New, fast DNA sequencing has allowed further classification of viruses into orders and families based on genomics and structure. As a result, the International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses has raised the seven Baltimore groups to a new, highest order taxon, the realm. The suffix *-virus* is used for genus names; family names end in *-viridae*; and order names end in *-virales* (ver-Ā-lēz). In formal usage, the family and genus names are used in the following manner: Family Herpesviridae, genus *Simplexvirus*, species *human herpesvirus-2*.

CLINICAL FOCUS Influenza: Crossing the Species Barrier

When we talk about "human flu viruses," we are referring to those subtypes that occur widely in humans. There are only three known subtypes of human influenza A viruses (H1N1, H1N2, and H3N2) in humans. Other influenza A viruses are found in many different animals, including birds, pigs, whales, horses, and seals. Sometimes influenza A viruses seen in one species can cross over and cause illness in another species. For example, up until 1998, only H1N1 viruses circulated widely in the U.S. pig population. In 1998, H3N2 viruses from humans were introduced into the pig population and caused widespread disease among pigs. The subtypes differ because of certain proteins on the surface of the virus (hemagglutinin [HA] and neuraminidase [NA] proteins). There are 18 different HA subtypes and 11 different NA subtypes of influenza A viruses in humans.

How many different combinations of H and N proteins are possible?

Each combination is a different subtype:
$18 \times 11 = 198$ possible combinations

What's different about bird flu?

H5 and H7 subtypes occur mainly in birds. Avian influenza (bird flu) viruses don't usually infect humans. All human cases of avian flu can be attributed to outbreaks in poultry, except one noteworthy probable transmission from a daughter to her mother. Avian influenza viruses may be transmitted to humans (1) directly from birds or from avian-virus-contaminated environments or (2) through an intermediate host, such as a pig.

Why are pigs important?

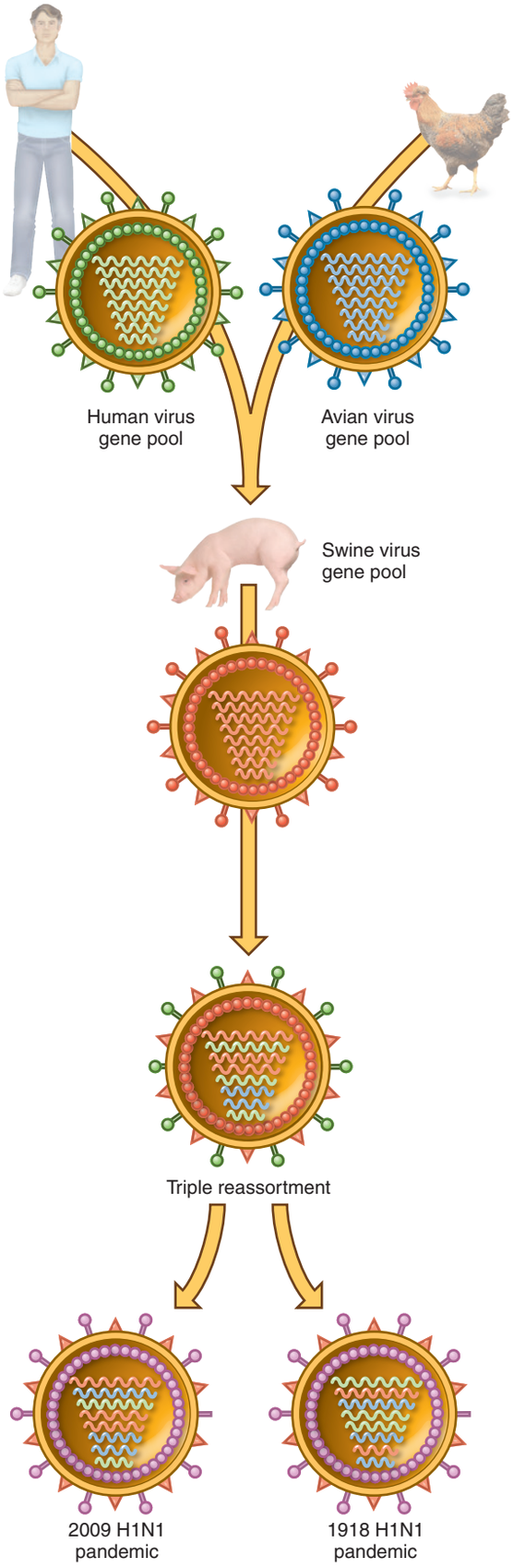
Pigs can be infected with both human and avian flu. The influenza virus genome is composed of eight separate segments. A segmented genome allows virus genes to mix and create a new influenza A virus if viruses from two different species infect the same person or animal (see the figure). This is known as *antigenic shift*.

The 2009 H1N1 virus was originally referred to as "swine flu" because laboratory testing showed that many of the genes in the virus were very similar to influenza viruses that normally occur in North American pigs. But further study has shown that the 2009 H1N1 is very different from that which normally circulates in North American pigs. It has two genes from flu viruses that normally circulate in pigs in Europe and Asia, avian influenza genes, and human influenza genes. This is called a *quadruple reassortant* virus. The figure shows an example of *triple reassortment* between three viruses.

Pandemics

During the last 100 years, the emergence of new influenza A virus subtypes caused four pandemics, all of which spread around the world within 1 year of being detected (see the table). Some genetic parts of all of these influenza A strains originally came from birds.

Source: Adapted from *MMWR* sources.



Model for antigenic shift in influenza virus. If a pig were infected with a human influenza virus and an avian influenza virus at the same time, the virus genes could reassort and produce a new virus that had most of the genes from the human virus but a hemagglutinin and/or neuraminidase from the avian virus. The resulting new virus might then be able to infect humans and spread from person to person, but it would have surface proteins (hemagglutinin and/or neuraminidase) not previously seen in influenza viruses that infect humans.

Influenza A Pandemics During the Past 100 Years

1918–19	H1N1 caused up to 50 million deaths worldwide. Virus has avian flu–like genes.
1957–58	H2N2 caused about 116,000 deaths in the United States. First identified in China in late February 1957. Viruses contained a combination of genes from a human influenza virus and an avian influenza virus.
1968–69	H3N2 caused about 100,000 deaths in the United States. This virus contained genes from a human influenza virus and an avian influenza virus.
2009–10	H1N1 caused at least one million deaths worldwide. A vaccine was available in developed and developing countries three months after the first cases.

A **viral species** is a group of viruses sharing the same genetic information and ecological niche (host range). Table 13.2 presents a summary of the classification of viruses that infect humans.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **13-3** How does a virus species differ from a bacterial species?
- **13-4** Attach the proper endings to Herpes to show the order and family that includes the human herpesviruses.

TABLE 13.2 Families of Viruses That Affect Humans

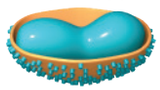
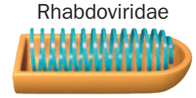
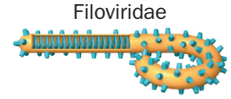
Baltimore group*	Characteristics/ Dimensions	Viral Family	Important Genera	Clinical or Special Features
I	**DOUBLE-STRANDED DNA**			
	Nonenveloped			
	70–90 nm	Adenoviridae	*Mastadenovirus*	Medium-sized viruses that cause various respiratory infections in humans; some cause tumors in animals.
	40–57 nm	Polyomaviridae	*Alphapapillomavirus* (human wart virus)	Small viruses that cause warts and cervical and anal cancer in humans. Refer to Chapters 21 and 26.
	Enveloped			
	200–350 nm	Poxviridae 	*Orthopoxvirus* (vaccinia, smallpox, and MPOX viruses) *Molluscipoxvirus*	Very large, complex, brick-shaped viruses that cause smallpox (variola), molluscum contagiosum (wartlike skin lesion), and cowpox. Refer to Chapter 21.
	150–200 nm	Herpesviridae	*Simplexvirus* (HHV-1 and -2) *Varicellovirus* (HHV-3) *Lymphocryptovirus* (HHV-4) *Cytomegalovirus* (HHV-5) *Roseolovirus* (HHV-6 and HHV-7) *Rhadinovirus* (HHV-8)	Medium-sized viruses that cause various human diseases: fever blisters, chickenpox, shingles, and infectious mononucleosis; cause a type of human cancer called Burkitt's lymphoma. Refer to Chapters 21, 23, and 26.
II	**SINGLE-STRANDED DNA**			
	Nonenveloped			
	18–25 nm	Parvoviridae	*Erythroparvovirus* (Human parvovirus B19)	Fifth disease; anemia in immunocompromised patients. Refer to Chapter 21.
III	**DOUBLE-STRANDED RNA**			
	Nonenveloped 60–80 nm	Reoviridae	*Rotavirus* *Coltivirus*	Generally mild respiratory infections. Includes many viruses transmitted by arthropods; Colorado tick fever is the best-known. Refer to Chapter 25.
IV	**SINGLE-STRANDED RNA, + STRANDED**			
	Nonenveloped			
	28–30 nm	Picornaviridae	*Enterovirus* *Enterovirus rhinovirus* (common cold virus) Hepatovirus (Hepatitis A virus)	Includes the polio-, coxsackie-, and echoviruses; hand-foot-mouth virus; more than 100 rhinoviruses exist and are the most common cause of colds. Refer to Chapters 22, 24, and 25.

TABLE 13.2 *(continued)*

Baltimore group*	Characteristics/ Dimensions	Viral Family	Important Genera	Clinical or Special Features
	35–40 nm	Hepeviridae Caliciviridae 	*Hepevirus* (Hepatitis E virus) *Norovirus*	Includes causes of gastroenteritis and hepatitis E. Refer to Chapter 25.
	Enveloped			
	80–160 nm	Coronaviridae 	*Alphacoronavirus* *Betacoronavirus*	Associated with upper respiratory tract infections and the common cold, COVID-19, SARS, and MERS. Refer to Chapter 24.
	60–70 nm	Togaviridae Matonaviridae 	*Alphavirus* *Rubivirus* (rubella virus)	Includes many viruses transmitted by arthropods (*Alphavirus*); diseases include eastern equine encephalitis (EEE), western equine encephalitis (WEE), and chikungunya. Rubella virus is transmitted by the respiratory route. Refer to Chapters 21, 22, and 23.
	40–50 nm	Flaviviridae 	*Flavivirus* *Hepacivirus* (Hepatitis C virus)	Can replicate in arthropods that transmit them; diseases include yellow fever, dengue, Zika, and West Nile encephalitis. Refer to Chapters 22, 23, and 25.
V	**SINGLE-STRANDED RNA, — STRAND**			
	One strand of RNA, Enveloped			
	150–300 nm	Paramyxoviridae 	*Rubulavirus* (mumps) *Morbillivirus* (measles) *Orthopneumovirus*	Paramyxoviruses cause parainfluenza and mumps in humans, and Newcastle disease in chickens. *Orthopneumovirus* causes RSV disease. Refer to Chapters 21, 24, and 25.
	70–180 nm	Rhabdoviridae 	*Vesiculovirus* (vesicular stomatatis virus) *Lyssavirus* (rabies virus)	Bullet-shaped viruses with a spiked envelope; cause rabies and numerous animal diseases. Refer to Chapter 22.
	80–14,000 nm	Filoviridae 	*Ebolavirus, Marburgvirus*	Enveloped, helical viruses; Ebola and Marburg viruses are filoviruses. Refer to Chapter 23.
	Virusoid or Satellite RNA			
	32 nm	Deltaviridae 	*Deltavirus* (hepatitis D virus)	Depends on coinfection with hepadnavirus. Refer to Chapter 25.
	Multiple Strands of RNA, Enveloped			
	80–200 nm	Orthomyxoviridae 	*Alphainfluenzavirus* *Betainfluenzavirus*	Envelope spikes can agglutinate red blood cells. Refer to Chapter 24.
	110–130 nm	Arenaviridae 	*Mammarenavirus*	Helical capsids contain RNA-containing granules; cause lymphocytic choriomeningitis, Venezuelan hemorrhagic fever, and Lassa fever. Refer to Chapter 23.
	90–120 nm	Peribunyaviridae 	*Orthobunyavirus* (California encephalitis virus) *Orthohantavirus*	Hantaviruses cause hemorrhagic fevers such as Korean hemorrhagic fever and *Hantavirus* pulmonary syndrome; associated with rodents. Refer to Chapters 22 and 23.

(*continued*)

TABLE 13.2 Families of Viruses That Affect Humans *(continued)*

Baltimore group*	Characteristics/ Dimensions	Viral Family	Important Genera	Clinical or Special Features
VI	SINGLE-STRANDED RNA, PRODUCE DNA			
	Enveloped			
	100–120 nm	Retroviridae	Oncoviruses *Lentivirus* (HIV)	Includes all RNA tumor viruses. Oncoviruses cause leukemia and tumors in animals; *Lentivirus* causes AIDS. Refer to Chapter 19.
VII	DOUBLE-STRANDED DNA, USE REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE ENVELOPED			
	42 nm	Hepadnaviridae	*Orthohepadnavirus* (hepatitis B virus)	After protein synthesis, hepatitis B virus uses reverse transcriptase to produce its DNA from mRNA; causes hepatitis B and liver tumors. Refer to Chapter 25.

*The Baltimore classification scheme was developed by David Baltimore, the discoverer of retroviruses.

Isolation, Cultivation, and Identification of Viruses

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

13-5 Describe how bacteriophages are cultured.

13-6 Describe how animal viruses are cultured.

13-7 List three techniques used to identify viruses.

The fact that viruses can't multiply outside a living host cell complicates their detection, enumeration, and identification. Viruses must be provided with living cells instead of a fairly simple chemical medium. Living plants and animals are difficult and expensive to maintain, and pathogenic viruses that grow only in higher primates and human hosts cause additional complications. However, viruses that use bacterial cells as a host (bacteriophages) are rather easily grown on bacterial cultures. This is one reason so much of our understanding of viral multiplication has come from bacteriophages.

Growing Bacteriophages in the Laboratory

Bacteriophages can be grown either in suspensions of bacteria in liquid media or in bacterial cultures on solid media. The use of solid media makes it possible to use the *plaque method* to detect and count viruses. A bacteriophage sample is mixed with host bacteria and melted agar. The agar containing the bacteriophages and host bacteria is then poured into a Petri plate containing a hardened layer of agar growth medium. The virus-bacteria mixture solidifies into a thin top layer that contains a layer of bacteria approximately one cell thick. Each virus infects a bacterium, multiplies, and releases several hundred new viruses. These newly produced viruses infect other bacteria in the immediate vicinity, and more new viruses are produced. Following several viral multiplication cycles, all the bacteria in the area surrounding the original virus are destroyed. This produces a number of clearings, or **plaques**, visible against a lawn of bacterial growth on the surface of the agar (Figure 13.6). While the plaques form, uninfected bacteria elsewhere in the Petri plate multiply rapidly and produce a turbid background.

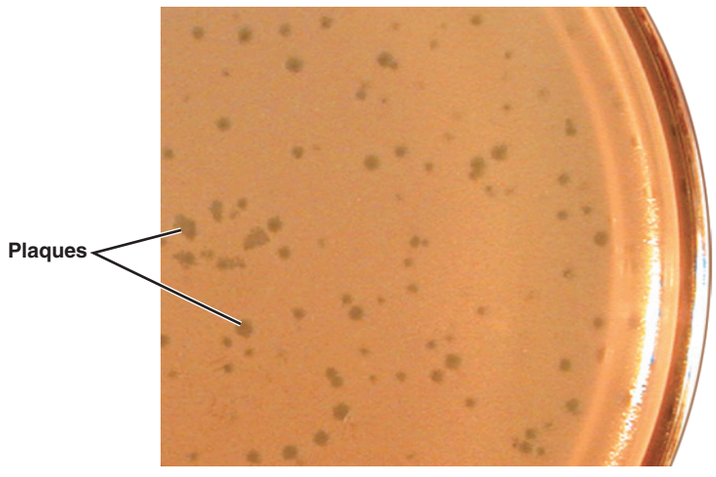


Figure 13.6 Viral plaques formed by bacteriophages. Clear viral plaques of various sizes have been formed by bacteriophage λ (lambda) on a lawn of *E. coli*.

Q What is a plaque-forming unit?

Theoretically each plaque corresponds to a single virus in the initial suspension. Therefore, the concentrations of viral suspensions measured by the number of plaques are usually expressed in terms of **plaque-forming units (PFUs)**.

Growing Animal Viruses in the Laboratory

In the laboratory, three methods are commonly used for culturing animal viruses. These methods involve using living animals, embryonated eggs, or cell cultures.

In Living Animals

Some animal viruses can be cultured only in living animals, such as mice, rabbits, and guinea pigs. Most experiments to study the immune system's response to viral infections must also be performed in virally infected live animals. Animal inoculation may be used as a diagnostic procedure for identifying and isolating a virus from a clinical specimen. After the animal is inoculated with the specimen, the animal is observed for signs of disease or is killed so that infected tissues can be examined for the virus.

Some human viruses can't be grown in animals or can be grown but don't cause disease. The lack of natural animal models for AIDS slowed our understanding of its disease process and prevented experimentation with drugs that inhibit growth of the virus in vivo. Chimpanzees can be infected with one subspecies of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV-1, genus *Lentivirus*), but because they don't show symptoms of the disease, they can't be used to study the effects of viral growth and disease treatments. AIDS vaccines are presently being tested in humans, but the disease progresses so slowly in humans that it can take years to determine the effectiveness of these vaccines. In 1986, simian AIDS (an immunodeficiency disease of green monkeys) was reported, followed in 1987 by feline AIDS (an immunodeficiency disease of domestic cats). These diseases are caused by lentiviruses, which are closely related to HIV, and the diseases develop within a few months, thus providing a model for studying viral growth in different tissues. In 1990, a way to infect mice with HIV was found when immunodeficient mice were grafted to produce human T cells and human gamma globulin. The mice provide a reliable model for studying viral replication, although they don't provide models for vaccine development.

In Embryonated Eggs

If the virus will grow in an *embryonated egg* (an egg that has been fertilized and in which a chick embryo is growing), this can be a fairly convenient and inexpensive form of host for many animal viruses. A hole is drilled in the shell of the embryonated egg, and a viral suspension or suspected virus-containing tissue is injected into the egg's fluid. There are several membranes in an egg, and the virus is injected near the one most appropriate for its growth (Figure 13.7). Viral growth

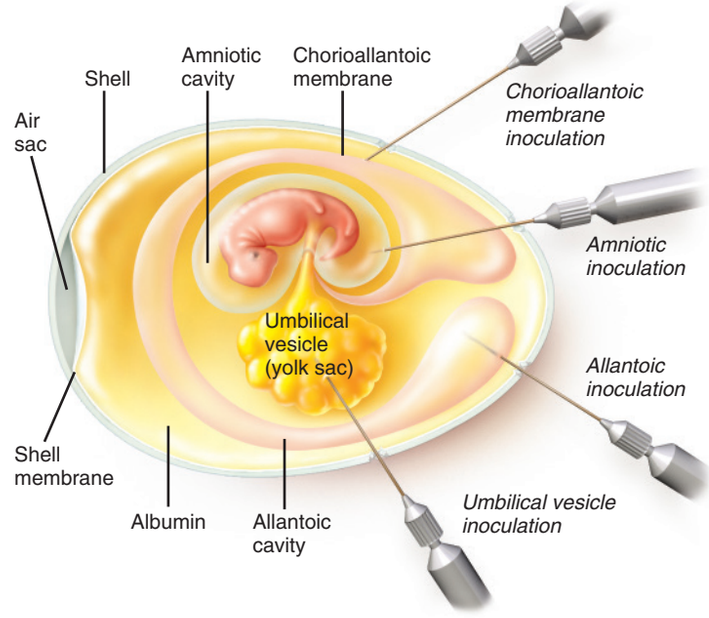


Figure 13.7 Inoculation of an embryonated egg. The viruses will grow on the membrane at the inoculation site.

Q Why are viruses grown in eggs and not in culture media?

is signaled by the death of the embryo, by embryo cell damage, or by the formation of typical pocks or lesions on the egg membranes. This method was once the most widely used method of isolating and growing viruses, and it's still used to grow viruses for some vaccines. For this reason, you may be asked if you're allergic to eggs before receiving a vaccination, because egg proteins may be present in the viral vaccine preparations. (Allergic reactions will be discussed in Chapter 19.)

In Cell Cultures

Cell cultures have replaced embryonated eggs as the preferred type of growth medium for many viruses. Cell cultures consist of cells grown in culture media in the laboratory. Because these cultures are generally rather homogeneous collections of cells and can be propagated and handled much like bacterial cultures, they are more convenient to work with than whole animals or embryonated eggs.

Cell culture lines are started by treating a slice of animal tissue with enzymes that separate the individual cells (Figure 13.8). These cells are suspended in a solution that provides the osmotic pressure, nutrients, and growth factors needed for the cells to grow. Normal cells tend to adhere to the glass or plastic container and reproduce to form a monolayer. Viruses infecting such a monolayer sometimes cause the cells of the monolayer to deteriorate as they multiply. This cell deterioration, called **cytopathic effect (CPE)**, is illustrated in Figure 13.9. CPE can be detected and counted in much the same way as plaques caused by bacteriophages on a lawn of bacteria and reported as PFU/ml.

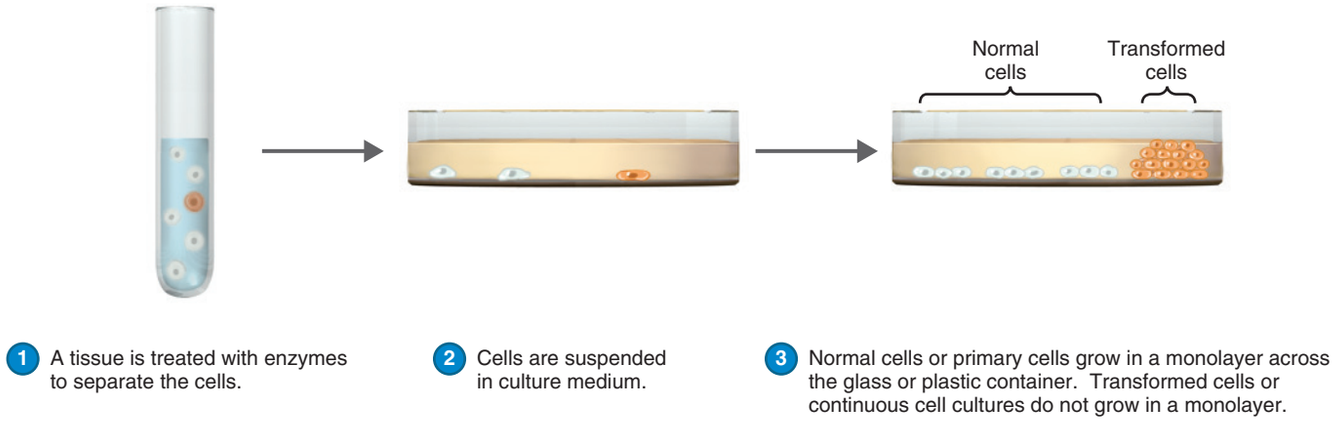


Figure 13.8 Cell cultures. Transformed cells can be grown indefinitely in laboratory culture.

Q Why are transformed cells referred to as "immortal"?

Viruses may be grown in primary or continuous cell lines. **Primary cell lines**, derived from tissue slices, tend to die out after only a few generations. Certain cell lines, called **diploid cell lines**, developed from human embryos can be maintained for about 100 generations and are widely used for culturing viruses that require a human host. Cell lines developed from embryonic human cells are used to culture rabies virus for a rabies vaccine called human diploid culture vaccine (see Chapter 22).

When viruses are routinely grown in a laboratory, **continuous cell lines** are used. These are transformed (cancerous) cells that can be maintained through an indefinite number of generations, and they're sometimes called immortal cell lines (see the discussion of transformation later in this chapter). One of these, the HeLa cell line, was isolated from the cancer of a woman (*He*nrietta *La*cks) who died in 1951. Despite the success of cell culture in viral isolation and growth, some viruses have never been successfully cultivated this way.

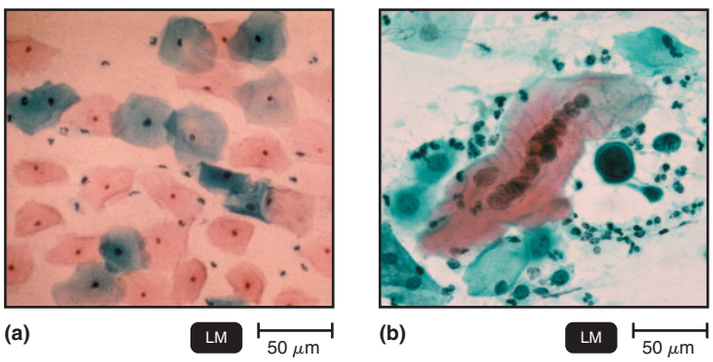


Figure 13.9 The cytopathic effect of viruses. **(a)** Uninfected human cervical cells; each has one nucleus. **(b)** After infection with HHV-2, the red cervical cell has many nuclei that are filled with viruses.

Q How did HHV-2 infection affect the cells?

The idea of cell culture dates back to the end of the nineteenth century, but it wasn't a practical laboratory technique until the development of antibiotics in the years following World War II. A major problem with cell culture is that the cell lines must be kept free of microbial contamination. The maintenance of cell culture lines requires monitoring by trained and experienced technicians 24 hours a day. Because of these difficulties, most hospital laboratories and many state health laboratories don't isolate and identify viruses in clinical work. Instead, the tissue or serum samples are sent to central laboratories that specialize in such work.

Viral Identification

Identifying viral isolates isn't an easy task. For one thing, viruses can't be seen without the use of an electron microscope. Serological methods, such as ELISA, are the most commonly used means of identification (see Figure 18.12). In these tests, the virus is detected and identified by its reaction with antibodies. We'll discuss antibodies in detail in Chapter 17 and a number of immunological tests for identifying viruses in Chapter 18. Observation of cytopathic effects, described in Chapter 15, is also useful for identifying a virus. Virologists can identify and characterize viruses by using the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) (Chapter 9).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **13-5** What is the plaque method?
- **13-6** Why are continuous cell lines of more practical use than primary cell lines for culturing viruses?
- **13-7** What tests could you use to identify influenza virus in a patient?

Viral Multiplication

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

13-8 Describe the lytic cycle of *Tequatrovirus* bacteriophages.

13-9 Describe the lysogenic cycle of *Lambdavirus* bacteriophage.

13-10 Compare and contrast the multiplication cycle of DNA and RNA-containing animal viruses.

The nucleic acid in a virion contains only a few of the genes needed for the synthesis of new viruses. These include genes for the virion's structural components, such as the capsid proteins, and genes for a few of the enzymes used in the viral life cycle. These enzymes are synthesized and functional only when the virus is within the host cell. Viral enzymes are almost entirely concerned with replicating or processing viral nucleic acid. Other enzymes, ribosomes, tRNA, and energy production are supplied by the host cell and are used for synthesizing viral proteins, including viral enzymes. Although the smallest nonenveloped virions don't contain preformed enzymes, the larger virions may contain one or a few enzymes or mRNA that were made by the previous host. These usually function in helping the virus penetrate the host cell, replicate its own nucleic acid, or begin protein synthesis.

ASM: The synthesis of viral genetic material and proteins is dependent on host cells.

Thus, for a virus to multiply, it must invade a host cell and take over the host's metabolic machinery. A single virion can give rise to several or even thousands of similar viruses in a single host cell. This process can drastically change the host cell and usually causes its death. In a few viral infections, cells survive and continue to produce viruses indefinitely.

The multiplication of viruses can be demonstrated with a **one-step growth curve** (Figure 13.10). The data are obtained by infecting every cell in a culture and then testing the culture medium and cells for virions and viral proteins and nucleic acids.

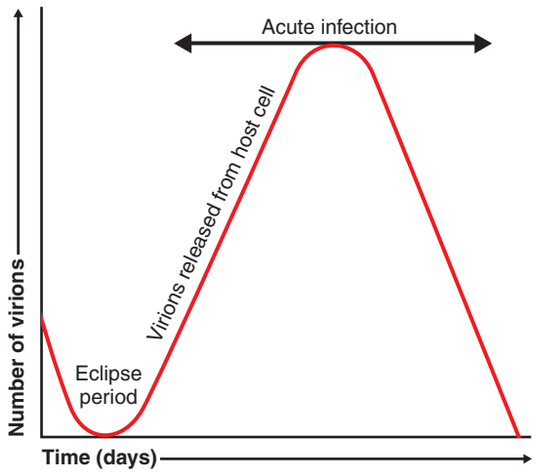


Figure 13.10 A viral one-step growth curve. No new infective virions are found in a culture until after biosynthesis and maturation have taken place. Most infected cells die as a result of infection; consequently, new virions won't be produced.

Q What can be found in the cell during biosynthesis and maturation?

Although the means by which a virus enters and exits a host cell may vary, the basic mechanism of viral multiplication is similar for all viruses. We begin our discussion with multiplication of bacteriophages.

Multiplication of Bacteriophages

Bacteriophages can multiply by two alternative mechanisms: the lytic cycle or the lysogenic cycle. The **lytic cycle** ends with the lysis and death of the host cell, whereas the host cell remains alive in the **lysogenic cycle**. The *T-even bacteriophages* (T2, T4, and T6) are a large and related group of phages in the genus *Tequatrovirus (te-KWAH-trō-vī-rus)* that infect *E. coli*. Because they have been studied most extensively, we'll describe the multiplication of T-even bacteriophages in their host, *E. coli*, as an example of the lytic cycle.

T-Even (*Tequatrovirus*) Bacteriophages: The Lytic Cycle

The virions of T-even bacteriophages are large, complex, and nonenveloped, with double-stranded DNA and a characteristic head-and-tail structure shown in Figure 13.5a and Figure 13.11. The length of DNA contained in these bacteriophages is only about 6% of that contained in *E. coli*, yet the phage has enough DNA for over 100 genes. The multiplication cycle of these phages, like that of all viruses, occurs in five distinct stages: attachment, penetration, biosynthesis, maturation, and release.

Attachment 1 After a chance collision between phage particles and bacteria, *attachment*, or *adsorption*, occurs. During this process, an attachment site on the virus attaches to a complementary receptor site on the bacterial cell. This attachment is a chemical interaction in which weak bonds are formed between the attachment and receptor sites. T-even bacteriophages use fibers at the end of the tail as attachment sites. The complementary receptor sites are on the bacterial cell wall.

Penetration 2 After attachment, the T-even bacteriophage injects its DNA (nucleic acid) into the bacterium. To do this, the bacteriophage's tail releases an enzyme, **phage lysozyme**, which breaks down a portion of the bacterial cell wall. During the process of *penetration*, the tail sheath of the phage contracts, and the tail core is driven through the cell wall. When the tip of the core reaches the plasma membrane, the DNA from the bacteriophage's head passes through the tail core, through the plasma membrane, and enters the bacterial cell. The capsid remains outside the bacterial cell. Therefore, the phage particle functions like a hypodermic syringe to inject its DNA into the bacterial cell.

Biosynthesis 3 Once the bacteriophage DNA has reached the cytoplasm of the host cell, the biosynthesis of viral nucleic acid and protein occurs. Host protein synthesis is stopped by

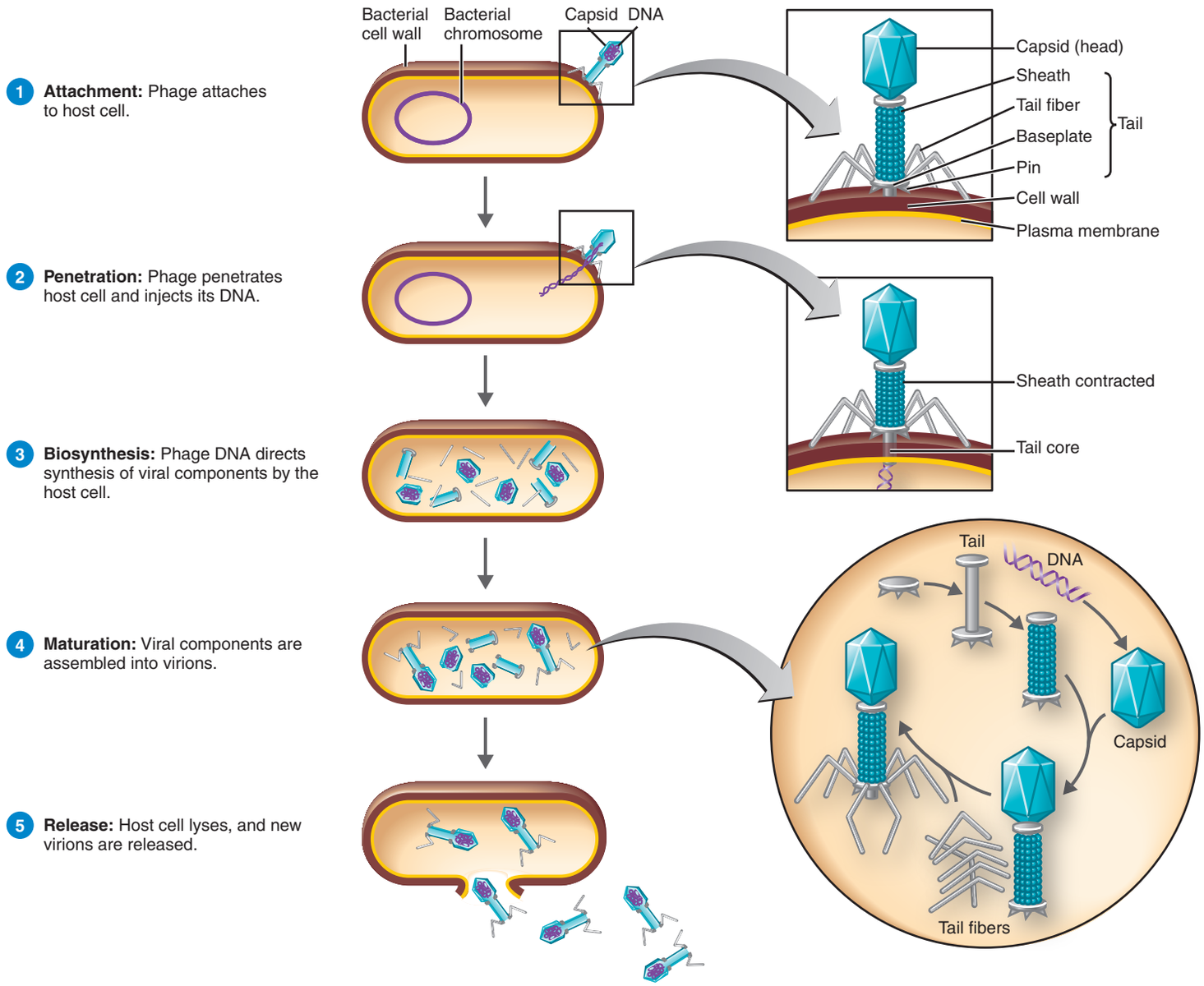


Figure 13.11 The lytic cycle of a *Tequatrovirus* (T-even) bacteriophage.

Q What is the result of the lytic cycle?

virus-induced degradation of the host DNA, viral proteins that interfere with transcription, or the repression of translation.

Initially, the phage uses the host cell's nucleotides and several of its enzymes to synthesize many copies of phage DNA. Soon after, the biosynthesis of viral proteins begins. Any RNA transcribed in the cell is mRNA transcribed from phage DNA for the biosynthesis of phage enzymes and capsid proteins. The host cell's ribosomes, enzymes, and amino acids are used for translation. Genetic controls regulate when different regions of phage DNA are transcribed into mRNA during the multiplication cycle. For example, early messages are translated into early phage proteins, the enzymes used in the synthesis of phage DNA. Also, late messages are translated into late phage proteins for the synthesis of capsid proteins.

For several minutes following infection, complete phages can't be found in the host cell. Only separate components—DNA and protein—can be detected. The period during viral multiplication when complete, infective virions aren't yet present is called the **eclipse period**.

Maturation 4 In the next sequence of events, *maturation* occurs. In this process, bacteriophage DNA and capsids are assembled into complete virions. The viral components essentially assemble into a viral particle spontaneously, eliminating the need for

many nonstructural genes and gene products. The phage heads and tails are separately assembled from protein subunits, and the head is filled with phage DNA and attached to the tail.

Release 5 The final stage of viral multiplication is the *release* of virions from the host cell. The term **lysis** is generally used for this stage in the multiplication of T-even phages because in this case, the plasma membrane actually breaks open (lyses). Lysozyme, which is encoded by a phage gene, is synthesized within the cell. This enzyme causes the bacterial cell wall to break down, and the newly produced bacteriophages are released from the host cell. The released bacteriophages infect other susceptible cells in the vicinity, and the viral multiplication cycle is repeated within those cells.

The potential to use viruses to treat diseases is intriguing because of their narrow host range and their ability to kill their host cells. The idea of *phage therapy*—using bacteriophages to treat bacterial infections—was developed in France in 1919 and used until 1979. Phage therapy is used currently in Russia and in neighboring Georgia. There is renewed interest in phage therapy in the United States and western Europe to treat infections caused by antibiotic-resistant bacteria. Furthermore, new evidence suggests that bacteriophages in the human microbiome play a role in maintaining health. See **Exploring the Microbiome**.

Bacteriophage *Lambdavirus* (λ): The Lysogenic Cycle

In contrast to *Tequatrovirus*, some viruses don't cause lysis and death of the host cell when they multiply. These *lysogenic phages* (also called *temperate phages*) may indeed proceed through a lytic cycle, but they are also capable of incorporating their DNA into the host cell's DNA to begin a lysogenic cycle. In **lysogeny**, the phage remains latent (inactive). The participating bacterial host cells are known as *lysogenic cells*.

We will use the bacteriophage λ (genus *Lambdavirus*), a well-studied lysogenic phage, as an example of the lysogenic cycle (**Figure 13.12**).

1 Upon penetration into an *E. coli* cell,

2 the originally linear phage DNA forms a circle.

3a This circle can multiply and be transcribed,

4a leading to the production of new phage and to cell lysis (the lytic cycle).

3b Alternatively, the circle can recombine with and become part of the circular bacterial DNA (the lysogenic cycle). The inserted phage DNA is now called a **prophage**. Most of the prophage genes are repressed by two repressor proteins that are the products of phage genes. These repressors stop transcription of all the other phage genes by binding to operators (see Chapter 8). Thus, the phage genes that would otherwise direct the synthesis and release of new virions are turned off, in much the same way that the genes of the *E. coli lac* operon are turned off by the *lac* repressor (Figure 8.12).

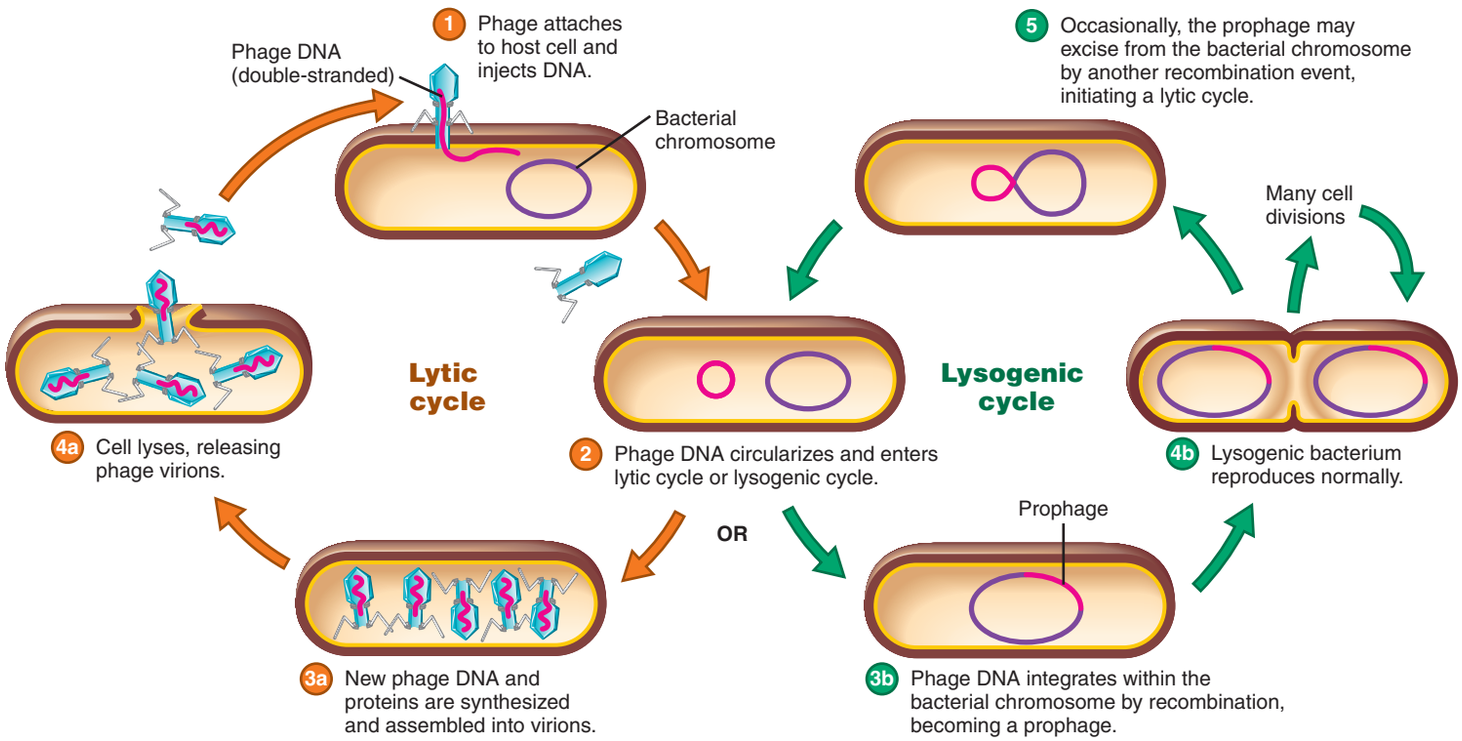


Figure 13.12 The lysogenic cycle of *Lambdavirus* bacteriophage in *E. coli*.

Q How does lysogeny differ from the lytic cycle?

Every time the host cell's machinery replicates the bacterial chromosome,

4b it also replicates the prophage DNA. The prophage remains latent within the progeny cells.

5 However, a rare spontaneous event, or the action of UV light or certain chemicals, can lead to the excision (popping-out) of the phage DNA, and to initiation of the lytic cycle.

There are three important results of lysogeny. First, the lysogenic cells are immune to reinfection by the same phage. (However, the host cell isn't immune to infection by other phage types.) The second result of lysogeny is **phage conversion**; that is, the host cell may exhibit new properties. For example, the bacterium *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, which causes diphtheria, is a pathogen whose disease-producing properties are related to the synthesis of a toxin. The organism can produce toxin only when it carries a lysogenic phage because the prophage carries the gene coding for the toxin. As another example, only streptococci carrying a lysogenic phage are capable of causing toxic shock syndrome. The toxin produced by *Clostridium botulinum*, which causes botulism, is also encoded by a prophage gene.

The third result of lysogeny is that it makes **specialized transduction** possible. Specialized transduction is a process in which a piece of cellular DNA adjacent to a prophage is transferred to another cell (Figure 13.13).

Recall from Chapter 8 that bacterial genes can be picked up in a phage capsid and transferred to another bacterium in a process called *generalized transduction* (see Figure 8.32). Any bacterial genes can be transferred by generalized transduction because the host chromosome is broken down into fragments, any of which can be packaged into a phage coat. In specialized transduction, however, only certain bacterial genes can be transferred.

Specialized transduction is mediated by a lysogenic phage that packages bacterial DNA *along with* its own DNA in the same capsid (see Figure 13.13, step 2). A prophage can excise from the host chromosome and become lytic by a process called **induction**, which can occur spontaneously or after DNA damage that destroys the repressor. Adjacent genes from either side of the prophage may remain attached to the excised phage DNA. In Figure 13.13, *Lambdavirus* has picked up the *gal* gene for galactose fermentation from its galactose-positive host. The phage carries this gene to a galactose-negative cell, which then becomes galactose-positive.

Certain animal viruses can undergo processes very similar to lysogeny. Animal viruses that can remain latent in cells for long periods without multiplying or causing disease may become inserted into a host chromosome or remain separate from host DNA in a repressed state (as some lysogenic phages). Cancer-causing viruses may also be latent, as we'll discuss later in the chapter.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **13-8** How do bacteriophages get nucleotides and amino acids if they don't have any metabolic enzymes?
- **13-9** *Vibrio cholerae* produces toxin and is capable of causing cholera only when it is lysogenic. What does this mean?

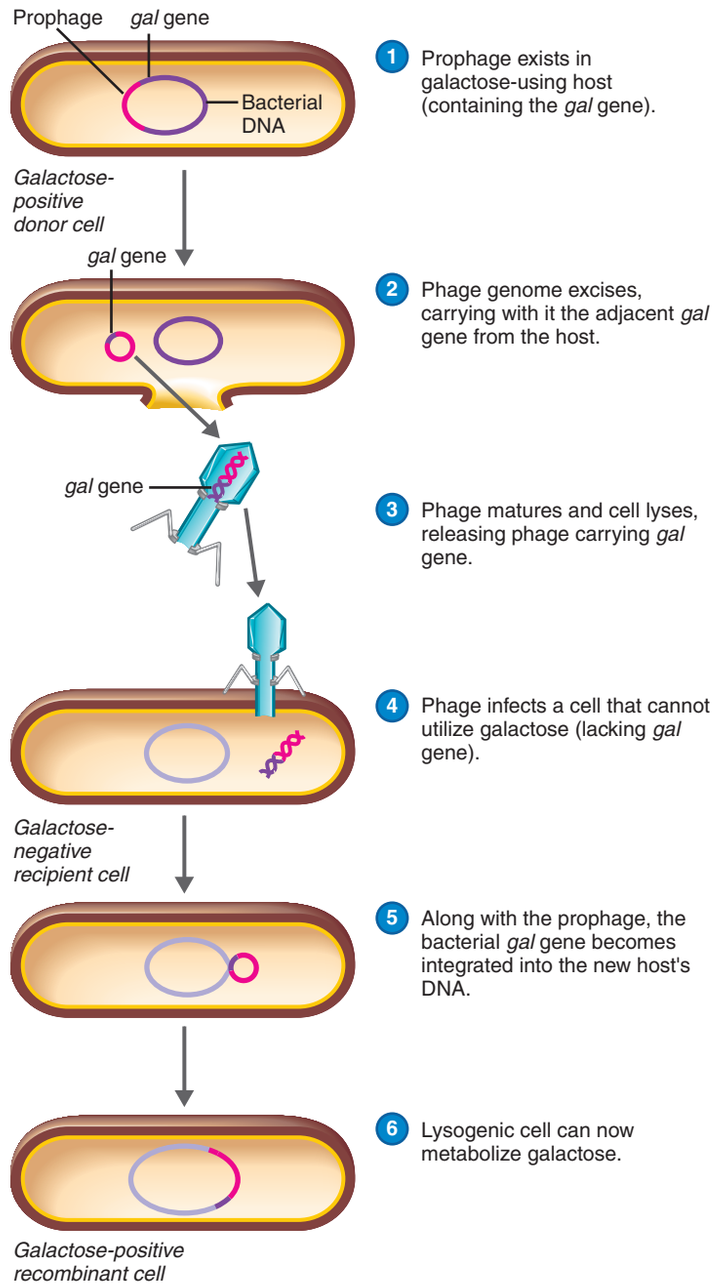


Figure 13.13 Specialized transduction. When a prophage is excised from its host chromosome, it can take with it a bit of the adjacent DNA from the bacterial chromosome.

Q How does specialized transduction differ from the lytic cycle?

Multiplication of Animal Viruses

The multiplication of animal viruses follows the basic pattern of bacteriophage multiplication but has several differences, summarized in Table 13.3. Animal viruses differ from phages in their mechanism of entering the host cell. Also, once the virus is inside, the synthesis and assembly of the new viral components are somewhat different, partly because of the differences between prokaryotic cells and eukaryotic cells. Animal viruses may have certain types of enzymes not found in phages. Finally, the mechanisms of maturation and release, and the effects on the host cell, differ in animal viruses and phages.

A virus needs live host cells but must stop synthesis of host proteins, so the viral genes are translated. Research currently indicates that viruses use several mechanisms to inhibit expression of host cell genes. Early proteins translated from the viral genome may block transcription, existing mRNA, or in-progress translation. In the following discussion of the multiplication of animal viruses, we'll consider the processes that are shared by both DNA- and RNA-containing animal viruses. These processes are attachment, entry, uncoating, and release. We'll also examine how DNA- and RNA-containing viruses differ with respect to their processes of biosynthesis.

Attachment

Like bacteriophages, animal viruses have attachment sites that attach to complementary receptor sites on the host cell's surface. However, the receptor sites of animal cells are proteins and glycoproteins of the plasma membrane. Moreover, animal viruses don't possess appendages like the tail fibers of some bacteriophages. The attachment sites of animal viruses are distributed over the surface of the virus, and the sites themselves vary from one group of viruses to another. In adenoviruses, which are icosahedral viruses, the attachment sites are small fibers at the corners of the icosahedron (see Figure 13.2b). In many of the enveloped viruses, such as influenza virus (Figure 24.15) and SARS-CoV-2 (Figure 24.14), the attachment sites are spikes located on the surface of the envelope. As soon as one spike attaches to a host receptor, additional receptor sites on the same cell migrate to the virus. Attachment is completed when many sites are bound.

Receptor sites are proteins of the host cell. The proteins have normal functions for the host and are hijacked by the virus. This could account for the individual differences in susceptibility to a particular virus. For example, people who lack the cellular receptor (called P antigen) for parvovirus B19 are naturally resistant to infection and don't get fifth disease (Chapter 21). Understanding the nature of attachment can lead to the development of drugs that prevent viral infections. Monoclonal antibodies (discussed in Chapter 18) that combine with SARS-CoV-2 attachment spikes are used to treat COVID-19.

Entry

Following attachment, entry occurs. Many viruses enter into eukaryotic cells by **receptor-mediated endocytosis** (Chapter 4). A cell's plasma membrane continuously folds inward to form vesicles. These vesicles contain elements that originate outside the cell and are brought into the interior of the cell to be digested. If a virion attaches to the plasma membrane of a potential host cell, the host cell will enfold the virion and form a vesicle (Figure 13.14a). Some viruses trigger membrane ruffling and endocytosis called **macropinocytosis**.

Enveloped viruses can enter by an alternative method called **fusion**, in which the viral envelope fuses with the plasma membrane and releases the capsid into the cell's cytoplasm (Figure 13.14b).

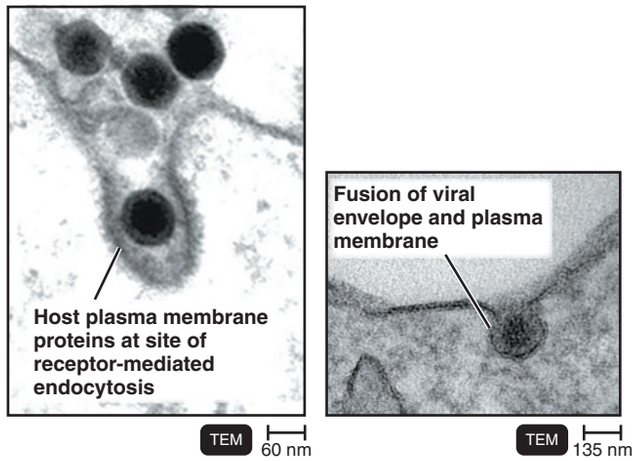
Uncoating

Viruses disappear during the eclipse period of an infection because they are taken apart inside the cell. **Uncoating** is the separation of the viral nucleic acid from its protein coat. This process varies with the type of virus. Some animal viruses accomplish uncoating by the

ASM: The replication cycles of viruses (lytic and lysogenic) differ among viruses and are determined by their unique structures and genomes.

TABLE 13.3 Bacteriophage and Animal Viral Multiplication Compared

Stage	Bacteriophages	Animal Viruses
Attachment	Tail fibers attach to cell wall proteins	Receptor sites are plasma membrane proteins and glycoproteins.
Entry	Viral DNA is injected into host cell	Capsid enters by receptor-mediated endocytosis or fusion.
Uncoating	Not required	Enzymatic removal of capsid proteins.
Biosynthesis	In cytoplasm	In nucleus (DNA viruses) or cytoplasm (RNA viruses).
Chronic infection	Lysogeny	Latency; slow viral infections; cancer.
Release	Host cell is lysed	Enveloped viruses bud out; nonenveloped viruses rupture plasma membrane.



(a) Entry of pig retrovirus by receptor-mediated endocytosis

(b) Entry of herpesvirus by fusion

Figure 13.14 The entry of viruses into host cells. After attachment, viruses enter host cells by **(a)** receptor-mediated endocytosis or **(b)** fusion of the viral envelope and cell membrane.

Q In which process is the cell actively taking in the virus?

action of lysosomal enzymes of the host cell. These enzymes degrade the proteins of the viral capsid. The uncoating of poxviruses is completed by a specific enzyme encoded by the viral DNA and synthesized soon after infection. Uncoating of influenza virus occurs at the lower pH in a vesicle. Uncoating of togaviruses occurs at ribosomes in the host cytoplasm.

The biggest differences between viruses occur during biosynthesis of viral components. We'll discuss biosynthesis of DNA viruses and then biosynthesis of RNA viruses.

The Biosynthesis of DNA Viruses

Generally, DNA-containing viruses replicate their DNA in the nucleus of the host cell by using host enzymes, and they synthesize their capsid and other proteins in the cytoplasm by using host cell enzymes. Then the proteins migrate into the nucleus and are joined with the newly synthesized DNA to form virions. These virions are transported along the endoplasmic reticulum to the host cell's membrane for release. Herpesviruses, polyomaviruses, adenoviruses, and hepadnaviruses all follow this pattern of biosynthesis (Table 13.4). Poxviruses are an exception because all of their components are synthesized in the cytoplasm.

As an example of the multiplication of a DNA virus, the sequence of events in a polyomavirus is shown in Figure 13.15.

1–2 Following attachment, entry, and uncoating, the viral DNA is released into the nucleus of the host cell.

3 Transcription of a portion of the viral DNA—the "early" genes—occurs next. Translation follows. The products of these genes are enzymes that are required for the multiplication of viral DNA. In most DNA viruses, early transcription is carried out with the host's transcriptase (RNA polymerase); poxviruses, however, contain their own transcriptase.

4 Sometime after the initiation of DNA replication, transcription and translation of the remaining "late" viral genes occur. Late proteins include capsid and other structural proteins.

5 This leads to the synthesis of capsid proteins, which occurs in the cytoplasm of the host cell.

6 After the capsid proteins migrate into the nucleus of the host cell, maturation occurs; the viral DNA and capsid proteins assemble to form complete viruses.

7 Complete viruses are then released from the host cell.

Some DNA viruses are described next.

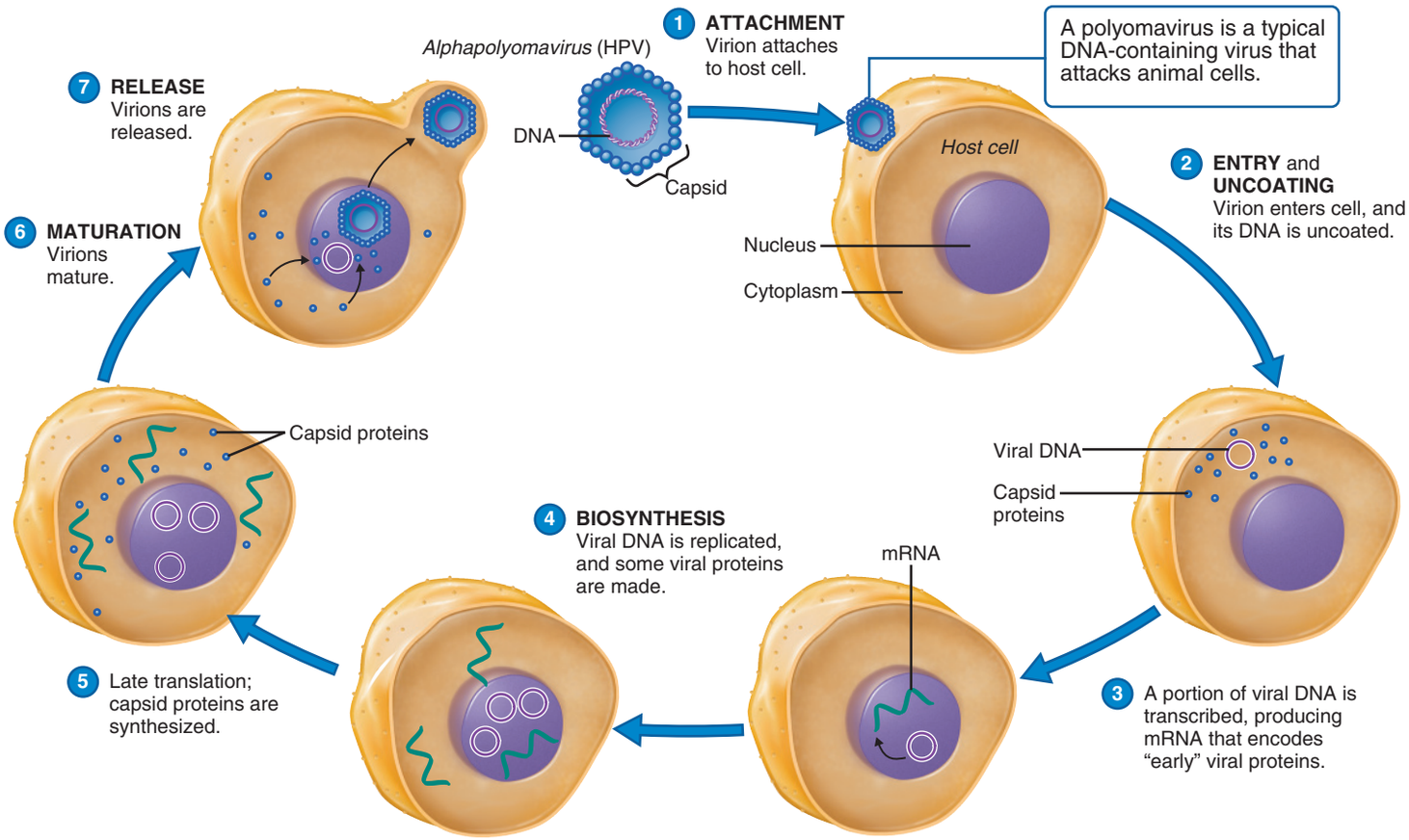
Adenoviridae Named after adenoids, from which they were first isolated, adenoviruses cause acute respiratory diseases—the common cold (Figure 13.16a).

TABLE 13.4 The Biosynthesis of DNA and RNA Viruses Compared

Baltimore Group	Viral Nucleic Acid	Virus Family	Special Features of Biosynthesis
I	DNA, double-stranded	Herpesviridae Polyomaviridae Poxviridae	Cellular enzyme transcribes viral DNA in nucleus. Cellular enzyme transcribes viral DNA in nucleus. Viral enzyme transcribes viral DNA in cytoplasm.
II	DNA, single-stranded	Parvoviridae	Cellular enzyme transcribes viral DNA in nucleus.
III	RNA, double-stranded	Reoviridae	Viral enzyme copies – strand RNA to make mRNA in virion, in cytoplasm.
IV	RNA, + strand	Picornaviridae, Coronaviridae	Viral RNA functions as a template for synthesis of RNA polymerase, which copies – strand RNA to make mRNA in cytoplasm.
V	RNA, – strand	Rhabdoviridae	Viral enzyme copies viral RNA to make mRNA in cytoplasm.
VI	RNA, reverse transcriptase	Retroviridae	Viral enzyme copies viral RNA to make DNA in cytoplasm; DNA moves to nucleus.
VII	DNA, reverse transcriptase	Hepadnaviridae	Cellular enzyme transcribes viral DNA in nucleus; reverse transcriptase copies mRNA to make viral DNA.

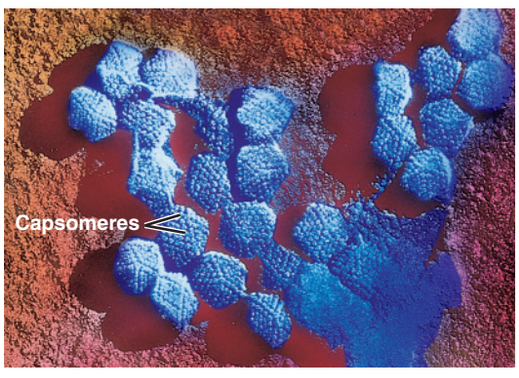
FOUNDATION FIGURE 13.15

Replication of a DNA-Containing Animal Virus

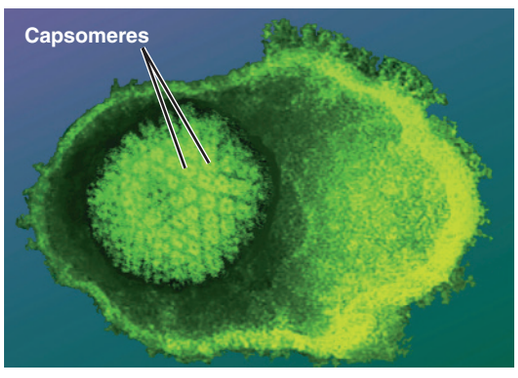


KEY CONCEPTS

- Viral replication in animals generally follows these steps: attachment, entry, uncoating, biosynthesis of nucleic acids and proteins, maturation, and release.
- Knowledge of viral replication phases is important for drug development strategies and for understanding disease pathology.



(a) *Mastadenovirus*



(b) *Simplexvirus*

Figure 13.16 DNA-containing animal viruses. (a) Negatively stained adenoviruses that have been concentrated in a centrifuge. The individual capsomeres are clearly visible. (b) The envelope around this human herpes virus capsid has broken, giving a "fried egg" appearance.

Q What is the morphology of these viruses?

Poxviridae All diseases caused by poxviruses, including smallpox and MPOX, include skin lesions (see Figure 21.10). *Pox* refers to pus-filled lesions. Viral multiplication is started by viral transcriptase; the viral components are synthesized and assembled in the cytoplasm of the host cell.

Herpesviridae Nearly 100 herpesviruses are known (Figure 13.16b). They are named after the spreading (*herpetic*) appearance of cold sores. Species of human herpesviruses (HHV) include HHV-1 and HHV-2, both in the genus *Simplexvirus*, which cause cold sores; HHV-3, *Varicellovirus*, which causes chickenpox; HHV-4, *Lymphocryptovirus*, which causes infectious mononucleosis; HHV-5, *Cytomegalovirus*, which causes CMV inclusion disease; HHV-6, *Roseolovirus*, which causes roseola; HHV-7, also in the genus *Roseolovirus*, infects most infants, causing measleslike rashes resembling roseola; and HHV-8, *Rhadinovirus*, which causes Kaposi's sarcoma, primarily in people with AIDS.

Papovaviricetes The class papovaviricetes is named for *pa*pillomas (warts), *po*lyomas (tumors), and *va*cuolation (cytoplasmic vacuoles produced by some of these viruses). Warts are caused by members of the genus *Alphapapillomavirus*. Some *Alphapapillomavirus* species are capable of transforming cells and causing cancer. Viral DNA is replicated in the host cell's nucleus along with host cell chromosomes. Host cells may proliferate, resulting in a tumor.

Hepadnaviridae are so named because they cause *hepa*titis and contain *DNA* (Figure 25.14). The genus *Orthohepadnavirus* causes hepatitis B. (Hepatitis A, C, D, E, F, and G viruses, although not related to each other, are RNA viruses. Hepatitis is discussed in Chapter 25.) Hepadnaviruses differ from other DNA viruses because they synthesize DNA by copying RNA, using viral reverse transcriptase. This DNA is the template for viral mRNA and the virus's DNA genome. This enzyme is discussed later with the retroviruses, the only other family with reverse transcriptase.

The Biosynthesis of RNA Viruses

The multiplication of RNA viruses is essentially the same as that of DNA viruses, except RNA viruses multiply in the host cell's cytoplasm. Several different mRNA formation mechanisms occur among different groups of RNA viruses (see Table 13.4). Although the details of these mechanisms are beyond the scope of this text, for comparative purposes we'll trace the multiplication cycles of the four nucleic acid types of RNA viruses (three of which are shown in Figure 13.17). The major differences among the multiplication processes lie in how mRNA and viral RNA are produced. These viruses have **RNA-dependent RNA polymerase**. This enzyme isn't encoded in any cell's genome. Viral genes cause the enzyme to be made by a host cell. This enzyme catalyzes the synthesis of another strand of RNA, which is complementary in base sequence to the original infecting strand. Once viral RNA and viral proteins are synthesized, maturation occurs by similar means among all animal viruses, as we'll discuss shortly.

Some RNA viruses are described next.

Coronaviridae Coronaviruses include SARS-CoV-2, which causes COVID-19, and several strains that cause mild seasonal respiratory infections (colds) (see Chapter 24). These are enveloped single-stranded RNA viruses. The prefix *corona-* (crown) describes the spikes protruding from the envelope (Figure 13.18a). The RNA within the virion is called a **sense strand (+ strand)** because it can act as mRNA, which is translated to produce viral proteins. After attachment, penetration, and uncoating are completed, early proteins called nsp (nonstructural proteins) are made; these are responsible for stopping translation of host mRNA in the infected cells. Another early protein is RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. This enzyme copies the virus sense strand and makes an **antisense strand (− strand)**, which serves as a template to produce additional + strands. The + strands may serve as mRNA for the translation of capsid proteins, may become incorporated into capsid proteins to form a new virus, or may serve as a template for continued RNA multiplication. Once viral RNA and viral protein are synthesized, maturation occurs. The virus genome is translated at the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) to produce capsid and spike proteins. The virus spike proteins are embedded in the ER membrane that will form the virus envelope. Capsid proteins and viral RNA are assembled when the ER buds off to fuse with the Golgi complex.

Togaviridae Toguviruses include the genus *Alphavirus* transmitted by mosquitoes. Alphaviruses cause several diseases including eastern equine encephalitis (see Chapter 22). Togaviruses contain a single sense strand of RNA and are enveloped viruses; their name is from the Latin word for covering, *toga*. Keep in mind that these aren't the only enveloped viruses. After a − strand is made from the + strand, two types of mRNA are transcribed from the − strand. One type of mRNA is a short strand that codes for envelope proteins; the other, longer strand serves as mRNA for capsid proteins and can become incorporated into a capsid.

Rhabdoviridae Rhabdoviruses, such as rabies virus (genus *Lyssavirus*; see Chapter 22), are usually bullet-shaped (Figure 13.18b). *Rhabdo-* is from the Greek word for rod, which isn't really an accurate description of their morphology. They contain a single − strand of RNA. They also contain an RNA-dependent RNA polymerase that uses the − strand as a template from which to produce a + strand. The + strand serves as mRNA and as a template for synthesis of new viral RNA.

Reoviridae Reoviruses were named for their habitats: the respiratory and enteric (digestive) systems of humans. They weren't associated with any diseases when first discovered, so they were considered orphan viruses. Their name comes from the first letters of *r*espiratory, *e*nteric, and *o*rphan. Three serotypes are now known to cause respiratory and intestinal infections.

The capsid containing the double-stranded RNA is digested upon entering a host cell. Viral mRNA is produced in capsid proteins in the cytoplasm, where it's used to synthesize more

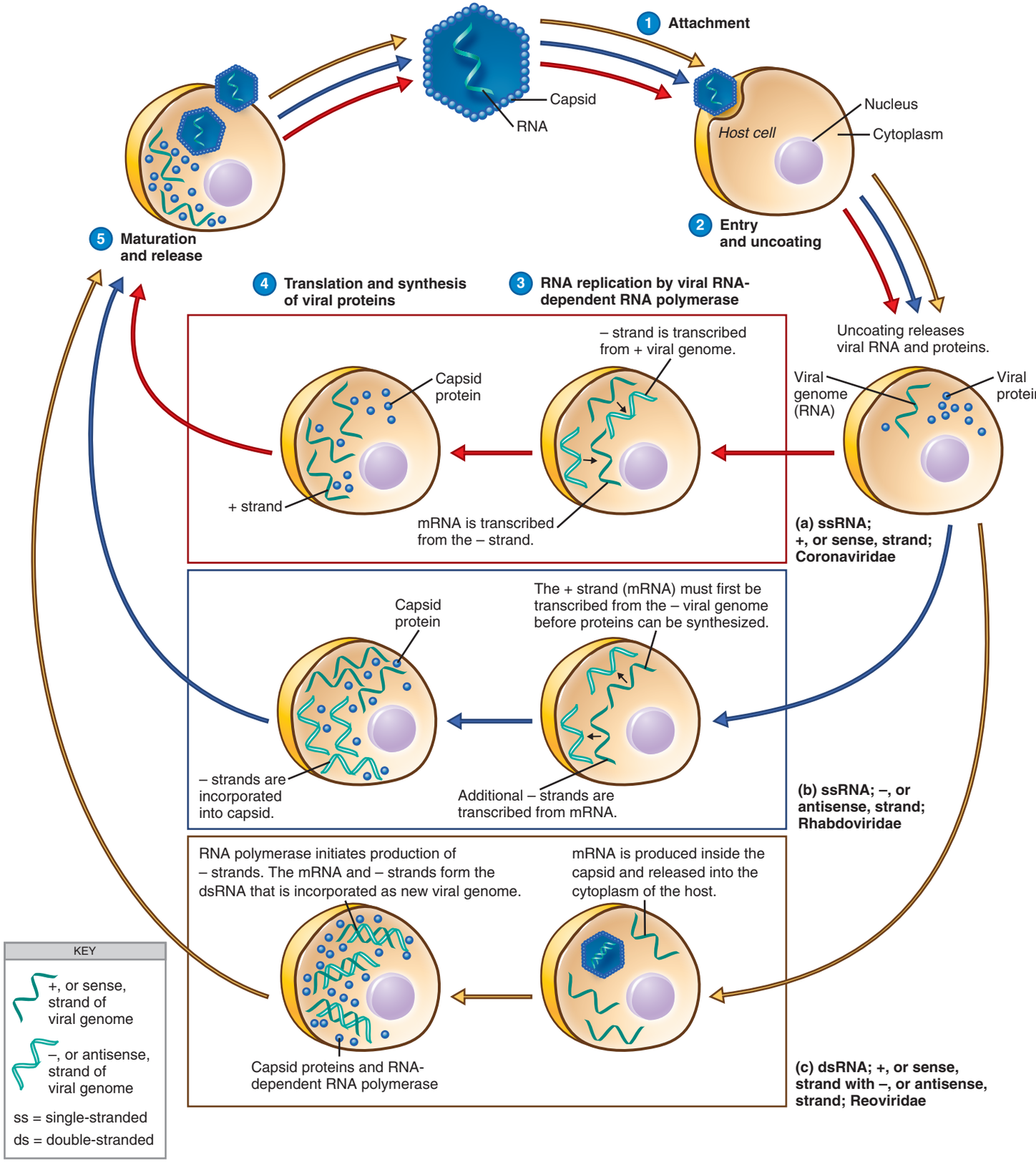
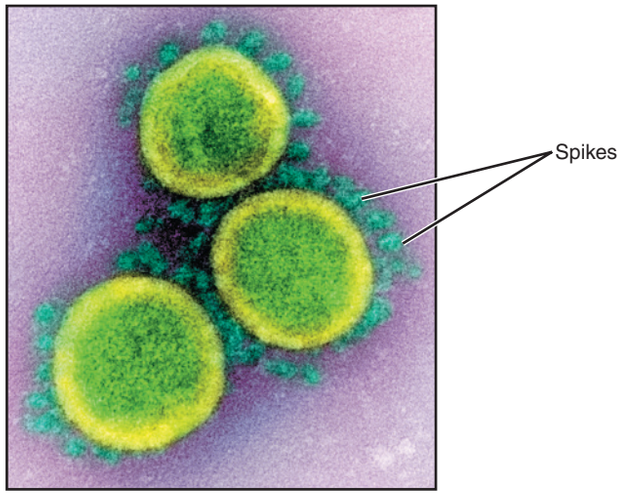


Figure 13.17 Pathways of multiplication used by various RNA-containing viruses. **(a, red arrow)** After uncoating, single-stranded RNA (ssRNA) viruses with a + strand genome are able to synthesize proteins directly from their + strand. Using the + strand as a template, they transcribe – strands to produce additional + strands to serve as mRNA and be incorporated into capsid proteins as the viral genome. **(b, blue arrow)** The ssRNA viruses with a – strand genome must transcribe a + strand to serve as mRNA before they begin synthesizing proteins. The mRNA transcribes additional – strands for incorporation into capsid protein. **(c, yellow arrow)** The dsRNA viruses transcribe a + strand in capsid proteins to protect dsRNA from cellular destruction.

Q Why is – strand RNA made by coronaviruses and reoviruses? By rhabdoviruses?



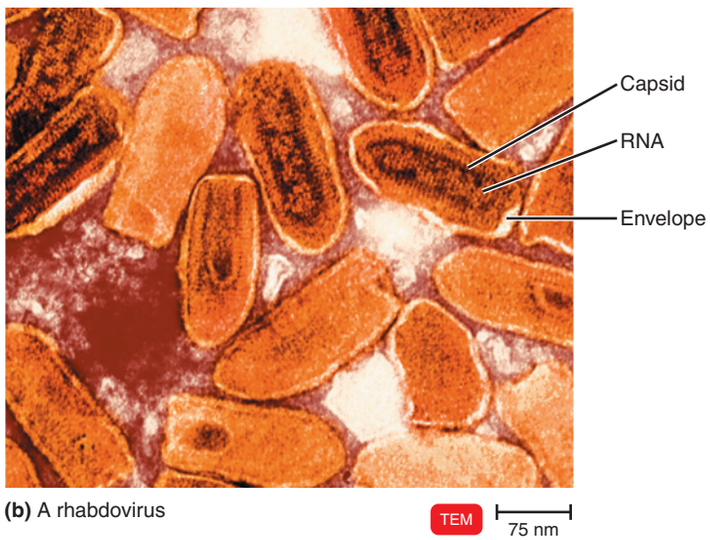


Figure 13.18 RNA-containing animal viruses. **(a)** MERS-CoV, a member of the family Coronaviridae. **(b)** Vesicular stomatitis viruses are in the family Rhabdovirudae.

Q Why do viruses with a + strand of RNA make a − strand of RNA?

viral proteins. One of the newly synthesized viral proteins acts as RNA-dependent RNA polymerase to produce more − strands of RNA. The mRNA and − strand form the double-stranded RNA that is then surrounded by capsid proteins.

Biosynthesis of RNA Viruses That Use DNA

Some RNA viruses use DNA for replication. These are the retroviruses, some of which are oncogenic (cancer-causing). Oncogenic viruses will be discussed later in this chapter.

Retroviridae Many retroviruses infect vertebrates (see Figure 13.20b). One genus of retrovirus, *Lentivirus*, includes the subspecies HIV-1 and HIV-2, which cause AIDS (see Chapter 19).

The formation of mRNA and RNA for new retrovirus virions is shown in Figure 13.19. These viruses carry **reverse transcriptase**, which uses the viral RNA as a template to produce complementary double-stranded DNA. This enzyme also degrades the original viral RNA. The name *retrovirus* is derived from the first letters of *re*verse *tr*anscriptase. The viral DNA is then integrated into a host cell chromosome as a **provirus**. Unlike a prophage, the provirus never comes out of the chromosome. As a provirus, HIV is protected from the host's immune system and antiviral drugs.

Sometimes the provirus simply remains in a latent state and replicates when the DNA of the host cell replicates. In other cases, the provirus is expressed and produces new viruses, which may infect adjacent cells. Mutagens such as gamma radiation can induce expression of a provirus. In oncogenic retroviruses, the provirus can also convert the host cell into a tumor cell; possible mechanisms for this phenomenon will be discussed later.

Maturation and Release

The first step in viral maturation is the assembly of the protein capsid; this assembly is usually a spontaneous process. The capsids of many animal viruses are enclosed by an envelope consisting of protein, lipid, and carbohydrate, as noted earlier. Examples of such viruses include orthomyxoviruses and paramyxoviruses. The spike proteins are encoded by the viral genes and are incorporated into the plasma membrane of the host cell. The envelope lipid and carbohydrate are encoded by host cell genes and are present in the plasma membrane. The envelope actually develops around the capsid by a process called **budding** (Figure 13.20). Coronaviruses use membrane from the host's Golgi complex rather than the plasma membrane.

After the sequence of attachment, entry, uncoating, and biosynthesis of viral nucleic acid and protein, the assembled capsid containing nucleic acid pushes through the plasma membrane. As a result, a portion of the plasma membrane,

CLINICAL CASE

Based on the abnormal LFT, Tina's physician diagnoses her with infectious hepatitis. This isn't the first case he's seen this month. As a matter of fact, the local health department has received reports of 31 other people with hepatitis. For a town of 4000 people, this is a large number. The health department needs to know what type of hepatitis they are dealing with because the term *hepatitis* describes any inflammation of the liver. Infectious hepatitis can be caused by a member of the Picornaviridae, Hepadnaviridae, or Flaviviridae.

The health department will need to differentiate among these viral families. List the method of transmission, morphology, nucleic acid, and type of replication for these three viral families. (*Hint*: See Diseases in Focus 25.3 for a complete list of the hepatitis viruses.)

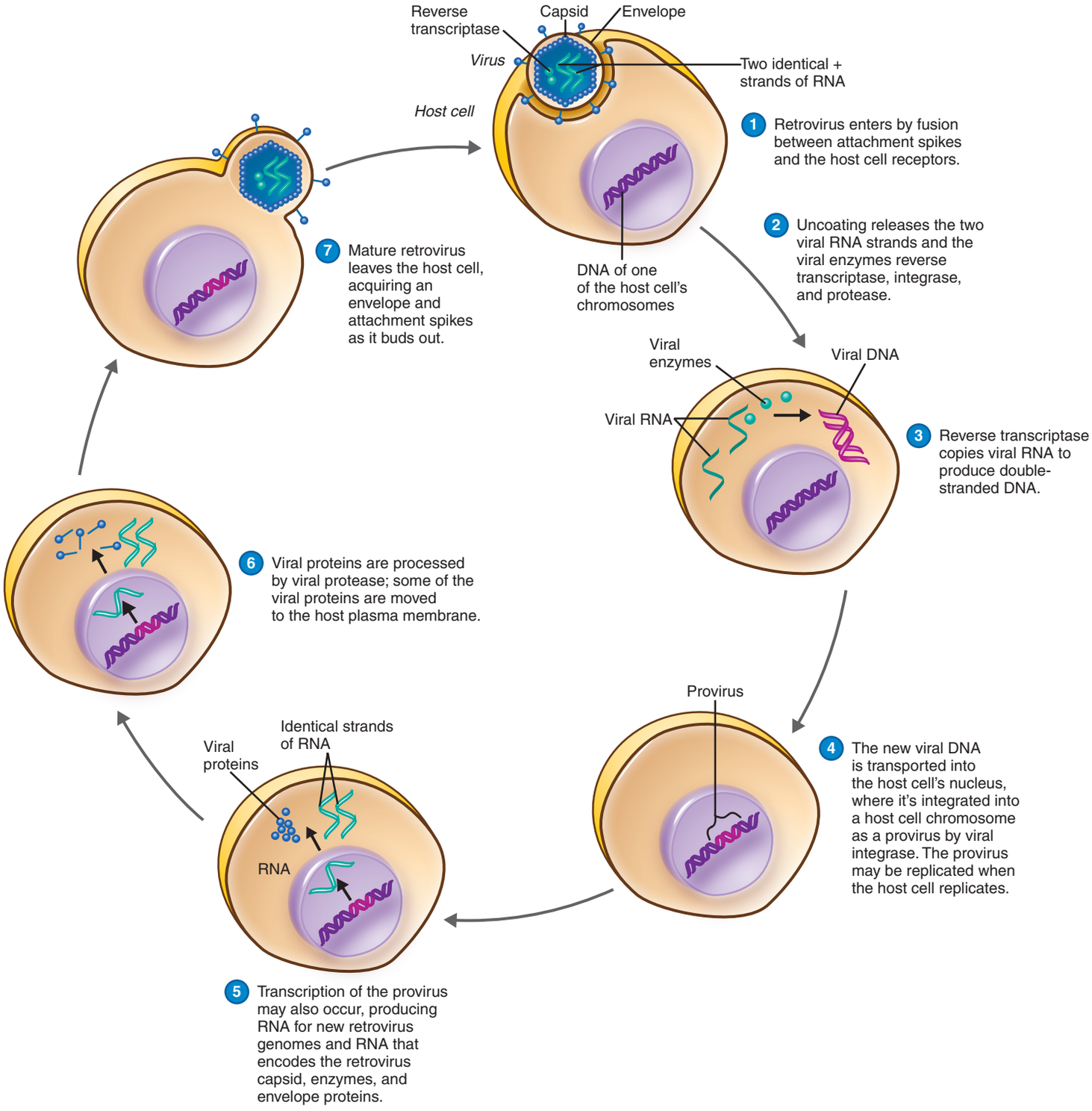
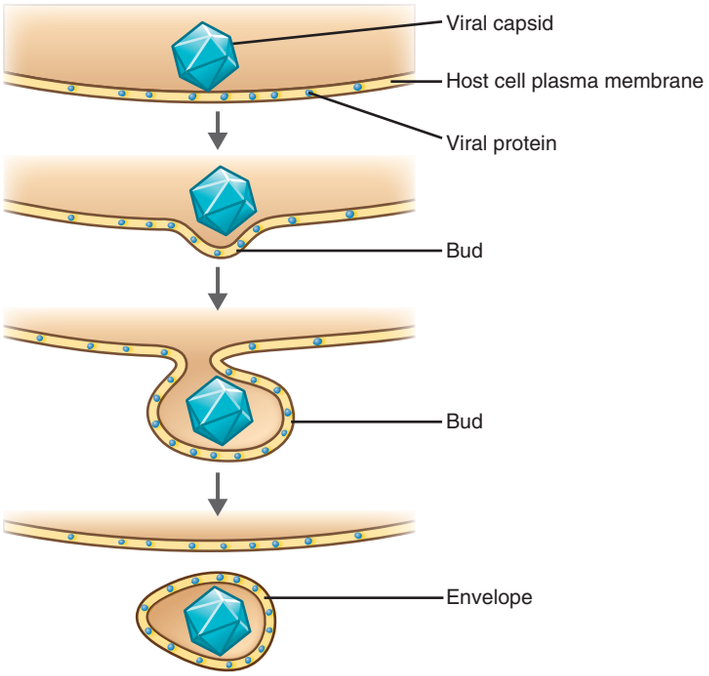
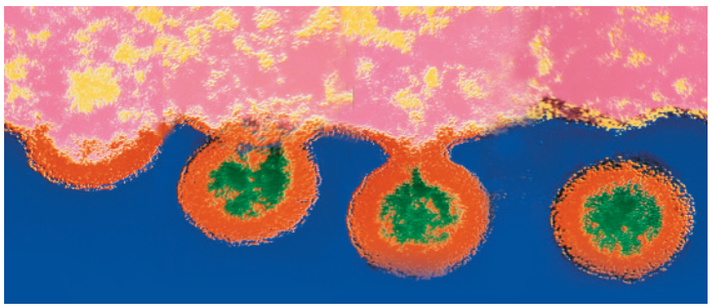


Figure 13.19 Multiplication and inheritance processes of the Retroviridae.
A retrovirus may become a provirus that replicates in a latent state, and it may produce new retroviruses.

Q How does the biosynthesis of a retrovirus differ from that of other RNA viruses?



(a) Release by budding



(b) *Lentivirus*

Figure 13.20 Budding of an enveloped virus. **(a)** A diagram of the budding process. **(b)** HIV budding from a T cell. Notice that the four budding viruses acquire their coats from the host plasma membrane.

Q Of what is a viral envelope composed?

now the envelope, adheres to the virus. This extrusion of a virus from a host cell is one method of release. Budding doesn't kill the host cell immediately, and in some cases the host cell survives.

Nonenveloped viruses are released through ruptures in the host cell plasma membrane. In contrast to budding, this type of release usually results in the death of the host cell.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

13-10 Describe the principal events of attachment, entry, uncoating, biosynthesis, maturation, and release of an enveloped DNA-containing virus.

Viruses and Cancer

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

13-11 Define *proto-oncogene*, *oncogene*, and *transformed cell*.

13-12 Discuss the relationship between DNA- and RNA-containing viruses and cancer.

Several types of cancer are now known to be caused by viruses. Molecular biological research shows that the mechanisms of viral infections and cancer are similar, even when a virus doesn't cause the cancer.

The relationship between cancers and viruses was first demonstrated in 1908, when virologists Wilhelm Ellerman and Olaf Bang, working in Denmark, were trying to isolate the causative agent of chicken leukemia. They found that leukemia could be transferred to healthy chickens by cell-free filtrates that contained viruses. Three years later, F. Peyton Rous, working at the Rockefeller Institute in New York, found that a chicken **sarcoma** (cancer of connective tissue) can be similarly transmitted. Virus-induced **adenocarcinomas** (cancers of glandular epithelial tissue) in mice were discovered in 1936. At that time, it was clearly shown that mouse mammary gland tumors are transmitted from mother to offspring through the mother's milk. The cancer-causing SE polyoma virus was discovered and isolated in 1953 by American scientists Bernice Eddy and Sarah Stewart.

The viral cause of cancer can often go unrecognized for several reasons. First, most of the particles of some viruses infect cells but don't induce cancer. Second, cancer might not develop until long after viral infection. Third, cancers, even those caused by viruses, don't seem to be contagious, as viral diseases usually are.

The Transformation of Normal Cells into Tumor Cells

Almost anything that can alter the genetic material of a eukaryotic cell has the potential to make a normal cell cancerous. These cancer-causing alterations to cellular DNA affect parts of the genome called **proto-oncogenes**. Proto-oncogenes are genes that

CLINICAL CASE

Hepatitis A virus, a nonenveloped + stranded RNA virus, is transmitted via the fecal–oral route. Hepatitis B virus is an enveloped double-stranded DNA virus. It has reverse transcriptase and is transmitted by the parenteral route (intravenous injection) or through sexual contact. Hepatitis C virus is also transmitted parenterally and is an enveloped + stranded RNA virus.

Based on this information, what conclusion can the health department make about which hepatitis virus is most likely infecting Tina and the other 31 people in this town?

CLINICAL CASE

It is improbable that over 30 people of different ages and backgrounds all use IV drugs, so the most likely virus is hepatitis A. To investigate the source of the viral infection, the health department compares foods eaten by the 32 ill people with asymptomatic household members. All 32, including Tina, had eaten an ice-slush beverage purchased from a local convenience store. The health department determines that the convenience store clerk, unknowingly infected with hepatitis A virus, transferred the virus to the machine that makes the icy beverage. Over the next several months, Tina's symptoms subside, and her liver function returns to normal.

How can knowing the identity of the virus affect the health department's recommendation for treatment and for prevention of future outbreaks?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 **Part 4**

encode proteins involved in stimulating normal cell growth; however, mutated proto-oncogenes, called **oncogenes**, trigger abnormal cell growth that can lead to cancer. Oncogenes were first identified in cancer-causing viruses and were thought to be a part of the normal viral genome. However, American microbiologists J. Michael Bishop and Harold E. Varmus received the 1989 Nobel Prize in Medicine for proving that the cancer-inducing genes carried by viruses are actually derived from animal cells. Bishop and Varmus showed that the cancer-causing *src* gene in avian sarcoma viruses is derived from a normal part of chicken genes.

The mutations that cause proto-oncogenes to function abnormally can be induced by a variety of agents, including mutagenic chemicals, high-energy radiation, and viruses. Viruses capable of inducing tumors in animals are called **oncogenic viruses**, or *oncoviruses*. Approximately 10% of cancers are known to be virus-induced. A defining feature of all oncogenic viruses is that their genetic material integrates into the host cell's DNA and replicates along with the host cell's chromosome. This mechanism is similar to the phenomenon of lysogeny in bacteria, and it can alter the host cell's characteristics in the same way.

Tumor cells undergo **transformation**; that is, they acquire properties that are distinct from the properties of uninfected cells and of infected cells that don't form tumors. These include uncontrolled growth and lack of apoptosis. After being transformed by viruses, many tumor cells contain a virus-specific antigen on their cell surface, called **tumor-specific transplantation antigen (TSTA)**. Also, transformed cells tend to be irregularly shaped, compared to normal cells.

DNA Oncogenic Viruses

Oncogenic viruses are found within several families of DNA-containing viruses. These groups include the Adenoviridae, Herpesviridae, Polyomaviridae, Poxviridae, and Hepadnaviridae.

Virtually all cervical and anal cancers are caused by *Alphapapillomavirus* (human papillomavirus, HPV). A vaccine against nine HPVs is recommended for 11- to 12-year-old children.

Epstein-Barr (EB, HHV-4) virus was isolated from Burkitt's lymphoma cells in 1964 by Michael Epstein and Yvonne Barr. The proof that EB virus can cause cancer was accidentally demonstrated in 1985 when a 12-year-old boy known only as David received a bone marrow transplant. Several months after the transplant, he died of cancer. An autopsy revealed that the virus had been unwittingly introduced into the boy with the bone marrow transplant.

Another DNA virus that causes cancer is hepatitis B virus (HBV). Many animal studies have been performed that have clearly indicated the causal role of HBV in liver cancer. In one human study, virtually all people with liver cancer had previous HBV infections.

RNA Oncogenic Viruses

Among the RNA viruses, only a few from the family Retroviridae cause cancer. The human T cell leukemia viruses (HTLV-1 and HTLV-2) are retroviruses that cause adult T cell leukemia and lymphoma in humans. (T cells are a type of white blood cell involved in the immune response.)

Sarcoma viruses of cats, chickens, and rodents, and the mammary tumor viruses of mice, are also retroviruses. Another retrovirus, feline leukemia virus (FeLV), causes leukemia in cats and is transmissible among cats. There is a test to detect the virus in cat serum.

The ability of retroviruses to induce tumors is related to their production of a reverse transcriptase by the mechanism described earlier (see Figure 13.19). The provirus, which is the double-stranded DNA molecule synthesized from the viral RNA,

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

Antiviral drugs and vaccines work against specific viruses. There are no special treatments for hepatitis, but the preventive measures are different. For example, in this case, the health department recommends that everyone who ate at this convenience store in the previous 2 weeks receive hepatitis A vaccine and hepatitis A immunoglobulin.

Viruses were originally named for the symptoms they caused, hence the name "hepatitis virus" for a virus that affects the liver (from Latin *hepaticus*). This naming convention is imprecise but was the only method available until recently.

Molecular tools now allow viruses to be classified on the basis of genomes and morphology. Thus, related viruses, which may affect different tissues, are grouped into the same families. Differentiating viruses based on their genetic information provides valuable information for treatment and prevention.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 **Part 4**

becomes integrated into the host cell's DNA; new genetic material is thereby introduced into the host's genome and is the key reason retroviruses can contribute to cancer. Some retroviruses contain oncogenes; others contain promoters that turn on proto-oncogenes at the wrong time, or other cancer-causing factors.

Viruses to Treat Cancer

In the early 1900s, physicians observed that tumors regressed in patients with concurrent viral infections. Experimentally induced viral infections in cancer patients during the 1920s suggested that viruses might have antitumor activity. These tumor-destroying viruses, or **oncolytic viruses**, selectively infect and kill tumor cells or cause an immune response against tumor cells. Several viruses are known to selectively infect cancer cells, and these are being genetically modified to remove virulence genes and add colony-stimulating factor genes to promote white blood cells. In 2015, the FDA approved the first oncolytic viral therapy. The new product, Imlygic™, is a herpesvirus to treat melanoma.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **13-11** What is a provirus?
- **13-12** How can an RNA virus cause cancer if it doesn't have DNA to insert into a cell's genome?

Latent and Persistent Viral Infections

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

13-13 Provide an example of a latent viral infection.

13-14 Differentiate between latent and persistent viral infections.

A virus can remain in equilibrium with the host and not actually produce disease for a long period, often many years. Such a viral infection is called a **latent infection**. The oncogenic viruses just discussed are examples of such latent infections. Also, all human herpesviruses can remain in host cells throughout the life of an individual. When herpesviruses are reactivated by immunosuppression (for example, AIDS), the resulting infection may be fatal. The classic example of such a latent infection is the infection of the skin by *Simplexvirus*, which produces cold sores. This virus inhabits the host's nerve cells but causes no damage until it is activated by a stimulus such as fever or sunburn—hence the term *fever blister*.

In some individuals, viruses are produced, but symptoms never appear. Even though a large percentage of the human population carries *Simplexvirus*, for example, only 10–15% of people carrying the virus exhibit the disease.

The chickenpox virus (*Varicellovirus*) can also exist in a latent state. Chickenpox (varicella) is a skin disease that is usually acquired in childhood. The virus gains access to the skin via the blood. From the blood, some viruses may enter nerves, where they remain latent. Later, changes in the immune (T cell) response can activate these latent viruses, causing a painful rash known as shingles. The shingles rash appears on the skin along the nerve in which the virus was latent. Shingles occurs in 10–20% of people who have had chickenpox.

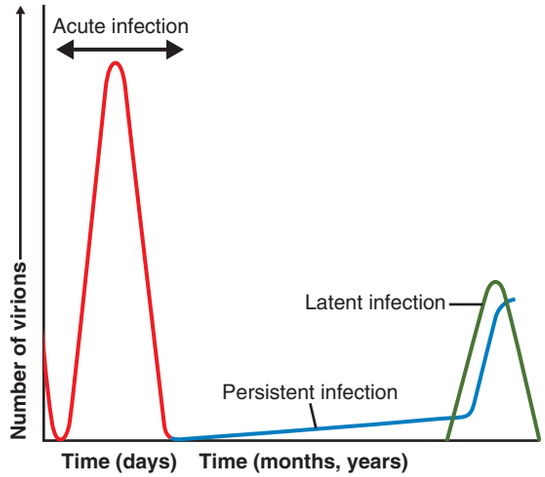


Figure 13.21 Latent and persistent viral infections.

Q How do latent and persistent infections differ?

In contrast, the signs and symptoms of a **persistent viral infection** (or **chronic viral infection**) gradually increase in severity over a long period. Typically, persistent viral infections are fatal. Laboratory tests can distinguish a persistent from a latent viral infection: in most persistent viral infections, detectable virions gradually build up over a long period, rather than spiking suddenly (Figure 13.21).

A number of persistent viral infections have been shown to be caused by conventional viruses. For example, several years after causing measles, the measles virus can be responsible for a rare form of encephalitis called subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (SSPE). Several examples of latent and persistent viral infections are listed in Table 13.5.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **13-13, 13-14** Is shingles a persistent or latent infection?

Plant Viruses and Viroids

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

13-15 Differentiate virus, viroid, and prion.

13-16 Describe the lytic cycle for a plant virus.

Plant viruses resemble animal viruses in many respects: plant viruses are morphologically similar to animal viruses, and they

TABLE 13.5 Examples of Latent and Persistent Viral Infections in Humans

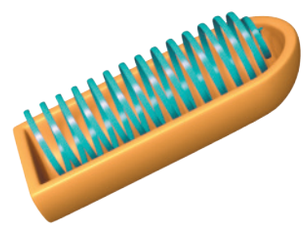
Disease	Primary Effect	Causative Virus
Latent	**No symptoms during latency; viruses not usually released**	
Cold sores	Skin and mucous membrane lesions; genital lesions	HHV-1 and HHV-2
Leukemia	Increased white blood cell growth	HTLV-1 and -2
Shingles	Skin lesions	*Varicellovirus* (Herpesvirus)
Persistent	**Viruses continuously released**	
Cervical cancer	Increased cell growth	Human papillomavirus
HIV/AIDS	Decreased $CD4^+$ T cells	HIV-1 and -2 (*Lentivirus*)
Liver cancer	Increased cell growth	Hepatitis B virus
Progressive encephalitis	Rapid mental deterioration	Rubella virus
Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (SSPE)	Mental deterioration	Measles virus

have similar types of nucleic acid (Table 13.6). In fact, some plant viruses can multiply inside insect cells. Plant viruses cause many diseases of economically important crops, including beans (bean mosaic virus), corn and sugarcane (wound tumor virus), and potatoes (potato yellow dwarf virus). Viruses can cause color change, wilting, and deformed and stunted growth in their plant hosts. Some hosts, however, remain symptomless and only serve as reservoirs of infection.

Plant cells are generally protected from disease by an impermeable cell wall. Viruses must enter through wounds or be assisted by other plant parasites, including nematodes, fungi, and, most often, insects that suck the plant's sap. Once one plant is infected, it can spread infection to other plants in its pollen.

In laboratories, plant viruses are cultured in protoplasts (plant cells with the cell walls removed) and in insect cell cultures.

TABLE 13.6 Classification of Some Major Plant Viruses

Characteristic	Viral Family	Virus species	Morphology	Method of Transmission
Double-stranded DNA, nonenveloped	Caulimoviridae	*Badnavirus cacao swollen shoot* virus		Aphids
Single-stranded RNA, + strand, nonenveloped	Tospoviridae	*Orthotospovirus tomato spotted virus* wilt		Thrips (insects)
	Virgaviridae	*Tobamovirus tobacco mosaic virus*		Wounds
Single-stranded RNA, − strand, enveloped	Rhabdoviridae	*Alphanucleorhabdovirus potato yellow dwarf virus*		Leafhoppers and aphids
Double-stranded RNA, nonenveloped	Reoviridae	*Phytoreovirus wound tumor virus*		Leafhoppers

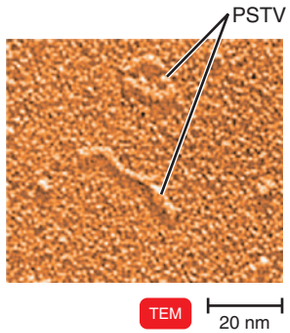


Figure 13.22 Linear and circular potato spindle tuber viroid (PSTV).

Q How do viroids differ from viruses?

Some plant diseases are caused by **viroids**, short pieces of naked RNA, only 300 to 400 nucleotides long, with no protein coat. The nucleotides are often internally paired, so the molecule has a closed, folded, three-dimensional structure that presumably helps protect it from destruction by cellular enzymes. Some viroids, called **virusoids**, are enclosed in a protein coat. Virusoids cause disease only when the plant cell is infected by a virus. Viroids and virusoids are replicated continuously by host RNA polymerase in the cell nucleus or chloroplasts. When the enzyme reaches the end of the viroid RNA, it goes to the beginning. The viroid RNA is a ribozyme that cuts the continuous RNA into viroid segments. The RNA doesn't code for any proteins; instead, it may cause disease by gene silencing (Chapter 9). Annually, infections by viroids, such as potato spindle tuber viroid, result in losses of millions of dollars from crop damage (Figure 13.22).

Current research on viroids has revealed similarities between the base sequences of viroids and introns. Recall from Chapter 8 that introns are sequences of genetic material that don't encode peptides. This observation has led to the hypothesis that viroids evolved from introns, leading to speculation that researchers may eventually discover animal viroids. Thus far, viroids and virusoids have been conclusively identified as pathogens only of plants, although hepatitis D may be caused by a virusoid. Hepatitis D consists of RNA enclosed in a protein coat and requires coinfection by hepatitis B virus. Some researchers call HDV *satellite RNA*.

Prions

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

13-17 Discuss how a protein can be infectious.

A few infectious diseases are caused by prions. In 1982, American neurobiologist Stanley Prusiner proposed that infectious proteins

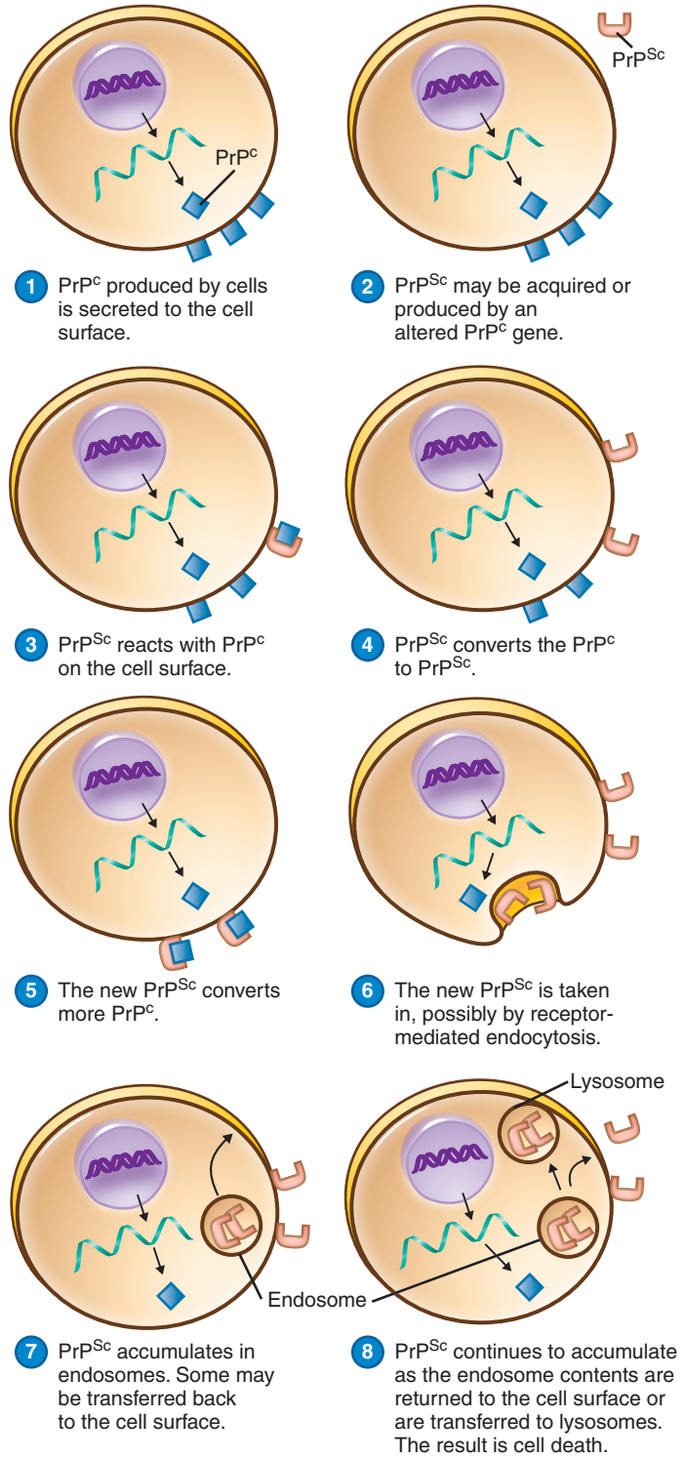


Figure 13.23 How a protein can be infectious. If an abnormal prion protein (PrP^{Sc}) enters a cell, it changes a normal prion protein PrP^{C} to PrP^{Sc}, which now can change another normal PrP^{C}, resulting in an accumulation of the abnormal PrP^{Sc} in the cell and on the cell surface.

Q How do prions differ from viruses?

caused a neurological disease in sheep called scrapie. The infectivity of scrapie-infected brain tissue is reduced by treatment with proteases but not by treatment with radiation, suggesting that the infectious agent is pure protein. Prusiner coined the name **prion** for *pro*teinaceous *in*fectious particle.

Nine animal diseases now fall into this category, including the "mad cow disease" that emerged in cattle in Great Britain in 1987. All nine are neurological diseases called *transmissible spongiform encephalopathies* because large vacuoles develop in the brain (Figure 22.18b). The human diseases are kuru, Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD), Gerstmann-Sträussler-Scheinker syndrome, and fatal familial insomnia. (Neurological diseases are discussed in Chapter 22.) These diseases often run in families, which indicates a possible genetic cause. However, they aren't only inherited, because mad cow disease arose from feeding scrapie-infected sheep meat to cattle, and the new (bovine) variant was transmitted to humans who ate meat or organs from infected cattle. (Cooking does not denature prions.) Additionally, CJD has been transmitted with transplanted nerve tissue and contaminated surgical instruments.

These diseases are caused by the conversion of a normal host glycoprotein called PrP^C (for cellular prion protein) into an infectious form called PrP^{Sc} (for scrapie protein). The gene for PrP^C is located on chromosome 20 in humans. Evidence suggests that PrP^C is involved in cell signaling, nerve function, and preventing cell death (apoptosis). (See the discussion of apoptosis in Chapter 17.) One hypothesis for how an infectious agent that lacks any nucleic acid can reproduce is shown in Figure 13.23.

The actual cause of cell damage isn't yet known. Fragments of PrP^{Sc} molecules accumulate in the brain, forming plaques; these plaques are used for postmortem diagnosis, but they don't appear to be the cause of cell damage.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **13-15, 13-17** Contrast viroids and prions, and for each name a disease it causes.
- **13-16** How do plant viruses enter host cells?

Study Outline

General Characteristics of Viruses (pp. 364–365)

1. Depending on one's viewpoint, viruses may be regarded as exceptionally complex aggregations of nonliving chemicals or as exceptionally simple living microbes.
2. Viruses contain a single type of nucleic acid (DNA or RNA) and a protein coat, sometimes enclosed by an envelope composed of lipids, proteins, and carbohydrates.
3. Viruses are obligatory intracellular parasites. They multiply by using the host cell's synthesizing machinery to cause the synthesis of specialized elements that can transfer the viral nucleic acid to other cells.

Host Range (p. 364)

4. Host range refers to the spectrum of host cells in which a virus can multiply.
5. Most viruses infect only specific types of cells in one host species.
6. Host range is determined by the specific receptor site on the host cell's surface and the availability of host cellular factors.

Viral Size (p. 365)

7. Viral size is ascertained by electron microscopy.
8. Viruses range from 20 to 1000 nm in length.

Viral Structure (pp. 365–368)

1. A virion is a complete, fully developed viral particle composed of nucleic acid surrounded by a coat.

Nucleic Acid (pp. 365–366)

2. Viruses contain either DNA or RNA, never both, and the nucleic acid may be single- or double-stranded, linear or circular, or divided into several separate molecules.
3. The proportion of nucleic acid in relation to protein in viruses ranges from about 1% to about 50%.

Capsid and Envelope (pp. 366–367)

4. The protein coat surrounding the nucleic acid of a virus is called the capsid.
5. The capsid is composed of subunits called capsomeres, which can be a single type of protein or several types.
6. The capsid of some viruses is enclosed by an envelope consisting of lipids, proteins, and carbohydrates.
7. Some envelopes are covered with carbohydrate-protein complexes called spikes.

General Morphology (pp. 367–368)

8. Helical viruses are hollow cylinders surrounding the nucleic acid.
9. Polyhedral viruses are many-sided.
10. Enveloped viruses are covered by an envelope and are roughly spherical but highly pleomorphic.
11. Complex viruses have complex structures. For example, many bacteriophages have a polyhedral capsid with a helical tail attached.

Taxonomy of Viruses (pp. 368–372)

1. Classification of viruses is based on type of nucleic acid and strategy for replication.
2. Virus family names end in -viridae; genus names end in -virus.
3. A viral species is a group of viruses sharing the same genetic information and ecological niche.

Isolation, Cultivation, and Identification of Viruses (pp. 372–374)

1. Viruses must be grown in living cells.
2. The easiest viruses to grow are bacteriophages.

Growing Bacteriophages in the Laboratory (pp. 372–373)

3. The plaque method mixes bacteriophages with host bacteria and nutrient agar.
4. After several viral multiplication cycles, the bacteria in the area surrounding the original virus are destroyed; the area of lysis is called a plaque.
5. Each plaque originates with a single viral particle; the concentration of viruses is expressed as plaque-forming units.

Growing Animal Viruses in the Laboratory (pp. 373–374)

6. Cultivation of some animal viruses requires whole animals.
7. Simian AIDS and feline AIDS provide models for studying human AIDS.
8. Some animal viruses can be cultivated in embryonated eggs.
9. Cell cultures are animal or plant cells growing in culture media.
10. Viral growth can cause cytopathic effects in the cell culture.

Viral Identification (p. 374)

11. Serological tests, RFLPs, and PCR are used most often to identify viruses.

Viral Multiplication (pp. 375–386)

1. Viruses don't contain enzymes for energy production or protein synthesis.
2. For a virus to multiply, it must invade a host cell and direct the host's metabolic machinery to produce viral enzymes and components.

Multiplication of Bacteriophages (pp. 375–378)

3. During the lytic cycle, a phage causes lysis and death of a host cell.
4. Some viruses can either cause lysis or have their DNA incorporated as a prophage into the DNA of the host cell. The latter situation is called lysogeny.
5. In the penetration stage of the lytic cycle, phage lysozyme opens a portion of the bacterial cell wall, the tail sheath contracts to force the tail core through the cell wall, and phage DNA enters the bacterial cell. The capsid remains outside.
6. In biosynthesis, transcription of phage DNA produces mRNA coding for proteins necessary for phage multiplication. Phage DNA is replicated, and capsid proteins are produced. During the eclipse period, separate phage DNA and protein can be found.
7. During maturation, phage DNA and capsids are assembled into complete viruses.
8. During release, phage lysozyme breaks down the bacterial cell wall, and the new phages are released.
9. During the lysogenic cycle, prophage genes are regulated by a repressor coded for by the prophage. The prophage is replicated each time the cell divides.
10. Because of lysogeny, lysogenic cells become immune to reinfection with the same phage and may undergo phage conversion.
11. A lysogenic phage can transfer bacterial genes from one cell to another through transduction. Any genes can be transferred in generalized transduction, and specific genes can be transferred in specialized transduction.

Multiplication of Animal Viruses (pp. 379–386)

12. Animal viruses attach to the plasma membrane of the host cell.
13. Entry occurs by receptor-mediated endocytosis or fusion.
14. Animal viruses are uncoated by viral or host cell enzymes.
15. The DNA of most DNA viruses is released into the nucleus of the host cell. Transcription of viral DNA and translation produce viral DNA and, later, capsid proteins. Capsid proteins are synthesized in the cytoplasm of the host cell.
16. Multiplication of RNA viruses occurs in the cytoplasm of the host cell. RNA-dependent RNA polymerase synthesizes a double-stranded RNA.
17. After assembly, viruses are released. One method of release (and envelope formation) is budding. Nonenveloped viruses are released through ruptures in the host cell membrane.

Viruses and Cancer (pp. 386–388)

1. The earliest relationship between cancer and viruses was demonstrated in the early 1900s, when chicken leukemia and chicken sarcoma were transferred to healthy animals by cell-free filtrates.

The Transformation of Normal Cells into Tumor Cells (pp. 386–387)

2. A proto-oncogene is a gene encoding a protein involved in normal cell growth. When activated, mutated proto-oncogenes, called oncogenes, transform normal cells into cancerous cells.
3. Viruses capable of producing tumors are called oncogenic viruses.
4. Several DNA viruses and retroviruses are oncogenic.
5. The genetic material of oncogenic viruses becomes integrated into the host cell's DNA.
6. Transformed cells contain tumor-specific transplantation antigen (TSTA), exhibit chromosome abnormalities, and can produce tumors when injected into susceptible animals.

DNA Oncogenic Viruses (p. 387)

7. Oncogenic viruses are found among the Adenoviridae, Herpesviridae, Poxviridae, Polyomaviridae, and Hepadnaviridae.

RNA Oncogenic Viruses (pp. 387–388)

8. The virus's ability to produce tumors is related to the presence of reverse transcriptase. The DNA synthesized from the viral RNA becomes incorporated as a provirus into the host cell's DNA.

Viruses to Treat Cancer (p. 388)

9. Oncolytic viruses infect and lyse cancer cells.

Latent and Persistent Viral Infections (p. 388)

1. A latent viral infection is one in which the virus remains in the host cell for long periods without producing disease.
2. Examples of latent viral infections are cold sores and shingles.
3. A persistent viral infection is one in which levels of the virus—and signs and symptoms—build up gradually over a long period. They are generally fatal.
4. Many persistent viral infections are caused by conventional viruses.

Plant Viruses and Viroids (pp. 388–390)

1. Plant viruses must enter plant hosts through wounds or with invasive parasites, such as insects.
2. Some plant viruses also multiply in insect (vector) cells.
3. Viroids are infectious pieces of RNA that cause some plant diseases.
4. Virusoids are viroids enclosed in a protein coat.

Prions (pp. 390–391)

1. Prions are infectious proteins first discovered in the 1980s.
2. Prion diseases involve the degeneration of brain tissue.
3. Prion diseases are the result of an altered protein; the cause can be a mutation in the normal gene for PrP^{C} or contact with an altered protein (PrP^{Sc}).

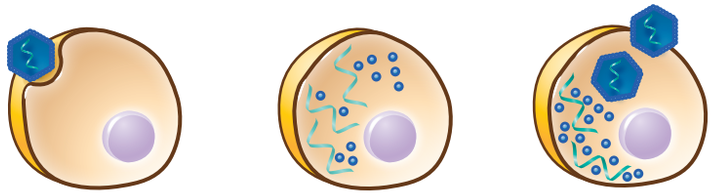
Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. Why do we classify viruses as obligatory intracellular parasites?
2. List the four properties that define a virus. What is a virion?
3. Describe the four morphological classes of viruses, then diagram and give an example of each.
4. DRAW IT Label the principal events of attachment, biosynthesis, entry, and maturation of a + stranded RNA virus. Draw in uncoating.



5. Compare biosynthesis of a + stranded RNA and a - stranded RNA virus.
6. Some antibiotics activate phage genes. MRSA releasing Panton-Valentine leukocidin is a toxin that can cause a life-threatening disease. Why can such a disease develop following antibiotic treatment?
7. Recall from Chapter 1 that Koch's postulates are used to determine the etiology of a disease. Why is it difficult to determine the etiology of
   a. a viral infection, such as influenza?
   b. cancer?
8. Persistent viral infections such as (a) _____ might be caused by (b) _____ that are (c) _____.
9. Plant viruses can't penetrate intact plant cells because (a) _____; therefore, they enter cells by (b) _____. Plant viruses can be cultured in (c) _____.
10. NAME IT Identify the viral family that infects skin, mucosa, and nerve cells; causes infections that can recur because of latency; and has polyhedral geometry.

Multiple Choice

1. Place the following in the most likely order for biosynthesis of a bacteriophage: (1) phage lysozyme; (2) mRNA; (3) DNA; (4) viral proteins; (5) DNA polymerase.
   a. 5, 4, 3, 2, 1
   b. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5
   c. 5, 3, 4, 2, 1
   d. 3, 5, 2, 4, 1
   e. 2, 5, 3, 4, 1
2. The molecule serving as mRNA can be incorporated in the newly synthesized virus capsids of all of the following *except*
   a. + strand RNA picornaviruses.
   b. + strand RNA togaviruses.
   c. − strand RNA rhabdoviruses.
   d. double-stranded RNA reoviruses.
   e. *Rotavirus*.
3. A virus with RNA-dependent RNA polymerase
   a. synthesizes DNA from an RNA template.
   b. synthesizes double-stranded RNA from an RNA template.
   c. synthesizes double-stranded RNA from a DNA template.
   d. transcribes mRNA from DNA.
   e. none of the above
4. Which of the following would be the first step in the biosynthesis of a virus with reverse transcriptase?
   a. A complementary strand of RNA must be synthesized.
   b. Double-stranded RNA must be synthesized.
   c. A complementary strand of DNA must be synthesized from an RNA template.
   d. A complementary strand of DNA must be synthesized from a DNA template.
   e. none of the above
5. An example of lysogeny in animals could be
   a. slow viral infections.
   b. latent viral infections.
   c. T-even bacteriophages.
   d. infections resulting in cell death.
   e. none of the above

6. The ability of a virus to infect an organism is regulated by
   a. the host species.
   b. the type of cells.
   c. the availability of an attachment site.
   d. cell factors necessary for viral replication.
   e. all of the above
7. Which of the following statements is **false**?
   a. Viruses contain DNA or RNA.
   b. The nucleic acid of a virus is surrounded by a protein coat.
   c. Viruses multiply inside living cells using viral mRNA, tRNA, and ribosomes.
   d. Viruses cause the synthesis of specialized infectious elements.
   e. Viruses multiply inside living cells.
8. Place the following in the order in which they are found in a host cell: (1) capsid proteins; (2) infective phage particles; (3) phage nucleic acid.
   a. 1, 2, 3
   b. 3, 2, 1
   c. 2, 1, 3
   d. 3, 1, 2
   e. 1, 3, 2
9. Which of the following does *not* initiate DNA synthesis?
   a. a double-stranded DNA virus (Poxviridae)
   b. a DNA virus with reverse transcriptase (Hepadnaviridae)
   c. an RNA virus with reverse transcriptase (Retroviridae)
   d. a single-stranded RNA virus (Togaviridae)
   e. none of the above
10. A viral species is *not* defined on the basis of the disease symptoms it causes. The best example of this is
    a. polio.
    b. rabies.
    c. hepatitis.
    d. chickenpox and shingles.
    e. measles.

Analysis

1. Discuss the arguments for and against the classification of viruses as living organisms.
2. In some viruses, capsomeres function as enzymes as well as structural supports. Of what advantage is this to the virus?
3. Why was the discovery of simian AIDS and feline AIDS important?
4. Prophages and proviruses have been described as being similar to bacterial plasmids. What similar properties do they exhibit? How are they different?

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. A 40-year-old male who was seropositive for HIV experienced abdominal pain, fatigue, and low-grade fever (38°C) for 2 weeks. A chest X-ray examination revealed lung infiltrates. Gram and acid-fast stains were negative. A viral culture revealed the cause of his symptoms: a large, enveloped polyhedral virus with double-stranded DNA. What is the disease? Which virus causes it? Why was a viral culture done after the Gram and acid-fast stain results were obtained?
2. A newborn developed extensive vesicular and ulcerative lesions over the face and chest. What is the most likely cause of these symptoms? How would you determine the viral cause of this disease without doing a viral culture?
3. In May, two people living in the same household died within 5 days of each other. Their illnesses were characterized by abrupt onset of fever, muscle pain, headache, and cough, followed by the rapid development of respiratory failure. By the end of the year, 36 cases of this disease, with a 50% mortality rate, had been confirmed. A member of the Orthomyxoviridae, Bunyaviridae, or Adenoviridae could cause this disease. Differentiate among these families by method of transmission, morphology, nucleic acid, and type of replication. The reservoir for this disease is mice. Name the disease. (*Hint*: Refer to Chapter 23.)

Principles of Disease and Epidemiology 14

Now that you have a basic understanding of the structures and functions of microorganisms and some idea of the variety of microorganisms that exist, we can consider how the human body and various microorganisms interact in terms of health and disease.

We all have defenses to keep us healthy. Despite these, however, we are still susceptible to **pathogens** (disease-causing microorganisms). A rather delicate balance exists between our defenses and the pathogenic mechanisms of microorganisms. When our defenses resist these pathogenic capabilities, we maintain our health—when the pathogen's capabilities overcome our defenses, disease results. After the disease has become established, an infected person may recover completely, suffer temporary or permanent damage, or die.

This chapter discusses the general principles of disease, starting with a discussion of the meaning and scope of pathology. In the last section of this chapter, "Epidemiology," you will learn how these principles are useful in studying and controlling diseases such as COVID-19. Understanding of these principles is vital to prevent disease transmission to patients in health care settings. Healthcare-associated infection by the *Clostridioides difficile* bacteria shown in the photograph is discussed in the Clinical Case. Infections contracted outside the health care setting are called **community-acquired infections**.

◀ ***Clostridioides difficile*** **bacteria can cause severe diarrhea.**

In the Clinic

As a county public health nurse, you follow up on reports of communicable diseases. The annual reported incidence of cryptosporidiosis in your state (population of 3.1 million) is 7.5 cases per 100,000 people. This past year you saw 65 cases in your county of 430,000 people. **Calculate the reported county incidence rate. How does this compare to the state rate? Assume that only one in ten people with diarrhea due to cryptosporidiosis seeks medical diagnosis and treatment. Under these circumstances, what is the true incidence in your county?**

Pathology, Infection, and Disease

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

14-1 Define *pathology*, *etiology*, *infection*, and *infectious disease*.

Pathology is the scientific study of disease (*pathos* = suffering; *logos* = science). Its first concern is the cause, or **etiology**, of disease. Second, it deals with **pathogenesis**, the manner in which a disease develops. Third, pathology is concerned with the *structural* and *functional changes* brought about by disease and their effects on the body.

Although the terms *infection* and *infectious disease* are sometimes used interchangeably, they differ somewhat in meaning. **Infection** is the invasion or colonization of the body by pathogenic microorganisms; **infectious disease** occurs when an infection results in any change from a state of health. **Disease** is an abnormal state in which part or all of the body is incapable of performing its normal functions. An infection may exist in the absence of detectable disease. For example, the body may be infected with the virus that causes AIDS but experience no symptoms of the disease.

The presence of a particular type of microorganism in a part of the body where it is not normally found is also called an infection—and may lead to disease. For example, although large numbers of *Escherichia coli* are normally present in the healthy intestine, their infection of the urinary tract usually results in disease.

Few microorganisms are pathogenic. In fact, the presence of some microorganisms can even benefit the host. Therefore, before we discuss the role of microorganisms in causing disease, let's examine the relationship of microorganisms to the healthy human body.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

14-1 What are the three objectives of pathology?

Human Microbiome

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

14-2 Describe how the human microbiome is acquired.

14-3 Compare commensalism, mutualism, and parasitism, and give an example of each.

14-4 Contrast normal microbiota and transient microbiota with opportunistic microorganisms.

Much of a person's microbiome is established during the first 10 years of life. Recent research indicates that normal and characteristic microbial populations begin to establish themselves in an individual before birth (in utero). The placental microbiome consists of only few different bacteria, mostly Enterobacteriaceae and *Propionibacterium*. These bacteria are found in the newborn's intestine. Just before childbirth, lactobacilli in the parent's vagina multiply rapidly, and they become the predominant organisms in the newborn's intestine (see **Exploring the Microbiome**). These lactobacilli also colonize the newborn's intestine. More microorganisms are introduced to the newborn's body from the environment when breathing and feeding start. A child's microbiome changes rapidly during the first 3 years of life as *E. coli* and other bacteria acquired from foods, people, and pets begin to inhabit the large intestine. These microorganisms remain there throughout life and, in response to altered environmental conditions, may increase or decrease in number and contribute to health and disease.

Many other usually harmless microorganisms establish themselves inside other parts of the normal adult body and on its surface. A typical human body contains 3×10^{13} body cells and harbors as many bacteria cells—an estimated 4×10^{13} bacterial cells. This gives you an idea of the abundance of microorganisms that normally reside in the human body. The **Human Microbiome Project** (2007–2016) was carried out to promote study of microbial communities called *microbiomes* that live in and on the human body. Now researchers are studying the relationship between changes in the human microbiome and human health and disease. The human microbiome is more diverse than previously thought. Much of the new information coming from studies of the human microbiome is featured in Exploring the Microbiome boxes found in each chapter of this textbook.

Microorganisms that establish more or less permanent residence (colonize) but do not produce disease under normal conditions are members of the body's **normal microbiota**. Historically they were referred to as *normal flora** (**Figure 14.1**). Others, called **transient microbiota**, may be present for several days, weeks, or months and then disappear.

Factors Influencing the Normal Microbiota

Microorganisms are not found throughout the entire human body but are localized in certain regions, as shown in **Table 14.1**. Many factors determine the location and composition of the normal microbiota. Among these are nutrients, physical and chemical factors, the host's defenses, and mechanical factors.

Microbes vary with respect to the types of nutrients they can use as an energy source. Accordingly, microbes can colonize only those body sites that can supply the appropriate nutrients. These nutrients may be derived from dead cells, food in the digestive canal, secretory and excretory products of cells, and substances in body fluids.

Physical and chemical factors that affect the growth of microbes also affect the growth and composition of the normal microbiota. Among these are temperature, pH, available oxygen and carbon dioxide, salinity, and sunlight.

*Historically, bacteria once were classified as plants, and thus bacteria on the human body were called *normal flora*.

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME Connections between Birth, Microbiome, and Other Health Conditions

Vaginal birth is the point at which most infants first come into contact with a vast array of microbes. This earliest microbial interaction influences the development of the infant's immune system and the kinds of microbes that ultimately become part of the infant's microbiome. However, in the past 60 years, births by cesarean section (C-section) have skyrocketed in many countries. In that same time period, these countries' incidence of type 1 diabetes, asthma, and obesity have also become major health problems. Could these two things be related—and could microbiota be the link between them?

Recent studies indicate that asthma, obesity, and type 1 diabetes are more common in people who experienced birth by C-section than in people born vaginally. Moreover, the microbiota of the two groups also differs. For instance, *Lactobacillus* and *Bacteroides* are prevalent in the microbiota of infants delivered vaginally, but the microbiome of infants delivered by C-section more closely resembles that of the human skin, with abundant *Staphylococcus aureus*.

The path from C-section delivery to increased risk of diabetes, obesity, or asthma is the subject of ongoing research. In one study, clinicians placed sterile gauze in the vagina of patients awaiting C-section delivery. The gauze was left in place for 1 hour. After birth, the gauze was swiped over the newborn's face and body. Over the next month, the microbiota of infants who received these vaginal swabs was tracked. It remained similar to the microbial profiles of infants delivered vaginally in the study (and different from that of infants delivered by C-section who did not receive the swab). Larger, longer-term studies are required to determine whether such treatments might also one day reduce risk of diabetes, asthma, and obesity in people born via C-section.

We also said that host defenses against microbes influence the microbiota. You'll learn in Chapters 16 and 17 that the human body has multiple defenses against microbes. These include a variety of molecules and specialized cells that kill microbes, inhibit their growth, prevent their adhesion to host cell surfaces, and neutralize toxins that microbes produce. These defenses are extremely important against pathogens. Childhood exposure to microorganisms helps the immune system develop. Indeed, it has been proposed that insufficient exposure to microorganisms in childhood may interfere with the development of the immune system and may play a role in increasing rates of allergies and other immune disorders. This idea, known as the *hygiene hypothesis*, is discussed in the Big Picture in Chapter 19.

Certain regions of the body are subjected to mechanical forces that may affect colonization by the normal microbiota. For example, the chewing actions of the teeth and the movements of the tongue can dislodge microbes attached to tooth and mucosal surfaces. In the digestive canal, the flow of saliva and digestive secretions and the various muscular movements of the throat, esophagus, stomach, and intestines can remove unattached microbes. The flushing action of urine also removes unattached microbes. In the respiratory system, mucus traps microbes, which cilia then propel toward the throat for elimination.

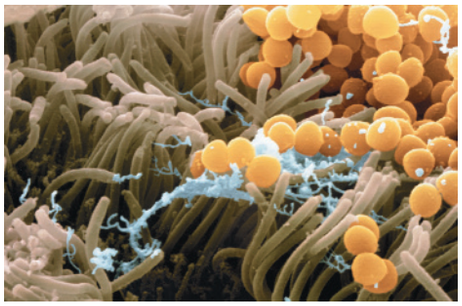
Other factors that affect the normal microbiota are age, nutritional status, diet, health status, disability, hospitalization, stress, climate, geography, personal hygiene, living conditions, occupation, and lifestyle.

CLINICAL CASE Bathroom Break

Jamil Carter is in the bathroom—again. Ever since he was hospitalized for a urinary tract infection (UTI) 6 months ago, Jamil has been plagued with fever, chills, and severe diarrhea. Jamil is 75 years old, is retired, and lives with his wife and adult son. He does not smoke and rarely drinks alcohol. While in the hospital, Jamil was treated with the antibiotics ceftriaxone and ciprofloxacin for the UTI. He developed diarrhea 3 days after being discharged from the hospital and has had it ever since. As a result, he has lost 15 pounds.

What could be causing Jamil's diarrhea and other symptoms? Read on to find out.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5



(a) Bacteria (orange) on the surface of the nasal epithelium SEM 3 μm

(b) Bacteria (orange) on human skin. SEM 6 μm

(c) Bacteria (orange) in the small intestine SEM 1 μm

Figure 14.1 Representative normal microbiota for different regions of the body.

Q Of what value are normal microbiota?

Animals with no microbiota whatsoever can be reared in the laboratory. These so-called germ-free mammals used in research are obtained by breeding them in a sterile environment. On the one hand, research with germ-free animals has shown that microbes aren't absolutely essential to animal life. On the other hand, this research has shown that germ-free animals have undeveloped immune systems and are unusually susceptible to infection and serious disease. Germ-free animals also require more calories and vitamins than do normal animals.

TABLE 14.1 Representative Normal Microbiota by Body Region

Region	Principal Components	Comments
Skin	*Propionibacterium, Staphylococcus, Corynebacterium, Micrococcus, Acinetobacter, Brevibacterium; Candida* (fungus), and *Malassezia* (fungus)	• Most of the microbes in direct contact with skin don't become residents because secretions from sweat and oil glands have antimicrobial properties. • Keratin is a resistant barrier, and the low pH of the skin inhibits many microbes. • The skin has a relatively low moisture content.
Eyes (Conjunctiva)	*Staphylococcus epidermidis*, *S. aureus*, diphtheroids, *Propionibacterium*, *Corynebacterium*, streptococci, and *Micrococcus*	• The conjunctiva, a continuation of the skin or mucous membrane, contains basically the same microbiota found on the skin. • Tears and blinking eliminate some microbes or inhibit others from colonizing and tears contain antimicrobial lysozyme.
Nose and Throat (Upper Respiratory System)	*S. aureus*, *S. epidermidis*, and aerobic diphtheroids in the nose; *S. epidermidis, S. aureus*, diphtheroids, *Streptococcus pneumoniae, Haemophilus*, and *Neisseria* in the throat	• Although some normal microbiota are potential pathogens, their ability to cause disease is reduced by microbial antagonism. • Nasal secretions kill or inhibit many microbes, and mucus and ciliary action remove many microbes.
Mouth	*Streptococcus*, *Lactobacillus*, *Actinomyces*, *Bacteroides*, *Veillonella*, *Neisseria*, *Haemophilus*, *Fusobacterium*, *Treponema*, *Staphylococcus*, *Corynebacterium*, and *Candida* (fungus)	• Abundant moisture, warmth, and the frequent presence of food make the mouth an ideal environment that supports very large and diverse microbial populations on the tongue, cheeks, teeth, and gums. • Biting, chewing, tongue movements, and salivary flow dislodge microbes. Saliva contains several antimicrobial substances.
Large Intestine	*E. coli*, *Bacteroides*, *Fusobacterium*, *Lactobacillus*, *Enterococcus*, *Bifidobacterium*, *Enterobacter*, *Citrobacter*, *Proteus*, *Klebsiella*, and *Candida* (fungus)	• The large intestine contains the largest numbers of resident microbiota in the body because of its available moisture and nutrients. Many of the bacteria prevent growth of pathogens (microbial antagonism), • Mucus and periodic shedding of the lining prevent many microbes from attaching. The mucosa produces several antimicrobial chemicals.
Urinary and Genital (Reproductive) Systems	*Staphylococcus*, *Micrococcus*, *Enterococcus*, *Lactobacillus*, *Bacteroides*, aerobic diphtheroids, *Pseudomonas*, *Klebsiella*, and *Proteus* in urethra; lactobacilli, *Streptococcus*, *Clostridium*, *Candida albicans* (fungus), and *Trichomonas vaginalis* (protozoan) in vagina	• The lower urethra has a resident population of microbes; the vagina has an acid-tolerant population because of the nature of its secretions. • Mucus and periodic shedding of the lining prevent microbes from attaching to the lining; urine flow mechanically removes microbes, and the pH of urine and urea are antimicrobial. • Cilia and mucus expel microbes from the cervix of the uterus into the vagina, and the acidity of the vagina inhibits or kills microbes.

Relationships between the Normal Microbiota and the Host

Once established, the normal microbiota can benefit the host by preventing the overgrowth of harmful microorganisms. This phenomenon is called **microbial antagonism**, or **competitive exclusion**, because it involves competition that excludes certain microbes. For example, the normal microbiota protect the host against colonization by potentially pathogenic microbes by competing for nutrients, producing substances harmful to the invading microbes, and affecting conditions such as pH and available oxygen. When this balance between normal microbiota and pathogenic microbes is upset, disease can result. For example, the normal bacterial microbiota of the adult human vagina maintains a local pH of about 4. The presence of normal microbiota inhibits the overgrowth of the yeast *Candida albicans*, which can grow when the pH is altered. If the bacterial population is eliminated by antibiotics, excessive douching, or deodorants, the pH of the vagina reverts to nearly neutral, and *C. albicans* can flourish and become the dominant microorganism there. This condition can lead to a form of vaginitis (vaginal infection).

Another example of microbial antagonism occurs in the large intestine. *E. coli* cells produce *bacteriocins*, proteins that inhibit the growth of other bacteria of the same or closely related species, such as pathogenic *Salmonella* and *Shigella*. A bacterium that makes a particular bacteriocin isn't killed by that bacteriocin but may be killed by other ones. Bacteriocins are being investigated for use in treating infections and preventing food spoilage.

A final example involves another bacterium, *Clostridioides difficile*, also in the large intestine. The normal microbiota of the large intestine effectively inhibit *C. difficile*, possibly by making host receptors unavailable, competing for available nutrients, or producing bacteriocins. However, if the normal microbiota are eliminated (for example, by antibiotics), *C. difficile* can become a problem. This microbe is responsible for nearly all intestinal infections that follow antibiotic therapy, from mild diarrhea to severe or even fatal colitis (inflammation of the colon). In 2013, a Canadian infectious disease specialist successfully treated *C. difficile* infections with pills containing normal intestinal microbiota. The normal microbiota were obtained from patients' relatives.

The relationship between the normal microbiota and the host illustrates **symbiosis**, a relationship between two organisms in which at least one organism is dependent on the other (Figure 14.2). In the symbiotic relationship called **commensalism**, one of the organisms benefits, and the other is unaffected. Many of the microorganisms that make up our normal microbiota are commensals; these include *Staphylococcus epidermidis* bacteria that inhabit the surface of the skin, the corynebacteria that inhabit the surface of the eye, and certain saprophytic mycobacteria that inhabit the ear and external genitals. These bacteria live on secretions and sloughed-off cells, and they bring no apparent benefit or harm to the host.

ASM: Microorganisms, cellular and viral, can interact with both human and nonhuman hosts in beneficial, neutral, or detrimental ways.

Mutualism is a type of symbiosis that benefits both organisms. For example, the large intestine contains bacteria, such as *E. coli*, that synthesize vitamin K and some B vitamins. These vitamins are absorbed into the bloodstream and distributed for use by body cells. In exchange, the large intestine provides nutrients used by the bacteria, allowing them to survive.

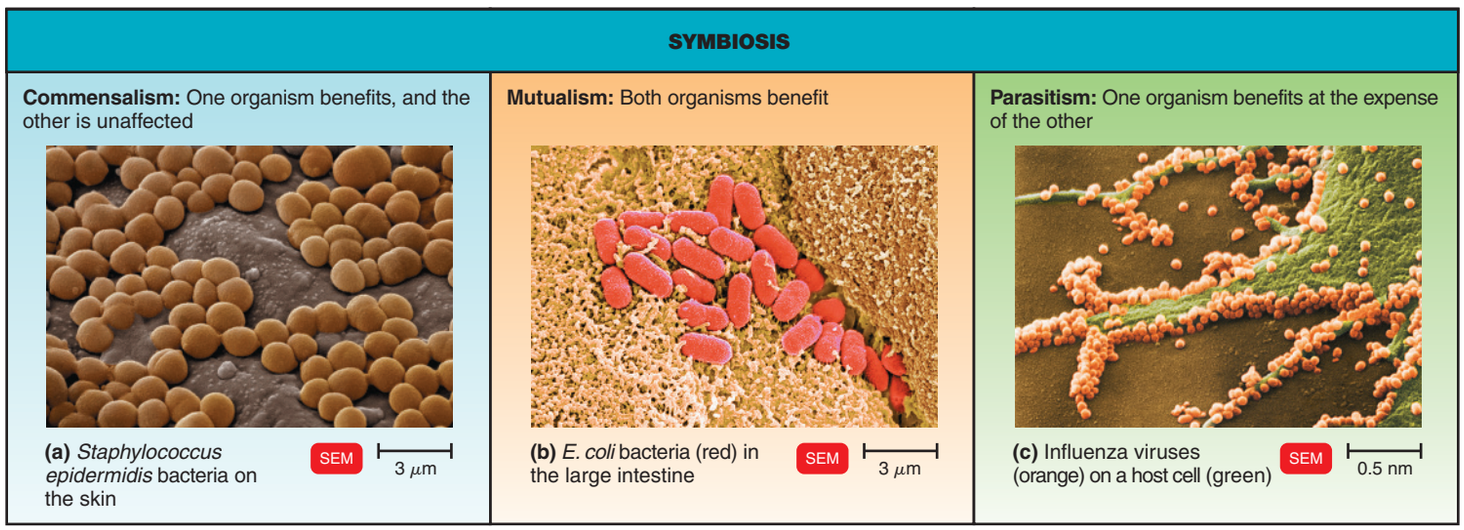


Figure 14.2 **Symbiosis.**

Q Which type of symbiosis is best represented by the relationship between humans and *E. coli*?

Recent genetics studies have found hundreds of antibiotic-resistance genes in the normal intestinal bacteria. It may seem desirable to have these bacteria survive while a person is taking antibiotics for an infectious disease; however, these beneficial bacteria may be able to transfer antibiotic-resistance genes to pathogens.

In still another kind of symbiosis, one organism benefits by deriving nutrients at the expense of the other; this relationship is called **parasitism**. Many disease-causing bacteria are parasites, and all viruses are obligate intracellular parasites.

Opportunistic Microorganisms

Although categorizing symbiotic relationships by type is convenient, keep in mind that the relationship can change under certain conditions. For example, given the proper circumstances, a mutualistic organism, such as *E. coli*, can become harmful. *E. coli* is generally harmless as long as it remains in the large intestine; but if it gains access to other body sites, such as the urinary bladder, lungs, spinal cord, or wounds, it may cause urinary tract infections, pulmonary infections, meningitis, or abscesses, respectively. Microbes such as *E. coli* are called **opportunistic pathogens**. They don't cause disease in their normal habitat in a healthy person but may do so in a different environment. As another example, skin microbiota that gain access to the bloodstream through broken skin or mucous membranes can cause opportunistic infections. Or, if the host is already weakened or compromised by infection, microbes that are usually harmless can cause disease. AIDS is often accompanied by a common opportunistic infection, *Pneumocystis* pneumonia, caused by the opportunistic organism *Pneumocystis jirovecii* (see Figure 24.20). This secondary infection can develop in people with AIDS because their immune systems are suppressed. Before the AIDS epidemic, this type of pneumonia was rare. Opportunistic pathogens possess other features that contribute to their ability to cause disease. For example, they're present in or on the body or in the external environment in relatively large numbers. Some opportunistic pathogens may be found in locations in or on the body that are somewhat protected from the body's defenses, and some are resistant to antibiotics.

In addition to the usual symbionts, many people carry other microorganisms that are generally regarded as pathogenic but that may not cause disease in those people. Among the pathogens that are frequently carried in healthy individuals are *Enterovirus* spp., which can cause a variety of illnesses, including the common cold. *Neisseria meningitidis*, which often resides benignly in the respiratory tract, can cause meningitis, a disease that inflames the coverings of the brain and spinal cord. *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, a normal resident of the nose and throat, can cause a type of pneumonia.

Cooperation among Microorganisms

It isn't only competition among microbes that can cause disease; cooperation among microbes can also be a factor in causing disease. For example, pathogens that cause periodontal disease and gingivitis do not have receptors for tooth enamel, but for the oral streptococci that colonize the teeth.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **14-2** How do normal microbiota differ from transient microbiota?
- **14-3** Give several examples of microbial antagonism.
- **14-4** How can opportunistic pathogens cause infections?

The Etiology of Infectious Diseases

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

14-5 List Koch's postulates.

Some diseases—such as COVID-19, polio, Lyme disease, and tuberculosis—have a well-known etiology. Some have an etiology that isn't completely understood; for example, we're not sure how certain viruses cause or contribute to cancer. For still others, such as Alzheimer's disease, the etiology is unknown. Of course, not all diseases are caused by microorganisms. For example, the disease hemophilia is an *inherited (genetic) disease*, and osteoarthritis and cirrhosis are *degenerative diseases*. There are several other categories of disease, but here we'll discuss only infectious diseases. To see how microbiologists determine the etiology of an infectious disease, we'll discuss in greater detail the work of Robert Koch, which was introduced in the historical overview of microbiology presented in Chapter 1.

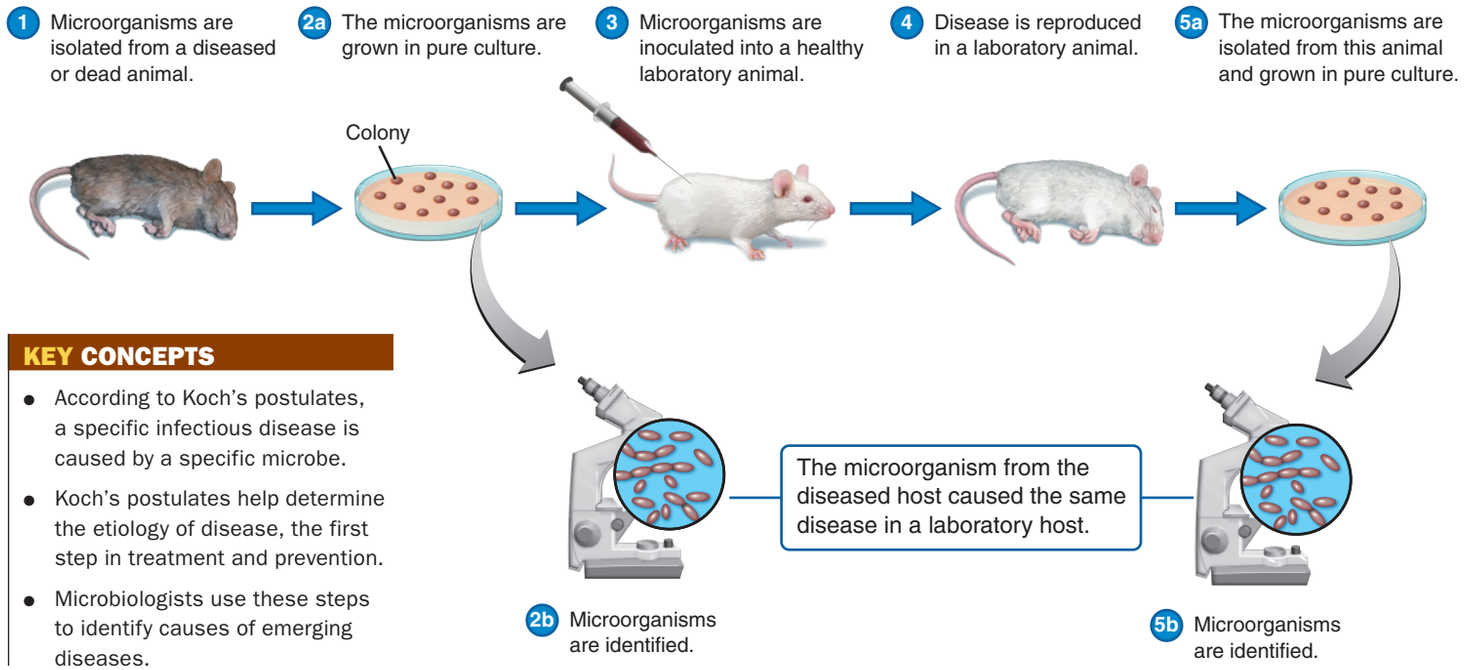
Koch's Postulates

Recall that Koch was a German physician who played a major role in establishing that microorganisms cause specific diseases. In 1877, he published some early papers on anthrax, a disease of cattle that can also occur in humans. Koch demonstrated that certain bacteria, today known as *Bacillus anthracis*, were always present in the blood of animals that had the disease and weren't present in healthy animals. He knew that the mere presence of the bacteria did not prove that they had caused the disease; the bacteria could have been there as a result of the disease. Thus, he experimented further.

He took a sample of blood from a sick animal and injected it into a healthy one. The second animal developed the same disease and died. He repeated this procedure many times, always with the same results. (A key criterion in the validity of any scientific proof is that experimental results be repeatable.) Koch also cultivated the microorganism in fluids outside the

FOUNDATION FIGURE 14.3

Koch's Postulates: Understanding Disease



animal's body, and he demonstrated that the bacterium would cause anthrax even after many culture transfers.

Koch showed that a specific infectious disease (anthrax) is caused by a specific microorganism (*Bacillus anthracis*) that can be isolated and cultured on artificial media. He later used the same methods to show that the bacterium *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is the causative agent of tuberculosis.

Koch's research provides a framework for the study of the etiology of any infectious disease. Today, we refer to Koch's experimental requirements as **Koch's postulates** (Figure 14.3). They are summarized as follows:

1. The same pathogen must be present in every case of the disease.
2. The pathogen must be isolated from the diseased host and grown in pure culture.
3. The pathogen from the pure culture must cause the disease when it's inoculated into a healthy, susceptible laboratory animal.
4. The pathogen must be isolated from the inoculated animal and must be shown to be the original organism.

Exceptions to Koch's Postulates

Although Koch's postulates are useful in determining the causative agent of most bacterial diseases, there are some exceptions. For example, some microbes have unique culture requirements. The bacterium *Treponema pallidum* is known to cause syphilis, but virulent strains have never been cultured on artificial media. The causative agent of leprosy, *Mycobacterium leprae*, has also never been grown on artificial media. Moreover, rickettsial and viral pathogens cannot be cultured on artificial media because they multiply only within cells.

The discovery of microorganisms that can't grow on artificial media has necessitated some modifications of Koch's postulates and the use of alternative methods of culturing and detecting certain microbes. For example, when researchers looking for the microbial cause of legionellosis (Legionnaires' disease) were unable to isolate the microbe directly from a victim, they took the alternative step of inoculating a victim's lung tissue into guinea pigs. These guinea pigs developed the disease's pneumonia-like symptoms, whereas guinea pigs inoculated with tissue from an unafflicted person did not. Then tissue samples from the diseased guinea pigs were cultured in umbilical vesicles (yolk sacs) of chick embryos, a method (see Figure 13.7) that reveals the growth of extremely small microbes. After the embryos were incubated, electron microscopy revealed rod-shaped bacteria in the chick embryos. Finally, modern immunological techniques (discussed in Chapter 18) were used to show that the bacteria in the chick embryos were the same bacteria as those in the guinea pigs and in afflicted humans.

In a number of situations, a human host exhibits certain signs and symptoms that are associated only with a certain pathogen and its disease. For example, the pathogens responsible for diphtheria and tetanus cause distinguishing signs

and symptoms that no other microbe can produce. They are unequivocally the only organisms that produce their respective diseases. But some infectious diseases are not as clear-cut and provide another exception to Koch's postulates. For example, nephritis (inflammation of the kidneys) can involve any of several different pathogens, all of which cause the same signs and symptoms. Thus, it is often difficult to know which particular microorganism is causing a disease. Other infectious diseases that sometimes have poorly defined etiologies are pneumonia, meningitis, and peritonitis (inflammation of the peritoneum, the membrane that lines the abdomen and covers the organs within them).

Some pathogens can cause several disease conditions, resulting in still another exception to Koch's postulates. *M. tuberculosis*, for example, is implicated in diseases of the lungs, skin, bones, and internal organs. *Streptococcus pyogenes* (strep'tō-KOK-kus pī-AH-jen-ēz) can cause sore throat, scarlet fever, skin infections (such as erysipelas), and osteomyelitis (inflammation of bone), among other diseases. When clinical signs and symptoms are used together with laboratory methods, these infections can usually be distinguished from infections of the same organs by other pathogens.

Ethical considerations may also impose an exception to Koch's postulates. For example, some agents that cause disease in humans have no other known host. An example is HIV, the cause of AIDS. This poses the ethical question of whether humans can be intentionally inoculated with infectious agents. In 1721, King George I told several condemned prisoners they could be inoculated with smallpox to test a smallpox vaccine. He promised their freedom if they lived. Human experiments with untreatable diseases are unacceptable today, although accidental inoculation does occur sometimes. For example, in the 1980s, a contaminated red bone marrow transplant satisfied the third Koch's postulate to prove that a herpesvirus could cause cancer (see Chapter 13).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

14-5 Explain some exceptions to Koch's postulates.

Classifying Infectious Diseases

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

14-6 Differentiate a communicable from a noncommunicable disease.

14-7 Categorize diseases according to frequency of occurrence.

14-8 Categorize diseases according to severity.

14-9 Define *herd immunity*.

Every disease that affects the body alters its structures and functions in particular ways, and these alterations are usually indicated by several kinds of evidence. For example, the patient may experience certain **symptoms**, or *subjective* changes in body function, such as pain and *malaise* (a vague feeling of body discomfort), that aren't apparent to an observer. The patient can also exhibit **signs**, which are *objective* changes the health care professional can observe and measure. Frequently evaluated signs include lesions (changes produced in tissues by disease), edema (swelling), fever, and paralysis. A specific group of symptoms or signs may always accompany a particular disease; such a group is called a **syndrome**. The diagnosis of a disease is made by evaluation of the signs and symptoms, together with the results of laboratory tests.

Diseases are often classified in terms of how they behave within a host and within a given population. A **communicable disease** is a disease in which an infected person transmits an infectious agent, either directly or indirectly, to another person who in turn becomes infected. COVID-19, chickenpox, measles, influenza, genital herpes, typhoid fever, and tuberculosis are examples. COVID-19, chickenpox, and measles are also examples of **contagious diseases**, that is, diseases that are very communicable and capable of spreading easily and rapidly from one person to another. A **noncommunicable disease** is not spread from one host to another. These diseases are either not caused by microorganisms at all, or are caused by members of the normal microbiota that only occasionally produce disease or by microorganisms that reside outside the body and produce disease only when introduced into the body. An example of the latter is tetanus: *Clostridium tetani* produces disease only when it is introduced into the body via abrasions or wounds.

Occurrence of a Disease

To understand the full scope of a disease, we should know something about its occurrence. The **incidence** of a disease is the number of people in a population who *develop* a disease during a particular time period. It's therefore a useful indicator of the spread of the disease. The **prevalence** of a disease is the number of people in a population who *have* a disease at a specified time, regardless of when it first appeared. Prevalence takes into account both old and new cases. It's therefore a useful indicator of how seriously and how long a disease affects a population. For example, the incidence of COVID-19 in the United States in the spring and summer of 2020 was about 3 million; that is, during the spring and summer months, about 3 million people were newly diagnosed with COVID-19. But the presence of COVID antibodies in many people who had not been diagnosed with COVID-19 caused researchers to estimate the prevalence in that period to be about 16.8 million. Knowing the incidence and the prevalence of a disease in different populations (for example, in populations representing different geographic regions or different ethnic groups) enables scientists to estimate the range of the disease's occurrence and its tendency to affect some groups of people more than others.

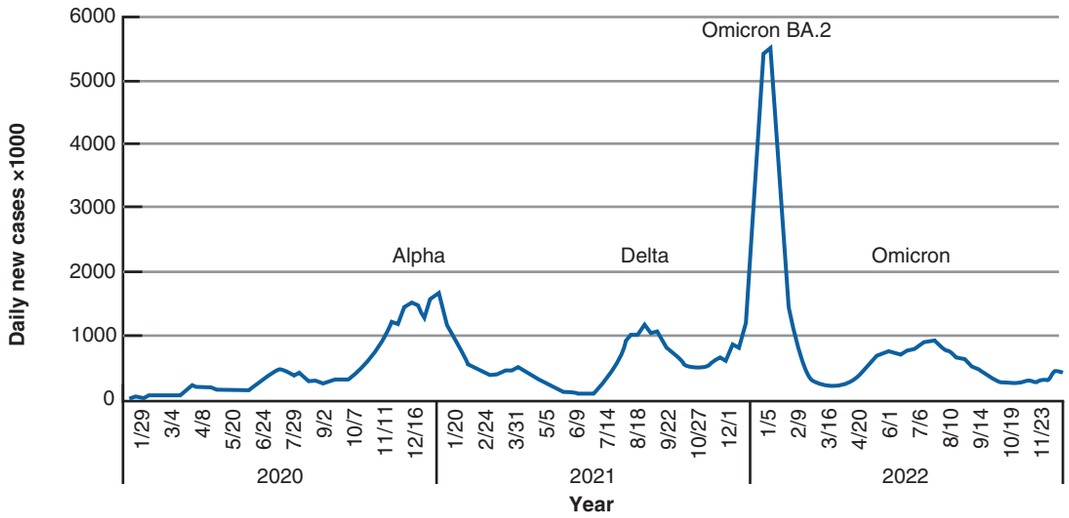


Figure 14.4 Reported COVID-19 cases in the United States. The emergence of the Alpha, Delta, and Omicron variants of SARS-CoV-2 is easy to see from the peaks in the graph. (The highly contagious Beta variant is not shown because it was not common in the United States.) As the virus reproduces, random mutations can occur that allow the virus to be transmitted more easily or re-infect people.

Source: CDC.

Q **What was the incidence of COVID-19 on January 20, 2021?**

Frequency of occurrence is another criterion that is used in the classification of diseases. If a particular disease occurs only occasionally, it is called a **sporadic disease**; typhoid fever in the United States is such a disease. A disease constantly present in a population is called an **endemic disease**; an example of such a disease is the common cold. If many people in a given area acquire a certain disease in a relatively short period, it is called an **epidemic disease**; influenza is an example of a disease that often achieves epidemic status. Figure 14.4 shows the epidemic incidence of COVID-19 in the United States between January 2020 and December 2022. Some authorities consider gonorrhea and certain other sexually transmitted infections to be epidemic at this time as well (see Figure 26.5). An epidemic disease that occurs worldwide is called a **pandemic disease**. We experience pandemics of influenza from time to time. COVID-19 and AIDS are other examples of pandemic diseases.

Severity or Duration of a Disease

The scope of a disease is defined in terms of its duration and severity. The **duration** of a disease is the average time that individuals have the disease from diagnosis until they are either cured or die. An **acute disease** is one that develops rapidly but has a short duration; a good example is influenza. A **chronic disease** develops more slowly and the signs and symptoms may be less severe, but the disease is likely to last for a long period of time, or to recur. Infectious mononucleosis, tuberculosis, and hepatitis B fall into this category. A disease that is intermediate between acute and chronic is described as a **subacute disease**; an example is subacute sclerosing panencephalitis, caused by the measles virus. It is a rare brain disease characterized by diminished intellectual function and loss of nervous function. A **latent disease** is one in which the causative agent remains inactive for a time but then becomes active to produce symptoms of the disease; an example is shingles, one of the diseases caused by *Varicellovirus*. The virus can enter nerves and remain latent (dormant) in the posterior root ganglia of spinal nerves. Later, changes in the immune response can activate the virus, causing shingles. Another example of a latent disease is cold sores, which are caused by *Simplexvirus*. The virus resides in the nerve cells of the body but causes no damage until it is activated by a stimulus such as sunburn or fever.

The **severity** of a disease refers to its presence and extensiveness in the body and is a measure of its ability to cause death. It is objectively evaluated through various diagnostic tests. To understand the terms commonly used to indicate disease severity, let's use COVID-19 as an example:

1. **Asymptomatic**. There are no signs or symptoms; it is estimated that about 20% of COVID-19 cases fall into this category.
2. **Mild**. Most people infected with COVID-19 have mild illness. The virus mainly affects the large airways of the upper respiratory system. Mild infection is characterized by fever, dry cough, slight breathlessness, tiredness, loss of taste and/or smell, muscle pain, headache, sore throat, and diarrhea. Less commonly, some people experience a runny nose, red eyes, vomiting, and a skin rash. Usually, mild cases do not increase in severity.
3. **Moderate**. Individuals with COVID-19 of moderate severity experience more breathlessness, increased heart rate, and increased coughing as the infection penetrates deeper into the lungs. In addition to the signs and symptoms associated with mild disease, they can experience increased body temperature above 37.8°C (100.4°F), persistent cough, pain due to the coughing, headache, a need to stay in bed, and dry mouth. Most people at this level recover in 2–4 weeks.
4. **Severe**. This stage, which occurs more commonly in older adults and those with underlying health conditions, is characterized by pneumonia: COVID-19 causes

inflammation of the pulmonary alveoli (air sacs), which fill with fluid and pus. As a result of pneumonia, the person experiences extreme breathlessness, chest pain, high temperature, loss of appetite, and bluish lips or face. Additionally, rapid and shallow breathing, fast heartbeat, and lowered blood pressure can occur.

5. **Critical**. This stage is characterized by severe pneumonia; a condition called *severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS)* can develop. With SARS, the pulmonary alveoli become so inflamed and moist that they remain closed. At this stage, a ventilator is required to artificially re-inflate them. In extreme cases, patients develop **sepsis**, an extreme inflammatory syndrome in response to a severe infection. Basically, the immune system goes into overdrive, releasing a variety of inflammatory mediators that cause blood vessels to leak and form blood clots, damaging the lungs, kidneys, and heart. Without medical intervention, sepsis can lead to organ failure and death.

An important metric in assessing the severity of a disease is the **infection fatality ratio (IFR)**. This is calculated by dividing the number of deaths attributed to a disease by the total number of infected individuals, including asymptomatic and undiagnosed cases, within a specified period of time. If there are 100 deaths from COVID-19 in a population of 1000 infected people, then the IFR is $100 \div 1000 = 0.1$ or 10%. An IFR may be based on factors such as geographic location (entire country, region, state, county, city, and so on), age, sex, ethnicity, and income. When analyzing the data, the lower the IFR, the lower the number of fatalities. For example, a study conducted in December 2020 found that the age group 0–34 had an IFR of 0.004%, as compared to an IFR of 28.3% in people age 85 and older.

Another metric for assessing the severity of a disease is called **case fatality ratio (CFR)**. The CFR is the proportion of individuals diagnosed with a disease who die from that disease within a certain period of time. CFR is often used in prognosticating (predicting the course or outcome of a disease), evaluating the effectiveness of new treatment modalities, and identifying high-risk populations. CFR is calculated by dividing the number of cases that resulted in death by the total number of people who have been diagnosed with the disease. For example, if it is determined that in a given population 300 have been diagnosed with COVID-19 and 100 of them died from the disease within 1 month, then the 30-day CFR is $100 \div 300 = 0.33$ or 33%. CFR varies with population characteristics such as age, access to health care facilities, levels of previous immunity, and treatment strategies.

The rate at which a disease or an epidemic spreads and the number of individuals involved are determined in part by the immunity of the population. Vaccination can provide long-lasting and sometimes lifelong protection of the vaccinated individual against certain diseases. It also helps reduce the occurrence of these diseases within the community. People who are immune to an infectious disease may still carry the pathogen and may shed a small quantity, but immune individuals typically act as a barrier to the spread of infectious agents. When vaccination levels are high, people are less likely to come into contact with an infected person. A great advantage of vaccination, therefore, is that it protects enough individuals in a population to prevent the disease's rapid spread to those in the population who aren't vaccinated. If most people in a population (herd) are immune to a particular disease, then the population is said to have achieved **herd immunity**. Where there is herd immunity, outbreaks are limited to sporadic cases because there are not enough susceptible individuals to support the spread of the disease to epidemic proportions. Susceptible individuals include children who are too young to be vaccinated or whose parents refuse to vaccinate them, people with immune disorders, and those who are too ill to be vaccinated (for example, some cancer patients). In addition, improper vaccinations occur globally, and many regions do not have access to vaccinations. An example of a disease that has been eradicated by vaccination and herd immunity is smallpox. The World Health Organization (WHO) hopes to eradicate other diseases, such as measles and polio, as well. Vaccination was successful in eradicating smallpox because it has only a human reservoir. Measles and polio are promising candidates for eradication because they also have only a human reservoir.

Extent of Host Involvement

Infections can also be classified according to the extent to which the host's body is affected. A **local infection** is one in which the invading microorganisms are limited to a relatively small area of the body. Some examples of local infections are boils and abscesses. In a **systemic (generalized) infection**, microorganisms or their products are spread throughout the body by the blood or lymph. Measles is an example of a systemic infection. Often, agents of a local infection enter a blood or lymphatic vessel and spread to other parts of the body, where they are confined. This condition is called a **focal infection**. Focal infections can arise from infections that originated in areas such as the teeth, tonsils, or sinuses.

As noted earlier, sepsis is a toxic inflammatory condition arising from the spread of microbes, especially bacteria or their toxins, from a focus of infection. **Septicemia**, also called blood poisoning, is a systemic infection arising from the multiplication of pathogens in the blood. Septicemia is a common example of sepsis. The presence of bacteria in the blood is known as **bacteremia**. **Toxemia** refers to the presence of toxins in the blood (as occurs in tetanus), and **viremia** refers to the presence of viruses in blood.

The state of host resistance also determines the extent of infections. A **primary infection** is an acute infection that causes

the initial illness. A **secondary infection** is one caused by an opportunistic pathogen after the primary infection has weakened the body's defenses. Secondary infections of the skin and respiratory tract are common and are sometimes more dangerous than the primary infections. *Pneumocystis* pneumonia as a consequence of AIDS is an example of a secondary infection; streptococcal bronchopneumonia following influenza is an example of a secondary infection that is more serious than the primary infection.

Finally, as we saw with the example of COVID-19, an **asymptomatic infection**, also called a *subclinical* or *inapparent infection*, is one that doesn't cause any noticeable illness. In addition to SARS-CoV-2, Poliovirus and hepatitis A virus can be carried by people who never develop the illness.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **14-6** Does *Clostridium perfringens* cause a communicable disease?
- **14-7** Distinguish the incidence from the prevalence of a disease.
- **14-8** List two examples of acute and chronic diseases.
- **14-9** How does herd immunity develop?

Patterns of Disease

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

14-10 Identify four predisposing factors for disease.

14-11 Put the following in proper sequence, according to the pattern of disease: period of decline, period of convalescence, period of illness, prodromal period, incubation period.

A definite sequence of events usually occurs during infection and disease. As you will learn shortly, for an infectious disease to occur, there must be a reservoir of infection as a source of pathogens. Next, the pathogen must be transmitted to a susceptible host by direct contact, by indirect contact, or by vectors. Transmission is followed by invasion, in which the microorganism enters the host and multiplies. Following invasion, the microorganism injures the host through a process called pathogenesis (discussed further in the next chapter). The extent of injury depends on the degree to which host cells are damaged, either directly or by toxins. Despite the effects of all these factors, the occurrence of disease ultimately depends on the resistance of the host to the activities of the pathogen.

Predisposing Factors

Predisposing factors are any variables or conditions that make the body more susceptible to a disease and may alter the course of the disease. Of the numerous examples of predisposing factors that could be cited, here we list only some representative ones.

Nutrition. Malnutrition (not enough food) or specific nutrient deficiencies (e.g., amino acids) increases the risk of infection and risk of severe infection, especially in children. The proper nutrients are needed to make antibodies or to develop skin and mucosal membranes that resist microbial invasion.

Sex. Females have a higher incidence of urinary tract infections than males, but males have higher rates of pneumonia and meningitis.

Genetic inheritance. Certain genetic disorders, such as severe combined immunodeficiency, greatly reduce the immune response. Others influence risk for disease in more subtle ways. The risk for severe COVID-19, for example, is thought to be influenced at least in part by genetic factors.

Climate. In temperate climates, the incidence of respiratory infections increases during the winter. This increase may be related to the fact that when people stay indoors, their closer contact with one another facilitates the spread of respiratory pathogens.

Age. Very young children and older adults are more susceptible to infections.

Environment. Illnesses and conditions caused by environmental factors such as radiation, pesticides, heavy metals (lead and mercury), and other types of land, air, and water pollution are called environmental diseases. Examples of such diseases include asthma, emphysema, bronchitis, and cancer of the lung, liver, skin, and urinary bladder. Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC) systems can dry out mucous membranes, causing them to crack and making them more susceptible to infection by pathogens.

Behavioral practices. Several lifestyle behaviors have a significant effect on predisposition to disease. These include tobacco use (lung cancer, COPD, cardiovascular disease, stroke, bronchial asthma), alcohol consumption (cirrhosis, anemia, cardiovascular disease, certain cancers, dementia), lack of physical activity (cardiovascular disease, diabetes, cancer, stroke), unhealthy diet (high blood cholesterol, cardiovascular disease, stroke, obesity, immunodeficiency, anemia), unsafe sexual practices (sexually transmitted infections like HIV, HPV, herpes, chlamydia), and illegal drug use (HIV, AIDS, hepatitis B and C, respiratory infections).

Vaccination. A vaccine is a biological preparation that contains an entire microbe or parts of a microbe that have been killed or weakened so that they do not cause disease but stimulate the immune system to recognize

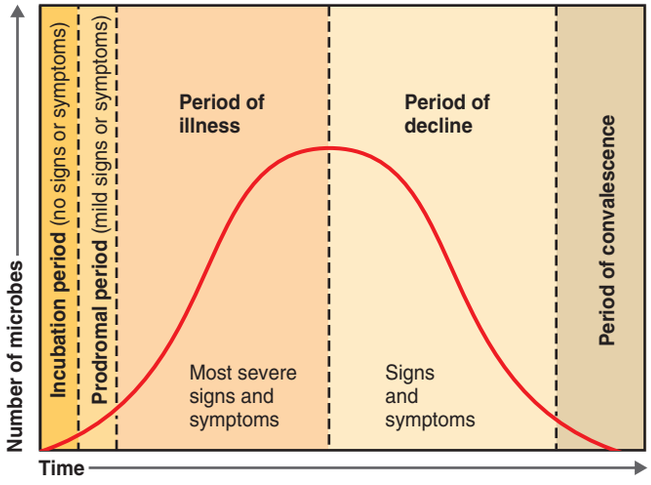


Figure 14.5 **The stages of a disease.**

Q During which periods can a disease be transmitted?

and destroy the microbe. Vaccines greatly decrease the spread of a disease by increasing herd immunity.

Compromised host. Certain conditions suppress the immune system and leave the individual more vulnerable to infectious disease. These include pregnancy, cancer chemotherapy, and drugs administered to transplant recipients. Also, severe burns, rashes, and cuts may allow pathogens to bypass the skin barrier and gain access to deeper body tissues.

Development of Disease

Once a microorganism overcomes the defenses of the host, development of the disease follows a certain sequence that tends to be similar whether the disease is acute or chronic (Figure 14.5).

Incubation Period

The **incubation period** is the interval between the initial infection and the first appearance of any signs or symptoms. In some diseases, the incubation period is always the same; in others, it is quite variable. The time of incubation depends on the specific microorganism involved, its growth rate, the number of infecting microorganisms, and the resistance of the host. Whether a disease can be transmitted during the incubation period depends on the specific pathogen. Infectious virions, for example, will not be present in the eclipse phase of their replication. (See Table 15.1 for the incubation periods of a number of microbial diseases.)

Prodromal Period

The **prodromal period** is a relatively short period that follows the period of incubation in some diseases. The prodromal period is characterized by early, mild symptoms of disease, such as general aches and malaise. It is often difficult to differentiate the common cold from the prodromal symptoms related to other diseases such as measles, chickenpox, or cytomegalovirus infection.

Period of Illness

During the **period of illness**, the disease is most severe. The person exhibits overt signs and symptoms of disease, such as fever, chills, muscle pain (myalgia), sensitivity to light (photophobia), sore throat (pharyngitis), lymph node enlargement (lymphadenopathy), and digestive canal disturbances. During the period of illness, the number of white blood cells may increase or decrease. The patient is also vulnerable to secondary infections during this phase. Generally, the patient's immune response and other defense mechanisms overcome the pathogen, and the period of illness ends. If the disease is not successfully overcome (or successfully treated), the patient dies during this period.

Period of Decline

During the **period of decline**, the signs and symptoms subside. The fever decreases, and the feeling of malaise diminishes. This phase may take from less than 24 hours to several days.

Period of Convalescence

During the **period of convalescence**, the person regains strength and the body returns to its prediseased state. Recovery has occurred.

We all know that during the period of illness, people can serve as reservoirs of disease and can easily spread infections to other people. However, you should also know that people can spread infection during incubation and prodromal periods as well. This is especially true of diseases such as typhoid fever and cholera, in which the convalescing person carries the pathogenic microorganism for months or even years.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **14-10** What is a predisposing factor?
- **14-11** The incubation period for a cold is 3 days, and the period of disease is usually 5 days. If the person next to you has a cold, when will you know whether you contracted it?

The Spread of Infection

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **14-12** Define *reservoir of infection*.
- **14-13** Contrast human, animal, and nonliving reservoirs, and give one example of each.
- **14-14** Explain three methods of disease transmission.

Now that you have an understanding of normal microbiota, the etiology of infectious diseases, and the types of infectious

diseases, we'll examine the sources of pathogens and how diseases are transmitted.

Reservoirs of Infection

For a disease to perpetuate itself, there must be a continual source of the pathogen. This source can be either a living organism or an inanimate object that provides a pathogen with adequate conditions for survival and multiplication and an opportunity for transmission. Such a source is called a **reservoir of infection**. These reservoirs may be human, animal, or nonliving.

Human Reservoirs

The principal living reservoir of human disease is the human body itself. Many people harbor pathogens and transmit them directly or indirectly to others. People with signs and symptoms of a disease may transmit the disease; in addition, some people can harbor pathogens and transmit them to others without exhibiting any signs of illness. These people, called **carriers**, are important living reservoirs of infection. For example, immune adolescents and adults can carry *Bordetella pertussis* and can transmit an infection to a nonvaccinated infant.

Some carriers have infections for which no signs or symptoms are ever exhibited. Gonorrhea infection is an example. These individuals are referred to as **asymptomatic carriers**. Other people, such as those with latent diseases or those whose disease is in the incubation period, are infected but have no symptoms at the present time. An example would be COVID-19 during its incubation period (before symptoms appear). These individuals are referred to as **incubating carriers**. Still other individuals are capable of transmitting infection (for example, with diphtheria) during the convalescent period (recovery) and are referred to as **convalescent carriers**.

Chronic carriers are individuals who have become infected and recover from a disease but can still spread the disease for a long period of time. Examples of such diseases are tuberculosis and hepatitis B. A classic example of a chronic carrier is "Typhoid Mary" (see Chapter 25). **Passive carriers** are persons, usually medical and dental personnel, who handle body fluids that are heavily contaminated and accidentally transfer pathogens to other patients.

Animal Reservoirs

Both wild and domestic animals are living reservoirs of microorganisms that can cause human diseases. Diseases that occur primarily in wild and domestic animals and can be transmitted to humans are called **zoonoses** (ZŌ-ō-nō-sēz) (singular: *zoonosis*). Rabies (found in bats, skunks, foxes, dogs, and coyotes), and Lyme disease (found in field mice) are examples of zoonoses. Other representative zoonoses are presented in Table 14.2.

About 150 zoonoses are known. Zoonoses can be transmitted to humans via one of many routes: by direct contact with infected animals; by direct contact with domestic pet waste (such as cleaning a litter box or bird cage); by contamination of food and water; by air from contaminated hides, fur, or feathers; by consuming infected animal products; or by arthropod vectors (insects and ticks that transmit pathogens).

Nonliving Reservoirs

The two major nonliving reservoirs of infectious disease are soil and water. Soil harbors such pathogens as fungi, which cause mycoses such as ringworm and systemic infections; *Clostridium botulinum*, the bacterium that causes botulism; and *C. tetani*, the bacterium that causes tetanus. Because both species of clostridia are part of the normal intestinal microbiota of horses and cattle, the bacteria are found especially in soil where animal feces are used as fertilizer.

Water that's been contaminated by the feces of humans and other animals is a reservoir for several pathogens, notably those responsible for gastrointestinal diseases. These include *Vibrio cholerae*, which causes cholera; *Cryptosporidium*, one cause of diarrhea; and *Salmonella* Typhi, which causes typhoid fever. Other nonliving reservoirs include foods that are improperly prepared or stored. They may be sources of diseases such as trichinellosis and salmonellosis.

Transmission of Disease

The causative agents of disease can be transmitted from the reservoir of infection to a susceptible host by three principal routes: contact, vehicles, and vectors.

Contact Transmission

Contact transmission is the spread of a disease agent by direct contact, indirect contact, or airborne transmission. **Direct contact transmission**, also known as *person-to-person transmission*, is the direct transmission of an agent by physical contact between its source and a susceptible host; no intermediate object is involved (Figure 14.6a). The most common forms of direct contact transmission are touching, kissing, and sexual intercourse. Among the diseases that can be transmitted by direct contact are viral respiratory tract diseases (COVID-19, the common cold, and influenza), staphylococcal infections, hepatitis A, measles, scarlet fever, and sexually transmitted infections (syphilis, gonorrhea, and genital herpes). Direct contact is also one way to spread AIDS and infectious mononucleosis. To guard against person-to-person transmission, health care workers use gloves and other protective measures (Figure 14.6b). Potential pathogens can also be transmitted by direct contact from animals (or animal products) to humans. Examples are the pathogens causing rabies (direct contact via bites) and anthrax (direct contact with animal hides).

Congenital transmission is the transmission of diseases from mother to fetus or newborn at birth. This occurs when a pathogen present in the mother's blood crosses the placenta, or when a pathogen in the mother's blood or vaginal secretions

TABLE 14.2 Selected Zoonoses

Disease	Causative Agent	Reservoir	Transmission Due To	Chapter Reference
VIRAL				
Influenza (some types)	*Alphainfluenzavirus*	Swine, birds	Direct contact	24
Rabies	*Lyssavirus*	Bats, skunks, foxes, dogs, raccoons	Direct contact (bite)	22
West Nile encephalitis	*Flavivirus*	Horses, birds	*Aedes* and *Culex* mosquito bite	22
Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome	*Hantavirus*	Rodents (primarily deer mice)	Direct contact with rodent saliva, feces, or urine	23
MPOX	*Orthopoxvirus*	Rodents	Direct contact with infected person's or rodent's rash or saliva.	24
BACTERIAL				
Anthrax	*Bacillus anthracis*	Domestic livestock	Direct contact with contaminated hides or animals; air; food	23
Brucellosis	*Brucella* spp.	Domestic livestock	Direct contact with contaminated milk, meat, or animals	23
Plague	*Yersinia pestis*	Rodents	Flea bites	23
Cat-scratch disease	*Bartonella henselae*	Domestic cats	Direct contact	23
Ehrlichiosis	*Ehrlichia* spp.	Deer, rodents	Tick bites	23
Leptospirosis	*Leptospira* spp.	Wild mammals, domestic dogs and cats	Direct contact with urine, soil, water	26
Lyme disease	*Borreliella burgdorferi*	Field mice	Tick bites	23
Psittacosis (ornithosis)	*Chlamydia psittaci*	Birds, especially parrots	Direct contact	24
Rocky Mountain spotted fever	*Rickettsia rickettsii*	Rodents	Tick bites	23
Salmonellosis	*Salmonella enterica*	Poultry, reptiles	Ingestion of contaminated food and water and putting hands in mouth	25
Endemic typhus	*Rickettsia typhi*	Rodents	Flea bites	23
FUNGAL				
Ringworm	*Trichophyton Microsporum Epidermophyton*	Domestic mammals	Direct contact; fomites (nonliving objects)	21
PROTOZOAN				
Malaria	*Plasmodium* spp.	Monkeys	*Anopheles* mosquito bite	23
Toxoplasmosis	*Toxoplasma gondii*	Cats and other mammals	Ingestion of contaminated meat or by direct contact with infected tissues or fecal matter	23
HELMINTHIC				
Tapeworm (pork)	*Taenia solium*	Pigs	Ingestion of undercooked contaminated pork	25
Trichinellosis	*Trichinella spiralis*	Pigs, bears	Ingestion of undercooked contaminated meat	25

makes direct contact with the infant during delivery. See the Big Picture in Chapter 22 for a discussion of congenitally transmitted pathogens.

Indirect contact transmission occurs when the agent of disease is transmitted from its reservoir to a susceptible host by means of a nonliving object. The general term for any nonliving object involved in the spread of an infection is a **fomite**. Examples of fomites are stethoscopes, face masks, gloves, clothing from health care personnel, tissues, handkerchiefs, towels, bedding, diapers, drinking cups, eating utensils, toys, money, and thermometers (Figure 14.6c). Contaminated syringes serve as fomites in transmitting AIDS and hepatitis B. Other fomites may transmit diseases such as tetanus, methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA), and impetigo.

Droplet transmission is a third type of contact transmission in which microbes are spread in *droplet nuclei* (mucus droplets) that travel in air (Figure 14.6d). Droplet nuclei are usually 5 μm or larger and travel in air about 0.5 meter before

(a) Direct contact transmission

(b) Preventing direct contact transmission through the use of gloves, masks, and goggles

(c) Indirect contact transmission

(d) Droplet nuclei transmission

Figure 14.6 Contact transmission.

Q Name a disease transmitted by direct contact, a disease transmitted by indirect contact, and a disease transmitted by droplet airborne transmission.

falling to the ground. Aerosol nuclei are smaller than 5 μm, usually 1 to 2 μm, and can travel 2 m before falling to the ground. These droplets are discharged into the air by coughing, sneezing, singing, laughing, or talking and travel less than 2 meters from the reservoir to the host. One sneeze may produce 20,000 droplet nuclei. Pathogens can travel at varying distances depending on the size and shape of the particles, initial velocity (coughing, sneezing, or normal exhalation), and environmental conditions such as humidity and air currents. Examples of diseases spread by droplet nuclei transmission are COVID-19, influenza, pneumonia, and pertussis (whooping cough). Face masks that prevent entry or exit of 1–2 μm particles can prevent the spread of respiratory diseases. Dust masks block particles that are 2.5 μm or larger, preventing the wearer from inhaling dust and pollen.

Vehicle Transmission

Vehicle transmission is the transmission of disease agents by a medium, such as air, water, or food (Figure 14.7). Other media include blood and other body fluids, drugs, and intravenous fluids. An outbreak of *Salmonella* infections caused by vehicle transmission is described in the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 25. Here we'll discuss air, water, and food as transmission vehicles.

Airborne transmission refers to the spread of agents of infection by droplet nuclei that travel from the reservoir to the host. For example, microbes are spread by droplet nuclei, which may be discharged in a fine spray from the mouth and nose during coughing and sneezing (see Figure 14.6d). These droplet nuclei are small enough to remain airborne for prolonged periods. The virus that causes measles and the bacterium that causes tuberculosis can be transmitted via airborne droplet nuclei. Dust particles can harbor various pathogens. Staphylococci and streptococci can survive on dust and be transmitted by the airborne route. Spores produced by certain fungi are also transmitted by the airborne route and can cause such diseases as histoplasmosis, coccidioidomycosis, and blastomycosis (see Chapter 24).

In **waterborne transmission**, pathogens are usually spread by water contaminated with untreated or poorly treated sewage. Diseases transmitted via this route include cholera, waterborne shigellosis, and leptospirosis.

(a) Air

(b) Water

(c) Food

Figure 14.7 Vehicle transmission.

Q How does vehicle transmission differ from contact transmission?

In **foodborne transmission**, pathogens are generally transmitted in foods that are incompletely cooked, poorly refrigerated, or prepared under unsanitary conditions. Foodborne pathogens cause diseases such as food poisoning and tapeworm infestation. Foodborne transmission frequently occurs because of **cross-contamination**, the transfer of pathogens from one food to another. This can occur when pathogens on hands, gloves, knives, cutting boards, countertops, utensils, and cooking equipment spread to food. This takes place when pathogens on the surface of raw meat, poultry, seafood, and vegetables and raw eggs are transferred to other foods that do not require cooking or have already been cooked, such as salads and sandwiches. Cross-contamination is responsible for numerous cases of food poisoning.

Both water and food also provide a means of transferring microbes by **fecal-oral transmission**. The pathogens usually enter the water or food after being shed in the feces of people or animals infected with them. The pathogens are then ingested in the contaminated water or food. The cycle is interrupted by effective sanitation practices in food production and handling.

Vectors

Arthropods are the most important group of disease **vectors**—animals that carry pathogens from one host to another. (Insects and other arthropod vectors are discussed in Chapter 12.) Arthropod vectors transmit disease by two general methods. **Mechanical transmission** is the passive transport of the pathogens on the insect's feet or other body parts (Figure 14.8). If the insect makes contact with a host's food, pathogens can be transferred to the food and later swallowed by the host. Houseflies, for instance, can transfer the pathogens of typhoid fever and bacillary dysentery (shigellosis) from the feces of infected people to food.

Figure 14.8 Mechanical transmission.

Q How do mechanical transmission and biological transmission by vectors differ?

Biological transmission is an active process and is more complex. The arthropod bites an infected person or animal and ingests some of the infected blood (see Figure 12.31). The pathogens then reproduce in the vector, and the increase in the number of pathogens increases the possibility that they will be transmitted to another host. Some parasites reproduce in the gut of the arthropod; these can be passed with feces. If the arthropod defecates or vomits while biting a potential host, the parasite can enter the wound. Other parasites reproduce in the vector's gut and migrate to the salivary gland; these are directly injected into a bite. Some protozoan and helminthic parasites use the vector as a host for a developmental stage in their life cycle.

Table 14.3 lists a few important arthropod vectors and the diseases they transmit.

TABLE 14.3 Representative Arthropod Vectors and the Diseases They Transmit

Disease	Causative Agent	Arthropod Vector	Chapter Reference
Malaria	*Plasmodium* spp. (protozoan)	*Anopheles* (mosquito)	23
African trypanosomiasis	*Trypanosoma brucei gambiense* and *T. b. rhodesiense* (protozoan)	*Glossina* (tsetse fly)	22
Chagas' disease	*T. cruzi* (protozoan)	*Triatoma* (kissing bug)	23
Yellow fever	*Flavivirus yellow fever virus*	*Aedes* (mosquito)	23
Dengue	*Flavivirus dengue virus*	*Ae. aegypti* (mosquito)	23
Arthropod-borne encephalitis	Several viral genera	*Culex* (mosquito)	22
Ehrlichiosis	*Ehrlichia* spp.	*Ixodes* spp. (tick)	23
Epidemic typhus	*Rickettsia prowazekii*	*Pediculus humanus* (louse)	23
Endemic murine typhus	*R. typhi*	*Xenopsylla cheopis* (rat flea)	23
Rocky Mountain spotted fever	*R. rickettsii*	*Dermacentor andersoni* and other species (tick)	23
Plague	*Yersinia pestis*	*X. cheopis* (rat flea)	23
Zika virus disease	*Flavivirus zika virus*	*Aedes, Anopheles* (mosquitoes)	22
Lyme disease	*Burkholderia burgdorferi*	*Ixodes* spp. (tick)	23

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **14-12** Why are carriers important reservoirs of infection?
- **14-13** How are zoonoses transmitted to humans?
- **14-14** Give an example of contact transmission, vehicle transmission, mechanical transmission, and biological transmission.

Healthcare-Associated Infections (HAIs)

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

14-15 Define *healthcare-associated infections*, and explain their importance.

14-16 Define *compromised host*.

14-17 List several methods of disease transmission in hospitals.

14-18 Explain how healthcare-associated infections can be prevented.

Healthcare-associated infections (HAIs) are infections patients acquire while receiving treatment for other conditions at a health care facility, such as a nursing home, hospital, same-day surgery center, outpatient clinic, or in-home health care environment. Traditionally these were called **nosocomial infections** (*nosocomial* is Latin for hospital).

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) estimates that on any given day, about 1 in 31 hospital patients has at least one HAI. The work of pioneers in aseptic techniques such as Lister and Semmelweis (Chapter 1) decreased the rate of HAIs considerably. However, despite modern advances in sterilization techniques and disposable materials, the rate of HAIs increased during the twentieth century. Since 2015, there has been a decrease in *C. difficile* and surgical site infections but a significant increase in antimicrobial-resistant infections. At present in the United States, nearly 700,000 people per year contract HAIs, and over 70,000 die as a result.

HAIs result from the interaction of several factors: (1) microorganisms in the hospital environment, (2) the compromised (or weakened) status of the host, and (3) the chain of transmission in the hospital. Figure 14.9 illustrates that the presence of any one of these factors alone is generally not enough to cause infection; it is the interaction of all three factors that poses a significant risk of HAI.

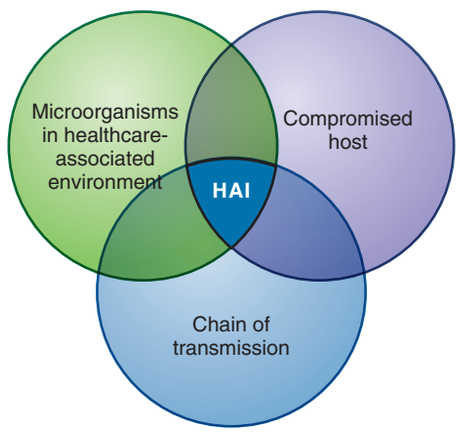


Figure 14.9 Risk for healthcare-associated infections.

Q What are some settings where HAIs occur?

Microorganisms in the Hospital

Although every effort is made to kill or check the growth of microorganisms in the hospital, the hospital environment is a major reservoir for a variety of pathogens. One reason is that certain normal microbiota of the human body are opportunistic and present a particularly strong danger to hospital patients. In fact, most of the microbes that cause HAIs don't cause disease in healthy people but are pathogenic only for individuals whose defenses have been weakened by illness or therapy.

The microbes most responsible for HAIs have changed over time. In the 1940s and 1950s, most HAIs were caused by gram-positive microbes. *S. aureus* was at that time the primary cause of all HAIs. In the 1970s, gram-negative rods, such as *E. coli* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, were the most common causes of HAIs. Then, during the 1980s, antibiotic-resistant gram-positive bacteria—*S. aureus*, coagulase-negative staphylococci, and *Enterococcus* spp.—emerged as important healthcare-associated pathogens. By the 1990s, these resistant gram-positive bacteria accounted for 34% of hospital-associated infections, and four gram-negative pathogens accounted for 32%. Currently, antimicrobial resistance in HAIs is a concern; *C. difficile*, for example, is now the leading cause of HAIs. In the past few years, however, improved prevention methods have led to a decrease in the total incidence of HAIs. The principal microorganisms involved in HAIs are summarized in Table 14.4.

CLINICAL CASE

Jamil calls his physician to discuss his symptoms and makes an appointment for that afternoon. His wife, Charlene, drives Jamil to the appointment; he is not sure he can make it that far without stopping. Initially, Jamil's physician had suspected noroviral gastroenteritis, but now the symptoms have gone on too long. She orders a stool sample to be sent to the local laboratory for culturing. The results return positive for *C. difficile*.

Where could Jamil have contracted *C. difficile*?

TABLE 14.4 Microorganisms Involved in Healthcare-Associated Infections

Microorganism	Most Common Infection Type	Percentage of Total Infections	Percentage Antimicrobial Resistant
Staphylococcus aureus	Surgical wound	16%	42%
Clostridioides difficile	Diarrhea	15%	Not reported
Enterococcus spp.	Bloodstream	14%	56%
Escherichia coli	Urinary tract infections (most common cause)	12%	81%
Coagulase-negative staphylococci	Bloodstream	11%	Not reported
Candida auris	Bloodstream	9%	Not reported
Pseudomonas aeruginosa	Urinary tract and pneumonia	8%	11%
Klebsiella pneumoniae	All sites	8%	14%
Enterobacter spp.	All sites	5%	6%
Acinetobacter baumannii	All sites	2%	26.5%

Source: CDC.

In addition to being opportunistic, some microorganisms in the hospital become resistant to antimicrobial drugs, which are commonly used there. For example, *P. aeruginosa* and other such gram-negative bacteria tend to be difficult to control with antibiotics because of their R factors, which carry genes that determine resistance to antibiotics (see Chapter 8). *Acinetobacter* that can produce carbapenemases amplify the problem of resistance through sharing their R plasmid with other bacteria. As the R factors recombine, new and multiple resistance factors are produced. These strains become part of the microbiota of patients and hospital personnel and become progressively more resistant to antibiotic therapy. In this way, people become part of the reservoir (and chain of transmission) for antibiotic-resistant strains of bacteria. Usually, if the host's resistance is high, the new strains are not much of a problem. However, if disease, surgery, or trauma has weakened the host's defenses, secondary infections may be difficult to treat.

Compromised Host

A **compromised host** is one whose resistance to infection is impaired by disease, therapy, or burns. Two principal conditions can compromise the host: broken skin or mucous membranes, and a suppressed immune system.

As long as the skin and mucous membranes remain intact, they provide formidable physical barriers against most pathogens. Burns, surgical wounds, trauma (such as accidental wounds), injections, invasive diagnostic procedures, ventilators, intravenous therapy, and urinary catheters (used to drain urine) can all break the first line of defense and make a person more susceptible to disease in hospitals. Burn patients are especially susceptible to HAIs because their skin is no longer an effective barrier to microorganisms.

The risk of infection is also related to other invasive procedures, such as administering anesthesia, which may alter breathing and contribute to pneumonia, and tracheotomy, in which an incision is made into the trachea to assist breathing. Patients who require invasive procedures usually have a serious underlying disease, which further increases susceptibility to infections. Invasive devices provide a pathway for microorganisms in the environment to enter the body; they also help transfer microbes from one part of the body to another. Pathogens can also proliferate on the devices themselves (see Figure 1.10).

In healthy individuals, white blood cells called T cells (T lymphocytes) provide resistance to disease by killing pathogens directly, mobilizing other white blood cells, and secreting chemicals that kill pathogens. White blood cells called B cells (B lymphocytes), which develop into antibody-producing cells, also protect against infection. Antibodies provide immunity by such actions as neutralizing toxins, inhibiting the attachment of a pathogen to host cells, and helping to lyse pathogens. Drugs, radiation therapy, steroid therapy, burns, diabetes, leukemia, kidney disease, stress, and malnutrition can all adversely affect the actions of T and B cells and compromise the host. In addition, the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) destroys certain T cells and causes AIDS.

A summary of the principal sites of HAIs is presented in Figure 14.10.

Chain of Transmission

Given the variety of pathogens (and potential pathogens) in health care settings and the compromised state of the host, routes of transmission are a constant concern. The principal routes of transmission of HAIs are (1) direct contact transmission from hospital staff to patient and from patient to patient and (2) indirect contact transmission through fomites and the hospital's ventilation system (airborne transmission).

Because health care personnel are in direct contact with patients, they can often transmit disease. For example, a

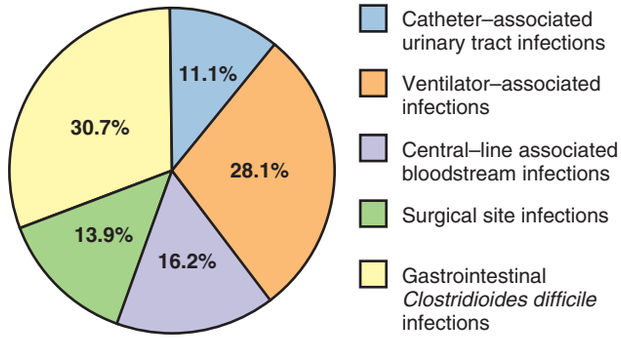


Figure 14.10 Principal sites of healthcare-associated infections.

Source: Data from CDC.

Q Which type of HAI is most prevalent?

physician or nurse may transmit microbes to a patient when changing a dressing, or a kitchen worker who carries *Salmonella* can contaminate a food supply.

Certain areas of health care facilities are reserved for specialized care; these include the burn, hemodialysis, recovery, intensive care, and oncology units. Unfortunately, these units also group patients together and provide environments for the epidemic spread of infections from patient to patient.

Many diagnostic and therapeutic hospital procedures provide a fomite route of transmission. The urinary catheter used to drain urine from the urinary bladder is a fomite in many HAIs. Intravenous catheters, which pass through the skin and into a vein to provide fluids, nutrients, or medication, can also transmit HAIs. Respiratory aids can introduce contaminated fluids into the lungs. Needles may introduce pathogens into muscle or blood, and surgical dressings can become contaminated and promote disease (see the **Clinical Focus** box). Some evidence suggests that patients with COVID-19 may be more vulnerable to HAIs. This increased vulnerability may be because these patients frequently are cared for in ICUs for extended periods of time and have various types of intubation.

Control of Healthcare-Associated Infections

Universal precautions (see Appendix C) are employed to reduce the transmission of microbes in health care and long-term care settings. The precautions are designed to protect patients/residents, staff, and visitors from contact with pathogens. The various precautions can be grouped into two general categories: standard precautions and transmission-based precautions.

Standard precautions are basic, minimum practices designed to prevent transmission of pathogens from one person to another and are applied to every person every time. They are employed at all levels of health care, regardless of whether a patient's infection status is confirmed, suspected, or unknown. Among the standard precautions are hand hygiene, use of personal protective equipment (gloves, gowns, face masks), respiratory hygiene and cough etiquette, disinfection of patient-care equipment and instruments, environmental cleaning and disinfection, safe injection practices, patient placement, and safe resuscitation and lumbar puncture procedures.

Transmission-based precautions are procedures designed to supplement standard precautions in individuals with known or suspected infections that are highly transmissible or involve epidemiologically important pathogens. They are employed when standard precautions do not completely interrupt the transmission route. There are three categories of transmission-based precautions: contact, droplet, and airborne.

- *Contact precautions*. These are used for patients who have infections that can be spread by contact with the patient's feces, urine, or other body fluids; skin; vomit; or wounds; or by contact with equipment or environmental surfaces contaminated by the patient. *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, and *C. difficile* are examples of pathogens that require contact precautions.
- *Droplet precautions*. These are used for patients who have infections that can be spread through close contact with droplet nuclei from respiratory secretions that spread only short distances. Examples of diseases that require droplet nuclei precautions are COVID-19, influenza, pneumonia, the common cold, whooping cough, and meningitis.
- *Airborne precautions*. These are used for patients who have an infection that can spread by droplet nuclei over long distances. Examples include chickenpox, tuberculosis, and measles.

Control measures aimed at preventing HAIs vary from one institution to another, but universal precautions are always employed to reduce the number of pathogens to which individuals are exposed. Following are some examples of the application of control measures to prevent or reduce HAIs.

According to the CDC, handwashing is the single most important means of preventing the spread of infection. Nevertheless, the CDC reports that health care workers frequently fail to follow recommended handwashing procedures. On average, health care workers wash their hands before interacting with patients only 40% of the time.

In addition to handwashing, tubs used to bathe patients should be disinfected between uses so that bacteria from the previous patient won't contaminate the next one. Respirators and humidifiers provide both a suitable growth environment for some bacteria and a method of airborne transmission. These sources of HAIs must be kept scrupulously clean and disinfected, and materials used for bandages and intubation (insertion of tubes into organs, such as the trachea) should be single-use disposable or sterilized before use. Packaging used to maintain sterility should be removed aseptically. Physicians can help improve patients' resistance to infection by prescribing antimicrobials only when necessary, avoiding invasive

CLINICAL CASE

C. difficile is a bacterium that is involved in 15–25% of all healthcare-associated infections and almost half of all cases of diarrhea. It was first identified in 1935 as part of the normal intestinal microbiota. *C. difficile* was associated with diarrhea in 1977. Infection can range from asymptomatic colonization of patients to diarrhea or colitis. Mortality in older patients is 10–20%. After making sure Jamil is not taking any antibiotics, his physician prescribes the antibiotic metronidazole to treat the *C. difficile*.

Why does Jamil's physician make sure he is not taking antibiotics before she treats the *C. difficile* infection? (*Hint:* See Chapter 25.)

procedures if possible, and minimizing the use of immunosuppressive drugs.

Accredited hospitals should have an infection control committee. Most hospitals have at least an infection control nurse or epidemiologist (an individual who studies disease in populations). The role of these staff members is to identify problem sources, such as antibiotic-resistant strains of bacteria and improper sterilization techniques. The infection control officer should make periodic examinations of hospital equipment to determine the extent of microbial contamination. Samples should be taken from tubing, catheters, respirator reservoirs, and other equipment.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **14-15** What interacting factors result in healthcare-associated infections?
- **14-16** What is a compromised host?
- **14-17, 14-18** How are HAIs primarily transmitted, and how can they be prevented?

Emerging Infectious Diseases

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

14-19 List several probable reasons for emerging infectious diseases, and name one example for each reason.

Emerging infectious diseases (EIDs) are diseases that are new or changing, are showing an increase in incidence in the recent past, or show a potential to increase in the near future (see Chapter 1). An emerging disease can be caused by a virus, a bacterium, a fungus, a protozoan, or a helminth. About 75% of emerging infectious diseases are zoonotic, mainly of viral origin, and are likely to be vector-borne.

Several criteria are used for identifying an EID. For example, some diseases present symptoms that are clearly distinctive from all other diseases. Some are recognized because improved diagnostic techniques allow the identification of a new pathogen. Others are identified when a local disease becomes widespread, a rare disease becomes common, a mild disease becomes more severe, or an increase in life span permits a slow disease to develop. Examples of EIDs are listed in Table 14.5 and described in the Clinical Focus boxes in Chapters 8 and 13.

ASM: Human impact on the environment influences the evolution of microorganisms (e.g., emerging diseases and the selection of antibiotic resistance).

A variety of factors contribute to the emergence of new infectious diseases:

- New strains, such as *E. coli* O157:H7 and avian influenza (H5N1), may result from genetic recombination between organisms.
- A new serovar, such as *V. cholerae* O139, may result from changes in or the evolution of existing microorganisms.
- The widespread, and sometimes unwarranted, use of antibiotics and pesticides encourages the growth of more resistant populations of microbes and the vectors (mosquitoes, lice, and ticks) that carry them.
- An inherent property of microbes is their genetic instability, which promotes their rapid evolution and enables them to adapt to ever-changing ecological niches. This is particularly true of RNA viruses, because RNA is less stable than DNA. RNA instability can contribute to either of two phenomena: *antigenic drift and antigenic shift*. An antigen is a molecule that induces an immune response. Some antigens are components of invading microbes, such as proteins from viral coats, capsules, cell walls, fimbriae, flagella, and toxins. In *antigenic drift*, gradual, minor mutations in the viral RNA cause changes in the antigens in the viral coat just enough so that the antigens are no longer recognizable to the immune system. Even someone who had a vaccine might not be protected because their immune system would not recognize the mutated antigens. The rate of mutations in the SARS-CoV-2 genome is approximately 7.3×10^{-4} nucleotide substitutions per site per year; this is comparable to those of other human RNA viruses. To understand antigenic shift, we'll use the example of the influenza virus. *Antigenic shift* is a sudden and major change in the antigens of the flu viral coat. These mutations occur when two or more different strains of the same flu virus or strains of two or more different flu viruses simultaneously infect the same cell. Within the cell, parts of the RNA of the two strains mix, resulting in drastic changes in the viral coat antigens. This type of mutation can result in epidemics and pandemics.

TABLE 14.5 Emerging Infectious Diseases

Microorganism	Year of Emergence	Disease Caused	Chapter Reference
BACTERIA			
Elizabethkingia anophelis	2013	Meningitis	22
Clostridioides difficile	2004	Diarrhea, colitis, and hemorrhagic necrosis	25
Bordetella pertussis	2000	Whooping cough	24
Mycobacterium ulcerans	1998	Buruli ulcer	21
Vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus*	1997	Bacteremia, pneumonia	20
Streptococcus pneumoniae	1995	Antibiotic-resistant pneumonia	24
S. pyogenes	1995	Streptococcal toxic shock syndrome	21
Corynebacterium diphtheriae	1994	Diphtheria epidemic, eastern Europe	24
Vibrio cholerae O139	1992	New serovar of cholera, Asia	25
Vancomycin-resistant enterococci	1988	Urinary tract infections, bacteremia, endocarditis	26, 23
Bartonella henselae	1983	Cat-scratch disease	23
E. coli O157:H7	1982	Hemorrhagic diarrhea	25
Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*	1968	Bacteremia, pneumonia	20
FUNGI			
Candida auris	2015	Systemic	23
Pneumocystis jirovecii	1981	Pneumonia in immunocompromised individuals	24
PROTOZOA			
Trypanosoma cruzi	2007	Chagas' disease in United States	23
Cyclospora cayetanensis	1993	Severe diarrhea and wasting syndrome	25
HELMINTHS			
Angiostrongylus cantonensis	2017	Meningitis	
Baylisascaris procyonis	2001	Raccoon roundworm encephalitis, in humans	
VIRUSES			
Severe acute respiraaylisascartory syndrome *Betacoronavirus* 2 (SARS-CoV-2)	2019	COVID-19	24
Chikungunya virus	2013	Chikungunya disease, Americas	23
Middle East respiratory syndrome *Betacoronavirus* (MERS-CoV)	2013	Middle East respiratory syndrome (MERS)	24
Influenza A virus	1997, 2009	Avian influenza (H5N1), Swine flu (H1N1)	24
Zika virus	2007	Congenital microcephaly	22
SARS-associated *Betacoronavirus*	2002	Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS)	24
West Nile virus	1999	West Nile encephalitis	22
Nipah virus	1998	Encephalitis, Malaysia	22
Hendra virus	1994	Encephalitis-like symptoms, Australia	24
Hantavirus	1993	*Hantavirus* pulmonary syndrome	23
Hepatitis C virus	1989	Hepatitis	25
MPOX virus	1985	Chickenpox-like disease	21
Dengue virus	1984	Dengue	23
HIV	1983	AIDS	19
Ebola virus	1976	Causes sporadic epidemics	23
PRIONS			
Bovine spongiform encephalitis agent	1996	Variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, Great Britain	22

- Global warming and changes in weather patterns may increase the distribution and survival of reservoirs and vectors, resulting in the introduction and dissemination of diseases such as malaria and *Hantavirus* pulmonary syndrome. See the Big Picture in Chapter 22.
- Known diseases, such as Zika virus disease, chikungunya, dengue, and West Nile encephalitis, have spread to new geographic areas by modern transportation. This was less likely 100 years ago, when travel took so long that infected travelers either died or recovered during passage.
- Insect vectors transported to new areas can transmit infections brought by human travelers. The African yellow fever mosquito, *Aedes aegypti*, came to the Americas with the first European explorers. Yellow fever virus was also brought to the Americas with those first explorers, and *A. aegypti* transmitted the disease to native populations and immigrants alike. The Asian tiger mosquito, *A. albopictus*, was inadvertently brought to Texas on a cargo ship from Japan in 1985. Both *Aedes* species are now established throughout the southern and southwestern states. And both are vectors for Zika, chikungunya, dengue, and West Nile viruses.
- Previously unrecognized infections may appear in individuals living or working in regions undergoing ecological changes brought about by natural disaster, construction, wars, and expanding human settlement. In California, the incidence of coccidioidomycosis increased tenfold following the Northridge earthquake of 1994. Workers clearing South American forests are now contracting Venezuelan hemorrhagic fever.
- Even animal control measures may affect the incidence of a disease. Rat lungworm (*Angiostrongylus cantonensis*), found in snails, has infected 12 people in southern states. In 2022, the parasite was found in a new host, invasive tree frogs in Florida, increasing the risk of infection.
- Failures in public health measures may be a contributing factor to the emergence of previously controlled infections. For example, the failure of adults to get a diphtheria booster vaccination led to a diphtheria epidemic in the newly independent republics of the former Soviet Union in the 1990s.
- **Bioterrorism**, the use of pathogens or toxins to produce death and disease in humans, animals, or plants as an act of violence and intimidation, is another factor that could affect the occurrence of emerging infectious diseases. The pathogens or toxins can be disseminated through aerosolization, food, human carriers, water, or infected insects. Recent examples of bioterrorism are discussed in the Big Picture in Chapter 24.

The CDC, the National Institutes of Health (NIH), and the WHO have developed plans to address issues relating to EIDs. Their priorities include the following:

1. To detect, promptly investigate, and monitor emerging infectious pathogens, the diseases they cause, and factors that influence their emergence
2. To expand basic and applied research on ecological and environmental factors, microbial changes and adaptations, and host interactions that influence EIDs
3. To enhance the communication of public health information and the prompt implementation of prevention strategies regarding EIDs
4. To establish plans to monitor and control EIDs worldwide

Because of the importance of emerging infectious diseases to the scientific community, the CDC publishes a monthly journal called *Emerging Infectious Diseases*.

CLINICAL CASE

Antibiotics can kill competing bacteria, thus allowing growth of *C. difficile*. When Jamil's physician learns of the cause of Jamil's diarrhea, she checks with the hospital to see whether any other patients have developed *C. difficile* diarrhea and colitis. It turns out that 20 other patients are also infected with *C. difficile*. The local health department completes an epidemiological study of the outbreak and releases the following information:

Rate of infection for patients	
Single room	7%
Double room	17%
Triple room	26%
Rate of environmental isolations of *C. difficile*	
Bed rail	10%
Commode	1%
Floor	18%
Call button	6%
Toilet	3%
C. difficile* on hands of hospital personnel after contact with patients who were culture-positive for *C. difficile	
Used gloves	0%
Did not use gloves	59%
Had *C. difficile* before patient contact	3%
Washed with nondisinfectant soap	40%
Washed with disinfectant soap	3%
Did not wash hands	20%

What is the most likely mode of transmission, and how can transmission be prevented?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 **Part 4** Part 5

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

14-19 Give several examples of emerging infectious diseases.

Epidemiology

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

14-20 Define *epidemiology*, and describe three types of epidemiologic investigations.

14-21 Identify the function of the CDC.

14-22 Define the following terms: *morbidity*, *mortality*, and *notifiable infectious diseases*.

The science that studies when and where diseases occur and how they are transmitted in populations is called **epidemiology** (EP-i-dē-mē-ol-ō-jē). In today's crowded, overpopulated world, in which frequent travel and the mass production and distribution of food and other goods are a way of life, diseases can spread rapidly. A contaminated food or water supply, for example, can affect many thousands of people very quickly. Identifying the causative agent of a disease is desirable so it can be effectively controlled and treated. It is also desirable to understand the mode of transmission and geographical distribution of the disease.

Evolution of Epidemiology

Modern epidemiology began in the mid-1800s with three now-famous investigations. John Snow, a British physician, conducted a series of investigations related to outbreaks of cholera in London. As the cholera epidemic of 1848 to 1849 raged, Snow analyzed the death records attributed to cholera, gathered information about the victims, and interviewed survivors who lived in the neighborhood. Using the information he compiled, Snow made a map showing that most individuals who died of cholera drank or brought water from the Broad Street pump; those who used other pumps (or drank beer, like the workers at a nearby brewery) did not get cholera. He concluded that contaminated water from the Broad Street pump was the source of the epidemic. When the pump's handle was removed and people could no longer get water from this location, the number of cholera cases dropped significantly.

Between 1846 and 1848, Ignaz Semmelweis meticulously recorded the number of births and maternal deaths at Vienna General Hospital. The First Maternity Clinic had become a source of gossip throughout Vienna because the death rate due to puerperal sepsis ranged between 13% and 18%, four times that of the Second Maternity Clinic. Puerperal sepsis (childbirth fever) is a hospital-acquired infection that begins in the uterus as a result of childbirth or abortion. It is frequently caused by *S. pyogenes*. The infection progresses to the abdominal cavity (peritonitis) and in many cases to septicemia (proliferation of microbes in the blood). Women of wealth did not go to the clinic, and women with little money had learned they had a better chance of surviving childbirth if they gave birth elsewhere before going to the clinic. Looking at his data, Semmelweis identified a common factor among these two groups of women: they were examined by the physicians and medical students, who had spent their mornings dissecting cadavers. In May 1847, he ordered all medical students to wash their hands with chloride of lime before entering the delivery room, and the mortality rate dropped to under 2%.

Florence Nightingale recorded statistics on epidemic typhus in the English civilian and military populations. In 1858, she published a thousand-page report using statistical comparisons to demonstrate that diseases, poor food, and unsanitary conditions were killing the soldiers. Her work resulted in reforms in the British Army and to her admission to the Statistical Society, their first female member.

These three careful analyses of where and when a disease occurred and how it was transmitted within a population constituted a new approach to medical research and demonstrated the importance of epidemiology. The work of Snow, Semmelweis, and Nightingale resulted in changes that lowered the incidence of diseases even though knowledge of the causes of infectious disease was limited. Most physicians believed that the symptoms they saw were the causes of the disease, not the result of disease. Koch's work on the germ theory of disease was still 30 years in the future.

Roles of Epidemiology

An epidemiologist not only determines the etiology of a disease but also identifies other possibly important factors and patterns concerning the people affected. An important part of the epidemiologist's work is assembling and analyzing data such as age, sex, occupation, personal habits, socioeconomic status, history of immunization, presence of any other diseases (comorbidities), and the common history of affected individuals (such as eating the same food or visiting the same doctor's office). Also important for the prevention of future outbreaks is knowledge of the site at which a susceptible host came into contact with the agent of infection. In addition, the epidemiologist considers the period during which the disease occurs, either on a seasonal basis (to indicate whether the disease is prevalent during a particular season) or on a yearly basis (to indicate the effects of immunization or an emerging or reemerging disease).

An epidemiologist also attempts to predict the probability that an infection will spread through a population, to quantify its spread, and to calculate how many people need to be vaccinated to achieve herd immunity. Such information is estimated by calculating the **reproductive number** ($\mathbf{R_0}$; pronounced "R naught"), which is the average number of people who will contract a disease from one infected individual. It is one way of measuring the capacity of an infectious disease to spread. When calculating R_0, it is assumed that the population studied was previously free of disease, has not been vaccinated, and there is no way to control the spread of the disease. If the R_0 is less than 1, each existing infection causes less than one new infection. In such a case, the disease will decline and eventually

disappear. If the R_0 equals 1, each existing infection causes one new infection, the disease will be present but stable, and there will not be an outbreak. If the R_0 is greater than 1, each existing infection causes more than one new infection, the disease will be transmitted among people, and there may be an outbreak. If a disease has an R_0 of 15, for example, a person who has the disease will transmit it to an average of 15 other individuals. Various studies have calculated R_0 for COVID-19 at between 1.5 and 6.68. R_0 depends on properties of the pathogen, host population density, and movement of hosts between areas.

An epidemiologist is also concerned with various methods for controlling a disease, including the use of drugs (chemotherapy) and vaccines (immunization). Other methods include the control of human, animal, and nonliving reservoirs of infection, water treatment, proper sewage disposal (enteric diseases), cold storage, pasteurization, food inspection, adequate cooking (foodborne diseases), improved nutrition to bolster host defenses, changes in personal habits, and screening of transfused blood and transplanted organs.

Figure 14.11 contains graphs indicating the incidence of selected diseases. Such graphs provide information about whether disease outbreaks are sporadic or epidemic and, if epidemic, how the disease might have spread. By establishing the frequency of a disease in a population and identifying the factors responsible for its transmission, an epidemiologist can provide physicians with information that is important in determining the prognosis and treatment of a disease. Epidemiologists also evaluate how effectively a disease is being controlled in a community—by a vaccination program, for example. Finally, epidemiologists can provide data to help in evaluating and planning overall health care for a community.

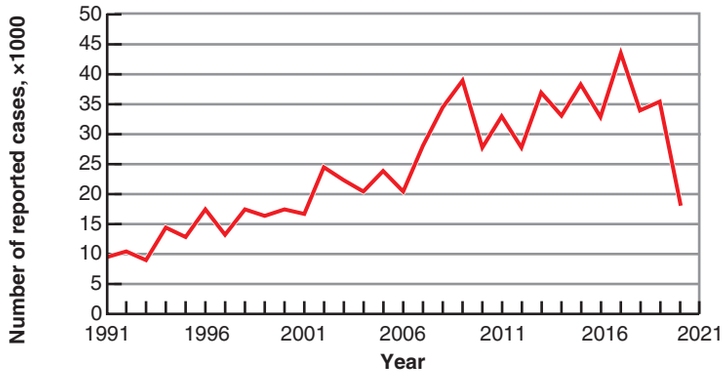
Types of Epidemiology

Epidemiologists use three basic types of investigations when analyzing the occurrence of a disease: descriptive, analytical, and experimental.

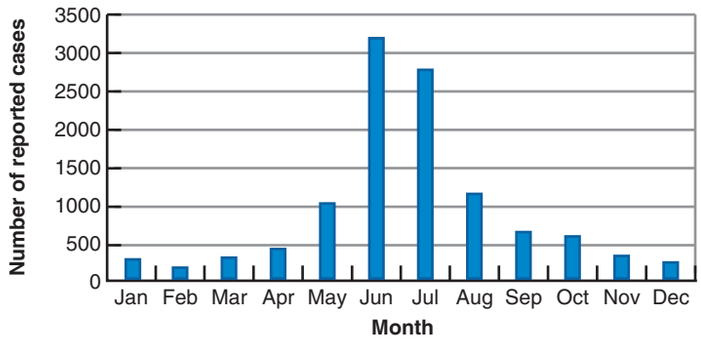
Descriptive Epidemiology

Descriptive epidemiology entails collecting all data that describe the occurrence of the disease under study. Descriptive epidemiology is usually used once a problem has been identified. Relevant information includes information about the affected individuals and the place and period in which the disease occurred. Snow's search for the cause of the cholera outbreak in London is an example of descriptive epidemiology.

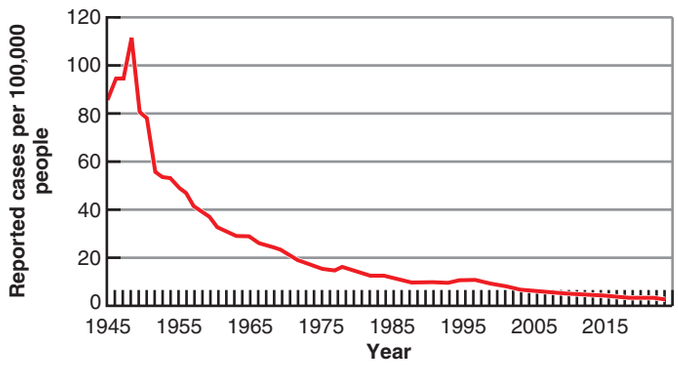
Such a study is generally *retrospective* (looking backward after people are infected). In other words, the epidemiologist backtracks to the cause and source of the disease (see the boxes in Chapters 21 through 26). The search for the cause of an increase in microcephaly (incomplete brain development) is an example of a fairly recent retrospective study. (See the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 8.) In the initial



(a) Lyme disease cases, 1991–2020



(b) Lyme disease by month, 2020



(c) Reported tuberculosis cases, 1945–2021

Figure 14.11 Epidemiological graphs. **(a)** Lyme disease cases, showing the annual occurrence of the disease during the covered period. **(b)** A different perspective of Lyme disease shows the seasonal pattern that enabled epidemiologists to draw some conclusions about the disease's epidemiology. **(c)** A graph of the incidence of tuberculosis shows a rapid decrease in the rate of infection from 1948 to 1957 due to pasteurization and antibiotics. This graph records the number of cases per 100,000 people, rather than the total number of cases.

Source: Data from CDC.

Q What does graph (b) indicate about transmission of Lyme disease? What can you conclude from graph (c)?

phase of an epidemiological study, retrospective studies are more common than *prospective* (looking forward) studies, in which an epidemiologist chooses a group of people who are

free of a particular disease to study. The group's subsequent disease experiences are then recorded for a given period. Prospective studies were used to test the Salk polio vaccine in 1954 and 1955 and the Framingham Health Study (1948 to the present).

Analytical Epidemiology

Analytical epidemiology analyzes a particular disease to determine its probable cause or risk factors. It can use different variables to discover possible routes and rates of infection. This study can be done in two ways. With the *case control method*, the epidemiologist looks for factors that might have preceded the disease. A group of people who have the disease is compared with another group of people who are free of the disease. For example, one group with meningitis and one without the disease might be matched by age, sex, socioeconomic status, and location. These statistics are compared to determine which of all the possible factors—genetic, environmental, nutritional, and so forth—might be responsible for or increase the risk of meningitis. Nightingale's work was an example of analytical epidemiology, in which she compared disease in soldiers and civilians. With the *cohort method*, the epidemiologist studies two populations: one that has had contact with the agent causing a disease and another that has not (both groups are called *cohort groups*). For example, a comparison of one group composed of people who have received blood transfusions and one composed of people who have not could reveal an association between blood transfusions and the incidence of hepatitis B virus.

Experimental Epidemiology

Experimental epidemiology begins with a hypothesis about a particular disease; experiments to test the hypothesis are then conducted. Semmelweis's use of handwashing is an example of experimental epidemiology. Testing on humans is called a **clinical trial**. A clinical trial can be used to test a hypothesis regarding the effectiveness of a drug. A group of infected individuals is selected and divided randomly so that some receive the drug (test group) and others (control group) receive a *placebo*, a substance that has no effect. In a single blind test, the individuals don't know whether they are in the test or control group. It's called a *double blind test* if the treating physicians also don't know the group identity. If all other factors are kept constant between the two groups, and if those people who received the drug recover more rapidly than those who received the placebo, it can be concluded that the drug was the experimental factor (variable) that made the difference.

Case Reporting

We noted earlier in this chapter that establishing the chain of transmission for a disease is extremely important. Once known, the chain can be interrupted to slow down or stop the spread of the disease.

An effective way to establish the chain of transmission is *case reporting*, a procedure that requires health care workers to report specified diseases to local, state, and national health officials. **Notifiable infectious diseases**, listed in Table 14.6, are diseases for which physicians are required by law to report cases to the U.S. Public Health Service. These data provide early warning of possible outbreaks. As of 2022, a total of 120 infectious diseases were reported at the national level. Case reporting provides epidemiologists with an approximation of the incidence and prevalence of a disease. This information helps officials decide whether or not to investigate a given disease. The reporting of data also allows epidemiologists to monitor emerging infectious diseases in conjunction with comparing the results to previous records of infection. Use of these reports makes it possible to decrease the probability of large-scale infections.

Case reporting provided epidemiologists with valuable leads regarding the origin and spread of AIDS. In fact, one of the first clues about AIDS came from reports of young men with Kaposi's sarcoma, formerly a disease of older men. Using these reports, epidemiologists began various studies of the patients. If an epidemiological study shows that a disease affects a large enough segment of the population, epidemiologists then attempt to isolate and identify its causative agent. Identification is accomplished by a number of different microbiological methods. Identifying the causative agent often provides valuable information regarding the reservoir for the disease.

Once the chain of transmission is discovered, it's possible to apply control measures to stop the disease from spreading. These might include elimination of the source of infection, isolation and segregation of infected people, the development of vaccines, and, as in the case of AIDS, education.

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)

Epidemiology is a major concern of state and federal public health departments. The **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)**, a branch of the U.S. Public Health Service located in Atlanta, Georgia, is a central source of epidemiological information in the United States.

The CDC issues a publication called the ***Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*** (www.cdc.gov). ***MMWR***, as it is called, is read by microbiologists, physicians, and other hospital and public health professionals. *MMWR* contains data on **morbidity**, the incidence of specific notifiable diseases, and **mortality**, the number of deaths from these diseases. These data are usually organized by state. **Morbidity rate** is the number of people affected by a disease in a given period of time in relation to the total population. **Mortality rate** is the number of deaths resulting from a disease in a population in a given period of time in relation to the total population.

MMWR articles include reports of disease outbreaks, case histories of special interest, and summaries of the status of particular diseases during a recent period. These articles often

CLINICAL FOCUS Healthcare-Associated Infections

In this box, you will encounter a series of questions the epidemiologists ask themselves as they try to trace an outbreak to its source. Try to answer each question before going to the next one.

1. Dwayne Jackson, the epidemiologist at a city hospital, would like to find out why during one year, 5287 patients developed bacteremia during their hospital stays. All patients had a fever (>38°C), chills, and low blood pressure; 14% had severe necrotizing fasciitis. Dr. Jackson looks at the results of the blood cultures, which were grown on mannitol-salt agar; the bacteria are identified as coagulase-positive, gram-positive cocci (**Figure A**).

   What organisms are possible agents of infection?

2. The biochemical tests confirm that *S. aureus* is the culprit. Antibiotic-sensitivity testing shows that all the isolates are methicillin resistant. Six are vancomycin-intermediate resistant, and one is vancomycin resistant. Methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) can cause a life-threatening, necrotizing illness due to a leukocidin toxin (see Chapter 15).

   What else does Dr. Jackson need to know?

3. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) is used to determine that strain USA100 caused 80% of the MRSA cases in Dr. Jackson's hospital. USA100 is the cause of 92% of healthcare-associated strains. The majority (89%) of community-acquired MRSA infections are the USA300 strain. The incidence of MRSA in the community (not hospitalized) is 0.02–0.04%. Dr. Jackson compares the number of patients with MRSA with data from the previous year (**Table A**).

   Based on the information in the table, which procedure increases the likelihood of infection most?

4. Each year, an estimated 250,000 cases of bloodstream infections occur in hospitals in the United States from inserting needles into veins to deliver intravenous (IV) solutions, and the estimated mortality for these infections is 12–25%. Dr. Jackson sees that people receiving hemodialysis are especially vulnerable to infections because they require access to veins for prolonged periods and undergo frequent punctures of the access site (**Figure B**).

   How does antimicrobial therapy contribute?

5. The first VRSA (vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus*) infection in the United States occurred in a dialysis patient in 2002. The patient had been treated with vancomycin for a MRSA infection.

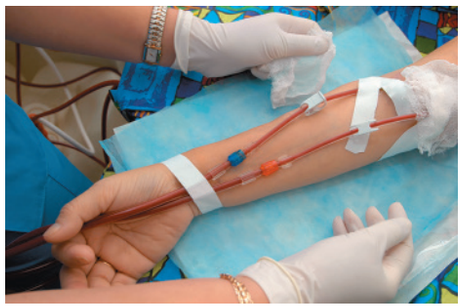


Figure B Hemodialysis procedure.

The VRSA isolate contained the *vanA* vancomycin-resistance gene from enterococci. VRSA are always methicillin resistant. Only 16 VRSA cases have been reported in the United States; however, around 100 VISA (vancomycin-intermediate *S. aureus*) cases are reported annually. Antimicrobial therapy for hemodialysis-associated infections increases the prevalence of antimicrobial resistance. Susceptible bacteria are killed, and bacteria with a mutation that confers resistance are able to grow without competition.

Source: Adapted from *MMWR* 68(9): 220, March 8, 2019, and CDC HAI Progress Report 2020.

Figure A The gram-positive cocci grown on mannitol-salt agar.

TABLE A

Source of infection	Patients with HAIs in 2020	Change from 2019
Hemodialysis-associated bloodstream infection	21,399	Increase 24%
Catheter-associated urinary tract infection	19,738	Increase 7%
Ventilator-associated infection	37,205	Increase 35%
Surgical site infections	18,416	Decrease 5%
MRSA bacteremia	8,775	Increase 15%

TABLE 14.6 Nationally Notifiable Infectious Diseases, 2022

Anthrax	Hemolytic uremic syndrome	Severe acute respiratory syndrome-associated with coronavirus disease
Arboviral diseases: neuroinvasive, non-neuroinvasive	Hepatitis A, B, and C	Shiga toxin-producing *E.* coli
Babesiosis	HIV infection	Shigellosis
Botulism	Influenza-associated pediatric mortality	Smallpox
Brucellosis	Invasive pneumococcal disease	Spotted fever rickettsiosis
Campylobacteriosis	Legionellosis	Streptococcal toxic shock syndrome
Candida auris	Leptospirosis	Syphilis
Carbapenum-resistant Enterobacteriaceae	Listeriosis	Tetanus
Chancroid	Lyme disease	Toxic shock syndrome (nonstreptococcal)
Chlamydia trachomatis infection	Malaria	Trichinellosis
Cholera	Measles	Tuberculosis
Coccidioidomycosis	Meningococcal disease	Tularemia
Congenital syphilis	Mumps	Typhoid fever (*S. enterica* Typhi)
Coronavirus disease 2019	Novel influenza A virus infections	Vancomycin-intermediate *S. aureus* (VISA) and Vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus* (VRSA)
Cryptosporidiosis	Pertussis (whooping cough)	Varicella
Cyclosporiasis	Plague	Vibriosis
Dengue virus infections	Poliovirus infection, paralytic and nonparalytic	Viral hemorrhagic fever
Diphtheria	Psittacosis	Yellow fever
Ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis	Q fever	Zika virus disease and Zika virus congenital infection
Giardiasis	Rabies, animal or human	
Gonorrhea	Rubella and congenital rubella syndrome	
Haemophilus influenza invasive disease,	Salmonellosis	
Hansen's disease (leprosy)		
Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome and nonpulmonary		

include recommendations for procedures for diagnosis, immunization, and treatment. Several graphs and other data in this textbook are from *MMWR*, and the Clinical Focus boxes are adapted from reports from this publication. See the Clinical Focus box, for example.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

14-20 After learning that 40 hospital employees developed nausea and vomiting, the hospital infection control officer determined that 39 ill people ate green beans in the hospital cafeteria, compared to 34 healthy people who ate in the hospital cafeteria the same day but did not eat green beans. What type of epidemiology is this?

14-21 What is the CDC's function?

14-22 In recent year, the morbidity of West Nile encephalitis was 5674, and the mortality was 286. The morbidity of listeriosis was 121; the mortality was 13. Which disease is more likely to be fatal?

* * *

In the next chapter, we consider the mechanisms of pathogenicity. We'll discuss in more detail the methods by which microorganisms enter the body and cause disease, the effects of disease on the body, and the means by which pathogens leave the body.

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

Transmission of *C. difficile* can be prevented by wearing gloves for contact with all body substances, using disposable rectal thermometers, and stopping antibiotic overuse. *C. difficile* is acquired by ingesting the bacteria or its endospores from direct contact between people or indirect contact via fomites; it's the most common HAI and is considered an epidemic. Jamil responds well to treatment; he is gaining most of his weight back and no longer spends most of his time in the bathroom.

Part 1 | Part 2 | Part 3 | Part 4 | **Part 5**

Study Outline

Introduction (p. 395)

1. Disease-causing microorganisms are called pathogens.
2. Pathogenic microorganisms have special properties that allow them to invade the human body or produce toxins.
3. When a microorganism overcomes the body's defenses, a state of disease results.

Pathology, Infection, and Disease (p. 396)

1. Pathology is the scientific study of disease.
2. Pathology is concerned with the etiology (cause), pathogenesis (development), and effects of disease.
3. Infection is the invasion and growth of pathogens in the body.
4. A host is an organism that shelters and supports the growth of pathogens.
5. Disease is an abnormal state in which part or all of the body is not properly adjusted or is incapable of performing normal functions.

Human Microbiome (pp. 396–400)

1. Microorganisms begin colonization in and on the surface of the body soon after birth.
2. Microorganisms that establish permanent colonies inside or on the body without producing disease make up the normal microbiota.
3. Transient microbiota are microbes that are present for various periods and then disappear.

Factors Influencing the Normal Microbiota (pp. 396–398)

4. Each microorganism colonizes a part of the body that provides appropriate physical and chemical factors.

Relationships between the Normal Microbiota and the Host (pp. 399–400)

5. The normal microbiota can prevent pathogens from causing an infection; this phenomenon is known as microbial antagonism.
6. Normal microbiota and the host exist in symbiosis (living together).
7. The three types of symbiosis are commensalism (one organism benefits, and the other is unaffected), mutualism (both organisms benefit), and parasitism (one organism benefits, and one is harmed).

Opportunistic Microorganisms (p. 400)

8. Opportunistic pathogens do not cause disease under normal conditions but cause disease under special conditions.

Cooperation among Microorganisms (p. 400)

9. In some situations, one microorganism makes it possible for another to cause a disease or produce more severe symptoms.

The Etiology of Infectious Diseases (pp. 400–402)

Koch's Postulates (pp. 400–401)

1. Koch's postulates are criteria for establishing that specific microbes cause specific diseases.
2. Koch's postulates have the following requirements: (1) the same pathogen must be present in every case of the disease; (2) the pathogen must be isolated in pure culture; (3) the pathogen isolated from pure culture must cause the same disease in a healthy, susceptible laboratory animal; and (4) the pathogen must be reisolated from the inoculated laboratory animal.

Exceptions to Koch's Postulates (pp. 401–402)

3. Koch's postulates are modified to establish etiologies of diseases caused by viruses and some bacteria, which cannot be grown on artificial media.
4. Some diseases, such as tetanus, have unequivocal signs and symptoms.
5. Some diseases, such as pneumonia and nephritis, may be caused by a variety of microbes.
6. Some pathogens, such as *S. pyogenes*, cause several different diseases.
7. Certain pathogens, such as HIV, cause disease in humans only.

Classifying Infectious Diseases (pp. 402–405)

1. A patient may exhibit symptoms (subjective changes in body functions) and signs (measurable changes), which a physician uses to make a diagnosis (identification of the disease).
2. A specific group of symptoms or signs that always accompanies a specific disease is called a syndrome.
3. Communicable diseases are transmitted directly or indirectly from one host to another.
4. A contagious disease is a very communicable disease that is capable of spreading easily and rapidly from one person to another.
5. Noncommunicable diseases are caused by microorganisms that normally grow outside the human body and are not transmitted from one host to another.

Occurrence of a Disease (pp. 402–403)

6. Disease occurrence is reported by incidence (number of people contracting the disease) and prevalence (number of people with the disease) in a defined population, in a specified time.
7. Diseases are classified by frequency of occurrence: sporadic, endemic, epidemic, and pandemic.

Severity or Duration of a Disease (pp. 403–404)

8. The scope of a disease includes the duration (i.e., acute, chronic, subacute, or latent) and severity (e.g., asymptomatic, mild, moderate, severe, critical).
9. Herd immunity is the presence of immunity to a disease in most of the population.

Extent of Host Involvement (pp. 404–405)

10. A local infection affects a small area of the body; a systemic infection is spread throughout the body via the circulatory system.
11. A primary infection is an acute infection that causes the initial illness.
12. A secondary infection can occur after the host is weakened from a primary infection.
13. An asymptomatic (subclinical, or inapparent) infection does not cause any signs or symptoms of disease in the host.

Patterns of Disease (pp. 405–406)

Predisposing Factors (pp. 405–406)

1. A predisposing factor is one that makes the body more susceptible to disease or alters the course of a disease.
2. Examples include nutrition, sex, climate, age, and preexisting conditions.

Development of Disease (p. 406)

3. The incubation period is the interval between the initial infection and the first appearance of signs and symptoms.
4. The prodromal period is characterized by the appearance of the first mild signs and symptoms.
5. During the period of illness, the disease is at its height, and all disease signs and symptoms are apparent.
6. During the period of decline, the signs and symptoms subside.
7. During the period of convalescence, the body returns to its prediseased state, and health is restored.

The Spread of Infection (pp. 406–411)

Reservoirs of Infection (pp. 406–407)

1. A continual source of infection is called a reservoir of infection.
2. People who have a disease or are carriers of pathogenic microorganisms are human reservoirs of infection.
3. Zoonoses are diseases that affect wild and domestic animals and can be transmitted to humans.
4. Some pathogenic microorganisms grow in nonliving reservoirs, such as soil and water.

Transmission of Disease (pp. 407–411)

5. Transmission by direct contact involves close physical contact between the source of the disease and a susceptible host. Congenital transmission occurs from mother to fetus.
6. Transmission by fomites (inanimate objects) constitutes indirect contact.
7. Transmission via saliva or mucus in coughing or sneezing is called droplet nuclei transmission.
8. Transmission by a medium such as air, water, or food is called vehicle transmission.
9. Airborne transmission refers to pathogens carried on water droplet nuclei or dust for a distance up to 2 meters.
10. Arthropod vectors carry pathogens from one host to another by both mechanical and biological transmission.

Healthcare-Associated Infections (HAIs) (pp. 411–414)

1. Healthcare-associated infections (HAIs) include those acquired in settings such as hospitals, nursing homes, surgical centers, and health care clinics.
2. About 3% of patients acquire HAIs in the treatment environment.

Microorganisms in the Hospital (pp. 411–412)

3. Certain normal microbiota are often responsible for HAIs when they are introduced into the body through such medical procedures as surgery and catheterization.
4. Opportunistic bacteria are the most frequent causes of HAIs.

Compromised Host (pp. 412–413)

5. Patients with burns, surgical wounds, and suppressed immune systems are the most susceptible to HAIs.

Chain of Transmission (pp. 412–413)

6. HAIs are transmitted by direct contact between staff members and patients and between patients.
7. Fomites such as catheters, syringes, and respiratory devices can transmit HAIs.

Control of Healthcare-Associated Infections (pp. 413–414)

8. Aseptic techniques can prevent HAIs.
9. Hospital infection control staff members are responsible for overseeing the proper cleaning, storage, and handling of equipment and supplies.

Emerging Infectious Diseases (pp. 414–416)

1. New diseases and diseases with increasing incidences are called emerging infectious diseases (EIDs).
2. EIDs can result from the use of antibiotics and pesticides, climatic changes, travel, the lack of vaccinations, and improved case reporting.
3. The CDC, NIH, and WHO are responsible for surveillance and responses to EIDs.

Epidemiology (pp. 417–422)

1. The science of epidemiology is the study of the transmission, incidence, and frequency of disease.
2. Modern epidemiology began in the mid-1800s with the works of Snow, Semmelweis, and Nightingale.
3. Reproductive number refers to the average number of people who will contract a disease from one infected individual.
4. In descriptive epidemiology, data about infected people are collected and analyzed.

5. In analytical epidemiology, a group of infected people is compared with an uninfected group.
6. In experimental epidemiology, controlled experiments designed to test hypotheses are performed.
7. Case reporting provides data on incidence and prevalence to local, state, and national health officials.
8. The CDC is the main source of epidemiological information in the United States.
9. The CDC publishes the *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report* to provide information on morbidity (incidence) and mortality (deaths).

Study Questions

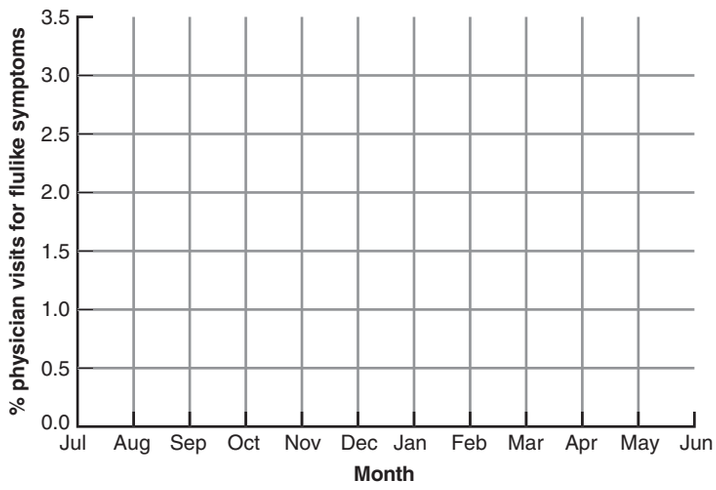
For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab in the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. Differentiate the terms in each of the following pairs:
   a. etiology and pathogenesis
   b. infection and disease
   c. communicable disease and noncommunicable disease
2. Define *symbiosis*. Differentiate commensalism, mutualism, and parasitism, and give an example of each.
3. Indicate whether each of the following conditions is typical of subacute, chronic, or acute infections.
   a. The patient experiences a rapid onset of malaise; symptoms last 5 days.
   b. The patient experiences cough and breathing difficulty for months.
   c. The patient has no apparent symptoms and is a known carrier.
4. Among hospital patients who have infections, one-third did not enter the hospital with the infection but rather acquired it in the hospital. How do they acquire these infections? What is the method of transmission of these infections? What is the reservoir of infection?
5. Distinguish symptoms from signs as signals of disease.
6. How can a local infection become a systemic infection?
7. Why are some organisms that constitute the normal microbiota described as commensals, whereas others are described as mutualistic?
8. Put the following in the correct order to describe the pattern of disease: period of convalescence, prodromal period, period of decline, incubation period, period of illness.
9. NAME IT This microbe is acquired by humans as infants and is essential for good health. Acquiring a closely related strain causes severe stomach cramps, bloody diarrhea, and vomiting. What is the microbe?
10. DRAW IT Using the following data, draw a graph showing the incidence of influenza during a typical year. Indicate the endemic and epidemic levels.

Month	Percentage of Physician Visits for Influenza-like Symptoms
Jan	2.33
Feb	3.21
Mar	2.68
Apr	1.47
May	0.97
Jun	0.30
Jul	0.30
Aug	0.20
Sep	0.20
Oct	1.18
Nov	1.54
Dec	2.39



Multiple Choice

1. The emergence of new infectious diseases is probably due to all of the following *except*
   a. the need of bacteria to cause disease.
   b. the ability of humans to travel by air.
   c. changing environments (e.g., flood, drought, pollution).
   d. a pathogen crossing the species barrier.
   e. the increasing human population.
2. All members of a group of ornithologists studying barn owls in the wild have had salmonellosis (*Salmonella* gastroenteritis). One birder is experiencing her third infection. What is the most likely source of their infections?
   a. The ornithologists are eating the same food.
   b. They are contaminating their hands while handling the owls and nests.
   c. One of the workers is a *Salmonella* carrier.
   d. Their drinking water is contaminated.
3. Which of the following statements is *false*?
   a. *E. coli* never causes disease.
   b. *E. coli* provides vitamin K for its host.
   c. *E. coli* often exists in a mutualistic relationship with humans.
   d. A disease-causing strain of *E. coli* causes bloody diarrhea.
4. Which of the following is *not* one of Koch's postulates?
   a. The same pathogen must be present in every case of the disease.
   b. The pathogen must be isolated and grown in pure culture from the diseased host.
   c. The pathogen from pure culture must cause the disease when inoculated into a healthy, susceptible laboratory animal.
   d. The disease must be transmitted from a diseased animal to a healthy, susceptible animal by direct contact.
   e. The pathogen must be isolated in pure culture from an experimentally infected lab animal.
5. Which one of the following diseases is *not* correctly matched to its reservoir?
   a. influenza—animal
   b. rabies—animal
   c. botulism—nonliving
   d. anthrax—nonliving
   e. toxoplasmosis—cats

Use the following information to answer questions 6–7.

On September 6, a 6-year-old boy experienced fever, chills, and vomiting. On September 7, the child was hospitalized with diarrhea and swollen lymph nodes under both arms. On September 3, he had been scratched and bitten by a cat. The cat was found dead on September 5, and *Y. pestis* was isolated from the cat. Chloramphenicol was administered to the child from September 7, when *Y. pestis* was isolated from his blood. On September 17, the child's temperature returned to normal. On September 22, the child was released from the hospital.

6. Identify the incubation period for this case of bubonic plague.
   a. September 3–5
   b. September 3–6
   c. September 6–7
   d. September 6–17
7. Identify the prodromal period for this disease.
   a. September 3–5
   b. September 3–6
   c. September 6–7
   d. September 6–17

Use the following information to answer questions 8–10.

A Maryland woman was hospitalized with dehydration. *V. cholerae* and *Plesiomonas shigelloides* were isolated from the patient, who had neither traveled outside the United States nor eaten raw shellfish during the preceding month. The patient had attended a party 2 days before hospitalization. Two other people at the party had acute diarrheal illness and elevated levels of serum antibodies against *Vibrio*. Everyone at the party ate crabs and rice pudding with coconut milk. Crabs left over from this party were served at a second party. One of the 20 people at the second party had onset of mild diarrhea; specimens from 14 of these people were negative for vibriocidal antibodies.

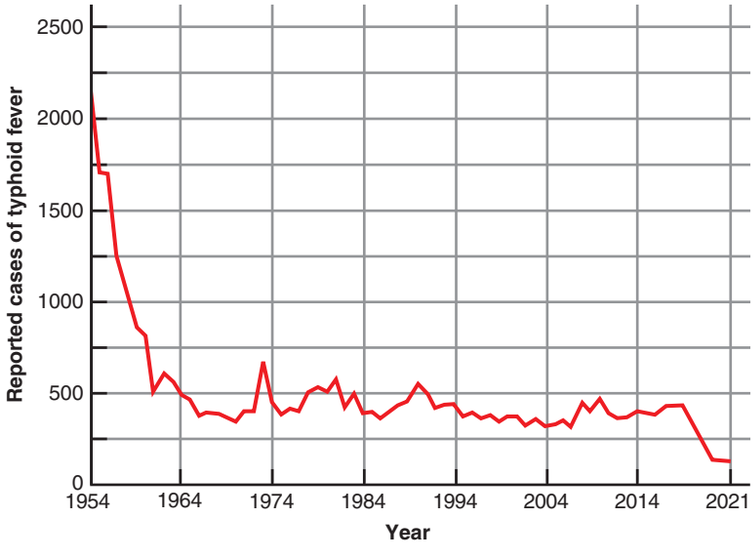
8. This is an example of
   a. vehicle transmission.
   b. airborne transmission.
   c. transmission by fomites.
   d. direct contact transmission.
   e. healthcare-associated transmission.
9. The etiologic agent of the disease is
   a. *Plesiomonas shigelloides*.
   b. crabs.
   c. *V. cholerae*.
   d. coconut milk.
   e. rice.
10. The source of the disease was
    a. *Plesiomonas shigelloides*.
    b. crabs.
    c. *V. cholerae*.
    d. coconut milk.
    e. rice.

Analysis

1. Ten years before Robert Koch published his work on anthrax, Anton De Bary showed that potato blight was caused by the alga *Phytophthora infestans*. Why do you suppose we use Koch's postulates instead of something called "De Bary's postulates"?
2. Florence Nightingale gathered the following data in 1855.

Population Sampled	Deaths from Contagious Diseases
Englishmen (in general population)	0.2%
English soldiers (in England)	18.7%
English soldiers (in Crimean War)	42.7%
English soldiers (in Crimean War) after Nightingale's sanitary reforms	2.2%

   Discuss how Nightingale used the three basic types of epidemiological investigation. The contagious diseases were primarily cholera and typhus; how are these diseases transmitted and prevented?
3. Name the method of transmission of each of the following diseases:
   a. malaria
   b. tuberculosis
   c. salmonellosis
   d. streptococcal pharyngitis
   e. mononucleosis
   f. measles
   g. hepatitis A
   h. tetanus
   i. hepatitis B
   j. chlamydial urethritis
4. The following graph shows the incidence of typhoid fever in the United States from 1954 through 2021. Mark the graph to show when this disease occurred sporadically and epidemically. What appears to be the endemic level? What would have to be shown to indicate a pandemic of this disease? How is typhoid fever transmitted?



Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. Three days before a nurse developed meningococcemia, she assisted with intubation of a patient with a *N. meningitidis* infection. Of the 24 medical personnel involved, only this nurse became ill. The nurse recalled that she was exposed to nasopharyngeal secretions and did not receive antibiotic prophylaxis. What two mistakes did the nurse make? How is meningitis transmitted?
2. Three patients in a large hospital acquired infections of *Burkholderia cepacia* during their stay. All three patients received cryoprecipitate, which is prepared from blood that has been frozen in a standard plastic blood transfer pack. The transfer pack is then placed in a water bath to thaw. What is the probable origin of the infections? What characteristics of *Burkholderia* would allow it to be involved in this type of infection?
3. Following is a case history of a 49-year-old man. Identify each period in the pattern of disease that he experienced. On February 7, he handled a parakeet with a respiratory illness. On March 9, he experienced intense pain in his legs, followed by severe chills and headaches. On March 16, he had chest pains, cough, and diarrhea, and his temperature was 40°C. Appropriate antibiotics were administered on March 17, and his fever subsided within 12 hours. He continued taking antibiotics for 14 days. (*Note*: The disease is psittacosis. Can you find the etiology?)
4. *Mycobacterium avium* complex bacteria are prevalent in immunocompromised and older patients. In an effort to determine the source of this infection, hospital water systems were sampled. The water contained chlorine.

Percentage of Samples with *M. avium*

Hot Water		Cold Water	
February	88%	February	22%
June	50%	June	11%

What is the usual method of transmission for *Mycobacterium*? What is a probable source of infection in hospitals? How can such healthcare-associated infections be prevented?

Microbial Mechanisms of Pathogenicity 15

Now that you have a basic understanding of how microorganisms cause disease, we will take a look at some of the specific properties of microorganisms that contribute to pathogenicity, the ability to cause disease by overcoming the defenses of a host, and virulence, the degree or extent of pathogenicity. (As discussed throughout the chapter, the term *host* usually refers to humans.)

The presence of pathogenic microbial cells or cell parts can induce signs and symptoms in a host. An example due to *Burkholderia* (in the photograph) is described in the Clinical Case. But microbes don't *try* to cause disease; the microbial cells are simply getting food and defending themselves.

To humans, it doesn't make sense for a parasite to kill its host. However, nature does not have a plan for evolution; the genetic variations that give rise to evolution are due to random mutations, not to logic. According to natural selection, organisms best adapted to their environments will reproduce. Coevolution between a parasite and its host seems to occur: the behavior of one influences that of the other. For example, the cholera pathogen, *Vibrio cholerae*, quickly induces diarrhea, threatening the host's life from a loss of fluids and salts but providing a way to transmit the pathogen to another person by contaminating the surrounding environment.

Keep in mind that many of the properties contributing to microbial pathogenicity and virulence are unclear or unknown. We do know, however, that if the microbe overpowers the host defenses, disease results.

◀ ***Burkholderia*** **bacteria like the ones shown here form biofilms that cause infections in hospitalized patients.**

In the Clinic

You are a transplant nurse taking care of a liver transplant patient. He tells you he is concerned that his physician stopped his iron supplements. The patient knows the supplements were used to treat his anemia. **What will you tell the patient?**

Hint: Read about siderophores later in this chapter.

How Microorganisms Enter a Host

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

15-1 Identify the principal portals of entry for pathogenic microorganisms.

15-2 Define ID_{50} and LD_{50}.

15-3 Using examples, explain how microbes adhere to host cells.

As noted earlier, **pathogenicity** is the ability to cause disease by overcoming host defenses, whereas **virulence** is the degree of pathogenicity. To cause disease, most pathogens must gain access to the host, adhere to host tissues, penetrate or evade host defenses, and damage the host tissues. However, some microbes do not cause disease by directly damaging host tissue. Instead, disease is due to the accumulation of microbial waste products. Some microbes, such as those that cause dental caries and acne, can cause disease without penetrating the body. Pathogens can gain entrance to the human body and other hosts through several avenues, which are called **portals of entry**.

Portals of Entry

The portals of entry for pathogens are mucous membranes, skin, and direct deposition beneath the skin or membranes (the parenteral route).

Mucous Membranes

Most bacteria and viruses gain access to the body by penetrating mucous membranes lining the respiratory tract, digestive canal, genital system, urinary system, and conjunctiva, a delicate membrane that covers the eyeballs and lines the eyelids.

The respiratory tract is the easiest and most frequently traveled portal of entry for infectious microorganisms. Microbes are inhaled into the nose or mouth in drops of moisture and dust particles. Diseases that are commonly contracted via the respiratory tract include COVID-19, the common cold, pneumonia, tuberculosis, influenza, and measles.

Microorganisms can gain access to the digestive canal in food and water and via contaminated fingers. Most microbes that enter the body in these ways are destroyed by hydrochloric acid and enzymes in the stomach or by bile and enzymes in the small intestine. Those that survive can cause disease. Microbes in the digestive canal can cause poliomyelitis, hepatitis A, typhoid fever, amebic dysentery, giardiasis, shigellosis (bacillary dysentery), and cholera. These pathogens are then eliminated with feces and can be transmitted to other hosts via contaminated water, food, or fingers.

The genital (reproductive) system is a portal of entry for pathogens that are contracted sexually. Some microbes that cause sexually transmitted infections (STIs) may penetrate an unbroken mucous membrane. Others require a cut or abrasion of some type. See the following discussion of the parenteral route. Examples of STIs are HIV infection, genital warts, chlamydia, *Simplexvirus Human alphaherpesvirus 2*, syphilis, and gonorrhea.

Skin

The skin is the largest organ of the body, in terms of surface area and weight, and is an important defense against disease. Unbroken skin is impenetrable by most microorganisms. Some microbes gain access to the body through openings in the skin, such as hair follicles and sweat gland ducts. Larvae of the hookworm actually bore through intact skin, and some fungi grow on the keratin in skin or infect the skin itself.

The conjunctiva is a delicate mucous membrane that lines the eyelids and covers the white of the eyeballs. Although it is a relatively effective barrier against infection, certain diseases such as conjunctivitis, trachoma, and ophthalmia neonatorum are acquired through the conjunctiva.

The Parenteral Route

Other microorganisms gain access to the body when they are deposited directly into the tissues beneath the skin or into mucous membranes when these barriers are penetrated or injured. This route is called the **parenteral route**. Punctures, injections, bites, cuts, wounds, surgery, and splitting of the skin or mucous membrane due to swelling or drying can all establish parenteral routes. HIV, hepatitis viruses, and bacteria that cause tetanus and gangrene can be transmitted parenterally.

Even after microorganisms have entered the body, they do not necessarily cause disease. The occurrence of disease depends on several factors, only one of which is the portal of entry.

CLINICAL CASE The Eyes Have It

Kerry Santos, a board-certified ophthalmologist for 20 years, has had a long day. She performed outpatient cataract surgery (Figure A) on ten patients today. As she checks over her patients in the recovery area, she notices that eight of the ten patients have an unusual degree of inflammation and that their pupils are fixed and do not respond to light.

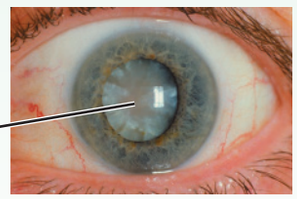


Figure A A cataract is a clouding of the eye lens that distorts vision.

What could have caused this complication? Read on to find out.

The Preferred Portal of Entry

Many pathogens have a preferred portal of entry that is a prerequisite to their being able to cause disease. If they gain access to the body by another portal, disease might not occur. For example, the bacteria of typhoid fever, *Salmonella* Typhi, produce all the signs and symptoms of the disease when swallowed (preferred route), but if the same bacteria are rubbed on the skin, no reaction (or only a slight inflammation) occurs. *Streptococcus pneumoniae* that is inhaled (preferred route) can cause pneumonia; generally it does not produce signs or symptoms if swallowed. Some pathogens, such as *Yersinia pestis*, the microorganism that causes plague, and *Bacillus anthracis*, the causative agent of anthrax, can initiate disease from more than one portal of entry. The preferred portals of entry for some common pathogens are listed in Table 15.1.

Numbers of Invading Microbes

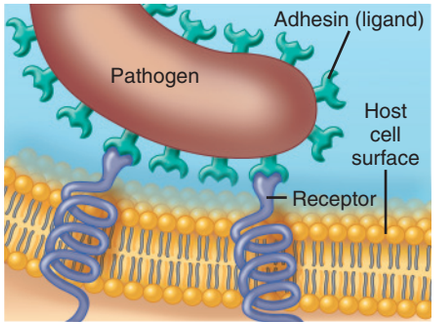
If only a few microbes enter the body, they will probably be overcome by the host's defenses. However, if large numbers of microbes gain entry, the stage is probably set for disease. The likelihood of disease increases as the number of pathogens increases.

The virulence of a microbe is often expressed as the $\mathbf{ID}_{50}$ (infectious dose for 50% of a sample population). The 50 is

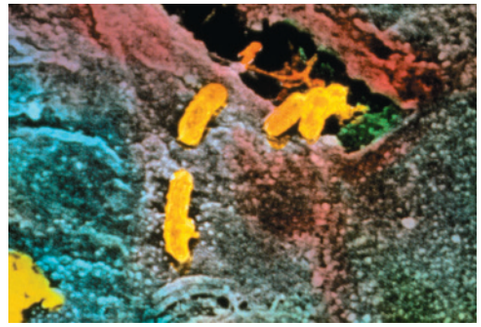
TABLE 15.1 Portals of Entry for the Pathogens of Some Common Diseases

Portal of Entry	Pathogen*	Disease	Incubation Period
MUCOUS MEMBRANES			
Respiratory tract (nose, pharynx, trachea, bronchi, and lungs)	Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2)	COVID-19	4–5 days
	Streptococcus pneumoniae	Pneumococcal pneumonia	1–3 days
	Mycobacterium tuberculosis†	Tuberculosis	2–12 weeks
	Bordetella pertussis	Whooping cough (pertussis)	12–20 days
	Influenza virus *(Alphainfluenavirus)*	Influenza	18–36 hours
	Measles virus *(Morbillivirus)*	Measles (rubeola)	11–14 days
	Rubella virus *(Rubivirus)*	German measles (rubella)	2–3 weeks
	Epstein-Barr virus *(Lymphocryptovirus)*	Infectious mononucleosis	2–6 weeks
	Varicella-zoster virus *(Varicellovirus)*	Chickenpox (varicella) (primary infection)	14–16 days
	Histoplasma capsulatum (fungus)	Histoplasmosis	5–18 days
Digestive canal (mouth, pharynx, esophagus, stomach, small intestine, and large intestine)	*Shigella* spp.	Shigellosis (bacillary dysentery)	1–2 days
	Brucella spp.	Brucellosis (undulant fever)	6–14 days
	Vibrio cholerae	Cholera	1–3 days
	Salmonella enterica	Salmonellosis	7–22 hours
	Salmonella Typhi	Typhoid fever	14 days
	Hepatitis A virus *(Hepatovirus)*	Hepatitis A	15–50 days
	Mumps virus *(Rubulavirus)*	Mumps	2–3 weeks
	Trichinella spiralis (helminth)	Trichinellosis	2–28 days
Urinary and genital systems (ovaries, uterus, vagina, testes, penis, kidneys, ureters, urethra)	*Neisseria gonorrhoeae*	Gonorrhea	3–8 days
	Treponema pallidum	Syphilis	9–90 days
	Chlamydia trachomatis	Nongonococcal urethritis	1–3 weeks
	Simplexvirus Human alphaherpesvirus 2	Herpes virus infections	4–10 days
	Lentivirus Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)‡	AIDS	10 years
	Candida albicans (fungus)	Candidiasis	2–5 days
SKIN OR PARENTERAL ROUTE	*Clostridium perfringens*	Gas gangrene	1–5 days
	Clostridium tetani	Tetanus	3–21 days
	Rickettsia rickettsii	Rocky Mountain spotted fever	3–12 days
	Orthohepadnavirus Hepatitis B virus‡	Hepatitis B	6 weeks–6 months
	Lyssavirus rabies lyssavirus	Rabies	10 days–1 year
	Plasmodium spp. (protozoan)	Malaria	2 weeks

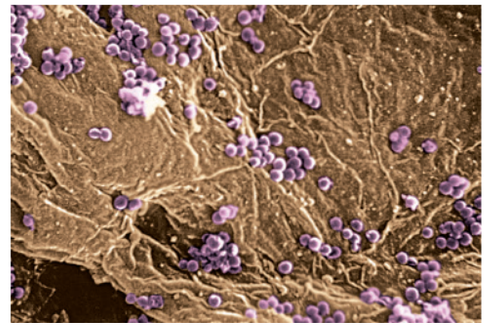
*All pathogens are bacteria, unless indicated otherwise. For viruses, the viral species and/or genus name is given.
†These pathogens can also cause disease after entering the body via the digestive canal.
‡These pathogens can also cause disease after entering the body via the parenteral route. Hepatitis B virus and HIV can also cause disease after entering the body via the genital system.



(a) Surface molecules on a pathogen, called adhesins or ligands, bind specifically to complementary surface receptors on cells of certain host tissues.



(b) *E. coli* bacteria (yellow) on human urinary bladder cells



(c) Bacteria (purple) adhering to human skin

Figure 15.1 Adherence.

Q Of what chemicals are adhesins composed?

not an absolute value; rather, it is used to compare relative virulence under experimental conditions. *B. anthracis* can cause infection via three different portals of entry. The ID_{50} through the skin (cutaneous anthrax) is 10 to 50 endospores; the ID_{50} for inhalation anthrax is inhalation of 10,000 to 20,000 endospores; and the ID_{50} for gastrointestinal anthrax is ingestion of 250,000 to 1,000,000 endospores. These data show that cutaneous anthrax is significantly easier to acquire than either the inhalation or the gastrointestinal forms. A study of *V. cholerae* showed that the ID_{50} is 10^8 cells; but if stomach acid is neutralized with bicarbonate, the number of cells required to cause an infection decreases significantly. The ID_{50} for COVID-19 is still under investigation. Based on very limited studies, it is similar to the common cold. Between 280–500 virus particles in susceptible individuals are sufficient to cause an infection.

The potency of a toxin is often expressed as the **LD_{50}** (lethal dose for 50% of a sample population). For example, the LD_{50} for botulinum toxin in mice is 0.03 ng/kg;* for Shiga toxin, 250 ng/kg; and staphylococcal enterotoxin, 1350 ng/kg. In other words, compared to the other two toxins, a much smaller dose of botulinum toxin is needed to cause symptoms.

Adherence

Almost all pathogens have some means of attaching themselves to host tissues at their portal of entry. For most pathogens, this attachment, called **adherence** (or **adhesion**), is a necessary step in pathogenicity. (Of course, nonpathogens also have structures for attachment.) The attachment between pathogen and host is accomplished by means of surface molecules on the pathogen called **adhesins** or **ligands** that bind specifically to complementary surface **receptors** on the cells of certain host tissues (Figure 15.1). Adhesins may be located on a cell's glycocalyx or on other microbial surface structures, such as pili, fimbriae, and flagella (see Chapter 4). Virus ligands are on the capsid protein or envelope.

The majority of adhesins on the bacteria studied so far are glycoproteins or lipoproteins. The receptors on host cells are typically sugars, such as mannose. Adhesins on different strains of the same species of pathogen can vary in structure. Different cells of the same host can also have different receptors that vary in structure. If adhesins, receptors, or both can be altered to interfere with adherence, infection can often be prevented (or at least controlled).

There is great diversity of adhesins. *Streptococcus mutans*, a bacterium that plays a key role in tooth decay, attaches to the surface of teeth by its glycocalyx. An enzyme produced by *S. mutans*, called glucosyltransferase, converts glucose into a sticky polysaccharide called dextran, which forms the glycocalyx. *Actinomyces* bacterial cells have fimbriae that adhere to the glycocalyx of *S. mutans*. The combination of *S. mutans*, *Actinomyces*, and dextran makes up dental plaque that contributes to dental caries (tooth decay; see Chapter 25).

Influenza viruses uses a spike glycoprotein called HA to attach to sialic acid in the host cell's plasma membrane. Recall from Chapter 13 that the S (spike) proteins of SARS-CoV-2 are critical to infection because they attach the virus to host-cell receptors to initiate the process of infection. The virus's attachment site, called ACE2, is the host cell's receptor for angiotensin converting enzyme, an enzyme involved in blood pressure and fluid balance. The virus causes the host to increase production of ACE2 sites on cells, which allows more virus attachment.

Enteropathogenic strains of *Escherichia coli* (those responsible for gastrointestinal diseases) have adhesins on fimbriae that adhere only to specific kinds of cells in certain regions of the small intestine. After adhering, some strains of *Shigella* and *E. coli* induce receptor-mediated endocytosis as a vehicle to enter host cells and then multiply within them (see Figure 25.7).

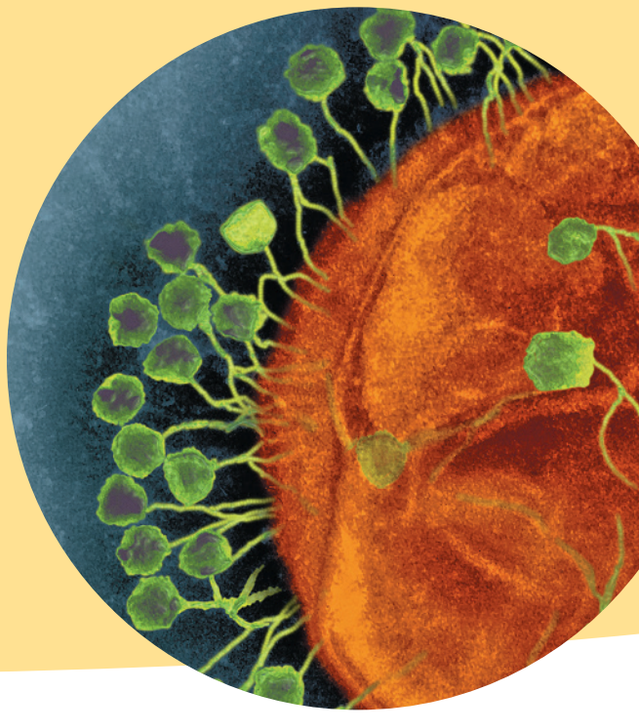
*Nanogram (ng) equals one-billionth of a gram; kilogram (kg) equals 1000 grams.

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME Skin Microbiota Interactions and the Making of MRSA

Thanks to horizontal gene transfer, any bacteria that make contact with one another may end up sharing genes that confer virulence factors. This includes the many species that live as members of the skin microbiome.

Staphylococcus epidermidis is the staphylococcal species most frequently isolated from human skin. By contrast, *S. aureus* is rarely found on other areas of the skin beyond its preferred site, the nares (nostrils). Researchers believe that one of the reasons *S. epidermidis* is so successful at colonizing skin is that it contains arginine catabolic mobile element (ACME), a genetic segment that confers resistance to the antibacterial peptides found on human skin.

However, ACME is a "mobile genetic element"—so named because bacteria easily transfer it to new cells via plasmids, bacteriophages, or transposons. Genetic analysis indicates that *S. epidermidis* transferred ACME to some *S. aureus*, making it easier for evolving versions of *S. aureus* to colonize more of the skin, and to be transferred by direct contact. Likewise, laboratory studies on the bacterial *mecA* gene led researchers to suspect that resistance to methicillin, oxacillin, and other beta-lactam antibiotics also moved from *S. epidermis* to *S. aureus*. These two gene transfers between normally harmless members of the microbiome are some of the key events that helped create methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA)—a major health concern in both health care settings and the general community today.



Traits can be transferred to *S. aureus* by bacteriophages.

T. pallidum, the causative agent of syphilis, uses its tapered end as a hook to attach to host cells. *Listeria monocytogenes*, which causes meningitis, spontaneous abortions, and stillbirths, produces an adhesin for a specific receptor on host cells. *N. gonorrhoeae*, the causative agent of gonorrhea, also has fimbriae containing adhesins, which in this case permit attachment to cells with appropriate receptors in the genital system, eyes, and pharynx. *Staphylococcus aureus*, which can cause skin infections, produces adhesins that bind to laminin and fibronectin on skin cells (see **Exploring the Microbiome**).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **15-1** List three portals of entry, and describe how microorganisms gain access through each.
- **15-2** The LD_{50} of botulinum toxin is 0.03 ng/kg; the LD_{50} of *Salmonella* toxin is 12 mg/kg. Which is the more potent toxin?
- **15-3** How would a drug that binds mannose on human cells affect a pathogenic bacterium?

How Bacterial Pathogens Penetrate Host Defenses

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **15-4** Explain how capsules and cell wall components contribute to pathogenicity.
- **15-5** Compare the effects of coagulases, kinases, hyaluronidase, and collagenase.
- **15-6** Define and give an example of *antigenic variation*.
- **15-7** Describe how bacteria use the host cell's cytoskeleton to enter the cell.
- **15-8** Identify six mechanisms of avoiding destruction by phagocytosis.

Although some pathogens can cause damage on the surface of tissues, most must penetrate tissues to cause disease. Here we will consider several factors that contribute to the ability of bacteria to invade a host.

Capsules

Recall from Chapter 4 that some bacteria make glycocalyx material that forms capsules around their cell walls; this property

increases the virulence of pathogenic species. The capsule resists the host's defenses by impairing phagocytosis, the process by which certain cells of the body engulf and destroy microbes (see Chapter 16). The chemical nature of the capsule appears to prevent the phagocytic cell from adhering to the bacterium. However, the human body can produce antibodies against the capsule, and when these antibodies are present on the capsule surface, the encapsulated bacteria are easily destroyed by phagocytosis.

One bacterium that owes its virulence to the presence of a polysaccharide capsule is *S. pneumoniae*, the causative agent of pneumococcal pneumonia (see Figure 24.11). Strains of this bacterium with capsules are virulent, but strains without capsules are avirulent because they are susceptible to phagocytosis. Other bacteria that produce capsules related to virulence are *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, a causative agent of bacterial pneumonia; *Haemophilus influenzae*, a cause of pneumonia and meningitis in children; *B. anthracis*, the cause of anthrax; and *Y. pestis*, the causative agent of plague. Keep in mind that capsules are not the only cause of virulence. Many nonpathogenic bacteria produce capsules, and the virulence of some pathogens is not related to the presence of a capsule.

Cell Wall Components

The cell walls of certain bacteria contain chemical substances that contribute to virulence. These include M protein, Opa, and mycolic acid. *Streptococcus pyogenes* produces a heat-resistant and acid-resistant protein called **M protein** (see Figure 21.6). This protein is found on both the cell surface and fimbriae. It mediates attachment of the bacterium to epithelial cells of the host and helps the bacterium resist phagocytosis by white blood cells. The M protein thereby increases the virulence of the microorganism. Immunity to *S. pyogenes* depends on the body's production of an antibody specific to M protein. In contrast, *N. gonorrhoeae*, which grows inside human epithelial cells and leukocytes, uses fimbriae and an outer membrane protein called **Opa** to attach to host cells. Following attachment by both Opa and fimbriae, the host cells take in the bacteria. Bacteria that produce Opa form *opa*que colonies on culture media. The waxy lipid mycolic acid that makes up the cell wall of *M. tuberculosis* also increases virulence by resisting digestion by phagocytes, and the bacteria can even multiply inside phagocytes.

Enzymes

The virulence of some bacteria is aided by the production of extracellular enzymes (*exoenzymes*). We discuss the most common of these, and their functions, here.

Coagulases are bacterial enzymes that coagulate (clot) the fibrinogen in blood. Fibrinogen, a blood plasma protein produced by the liver, is converted by coagulases into fibrin, the threads that form a blood clot. The fibrin clot may protect the bacterium from phagocytosis and isolate it from other defenses of the host. Coagulases are produced by some members of the genus *Staphylococcus*; they may be involved in the walling-off process in boils produced by staphylococci. However, some staphylococci that do not produce coagulases are still virulent. In these cases, capsules may be more important to their virulence.

Bacterial **kinases** are bacterial enzymes that break down fibrin and thus digest clots formed by the body to isolate the infection. One of the better-known kinases is *fibrinolysin* (*streptokinase*), which is produced by such streptococci as *S. pyogenes*. Streptokinase is used therapeutically to break down blood clots causing heart attacks.

Hyaluronidase is another enzyme secreted by certain bacteria, such as streptococci. It hydrolyzes hyaluronic acid, a type of polysaccharide that holds together certain cells of the body, particularly cells in connective tissue. This digesting action is thought to be involved in the tissue blackening of infected wounds and to help the microorganism spread from its initial site of infection. Hyaluronidase is also produced by some clostridia that cause gas gangrene. For therapeutic use, hyaluronidase may be mixed with a drug to promote the spread of the drug through a body tissue.

Another enzyme, **collagenase**, produced by several species of *Clostridium*, facilitates the spread of gas gangrene. Collagenase breaks down the protein collagen, which forms the connective tissue of muscles and other body organs and tissues.

As a defense against adherence of pathogens to mucosal surfaces, the body produces a class of antibodies called IgA antibodies. Some pathogens produce enzymes, called **IgA proteases**, that can destroy these antibodies. *Neisseria. gonorrhoeae* has this ability, as does *N. meningitidis*, the causative agent of meningococcal meningitis, and other microbes that infect the central nervous system.

Antigenic Variation

Adaptive immunity refers to a defensive response of the body to specific foreign antigens (see Chapter 17). In the presence of these antigens, the body produces proteins called antibodies, which bind to the antigens and inactivate them or target them for destruction by phagocytes. However, some pathogens can alter their surface antigens by a process called **antigenic variation**. Thus, by the time the body produces antibodies against a pathogen's antigens, the pathogen has altered its antigens and is unaffected by the antibodies. Some microbes can activate alternative genes to produce these antigenic changes. For example, *N. gonorrhoeae* has several copies of the Opa-encoding gene, resulting in cells with different antigens and in cells that express different antigens over time.

A wide range of microbes is capable of antigenic variation. Examples include *Alphainfluenzavirus*, the causative agent of

influenza (flu); *N. gonorrhoeae*, the causative agent of gonorrhea; and *Trypanosoma brucei gambiense* (tri-PA-nō-sō-mah BROOS-e-ē GAM-bē-ens), the causative agent of African trypanosomiasis (sleeping sickness). See Figure 22.16.

Penetration into the Host

As previously noted, microbes attach to host cells by adhesins. The interaction triggers signals in the host cell that activate factors that can result in the entrance of some bacteria. The actual mechanism is provided by the host cell cytoskeleton. The microfilaments of the eukaryotic cytoskeleton are composed of a protein called actin, which is used by some microbes to penetrate host cells and by others to move through and between host cells.

For example, when *Salmonella* strains and *E. coli* make contact with the host cell plasma membrane, dramatic changes occur in the membrane at the point of contact. The microbes produce surface proteins called **invasins** that rearrange nearby actin filaments of the cytoskeleton. When *Salmonella* Typhimurium makes contact with a host cell, for example, invasins of the microbe cause the appearance of the host cell plasma membrane to resemble the splash of a drop of a liquid hitting a solid surface. This effect, called *membrane ruffling*, is the result of disruption in the cytoskeleton of the host cell (Figure 15.2). The microbe sinks into the ruffle and is engulfed by the host cell. This process is called **macropinocytosis**.

Once inside the host cell, certain bacteria such as *Shigella* species and *Listeria* species can actually use actin to propel themselves through the host cell cytoplasm and from one host cell to another. The condensation of actin on one end of the bacteria propels them through the cytoplasm. The bacteria also make contact with membrane junctions that form part of a transport network between host cells. The bacteria use a glycoprotein called *cadherin*, which bridges the junctions, to move from cell to cell.

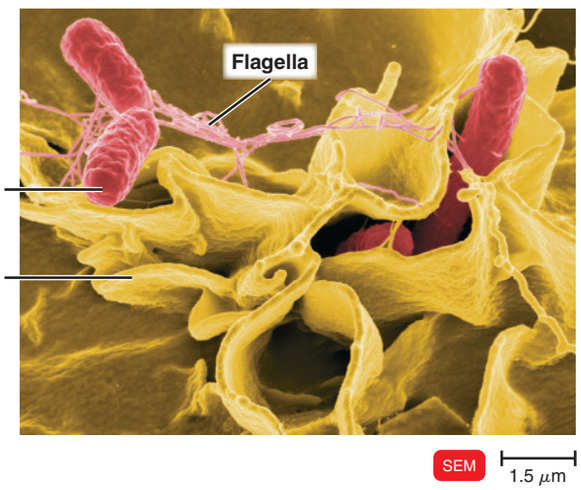


Figure 15.2 ***Salmonella*** **entering intestinal epithelial cells as a result of ruffling and macropinocytosis.**

Q What are invasins?

Still other microbes have the ability to survive inside phagocytes. *Coxiella burnetii*, the causative agent of Q fever, actually requires the low pH inside a phagolysosome to replicate. *L. monocytogenes*, *Shigella* (the causative agent of shigellosis), and *Rickettsia* species (the causative agents of spotted fever rickettsioses and typhus) have the ability to escape from a phagosome before it fuses with a lysosome. *M. tuberculosis* (the causative agent of tuberculosis), HIV (the causative agent of AIDS), *Chlamydia* (the causative agent of trachoma, nongonococcal urethritis, and lymphogranuloma venereum), *Leishmania* (the causative agent of leishmaniasis), and *Plasmodium* (malarial parasites) can prevent both the fusion of a phagosome with a lysosome and the proper acidification of digestive enzymes. The microbes then multiply within the phagocyte, almost completely filling it. In most cases, the phagocyte dies, and the microbes are released by autolysis to infect other cells. Still other microbes, such as the causative agents of tularemia and brucellosis, can remain dormant within phagocytes for months or years at a time.

As described in Chapter 13, after attachment, viruses enter cells by pinocytosis or fusion of the viral envelope with the host cell membrane. Several viruses, including SARS-CoV-2, induce macropinocytosis by their host cells.

Biofilms

Biofilms, discussed in Chapter 6, are important because they resist disinfectants and antibiotics. This characteristic is significant, especially when biofilms colonize structures such as teeth, medical catheters, stents, heart valves, hip replacement components, and contact lenses. Examples of biofilms include the dental plaque on teeth, the algae on the walls of swimming pools, and the scum that accumulates on shower doors. A biofilm forms when microbes adhere to a particular surface that is typically moist and contains organic matter. The first microbes to attach are usually bacteria. Once they adhere to the surface, they multiply and secrete a glycocalyx that further attaches the bacteria to each other and to the surface (see Figure 6.6). In some cases, biofilms can be several layers thick and may contain several different species of microbes. Dental plaque is actually a biofilm that mineralizes over time, creating what is commonly known as tartar. It is estimated that biofilms are involved in 65% of all human bacterial infections.

Biofilms also play a role in evading phagocytes. Bacteria that are part of biofilms are much more resistant to phagocytosis. Phagocytes do not move through the viscous carbohydrates of the extracellular polymeric substance (EPS) of biofilms, and those that enter the biofilm show reduced phagocytic ability.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **15-4** What function do capsules and M proteins have in common?
- **15-5** Would you expect a bacterium to make coagulase and kinase simultaneously?
- **15-6** Many vaccines provide years of protection against a disease. Why doesn't the influenza vaccine offer more than a few months of protection?
- **15-7** How does *E. coli* cause membrane ruffling?
- **15-8** How does each of these bacteria avoid destruction by phagocytes? *S. pneumoniae*, *S. aureus*, *L. monocytogenes*, *M. tuberculosis*, *Rickettsia*

How Bacterial Pathogens Damage Host Cells

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **15-9** Describe the function of siderophores.
- **15-10** Provide an example of direct damage, and compare this to toxin production.
- **15-11** Contrast the nature and effects of exotoxins and endotoxins.
- **15-12** Outline the mechanisms of action of A-B toxins (including genotoxins), membrane-disrupting toxins, and superantigens.
- **15-13** Identify the importance of the LAL assay.
- **15-14** Using examples, describe the roles of plasmids and lysogeny in pathogenicity.

When a microorganism invades a body tissue, it initially encounters phagocytes of the host. If the phagocytes are successful in destroying the invader, no further damage is done. But if the pathogen overcomes the host's defense, it can damage host cells in four basic ways:

1. By using the host's nutrients.
2. By causing direct damage in the immediate vicinity of the invasion.
3. By producing toxins, transported by blood and lymph plasma, that damage sites far removed from the original site of invasion.
4. By inducing hypersensitivity reactions.

This fourth mechanism is considered in detail in Chapter 19. For now, we will discuss only the first three mechanisms.

Using the Host's Nutrients: Siderophores

Iron is required for the growth of most pathogenic bacteria. However, the concentration of free iron in the human body is fairly low because most of the iron is tightly bound to iron-transport proteins, such as lactoferrin, transferrin, and ferritin, as well as hemoglobin. These are discussed in more detail in Chapter 16. To obtain iron, some pathogens secrete proteins called **siderophores** (Figure 15.3). Siderophores take the iron away from the host's iron-transport proteins by binding the iron even more tightly. Once the iron-siderophore complex is formed, it is taken up by siderophore receptors on the bacterial surface. Then the iron is brought into the bacterium. In some cases, the iron is released from the complex to enter the bacterium; in other cases, the iron enters as part of the complex.

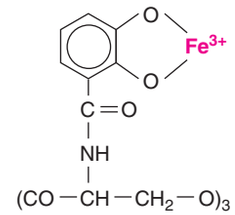


Figure 15.3 Structure of enterobactin, one type of bacterial siderophore. The iron (Fe^{3+}) is indicated in red.

Q Of what value are siderophores?

As an alternative to iron acquisition by siderophores, some pathogens have receptors that bind directly to iron-transport proteins and hemoglobin. Then these are taken into the bacterium directly along with the iron. Also, it is possible that some bacteria produce toxins (described shortly) when iron levels are low. The toxins kill host cells, releasing their iron and thereby making it available to the bacteria.

Direct Damage

Once pathogens attach to host cells, they can cause direct damage as they use the host cell for nutrients and produce waste products. As pathogens metabolize and multiply in cells, the cells usually rupture. Many viruses and some intracellular bacteria and protozoa that grow in host cells are released when the host cell ruptures. They can then spread to other tissues, causing even greater numbers of cells to rupture.

Other bacteria, such as *E. coli*, *Shigella*, *Salmonella*, and *N. gonorrhoeae*, can induce host epithelial cells to engulf them by macropinocytosis. These pathogens can disrupt host cells as they pass through and can then be extruded from the host cells by exocytosis, enabling them to enter other host cells. Still other bacteria can penetrate host cells by excreting enzymes or by their own motility; such penetration can itself damage the host cell. Most damage by bacteria, however, is done by toxins.

Production of Toxins

Toxins are poisonous substances that are produced by certain microorganisms. They are often the primary factor contributing

to the pathogenic properties of those microbes. The capacity of microorganisms to produce toxins is called **toxigenicity**. Toxins transported by the blood or lymph can cause serious, and sometimes fatal, effects. Some toxins produce fever, cardiovascular disturbances, diarrhea, and shock. Toxins can also inhibit protein synthesis, destroy blood cells and blood vessels, and disrupt the nervous system by causing spasms. Of the 220 or so known bacterial toxins, nearly 40% cause disease by damaging eukaryotic cell membranes. The term **toxemia** refers to the presence of toxins in the blood. Toxins are of two general types, based on their position relative to the microbial cell: exotoxins and endotoxins. **Intoxications** are caused by the presence of a toxin; not by microbial growth.

Exotoxins

Exotoxins are produced inside some bacteria (mostly but not exclusively gram-positive) as part of their growth and metabolism and are secreted by the bacterium into the surrounding medium or released following lysis (Figure 15.4). *Exo-* refers to "outside," which in this context refers to the fact that exotoxins are secreted to the outside of the bacterial cells that produce them. Exotoxins are proteins, and many are enzymes that catalyze only certain biochemical reactions. Because of the enzymatic nature of most exotoxins, even small amounts are quite harmful because they can act over and over again. The genes for most (perhaps all) exotoxins are carried on bacterial plasmids or phages. Because exotoxins are soluble in body fluids, they can easily diffuse into the blood and are rapidly transported throughout the body.

Exotoxins work by destroying particular parts of the host's cells or by inhibiting certain metabolic functions. They are highly specific in these effects and are among the most lethal substances known. Only 1 milligram of the botulinum exotoxin is enough to kill 1 million guinea pigs. Fortunately, only a few bacterial species produce such potent exotoxins.

CLINICAL CASE

Dr. Santos suspects toxic anterior segment syndrome (TASS), which is a reaction to a toxin or other chemical. TASS is caused by (1) chemicals on surgical instruments, resulting from improper or insufficient cleaning; (2) products introduced into the eye during surgery, such as washing solutions or medications; or (3) other substances that enter the eye during or after surgery, such as topical ointments or talc from surgical gloves.

Why does Dr. Santos suspect an intoxication and not an infection?

Typically, diseases caused by bacteria that produce exotoxins are due to the exotoxins, not to infection from the bacteria themselves. It is the exotoxins that produce the specific signs and symptoms of the disease. Thus, exotoxins are disease-specific. For example, botulism is usually due to ingestion of the exotoxin, not to a bacterial infection. Likewise, staphylococcal food poisoning is an *intoxication*, not an infection.

The body produces antibodies called **antitoxins** that provide immunity to exotoxins. When exotoxins are inactivated by heat or by formaldehyde, iodine, or other chemicals, they no longer cause the disease but can still stimulate the body to produce antitoxins. Such altered exotoxins are called **toxoids**. When toxoids are injected into the body as a vaccine, they stimulate antitoxin production so that immunity is produced. Diphtheria and tetanus can be prevented by toxoid vaccination.

Naming Exotoxins Exotoxins are named on the basis of several characteristics. One is the type of host cell that is attacked. For example, *neurotoxins* attack nerve cells, *cardiotoxins* attack heart cells, *hepatotoxins* attack liver cells, *leukotoxins* attack leukocytes, *enterotoxins* attack the lining of the intestines, and *cytotoxins* attack a wide variety of cells. Some exotoxins are named for the diseases with which they are associated. Examples include diphtheria toxin (cause of diphtheria) and tetanus toxin (cause of tetanus). Other exotoxins are named for the specific bacterium that produces them, for example, botulinum toxin (*Clostridium botulinum*) and *Vibrio* enterotoxin (*V. cholerae*).

Types of Exotoxins Exotoxins are divided into three principal types on the basis of their structure and function: (1) A-B toxins, (2) membrane-disrupting toxins, and (3) superantigens.

A-B Toxins Most exotoxins are **A-B toxins**, and they were the first toxins to be studied intensively. They are so named because they consist of two parts designated A and B: The A part is the active (enzyme) component, and the B part is the binding component. Both parts are polypeptides. An example of an A-B toxin is the diphtheria toxin, which is illustrated in Figure 15.5.

Genotoxins are A-B toxins produced by some gram-negative bacteria, including *Helicobacter*, *Haemophilus*, and *Salmonella*. Genotoxins target DNA. This causes mutations, disrupts cell division, and may lead to cancer. In fact, *Helicobacter* is a Class 1 carcinogen, meaning it is known to cause cancer. Two genotoxins produced by several bacteria, including *Salmonella* Typhi and *Campylobacter* spp., are *cytolethal distending toxin* and *typhoid toxin*. Both cause breaks in DNA. The toxin *colibactin*, which is produced by some strains of *E. coli*, binds to adenine, resulting in mutations.

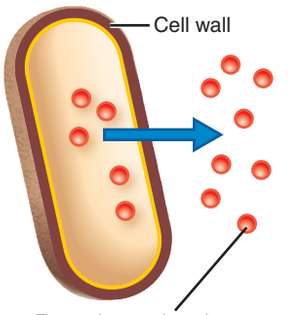
Membrane-Disrupting Toxins **Membrane-disrupting toxins** cause lysis of host cells by disrupting their plasma membranes. Some

FOUNDATION FIGURE 15.4

Mechanisms of Exotoxins and Endotoxins

exotoxins

Proteins produced inside pathogenic bacteria, most commonly by gram-positive bacteria, as part of their growth and metabolism. The exotoxins are then secreted into the surrounding medium during log phase.

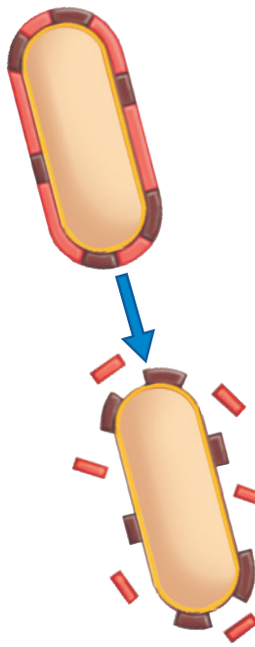


Clostridium botulinum, an example of a gram-positive bacterium that produces exotoxins

SEM 1.3 μm

endotoxins

Lipid portions of lipopolysaccharides (LPS) that are part of the outer membrane of the cell wall of gram-negative bacteria (lipid A). The endotoxins are liberated when the bacteria die and the cell wall lyses, or breaks apart.



Salmonella Typhimurium, an example of a gram-negative bacterium that produces endotoxins

SEM 1.3 μm

KEY CONCEPTS

- Toxins are of two general types: exotoxins and endotoxins.
- Bacterial toxins can cause damage to host cells.
- Toxins can elicit an inflammatory response in the host, as well as activate the complement system.
- Some gram-negative bacteria may release minute amounts of endotoxins, which may stimulate natural immunity.

do this by forming protein channels in the plasma membrane; others disrupt the phospholipid portion of the membrane. The cell-lysing exotoxin of *S. aureus* is an example of an exotoxin that forms protein channels, whereas that of *C. perfringens* is an example of an exotoxin that disrupts the phospholipids. Membrane-disrupting toxins contribute to virulence by killing host cells, especially phagocytes, and by aiding the escape of bacteria from vacuoles within phagocytes (phagosomes) into the host cell's cytoplasm.

Membrane-disrupting toxins that kill phagocytic leukocytes (white blood cells) are called **leukocidins**. They act by forming protein channels. Leukocidins are active against neutrophils and macrophages. Most leukocidins are produced by staphylococci and streptococci. The damage to phagocytes decreases host resistance. A number of intracellular pathogens secrete pore-forming toxins that lyse phagocyte cell membranes once inside the phagocyte. For example, *Trypanosoma cruzi* (the causative agent of Chagas disease) and *L. monocytogenes* (the causative agent of listeriosis) produce membrane attack complexes that lyse phagolysosome membranes and release the microbes into the cytoplasm of the phagocyte, where they propagate. Later the microbes secrete more membrane attack complexes that lyse the plasma membrane, resulting in release of microbes from the phagocyte and infection of neighboring cells.

Some membrane-disrupting toxins destroy erythrocytes (red blood cells), also by forming protein channels. These are called **hemolysins**. Important producers of hemolysins include staphylococci and streptococci. Hemolysins produced by streptococci are called **streptolysins**. One kind, called *streptolysin O (SLO)*, is so named because it is inactivated by atmospheric oxygen. Another kind of streptolysin is called *streptolysin S (SLS)* because it is stable in an oxygen environment. Both streptolysins can cause lysis not only of red blood cells, but also of white blood cells (whose function is to kill the streptococci) and other body cells.

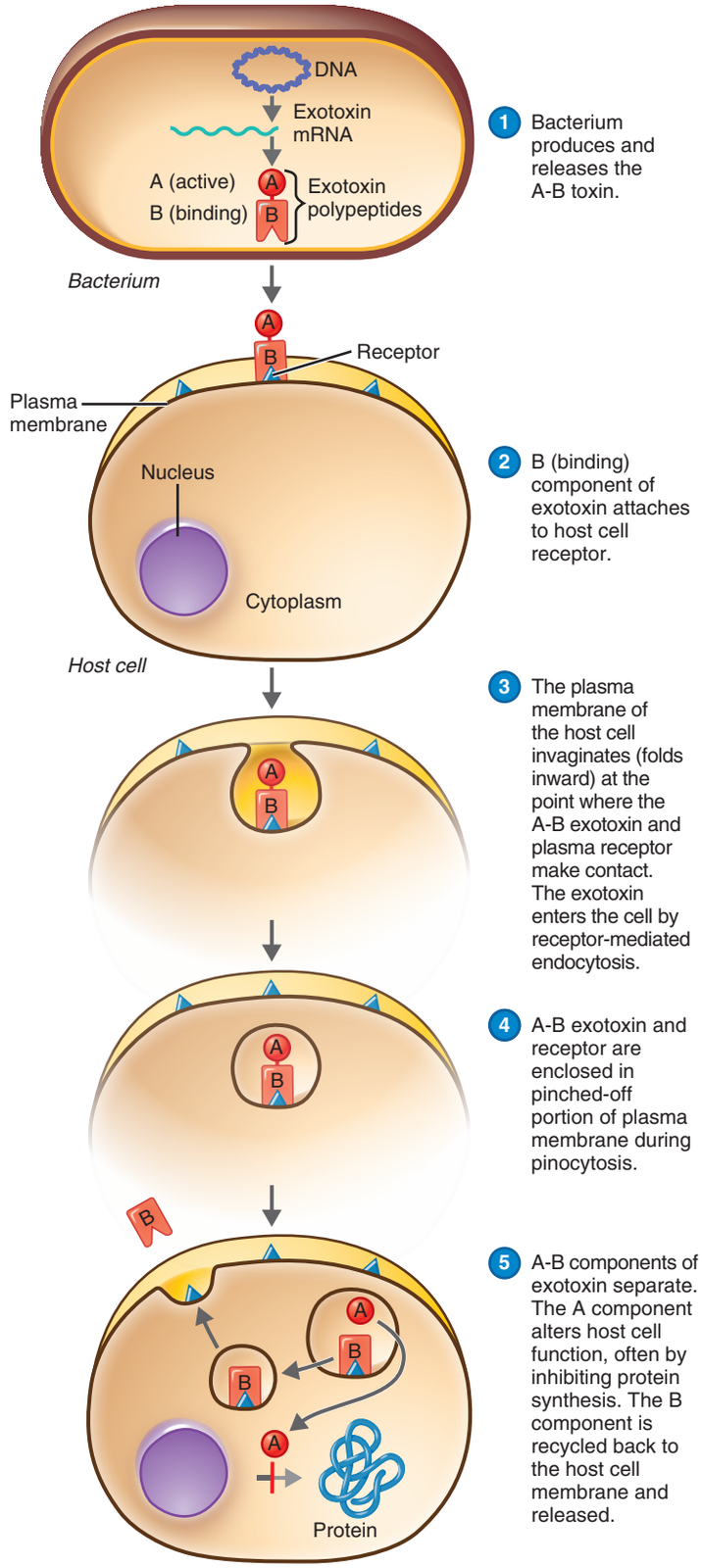


Figure 15.5 The action of an A-B exotoxin. A proposed model for the mechanism of action of diphtheria toxin.

Q Why is this called an A-B toxin?

Superantigens **Superantigens** are antigens that provoke a very intense immune response. They are bacterial proteins that combine with a protein on macrophages; this nonspecifically stimulates the proliferation of immune cells called T cells. These are types of white blood cells (WBCs) called lymphocytes that act against foreign organisms and tissues (transplants). In response to superantigens, T cells are stimulated to release enormous amounts of chemicals called cytokines. *Cytokines* are small protein molecules produced by various body cells, especially T cells, that regulate immune responses and mediate cell-to-cell communication (see Chapter 17). The excessively high levels of cytokines released by T cells enter the bloodstream and give rise to a number of symptoms, including fever, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and sometimes shock and even death. Bacterial superantigens include the staphylococcal toxins that cause food poisoning and toxic shock syndrome. A summary of diseases produced by exotoxins is shown in Table 15.2.

Endotoxins

Endotoxins differ from exotoxins in several ways. *Endo-* means "within," in this context referring to the fact that the endotoxins are part of bacterial cells, and not a metabolic product. Endotoxins are part of the outer portion of the cell wall of gram-negative bacteria (Figure 15.4). Gram-negative bacteria have an outer membrane surrounding the peptidoglycan layer of the cell wall (see Chapter 4). This outer membrane consists of lipoproteins, phospholipids, and lipopolysaccharides (LPS) (see Figure 4.13c). The lipid portion of LPS, called **lipid A**, is the endotoxin. Thus, endotoxins are lipids, whereas exotoxins are proteins.

Endotoxins are released during bacterial multiplication and when gram-negative bacteria die and their cell walls undergo lysis. Antibiotics used to treat diseases caused by gram-negative bacteria can lyse the bacterial cells; this reaction releases endotoxin and may lead to an immediate worsening of the symptoms, but the condition usually improves as liver lipase breaks down the endotoxin. Endotoxins exert their effects by stimulating macrophages to release cytokines in very high concentrations, at which cytokines are toxic. All endotoxins produce the same signs and symptoms, regardless of the species of microorganism, although not to the same degree. These include chills, fever, weakness, generalized aches, and, in some cases, shock and even death. Endotoxins can also induce miscarriage.

Another consequence of endotoxins is the activation of blood-clotting proteins, causing the formation of small blood clots. These blood clots obstruct capillaries, and the resulting decreased blood supply induces the death of tissues. This condition is referred to as *disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)*.

The fever (pyrogenic response) caused by endotoxins is believed to occur as depicted in Figure 15.6. Bacterial cell death

TABLE 15.2 Diseases Caused by Exotoxins

Disease	Bacterium	Type of Exotoxin	Mechanism
Botulism	*Clostridium botulinum*	A-B	Neurotoxin; prevents transmission of nerve impulses; flaccid paralysis results.
Tetanus	*C. tetani*	A-B	Neurotoxin; blocks nerve impulses to muscle relaxation pathway; results in uncontrollable muscle contractions.
Diphtheria	*Corynebacterium diphtheriae*	A-B	Cytotoxin; inhibits protein synthesis, especially in nerve, heart, and kidney cells.
Scalded skin syndrome	*S. aureus*	A-B	Exotoxin; causes skin layers to separate and slough off.
Cholera	*V. cholerae*	A-B	Enterotoxin; causes secretion of large amounts of fluids and electrolytes that result in diarrhea.
Traveler's diarrhea	Enterotoxigenic *E. coli* and *Shigella* spp.	A-B	Enterotoxin; causes secretion of large amounts of fluids and electrolytes that result in diarrhea.
Anthrax	*Bacillus anthracis*	A-B	Two A components enter the cell via the same B component. The A proteins cause shock and reduce the immune response.
Gastric (stomach) cancer	*Helicobacter* spp.	A-B toxin	Genotoxin; causes breaks in DNA.
Colorectal cancer	*E. coli*	A-B toxin	Genotoxin (colibactin); binds to adenines in DNA.
Skin and soft tissue infection	Methicillin-resistant *S. aureus*	Membrane-disrupting	The Panton-Valentine leukocidin found in the community-acquired strain of MRSA makes pores in WBC membranes.
Gas gangrene and food poisoning	*C. perfringens* and other species of *Clostridium*	Membrane-disrupting	One exotoxin (cytotoxin) causes massive red blood cell destruction (hemolysis); another exotoxin (enterotoxin) is related to food poisoning and causes diarrhea.
Antibiotic-associated diarrhea	*Clostridioides difficile*	Membrane-disrupting	Enterotoxin; causes secretion of fluids and electrolytes that results in diarrhea; also acts as cytotoxin that disrupts host cytoskeleton.
Food poisoning	*S. aureus*	Superantigen	Enterotoxin; causes secretion of fluids and electrolytes that results in diarrhea.
Toxic shock syndrome (TSS)	*S. aureus*	Superantigen	Causes secretion of fluids and electrolytes from capillaries that decreases blood volume and lowers blood pressure.

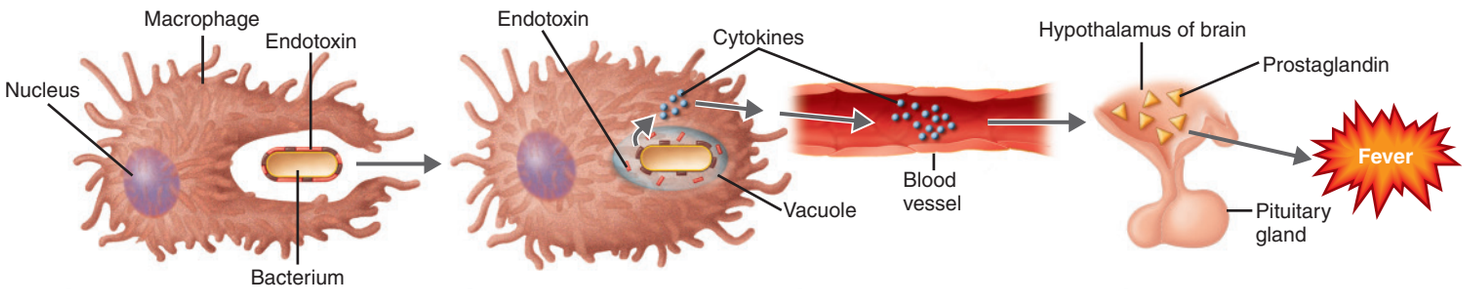


Figure 15.6 Endotoxins and the pyrogenic response. The proposed mechanism by which endotoxins cause fever and localized pain. Both aspirin and acetaminophen reduce fever by inhibiting the synthesis of prostaglandins, the mediator of this response.

Q What is an endotoxin?

caused by lysis can also produce fever by this mechanism. (The function of fever in the body is discussed in Chapter 16.)

Shock refers to any life-threatening decrease in blood pressure. Shock caused by bacteria is called **septic shock**. Gram-negative bacteria cause *endotoxic shock*. Like fever, endotoxic shock is related to the secretion of a cytokine by macrophages. Specifically, phagocytosis of gram-negative bacteria causes the macrophages to secrete tumor necrosis factor (TNF), sometimes called *cachectin*. TNF binds to many tissues in the body and alters their metabolism in a number of ways. One effect of TNF is damage to blood capillaries; their permeability is increased, and they lose large amounts of fluid. The result is a drop in blood volume and blood pressure that results in shock. Low blood pressure has serious effects on the kidneys, lungs, and digestive canal. In addition, the presence of gram-negative bacteria such as *H. influenzae* type b in cerebrospinal fluid causes the release of cytokines into the blood. These, in turn, cause a weakening of the blood–brain barrier that normally protects the central nervous system from infection. The weakened barrier lets phagocytes in, but this also lets more bacteria enter from the bloodstream. In the United States, about 3 out of every 1000 people develop septic shock each year. One-third of the patients die within a month, and nearly half die within 6 months.

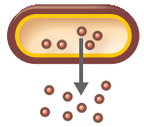
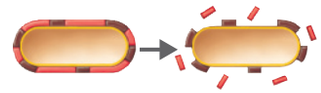
Endotoxins do not promote the formation of effective antitoxins. Antibodies are produced, but they tend not to counter the effect of the toxin; sometimes, in fact, they actually enhance its effect.

Representative microorganisms that produce endotoxins are *Salmonella* Typhi (the causative agent of typhoid fever), *Proteus* spp. (frequently the causative agents of urinary tract infections), and *N. meningitidis* (the causative agent of meningococcal meningitis).

It is important to have a sensitive test to identify the presence of endotoxins in drugs, medical devices, and body fluids. Materials that have been sterilized may contain endotoxins, even though no bacteria can be cultured from them. One such laboratory test is called the **Limulus amebocyte lysate (LAL) assay**, which can detect even minute amounts of endotoxin. The hemolymph (blood) of the Atlantic coast horseshoe crab, *Limulus polyphemus*, contains white blood cells called amebocytes, which have large amounts of a protein (lysate) that causes clotting. In the presence of endotoxin, amebocytes in the crab hemolymph lyse and liberate their clotting protein. The resulting gel-clot (precipitate) is a positive test for the presence of endotoxin. The degree of the reaction is measured using a spectrophotometer (see Figure 6.23).

Table 15.3 compares exotoxins and endotoxins.

TABLE 15.3 Exotoxins and Endotoxins

Property	Exotoxins	Endotoxins
		
Bacterial Source	Gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria	Gram-negative bacteria
Relation to Microorganism	Metabolic product of growing cell	Present in LPS of outer membrane of cell wall and released with destruction of cell or during cell division
Chemistry	Proteins, usually with two parts (A-B)	Lipid portion (lipid A) of LPS of outer membrane
Pharmacology (Effect on Body)	Specific for a particular cell structure or function in the host (mainly affects cell functions, nerves, and gastrointestinal cells)	General, such as fever, weaknesses, aches, and shock; all produce the same effects
Heat Stability	Unstable; can usually be destroyed at 60–80°C (except staphylococcal enterotoxin)	Stable; can withstand autoclaving (121°C for 1 hour)
Toxicity (Ability to Cause Disease)	High	Low
Fever-Producing	No	Yes
Immunology (Relation to Vaccines)	Can be converted to toxoids to immunize against toxin; neutralized by antitoxin	Not easily neutralized by antitoxin; therefore, effective toxoids cannot be made to immunize against toxin
Lethal Dose	Small	Considerably larger
Representative Diseases	Gas gangrene, tetanus, botulism, diphtheria, scarlet fever, cyanobacterial intoxication	Typhoid fever, urinary tract infections, and meningococcal meningitis

CLINICAL CASE

An infection could not have happened this quickly; infections usually take 3 to 4 days to show symptoms. Dr. Santos checks to make sure that the autoclave used to sterilize the ophthalmic equipment is functioning normally, and that single-use topical iodine antiseptic was used. A new sterile tip for the corneal extraction was used for each patient. Both the epinephrine used during surgery and the enzymatic solution for the ultrasonic bath used to clean surgical instruments are sterile, and medications with different lot numbers were used in each surgery. But Dr. Santos knows that the toxin had to have come from somewhere or something connected to the surgeries. Even though the enzymatic solution is sterile, Dr. Santos sends it to a laboratory for an LAL assay.

Why does Dr. Santos send the enzymatic solution for an LAL assay?

Part 1 Part 2 **Part 3** Part 4 Part 5

Plasmids, Lysogeny, and Pathogenicity

Plasmids are small, circular DNA molecules that are not connected to the main bacterial chromosome and are capable of independent replication. (See Chapter 4 and Chapter 8.) One group of plasmids, called R (resistance) factors, is responsible for the resistance of some microorganisms to antibiotics. Another group of plasmids, called virulence factors, carries the information that determines a microbe's pathogenicity. Examples of virulence factors that are encoded by plasmid genes are tetanus neurotoxin, heat-labile enterotoxin (produced by enterotoxigenic *E. coli*), and staphylococcal enterotoxin D. Other examples are dextransucrase, an enzyme produced by *S. mutans* that is involved in tooth decay; adhesins and coagulase produced by *S. aureus*; and a type of fimbria specific to enteropathogenic strains of *E. coli*.

In Chapter 13, we noted that some bacteriophages (viruses that infect bacteria) can incorporate their DNA into the bacterial chromosome, becoming a prophage, and thus remain latent—they do not cause lysis of the bacterium. Such a state is called *lysogeny*, and cells containing a prophage are said to be lysogenic. One outcome of lysogeny is that the host bacterial cell and its progeny may exhibit new properties encoded by the bacteriophage DNA. Such a change in the characteristics of a microbe due to a prophage is called **lysogenic conversion**. As a result of lysogenic conversion, the bacterial cell is immune to infection by the same type of phage. In addition, lysogenic cells are of medical importance because some bacterial pathogenesis is caused by the prophages they contain.

Among the bacteriophage genes that contribute to pathogenicity are the genes for diphtheria toxin, erythrogenic toxins, staphylococcal enterotoxin A and pyrogenic toxin, botulinum neurotoxin, and the capsule produced by *S. pneumoniae*. The gene for Shiga toxin in *E. coli* O157 is encoded by phage genes. Pathogenic strains of *V. cholerae* carry lysogenic phages. These phages can transmit the cholera toxin gene to nonpathogenic *V. cholerae* strains, increasing the number of pathogenic bacteria.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **15-9** Of what value are siderophores?
- **15-10** How does toxigenicity differ from direct damage?
- **15-11** Differentiate an exotoxin from an endotoxin.
- **15-12** Food poisoning can be divided into two categories: food infection and food intoxication. On the basis of toxin production by bacteria, explain the difference between these two categories.
- **15-13** Washwater containing *Pseudomonas* was sterilized and used to wash cardiac catheters. Three patients developed fever, chills, and hypotension following cardiac catheterization. The water and catheters were sterile. Why did the patients show these reactions? How should the water have been tested?
- **15-14** How can lysogeny turn the normally harmless *E. coli* into a pathogen?

Pathogenic Properties of Viruses

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

15-15 List 11 cytopathic effects of viral infections.

The pathogenic properties of viruses depend on their gaining access to a host, evading the host's defenses, and then causing damage to or death of the host cell while reproducing themselves.

Viral Mechanisms for Evading Host Defenses

Viruses have a variety of mechanisms that enable them to evade destruction by the host's immune response (see Chapter 17). For example, recall from Chapter 13 that viruses can penetrate and grow inside host cells, where components of the immune system cannot reach them. Viruses gain access to cells because they have attachment sites for receptors on their target cells. When such an attachment site is brought together with an appropriate receptor, the virus can bind to and penetrate the cell. Some viruses gain access to host cells because their attachment sites mimic substances useful to those cells. For example, the attachment sites of rabies virus can mimic the neurotransmitter acetylcholine. As a result, the virus can enter the host cell along with the neurotransmitter.

The AIDS virus (HIV) goes further by hiding its attachment sites from the immune response and by attacking components

of the immune system directly. Like most viruses, HIV is cell-specific, in this case attacking only particular body cells that have a surface marker called the CD4 protein. Most of these cells are immune system T cells (T lymphocytes). Binding sites on HIV are complementary to the CD4 protein. The surface of the virus is folded to form ridges and valleys, and the HIV binding sites are located on the floors of the valleys. CD4 proteins are long enough and slender enough to reach these binding sites, whereas antibody molecules made against HIV are too large to make contact with the sites. As a result, it is difficult for these antibodies to destroy HIV.

Some viruses, including SARS-CoV-2 and HIV, methylate their RNA, which then resembles host RNA. As a result, the host doesn't destroy the infected cells.

Viral mutations also help viruses evade host defenses. The high mutation rate of *Alphainfluenzavirus* and SARS-Co-2, for example, causes changes to their spike proteins that make the antibodies previously made by the host less effective.

Cytopathic Effects of Viruses

Infection of a host cell by an animal virus usually kills the host cell. Death can be caused by the accumulation of large numbers of multiplying viruses, by the effects of viral proteins on the permeability of the host cell's plasma membrane, or by inhibition of host DNA, RNA, or protein synthesis. The visible effects of viral infection are known as **cytopathic effects (CPE)** and are generally classified as two types. Those cytopathic effects that result in cell death are called *cytocidal effects*; those that result in cell damage but not cell death are called *noncytocidal effects* (cells continue to grow and divide, although growth may be slowed). CPEs are used to diagnose many viral infections.

Cytopathic effects vary by virus. One difference is the point in the viral infection cycle at which the effects occur. Some viral infections result in early changes in the host cell; in other infections, changes are not seen until a much later stage.

A virus can produce one or more of the following cytopathic effects. These will disrupt cell function or morphology and usually result in cell death.

1. Cell junctions are disrupted. SARS-CoV-2 and *Alphainfluenzavirus*, for example, disrupt the junctions between cells of pulmonary alveoli. Cilia are also disrupted and stop moving in cultures of pulmonary alveolar cells infected with SARS-CoV-2.
2. Infection induces a cytokine storm. Some respiratory viruses, including SARS-CoV-2 and *Alphainfluenzavirus*, can trigger a **cytokine storm** in which excessive production of cytokines increases inflammation and can damage tissues and organs, sometimes fatally.
3. The macromolecular synthesis within the host cell stops. Some viruses, such as *Simplexvirus*, irreversibly stop mitosis.
4. Host cell lysosomes are made to release their enzymes, resulting in destruction of intracellular contents and host cell death.
5. Inclusion bodies are found in the cytoplasm or nucleus of some infected cells (Figure 15.7a). They are sometimes viral parts—nucleic acids or proteins in the process of being assembled into virions. The granules vary in size,

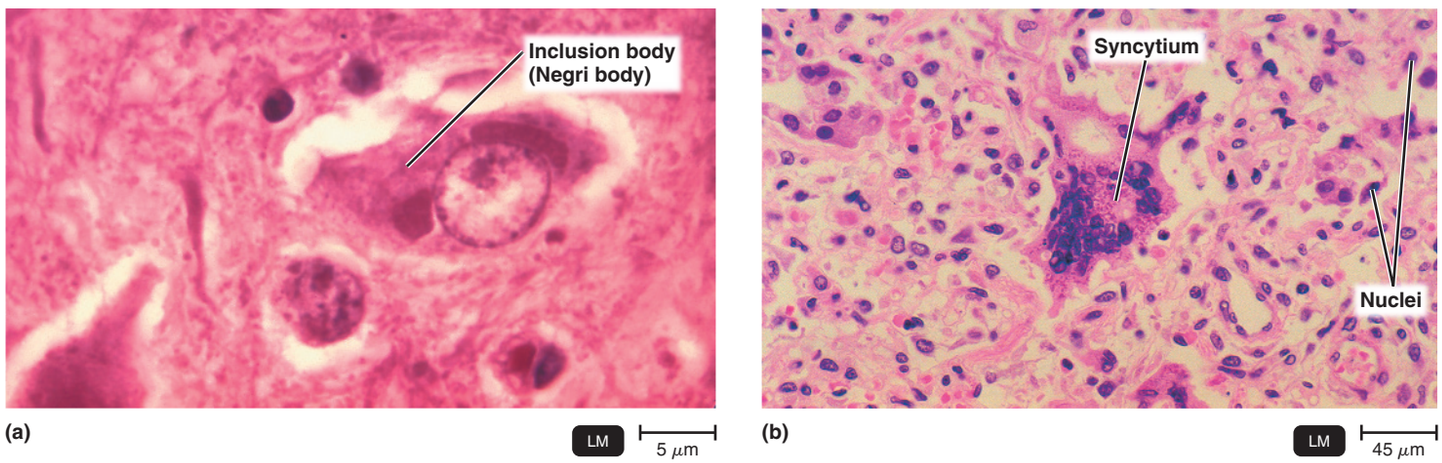


Figure 15.7 Some cytopathic effects of viruses. **(a)** Cytoplasmic inclusion body in brain tissue from a person who died of rabies. **(b)** Portion of a syncytium (multinucleated giant cell) formed in a cell infected with measles virus.

Q What are cytopathic effects?

shape, and staining properties. They are characterized by their ability to stain with an acidic stain (acidophilic) or with a basic stain (basophilic). Other inclusion bodies arise at sites of earlier viral synthesis but do not contain assembled viruses or their components. Inclusion bodies are important because they can help identify the causative agent. For example, in most cases, rabies virus produces inclusion bodies (Negri bodies) in the cytoplasm of nerve cells, and their presence in animal brain tissue has been used as one diagnostic tool for rabies. Diagnostic inclusion bodies are also associated with measles virus, vaccinia virus, smallpox virus, herpesviruses, and adenoviruses.

6. At times, several adjacent infected cells fuse to form a very large multinucleate cell called a **syncytium** (Figure 15.7b). Such giant cells are produced from infections by viruses that cause measles, mumps, and the common cold.
7. Some viral infections result in changes in the host cell's functions with no visible changes in the infected cells. For example, when measles virus attaches to its receptor called CD46, the CD46 prompts the cell to reduce production of a cytokine called IL-12, reducing the host's ability to fight the infection.
8. Many viral infections induce antigenic changes on the surface of the infected cells. These antigenic changes are the result of viral-gene encoded proteins, and they elicit a host antibody response against the infected cell; thus, they kill the host cell even if it is infected by a noncytocidal virus.
9. Some viruses induce chromosomal changes in the host cell. For example, some viral infections result in damage to the host cell chromosome, most often chromosomal breakage. Frequently, oncogenes (cancer-causing genes) may be contributed or activated by a virus.
10. Viruses capable of causing cancer *transform* host cells, as discussed in Chapter 13. Transformation results in an abnormally shaped cell that does not recognize **contact inhibition**, meaning cells don't stop growing when they come in close contact with other cells (Figure 15.8). The loss of contact inhibition results in unregulated cell growth.
11. Some virus-infected host cells produce substances called alpha and beta **interferons**. Viral infection induces cells to produce these interferons, but the host cell's DNA actually codes for them. Alpha and beta interferons protect neighboring uninfected cells from viral infection in two ways: (1) they inhibit synthesis of viral proteins and host cell proteins; and (2) they kill virus-infected host cells by apoptosis (programmed cell death). However, almost all viruses, including SARS-CoV-2 and herpesvirus, have mechanisms that evade interferons by partially blocking their synthesis.

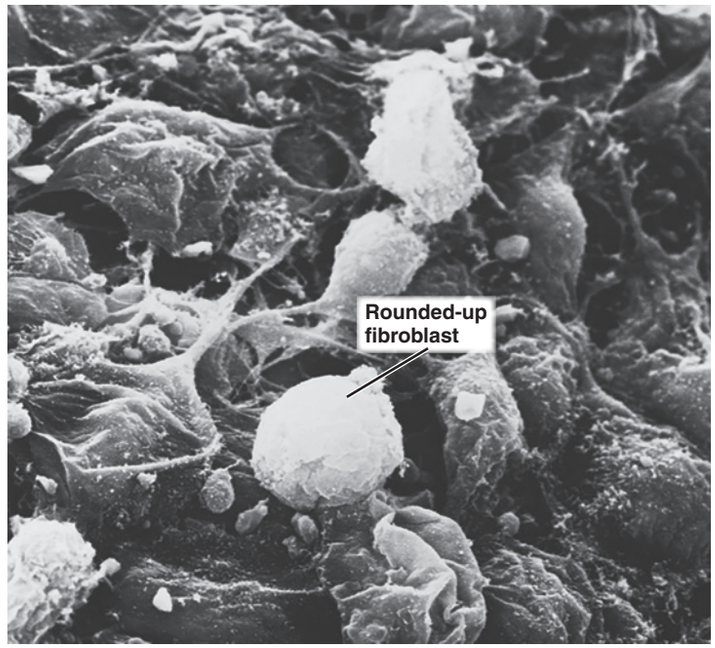


Figure 15.8 Human fibroblasts are transformed by Rous sarcoma virus. Normal fibroblasts grow as flat, spread-out cells.

Q What is contact inhibition?

Some representative viruses that cause cytopathic effects are presented in Table 15.4. In Part Four of the book we will discuss the pathological properties of viruses in more detail.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

15-15 Define *cytopathic effects*, and give five examples.

TABLE 15.4 Cytopathic Effects of Selected Viruses

Virus (Genus)	Cytopathic Effect
Poliovirus (*Enterovirus C*)	Cytocidal (cell death)
Genital warts virus (*Alphapapillomavirus*)	Acidophilic inclusion bodies in nucleus, transformation
Adenovirus (*Mastadenovirus*)	Basophilic inclusion bodies in nucleus
Rabies (*Lyssavirus*)	Acidophilic inclusion bodies in cytoplasm
CMV (*Cytomegalovirus*)	Acidophilic inclusion bodies in nucleus and cytoplasm
Measles virus (*Morbillivirus*)	Cell fusion
HIV (*Lentivirus*)	Destruction of T cells
SARS-CoV-2 (*Betacoronavirus*)	Syncytia, cilia shrinkage, altered junctions between cells

Pathogenic Properties of Fungi, Protozoa, Helminths, and Algae

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

15-16 Discuss the causes of symptoms in fungal, protozoan, helminthic, and algal diseases.

This section describes some general pathological effects of fungi, protozoa, helminths, and algae that cause human disease. Specific diseases caused by these organisms, along with the pathological properties of these organisms, are discussed in detail in Chapters 21 to 26.

Fungi

Although fungi cause disease, they generally do not have a well-defined set of virulence factors. Some fungi release metabolic products that are toxic to human hosts. In such cases, however, the toxin is only an indirect cause of disease because the fungus is already growing in or on the host. Chronic fungal infections, such as athlete's foot, can provoke an allergic response in the host.

Some fungi do produce toxins. *Trichothecenes* (TRIK-oh-thee-seens) are fungal toxins that inhibit protein synthesis in eukaryotic cells. Ingestion of these toxins causes headaches, chills, severe nausea, vomiting, and visual disturbances. These toxins are produced by *Fusarium* (fū-SAR-ē-um) and *Stachybotrys* (STA-kē-bah-tris) growing on grains and wallboard in homes.

The fungal disease called ergotism, common in Europe during the Middle Ages, is also caused by a toxin. This toxin, called **ergot**, is produced by an ascomycete plant pathogen, *Claviceps purpurea* (KLA-vi-seps pur-pur-Ē-ah), that grows on grains. The toxin is contained in **sclerotia**, highly resistant portions of the mycelia of the fungus that can detach. Ergot is an alkaloid that can cause hallucinations resembling those produced by LSD (lysergic acid diethylamide); in fact, ergot is a natural source of LSD. Ergot also constricts capillaries and can cause gangrene of the limbs by preventing proper blood circulation in the body. Although *C. purpurea* still occasionally occurs on grains, modern milling usually removes the sclerotia.

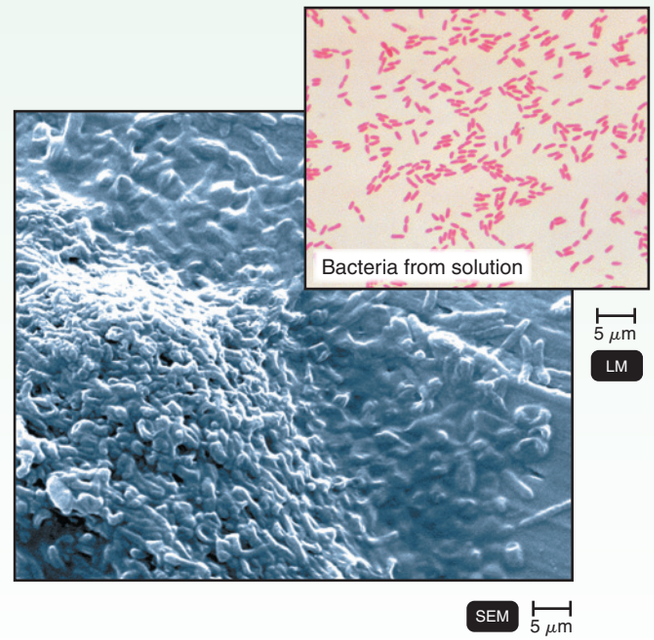
Several other toxins are produced by fungi that grow on grains or other plants. For example, peanut butter is occasionally recalled because of excessive amounts of **aflatoxin**, which has carcinogenic properties. Aflatoxin is produced by the growth of the mold *Aspergillus flavus*. When ingested, the toxin might be altered in a human body to a mutagenic compound.

A few mushrooms produce fungal toxins called **mycotoxins**. Examples are **phalloidin** and **amanitin**, produced by *Amanita phalloides* (A-man-ī-tah fal-LOI-dēz), commonly known as the deathcap. These neurotoxins are so potent that ingestion of the *Amanita* mushroom may result in death.

In addition to producing toxins, some fungi employ other virulence factors that influence host or fungal cell structures.

CLINICAL CASE

Although the sample was sterile, the lab test results show that the solution from the ultrasonic bath is positive for endotoxins. Gram-negative bacteria such as *Burkholderia* found in liquid reservoirs and moist environments can colonize water pipes (see the figure) and, in turn, the laboratory containers used to hold water. In this case, the bacteria from the biofilms were washed into the enzymatic solution.



How did endotoxins get in the sterile solutions?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 **Part 4** Part 5

Two fungi that can cause skin infections, *Candida albicans* and *Trichophyton* (trik-ō-Fī-ton), secrete proteases. These enzymes may modify host cell membranes to allow attachment of the fungi. *Cryptococcus neoformans* (KRIP-tō-kok-kus nē-ō-FOR-manz) is a fungus that causes a type of meningitis; it produces a capsule that helps it resist phagocytosis. Some fungi have become resistant to antifungal drugs by decreasing their synthesis of receptors for these drugs.

Protozoa

The presence of protozoa and their waste products often triggers disease signs and symptoms in the host (see Table 12.4). Some protozoa, such as *Plasmodium*, the causative agent of malaria, invade host cells and reproduce within them, causing their rupture. In contrast, *Toxoplasma* attaches to macrophages and gains entry by phagocytosis. This parasite prevents normal acidification and digestion; thus, it can grow in the phagocytic vacuole.

Other protozoa, such as *Giardia duodenalis*, the causative agent of giardiasis, attach to host cells by a sucking disc (see Figure 12.18a) and digest the cells and tissue fluids.

Some protozoa can evade host defenses and cause disease for very long periods of time. For example, *Giardia*, which causes diarrhea, and *Trypanosoma*, which causes African trypanosomiasis (sleeping sickness), both use antigenic variation to stay one step ahead of the host's immune system. Recall that the presence of antigens causes the immune system to produce antibodies that target them. When *Trypanosoma* is introduced into the bloodstream by a tsetse fly, it produces and displays a specific antigen. In response, the body produces antibodies against that antigen. However, within 2 weeks, the microbe stops displaying the original antigen and instead produces and displays a different one (see Figure 22.16). Thus, the original antibodies are no longer effective. Because the microbe can make up to 1000 different antigens, such an infection can last for decades.

Helminths

The presence of helminths also often produces disease symptoms in a host (see Table 12.5). Some of these organisms actually use host tissues for their own growth or produce large parasitic masses; the resulting cellular damage causes the symptoms. An example is the roundworm *Wuchereria bancrofti* (woo-kur-ER-ē-ah ban-KROF-tē), the causative agent of lymphatic filariasis. This parasite blocks lymphatic circulation, leading to an accumulation of lymph plasma and eventually causing grotesque swelling of the legs and other body parts. Waste products of the metabolism of these parasites can also contribute to the symptoms of a disease.

Algae

A few species of algae produce neurotoxins causing **harmful algal blooms** when they grow excessively. For example, dinoflagellates in the genus *Alexandrium* (a-leks-AN-drē-um) produce neurotoxins (called **saxitoxins**) that cause **paralytic shellfish poisoning (PSP)**. The toxin is concentrated when large numbers of dinoflagellates are eaten by mollusks, such as mussels or clams. Humans who eat these mollusks develop PSP. Large concentrations of *Alexandrium* give the ocean a deep red color, from which the name **red tide** originates (see Figure 27.10). Mollusks should not be harvested for consumption during a red tide. Recall from Chapter 12 that the disease called ciguatera occurs when the dinoflagellate *Gambierdiscus toxicus* (GAM-bē-er-dis-kus TOKS-i-kus) passes up the food chain and is concentrated in large fish. Ciguatera is endemic (constantly present) in the south Pacific Ocean and the Caribbean Sea. The heterotrophic dinoflagellate *Pfiesteria* (fē-STEER-ē-ah) releases *Pfiesteria* toxins, which are responsible for periodic massive fish deaths along the Atlantic Coast. Humans exposed to the toxins through direct contact with the water or inhaling sea spray may experience skin irritation or difficulty with short-term memory.

Another toxin produced by algae is domoic acid. It is produced by *Pseudo-nitzschia* (soo-dō-NICH-ē-ah) diatoms. Crustaceans, fish, and mollusks can accumulate domoic acid. The toxin can cause permanent loss of short-term memory, a condition called **amnesic shellfish poisoning**, coma, or death in humans. Public health agencies frequently prohibit human consumption of mollusks during periods of high algal growth (see Figure 27.10).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

15-16 Identify one virulence factor that contributes to the pathogenicity of each of the following: fungi, protozoa, helminths, and algae.

Portals of Exit

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

15-17 Differentiate portal of entry and portal of exit.

Just as microbes enter the body through a preferred route, they also leave the body via specific routes called **portals of exit** in secretions, excretions, discharges, or tissue that has been shed. In general, portals of exit relate to the infected part of the body, with microbes tending to use the same portal for entry and exit. Portals of exit let pathogens spread through a population by moving from one susceptible host to another. This type of information about the dissemination of a disease is very important to epidemiologists (see Chapter 14).

The most common portals of exit are the respiratory tract and digestive canal. Many pathogens living in the respiratory tract exit in discharges from the mouth and nose, expelled during coughing or sneezing. These microorganisms are found in droplets formed from mucus. Pathogens that cause tuberculosis, whooping cough, pneumonia, scarlet fever, meningococcal meningitis, chickenpox, measles, mumps, COVID-19, and influenza are discharged through the respiratory route. Other pathogens exit via the digestive canal in feces or saliva. Feces may be contaminated with pathogens associated with salmonellosis, cholera, typhoid fever, shigellosis, amebic dysentery, and poliomyelitis. Saliva can also contain pathogens, such as those that cause rabies, mumps, and infectious mononucleosis.

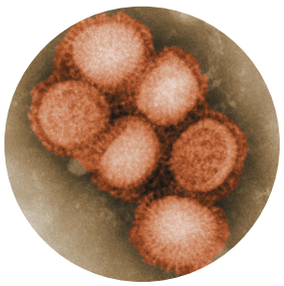
The genital system is another important portal of exit. Microbes responsible for sexually transmitted infections are found in secretions from the penis and vagina. Urine can also contain the pathogens responsible for typhoid fever and brucellosis, which can exit via the urinary tract.

Skin or wound infections are other portals of exit. Infections transmitted from the skin include MPOX, impetigo, ringworm, *Simplexvirus*, and warts. Drainage from wounds can spread infections to another person directly or by contact with a contaminated fomite. Infected blood can be removed via

FOUNDATION FIGURE 15.9

Microbial Mechanisms of Pathogenicity

When the balance between host and microbe tips in favor of the microbe, an infection or disease results. Learning these mechanisms of microbial pathogenicity is fundamental to understanding how pathogens are able to overcome the host's defenses.



portals of entry

Mucous membranes
- Respiratory system
- Digestive canal
- Urinary system
- Genital system
- Conjunctiva

Skin

Parenteral route

Number of invading microbes

Adherence

penetration or evasion of host defenses

Capsules
Cell wall components
Enzymes
Antigenic variation
Invasins
Intracellular growth

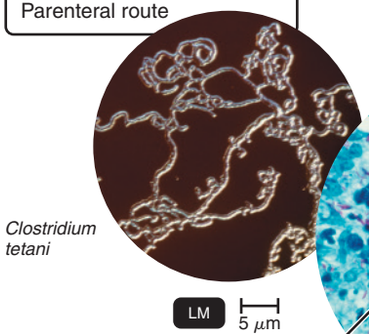
damage to host cells

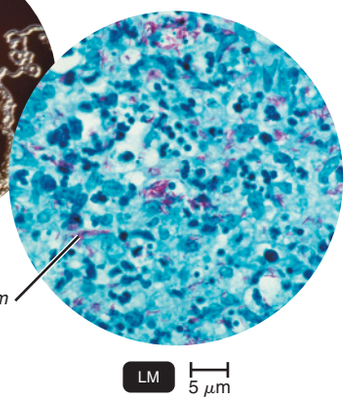
Siderophores
Direct damage
Toxins
- Exotoxins
- Endotoxins

Lysogenic conversion
Cytopathic effects

portals of exit

Generally the same as the portals of entry for a given microbe:
- Mucous membranes
- Skin
- Parenteral route





KEY CONCEPTS

- Several factors are required for a microbe to cause disease.
- After entering the host through a preferred portal of entry, most pathogens adhere to host tissue, penetrate or evade host defenses, and damage host tissue.
- Pathogens usually leave the body via specific portals of exit, which are generally the same sites where they entered initially.

the wound created by biting insects, then reinjected to spread infection within a population. Examples of diseases transmitted by biting insects are yellow fever, plague, tularemia, and malaria. AIDS and hepatitis B may be transmitted by contaminated (reused) needles and syringes.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

15-17 Which are the most often used portals of exit?

***

In the next chapter, we will examine a group of nonspecific defenses of the host against disease. But before proceeding, examine **Figure 15.9** carefully. It summarizes some key concepts of the microbial mechanisms of pathogenicity we have discussed in this chapter.

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

Although the bacteria are killed by autoclaving, endotoxins can be released from the dead cells into solutions during autoclaving. Therefore, the solution was the disease source, even though it was sterile.

Dr. Santos treats her patients with prednisone, a topical anti-inflammatory drug, and they all fully recover from the reaction. (She did not prescribe antibiotics, because TASS is not an infection.) She holds a staff meeting to make sure the correct sterilizing procedures are being followed. Dr. Santos also stresses to her employees that preventing TASS depends primarily on using appropriate protocols for cleaning and sterilizing surgical equipment and paying careful attention to all solutions, medications, and ophthalmic devices used during surgery.

Study Outline

Introduction (p. 427)

1. Pathogenicity is the ability of a pathogen to produce a disease by overcoming the defenses of the host.
2. Virulence is the degree of pathogenicity.

How Microorganisms Enter a Host (pp. 428–431)

1. The specific route by which a particular pathogen gains access to the body is called its portal of entry.

Portals of Entry (p. 428)

2. Many microorganisms can penetrate mucous membranes of the conjunctiva and the respiratory tract, digestive canal, genital system, and urinary system.
3. Most microorganisms cannot penetrate intact skin; they enter hair follicles and sweat ducts.
4. Some microorganisms can gain access to tissues by inoculation through the skin and mucous membranes in bites, injections, and other wounds. This route of penetration is called the parenteral route.

The Preferred Portal of Entry (p. 429)

5. Many microorganisms can cause infections only when they gain access through their specific portal of entry.

Numbers of Invading Microbes (pp. 429–430)

6. Virulence can be expressed as LD_{50} (lethal dose for 50% of the inoculated hosts) or ID_{50} (infectious dose for 50% of the inoculated hosts).

Adherence (pp. 430–431)

7. Surface projections on a pathogen called adhesins (ligands) adhere to complementary receptors on the host cells.
8. Adhesins can be glycoproteins or lipoproteins and are frequently associated with fimbriae.
9. Mannose is the most common receptor.
10. Biofilms provide attachment to surfaces and resistance to antimicrobial agents.

How Bacterial Pathogens Penetrate Host Defenses (pp. 431–434)

Capsules (pp. 431–432)

1. Some pathogens have capsules that prevent them from being phagocytized.

Cell Wall Components (p. 432)

2. Proteins in the cell wall can facilitate adherence or prevent a pathogen from being phagocytized.

Enzymes (p. 432)

3. Local infections can be protected in a fibrin clot caused by the bacterial enzyme coagulase.
4. Bacteria can spread from a focal infection by means of kinases (which destroy blood clots), hyaluronidase (which destroys a mucopolysaccharide that holds cells together), and collagenase (which hydrolyzes connective tissue collagen).
5. IgA proteases destroy IgA antibodies.

Antigenic Variation (pp. 432–433)

6. Some microbes vary expression of antigens, thus avoiding the host's antibodies.

Penetration into the Host (p. 433)

7. Bacteria may produce invasins that alter the actin of the host cell's cytoskeleton, allowing bacteria into the cell.

Biofilms (p. 433)

8. Phagocytes are inactivated or killed by the extrapolymeric substance (EPS) of biofilms.

How Bacterial Pathogens Damage Host Cells (pp. 434–440)

Using the Host's Nutrients: Siderophores (p. 434)

1. Bacteria get iron from the host using siderophores.

Direct Damage (p. 434)

2. Host cells can be destroyed when pathogens metabolize and multiply inside the host cells.

Production of Toxins (pp. 434–439)

3. Poisonous substances produced by microorganisms are called toxins; toxemia refers to the presence of toxins in the blood plasma. The ability to produce toxins is called toxigenicity.
4. Exotoxins are produced by bacteria and released into the surrounding medium. Exotoxins, not the bacteria, produce the disease symptoms.
5. Antibodies produced against exotoxins are called antitoxins.
6. A-B toxins consist of an active component (A) that inhibits a cellular process and a binding component (B) that attaches the two portions to the target cell.
7. A-B toxins called genotoxins cause breaks in eukaryotic DNA that could lead to cancer if the cell doesn't repair the breaks.
8. Membrane-disrupting toxins cause cell lysis, e.g., hemolysins.
9. Superantigens cause release of cytokines, which cause fever, nausea, and other symptoms; e.g., toxic shock syndrome toxin.
10. Endotoxins are the lipid A component of the cell wall of gram-negative bacteria.

11. Bacterial cell death, antibiotics, and antibodies may cause the release of endotoxins.
12. Endotoxins cause fever (by inducing the release of interleukin-1) and shock (because of a TNF-induced decrease in blood pressure).
13. The Limulus amebocyte lysate (LAL) assay is used to detect endotoxins in drugs and on medical devices.

Plasmids, Lysogeny, and Pathogenicity (p. 440)

14. Plasmids may carry genes for antibiotic resistance or toxins.
15. Lysogenic conversion can result in bacteria with virulence factors, such as toxins or capsules.

Pathogenic Properties of Viruses (pp. 440–442)

1. Viruses avoid the host's immune response by growing inside cells.
2. Viruses gain access to host cells because they have attachment sites for receptors on the host cell.
3. Visible signs of viral infections are called cytopathic effects (CPE).
4. Some viruses cause cytocidal effects (cell death), and others cause noncytocidal effects (not lethal).
5. Cytopathic effects include stopping mitosis, lysis, formation of inclusion bodies, cell fusion, antigenic changes, chromosomal changes, and transformation.

Pathogenic Properties of Fungi, Protozoa, Helminths, and Algae (pp. 443–444)

1. Symptoms of fungal infections can be caused by toxins, protease, and allergic responses.
2. Symptoms of protozoan and helminthic diseases can be caused by damage to host tissue or by the metabolic waste products of the parasite.
3. Some protozoa change their surface antigens while growing in a host, thus avoiding destruction by the host's antibodies.
4. Some algae produce neurotoxins that cause paralysis or memory loss when ingested by humans.

Portals of Exit (pp. 444–445)

1. Pathogens leave a host by portals of exit.
2. Three common portals of exit are the respiratory tract via coughing or sneezing, the digestive canal via saliva or feces, and the genital system via secretions from the vagina or penis.
3. Skin wounds, arthropods, and contaminated needles provide a portal of exit for bloodborne microbes.

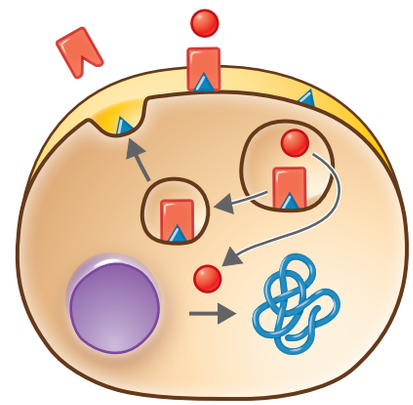
Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the back of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. Compare pathogenicity with virulence.
2. How are capsules and cell wall components related to pathogenicity? Give specific examples.
3. Describe how hemolysins, leukocidins, coagulase, kinases, hyaluronidase, siderophores, and IgA proteases might contribute to pathogenicity.
4. Explain how drugs that bind each of the following would affect pathogenicity:
   a. iron in the host's blood
   b. *N. gonorrhoeae* fimbriae
   c. *S. pyogenes* M protein
5. Compare and contrast the following aspects of endotoxins and exotoxins: bacterial source, chemistry, toxigenicity, and pharmacology. Give an example of each toxin.
6. DRAW IT Label this diagram to show how the Shiga toxin enters and inhibits protein synthesis in a human cell.



7. Describe the factors contributing to the pathogenicity of fungi, protozoa, and helminths.

8. Which of the following genera is the most infectious?

Genus	ID_{50}	Genus	ID_{50}
Legionella	1 cell	*Shigella*	200 cells
Salmonella	10^5 cells	*Treponema*	52 cells

9. How can viruses and protozoa avoid being killed by the host's immune response?
10. NAME IT The *Opa* gene is used to identify this endotoxin-producing bacterium that grows well in the high-CO_2 conditions inside phagocytes.

Multiple Choice

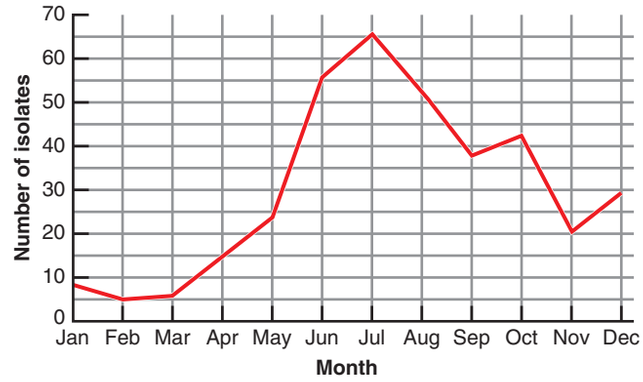
1. The removal of plasmids reduces virulence in which of the following organisms?
   a. *C. tetani*
   b. *E. coli*
   c. *S. enterica*
   d. *S. mutans*
   e. *C. botulinum*
2. What is the LD_{50} for the bacterial toxin tested in the following example?

Dilution (μg/kg)	No. of Animals Died	No. of Animals Survived
a. 6	0	6
b. 12.5	0	6
c. 25	3	3
d. 50	4	2
e. 100	6	0

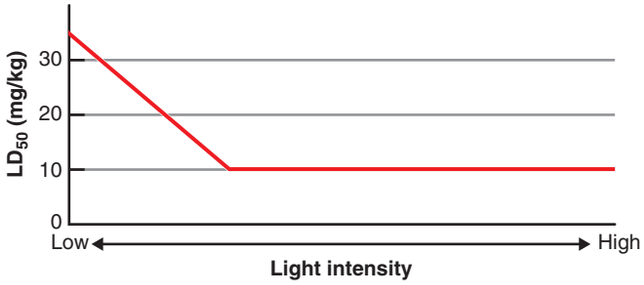
3. Which of the following is *not* a portal of entry for pathogens?
   a. mucous membranes of the respiratory tract
   b. mucous membranes of the digestive canal
   c. skin
   d. blood
   e. parenteral route
4. All of the following are related to bacterial infection. Which would prevent all of the others?
   a. vaccination against fimbriae
   b. phagocytosis
   c. inhibition of phagocytic digestion
   d. destruction of adhesins
   e. alteration of cytoskeleton
5. The ID_{50} for *Campylobacter* sp. is 500 cells; the ID_{50} for *Cryptosporidium* sp. is 100 cells. Which of the following statements is *false*?
   a. Both microbes are pathogens.
   b. Both microbes produce infections in 50% of the inoculated hosts.
   c. *Cryptosporidium* is more virulent than *Campylobacter.*
   d. *Campylobacter* and *Cryptosporidium* are equally virulent; they cause infections in the same number of test animals.
   e. *Cryptosporidium* infections are acquired more easily than *Campylobacter* infections.
6. An encapsulated bacterium can be virulent because the capsule
   a. resists phagocytosis.
   b. is an endotoxin.
   c. destroys host tissues.
   d. kills host cells.
   e. has no effect; because many pathogens do not have capsules, capsules do not contribute to virulence.
7. A drug that binds to mannose on human cells would prevent
   a. the entrance of *Vibrio* enterotoxin.
   b. the attachment of pathogenic *E. coli*.
   c. the action of botulinum toxin.
   d. streptococcal pneumonia.
   e. the action of diphtheria toxin.
8. The earliest smallpox vaccines were infected tissue rubbed into the skin of a healthy person. The recipient of such a vaccine usually developed a mild case of smallpox, recovered, and was immune thereafter. What is the most likely reason this vaccine did not kill more people?
   a. Skin is the wrong portal of entry for smallpox.
   b. The vaccine consisted of a mild form of the virus.
   c. Smallpox is normally transmitted by skin-to-skin contact.
   d. Smallpox is a virus.
   e. The virus mutated.
9. Which of the following does *not* represent the same mechanism for avoiding host defenses as the others?
   a. Rabies virus attaches to the receptor for the neurotransmitter acetylcholine.
   b. *Salmonella* attaches to the receptor for epidermal growth factor.
   c. *Lymphocryptovirus* (mononucleosis) virus binds to the host receptor for complement protein.
   d. Surface protein genes in *N. gonorrhoeae* mutate frequently.
   e. none of the above
10. Which of the following statements is true?
    a. The primary goal of a pathogen is to kill its host.
    b. Evolution selects for the most virulent pathogens.
    c. A successful pathogen doesn't kill its host before it is transmitted.
    d. A successful pathogen never kills its host.

Analysis

1. The following graph shows confirmed cases of enteropathogenic *E. coli*. Why is the incidence seasonal?



2. The cyanobacterium *Microcystis aeruginosa* produces a peptide that is toxic to humans. According to the following graph, during what season is this bacterium most toxic?



3. When *Salmonella* Typhimurium is injected into rats, the ID_{50} is 10^6 cells. If sulfonamides are injected with the salmonellae, the ID_{50} is 35 cells. Explain the change in ID_{50} value.
4. How do each of the following strategies contribute to the virulence of the pathogen? What disease does each organism cause?

Strategy	Pathogen
Changes its cell wall after entry into host	*Yersinia pestis*
Uses urea to produce ammonia	*Helicobacter pylori*
Causes host to make more receptors	*Enterovirus rhinovirus*

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. On July 8, a woman was given an antibiotic for presumptive sinusitis. However, over the next 4 days the sinusitis worsened and was accompanied by severe pain and tightness of the jaw. On July 12, the patient was admitted to a hospital with severe facial spasms. She reported that on July 5 she had incurred a puncture wound at the base of her big toe; she cleaned the wound but did not seek medical attention. What caused her symptoms? Was her condition due to an infection or an intoxication? Can she transmit this condition to another person?
2. Explain whether each of the following examples is a food infection or intoxication. What is the probable etiological agent in each case?
   a. Eighty-two people in Louisiana developed diarrhea, nausea, headache, and fever from 4 hours to 2 days after eating shrimp.
   b. Two people in Vermont developed malaise, nausea, blurred vision, breathing difficulty, and numbness 3 to 6 hours after eating barracuda caught in Florida.
3. Cancer patients undergoing chemotherapy are normally *more* susceptible to infections. However, a patient receiving an antitumor drug that affects eukaryotic cytoskeletons was resistant to *Salmonella*. Provide a possible mechanism for the resistance.

16 Innate Immunity: Nonspecific Defenses of the Host

From our discussion to this point, you can see that pathogenic microorganisms are endowed with special properties that enable them to cause disease if given the right opportunity. If microorganisms never encountered resistance from the host, we would constantly be ill and would die of various diseases after a short life. In most cases, however, our body's defenses prevent this from happening. Some of these defenses are designed to keep out microorganisms altogether, other defenses remove the microorganisms if they do get in, and still others combat them if they remain inside.

In this chapter we discuss the first two lines of defense against pathogens, which we call the *innate immunity defenses*. The first line of defense is our skin and mucous membranes. The second line of defense consists of phagocytes, inflammation, fever, and antimicrobial substances produced by the body. The Clinical Case in this chapter describes one problem that can occur if phagocytes (blue in the photograph) don't function properly.

See the following **Big Picture** overview of the entire immune system.

▶ **A neutrophil (blue) phagocytizing *Aspergillus* spores (red).**

In the Clinic

You are an emergency room nurse caring for Madge, a 30-year-old female who has received a kidney transplant. She is currently being treated for septic shock—her third episode of this infection in her lifetime. Madge says that since childhood she has always been very susceptible to recurring infections. She is thankful that so far, her transplanted kidney is functioning well and shows no signs of rejection or damage. You run tests that show leukocytosis (an increase in the number of white blood cells), normal levels of antibodies, and a complement protein C6 deficiency. **What is the cause of Madge's frequent infections, and how does it relate to her transplant tolerance?**

Hint: Read about leukocyte response to infections and the role of the complement system ahead; also see the discussion of testing for complement in the Clinical Focus box.

The Concept of Immunity

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

16-1 Differentiate innate and adaptive immunity.

16-2 Define *Toll-like receptors.*

When microbes attack our bodies, we defend ourselves by utilizing our various mechanisms of immunity. **Immunity**, also called **resistance**, is the ability to ward off disease caused by microbes or their products and to protect against environmental agents such as pollen, harmful chemicals, and animal dander. Lack of immunity is referred to as **susceptibility**. As just noted, there are two types of immunity: innate and adaptive. **Innate immunity** refers to defenses that are present at birth. They are always available to provide rapid responses to protect us against disease. Innate immunity does not involve recognition of a specific microbe. Further, innate immunity has no memory response, that is, a more rapid and stronger immune reaction to the same microbe at a later date. Innate immunity first-line defenses include skin and mucous membranes, and the second-line defenses include natural killer cells, phagocytes, inflammation, fever, and antimicrobial substances. Innate immune responses represent immunity's early-warning system and are designed to prevent microbes from gaining access into the body and to help eliminate those that do gain access.

Adaptive immunity is based on a specific response to a specific microbe once a microbe has breached the innate immunity defenses. It adjusts to handle a particular microbe. Unlike innate immunity, adaptive immunity is slower to respond, but it does have a memory component that allows the body to more effectively target the same pathogens in the future. Adaptive immunity involves lymphocytes (a type of white blood cell) called T cells (T lymphocytes) and B cells (B lymphocytes) and will be discussed in detail in Chapter 17. Here, we concentrate on innate immunity.

Cells of the innate immune system respond to pathogens and activate adaptive immunity. Responses of the innate system are activated by protein receptors in their plasma membranes. Among these activators are **Toll-like receptors*** **(TLRs)**. These TLRs attach to various pattern recognition receptors (PRRs) commonly found on pathogens; these PRRs are called **pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs)** (see Figure 16.8). Examples include the lipopolysaccharide (LPS) of the outer membrane of gram-negative bacteria, the flagellin in the flagella of motile bacteria, the peptidoglycan in the cell wall of gram-positive bacteria, the DNA of bacteria, and the DNA and RNA of viruses. TLRs also attach to components of fungi and parasites.

When the TLRs on these cells encounter the PAMPs of microbes, such as the LPS of gram-negative bacteria, the TLRs induce the defensive cells to release chemicals called cytokines. **Cytokines** (*cyto-* = cell; *-kinesis* = motion) are proteins that regulate the intensity and duration of immune responses. One role of cytokines is to recruit other macrophages and dendritic cells, as well as other defensive cells, to isolate and destroy the microbes as part of the inflammatory response. Cytokines can also activate the T cells and B cells involved in adaptive immunity. You will learn more about the different cytokines and their functions in Chapter 17.

As you learn the individual and unique components of the innate and adaptive immune systems, you will also see that they do not operate independently. In fact, they function as a highly interactive and cooperative "supersystem" that produces a combined response that is more effective than either component can produce separately. Certain molecular and cellular components of the immune system serve important functions in both types of immunity. One example of the cooperation between the two immune systems, which you will learn about later in the chapter, involves macrophages and dendritic cells. These cells provide a link between innate and adaptive immunity.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **16-1** Which defense system, innate or adaptive immunity, prevents entry of microbes into the body?
- **16-2** What relationship do Toll-like receptors have to pathogen-associated molecular patterns?

First Line of Defense: Skin and Mucous Membranes

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

16-3 Describe the role of the skin and mucous membranes in innate immunity.

16-4 Differentiate physical from chemical factors, and list five examples of each.

16-5 Describe the role of normal microbiota in innate immunity.

The skin and mucous membranes are the body's first line of defense against environmental pathogens. This function results from both physical and chemical factors.

Physical Factors

Physical factors include barriers to entry and processes that remove microbes from the body's surface. The intact **skin** is the human body's largest organ in terms of weight and is an extremely important component of the first line of defense.

*Fruit flies defend themselves from fungal infections by means of a protein called *Toll*—named for the German word for weird or strange. The term derives from the fact that the Toll protein also is involved in development of the fruit fly embryo and that flies without it have a strange, or weird, appearance.

BIG PICTURE

Immunity

Every day the human body wages war with microbial pathogens needing a place to live.

First-Line Defenses

First-line defenses keep pathogens on the outside or neutralize them before infection begins. The skin, mucous membranes, and certain antimicrobial substances are part of these defenses.

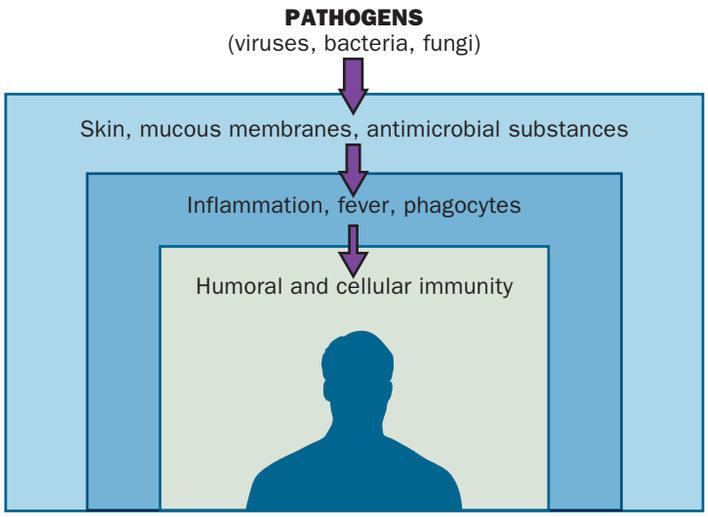
Second-Line Defenses

Second-line defenses slow or contain infections when first-line defenses fail. They include proteins that produce inflammation, fever that enhances cytokine activity, and phagocytes and natural killer (NK) cells, which attack and destroy cancer cells and virus-infected cells. The defensive cells of innate immunity are shown in the following table.

Third-Line Defenses

Third-line defenses, shown in the following table, include lymphocytes that target specific pathogens for destruction when the second-line defenses don't contain infections. It includes a memory component that allows the body to more effectively respond to that same pathogen in the future.

First- and second-line defenses are part of the **innate immune system**, whereas the third-line defenses are referred to as the **adaptive immune system (Chapter 17)**. Many leukocytes (white blood cells) coordinate efforts in controlling infections in the second and third lines of immune defense.

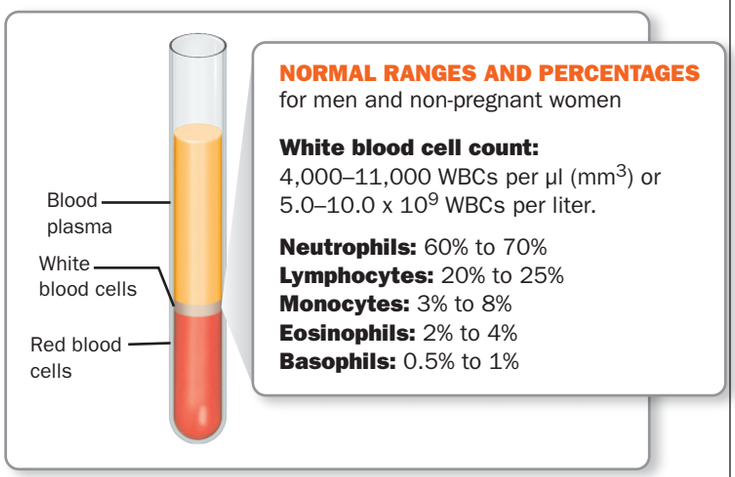


Innate or Adaptive	Cell Type	Description	Function
INNATE	Basophil	Granulocyte	Releases histamines that cause inflammation.
	Eosinophil	Granulocyte	Kills parasites with oxidative burst.
	Mast cell	Granulocyte	Antigen-presenting cells; produce antimicrobial peptides.
BOTH	Neutrophil	Granulocyte	Phagocytizes bacteria and fungi.
	Monocyte	Agranulocyte	Precursor to macrophages. Some macrophages are fixed in certain organs while others wander tissues, causing inflammation. All perform phagocytosis.
	Dendritic cell	Agranulocyte (many surface projections)	In skin and respiratory and intestinal mucosa, phagocytizes bacteria and presents antigens to T cells.
	Natural killer (NK) cell	Agranulocyte (lymphocyte)	Kills cancer cells and virus-infected cells.
ADAPTIVE	Plasmocyte, B cell	Agranulocyte (lymphocyte)	Recognizes antigens and produces antibodies.
	T cells T Helper (T_H) cell Cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL) T regulatory (T_{reg}) cell	Agranulocyte (lymphocyte)	T_H cells secrete cytokines. They are $CD4^+$ cells that bind MHC class II molecules on antigen-presenting cells (APCs). CTLs recognize and kill specific "nonself" cells. They are $CD8^+$ cells that bind to MHC class I molecules. T_{reg} cells are $CD4^+$ cells that destroy cells that do not correctly recognize "self" cells.

What Do Blood Cell Counts Tell Us About Patient Health?

White Blood Cell Counts

White blood cell (WBC) counts measure the number of leukocytes found in the blood. A related test, called *differential white blood cell count*, breaks down the white blood cell count further, identifying the percentages of eosinophils, basophils, neutrophils, monocytes, and lymphocytes. Abnormal blood cell counts give health care providers important clues for diagnosing infections and other conditions.



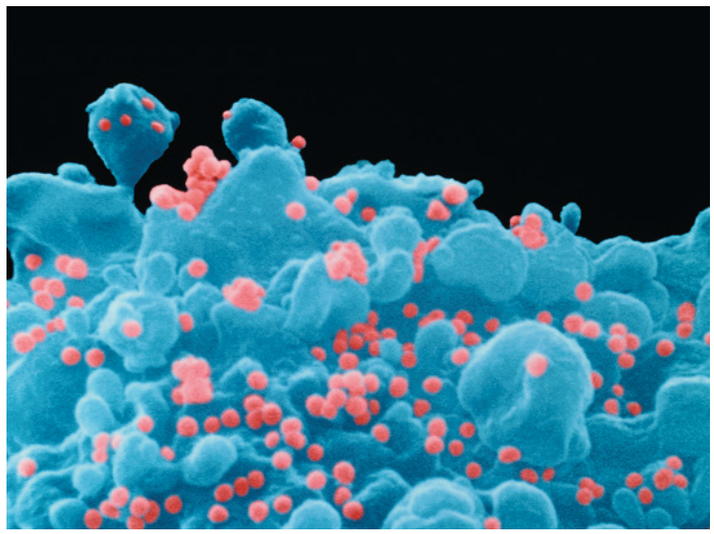
High White Blood Cell Counts

A high white blood cell count shows the patient is producing a higher than average number of leukocytes. This typically occurs when the patient battles a bacterial infection. High white blood cell counts may also stem from autoimmune disorders that result in too much inflammatory response, such as rheumatoid arthritis, and from leukemia, a cancer of the blood. Some drugs can cause high white blood cell counts as a side effect; these include certain asthma medications such as albuterol, epinephrine, and corticosteroids.

◀ Serial monitoring of the white blood cell count is used to monitor treatment for infants battling the bacterial infection pertussis. Rapidly rising high white blood cell counts have been shown to be associated with higher mortality among infants.

Low White Blood Cell Counts

A normal white blood cell count is between 4000 and 11,000 cells/µl. A low white blood cell count shows the patient has fewer leukocytes than expected. A low neutrophil count, in particular, is instructive. Even bacteria that generally live in the digestive canal without causing disease may result in disease when the patient's neutrophil count drops below 500 neutrophils per µl of blood. Low white blood cell counts may result from viral infections or pneumonia. They may also be caused from autoimmune diseases such as lupus; certain cancers, such as lymphoma; and radiation and other cancer treatments. White blood cell counts may also be low when a patient has an extremely severe bacterial infection, such as septicemia. Finally, numerous drugs may also cause low white blood cell counts, including a variety of antibiotics, diuretics, and anticancer medications.



▲ T cell (blue) infected with HIV. Virus particles (pink) can be seen budding from the infected cell. HIV infects T_H lymphocytes.

KEY CONCEPTS

- Innate immunity involves the first- and second-line defenses.
- Adaptive immunity involves third-line defenses.
- Innate immune actions are fast but nonspecific. Adaptive immune actions are slower, but specific to pathogens, and have a memory component.

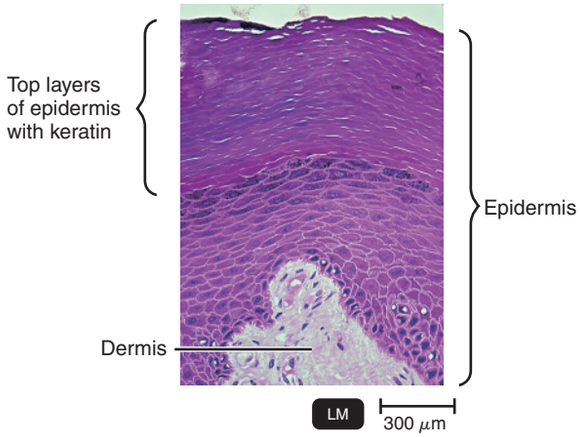


Figure 16.1 A section through human skin. The thin layers at the top of this photomicrograph contain keratin. These layers and the darker purple cells beneath them make up the epidermis. The region below the epidermis is the dermis.

Q What is the function of keratin in the epidermis?

It consists of the dermis and the epidermis (Figure 16.1). The **dermis**, the skin's inner, thicker portion, is composed of connective tissue. The **epidermis**, the outer, thinner portion, is in direct contact with the external environment. The epidermis consists of many layers of continuous sheets of tightly packed epithelial cells with little or no material between the cells. The top layer of epidermal cells is dead and contains a protective protein called **keratin**. The periodic shedding of the top layer helps remove microbes at the surface. In addition, the dryness of the skin is a major factor in inhibiting microbial growth on the skin. When the skin is frequently moist, as in hot, humid climates, skin infections are quite common, especially fungal infections such as athlete's foot. These fungi hydrolyze keratin when water is available.

If we consider the closely packed cells, continuous layering, the presence of keratin, and the dryness and shedding of the skin, we can see why the intact skin provides such a formidable barrier: Microorganisms rarely, if ever, penetrate the intact surface of healthy epidermis. However, when the epithelial surface is broken as a result of burns, cuts, puncture wounds, or other conditions, a subcutaneous (below-the-skin) infection often develops. The bacteria most likely to cause infection are the staphylococci that normally inhabit the epidermis, hair follicles, and sweat and oil glands of the skin.

Another group of epithelial cells, the *endothelial cells* that line blood and lymphatic vessels, are not closely packed like those of the epidermis. Their looser arrangement permits defensive cells to move from blood into tissues during inflammation, but it also permits microbes to move into and out of blood and lymph.

Mucous membranes also consist of an epithelial layer and an underlying connective tissue layer. They are an important component of the first line of defense. Mucous membranes line the entire digestive canal and the respiratory and genitourinary tracts. The epithelial layer of a mucous membrane secretes a fluid called **mucus**, a slightly viscous (thick) glycoprotein produced by goblet cells of a mucous membrane. Among other functions, mucus prevents the tracts from drying out. Some pathogens that can thrive on mucus are able to penetrate the membrane if they are present in sufficient numbers. *Treponema pallidum* is such a pathogen. This penetration may be facilitated by toxic substances produced by the bacterial cells, prior injury by viral infection, or mucosal irritation.

Besides the physical barrier presented by the skin and mucous membranes, several other physical factors help protect certain epithelial surfaces. One mechanism that protects eyes is the **lacrimal apparatus**, a group of structures that manufactures and drains tears (Figure 16.2). The lacrimal glands, located toward the upper, outermost portion of each eye socket, produce the tears and pass them under the upper eyelid. From here, tears pass toward the corner of the eye near the nose and into two small holes that lead through tubes (lacrimal canals) to the nose. The tears are spread over the surface of the eyeball by blinking. Normally, the tears evaporate or pass into the nose as fast as they are produced. This continual washing action helps keep microorganisms from settling on the surface of the eye. If an irritating substance or large numbers of microorganisms come in contact with the eye, the lacrimal glands start to secrete heavily, and the tears accumulate more rapidly than they can be carried away. This excessive production is a protective mechanism because the excess tears dilute and wash away the irritating substance or microorganisms before infection can occur.

In a cleansing action very similar to that of tears, **saliva**, produced by the salivary glands, helps dilute the numbers of microorganisms and wash them from the surface of the teeth and the mucous membrane of the mouth. This helps prevent colonization by microbes.

CLINICAL CASE Missing in Action

Two-year-old Jacob is back in the pediatrician's office with another high fever. Jacob has a history of recurrent skin infections, fever, and chronically enlarged lymph nodes.

Jacob's pediatrician notices that his lung sounds are not clear, so he sends Jacob for a chest X-ray exam. Results show a mass in Jacob's right lung. The mass is pneumonia, and Jacob's pediatrician treats him with antibiotics. A few weeks after he finishes his antibiotics, Jacob develops pneumonia again. This time Jacob's pediatrician orders a biopsy of the lung mass, and the culture reveals *Aspergillus* fungus.

Why isn't Jacob's innate immunity protecting him from infections? Read on to find out.

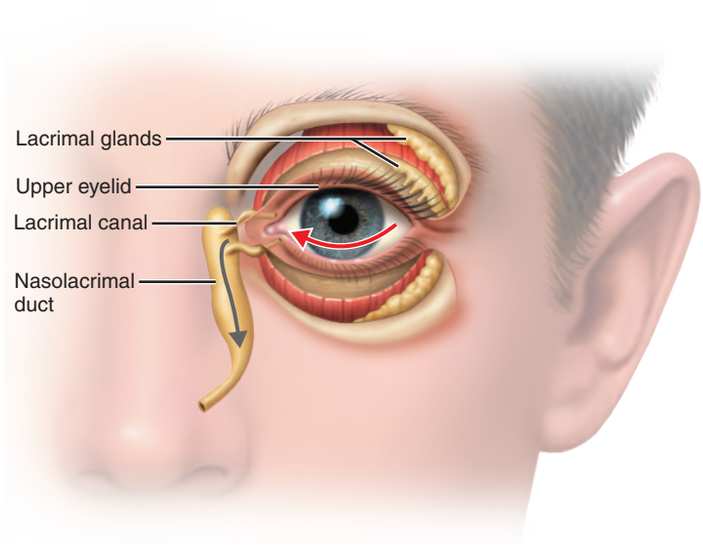


Figure 16.2 The lacrimal apparatus. The washing action of tears over the surface of the eyeball is shown by the red arrow. Tears produced by the lacrimal glands pass across the surface of the eyeball into two small holes that convey the tears into the lacrimal canals and the nasolacrimal duct. From here tears pass into the nose, as shown by the gray arrow.

Q How does the lacrimal apparatus protect the eyes against infections?

The respiratory tract and digestive canal have many physical forms of defense. Mucus traps many of the microorganisms that enter these tracts. The mucous membrane of the nose also has mucus-coated **hairs** that filter inhaled air and trap particles greater than 10 μm. Smaller (to 2 μm) particles will be trapped in mucus of the lower respiratory tract. The cells of the mucous membrane of the lower respiratory tract are covered with **cilia**. By moving synchronously, these cilia propel inhaled dust and microorganisms that have become trapped in mucus upward toward the throat. This so-called **ciliary escalator** (Figure 16.3) keeps the mucus blanket moving toward the throat at a rate of 1 to 3 cm per hour; coughing and sneezing speed up the escalator. SARS-CoV-2 infects cells of the respiratory tract and destroys cilia. Some substances in cigarette smoke are also toxic to cilia and can seriously impair the functioning of the ciliary escalator by inhibiting or destroying the cilia. Mechanically ventilated patients are vulnerable to respiratory tract infections because the ciliary escalator mechanism is inhibited.

Microorganisms are also prevented from entering the lower respiratory tract by a small lid of cartilage called the **epiglottis**, which covers the larynx (voicebox) during swallowing. The external ear canal contains hairs and **earwax** (*cerumen*), which help prevent microbes, dust, insects, and water from entering the ear.

The cleansing of the urethra by the flow of **urine** is another physical factor that prevents microbial colonization in the genitourinary tract. As you will see later, when urine flow is obstructed—by catheters, for example—urinary tract infections may develop. **Vaginal secretions** likewise move microorganisms out of the female body.

Peristalsis, **defecation**, **vomiting**, and **diarrhea** also expel microbes. Peristalsis is a series of coordinated contractions that propels food along the digestive canal. Mass peristalsis within the large intestine propels its contents into the rectum, resulting in defecation. In response to microbial toxins, the muscles of the digestive canal contract vigorously, resulting in vomiting and/or diarrhea, which may also rid the body of microbes. Finally, tuft cells in the small intestine respond to helminth and protozoa parasites with production of cytokines that promote peristalsis, which helps expel the parasite. Tuft cells are named for their long microvilli extending into the intestine.

Chemical Factors

Physical factors alone do not account for the high degree of resistance shown by skin and mucous membranes against microbial invasion. Certain chemical factors also play important roles.

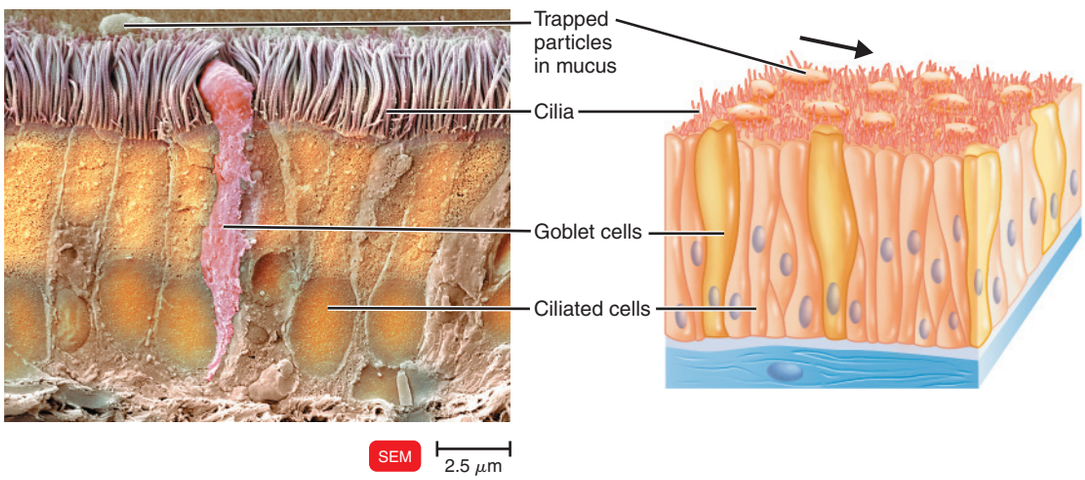


Figure 16.3 The ciliary escalator.

Q What can happen if the ciliary escalator is inhibited?

Sebaceous (oil) glands of the skin produce an oily substance called **sebum** that prevents hair from drying and becoming brittle. Sebum also forms a protective film over the surface of the skin. One of the components of sebum is unsaturated fatty acids, which inhibit the growth of certain pathogenic bacteria and fungi. The low pH of the skin, between pH 3 and 5, is caused in part by the secretion of fatty acids and lactic acid. The skin's acidity probably discourages the growth of many other microorganisms.

Bacteria that live commensally on the skin decompose sloughed-off skin cells, and the resultant organic molecules and end-products of their metabolism produce body odor. Certain bacteria commonly found on the skin metabolize sebum, and this metabolism forms free fatty acids that cause the inflammatory response associated with acne (as we'll see in Chapter 21). Isotretinoin, a derivative of vitamin A that prevents sebum formation, is a treatment for a very severe type of acne called cystic acne.

The sweat glands of the skin produce **perspiration**, which helps maintain body temperature, eliminates certain wastes, and flushes microorganisms from the surface of the skin. Perspiration also contains **lysozyme**, an enzyme capable of breaking down cell walls of gram-positive bacteria and, to a lesser extent, gram-negative bacteria (see Figure 4.13). Specifically, lysozyme hydrolyzes chemical bonds between sugars in peptidoglycan, destroying the cell wall. Lysozyme is also found in tears, saliva, nasal secretions, tissue fluids, and urine, where it exhibits its antimicrobial activity. Alexander Fleming was studying lysozyme in 1928 when he accidentally discovered the antimicrobial effects of penicillin (see Figure 1.6).

Earwax, besides serving as a physical barrier, also functions as a chemical protectant. It is a mixture of secretions from glands producing earwax as well as from the sebaceous glands, which produce sebum. The secretions are rich in fatty acids, giving the ear canal a low pH, between 3 and 5, which inhibits the growth of many pathogenic microbes. Earwax also contains many dead cells from the lining of the ear canal.

Saliva contains not only the enzyme salivary amylase that digests starch, but also a number of substances that inhibit microbial growth. These include lysozyme, urea, and uric acid. The slightly acidic pH of saliva (6.55–6.85) also inhibits some microbes. Saliva additionally contains an antibody (lgA) that prevents attachment of microbes so that they cannot penetrate mucous membranes.

Gastric juice is produced by the glands of the stomach. It is a mixture of hydrochloric acid, enzymes, and mucus. The very high acidity of gastric juice (pH 1.2–3.0) is sufficient to destroy most bacteria and bacterial toxins, except those of *Clostridium botulinum* and *Staphylococcus aureus*. Nevertheless, many enteric pathogens are protected by food particles and can enter the small intestine. In contrast, the bacterium *Helicobacter pylori* neutralizes stomach acid, thereby allowing the bacterium to grow in the stomach. Its growth initiates an immune response that results in gastritis and ulcers.

Vaginal secretions also have a protective role, defending against bacteria in two ways. Glycogen produced by vaginal epithelial cells is broken down into lactic acid by *Lactobacillus* spp. This creates an acidic pH (3–5) that inhibits bacterial growth. Cervical mucus also has some antibacterial activity. Similarly, **urine**, in addition to containing lysozyme, has an acidic pH (average 6) that inhibits microbes.

Later in the chapter, we will discuss antimicrobial peptides, another group of chemicals that play an important role in innate immunity.

Normal Microbiota and Innate Immunity

Recall from Chapter 14 that certain microbes establish more or less permanent residence (colonization) in and on the body but normally do not produce disease. They constitute the normal microbiota and play an important role in preventing the overgrowth of harmful microbes. Technically speaking, the normal microbiota are not normally considered part of the innate immune system, but they are discussed here because of the considerable protection they afford. Basically, the normal microbiota provide resistance to disease in three principal ways.

1. They are well adapted to the limited number of attachment sites on which they live. They have a competitive advantage over pathogenic microbes for these colonization sites because they dominate the available space and nutrients (competitive exclusion). This colonization resistance is especially effective against microbes such as *Clostridioides difficile*, *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, and *Candida albicans*.
2. Normal microbiota produce substances that inhibit or kill pathogens. For example, *Escherichia coli* bacteria in the large intestines produce bacteriocins that inhibit or kill bacteria of the same or closely related species. Some normal microbiota, such as *Lactobacillus* in the vagina, produce hydrogen peroxide under anaerobic conditions. This has shown to be effective against infections caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis*, *Gardnerella vaginalis*, and *Candida albicans*.
3. Development of the immune system is dependent on the presence of microbiota even before birth. See **Exploring the Microbiome** later in this chapter.

In **commensalism**, one organism uses the body of a larger organism as its physical environment and may make use of the body to obtain nutrients. Thus in commensalism, one organism benefits while the other is unaffected. Most microbes that are part of the commensal microbiota are found on the skin and in the digestive canal. The majority of such microbes are

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

The Microbiome's Shaping of Innate Immunity

Until recently, colonization with microbes at and after birth was assumed to be the main stimulus to the development of our immune system. However, we now know that the development of myeloid cells is influenced by microbiota, and this influence actually begins before birth. Ongoing studies are trying to determine whether microbiota cells directly influence the development of myeloid cells or whether these changes might be due to metabolic products produced by the microbes.

Studies show us that offspring of mice treated with antibiotics during pregnancy have lower numbers of blood neutrophils than offspring of mothers who didn't receive antibiotics. Intestinal colonization with microorganisms in a pregnant mouse increases the number of monocytes in newborn mice, too. The continuous presence of microbiota-derived Toll-like receptors enhances the responses and phagocytosis of neutrophils.

Studies on germ-free mice, which are bred in sterile environments, show even starker immune system changes. Germ-free animals have underdeveloped immune systems compared to mice raised normally, exposed to microbes. Specifically, normal development of myeloid cells in the bone marrow is reduced, resulting in fewer phagocytes and a delayed response to infections. The germ-free mice also have little lymphoid tissue and very low levels of immune proteins in their body fluids. When researchers expose germ-free mice to microorganisms, the animals are unusually susceptible to infection and serious disease.

Strict asepsis is required to raise germ-free mice.

bacteria that have highly specialized attachment mechanisms and precise environmental requirements for survival. Normally, such microbes are harmless, but they may cause disease if their environmental conditions change. These opportunistic pathogens include *E. coli, S. aureus, S. epidermidis, Enterococcus faecalis, Pseudomonas aeruginosa,* and oral streptococci.

Recent interest in the importance of bacteria to human health has led to the study of probiotics. **Probiotics** (*pro* = for, *bios* = life) are live microbial cultures that are ingested and intended to exert a beneficial effect. Probiotics may be administered with *prebiotics*, which are chemicals that selectively promote the growth of beneficial bacteria. One example of probiotic bacteria is lactic acid bacteria (LAB). When LAB colonize the large intestine, the lactic acid and bacteriocins they produce can inhibit the growth of certain pathogens. Several studies have shown that ingesting certain LAB can alleviate diarrhea and prevent colonization by *Salmonella enterica* during antibiotic therapy. Researchers are also testing the use of LAB to prevent surgical wound infections caused by *S. aureus* and vaginal infections caused by *E. coli*. In a Stanford University study, HIV infection was reduced in women treated with LAB that had been genetically modified to produce a protein that binds to HIV's attachment spikes. Results of several studies suggest that giving probiotics with antibiotics reduces the risk of developing *C. difficile*–associated diarrhea. However, probiotics may not always be effective. A recent French study found that although use of probiotics reduced the incidence of pneumonia acquired in intensive care units (ICUs) and length of ICU stay, it did not significantly reduce hospital mortality rates.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **16-3** Identify one physical factor and one chemical factor that prevent microbes from entering the body through skin and mucous membranes.
- **16-4** Identify one physical factor and one chemical factor that prevent microbes from entering or colonizing the body through the eyes, digestive canal, and respiratory tract.
- **16-5** Distinguish microbial antagonism from commensalism.

Second Line of Defense

When microbes penetrate the first line of defense, they encounter a second line of defense that includes defensive cells, such as phagocytic cells; inflammation; fever; and antimicrobial substances.

Before we look at the phagocytic cells, it will be helpful to have an understanding of the cellular components of blood.

Formed Elements in Blood

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

16-6 Classify leukocytes, and describe the roles of granulocytes and monocytes.

16-7 Describe the eight different types of white blood cells, and name a function for each type.

Blood consists of fluid, called **blood plasma,** and **formed elements**—that is, cells and cell fragments suspended in blood plasma. The formed elements include **erythrocytes**, or **red blood cells (RBCs)**; **leukocytes**, or **white blood cells (WBCs)**; and **platelets**. Formed elements are created in red bone marrow by blood stem cells in a process called **hematopoiesis** (hēm-a-tō-POY-ē-sis). It begins when a cell called a *multipotent stem cell* develops into two other types of cells called *myeloid (bone marrow) stem cells* and *lymphoid stem cells*. From these two stem cells, all of the formed elements develop. All of these blood cells are shown in Figure 16.4. More detailed descriptions of the formed elements that concern us most for innate immunity—the leukocytes—are found in Table 16.1.

Leukocytes are divided into two main categories based on their appearance under a light microscope: granulocytes and agranulocytes. **Granulocytes** owe their name to the presence of large granules in their cytoplasm that can be seen with a light microscope after staining. They are differentiated into four types of cells based on how the granules stain: neutrophils, basophils, eosinophils, and mast cells.

Neutrophils stain pale lilac with a mixture of acidic and basic dyes. Neutrophils are also commonly called *polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMNs)*, or *polymorphs*. (The term *polymorphonuclear*

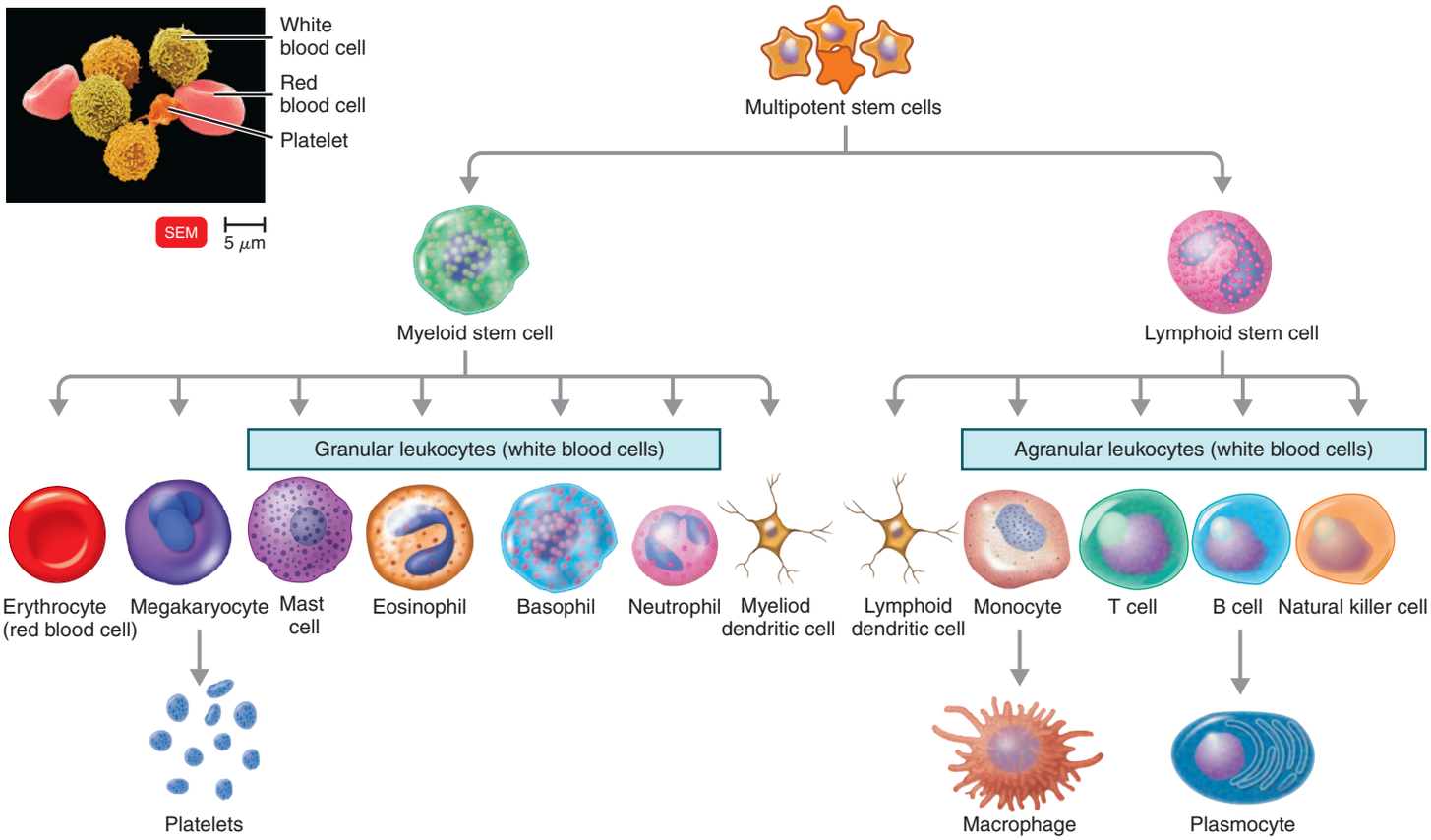
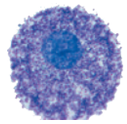
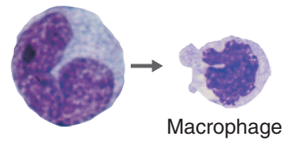
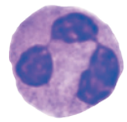
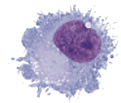
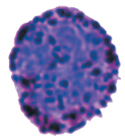
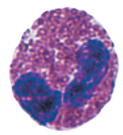
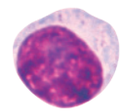
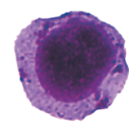


Figure 16.4 Hematopoiesis. The process begins in red bone marrow with a multipotent stem cell.

Q What are the parent cells for granular leukocytes? For agranular leukocytes?

TABLE 16.1 Leukocytes (White Blood Cells)

Granulocytes	LM	Agranulocytes	LM
Mast cell Function: Release chemicals to activate inflammation.	 5 μm	**Monocytes (3–8% total, 300–900/μl)** Function: Monocytes that leave the bloodstream mature into resting or wandering phagocytes (when they mature into macrophages)	 Macrophage 6 μm 7 μm
Neutrophils (PMNs) (60–70% of leukocytes, 1700–7000/μl) Function: Phagocytosis	 5 μm	**Dendritic cells** Functions: Phagocytosis and initiation of adaptive immune responses by presenting antigens	 17 μm
Basophils (0.5–1%, 0–300/μl) Function: Production of histamine	 5 μm	**Lymphocytes (20–25%, 1000–4800/μl)** • **Natural killer (NK) cells** Function: Destroy target cells by cytolysis and apoptosis	 5 μm
Eosinophils (2–4%, 50–500/μl) Functions: Production of toxic proteins against certain parasites; some phagocytosis	 5 μm	• **T cells** Function: Cell-mediated immunity	 5 μm
		• **B cells** Function: Develop into plasmocytes that produce antibodies	 5 μm

refers to the fact that the nuclei of neutrophils contain two to five lobes.) Neutrophils, which are highly phagocytic and motile, are active in the initial stages of an infection. They have the ability to leave the blood, enter an infected tissue, and destroy microbes and foreign particles.

Basophils stain blue-purple with the basic dye methylene blue. Basophils release substances such as histamine that are important in inflammation and allergic responses.

Eosinophils stain red or orange with the acidic dye eosin. Eosinophils are somewhat phagocytic and also have the ability to leave the blood. Their major function is to kill certain parasites, such as helminths. Although eosinophils are physically too small to ingest and destroy helminths, they can attach to the outer surface of the parasites and discharge peroxide ions that destroy them (see Figure 17.16). Their number increases significantly during certain parasitic worm infections and hypersensitivity (allergy) reactions such as eosinophilic asthma, a rare and severe type of asthma. Although the cause of eosinophilic asthma is not known, the signs and symptoms are due to release of cytokines and other chemokines by large numbers of eosinophils in the lungs.

Mast cells stain blue with dark blue granules in the cytoplasm. They are found in tissues throughout the body, especially the skin, but are not normally found in blood. Mast cells release chemicals that activate neutrophils and eosinophils during an infection.

Agranulocytes also have granules in their cytoplasm, but the granules are not visible under the light microscope after staining. There are three different types of agranulocytes: monocytes, dendritic cells, and lymphocytes. **Monocytes** are not actively phagocytic until they leave circulating blood, enter body tissues, and mature into **macrophages**. In fact, the proliferation of lymphocytes is one factor responsible for the swelling of lymph nodes during an infection. As blood and lymph plasma that contain microorganisms pass through organs with macrophages, the microorganisms are removed by phagocytosis. Macrophages also dispose of worn-out blood cells.

Dendritic cells have long extensions that resemble the dendrites of nerve cells, thus their name. There are two subsets of dendritic cells, one derived from lymphoid stem cells and the other of myeloid origin. Functional differences between these subsets is the subject of current research. Dendritic cells are especially abundant in the epidermis of the skin, mucous membranes, the thymus, and lymph nodes. Dendritic cells destroy microbes by phagocytosis and initiate adaptive immune responses by presenting antigens to lymphocytes (see Chapter 17).

Lymphocytes include natural killer cells, T cells, and B cells. **Natural killer (NK) cells** are found in blood, spleen, lymph nodes, and red bone marrow. NK cells have the ability to kill a wide variety of infected body cells and certain tumor cells. NK cells attack any body cells that display abnormal or unusual plasma membrane proteins. The binding of NK cells to a target cell, such as an infected human cell, causes the release of toxic substances from lytic granules in NK cells. *Lytic granules* are a secretory organelle unique to NK cells. Some lytic granules contain a protein called **perforin**, which inserts into the plasma membrane of the target cell and creates channels (perforations) in the membrane. As a result, extracellular fluid flows into the target cell and the cell bursts, a process called **cytolysis** (sī-TOL-i-sis; *cyto-* = cell; *-lysis* = loosening). NK cells also have other granules that release **granzymes**, which are protein-digesting enzymes that induce the target cell to undergo apoptosis, or self-destruction. This type of attack kills infected cells but not the microbes inside the cells; the released microbes, which may or may not be intact, can be destroyed by phagocytes.

T cells and **B cells** are not usually phagocytic but play a key role in adaptive immunity (see Chapter 17). They occur in lymphoid tissues of the lymphoid system and also circulate in blood.

During many kinds of infections, especially bacterial infections, the total number of white blood cells increases as a protective response to combat the microbes; this increase is called *leukocytosis*. During the active stage of infection, the leukocyte count might double, triple, or quadruple, depending on the severity of the infection. Diseases that might cause such an elevation in the leukocyte count include meningitis, infectious mononucleosis, appendicitis, pneumococcal pneumonia, and gonorrhea. Other diseases, such as salmonellosis and brucellosis, and some viral and rickettsial infections may cause a *decrease* in the leukocyte count, called *leukopenia*. Leukopenia may be related to either impaired white blood cell production or the effect of increased sensitivity of white blood cell membranes to damage by complement, antimicrobial serum proteins discussed later in the chapter. Leukocyte increase or decrease can be detected by a **differential white blood cell count**, which is a calculation of the percentage of each kind of white cell in a sample of 100 white blood cells. The percentages in a normal differential white blood cell count are shown in parentheses in Table 16.1.

The Lymphoid System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

16-8 Differentiate the lymphoid and blood circulatory systems.

The **lymphoid** (lymphatic) **system** consists of a fluid called *lymph plasma*, vessels called *lymphatic vessels*, a number of structures and organs containing *lymphoid tissue*, and *red bone marrow*, where blood stem cells develop into blood cells, including lymphocytes (**Figure 16.5**). Lymphoid tissue contains large numbers of lymphocytes and phagocytic cells that participate in immune responses. Lymph nodes are the sites of activation of T cells and B cells, which destroy microbes by immune responses (Chapter 17). Also within lymph nodes are reticular fibers, which trap microbes, and macrophages and dendritic cells, which destroy microbes by phagocytosis.

CLINICAL CASE

Jacob's pediatrician also sends Jacob's blood to the lab for a complete blood count (CBC). The results are shown here:

Red blood cells	4 million/μl
Neutrophils	9700/μl
Basophils	200/μl
Eosinophils	600/μl
Monocytes	1140/μl

Which cells should be protecting Jacob from infection? Based on the results of the CBC, how does Jacob's pediatrician know that something is wrong?

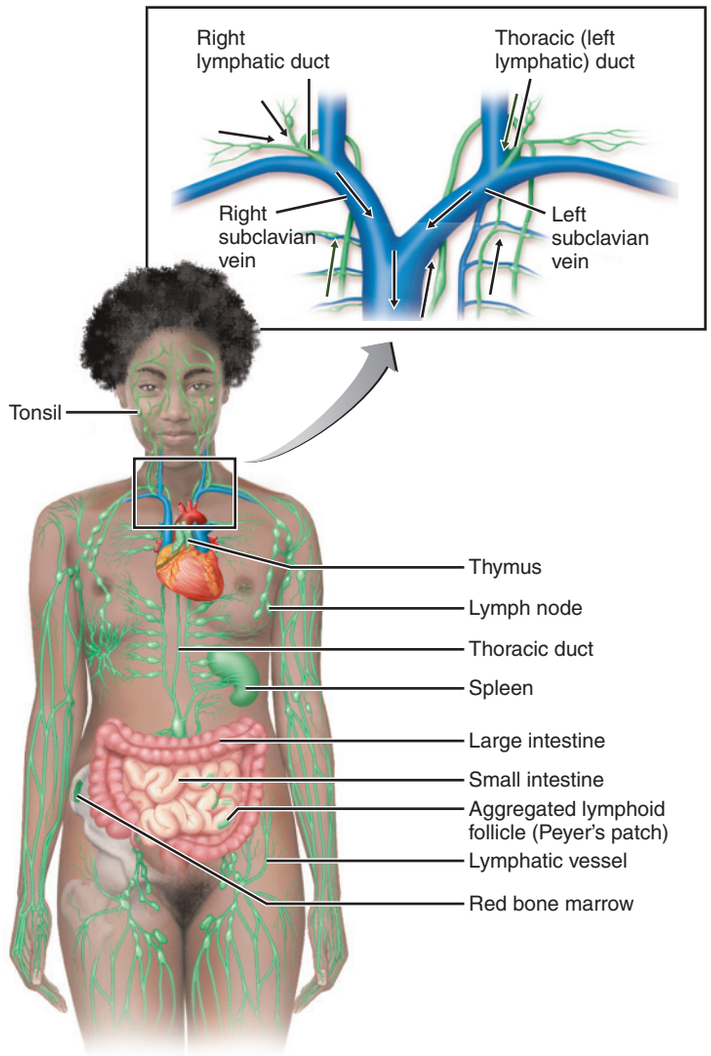
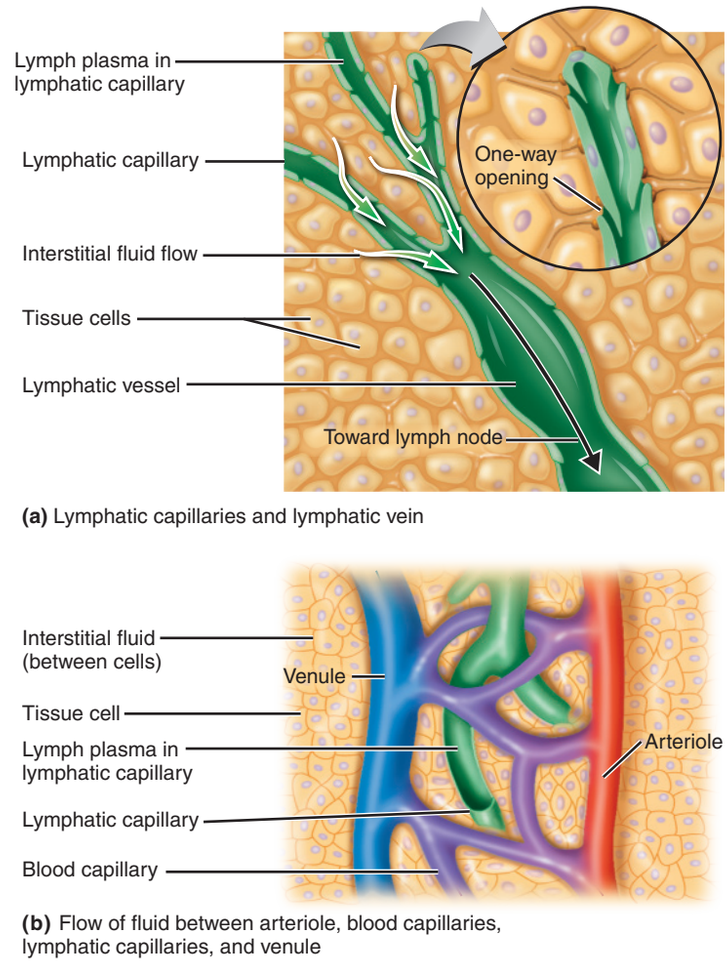


Figure 16.5 The lymphoid system is shown in green. Inset: The arrows indicate the direction of lymph flow.

Q Why do lymph nodes swell during an infection?



(a) Lymphatic capillaries and lymphatic vein

(b) Flow of fluid between arteriole, blood capillaries, lymphatic capillaries, and venule

Figure 16.6 Lymphatic capillaries. Fluid circulating between tissue cells (interstitial fluid) is picked up by lymphatic capillaries.

Q Where does lymph plasma go?

Lymphatic vessels begin as microscopic *lymphatic capillaries* located in spaces between cells (Figure 16.6). The lymphatic capillaries permit interstitial fluid derived from blood plasma to flow into them, but not out. Within the lymphatic capillaries, the fluid is called lymph plasma. Lymphatic capillaries converge to form larger lymphatic vessels. These vessels, like veins, have one-way valves to keep lymph plasma flowing in one direction only. At intervals along the lymphatic vessels, lymph plasma flows through bean-shaped *lymph nodes* (Figure 16.5). All lymph plasma eventually passes into the *thoracic (left lymphatic) duct* and *right lymphatic duct* and then into their respective subclavian veins, where the fluid is now called blood plasma. The blood plasma moves through the cardiovascular system and ultimately becomes interstitial fluid between tissue cells, and another cycle begins.

Lymphoid tissues and organs are scattered throughout the mucous membranes that line the digestive canal and the respiratory, urinary, and genital tracts. They protect against microbes that are ingested or inhaled. Multiple large aggregations of lymphoid tissues are located in specific parts of the body. These include the *tonsils* in the throat and *aggregated lymphoid follicles* (Peyer's patches) in the small intestine. See Figure 17.9.

The *spleen* contains lymphocytes and macrophages that monitor the blood for microbes and secreted products such as toxins, much like lymph nodes monitor lymph plasma. The *thymus* serves as a site for T cell maturation. It also contains dendritic cells and macrophages.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **16-6** Compare the structures and function of monocytes and neutrophils.
- **16-7** Define *differential white blood cell count.*
- **16-8** What is the function of lymph nodes?

Phagocytes

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

16-9 Define *phagocyte* and *phagocytosis*.

16-10 Describe the process of phagocytosis, and include the stages of adherence and ingestion.

Phagocytosis (from Greek words meaning eat and cell) is the ingestion of a microorganism or other substance by a cell. We have previously mentioned phagocytosis as the method of nutrition of certain protozoa. Phagocytosis is also involved in clearing away debris such as dead body cells and denatured proteins. In this chapter, phagocytosis is discussed as a means by which cells in the human body counter infection as part of the second line of defense.

Actions of Phagocytic Cells

Cells that perform phagocytosis are collectively called **phagocytes**. All are types of white blood cells or white blood cell derivatives. When an infection occurs, both granulocytes (especially neutrophils, but also eosinophils) and monocytes migrate to the infected area. Monocytes that leave the blood enlarge and develop into macrophages. Some macrophages, called **resting (fixed) macrophages** or ***histiocytes***, are resident in certain tissues and organs of the body. Resting macrophages are found in the liver (Kupffer's cells), lungs (alveolar macrophages), nervous system (microglial cells), bronchial tubes, spleen (splenic macrophages), lymph nodes, red bone marrow, and the peritoneal cavity surrounding abdominal organs (peritoneal macrophages). Other macrophages are motile and are called **wandering (free) macrophages**; they roam the tissues and gather at sites of infection or inflammation. The monocytes and macrophages derived from monocytes constitute the **mononuclear phagocytic (reticuloendothelial) system**.

During the course of an infection, a shift occurs in the type of white blood cell that predominates in the bloodstream. Granulocytes, especially neutrophils, dominate during the initial phase of bacterial infection, at which time they are actively phagocytic; this dominance is indicated by their increased number in a differential white blood cell count. However, as the infection progresses, the macrophages dominate; they scavenge and phagocytize remaining living bacteria and dead or dying bacteria (Figure 16.7). The increased number of monocytes (which develop into macrophages) is also reflected in a differential white blood cell count.

The Mechanism of Phagocytosis

How does phagocytosis occur? For the convenience of study, we will divide phagocytosis into four main phases: chemotaxis, adherence, ingestion, and digestion (Figure 16.8).

Chemotaxis and Adherence

1 **Chemotaxis** is the chemical attraction of phagocytes to microorganisms. (The mechanism of chemotaxis is discussed in Chapter 4.) Among the chemotactic chemicals that attract phagocytes are microbial products, components of white blood cells and damaged tissue cells, cytokines released by other white blood cells, and, finally, peptides derived from complement—a system of host defense proteins discussed later in the chapter.

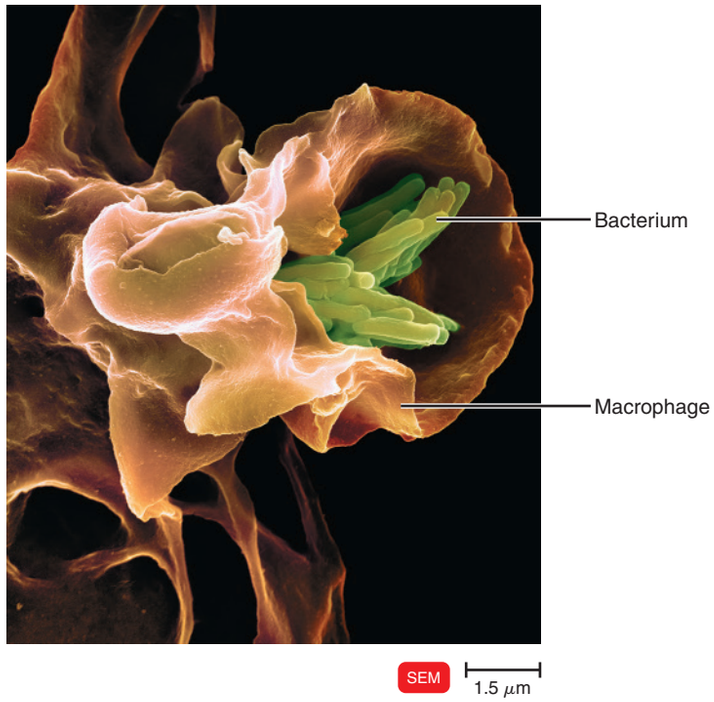


Figure 16.7 A macrophage engulfing *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (green). Macrophages in the mononuclear phagocytic system remove microorganisms after the initial phase of infection.

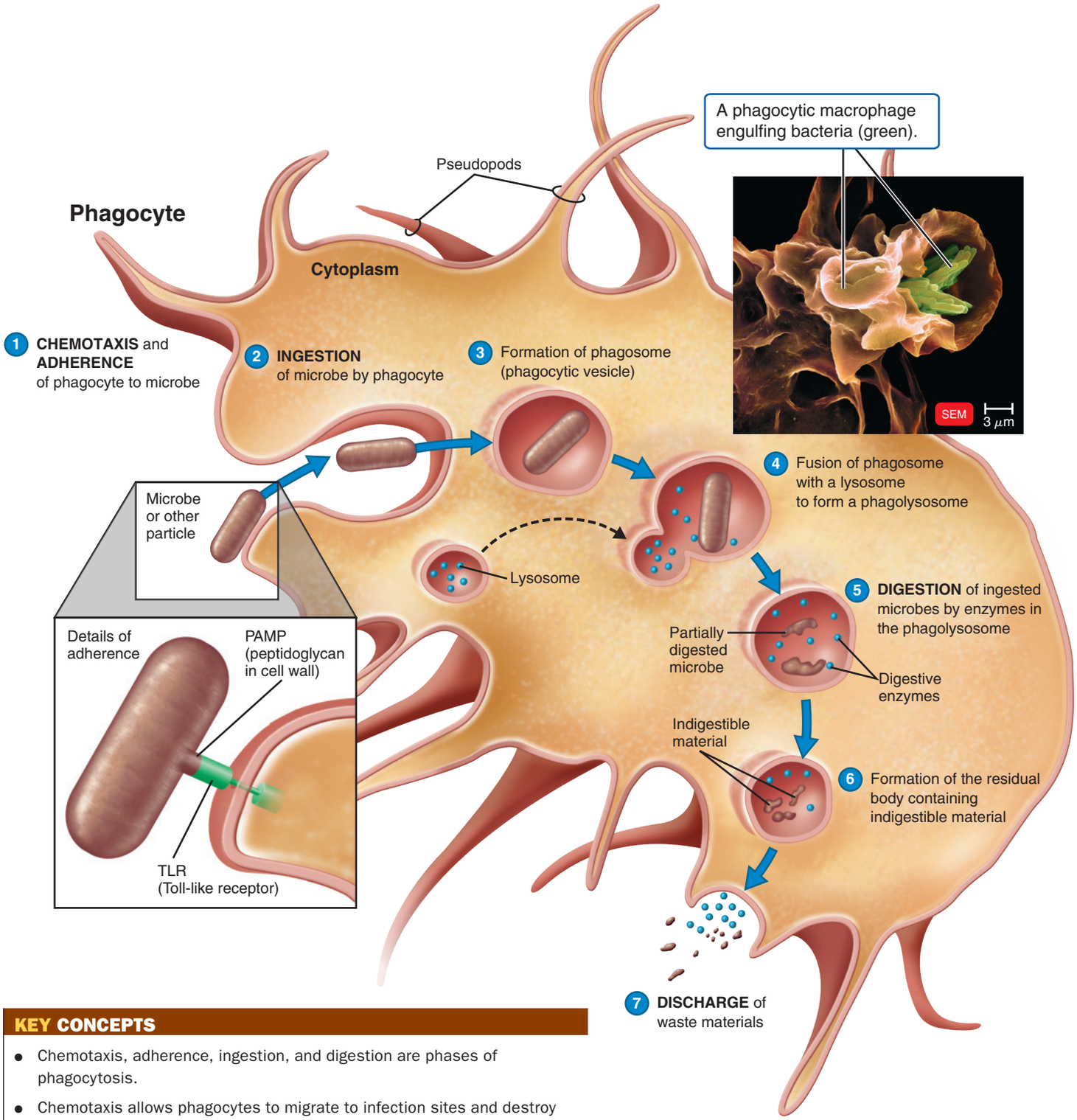
Q What are monocytes?

As it pertains to phagocytosis, **adherence** is the attachment of the phagocyte's plasma membrane to the surface of the microorganism or other foreign material. Adherence is facilitated by the attachment of pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) of microbes to receptors, such as Toll-like receptors (TLRs), on the surface of phagocytes. The binding of PAMPs to TLRs not only initiates phagocytosis, but also induces the phagocyte to release specific cytokines that recruit additional phagocytes.

In some instances, adherence occurs easily, and the microorganism is readily phagocytized. Microorganisms can be more readily phagocytized if they are first coated with certain serum proteins that promote attachment of the microorganisms to the phagocyte. This coating process is called **opsonization**. The proteins that act as *opsonins* include some components of the complement system and antibody molecules (described later in this chapter and in Chapter 17).

FOUNDATION FIGURE 16.8

The Phases of Phagocytosis



KEY CONCEPTS

- Chemotaxis, adherence, ingestion, and digestion are phases of phagocytosis.
- Chemotaxis allows phagocytes to migrate to infection sites and destroy invading bacteria.
- Phagocytosis is an important second line of immune defense. Phagocytes can also stimulate T and B cells.
- Toll-like receptors (TLRs) are a focus of current immunological research.

Ingestion

2. Following adherence, **ingestion** occurs. The plasma membrane of the phagocyte extends projections called **pseudopods** that engulf the microorganism. (See also Figure 16.7.)
3. Once the microorganism is surrounded, the pseudopods meet and fuse, surrounding the microorganism with a sac called a **phagosome**, or *phagocytic vesicle*. The membrane of a phagosome has enzymes that pump protons (H^+) into the phagosome, reducing the pH to about 4. At this pH, hydrolytic enzymes are activated.

Phagolysosome Formation and Digestion

Next, the phagosome pinches off from the plasma membrane and enters the cytoplasm, where it contacts lysosomes that contain digestive enzymes and bactericidal substances (see Chapter 4).

4. On contact, the phagosome and lysosome membranes fuse to form a single, larger structure called a **phagolysosome**.
5. The contents of the phagolysosome brought in by ingestion are digested in the phagolysosome.

Lysosomal enzymes that attack microbial cells directly include lysozyme, which hydrolyzes peptidoglycan in bacterial cell walls. Lipases, proteases, ribonuclease, and deoxyribonuclease hydrolyze other macromolecular components of microorganisms. Lysosomes also contain enzymes that can produce toxic oxygen products such as superoxide radical ($\cdot O_2^-$), hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2), nitric oxide (NO), singlet oxygen ($^1O_2^-$), and hydroxyl radical ($\cdot OH$) (see Chapter 6). These toxic oxygen products are produced by an *oxidative burst*.

CLINICAL CASE

Leukocytes, including neutrophils and macrophages, are the cells listed in the test results that fight infections. According to the lab results, Jacob's white blood cell count is a little high. Leukocytosis, a white blood cell count above normal range, occurs during a fungal infection, but Jacob's pediatrician is concerned that the leukocytes are not doing their job. To check this, he then requests a nitroblue tetrazolium (NBT) test, which is performed on a blood smear on a microscope slide.

Normal neutrophils will reduce the yellow dye, NBT, to an insoluble blue precipitate. Jacob's neutrophils do not produce this result; his neutrophils are not working as they should. Normally, the adherence of a target cell, such as a bacterium, to the neutrophil's plasma membrane stimulates the neutrophil to produce NADPH. This is followed by a lethal oxidative burst of hydrogen peroxide.

What metabolic pathway produces NADPH for a cell?

Other enzymes can make use of these toxic oxygen products in killing ingested microorganisms. For example, the enzyme myeloperoxidase converts chloride (Cl^-) ions and hydrogen peroxide into highly toxic hypochlorous acid (HOCl). The acid contains hypochlorite ions, which are found in household bleach and account for its antimicrobial activity (see Chapter 7).

6. After enzymes have digested the contents of the phagolysosome brought into the cell by ingestion, the phagolysosome contains indigestible material and is called a *residual body*.
7. This residual body then moves toward the cell boundary and discharges its wastes outside the cell.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **16-9** What do resting and wandering macrophages do?
- **16-10** What is the role of TLRs in phagocytosis?

* * *

In addition to providing innate resistance for the host, phagocytosis plays a role in adaptive immunity. Macrophages help T and B cells perform vital adaptive immune functions—this will be discussed in Chapter 17.

In the next section, we will see how phagocytosis often occurs as part of another innate mechanism of resistance: inflammation.

Inflammation

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **16-11** List the stages of inflammation.
- **16-12** Describe the roles of vasodilation, kinins, prostaglandins, and leukotrienes in inflammation.
- **16-13** Describe phagocyte migration.

Damage to the body's tissues triggers a local defensive response called **inflammation**, another component of the second line of defense. The damage can be caused by microbial infection, physical agents (such as heat, radiant energy, electricity, or sharp objects), or chemical agents (acids, bases, and gases). Certain signs and symptoms are associated with inflammation, which you can remember by thinking of the acronym **PRISH**:

P*ain* due to the release of certain chemicals.

Redness because more blood goes to the affected area.

Immobility that results from local loss of function in severe inflammations.

Swelling caused by an accumulation of fluids.

Heat, which is also due to an increase in blood flow to the affected area.

Inflammation has the following functions: (1) to destroy the injurious agent, if possible, and to remove it and its by-products from the body; (2) if destruction is not possible, to

limit the effects on the body by confining or walling off the injurious agent and its by-products; and (3) to repair or replace tissue damaged by the injurious agent or its by-products.

Inflammation can be classified as acute or chronic, depending on a number of factors. In **acute inflammation**, the signs and symptoms develop rapidly and usually last for a few days or even a few weeks. It is usually mild and self-limiting, and the principal defensive cells are neutrophils. Examples of acute inflammation are a sore throat, appendicitis, cold or flu, bacterial pneumonia, and a scratch on the skin. In **chronic inflammation**, the signs and symptoms develop more slowly and can last for up to several months or years. It is often severe and progressive, and the principal defensive cells are monocytes and macrophages. Examples of chronic inflammation are mononucleosis, peptic ulcers, tuberculosis, rheumatoid arthritis, and ulcerative colitis.

During the early stages of inflammation, microbial structures, such as flagellin, lipopolysaccharides (LPS), and bacterial DNA stimulate the Toll-like receptors of macrophages to produce cytokines, such as *tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α)*. In response to TNF-α in the blood, the liver synthesizes a group of proteins called **acute-phase proteins**; other acute-phase proteins are present in the blood in an inactive form and are converted to an active form during inflammation. Acute-phase proteins induce both local and systemic responses. They include C-reactive protein, mannose-binding lectin, and several specialized proteins such as fibrinogen for blood clotting and kinins for vasodilation.

All of the cells involved in inflammation have receptors for TNF-α and are activated by it to produce more of their own TNF-α. This amplifies the inflammatory response. Unfortunately, excessive production of TNF-α may lead to disorders such as rheumatoid arthritis and Crohn's disease. Specific monoclonal antibodies are used therapeutically to treat such inflammatory disorders (see Chapter 18).

For purposes of our discussion, we will divide the process of inflammation into three stages: vasodilation and increased permeability of blood vessels, phagocyte migration and phagocytosis, and tissue repair.

Vasodilation and Increased Permeability of Blood Vessels

Immediately following tissue damage (Figure 16.9a), blood vessels dilate (increase in diameter) in the area of damage, and their permeability increases (Figure 16.9b). Dilation of blood vessels, called **vasodilation**, is responsible for the redness (erythema) and heat associated with inflammation.

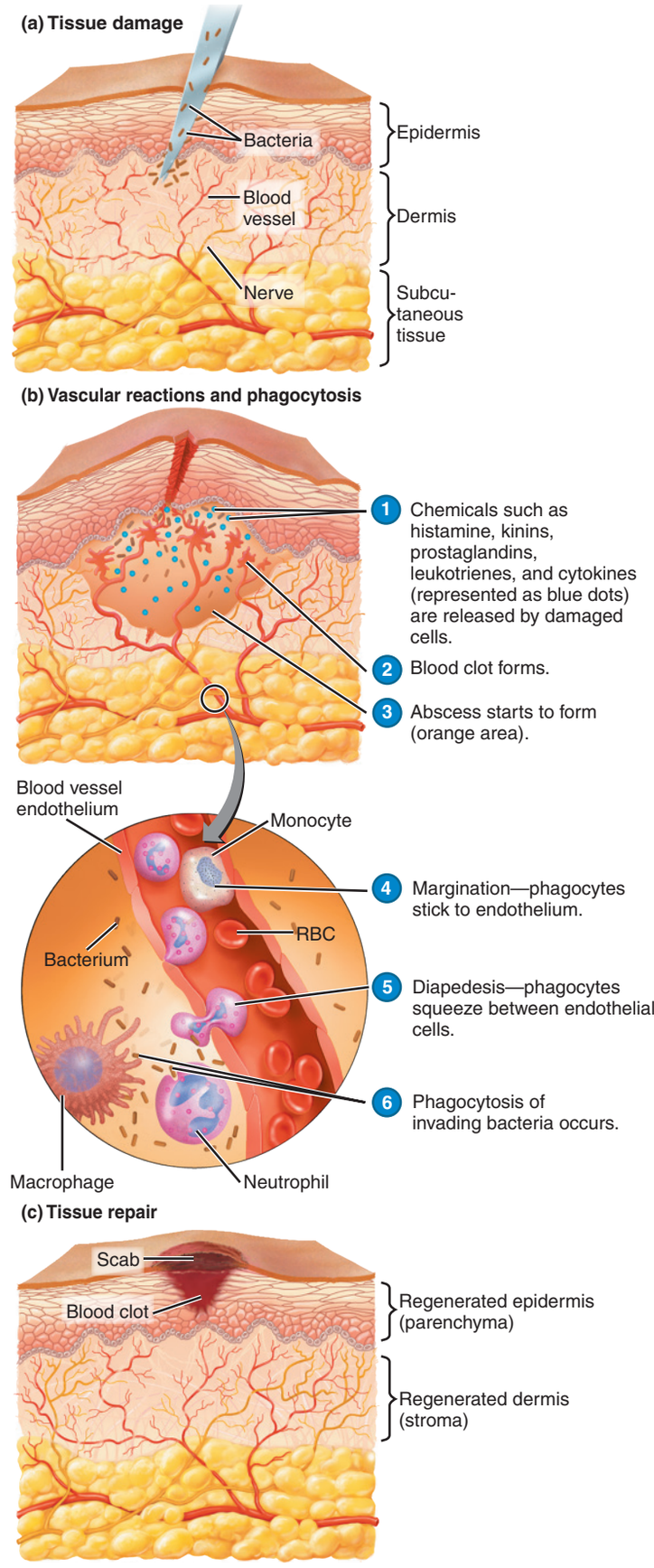


Figure 16.9 The process of inflammation. **(a)** Damage to otherwise healthy tissue—in this case, skin. **(b)** Vasodilation and increased permeability of blood vessels allows phagocyte migration. Phagocytosis by macrophages and neutrophils removes bacteria and cellular debris. Macrophages develop from monocytes. **(c)** The repair of damaged tissue.

Q What are the signs and symptoms of inflammation?

Increased permeability permits defensive substances normally retained in the blood to pass through the walls of the blood vessels and enter the injured area. The increase in permeability, which permits fluid to move from the blood into tissue spaces, is responsible for the **edema** (accumulation of fluid) of inflammation. The pain of inflammation can be caused by nerve damage, irritation by toxins, or the pressure of edema.

1. Vasodilation and the increase in permeability of blood vessels are caused by a number of chemicals released by damaged cells in response to injury. These chemicals are called **vasoactive mediators**. One such substance is **histamine**, a chemical present in many cells of the body, especially in mast cells in connective tissue, circulating basophils, and blood platelets. Histamine is released in direct response to the injury of cells that contain it; it is also released in response to stimulation by certain components of the complement system (discussed later). Phagocytic granulocytes attracted to the site of injury can also produce chemicals that cause the release of histamine.

Kinins are another group of substances that cause vasodilation and increased permeability of blood vessels. Kinins are present in blood plasma, and once activated, they play a role in chemotaxis by attracting phagocytic granulocytes, chiefly neutrophils, to the injured area.

Prostaglandins, substances released by damaged cells, intensify the effects of histamine and kinins and help phagocytes move through capillary walls. Despite their positive role in the inflammatory process, prostaglandins are also associated with the pain related to inflammation.

Leukotrienes are substances produced by mast cells (cells especially numerous in the connective tissue of the skin and respiratory system, and in blood vessels) and basophils. Leukotrienes cause increased permeability of blood vessels and help attach phagocytes to pathogens.

Activated resting macrophages also secrete cytokines that contribute to vasodilation and increased permeability. Another function of cytokines in inflammation is to stimulate cells to produce yet more cytokines. This positive feedback loop occasionally gets out of control, resulting in a **cytokine storm** that can cause significant tissue damage. A cytokine storm can lead to pneumonia, pulmonary edema, multiorgan dysfunction, and acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), the causative syndrome in about 70% of COVID-19 fatalities.

2. Vasodilation and the increased permeability of blood vessels also help deliver clotting elements of blood into the injured area. The blood clots that form around the site of activity prevent the microbe (or its toxins) from spreading to other parts of the body.
3. As a result, there may be a localized collection of **pus**, a mixture of dead cells and body fluids, in a cavity formed by the breakdown of body tissues. This focus of infection is called an **abscess**. Common abscesses include pustules and boils.

A summary of vasoactive mediators in inflammation is presented in Table 16.2.

The next stage in inflammation involves the migration of phagocytes to the injured area.

Phagocyte Migration and Phagocytosis

Generally, within an hour after the process of inflammation is initiated, phagocytes appear on the scene. 4 As the flow of blood gradually decreases, cytokines alter adhesion molecules on cells of the endothelium (lining) of blood vessels. This alteration causes the phagocytes (both neutrophils and monocytes) to begin to stick to the endothelium. This sticking process in response to local cytokines is called **margination**. (Margination is also involved in red bone marrow, where cytokines can release phagocytes into circulation when they are needed.) 5 Then the collected phagocytes begin to squeeze between the endothelial cells of the blood vessel to reach the damaged area. This migration, which resembles ameboid movement, is called **diapedesis;** it can take as little as 2 minutes. 6 The phagocytes then begin to destroy invading microorganisms by phagocytosis.

As mentioned earlier, certain chemicals attract neutrophils to the site of injury (chemotaxis). These include chemicals produced by microorganisms and even other neutrophils; other chemicals are kinins, leukotrienes, chemokines, and components of the complement system. Chemokines are cytokines that are chemotactic

TABLE 16.2 Summary of Vasoactive Mediators of Inflammation

Vasoactive Mediator	Source	Effect
Histamine	Mast cells, basophils, and platelets	Vasodilation and increased permeability of blood vessels
Kinins	Blood plasma	Vasodilation and increased permeability of blood vessels; chemotaxis by attracting neutrophils
Prostaglandins	Damaged cells	Intensify the effects of histamine and kinins and help phagocytes move through capillary walls
Leukotrienes	Mast cells and basophils	Increase permeability of blood vessels and help attach phagocytes to pathogens
Complement (See Figure 16.12)	Blood plasma	Stimulates release of histamine, attracts phagocytes, and promotes phagocytosis
Cytokines	Resting macrophages	Vasodilation and increased permeability of blood vessels

for phagocytes and T cells and thus stimulate both the inflammatory response and an adaptive immune response. The availability of a steady stream of neutrophils is ensured by the production and release of additional granulocytes from red bone marrow.

As the inflammatory response continues, monocytes follow the granulocytes into the infected area. Once the monocytes are contained in the tissue, they undergo changes in biological properties and become free macrophages. The granulocytes predominate in the early stages of infection but tend to die off rapidly. Macrophages enter the picture during a later stage of the infection, once granulocytes have accomplished their function. They are several times more phagocytic than granulocytes and are large enough to phagocytize tissue that has been destroyed, granulocytes that have been destroyed, and invading microorganisms.

After granulocytes or macrophages engulf large numbers of microorganisms and damaged tissue, they themselves eventually die. As a result, pus forms, and its formation usually continues until the infection subsides. At times, the pus pushes to the surface of the body or into an internal cavity for dispersal. On other occasions the pus remains even after the infection is terminated. In this case, the pus is gradually destroyed over a period of days and is absorbed by the body.

As effective as phagocytosis is in contributing to innate resistance, there are times when the mechanism becomes less functional in response to certain conditions. For example, with age, there is a progressive decline in the efficiency of phagocytosis. Recipients of heart or kidney transplants have impaired innate defenses as a result of receiving drugs that prevent the rejection of the transplant. Radiation treatments can also depress innate immune responses by damaging red bone marrow. Even certain diseases such as AIDS and cancer can cause defective functioning of innate defenses. Finally, individuals with certain genetic disorders produce fewer or impaired phagocytes.

Tissue Repair

The final stage of inflammation is tissue repair, the process by which tissues replace dead or damaged cells (Figure 16.9c). Repair begins during the active phase of inflammation, but it cannot be completed until all harmful substances have been removed or neutralized at the site of injury. The ability to regenerate, or repair, depends on the type of tissue. For example, skin has a high capacity for regeneration, whereas cardiac muscle tissue has a low capacity to regenerate.

A tissue is repaired when its stroma or parenchyma produces new cells. The *stroma* is the supporting connective tissue, and the *parenchyma* is the functioning part of the tissue. For example, the capsule around the liver that encloses and protects it is part of the stroma because it is not involved in the functions of the liver; liver cells (hepatocytes) that perform the functions of the liver are part of the parenchyma. If only parenchymal cells are active in repair, a perfect or near-perfect reconstruction of the tissue occurs. A familiar example of perfect reconstruction is a minor skin cut, in which parenchymal cells are more active in repair. However, if repair cells of the stroma of the skin are more active, scar tissue is formed.

As noted earlier, some microbes have various mechanisms that enable them to evade phagocytosis. Such microbes often induce a chronic inflammatory response, which can result in significant damage to body tissues and disrupt tissue repair. The most significant feature of chronic inflammation is the accumulation and activation of macrophages in the infected area. Cytokines released by activated macrophages induce fibroblasts in the tissue stroma to synthesize collagen fibers. These fibers aggregate to form scar tissue, a process called *fibrosis*. Because scar tissue is not specialized to perform the functions of the previously healthy tissue, fibrosis can interfere with the normal function of the tissue.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **16-11** What purposes does inflammation serve?
- **16-12** What causes the redness, swelling, and pain associated with inflammation?
- **16-13** What is margination?

Fever

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

16-14 Describe the cause and effects of fever.

While inflammation is a local response of the body to injury, there are also systemic, or overall, responses. One of the most important is **fever**, an abnormally high body temperature, a third component of the second line of defense. The most frequent cause of fever is infection from bacteria (and their toxins) or viruses.

The brain's hypothalamus is sometimes called the body's thermostat, and it is normally set at 37°C (98.6°F). It is believed that certain substances affect the hypothalamus by setting it at a higher temperature. Recall from Chapter 15 that when phagocytes ingest gram-negative bacteria, the lipopolysaccharides (LPS) of the cell wall are released. LPS causes the phagocytes to release the cytokines interleukin-1 and TNF-α. These cytokines cause the hypothalamus to release prostaglandins that reset the hypothalamic thermostat at a higher temperature, thereby causing fever. Chills often predict the onset of a fever. They are caused by rapid muscle contractions and relaxations and are the body's way of generating heat to raise body temperature.

The body will continue to maintain the higher temperature until the cytokines are eliminated. The thermostat is then reset to 37°C. As the infection subsides, heat-losing mechanisms such as vasodilation and sweating go into operation. This phase of the fever, called the **crisis**, indicates that body temperature is falling.

Up to a certain point, fever is considered a defense against disease. Phagocytes and some T cells work better at a slightly (1–2°C) raised temperature. Because the high temperature speeds up enzymatic reactions, it may stimulate production of

immune proteins. Interleukin-1 helps step up the production of T cells, and a high body temperature intensifies the effect or production of other antimicrobial substances (discussed shortly), including antiviral interferons and transferrins that decrease the iron available to microbes. Also, the higher temperature may slow the growth rate of pathogens that thrive at normal body temperature. Finally, the increased metabolic rate may help body tissues repair themselves more quickly.

Among the complications of fever are tachycardia (rapid heart rate), which may compromise older persons with cardiopulmonary disease; increased metabolic rate, which may produce acidosis; dehydration; electrolyte imbalances; seizures in young children; and delirium and coma. As a rule, death results if body temperature rises above 44° to 46°C (112° to 114°F).

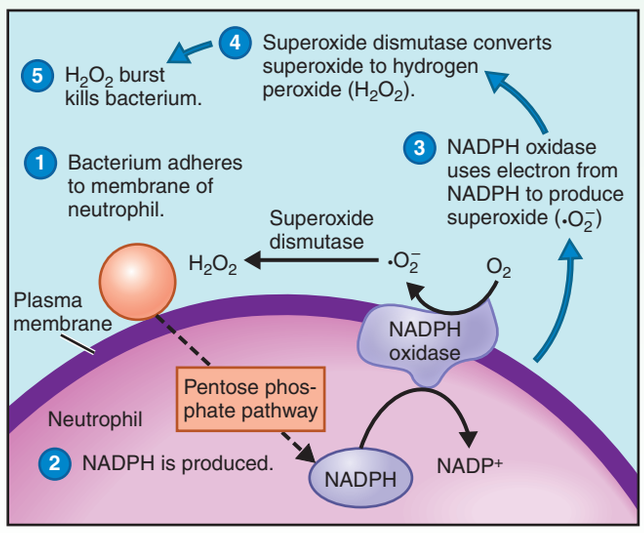
Generally, a person with a measured temperature of 38°C or higher is considered to have a fever. Fever is one of the symptoms of COVID-19, and temperature checks are often used in screening for COVID-19.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

16-14 How is fever beneficial?

CLINICAL CASE

The pentose phosphate pathway (discussed in Chapter 5) produces the NADPH in neutrophils. (See figure, steps 1 and 2.) Jacob's pediatrician realizes that Jacob's neutrophils must be missing NADPH oxidase and therefore can't oxidize the NADPH they're producing. He diagnoses Jacob with chronic granulomatous disease (CGD), an inherited X-linked recessive disorder in which phagocytes do not function as they should. It is caused by a mutation in the gene for NADPH oxidase.



What is the function of NADPH oxidase? (*Hint:* See Chapter 5.)

Antimicrobial Substances

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

16-15 List the major components of the complement system.
16-16 Describe three pathways of activating complement.
16-17 Describe three consequences of complement activation.
16-18 Define *interferons*.
16-19 Compare and contrast the actions of IFN-α and IFN-β with IFN-γ.
16-20 Describe the role of iron-binding proteins in innate immunity.
16-21 Describe the role of antimicrobial peptides in innate immunity.

The body produces certain antimicrobial substances, a final component of the second line of defense, in addition to the chemical factors mentioned earlier. Among the most important of these are the proteins of the complement system, interferons, iron-binding proteins, and antimicrobial peptides.

The Complement System

The **complement system** consists of over 30 proteins produced by the liver that circulate in blood serum and within tissues throughout the body. The system is so named because it "completes," or enhances, cells of the immune system in destroying microbes. The complement system is not adaptable, never changing over a person's lifetime. Therefore it is considered part of the innate immune system. However, it can be recruited into action by the adaptive immune system. This is another example of the cooperation between the innate and adaptive immune systems. Together, proteins of the complement system destroy microbes by cytolysis, opsonization, and inflammation (see Figure 16.12); they also prevent excessive damage to host tissues.

Complement proteins are usually designated by an uppercase letter C and are numbered C1 through C9, named for the order in which they were discovered. The proteins are inactive until they split into fragments (products). These fragments carry out the destructive actions. Activated fragments are indicated by lowercase letters *a* and *b*. For example, inactive complement protein C3 is split into activated fragments, C3a and C3b.

The splitting of inactive complement proteins into activated fragments results from events within one of three pathways of **complement activation** described ahead and illustrated in **Figure 16.10**. The reactions within these pathways occur in a *cascade* in which one reaction triggers another, which in turn triggers another. More product is formed with each succeeding reaction in the cascade, amplifying the effects. All three pathways of complement activation end in the activation of C3.

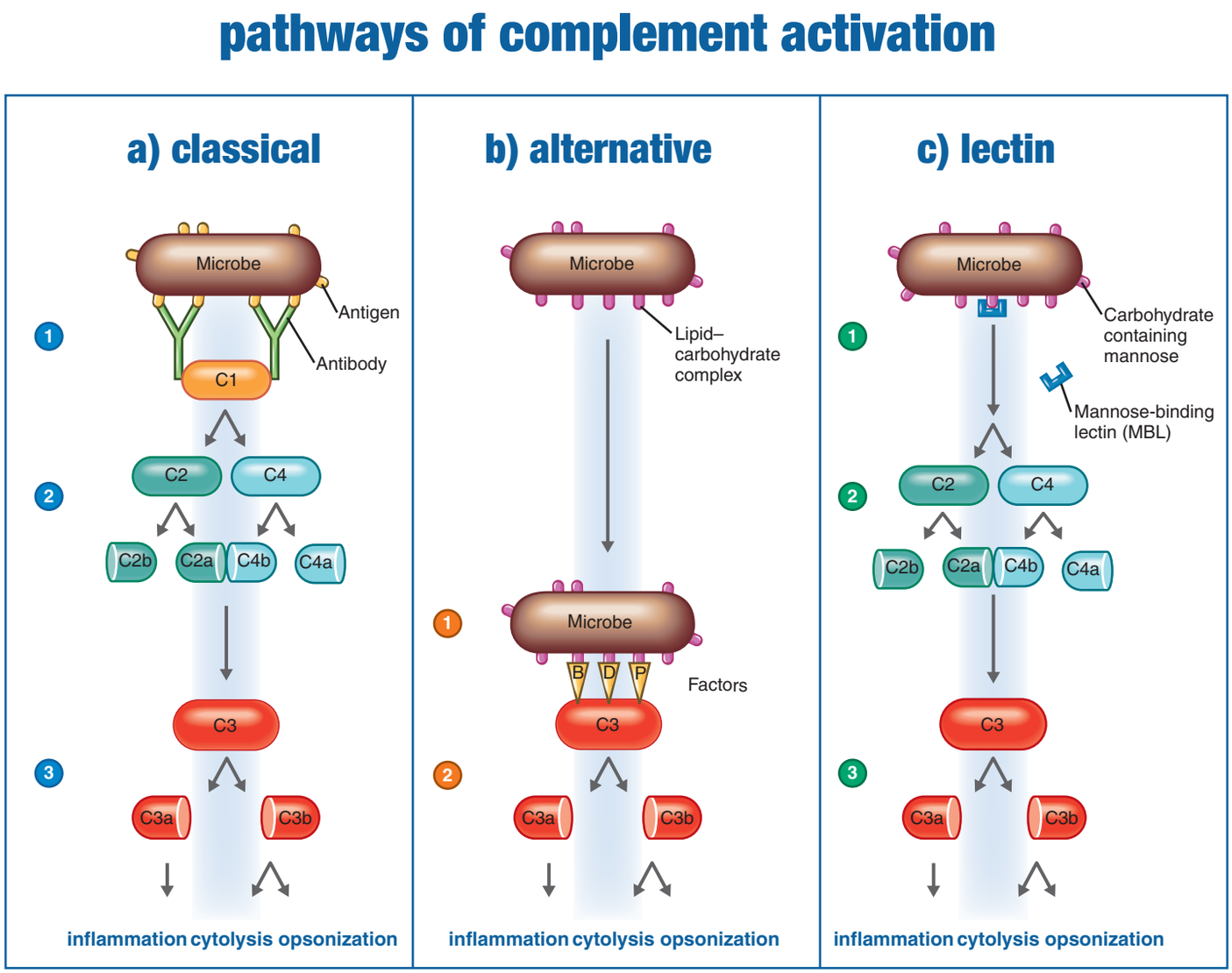


Figure 16.10 Pathways of complement activation. The classical pathway begins with an antigen–antibody reaction. The alternative pathway begins by contact between certain complement proteins and a pathogen; it doesn't involve antibodies. In the lectin pathway, lectin binds to mannose on the surface of a microbe.

Q How is the alternative pathway similar to the classical pathway, and how are the lectin and alternative pathways different from the classical pathway?

The Classical Pathway

The **classical pathway** was the first discovered. It is initiated when antibodies bind to antigens, as shown in Figure 16.10a:

1. Antibodies attach to antigens (for example, proteins or large polysaccharides on the surface of a bacterium or other cell), forming antigen–antibody complexes. The antigen–antibody complexes bind to and activate C1.
2. Next, activated C1 activates C2 and C4 by splitting C2 into fragments C2a and C2b, and C4 into C4a and C4b.
3. C2a and C4b combine and together activate C3 by splitting it into C3a and C3b fragments. C3a participates in inflammation, and C3b functions in cytolysis and opsonization.

The Alternative Pathway

The **alternative pathway** is so named because it was discovered after the classical pathway. Unlike the classical pathway, it does not involve antibodies. The alternative pathway is activated by

contact between certain complement proteins and a pathogen, as shown in Figure 16.10b:

1. Serum proteins called factor B, factor D, and factor P (properdin) bind to a microbe's surface. Then C3 is activated when it binds to factors B, D, and P.
2. Once the complement proteins combine and interact, C3 splits into fragments C3a and C3b. As in the classical pathway, C3a participates in inflammation, and C3b functions in cytolysis and opsonization.

The Lectin Pathway

The **lectin pathway** is the most recently discovered mechanism for complement activation. When macrophages ingest bacteria, viruses, and other foreign matter by phagocytosis, they release cytokines that stimulate the liver to produce **lectins**, proteins that bind to carbohydrates, as shown in Figure 16.10c:

1. **Mannose-binding lectin (MBL)** is a form of lectin that binds to the carbohydrate mannose, which is found in bacterial cell walls and on some viruses. MBL is able to bind to these pathogens because MBL molecules recognize a distinctive pattern of carbohydrates that includes mannose.
2. As a result of binding, MBL functions as an opsonin to enhance phagocytosis, and activates C2 and C4.
3b. C2a and C4b activate C3. As with the other two mechanisms, C3 splits into fragments: C3a participates in inflammation, and C3b functions in cytolysis and opsonization.

Outcomes of Complement Activation

As mentioned previously, the classical, alternative, and lectin pathways result in complement cascades that activate C3. Activation of C3, in turn, can lead to cytolysis, opsonization, and inflammation.

Cytolysis *Cytolysis* of microbial cells involves the formation of a **membrane attack complex (MAC)**, shown in **Figure 16.11**. The MAC creates a hole on a pathogen's cell membrane and makes transmembrane channels, allowing for flow of extracellular fluid into the pathogen. The fluid inflow bursts the microbial cell. The process of MAC formation and cytolysis is shown in **Figure 16.12a**:

1. Activated C3 splits into C3a and C3b.
2. C3b splits C5 into C5a and C5b.
3. C5b through C8 and the multiple C9 fragments form the MAC.

Plasma membranes of the host cell contain proteins that protect against lysis by preventing the MAC proteins from attaching to their surfaces. Also, the MAC forms the basis for the complement fixation test used to diagnose some diseases. This is explained in the **Clinical Focus** box at the end of this chapter and in Chapter 18 (see Figure 18.9).

Figure 16.11 The MAC results in cytolysis. Micrograph of a rod-shaped bacterium before cytolysis (left) and after cytolysis (right).

Q How does complement help fight infections?

Source: Reprinted from Schreiber, R. D., et al. "Bacterial Activity of the Alternative Complement Pathway Generated from 11 Isolated Plasma Proteins," *Journal of Experimental Medicine*, 149:870–882, 1979.

Gram-negative bacteria are more susceptible to cytolysis because they have only one or very few layers of peptidoglycan to protect the plasma membrane from the effects of complement. Gram-positive bacteria have many layers of peptidoglycan, which limit complement's access to the plasma membrane and thus interfere with cytolysis. Bacteria that are not killed by the MAC are said to be *MAC resistant*.

Opsonization *Opsonization*, or immune adherence, promotes attachment of a phagocyte to a microbe. This enhances phagocytosis, as **Figure 16.12b** shows:

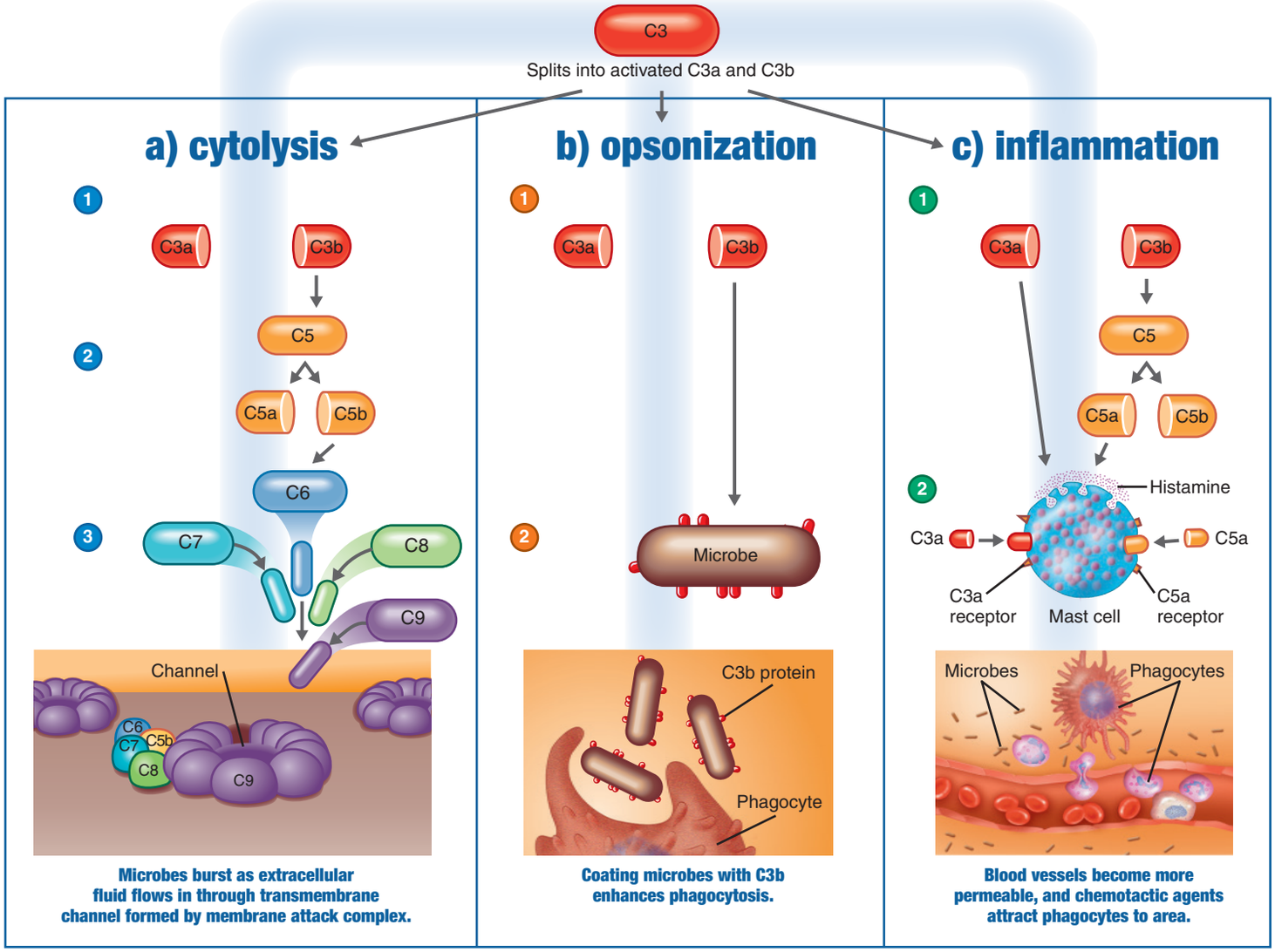
1. Activated C3 splits into activated C3a and C3b.
2. C3b binds to the surface of a microbe, and receptors on phagocytes attach to the C3b.

Inflammation This is outlined in Figure 16.12c:

1. Activated C3 splits into C3a and C3b.
2. C3a and C5a bind to mast cells and cause them to release histamine, cytokines, and other chemicals during *inflammation*. C5a also functions as a very powerful chemotactic factor that attracts phagocytes to the site of an infection.

FOUNDATION FIGURE 16.12

Outcomes of Complement Activation



KEY CONCEPTS

- The complement system is another way the body fights infection and destroys pathogens. This component of innate immunity "complements," or completes, other immune reactions.
- Complement is a group of over 30 proteins circulating in serum that are activated in a cascade: one complement protein triggers the next.
- The cascade can be activated by a pathogen directly or by an antibody-antigen reaction.
- Together these proteins destroy microbes by (a) cytolysis, (b) enhanced phagocytosis, and (c) inflammation.

Figure 16.13 shows inflammation stimulated by complement in more detail than Figure 16.12c.

Regulation of Complement

Once complement is activated, its destructive capabilities usually cease very quickly, thereby minimizing the destruction of host cells. This is accomplished by various regulatory proteins in the host's blood and on certain cells, such as blood cells. The regulatory proteins are present at higher concentrations than the complement proteins. The proteins bring about the breakdown or inhibition of activated complement. One example of a regulatory protein is *CD59*, which prevents the assembly of C9 molecules to form the MAC.

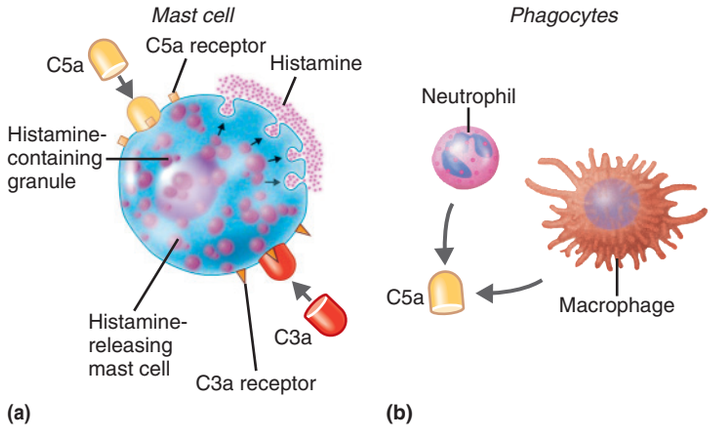


Figure 16.13 Inflammation stimulated by complement.
(a) C3a and C5a bound to mast cells, basophils, and platelets trigger release of histamine, which increases blood vessel permeability. **(b)** C5a functions as a chemotactic factor and attracts phagocytes to the site of complement activation.

Q How is complement inactivated?

Complement and Disease

In addition to its importance in defense, the complement system assumes a role in causing disease as a result of inherited deficiencies. C1, C2, or C4 deficiencies cause collagen vascular disorders that result in hypersensitivity (anaphylaxis); deficiency of C3, though rare, results in increased susceptibility to recurrent infections with pyogenic (pus-producing) microbes; and C5 through C9 defects result in increased susceptibility to *Neisseria meningitidis* and *N. gonorrhoeae* infections. Complement may play a role in diseases with an immune component, such as systemic lupus erythematosus, asthma, various forms of arthritis, multiple sclerosis, and inflammatory bowel disease. Complement is also implicated in Alzheimer's disease and other neurodegenerative disorders.

The complement system is activated by the SARS coronaviruses, including SARS-CoV-2. The viral capsid protein activates the lectin pathway, whereas the S (spike) protein activates the alternative pathway. This may contribute to the risk of cytokine storm and ARDS associated with COVID-19.

Evading the Complement System

Some bacteria evade the complement system by means of their capsules. For example, some capsules contain large amounts of a monosaccharide called sialic acid, which discourages opsonization and MAC formation. Other capsules inhibit the formation of C3b and C4b and cover the C3b to prevent it from making contact with the receptor on phagocytes.

Some gram-negative bacteria have lipid-carbohydrate complexes on their surface that help them evade the complement system. For example, *Salmonella* can lengthen the O polysaccharide of the LPS in their cell wall, a structural alteration that prevents MAC formation. Other gram-negative bacteria, such as *N. gonorrhoeae, Bordetella pertussis,* and *Haemophilus influenzae* type b, attach their sialic acid to the sugars in the outer membrane, ultimately inhibiting MAC formation. In addition, some bacteria produce destructive enzymes. Gram-positive cocci, for example, release an enzyme that breaks down C5a, the fragment that serves as a chemotactic factor that attracts phagocytes.

With respect to viruses, some not only evade the complement system, but take advantage of it. *Lymphocryptovirus* (HHV-4), for example, attaches to complement receptors on body cells to initiate its life cycle.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **16-15** What is complement?
- **16-16** List the steps of complement activation via the classical, alternative, and lectin pathways.
- **16-17** Summarize outcomes of complement activation.

Interferons

Because viruses hijack host cells to carry out viral multiplication, it is difficult for the immune system to inhibit viral infections without affecting body cells too. One way an infected host cell counters viral infections is with a family of cytokines called **interferons (IFNs)**. These are a class of proteins produced by certain animal cells, such as lymphocytes and macrophages. Just as different animal species produce different interferons, different types of cells within the same animal also produce different interferons. Interferons produced by people protect human cells, but they produce little antiviral activity for cells of other species, such as mice or chickens. However, the interferons of a species are active against a number of different viruses. They typically play a major role in infections that are acute, such as colds and influenza.

There are three main types of human interferons: **alpha interferon (IFN-α), beta interferon (IFN-β),** and **gamma interferon (IFN-γ)**. There are also various subtypes of interferons within each of the principal groups. In humans, interferons are produced by fibroblasts in connective tissue and by lymphocytes and other leukocytes. All interferons are small proteins. They are quite stable at low pH and are fairly resistant to heat.

Both IFN-α and IFN-β are produced by virus-infected host cells in very small quantities that diffuse to uninfected neighboring cells (Figure 16.14). Both types are host-cell–specific but not virus-specific. They react with plasma or nuclear membrane receptors, inducing the uninfected neighboring cells to manufacture mRNA for the synthesis of **antiviral proteins (AVPs)**, enzymes that disrupt various stages of viral multiplication. For example, one AVP, called *oligoadenylate synthetase,* degrades viral mRNA. Another, called *protein kinase,* inhibits protein synthesis.

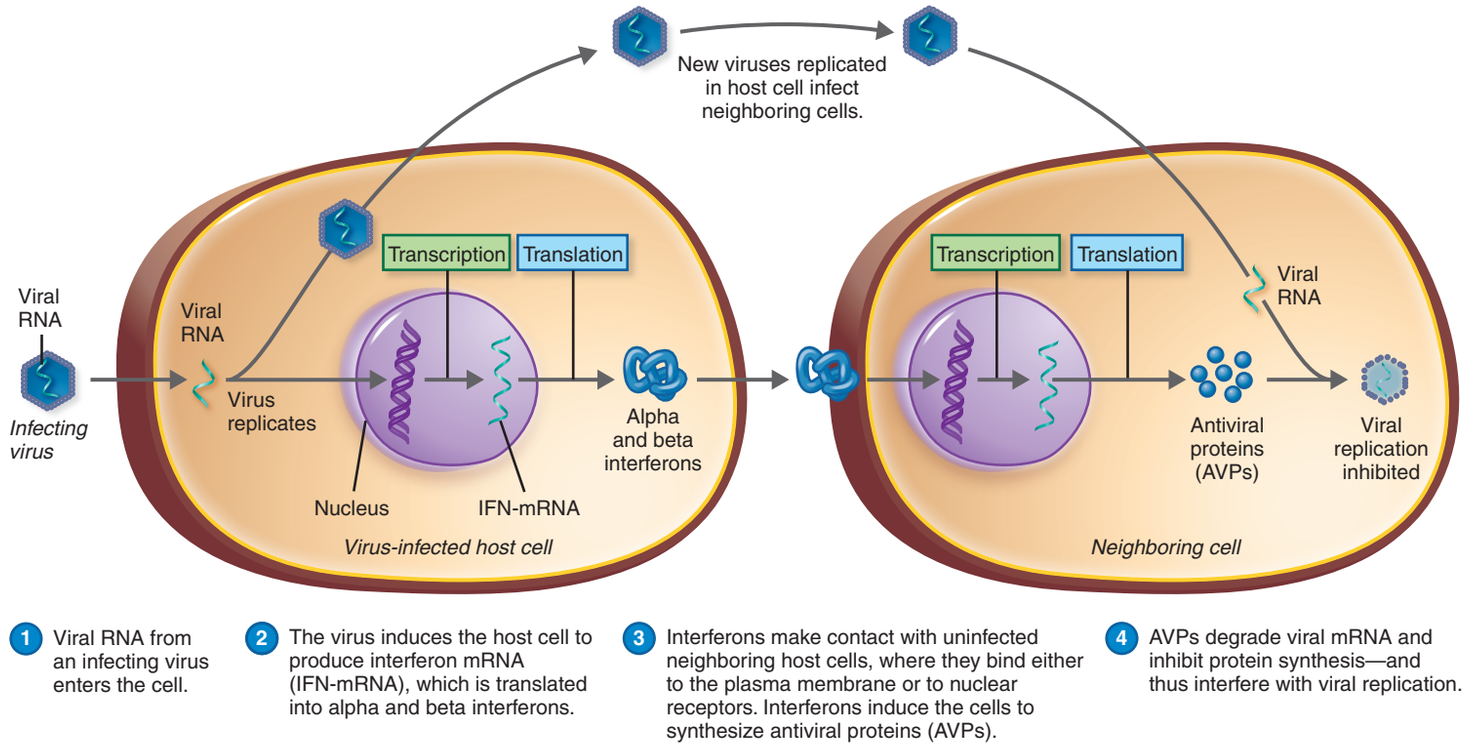


Figure 16.14 Antiviral action of alpha and beta interferons (IFNs). Interferons are host-cell–specific but not virus-specific.

Q How does interferon stop viruses?

Both IFN-α and IFN-β stimulate NK cells to produce IFN-γ, which induces neutrophils and macrophages to kill bacteria. IFN-γ causes macrophages to produce nitric oxide, which appears to kill bacteria by inhibiting their ATP production. (It is thought to have the same effect on tumor cells.) IFN-γ also increases the expression of MHC molecules and antigen presentation (discussed in Chapter 17).

Interferons would seem to be ideal antiviral substances, but certain problems do exist. They are stable for short periods of time in the body, so their effect is limited. When injected, interferons have side effects such as nausea, fatigue, headache, vomiting, weight loss, and fever. High concentrations of interferons are toxic to the heart, liver, kidneys, and red bone marrow. Another problem is that interferons have no effect on viral multiplication in cells already infected, and some viruses (such as adenoviruses) have resistance mechanisms that inhibit antiviral proteins.

The importance of interferons in protecting the body against viruses, as well as their potential as anticancer agents, has made their production in large quantities a top health priority. Several groups of scientists have successfully applied recombinant DNA technology in inducing certain species of bacteria to produce interferons. (This technique is described in Chapter 9.) The interferons produced with recombinant DNA techniques, called *recombinant interferons (rIFNs)*, are important for two reasons: they are pure, and they are plentiful.

In clinical trials, IFNs have exhibited no effects against some types of tumors and only limited effects against others. Alpha interferon (Roferon-A®) is approved in the United States for treating several virus-associated disorders. One is Kaposi's sarcoma, a cancer that often occurs in patients infected with HIV. Other approved uses for IFN-α include treating hepatitis B and C, malignant melanoma, and hairy cell leukemia. A form of IFN-β (Betaseron®) slows the progression of multiple sclerosis (MS) and lessens the frequency and severity of MS attacks. Another form of IFN-β (Actimmune®) is being used to treat chronic granulomatous disease.

Iron-Binding Proteins

Most pathogenic bacteria require iron for their vegetative growth and reproduction (see Chapter 15). Humans use iron as a component of cytochromes in the electron transport chain, as a cofactor for enzyme systems, and as a part of hemoglobin, which transports oxygen in the body. Many pathogens also require iron to survive. So an infection creates a situation in which pathogens and humans compete for available iron.

The concentration of free iron in the human body is low because most of it is bound to **iron-binding proteins**—molecules

such as transferrin, lactoferrin, ferritin, and hemoglobin—whose function is to transport and store iron. **Transferrin** is found in blood and tissue fluids. **Lactoferrin** is found in milk, saliva, and mucus. **Ferritin** is located in the liver, spleen, and red bone marrow, and **hemoglobin** is located within red blood cells. The iron-binding proteins not only transport and store iron but also, by doing so, deprive most pathogens of the available iron.

To survive in the human body, many pathogenic bacteria obtain iron by secreting proteins called siderophores (discussed in Chapter 15). Recall that siderophores compete to take away iron from iron-binding proteins by binding it more tightly. Once the iron–siderophore complex is formed, it is taken up by siderophore receptors on the bacterial surface and brought into the bacterium; then the iron is split from the siderophore and utilized. (In some cases, the iron enters the bacterium while the siderophore remains outside.)

A few pathogens do not use the siderophore mechanism to obtain iron. For example, *N. meningitidis* produces receptors on its surface that bind directly to human iron-binding proteins. Then the iron-binding protein, along with its iron, is taken into the bacterial cell. Some pathogens, such as *Streptococcus pyogenes*, release hemolysin, a protein that causes the lysis (destruction) of red blood cells. The hemoglobin is then degraded by other bacterial proteins to capture the iron.

Antimicrobial Peptides

Although fairly recently discovered, **antimicrobial peptides (AMPs)** may be one of the most important components of innate immunity (see also Chapter 20). Antimicrobial peptides are short peptides that consist of a chain of about 12 to 50 amino acids synthesized on ribosomes. They were first discovered in the skin of frogs, the hemolymph (blood) of insects, and human neutrophils; to date, over 600 AMPs have been discovered in nearly all plants and animals. AMPs have a broad spectrum of antimicrobial activities, including activity against bacteria, viruses, fungi, and eukaryotic parasites. Synthesis of AMPs is triggered by protein and sugar molecules on the surface of microbes. Cells produce AMPs when chemicals in microbes attach to Toll-like receptors.

The modes of action of AMPs include inhibiting cell wall synthesis; forming pores in the plasma membrane, resulting in lysis; and destroying DNA and RNA. Among the AMPs produced by humans are *dermcidin*, produced by sweat glands; *defensins* and *cathelicidins*, produced by neutrophils, macrophages, and epithelium; and *thrombocidin*, produced by platelets.

Scientists are especially interested in AMPs for a number of reasons. Besides their broad spectrum of activity, AMPs have shown synergy (working together) with other antimicrobial agents, so that the effect of them working together is greater than that of either working separately. AMPs are also very stable over a wide range of pH. What is particularly significant is that microbes do not appear to develop resistance even though the microbes are exposed to them for long periods of time.

In addition to their killing effect, AMPs participate in a number of other immune functions. For example, AMPs can sequester the LPS shed from gram-negative bacteria, thereby preventing endotoxic shock. AMPs have been found to vigorously attract dendritic cells, which destroy microbes by phagocytosis and initiate an adaptive immune response. AMPs have also been shown to recruit mast cells, which increase blood vessel permeability and vasodilation. This brings about inflammation, which destroys microbes, limits the extent of damage, and initiates tissue repair.

CLINICAL CASE

In neutrophils, NADPH is reoxidized to $NADP^+$ by a membrane complex called NADPH oxidase, which uses the electron to produce a superoxide radical ($\cdot O_2^-$) from O_2. The superoxide will be converted to hydrogen peroxide, and the resulting burst of H_2O_2 kills the pathogen. Because Jacob's neutrophils cannot function properly, his pediatrician needs to find a way to stimulate his immune system to kill the fungi that have invaded Jacob's bloodstream.

What enzyme converts superoxide radicals to hydrogen peroxide? (See the figure in the previous step of the Clinical Case.) What treatment do you think Jacob's pediatrician should suggest for Jacob's CGD?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 **Part 5** Part 6

Other Factors

In addition to the aforementioned factors that provide resistance to infection, several others also play a role. **Genetic resistance** is an inherited trait in a person's genome that provides resistance to a disease. It confers a selective survival advantage. One example is the relationship between sickle cell trait and *Plasmodium falciparum*; individuals who have sickle cell trait are relatively protected against *P. falciparum* malaria. Another example is the relationship between prions and spongiform encephalopathy; a naturally occurring variant of a human prion has been found that completely protects against the disease. Age also influences resistance: young children (whose immune systems are still developing) and older adults (whose immune systems are less responsive) are more susceptible to disease. Finally, observing healthy protocols such as proper handwashing, controlling sneezing, employing

CLINICAL FOCUS Serum Collection

It is common to draw more than one blood sample for laboratory tests. The blood is collected in tubes with caps of different colors (Figure A). Whole blood may be needed to culture microbes or to type the blood. Serum may be needed to test for enzymes or other chemicals in the blood. Serum is the straw-colored liquid remaining after blood is allowed to clot. Blood plasma is the liquid remaining after formed elements are removed from unclotted blood by, for example, centrifugation.

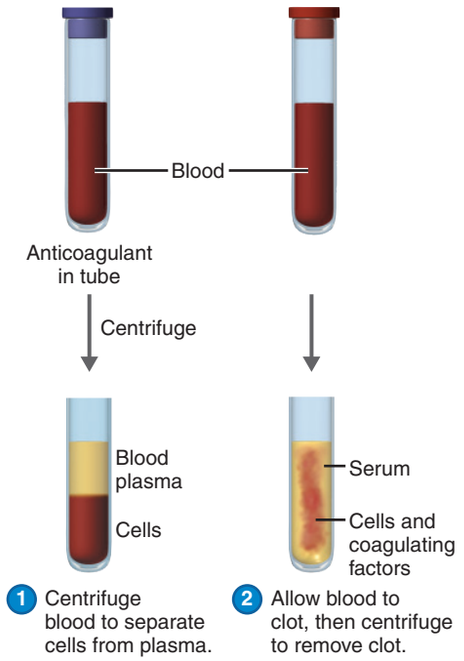


Figure A Collecting blood cells and serum.

Why test for complement?

Complement activity is measured because complement deficiency may be associated with recurrent bacterial infections. Moreover, complement is a key component in immune complex diseases. A decrease in serum complement, which occurs as complement is used in immune complexes, can be used to monitor progress and treatment of immune complex diseases such as systemic lupus erythematosus and rheumatoid arthritis.

Figure B shows how total complement activity is measured. Dilutions of the patient's serum are mixed with sheep red blood cells (RBCs) and antibodies against sheep RBCs (anti-RBCs). Following incubation at 37°C for 20 minutes, the degree of hemolysis, bursting of red blood cells, is determined.

What is the purpose of the RBCs and anti-RBCs?

The antibodies will react with the antigen (RBCs). This will activate complement in the patient's serum. The degree of lysis is relative to the amount of complement present and is expressed as a percentage of the hemolysis.

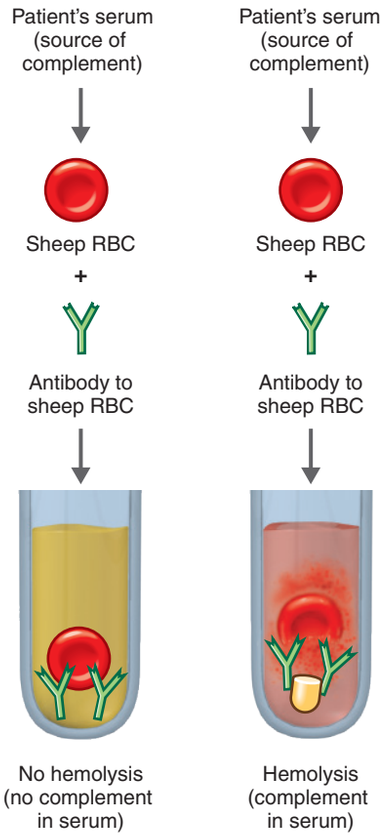


Figure B Testing for complement.

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

Superoxide dismutase (SOD) is an enzyme used to convert superoxide radicals into molecular oxygen and hydrogen peroxide. Jacob's pediatrician suggests treating Jacob with recombinant gamma interferon (IFN-γ), which will incite Jacob's neutrophils and macrophages to kill bacteria. The method of action isn't known, and IFN-γ isn't a cure; Jacob must take IFN-γ for the rest of his life or until he can receive a bone marrow transplant.

standard precautions, avoiding cross-contamination and fecal-oral transmission, and safer sex practices also provide resistance to infection.

Table 16.3 provides a summary of innate immunity defenses.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **16-18** What are interferons?
- **16-19** Why do IFN-α and IFN-β share the same receptor on target cells, yet IFN-γ has a different receptor?
- **16-20** What is the role of siderophores in infection?
- **16-21** Why are scientists interested in AMPs?

TABLE 16.3 Summary of Innate Immunity Defenses

Component	Functions
FIRST LINE OF DEFENSE: SKIN AND MUCOUS MEMBRANES	
PHYSICAL FACTORS	
Epidermis of skin	Intact skin forms a physical barrier to the entrance of microbes; shedding helps remove microbes.
Mucous membranes	Inhibit the entrance of many microbes, but not as effectively as intact skin.
Mucus	Traps microbes in the respiratory tract and digestive canal.
Lacrimal apparatus	Provides tears that wash away microbes; tears contain lysozyme, which destroys cell walls, especially of gram-positive bacteria.
Saliva	Dilutes and washes microbes from mouth.
Hairs	Filter and trap microbes and dust in nose.
Cilia	Together with mucus form a ciliary escalator, which traps and removes microbes from lower respiratory tract.
Epiglottis	Prevents microbes from entering lower respiratory tract.
Earwax	Prevents microbes from entering ear.
Urine	Washes microbes from urethra preventing colonization in genitourinary tract.
Vaginal secretions	Move microbes out of body.
Peristalsis, defecation, vomiting, and diarrhea	Expel microbes from body.
CHEMICAL FACTORS	
Sebum	Forms a protective acidic film over the skin surface that inhibits microbial growth.
Earwax	Fatty acids in earwax inhibit the growth of bacteria and fungi.
Perspiration	Flushes microbes from skin and contains lysozyme; lysozyme is also present in tears, saliva, nasal secretions, urine, and tissue fluids.
Saliva	Contains lysozyme, urea, and uric acid, which inhibit microbes; and immunoglobin A, which prevents attachment of microbes to mucous membranes. Slight acidity discourages microbial growth.
Gastric juice	High acidity destroys bacteria and most toxins in stomach.
Vaginal secretions	Glycogen breakdown into lactic acid provides slight acidity, which discourages bacterial and fungal growth.
Urine	Contains lysozyme. Slight acidity discourages microbial growth.
Normal microbiota	Compete with pathogens for available space and nutrients and produce substances that inhibit or kill pathogens.
SECOND LINE OF DEFENSE	
DEFENSIVE CELLS	
Phagocytes	Phagocytosis by cells such as neutrophils, eosinophils, dendritic cells, and macrophages.
Natural killer (NK) cells	Kill infected cells by releasing granules of perforin and granzymes. Phagocytes then kill the microbes.
INFLAMMATION	Confines and destroys microbes and initiates tissue repair.
FEVER	Intensifies the effects of interferons, and speeds up body reactions that aid repair.
ANTIMICROBIAL SUBSTANCES	
Complement system	Causes cytolysis of microbes, promotes phagocytosis, and contributes to inflammation.
Interferons	Protect uninfected host cells from viral infection. IFN-γ increases phagocytosis.
Iron-binding proteins	Inhibit growth of certain bacteria by reducing the amount of available iron.
Antimicrobial peptides (AMPs)	Inhibit cell wall synthesis, form pores in the plasma membrane that cause lysis; and destroy DNA and RNA.
Other factors	Other factors that provide resistance to infection include genetic resistance, age, and observing healthy protocols.

Study Outline

Introduction (p. 450)

1. The ability to ward off disease through body defenses is called immunity.
2. Lack of immunity is called susceptibility.

The Concept of Immunity (p. 451)

1. Innate immunity refers to all body defenses that protect the body against any kind of pathogen.
2. Adaptive immunity refers to defenses (antibodies) against specific microorganisms.
3. Toll-like receptors in plasma membranes of macrophages and dendritic cells bind to invading microbes.

First Line of Defense: Skin and Mucous Membranes (pp. 451–457)

1. The body's first line of defense against infections is a physical barrier and the nonspecific chemicals of the skin and mucous membranes.

Physical Factors (pp. 451–455)

1. The structure of intact skin and the waterproof protein keratin provide resistance to microbial invasion.
2. The lacrimal apparatus protects the eyes from irritating substances and microorganisms.
3. Saliva washes microorganisms from teeth and gums.
4. Mucus traps many microorganisms that enter the respiratory tract and digestive canal; in the lower respiratory tract, the ciliary escalator moves mucus up and out.
5. The flow of urine moves microorganisms out of the urinary tract, and vaginal secretions move microorganisms out of the vagina.

Chemical Factors (pp. 455–456)

1. Fatty acids in sebum and earwax inhibit the growth of pathogenic bacteria.
2. Perspiration washes microorganisms off the skin.
3. Lysozyme is found in tears, saliva, nasal secretions, and perspiration.
4. The high acidity (pH 1.2–3.0) of gastric juice prevents microbial growth in the stomach.

Normal Microbiota and Innate Immunity (pp. 456–457)

1. Normal microbiota change the environment, a process that can prevent the growth of pathogens.

Second Line of Defense (pp. 458–476)

1. A microbe's penetration of the first line of defense encourages production of phagocytes, inflammation, fever, and antimicrobial substances.

Formed Elements in Blood (pp. 458–460)

1. Blood consists of blood plasma (fluid) and formed elements (cells and platelets).
2. Leukocytes (white blood cells) are divided into granulocytes (neutrophils, basophils, eosinophils) and agranulocytes.

The Lymphoid System (pp. 460–461)

1. The lymphoid system consists of lymph vessels, lymph nodes, and lymphoid tissue.
2. Interstitial fluid is returned to blood plasma via lymphatic vessels.

Phagocytes (pp. 462–464)

1. Phagocytosis is the ingestion of microorganisms or particulate matter by a cell.
2. Phagocytosis is performed by phagocytes, certain types of white blood cells or their derivatives.

Actions of Phagocytic Cells (p. 462)

3. Enlarged monocytes become wandering macrophages and resting macrophages.
4. Resting macrophages are located in selected tissues and are part of the mononuclear phagocytic system.
5. Granulocytes, especially neutrophils, predominate during the early stages of infection, whereas macrophages predominate as the infection subsides.

The Mechanism of Phagocytosis (pp. 462–464)

6. Chemotaxis is the process by which phagocytes are attracted to microorganisms.
7. Toll-like receptors on a phagocyte adhere to the microbial cells. Adherence may be facilitated by opsonization—coating the microbe with serum proteins.
8. Pseudopods of phagocytes engulf the microorganism and enclose it in a phagosome to complete ingestion.
9. Many phagocytized microorganisms are killed by lysosomal enzymes and oxidizing agents.

Inflammation (pp. 464–467)

1. Inflammation is a bodily response to cell damage; it is characterized by pain, redness, immobility, swelling, and heat (PRISH).
2. TNF-α stimulates production of acute-phase proteins.

Vasodilation and Increased Permeability of Blood Vessels (pp. 465–466)

3. The release of histamine, kinins, and prostaglandins causes vasodilation and increased permeability of blood vessels.
4. Blood clots can form around an abscess to prevent dissemination of the infection.

Phagocyte Migration and Phagocytosis (pp. 466–467)

5. Phagocytes have the ability to stick to the lining of blood vessels (margination) and also have the ability to squeeze through blood vessels (diapedesis).

6. Pus is the accumulation of damaged tissue and dead microbes, granulocytes, and macrophages.

Tissue Repair (p. 467)

7. A tissue is repaired when the stroma (supporting tissue) or parenchyma (functioning tissue) produces new cells.
8. Stromal repair by fibroblasts produces scar tissue.

Fever (pp. 467–468)

1. Fever is an abnormally high body temperature produced in response to a bacterial or viral infection.
2. Bacterial endotoxins, interleukin-1, and TNF-α can induce fever.
3. A chill indicates a rising body temperature; crisis (sweating) indicates that the body's temperature is falling.

Antimicrobial Substances (pp. 468–476)

The Complement System (pp. 468–472)

1. The complement system consists of a group of serum proteins that activate one another to destroy invading microorganisms.
2. Complement proteins are activated in a cascade.
3. C3 activation can result in cell lysis, inflammation, and opsonization.
4. Complement is activated via the classical pathway, the alternative pathway, and the lectin pathway.
5. Complement deficiencies can result in an increased susceptibility to disease.
6. Some bacteria evade destruction by complement by means of capsules, surface lipid–carbohydrate complexes, and enzymatic destruction of C5a.

Interferons (pp. 472–473)

7. IFN-α and IFN-β induce uninfected cells to produce antiviral proteins (AVPs) that prevent viral replication.
8. IFN-γ activates neutrophils and macrophages to kill bacteria.

Iron-Binding Proteins (pp. 473–474)

9. Iron-binding proteins transport and store iron, depriving most pathogens of the available iron.

Antimicrobial Peptides (p. 474)

10. Antimicrobial peptides (AMPs) inhibit cell wall synthesis, form pores in plasma membranes, and destroy DNA and RNA.
11. Antimicrobial peptides are produced by nearly all plants and animals, and bacterial resistance to AMPs has not yet been seen.

Other Factors (pp. 474–476)

12. Other factors that influence resistance to infection include genetic resistance, age, and observing healthy protocols.

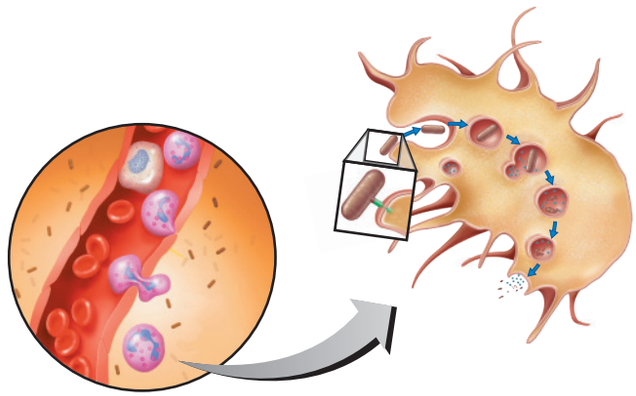
Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. Identify at least one physical factor and one chemical factor that prevent microbes from entering the body through each of the following:
   a. urinary system
   b. genital system
2. Define *inflammation*, and list its characteristics.
3. What are interferons? Discuss their roles in innate immunity.
4. How can the complement system cause endotoxic shock?
5. Patients with X-linked chronic granulomatous disease are susceptible to infections because their neutrophils don't generate an oxidative burst. What is the relation of the oxidative burst to infection?
6. Why does hemolysis of red blood cells occur when a person receives a transfusion of the wrong type of blood?
7. Give several examples of how microbes evade the complement system.
8. DRAW IT Label on the figure the following processes that result in phagocytosis: margination, diapedesis, adherence, and phagolysosome formation.



9. Are the following involved in innate or in adaptive immunity? Identify the role of each in immunity:
   a. TLRs
   b. transferrins
   c. antimicrobial peptides
10. NAME IT These agranulocytes are not phagocytic until they wander out of the blood.

Multiple Choice

1. *Legionella* uses C3b receptors to enter monocytes. This
   a. prevents phagocytosis.
   b. degrades complement.

c. inactivates complement.
d. prevents inflammation.
e. prevents cytolysis.

2. *Chlamydia* can prevent the formation of phagolysosomes and therefore can
a. avoid being phagocytized.
b. avoid destruction by complement.
c. prevent adherence.
d. avoid being digested.
e. none of the above

3. If the following are placed in the order of occurrence, which would be the *third* step?
a. diapedesis
b. digestion
c. formation of a phagosome
d. formation of a phagolysosome
e. margination

4. If the following are placed in the order of occurrence, which would be the *third* step?
a. activation of C5 through C9
b. cell lysis
c. antigen–antibody reaction
d. activation of C3
e. activation of C2 through C4

5. A human host can prevent a pathogen from getting enough iron by all of the following *except*
a. reducing dietary intake of iron.
b. binding iron with transferrin.
c. binding iron with hemoglobin.
d. binding iron with ferritin.
e. binding iron with siderophores.

6. A decrease in the production of C3 would result in
a. increased susceptibility to infection.
b. increased numbers of white blood cells.
c. increased phagocytosis.
d. activation of C5 through C9.
e. none of the above

7. In 1884, Elie Metchnikoff observed cells collected around a splinter inserted in a sea star embryo. This was the discovery of
a. blood cells.
b. sea stars.
c. phagocytosis.
d. immunity.
e. none of the above

8. *Helicobacter pylori* uses the enzyme urease to counteract a chemical defense in the human organ in which it lives. This chemical defense is
a. lysozyme.
b. hydrochloric acid.
c. superoxide radicals.
d. sebum.
e. complement.

9. Which of the following statements about IFN-α is *false*?
a. It interferes with viral replication.
b. It is host-cell–specific.
c. It is released by fibroblasts.
d. It is virus-specific.
e. It is released by lymphocytes.

10. Which of the following does *not* stimulate phagocytes?
a. cytokines
b. IFN-γ
c. C3b
d. lipid A
e. histamine

Analysis

1. What role does transferrin play in fighting an infection?
2. A variety of drugs with the ability to reduce inflammation are available. Comment on the danger of misuse of these anti-inflammatory drugs.
3. The following list provides examples of pathogens and their complement-evading techniques. For each microbe, identify the disease it causes, and describe how its strategy enables it to avoid destruction by complement.

Pathogen	Strategy
Group A streptococci	C3 does not bind to M protein
Haemophilus influenzae type b	Has a capsule
P. aeruginosa	Sheds cell wall polysaccharides
Trypanosoma cruzi	Degrades C1

4. The following list identifies pathogens and their virulence factors. Describe the effect of each factor listed. Name a disease caused by each organism.

Microorganism	Virulence Factor
Alphainfluenzavirus	Causes release of lysosomal enzymes
M. tuberculosis	Inhibits lysosome fusion
Toxoplasma gondii	Prevents phagosome acidification
Trichophyton	Secretes keratinase
Trypanosoma cruzi	Lyses phagosomal membrane

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. People with *Enterovirus rhinovirus* infections of the nose and throat have an 80-fold increase in kinins and no increase in histamine. What symptoms might you anticipate for rhinoviral infections? What disease is caused by rhinoviruses?
2. A hematologist often performs a differential white blood cell count on a blood sample. Why are these numbers important? What do you think a hematologist would find in a differential white blood cell count of a patient with mononucleosis? With neutropenia? With eosinophilia?
3. Leukocyte adherence deficiency (LAD) is an inherited disease resulting in the inability of neutrophils to recognize C3b-bound microorganisms. What are the most likely consequences of LAD?
4. The neutrophils of individuals with Chédiak-Higashi syndrome (CHS) have fewer than normal chemotactic receptors and lysosomes that spontaneously rupture. What are the consequences of CHS?
5. About 4% of the human population have a mannose-binding lectin deficiency. How might this deficiency affect a person?

17 Adaptive Immunity: Specific Defenses of the Host

Unlike innate immunity, adaptive immunity is designed to recognize self from nonself, and it mounts reactions that are specific to the particular substance or pathogen at hand. The cells and chemical factors involved in adaptive immunity come into play when first- and second-line defenses of the innate system fail. The first time these cells and chemicals encounter a pathogen, responses can take days or longer to develop. However, the adaptive immune system also has a memory component, which engages future defenses against the same pathogen much more quickly.

Adaptive immunity is described as a dual system, with humoral and cellular components. Humoral immunity primarily involves B cells and neutralizes threats outside mammalian cells. Cellular immunity primarily involves T cells and deals with threats inside cells. Both involve specialized immune cell receptors that recognize antigens, followed by activation and production of cells, chemical messengers, and other factors that help destroy the antigen in question or allow the body to remember it later, for speedier responses in the future.

This chapter provides a simple introduction to an extremely complex subject. Figure 17.19 summarizes how the main components of the adaptive system work together. For perspective on how both the innate and adaptive immune system combine to provide all our immune defenses, review the Big Picture in Chapter 16.

▶ **A lymphocyte (red) attaches to a cancer cell (blue).**

In the Clinic

As a perinatal nurse, you must discuss the results of parvovirus B19 antibody testing with your 22-year-old patient. The patient is pregnant and has a high parvovirus IgM titer. **What does the high IgM titer indicate? What if she had high IgG and low IgM titers?**

Hint: Read about immunoglobulin classes ahead. Parvovirus B19 infection is discussed in Chapter 21.

The Adaptive Immune System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

17-1 Compare and contrast adaptive and innate immunity.

For centuries it's been recognized that immunity to certain infectious diseases can be acquired through exposure. For instance, after recovering from measles, most people are immune to that disease for the rest of their lives. This protection is due to **adaptive immunity**, which involves a range of defenses that target specific pathogens after exposure.

One of the most important developments in medicine is *vaccination* (*immunization*), a procedure that harnesses the adaptive immune response. A vaccine formulated with a harmless version of a pathogen incites an adaptive response, rendering people immune to the illness without the damage and danger of a full-blown infection that are otherwise needed to obtain these benefits. (See Chapter 18 for more on vaccination). Vaccination against smallpox, the first disease for which the procedure was developed, actually predated the establishment of the germ theory of disease by nearly a hundred years (see Chapter 14).

A crucial element of the adaptive immune system is its ability to differentiate between "self" and "nonself." Without this ability, the immune system might attack components of the body it is designed to protect. In fact, this is exactly what occurs in certain autoimmune disorders, when the body's own tissues are erroneously targeted and damaged by immune cells. (For more on autoimmune disorders, see Chapter 19.)

The adaptive immune system comes into play only when innate defenses—physical barriers such as skin and mucous membranes, phagocytes, and inflammation—fail to stop a microbe. Innate system responses are always immediate and uniform, regardless of the foreign substance encountered. However, the adaptive system tailors its fight to specific pathogens, toxins, or other substances. The first time the adaptive immune system meets and combats a particular antigen, called the *primary response*, involves a lag or latent period of 4 to 7 days. Later interactions with that same cell or substance will cause a *secondary response*, which is faster and more effective as a result of the "memory" formed during the primary response. This memory component is also exclusive to the adaptive immune system.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

17-1 Is vaccination an example of innate or adaptive immunity?

Dual Nature of the Adaptive Immune System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

17-2 Differentiate humoral from cellular immunity.

Adaptive immunity is considered a **dual system**, with *humoral* and *cellular* components that also contribute to the innate immune system. (See Figure 17.19 for an overview of both components of the adaptive immune system.) Cells of the adaptive immune system originate from pluripotent stem cells in the bone marrow or the fetal liver (see Figure 16.4). Although cells of humoral and cellular immunity mature differently, they are all found primarily in blood and lymphoid organs.

Overview of Humoral Immunity

The term **humoral immunity** derives from the word *humors*, an ancient name for body fluids such as blood, phlegm, and bile. Humoral immunity describes immune actions taking place in these extracellular fluids, brought about by protective molecules called **antibodies**. Another term for *antibody* is **immunoglobulin (Ig)**. Antibodies bind to foreign molecules called **antigens**, immune response-stimulating components of a virus, bacterium, toxin, or other substance in tissue fluid or blood.

Humoral immunity involves **B lymphocytes**, more commonly known as **B cells**. B cells bear membrane immunoglobulins (B cell receptors, or BCRs) specific for a particular antigen. Upon antigen binding, the B cell is activated to secrete thousands of immunoglobulins, which bind to the antigen-bearing substances and target them for destruction. Because humoral immunity fights invaders outside cells, efforts tend to focus on bacteria that live extracellularly (as well as their toxins) and on viruses before they penetrate a host cell.

B cells were named for the *bursa of Fabricius*, the specialized organ of birds where researchers first observed these cells. In humans, both B and T lymphocytes are initially produced in the fetal liver. By about the third month of fetal development, the site of B cell generation and maturation becomes the red bone marrow. Once mature, B cells are found primarily in the blood and lymphoid organs.

Overview of Cellular Immunity

T lymphocytes, or **T cells**, are the basis of **cellular immunity**, also called **cell-mediated immunity**. T cells bear membrane **T cell receptors (TCRs)** that, like membrane immunoglobulins, serve as receptors for antigens. However, TCRs do not bind to free-floating antigens the way antibodies do. Instead, they recognize a tiny piece of a protein antigen—an antigenic peptide—which is presented by specialized molecules on body cells. When T cells are activated by this presenting cell-peptide combination, some destroy that cell (called a target cell) while other T cells are activated to secrete chemical messengers, called *cytokines* (discussed next), that induce other cells to perform immune functions.

T cells owe their name to the thymus, the organ where they mature (Figure 17.1). Once mature, T cells are found in the same places as B cells—primarily in the blood and lymphoid organs.

Cell-mediated immune responses focus on recognizing antigens that have already entered a body cell. This immunity is generally best at fighting virus-infected cells and intracellular bacteria such as *Listeria monocytogenes* or *Mycobacterium leprae*.

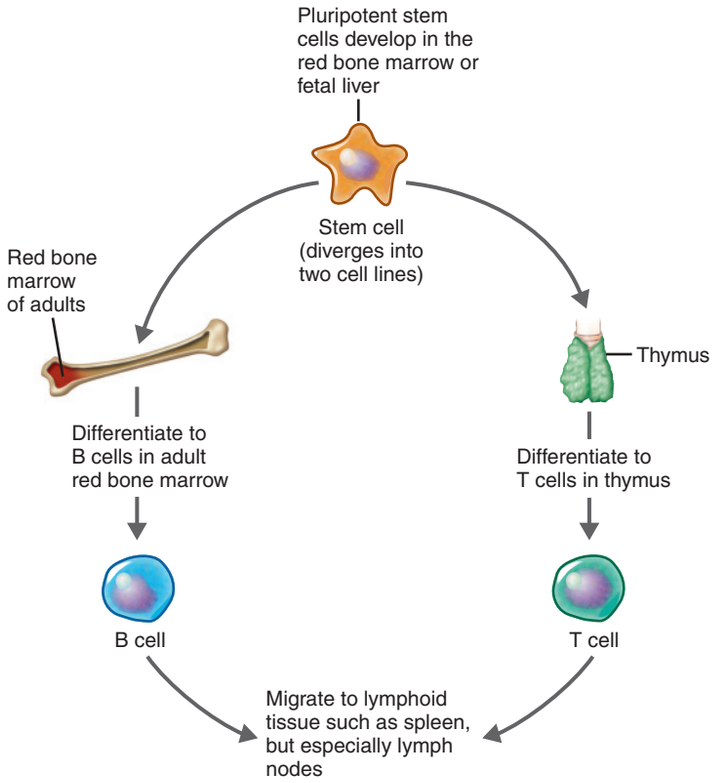


Figure 17.1 T cell and B cell development. Both B cells and T cells originate from stem cells in adult red bone marrow (or in the fetal liver). Some cells pass through the thymus and emerge as mature T cells. Others remain in the red bone marrow and become B cells. Both B cells and T cells then migrate to lymphoid tissues, such as the lymph nodes or spleen.

Q Which cells, T or B, make antibodies?

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

17-2 What type of cell is most associated with humoral immunity, and what type of cell is the basis of cellular immunity?

Cytokines: Chemical Messengers of Immune Cells

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

17-3 Identify at least one function of each of the following cytokines: interleukins, chemokines, interferons, TNF, and hematopoietic cytokines.

Adaptive immunity requires complex interactions between different cell types. This communication is mediated by chemical messengers called **cytokines**, soluble proteins produced by nearly all types of activated immune cells. Cytokines function to activate nearby immune cells bearing the corresponding cytokine receptors. More than 200 cytokines have been identified. Most have common names that reflect functions known at the time of the discovery. Several important types include interleukins, chemokines, interferons, tumor necrosis factors, and hematopoietic cytokines. Table 17.1 lists some cytokines and their target cells and effects.

Interleukins (ILs) serve as communicators primarily between (inter-) leukocytes (-leukins). ILs often target immune cells to stimulate cell proliferation, maturation, migration, or activation during an immune response. This type of cytokine may sometimes be useful as a drug treatment designed to stimulate the immune system and treat certain infectious diseases or cancers.

Chemokines, a family of small cytokines, induce leukocytes to migrate to areas of infection or tissue damage where they contribute to their activation. The name is based on *chemotaxis*, the term for movement of an organism in response to a chemical stimulus. Chemokine receptors are especially important for infection by HIV (see Chapter 19).

Interferons (IFNs) were originally named for one of their functions: the ability to interfere with viral infections in host cells (see Chapter 16). A number of antiviral interferons are available as commercial products in treating disease conditions, including hepatitis and some cancers.

TABLE 17.1 Key Cytokines and Their Roles

Cytokine	Source	Target Cell(s)	Effect
IL-4	T_H2	Naïve T_H; B cells	Proliferate T_H2 cells; Class switching to IgE
IL-12	Dendritic cells, macrophages, neutrophils	Naïve T_H; NK cells	Stimulates growth and function of T_H1 cells; Stimulates IFN-γ and TNF-α
IL-17	T_H17	Neutrophils	Inflammation
IL-22	T_H17	Epithelial cells	Stimulates epithelial cells to make antimicrobial proteins
Gamma interferon (IFN-γ)	T_H1	CTL, macrophages	Promote phagocytosis; activate macrophages and humoral response
Chemokines	Varies; macrophages and epithelial cells	Neutrophils	Chemotaxis
TNF-alpha (TFN-α)	Macrophages, T_H, NK cells	Tumor cells	Inflammation
GM-CSF	Macrophages, T cells, NK cells	Myeloid stem cells	Increase macrophages and granulocytes

CLINICAL CASE It's Just a Scratch

JoAnna Marsden is a medical examiner at a large city hospital. She receives an autopsy order for Maria Vasquez, a 44-year-old woman. According to the medical file, Vasquez went to the emergency department complaining of not feeling well for several days, with headaches and general body aches. Initial examination by the physician revealed a drop in blood pressure and a scratch on Vasquez's right forearm, but no sign of infection. Vasquez was treated with oxygen but became progressively worse. She died 4 hours after admission. When Dr. Marsden performs the autopsy, she finds internal bleeding and multiple small clots throughout. The abnormal clotting is indicative of disseminated intravascular coagulation triggered by infection with sepsis.

What caused Mrs. Vasquez to die from disseminated intravascular coagulation and septic shock? Read on to find out.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

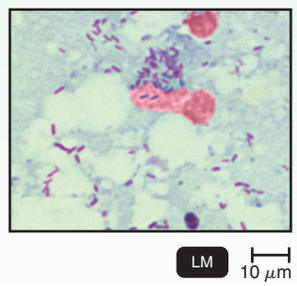
Tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α) originally earned its name because it was observed to have a direct toxic effect on tumor cells. These cytokines are also a major factor in inflammatory reactions of autoimmune diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis (Chapter 19). Monoclonal antibodies (see Chapter 18) that block the action of TNFs are an available therapy for some of these conditions.

Hematopoietic cytokines help control the pathways by which stem cells develop into red blood cells or different white blood cells (see Figure 16.4). Some of these are interleukins (mentioned earlier). Others are termed *colony-stimulating factors (CSFs)*. An example is granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF). This particular CSF stimulates the production of neutrophils from the granulocyte precursors. Another, granulocyte macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF), is used therapeutically to increase the numbers of protective macrophages and granulocytes in patients undergoing red bone marrow transplants.

One of the many things cytokines can do is stimulate cells to produce yet more cytokines. This feedback loop occasionally gets out of control, resulting in a **cytokine storm**. This overabundance of cytokines can do significant damage to tissues and appears to be a factor in the pathology of certain diseases such as influenza, COVID-19, Ebola virus disease, graft-versus-host disease, and sepsis.

CLINICAL CASE

Dr. Marsden performs a Gram stain on a blood smear (see the figure) from the patient. She needs to know what bacteria, if any, caused Mrs. Vasquez's disseminated intravascular coagulation, septic shock, and subsequent death.



Describe the bacteria in the figure.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

17-3 What is the function of cytokines?

Antigens and Antibodies

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

17-4 Define *antigen*, *epitope*, and *hapten*.

17-5 Explain antibody function, and describe the structural and chemical characteristics of antibodies.

17-6 Name one function for each of the five classes of antibodies.

Antigens

Again, substances that induce production of antibodies are called antigens (short for *anti*body *gen*erators). Most antigens are either proteins or large polysaccharides. Lipids and nucleic acids are usually antigenic only when combined with proteins and polysaccharides. Pathogens can have multiple antigenic sites. Components of invading microbes—such as capsules, cell walls, flagella, fimbriae, bacterial toxins, and viral coats and viral envelope proteins—all tend to be antigenic. However, a compound doesn't have to be part of an invading pathogen to be deemed antigenic by the immune system. Nonmicrobial antigens may include pollen, egg white, blood cell surface molecules, serum proteins from other individuals or species, and surface molecules of transplanted tissues and organs.

Detection of an antigen provokes production of highly specific, corresponding antibodies (described in more detail next). Antigens that cause such a response are often known as *immunogens*. Generally speaking, antibodies react with specific regions on antigens called **epitopes** or **antigenic determinants** (Figure 17.2). The nature of the interaction depends on the size, shape, and chemical structure of the binding site on the antibody molecule. A bacterium or virus may have several epitopes that cause the production of different antibodies.

Most antigens have a molecular mass of 10,000 Da or higher. A foreign substance that has a very low molecular mass

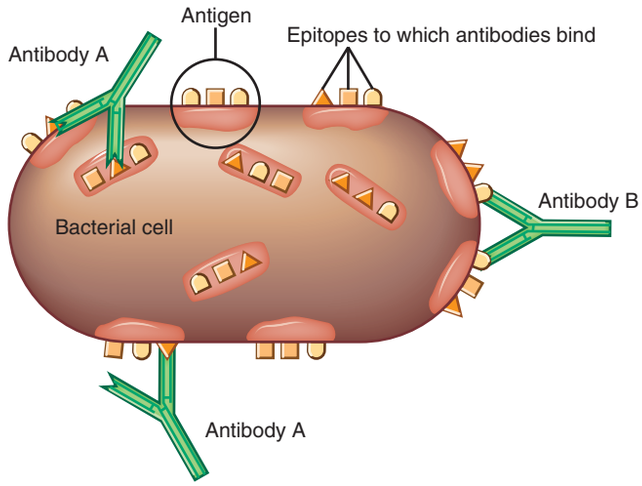


Figure 17.2 Epitopes (antigenic determinants). In this illustration, the antigens are components of the bacterial cell wall. Each antibody molecule has two binding sites that attach to identical epitopes on an antigen. Note that an antibody is about 10–15 nm long; a bacterial rod is 1000–4000 nm long.

Q Which would have more epitopes: a protein or a lipid? Why?

(1000 Da or less) is generally not antigenic unless it is attached to a carrier molecule. These low-molecular-mass compounds are called **haptens** (Figure 17.3). Once an antibody against the hapten has been formed, the antibody will react with the hapten independent of the carrier molecule. Penicillin (334 Da) is a good example of a hapten. This drug is not antigenic by itself, but some people develop an allergic reaction to it. (Allergic reactions are a type of hypersensitivity that occurs when the immune system reacts to something that is normally nonpathogenic. These are discussed in Chapter 19.) In these people, when penicillin combines with host proteins, the proteins act as carriers, initiating an immune response against penicillin. The hapten-carrier concept has therapeutic applications. Conjugated vaccines, which combine an antigen with a protein, work in the same fashion (see Chapter 18).

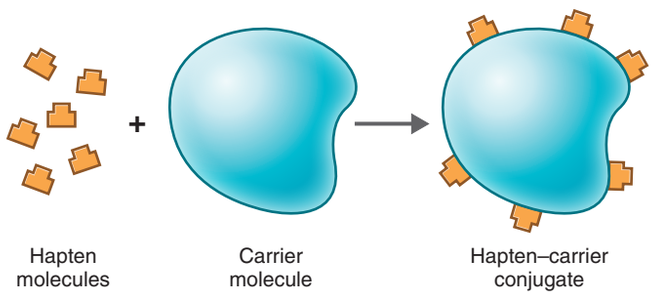


Figure 17.3 Haptens. A hapten is a molecule too small to stimulate antibody formation by itself. By combining with a larger carrier molecule (often a serum protein) the hapten and its carrier form a conjugate that can stimulate an immune response.

Q How does a hapten differ from an antigen?

Antibodies

Structurally speaking, secreted **antibodies** (the secreted versions of B cell membrane immunoglobulins), are compact, relatively soluble proteins. They are designed to recognize and bind to a specific antigen, and cause the antigen to become a target of destruction by various means.

Each antibody has at least two identical antigen-binding sites that bind to identical epitopes. The number of antigen-binding sites on an antibody is called the **valence** of that antibody. For example, most human antibodies have two binding sites; therefore, they are bivalent. Because a bivalent antibody has the simplest molecular structure, it is called a **monomer**. An antibody monomer has four protein chains: two identical *light chains* and two identical *heavy chains*. ("Light" and "heavy" refer to the relative molecular masses.) The chains are joined by disulfide links to form a molecule that is often depicted as Y-shaped. However, these two "arms" have flexible hinge regions in their heavy chains (Figure 17.4a and c) and can bend.

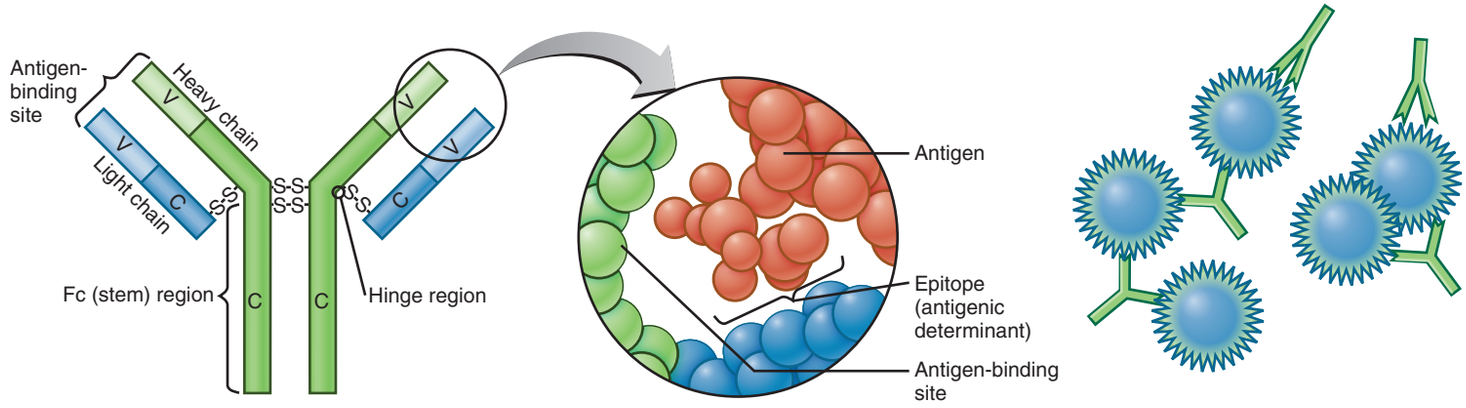
The top halves of the antibody arms are called *variable (V) regions* because they vary greatly from antibody to antibody. The very tip of each arm forms an antigen-binding site (Figure 17.4b). The amino acid sequences and, therefore, the three-dimensional structure of these two variable regions are identical on any one antibody. The stem of the antibody monomer and the lower parts of the arms of the antibody are called the *constant (C) regions*. They are the same for a particular class of immunoglobulin. There are five major types of C regions, which account for the five major classes of immunoglobulins (described shortly).

The stem of the antibody monomer is called the *Fc region*, so named because when antibody structure was first being identified using fragments of the molecule, the stem fragment (F) crystallized (c) in cold storage.

These Fc regions are often important in immunological reactions. If left exposed after both antigen-binding sites attach to an antigen such as a bacterium, the Fc regions of adjacent antibodies can bind to and activate complement. This leads to the destruction of the bacterium (see Figure 16.12). Some cells of the immune system, such as macrophages, have surface Fc receptors that allow the cells to bind to antibody-coated antigens very readily, thus improving phagocytosis.

Immunoglobulin Classes

The five classes of Igs are designated IgG, IgM, IgA, IgD, and IgE. Each class has a different role in the immune response. IgG, IgD, and IgE molecules are secreted as monomers, whereas IgA is secreted either as a monomer or as a dimer (two molecules linked together) and IgM is secreted as a pentameric ring, with five antibodies linked together. In their membrane-bound forms, all classes are expressed as monomers. The structures and characteristics of the immunoglobulin classes are summarized in Table 17.2.



(a) Antibody molecule

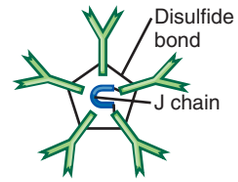
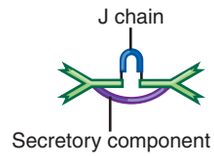
(b) Enlarged antigen-binding site bound to an epitope

(c) The flexibility of the antibody hinge regions contributes to antibody-antigen binding

Figure 17.4 Structure of a typical antibody. The antibody molecule is composed of two light chains and two heavy chains linked by disulfide bridges (S—S). The amino acid sequences of the variable regions (V), which form the two antigen-binding sites, differ for each B cell. The constant regions (C) are the same for all antibodies of the same class.

Q What is responsible for the specificity of each different antibody?

TABLE 17.2 A Summary of Immunoglobulin Classes

Class	IgG	IgM	IgA	IgD	IgE
					
Structure	Monomer	Pentamer (longer tail)	Dimer (with secretory component)	Monomer	Monomer (longer tail)
% Total Serum Antibody	80%	6%	13%*	0.02%	0.002%
Location	Blood, lymph, intestine	Blood, lymph, B cell surface (as monomer)	Secretions (tears, saliva, mucus, intestine, milk), blood, lymph	B cell surface, blood, lymph	Bound to mast and basophils throughout body, blood
Molecular Mass (Da)	150,000	970,000	405,000	175,000	190,000
Half-Life in Serum	23 days	5 days	6 days	3 days	2 days
Complement Fixation	Yes	Yes	No†	No	No
Placental Transfer	Yes	No	No	No	No
Known Functions	Enhances phagocytosis; neutralizes toxins and viruses; protects fetus and newborn	Especially effective against microorganisms and agglutinating antigens; first antibodies produced in response to initial infection	Localized protection on mucosal surfaces	Serum function not known; presence on B cells functions in initiation of immune response	Allergic reactions; possibly lysis of parasitic worms

*Percentage in serum only; if mucous membranes and body secretions are included, percentage is much higher.
†May be yes via alternative pathway.

IgG The name **IgG** is derived from the part of blood, called *gamma globulin*, that contains antibodies. IgG accounts for about 80% of all antibodies in serum. In regions of inflammation, these antibodies readily cross the walls of blood vessels and enter tissue fluids. During pregnancy, for example, IgG antibodies can cross the placenta and confer passive immunity to a fetus. They protect against circulating bacteria and viruses, neutralize bacterial toxins, trigger the complement system, and, when bound to antigens, enhance the effectiveness of phagocytic cells.

IgM Antibodies of the **IgM** class (the M refers to *macro*, reflecting their relatively large size) make up 6% of the antibodies in serum. IgM has a pentameric ring structure, with five monomers linked by disulfide bonds. The structure also includes a protein called *joining (J) chain*, which serves like the clasp of a bracelet to close the ring.

IgM is the predominant type of antibody produced upon first exposure to an antigen, and is the class of antibody involved in the response to the ABO blood group antigens on the surface of red blood cells. Because the antibody has 10 antigen-binding sites, it is much more effective than IgG in causing the clumping of cells and viruses and in reactions involving the activation of complement. (See Table 19.2 for more on the ABO blood group antibodies; Chapter 18 for more on agglutination; and Figure 16.10 for more on complement activation.)

The fact that IgM appears first in response to a primary infection and is relatively short-lived makes it uniquely valuable in diagnosing disease. If high concentrations of IgM against a pathogen are detected in a patient, it is likely that the symptoms observed are caused by that pathogen. The detection of IgG, which is relatively long-lived, may indicate only that immunity against a particular pathogen was acquired in the more distant past.

IgA **IgA** accounts for about 13% of the antibodies in serum, but it is by far the most common form in mucous membranes and in body secretions such as mucus, saliva, tears, and breast milk. If we take this into consideration, IgA is the most abundant immunoglobulin in the body. The form of IgA that circulates in serum, *serum IgA*, is usually in the form of a monomer. The most effective form of IgA, however, consists of two monomers linked by disulfide bonds via a J chain, forming a *dimer* called *secretory IgA*. It is produced in this form by plasmocytes in the mucous membranes—as much as 15 grams per day, mostly by intestinal epithelial cells. Each dimer then enters and passes through a mucosal cell, where it acquires a polypeptide called *secretory component* that protects it from enzymatic degradation. The main function of secretory IgA is to prevent the attachment of microbial pathogens to mucosal surfaces. This is especially important in resistance to intestinal and respiratory pathogens. Because IgA immunity is relatively short-lived, the length of immunity to many respiratory infections is correspondingly short. IgA's presence in breast milk, especially the earliest milk called *colostrum*, probably helps protect infants from gastrointestinal infections.

IgD **IgD** antibodies make up only about 0.02% of the total serum antibodies. Their structure resembles that of IgG molecules. IgD antibodies are found in blood and lymph and also play a role as membrane immunoglobulins on mature B cells. Serum IgD has no well-defined function other than antigen-binding.

IgE Antibodies of the **IgE** class have been shown to be potent inducers of erythema (superficial reddening or rash of the skin). IgE molecules constitute only 0.002% of the total serum antibodies. Their Fc regions bind tightly to receptors (Fc receptors) on mast cells and basophils, specialized cells that participate in defense against large parasites such as helminths and in allergic reactions (see Chapter 19). When an antigen such as pollen links with the IgE antibodies attached to a mast cell or basophil (see Figure 19.1a), that cell is triggered to release histamine and other chemical mediators. These chemicals provoke a response—for example, an allergic reaction such as hay fever. In the case of a helminth infection, these chemicals are damaging to the organism because they attract complement and phagocytic cells to the site. The concentration of IgE, which is greatly increased during some allergic reactions and parasitic infections, is often diagnostically useful.

CLINICAL CASE

Gram-negative rods are visible inside white blood cells from Mrs. Vasquez's sample. Dr. Marsden identifies them as *Capnocytophaga canimorsus* bacteria. This species is found in cats or dogs and can be transmitted to people through bites, licking, scratching, and other contact with an infected animal. Dr. Marsden talks to Mr. Vasquez, who confirms that the scratch on his late wife's arm was from the family dog. However, Dr. Marsden is puzzled, because most people who have contact with dogs do not develop *Capnocytophaga* infections.

What molecules normally made by B cells combat bacterial infections?

Part 1 Part 2 **Part 3** Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **17-4** What part of an antibody reacts with the epitope of an antigen?
- **17-5** The original theoretical concepts of antibody structure suggested a rod with antigen binding sites at each end. What is the primary advantage of the flexible structure that eventually emerged?
- **17-6** Which class of antibody is most likely to protect you from a common cold?

Humoral Immunity Response Process

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

17-7 Compare and contrast T-dependent and T-independent antigens.

17-8 Differentiate plasmocyte cell from memory cell.

17-9 Describe clonal selection.

17-10 Explain how a human can produce different antibodies.

Humoral immune actions take place in the extracellular spaces within the body. So-called *free antigens* found here need to be recognized by the immune system so that specific antibodies can be generated to neutralize them. Moreover, these antigens need to be remembered so that future interactions with them result in a quicker immune response. B cells are key to these processes.

B cells reside in, and interact with antigen in, lymphoid organs such as the spleen and lymph nodes. Each B cell has more than 100,000 membrane-bound immunoglobulins on its surface that serve as receptors for antigen. The majority are IgM and IgD, all of which are specific for the same epitope. Some B cells have other immunoglobulin classes on their surfaces. For example, B cells in the intestinal mucosa are rich in IgA.

A B cell is activated when its BCRs bind to antigen in a process known as **clonal selection**. This causes the B cell to proliferate, an event known as **clonal expansion**, and to differentiate, generating memory B cells as well as plasmocytes that secrete antibodies, all specific for that same antigen.

Activation and Clonal Expansion of Antibody-Producing Cells

Activation of a B cell can occur in two ways. Some antigens require a type of T cell called a **T helper** (T_H) **cell** (discussed shortly) to activate a B cell. This kind of antigen is known as a **T-dependent antigen**. T-dependent antigens are mainly proteins of the type found on viruses, bacteria, red blood cells, and hapten-carrier conjugates. For antibodies to be produced in response to a T-dependent antigen, both B and T cells must recognize and interact with different epitopes of a given antigen. This ensures specificity of the attack and also helps prevent an unintentional autoimmune response. In contrast, B cells can be activated directly by some antigens, called **T-independent antigens**, without assistance of T cells. First, we'll walk through the steps involved with responding to a T-dependent antigen.

In our earlier overview of cell-mediated immunity, we saw that TCRs on T cells recognize a fragment of a protein antigen (a peptide), which is presented by specialized molecules on body cells. The kind of body cell that allows T_H cell activation is known as an antigen-presenting cell (APC), and the specialized molecule on the APC that presents the peptide is a **major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II** protein. APCs bind to, internalize, and break down antigens to form peptides which are then loaded onto the MHC class II molecule and are transported to the surface of the presenting cell. There they are accessible to TCRs on T_H cells. As shown in Figure 17.5, a B cell can serve as an APC, first binding specifically to a T-dependent antigen, then internalizing it. The antigen is broken down to peptide fragments that are presented by MHC class II to a T_H cell. The T_H cell makes contact with the fragment presented on the APC. This interaction, along with a stimulatory signal from the T cell, induces the T cell to secrete cytokines that help activate the B cell, which divides into a large clone of cells. Some of the B cells differentiate into antibody-secreting plasmocytes. Others become long-lived memory B cells responsible for the enhanced secondary responses to that antigen. Clonal selection and expansion is shown in Figure 17.6.

As we will see, in addition to class II MHC molecules, which are found on APCs, there are class I MHC molecules found on

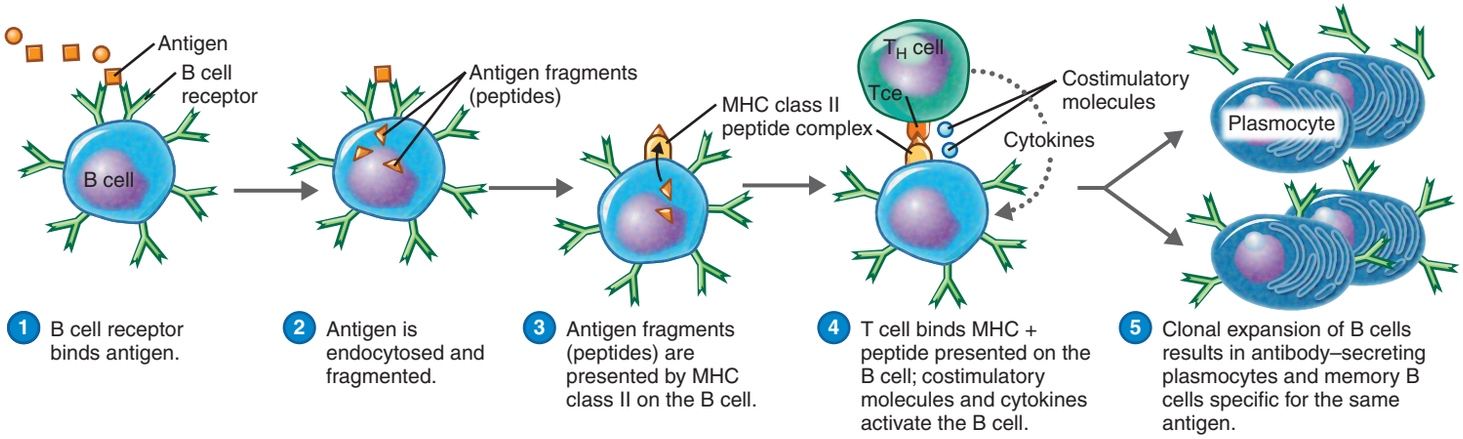


Figure 17.5 Activation of B cells against a T-dependent antigen. In this illustration, the B cell serves as an APC, presenting antigen to a T_H cell. The T_H cell then helps activate the B cell to proliferate and differentiate.

Q How does activation by T-independent antigens differ from this figure?

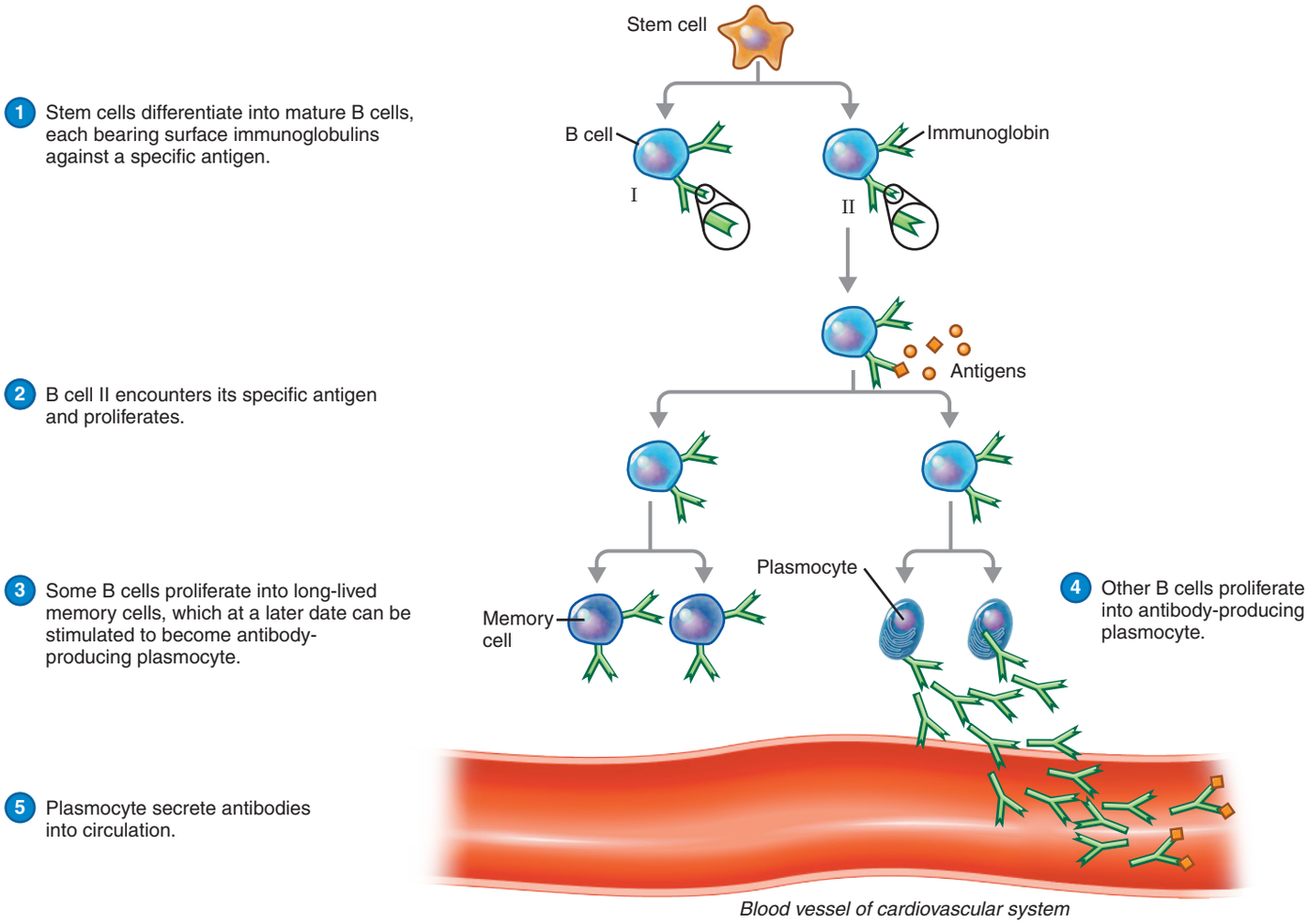


Figure 17.6 Clonal selection and differentiation of B cells. B cells together can recognize an almost infinite number of antigens, but each B cell recognizes only one particular antigen (epitope). An encounter with that antigen triggers B cell proliferation (here, B cell "II") into a clone of cells with the same specificity, hence the term *clonal selection* (by the antigen) and *expansion* (B cell proliferation). The initial antibodies produced are generally IgM, but later the same cell might produce different classes of antibody, such as IgG or IgE; this is called *class switching*.

Q What caused cell "II" to respond?

all mammalian nucleated cells. Class I MHC molecules function to present peptide antigens to T cells called T cytotoxic (T_C) cells, addressed later in this chapter.

We noted earlier that T-independent antigens stimulate B cells directly, without the help of T_H cells. T-independent antigens tend to be molecules consisting of repeating subunits, such as polysaccharides or lipopolysaccharides. Bacterial capsules are a common example of T-independent antigens. The repeating subunits, as shown in Figure 17.7, can bind to multiple B cell receptors, which is probably why this class of antigens doesn't require T cell assistance. However, these antigens tend to provoke a weaker immune response than T-dependent antigens do. The T-independent response is composed primarily of IgM, and no memory B cells are generated. The immune system of infants may not be stimulated by T-independent antigens until about age 2.

The Diversity of Antibodies

The human immune system is capable of creating a mind-boggling number of specific antibodies—an estimated minimum of 1×10^{11} (100 billion) of them. The number of genes required for this amount of diversity is actually relatively small, thanks to random rearrangement of gene segments that code for antigen receptors, resulting in variations of the amino acid sequence at the antigen-binding site (V region). These random rearrangements occur before antigen is present, during the early stages of B cell development in the bone marrow. Because of this randomness, some of the B cell antigen receptors made would ultimately lead to antibodies specific for our own tissues. However, these potentially harmful B cells are usually eliminated in the bone marrow by a process called **clonal deletion**.

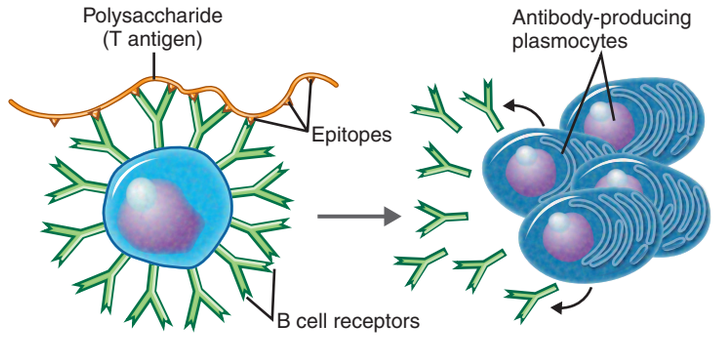


Figure 17.7 Activation of B cells against a T-independent antigen. T-independent antigens have repeating units (epitopes) that can cross-link several antigen receptors on the same B cell. These antigens stimulate the B cell to develop into antibody-secreting plasmocyte without the aid of T helper cells. However, no memory B cells are generated. The polysaccharides of bacterial capsules are examples of this type of antigen.

Q How can you differentiate T-dependent from T-independent antigens?

CLINICAL CASE

Antibodies, especially IgM antibodies, are made in response to bacterial infections. In her research, Dr. Marsden learns that *Capnocytophaga* possesses T-independent antigens.

What steps are required for an antibody response to these antigens?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 **Part 4** Part 5 Part 6

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **17-7** Would pneumococcal pneumonia (see Figure 24.11) require a T_H cell to stimulate a B cell to form antibodies?
- **17-8** Plasmocytes produce antibodies; do they also produce memory cells?
- **17-9** What is the outcome of clonal selection?
- **17-10** What region of the immunoglobulin molecule has an amino acid sequence that varies from B cell to B cell, allowing for the huge diversity of antibodies that may be produced?

Results of Antigen–Antibody Interaction

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

17-11 Describe four outcomes of an antigen–antibody reaction.

When an antibody encounters an antigen for which it is specific, their binding forms an **antigen–antibody complex**. The strength of the interactions between antigen and antibody is called **affinity**. In general, the closer the physical fit between the epitope and the antigen-binding site, and the stronger the attractive forces between their amino acids, the higher the affinity. Antibodies can distinguish between minor differences in the amino acid sequence of a protein and even between two amino acid isomers (see Figure 2.13). Clinically speaking, this means that antibodies can be used in diagnostic tests to differentiate between hepatitis B and hepatitis C viruses and between different strains of bacteria.

The antibody molecule itself is not damaging to the antigen. Rather, the binding marks foreign cells and molecules for destruction by phagocytes and complement. Antibodies render foreign agents harmless by five primary mechanisms, summarized in Figure 17.8. These are agglutination, opsonization, antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity, neutralization, and activation of complement (see Figure 16.12).

In **agglutination**, antibodies cause antigens to clump together. For example, the two antigen-binding sites of an IgG antibody can combine with epitopes on two different foreign cells, aggregating the cells into clumps that are more easily ingested by phagocytes. Because of its more numerous binding sites, IgM is more effective at cross-linking and aggregating particulate antigens (see Figure 18.5). IgG requires 100 to 1000 times as many molecules for the same results. (In Chapter 18, we will see how agglutination is important in the diagnosis of some diseases.)

Opsonization is the coating of antigens with antibodies or complement proteins. This enhances ingestion by phagocytic cells. **Antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity** resembles opsonization in that the target organism becomes coated with antibodies; however, in this case the target cell is not engulfed but remains external to the phagocytic cell attacking it (also see Figure 17.16).

In **neutralization**, IgG antibodies inactivate microbes by blocking their attachment to host cells. IgG can neutralize toxins in a similar manner. By surrounding specific pathogenic components of a microbe, the antibodies can reduce pathogenicity or toxicity.

Finally, either IgG or IgM antibodies may trigger **activation of the complement system**. For example, inflammation is caused by infection or tissue injury (see Figure 16.9). One aspect of inflammation is that it will often cause microbes in the inflamed area to become coated with certain proteins. This, in turn, leads to the attachment to the microbe of an antibody–complement complex. This complex lyses the microbe, which then attracts phagocytes and other defensive immune system cells to the area. (For a review of complement, see Figure 16.12.)

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **17-11** Which antibodies may activate the complement system, and which antibodies are usually associated with agglutination?

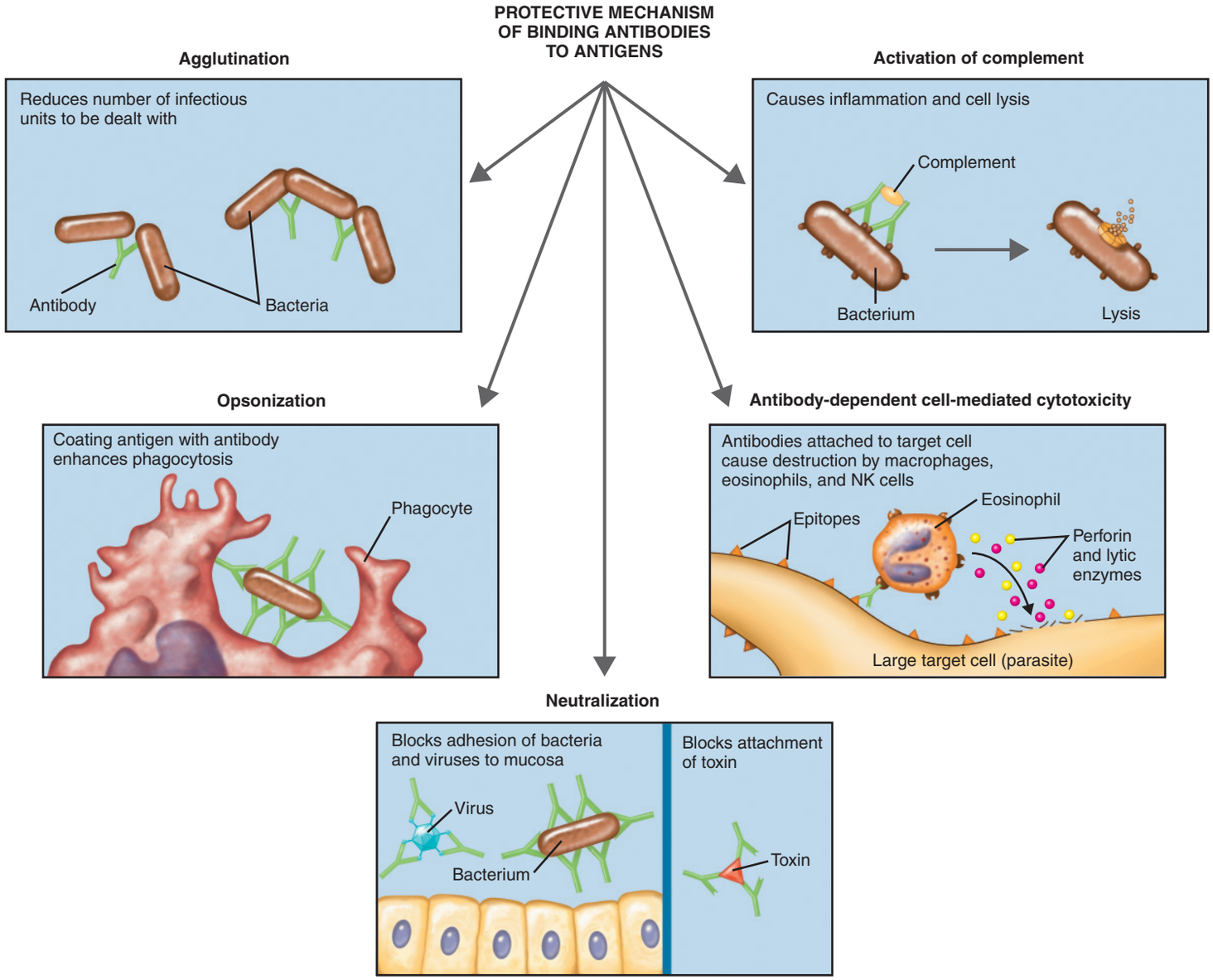


Figure 17.8 The results of antigen–antibody binding. The binding of antibodies to antigens forms antigen–antibody complexes that tag foreign cells and molecules for destruction by phagocytes and complement.

Q What are some of the possible outcomes of an antigen–antibody reaction?

Cellular Immunity Response Process

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

17-12 Describe at least one function of each of the following: M cells, T_H cells, T_C cells, T_{reg} cells, NK cells.

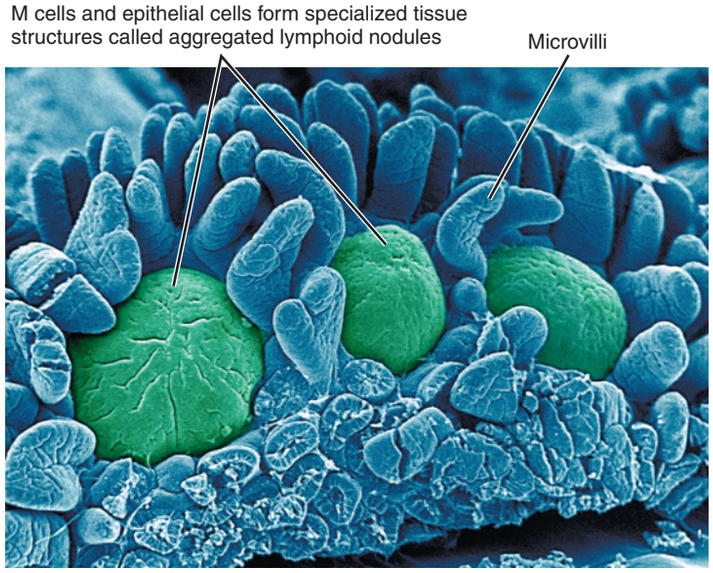
17-13 Define *antigen-presenting cell*.

17-14 Differentiate T helper, T cytotoxic, and T regulatory cells.

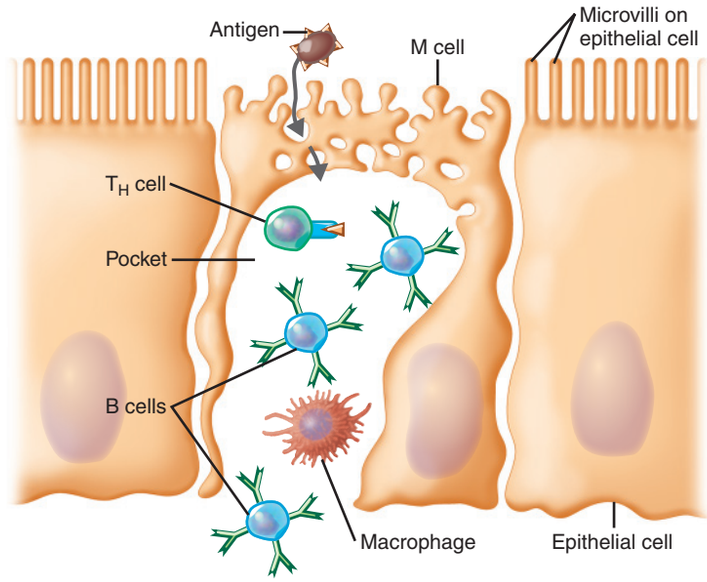
17-15 Differentiate T_H1, T_H2, and T_H17 cells.

17-16 Define *apoptosis*.

Antibodies are effective against pathogens that are circulating freely in the body, where the antibodies can make contact with them. But intracellular pathogens, such as a viruses, certain bacteria, and some parasites, are not exposed to these circulating antibodies because they enter host cells. T cells likely evolved to combat the problem posed by these pathogens. They are also the way in which the immune system recognizes body cells that are abnormal—especially cancer cells. Like B cells, each T cell is specific for only a certain antigen. However, T cells will recognize only antigen fragments (peptides) bound to MHC.



(a) M cells are part of the makeup of aggregated lymphoid nodules (green). Note the tips of the closely packed microvilli on the surrounding epithelial cells.



(b) M cells facilitate contact between antigens passing through the intestinal tract and cells of the body's immune system.

Figure 17.9 M cells. M cells are positioned above aggregated lymphoid nodules, which are located on the intestinal wall. Their function is to transport antigens encountered in the digestive tract to contact lymphocytes and antigen-presenting cells of the immune system.

Q Why are M cells especially important for immune defenses against diseases affecting the digestive system?

About 98% of immature T cells are eliminated in the thymus, which is akin to clonal deletion in B cells. This reflects a weeding-out process, called **thymic selection**, that allows only those T cells that correctly recognize foreign peptides and self MHC molecules to continue. Once mature, T cells migrate from the thymus by way of the blood and lymphatic system to various lymphoid tissues, where they are most likely to encounter antigens. (See Figure 16.5 for a review of the lymphatic system.)

Pathogens destined to live intracellularly most frequently enter the body via the digestive canal or respiratory tract. Each of these tracts is lined with a barrier of epithelial cells. In the digestive canal, something can pass this barrier only by way of an array of gateway cells called **microfold cells**, or **M cells**, scattered among the absorptive, microvilli-bearing epithelial cells (Figure 17.9). M cells are located over **aggregated lymphoid nodules (Peyer's patches)**, which are secondary lymphoid tissues located on the intestinal wall. M cells take up antigens from the intestinal tract and allow their transfer to the lymphocytes and antigen-presenting cells of the immune system found throughout the intestinal tract, just under the epithelial-cell layer but especially in the aggregated lymphoid nodules. It is also here that antibodies, mostly IgA essential for mucosal immunity, are formed and migrate to the mucosal lining.

Antigen-Presenting Cells (APCs)

Antigen-presenting cells (APCs) include B cells, dendritic cells, and activated macrophages. All APCs have class II MHC molecules on their surfaces that present potential antigenic fragments to T helper cells. If the TCR has affinity for the MHC-peptide complex on the APC, T cell activation is initiated. In addition, the APC secretes cytokines that influence the T_H cell to develop into a particular type of T helper cell.

Dendritic Cells

Dendritic cells (DCs) have long extensions called *dendrites* (Figure 17.10) because they resemble nerve cell dendrites. Dendritic cells are the main APCs that induce immune responses by T cells. Dendritic cells in the skin and genital tract are called

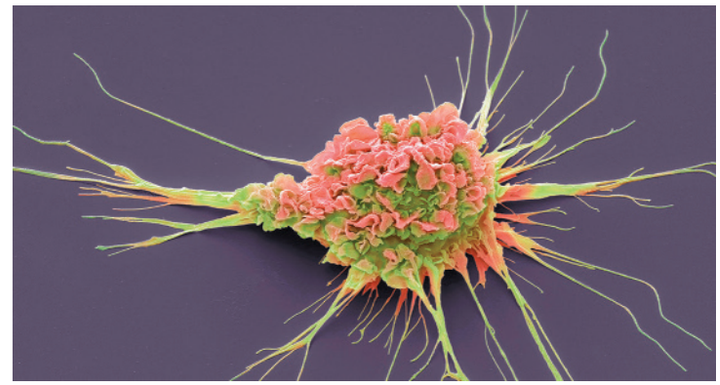


Figure 17.10 A dendritic cell. These cells link innate immunity and adaptive immunity by presenting antigens to T cells. The dendritic cell is colored green, its ruffles are pink.

Q What is the role of dendritic cells in immunity?

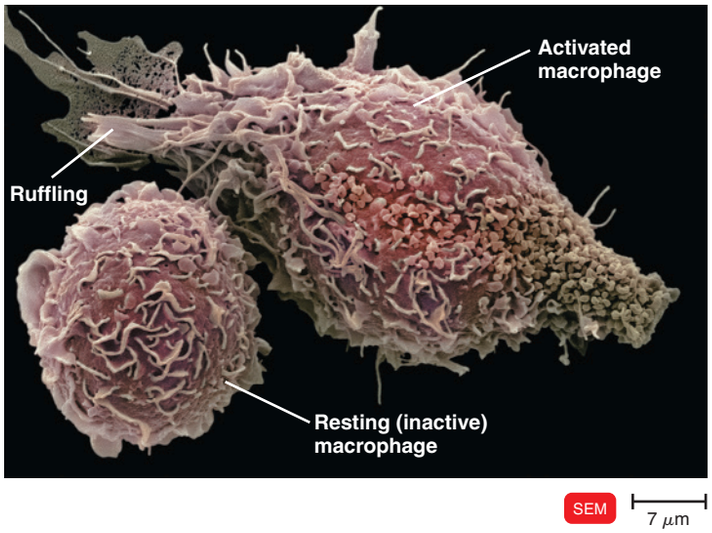


Figure 17.11 Activated macrophages. When activated, macrophages become larger and ruffled.

Q How do macrophages become activated?

Langerhans cells. Other dendritic cell populations are found in the lymph nodes, spleen, thymus, blood, and various tissues—except the brain. Dendritic cells that act as sentinels in these tissues engulf invading microbes, degrade them, and transport them to lymph nodes for display to T cells located there.

Macrophages

Macrophages (from the Greek for *large eaters*) are usually found in a resting state. We have already discussed the function of these cells related to phagocytosis. They are important for innate immunity and for ridding the body of worn-out blood cells (about 200 billion per day) and other debris, such as cellular remnants from apoptosis. Their motility and phagocytic capabilities are greatly increased when they are stimulated to become **activated macrophages** (Figure 17.11). This activation can be initiated by ingestion of antigenic material. Other stimuli, such as cytokines produced by an activated T helper cell, can further enhance the capabilities of macrophages. Once activated, macrophages enlarge, become ruffled, and are more effective as phagocytes and as APCs. Activated macrophages are important factors in the control of cancer cells, virus-infected cells, and intracellular pathogens such as *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*.

After taking up an antigen anywhere in the body, APCs tend to migrate to lymph nodes or other lymphoid centers on the mucosa, where they present the antigen to T_H cells located there. T cells carrying receptors that are capable of binding with any specific antigen are present in relatively limited numbers. Migration of APCs increases the opportunity for these particular T cells to encounter the antigen for which they are specific.

Classes of T Cells

The different classes of T cells have different functions, rather like the classes of immunoglobulins. As mentioned previously, **T helper cells (T_H cells)** cooperate with B cells in the production of antibodies, mainly through cytokine signaling. T_H cells also secrete cytokines that help the activation of other immune cells, including T cytotoxic (T_C) cells, another major T cell type. T_C cells are known for recognizing and killing virus-infected cells and cancer cells.

T cells can be distinguished by surface glycoproteins called **clusters of differentiation**, or **CD**, molecules. The CDs of greatest interest here are CD4 and CD8. T_H cells are "CD4-positive" (CD4+). CD4 molecules on T_H cells bind to MHC class II molecules on APCs. (For the importance of CD4 molecules in HIV infection, see Figure 19.14.) T_C cells are "CD8-positive" (CD8+). CD8 molecules on T_C cells bind to MHC class I molecules present on all nucleated cells. T cells that have not encountered antigen are called *naïve*. After specific contact with an MHC-peptide complex, the T cell is activated to form effector cells: T_H cells, which secrete cytokines; T regulatory cells, which are a subset of T_H cells; T_C cells, now referred to as cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs), which kill abnormal body cells; and memory T cells.

T Helper Cells ($CD4^+$ T Cells)

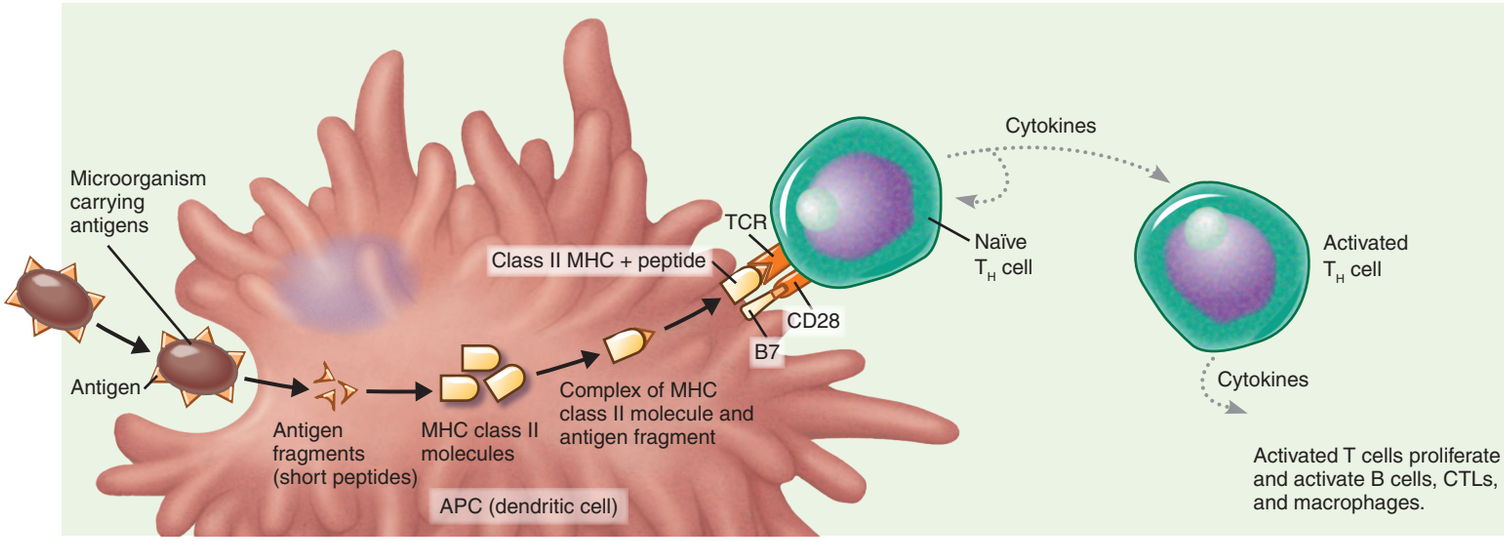
T helper cells recognize antigen presented by a class II MHC molecule of an APC. If the APC is a macrophage, it becomes activated, making it more effective in both phagocytosis and in antigen presentation. Dendritic cells are especially important in the activation of naïve T helper cells because dendritic cells bear co-stimulatory molecules that the naïve cells must receive to be activated. Memory T helper cells do not require this costimulation.

Figure 17.12 shows the activation of a naïve T helper cell by a dendritic cell. Notice that the T_H cell recognizes antigen fragments held in a complex with MHC class II proteins on the

CLINICAL CASE

The immune response to antigens takes place primarily in the secondary lymphoid organs, such as the lymph nodes, the mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue, and the spleen. During a primary immune response, pathogens and their constituents are transported to these tissues, where microbial antigens are presented to B cells that constantly enter and leave the secondary lymphoid organs. Dr. Marsden reviews her autopsy notes and sees that Mrs. Vasquez does not have a spleen; it had been removed following an automobile accident some years before.

Why is the fact that the patient has no spleen important?



1. An APC encounters and ingests a microorganism. The antigen is enzymatically processed into short peptides, which combine with MHC class II molecules and are displayed on the surface of the APC.
2. A receptor (TCR) on the surface of the $CD4^1$ T helper cell (T_H cell) binds to the MHC–antigen complex. The T_H cell costimulatory molecule, CD28, binds to surface protein B7 on the APC. These two signals activate the T helper cell to secrete cytokines.
3. The cytokines cause the T_H cell to contribute to T helper cell activation as well as the activation of other immune system cells.

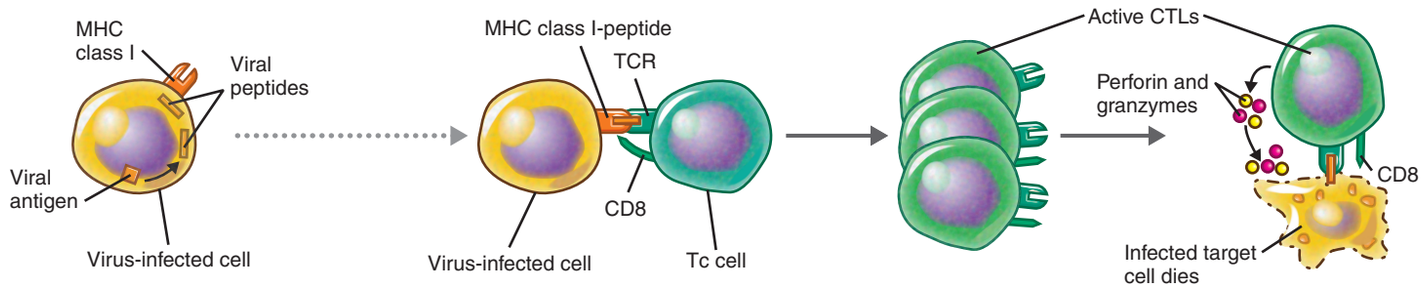
Figure 17.12 Activation of $CD4^+$ T helper cells. To activate a T helper cell, at least two signals are required: the first is the binding of the TCR to the processed antigen-MHC complex, and the second involves another protein (B7) on the APC surface binding to CD28 on the T_H cell surface. This costimulation triggers the T_H cell to secrete IL-2 and other cytokines. These cytokines affect the functions of multiple cell types of the immune system.

Q Which cells are antigen-presenting cells?

surface of the dendritic cell. This is the initial signal for activation of the T_H cell. However, notice that a second, *costimulatory signal* is also required. This signal comes from the dendritic cell in the form of a cell surface protein known as B7. B7 binds to a protein on the T_H cell surface called CD28. The APC-T cell interaction also involves cytokines secreted by the APC, which cause the proliferating T_H cells to differentiate into populations of T_H cell subsets, such as T_H1, T_H2, and T_H17. These subsets act on different cells of the body's defensive systems. They also form a population of long-lived memory T cells.

T_H1 cells The cytokines produced by **T_H1 cells**, especially IFN-γ, activate cells related to delayed hypersensitivity (such as a poison-ivy rash) and are responsible for activation of macrophages. They also stimulate the production of antibodies that promote phagocytosis and are especially effective in enhancing the activity of complement, such as opsonization and inflammation (see Figure 16.12). As shown in **Figure 17.13**, the generation of cytotoxic T lymphocytes requires action by a T_H1 cell.

T_H2 cells produce cytokines, including IL-4. They are associated primarily with the production of antibodies, especially IgE,



1. A normal cell will not trigger a response by a Tc cell, but a virus infected cell (shown here) or a cancer cell produces abnormal proteins (endogenous antigens) that will trigger a response.
2. Viral antigen fragments are presented on the infected cell surface by class I MHC molecules.
3. The Tc cell is activated to produce a clone of cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs).
4. The CTL induces the virus-infected cell to die by apoptosis.

Figure 17.13 Killing of virus-infected target cell by cytotoxic T lymphocyte.

Q Differentiate a cytotoxic T lymphocyte cell from a T helper cell.

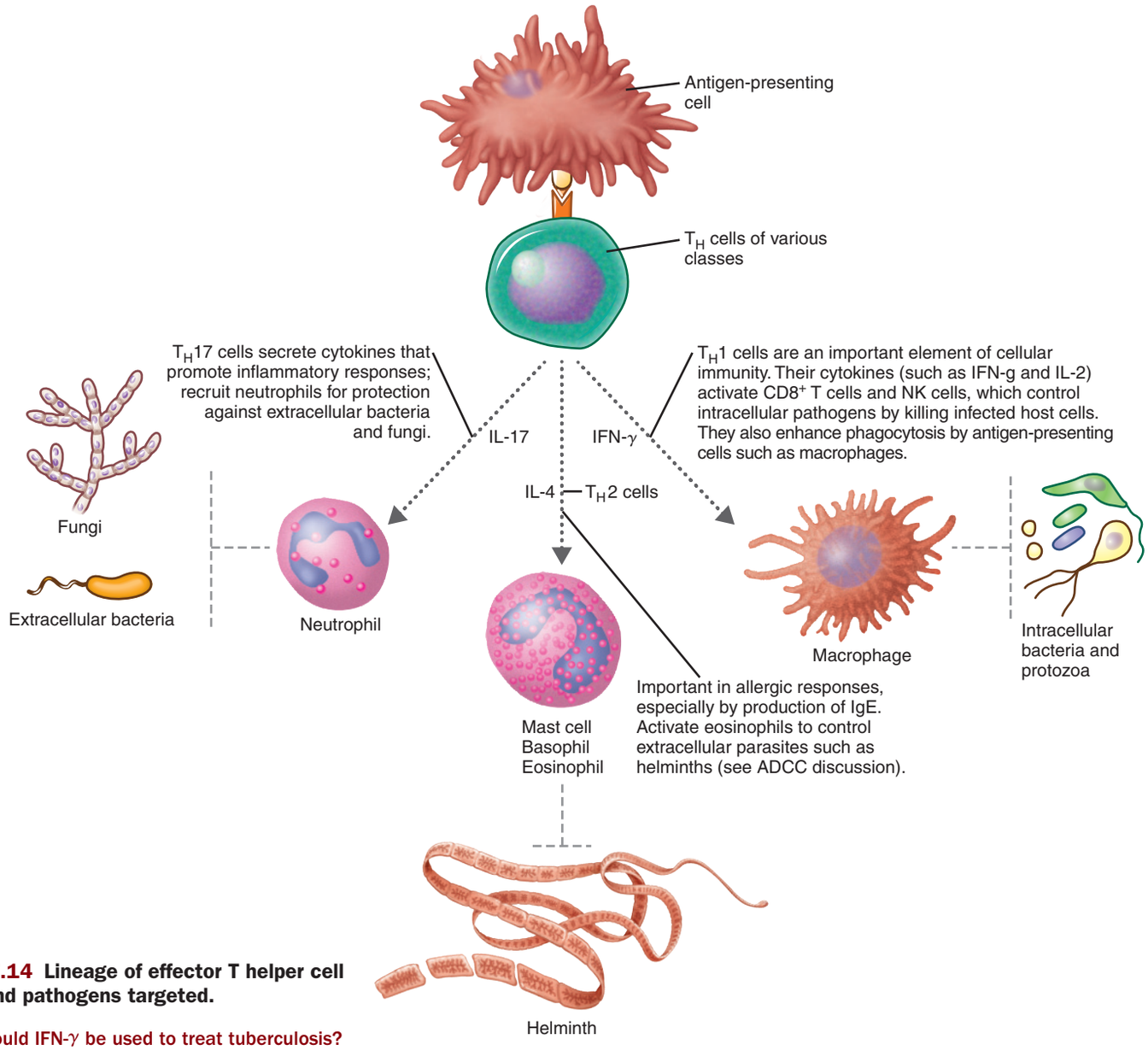


Figure 17.14 Lineage of effector T helper cell classes and pathogens targeted.

Q Why would IFN-γ be used to treat tuberculosis?

that are important in allergic reactions. They are also important in the activation of the eosinophils that defend against infections by extracellular parasites, such as helminths (see Figure 17.16).

A third subset is named **T_H17 cells** because of their production of large quantities of the cytokine IL-17. The discovery of T_H17 cells answered the questions raised by the observation that T_H1 and T_H2 cells were not effective in dealing with certain infections by extracellular bacteria and fungi. IL-17 acts as a chemokine to recruit and activate neutrophils. Excessive amounts of T_H17 cells probably contribute to the inflammation and injury to tissue found in certain autoimmune diseases such as multiple sclerosis, psoriasis, rheumatoid arthritis, and Crohn's disease. They may be associated with the pathologic effects of diseases such as asthma and allergic dermatitis. But they also serve, helpfully, to combat microbial infections of the mucosa by the production of cytokines such as IL-22, which stimulate epithelial cells to produce antimicrobial proteins. Therefore, a severe deficiency of T_H17 cells may make an individual more susceptible to opportunistic infections.

The functions of the three T_H subsets directly involved in the body's defenses against external microbial threats are summarized in Figure 17.14, with their primary cytokine referenced in the figure.

T Regulatory Cells

T regulatory (T_{reg}) cells make up about 5–10% of the T cell population. They are a subset of the T helper cells and are distinguished by the presence of the cell surface molecule CD25. Their primary function is to combat autoimmune reactions by suppressing autoreactive T cells that escape deletion in the thymus. They are also useful in protecting the resident microbiota that live in our intestines and aid digestion. Similarly,

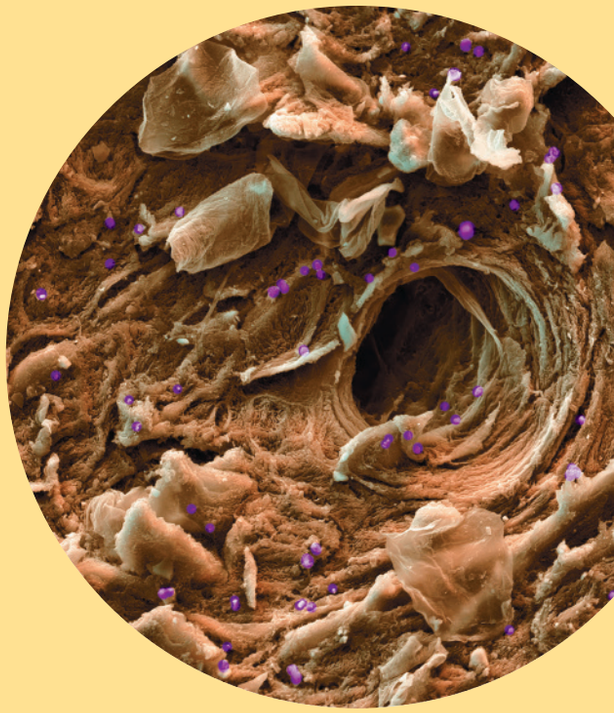
EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME The Relationship between Your Immune Cells and Skin Microbiota

Over 200 genera of bacteria are permanent or transient members of the skin's microbiota. In fact, over a million microbes populate each square centimeter of skin, and another million T cells are located near capillaries there. This brings up the question of why certain members of the microbial community are allowed to live, whereas others are targeted and destroyed.

Take the example of *Staphylococcus epidermidis* bacteria. Studies show that its ubiquitous presence on the skin actually protects against infection by pathogens. This is partially due to competitive exclusion with other microbes. But it's also because *S. epidermidis* promotes production of the pro-inflammatory cytokines, IL-1 and IL-17, by effector T cells. Yet the T cells do not initiate an inflammatory response against *S. epidermidis* itself.

In normal human skin, 90% of the lymphocytes present are T regulatory cells found near hair follicles. Genetic analysis shows that the majority of T_{reg} cells found in adult skin are memory cells that suppress T_H cells from inciting a fight against nearby microbes (namely, *S. epidermidis*). This explains why the immune system is tolerant of its presence.

By contrast, fetal skin contains no memory cells. Babies are also born without normal microbiota on their skin, and their immune system is immature. The skin microbiota and our immune systems develop codependently. Studies in germ-free mice show that contact with *S. epidermidis* during the first few weeks of life is actually necessary to induce the memory T_{reg} cells in skin. This time frame corresponds with migration of T_{reg} cells to the skin during the first 2 weeks after birth.



***Staphylococcus* (purple) on human skin.**

in pregnancy they may play a role in protecting the fetus from rejection as nonself. Recently, researchers have discovered evidence of T_{reg} involvement in establishing the skin microbiome (see **Exploring the Microbiome**).

Cytotoxic T Lymphocytes (CD8$^+$ T Cells)

As noted earlier, the activation of a naïve T_C cell requires interaction between its T-cell receptor and a class I MHC-peptide complex on the surface of another body cell. This interaction plus costimulatory signals results in an activated **cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL)** that will recognize and kill this and other cells that have the same antigen displayed (see Figure 17.13). Primarily, these body cells, also called target cells, are infected with an intracellular pathogen, such as a virus. Other important target cells are tumor cells (see Figure 19.12) and nonself cells of transplanted tissue. Here we can make the key distinction between APCs, which present peptide with class II MHC, and altered body cells (including APCs), which present peptide with class I MHC. Not only does the type of MHC molecule differ but the source of the antigen differs. APCs have internalized the antigen by endocytosis, whereas altered body cells have synthesized the antigen as a part of an intracellular infection, for example.

Because MHC class I molecules are found on all nucleated cells, our diverse CTLs are poised to attack almost any cell of the body that has been altered. In its attack, a CTL attaches to the target cell and releases a pore-forming protein, **perforin**. Pore formation contributes to the subsequent death of the cell and is similar to the action of the complement membrane attack complex described in Chapter 16 (see Figure 16.12a). **Granzymes**, proteases that induce apoptosis, are then able to enter the cell as it endocytoses the pore. **Apoptosis** (a-pah-TO-sis; from the Greek for falling away like leaves) is also called *programmed cell death*. It is a necessary process in multicellular organisms.*

Tracking the death of cells and determining whether the demise is natural or due to trauma or disease are important. If the cell's death is due to trauma or disease, then the body's defense and repair mechanisms mobilize. Apoptosis is also an infection-fighting mechanism of last resort: if a cell cannot clear a pathogen any other way, it may die by apoptosis. This helps prevent spread of pathogens, particularly viruses, to nearby healthy cells. Cells that die from apoptosis first cut their genome into fragments, and the external membranes bulge outward in a manner called *blebbing* (**Figure 17.15**). Signals are displayed on the cell's surface that attract circulating phagocytes to digest the remains before any significant leakage of contents occurs.

*Apoptosis expert Gerry Melino says that without apoptosis, a human body would accumulate 2 tons of bone marrow and lymph nodes and a 16-kilometer intestine by age 80!

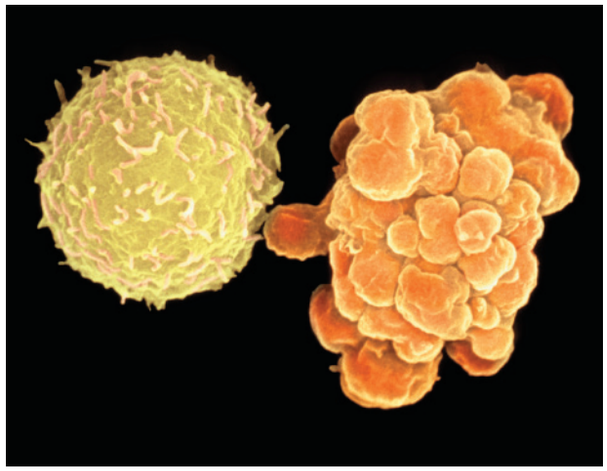


Figure 17.15 Apoptosis. A normal B cell is shown on the left. On the right, a B cell is undergoing apoptosis. Notice the bubble-like blebs.

Q What is apoptosis?

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

T cells, B cells, and dendritic cells are found in the spleen. In fact, about half of all blood lymphocytes circulate through the spleen daily. Normally, phagocytic cells of the spleen clear antibody- and complement-coated microorganisms very rapidly, thereby preventing the dissemination of infectious organisms to important organs. *Capnocytophaga* bacteria cause a range of infections, from self-limiting cellulitis to fatal septicemia. Most fatal infections are contracted from dogs and occur in people without spleens. Unfortunately, Mrs. Vasquez contracted the infectious bacteria from her pet, and because her spleen had been removed some time before, she did not have the immune response necessary to combat the resulting deadly infection.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 **Part 6**

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **17-12** What antibody is the primary one produced when an antigen is taken up by an M cell?
- **17-13** Are dendritic cells considered primarily part of the humoral or the cellular immune system?
- **17-14** Which T cell type is generally involved when a B cell reacts with an antigen and produces antibodies against the antigen?
- **17-15** Which is the T helper cell type that is generally involved in allergic reactions?
- **17-16** What is another name for apoptosis, one that describes its function?

Nonspecific Cells and Extracellular Killing by the Adaptive Immune System

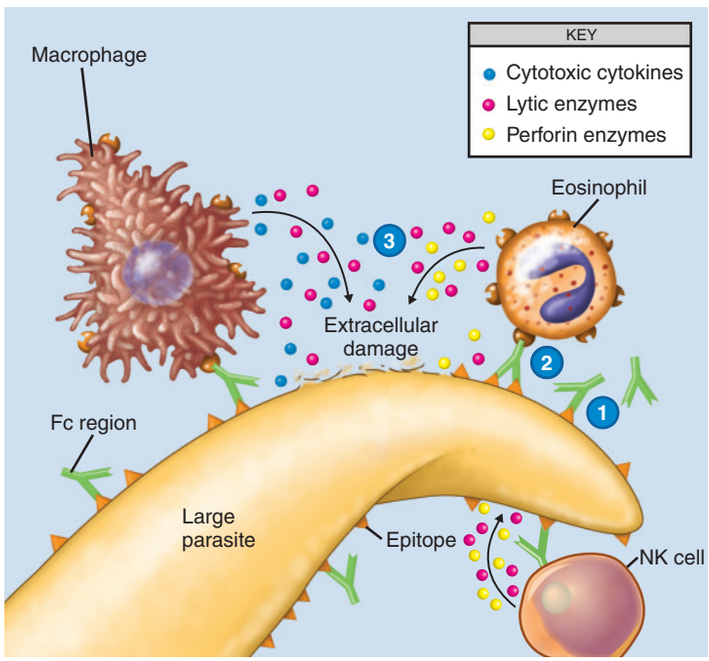
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

17-17 Describe the function of natural killer cells.

17-18 Describe the role of antibodies and natural killer cells in antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity.

CTLs are not the only lymphocytes that can lead to the destruction of a target cell. **Natural killer (NK) cells** can also destroy certain virus-infected cells and tumor cells and can attack large, extracellular parasites (Figure 17.16). NK cells, which make up 5–20% of all circulating lymphocytes, differ from CTLs, however, because they do not have TCRs; that is, NK cells do not need to be stimulated by a particular antigen. Instead, NK cells are able to distinguish normal cells from tumor cells, or from cells infected with intracellular pathogens.

NK cells first contact the target cell and determine whether it expresses MHC class I self-antigens. If it does not—which is



Organisms, such as many parasites, that are too large for ingestion by phagocytic cells must be attacked externally.

Figure 17.16 Antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC). If an organism—for example, a parasitic worm—is too large for ingestion and destruction by phagocytosis, it can be attacked by immune system cells that remain external to it. **1** The target cell is first coated with antibodies. **2** Cells of the immune system, such as eosinophils, macrophages, and NK cells, bind to the Fc regions of the attached antibodies. **3** The target cell is then lysed by substances secreted by the cells of the immune system.

Q Why is ADCC important protection against parasitic protozoa and helminths?

TABLE 17.3 Principal Cells That Function in Cell-Mediated Immunity

Cell	Function
T Helper (T_H1) Cell	Activates cells related to cell-mediated immunity: macrophages, CTLs, and natural killer cells; stimulates B cells to produce IgG
T Helper (T_H2) Cell	Stimulates production of eosinophils, IgM, and IgE
T Helper (T_H17) Cell	Recruits neutrophils; stimulates production of antimicrobial proteins
Cytotoxic T Lymphocyte (CTL)	Destroys target cells on contact by inducing apoptosis
T Regulatory (T_{reg}) Cell	Regulates immune response and helps maintain self-tolerance
Activated Macrophage	Enhanced phagocytic activity; attacks cancer cells
Natural Killer (NK) Cell	Attacks and destroys target cells; participates in antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity

often the case in viral infections—they kill the target cell by mechanisms similar to that of a CTL. Tumor cells also have a reduced number of MHC class I molecules on their surfaces. Like CTLs, NK cells cause pores to form in the target cell, which leads to apoptosis.

The functions of NK cells and the other principal cells involved in cellular immunity are briefly summarized in Table 17.3.

With the help of antibodies produced by the humoral immune system, the cell-mediated immune system can stimulate natural killer cells and cells of the innate defense system, such as macrophages, to kill targeted cells. In this way, an organism such as a fungus, protozoan, or helminth that is too large to be phagocytized can be attacked by immune system cells. This is referred to as **antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC)**. As is illustrated in Figure 17.16, the target cell is first coated with antibodies. A variety of cells of the immune system bind to the Fc regions of these antibodies and, thus, to the target cell. The attacking cells secrete substances that then lyse the target cell.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

17-17 How does the natural killer cell respond if the target cell does not have MHC class I self-antigens on its surface?

17-18 What makes a natural killer cell, which is not immunologically specific, attack a particular target cell?

Immunological Memory

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

17-19 Distinguish a primary from a secondary immune response.

Antibody-mediated immune responses intensify after the primary response, when a particular antigen is first met and corresponding antibodies are produced. This **secondary response** is also called the **memory response**, or **anamnestic response**. As shown in Figure 17.17, this response is comparatively more rapid, reaching a peak in only 3 to 7 days; it is also longer in duration and considerably greater in magnitude than the primary response.

The secondary response is due to the portion of activated B cells that, instead of transforming into antibody-secreting plasmocytes, become memory cells. Memory cells do not reproduce, but they are long lived. Years or even decades later, if these cells are stimulated by the same antigen, they very rapidly differentiate into antibody-producing plasmocytes.

As mentioned earlier, IgM is the first antibody that B cells make during the primary response to an antigen. But an individual B cell is also capable of making different classes of antibody, such as IgG, IgE, or IgA, all with unchanged antigenic specificity. This **class switching** is observed, especially, in the case of the primary and secondary immune response (compare IgG and IgM in Figure 17.17). Generally speaking, when IgG begins to be produced in the secondary response, the production of IgM will decrease or be sharply curtailed.

The intensity of the antibody-mediated humoral response can be reflected by the **antibody titer**, the relative amount of

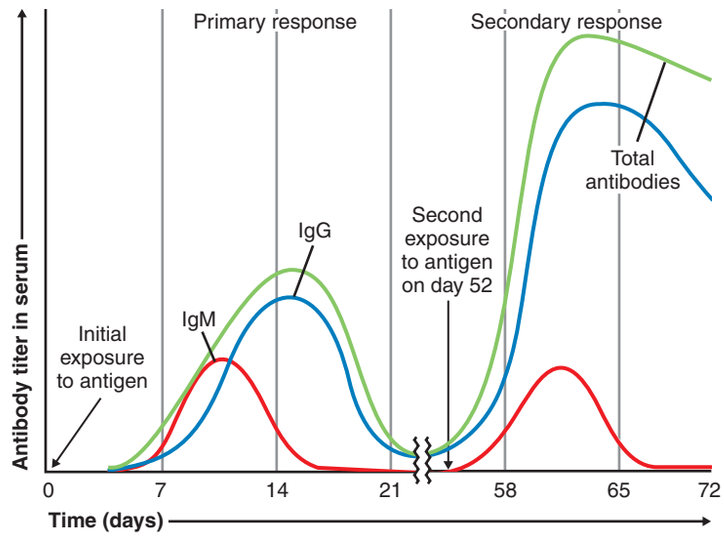


Figure 17.17 The primary and secondary immune responses to an antigen. IgM appears first in response to the initial exposure. IgG follows and provides longer-term immunity. The second exposure to the same antigen stimulates the memory cells (formed at the time of initial exposure) to rapidly produce a large amount of antibody. The antibodies produced in response to this second exposure are mostly IgG.

Q Why do many diseases, such as measles, occur only once in a person, yet others, such as colds, occur more than once?

antibody found in the blood serum. During a primary immune response, the exposed person's serum contains no detectable antibodies against an antigen for 4 to 7 days. Then there is a slow rise in antibody titer: first, IgM class antibodies are produced, followed by IgG peaking in about 10 to 17 days, after which antibody titer gradually declines. This pattern is characteristic of a primary response to an antigen. A similar response occurs with T cells, which, as we see in Chapter 19, is necessary for establishing the lifelong memory for distinguishing self from nonself.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

17-19 Does anamnestic response refer to a primary or secondary response to an antigen?

Types of Adaptive Immunity

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

17-20 Contrast the four types of adaptive immunity.

Immunity is acquired *actively* when a person is exposed to microorganisms or foreign substances and the immune system responds. Immunity is acquired *passively* when antibodies are transferred from one person to another. Passive immunity in the recipient lasts only as long as the antibodies are present—in most cases, a few weeks. Both actively acquired immunity and passively acquired immunity can be obtained by natural or artificial means (Figure 17.18).

The four types of adaptive immunity can be summarized as follows:

- **Naturally acquired active immunity** develops from exposure to antigens, illness, and recovery. Once acquired, immunity is lifelong for some diseases such as measles. In other cases, especially for intestinal diseases, immunity may last only a few years. Subclinical infections can also confer immunity.
- **Naturally acquired passive immunity** is the transfer of antibodies to a fetus during pregnancy. These antibodies cross the placenta (*transplacental transfer*). If the parent is immune to diphtheria, for example, the newborn will be temporarily immune to diphtheria as well. Certain antibodies are also passed to a nursing infant in breast milk, especially in the colostrum. Passive immunity generally lasts only as long as the transmitted antibodies persist—usually a few weeks or months—but it is essential for defending newborns until their own immune system matures. Colostrum is even more important to some other mammals; calves, for example, do not have antibodies that cross the placenta and rely on colostrum ingested during the first day of life.
- **Artificially acquired active immunity** is the result of vaccination—which will be discussed in Chapter 18. **Vaccines**, also called **immunizations**, introduce a harmless form of antigens, such as tetanus toxoid, to the body. For example, killed or inactivated bacteria can be injected into the body resulting in an immune response without causing infection.
- **Artificially acquired passive immunity** involves the injection of antibodies (rather than antigens) into the body. These antibodies come from an animal or a human who is already immune to the disease. In this approach, plasma from a person who has recovered from an infection (so-called convalescent plasma), is introduced into a recipient. In fact, such therapy was approved for use in people with COVID-19 early in the pandemic, when other therapies and vaccines were not yet available. This type of therapy is also used for postexposure prophylaxis from diseases such as rabies, and in immunotherapy (discussed in Chapters 18 and 19).

  When an individual is given artificially acquired passive immunity, it confers an immediate passive protection against the disease. However, this immunity is short-lived because antibodies are degraded by the recipient. The half-life of an injected antibody (the time required for half of the antibodies to disappear) is typically about 3 weeks.

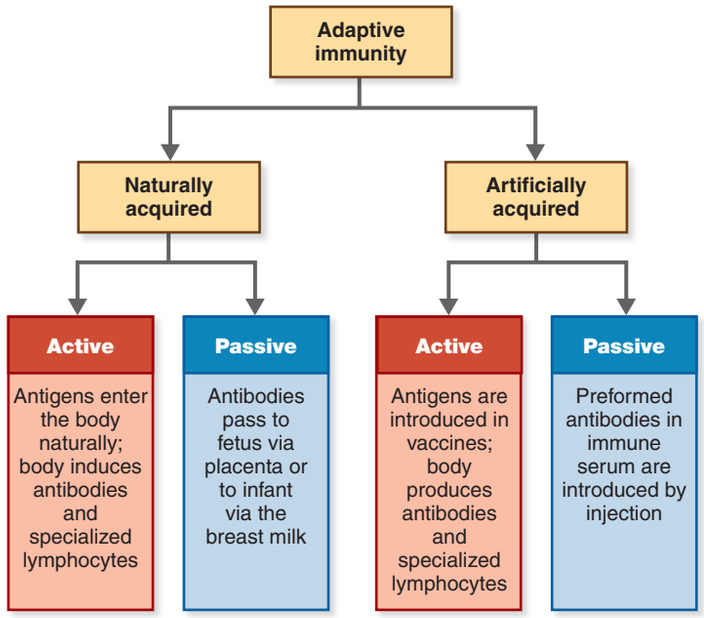


Figure 17.18 Types of adaptive immunity.

Q Which type of immunity, active or passive, lasts longer?

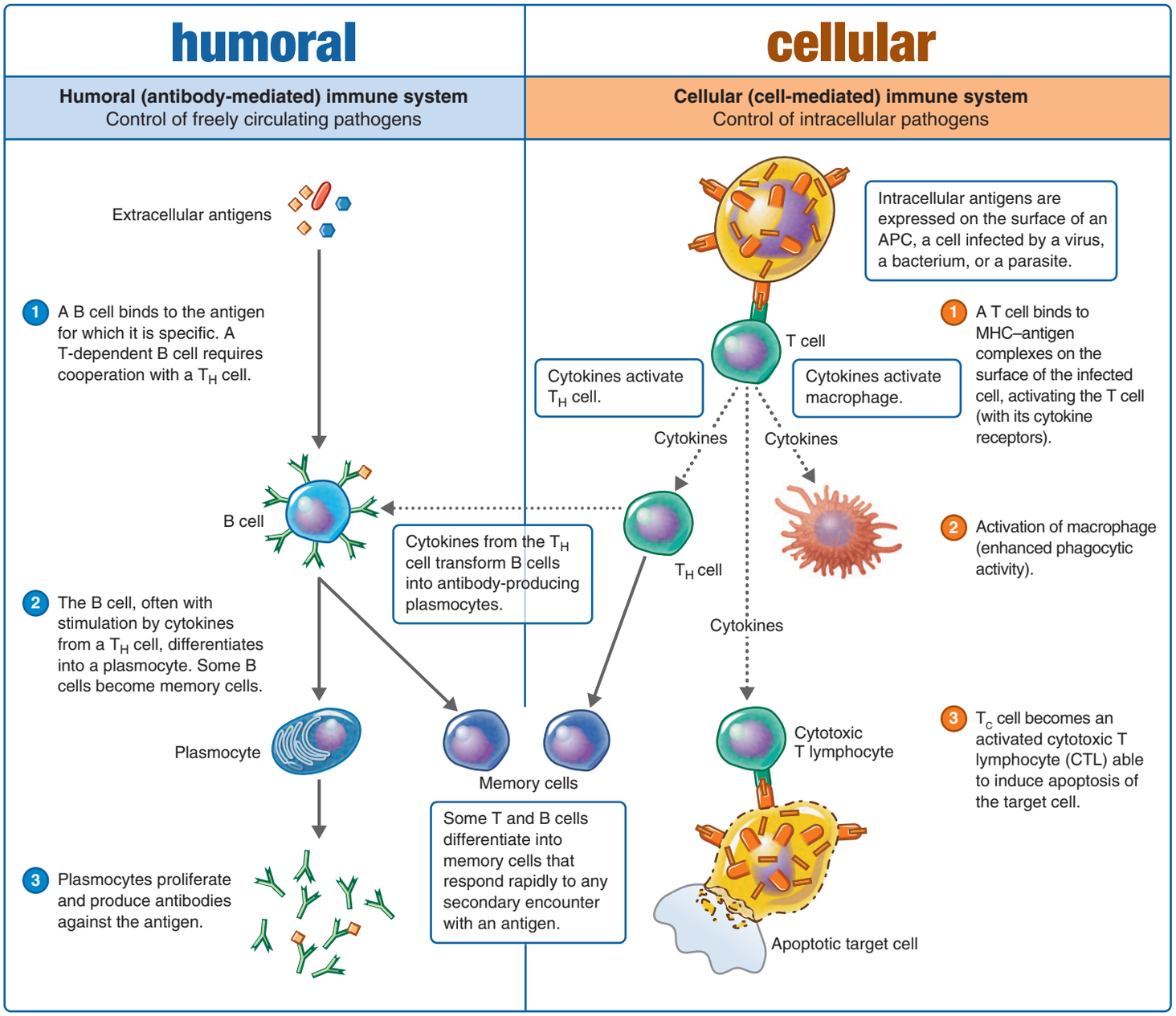
Figure 17.19 shows how various parts of the innate and adaptive immune system interact with each other.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

17-20 What type of adaptive immunity is involved when gamma globulin is injected into a person?

FOUNDATION FIGURE 17.19

The Dual Nature of the Adaptive Immune System



KEY CONCEPTS

- The adaptive immune system is divided into two parts, each responsible for dealing with pathogens in different ways. These two systems function interdependently to keep the body free of pathogens.
- **Humoral immunity**, also called antibody-mediated immunity, is directed at freely circulating pathogens and depends on B cells.
- **Cellular immunity**, also called cell-mediated immunity, depends on T cells to eliminate intracellular pathogens, reject foreign tissue recognized as nonself, and destroy tumor cells.
- The adaptive immune system provides specificity, clonal expansion, and memory.

Study Outline

The Adaptive Immune System (p. 481)

1. Adaptive immunity is the body's ability to react specifically to a microbial infection.
2. The body's response to the first contact with a particular antigen is called the primary response.
3. Memory cells respond to subsequent contact with the same antigen in the secondary response.

Dual Nature of the Adaptive Immune System

(pp. 481–482)

1. Humoral immunity involves antibodies, which are found in serum and lymph and are produced by B cells.
2. B cells develop in the red bone marrow.
3. Cellular immunity involves T cells.
4. T cells complete their development in the thymus.
5. T cell receptors recognize antigens presented on cell surface molecules called MHC class I and MHC class II.
6. Cellular immunity responds to intracellular antigens; humoral immunity responds to antigens in body fluids.

Cytokines: Chemical Messengers of Immune Cells (pp. 482–483)

1. Cells of the immune system communicate with each other by means of chemicals called cytokines.
2. Interleukins (IL) are cytokines that serve as communicators between leukocytes.
3. Chemokines cause leukocytes to migrate to an infection.
4. Interferon-γ stimulates the immune response; other INFs protect cells against viruses.
5. Tumor necrosis factor promotes the inflammatory reaction.
6. Hematopoietic cytokines promote development of white blood cells.
7. Overproduction of cytokines leads to a cytokine storm, which results in tissue damage.

Antigens and Antibodies (pp. 483–486)

Antigens (pp. 483–484)

1. An antigen (or immunogen) is a substance that stimulates the body to produce specific immune responses.
2. As a rule, antigens are proteins or large polysaccharides. Antibodies are formed against specific regions on antigens called epitopes, or antigenic determinants.
3. A hapten is a low-molecular-mass substance that cannot cause the formation of antibodies unless combined with a carrier molecule.

Antibodies (pp. 484–486)

4. An antibody, or immunoglobulin, is a protein produced by B cells in response to an antigen and is capable of combining specifically with that antigen.
5. An immunoglobulin monomer consists of two heavy chains and two light chains forming one stem (Fc) and two arms, each having an antigen-binding site.
6. Each antigen-binding site is found in the variable (V) region; the constant (C) region of the Fc distinguishes the different classes of antibodies.
7. An antibody molecule is flexible because it has bendable regions (hinges) in the heavy chains.
8. IgG antibodies are the most prevalent in serum; they provide naturally acquired passive immunity, neutralize bacterial toxins, participate in complement fixation, and enhance phagocytosis.
9. IgM antibodies consist of five monomers and a joining chain all linked together; they are involved in agglutination and complement fixation.
10. Serum IgA antibodies are monomers; secretory IgA antibodies are dimers that protect mucosal surfaces from invasion by pathogens.
11. IgD antibodies function as membrane Ig on B cells and assist in the immune response.
12. IgE antibodies bind to mast cells and basophils and are involved in allergic reactions and in responses against parasitic worms.

Humoral Immunity Response Process (pp. 487–489)

1. B cells have antibodies on their surfaces, which recognize specific epitopes.
2. For T-independent antigens: repeated epitopes are bound by multiple membrane immunoglobulins, activating the B cell.
3. For T-dependent antigens: the B cell's immunoglobulins bind to and internalize the antigen, and the antigen fragments, combined with MHC class II, activate a T_H cell, which then helps to activate the B cell.

Activation and Clonal Expansion of Antibody-Producing Cells (pp. 487–488)

4. Activated B cells differentiate into plasmocytes and memory cells.
5. Plasmocytes produce IgM antibodies and then produce other classes, usually IgG.
6. B cells that recognize self are eliminated by clonal deletion.
7. Immunoglobulin genes in B cells rearrange randomly so that mature B cells each have different genes for the V region of their antibodies.

Results of the Antigen–Antibody Interaction

(pp. 489–490)

1. An antigen–antibody complex forms when an antibody binds to its specific epitopes on an antigen.
2. Agglutination results when an antibody combines with epitopes on two different cells.
3. Opsonization enhances phagocytosis of the antigen.
4. Antibodies that attach to microbes or toxins and prevent them gaining access to the host or performing their action cause neutralization.
5. Complement activation results in bacterial cell lysis.

Cellular Immunity Response Process (pp. 490–496)

1. T cells mature in the thymus.
2. Thymic selection removes T cells that don't recognize MHC molecules of the host and T cells that will attack host cells presenting self proteins.

3. T helper cells recognize antigens processed by antigen-presenting cells and presented with MHC II.
4. Cytotoxic T cells recognize antigens processed by all nucleated host cells and presented with MHC I.

Antigen-Presenting Cells (APCs) (pp. 491–492)

5. APCs include B cells, dendritic cells, and macrophages.
6. Dendritic cells are important for the activation of naïve T_H cells.
7. Activated macrophages are effective phagocytes and APCs.
8. APCs carry antigens to lymphoid tissues where T cells that recognize the antigen are located.

Classes of T Cells (pp. 492–496)

9. T cells are classified according to their functions and cell-surface glycoproteins called CDs.
10. T helper ($CD4^+$) cells differentiate into T_H1 cells, which are involved in cellular and humoral immunity; T_H2 cells, which are involved in humoral immunity and are associated with allergic reactions and parasitic infections; and T_H17 cells, which activate innate immunity.
11. T regulatory cells (T_{reg}) suppress T cells against self.
12. Cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs), or $CD8^+$ cells, are activated by MHC class I-presenting antigens synthesized in an infected cell and are transformed into effector and memory CTLs.
13. CTLs induce apoptosis in the target cell.

Nonspecific Cells and Extracellular Killing by the Adaptive Immune System (pp. 496–497)

1. Natural killer (NK) cells lyse virus-infected cells, tumor cells, and parasites. They kill cells that do not express MHC class I antigens.
2. In antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC), NK cells and macrophages lyse antibody-coated cells.

Immunological Memory (pp. 497–498)

1. The relative amount of antibody in serum is called the antibody titer.
2. The peak IgG titer in the primary response occurs 10–17 days after exposure to an antigen.
3. The peak titer in the secondary response occurs 3–7 days after exposure.

Types of Adaptive Immunity (pp. 498–499)

1. Immunity resulting from infection is called naturally acquired active immunity; this type of immunity may be long-lasting.
2. Transfer of antibodies to a fetus via transplacental transfer or to a newborn in colostrum results in naturally acquired passive immunity in the newborn; this type of immunity can last up to a few months.
3. Immunity resulting from vaccination is called artificially acquired active immunity and can be long-lasting.
4. Artificially acquired passive immunity refers to humoral antibodies acquired by injection; this type of immunity can last for a few weeks.
5. Serum containing antibodies is often called antiserum or gamma globulin.

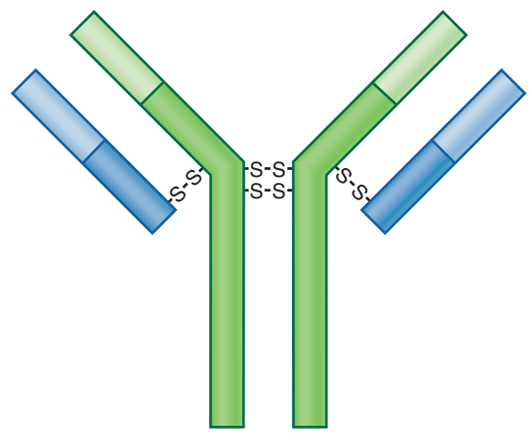
Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

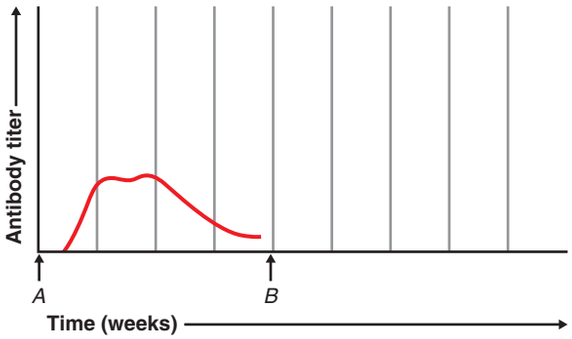
Review

1. Contrast the terms in the following pairs:
   a. innate and adaptive immunity
   b. humoral and cellular immunity
   c. active and passive immunity
   d. T_H1 and T_H2 cells
   e. natural and artificial immunity
   f. T-dependent and T-independent antigens
   g. immunoglobulin and TCR
2. What does MHC stand for? What is the function of MHC? What types of T cells interact with MHC class I? With MHC class II?
3. DRAW IT Label the heavy chains, light chains, and variable and F_c regions of this typical antibody. Indicate where the antibody binds to antigen. Sketch an IgM antibody.



4. Diagram the roles that T cells and B cells play in immunity.
5. Explain a function for the following types of cells: CTL, T_H, and T_{reg}. What is a cytokine?

6. DRAW IT
   a. In the following graph, at time *A* the host was injected with tetanus toxoid. Show the response to a booster dose at time *B*.
   b. Draw the antibody response of this same individual to exposure to a new antigen at time *B*.



7. How would each of the following prevent infection?
   a. antibodies against *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* fimbriae
   b. antibodies against host cell mannose
8. Explain why a person who recovers from a disease can attend others with the disease without fear of contracting it.
9. NAME IT This cell is found in skin and lymphoid tissue. It is a phagocyte and activates T_H cells.
10. How can a human make 100 billion different antibodies with only 25,000 different genes?

Multiple Choice

Match the following choices to questions 1–4:

a. innate resistance
b. naturally acquired active immunity
c. naturally acquired passive immunity
d. artificially acquired active immunity
e. artificially acquired passive immunity

1. The type of protection provided by the injection of diphtheria toxoid.
2. The type of protection provided by the injection of antirabies serum.
3. The type of protection resulting from recovery from an infection.
4. A newborn's immunity to yellow fever.

Match the following choices to the statements in questions 5–7:

a. IgA
b. IgD
c. IgE
d. IgG
e. IgM

5. Antibodies that protect the fetus and newborn.
6. The first antibodies synthesized; especially effective against microorganisms.
7. Antibodies that are bound to mast cells and involved in allergic reactions.

8. Put the following in the correct sequence to elicit an antibody response: (1) T_H cell produces cytokines; (2) B cell contacts antigen; (3) antigen fragment goes to surface of the B cell; (4) T_H recognizes antigen fragment and MHC; (5) B cell proliferates.
   a. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5
   b. 5, 4, 3, 2, 1
   c. 3, 4, 5, 1, 2
   d. 2, 3, 4, 1, 5
   e. 4, 5, 3, 1, 2
9. A kidney-transplant patient experienced a cytotoxic rejection of the new kidney. Place the following in order for that rejection: (1) apoptosis occurs; (2) $CD8^+$ T cell becomes CTL; (3) granzymes released; (4) MHC class I activates $CD8^+$ T cell; (5) perforin released.
   a. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5
   b. 5, 4, 3, 2, 1
   c. 4, 2, 5, 3, 1
   d. 3, 4, 5, 1, 2
   e. 2, 3, 4, 1, 5
10. Patients with Chédiak-Higashi syndrome suffer from various types of cancer. These patients are most likely lacking which of the following?
    a. T_{reg} cells
    b. T_H1 cells
    c. B cells
    d. NK cells
    e. T_H2 cells

Analysis

1. Injections of CTLs completely removed all hepatitis B viruses from infected mice, but they killed only 5% of the infected liver cells. Explain how CTLs cured the mice.
2. Why is dietary protein deficiency associated with increased susceptibility to infections?
3. A positive tuberculin skin test shows cellular immunity to *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. How could a person acquire this immunity?
4. On a vacation to Australia, Riley was bitten by a poisonous sea snake. Quickly transported to a nearby emergency department, Riley received an antivenin injection and survived. What is antivenin? How is it obtained? How did it lead to Riley's survival?

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. A patient had life-threatening salmonellosis that was successfully treated with anti-*Salmonella*. Why did this treatment work, when antibiotics and the patient's own immune system failed?
2. A patient with AIDS has a low T_H cell count. Why does this patient have trouble making antibodies? How does this patient make any antibodies?
3. The secretions of a patient with chronic diarrhea were found to lack IgA, although the patient had a normal level of serum IgA. What was this patient found to be unable to produce?

18 Practical Applications of Immunology

In Chapters 16 and 17, we learned the basics of how the immune system enables the body to recognize and defend against foreign microbes, toxins, and altered cells. In this chapter, we discuss some useful applications that have been developed from knowledge of the immune system. These include vaccines as well as tests that help identify infections by specific organisms. In addition, we will explore some of the disciplines—such as serology and diagnostic immunology—that have been developed from our understanding of antibody production and its interaction with antigens. The **Big Picture** highlights the importance of vaccines.

The micrograph on this page shows *Bordetella pertussis* bacteria. These bacteria can attach to cilia that line the upper respiratory system. Pertussis (whooping cough) is on the rise—see the Clinical Case of this chapter for a discussion on pertussis vaccination.

◀ ***Bordetella pertussis*** **bacteria cause whooping cough.**

In the Clinic

As the nurse in a vaccine clinic, you meet Eric, a healthy infant in for his 2-month appointment. His mother asks what vaccinations are due, and you explain that today Eric should receive his second dose of the hepatitis B vaccine, along with first doses of vaccinations designed to protect against rotavirus, diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis, *Haemophilus influenzae* type b, pneumococcus, and polio. **Eric's mother is alarmed that her child must receive "so many shots all at once, when he is so little." How should you respond to her?**

Hint: Read ahead about vaccines and see Tables 18.1 and 18.2.

Vaccines

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

18-1 Define *vaccine*.

18-2 Explain why vaccination works.

18-3 Differentiate the following and provide an example of each: attenuated, inactivated, and subunit vaccines.

18-4 Contrast nucleic acid vaccines and recombinant vector vaccines.

18-5 Compare and contrast the production of attenuated and killed vaccines, recombinant vaccines, and nucleic acid vaccines.

18-6 Define *adjuvant*.

18-7 Explain the value of vaccines, and discuss acceptable risks for vaccines.

Long before vaccines existed, it was known that people who recovered from certain diseases were immune to the same infections thereafter. Chinese physicians were the first to try to prevent disease by exploiting this phenomenon. Records indicate that from at least the 1400s onward, they had children inhale dried smallpox scabs. This usually resulted in mild disease, followed by immunity. Called **variolation**, the smallpox prevention procedure spread through Asia, parts of North Africa, and Eurasia. It gained a foothold in Europe in 1717, when Lady Mary Montagu of England learned of it while in Turkey. Montagu had been severely scarred from smallpox and had lost a brother to the disease. After she championed variolation, the procedure became common in England, parts of Europe, and in the British colonies. It was usually performed by introducing a small amount of the agent into a healthy person through a skin scratch.

Unfortunately, variolation occasionally resulted in a serious case of smallpox and had a 1% mortality rate, according to eighteenth-century English records. However, this was still well below the 50% mortality rate of smallpox. By 1798, physician Edward Jenner had begun to inoculate people with cowpox in an attempt to prevent smallpox. The procedure was based on the observation that milkmaids who had recovered from the milder cowpox disease did not contract the more deadly smallpox. Cowpox inoculation proved much safer than variolation, and it became the main method to prevent smallpox during the nineteenth century. To honor Jenner's work, Louis Pasteur coined the term *vaccination* (from the Latin *vacca*, meaning cow).

Today, a **vaccine** contains proteins from the organism to be targeted, nucleic acids encoding those proteins (DNA vaccines and mRNA vaccines), or disabled forms of the organism itself, which stimulate the body's immune defenses against the pathogen. Recently, lightning-fast development of vaccines against SARS-CoV-2, the virus that causes COVID-19, resulted in a new approach: RNA vaccines. These vaccines consist of messenger RNAs (mRNAs) encoding the virus spike protein packaged inside a lipid coat. Thanks to vaccines of various formulations, smallpox has been eradicated worldwide, as has rinderpest, a viral disease of livestock. Measles, polio, and several other infectious viral diseases of humans are also targeted for elimination through the use of vaccines. See the **Clinical Focus** box and the Big Picture.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

18-1 What is the etymology (origin) of the word *vaccine*?

Principles and Effects of Vaccination

Development of vaccines based on the model of the smallpox vaccine is the single most important application of immunology. An effective vaccine is the most desirable method of disease control. It makes the targeted disease less severe or prevents it from occurring at all. Disease prevention not only reduces morbidity and mortality, but is generally the most economical public health option as well.

We now know that Jenner's inoculations worked because the cowpox virus, which is not a serious pathogen, is in the same genus as the smallpox virus. The injection, by skin scratches, provoked a primary immune response that led to formation of antibodies and long-term memory cells. If the recipient encountered the smallpox virus later, those memory cells were stimulated and produced a rapid, intense secondary immune response that prevented the disease from progressing (see Figure 17.17). The cowpox vaccine was later replaced by a vaccine based on *Orthopoxvirus vaccinia virus*, a related poxvirus.

Many communicable diseases can be controlled by behavioral and environmental methods. For example, proper sanitation can prevent the spread of cholera, the use of latex condoms can slow the spread of sexually transmitted infections, and wearing a mask can minimize transmission of respiratory infections. If prevention fails, bacterial diseases can often be treated with antibiotics. However, there are few antiviral drugs. Therefore, vaccination is frequently the only feasible method of controlling viral disease. Controlling a disease does not necessarily require that everyone be immune to it. If a high percentage of people in a community is immune, through vaccination or recovery from an infection, **herd immunity** may be established. In herd immunity, outbreaks of a disease are limited to sporadic cases because there are not enough susceptible individuals to support the rapid spread of the infection that leads to an epidemic.

It is remarkable that there are still no widespread, useful vaccines against a number of pathogenic microbes, including chlamydias, fungi, protozoa, or helminthic parasites of humans. However, vaccines are under development for HIV, the malaria parasite, and Zika virus disease. To create effective vaccines, developers need to overcome a number of hurdles: determining which antigens will prompt the most effective immune response, understanding the life cycle or stages of a microorganism, finding effective animal models to test efficacy, and

TABLE 18.1 CDC-Recommended Vaccines to Prevent Bacterial Diseases

Disease(s)	Vaccine	Recommendation	Booster
H. influenzae type b meningitis	Polysaccharide from *H. influenzae* type b	Children 2–18 months.	None recommended
Meningococcal ACWY meningitis	Purified polysaccharides from *Neisseria meningitidis*	Age 11–12 years.	At 16 years and for people in an outbreak setting
Meningococcal B meningitis	Purified polysaccharide from *Neisseria meningitidis*	For people with substantial risk of infection; recommended for college freshmen, especially if living in dormitories.	After 1 year; every 2–3 years if risk remains
Pneumococcal pneumonia	Purified polysaccharide from 13 or 23 strains of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*	PV23 for adults with certain chronic diseases; people over 65; PV13 for children 2–18 months; years 4–6.	None if first dose administered $\geq$ 24 months
Tetanus, diphtheria, and pertussis	DTaP (children younger than 3), Tdap (older children and adults), Td (booster for tetanus and pertussis)	DTaP (children 2–18 months; 4–6 years); Tdap (similar to Td; single dose for children aged 11–12 years and adults).	Tdap or Td every 10 years

funding and coordinating research on a particular vaccine. The rapid development and approval of vaccines against COVID-19 resulted from a number of factors, including years of previous research, a great deal of funding, and the running of multiple clinical trials in parallel.

The principal vaccines used to prevent bacterial and viral diseases in the United States are listed in Tables 18.1 and 18.2. Many of these are recommended within the first few years of childhood. U.S. travelers who might be exposed to cholera, yellow fever, or other diseases not endemic in the United States can obtain other immunization recommendations from the U.S. Public Health Service and local public health agencies.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

18-2 Why is vaccination the only feasible way to control most viral diseases?

Types of Vaccines and Their Characteristics

There are several basic types of vaccines. Some newer vaccines take full advantage of knowledge and technology developed in recent years.

Attenuated Vaccines

Deliberate weakening, called *attenuation*, can lead to the production of **attenuated vaccines** using a living pathogen with reduced virulence. As more and more viruses were produced in laboratories for study, researchers realized that an extended period of maintaining the virus in cell culture, embryonated eggs, or (nonhuman) animals was, itself, a means to attenuate pathogenic viruses. This finding expanded the number of preventable diseases. Attenuation has also been created by specifically mutating virulence genes in an organism. An example of this is the attenuated bacterial vaccine to protect against typhoid (Ty21a).

Attenuated vaccines closely mimic actual infection. The pathogen in the vaccine reproduces within the host, and cellular, as well as humoral, immunity usually is induced. Lifelong immunity, especially in the case of viruses, is often achieved without booster immunizations, and an effectiveness rate of 95% is not unusual. This long-term effectiveness probably occurs because the attenuated viruses *replicate* in the body, magnifying the effect of the original dose and thus acting as a series of secondary (booster) immunizations. However, attenuated vaccines carry a risk: it is possible that the replicating attenuated viruses or bacteria might mutate to a more pathogenic form. People with a compromised immune system should not receive these vaccines, because even the attenuated virus or bacteria may cause infection. The live polio virus vaccine is no longer used outside of endemic countries because the vaccine-derived virus can be transmitted and cause infections in unimmunized people.

Inactivated Vaccines

Inactivated vaccines use whole microbes that have been killed, usually by formalin or phenol, after being grown in the

CLINICAL CASE An Ounce of Prevention

Esther Kim, a 3-week-old newborn, is brought to the emergency department by her parents. She has had a fever and cough for the last 5 days, but now she is coughing so hard that she is vomiting. Esther's 7-year-old brother, Mark, has also been ill with a runny nose and mild cough. The Kims did not think that Esther's illness was serious until she began vomiting. Dr. Roscelli, the resident physician, admits baby Esther to the hospital for tests and observation. She is hospitalized for 5 days.

What infection does Esther have? Read on to find out.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

TABLE 18.2 CDC-Recommended Vaccines to Prevent Viral Diseases

Disease	Vaccine	Recommendation	Booster
Chickenpox (varicella)	Attenuated virus	For infants aged 12 months.	(Duration of immunity not known)
COVID-19	mRNA	Two dose series, ages vary.	Recommended
Dengue	Attentuated recombinant virus	Age 9–16 years living in dengue-endemic areas.	None recommended
Hepatitis A	Inactivated virus	Children at age 1 year; live in or travel to endemic area; homosexual men; street-drug users; receive blood-clotting factors.	Duration of protection estimated at about 10 years
Hepatitis B	Virus antigen produced in yeast cells	For infants and children; for adults, especially health care workers, gay men, people who inject street drugs, people with multiple sexual partners, and household contacts of people infected with hepatitis B.	Duration of protection at least 7 years; need for boosters uncertain
Human papillomavirus	Virus antigen produced in yeast or insect cells	All children ages 11–12.	Duration at least 5 years
Influenza	Injected vaccine, inactivated virus Nasally administered vaccine, attenuated virus	Everyone over 6 months of age.	Annual
Measles	Attenuated virus	For infants aged 15 months.	Adults if exposed during outbreak
Mumps	Attenuated virus	For infants aged 15 months.	Adults if exposed during outbreak
Poliomyelitis	Inactivated virus	For children; for adults, as risk to exposure warrants.	(Duration of immunity not known)
Rabies	Inactivated virus	For field biologists in contact with wildlife in endemic areas; for veterinarians; for people exposed to rabies virus by bites.	Every 2 years
Rotavirus	Attenuated virus	Oral, for infants up to 8 months.	None recommended
Rubella	Attenuated virus	For infants aged 15 months; for females of childbearing age who are not pregnant.	Adults if exposed during outbreak
Smallpox	Attenuated vaccinia virus	Certain military and health care personnel.	Duration of protection estimated at about 3 to 5 years
Zoster (shingles)	Virus antigen produced in mammalian cells	For adults over 50 years; for immunocompromised people over 19 years.	None recommended

laboratory. This keeps the pathogen intact so the immune system can recognize it, but it destroys the pathogen's ability to replicate. Inactivated virus vaccines for humans include rabies and influenza vaccines and the Salk polio vaccine. Inactivated bacterial vaccines include those for pneumococcal pneumonia and cholera. Generally speaking, inactivated vaccines are considered safer than attenuated vaccines. However, there is a risk of incomplete inactivation; moreover, inactivated vaccines often require repeated booster doses because there is no replication within the host. As such, they induce a mostly humoral antibody immunity, which makes them less effective than attenuated vaccines, which can induce cellular immunity. Several long-used inactivated vaccines are being replaced by newer, more effective subunit vaccines.

Subunit Vaccines

Subunit vaccines contain only selected antigenic fragments of a microorganism that best stimulate an immune response. This avoids the dangers associated with the use of live or killed pathogenic organisms. Subunit vaccines can be components of bacteria or viruses. They can also be produced by genetically modifying other, nonpathogenic microbes to produce the desired antigenic fraction—such vaccines are called **recombinant vaccines** because they are the products of recombinant DNAs. For example, the hepatitis B vaccine is produced by yeast that has been engineered to contain genes encoding hepatitis B viral proteins. Those proteins are then isolated from the yeast and used as vaccines (see Chapter 9). This also avoids the need to use viral host cells to grow viruses for vaccines.

Toxoid vaccines contain inactivated toxins produced by a pathogen and elicit an antibody response against that particular toxin. The tetanus, diphtheria, and acellular pertussis toxoids are part of the standard childhood immunization series that requires a series of injections, followed by boosters every 10 years to maintain full immunity. Many older adults have not received boosters and likely have low levels of protection.

Virus-like particle (VLP) vaccines resemble intact viruses but do not contain any viral genetic material. For example, the human papillomavirus vaccine consists of viral proteins produced by a genetically modified yeast or viruses grown in insect cells. The proteins assemble themselves into a VLP.

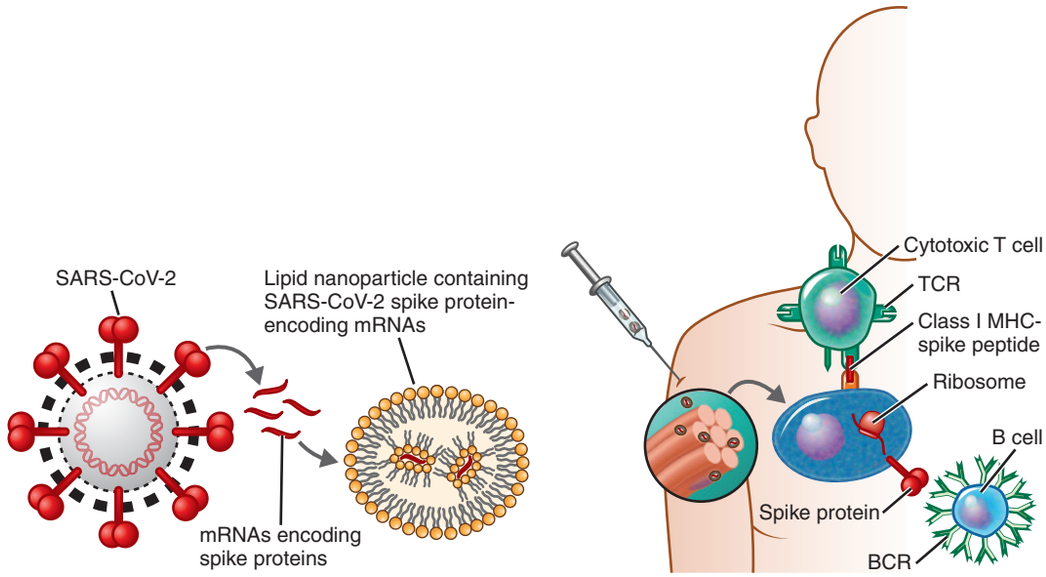
Polysaccharide vaccines are made from molecules in a pathogen's capsule. Although not very immunogenic, polysaccharide vaccines include those for *N. meningitidis* and pneumococcal pneumonia. Some pathogens, most notably *S. pneumoniae* (pneumococcus), are virulent primarily because their polysaccharide capsule makes them resistant to phagocytosis. However, polysaccharides are T-independent antigens and are not effective in stimulating children's immune systems until the age of 15 to 24 months (see Figure 17.7).

Conjugated vaccines have been developed in recent years to deal with children's poor immune response to vaccines based on capsular polysaccharides. The polysaccharides are combined with proteins such as diphtheria or tetanus toxoid. The two separate components chemically linked together create a stronger immune response. This approach has led to the very successful vaccine for *H. influenzae* type b (Hib), which gives significant protection even at 2 months.

Nucleic Acid (DNA, mRNA) Vaccines and Recombinant Vector Vaccines

DNA vaccines consist of naked or encapsulated DNA that encodes specific protein antigens. Upon injection, the DNA enters muscle cells where the introduced genes are transcribed (mRNA is synthesized) and the mRNA is translated (antigenic proteins are synthesized). The injection can be made by conventional needle or, more efficiently, by a gene gun (discussed in Chapter 9), which delivers the vaccine into many cell nuclei. The antigens encoded by the DNA vaccine are expressed on the cell to stimulate both humoral and cellular immunity. DNA vaccines tend to be expressed for extended times, with good immunological memory. Many DNA vaccines are currently in clinical trials, including those targeting Ebola virus, HIV, and Zika virus.

mRNA vaccines are among the newest and most promising vaccines. Developed in recent years in response to the COVID-19 pandemic, they are based on years of research on RNA and lipid nanoparticle technologies. The mRNA components of these vaccines encode a portion of the SARS-CoV-2 spike protein, which the virus uses to attach to its host cells (**Figure 18.1**). Once the mRNA enters body cells, spike proteins are made. These are harmless, but serve as antigens that trigger the immune



(a) mRNAs encoding viral spike proteins are synthesized in vitro and packaged in lipid nanoparticles.

(b) The lipid nanoparticles deliver mRNAs into cells, where they are translated to produce viral spike proteins. The proteins are expressed on the cell surface, where they may contact B cells. The spike proteins are also fragmented for presentation by class I MHC molecules to cytotoxic T cells.

Figure 18.1 mRNA vaccines. The messenger RNA vaccines developed in response to the COVID-19 pandemic encode antigens from the viral spike protein. These are incorporated into a lipid nanoparticle shell. Upon injection, this mRNA preparation is taken up by cells, where it is translated in ribosomes into the antigenic spike protein. The antigens then stimulate humoral and cell-mediated immune responses by B cells and T cells.

Q How does a DNA vaccine differ from an mRNA vaccine?

response. Unlike DNA vaccines, which require gene transcription in the cell nucleus followed by protein synthesis in the cytosol, mRNAs need only enter the cytosol where protein synthesis takes place. Importantly, mRNA vaccines may be key to handling future pandemics caused by new or mutated pathogens. The rapid sequencing of the pathogen's genome followed by relatively simple in vitro transcription (mRNA synthesis in a test tube) suggests potential for fast, scalable, and low-cost vaccine production.

Recombinant vector vaccines return our discussion back to DNA, in that these vaccines provide carriers for the delivery of DNA into cells. For example, many viruses attach to a cell membrane and inject their DNA into the cell. Vectors take advantage of this natural strategy for delivery. They use as vectors attenuated viruses that have been genetically modified to contain genes that encode the protein antigen along with promotors to maximize expression (see Figure 9.1). The DNA can be fine-tuned through recombinant DNA technology to maximize expression in the vaccine recipient. Both DNA vaccines and recombinant vector vaccines are currently used in animals to immunize against a variety of diseases, including poxviruses, rabies for some species, and West Nile encephalitis.

CLINICAL CASE

Dr. Roscelli examines Esther every day she is in the hospital. At no time does he wear a face mask. Dr. Roscelli does not suspect pertussis (whooping cough) until the attending physician suggests that he swab Esther's throat and request a PCR test for the bacteria. Sure enough, Esther's throat swab is positive for *B. pertussis* DNA.

Why do you think Dr. Roscelli did not suspect pertussis when Esther was admitted to the ER?

Part 1 **Part 2** Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **18-3** Experience has shown that attenuated vaccines tend to be more effective than inactivated vaccines. Why?
- **18-4** What type of vaccine is an adenovirus that carries the SARS-CoV-2 spike (S) protein gene?

Vaccine Production, Administration, and Safety

At present, vaccines are in development for many diseases, including AIDS, malaria, and type I diabetes. In particular, there is a need for vaccines that confer T cell–based immunity; these would be especially useful against tuberculosis, AIDS, and cancer. Researchers are also investigating vaccines' potential for treating and preventing drug addiction, Alzheimer's disease, and allergies.

Nucleic acid vaccines are an area of intense research. Clinical trials are under way to test DNA vaccines and mRNA vaccines targeting influenza, HIV-AIDS, and Zika virus disease. A recently licensed Ebola DNA vaccine (rVSV-ZEBOV), which expresses a glycoprotein from the Zaire species of *Ebolavirus*, has been shown to be nearly 100% effective against Ebola virus disease. Recombinant vector vaccines are being developed for HIV, rabies, and measles. Researchers are also working toward a universal vaccine to protect against the influenza virus, regardless of its potential antigenic shift, and a universal vaccine that would protect against the multiple variants of SARS-CoV-2. As a practical matter, if an antigen changes more rapidly than once a year—HIV, for example, changes its antigenic structure daily—it cannot be controlled by conventional vaccines. Computers now allow us to search the structure of a pathogen's genome for antigens that produce a protective immune response. This "reverse vaccinology" is becoming an essential tool for vaccine development.

Vaccine Production

Historically, vaccine production often required growing the pathogen in animals, embryonated eggs, or cell cultures. Recombinant vaccines, DNA vaccines, mRNA vaccines, and recombinant vector vaccines do not need a cell or animal host to grow the pathogen. This avoids the problems involved in using attenuated virus, including the presence of egg protein in a vaccine, or the difficulty of propagating certain viruses in cell culture. The very successful subunit vaccine for hepatitis B was the first of these recombinant vaccines.

Plants are also a potential production system for doses of antigenic proteins that would be taken orally as pills or as an injection. Tobacco plants are a leading candidate for this use because they are unlikely to contaminate the food chain.

Adjuvants

The early days of commercial vaccine production saw occasional problems with contamination. Unexpectedly, once the contamination was corrected it was found that the purified vaccine was often less effective. This led to experiments designed to determine whether chemical additives could improve effectiveness. A chance discovery showed certain aluminum salts, generally grouped under the term *alum* and called **adjuvants**, allows vaccines to be more effective. At this time, alums and a derivative of lipid A (from LPS) called *monophosphoryl lipid A* are the only adjuvants approved for use in humans in the United States. See **Exploring the Microbiome** for current research on bacterial adjuvants. Other adjuvants, such as MF59 (an oil-and-water emulsion) are used in Europe and elsewhere. Some adjuvants are approved only for use in animals. The exact mechanism by which adjuvants work is not known in detail, but they are known to improve the innate immune response, especially activation through Toll-like receptors.

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

Diversity May Enhance Response to Oral Vaccines

Oral vaccines are highly valued because they are simple and safe to administer. However, for many diseases, creating effective oral vaccines has been challenging. Historically, this difficulty has been attributed to everything from differences in patient nutrition or socioeconomic status to genetics. Now more recent research indicates that patient microbiome composition may be a major determining factor in how strong an immune response is elicited by certain oral vaccines.

Recent research using an orally administered vaccine for typhoid fever showed that the individuals who had better cell-mediated responses to it also had a more diverse intestinal microbiome, with an abundance of Clostridiales. Other studies of mice show that these same bacteria promote differentiation of T helper cells in mice.

Administering certain probiotic bacteria, such as *Lactobacillus* species and *Bifidobacterium* species, enhanced antibody responses to oral vaccines against rotavirus, *Salmonella*, polio, and cholera in adult human volunteers. Infants who received an oral rotavirus vaccine along with probiotics also showed higher antibody responses, particularly IgA, which is mostly found in mucous membranes, and IgM, which is one of the first classes of antibodies to appear when an infection is detected.

So far, human studies have been small, but determining the effects of normal microbiota on response to vaccines may lead to new vaccination methods that include altering the intestinal microbiota.

The lactic-acid bacterium, *Bifidobacterium,* is a normal part of the intestinal microbiome.

Vaccine Administration

Oral vaccines are favored for administration for many reasons even beyond eliminating a need for injections. For one, they would be especially effective in protecting against the diseases caused by pathogens invading the body through mucous membranes of the digestive canal. Examples of oral vaccines used in the United States are those for rotavirus, adenovirus, cholera, and typhoid. The oral vaccine for polio is not administered in the United States. Oral vaccines for influenza and SARS-CoV-2 are in clinical trials.

An attenuated influenza vaccine has been available since 2012 as a nasally administered (mucosal) vaccine. A number of other nasally administered vaccines are being developed to target respiratory pathogens, including SARS-CoV-2. Delivered through a nasal spray, these vaccines have the potential to prevent viral invasion of the mucosa of the nose and throat.

In regions of the world where health care access is limited or nonexistent, minimally trained personnel are called on to vaccinate large numbers of people in less than ideal circumstances. This lack of training and resources poses problems with injected vaccines: single-use doses can be expensive, and sterilization for reusable needles may be uncertain. One alternative delivery method under development is a skin patch (Nanopatch™) that administers a dry formulation of a vaccine. Skin tissue contains a high number of antigen-presenting cells—more than the muscle tissue reached by conventional needles—making skin a good delivery location. Another advantage is that dry vaccines such as the skin patch require no refrigeration. This is especially important; the World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that half the vaccines used in Africa are ineffective because of faulty refrigeration of vials of injectable vaccines. Nanopatch™ vaccines against influenza and polio are currently being tested.

Even in regions of the world where quality health care is widely available, the sheer number of injections required for infants and children makes creating more multiple-combination vaccines desirable. For example, there are five combination vaccines approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), including one for pertussis, diphtheria, tetanus, polio, and *H. influenzae* type b (Hib).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **18-5** What is one benefit of producing a DNA or mRNA vaccine over producing a vaccine that requires the growth of the pathogen in animal cells?
- **18-6** What is the value of an *adjuvant*?

CLINICAL FOCUS Measles: A World Health Problem

As you read through this box, try to answer each question yourself before moving to the next one.

1. Teenager Morgan returned home to Ohio from a church group trip to the Philippines. Soon after, Morgan and 383 others from the church group developed mouth rashes that looked like tiny red spots with blue-white centers. A few days later, they developed maculopapular skin rashes that spread from face to trunk and extremities, along with fever ($\geq$38°C) and other coldlike symptoms. Testing for IgM measles antibodies confirmed the diagnosis: measles. This highly contagious viral illness can cause pneumonia, diarrhea, encephalitis, and death.

   How did Morgan and the others contract measles?

2. Morgan spent 2 weeks in the Philippines with the church group. Those infected had never been vaccinated against measles and so had no defense against it when they encountered it there.

   If measles is highly contagious, why didn't this outbreak spread to more people?

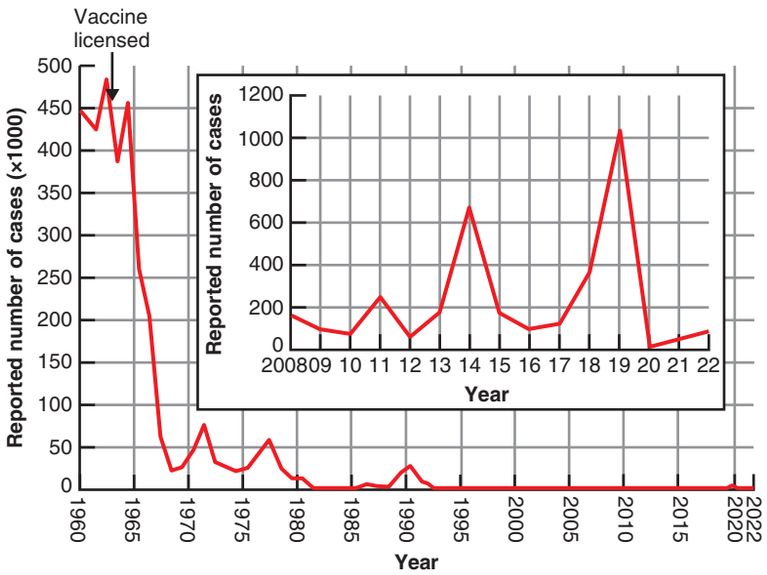
3. Before the measles vaccine was licensed in the United States in 1963, there were nearly half a million measles cases (see graph) and over 400 deaths annually. Now, a majority of people in the United States have been vaccinated against measles, and cases have plummeted. Although the WHO declared measles eliminated in the United States in 2000, almost 1300 cases were reported in 2019. Most cases in the United States are linked to travelers who have contact with unvaccinated people.

   What would happen if we stopped vaccinating against measles?

4. Without vaccinations, the United States would undergo many more measles outbreaks and even epidemics, leading to increased hospitalizations and the grim results that often follow measles infections: blindness, deafness, seizure disorders, and intellectual disability.

The Measles Initiative—led by the American Red Cross, the United Nations Foundation, UNICEF, the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), and the WHO—has supported the vaccination of nearly 2 billion children in over 80 countries. In 2000, measles caused about 757,000 deaths worldwide. By 2015, measles deaths worldwide had dropped to 134,200. However, in 2019 that number reached a 20-year high with an estimated 207,500 deaths (869,770 cases) worldwide. In the United States alone, the number of cases peaked at 1,282 from 375 the previous year. This surge was attributed mainly to widespread vaccine refusal. Notably, the number of measles cases reported in 2020 was 13, likely a consequence of COVID precautions such as distancing and mask-wearing.

Data source: CDC, 2022.



Reported numbers of measles cases in the United States, 1960–2022.

CLINICAL CASE

Vaccination has been so successful in reducing childhood infections that many younger physicians have never seen a case of pertussis. Nine days after initial exposure to Esther's illness, Dr. Roscelli exhibits a runny nose and, 4 days later, a cough. Dr. Roscelli assumes he has a cold and declines recommended prophylaxis with erythromycin.

Further investigation identifies seven other pertussis cases in health care workers (a respiratory therapist, a radiologic technician, and five student nurses), all of whom work in the emergency department but not in pediatrics.

How did Dr. Roscelli and the seven health care workers get the infection?

Vaccine Safety

As we have already discussed, variolation, the first attempt to provide immunity to smallpox, sometimes *caused* the disease it was intended to prevent. At the time, the risk was considered worthwhile, given the mortality rate of the actual disease. Safety issues still arise with various vaccine formulations. Minor side effects vary according to vaccine, but may include tenderness at the injection site, headache, fever, mild rash, and fatigue. Occasionally, a vaccine is linked to more severe outcomes; for example, on rare occasions, the oral polio (Sabin) vaccine may cause the disease. And a vaccine to prevent infant diarrhea caused by rotaviruses confers a small risk (1 in 20,000 to 1 in 100,000 vaccine recipients) of a serious intestinal obstruction.

Public reaction to what is a minuscule individual risk of a bad outcome from vaccination has changed over the decades. People who witness firsthand the damage and deaths associated with serious infections usually believe the risk of vaccine side effects is worthwhile. However, most people today have never seen a case of polio or measles, and vaccine misinformation may lead them to believe that the risk of vaccine side effects is more worrisome than the risk of the disease itself. For example, fears generated by a fraudulent 1998 study claiming to connect the measles, mumps, and rubella (MMR) vaccine to the developmental disorder autism led to a dip in vaccination levels. The study that sparked this controversy was later debunked and retracted. More recently, misinformation regarding the mRNA vaccines developed to protect against COVID-19 has left approximately 34% of the U.S. population unvaccinated or not fully vaccinated, and thus more susceptible to morbidity and mortality from the disease.

No vaccine will ever be perfectly safe or perfectly effective—nor is any antibiotic or other drug, for that matter. Nevertheless, vaccines still remain the safest and most effective means of preventing infectious disease in both children and adults.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

18-7 Why could the oral (Sabin) polio vaccine sometimes cause polio, but the injected (Salk) vaccine does not?

Diagnostic Immunology

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

18-8 Differentiate sensitivity from specificity in a diagnostic test.

18-9 Define *monoclonal antibodies*, and identify their advantage over conventional antibody production.

18-10 Explain how precipitation reactions and immunodiffusion tests work.

18-11 Differentiate direct from indirect agglutination tests.

18-12 Differentiate agglutination from precipitation tests.

18-13 Define *hemagglutination*.

18-14 Explain how a neutralization test works.

18-15 Differentiate precipitation from neutralization tests.

18-16 Explain the basis for the complement-fixation test.

18-17 Compare and contrast direct and indirect fluorescent-antibody tests.

18-18 Explain how direct and indirect ELISA tests work.

18-19 Explain how Western blotting works.

18-20 Explain the basis of the rapid antigen test for COVID-19.

18-21 Explain the importance of monoclonal antibodies.

Throughout most of history, diagnosing a disease was mostly a matter of observing a patient's signs and symptoms—if these were unique, then diagnosis was easy. But when signs and symptoms were more general, accurate diagnosis was often impossible. Today, we have diagnostic tests that can pinpoint various diseases with a high degree of accuracy.

Two essential elements of diagnostic tests are sensitivity and specificity. **Sensitivity** is the probability that the test is reactive if the specimen is a true positive. **Specificity** is the probability that a test will *not* be reactive if a specimen is a true negative. For example, if 100 people are known to have a disease but the test finds only 72 of them positive, the test has a sensitivity of 72%. On the other hand, if 100 people are known *not* to have the disease, and the test reveals that 72 of them are negative but 28 of them are positive, the test has a specificity of 72%.

More than 100 years ago, Robert Koch was trying to develop a vaccine against tuberculosis and accidentally laid the groundwork for a diagnostic test. He observed that when guinea pigs with tuberculosis were injected with a suspension of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, the site of the injection became red and slightly swollen a day or two later. This symptom is now used as a positive result for the widely used tuberculin skin test (see Figure 24.9)—many colleges and universities require this test as part of admission procedures. Koch, of course, had no idea of the mechanism of cell-mediated immunity that caused this phenomenon, nor did he know of the existence of antibodies.

Immunology gives us many other invaluable diagnostic tools, most of which are based on interactions of humoral antibodies with antigens. A known antibody can be used to identify an *unknown* pathogen (antigen) by its reaction with it. This reaction can be reversed, and a *known* pathogen can be used, for example, to determine the presence of an unknown antibody in a person's blood—which would determine whether they have immunity to the pathogen. The main problem that must be overcome in antibody-based diagnostic tests is that antibodies cannot be seen directly. Even at magnifications of well over 100,000×, these 10 to 15 nm-long proteins appear only as fuzzy, ill-defined particles. Therefore, their presence must be established indirectly. We will describe a number of ingenious solutions to this problem.

Other challenges that come with designing good antibody-related diagnostic tests is that specific antibodies produced in animals are made in relatively small quantities and are difficult to purify from other types of antibodies the animal has made.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

18-8 Fifty people known to have a disease are tested for it. A total of 38 of them actually test positive. Is this a measure of sensitivity or specificity? What is the % result?

Use of Monoclonal Antibodies

As soon as it was determined that antibodies were produced by B cells, it was understood that if a B cell producing a single type of antibody could be isolated and cultivated, it would be able to produce the desired antibody in nearly unlimited quantities and without contamination by other antibodies. A B cell reproduces only a few times under the normal cell culture conditions, but this limitation was largely removed by tapping cancerous plasma B cells for culture. These cancerous plasma B cells, known as *myelomas*, no longer make antibodies but can be isolated and grown indefinitely in cell culture. Fusing this "immortal" myeloma cell with an antibody-producing normal B cell creates a **hybridoma** that, when grown in culture, produces the type of antibody characteristic of the ancestral B cell indefinitely. This allows us to procure immense quantities of identical antibody molecules. Because all of these antibody molecules are produced by a single hybridoma clone, they are called **monoclonal antibodies**, or **Mabs** (Figure 18.2).

Monoclonal antibodies are uniform, highly specific, and can be produced in large quantities. Because of these qualities, they are enormously important diagnostic tools. Commercial kits use them to recognize several bacterial pathogens, and home pregnancy tests use them to indicate the presence of a hormone excreted into the urine only during pregnancy; moreover, home COVID-19 tests use Mabs specific for the viral spike protein.

Monoclonal antibodies have also become a clinically important, frequently used class of drugs. In May 2021, the FDA approved the 100th Mab for human therapy. These approved Mabs include treatments for multiple sclerosis, Crohn's disease, psoriasis, cancer, asthma, arthritis, and COVID-19. There are hundreds more drugs of this type currently being developed worldwide for a wide range of diseases and conditions.

The modes of therapeutic action of monoclonal antibodies vary. Some neutralize tumor necrosis factor (TNF), which certain inflammatory diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis require. One such Mab is infliximab. Other Mabs block a receptor site; an example is omalizumab. This drug treats allergic asthma by preventing the binding of IgE to Fc receptors on mast cells and basophils (see Figure 19.1). A cocktail of two Mabs (tixagevimab and cilgavimab), which are specific for two different sites on the SARS-CoV-2 spike protein, are currently FDA-approved for emergency use for preexposure treatment for immunocompromised people who cannot be vaccinated.

The therapeutic use of monoclonal antibodies had been limited because they were once produced only by mouse (murine) cells. The immune systems of some patients reacted against the foreign mouse proteins, leading to rashes, swelling, and even occasional kidney failure, plus the destruction of the antibodies. New generations of monoclonal antibodies aim to minimize the murine component, so they are less likely to cause side effects. Essentially, the more human the antibody, the more successful it is likely to be. Researchers are exploring several approaches. **Chimeric monoclonal antibodies** use genetically modified mice to make a human–murine hybrid. A *chimera* is an animal or tissue made up of elements derived from genetically distinct individuals. The variable part of the antibody molecule, which includes the antigen-binding sites), is murine. The constant region of the antibody molecule is derived from a human source. These chimeric Mabs are about 66% human. An example is rituximab, which treats leukemias and some autoimmune disorders that are characterized by excessive numbers of B cells. In contrast, **humanized antibodies** are constructed so that only the antigen-binding sites are murine. An example is trastuzumab, used to treat breast cancer in patients with a certain gene mutation.

Even humanized antibodies can cause unwanted immune responses, which has spurred research and development of **fully human antibodies**. One approach has been to genetically modify mice so they contain human antibody genes. An early fully human antibody is adalimumab, used to treat rheumatoid arthritis and psoriatic arthritis.

Most types of monoclonal antibodies end in *mab*; the letter(s) directly before that indicate derivation. *Umab* means human-derived, *omab* are from mice, *ximab* are chimera, and *zumab* are humanized. A name may also reference the particular disease or tumor being treated. For instance, biciromab treats a cardiovascular condition (*cir* being short for *circulatory system*). Mabs are used in the diagnostic tests described throughout the rest of this chapter.

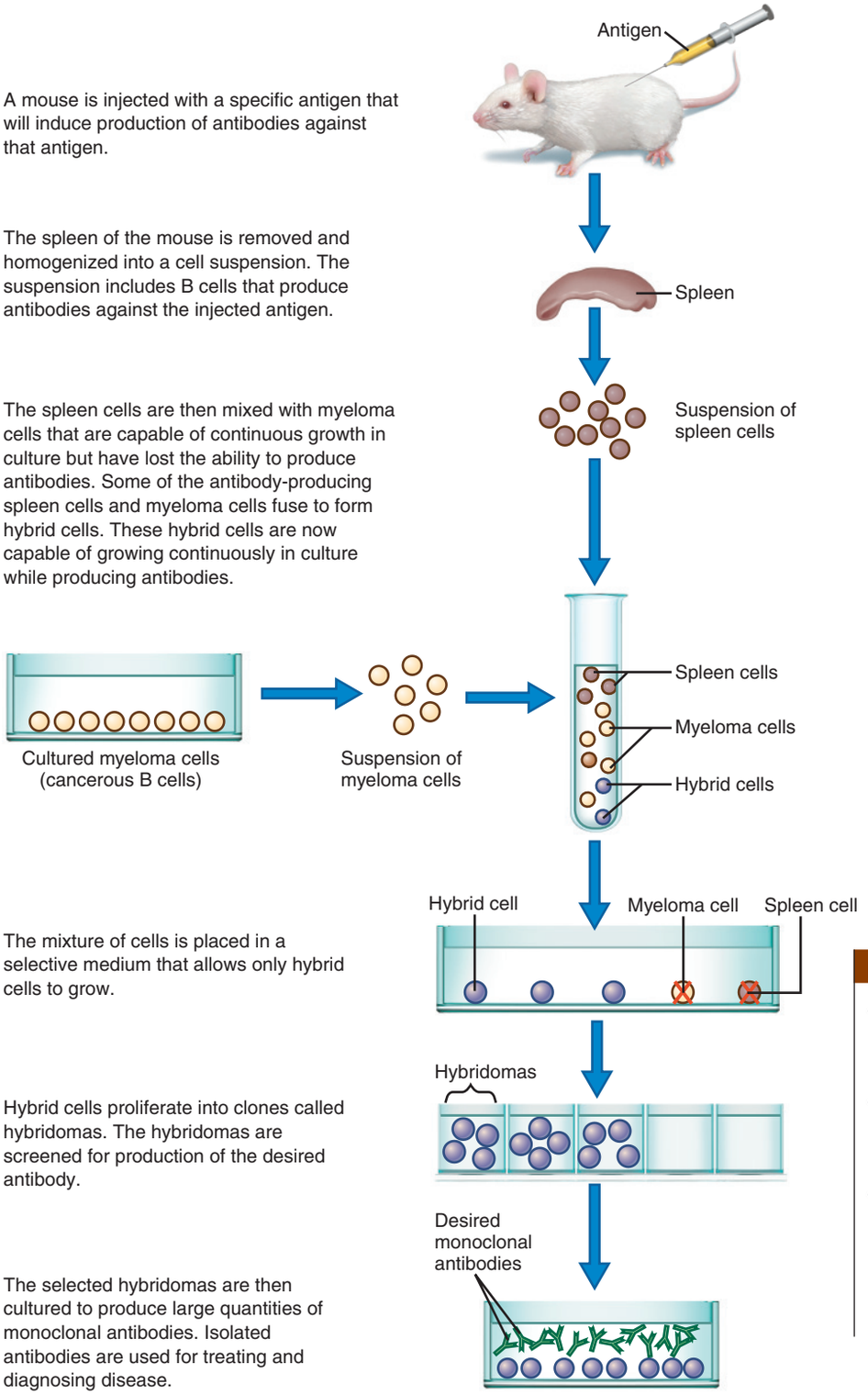
CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

18-9 The blood of an infected cow would have a considerable amount of antibodies against the infectious pathogen in its blood. How would an equivalent amount of monoclonal antibodies be more useful?

FOUNDATION FIGURE 18.2

The Production of Monoclonal Antibodies

1. A mouse is injected with a specific antigen that will induce production of antibodies against that antigen.
2. The spleen of the mouse is removed and homogenized into a cell suspension. The suspension includes B cells that produce antibodies against the injected antigen.
3. The spleen cells are then mixed with myeloma cells that are capable of continuous growth in culture but have lost the ability to produce antibodies. Some of the antibody-producing spleen cells and myeloma cells fuse to form hybrid cells. These hybrid cells are now capable of growing continuously in culture while producing antibodies.
4. The mixture of cells is placed in a selective medium that allows only hybrid cells to grow.
5. Hybrid cells proliferate into clones called hybridomas. The hybridomas are screened for production of the desired antibody.
6. The selected hybridomas are then cultured to produce large quantities of monoclonal antibodies. Isolated antibodies are used for treating and diagnosing disease.



KEY CONCEPTS

- The fusion of cultured myeloma cells (cancerous B cells) with antibody-producing spleen cells forms a hybridoma.
- Hybridomas can be cultured to produce large quantities of identical antibodies, called monoclonal antibodies.
- Monoclonal antibody production is an important advancement in medicine and also is integral to common diagnostic and therapeutic tools. A monoclonal antibody can attach to a target cell while carrying a diagnostic marker or an anticellular toxin.

Precipitation Reactions

Precipitation reactions involve the reaction of soluble antigens with IgG or IgM antibodies. They occur in two stages. Within seconds, the antigens and antibodies rapidly form small antigen–antibody complexes. Next, over the course of minutes or hours, the antigen–antibody complexes form larger, interlocking molecular aggregates called *lattices* that precipitate from the solution. Precipitation reactions normally occur only when the ratio of antigen to antibody is optimal. Figure 18.3 shows that no visible precipitate forms when either component is in excess. The optimal ratio can be achieved when separate solutions of antigen and antibody are placed adjacent to each other in agar gel (**immunodiffusion test**) or in solution (**precipitin test**). If they are allowed to diffuse together, (Figure 18.4), a cloudy line of precipitation will appear in the area in which the optimal ratio has been reached (the *zone of equivalence*).

Another immunodiffusion test that is performed in an agar gel is **immunoelectrophoresis**. In this method, a mixture of proteins, usually serum proteins, are separated by gel electrophoresis. A trough placed parallel to the line of separated proteins is then loaded with antibodies specific to one or more of the separated proteins. The antibodies diffuse into the gel matrix, forming visible antigen–antibody precipitates in the gel. Immunoelectrophoresis can be used to diagnose disorders such as multiple myeloma (with the tell-tale overproduction of a particular class of antibody), or agammaglobulinemia (the lack of one or more classes of antibody).

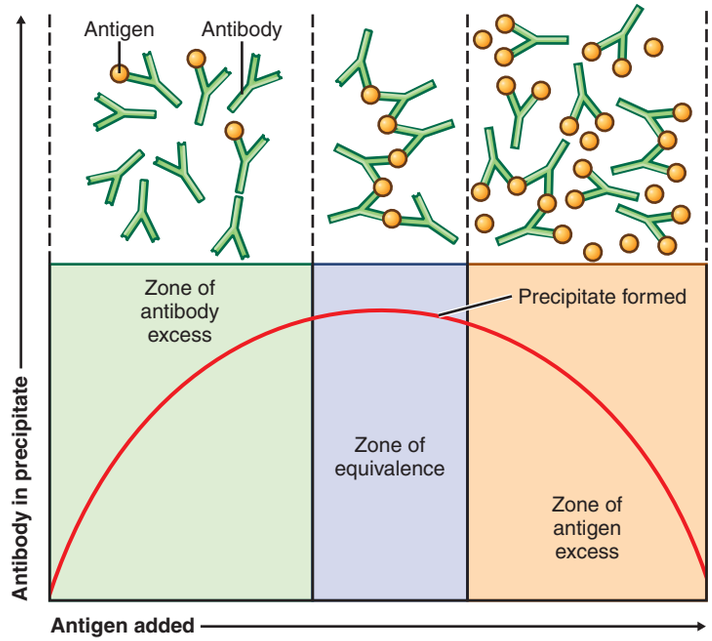


Figure 18.3 A precipitation curve. The curve is based on the ratio of antigen to antibody. The maximum amount of precipitate forms in the zone of equivalence, where the ratio is roughly equivalent.

Q How does precipitation differ from agglutination?

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

18-10 Why does the reaction of a precipitation test become visible only in a narrow range?

CLINICAL CASE

Dr. Roscelli did not wear a mask at any time he examined Esther, and consequently he contracted pertussis. He should have worn a mask to prevent transmission of respiratory infections; he also should have accepted antibiotic treatment for his symptoms. Dr. Roscelli could have transmitted the infection to his colleagues in the emergency department, and, in turn, the infected hospital personnel could have transmitted pertussis to vulnerable patients. When investigating Esther's illness, health care workers discover that neither Esther nor her brother has been vaccinated. The Kims were fearful because they had heard that vaccinations could cause serious side effects and even death.

Did the Kims make a mistake?

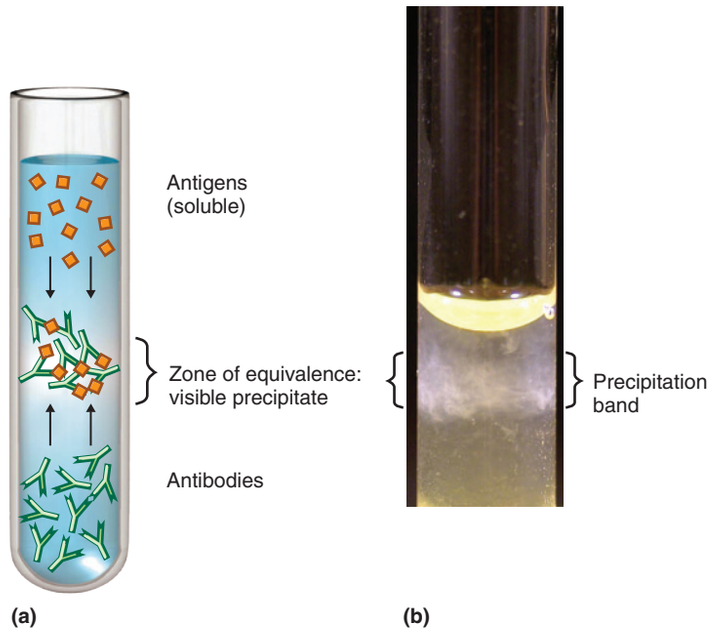


Figure 18.4 The precipitin ring test. **(a)** This drawing shows the diffusion of antigens and antibodies toward each other in a small-diameter test tube. Where they reach equal proportions, in the zone of equivalence, a visible line or ring of precipitate is formed. **(b)** A photograph of a precipitation band in a test tube.

Q What causes the visible line?

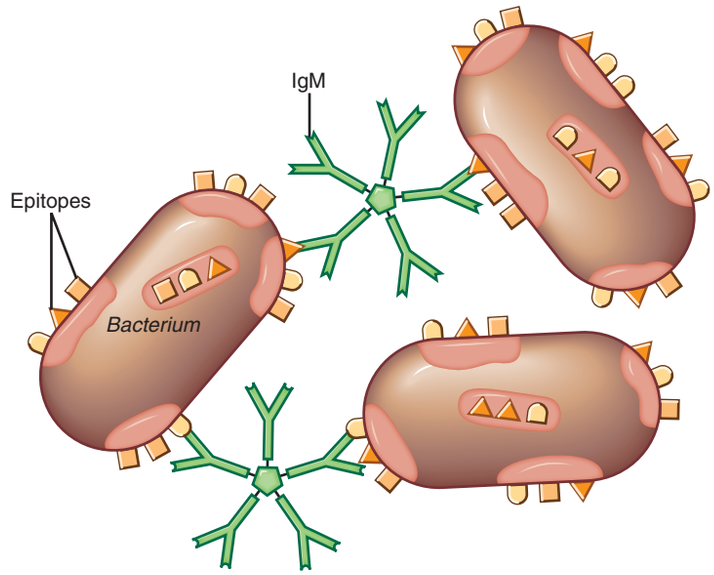


Figure 18.5 An agglutination reaction. When antibodies react with epitopes on antigens carried on neighboring cells, such as these bacteria, the particulate antigens (cells) agglutinate. IgM, the most efficient immunoglobulin for agglutination, is shown here, but IgG also participates in agglutination reactions.

Q Draw an agglutination reaction involving IgG.

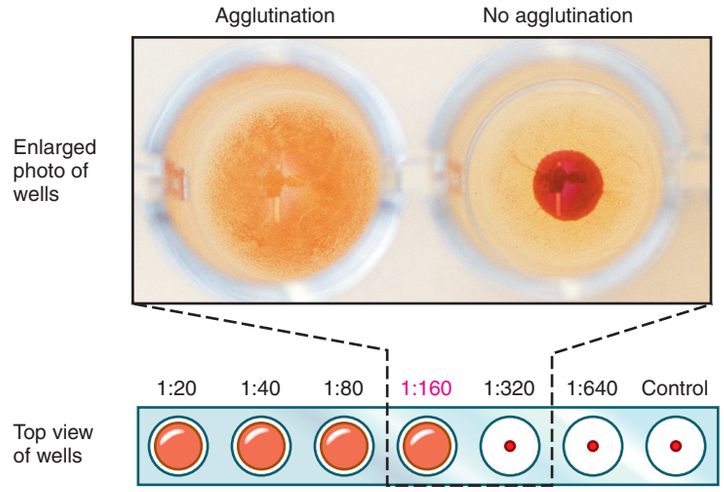
Agglutination Reactions

Whereas precipitation reactions involve *soluble* antigens, agglutination reactions involve either *particulate* antigens (particles such as cells that carry antigenic molecules) or soluble antigens adhering to particles. These antigens can be linked together by antibodies to form visible aggregates, a reaction called **agglutination** (Figure 18.5). Agglutination reactions are very sensitive, relatively easy to read (see Figure 10.11), and available in great variety. Agglutination tests are classified as either direct or indirect.

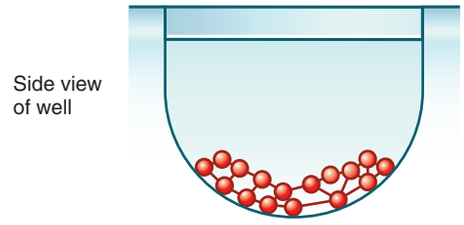
Direct Agglutination Tests

Direct agglutination tests detect antibodies against relatively large cellular antigens, such as those on red blood cells, bacteria, and fungi. They are usually done in plastic *microtiter plates* that contain many shallow wells. The amount of particulate antigen in each well is the same, but the amount of serum that contains antibodies is diluted, so that each successive well has half the antibodies of the previous well. These tests are used, for example, to test for brucellosis and to separate *Salmonella* isolates into serovars, types defined by serological means (discussed in Chapter 11).

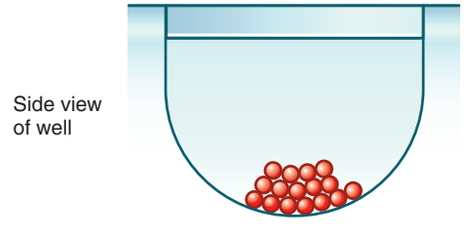
Clearly, the more antibody we start with, the more dilutions it will take to lower the amount to the point where there is not enough antibody for the antigen to react with. This is the principle behind the measure of **titer**, or concentration of serum antibody (Figure 18.6). For infectious diseases in general, the higher the serum antibody titer, the greater the immunity to the disease. However, the titer alone is of limited use in diagnosing an existing illness. There is no way to know whether the measured antibodies were generated in response to the



(a) Each well in this microtiter plate contains, from left to right, only half the concentration of serum that is contained in the preceding well. Each well contains the same concentration of particulate antigens, in this instance red blood cells.



(b) Agglutinated: In a positive (agglutinated) reaction, sufficient antibodies are present in the serum to link the antigens together, forming a mat of antigen–antibody complexes on the bottom of the well.



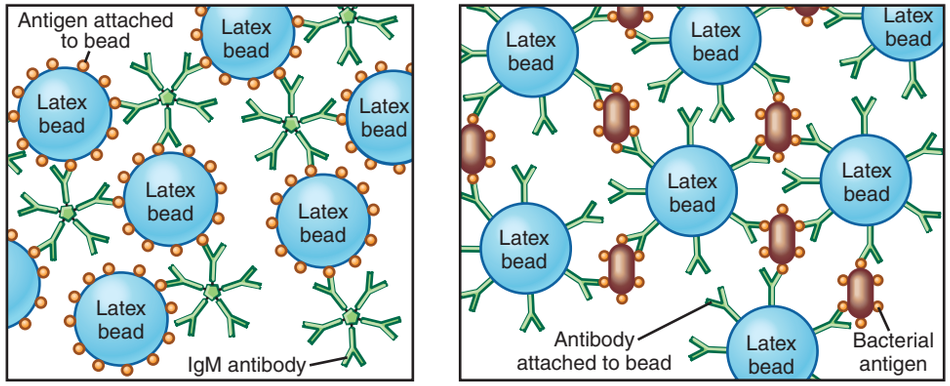
(c) Nonagglutinated: In a negative (nonagglutinated) reaction, not enough antibodies are present to cause the linking of antigens. The particulate antigens roll down the sloping sides of the well, forming a pellet at the bottom. In this example, the antibody titer is 160 because the well with a 1:160 concentration is the most dilute concentration that produces a positive reaction.

Figure 18.6 Measuring antibody titer with the direct agglutination test.

Q What is meant by the term *antibody titer*?

Figure 18.7 Reactions in indirect agglutination tests. These tests are performed using antigens or antibodies coated onto particles such as minute latex spheres.

Q Differentiate direct from indirect agglutination tests.



(a) Reaction in a positive indirect test for antibodies. When particles (latex beads here) are coated with antigens, agglutination indicates the presence of antibodies, such as the IgM shown here.

(b) Reaction in a positive indirect test for antigens. When particles are coated with monoclonal antibodies, agglutination indicates the presence of antigens.

immediate infection or to an earlier illness. For diagnostic purposes, *a rise in titer* is significant; that is, if a patient is currently infected, the titer will be higher later in the course of the disease than at its outset. Also, if it can be demonstrated that the patient's blood had no antibody titer before the illness but has a significant titer while the disease is progressing, this change, called **seroconversion**, is also diagnostic. This situation is frequently encountered with HIV infections.

Some diagnostic tests specifically identify IgM antibodies. Short-lived IgM is more likely to reflect a response to a current disease condition (see Figure 17.17). Specific immunodeficiency diseases, such as the inability to make IgG antibodies, can be identified by notable titer differences from a healthy patient exposed to the same antigen.

Indirect (Passive) Agglutination Tests

We have seen how agglutination tests can detect antibodies against cellular antigens, but they can also detect antibodies against soluble antigens if the antigens are attached onto particles such as bentonite clay or, most often, extremely small latex beads. Such tests, known as *latex agglutination tests*, are commonly used for the rapid detection of serum antibodies against bacterial and viral diseases. In such **indirect (passive) agglutination tests**, the antibody reacts with the attached antigen or in reverse by using particles coated with antibodies to detect the antigens against which they are specific (Figure 18.7). The particles then agglutinate with one another, much as particles do in the direct agglutination tests. This approach is especially common in tests for the streptococci that cause sore throats. A diagnosis can be completed in about 10 minutes.

Hemagglutination

When agglutination reactions involve the clumping of red blood cells, the reaction is called **hemagglutination**. These reactions involve red blood cell surface antigens and their complementary antibodies. They are used routinely in blood typing (see Table 19.2) and in the diagnosis of infectious mononucleosis.

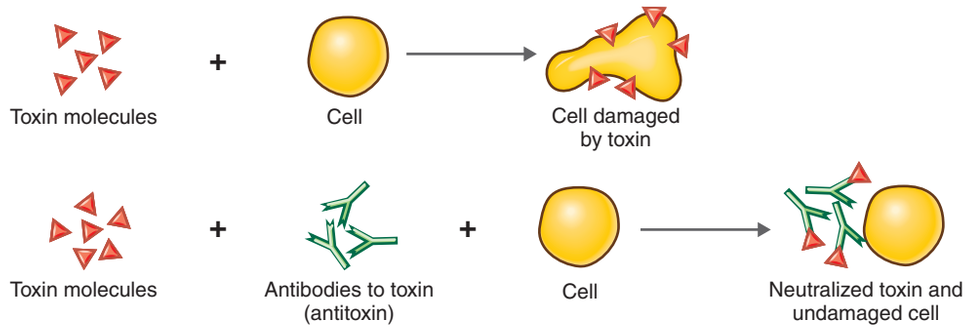
CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **18-11** Why wouldn't a direct agglutination test work very well with viruses?
- **18-12** Which test detects soluble antigens: agglutination or precipitation?
- **18-13** What type of test requires red blood cells to clump visibly?

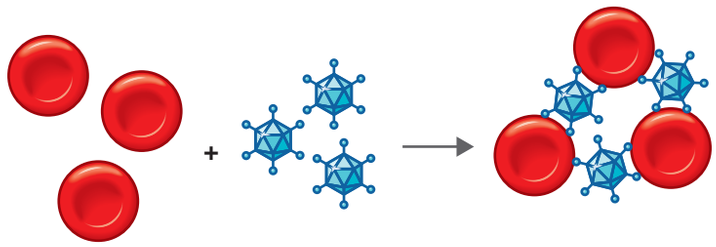
Neutralization Reactions

Neutralization is an antigen–antibody reaction in which antibodies block the harmful effects of a bacterial exotoxin or block viruses from infecting cells (see Figure 17.8). These reactions were first described in 1890, when investigators observed that immune serum could neutralize the toxic substances produced by the diphtheria pathogen, *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*. Such a neutralizing substance, originally called an *antitoxin*, is a specific antibody produced by the host as it responds to a bacterial infection. The antitoxin binds to the exotoxin and blocks its toxic effect (Figure 18.8a).

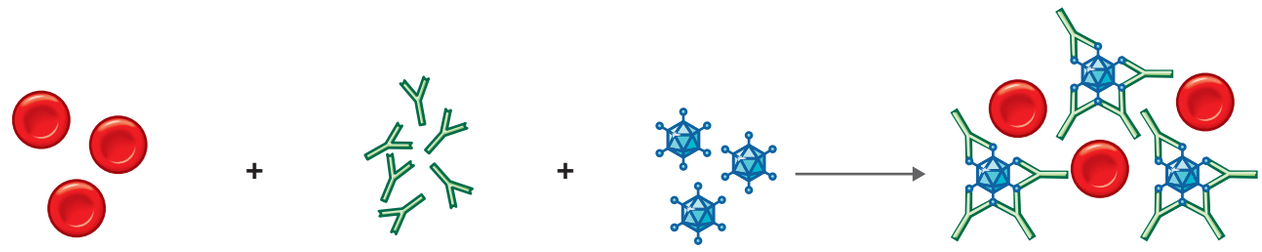
The fact that virus-specific antibodies may block virus entry into cells has led to diagnostic tests that detect such antibodies (and so indirectly, an infection). In a virus neutralization test, the presence of antibodies against a virus can be detected by the antibodies' ability to prevent cytopathic effects in cell cultures or embryonated eggs. If the serum to be tested contains antibodies against the particular virus, the antibodies will prevent that virus from infecting cells in the cell culture or eggs, and no cytopathic effects will be seen. Such tests, known as *in vitro neutralization tests*, can be used both to identify a virus and to ascertain the viral antibody titer.



(a) The effects of a toxin on a susceptible cell and neutralization of the toxin by antitoxin



(b) Some viruses agglutinate red blood cells.



(c) Viral hemagglutination inhibition test to detect antibodies to a virus. These viruses will normally cause hemagglutination when mixed with red blood cells. If antibodies to the virus are present, as shown here, they neutralize the virus and inhibit hemagglutination.

Figure 18.8 Reactions in neutralization and hemagglutination.

Q Why does hemagglutination indicate that a patient does not have a specific disease?

A neutralization test used mostly for the serological typing of viruses is the **viral hemagglutination inhibition test**. It is based on the fact that certain viruses, such as those causing mumps, measles, and influenza, can agglutinate red blood cells without an antigen–antibody reaction—a process called **viral hemagglutination** (Figure 18.8b). This test is most commonly used for subtyping of influenza viruses, although more laboratories are likely to be familiar with ELISA tests for this purpose. If a person's serum contains antibodies against these viruses, these antibodies will react with the viruses and neutralize them (Figure 18.8c). For example, if hemagglutination occurs in a mixture of measles virus and red blood cells but does not occur when the patient's serum is added to the mixture, this result indicates that the serum contains antibodies that have bound to and neutralized the measles virus.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **18-14** What is the connection between hemagglutination and certain viruses?
- **18-15** Which test is an antigen–antibody reaction: precipitation or viral hemagglutination inhibition?

Complement-Fixation Reactions

In Chapter 16, we discussed a group of serum proteins collectively called complement; recall that these proteins are involved in cytolysis of microbial cells. During most antigen–antibody reactions, a complement serum protein binds to (is fixed to) the antigen–antibody complex. This process of **complement fixation** can be used to detect very small amounts of antibody. Complement fixation was once used to diagnose syphilis

(Wassermann test) and is still used to diagnose certain viral, fungal, and rickettsial diseases. The complement-fixation test requires great care and good controls. This is one reason why newer, simpler tests such as ELISA and PCR-based tests are increasingly replacing it. The test is performed in two stages: complement fixation and indicator (Figure 18.9).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

18-16 Why is complement given its name?

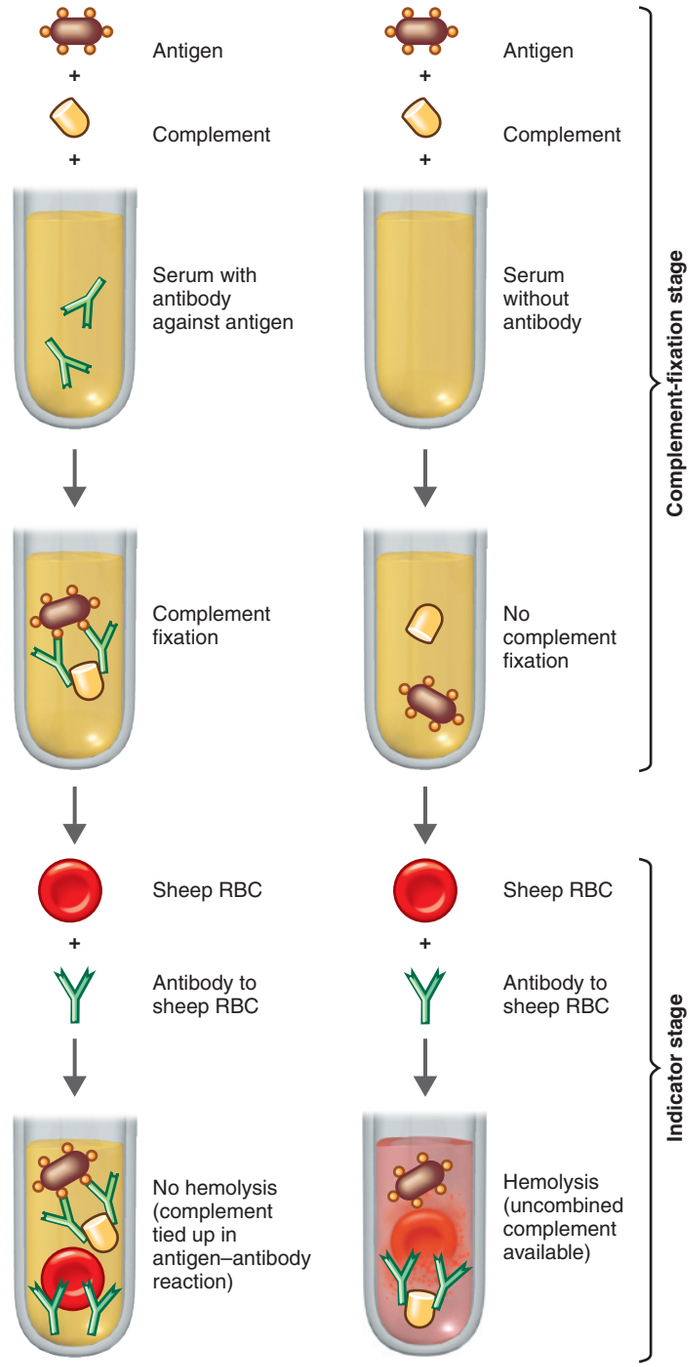
Fluorescent-Antibody Techniques

Fluorescent-antibody (FA) techniques can identify microorganisms in clinical specimens and can detect the presence of a specific antibody in serum (Figure 18.10). These techniques combine fluorescent dyes such as fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC) with antibodies that fluoresce when exposed to ultraviolet light (see Chapter 3). These procedures are quick, sensitive, and very specific; the FA test for rabies can be performed in a few hours and has an accuracy rate close to 100%.

Fluorescent-antibody tests are of two types. **Direct fluorescent-antibody (FA) tests** are usually used to identify a microorganism in a clinical specimen (Figure 18.10a). During this procedure, the specimen containing the antigen to be identified is fixed onto a slide. Fluorescein-labeled antibodies are then added, incubated briefly, and washed to remove any antibody not bound to antigen. Yellow-green fluorescence under the fluorescence microscope from the bound antibody will be visible even if the antigen, such as a virus, is submicroscopic in size.

Indirect fluorescent-antibody (FA) tests are used to detect the presence of a specific antibody in serum following exposure to a microorganism (Figure 18.10b). They are often more sensitive than direct tests. A known antigen is fixed onto a slide, and then the test serum added. If antibody that is specific to that microbe is present, it reacts with the antigen to form a bound complex. To make the antigen–antibody complex visible, fluorescein-labeled **anti-human immune serum globulin (anti-HISG)**, an antibody that reacts specifically with *any* human antibody, is added to the slide. After the slide has been incubated (to allow anti-HISG to bind) and washed (to remove unbound antibody), it is examined under a fluorescence microscope. If the known antigen fixed to the slide appears fluorescent, it is because the test serum contains antibody specific for the antigen, such that the fluorescent anti-HISG remained bound to that antibody through the wash step.

One adaptation of fluorescent antibodies is **fluorescence-flow cytometry**. In Chapter 17, we learned that T cells carry antigenically specific molecules such as CD4 and CD8 on their surfaces, and these are characteristic of certain groups of T cells. The depletion of $CD4^+$ T cells is used to follow the progression of AIDS; their populations can be determined with a *flow cytometer.*

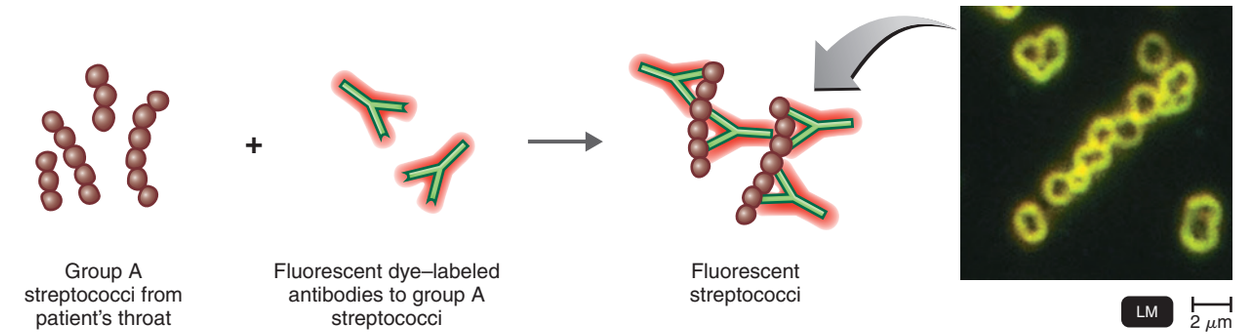


(a) Positive test. All available complement is fixed by the antigen–antibody reaction; no hemolysis occurs, so the test is positive for the presence of antibodies.

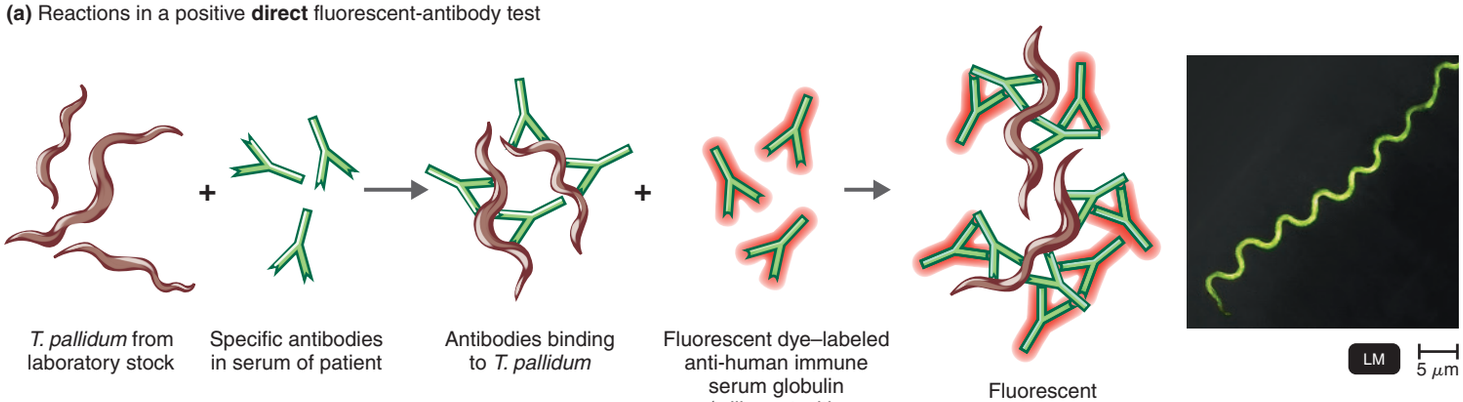
(b) Negative test. No antigen–antibody reaction occurs. The complement remains, and the red blood cells are lysed in the indicator stage, so the test is negative.

Figure 18.9 The complement-fixation test. This test indicates the presence of antibodies to a known antigen. Complement will combine (be fixed) with an antibody that is reacting with an antigen. If all the complement is fixed in the complement-fixation stage, then none remains to cause hemolysis of the red blood cells in the indicator stage.

Q Why does red blood cell lysis indicate that the patient does not have a specific disease?



(a) Reactions in a positive **direct** fluorescent-antibody test



(b) Reactions in a positive **indirect** fluorescent-antibody test

Figure 18.10 Fluorescent-antibody (FA) techniques. The reaction is viewed through a fluorescence microscope, and the antigen with which the dye-tagged antibody has reacted fluoresces (glows) in the ultraviolet illumination. **(a)** A direct FA test to identify group A streptococci. **(b)** In an indirect FA test used in the diagnosis of syphilis, the fluorescent dye is attached to anti-human immune serum globulin, which reacts with any human immunoglobulin (such as the *Treponema pallidum*–specific antibody) that has previously reacted with the antigen.

Q Differentiate a direct from an indirect FA test.

A suspension of cells is introduced into a flow cytometer, and the cells are directed through a nozzle as droplets containing no more than one cell per drop. A laser beam strikes each cell-containing droplet and is then received by a detector that identifies its fluorescence characteristics (Figure 18.11). For example, if the cells have FA-bound antibody markers to identify them as $CD4^+$ or $CD8^+$ T cells, the detector can measure this fluorescence and provide a readout of the number of cells that are positive for that particular surface molecule. In a specially equipped flow cytometer known as a **fluorescence-activated cell sorter (FACS)**, an electrical charge, either positive or negative, can be imparted to the fluorescent cell. As the charged droplet falls between electrically charged plates, it is attracted to one receiving tube or another, effectively separating cells of different types. Millions of cells can be separated in an hour with this process, all under sterile conditions, allowing them to be used in further experimental work.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

18-17 Which test is used to detect antibodies against a pathogen: the direct or indirect fluorescent-antibody test?

CLINICAL CASE

Data show that about half of babies with whooping cough get the illness from their parents, and an additional 25% to 35% get the infection from another household member. Neither Mr. nor Mrs. Kim has been ill, but Mark's throat is cultured for *B. pertussis*, which comes back positive. As is often the case in older children and adults, Mark's symptoms are milder than his infant sister's; infants with whooping cough can become severely ill and die.

Why is vaccination against pertussis so important?

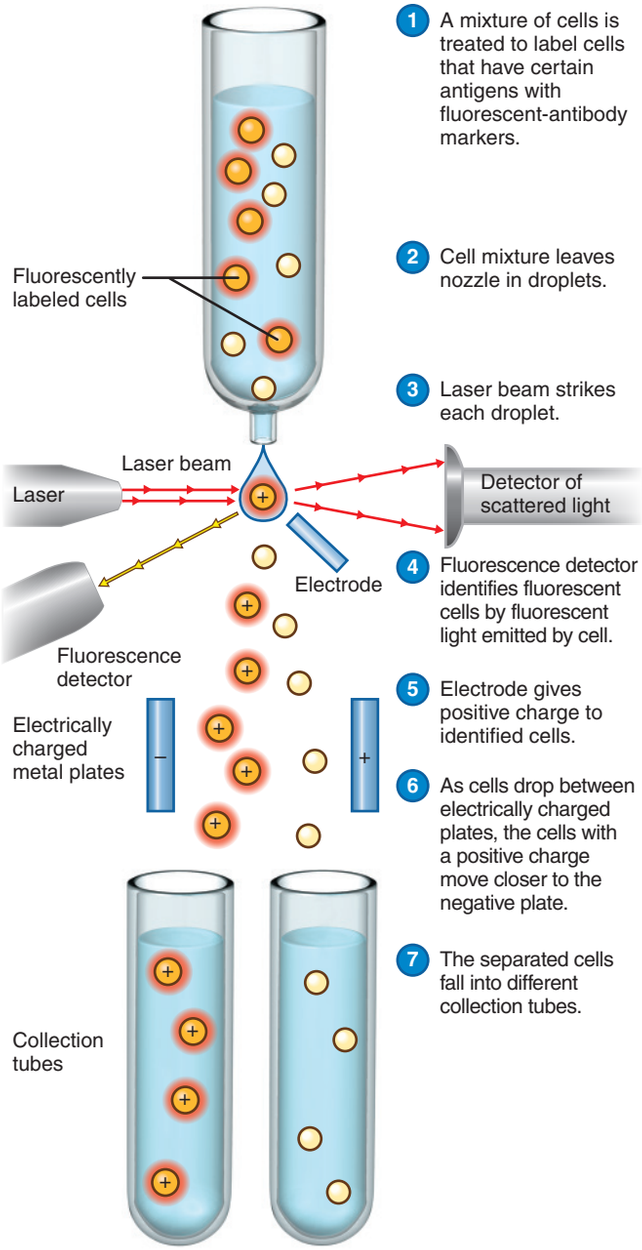


Figure 18.11 The fluorescence-activated cell sorter (FACS). This technique can be used to separate different classes of T cells. For example, a fluorescence-labeled antibody reacts with the CD4 molecule on a T cell.

Q Provide an application of FACS to follow the progress of HIV infection.

Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbent Assay (ELISA)

The **enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA)** is the most widely used of a group of tests known as *enzyme immunoassay (EIA)*. There are two basic methods. The *direct ELISA* detects antigens, and the *indirect ELISA* detects antibodies. A microtiter plate with numerous shallow wells is used in both procedures (see Figure 10.12b). ELISA procedures are popular primarily because they are sensitive and require little interpretive skill to read. Because the procedure and results are highly automated, the results tend to be clearly positive or clearly negative.

Many ELISA tests are available for clinical use in the form of commercially prepared kits. Some tests based on this principle are also available for use by the public, including the home pregnancy test, which tests for the HCG antigen produced by the placenta.

Direct ELISA

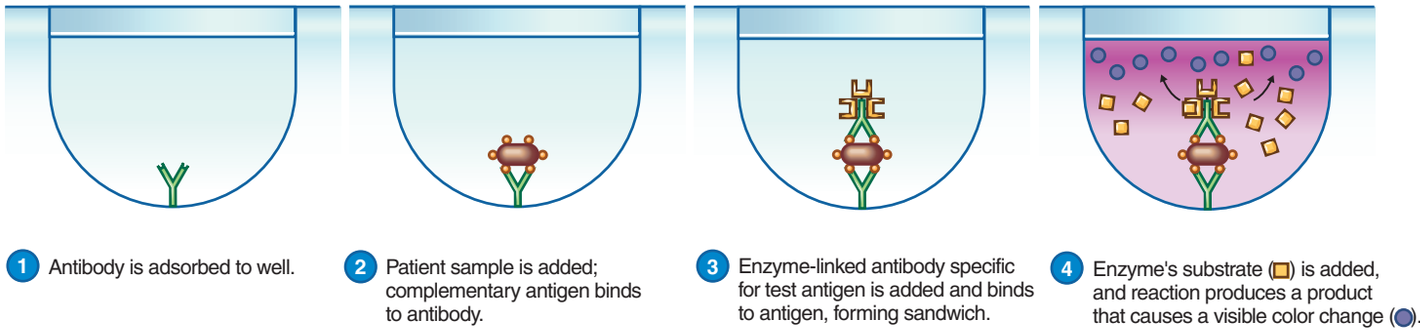
The direct ELISA method is shown in **Figure 18.12a**. A common use of the direct ELISA test is to detect the presence of drugs in urine. For these tests, antibodies specific for the drug are attached to a well of the microtiter plate. (The availability of monoclonal antibodies has been essential to the widespread use of the ELISA test.) When the patient's urine sample is added to the well, any of the drug that it contained would bind to the antibody and is captured. The well is rinsed to remove any unbound drug. To make a visible test, more antibodies specific to the drug are now added (these antibodies have an enzyme attached to them—therefore, the term *enzyme-linked*) and will react with the already-captured drug, forming a "sandwich" of antibody/drug/enzyme-linked antibody. This positive test can be detected by adding a substrate for the linked enzyme; a visible color is produced by the enzyme reacting with its substrate.

Indirect ELISA

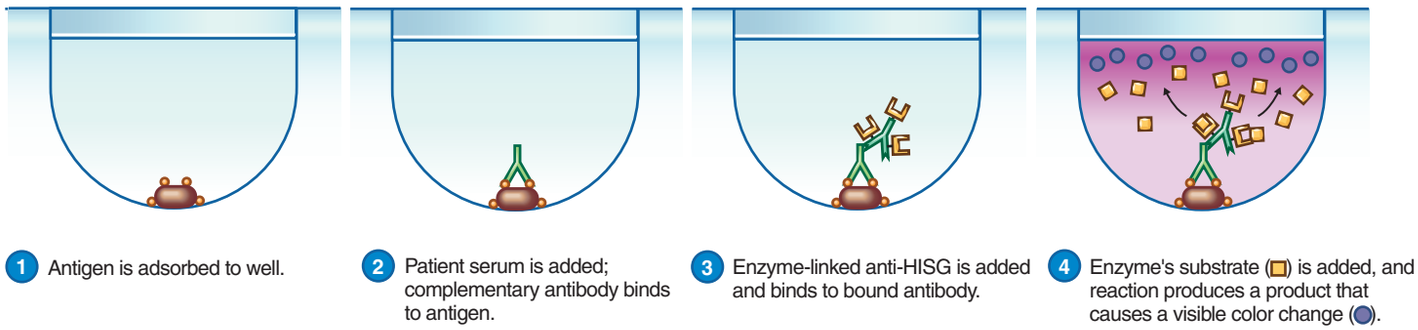
The indirect ELISA test, illustrated in Figure 18.12b, detects antibodies in a patient's sample rather than an antigen such as a drug. Indirect ELISA tests are used, for example, to screen blood for antibodies to HIV. For such a purpose, the microtiter wells contain antigens, such as the inactivated virus that causes the disease the test is designed to diagnose. A sample of the patient's serum is added to the well; if it contains antibodies against the virus, they will bind the antigen. The well is rinsed to remove unbound antibodies. If antibodies in the serum and the virus in the well have attached to each other, they will remain in the well—a positive test. To make a positive test visible, some anti-HISG (which, again, will attach to *any* antibody) is added. The anti-HISG is linked to an enzyme. A positive test consists of a "sandwich" of a virus/antibody/enzyme-linked-anti-HISG. At this point, the substrate for the enzyme is added, and a positive test is detected by the color change caused by the enzyme linked to the anti-HISG.

Western Blotting (Immunoblotting)

Western blotting, often simply called *immunoblotting*, can identify a specific protein in a mixture (such as proteins extracted from a blood sample). The components of the mixture are separated by electrophoresis in a gel and then transferred to



(a) A positive **direct** ELISA to detect antigens



(b) A positive **indirect** ELISA to detect antibodies

Figure 18.12 The ELISA method. The components are usually contained in small wells of a microtiter plate. For an illustration of a technician carrying out an ELISA test on such a microtiter plate and the use of a computer to read the results, see Figure 10.12.

Q **Differentiate a direct from an indirect ELISA test.**

a protein-binding sheet (blot). There the blot is flooded with an enzyme-linked antibody specific for the antigen. The location of the antigen and the enzyme-linked antibody reactant can be visualized, usually with a color-reacting label similar to that used in an ELISA test reaction. The most frequent application is in a confirmatory test for HIV infection.

Rapid Antigen Tests

Many of us are familiar with the rapid antigen tests used to detect SARS-CoV-2. These tests, also known as lateral flow assays, allow for the detection of viral antigens by their binding to labeled antibodies, which are in turn attached to a paper strip. The sample is first collected by a nasal swab and the swab is then soaked in a solution that disrupts the virus to release its antigens. The extract is applied to the strip, where it migrates by capillary action (lateral flow) through the paper strip. If SARS-CoV-2 antigens are present in the sample, they will be captured by the antigen-specific antibodies and seen as a colored line on the strip (see Figure 10.13), indicating a positive test for COVID-19.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **18-18** Which test is used to detect antibodies against a pathogen: the direct or the indirect ELISA test?
- **18-19** How are antibodies detected in Western blotting?
- **18-20** How do rapid antigen tests used to detect SARS-CoV-2 reveal the presence of viral antigen?

The Future of Diagnostic and Therapeutic Immunology

The introduction of monoclonal antibodies has revolutionized diagnostic immunology by making available large, economical amounts of specific antibodies. This has led to many newer diagnostic tests that are more sensitive, specific, rapid, and simpler to use. For example, tests to diagnose sexually transmitted chlamydial infections and certain protozoan-caused intestinal parasitic diseases are coming into common use. These tests had previously required relatively difficult culture or microscopic methods for diagnosis. At the same time, the use of many of the classic serological tests, such as complement-fixation tests, is declining.

Vaccine-Preventable Diseases

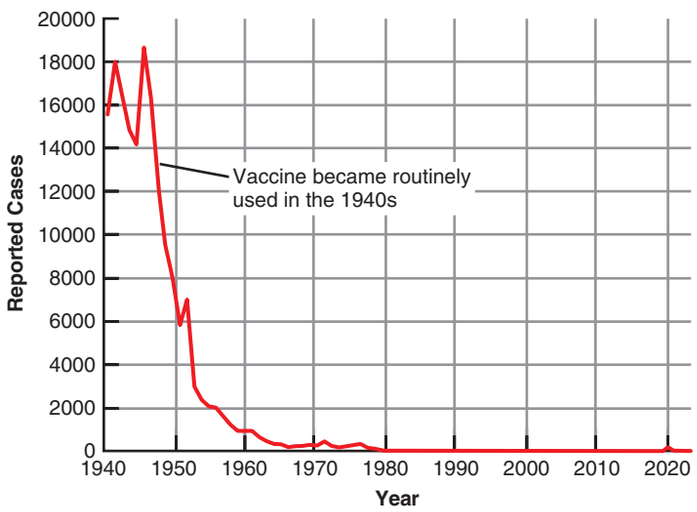
Vaccines have saved millions. So why do people still contract some vaccine-preventable illnesses?

Life before and after public health immunization campaigns is starkly different. To name a few examples:

- In 1921, before the diphtheria vaccine was available, more than 15,000 Americans died from diphtheria. From 1996 through 2022 only 14 cases of respiratory diphtheria have been reported to the CDC.
- A rubella epidemic in 1964–1965 infected 12.5 million Americans, killed 2100 infants, and caused 11,000 miscarriages. In 2020, only 7 cases of rubella were reported in the region of the Americas (WHO).
- It's estimated that in the twentieth century alone, smallpox infections resulted in 300 to 500 million deaths. Smallpox was eliminated worldwide in 1980 thanks to vaccines (WHO).
- In 1952, 21,000 cases of paralytic polio occurred in the United States. After release of the polio vaccine, cases plummeted. The nation's last case of wild-type polio virus originating in the United States occurred only 7 years later, in 1959.
- In the early 2000s, vaccines against several types of human papillomavirus (HPV) were developed. Researchers predict that up to 90% of cervical, penile, and anal cancers seen today can be prevented with widespread use of HPV vaccines.

Why Are People Still Getting Vaccine-Preventable Diseases?

Despite these public health triumphs, certain vaccine-preventable diseases persist. For instance, it used to be that nearly every child in the United States contracted pertussis, with thousands dying every year. Vaccination reduced incidence greatly, but even so, the United States still averages about 15,000 cases per year, with some deaths. Likewise, measles cases had plummeted after introduction of a vaccine, but in recent years, U.S. outbreaks have occurred. Why?



U.S. diphtheria cases, 1940–2022.
Source: CDC.

In some regions of the world, poverty and lack of health infrastructure lead to vaccination rates that are lower than required to fully eliminate incidence. That means that highly infectious diseases such as measles can persist and be transmitted to unvaccinated travelers from the United States. We also know that some vaccine formulations need boosters to remain effective—such is the case with pertussis and COVID-19.

Vaccine Concerns

Many people in the United States have recently avoided vaccination because of concerns over safety. Like any medication, vaccines may cause side effects. The most common ones are mild, such as soreness at the injection site. It is also true that vaccines—although rarely—can have more serious adverse effects. For example, in 2022, the FDA advised against the use of the Janssen (Johnson & Johnson) COVID vaccine because of its association, albeit rare, with life-threatening blood clots. Administration of this vaccine is limited to adults who for some reason cannot receive the mRNA vaccines. However, other claims about dangers of the COVID-19 vaccine are simply false; these vaccines have protected millions of people from the devastating effects of COVID-19.

Working Toward New Disease Elimination and Eradication Goals

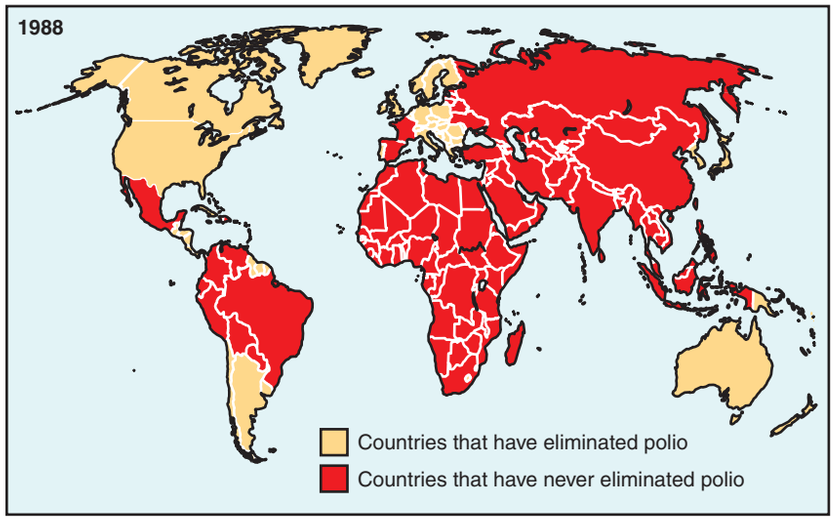
In the United States, the incidence of vaccine-preventable diseases has decreased by 99%. Public health groups would like to see the same sort of reduction in diseases throughout the rest of the world, too. Infections for which there is only one reservoir—humans—are particularly good targets for vaccines, since the microbe would have no place to live if all humans were vaccinated.

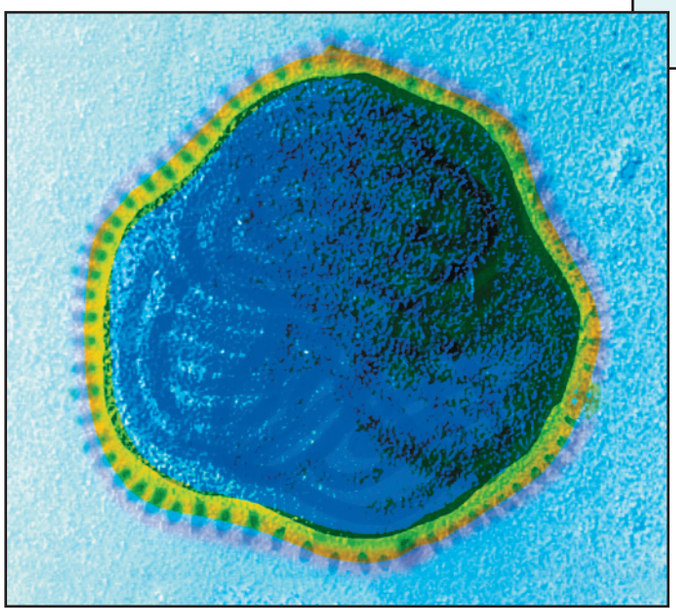
Measles and Rubella Initiative

Launched in 2001, the Measles & Rubella (M&R) Initiative is a global partnership focused on disease elimination led by the American Red Cross, United Nations, CDC, and WHO. The M&R Initiative for 2021–2030 envisions a world free from measles and rubella. All WHO regions have set elimination goals, but none has achieved and sustained regional measles-free status.

Global Polio Eradication Initiative

In many ways, polio is more difficult to eradicate than smallpox was—a significant number of polio cases are asymptomatic, meaning it's not always obvious when the disease is still hiding among a population. Despite that challenge, the Global Polio Eradication Initiative has made great progress, eliminating the illness from nearly all the world. As of 2022, the virus is still endemic in two countries: Afghanistan and Pakistan. The hope is that with further efforts, polio will one day be fully eradicated.





Measles virus.

KEY CONCEPTS

- Disease incidence tracking and other follow-up studies are key to identifying and addressing public health challenges. (**See Chapter 14, "Epidemiology."**)
- Vaccinated people act as an important barrier to infection for individuals who are not immune. (**See the discussion of herd immunity in Chapter 14.**)
- Depending in part on how they are made, vaccines have different risk factors and effects. (**See the earlier discussion of vaccine production, administration, and safety."**)

Most of the diagnostic tests described in this chapter are less available in nations with poor healthcare infrastructure. And yet, the diseases that most of these diagnostic methods target are more likely to be found in these countries. Especially in tropical Africa and tropical Asia, there is an urgent need for diagnostic tests for diseases endemic in those areas, such as malaria, leishmaniasis, AIDS, Chagas' disease, and tuberculosis. These tests will need to be inexpensive and simple enough to be carried out by personnel with minimal training.

The tests described in this chapter are most often used to detect existing disease. In the future, diagnostic testing could be directed at *preventing* disease. In the United States we regularly see reports of outbreaks of foodborne illness. Fresh produce can't be stored for the days required to culture and identify bacteria that may be present. Thus, sampling methods that would allow complete identification (including specific pathogenic serovars) within a few hours, or even minutes, would save valuable time in tracking outbreaks of foodborne illness to specific crops of fruits and vegetables. This saving in time would be translated into immense economic savings for growers and retailers. It would also lead to less human illness.

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

A childhood vaccine against pertussis is recommended, yet pertussis has increased in incidence during the past 20 years. Adults and adolescents might be a community reservoir for *B. pertussis* because immunity from childhood vaccination declines beginning 5 to 15 years after the last pertussis vaccine dose.

The public's sense of the importance of childhood vaccinations has also declined; consequently, many children are not fully immunized. The CDC now recommends that adults get revaccinated with a combination vaccine that prevents tetanus, diphtheria, and pertussis.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 **Part 6**

Not every topic discussed in this chapter is necessarily directed at detecting and preventing disease. As mentioned earlier, Mabs have applications in the treatment of disease as well. These are already in use to treat certain cancers, as well as inflammatory diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

18-21 How has the development of monoclonal antibodies revolutionized diagnostic immunology?

Study Outline

Vaccines (pp. 504–511)

1. Edward Jenner developed the modern practice of vaccination when he inoculated people with cowpox virus to protect them against smallpox.

Principles and Effects of Vaccination (pp. 504–505)

2. Herd immunity results when most of a population is immune to a disease.

Types of Vaccines and Their Characteristics (pp. 505–508)

3. Attenuated vaccines consist of attenuated (weakened) microorganisms; attenuated virus vaccines generally provide lifelong immunity.
4. Inactivated vaccines consist of killed bacteria or viruses.
5. Subunit vaccines consist of antigenic fragments of a microorganism; these include toxoids, virus-like particles, polysaccharides, and conjugated vaccines.
6. Conjugated vaccines combine the desired antigen with a protein that boosts the immune response.
7. Nucleic acid (DNA and mRNA) vaccines cause the recipient's cells to make the antigenic protein.
8. Recombinant vector vaccines contain avirulent viruses or bacteria genetically modified to produce a desired antigen.

Vaccine Production, Administration, and Safety (pp. 508–511)

9. Viruses for vaccines may be grown in animals, cell cultures, or chick embryos.
10. Recombinant vaccines and nucleic acid vaccines are produced in bacterial, yeast, or animal cell culture.
11. Genetically modified plants may someday provide edible vaccines.
12. Dry skin patch vaccines don't need refrigeration.
13. Oral administration and combining several vaccines reduces the number of injections required for vaccinations.
14. Adjuvants improve the effectiveness of some antigens.
15. Vaccines are the safest and most effective means of controlling infectious diseases.

Diagnostic Immunology (pp. 511–524)

1. Many tests based on the interactions of antibodies and antigens have been developed to determine the presence of antibodies or antigens in a patient.
2. The sensitivity of a diagnostic test is determined by the percentage of positive samples it correctly detects; and its specificity is determined by the percentage of negative results it gives when the specimens are negative.
3. Direct tests are used to identify specific microorganisms.
4. Indirect tests may be used to demonstrate the presence of antibody in serum.
5. Diseases can be diagnosed by a rising titer or seroconversion (from no antibodies to the presence of antibodies).

Use of Monoclonal Antibodies (pp. 512–514)

6. Hybridomas are produced in the laboratory by fusing a cancerous B-cell with an antibody-secreting plasma cell.
7. A hybridoma cell culture produces large quantities of the plasma cell's antibodies, called monoclonal antibodies.
8. Monoclonal antibodies are used to treat diseases and in diagnostic tests.

Precipitation Reactions (pp. 514–515)

9. The interaction of soluble antigens with IgG or IgM antibodies leads to precipitation reactions.
10. Precipitation reactions depend on the formation of lattices and occur best when antigen and antibody are present in optimal proportions.
11. Immunodiffusion procedures are precipitation reactions carried out in an agar gel medium.
12. Immunoelectrophoresis combines electrophoresis with immunodiffusion for the analysis of serum proteins.

Agglutination Reactions (pp. 515–516)

13. The interaction of particulate antigens (cells that carry antigens) with antibodies leads to agglutination reactions.
14. Diseases may be diagnosed by combining the patient's serum with a known antigen.
15. Antibodies cause visible agglutination of soluble antigens affixed to latex spheres in indirect or passive agglutination tests.
16. Hemagglutination reactions involve agglutination reactions using red blood cells. Hemagglutination reactions are used in blood typing, the diagnosis of certain diseases, and the identification of viruses.

Neutralization Reactions (pp. 516–517)

17. In neutralization reactions, the harmful effects of a bacterial exotoxin or virus are eliminated by a specific antibody.
18. An antitoxin is an antibody produced in response to a bacterial exotoxin or toxoid that neutralizes the exotoxin.
19. In a virus neutralization test, the presence of antibodies against a virus can be detected by the antibodies' ability to prevent cytopathic effects of viruses in cell cultures.
20. In viral hemagglutination inhibition tests, antibodies against certain viruses can be detected by their ability to interfere with viral hemagglutination.

Complement-Fixation Reactions (pp. 517–518)

21. Complement-fixation reactions are serological tests based on the depletion of a fixed amount of complement in the presence of an antigen–antibody reaction.

Fluorescent-Antibody Techniques (pp. 518–520)

22. Fluorescent-antibody techniques use antibodies labeled with fluorescent dyes.
23. A fluorescence flow cytometer can be used to detect and count cells labeled with fluorescent antibodies.

Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbent Assay (ELISA) (p. 520)

24. ELISA techniques use antibodies linked to an enzyme.
25. Antigen–antibody reactions are detected by enzyme activity. If the indicator enzyme is present in the test well, antigen–antibody binding has occurred.

Western Blotting (Immunoblotting) (pp. 520–521)

26. In Western blots, proteins separated by electrophoresis are identified with an enzyme-linked antibody.

The Future of Diagnostic and Therapeutic Immunology (pp. 521–524)

27. The use of monoclonal antibodies will make new diagnostic tests possible.

Study Questions

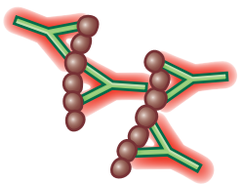
For Answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. Classify the following vaccines by type. Which could cause the disease it is supposed to prevent?
   a. attenuated measles virus
   b. dead *Rickettsia prowazekii*
   c. *Vibrio cholerae* toxoid
   d. hepatitis B antigen produced in yeast cells
   e. purified polysaccharides from *Streptococcus pyogenes*
   f. *H. influenzae* polysaccharide bound to diphtheria toxoid
   g. a plasmid containing genes for influenza A protein
2. Define the following terms, and give an example of how each reaction is used diagnostically:
   a. viral hemagglutination
   b. hemagglutination inhibition
   c. passive agglutination

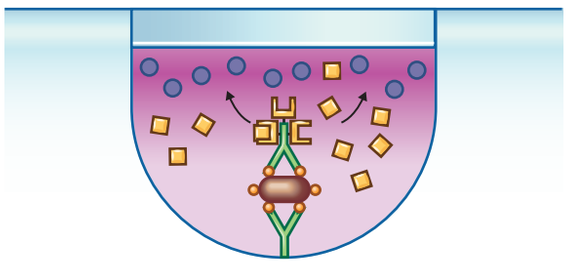
3. DRAW IT Label the components of the direct and indirect FA tests in the following situations. Which test is direct? Which test provides definitive proof of disease?



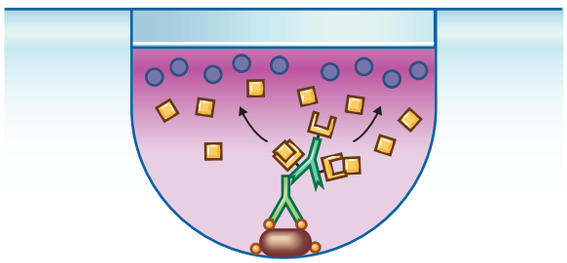
(a) *Streptococcus* can be diagnosed by mixing fluorescent labeled antibodies with patient's sample.

(b) Syphilis can be diagnosed by adding the patient's serum to a slide fixed with *Treponema pallidum*. Anti-human immune serum globulin tagged with a fluorescent dye is added.

4. How are monoclonal antibodies produced?
5. Explain the effects of excess antigen and antibody on the precipitation reaction. How is the precipitin ring test different from an immunodiffusion test?
6. DRAW IT Label components of the direct and indirect ELISA tests in the following situations. Which test is direct? Which test provides definitive proof of disease?



(a) Respiratory secretions to detect respiratory syncytial virus



(b) Blood to detect human immunodeficiency virus antibodies

7. How does the antigen in an agglutination reaction differ from that in a precipitation reaction?
8. Match the following serological tests in column A to the descriptions in column B.

Column A	Column B
_____ **a.** Precipitation	**1.** Occurs with particulate antigens
_____ **b.** Western blotting	**2.** Uses an enzyme for the indicator
_____ **c.** Agglutination	**3.** Uses red blood cells for the indicator
_____ **d.** Complement fixation	**4.** Uses anti-human immune serum globulin
_____ **e.** Neutralization	**5.** Occurs with a free soluble antigen
_____ **f.** ELISA	**6.** Used to determine the presence of antitoxin

9. Match each of the following tests in column A to its positive reaction in column B.

Column A	Column B
_____ **a.** Agglutination	**1.** Peroxidase activity
_____ **b.** Complement fixation	**2.** Harmful effects of agents not seen
_____ **c.** ELISA	**3.** No hemolysis
_____ **d.** FA test	**4.** A colored stripe
_____ **e.** Neutralization	**5.** Cell clumping
_____ **f.** Precipitation	**6.** Fluorescence
_____ **g.** Rapid antigen test	**7.** Cloudy white line in solution

10. NAME IT A purified protein from *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is injected into a person's skin. A hardened, red area develops around the injection site within 3 days.

Multiple Choice

Use the following choices to answer questions 1 and 2:

a. hemolysis
b. hemagglutination
c. hemagglutination inhibition
d. no hemolysis
e. precipitin ring forms

1. Patient's serum, influenza virus, sheep red blood cells, and anti-sheep red blood cells are mixed in a tube. What happens if the patient has antibodies against influenza?
2. Patient's serum, *Chlamydia*, guinea pig complement, sheep red blood cells, and anti-sheep red blood cells are mixed in a tube. What happens if the patient has antibodies against *Chlamydia*?
3. The examples in questions 1 and 2 are
   a. direct tests.
   b. indirect tests.

Use the following choices to answer questions 4 and 5:

a. anti-*Brucella*
b. *Brucella*
c. substrate for the enzyme

4. Which is the third step in a direct ELISA test?
5. Which item is from the patient in an indirect ELISA test?

6. In an immunodiffusion test, a strip of filter paper containing diphtheria antitoxin is placed on a solid culture medium. Then bacteria are streaked perpendicular to the filter paper. If the bacteria are toxigenic,
   a. the filter paper will turn red.
   b. a line of antigen–antibody precipitate will form.
   c. the cells will lyse.
   d. the cells will fluoresce.
   e. none of the above

Use the following choices to answer questions 7–9.

a. direct fluorescent antibody
b. indirect fluorescent antibody
c. rabies immune globulin
d. killed rabies virus
e. none of the above

7. Treatment given to a person bitten by a rabid bat.
8. Test used to identify rabies virus in the brain of a dog.
9. Test used to detect the presence of antibodies in a patient's serum.
10. In an agglutination test, eight serial dilutions to determine antibody titer were set up: Tube 1 contained a 1:2 dilution; tube 2, a 1:4, and so on. If tube 5 is the last tube showing agglutination, what is the antibody titer?
    a. 5
    b. 1:5
    c. 32
    d. 1:32

Analysis

1. What problems are associated with the use of attenuated vaccines?
2. Many of the serological tests require a supply of antibodies against pathogens. For example, to test for *Salmonella*, anti-*Salmonella* antibodies are mixed with the unknown bacterium. How are these antibodies obtained?
3. A test for antibodies against *T. pallidum* uses the antigen cardiolipin and the patient's serum (suspected of having antibodies). Why do the antibodies react with cardiolipin? What is the disease?

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. Which of the following is proof of a disease state? Why doesn't the other situation confirm a disease state? What is the disease?
   a. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is isolated from a patient.
   b. Antibodies against *M. tuberculosis* are found in a patient.
2. Streptococcal erythrogenic toxin is injected into a person's skin in the Dick test. What results are expected if a person has antibodies against this toxin? What type of immunological reaction is this? What is the disease?
3. The following data were obtained from FA tests for anti-*Legionella* in four people. What conclusions can you draw? What is the disease?

	Antibody Titer			
	Day 1	**Day 7**	**Day 14**	**Day 21**
Patient A	128	256	512	1024
Patient B	0	0	0	0
Patient C	256	256	256	256
Patient D	0	0	128	512

4. Alana decided against the relatively new chickenpox vaccine: she wanted her children to get chickenpox so that they would develop natural immunity. Her two children did get chickenpox. Her son had slight itching and skin vesicles, but her daughter was hospitalized for months with streptococcal cellulitis and underwent several skin grafts before recovering. Alana's housekeeper contracted chickenpox from the children and subsequently died. (Almost half of all deaths due to chickenpox occur in adults.)
   a. What responsibilities do parents have for their children's health?
   b. What rights do individuals have? Should vaccination be required by law?
   c. What responsibilities do individuals (e.g., parents) have for the health of society?
   d. Vaccines are given to healthy people, so what risks are acceptable?

19 Disorders Associated with the Immune System

Normally cells of the immune system remove or neutralize injurious agents, like the two lymphocytes shown attacking a cancer cell in the photograph. However, in this chapter we see that not all immune system responses produce a desirable result. A familiar example is the itchy eyes and runny nose of hay fever, which results from repeated exposure to plant pollen or other environmental antigens. Most of us also know about the importance of blood typing for transfusions or organ transplants to avoid rejection reactions. Another undesirable response occurs when the immune system mistakenly attacks "self" tissues, causing an autoimmune disorder.

Some people are born with a defective immune system (see the Clinical Case in this chapter), and in all of us the effectiveness of our immune system declines with age. Our immune systems can be deliberately inhibited (*immunosuppressed*) to prevent the rejection of transplanted organs. Disease can also impair the immune system, especially infection by HIV, a virus that specifically attacks the immune system.

The **Big Picture** describes the role of the human microbiome in maintaining a healthy immune system.

▶ **Two lymphocytes attacking a cancer cell (blue).**

In the Clinic

As a nurse who specializes in the treatment of patients with AIDS, you discuss the HIV status of a newborn with her mother, Jessica, who is HIV-positive. The newborn tested positive by ELISA and Western blot, but the PCR test was negative for HIV. **Does the newborn have HIV infection? How do you explain the seemingly conflicting test results to Jessica? And what advice do you give Jessica to prevent transmitting HIV to her baby?**

Hint: Read about diagnostic methods for HIV later in this chapter.

Hypersensitivity

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

19-1 Define *hypersensitivity*.
19-2 Describe the mechanism of anaphylaxis.
19-3 Compare and contrast systemic and localized anaphylaxis.
19-4 Explain how allergy skin tests work.
19-5 Define *desensitization* and *blocking antibody*.
19-6 Describe the mechanism of cytotoxic reactions and how drugs can induce them.
19-7 Describe the basis of the ABO and Rh blood group systems.
19-8 Explain the relationships among blood groups, blood transfusions, and hemolytic disease of the newborn.
19-9 Describe the mechanism of immune complex reactions.
19-10 Describe the mechanism of delayed cell-mediated reactions, and name two examples.

The term **hypersensitivity** refers to an antigenic response that results in undesirable effects. Allergies are a familiar example. Hypersensitivity responses occur in individuals who have been *sensitized* by previous exposure to an antigen, which in this context is often called an **allergen**. When a sensitized individual is exposed to that antigen again, the body's immune system reacts to it in a damaging manner. The study of hypersensitivity reactions is called **immunopathology**. The four principal types of hypersensitivity reactions, summarized in Table 19.1, are anaphylactic, cytotoxic, immune complex, and cell-mediated (or delayed-type) reactions.

Allergies and the Microbiome

Incidence of food and environmental allergies is increasing in nations where affordable goods and services are generally plentiful. The *hygiene hypothesis* suggests that limiting childhood exposure to bacteria and parasites may lower immune tolerance and limit the body's ability to cope with harmless antigens, such as food or pollen. Parasites such as worms are commonly found in areas of the world where sanitation is inadequate and health care access is limited, but are mostly absent from places with modern sanitation and good health care infrastructure. Studies show that mammals lacking early exposure to microorganisms are more susceptible to asthma and allergies. The resident microbiota within the human body is also being studied as a factor in certain autoimmune diseases. For more on this, see the Big Picture.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

19-1 Are all immune responses beneficial?

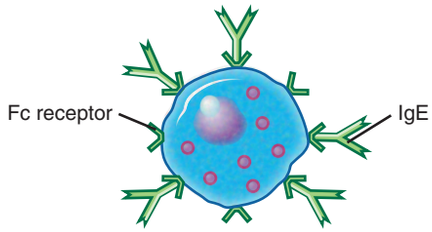
Type I (Anaphylactic) Reactions

Type I reactions (anaphylactic reactions) occur 2 to 30 minutes after a sensitized person is reexposed to an allergen. **Anaphylaxis** means "the opposite of protected," from the prefix *ana-*, meaning against, and the Greek *phylaxis*, meaning protection. It is an inclusive term for the reactions involving allergen, IgE antibodies specific for that allergen, and mast cells or basophils. Anaphylactic reactions can be *systemic*, involving the cardiovascular and respiratory systems and producing shock and breathing difficulties that are sometimes fatal, or *localized*, involving limited body regions. Localized reactions include common allergic conditions such as hay fever, allergic asthma, and hives (slightly raised, often itchy and reddened areas of the skin).

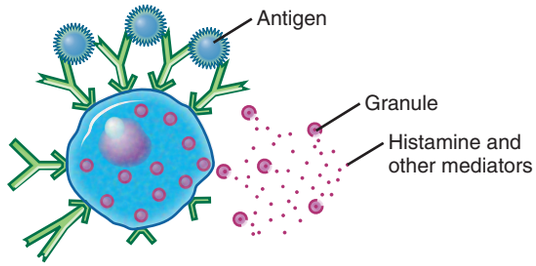
The IgE antibodies produced in response to an antigen (such as insect venom or plant pollen) bind by their tails (Fc regions) to Fc receptors on the surfaces of mast cells and basophils, cells of innate immunity (see the Big Picture in Chapter 16). Both cell types are similar in morphology and in their contribution to allergic reactions. **Mast cells** are especially prevalent in the mucosal and connective tissue of the skin and respiratory tract and in surrounding blood vessels. **Basophils** in the bloodstream are recruited to the tissues during the allergic response. Mast cells and basophils

TABLE 19.1 Types of Hypersensitivity

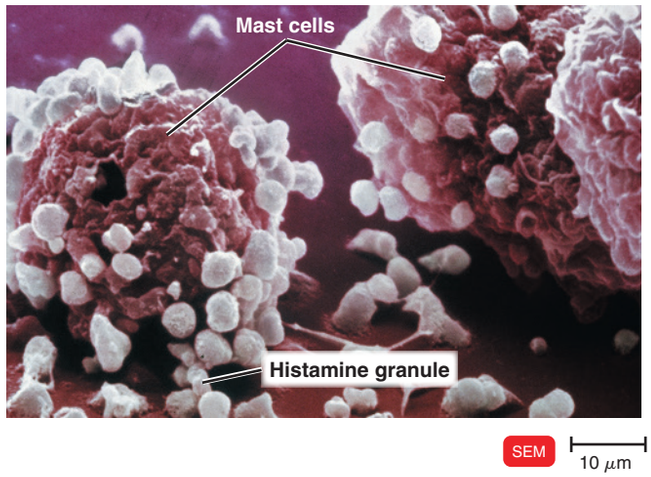
Type of Reaction	Time Before Clinical Signs	Characteristics	Examples
Type I (Anaphylactic)	<30 min	IgE binds to mast cells or basophils; allergen binding to IgE causes degranulation of mast cell or basophil and release of reactive substances such as histamine.	Anaphylactic shock from drug injections and insect venom; common allergic conditions, such as hay fever, asthma
Type II (Cytotoxic)	5–12 hours	Antigen causes formation of IgM and IgG antibodies that bind to target cell; when combined with action of complement, destroys target cell.	Transfusion reactions, Rh incompatibility
Type III (Immune Complex)	3–8 hours	Antibodies and antigens form complexes that cause damaging inflammation.	Arthus reactions, serum sickness, rheumatoid arthritis
Type IV (Delayed Cell-Mediated, or Delayed Hypersensitivity)	24–48 hours	Antigens activate CTLs that kills target cell.	Rejection of transplanted tissues; contact dermatitis, such as poison ivy; certain chronic diseases, such as tuberculosis



(a) Sensitization: IgE antibodies produced in response to an antigen bind to Fc receptors on mast cells and basophils.



(b) Upon later exposure to the antigen, IgE/Fc receptors are cross-linked by an antigen, triggering degranulation and the release of histamine and other mediators.



(c) A degranulated mast cell that has reacted with an antigen and released granules of histamine and other reactive mediators

Figure 19.1 The mechanism of anaphylaxis.

Q What type of cells do IgE antibodies bind to?

contain granules of histamine and other chemical mediators (Figure 19.1a).

Mast cells and basophils can have as many as 500,000 Fc receptors per cell, making the binding of IgE molecules to the cell surface very efficient, and leaving their antigen-binding sites free. Of course, the attached IgE monomers will not all be specific for the same antigen. But when the allergen encounters two adjacent antibodies of the same appropriate specificity, it can bind to one antigen-binding site on each antibody, bridging the space between them. This bridge triggers the mast cell or basophil to undergo **degranulation**, a cellular process that releases the granules inside these cells along with the mediators they contain (Figure 19.1b).

These mediators cause the unpleasant and damaging effects of an allergic reaction. The best-known mediator, **histamine**, is stored in the granules. Released histamine increases blood flow and the permeability of blood capillaries, resulting in edema (swelling) and erythema (redness). Other effects include increased mucus secretion (a runny nose, for example) and smooth muscle contraction, which in the respiratory bronchi results in breathing difficulty. Other mediators, such as **leukotrienes** and **prostaglandins**, are not preformed and stored in the granules, but rather are synthesized by the allergen-triggered cell. Because leukotrienes tend to cause prolonged contractions of certain smooth muscles, their action contributes to spasms of the bronchial tubes that occur during asthma attacks. Prostaglandins affect smooth muscles of the respiratory system and increase mucus secretion. Collectively, all these mediators serve as chemotactic agents that, in a few hours, attract neutrophils and eosinophils to the site of the degranulated cell.

CLINICAL CASE Who Are You?

Malik, a 10-day-old infant, has just been brought home from the neonatal intensive care (NICU) unit after surgery to repair a heart defect. When his mother is changing his diaper, she notices a rash on his buttocks. Assuming diaper rash, Malik's mother treats the area with ointment and thinks nothing else of it. As the day progresses, the rash spreads to Malik's face, giving him the appearance of being slapped. By the time Malik's parents bring him to the emergency department (ED), the rash is lobster-red and has spread to his entire body.

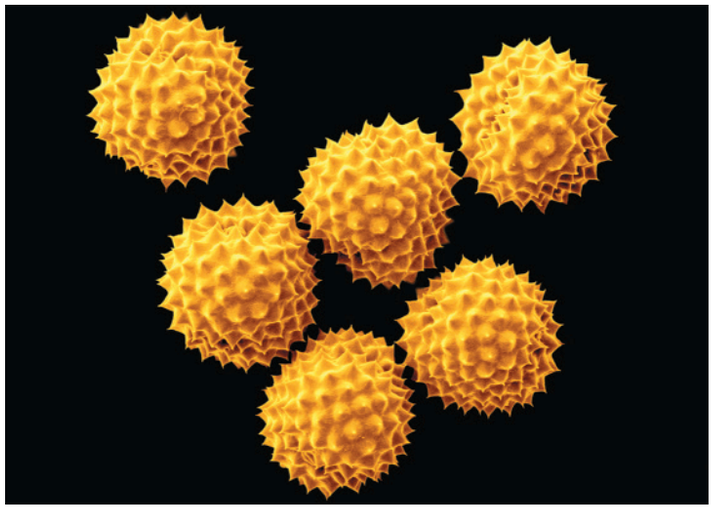
What is causing Malik's rash? Read on to find out.

Part 1 | Part 2 | Part 3 | Part 4 | Part 5

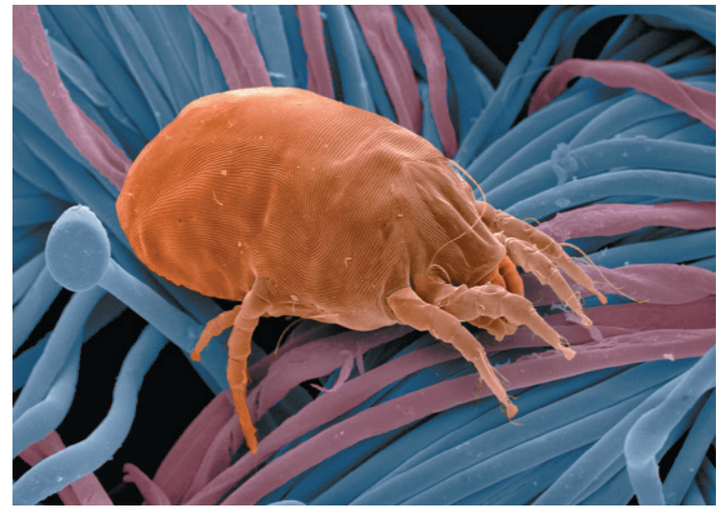
Systemic Anaphylaxis

Systemic anaphylaxis (or *anaphylactic shock*) results when release of mediators causes peripheral blood vessels throughout the body to dilate, resulting in a drop in blood pressure (shock). Other signs and symptoms include narrowing of airway passages, causing respiratory distress, flush or skin rash, tingling sensations, and nausea. This reaction can be fatal within a few minutes. There is very little time to act once someone develops systemic anaphylaxis. Treatment usually involves self-administration with a preloaded syringe of epinephrine, a drug that constricts blood vessels and raises the blood pressure.

Even a small dose of the antigen in question may cause a systemic reaction in someone who is sensitized to it. Injected antigens are more likely to cause a dramatic response than antigens introduced via other portals of entry. People who are allergic to venom of stinging insects such as bees and wasps are at risk for a systemic reaction.



(a) A micrograph of pollen grains



(b) A micrograph of a house dust mite on fabric

Figure 19.2 Localized anaphylaxis. Inhaled antigens such as these are a common cause of localized anaphylaxis.

Q **Compare localized and systemic anaphylaxis.**

The risk of medication-related anaphylaxis is one of the reasons health care providers ask patients about any known drug allergies before administration. You may know someone who is allergic to penicillin. In the United States, this drug allergy occurs in about 3–10% of the population. The common antibiotic is a hapten that combines with a carrier serum protein to cause an immune response in allergic individuals. (See Chapter 17 for a review on haptens.) Skin tests for penicillin sensitivity are available. Patients with a positive skin test can be effectively desensitized. This is done by orally administering a series of increasing doses of penicillin V over a short time period (completed within 4 hours) immediately prior to the procedure. Allergy to penicillin also includes risk from exposure to some related drugs, such as amoxicillin and carbapenem.

Localized Anaphylaxis

Localized anaphylaxis is usually immediate, temporary, and less severe than systemic anaphylaxis. It is associated with antigens that are ingested (foods) or inhaled (pollen) (**Figure 19.2a**). The symptoms depend primarily on the route by which the antigen enters the body. In allergies involving the upper respiratory system (such as hay fever), sensitization and production of IgE subsequently involves mast cells that release histamine in the mucous membrane of the upper respiratory tract. The airborne antigen might be a common environmental material such as plant pollen, fungal spores, feces of house dust mites (Figure 19.2b), or animal dander.* The typical symptoms are itchy and teary eyes, congested nasal passages, coughing, and sneezing. Antihistamine drugs, which compete for histamine receptor sites, are often used to treat these symptoms.

Asthma is an allergic reaction that mainly affects the lower respiratory system. Symptoms such as wheezing and shortness of breath are caused by the constriction of smooth muscles and accumulation of mucus in the bronchial tubes. For unknown reasons, asthma is becoming a near epidemic, affecting about 7.5% of children in the United States. The hygiene hypothesis, described previously, may be a factor in the increased incidence of asthma. Environmental pollutants, infections, and stress can be a contributing factor in precipitating asthma. Symptoms are usually controlled by inhaled bronchodilators such as albuterol that relax smooth muscles and corticosteroids that reduce inflammation. Other drugs include omalizumab (Xolair®), a humanized monoclonal antibody that blocks IgE for people with moderate to severe allergic asthma, and leukotriene-blockers such as montelukast (Singulair®).

Proteins in foods can act as antigens and sensitize an individual. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has identified nine foods that together are responsible for 97% of food allergies: eggs, peanuts, tree-grown nuts, milk, soy, fish, wheat, sesame, and peas. Most children exhibiting allergies to milk, egg, wheat, and soy develop tolerance as they age, but reactions to peanuts, tree nuts, and seafood tend to persist. Sulfites are another common food allergen. These chemicals are used as a preservative in foods (such as dried fruits and processed meats) and beverages (such as wine).

The FDA requires food labels to identify the presence of sulfites and the nine most common allergenic foods. Despite such labeling, food allergens can be difficult to avoid. A food

**Dander* is a general term for very small flakes of old skin cells from the fur, skin, or feathers of animals. It is analogous to dandruff in humans. Pet dander accumulates in upholstery and carpeting in homes.

BIG PICTURE

The Hygiene Hypothesis

Is dysbiosis increasing the incidence of immune-related disorders?

The incidence of immune-related disorders such as asthma, food allergies, and inflammatory bowel diseases is on the rise in the United States and other developed countries. These disorders have shared origins in an immune response that results in inflammation and tissue damage. Growing research suggests that their increased prevalence may be related to a rise in **dysbiosis**, a harmful imbalance of normal microbiota, among people living modern lifestyles.

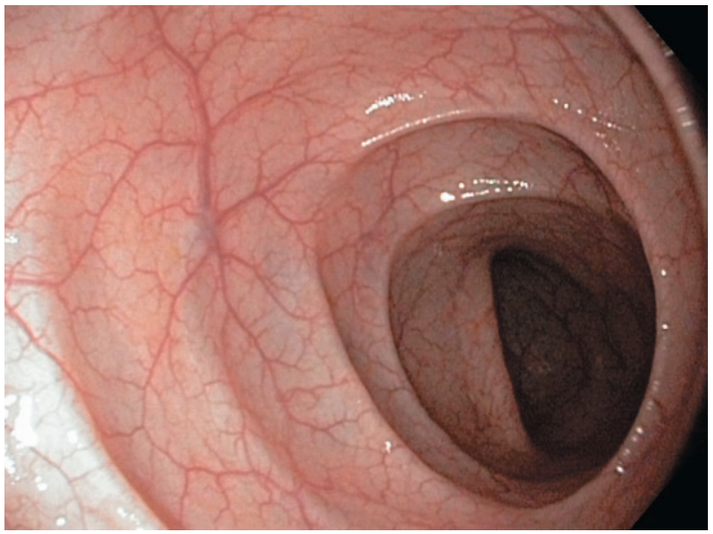
The connection between dysbiosis and immune disorders is explained through the *hygiene hypothesis*, which posits that childhood exposure to microorganisms is essential for training the immune system to become tolerant of the harmless microbes and antigens we encounter daily. Without early exposure, the immune system overreacts when it encounters microbes that historically provoked little or no response.

This means that good hygiene, sanitation, and antibiotics may have a drawback: helpful microbes are eliminated along with harmful ones. As a result, the microbiome has less diversity, and that, in turn, may foster the development of hypersensitivity disorders. Studies show that people living in nations with less stringent sanitation and health/hygiene measures tend to have a greater diversity of resident microbes.

Allergies and Asthma

Researchers first observed that the prevalence of allergies was lower among Indigenous populations compared to urban populations in the 1970s. More recently, this same difference was seen between children growing up on farms versus urban areas. The farm children encountered a wider range of microbial exposures and had a lower asthma prevalence.

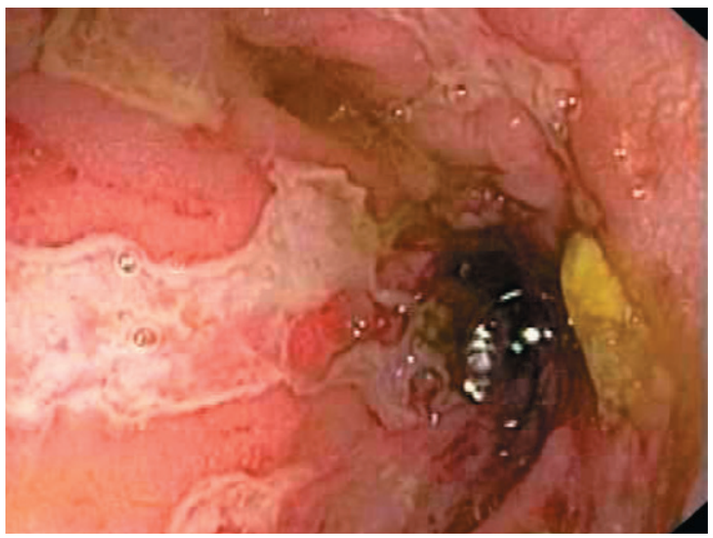
***Clostridioides difficile*, a bacterium that can proliferate and cause bowel disease when antibiotics kill other resident microbiota.**



Endoscope view of a healthy colon.

Inflammatory Bowel Diseases

Dysbiosis is now being closely studied as a possible cause of inflammatory bowel diseases, which include ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease. Some metabolic products of normal microbiota, such as butyrates, exert an anti-inflammatory effect on the body—so the lack of these normal microbiota could result in more inflammation. Antibiotic usage may also contribute to these diseases as studies demonstrate that the microbiome may not recover its full diversity after antibiotic treatment. This may lead to loss of organisms that would typically keep inflammation under control.



Endoscope view of an inflamed and ulcerated colon of a patient with Crohn's disease.

Diseases with a Dysbiosis Link

"Poop pills" developed for fecal transplant treatments. The microbiota in pills are surrounded by a triple layer of gel to prevent breakdown in the stomach.

Egg of *Trichuris suis*, the pig whipworm used to treat Crohn's disease.

Crohn's disease, which causes inflammation and ulceration of the intestines, is often characterized by excessive amounts of the cytokines tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α) and interleukin-12 (IL-12). Researchers hypothesize the excess could result from disruption in normal microbiota that usually keep inflammatory cytokines under control. Certain microbes may be effective in treating Crohn's disease; helminths such as the whipworm, for example, suppress T helper cell pathways that are overactive in the disease. In one study, Crohn's patients who ingested whipworm eggs experienced remission rates as high as 73%. Because the worms don't take up residence in humans, the treatment must be repeated periodically to maintain the effect. For now, the placebo effect can't be ruled out and future research is recommended.

Clostridioides difficile Infections

Clostridioides difficile is a major concern in health care settings, where patients undergoing antibiotic therapy can develop debilitating intestinal infections from it after the targeted microbe—along with harmless resident microbiota—are killed. Scientists have found success treating *C. difficile* infections with fecal transplants. This entails inoculating the patient with a fecal sample from a healthy individual (usually a family member). Fecal transplants from a donor are more effective than those from self. The healthy microbes found in the donor's sample can help restore the patient's microbiome. Because fecal transplants are much more effective than antibiotic treatments, they are becoming a common treatment for *C. difficile* infections, and some physicians are trying fecal transplants to treat obesity. In 2022, the FDA approved the fecal transplant (Rebyota®) for treatment of recurrrent *C. difficile* infections.

KEY CONCEPTS

- Normal microbiota are important in maintaining a healthy immune system. (**See Chapter 14, "Relationships Between Normal Microbiota and the Host."**)
- The Human Microbiome Project is sequencing the genes for 16S ribosomal RNA to help scientists catalog normal microbiota that are difficult to culture and identify in the laboratory. (**See Chapter 9, "Genome Projects."**)
- Trichuris suis is a roundworm related to *T. trichiura*. (**See Chapter 12, "Nematodes."**)
- Inflammatory diseases are characterized by increased amounts of cytokines produced by T helper cells, including tumor necrosis factor alpha and interleukins. (**See Chapter 16, "Inflammation."**)

product may have come into contact with a food allergen through processing machinery or cookware previously used for other foods. In one FDA report, 25% of bakery, ice cream, and candy products tested positive for peanut allergens even though peanuts were not listed on the food label.

Hives are a characteristic sign of a localized anaphylactic reaction to a food allergen. However, ingestion of food allergens can also trigger systemic anaphylaxis. Food allergies cause an estimated 150–200 deaths each year in the United States.

Gastrointestinal upset is another common localized symptom of food allergies, but it may not be related to hypersensitivity. Other common causes are foodborne infection, irritable bowel syndrome, and *food intolerance*. For example, many people are unable to digest the lactose in milk because they lack the intestinal enzyme that breaks it down. As the undigested lactose travels through the intestine, it osmotically retains fluid, causing bloating and diarrhea.

Preventing Anaphylactic Reactions

Some individuals experience allergic reactions after exposure to a variety of environmental or foodborne antigens and may not know exactly what they are sensitive to. In such cases, skin tests can be of use in diagnosis (Figure 19.3). These tests involve inoculating small amounts of suspected antigens just beneath the epidermis. Sensitivity to the antigen is indicated by a rapid inflammatory skin reaction that produces redness, swelling, and itching at the inoculation site. This small affected area is called a *wheal*.

Once a responsible antigen has been identified, the person can either try to avoid contact with it or undergo **desensitization** (or **subcutaneous allergen-specific immunotherapy**). This procedure usually consists of a series of gradually increasing dosages of the antigen carefully injected beneath the skin. The objective is to cause the production of IgG rather than IgE antibodies, in the hope that the circulating IgG antibodies will act as *blocking antibodies* to intercept and neutralize the antigens before they can react with cell-bound IgE. Desensitization is not a "cure" for allergies and has varying levels of effectiveness, with the most success seen against inhaled and injected (insect venom) allergens.

Figure 19.3 A skin test to identify allergens. Drops of fluid containing test substances are placed on the skin. A light scratch is made with a needle to allow the substances to penetrate the skin. Reddening and swelling at the site identify the substance as a probable cause of an allergic reaction.

Q What is scratched into the skin in a skin test?

CLINICAL CASE

The emergency department physician quickly rules out erythema infectiosum (fifth disease) because the rash did not begin on Malik's face. (Fifth disease is a viral illness; one of the first symptoms is a facial rash.) Malik has no other symptoms, such as difficulty breathing or low blood pressure, that would indicate an anaphylactic reaction. When speaking with the parents, the physician finds out that Malik recently underwent surgery to repair a heart defect and was given a routine blood transfusion. During the surgery it was discovered that Malik doesn't have a thymus gland.

What is the role of the thymus gland? (Hint: See Chapter 17.)

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **19-2** In what tissues do we find the mast cells that are major contributors to allergic reactions such as hay fever?
- **19-3** Which is the more dangerous to life: systemic or localized anaphylaxis?
- **19-4** How can clinicians tell whether a person is sensitive to a particular allergen, such as a tree pollen?
- **19-5** Which antibody types need to be blocked to desensitize a person subject to allergies?

TABLE 19.2 The ABO Blood Group System

Blood Group	Erythrocyte (Red Blood Cell) Antigens	Illustration	Plasma Antibodies Present	Cells That Can Be Received
A	A		Anti-B	A, O
B	B		Anti-A	B, O
AB	A and B		Neither anti-A nor anti-B antibodies	A, B, AB, O
O	Neither A nor B		Anti-A and Anti-B	O

Type II (Cytotoxic) Reactions

Type II (cytotoxic) reactions generally involve the activation of complement by the combination of IgG or IgM antibodies with an antigenic cell. This activation stimulates complement to lyse the affected cell, which might be either a foreign cell or a host cell that carries a foreign antigenic determinant (such as a drug) on its surface. Additional cellular damage may be caused within 5 to 8 hours by the action of macrophages and other cells that attack antibody-coated cells.

The most familiar cytotoxic hypersensitivity reactions are *transfusion reactions*, in which red blood cells are destroyed as a result of reacting with circulating antibodies. These reactions involve blood group systems that include the ABO and Rh antigens.

The ABO Blood Group System

In 1901, Karl Landsteiner discovered that human blood could be grouped into four principal types, which were designated A, B, AB, and O. This method of classification is called the **ABO blood group system**. Since then, other blood group systems have been discovered, but our discussion will be limited to two of the best known, the ABO and the Rh systems. The main features of the ABO blood group system are summarized in Table 19.2.

A person's ABO blood type depends on the presence or absence of carbohydrate antigens located on the cell membranes of red blood cells (RBCs). Blood group antigens are also found on other cells, including cells inside blood vessels. ABO involves three carbohydrate antigens on the surfaces of cells: A, B, and H. The H gene encodes the H antigen, which is modified by enzymes encoded by the A and B genes, if they are present. Thus a type O person expresses only the H antigen, and type A and B individuals convert the H antigen to the A or B antigens, respectively.

The A and B antigens are unique among those on human cells because they also occur on certain bacteria. For example, *E. coli* 086 bears B-like antigens and thus elicits an immune response (anti-B antibodies), in a person with type A or type O blood, but not in a person with type B blood. Likewise, some bacteria bear A-like antigens, and so elicit an immune response (anti-A antibodies), in a person with type B or type O blood, but not in a person with type A blood. So, while a person who is type O makes both kinds of antibodies, someone who is type AB blood produces no such antibodies (Table 19.2). The origin of these antibodies is described further in **Exploring the Microbiome**.

The key to a safe transfusion is to choose a donor who matches the recipient with respect to ABO blood type and Rh status (discussed shortly). If the match is exact, whole blood may be safely transfused. However, there are situations in which packed cells only (lacking plasma), should be used. For example, type O blood is considered the "universal cell donor" because the cells have neither A nor B antigens that would induce an immune response in a person with type B or A blood, respectively. But the plasma from the type O donor contains antibodies to A and B antigens. If whole blood from a type O donor were given to a type B recipient, the anti-B antibodies in the donor sample would immediately react with the recipient cells, causing agglutination and activating complement, which in turn would cause lysis of the donor's RBCs as they enter the recipient's system. In contrast, a person with type AB blood is considered a "universal cell recipient." These individuals produce neither anti-A nor anti-B antibodies, so can receive packed cells of the types A, B, AB or O. The American physician Charles Drew (**Figure 19.4**) invented the technique for plasma separation that allowed blood to be stored, or "banked," with cells and plasma separated for this purpose.

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

The Link between Blood Type and Composition of the Intestinal Microbiome

During the first year of life, an infant's B cells start producing antibodies against bacteria in its developing microbiome. Some bacterial antigens are identical to the A and B antigens of red blood cells. An infant with type A blood retains B cells specific for the B antigen (which produce anti-B antibodies) but B cells specific for the A (self) antigen are deleted. Moreover, if the individual were transfused with type B or AB blood at any point during their lifetime, their anti-B antibodies would cause an immediate transfusion reaction.

In addition to being found on blood cells, blood antigens appear in saliva, mucus, and body fluids of about 80% of the population. Their presence is due to a secreter gene these individuals possess that produces a water-soluble form of blood antigens. These "secretors" have fewer and less diverse intestinal bacteria than nonsecretors. However, their intestines are commonly populated with *Bifidobacterium* species, which are rarely present in the intestines of nonsecretors. This increased presence of *Bifidobacterium* in the intestines of secretors is important because these bacteria are thought to maintain intestinal health and compete well with pathogenic bacteria, inhibiting their growth.

Some anaerobic intestinal bacteria produce exoenzymes (extracellular enzymes) that degrade blood antigens. It has been observed, for example, that bacteria that degrade B blood antigens are more abundant in individuals with type B blood. It is likely that the monosaccharides resulting from the breakdown of the antigens are used as nutrients by these bacteria. From time to time, blood group-degrading bacteria may disappear from the intestines for a week or two, leaving the colon exposed to antigens that normally are degraded. Such antigens may include the polysaccharide O antigens on the cell walls of Enterobacteriaceae bacteria. These B-like antigens, which would normally be degraded by bacterial exoenzymes, induce immune responses that may play a role in inflammatory bowel disease. Hence, population changes in the intestinal ecosystem may have a significant role in these diseases.

Bifidobacterium

A relationship between blood types and certain diseases has been observed, which may be related to the natural selection of blood types in the populations of certain geographical areas. For example, individuals with type O blood are more susceptible to infection and severe illness from cholera and other diarrheas than individuals with type B blood. This tendency seems to be reflected in the blood types found in the Indian subcontinent, where type B is common and type O less so. As another example, more than half the population of tropical Africa has type O blood; these individuals tend to be less severely affected by malaria.

The Rh Blood Group System

In the 1930s, researchers Karl Landsteiner and Alexander Wiener discovered the presence of a different surface antigen on human red blood cells that also existed on rhesus monkeys. The antigen was named the **Rh factor** (*Rh* for rhesus monkey). The roughly 85% of the population whose cells possess this antigen are called Rh positive (Rh^+); those lacking this antigen (about 15%) are Rh negative (Rh^-). Antibodies that react with the Rh antigen do not occur naturally in the serum of Rh^- individuals, but exposure to this antigen can sensitize their immune systems to produce anti-Rh antibodies.

Blood Transfusions and Rh Incompatibility If blood from an Rh^+ donor is given to an Rh^- recipient, the donor's RBCs will stimulate the production of anti-Rh antibodies in the recipient. If the recipient then receives Rh^+ red blood cells in a subsequent transfusion, a rapid, serious hemolytic reaction will develop.

Hemolytic Disease of the Newborn Blood transfusions are not the only way in which an Rh^- person can become sensitized to Rh^+ blood. When a child is conceived by an Rh^- mother and an Rh^+ father, there is a 50% chance that the fetus will be Rh^+. As shown in Figure 19.5, *step 2*, if the fetus is Rh^+, a mother who is Rh^- can become sensitized to the Rh antigen during pregnancy and birth if fetal Rh^+ RBCs enter her circulation. Her primary antibody response will consist of IgM, which does not cross the placenta. But as shown in step 3, the response will also yield memory B cells specific for the Rh factor that have switched to IgG. If the fetus in a subsequent pregnancy is Rh^+,

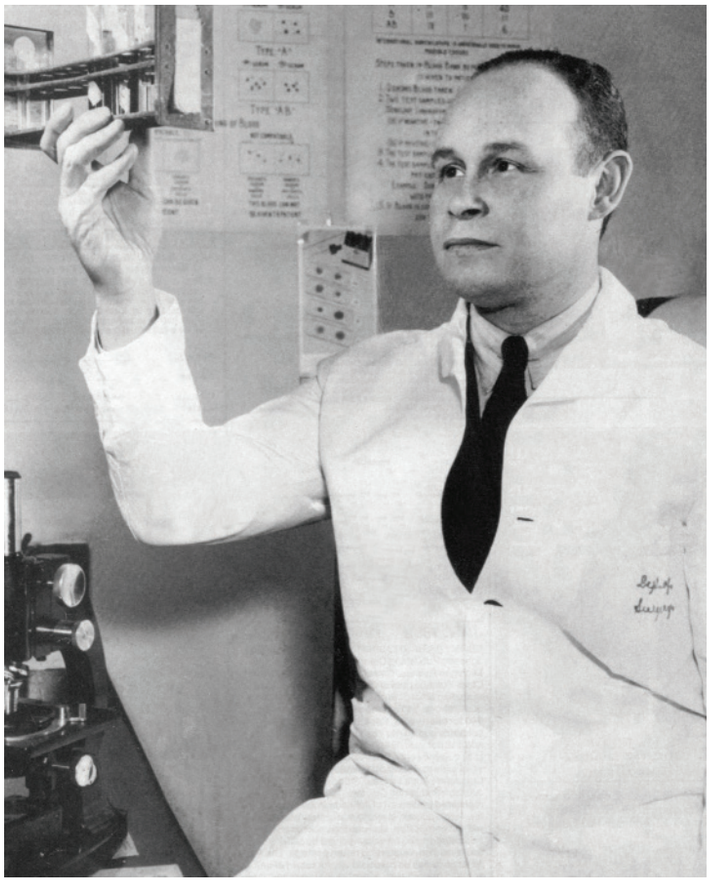


Figure 19.4 American physician Charles Drew invented the technique for plasma separation that allowed blood to be stored, or "banked."

Q Why is blood separated for banking?

those memory B cells will be activated; as shown in step 4, anti-Rh IgG antibodies will cross the placenta and destroy the fetal RBCs. The fetal body responds to this immune attack by producing large numbers of immature RBCs called erythroblasts. Thus, the term *erythroblastosis fetalis* was once used to describe what is now called **hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDNB)**. Before the birth of a fetus with this condition, the mother's circulatory system removes most of the toxic by-products of this RBC disintegration. After birth, however, the fetal blood is no longer purified in that way. Without treatment, the newborn will develop jaundice and severe anemia. Treatment includes replacing the newborn's Rh^+ blood, contaminated with these antibodies, by transfusing blood free of anti-Rh antibodies.

HDNB is usually prevented today by passive immunization of an Rh^- mother carrying an Rh^+ fetus. Anti-Rh antibodies, which are available commercially (RhoGAM®), are used. These are IgM antibodies that cannot cross the placenta and harm the fetus. RhoGAM® is administered via intramuscular or intravenous injection at 28 weeks of pregnancy and soon after delivery. These anti-Rh antibodies combine with any fetal Rh^+ RBCs that have entered the mother's circulation, reducing the risk of sensitization to the Rh antigen.

Drug-Induced Cytotoxic Reactions

Blood platelets (thrombocytes) are minute cell-like fragments pinched off from megakaryocytes. These key components in

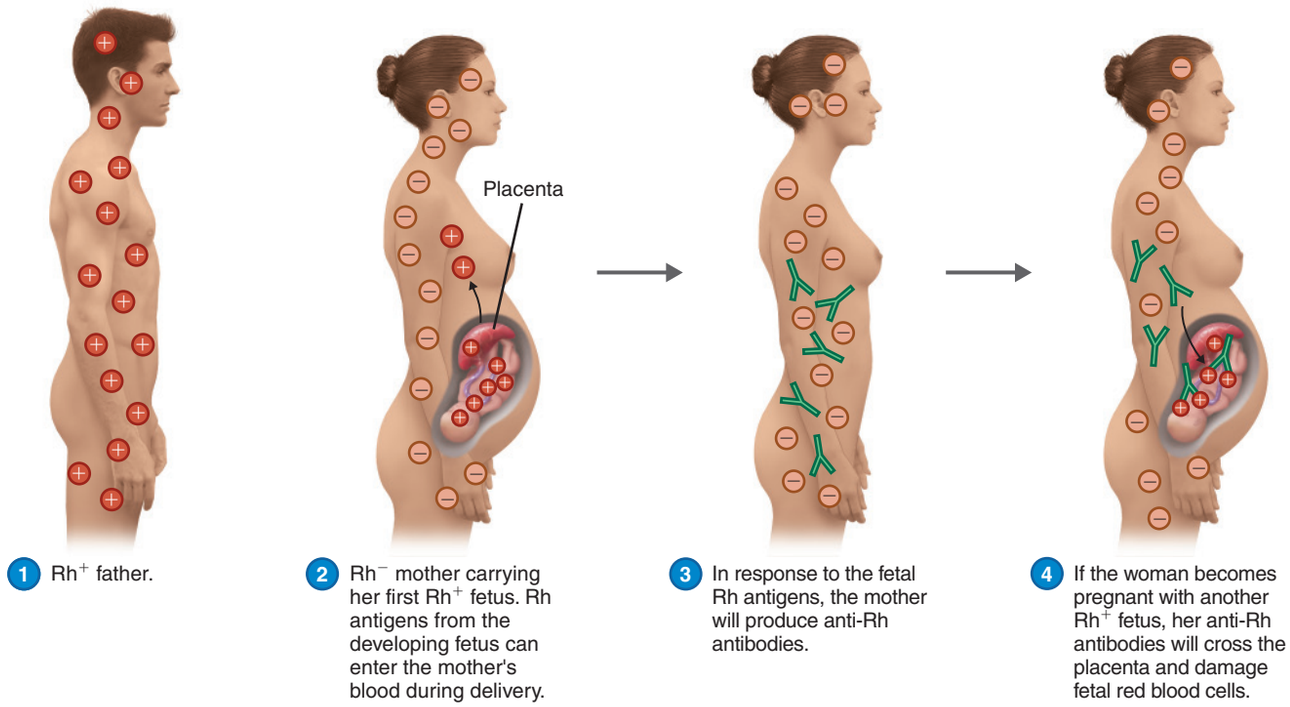


Figure 19.5 Hemolytic disease of the newborn.

Q What type of antibodies cross the placenta?

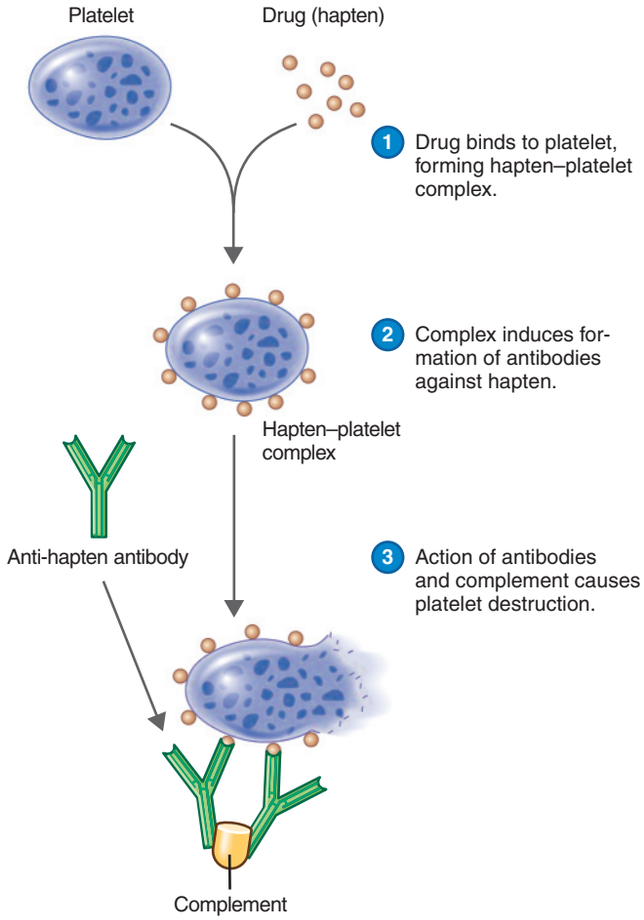


Figure 19.6 Drug-induced immune thrombocytopenic purpura. Molecules of a drug such as quinine accumulate on the surface of a platelet and stimulate an immune response that destroys the platelet.

Q What actually destroys the platelets in thrombocytopenic purpura?

blood clots are destroyed by drug-induced cytotoxic reactions in the disease called **immune thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)**. The drug molecules are usually haptens because they are too small to be antigenic by themselves. In the situation illustrated in Figure 19.6, a platelet has become coated with molecules of a drug (quinine is a familiar example), and the combination is antigenic. Both antibody and complement are needed for lysis of the platelets. Loss of platelets results in hemorrhages that appear on the skin as purple spots or *purpura*, which means purple. ITP can be triggered by some viruses such as HBV and SARS-CoV-2 in some individuals. Antibodies that cross-react with platelets is a proposed mechanism.

Drugs may bind similarly to white or red blood cells, causing local hemorrhaging and yielding symptoms described as "blueberry muffin" skin mottling. When red blood cells are destroyed in this manner, the condition is termed **hemolytic anemia**. Immune-caused destruction of granulocytic white cells is called **agranulocytosis**, and it affects the body's phagocytic defenses.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **19-6** What, besides an allergen and an antibody, is required to precipitate a cytotoxic reaction?
- **19-7** What are the antigens located on the cell membranes of type O^+ blood?
- **19-8** If a fetus that is Rh^+ can be damaged by anti-Rh antibodies of the mother, why does such damage never happen during the first such pregnancy?

Type III (Immune Complex) Reactions

Whereas type II immune reactions are directed against antigens located on cell or tissue surfaces, **type III reactions** involve antibodies against soluble antigens circulating in the serum. The antigen–antibody complexes are deposited in organs and cause inflammatory damage.

Immune complexes form only when certain ratios of antigen and antibody occur. The antibodies involved are usually IgG. A significant excess of antibody leads to the formation of complement-fixing complexes that are rapidly removed from the body by phagocytosis. When there is a significant excess of antigen, soluble complexes form that do not fix complement and do not cause inflammation. However, when a certain antigen–antibody ratio exists, usually with a slight excess of antigen, the soluble complexes that form are small and escape phagocytosis. These small complexes can fix complement (Figure 16.10a).

Figure 19.7 illustrates the consequences. These complexes circulate in the blood, pass between endothelial cells of the blood

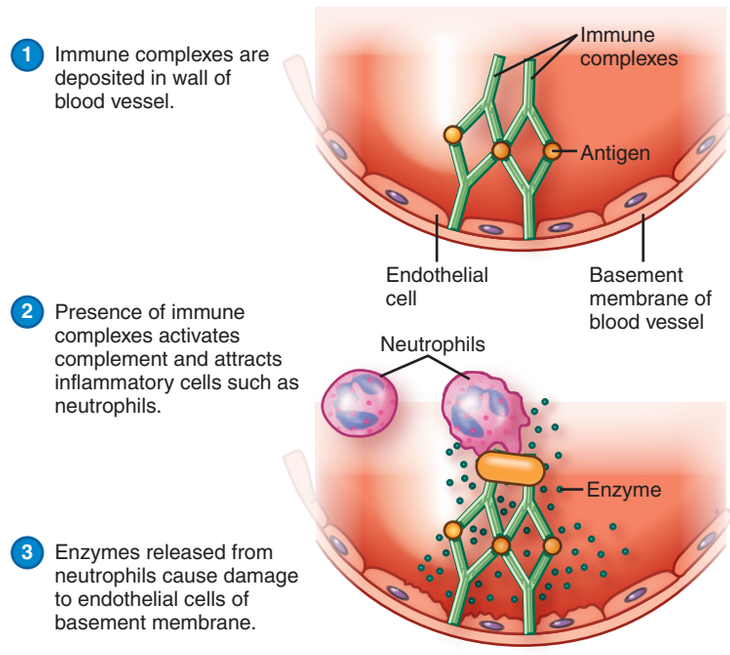


Figure 19.7 Immune complex–mediated hypersensitivity.

Q Name one immune complex disease.

vessels, and become trapped in the basement membrane beneath the cells. In this location, they may activate complement and cause a transient inflammatory reaction, attracting neutrophils that release enzymes. Repeated introduction of the same antigen can lead to more serious inflammatory reactions, causing damage to the basement membrane's endothelial cells within 2 to 8 hours.

The **Arthus reaction**, a rare side effect of toxoid-containing vaccines, is a type III reaction that can occur in the walls of the glomeruli of the kidneys, causing glomerulonephritis, and in the blood vessels. The reaction occurs because of complement activation in a patient with already circulating IgG antibodies to an injected antigen. This leads to acute local inflammation, edema, and sometimes necrosis. Serum sickness is a less severe type III reaction with swelling and inflammation that occurs from injection of a foreign protein or serum.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

19-9 Are the antigens causing immune complex reactions soluble or insoluble?

Type IV (Delayed Cell-Mediated) Reactions

Up to this point we have discussed humoral immune responses involving IgE, IgG, or IgM. Type IV reactions involve cell-mediated immune responses and are caused mainly by T cells. **Delayed cell-mediated reactions** (or **delayed hypersensitivity**) are not apparent for a day or more. A major factor in the delay is the time required for the participating T cells and macrophages to migrate to and accumulate near the foreign antigens. Transplant rejection is most commonly mediated by cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs), but other mechanisms are by antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity or complement-mediated lysis. Another example is described in the **Clinical Focus** box.

Causes of Delayed Cell-Mediated Reactions

Sensitization for delayed hypersensitivity reactions occurs when certain foreign antigens, particularly those that bind to tissue cells, are phagocytized by macrophages, fragmented, and then presented by MHC molecules to antigen receptors on T helper cells. Specific binding between the MHC-peptide complex and the T_H cell causes the cell to proliferate and develop into memory T cells with the same specificity, as well as cytokine-secreting T_H1 cells. Upon initial exposure, and the process of sensitization, no reaction is apparent.

When a sensitized person is reexposed to the same antigen, a delayed hypersensitivity reaction might result. Within 1 to 2 days, memory T_H1 cells from the initial exposure are activated to secrete cytokines that attract and activate macrophages and promote inflammation.

Delayed Cell-Mediated Hypersensitivity Reactions of the Skin

One delayed hypersensitivity reaction that involves the skin is the familiar skin test for tuberculosis. Because *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is often located within macrophages, this organism can stimulate a delayed cell-mediated immune response. As a screening test, protein components of the bacteria are injected into the skin. If the recipient has (or has had) a previous infection by tuberculosis bacteria, an inflammatory reaction to the injection of these antigens will appear in 1 to 2 days (see Figure 24.9); this interval is typical of delayed hypersensitivity reactions.

Allergic contact dermatitis, another common manifestation of delayed cell-mediated hypersensitivity, is usually caused by haptens that combine with proteins (particularly the amino acid lysine) in the skin of some people to produce an immune response. Reactions to poison ivy (**Figure 19.8**), cosmetics, and the metals in jewelry (especially nickel) are familiar examples of these allergies.

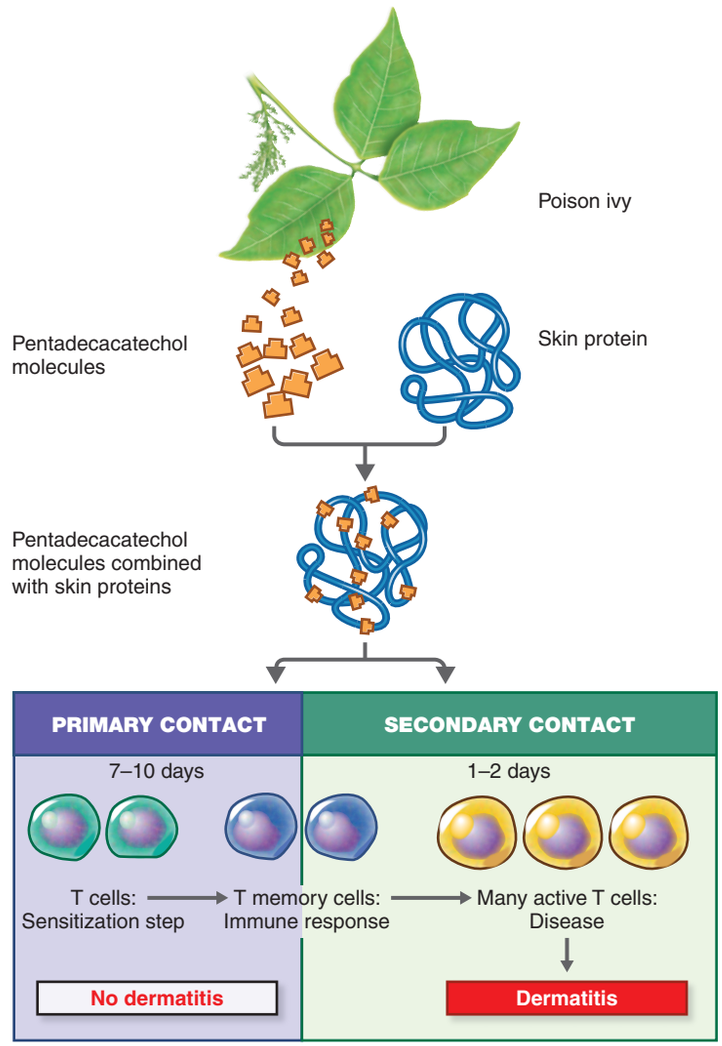


Figure 19.8 The development of an allergy (allergic contact dermatitis) to catechols from the poison ivy plant. Pentadecacatechol is a mixture of catechols, oils secreted by the plant that dissolve easily in skin oils and penetrate the skin. In the skin, the catechols function as haptens—they combine with skin proteins to become antigenic and provoke an immune response. The first contact with poison ivy sensitizes the susceptible person, and subsequent exposure results in contact dermatitis.

Q How does a hapten cause an allergic reaction?

Figure 19.9 Allergic contact dermatitis. This person's hand exhibits a severe case of delayed contact dermatitis from wearing latex surgical gloves.

Q What is allergic contact dermatitis?

The increasing exposure to latex in condoms, in certain catheters, and in gloves used by health care workers has led to a greater awareness of hypersensitivity to latex. In many health care environments, latex has been replaced by nonlatex gloves and products. Among health care workers, 8–17% report this type of hypersensitivity to latex surgical gloves (Figure 19.9). Synthetic polymers such as vinyl and, especially, nitrile are alternatives to latex, but even nitrile gloves occasionally cause allergic reactions. Most gloves that are made of natural latex, as well as those made of nitrile and neoprene, contain chemical additives called accelerators. Accelerators promote cross-linkage, which adds strength and resiliency, but they have been implicated in allergic reactions. One type of nitrile glove that does not contain accelerators has been developed and has received FDA registration as a medical device that can be labeled as nonallergenic. Another approved glove, Yulex®, is made from sap of the guayule (wī-ū-ē, *Parthenium argentatum*) shrub that is native to arid areas of the U.S. Southwest and northern Mexico.

Many people who develop an allergy to latex also have evidence of allergies to certain fruits, most commonly avocado, chestnut, banana, and kiwi. (The exact relationship between these allergies is not understood.) Latex paint, however, does not pose a threat of hypersensitivity reactions. Despite its name, latex paint contains no natural latex, but only synthetic nonallergenic chemical polymers.

The identity of the environmental factor causing dermatitis can usually be determined by a *patch test*. Samples of suspected materials are taped to the skin; after 48 hours, the area is examined for inflammation.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

19-10 What is the primary reason for the delay in a delayed cell-mediated reaction?

Autoimmune Diseases

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

19-11 Describe a mechanism for self-tolerance.

19-12 Give an example of cytotoxic, immune complex, and cell-mediated autoimmune diseases.

When the immune system acts in response to self-antigens and causes damage to one's own organs, the result is an **autoimmune disease**. More than 100 autoimmune diseases have been identified. They affect more than 10% of the population in the developed world.

About 80% of the cases of autoimmune disease selectively affect females. Reasons for this are still being explored, but hormone differences, genetic susceptibility (whereas males have one X chromosome, females have two and, early in embryonic development, undergo the random inactivation of one X chromosome in each cell), previous infections, and vitamin D deficiency have been explored as possibilities. Treatments for autoimmune diseases are improving as knowledge of the mechanisms controlling immune reactions expands.

Autoimmune diseases occur when there is a loss of **self-tolerance**, the immune system's ability to discriminate self from nonself. It is generally accepted that T cells acquire this ability during their passage through the thymus. Any T cells that will target self-molecules are eliminated by clonal deletion in the thymus (called *thymic selection*; see Chapter 17). However, when this process goes awry, self-tolerance is impaired. This can lead to the production of antibodies against self (*autoantibodies*) or a response by sensitized T cells against a person's own antigens.

Autoimmune reactions, and the diseases they cause, can be cytotoxic, immune complex, or cell-mediated in nature.

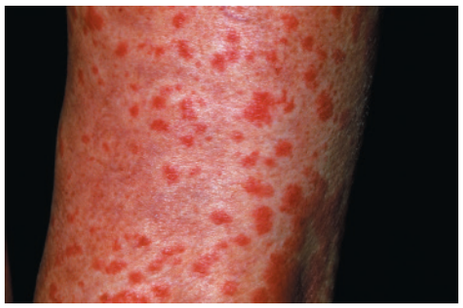
Cytotoxic Autoimmune Reactions

Multiple sclerosis is one of the more common autoimmune diseases caused by a cytotoxic autoimmune reaction. Its onset is typically in young adulthood, and it is more common in females and in temperate regions. It is a neurological disease in which autoantibodies, T cells, and macrophages attack the myelin sheath of nerves. This compromises nerve impulse conduction and leads to scarring. Symptoms range from fatigue and weakness to, in some cases, eventual severe paralysis. There is considerable evidence of genetic susceptibility from several genes that interact. The etiology of multiple sclerosis is unknown, but epidemiological evidence indicates that it probably involves some infective agent or agents acquired during early adolescence. The Epstein-Barr virus (*Lymphocryptovirus*, HHV-4) is a prime suspect. No cure exists, but treatments with interferons, monoclonal antibodies, and several drugs that interfere with immune processes can significantly slow progression of symptoms.

CLINICAL FOCUS A Delayed Rash

As you read through this box, you will encounter a series of questions that health care professionals ask as they determine the cause of a patient's symptoms. Try to answer each question before going on to the next one.

1. A 65-year-old woman made a routine dental appointment. Because of her hip and shoulder implants, antibiotics were routinely prescribed for 2 days after any dental work. The woman asked for her usual prescription of cephalothin. The nurse practitioner prescribed penicillin, saying it was less expensive.
   Why are patients with medical implants more susceptible to infection from dental work?
2. Oral bacteria introduced to the bloodstream during dental work can colonize on medical implants such as artificial joints, stents, or catheters. The resulting biofilm may be a source of serious systemic infections. The dental cleaning went well. Seven days later, the woman developed a maculopapular rash over her legs and torso (see the photo).
   What are the most likely causes of a rash, in the absence of fever or other signs of infection?
3. A rash is likely due to an allergic reaction.
   What questions would you ask the patient?
4. The patient had not tried any new foods, cleaning agents, or clothing. She said the only thing different during the past 10 days was her taking the penicillin. The nurse practitioner said penicillin couldn't be the cause because responses to penicillin occur within minutes to hours after exposure.
   Was the nurse practitioner correct?
5. Immediate reactions that occur within minutes or hours suggest an antibody-mediated allergy. Delayed reactions, occurring after days to weeks of an exposure to an allergen in a sensitized person, suggest a type IV cell-mediated reaction. This patient's response fits the profile of a cell-mediated reaction to penicillin.
   What cells are responsible for a type IV hypersensitivity? What antibodies are involved in a type I hypersensitivity?



6. Sensitized T cells are involved in delayed hypersensitivity reactions, including antibiotic-induced rashes. Drug-specific IgE antibodies are responsible for type I immediate hypersensitivity reactions.
   What should the nurse practitioner have asked?
7. The nurse practitioner should have asked whether the patient had any drug allergies before prescribing any antibiotic. However, in this case, the patient had no prior drug-induced allergy.
   Was this the patient's first exposure to penicillin?
8. No. Allergic reactions do not occur on the first exposure to an antigen. The prior exposure could have occurred once during the patient's life. Many immunologists feel that the overuse of penicillin 70 years ago for bacterial infections resulted in an increased frequency of allergic reactions. Most patients who have a history of penicillin allergy, however, will tolerate cephalosporins.

Immune Complex Autoimmune Reactions

Common immune complex autoimmune disorders include lupus, rheumatoid arthritis, Graves' disease, and myasthenia gravis.

Systemic lupus erythematosus is a systemic autoimmune disease that mainly affects females. The etiology of the disease is not completely understood, but afflicted individuals produce antibodies directed at components of their own cells, including DNA, which is probably released during the normal breakdown of tissues, especially the skin. The most damaging effects of the disease result from deposits of immune complexes in the glomeruli of the kidneys.

Rheumatoid arthritis is a disease in which immune complexes of IgM, IgG, and complement are deposited in the joints. In fact, immune complexes called *rheumatoid factors* may be formed by IgM binding to the Fc region of normal IgG. These factors are found in 70% of individuals suffering from rheumatoid arthritis. The chronic inflammation caused by this deposition eventually leads to severe damage to the cartilage and bone of the joints, severely impairing joint structure and mobility.

Graves' disease is a condition in which the thyroid gland is stimulated to produce increased amounts of thyroid hormone. Normally, the pituitary gland in the brain releases a hormone called thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), which induces the thyroid gland to produce its hormones. However, in Graves' disease, antibodies that mimic TSH are produced. These abnormal antibodies bind to TSH receptors, forming complexes that cause the thyroid to produce excessive amounts of thyroid hormones. Symptoms include pounding of the heart, trembling, and sweating. The most striking signs of the disease are goiter (a disfiguring swelling of the thyroid gland in the neck) and markedly bulging eyes.

Myasthenia gravis is a disease in which muscles become progressively weaker. It is caused by antibodies that bind to and block the acetylcholine receptors at the junctions at which nerve impulses reach the muscles. Eventually, these complexes may block nerve signals to the muscles controlling the diaphragm and the rib cage, and respiratory arrest and death result.

TABLE 19.3 Selected Autoimmune Disorders

Autoimmune Disease	Possible Cause
Chronic fatigue syndrome	May be due to antibodies attaching to acetylcholine receptors in nerve cells (see Chapter 22)
Rheumatoid arthritis	Immune complexes accumulate in joints
Systemic lupus erythematosus	Immune complexes involving antibodies against DNA
Multiple sclerosis	T cells and macrophages attack the myelin sheath
Type I diabetes	T cells destroy insulin-secreting cells
Guillain-Barré syndrome	T cells produce cytokines that cause destruction of the myelin sheath of nerve cells (see Chapters 22 and 25)
Psoriasis	T cells produce cytokines that can induce keratinocyte (skin cells) growth
Graves' disease	Antibodies attached to certain receptors in the thyroid gland cause it to enlarge and produce excessive hormones
Myasthenia gravis	Antibodies against acetylcholine receptors
Crohn's disease	Antibacterial antibodies react with intestinal mucosa
Inflammatory bowel disease	Antibacterial antibodies react with intestinal mucosa (see the Big Picture)

Cell-Mediated Autoimmune Reactions

Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus is a common condition caused by immunological destruction of insulin-secreting cells of the pancreas. T cells are clearly implicated in this disease; animals that are genetically likely to develop diabetes fail to do so when their thymus is removed in infancy.

The fairly common skin condition **psoriasis** is an autoimmune disorder characterized by itchy, red patches of thickened skin. As many as 30% of people with psoriasis develop **psoriatic arthritis**. Several topical and systemic therapies such as corticosteroids and methotrexate are available to help control psoriasis of the skin. Psoriasis is considered to be a T_H1 disease and can be treated effectively with monoclonal antibodies against cytokines TNF-α, and IL-17. For psoriatic arthritis, as well as rheumatoid arthritis, the most effective treatments are injections of monoclonal antibodies that inhibit TNF-α. Autoimmune diseases discussed in this book are summarized in Table 19.3.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **19-11** What is the importance of clonal deletion in the thymus?
- **19-12** What organ is affected in Graves' disease?

Reactions to Transplantation

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

19-13 Define *HLA complex*, and explain its importance in disease susceptibility and tissue transplants.

19-14 Explain how a transplant is rejected.

19-15 Define *privileged site*.

19-16 Discuss the role of stem cells in transplantation.

19-17 Define *autograft*, *isograft*, *allograft*, and *xenotransplantation products*.

19-18 Explain how graft-versus-host disease occurs.

19-19 Explain how rejection of a transplant is prevented.

Transplants that the immune system recognizes as nonself are rejected—attacked by T cells that directly kill the grafted cells, by macrophages activated by T cells, and, in certain cases, by antibodies, which activate the complement system and injure blood vessels supplying the transplanted tissue. However, transplants that are not rejected can add many healthy years to a person's life. Here, we explore how and why these reactions to transplanted cells, tissues, and organs occurs.

The Role of HLA

The inherited genetic characteristics of individuals are expressed not only in the color of their eyes or curl of their hair, but also in the composition of the self molecules on their cell surfaces. Some of these are called **histocompatibility antigens**. The most important of these self molecules are known as the **major histocompatibility complex (MHC)**. In humans, the genes that encode these molecules are called the **human leukocyte antigen (HLA) complex**. We encountered these self molecules in Chapter 17, where we saw that recognition of antigen by T cells requires antigen "presentation" by these molecules on body cells.

A process called *HLA typing* is used to identify and compare HLAs. Certain HLAs are related to an increased susceptibility to specific diseases (Table 19.4); one medical application of HLA typing is to identify such susceptibility. Another important medical application of HLA typing is in transplant surgery, in which the donor and the recipient must be matched by *tissue typing*. The serological technique shown in Figure 19.10 is the one most often used. In serological tissue typing, the laboratory uses standardized antisera or monoclonal antibodies that are specific for particular HLAs.

TABLE 19.4 Selected Diseases Related to Specific Human Leukocyte Antigens (HLAs)

Disease	Increased Risk of Occurrence with Specific HLA*	Description
INFLAMMATORY DISEASES		
Multiple sclerosis	5 times	Progressive inflammatory disease affecting nervous system
Rheumatic fever	4–5 times	Cross-reaction with antibodies against streptococcal antigen
ENDOCRINE DISEASES		
Addison's disease	4–10 times	Deficiency in production of hormones by adrenal gland
Graves' disease	10–12 times	Disorder in which antibodies attached to certain receptors in the thyroid gland cause it to enlarge and produce excessive hormones
MALIGNANT DISEASE		
Hodgkin's lymphoma	1.4–1.8 times	Cancer of lymph nodes

*Compared to the general population.

A newer, more accurate technique for analyzing HLA is the use of PCR to amplify portions of HLA genes and sequence that DNA to determine a person's type (see Figure 9.4). If this is done for the recipient and for potential donors, a match may be found. Having such a DNA match and matching ABO blood type between the donor and the recipient should result in a much higher success rate in transplant surgery.

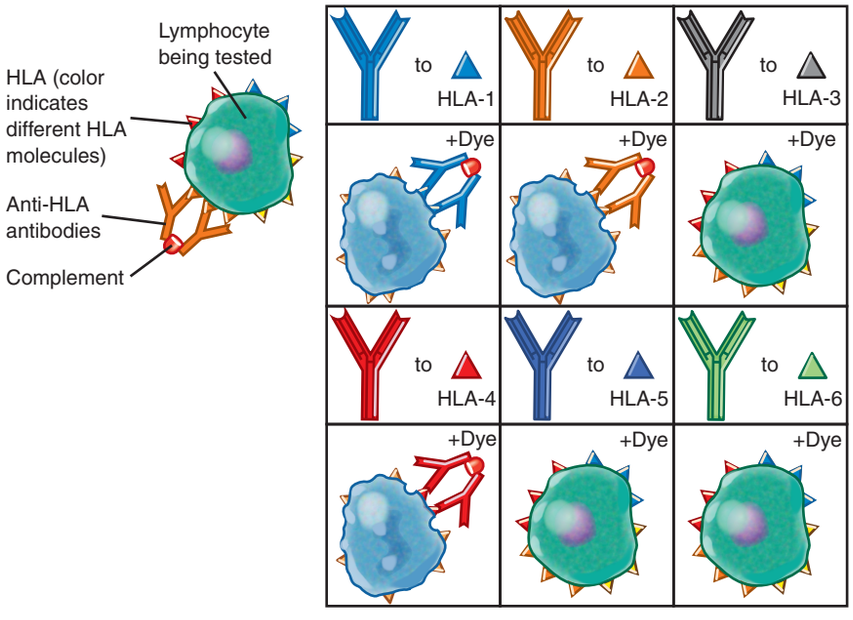
Other factors may be involved in the success of a transplant, however. According to one hypothesis, the body's reaction to transplanted foreign tissue may be a response to surgery-damaged cells. In other words, tissue rejection may result from a learned reaction to the danger signal posed by damaged cells, rather than a learned reaction to nonself.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

19-13 What is the relationship between the major histocompatibility complex in humans and the human leukocyte antigen complex?

Privileged Sites and Privileged Tissue

Some transplants or grafts do not stimulate an immune response. A transplanted cornea, for example, is rarely rejected, mainly because antibodies usually do not circulate into that portion of the eye. The cornea is therefore considered an immunologically **privileged site**. (Rarely, rejections do occur, especially when the cornea has developed many blood vessels from corneal infections or damage.) The brain is also an



Results: Tissue type is HLA-1,-2,-4

Figure 19.10 Tissue typing, a serological method. Lymphocytes from the person (donor or recipient) being tested are incubated with a panel of different anti-HLA antibodies, complement, and blue dye. If the antibodies react with the HLAs on a lymphocyte, then complement damages the cell, and the cell takes up blue dye. Thus blue (dead) cells indicate that the person has the particular HLA being tested for.

Q Why is tissue typing done?

immunologically privileged site, probably because it does not have lymphatic vessels and because the walls of the blood vessels in the brain differ from blood vessel walls elsewhere in the body (the blood–brain barrier is discussed in Chapter 22).

It is possible to transplant **privileged tissue**, which does not stimulate an immune rejection. For example, a person's damaged heart valve can be replaced with a valve from a pig's heart. The pig tissue must first be modified by decellularization, meaning that its antigenic cellular elements are removed either physically or chemically.

How animals tolerate pregnancy without rejecting the fetus is only partially understood. During pregnancy, the tissues of two genetically different individuals are in direct contact. An important factor seems to be that the MHC classes I and II in the cells that form the outer layer of the placenta—and come into contact with parental tissue—are not of the specific types that stimulate a cellular immune response. The fetus is also protected by certain proteins it synthesizes, which have immunosuppressive properties. But there is no single, simple explanation.

Stem Cells

A development that promises to transform transplantation medicine is the use of **stem cells** (see Figure 17.1), cells that are capable of renewing themselves and can be differentiated into other organ-specific specialized cells. There are several types.

Embryonic stem cells (ESCs) can be harvested from a blastocyst (early stage of embryonic development from days 5 to 8 after fertilization). See Figure 19.11. In the medical community, use of ESCs in therapy is a topic that attracts great interest because they maintain the potential to become any cell type of the body. That is, they are *pluripotent*. Theoretically, these cells could be used to regenerate damaged heart tissue, the failing insulin-producing cells in the pancreas that lead to diabetes, or damaged cartilage in the joints of people with rheumatoid arthritis.

Later in embryonic development, stem cells specialize and are able to give rise only to specific families of cell types, such as blood, skin, or muscle. These cells are called *multipotent*. After birth, these multipotent stem cells are called *adult stem cells*. They replenish cells, as needed, for various body organs. For instance, skin stem cells continue to grow skin and hair. It is now possible to create **induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs)** from adult stem cells in the laboratory. These are made by introducing transcription factor regulatory genes by transduction, or by adding the regulatory proteins to culture media. When these cells are isolated and grown in culture, they give rise to embryonic stem cells. Advances in **tissue engineering** may make it possible to grow organs in the laboratory. Using patients' cells, which reduces the chance of rejection, researchers have already successfully grown and transplanted urinary bladders. It was originally believed transplants derived from

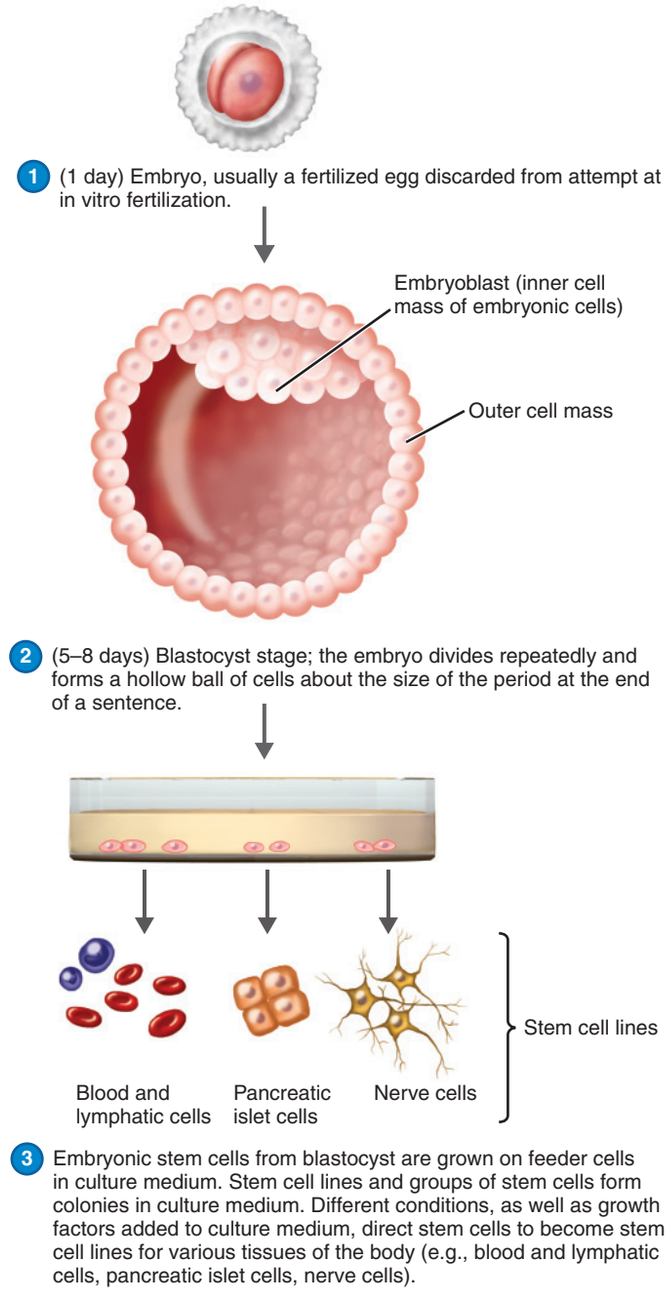


Figure 19.11 Derivation of embryonic stem cells.

Q What does *pluripotent* mean?

ESCs and IPSCs would not be rejected. However, experimentation with xenotransplants in mice suggests that T cells are involved in rejection of ESCs and iPSCs.

Bone Marrow Transplants

The transplantation of bone marrow, known as a *hematopoietic stem cell transplant*, is an example of an adult stem cell transplant. The recipient is usually an individual who lacks the capacity to produce B cells and T cells vital for immunity

or has leukemia. Bone marrow stem cells give rise to red and white blood cells of all types, including B cells and T cells (see Chapter 17). The goal of a bone marrow transplant is to provide stem cells that enable the recipient to produce healthy blood cells; however, such transplants can result in **graft-versus-host (GVH) disease** (grafts are defined shortly). In GVH disease, the transplanted immunocompetent B cells and T cells mount an immune response against the recipient's tissues. Because the recipients lack effective immunity, GVH disease is a serious complication and can even be fatal.

An extremely promising technique for avoiding this problem is the use of *umbilical cord blood* instead of bone marrow. This blood is harvested from the placenta and umbilical cords of newborns—materials that would otherwise be discarded. It is very rich in the stem cells found in bone marrow. Not only do these cells proliferate into the variety of cells required by the recipient, but also, because stem cells from this source are younger and less mature, the "matching" requirements are also less stringent than with bone marrow. As a result, GVH disease is less likely to occur.

Grafts

A **graft** is the transfer of a tissue from one part of the body to another, or from one person to another, without the transfer of the blood supply of the grafted tissue. When the patient's own tissue is grafted to another part of the body, as is done in burn treatment or in plastic surgery, the graft is not rejected. Recent technology has made it possible to use a few cells of a burn patient's uninjured skin to culture extensive sheets of new skin. This new skin is an example of an **autograft**. Identical twins have the same genetic makeup; therefore, skin or organs such as kidneys may be transplanted between them without provoking an immune response. Such a transplant is called an **isograft**. Grafts between people who are not identical twins are called **allografts**. Most transplants fall under this last category, and they will cause an immune response. Matching the HLAs of the donor and recipient as closely as possible reduces the chance of rejection. Because HLAs of close relatives are most likely to match, blood relatives, especially siblings, are the preferred donors.

The need for donor organs far outstrips the current supply. Medical researchers hope to increase the success of **xenotransplantation products**, which are tissues or organs that have been transplanted from animals. However, the body tends to mount an especially severe immune assault on such transplants. The reason for this assault is the presence of pre-existing antibodies against the sugar galactose-α-1,3-galactose (gal), which is present on bacteria of the intestinal microbiome and also on the cells of nonhuman animals. These antibodies, along with complement, trigger **hyperacute rejection**, the immediate destruction of the transplanted animal tissue. The FDA has recently approved genetically modified "GalSafe" pigs as a step toward successfully countering this hyperacute rejection in xenotransplants.

Unsatisfactory attempts have been made to transplant organs from baboons and other nonhuman primates into people. Research interest is high in genetically modifying pigs because the animal is plentiful in supply and the right size for its organs to be compatible with humans. This approach is moving forward; in early 2022, a heart from a genetically engineered pig was transplanted into a person with heart failure who was ineligible for a human heart and was on life support. The recipient lived for two months before succumbing to the devastating effects of previous episodes of heart failure; however, there were no signs of transplant rejection. Beyond rejection, the primary concern about xenotransplantation products is the possibility of transferring harmful animal viruses along with the donor tissue. Indeed, there is some speculation that the aforementioned xenotransplant recipient was infected with a pig cytomegalovirus.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **19-14** What immune system cells are involved in the rejection of nonself transplants?
- **19-15** Why is a transplanted cornea usually not rejected as nonself?
- **19-16** Differentiate an embryonic stem cell from an adult stem cell.
- **19-17** Which type of transplant is most subject to hyperacute rejection?
- **19-18** When red bone marrow is transplanted, many immunocompetent cells are included. How can this be bad?

Immunosuppression to Prevent Transplant Rejection

To keep the problem of transplant rejection in perspective, it is useful to remember that the immune system is simply doing its job and has no way of recognizing that its attack against the transplant is not helpful. In an attempt to prevent rejection, the recipient of an allograft usually receives treatment to suppress this normal immune response against the graft.

In transplantation surgery, it is generally desirable to suppress cell-mediated immunity, the most important factor in transplant rejection. If humoral (antibody-based) immunity is not suppressed, much of the ability to resist microbial infection will remain. In 1976, the drug *cyclosporine* was isolated from a mold, *Tolypocladium inflatum*. Cyclosporine suppresses the secretion of interleukin-2 (IL-2), disrupting cell-mediated immunity by cytotoxic T cells. The successful transplantation of organs such as hearts and livers generally dates from this discovery. Side effects include kidney toxicity and vomiting and diarrhea. Following the success of this drug, other immunosuppressant drugs soon followed. *Tacrolimus* (FK506) has a mechanism similar to that of cyclosporine and is a frequent

CLINICAL CASE

Lymphocytes originate from stem cells in the red bone marrow. From the red bone marrow, the lymphocytes migrate to the thymus gland, where they mature into T cells. Malik was diagnosed with DiGeorge syndrome: a deletion in chromosome 22 that results in the underdevelopment or complete absence of the thymus gland. Malik, without an effective thymus, cannot develop T cells.

What is causing Malik's symptoms?

Part 1 Part 2 **Part 3** Part 4 Part 5

alternative. Serious side effects include increased risk of certain cancers, diabetes, and weight loss.

Neither cyclosporine nor tacrolimus has much effect on antibody production by the humoral immune system. Both of these drugs remain the mainstay for most regimens to prevent rejection of transplants. Other drugs such as *sirolimus* (produced by *Streptomyces hygroscopicus* bacteria) are among those that inhibit both cell-mediated and humoral immunity. This can be an advantage if chronic or hyperacute rejection by antibodies are a consideration. Sirolimus is best known for its use in stents, cylindrical meshes designed to keep blood vessels open after removal of blockages. Drugs such as *Penicillium*-derived *mycophenolate* inhibit the proliferation of T cells and B cells. Biological agents such as the chimeric monoclonal antibody *basiliximab* block IL-2 and are frequently prescribed immunosuppressants. Immunosuppressive agents are usually administered in combinations.

Occasionally, a transplant recipient discontinues using immunosuppressant drugs but, surprisingly, does not reject the transplant. Research has provided an insight into a possible procedure to duplicate this deliberately. In these studies, a patient's immune system was treated before kidney transplantation surgery to deplete the body's supply of immune system T cells, which normally patrol for foreign invaders to attack. The transplanted tissue was then surgically implanted, along with bone marrow cells that had been harvested and stored before the patient's T cells were depleted. The subsequent results were unexpected: the immune system was rebuilt as a chimera—a hybrid mixture of the cells of the donated and patient's own cells. As a consequence, the donated organ was accepted as self and not rejected. This retraining of the immune system often allows the patient to stop taking antirejection drugs less than a year after surgery. A puzzling aspect is that the chimeric state is not permanent; the patient's immune system eventually returns to its original state—but still without rejecting the transplanted tissue. Carried to a logical extreme, this suggests the possibility of eventually using nonhuman organs as transplants.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

19-19 What cytokines are usually the target of immunosuppressant drugs intended to block transplant rejection?

The Immune System and Cancer

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

19-20 Describe how the immune system responds to cancer and how cells evade immune responses.

19-21 Give two examples of immunotherapy for cancer.

Like an infectious disease, cancer represents a failure of the body's defenses, including the immune system. Some of the most promising avenues for effective cancer therapy make use of immunological techniques.

Role of Immune Surveillance in Cancer

It has long been recognized that cancer cells arise frequently in the body and that they are usually eliminated by the immune system much like an invading cell—the concept of **immune surveillance**. It was postulated that the cell-mediated immune system probably arose to combat cancer cells and that the appearance of a cancerous growth represented a failure of the immune system. This concept has been supported by the observation that cancers occur most often in older adults, whose immune systems are becoming less efficient (called *immunosenescence*), or in the very young, whose immune systems may not have developed fully or properly. Also, individuals who are immunosuppressed by either natural or artificial means are more susceptible to certain cancers.

A cell becomes cancerous when it undergoes transformation and begins to proliferate without control (see Chapter 15). The surfaces of tumor cells acquire tumor-associated antigens that mark them as nonself to the immune system. Figure 19.12 illustrates the attack on such a cancer cell by activated CTLs. Activated macrophages and NK cells can also destroy cancer cells. Although a healthy immune system serves to prevent most cancers, it has limitations. In some cases there is no antigenic epitope for the immune system to target. Tumor cells can even reproduce so rapidly that they exceed the capacity of the immune system to deal with them. Finally, some cancerous cells from a metastatic tumor may be transported or reside in a separate location without forming new tumors, in a phenomenon called *latent metastasis* that allows the cancer to become invisible to the immune system.

Immunotherapy for Cancer

Taking advantage of the immune system to prevent or cure cancer led to **immunotherapy**. At the turn of the twentieth

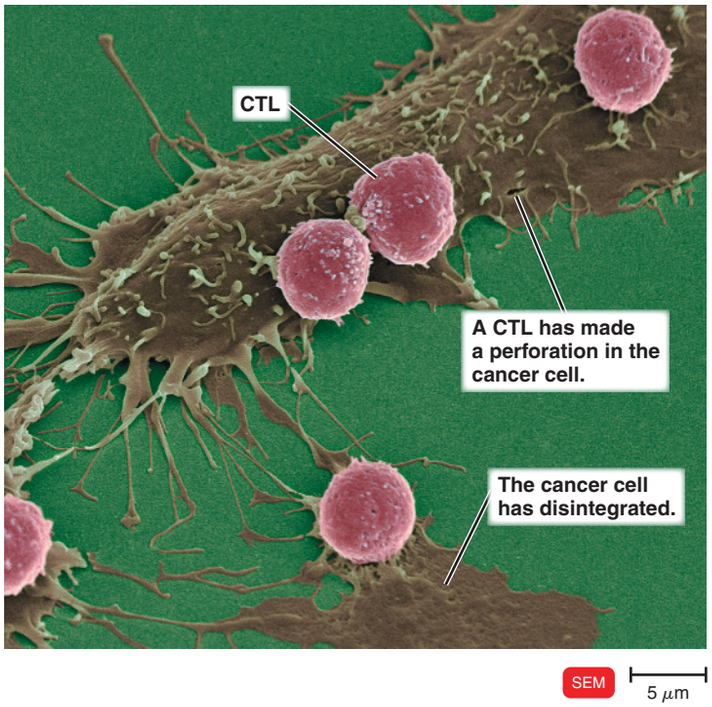


Figure 19.12 The interaction between cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) and cancer cells. The lymphocytes cause apoptosis (self-destruction) of the cancer cell.

Q CTLs can lyse cancer cells. How do they do this? (*Hint:* See Figure 17.13.)

century, William Coley, a physician at a New York City hospital, observed that if cancer patients contracted typhoid fever, their cancers often diminished noticeably. Coley made mixtures of killed gram-positive streptococci and gram-negative *Serratia marcescens* bacteria. These so-called Coley's toxins were injected into cancer patients to simulate a bacterial infection. Some of this work was promising, but results were inconsistent, and advances in surgery and radiation treatment caused it to be nearly forgotten. It is now recognized that endotoxins from gram-negative bacteria are powerful stimulants for the production of TNF-α by macrophages. TNF-α interferes with the blood supply of cancers in animals.

Other research determined many years ago that if animals were injected with dead tumor cells, as with a vaccine, they did not develop tumors when injected with live cells from these tumors. Similarly, cancers sometimes undergo spontaneous remission that is probably related to the immune system gaining the advantage.

Cancer vaccines might be either *therapeutic* (used to treat existing cancers) or *prophylactic* (to prevent development of cancers). A vaccine for strains of the human papilloma virus (HPV) that are linked to cervical, anal, and throat cancer is now part of the recommended childhood immunizations in the United States. A vaccine against the cancer-linked hepatitis B virus (HBV) is also recommended.

An immune therapy for prostate cancer, sipuleucel-T, boosts the patient's immune response. The cancer antigen is attached to the patient's antigen-presenting cells in the lab, and then the cells are injected back into the patient so the antigen will be presented to T cells and spark an immune response.

Monoclonal antibodies are a promising tool for delivering cancer treatment. A humanized Mab, *trastuzumab* (Herceptin®) (see Chapter 18), is currently being used to treat a form of breast cancer. Herceptin® specifically neutralizes a genetically determined growth factor, HER2, that promotes the proliferation of the cancer cells. Mabs may also be used to boost immune response by marking cancer cells as something to attack. Another approach is to combine a Mab with a toxic agent, forming an **immunotoxin**. Theoretically, an immunotoxin might be used to specifically target and kill cells of a tumor with little damage to healthy cells. Adcetris®, a conjugate of the monoclonal antibody *brentuximab* and an attached cytotoxic drug (*vedotin*), treats Hodgkin's lymphoma. There are also radioactively labeled antibodies that attach to cancer cells (called *radioimmunotherapy*). An example is *ibritumomab tiuxetan*, used to treat some types of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Radioactive elements are attached to Mabs, which bind a B cell surface protein, CD20, allowing radiation to kill the cells. More recent is the development of Mabs designed to block signals that turn down T cell activity. In a typical immune response, these signals are necessary to prevent further responses when antigen is cleared from the body. These so-called checkpoint blockade antibodies, Keytruda® (pembrolizumab) and Yervoy® (ipilimumab), are designed to keep T cells in the fight against tumor cells.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **19-20** How do immune-system cells recognize cancerous cells?
- **19-21** Give an example of a prophylactic cancer vaccine that is in current use.

Immunodeficiencies

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

19-22 Compare and contrast congenital and acquired immunodeficiencies.

The absence of a sufficient immune response is called an **immunodeficiency**. It can be either congenital or acquired.

Congenital Immunodeficiencies

Some people are born with an abnormal immune system. Defects in, or absence of, a number of genes can result in **congenital immunodeficiencies** (also known as **primary immunodeficiencies**). These can affect complement, phagocytes, B cells, T cells, or a combination of the various immune system actors. For example, individuals with the recessive trait known as DiGeorge syndrome do not have a thymus gland, so they lack cell-mediated immunity. Nude (hairless) mice are a type of animal used in transplantation research that also lack a thymus gland (Figure 19.13). Hairless because the deleted gene coincidentally controls both thymus and hair development, these mice cannot produce T cells, and so they do not reject transplanted tissue. Even chicken skin, complete with feathers, is readily accepted as a graft by these animals in the lab.

Acquired Immunodeficiencies

A variety of drugs, cancers, or infectious agents can result in **acquired immunodeficiencies (secondary immunodeficiencies)**. For example, Hodgkin's lymphoma (a type of cancer) lowers the cell-mediated response. Many viruses infect and kill lymphocytes, lowering the immune response. Removal of the spleen decreases humoral immunity. Table 19.5 summarizes several of the better-known immune deficiency conditions, including AIDS.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

19-22 Is AIDS an acquired or a congenital immunodeficiency?

Figure 19.13 A nude (hairless) mouse that has received a tumor graft. Immunodeficient mouse models like this have been used to study xenografts. The researcher is anesthetizing the mouse to remove tumor cells.

Q What is the role of the thymus gland in immunity?

TABLE 19.5 Selected Immunodeficiencies

Disease	Cells Affected	Comments
Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)	Virus destroys $CD4^+$ T cells	Allows cancer and bacterial, viral, fungal, and protozoan diseases; caused by HIV infection
Selective IgA immunodeficiency	B, T cells	Affects about 1 in 700, causing frequent mucosal infections; specific cause uncertain
Common variable hypogammaglobulinemia	B, T cells (decreased immunoglobulins)	Frequent viral and bacterial infections; second-most-common immune deficiency, affecting about 1 in 70,000; inherited
Reticular dysgenesis	B, T, and stem cells (a combined immunodeficiency; deficiencies in B and T cells and neutrophils)	Usually fatal in early infancy; very rare; inherited; bone marrow transplant a possible treatment
Severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID)	B, T, and stem cells (deficiency of both B and T cells)	Affects about 1 in 100,000; allows severe infections; inherited; treated with bone marrow and fetal thymus transplants; gene therapy treatment is promising
Thymic aplasia (DiGeorge syndrome)	T cells (defective thymus causes deficiency of T cells)	Absence of cell-mediated immunity; usually fatal in infancy from *Pneumocystis* pneumonia or viral or fungal infections; due to failure of the thymus to develop in embryo
Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome	B, T cells (few platelets in blood, abnormal T cells)	Frequent infections by viruses, fungi, protozoa; eczema, defective blood clotting; usually causes death in childhood; inherited on X chromosome
X-linked infantile (Bruton's) agammaglobulinemia	B cells (decreased immunoglobulins)	Frequent extracellular bacterial infections; affects about 1 in 379,000; the first immunodeficiency disorder recognized (1952); inherited on X chromosome

CLINICAL CASE

Without T cells, Malik lacks an effective immune system. The transfused blood contained immunologically competent lymphocytes that a healthy immune system would have destroyed. In Malik's case, the transfused T cells and B cells survived, saw Malik as nonself, and attacked his tissues, resulting in life-threatening transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease (ta-GVHD). A key treatment for GVHD involves blocking the activation of transfused T cells using monoclonal antibodies. One such Mab, called muromonab-CD3 (Mab-CD3), blocks this TCR-associated complex, CD3, necessary for signaling T cell activation. Mabs such as these are often used to prevent the rejection of tissues and organs as well as to treat GVHD.

What role does the monoclonal antibody play in Malik's recovery? (Hint: See Chapter 18.)

Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS)

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

19-23 Give two examples of how infectious diseases emerge.
19-24 Explain the attachment of HIV to a host cell.
19-25 List two ways in which HIV avoids the host's antibodies.
19-26 Describe the stages of HIV infection.
19-27 Describe the effects of HIV infection on the immune system.
19-28 Describe how HIV infection is diagnosed.
19-29 List the routes of HIV transmission.
19-30 Identify geographic patterns of HIV transmission.
19-31 List the current methods of preventing and treating HIV infection.

In 1981, a cluster of cases of *Pneumocystis* pneumonia appeared in the Los Angeles area. Investigators soon correlated the appearance of this infrequently seen disease with an unusual incidence of a rare form of cancer of the skin and blood vessels called Kaposi's sarcoma. The people affected were all young adult males who engaged in sexual activity with other males, and all showed a loss of immune function. By 1983, the pathogen causing the loss of immune function had been identified as a virus that selectively infects T helper (CD4+) cells. This virus is *Lentivirus human immunodeficiency virus*, or *HIV* (see Figure 13.20b).

The Origin of AIDS

Studies show that HIV-1 (the primary HIV found worldwide in humans) is genetically related to another species, *Lentivirus simian immunodeficiency virus* (SIV), which is carried by monkeys, mangabeys, and chimpanzees in central Africa. The most commonly accepted theory of the origin of AIDS is that humans in this part of Africa ate SIV-infected bushmeat (wild game), allowing the virus to cross over into people. Researchers have analyzed HIV-infected tissue samples from the last 50 years and have determined that a common ancestor virus existed in Kinshasa, Democratic Republic of the Congo, around 1920. Availability of transportation links, high populations of migrants, and the sex trade in Kinshasa might explain the initial spread of HIV. The virus was probably introduced into other areas of the world several times before it spread widely. Although AIDS was not recognized as a clinical syndrome until 1981, isolated cases have since been documented outside Africa from before then. Frozen tissue samples of a Missouri patient who died in 1969 confirmed HIV infection. In 1974, a Norwegian sailor, his wife, and daughter all died of what was later confirmed as HIV/AIDS. The sailor had traveled to West Africa before returning home and marrying.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

19-23 On what continent did the HIV-1 virus arise?

HIV Infection

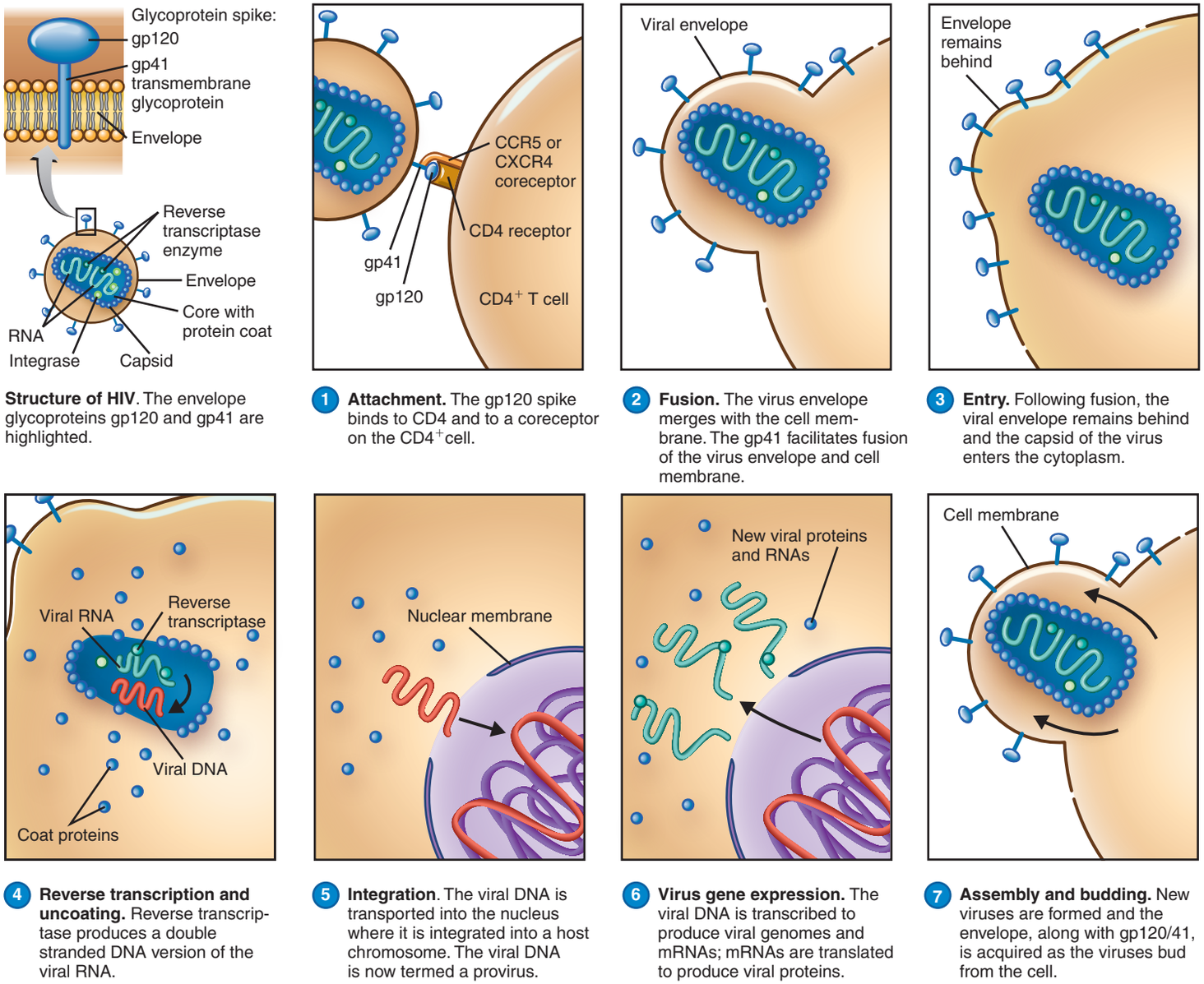
The Structure of HIV

HIV, of the genus *Lentivirus*, is a retrovirus (see Figure 13.19). It has two identical + stranded RNA molecules, the enzymes reverse transcriptase and integrase, and an envelope of phospholipid (**Figure 19.14**). The envelope has glycoprotein spikes termed **gp120** (the notation for a glycoprotein with a molecular mass of 120,000 Da) and **gp41**.

The Infectiveness and Pathogenicity of HIV

There is a strong association between HIV infection and the immune system. HIV is often spread by dendritic cells that reside in mucosal linings, which pick up the virus and carry it to the lymphoid organs. There it contacts cells of the immune system, most notably $CD4^+$ T cells, and stimulates an initial strong immune response.

To persist and multiply, HIV must go through the steps of host cell attachment, fusion, and entry in a manner similar to what is shown in Figure 19.14. Attachment depends on the virus's glycoprotein spike (gp120) combining with the CD4 receptor of the virus's preferred target—a T helper cell. Approximately 65,000 of these receptors are found on each T helper cell. The attachment and entry of the virus also requires a coreceptor. Two coreceptors, which normally serve as receptors



Structure of HIV. The envelope glycoproteins gp120 and gp41 are highlighted.

1 **Attachment.** The gp120 spike binds to CD4 and to a coreceptor on the $CD4^+$ cell.

2 **Fusion.** The virus envelope merges with the cell membrane. The gp41 facilitates fusion of the virus envelope and cell membrane.

3 **Entry.** Following fusion, the viral envelope remains behind and the capsid of the virus enters the cytoplasm.

4 **Reverse transcription and uncoating.** Reverse transcriptase produces a double stranded DNA version of the viral RNA.

5 **Integration**. The viral DNA is transported into the nucleus where it is integrated into a host chromosome. The viral DNA is now termed a provirus.

6 **Virus gene expression.** The viral DNA is transcribed to produce viral genomes and mRNAs; mRNAs are translated to produce viral proteins.

7 **Assembly and budding.** New viruses are formed and the envelope, along with gp120/41, is acquired as the viruses bud from the cell.

Figure 19.14 HIV attachment to and replication in a T cell.

Q Why does HIV preferentially infect $CD4^+$ cells?

for chemokines, have been identified: CCR5 and CXCR4.* Macrophages and dendritic cells also bear CD4 and coreceptor molecules so are also susceptible to HIV infection. Note that many cells that do not express the CD4 molecule can also become infected, an indication that other receptors can also serve for infection by HIV. Attachment causes a change in gp41, which leads to fusion of the cell membrane and viral envelope.

Once inside the host cell, viral RNA is released and reverse transcribed by reverse transcriptase to form a DNA version of the viral genome. The viral DNA then becomes integrated with the host's DNA with the help of viral integrase. The integrated DNA (called a *provirus*) may control the production of an active infection in which new viruses bud from the host cell.

Alternatively, the virus may assume a *latent* infection in which HIV produced by a host cell is not necessarily released from the cell but may remain in vacuoles within the cell. In fact, a subset of the HIV-infected cells, instead of being killed, become long-lived memory T cells in which the reservoir of latent HIV can persist for decades. This ability of the virus to

*This nomenclature is based on the beginning amino acid sequence in these proteins. The term CCR5 indicates that the beginning sequence consists of cysteines in the chemokine, thus CC. The letter R refers to receptor, and the number is for identification. If some other amino acid is located between the first two cysteines, this is shown in the naming—for example, CXCR4.

remain as a latent virus within host cells shelters it from the immune system. Another way HIV evades the immune system is *cell–cell fusion*, by which the virus moves from an infected cell to an adjacent uninfected cell.

The virus also evades immune defenses by undergoing rapid antigenic changes. Retroviruses, with their reverse transcriptase enzyme step, have a high mutation rate compared to DNA viruses. They also lack the corrective "proofreading" capacity of DNA viruses. As a result, new variants of HIV abound, complicating the development of vaccines and causing problems related to drug resistance.

The Stages of HIV Infection

The progress of HIV infection in adults can be divided into three clinical phases (Figure 19.15).

Phase 1 The number of viral RNA molecules per milliliter of blood plasma may reach more than 10 million in the first week or so, during the acute infection stage (review Figure 13.21). Billions of $CD4^+$ T cells may be infected within a few weeks, lowering their numbers. Immune responses, and fewer uninfected cells to target, deplete the viral numbers in blood plasma sharply within a few weeks. The infection may be asymptomatic or cause *lymphadenopathy* (swollen lymph nodes).

Phase 2 The numbers of $CD4^+$ T cells decline steadily. HIV replication continues but at a relatively low level, probably controlled by $CD8^+$ T cells; it occurs mainly in lymphatic tissue. Only a relatively few infected cells release HIV, although many may contain viruses in latent form. There are few disease symptoms, but persistent infections by the yeast *Candida albicans*, which can appear in the mouth, throat, or vagina, may signal a decline in immune response. Other conditions may include fever and persistent diarrhea. Oral leukoplakia (whitish patches on oral mucosa), which results from reactivation of latent Epstein-Barr viruses, may appear, as well as other indications of declining immunity, such as shingles.

Phase 3 In clinical AIDS, $CD4^+$ T cell counts fall below 200 cells/μl, and susceptibility to opportunistic infections is high. (The normal population in a healthy individual is 500 to 1500 $CD4^+$ T cells/μl.) Important AIDS indicator conditions appear, such as *C. albicans* infections of bronchi, trachea, or lungs; cytomegalovirus eye infections; tuberculosis; *Pneumocystis* pneumonia; toxoplasmosis of the brain; and Kaposi's sarcoma. HIV infection devastates the immune system, which is then unable to respond effectively to pathogens. The diseases or conditions most commonly associated with AIDS are summarized in Table 19.6. Success in treating these conditions has extended the lives of many people with AIDS.

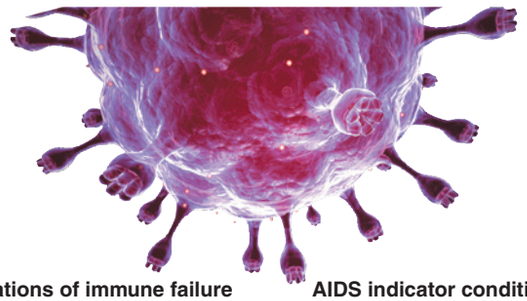
TABLE 19.6 Some Diseases Commonly Associated with AIDS

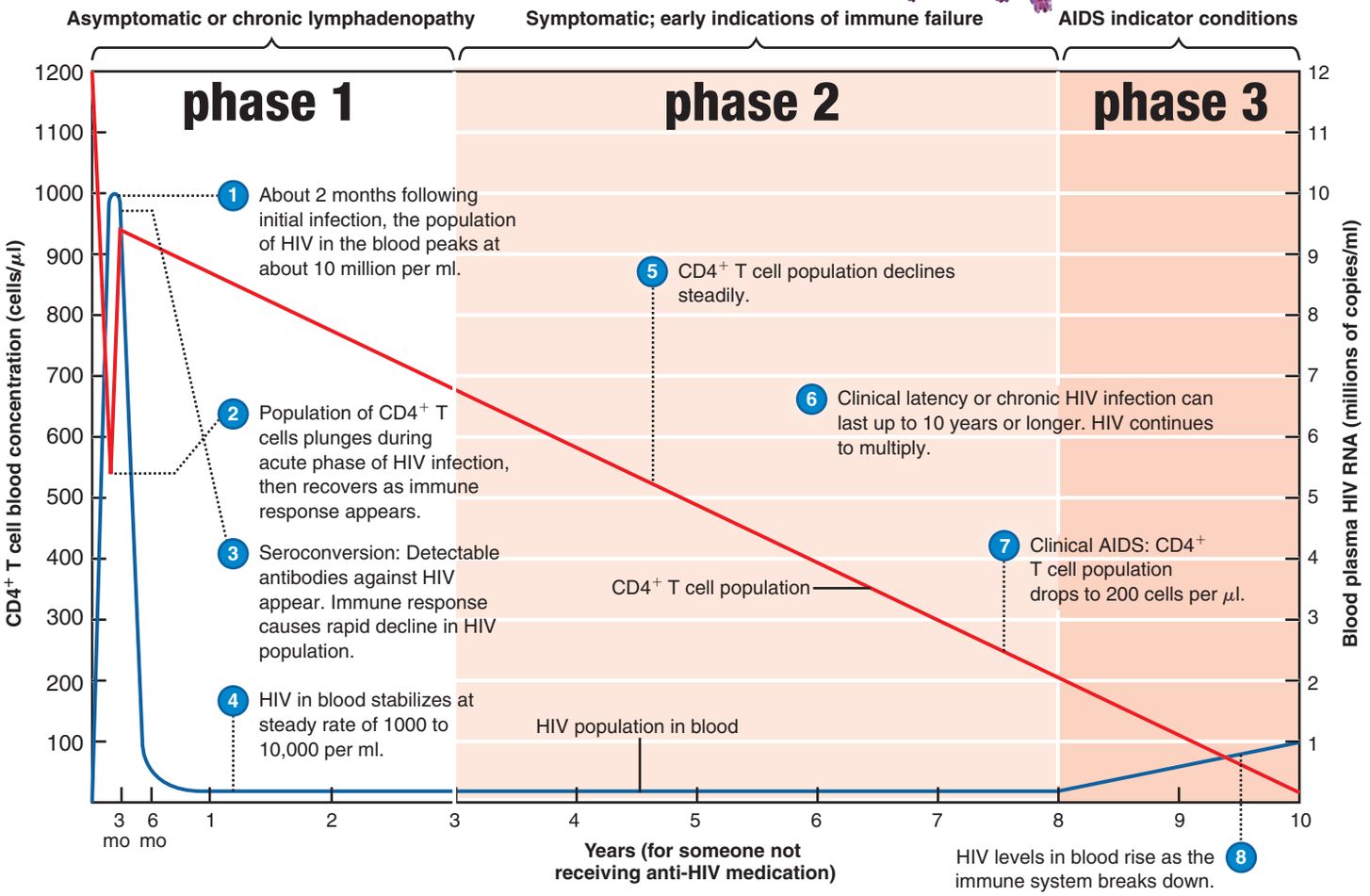
Pathogen or Disease	Disease Description
PROTOZOA	
Cryptosporidium hominis	Persistent diarrhea
Toxoplasma gondii	Encephalitis
Cystoisospora belli	Gastroenteritis
VIRUSES	
Cytomegalovirus Human betaherpesvirus 5 (HHV-5)	Fever, encephalitis, blindness
Simplexvirus Human alphaherpesvirus 2 (HHV-2)	Vesicles of skin and mucous membranes
Varicellovirus Human alphaherpesvirus 3 (HHV-3)	Shingles
BACTERIA	
Mycobacterium tuberculosis	Tuberculosis
M. avium complex	May infect many organs; gastroenteritis and other highly variable symptoms
FUNGI	
Pneumocystis jirovecii	Life-threatening pneumonia
Histoplasma capsulatum	Disseminated infection
Cryptococcus neoformans	Disseminated, but especially meningitis
Candida albicans	Overgrowth on oral and vaginal mucous membranes (phase 2 of HIV infection)
C. albicans	Overgrowth in esophagus, lungs (phase 3 of HIV infection)
CANCERS OR PRECANCEROUS CONDITIONS	
Kaposi's sarcoma	Cancer of skin and blood vessels (caused by HHV-8)
Hairy leukoplakia	Whitish patches on mucous membranes; commonly considered precancerous
Cervical dysplasia	Abnormal cervical growth

FOUNDATION FIGURE 19.15

The Progression of HIV Infection

Understanding how the HIV infection progresses in a host is integral to understanding the diagnosis, transmission, and prevention of this pandemic. Although there is no cure, see information below on drug treatments.





KEY CONCEPTS

- HIV progresses as it destroys the CD4+ T cells essential for the body's defenses against infectious disease and cancer.
- AIDS is the final stage in this progressive infection.

MICRO TIP

Although there is no cure for HIV, combinations of anti-HIV medications (antiretroviral therapy) are the recommended treatment. Under current treatments available, transmission rates are less than 1% if treatment is followed properly. The medications work in a variety of ways: disabling or stopping viral enzymes from making more copies of HIV, disrupting building blocks needed for viral replication, or blocking entry of the virus into cells.

HIV Positive versus AIDS Disease Status

During phases 1 and 2 of the infection, patients are classified as HIV-positive. During phase 3, patients are classified as having AIDS. The purpose of dividing patients into these categories is primarily to furnish treatment guidelines on when to administer certain drugs. In the United States, antiretroviral therapy is recommended for all HIV-positive individuals. T cell population counts, performed regularly, are indicators of progression of disease.

The progression from initial HIV infection to AIDS usually takes about 10 years in adults without treatment in industrialized countries; in countries where health care access is limited, it is often about half this. Cellular warfare on an immense scale occurs during this time. Untreated, at least 100 billion HIV particles are generated every day, each with a remarkably short half-life of about 6 hours. These viruses must be cleared by the body's defenses, which include antibodies, cytotoxic T cells, and macrophages. Almost all of the virions are produced by infected $CD4^+$ T cells, which survive for only about 2 days instead of the normal life span of several years. Every day, about 2 billion $CD4^+$ T cells are produced in an attempt to compensate for losses. Over time, however, there is a daily net loss of at least 20 million $CD4^+$ T cells. The most recent studies show that the decrease in $CD4^+$ T cells is not due entirely to direct viral destruction of the cells; rather, it is caused primarily by shortened life of the cells and the body's failure to compensate by increasing production of replacement T cells.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **19-24** What is the primary receptor on host cells to which HIV attaches?
- **19-25** Would an antibody against the coat of HIV be able to react with a provirus?
- **19-26** Would a $CD4^+$ T cell count of 300/μl be diagnostic of AIDS?
- **19-27** Which cells of the immune system are the main target of an HIV infection?

Diagnostic Methods

The CDC recommends routine screening for HIV infections. Recommendations for screening vary based on risk of exposure, from once in a lifetime to every 6 months for people who engage in high-risk behaviors (people with multiple sex partners, or those who use intravenous street drugs). The standard procedure for detecting HIV antibodies has been blood tests to detect HIV antibodies. There are now several relatively inexpensive, rapid tests available for HIV screening that are used in point-of-care clinics, including in regions with limited resources. The tests use urine or fingerstick amounts of blood, and the OraQuick Advance® test can even use an oral swab to check for IgG and IgM antibodies against HIV-1 and HIV-2. These tests return results in 20 to 30 minutes. An estimated 13% of HIV-positive Americans do not realize they are infected; this lack of knowledge fuels the spread of the disease. Positive screening tests for antibodies must be confirmed by additional testing, usually by the Western blot test (discussed in Chapter 18).

A problem with antibody-type testing is the window of time between infection and the appearance of detectable antibodies, or **seroconversion**. This interval, which can be as long as 3 months, is illustrated in step 3 of Figure 19.15, where seroconversion follows the peak number of viruses in circulation. Because of this delay, the recipient of an organ transplant or a blood transfusion can become infected with HIV even though antibody tests did not show the presence of the virus in the donor.

Additions to the Western blot confirmatory test include nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs). For example, instead of using antibodies, the APTIMA® assay detects the RNA of the HIV-1 virus using real-time PCR, and it is easier to read than the Western blot test. This test can also be used to detect early HIV infections, before appearance of antibodies. Its sensitivity is comparable to tests used to measure **plasma viral load (PVL)** in the blood of patients to monitor the treatment and progression of AIDS. Conventional PVL tests that detect viral RNA use methods such as PCR, are costly, and require 2 or 3 days to complete. These tests can detect viral RNA 10–15 days post-HIV exposure with 90% accuracy. To ensure safety of the blood supply as much as possible, the American Red Cross routinely tests for anti-HIV antibody and utilizes NAAT for viral HIV.

A caution to keep in mind in testing for HIV is that current tests may not reliably detect all of the myriad variants of rapidly mutating HIV, especially subtypes that are not normally present in a population. Furthermore, PVL tests sample only the virions circulating in the blood, which is very low compared to the estimated several hundred billion HIV-infected cells.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **19-28** What form of nucleic acid is detected in a PVL test for HIV?

HIV Transmission

The transmission of HIV requires the transfer of, or direct contact with, infected cells and body fluids. The two most important fluids in terms of infection risk are blood, which contains 1000 to 100,000 infective viruses per milliliter, and semen, which contains about 10 to 50 viruses per milliliter. HIV is often located within cells in these fluids, especially in macrophages. Saliva generally contains less than 1 virus per milliliter, and kissing is not known to transmit HIV. The virus

can survive more than 1.5 days inside a cell but only about 6 hours outside a cell. In developed countries, transmission by transfusion is unlikely because blood is tested for HIV or HIV antibodies.

Routes of HIV transmission include sexual contact, breast milk, transplacental infection of a fetus, blood-contaminated needles, organ transplants, artificial insemination, and blood transfusion. The risk of infection from needlestick injury is 3 out of 1000, or 0.3%. Avoiding exposure is the health care worker's first line of defense against HIV. The CDC has developed the strategy of following *universal precautions* in *all* health care settings.

Probably the most high-risk form of sexual contact for HIV infection is anal-receptive intercourse. These tissues are much more vulnerable to transmission of disease organisms. Vaginal intercourse is much more likely to transmit HIV from male to female than vice versa, and transmission either way is much greater when genital lesions are present. Although rare, transmission can occur by oral-genital contact.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

19-29 What is considered to be the most dangerous form of sexual contact for transmission of HIV?

AIDS Worldwide

Approximately 38 million people are infected with, and living with, HIV today (Figure 19.16). An estimated 67% of these are in Africa, including the majority of the world's HIV-infected children. Asia and the Pacific also have a high number of cases, an estimated 5.8 million. In Western Europe and the United States, the mortality from AIDS has decreased because of the availability of effective antiviral drugs.

Worldwide, heterosexual intercourse is the most common mode of HIV transmission. High-risk sexual behavior and street drug use contribute to the spread of HIV/AIDS. Currently, one-third of all HIV infections in eastern Europe and central and southeast Asia are by street drug use. These infections are also important as a bridge leading to sexual transmission.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

19-30 What is the most common mode, worldwide, by which HIV is transmitted?

Preventing and Treating AIDS

At present, for most of the world the only practical means of controlling AIDS is to minimize transmission. *Biomedical interventions* include condoms, health services, HIV testing, and needle programs. Examples of *behavioral intervention* include sex education, safe infant feeding programs, and counseling. *Structural interventions* focus on making change in social, economic, political, and environmental factors that make individuals or groups vulnerable to HIV.

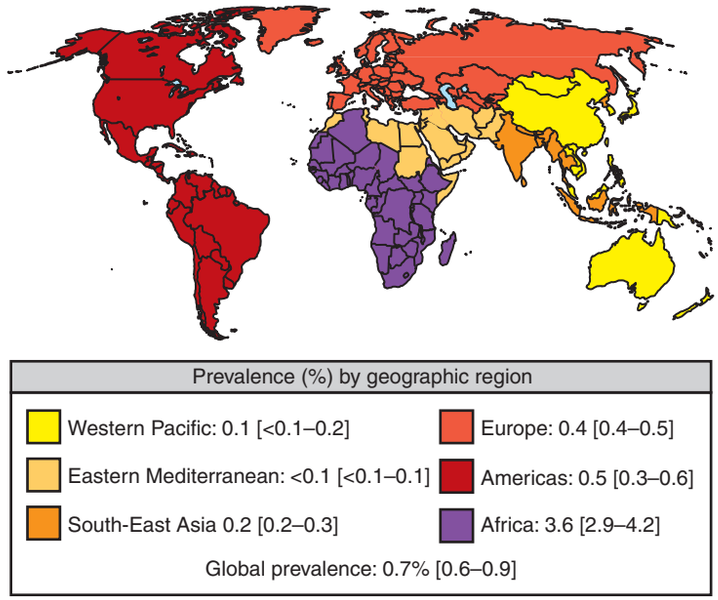


Figure 19.16 Distribution of HIV infection and AIDS in regions of the world. Shows percentage of adults (ages 15–49) living with HIV/AIDS in 2020.

Q Where do you think the most accurate figures would be available?

Preexposure prophylaxis (PrEP) and **postexposure prophylaxis (PEP)** for HIV are used to prevent infection after a recent exposure. PrEP and PEP use drug combinations that are also used in HIV treatment. For example, Truvada® is a combination of tenofovir and emtricitabine. The treatment requires strict adherence to daily dosages of this medication to lower the chance of getting infected.

Antiretroviral Therapy (ART)

The rapid reproductive rate of HIV, the frequent occurrence of drug-resistant mutations, and the persistence of latent viral reservoirs dictate that multiple drugs, given simultaneously, must be used. The current treatment is termed **highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART)**. Even so, resistant strains of the virus are likely to emerge. In the United States, the majority of people with AIDS receive multiple-drug therapy to minimize survival of resistant strains. The drugs are commonly combined in a single pill to simplify administration. If the effective drugs are interrupted or discontinued, the virus rebounds rapidly. Research into the reproductive mechanisms of HIV has increased the number of potential targets for chemical intervention. Figure 19.17 shows the major types and some of the drugs available.

Cell Entry Inhibitors For infection to occur, the virus must attach to the cell's CD4 receptors; an interplay between the gp120 spike on the virus and the coreceptor (such as CCR5)

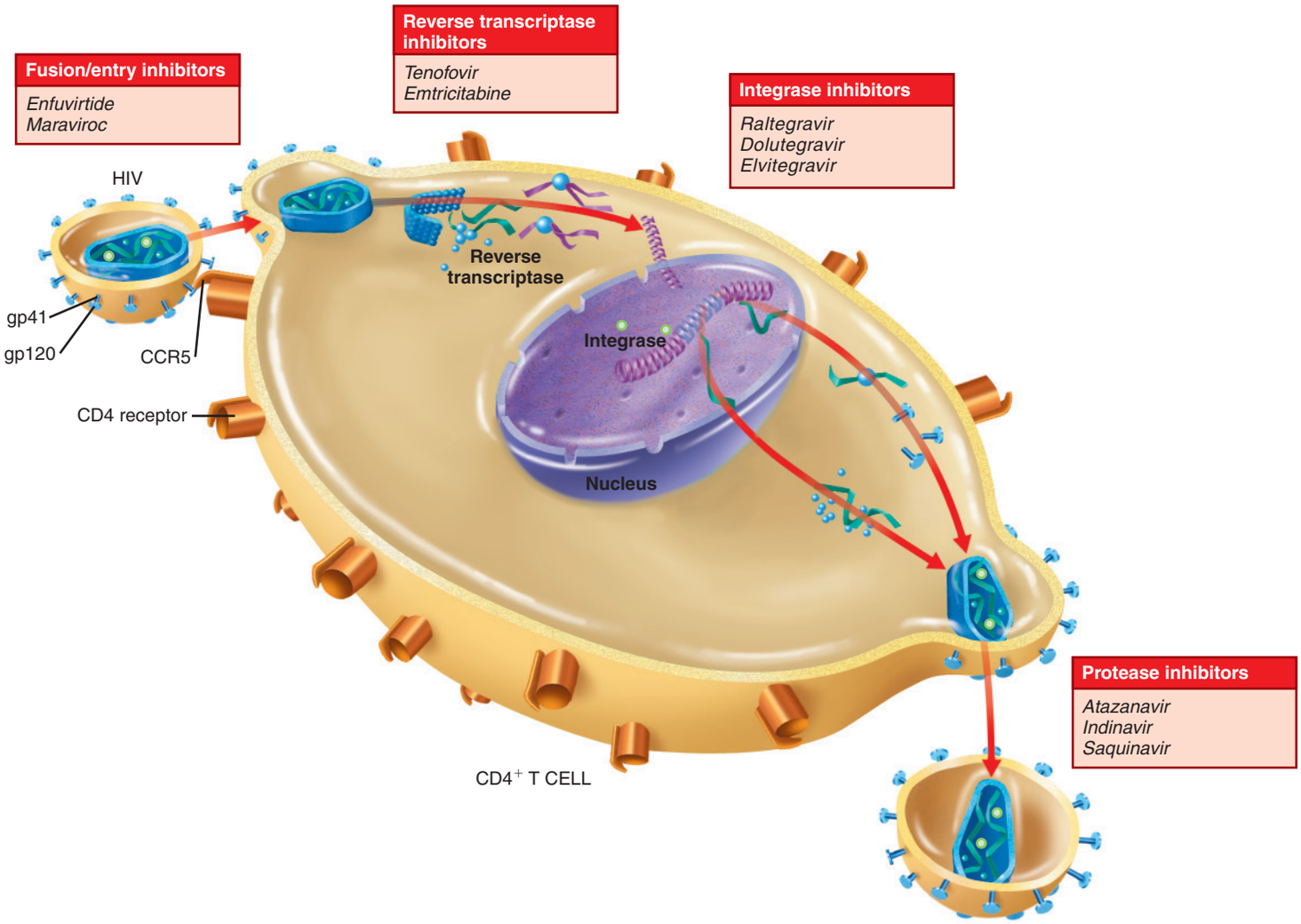


Figure 19.17 Drugs that inhibit the HIV infection cycle. The sites of action of antiretroviral drugs are shown.

Q Why does a drug that binds to CCR5 on the host cell prevent viral reproduction?

must occur; and finally, there must be a fusion with the cell to allow viral entry. Drugs to block these steps are grouped as *cell entry inhibitors*; some of the drugs of this group target the gp41 region of the viral envelope, which facilitates fusion. An example is *enfuvirtide*, which is expensive and requires daily injections. Another cell entry inhibitor is *maraviroc*, which blocks the chemokine receptor CCR5 to which HIV must bind. Trials are in progress to produce patient immune cells that lack CCR5. These cells would resist HIV attachment and thus infection.

Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors After virus fusion with the host cell, reverse transcription from the RNA genome produces a double-stranded cDNA copy of the HIV genome. The first target of anti-HIV drugs was the enzyme reverse transcriptase, which is not present in human cells. There are currently 13 different FDA-approved inhibitors in this category, including *emtricitabine*. In fact, the term **antiretroviral** has come to imply a drug that is used to treat HIV infections. The *nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs)* are analogs of nucleosides and cause the termination of viral DNA by competitive inhibition. There are other drugs that inhibit reverse transcription that are not analogs of nucleic acids; these are the so-called *non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs)*.

One particularly successful application of chemotherapy has been reducing transmission of HIV from an infected mother to her fetus during pregnancy and childbirth, and to her infant through breastfeeding. The administration of even one NRTI drug greatly reduces transmission.

Integrase Inhibitors After reverse transcription, the cDNA of the HIV enters the nucleus. There the cDNA must be integrated into the host chromosome to form the HIV provirus. This step requires an enzyme, HIV integrase, which is a target for drugs called *integrase inhibitors*. *Raltegravir*, *dolutegravir*, and *elvitegravir* are examples.

Protease Inhibitors A third enzyme target is HIV proteases. Proteases perform the essential process of cleaving lengthy viral precursor proteins into smaller, mature structural proteins (such as the capsid proteins) and functional proteins (such as enzymes). Most of this occurs as the virus is budding from the cell membrane and shortly thereafter. *Protease inhibitor* drugs such as *atazanavir*, *indinavir*, and *saquinavir* have proved especially effective when combined with reverse transcriptase inhibitors.

There are several other targets for which drugs are being developed. For example, some **maturation inhibitors** affect conversion of a precursor of capsid protein to mature capsid protein, resulting in an aberrant capsid that renders the virus noninfectious. Other potential drugs are **tetherins**, which tether the newly formed virus to the cell, preventing release and spread. Research will probably reveal new targets and chemotherapeutic agents affecting them. Especially important is the need to find drugs that can eradicate the virus in its latent reservoirs. Gene therapy and gene editing are being explored to combat HIV.

The Challenges of Developing HIV Vaccines

Drugs have extended the lives of millions, but they have had little effect on ending the pandemic. Overcoming AIDS likely requires a preventive vaccine—something that so far eludes researchers. Many unsuccessful HIV vaccine trials have come and gone over the decades. One challenge is that there is no model of natural immunity to mimic with a vaccine because, so far, not one of the millions of people infected by the virus has ever been shown to successfully eradicate HIV via the immune system. The use of attenuated viruses is possible in certain vaccines, but for HIV it is too dangerous an option. Retroviruses also quickly integrate themselves into the DNA of the host cell and then may remain latent, meaning that the antigenic qualities of HIV are largely invisible to the immune system most of the time. Clinical trials of gp120 subunit vaccines have not been successful. The antigenic region of gp120 is hidden on the virus rendering neutralizing antibodies ineffective.

HIV's high mutation rate complicates matters as well. The virus developed clades that differ substantially from one geographic area to another, making vaccine development that much more difficult.

Ideally, a vaccine would induce the formation of antibodies that prevent infection. However, in natural HIV infections, neutralizing antibodies develop rather slowly, appearing 2 months or so after transmission. By the time the immune system produces effective numbers of these antibodies, the target envelope protein of the HIV has mutated and eludes neutralization. Moreover, the ability of HIV to elude immune defenses by infecting new cells by cell-to-cell fusion contrasts with almost all other viral infections and is a challenge to any vaccine.

In short, any successful HIV vaccine will likely require a fundamentally different approach to vaccine development. An HIV vaccine would have to induce immunity before reservoirs of latent virus are established—this usually occurs within 5 to 10 days of infection. In fact, a potential target for vaccination might be to prevent or regulate latency. It would also have to stimulate production of cytotoxic T cells that are more effective than those usually produced in response to a natural infection. Finally, an HIV vaccine would have to be affordable in all regions where infection rates are high. All these factors make the development of an HIV vaccine an extremely difficult task. One creative vaccine currently in phase 1 clinical trials takes advantage of changes that occur in the gp120 envelope protein during HIV attachment. When gp120 binds CD4, it shifts its shape, exposing highly conserved "CD4-induced" epitopes, some of which allow binding to the coreceptor (CXCR5 or CCR5), triggering membrane fusion and viral entry. This gp120 subunit vaccine is engineered to contain these conserved epitopes such that the antibodies generated in response to the vaccine may be effective at blocking fusion. Moreover, because these are conserved, it is expected the antibodies will be effective against multiple variants of HIV.

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

Once the autoimmune rejection condition is recognized, Malik is successfully treated with Mab-CD3. This drug binds the T cell receptor–CD3 complex on the surface of circulating T cells, preventing the T cells from attacking host cells. Malik also receives cyclosporine, which suppresses IL-2 secretions—an essential chemical messenger in discrimination between self and nonself. If Malik had been diagnosed with DiGeorge syndrome before his transfusion, the blood would have been irradiated to destroy the white blood cells in it, preventing his reaction. Malik recovers from the GVHD, but he will eventually need a thymus transplant.

Part 1 | Part 2 | Part 3 | Part 4 | **Part 5**

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

19-31 Why are reverse transcriptase, integrase, and proteases good targets for HIV chemotherapy?

Study Outline

Introduction (p. 528)

1. Hay fever, transplant rejection, and autoimmunity are examples of harmful immune reactions.
2. Immunosuppression is inhibition of the immune system.

Hypersensitivity (pp. 529–540)

1. Hypersensitivity reactions occur when a person has been sensitized to an antigen.
2. Hypersensitivity reactions represent immunological responses to an antigen (allergen) that lead to tissue damage rather than immunity.
3. Hypersensitivity reactions can be divided into four classes: types I, II, and III are immediate reactions based on humoral immunity, and type IV is a delayed reaction based on cell-mediated immunity.

Allergies and the Microbiome (p. 529)

4. Childhood exposure to microbes may decrease development of allergies.

Type I (Anaphylactic) Reactions (pp. 529–534)

5. Anaphylactic reactions involve the production of IgE antibodies that bind to mast cells and basophils to sensitize the host.
6. The binding of two adjacent IgE antibodies to an antigen causes the target cell to release chemical mediators, such as histamine, leukotrienes, and prostaglandins, which cause the observed allergic reactions.
7. Systemic anaphylaxis may develop in minutes after injection or ingestion of the antigen; this may result in circulatory collapse and death.
8. Localized anaphylaxis is exemplified by hives, hay fever, and asthma.
9. Skin testing is useful in determining sensitivity to an antigen.
10. Desensitization to an antigen can be achieved by repeated injections of the antigen, which leads to the formation of blocking (IgG) antibodies.

Type II (Cytotoxic) Reactions (pp. 535–538)

11. Type II reactions are mediated by IgG or IgM antibodies and complement.
12. The antibodies are directed toward foreign cells or host cells. Complement fixation may result in cell lysis. Macrophages and other cells may also damage the antibody-coated cells.
13. Human blood may be grouped into four principal types, designated A, B, AB, and O.
14. The presence or absence of two carbohydrate antigens designated A and B on the surface of the red blood cell determines a person's blood type.
15. Naturally occurring antibodies against A and B antigens may be present in serum, depending on blood type.
16. Incompatible blood transfusions lead to the complement-mediated lysis of the donor red blood cells.
17. The absence of the Rh antigen in certain individuals (Rh^-) can lead to sensitization upon exposure to it.
18. When an Rh^- person receives Rh^+ blood, that person will produce anti-Rh antibodies. Subsequent exposure to Rh^+ cells will result in a rapid, serious hemolytic reaction.
19. An Rh^- mother carrying an Rh^+ fetus will produce anti-Rh antibodies. Subsequent pregnancies involving Rh incompatibility may result in hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDNB).
20. HDNB may be prevented by passive immunization of the mother with anti-Rh antibodies.
21. In immune thrombocytopenic purpura, platelets are destroyed by antibodies and complement.
22. Agranulocytosis and hemolytic anemia result from antibodies against the individual's own blood cells coated with drug molecules.

Type III (Immune Complex) Reactions (pp. 538–539)

23. Immune complex diseases occur when IgG antibodies and soluble antigen form small complexes that lodge in the basement membranes of cells.
24. Subsequent complement fixation results in inflammation.
25. Glomerulonephritis is an immune complex disease.

Type IV (Delayed Cell-Mediated) Reactions (pp. 539–540)

26. Delayed cell-mediated hypersensitivity reactions are due primarily to T cell proliferation.
27. Sensitized T cells secrete cytokines in response to the appropriate antigen.
28. Cytokines attract and activate macrophages and initiate tissue damage.
29. The tuberculin skin test and allergic contact dermatitis are examples of delayed hypersensitivities.

Autoimmune Diseases (pp. 540–542)

1. Autoimmunity results from a loss of self-tolerance.
2. Self-tolerance occurs during fetal development; T cells that will target host cells are eliminated through thymic selection (clonal deletion).
3. The immune system attacks the myelin sheath of nerves in multiple sclerosis.
4. Systemic lupus erythematosus, rheumatoid arthritis, Graves' disease, and myasthenia gravis are immune complex autoimmune diseases.
5. Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus and psoriasis are cell-mediated autoimmune reactions.

Reactions to Transplantation (pp. 542–546)

1. MHC self molecules located on cell surfaces express genetic differences among individuals; these antigens are called HLAs in humans.
2. To prevent the rejection of transplants, HLA and ABO blood group antigens of the donor and recipient are matched as closely as possible.
3. Transplants recognized as foreign antigens may be lysed by T cells and attacked by macrophages and complement-fixing antibodies.
4. Transplantation to a privileged site (such as the cornea) or of a privileged tissue (such as pig heart valves) does not cause an immune response.
5. Pluripotent stem cells differentiate into a variety of tissues that may provide tissues for transplant.

6. Four types of transplants have been defined on the basis of genetic relationships between the donor and the recipient: autografts, isografts, allografts, and xenotransplantation products.
7. Bone marrow transplants (with immunocompetent cells) can cause graft-versus-host disease.
8. Successful transplant surgery often requires immunosuppressant drugs to prevent an immune response to the transplanted tissue.

The Immune System and Cancer (pp. 546–547)

1. Cancer cells are normal cells that have undergone transformation, divide uncontrollably, and possess tumor-associated antigens.
2. The response of the immune system to cancer is called immunological surveillance.
3. Cytotoxic T lymphocytes recognize and kill cancer cells, as do macrophages and NK cells.
4. Prophylactic vaccines against liver and cervical cancer are available.
5. Trastuzumab (Herceptin®) consists of monoclonal antibodies against a breast cancer growth factor.
6. Immunotoxins are chemical poisons linked to a monoclonal antibody; the antibody selectively locates the cancer cell for release of the toxin.

Immunodeficiencies (pp. 547–549)

1. Immunodeficiencies can be congenital or acquired.
2. Congenital immunodeficiencies are due to defective or absent genes.
3. A variety of drugs, cancers, and infectious diseases can cause acquired immunodeficiencies.

Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS)

(pp. 549–556)

The Origin of AIDS (p. 549)

1. HIV is thought to have originated in Africa and was brought to other countries by modern transportation and unsafe sexual practices.

HIV Infection (pp. 549–553)

2. AIDS is the final stage of HIV infection.
3. HIV is a retrovirus with single-stranded RNA, reverse transcriptase, and a phospholipid envelope with gp120 spikes.
4. HIV spikes attach to CD4 and coreceptors on host cells; the CD4 receptor is found on T helper cells, macrophages, and dendritic cells.
5. Viral RNA is transcribed to DNA by reverse transcriptase. The viral DNA becomes integrated into the host chromosome to direct synthesis of new viruses or to remain latent as a provirus.
6. HIV evades the immune system in latency, in vacuoles, by using cell–cell fusion, and by antigenic change.
7. HIV infection is categorized by clinical phases: phase 1 (asymptomatic), phase 2 (indicator opportunistic infections), and phase 3 ($CD4^+$ cells < 200 cells/μl).
8. The progression from HIV infection to AIDS takes about 10 years.

Diagnostic Methods (p. 553)

9. HIV antibodies are detected by ELISA and Western blotting.
10. Plasma viral load tests detect viral nucleic acid and are used to quantify HIV in blood.
11. In countries with quality health care systems, blood transfusions are not a likely source of infection because blood is tested for HIV antibodies and viral RNA.

HIV Transmission (pp. 553–554)

12. HIV is transmitted by sexual contact, breast milk, contaminated needles, transplacental infection, artificial insemination, and blood transfusion.

AIDS Worldwide (p. 554)

13. Worldwide, heterosexual intercourse is the primary method of HIV transmission.

Preventing and Treating AIDS (pp. 554–556)

14. Transmission can be reduced by biomedical, behavioral, and structural interventions.
15. Current chemotherapeutic agents target cell entry and virus enzymes, including reverse transcriptase, integrase, and protease.
16. Vaccine development is difficult because there are different antigenic clades, and the virus remains inside host cells.

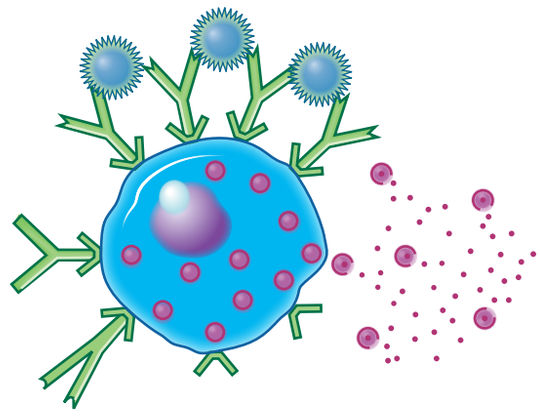
Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. DRAW IT Label IgE, antigen, and mast cell, and add an antihistamine to the following figure. What type of cell is this? Singulair® stops inflammation by blocking leukotriene receptors. Add this action to the figure.



2. In the laboratory, blood is typed by looking for hemagglutination. For example, anti-A antibodies and type A RBCs clump. In a type A person, anti-A antibodies will cause hemolysis. Why?
3. Discuss the roles of antibodies and antigens in an incompatible tissue transplant.
4. Explain what happens when a person develops a contact sensitivity to the poison oak plant.
   a. What causes the observed symptoms?
   b. How did the sensitivity develop?
   c. How might this person be desensitized to poison oak?
5. Why does an ANA (antinuclear antibody) test diagnose lupus?
6. Differentiate the three types of autoimmune diseases. Name an example of each type.
7. Summarize the causes of immunodeficiencies. What is the effect of an immunodeficiency?
8. In what ways do tumor cells differ antigenically from normal cells? Explain how tumor cells may be destroyed by the immune system.
9. If tumor cells can be destroyed by the immune system, how does cancer develop? What does immunotherapy involve?
10. NAME IT The Fc region of this protein causes degranulation when it binds to basophils.

Multiple Choice

1. Desensitization to prevent an allergic response can be accomplished by injecting small, repeated doses of
   a. IgE antibodies.
   b. the antigen (allergen).
   c. histamine.
   d. IgG antibodies.
   e. antihistamine.
2. What does *pluripotent* mean?
   a. ability of a single cell to develop into an embryonic or adult stem cell
   b. ability of a stem cell to develop into many different cell types
   c. a cell without MHC I and MHC II antigens
   d. ability of a single stem cell to heal different types of diseases
   e. ability of an adult cell to become a stem cell
3. Cytotoxic autoimmunity differs from immune complex autoimmunity in that cytotoxic reactions
   a. involve antibodies.
   b. do not involve complement.
   c. are caused by T cells.
   d. do not involve IgE antibodies.
   e. none of the above
4. Antibodies against HIV are ineffective for all of the following reasons *except*
   a. the fact that antibodies aren't made against HIV.
   b. transmission by cell–cell fusion.
   c. antigenic changes.
   d. latency.
   e. persistence of virus particles in vacuoles.
5. Which of the following is *not* the cause of a natural immunodeficiency?
   a. a recessive gene resulting in lack of a thymus gland
   b. a recessive gene resulting in few B cells
   c. HIV infection
   d. immunosuppressant drugs
   e. All of the above are causes of natural immunodeficiency.
6. Which antibodies will be found naturally in the serum of a person with blood type A, Rh^+?
   a. anti A, anti B, anti Rh
   b. anti A, anti Rh
   c. anti A
   d. anti B, anti Rh
   e. anti B

Use the following choices to match the type of hypersensitivity to the examples in questions 7 through 10.

   a. type I hypersensitivity
   b. type II hypersensitivity
   c. type III hypersensitivity
   d. type IV hypersensitivity
   e. all of the above

7. Localized anaphylaxis.
8. Allergic contact dermatitis.
9. Due to immune complexes.
10. Reaction to an incompatible blood transfusion.

Analysis

1. When and how does our immune system discriminate between self and nonself antigens?
2. The first preparations used for artificially acquired passive immunity were antibodies in horse serum. A complication that resulted from the therapeutic use of horse serum was immune complex disease. Why did this occur?
3. Do people with AIDS make antibodies? If so, why are they said to have an immunodeficiency?
4. What are the methods of action of anti-AIDS drugs?

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. Fungal infections such as athlete's foot are chronic. These fungi degrade skin keratin but are not invasive and do not produce toxins. Why do you suppose that many of the symptoms of a fungal infection are due to hypersensitivity to the fungus?
2. After working in a mushroom farm for several months, a worker develops these symptoms: hives, edema, and swelling lymph nodes.
   a. What do these symptoms indicate?
   b. What mediators cause these symptoms?
   c. How may sensitivity to a particular antigen be determined?
   d. Other employees do not appear to have any immunological reactions. What could explain this?

   (*Hint:* The allergen is conidiospores from molds growing in the mushroom farm.)
3. Physicians administering live, attenuated mumps and measles vaccines prepared in chick embryos are instructed to have epinephrine available. Epinephrine will not treat these viral infections. What is the purpose of keeping this drug on hand?
4. A female with blood type A^+ once received a transfusion of AB^+ blood. When she carried a type B^+ fetus, the fetus developed hemolytic disease of the newborn. Explain why this fetus developed this condition even though another type B^+ fetus in a different type A^+ mother was normal.

20 Antimicrobial Drugs

When the body's normal defenses cannot prevent or overcome a disease, it often can be treated by chemotherapy with antimicrobial drugs. Like the disinfectants discussed in Chapter 7, antimicrobial drugs act by killing or interfering with the growth of microorganisms. Unlike disinfectants, however, antimicrobial drugs must act *within* the host without damaging the host. The aim in developing antimicrobial drugs is to impair structures or processes in the target microorganism that are not in the host; thus, the drug harms the microbe and not the host. That is, the drug has **selective toxicity**.

Antibiotics were one of the most important discoveries of modern medicine. A century ago, little could be done to treat many lethal infectious diseases. The introduction of penicillin, sulfanilamide, and other antimicrobials to treat conditions such as pneumonia or so-called blood poisoning (sepsis) resulted in cures that seemed almost miraculous.

Today, we are seeing the advances represented by these miracle drugs threatened by the development of antibiotic resistance. For example, there are frequent reports of staphylococcal and tuberculosis pathogens that are resistant to practically all of the antibiotics that were once effective. The Clinical Case in this chapter describes an infection caused by the antibiotic-resistant *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* shown in the photograph. In some cases, medicine now has only a few more weapons to treat the diseases caused by these pathogens than were available a century ago.

▶ ***Pseudomonas aeruginosa*** **bacteria (blue) are resistant to many antibiotics.**

In the Clinic

Your family knows you are a nurse and always asks you for advice. Your brother asks you about his cough, which started 2 weeks ago. Now he's coughing up mucus and feels sure that it's bronchitis. He asks you whether he should use the amoxicillin he saved from a prescription he received when he had bronchitis last winter. **What should you tell your brother?**

Hint: Read about preventing microbial resistance later in this chapter.

The History of Chemotherapy

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

20-1 Identify the contributions of Paul Ehrlich and Alexander Fleming to chemotherapy.

20-2 Name the microbes that produce most antibiotics.

The birth of modern chemotherapy is credited to the efforts of Paul Ehrlich in Germany during the early part of the twentieth century. While attempting to stain bacteria without staining the surrounding tissue, he speculated about some "magic bullet" that would selectively find and destroy pathogens but not harm the host. This idea provided the basis for both **selective toxicity** and **chemotherapy**, a term he coined.

Antibiotic Discovery in the Twentieth Century

In 1928, Alexander Fleming observed that the growth of the bacterium *Staphylococcus aureus* was inhibited in the area surrounding the colony of a mold that had contaminated a Petri plate (see Figure 1.6). The mold was identified as *Penicillium chrysogenum*, and its active compound, which was isolated a short time later, was named penicillin. Similar inhibitory reactions between colonies on solid media are commonly observed in microbiology, and the mechanism of inhibition is called *antibiosis* (Figure 20.1). From this word comes the term **antibiotic**, a substance produced by microorganisms that in small amounts inhibits bacteria. Therefore, the wholly synthetic sulfa drugs, for example, are technically **antimicrobial drugs**, not antibiotics, a distinction often ignored in practice. The discovery of sulfa drugs arose from a systematic survey of chemicals by German industrial scientists beginning in 1927. In 1932, a compound termed Prontosil Red, a sulfanilamide-containing dye, was found to control streptococcal infections in mice. During World War II, the Allied armies made wide use of this sulfanilamide compound. The discovery and use of sulfa drugs made it clear that practical antimicrobials could be effective against systemic bacterial infections and resurrected interest in the earlier reports of penicillin.

In 1940 the first clinical trials of penicillin took place. Under wartime conditions in the United Kingdom, research into the development and large-scale production of penicillin was not possible, and this work was transferred to the United States. The original culture of *P. chrysogenum* was not a very efficient producer of the antibiotic. It was soon replaced by a more prolific strain. This valuable organism (a strain of *P. chrysogenum*) was first isolated from a moldy cantaloupe bought at a market in Peoria, Illinois.

Antibiotics in Use Today

Antibiotics are actually rather easy to discover, though few are of medical or commercial value. More than half of our useful antibiotics are produced by species of *Streptomyces*, filamentous bacteria that commonly inhabit soil (see Figure 11.25). A few antibiotics are produced by endospore-forming bacteria such as *Bacillus*, and others are produced by molds, mostly of the genera *Penicillium* and *Cephalosporium* (SEF-ah-lō-spor'ē-um).

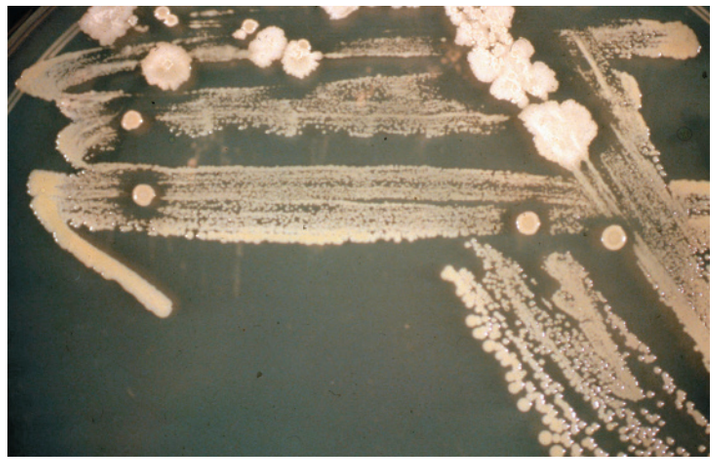


Figure 20.1 Laboratory observation of antibiosis. Anyone plating out microbes from natural environments, especially soil, will frequently see examples of bacterial inhibition by antibiotics produced by bacteria, most commonly *Streptomyces* species.

Q **Would there be any advantage to a soil microbe to produce an antibiotic?**

CLINICAL CASE Sight Unseen

Ophthalmic surgeon Dr. Vanessa Singh has performed hundreds of corneal transplants without incident. She is understandably worried when a 76-year-old woman on whom she operated yesterday develops a corneal infection. Dr. Singh had given her patient the proper prophylactic subconjunctival injection of gentamicin following transplantation, so she is puzzled by the presence of infection. Postoperative gentamicin is recommended for corneal transplants because *Staphylococcus epidermidis* and *S. aureus* are the most common organisms causing postoperative eye infection.

Dr. Singh takes a culture from the patient's eye and sends it to the lab for analysis. The culture comes back positive for *P. aeruginosa*. Dr. Singh checks with the eye bank and discovers that a 30-year-old man who received the other cornea from the donor developed a *P. aeruginosa* infection within 24 hours of surgery. This patient also had received prophylactic gentamicin to prevent infection.

What does Dr. Singh need to know? Read on to find out.

TABLE 20.1 Representative Sources of Antibiotics

Microorganism	Antibiotic
GRAM-POSITIVE RODS	
Bacillus subtilis	Bacitracin
Paenibacillus polymyxa	Polymyxin
ACTINOMYCETES	
Streptomyces nodosus	Amphotericin B
Streptomyces venezuelae	Chloramphenicol
Streptomyces aureofaciens	Chlortetracycline and tetracycline
Saccharopolyspora erythraea	Erythromycin
Streptomyces fradiae	Neomycin
Streptomyces griseus	Streptomycin
Micromonospora purpurea	Gentamicin
FUNGI	
Cephalosporium spp.	Cephalothin
Penicillium griseofulvum	Griseofulvin
Penicillium chrysogenum	Penicillin

See Table 20.1 for the sources of many antibiotics in use today—a surprisingly limited group of organisms. One study screened 400,000 microbial cultures that yielded only three useful drugs. It's especially interesting to note that practically all antibiotic-producing microbes have some sort of sporulation process.

Most antibiotics in use today were discovered by methods that required identifying and growing colonies of antibiotic-producing organisms, mostly by screening soil samples. It's rather easy to identify microbes in such samples that have antimicrobial activity (Figure 20.1); however, many are toxic or not commercially useful. Also, these proved to be examples of "low-hanging fruit," and continued work often resulted in discovery of the same antibiotics. For example, about 1 in every 100 actinomycetes in soil produces streptomycin, and 1 in 250 produces tetracycline. To find an antibiotic that is produced by only one soil or sea microbe in 10 million is a daunting task. Even modern *high-throughput methods*, which rapidly screen very large numbers of microbes in the search for new antibiotics, have failed to yield many new discoveries.

There is an increasing urgency to find new antibiotics to address the growing problem of **antibiotic resistance**, a phenomenon in which formerly effective medications have less and less impact on bacteria. Unfortunately, only three new classes of antibiotics have been discovered since 1984. All the other so-called new antibiotics are modifications of existing classes, which means that resistance to them may develop quickly.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **20-1** Who coined the term *chemotherapy*?
- **20-2** More than half our antibiotics are produced by a certain genus of bacteria. What is it?

Spectrum of Antimicrobial Activity

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

20-3 Describe the problems of chemotherapy for viral, fungal, protozoan, and helminthic infections.

20-4 Define the following terms: *spectrum of activity*, *broad-spectrum antibiotic*, and *superinfection*.

It's comparatively easy to find or develop drugs that are effective against prokaryotic cells and that do not affect the eukaryotic cells of humans. These two cell types differ substantially in many ways, such as in the presence or absence of cell walls, the structure of their ribosomes, and details of their metabolism. Thus, selective toxicity has numerous targets. The problem is more difficult when the pathogen is a eukaryotic cell, such as a fungus, protozoan, or helminth. At the cellular level, these organisms resemble the human cell much more closely than does a bacterial cell. So, a drug that targets these pathogens usually damages the host, too. Our arsenal against these types of pathogens is much more limited than our arsenal of antibacterial drugs. Viral infections are also particularly difficult to treat because the pathogen is within the human host's cells and because the genetic information of the virus is directing the human cell to make viruses rather than to synthesize normal cellular materials.

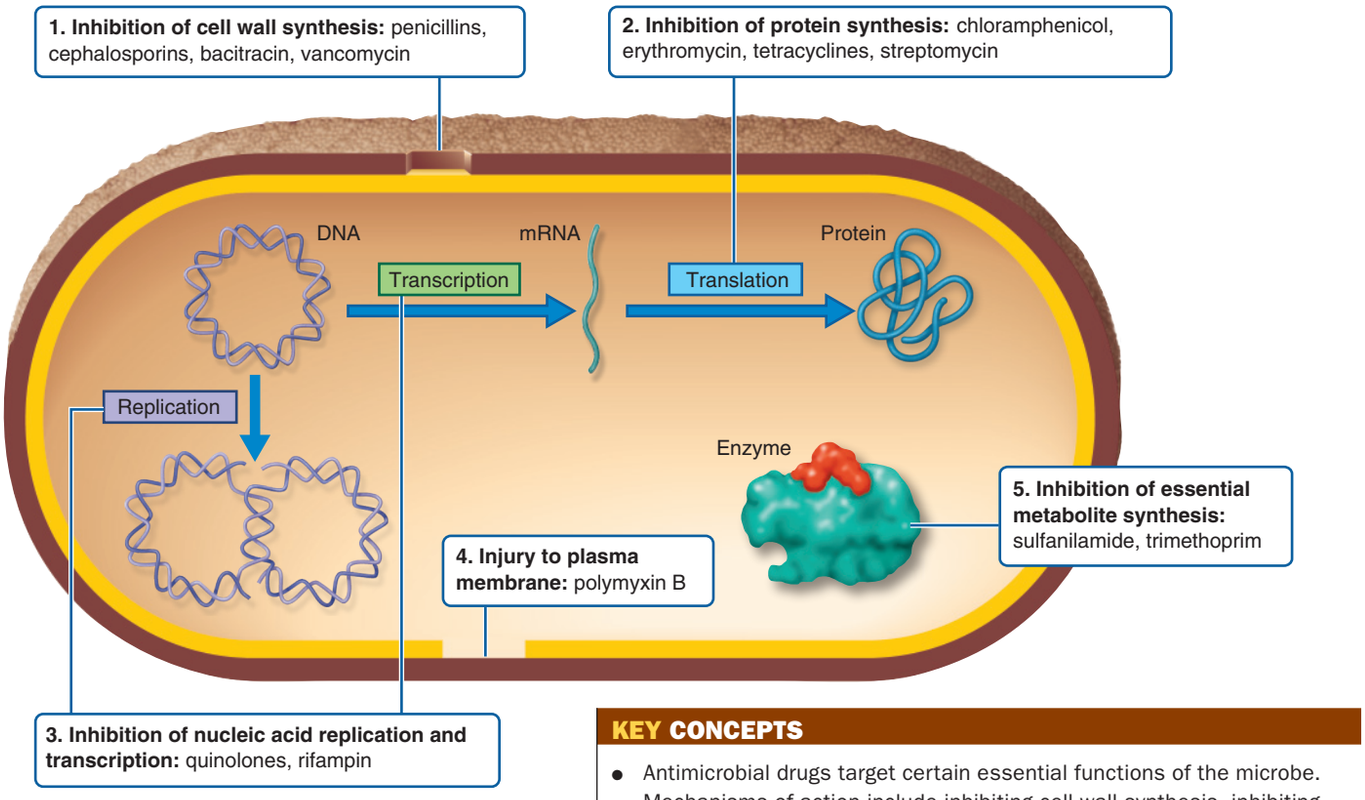
Some drugs have a narrow spectrum of microbial activity, or range of different microbial types they affect. Penicillin G, for example, affects gram-positive bacteria but very few gram-negative bacteria. Antibiotics that affect a broad range of gram-positive and gram-negative pathogenic bacteria are called **broad-spectrum antibiotics**.

A primary factor involved in the selective toxicity of antibacterial action lies in the lipopolysaccharide outer layer of gram-negative bacteria and the porins that form water-filled channels across this layer (see Figure 4.13c). Drugs that pass through the porin channels must be relatively small and preferably hydrophilic. Drugs that are lipophilic (having an affinity for lipids) or especially large do not enter gram-negative bacteria readily.

Table 20.2 summarizes the spectrum of activity of a number of chemotherapeutic drugs. Because the identity of the pathogen is not always immediately known, a broad-spectrum drug would seem to have an advantage in treating a disease by saving valuable time. The disadvantage is that these drugs destroy many normal microbiota of the host. The normal microbiota ordinarily compete with and check the growth of pathogens

FOUNDATION FIGURE 20.2

Major Action Modes of Antibacterial Drugs



KEY CONCEPTS

- Antimicrobial drugs target certain essential functions of the microbe. Mechanisms of action include inhibiting cell wall synthesis, inhibiting protein synthesis, inhibiting nucleic acid synthesis, injuring the plasma membrane, or inhibiting synthesis of essential metabolites.
- The antimicrobial drug must not interfere with essential functions of the microbe's host.

or other microbes. If the antibiotic does not destroy certain organisms in the normal microbiota but does destroy their competitors, the survivors may flourish and become opportunistic pathogens. An example that sometimes occurs is overgrowth by the yeastlike fungus *Candida albicans*, which is not sensitive to bacterial antibiotics. This overgrowth is called a **superinfection**, a term that is also applied to growth of a target pathogen that has developed resistance to the antibiotic. In this situation, such an antibiotic-resistant strain replaces the original sensitive strain, and the infection continues.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **20-3** Identify at least one reason why it's so difficult to target a pathogenic virus without damaging the host's cells.
- **20-4** Why are antibiotics with a very broad spectrum of activity not as useful as one might first think?

The Action of Antimicrobial Drugs

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

20-5 Identify five modes of action of antimicrobial drugs.

Antimicrobial drugs are either **bactericidal** (they kill microbes directly) or **bacteriostatic** (they prevent microbes from growing). In bacteriostasis, the host's own defenses, such as phagocytosis and antibody production, usually destroy the microorganisms. The major modes of action are summarized in Figure 20.2.

Inhibiting Cell Wall Synthesis

Penicillin, the first true antibiotic to be discovered and used, is an example of an inhibitor of cell wall synthesis.

The cell wall of a bacterium consists of a macromolecular network of peptidoglycan. Recall from Chapter 4 that peptidoglycan is found only in bacterial cell walls. Penicillin and

TABLE 20.2 The Spectrum of Activity of Antibiotics and Other Antimicrobial Drugs

Prokaryotes				Eukaryotes			
Mycobacteria*	Gram-Negative Bacteria	Gram-Positive Bacteria	Chlamydias, Rickettsias†	Fungi	Protozoa	Helminths	Viruses
Isoniazid ⟷		Penicillin G ⟷		Ketoconazole ⟷		Niclosamide (tapeworms) ⟷	
	Streptomycin ⟷				Mefloquine (malaria) ⟷		Acyclovir ⟷
	Tetracycline ⟷					Praziquantel (flukes) ⟷	

*Growth of these bacteria frequently occurs within macrophages or tissue structures.

†Obligately intracellular bacteria.

certain other antibiotics prevent the synthesis of intact peptidoglycan; consequently, the cell wall is greatly weakened, and the cell undergoes lysis (Figure 20.3). Because penicillin targets the synthesis process, only actively growing cells are affected by these antibiotics—and, because human cells do not have peptidoglycan cell walls, penicillin has very little toxicity for host cells.

Inhibiting Protein Synthesis

Because protein synthesis is a common feature of all cells, whether prokaryotic or eukaryotic, it would seem an unlikely target for selective toxicity. One notable difference between prokaryotes and eukaryotes, however, is the structure of their ribosomes. Eukaryotic cells have 80S ribosomes, whereas prokaryotic cells have 70S ribosomes (Chapter 4). The difference in ribosomal structure accounts for the selective toxicity of antibiotics that affect protein synthesis. However, mitochondria (important eukaryotic organelles) also contain 70S ribosomes similar to those of bacteria. Antibiotics targeting the 70S ribosomes can therefore have adverse effects on the cells of the host. Among the antibiotics that interfere with protein synthesis are chloramphenicol, erythromycin, streptomycin, and the tetracyclines (Figure 20.4).

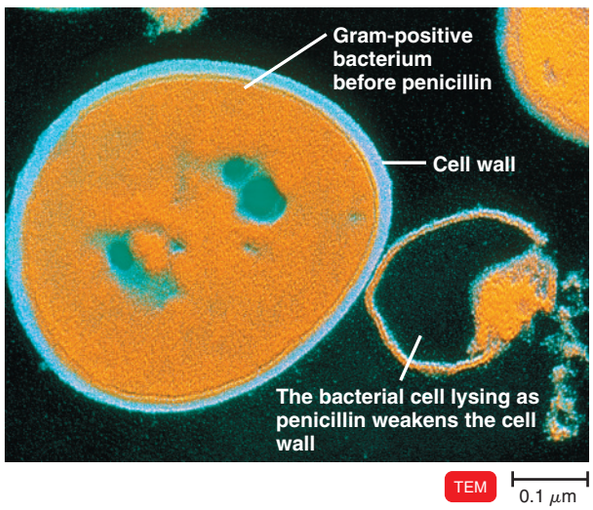


Figure 20.3 The inhibition of bacterial cell wall synthesis by penicillin.

Q Why don't penicillins affect human cells?

Injuring the Plasma Membrane

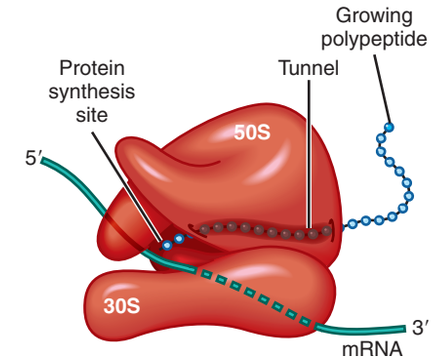
Certain antibiotics, especially polypeptide antibiotics, bring about changes in the permeability of the plasma membrane that result in the loss of important metabolites from the microbial cell. Some of the polypeptide antibiotics disrupt both the inner and outer membranes of gram-negative bacteria.

Ionophores are antibiotics produced by several soil bacteria and fungi. They allow uncontrolled movement of cations across the plasma membrane. Ionophores are not used in human medicine. They are used in cattle feed because they alter microbiota within the animal's rumen, which improves digestion and promotes cattle growth.

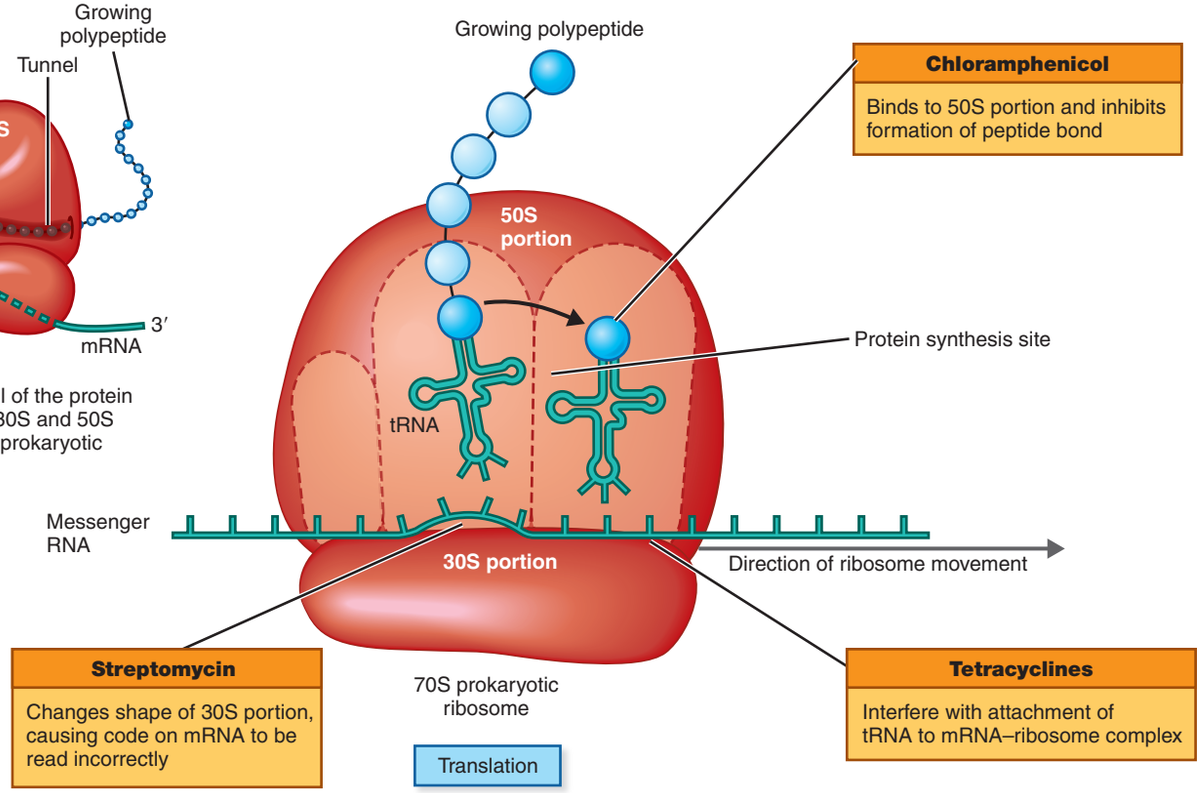
Some antifungal drugs are effective against a considerable range of fungal diseases. These drugs combine with sterols in the fungal plasma membrane to disrupt the membrane (Figure 20.5). Because bacterial plasma membranes generally lack sterols, these antibiotics do not act on bacteria.

Inhibiting Nucleic Acid Synthesis

A number of antibiotics interfere with the processes of DNA replication and transcription in microorganisms. These drugs block bacterial topoisomerase or RNA polymerase (see Table 8.1).



(a) Three-dimensional detail of the protein synthesis site showing the 30S and 50S subunit portions of the 70S prokaryotic ribosome



(b) Diagram indicating the different points at which chloramphenicol, the tetracyclines, and streptomycin exert their activities

Figure 20.4 The inhibition of protein synthesis by antibiotics. **(a)** The inset shows how the 70S prokaryotic ribosome is assembled from two subunits, 30S and 50S. Note how the growing peptide chain passes through a tunnel in the 50S subunit from the site of protein synthesis. **(b)** The diagram shows the different points at which chloramphenicol, the tetracyclines, and streptomycin exert their activities.

Q **Why do antibiotics that inhibit protein synthesis affect bacteria and not human cells?**

Inhibiting the Synthesis of Essential Metabolites

A particular enzymatic activity of a microorganism can be *competitively inhibited* by a substance (*antimetabolite*) that closely resembles the normal substrate for the enzyme (see Figure 5.7). An example of competitive inhibition is the relationship between the antimetabolite sulfanilamide (a sulfa drug) and ***para*-aminobenzoic acid (PABA)**. In many microorganisms, PABA is the substrate for an enzymatic reaction leading to the synthesis of folic acid, a vitamin that functions as a coenzyme for the synthesis of the purine and pyrimidine bases of nucleic acids and many amino acids.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

20-5 What cellular function is inhibited by tetracyclines?

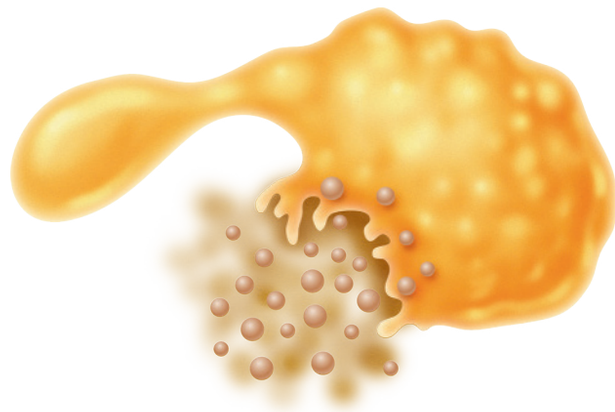


Figure 20.5 Injury to the plasma membrane of a yeast cell caused by an antifungal drug. The cell releases its cytoplasmic contents as the plasma membrane is disrupted by the antifungal drug miconazole.

Q **Many antifungal drugs combine with sterols in the plasma membrane. Why don't they combine with sterols in human cell membranes?**

Common Antimicrobial Drugs

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

20-6 Explain why the antibacterial drugs discussed in this section are not harmful to human cells.

20-7 List the advantages of each of the following over penicillin: semisynthetic penicillins, cephalosporins, and vancomycin.

20-8 Explain why isoniazid and ethambutol are antimycobacterial agents.

20-9 Describe how each of the following inhibits protein synthesis: aminoglycosides, tetracyclines, chloramphenicol, macrolides.

20-10 Compare polymyxin B, bacitracin, and neomycin in their modes of action.

20-11 Describe how rifamycins and quinolones kill bacteria.

20-12 Describe how sulfa drugs inhibit microbial growth.

20-13 Explain modes of action of current antifungal drugs.

20-14 Explain modes of action of current antiviral drugs.

20-15 Explain modes of action of current antiprotozoan and antihelminthic drugs.

Table 20.3 summarizes the commonly used antibacterial drugs. Table 20.5 summarizes the antifungal, antiviral, antiprotozoan, and antihelminthic drugs.

Antibacterial Antibiotics: Inhibitors of Cell Wall Synthesis

For antibacterial antibiotics to function as a "magic bullet," they usually must target microbial structures or functions that are not shared with mammalian structures or functions. The eukaryotic mammalian cell usually does not have a cell wall; instead, it has only a plasma membrane (see Chapter 4). For this reason, the microbial cell wall is an attractive target for the action of antibacterial antibiotics.

Penicillin

The term **penicillin** refers to a group of over 50 chemically related antibiotics (Figure 20.6). All penicillins have a common core structure containing a β-lactam ring called the nucleus. Types are differentiated by the chemical side chains attached to

TABLE 20.3 Antibacterial Drugs

Drugs by Mode of Action	Comments
INHIBITORS OF BACTERIAL CELL WALL SYNTHESIS	
Natural Penicillins	
Penicillin G	Against gram-positive bacteria, requires injection
Penicillin V	Against gram-positive bacteria, oral administration
Semisynthetic Penicillins	
Oxacillin	Narrow spectrum, resistant to penicillinase
Ampicillin	Broad spectrum
Amoxicillin	Broad spectrum; combined with inhibitor of penicillinase
Carbapenems	
Imipenem	Very broad spectrum
Monobactams	
Aztreonam	Effective against gram-negative bacteria, including *Pseudomonas* spp.
Cephalosporins	
Cephalothin	First-generation cephalosporin; activity similar to penicillin; requires injection
Ceftaroline	Fifth-generation cephalosporin; activity against MRSA
Polypeptide Antibiotics	
Bacitracin	Against gram-positive bacteria; topical application
Vancomycin	A glycopeptide type; penicillinase resistant; against gram-positive bacteria
Acyldepsipeptide antibiotics	
Teixobactin	Against antibiotic-resistance gram-positive bacteria.
Antimycobacterial Antibiotics	
Isoniazid	Inhibits synthesis of mycolic acid component of cell wall of *Mycobacterium* spp.
Ethambutol	Inhibits incorporation of mycolic acid into cell wall of *Mycobacterium* spp.

TABLE 20.3 *(continued)*

Drugs by Mode of Action	Comments
INHIBITORS OF PROTEIN SYNTHESIS	
Nitrofurantoin	Urinary bladder infections
Chloramphenicol	Broad spectrum, potentially toxic
Aminoglycosides	
Streptomycin	Broad spectrum, including mycobacteria
Neomycin	Topical use, broad spectrum
Gentamicin	Broad spectrum, including *Pseudomonas* spp.
Tetracyclines	
Tetracycline, oxytetracycline, chlortetracycline	Broad spectrum, including chlamydias and rickettsias
Glycylcyclines	
Tigecycline	Broad spectrum, especially MRSA and *Acinetobacter*
Macrolides	
Erythromycin	Alternative to penicillin
Azithromycin, clarithromycin	Semisynthetic; broader spectrum and better tissue penetration than erythromycin
Telithromycin	New generation of semisynthetic macrolides; used to cope with resistance to other macrolides
Streptogramins	
Quinupristin and dalfopristin (Synercid®)	Alternative for treating vancomycin-resistant gram-positive bacteria
Oxazolidinones	
Linezolid	Useful primarily against penicillin-resistant gram-positive bacteria
Pleuromutilins	
Mutilin, retpamulin	Inhibit gram-positive bacteria
INJURY TO THE PLASMA MEMBRANE	
Lipopeptides	
Daptomycin	To treat MRSA infections
Polymyxin B	Topical use, gram-negative bacteria, including *Pseudomonas* spp.
NUCLEIC ACID SYNTHESIS INHIBITORS	
Rifamycins	
Rifampin	Inhibits synthesis of mRNA; treatment of tuberculosis
Quinolones and Fluoroquinolones	
Nalidixic acid, ciprofloxacin	Inhibit topoisomerase; broad spectrum; urinary tract infections
COMPETITIVE INHIBITORS OF THE SYNTHESIS OF ESSENTIAL METABOLITES	
Sulfonamides	
Sulfamethoxazole-trimethoprim	Broad spectrum; combination is widely used

TABLE 20.4 Differential Grouping of Cephalosporins

Generation	Description	Example
First	Primarily against gram-positive bacteria	Cephalothin
Second	More extended gram-negative spectrum	Cefamandole (IV) Cefaclor (oral)
Third	Most active against gram-negative bacteria, including *P. aeruginosa*	Ceftazidime
Fourth	Require injections; most extended spectrum of activity	Cefepime
Fifth	Effective against gram-negative bacteria and MRSA	Ceftaroline

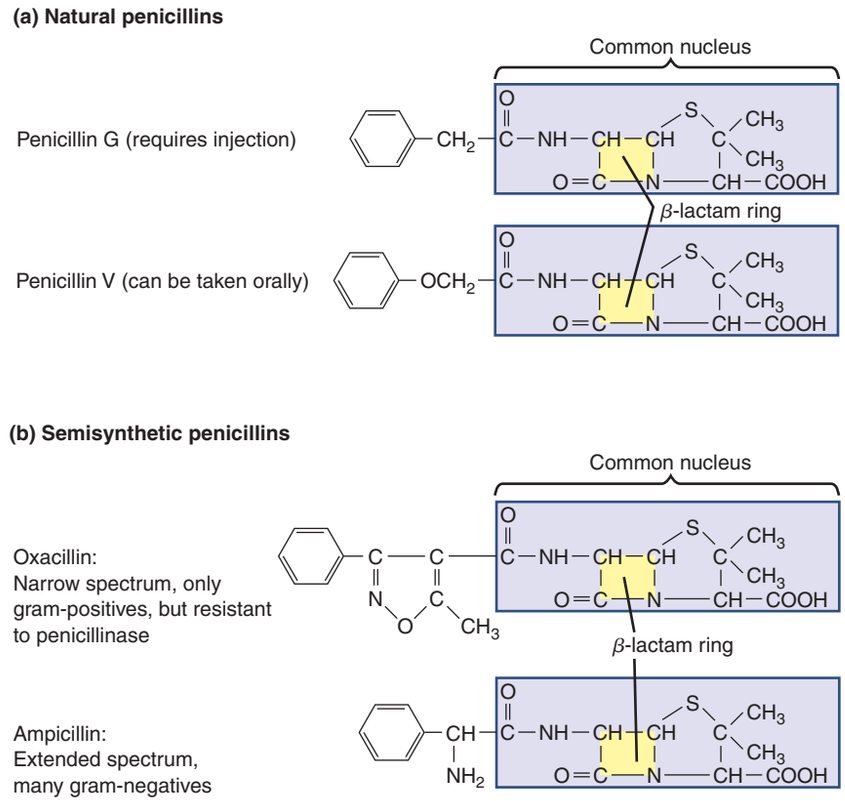


Figure 20.6 The structure of penicillins, antibacterial antibiotics. The portion that all penicillins have in common—which contains the (yellow) β-lactam ring—is shaded in purple. The unshaded portions represent the side chains that distinguish one penicillin from another.

Q What does *semisynthetic* mean?

their nuclei. Penicillins prevent the cross-linking of the peptidoglycans, thereby interfering with the final stages of the synthesis of the cell walls, primarily of gram-positive bacteria (see Figure 4.13a). Penicillins can be produced either naturally or semisynthetically.

Natural Penicillins extracted from cultures of *Penicillium* fungi are the so-called **natural penicillins** (Figure 20.6a). The prototype compound of all the penicillins is *penicillin G*. It has a narrow but useful spectrum of activity and is often the drug of choice against most staphylococci, streptococci, and several spirochetes. When injected intramuscularly, penicillin G is rapidly excreted from the body within 4 hours (Figure 20.7). When the drug is taken orally, the acidity of the digestive fluids in the stomach diminishes its concentration. *Procaine penicillin*, a combination of the drugs procaine and penicillin G, is retained at detectable concentrations for up to 24 hours; the concentration peaks at about 4 hours. Still longer retention times can be achieved with *benzathine penicillin*, a combination of benzathine and penicillin G. Although retention times of as long as 4 months can be obtained, the concentration of the drug is so low that the organisms must be very sensitive to it. In clinical practice, penicillin G and penicillin V, which is stable in stomach acids and can be taken orally, are the natural penicillins most often used.

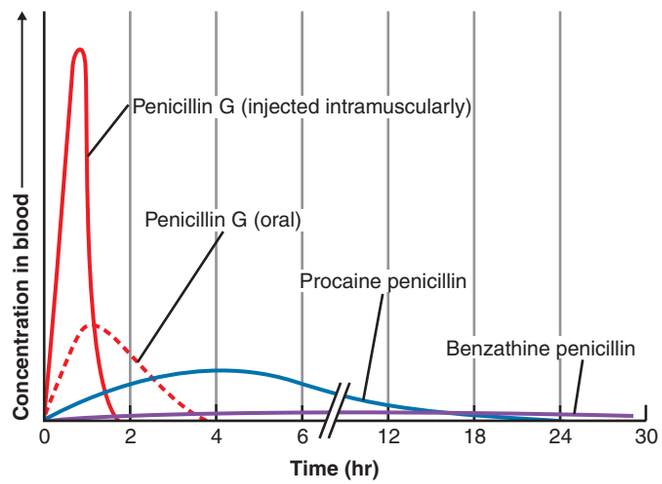


Figure 20.7 Retention of penicillin G. Penicillin G is normally injected (solid red line); when administered by this route, the drug is present in high concentrations in the blood but disappears quickly. Taken orally (dotted red line), penicillin G is destroyed by stomach acids and is not very effective. It's possible to improve retention of penicillin G by combining it with compounds such as procaine and benzathine (blue and purple lines). However, the blood concentration reached is low, and the target bacterium must be extremely sensitive to the antibiotic.

Q How does a low concentration of penicillin G select for penicillin-resistant bacteria?

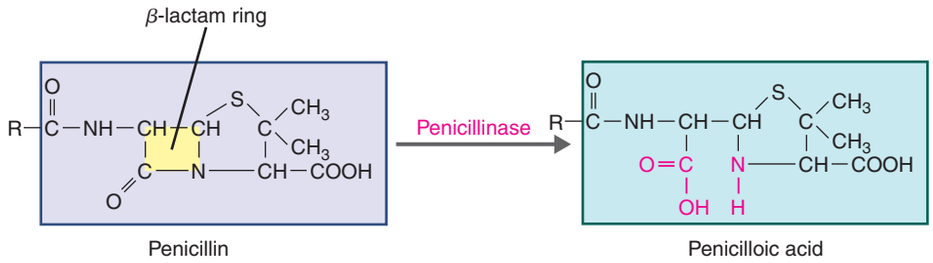


Figure 20.8 The effect of penicillinase on penicillins. Bacterial production of this enzyme, which is shown breaking the β-lactam ring, is by far the most common form of resistance to penicillins. R is an abbreviation for the chemical side groups that differentiate similar or otherwise-identical compounds.

Q What is penicillinase?

Natural penicillins have some disadvantages. Chief among them are their narrow spectrum of activity and their susceptibility to penicillinases. *Penicillinases* are enzymes produced by many bacteria, most notably *Staphylococcus* species, that cleave the β-lactam ring of the penicillin molecule (**Figure 20.8**). Because of this characteristic, penicillinases are sometimes called β-*lactamases*.

Semisynthetic Penicillins A large number of **semisynthetic penicillins** have been developed in attempts to overcome the disadvantages of natural penicillins (Figure 20.6b). Scientists develop these penicillins in either of two ways. First, they can interrupt synthesis of the molecule by *Penicillium* and obtain only the common penicillin nucleus for use. Second, they can remove the side chains from the completed natural molecules and then chemically add other side chains that make them more resistant to penicillinase, or the scientists can give them an extended spectrum. Thus the term *semisynthetic*: part of the penicillin is produced by the mold, and part is added synthetically.

Penicillinase-Resistant Penicillins Resistance of staphylococcal infections to penicillin soon became a problem because of a plasmid-borne gene for β-lactamase. Antibiotics that were relatively resistant to this enzyme, such as the semisynthetic penicillin *methicillin*, were introduced, but resistance to them also soon appeared; thus the organisms were termed **methicillin-resistant** *Staphylococcus aureus* **(MRSA)**, usually pronounced *mersa* (see the Clinical Case box in Chapter 1). Resistance became so prevalent that methicillin use has been discontinued in the United States. MRSA are resistant to all β-lactam antibiotics and many other classes of antibiotics, including carbapenems, fluoroquinolones, and macrolides. Moreover, the term MRSA has come to be applied to any *Staphylococcus* strain that has developed resistance to a wide range of penicillins and cephalosporins. This includes other penicillinase-resistant antibiotics, such as *oxacillin*, and those combined with β-lactamase inhibitors. See the discussion of antibiotic resistance later in this chapter.

Extended-Spectrum Penicillins To overcome the problem of the narrow spectrum of activity of natural penicillins, broader-spectrum semisynthetic penicillins have been developed. These new penicillins are effective against many gram-negative bacteria as well as gram-positive ones, although they are not resistant to penicillinases.

The first such penicillins were the aminopenicillins, such as *ampicillin* and *amoxicillin*. When bacterial resistance to these became more common, the carboxypenicillins were developed. Members of this group, such as *carbenicillin* and *ticarcillin*, have even greater activity against gram-negative bacteria and have the special advantage of activity against *P. aeruginosa*.

Among the more recent additions to the penicillin family are the ureidopenicillins, such as *mezlocillin* and *azlocillin*. These broader-spectrum penicillins are modifications of the structure of ampicillin. The search for even more effective modifications of penicillin continues.

Penicillins Plus β-Lactamase Inhibitors A different approach to the proliferation of penicillinase is to combine penicillins with *potassium clavulanate (clavulanic acid)*, a product of a streptomycete. Potassium clavulanate is a competitive inhibitor of penicillinase with essentially no antimicrobial activity of its own. It has been combined with some new broader-spectrum penicillins, such as *amoxicillin*. The combination is best known by its trade name, Augmentin®.

Carbapenems

The **carbapenems** are a class of β-lactam antibiotics that substitute a carbon atom for a sulfur atom and add a double bond to the penicillin nucleus. These antibiotics inhibit cell wall synthesis and have an extremely broad spectrum of activity. Representative of this group is a combination of *imipenem* and *cilastatin*. The cilastatin has no antimicrobial activity but prevents the imipenem from being degraded in the kidneys. Tests have demonstrated that imipinem-cilastatin is active against 98% of all organisms isolated from hospital patients. One of the few antibiotics introduced in recent years (2007) is *doripenem*, a carbapenem. It's especially useful against *P. aeruginosa* infections.

Monobactams

Another method of avoiding the effects of penicillinase is demonstrated by *aztreonam*, which is the only approved member of the monobactams. It's a synthetic antibiotic that has only

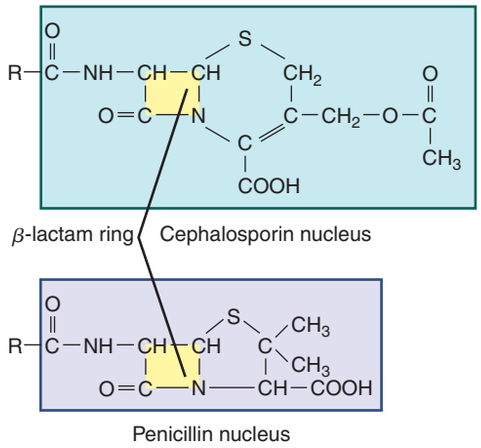


Figure 20.9 The nuclear structures of cephalosporin and penicillin compared.

Q Would a β-lactamase effective against penicillin G be likely to affect cephalosporins?

a single ring rather than the conventional β-lactam double ring, and it's therefore known as a **monobactam**. Aztreonam's spectrum of activity is quite narrow for a penicillin-related compound—this antibiotic, which has unusually low toxicity, affects only certain gram-negative bacteria, including pseudomonads and *Escherichia coli*.

Cephalosporins

In structure, the nuclei of **cephalosporins** resemble those of penicillin (Figure 20.9). Cephalosporins inhibit cell wall synthesis in essentially the same way as do penicillins. They are more widely used than any other β-lactam antibiotics. Their β-lactam ring differs slightly from that of penicillin, but bacteria have developed β-lactamases that inactivate them.

Cephalosporins are most commonly grouped according to their generations, reflecting their continued development, as described in Table 20.4.

Polypeptide Antibiotics

Bacitracin *Bacitracin* (the name is derived from its source, a *Bacillus* isolated from a wound on a girl named *Tracy*) is a polypeptide antibiotic effective primarily against gram-positive bacteria, such as staphylococci and streptococci. Bacitracin inhibits the synthesis of cell walls at an earlier stage than do penicillins and cephalosporins. It interferes with the synthesis of the linear strands of the peptidoglycans (see Figure 4.13a). Its use is restricted to topical application for superficial infections.

Vancomycin *Vancomycin* (optimistically named from the word *vanquish*) is one of a small group of glycopeptide antibiotics derived from a species of *Streptomyces* found in the jungles of Borneo. Originally, toxicity of vancomycin was a serious problem, but improved purification procedures in its manufacture have largely corrected this. Although it has a very narrow spectrum of activity, which is based on inhibition of cell wall synthesis, vancomycin has been extremely important in addressing the problem of MRSA (see the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 14). It has been considered the last line of antibiotic defense for treatment of *S. aureus* infections that are resistant to other antibiotics. The widespread use of vancomycin to treat MRSA has led to the appearance of **vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE)**. These are opportunistic, gram-positive pathogens that are particularly troublesome in hospital settings. (See the discussion of healthcare-associated infections in Chapter 14.) A significant number of MRSA are vancomycin resistant (VRSA) or intermediate-level resistant (VISA), having acquired the resistance gene from *Enterococcus* spp. This appearance of vancomycin-resistant pathogens, leaving few effective alternatives, is considered a medical emergency. Telavancin, a semisynthetic derivative of vancomycin, has been introduced and approved for a limited range of uses.

Teixobactin *Teixobactin*, discovered in 2015, represents the *acyldepsipeptides*, one of only three new classes of antibiotics discovered since the 1980s. It inhibits peptidoglycan synthesis in gram-positive bacteria and mycobacteria. It is produced by a soil bacterium, *Eleftheria terrae* (ē-lef-THER-ē-ah TER-rī), that was cultured using a device called an iChip to grow previously unculturable bacteria (see Figure 28.10). Teixobactin is effective against antibiotic-resistant gram-positive bacteria, including *S. aureus*, *M. tuberculosis*, and VRE.

Antimycobacterial Antibiotics

The cell wall of members of the genus *Mycobacterium* differs from the cell wall of most other bacteria (see Figure 4.13d). It incorporates mycolic acids that are a factor in their staining properties, causing them to stain as acid-fast (see Chapter 3). The genus includes important pathogens, such as those that cause leprosy and tuberculosis.

Isoniazid (INH) is a very effective synthetic antimicrobial drug against *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. The primary effect of INH is to inhibit the synthesis of mycolic acids. It has little effect on nonmycobacteria. When used to treat tuberculosis, INH is usually administered simultaneously with other drugs, such as rifampin or ethambutol. This minimizes development of drug resistance. Because *M. tuberculosis* is usually found only within macrophages or walled off in tissue, any antitubercular drug must be able to penetrate into such sites.

Ethambutol is effective only against mycobacteria. The drug inhibits incorporation of mycolic acid into the cell wall, making the cell wall weaker. It's a comparatively weak antitubercular drug; its principal use is as the secondary drug to avoid resistance problems.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **20-6** One of the most successful groups of antibiotics targets the synthesis of bacterial cell walls; why does the antibiotic not affect the mammalian cell?
- **20-7** What phenomenon prompted the development of the first semisynthetic antibiotics, such as methicillin?
- **20-8** What genus of bacteria has mycolic acids in the cell wall?

Inhibitors of Protein Synthesis

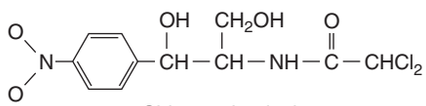
The antibacterial antibiotics that inhibit protein synthesis are discussed in this section.

Nitrofurantoin

Nitrofurantoin is a synthetic drug introduced in the 1950s. It is used to treat urinary bladder infections because it concentrates in urine as the kidneys remove it from the blood. Nitrofurantoin is converted by bacterial nitrate reductases to intermediates that attack bacterial ribosomal proteins, thus inhibiting protein synthesis and a variety of bacterial enzymes. Resistance to nitrofurantoin is not common because of the variety of target sites of the drug.

Chloramphenicol

Chloramphenicol inhibits the formation of peptide bonds in the growing polypeptide chain by reacting with the 50S portion of the 70S prokaryotic ribosome. Because of its simple structure (Figure 20.10), it is less expensive for the pharmaceutical industry to synthesize it chemically than to isolate it from *Streptomyces*. It is relatively inexpensive and has a broad spectrum, so chloramphenicol is often used where low cost is essential. Its small molecular size promotes diffusion into areas of the body that are inaccessible to many other drugs. However, chloramphenicol has serious adverse effects that include suppression of bone marrow activity. This affects the formation of blood cells, resulting in a severe, often fatal condition called *aplastic anemia*. Physicians are advised not to use the drug for trivial conditions or if suitable alternatives are available.



Chloramphenicol

Figure 20.10 The structure of the antibacterial antibiotic chloramphenicol. Notice the simple structure, which makes synthesizing this drug less expensive than isolating it from *Streptomyces*.

Q How does the binding of chloramphenicol to the 50S portion of the ribosomes affect a cell?

Other antibiotics that inhibit protein synthesis by binding at the same ribosomal site as chloramphenicol are *clindamycin* and *metronidazole* (see Figure 20.4). These three drugs are structurally unrelated, but all have potent activity against anaerobes. Clindamycin is often implicated in *Clostridioides difficile*–associated diarrhea (see Chapter 25). Its effectiveness against anaerobes has led to its use in the treatment of acne.

Aminoglycosides

Aminoglycosides are a group of antibiotics in which amino sugars are linked by glycoside bonds. Aminoglycoside antibiotics interfere with the initial steps of protein synthesis by changing the shape of the 30S portion of the 70S prokaryotic ribosome. This interference causes the genetic code of the mRNA to be read incorrectly. They were among the first antibiotics to have significant activity against gram-negative bacteria. Probably the best-known aminoglycoside is *streptomycin*, which was discovered in 1944. Streptomycin is still used as an alternative drug in the treatment of tuberculosis, but rapid development of resistance and serious toxic effects have diminished its usefulness.

Aminoglycosides can affect hearing by causing permanent damage to the auditory nerve, and damage to the kidneys has also been reported. As a result, their use has been declining. *Neomycin* is present in many nonprescription topical preparations. *Gentamicin* (spelled with an "i" to reflect its source, the filamentous bacterium *Micromonospora*) is especially useful against *Pseudomonas* infections. Pseudomonads are a major problem for people with cystic fibrosis. The aminoglycoside *tobramycin* is administered in an aerosol to help control infections that occur in these patients.

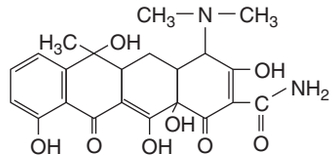
Tetracyclines

Tetracyclines are a group of closely related broad-spectrum antibiotics produced by *Streptomyces* spp. The tetracyclines interfere with the attachment of the tRNA carrying the amino acids to the ribosome at the 30S portion of the 70S ribosome, preventing the addition of amino acids to the growing polypeptide

CLINICAL CASE

Dr. Singh asks the eye bank for more information about the donor. She finds out that the cornea donor was a previously healthy 30-year-old victim of a motorcycle crash who was on ventilator support for 4 days before his death. The donor's corneas were harvested 3 days before the transplantations took place and were stored in a buffered medium containing 100 μg/mL gentamicin at 4°C.

How would you determine susceptibility of this *P. aeruginosa* to gentamicin?



Tetracycline

Figure 20.11 The structure of the antibacterial antibiotic tetracycline. Other tetracycline-type antibiotics share the four-cyclic-ring structure of tetracycline and closely resemble it.

Q How do tetracyclines affect bacteria?

chain. They do not interfere with mammalian ribosomes, but can affect mitochondrial ribosomes. Tetracyclines are effective against gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria. Moreover, they penetrate body tissues well and are especially valuable against the intracellular rickettsias and chlamydias. Three of the more commonly used tetracyclines are *oxytetracycline*, *chlortetracycline*, and tetracycline itself (Figure 20.11).

Some semisynthetic tetracyclines, such as *doxycycline* and *minocycline*, are available. They have the advantage of longer retention in the body.

Tetracyclines are used to treat many urinary tract infections, mycoplasmal pneumonia, and chlamydial and rickettsial infections. They are also frequently used as alternative drugs for syphilis and gonorrhea. Because of their broad spectrum, tetracyclines often suppress the normal intestinal microbiota, causing gastrointestinal upsets and leading to superinfections, particularly by the fungus *C. albicans*.

Glycylcyclines

The **glycylcyclines** are a newer class of antibiotics discovered in the 1990s. They are structurally similar to the tetracyclines. The best-known example is *tigecycline*. This is a broad-spectrum, bacteriostatic antibiotic that binds to the 30S ribosomal subunit, blocking protein synthesis. An important advantage is that it inhibits the effects of rapid efflux, an important mechanism for bacterial antibiotic resistance (see Figure 20.20). Among its disadvantages is that it must be administered by slow intravenous infusion. It is especially useful against MRSA and multi-drug-resistant strains of *Acinetobacter baumannii*.

Macrolides

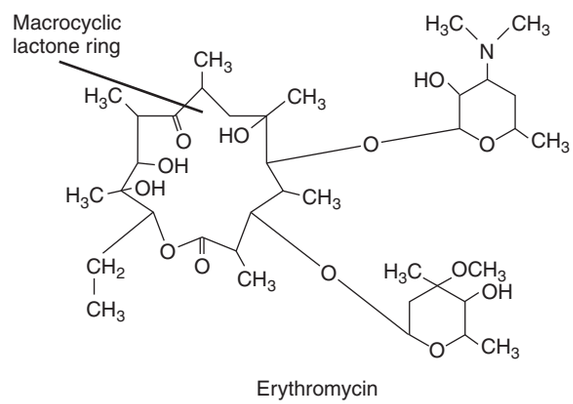
Macrolides are a group of antibiotics named for the presence of a macrocyclic lactone ring. The best-known macrolide in clinical use is *erythromycin* (Figure 20.12). Its mode of action is the inhibition of protein synthesis, apparently by blocking the tunnel shown in Figure 20.4a. However, erythromycin is not able to penetrate the cell walls of most gram-negative bacteria. Its spectrum of activity is therefore similar to that of penicillin G, and it is a frequent alternative drug to penicillin. Because it can be administered orally, an orange-flavored preparation of erythromycin is a frequent substitute for penicillin in treating streptococcal and staphylococcal infections in children. Erythromycin is also the drug of choice for the treatment of legionellosis, mycoplasmal pneumonia, and several other infections.

Fidaxomicin has a rather narrow spectrum of activity and is mainly used to treat *C. difficile* and other clostridia infections. It is a frequent replacement for vancomycin. Other macrolides include *azithromycin* and *clarithromycin*. Compared to erythromycin, they have a broader antimicrobial spectrum and penetrate tissues better. This is especially important in the treatment of conditions caused by intracellular bacteria such as *Chlamydia*, a frequent cause of sexually transmitted infection.

A new generation of semisynthetic macrolides, the **ketolides**, is being developed to cope with increasing resistance to other macrolides. However, none are currently approved because of their severe toxicity to the liver.

Streptogramins

We mentioned previously that the appearance of vancomycin-resistant pathogens constitutes a serious medical problem. One answer may be a unique group of antibiotics, the **streptogramins**. Synercid® is a combination of two cyclic peptides, *dalfopristin* and *quinupristin*, which are distantly related to the macrolides. They block protein synthesis by attaching to the 50S portion of the ribosome, as do other antibiotics such as chloramphenicol. Synercid®, however, acts at uniquely different points on the ribosome. Dalfopristin blocks an early step in protein synthesis, and quinupristin blocks a later step. The combination causes incomplete peptide chains to be released and is synergistic in its action (see Figure 20.23). Synercid® is effective against a broad range of gram-positive bacteria that are resistant to other antibiotics. This makes Synercid® especially valuable, even though it's expensive and has a high incidence of adverse side effects.



Erythromycin

Figure 20.12 The structure of the antibacterial antibiotic erythromycin, a representative macrolide. All macrolides have the macrocyclic lactone ring shown here.

Q How do macrolides affect bacteria?

Oxazolidinones

The **oxazolidinones** are another class of antibiotics developed in response to vancomycin resistance. When the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved this class of antibiotic in 2001, it represented the first new class to come to market in 25 years. Like several other antibiotics that inhibit protein synthesis, oxazolidinone antibiotics act on the ribosome (see Figure 20.4). However, they are unique in their target, binding to the 50S ribosomal subunit close to the point where it interfaces with the 30S subunit. These drugs are totally synthetic, which may make resistance slower to develop. One member of this antibiotic group is *linezolid*, used mainly to combat MRSA.

Pleuromutilins

Pleuromutilin derivatives have a unique mode of action that interferes with protein synthesis. The first antibiotic of this class approved for human use was *retapamulin*; however, it is limited to only topical use. Pleuromutilins are effective against gram-positive bacteria. Originally a product of the *Pleurotis mutilus* mushroom, most are now semisynthetic derivatives.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

20-9 Why does erythromycin, a macrolide antibiotic, have activity limited largely to gram-positive bacteria even though its mode of action is similar to that of the broad-spectrum tetracyclines?

Injury to Membranes

The synthesis of bacterial plasma membranes requires the synthesis of fatty acids as building blocks. Researchers in search of an attractive target for new antibiotics have focused their attention on this metabolic step, which is distinct from the fatty acid biosynthesis in humans. A weakness in this approach, however, is that many bacterial pathogens are able to take up preformed fatty acids from serum. In the soil environment from which the antibiotic-producing streptomycetes were isolated, fatty acids are not available. Examples of successful antimicrobials that target fatty acid synthesis are the tuberculosis drug *isoniazid* and the antibacterial *triclosan* (see Figure 7.7d).

Lipopeptides

A **lipopeptide** antibiotic effective only against gram-positive bacteria is *daptomycin*, produced by *Streptomyces roseosporus* bacteria. Its use is approved for certain skin infections. Daptomycin binds to the bacterial membrane, and resistance is uncommon. This mechanism is distinctive enough that the antibiotic is often used for infections caused by bacteria resistant to numerous antibiotics.

Polymyxin B is a bactericidal antibiotic effective against gram-negative bacteria; it acts by binding to the outer membrane of the gram-negative cell wall. It's primarily used in topical treatment of superficial infections, for which it's available in nonprescription antiseptic ointments.

Polymyxin E (colistin) is used to treat antibiotic-resistant ventilator-associated pneumonia caused by gram-negative bacteria. In 2015, colistin resistance was reported in China and Europe. And in 2016, colistin-resistant *E. coli* bacteria were isolated from two unrelated patients in the United States.

Both *bacitracin* and *polymyxin B* are available in nonprescription antiseptic ointments, in which they are usually combined with *neomycin*, a broad-spectrum aminoglycoside. In a rare exception to the rule, these antibiotics do not require a prescription.

Many of the antimicrobial peptides discussed later in this chapter target the synthesis of the plasma membrane.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

20-10 Of the three drugs often found in over-the-counter antiseptic creams—polymyxin B, bacitracin, and neomycin—which has a mode of action most similar to that of penicillin?

Nucleic Acid Synthesis Inhibitors

The best known nucleic acid synthesis inhibitors are the rifamycins and the fluoroquinolones.

Rifamycins

The best-known derivative of the **rifamycin** family of antibiotics is *rifampin*. These drugs are structurally related to the macrolides and inhibit the synthesis of mRNA. By far the most important use of rifampin is against mycobacteria in the treatment of tuberculosis and leprosy. A valuable characteristic of rifampin is its ability to penetrate tissues and reach therapeutic levels in cerebrospinal fluid and abscesses. This characteristic is probably an important factor in its antitubercular activity, because the tuberculosis pathogen is usually located inside tissues or macrophages. An unusual side effect of rifampin is the appearance of orange-red urine, feces, saliva, sweat, and even tears.

Quinolones and Fluoroquinolones

In the early 1960s, the synthetic drug *nalidixic acid* was developed—the first of the **quinolone** group of antimicrobials. It exerted a unique bactericidal effect by selectively inhibiting an enzyme (DNA gyrase) needed for the replication of DNA. Although nalidixic acid found only limited use (its only application is for urinary tract infections), it led to the development in the 1980s of a prolific group of synthetic quinolones, the **fluoroquinolones**.

The fluoroquinolones are divided into groups, each of which has a progressively broader spectrum of activity. The earliest generation includes *ciprofloxacin* (Cipro®), and a newer group includes *gemifloxacin* and *moxifloxacin*. These antibiotics, with the exception of moxifloxacin, are used to treat urinary tract infections and certain types of pneumonia. As a group, the fluoroquinolones can cause ruptured tendons. Physicians

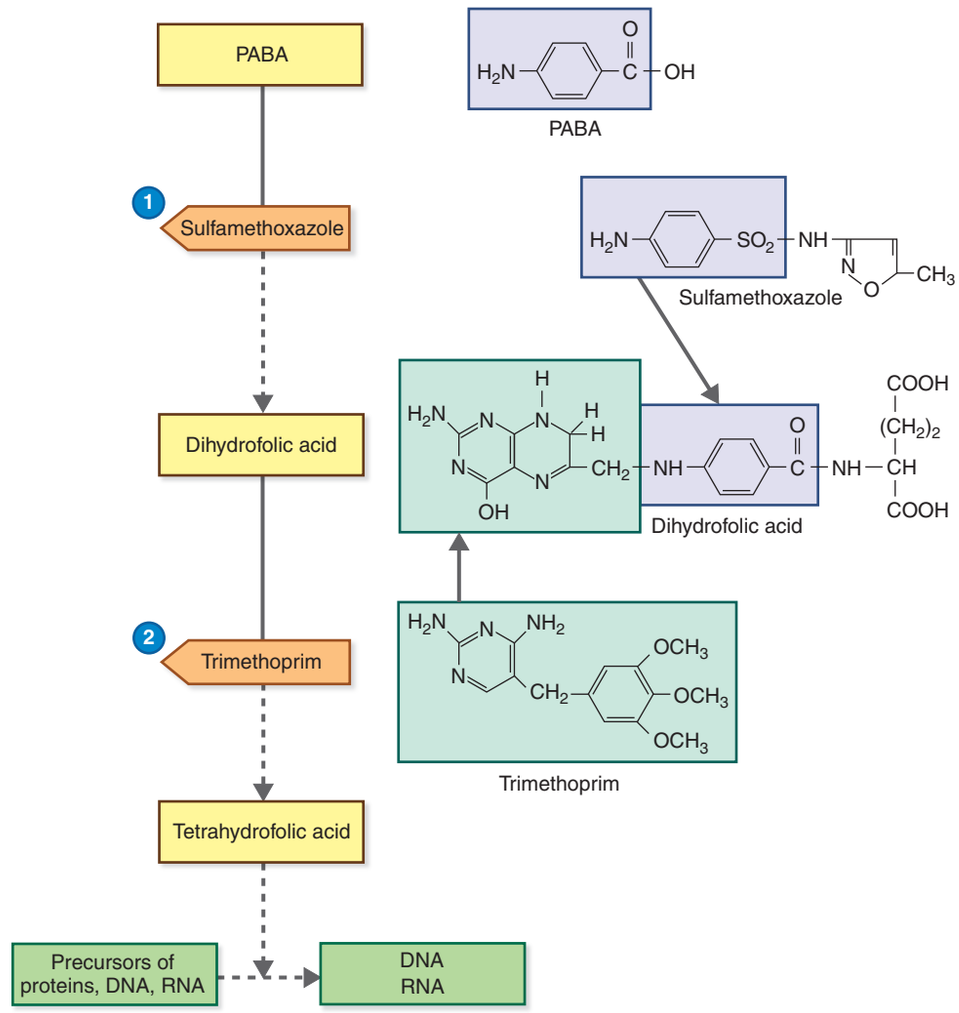


Figure 20.13 Actions of the antibacterial synthetics sulfamethoxazole and trimethoprim. SMZ-TMP works by inhibiting different stages in the synthesis of precursors of DNA, RNA, and proteins. Together the drugs are synergistic.
1 Sulfamethoxazole, a sulfonamide that is a structural analog of PABA, competitively inhibits the synthesis of dihydrofolic acid from PABA.
2 Trimethoprim, a structural analog of a portion of dihydrofolic acid, competitively inhibits the synthesis of tetrahydrofolic acid.

Q Define *synergism.*

are advised to use these drugs only when there is no other treatment option. Resistance to fluoroquinolones can develop rapidly, even during a single course of treatment.

Gepotidacin

Gepotidacin, the first drug in a new class, the triazaacenaphthylenes, is in clinical trials. This drug inhibits bacterial topoisomerase and doesn't have the disabling tendon-related effects of fluroquinolines. It is intended for treatment of urinary tract infections.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

20-11 What group of antibiotics interferes with the DNA-replicating enzyme DNA topoisomerase?

Competitive Inhibition of Essential Metabolites

Blocking a cell's ability to synthesize essential metabolites is another mode of drug action.

Sulfonamides

As noted earlier, **sulfonamides**, or **sulfa drugs**, were some of the first antimicrobial therapies created. Folic acid is an important coenzyme needed for synthesis of proteins, DNA, and RNA. Sulfa drugs are structurally similar to a folic acid precursor called *para-aminobenzoic acid* (PABA), allowing them to competitively bind with the enzyme meant for PABA and thereby block folic acid production. The drugs are bacteriostatic and do not harm human cells because we take up folic acid from our diet rather than synthesize it.

A combination of *sulfamethoxazole* and *trimethoprim* (SMZ-TMP) is widely used today. Figure 20.13 shows its mode of action. The combined concentration requires only 10% of the amount of the drugs that would be needed if they were used separately—an example of drug synergism (see Figure 20.23). The combination also has a broader spectrum of action and greatly reduces emergence of resistant strains.

Antibiotics have diminished the importance of sulfa drugs. However, they continue to be effective treatments for certain urinary tract infections, and the drug silver sulfadiazine is also used to control infections in patients with burns.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

20-12 Both humans and bacteria need PABA to make folic acid, so why do sulfa drugs adversely impact only bacterial cells?

Antifungal Drugs

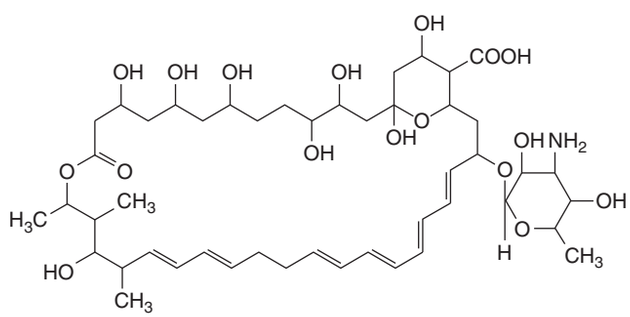
Eukaryotes, such as fungi, use the same mechanisms to synthesize proteins and nucleic acids as higher animals. Therefore it's more difficult to find a point of selective toxicity in eukaryotes than in prokaryotes. Moreover, fungal infections are becoming more frequent because of their role as opportunistic infections in immunosuppressed individuals, especially people with AIDS. Here, we discuss the antifungal drugs according to their mode of action. Table 20.5 summarizes the commonly used drugs effective against fungi, viruses, protozoans, and helminths.

Agents Affecting Fungal Sterols

Many antifungal drugs target the sterols in the plasma membrane. In fungal membranes, the principal sterol is ergosterol; in animal membranes, cholesterol. When the biosynthesis of ergosterol in a fungal membrane is interrupted, the membrane becomes excessively permeable, killing the cell. Inhibition of ergosterol biosynthesis is the basis for the selective toxicity of many antifungals, which include members of the polyene, azole, and allylamine groups.

Polyenes *Nystatin* is the most commonly used member of the antifungal **polyenes** (Figure 20.14). It is used to treat thrush (oral *Candida* infections). Amphotericin B is the mainstay of clinical treatment for systemic fungal diseases such as histoplasmosis, coccidioidomycosis, and blastomycosis. The drug's toxicity, particularly to the kidneys, is a strongly limiting factor in these uses.

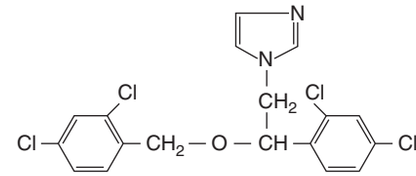
Azoles Some of the most widely used antifungal drugs are represented among the **azole** antibiotics. Before they made their appearance, the only drugs available for systemic fungal infections were amphotericin B and flucytocine (discussed later). The first azoles were **imidazoles**, such as *clotrimazole* and *miconazole* (Figure 20.15), which are now sold without a prescription for topical application for treatment of cutaneous mycoses, such as athlete's foot and vaginal yeast infections. An important addition to this group was *ketoconazole*, which has an unusually broad spectrum of activity among fungi. Ketoconazole, taken orally, proved to be an alternative to amphotericin B for many systemic fungal infections. Ketoconazole topical ointments are used to treat dermatomycoses of the skin.



Nystatin

Figure 20.14 The structure of the antifungal drug nystatin, representative of the polyenes.

Q Why do polyenes injure fungal plasma membranes and not bacterial membranes?



Miconazole

Figure 20.15 The structure of the antifungal drug miconazole, representative of the imidazoles.

Q How do azoles affect fungi?

The use of ketoconazole for systemic infections diminished when the less toxic **triazole** antifungal antibiotics were introduced. The original drugs of this type were *fluconazole* and *itraconazole*. They are much more water soluble, making them easier to use and more effective against systemic infections. The triazole group was expanded with the introduction of *voriconazole*, which has become the new standard for treatment of *Aspergillus* infections in immunocompromised patients. The newest triazole drug to be approved is *posaconazole*, which is used to treat systemic *Aspergillus* and *Candida* infections.

Allylamines The **allylamines** represent a class of antifungals that inhibit the biosynthesis of ergosterols in a manner that is functionally distinct from that of the azoles. *Terbinafine* and *naftifine*, examples of this group, are frequently used when resistance to azole-type antifungals arises.

Agents Affecting Fungal Cell Walls

The fungal cell wall contains compounds unique to these organisms. Other than ergosterol, a primary target for selective toxicity among these compounds is β-glucan. The **echinocandins** inhibit the biosynthesis of glucans, resulting in an incomplete cell wall and cell lysis. A member of the echinocandin group, *caspofungin*, is used to treat systemic *Aspergillus* infections and *Candida* infections.

Agents Inhibiting Nucleic Acids

Flucytosine, an analog of the pyrimidine cytosine, interferes with the biosynthesis of RNA and therefore protein synthesis. The selective toxicity lies in the ability of the fungal cell to convert flucytocine into 5-fluorouracil, which is incorporated into RNA and eventually disrupts protein synthesis. Mammalian cells lack the enzyme to make this conversion of the drug.

TABLE 20.5 Antifungal, Antiviral, Antiprotozoan, and Antihelminthic Drugs

	Comments
ANTIFUNGAL DRUGS	
Agents affecting fungal sterols (plasma membrane)	
Polyenes	
Nystatin	Thrush
Amphotericin B	Systemic fungal infections
Azoles	
Clotrimazole, miconazole	Topical use
Ketoconazole	Systemic fungal infections
Allylamines	
Terbinafine, naftifine	Treatment of diseases resistant to azoles
Agents affecting fungal cell walls	
Echinocandins	
Caspofungin	Systemic fungal infections
Agents inhibiting nucleic acids	
Flucytosine	*Candida, Cryptococcus*
Other antifungal drugs	
Griseofulvin	Inhibits mitotic microtubules; fungal infections of the skin
Tolnaftate	Athlete's foot
Pentamidine	*Pneumocystis* pneumonia
ANTIVIRAL DRUGS	
Entry and Fusion Inhibitors	
Maraviroc	Binds CCR5 of HIV
Uncoating, Genome Integration, and Nucleic Acid Synthesis Inhibitors	
Amantadine, zimantadine	Widespread resistance in *Influenzavirus*
Zidovudine (AZT), tenofovir, emtricitabine	Inhibit HIV reverse transcriptase
Acyclovir, ganciclovir	Used primarily against herpesviruses
Ribavirin, lamivudine	Used to treat hepatitis B and C
Adefovir dipivoxil	Treatment of lamivudine-resistant infections of hepatitis B virus
Cidofovir	Cytomegalovirus infections
Assembly and Exit Inhibitors	
Nirmatrelvir, ritonavir, molnupiravir	SARS-CoV-2 protease inhibitors
Saquinavir	HIV protease inhibitor
Zanamivir, oseltamivir, peramivir	Inhibit neuraminidase of *Influenzavirus*
Interferons	
Alpha interferon	Hepatitis B, D, C
ANTIPROTOZOAN DRUGS	
Chloroquine, mefloquine	Malaria; effective against red blood cell stage only
Artemisinin	Malaria
Diiodohydroxyquin	Amebic infections; amebicidal
Suramin	African trypanosomiasis
Metronidazole, tinidazole	Giardiasis, amebiasis, trichomoniasis
Miltefosine	Amebic encephalitis
ANTIHELMINTHIC DRUGS	
Niclosamide	Prevents ATP generation in mitochondria, tapeworm infections
Praziquantel	Alters plasma membrane, kills flatworms
Pyrantel pamoate	Neuromuscular block; kills roundworms
Mebendazole, albendazole	Inhibit absorption of nutrients, intestinal roundworms
Ivermectin	Paralyzes intestinal roundworms

Flucytosine has a narrow spectrum of activity and is most effective against *Candida* and *Cryptococcus*. It is usually used with another antifungal because resistance develops quickly.

Other Antifungal Drugs

Griseofulvin is an antifungal produced by a species of *Penicillium*. It has the interesting property of being active against superficial dermatophytic fungal infections of the hair (tinea capitis, or ringworm) and nails, even though its route of administration is oral. The drug apparently binds selectively to the keratin found in the skin, hair follicles, and nails. Its mode of action is primarily to block microtubule assembly, which interferes with mitosis and thereby inhibits fungal reproduction.

Tolnaftate is a common alternative to miconazole as a topical agent for the treatment of athlete's foot. Its mechanism of action is inhibition of sterol synthesis. *Undecylenic acid* is a fatty acid that has antifungal activity against athlete's foot, although it isn't as effective as tolnaftate or the imidazoles.

Pentamidine is used in treating *Pneumocystis* pneumonia, a frequent complication in immunocompromised individuals. It also is useful in treating several protozoan-caused tropical diseases. The drug's mode of action is unknown, but it appears to inhibit synthesis of nucleic acids.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

20-13 What sterol in the cell membrane of fungi is the most common target for antifungal action?

Antiviral Drugs

In parts of the world with adequate sanitation and public health infrastructure, it's estimated that at least 60% of infectious illnesses are caused by viruses, and about 15% by bacteria. Every year, at least 90% of the U.S. population suffers from a viral disease. Even so, compared to the number of antibiotics available for treating bacterial diseases, there are relatively few antiviral drugs (see Table 20.5). Many of the recently developed antiviral drugs are directed against HIV, the pathogen responsible for the pandemic of AIDS. These are discussed in Chapter 19.

Because viruses replicate within the host's cells, very often using the genetic and metabolic mechanisms of the host's own cells, it's relatively difficult to target the virus without damaging the host's cellular machinery. Many of the antivirals in use today are analogs of components of viral DNA or RNA. However, as more becomes known about the reproduction of viruses, more targets suggest themselves for antiviral action.

Entry and Fusion Inhibitors

Drugs that block the initial steps in viral infection—absorption and penetration—are **entry inhibitors**. Several entry inhibitors are being investigated for treating hepatitis B, hepatitis C, and influenza. Entry inhibitors approved to treat HIV target the receptors that HIV uses to bind to the cell before entry, such as CCR5 (see Figure 19.14). The first of this class of drugs to target HIV infection step is *maraviroc*. Entry of HIV into the cell can also be blocked by **fusion inhibitors**, such as *enfuvirtide*. This is a synthetic peptide that blocks fusion of the virus and cell by mimicking a region of the gp41 HIV-1 (again, see Figure 19.14).

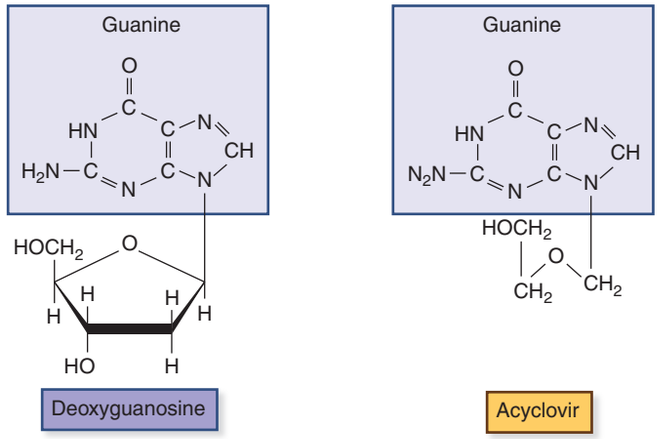
Uncoating, Genome Integration, and Nucleic Acid Synthesis Inhibitors

Prior to the start of viral replication, viral nucleic acids are released from their protein coat. Drugs that prevent this uncoating include anti–influenza A drugs *amantadine* and *rimantadine*. However, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) no longer recommends their use because of widespread resistance. Once the virus has entered the cell and uncoated, the nucleic acids are free within the host cell. In order for HIV to replicate, the viral DNA must integrate into the genome of the host cell. This requires the enzyme integrase. Drugs such as *raltegravir* and *elvitegravir* are competitive inhibitors of integrase.

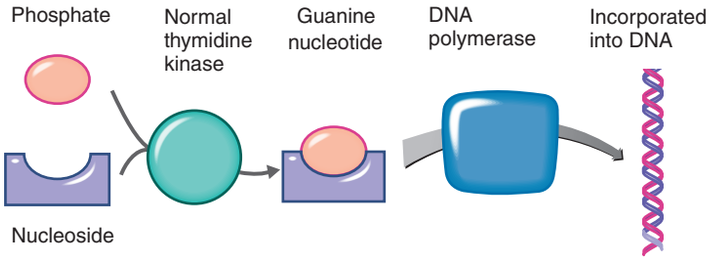
Nucleic acid synthesis is an important target for antivirals, especially for the treatment of HIV and herpes infections. Many of these drugs are analogs of nucleic acids (see Chapter 2), which inhibit RNA or DNA synthesis once the analog is incorporated. Obvious targets for nucleic acid inhibition are virus-specific enzymes such as RNA-dependent RNA polymerase used by SARS-CoV-2 and reverse transcriptase, used by HIV and hepatitis B virus during synthesis of DNA. *Remdesivir*, used to treat COVID-19, is metabolized in the human body to a nucleoside analog called remdesivir triphosphate. Remdesivir triphosphate is incorporated by RNA-dependent RNA polymerase into the new virus RNA, causing RNA replication to stop. Two other COVID-19 antivirals take advantage of the fact that SARS-CoV-2 encodes long proteins that must be cut by a viral protease to make the functional proteins the virus needs. Nirmatrelvir and ritonavir (Paxlovid) and molnupiravir (Lagevrio) are competitive inhibitors of this viral protease.

A nucleoside analog, *acyclovir* is used for treating herpes infections, especially genital herpes. It's an especially useful treatment in immunosuppressed individuals. Acyclovir is selectively used by the viral enzyme thymidine kinase (**Figure 20.16**). The drugs *famciclovir* and *ganciclovir* are derivatives of acyclovir and have a similar mode of action. *Ribavirin* resembles the nucleoside guanine and accelerates the already high mutation rate of RNA viruses until the accumulation of errors reaches a crisis point, killing the virus. It is used to treat hepatitis C infections. In combination with a monoclonal antibody (palivizumab), it is used to treat RSV infections. More recently, a nucleotide analog, *tenofovir*, has been introduced for patients whose hepatitis B infections are resistant to *lamivudine*. This drug competitively inhibits the virus's reverse transcriptase. Another nucleoside analog, *cidofovir*, is currently used to treat cytomegalovirus infection of the eye.

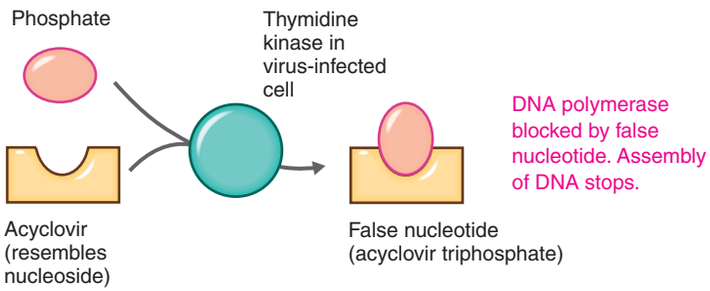
Not all drugs that inhibit reverse transcriptase are nucleoside or nucleotide analogs. For example, a few **non-nucleoside inhibitors**, such as *nevirapine*, block RNA synthesis by other mechanisms.



(a) Acyclovir structurally resembles the nucleoside deoxyguanosine.



(b) The enzyme thymidine kinase combines phosphates with nucleosides to form nucleotides, which are then incorporated into DNA.



(c) Acyclovir has no effect on a cell not infected by a virus, that is, with normal thymidine kinase. In a virally infected cell, the thymidine kinase is altered and converts the acyclovir (which resembles the nucleoside deoxyguanosine) to a false nucleotide, which blocks DNA synthesis by DNA polymerase.

Figure 20.16 The structure and function of the antiviral drug acyclovir.

Q Why are viral infections generally difficult to treat with chemotherapeutic agents?

Baloxavir, used to treat influenza, is a competitive inhibitor of the viral endonuclease. This enzyme is needed to make the binding site for viral RNA replication.

Assembly and Exit Inhibitors

The production of infectious viral particles requires the enzymatic cleavage of protein precursors by viral proteases. Some drugs, called **protease inhibitors**, block this step. Examples are the drugs used to treat COVID-19: nirmatrelvir and ritonavir (Paxlovid®) and molnupiravir (Lagevrio) are competitive inhibitors of the viral protease. Several protease inhibitors, such as *saquinavir*, are used to treat HIV infections.

For a virus to reproduce, it must bud from the host cell. For influenza viruses, this requires the enzyme neuraminidase (Chapter 24). Currently three drugs are competitive inhibitors of this enzyme, allowing them to block release of viral particles. They are *zanamivir* (Relenza®), *oseltamivir* (Tamiflu®), and *peramivir* (Rapivab®).

Interferons

Cells infected by a virus often produce alpha and beta interferons, which inhibit further spread of the infection. Interferons are classified as cytokines, discussed in Chapter 17. *Alpha interferon* (see Chapter 16) is currently a drug of choice for viral hepatitis infections. The production of interferons can be stimulated by a recently introduced antiviral, *imiquimod*. This drug is often prescribed to treat genital warts.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

20-14 One of the most widely used antivirals, acyclovir, inhibits the synthesis of DNA. Humans also synthesize DNA, so why is the drug still useful in treating viral infections?

Antiretrovirals for Treating HIV/AIDS

The interest in effective treatments for the pandemic of HIV infections has led to many antiviral drugs developed for this. Several of the drugs discussed previously are used to treat HIV. HIV is an RNA virus, and its reproduction depends on the enzyme reverse transcriptase, which controls the synthesis of DNA from RNA (see Figure 9.9). The term **antiretroviral** currently implies a drug that is used to treat HIV infections. Antiretroviral drugs are discussed in Chapter 19.

Antiprotozoal and Antihelminthic Drugs

For hundreds of years, quinine from the bark of the cinchona tree was the only drug known to be effective for treating a parasitic infection. Peruvian natives had observed that quinine, which is an effective muscle relaxant, controlled the shivering symptomatic of malarial fever. It is now known that this occurs because the drug interferes with the protozoan's ability to metabolize hemoglobin. Quinine was first introduced into Europe in the early 1600s. There are now several antiprotozoan and antihelminthic drugs, although many of them are still considered experimental. Qualified physicians can request and receive several of these drugs from the CDC.

Antiprotozoan Drugs

Quinine is still used to control the protozoan disease malaria, but synthetic derivatives, such as *chloroquine*, have largely

replaced it. For preventing malaria in areas where the disease has developed resistance to chloroquine, *mefloquine* is often recommended, although serious psychiatric side effects have been reported.

As resistance to the most widely used and least expensive drug, chloroquine, becomes almost universal, the products of a Chinese shrub, *artemisinin* and *artemisinin-based combination therapies (ACTs)*, have become the principal treatment of malaria. Artemisinin was a traditional Chinese medicine long used for controlling fevers: Chinese scientists, following this lead, identified its antimalarial properties in 1971. ACTs kill the asexua1 and sexual stages of *Plasmodium* spp. in the blood (Figure 12.20) by forming free radicals (Chapter 6) that damage proteins. Compared to choroquinine, ACTs are expensive—a problem in malaria-prone areas. This has led to widespread distribution of low-cost, but ineffective, counterfeit ACTs. Some of these contain enough of the genuine drug to evade simple tests, but these low dosages are accelerating development of resistance.

Quinacrine is used to treat the protozoan disease giardiasis. It is not produced in the United States because of its genotoxicity. *Diiodohydroxyquin (iodoquinol)* is an important drug prescribed for several intestinal amebic diseases, but its dosage must be carefully controlled to avoid optic nerve damage.

Suramin was first synthesized by Paul Ehrlich in 1904 and has been used since 1922 to treat African trypanosomiasis and the helminthic disease river blindness. Its mechanism of action isn't known; however, it appears to selectively inhibit glycolytic enzymes in the parasites.

Metronidazole is one of the most widely used antiprotozoan drugs. It's unique in that it acts not only against parasitic protozoa but also against obligately anaerobic bacteria. It's the drug of choice for vaginitis caused by *Trichomonas vaginalis* bacteria. It's also used in treating giardiasis and amebic dysentery. Under anaerobic conditions, metronidazole is reduced, and this reduced metronidazole interferes with DNA synthesis.

Tinidazole, a drug similar to metronidazole, is effective in treating giardiasis, amebiasis, and trichomoniasis. Another antiprotozoan agent, and the first to be approved for the chemotherapy of diarrhea caused by *Cryptosporidium hominis*, is *nitazoxanide*. It's active in treating giardiasis and amebiasis. Because it interferes with an enzyme used in the anaerobic conversion of pyruvic acid to acetyl-CoA, it is also used to treat some bacterial infections.

Miltefosine, first developed as an anticancer drug, is a core drug listed by the World Health Organization (WHO) to treat leishmaniasis (see Chapter 23). This drug inhibits cytochrome oxidase in mitochondria. It is available from the CDC to treat life-threatening amebic encephalitis (see Chapter 22).

Antihelminthic Drugs

Tapeworm infections have decreased in developed and developing countries as sewage treatment has improved. However, the CDC has recorded an increased incidence of tapeworm infections in the United States and other developed countries from eating sushi made with freshwater fish. To estimate the incidence, the CDC documents requests for *niclosamide*, which is the usual first choice in treatment. The drug is effective because it inhibits ATP production under aerobic conditions. *Praziquantel* is about equally effective for treating tapeworms; it kills worms by altering the permeability of their plasma membranes. Praziquantel has a broad spectrum of activity and is also highly effective in treating several fluke-caused diseases, especially schistosomiasis. It causes the helminths to undergo muscular spasms and also makes them susceptible to attack by the immune system. Apparently, its action exposes surface antigens, which antibodies can then reach.

Mebendazole and *albendazole* are broad-spectrum antihelminthics that have few side effects and have become the drugs of choice for treating many intestinal helminthic infections. Both drugs inhibit the formation of microtubules in the cytoplasm, which interferes with the absorption of nutrients by the parasite. These drugs are also widely used in the livestock industry; for veterinary applications, they are relatively more effective in ruminant animals.

Ivermectin is a drug with a wide range of applications. It is produced by only one species of organism, *Streptomyces avermectinius*, which was isolated from the soil near a Japanese golf course. It's effective against many nematodes (roundworms) and several mites (such as scabies), ticks, and insects (such as head lice). (Some mites and insects happen to share certain similar metabolic channels with affected helminths.) Ivermectin has been used primarily in the livestock industry as a broad-spectrum antihelminthic. Its exact mode of action is uncertain, but the final result is paralysis and death of the helminth without affecting mammalian hosts.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

20-15 What was the first drug for parasitic infections?

Tests to Guide Chemotherapy

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

20-16 Describe two tests for microbial susceptibility to chemotherapeutic agents.

Different microbial species and strains have different degrees of susceptibility to chemotherapeutic agents. Moreover, the susceptibility of a microorganism can change with time, even during therapy with a specific drug. Thus, a physician must know the sensitivities of the pathogen before treatment can be started. However, physicians often can't wait for sensitivity tests and must begin treatment based on their "best guess" estimation of the most likely pathogen causing the illness.

Several tests can be used to indicate which chemotherapeutic agent is most likely to combat a specific pathogen. However,

if the organisms have been identified—for example, *P. aeruginosa*, beta-hemolytic streptococci, or gonococci—certain drugs can be selected without specific testing for susceptibility. Tests are necessary only when susceptibility isn't predictable or when antibiotic resistance problems develop.

Culturing bacteria or fungi is necessary to test susceptibility. Testing to determine the presence of specific antibiotic-resistance genes is available for a few of the most common bacteria, including the *mecA* gene in MRSA and *vanA* and *vanB* genes in enterococci. However, the absence of the mecA gene doesn't tell you whether there's another as-yet unknown resistant mechanism. Moreover, genetic testing can't provide the minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC) information that is vital for treatment. We discuss MIC next.

The Diffusion Methods

Probably the most widely used, although not necessarily the best, method of testing is the **disk-diffusion method**, also known as the *Kirby-Bauer test* (Figure 20.17). A Petri plate containing an agar medium is inoculated ("seeded") uniformly over its entire surface with a standardized amount of a test organism. Next, filter paper disks impregnated with known concentrations of chemotherapeutic agents are placed on the solidified agar surface. During incubation, the chemotherapeutic agents diffuse from the disks into the agar. The farther the agent diffuses from the disk, the lower its concentration. If the chemotherapeutic agent is effective, a **zone of inhibition** forms around the disk after a standardized incubation. The diameter of the zone can be measured; in general, the larger the zone, the more sensitive the microbe is to the antibiotic. For a drug with poor solubility, however, the zone of inhibition indicating that the microbe is sensitive will be smaller than for another drug that is more soluble and has diffused more widely. The zone diameter is compared to a standard table for that drug and concentration, and the organism is reported as *sensitive*, *intermediate*, or *resistant*. Results obtained by the disk-diffusion method are often inadequate for many clinical purposes. However, the test is simple and inexpensive and is most often used when more sophisticated laboratory facilities aren't available.

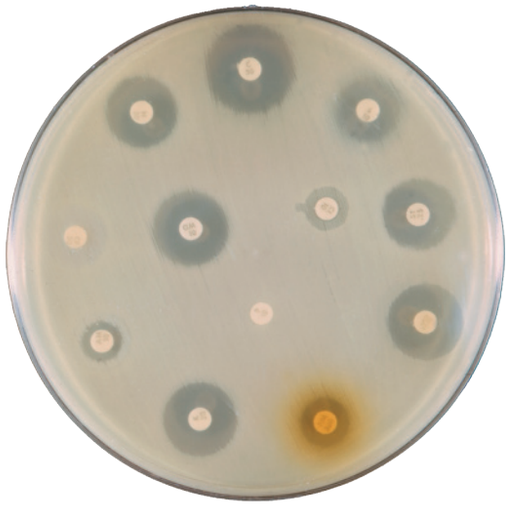


Figure 20.17 The disk-diffusion method for determining the activity of antimicrobials. Each disk contains a different chemotherapeutic agent, which diffuses into the surrounding agar. The clear zones indicate inhibition of growth of the microorganism swabbed onto the agar surface.

Q Which agent is the most effective against the bacterium being tested?

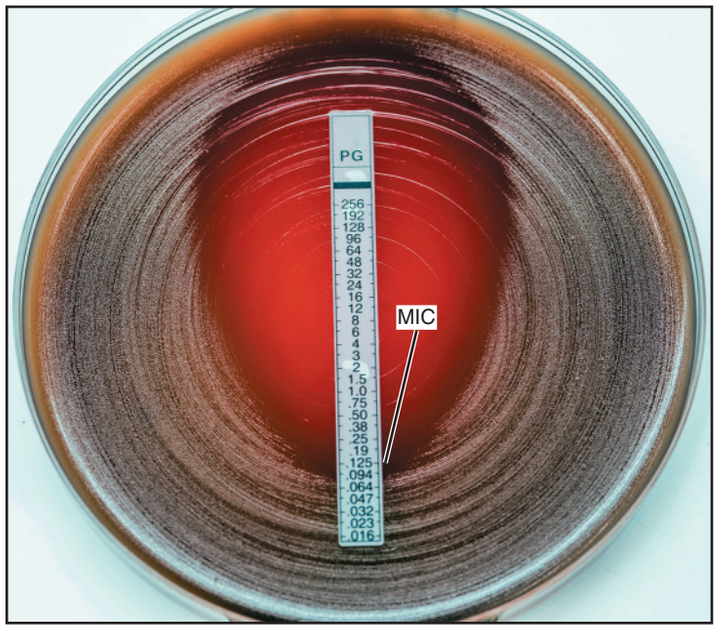


Figure 20.18 The E test (for epsilometer), a gradient diffusion method that determines antibiotic sensitivity and estimates minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC). The plastic strip, which is placed on an agar surface inoculated with test bacteria, contains an increasing gradient of the antibiotic. The MIC in μg/ml is clearly shown.

Q What is the MIC of this E test?

A more advanced diffusion method, the **E test**, enables a lab technician to estimate the **minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC)**, the lowest antibiotic concentration that prevents visible bacterial growth. A plastic-coated strip contains a gradient of antibiotic concentrations, and the MIC can be read from a scale printed on the strip (Figure 20.18).

Broth Dilution Tests

A weakness of the diffusion methods is that they don't determine whether a drug is bactericidal and not just bacteriostatic. In contrast, a **broth dilution test** is often useful in determining both the MIC and the **minimal bactericidal concentration (MBC)** of an antimicrobial drug. First, the MIC is determined by making a sequence of decreasing concentrations of the drug in a broth,

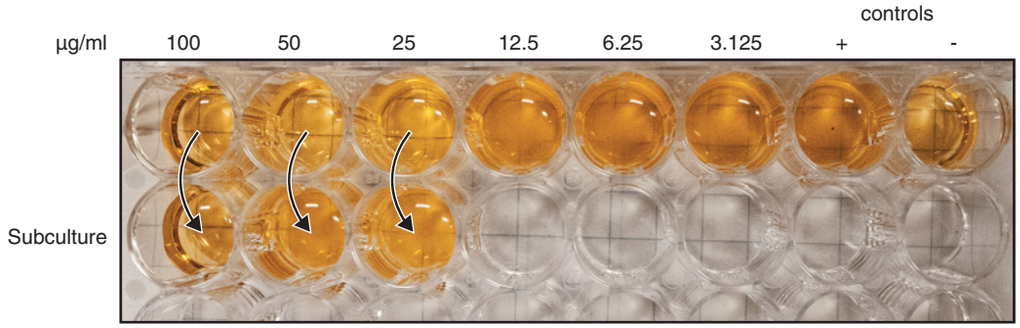


Figure 20.19 A microdilution, or microtiter, plate used for testing for minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC) of antibiotics. Such plates contain as many as 96 shallow wells that contain measured concentrations of antibiotics in nutrient broth. The test microbe is added simultaneously, with a multichannel micropipette, to all the wells in a row of test antibiotics. To ensure that the microbe is capable of growth in the absence of the antibiotic, wells that contain no antibiotic are also inoculated (positive control). To ensure against contamination by unwanted microbes, wells that contain nutrient broth but no antibiotics or inoculum are included (negative control). After incubation, samples from the test wells with no growth are subcultured, that is used to inoculate nutrient broth.

Q What is the *MIC of this antibiotic*? The *MBC*?

which is then inoculated with the test bacteria (Figure 20.19). Then, the wells that don't show growth (higher concentration than the MIC) can be cultured in broth or on agar plates free of the drug. If growth occurs in this broth, the drug was not bactericidal, and the MBC can be determined. Determining the MIC and MBC is important because it avoids the excessive or erroneous use of expensive antibiotics and minimizes the chance of toxic reactions that larger-than-necessary doses might cause.

Dilution tests are often highly automated. The drugs are purchased already diluted into broth in wells formed in a plastic tray. A suspension of the test organism is prepared and inoculated into all the wells simultaneously by a special inoculating device. After incubation, the turbidity may be read visually, although clinical laboratories with high workloads may read the trays with spectrophotometers that enter the data into a computer that provides a printout of the MIC.

Other tests are also useful for the clinician; a determination of the microbe's ability to produce β-lactamase is one example. One popular, rapid method makes use of a cephalosporin that changes color when its β-lactam ring is opened. In addition, a measurement of the *serum concentration* of an antimicrobial is especially important when toxic drugs are used. These assays tend to vary with the drug and may not always be suitable for smaller laboratories.

The hospital personnel responsible for infection control prepare periodic reports called **antibiograms** that record the susceptibility of organisms encountered clinically. These reports are especially useful for detecting the emergence of strains of pathogens resistant to the antibiotics in use at the institution.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

20-16 In the disk-diffusion test, the zone of inhibition indicating sensitivity around the disk varies with the antibiotic. Why?

CLINICAL CASE

Dr. Singh sends her sample of *P. aeruginosa* to the CDC for analysis. The ophthalmologist in the other *P. aeruginosa* case also sends a sample. With a broth dilution assay, the MIC against these bacteria is 100 µg/ml. The decimal reduction time (DRT) of gentamicin against this bacterium at 4°C was determined to be 4 days and at 23°C, 20 min.

How much time would be required to kill 200 cells at each temperature? (Hint: See Chapter 7.)

Resistance to Antimicrobial Drugs

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

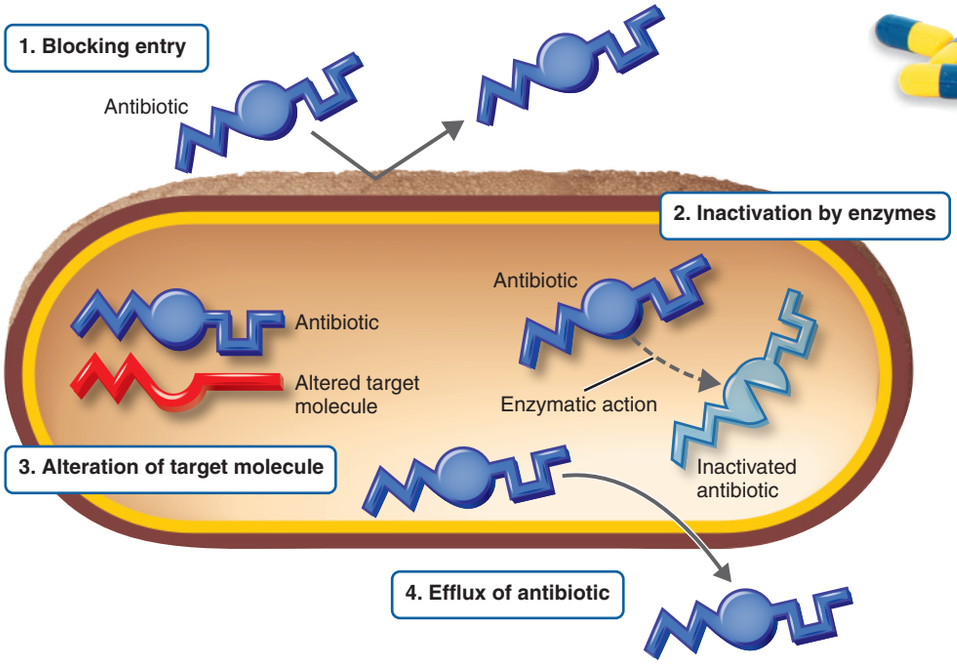
20-17 Describe the mechanisms of drug resistance.

One of the triumphs of modern medicine has been the development of antibiotics and other antimicrobials. But the development of resistance to them by the target microbes is a worldwide public health problem. In the U.S., nearly 3 million antibiotic-resistant infections occur annually. When first exposed to a new antibiotic, the susceptibility of microbes tends to be high, and their mortality rate is also high; there may be only a handful of survivors from a population of billions. The surviving microbes usually have some genetic mutation that accounts for their survival, and natural selection favors their persistence. A term adopted for these bacteria is **persister cells**. See the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 26.

Once acquired, the mutation is transmitted *vertically* by normal reproduction, and the progeny carry the genetic characteristics of the parent microbe. Because of the rapid reproductive

FOUNDATION FIGURE 20.20

Bacterial Resistance to Antibiotics



KEY CONCEPTS

- There are only a few mechanisms of microbial resistance to antimicrobial agents: blocking the drug's entry into the cell, inactivation of the drug by enzymes, alteration of the drug's target site, or efflux of the drug from the cell.
- The mechanisms of bacterial resistance to antibiotics are limited. Knowledge of these mechanisms is critical for understanding the limitations of antibiotic use.

rate of bacteria, only a short time elapses before practically the entire population is resistant to the new antibiotic.

Some genetic differences arise from random mutations. These mutational differences can be spread *horizontally* among bacteria by processes such as conjugation (Figure 8.30) or transduction (Figure 8.32). Drug resistance is often carried by plasmids (Figure 8.25) or by small segments of DNA called transposons (Figure 8.26), which can jump from one piece of DNA to another.

Thousands of antibiotic-resistance genes and proteins against 240 antibiotics are known. The WHO has compiled a list of bacteria of critical importance because they are resistant to nearly all antibiotics and cause healthcare-associated infections. These bacteria are *A. baumannii,* (see the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 7) *P. aeruginosa,* and Enterobacteriaceae.

Bacteria that are resistant to large numbers of antibiotics are popularly designated as **superbugs**. Although the most publicized of superbugs is MRSA, superbug status has also been assigned to a range of bacteria, both gram-positive and gram-negative. Faced with infections by such pathogens, medical science has only limited treatment options.

Mechanisms of Resistance

There are only a few major mechanisms by which bacteria become resistant to chemotherapeutic agents. See Figure 20.20. At least one clinically troublesome bacterium, *A. baumannii*, has developed resistance by means of all of the major mechanisms illustrated in Figure 20.20.

Enzymatic Destruction or Inactivation of the Drug

Destruction or inactivation by enzymes mainly affects antibiotics that are natural products, such as the penicillins and cephalosporins. Totally synthetic chemical groups of antibiotics such as the fluoroquinolones are less likely to be affected in this manner, although they can be neutralized in other ways. This may simply reflect the fact that the microbes have had fewer years to adapt to these unfamiliar chemical structures.

The penicillin/cephalosporin antibiotics, and also the carbapenems, share a structure, the β-lactam ring, which is the target for β-lactamase enzymes (see Figure 20.8) that selectively hydrolyze it. Nearly 200 variations of these enzymes are now known, each effective against minor variations in the β-lactam ring structure. When this problem first appeared, the basic penicillin molecule was modified. The first of these penicillinase-resistant drugs was methicillin, but resistance to methicillin soon appeared. The best-known of these resistant bacteria is the widely publicized pathogen MRSA, which is resistant to practically all antibiotics, not just methicillin (see the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 14). In a recent year, the CDC ascribed

10,000 deaths to this pathogen. In hospital patients, the mortality rate of invasive infections with MRSA can be as high as 20%. Also, *S. aureus* is not the only bacterium of concern; other important pathogens, such as *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, have also developed resistance to β-lactam antibiotics. Furthermore, MRSA has continued to develop resistance against a succession of new drugs such as vancomycin (the "antibiotic of last resort"), even though this antibiotic has a mode of action against cell wall synthesis that is totally different from that of the penicillins. These highly adaptable bacteria have even developed resistance against antibiotic combinations that include *clavulanic acid*, specifically developed as an inhibitor of β-lactamases.

At first, MRSA was almost exclusively a problem in hospitals and similar health-related settings, accounting for about 20% of bloodstream infections there. However, it's now the cause of frequent outbreaks in the general community, is more virulent, and affects otherwise healthy individuals. These strains produce a toxin, a leukocidin, that destroys neutrophils, a primary innate defense against infection. Therefore, the descriptive terminology now differentiates *community-associated MRSA* from *healthcare-associated MRSA*. There is an obvious need for rapid tests to detect MRSA bacteria (generally from nasal swabs) so that infections can be isolated and transmission reduced. The most promising of these are based on PCR technology and yield reliable results within 1 or 2 hours.

Prevention of Penetration to the Target Site within the Microbe

Gram-negative bacteria are relatively more resistant to antibiotics because of the nature of their cell wall, which restricts absorption of many molecules to movements through openings called porins (see gram-negative cell walls in Chapter 4). Some bacterial mutants modify the porin opening so that antibiotics are unable to enter the periplasmic space. Perhaps even more important, when β-lactamases are present in the periplasmic space, the antibiotic that enters is degraded in the periplasmic space, before it can enter the cell.

Alteration of the Drug's Target Site

The synthesis of proteins involves the movement of a ribosome along a strand of messenger RNA, as shown in Figure 20.4. Several antibiotics, especially those of the aminoglycoside, tetracycline, and macrolide groups, utilize a mode of action that inhibits protein synthesis at this site. Minor modifications at this site can neutralize the effects of antibiotics without significantly affecting cellular function.

Interestingly, the main mechanism by which MRSA gained ascendancy over methicillin was not by a new inactivating enzyme, but by modifying the penicillin-binding protein (PBP) on the cell's membrane. β-Lactam antibiotics act by binding with the PBP, which is required to initiate the cross-linking of peptidoglycan and form the cell wall. MRSA strains become resistant because they have an additional, modified, PBP. The antibiotics continue to inhibit the activity of the normal PBPs, preventing their participation in forming the cell wall. But the additional PBP present on the mutants, although it binds weakly with the antibiotic, still allows synthesis of cell walls that is adequate for survival of MRSA strains. Vancomycin resistance is also due to a modification of the PBP.

Rapid Efflux (Ejection) of the Antibiotic

Certain proteins in the plasma membranes of gram-negative bacteria act as pumps that expel antibiotics, preventing them from reaching an effective concentration. This mechanism was originally observed with tetracycline antibiotics, but it confers resistance among practically all major classes of antibiotics. Bacteria normally have many such efflux pumps to eliminate toxic substances.

Variations of Mechanisms of Resistance

Variations on these mechanisms also occur. For example, a microbe could become resistant to trimethoprim by synthesizing very large amounts of the enzyme against which the drug is targeted. Conversely, polyene antibiotics can become less effective when resistant organisms produce smaller amounts of the sterols against which the drug is effective. Of particular concern is the possibility that such *resistant mutants* will increasingly replace the susceptible normal populations. Figure 20.21 shows how rapidly bacterial numbers increase as resistance develops.

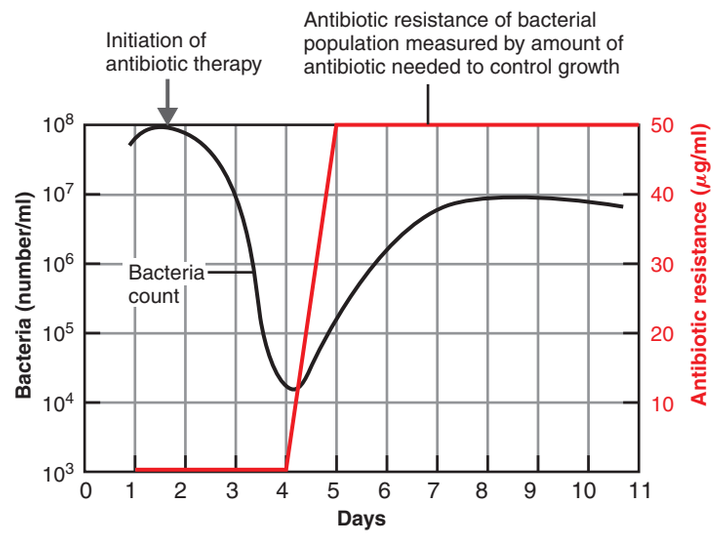


Figure 20.21 The development of an antibiotic-resistant mutant during antibiotic therapy. The patient, suffering from a chronic kidney infection caused by a gram-negative bacterium, was treated with streptomycin. The red line records the antibiotic resistance of the bacterial population. Until about the fourth day, essentially all of the bacterial population is sensitive to the antibiotic. Then persister cells (mutants in the population that are resistant to streptomycin) appear. The bacterial population in the patient rises as these mutants replace the sensitive population.

Q This test used streptomycin and a gram-negative bacterium. What would the lines have looked like if penicillin G had been the antibiotic?

CLINICAL CASE

It would take 12 days to kill 200 cells at 4°C and 60 minutes at 23°C. The gentamicin is more effective at the warmer temperature, but the tissues will deteriorate too quickly at this temperature. Hence, the corneas are stored at 4°C to preserve the tissue even though gentamicin is less effective at 4°C.

How might storage of the corneas in gentamicin have contributed to these infections?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 **Part 4** Part 5 Part 6

Antibiotic Misuse

Antibiotics have been much misused, especially in developing countries. In some regions, well-trained health care personnel are scarce, which is perhaps one reason antibiotics typically can be purchased without a prescription. A survey in rural Bangladesh, for example, showed that only 8% of antibiotics had been prescribed by a physician. In much of the world, antibiotics are sold to treat headaches and for other inappropriate uses (Figure 20.22). Even when the use of antibiotics is appropriate, dose regimens are usually shorter than needed to eradicate the infection, thereby encouraging the survival of resistant strains of bacteria. Outdated, adulterated (impure), and even counterfeit antibiotics are also common.

The developed world is also contributing to the rise of antibiotic resistance. The CDC estimates that in the United States, 30% of the antibiotic prescriptions for ear infections, 100% of the prescriptions for the common cold, and 50% of prescriptions for sore throats were unnecessary or inappropriate to treat the problem pathogen. At least 70% of the antibiotics produced in the United States each year are not used to treat disease but are used in animal feeds to promote growth—a practice that is being discouraged by the CDC, FDA, and consumers (see the Clinical Focus box). In 2006, the use of antibiotics as a growth enhancer in animals was banned in European Union countries, and in the United States in 2012, the FDA prohibited the use of cephalosporin-class antibiotics in food-producing animals. In 2013, the FDA also created a voluntary plan for the industry to phase out use of some antibiotics. Livestock growers are beginning to substitute essential oils (Chapter 7) to prevent infections in animals. Some chicken farmers are now using carvacrol, an essential oil found in oregano (Figure 7.7e), to reduce *Campylobacter* in chickens. One study shows glutamine-fed pigs compared to antibiotic-treated pigs gained as much weight and had a lower blood plasma TNF, a marker of inflammation.

Cost and Prevention of Resistance

Antibiotic resistance is costly in many ways beyond those that are apparent in higher rates of disease and mortality. Developing new drugs to replace those that have lost effectiveness is costly. New drugs are typically much more expensive than older drugs and can sometimes be priced in a range that makes them difficult to afford even in developed countries. In less-developed parts of the world, the costs are simply unaffordable.

There are many strategies that patients and health care workers can adopt to prevent resistance from developing. Even if they feel they have recovered, patients should always finish the full regimen of their antibiotic prescriptions to discourage the survival and proliferation of the antibiotic-resistant microbes. Patients should never use leftover antibiotics to treat new illnesses or use antibiotics that were prescribed to someone else. Health care workers should avoid unnecessary prescriptions and ensure that the choice and dosages of antimicrobials are appropriate to the situation. Prescribing the most specific antibiotic possible, instead of broad-spectrum antimicrobials, also decreases the chances that the antibiotic will inadvertently cause resistance among the patient's normal microbiota.

Strains of bacteria that are resistant to antibiotics are particularly common among hospital workers, where antibiotics are in constant use. When antibiotics are injected, as many are, the syringe must first be held vertically and cleared of air bubbles, a practice that causes aerosols of the antibiotic solution to form. When the nurse or physician inhales these aerosols, the microbial inhabitants of the nostrils are exposed to the drug. Inserting the needle into sterile cotton to expel air bubbles can prevent aerosols from forming. Many hospitals have special monitoring committees to review the use of antibiotics for effectiveness and cost.

Figure 20.22 Antibiotics have been sold without prescriptions for many decades in much of the world.

Q How does this practice lead to development of resistant strains of pathogens?

CLINICAL CASE

Gentamicin is used in commercial storage medium for corneas because it has been reported to be more effective than penicillin or cephalothin in reducing the colony counts of staphylococci and gram-negative rods in a buffered storage medium. Adding gentamicin is intended to preserve the medium before use, not to sterilize corneal tissue. Storage in an antibiotic could select for antibiotic-resistant bacteria.

What antimicrobial drug would work best to treat *P. aeruginosa*?

Part 1 | Part 2 | Part 3 | Part 4 | **Part 5** | Part 6

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

20-17 What is the most common mechanism that a bacterium uses to resist the effects of penicillin?

Antibiotic Safety

In our discussions of antibiotics, we have occasionally mentioned side effects. These may be potentially serious, such as liver or kidney damage or hearing impairment. Also, some individuals may have hypersensitivity reactions to certain antibiotics, such as penicillins (see the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 19). However, antibiotics are not the only type of drug that can trigger side effects. The administration of almost any drug involves assessing risks against benefits; this is called the *therapeutic index*.

Sometimes, the use of two or more drugs can cause toxic effects that do not occur when one of the drugs is taken alone. One drug may also neutralize the intended effects of another. For example, rifampin neutralizes the effectiveness of contraceptive pills.

Finally, each patient's unique circumstances must be considered in prescribing antibiotics. Patients who are pregnant, for example, should take only those antibiotics that are classified by the FDA as presenting no evidence of risk to the fetus. Tetracyclines are not advised for children, who might experience a brownish discoloration of the teeth, or during pregnancy, as they might cause maternal liver damage.

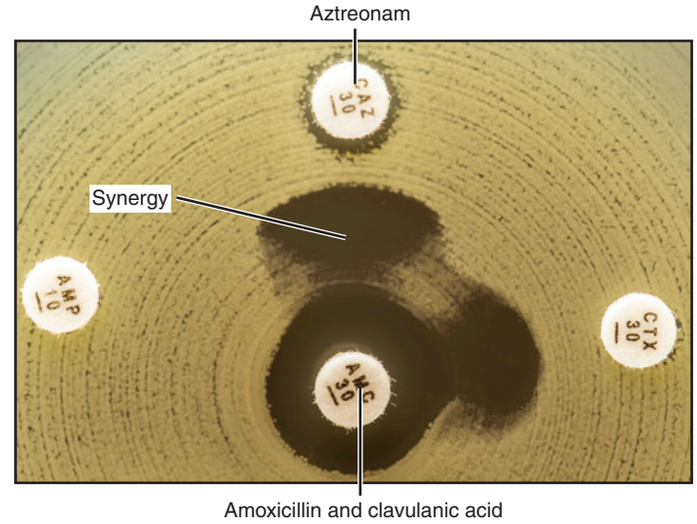


Figure 20.23 An example of synergism between two different antibiotics. The photograph shows the surface of an agar medium inoculated with bacteria. The clear area of no growth around the AMC paper disk shows inhibition by amoxicillin-clavulanic acid. There is a small zone of inhibition around the CAZ disk containing ceftazidime and no inhibition by cefotaxime (CTX) or ampicillin (AMP). The additional, larger clear area between two disks illustrates inhibition of bacterial growth through the effects of synergy.

Q What would the plate look like if amoxicillin-clavulanic acid and cefotaxime had been antagonistic?

Effects of Combinations of Drugs

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

20-18 Compare and contrast synergism and antagonism.

The chemotherapeutic effect of two drugs given simultaneously is sometimes greater than the effect of either given alone (Figure 20.23). This phenomenon, called **synergism**, was introduced earlier. For example, in the treatment of bacterial endocarditis, penicillin and streptomycin are much more effective when taken together than when either drug is taken alone. Damage to bacterial cell walls by penicillin makes it easier for streptomycin to enter.

Other combinations of drugs can show **antagonism**. For example, the simultaneous use of penicillin and tetracycline is often less effective than when either drug is used alone. By stopping the growth of the bacteria, the bacteriostatic drug tetracycline interferes with the action of penicillin, which requires bacterial growth.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

20-18 Tetracycline sometimes interferes with the activity of penicillin. How?

Future of Antimicrobial Agents

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

20-19 Name three areas of research on new antimicrobial agents.

As pathogens develop resistance to current antimicrobials, the need for new ones becomes more pressing. But as noted earlier, developing new antimicrobial agents is not easy. There is genuine concern that we may be approaching a postantibiotic era when infections of minor cuts or scratches might again cause deaths.

CLINICAL FOCUS Antibiotics in Animal Feed Linked to Human Disease

As you read through this box, you will encounter a series of questions that microbiologists ask as they combat antibiotic resistance. Try to answer each question before going on to the next one.

1. Livestock growers use antibiotics in the feed of closely penned animals because the drugs reduce the number of bacterial infections and accelerate the animals' growth. Today, more than half the antibiotics used worldwide are given to farm animals.

   Meat and milk that reach the consumer's table are not heavily laden with antibiotics, so what is the risk of using antibiotics in animal feed?

2. The constant presence of antibiotics in these animals is an example of "survival of the fittest." Antibiotics kill some bacteria, but other bacteria have properties that help them survive.

   How do bacteria acquire resistance genes?

3. Resistance to antimicrobial drugs in bacteria results from mutations. These mutations can be transmitted to other bacteria via horizontal gene transfer (Figure A).

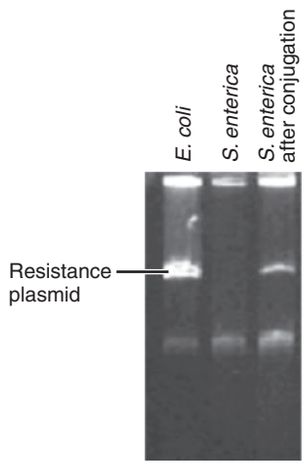


Figure A Cephalosporin resistance in *E. coli* transferred by conjugation to *Salmonella enterica* in the intestines of turkeys.

   What evidence would show that veterinary use of antibiotics promotes resistance?

4. Vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus* spp. (VRE) were first isolated in France in 1986 and were found in the United States in 1989. Vancomycin and another glycopeptide, avoparcin, were widely used in animal feed in Europe. In 1997, veterinary use of avoparcin was banned in Europe. After the ban, VRE-positive samples decreased from 100% to 25%, and the human carrier rate dropped from 12% to 3%.

   ***Campylobacter jejuni* is a commensal in the intestines of poultry. What human disease does *C. jejuni* cause?**

5. Annually in the United States, *Campylobacter* causes over 1.5 million foodborne infections. Fluoroquinolone (FQ)-resistant *C. jejuni* in humans emerged in the 1990s (Figure B).

   What FQs are used to treat human infections? (*Hint*: See Table 20.3.)

6. The emergence corresponds with the presence of FQ-resistant *C. jejuni* in chicken meat purchased from grocery stores. FQ-resistant *C. jejuni* could be selected for in patients who had previously taken an FQ. However, a study of *Campylobacter* isolates from patients between 1997 and 2001 showed that patients infected with FQ-resistant *C. jejuni* had not taken an FQ prior to their illness and had not traveled out of the United States.

   Suggest a way to decrease FQ resistance.

7. The use of FQ in chicken feed was banned in 2005 in the United States, in hope of reducing FQ resistance. A variety of approaches may be necessary to reduce the possibility of illness: (1) prevent colonization in the animals at the farm, (2) reduce fecal contamination of meat during processing at the slaughterhouse, and (3) use proper storage and cooking methods.

Data sources: CDC and National Antimicrobial Resistance Monitoring System.

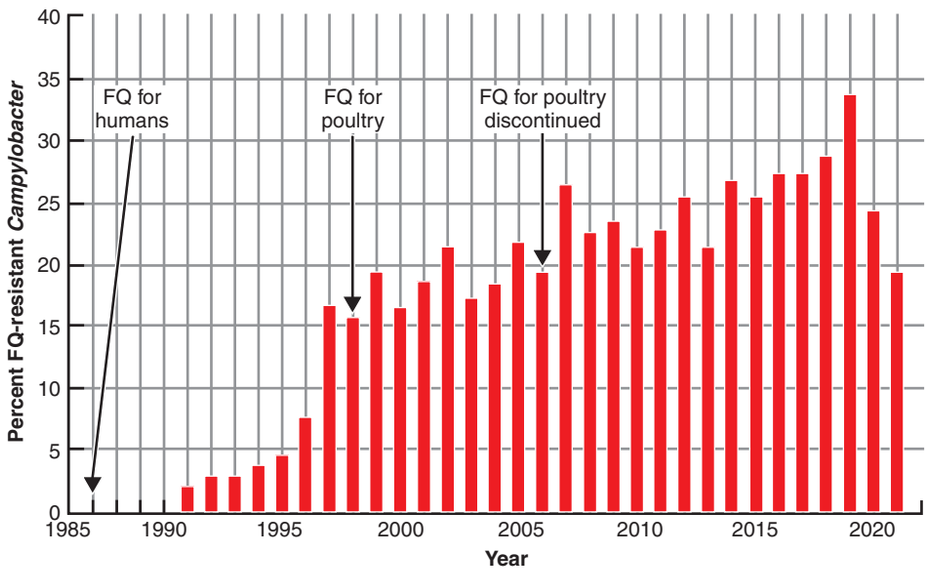


Figure B Fluoroquinolone-resistant *Campylobacter jejuni* isolated from humans in the United States, 1986–2021.

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

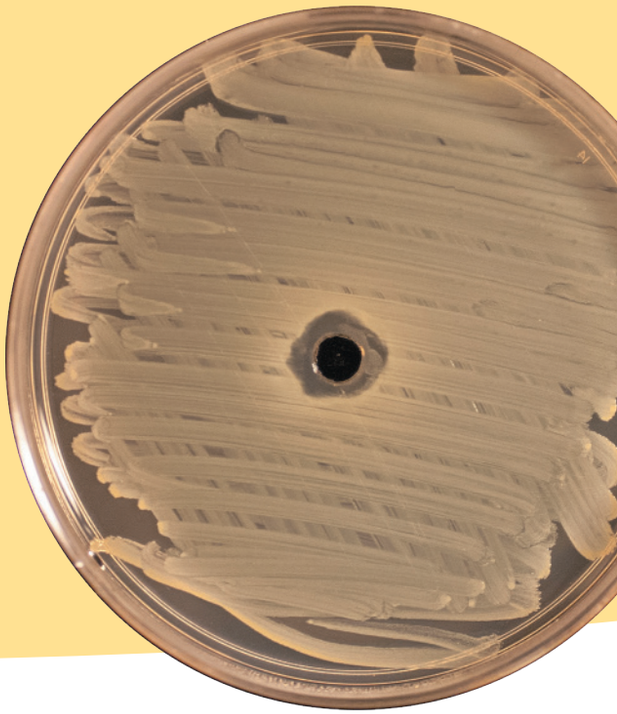
Looking to the Microbiome for the Next Great Antibiotic

We know that the human body contains an ecosystem of microorganisms that interact with their environment, the human body, and each other. Normal microbiota keep other bacteria from using resources they need and thereby inhibit growth of some pathogens that would otherwise colonize. In looking for the mechanisms of this sort of competitive exclusion, researchers have found new antibiotics by looking at the molecules produced by many of our body's normal residents.

One source of a potential drug is *Lactobacillus gasseri*, a resident of the vagina. It produces lactocillin, a chemical that experiments show to be a promising agent for inhibiting gram-positive bacteria. Molecularly speaking, lactocillin is a thiopeptide that works by binding to the 50S ribosomal subunit. Work is under way to create thiopeptide antibiotics based on this same mode of action.

Another potential drug is lugdunin, a large molecule produced by the bacterium *Staphylococcus lugdunensis*. Researchers in Germany discovered the compound after noticing people whose noses were colonized by *S. lugdunensis* were less likely to carry pathogenic strains of *S. aureus*. An antibiotic based on lugdunin could be very helpful because the molecule has been shown to inhibit MRSA, *Enterococcus* species, and other bacteria exhibiting increasing antibiotic resistance.

These new compounds are not ready for clinical trials, but their discovery is encouraging researchers to look for more novel antibiotics in the human microbiome.



Growth of MRSA is inhibited by a medium (pH 7) in which *Lactobacillus* spp. grew (in the center well).

Existing antibiotics continue to encounter problems with resistance in large part because their developers have relied on a limited range of targets (see Figure 20.2). A truly new approach to controlling pathogens is to target their virulence factors rather than the microbe producing them. For example, instead of targeting the cholera bacillus, a drug might target the cholera toxin, neutralizing or destroying it. Another potential target is to sequester iron, which pathogens need for growth (see Chapter 15). A drug that sequesters iron would therefore limit proliferation of the pathogens.

The FDA requires that antibiotics be tested against exponentially growing pathogens. This has led to a near-absence of drugs to combat the dormant persister cells mentioned earlier. These cells may start growing after antibiotic treatment, when the concentration of antibiotic in the body is reduced. Additionally, the mutation rate increases in the dormant cells, which may support the development of antibiotic-resistant mutants. Most drugs fail when tested against such cells.

Another basic problem awaiting a solution is a lack of drugs that treat gram-negative infections. The cell wall of gram-negative bacteria makes them inherently resistant to most antibiotics. In fact, the antibiotics developed over the past few decades have worked only against gram-positive species.

Another roadblock to the development of new antimicrobials is the limitation of current laboratory techniques for growing microbes. Over 99% of bacterial species found in nature cannot be grown on conventional laboratory media. Attempting to reproduce the cellular environment in the lab to grow and test antibiotic sensitivity of noncultivatable bacteria is complicated and expensive.

Other unsolved problems include the multidrug resistance of the bacteria comprising biofilms, and the many drug misuse issues mentioned earlier.

The most promising new avenue of research to develop new antibiotics will probably be based on knowledge of the basic genetic structure of microbes. A computerized analysis of the genomes of the human microbiome, for example, has recently led to the discovery of new antimicrobial compounds. See **Exploring the Microbiome** for examples of antibiotics produced by a few of the body's resident microbes.

Microorganisms are not the only organisms that produce antimicrobial substances. Many birds, amphibians, plants, and mammals often produce *antimicrobial peptides*. In fact, such peptides are part of the defense systems of most forms of life, and literally hundreds of such peptides have been identified. Amphibian skin glands are a rich source of antimicrobial

peptides that attack bacterial membranes. The best-known of these are the *magainins* (from the Hebrew for shield). It's especially interesting that this antimicrobial has existed for an indefinite time without significant development of resistance. Another antimicrobial substance, a steroid named *squalamine*, has been isolated from sharks. New, exotic ecological niches, such as deep-sea sediments, will need to be explored.

Many bacteria produce antimicrobial peptides called *bacteriocins* (see Chapter 14). Research has shown some of these exhibit a broad spectrum of activity, whereas others have a narrow spectrum. The mechanisms of action differ from those of most antibiotics. Some bacteriocins affect the cell membrane, and others affect protein production. The oral toxicity of bacteriocins is very low. Early trials of a few bacteriocins against *C. difficile* and other gram-positive bacteria show promising results.

Phage therapy has been used in Russia, Georgia, and Poland for more than 50 years. Bacteriophages are viruses that can kill their host bacterial cells (see Chapter 13). In recent years, researchers in the United States and Europe have started looking at bacteriophages to replace some antibiotic use. Phages are specific for their host bacteria and may be useful to treat antibiotic-resistant infections. Environmentally, the soil is full of bacteriophages; experts have estimated that every couple of days they kill about half the bacteria on Earth.

Serendipity, or accidental discovery, is always a consideration. For example, it's worth mentioning that the first quinolone, nalidixic acid, was discovered as an intermediate in the synthesis of an antimalarial drug, chloroquine, and that the oxazolidinones were originally developed to treat plant diseases.

Finally, there is a special need for new antiviral drugs as well as antifungal and antiparasitic drugs effective against helminths and protozoans, because our arsenal in these categories is very limited.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

20-19 What are defensins? (*Hint:* See Chapter 16.)

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

Dr. Singh prescribes doripenem for her patient. Doripenem is a carbapenem, which has an extremely broad spectrum of activity and is especially effective against *P. aeruginosa.* The patient recovers from her infection and has no further complications from her surgery.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 **Part 6**

Study Outline

Introduction (p. 560)

1. An antimicrobial drug is a chemical substance that destroys pathogenic microorganisms with minimal damage to host tissues.
2. Chemotherapeutic agents include chemicals that combat disease in the body.

The History of Chemotherapy (pp. 561–562)

1. Paul Ehrlich developed the concept of chemotherapy to treat microbial diseases.
2. Sulfa drugs came into prominence in the 1930s.
3. Alexander Fleming discovered the first antibiotic, penicillin, in 1928; its first clinical trials were done in 1940.
4. Most antibiotics are made by *Streptomyces* bacteria.

Spectrum of Antimicrobial Activity (pp. 562–563)

1. Antibacterial drugs affect many targets in a prokaryotic cell.
2. Fungal, protozoan, and helminthic infections are more difficult to treat because these organisms have eukaryotic cells.
3. Narrow-spectrum drugs affect only a select group of microbes (gram-positive cells, for example); broad-spectrum drugs affect a more diverse range of microbes.
4. Small, hydrophilic drugs can affect gram-negative cells.
5. Antimicrobial agents should not cause excessive harm to normal microbiota.
6. Superinfections occur when a pathogen develops resistance to the drug being used or when normally resistant microbiota multiply excessively.

The Action of Antimicrobial Drugs (pp. 563–565)

1. Antimicrobials generally act either by directly killing microorganisms (bactericidal) or by inhibiting their growth (bacteriostatic).
2. Some agents, such as penicillin, inhibit cell wall synthesis in bacteria.
3. Other agents, such as chloramphenicol, tetracyclines, and streptomycin, inhibit protein synthesis by acting on 70S ribosomes.
4. Ionophore and polypeptide antibiotics damage plasma membranes.
5. Some agents inhibit nucleic acid synthesis.
6. Agents such as sulfanilamide act as antimetabolites by competitively inhibiting enzyme activity.

Common Antimicrobial Drugs (pp. 566–579)

Antibacterial Antibiotics: Inhibitors of Cell Wall Synthesis (pp. 566–571)

1. All penicillins contain a β-lactam ring.

2. Natural penicillins produced by *Penicillium* are effective against gram-positive cocci and spirochetes.
3. Penicillinases (β-lactamases) are bacterial enzymes that destroy natural penicillins.
4. Semisynthetic penicillins are resistant to penicillinases and have a broader spectrum of activity than natural penicillins.
5. Carbapenems are broad-spectrum antibiotics that inhibit cell wall synthesis.
6. The monobactam aztreonam affects only gram-negative bacteria.
7. Cephalosporins inhibit cell wall synthesis and are used against penicillin-resistant strains.
8. Polypeptides such as bacitracin inhibit cell wall synthesis primarily in gram-positive bacteria.
9. Vancomycin inhibits cell wall synthesis and may be used to kill penicillinase-producing staphylococci.
10. Isoniazid (INH) and ethambutol inhibit cell wall synthesis in mycobacteria.

Inhibitors of Protein Synthesis (pp. 571–573)

11. Chloramphenicol, aminoglycosides, tetracyclines, glycylcyclines, macrolides, streptogramins, oxazolidinones, and pleuromutilins inhibit protein synthesis at 70S ribosomes.

Injury to Membranes (p. 573)

12. Lipopeptides polymyxin B and bacitracin cause damage to plasma membranes.

Nucleic Acid Synthesis Inhibitors (pp. 573–574)

13. Rifamycin inhibits mRNA synthesis; it is used to treat tuberculosis.
14. Quinolones and fluoroquinolones inhibit DNA gyrase.

Competitive Inhibition of Essential Metabolites (pp. 574–575)

15. Sulfonamides competitively inhibit folic acid synthesis.
16. SMZ-TMP competitively inhibits dihydrofolic acid synthesis.

Antifungal Drugs (pp. 575–577)

17. Polyenes, such as nystatin and amphotericin B, combine with plasma membrane sterols and are fungicidal.
18. Azoles and allylamines interfere with sterol synthesis and are used to treat cutaneous and systemic mycoses.
19. Echinocandins interfere with fungal cell wall synthesis.
20. The antifungal agent flucytosine is an antimetabolite of cytosine.
21. Griseofulvin interferes with eukaryotic cell division and is used primarily to treat skin infections caused by fungi.

Antiviral Drugs (pp. 577–578)

22. Entry inhibitors and fusion inhibitors bind to viral attachment and receptor sites.
23. Nucleoside and nucleotide analogs, such as acyclovir and zidovudine, inhibit DNA or RNA synthesis.
24. Inhibitors of viral enzymes prevents viral assembly and exit.
25. Alpha interferons inhibit the spread of viruses to new cells.

Antiprotozoan and Antihelminthic Drugs (pp. 578–579)

26. Chloroquine, artemisinin, quinacrine, diiodohydroxyquin, pentamidine, and metronidazole are used to treat protozoan infections.
27. Antihelminthic drugs include mebendazole, praziquantel, and ivermectin.

Tests to Guide Chemotherapy (pp. 579–581)

1. Tests are used to determine which chemotherapeutic agent is most likely to combat a specific pathogen.
2. These tests are used when susceptibility cannot be predicted or when drug resistance arises.

The Diffusion Methods (p. 580)

3. In the disk-diffusion test, also known as the Kirby-Bauer test, a bacterial culture is inoculated on an agar medium, and filter paper disks impregnated with chemotherapeutic agents are overlaid on the culture.
4. After incubation, the diameter of the zone of inhibition is used to determine whether the organism is sensitive, intermediate, or resistant to the drug.
5. Minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC) is the lowest concentration of drug capable of preventing microbial growth; MIC can be estimated using the E test.

Broth Dilution Tests (pp. 580–581)

6. In a broth dilution test, the microorganism is grown in liquid media containing different concentrations of a chemotherapeutic agent.
7. The lowest concentration of a chemotherapeutic agent that kills bacteria is called the minimum bactericidal concentration (MBC).

Resistance to Antimicrobial Drugs (pp. 581–585)

1. Many bacterial diseases, previously treatable with antibiotics, have become resistant to antibiotics.
2. Superbugs are bacteria that are resistant to several antibiotics.
3. Drug resistance factors are transferred horizontally between bacteria.
4. Resistance may be due to enzymatic destruction of a drug, prevention of penetration of the drug to its target site, alteration of the target site, or rapid efflux of the antibiotic.
5. The discriminating use of drugs in appropriate concentrations and dosages can minimize resistance.

Antibiotic Safety (p. 585)

1. The risk (e.g., side effects) versus the benefit (e.g., curing an infection) must be evaluated before antibiotics are used.

Effects of Combinations of Drugs (p. 585)

1. Some combinations of drugs are synergistic; they are more effective when taken together.
2. Some combinations of drugs are antagonistic; when taken together, both drugs become less effective than when taken alone.

Future of Antimicrobial Agents (pp. 585–588)

1. New agents include antimicrobial peptides, bacteriocins, and bacteriophages.
2. Virulence factors rather than cell growth factors may provide new targets.

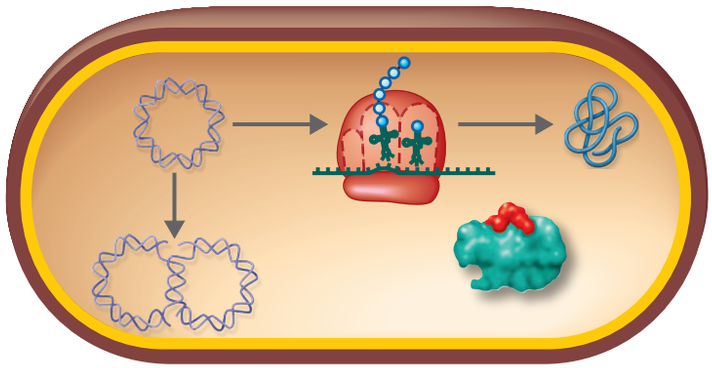
Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. DRAW IT Show where the following antibiotics work: ciprofloxacin, tetracycline, streptomycin, vancomycin, polymyxin B, sulfanilamide, rifampin, erythromycin.



2. List and explain five criteria used to identify an effective antimicrobial agent.
3. What similar problems are encountered with antiviral, antifungal, antiprotozoan, and antihelminthic drugs?
4. Define *drug resistance*. How is it produced? What measures can be taken to minimize drug resistance?
5. List the advantages of using two chemotherapeutic agents simultaneously to treat a disease. What problem can occur when two drugs are used?
6. Why does a cell die from the following antimicrobial actions?
   a. Colistimethate binds to phospholipids.
   b. Kanamycin binds to 70S ribosomes.
7. How does each of the following inhibit translation?
   a. chloramphenicol
   b. erythromycin
   c. tetracycline
   d. streptomycin
   e. oxazolidinone
   f. streptogramin
8. Dideoxyinosine (ddI) is an antimetabolite of guanine. The –OH is missing from carbon 3′ in ddI. How does ddI inhibit DNA synthesis?
9. Compare the method of action of the following pairs:
   a. penicillin and echinocandin
   b. imidazole and polymyxin B
10. NAME IT This microorganism is not susceptible to antibiotics or neuromuscular blocks, but is susceptible to protease inhibitors.

Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following pairs is *mismatched*?
   a. antihelminthic—inhibition of oxidative phosphorylation
   b. antihelminthic—inhibition of cell wall synthesis
   c. antifungal—injury to plasma membrane
   d. antifungal—inhibition of mitosis
   e. antiviral—inhibition of DNA synthesis
2. All of the following are modes of action of antiviral drugs *except*
   a. inhibition of protein synthesis at 70S ribosomes.
   b. inhibition of DNA synthesis.
   c. inhibition of RNA synthesis.
   d. inhibition of uncoating.
   e. All of the above are modes of action of antiviral drugs.
3. Which of the following modes of action would *not* be fungicidal?
   a. inhibition of peptidoglycan synthesis
   b. inhibition of mitosis
   c. injury to the plasma membrane
   d. inhibition of nucleic acid synthesis
   e. All of the above are fungicidal modes of action.
4. An antimicrobial agent should meet all of the following criteria *except*
   a. selective toxicity.
   b. the production of hypersensitivities.
   c. a narrow spectrum of activity.
   d. no production of drug resistance.
   e. All of the above are necessary criteria for an antimicrobial.
5. The most selective antimicrobial activity would be exhibited by a drug that
   a. inhibits cell wall synthesis.
   b. inhibits protein synthesis.
   c. injures the plasma membrane.
   d. inhibits nucleic acid synthesis.
   e. all of the above
6. Antibiotics that inhibit translation have side effects
   a. because all cells have proteins.
   b. only in the few cells that make proteins.
   c. because eukaryotic cells have 80S ribosomes.
   d. at the 70S ribosomes in eukaryotic cells.
   e. None of the above is correct.
7. Which of the following will *not* affect eukaryotic cells?
   a. inhibition of the mitotic spindle
   b. binding with sterols
   c. binding to 80S ribosomes
   d. binding to DNA
   e. All of the above will affect them.
8. Cell membrane damage causes death because
   a. the cell undergoes osmotic lysis.
   b. cell contents leak out.
   c. the cell plasmolyzes.
   d. the cell lacks a wall.
   e. None of the above is correct.

9. A drug that intercalates into DNA has the following effects. Which one leads to the others?
   a. It disrupts transcription.
   b. It disrupts translation.
   c. It interferes with DNA replication.
   d. It causes mutations.
   e. It alters proteins.
10. Chloramphenicol binds to the 50S portion of a ribosome, which will interfere with
    a. transcription in prokaryotic cells.
    b. transcription in eukaryotic cells.
    c. translation in prokaryotic cells.
    d. translation in eukaryotic cells.
    e. DNA synthesis.

Analysis

1. Which of the following can affect human cells? Explain why.
   a. penicillin
   b. indinavir
   c. erythromycin
   d. polymyxin
2. Why is tenofovir effective if host cells also contain DNA?
3. Some bacteria become resistant to tetracycline because they don't make porins. Why can a porin-deficient mutant be detected by its inability to grow on a medium containing a single carbon source such as succinic acid?
4. The following data were obtained from a disk-diffusion test.

Antibiotic	Zone of Inhibition
A	15 mm
B	0 mm
C	7 mm
D	15 mm

   a. Which antibiotic was most effective against the bacteria being tested?
   b. Which antibiotic would you recommend for treating a disease caused by this bacterium?
   c. Was antibiotic A bactericidal or bacteriostatic? How can you tell?
5. Why do you suppose *Streptomyces griseus* produces an enzyme that inactivates streptomycin? Why is this enzyme produced early in metabolism?
6. The following results were obtained from a broth dilution test for microbial susceptibility.

Antibiotic Concentration	Growth	Growth in Subculture
200 μg/ml	−	−
100 μg/ml	−	+
50 μg/ml	+	+
25 μg/ml	+	+

   a. The MIC of this antibiotic is _____.
   b. The MBC of this antibiotic is _____.

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. Vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus faecalis* was isolated from a foot infection of a 40-year-old male. The patient had a chronic diabetes-related foot ulcer and underwent amputation of a gangrenous toe. He subsequently developed methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* bacteremia. The infection was treated with vancomycin. One week later, he developed a vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus* (VRSA) infection. This was the first case of VRSA in the United States. What is the most likely source of the VRSA?
2. A patient with a urinary bladder infection took nalidixic acid, but her condition did not improve. Explain why her infection disappeared when she switched to a sulfonamide.
3. A patient with streptococcal sore throat takes penicillin for 2 days of a prescribed 10-day regimen. Feeling better, the patient then saves the remaining penicillin for some other time. After 3 more days, the patient suffers a relapse of the sore throat. Discuss the probable cause of the relapse.

21 Microbial Diseases of the Skin and Eyes

The skin, which covers and protects the body, is the body's first line of defense against pathogens. As a physical barrier, intact skin is almost impossible for pathogens to penetrate. Microbes can, however, enter through skin breaks that are not readily apparent, and the larval forms of a few parasites can penetrate intact skin.

The skin is an inhospitable place for most microorganisms because the secretions of the skin are acidic, and most of the skin contains little moisture. Some parts of the body, though, such as the armpit and the area between the legs, have enough moisture to support relatively large bacterial populations. Drier regions, such as the scalp, support rather small numbers of microorganisms. A few microbes that colonize skin can cause disease. One such bacterium is *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, shown in the photograph. The Clinical Case in this chapter describes how this opportunistic pathogen can cause a skin infection.

▶ ***Pseudomonas aeruginosa*** **bacteria can cause skin infections.**

In the Clinic

As the intake nurse at the clinic, you see a 5-year-old boy with a rash on his hands and feet. His mother explains that he has had the rash for the past few days. There are no other symptoms. All other family members are well. The boy attends kindergarten and day care. His temperature is 37.6°C (99.7°F). You first need to assess the rash. You note that it is maculopapular with a few vesicles. You've seen a few of these rashes this month. **What is the disease?**

Hint: See the discussion about viral diseases of the skin later in this chapter.

Structure and Function of the Skin

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

21-1 Describe the structure of the skin and mucous membranes and the ways pathogens can invade the skin.

The skin of an average adult occupies a surface area of about 1.9 m^2 and varies in thickness from 0.05 to 3.0 mm.

Layers and Secretions of the Skin

Skin consists of two principal parts, the epidermis and the dermis (Figure 21.1). The **epidermis** is the thin outer portion, composed of several layers of epithelial cells. The outermost layer of the epidermis, the *stratum corneum*, consists of many rows of dead cells that contain a waterproofing protein called **keratin**. The epidermis, when unbroken, is an effective physical barrier against microorganisms.

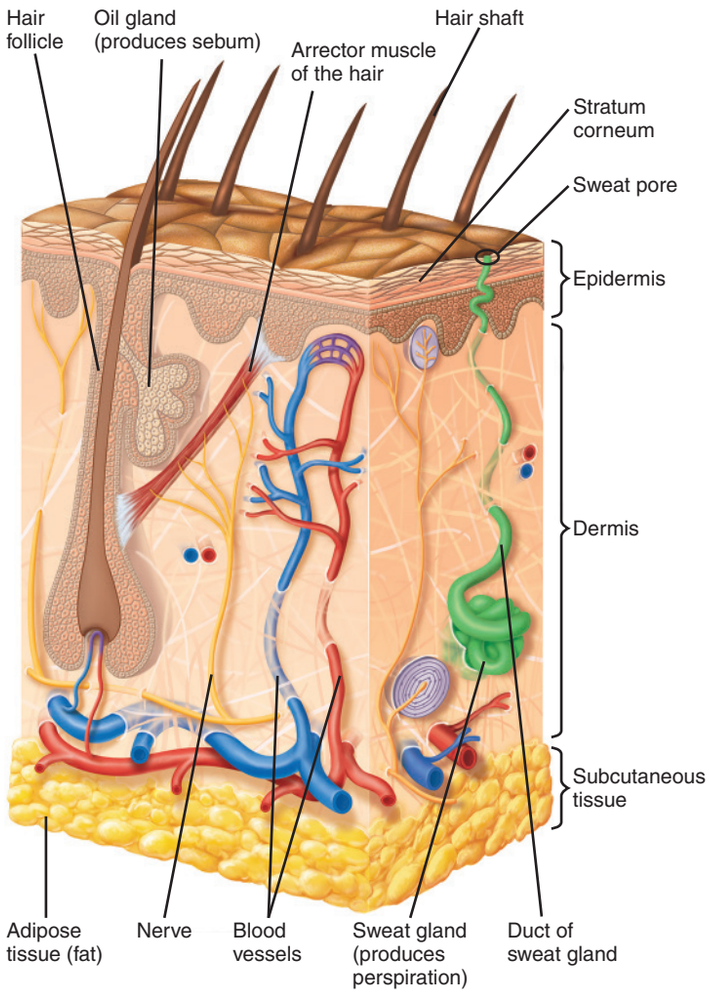


Figure 21.1 The structure of human skin. Notice the passageways between the hair follicle and hair shaft, through which microbes can penetrate the deeper tissues. They can also enter the skin through sweat pores.

Q What do you perceive from this illustration to be the weak points that would allow microbes to reach the underlying tissue by penetrating intact skin?

The **dermis** is the inner, relatively thick portion of skin, composed mainly of connective tissue. The hair follicles, sweat gland ducts, and oil gland ducts in the dermis provide passageways through which microorganisms can enter the skin and penetrate deeper tissues.

Perspiration provides moisture and some nutrients for microbial growth. However, it contains salt, which inhibits many microorganisms; the enzyme lysozyme, which is capable of breaking down the cell walls of certain bacteria; and antimicrobial peptides.

Sebum, secreted by oil glands, is a mixture of lipids (unsaturated fatty acids), proteins, and salts that prevents skin and hair from drying out. Although the fatty acids inhibit the growth of certain pathogens, sebum, like perspiration, is also nutritive for many microorganisms.

Mucous Membranes

In the linings of body cavities that open to the exterior, such as those associated with the digestive canal and respiratory, urinary, and genital systems, the outer protective barrier differs from the skin. It consists of sheets of tightly packed epithelial cells. These cells are attached at their bases to a layer of extracellular material called the *basement membrane*. Many of these cells secrete mucus—hence the name **mucous membrane**, or **mucosa**. Other mucosal cells have cilia; and, in the respiratory system, the mucous layer traps particles, including microorganisms, which the cilia sweep upward out of the body (see Figure 16.3). Mucous membranes are often acidic, a characteristic that tends to limit their microbial populations. Also, the membranes of the eyes are mechanically washed by tears, and the lysozyme in tears destroys the cell walls of gram-positive bacteria. Mucous membranes are often folded to maximize surface area; the total surface area in an average human is about 400 m^2, much more than the surface area of the skin.

Some viruses attach to compounds of the mucous membranes. SARS-CoV-2 attaches to a protein called ACE2 that is found in mucous membranes of various tissues. Several viruses, including influenza viruses, mumps virus, and rotavirus, attach to the sialic acid that is found in all cell membranes of vertebrate animals.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

21-1 Moisture in perspiration encourages microbial growth. What perspiration factors discourage growth?

CLINICAL CASE Swimming Lessons

Molly Seidel, a pediatric nurse practitioner, is examining 9-year-old Donald and his 6-year-old sister, Sharon. According to their mother, both children developed rashes around dinner time the evening before. The rashes are similarly distributed over the children's front torsos and thighs. A cloudy fluid discharges when the children scratch the itchy, raised pimples. Molly has already seen several cases of skin rashes in children today. She has diagnosed two children with chickenpox, and she has prescribed penicillin for another child with staphylococcal folliculitis.

What should Molly do next? Read on to find out.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5

Normal Microbiota of the Skin

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

21-2 Provide examples of normal skin microbiota, and state the general locations and ecological roles of its members.

Although the skin is generally inhospitable to most microorganisms, certain microbes are part of the normal microbiota (see **Exploring the Microbiome**). On superficial skin surfaces, certain aerobic bacteria produce fatty acids from sebum. These acids inhibit many microbes and allow better-adapted bacteria to flourish.

Microorganisms that find the skin a satisfactory environment are resistant to drying and to relatively high salt concentrations. The skin's normal microbiota contain relatively large numbers of gram-positive cocci, such as staphylococci and micrococci. These bacteria tend to be resistant to dry environments, and to the high osmotic pressures found in concentrated salt or sugar solutions. Scanning electron micrographs show that bacteria on the skin are often grouped into small clumps. Vigorous washing can reduce their numbers but will not eliminate them. Microorganisms remaining in hair follicles and sweat glands after washing will soon reestablish the normal populations. Areas of the body with more moisture, such as the armpits and between the legs, have higher populations of microbes. These metabolize secretions from the sweat glands and are the main contributors to body odor.

Also part of the skin's normal microbiota are gram-positive pleomorphic rods called *diphtheroids*. Some diphtheroids, such as *Cutibacterium* (Propionibacterium) *acnes*, are typically anaerobic and inhabit hair follicles. Their growth is supported by secretions from the oil glands (sebum), which, as we will see, makes them a factor in acne. These bacteria produce propionic acid, which helps maintain the low pH of skin, generally between 3 and 5. Other diphtheroids, such as *Corynebacterium xerosis* (zer-ō-sis), are aerobic and occupy the skin surface.

A few gram-negative bacteria, especially *Acinetobacter*, colonize the skin. A yeast, *Malassezia furfur*, is capable of growing on oily skin secretions and is associated with the scaling skin condition known as *dandruff*. Shampoos for treating dandruff contain the antifungals ketoconazole, zinc pyrithione, or selenium sulfide. All are active against this yeast.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

21-2 Are skin bacteria more likely to be gram-positive or gram-negative?

Microbial Diseases of the Skin

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

21-3 Differentiate staphylococci from streptococci, and name several skin infections caused by each.

21-4 List the causative agent, mode of transmission, and clinical symptoms of *Pseudomonas* dermatitis, otitis externa, acne, and Buruli ulcer.

21-5 List causative agents, modes of transmission, and symptoms of warts, smallpox, MPOX, chickenpox, shingles, cold sores, measles, rubella, fifth disease, hand-foot-mouth disease, and roseola.

21-6 Differentiate cutaneous from subcutaneous mycoses, and provide an example of each.

21-7 List the causative agent and predisposing factors for candidiasis.

21-8 List the causative agent, mode of transmission, clinical symptoms, and treatment for scabies and pediculosis.

Rashes and lesions on the skin do not necessarily indicate an infection of the skin; in fact, many skin lesions are actually caused by systemic diseases affecting internal organs. Preliminary diagnosis is often based on the appearance of the rash, so it is important to understand the terms that describe rashes. For example, small, fluid-filled lesions are **vesicles** (**Figure 21.2a**). Vesicles larger than about 1 cm in diameter are termed **bullae** (Figure 21.2b). Flat, reddened lesions are known as **macules** (Figure 21.2c). Raised lesions are called **papules** or, when they contain pus, **pustules** (Figure 21.2d). A skin rash that arises from disease conditions is called an **exanthem**; on mucous membranes, such as the interior of the mouth, such a rash is called an **enanthem**.

Bacterial Diseases of the Skin

Two genera of bacteria, *Staphylococcus* and *Streptococcus*, are frequent causes of skin-related diseases and merit special discussion. We will also discuss these bacteria in subsequent chapters in relation to other organs and conditions. Superficial staphylococcal and streptococcal infections of the skin are very common. Both genera also may produce invasive enzymes and damaging toxins.

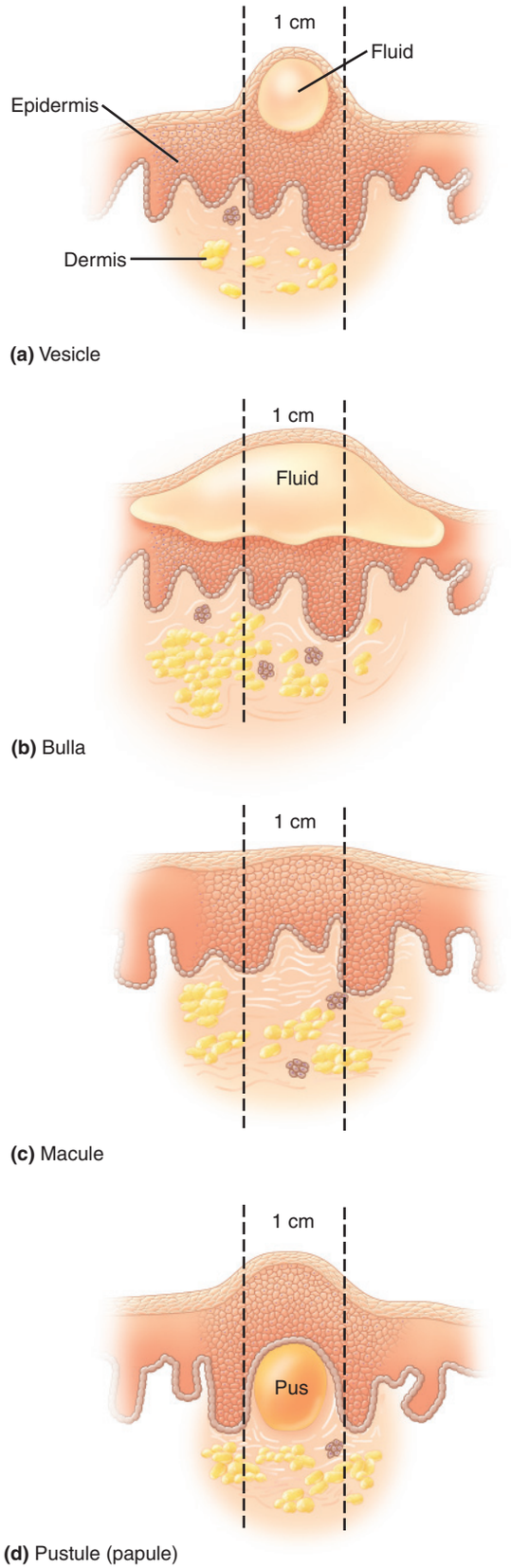


Figure 21.2 Skin lesions. (a) Vesicles are small, fluid-filled lesions. (b) Bullae are larger fluid-filled lesions. (c) Macules are flat lesions that are often reddish. (d) Papules are raised lesions; when they contain pus, as shown here, they are called pustules.

Q Are these skin lesions exanthems or enanthems?

Staphylococcal Skin Infections

Staphylococci are spherical gram-positive bacteria that form irregular clusters like grapes (see Figure 4.1d and Figure 11.22). For almost all clinical purposes, these bacteria can be divided into those that produce **coagulase**, an enzyme that coagulates (clots) fibrin in blood, and those that do not.

Coagulase-negative strains, such as *Staphylococcus epidermidis*, are very common on the skin, where they may represent 90% of the normal microbiota. They are generally pathogenic only when the skin barrier is broken or is invaded by medical procedures, such as the insertion and removal of catheters into veins. On the surface of the catheter (**Figure 21.3**), the bacteria are surrounded by a slime layer of capsular material that protects them from desiccation and disinfectants (see discussions of biofilms in Chapter 6). This is a primary factor in their importance as a healthcare-associated pathogen.

Staphylococcus aureus is the most pathogenic of the staphylococci (also see the discussion of MRSA in Chapter 20). It is a permanent resident of the nasal passages of 20% of the population, and an additional 60% carry it there occasionally. It can survive for months on surfaces. Typically, it forms golden-yellow colonies. This pigmentation protects against the antimicrobial effects of sunlight; mutants without it are also more susceptible to killing by neutrophils. Compared to its more innocuous relative *S. epidermidis*, *S. aureus* has about 300,000 more base pairs in its genome—much of it devoted to an impressive array of virulence factors and means of evading host defenses. Almost all pathogenic strains of *S. aureus* are coagulase-positive. This is significant because there is a high correlation between the bacterium's ability to form coagulase and its production of damaging toxins, several of which facilitate the spread of the organism in tissue, damage tissue, or are lethal to host defenses. In addition, some strains can cause life-threatening sepsis (Chapter 23), and others produce *enterotoxins* that affect the intestines (see Chapter 25).

Once *S. aureus* infects the skin, it stimulates a vigorous inflammatory response, and macrophages and neutrophils are attracted to the site of infection. However, the bacteria have several ways to evade these host defenses. The bacteria are protected from phagocytes by coagulase-induced fibrin clots, and if the bacterium does encounter phagocytic cells, it often produces leukocidins that kill them. It is resistant to opsonization (see The Mechanism of Phagocytosis in Chapter 16), but, failing this, it can survive well within the phagosome. Other proteins it secretes neutralize the antimicrobial peptide defensins on skin,

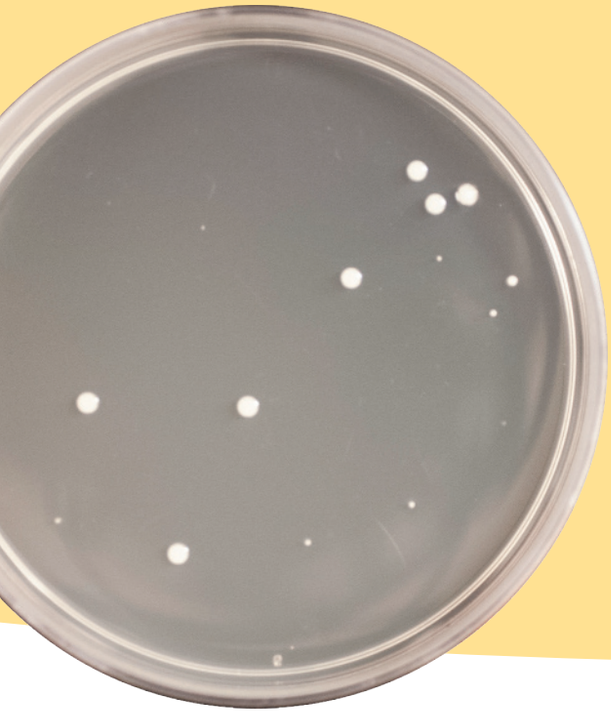
EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

Normal Skin Microbiota and Our Immune System: Allies in "Skin Wars"

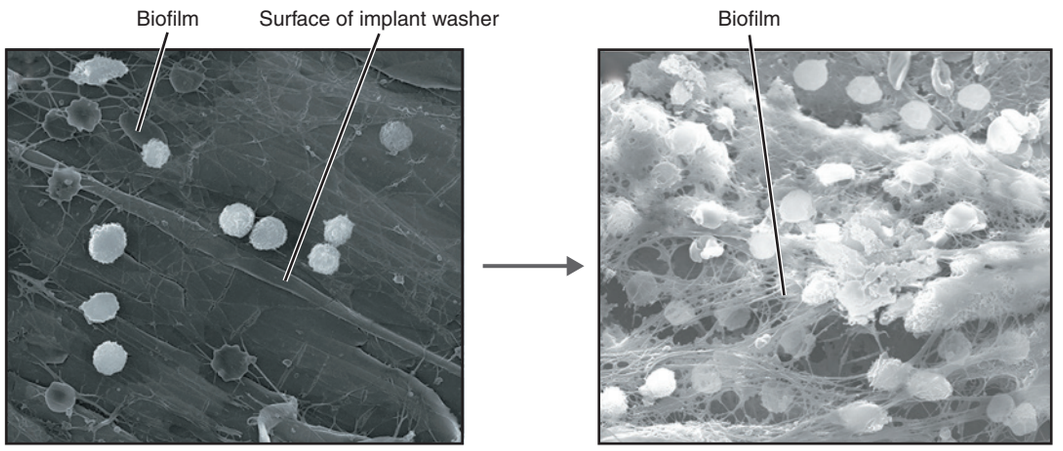
Our skin physically rubs up against countless varieties of microbes daily, forcing the established microbiota to continually defend territory against newcomers who would otherwise displace them on the epidermis. In this battle, healthy microbiota have evolved mechanisms that benefit us as well as them.

For example, *Staphylococcus epidermidis*, a nonpathogenic bacterium that features prominently in healthy skin microbiota, enlists our own immune system to help prevent growth of a competing *Staphylococcus* species that happens to be pathogenic. *S. epidermidis* does this by activating a Toll-like receptor on epidermal cells, which induces skin cells to produce beta-defensin. Beta-defensin is an antimicrobial peptide that works as part of our innate immune system. It inhibits growth of *S. aureus* and group A *Streptococcus* – but not *S. epidermidis*.

S. epidermidis also ferments glycerol, the molecular basis of fats that is naturally produced by skin cells. During fermentation, these bacteria make succinic acid, which has been shown in several studies to inhibit *C. acnes* from growing in mice and in disk-diffusion assays. One day, chronic, nonhealing wounds may be treated using the benign skin microbiome as probiotics. In fact, clinical trials are already under way for a lotion containing microbes that inhibit growth of *S. aureus* as a treatment for eczema.



Staphylococcus aureus **(large colonies) and** ***S. epidermidis*** **(small colonies).**



(a) Implant surface with adhering bacteria. Biofilm is beginning to appear.

(b) Most of the bacteria producing the slime are not visible under the biofilm.

Figure 21.3 Coagulase-negative staphylococci. These slime-producing bacteria are the most common causative agents of infection by indwelling devices. They adhere to surfaces such as the plastic joint implant in the photos. Once they have adhered to the surface (**a**) they begin to divide. Eventually (**b**) the entire surface is coated with a biofilm containing the organisms.

Q What is the most likely source of the bacteria that grew on the implant?

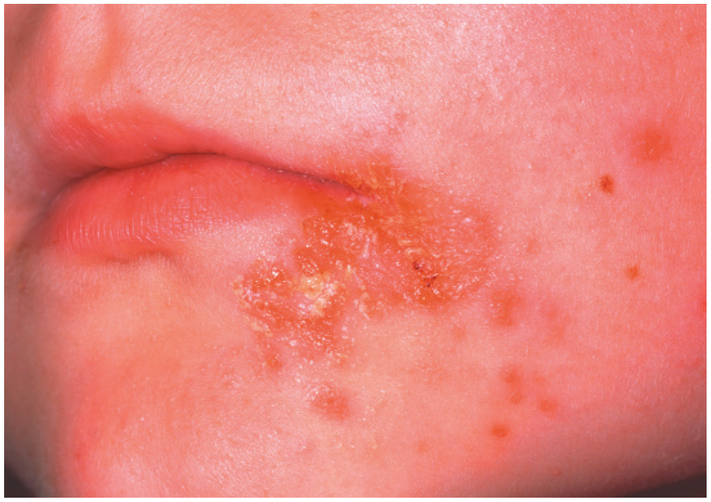


Figure 21.4 Lesions of impetigo. This disease is characterized by isolated vesicles that become crusted.

Q What bacteria most often cause impetigo?

and its cell wall is lysozyme resistant. It sometimes responds to the immune system as a superantigen (see Chapter 15) but often is able to evade the adaptive immune system entirely. All humans possess antibodies against *S. aureus*, but they do not effectively prevent repeated infections. Antibiotic-resistant strains of *S. aureus* have emerged in hospitals and in the community. (See the **Clinical Focus** box.)

Because this organism is so commonly present in human nasal passages, it is often transported from there to the skin, where it can enter the body through natural openings such as hair follicles (see Figure 21.1). Such infections, called **folliculitis**, often occur as pimples. The infected follicle of an eyelash is called a **sty**. A more serious hair follicle infection is the **furuncle (boil)**, which is a type of **abscess**, a localized region of pus surrounded by inflamed tissue. Antibiotics do not penetrate well into abscesses, and the infection is therefore difficult to treat. Draining pus from the abscess is frequently a preliminary step to successful treatment.

When the body fails to wall off a furuncle, neighboring tissue can be progressively invaded. The extensive damage is called a **carbuncle**, a hard, round deep inflammation of tissue under the skin. At this stage of infection, the patient usually exhibits the symptoms of generalized illness with fever.

Staphylococci are the most important causative organism of **impetigo**. This is a highly contagious skin infection mostly affecting children 2 to 5 years of age, among whom it is spread by direct contact. *Streptococcus pyogenes*, a pathogen that we will be discussing shortly, can also cause impetigo, although in fewer cases. Sometimes both *Sta. aureus* and *Str. pyogenes* are involved. *Nonbullous impetigo* (see the bulla in Figure 21.2b) is the more common form. The pathogen usually enters through some minor break in the skin. The infection can also spread to surrounding areas—a process called *autoinoculation*. Symptoms result from the host's response to the infection. The lesions eventually rupture and form light-colored crusts, as shown in **Figure 21.4**. Topical antibiotics are sometimes applied, but the lesions generally heal without treatment and without scarring.

The other type of impetigo, *bullous impetigo*, is caused by a staphylococcal toxin and is a localized form of staphylococcal **scalded skin syndrome**. Actually, there are two exotoxins; exfoliative toxin A remains localized and causes bullous impetigo, whereas exfoliative toxin B circulates to distant sites and causes scalded skin syndrome, as shown in **Figure 21.5**. Both toxins cause *exfoliation*, a separation of the skin layers. Outbreaks of bullous impetigo are a frequent problem in hospital nurseries, where the condition is known as **pemphigus neonatorum**, or *impetigo of the newborn*. (See the discussion of hexachlorophene in Chapter 7.)

Scalded skin syndrome is also characteristic of the late stages of **toxic shock syndrome (TSS)**. In this potentially life-threatening condition, fever, vomiting, and a sunburnlike rash are followed by shock and sometimes organ failure, especially

Figure 21.5 Lesions of scalded skin syndrome. Some staphylococci produce a toxin that causes the skin to peel off in sheets, as on the face of this child. It is especially likely to occur in children under age 2.

Q What is the name of the toxin that produces this syndrome?

CLINICAL FOCUS Infections in the Gym

As you read through this box, you will encounter a series of questions that epidemiologists ask themselves as they try to trace an outbreak to its source. Try to answer each question before going on to the next one.

1. Jason F., a 21-year-old college wrestler, goes to the college health center with an 11 cm × 5 cm area of redness on his right thigh. It is swollen and warm and tender when touched. His temperature is normal. He is given trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole.
   What is Jason's probable diagnosis?

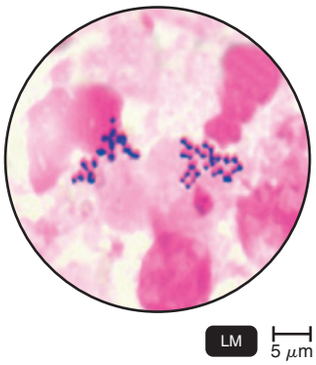


Figure A

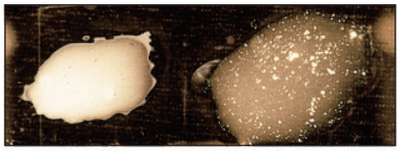


Figure B

2. Jason probably has some form of bacterial skin infection, for which he is prescribed antibiotics. After 2 days, Jason returns and says the area is worse. Examination reveals a broader area of redness. He is diagnosed with cellulitis. The pustule is opened and drained.
   What do you need to do now?
3. The pus is sent to the lab for a Gram stain and a coagulase test on the culture. The results of the Gram stain and the coagulase test are shown in **Figure A** and **Figure B**, respectively.
   What is the cause of the infection?
4. The presence of gram-positive, coagulase-positive cocci indicates *Staphylococcus aureus*. The bacterium is sent for sensitivity testing.
   Why is sensitivity testing necessary?
5. Sensitivity testing is necessary to identify the antibiotic that will be most effective in killing the bacteria. The results are shown in **Figure C**. (P = penicillin, M = methicillin, E = erythromycin, V = vancomycin, X = trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole.)
   What treatment is appropriate?
6. Based on the sensitivity testing, the most appropriate treatment is vancomycin. Over a 3-month period, 47 wrestlers who have competed in a tournament, including one member from each team, report skin lesions. Seven are hospitalized; one receives surgical debridement and skin grafts.
   What is the most likely source of the methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)?

Figure C

Three factors might have contributed to transmission in this outbreak: (1) Abrasions and other skin trauma, which can facilitate entry of pathogens, were likely to have occurred. (2) Wrestling involves frequent physical contact among players, which allows for easy person-to-person transmission of *S. aureus* and other skin microbiota. (3) Shared equipment that is not cleaned between users could be a vehicle for *S. aureus* transmission.

Investigation of outbreaks of MRSA among professional athletes showed that all of the infections occurred at the site of a turf burn and rapidly progressed to large abscesses that required surgery to drain. MRSA was recovered from whirlpools and taping gel and from 35 of the 84 nasal swabs from players and staff members.

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends cleaning locker rooms and shared equipment with detergent-based cleaners and excluding wrestlers with uncovered skin lesions from competition.

Source: Adapted from CDC, National Center for Emerging and Zoonotic Infectious Diseases, January 31, 2019.

of the kidneys. TSS originally became known as a result of staphylococcal growth associated with the use of a new type of highly absorbent vaginal tampon; the correlation is especially high for cases in which the tampons remain in place too long. A novel staphylococcal toxin called *toxic shock syndrome toxin 1 (TSST-1)* is formed at the growth site and circulates in the bloodstream. The symptoms are thought to be a result of the superantigenic properties of the toxin. (See the discussion of cytokine storms in Chapter 17.)

Today a minority of the cases of TSS are associated with menstruation. Nonmenstrual TSS occurs from staphylococcal infections that follow nasal surgery in which absorbent packing is used, after surgical incisions, and in women who have just given birth.

Streptococcal Skin Infections

Streptococci are gram-positive spherical bacteria. Unlike staphylococci, streptococcal cells usually grow in chains

(see Figure 11.23). Prior to division, the individual cocci elongate on the axis of the chain, and then the cells divide (see Figure 4.1a). Streptococci cause a wide range of disease conditions beyond those covered in this chapter, including meningitis, pneumonia, sore throat, otitis media, endocarditis, puerperal fever, and even dental caries.

As streptococci grow, they secrete toxins and enzymes, virulence factors that vary with the different streptococcal species. Among these toxins are *hemolysins*, which lyse red blood cells. Depending on the hemolysin they produce, streptococci are categorized as alpha-hemolytic, beta-hemolytic, and gamma-hemolytic (actually nonhemolytic) streptococci (see Figure 6.10). Hemolysins can lyse not only red blood cells, but almost any type of cell. It is uncertain, though, just what part they play in streptococcal pathogenicity.

Beta-hemolytic streptococci are often associated with human disease. This group is further differentiated into serological groups, designated A through T, according to antigenic carbohydrates in their cell walls. The **group A streptococci (GAS)**, which are synonymous with the species *Streptococcus pyogenes*, are the most important of the beta-hemolytic streptococci. They are among the most common human pathogens and are responsible for a number of human diseases—some of them deadly. These streptococci also produce certain enzymes, called *streptolysins*, that lyse red blood cells and are toxic to neutrophils. This group of pathogens is divided into over 80 immunological types according to the antigenic properties of the M protein found in some strains (Figure 21.6). This protein is external to the cell wall on a fuzzy layer of fimbriae. The M protein prevents the activation of complement and allows the microbe to evade phagocytosis and killing by neutrophils (see Chapter 15). It also appears to help the bacteria adhere to and colonize mucous membranes. Another virulence factor of the GAS is their capsule of hyaluronic acid. Exceptionally virulent strains have a mucoid appearance on blood-agar plates from heavy encapsulation and are rich in M protein. Hyaluronic acid is poorly immunogenic (it resembles human connective tissue), and few antibodies against the capsule are produced.

The GAS produce substances that promote the rapid spread of infection through tissue and by liquefying pus. Among these are *streptokinases* (enzymes that dissolve blood clots), *hyaluronidase* (an enzyme that dissolves the hyaluronic acid in the connective tissue, where it serves to cement the cells together), and *deoxyribonucleases* (enzymes that degrade DNA).

Streptococcal skin infections are generally localized, but if the bacteria reach deeper tissue, they can be highly destructive.

When *S. pyogenes* infects the dermal layer of the skin, it causes a serious disease, **erysipelas**. In this disease, the skin erupts into reddish patches with raised margins (Figure 21.7). It can progress to local tissue destruction and even enter the bloodstream, causing sepsis. (See the discussion of sepsis in Chapter 23.) The infection usually appears first on the face and often has been preceded by a streptococcal sore throat. High fever is common. Fortunately, *S. pyogenes* has remained sensitive to β-lactam-type antibiotics, especially cephalosporin.

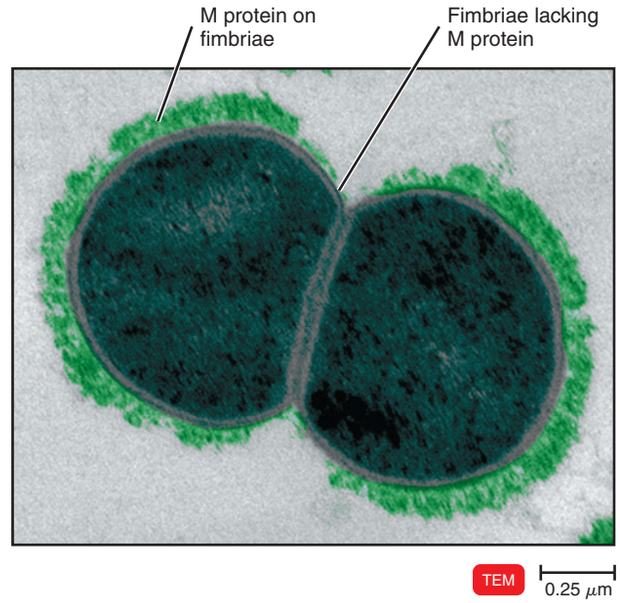


Figure 21.6 The M protein of group A beta-hemolytic streptococci. Part of each cell shown carries M protein on fimbriae.

Q Is the M protein more likely to be antigenic than a polysaccharide capsule?

Some 1000 cases of invasive group A streptococcal infection, caused by the "flesh-eating bacteria," occur each year in the United States. The infection may be precipitated by minor breaks in the skin, and early symptoms are often unrecognized, delaying diagnosis and treatment—with serious consequences.

Figure 21.7 Lesions of erysipelas, caused by group A beta-hemolytic streptococcal toxins.

Q What is the name of the toxin that produces skin reddening? (Hint: See Chapter 15.)

Figure 21.8 Necrotizing fasciitis of a leg due to group A streptococci. Extensive damage to the fascia (sheet of connective tissue binding the muscles) may require reconstructive surgery or even amputation of limbs.

Q What is the name of the primary toxin that leads to tissue invasion by the pathogen?

Once established, **necrotizing fasciitis** (Figure 21.8) may destroy tissue as rapidly as a surgeon can remove it, and mortality rates from systemic toxicity can exceed 40%. Streptococci are considered the most common causative organism, although other bacteria cause similar conditions. Pyrogenic toxins produced by certain streptococcal M-protein types act as superantigens, causing the immune system to contribute to the damage. Broad-spectrum antibiotics are usually prescribed because of the possibility that multiple bacterial pathogens are present.

Necrotizing fasciitis is often associated with **streptococcal toxic shock syndrome (streptococcal TSS)**, which resembles staphylococcal TSS, described earlier in the chapter. In cases of streptococcal TSS, a rash is less likely to be present, but bacteremia is more likely to occur. M proteins shed from the surfaces of these streptococci form a complex with fibrinogen that binds to neutrophils. This causes activation of neutrophils, precipitating the release of damaging enzymes and consequent shock and organ damage. The mortality rate is much higher than with staphylococcal TSS—up to 80% has been reported.

Infections by Pseudomonads

Pseudomonads are aerobic gram-negative rods that are widespread in soil and water. Capable of surviving in any moist environment, they can grow on traces of unusual organic matter, such as soap films or cap liner adhesives used for many product containers. They are resistant to many antibiotics and disinfectants. The most prominent species is *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, which is considered the model of an opportunistic pathogen.

Pseudomonads frequently cause outbreaks of *Pseudomonas* **dermatitis**. This is a self-limiting rash of about 2 weeks' duration, often associated with swimming pools and pool-type saunas and hot tubs. When many people use these facilities, the alkalinity rises, and the chlorines become less effective; at the same time, the concentration of nutrients that support the growth of pseudomonads increases. Hot water causes hair follicles to open wider, facilitating the entry of bacteria. Competition swimmers are often troubled with **otitis externa**, or *"swimmer's ear,"* a painful infection of the external ear canal leading to the eardrum that is frequently caused by pseudomonads.

P. aeruginosa produces several exotoxins that account for much of its pathogenicity. It also produces an endotoxin. *P. aeruginosa* often grows in dense biofilms that contribute to its frequent identification as a cause of healthcare-associated infections of indwelling medical tubes or devices. This bacterium is also a serious opportunistic pathogen for patients with the genetic lung disease cystic fibrosis; biofilm formation plays a prominent part in this.

P. aeruginosa is also a very common and serious opportunistic pathogen in burn patients, particularly those with second- and third-degree burns. Infection may produce blue-green pus, whose color is caused by the bacterial pigment **pyocyanin**. Of concern in many hospitals is the ease with which *P. aeruginosa* grows in flower vases, mop water, and even dilute disinfectants.

The relative resistance to antibiotics that characterizes pseudomonads is still a problem. However, in recent years, several new antibiotics have been developed, and chemotherapy to treat these infections is not as restricted as it once was. The quinolones and the newer, antipseudomonal β-lactam antibiotics are the usual drugs of choice. Silver sulfadiazine is very useful in the treatment of burn infections by *P. aeruginosa*.

Buruli Ulcer

Buruli ulcer, named for a now-renamed region of Uganda in Africa, is an emerging disease found in tropical and subtropical regions of Africa, the Americas, Asia, and the Western Pacific. Although widespread in tropical Africa, it was first accurately described in Australia in 1948 and since then has been reported in localized tropical and subtropical areas around the globe—including Mexico and areas of South America. The disease is caused by *Mycobacterium ulcerans*, which is similar to the mycobacteria that cause tuberculosis and leprosy. When the pathogen is introduced into the skin, it causes a disease that progresses slowly with few serious early signs or symptoms. Eventually, however, the result is a deep ulcer that often becomes massive. Untreated, this can be so extensive as to require amputation or plastic surgery. This tissue damage is attributed to the production of a toxin, *mycolactone*. Epidemiologically, the infection is associated with contact with swamps and slow-flowing waters. The pathogen probably enters through a break in the skin from a minor cut or insect bite.

In 2004, the World Health Organization (WHO) identified Buruli ulcer as a global threat to public health. WHO's early

DISEASES IN FOCUS 21.1 Macular Rashes

Differential diagnosis is the process of identifying a disease from a list of possible diseases that fit the information derived from examining a patient. A differential diagnosis is important for providing initial treatment and for laboratory testing. For example, a 4-year-old boy with a history of cough, conjunctivitis, and fever (38.3°C) now has a macular rash that started on his face and neck and is spreading to the rest of his body. Use the following table to identify infections that could cause these symptoms.

Disease	Pathogen	Portal of Entry	Signs and symptoms	Method of Transmission	Treatment
VIRAL DISEASES. Usually diagnosed by clinical signs and symptoms and may be confirmed by serology or PCR.					
Measles (rubeola)	*Morbillivirus measles morbillivirus*	Respiratory tract	Reddish macules first appearing on face and spreading to trunk and extremities	Aerosol	No treatment; preexposure vaccine
Rubella (German measles)	*Rubivirus rubellae*	Respiratory tract	Mild disease with a macular rash resembling measles, but less extensive and disappearing in 3 days or less	Aerosol	No treatment; preexposure vaccine
Fifth Disease (erythema infectiosum)	*Erythroparvovirus primate erythroparvovirus 1* (Human parvovirus B19)	Respiratory tract	Mild disease with a macular facial rash	Aerosol	None
Roseola	*Roseolovirus betaherpesvirus* 6 and 7	Respiratory tract	High fever followed by macular body rash	Aerosol	None
Hand-Foot-Mouth Disease	*Enterovirus* spp.	Mouth	Flat or raised rash	Aerosol; direct contact	None
FUNGAL DISEASE. Confirmed by Gram staining of skin scrapings.					
Candidiasis	*Candida albicans*	Skin; mucous membranes	Macular rash	Direct contact; endogenous* infection	Miconazole, clotrimazole (topically)

*Endogenous infections are infections caused by microorganisms already part of the host microbiota.

detection initiative decreased the number of cases by 50% until 2014, when the number of cases began to rise.

Buruli ulcer is diagnosed primarily by the appearance of the ulcer and is treated with antimycobacterial drugs such as streptomycin-rifampicin combinations.

Acne

Acne is probably the most common skin disease in humans, affecting an estimated 17 million people in the United States. More than 85% of all teenagers have the problem to some degree. Acne can be classified by type of lesion into three categories: comedonal acne, inflammatory acne, and nodular cystic acne. They require different treatments.

Normally, skin cells that are shed inside the hair follicle are able to leave, but acne develops when cells are shed in higher than normal numbers, combine with sebum, and the mixture clogs the follicle. As sebum accumulates, whiteheads (comedos) form; if the blockage protrudes through the skin, a blackhead (comedone) forms. The dark color of blackheads is due not to dirt, but to oxidation of lipids and other compounds. Topical agents do not affect sebum formation, which is a root cause of acne and depends on hormones such as estrogens or androgens. Diet has no known effect on sebum production, but pregnancy, some hormone-based contraceptive methods, and hormonal changes with age do affect sebum formation and influence acne.

Comedonal (mild) acne is usually treated with topical agents such as azelaic acid, salicylic acid preparations, or retinoids (which are derivatives of vitamin A, such as tretinoin, tazarotene, or adapalene). These topical agents do not affect sebum formation.

DISEASES IN FOCUS 21.2 Vesicular and Pustular Rashes

An 8-year-old boy has a rash consisting of vesicular lesions of 5 days' duration on his neck and stomach. Within 5 days, 73 students in his elementary school have an illness matching the case definition for this disease. Use the following table to provide a differential diagnosis and identify infections that could cause these symptoms.

Disease	Pathogen	Portal of Entry	Signs and symptoms	Method of Transmission	Treatment
BACTERIAL DISEASE. Usually diagnosed by culturing the bacteria.					
Impetigo	*Staphylococcus aureus*	Skin	Vesicles or bullae on skin	Direct contact; fomites	Topical antibiotics
VIRAL DISEASES. Usually diagnosed by clinical signs and symptoms and may be confirmed by serology or PCR.					
Smallpox (variola)	*Orthopoxvirus variola virus*	Respiratory tract	Pustules that may be nearly confluent on skin	Aerosol	None
MPOX	*Orthopoxvirus mpxv*	Respiratory tract	Pustules, similar to smallpox	Direct contact with infected humans or rodents or their aerosols	None
Chickenpox (varicella)	*Varicellovirus* (HHV-3)	Respiratory tract	Vesicles in most cases confined to face, throat, and trunk	Aerosol	Acyclovir for adults; preexposure vaccine
Shingles (herpes-zoster)	*Varicellovirus* (HHV-3)	Endogenous* infection of peripheral nerves	Vesicles typically on one side of waist, face and scalp, or upper chest	Recurrence of latent chickenpox infection	Acyclovir; preventive vaccine
Oral herpes	*Simplexvirus human alphaherpesvirus* (HHV-1)	Skin; mucous membranes	Vesicles around mouth; can also affect other areas of skin and mucous membranes	Initial infection by direct contact; recurring latent infection	Acyclovir

*Endogenous infections are infections caused by microorganisms already part of the host microbiota.

CLINICAL CASE

The similarity in the siblings' rashes prompts Molly to reexamine her records and obtain more detailed information about the children who came to her office with comparable rashes.

After speaking to the children's parents, Molly learns that all five children have been to the same community swimming pool in the past 72 hours. Molly notifies the health department; they contact the only other general medical practice in this small town and obtain a list of similar cases. In these cases, the patients have rashes on the chest and abdomen (90%), buttocks (67%), arms (71%), legs (86%), and also the hands, feet, and head and neck.

What pathogens can cause itchy, pimple-like rashes?

Part 1 | **Part 2** | Part 3 | Part 4 | Part 5

Inflammatory (moderate) acne arises from bacterial action, especially *Cutibacterium* (Propionibacterium) *acnes*, an anaerobic diphtheroid commonly found on the skin. *C. acnes* has a nutritional requirement for glycerol in sebum; in metabolizing the sebum, it forms free fatty acids that cause an inflammatory response. Neutrophils that secrete enzymes that damage the wall of the hair follicle are attracted to the site. The resulting inflammation leads to the appearance of pustules and papules.

Therapy for inflammatory acne is usually focused on preventing formation of sebum; topical agents are not effective for this. Typically, inflammatory acne is treated by targeting *C. acnes* with antibiotics such as a tetracyclines or macrolides. The familiar nonprescription acne treatments containing benzoyl peroxide are also effective against some bacteria, especially *C. acnes*, and cause drying that helps loosen plugged follicles. Benzoyl peroxide is also available as a gel and in products where it is combined with antibiotics.

DISEASES IN FOCUS 21.3 Patchy Redness and Pimple-Like Conditions

An 11-month-old boy comes to a clinic with a 1-week history of an itchy red rash under his arms. The rash seems to bother him more at night, and he has no fever.

Use the following table to provide a differential diagnosis and identify infections that could cause these symptoms.

Disease	Pathogen	Portal of Entry	Signs and symptoms	Method of Transmission	Treatment
BACTERIAL DISEASES. Usually diagnosed by culturing the bacteria.					
Folliculitis	*Staphylococcus aureus*	Hair follicle	Infection of hair follicle	Direct contact; fomites; endogenous* infection	Draining of pus; topical antibiotics
Toxic Shock Syndrome	*Sta. aureus*	Surgical incisions	Fever, rash, shock	Endogenous* infection	Antibiotics, depending on sensitivity profile (antibiogram)
Necrotizing Fasciitis	*Streptococcus pyogenes*	Skin abrasions	Extensive soft-tissue destruction	Direct contact	Surgical tissue removal; broad-spectrum antibiotics
Erysipelas	*Str. pyogenes*	Skin; mucous membranes	Reddish patches on skin; often with high fever	Endogenous* infection	Cephalosporin
***Pseudomonas* Dermatitis**	*Pseudomonas aeruginosa*	Skin abrasions	Superficial rash	Swimming water; hot tubs	Usually self-limiting
Otitis Externa	*P. aeruginosa*	Ear	Superficial infection of external ear canal	Swimming water	Fluoroquinolones
Acne	*Cutibacterium* (Propionibacterium) *acnes*	Sebum channels	Inflammatory lesions originating with accumulations of sebum that rupture a hair follicle	Direct contact	Benzoyl peroxide, tretinoin, azelaic acid
Buruli Ulcer	*Mycobacterium ulcerans*	Skin	Localized swelling or hardness progressing to deep ulcer	Contaminated water	Antimycobacterial drugs
VIRAL DISEASE. Usually diagnosed by clinical signs and symptoms.					
Warts	*Alphapapillomavirus* spp., *Betapapillomavirus* spp.	Skin	A horny projection of the skin formed by proliferation of cells	Direct contact	Removal by liquid nitrogen cryotherapy, electro-desiccation, acids, lasers
FUNGAL DISEASES. Diagnosis is confirmed by microscopic examination of fungus.					
Ringworm (tinea)	*Microsporum, Trichophyton, Epidermophyton*	Skin	Skin lesions of highly varied appearance; on scalp may cause local loss of hair	Direct contact; fomites	Griseofulvin (orally); miconazole, clotrimazole (topically)
Sporotrichosis	*Sporothrix schenckii*	Skin abrasions	Ulcer at site of infection spreading into nearby lymphatic vessels	Soil	Potassium iodide solution (orally)
PARASITIC INFESTATIONS. Diagnosis is confirmed by microscopic examination of parasite.					
Scabies	*Sarcoptes scabiei* (mite)	Skin	Papules, itching	Direct contact	Ivermectin (orally), permethrin (topically)
Pediculosis (lice)	*Pediculus humanus capitis*	Skin	Itching	Primarily direct contact; possible fomites such as bedding, combs	Topical insecticide preparations

*Endogenous infections are infections caused by microorganisms already part of the host microbiota.

Figure 21.9 Severe acne.

Q Isotretinoin often leads to dramatic improvement for cases of severe acne, but what precautions must be observed?

Alternatives to chemical treatments have been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for treatment of mild to moderate acne. The CLEARLight® system, which bathes the skin with high-intensity blue light (405–420 nm), and Smoothbeam® treatment, which uses laser light, penetrate the skin surface to speed healing and prevent pimples from forming. Also approved is a handheld device, ThermaClear®, which delivers a brief pulse of heat to the lesions.

Some patients with acne progress to **nodular cystic (severe) acne**. Nodular cystic acne is characterized by nodules or cysts, which are inflamed lesions filled with pus deep within the skin (Figure 21.9). These leave prominent scars on the face and upper body, which often leave psychological scars as well. An effective treatment for cystic acne is isotretinoin, which reduces the formation of sebum. Under the trade name of Accutane®, its distribution in the United States has been discontinued by the manufacturer. It is, however, distributed outside this country under the name Roaccutane®. Anyone considering the use of the drug should be warned that it is highly *teratogenic*, meaning it can cause serious damage to a developing fetus. Other side effects may include inflammatory bowel disease and ulcerative colitis.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **21-3** Which bacterial species features the virulence factor M protein?
- **21-4** What is the common name for otitis externa?

Viral Diseases of the Skin

Many viral diseases, although systemic and transmitted by respiratory or other routes, are most apparent by their effects on the skin. Although not always very significant in adults, several of these diseases, such as rubella, chickenpox, fifth disease, and herpes simplex, can cause serious damage in a developing fetus.

Warts

Warts, or papillomas, are generally benign skin growths caused by viruses. It was long known that warts can be transmitted from one person to another by contact, even sexually, but it was not until 1949 that viruses were identified in wart tissues. More than 50 types of Papillomaviridae are now known to cause different kinds of warts, often with greatly varying appearances.

After infection, there is an incubation period of several weeks before the warts appear. The most common medical treatments for warts are to apply extremely cold liquid nitrogen (cryotherapy), dry them with an electrical current (electrodesiccation), or burn them with acids. There is evidence that compounds containing salicylic acids are especially effective. Topical application of prescription drugs such as podofilox, which inhibits cell division, or imiquimod, which activates toll-like receptors (see Chapter 16), is often effective. Warts that do not respond to any other treatments can be treated with lasers or injected with bleomycin, an antitumor drug.

Although warts are not a form of cancer, some skin and cervical cancers are associated with certain papillomaviruses. Genital warts is the most common sexually transmitted infection (Chapter 26).

Smallpox (Variola)

During the Middle Ages, an estimated 80% of the population of Europe contracted **smallpox*** at some time during their lives. Those who recovered from the disease retained disfiguring scars. The disease, introduced by American colonists, was even more devastating to Native Americans, who had had no previous exposure and thus little resistance.

Smallpox is caused by an *Orthopoxvirus variola virus* known as the smallpox virus. There are two basic forms of this disease: Variola major has a mortality rate of 20–60% and over 80% in children, and **variola minor** has a mortality rate of less than 1%.

Transmitted by the respiratory route, the viruses infect many internal organs before they eventually move into the bloodstream, infecting the skin and producing more recognizable symptoms. The growth of the virus in the epidermal layers of the skin causes lesions that become pustular after 10 days or so (Figure 21.10).

Smallpox was the first disease to which immunity was artificially induced (see Vaccination in Chapter 1) and the first to be eradicated from the human population. The last victim of a natural case of smallpox is believed to be an individual who recovered from variola minor in 1977 in Somalia. (However, 10 months after this case, there was a smallpox fatality in England caused by escape of the virus from a hospital research laboratory.) The eradication of smallpox was possible because an

*The origin of the name *smallpox* reportedly arose in the late fifteenth century in France, where syphilis had just been introduced. These patients exhibited a severe skin rash called *la grosse verole*, or "the great pox." The rash was compared with that of an endemic disease of the time, which was then referred to as *la petite verole*, or "the small pox." In English, the endemic disease became known as smallpox.

Figure 21.10 Smallpox lesions. In some severe cases, the lesions nearly run together (are confluent).

Q How do these lesions differ from chickenpox?

effective vaccine was developed and because there are no animal host reservoirs for the disease. A concerted worldwide vaccination effort was coordinated by the WHO.

Today, only two sites are known to maintain the smallpox virus, the CDC in the United States and the Russian State Centre for Research on Virology and Biotechnology. Dates for the destruction of these collections have been set and then postponed.

Smallpox would be an especially dangerous agent for bioterrorism. Vaccination in the United States ended in the early 1970s. People who were vaccinated prior to that time have waning immunity; however, they probably have some remaining protection that would at least moderate the disease. Stocks of smallpox vaccine are being accumulated as a precaution. No general vaccination program of the entire population is contemplated. However, certain groups, among them military and health care workers, may be an exception.

Complications from the smallpox vaccine can be treated with vaccinia immune globulin, which contains antibodies to the virus. The antiviral drug, cidofovir, can also be administered.

MPOX

With the disappearance of smallpox, a similar disease, **MPOX**, emerged as a global public health concern. The MPOX virus is in the same genus, *Orthopoxvirus*, as the smallpox virus. The reservoir for the virus is unknown, but rodents are most likely. The disease can be transmitted between humans by direct contact with skin lesions or respiratory secretions during prolonged, face-to-face contact. In 2022, a few healthcare workers acquired MPOX through needlesticks.

The disease is similar, but less severe, than smallpox. The rash progresses from macules to papules, vesicles, and pustules. The pustules dry up and fall off. The number of lesions varies from a few to several thousand. In severe cases, lesions can coalesce until large sections of skin slough off.

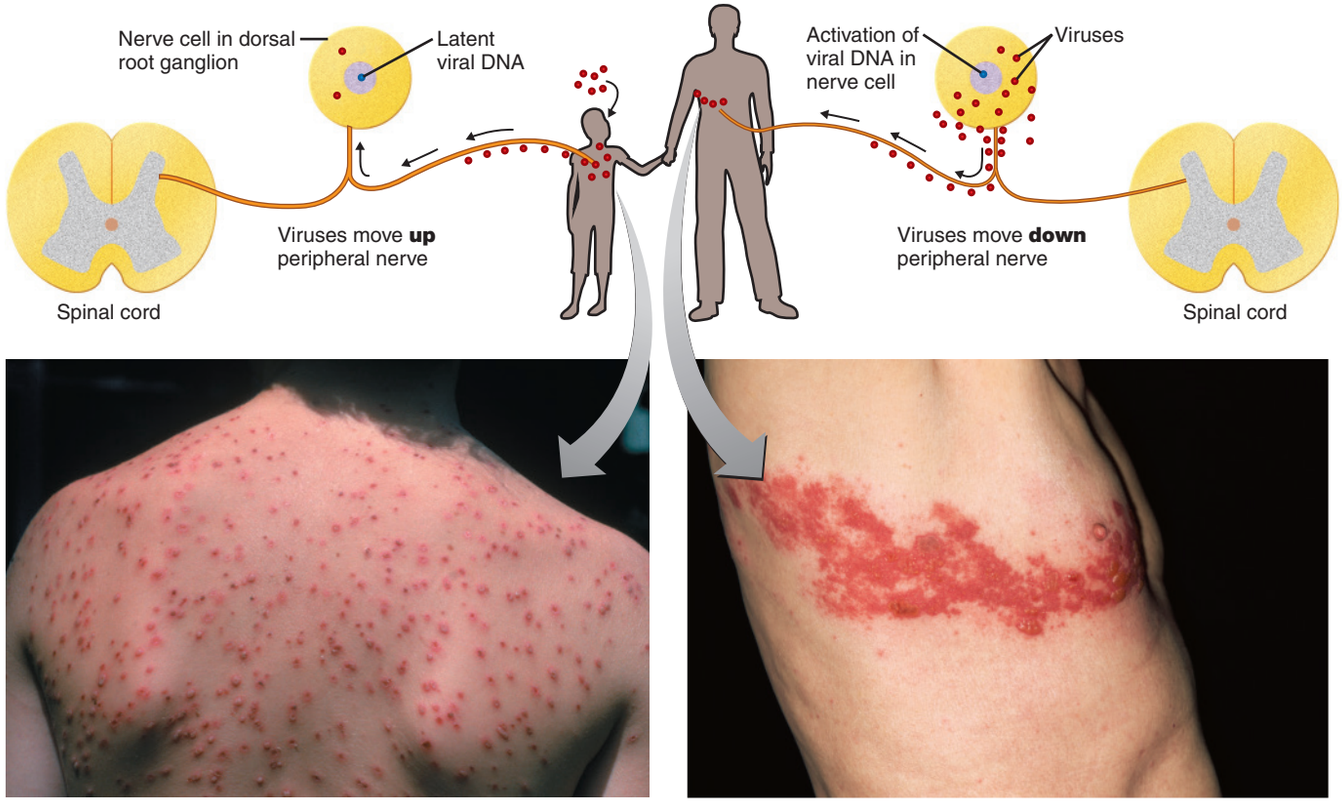
This disease was first identified in 1958 in laboratory monkeys that originated in Africa and is endemic there in rodents. There are occasional outbreaks among humans in those areas, and one outbreak of 71 cases in the United States in 2003 was attributed to contact with pet prairie dogs. These animals apparently were infected by being housed in pet stores with Gambian giant rats imported from western Africa. In 2022, over 82,000 cases of MPOX were reported in 73 countries that do not normally report the disease. The United States reported nearly 30,000 cases. MPOX closely resembles smallpox in symptoms and, when smallpox was endemic, was probably mistaken for it. Because the MPOX virus, like smallpox virus, is an *Orthopoxvirus*, vaccination for smallpox has a protective effect. MPOX virus is spread through close contact with infected individuals.

Chickenpox (Varicella) and Shingles (Herpes Zoster)

Chickenpox (varicella) is a relatively mild disease when contracted, as it usually is, in childhood. The mortality rate from chickenpox is very low and is usually from complications such as encephalitis (infection of the brain) or pneumonia. Almost half of such deaths occur in adults.

Chickenpox (Figure 21.11a) is the result of an initial infection with a herpesvirus *Varicellovirus human alphaherpesvirus 3*. It is also called varicella-zoster or *human herpesvirus* (*HHV-3*); see Chapter 13. The disease is acquired when the virus enters the respiratory system, and the infection localizes in skin cells after about 2 weeks. The infected skin is vesicular for 3 to 4 days. During that time, the vesicles fill with pus, rupture, and form a scab before healing. Lesions are mostly confined to the face, throat, and back but can also occur on the chest and shoulders. If varicella infection occurs during early pregnancy, serious fetal damage may occur in about 2% of cases. (See Diseases in Focus 21.2.)

Reye's syndrome is an occasional severe complication of chickenpox, influenza, and some other viral diseases. A few



(a) Initial infection: chickenpox (varicella)

(b) Recurrence of infection: shingles (herpes zoster)

Figure 21.11 Chickenpox (varicella) and shingles (herpes zoster). (a) Initial infection with the virus, usually during childhood, causes chickenpox. The lesions are vesicles, eventually becoming pustules that rupture and form scabs. The virus then moves to a dorsal root ganglion near the spine, where it remains latent indefinitely. (b) Later, usually in late adulthood, the latent virus becomes reactivated, causing shingles. Reactivation can be caused by stress or weakening of the immune system. The skin lesions are vesicles.

Q Does the photo in (a) illustrate an early or late stage of chickenpox?

days after the initial infection has receded, the patient persistently vomits and exhibits signs of brain dysfunction, such as extreme drowsiness or combative behavior. Coma and death can follow. At one time, the death rate of reported cases approached 90%, but this rate has been declining with improved care and is now 21% or lower when the disease is recognized and treated in time. Survivors may show neurological damage, especially if very young. Reye's syndrome affects children and teenagers almost exclusively. The use of aspirin to lower fevers in chickenpox and influenza increases the chances of acquiring Reye's syndrome.

Like all herpesviruses, a characteristic of HHV-3 is its ability to remain latent within the body. Following a primary infection, the virus enters the peripheral nerves and moves to a central nerve ganglion, where it persists as viral DNA. Humoral antibodies cannot penetrate into the nerve cell, and because no viral antigens are expressed on the surface of the nerve cell, cytotoxic T cells are not activated. Therefore, neither arm of the adaptive immune system disturbs the latent virus.

Latent HHV-3 is located in the dorsal root ganglion near the spine. Later, perhaps as long as decades later, the virus may be reactivated (Figure 21.11b). The trigger can be stress or simply the lower immune competence associated with aging. The virions produced by the reactivated DNA move along the peripheral nerves to the cutaneous sensory nerves of the skin, where they cause a new outbreak of the virus in the form of **shingles** (herpes zoster).

Shingles is simply a different expression of the virus that causes chickenpox: different because the patient, having had chickenpox, now has partial immunity to the virus. Exposing unvaccinated children to shingles has led to their contracting chickenpox. Shingles seldom occurs in people under age 20, and by far the highest incidence is among older adults. It is unusual for a patient to develop shingles more than once.

In shingles, vesicles similar to those of chickenpox occur but are localized in distinctive areas. Typically, they are distributed about the waist (the name *shingles* is derived from the Latin *cingulum*, for girdle or belt), although facial shingles and

infections of the upper chest and back also occur (see Figure 21.11b). The infection follows the distribution of the affected cutaneous sensory nerves and is usually limited to one side of the body at a time because these nerves are unilateral. Occasionally, such nerve infections can result in nerve damage that impairs vision or even causes paralysis. Severe burning or stinging pain is a frequent symptom; occasionally this persists for months or years, a condition called *postherpetic neuralgia*.

The antiviral drugs acyclovir, valacyclovir, and famciclovir are approved for treatment of shingles. For immunocompromised patients, in which a mortality rate of 17% is reported, and patients with ocular involvement, treatment with antivirals is mandatory.

A live, attenuated varicella vaccine was licensed in 1995. Since then, cases of the disease have declined steadily. There is evidence that the effectiveness of the vaccine, which is about 97% at outset, declines with time. Therefore, varicella in previously vaccinated persons, called **breakthrough varicella**, is fairly common. Because the vaccine is at least partially effective, it is a relatively mild disease with a rash that does not look much like typical varicella. A booster dose of the vaccine may eventually be needed for complete control of varicella.

Another concern is that the waning effectiveness of the childhood vaccination will lead to a population of susceptible adults, for whom the disease tends to be more severe. Therefore, the current recommendation is that adults 60 years of age or older receive a subunit *zoster vaccine* (Shingrix®) even if the subject has had chickenpox or shingles previously.

Oral herpes

Oral herpes is most often caused by herpes simples virus 1 (HSV-1). The name *herpes simplex virus*, used here, is the common or vernacular name. The scientific names are *Simplexvirus human herpesvirus 1* and *2*. HSV-1 is transmitted primarily by oral or respiratory routes, and infection usually occurs in infancy. Serological surveys show that about 90% of the U.S. population has been infected. Frequently, this infection is subclinical, but many cases develop lesions known as **cold sores** or **fever blisters**. These are painful, short-lived vesicles that occur near the outer red margin of the lips (Figure 21.12).

Cold sores, caused by herpesvirus infections, are often confused with **canker sores**. The cause of canker sores is unknown, but their occurrence is often related to stress or menstruation. While similar to cold sores in appearance, canker sores usually appear in different areas. They occur as painful sores on movable mucous membranes, such as those on the tongue, cheeks, and inner surface of the lips. They ordinarily heal in a few days but often recur.

HSV-1 usually remains latent in the trigeminal nerve ganglia communicating between the face and the central nervous system (Figure 21.13). Recurrences of HSV-1 infection can be triggered by events such as excessive exposure to ultraviolet radiation from the sun, emotional upsets, or the hormonal changes associated with menstruation.

Figure 21.12 Cold sores, or fever blisters, caused by *Simplexvirus*. Lesions are located mainly at the margin of the red area of the lips.

Q Why can cold sores reappear, and why do they recur in the same place?

HSV-1 infection can be transmitted by skin contact among wrestlers; this is colorfully termed **herpes gladiatorum**. Incidence as high as 3% has been reported among high school wrestlers. Nurses, physicians, and dentists are occupationally susceptible to **herpetic whitlow**, infections of the finger caused by contact with HSV-1 lesions—as are children with herpetic oral ulcers.

Another species of *Simplexvirus*, HSV-2, is transmitted primarily by sexual contact. It is the usual cause of genital herpes (see Chapter 26). HSV-2 is differentiated from HSV-1 by its antigenic

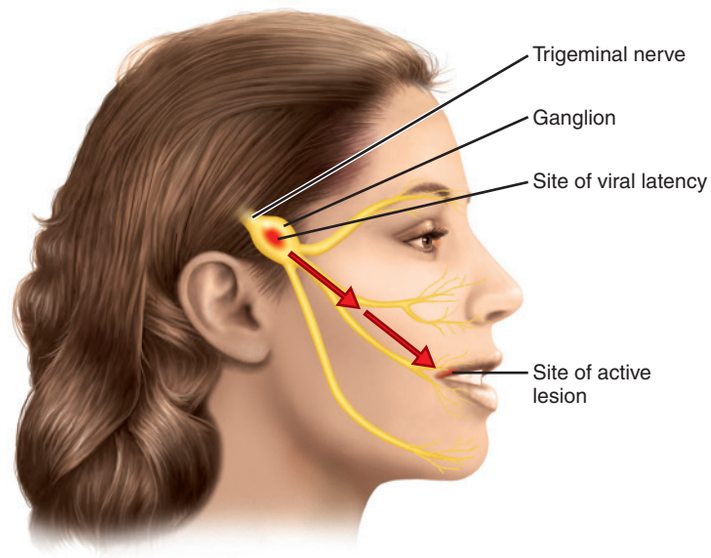


Figure 21.13 Site of latency of *Simplexvirus* type 1 in the trigeminal nerve ganglion.

Q Why is this nerve system called *trigeminal*?

makeup and by its effect on cells in cell culture. It is latent in the sacral nerve ganglia found near the base of the spine, a different location from that of HSV-1.

Very rarely, either species of *Simplexvirus* may spread to the brain, causing **herpes encephalitis**. Infections by HSV-2 are more serious, with a fatality rate as high as 70% if untreated. Only about 10% of survivors can expect to lead healthy lives. When administered promptly, acyclovir often cures such encephalitis. Even so, the mortality rate in certain outbreaks is still 28%, and only 38% of the survivors escape serious neurological damage.

Measles (Rubeola)

Measles (rubeola), caused by *Morbillivirus*, is an extremely contagious viral disease spread by the respiratory route. Because a person with measles is infectious before symptoms appear, quarantine is not an effective measure of prevention.

The measles vaccine, now usually administered as the MMR (measles, mumps, rubella) vaccine, has almost eliminated measles in the United States. Since the vaccine's introduction measles cases have declined from an estimated 5 million cases a year to virtual disappearance. As with smallpox, there is no animal reservoir for measles, but because the virus is so much more infectious than smallpox, herd immunity is difficult to obtain. Therefore, the present worldwide target is to control measles by vaccination. This approach has met with considerable success; compared to an annual estimated 2.6 million deaths worldwide before 1980, there were 142,300 in 2018. However, COVID-19 pandemic disruptions in vaccination resulted in a worldwide doubling in the number of measles cases (from 9665 in January–February 2021 to 17,338 in the first two months of 2022. The goal is elimination of measles by 2023. (See the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 18.)

Although the vaccine is about 95% effective, cases continue to occur among people who do not develop or retain good immunity. Some of these infections are caused by contact with infected people outside the United States.

An unexpected result of the measles vaccine is that many cases of measles today occur in children under age 1. Measles is especially hazardous to infants, who are more likely to have serious complications. In prevaccination days, measles was rare at this age because infants were protected by maternal antibodies derived from their mothers' recovery from the disease. Unfortunately, maternal antibodies made in response to the vaccine are not as effective in providing protection as are antibodies made in response to the disease. Because the vaccine is not effective when administered in early infancy, the child does not receive the initial vaccination before 12 months. Therefore, the child is vulnerable for a significant time.

Similar to smallpox and chickenpox, infection begins in the upper respiratory system. After an incubation period of 10 to 12 days, symptoms develop resembling those of a common cold. Soon, a macular rash appears, beginning on the face and spreading to the trunk and extremities (**Figure 21.14**). Measles lesions of the oral cavity include *Koplik's spots*, small red spots with central blue-white specks, on the oral mucosa opposite the molars. The presence of Koplik's spots is a diagnostic indicator of measles. Serological tests conducted a few days after appearance of the rash can be used to confirm the diagnosis. (See **Diseases in Focus 21.1**.)

Figure 21.14 The rash of small raised spots typical of measles (rubeola). The rash usually begins on the face and spreads to the trunk and extremities.

Q Why is it potentially possible to eradicate measles?

Measles is an extremely dangerous disease, especially in infants and very old people. It is frequently complicated by middle ear infections or pneumonia caused by the virus itself or by a secondary bacterial infection. Encephalitis strikes approximately 1 in 1000 measles victims; its survivors are often left with permanent brain damage. As many as 1 in 3000 cases is fatal, mostly in infants. A rare complication of measles (about 1 in 1,000,000 cases) is **subacute sclerosing panencephalitis**. Occurring mostly in males, it appears about 1 to 10 years after recovery from measles. Severe neurological symptoms result in death within a few years.

Rubella

Rubella, or *German measles* (so called because it was first described by German physicians in the eighteenth century), is

Figure 21.15 The rash of red spots characteristic of rubella. The spots are not raised above the surrounding skin.

Q What is congenital rubella syndrome?

a much milder viral disease than rubeola (measles) and often goes undetected. Rubella is caused by *Rubivirus*. A macular rash of small red spots and a light fever are the usual symptoms (Figure 21.15). Complications are rare, especially in children, but encephalitis occurs in about 1 case in 6000, mostly in adults. The rubella virus is transmitted by the respiratory route, and an incubation of 2 to 3 weeks is the norm. Recovery from clinical or subclinical cases appears to give a firm immunity.

The seriousness of rubella was not appreciated until 1941, when certain severe birth defects were associated with maternal infection during the first trimester (3 months) of pregnancy, a condition called **congenital rubella syndrome**. If rubella is contracted during pregnancy, there is about a 35% incidence of serious fetal damage, including deafness, eye cataracts, heart defects, intellectual disabilities, autism spectrum disorder, and death. Some 15% of babies with congenital rubella syndrome die during their first year. The last major epidemic of rubella in the United States occurred during 1964 and 1965. At least 20,000 severely impaired children were born during that epidemic.

It is therefore important for clinicians to identify female patients of childbearing age who are not immune to rubella. At one time, the blood test required for a marriage license included a test for rubella antibodies.

A rubella vaccine was introduced in 1969. Follow-up studies indicate that more than 90% of vaccinated individuals are protected for at least 15 years. Because of these preventive measures, fewer than 10 annual cases of congenital rubella syndrome are now reported. Although rubella was declared eliminated from the United States in 2004, cases can occur when unvaccinated people are exposed to infected people, mostly through international travel. Clinicians should make sure their patients' rubella immunizations are up to date if those patients are trying to become pregnant.

The vaccine is not recommended during pregnancy; however, in hundreds of cases in which women were vaccinated 3 months before or 3 months after their presumed date of conception, no case of congenital rubella syndrome defects has occurred.

Other Viral Rashes

Fifth Disease (Erythema Infectiosum) Parents with young children are often baffled by a diagnosis of fifth disease, which they have never heard of before. The name derives from a 1905 list of skin rash diseases: measles, scarlet fever, rubella, Filatov Dukes' disease (a mild form of scarlet fever), and the fifth disease on the list. This **fifth disease**, or **erythema infectiosum**, produces no symptoms at all in about 20% of individuals infected by the virus *Erythroparvovirus Primate erythroparvovirus 1*. Commonly called B19, it was first identified in 1989. Symptoms are similar to a mild case of influenza, but there is a distinctive "slapped-cheek" facial rash that slowly fades. In adults who missed an immunizing infection in childhood, the disease may cause anemia, an episode of arthritis, or, rarely, miscarriage. In rare instances, the infection causes hepatitis or liver failure.

Roseola Roseola is a mild, very common childhood disease. The child has a high fever for a few days, which is followed by a rash over much of the body lasting for a day or two. Recovery leads to immunity. The pathogens are *Roseolovirus betaherpesvirus 6* (human herpesvirus 6) and *R. betaherpesvirus 7* (human herpesvirus 7)—the latter is responsible for 5–10% of roseola cases. Both viruses are present in the saliva of most adults.

Hand-Foot-Mouth Disease Hand-foot-mouth disease (HFMD) is caused by several species of *Enterovirus*, with coxsackievirus A16 (*E. enterovirus A*) being the most common cause. HFMD is spread by contact with mucous or saliva of an infected person. It most commonly occurs among children in day care, preschool, and kindergarten. Limited epidemics can occur, especially during summer and fall. The usual incubation is 3–7 days, with initial symptoms of fever followed by sore throat. Soon after, a rash (either flat or raised) appears on areas such as the hands, feet, mouth, tongue, and interior cheeks. It is rare for patients to require hospitalization, but occasionally—when the disease is caused by *Enterovirus A71*—it can be accompanied by neurological conditions such as encephalitis, meningitis, and even a paralysis resembling polio. Adults with normal immune systems are less likely to be infected. There is no treatment.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

21-5 How did the odd naming of "fifth disease" arise?

Fungal Diseases of the Skin and Nails

As mentioned previously, the skin is most susceptible to microorganisms that can resist high osmotic pressure and low moisture. It is not surprising, therefore, that fungi cause a number of skin disorders. Any fungal infection of the body is called a **mycosis**.

Cutaneous Mycoses

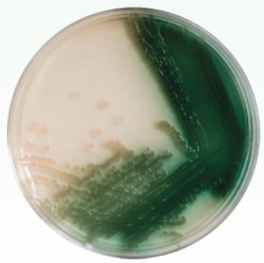
Fungi that colonize the hair, nails, and outer layer (stratum corneum) of the epidermis (see Figure 21.1) are called **dermatophytes**; they grow on the keratin present in those locations. Termed **dermatomycoses**, these fungal infections are more informally known as *tineas* or *ringworm*. **Tinea capitis**, or ringworm of the scalp, is fairly common among elementary school children and can result in bald patches. The infections tend to expand circularly, hence the term *ringworm* (Figure 21.16a). The infection is usually transmitted by contact with fomites. Dogs and cats are also frequently infected with fungi that cause ringworm in children. Ringworm of the groin, or jock itch, is known as **tinea cruris**, and ringworm of the feet, or athlete's foot, is known as **tinea pedis** (Figure 21.16b). The moisture in such areas favors fungal infections. Ringworm of the fingernails or toenails is called **tinea unguium**, or *onychomycosis*.

Three genera of fungi are involved in cutaneous mycosis. *Trichophyton* (trik-ō-FĪ-ton) can infect hair, skin, or nails; *Microsporum* (mĪ-krō-SPOR-um) usually involves only the hair or skin; *Epidermophyton* (ep'i-der-mō-FĪ-ton) affects only the skin and nails. The topical drugs available without prescription for tinea infections include miconazole and clotrimazole. Athlete's foot is often difficult to cure. Topical allylamine preparations containing terbinafine or naftifine, as well as another allylamine, butenavine, are recommended and are now available without a prescription. Extended application is usually required. When hair is involved, topical treatment is not very effective. An oral antibiotic, griseofulvin, is often useful in such infections because it can localize in keratinized tissue, such as skin, hair, or nails. When nails are infected, oral itraconazole and terbinafine are the drugs of choice, but treatment may require weeks, and both must be used with caution because of potential severe side effects.

CLINICAL CASE

Staphylococcus aureus, herpesviruses, and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* are likely causes of community-acquired infections. To find a control group, the health department asks each case to name up to two adults and two children who were in the pool at the same time but did not develop a rash. A parent/guardian was asked in the case of children.

In all, 26 cases and four controls are identified. The health department obtains swabs from the rashes and has them inoculated onto nutrient agar and incubated at 35°C for 24 hours. The resulting growth on the Petri plate is shown in the following photo.



Based on the figure, what is the bacterium?

Part 1 | Part 2 | **Part 3** | Part 4 | Part 5

Subcutaneous Mycoses

Subcutaneous mycoses are more serious than cutaneous mycoses. Even when the skin is broken, cutaneous fungi do not seem to be able to penetrate past the stratum corneum, perhaps because they cannot obtain sufficient iron for growth in the epidermis and the dermis. Usually subcutaneous mycoses are caused by fungi that inhabit the soil, especially decaying vegetation, and penetrate the skin through a small wound that allows entry into subcutaneous tissues.

(a) Ringworm. This infection on the cheek is called tinea barbae.

(b) Athlete's foot (tinea pedis)

Figure 21.16 Dermatomycoses.

Q Is ringworm caused by a helminth?

In the United States, the most common disease of this type is **sporotrichosis**, caused by the dimorphic fungus *Sporothrix schenkii*. Most cases occur among gardeners or other people working with soil. The infection frequently forms a small ulcer on the hands. The fungus often enters the lymphoid system in the area and there forms similar lesions. The condition is seldom fatal and is effectively treated with itraconazole, or by ingesting a dilute solution of potassium iodide.

Candidiasis

The bacterial microbiota of the mucous membranes in the genitourinary tract and mouth usually suppress the growth of such fungi as *Candida albicans*. Because the fungus is not affected by antibacterial drugs, it sometimes overgrows mucosal tissue when antibiotics suppress the normal bacterial microbiota. Changes in the normal mucosal pH may have a similar effect. Such overgrowths by *C. albicans* are called **candidiasis**. Several other species of *Candida*, for example *C. tropicalis* or *C. krusei* (KROO-sē-ē), may also be involved. The morphology of these organisms is not always yeastlike but can exhibit the formation of pseudohyphae, long cells that resemble hyphae. In this form, *Candida* is resistant to phagocytosis, which may be a factor in its pathogenicity (Figure 21.17a). Newborns, whose normal microbiota have not become established, often suffer from a whitish overgrowth of the oral cavity called **thrush** (Figure 21.17b). *C. albicans* is also a common cause of vaginitis (see Chapter 26).

Immunosuppressed individuals, including people with AIDS, are unusually prone to *Candida* infections of the skin and mucous membranes. On people who are obese or diabetic, the areas of the skin with more moisture tend to become infected with this fungus. The infected areas become bright red, with lesions on the borders. Skin and mucosal infections by *C. albicans* are usually treated with topical applications of miconazole, clotrimazole, or nystatin. If candidiasis becomes systemic, as can happen in immunosuppressed individuals, *fulminating disease* (one that appears suddenly and severely) and death can result. The usual drug of choice to treat systemic candidiasis is fluconazole. Several new treatments are now also available; for example, some of the new echinocandin class antifungals, such as micafungin and anidulafungin, are now approved for this use.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

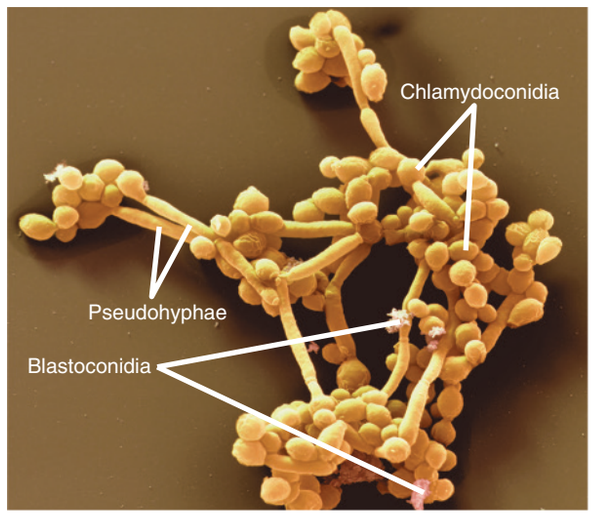
- **21-6** How do sporotrichosis and tineas differ? How are they similar?
- **21-7** How might penicillin use result in candidiasis?

Parasitic Infestation of the Skin

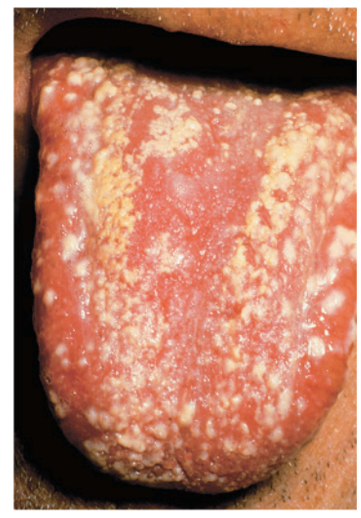
Parasitic organisms such as some protozoa, helminths, and microscopic arthropods can infest the skin and cause disease conditions. We will describe two examples of common arthropod infestation, scabies and lice.

Scabies

Probably the first documented connection between a microscopic organism (330–450 μm) and a disease in humans was **scabies**, which was described by an Italian physician in 1687. The disease involves intense local itching and is caused by the tiny mite *Sarcoptes scabiei* burrowing under the skin to lay its eggs



(a) *Candida albicans*



(b) Oral candidiasis, or thrush

Figure 21.17 Candidiasis. (a) *Candida albicans*. Notice the spherical chlamydoconidia (resting bodies formed from hyphal cells) and the smaller blastoconidia (asexual spores produced by budding) (see Chapter 12). (b) This case of oral candidiasis, or thrush, produced a thick, creamy coating on the tongue.

Q How can antibacterial drugs lead to candidiasis?

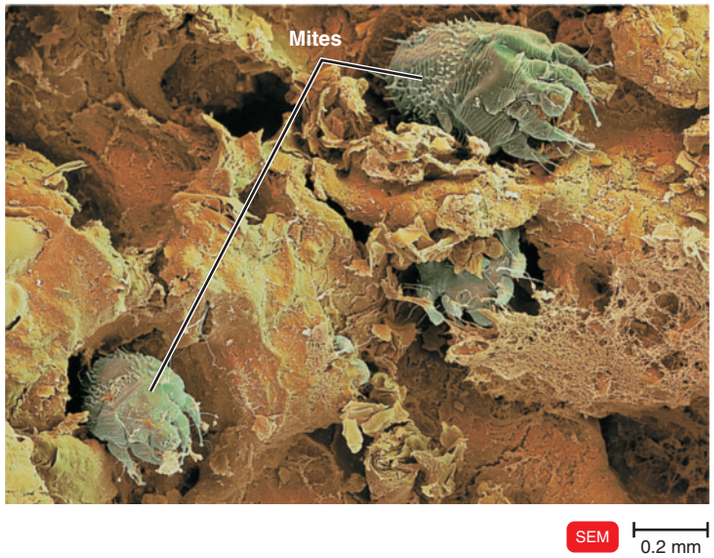


Figure 21.18 Scabies mites in skin.

Q Would a microscope be required to identify this pathogen?

(Figure 21.18). The burrows are often visible as slightly elevated, serpentine lines about 1 mm in width. However, scabies may appear as a variety of inflammatory skin lesions, many of them secondary infections from scratching. The mite is transmitted by intimate contact, including sexual contact, and is most often seen in family members, people living in nursing homes, and teenagers infected by children for whom they baby-sit.

About 500,000 people seek treatment for scabies in the United States each year; in developing countries, it is even more prevalent. The mite lives about 25 days, but by that time eggs have hatched and produced a dozen or so progeny. Scabies is usually diagnosed by microscopic examination of skin scrapings and usually is treated by topical application of permethrin. Difficult cases are sometimes treated with oral ivermectin. (See Diseases in Focus 21.3.)

Pediculosis (Lice)

Infestations by lice, called **pediculosis**, have afflicted humans for thousands of years. Although usually associated in the public mind with poor sanitation, outbreaks of head lice among middle- and upper-class schoolchildren in the United States are common. Parents are usually appalled, but head lice are easily transferred by head-to-head contact, such as occurs among children who know each other well. The head louse, *Pediculus humanus capitis*, is not the same as the body louse, *Pediculus humanus corporis*. These are subspecies of *Pediculus humanus* that have adapted to different areas of the body. Only the body louse spreads diseases, such as epidemic typhus.

Lice (see Figure 12.32a) require blood from the host and feed several times a day. The victim is often unaware of these silent passengers until itching, which is a result of sensitization to louse saliva, develops several weeks later. Scratching can result in secondary bacterial infections. The head louse has legs especially adapted to grasp scalp hairs (Figure 21.19a). During a life span of a little over a month, the female louse produces several eggs (nits) a day. The eggs are attached to hair shafts close to the scalp (Figure 21.19b) to benefit from a warmer incubation temperature, and they hatch in about a week. The very young

CLINICAL CASE

P. aeruginosa is isolated from the 26 cases that were tested. The health department obtains samples of pool water and takes environmental swabs from the tile around the pool and from an 18-foot inflatable device from the children's pool. The samples are cultured on nutrient agar. Water chlorination is adequate; the water tests negative for bacteria. *P. aeruginosa* is found on the tile at the shallow end of the pool and on the inflatable. Twenty-five of the patients with rashes and none of the controls had used the inflatable.

The inflatable is not watertight; during use, inflation is maintained with an air pump. The inflatable is used about 1 hour a day, 3 days a week, and stored next to the pool when not in use. Water is visibly seeping from the seams of the inflatable.

Why is *P. aeruginosa* a likely candidate for this type of infection?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 **Part 4** Part 5

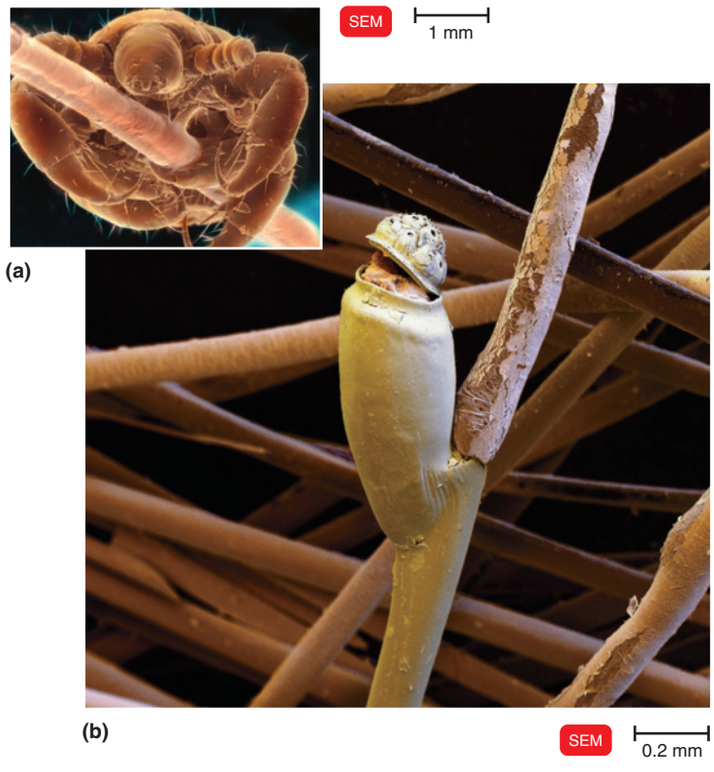


Figure 21.19 Louse and louse egg case. (a) Adult louse grasping hair. (b) This egg case (nit) contains the nymphal stage of the louse, which is in the process of exiting through the cap (operculum). It does this by gulping air and forcing it out the anus until it pops free, much like a champagne cork.

Q How is pediculosis transmitted?

stages of the louse are also called nits. Empty egg cases are whitish and more visible. They do not necessarily indicate the presence of live lice. As the hair grows (at the rate of about 1 cm a month), the attached nit moves away from the scalp.

A point of interest is that in the United States, lice have become adapted to the cylindrical hair shafts found on white, Asian, and Hispanic people. Consequently, African-Americans get head lice less frequently. In some African countries, lice have adapted to the noncylindrical hair shafts of blacks.

Treatments of head lice abound, recalling the medical adage that if there are many treatments for a condition, it is probably because none of them are really good. Nonprescription medications such as permethrin insecticide and pyrethrin insecticide are usually the first-choice treatment, but resistance has become common. Other topical preparations containing insecticides such as malathion and the more toxic lindane are also available (lindane requires a prescription). A single-dose treatment with orally administered ivermectin is occasionally used. A silicone-based product, LiceMD®, is effective and nontoxic. The active principle, *dimethicone*, blocks the breathing tubes of the louse. Combing out the nits with fine-toothed louse combs is another treatment option. This is a difficult, time-consuming procedure that has actually led to the appearance of professional removal services in some cities: expensive, but often worth the price to busy parents.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

21-8 What diseases, if any, are spread by head lice, such as *Pediculus humanus capitis*?

Microbial Diseases of the Eye

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

21-9 Define *conjunctivitis*.

21-10 List the causative agent, mode of transmission, and clinical symptoms of these eye infections: ophthalmia neonatorum, inclusion conjunctivitis, trachoma.

21-11 List the causative agent, mode of transmission, and clinical symptoms of these eye infections: herpetic keratitis, *Acanthamoeba* keratitis.

The epithelial cells covering the eye can be considered a continuation of the skin or mucosa. Many microbes can infect the eye, largely through the *conjunctiva*, the mucous membrane that lines the eyelids and covers the outer white surface of the eyeball. It is a transparent layer of living cells replacing the skin. Diseases of the eye are summarized in Diseases in Focus 21.4.

Inflammation of the Eye Membranes: Conjunctivitis

Conjunctivitis is an inflammation of the conjunctiva, often called by the common name **red eye**, or **pinkeye**. *Haemophilus influenzae* is the most common bacterial cause; viral conjunctivitis is usually caused by adenoviruses. However, a broad group of bacterial and viral pathogens as well as allergies can also cause this condition.

The popularity of contact lenses has been accompanied by an increased incidence of infections of the eye. This is especially true of the soft-lens varieties, which are often worn for extended periods. Among the bacterial pathogens that cause conjunctivitis are pseudomonads, which can cause serious eye damage. To prevent infection, contact lens wearers should not use homemade saline solutions, which are a frequent source of infection, and should scrupulously follow the manufacturer's recommendations for cleaning and disinfecting the lenses. The most effective methods for disinfecting contact lenses involve applying heat; lenses that cannot be heated can be disinfected with hydrogen peroxide, which is then neutralized.

Bacterial Diseases of the Eye

The bacterial microorganisms most commonly associated with the eye usually originate from the skin and upper respiratory tract.

Ophthalmia Neonatorum

Ophthalmia neonatorum is a serious form of conjunctivitis caused by *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, the cause of gonorrhea. Large amounts of pus are formed; if treatment is delayed, ulceration of the cornea will usually result. The disease is acquired as the infant passes through the birth canal, and infection carries a high risk of blindness. Early in the twentieth century, legislation required that the eyes of all newborn infants be treated with a 1% solution of silver nitrate, which proved to be a very effective treatment in preventing this eye infection, which previously accounted for nearly one-quarter of all cases of blindness in the United States. Silver nitrate has been almost entirely replaced by antibiotics because of frequent coinfections by gonococci and sexually transmitted chlamydias, which silver nitrate is not effective against. In parts of the world where the cost of antibiotics is prohibitive, a dilute solution of povidone-iodine has proven effective.

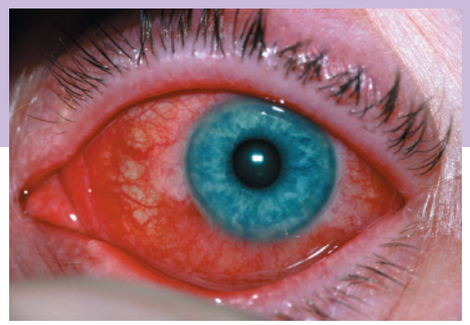
Inclusion Conjunctivitis

Chlamydial conjunctivitis, or **inclusion conjunctivitis**, is quite common today. It is caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis*, a bacterium that grows only as an obligate intracellular parasite. In infants, who acquire it in the birth canal, the condition tends to resolve spontaneously in a few weeks or months, but in rare cases it can lead to scarring of the cornea. Chlamydial conjunctivitis also appears to spread in the unchlorinated waters of swimming pools; in this context, it is called *swimming pool conjunctivitis*. Tetracycline applied as an ophthalmic ointment is an effective treatment.

Trachoma

A serious eye infection, and probably the greatest single cause of blindness by an infectious disease, is **trachoma**—an ancient name derived from the Greek word for rough. It is caused by certain serotypes of *C. trachomatis*, but not the same ones that cause genital infections (see Chapter 26). In the arid parts of Africa and

DISEASES IN FOCUS 21.4 Microbial Diseases of the Eye



In the morning a 20-year-old man has eye redness with a crust of mucus. The condition resolves with topical antibiotic treatment. Use the following table to provide a differential diagnosis and identify infections that could cause these symptoms.

Disease	Pathogen	Portal of Entry	Signs and symptoms	Method of Transmission	Treatment
BACTERIAL DISEASES					
Conjunctivitis	*Haemophilus influenzae*	Conjunctiva	Redness, itchiness, mucous discharge	Direct contact; fomites	None
Ophthalmia Neonatorum	*Neisseria gonorrhoeae*	Conjunctiva	Acute infection with much pus formation	Through birth canal	Prevention: tetracycline, erythromycin, or povidone-iodine
Inclusion Conjunctivitis	*Chlamydia trachomatis*	Conjunctiva	Swelling of eyelid; mucus and pus formation	Through birth canal; swimming pools	Tetracycline
Trachoma	*C. trachomatis*	Conjunctiva	Conjunctivitis	Direct contact; fomites; flies	Azithromycin
Ocular Syphilis	*Treponema pallidum*	Mucous membranes	Redness, blurry vision	Sexually transmitted infection	See Chapter 26
VIRAL DISEASES					
Conjunctivitis	Adenoviruses	Conjunctiva	Redness	Direct contact	None
Herpetic Keratitis	*Simplexvirus* (HHV-1)	Conjunctiva; cornea	Keratitis	Direct contact; recurring latent infection	Trifluridine may be effective
PROTOZOAN DISEASE					
***Acanthamoeba* Keratitis**	*Acanthamoeba* spp.	Corneal abrasion; soft contact lenses may prevent removal of ameba by blinking	Keratitis	Contact with fresh water	Chlorhexidine; corneal transplant or eye removal surgery may be required

Asia, almost all children are infected early in their lives. Worldwide, there are probably 500 million active cases and 7 million blinded victims. Trachoma also occurs occasionally in the southwestern United States, especially among Native Americans.

The disease is a conjunctivitis transmitted largely by hand contact or by sharing such personal objects as towels. Flies may also carry the bacteria. Repeated infections cause inflammation (Figure 21.20a), leading to *trichiasis*, an in-turning of the eyelashes (Figure 21.20b). Abrasion of the cornea, especially by the eyelashes, eventually causes scarring of the cornea and blindness. Trichiasis can be corrected surgically, a procedure shown in ancient Egyptian papyri. Secondary infections by other bacterial pathogens are also a factor in the disease. Antibiotics to eliminate chlamydia, especially oral azithromycin, are useful in treatment. The disease can be controlled through sanitary practices and health education.

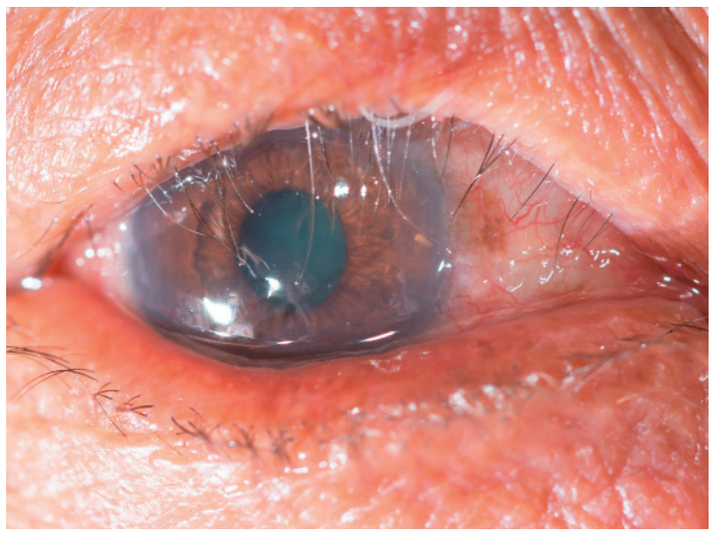
CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **21-9** What is the common name of inclusion conjunctivitis?
- **21-10** Why have antibiotics almost entirely replaced the less expensive use of silver nitrate for preventing ophthalmia neonatorum?

Other Infectious Diseases of the Eye

The diseases discussed here are characterized by inflammation of the cornea, which is called *keratitis*. In the United States, keratitis is mostly bacterial in origin. Fungi and helminths can also cause eye diseases. In Africa and Asia, eye infections are mostly caused by fungi, such as *Candida*, *Fusarium*, and *Aspergillus*.

(a) Chronic inflammation of the eyelid



(b) Trichiasis, inturned eyelashes, abrading the cornea

Figure 21.20 Trachoma. (a) Repeated infection with *Chlamydia trachomatis* causes chronic inflammation. The eyelid has been pulled back to show the inflammatory nodules that are in contact with the cornea. The resulting abrasion damages the cornea and makes it susceptible to secondary infections. (b) In later stages of trachoma, the eyelashes turn inward (trichiasis) as shown here, further abrading the cornea.

Q How is trachoma transmitted?

See the **Big Picture** on Neglected Tropical Diseases for more information.

COVID-related conjunctivitis

Conjunctivitis has been reported in 1 to 3% of COVID-19 patients. The virus that causes COVID-19, SARS-CoV-2, can be transmitted to the conjunctiva by hands, bedding, or respiratory droplets.

Herpetic Keratitis

Herpetic keratitis is caused by the same *herpes simplex type 1 virus* (HSV-1) that causes cold sores and is latent in the trigeminal nerves (see Figure 21.13). The disease is an infection of the cornea, often resulting in deep ulcers. It may be the most common cause of infectious blindness in the United States. The drug trifluridine is often an effective treatment.

Acanthamoeba Keratitis

The first case of ***Acanthamoeba* keratitis** was reported in 1973 in a Texas rancher. Since then, well over 4000 cases have been diagnosed in the United States. *Acanthamoeba* (see Figure 22.17b) has been found in fresh water, tap water, hot tubs, and soil. Most recent cases have been associated with the wearing of contact lenses, although any cornea damaged by trauma or infection is susceptible. Contributing factors are inadequate, unsanitary, or faulty disinfecting procedures (only heat will reliably kill the cysts), homemade saline solutions, and wearing the contact lenses overnight or while swimming.

In its early stages, the infection consists of only a mild inflammation, but later stages are often accompanied by severe pain. If started early, treatment with 2% chlorhexidine eye drops has been successful. Damage is often so severe as to require a corneal transplant or even removal of the eye. Diagnosis is confirmed by the presence of trophozoites and cysts in stained scrapings of the cornea.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

21-11 Of the two eye diseases herpetic keratitis and *Acanthamoeba* keratitis, which is the more likely to be caused by an organism actively reproducing in saline solutions for contact lenses?

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

P. aeruginosa is able to withstand relatively high levels of chlorine, so eradicating it from swimming pools is difficult. Its ability to produce a biofilm may be a factor in its hardiness. Because the inflatable never completely dries, the bacteria probably grow inside while it is in storage. The bacteria leak out the seams and enter the body through minor abrasions, possibly obtained by contact with the inflatable. The rash patterns are consistent with handling the inflatable. The one patient who had a rash on her legs but had not used the inflatable most likely acquired her rash from the tile.

Pseudomonas dermatitis outbreaks usually occur as a result of low levels of water disinfectant in pools and hot tubs. In this case, the ability of *Pseudomonas* to grow on organic molecules inside the inflatable contributed to the outbreak. The CDC recommends that pool inflatables be emptied, rinsed with fresh water, and air-dried daily.

BIG PICTURE

Neglected Tropical Diseases

Neglected Tropical Diseases (NTDs) are a group of 20 diseases contracted by more than a billion people per year.

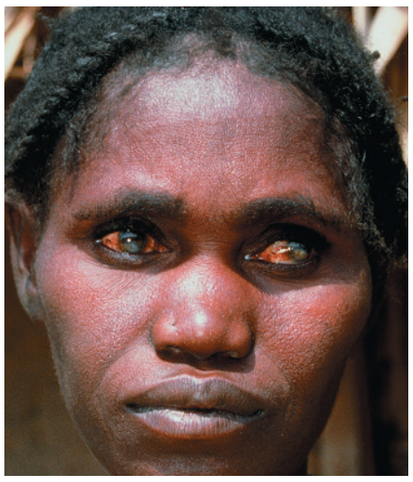
A Different Kind of Public Health Campaign

Traditionally, public health campaigns target the largest health threats one disease at a time. An unfortunate consequence of this approach is that certain serious infections with lower incidence rates never meet the criteria for major health campaigns. Thus, awareness, prevention, and treatment efforts may fall through the cracks.

Historically, this was the case for 20 infections now known as Neglected Tropical Diseases (NTDs). They disproportionately infect people of limited means living in remote areas low in resources. NTDs cause a wide variety of maladies, including blindness (trachoma, onchocerciasis); disfigurement (leprosy, lymphatic filariasis, Buruli ulcer); heart problems (Chagas disease); liver or lung disease (schistosomiasis, fascioliasis, leishmaniasis, echinococcosis); bone, joint, or other movement-related disabilities (yaws, dengue, dracunculiasis); malaise, malnutrition, and cognitive impairment (soil-transmitted helminthiasis); and neurological damage (rabies, cysticercosis, and African trypanosomiasis). Taken as a group, NTDs impact over a billion people annually, with 200 million deaths, according to the WHO.

Despite the wide variance in causes and effects, management strategies for NTDs are frequently similar (see the table). Simultaneous infection with more than one NTD is also common, making a group-management approach a good option for the public health response.

In 2021, the WHO issued a declaration that set NTD reduction targets for the year 2030 and outlined ways to attain the goals. Main approaches include early diagnosis and treatment; zoonotic disease management; preventive chemotherapy; vector control and pesticide management; and improvement of sanitation and drinking water safety.



River blindness, caused by the nematode *Onchocerca volvulus*, is transmitted by bites of *Simulium* spp. blackflies. It affects over 14 million people in Africa and Latin America.

Infection Type	Disease	Management Strategies
PROTOZOAN	African trypanosomiasis	Vector (tsetse fly) control, preventive chemotherapy, intensified disease management, veterinary public health
	Chagas disease	Vector (triatoma) control, intensified disease management
	Leishmaniasis	Vector (sandfly) control, preventive chemotherapy, intensified disease management
HELMINTHIC	Taeniasis, Cysticercosis	Veterinary public health, improved sanitation and hygiene
	Dracunculiasis (Guinea worm disease)	Vector (copepod crustaceans) control, improved hygiene and sanitation
	Echinococcosis	Veterinary public health
	Fascioliasis (foodborne trematodiases)	Veterinary public health, preventive chemotherapy
	Lymphatic filariasis (elephantiasis)	Vector (mosquito) control, preventive chemotherapy, intensified disease management
	Onchocerciasis (river blindness)	Vector (black fly) control, preventive chemotherapy
	Schistosomiasis (soil-transmitted intestinal worms)	Preventive deworming drugs, improved hygiene and sanitation
BACTERIAL	Trachoma	Vector (fly) control, improved sanitation and hygiene
	Leprosy (Hansen's disease)	Preventive chemotherapy, intensified disease management
	Buruli ulcer	Control of aquatic insect reservoirs; rapid diagnosis and treatment, improved sanitation and hygiene
	Yaws (endemic treponematosis)	Improved hygiene
VIRAL	Chikungunya	Vector control
	Dengue	
	Rabies	Veterinary public health
FUNGAL	Mycetoma, chromoblasto-mycosis	Develop diagnostic skin tests
ARTHROPOD	Scabies	Develop diagnostic tests
SNAKE VENOM		Develop simple low-cost immunoassays for identifying biting species to quickly provide proper antivenom

A Few Strategies Can Greatly Reduce Incidence of Neglected Tropical Diseases

The WHO's 2012–2020 NTD program resulted in elimination of lymphatic filariasis in 17 countries and trachoma in 10 countries. Building on successful strategies, by 2030, the WHO hopes to eradicate dracunculiasis and achieve regional elimination of lymphatic filariasis, leprosy, trachoma, and African trypanosomiasis. Efforts to reduce NTDs include the following.

Preventive Chemotherapy

Pharmaceutical firms donate medication and share technology and data to develop new treatments. The World Bank funds initiatives to provide treatments. Preventive medicines for multiple NTDs are packaged and priced at less than $1 per person. Teachers receive training to administer deworming tablets to students. These efforts have confined the transmission of dracunculiasis.

Innovative, Intensified Disease Management

Most people infected with NTDs live in remote areas, so aid groups host community events where people can receive vaccines, vitamins, and drugs outside the clinical setting. Grants from organizations such as the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation fund development of portable testing devices, allowing for rapid diagnosis and immediate treatment.

Veterinary Care

Veterinary care is expensive, and therefore rare, in developing nations. Treating pets, cattle, and pigs for parasites and bacterial and viral diseases helps break transmission to humans of zoonotic diseases such as rabies, cysticercosis, echinococcosis, foodborne trematodiases, and African trypanosomiasis.

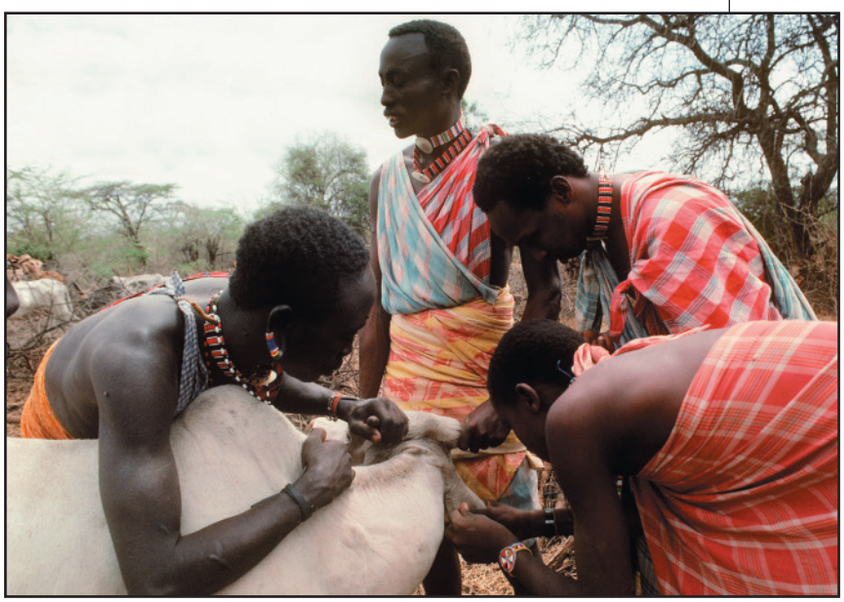
Vector Control

Safe use of pesticides for vector control reduces incidence of African trypanosomiasis, Chagas disease, leishmaniasis, chikungunya, dengue, dracunculiasis, lymphatic filariasis, and trachoma.

Improved Sanitation and Hygiene Services

Safe drinking water and improved sanitation systems can reduce prevalence of many diseases, including dracunculiasis, schistosomiasis, trachoma, Buruli ulcer, and yaws.

Access to clean water allows daily hand and face washing, which can reduce the transmission of many diseases.



Kenyan Masai take a blood sample from cattle to check for trypanosomes.

KEY CONCEPTS

- Vectors are animals that carry diseases to humans. (**See Chapter 12, "Arthropods as Vectors," and Chapter 14, "Transmission of Disease."**)
- Over half the world's population is infected with eukaryotic pathogens, such as protozoans and worms. (**See Chapter 12, "Medically Important Protozoa" and "Helminths."**)
- Epidemiologists study patterns in transmission and distribution in order to develop infection control strategies. (**See Chapter 14, "Epidemiology."**)
- Pet vaccination is prohibitively expensive in most of Africa, Asia, and Latin America, where rabies deaths are much more common. (**See Chapter 22, "Rabies."**)

Study Outline

Introduction (p. 592)

1. The skin is a physical barrier against microorganisms.
2. Moist areas of the skin support larger populations of bacteria than dry areas.

Structure and Function of the Skin (pp. 593–594)

1. The outer portion of the skin (epidermis) contains keratin, a waterproof coating.
2. The inner portion of the skin, the dermis, contains hair follicles, sweat ducts, and oil glands that provide passageways for microorganisms.
3. Sebum and perspiration are secretions of the skin that can inhibit the growth of microorganisms.
4. Sebum and perspiration provide nutrients for some microorganisms.
5. Body cavities are lined with epithelial cells. When these cells secrete mucus, they constitute the mucous membrane.

Normal Microbiota of the Skin (p. 594)

1. Microorganisms that live on skin are resistant to desiccation and high concentrations of salt.
2. Gram-positive cocci predominate on the skin.
3. Washing does not completely remove the normal skin microbiota.
4. Members of the genus *Cutibacterium* metabolize oil from the oil glands and colonize hair follicles.
5. *M. furfur* yeast grows on oily secretions and may be the cause of dandruff.

Microbial Diseases of the Skin (pp. 594–613)

1. Vesicles are small fluid-filled lesions; bullae are vesicles larger than 1 cm; macules are flat, reddened lesions; papules are raised lesions; and pustules are raised lesions containing pus.

Bacterial Diseases of the Skin (pp. 594–604)

2. The majority of skin microbiota consist of coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus epidermidis*.
3. Almost all pathogenic strains of *S. aureus* produce coagulase.
4. Pathogenic *S. aureus* can produce enterotoxins, leukocidins, and exfoliative toxin.
5. Localized infections (sties, pimples, and carbuncles) result from entry of *S. aureus* through openings in the skin.
6. Impetigo is a highly contagious superficial skin infection caused by *S. aureus*.
7. Toxemia occurs when toxins enter the bloodstream; staphylococcal toxemias include scalded skin syndrome and toxic shock syndrome.
8. Streptococci are classified according to their hemolytic enzymes and cell wall antigens.
9. Group A beta-hemolytic streptococci produce a number of virulence factors: M protein, deoxyribonuclease, streptokinases, and hyaluronidase.
10. Invasive group A beta-hemolytic streptococci cause severe and rapid tissue destruction.
11. *P. aeruginosa* produces an endotoxin and several exotoxins.
12. Diseases caused by *P. aeruginosa* include otitis externa, respiratory infections, burn infections, and dermatitis.
13. *P. aeruginosa* infections have a characteristic blue-green pus caused by the pigment pyocyanin.
14. *M. ulcerans* causes deep-tissue ulceration.
15. Metabolic products (fatty acids) of *C.* acnes cause inflammatory acne.

Viral Diseases of the Skin (pp. 604–609)

16. Papillomaviruses cause skin cells to proliferate and produce a benign growth called a wart or papilloma.
17. Warts are spread by direct contact.
18. Warts may regress spontaneously or be removed chemically or physically.
19. Variola virus causes two types of skin infections: variola major and variola minor.
20. Smallpox is transmitted by the respiratory route, and the virus is moved to the skin via the bloodstream. It has been eradicated as a result of a vaccination effort by the World Health Organization.
21. MPOX, which resembles smallpox in symptoms, is transmitted between humans by direct contact with skin lesions or respiratory secretions. Incidence increased worldwide in 2022.
22. *Variolavirus* (HHV-3) is transmitted by the respiratory route and is localized in skin cells, causing a vesicular rash.
23. Complications of chickenpox include encephalitis and Reye's syndrome.
24. After chickenpox, the virus can remain latent in nerve cells and subsequently activate as shingles.
25. Shingles is characterized by a vesicular rash along the affected cutaneous sensory nerves.
26. HHV-3 can be treated with acyclovir. An attenuated live vaccine is available.
27. Herpes simplex infection of mucosal cells results in cold sores and occasionally encephalitis.
28. The virus remains latent in nerve cells, and cold sores can recur when the virus is activated.
29. HSV-1 is transmitted primarily by oral and respiratory routes.
30. Herpes encephalitis occurs when *Simplexvirus* spp. infect the brain.
31. Acyclovir has proven successful in treating herpes encephalitis.
32. Measles is caused by measles virus and is transmitted by the respiratory route.
33. Vaccination against measles provides effective long-term immunity.
34. After the measles virus has incubated in the upper respiratory tract, macular lesions appear on the skin, and Koplik's spots appear on the oral mucosa.
35. Complications of measles include middle ear infections, pneumonia, encephalitis, and secondary bacterial infections.

36. The rubella virus is transmitted by the respiratory route and causes a red rash and light fever.
37. Congenital rubella syndrome can affect a fetus when a woman contracts rubella during the first trimester of her pregnancy.
38. Vaccination with live, attenuated rubella virus provides immunity of unknown duration.
39. *Erythroparvovirus* (B19) causes fifth disease, and *Roseolovirus* spp. (HHV-6 and HHV-7) cause roseola.
40. Hand-foot-mouth disease is an infection in young children caused by several enteroviruses.

Fungal Diseases of the Skin and Nails (pp. 610–611)

41. Fungi that colonize the outer layer of the epidermis cause dermatomycoses.
42. *Microsporum*, *Trichophyton*, and *Epidermophyton* cause dermatomycoses called ringworm, or tinea.
43. These fungi grow on keratin-containing epidermis, such as hair, skin, and nails.
44. Diagnosis is based on the microscopic examination of skin scrapings or fungal culture.
45. Sporotrichosis results from a soil fungus that penetrates the skin through a wound.
46. The fungi grow and produce subcutaneous nodules along the lymphatic vessels.
47. *Candida albicans* causes infections of mucous membranes and is a common cause of thrush (in oral mucosa) and vaginitis.
48. Topical antifungal chemicals may be used to treat fungal diseases of the skin.

Parasitic Infestation of the Skin (pp. 611–613)

49. Scabies is caused by a mite burrowing and laying eggs in the skin.
50. Pediculosis is an infestation by *Pediculus humanus*.

Microbial Diseases of the Eye (pp. 613–617)

1. The mucous membrane lining the eyelid and covering the eyeball is the conjunctiva.

Inflammation of the Eye Membranes: Conjunctivitis (p. 613)

2. Conjunctivitis is caused by several bacteria and can be transmitted by improperly disinfected contact lenses.

Bacterial Diseases of the Eye (pp. 613–614)

3. Bacterial microbiota of the eye usually originate from the skin and upper respiratory tract.
4. Ophthalmia neonatorum is caused by the transmission of *N. gonorrhoeae* to an infant during passage through the birth canal.
5. Inclusion conjunctivitis is an infection of the conjunctiva caused by *C. trachomatis*. It is transmitted to infants during birth and is transmitted in unchlorinated swimming water.
6. Trachoma is transmitted by hands, fomites, and perhaps flies.

Other Infectious Diseases of the Eye (pp. 614–617)

7. *Fusarium* and *Aspergillus* fungi can infect the eye.
8. Herpetic keratitis causes corneal ulcers. The etiology is HSV-1 that invades the central nervous system and can recur.
9. *Acanthamoeba* protozoa, transmitted via water, can cause a serious form of keratitis.

Study Questions

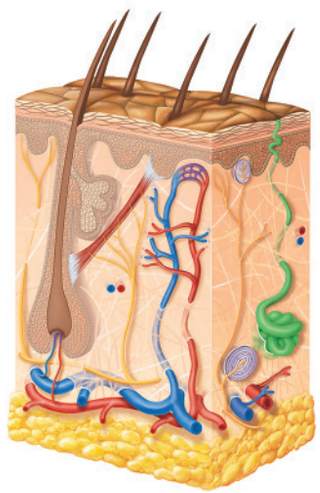
For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. Discuss the usual mode of entry of bacteria into the skin. Compare bacterial skin infections with infections caused by fungi and viruses with respect to mode of entry.
2. What bacteria are identified by a positive coagulase test? What bacteria are characterized as group A beta-hemolytic?

3. DRAW IT On the following figure, show the sites of the following infections: impetigo, folliculitis, acne, warts, shingles, sporotrichosis, pediculosis.



4. Complete the following table of epidemiology.

Disease	Etiologic Agent	Clinical Symptoms	Mode of Transmission
Acne			
Pimples			
Warts			
Chickenpox			
Hand-foot-mouth disease			
Measles			
Rubella			

5. Before 2005, why was a test for antibodies against rubella required for females under age 50 before issuing a marriage license?
6. Identify the diseases based on the symptoms in the following chart.

Symptoms	Disease
Koplik's spots	
Macular rash	
Vesicular rash	
Small, spotted rash	
Recurrent "blisters" on oral mucosa	
Corneal ulcer and swelling of lymph nodes	

7. What complications can occur from HSV-1 infections?
8. What is in the MMR vaccine?
9. A patient exhibits inflammatory skin lesions that itch intensely. Microscopic examination of skin scrapings reveals an eight-legged arthropod. What is your diagnosis? How is the disease treated? What would you conclude if you saw a six-legged arthropod?
10. NAME IT This anaerobic, gram-positive rod is found on the skin. Infections are often treated with retinoids or benzoyl peroxide.

Multiple Choice

Use the following information to answer questions 1 and 2. A 6-year-old girl was taken to the physician for evaluation of a slowly growing bump on the back of her head. The bump was a raised, scaling lesion 4 cm in diameter. A fungal culture of material from the lesion was positive for a fungus with numerous conidia.

1. The girl's disease was
   a. rubella.
   b. candidiasis.
   c. dermatomycosis.
   d. a cold sore.
   e. none of the above
2. Besides the scalp, this disease can occur on all of the following *except*
   a. feet.
   b. nails.
   c. the groin.
   d. subcutaneous tissue.
   e. The disease can occur on all of these areas.

Use the following information to answer questions 3 and 4. A 12-year-old boy had a fever, rash, headache, sore throat, and cough. He also had a macular rash on his trunk, face, and arms. A throat culture was negative for *Streptococcus pyogenes*.

3. The boy most likely had
   a. streptococcal sore throat.
   b. measles.
   c. rubella.
   d. smallpox.
   e. hand-foot-mouth disease.
4. All of the following are complications of this disease *except*
   a. middle ear infections.
   b. pneumonia.
   c. birth defects.
   d. encephalitis.
   e. All are complications of this disease.
5. A patient has conjunctivitis. If you isolated *Pseudomonas* from the patient's mascara, you would most likely conclude all of the following *except* that
   a. the mascara was the source of the infection.
   b. *Pseudomonas* is causing the infection.
   c. *Pseudomonas* has been growing in the mascara.
   d. the mascara was contaminated by the manufacturer.
   e. All of the above are valid conclusions.
6. You microscopically examine scrapings from a case of *Acanthamoeba* keratitis. You expect to see
   a. nothing.
   b. viruses.
   c. gram-positive cocci.
   d. eukaryotic cells.
   e. gram-negative cocci.

Use the following choices to answer questions 7 through 9.

a. *Pseudomonas*
b. *Staphylococcus aureus*
c. scabies
d. *Sporothrix*
e. virus

7. Nothing is seen in microscopic examination of a scraping from the patient's rash.
8. Microscopic examination of the patient's ulcer reveals 10 μm ovoid cells.
9. Microscopic examination of scrapings from the patient's rash shows gram-negative rods.
10. Which of the following pairs is *mismatched*?
    a. leading infectious cause of blindness—*Chlamydia*
    b. chickenpox—shingles
    c. HSV-1—encephalitis
    d. Buruli ulcer—stomach acid
    e. none of the above

Analysis

1. A laboratory test used to determine the identity of *Staphylococcus aureus* is its growth on mannitol salt agar. The medium contains 7.5% sodium chloride (NaCl). Why is it considered a selective medium for *S. aureus*?
2. Is it necessary to treat a patient for warts? Explain briefly.
3. Analyses of nine conjunctivitis cases provided the data in the following table. How were these infections transmitted? How could they be prevented?

No.	Etiology	Isolated from Eye Cosmetics or Contact Lenses
5	*Staphylococcus epidermidis*	+
1	*Acanthamoeba*	+
1	*Candida*	+
1	*Pseudomonas aeruginosa*	+
1	*S. aureus*	+

4. What factors made the eradication of smallpox possible? What other diseases meet these criteria?

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. A hospitalized patient recovering from surgery develops an infection that has blue-green pus and a grapelike odor. What is the probable etiology? How might the patient have acquired this infection?
2. A 12-year-old female with diabetes using continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion developed a fever (39.4°C), low blood pressure, abdominal pain, and erythroderma. She was supposed to change the needle-insertion site every 3 days after cleaning the skin with an iodine solution. Frequently she did not change the insertion site more often than every 10 days. Blood culture was negative, and abscesses at insertion sites were not cultured. What is the probable cause of her symptoms?
3. A male adolescent with confirmed influenza was hospitalized when he developed respiratory distress. He had a fever, rash, and low blood pressure. *S. aureus* was isolated from his respiratory secretions. Discuss the relationship between his symptoms and the etiological agent.

22 Microbial Diseases of the Nervous System

Some of the most devastating infectious diseases are those that affect the nervous system, especially the brain and spinal cord. Damage to these areas can lead to deafness, blindness, learning disabilities, paralysis, and death.

Because of the crucial importance of the nervous system, it is strongly protected from accident and infection by bone and other structures. Even pathogens that are circulating in the bloodstream usually can't enter the brain and spinal cord because of the blood–brain barrier (see Figure 22.2). Occasionally, some trauma will disrupt these defenses with serious consequences. The **Big Picture** describes uterine infections during pregnancy that may cross the placenta and affect nervous system development. The fluid (cerebrospinal fluid) of the central nervous system is especially vulnerable because it lacks many of the defenses found in the blood. Pathogens capable of causing diseases of the nervous system often have special virulence characteristics that enable them to penetrate these reduced defenses. For example, the pathogen can begin replicating in a peripheral nerve and gradually move into the brain and spinal cord. The protozoan *Naegleria fowleri* (in the photograph) enters the brain from the olfactory nerve in the nose. *Naegleria* meningoencephalitis is described in the Clinical Case in this chapter.

▶ ***Naegleria*** **ameba (large red cells) in human brain tissue.**

In the Clinic

You are a nurse in the neonatal intensive care unit, and your newest patient is a 32-week-old infant whose mother had flulike symptoms prior to delivery. The infant required supplemental oxygen for a few hours of life but soon was weaned off oxygen and tolerated her first feeding without difficulty. At 22 hours, you observe a drop in her heart rate, and despite resuscitation efforts, the infant dies. The next morning you receive a microbiology laboratory report that blood cultures drawn just before the infant's death are growing gram-positive rods. **What is the most likely cause of the infant's infection?**

Hint: Read about bacterial causes of meningitis in this chapter.

Structure and Function of the Nervous System

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

22-1 Define *central nervous system* and *blood–brain barrier*.

22-2 Differentiate meningitis from encephalitis.

The human nervous system is organized into two divisions: the central nervous system and the peripheral nervous system (Figure 22.1). The **central nervous system (CNS)** consists of the brain and the spinal cord. As the control center for the entire body, the CNS picks up sensory information from the environment, interprets the information, and sends impulses that coordinate the body's activities. The **peripheral nervous system (PNS)** consists of all the nerves that branch off from the brain (cranial nerves) and spinal cord (spinal nerves). These peripheral nerves are the lines of communication between the central nervous system, the various parts of the body, and the external environment.

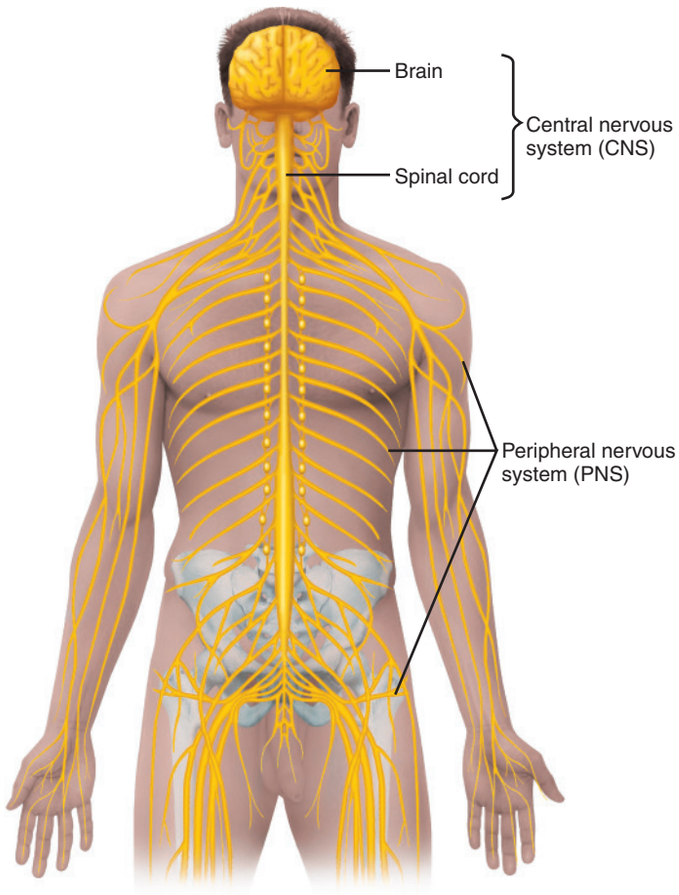


Figure 22.1 The human nervous system. This view shows the central and peripheral nervous systems.

Q Is meningitis an infection of the CNS or the PNS?

Both the brain and the spinal cord are covered and protected by three continuous membranes called *meninges* (Figure 22.2). These are the outermost *dura mater*, the middle *arachnoid mater*, and the innermost *pia mater*. Between the pia mater and arachnoid mater is a space called the *subarachnoid space*, in which an adult has 100 to 160 ml of **cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)** circulating. Because CSF has low levels of complement and circulating antibodies and few phagocytic cells, bacteria can multiply in it with few checks.

Late in the nineteenth century, experiments in which dyes were injected into the body resulted in the staining of all the organs of the body—with the important exception of the brain. Conversely, when the CSF was injected with dyes, only the brain was stained. These remarkable results were the first evidence of an important feature of anatomy: the **blood–brain barrier**. Certain capillaries permit some substances to pass from the blood into the brain but restrict others. These capillaries are less permeable than others within the body and are therefore more selective in passing materials.

Drugs cannot cross the blood–brain barrier unless they are lipid-soluble. (Glucose and many amino acids are not lipid-soluble, but they can cross the barrier because special transport systems exist for them.) The lipid-soluble antibiotic chloramphenicol enters the brain readily. Penicillin is only slightly lipid-soluble; but, if it is taken in very large doses, enough may cross the barrier to be effective. Inflammations of the brain tend to alter the blood–brain barrier in a way that allows antibiotics to cross it when they wouldn't be able to otherwise. Probably the most common routes of CNS invasion are the bloodstream and the lymphatic system (see Chapter 23), when inflammation alters permeability of the blood–brain barrier.

An inflammation of the meninges is called **meningitis**. An inflammation of the brain itself is called **encephalitis**. If both the brain and the meninges are affected, the inflammation is called **meningoencephalitis**.

Exploring the Microbiome describes how the intestinal microbiome may influence the CNS.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **22-1** Why can the antibiotic chloramphenicol readily cross the blood–brain barrier, whereas most other antibiotics cannot?
- **22-2** Encephalitis is an inflammation of what organ or organ structure?

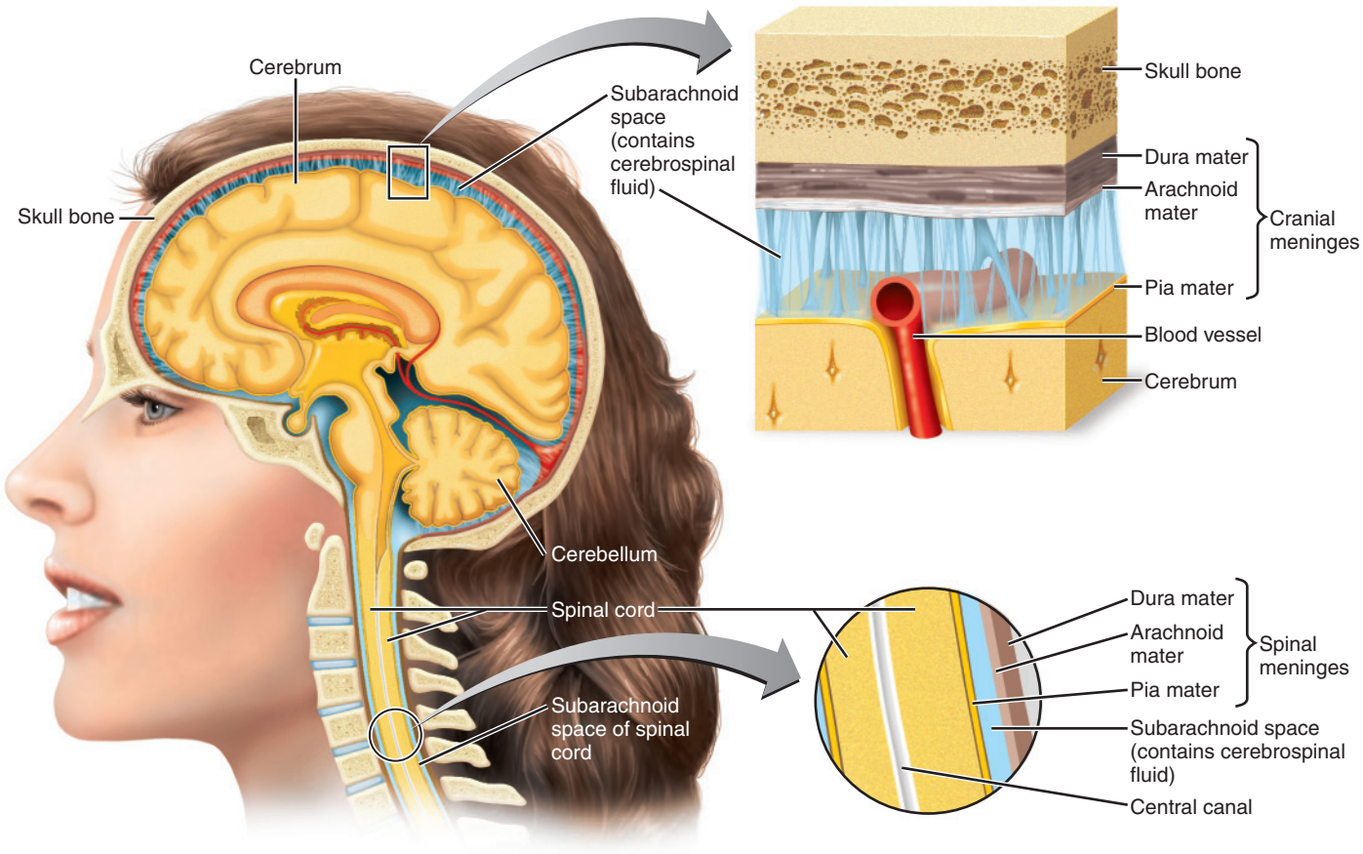


Figure 22.2 The meninges and cerebrospinal fluid. The meninges, whether cranial or spinal, consist of three layers: dura mater, arachnoid mater, and pia mater. Between the arachnoid and the pia mater is the subarachnoid space, in which cerebrospinal fluid circulates. The CSF is vulnerable to contamination by microbes carried in the blood that are able to penetrate the blood–brain barrier at the walls of the blood vessels.

Q If a patient has meningitis, what barriers would need to be crossed to result in encephalitis?

Bacterial Diseases of the Nervous System

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

22-3 Discuss the epidemiology of meningitis caused by *Haemophilus influenzae, Neisseria meningitidis, Streptococcus pneumoniae*, and *Listeria monocytogenes*.

22-4 Explain how bacterial meningitis is diagnosed and treated.

22-5 Discuss the epidemiology of tetanus, including mode of transmission, etiology, disease symptoms, and preventive measures.

22-6 State the causative agent, symptoms, suspect foods, and treatment for botulism.

22-7 Discuss the epidemiology of leprosy, including mode of transmission, etiology, disease symptoms, and preventive measures.

Microbial infections of the CNS are infrequent but often have serious consequences. In preantibiotic times, they were almost always fatal.

CLINICAL CASE Keep Your Head above Water

As her parents look on, EMTs load 9-year-old Patricia Scott into the back of the ambulance. Patricia's mother tells one of the EMTs that 3 days earlier Patricia complained of a severe headache. Over the next 3 days she experienced nausea and vomiting. When normally energetic Patricia became increasingly lethargic, and then unresponsive, Patricia's father called 911.

What could be causing Patricia's sickness? Read on to find out.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

Bacterial Meningitis

The initial symptoms of meningitis are not especially alarming: a triad of fever, headache, and a stiff neck. Nausea and vomiting often follow. Eventually, meningitis may progress to convulsions and coma. The mortality rate varies with the pathogen but is generally high for an infectious disease today. Many people who survive an attack suffer some degree of neurological damage.

Meningitis can be caused by different types of pathogens, including viruses, bacteria, fungi, and protozoa. **Viral meningitis** (not to be confused with viral encephalitis, discussed later in this chapter) is probably much more common than bacterial meningitis but tends to be a mild disease. Most cases occur in the summer and fall months and are usually caused by a varied group of viruses termed *enteroviruses* (see Table 13.2). Enteroviruses grow well in the throat and intestinal tract and are responsible for an assortment of mostly minor diseases. Viral meningitis can also be an occasional complication of viral infections such as mumps, chickenpox, and influenza.

Historically, only three bacterial species have been responsible for most of the meningitis cases and their resulting deaths. Meningitis caused by *Haemophilus influenzae* type B, once responsible for a majority of cases, has been nearly eliminated in the United States since introduction of an effective vaccine. In patients older than 16 years, about 80% of meningitis cases are now caused by *Neisseria meningitidis* and *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. All three of these pathogens possess a capsule that protects them from phagocytosis as they replicate rapidly in the bloodstream, from which they might enter the CSF. Death from bacterial meningitis often occurs very quickly, probably from shock and inflammation caused by the release of endotoxins of the gram-negative pathogens or the release of cell wall fragments (peptidoglycans and teichoic acids) from gram-positive bacteria.

Nearly 50 other species of bacteria have been reported to be opportunistic pathogens that occasionally cause meningitis. Especially important are *Listeria monocytogenes*, group B streptococci, staphylococci, and certain gram-negative bacteria.

Haemophilus influenzae Meningitis

H. influenzae is an aerobic, gram-negative bacterium that is a common member of the normal throat microbiota. Occasionally, however, it enters the bloodstream and causes several invasive diseases. In addition to causing meningitis, it is also frequently a cause of pneumonia (Chapter 24), otitis media (Chapter 24), and epiglottitis (Chapter 24). The carbohydrate capsule of the bacterium is important to its pathogenicity, especially those bacteria with capsular antigens of type b. (Strains that lack a capsule are called *nontypable*.) The capsule allows the bacterium to grow in blood or CSF without attracting phagocytes; these bacteria can then grow in the meninges.

It was given the name *Haemophilus influenzae* because the microorganism was erroneously thought to be the causative agent of the influenza pandemics of 1889 and World War I. *H. influenzae* was probably only a secondary invader during those virus-caused pandemics. *Haemophilus* refers to the need the microorganism has for factors in blood for growth (*hemo* = blood; *philus* = loving). Medically, the bacterium is often referred to by the acronym *Hib*.

Hib-caused meningitis occurs mostly in children under age 4, especially at about 6 months, when antibody protection provided in utero or in breastmilk weakens. The incidence is decreasing because of the Hib vaccine, which was introduced in 1988. Before the vaccine's introduction, *H. influenzae* meningitis was the leading cause of bacterial meningitis (45%), with a mortality rate of about 6%.

Neisseria meningitidis Meningitis (Meningococcal Meningitis)

Meningococcal meningitis is caused by *N. meningitidis* (the **meningococcus**). This is an aerobic, gram-negative diplococcus with a polysaccharide capsule that is important to its virulence. Like Hib and the pneumococcus, it is frequently present in the nose and throat of carriers without causing disease symptoms (Figure 22.3). These carriers, up to 40% of the population, are a reservoir of infection. Transmission is by droplet aerosols or direct contact with secretions.

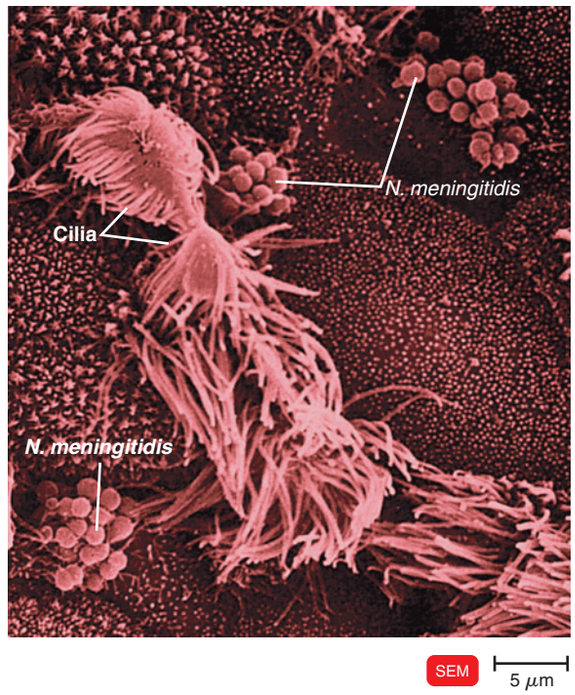


Figure 22.3 ***Neisseria meningitidis.*** This scanning electron micrograph shows *N. meningitidis* in clusters attached to cells on the mucous membrane in the pharynx.

Q **What would be the effect if the cilia are inactivated by this infection?**

The symptoms of meningococcal meningitis are mostly caused by an endotoxin that is produced very rapidly and is capable of causing death within just a few hours. The most distinguishing feature is a rash that does not fade when pressed. A case of meningococcal meningitis typically begins with a throat infection, leading to bacteremia and eventually meningitis. It usually occurs in children under 2 years. Significant numbers of these children have residual damage, such as deafness.

Death can occur within a few hours after the onset of fever; however, antibiotic therapy has helped reduce the mortality rate to about 9–12%. Without chemotherapy, mortality rates approach 80%.

The meningococcus occurs in six capsular serotypes associated with invasive disease (A, B, C, W-135, X, and Y). The distribution and frequency of these serotypes varies continuously. Local outbreaks are facilitated by modern ease of travel, which often exposes populations to serotypes that are otherwise uncommon in the area. Meningococcal meningitis is a global problem with the highest incidence of disease found in the so-called meningitis belt of sub-Saharan Africa, where epidemics occur every 5 to 12 years.

The incidence in industrialized countries is sporadic and varies by age, occurring most often in infants who have not yet developed protective antibodies. In arid regions of Africa and Asia, dry air causes the nasal mucous membranes to become less resistant to bacterial invasion. This contributes to widespread epidemics, mostly of serotype A and C. However, a conjugate vaccine with serogroups A and C has had encouraging results, leading to hopes that epidemic meningitis might eventually be eliminated from the area.

In the United States, sporadic meningococcal outbreaks occur among college students, presumably as a result of crowding of susceptible populations in dormitories. Before vaccination was introduced in 1982, these outbreaks were a major problem for the U.S. military in recruit barracks. Vaccination is often recommended for students entering college and is required by some institutions.

The three meningococcal serogroups that most commonly circulate and cause disease in the United States are B, C, and Y. MenACYW vaccines containing polysaccharide capsular material of serogroups A, C, Y, and W-135 (sometimes simply referred to as W) have been available since the 1980s. The newer serogroup B (MenB) vaccine contains bacterial surface proteins. MenB vaccine is recommended for 16- to 18-year-olds who are at risk of contracting the disease during outbreaks or are immunocompromised. A previously rare serogroup called X, for which a vaccine is not available, emerged in sub-Saharan Africa during the 2000s.

Streptococcus pneumoniae Meningitis (Pneumococcal Meningitis)

S. pneumoniae, like *H. influenzae*, is a common inhabitant of the nasopharyngeal region. About 70% of the general population are healthy carriers. The pneumococcus, so-called because it is best known as a cause of pneumonia (Chapter 24), is a gram-positive, encapsulated diplococcus. It is the leading cause of bacterial meningitis, now that an effective Hib vaccine is in use. Most cases of pneumococcal meningitis occur among children between the ages of 1 month and 4 years. For a bacterial disease, the mortality rate is high: about 8% in children and 22% in older adults. In countries where vaccines are unavailable, pneumococcal meningitis is responsible for the death of one million children annually.

S. pneumoniae produces several virulence factors. Like Hib, the capsule allows *S. pneumoniae* to evade phagocytes. Pneumolysin allows the bacterium to enter the meninges.

Vaccines against *S. pneumoniae* contain polysaccharide capsules of several different *S. pneumoniae* strains. However, there are more than 100 known pneumococcal serotypes, and vaccines have not been developed against all of them. The vaccine names, e.g., PCV13, PCV15, PCV20, and PCV23, identify the number of different serotypes against which the vaccine works. These vaccines have decreased the incidence of pneumococcal meningitis in children by 99% (see Table 18.1). One useful side effect of these vaccines is that they result in about a 6–7% decrease in cases of otitis media.

Diagnosis and Treatment of the Most Common Types of Bacterial Meningitis

A diagnosis of bacterial meningitis requires a sample of CSF obtained by a spinal tap, or lumbar puncture (**Figure 22.4**). A simple Gram stain is often useful; it will frequently determine the identity of the pathogen with considerable reliability. Cultures are also made from the fluid. For this purpose, prompt and careful handling is required because many of the likely pathogens are very sensitive and won't survive much storage time or even changes in temperature. The most frequently used type of serological tests performed on CSF are latex agglutination tests. Results are available within about 20 minutes. However, a negative result doesn't eliminate the possibility of less common bacterial pathogens or nonbacterial causes.

Bacterial meningitis is life-threatening and develops rapidly. Therefore, prompt treatment of any type of bacterial meningitis is essential, and chemotherapy of suspected cases is usually initiated before identification of the pathogen is complete. Broad-spectrum third-generation cephalosporins are usually the first choice of antibiotics; some experts recommend including vancomycin. As soon as identification is confirmed, or perhaps when antibiotic sensitivity has been determined from cultures, the antibiotic treatment may be changed. Antibiotics are also valuable in protecting patient contacts against the spread of an outbreak.

Listeriosis

L. monocytogenes is a gram-positive rod known to cause stillbirth and neurological disease in animals long before it was

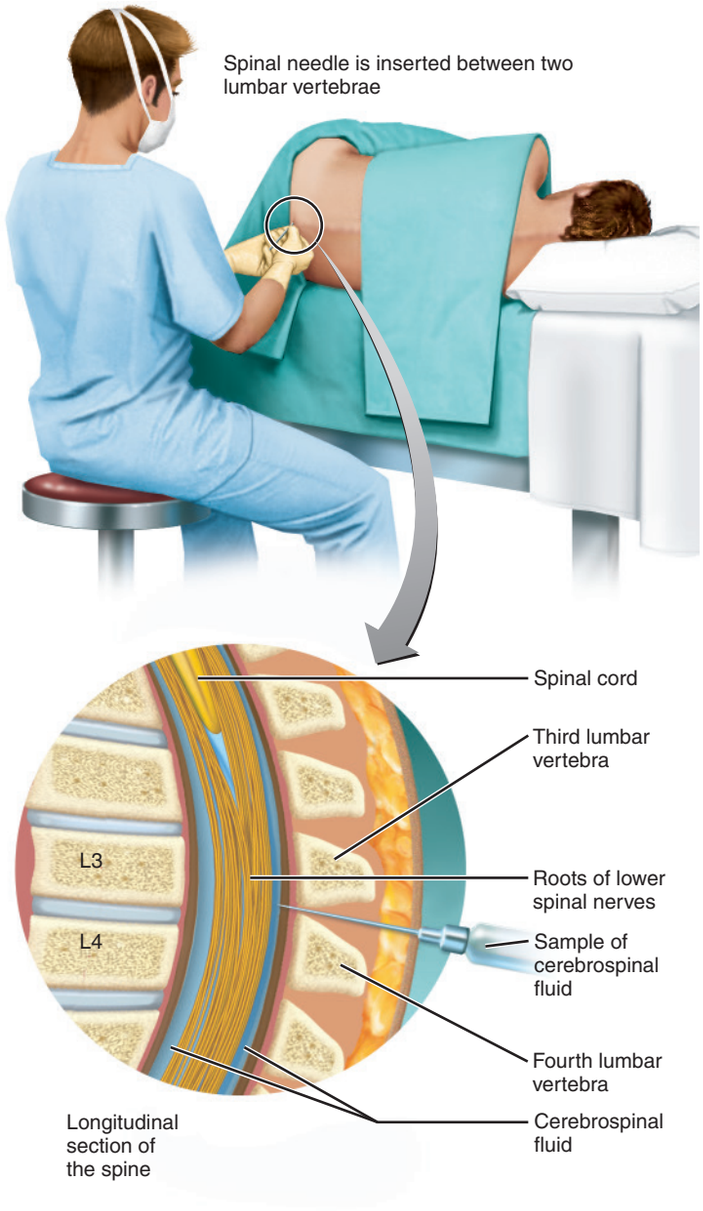


Figure 22.4 Spinal tap (lumbar puncture). Diseases affecting the central nervous system, such as meningitis, often require a spinal tap for diagnosis. A needle is inserted between two vertebrae in the lower spine. A sample of cerebrospinal fluid, which is contained in the subarachnoid space (see Figure 22.2), is withdrawn for laboratory examination.

Q Microscopically, what would you see in CSF from a healthy person? A person with meningococcal meningitis?

recognized as causing human disease. Excreted in animal feces, it is widely distributed in soil and water. The name is derived from the proliferation of monocytes (a type of leukocyte) found in some animals infected by it. In recent years, the disease **listeriosis** has changed from a disease of very limited importance to a major concern for the food industry and health authorities. Listeriosis is the fourth most common cause of bacterial meningitis.

The disease appears in two basic forms: in infected adults and as an infection of the fetus and newborn. In adult humans, it is usually a mild, often symptomless disease, but the microbe sometimes invades the CNS, causing meningitis. This is most likely to happen to persons whose immune system is compromised, such as persons with cancer, diabetes, or AIDS, or who are taking immunosuppressive medications. Occasionally, *L. monocytogenes* invades the bloodstream and causes a wide range of disease conditions, especially sepsis. Recovering or apparently healthy individuals often shed the pathogen indefinitely in their feces. An important factor in its virulence is that when *L. monocytogenes* is ingested by phagocytic cells, it isn't destroyed; it even proliferates within them, primarily in the liver. It also has the unusual capability of moving directly from one phagocyte to an adjacent one (Figure 22.5).

L. monocytogenes is especially dangerous during pregnancy. The fetus can be infected via the placenta, often resulting in a spontaneous abortion or stillbirth. In some cases the disease isn't manifested until a few weeks after birth, usually as meningitis, which can result in significant brain injury or death. The infant mortality rate associated with this type of infection is about 60%.

In human outbreaks, the organism is mostly foodborne. It's frequently isolated from a wide variety of foods; ready-to-eat deli meats, smoked fish, unpasteurized milk and cheeses, sprouts, and melons have been involved in several outbreaks. *L. monocytogenes* is one of the few pathogens capable of growth at refrigerator temperatures, which can lead to an increase in its numbers during a food's shelf life. A bacteriophage-containing spray capable of

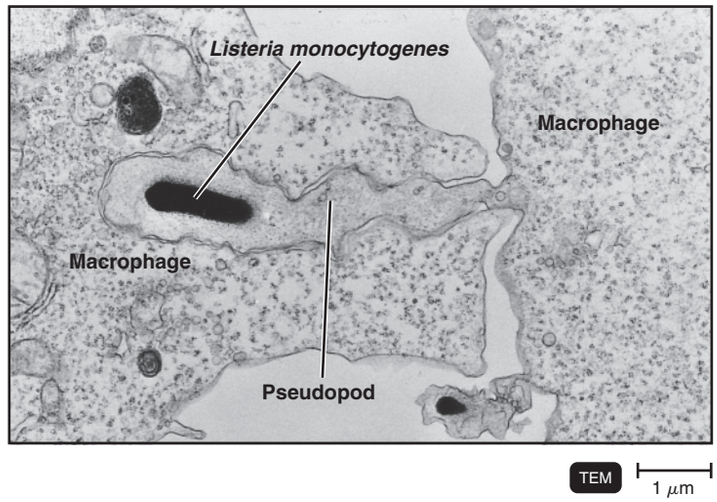


Figure 22.5 Cell-to-cell spread of *Listeria monocytogenes*, the cause of listeriosis. Notice that the bacterium has caused the macrophage on the right, in which it resided, to form a pseudopod that is now engulfed by the macrophage on the left. The pseudopod will soon be pinched off and the microbe transferred to the macrophage on the left.

Q How is listeriosis contracted?

killing at least 170 *L. monocytogenes* strains for treating ready-to-eat meats has been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). If it meets with consumer approval, it may be a model for similar sprays to control other foodborne pathogens.

Efforts to improve the methods of detecting and counting *L. monocytogenes* in foods are ongoing. Considerable progress has been made with selective growth media, rapid biochemical tests, and plate counts. Recently, PCR kits have been developed for *Listeria* identification, including real-time PCR kits that allow identification and counting of *L. monocytogenes* (see Chapter 10). Diagnosis in humans depends on isolating and culturing the pathogen, usually from blood or CSF. Penicillin G is the antibiotic of choice for treatment.

Microbial causes of meningitis and encephalitis are summarized in **Diseases in Focus 22.1**.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **22-3** Why is meningitis caused by the pathogen *L. monocytogenes* frequently associated with ingestion of refrigerated foods?
- **22-4** What body fluid is sampled to diagnose bacterial meningitis?

Tetanus

The causative agent of **tetanus**, *Clostridium tetani*, is an obligately anaerobic, endospore-forming, gram-positive rod. It's especially common in soil contaminated with animal fecal wastes.

The symptoms of tetanus are caused by an extremely potent neurotoxin, *tetanospasmin*, that is released upon death and lysis of the growing bacteria (see Chapter 15). It enters the CNS via the peripheral nerves or the blood. The bacteria themselves don't spread from the infection site, and there is no inflammation.

In a muscle's normal operation, a nerve impulse initiates contraction of the muscle. At the same time, an opposing muscle receives a signal to relax so as not to oppose the contraction. The tetanus neurotoxin blocks the relaxation pathway so that both opposing sets of muscles contract, resulting in the characteristic muscle spasms. The muscles of the jaw are affected early in the disease, preventing the mouth from opening, a condition known as *lockjaw*. In extreme cases, spasms of the back muscles cause the head and heels to bow backward, a condition called *opisthotonos* (**Figure 22.6**). Gradually, other skeletal muscles become affected, including those involved in swallowing. Death results from spasms of the respiratory muscles.

Because the microbe is an obligate anaerobe, the wound by which it enters the body must provide anaerobic growth conditions—for example, improperly cleaned deep wounds such as those caused by rusty (and therefore presumably dirt-contaminated) nails. People who inject illegal drugs are at high risk: sanitation during injection is not a priority, and the drugs are often contaminated. However, many cases of tetanus arise from trivial injuries, such as sitting on a tack, that the person considers too minor to bring to the attention of a physician.

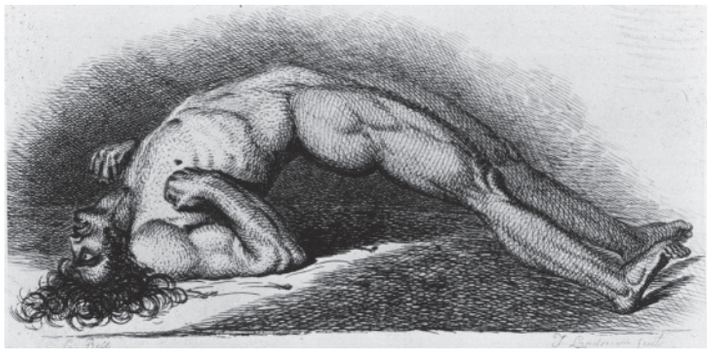


Figure 22.6 An advanced case of tetanus. A drawing of a British soldier during the Napoleonic wars. These spasms, known as opisthotonos, can result in a fractured spine. (Drawing by Charles Bell of the Royal College of Surgeons, Edinburgh.)

Q What is the name of the toxin that causes opisthotonos?

Effective vaccines for tetanus have been available since the 1940s. But vaccination was not always as common as it is today, where it is part of the standard DTaP (diphtheria, tetanus, and acellular pertussis) childhood vaccine. Currently, about 94% of 6-year-olds in the United States have good immunity. The tetanus vaccine is a *toxoid*, an inactivated toxin that stimulates the formation of antibodies that neutralize the toxin produced by the bacteria. A booster is required every 10 years to maintain good immunity, but many people do not obtain these vaccinations. Serological surveys show that at least 40% of the U.S. adult population does not have adequate protection. Almost all reported cases of tetanus occur in people who either have never received the primary series of tetanus vaccines or who completed a primary series but have not had a booster vaccination in the past 10 years. Deaths are more likely to occur in persons age 60 years and older and in persons who are diabetic.

CLINICAL CASE

Once Patricia reaches the emergency department, the attending physician notes her neurological symptoms and orders a lumbar puncture for a bacterial culture and cell count. While performing the lumbar puncture, the physician notes that the CSF, which is normally clear in a healthy person, is bloody and cloudy. The lab reports a high white blood cell count, but the bacterial culture is negative.

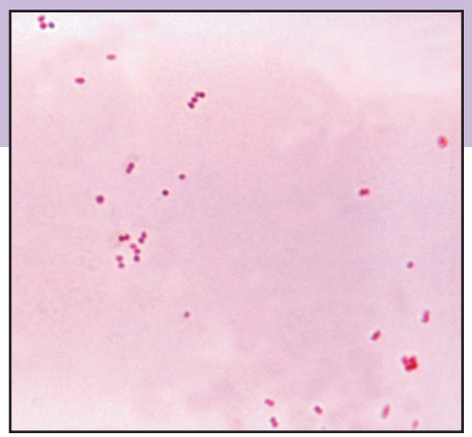
Based on these findings, what differential diagnosis can the attending physician make?

Part 1 **Part 2** Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

Even so, immunization has made tetanus in the United States a rare disease—typically, fewer than 10 cases a year. In 1903, 406 people died of fireworks-related tetanus injuries

DISEASES IN FOCUS 22.1 Meningitis and Encephalitis

Differential diagnosis is the process of identifying a disease from a list of possible diseases that fit the information derived from examining a patient. A differential diagnosis is important for providing initial treatment and for laboratory testing. For example, a worker in a day-care center in eastern North Dakota becomes ill with fever, rash, headache, and abdominal pain. The patient has a precipitous clinical decline and dies on the first day of hospitalization. A Gram stain of the patient's CSF is shown in the figure. Use the following table to provide a differential diagnosis of the infections that could cause these symptoms.



Gram stain of cerebrospinal fluid.

Disease	Pathogen	Portal of Entry	Method of Transmission	Treatment	Prevention
BACTERIAL DISEASES					
***H. influenzae* Meningitis**	*Haemophilus influenzae*	Respiratory tract	Endogenous; aerosols	Cephalosporin	Capsular Hib vaccine
Meningococcal Meningitis	*Neisseria meningitidis*	Respiratory tract	Aerosols	Cephalosporin	Capsular vaccines against serotypes A, B, C, Y, W
Pneumococcal Meningitis	*Streptococcus pneumoniae*	Respiratory tract	Aerosols	Cephalosporin	Polysaccharide vaccine
Listeriosis	*Listeria monocytogenes*	Mouth	Foodborne	Penicillin G	Pasteurizing and cooking food
FUNGAL DISEASE					
Cryptococcosis	*Cryptococcus neoformans, C. grubii, C. gattii*	Respiratory tract	Inhaling soil contaminated with spores	Amphotericin B, flucytosine	None
PROTOZOAN DISEASES					
Primary Amebic Meningoencephalitis	*Naegleria fowleri*	Nasal mucosa	Swimming	Amphotericin B, fluconazole, miltefosine	None
Granulomatous Amebic Encephalitis	*Acanthamoeba* spp., *Balamuthia mandrillaris*	Mucous membranes	Swimming	Amphotericin B, fluconazole, miltefosine	None

alone. (Fireworks explosions drive soil particles deep into human tissue.) Worldwide, an estimated 1 million cases occur annually, at least half in newborns: in many parts of the world, after the umbilical cord is severed, the newborn's umbilicus (navel) is dressed with materials such as soil, clay, and even cow dung. Estimates are that the mortality rate from tetanus is about 50% in developing areas; in the United States, it is about 25%. In contrast to immunization, recovery from tetanus does not provide immunity because the amount of toxin needed to cause the symptoms is too little to be immunogenic.

When a wound is severe enough to need a physician's attention, the doctor must decide whether it is necessary to provide protection against tetanus. Usually there isn't enough time to administer the toxoid to produce antibodies and block the progression of the symptoms, even if given as a booster to a patient who has been immunized. However, temporary immunity can be conferred by *tetanus immune globulin (TIG)*, prepared from the antibody-containing serum of immunized humans. (Prior to World War I, long before tetanus toxoid became available, similar preparations of preformed antibodies called *antisera* were used. Made by inoculating horses, antisera were very effective in lowering the incidence of tetanus in injured people.)

A physician's decision for treatment depends largely on the extent of the deep injuries and the immunization history of the patient, who may not be conscious. People with extensive injuries who have previously had a complete primary vaccination series and up-to-date boosters would be considered protected,

requiring no action. For extensive wounds in patients with unknown or low immunity, TIG would be given to provide temporary protection. In addition, the first of a toxoid series would be administered to provide more permanent immunity. When TIG and toxoid are both injected, different sites must be used to prevent the TIG from neutralizing the toxoid. Adults receive a Tdap (tetanus, diphtheria, pertussis) or Td (tetanus and diphtheria) vaccine that also boosts immunity to diphtheria. To minimize the production of more toxin, damaged tissue that provides growth conditions for the pathogen should be removed, a procedure called **debridement** (dē-BRĒD-ment), and antibiotics should be administered. However, once the toxin has attached to the nerves, such therapy is of little use.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

22-5 Is the tetanus vaccine directed at the bacterium or the toxin produced by the bacterium?

Botulism

Botulism, a form of food poisoning, is caused by *Clostridium botulinum*, an obligately anaerobic, endospore-forming gram-positive rod found in soil and many aquatic sediments. Ingesting the endospores usually does no harm, as will be explained shortly. However, in anaerobic environments, such as sealed cans, the microorganism produces an exotoxin. This neurotoxin is highly specific for the synaptic end of the nerve, where it blocks the release of acetylcholine, a chemical necessary for transmitting nerve impulses across synapses.

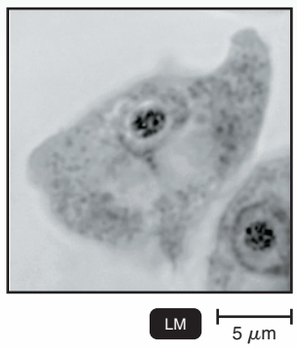
Individuals suffering from botulism undergo a progressive *flaccid paralysis* for 1 to 10 days and may die from respiratory and cardiac failure. Nausea, but no fever, may precede the neurological symptoms. The initial neurological symptoms vary, but nearly all sufferers have double or blurred vision. Other symptoms include difficulty swallowing and general weakness. Incubation time varies, but symptoms typically appear within a day or two. As with tetanus, recovery from the disease does not confer immunity because the toxin is usually not present in amounts large enough to be effectively immunogenic.

Botulism was first described as a clinical disease in the early 1800s, when it was known as the sausage disease (*botulus* is the Latin word for sausage). Blood sausage, the type usually involved, was made by filling a pig stomach with blood and ground meats, tying shut all the openings, boiling it for a short time, and smoking it over a wood fire. The sausage was then stored at room temperature. This attempt at food preservation included most of the requirements for an outbreak of botulism. It killed competing bacteria but allowed the more heat-stable *C. botulinum* endospores to survive, and it provided anaerobic conditions and an incubation period for toxin production.

The botulinal toxin will be destroyed by most ordinary cooking methods that bring the food to a boil. Sausage rarely causes botulism today, largely because nitrites are added to it. Nitrites prevent *C. botulinum* from growing after the endospores germinate.

CLINICAL CASE

An alert laboratory technician's suspicions are aroused when he sees Patricia's negative bacterial culture. He is certain there must be a reason for pus to be present in Patricia's CSF. The technician prepares a wet mount of the CSF (see the figure) to see whether he can detect a microbial presence in Patricia's CSF.



What does the lab technician see in the wet mount of the CSF fluid? How does this affect the physician's diagnosis?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

Botulinal toxin doesn't form in acidic foods (below pH 4.7). Such acidic foods can therefore be safely preserved without the use of a pressure cooker. There have been cases of botulism from acidic foods that normally would not have supported the growth of the botulism organisms; however, most of these episodes are related to mold growth, which metabolized enough acid to allow *C. botulinum* to begin growing.

Botulinal Types

There are several serological types of the botulinal toxin produced by different strains of the pathogen. These differ considerably in their virulence and other factors.

Type A toxin is probably the most virulent. Deaths have resulted from type A toxin when the food was only tasted but not swallowed. It is even possible to absorb lethal doses through skin breaks while handling laboratory samples. In untreated cases, the mortality rate is 60–70%. The type A endospore is the most heat-resistant of all *C. botulinum* strains. In the United States, it is found mainly in California, Washington, Colorado, Oregon, and New Mexico. The type A organism is usually proteolytic (the breakdown of proteins by clostridia releases amines with unpleasant odors), but obvious spoilage odor is not always apparent in low-protein foods, such as corn and green beans (Figure 22.7).

Figure 22.7 Funeral of an Oregon family wiped out by botulism in 1924. The outbreak was caused by home-canned string beans. Altogether there were 12 deaths, but two funerals were held at a different church.

Q Why would such a drastic outcome be unlikely today?

Type B toxin is responsible for most European outbreaks of botulism and is the most common type in the eastern United States. The mortality rate in cases without treatment is about 25%. Type B botulism organisms occur in both proteolytic and nonproteolytic strains.

Type E toxin is produced by botulism organisms that are often found in marine or lake sediments. Therefore, outbreaks commonly involve aquatic foods and are especially common in the Pacific Northwest, Alaska, and the Great Lakes area. The endospore of type E botulism is less heat resistant than that of other strains and is usually destroyed by boiling. Type E is nonproteolytic, so the chance of detecting spoilage by odor in high-protein foods such as fish is minimal. The pathogen is also capable of producing toxin at refrigerator temperatures and requires less strictly anaerobic conditions for growth.

Incidence and Treatment of Botulism

Botulism is not a common disease. Approximately 110 cases are reported in the United States each year, but outbreaks from social gatherings or restaurants occasionally involve 20 to 30 cases (**Figure 22.8**). About half the cases are type A, and types B and E account about equally for the balance. Alaskan native people probably have the highest rate of botulism in the world, mostly of type E. The problem arises from food preparation methods that reflect a cultural tradition of avoiding the use of scarce fuels for heating or cooking. For example, one food involved in Alaskan outbreaks of botulism is *muktuk*. Muktuk is prepared by slicing the flippers of seals or whales into strips and then drying them for a few days. To tenderize them, they are stored anaerobically in a container of seal oil for several weeks until they approach putrefaction.

Botulism organisms do not seem to be able to compete successfully with the normal intestinal microbiota, so the production of toxin by ingested bacteria almost never causes botulism in adults. However, the intestinal microbiota of infants is not well established, and they may develop **infant botulism**. Approximately 100 cases occur in the United States annually, several times more than any other form of botulism. Although infants have ample opportunity to ingest soil and other materials contaminated with the endospores of the organism, many reported cases have been associated with honey. Endospores of *C. botulinum* are recovered with some frequency from honey, and a lethal dose may be as few as 2000 bacteria. The recommendation is not to feed honey to infants under 1 year of age; there is

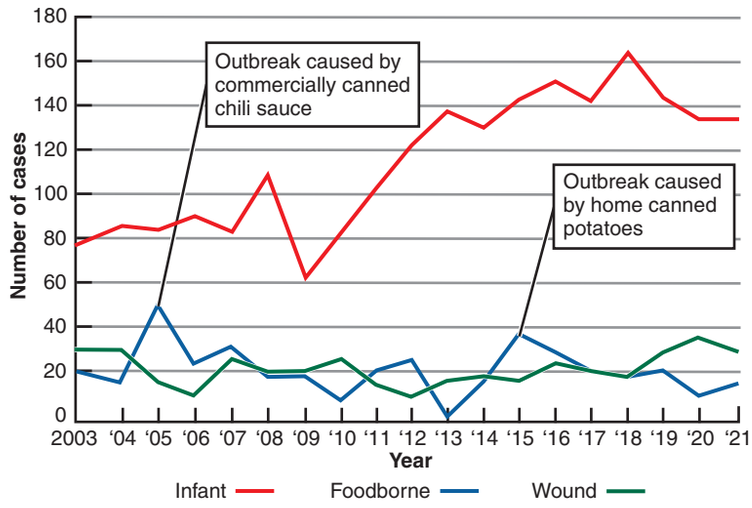


Figure 22.8 Botulism cases in the United States by year, 2003–2021. Honey can contain the *C. botulinum* endospores that can germinate in an infant's intestines, so do not feed honey to children younger than 12 months.

Q Why don't ingested *C. botulinum* endospores cause botulism in adults?

no problem with older children or adults who have normal intestinal microbiota. For treatment of botulism in infants, a special preparation is available, BabyBIG®. The word *BIG* is an acronym for botulism immune globulin, which consists of antibodies to botulism toxin in serum from immunized humans.

Botulism is diagnosed by inoculating mice with samples from patient serum, stool, or vomitus specimens (Figure 22.9). Different sets of mice are immunized with type A, B, or E antitoxin. All the mice are then inoculated with the test toxin; if, for example, those protected with type A antitoxin are the only survivors, then the toxin is type A. The toxin in food can similarly be identified by mouse inoculation.

The botulism pathogen can also grow in wounds in a manner similar to that of clostridia, causing tetanus or gas gangrene (see Chapter 23). Such episodes of **wound botulism** occur most often in people who inject drugs.

The treatment of botulism relies heavily on supportive care. Recovery requires that the nerve endings regenerate; it therefore proceeds slowly. Extended respiratory assistance may be needed, and some neurological impairment may persist for months. Antibiotics are of almost no use because the toxin is preformed. Antitoxins aimed at neutralizing A, B, and E toxins are available and are usually administered together. This trivalent antitoxin will not affect the toxin already attached to the nerve endings and is probably more effective on type E than on types A and B. The antitoxin used in adults is derived from horses and has serious side effects, including *serum sickness* (immune complexes formed by reaction with antigens in the antitoxin) and potential anaphylaxis.

A commercial preparation of the deadly botulism toxin (Botox®) has therapeutic uses for a number of medical conditions, such as migraines and urinary incontinence. It is also useful for relieving painful muscle contractions in conditions such as cerebral palsy, Parkinson's disease, and multiple sclerosis. Injections in the area of facial wounds prevent muscle movement during healing and result in more presentable scar formation. It has been approved to control involuntary eyelid twitching (blepharospasm), crossed eyes (strabismus), and even excessive sweating (hyperhidrosis). However, the most publicized application has been purely cosmetic: periodic local injections of Botox® to reduce the appearance of forehead wrinkles.

Figure 22.9 Diagnosing botulism by identifying botulinal toxin type. To determine whether botulinal toxin is present, mice are injected with the liquid portion of food extracts or cell-free cultures. If the mice die within 72 hours, toxin is present. To determine the specific type of toxin, groups of mice are passively immunized with antisera specific for *C. botulinum* type A, B, or E. If one group of mice receiving a specific antitoxin lives and the other mice die, the type of toxin in the food or culture has been identified.

Q What are the symptoms of botulism?

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

22-6 The very name *botulism* is derived from the fact that sausage was the most common food causing the disease. Why is sausage now rarely a cause of botulism?

Leprosy

Mycobacterium leprae was once considered the only bacterium that grows in the peripheral nervous system. This distinction, however, is likely also shared with the more recently discovered (in 2008) leprosy-causing bacterium *M. lepromatosis*, which is found mostly in Mexico and the Caribbean. *M. leprae* was first isolated and identified around 1870 by Gerhard A. Hansen of Norway; his discovery was one of the first links ever made between a specific bacterium and a disease. **Hansen's disease** is the more formal name for **leprosy**; it is sometimes used to avoid the dreaded name.

These bacteria have an optimum growth temperature of 30°C and show a preference for the outer, cooler portions of the human body. They survive ingestion by macrophages and eventually invade cells of the myelin sheath of the peripheral nervous system, where their presence causes nerve damage from a cell-mediated immune response. It's estimated that *M. leprae* has a long generation time, about 12 days. *M. leprae* and *M. lepromatosis* have never been grown on artificial media. They can, however, be grown on the foot pads of immune-deficient mice and in armadillos, which have a body temperature of 30–35°C and are often infected in the wild. Armadillos are now fairly common in warmer states ranging from Texas to Florida, and

several people have contracted leprosy from contact with armadillos in Texas. The ability to grow the bacteria in an animal is invaluable for evaluating chemotherapeutic drugs.

Leprosy occurs in two main forms (although borderline forms are also recognized) that apparently reflect the effectiveness of the host's cell-mediated immune system. The *tuberculoid (neural) form* is characterized by discolored regions of the skin that have lost sensation and may be surrounded by a border of nodules (Figure 22.10a). This disease form is roughly the same as *paucibacillary* in the World Health Organization (WHO) leprosy classification system. Tuberculoid disease occurs in people with effective immune reactions. Recovery sometimes occurs spontaneously.

In the *lepromatous (progressive) form* of leprosy (which is much the same as *multibacillary* in the WHO system), skin cells are infected, and disfiguring nodules form all over the body. Patients with this type of leprosy have had the least effective cell-mediated immune response, and the disease has progressed from the tuberculoid stage. Mucous membranes of the nose tend to become affected, and a lion-faced appearance is associated with this type of leprosy. Deformation of the hand into a clawed form and considerable necrosis of tissue can also occur (Figure 22.10b). The progression of the disease is unpredictable, and remissions may alternate with rapid deterioration.

The exact means of transfer of the leprosy bacillus is uncertain, but patients with lepromatous leprosy shed large numbers in their nasal secretions and in exudates (oozing matter) of their lesions. Most people probably acquire the infection when secretions containing the pathogen contact their nasal mucosa. However, leprosy is not very contagious and usually is transmitted only between people in fairly intimate and prolonged contact. The time from infection to the appearance of symptoms is usually measured in years, although children can have a much shorter incubation period. Death usually results not from the leprosy itself, but from complications, such as tuberculosis.

Much of the public's fear of leprosy can probably be attributed to biblical and historical references to the disease. In the Middle Ages, people with leprosy were rigidly excluded from normal European society and sometimes even wore bells so that people could avoid them. This isolation might have contributed to the near disappearance of the disease in Europe. But patients with leprosy are no longer kept in isolation, because they can be made noncontagious within a few days by the administration of sulfone drugs. These are synthetic compounds made from aniline dyes that contain a sulfur atom between two carbon groups. The National Leprosy Hospital in Carville, Louisiana, once housed several hundred patients, but was closed in 1999. Most patients today are treated on an outpatient basis.

Currently, 150–250 cases are reported in the United States each year. Seventy percent are imported by infected immigrants from endemic countries; the disease is usually found in tropical climates. Millions of people, most of them in Asia, Africa, and Brazil, suffer from leprosy today, and over half a million new cases are reported worldwide each year.

The standard diagnostic test for leprosy is seeing acid-fast bacteria in infected skin or nerves, but permanent nerve damage has probably occurred by this time. A real-time PCR test for *M. leprae* DNA as early as 9 to 12 months, which is in advance of the most damaging clinical symptoms, have been registered for use in Brazil.

(a) Tuberculoid (neural) leprosy

(b) Lepromatous (progressive) leprosy

Figure 22.10 Leprosy lesions. (a) The depigmented area of skin is typical of tuberculoid (neural) leprosy. (b) If the immune system fails to control the disease, the result is lepromatous (progressive) leprosy. This severely deformed hand shows the progressive tissue damage to the cooler parts of the body typical of this later stage.

Q Which form of leprosy is more likely to occur in immunosuppressed individuals? Why?

Dapsone (a sulfone drug), rifampin, and clofazimine, a fat-soluble dye, are the principal drugs used for treatment, usually in combination. The WHO treatment regimen for paucibacillary leprosy requires 6 months; for the multibacillary form, treatment is extended to 24 months. The BCG vaccine for tuberculosis (also caused by a *Mycobacterium* species) has been found to be somewhat protective against leprosy. Clinical trials of a leprosy subunit vaccine, LepVax, have begun in Brazil.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

22-7 Why are immune-deficient mice and armadillos important in the study of leprosy?

Viral Diseases of the Nervous System

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

22-8 Compare the Salk and Sabin polio vaccines.

22-9 Compare the preexposure and postexposure treatments for rabies.

22-10 Discuss the epidemiology of poliomyelitis, rabies, arboviral encephalitis, and Zika virus disease, including mode of transmission, etiology, and disease symptoms.

22-11 Explain how arboviral encephalitis can be prevented.

Most viruses affecting the nervous system enter it by circulating in the blood or the lymphatic system. However, some viruses can enter peripheral nerve axons and move along them toward the CNS.

Poliomyelitis

Poliomyelitis (polio) is best known as a cause of paralysis. However, the paralytic form of poliomyelitis probably affects fewer than 1% of people infected with the poliovirus *Enterovirus C*. The great majority of cases are asymptomatic or exhibit only mild symptoms, such as headache, sore throat, fever, and nausea.

Polio made its first appearance in the United States in an outbreak in Vermont in the summer of 1894. After that, for decades the country was terrified by summertime epidemics. These annual outbreaks increasingly affected adolescents and young adults, and the number of paralytic cases steadily increased. Many victims died as their respiratory muscles were paralyzed, and thousands of infants and youths were left with their extremities permanently crippled. Later in the twentieth century, development of the iron lung (Figure 22.11) kept alive thousands with paralyzed respiratory systems.

Why did this disease seem to appear so suddenly? The answer is paradoxical—probably because of improved sanitation. The primary mode of transmission is ingestion of water contaminated with feces containing the virus. At one time, exposure to the poliovirus was frequent (and is still so today in parts of the world with poor sanitation). Infants were usually exposed to poliovirus while still protected by maternal antibodies. The result was usually an asymptomatic case of the disease and a lifelong immunity. Improved sanitation delayed this exposure until after the protection provided by maternal antibodies had waned. When infection is delayed until adolescence or early adulthood, the paralytic form of the disease appears more frequently.

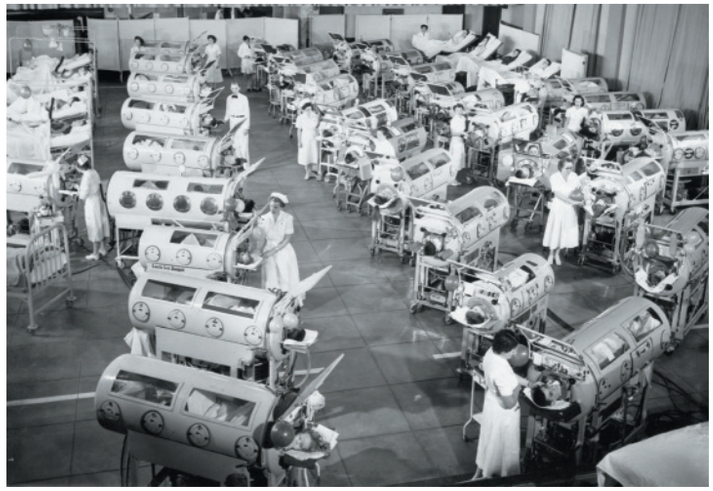


Figure 22.11 Polio patients in iron lungs. Many polio patients were able to breathe only with these mechanical aids. Two or three survivors from these polio epidemics still use these machines, at least part of the time. Others are able to use portable respiratory aids.

Q What percentage of polio cases resulted in paralysis?

Because the infection begins when the virus is ingested, its primary areas of multiplication are the throat and small intestine. This accounts for the initial sore throat and nausea. Next, the virus invades the tonsils and the lymph nodes of the neck and ileum (the terminal portion of the small intestine). From the lymph nodes, the virus enters the blood, resulting in *viremia*. In most cases the viremia is only transient, the infection does not progress past the lymphatic system, and clinical disease does not result. If the viremia persists, however, the virus eventually penetrates the capillary walls and enters the CNS. Once in the CNS, the virus displays a high affinity for nerve cells, particularly motor nerve cells in the upper spinal cord. The virus does not infect the peripheral nerves or the muscles. As the virus multiplies within the cytoplasm of the motor nerve cells, the cells die, and paralysis results. Death can result from respiratory failure. Twenty-five to 40% of polio survivors experience *post-polio syndrome*, which includes muscle weakness, fatigue, and joint pain.

Diagnosis

Polio is usually diagnosed by isolating the virus from feces and throat secretions. Cell cultures can be inoculated, and cytopathic effects on the cells can be observed (see Table 15.4).

Vaccines

There is no cure for polio; it can only be prevented. There are three different serotypes of the poliovirus: types 1, 2, and 3. Immunity must be provided for all three.

Two different vaccine types are available. In 1955, the *Salk vaccine* (named after Jonas Salk, its developer) was introduced. It consists of viruses of all three types that have been inactivated (killed) by treatment with formalin. Vaccines of this types, called *inactivated polio vaccines (IPV)*, require a series of injections. IPV does not prevent intestinal infection and therefore does not prevent poliovirus transmission.

The other vaccine type, introduced in 1963, contains living, attenuated (weakened) strains of the virus in a suspension that is ingested. This *Sabin vaccine*, named after its developer (Albert Sabin), is more commonly called *oral polio vaccine (OPV)*. It usually contains the three types of polio virus (trivalent, *tOPV*). It is less expensive to manufacture and is simpler to administer because it does not require the trained personnel and equipment needed for safe, sterile injections. This vaccine mimics an actual\infection and induces excellent, and probably lifelong, immunity, although its use is precluded in immunodeficient individuals. Most importantly, OPV prevents transmission of polio, breaking the cycle of transmission to a new host. The live virus is also shed by the recipient and has the effect of immunizing others within the community. However, this shedding can represent a serious disadvantage—the attenuated strains of the disease occasionally revert to virulence and cause the disease. The incidence of this varies by region but is usually about 1 case per 750,000 recipients.

The history of polio vaccination in the United States began with the use of the Salk IPV, which was the first available. When OPV was licensed in 1963, its advantages, especially in administration, led to near-universal adoption. Eventually, however, high rates of vaccination led to the disappearance of polio—with the exception of a few cases every year that were caused by the vaccine-derived virus. In 2000, the United States therefore changed the recommendation from OPV back to IPV. In 2015, vaccine-derived polio outbreaks occurred in Ukraine and Mali. For areas where polio vaccination is needed, the WHO recommends a divalent OPV that protects against poliovirus serotypes 1 and 3. Serotype 2 was included in the trivalent vaccine; however, this serotype is responsible for most cases of vaccine-derived polio. Like all RNA viruses, the virus readily mutates, and the vaccine serotype 2 has mutated to cause disease. Read more about vaccine-preventable diseases in the Big Picture in Chapter 18.

Epidemiology and Eradication Efforts

In the epidemiology of the poliovirus, naturally occurring, *wild-type virus (WPV)* is distinguished from *vaccine-derived virus (VDPV)*. VDPV is an attenuated vaccine virus that has reverted to virulence and is in circulation.

The WHO launched a campaign in 1988 to eradicate polio by 2000. The vaccine used was tOPV. Although the goal of eradication was not met, great gains were made, including the extinction of wild-type serotypes 2 and 3—indicating that eradication might be possible. However, persistent reservoirs of WPV remain in Pakistan and Afghanistan.

There have been no cases of WPV originating in the United States since 1979. In 2022, one case of polio occurred in an unvaccinated person in New York. Vaccine-derived polio virus (VDPV) was isolated from the patient. VDPV has been detected in wastewater. Vaccination with IPV prevents paralysis if the VDPV is ingested.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

22-8 Why is the Sabin oral polio vaccine more effective than the injected Salk polio vaccine?

Rabies

Rabies (the word is from the Latin for rage or madness) is a disease that almost always results in fatal encephalitis. The causative agent is the *rabies virus*, a member of the genus *Lyssavirus* having a characteristic bullet shape (see Figure 13.18a). Lyssaviruses (*lyssa*, from the Greek for frenzy) are single-stranded RNA viruses with no proofreading capability, and mutant strains develop rapidly. Worldwide, humans usually are infected with the rabies virus in saliva from the bite of an infected animal—especially dogs. On rare occasions, the virus can be transmitted through fresh skin abrasions and may cross the mucous membranes of the nose, mouth, and even eyes. The virus proliferates in the PNS and moves, fatally, toward the CNS (**Figure 22.12**).

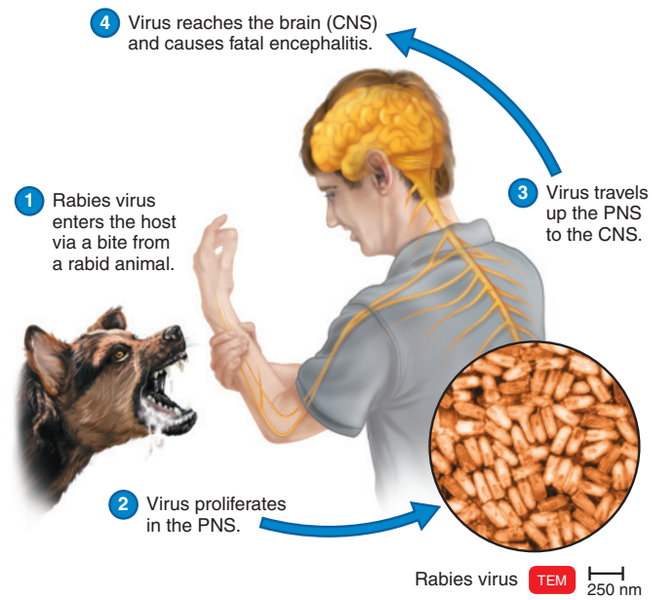


Figure 22.12 Pathology of rabies infection.

Q What is the postexposure treatment for rabies?

In the United States, the most common cause of rabies is a variant of the virus found in silver-haired bats. (Domestic animals have a high rate of vaccination.) Because deaths from rabies are frequently misdiagnosed, several cases of rabies have been traced to transplanted body tissues, especially corneas.

Rabies is unique in that the incubation period is usually long enough to allow immunity to develop from postexposure vaccination. The natural immune response is ineffective because the viruses are introduced into the wound in numbers too low to provoke it; also, they do not travel through the bloodstream or lymphatic system, where the immune system could best respond. Initially, the virus multiplies in skeletal muscle and connective tissue, where it remains localized for periods ranging from days to months. Then it enters a motor neuron and travels, at the rate of 15 to 100 mm per day, along peripheral nerves to the CNS, where it causes encephalitis. In some extreme cases, incubation periods of as long as 6 years have been reported, but the average is 30 to 50 days. Bites in areas rich in nerve fibers, such as the hands and face, are especially dangerous, and the resulting incubation period tends to be short.

Once the virus enters the peripheral nerves, it isn't accessible to the immune system until cells of the CNS begin to be destroyed, which triggers a belated and ineffective immune response.

Preliminary symptoms are mild and varied, resembling several common infections. When the CNS becomes involved, the patient tends to alternate between periods of agitation and intervals of calm. At this time, a frequent symptom is spasms of the muscles of the mouth and pharynx that occur when the patient feels air drafts or swallows liquids. In fact, even the mere sight or thought of water can set off the spasms—thus the common name *hydrophobia* (fear of water). The final stages of the disease result from extensive damage to the nerve cells of the brain and the spinal cord.

Animals with **furious (classic) rabies** are at first restless, then become highly excitable and snap at anything within reach. The biting behavior is essential to maintaining the virus in the animal population. Humans also exhibit similar symptoms of rabies, even biting others. When paralysis sets in, the flow of saliva increases as swallowing becomes difficult, and nervous control is progressively lost. The disease is almost always fatal within a few days.

Some animals suffer from **paralytic (dumb** or **numb) rabies**, in which there is only minimal excitability. This form is especially common in cats. The animal remains relatively quiet and even unaware of its surroundings, but it might snap irritably if handled. A similar manifestation of rabies occurs in humans and is often misdiagnosed as *Guillain-Barré syndrome*, a form of paralysis that is usually transient but sometimes fatal, or other neurological conditions. There is some speculation that the two forms of the disease may be caused by slightly different forms of the virus.

Diagnosis

Rabies is usually diagnosed in the laboratory by detection of the viral antigen using the **direct fluorescent-antibody (DFA) test**, which is nearly 100% sensitive and highly specific. These tests can be done on saliva samples, blood, CSF, and skin; postmortem samples are usually taken from the brain. In addition, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) has developed a **rapid immunohistochemical test (RIT)**. It requires only the use of an ordinary light microscope and has a sensitivity and specificity equivalent to the standard DFA test.

Prevention of Rabies

Only high-risk individuals, such as laboratory workers, animal control professionals, and veterinarians, are routinely vaccinated against rabies before known exposure. If a person is bitten, the wound should be thoroughly washed with soap and water. If the animal is positive for rabies, the person must undergo **postexposure prophylaxis (PEP)**. Passive immunization is provided by injecting **human rabies immune globulin (RIG)** that has been harvested from people who are immunized against rabies. This is followed with three dose of vaccine. Another indication for antirabies treatment is any unprovoked bite by a skunk, bat, fox, coyote, bobcat, or raccoon not available for examination. Treatment after a dog or cat bite, if the animal cannot be found, is determined by the prevalence of rabies in the local area. The bite of a bat may not be perceptible and may be impossible to rule out in cases where the bat had access to sleeping persons or small children. Therefore, the CDC recommends PEP after any significant encounter with a bat—unless the bat can be tested and shown to be negative for rabies.

The original Pasteur treatment, in which the virus was attenuated by drying in the dissected spinal cords of rabies-infected rabbits, has long been replaced by **human diploid cell vaccine (HDCV)**, or chick embryo–grown vaccines. These vaccines are administered in a series of three injections at 1-week intervals.

Treatment of Rabies

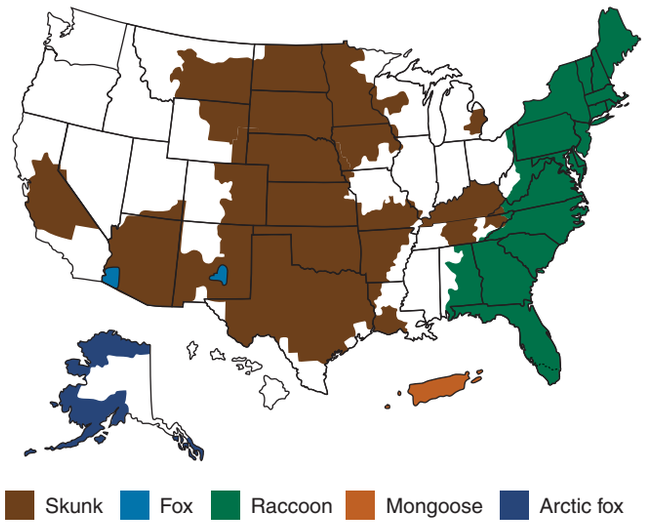
Once the symptoms of rabies appear, there is very little in the way of effective treatment—only a handful of survivors have been reported. Most of these survivors had received PEP before the appearance of symptoms. There have been only a couple of cases of survival of a patient who had not received PEP. The primary treatment, which succeeds in a minority of cases, is to induce an extended coma to minimize excitability while administering antiviral drugs. This procedure was first used in the case of a Wisconsin child bitten by a rabid cat and has come to be called the Milwaukee protocol.

Distribution of Rabies

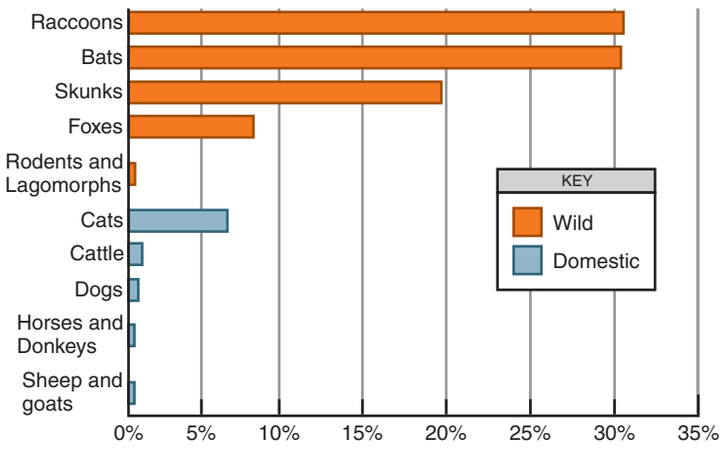
Rabies occurs all over the world, mostly as a result of dog bites. Vaccination of pets is prohibitively expensive in most of Africa, Latin America, and Asia. In these areas, 40,000 to

70,000 deaths by rabies occur annually. In the United States, the vaccination of pets is nearly universal, but rabies is widespread among wildlife, predominantly bats, skunks, foxes, and raccoons, although it is also found in domesticated animals (**Figure 22.13**). As many as 40,000 people are administered postexposure rabies vaccine each year, often as a precaution when the rabies status of the biting animal cannot be determined. Rabies is almost never found in rabbits or rodents. The disease has long been endemic in vampire bats of South America. In Europe and North America, there are ongoing efforts to immunize wild animals with live vaccinia virus, genetically modified to produce a rabies virus glycoprotein that is added to food left for the animals to find. This has been highly successful in Europe, and several countries have been declared free of rabies as a result.

In the United States, 7000 to 8000 cases of rabies are diagnosed in animals each year, but in recent years, only one to six cases have been diagnosed in humans annually (see the **Clinical Focus** box). In developing nations, rabies has a much higher incidence.



Areas of the United States in which rabies predominates in certain wildlife species. In eastern states in which raccoons are the predominant rabies-infected animal, many cases were also reported in foxes and skunks.



Rabies cases in various wild and domestic animals in the United States. Rabies in domestic animals such as dogs and cats is uncommon because of high vaccination rates. Raccoons, skunks, and bats are the animals most likely to be infected with rabies. Most human cases are caused by bat bites. Worldwide, most human cases are caused by dog bites.

Figure 22.13 Reported cases of rabies in animals. Rabies-infected bats were reported in all 48 contiguous states in 2020. Rabies in foxes include different species in different geographical areas.

Q What is the primary reservoir for the rabies virus in your area?

Source: CDC 2022.

Related *Lyssavirus* Encephalitis

In recent years, a few fatal cases of encephalitis that are clinically indistinguishable from classic rabies have occurred in Australia and Scotland—countries considered free of rabies. These cases were found to be caused by genotypes of the genus *Lyssavirus* that are closely related to classical rabies virus: the *Australian bat lyssavirus (ABLV)* and the *European bat lyssavirus (EBLV)*.*

Classic rabies is caused by one of 11 known genotypes of the genus *Lyssavirus* and is widespread worldwide. Other, nonrabies, lyssaviruses causing encephalitis are indigenous to Europe, Australia, Africa, and the Philippines, most commonly in bats. Different species of bats are infected with distinct variants of the rabies-related lyssaviruses.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

22-9 Why is postexposure vaccination for rabies a practical option?

Arboviral Encephalitis

Encephalitis caused by mosquito-borne viruses (called arboviruses) is rather common in the United States. (*Arbovirus* is short for *ar*thropod-*bo*rne virus. This terminology represents a functional grouping; it is not a formal taxonomic term.) The incidence of disease increases in the summer months, coinciding with the proliferation of adult mosquitoes. Climate change is expected to change the distribution of arboviral diseases. (See the Big Picture in Chapter 23.) *Sentinel animals*, such as caged chickens, are tested periodically for antibodies to arboviruses. This gives health officials information on the incidence and types of viruses in their area.

*A lengthy list of diseases—rabies and similar lyssavirus diseases, as well as the SARS, Ebola, Hendra, and Nipah viruses—are all now known, or strongly suspected, to be transmitted by bats. There are reasons why bats make good disease reservoirs: there are more than a thousand species to occupy various niches; they are long-lived (5 to 50 years), which lends them stability as a reservoir; they tend to roost in close assemblies, which facilitate viral spread; and they fly relatively long distances as they forage for food—some are even migratory. Finally, bats seem to be able to carry viruses for long periods without clearing the infection or becoming ill.

CLINICAL FOCUS A Neurological Disease

As you read through this problem, you'll see questions that clinicians ask themselves as they proceed through a diagnosis and treatment. Try to answer each question before going on to the next one.

1. On September 30, Yolanda, a 10-year-old girl, has pain and stiffness in her right arm and temperature of 38.3°C (101°F). On October 3, she begins vomiting and has increased arm pain and numbness.
   What could these symptoms indicate?
2. The high fever could indicate some sort of bacterial or viral infection. Yolanda's pediatrician orders a rapid group A streptococcal antigen test, which is negative. Yolanda is hospitalized on October 7, when she has difficulty swallowing. Her tongue has a whitish coating and is protruding from her mouth.
   What infections are possible?
3. The whitish coating on her tongue could indicate mucosal candidiasis. Yolanda is given fluconazole to combat the fungus. On October 8, a lumbar puncture shows elevated numbers of white blood cells.
   What does this indicate?
4. An elevated white blood cell count in Yolanda's CSF indicates some type of microbial infection of the CNS. Yolanda is treated with vancomycin for meningoencephalitis. She then experiences hypersalivation and lethargy.
   What does this suggest? How would you confirm the disease?
5. Rabies is confirmed by direct fluorescent-antibody staining of a skin biopsy for rabies virus antigens. Yolanda dies on November 2. An abundance of rabies viral inclusions (Negri bodies) are seen in the brain stem (**Figure A**).
   How would you treat people who had contact with Yolanda in October and November?
6. Postexposure prophylaxis (PEP) is administered to 66 people, including 31 people in Yolanda's school.
   Did the delay in diagnosis affect the outcome of the disease?
7. Early diagnosis cannot usually save a patient; however, it may help minimize the number of potential exposures and the need for PEP.
   What else must be determined about this case?
8. In mid-June, Yolanda had awakened during the night and said a bat had flown into her bedroom window and bitten her. Her mother cleaned a small mark on the girl's arm with an over-the-counter antiseptic but assumed the incident was a nightmare. Two days later, an older sibling took a dead bat away from the yard. The mother did not associate the bat with the previous event and did not seek rabies PEP for the girl.

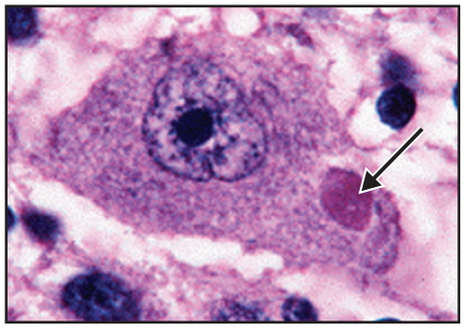


Figure A Negri body at the arrow in an infected neuron.

Figure B Silver-haired bat.

The nucleotide sequence of the PCR product was used to identify a rabies virus variant associated with silver-haired bats (**Figure B**).
Why is rabies surveillance and case reporting important in the United States?

9. Two adults in different states also acquired rabies following contact with bats. The adults refused PEP because of a fear of vaccines and died from their infections. These three cases of rabies were associated with three different bat species: *Lasionycteris noctivagans* (silver-haired bat), *Tadarida brasiliensis* (Mexican free-tailed bat), and *Eptesicus fuscus* (big brown bat).

During 2009–2021, 23 of 30 human rabies cases reported in the United States were also acquired in the United States. Human rabies is preventable with proper wound care and timely, appropriate administration of human rabies immune globulin and rabies vaccine before onset of clinical symptoms.

Adapted from CDC, December 31, 2022.

A number of clinical types of arboviral encephalitis have been identified; all can cause symptoms ranging from subclinical to severe, including rapid death. Active cases of these diseases are characterized by chills, headache, and fever. As the disease progresses, mental confusion and coma occur. Survivors may suffer from permanent neurological problems.

Horses as well as humans are affected by these viruses; thus, there are species causing *eastern equine encephalitis (Alphavirus EEE)* and *western equine encephalitis (Flavivirus WEE)*. These two viruses are the most likely to cause severe disease in humans. EEE is the more severe; the mortality rate is 30% or more, and survivors experience a high incidence of brain damage, deafness, and other neurological problems. EEE is uncommon (its main mosquito vector prefers to feed on birds); only about 100 cases a year are reported in the United States. No cases of WEE have been reported in over 10 years; it has a mortality rate of 5%.

St. Louis encephalitis (Flavivirus SLE) acquired its name from the location of an early major outbreak (in which it was originally discovered that mosquitoes are involved in the transmission of these diseases). SLE is distributed from southern Canada to Argentina, but mostly in the central and eastern United States. Fewer than 1% of people infected exhibit symptoms; it can, however, be a severe disease with a mortality rate in symptomatic patients of about 20%.

California encephalitis (Orthobunyavirus CE) was first identified in that state, but most cases occur elsewhere. In fact, there has been only one case of CE in California in 60 years. A relatively mild illness, it is seldom fatal.

A new arbovirus disease, now the most common arbovirus in the United States (**Figure 22.14**), was introduced into the United States in 1999. First reported in the New York City area, it was quickly identified as being caused by *Flavivirus West Nile virus* (WNV), which, like the virus causing SLE, is related to the virus causing Japanese encephalitis (discussed shortly). The disease is maintained in a bird-mosquito-bird cycle. The primary mosquito is a species of *Culex*, which can overwinter as adults in temperate climates. Birds serve as amplifying hosts; some species, such as house sparrows, can have high levels of viremia without dying. But mortality of infected crows, ravens, and jays is high, and public health officials sometimes request reports of dead birds of these species. Most human cases of WNV are subclinical or mild, but the disease can cause a polio-like paralysis or fatal encephalitis, especially in older adults.

Other encephalitis viruses are appearing in the United States. As of 2021, more than 50 cases of **Heartland virus disease** (*Bandavirus*) have occurred in the United States. Infections by **human Powassan virus** (POW, a *Flavivirus*) have been recognized in northern latitudes. In the United States, POW virus disease has been reported primarily from northeastern states and the Great Lakes region. See **Diseases in Focus 22.2** for a summary of the predominant arbovirus-caused diseases of the United States.

The Far East and South Asia also have endemic arboviral encephalitis. **Japanese encephalitis** is the best known; it is a serious public health problem, especially in Japan, Thailand, Korea, China, and India. Vaccines are used to control the disease in these countries and are often recommended for visitors. Only about 1% of people infected show clinical symptoms, which may involve seizures and paralysis. The mortality rate among symptomatic people is 20–30%.

Arboviral encephalitis is diagnosed by serological tests, usually ELISA tests to identify IgM antibodies. The most effective preventive measure is local control of mosquitoes.

Zika Virus Disease

Zika virus disease (ZVD) is caused by the *Zika virus*, or *ZIKV*, a *Flavivirus*. It is transmitted primarily through the bite of infected *Aedes* spp. mosquitoes, the same mosquitoes that carry the viruses that cause dengue fever, yellow fever, and chikungunya. Zika virus may also be transmitted through sexual contact, vertically during pregnancy and delivery, and through blood transfusions. ZIKV was first discovered in 1947 in rhesus monkeys and is named after the Zika forest in Uganda. It was subsequently identified in humans in 1952 in the United Republic of Tanzania. The first outbreak outside Africa occurred in Micronesia, on the island of Yap. The virus moved to French Polynesia and Brazil in 2014. The virus reached the continental United States in 2015. Between 2015 and 2017, 231 cases were contracted in the United States. As of 2022, the virus is in 89 countries, most in the Americas. However, the last outbreak of Zika virus disease occurred in India in 2021.

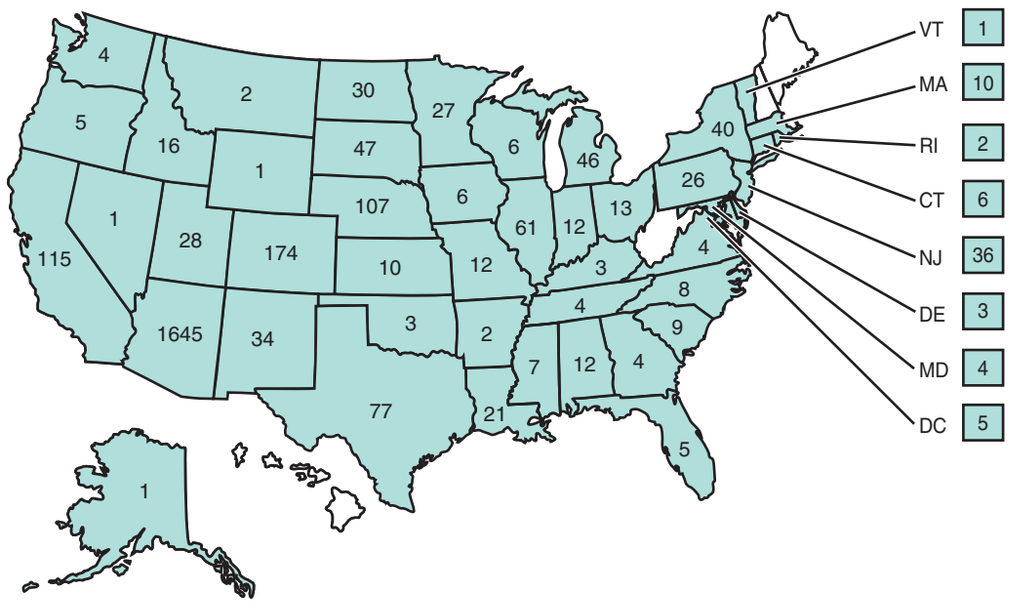


Figure 22.14 Human West Nile Virus cases: 2021. The virus has been detected in birds in the 48 contiguous states and District of Columbia. This is the most common arbovirus encephalitis in the United States.

Q Why do arboviral infections occur during the summer months?

Source: CDC 2022.

BIG PICTURE

Vertical Transmission: Infection During Pregnancy

Infections that cause mild or moderate illness in adults can have catastrophic effects when they pass from mother to child during pregnancy or birth.

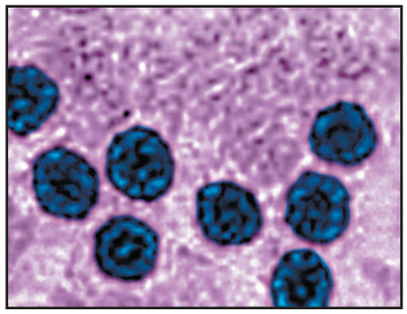
In 2016, some athletes did not participate in the Summer Olympics in Brazil because of fears surrounding an outbreak of Zika virus disease there. That same year, the CDC issued a notice advising pregnant people not to travel to Florida because of the presence of mosquitoes carrying Zika virus. In the United States, between 2016 and 2018, 6.1% of babies born to birthing parents infected with Zika had birth defects.

Most Microbes Don't Cross the Placenta, But Those That Do Can Cause Serious Damage

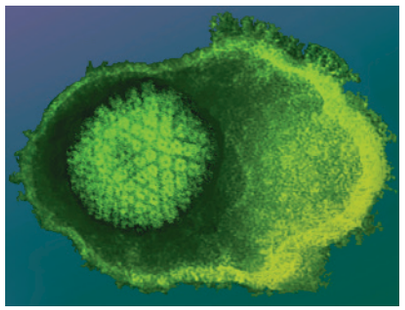
Congenital (existing before or at birth) infections are generally transmitted vertically to the child, either across the placenta during pregnancy or at delivery. Most common microbes (such as influenza virus or *Candida* yeast) won't cross the placenta to affect a fetus. So the primary treatment concern for clinicians working with pregnant patients is finding antimicrobial drugs that won't harm the fetus as they cure the adult. However, a select group of pathogens possesses the ability to cross the placenta and enter a fetus. These diseases may show minor symptoms in the adult even as they wreak havoc on the developing fetus. Viral diseases in which vertical transmission is a factor include the following.

- **Zika virus** crosses the placenta during pregnancy and targets nerve stem cells. It is linked to microcephaly, calcium deposits in the brain, and other brain and eye abnormalities.
- **Neonatal herpes** usually results from transmission of *Simplesvirus* (HSV-1 or HSV-2) from the birthing parent at delivery. It has a mortality rate of 60%, and survivors have central nervous system disorders such as seizures.
- ***Cytomegalovirus* (CMV) infections**, caused by another human herpes virus, are the most important cause of congenital infection in developed countries. Transmission to the fetus is highest if the birthing parent acquires the infection during the first half of pregnancy. In the United States, about one out of every 150 babies is born with congenital CMV infection. However, only about 20% of infected babies will be sick. Symptoms of congenital CMV include microcephaly, hearing and vision loss, and seizures.

Zika public health notice.



Zika virus, ZikV. TEM 22 nm



Simplexvirus. TEM 27 nm

Cytomegalovirus. TEM 25 nm

Bacteria, Viruses, and Protozoa Can Cross the Placenta to Cause Disease

- ***Treponema pallidum*** causes congenital syphilis, which can result in miscarriage, stillbirth, and early infant death. The fetus is susceptible to infection after the fourth month of pregnancy. Surviving infants may show altered bone development. The incidence has been increasing in the United States since 2013. Penicillin taken by the mother is 98% effective in preventing the disease.
- Congenital ***Listeria monocytogenes*** infection results in premature delivery, miscarriage, or stillbirth.
- **Group B *Streptococcus*** infection results in deafness or learning disabilities.
- ***Elizabethkingia***, a newly discovered pathogen, can cross the placenta and cause meningitis in newborns.
- Congenital infection by the protozoan ***Toxoplasma gondii*** can result in microcephaly, hydrocephaly (accumulation of CSF in the brain), convulsions, and motor impairment.
- ***Trypanosoma***, ***Leishmania***, and ***Plasmodium*** can also cause congenital infections.

The TORCH Screen Tests Pregnant Women for Diseases That Can Transmit Vertically

TORCH is a panel of tests that was originally developed to screen mothers for antibodies to microbes that can harm the fetus. TORCH stands for Toxoplasmosis, Other, Rubella, CMV, and HSV. The "Other" category includes many diseases, among which are syphilis, chickenpox, HIV, measles, mumps, and hepatitis B.

Because prevention is almost always better than treatment after the fact, women who plan to become pregnant should be up to date on their recommended vaccinations, including those for measles, mumps, and rubella—all of which can cause serious congenital problems.

Microcephaly is caused by several agents, including Zika virus and *Toxoplasma*.

Congenital *Listeria* infection can cause premature birth.

KEY CONCEPTS

- Cytomegalovirus (CMV) is the most common cause of congenital virus infection. **(See Chapter 23.)**
- Diseases of the reproductive system can be transmitted at birth. **(See Chapter 26, "Gonorrhea," "Congenital Syphilis," and "Neonatal Herpes.")**
- Protozoan diseases of the cardiovascular and lymphatic systems can cross the placenta. **(See Chapter 23.)**
- Vaccination before pregnancy can prevent infectious congenital diseases. **(See Chapter 18, "Vaccines.")**

The most common signs and symptoms of ZVD, which last about a week, affect about 20% of infected individuals. They are usually mild and include fever, headache, muscle and joint pain, malaise, skin rash, and conjunctivitis. Because people usually do not become ill enough to require hospitalization, they may not even realize that they are infected. However, ZIKV infection during pregnancy greatly increases the risk that the newborn will have a congenital malformation called **microcephaly**. In this disorder, the infant's head is much smaller than normal because of abnormal brain development. Infants so affected exhibit developmental delays that range from mild to severe. ZVD is also associated with *Guillain-Barré syndrome*, a temporary muscular weakness and tingling, and in severe cases, paralysis, in the upper and lower limbs.

Diagnosis of ZVD is confirmed by reverse transcriptase PCR, and treatment involves rest, intake of sufficient fluids, and pain and fever reduction with common medications. Several vaccines, including DNA, mRNA, and attenuated virus vaccines (see Chapter 18), are in clinical trials. As with arboviral encephalitis, the best prevention is reducing mosquito-breeding sites and reducing contact between mosquitoes and humans.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **22-10** Which disease is transmitted by mosquitoes: polio, rabies, or arboviral encephalitis?
- **22-11** When there are serious local outbreaks of arboviral encephalitis, what is the usual response to minimize its transmission?

Fungal Disease of the Nervous System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

22-12 Identify the causative agent, reservoir, symptoms, and treatment for cryptococcosis.

The central nervous system is seldom invaded by fungi. However, one pathogenic fungus in the genus *Cryptococcus* is well adapted to growth in CNS fluids.

Cryptococcus neoformans Meningitis (Cryptococcosis)

The disease **cryptococcosis** is caused by fungi of the genus *Cryptococcus*. They form spherical cells resembling yeasts, reproduce by budding, and produce extremely heavy polysaccharide capsules (**Figure 22.15**). The primary species pathogenic for humans are *Cryptococcus neoformans* and *C. grubii*. These organisms are widely distributed, especially in areas contaminated by bird droppings, most notably from pigeons, which excrete an estimated 25 pounds a year. The disease is transmitted mainly by the inhalation of dried, contaminated droppings. The inhaled fungi multiply in people with compromised immune systems, such as people with AIDS, disseminate to the CNS, and cause meningitis that has a high mortality rate. In California there have recently been outbreaks in people with AIDS of cryptococcosis caused by *C. gattii* (GAHT-tē-ē), a species that had previously been reported only in tropical regions. However, an association has now been observed with trees native to subtropical and temperate regions, as well; the fungus inhabits an ecological niche in decayed hollows of mature trees. See the Clinical Case in Chapter 12. From there the basidiospores (Figure 12.10) can contaminate surrounding soils or be spread with the distribution of wood products. This species has now been isolated in cases of cryptococcosis, even in otherwise healthy individuals, in several areas of western North America as far north as Vancouver Island in Canada. This disease is likely to continue to spread southward and may eventually affect areas as far south as Florida.

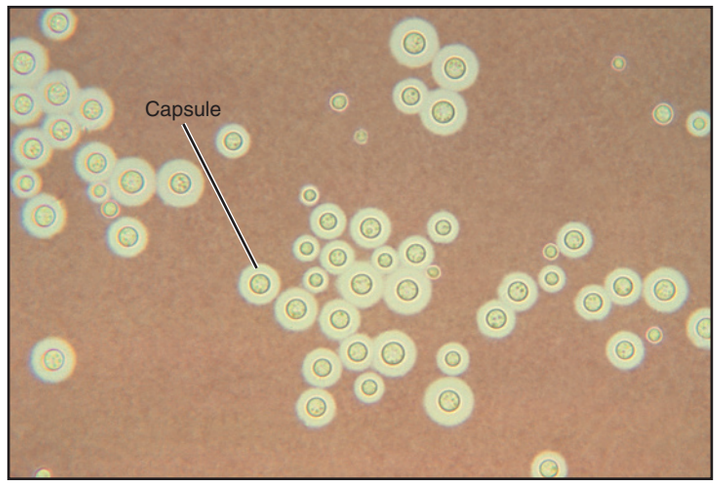


Figure 22.15 ***Cryptococcus neoformans.*** This yeastlike fungus has an unusually thick capsule. In this photomicrograph, the capsule is made visible by suspending the cells in dilute india ink.

Q What is the significance of the extremely heavy polysaccharide capsule found in *C. neoformans*?

The best serological diagnostic test is a latex agglutination test to detect cryptococcal antigens in serum or CSF. The drugs of choice for treatment are amphotericin B and flucytosine in combination. Even so, the mortality rate may approach 30%.

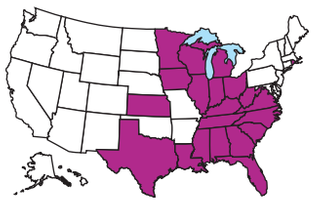
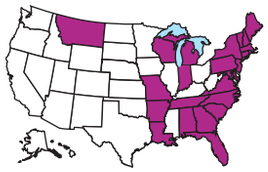
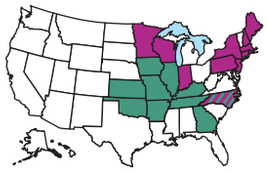
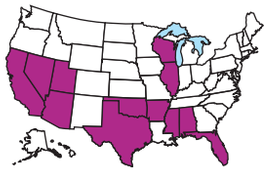
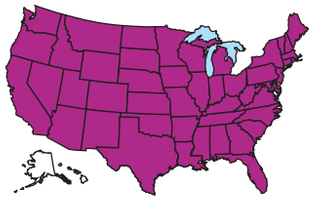
CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **22-12** What is the most common source of airborne cryptococcal infections?

DISEASES IN FOCUS 22.2 Types of Arboviral Encephalitis

Arboviral encephalitis is usually characterized by fever, headache, and altered mental status ranging from confusion to coma. Vector control to decrease contacts between humans and mosquitoes is the best prevention. Mosquito control includes removing standing water and using insect repellent while outdoors. An 8-year-old girl in rural Wisconsin has chills, headache, and fever and reports having been bitten by mosquitoes. Use the following table to determine which types of encephalitis are most likely. How would you confirm your diagnosis?

***Culex* mosquito engorged with human blood.**

Disease	Pathogen	Mosquito Vector	Reservoir	U.S. Distribution	Epidemiology	Mortality
California Encephalitis (La Crosse serogroup)	CE virus (*Orthobunyavirus*)	*Aedes*	Small mammals		Affects mostly 4- to 18-year age groups in rural or suburban areas. Rarely fatal; about 10% have neurological damage	1% of those hospitalized
Eastern Equine Encephalitis	EEE virus (*Alphavirus*)	*Aedes, Culiseta*	Birds, horses		Affects mostly young children and younger adults; relatively uncommon in humans	>30%
Heartland Encephalitis (green)	Heartland virus (*Bandavirus*)	*Amblyomma americanum* tick	May be deer or raccoons		Neurological problems, thrombocytopenia, leukopenia	20%
Powassan Encephalitis (purple)	POW virus (*Flavivirus*)	*Ixodes* spp. ticks	May be white-footed mice		Long-term neurological problems may occur	10–15%
St. Louis Encephalitis	SLE virus (*Flavivirus*)	*Culex*	Birds		Mostly urban outbreaks; affects mainly adults over 40	20%
West Nile Encephalitis	WN virus (*Flavivirus*)	Primarily *Culex*	Primarily birds, assorted rodents, and large mammals		Most cases asymptomatic—otherwise symptoms vary from mild to severe; likelihood of severe neurological symptoms and fatality increases with age	4–18% of those hospitalized

Protozoan Diseases of the Nervous System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

22-13 Identify the causative agent, vector, symptoms, and treatment for African trypanosomiasis and amebic meningoencephalitis.

Protozoa capable of invading the CNS are rare. However, those that can reach it cause devastating effects.

African Trypanosomiasis

African trypanosomiasis, or sleeping sickness, is a protozoan disease that affects the nervous system. In 1907, Winston Churchill described Uganda during an epidemic of sleeping sickness as a "beautiful garden of death." Thousands of cases occurred annually during the twentieth century; however, as a result of vector control and effective treatment of infected people, fewer than 600 cases were reported in 2020.

The disease is caused by two subspecies of *Trypanosoma brucei* that infect humans: *Trypanosoma brucei gambiense* and *T. b. rhodesiense*. They are morphologically indistinguishable but differ significantly in their epidemiology—that is, in their ability to infect nonhuman hosts. Humans are the only significant reservoir for *T. b. gambiense*, whereas *T. b. rhodesiense* is a parasite of domestic livestock and many wild animals. These protozoans are flagellates (see Figure 23.22 for the appearance of a similar organism) that are spread by tsetse fly vectors. *T. b. gambiense* is transmitted by a tsetse fly species that inhabits stream vegetation where there are also concentrations of human populations. It is distributed throughout west and central Africa and is sometimes termed West African trypanosomiasis. More than 97% of reported cases in humans are of this type. Once a person becomes infected, there are few symptoms for weeks or months. Eventually, a chronic form of disease with fever, headaches, and a variety of other symptoms develops that indicates involvement and deterioration of the CNS. Coma and death are inevitable without effective treatment.

In contrast, infections by *T. b. rhodesiense* are transmitted by species of tsetse flies that inhabit savannahs (grasslands with scattered trees) of eastern and southern Africa. Wild animals inhabiting these areas are well adapted to the parasite and are little affected, but humans and domestic animals become acutely ill. This has had a profound effect on sub-Saharan Africa, an area nearly the size of the United States. Agricultural development has been practically prohibited because domestic food and working animals become infected. Infections of humans follow a more acute course than that caused by *T. b. gambiense;* symptoms of illness are apparent within a few days or so of infection. Death occurs within weeks or a few months, sometimes from cardiac problems even before the CNS is affected.

Trypanosomiasis is treated with suramin and pentamidine, but these do not alter the course of the disease once the CNS is affected. The drug that does alter the disease's course, melarsoprol, is very toxic. A less toxic drug, eflornithine, crosses the blood–brain barrier and blocks an enzyme required for proliferation of the parasite. It requires an extended series of injections, but it is so dramatically effective against even late stages of *T. b. gambiense* that it has been called the resurrection drug. (Its effectiveness against *T. b. rhodesiense* is variable; melarsoprol is still recommended.)

The current primary approach in combating the disease is to attempt elimination of the vector, the tsetse fly. The use of tentlike, insecticide-treated traps that mimic the color and odor of animal hosts of the insect, combined with large-scale releases of sterile males have eliminated the tsetse fly on the offshore island of Zanzibar. (Female tsetse flies mate only once; the release of artificially reared, radiation-sterilized males in vast numbers prevents females that mate with them from producing young.) The insect is a weak flyer, and health care officials are pursuing eradication on selected areas of the mainland.

A vaccine is being developed, but a major obstacle is that the trypanosome is able to change protein coats at least 100 times and can thus evade antibodies aimed at only one or a few of the proteins. Each time the body's immune system is successful in suppressing the trypanosome, a new clone of parasites appears with a different antigenic coat (**Figure 22.16**).

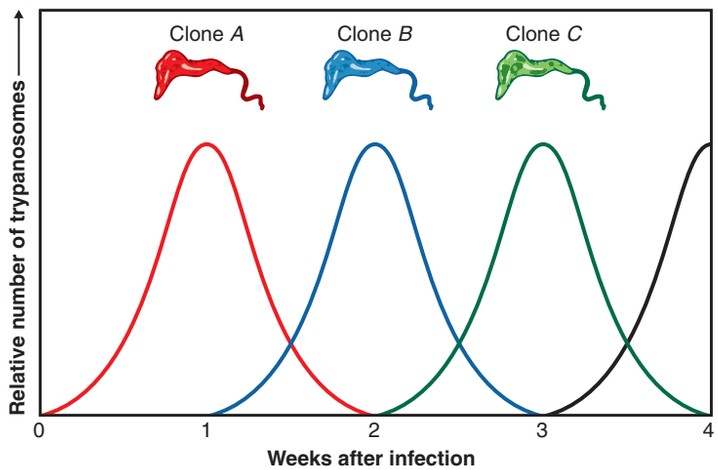
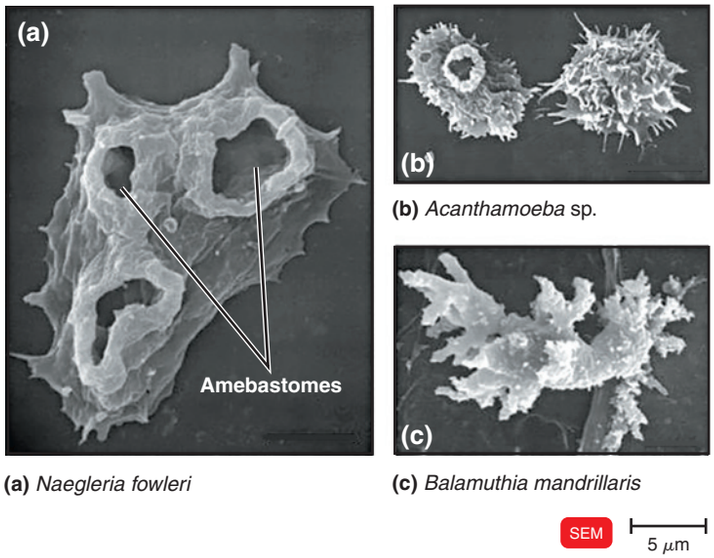


Figure 22.16 How trypanosomes evade the immune system. The population of each trypanosome clone drops nearly to zero as the immune system suppresses its members, but a new clone with a different antigenic surface then replaces the previous clone. The black line represents the population of clone *D*.

Q What viral disease that is causing a worldwide pandemic would make for a similar figure?



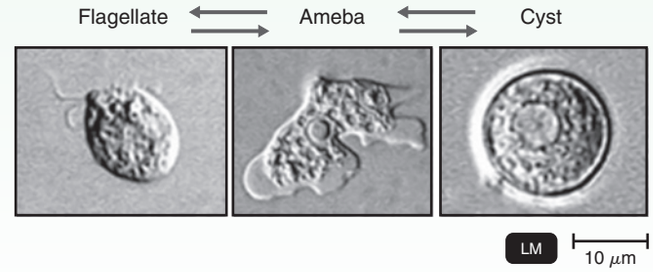
(a) *Naegleria fowleri* **(b)** *Acanthamoeba* sp. **(c)** *Balamuthia mandrillaris*

Figure 22.17 Ameba that cause meningoencephalitis.
Vegetative stages of protozoa that cause amebic meningoencephalitis. The suckerlike structures (called amebastomes) function in phagocytic feeding—usually on bacteria or assorted debris that may include host tissue. These protozoa have a cyst stage.

Q How is amebic meningoencephalitis transmitted?

CLINICAL CASE

The CSF fluid contains slow-moving ameboid cells. The technician performs an indirect immunofluorescence test to determine what specific microorganism is in Patricia's CSF. The test shows antibodies against *N. fowleri* at a dilution of 1:4096. The news is serious: Patricia has primary amebic meningoencephalitis, usually a rapidly fatal disease. *N. fowleri* is a euglenozoa that lives as an ameba in warm freshwater. In low nutrients, the trophozoite forms a rapidly motile cell with two flagella. The trophozoite encysts during cold or dry conditions and reemerges when conditions improve (see the figure).



How is *N. fowleri* transmitted?

Amebic Meningoencephalitis

Three species of free-living protozoa cause amebic meningoencephalitis, a devastating disease of the nervous system. These protozoa are found in soil and water. Human exposure to them is apparently widespread; many in the population carry antibodies. Fortunately, symptomatic disease is rare. *Naegleria fowleri* is a euglenozoan that causes a neurological disease, **primary amebic meningoencephalitis (PAM)** (Figure 22.17a). This ameba has an ovoid flagellated stage (which is most likely to be the infective form) that allows it to swim rapidly in its aquatic habitat. Although scattered cases are reported in most parts of the world, only a few cases are reported in the United States annually. The most common victims are children who swim in warm ponds or streams. The organism initially infects the nasal mucosa and later penetrates to the brain and proliferates, feeding on brain tissue. The fatality rate is nearly 100%, death occurring within a few days after symptoms appear. Because of the rarity of the disease, there is a low "index of suspicion"; also, the symptoms resemble those of encephalitis caused by other, more common, pathogens. Diagnosis is typically made at autopsy. There have been only a very few survivors of PAM. They were treated with a combination of several antibiotics.

A similar neurological disease is **granulomatous amebic encephalitis (GAE)**. GAE is caused by *Acanthamoeba* spp. (Figure 22.17b) *Acanthamoeba* live in soil, freshwater, and sea water. GAE is chronic, slowly progressive, and fatal in a matter of weeks or months. GAE has an unknown incubation period, and months may elapse before symptoms appear. Granulomas (see Figure 23.28) form around the organism in response to an immune reaction. The portal of entry is not known but is probably mucous membranes. Multiple lesions are formed in the brain and other organs, especially the lungs. Most infections occur in contact-lens wearers; the annual incidence is two cases per million contact-lens wearers.

Balamuthia mandrillaris (Figure 22.17c) is a free-living ameba that causes GAE in mammals. The ameba, present in soil, is probably transmitted by inhalation or through skin lesions. Approximately 200 cases of balamuthiasis have been reported worldwide since the disease was recognized in 1986; 109 of those cases were in the United States. Of the 109 people affected, only 10% survived.

A variety of antimicrobics including amphotericin B and miltefosine have been used to treat infections caused by *N. fowleri*, *Acanthamoeba* spp., and *B. mandrillaris*.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

22-13 What insect is the vector for African trypanosomiasis?

Nervous System Diseases Caused by Prions

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

22-14 List the characteristics of diseases caused by prions.

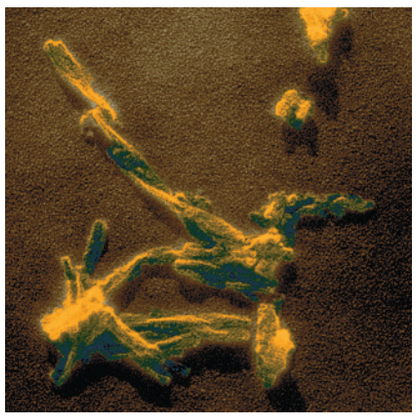
Several fatal diseases affecting the human central nervous system are caused by prions, self-replicating infectious proteins (see Chapter 13). Recall that the shape of a protein is essential for its operation. A protein called normal prion protein, (PrP^C) is found on the surface of brain cell neurons as well as the surface of certain stem cells that become neurons. The function of PrP^C is uncertain, but there is evidence that it may guide maturation of nerve cells. PrP^C can assume two folded shapes, one normal and the other abnormal (there is no change in the amino acid sequence). If the PrP^C encounters an *abnormally folded protein*, called PrP^{Sc}, it changes shape and also becomes abnormally folded (see Figure 13.23). In fact, a chain reaction of protein misfolding occurs. Therefore, a single infective prion may lead to a cascade of new PrP^{Sc}, which then clump together to form the fibril aggregations of misfolded proteins that are found in infected brain tissue. See **Figure 22.18a**. Autopsies show that this tissue also exhibits a characteristic spongiform degeneration (it is porous, like a sponge), as shown in Figure 22.18b. In recent years, the study of prion diseases, called **transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSE)**, has been one of the most interesting areas of medical microbiology.

A typical prion disease in animals is **sheep scrapie**, which has long been known in Great Britain and made its first appearance in the United States in 1947. The infected animal scrapes itself against fences and walls until areas of its body are raw. During a period of several weeks or months, the animal gradually loses motor control and dies. The infection can be experimentally passed to other animals by injecting brain tissue from one animal to the next. Similar conditions are seen in mink, possibly resulting from the animals' being fed mutton. Another prion disease, **chronic wasting disease**, affects wild deer and elk in the western United States and Canada. It is invariably fatal, and there are concerns that it might infect humans who eat venison and might eventually infect domestic livestock.

Humans can also develop TSE diseases; classic **Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD)** is an example. Classic CJD is rare (about 300 cases per year in the United States). In 5 to 15% of cases, it is due to inherited mutations of the prion protein gene. There is no recognizable mode of transmission for other cases; however, an infective agent is known to be involved because transmission via contaminated corneal transplants, neurosurgical instruments, and other tissues and equipment have been reported. Several cases have been traced to the injection of a growth hormone derived from human tissue. Boiling and irradiation have no effect, and even routine autoclaving is not reliable. Instead, surgeons are advised to use disposable instruments where there is a risk of exposure to CJD. To sterilize reusable instruments, the WHO recommends a strong solution of sodium hydroxide combined with extended autoclaving at 134°C. This protocol has been effective: no equipment-related cases have been reported since 1976.

The Fore people of New Guinea developed a TSE disease called **kuru** (a native word for shaking or trembling). Transmission of kuru is apparently related to the practice of cannibalistic rituals. Carleton Gajdusek received the Nobel Prize for Physiology and Medicine in 1976 for his investigations of kuru. In 1997, Stanley Prusiner received the Nobel Prize for the discovery of prions.

A form of TSE in cows is **bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE)**. The disease is better known as *mad cow disease* because of the behavior of the animals. An outbreak in 1986 in Great Britain was ascribed to animal feed containing meat and bone meal contaminated with prions from sheep infected with scrapie. Another hypothesis proposed that the outbreak resulted from a spontaneous mutation in a cow and that there was no connection with scrapie. Regulations in the United States prohibit the use of meat from "downer" animals (fallen and unable to rise and walk) and ban for cattle, human, and pet consumption any portions of a carcass that might contain a neurological pathogen.



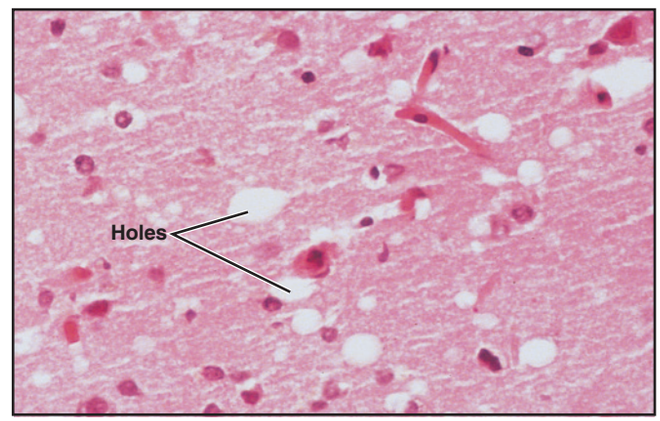


Figure 22.18 Spongiform encephalopathies. These diseases, caused by prions, include bovine spongiform encephalopathy, scrapie in sheep, and Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease in humans. All are similar in their pathology. (**a**) Brain tissue showing characteristic fibrils produced by prion diseases. These fibrils are insoluble aggregates of abnormally folded proteins (prions). (**b**) Brain tissue showing the clear holes that give it a spongiform appearance.

Q What are prions?

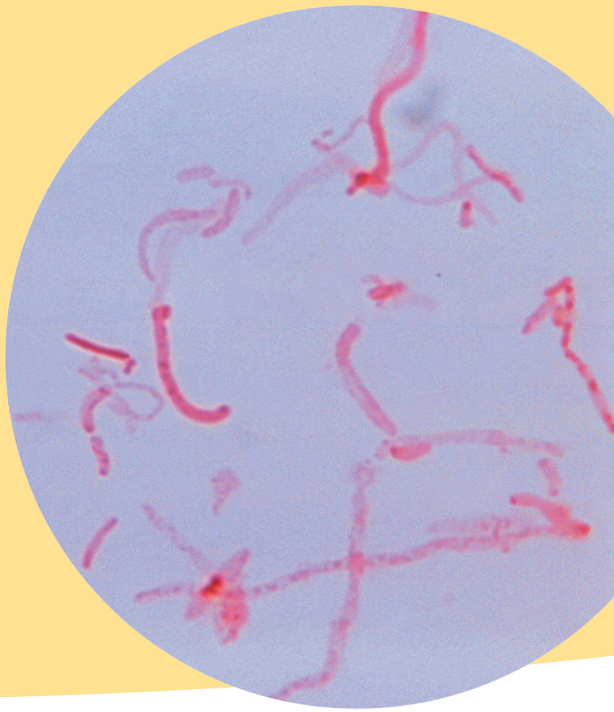
EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME Microbes Impacting the CNS

We know intestinal microbiota help us by preventing colonization of pathogens. They also facilitate nutrient absorption by metabolizing indigestible dietary compounds, such as amylose in starch. Now mounting evidence suggests that intestinal microbes also send chemical signals that affect the central nervous system. This means microbiota may play a role in human moods or emotions and related disorders.

Seventy percent of all neurons in the peripheral nervous system are in the digestive canal, and these nerves are directly connected to the central nervous system through the vagus nerves. The idea that the intestinal microbiome affects the nervous system and depression or anxiety disorders first surfaced in 1910, when humans given live lactic acid bacteria showed improvement in depression symptoms. Not much happened for the next 100 years. Then in 2004, an increased stress reaction was seen in germ-free mice compared to normal mice—sparking new interest in the link between the intestinal microbiome and the central nervous system.

In mice studies, researchers found the amount of brain neurotransmitters the mice produced was related to their levels of certain intestinal bacteria. Genera that seem to reduce anxiety- and depression-related behavior in mice include *Bacteroides, Propionibacterium, Lactobacillus*, and *Prevotella*. Another study found that human brain activity changed when the test subjects consumed a fermented dairy product containing a variety of bacteria, including *Bifidobacterium animalis* subsp *lactis, Streptococcus thermophilus, Lactobacillus bulgaricus*, and *Lactococcus lactis*.

Altering mood and mental health are not the only ways that microbes may affect the nervous system. Recently researchers found that patients with Parkinson's disease had fewer *Prevotella* bacteria and more Enterobacteriaceae than healthy people. Parkinson's disease is a nervous system disorder characterized by tremors and rigid muscles. People with the disease have reduced levels of the neurotransmitter dopamine, which supports nerve-impulse transmission to muscles. Probiotic bacteria may be useful to increase dopamine. These early data suggest that probiotics could potentially be used as a first-line treatment for some neurological disorders.



***Prevotella* bacteria are one of the genera being investigated for a link to Parkinson's disease.**

CLINICAL CASE

Cysts can be inhaled with dust, and amebae can be forced into the nose when a swimmer dives underwater. The ameba crosses the nasal mucosa to enter the central nervous system. The ameba secretes hydrolytic enzymes that digest the nasal mucosa and nerve cells, allowing it to enter the subarachnoid space. The ameba then feeds on the digested nerve cells. A week earlier, Patricia and her family had been swimming in Deep Creek Hot Springs. The little girl did not heed the sign warning swimmers to keep their head above water. The attending physician also tests Patricia's parents for their antibody titers. Patricia's father has a low (1:16) antibody titer against *N. fowleri* but is not ill; her mother's serum is negative for antibody.

What is the treatment for amebic meningoencephalitis?

There are no tests to detect PrP^{Sc} in live animals. A Western blot test is used to identify PrP^{Sc} in postmortem brain tissue. Only a small percentage of animal carcasses in the United States are tested for BSE—in Europe and Japan, practically all slaughtered animals are tested.

If this disease were to establish itself in domestic cattle in the United States, it would be economically devastating. Moreover, a form of the disease can be passed on to humans who eat contaminated meat. In the 1986 outbreak, Great Britain and several other countries reported a few cases of apparent classic CJD in relatively young people. CJD rarely occurs in this age group, and a connection with BSE was feared. Investigation also showed that this variant of CJD (vCJD) differed in significant ways from classic CJD (Table 22.1). In all, a few hundred cases of vCJD were identified. Considering the long incubation times of prion diseases and that an estimated 1 million cattle had been infected with BSE, it was feared that large numbers of vCJD cases might eventually appear. However, this concern

TABLE 22.1 Comparative Characteristics of Classic and Variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease

Characteristic	Classic CJD	Variant CJD
Median Age at Death (yr)	68 (range 23–97)	28 (range 14–74)
Median Duration of Illness (mo)	4 to 5	13 to 14
Clinical Presentation	Dementia; early neurological signs	Prominent psychiatric and behavioral symptoms; delayed neurological signs
Host Genotype*	Other amino acid combinations	Methionine/methionine

*Victims are homozygous at codon 129, that is, both of their PrP genes (one from each parent) have methionine coded at this position. This is characteristic of only about 37% of White people. Other members of this population have different amino acid combinations at this position—and, although a handful of cases that have appeared were exceptions (homozygous valine/valine, or heterozygous methionine/valine), no one with these genotypes has developed vCJD to date.

subsided after the number of cases declined from their peak in 2000 and after it was shown that the affected patients shared a certain limited genetic profile.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

22-14 What are the recommendations for sterilizing reusable surgical instruments when prion contamination might be a factor?

Diseases Caused by Unidentified Agents

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

22-15 List some possible causes of acute flaccid myelitis, Bell's palsy, and chronic fatigue syndrome.

In August 2014, the CDC received increased reports of people with **acute flaccid myelitis (AFM)**. Since then, 50 to 100 cases have been reported annually. Most cases occur in young children. Symptoms include limb weakness and one or more of the following: facial droop/weakness, drooping eyelids, and difficulty with swallowing or slurred speech. The 2014 increase coincided with a national outbreak of severe respiratory illness caused by a nonpolio *Enterovirus* called EV-D68. Preliminary studies suggest EV-D68 may be the cause of AFM. In 2018, *Enterovirus A* and *C* have been identified in a third of the children with AFM.

Bell's palsy occurs when a nerve that controls facial muscles is inflamed and can't communicate with the muscles. This results in symptoms of drooping eyelid or mouth on one side of the face. This inflammation may be caused by one of the herpes viruses: HHV-1, HHV-3, HHV-4, and HHV-5 have all been suggested. Acyclovir may shorten the course of the disease. However, most people recover within 6 months with or without treatment.

There is no diagnostic test for **chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS)**. It is diagnosed by a persistent, unexplained fatigue that lasts at least 6 months with at least four of these symptoms: sore throat, tender lymph nodes, muscle pain, pain in multiple joints, headaches, unrefreshing sleep, malaise after exercise, and impaired short-term memory or concentration. The condition affects an estimated 800,000 to 2.5 million people in the United States. Two herpesviruses, *Lymphocryptovirus* and *Roseolovirus*, have been implicated, but current studies suggest that no one pathogen causes CFS and that the illness may be triggered by a variety of infections.

See **Exploring the Microbiome** for the role of the human microbiome in other nervous system disorders.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

22-15 Name one common infectious disease that may be associated with Bell's palsy.

***

Diseases in Focus 22.3 summarizes the main causes of microbial disease involving neurological symptoms, including paralysis.

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

Patricia is treated with the antibiotics amphotericin B and rifampin. *N. fowleri* amebae are widespread, but infection is rare. As many as 100 amebae per liter of water may be necessary for infection. Inapparent infection is not uncommon, and the father's low antibody titer suggests he does have an infection. Patricia is one of fewer than 10 patients reported to survive primary amebic meningoencephalitis. Patricia survives because of the laboratory technician's quick thinking; her infection is diagnosed early, and she is placed on antiamebic therapy immediately.

DISEASES IN FOCUS 22.3 Microbial Diseases with Neurological Symptoms, Including Paralysis

After eating canned chili, two children experience cranial nerve paralysis followed by descending paralysis. The children are on mechanical ventilation.

Leftover canned chili is tested by mouse bioassay. Use the following table to make a differential diagnosis and identify infections that could cause these symptoms.

Gram stain from canned chili. LM 10 μm

Disease	Pathogen	Symptoms	Method of Transmission	Treatment	Prevention
BACTERIAL DISEASES					
Tetanus	*Clostridium tetani*	Lockjaw; muscle spasms	Puncture wound	Tetanus immune globulin; antibiotics	Tetanus toxoid vaccine (Td, DTaP, Tdap)
Botulism	*C. botulinum*	Flaccid paralysis	Foodborne intoxication	Antitoxin	Proper canning of foods; infants should not eat honey
Leprosy	*Mycobacterium leprae, M. lepromatosis*	Loss of sensation in skin; disfiguring nodules	Prolonged contact with contaminated secretions	Dapsone, rifampin, clofaximine	Possibly BCG vaccine
VIRAL DISEASES					
Poliomyelitis	*Enterovirus* C (Poliovirus)	Headache, sore throat, stiff neck; paralysis if motor nerves infected	Ingesting contaminated water (fecal–oral route)	Mechanical breathing aid	Inactivated polio vaccine (IPV)
Rabies	*Lyssavirus*	Fatal infection; agitation, muscle spasms, difficulty swallowing	Animal bite	Postexposure treatment: rabies immunoglobulin plus vaccine	Human diploid cell vaccine for high-risk individuals; vaccination of domestic animals
PROTOZOAN DISEASE					
African Trypanosomiasis	*T. b. rhodesiense, T. b. gambiense*	Fatal infection; early symptoms (headache, fever) progress to coma	Tsetse fly	Suramin; pentamidine, melarsoprol, eflornithine	Vector control
PRION DISEASES					
Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease	Prion	Fatal infection; neurological symptoms include trembling	Inherited; ingested; transplants	None	None
Kuru	Prion	Same as Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease	Contact or ingestion	None	None

Study Outline

Structure and Function of the Nervous System

(p. 623–624)

1. The central nervous system (CNS) consists of the brain, which is protected by the skull bones, and the spinal cord, which is protected by the backbone.
2. The peripheral nervous system (PNS) consists of the nerves that branch from the CNS.
3. The CNS is covered by three layers of membranes called meninges: the dura mater, arachnoid mater, and pia mater. Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) circulates between the arachnoid mater and the pia mater in the subarachnoid space.
4. The blood–brain barrier normally prevents many substances, including antibiotics, from entering the brain.
5. Microorganisms can enter the CNS through trauma, along peripheral nerves, and through the bloodstream and lymphatic system.
6. An infection of the meninges is called meningitis. An infection of the brain is called encephalitis.

Bacterial Diseases of the Nervous System (pp. 624–634)

Bacterial Meningitis (pp. 625–628)

1. The three major causes of bacterial meningitis are *H. influenzae*, *S. pneumoniae*, and *N. meningitidis*.
2. Nearly 50 other species of opportunistic bacteria can cause meningitis.
3. *H. influenzae* is part of the normal throat microbiota. It requires blood factors for growth; serotypes are based on capsules.
4. *H. influenzae* type b is the most common cause of meningitis in children under 4 years old.
5. An Hib conjugated vaccine directed against the capsular polysaccharide antigen is available.
6. *N. meningitidis* causes meningococcal meningitis. This bacterium is found in the throats of healthy carriers and is transmitted by droplet aerosols or direct contact with secretions.
7. Meningococci probably gain access to the meninges through the bloodstream. The bacteria may be found in leukocytes in CSF.
8. MenACYW meningococcal vaccines contain capsule polysaccharides, and MenB vaccine contains bacteria surface proteins.
9. *S. pneumoniae* is commonly found in the nasopharynx.
10. Young children are most susceptible to *S. pneumoniae* meningitis. Untreated, it has a high mortality rate.
11. A *S. pneumoniae* conjugated vaccine is available.
12. *L. monocytogenes* infection can cause meningitis in newborns, the immunosuppressed, pregnant women, and people with cancer.
13. Acquired by ingestion of contaminated food, listeriosis may be asymptomatic in healthy adults.
14. *L. monocytogenes* can cross the placenta and cause spontaneous abortion and stillbirth.

Tetanus (pp. 628–630)

15. Tetanus is caused by an exotoxin produced by *C. tetani*.
16. *C. tetani* produces the neurotoxin tetanospasmin, which causes the symptoms of tetanus: spasms, contraction of muscles controlling the jaw, and death resulting from spasms of respiratory muscles.
17. Acquired immunity results from DTaP immunization.
18. Following an injury, an immunized person may receive a booster of tetanus toxoid. An unimmunized person may receive (human) tetanus immune globulin.
19. Debridement (removal of tissue) and antibiotics may be used to control the infection.

Botulism (pp. 630–632)

20. Botulism is caused by an exotoxin produced by *C. botulinum* growing in foods.
21. Serological types of botulinum toxin vary in virulence; type A is the most virulent.
22. The toxin is a neurotoxin that inhibits the transmission of nerve impulses.
23. Blurred vision occurs in 1 to 2 days; progressive flaccid paralysis follows for 1 to 10 days, possibly resulting in death from respiratory and cardiac failure.
24. *C. botulinum* will not grow in acidic foods or in an aerobic environment. Endospores are killed by proper canning. Adding nitrites to foods inhibits growth of *C. botulinum*.
25. The toxin is heat labile and is destroyed by boiling (100°C) for 5 minutes.
26. Infant botulism results from the growth of *C. botulinum* in an infant's intestines.
27. Wound botulism occurs when *C. botulinum* grows in anaerobic wounds.
28. For diagnosis, mice protected with antitoxin are inoculated with toxin from the patient or foods.

Leprosy (pp. 632–634)

29. Leprosy, or Hansen's disease, is caused by *Mycobacterium leprae* or *M. lepromatosis*.
30. These bacteria have never been cultured on artificial media. They can be cultured in armadillos and mouse footpads.
31. The tuberculoid form of the disease is characterized by loss of sensation in the skin surrounded by nodules.
32. In the lepromatous form, disseminated nodules and tissue necrosis occur.
33. Leprosy is not highly contagious and is spread by prolonged contact with exudates.
34. Untreated individuals often die of secondary bacterial complications, such as tuberculosis.
35. Laboratory diagnosis is based on observations of acid-fast rods in a skin biopsy.

Viral Diseases of the Nervous System (pp. 634–642)

Poliomyelitis (pp. 634–635)

1. The symptoms of poliomyelitis are usually sore throat and nausea, and occasionally paralysis (fewer than 1% of cases).
2. Poliovirus is transmitted by the ingestion of water contaminated with feces.
3. Poliovirus first invades lymph nodes of the neck and small intestine. Viremia and spinal cord involvement may follow.
4. Diagnosis is based on isolation of the virus from feces and throat secretions.

5. The Salk vaccine (an inactivated polio vaccine [IPV]) involves the injection of formalin-inactivated viruses and boosters every few years. The Sabin vaccine (an oral polio vaccine [OPV]) contains three live, attenuated strains of poliovirus and is administered orally.
6. Polio is a good candidate for elimination through vaccination.

Rabies (pp. 635–637)

7. Rabies virus (*Lyssavirus*) causes an acute, usually fatal, encephalitis called rabies.
8. Rabies may be contracted through the bite of a rabid animal or invasion through skin. The virus multiplies in skeletal muscle and connective tissue.
9. Encephalitis occurs when the virus moves along peripheral nerves to the CNS.
10. Symptoms of rabies include spasms of mouth and throat muscles followed by extensive brain and spinal cord damage and death.
11. Laboratory diagnosis may be made by DFA tests of saliva, serum, and CSF or brain smears.
12. Reservoirs for rabies in the United States include skunks, bats, foxes, and raccoons. Domestic cattle, dogs, and cats may get rabies. Rodents and rabbits seldom get rabies.
13. Postexposure treatment includes administration of human rabies immune globulin (RIG) along with multiple intramuscular injections of vaccine.
14. Preexposure treatment consists of vaccination.
15. Other genotypes of *Lyssavirus* cause rabies-like diseases.

Arboviral Encephalitis (pp. 637–639)

16. Symptoms of encephalitis are chills, headache, fever, and eventually coma.
17. Many types of viruses transmitted by mosquitoes (called arboviruses) cause encephalitis.
18. The incidence of arboviral encephalitis increases in the summer months, when mosquitoes are most numerous.
19. Control of the mosquito vector is the most effective way to control arboviral infections.

Zika Virus Disease (pp. 639–642)

20. Zika virus disease is often mild in adults, but the virus can cause CNS birth defects, including microcephaly, if it infects a fetus.

Fungal Disease of the Nervous System (pp. 642–643)

***Cryptococcus neoformans* Meningitis (Cryptococcosis)** (p. 642)

1. *Cryptococcus* spp. are encapsulated yeastlike fungi that cause cryptococcosis.
2. The disease may be contracted by inhaling dried infected pigeon or chicken droppings.
3. The disease begins as a lung infection and may spread to the brain and meninges.
4. Immunosuppressed individuals are most susceptible to cryptococcosis.
5. Diagnosis is based on latex agglutination tests for cryptococcal antigens in serum or CSF.

Protozoan Diseases of the Nervous System (pp. 644–645)

African Trypanosomiasis (pp. 644–645)

1. African trypanosomiasis is caused by the protozoa *T. b. gambiense* and *T. b. rhodesiense* and is transmitted by the bite of the tsetse fly.
2. The disease affects the nervous system of the human host, causing lethargy and eventually coma. It is commonly called sleeping sickness.
3. Vaccine development is hindered by the protozoan's ability to change its surface antigens.

Amebic Meningoencephalitis (p. 645)

4. Encephalitis caused by the protozoan *N. fowleri* is almost always fatal.
5. Granulomatous amebic encephalitis, caused by *Acanthamoeba* spp. and *B. mandrillaris*, is a chronic disease.

Nervous System Diseases Caused by Prions (pp. 646–648)

1. Prions are self-replicating proteins with no detectable nucleic acid.
2. Diseases of the CNS that progress slowly and cause transmissible spongiform encephalopathies are caused by prions.
3. Transmissible spongiform encephalopathies include: classic Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, which can be inherited or transmitted via contaminated tissues or instruments; kuru, which occurs in people of New Guinea who practice cannibalism; and variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, which occurs in people who ingest meat from cows with bovine spongiform encephalopathy.

Diseases Caused by Unidentified Agents (pp. 648–649)

1. The causes of acute flaccid myelitis, Bell's palsy, and chronic fatigue syndrome have not been definitively established, but viruses have been implicated.

Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. If *C. tetani* is relatively sensitive to penicillin, why doesn't penicillin cure tetanus?
2. What treatment is used against tetanus under the following conditions?
   a. before a person suffers a deep puncture wound
   b. after a person suffers a deep puncture wound
3. Why is the following description used for wounds that are susceptible to *C. tetani* infection: "... Improperly cleaned deep puncture wounds . . . ones with little or no bleeding . . ."?

4. Provide the following information on poliomyelitis: etiology, method of transmission, symptoms, prevention. Why aren't the Salk and Sabin vaccines considered treatments for poliomyelitis?
5. Fill in the following table:

Causative Agent of Meningitis	Susceptible Population	Transmission	Treatment
N. meningitidis			
H. influenzae			
S. pneumoniae			
L. monocytogenes			
C. neoformans			

6. Fill in the following table.

Disease	Etiology	Transmission	Symptoms	Treatment
Arboviral encephalitis				
African trypanosomiasis				
Botulism				
Leprosy				

7. DRAW IT On the following figure, identify the portal of entry of *H. influenzae*, *C. tetani*, botulinum toxin, *M. leprae*, poliovirus, *Lyssavirus*, arboviruses, and *Acanthamoeba*.

8. Outline the procedures for treating rabies after exposure. Outline the procedures for preventing rabies prior to exposure. What is the reason for the differences in the procedures?
9. Provide evidence that Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease is caused by a transmissible agent.
10. NAME IT This organism causes meningitis and is transmitted mainly by the inhalation of dried, contaminated bird droppings. Infections are treated with amphotericin B and flucytosine.

Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following is *false*?
   a. Only puncture wounds by rusty nails result in tetanus.
   b. Rabies is seldom found in rodents (e.g., rats, mice).
   c. Polio is transmitted by the fecal–oral route.
   d. Arboviral encephalitis is rather common in the United States.
   e. All of the above are true.
2. Which of the following does *not* have an animal reservoir or vector?
   a. listeriosis
   b. cryptococcosis
   c. amebic meningoencephalitis
   d. rabies
   e. African trypanosomiasis
3. A 12-year-old child hospitalized for Guillain-Barré syndrome had a 4-day history of headache, dizziness, fever, sore throat, and weakness of legs. Seizures began 2 weeks later. Bacterial cultures were negative. The child died 3 weeks after hospitalization. An autopsy revealed inclusions in brain cells that tested positive in an immunofluorescence test. This patient probably had
   a. rabies.
   b. Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease.
   c. botulism.
   d. tetanus.
   e. leprosy.
4. After receiving a corneal transplant, a patient developed dementia and loss of motor function, then became comatose and died. Cultures were negative. Serological tests were negative. Autopsy revealed spongiform degeneration of brain tissue. The patient most likely had
   a. rabies.
   b. Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease.
   c. botulism.
   d. tetanus.
   e. leprosy.
5. Endotoxin is responsible for symptoms caused by which of the following organisms?
   a. *N. meningitidis*
   b. *S. pyogenes*
   c. *L. monocytogenes*
   d. *C. tetani*
   e. *C. botulinum*
6. The increased incidence of encephalitis in the summer months is due to
   a. maturation of the viruses.
   b. increased temperature.
   c. the presence of adult mosquitoes.
   d. an increased population of birds.
   e. an increased population of horses.

Match the following choices to the statements in questions 7 and 8:
a. antirabies antibodies
b. HDCV

7. Produces longest lasting protection.
8. Used for passive immunization.

Use the following choices to answer questions 9 and 10:
a. *Cryptococcus*
b. *Haemophilus*
c. *Listeria*
d. *Naegleria*
e. *Neisseria*

9. Microscopic examination of cerebrospinal fluid reveals gram-positive rods.
10. Microscopic examination of cerebrospinal fluid from a person who washes windows on a building in a large city reveals ovoid cells.

Analysis

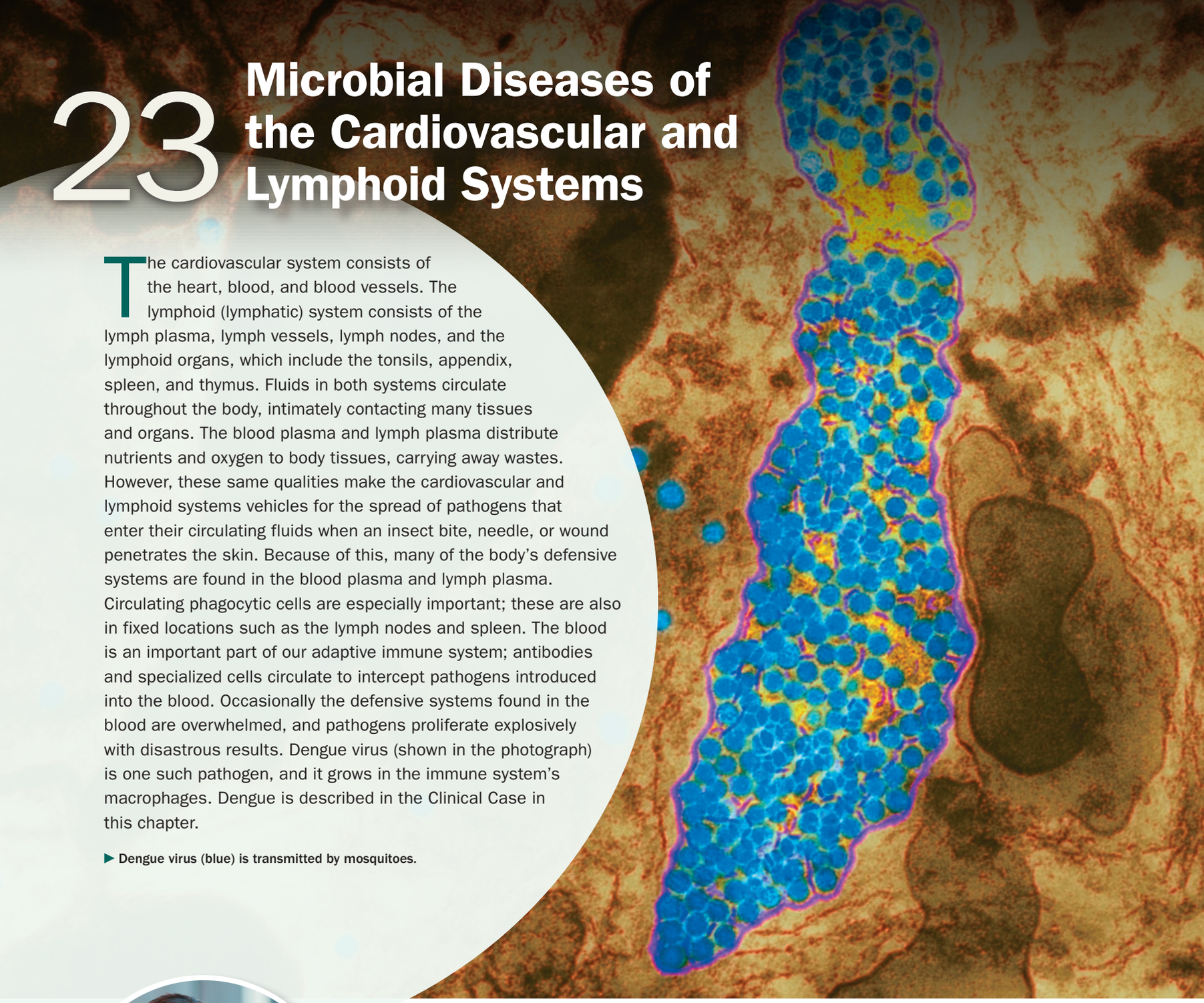
1. Most of us have been told that a rusty nail causes tetanus. What do you suppose is the origin of this adage?
2. OPV is no longer used for routine vaccination. Provide the rationale for this policy.

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. A 1-year-old infant was lethargic and had a fever. When admitted to the hospital, the infant had multiple brain abscesses with gram-negative coccobacilli. Identify the disease, etiology, and treatment.
2. A 40-year-old bird handler was admitted to the hospital with soreness over his upper jaw, progressive vision loss, and bladder dysfunction. He had been well 2 months earlier. Within weeks he lost reflexes in his lower extremities and subsequently died. Examination of CSF showed lymphocytes. What etiology do you suspect? What further information do you need?
3. A newborn gained weight appropriately for 12 weeks. Then she stopped feeding. Her right eardrum was inflamed, she had a stiff neck, and her temperature was 40°C. Examination of CSF revealed Gram-negative coccobacilli. Identify the disease and treatment.

23 Microbial Diseases of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems

The cardiovascular system consists of the heart, blood, and blood vessels. The lymphoid (lymphatic) system consists of the lymph plasma, lymph vessels, lymph nodes, and the lymphoid organs, which include the tonsils, appendix, spleen, and thymus. Fluids in both systems circulate throughout the body, intimately contacting many tissues and organs. The blood plasma and lymph plasma distribute nutrients and oxygen to body tissues, carrying away wastes. However, these same qualities make the cardiovascular and lymphoid systems vehicles for the spread of pathogens that enter their circulating fluids when an insect bite, needle, or wound penetrates the skin. Because of this, many of the body's defensive systems are found in the blood plasma and lymph plasma. Circulating phagocytic cells are especially important; these are also in fixed locations such as the lymph nodes and spleen. The blood is an important part of our adaptive immune system; antibodies and specialized cells circulate to intercept pathogens introduced into the blood. Occasionally the defensive systems found in the blood are overwhelmed, and pathogens proliferate explosively with disastrous results. Dengue virus (shown in the photograph) is one such pathogen, and it grows in the immune system's macrophages. Dengue is described in the Clinical Case in this chapter.



▶ **Dengue virus (blue) is transmitted by mosquitoes.**

In the Clinic

You are an ER nurse treating a female patient who presents with an irregular heartbeat, recent and oppressive fatigue, and slight facial paralysis. The patient indicates that these symptoms started shortly after she recovered from the flu. She states that she got the flu after returning home from a summer camping trip on the coast of Maine. No one else on the trip has experienced these symptoms. Are they caused by a microorganism? If so, which one, and how did your patient acquire the infection?

Hint: Read about infections that match this presentation later in this chapter.

Structure and Function of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

23-1 Identify the role of the cardiovascular and lymphoid systems in spreading and eliminating infections.

The center of the **cardiovascular system** is the heart (Figure 23.1). The function of the cardiovascular system is to circulate blood through the body's tissues so it can deliver certain substances to cells and remove other substances from them.

Blood is a mixture of formed elements (see Table 16.1) and a liquid called blood plasma. The **lymphoid system** is an essential part of the circulation of blood (Figure 16.5). As the blood circulates, some blood plasma filters out of the blood capillaries into spaces between tissue cells, called *interstitial spaces* (Figure 23.2a). The circulating fluid in the interstitial spaces is called *interstitial fluid*. Microscopic lymphatic vessels that surround tissue cells are called *lymph capillaries*. As the interstitial fluid moves around the tissue cells, it's picked up by the lymph capillaries; the fluid is then called *lymph plasma*.

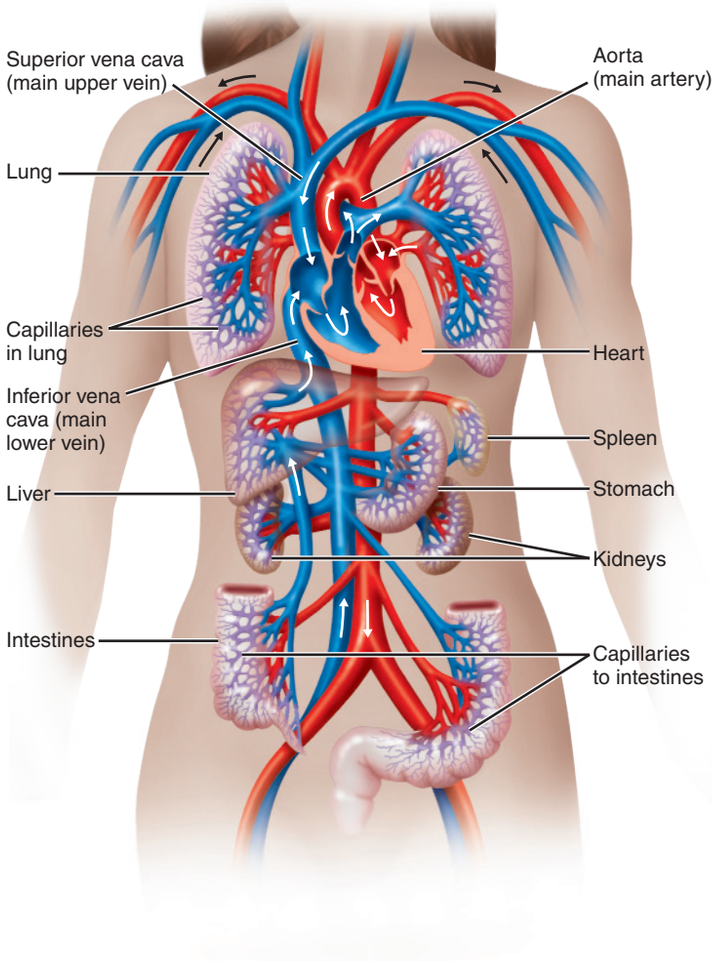


Figure 23.1 The human cardiovascular system and related structures. Details of circulation to the head and extremities are not shown in this simplified diagram. The blood circulates from the heart through the arterial system (red) to the capillaries (purple) in the lungs and other parts of the body. From these capillaries, the blood returns through the venous system (blue) to the heart.

Q How can a focal infection become systemic?

Because lymph capillaries are very permeable, they readily pick up microorganisms or their products. From lymph capillaries, lymph plasma is transported into larger lymph vessels called *lymphatics*, which contain valves that keep the lymph moving toward the heart. Eventually, all the lymph plasma is returned to the blood just before the blood enters the heart. As a result of this circulation, proteins and fluid that have filtered from the plasma are returned to the blood.

At various points in the lymphoid system are oval structures called *lymph nodes* (bean-shaped bodies ranging in size from a few millimeters to as much as 2 cm), through which lymph plasma flows. (Figure 23.2b.) Within the lymph nodes are fixed macrophages that help clear the lymph plasma of infectious microorganisms. At times, the lymph nodes themselves get infected and become visibly swollen and tender; swollen lymph nodes are called **buboes**.

Lymph nodes are also an important component of the body's immune system. Foreign microbes entering lymph nodes encounter two types of lymphocytes: B cells, which are stimulated to become plasmocytes that produce humoral antibodies; and T cells, which then differentiate into effector T cells that are essential to the cell-mediated immune system.

CLINICAL CASE Mosquito Mishap

Katie Tanaka, a normally healthy 34-year-old, has just returned to Rochester, New York, from a 1-week trip to Key West, Florida. Although Katie knows she should be a little tired after the long trip, she is surprised to feel so run down one day after she gets home. Katie makes an appointment with her primary care physician that afternoon, when she develops a fever, headache, and chills. Her doctor orders a urinalysis; the results reveal the presence of bacteria and red blood cells in her urine. Katie's doctor diagnoses her with a urinary tract infection and prescribes antibiotics.

Two days later, Katie returns to her primary care physician with a worsening headache, pain in the back of the eye made worse by eye movement, and complaints of feeling lightheaded, although her fever has resolved. Katie is alert and oriented but has substantial discomfort from her headache. When she is asked to close her eyes and stand with her feet together (touching each other), Katie begins swaying, which is a possible indicator of a brain lesion.

What infections are possible? Read on to find out.

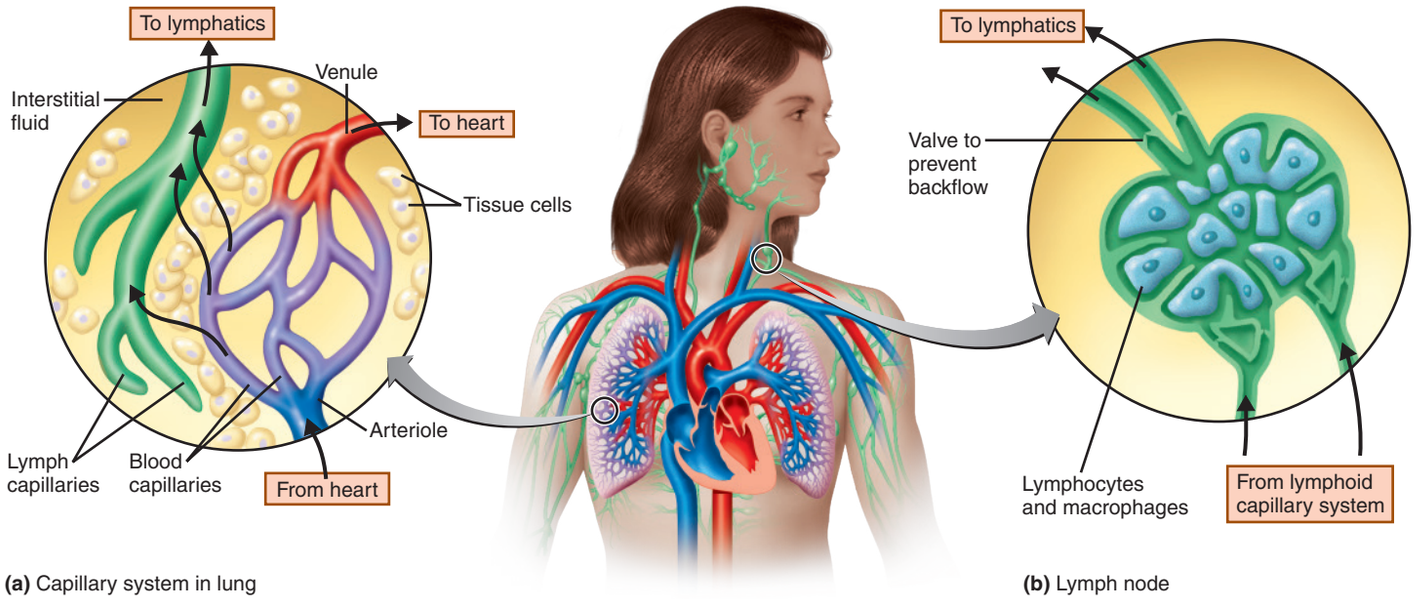


Figure 23.2 The relationship between the cardiovascular and lymphoid systems.
(a) From the blood capillaries, some blood plasma filters into the surrounding tissue, where it is called interstitial fluid, and enters the lymph capillaries. This fluid, now called lymph plasma, returns to the heart through the lymphoid circulatory system (green), which channels the lymph plasma to a vein. **(b)** All lymph plasma returning to the heart must pass through at least one lymph node. (See also Figure 16.5.)

Q What is the role of the lymphatic system in defense against infection?

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

23-1 Why is the lymphatic system so valuable for the working of the immune system?

Bacterial Diseases of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

23-2 List the signs and symptoms of sepsis, and explain the importance of infections that develop into septic shock.

23-3 Differentiate gram-negative sepsis, gram-positive sepsis, and puerperal sepsis.

23-4 Describe the epidemiologies of endocarditis and rheumatic fever.

23-5 Describe the epidemiology of tularemia.

23-6 Describe the epidemiology of brucellosis.

23-7 Describe the epidemiology of anthrax.

23-8 Describe the epidemiology of gas gangrene.

23-9 List three pathogens that are transmitted by animal bites and scratches.

23-10 Compare and contrast the causative agents, vectors, reservoirs, symptoms, treatments, and preventive measures for plague, Lyme disease, and Rocky Mountain spotted fever.

23-11 Identify the vector, etiology, and symptoms of five diseases transmitted by ticks.

23-12 Describe the epidemiologies of epidemic typhus, endemic murine typhus, and spotted fever rickettsiosis.

Once bacteria gain access to the bloodstream, they become widely disseminated. In some cases, they are also able to reproduce rapidly. Those that don't reproduce may comprise the blood microbiome (see **Exploring the Microbiome**).

Sepsis and Septic Shock

Moderate numbers of microorganisms can enter the bloodstream without causing harm. In hospital conditions, the blood frequently is contaminated as a result of invasive procedures, such as insertion of catheters and intravenous feeding tubes. Blood and lymph contain numerous defensive phagocytic cells. Also, blood is low in available iron, which is a requirement for bacterial growth. However, if the defenses of the cardiovascular and lymphatic systems fail, microbes can proliferate in the blood. An acute illness that is associated with the presence and persistence of pathogenic microorganisms or their toxins in the

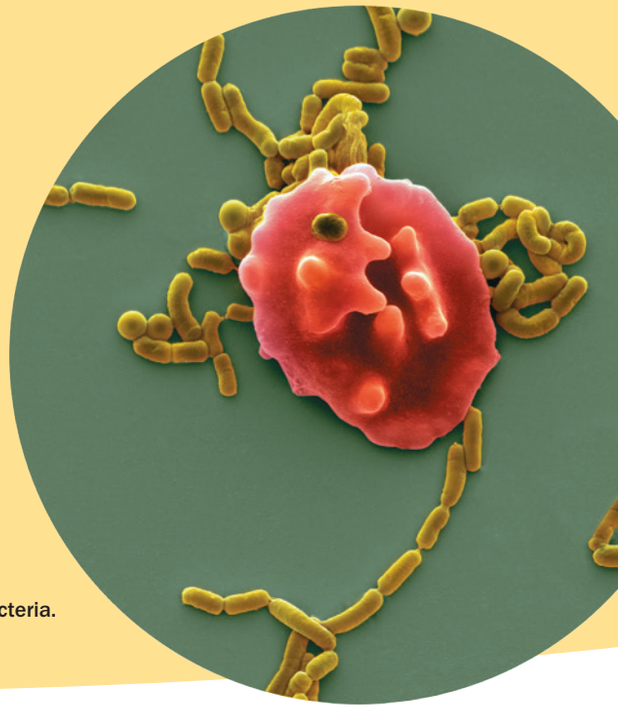
EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME Is Blood Sterile?

We've always assumed that blood from a healthy donor is sterile. Donated blood is routinely cultured to look for pathogens, and only 0.1% of cultures from blood packs have bacterial growth—those that do are assumed to have been contaminated during the blood draw itself. However, more recent studies indicate that healthy human blood may not be so sterile after all.

Analyses of blood from healthy donors found bacterial 16S DNA. This genetic material is found in all prokaryotes, and because it is evolutionarily conserved, it is also used to track relatedness of various types of bacteria. Most of the blood bacterial DNA is located in the white cells and platelets, about 6% is in red cells, and a tiny amount (0.03%) is in the plasma. These data suggest that blood does have a microbiome.

Most of the DNA is from the Proteobacteria phylum. A comparison of patients with cardiovascular disease (CVD) showed that CVD patients have more DNA overall in their plasma than healthy people do. *Propionibacterium* predominated in CVD patients, whereas healthy people had more *Pseudomonas* DNA.

The source of bacteria in blood is most likely bacteria from the mouth or intestines that crossed mucous membranes into the blood. Additional research is needed to determine whether this DNA is from live bacteria and whether they may cause CVD.



Red blood cell and bacteria.

blood is termed **septicemia**. A similar term that is not equated medically with septicemia is *sepsis*, although there is a tendency to use them interchangeably. **Sepsis** is defined as a *systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS)* caused by a focus of infection that releases mediators of inflammation into the bloodstream. The site of the infection itself is not necessarily the bloodstream, and in about half of the cases no microbes can be found in the blood. Sepsis and septicemia are often accompanied by the appearance of **lymphangitis**, inflamed lymph vessels visible as red streaks under the skin, running along the arm or leg from the site of the infection (Figure 23.3).

If the body's defenses do not quickly control the infection and the resulting SIRS, the results are progressive and frequently fatal. The first stage of this progression is sepsis. The most obvious signs and symptoms are fever, chills, and accelerated breathing and heart rate. When sepsis results in a drop in blood pressure (*shock*) and dysfunction of at least one organ, it is considered to be **severe sepsis**. Once organs begin to fail, the mortality rate becomes very high. A final stage, when low blood pressure can no longer be controlled by addition of fluids, is **septic shock**. More than one million cases occur each year in the United States with a fatality rate of 28–50%.

Gram-Negative Sepsis

Septic shock is most likely to be caused by gram-negative bacteria. Recall that the cell walls of many gram-negative bacteria contain endotoxins (toxic lipopolysaccharides [LPS]; see Chapter 4) that are released upon lysis of the cell. These endotoxins can cause a severe drop in blood pressure with its associated signs and symptoms. Septic shock is often called by the alternative names *gram-negative sepsis* or *endotoxic shock*. Less than one-millionth of a milligram of endotoxin is

Figure 23.3 Lymphangitis, one sign of sepsis. As the infection spreads from its original site along the lymphoid vessels, the inflamed walls of the vessels become visible as red streaks.

Q Why does the red streak sometimes end at a certain point?

enough to cause the symptoms. *Klebsiella spp.*, *Escherichia coli*, and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* are most frequently involved. Recent outbreaks of an emerging pathogen, *Elizabethkingia* spp., have occurred in the United States.

An effective treatment for severe sepsis and septic shock has been a medical priority for many years. The early symptoms of sepsis are relatively nonspecific and not especially alarming. Therefore, the antibiotic treatments that might arrest it then are frequently not administered. The progression to lethal stages is rapid and generally impossible to treat effectively. Administering antibiotics then may even aggravate the condition by causing the lysis of large numbers of bacteria that then release more endotoxins.

In addition to antibiotics, treatment of septic shock involves attempts to neutralize the LPS components and inflammation-causing cytokines. Attempts to develop an effective drug to do this have been unsuccessful so far.

Gram-Positive Sepsis

Gram-positive bacteria are now the most common cause of sepsis. Both staphylococci and streptococci produce potent exotoxins that cause toxic shock syndrome, a toxemia discussed in Chapter 21. The frequent use of invasive procedures in hospitals allows gram-positive bacteria to enter the bloodstream. Such healthcare-associated infections (HAIs) are a particular risk for patients who undergo regular dialysis for kidney dysfunction. The bacterial components that lead to septic shock in gram-positive sepsis are not known with certainty. Possible sources are various fractions of the gram-positive cell wall or even bacterial DNA.

An especially important group of gram-positive bacteria are the enterococci, which are responsible for many HAIs. The enterococci are inhabitants of the human colon and frequently contaminate skin. Once considered relatively harmless, two species in particular, *Enterococcus faecium* and *Enterococcus faecalis*, are now recognized as leading causes of HAIs of wounds and the urinary tract. Enterococci have a natural resistance to penicillin and have rapidly acquired resistance to other antibiotics. What has made them something of a medical emergency is the appearance of vancomycin-resistant strains. Vancomycin (see Chapter 20) was often the only remaining antibiotic to which these bacteria, especially *E. faecium*, were still sensitive. Among isolates of *E. faecium* from HAIs of the bloodstream, almost 90% are now resistant. Linezolid is usually effective.

Up to this point our discussion of the streptococci has been focused on serologic group A. There is an emerging awareness of **group B streptococci (GBS)**. *S. agalactiae* (ā-gal-AK-tē-ı-) is the only GBS and is the most common cause of life-threatening *neonatal sepsis*. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends that pregnant women be tested for vaginal GBS and that women with GBS be offered antibiotics during labor. The incidence of Group B sepsis is increasing in older adults. These infections can be treated with a β-lactam or vancomycin.

Puerperal Sepsis

Puerperal sepsis, also called **puerperal fever** and **childbirth fever**, is an HAI. It begins as an infection of the uterus as a result of childbirth or abortion. *Streptococcus pyogenes*, a group A beta-hemolytic streptococcus, is the most frequent cause, although other organisms may cause infections of this type.

Puerperal sepsis progresses from an infection of the uterus to an infection of the abdominal cavity (*peritonitis*) and in many cases to sepsis. At a Paris hospital between 1861 and 1864, of the 9886 women who gave birth, 1226 (12%) died of such infections. These deaths were largely unnecessary. Some 20 years before, Oliver Wendell Holmes in the United States and Ignaz Semmelweis in Austria had clearly demonstrated that the disease was transmitted by the hands and instruments of the attending physicians, who often performed autopsies prior to delivering babies. Semmelweis showed that disinfecting hands and instruments could prevent such transmission. Antibiotics, especially penicillin, and modern hygienic practices have now made *S. pyogenes* puerperal sepsis an uncommon complication of childbirth.

Therapy for Sepsis

An effective therapy for sepsis is a medical priority and will probably require entirely new approaches. For one thing, the symptoms of sepsis are largely caused by the body's response to the infection, a response that has been described as being "unhelpfully exuberant." Any agent that would suppress this response would be independent of the source of the infection. Even in the absence of such therapies, the care of patients with sepsis has improved, and the mortality rate in recent years has declined but is still around 28%.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **23-2** What are two of the conditions that define the systemic inflammatory response syndrome of sepsis?
- **23-3** Are the endotoxins that cause sepsis from gram-positive or gram-negative bacteria?

Bacterial Infections of the Heart

Two common bacterial infections of the heart are endocarditis and rheumatic fever.

Endocarditis

The wall of the heart consists of three layers. The inner layer, called the *endocardium*, lines the myocardium—the heart muscle itself—and covers the valves. An inflammation of the endocardium is called **endocarditis**.

One type of bacterial endocarditis, **subacute bacterial endocarditis** (so named because it develops slowly; Figure 23.4),

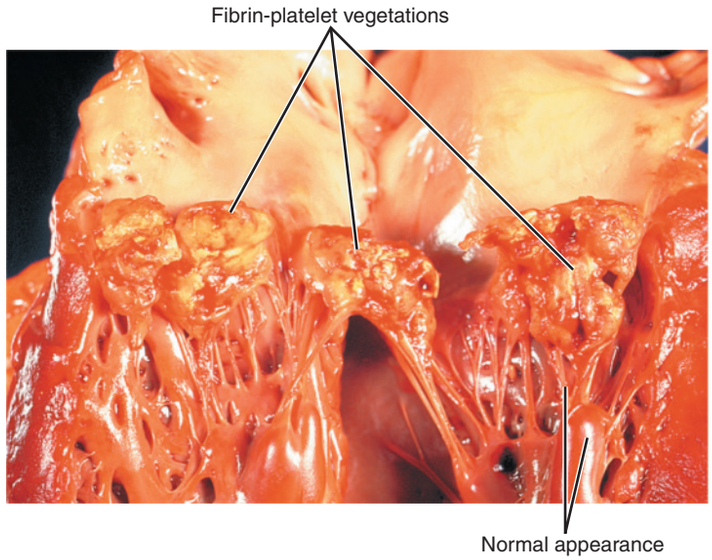


Figure 23.4 Bacterial endocarditis. This is a case of subacute endocarditis, meaning that it developed over a period of weeks or months. The heart has been dissected to expose the mitral valve. The cordlike structures connect the heart valve to the operating muscles.

Q How can a tongue piercing lead to subacute bacterial endocarditis?

is characterized by fever, general weakness, and a heart murmur. It is usually caused by alpha-hemolytic streptococci (most often, *Streptococcus viridans*), which are common in the oral cavity, although enterococci or staphylococci may also be involved. The condition probably arises from a focus of infection elsewhere in the body, such as in the teeth or tonsils. Microorganisms are released by tooth extractions or tonsillectomies, enter the blood, and find their way to the heart. Normally, such bacteria would be quickly cleared from the blood by the body's defensive mechanisms. However, in people whose heart valves are abnormal, because of either congenital heart defects or such diseases as rheumatic fever and syphilis, the bacteria lodge in the preexisting lesions. Within the lesions, the bacteria multiply and become entrapped in blood clots that protect them from phagocytes and antibodies. As multiplication progresses and the clot gets larger, pieces of the clot break off and can block blood vessels or lodge in the kidneys. In time, the function of the heart valves is impaired. Left untreated by appropriate antibiotics, subacute bacterial endocarditis is fatal within a few months.

A more rapidly progressive type of bacterial endocarditis is **acute bacterial endocarditis**, which is usually caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*. The organisms find their way from the initial site of infection to normal or abnormal heart valves; the rapid destruction of the heart valves is frequently fatal within a few days or weeks if untreated.

Streptococci can also cause **pericarditis**, inflammation of the sac around the heart (the *pericardium*). Patients can experience fever, weakness, and a heart murmur. Treatment is antibiotics.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

23-4 What medical procedures are usually the cause of endocarditis?

Rheumatic Fever

Streptococcal infections, such as those caused by *S. pyogenes*, sometimes lead to **rheumatic fever**, which is generally considered an autoimmune complication. It occurs primarily in people ages 4 to 18 and often follows an episode of streptococcal sore throat. The disease is usually first expressed as a short period of arthritis and fever. Subcutaneous nodules at joints often accompany this stage (Figure 23.5). In about half of persons affected, an inflammation of the heart, probably from a misdirected immune reaction against streptococcal M protein, damages the valves. Reinfection with streptococci renews the immune attack. Damage to heart valves may be serious enough to result in eventual heart failure and death. People who have had an episode of rheumatic fever are at risk of renewed immunological damage with repeated streptococcal sore throats. The bacteria have remained sensitive to penicillin, and patients at particular risk, such as these, often receive a monthly preventive injection of long-acting penicillin G benzathine.

As many as 10% of people with rheumatic fever develop **Sydenham's chorea**, an unusual complication known in the Middle Ages as Saint Vitus' dance. Several months following an episode of rheumatic fever, the patient (much more likely to be a girl than a boy) exhibits purposeless, involuntary movements during waking hours. Occasionally, sedation is required to prevent self-injury from flailing arms and legs. The condition disappears after a few months.

Sepsis and infections of the heart are summarized in Diseases in Focus 23.1.

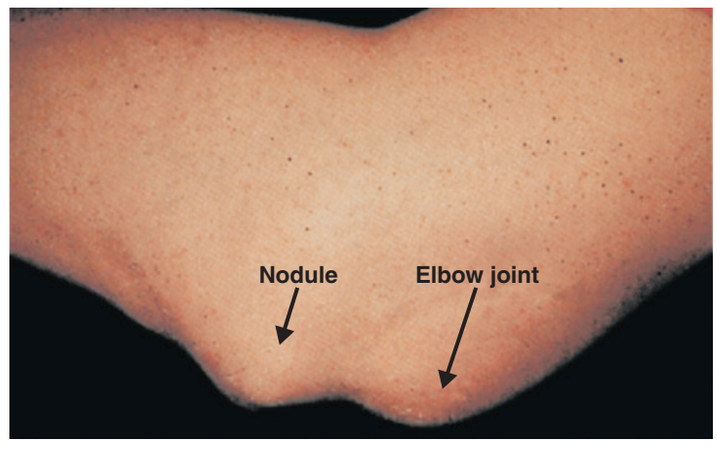


Figure 23.5 A nodule caused by rheumatic fever. Rheumatic fever was named, in part, because of the characteristic subcutaneous nodules that appear at the joints, as shown in this patient's elbow. Infection with group A beta-hemolytic streptococci sometimes leads to this autoimmune complication.

Q Is rheumatic fever a bacterial infection?

Tularemia

Tularemia is an example of a *zoonotic* disease, that is, a disease transmitted by contact with infected animals, in this case most commonly rabbits and rodents. The name derives from Tulare County, California, where the disease was originally observed in ground squirrels in 1911. The pathogen is *Francisella tularensis*, a small gram-negative intracellular bacillus. It can enter humans by several routes. The most common is penetration of the skin at a minor abrasion, where it creates an ulcer at the site. About a week after infection, the regional lymph nodes enlarge; many will contain pockets of pus. (See the **Clinical Focus** box.) The bacterium can multiply in macrophages—as much as a thousandfold. Mortality is normally less than 3%. If left untreated, the proliferation of *F. tularensis* can lead to sepsis and infection of multiple organs.

Almost 90% of cases in the United States are related to contact with rabbits, and the disease is often known locally as *rabbit fever*. Tularemia is also transmitted in some areas by ticks and deer flies and is known there as *deer fly fever*. Respiratory infection, usually by dust contaminated by urine or feces of infected animals, can cause an acute pneumonia with a mortality rate exceeding 30%. The infective dose is very small, and handling this organism requires biosafety level 3 procedures (see Chapter 6).

At one time, so few cases of tularemia (fewer than 200) were recorded annually in the United States that it was removed from the list of nationally notifiable diseases. However, concern that it might be used as a biological weapon has recently led to its reinstatement on the list. **Figure 23.6** illustrates the geographic distribution of tularemia within the United States.

The intracellular location of the bacterium is a problem in chemotherapy. Antibiotics such as streptomycin, administered for 10 to 15 days, are an effective treatment.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

23-5 What animals are the most common reservoir for tularemia?

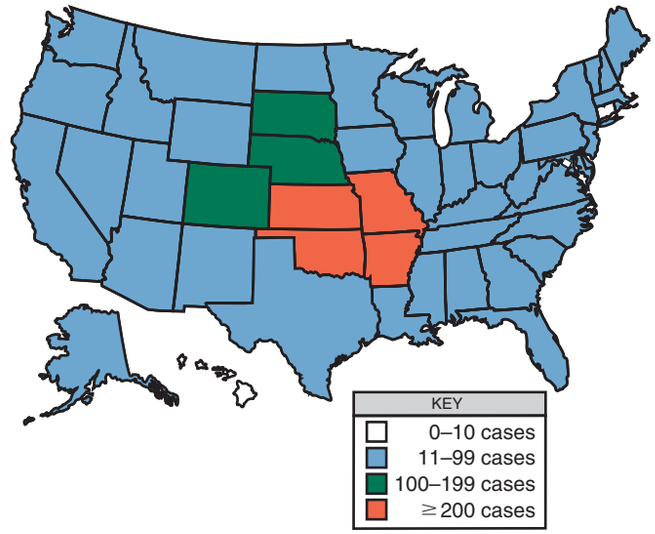


Figure 23.6 Tularemia cases in the United States (2010–2022). Tularemia occurred throughout the country, except Connecticut, Hawaii, and District of Columbia.

Source: CDC, June 2022.

Q What is the incidence in your state?

Brucellosis (Undulant Fever)

With over 500,000 new human cases annually, **brucellosis** is the world's most common bacterial zoonosis. It is endemic in the Mediterranean Basin, South and Central America, Eastern Europe, Asia, Africa, and the Middle East. It is also economically important as a disease of animals in the developing world. Human cases of brucellosis are usually not fatal, but the disease tends to persist in the reticuloendothelial system (see Chapter 16), where the bacteria evade the host's defenses; they are especially adept at evading phagocytic cells. This ability allows long-term survival and replication. The disease often becomes chronic and is capable of affecting any organ system.

Brucella bacteria are small, aerobic, oxidase-positive, gram-negative coccobacilli. During laboratory handling, they easily become airborne and are considered dangerous to handle. In fact, they are considered a potential agent of bioterrorism. Three species of *Brucella* bacteria are of greatest interest: *Brucella abortus* (broo-SEL-lah ah-BOR-tus) is found primarily in cattle but also infects elk, bison, and several other large mammals. *Brucella suis* (SOO-is) is a species mostly infecting domestic and feral swine. Abattoir (slaughterhouse) workers who come in contact with swine carcasses are at risk of brucellosis through skin cuts and aerosols. The most serious pathogen, and the cause of most human cases, is *Brucella melitensis* (mel-i-TEN-sis). This species is most commonly found in goats and sheep. *B. abortus* and *B. melitensis* are essentially eradicated in the United States. Sporadic cases in humans in the United States occur related to consumption of unpasteurized dairy products from countries where the disease is present.

The incubation period is usually 1 to 3 weeks but might be much longer. Symptoms of brucellosis have a wide spectrum, depending on the stage of the disease and the organs affected. Typically they include fever (often rising and falling, which has given the disease an alternative name of *undulant fever*), malaise, night sweats, and muscle aches. Although several serological tests are available, there is still a need for a definitive diagnostic test. The ultimate diagnostic proof is isolation of *Brucella* from the patient's blood or tissue. Because the disease is not common, diagnosis often must start with patient interviews that suggest a contact in endemic areas of the disease.

Antibiotic therapy is possible, and the bacteria have not shown development of resistance. However, treatment must be very long term, usually at least 6 weeks, and involves a combination of at least two antibiotics.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

✓ **23-6** How is brucellosis contracted?

Anthrax

In 1877, Robert Koch isolated *Bacillus anthracis*, the bacterium that causes **anthrax** in animals. The endospore-forming bacillus is a large, aerobic, gram-positive microorganism that is apparently able to grow slowly in soil types that meet specific moisture conditions. The endospores have survived in soil tests for up to 60 years. The disease strikes primarily grazing mammals, such as cattle and sheep. The *B. anthracis* endospores are ingested along with grasses, causing a fulminating, fatal sepsis.

The incidence of human anthrax is now rare in the United States. People at risk are those who handle animals, hides, wool, and other animal products imported from certain countries. (See the Clinical Case in Chapter 2.)

Infections by *B. anthracis* are initiated by endospores. Once introduced into the body, they are taken up by macrophages, where they germinate into vegetative cells. These are not killed, but multiply, eventually killing the macrophage. The released bacteria then enter the bloodstream, replicate rapidly, and secrete toxins.

The primary virulence factors of *B. anthracis* are two exotoxins. Both toxins share a third toxic component, a cell receptor–binding protein called the *protective antigen*, that binds the toxins to target cells and permits their entry. One toxin, the *edema toxin*, causes local edema (swelling) and interferes with phagocytosis by macrophages. The other toxin, *lethal toxin*, specifically targets and kills macrophages, which disables an essential defense of the host. Furthermore, the capsule of *B. anthracis* is very unusual. It is not a polysaccharide but rather is composed of D-glutamic acid (an amino acid), which for some reason does not stimulate a protective response by the immune system. Therefore, once the anthrax bacteria enter the bloodstream, they proliferate without any effective inhibition until there are tens of millions per milliliter. These immense populations of toxin-secreting bacteria ultimately kill the host.

Anthrax affects humans in three forms: cutaneous anthrax, gastrointestinal anthrax, and inhalational (pulmonary) anthrax.

Cutaneous anthrax results from contact with material containing anthrax endospores. Over 90% of naturally occurring cases of anthrax in humans are cutaneous; the endospore enters at some minor skin lesion. A papule appears and then eventually vesicles, which rupture and form a depressed, ulcerated area that is covered by a black eschar (scab) as shown in Figure 23.7. (The name *anthrax* is derived from the Greek word for coal.) In most cases the pathogen does not enter the bloodstream, and other symptoms are limited to a low-grade fever and malaise. However, if the bacteria enter the bloodstream, mortality without antibiotic treatment can reach 20%; with antibiotic therapy, mortality is usually less than 1%.

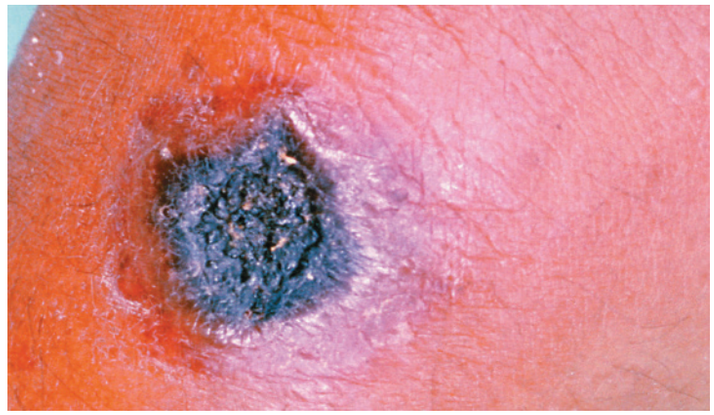


Figure 23.7 Anthrax lesion. The swelling and formation of a black scab that forms around the point of infection is a characteristic of cutaneous anthrax.

Q What are the other types of anthrax?

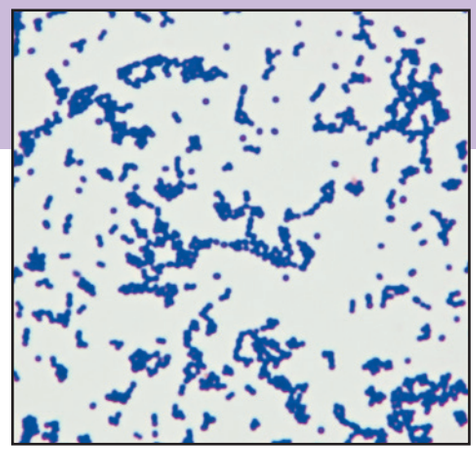
A relatively rare form of anthrax is **gastrointestinal anthrax** caused by ingestion of undercooked food containing anthrax endospores. Symptoms are nausea, abdominal pain, and bloody diarrhea. Ulcerative lesions occur in the digestive canal, ranging from the mouth and throat to, mainly, the intestines. Mortality is usually more than 50%.

The most dangerous form of anthrax in humans is **inhalational (pulmonary) anthrax**. Endospores inhaled into the lungs have a high probability of entering the bloodstream. Symptoms of the first few days of the infection are not especially alarming: mild fever, coughing, and some chest pain. Antibiotics can arrest the disease at this stage, but unless suspicion of anthrax is high, they are unlikely to be administered. As the bacteria enter the bloodstream and proliferate, the illness progresses in 2 or 3 days into septic shock that usually kills the patient within 24 to 36 hours. The mortality rate is exceptionally high, approaching 100%.

Antibiotics are effective in treating anthrax if they are administered in time. Currently recommended drugs are doxycycline or ciprofloxacin plus one or two additional agents that are known to be active against the pathogen. A recent development in the treatment of symptomatic inhalational anthrax is the use of raxibacumab, which inhibits the formation of toxin. This monoclonal antibody has proven to be effective in animal studies. People who have been exposed to anthrax endospores can be given preventive doses of antibiotics for a time as a precaution. This time period is usually quite long because experience has shown that up to 60 days can elapse before the inhaled endospores germinate and initiate active disease.

DISEASES IN FOCUS 23.1 Human-Reservoir Infections

Differential diagnosis is the process of identifying a disease by examining a patient and comparing the results to a list of possible diseases. A differential diagnosis is important for providing initial treatment and for laboratory testing. Microorganisms circulating in the blood may reflect a serious, uncontrolled infection. For example, a 27-year-old woman has a fever and cough for 5 days. She is hospitalized when her blood pressure drops. Despite aggressive treatment with fluids and massive doses of antibiotics, she dies 5 hours after hospitalization. Catalase-negative, gram-positive cocci are isolated from her blood. Use the following table to provide a differential diagnosis and identify infections that could cause these signs and symptoms.



Gram-positive cocci. LM 5 μm

Disease	Pathogen	Signs and Symptoms	Reservoir	Method of Transmission	Treatment
BACTERIAL DISEASES					
Septic Shock	Gram-negative bacteria,	Fever, chills, increased heart rate; lymphangitis	Human body	Injection; catheterization	Antibiotics
	Gram-positive enterococci, group B streptococci				Linezolid β-lactam, vancomycin
Puerperal Sepsis	*S. pyogenes*	Peritonitis; sepsis	Human nasopharynx	Nosocomial	Penicillin
Endocarditis Subacute Bacterial Acute Bacterial	Mostly alpha-hemolytic streptococci; *Staphylococcus aureus*	Fever, general weakness, heart murmur; damage to heart valves	Human nasopharynx	From focal infection	Antibiotics
Pericarditis	*S. pyogenes*	Fever; general weakness; heart murmur	Human nasopharynx	From focal infection	Antibiotics
Rheumatic Fever	Group A beta-hemolytic streptococci	Arthritis, fever; damage to heart valves	Immune reactions to streptococcal infections	Not transmissible	Supportive. Prevention: penicillin to treat streptococcal sore throats
VIRAL DISEASES					
Burkitt's Lymphoma	*Lymphocryptovirus human gammaherpesvirus 4* (HHV-4)	Tumor	Unknown	Unknown	Surgery
Infectious Mononucleosis	*Lymphocryptovirus human gammaherpesvirus 4* (HHV-4)	Fever, general weakness	Humans	Saliva	None
Cytomegalovirus	*Cytomegalovirus human betaherpesvirus 5* (HHV-5)	Mostly asymptomatic; initial infection acquired during pregnancy can be damaging to fetus	Humans	Body fluids	Ganciclovir, fomivirsen
FUNGAL DISEASE					
Fungal sepsis	*Candida auris*	Persistent fever and chills	Humans	Fomites; skin	Echinocandins
UNKNOWN ETIOLOGY					
Kawasaki Syndrome	Unknown	Fever, rash, coronary artery abnormalities	Unknown	Unknown	None

CLINICAL FOCUS A Sick Child

As you read through this problem, you will encounter questions that primary health care providers ask themselves as they solve a clinical problem. Try to answer each question as a health care provider.

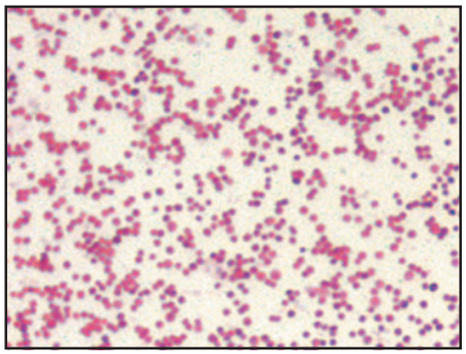
1. On February 15, Maggie, a 12-year-old girl, is seen by her pediatrician for fever, malaise, painful left underarm lymph node, and skin sloughing off her left ring finger. Amoxicillin is prescribed.
   What diseases are possible?
2. Intermittent fever and enlarged lymph node persist for 49 days. Maggie then undergoes excisional biopsy of the left axillary lymph node. The excised tissue is cultured; a Gram stain of the bacteria that grew is shown in the figure.
   What additional tests would you do?
3. Serological tests revealed the following results:

Pathogen	Antibody Titer
Bartonella	0
Ehrlichia	0
Francisella	4,096
Cytomegalovirus	0
Toxoplasma gondii	0

Maggie improves after treatment with streptomycin.
What is the cause of the infection? What do you need to know?

4. PCR is used to confirm identification of *F. tularensis*. Maggie liked to play with her cat, often cuddling with the animal. Between January 2 and February 8, the cat bit Maggie on the lip as she kissed the cat.
   Where will you look for the source of the infection?
5. Maggie's cat is an indoor/outdoor cat. The cat frequently leaves dead mice at Maggie's front door. Cats can acquire tularemia through contact with an infected animal. Tularemia in cats can range from nonclinical infection to mild illness with fever to anorexia and death. However, even cats with no clinical illness can transmit tularemia.
   What is the most likely source of infection?
6. Domestic cats are very susceptible to tularemia and have been known to transmit the bacteria to humans. In one survey, 12% of the domestic cats examined had antibodies to *F. tularensis*. In a Nebraska survey, nearly half of the *F. tularensis* isolates were from cats. The significance of feline *F. tularensis* transmission to humans is unknown and may be underrecognized. Care should be taken when handling any sick or dead animal.

   Identifying the organism is important because it is often resistant to antibiotics commonly used for skin and systemic infections and because it is a potential agent of biological terrorism.



Gram-stained bacteria cultured from lymph node. LM 2 μm

For recent data on tularemia, see www.cdc.gov/tularemia/

Vaccination of livestock against anthrax is a standard procedure in endemic areas. A single dose of an effective live, attenuated vaccine is used, which is considered unsafe for use in humans. The only vaccine currently approved for use in humans contains an inactivated form of the protective antigen toxin and is designed to prevent entry of the other two toxins into the host's cells. This vaccine requires a series of five injections over a period of 18 months, followed by annual boosters. Three doses of the vaccine over 4 weeks, along with antibiotic treatment, are recommended for people who have been exposed to *B. anthracis*.

Diagnosis of anthrax has usually consisted of isolating and identifying *B. anthracis* from a clinical specimen—which is too slow for detecting bioterrorism outbreaks. A blood test can detect both inhalational and cutaneous cases of anthrax within an hour. Furthermore, locations such as a few mail-sorting facilities are being equipped with automated electronic sensors that can immediately detect anthrax spores.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **23-7** How do animals such as cattle become victims of anthrax?

Gangrene

If a wound causes the blood supply to be interrupted, a condition known as **ischemia**, the wound becomes anaerobic. Ischemia leads to **necrosis**, or tissue death. The death of soft tissue resulting from the loss of blood supply is called **gangrene** (Figure 23.8). These conditions can also occur as a complication of diabetes.

Substances released from dying and dead cells provide nutrients for many bacteria. Various species of the genus *Clostridium*, which are gram-positive, endospore-forming anaerobes widely

Figure 23.8 The toes of a patient with gangrene. This disease is caused by *C. perfringens* and other clostridia. The black, necrotic tissue, resulting from poor circulation or injury, furnishes anaerobic growth conditions for the bacteria, which then progressively destroy adjoining tissue.

Q How can gangrene be prevented?

found in soil and in the intestinal tracts of humans and domesticated animals, grow readily in such conditions. *C. perfringens* is the species most commonly involved in gangrene, but other clostridia and several other bacteria can also grow in such wounds.

Once ischemia and the subsequent necrosis caused by impaired blood supply have developed, **gas gangrene** can develop, especially in muscle tissue. As the *C. perfringens* microorganisms grow, they ferment carbohydrates in the tissue and produce gases (carbon dioxide and hydrogen) that swell the tissue. The bacteria produce toxins that move along muscle bundles, killing cells and producing necrotic tissue that is favorable for further bacterial growth. Eventually, these toxins and bacteria enter the bloodstream and cause systemic illness. Enzymes produced by the bacteria degrade collagen and proteinaceous tissue, facilitating the spread of the disease. Without treatment, the condition is fatal.

Gas gangrene can also result from improperly performed abortions. *C. perfringens*, which is estimated to reside in the genital tract of about 5% of all females, can infect the uterine wall and lead to gas gangrene, resulting in a life-threatening bloodstream infection.

The surgical removal of necrotic tissue and amputation are the most common medical treatments for gas gangrene. When gas gangrene occurs in such regions as the abdominal cavity or the reproductive tract, the patient can be treated in a **hyperbaric chamber**, which contains a pressurized oxygen-rich atmosphere. The oxygen saturates the infected tissues and thereby prevents the growth of the obligately anaerobic clostridia. Small chambers are available that can accommodate a gangrenous limb. The prompt cleaning of serious wounds and precautionary treatment with penicillin are the most effective steps in preventing gas gangrene.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

23-8 Why are hyperbaric chambers effective in treating gas gangrene?

Systemic Diseases Caused by Bites and Scratches

Animal bites can result in serious infections. About 4.4 million animal bites occur in the United States annually, accounting for about 1% of visits to the emergency rooms in hospitals.

Dog bites make up at least 80% of reported bite incidents; cat bites, only about 10%. Cat bites are, however, more penetrating, resulting in a higher infection rate (30–50%) than the bites of dogs (15–20%). Domestic animals often harbor *Pasteurella multocida* (pas-tyer-EL-lah mul-tō-SID-ah), a facultatively anaerobic gram-negative rod similar to the *Yersinia* bacterium that causes plague. *P. multocida* is primarily a pathogen of animals, and it causes sepsis (hence the name *multocida*, meaning many-killing).

Humans infected with *P. multocida* have varied responses. For example, local infections with severe swelling and pain can develop at the site of the wound. Forms of pneumonia and sepsis may develop and are life-threatening. Penicillin and tetracycline are usually effective in treating these infections.

In addition to *P. multocida*, an assortment of anaerobic bacterial species are often found in infected animal bites, as well as species of *Staphylococcus*, *Streptococcus*, and *Corynebacterium*. Bites by humans, mostly as a result of fighting, are also prone to serious infections. In fact, before antibiotic therapy became available, nearly 20% of victims of human bites on extremities required amputation—currently only about 5% of cases require it.

Cat-Scratch Disease

Cat-scratch disease, although it receives little attention, is surprisingly common. An estimated 22,000 or more cases occur annually in the United States, many more than the well-known Lyme disease. People who own or are closely exposed to cats are at risk. The pathogen is an aerobic, gram-negative bacterium, *Bartonella henselae* (bar-ton-EL-lah HEN-sel-ī). Microscopy shows that the bacterium can inhabit the interior of some cat red blood cells. It is connected to the exterior of the cell and to the surrounding extracellular fluid by a pore (Figure 23.9). Resident there, the bacteria cause a persistent bacteremia in cats; it is estimated that as many as 40% of domestic and feral (wild) cats carry these bacteria in their blood. The disease is transmitted to humans when an infected cat licks a person's open wound, or bites or scratches a person hard enough to break the surface of the skin. Cats are infected by flea bites or by ingesting flea feces. *B. henselae* multiplies in the digestive system of the cat flea and survives for several days in flea feces.

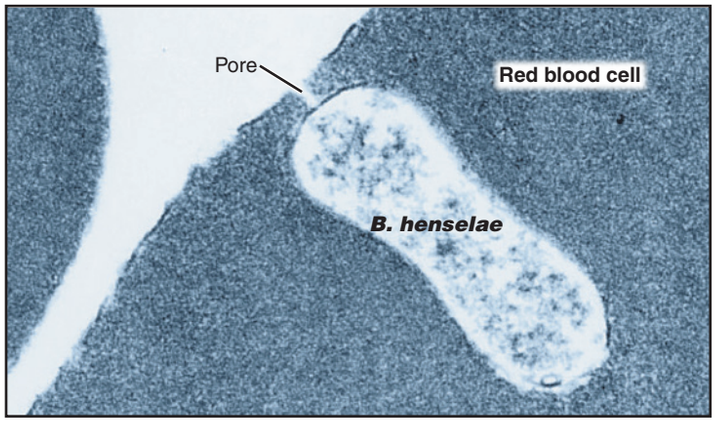


Figure 23.9 Electron micrograph showing the location of *Bartonella henselae* within a red blood cell. Only a pore connects the bacterium with the extracellular fluid.

Q Why can *B. henselae* infection persist in cats?

The initial sign is a papule at the infection site, which appears 3 to 14 days after exposure. Swelling of the lymph nodes and usually malaise and fever follow in a couple of weeks. Cat-scratch disease is ordinarily self-limiting, with a duration of a few weeks, but in severe cases antibiotic therapy may be effective.

Rat-Bite Fever

In the United States, about 20,000 rat bites occur annually—and a bite may cause the disease **rat-bite fever**. At one time, the victims of rat bites were small children in substandard housing. Today, rats are popular as laboratory study animals and even as pets; potential patients are now often laboratory technicians who handle rats as well as pet owners and pet store workers. Although about half of both wild and laboratory rats are known to carry the bacterial pathogens, only a minority of rat bites (about 10%) result in disease.

There are two similar but distinct diseases. In North America the more common disease, called *streptobacillary rat-bite fever*, is caused by *Streptobacillus moniliformis* (when the pathogen is ingested, the disease is termed *Haverhill fever*). This is a filamentous, microaerophilic, gram-negative, highly pleomorphic, fastidious bacterium that is difficult to culture, although isolation in culture is the best diagnostic method. The symptoms are initially fever, chills, and muscle and joint pain, followed in a few days by a rash on the extremities. Occasionally there are more serious complications; if untreated, mortality is around 10%.

The other bacterial pathogen causing rat-bite fever is *Spirillum minus*. In this case, the disease is called *spirillar fever*; in Asia, where most cases occur, it is known as *sodoku*. It is more likely to occur in bites by wild rodents. The symptoms are similar to those of streptobacillary rat-bite fever. Because the pathogen cannot be cultured, diagnosis is made by microscopic observation of the gram-negative, spiral-shaped bacterium. Treatment by penicillin is usually effective for both forms of rat-bite fever.

Cardiovascular infections transmitted to humans by contact with other animals are summarized in **Diseases in Focus 23.2**.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

23-9 *B. henselae*, the pathogen of cat-scratch disease, is capable of growth in what insect?

Vector-Transmitted Diseases

Vector-borne diseases of the cardiovascular system are summarized in **Diseases in Focus 23.3**. See the **Big Picture** box on how climate change is impacting the vector for chikungunya, a disease discussed later in the chapter.

Plague

Few diseases have affected human history more dramatically than **plague**, known in the Middle Ages as the Black Death. This term comes from one of its characteristics, the dark blue areas of skin caused by hemorrhages.

The disease is caused by a facultatively anaerobic gram-negative, rod-shaped bacterium, *Yersinia pestis*. Normally a disease of rats, plague is transmitted from one rat to another by the rat flea, *Xenopsylla cheopis* (zē-NOP-sil-lah chē-Ō-pis) (see Figure 12.32b). In the far West and Southwest, the disease is endemic in wild rodents, especially ground squirrels and prairie dogs.

If its host dies, the flea seeks a replacement host, which may be another rodent or a human. It can jump about 9 cm. A plague-infected flea is hungry for a meal because the growth of the bacteria forms a biofilm that blocks the flea's digestive tract, and the blood the flea ingests is quickly regurgitated. An arthropod vector is not always necessary for plague transmission. Contact from the skinning of infected animals; scratches, bites, and licks by domestic cats; and similar incidents have been reported to cause infection.

In the United States, exposure to plague is increasing, as residential areas encroach on areas with infected animals. In parts of the world where human proximity to rats is common, infection from this source still prevails.

From the flea bite, bacteria enter the human's bloodstream and proliferate in the lymph and blood. One factor in the virulence of the plague bacterium is its ability to survive and proliferate inside phagocytic cells rather than being destroyed by them. An increased number of highly virulent organisms eventually emerges, and an overwhelming infection results. The lymph nodes in the groin and armpit become enlarged, and fever develops as the body's defenses react to the infection. Such swellings, called *buboes*, account for the name **bubonic plague**. This is the most common form, comprising 80–95% of cases today. The mortality rate of untreated bubonic plague is 50–75%. Death, if it occurs, is usually within less than a week after the appearance of symptoms.

DISEASES IN FOCUS 23.2 Infections from Animal Reservoirs Transmitted by Direct Contact

The following diseases should be included in the differential diagnosis of patients with exposure to animals. A 10-year-old girl is admitted to a local hospital after having a fever (40°C) for 12 days and back pain for 8 days. Bacteria cannot be cultured from tissues. She has a recent history of dog and cat scratches. She recovers without treatment. Use the following table to make a differential diagnosis and identify infections that could cause these symptoms.

The patient's infected scratch.

Disease	Pathogen	Signs and Symptoms	Reservoir	Method of Transmission	Treatment
BACTERIAL DISEASES					
Tularemia	*Francisella tularensis*	Local infection; pneumonia	Rabbits; rodents	Direct contact with infected animals, deer fly bite; inhalation	Streptomycin, doxycycline
Brucellosis	*Brucella* spp.	Local abscess; undulating fever	Grazing mammals	Direct contact	Tetracycline, streptomycin
Anthrax	*Bacillus anthracis*	Papule (cutaneous); bloody diarrhea (gastrointestinal); septic shock (inhalational)	Soil; large grazing mammals	Direct contact; ingestion; inhalation	Doxycycline, ciprofloxacin
Animal Bites	*Pseudomonas multocida*	Local infection; sepsis	Animal mouths	Dog/cat bites	Penicillin
Rat-Bite Fever	*Streptobacillus moniliformis, Spirillum minus*	Sepsis	Rats	Rat bites	Penicillin
Cat-Scratch Disease	*Bartonella henselae*	Prolonged fever	Domestic cats	Cat bites or scratches, fleas	Antibiotics
PROTOZOAN DISEASE					
Toxoplasmosis	*Toxoplasma gondii*	Mild disease; initial infection acquired during pregnancy can be damaging to fetus; serious illness in AIDS patients	Domestic cats	Ingestion	Pyrimethamine, sulfadiazine, and folinic acid

A particularly dangerous condition called **septicemic plague** arises when the bacteria enter the blood and proliferate, and cause bleeding into the skin and other organs (Figure 23.10) and septic shock. Eventually, the blood carries the bacteria to the lungs, and a form of the disease called **pneumonic plague** results. The mortality rate for this type of plague is nearly 100%. Even today, this disease can rarely be controlled if it isn't recognized within 12 to 15 hours of the onset of fever. People can become infected from inhaling respiratory droplets after close contact with domestic cats and humans with pneumonic plague.

Europe was ravaged by repeated pandemics of plague; from the years 542 to 767, outbreaks occurred repeatedly in cycles of a few years. After a lapse of centuries, the disease reappeared in devastating form in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. It is estimated to have killed more than 25% of the population, resulting in lasting effects on the social and economic structure of Europe. A nineteenth-century pandemic primarily affected Asiatic countries; 12 million are estimated to have died in India. Several outbreaks have occurred in Madagascar in the twenty-first century. In 2017, 1300 cases were reported in one

Figure 23.10 A case of bubonic plague. Bubonic plague is caused by infection with *Y. pestis*. This photograph shows the characteristic black fingers caused by hemorrhaging under the skin. This led to the name "Black Death" in the fourteenth century.

Q In what two ways is plague transmitted?

week; transmission was mostly human-to-human. The last major rat-associated urban outbreak in the United States occurred in Los Angeles in 1924 and 1925.

Plague is established in the ground squirrel and prairie dog communities in the western states (Figure 23.11). About seven cases are reported annually, most resulting from flea bites. In 2014, at least four cases of pneumonic plague were acquired from a dog with the disease.

Plague has been most commonly diagnosed by isolating the bacterium and then sending it to a laboratory for identification. A rapid diagnostic test, however, can reliably detect the presence of the capsular antigen of *Y. pestis* in blood and other fluids of patients within 15 minutes even under remote field conditions. People exposed to infection can be given prophylactic antibiotic protection. A number of antibiotics, including gentamicin and fluoroquinolones, are effective. Recovery from the disease confers reliable immunity. A vaccine is available for people likely to come into contact with infected fleas during field operations or for laboratory workers exposed to the pathogen.

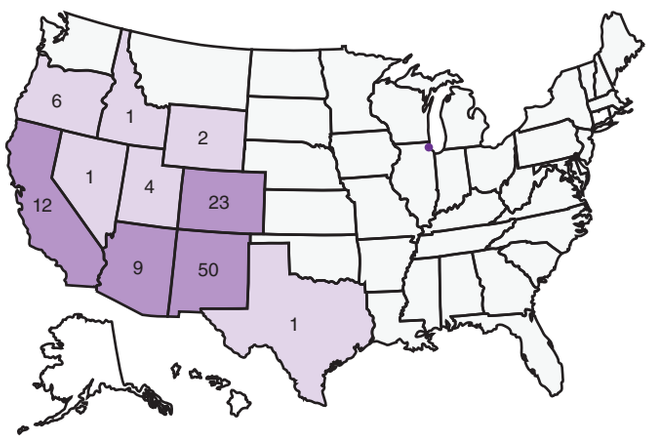


Figure 23.11 The U.S. geographic distribution of human plague, 2000–2021. In recent decades, an average of seven human plague cases have been reported annually. The single Illinois case was acquired in 2009 from a laboratory.

Source: CDC, 2022.

Q What area reporting plague is closest to you?

Relapsing Fever

Except for the species that causes Lyme disease (discussed later), all members of the spirochete genus *Borrelia* cause **relapsing fever**. In the United States, the disease is transmitted by soft ticks that feed on rodents. The disease occurs mostly in the western states. The incidence of relapsing fever increases during the summer months, when the activity of rodents and arthropods increases.

The disease is characterized by fever, sometimes in excess of 40.5°C, jaundice, and rose-colored skin spots. After 3 to 5 days, the fever subsides. Three or four relapses may occur, each shorter and less severe than the initial fever. Each recurrence is caused by a different antigenic type of the spirochete, which evades existing immunity. Diagnosis is made by observing the bacteria in the patient's blood, which is unusual for a spirochete disease. Tetracycline is effective for treatment.

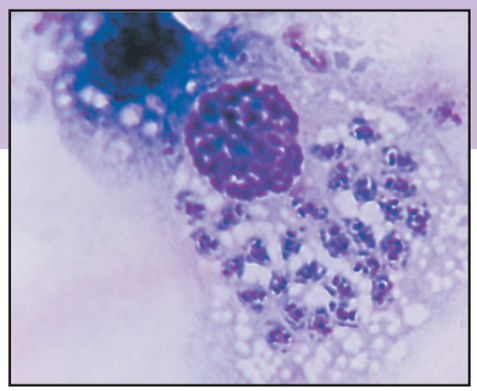
Lyme Disease (Lyme Borreliosis)

In 1975, a cluster of disease cases in young people that was first diagnosed as rheumatoid arthritis was reported near the city of Lyme, Connecticut. **Lyme disease** is now the most common vector-borne disease in the United States. The seasonal occurrence (summer months), lack of contagiousness among family members, and descriptions of an unusual skin rash that appeared several weeks before the first symptoms suggested a tickborne disease. In 1983, a spirochete that was named *Borreliella burgdorferi* was identified as the cause. In 2020, species that cause Lyme disease were placed in the genus *Borreliella* (bor-rē-lē-EL-lah) and those that cause relapsing fever were placed in *Borrelia*. In 2016, another causative bacterium, *Borreliella mayonii* (mā-YŌ-nē-ē), was discovered. In Europe and Asia, Lyme disease is usually known as **Lyme borreliosis**. Tens of thousands of cases are reported annually. In the United States, Lyme disease is most prevalent on the Atlantic coast (Figure 23.12).

Field mice are the most important animal reservoir. The nymphal stage of the tick feeds on infected mice and is the most likely to infect humans, even though adult ticks are about twice as likely to carry the bacterial pathogen. This is because nymphal ticks are small and less likely to be noticed before the infection is transmitted. Deer are important in maintaining the

DISEASES IN FOCUS 23.3 Infections Transmitted by Vectors

The following diseases should be considered in the differential diagnosis of patients with a history of tick and insect bites or who have traveled to endemic countries. These diseases are all prevented by controlling exposure to insect and tick bites. A 22-year-old soldier returning from a tour of duty in Iraq has three painless skin ulcers. She reports being bitten by insects every night. Ovoid, protozoa-like bodies are observed within her macrophages by examination with a light microscope. Use the following table to make a differential diagnosis and identify infections that could cause these symptoms.



A macrophage almost entirely filled with ovoid cells. LM 5 μm

Disease	Pathogen	Signs and Symptoms	Reservoir	Method of Transmission	Treatment
BACTERIAL DISEASES					
Plague	*Yersinia pestis*	Enlarged lymph nodes; septic shock	Rodents	*Xenopsylla cheopis* flea; inhalation	Gentamicin, fluoroquinolones
Relapsing Fever	*Borrelia* spp.	Series of fever peaks	Rodents	Soft ticks	Tetracycline
Lyme Disease	*Borreliella burgdorferi; Borrelia mayonii*	Bull's-eye rash; neurologic symptoms	Field mice	*Ixodes* ticks	Doxycycline, amoxicillin
Ehrlichiosis and Anaplasmosis	*Ehrlichia* spp. *Anaplasma* spp.	Flulike	Deer	*Ixodes scapularis* tick	Tetracycline
Typhus Fever	*Rickettsia prowazekii*	High fever, stupor, rash	Squirrels	*Pediculus humanus corporis* louse	Tetracycline, chloramphenicol
Endemic Murine Typhus	*Rickettsia typhi*	Fever; rash	Rodents	*Xenopsylla cheopis* flea	Tetracycline, chloramphenicol
Spotted Fever Rickettsiosis	*Rickettsia* spp.	Macular rash; fever; headache	Ticks; small mammals	*Dermacentor* ticks *Amblyomma maculatum* tick *Liponyssoides sanguineus* mite	Doxycycline
VIRAL DISEASE					
Chikungunya	*Alphavirus Chikungunya virus*	Fever, joint pain	Humans	*Aedes mosquito*	Supportive
PROTOZOAN DISEASES					
Chagas Disease (American Trypanosomiasis)	*Trypanosoma cruzi*	Damage to heart muscle or peristaltic movement of digestive canal	Rodents, opossums	*Triatoma* insect	*Nifurtimox*
Malaria	*Plasmodium* spp.	Fever and chills at intervals	Humans	*Anopheles* mosquito	Atesunate, artemether
Leishmaniasis	*Leishmania* spp.	*L. donovani:* systemic disease; *L. tropica:* skin sores; *L. braziliensis:* disfiguring damage to mucous membranes	Small mammals	Sandfly	Amphotericin B, paromomycin, meglumine antimoniate
Babesiosis	*Babesia microti*	Fever and chills at intervals	Rodents	*Ixodes* ticks	Atovaquone and azithromycin

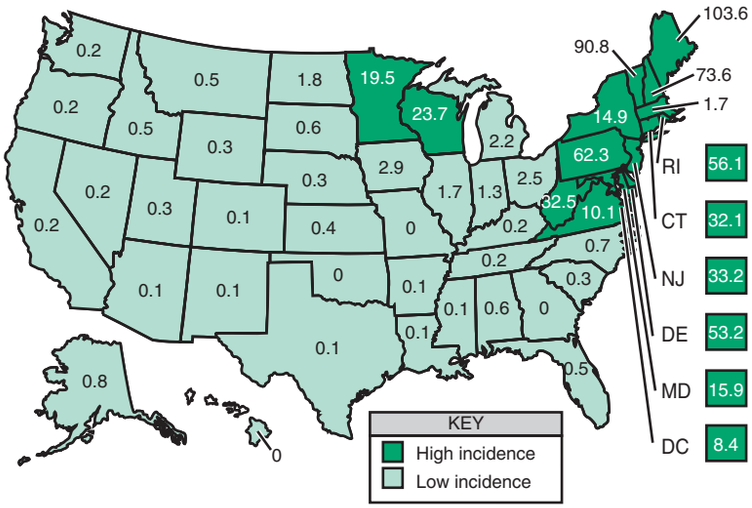


Figure 23.12 Lyme disease in the United States, three-year averages 2017–2019. High incidence ≥ 10 cases/100,000 of the population for 3 years.

Source: CDC, 2022.

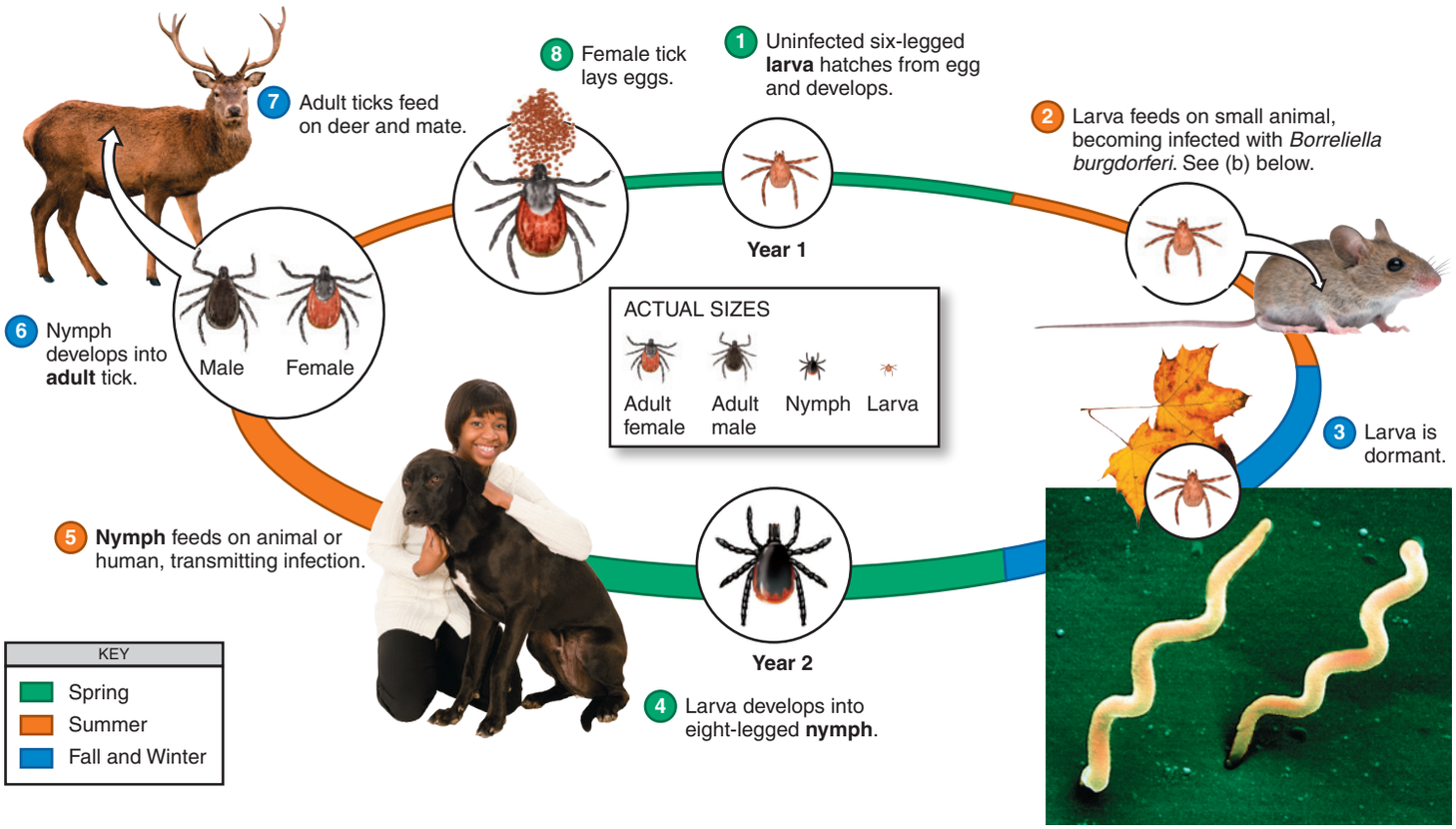
Q What factors are responsible for the geographic distribution of Lyme disease?

disease because the ticks feed and mate on them. They are a dead-end host and do not become infected. Although their blood may contain a few of the pathogens, they are much less likely than mice to carry nymphs or to infect the nymphs.

The tick (one of two *Ixodes* species) feeds three times during its life cycle (**Figure 23.13a**). The first and second feedings, as a larva and then as a nymph, are usually on a field mouse. The third feeding, as an adult, is usually on a deer. These feedings are separated by several months, and the ability of the spirochete to remain viable in the disease-tolerant field mice is crucial to maintaining the disease in the wild.

On humans, the ticks usually attach from a perch on shrubs or grass. They do not feed for about 24 hours, and it usually requires 2 or 3 days of attachment before transfer of bacteria and infection occur. Probably only about 1% of tick bites result in Lyme disease.

On the Pacific coast, the tick that transmits Lyme disease is the western black-legged tick *Ixodes pacificus* (IKS-ō-des pah-SI-fi-kus) (see also Figure 12.31b). In the rest of the country, *Ixodes scapularis* (skap-ū-LAR-is) is most often responsible. This latter tick is so small that it is often missed. On the Atlantic coast,



(a) The tick, *Ixodes scapularis*, has a 2-year life cycle in which it requires three blood meals. The tick is infected by its first blood meal and can pass on the infection to a human in its second.

(b) The cause of Lyme disease, *Borreliella burgdorferi*

Figure 23.13 The life cycle of the tick vector of Lyme disease.

Q What other diseases are transmitted by ticks?

almost all *Ixodes* ticks carry the spirochete (Figure 23.13b); on the Pacific coast, few are infected because that tick feeds on lizards that do not carry the spirochete effectively.

The first symptom of Lyme disease is usually a rash that appears at the bite site. It is a red area that clears in the center as it expands to a final diameter of about 15 cm (**Figure 23.14**). This distinctive rash occurs in about 75% of cases. Flulike symptoms appear in a couple of weeks as the rash fades. Antibiotics taken during this interval are very effective in limiting the disease.

During a second phase, in the absence of effective treatment, there is often evidence that the heart is affected. The heartbeat may become so irregular that a pacemaker is required. Incapacitating, chronic neurological symptoms, such as facial paralysis, oppressive fatigue, and memory loss may be present. Some cases result in meningitis and encephalitis. In a third phase, months or years later, some patients develop arthritis that may affect them for years. Immune responses to the presence of the bacteria are probably the cause of this joint damage. A vaccine is available for veterinary use in dogs. Natural immunity to reinfection appears to be variable. For example, patients who have progressed to the stage of Lyme arthritis appear to have considerable immunity against reinfection, whereas patients at the earlier stages of the disease do not.

Diagnosis of Lyme disease depends partly on the symptoms and an index of suspicion based on the prevalence in the geographic area. Physicians are cautioned that serological tests must be interpreted in conjunction with clinical symptoms and the likelihood of exposure to infection. Serological tests are challenging to interpret, and following a positive initial ELISA or indirect fluorescent-antibody (FA) test, confirmation should be attempted with a Western blot test (Chapter 18). Also, after effective antibiotic treatment eliminates the bacteria, antibodies—even IgM antibodies—often persist for years and may confuse later attempts at diagnosis.

Several antibiotics are effective in treating the disease, although in the later stages, large amounts and very extended administration times may be needed.

A similar rash and flu-like symptoms result from the bite of the lone star tick, *Amblyomma americanum*. The cause of these symptoms is unknown: The condition has been named southern tick-associated rash illness (STARI). STARI does not lead to arthritis or neurological or chronic symptoms. It is treated with doxycycline.

Figure 23.14 The bull's-eye rash of Lyme disease. The rash is not always this obvious.

Q What symptoms occur once the rash fades?

Ehrlichiosis and Anaplasmosis

Human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis (HME) is caused by *Ehrlichia chafeensis* (er-LIK-ē-ah chaf-FĒ-en-sis). This is an aerobic gram-negative, rickettsia-like, obligately intracellular bacterium. Aggregates of bacteria—called *morulae*, the Latin word for mulberry—form within the cytoplasm of monocytes. *E. chafeensis* was first observed in a human case in 1986; previously it had been considered a solely veterinary pathogen. HME is a tickborne disease; as with STARI, the usual vector is the lone star tick. Cases occasionally occur where this tick is not found, however, so there may be other vectors. The white-tailed deer is the main animal reservoir, but it does not show signs of illness.

A similar tickborne disease, **human granulocytic anaplasmosis (HGA)**, was formerly called *human granulocytic ehrlichiosis*. The change occurred when the causative organism, an obligate intracellular bacterium formerly grouped with the ehrlichia, was renamed *Anaplasma phagocytophilum* (an-ah-PLAZ-mah fag'ō-si-TAH-fi-lum). The tick vector is *Ixodes scapularis*, the same species of vector as Lyme disease and babesiosis.

The symptoms of these diseases are identical, and HGA was identified only when a case occurred in Wisconsin, where the lone star tick was unknown. Patients develop a flulike disease with high fever and headache; the fatality rate is less than 5%. The diseases probably occur with a frequency much higher than reported. Cases of HME and HGA are both widespread and sometimes geographically overlap. Once either disease is suspected (often from detection of morulae in blood smears), diagnosis is usually by the indirect FA test for HME and a PCR test for HGA. Therapy with antibiotics such as doxycycline is usually effective.

Rickettsial Diseases

The various typhus diseases are caused by rickettsias, aerobic, gram-negative bacteria that are obligate intracellular parasites of eukaryotes. Rickettsias, which are spread by arthropod

vectors, infect mostly the endothelial cells of the vascular system and multiply within them. The resulting inflammation causes local blockage and rupture of the small blood vessels.

Typhus Fever (Epidemic Louse-Borne Typhus) Typhus fever is caused by *Rickettsia prowazekii* and is carried by the human body louse *Pediculus humanus corporis* (pe-DIK-ū-lus hū-MAN-us KOR-por-is) (see Figure 12.32a). The pathogen grows in the midgut of the louse and is excreted by it. It is transmitted when the feces of the louse are rubbed into the wound when the bitten host scratches the bite. The disease flourishes in crowded and unsanitary surroundings, where lice can transfer readily from an infected host to a new host. Although a rare disease in the United States, several cases have occurred in the eastern states from contact with flying squirrels or their nests. Anne Frank, the teenaged writer of the famed World War II diary, died of typhus contracted in concentration camp conditions.

Typhus fever produces a high and prolonged fever that lasts at least 2 weeks. Stupor and a rash of small red spots caused by subcutaneous hemorrhaging are characteristic, as the rickettsias invade blood vessel linings. Mortality rates are very high when the disease is untreated.

Tetracycline and chloramphenicol are usually effective against typhus fever, but eliminating conditions in which the disease flourishes is more important. The microbe is considered especially hazardous, and attempts to culture it require extreme care. Vaccines are available for military populations, which historically have been highly susceptible to the disease.

Endemic Murine Typhus Transmitted by the rat flea *Xenopsylla cheopis* (see Figure 12.32b), **endemic murine typhus** occurs sporadically rather than in epidemics. The term *murine* (derived from Latin for mouse) refers to the fact that rodents, such as rats and squirrels, are the common hosts for this type of typhus. The pathogen responsible for the disease is *Rickettsia typhi*, a common inhabitant of rats. With a mortality rate of less than 5%, the disease is considerably less severe than typhus fever. Except for the reduced severity of the disease, endemic murine typhus is clinically indistinguishable from typhus fever. Tetracycline and chloramphenicol are effective treatments for endemic murine typhus, and rat control is the best preventive measure.

Spotted Fever Rickettsiosis Tickborne typhus, or **Rocky Mountain spotted fever (RMSF)**, is probably the best-known rickettsial disease in the United States. It is caused by *Rickettsia rickettsii*.

RMSF was first recognized in the Rocky Mountain area, but despite its name, it is most common in the southeastern states and Appalachia (Figure 23.15). This rickettsia is a parasite of ticks and is usually passed from one generation of ticks to another through their eggs, a mechanism called *transovarian passage* (Figure 23.16). Surveys show that in endemic areas, perhaps 1 out of every 1000 ticks is infected. In different parts of the United States, different ticks are involved—in the west, the wood tick *Dermacentor andersoni* (der-mah-SEN-ter AN-der-son-ē); in the east, the dog tick *Dermacentor variabilis* (VAR-ē-ah-bi-lis).

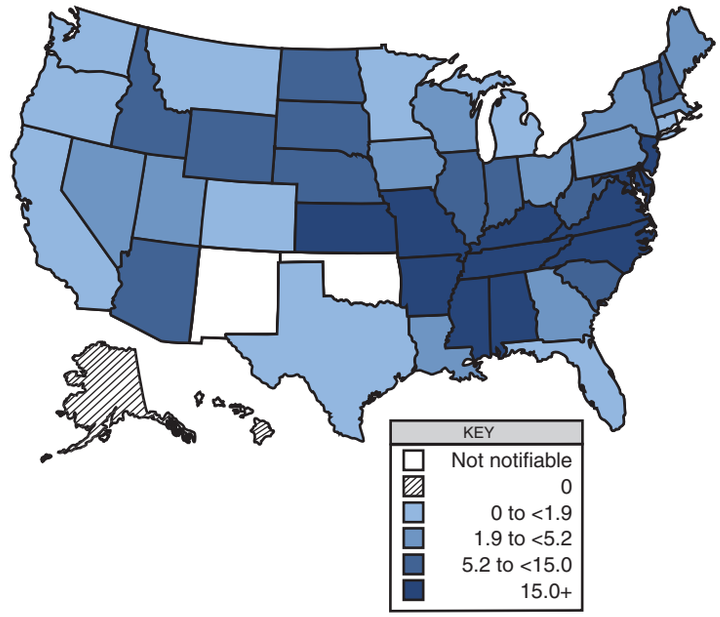


Figure 23.15 Incidence of spotted fever rickettsiosis per million people, 2019.

Source: CDC, 2022.

Q Geographically, is this a disease of rural or urban areas?

About a week after the tick bites, a macular rash develops that is sometimes mistaken for measles (Figure 23.17); however, it often appears on palms and soles, where viral rashes do not occur. The rash is accompanied by fever and headache. Death, which occurs in about 3% of the approximately 4000 cases reported each year, is usually caused by kidney and heart failure.

Serological tests don't become positive until late in the illness. Diagnosis before the typical rash appears is difficult because symptoms vary widely. Also, on dark-skinned individuals, the rash is difficult to see. A misdiagnosis can be costly; if treatment is not prompt and correct, the mortality rate is about 20%.

Doxycycline is very effective if administered early enough. No vaccine is available.

Cases of RMSF are reported to the CDC under a new category called *Spotted Fever Rickettsioses*, along with *R. parkeri*

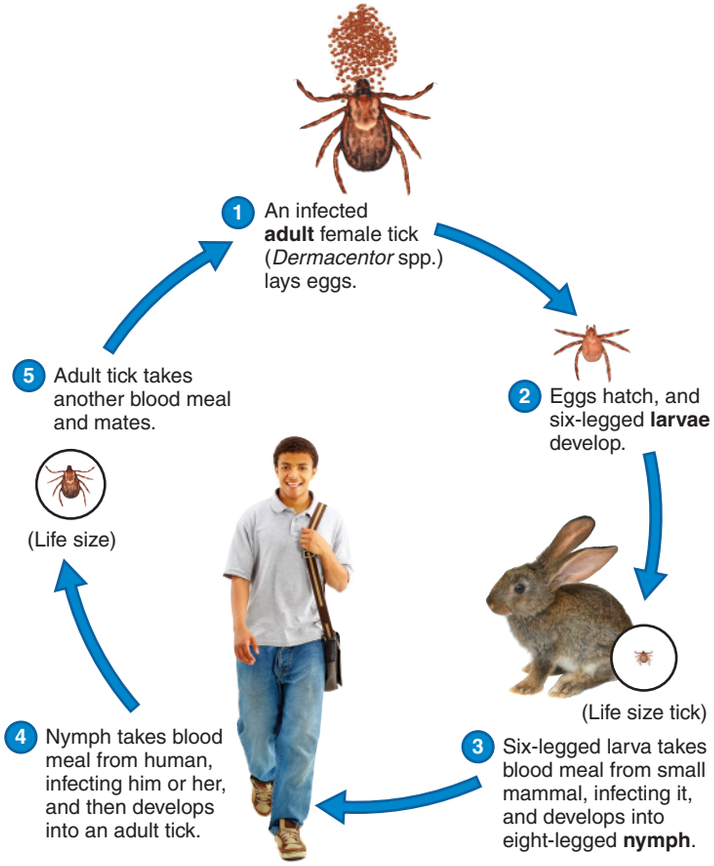


Figure 23.16 The life cycle of the tick vector (*Dermacentor* spp.) of Rocky Mountain spotted fever. Mammals are not essential to survival of the pathogen, *Rickettsia rickettsii*, in the tick population; the bacteria may be passed by transovarian passage, so new ticks are infected upon hatching. A blood meal is required for ticks to advance to the next stage in the life cycle.

Q What is meant by *transovarian passage*?

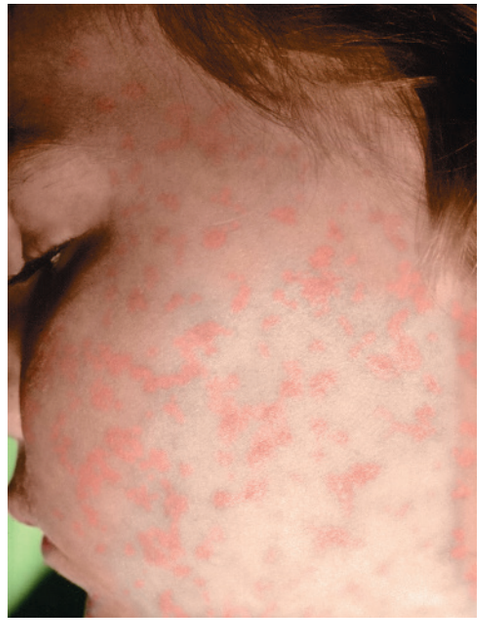


Figure 23.17 The rash characteristic of Rocky Mountain spotted fever. This rash is often mistaken for measles. People with dark skin have a higher mortality rate because the rash is often not recognized early enough for effective treatment.

Q How can spotted fever rickettsioses be prevented?

CLINICAL CASE

Katie is referred to a local emergency department (ED) for further evaluation and management. At the ED, Katie has a normal temperature of 37.1°C. A complete blood cell (CBC) count reveals a white blood cell count of 3900/μl and a platelet count of 115,000/μl. Her evaluation includes a computed tomography (CT) scan of her head and lumbar puncture. The CT scan does not reveal any brain trauma or injury, and her cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) does not show the presence of bacteria. Katie's light-headedness resolves later that evening, and she is sent home after spending half the day in the ED.

What do her CBC results indicate? (*Hint:* Refer to Chapter 16.)

Part 1 | Part 2 | Part 3 | Part 4 | Part 5

rickettsiosis, Pacific Coast tick fever (*R. philipii*), and rickettsialpox (*R. akari*). This is because the *Rickettsia* species cannot be distinguished using commonly available serologic tests.

R. parkeri rickettsiosis was first discovered in New York City in 2004. Since then, 5 to 23 cases have been reported annually. The bacterium is transmitted by the Gulf Coast tick, *Amblyomma maculatum*.

Fourteen cases of Pacific Coast tick fever have been reported since the bacterium was first identified in 2010 in California. The vector is the Pacific Coast tick, *Dermacentor occidentalis*. All the cases have been in Northern California.

Rickettsialpox was identified in 1946 in New York City. It is spread through the bite of infected house mouse mites (*Liponyssoides sanguineus*). Cases occur sporadically throughout the United States but are often reported in the Northeast.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **23-10** Why is the plague-infected flea so eager to feed on a mammal?
- **23-11** What animal does the infecting tick feed on just before it transmits Lyme disease to a human?
- **23-12** Which disease is tickborne: epidemic typhus, endemic murine typhus, or Rocky Mountain spotted fever?

Viral Diseases of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

23-13 Describe the epidemiologies of Burkitt's lymphoma, infectious mononucleosis, and CMV inclusion disease.

23-14 Compare and contrast the causative agents, vectors, reservoirs, and symptoms of chikungunya, yellow fever, dengue, and severe dengue.

23-15 Compare and contrast the causative agents, reservoirs, and symptoms of Ebola and Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome.

Viruses cause a number of cardiovascular and lymphoid diseases, prevalent mostly in tropical areas. However, one viral disease of this type, infectious mononucleosis, is especially familiar among American college-aged individuals.

Burkitt's Lymphoma

In the 1950s, Denis Burkitt, an Irish physician working in eastern Africa, noticed the frequent occurrence in children of a fast-growing tumor of the jaw (Figure 23.18). Known as **Burkitt's lymphoma**, this is the most common childhood cancer in Africa.

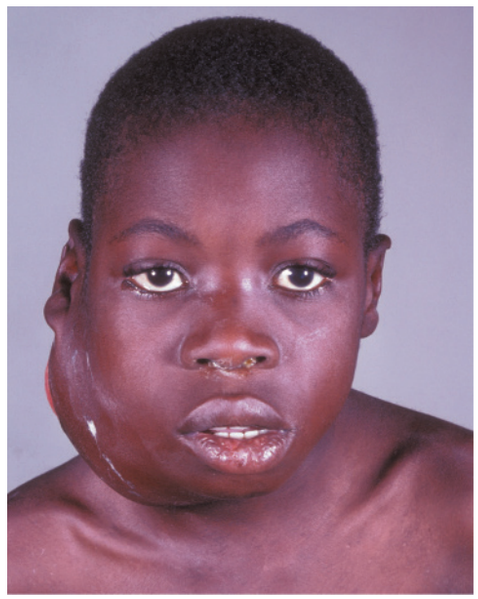


Figure 23.18 A child with Burkitt's lymphoma. Cancerous tumors of the jaw caused by Epstein-Barr virus (EB virus) are seen mainly in children. This child was successfully treated.

Q What is the relationship between malarial areas and areas with Burkitt's lymphoma?

Burkitt suspected a viral cause of the tumor and a mosquito vector. At that time, no virus was known to cause human cancer, although several viruses were clearly associated with animal cancers. Intrigued by this possibility, in 1964 British virologist Tony Epstein and his student, Yvonne Barr, performed biopsies on the tumors. A virus was cultured from this material, and the electron microscope showed a herpeslike virus in the culture cells; it was named the *Epstein-Barr virus (EB virus)*. The scientific name of the virus is *Lymphocryptovirus human gammaherpesvirus 4 (HHV-4)*.

EB virus is clearly associated with Burkitt's lymphoma, but the mechanism by which it causes the tumor isn't understood. Research eventually showed, however, that mosquitoes don't transmit the virus or the disease. Instead, mosquito-borne malarial infections apparently foster the development of Burkitt's lymphoma by impairing the immune response to EB virus, which is almost universally present in human adults worldwide. Burkitt's lymphoma is rare in the United States but does occur in children and in people with AIDS. The virus has, in fact, become so adapted to humans that it is one of our most effective parasites. It establishes a lifelong infection in most people (Figure 23.19) that is harmless and rarely causes disease. In the United States, early treatment with anticancer drugs has a high success rate.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

23-13 Although not a disease with an insect vector, why is Burkitt's lymphoma most commonly a disease found in malarial areas?

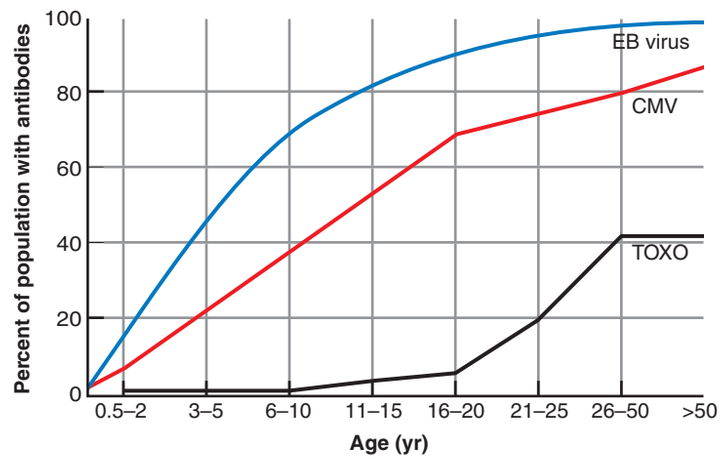


Figure 23.19 The typical U.S. prevalence of antibodies against Epstein-Barr virus (EB virus), *Cytomegalovirus* (CMV), and *Toxoplasma gondii* (TOXO) by age.

Source: Laboratory Management, June 1987, pp. 23ff.

Q To judge from this graph, which of these diseases is more likely to result from early-childhood infections?

Infectious Mononucleosis

The identification of EB virus (*Lymphocryptovirus human gammaherpesvirus 4*) as the cause of **infectious mononucleosis**, or *mono*, resulted from one of the accidental discoveries that often advance science. A technician in a laboratory investigating EB virus served as a negative control for the virus. While on vacation, she contracted an infection characterized by fever, sore throat, swollen lymph nodes in the neck, and general weakness. The most interesting aspect of the technician's disease was that she now tested serologically positive for EB virus. It was soon confirmed that the same virus that is associated with Burkitt's lymphoma also causes almost all cases of infectious mononucleosis.

In developing parts of the world, infection with EB virus occurs in early childhood, and over 95% of adults have acquired antibodies. Nearly 20% of adults in the United States carry EB virus in oral secretions. Childhood EB virus infections are usually asymptomatic, but if infection is delayed until young adulthood, as is often the case in the United States, the result is more symptomatic probably because of an intense immunological response. The peak U.S. incidence of the disease occurs at about age 15 to 25. A principal cause of the rare deaths is rupture of the enlarged spleen (a common response to a systemic infection) during vigorous activity. Recovery is usually complete in a few weeks, and immunity is permanent.

The usual route of infection is by the transfer of saliva by kissing or, for example, by sharing drinking vessels. It doesn't spread among casual household contacts, so aerosol transmission is unlikely. The incubation period before appearance of symptoms is 4 to 7 weeks.

EB virus maintains a persistent infection in the mouth and throat, which accounts for its presence in saliva. It is probable that resting memory B cells (see Figure 17.6) located in lymphoid tissue are the primary site of replication and persistence. Most of the symptoms are attributed to responses of T cells to the infection.

The disease name *mononucleosis* refers to lymphocytes with unusual lobed nuclei that proliferate in the blood during the acute infection (**Figure 23.20**). The infected B cells produce heterophile antibodies, so-called from the Greek *hetero* (different) and *phile* (affinity). These are weak antibodies with multispecific activities; their significance is that they are used in the diagnosis of mono. If this test is negative, the symptoms may be caused by *Cytomegalovirus* infection or several other disease conditions. A fluorescent-antibody test that detects IgM antibodies against EB virus is the most specific diagnostic method. There is no recommended therapy for most patients.

Other Diseases and Epstein-Barr Virus

We have just discussed two diseases, Burkitt's lymphoma and infectious mononucleosis, for which there is a clear association with EB virus. There is a lengthy list of diseases for which there is a suspected, but not proven, relationship with EB virus. Some of the more familiar of these include **multiple sclerosis** (autoimmune attack on the nervous system), **Hodgkin's lymphoma** (tumors of the spleen, lymph nodes, or liver), and **nasopharyngeal (nose and pharynx) cancer** among certain ethnic groups in southeast Asia and Inuits.

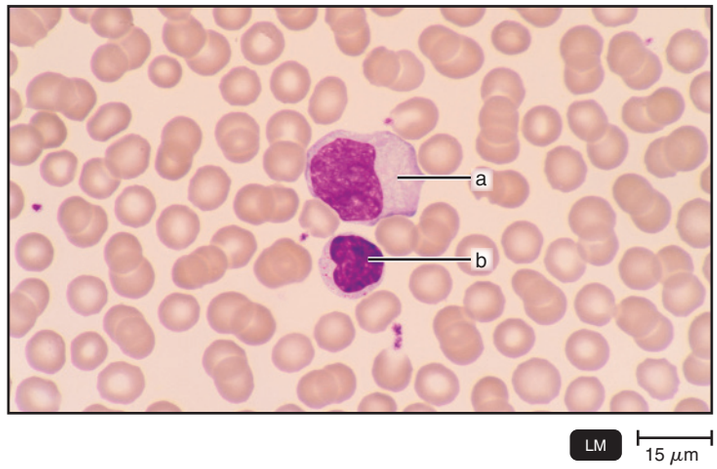


Figure 23.20 **(a) Large lymphocyte with the unusual lobed nucleus that is characteristic of mononucleosis. (b) Normal lymphocyte.**

Q What antibodies indicate a patient has mono?

Cytomegalovirus Infections

Almost all of us will become infected with *Cytomegalovirus (CMV or HHV-5)* during our lifetime. The CMV is a very large herpesvirus that, much like the Epstein-Barr virus, probably remains latent in white blood cells, such as monocytes, neutrophils, and T cells. It is not much affected by the immune system, replicating very slowly and escaping antibody action by moving between cells that are in contact. Carriers of the virus may shed it in body secretions such as saliva, semen, and breast milk. When CMV infects a cell, it causes the formation of distinctive inclusion bodies that are visible by microscopy. When these bodies occur in pairs, they are known as "owl's eyes" and are useful in diagnosis. These inclusion bodies were first reported in 1905 in certain cells of newborns with congenital abnormalities. The cells were also enlarged, a condition known as *cytomegaly*, from which the virus eventually received its name. This disease of the newborns was given the name of **cytomegalic inclusion disease (CID)**. The inclusion bodies were originally thought to be stages in the life cycle of a protozoan, and a viral cause of the disease was not proposed until 1925. The *Cytomegalovirus* wasn't isolated until some 30 years after that.

In the United States, 1 out of 200 infants each year are born with symptomatic damage from CID, the most serious of which includes severe intellectual disabilities or hearing loss. If primary infection occurs before conception, the rate of transmission to a fetus is less than 2%, but if the primary infection

occurs during pregnancy, the rate of transmission is in the range of 40–50%. Tests to determine the immune status of pregnant patients are available, and it's recommended that physicians determine the immune status of all patients of childbearing age and inform them of the risks of infection during pregnancy. A complicating factor is that patients who are CMV positive before conception might still be infected with a new strain of CMV and transmit it to the fetus.

In healthy adults, acquiring a CMV infection causes either no symptoms or those resembling a mild case of infectious mononucleosis. It has been said that if CMV were accompanied by a skin rash, it would be one of the better-known childhood diseases. It is therefore not surprising, given that 80% of the population of the United States is estimated to carry the virus, that CMV is a common opportunistic pathogen in persons whose immune systems have become compromised. Figure 23.19 shows the prevalence of antibodies against CMV, Epstein-Barr virus, and *Toxoplasma gondii*. In developing parts of the world, infection rates of CMV approach 100%. For immunocompromised individuals, CMV is a frequent cause of a life-threatening pneumonia, but almost any organ can be affected. About 85% of people with AIDS exhibit a CMV-caused eye infection, *Cytomegalovirus retinitis*. Without treatment, it results in eventual loss of vision. To prevent transmission of CMV during transplantation procedures, an immunoglobulin preparation containing a standardized amount of antibody is recommended. For treatment of CMV illness, ganciclovir has been the mainstay. A suitable alternative, if resistance to this antiviral develops, is foscarnet.

CMV is transmitted mostly by activities that result in contact with body fluids that contain the virus, such as kissing, and it is very common among children in day-care settings. It can also be transmitted sexually, by transfused blood, and by transplanted tissue. Transmission by transfused blood can be eliminated by filtering out the white cells from the blood or by serological testing of the donor for the virus. Transplanted tissue is usually tested for the virus, and products are now available that contain antibodies to neutralize CMV present in donated tissue. Vaccines are under development, but none is currently available.

Chikungunya

Another tropical disease now causing concern is **chikungunya** (chik-un-GUN-yah), but the disease is often referred to simply as *chik*). The name comes from an African language spoken in Tanzania and means "that which bends up." The symptoms are a high fever and severe, crippling joint pains—especially in the wrists, fingers, and ankles—that can persist for weeks or months. There is often a rash and even massive blisters. The death rate is very low. The *Alphavirus Chikungunya virus* (CHIKV) is transmitted by the *Aedes* mosquito, primarily *Aedes aegypti* (Ā-e-dēz ē-JIP-tē), which spreads the disease widely in Asia and Africa. Recent outbreaks have also been caused by *A. albopictus* (al-bō-PIK-tus). A mutation in CHIKV, which is related to the virus causing western equine encephalitis (WEE) and eastern equine encephalitis (EEE) (Chapter 22), has adapted the virus to multiply in this insect. It is uncertain whether there is an animal reservoir. More than 1.7 million cases have occurred throughout the Caribbean since the first case was reported in the Western Hemisphere in 2013. An outbreak has occurred in Italy, and locally acquired cases have occurred in Florida and Texas. Chik is the most common disease acquired by travelers, and its local transmission demonstrates how modern air travel contributes to disease emergence.

A. albopictus is also known as the Asian tiger mosquito because of its bright white stripes. Well adapted to urban settlements, it also survives cold climates and will probably become established eventually even in the northern parts of the United States and the coastal areas of Scandinavia. Because it is an extremely aggressive daytime biter, it is a serious nuisance for outdoor activities. Of greater concern to health officials is that *A. albopictus* is known, so far, to transmit both chikungunya and dengue, a disease that will be discussed shortly.

Classic Viral Hemorrhagic Fevers

Viral hemorrhagic fevers (VHFs) affect multiple organ systems and are often accompanied by bleeding. Most hemorrhagic fevers are zoonotic diseases that can be transmitted to humans by contact with an infected animal. "Classic" hemorrhagic fevers begin with flulike symptoms and bruises and bleeding gums, then progress to cause increased permeability of blood vessels, which results in loss of blood volume. The classic VHFs are yellow fever, Ebola virus disease, Lassa fever, and Marburg virus disease.

Yellow Fever

A common and severe classic VHF is **yellow fever**. The *Flavivirus Yellow fever virus* is injected into the skin by a mosquito, *A. aegypti*.

In the early stages of severe cases of the disease, the person experiences fever, chills, and headache, followed by nausea and vomiting. This stage is followed by jaundice, a yellowing of the skin that gave the disease its name. This coloration reflects liver damage, which results in the deposit of bile pigments in the skin and mucous membranes. The mortality rate for yellow fever is high, about 20%.

Yellow fever is still endemic in tropical areas of South America and Africa. At one time, the disease was endemic in the United States and occurred as far north as Philadelphia. The last U.S. case of yellow fever occurred in Louisiana in 1905 during an outbreak that resulted in about 1000 deaths. Mosquito eradication campaigns initiated by the U.S. Army surgeon Walter Reed were effective in eliminating yellow fever in the United States.

Monkeys are a natural reservoir for the virus, but human-to-human transmission can maintain the disease. Local control of mosquitoes and immunization of the exposed population are effective controls in urban areas.

Climate Change and Disease

A disease normally found only in Africa and Asia spreads to the Americas, and public health officials warn that climate change may bring a rising tide of vector-borne diseases to the United States.

Chikungunya is a viral disease with symptoms similar to dengue and Zika virus disease. Until recently, cases outside Africa and Asia were found only among people who had traveled to endemic regions. However, in 2013 the first indigenous cases appeared in the Western Hemisphere. By 2022, over 2 million cases had been reported in the Americas. In the United States, there have been over 14 locally acquired cases.

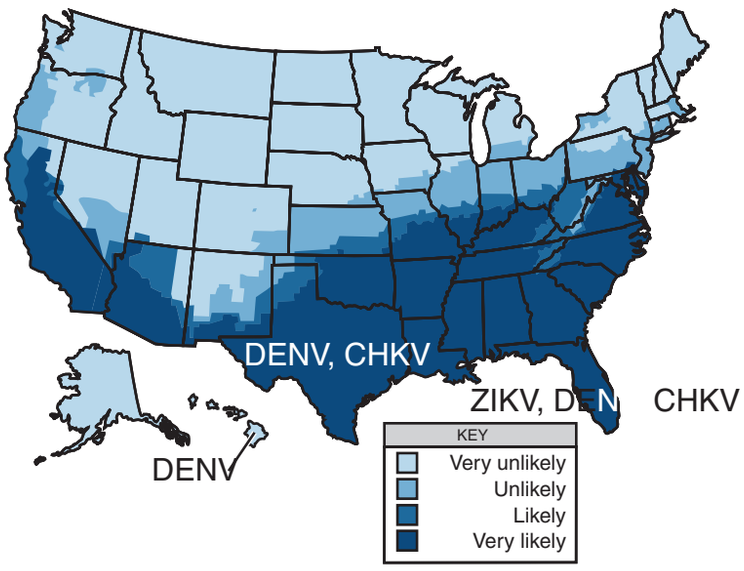
The Challenge of Controlling Mosquitoes That Spread Chikungunya

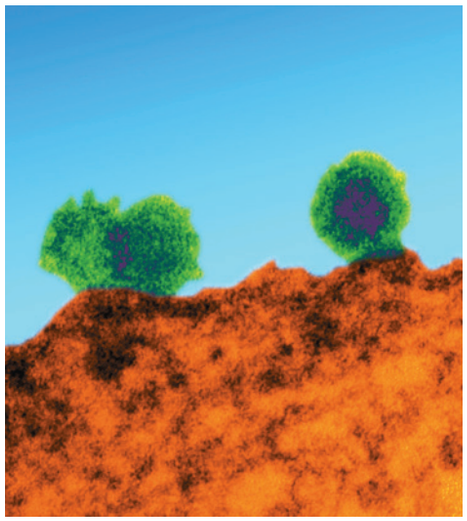
There is no vaccine, so the best way to prevent chikungunya's spread is vector control. The vectors are *A. aegypti*, known as the yellow fever mosquito, and *A. albopictus*, known as the Asian tiger mosquito. Yellow fever mosquitoes tend to live in tropical or subtropical regions and are also the main vector of dengue. The Asian tiger mosquito can also transmit dengue and West Nile virus. It is an invasive species introduced to the Americas through sea cargo containers.

Unlike many other mosquitoes, both species that transmit chikungunya feed all day long rather than just at dusk. The Asian tiger mosquito prefers feeding on humans over other animals and frequently lives inside buildings or very near them.

The Asian tiger mosquito has been moving north and east since its introduction in 1987. At present, the northernmost boundary is New Jersey and southern New York. If temperatures rise and rainfall increases in some areas as predicted over the next century, then the range of the Asian tiger mosquito will also grow. One study suggests about 50% of the land in the northeastern United States, where about 30 million people reside, could become habitat for the Asian tiger mosquito by the year 2080. This will likely facilitate the spread of chikungunya and other diseases now considered tropical throughout most of the U.S. East Coast as well.

Asian tiger mosquito, *A. albopictus*, a chikungunya, dengue, and Zika vector.





Local transmission of chikungunya, dengue, and Zika viruses (as of June 2022). At right is a TEM of chikungunya virus. *Vectors (A. aegypti and A. albopictus)* are found throughout the United States.

Source: CDC.

Searching for New Methods of Vector Control

Traditional mosquito control efforts focus on eliminating standing water sources used by mosquitoes to breed, along with spraying larvicides or insecticides in mosquito-prone areas. But total elimination of standing water is nearly impossible, and effective reduction requires full community support. Additionally, insecticides don't work as well for the indoor-dwelling Asian tiger mosquitoes as they do for species that live outside. Bed nets can provide some protection within a home, but because these mosquitoes feed all day long, this method isn't very effective in controlling this species.

Some Methods of Control

- Water storage covers are inexpensive wooden covers on concrete water storage containers. Their use in one community in India ended the main breeding location for Asian tiger mosquitoes.
- Ovitraps are cylindrical containers designed to be attractive egg-laying sites. They contain mesh that prevents mature mosquitoes escaping from the containers later. Some ovitraps also have paddles coated with sticky material that trap the egg-laying females.
- Biological controls include release of larvae-eating copepods (a crustacean), mosquito fish, dragonflies, and beetle larvae in breeding areas. "Mosquito dunks," some of which contain *Bacillus thuringiensis israelensis* bacteria, are slow-dissolving blocks that can be added to ponds or fountains to kill larvae. There have also been some sites where genetically modified sterile male mosquitoes were released to cut down population growth.

Biological controls include "mosquito dunks" like the one shown above that are placed in ponds or fountains and kill larvae.

KEY CONCEPTS

- When climate changes, certain insects that vector diseases may spread into new areas, causing new outbreaks as they go. (**See Chapter 12, "Arthropods as Vectors," and Chapter 14, "Transmission of Disease."**)
- *Bacillus thuringiensis* is used in mosquito dunks, one method of mosquito control. (**See Chapter 11, "Bacillales."**)

Common mosquito habitats around your home

Eliminating sources of standing water is a main line of attack in controlling mosquito populations. The illustration above shows common sources of standing water in homes.

Diagnosis is usually by clinical signs, but it can be confirmed by a rise in antibody titer or isolation of the virus from the blood. There is no specific treatment for yellow fever. The vaccine is an attenuated live viral strain and yields a very effective immunity.

Dengue and Severe Dengue

Compared to yellow fever, dengue (DEN-gē) is a similar but milder disease also transmitted by *A. aegypti* mosquitoes. This disease is endemic in the Caribbean and other tropical environments. Globally, an estimated 400 million cases in at least 100 countries occur annually. The countries surrounding the Caribbean are reporting an increasing number of cases of dengue. In most years, more than 100 cases are imported into the United States, mostly by travelers from the Caribbean and South America. The disease is a leading cause of death among children in endemic countries. It does not appear to have an animal reservoir. Locally acquired cases of dengue in Florida, Hawaii, and Texas since 2010 have raised concern about the potential for emergence of dengue in the United States. An efficient secondary vector, *A. albopictus*, has also expanded widely in range in recent years.

Most infections by the dengue virus (*Flavivirus Dengue virus*, DENV) causing dengue are asymptomatic, and the disease itself usually causes only a mild case of fever. Patients who recover without major incident are classified as having **dengue**. However, the patient may experience a potentially fatal disease characterized by hemorrhaging and organ impairment; this disease is classified as **severe dengue**. Severe dengue occurs mostly in patients with their second dengue infection and in infants who have passive immunity. It appears that antibodies to the virus enhance its ability to enter cells, a development called *antibody-dependent enhancement*.

CLINICAL CASE

Katie's lowered white blood cell count (leukopenia) may indicate a viral infection. Four days later, Katie returns to her primary care provider: her gums are bleeding, and she "just doesn't feel right." On examination, Katie has a temperature of 37.1°C, but now she has a rash on her legs. When asked, Katie explains that the rash is from scratching the numerous mosquito bites she incurred while in Key West. Katie's doctor doesn't think the rash looks like it's from mosquito bites; he sends a serum sample to a private lab for testing. IgM antibodies for dengue are reported in her serum. After Katie's physician notifies the public health department of the test result, Katie's earlier serum specimen, CSF specimen, and a repeat serum specimen are sent to CDC for confirmatory testing.

What does the presence of IgM antibodies mean?

Part 1 Part 2 **Part 3** Part 4 Part 5

Attempts to control dengue by vector control have not met with success. Beginning in 2022, the Dengvaxia vaccine is available for 9- through 16-year-old children living in areas where dengue occurs. The vaccine protects against all four serotypes of the virus. It is given to children who have had a previous dengue infection because preexisting antibodies can make the first infection result in severe dengue.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

23-14 Why is the mosquito *Aedes albopictus* a special concern to the populations of temperate climates?

Emerging Viral Hemorrhagic Fevers

Certain other hemorrhagic diseases are considered new or "emerging" hemorrhagic fevers. In 1967, 31 people became ill and 7 died after contact with some African monkeys that were imported into Europe. The virus was strangely shaped (in the form of a filament [filovirus]) and was named for the site of the laboratory outbreak in Germany, the *Marburgvirus* (Figure 13.3b). The symptoms of infection by hemorrhagic viruses are mild at first; headache and muscle pain. But after a few days the victim suffers from high fever and begins vomiting blood and bleeding profusely, both internally and from external openings such as the nose and eyes. Death comes in a few days from organ failure and shock.

A similar hemorrhagic fever, **Lassa fever**, appeared in west Africa in 1969 and was traced to a rodent reservoir. *Mammarenavirus Lassa virus*, an arenavirus, is present in the rodent's urine and is the source of human infections. Outbreaks of Lassa fever have killed thousands.

Seven years later, outbreaks in Africa of another highly lethal hemorrhagic fever were caused by *Ebolavirus*, a filovirus similar to the Marburg virus (Figure 23.21). The walls of the blood vessels are damaged, the virus interferes with coagulation, and blood leaks into surrounding tissue. Named **Ebola virus disease (EVD)** for a regional river, this is now a well-publicized disease, with mortality approaching 90%. The natural host reservoir for *Ebolavirus* is probably a cave-dwelling fruit bat, which is used as food and is not acutely affected by the virus it carries. Once a human is infected and shedding blood, the infection is spread by contact with the blood and body fluids and in many cases by the reuse of needles used on patients. The local custom of washing the body before burial often results in new infections.

ERVEBO is a recombinant vaccine consisting of live vesicular stomatitis virus carrying *Ebolavirus* glycoprotein. The vaccine is effective against *E. Zaire ebolavirus*. The vaccine is credited with decreasing infection and deaths in the 2018–2020 EVD outbreak in the Democratic Republic of Congo. The vaccine was used to vaccinate health care workers and in a ring-containment approach. Ring containment consists of identifying

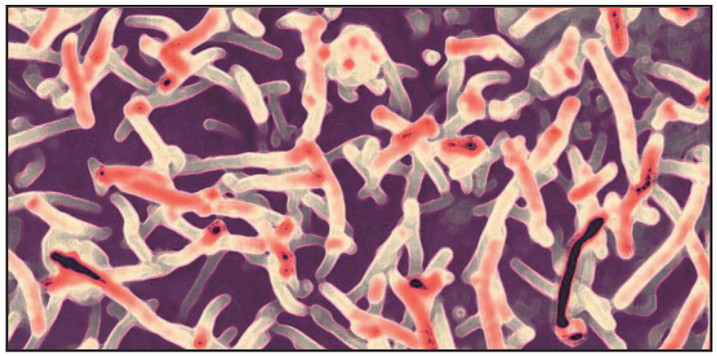


Figure 23.21 ***Ebolavirus.*** The viruses disrupt the blood clotting system.

Q Can you see why the *Ebolavirus* is called a filovirus?

people with the infection, vaccinating everyone who has had contact with them, and then vaccinating people in surrounding areas.

South America has several hemorrhagic fevers caused by Lassa-like viruses (arenaviruses) that are maintained in the rodent population. **Argentine and Bolivian hemorrhagic fevers** are transmitted in rural areas by contact with rodent excretions. A handful of deaths in California have been attributed to the *Mammarenavirus Whitewater Arroyo mammarenavirus*, an arenavirus with a reservoir in wood rats in southwestern states. These are the first reports of arenavirus-caused hemorrhagic disease in the Northern Hemisphere.

Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome, caused by *Orthohantavirus Sin Nombre*,* a peribunyavirus, has become well known in the United States because of several outbreaks, mostly in the western states. It manifests as a frequently fatal pulmonary infection, in which the lungs fill with fluids. The main treatment is mechanical respiration; the antiviral ribavirin is recommended, but its value is uncertain. Actually, *Orthohantavirus*-caused diseases have a long history, especially in Asia and Europe. It is best known there as **hemorrhagic fever with renal syndrome** and primarily affects renal (kidney) function. All these related diseases are transmitted by the inhalation of viruses in dried urine and feces from infected small rodents.

Diseases in Focus 23.4 describes the various viral hemorrhagic fevers.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

23-15 Which disease does Ebola more closely resemble, Lassa fever or Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome?

*The virus causing the pulmonary Hantavirus outbreak in 1993 in the Four Corners area of the southwestern United States (Arizona, Utah, Colorado, and New Mexico) was originally called the Four Corners virus. Local authorities were concerned about the effect of this name on tourism in the area and complained. The name Sin Nombre, Spanish for no name, was then adopted.

Fungal Disease of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

23-16 Discuss the epidemiology of *Candida sepsis*.

Nearly 20% of all sepsis infections are due to fungi. *Candida* spp. are by far the predominant cause of fungal sepsis, accounting for about 90% of sepsis cases. Invasive *Aspergillus* spp. are responsible for the remaining fungal sepsis.

Candida auris Sepsis

Candida spp. account for 5% of sepsis and septic shock cases. Most infections are acquired in health care settings. In 2021, the CDC warned health care facilities about worldwide emergence of an invasive multidrug-resistant fungus, *Candida auris*, that causes sepsis. Risk factors for invasive *C. auris* sepsis are COVID-19, hospitalization, intravenous drug use, antibiotic therapy, or a weakened immune system. *C. auris* is difficult to identify using rapid identification systems that use phenotypic characteristics such as sugar fermentation. There is one approved PCR kit that can identify the fungus. Most strains in the United States are susceptible to echinocandins.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

23-16 Who is at risk of *Candida* sepsis?

Protozoan Diseases of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

23-17 Compare and contrast the causative agents, modes of transmission, reservoirs, symptoms, and treatments for Chagas disease, toxoplasmosis, malaria, leishmaniasis, and babesiosis.

23-18 Discuss the worldwide effects of these diseases on human health.

Protozoa that cause diseases of the cardiovascular and lymphoid systems often have complex life cycles, and their presence may severely affect human hosts.

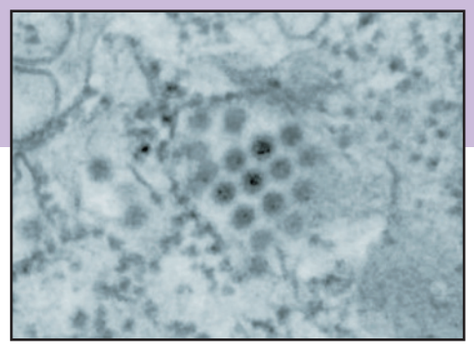
Chagas Disease (American Trypanosomiasis)

Chagas disease, also known as **American trypanosomiasis**, is a protozoan disease of the cardiovascular system. The causative agent is *Trypanosoma cruzi* (tri-pa-nō-SŌ-mah KROOZ-ē), a flagellated protozoan (**Figure 23.22**). The protozoan was discovered in its insect vector by the Brazilian microbiologist Carlos

DISEASES IN FOCUS 23.4 Viral Hemorrhagic Fevers

Viral hemorrhagic fevers are endemic in tropical countries where, except for dengue, they are found in small mammals. However, increasing international travel has resulted in importation of these viruses into the United States. There is no treatment.

The CDC's Special Pathogens Branch has specialized containment facilities to confirm diagnosis of viral hemorrhagic fevers by serology, nucleic acids, and virus culture. Use the following table to make a differential diagnosis and identify the cause of a rash and severe joint pain in a 20-year-old patient.



Small viruses seen by electron microscopy in a patient's tissues. Upon isolation, they were identified as single-stranded RNA viruses in the family Flaviviridae.

Disease	Pathogen	Portal of Entry	Signs and Symptoms	Reservoir	Method of Transmission	Prevention
Yellow Fever	*Flavivirus Yellow fever virus*	Skin	Fever, chills, headache; jaundice	Monkeys	*Aedes aegypti*	Vaccination; mosquito control
Dengue	*Flavivirus Dengue virus*	Skin	Fever, muscle and joint pain, rash	Humans	*A. aegypti; A. albopictus*	Vaccination; mosquito control
Emerging Viral Hemorrhagic Fevers (Marburg, Ebola, Lassa)	*Marburgvirus, Ebolavirus, Mammarenavirus*	Mucous membranes	Profuse bleeding	Possibly fruit bats and other small mammals	Contact with blood	Vaccination; mosquito control
Hantavirus Pulmonary Syndrome	*Orthohantavirus* (*Sin Nombre orthohantavirus*)	Respiratory tract	Pneumonia	Field mice	Inhalation	None

Chagas in 1910. The disease is endemic in Central America and parts of South America, where it chronically infects an estimated 8 million and kills as many as 50,000 annually. It has been introduced into the United States by population migration. In 2006, blood banks began screening for the disease.

The reservoir for *T. cruzi* is a wide variety of wild animals, including rodents, opossums, and armadillos. The arthropod vector is the reduviid bug *Triatoma* spp., called the "kissing bug" because it often bites people near the lips (see Figure 12.32d). The insects live in the cracks and crevices of mud or stone huts with thatched roofs. One study of reduviid bugs in the state of Arizona showed that 40% of these insects in the Tucson area harbored the parasite. The range of this insect can extend as far north as Illinois. The trypanosomes, which grow in the gut of the bug, are passed on if the bug defecates while feeding. The bitten human or animal often rubs the feces into the bite wound or other skin abrasions by scratching or into the eye by rubbing. The infection progresses in stages. The acute stage, characterized by fever and swollen glands lasting for a few weeks, may not cause alarm. However, 20–30% of people infected will develop a chronic form of the disease—in some cases, 20 years later. Damage to the nerves controlling the peristaltic contractions of the esophagus or colon can prevent them from transporting food. This causes them to become grossly enlarged, conditions known as *megaesophagus* and *megacolon*. Most deaths are caused by damage to the heart, which occurs in about 40% of chronic cases. Pregnancy during the chronic stage can result in congenital infections.

Diagnosis in endemic areas is usually based on symptoms. In the acute phase, the trypanosomes can sometimes be detected in blood samples. During the chronic phase these are undetectable—although patients can transmit the infection by transfusions, transplants, and congenitally. Diagnosis of chronic disease depends on serological tests, which are not very sensitive or specific. Two, or even three, repeated samplings may be required.

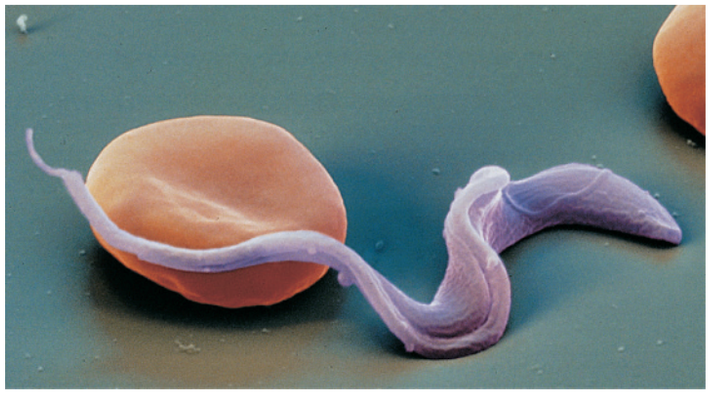


Figure 23.22 *Trypanosoma cruzi*, the cause of Chagas disease (American trypanosomiasis). The trypanosome has an undulating membrane; the flagellum follows the outer margin of the membrane and then projects beyond the body of the trypanosome as a free flagellum. Note the red blood cells in the photo.

Q **Name a common trypanosomal disease that occurs in another part of the world. (*Hint:* It was discussed in Chapter 22.)**

Treating Chagas disease is very difficult when chronic, progressive stages have been reached. The trypanosome multiplies intracellularly and is difficult to reach chemotherapeutically. The only drugs currently available are nifurtimox and benznidazole, which are triazole derivatives (see Chapter 20). Benznidazole therapy was found to eliminate infection in about 60% of infected children and is less toxic than nifurtimox. These drugs are effective only during the early, acute phase, when few people realize they are infected, and must be administered for an extended time, 30 to 60 days. Neither drug is effective during the chronic stage; both also have serious side effects.

Toxoplasmosis

Toxoplasmosis, a disease of blood and lymphatic vessels, is caused by the protozoan *Toxoplasma gondii*. *T. gondii* is a spore-forming protozoan, as is the malarial parasite.

Cats are an essential part of the life cycle of *T. gondii* (Figure 23.23). Random tests on urban cats have shown that a large number of them are infected with the organism, which causes no apparent illness in the cat. (A curiosity of the

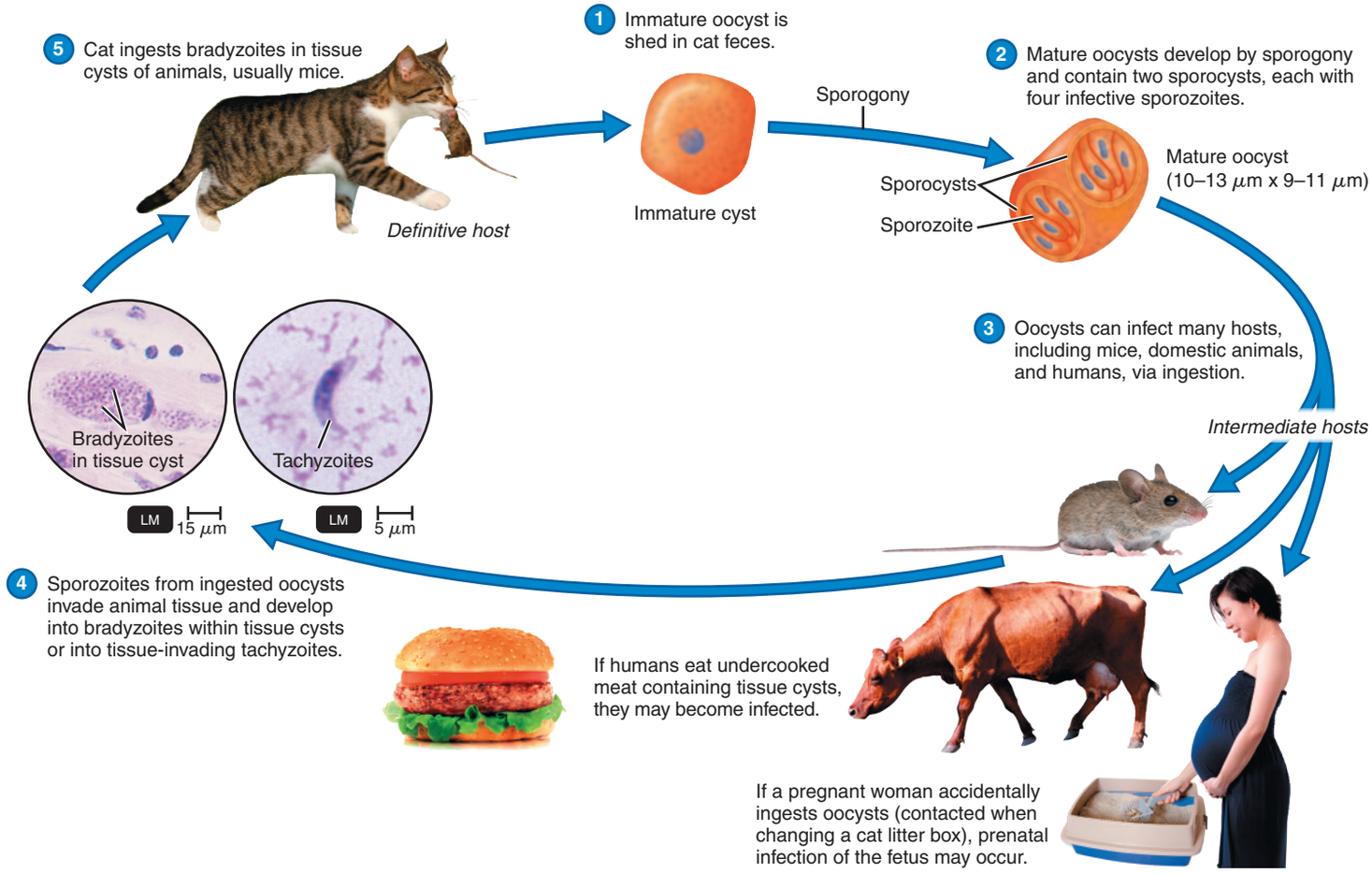


Figure 23.23 The life cycle of *Toxoplasma gondii*, the cause of toxoplasmosis.
The domestic cat is the definitive host, in which the protozoa reproduce sexually.

Q **How do humans contract toxoplasmosis?**

infection in rodents is that it apparently causes them to lose their normal avoidance behavior toward cats, making them more likely to be caught and thus to infect the cat.) The microbe undergoes its only sexual phase in the small intestine of the cat. Millions of oocysts are then shed in the cat's feces for 7 to 21 days and contaminate food or water that can be ingested by other animals. The *oocysts* contain *sporozoites* that invade host cells and form trophozoites called *tachyzoites* (about the size of large bacteria, 2×7 μm). The intracellular parasite reproduces rapidly (*tachys* is Greek for rapid). The increased numbers cause the rupture of the host cell and the release of more tachyzoites, resulting in a strong inflammatory response.

As the immune response becomes increasingly effective, the disease enters a chronic phase in animals and humans; the infected host cell develops a wall to form a *tissue cyst*. The numerous parasites within such a cyst (in this stage called *bradyzoites; brady*s being Greek for slow) reproduce very slowly, if at all, and persist for years, especially in the brain. These cysts are infective when ingested by intermediate or definitive hosts.

In people with a healthy immune system, toxoplasmosis infection results in only very mild symptoms or none at all. Approximately 22.5% of the U.S. population, without even being aware of it, have been infected with *T. gondii* (see Figure 23.19). Humans generally acquire the infection by ingesting undercooked meats containing tachyzoites or tissue cysts, although there is a possibility of contracting the disease more directly by contact with cat feces. The primary danger is congenital infection of a fetus, resulting in stillbirth or a child with severe brain damage or vision problems. This fetal damage occurs only when the initial infection is acquired during pregnancy. The problem also affects wildlife. Off the California coast, a fatal encephalitis of sea otters and sea lions has appeared, caused by *T. gondii*—apparently, they are being infected by oocysts in wastewater contaminated from the flushed contents of cat litter boxes. Loss of immune function, AIDS being the best example, allows the inapparent infection to be reactivated from tissue cysts. It often causes severe neurological impairment and may damage vision from the reactivation of tissue cysts in the eye.

Toxoplasmosis can be detected by serological tests. Toxoplasmosis is usually diagnosed by detecting *Toxoplasma*-specific IgG and IgM antibodies. IgM antibodies and PCR for *Toxoplasma* DNA are used to determine a current infection, which is particularly important during pregnancy. Toxoplasmosis can be treated with pyrimethamine in combination with sulfadiazine and folinic acid. This does not, however, affect the chronic bradyzoite stage and is quite toxic.

Malaria

Malaria is characterized by chills and fever and often by vomiting and severe headache. These symptoms typically appear at intervals of 2 to 3 days, alternating with asymptomatic periods.

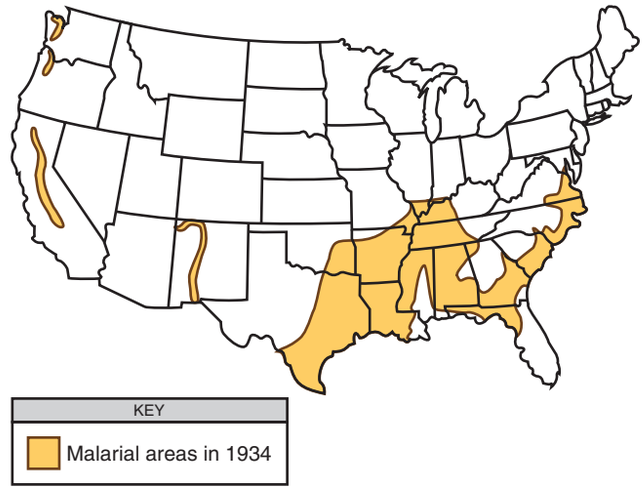


Figure 23.24 Malaria in the United States.

Q If malaria was eliminated in the United States in 1949, why do 1500 cases occur annually?

Malaria occurs wherever the *Anopheles* mosquito vector is found and there are human hosts for the *Plasmodium* protozoan.

The disease was once widespread in the United States (Figure 23.24), but effective mosquito control and a reduction in the number of human carriers resulted in elimination of malaria in 1949. Since then, approximately 1500 cases of malaria have been reported every year in the United States, almost all in recent travelers. Reported malaria cases reached a 40-year high of 1925 in 2011. There have been 4 outbreaks of locally transmitted mosquito-borne malaria since 2000. Occasionally, malaria has been transmitted by unsterilized syringes used by people injecting illegal drugs. Blood transfusions from people who have been in an endemic area are also a potential risk. Malaria is endemic in tropical Asia, Africa, and Latin America, where it is still a serious problem. It is estimated that malaria affects nearly 250 million people worldwide and causes more than 600,000 deaths, half of these among children, annually. Ninety percent of the mortality from malaria occurs in Africa.

Pathophysiology of Malaria

Four species of *Plasmodium* cause malaria in humans. *Plasmodium vivax* is widely distributed because it can develop in mosquitoes at a lower temperature and is the cause of the most prevalent form of malaria. Sometimes referred to as "benign" malaria, the cycle of paroxysms (recurrent intensifications of symptoms) occurs every 2 days, and the patients generally survive even without treatment. An important factor in the life cycle of *P. vivax* is that it can remain dormant in the liver of the patient for months and even years. This bridges the cold-weather gap in the life cycle of mosquitoes in temperate countries—providing them with a continuing supply of infected subjects. *P. ovale* and *P. malariae* also cause a relatively

CLINICAL CASE

IgM antibodies are the first antibodies made in response to an infection, and they are relatively short lived. Therefore, their presence indicates a current infection. The technicians at the CDC discover that both of Katie's serum specimens are positive for dengue IgM antibodies. Dengue virus serotype 1 (DENV-1) is detected by reverse transcription PCR of the CSF specimen. By the time the health department interviews Katie, it is 2 weeks after she reported her original symptoms. Katie has been steadily improving since then and is now almost completely recovered.

How is dengue transmitted?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 **Part 4** Part 5

benign malaria, but even so, the victims lack energy. These latter two malarial types are lower in incidence and rather restricted geographically.

The most dangerous malaria is that caused by *P. falciparum*. Perhaps one reason for the virulence of this type of malaria is that humans and the parasite have had less time to become adapted to each other. It is believed that humans have been exposed to this parasite (through contact with birds) only in relatively recent history. Referred to as "malignant" malaria, untreated it eventually kills about half of people infected. The highest mortality rates occur in young children. More red blood cells (RBCs) are infected and destroyed than in other forms of malaria. The resulting anemia severely weakens the victim. Furthermore, the RBCs develop surface knobs (Figure 23.25a) that cause them to stick to the walls of the capillaries, which become clogged. This clogging prevents the infected RBCs from reaching the spleen, where phagocytic cells would eliminate them. The blocked capillaries and subsequent loss of blood supply leads to death of the tissues. Kidney and liver damage is caused in this fashion. The brain is frequently affected, and *P. falciparum* is the usual cause of cerebral malaria.

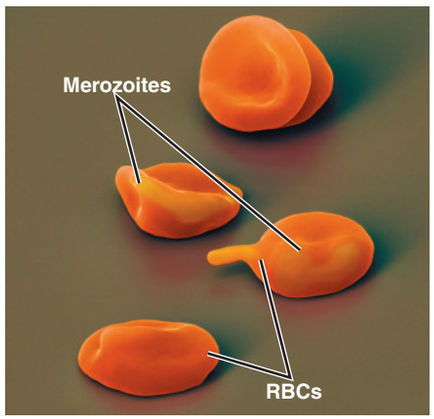
Malaria and its symptoms are intimately related to the protozoan's complex reproductive cycle (see Figure 12.20). Infection is initiated by the bite of a mosquito, which carries the *sporozoite* stage of the *Plasmodium* protozoan in its saliva. About 300 to 500 sporozoites enter the bloodstream of the bitten human and within about 30 minutes enter the liver cells. The sporozoites in the liver cells undergo reproductive *schizogony* by a series of steps that finally results in the release of about 30,000 *merozoite* forms into the bloodstream.

The merozoites infect RBCs. Within the RBCs they again undergo schizogony, and after about 48 hours, the RBCs rupture, each releasing about 20 new merozoites. Laboratory diagnosis of malaria is usually made by examining a blood smear (Figure 23.25b) for infected RBCs. With the release of the merozoites, there is also a simultaneous release of toxic compounds, which is the cause of the paroxysms of chills and fever that are characteristic of malaria. The fever reaches 40°C, and a sweating stage begins as the fever subsides. Between paroxysms, the patient feels normal.

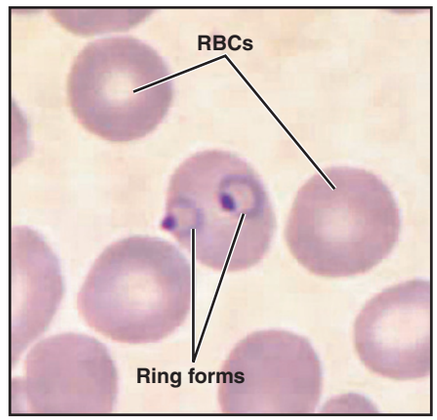
Many of the released merozoites infect other RBCs within a few seconds to renew the cycle in the bloodstream. If only 1% of the RBCs contain parasites, an estimated 100 billion parasites will be in circulation at one time in a typical malaria patient.

Some of the merozoites develop into male or female *gametocytes*. When these enter the digestive tract of a feeding mosquito, they pass through a sexual cycle that produces new infective sporozoites. It took the combined labors of several generations of scientists to unravel this complex life cycle of the malaria parasite.

People who survive malaria acquire a limited immunity. Although they can be reinfected, they tend to have a less severe form of the disease. This relative immunity almost disappears if the person leaves an endemic area with its periodic reinfections. Malaria is especially dangerous during pregnancy



(a) Merozoites (greenish) inside RBCs SEM 2 μm



(b) Malarial blood smear; note the ring forms. LM 2 μm

Figure 23.25 Malaria. **(a)** Some of the red blood cells (RBCs) are lysing and releasing merozoites that will infect new RBCs. **(b)** Blood smears are used in diagnosing malaria; the protozoa can be detected growing in the RBCs. In the early stages, the feeding protozoan resembles a ring within the RBC. The light central area within the circular ring is the food vacuole of the protozoan, and the dark spot on the ring is the nucleus.

Q **Look at the life cycle of the malarial parasite in Figure 12.20. Which of these stages, (a) or (b), actually occurs first?**

because of a decrease in CD4+ and CD8+ T cells and because the new organ (placenta) provides another place for the parasite to multiply.

Diagnosis of Malaria

The most common diagnostic test for malaria is the blood smear, which requires a microscope. It is also time-consuming and requires skill in interpretation. It is still the "gold standard" for diagnosis when a well-trained technician is available. Rapid, antigen-detecting diagnostic tests that can be performed by staff with minimal training have been developed but are relatively expensive. High-quality rapid diagnostic tests that are affordable and perform reliably under field conditions are urgently needed. In endemic areas malaria is commonly diagnosed by simply observing symptoms, mainly fever, but this frequently leads to misdiagnosis. It has been found that only about half of such patients given prescriptions for antimalarial drugs actually had the disease.

Prophylaxis and Therapy for Malaria

There are two considerations for antimalarial drugs: for prophylaxis (prevention) or for treatment.

Prophylaxis For travel to the few areas in which the *Plasmodium* is still sensitive to it, chloroquine is the drug of choice. In chloroquine-resistant areas, atovaquone is the best tolerated. Travelers to malarial areas are often prescribed mefloquine. It requires only a weekly dosage, but users must be cautioned about serious side effects. These include dizziness and loss of balance, which may become permanent. Some of the psychiatric symptoms, such as depression and hallucinations, may persist for years, even after the drug is no longer being used.

Therapy There is a lengthy list of antimalarial drugs available; recommendations and requirements vary with cost, likelihood of developing resistance, and other factors. In the United States, if the species cannot be identified, it should be assumed that the patient is infected with *P. falciparum*. If the patient is from an area still sensitive to chloroquine, it is the drug of choice; for patients coming from chloroquine-resistant zones, there are several options. The two currently preferred are artesunate and artemether.

The World Health Organization (WHO) recommends artemisinin combination therapies (ACT) for treatment of malaria worldwide. ACT consists of a semisynthetic derivative of artemisinin and a longer-acting drug such as mefloquine. ACTs are not used for prophylaxis. Artesunate is the only artemisinin approved for use in the United States. The short-lived artemisinin component of ACT is intended to remove most of the parasites; the partner drug, with an extended period of activity, is intended to eliminate the remainder.

As with other tropical diseases, the availability of medications is limited by the very low income of most of the people affected, which makes drug development unprofitable. The most profitable application of antimalarials will probably continue to be prophylaxis of travelers to malarial areas.

Malaria Vaccines

As previously discussed, the malarial parasite reproduces in a series of stages. The number of parasites that would serve as targets for a vaccine vary greatly in these stages. The sporozoite stage involves few pathogens and was an early target for experimental vaccines. In contrast, in the liver stage, the vaccine would need to deal with hundreds of pathogens. Once the parasite begins to proliferate in the blood, the numbers quickly reach into the trillions. Vaccines targeting this stage are likely only to moderate symptoms. Thus, an intriguing concept in vaccine development is the *transmission-blocking vaccine*. The idea is to use the human host to generate antibodies and deliver them to the biting mosquito. There, instead of dealing with trillions of parasites, the vaccine needs to deal only with the relative handful in the mosquito. Obviously, the disadvantage is that the recipients of the vaccine are not themselves protected from malaria, though widespread vaccination would reduce the likelihood of transmission to others.

In any event, large amounts of money and resources are now directed at developing an effective malaria vaccine. A truly global vaccine would have to control not only *P. falciparum* but also the widespread, although milder, *P. vivax*. There are special problems in developing such a vaccine. For example, in its various stages, the pathogen has as many as 7000 genes that can mutate. The result is that the parasite is very efficient at evading the human immune response.

Currently, the WHO recommends the new Mosquirix vaccine for children (6 weeks to 17 months) in sub-Saharan Africa, where *P. falciparum* is common. Mosquirix consists of surface proteins of *P. falciparum* sporozoite fused to hepatitis B virus proteins. The vaccine offers some protection against hepatitis B, but that is not its primary use, The ultimate goal is to have a vaccine for children that protects against all *Plasmodium* spp. and lasts longer than a year.

Other Prevention Efforts

Effective control of malaria is not in sight. It will probably require a combination of vector control and chemotherapeutic and immunological approaches.

Currently, the most promising preventative method is the use of insecticide-treated bed nets, because the *Anopheles* mosquito is a night feeder. In malarial areas, a sleeping room often will contain hundreds of mosquitoes, 1–5% of which are infectious. The cost of providing bed nets and the need for an effective political organization in malarial areas to do so are challenges; overcoming them may be as important in controlling the disease as advances in medical research.

Leishmaniasis

Leishmaniasis is a widespread and complex disease that exhibits several clinical forms. The protozoan pathogens are of about 20 *Leishmania* species, often categorized into three groups described next. Leishmaniasis is transmitted by the bite of female sandflies, about 30 species of which are found in much of the tropical world and around the Mediterranean. These insects are smaller than mosquitoes and often penetrate the mesh of standard netting. Small mammals are an unaffected reservoir of the protozoans. The infective form, the *promastigote*, is in the saliva of the insect. It loses its flagellum when it penetrates the skin of the mammalian victim, becoming an *amastigote* that proliferates in phagocytic cells, mostly in fixed locations in tissue. These amastigotes are then ingested by feeding sandflies, renewing the cycle. Contact with contaminated blood from transfusions or shared needles can also lead to infection.

Visceral leishmaniasis has emerged as an important opportunistic infection associated with HIV. In southern Europe, up to 70% of cases of visceral leishmaniasis in adults are associated with HIV infection.

Leishmania donovani Infection (Visceral Leishmaniasis)

Leishmania donovani (lI-sh-MAN-ē-ah DAH-nō-van-ē) infection occurs in much of the tropical world, although 90% of the cases occur in India, Ethiopia, Somalia, South Sudan, Sudan, and Brazil. Estimates are that about half a million cases occur per year. Visceral leishmaniasis is often fatal. Early symptoms, following infection by as long as a year, resemble the chills and sweating of malaria. As the protozoa proliferate in the liver and spleen, these organs enlarge greatly. Eventually, the kidneys are also invaded, and kidney function is lost. This is a debilitating disease that, if untreated, will lead to death within a year or two.

Several inexpensive serological tests that are easy to use have been developed to diagnose visceral leishmaniasis. These have generally replaced microscopic examination of blood and tissues to demonstrate the parasite. PCR tests are useful to confirm diagnosis but usually require a central laboratory.

The first-line treatment in Europe and the United States is liposomal amphotericin B, but it's relatively expensive for endemic countries. In many of these areas, conventional formulations of amphotericin B or meglumine antimoniate, which contains the toxic metal antimony, are in use. The first effective oral drug is miltefosine. It has demonstrated a cure rate as high as 82%; however, it is teratogenic, rapidly triggers resistance, and is toxic to a significant number of recipients. An inexpensive injectable aminoglycoside antibiotic, paromomycin, has shown good effectiveness.

Leishmania tropica Infection (Cutaneous Leishmaniasis)

Leishmania tropica (TROP-i-kah) and *L. major* infection cause a cutaneous form of leishmaniasis. A papule appears at the bite site after a few weeks of incubation (Figure 23.26). The papule ulcerates and, after healing, leaves a prominent scar. This form of the disease is the most common and is found in much of Asia, Africa, and the Mediterranean region. It has been reported in Latin America; since 2000, locally acquired cases have occurred in Texas and Oklahoma.

Figure 23.26 Cutaneous leishmaniasis. Lesion on the back of the hand of a patient.

Q Is this case likely to progress to visceral leishmaniasis?

Leishmania braziliensis Infection (Mucocutaneous Leishmaniasis)

Leishmania braziliensis (brah-ZIL-ē-en-sis) infection is known as mucocutaneous leishmaniasis because it affects mucous membranes as well as skin. It causes disfiguring destruction of the tissues of the nose, mouth, and upper throat. This form of leishmaniasis is most commonly found in the Yucatán Peninsula of Mexico and in the rain forest areas of Central and South America; it often affects workers harvesting the chicle sap used for making chewing gum. This disease is often referred to as *American leishmaniasis*.

Diagnosis of cutaneous and mucocutaneous leishmaniasis in the areas where they are endemic usually depends on clinical appearance and microscopic examination of the lesion scrapings.

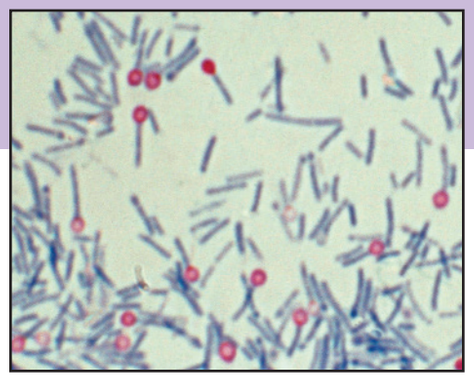
Mild cases of cutaneous and mucocutaneous disease will often eventually resolve without treatment.

Babesiosis

There have been increased reports of **babesiosis**, a tickborne disease once thought to be restricted to animals. It is now a nationally notifiable disease. Rodents are the reservoir in the wild; the tick vectors are most commonly *Ixodes* species. The field of medical entomology largely arose from investigations in the nineteenth century by the American microbiologist Theobald Smith into bovine babesiosis, or tick fever, in Texas cattle. The human disease in the United States is caused by a

DISEASES IN FOCUS 23.5 Infections Transmitted by Soil and Water

A minority of systemic infections are acquired by contact with soil and water. The pathogens usually enter through a break in the skin. For example, a 65-year-old man with poor circulation in his legs develops an infection following injury to a toe. Dead tissue further reduces circulation, requiring amputation of two toes. Use the following table to make a differential diagnosis and identify infections that could cause these symptoms.



Gram-stained bacteria from the patient's toe. LM 2.5 μm

Disease	Pathogen	Signs and Symptoms	Reservoir	Method of Transmission	Treatment
BACTERIAL DISEASE					
Gangrene	*Clostridium perfringens*	Tissue death at infection site	Soil	Puncture wound	Surgical removal of necrotic tissue
HELMINTHIC DISEASE					
Schistosomiasis	*Schistosoma* spp.	Inflammation and tissue damage at site of granulomas (e.g., liver, lungs, bladder)	Definitive host (mammals)	Cercariae penetrate skin	Praziquantel Prevention: sanitation; elimination of host snail

protozoan, usually *Babesia microti*. The disease resembles malaria in some respects and has been mistaken for it; the parasites replicate in the RBCs and cause a prolonged illness of fever, chills, and night sweats. It can be much more serious, sometimes fatal, in immunocompromised patients. For example, the first human cases were observed in persons who had undergone splenectomy (removal of the spleen). Simultaneous treatment with the drugs atovaquone and azithromycin has been effective.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **23-17** What tickborne disease in the United States is sometimes mistaken for malaria when blood smears are inspected?
- **23-18** Eliminating which of these diseases, malaria or Chagas disease, would have the greater effect on the well-being of the population of Africa?

Helminthic Disease of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

23-19 Diagram the life cycle of *Schistosoma*, and show where the cycle can be interrupted to prevent human disease.

Many helminths use the cardiovascular system for part of their life cycle. Schistosomes find a home there, shedding eggs that are distributed in the bloodstream. See **Diseases in Focus 23.5**.

Schistosomiasis

Schistosomiasis is a debilitating disease caused by a small fluke. It is probably second only to malaria in the number of people it kills or disables. The symptoms of the disease result from eggs shed by adult schistosomes in the human host. These adult helminths are 15 to 20 mm long, and the slender female lives permanently in a groove in the body of the male, from which is derived the name: *schistosome*, or split-body (**Figure 23.27a**). The union between the male and female produces a continuing supply of new eggs. Some of these eggs lodge in tissues. Defensive reactions of the human host to these foreign bodies cause local tissue damage called **granulomas** (**Figure 23.28**). Other eggs are excreted and enter the water to continue the cycle.

The life cycle of *Schistosoma* is depicted in Figure 23.27b. The disease is spread by human feces or urine carrying eggs of the schistosome that enter water supplies with which humans come into contact. In the developed world, sewage and water treatment minimizes the contamination of the water supply. Also, snails of certain species are essential for one stage of the life cycle of the schistosomes. They produce the cercariae that penetrate the skin of a human entering contaminated water. In

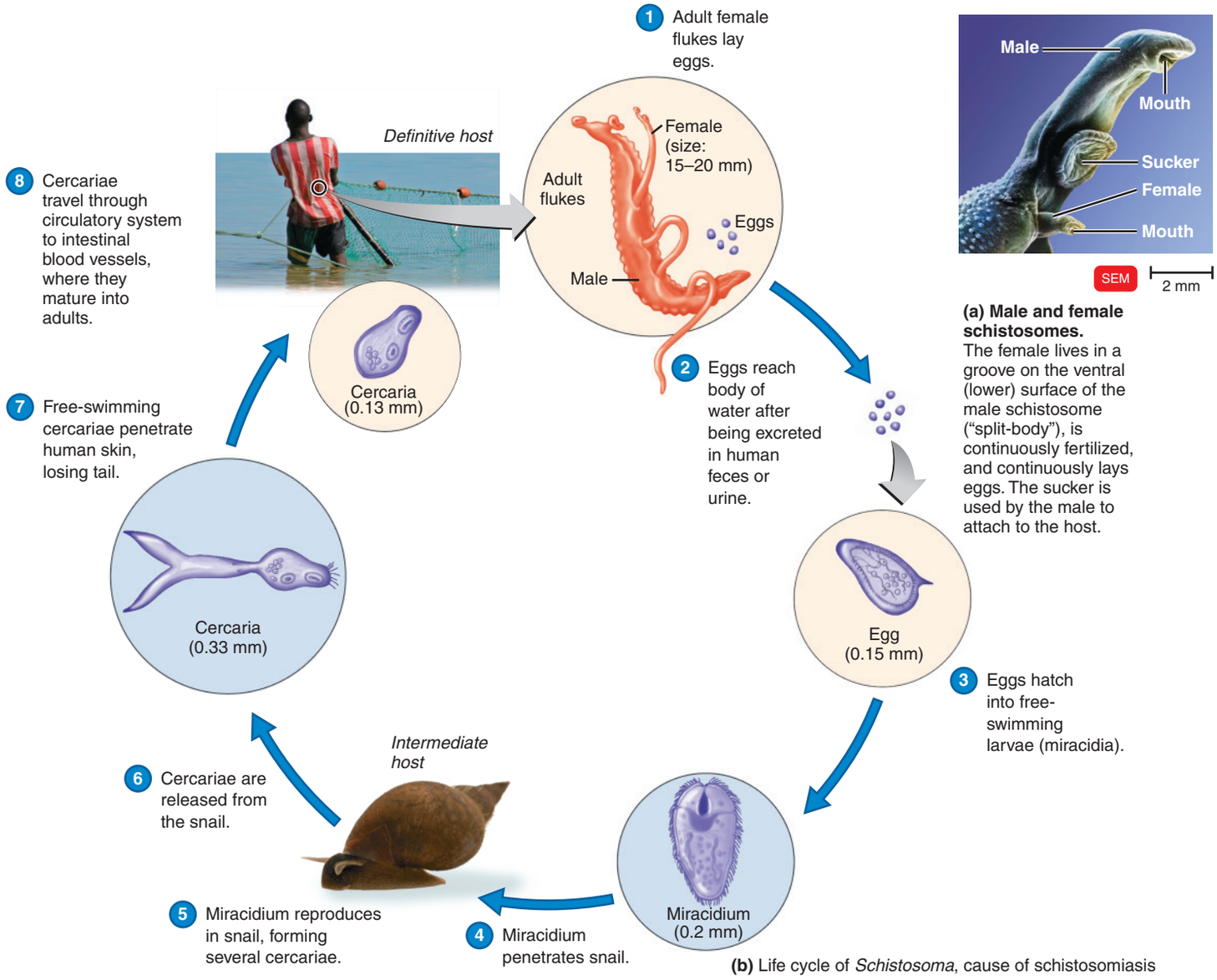


Figure 23.27 Schistosomiasis.

Q What is the role of sanitation and snails in maintaining schistosomiasis in a population?

most areas of the United States, a suitable host snail isn't present. Therefore, even though it's estimated that schistosome eggs are being shed by many immigrants, the disease is not being propagated.

There are two primary types of schistosomiasis. The disease caused by *Schistosoma haematobium* (shis-tō-SŌ-mah hē-mah-TŌ-bē-um), sometimes called urinary schistosomiasis, results in inflammation of the urinary bladder wall. Similarly, *S. haematobium*, *S. japonicum*, and *S. mansoni* cause intestinal inflammation. Depending on the species, schistosomiasis can cause damage to many different organs when eggs migrate in the bloodstream to different areas—for example, damage to the liver or lungs, urinary bladder cancer, or, when eggs lodge in the brain, neurological symptoms. Geographically, *S. japonicum* is found in east Asia. *S. haematobium* infects many people throughout Africa and the Middle East, most particularly Egypt. *S. mansoni* has a similar distribution but also is endemic in South America and the Caribbean, including Puerto Rico. It's estimated that more than 250 million of the world's population are affected.

The adult worms appear to be unaffected by the host's immune system. Apparently, they quickly coat themselves with a layer that mimics the host's tissues.

Laboratory diagnosis consists of microscopic identification of the flukes or their eggs in fecal and urine specimens, intradermal tests, and serological tests such as complement-fixation and precipitin tests.

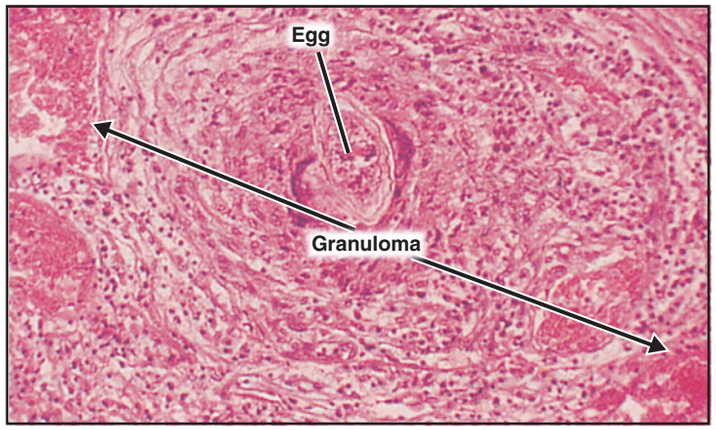


Figure 23.28 A granuloma from a patient with schistosomes. Some of the eggs laid by the adult schistosomes lodge in the tissue, and the body responds to the irritant by surrounding it with scarlike tissue, forming a granuloma.

Q Why is the immune system ineffective against adult schistosomes?

Schistosomiasis is treated with praziquantel. Sanitation and elimination of the host snail are also useful forms of control.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

23-19 What freshwater organism is essential to the life cycle of the pathogen causing schistosomiasis?

Disease of Unknown Etiology

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

23-20 Recognize the clinical features of Kawasaki syndrome.

Kawasaki Syndrome

Probably the most common cause of acquired heart disease in the United States (replacing rheumatic fever) is an acute febrile illness of unknown etiology, **Kawasaki syndrome (KS)**. As many as 5000 cases are diagnosed in the United States annually. It most often affects younger children, especially boys under the age of 5. Patients with the disease suffer a high and persistent fever, widespread skin rash, and swelling of the hands and feet and of the lymph nodes in the neck. Without treatment, mortality may be about 1% but is much lower with effective treatment, involving aspirin (which affects blood clotting) and an intravenously administered immunoglobulin. KS is diagnosed primarily from its clinical signs and symptoms; there is no laboratory test available. KS may be triggered by an infection, although no specific pathogen is known. Recent evidence supporting a relationship to viral infection is shown by the occurrence of multisystem inflammatory syndrome in children (MIS-C) associated with COVID-19. Signs and symptoms of MIS-C are similar to those of KS.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

23-20 What diseases of the cardiovascular and lymphoid systems need to be ruled out before a clinician can conclude that a patient has Kawasaki syndrome?

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

Dengue is transmitted by mosquitoes. Worldwide there are 100 million cases of dengue each year. Cases of dengue in returning U.S. travelers have increased steadily during the past 20 years. Dengue is now the leading cause of acute febrile illness in U.S. travelers returning from the Caribbean, South America, and Asia. Many of these travelers are still viremic upon return to the United States and are potentially capable of introducing dengue virus into a community with competent mosquito vectors. Katie's illness, which occurred in 2009, represents the first dengue case acquired in the continental United States outside the Texas–Mexico border since 1945 and the first locally acquired case in Florida since 1934. Concern about the potential for emergence of dengue in the continental United States has increased in recent years. The most efficient mosquito vector, *Aedes aegypti*, is found in the southern and southeastern United States. A secondary vector, *A. albopictus*, has spread throughout the southeastern United States since its introduction in 1985 and was responsible for a dengue outbreak in Hawaii in 2001.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5

Study Outline

Structure and Function of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems (pp. 655–656)

1. The heart, blood, and blood vessels make up the cardiovascular system.
2. Lymph plasma, lymph vessels, lymph nodes, and lymphoid organs constitute the lymphoid system.
3. Blood plasma transports dissolved substances. Red blood cells carry oxygen. White blood cells are involved in the body's defense against infection.
4. Fluid that filters out of capillaries into spaces between tissue cells is called interstitial fluid.

5. Interstitial fluid enters lymph capillaries and is called lymph plasma; vessels called lymphatics return lymph plasma to the blood.
6. Lymph nodes contain fixed macrophages, B cells, and T cells.

Bacterial Diseases of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems (pp. 656–672)

Sepsis and Septic Shock (pp. 656–658)

1. Sepsis is an inflammatory response caused by the spread of bacteria or their toxin from a focus of infection. Septicemia is sepsis that involves proliferation of pathogens in the blood.
2. Gram-negative sepsis can lead to septic shock, characterized by decreased blood pressure. Endotoxin causes the symptoms.
3. Antibiotic-resistant enterococci and group B streptococci cause gram-positive sepsis.
4. Puerperal sepsis begins as an infection of the uterus following childbirth or abortion; it can progress to peritonitis or septicemia.
5. *S. pyogenes* is the most frequent cause of puerperal sepsis.
6. Oliver Wendell Holmes and Ignaz Semmelweiss demonstrated that puerperal sepsis was transmitted by the hands and instruments of attending physicians.

Bacterial Infections of the Heart (pp. 658–659)

7. The inner layer of the heart is the endocardium.
8. Subacute bacterial endocarditis is usually caused by alpha-hemolytic streptococci, staphylococci, or enterococci.
9. The infection arises from a focus of infection, such as a tooth extraction.
10. Preexisting heart abnormalities are predisposing factors.
11. Signs include fever, weakness, and heart murmur.
12. Acute bacterial endocarditis is usually caused by *S. aureus*.
13. The bacteria cause rapid destruction of heart valves.
14. Rheumatic fever is an autoimmune complication of streptococcal infections.
15. Rheumatic fever is expressed as arthritis or inflammation of the heart. It can result in permanent heart damage.
16. Antibodies against group A beta-hemolytic streptococci react with streptococcal antigens deposited in joints or heart valves or cross-react with the heart muscle.
17. Rheumatic fever can follow a streptococcal infection, such as streptococcal sore throat. Streptococci might not be present at the time of rheumatic fever.
18. Prompt treatment of streptococcal infections can reduce the incidence of rheumatic fever.
19. Penicillin is administered as a preventive measure against subsequent streptococcal infections.

Tularemia (p. 660)

20. Tularemia is caused by *F. tularensis*. The reservoir is small wild mammals, especially rabbits.
21. Signs include ulceration at the site of entry, followed by septicemia and pneumonia.

Brucellosis (Undulant Fever) (pp. 660–661)

22. Brucellosis can be caused by *B. abortus*, *B. melitensis*, and *B. suis*.
23. The bacteria enter through minute breaks in the mucosa or skin, reproduce in macrophages, and spread via lymphatics to liver, spleen, or bone marrow.
24. Signs include malaise and fever that spikes each evening (undulant fever).
25. Diagnosis is based on serological tests.

Anthrax (pp. 661–663)

26. *B. anthracis* causes anthrax. In soil, endospores can survive for up to 60 years.
27. Grazing animals acquire an infection after ingesting the endospores.
28. Humans contract anthrax by handling hides from infected animals. The endospores enter through cuts in the skin, respiratory tract, or mouth.
29. Entry through the skin results in a papule that can progress to sepsis. Entry through the respiratory tract can result in septic shock.
30. Diagnosis is based on isolating and identifying the bacteria.

Gangrene (pp. 663–664)

31. Soft tissue death from ischemia (loss of blood supply) is called gangrene.
32. Microorganisms grow on nutrients released from gangrenous cells.
33. Gangrene is especially susceptible to the growth of anaerobic bacteria such as *C. perfringens*, the causative agent of gas gangrene.
34. *C. perfringens* can invade the wall of the uterus during improperly performed abortions.
35. Surgical removal of necrotic tissue, hyperbaric chambers, and amputation are used to treat gas gangrene.

Systemic Diseases Caused by Bites and Scratches (pp. 664–665)

36. *P. multocida*, introduced by the bite of a dog or cat, can cause septicemia.
37. Anaerobic bacteria infect deep animal bites.
38. Cat-scratch disease is caused by *B. henselae*.
39. Rat-bite fever is caused by *S. moniliformis* and *S. minus*.

Vector-Transmitted Diseases (pp. 665–672)

40. Plague is caused by *Y. pestis*. The vector is usually the rat flea (*Xenopsylla cheopis*).
41. Relapsing fever is caused by *Borrelia* spp. and transmitted by soft ticks.
42. Lyme disease is caused by *Borreliella burgdorferi* and is transmitted by a tick (*Ixodes*).
43. Human ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis are caused by *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma* and are transmitted by *Ixodes* ticks.
44. Typhus is caused by rickettsias, obligate intracellular parasites of eukaryotic cells.
45. Spotted fever rickettsioses, caused by several *Rickettsia* spp., result in macular rashes.

Viral Diseases of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems (pp. 673–679)

Burkitt's Lymphoma (p. 673)

1. Epstein-Barr virus (EB virus, HHV-4) causes Burkitt's lymphoma.
2. Burkitt's lymphoma tends to occur in patients whose immune system has been weakened; for example, by malaria or AIDS.

Infectious Mononucleosis (p. 674)

3. Infectious mononucleosis is caused by EB virus.
4. The virus multiplies in the parotid glands and is present in saliva. It causes the proliferation of atypical lymphocytes.

5. The disease is transmitted by the ingestion of saliva from infected individuals.
6. Diagnosis is made by an indirect fluorescent-antibody technique.

Other Diseases and Epstein-Barr Virus (p. 674)

7. EB virus is associated with certain cancers and autoimmune diseases.

***Cytomegalovirus* Infections** (pp. 674–675)

8. CMV (HHV-5) causes intranuclear inclusion bodies and cytomegaly of host cells.
9. CMV is transmitted by saliva and other body fluids.
10. CMV inclusion disease can be asymptomatic, mild, or progressive and fatal. Immunosuppressed patients may develop pneumonia.
11. If the virus crosses the placenta, it can cause congenital infection of the fetus, resulting in impaired mental development, neurological damage, and stillbirth.

Chikungunya (p. 675)

12. The chikungunya virus, which causes fever and severe joint pain, is transmitted by *Aedes* mosquitoes.

Classic Viral Hemorrhagic Fevers (pp. 675–678)

13. Yellow fever is caused by the *Flavivirus yellow fever virus*. The vector is the *A. aegypti* mosquito.
14. Signs and symptoms include fever, chills, headache, nausea, and jaundice.
15. Diagnosis is based on the presence of virus-neutralizing antibodies in the host.
16. No treatment is available, but there is an attenuated, live viral vaccine.
17. Dengue is caused by the *Flavivirus Dengue virus* and is transmitted by the *Aedes* mosquito.
18. Signs are fever, muscle and joint pain, and rash.
19. Severe dengue is characterized by bleeding and organ failure.
20. Mosquito abatement is necessary to control the disease.

Emerging Viral Hemorrhagic Fevers (pp. 678–679)

21. Human diseases caused by Marburg, Ebola, and Lassa fever viruses were first noticed in the late 1960s.
22. *Ebolavirus* is found in fruit bats; Lassa fever viruses are found in rodents. Rodents are the reservoirs for Argentine and Bolivian hemorrhagic fevers.
23. Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome and hemorrhagic fever with renal syndrome are caused by *Orthohantavirus*. The virus is contracted by inhalation of dried rodent urine and feces.

Fungal Disease of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems (p. 679)

1. *C. auris* yeast causes sepsis in health care settings.

Protozoan Diseases of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems (pp. 679–686)

Chagas Disease (American Trypanosomiasis) (pp. 679–681)

1. *T. cruzi* causes Chagas disease. The reservoir includes many wild animals. The vector is a reduviid, the "kissing bug."

Toxoplasmosis (pp. 681–682)

2. Toxoplasmosis is caused by *T. gondii*.
3. *T. gondii* undergoes sexual reproduction in the small intestine of domestic cats, and oocysts are eliminated in cat feces.
4. In the host cell, sporozoites reproduce to form either tissue-invading tachyzoites or bradyzoites.
5. Humans contract the infection by ingesting tachyzoites or tissue cysts in undercooked meat from an infected animal or contact with cat feces.
6. Congenital infections can occur. Signs and symptoms include severe brain damage or vision problems.

Malaria (pp. 682–684)

7. The signs and symptoms of malaria are chills, fever, vomiting, and headache, which occur at intervals of 2 to 3 days.
8. Malaria is transmitted by *Anopheles* mosquitoes. The causative agent is any one of four species of *Plasmodium*.
9. Sporozoites reproduce in the liver and release merozoites into the bloodstream, where they infect red blood cells and produce more merozoites.

Leishmaniasis (p. 685)

10. *Leishmania* spp., which are transmitted by sandflies, cause leishmaniasis.
11. The protozoa reproduce in the liver, spleen, and kidneys.
12. Leishmaniasis is treated with liposomal amphotericin B.

Babesiosis (pp. 685–686)

13. Babesiosis is caused by the protozoan *B. microti* and is transmitted to humans by ticks.

Helminthic Disease of the Cardiovascular and Lymphoid Systems (pp. 686–688)

Schistosomiasis (pp. 686–688)

1. Species of the blood fluke *Schistosoma* cause schistosomiasis.
2. Eggs eliminated with feces hatch into larvae that infect the intermediate host, a snail. Free-swimming cercariae are released from the snail and penetrate the skin of a human.
3. The adult flukes live in the veins of the liver or urinary bladder in humans.
4. Granulomas are from the host's defense to eggs that remain in the body.
5. Observation of eggs or flukes in feces, skin tests, or indirect serological tests may be used for diagnosis.
6. Chemotherapy is used to treat the disease; sanitation and snail eradication are used to prevent it.

Disease of Unknown Etiology (p. 688)

Kawasaki Syndrome (p. 688)

1. Kawasaki syndrome is characterized by fever, rash, and swollen lymph nodes in the neck. The cause is unknown.

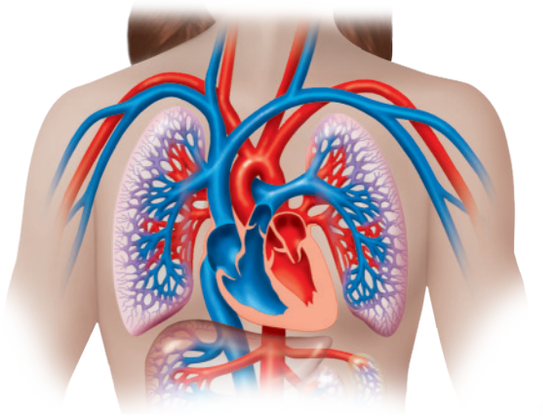
Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. DRAW IT Show the path of *Streptococcus* from a focal infection to the pericardium. Identify the portals of entry for *T. cruzi*, *Orthohantavirus*, and *Cytomegalovirus*.



2. Complete the following table.

Disease	Frequent Causative Agent	Predisposing Condition(s)
Puerperal sepsis		
Subacute bacterial endocarditis		
Acute bacterial endocarditis		
Rheumatic fever		

3. Compare and contrast epidemic typhus, endemic murine typhus, and tickborne typhus.
4. Complete the following table.

Disease	Causative Agent	Vector	Treatment
Malaria			
Yellow fever			
Dengue			
Relapsing fever			
Leishmaniasis			

5. Complete the following table.

Disease	Causative Agent	Transmission	Reservoir
Tularemia			
Brucellosis			
Anthrax			
Lyme disease			
Ehrlichiosis			
Cytomegalic inclusion disease			
Plague			

6. List the causative agent, method of transmission, and reservoir for schistosomiasis, toxoplasmosis, and Chagas disease. Which disease are you most likely to get in the United States? Where are the other diseases endemic?
7. Compare and contrast cat-scratch disease and toxoplasmosis.
8. Why is *C. perfringens* likely to grow in gangrenous wounds?
9. List the causative agent and method of transmission of infectious mononucleosis.
10. NAME IT Most people have been infected with this microorganism, often without symptoms. Infection during pregnancy can result in deafness or intellectual disabilities in the newborn.

Multiple Choice

Use the following choices to answer questions 1 through 4:

a. ehrlichiosis
b. Lyme disease
c. septic shock
d. toxoplasmosis
e. viral hemorrhagic fever

1. A patient presents with a history of fever and headache. Bacterial cultures of blood, CSF, and stool are negative. What is your diagnosis?
2. A patient was hospitalized because of continuing fever and progression of symptoms including headache, fatigue, and back pain. Tests for antibodies to *B. burgdorferi* were negative. What is your diagnosis?
3. A patient complained of headache. A CT (computed tomography) scan revealed cysts of varying size in the patient's brain. What is your diagnosis?
4. A patient presents with mental confusion, rapid breathing and heart rate, and low blood pressure. What is your diagnosis?
5. A patient has a red circular rash on his arm and fever, malaise, and joint pain. The most appropriate treatment is
   a. antibiotics.
   b. chloroquine.
   c. anti-inflammatory drugs.
   d. antimony.
   e. no treatment.

6. Which of the following is not a tickborne disease?
   a. babesiosis
   b. ehrlichiosis
   c. Lyme disease
   d. relapsing fever
   e. tularemia

Use the following choices to answer questions 7 and 8:
   a. brucellosis
   b. malaria
   c. relapsing fever
   d. Rocky Mountain spotted fever
   e. Ebola

7. The patient's fever spikes each evening. Oxidase-positive, gram-negative coccobacilli were isolated from a lesion on his arm. What is your diagnosis?
8. The patient was hospitalized with fever and headache. Spirochetes were observed in her blood. What is your diagnosis?
9. Which of these diseases has the highest incidence in the United States?
   a. brucellosis
   b. Ebola
   c. malaria
   d. plague
   e. Rocky Mountain spotted fever
10. Nineteen workers in a slaughterhouse developed fever and chills, with the fever spiking to 40°C each evening. The most likely method of transmission of this disease is
   a. a vector.
   b. the respiratory route.
   c. a puncture wound.
   d. an animal bite.
   e. water.

Analysis

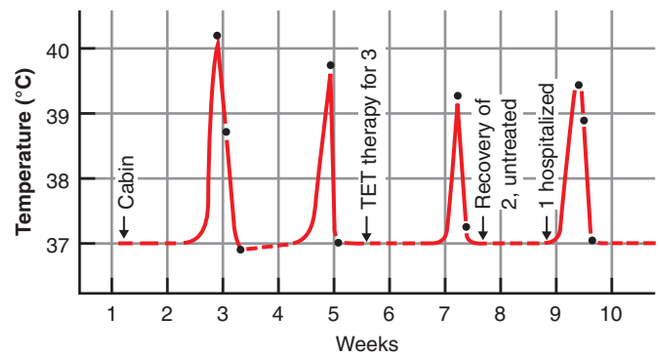
1. Indirect fluorescent-antibody (FA) tests on the serum of three 25-year-old women, each of whom is considering pregnancy, provided the following information. Which of these women may have toxoplasmosis? What advice might be given to each woman with regard to toxoplasmosis?

	Antibody Titer		
Patient	**Day 1**	**Day 5**	**Day 12**
Patient A	1024	1024	1024
Patient B	1024	2048	3072
Patient C	0	0	0

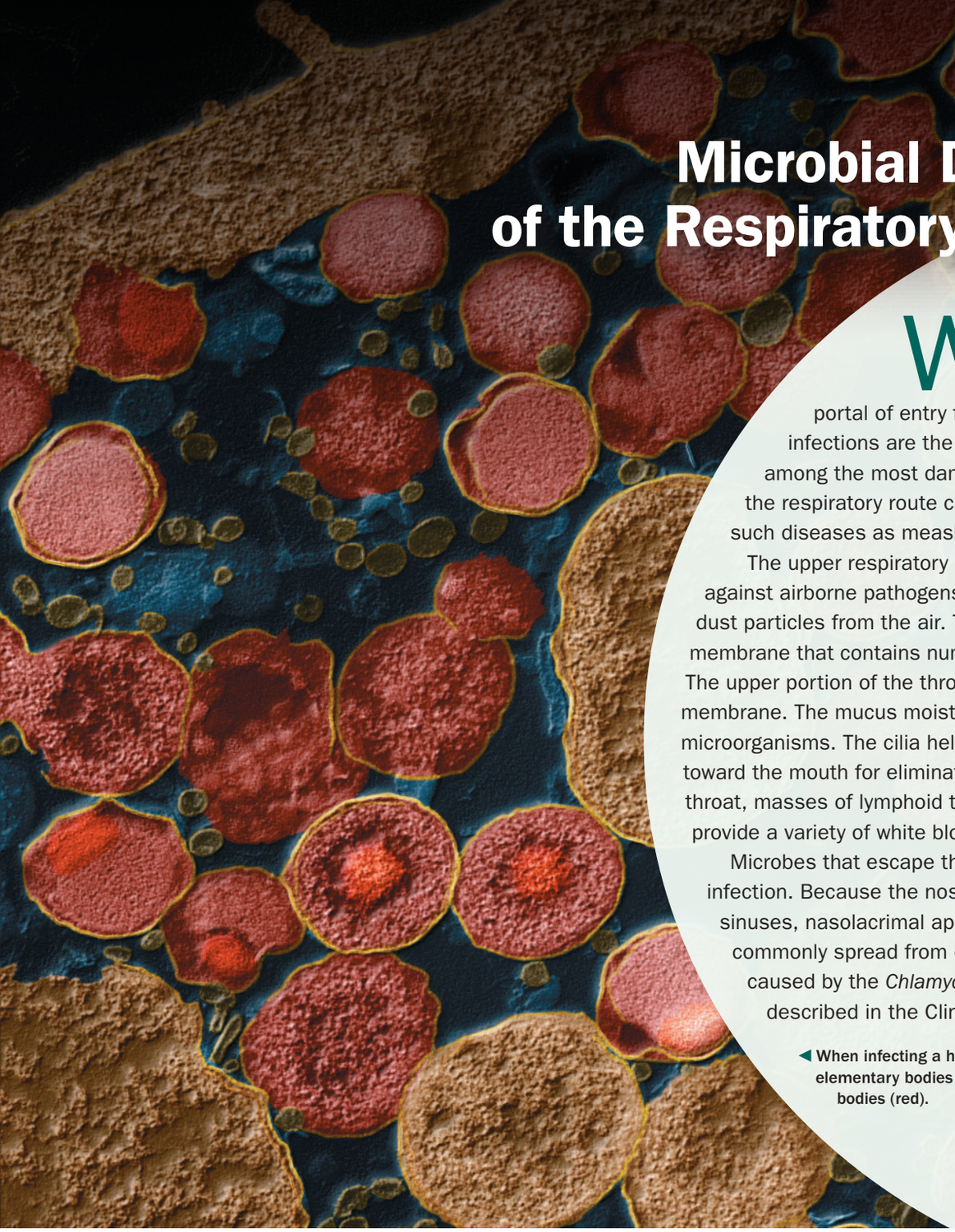
2. What is the most effective way to control malaria and dengue?
3. In 2016, a researcher noted "We have a vaccine that enhances dengue. Vaccine recipients less than 5 years old had five to seven times more rates of hospitalizations for severe dengue than placebo controls." Offer an explanation for this.

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. A 19-year-old man went deer hunting. While on the trail, he found a partially dismembered dead rabbit. The hunter picked up the front paws for good luck charms and gave them to another hunter in the party. The rabbit had been handled with bare hands that were bruised and scratched from the hunter's work as an automobile mechanic. Festering sores on his hands, legs, and knees were noted 2 days later. What infectious disease do you suspect the hunter has? How would you proceed to prove it?
2. On March 30, a 35-year-old veterinarian experienced fever, chills, and vomiting. On March 31, he was hospitalized with diarrhea, left armpit bubo, and secondary bilateral pneumonia. On March 27, he had treated a cat that had labored respiration; an X-ray image revealed pulmonary infiltrates. The cat died on March 28 and was disposed of. Chloramphenicol was administered to the veterinarian. On April 10, his temperature returned to normal, and on April 20, he was released from the hospital. Sixty human contacts were given tetracycline. Identify the incubation and prodromal periods for this case. Explain why the 60 contacts were treated. What was the etiologic agent? How would you identify the agent?
3. Three of five patients who underwent heart valve replacement surgery developed bacteremia. The causative agent was *Enterobacter cloacae*. What were the patients' signs and symptoms? How would you identify this bacterium? A manometer used in the operations was culture-positive for *E. cloacae*. What is the most likely source of this contaminant? Suggest a way of preventing such occurrences.
4. In August and September, six people who each at different times spent a night in the same cabin developed fever, as shown in the following graph. Three recovered after tetracycline (TET) therapy, two recovered without therapy, and one was hospitalized with septic shock. What is the disease? What is the incubation period of this disease? How do you account for the periodic temperature changes? What caused septic shock in the sixth patient?



5. A 67-year-old man worked in a textile mill that processed imported goat hair into fabrics. He noticed a painless, slightly swollen pimple on his chin. Two days later he developed a 1-cm ulcer at the pimple site and a temperature of 37.6°C. He was treated with tetracycline. What is the etiology of this disease? Suggest ways to prevent it.



Microbial Diseases of the Respiratory System 24

With every breath, we inhale microorganisms; therefore, the upper respiratory system is a major portal of entry for pathogens. In fact, respiratory system infections are the most common type of infection—and among the most damaging. Some pathogens that enter via the respiratory route can infect other parts of the body, causing such diseases as measles, mumps, and rubella.

The upper respiratory system has several anatomical defenses against airborne pathogens. Coarse hairs in the nose filter large dust particles from the air. The nose is lined with a mucous membrane that contains numerous mucus-secreting cells and cilia. The upper portion of the throat also contains a ciliated mucous membrane. The mucus moistens inhaled air and traps dust and microorganisms. The cilia help remove these particles by moving them toward the mouth for elimination. At the junction of the nose and throat, masses of lymphoid tissue—the tonsils—trap pathogens and provide a variety of white blood cells that contribute to immunity.

Microbes that escape these defenses may be able to cause infection. Because the nose and throat are connected to the sinuses, nasolacrimal apparatus, and middle ear, infections commonly spread from one region to another. Such an infection caused by the *Chlamydia psittaci* shown in the photograph is described in the Clinical Case in this chapter.

◀ **When infecting a host cell, *Chlamydia* bacteria produce infectious elementary bodies (small, brown) and noninfectious-reticulate bodies (red).**

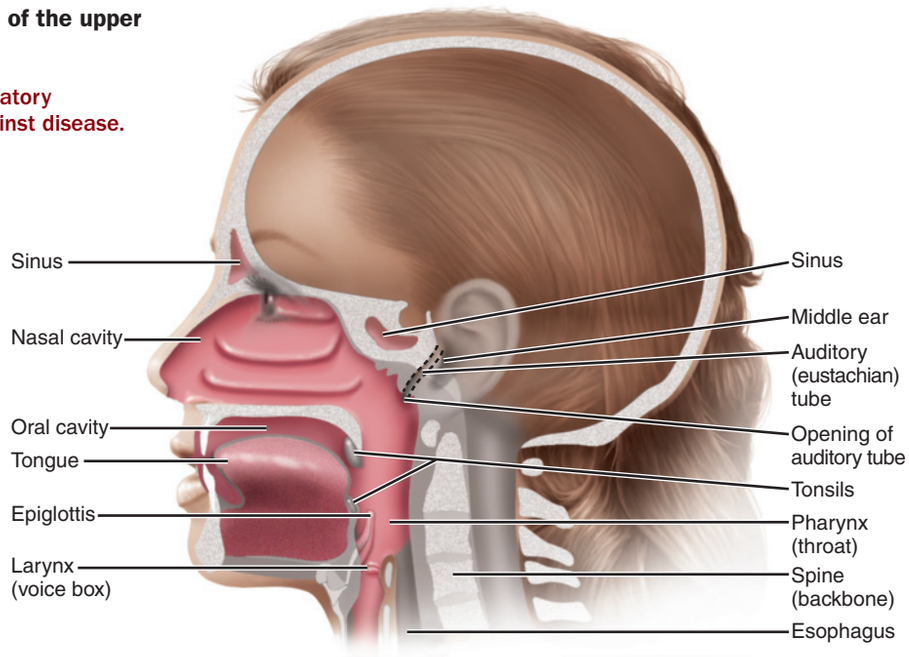
In the Clinic

As a nurse in a large university health services center, you've noticed the number of cases of students with respiratory infections coming to the center this winter is rising. Today, your patient is a 28-year-old student presenting with cough, sore throat, and congestion. She also says that she has experienced shortness of breath, headache, and fatigue for the past few days. Her temperature is 37.7°C (99.9°F). She asks you if she has a cold, the flu, or possibly COVID-19. You remember the nurse educator at your recent continuing education course explaining the differences among these diseases. **How are these diseases identified and differentiated?**

Hint: Read about influenza, the common cold, and COVID-19 later in this chapter.

Figure 24.1 Structures of the upper respiratory system.

Q Name the upper respiratory system's defenses against disease.



Structure and Function of the Respiratory System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

24-1 Describe how microorganisms are prevented from entering the respiratory system.

It's convenient to think of the respiratory system as being composed of two divisions: the upper respiratory system and the lower respiratory system. The **upper respiratory system** consists of the nose, pharynx (throat), larynx (voice box), and the structures associated with them, including the middle ear and the auditory (eustachian) tubes (Figure 24.1). Ducts from the sinuses (air-filled spaces in certain skull bones) and the nasolacrimal ducts from the lacrimal (tear-forming) apparatus empty into the nasal cavity (see Figure 16.2). The auditory tubes from the middle ear empty into the upper portion of the throat.

The **lower respiratory system** consists of the trachea (windpipe), bronchial tubes, and *pulmonary alveoli* (Figure 24.2). Pulmonary alveoli are air sacs that make up the lung tissue; within them, oxygen and carbon dioxide are exchanged between the lungs and blood. Our lungs contain more than 300 million pulmonary alveoli, with an area for gas exchange of 70 or more square meters in an average adult. The double-layered membrane enclosing the lungs is the *pleura*, or pleural membranes. A ciliated mucous membrane lines the lower respiratory system down to the smaller bronchial tubes and helps prevent microorganisms from reaching the alveoli.

Particles trapped in the larynx, trachea, and larger bronchial tubes are moved up toward the pharynx by a ciliary action called the *ciliary escalator* (see Figure 16.3). If microorganisms actually reach the lungs, phagocytic cells called *alveolar macrophages* usually locate, ingest, and destroy most of them. IgA antibodies in such secretions as respiratory mucus, saliva, and tears also help protect mucosal surfaces of the respiratory system from many pathogens. Thus, the body has several mechanisms for removing the pathogens that cause airborne infections.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

24-1 What is the function of hairs in the nasal passages?

CLINICAL CASE It's for the Birds

For the past 2 days, Caille Nguyen has had a fever and feels out of sorts. In fact, her entire family is sick. Her three children, Gabbie, Steven, and Tre, also have fevers. Caille's husband, Art, and Gabbie and Steven have no appetite and are beginning to lose weight. Everyone has a dry cough. At first Caille thinks the children are just sad because of the loss of Bitsy, their beloved cockatiel. The family had purchased the cockatiel from a local pet store 2 months earlier. Unfortunately, Bitsy had an increasingly difficult time breathing and could not stand erect; she had to be euthanized by a local veterinarian the week before.

What could be causing the Nguyen family's symptoms? Read on to find out.

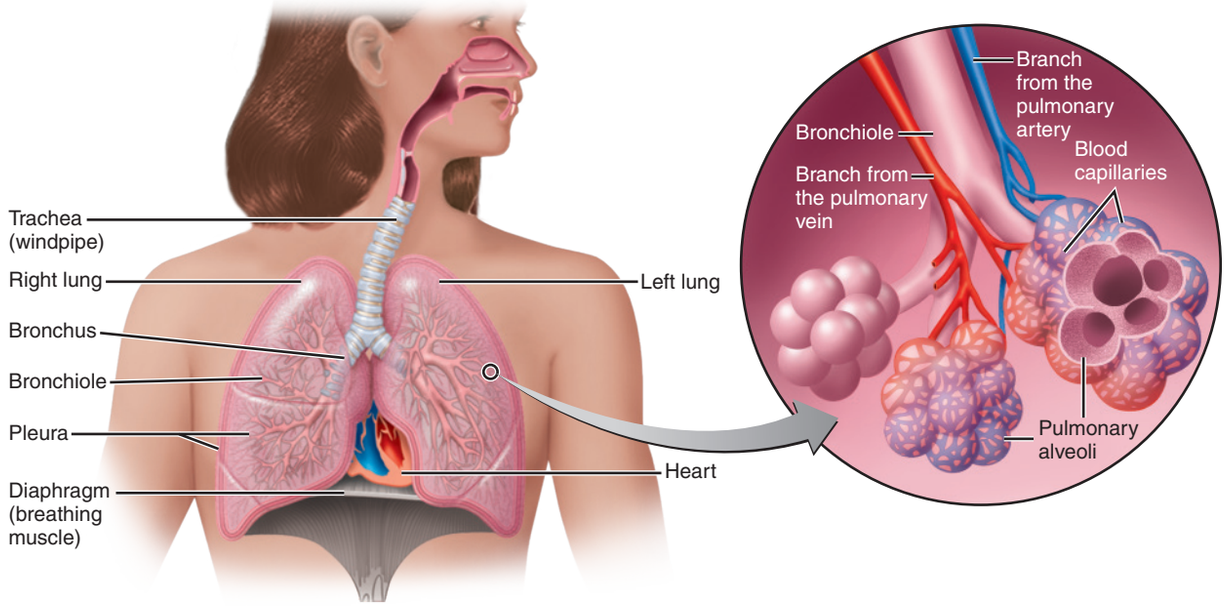


Figure 24.2 Structures of the lower respiratory system.

Q Name the lower respiratory system's defenses against disease.

Normal Microbiota of the Respiratory System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

24-2 Characterize the normal microbiota of the upper and lower respiratory systems.

A number of potentially pathogenic microorganisms are part of the normal microbiota in the respiratory system. However, they usually do not cause illness because the predominant microorganisms of the normal microbiota suppress their growth by competing with them for nutrients and producing inhibitory substances.

The lung microbiome is described in the **Exploring the Microbiome** box.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

24-2 Normally, the lower respiratory tract is nearly sterile. What is the primary mechanism responsible?

Microbial Diseases of the Upper Respiratory System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

24-3 Differentiate pharyngitis, laryngitis, tonsillitis, sinusitis, and epiglottitis.

As most of us know from personal experience, the respiratory system is the site of many common infections. We will soon discuss **pharyngitis**, inflammation of the mucous membranes of the throat, or sore throat. When the larynx is the site of infection, **laryngitis** affects our ability to speak. The microbes that cause pharyngitis also can cause inflamed tonsils, or **tonsillitis**.

The nasal sinuses are cavities in certain cranial bones that open into the nasal cavity. They have a mucous-membrane lining that is continuous with that of the nasal cavity. Infection of a sinus involving heavy nasal discharge of mucus is called **sinusitis**. If the opening by which the mucus leaves the sinus becomes blocked, internal pressure can cause pain or a sinus headache. These diseases are almost always *self-limiting*, meaning that recovery will usually occur even without medical intervention.

Probably the most threatening infectious disease of the upper respiratory system is **epiglottitis**, inflammation of the epiglottis. The epiglottis is a flaplike structure of cartilage that prevents ingested material from entering the larynx (see Figure 24.1). Epiglottitis is a rapidly developing disease that can result in death within a few hours. It is caused by opportunistic pathogens, usually *Haemophilus influenzae* type b. The Hib vaccine, although directed primarily at meningitis (Chapter 22), has significantly reduced the incidence of epiglottitis in the vaccinated population.

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

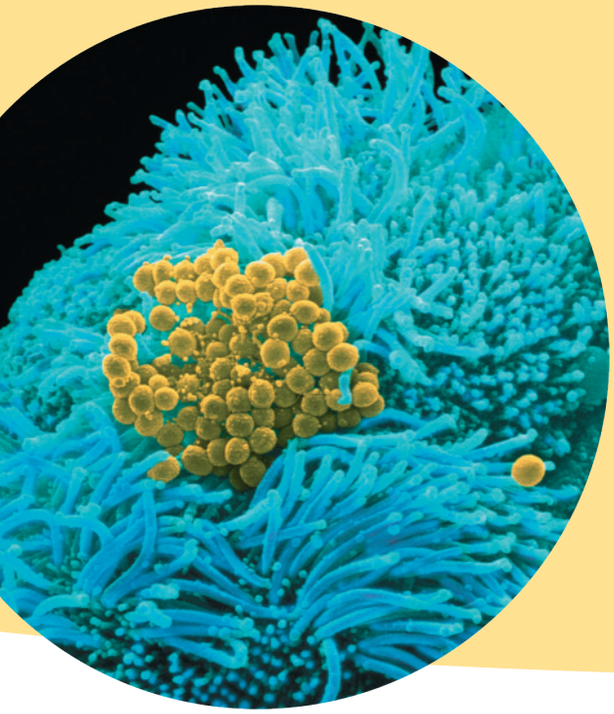
Discovering the Microbiome of the Lungs

Until as recently as 2009, many scientists and medical professionals believed that healthy lungs are sterile, based on findings from studies using traditional culture techniques. However, genetic studies related to the Human Microbiome Project show this isn't the case. It would actually be remarkable if the alveoli didn't routinely come into contact with at least some microbes, considering that the average adult inhales over 10,000 liters of microbe-filled air every day.

The most common bacterial genera present in healthy lungs are *Prevotella, Veillonella, Streptococcus,* and *Pseudomonas*. These bacteria are also common members of the oral microbiome. This suggests that, surprisingly, the primary source of the lung microbiota is likely the mouth rather than inhaled air. *Prevotella, Veillonella,* and *Streptococcus* are all anaerobic bacteria. It may seem illogical for species that don't use oxygen to live in the lower respiratory system, the site of gas exchange. However, although these bacteria do not use oxygen, they all share the ability to avoid oxygen's toxic effects by producing antioxidant enzymes, including peroxidase and superoxide dismutase.

Patients with chronic pulmonary diseases such as asthma, cystic fibrosis, or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) have a predominance of gram-negative bacteria in their lungs as compared to individuals without chronic lung disease. One study also found that nitric-oxide-metabolizing bacteria (*Nitrosomonas* spp.) were present in the lungs of asthma patients. This is notable in that airway inflammation in asthma patients is often diagnosed by measuring exhaled nitric oxide. Higher-than-normal levels indicate that the airways may be inflamed. It could be that the *Nitrosomonas* bacteria in lungs are responsible for this phenomenon that clinicians use as a diagnostic tool.

There is evidence that air pollution leads to an increase in *Streptococcus* and *Neisseria* and that aging increases the proportion of Bacillota. However, lung microbiome research is new, so many unanswered questions remain. Depending on how discoveries proceed, we may one day have lung disease therapies that use probiotics.



***Staphylococcus* sp. in the trachea.**

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

24-3 Which one of the following is most likely to be associated with a headache: pharyngitis, laryngitis, sinusitis, or epiglottitis?

Bacterial Diseases of the Upper Respiratory System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

24-4 List the causative agent, signs and symptoms, prevention, preferred treatment, and laboratory identification tests for streptococcal pharyngitis, scarlet fever, diphtheria, cutaneous diphtheria, and otitis media.

Airborne pathogens make their first contact with the body's mucous membranes as they enter the upper respiratory system. Many respiratory or systemic diseases initiate infections here.

Streptococcal Pharyngitis (Strep Throat)

Streptococcal pharyngitis (strep throat) is an upper respiratory infection caused by *group A streptococci (GAS)*. This gram-positive bacterial group consists solely of *Streptococcus pyogenes,* the same bacterium responsible for many skin and soft tissue infections, such as impetigo, necrotizing fasciitis, and acute bacterial endocarditis.

Pharyngitis is characterized by local inflammation and a fever (**Figure 24.3**). Frequently, tonsillitis occurs, and the lymph nodes in the neck become enlarged and tender. Another frequent complication is otitis media (discussed later).

The pathogenicity of GAS is enhanced by their resistance to phagocytosis. They are also able to produce special enzymes, called *streptokinases,* which lyse fibrin clots, and *streptolysins,* which are cytotoxic to tissue cells, red blood cells, and protective leukocytes.

The 'gold-standard' for diagnosis of pharyngitis is culturing bacteria from a throat swab. Beta-hemolytic colonies sensitive to bacitracin are GAS. GBS (Chapter 23) are resistant to bacitracin. Results take 24 hours or longer, but, beginning in the early 1980s, rapid antigen detection tests that were capable of detecting GAS directly on throat swabs became available. A physician can perform a rapid test in the office. These rapid tests have high specificity. However, negative samples should be cultured because of the varying sensitivity of these tests. (Specificity and

Figure 24.3 Streptococcal pharyngitis. Note the inflammation.

Q How is strep throat diagnosed?

sensitivity are discussed in Chapter 18.) Actually, the majority of patients seen for sore throats do not have a streptococcal infection. Some cases are caused by other bacteria, but most are caused by viruses—for which antibiotic therapy is ineffective. GAS should be confirmed and treated in children older than 3 years to prevent development of rheumatic fever. Fortunately, GAS have remained sensitive to penicillin.

Pharyngitis is now most commonly transmitted by respiratory secretions, but epidemics of streptococcal pharyngitis spread by unpasteurized milk were once frequent.

Scarlet Fever

When the *S. pyogenes* strain causing streptococcal pharyngitis produces an *erythrogenic* (reddening) *toxin*, the resulting infection is called **scarlet fever**. The toxin is produced when the strain has been lysogenized by a bacteriophage (see Figure 13.12). Recall that this means the genetic information of a bacteriophage (bacterial virus) has been incorporated into the chromosome of the bacterium, so the characteristics of the bacterium have been altered. The toxin causes a high fever and a pinkish red skin rash, which is probably the skin's hypersensitivity reaction to the circulating toxin. The tongue has a spotted, strawberry-like appearance and then, as it loses its upper membrane, becomes very red and enlarged. Classically, scarlet fever has been associated with streptococcal pharyngitis, but it might accompany a streptococcal skin infection.

Scarlet fever is usually a mild illness, but antibiotic treatment is necessary to prevent later development of rheumatic fever.

Diphtheria

Another bacterial infection of the upper respiratory system is **diphtheria**. Until 1935, it was the leading infectious killer of children in the United States. The disease begins with a sore throat and fever, followed by general malaise and swelling of the neck. The organism responsible is *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, a gram-positive, non–endospore-forming rod. The cells are frequently club-shaped because they store polyphosphate, which forms metachromatic granules that concentrate at the ends of the cells (Figure 24.4).

Part of the normal immunization program for children in the United States is the **DTaP vaccine**, which protects against diphtheria, tetanus, and pertussis. In this name, the D represents diphtheria toxoid, an inactivated toxin that causes the body to produce antibodies against the diphtheria toxin.

C. diphtheriae has adapted to a generally immunized population, and relatively nonvirulent strains are found in the throats of many symptomless carriers. The bacterium is well suited to droplet transmission and is very resistant to drying.

A tough grayish membrane that forms in the throat in response to the infection is characteristic of diphtheria (from the Greek word for leather). It contains fibrin, dead tissue, and bacterial cells and can totally block the passage of air to the lungs.

Although the bacteria don't invade tissues, those that have been lysogenized by a phage can produce a powerful exotoxin, which then circulates in the bloodstream and interferes with

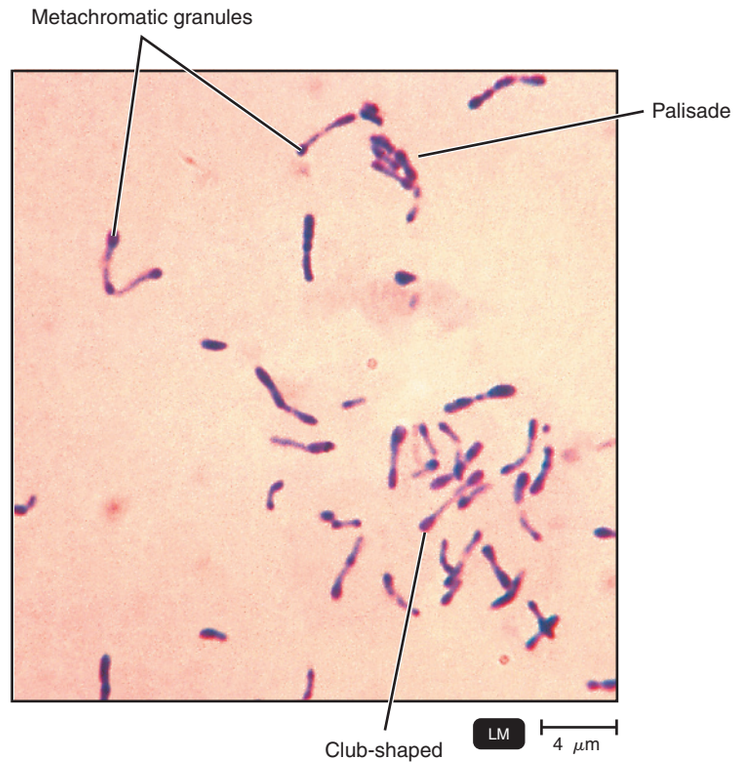


Figure 24.4 *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, the cause of diphtheria. This image shows the club-shaped morphology. The cells do not completely separate after cell division. Consequently, they form characteristic shapes resembling V, Y, or side-by-side palisade arrangements.

Q Are corynebacteria gram-positive or gram-negative?

protein synthesis. Historically, diphtheria was the first disease for which a toxic cause was identified. Only 0.01 mg of this highly virulent toxin can be fatal. Thus, if antitoxin therapy is to be effective, it must be administered before the toxin enters the tissue cells. When such organs as the heart and kidneys are affected by the toxin, the disease can rapidly be fatal. In other cases the nerves can be involved, and partial paralysis results.

The number of diphtheria cases reported in the United States each year is currently five or fewer. The disease occurs mainly in unvaccinated children and travelers to developing countries. When diphtheria was more common, repeated contacts with toxigenic strains reinforced the immunity, which otherwise weakens with time. Many adults lack immunity because immunity wanes over time. A booster dose of vaccine should be administered every 10 years to maintain protective antibody levels. Some surveys indicate effective immune levels in as few as 20% of the adult population. In the United States, when any trauma in adults requires tetanus toxoid, it is usually combined with diphtheria toxoid (Td vaccine).

Diphtheria is also expressed as **cutaneous diphtheria**. In this form of the disease, *C. diphtheriae* infects the skin, usually at a wound or similar skin lesion, and there is minimal systemic circulation of the toxin. In cutaneous infections, the bacteria cause slow-healing ulcerations that are covered by a gray membrane. Cutaneous diphtheria is fairly common in tropical countries.

In the past, diphtheria was spread mainly to healthy carriers by droplet infection. Respiratory cases have been known to arise from contact with cutaneous diphtheria.

Laboratory diagnosis by bacterial identification is difficult, requiring several selective and differential media. Identification is complicated by the need to differentiate toxin-forming isolates from strains that are not toxigenic; both may be found in the same patient.

Even though antibiotics such as erythromycin and penicillin control the growth of the bacteria, they do not neutralize the diphtheria toxin. Thus antibiotics should be used only in conjunction with antitoxin.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

24-4 Among streptococcal pharyngitis, scarlet fever, or diphtheria, which two diseases are usually caused by the same genus of bacteria?

Otitis Media

One of the more uncomfortable complications of the common cold, or of any infection of the nose or throat, is infection of the middle ear, **otitis media**, or earache. The pathogens cause the formation of pus, which builds up pressure against the eardrum and causes it to become inflamed and painful (Figure 24.5). The condition is most frequent in early childhood because the auditory tube connecting the middle ear to the throat is small and more horizontal than in adults and so is more easily blocked by infection (see Figure 24.1).

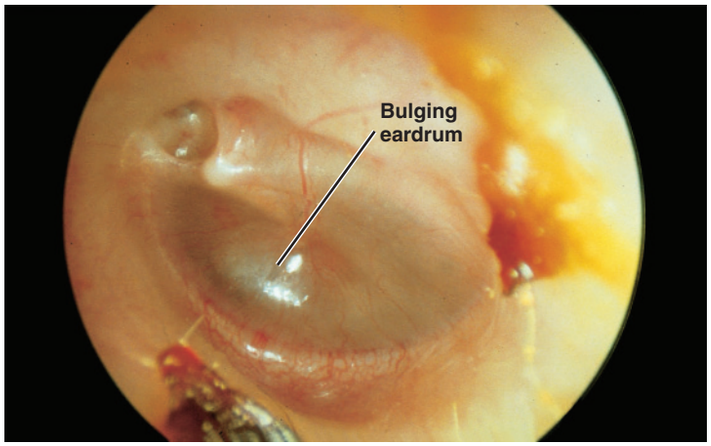


Figure 24.5 Acute otitis media, with bulging eardrum.

Q What is the most common bacterium causing middle ear infections?

A number of bacteria can cause otitis media. Until this century, *Streptococcus pneumoniae* was the most common cause; however, the conjugate vaccine to prevent *S. pneumoniae* pneumonia has reduced the incidence of otitis media caused by the strains in the vaccine. Thus, the bacteria now most frequently involved are other *S. pneumoniae*, nonencapsulated *H. influenzae*, *Moraxella catarrhalis* (more-ax-EL-lah ka-tar-RA-lis) and *S. pyogenes*. In about 30% of cases, no bacteria can be detected. Viral infections may be responsible in these instances; respiratory syncytial viruses (discussed shortly) are the most common isolate.

Otitis media affects 85% of children before the age of 3 and accounts for nearly half of office visits to pediatricians—an estimated 8 million cases each year in the United States. It is estimated that ear infections account for about one-fourth of the prescriptions for antibiotics; however, antibiotics should be prescribed only if the infection is caused by a bacterium. Broad-spectrum penicillins, such as amoxicillin, are usually the first choice for children.

Viral Disease of the Upper Respiratory System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

24-5 List the causative agents and treatments for the common cold.

Probably the most prevalent disease of humans, at least those living in the temperate zones, is a viral disease affecting the upper respiratory system—the common cold.

The Common Cold

More than one virus is involved in the etiology of the **common cold**. In fact, more than 200 different viruses, which are members of several different families of viruses, are known to cause

DISEASES IN FOCUS 24.1 Microbial Diseases of the Upper Respiratory System

The differential diagnosis for the following diseases is usually based on clinical symptoms, and throat swabs may be used to culture bacteria. For example, a patient presents with fever and a red, sore throat. Later a grayish membrane appears in the throat. Gram-positive rods were cultured from the membrane. Use the following table to make a differential diagnosis and identify infections that could cause these symptoms.

Grayish membrane in the throat is a characteristic of this disease.

Disease	Pathogen	Signs and Symptoms	Treatment
BACTERIAL DISEASES			
Epiglottitis	*H. influenzae*	Inflammation of the epiglottis	Antibiotics; maintain airway Prevention: Hib vaccine
Streptococcal Pharyngitis (strep throat)	Streptococci, especially *S. pyogenes*	Inflamed mucous membranes of the throat	Penicillin
Scarlet Fever	Erythrogenic toxin-producing strains of *S. pyogenes*	Streptococcal exotoxin causes reddening of skin and tongue and peeling of affected skin	Penicillin
Diphtheria	*C. diphtheriae*	Grayish membrane forms in throat; cutaneous form also occurs	Erythromycin and antitoxin Prevention: DTaP vaccine
Otitis Media	Several agents, especially *S. pneumoniae*, *H. influenzae*, and *S. pyogenes*	Accumulations of pus in middle ear cause painful pressure on eardrum	Broad-spectrum antibiotics if bacterial Prevention: pneumococcal vaccine
VIRAL DISEASE			
Common Cold	*Enterovirus* (rhinoviruses), *Alphacoronavirus* HCoV-229E and HCoV-NL63, *Betacoronavirus* HCoV-OC43 and HCoV-HKU1, *Adenovirus*	Familiar symptoms of coughing, sneezing, runny nose	Supportive

colds. Most cold viruses are *Enterovirus rhinovirus* (30–50%), *Alphacoronavirus* (HCoV-229E, HCoV-NL63) and *Betacoronavirus* (HCoV-OC43, HCoV-HKU1, (10–15%), and *Mastadenovirus* (5%). The use of PCR to look for viral DNA or RNA frequently turns up previously unknown cold viruses. Thus, 20–30% of viruses that cause colds are classified by researchers as previously unknown.

We tend to accumulate immunity against cold viruses during our lifetime, which may be a reason why older people usually have fewer colds. Immunity is based on the ratio of IgA antibodies to single serotypes and has good short-term effectiveness. Isolated populations may develop a group immunity, and colds disappear among them until a new set of viruses is introduced.

The signs and symptoms of the common cold are familiar to all of us. They include sneezing, excessive nasal secretion, and congestion. The infection can easily spread from the throat to the sinuses, the lower respiratory system, and the middle ear, leading to complications of laryngitis and otitis media. The uncomplicated cold usually is not accompanied by fever. It is generally in the interest of a cold-causing virus not to make the cold sufferer too ill—the host needs to move around, shedding the virus to others, especially in mucus.

Rhinoviruses thrive at a temperature slightly below that of normal body temperature, such as might be found in the upper respiratory system, which is open to the outside environment. No one knows exactly why the number of colds seems to increase with colder weather in temperate zones. It is not known whether closer indoor contact promotes epidemic-type transmission or whether physiological changes increase susceptibility.

A single rhinovirus deposited on the nasal mucosa is often sufficient to cause a cold. However, there is surprisingly little agreement on how the cold virus is transmitted to a site in the nose. Experiments with guinea pigs and the influenza virus show that viruses tend to be carried on airborne droplets of water vapor. In the dry air (low humidity) typical of low temperatures, the droplets are smaller and remain airborne longer, facilitating person-to-person transmission. At the same time, the cooler air causes the cilia of the ciliary escalator to work more slowly, allowing inhaled viruses to spread in the upper respiratory system.

Research has shown that during the first 3 days of a cold, nasal mucus contains a high concentration of cold viruses that multiply in nasal cells. (If mucus is green, the reason is that it contains many white blood cells with iron-containing components directed at destroying pathogens.) The viruses in mucus remain viable on surfaces touched by contaminated fingers for at least several hours. The conventional wisdom is that the virus is most likely transmitted through finger contact with the nostrils and eyes (tear ducts communicate with the nose). Transmission also occurs when the cold viruses in airborne droplets from coughing and sneezing land on suitable tissues in the nose and eyes.

Enterovirus **D68 (EV-D68)** causes coldlike symptoms. In 2014, the United States experienced a nationwide outbreak of EV-D68 associated with severe respiratory illness. Small numbers of EV-D68 have been reported regularly since 1987. Children and teenagers are most likely to get infected with EV-D68 and become ill because they do not yet have immunity from previous exposures to these viruses. Some children may have difficulty breathing, although most people recover within a few days.

Because colds are caused by viruses, antibiotics are of no use in treatment. Symptoms can be relieved by cough suppressants and antihistamines, but these medications do not speed recovery. There is still considerable truth in the medical adage that an untreated cold will run its normal course to recovery in a week, whereas with treatment it will take 7 days.

The diseases affecting the upper respiratory system are summarized in **Diseases in Focus 24.1**.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

24-5 Which viruses, rhinoviruses or coronaviruses cause about half of the cases of the common cold?

Microbial Diseases of the Lower Respiratory System

Many of the same bacteria and viruses that infect the upper respiratory system can also infect the lower respiratory system (see Figure 24.2). As the bronchi become involved, **bronchitis** or **bronchiolitis** develops. A severe complication of bronchitis is **pneumonia**, in which the pulmonary alveoli become involved.

Bacterial Diseases of the Lower Respiratory System

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

24-6 List the causative agent, signs and symptoms, prevention, preferred treatment, and laboratory identification tests for pertussis and tuberculosis.

24-7 Compare and contrast the seven bacterial pneumonias discussed in this chapter.

24-8 List the etiology, method of transmission, and signs and symptoms of melioidosis.

Bacterial diseases of the lower respiratory system include tuberculosis and the many types of pneumonia caused by bacteria. Lesser-known diseases such as psittacosis and Q fever also fall into this category.

Pertussis (Whooping Cough)

Infection by the bacterium *Bordetella pertussis* results in **pertussis**, or **whooping cough**. *B. pertussis* is a small, obligately aerobic, gram-negative coccobacillus. The virulent strains possess a polysaccharide capsule. The bacteria attach specifically to ciliated cells in the trachea, first impeding their ciliary action and then progressively destroying them (**Figure 24.6**). This prevents the ciliary escalator system from moving mucus. *B. pertussis* produces several toxins. *Tracheal cytotoxin*, a fixed cell wall fraction of the bacterium, is responsible for damage to the ciliated cells, and *pertussis toxin* enters the bloodstream and is associated with systemic symptoms of the disease.

Primarily a childhood disease, pertussis can be quite severe. The initial stage, called the *catarrhal stage*, resembles a

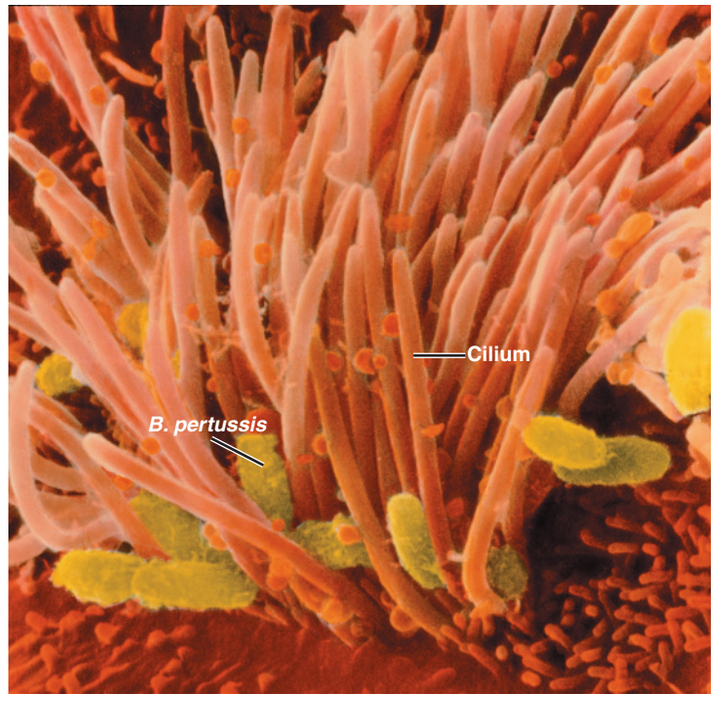


Figure 24.6 Ciliated cells of the respiratory system infected with *Bordetella pertussis*. Cells of *B. pertussis* (orange) can be seen growing on the cilia; they will eventually cause the loss of the ciliated cells.

Q What is the name of the toxin produced by *B. pertussis* that causes the loss of cilia?

common cold. Prolonged sieges of coughing characterize the *paroxysmal stage*, or second stage. (The name *pertussis* is derived from the Latin *per*, meaning thoroughly, and *tussis*, meaning cough.) When ciliary action is compromised, mucus accumulates, and the infected person desperately attempts to cough up these mucus accumulations. The violence of the coughing in small children can actually result in broken ribs. Gasping for air between coughs causes a whooping sound, hence the informal name of the disease. Coughing episodes occur several times a day for 1 to 6 weeks. The *convalescence stage*, the third stage, may last for months. Because infants are less capable of coping with the effort of coughing to maintain an airway, irreversible damage to the brain occasionally occurs.

Diagnosis of pertussis is primarily based on clinical signs and symptoms. The pathogen can be cultured from a throat swab inserted through the nose on a thin wire and held in the throat while the patient coughs. Culture of the fastidious pathogen requires care. As alternatives to culture, PCR methods can also be used to test the swabs for presence of the pathogen, a procedure that is required to diagnose the disease in infants.

Treatment of pertussis with antibiotics, most commonly erythromycin or other macrolides, is not effective after onset of the paroxysmal coughing stage but may reduce transmission.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

24-6 Another name for pertussis is whooping cough. This sign is caused by the pathogens' attack on which cells?

Tuberculosis

In Europe during the seventeenth through the nineteenth centuries, **tuberculosis (TB)** was responsible for an estimated 20–30% of all deaths. This probably exerted a strong selection pressure for genes that protected against TB in this population. However, in recent decades co-infection with HIV has been a prominent cause of increasing susceptibility to infection and also of rapid progression from infection to active disease. Other populations at increased risk include individuals in prisons and other crowded facilities, older adults, and people who are undernourished.

Tuberculosis is an infectious disease caused by **slowly growing mycobacteria** in the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex group. These aerobic rods grow slowly (20-hour or longer generation time), sometimes form filaments, and tend to grow in clumps (Figure 24.7). On the surface of liquid media, their growth appears moldlike, which suggested the genus name *Mycobacterium* (*myco* means fungus).

Another mycobacterial species in the group, *Mycobacterium bovis* (BO-vis), is a pathogen mainly of cattle. *M. bovis* is the cause of **bovine tuberculosis**, which is transmitted to humans via contaminated milk or food. Bovine tuberculosis accounts for fewer than 1% of TB cases in the United States. It seldom spreads from human to human, but before the days of pasteurized milk and

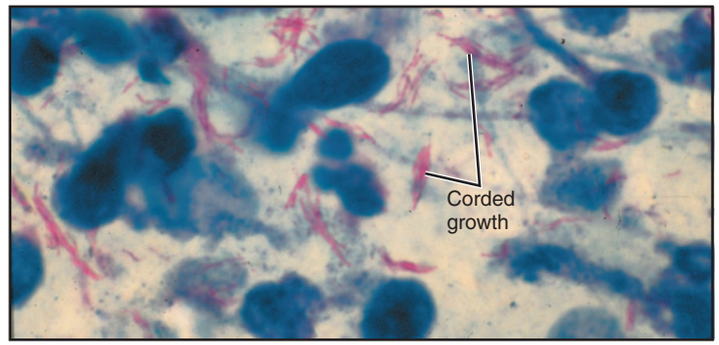


Figure 24.7 ***Mycobacterium tuberculosis.*** The filamentous, red-stained funguslike growth shown here in a smear from lung tissue is responsible for the organism's name. Under other conditions, it grows as slender, individual bacilli. A waxy component of the cell, cord factor, is responsible for this ropelike arrangement. An injection of cord factor causes pathogenic effects exactly like those caused by tubercle bacilli.

Q What characteristic of this bacterium suggests use of the prefix *myco-*?

the development of control methods such as tuberculin testing of cattle herds, this disease was a frequent form of tuberculosis in humans. *M. bovis* infections cause TB that primarily affects the bones or lymphatic system. At one time, a common manifestation of this type of TB was a hunchbacked deformation of the spine.

Mycobacteria can cause lung infections in middle-aged and older patients with predisposing conditions such as HIV infection or emphysema. A majority of these infections are caused by a related group of organisms known as the **rapidly growing mycobacteria** (see Clinical Focus in Chapter 5). In the general population, infections by these pathogens are uncommon.

Mycobacteria stained with carbolfuchsin dye cannot be decolorized with acid-alcohol and are therefore classified as *acid-fast* (see Chapter 3). This characteristic reflects the unusual composition of the cell wall, which contains large amounts of mycolic acid-containing lipids. These lipids might also be responsible for the resistance of mycobacteria to environmental stresses, such as drying. In fact, these bacteria can survive for weeks in dried sputum and are very resistant to chemical antimicrobials used as antiseptics and disinfectants (see Table 7.7).

Tuberculosis is a particularly good illustration of the ecological balance between host and parasite in infectious disease. A host is not usually aware of tuberculosis pathogens that invade the body and are defeated, an event that occurs 90% of the time. If immune defenses fail, however, the host becomes very much aware of the resulting disease. After treatment with the immunosuppressant prednisone, former first lady Eleanor Roosevelt developed a fatal tuberculosis infection. Medical historians speculate that her suppressed immune system allowed a dormant infection to become active or that she acquired a new infection that her immune system couldn't combat.

BIG PICTURE

Bioterrorism

Biological agents were first tapped by armies, and now by terrorists. Today, technology and ease of travel increase the potential damage.

History of Bioweapons

Biological weapons (bioweapons)—pathogens intentionally used for hostile purposes—are not new. The "ideal" bioweapon is one that disseminates by aerosol, spreads efficiently from human to human, causes debilitating disease, and has no readily available treatment.

The earliest recorded use of a bioweapon occurred in 1346 during the Siege of Kaffa, in what is now known as Feodosia, Ukraine. There the Tartar army catapulted their own dead soldiers' plague-ridden bodies over city walls to infect opposing troops. Survivors from that attack went on to introduce the "Black Death" to the rest of Europe, sparking the plague pandemic of 1348–1350.

In the eighteenth century, blankets contaminated with smallpox were intentionally introduced into Native American populations by the British during the French and Indian War. And during the Sino-Japanese War (1937–1945), Japanese planes dropped canisters of fleas carrying *Yersinia pestis* bacteria, the causative agent of plague, on China. In 1975, *Bacillus anthracis* endospores were accidentally released from a bioweapon production facility in Sverdlovsk (now Yekaterinburg) in the former Soviet Union.

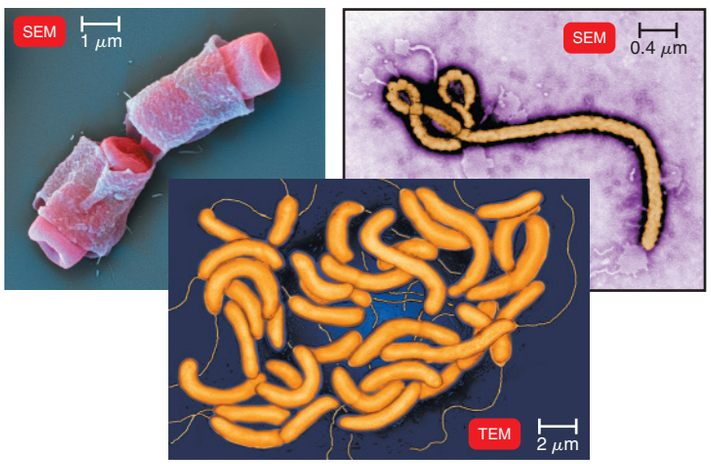
A citadel in Ukraine, location of the first known biowarfare attack in history.

Selected Diseases Identified as Potential Bioweapons

Bacterial	Viral
Anthrax (*Bacillus anthracis*)	Nonbacterial meningitis (Arenaviruses)
Psittacosis (*Chlamydia psittaci*)	*Hantavirus* disease
Botulism (*Clostridium botulinum* toxin)	Hemorrhagic fevers (Ebola, Marburg, Lassa)
Tularemia (*Francisella tularensis*)	MPOX
Cholera (*Vibrio cholerae*)	Nipah virus infection
Plague (*Yersinia pestis*)	Smallpox

Biological Weapons Banned in the Twentieth Century

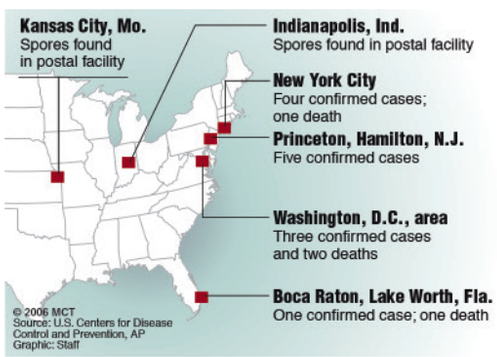
The Geneva Conventions are internationally agreed upon standards for conducting war. Written in the 1920s, they prohibited deploying bioweapons—but did not specify that possessing or creating them was illegal. As such, most powerful nations in the twentieth century continued to create bioweapons, and the growing stockpiles posed an ever-growing threat. In 1975, the Biological Weapons Convention banned both possession and development of biological weapons. The majority of the world's nations ratified the treaty, which stipulated that any existing bioweapons be destroyed and related research halted.



***(Clockwise from top left): B. anthracis, Ebolavirus*, and *V. cholerae* are just a few microbes identified as potential bioterrorism agents.**

Emergence of Bioterrorism

Unfortunately, the history of biowarfare doesn't end with the ratification of the Biological Weapons Convention. Since then, the main actors engaging in biowarfare have not been nations but rather radical groups and individuals. One of the most publicized bioterrorism incidents occurred in 2001, when five people died from, and many more were infected with, anthrax that an army researcher sent through the mail in letters.



Map showing location of 2001 bioterrorism anthrax attacks.

Public Health Authorities Try to Meet the Threat of Bioterrorism

One of the problems with bioweapons is that they contain living organisms, so their impact is difficult to control or even predict. However, public health authorities have created some protocols to deal with potential bioterrorism incidents.

Biological hazard symbol.

New Technologies and Techniques to Identify Bioweapons

Monitoring public health, and reporting incidence of diseases of note, is the first step in any bioterrorism defense plan. The faster a potential incident is uncovered, the greater the chance for containment. Rapid tests are being investigated to detect genetic changes in hosts due to bioweapons even before symptoms develop. Early-warning systems, such as DNA chips or recombinant cells that fluoresce in the presence of a bioweapon, are also being developed.

Pro Strips Rapid Screening System, developed by ADVNT Biotechnologies LLC, is the first advanced multiagent biowarfare detection kit that tests for anthrax, ricin toxin, botulinum toxin, plague, and SEB (staphylococcal enterotoxin B).

Vaccination: A Key Defense

When the use of biological agents is considered a possibility, military personnel and first responders (health care personnel and others) are vaccinated—if a vaccine for the suspected agent exists. New vaccines are being developed, and existing vaccines are being stockpiled for use where needed.

The current plan to protect civilians in the event of an attack with a microbe is illustrated by the smallpox preparedness plan. This killer disease has been eradicated from the population, but unfortunately, a cache of the virus remains preserved in research facilities, meaning that it might one day be weaponized. It's not practical to vaccinate all people against the disease. Instead, the U.S. government's strategy following a confirmed smallpox outbreak includes "ring containment and voluntary vaccination." A "ring" of vaccinated/protected individuals is built around the bioterrorism infection case and their contacts to prevent further transmission.

Examining mail for *B. anthracis.*

KEY CONCEPTS

- Vaccination is critical to preventing spread of infectious diseases, especially those that can be weaponized. **(See Chapter 18, "Principles and Effects of Vaccinations.")**
- Many organisms that could be used for weapons require BSL-3 facilities. **(See Chapter 6, "Special Culture Techniques.")**
- Tracking pathogen genomics provides information on its source. **(See Chapter 9, "Forensic Microbiology.")**

A tragic demonstration of individual variation in resistance was the Lübeck disaster in Germany in 1926. By error, 249 infants were accidently exposed to virulent tuberculosis bacteria instead of the attenuated vaccine strain. However, 76 infants died, and the remainder did not become seriously ill.

Tuberculosis is most commonly acquired by inhaling the bacillus. Only very fine particles containing one to three bacilli reach the lungs, where they are usually phagocytized by an alveolar macrophage in the pulmonary alveoli (see Figure 24.2). The macrophages of a healthy individual become activated by the presence of the bacilli and usually destroy them. About three-fourths of TB cases affect the lungs, but other organs can also become infected.

Pathogenesis of Tuberculosis

The pathogenesis of TB is shown in **Figure 24.8**. An important factor in pathogenicity of the mycobacteria probably is that the

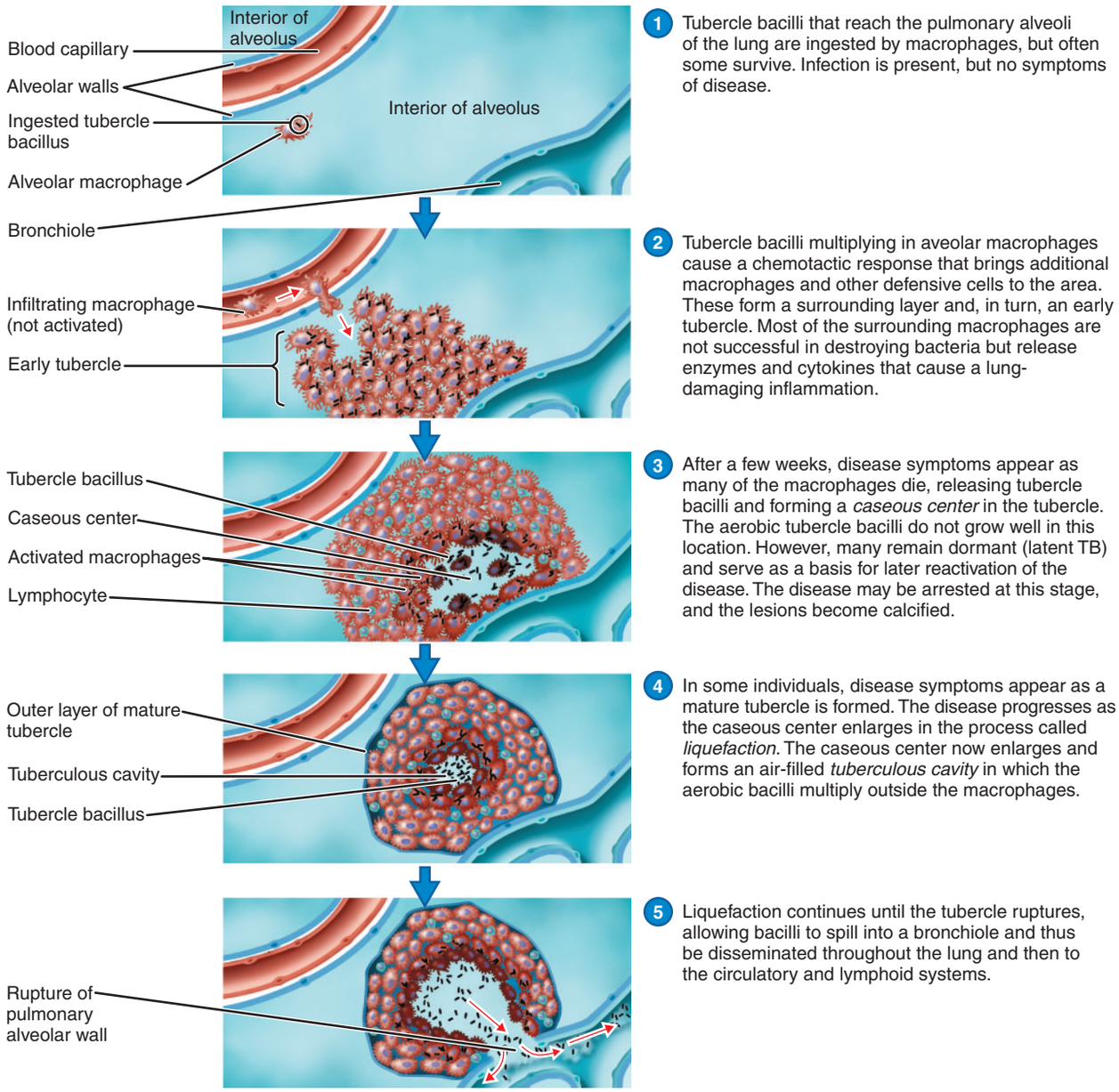


Figure 24.8 The pathogenesis of tuberculosis. This figure represents the progression of the disease when the defenses of the body fail. In most otherwise healthy individuals, the infection is arrested, and fatal tuberculosis does not develop.

Q **Almost a third of Earth's population is infected with *M. tuberculosis*—does a study of this figure show why this is not the same as a third of Earth's population *having* tuberculosis?**

mycolic acids of the cell wall strongly stimulate an inflammatory response in the host. The figure depicts the situation in which the body's defenses fail and the disease progresses to a fatal conclusion. However, most healthy people will defeat a potential infection with activated macrophages, especially if the infecting dose is low.

1–2 If the infection progresses, the host isolates the pathogens in a walled-off lesion called a *tubercle* (meaning lump or knob), a characteristic that gives the disease its name.

3 When the disease is arrested at this point, the lesions slowly heal, becoming calcified. These show up clearly on X-ray films and are called *Ghon's complexes*. (Computed tomography [CT] is more sensitive than X rays in detecting lesions of TB.) The bacteria may remain viable for years, in which case the disease is called **latent TB**. Such individuals are infected with *M. tuberculosis* but do not have TB. The only sign of TB infection is a positive reaction to the tuberculin skin test or TB blood test (discussed shortly). Persons with latent TB infection are not infectious and cannot spread TB infection to others.

4 Alveolar macrophages ingest and surround the tubercle bacilli, forming a barrier outer layer.

5 If the body's defenses fail at this stage, the tubercle breaks down and releases virulent bacilli into the airways of the lung and then the cardiovascular and lymphatic systems.

Coughing, the more obvious sign of the lung infection, also spreads the infection by bacterial aerosols. Sputum may become bloodstained as tissues are damaged, and eventually blood vessels may become so eroded that they rupture, resulting in fatal hemorrhaging. The disseminated infection is called *miliary tuberculosis* (the name is derived from the numerous millet seed–sized tubercles formed in the infected tissues). The body's remaining defenses are overwhelmed, and the patient suffers weight loss and a general loss of vigor. At one time, TB was also known as *consumption*.

Diagnosis of Tuberculosis

People infected with tuberculosis respond with cell-mediated immunity against the bacterium. This form of immune response, rather than humoral immunity, develops because the pathogen is located mostly within macrophages. This immunity, involving sensitized T cells, is the basis for the **tuberculin skin test**, or *Mantoux test* (Figure 24.9), a screening test for infection. A positive test does not necessarily indicate active disease. In this test, a purified protein derivative (PPD) of the tuberculosis bacterium, derived by precipitation from broth cultures and diluted to 0.1 ml of antigen, is injected cutaneously. If the injected person has been infected with TB in the past, sensitized T cells react with these proteins, and a delayed hypersensitivity reaction occurs in about 48 hours. This reaction appears as an induration (hardening) and reddening of the area around the injection site. The reacting area of the skin is measured.

Figure 24.9 A positive tuberculin skin test on an arm.

Q What does a positive tuberculin skin test indicate?

A positive tuberculin test in the very young is a probable indication of an active case of TB. In older individuals, it might indicate only hypersensitivity resulting from a previous infection or vaccination, not a current active case. Nonetheless, it is an indication that further examination is needed, such as a chest X-ray or CT examination to detect lung lesions and attempts to isolate the bacterium.

The initial step in laboratory diagnosis of active cases is a microscopic examination of smears, such as sputum. According to recent medical opinion, the commonly used 125-year-old microscopic exam routinely misses half of all cases. Confirming a diagnosis of TB by isolating the bacterium poses difficulties because the pathogen grows very slowly. A colony might take 3 to 6 weeks to form, and completing a reliable identification series may add another 3 to 6 weeks.

Blood tests measure release of IFN-γ from white blood cells after exposure to mycobacterial antigen in a test tube. They are the preferred tests for a person who has received BCG vaccination (see the discussion of TB vaccines, following).

Nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) can detect *M. tuberculosis* 1 to 2 weeks sooner than cultures and at the same time can determine resistance to a major TB antibiotic, rifampin.

Evidence indicates that, compared to the skin test, these rapid tests have higher specificity and less cross-reactivity with BCG vaccination. However, they do not distinguish latent from active infection. These assays seem likely to replace the tuberculin skin test for many uses, especially where cross-reactivity with BCG vaccination is a problem. If they could be adopted worldwide at centers for TB treatment, they would help avert millions of TB-related deaths.

Treatment of Tuberculosis

The first seemingly effective antibiotic for TB treatment was streptomycin, which was introduced in 1944. However, researchers soon realized that administration of streptomycin alone

often led to the emergence of drug-resistant strains, and that multiple-drug therapy was needed. Today, this regimen typically includes four drugs, all of which were developed decades ago: isoniazid, rifampin, ethambutol, and pyrazinamide. These are considered **first-line drugs**. If the strain of *M. tuberculosis* is susceptible to these drugs, this regimen can lead to a cure. However, even the *short course* of treatment for TB (there are variations in the regimen, depending on sensitivity of the organism and other factors) requires the patient to adhere to a minimum of 6 months of therapy. The likelihood that resistance may develop is increased because many patients fail to faithfully follow such a prolonged regimen, which can involve 130 doses of the drugs.

In addition to the first-line drugs, a number of **second-line drugs** can be used, mainly if resistance develops to alternatives. These include several aminoglycosides, fluoroquinolones, streptomycin, and para-aminosalicylic acid (PAS). These drugs are either less effective than first-line drugs, have toxic side effects, or may be unavailable in some countries.

The prolonged treatment is necessary because the tubercle bacillus grows very slowly or is only dormant (the only drug effective against the dormant bacillus is pyrazinamide), and many antibiotics are effective only against growing cells. Also, the bacillus may be hidden for long periods in macrophages or other locations that are difficult to reach with antibiotics.

Not surprisingly, problems have arisen with cases of TB that are caused by **multi-drug-resistant (MDR)** strains. These are defined as being resistant to the two most effective first-line drugs, isoniazid and rifampin. In addition, strains have arisen that are also resistant to the most effective second-line drugs, such as any fluoroquinolone, and to at least one of three injectable second-line drugs, such as the aminoglycosides amikacin or kanamycin, as well as the polypeptide capreomycin. These cases, defined as **extensively drug-resistant (XDR)**, are virtually untreatable and are emerging globally. An additional consideration is that anywhere from 30–90% of persons with TB are also HIV positive—with the accompanying damage to the immune system. In one study, all patients testing positive for both HIV and XDR tuberculosis died within 3 months of diagnosis.

Obviously, there is a pressing need for new, effective drugs to treat TB, especially XDR cases. In 2019, pretomanid was approved to treat XDR TB.

Testing for Drug Susceptibility

Solid-media culture-based methods for drug susceptibility testing can take as long as 4 to 8 weeks for finalized results. However, *M. tuberculosis* grows faster in liquid media. These assays are simultaneously useful for both diagnosis and determination of drug susceptibility. The Microscopic-Observation Drug-Susceptibility Assay (MODS) is based on direct observation of the typical cording growth (see Figure 24.7) of *M. tuberculosis* in liquid cultures, requires only 6 to 8 days, and is relatively inexpensive. The determination of susceptibility for rifampin can be considered a marker for potential resistance to other drugs. Recall that NAATs also rapidly test for rifampin resistance. Researchers are attempting to develop NAATs to determine resistance to the other first-line and second-line anti-TB drugs. The biggest problem is that most drug resistance, aside from resistance to rifampin, is not due to a single gene. One test, MTBDRsl, does identify resistance to fluoroquinolones.

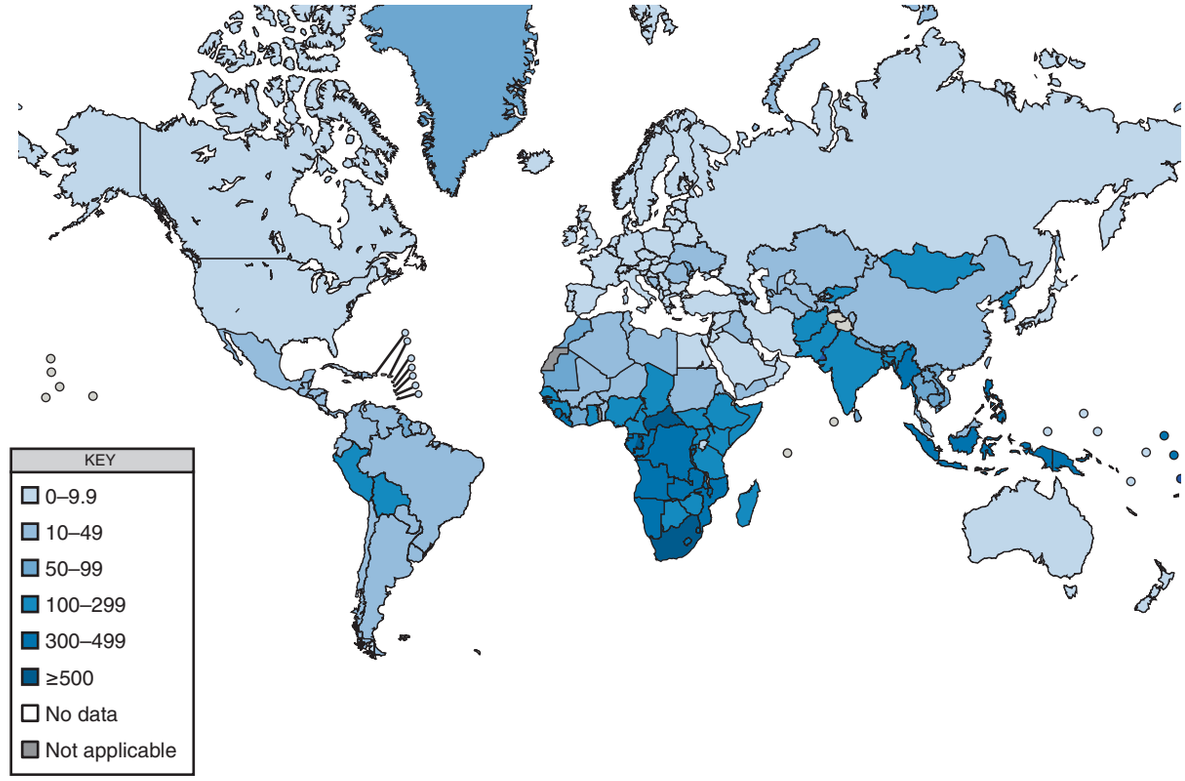
Tuberculosis Vaccines

The **BCG vaccine** is a live culture of *M. bovis* that has been made avirulent by long cultivation on artificial media. (BCG stands for bacillus of Calmette and Guérin, the French scientists who originally isolated the strain.) The BCG vaccine has been available since the 1920s and is one of the most widely used vaccines in the world. In 1990, it was estimated that 70% of the world's schoolchildren received it. In the United States, however, the vaccine is currently recommended only for certain children at high risk who have negative skin tests. People who have received the vaccine show a positive reaction to tuberculin skin tests. This has always been one argument against its widespread use in the United States. Another argument against the universal administration of BCG vaccine is its very uneven effectiveness. Experience has shown that it is fairly effective when given to young children, but for adolescents and adults it sometimes has an effectiveness approaching zero. Worse, it has been found that children infected with HIV, who need it most, frequently will develop a fatal infection from the BCG vaccine. Recent work indicates that exposure to members of the *M. avium* complex that is often encountered in the environment may interfere with the effectiveness of the BCG vaccine—which might explain why the vaccine is more effective early in life, before much exposure to such environmental mycobacteria. A number of new vaccines are in the experimental pipeline, but they will require large numbers of human samples and several years of follow-up to evaluate.

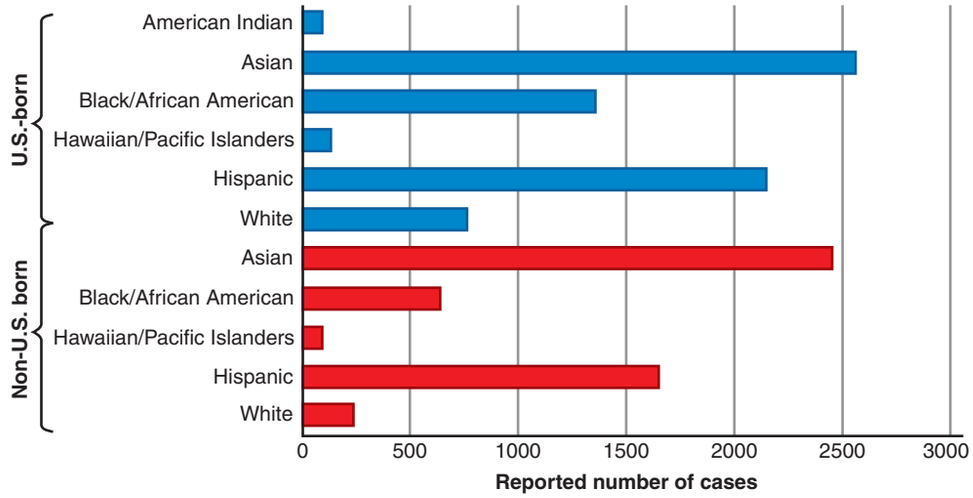
Worldwide Incidence of Tuberculosis

Tuberculosis has emerged as a global pandemic (Figure 24.10a). Estimates are that more than 10 million people develop active tuberculosis every year and that infections result in nearly 2 million deaths annually. (Worldwide, the incidence of TB per capita is falling at about 1% a year. However, the world population is growing at about 2% a year—therefore, the total number of new TB cases is still rising.) Probably a third of the world's population has latent TB. Also, HIV and tuberculosis are almost inseparable, and tuberculosis is the leading direct cause of death in much of the world affected by HIV.

TB incidence in the United States has steadily decreased for decades (see Figure 14.11c). The incidence has been approximately three cases per 100,000 people for the past few years,



(a) Estimated tuberculosis incidence worldwide in 2021, per 100,000 population



(b) Reported tuberculosis cases among various racial and ethnic groups in the U.S. in 2020

Figure 24.10 Distribution of tuberculosis. **(a)** Tuberculosis worldwide. **(b)** Tuberculosis in the United States. Rates among various U.S. racial and ethnic groups.

Source: World Health Organization (WHO), 2022; CDC, 2022.

Q How can tuberculosis be eliminated?

with two-thirds of the cases occurring among people born outside of the United States (Figure 24.10b).

Bacterial Pneumonias

The term *pneumonia* is applied to many pulmonary infections, most of which are caused by bacteria. Pneumonia caused by *S. pneumoniae* is the most common, about two-thirds of cases, and is therefore referred to as *typical pneumonia*. *Staphylococcus aureus* causes about 3% of community-acquired pneumonia but causes the most healthcare-associated cases of pneumonia. Pneumonias caused by other microorganisms, which can include fungi, protozoa, viruses, and other bacteria, especially

mycoplasma, are termed *atypical pneumonias*. This distinction is becoming increasingly blurred in practice.

Pneumonias also are named after the portions of the lower respiratory tract they affect. For example, if the lobes of the lungs are infected, it is called *lobar pneumonia;* pneumonias caused by *S. pneumoniae* are usually of this type. *Bronchopneumonia* indicates that the pulmonary alveoli of the lungs adjacent to the bronchi are infected. *Pleurisy* is often a complication of various pneumonias, in which the pleural membranes become painfully inflamed. (See Diseases in Focus 24.2.)

Pneumococcal Pneumonia

Pneumonia caused by *S. pneumoniae* is called **pneumococcal pneumonia**. *S. pneumoniae* is a gram-positive, ovoid bacterium (Figure 24.11). This microbe is also a common cause of otitis media, meningitis, and sepsis. The cell pairs are surrounded by a dense capsule that makes the pathogen resistant to phagocytosis. These capsules are also the basis of serological differentiation of pneumococci into at least 90 serotypes. Most human infections are caused by only 23 variants, and these are the basis of current vaccines.

Pneumococcal pneumonia involves both the bronchi and the pulmonary alveoli (see Figure 24.2). Signs and symptoms include high fever, breathing difficulty, and chest pain. (Atypical pneumonias usually have a slower onset and less fever and chest pain.) The lungs have a reddish appearance because blood vessels are dilated. In response to the infection, alveoli fill with some red blood cells, neutrophils (see Table 16.1), and fluid from surrounding tissues. The sputum is often rust colored from blood coughed up from the lungs. Pneumococci can invade the bloodstream, the pleural cavity surrounding the lung, and occasionally the meninges. No bacterial toxin has been clearly related to pathogenicity.

A presumptive diagnosis can be made by isolating the pneumococci from the throat, sputum, and other fluids. Pneumococci can be distinguished from other alpha-hemolytic streptococci by observing the inhibition of growth next to a disk of optochin (ethylhydrocupreine hydrochloride) or by performing a bile solubility test. A latex indirect agglutination test (see Figure 18.7) that detects a capsule antigen of *S. pneumoniae* in the urine can be performed in a physician's office and, with 93% accuracy, can make a diagnosis in 15 minutes.

There are many healthy carriers of the pneumococcus. Virulence of the bacteria seems to be based mainly on the carrier's resistance, which can be lowered by stress. Many illnesses of older adults terminate in pneumococcal pneumonia.

A recurrence of pneumococcal pneumonia is not uncommon, but the serological types are usually different. Before chemotherapy was available, the mortality rate was as high as 25%. This has now been lowered to 5–7%. About 90% of the 200.000 infections that occur annually are in adults.

Antibiotic resistance is an increasing problem. Treatment usually begins with a broad-spectrum cephalosporin until antibiotic-sensitivity testing is done (see Figure 20.17). Possible drugs include a β-lactam, macrolide, or fluoroquinolone.

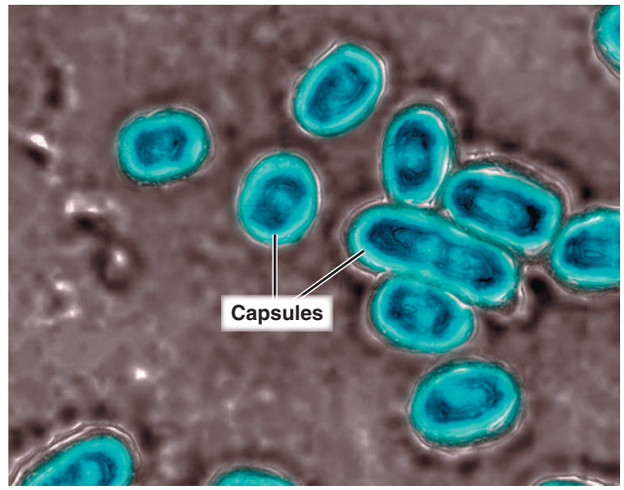


Figure 24.11 *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, the cause of pneumococcal pneumonia. Some of the cocci in the photo are undergoing division and appear as extended ovals. The prominent capsule appears as a bright outline.

Q What component of the cell is the primary antigen?

A pneumococcal vaccine is effective in preventing infection by 23 pneumococcal serotypes. It has also had an indirect herd effect shown by reduction in other diseases, such as otitis media, attributable to the pneumococcus. The pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine, recommended for people with asthma and for older adults, protects against 23 strains of the bacteria.

Haemophilus influenzae Pneumonia

H. influenzae is a gram-negative coccobacillus, and a Gram stain of sputum will differentiate this type of pneumonia from pneumococcal pneumonia. Children under 5 and adults over 65 are most at risk for infection. The Hib vaccine has reduced the incidence in children by 99%. Diagnostic identification of the pathogen uses special media that determine requirements for X and V factors (see Chapter 11). Third-generation cephalosporins are resistant to the β-lactamases produced by many *H. influenzae* strains and are therefore usually the drugs of choice.

Mycoplasmal Pneumonia

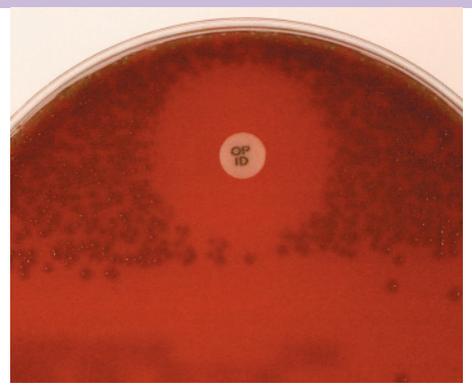
The mycoplasmas, which do not have cell walls, do not grow under the conditions normally used to recover most bacterial pathogens. Because of this characteristic, pneumonias caused by mycoplasmas are often confused with viral pneumonias.

The bacterium *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* is the causative agent of **mycoplasmal pneumonia**. This type of pneumonia was first discovered when such atypical infections responded to tetracyclines, indicating that the pathogen was nonviral.

DISEASES IN FOCUS 24.2 Common Bacterial Pneumonias

Pneumonia is a leading cause of illness and death among children worldwide and the seventh leading cause of death in the United States. Pneumonia can be caused by a variety of viruses, bacteria, and fungi. To prove that a bacterium is causing the pneumonia, the bacterium is isolated from cultures of blood or, in some cases, lung aspirates.

A 27-year-old male with a history of asthma is hospitalized with a 4-day history of progressive cough and 2 days of spiking fevers. Gram-positive cocci in pairs are cultured from a blood sample. Use the following table to identify infections that could cause these symptoms.



An optochin-inhibition test of the cultured bacteria on blood agar.

Disease	Pathogen	Signs and Symptoms	Reservoir	Diagnosis	Treatment
Pneumococcal Pneumonia	*Streptococcus pneumoniae*	Infected alveoli of lung fill with fluids; interferes with oxygen uptake	Humans	Positive optochin inhibition test or bile solubility test; presence of capsular antigen	β-lactam, macrolides Prevention: pneumococcal vaccine
***H. influenzae* Pneumonia**	*Haemophilus influenzae*	Signs and symptoms resemble pneumococcal pneumonia	Humans	Isolation; special media for nutritional requirements	Cephalosporins Prevention: Hib vaccine
Mycoplasmal Pneumonia	*Mycoplasma pneumoniae*	Mild but persistent respiratory signs and symptoms; low fever, cough, headache	Humans	Isolation of bacteria	Tetracyclines
Legionellosis	*Legionella pneumophila*	Potentially fatal pneumonia	Water	Culture on selective media	Azithromycin
Psittacosis (Ornithosis)	*Chlamydia psittaci*	Signs and symptoms, if any, are fever, headache, chills	Birds	Bacterial culture or PCR	Tetracyclines
Chlamydial Pneumonia	*Chlamydia pneumoniae*	Mild respiratory illness; resembles mycoplasmal pneumonia	Humans	PCR	Azithromycin
Q Fever	*Coxiella burnetii*	Mild respiratory disease lasting 1–2 weeks; occasional complications such as endocarditis occur	Large mammals; can be transmitted via unpasteurized milk	Increasing antibody titer	Doxycycline and chloroquine

Mycoplasmal pneumonia is a common type of pneumonia in young adults and children. It may account for as much as 20% of pneumonias, although it is not a reportable disease. The signs and symptoms, which persist for 3 weeks or longer, are low-grade fever, cough, and headache. Occasionally, they are severe enough to lead to hospitalization. Other terms for the disease are *primary atypical* (that is, the most common pneumonia not caused by the pneumococcus) and *walking pneumonia*.

When isolates from throat swabs and sputum grow on a medium containing horse serum and yeast extract, some form distinctive colonies with a "fried-egg" appearance (**Figure 24.12**). The colonies are so small that they must be observed with magnification. The mycoplasmas are highly varied in appearance because they lack cell walls (see Figure 11.24).

Diagnosis based on recovering the pathogens might not be useful in treatment because as long as 3 or more weeks may be required for the slow-growing organisms to develop. Rapid PCR tests are available, however, they are expensive.

Treatment with antibiotics such as tetracycline usually hastens the disappearance of symptoms but does not eliminate the bacteria, which the patient continues to carry for several weeks.

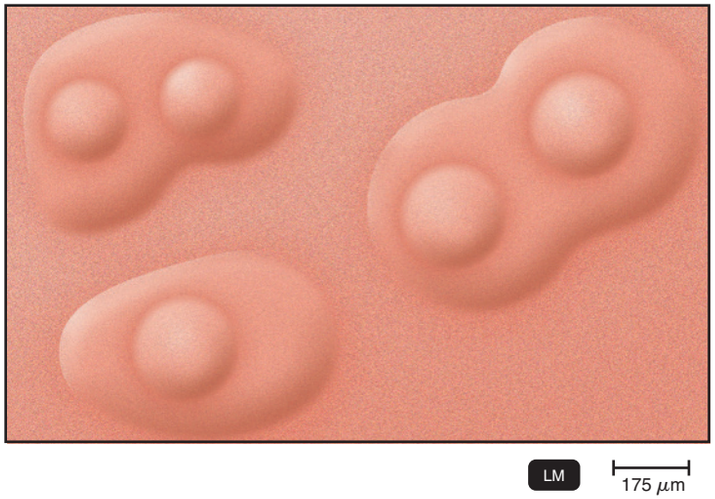


Figure 24.12 **Colonies of *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*, the cause of mycoplasmal pneumonia.**

Q Could you see these colonies without magnification?

Legionellosis

Legionellosis, or **Legionnaires' disease**, first received public attention in 1976, when a series of deaths occurred among members of the American Legion who had attended a meeting in Philadelphia. Because no obvious bacterial cause could be found, the deaths were attributed to viral pneumonia. Close investigation, mostly with techniques directed at locating a suspected rickettsial agent, eventually identified a previously unknown bacterium, an aerobic gram-negative rod now known as *Legionella pneumophila*, which is capable of replication within macrophages. At least 60 species of *Legionella* have now been identified; not all of them cause disease.

The disease is characterized by a high fever of 40.5°C, cough, and general signs and symptoms of pneumonia. No person-to-person transmission seems to be involved. Recent studies have shown that the bacterium can be readily isolated from natural waters. In addition, the microbes can grow in the water of air-conditioning cooling towers, perhaps indicating that some epidemics in hotels, urban business districts, and hospitals were caused by airborne transmission. Recent outbreaks have been traced to whirlpool spas, humidifiers, showers, decorative fountains, and even potting soil.

The organism has also been found to inhabit the water lines of many hospitals. Most hospitals keep the temperature of hot water lines relatively low (43–55°C) as a safety measure, and in cooler parts of the system this inadvertently maintains a good growth temperature for *Legionella*. This bacterium is considerably more resistant to chlorine than most other bacteria and can survive for long periods in water with a low level of chlorine. Evidence indicates *Legionella* exist primarily in biofilms that are highly protective. The bacteria are often ingested by waterborne amebae when these are present but continue to proliferate and may even survive within encysted amebae. The most successful method for water disinfection in hospitals with a need to control *Legionella* contamination has been installation of copper-silver ionization systems.

The disease appears to have always been fairly common, if unrecognized. More than 5000 cases are reported each year, but the actual incidence is estimated at over 25,000 annually. Males over 50 are the most likely to contract legionellosis, especially those who smoke or are chronically ill. (See the **Clinical Focus** box.)

L. pneumophila is also responsible for **Pontiac fever**, which is essentially another form of legionellosis. Its symptoms include fever, muscular aches, and usually a cough. The condition is mild and self-limiting. During outbreaks of legionellosis, both forms may occur.

The best diagnostic method is culture on a selective charcoal–yeast extract medium. Serological tests to detect O antigen in urine are available; however, these tests detect only one serogroup. Azithromycin and other macrolide antibiotics are the drugs of choice for treatment.

Psittacosis (Ornithosis)

The term **psittacosis** is derived from the disease's association with psittacine birds, such as parakeets and other parrots. It was later found that the disease can also be contracted from many other birds, such as pigeons, chickens, ducks, and turkeys. Therefore, the more general term **ornithosis** has come into use.

The causative agent is *Chlamydia psittaci* (SIT-tah-se), a gram-negative, obligate intracellular bacterium. One way chlamydiae differ from rickettsias, which are also obligate intracellular bacteria, is that chlamydiae form tiny **elementary bodies** as one part of their life cycle (see Figure 11.15). Unlike most rickettsias, elementary bodies are resistant to environmental stress; therefore, they can be transmitted through air and do not require a bite to transfer the infective agent directly from one host to another.

Psittacosis is a form of pneumonia that usually causes fever, coughing, headache, and chills. Subclinical infections are very common, and stress appears to enhance susceptibility to the disease. Disorientation, or even delirium in some cases, indicates that the nervous system can be involved.

The disease is seldom transmitted from one human to another but is usually spread by contact with the droppings and other exudates of fowl. One of the most common modes of transmission is inhalation of dried particles from droppings. The birds themselves usually have diarrhea, ruffled feathers, respiratory illness, and a generally droopy appearance. Parakeets and other parrots sold commercially are usually (but not always) free of the disease. Many birds carry the pathogen in their spleen without symptoms, becoming ill only when stressed. Pet store

employees and people involved in raising turkeys are at greatest risk of contracting the disease (see the Clinical Case).

Psittacosis is diagnosed by isolating the bacterium in embryonated eggs or by cell culture. PCR can be used to identify the *Chlamydia* species. No vaccine is available, but tetracyclines are effective antibiotics in treating humans and animals. Effective immunity does not result from recovery, even when high titers of antibody are present in the serum.

Most years, fewer than 100 cases of psittacosis and very few deaths are reported in the United States. The main danger is late diagnosis. Before antibiotic therapy was available, the mortality rate was about 15–20%. *C. psittaci* is listed by the CDC as a potential bioterrorism weapon (see the **Big Picture**).

Chlamydial Pneumonia

Outbreaks of a respiratory illness in populations of college students were found to be caused by a chlamydial organism. Originally the pathogen was considered a strain of *C. psittaci*, but it has been assigned the species name *Chlamydia pneumoniae*, and the disease is known as **chlamydial pneumonia**. Clinically, it resembles mycoplasmal pneumonia. (There is also evidence that *C. pneumoniae* is a contributing cause of atherosclerosis, the deposition of fatty deposits that block arteries.)

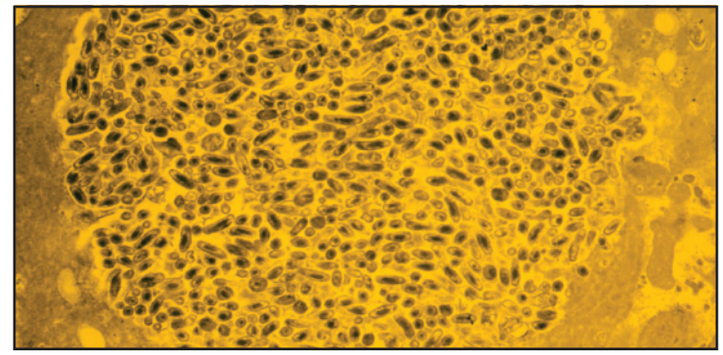
The disease is apparently transmitted from person to person, probably by the respiratory route. Nearly half the U.S. population has antibodies against the organism, an indication that this is a common illness. PCR is the preferred diagnostic method because culturing the bacteria is slow, and serological tests don't distinguish species. The most effective antibiotic is azithromycin.

Q Fever

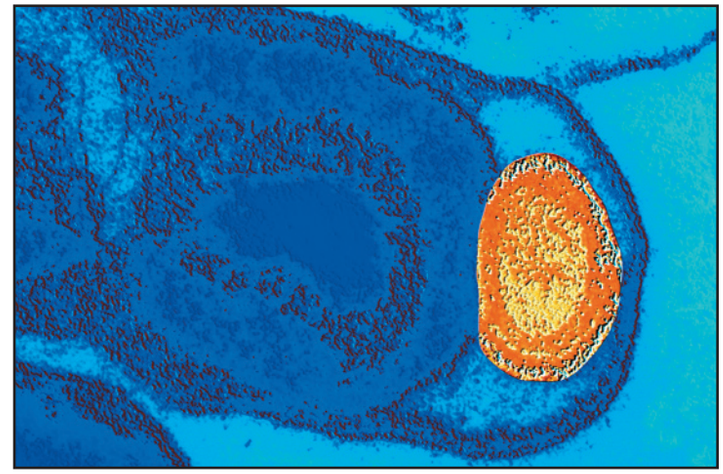
In 2015, six Americans were diagnosed with Q fever after being injected with fetal sheep cells in Germany. This xenotransplant has unsubstantiated claims of improving vitality (anti-aging). Q fever was first described in Australia during the mid-1930s, when a previously unreported flulike pneumonia made an appearance. In the absence of an obvious cause, the affliction was labeled **Q fever** (for *query*), much as one might say "X fever." The causative agent was subsequently identified as the obligately parasitic, intracellular bacterium *Coxiella burnetii* (KOKS-e-el-lah ber-NE-te-e) (**Figure 24.13a**). It is classified as a member of the gammaproteobacteria. *Coxiella* has the ability to multiply intracellularly. Most intracellular bacteria, such as rickettsia, are not desiccation-resistant enough to survive airborne transmission, but this microorganism is an exception.

Q fever has a wide range of clinical symptoms, and systematic testing shows that about 60% of cases are not even symptomatic. Cases of *acute Q fever* usually feature symptoms of high fever, chills, headaches, muscle aches, and coughing. A feeling of malaise may persist for months. The heart becomes involved in about 2% of acutely ill patients and is responsible for the rare fatalities. In cases of *chronic Q fever*, the best known manifestation is endocarditis (see Chapter 23). Some 5 to 10 years might elapse between the initial infection and the appearance of endocarditis, and, because these patients show few signs of acute disease, the association with Q fever is often missed. Antibiotic therapy and earlier diagnosis have lowered the mortality rate from chronic Q fever to under 5%.

C. burnetii is a parasite of several arthropods, especially cattle ticks, and it is transmitted among animals by tick bites. Infected animals include cattle, goats, and sheep, as well as most domestic mammalian pets. In animals the infection is usually subclinical. Cattle ticks spread the disease among dairy herds, and the microbes are shed in the feces, milk, and urine of infected cattle. Once the disease is established in a herd, it is maintained by aerosol transmission. The disease is spread to humans by ingesting unpasteurized milk and by inhaling aerosols of microbes generated in dairy barns.



(a) Masses of *Coxiella burnetii* growing in a placental cell



(b) This cell has just divided; notice the endospore-like body (orange), which is probably responsible for the organism's resistance to heat and drying.

Figure 24.13 ***Coxiella burnetii*, the cause of Q fever.**

Q By what two methods is Q fever transmitted?

CLINICAL CASE

When the family's signs and symptoms worsen, Caille makes appointments with Dr. Cantwell, the family physician. Because of the family's respiratory symptoms, Dr. Cantwell orders chest X-ray exams, which confirm lobar pneumonia in Caille, Art, and Steven. While in the doctor's office, the children tell Dr. Cantwell about Bitsy and how much they miss their pet cockatiel. Dr. Cantwell, recognizing that cockatiels are psittacine birds, takes a blood sample for antibody testing, prescribes tetracycline, and asks everyone to return in 1 month for convalescent serum samples.

Why does Dr. Cantwell want the sera tested?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

Inhaling a single pathogen is enough to cause infection, and many dairy workers have acquired at least subclinical infections. Workers in meat- and hide-processing plants are also at risk. The pasteurization temperature of milk, which was originally aimed at eliminating tuberculosis bacilli, was raised slightly in 1956 to ensure the killing of *C. burnetii*. In 1981, an endospore-like body was discovered, which may account for its heat and desiccation resistance (Figure 24.13b). This resistant body resembles the elementary body of chlamydiae more than typical bacterial endospores.

Diagnosis is based on an increasing titer of antibodies against *Coxiella*. Acute Q fever can be diagnosed with PCR of a patient's blood. The pathogen can be grown in chick embryos in eggs or in cell culture. Laboratory workers testing for *Coxiella*-specific antibodies in a patient's serum can use serological tests.

A disease found worldwide, most of the annual 150–200 cases of Q fever in the United States occur in the western states. The disease is endemic to California, Arizona, Oregon, and Washington. A vaccine for laboratory workers and other high-risk personnel is available. Doxycycline has been recommended for treatment. When growth within macrophages in chronic infections renders *C. burnetii* resistant, the killing activity can be restored by combining doxycycline with chloroquine, an antimalarial. The chloroquine raises the pH of the phagosome, increasing doxycycline's efficiency.

Melioidosis

In 1911, a new disease was reported among people addicted to and injecting drugs in Yangon, Myanmar. The bacterial pathogen, *Burkholderia pseudomallei*, is a gram-negative rod formerly placed in the genus *Pseudomonas*. It closely resembled the bacterium causing glanders, a disease of horses. Therefore, the disease was named **melioidosis** (mel-ē-oi-DŌ-sis) from the Greek *melis* (distemper of asses) and *eidos* (resemblance). It is now recognized as a major infectious disease in tropical regions of the world, where the pathogen is widely distributed in moist soils. About 165,000 cases occur annually.

Clinically, melioidosis is most commonly seen as pneumonia. Mortality arises from dissemination, manifesting as septic shock. The mortality rate in southeast Asia is about 50% and in Australia approaches 20%. However, melioidosis can also appear as abscesses in various body tissues that resemble necrotizing fasciitis (see Figure 21.8), as severe sepsis, and even as encephalitis. Transmission is primarily by inhalation, but alternative infective routes are by inoculation through puncture wounds and ingestion. Incubation periods can be very long, and occasional delayed-onset cases still surface. There have been outbreaks of melioidosis in Asia in recent years, causing concern that the disease will spread to other countries. For example, an outbreak was reported in Taiwan in the aftermath of the damaging typhoon of 2010. In 2021, a cluster of four cases in the United States was associated with an imported aromatherapy product.

CLINICAL CASE

Dr. Cantwell suspects psittacosis because of the evidence of respiratory disease and recent exposure to a cockatiel. The Nguyens are all feeling better when they return to provide convalescent serum the following month. Indirect FA test results of their sera are shown in the following table.

	Titer against *C. psittaci*	
Nguyen Family Member	**Acute Serum**	**Convalescent Serum**
Caille	0	0
Art	32	16
Gabbie	64	32
Steven	64	32
Tre	128	64

What do these data indicate?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

Diagnosis is usually made by isolating the pathogen from body fluids. Serological tests in endemic areas are problematic because of widespread exposure to a similar, nonpathogenic bacterium. A rapid PCR test is used by public health laboratories. Treatment by antibiotic is uncertain in effectiveness; the most commonly used is ceftazidime, a β-lactam antibiotic, but months of treatment may be required.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **24-7** What group of bacterial pathogens causes what is informally called "walking pneumonia"?
- **24-8** The bacterium causing melioidosis in humans also causes a disease of horses known as what?

CLINICAL FOCUS Outbreak

As you read through this problem, you will see questions that epidemiologists ask themselves and each other as they solve a clinical problem. Try to answer each question as though you were an epidemiologist.

1. Jerry Roberts, a 64-year-old male, sees his primary care physician, complaining of fever, malaise, and a cough. His vaccinations are up-to-date, including DTaP. His condition worsens over several days; he has difficulty breathing, and his temperature rises to 40.4°C. He is hospitalized, and his lungs show signs of mild inflammation with a thin, watery secretion. A Gram stain of bacteria isolated from the patient is shown in the photo.

   What diseases are possible?

2. The same day, Antonio Viviano, a 57-year-old male, goes to the emergency department because he has shortness of breath, fatigue, and cough. The day before he had fever and chills, with a maximum body temperature of 38.6°C.

   What additional tests would you do on both patients?

Patients' Medical and Travel History	
Age	≥50
Sex	9 male
Number of Nights at Hotel	1–4 (average: 3)
Diabetes, Coronary Artery Disease	6
Smoke	4
Showered in Hotel	9
Used Hotel Whirlpool Spa	1
Used Beach Shower	4

3. PCR, lab cultures, and serological tests should be run on both patients. Both patients have an antibody titer >1024 against *L. pneumophila* serogroup 1. The local health department is contacted because two patients are hospitalized with legionellosis.

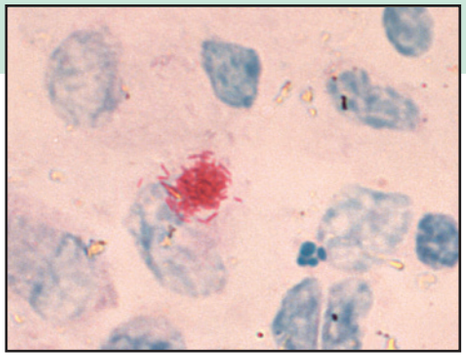
   What do you need to know now?

4. Both patients should be asked whether they have traveled recently, and if so, where. One week before hospitalization, both men stayed in the same hotel within one day of each other. Seven additional cases of legionellosis were identified at other hospitals. A follow-up questionnaire is given to all nine patients to ascertain travel that preceded the illness, including location, accommodations, dates, and information about exposures to common sources for infection (see the table).

   What are likely sources of infection?

5. Epidemic legionellosis usually results from exposure of susceptible individuals to an aerosol generated by an environmental source of water contaminated with *Legionella*.

   Why is it important to identify the source?



Gram stain showing bacteria within a tissue sample. LM 4 μm

6. Retrospective identification of cases allows control and remediation efforts. *L. pneumophila* of the same monoclonal antibody type was recovered from the hot water storage tanks, cooling tower, and showers and faucets in rooms occupied by patients and well guests.

   Why didn't other hotel guests get sick?

7. During outbreaks, attack rates tend to be highest in specific high-risk groups, including older adults, smokers, and immunocompromised persons.

   What are your recommendations for remediation?

   Disinfect shower necks and faucets with bleach. Clean the spa filter, and hyperchlorinate the potable water system.

   Hotels have been common locations for legionellosis outbreaks since the disease was first recognized among hotel guests in Philadelphia in 1976.

Source: Adapted from *MMWR* 70(20):733–738. May 21, 2021.

Viral Diseases of the Lower Respiratory System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

24-9 List the causative agent, symptoms, prevention, and preferred treatment for viral pneumonia, RSV, and influenza.

For a virus to reach the lower respiratory system and initiate disease, it must pass numerous host defenses designed to trap and destroy it. Nonetheless, numerous respiratory ailments are caused by viruses. Rapid PCR kits that can identify several respiratory viruses are available.

Viral Pneumonia

Viral pneumonia can occur as a complication of influenza, measles, or even chickenpox. A number of Enteroviruses and other viruses have been shown to cause viral pneumonia, but viruses are isolated and identified in fewer than 1% of pneumonia-type infections because few laboratories are equipped to test clinical samples properly for viruses. In those cases of pneumonia for which no cause is determined, viral etiology is often assumed if mycoplasmal pneumonia has been ruled out.

In recent years, coronaviruses have emerged as causative agents of a group of related respiratory infections that can

cause a severe, even fatal, viral pneumonia. In 2003, *s*evere *a*cute *r*espiratory *s*yndrome (SARS) emerged in Asia and spread to several countries, killing over 900 people. It resulted from infection with **SARS-associated coronavirus (SARS-CoV)**. Since 2004, no known cases of SARS have been reported anywhere in the world. Isolation and quarantine appear to have successfully eliminated the virus, although related viruses are found in bats in the Eastern Hemisphere. In 2012, the **Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus (MERS-CoV)** was first identified as the cause of a similar respiratory syndrome in Saudi Arabia. Cases then spread to several other countries, and in 2014, two travel-related cases were reported in the United States. Additional cases of MERS occurred in Saudi Arabia in 2017. In December 2019, a related syndrome called COVID-19, caused by infection with a new coronavirus called SARS-CoV-2, emerged in China. Within 3 months, it reached pandemic status, affecting people in nearly every country worldwide. COVID-19 is the most significant global public health threat to emerge in decades; thus, we discuss this disease separately next.

COVID-19

Many people worldwide are probably more aware of **COVID-19**, the infection caused by the ***Betacoronavirus* SARS-CoV-2**, than any other infectious disease except the common cold. Its rapid spread throughout the world prompted the World Health Organization (WHO) to declare a Public Health Emergency of International Concern on January 30, 2020. About 6 weeks later, on March 11, 2020, the WHO classified the scope of the disease as a pandemic, as the virus and its variants had spread to nearly all countries. It is now estimated that, as of December 2022, SARS-CoV-2 has infected 667 million individuals and has resulted in nearly seven million deaths. See Figure 14.4.

Classification and Description of SARS-CoV-2

SARS-CoV-2 is in the genus *Betacoronavirus*. These viruses have a single sense (+) strand of RNA bound to capsid proteins in a structure called a nucleoprotein. This nucleoprotein is contained within an outer lipid bilayer (envelope) (**Figure 24.14**). Embedded in the viral envelope are three types of proteins: *spike (S)*, *membrane (M)*, and *envelope (E)* proteins. The S proteins give the virus its distinct corona (crown) and are involved in attachment to and entry into host cells. Antibodies against the virus are directed mainly at these spikes. The M glycoproteins and E proteins are involved in viral assembly and release of the virus.

High mutation rates are a characteristic of RNA viruses, which lack the "proofreading" ability of DNA viruses. Accumulations of these mutations, called **antigenic drift**, allow the virus to evade the host's antibodies, thereby increasing its chance of survival. Mutations of SARS-CoV-2 have produced variants that circulate in the human population. Researchers have given

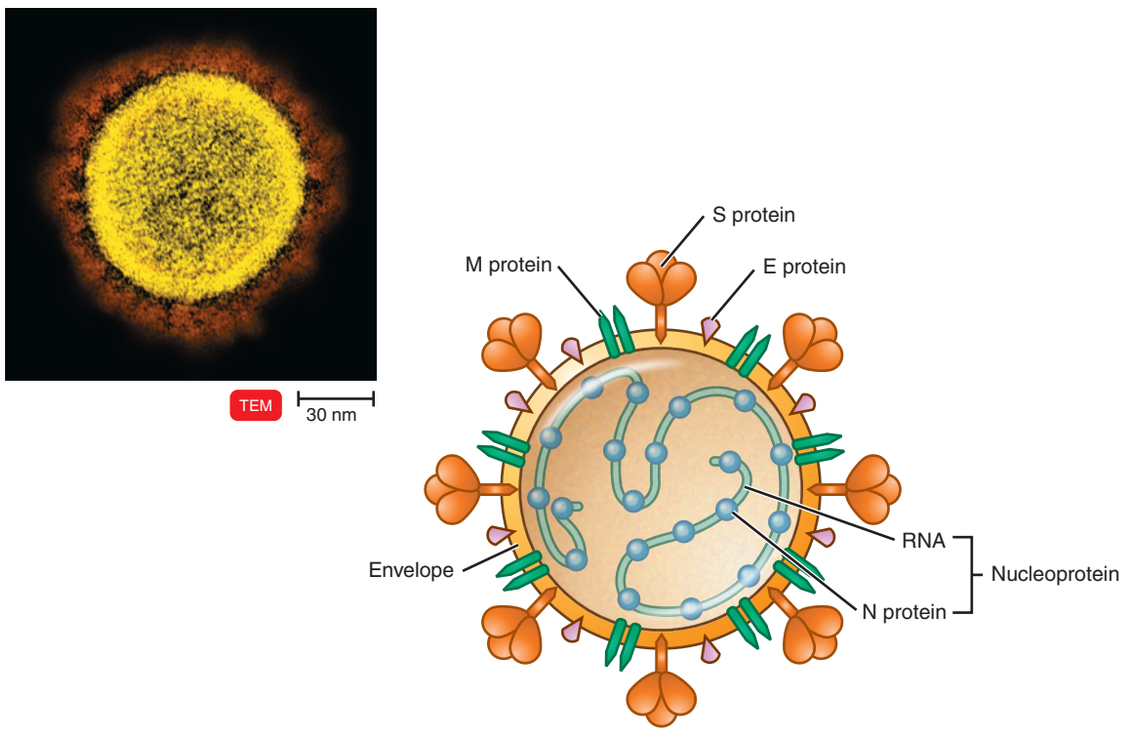


Figure 24.14 Detailed structure of SARS-CoV-2. The virus is composed of a nucleoprotein (RNA and N protein) that is covered by a lipid bilayer (envelope) containing three viral proteins: spike (S), membrane (M), and envelope (E). The spikes produce the corona (crown) characteristic of coronaviruses. The genome, composed of a positive strand of RNA, encodes the viral proteins.

these variants names from the Greek alphabet; for example, the Alpha variant was the first one named. Some of the variants, such as Eta, Iota, and Kappa, did not spread through the population after they were first detected (Figure 14.4).

Signs and Symptoms of COVID-19

Common signs and symptoms range from minor to life-threatening. Severe cases typically are associated with older adults and/or those with certain underlying medical conditions such as chronic lung disease, heart disorders, diabetes, hypertension, severe obesity, cancer, and compromised immunity. Common signs and symptoms of COVID-19 include fever, shortness of breath, cough, runny nose, nasal congestion, sore throat, headache, muscle and joint pain, fatigue, abdominal pain, diarrhea, vomiting, and loss of smell and taste.

Roughly one-third of people infected with SARS-CoV-2 do not develop noticeable signs or symptoms; the vast majority develop only mild to moderate signs and symptoms; about 15% develop severe disease; and about 5% become critically ill. The severity of disease may be due to the initial infectious dose. After recovery, about 7.5% adults develop a wide-range of symptoms called *long COVID*. Some symptoms of long COVID are difficulty breathing, fatigue, or difficulty thinking: These symptoms can last for weeks or months. For COVID-19, the incubation period—the delay between the time a person first becomes infected and the appearance of the first signs and symptoms—is about 4–5 days.

The disease progresses as follows: The virus attaches to the ACE receptor on host cells, most likely in the nasal epithelium. The virus replicates in the nasal epithelium and is moved to the trachea. The host may experience fever and cough at this time. In about 20% of infected individuals, the virus enters and reproduces in pneumocytes (pulmonary alveolar cells). The pneumocytes release cytokines that help combat the virus, but are also responsible for inflammation and lung injury. (Cytokine storm is discussed in Chapter 16.) Patients with severe disease (pneumonia and difficulty breathing) require hospitalization for management.

COVID-19 patients are susceptible to mucoromycoses—life-threatening fungal infections caused by common Mucoromycota fungi such as *Rhizopus* spp. (See Chapter 12.)

Transmission of COVID-19

COVID-19 is primarily transmitted via **airborne transmission** (Figure 14.6d). This occurs when infected people release droplet nuclei or aerosols when they exhale, talk, cough, sneeze, or sing, and the virus is inhaled by people nearby. Transmission is more likely to occur when infected people are physically close to each other. Infectivity usually takes place as early as 3 days before signs and symptoms appear, and individuals are most infectious just before and during the onset of signs and symptoms. People remain contagious for up to 20 days and can transmit the virus even if they do not exhibit signs or symptoms. The number of people infected by one infected person is 1.5 to 6.68 (reproductive number is described in Chapter 14). Transmission frequently occurs in clusters where infections can be traced back to a particular event, such as a concert, wedding reception, or sporting event. This phenomenon, in which large numbers of people are infected by just one person, is called *superspreading*.

Diagnosis of COVID-19

Diagnostic tests determine whether an active infection is present. Home ELISA test kits (rapid antigen tests) can detect viral antigens in nasal swabs. Laboratory tests use PCR to amplify and detect viral RNA. Antibody tests identify the presence of antibodies, which could be from a past or current infection or from vaccination.

Treatment of COVID-19

The antiviral drugs remdesivir and nirmatrelvir have been approved for treatment of COVID-19 if administered promptly. Remdesivir is a nucleoside analog, inhibiting viral RNA replication; nirmatrelvir inhibits the viral protease (see Chapter 20).

COVID Vaccines

Vaccines are designed to deliver antigens to which the host will make antibodies (Chapter 18). Three types of COVID vaccines are available. The mRNA vaccines deliver to cells a segment of mRNA that encodes for the virus's S protein. Cells then use the mRNA to make the virus antigen. The virus-vector vaccines use a harmless adenovirus that has been modified to produce the COVID S protein when it reaches the nucleus of host cells. Subunit vaccines contain only the virus S protein. The host then makes antibodies against the S protein. Although the current COVID-19 vaccines may not be effective against all variants, they appear to provide considerable protection against severe disease. Vaccinated individuals with *breakthrough infections* can transmit the disease. A breakthrough infection is one that occurs when a fully vaccinated person becomes ill from the same disease the vaccine is designed to protect against. The term *breakthrough* means that the virus broke through the protective barrier the vaccine is supposed to provide.

Respiratory Syncytial Virus (RSV)

Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) is named for its characteristic of causing cell fusion (*syncytium* formation, Figure 15.7b) when grown in cell culture. RSV is probably the most common cause of viral respiratory disease in infants. It usually causes mild, coldlike symptoms but can also cause a life-threatening pneumonia in very young infants and older adults, in whom it is often misdiagnosed as influenza. There are about 6000-10,000 deaths from RSV each year in the United States, mostly in older adults. Epidemics occur during the winter and early spring. Virtually all children become infected by age 2—of whom about

1% require hospitalization. RSV decreased during the COVID-19 pandemic due to masking and social-distancing. As children returned to school and mask-mandates were lifted, cases of RSV increased in the winter of 2022. This increase may be due to lack of immunity from prior infections.

We have previously mentioned that RSV is sometimes implicated in cases of otitis media. The signs and symptoms include coughing and wheezing that last for more than a week. Fever occurs only when there are bacterial complications. Serological tests and rt-PCR are available that use samples of respiratory secretions to detect both antibodies and the virus.

Naturally acquired immunity is very poor. The humanized monoclonal antibody, palivizumab, is recommended for prophylaxis in immunocompromised and other high-risk patients. A vaccine that can be administered during pregnancy to provide passive immunity for the fetus was approved in 2022. Vaccines to prevent RSV infection in older adults are being developed.

Influenza (Flu)

Influenza (the flu) is characterized by chills, fever, headache, and muscular aches. Recovery normally occurs in a few days, and coldlike symptoms appear as the fever subsides. Still, an estimated 12,000 to 52,000 Americans die annually of flu-related complications, even in nonepidemic years. Diarrhea is not a normal symptom of the disease; the intestinal discomfort attributed to "stomach flu" is probably viral gastroenteritis (see Chapter 25).

The Influenza Virus

Influenza viruses consist of eight separate RNA segments of differing lengths enclosed by an inner layer of protein and an outer lipid bilayer (**Figure 24.15**). Embedded in the lipid bilayer are numerous projections that characterize the virus. There are two types of projections: *hemagglutinin (HA) spikes* and *neuraminidase (NA) spikes*.

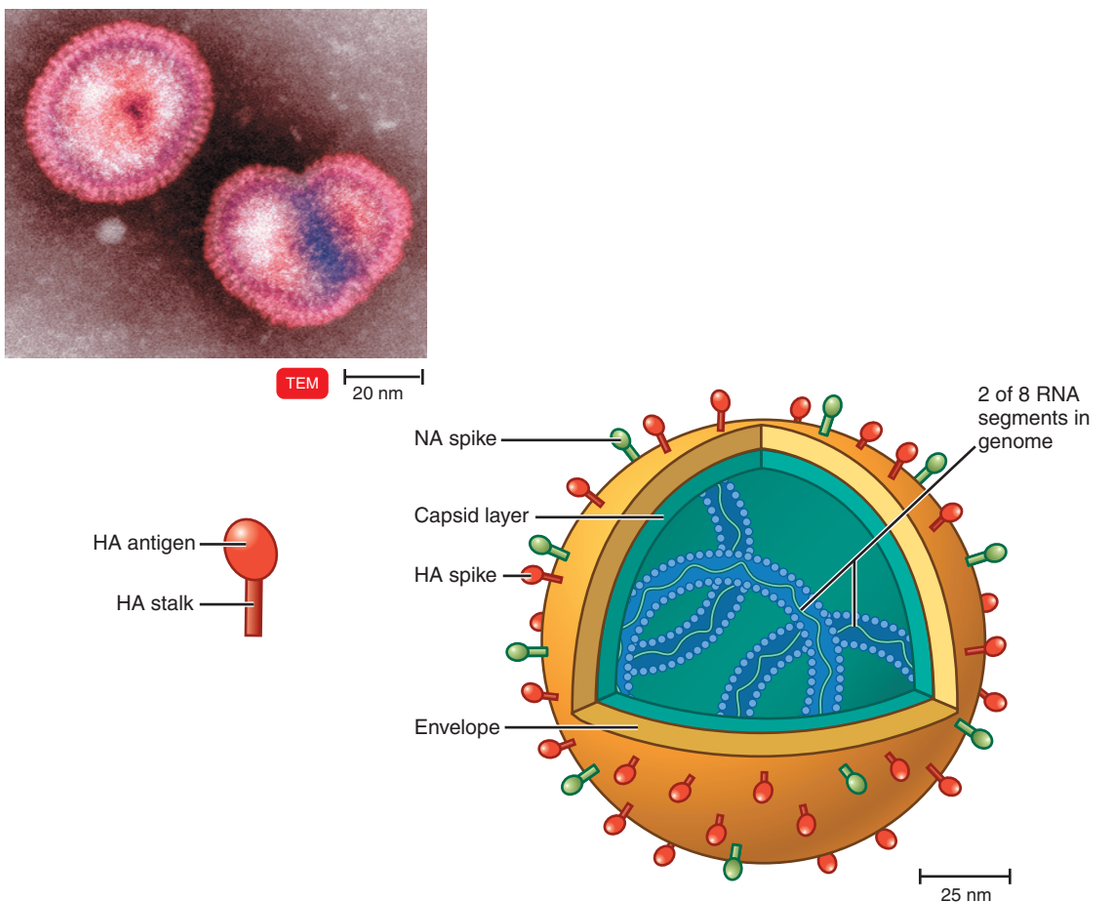


Figure 24.15 Detailed structure of the influenza virus. The virus is composed of a capsid (protein coat) that is covered by an envelope (lipid bilayer) and two types of spikes. The genome is composed of eight segments of RNA: six are devoted to internal proteins, and two are devoted to HA and NA spike proteins. Morphologically, under certain environmental conditions, the influenza virus assumes a filamentous form. The HA stalk is the same for the different HA antigens; therefore, it is a possible target for a vaccine against all Influenza A.

Q What is the primary antigenic structure on the influenza virus?

The HA spikes, of which there are about 500 on each virus, allow the virus to recognize and attach to body cells before infecting them. Antibodies against the influenza virus are directed mainly at these spikes. The term *hemagglutinin* refers to the agglutination of red blood cells (hemagglutination) that occurs when the viruses are mixed with them. This reaction is important in serological tests such as the hemagglutination inhibition test often used to identify the influenza virus.

The NA spikes, of which there are about 100 per virus, differ from the HA spikes in appearance and function. They enzymatically help the virus separate from the infected cell as the virus exits after intracellular reproduction. NA spikes also stimulate the formation of antibodies, but these are less important in the body's resistance to the disease than those produced in response to the HA spikes.

CLINICAL CASE

The titers confirm Dr. Cantwell's suspicions that the Nguyen family has had psittacosis. The decreasing titers show they are recovering. Fewer than 50 cases of human psittacosis are reported each year. Infections may occur more often than reflected by reported cases for several reasons: (1) *C. psittaci* infections may be only mildly symptomatic; (2) physicians may not elicit a history of bird exposure when evaluating patients because they may not suspect the diagnosis or because patients may not recall transient bird exposure; (3) convalescent-phase serum samples may not be obtained on patients who show clinical improvement on therapy; and (4) prompt initiation of appropriate antibiotic therapy may blunt the antibody response to *C. psittaci*, making convalescent serologies unreliable.

Dr. Cantwell calls the Nguyen's veterinarian to obtain more information about Bitsy's death.

What does Dr. Cantwell need to know about Bitsy?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 **Part 4** Part 5 Part 6

There are three genera of human influenza viruses. Influenza A (*Alphainfluenzavirus*) and B (*Betainfluenzavirus*) viruses cause seasonal epidemics of disease almost every winter in the United States. Influenza C (*Gammainfluenzavirus*) infections generally cause a mild respiratory illness and are not thought to cause epidemics.

The emergence of new influenza A viruses can cause an influenza pandemic. Influenza A viruses are identified by variation in the HA and NA antigens. The different forms of the antigens are assigned numbers—for example HI, H2, H3, Nl, and N2. There are 16 subtypes of HA and 9 of NA. Each number change represents a substantial alteration in the protein makeup of the spike. So far, the only truly human-adapted viruses are H1N1, H2N2, and H3N2.

The variations in the HA and NA antigens are determined by two processes: antigenic drift and antigenic shift. As described for COVID-19, accumulations of mutations, known as antigenic drift, eventually allow the virus to elude much host immunity. The virus might still be designated as H2N2, for example, but viral strains arise that reflect minor antigenic changes. In an evolutionary sense, from the point of view of the virus it is desirable to accumulate mutations that favor transmission with minimal pathogenicity. (If the virus quickly kills or makes the host bedridden, it is less likely to be transmitted.)

Antigenic shifts mark changes great enough to evade most of the immunity developed in the human population. Thus, they are responsible for severe influenza outbreaks, including the pandemics of 1918, 1957, 1968, and 2009. Antigenic shifts involve a major genetic recombination, called *reassortment*, involving the eight segments of viral RNA.

Influenza A virus occurs in avian and mammalian strains; humans generally are not infected by avian strains. However, swine and many wild birds can be infected with both avian and mammalian strains of the influenza virus. Swine are, therefore, good "mixing vessels" in which reassortment occurs. (See the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 13.)

Epidemiology of Influenza

Almost every year, epidemics of the flu spread rapidly through large populations, although not always as a worldwide pandemic. The mortality rate from the disease is usually not high, less than 1%, and these deaths are mainly among the very young and the very old. However, so many people are infected in a major epidemic that the total number of deaths is often large.

The 1918–1919 Pandemic

In any discussion of influenza, the great pandemic of 1918–1919 must be mentioned.* Worldwide, 20 to 50 million people died, including an estimated 675,000 in the United States. No one is sure why the virus was so unusually lethal. Today, the very young and very old are the primary victims of influenza, but in 1918–1919, young adults had the highest mortality rate, often dying within a few hours, probably from a "cytokine storm." The infection is usually restricted to the upper respiratory system, but some change in virulence allowed the virus to

*There will always be uncertainty concerning the origin of this most famous pandemic. The best reliable reports place the first well-documented cases among U.S. Army recruits at Camp Funston, Kansas, in March of 1918. The initial wave of influenza was a relatively mild illness that spread rapidly among the crowded troops and reached France as they were dispatched overseas. There the virus underwent a lethal mutation, seriously incapacitating troops on both sides of the front. Military censorship concealed this, and the first newspaper descriptions were published when the outbreak reached the population of neutral Spain, hence the name assigned to the pandemic: the *Spanish flu*. This second wave of influenza, with its high mortality, soon spread throughout the world and reentered the United States in the autumn and winter of 1918.

invade the lungs and cause lethal hemorrhaging. In 2005, analysis of material preserved from the lungs of U.S. soldiers killed by the flu and from the exhumed body of a victim buried in permanently frozen soil in Alaska led to the complete genetic sequencing of the 1918 virus. Evidence also suggests that the virus was able to infect cells in other organs of the body. Bacterial complications also frequently accompanied the infection and, in those pre-antibiotic days, were often fatal.

The 1918 viral strain apparently became endemic in the U.S. swine population and may have originated there. (See the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 13.) Occasionally, influenza is still spread to humans from this reservoir, but the disease has not propagated as the virulent disease of 1918 did.

The 2009 Pandemic

The most recent pandemic, in 2009, involved an H1N1 virus. This strain is always of special interest because the lethal 1918 pandemic was caused by an H1N1 virus. This strain had apparently been circulating indefinitely in pigs in Mexico and Central America and had not been detected because there was little surveillance in those areas. Mutations of the influenza virus are more likely to occur in humans, who have long life spans. The virus must continue to mutate in order to evade accumulating immunological resistance. Swine and poultry, in contrast, have short life spans, especially if farm-reared, and the viruses infecting them are less likely to accumulate mutations. An H1N1 influenza virus, which has little pressure to mutate in farm-reared swine, tends to remain little changed in successive generations of the animal.

Diagnosis of Influenza

Influenza is difficult to diagnose reliably from clinical signs and symptoms, which numerous respiratory diseases share. However, there are now several commercially available techniques that can diagnose influenza A and B within 20 minutes from nasal washes or nasal swabs. These rapid tests have varying sensitivity and are most useful during influenza season. PCR is used to document strains that are circulating.

Treatment of Influenza

The antiviral drugs zanamivir and oseltamivir significantly reduce the signs and symptoms of influenza A if administered promptly. They are inhibitors of neuraminidase. If taken within 24 hours of onset of influenza, these drugs slow replication. This action allows the immune system to be more effective, which shortens durations of symptoms and lowers the mortality rate. The bacterial complications of influenza are amenable to treatment with antibiotics.

Influenza Vaccines

Thus far, it has not been possible to make a vaccine for influenza that gives long-term immunity to the general population. Although it isn't difficult to make a vaccine for a particular antigenic strain of virus, each new strain of circulating virus must be identified in time, usually by about February, for the useful development and distribution of a new vaccine later that year. Strains of the influenza virus are collected in about 100 centers worldwide, then analyzed in central laboratories. This information is then used to decide on the composition of the vaccines to be offered for the next flu season. The vaccines are usually *multivalent*—directed at the three or four most important strains in circulation at the time.

A major problem is that production methods for vaccines require growing the virus in egg embryos (see Figure 13.7). This process is labor intensive and also requires lead times of 6 to 9 months.

The use of eggs to create vaccines can be avoided by *cell-culture techniques*, in which the virus is grown in vats of cells. A recombinant influenza vaccine has been produced from HA protein expressed by a baculovirus (an insect pathogen) and grown in insect cells. Cell-based vaccines can be produced faster because the cells can be kept frozen. Additionally, such vaccines are not a problem for people with allergies to eggs.

The ultimate goal is a universal flu vaccine that will protect against all flu strains. An example would be to use as a target antigen a *conserved protein* that is the same in all influenza viruses. Recent animal trials using the hemagglutinin stalk have shown promise; a human trial was begun in 2021. The globular head consists of proteins that change rapidly, whereas the stalk proteins, which are also necessary for infection, are conserved.

CLINICAL CASE

Dr. Cantwell asks the Nguyens' veterinarian what, if any, signs and symptoms Bitsy had before the decision was made to euthanize her and whether any tests were run on the bird after she was euthanized. The veterinarian consults his notes and tells Dr. Cantwell that chlamydial antigen was detected by ELISA from both cloacal (intestinal) and throat swabs of the euthanized cockatiel, but cultures for *C. psittaci* were not obtained.

Based on these results, what is the most likely mode of transmission, and how can transmission be prevented?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 **Part 5** Part 6

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

24-9 Is reassortment of the RNA segments of the influenza virus the cause of antigenic shift or antigenic drift?

Fungal Diseases of the Lower Respiratory System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

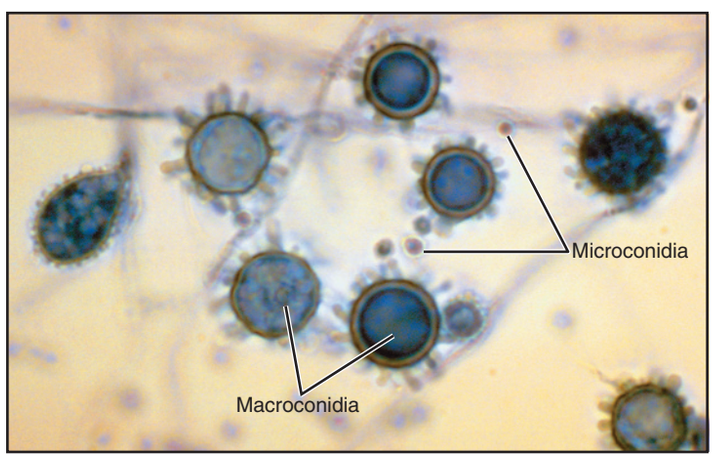
24-10 List the causative agent, mode of transmission, preferred treatment, and laboratory identification tests for four fungal diseases of the respiratory system.

Fungi often produce spores that are disseminated through the air. It is therefore not surprising that several serious fungal diseases affect the lower respiratory system. The rate of fungal infections has been increasing in recent years. Opportunistic fungi are able to grow in immunosuppressed patients, and AIDS, transplant drugs, and anticancer drugs have created more immunosuppressed people than ever before.

Histoplasmosis

Histoplasmosis superficially resembles tuberculosis. In fact, it was first recognized as a widespread disease in the United States when X-ray surveys showed lung lesions in many people who were tuberculin-test-negative. Although the lungs are most likely to be initially infected, the pathogens may spread in the blood and lymph, causing lesions in almost all organs of the body.

Signs and symptoms are usually poorly defined and mostly subclinical, and the disease passes for a minor respiratory infection. In a few cases, perhaps fewer than 0.1%, histoplasmosis progresses, and it becomes a severe, generalized disease. This occurs with an unusually heavy inoculum or upon reactivation, when the infected person's immune system is compromised.



The macroconidia of *Histoplasma capsulatum* are especially useful for diagnostic purposes. Microconidia bud off from hyphae and are the infectious form. At 37°C in tissues, the organism converts to a yeast phase composed of oval, budding yeasts.

Figure 24.16 ***Histoplasma capsulatum*, a dimorphic fungus that causes histoplasmosis.**

Q What does the term *dimorphic* mean?

The causative organism, *Histoplasma capsulatum* (his-TŌ-plaz-mah kap-sū-LAH-tum), is a dimorphic fungus; that is, it has a yeastlike morphology in tissue growth, and, in soil or artificial media, it forms a filamentous mycelium carrying reproductive conidia (**Figure 24.16** and see Figure 12.5). In the body, the yeastlike form is found intracellularly in macrophages, where it survives and multiplies.

Although histoplasmosis is rather widespread throughout the world, it has a limited geographic range in the United States (**Figure 24.17**). In general, the disease is found in the states adjoining the Mississippi and Ohio rivers. More than 75% of the population in some of these states have antibodies against the infection. In other states—Maine, for example—a positive test is a rare event. Approximately 50 deaths are reported in the United States each year from histoplasmosis.

Humans acquire the disease from airborne conidia produced under conditions of appropriate moisture and pH levels. These conditions occur especially where droppings from birds and bats have accumulated. Birds themselves, because of their high body temperature, do not carry the disease, but their droppings provide nutrients, particularly a source of nitrogen, for the fungus. Bats, which have a lower body temperature than birds, carry the fungus, shed it in their feces, and infect new soil sites.

Clinical signs, symptoms, and history, serological tests for *Histoplasma* antigen and, most important, either isolating the pathogen or identifying it in tissue specimens are necessary for proper diagnosis. Currently, the most effective chemotherapy is itraconazole.

Coccidioidomycosis

Another fungal pulmonary disease, also rather restricted geographically, is **coccidioidomycosis**. The causative agent is *Coccidioides immitis* (kok-sid-ē-OY-dēz IM-mi-tis), a dimorphic fungus. The

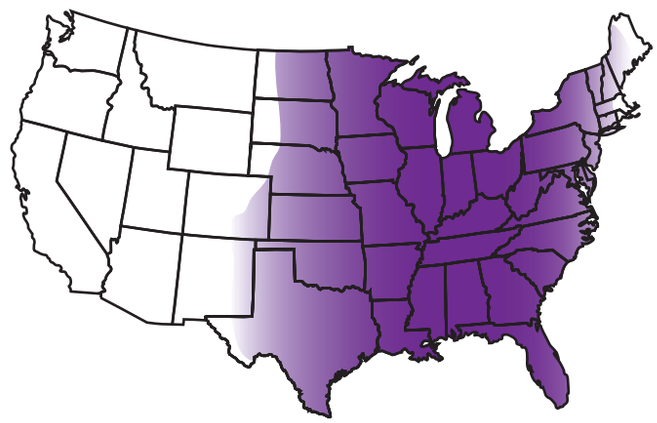


Figure 24.17 **Histoplasmosis distribution.**

Source: CDC.

Q Compared with the disease distribution shown in the map in Figure 24.19 what can you determine about the moisture requirements in the soil for the two fungi involved?

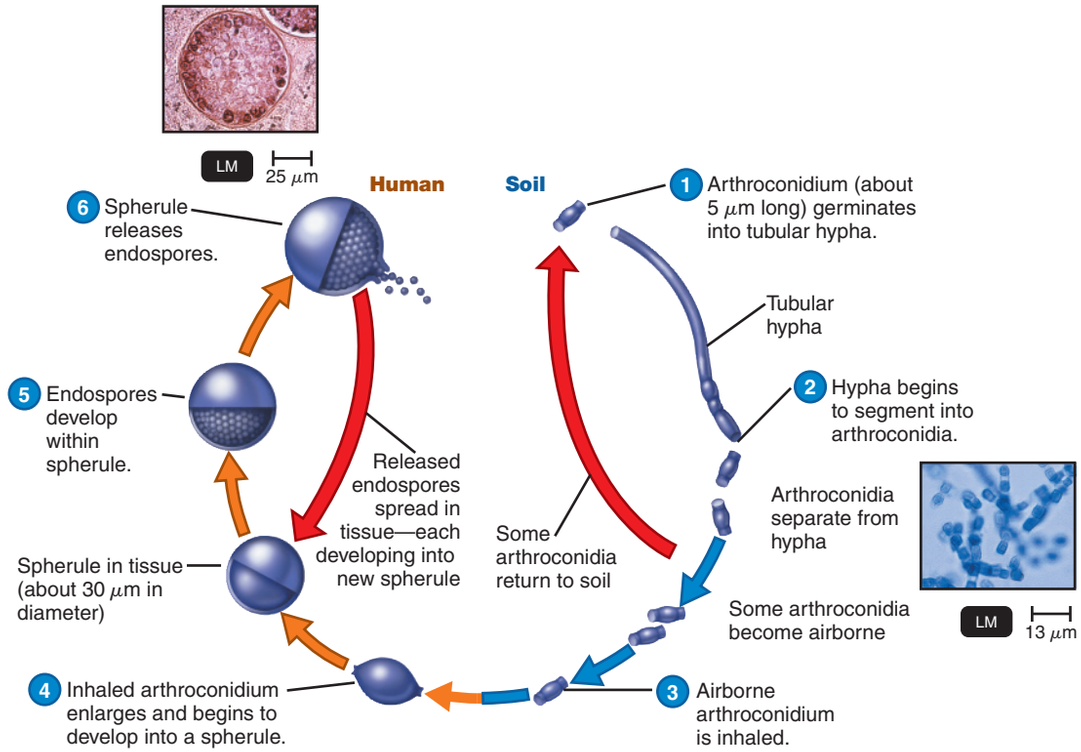


Figure 24.18 The life cycle of *Coccidioides immitis*, the cause of coccidioidomycosis.

Q What is the natural habitat of *Coccidioides*?

arthroconidia are found in dry, alkaline soils of the American Southwest and in similar soils of South America and northern Mexico. Because of its frequent occurrence in the San Joaquin Valley of California, it is sometimes known as *Valley fever* or *San Joaquin fever*. In tissues, the organism forms a thick-walled body called a *spherule* filled with endospores (Figure 24.18). In soil, it forms filaments that reproduce by the formation of arthroconidia (see Figure 12.6b). The wind carries the arthroconidia to transmit the infection. Arthroconidia are often so abundant that simply driving through an endemic area can result in infection, especially during a dust storm. An estimated 150,000 infections occur each year.

Most infections are not apparent, and almost all patients recover in a few weeks, even without treatment. The signs and symptoms of coccidioidomycosis include chest pain and perhaps fever, coughing, and weight loss. In less than 1% of cases, a progressive disease resembling tuberculosis disseminates throughout the body. A substantial proportion of adults who are long-time residents of areas where the disease is endemic have evidence of prior infection with *C. immitis* by the skin test.

The incidence of coccidioidomycosis has been increasing recently in California and Arizona (Figure 24.19). Contributing factors include a prolonged drought, an increased

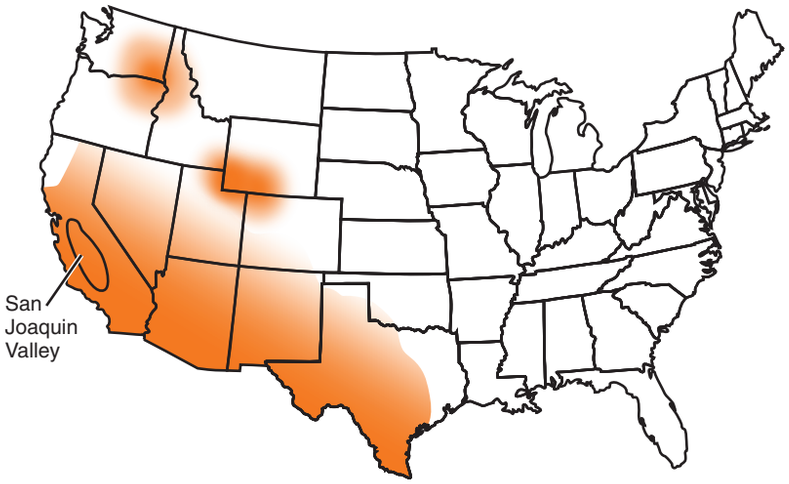


Figure 24.19 The U.S. endemic area for coccidioidomycosis. The outlined area in California is the San Joaquin Valley. Because of the very high incidence there, the disease is also sometimes called Valley fever. The area on the map in northeastern Utah indicates an outbreak in 2001 in which ten archeologists working on excavations at the Dinosaur National Monument were infected. Between 1997 and 2021, Valley fever contracted from soil was identified in three people and two dogs.

Source: CDC.

Q Why does the incidence of coccidioidomycosis increase after ecological disturbances, such as earthquakes and construction?

number of older residents, and an increased prevalence of HIV/AIDS. Outbreaks may occur after an earthquake or other event that disturbs large amounts of soil. About 50 to 100 deaths occur annually from this disease in the United States.

Diagnosis is most reliably made by identifying the spherules in tissue or fluids. The organism can be cultured from fluids or lesions, but laboratory workers must use great care because of the possibility of infectious aerosols. Several serological tests and DNA probes are available for identifying isolates. A tuberculin-like skin test is used in screening.

Fluconazole or itraconazole is used to treat coccidioidomycosis.

Pneumocystis Pneumonia

Pneumocystis **pneumonia (PCP)** is caused by the yeastlike fungus *Pneumocystis jirovecii* (ye-rō-VET-zē-ē), formerly *P. carinii* (Figure 24.20).

The pathogen is sometimes found in healthy human lungs. Immunocompetent adults have few or no symptoms, but newly infected infants occasionally show symptoms of a lung infection. This population may also be the reservoir of the organism, which is not found in the environment, animals, or very often in healthy humans. Persons with compromised immunity are the most susceptible to symptomatic PCP. This portion of the population has also expanded greatly in recent decades. For example, before the AIDS epidemic, PCP was an uncommon disease; perhaps 100 cases occurred each year. By 1993, it had become a primary indicator of AIDS, with more than 20,000 annual reported cases. Presumably, the loss of an effective immune defense allows the activation of a latent infection. Other groups that are very susceptible to this disease are people whose immunity is depressed because of cancer or who are receiving immunosuppressive drugs to minimize rejection of transplanted tissue.

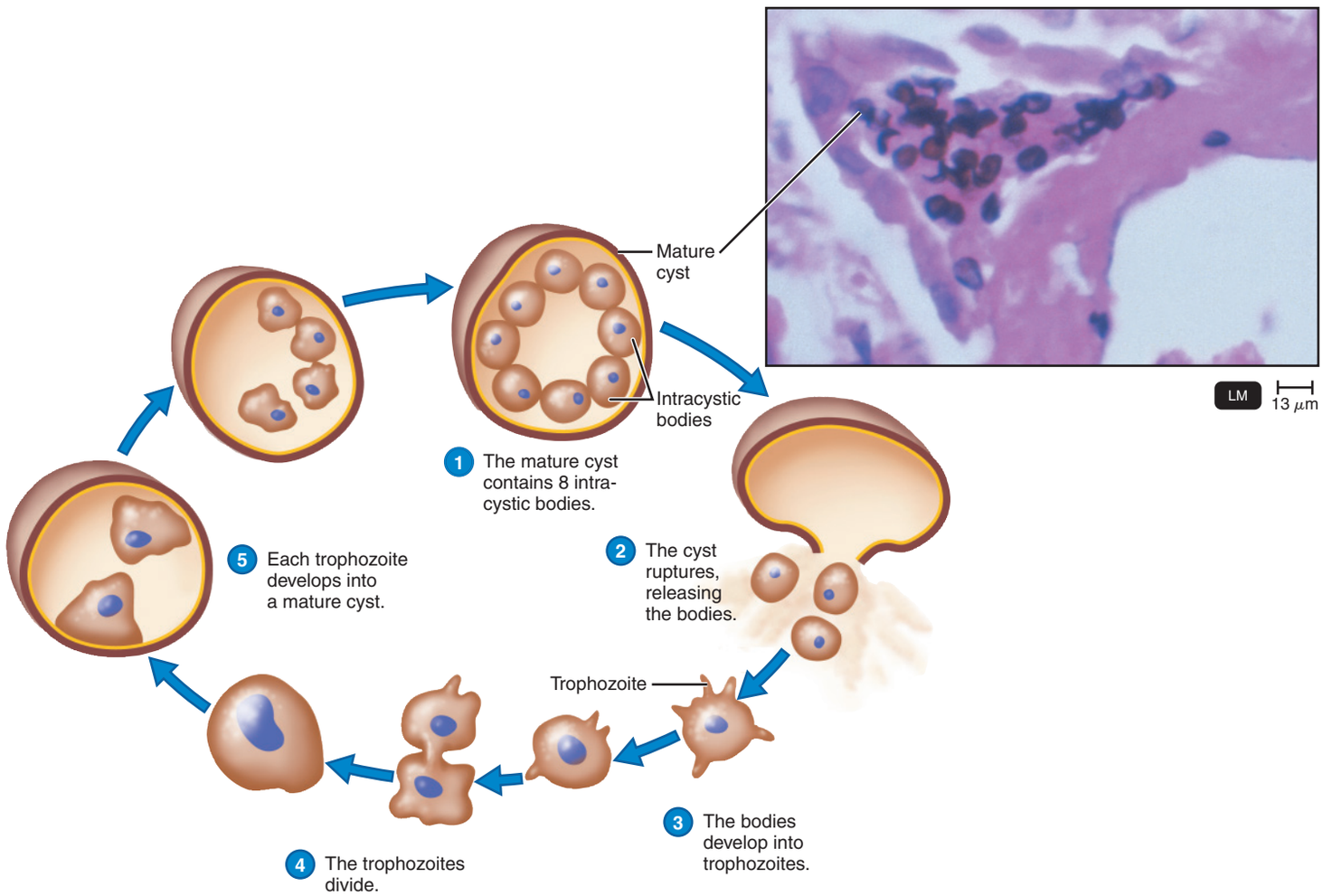


Figure 24.20 The life cycle of *Pneumocystis jirovecii*, the cause of *Pneumocystis* pneumonia. Long classified as a protozoan, this organism is now known to be a fungus, but it has characteristics of both groups.

Q Of what value is proper classification of this organism?

In the human lung, the microbes are found mostly in the lining of the pulmonary alveoli. There, they form a thick-walled cyst in which spherical intracystic bodies successively divide as part of a sexual cycle. The mature cyst contains eight such bodies (see Figure 24.20). Eventually the cyst ruptures and releases them, and each body develops into a trophozoite. The trophozoite cells can reproduce asexually by fission, but they may also enter the encysted sexual stage. Diagnosis is usually made from sputum samples in which cysts are detected.

The fatality rate is 100% without treatment. The drug of choice for treatment is currently trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole.

Blastomycosis (North American Blastomycosis)

Blastomycosis is usually called **North American blastomycosis** to differentiate it from a similar South American blastomycosis. It is caused by the fungus *Blastomyces dermatitidis* (blas′tō-MĪ-sēz der-mah-TI-ti-dis), a dimorphic fungus endemic in soil around the Great Lakes and Mississippi River Valley (**Figure 24.21**). Approximately 100 cases are reported each year, although most infections are asymptomatic.

The infection begins in the lungs after inhalation of conidiospores. It resembles bacterial pneumonia and can spread rapidly. Cutaneous ulcers commonly appear when the yeast are disseminated in circulating monocytes. Abscesses may form, with extensive tissue destruction. The pathogen can be isolated from pus and biopsy specimens. Itraconazole or amphotericin B is usually an effective treatment.

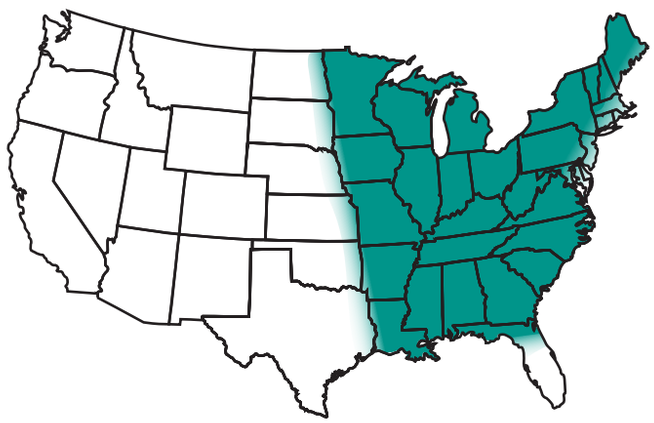


Figure 24.21 Blastomycosis endemic area.

Source: CDC.

Q What other respiratory mycosis has a similar geographic distribution? How would you differentiate the two diseases?

Other Fungi Involved in Respiratory Disease

Many other opportunistic fungi, such as *Rhizopus* and *Mucor*, may cause respiratory disease, particularly in hosts who are immunosuppressed or have been exposed to massive numbers of spores. **Aspergillosis** is an important example; it is airborne by the conidia of *Aspergillus fumigatus* (FŪ-mi-gah-tus) and other species of *Aspergillus*, which are widespread in decaying vegetation. Compost piles are ideal sites for growth, and farmers and gardeners are most often exposed to infective amounts of these conidia.

Invasive infections of pulmonary aspergillosis can be very dangerous. Predisposing factors include an impaired immune system, cancer, and diabetes. As with most systemic fungal infections, only a limited arsenal of antifungal agents is available; itraconazole and amphotericin B have proved the most useful.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

24-10 The droppings of both blackbirds and bats support the growth of *H. capsulatum*; which of these two animal reservoirs is normally actually infected by the fungus?

* * *

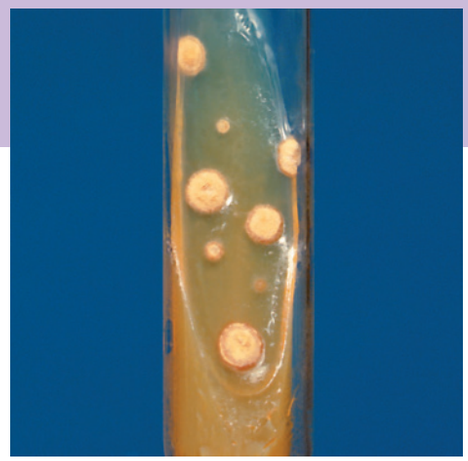
Diseases in Focus 24.3 summarizes the microbial respiratory diseases affecting the lower respiratory system discussed in this chapter.

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

Domestic and imported pet birds, as well as humans, are at risk for infection with and transmission of *C. psittaci* because shipping, crowding, and breeding promote shedding of the organism. Avian infection, which has a prevalence of less than 5%, may increase to 100% under such circumstances. The U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) requires a 30-day quarantine period for all imported birds to prevent the introduction of Newcastle disease (a viral disease that affects fowl); during this period, psittacine birds receive medicated chlortetracycline (CT) feed to prevent transmission of *C. psittaci* to USDA staff. Unless treatment is continued for 45 days, infected birds arriving to distributors from breeders and from quarantine may shed *C. psittaci* and continue to do so after purchase by consumers. Therefore, breeders and importers should ensure that all domestic nestlings and imported birds receive prophylactic CT for 45 continuous days to prevent future outbreaks of human psittacosis.

DISEASES IN FOCUS 24.3 Microbial Diseases of the Lower Respiratory System

Three weeks after working on the demolition of an abandoned building in Kentucky, a worker is hospitalized for acute respiratory illness. At the time of demolition, a colony of bats inhabited the building. An X-ray examination reveals a lung mass. A purified protein derivative (PPD) test is negative; a cytological examination for cancer is also negative. The mass is surgically removed. Microscopic examination of the mass reveals ovoid yeast cells. Use the following table to make a differential diagnosis and identify infections that could cause these symptoms.



Mycelial culture grown from the patient's lung mass.

Disease	Pathogen	Signs and Symptoms	Reservoir	Diagnosis	Treatment
BACTERIAL DISEASES					
Bacterial Pneumonia (see Diseases in Focus 24.2)					
Pertussis (whooping cough)	*Bordetella pertussis*	Spasms of intense coughing to clear mucus	Humans	Bacterial culture, PCR	Erythromycin Prevention: DTaP vaccine
Tuberculosis	Slow growing mycobacteria: *M. tuberculosis, M. bovis, M. avium-intracellulare*	Cough, blood in mucus	Humans, cows: can be transmitted via unpasteurized milk	X-ray imaging; presence of acid-fast bacilli in sputum; tests for IFN-γ; PCR test for *M. tuberculosis*	Multiple-antimycobacterial drugs Prevention: pasteurization of milk; BCG vaccine
Pneumonitis	Rapid growing mycobacteria: *M. abscessus, M. fortuitum, M. chelonae*	Cough, fever, shortness of breath	Water, soil	X-ray imaging; culturing bacteria	Azithromycin; rifampin
Melioidosis	*Burkholderia pseudomallei*	Pneumonia, or as tissue abscesses and severe sepsis	Moist soil	Bacterial culture, PCR	Ceftazidime
VIRAL DISEASES					
COVID-19	*Betacoronavirus* SARS-CoV-2	Fever, cough, loss of smell/taste	Humans	ELISA, PCR	Remdesivir; nirmatrelvir Prevention: COVID-19 vaccine
Respiratory Syncytial Virus (RSV) Disease	*Orthopneumovirus human orthopneumovirus*	Pneumonia in infants	Humans	Serological tests, PCR	Riboviran: Palivizumab
Influenza	*Alphainfluenzavirus, Betainfluenzavirus, Gammainfluenzavirus*	Chills, fever, headache, and muscular aches	Humans, pigs, birds	Serological tests, PCR	Zanamivir, oseltamivir
FUNGAL DISEASES					
Histoplasmosis	*Histoplasma capsulatum*	Resembles tuberculosis	Soil; widespread in Ohio and Mississippi River valleys	Serological tests	Itraconazole
Coccidioidomycosis	*Coccidioides immitis*	Fever, coughing, weight loss	Desert soils of U.S. Southwest	Serological tests	Fluconazole, itraconazole
***Pneumocystis* Pneumonia**	*Pneumocystis jirovecii*	Pneumonia	Most likely humans	Microscopy	Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
Blastomycosis	*Blastomyces dermatitidis*	Resembles bacterial pneumonia; extensive tissue damage	Soil in Great Lakes and Mississippi River valleys	Isolation of pathogen	Itraconazole, amphotericin B

Study Outline

Introduction (p. 693)

1. Infections of the upper respiratory system are the most common type of infection.
2. Pathogens that enter the respiratory system can infect other parts of the body.

Structure and Function of the Respiratory System (pp. 694–695)

1. The upper respiratory system consists of the nose, pharynx, and associated structures, such as the middle ear and auditory tubes.
2. Coarse hairs in the nose filter large particles from air entering the respiratory tract.
3. The ciliated mucous membranes of the nose and throat trap airborne particles and remove them from the body.
4. Lymphoid tissue, tonsils, and adenoids provide immunity to certain infections.
5. The lower respiratory system consists of the trachea, bronchial tubes, and pulmonary alveoli.
6. The ciliary escalator of the lower respiratory system helps prevent microorganisms from reaching the lungs.
7. Microbes in the lungs can be phagocytized by alveolar macrophages.
8. Respiratory mucus contains IgA antibodies.

Normal Microbiota of the Respiratory System (p. 695)

1. The normal microbiota of the nasal cavity and throat can include pathogenic microorganisms.

Microbial Diseases of the Upper Respiratory System (pp. 695–700)

1. Specific areas of the upper respiratory system can become infected to produce pharyngitis, laryngitis, tonsillitis, sinusitis, and epiglottitis.
2. These infections may be caused by several bacteria and viruses, often in combination.
3. Most respiratory tract infections are self-limiting.
4. *H. influenzae* type b can cause epiglottitis.

Bacterial Diseases of the Upper Respiratory System (pp. 696–698)

Streptococcal Pharyngitis (Strep Throat) (pp. 696–697)

1. This infection is caused by group A beta-hemolytic streptococci, the group that consists of *S. pyogenes*.
2. Signs of this infection are inflammation of the mucous membrane and fever; tonsillitis and otitis media may also occur.
3. Rapid diagnosis is made by enzyme immunoassays.
4. Immunity to streptococcal infections is type-specific.

Scarlet Fever (p. 697)

5. Cases of strep throat caused by an erythrogenic toxin-producing *S. pyogenes* result in scarlet fever.
6. *S. pyogenes* produces an erythrogenic toxin when lysogenized by a phage.
7. Signs include a red rash, high fever, and a red, enlarged tongue.

Diphtheria (pp. 697–698)

8. Diphtheria is caused by exotoxin-producing *C. diphtheriae*.
9. Exotoxin is produced when the bacteria are lysogenized by a phage.
10. A membrane, containing fibrin and dead human and bacterial cells, forms in the throat and can block the passage of air.
11. The exotoxin circulates in the blood and inhibits protein synthesis, and heart, kidney, or nerve damage may result.
12. Laboratory diagnosis is based on isolation of the bacteria and the appearance of growth on differential media.
13. Routine immunization in the United States includes diphtheria toxoid in the DTaP vaccine.
14. Slow-healing skin ulcerations are characteristic of cutaneous diphtheria.
15. There is minimal dissemination of the exotoxin in the bloodstream in cutaneous diphtheria.

Otitis Media (p. 698)

16. Earache, or otitis media, can occur as a complication of nose and throat infections.
17. Pus accumulation causes pressure on the eardrum.
18. Bacterial causes include *S. pneumoniae*, nonencapsulated *H. influenzae*, *M. catarrhalis*, and *S. pyogenes*.

Viral Disease of the Upper Respiratory System (pp. 698–700)

The Common Cold (pp. 698–700)

1. Any one of approximately 200 different viruses, including rhinoviruses, coronaviruses, and EV-D68, can cause the common cold.
2. The incidence of colds increases during cold weather, possibly because of increased interpersonal indoor contact or physiological changes.

Microbial Diseases of the Lower Respiratory System (pp. 700–723)

1. Many of the same microorganisms that infect the upper respiratory system also infect the lower respiratory system.
2. Diseases of the lower respiratory system include bronchitis and pneumonia.

Bacterial Diseases of the Lower Respiratory System (pp. 700–713)

Pertussis (Whooping Cough) (pp. 700–701)

1. Pertussis is caused by *B. pertussis*.
2. The initial stage of pertussis resembles a cold and is called the catarrhal stage.
3. The accumulation of mucus in the trachea and bronchi causes deep coughs characteristic of the paroxysmal (second) stage.
4. The convalescence (third) stage can last for months.
5. Regular immunization for children has decreased the incidence of pertussis.

Tuberculosis (pp. 701–707)

6. Tuberculosis is caused by slowly growing mycobacteria, including *M. tuberculosis*.
7. *M. bovis* causes bovine tuberculosis and can be transmitted to humans by unpasteurized milk.
8. *M. avium* complex infects patients in the late stages of HIV infection.
9. *M. tuberculosis* may be ingested by alveolar macrophages; if not killed, the bacteria reproduce in the macrophages.
10. Lesions formed by *M. tuberculosis* are called tubercles; macrophages and bacteria form the caseous lesion that might calcify and appear in an X-ray image as a Ghon's complex.
11. Liquefaction of the caseous lesion results in a tuberculous cavity in which *M. tuberculosis* can grow.
12. New foci of infection can develop when a caseous lesion ruptures and releases bacteria into blood or lymph vessels; this is called miliary tuberculosis.
13. A positive tuberculin skin test can indicate either an active case of TB, prior infection, or vaccination and immunity to the disease.
14. Active infections can be diagnosed by detection of IFN-γ or rapid PCR test for *M. tuberculosis*.
15. Chemotherapy usually involves three or four drugs taken for at least 6 months; multi-drug-resistant *M. tuberculosis* is becoming prevalent.
16. BCG vaccine for tuberculosis consists of a live, avirulent culture of *M. bovis*.
17. Rapidly growing mycobacteria cause lung infections in older people with predisposing conditions.

Bacterial Pneumonias (pp. 707–712)

18. Typical pneumonia is caused by *S. pneumoniae*.
19. Atypical pneumonias are caused by other microorganisms.
20. Pneumococcal pneumonia is caused by encapsulated *S. pneumoniae*.
21. Children under 5 and adults over 65 are most susceptible to *H. influenzae* pneumonia.
22. *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* causes mycoplasmal pneumonia; it is an endemic disease.
23. Legionellosis is caused by the aerobic gram-negative rod *L. pneumophila*.
24. *C. psittaci*, the bacterium that causes psittacosis (ornithosis), is transmitted by contact with contaminated droppings and exudates of fowl.
25. *C. pneumoniae* causes pneumonia; it is transmitted from person to person.
26. Obligately parasitic, intracellular *C. burnetii* causes Q fever.

Melioidosis (pp. 712–713)

27. Melioidosis, caused by *B. pseudomallei*, is transmitted by inhalation, ingestion, or through puncture wounds. Signs include pneumonia, sepsis, and encephalitis.

Viral Diseases of the Lower Respiratory System (pp. 713–718)

Viral Pneumonia (pp. 713–714)

1. A number of viruses can cause pneumonia as a complication of infections such as influenza.
2. The etiologies are not usually identified in a clinical laboratory because of the difficulty in isolating and identifying viruses.

COVID-19 (pp. 714–715)

3. COVID-19 is caused by the *Betacoronavirus SARS-CoV-2*.
4. SARS-CoV-2 is a single-stranded RNA virus. Spike (S) proteins projecting from the viral envelope give it its characteristic corona and facilitate its attachment to body cells.
5. Viral variants arise from mutations in a process known as antigenic drift.
6. Remdesivir and nirmatrelvir are used to treat infections.
7. Virus vector and mRNA vaccines are available for prevention of COVID-19.

Respiratory Syncytial Virus (RSV) (pp. 715–716)

8. RSV is the most common cause of pneumonia in infants.

Influenza (Flu) (pp. 716–718)

9. Influenza is caused by three genera of viruses and is characterized by chills, fever, headache, and general muscular aches.
10. Hemagglutinin (HA) and neuraminidase (NA) spikes project from the outer lipid bilayer of the virus.
11. Viral strains are identified by antigenic differences in their protein coats; influenza A is further subdivided by differences in the HA and NA spikes.
12. Antigenic shifts and antigenic drift enable the virus to evade natural immunity.
13. Zanamivir and oseltamivir are effective drugs against influenza A virus.
14. Multivalent vaccines are available.

Fungal Diseases of the Lower Respiratory System (pp. 719–723)

1. Fungal spores are easily inhaled; they may germinate in the lower respiratory tract.
2. The incidence of fungal diseases has been increasing in recent years.
3. The mycoses in the following sections can be treated with itraconazole.

Histoplasmosis (p. 719)

4. *H. capsulatum* causes a subclinical respiratory infection that only occasionally progresses to a severe, generalized disease.
5. The disease is acquired by inhaling airborne conidia.
6. Isolating or identifying the fungus in tissue samples is necessary for diagnosis.

Coccidioidomycosis (pp. 719–721)

7. Inhaling the airborne arthroconidia of *C. immitis* can result in coccidioidomycosis.

***Pneumocystis* Pneumonia** (pp. 721–722)

8. *P. jirovecii* is found in healthy human lungs.
9. *P. jirovecii* causes disease in immunosuppressed patients.

Blastomycosis (North American Blastomycosis) (p. 722)

10. *B. dermatitidis* is the causative agent of blastomycosis.
11. The infection begins in the lungs and can spread to cause extensive abscesses.

Other Fungi Involved in Respiratory Disease (p. 722)

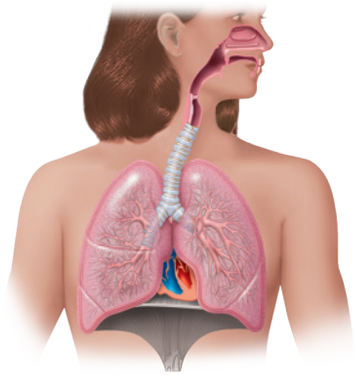
12. Opportunistic fungi can cause respiratory disease in immunosuppressed hosts, especially when large numbers of spores are inhaled.
13. Among these fungi are *Aspergillus, Rhizopus*, and *Mucor*.

Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review



1. DRAW IT Show the location of the following diseases: common cold, COVID-19, diphtheria, coccidioidomycosis, influenza, pneumonia, scarlet fever, tuberculosis, and whooping cough.
2. Compare and contrast mycoplasmal pneumonia and viral pneumonia.
3. List the causative agent, signs and symptoms, and treatment for four viral diseases of the respiratory system. Separate the diseases according to whether they infect the upper or lower respiratory system.
4. Complete the following table.

Disease	Causative Agent	Signs and Symptoms	Treatment
Streptococcal pharyngitis			
Scarlet fever			
Diphtheria			
Whooping cough			
Tuberculosis			
Pneumococcal pneumonia			
H. influenzae pneumonia			
Chlamydial pneumonia			
Otitis media			
Legionellosis			
Psittacosis			
Q fever			
Epiglottitis			
Melioidosis			

5. Under what conditions can the saprophytes *Aspergillus* and *Rhizopus* cause infections?
6. A patient has been diagnosed as having pneumonia. Is this sufficient information to begin treatment with antimicrobial agents? Briefly discuss why or why not.
7. List the causative agent, mode of transmission, and endemic area for the diseases histoplasmosis, coccidioidomycosis, blastomycosis, and *Pneumocystis* pneumonia.
8. Briefly describe the procedures and positive results of the tuberculin test and what is indicated by a positive test.
9. Identify the bacteria involved in respiratory infections using the following laboratory test results:

Gram-positive cocci
- Catalase-positive: a. _____
- Catalase-negative
  - Beta-hemolytic, bacitracin inhibition: b. _____
  - Alpha-hemolytic, optochin inhibition: c. _____

Gram-positive rods
- Non–acid-fast: d. _____
- Acid-fast: e. _____

Gram-negative cocci: f. _____

Gram-negative rods
- Aerobes
  - Coccobacilli: g. _____
- Rods
  - Grow on nutrient agar: h. _____
  - Require special media: i. _____
- Facultative anaerobes
  - Coccobacilli: j. _____

Intracellular parasites
- Form elementary bodies: k. _____
- Do not form elementary bodies: l. _____

Wall-less: m. _____

10. NAME IT These aerobic, gram-negative bacteria produce tracheal cytotoxin that kills ciliated cells of the trachea.

Multiple Choice

1. A patient has fever, difficulty breathing, chest pains, fluid in the pulmonary alveoli, and a positive tuberculin skin test. Gram-positive cocci are isolated from the sputum. The recommended treatment is
   a. a macrolide.
   b. antitoxin.
   c. isoniazid.
   d. tetracyclines.
   e. none of the above.
2. The 19 in COVID-19 signifies that
   a. this is the 19th coronavirus epidemic.
   b. this is 19th known coronavirus.
   c. there are 19 strains of *Betacoronavirus*.
   d. the virus was identified in 2019.
   e. the symptoms last for 19 days.

Match the following choices to the culture descriptions in questions 3 through 6:

a. *Chlamydia*
b. *Coccidioides*
c. *Histoplasma*
d. *Mycobacterium*
e. *Mycoplasma*

3. Your culture from a pneumonia patient appears not to have grown. You do see colonies, however, when the plate is viewed at 100×.
4. This pneumonia etiology requires cell culture.
5. Microscopic examination of a lung biopsy shows ovoid cells in alveolar macrophages. You suspect these are the cause of the patient's signs and symptoms, but your culture grows a filamentous organism.

6. Microscopic examination of a lung biopsy shows spherules.
7. In San Francisco, ten animal health care technicians developed pneumonia 2 weeks after 130 goats were moved to the animal shelter where they worked. Which of the following is *false*?
   a. Diagnosis is made by a blood agar culture of sputum.
   b. The cause is *Coxiella burnetii*.
   c. The bacteria produce endospores.
   d. The disease was transmitted by aerosols.
   e. Diagnosis is made by complement-fixation tests for antibodies.
8. Which of the following leads to all the rest?
   a. catarrhal stage
   b. cough
   c. loss of cilia
   d. mucus accumulation
   e. tracheal cytotoxin

Match the following choices to the statements in questions 9 and 10:

a. *Bordetella pertussis*
b. *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*
c. *Legionella pneumophila*
d. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*
e. none of the above

9. Causes the formation of a membrane across the throat.
10. Resistant to destruction by phagocytes.

Analysis

1. Differentiate *S. pyogenes* causing strep throat from *S. pyogenes* causing scarlet fever.
2. Why might the influenza vaccine be less effective than other vaccines?
3. Explain why it would be impractical to include cold and influenza vaccinations in the required childhood vaccinations.

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. In August, a 24-year-old male from Virginia developed difficulty breathing and bilateral lobe infiltrates 2 months after driving through California. During initial evaluation, typical pneumonia was suspected, and he was treated with antibiotics. Efforts to diagnose the pneumonia were unsuccessful. In October, a laryngeal mass was detected, and laryngeal cancer was suspected; treatment with steroids and bronchodilators did not result in improvement. Lung biopsy and laryngoscopy detected diffuse granular tissue. He was treated with amphotericin B and discharged after 5 days. What was the disease? What might have been done differently to decrease the patient's recovery time from 3 months to 1 week?
2. During a 6-month period, 72 clinic staff members became tuberculin-positive. A case-control study was undertaken to determine the most likely source of *M. tuberculosis* infection among the staff. A total of 16 cases and 34 tuberculin-negative controls were compared. Pentamidine isethionate is not used for TB treatment. What disease was probably being treated with this drug? What is the most likely source of infection?

	Cases	Control
Works $\geq$40 hr/week	100%	62%
In room during aerosolized pentamidine isethionate therapy in TB patients	31	3
Patient contact	94	94
Lunch eaten in staff lounge	38	35
Resident of western Palm Beach	75	65
Female	81	77
Cigarette smoker	6	15
Contact with nurse diagnosed with TB	15	12
In unventilated room during collection of TB-positive sputum samples	13	8

3. In a 2-week period, eight infants in an intensive care nursery (ICN) developed pneumonia caused by RSV. A 2-week-old girl from the newborn nursery, adjacent to the ICN, also developed an RSV infection. Complement-fixation (CF) screening and ELISA for viral antigens were performed to diagnose infections. RSV-positive patients were placed in a separate room. Toward the end of this outbreak, CF tests and direct ELISA tests were made of ten ICN staff members. ELISA–viral antigen tests were negative; RSV titers as determined by CF are shown in the following table.

Staff	RSV Titer
A	0
B	64
C	32
D	128
E	256
F	0
G	0
H	32
I	32
J	16

Comment on the probable source of this outbreak. Explain the apparent discrepancy between the CF test and ELISA results. How can RSV infections in nurseries be prevented?

25 Microbial Diseases of the Digestive System

Microbial diseases of the digestive system are second only to respiratory diseases as causes of illness in the United States. Most such diseases result from ingesting food or water contaminated with pathogenic microorganisms or their toxins. These pathogens usually enter the food or water supply after being shed in the feces of people or animals infected with them. Therefore, microbial diseases of the digestive system are typically transmitted by a **fecal–oral cycle**. This cycle is interrupted by effective sanitation practices in food production and handling. Modern methods of sewage treatment and disinfection of water are essential. There is also an increasing awareness of the need for new tests that will rapidly and reliably detect pathogens in foods (a perishable commodity).

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) estimates that, in the United States, about 48 million people experience foodborne illness annually, resulting in about 3000 deaths. Some *Escherichia coli* cause disease by making a toxin called Shiga toxin. The bacteria (shown in the photo) that make these toxins are called Shiga toxin-producing *E. coli* (STEC). A STEC infection is described in the Clinical Case in this chapter.

▶ ***Escherichia coli*** **bacteria are essential members of the human microbiome; however, certain strains produce a toxin, such as the Shiga toxin produced by *E. coli* O157:H7.**

In the Clinic

As the county public health nurse, you were contacted regarding a woman who had acute gastroenteritis after dining at a local restaurant with friends. You interviewed the diners and confirmed that three of the seven in the party had consumed New England clam chowder. Within 1 to 4 hours after consumption, the three had onset of nausea and vomiting lasting up to 24 hours. The four diners who had not eaten the clam chowder did not become ill. The restaurant had kept the clam chowder at 39°C for the lunch and dinner service. **What microbial etiology is most likely?**

Hint: Make a list of the foodborne diseases covered in this chapter to match to this case.

Structure and Function of the Digestive System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

25-1 Name the structures of the digestive system that contact food.

The **digestive system** is essentially a tubelike structure, the *digestive canal* (also known as the *gastrointestinal [GI] tract* or *alimentary canal*), which is mainly the mouth, pharynx (throat), esophagus (food tube leading to the stomach), stomach, and the small and large intestines. The system also includes *accessory structures* such as the teeth and tongue. Certain other accessory structures, such as the salivary glands, liver, gallbladder, and pancreas, lie outside the digestive canal and produce secretions that are conveyed by ducts into it (**Figure 25.1**).

The purpose of the digestive system is to digest foods—that is, to break them down into small molecules that can be taken up and used by body cells. In a process called *absorption*, these end-products of digestion pass from the small intestine into the blood plasma or lymph plasma for distribution to body cells. Then the residual food and waste moves through the large intestine, where water and any remaining nutrients are absorbed from it. Over the course of an average life span, about 25 tons of food pass through the digestive canal. The resulting undigested solids, called *feces*, are eliminated from the body through the anus. Intestinal gas, or *flatus*, is a mixture of nitrogen from swallowed air and microbially produced carbon dioxide, hydrogen, and methane. On average, we produce 0.5 to 2.0 liters of flatus every day.

There is also a relationship between the body's digestive system and immune system. This is described in **Exploring the Microbiome**. Throughout life, the intestinal mucosa continues to be challenged by the antigens of the intestinal microbiota and ingested. As a consequence, an estimated 70% of the immune system is located in the intestinal tract, especially the small intestine. This loosely organized lymphoid tissue and structures such as lymph nodes and aggregated lymphoid follicles are collectively called *gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT)*.

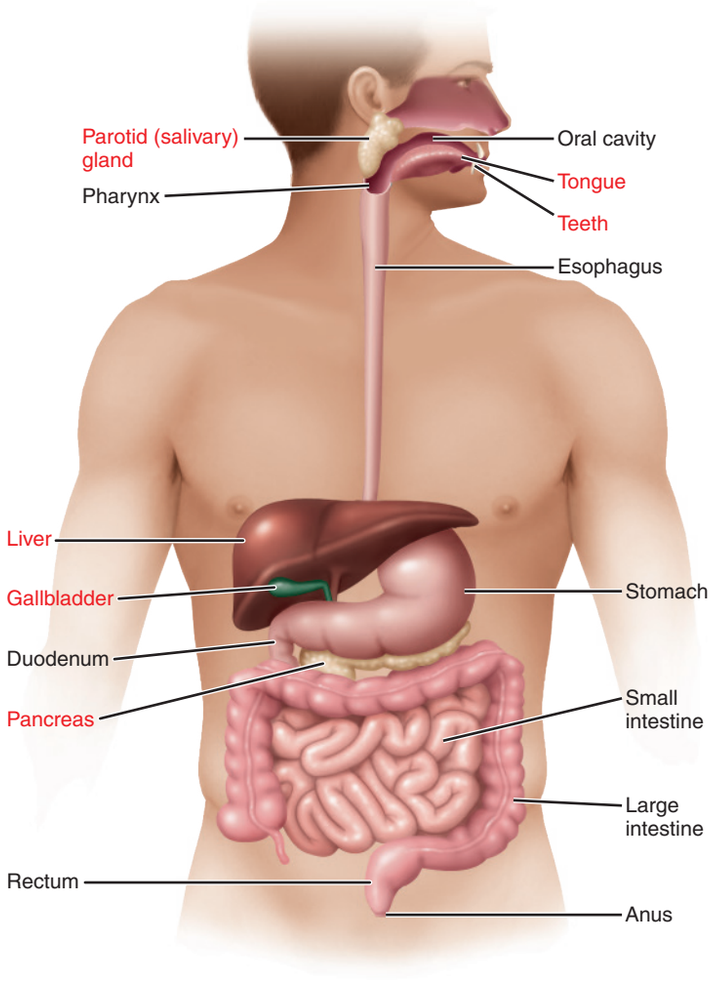


Figure 25.1 The human digestive system. Accessory structures are indicated in red.

Q Where are microorganisms normally found in the digestive system?

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

25-1 Small explosions have occurred when a surgeon used spark-producing instruments to remove intestinal polyps. What ignited?

Normal Microbiota of the Digestive System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

25-2 Identify parts of the digestive canal that normally have microbiota.

Bacteria heavily populate most of the digestive system. In the mouth, each milliliter of saliva can contain millions of bacteria. Because of the hydrochloric acid produced by the stomach and the rapid movement of food through the small intestine, these organs house relatively few microorganisms. By contrast, the large intestine has enormous microbial populations, exceeding 100 billion bacteria per gram of feces. (Up to 40% of fecal mass is microbial cell material.) The population of the large intestine is composed mostly of anaerobes and facultative anaerobes. Most of these bacteria assist in the enzymatic breakdown of foods, especially many polysaccharides that would otherwise be indigestible. Some of them synthesize useful vitamins.

It's important to understand that food passing through the tubelike digestive canal, although it's in contact with the body, remains outside the body. Unlike the body's exterior, such as the skin, the digestive canal is adapted to absorb nutrients passing through it. At the same time, harmful microbes ingested in food

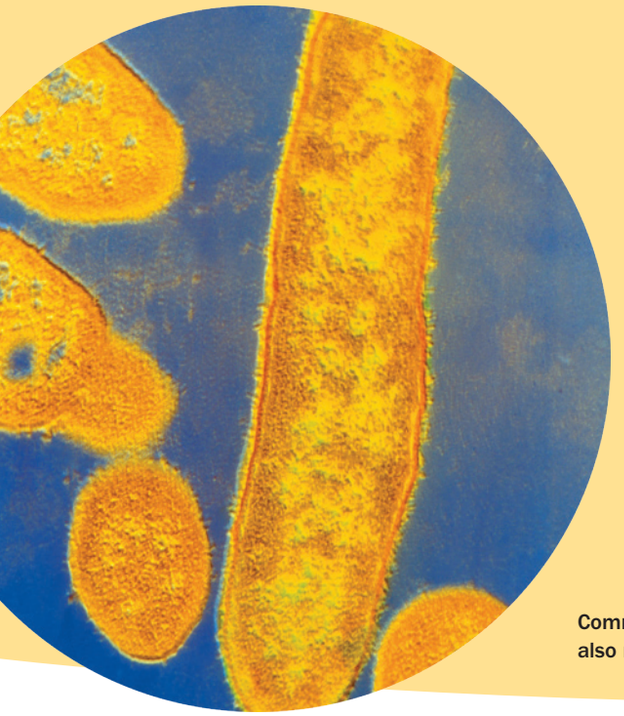
EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME Sorting Out Good Neighbors from Bad in the Digestive Canal

The deeper you go into the digestive canal, the more crowded the bacterial scene. About 10 bacterial species per gram of contents are found in the esophagus, while over 1000 bacterial species per gram reside in the large intestine. This brings up a puzzling question: With 70% of the body's immune response originating in the digestive canal, how do commensal bacteria survive there while pathogens are simultaneously sought out and destroyed? Current research indicates our resident microbes may have as much to do with this sorting out of good bacteria from the bad as our own immune system does.

We are born with an underdeveloped immune system and very few microbes populating our bodies. The first bacteria that colonize an infant's digestive canal seem to teach the immune system to tolerate them over other types of species. This process is enhanced by the fact that the beneficial bacteria then make compounds that hurt pathogens while leaving their and our cells intact.

Gram-negative bacteria such as *Bacteroides* can activate intestinal dendritic cells in the intestinal mucosa, kicking off a process that leads to secretion of immunoglobulin A (IgA) in the digestive canal. This antibody class exerts anti-inflammatory effects and creates a barrier in the mucosa that prevents many pathogens from attaching to the epithelial cells there.

Resident microbes also produce antimicrobial peptides (AMPs). These compounds bind to the more negatively charged membranes of bacteria and lyse them, leaving the membranes of our own cells intact. Some bacteria induce our own AMPs. For example, *Bacteroides thetaiotaomicron* induces intestinal cells to make an enzyme that synthesizes the AMP defensin. The short-chain fatty acids produced by *Lactobacillus* and *Bacteroides* cause host cells to make another antimicrobial peptide, cathelicidin. Interestingly, both gram-positive and gram-negative normal microbiota are resistant to the effects of these AMPs, whereas pathogenic species are sensitive to them.



Commonly found in the intestines, *Bacteroides* species can tap our immune system and also make their own defensive chemicals to aid in the fight against pathogens.

and water must be kept from invading the body. An important factor in this defense is the high acid content of the stomach, which eliminates many potentially harmful ingested microbes.

The small intestine also contains important antimicrobial defenses, most significantly, millions of specialized, granule-filled cells called *Paneth cells*. These are capable of phagocytizing bacteria, and they also produce antibacterial proteins called *defensins* (see "Antimicrobial peptides," Chapter 16) and the antibacterial enzyme *lysozyme*.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

25-2 How are normal microbiota confined to the mouth and large intestine?

CLINICAL CASE A Birthday Surprise

Nadia Abramovic is worried about her 5-year-old daughter, Anna. The week started out like any other; as a matter of fact, Anna was still talking about her birthday party the weekend before. But for the past 2 days, Anna has been pale and listless and complaining that her stomach hurts. When she sees that Anna has slimy, bloody diarrhea, Mrs. Abramovic immediately calls the pediatrician's office to make an appointment. Anna's pediatrician sends a stool sample to the local laboratory for a bacterial culture.

How will the laboratory test for the etiology of Anna's illness? Read on to find out.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5

Bacterial Diseases of the Mouth

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

25-3 Describe the events that lead to dental caries and periodontal disease.

The mouth, which is the entrance to the digestive system, provides an environment that supports a large and varied microbial population.

Dental Caries (Tooth Decay)

The teeth, unlike any other exterior surface of the body, are hard and do not shed surface cells (Figure 25.2). This allows masses of microorganisms and their products to accumulate. These accumulations, called **dental plaque**, are a type of biofilm (see Chapter 6) and are intimately involved in the formation of **dental caries**, or tooth decay.

Oral bacteria convert sucrose and other carbohydrates into lactic acid, which in turn attacks the tooth enamel. The microbial population on and around the teeth is very complex. Based on ribosomal identification methods (see the discussion of fluorescent in situ hybridization in Chapter 10), over 700 species of bacteria have been identified in the oral cavity. Probably the most important *cariogenic* (caries-causing) bacterium is *Streptococcus mutans*, a gram-positive coccus that has important virulence characteristics (Figure 25.3a). *S. mutans* is capable of metabolizing a wide range of carbohydrates, tolerates a high level of acidity, and synthesizes *dextran*, a gummy polysaccharide of glucose molecules that is an important factor in the formation of dental plaque (Figure 25.3b). Some other species of streptococci are also cariogenic but play a lesser role in initiating caries.

The initiation of caries depends on the attachment of *S. mutans* or other streptococci to the tooth. These bacteria don't adhere to a clean tooth, but a freshly brushed tooth will become coated with a pellicle (thin film) of proteins from saliva within minutes. Within a couple of hours, cariogenic bacteria become established on this pellicle and begin to produce dextran (see Figure 25.3b). In the production of dextran, the bacteria first hydrolyze sucrose into its component monosaccharides, fructose and glucose. The enzyme glucosyltransferase then assembles the glucose molecules into dextran. The residual fructose is the primary sugar fermented into lactic acid. Accumulations of bacteria and dextran adhering to the teeth make up dental plaque.

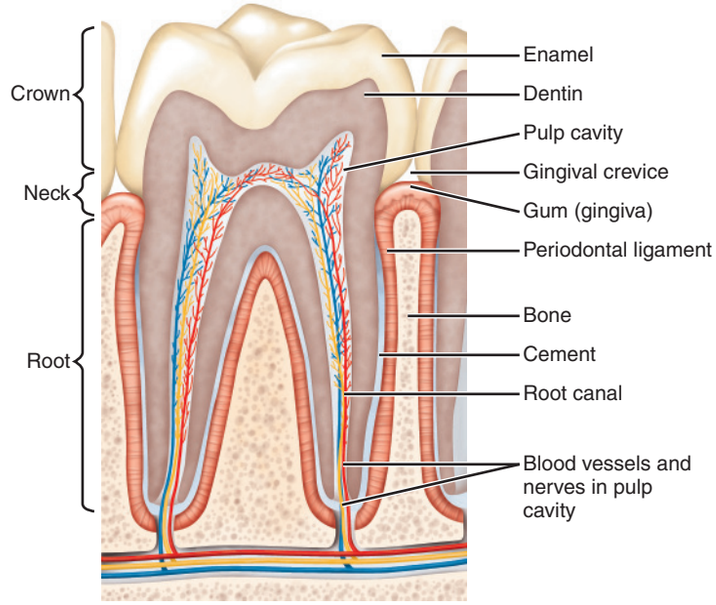
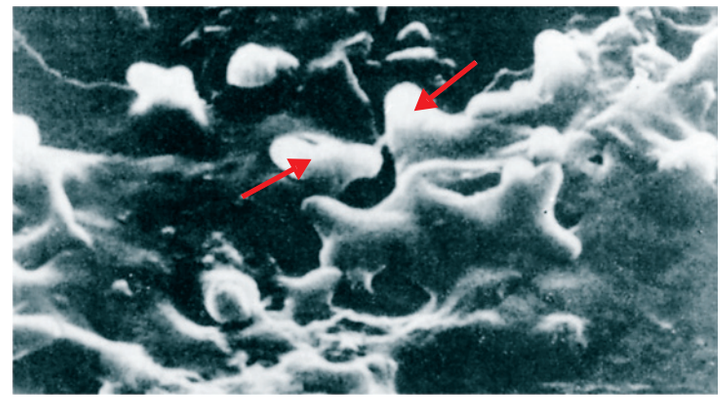


Figure 25.2 A healthy human tooth.

Q Why can a biofilm accumulate on teeth?

(a) *S. mutans* growing in glucose broth SEM 1 μm



(b) *S. mutans* growing in sucrose broth; note the accumulations of dextran. Arrows point to *S. mutans* cells. SEM 1 μm

Figure 25.3 *Streptococcus mutans*. The dextran allows *S. mutans* to adhere to teeth.

Q What makes dental plaque a type of biofilm?

The bacterial population of plaque may harbor over 400 bacterial species but is predominantly streptococci and filamentous members of the genus *Actinomyces*. (Older, calcified deposits of plaque are called *dental calculus*, or *tartar*.) *S. mutans* especially favors crevices or other sites on the teeth protected from the shearing action of chewing or the flushing action of the liter or so of saliva produced in the mouth each day. On protected areas of the teeth, plaque accumulations can be several hundred cells thick. Because plaque is not very permeable to saliva, the lactic acid produced by bacteria isn't diluted or neutralized, and it breaks down the enamel of the teeth to which the plaque adheres.

Although saliva contains nutrients that encourage the growth of bacteria, it also contains antimicrobial substances, such as *lysozyme*, that help protect exposed tooth surfaces. Some protection is also provided by *crevicular fluid*, a tissue exudate that flows into the gingival crevice (see Figure 25.2) and is closer in composition to serum than saliva. It protects teeth by virtue of its flushing action, its phagocytic cells, and immunoglobulin content.

Localized acid production within deposits of dental plaque results in a gradual softening of the external *enamel*. Enamel low in fluoride is more susceptible to the effects of the acid. This is the reason for fluoridation of water and toothpastes, a significant factor in the decline in tooth decay in the United States.

The stages of tooth decay are shown in **Figure 25.4**. If the initial penetration of the enamel by caries remains untreated, bacteria can penetrate into the interior of the tooth. The composition of the bacterial population involved in spreading the decayed area from the enamel into the *dentin* is entirely different from that of the population initiating the decay. The dominant microorganisms are gram-positive rods and filamentous bacteria; *S. mutans* is present in small numbers. Although once considered the cause of dental caries, *Lactobacillus* spp. actually play no role in initiating the process. However, these prolific lactic acid producers are important in advancing the front of the decay once it has become established.

The decayed area eventually advances to the *pulp* (see Figure 25.4), which connects with the tissues of the jaw and contains the blood supply and the nerve cells. Almost any member of the normal microbiota of the mouth can be isolated from the infected pulp and roots. Once this stage is reached, root canal therapy is required to remove the infected and dead tissue and to provide access for antimicrobial drugs that suppress renewed infection. If untreated, the infection may advance from the tooth to the soft tissues, producing dental abscesses caused by mixed bacterial populations that contain many anaerobes.

Although dental caries is probably one of the more common infectious diseases in humans today, it was scarce in the Western world until about the seventeenth century. In human remains from older times, only about 10% of the teeth contain caries. The introduction of table sugar, or sucrose, into the diet is highly correlated with our present level of caries in the Western world. Studies have shown that sucrose, a disaccharide composed of glucose and fructose, is much more cariogenic than either glucose or fructose individually (see Figure 25.3). People living on high-starch diets (starch is a polysaccharide of glucose) have a low incidence of tooth decay unless sucrose is also a significant part of their diet. The contribution of bacteria to tooth decay has been shown by experiments with germ-free animals. Such animals don't develop caries even when fed a sucrose-rich diet designed to encourage their formation.

Sucrose is pervasive in the modern Western diet. However, if sucrose is ingested only at regular mealtimes, the protective and repair mechanisms of the body are usually not

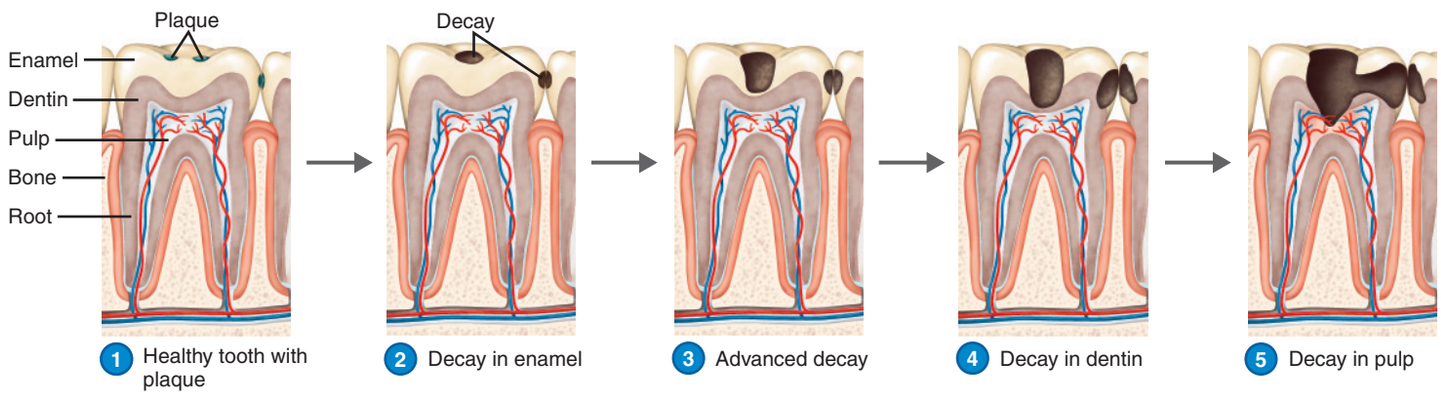


Figure 25.4 The stages of tooth decay. 1 A tooth with plaque accumulation in difficult-to-clean areas. 2 Decay begins as enamel is attacked by acids formed by bacteria. 3 Decay advances through the enamel. 4 Decay advances into the dentin. 5 Decay enters the pulp and may form abscesses in the tissues surrounding the root.

Q How does the formation of plaque contribute to tooth decay?

overwhelmed. It is the sucrose that is ingested between meals that is most damaging to teeth. Sugar alcohols, such as mannitol, sorbitol, and xylitol, are not cariogenic; xylitol even appears to inhibit carbohydrate metabolism in *S. mutans*. This is why these sugar alcohols are used to sweeten "sugarless" candies and chewing gum.

The best strategies for preventing dental caries are minimal ingestion of sucrose; brushing, flossing, and professional cleaning to remove plaque; and the use of fluoride. Professional removal of plaque and tartar at regular intervals lessens the progression to periodontal disease.

Periodontal Disease

Even people who avoid tooth decay might, in later years, lose their teeth to **periodontal disease**, a term for a number of conditions characterized by inflammation and degeneration of structures that support the teeth (Figure 25.5). The roots of the tooth are protected by a covering of specialized connective tissue called *cement*. As the gums recede with age or with overly aggressive brushing, the formation of caries on the cement becomes more common.

Gingivitis

In many cases of periodontal disease, the infection is restricted to the gums, or *gingivae*. This resulting inflammation, called **gingivitis**, is characterized by bleeding of the gums while the teeth are being brushed (see Figure 25.5). This is a condition experienced by at least half of the adult population. It has been shown experimentally that gingivitis will appear in a few weeks if brushing is discontinued and plaque is allowed to accumulate. An assortment of streptococci, actinomycetes, and anaerobic gram-negative bacteria predominate in these infections.

Periodontitis

Gingivitis can progress to a chronic condition called **periodontitis**, an insidious condition that generally causes little discomfort. About 35% of adults develop periodontitis, which is increasing in incidence as more people retain their teeth into old age. The gums are inflamed and bleed easily. Sometimes pus forms in *periodontal pockets* surrounding the teeth (see Figure 25.5). As the infection continues, it progresses toward the root tips. The bone and tissue that support the teeth are destroyed, eventually leading to loosening and loss of the teeth. Numerous bacteria of many different types, primarily *Porphyromonas* (POR-fi-rō-mō-nas) species, are found in these infections; the damage to tissue is done by an inflammatory response to the presence of these gram-negative, obligately anaerobic bacteria. Periodontitis can be treated surgically by eliminating the periodontal pockets.

Acute necrotizing ulcerative gingivitis, also termed **Vincent's disease** or **trench mouth**, is one of the more common serious mouth infections. The disease causes enough pain to make normal chewing difficult. Foul breath (halitosis) also accompanies the infection. Among the bacteria usually associated with this condition is gram-negative obligately anaerobic *Prevotella intermedia* (prev-ō-TEL-lah in-ter-MĒ-dē-ah), which on average accounts for up to 24% of the isolates. Because these pathogens are usually anaerobic, treatment includes hydrogen peroxide after debridement. Antibiotics may be effective. Bacterial diseases of the mouth are summarized in Diseases in Focus 25.1.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

25-3 Why are "sugarless" candies and gum, which actually contain sugar alcohols, not considered cariogenic?

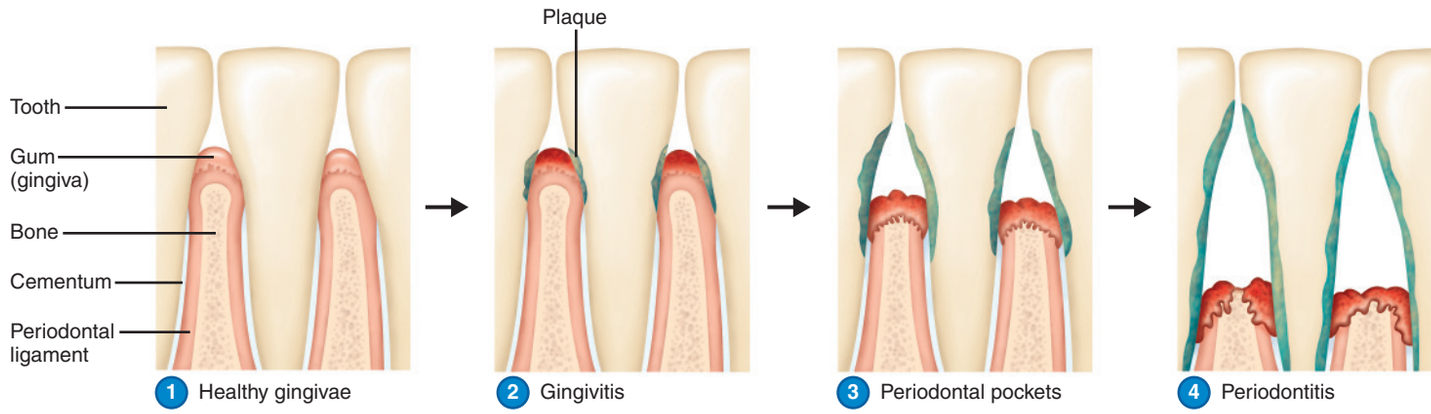
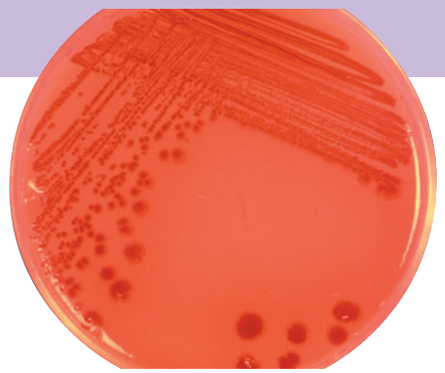


Figure 25.5 The stages of periodontal disease. 1 Teeth firmly anchored by healthy bone and gum tissue (gingiva). 2 Toxins in plaque irritate gums, causing gingivitis. 3 Periodontal pockets form as the tooth separates from the gingiva. 4 Gingivitis progresses to periodontitis. Toxins destroy the gingiva and bone that support the tooth and the cement that protects the root.

Q What is the cause of "pink tooth brush"?

DISEASES IN FOCUS 25.1 Bacterial Diseases of the Mouth

Most adults show signs of gum disease, and about 14% of U.S. adults ages 45 to 54 have a severe case. Use the following table to identify infections that could cause persistent sore, swollen, red, or bleeding gums, as well as tooth pain or sensitivity and bad breath.



This gram-negative rod grown on blood agar accounts for nearly one-quarter of cases.

Disease	Pathogen	Signs and Symptoms	Treatment	Prevention
Dental Caries	Primarily *S. mutans*	Discoloration or hole in tooth enamel	Removal of decayed area	Brushing, flossing, reducing dietary sucrose
Periodontal Disease	Various, primarily *Porphyromonas* spp.	Bleeding gums, pus pockets	Removal of damaged area; antibiotics	Plaque removal
Acute Necrotizing Ulcerative Gingivitis	*Prevotella intermedia*	Pain with chewing, halitosis	Removal of damaged area; antibiotics	Brushing, flossing

Bacterial Diseases of the Lower Digestive System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

25-4 List the causative agents, suspect foods, signs and symptoms, and treatments for staphylococcal food poisoning, shigellosis, salmonellosis, typhoid fever, paratyphoid fever, cholera, gastroenteritis, and peptic ulcer disease.

Diseases of the digestive system are essentially of two types: infections and intoxications.

An **infection** occurs when a pathogen enters the digestive canal and multiplies. Microorganisms can penetrate into the intestinal mucosa and grow there, or they can pass through to other systemic organs. **M (microfold) cells** translocate antigens and microorganisms to the other side of the epithelium, where they can contact lymphoid tissues (aggregated lymphoid follicles) to initiate an immune response (see Figure 17.9, and Figure 25.7). Typically, gastrointestinal disturbance is delayed while the pathogen increases in numbers or affects invaded tissue; however, there is usually a fever, one of the body's general responses to an infective organism.

Some pathogens cause disease by forming toxins that affect the digestive canal. An **intoxication** is caused by the ingestion of such a preformed toxin. Most intoxications, such as that caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*, are characterized by a very sudden appearance (usually in only a few hours) of symptoms of a GI disturbance. Fever is less often one of the symptoms.

Both infections and intoxications often cause *diarrhea*, which most of us have experienced. Severe diarrhea accompanied by blood or mucus is called **dysentery**. Both types of digestive system diseases are also frequently accompanied by *abdominal cramps*, *nausea*, and *vomiting*. Diarrhea and vomiting are both defensive mechanisms that help rid the body of harmful material.

The general term **gastroenteritis** is applied to diseases causing inflammation of the stomach and intestinal mucosa. Botulism is a special case of intoxication because the ingestion of the preformed toxin affects the nervous system rather than the digestive canal (see Chapter 22).

In developing countries, such as India, Nigeria, and Pakistan, in areas where clean water is inaccessible, diarrhea is a major factor in infant mortality. Approximately one child in every nine dies of it before the age of 5. It is estimated that mortality from childhood diarrhea could be halved by *oral rehydration therapy* (replacement of lost fluids and electrolytes). This is usually a solution of sodium chloride, potassium chloride, glucose, and sodium bicarbonate to replace lost fluids and electrolytes. The solutions are sold in stores, allowing public health departments to determine the incidence of diarrhea in the population by analyzing weekly reports on the sales of oral rehydration preparations. The World Health Organization (WHO) began recommending the use of oral rehydration therapy for diarrheal illnesses more than 25 years ago. This recommendation is estimated to have reduced the duration and severity of diarrheal episodes and reduced the number of deaths by one million annually.

Diseases of the digestive system are often related to food ingestion.

Staphylococcal Food Poisoning (Staphylococcal Enterotoxicosis)

A leading cause of gastroenteritis is **staphylococcal food poisoning**, an intoxication caused by ingesting an enterotoxin produced by *Staphylococcus aureus*. Staphylococci are comparatively resistant to environmental stresses, as discussed in Chapter 11. They also have a fairly high resistance to heat; vegetative cells can tolerate 60°C for half an hour. Their resistance to drying and radiation helps them survive on skin surfaces. Resistance to high osmotic pressures helps them grow in foods, such as cured ham, in which the high osmotic pressure of salts inhibits the growth of competitors.

S. aureus is often an inhabitant of the nasal passages, from which it contaminates the hands. It's also a frequent cause of skin lesions on the hands. From these sources, it can readily enter food. If the microbes are allowed to incubate in the food, a situation called **temperature abuse**, they reproduce and release enterotoxin into the food. These events, which lead to outbreaks of staphylococcal intoxication, are illustrated in Figure 25.6.

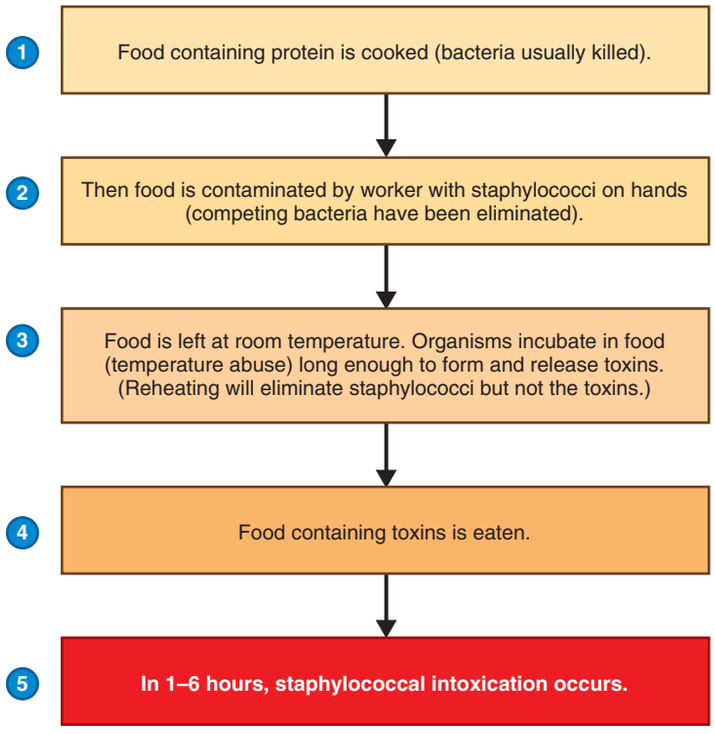


Figure 25.6 The sequence of events in a typical outbreak of staphylococcal food poisoning.

Q How does this differ from foodborne illness caused by a virus?

S. aureus produces several toxins that damage tissues or increase the microorganism's virulence. The production of the toxin of serological type A (which is responsible for most cases) is often correlated with the production of an enzyme that coagulates blood plasma. Such bacteria are described as *coagulase-positive*. No direct pathogenic effect can be attributed to the enzyme, but it is useful in the tentative identification of types that are likely to be virulent.

Generally, a population of about 1 million bacteria per gram of food will produce enough enterotoxin to cause illness. The growth of the microbe is facilitated if the competing microorganisms in the food have been eliminated—by cooking, for example. It is also more likely to grow if competing bacteria are inhibited by a higher-than-normal osmotic pressure or by a relatively low moisture level. *S. aureus* tends to outgrow most competing bacteria under these conditions.

Custards, cream pies, and ham are examples of high-risk foods. Competing microbes are minimized in custards by the high osmotic pressure of sugar and by cooking. In ham they are inhibited by curing agents, such as salts and preservatives. Because food contamination by human handlers can't be avoided completely, the most reliable method of preventing staphylococcal food poisoning is adequate refrigeration during storage to prevent toxin formation. The toxin itself is heat stable and can survive up to 30 minutes of boiling. Therefore, once the toxin is formed, it is not destroyed when the food is reheated, although the bacteria will be killed.

Signs and symptoms include nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. The mortality rate of staphylococcal food poisoning is almost zero among otherwise healthy people, but it can be significant in weakened individuals, such as residents of nursing homes.

The diagnosis of staphylococcal food poisoning is usually based on the symptoms, particularly the short incubation time characteristic of intoxication. If the food hasn't been reheated so the bacteria are still alive, the pathogen can be recovered and grown. *S. aureus* isolates can be tested by *phage typing*, a method used in tracing the source of the contamination (see Figure 10.14). These bacteria grow well in 7.5% sodium chloride, so this concentration is often used in media for their selective isolation. Pathogenic staphylococci usually ferment mannitol, produce hemolysins and coagulase, and form golden-yellow colonies (Figure 6.11). They cause no obvious spoilage when growing in foods. Detecting the toxin in food samples has always been a problem; there may be only 1 to 2 nanograms in 100 g of food. Serological tests can be used to detect toxin in foods after an outbreak.

Shigellosis (Bacillary Dysentery)

Bacterial infections, such as salmonellosis and shigellosis, usually have longer incubation periods (12 hours to 2 weeks) than bacterial intoxications, reflecting the time needed for

the microorganism to grow in the host. Bacterial infections are often characterized by some fever, indicating the host's response to the infection.

Shigellosis, also known as **bacillary dysentery** to differentiate it from amebic dysentery (discussed later in this chapter), is a severe form of diarrhea caused by a group of facultatively anaerobic gram-negative rods of the genus *Shigella*. The genus was named for the Japanese microbiologist Kiyoshi Shiga. The bacteria don't have any natural reservoir in animals and spread only from person to person. Outbreaks are most often seen in families, day-care facilities, and similar settings.

There are four species of pathogenic *Shigella: S. sonnei* (SŌN-nē-ē), *S. dysenteriae* (dis-en-TE-rē-ī), *S. flexneri* (FLEKS-ner-ē), and *S. boydii* (BOY-dē-ē). These bacteria are residents only of the intestinal tract of humans, apes, and monkeys. They are closely related to the pathogenic *E. coli*.

The most common species in the United States is *S. sonnei*; it causes a relatively mild dysentery. Many cases of so-called traveler's diarrhea might be mild forms of shigellosis. At the other extreme, infection with *S. dysenteriae* often results in a severe dysentery and prostration. The toxin responsible is unusually virulent and is known as the **Shiga toxin** (see enterohemorrhagic *E. coli*, later in this chapter). *S. dysenteriae*, fortunately, is the least common species of pathogenic *Shigella* in the United States.

The infectious dose required to cause disease is small; moreover, the bacteria are not much affected by stomach acidity. They proliferate to immense numbers in the small intestine, but the primary site of disease is the large intestine. There, the bacteria attach to epithelial M cells (Figure 17.9). Membranous cellular ruffles surrounding the cell take the bacterium into the cell in a process similar to invasion by *Salmonella* (shown in Figure 15.2). The bacteria multiply in the cell and soon spread to neighboring cells, producing Shiga toxin that destroys tissue (Figure 25.7). Dysentery is the result of damage to the intestinal wall. *Shigella* bacteria rarely invade the bloodstream. Macrophages not only fail to kill *Shigella* bacteria that they phagocytize, but also are killed by them.

Shigellosis can cause as many as 20 bowel movements in one day. Additional symptoms of infection are abdominal cramps and fever. The CDC estimates that *S. sonnei* causes the majority of the approximately 450,000 cases of shigellosis that occur annually. These typically affect children under the age of 5 and resolve without treatment within about 7 days. *S. dysenteriae* has a significant mortality rate, however, and the death rate in countries where it is prevalent can be as high as 20%.

Diagnosis is usually based on recovery of the microbes from rectal swabs. In severe cases of shigellosis, antibiotic-sensitivity testing is necessary to determine appropriate antibiotic treatment. Some immunity seems to result from recovery, but a satisfactory vaccine has not yet been developed.

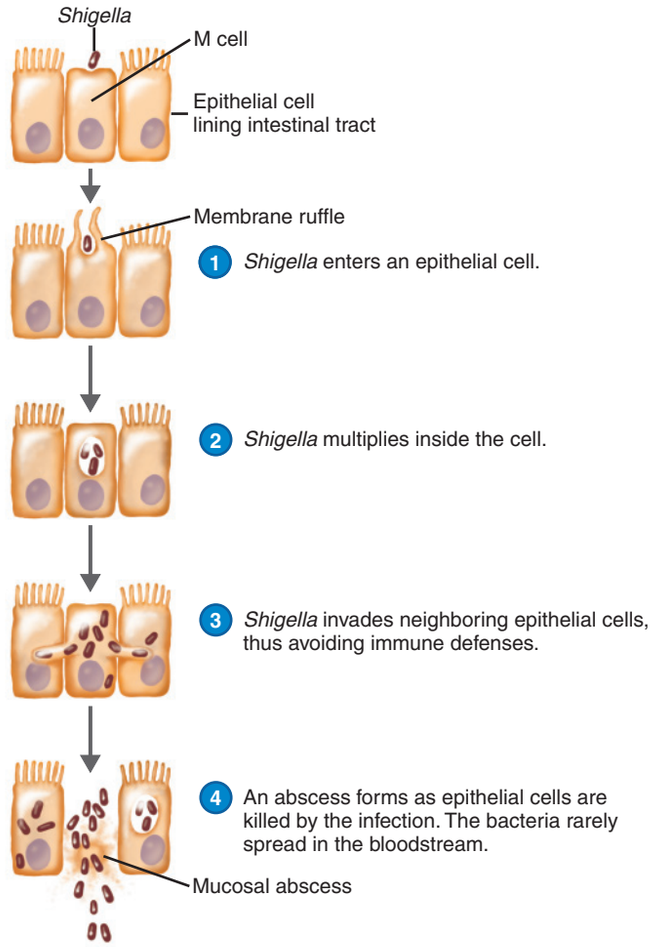


Figure 25.7 Shigellosis. This shows the sequence of infection of the intestinal wall.

Q Why do *Shigella* rarely spread to the bloodstream?

Salmonellosis (*Salmonella* Gastroenteritis)

The *Salmonella* bacteria (named for their discoverer, Daniel Salmon) are gram-negative, facultatively anaerobic rods. Their normal habitat is the intestinal tracts of humans and many animals. All salmonellae are considered pathogenic to some degree, causing **salmonellosis**, or ***Salmonella* gastroenteritis**. Pathogenically, salmonellae are separated into *typhoidal salmonellae* (see typhoid and paratyphoid fever, in this chapter) and the *nontyphoidal salmonellae*, which cause the milder disease of salmonellosis.

The nomenclature of the *Salmonella* microbes differs from the norm. There are only two species: *S. enterica* and *S. bongori*. Infections are most often caused by *S. enterica*. There are more than 2000 serotypes (or serovars), of *S. enterica*, only about 50 of which are isolated with any frequency in the United States. (For a discussion of the nomenclature of the salmonellae, see Chapter 11.) Strains are referred to as, for example, *S. enterica* serotype Typhimurium or *Salmonella* Typhimurium.

The salmonellae first invade the intestinal mucosa and multiply there (see Figure 15.2). Occasionally they manage to pass through the intestinal mucosa at M cells to enter the lymphoid and cardiovascular systems, and from there they may spread and eventually affect many organs (**Figure 25.8**). They replicate readily within macrophages. Salmonellosis has an incubation time of about 12 to 36 hours. There is usually a moderate fever accompanied by nausea, abdominal pain and cramps, and diarrhea. As many as 1 billion salmonellae per gram can be found in an infected person's feces during the acute phase of the illness.

The mortality rate is overall very low, probably less than 1%. However, the death rate is higher in infants and among the very old; death is usually from septic shock. The infectious dose is large, 1000 cells or more. However, the severity and incubation time can depend on the number of *Salmonella* ingested. Normally, recovery will be complete in a few days, but many patients will continue to shed the organisms in their feces for up to 6 months. Antibiotic therapy isn't useful in treating salmonellosis or, indeed, many diarrheal diseases; treatment consists of oral rehydration therapy.

Salmonellosis is probably greatly underreported. It is estimated that 1.35 million cases and 420 deaths occur annually (**Figure 25.9**). Meat products are particularly susceptible to contamination by *Salmonella*. The sources of the bacteria are the intestinal tract of many animals. Pet reptiles, such as turtles and iguanas, are also a source; their carriage rate is as high as 90%. In fact, the sale of small turtles (<10 cm) as pets is now prohibited by the FDA because of the risk that children may put them in the mouth. *Salmonella* Enteritidis and *Salmonella* Typhimurium are especially well adapted to chickens and turkeys. Hens are highly susceptible to infection, and the bacteria contaminate the eggs. The bacteria have developed the ability to survive in the albumin, which contains natural preservatives such as *lysozyme* (see Chapter 4) and *lactoferrin* (which binds iron the bacteria require). Estimates are that 1 in 20,000 eggs in this country is contaminated by *Salmonella*. Health authorities caution the public to eat only well-cooked eggs. An often unsuspected factor is the presence of inadequately cooked or raw eggs in foods such as hollandaise sauce, cookie batter, and Caesar salad. Fruits have been frequent sources of foodborne illness from ingestion of *Salmonella* (see the **Clinical Focus** box).

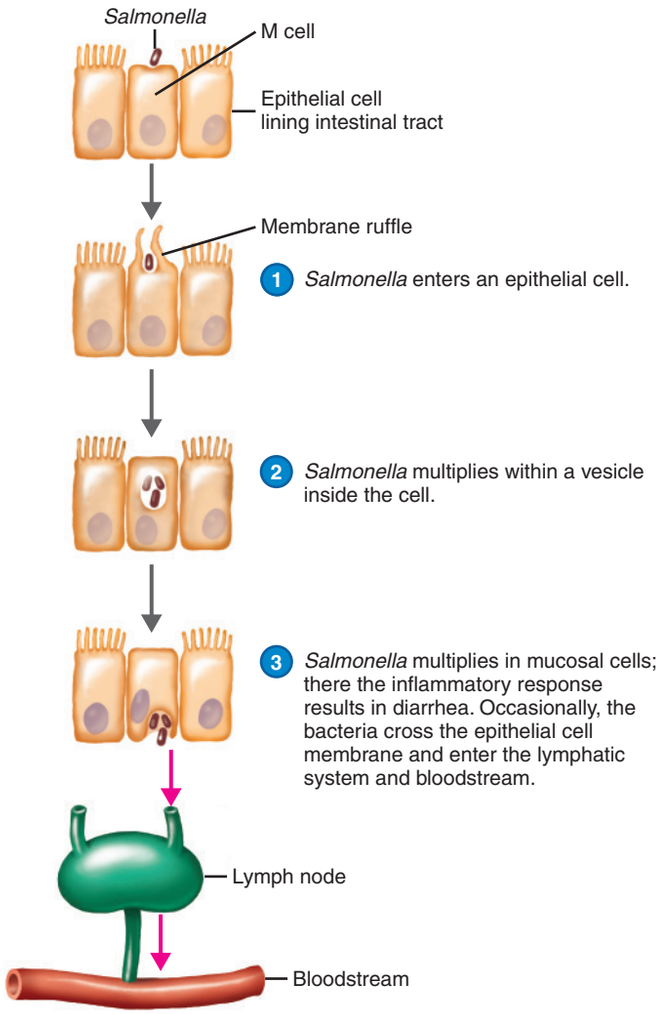


Figure 25.8 Salmonellosis. This shows the sequence of infection of the intestinal wall. Compare with Figure 25.7 showing infection with *Shigella*. Note that invasion of the bloodstream, which happens infrequently, can result in septic shock.

Q Why does salmonellosis have a longer incubation period than a bacterial intoxication?

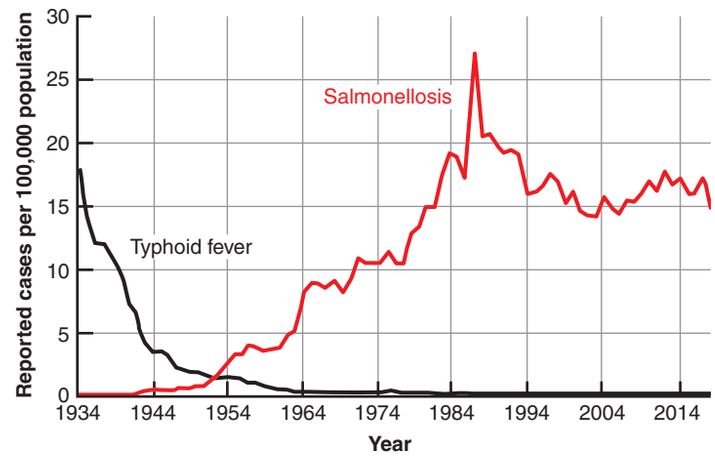


Figure 25.9 The incidence of salmonellosis and typhoid fever, 1934–2021. An important factor in comparing the two diseases is that typhoid transmission is almost entirely human-to-human, and salmonellosis is transmitted primarily between animal products and humans. Cases of *Salmonella* Typhi and *Salmonella* Paratyphi were reported as typhoid fever until 2019. Beginning in 2019, typhoid fever includes only *Salmonella* Typhi.

Source: CDC, 2022.

Q Can you suggest reasons for the change in prevalence of those two diseases?

CLINICAL FOCUS A Foodborne Infection

As you read through this problem, you'll see questions that epidemiologists ask themselves as they solve a clinical problem. Try to answer each question as an epidemiologist.

1. On August 29, Joanie, a 36-year-old woman in Ohio, is hospitalized with a 3-day history of nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. She has a temperature of 39.5°C, and she is dehydrated.
   What sample is needed from Joanie to determine the cause of her signs and symptoms?
2. A stool culture grows gram-negative, non–lactose-fermenting bacteria.
   Can you identify the bacteria? (See the photograph.)
3. Joanie is one of 356 culture-confirmed cases in a 42-state outbreak of salmonellosis.
   What information would you try to obtain from these patients?
4. No single restaurant or restaurant chain is associated with the outbreak.
   How will you determine the source of the infection?
5. Epidemiologists conduct a case-control study to compare 53 case-patients with 53 healthy controls from the same geographic locations. All 106 people are asked to complete a questionnaire about foods eaten. (See the following table.)

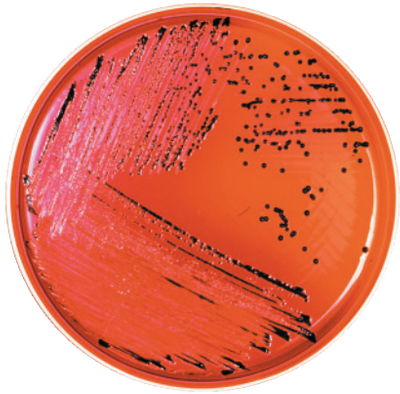
   Odds ratio (OR) is a measure of the probability (risk) that an event will result in disease. The OR must be calculated for each source of exposure.
   Using the 2 × 2 table as a guide, complete the remaining calculations to determine the probable source of the infection.
6. There is a strong association between illness and consumption of turkey products. The implicated turkey had not been prepared or stored in accordance with government food safety guidelines.
   What would you do now?
7. *Salmonella* Reading was isolated from surfaces in the packing shed and from cardboard boxes.
   What factors might contribute to turkey as a vehicle of transmission?

The outbreak serotype was isolated from raw turkey products, raw turkey pet food, and live turkeys. A total of 123 patients reported preparing or eating turkey products that were purchased raw (including whole turkey, turkey pieces, and ground turkey); four became sick after pets in their home ate raw ground turkey; and five worked in a facility that raises or processes turkeys or lived with someone who worked in such a facility. No common type, brand, or source of turkey was identified.

Cases continue to be identified. Evidence suggests that this outbreak strain has become widespread within the turkey production industry. Eliminating *Salmonella* from poultry is challenging. Consumers can protect themselves and still enjoy turkey by taking the following steps:

- Thaw turkeys safely (in the refrigerator in a container, in a leak-proof plastic bag in a sink of cold water, or in a microwave oven following the manufacturer's instructions).
- Avoid the spread of bacteria from raw turkey by keeping it separate from other foods and keeping food surfaces clean.
- Cook turkey to 165°F (74°C), measured on a food thermometer inserted into the thickest portions of the meat.

Source: Adapted from *MMWR* 68(46): 1045–1049, November 22, 2019.



Some *Salmonella* serotypes form colonies with black centers, which allow them to be differentiated from colorless colonies of *Shigella* and red colonies of lactose-fermenters.

Exposure	Exposed		Not Exposed		Odds Ratio
	(a) Ill	*(b)* Not Ill	*(c)* Ill	*(d)* Not Ill	
Eggs	47	40	6	13	2.55
Cucumbers	32	20	21	33	
Lettuce	34	30	19	23	
Milk	42	39	11	14	
Turkey	47	24	6	29	

Calculation using a statistical 2 × 2 contingency table

	Ill	Not Ill
Ate _____	*(a)*	*(b)*
Did not eat _____	*(c)*	*(d)*

Odds ratio = $\frac{a \times d}{b \times c}$ = _____ = Times more likely to become ill by eating that item

Prevention also depends on good sanitation practices to deter contamination and on proper refrigeration to prevent increases in bacterial numbers. The microbes are generally destroyed by normal cooking. Chicken, for example, should be cooked to an internal temperature of 74°C and ground beef to 71°C. However, contaminated food can contaminate a surface, such as a cutting board. Then another food subsequently prepared on the board might not be cooked.

Diagnosis usually depends on isolating the pathogen from the patient's stool or from leftover food. Serotyping is used in outbreaks to identify strains. State public health labs get a DNA fingerprint (see Chapter 9) of isolates. These fingerprints can be used to track an outbreak to its source.

Typhoid Fever and Paratyphoid Fever

The most virulent serotypes of *Salmonella* are *Salmonella* Typhi, which causes **typhoid fever**, and *Salmonella* Paratyphi, the cause of **paratyphoid fever.** There are three paratyphoid serotypes, designated A, B, and C. Infections caused by any *Salmonella* Typhi and *Salmonella* Paratyphi serotypes are commonly referred to as *enteric fever* or typhoid fever. Unlike the salmonellae that cause salmonellosis, these serotypes are not found in animals; they are spread only in the feces of other humans. Before the days of proper sewage disposal, water treatment, and food sanitation, typhoid fever was an extremely common disease. Its incidence has been declining in the United States, whereas that of salmonellosis has been increasing (see Figure 25.9).

Typhoid fever is a life-threatening illness and is still a frequent cause of death in parts of the world with poor sanitation. Globally, an estimated 11 to 21 million cases occur annually, causing tens of thousands of deaths.

The severity of typhoid fever is linked to its pathophysiology. Instead of being destroyed by phagocytic cells, *Salmonella* multiply within them and are disseminated into multiple organs, especially the spleen and liver. Eventually, the phagocytic cells lyse and release *Salmonella* Typhi or Paratyphi into the bloodstream. The time required for this explains why the incubation period of typhoid fever (2 or 3 weeks) is much longer than for salmonellosis (12 to 36 hours). The patient with typhoid fever experiences a high fever of about 40°C and continual headache. Diarrhea appears only during the second or third week, and the fever then tends to decline. In severe cases, which can be fatal, ulceration and perforation of the intestinal wall can occur. Before antibiotic therapy was available, a mortality rate of 20% was common; with the treatments available today, it is less than 1%.

Substantial numbers of recovered patients, about 1–3%, become *chronic carriers*. They harbor the pathogen in the gallbladder and continue to shed bacteria for several months. A number of such carriers continue to shed the organism indefinitely. The classic example of a typhoid carrier was Mary Mallon, also known as Typhoid Mary. She worked as a cook in New York state in the early part of the twentieth century and was responsible for several outbreaks of typhoid infecting 50 to 100 people, and three deaths. She became well known through the attempts of the state to restrain her from working at her chosen trade.

In recent years there have been about 350 cases of typhoid fever and 90 cases of paratyphoid fever each year in the United States, of which 70% were acquired during international travel. Normally, there are fewer than three deaths each year.

When the antibiotic chloramphenicol was introduced in 1948, typhoid fever became a treatable disease. However, chloramphenicol-resistant *Salmonella* emerged in the 1970s, and ceftriaxone or azithromycin is now largely used instead. Treatment of the chronic carrier might require weeks of antibiotic therapy.

Recovery from typhoid confers lifelong immunity. Vaccines are seldom used in developed countries except for high-risk laboratory or military personnel. Vaccination is recommended before travel to endemic countries. The vaccine that has long been in use is a killed-organism type, which must be injected. A live attenuated vaccine that can be taken orally in three or four doses protects well for as long as 7 years.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

25-4 Why was typhoid fever almost entirely eliminated in developed countries by modern sewage treatment, whereas salmonellosis has not been?

Cholera

The causative agent of **cholera**, one of the most serious gastrointestinal diseases, is *Vibrio cholerae*, a slightly curved, gram-negative rod with a single polar flagellum (**Figure 25.10**).

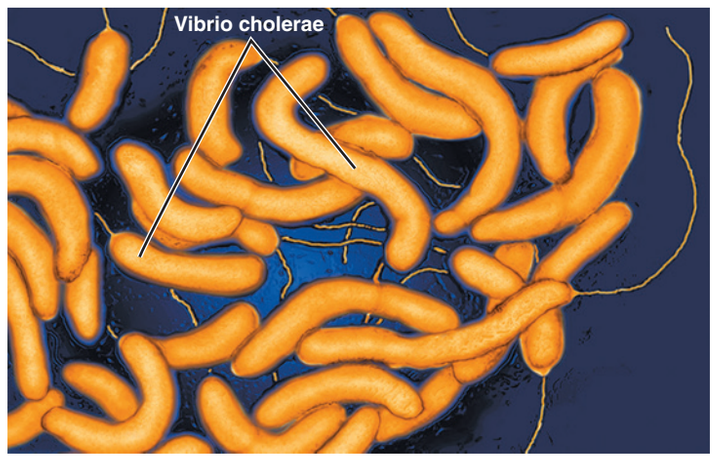


Figure 25.10 ***Vibrio cholerae*, the cause of cholera.** Notice the slightly curved morphology.

Q What are the effects of the sudden loss of fluid and electrolytes during infection with *V. cholerae*?

Cholera bacilli grow in the small intestine and produce an exotoxin, *cholera toxin* (see Chapter 15), that activates adenylate cyclase in host cells, causing the cells to secrete water and electrolytes, especially potassium. The result is watery stools containing masses of intestinal mucus and epithelial cells—called "rice water stools" from their appearance. (Interestingly, adenylate cyclase is overly stimulated in people with type O blood, who then have more severe diarrhea.) As much as 12 to 20 liters (3 to 5 gallons) of fluids can be lost in a day, and the sudden loss of these fluids and electrolytes causes shock, collapse, and often death. The blood, lacking fluids, may become so viscous that vital organs are unable to function properly. Violent vomiting generally also occurs. The microbes are not invasive, and a fever is usually not present. The severity of cholera varies greatly, and the number of subclinical cases might be several times the number reported. Untreated cases of cholera may have a mortality rate of 50%, although with proper supportive care it is usually less than 1%. The diagnosis is based upon symptoms and culturing of *V. cholerae* from feces.

Cholera bacteria, and other members of the genus *Vibrio* in general, are strongly associated with brackish (salty) waters characteristic of estuaries, although they are also readily spread in contaminated freshwater. They form biofilms and colonize copepods (tiny crustaceans), algae, and other aquatic plants and plankton, which aids their survival. It has even been reported that because of this growth habit, straining contaminated water through folded layers of finely woven cloth (such as saris worn by Indian women) often removes these attached bacteria and makes the water safe to drink. Under unfavorable conditions, *V. cholerae* may become dormant; the cell shrinks into a nonculturable, spherical state. A favorable change in the environment causes them to revert rapidly to the culturable form. Both forms are infectious.

Although they survive well in their aquatic environment, cholera bacteria are exceptionally sensitive to stomach acids. Persons with impaired stomach acid secretion or who are taking antacids are at higher risk of infection. Normal individuals may require infectious doses on the order of 100 million bacteria to cause severe cholera. Recovery from cholera results in an effective immunity, but only to bacterial strains of the same antigenic characteristics. The serogroup O:1 (see the footnote in Chapter 11), which caused a pandemic in the 1880s, is known as the *classical* strain. A later pandemic was caused by a biotype of O:1 named *El Tor* (for the El Tor medical station for pilgrims from Mecca, where it was first isolated). Until the 1990s it was thought that only *V. cholerae* O:1 caused epidemic cholera, but a widespread epidemic in India and Bangladesh by a new serogroup, O:139, changed this view. There are also nonepidemic strains of *V. cholerae*, non-O:1/O:139, that are only infrequently associated with large-scale outbreaks of cholera. They occasionally cause wound infections or sepsis, especially in people with liver disease or who are immunosuppressed.

In the United States there have been occasional cases of cholera caused by the O:1 serogroup. These have all occurred in the Gulf Coast area, and the pathogen may be endemic in these coastal waters. Outbreaks of cholera in this country are limited by high standards of sanitation. This represents the primary means of control and is important because stools may contain 100 million *V. cholerae* per gram. An example of how this can change quickly was illustrated in 2010, when the Caribbean nation of Haiti experienced an earthquake that seriously damaged much of the water supply and other systems. (See the **Big Picture** on cholera after natural disasters.) The outbreak of cholera caused several hundred deaths when cholera bacteria of a strain usually found in Asia were introduced by aid workers. Available oral vaccines provide immunity of relatively short duration and only moderate effectiveness.

CLINICAL CASE

The fecal sample is cultured on sorbitol–MacConkey agar. A sorbitol-negative colony is tested for lactose fermentation. The bacteria produce acid from lactose and do not use citrate as their sole carbon source.

Identify the bacteria by using the identification key in Figure 10.8. What does Anna's pediatrician need to know about her history?

Part 1 **Part 2** Part 3 Part 4 Part 5

The most effective therapy is intravenous replacement of the lost fluids and electrolytes. Replacement of as much as 10% of the patient's body weight within a few hours may be required. Rehydration therapy is so effective that in Bangladesh, for example, where cholera is common, deaths are considered "unusual." Severe cholera may be treated with doxycycline.

Noncholera Vibrios

At least 11 species of *Vibrio*, in addition to *V. cholerae*, can cause human illness. Most are adapted to life in salty coastal waters. *Vibrio parahaemolyticus* (par'ah-hē-mō-LI-ti-kus) is found in saltwater estuaries in many parts of the world. It is morphologically similar to *V. cholerae* and the most common cause of gastroenteritis by *Vibrio* spp. in humans. The noncholera *Vibrio* bacteria cause about 80,000 illnesses and 100 deaths in the United States every year. Raw oysters and crustaceans, such as shrimp and crabs, have been associated with several outbreaks of gastroenteritis in the United States in recent years.

These infections are life threatening and require early antibiotic therapy for successful treatment.

Escherichia coli Gastroenteritis

One of the most prolific microorganisms in the human intestinal tract is *E. coli*. Because it's so common and so easily

cultivated, microbiologists often regard it as something of a laboratory pet. ***E. coli*** are normally harmless, but certain strains can be pathogenic. Mobile genetic elements can turn *E. coli* into a highly adapted pathogen causing a range of diseases. Some toxin-secreting pathogenic strains are well adapted to invasion of intestinal epithelial cells, causing *E. coli gastroenteritis*. Other locations, such as the urinary tract, bloodstream, and central nervous system, can also be affected. Five pathogenic varieties (pathotypes) of *E. coli* have been well characterized.

Enterohemorrhagic *E. coli* (EHEC) strains have caused several recent outbreaks of serious disease in the United States. As the bacteria attach to the intestinal wall, they eliminate surrounding microvilli and stimulate host-cell actin to form pedestals beneath their site of attachment (**Figure 25.11**). The primary virulence factor in these bacteria is a Shiga-like toxin. True Shiga toxin is produced only by *Shigella dysenteriae*. Shiga-like toxins are a family of toxins that are closely related. Some *E. coli* strains that produce Shiga-like toxins are termed **Shiga-toxin-producing** *E. coli* **(STEC)**. Most outbreaks are due to EHEC serotype O157:H7. Other lesser known strains include O121 and O104:H21. (Refer to Chapter 11 for an explanation of this numerical nomenclature.) Because the toxin is released upon the cell's lysis, antibiotic therapy can worsen the attack by causing the release of more toxin.

Figure 25.11 Pedestal formation by Enterohemorrhagic *E. coli* (EHEC) O157:H7. As EHEC bacteria (orange) adhere to the epithelial wall, they destroy the surface microvilli and cause the formation of a pedestal-like projection (green) on which they rest. The function of these actin-rich structures is unclear, but they may facilitate the bacteria's spread to adjacent cells. All of the diarrhea-causing strains use the host's cytoskeleton to move between host cells.

Q Is adhesion a factor in the pathogenicity of a microbe?

Cattle, which are not affected by the pathogen, are the main reservoir; infections are spread by contaminated food or water. Currently, 10–30% of domestic cattle carry STEC, which contaminate the carcass at slaughter. There are requirements for testing ground meats for the presence of this strain of *E. coli*, especially if intended for export. Leafy vegetables may also be contaminated, sometimes by runoff from feedlots. Ingested food is not the only infection source; some cases have been associated with children's visits to farms or petting zoos. The infectious dose is estimated to be very small, probably fewer than 100 bacteria.

STEC bacteria are responsible for more than 265,000 illnesses each year. About 6% of infected people develop inflammation of the colon (the main part of the large intestine, ending just above the rectum) involving profuse bleeding, called *hemorrhagic colitis*. Unlike *Shigella*, the STEC bacteria don't invade the intestinal wall (see Figure 25.7), but rather release the toxin into the intestinal lumen (space).

Another dangerous complication is *hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS)*. Characterized by blood in the urine, often leading to kidney failure, HUS occurs when the kidneys are affected by the toxin. Some 5–10% of young children who have been infected progress to this stage, which has a mortality rate of about 5%. Management of these patients primarily involves intravenous rehydration and careful monitoring of serum electrolytes. Some survivors of HUS may require kidney dialysis or even transplants.

It's recommended that public health laboratories test routinely for STEC. A standard method is to use media that differentiate *E. coli* O157 bacteria by their inability to ferment sorbitol (Figure 10.8). In 2016, an ELISA test was developed by the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) to identify Shiga toxin-producing strains.

Vaccines that greatly lower the numbers of O157: H7 bacteria in cattle are available, but it is uncertain whether they will find widespread use.

Enteropathogenic *E. coli* (EPEC) is a major cause of diarrhea in developing countries and is potentially fatal in infants. EPEC bacteria secrete a number of effector proteins that are translocated into host cells, some contributing to diarrhea.

Enteroinvasive *E. coli* (EIEC) is generally agreed to be almost synonymous with *Shigella*—it has the same pathogenic mechanisms. EIEC gain access to the submucosa of the intestinal tract through M cells (see Figure 25.7) in the same manner as *Shigella*. This invasion results in inflammation, fever, and a *Shigella*-like dysentery.

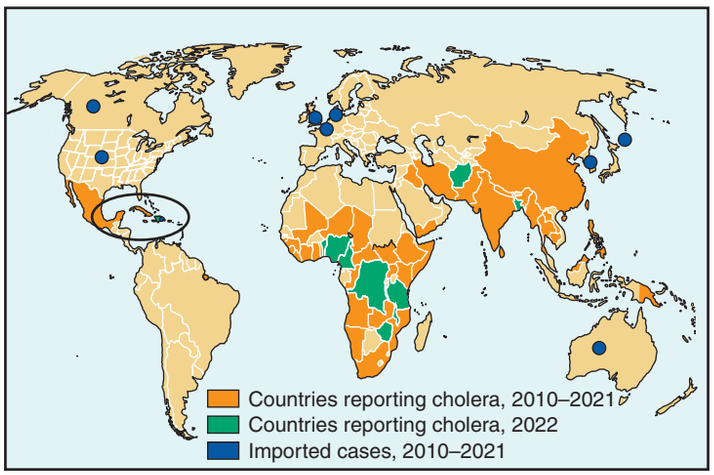
Enteroaggregative *E. coli* (EAEC) is a group of *E. coli* strains found only in humans. They are named for their growth habit, in which the bacteria cause a "stacked-brick" configuration when grown with epithelial cells. EAEC are not invasive but produce an enterotoxin causing a watery diarrhea. Some studies suggest that another pathotype, *diffusely adherent E. coli*, is also associated with diarrheal illness.

BIG PICTURE

Cholera After Natural Disasters

Cholera is one of the most feared consequences of natural disasters. Accurate tracking of the causes of cholera epidemics can lead to better treatment and prevention.

Many people assume that the greatest source of disease that breaks out after natural disasters is dead bodies. However, studies show that displacement of the survivors and disruption of access to safe water are the biggest contributors. Cholera is a diarrheal disease that can increase when sanitation and modern sewage disposal systems are compromised. According to the WHO, about 1.4–4.3 million cholera cases occur annually, with 21,000–143,000 deaths due to fluid loss.



***V. cholerae* nearly identical to a strain circulating in Nepal infected and killed thousands with cholera in the Caribbean (circled area on map) 2010–2022.**
Source: World Health Organization, 2023.

People in Haiti struggle to find clean drinking water after the 2016 hurricane.

***Vibrio cholerae* bacterium**

In 1991, an outbreak in Peru caused over 1 million cases and 10,000 deaths. An epidemic of over 16,000 cases occurred after flooding in West Bengal in 1998. In 2004, 17,000 cases of diarrheal disease, including cholera, struck Bangladesh after severe floods. In 2010, a cholera epidemic affected over 600,000 people in earthquake-ravaged Haiti, resulting in over 7000 deaths. After a hurricane in 2016, cholera cases again surged in Haiti, with an estimated 770 new cases per week. Between 2017 and 2020, Yemen experienced one of its worst cholera outbreaks on record. Following heavy rains, flooding, and mass movement of the population due to civil unrest, more than one million people were suspected of contracting cholera, and at least 2,000 died. The epidemic introduced *V. cholerae* into the water system, and new cholera cases are still being reported in Yemen.

Cholera occurs only sporadically in the United States: fewer than 25 cases are reported annually. These tend to occur in people returning from an endemic country or people who have consumed raw or undercooked seafood from contaminated water.

Predicting the Next Cholera Outbreak

In the 1990s, NASA scientist Antar Jutla began working with microbiologist Rita Colwell to understand how cholera epidemics occur. The result was NASA's Cholera Prediction Modeling System, which uses precipitation, temperature, and population data to predict cholera outbreaks. Using these data, NASA scientists predicted the epidemic in Yemen.

Immediately following a major earthquake that occurred in a rural area of eastern Afghanistan in June of 2022, Afghanistan's public health officials, the WHO, and the United Nations began predicting and preparing for a cholera outbreak. Within days, the United Nations announced that half a million cases of acute, watery diarrhea had already been reported.

Disaster and Disease—Searching for Solutions

Strategies for Disaster Preparedness

- **Oral Rehydration Solutions** Cholera's mortality rate is significantly reduced by treating victims with oral rehydration solutions made from salt, sugar, and water. Since the 1970s, this therapy is estimated to have saved over 40 million lives. Teaching global citizens how to prepare this lifesaving solution can prevent many deaths from diarrheal diseases after disasters. At health care facilities, cholera cots, specially designed beds, are also used to collect and measure feces lost during infection so the same amount of fluid can be replaced in the patient.
- **Stockpiling Vaccines** Disaster preparedness experts have learned from the Haiti earthquake and subsequent cholera outbreaks that stockpiling vaccines, when possible, can help to prevent future outbreaks. One study on oral cholera vaccine in the aftermath of the Haiti earthquake demonstrated that vaccinating even half of an area's population made outbreaks less likely by providing herd immunity to the community at large.

  Oral vaccine stockpiles, when quickly dispensed, can help curb outbreaks before they become widespread.

Haiti was declared cholera-free in 2020. Unfortunately, 20,000 new cases were reported in 2022. This outbreak was due to lack of clean water and adequate sewage treatment resulting from extreme poverty and socio-political conflict.

The Ultimate Solution

While oral rehydration therapy and vaccines can be helpful once a cholera outbreak begins, the ultimate solution to a cholera epidemic is to engineer proper sanitation, a goal that is more long-range and expensive. The WHO estimates that over 2 billion people lack access to safe water and 1.7 billion people lack proper sanitation—and that's within their daily lives, not as a result of disruptions in normal sanitation after a disaster event. Many public and private agencies are developing programs to tackle this large goal. For example, the CDC's WASH (Water, Sanitation and Hygiene) Program promotes safe household water storage techniques, handwashing interventions, and training of community health workers. Their efforts have resulted in a 25% decrease in childhood diarrheal infections within four Central American countries and 50% fewer diarrheal infections in children receiving weekly handwashing lessons.

KEY CONCEPTS

- Although natural disasters do not automatically cause disease outbreaks, damage to water and sanitation infrastructure can increase the risk of diarrheal diseases such as cholera. **(See Chapter 27, "Water Treatment" and "Sewage (Wastewater) Treatment.")**
- Vaccination of a majority of the population can lead to herd immunity that protects the unvaccinated within that community. **(See Chapter 18, "Principles and Effects of Vaccination.")**
- Tracking the genomics of pathogens has become a mainstay of monitoring, preventing, and controlling infectious disease outbreaks. **(See Chapter 9, "Forensic Microbiology.")**

A health educator demonstrating how to make an oral rehydration solution from water, salt, and sugar in Thiruvananthapuram, India. Giving this solution to people with cholera can significantly reduce mortality.

Enterotoxigenic *E. coli* (ETEC) is a pathogenic group of *E. coli* that secrete enterotoxins that cause diarrhea. The illness is frequently fatal for children under age 5. One of the enterotoxins ETEC produces resembles the cholera toxin in function. ETEC bacteria are not invasive and remain in the intestinal lumen.

Traveler's Diarrhea

Traveler's diarrhea is the most common illness in travelers. The most common bacterial cause is ETEC; the second-most-frequent isolate is EAEC. Traveler's diarrhea can also be caused by other gastrointestinal pathogens, such as *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, and *Campylobacter*—as well as by various unidentified bacterial pathogens, viruses, and protozoan parasites. In fact, in most cases the causative agent is never identified, and chemotherapy is not attempted. Once contracted, the best treatment is the oral rehydration recommended for all diarrhea. In severe cases, antimicrobial drugs may be necessary. Prescribed antibiotics may provide some protection; another option is to take an over-the-counter drug such as Lomotil® to treat the symptoms. The best advice in risky areas is to prevent infection.

Campylobacteriosis (*Campylobacter* Gastroenteritis)

Campylobacter are gram-negative, microaerophilic, spirally curved bacteria that have emerged as the leading cause of diarrhea in the United States. They adapt well to the intestinal environment of animal hosts, especially poultry. Culturing *Campylobacter* requires conditions of low oxygen and high carbon dioxide developed in special apparatus. The bacteria's optimum growth temperature of about 42°C approximates that of their animal hosts, but the bacteria do not replicate in food. Almost all retail chicken is contaminated with *Campylobacter*. Nearly 60% of cattle excrete the organism in feces and milk, but retail red meats are less likely to be contaminated.

There are more than an estimated 1.3 million cases of **campylobacteriosis** in the United States annually, usually caused by *C. jejuni*. The infectious dose is fewer than 1000 bacteria. Clinically, it is characterized by fever, cramping abdominal pain, and diarrhea or dysentery. Normally, recovery follows within a week.

An unusual complication of campylobacterial infection is that it is linked, in about 1 in 1000 cases, to the neurological disease *Guillain-Barré syndrome*, a temporary paralysis. Apparently, a surface molecule of the bacteria resembles a lipid component of nervous tissue and provokes an autoimmune attack.

Campylobacteriosis is prevented by thoroughly cooking chicken and pasteurizing milk. Infections may be treated with azithromycin.

Helicobacter Peptic Ulcer Disease

In 1982, a physician in Australia cultured a spiral-shaped, microaerophilic bacterium observed in the biopsied tissue of patients with a stomach ulcer. Now named *Helicobacter pylori*, it is accepted that this microbe is responsible for most cases of **peptic ulcer disease**. This syndrome includes gastric and duodenal ulcers. (The duodenum is the first few centimeters of the small intestine.) About 30–50% of the population in the developed world become infected; the infection rate is higher elsewhere. Only about 15% of people infected develop ulcers, so certain host factors are probably involved. For example, people with type O blood are more susceptible, which is also true of cholera. *H. pylori* is also designated as a carcinogenic bacterium. Gastric cancer develops in about 3% of people infected with these bacteria.

The stomach mucosa contains cells that secrete gastric juice containing proteolytic enzymes and hydrochloric acid that activates these enzymes. Other specialized cells produce a layer of mucus that protects the stomach itself from digestion. If this defense is disrupted, an inflammation of the stomach (gastritis) results. This inflammation can then progress to an ulcerated area (**Figure 25.12**). Through an interesting adaptation, *H. pylori* can grow in the highly acidic environment of the stomach, which is lethal for most microorganisms. *H. pylori* produces large amounts of an especially efficient urease, an enzyme that converts urea to the alkaline compound ammonia, resulting in a locally high pH in the area of growth.

The eradication of *H. pylori* with antimicrobial drugs usually leads to the disappearance of peptic ulcers. Several antibiotics, usually administered in combination, have proven effective. Bismuth subsalicylate (Pepto-Bismol®) is also effective and is often part of the drug regimen. When the bacteria are successfully eliminated, the recurrence rate of the ulcer is only about 2–4% a year. Reinfection can result from many environmental sources but is less likely in areas with high standards of sanitation; in fact, there is some evidence that infection by *H. pylori* is slowly disappearing in developed countries.

The most reliable diagnostic test requires a biopsy of tissue and culture of the organism. An interesting diagnostic approach is the urea breath test. The patient swallows radioactively labeled urea; if the test is positive, CO_2 labeled with radioactivity can be detected in the breath within about 30 minutes. This test is most useful for determining the effectiveness of chemotherapy because a positive test is an indication of live *H. pylori*. Diagnostic tests of stools to detect antigens (not antibodies) for *H. pylori* are suitable for follow-up tests following therapy. They are the noninvasive test of choice, especially for children. Serological tests to detect antibodies are inexpensive but not useful in determining eradication.

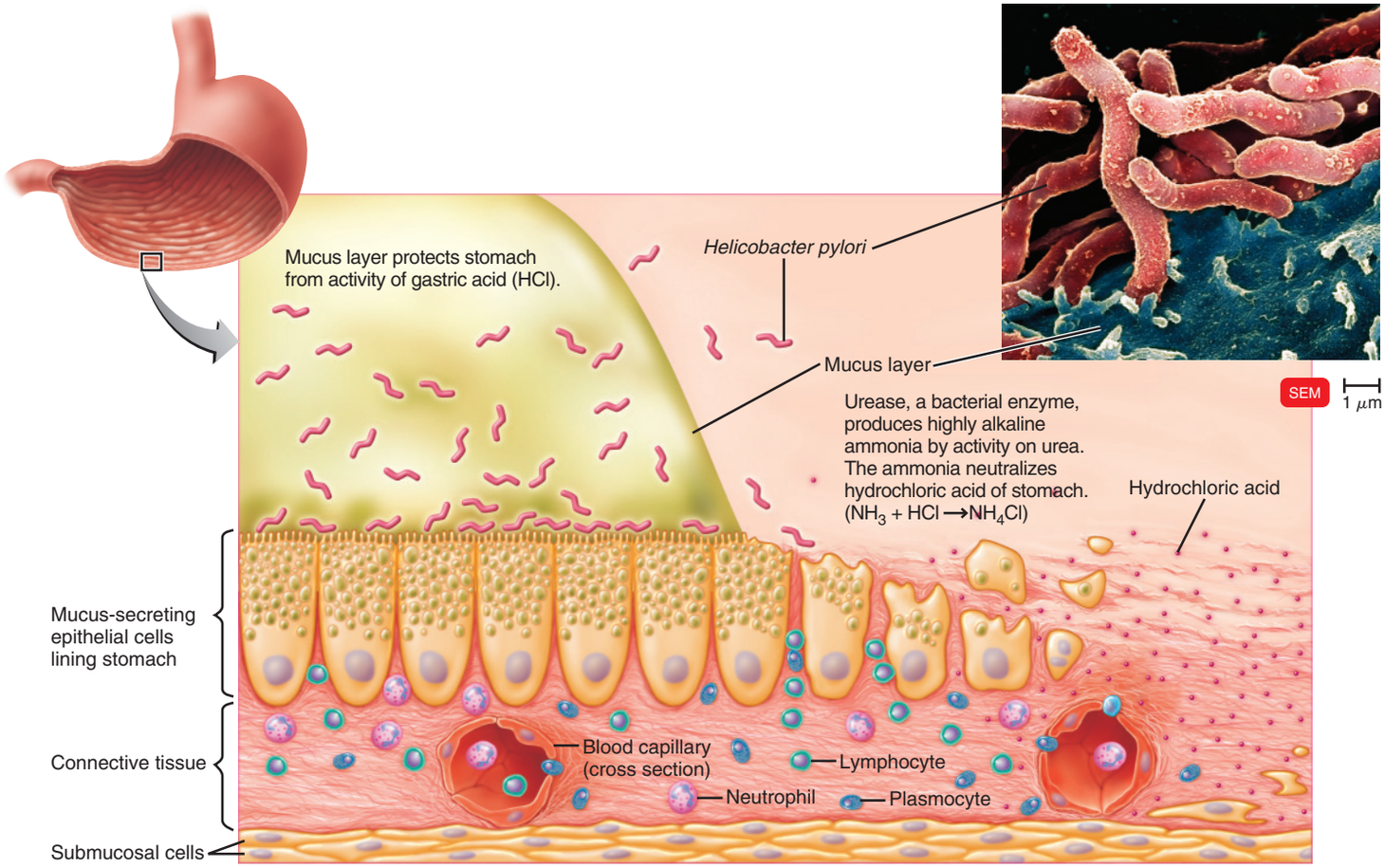


Figure 25.12 ***Helicobacter pylori*** **infection, leading to ulceration of the stomach wall.** To survive in the acidic environment of the stomach, *H. pylori* bacteria must neutralize the gastric acid, hydrochloric acid (HCl). They do this by producing large amounts of the enzyme urease. Urea, which is normally secreted into the stomach, is converted into carbon dioxide and ammonia [$(NH_2)_2CO + H_2O \rightarrow CO_2 + 2NH_3$]. The ammonia neutralizes the gastric HCl ($NH_3 + HCl \rightarrow NH_4Cl$).

Q **How can ammonia be used to diagnose *Helicobacter* infection?**

Yersinia Gastroenteritis

Other enteric pathogens being identified with increasing frequency are *Yersinia enterocolitica* (en′ter-ō-kōl-IT-ik-ah) and *Y. pseudotuberculosis* (soo′dō-too′ber-kū-LŌ-sis). These gram-negative bacteria are intestinal inhabitants of many domestic animals and are most often transmitted by eating raw or undercooked pork. Both microbes are distinctive in their ability to grow at refrigerator temperatures of 4°C. This ability increases their numbers in stored refrigerated blood, to the extent that their endotoxins can result in shock to the blood recipient. *Yersinia* has occasionally been the cause of severe reactions when it contaminates transfused blood.

About 100,000 cases of *Yersinia* **gastroenteritis**, or **yersiniosis**, caused by these pathogens occur annually in the United States. The symptoms are diarrhea, fever, headache, and abdominal pain. The pain is often severe enough to cause a misdiagnosis of appendicitis. Diagnosis requires culturing the organism, which can then be identified using biochemical or molecular tests. Adults with yersiniosis usually recover in 1 or 2 weeks; children may take longer. Treatment with antibiotics and oral rehydration may be helpful.

Clostridium perfringens Gastroenteritis

One of the most common, if underrecognized, causes of foodborne illness in the United States is *Clostridium perfringens*, a large, gram-positive, endospore-forming, obligately anaerobic rod. This bacterium is also responsible for human gas gangrene (see Chapter 23).

Each year *C. perfringens* causes nearly one million cases of gastroenteritis. Most outbreaks of ***Clostridium perfringens*** **gastroenteritis** are associated with meats or meat stews contaminated with intestinal contents of the animal during slaughter.

Such foods meet the pathogen's nutritional requirement for amino acids, and when the meats are cooked, the oxygen level is lowered enough for clostridial growth. The endospores survive most routine heatings, and the generation time of the vegetative bacterium is less than 20 minutes under ideal conditions. Large populations can therefore build up rapidly when foods are being held for serving or when inadequate refrigeration leads to slow cooling.

The microbe grows in the intestinal tract and produces an exotoxin that causes the typical symptoms of abdominal pain and diarrhea. Most cases are mild and self-limiting and probably are never clinically diagnosed. If treatment is required, oral rehydration is recommended. The signs and symptoms usually appear 8 to 12 hours after ingestion. Diagnosis is based on finding at least 10^6 *C. perfringens* endospores per gram of stool within 48 hours of the onset of illness.

Clostridioides difficile–Associated Diarrhea

***Clostridioides difficile*–associated diarrhea** is a disease that has appeared in recent decades and has been described as being responsible for more deaths than all other intestinal infections combined. *Clostridioides difficile* ((klo-strid-ē-OY-dēz DIF-fi-sē-il) is a gram-positive, endospore-forming anaerobe found in the stool of many healthy adults. The exotoxins it produces cause a disease that manifests itself in symptoms ranging from a mild case of diarrhea to life-threatening colitis (inflammation of the colon). The colitis can result in ulceration, and possible perforation, of the intestinal wall. The disease is usually precipitated by the extended use of antibiotics. The elimination of most competing intestinal bacteria permits rapid proliferation of the toxin-producing *C. difficile*. It occurs mostly in health care settings such as hospitals and nursing homes. Outbreaks have also occurred in day-care centers, and caregivers have been known to acquire it from patients. The mortality rate is highest in older adults. *C. difficile* causes a half-million infections and as many as 29,000 deaths annually. Infections are treated with vancomycin or fidaxomicin, although recurrence is common. Fecal transplants are about 85% successful in treating recurrent infections. (See The Big Picture in Chapter 19.)

Bacillus cereus Gastroenteritis

Bacillus cereus (SEER-ē-us) is a large, gram-positive, endospore-forming bacterium that is very common in soil and vegetation and is generally considered harmless. It has, however, been identified as the cause of outbreaks of foodborne illness. Heating the food does not always kill the spores, which germinate as the food cools. Because competing microbes have been eliminated in the cooked food, *B. cereus* grows rapidly and produces toxins. Rice dishes served in Asian restaurants seem especially susceptible.

There are two different clinical syndromes associated with *B. cereus* gastroenteritis, which correspond to two different toxins elaborated by the bacteria. Some cases of ***Bacillus cereus* gastroenteritis** resemble *C. perfringens* intoxications and are almost entirely diarrheal in nature (usually appearing 8 to 16 hours after ingestion). Other episodes resemble staphylococcal food poisoning, with nausea and vomiting 2 to 5 hours after ingestion. It's suspected that different toxins are involved in producing the differing symptoms. Both forms of the disease are self-limiting. The diseases can be differentiated by isolating at least 10^5 *B. cereus* per gram of suspected food.

CLINICAL CASE

The bacteria are identified as *E. coli* O157. The laboratory then uses DNA fingerprinting to identify the strain of *E. coli* as STEC O157. The state health department, which has been notified about the STEC O157 isolate by Anna's pediatrician, makes further inquiries and traces contacts. Mrs. Abramovic is interviewed with a standard questionnaire that focuses on details of travel history, food history, and exposure to animals. According to Mrs. Abramovic, Anna did not consume high-risk foods, such as undercooked ground beef and unpasteurized milk, but her birthday party had been held at a petting zoo the weekend before the onset of her symptoms. Anna had petted the animals and had played on the ground. No other cases occurred in the household or among close contacts.

What should the health department do next?

Part 1 Part 2 **Part 3** Part 4 Part 5

Bacterial diseases of the lower digestive system are summarized in Diseases in Focus 25.2.

Viral Diseases of the Digestive System

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

25-5 List the causative agents, modes of transmission, sites of infection, and symptoms for mumps.

25-6 Differentiate hepatitis A, hepatitis B, hepatitis C, hepatitis D, and hepatitis E.

25-7 List the causative agents, mode of transmission, and symptoms of viral gastroenteritis.

Although viruses don't reproduce within the contents of the digestive system like bacteria, they invade many organs associated with the system.

Mumps

The targets of the *Orthorubulavirus* mumps virus, the parotid glands, are located just below and in front of the ears (see Figure 25.1). Because the parotids are one of the three pairs of salivary glands of the digestive system, it is appropriate to include a discussion of mumps in this chapter.

Mumps typically begins with painful swelling of one or both parotid glands 16 to 18 days after exposure to the virus (Figure 25.13). The virus is transmitted in saliva and respiratory secretions, and its portal of entry is the respiratory tract. An infected person is most infective to others during the first 48 hours before clinical symptoms appear. Once the viruses have begun to multiply in the respiratory tract and local lymph nodes in the neck, they reach the salivary glands via the blood. Viremia (the presence of virus in the blood) begins several days before the onset of mumps symptoms and before the virus appears in saliva. The virus is present in the blood and saliva for 3 to 5 days after the onset of the disease and in the urine after about 10 days.

Mumps is characterized by inflammation and swelling of the parotid glands, fever, and pain during swallowing. About 4 to 7 days after the onset of symptoms, the testes can become inflamed, a condition called *orchitis*. This happens in about 20–40% of male patients past puberty; sterility is a possible but rare consequence. One to four percent of infections results in hearing loss. Other possible complications include meningitis, inflammation of the ovaries, and pancreatitis.

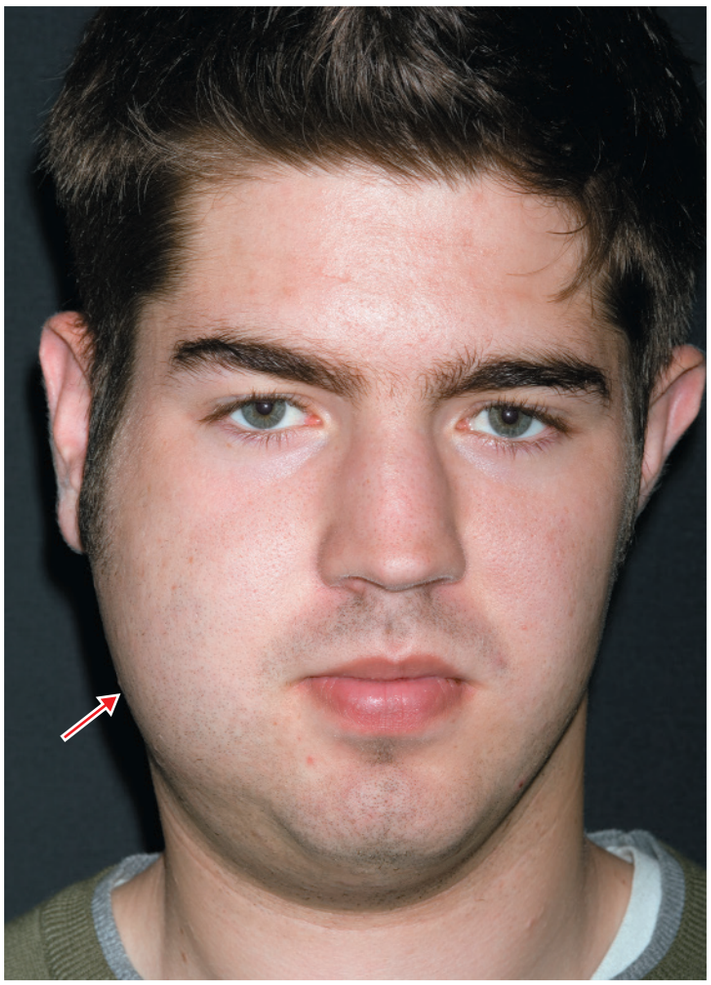


Figure 25.13 A case of mumps. This patient shows the typical swelling of mumps.

Q How is the mumps virus transmitted?

An effective attenuated live vaccine is available and is often administered as part of the trivalent measles, mumps, rubella (MMR) vaccine. Second attacks are rare, and cases involving only one parotid gland or subclinical cases (about 15–20% of those infected), are as effective as bilateral mumps in conferring immunity.

If confirmation of the diagnosis (which usually is based only on symptoms) is desired, the virus can be isolated by embryonated egg or cell culture techniques and identified by ELISA tests.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

25-5 Why is mumps included with the diseases of the digestive system?

Hepatitis

Hepatitis is an inflammation of the liver. At least five different viruses cause hepatitis, and probably more remain to be discovered or become better known. Hepatitis is an occasional result of infections by other viruses such as *Lymphocryptovirus* (HHV-4), *Cytomegalovirus* (HHV-5), or Parvovirus B19 (fifth disease). Drug and chemical toxicity can also cause acute hepatitis that is clinically identical to viral hepatitis. The characteristics of the various forms of viral hepatitis are summarized in Diseases in Focus 25.3.

Hepatitis A

The hepatitis A virus (*Hepatovirus*, HAV) is the causative agent of **hepatitis A**. The virus contains single-stranded RNA and lacks an envelope. It can be grown in cell culture.

After a typical entrance via the oral route, HAV multiplies in the epithelial lining of the intestinal tract. Viremia eventually occurs, and the virus spreads to the liver, kidneys, and spleen. The virus is shed in the feces and can also be detected in the blood and urine. The amount of virus excreted is greatest before symptoms appear and then declines rapidly. Therefore, a food handler responsible for spreading the virus might not appear to be ill at the time. The virus can probably survive for several days on such surfaces as cutting boards. HAV is resistant to chlorine disinfectants at concentrations ordinarily used in water, a characteristic that enhances fecal contamination of food or drink. Mollusks, such as oysters, that live in contaminated waters are also a source of infection. Fresh and frozen berries were sources of outbreaks in 2019 and 2022. In the United States, outbreaks are more commonly transmitted person-to-person than via food or water.

At least 50% of infections with HAV are subclinical, especially in children. In clinical cases, the initial symptoms are anorexia (loss of appetite), malaise, nausea, diarrhea, abdominal discomfort, fever, and chills. These symptoms are more likely to appear in adults; they last 2 to 21 days, and the

DISEASES IN FOCUS 25.2 Bacterial Diseases of the Lower Digestive System

An 8-year-old boy has diarrhea, chills, fever (39.3°C), abdominal cramps, and vomiting for 3 days. The next month, his 12-year-old brother experiences the same symptoms. Two weeks before the first patient became ill, the family had purchased a small (<10 cm) red-eared slider turtle at a flea market. Use the following table and the information in this chapter to identify infections that could cause these symptoms.

Red-eared slider pets should be >10 cm (4 in.), large enough that children can't put the turtles in their mouths.

Disease	Pathogen	Signs and Symptoms	Intoxication/Infection	Diagnostic Test	Treatment
Staphylococcal Food Poisoning	*Staphylococcus aureus*	Nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea	Intoxication (enterotoxin)	Phage typing	None
Shigellosis (bacillary dysentery)	*Shigella* spp.	Tissue damage and dysentery	Infection (endotoxin and Shiga toxin, exotoxin)	Isolation of bacteria on selective media	Usually none needed
Salmonellosis	*Salmonella enterica*	Nausea and diarrhea	Infection (endotoxin)	Isolation of bacteria on selective media, serotyping	Oral rehydration
Typhoid Fever Paratyphoid Fever	*Salmonella* Typhi *Salmonella* Paratyphi	High fever, significant mortality	Infection (endotoxin)	Isolation of bacteria on selective media, serotyping	Requires antibiotic-susceptibility testing. Preventive: vaccine
Cholera	*Vibrio cholerae* O:1 and O:139	Diarrhea with large water loss	Infection (exotoxin)	Isolation of bacteria on selective media	Rehydration; doxycycline
***V. parahaemolyticus* Gastroenteritis**	*V. parahaemolyticus*	Cholera-like diarrhea, but generally milder	Infection (enterotoxin)	Isolation of bacteria on 2–4% NaCl	Rehydration
***E. coli* Gastroenteritis**	EPEC, EIEC, EAEC, ETEC	Watery diarrhea	Infection (exotoxins)	Isolation on selective media, DNA fingerprinting	Oral rehydration
Shiga Toxin–Producing Enterohemorrhagic *E. coli*	*E. coli* O157:H7	*Shigella*-like dysentery; hemorrhagic colitis, HUS	Infection, Shiga toxin (exotoxin)	Isolation, sorbitol fermentation test, DNA fingerprinting	Intravenous rehydration, serum electrolyte monitoring
***Campylobacteriosis* (*Campylobacter* Gastroenteritis)**	*Campylobacter. jejuni*	Fever, abdominal pain, diarrhea	Infection	Isolation in low O_2, high CO_2	Azithromycin
***Helicobacter* Peptic Ulcer Disease**	*Helicobacter pylori*	Peptic ulcers	Infection	Urea breath test, bacterial culture	Antibiotics
***Yersinia* Gastroenteritis**	*Yersinia enterocolitica*	Abdominal pain and diarrhea, usually mild; may be confused with appendicitis	Infection (endotoxin)	Culture, biochemical or molecular tests	Oral rehydration
***C. perfringens* Gastroenteritis**	*Clostridium perfringens*	Usually limited to diarrhea	Infection (exotoxin)	Isolation of 10^6 endospores/g feces	Oral rehydration
***C. difficile*–Associated Diarrhea**	*Clostridioides difficile*	Mild diarrhea to colitis; 1–2.5% mortality	Infection (exotoxin)	Cytotoxin assay	Vancomycin, fidaxomicin
***B. cereus* Gastroenteritis**	*Bacillus cereus*	May take form of diarrhea, nausea, vomiting	Intoxication	Isolation of $\geq 10^5$ *B. cereus*/g food	None

mortality rate is low. Nationwide epidemics occur about every 10 years, mostly in people under 14. In some cases, there is also jaundice (signs are yellowing of the skin and the whites of the eyes) and the dark urine typical of liver infections. In these cases, the liver becomes tender and enlarged.

There is no chronic form of hepatitis A, and the virus is usually shed only during the acute stage of disease. The incubation time averages 4 weeks and ranges from 2 to 6 weeks, making epidemiological studies for the source of infections difficult. There are no animal reservoirs.

Acute disease is diagnosed by the detection of IgM anti-HAV because these antibodies appear about 4 weeks after infection and disappear about 3 to 4 months after infection. Recovery results in lifelong immunity.

Between 2016 and 2023, person-to-person transmission resulted in nearly 50,000 infections and over 27,000 hospitalizations. No specific treatment for the disease exists, but people at risk of exposure or who have been exposed to hepatitis A can be given immune globulin, which provides protection for several months. Inactivated vaccines are recommended for travelers to areas of endemic disease and for high-risk groups, such as men who have sex with men and people who inject street drugs. HAV vaccination is now part of the recommended childhood vaccination schedule.

Hepatitis B

Hepatitis B is caused by the hepatitis B virus (*Orthohepadnavirus*, HBV). HBV and HAV are completely different viruses: HBV is larger, its genome is double-stranded DNA, and it is enveloped. HBV is a unique DNA virus; instead of replicating its DNA directly, it passes through an intermediate RNA stage resembling a retrovirus.

The serum from patients with hepatitis B contains three distinct particles (**Figure 25.14**). The largest is the complete virion, which is infectious and capable of replicating. It is often referred to as a *Dane particle*, after the virologist who first observed it. There are also smaller *spherical particles*, about half the size of a complete virion, and *filamentous particles*, which are tubular particles similar in diameter to the spherical particles but about ten times as long. The spherical and filamentous particles are unassembled components of the virion without nucleic acids; assembly is evidently not very efficient, and large numbers of these unassembled components accumulate. Fortunately, these numerous unassembled particles contain *hepatitis B surface antigen* (HB_sAg), which can be detected with antibodies to them. Such antibody tests make convenient screening of blood for HBV possible.

A third of the world's population shows serological evidence of past infection, but most people have cleared the virus. More than 350 million people have become chronic carriers of the virus. Most of these carriers are Asian and African people, with a considerable proportion from Mediterranean countries. They typically acquire the infection at birth or in the first couple of years after birth. Many chronic carriers eventually die of liver cancer or cirrhosis (hardening and degeneration; see photo of the liver in Diseases in Focus 25.3).

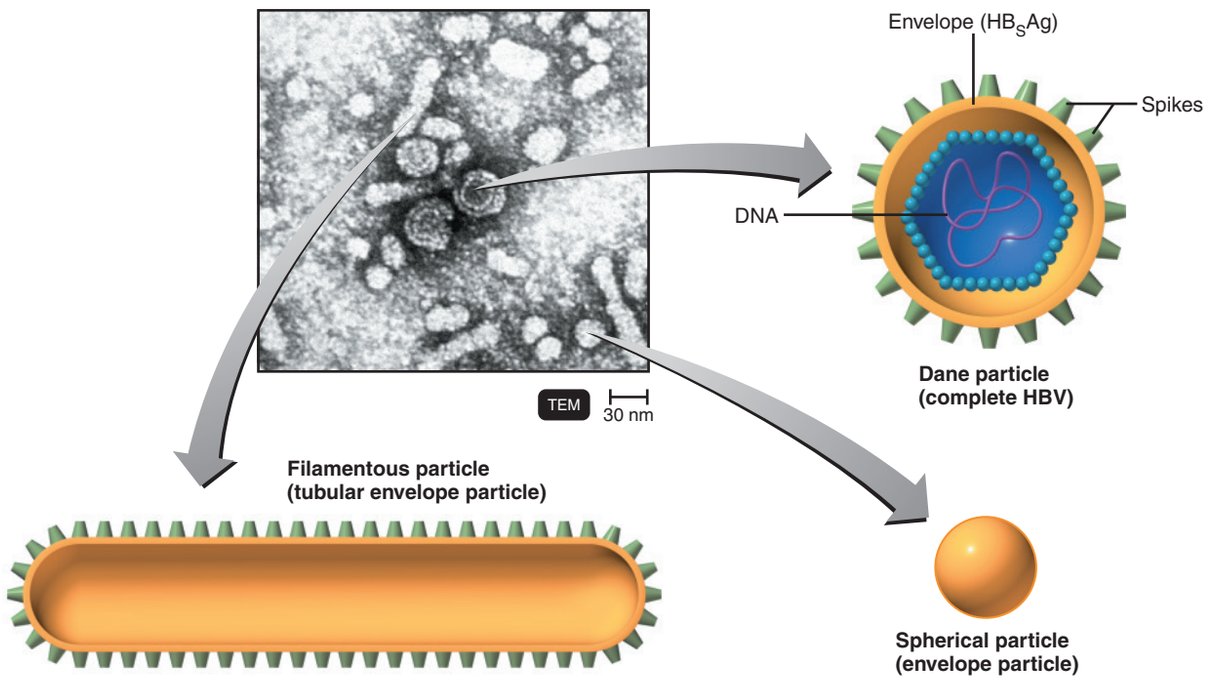


Figure 25.14 Hepatitis B virus (HBV). The micrograph and illustrations depict the distinct types of HBV particles discussed in the text.

Q What are other causes of viral hepatitis?

DISEASES IN FOCUS 25.3 Characteristics of Viral Hepatitis

Healthy liver.

Liver damaged by hepatitis C.

Hepatitis is an inflammation of the liver. Chronic hepatitis may be asymptomatic, or there may be evidence of liver disease (including cirrhosis or liver cancer). Hepatitis can be caused by alcohol or drugs; however, it is most often caused by one of the following viruses. Use the following table to determine which virus is the most likely cause of this infection: After eating at one restaurant, 355 people are diagnosed with the same hepatitis virus.

Hepatitis Type	Pathogen	Signs and Symptoms	Incubation Period	Method of Transmission	Diagnostic Test	Treatment	Vaccine
A	Hepatitis A virus, Picornaviridae *Hepatovirus*	Mostly subclinical; fever, headache; malaise, jaundice in severe cases; no chronic disease	2–6 weeks	Ingestion	IgM antibodies	Immunoglobulin	Inactivated virus vaccine
B	Hepatitis B virus, Hepadnaviridae *Orthohepadnavirus*	Frequently subclinical; similar to HAV, but no headache; more likely to progress to severe liver damage; chronic disease occurs	4–26 weeks	Parenteral; sexual contact	IgM antibodies, or PCR for viral DNA	Interferon and nucleoside analogues	Genetically modified vaccine produced in yeast
C	Hepatitis C virus, Flaviviridae *Hepacivirus*	Similar to HBV, more likely to become chronic	2–22 weeks	Parenteral	IgM antibodies, or reverse transcription PCR for viral RNA	Enzyme inhibitors	None
D	Hepatitis D viroid, Kolmioviridae *Deltavirus*	Severe liver damage; high mortality rate; chronic disease may occur	6–26 weeks	Parenteral; requires coinfection with hepatitis B	IgM antibodies or reverse transcription PCR for viral RNA	None	HBV vaccine is protective
E	Hepatitis E virus, Hepeviridae *Orthohepevirus*	Similar to HAV, but high mortality during pregnancy; no chronic disease	2–6 weeks	Ingestion	IgM antibodies against HEV or reverse transcription PCR for viral RNA	None	None

Infection by HBV can take a varied path. There is a marked difference between acute and chronic HBV infection. If an individual is infected with HBV, acute hepatitis can result. Most such cases will resolve spontaneously as the patient clears the virus. About 5% of cases of acute hepatitis B will progress to chronic hepatitis B.

Acute Hepatitis B Many cases of acute hepatitis B are subclinical; the infected person is often entirely unaware. In about a third of the cases, the patient exhibits symptoms of disease—the person feels unwell and often experiences low-grade fever, nausea, and abdominal pain. Eventually, jaundice, dark urine, and other evidence of liver damage appears. A long period of gradual recovery marked by fatigue and malaise follows as the damaged liver recovers. However, in a few cases (less than 1%), the patient develops *fulminant hepatitis*, causing sudden, massive liver damage; survival without a liver transplant is uncommon. If a case of hepatitis persists for more than 6 months, the condition is considered to have become chronic.

Chronic Hepatitis B Most individuals with acute hepatitis B clear the virus successfully, but some fail to do so and develop chronic hepatitis B. People infected when very young are the most likely to become chronic carriers. The risk for infants is about 90%; in children of 1 to 5 years, about 25–50%. Adolescents and young adults have a much lower risk, only 6–10%. Overall, up to 10% of infected patients become chronic carriers of the virus. For some, the condition is essentially asymptomatic: they are considered inactive carriers and have a low risk of progressing to clinical disease. Many others experience malaise, loss of appetite, and general fatigue—but usually without evidence of jaundice. In cases in which the chronic infection results in liver cirrhosis, the patient becomes seriously ill. Tests of liver function usually follow, leading to a diagnosis. Without treatment, the prognosis is usually poor. Liver cancer develops in some cases. In fact, liver cancer is the most prevalent form of cancer in sub-Saharan Africa and East Asia, areas where hepatitis B is extremely common.

Hepatitis B is a worldwide disease, but there is a significant difference in the clinical expression of hepatitis between areas of high prevalence and those of low prevalence.

In high-prevalence countries, HBV infection tends to be acquired around the time of birth (perinatal) from an infected birthing parent. As a consequence, the immune system doesn't recognize a difference between the virus and the host, and a high level of immunologic tolerance ensues. Because of this tolerance, the infection isn't accompanied by acute hepatitis; instead, a chronic, usually lifelong infection is established. This is the case in about 90% of infected persons. Despite the immunologic tolerance to HBV, some liver injury occurs, and there is a high risk of death from liver disease, especially among men.

By contrast, in low-prevalence countries, most acute HBV infections occur from exposure to infected blood or other body fluids. It is often a disease of unvaccinated 30- to 59-year-old adults participating in risky behaviors—injecting street drugs or sexual promiscuity, for example. Long-term intimate nonsexual contact with an infected individual can also transmit HBV. Infected people who are immunocompetent develop a strong immune response, and the virus is cleared in all but about 1% of those infected. These patients have a much lower incidence of chronic disease and of liver cancer.

The diagnosis of HBV is usually based on symptoms, followed by tests of liver function. Serological tests can detect HBV antigens and antibodies. The presence of hepatitis B surface antigen (HB_sAg) indicates the presence of the virus in the blood. After the virus is cleared, anti-HBsAg appears, and the patient is considered immune. Detection of the hepatitis B "e" antigen (HBeAg), a marker for the core of the virus, usually means that the virus is replicating vigorously. If this antigen disappears and is replaced by antibodies against it, this usually means that liver disease associated with viral reproduction has diminished. It also means that the patient is less infectious to others.

HBV is transmitted through sexual contact; needles, syringes, or other drug-injection equipment; and from mother to baby at birth. Health care workers and others who are in daily contact with blood have a considerably higher incidence of hepatitis B than members of the general population. Vaccination is recommended for all health care and public safety workers. All donated blood is tested for HBV using ELISA tests for HB_sAg and HBeAg and PCR.

Preventing HBV infection involves several strategies, including using disposable needles and syringes and barrier-type contraception. Transmission from mother to infant can be prevented by administering hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIG) to the newborn immediately after birth. These babies should also be vaccinated. The HBV vaccine has become widespread worldwide and is now part of the childhood immunization schedule in the United States. It hasn't been possible to cultivate HBV in cell culture, a step that was necessary for the development of vaccines for polio, mumps, measles, and rubella. The available HBV vaccines use HBsAg produced by a genetically modified yeast. The annual incidence has declined from 30,000 cases before the vaccine to under 3000 in 2020, and eventual elimination of the disease is conceivable.

There is no specific treatment for acute HBV. For chronic HBV infection, there are currently seven approved treatments. However, none of these is reliably curative, largely because the DNA of the virus becomes integrated into the genome of the host. The aim of treatment for chronic HBV infections is to diminish the DNA of the virus to levels that are undetectable with a PCR assay.

Treatment decisions are made on the basis of several factors, such as patient age and the stage of the disease. Coinfections with HIV often occur and complicate treatment. Available antivirals include alpha interferon (see Chapter 16 for a discussion of interferons) as well as several nucleoside analogues, such as lamivudine, adefovir, entecavir, telbivudine, and tenofovir DF. The course of treatment typically extends over several months. Combinations of at least two drugs are recommended to minimize development of resistance. Liver transplantation is often a final option in treatment.

Hepatitis C

In the 1960s, a previously unsuspected form of transfusion-transmitted hepatitis, now called **hepatitis C**, appeared. This new form of hepatitis soon constituted almost all transfusion-transmitted hepatitis—as testing eliminated HBV in the blood supply. Eventually, serological tests to detect antibodies to hepatitis C virus (*Hepacivirus*, HCV) were developed that similarly reduced the transmission of HCV to very low levels. However, there is a delay of about 70 to 80 days between infection and the appearance of detectable HCV antibodies. The presence of HCV in contaminated blood cannot be detected during this interval, and about 1 in 100,000 transfusions can still result in infection. Blood-collecting facilities in the United States can

now detect HCV-contaminated blood within 25 days of infection using an ELISA test for HCV antibodies and a PCR test.

HCV has a single strand of RNA and is enveloped. The virus doesn't kill the infected cell, but it triggers an immune inflammatory response that either clears the infection or slowly destroys the liver. (See the photo in Diseases in Focus 25.3.) The virus is capable of rapid genetic variation to evade the immune system. This characteristic, along with the fact that currently HCV is cultured very inefficiently, complicates the search for an effective vaccine.

Hepatitis C has been described as a silent epidemic, killing more people than AIDS in the United States. It is often clinically inapparent—few people have recognizable symptoms until about 20 years have elapsed. Probably as many as a third of individuals infected with HCV clear the virus spontaneously. Even today, probably only a minority of infections have been diagnosed. Often, hepatitis C is detected only during some routine testing, such as for insurance or blood donation. A majority of cases, perhaps as high as 85%, progress to chronic hepatitis, a much higher rate than with HBV. Surveys indicate an estimated 4.4 million people in the United States are chronically infected. About 25% of chronically infected patients develop liver cirrhosis or liver cancer. Hepatitis C is probably the major reason for liver transplantation. Persons infected with HCV should be immunized against both HAV and HBV (a combination vaccine is now available) because they cannot afford the risk of further liver damage.

Preventing HCV is limited to minimizing exposure—even sharing of items such as razors, toothbrushes, or nail clippers is dangerous. A common source of infection is the sharing of injection equipment among people who use intravenous drugs. HCV infections quadrupled from 2013 to 2020. The rate of new hepatitis C infections has increased the most among younger adults, with injection drug use as the primary route of transmission. HCV is curable and could be eliminated if infected people received treatment. The CDC recommends screening all adults to identify and treat inapparent infections. Direct-acting antiviral (DAA) tablets containing protease and polymerase inhibitors are used to treat infections.

Other Hepatitis Viruses

The hepatitis D viroid or satellite virus (*Deltavirus*, HDV) requires HBV for its replication. **Hepatitis D** can occur as either acute (*coinfection form*) or chronic (*superinfection form*) hepatitis. In people with a case of self-limiting acute hepatitis B, coinfection with HDV disappears as the HBV is cleared from the system, and the condition resembles a typical case of acute hepatitis B. However, if the HBV infection has progressed to the chronic stage, superinfection with HDV is often accompanied by progressive liver damage and a fatality rate several times that of people infected with HBV alone.

Hepatitis D is also linked to the epidemiology of hepatitis B. In the United States and northern Europe, the disease occurs predominantly in high-risk groups, such as people who use intravenous drugs.

Hepatitis E (*Orthohepevirus*, HEV) is spread by fecal–oral transmission, much like hepatitis A, which it clinically and structurally resembles. It is endemic in areas with poor sanitation, especially parts of India and Southeast Asia. HEV does not cause chronic liver disease, but for some unexplained reason it is responsible for a mortality rate in excess of 20% during pregnancy.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

25-6 Of the several hepatitis diseases, HAV, HBV, HCV, HDV, and HEV, which two now have effective vaccines to prevent them?

Viral Gastroenteritis

Acute gastroenteritis is one of the most common diseases of humans. About 90% of cases of acute viral gastroenteritis are caused by either the *Rotavirus* or *Norovirus*.

Rotavirus

Rotavirus (Figure 25.15) is probably the most common cause of viral gastroenteritis, especially in children. It's estimated to cause 50,000 hospitalizations, but fewer than 100 deaths, every year in the United States. Mortality is much higher in countries where rehydration therapy isn't as available. In most cases, following an incubation period of 2 to 3 days, the patient experiences low-grade fever, diarrhea, and vomiting, which persists

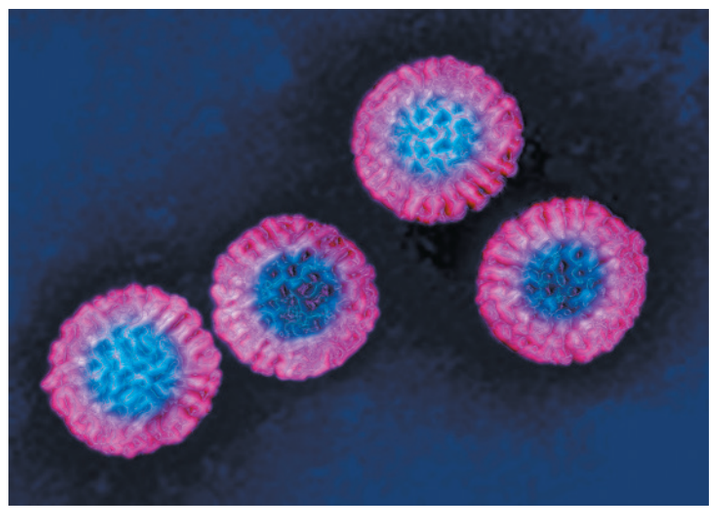


Figure 25.15 ***Rotavirus.*** This negatively stained electron micrograph shows the morphology of the *Rotavirus* (*rota* = wheel), which gives the virus its name.

Q What disease does *rotavirus* cause?

for about a week. Acquired immunity from childhood infection makes subsequent *Rotavirus* infections, except for certain strains, much less common in adults.

Rotavirus cases usually peak during the cooler winter months. An infectious dose is estimated to be fewer than 100 viruses, and patients shed billions in every gram of stool. In 2006 a live, orally administered vaccine was licensed. Before the vaccine, more than 90% of children in the United States were infected by the age of 3. In some cases, parents also become infected. The vaccine has decreased incidence by 98%.

CLINICAL CASE

The health department makes a visit to the petting zoo to investigate the animals with which Anna had contact. Rectal swabs or fecal samples are cultured from the various animals at the zoo (see the table).

Isolation of STEC O157 from Fecal Sample/Rectal Swabs Collected at the Petting Zoo

Animal(s)	No. of Animals	No. of Animals with Isolates Identical to the DNA Pattern of Anna's STEC O157
Deer	8	1
Donkey	1	0
Goats	8	2
Guinea fowl	5	0
Llama	1	0
Peacock	1	0
Pig	1	0
Rabbits	10	0
Sheep	4	3

Based on these results, what is the most likely mode of transmission, and how can transmission be prevented?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 **Part 4** Part 5

Rotavirus infections are routinely diagnosed by several types of commercially available tests, such as enzyme immunoassays. Treatment is usually limited to oral rehydration therapy.

Norovirus

Noroviruses were first identified following an outbreak of gastroenteritis in Norwalk, Ohio, in 1968. The responsible agent was identified in 1972 and called the *Norwalk virus*. Several similar viruses were later identified, and this group was termed *Norwalk-like viruses*. All were determined to be members of the Caliciviridae (named for the Latin *calyx*, meaning cup—cup-shaped depressions are visible on the viruses) and are now classified in one species, *Norovirus Norwalk virus*. It is not practical to culture them, and they do not infect the usual laboratory animals. Humans become infected by fecal–oral transmission from food and water and even aerosols from vomiting. The infectious dose may be as low as 10 viruses. The viruses continue to be shed for several days after the patient is asymptomatic. More than 20 million cases of *Norovirus* gastroenteritis occur annually in the United States, but only about 300 deaths. *Norovirus* is the leading cause of foodborne illness. In 2022, a multistate outbreak of *Norovirus* was due to consumption of raw or undercooked oysters. About half of adult Americans show serological evidence that they have been infected. (See the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 9.) The currently dominant strain of *Norovirus* made its appearance around 2002, which is attributed to several possible factors. This strain may be more virulent, or more environmentally stable; also, fewer people may have had resistance to it from previous exposure. Natural resistance to a particular strain may last only a few months—at most about 3 years.

Cleanup and prevention of transmission following an outbreak—which often occurs in a restaurant or on a cruise ship—is challenging. The viruses are unusually persistent on environmental surfaces, including door handles or elevator buttons. The CDC recommends washing hands with soap and water, especially after using the toilet and changing diapers, and always before eating, preparing, or handling food. Sanitizing hand gels may be used after washing but are not a substitute for washing. *Norovirus* doesn't have a lipid envelope and is, therefore, not reliably inactivated by ethanol. Most of the effectiveness of such measures is probably related to mechanical removal, as with hand soap. To decontaminate hard, nonporous surfaces requires solutions containing 1000 to 5000 ppm of hypochlorite (a 1:50 or 1:10 solution of household [5.26%] bleach, respectively).

To detect noroviruses in stool samples, laboratories use sensitive PCR and enzyme immunoassay tests. The availability of such new and sensitive assays has led to recognition of *Norovirus* as the most common cause (at least half of recent foodborne outbreaks in the United States) of nonbacterial gastroenteritis.

Following an incubation period of 18 to 48 hours, the patient experiences vomiting and/or diarrhea for 2 or 3 days. Diarrhea is the most prevalent symptom in children; most adults experience diarrhea, although many adult patients experience only vomiting. The severity of symptoms often depends upon the size of the infectious dose.

The only treatment for viral gastroenteritis is oral rehydration or, in exceptional cases, intravenous rehydration.

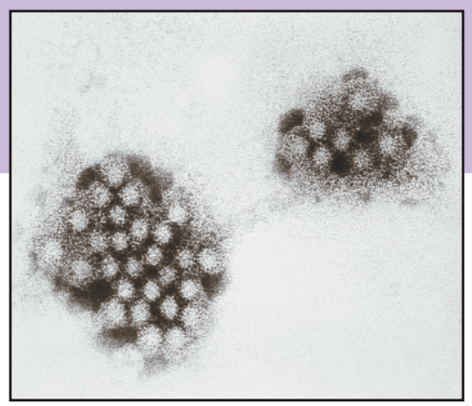
Viral diseases of the digestive system are summarized in Diseases in Focus 25.4.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

25-7 Two very common causes of viral gastroenteritis are rotaviruses and noroviruses. Which of these now can be prevented by a vaccine?

DISEASES IN FOCUS 25.4 Viral Diseases of the Digestive System

An outbreak of diarrhea begins in mid-June, peaks in mid-August, and tapers off in September. The case definition for this outbreak is defined as diarrhea (three loose stools during a 24-hour period) in a member of a swim club. The virus shown at right is isolated from one patient. Use the following table to identify infections that could cause these symptoms.



Virus cultured from the patient's stool.

Disease	Pathogen	Signs and Symptoms	Incubation Period	Diagnostic Test	Prevention
Mumps	*Orthorubulavirus mumps orthrovulavirus*	Painful swelling of parotid glands	16–18 days	Symptoms; virus culture	Attenuated vaccine
Viral Gastroenteritis	*Rotavirus* spp.	Vomiting, diarrhea for 1 week	1–3 days	Enzyme immunoassay for viral antigens in feces	Attenuated vaccine
	Norovirus Norwalk virus	Vomiting, diarrhea for 2–3 days	18–48 hr	PCR	Thorough handwashing
Hepatitis (See Diseases in Focus 25.3.)					

Fungal Diseases of the Digestive System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

25-8 Identify the causes of ergot poisoning and aflatoxin poisoning.

Some fungi produce toxins called *mycotoxins* that cause blood diseases, nervous system disorders, kidney damage, liver damage, and even cancer. Mycotoxin intoxication is considered when multiple patients have similar clinical signs and symptoms. Diagnosis is usually based on finding the fungi or mycotoxins in food (**Diseases in Focus 25.5**).

Claviceps purpurea (KLA-vi-seps pur-pur-Ē-ah) is a fungus that causes smut (soot-like masses of spores) on grain crops. Mycotoxins produced by *C. purpurea* cause **ergot poisoning** when rye or other cereal grains contaminated with the fungus are ingested. The toxin can restrict blood flow in the limbs, with resulting gangrene. It may also cause hallucinogenic symptoms, producing bizarre behavior similar to that caused by LSD.

Aflatoxin is a mycotoxin produced by the fungus *Aspergillus flavus*, a common mold. It has been found in many foods but is particularly likely to be found on peanuts. **Aflatoxin poisoning** can cause serious damage to livestock when their feed is contaminated with *A. flavus*. Although risk to humans is unknown, there is strong evidence aflatoxin contributes to cirrhosis of the liver and cancer of the liver in parts of the world, such as India and Africa, where food is subject to aflatoxin contamination.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

25-8 What is the connection between the occasional hallucinogenic symptoms produced by ergot poisoning and a modern illicit drug?

Protozoan Diseases of the Digestive System

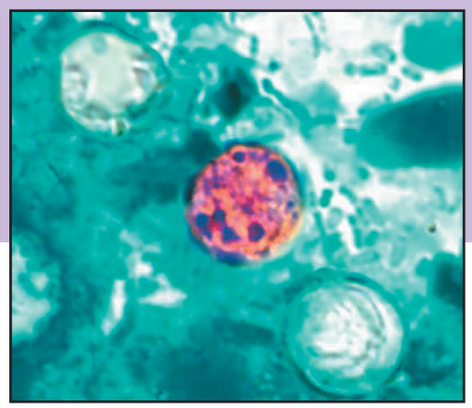
LEARNING OBJECTIVE

25-9 List the causative agents, modes of transmission, symptoms, and treatments for giardiasis, cryptosporidiosis, cyclosporiasis, and amebic dysentery.

Several pathogenic protozoa complete their life cycles in the human digestive system (Diseases in Focus 25.5). Usually they are ingested as resistant, infective cysts and are shed in greatly increased numbers as newly produced cysts.

DISEASES IN FOCUS 25.5 Fungal, Protozoan, and Helminthic Diseases of the Lower Digestive System

Public health officials in Pennsylvania are notified of cases of watery diarrhea, with frequent, sometimes explosive, bowel movements among persons associated with a residential facility (e.g., residents, staff, and volunteers). The disease is associated with eating snow peas. Use the following table to identify possible causes of these symptoms.



LM 3 μm

Acid-fast stain from a patient's feces.

Disease	Pathogen	Signs and Symptoms	Reservoir or Host	Diagnostic Test	Treatment
FUNGAL DISEASES					
Ergot Poisoning	*C. purpurea*	Restricted blood flow to limbs; hallucinogenic.	Mycotoxin produced by fungus growing on grains	Finding fungal sclerotia in food	None
Aflatoxin Poisoning	*A. flavus*	Liver cirrhosis; liver cancer.	Mycotoxin produced by fungus growing on food	Immunoassay for toxin in food	None
PROTOZOAN DISEASES					
Giardiasis	*Giardia duodenalis*	Protozoan adheres to intestinal wall, may inhibit nutritional absorption; diarrhea.	Water; mammals	FA	Metronidazole; nitazoxanide
Cryptosporidiosis	*Cryptosporidium hominis, C. parvum*	Self-limiting diarrhea; may be life-threatening in immunosuppressed patients.	Cattle; water	Acid-fast stain	Nitazoxanide
Cyclosporiasis	*Cyclospora cayetanensis*	Watery diarrhea.	Humans; birds; usually ingested with fruits and vegetables	Acid-fast stain	Trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole
Amebic Dysentery (amebiasis)	*Entamoeba histolytica*	Ameba lyses epithelial cells of intestine, causes abscesses; significant mortality rate.	Humans	Microscopy; EIA	Metronidazole
HELMINTHIC DISEASES					
Tapeworms	*Taenia saginata, T. solium, Diphyllobothrium latum*	Adults cause few symptoms; pork tapeworm larvae may encyst in many organs (neurocysticercosis) and cause damage.	Intermediate host: cattle, pigs, fish; definitive host: humans	Microscopic exam of feces	Praziquantel; niclosamide
Hydatid Disease	*Echinococcus granulosus*	Larvae form in body; may be very large and cause damage.	Intermediate host: sheep, humans; definitive host: dogs	Serology; X-ray exam	Surgical removal; albendazole
Pinworms	*Enterobius vermicularis*	Itching around anus.	Intermediate and definitive hosts: humans	Microscopic exam	Pyrantel pamoate
Hookworms	*Necator americanus, Ancyclostoma duodenale*	Large infections may result in anemia.	Larvae enter skin from soil; definitive hosts: humans	Microscopic exam	Mebendazole
Ascariasis	*Ascaris lumbricoides*	Helminths live off undigested intestinal contents, causing few symptoms.	Intermediate and definitive hosts: humans	Microscopic exam	Mebendazole
Whipworm	*Trichuris trichiura*	Diarrhea, malnutrition.	Intermediate and definitive hosts: humans	Microscopic exam of feces	Albendazole, mebendazole
Trichinellosis	*Trichinella spiralis, T. nativa*	Larvae encyst in striated muscle; usually few symptoms, but large infections may be fatal.	Intermediate and definitive hosts: mammals (including humans)	Biopsy; ELISA	Mebendazole; corticosteroids

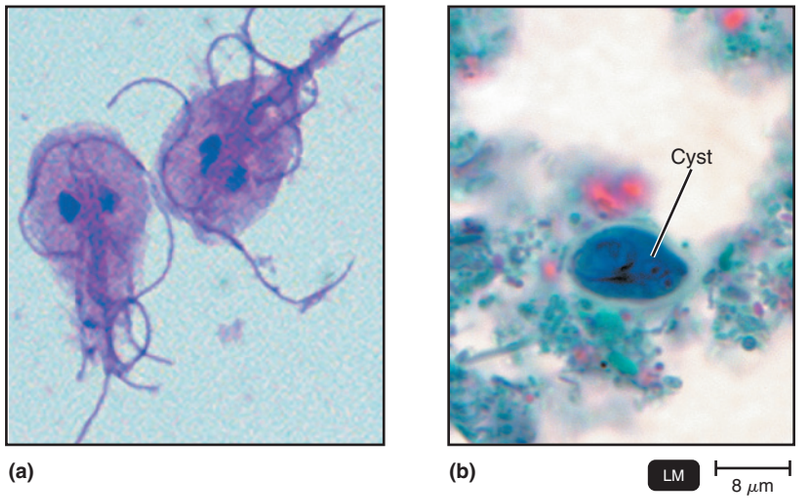


Figure 25.16 *Giardia duodenalis*, the flagellated protozoan that causes giardiasis. (a) The trophozoite attaches to the intestinal wall. (b) The cyst provides protection from the environment before it is ingested by a new host.

Q How are *Giardia* cysts eliminated from drinking water?

Giardiasis

Giardia duodenalis (also known as *G. lamblia* and as *G. intestinalis*) is a flagellated protozoan that is able to attach firmly to a human's intestinal wall (Figure 25.16). In 1681, van Leeuwenhoek described them as having "bodies . . . somewhat longer than broad and their belly, which was flatlike, furnished with sundry little paws."

G. duodenalis is the cause of **giardiasis**, a prolonged diarrheal disease. Sometimes persisting for weeks, giardiasis is characterized by malaise, nausea, flatulence (intestinal gas), weakness, weight loss, and abdominal cramps. The distinctive odor of hydrogen sulfide can often be detected in the breath or stools. The protozoa sometimes occupy so much of the intestinal wall that they interfere with food absorption.

Outbreaks of giardiasis in the United States occur often, especially during camping and swimming seasons. About 7% of the population are healthy carriers and shed the cysts in their feces. The pathogen is also shed by a number of wild mammals, especially beavers, and the disease occurs in backpackers who drink from untreated wilderness waters. Over 100 recent outbreaks were attributed to water, person-to-person contact, and contaminated food. Most of the transmission occurred in private residences or child-care facilities.

Most outbreaks are transmitted by contaminated water supplies. In a recent national survey of surface waters serving as sources for U.S. municipalities, the protozoan was detected in 18% of the samples. Because the cyst stage is relatively insensitive to chlorine, filtration or boiling of water supplies is usually necessary to eliminate the cysts from water.

Microscopic examination is often used for diagnosis. Because *G. duodenalis* isn't reliably excreted, stool samples collected on 3 successive days may be needed. The CDC currently recommends serological tests that use antibodies to test for the presence of trophozoites and cysts in feces. These tests are especially useful for epidemiological screening. Testing of drinking water for *Giardia* is difficult but often necessary to prevent or trace disease outbreaks. These tests are frequently combined with tests for *Cryptosporidium* protozoa, discussed in the next section.

Treatment with metronidazole or quinacrine hydrochloride is usually effective within a week. Nitazoxanide is used to treat both cryptosporidiosis (see Figure 25.17) and giardiasis. Like metronidazole, it affects anaerobic metabolic pathways, but it requires a shorter treatment regimen.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

25-9 Is giardiasis caused by ingestion of a cyst or an oocyst?

Cryptosporidiosis

Cryptosporidiosis is caused by the protozoan *Cryptosporidium*. The most prevalent species affecting humans are *C. parvum* and *C. hominis*. The term *cryptosporidiosis* (medical personnel often refer to it more simply as *crypto*) describes infections by either organism. Infection occurs when humans ingest the cryptosporidian oocysts (Figure 25.17). The oocysts eventually release sporozoites into the small intestine. The motile

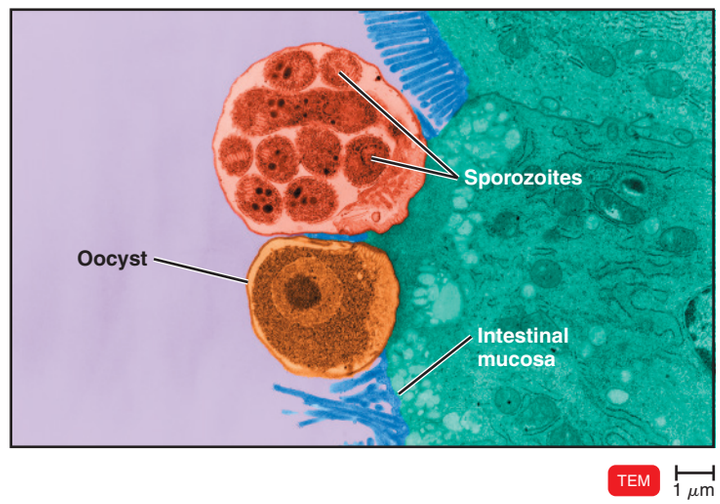


Figure 25.17 Cryptosporidiosis. Oocysts of *Cryptosporidium hominis* are shown here embedded in the intestinal mucosa.

Q How is cryptosporidiosis transmitted?

sporozoites invade the epithelial cells of the intestine and undergo a cycle that eventually releases oocysts to be excreted in the feces. (Compare with the similar life cycle of *Toxoplasma gondii* in Figure 23.23.) The disease is a cholera-like diarrhea lasting 10 to 14 days. In immunodeficient individuals, including people with AIDS, the diarrhea becomes progressively worse and is life-threatening.

The infection is transmitted to humans largely through recreational and drinking water systems contaminated with oocysts of *Cryptosporidium*, mostly from animal wastes, especially cattle. Studies in the United States show that many, if not most, lakes, streams, and even wells are contaminated. The oocysts, like the cysts of *G. duodenalis*, are resistant to chlorination and must be removed from water by filtration. Municipal drinking water is filtered at the water treatment plant to remove *Giardia* cysts and *Cryptosporidium* oocysts. However, both filtration and chlorination are ineffective in removing oocysts from swimming pools. Alternatives to routine chlorination are ultraviolet radiation, ozonation, and chlorine dioxide. See the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 12. An infectious dose may be as low as ten oocysts. Fecal–oral transmission resulting from poor sanitation also occurs; many outbreaks have occurred in day-care settings.

Testing of water is important, but methods have been described as being cumbersome, time-consuming, and inefficient. Most widely used is a fluorescent antibody test that can simultaneously detect both *G. duodenalis* cysts and *Cryptosporidium* oocysts.

The recommended drug for treatment is nitazoxanide, which is also effective in treating giardiasis.

Cryptosporidiosis is most reliably diagnosed in the laboratory by detecting oocysts in fecal samples by microscopic examination of acid-fast stains (Figure 25.18a).

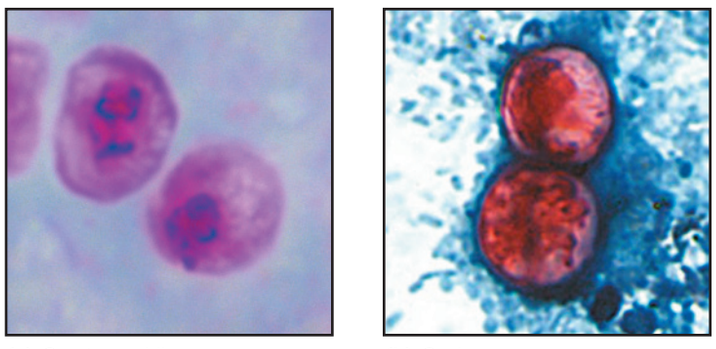


Figure 25.18 Oocysts of two parasitic protozoa. Acid-fast stains of fecal samples. These oocysts are stained with a cold acid-fast stain that uses more concentrated dyes.

Q How would you differentiate these two parasites?

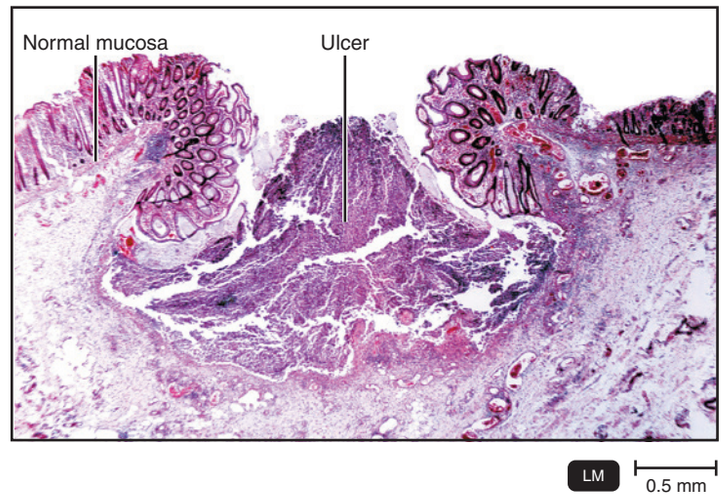


Figure 25.19 Section of intestinal wall showing a typical flask-shaped ulcer caused by *Entamoeba histolytica*.

Q If this lesion progressed far enough, could it be life-threatening?

Cyclosporiasis

A protozoan discovered in 1993 is responsible for a series of recent diarrheal disease outbreaks. The pathogen has since been named *Cyclospora cayetanensis*.

The symptoms of **cyclosporiasis** are a few days of watery diarrhea, but in some cases it may persist for weeks. The disease is especially debilitating for immunosuppressed people, such as people with AIDS. It is uncertain whether humans are the only host for the protozoan. Most outbreaks have been associated with the ingestion of oocysts in water, on contaminated berries, or similar uncooked foods. The foods are presumed to have been contaminated by oocysts shed in human feces or possibly from birds in the field.

Diagnosis is by acid-fast staining of feces (Figure 25.18b). Oocysts can also be detected using fluorescence microscopy because the oocysts are naturally fluorescent. There is no satisfactory test to detect contamination of foods. The antibiotic combination of trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole is used for treatment.

Amebic Dysentery (Amebiasis)

Amebic dysentery, or amebiasis, is spread mostly by food or water contaminated by cysts of the protozoan ameba *Entamoeba histolytica* (see Figure 12.19b). Although stomach acid can destroy trophozoites, it does not affect the cysts. In the intestinal tract, the cyst wall is digested away, and the trophozoites are released. They then multiply in the epithelial cells of the wall of the large intestine. A severe dysentery results; the feces characteristically contain blood and mucus. The trophozoites feed on tissue in the intestinal tract (Figure 25.19).

Severe bacterial infections result if the intestinal wall is perforated. Abscesses might have to be treated surgically, and the invasion of other organs, particularly the liver, is not

uncommon. Perhaps 5% of the U.S. population are asymptomatic carriers of *E. histolytica*. Worldwide, one person in ten is estimated to be infected, mostly asymptomatically, and about 10% of these infections progress to the more serious stages.

Diagnosis largely depends on recovering and identifying the pathogens in feces. (Red blood cells, ingested as the parasite feeds on intestinal tissue and observed within the trophozoite stage of an ameba, help identify *E. histolytica*, Figure 12.19.) Several ELISA serological tests are available. Such tests are especially useful when the affected areas are outside the intestinal tract and the patient is not passing amebae.

Metronidazole is the drug of choice in treatment.

Helminthic Diseases of the Digestive System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

25-10 List the causative agents, modes of transmission, symptoms, and treatments for tapeworms and hydatid disease.

25-11 List the causative agents, modes of transmission, symptoms, and treatments for pinworms, hookworms, whipworms, ascariasis, and trichinellosis.

Helminthic parasites are very common in the human intestinal tract, especially in warm, moist regions where sanitation is poor. Figure 25.20 shows the worldwide estimated incidence of infection with some intestinal helminths. These diseases are called *Neglected Tropical Diseases (NTDs)* (see the Big Picture in Chapter 21) because they infect 1.5 billion people in countries with the fewest resources and are not yet controlled. Despite the parasites' size and formidable appearance, light infections often produce few symptoms. They have become so well adapted to their human hosts, and vice versa, that when their presence is revealed, it is often a surprise. Heavy infections can cause a range of symptoms described next.

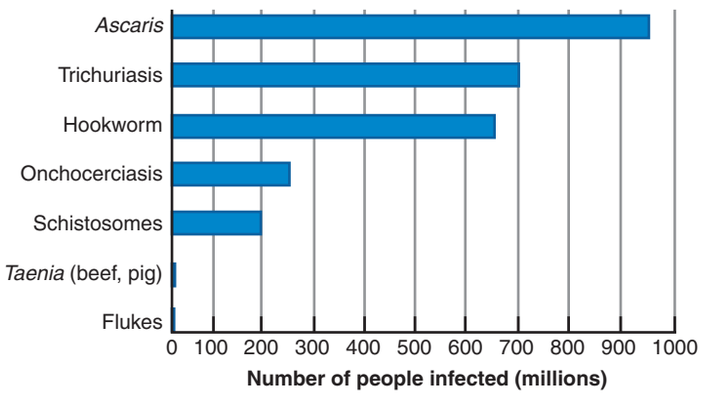


Figure 25.20 The worldwide prevalence of human infections with the most common helminths, 2021. More than one billion people are infected.

Source: CDC and World Health Organization.

Q How is each of these diseases transmitted?

Tapeworms

The life cycle of a typical **tapeworm** extends through three stages. The adult worm lives in the intestine of a human host, where it produces eggs that are excreted in the feces (see Figure 12.28). The eggs are ingested by animals such as grazing cattle, where the egg hatches into a larval form called a *cysticercus* (plural: *cysticerci*) that lodges in the animal's muscles. Human infections by tapeworms begin with the consumption of undercooked beef, pork, or fish containing cysticerci. The cysticerci develop into adult tapeworms that attach to the intestinal wall by suckers on the scolex (see Figure 12.27).

The adult beef tapeworm, *Taenia saginata* (TE-nē-ah sa-jin-AH-tah), seldom causes significant symptoms beyond a vague abdominal discomfort. However, psychological distress can result when a meter or more of detached segments (proglottids) occasionally break loose and unexpectedly slip out of the anus.

Taenia solium (SŌ-lē-um), the pork tapeworm, has a life cycle similar to that of the beef tapeworm. An important difference is that *T. solium* may produce the larval stage in the human host. **Taeniasis** develops when the adult tapeworm infects the human intestine. This is a generally benign, asymptomatic condition, but the host continuously expels eggs of *T. solium*, which contaminate hands and food under poor sanitary conditions. **Cysticercosis**, infection with the larval stage, can develop when humans or swine ingest *T. solium* eggs. These eggs can leave the digestive canal and develop into larvae that lodge in tissue (usually brain or muscles). Cysticerci in muscle tissue are relatively benign and cause few serious symptoms, but the larvae occasionally lodge in an eye, causing **ophthalmic cysticercosis** and affecting vision (Figure 25.21). The most serious, and much more common, disease is **neurocysticercosis**, which arises when the larvae develop in areas of the central nervous system, such as the brain. Neurocysticercosis, which is endemic in Mexico and Central America, has become a fairly common condition in parts of the United States with large Mexican and Central American immigrant populations.

The symptoms often mimic those of epilepsy or a brain tumor. The number of cases reported reflects, in part, the use of computed tomography (CT) scanning or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) in diagnosis. In endemic areas, neurological patients can be screened with serological tests for antibodies to *T. solium*.

The fish tapeworm *Diphyllobothrium latum* (dī-'fil-lō-BAH-thrē-um LĀ-tum) is found in pike, trout, perch, and salmon. The CDC has issued warnings about the risks of fish tapeworm infection from sashimi and sushi (Japanese dishes prepared from raw fish), foods that have become increasingly popular. To relate a vivid example, about 10 days after eating sushi, one person developed symptoms of abdominal distention,

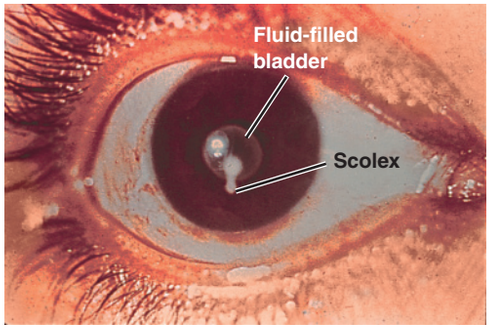


Figure 25.21 Ophthalmic cysticercosis. Some cases of cysticercosis affect the eye.

Q What organ is most likely to be affected by neurocysticercosis?

flatulence, belching, intermittent abdominal cramping, and diarrhea. Eight days later, the patient passed a tapeworm 1.2 m (4 ft) long, identified as a species of *Diphyllobothrium*.

Laboratory diagnosis of tapeworms consists of identifying the tapeworm eggs (Figure 25.22a and b) or segments in feces. Adult tapeworms in the intestinal stage can be eliminated with antiparasitic drugs such as praziquantel and niclosamide. Cases of neurocysticercosis can sometimes be treated with drugs, but these often worsen the situation, and surgery may be required to remove cysticerci.

Hydatid Disease

One of the most dangerous tapeworms is *Echinococcus granulosus* (ē-KĪ-nō-kok′kus gran-ū-LŌ-sus), which is only a few millimeters in length (see Figure 12.28). Dogs shed the tapeworm eggs in their feces, which are ingested by grazing mammals. Once ingested, the eggs hatch and develop into cysts in the internal organs. The disease is most commonly found in people involved in raising sheep.

Once ingested by a human, the eggs of *E. granulosus* hatch, and larvae may migrate to various tissues of the body. The liver and lungs are the most common sites, but the brain and numerous other sites also may be infected. Once in place, the egg develops into a **hydatid cyst** that can grow to a diameter of 1 cm in a few months (Figure 25.23). In some locations, cysts may not be apparent for many years. Some, where they are free to expand, become enormous, containing up to 15 liters (4 gallons) of fluid.

Damage may arise from the size of the cyst in such areas as the brain or the interior of bones. If the cyst ruptures in the host, it can lead to the development of a great many new cysts. Another factor in the pathogenicity of such cysts is that the fluid contains proteinaceous material to which the host becomes sensitized. If the cyst suddenly ruptures, the result can be life-threatening anaphylactic shock.

For diagnosis, several serological tests that detect circulating antibodies are useful in screening. If available, physical imaging methods such as X rays, CT, and MRI are best.

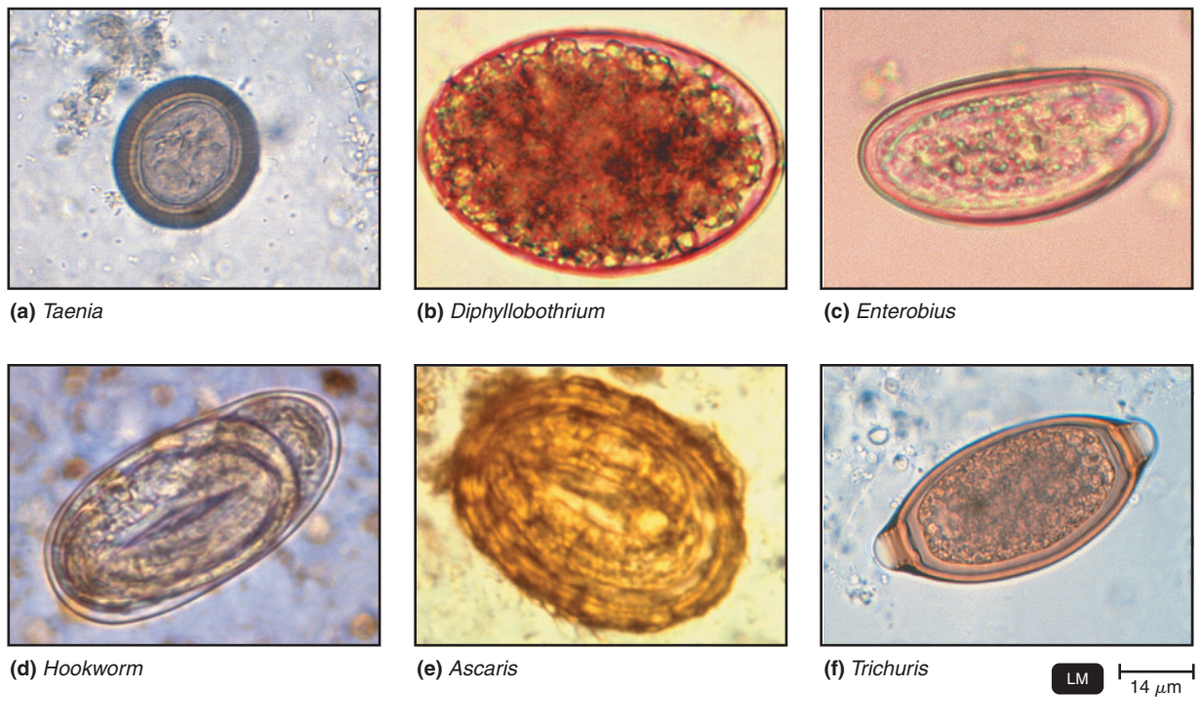


Figure 25.22 Helminth eggs. Helminth infections are diagnosed by microscopic examination of feces for helminth eggs.

Q Make a dichotomous key to identify these eggs.

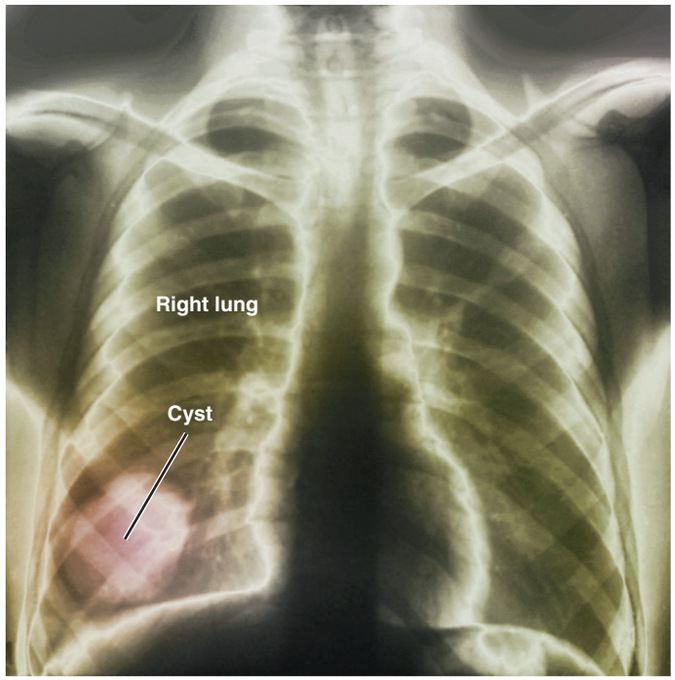


Figure 25.23 A hydatid cyst formed by *Echinococcus granulosus*. A large cyst can be seen in this X-ray image of the lung of an infected individual.

Q How do hydatid cysts affect the body?

Treatment is usually surgical removal, but care must be taken to avoid release of the fluid and the potential spread of infection or anaphylactic shock. If removal isn't feasible, the drug albendazole can kill the cysts.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

25-10 What species of tapeworm is the cause of cysticercosis?

Nematodes

Pinworms

Most of us are familiar with the **pinworm**, *Enterobius vermicularis* (see Figure 12.29). This tiny worm (females are 8–13 mm in length, males 2–5 mm) migrates out of the anus of the human host to lay its eggs, causing local itching. Whole households may become infected. Diagnosis is usually based on finding eggs (Figure 25.22c) around the anus. These can be viewed by pressing transparent cellulose tape, sticky side down, against the skin, transferring the tape to a microscope slide and viewing the slide under a microscope. Such drugs as pyrantel pamoate (often available without a prescription) and mebendazole are usually effective in treatment.

Hookworms

Hookworm infections were once a very common parasitic disease in the southeastern states. In the United States, the species most often seen is *Necator americanus*. Another species, *Ancylostoma duodenale*, is widely distributed around the world.

The hookworm attaches to the intestinal wall and feeds on blood and tissue rather than on partially digested food (Figure 25.24), so the presence of large numbers of worms can lead to anemia and lethargic behavior. Heavy infections can also lead to a bizarre symptom known as *pica*, a craving for peculiar foods, such as laundry starch or soil containing a certain type of clay. Pica is a symptom of iron deficiency anemia, which results from the patient's blood loss.

The life cycle of the hookworm requires human feces to enter the soil, from which it can bore through bare skin in contact with the contaminated soil. The incidence of the disease has thus declined greatly with improved sanitation and the practice of wearing shoes. Hookworm infections are diagnosed by finding parasite eggs in feces (Figure 25.22d) and can be treated effectively with mebendazole.

Ascariasis

One of the most widespread helminthic infections is **ascariasis**, caused by *Ascaris lumbricoides*. Ascariasis is not common in the United States. Worldwide, perhaps 800 million to one billion of the population is infected. Diagnosis is often made when an adult worm emerges from the anus, mouth, or nose (see Chapter 12).

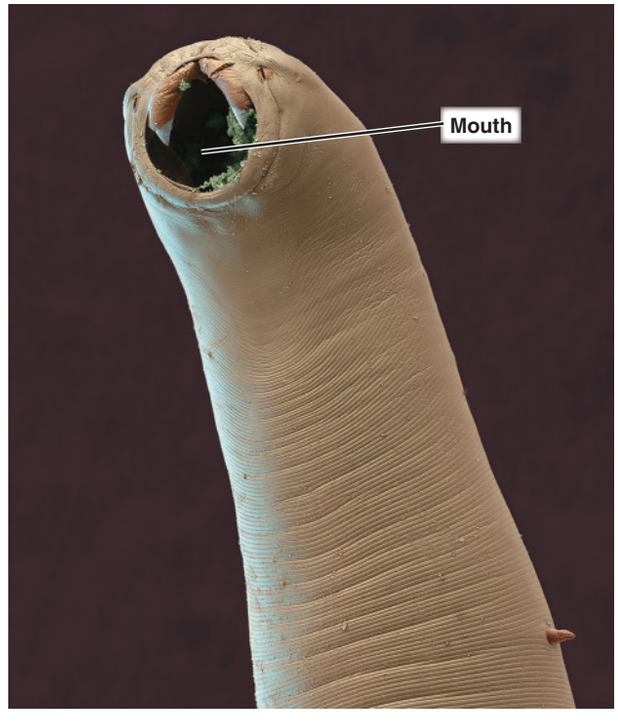


Figure 25.24 *Ancylostoma* hookworm. The mouth of the hookworm is adapted to attachment and feeding on tissue. Males are typically 8–11 mm in length, females 10–13 mm.

Q Why can a hookworm infection lead to anemia?

Figure 25.25 ***Ascaris lumbricoides*, the cause of ascariasis.**
These intestinal worms are large, the female can be 30 cm in length.

Q What are the principal features of the life cycle of *A. lumbricoides*?

These worms can be quite large, up to 30 cm (about 1 ft) in length (Figure 25.25). In the intestinal tract, they live on partially digested food and cause few symptoms.

The worm's life cycle begins when eggs (upwards of 200,000 per day) are shed in a person's feces and, under poor sanitary conditions, are ingested by another person. In the small intestine, the eggs hatch into small wormlike larvae that pass into the bloodstream and then into the lungs. There they migrate into the throat and are swallowed. The larvae develop into egg-laying adults in the intestines.

In the lungs, the tiny larvae may cause pulmonary symptoms. Extremely large numbers may block the intestine, bile duct, or pancreatic duct. The worms do not usually cause severe symptoms, but their presence can be manifested in distressing ways. The most dramatic consequences of infection with *A. lumbricoides* are from the migrations of adult worms. Worms have been known to leave the body of small children through the umbilicus (navel) and to escape through the nostrils of a sleeping person. Microscopic examination of feces for eggs (Figure 25.22e) is used for diagnosis. Once ascariasis is diagnosed, it can be effectively treated with mebendazole or albendazole.

Whipworm (*Trichuris trichiura*)

Whipworm infestations, known as *trichuriasis*, are widespread in tropical areas of the world, especially Asia. The nematode's name, *Trichuris trichiura* (Greek *trichos* = a hair, and *oura* = tail), is derived from its morphology. The worms are 30 to 50 mm in length. The main body is thin and hairlike, but the posterior end abruptly becomes thick, resembling a coiled whip with a handle—therefore, the common name of *whipworm*. In the United States, its distribution and incidence are similar to those of *A. lumbricoides*. Medical technicians microscopically inspecting fecal samples will occasionally encounter the whipworm's distinctive egg (Figure 25.22f). Nationally, eggs are present in a little over 1% of the population. In southeastern states, children pick up infective eggs from contaminated soil; in that area of the United States, the incidence of whipworm in children is about 20%.

When an embryonated egg is ingested, it hatches and enters the intestinal crypts, deep crevices lined with cells that secrete intestinal juice. There the worm grows and slowly begins to tunnel back to the interior intestinal surface. Eventually, the worm positions itself such that the posterior end extends into the intestinal lumen, and the hairlike anterior remains buried in the mucosa. The worm lives there for several years as a tissue parasite, feeding on cell contents and blood. Light infections of fewer than 100 worms usually pass unnoticed, but very heavy infestations may cause abdominal pain and diarrhea. Trichuriasis can also lead to anemia and malnutrition, resulting in significant weight loss and retarded growth. Treatment is with mebendazole or albendazole, although most cases do not require medical attention.

Trichinellosis

Most infections by the small roundworm *Trichinella spiralis*, called **trichinellosis** (formerly called *trichinosis*), are insignificant. The larvae, in encysted form, are located in muscles of the host. In 1970, routine autopsies of human diaphragm muscles showed that about 4% of cadavers tested carried this parasite.

The severity of the disease is generally proportional to the number of larvae ingested. Ingesting raw or undercooked meat (especially bear, pig, cougar, or dog) puts a person at risk of infection (Figure 25.26).

Any ground meat can be contaminated from machinery previously used to grind contaminated meats. Freezing pork for prolonged periods (for example, −23°C for 10 days) kills *T. spiralis*. However, freezing doesn't kill some species found in wild game, such as *T. nativa*.

In the muscles of intermediate hosts such as pigs, the *T. spiralis* larvae are encysted in the form of short worms about 1 mm in length. When a human ingests the flesh of an infected animal, digestive action in the intestine removes the cyst wall. The organism then matures into the adult form. The adult worms spend only about a week in the intestinal mucosa and produce larvae that invade tissue. Eventually, the larvae encyst in muscle (common sites include the diaphragm and eye muscles), where they are barely visible in biopsied specimens.

Symptoms of trichinellosis include fever, swelling around the eyes, and gastrointestinal upset. Small hemorrhages under the fingernails are often observed. Biopsy specimens, as well as a number of serological tests, can be used in diagnosis. A serological ELISA test that detects the parasite in meats has been developed. Treatment consists of administering albendazole or mebendazole to kill intestinal worms and corticosteroids to reduce inflammation.

The overall number of reported cases has decreased because of improved pig-raising and commercial and home freezing. Outbreaks can occur when multiple people share the same

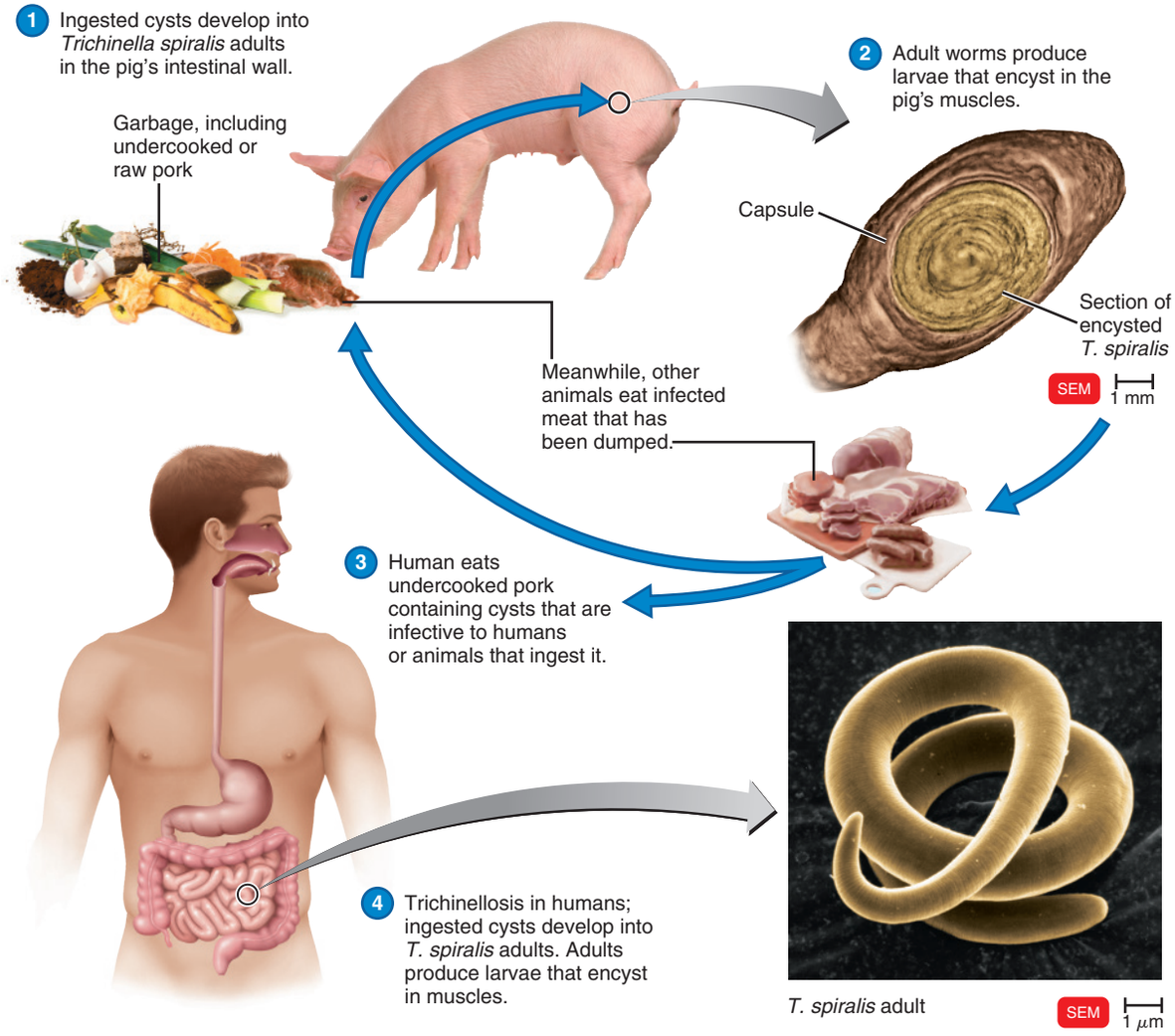


Figure 25.26 The life cycle of *Trichinella spiralis*, the causative agent of trichinellosis.

Q What is the most common vehicle of infection of *T. spiralis*?

wild game. In the past 10 years, the number of cases reported annually in the United States has varied from 10 to 20. Death is extremely rare.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

25-11 Are humans the definitive or intermediate host of *T. spiralis*?

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

Because Anna was in contact with three different animals that have an identical strain of *E. coli*, it is more than likely she became infected from the animals at the petting zoo. Petting-zoo–associated STEC O157 has been linked to direct animal contact (i.e., touching or feeding), indirect contact (e.g., touching sawdust or shavings), and exposure from contaminated clothes, shoes, strollers, or other fomites.

Petting zoo visits are popular leisure activities and also have become an important feature of education for children. Visitors of petting zoos appear to face only a small risk of becoming infected with STEC O157 from the livestock or the farm environment, given the relatively small number of human cases each year in proportion to the large number of visitors. Cattle and other ruminants, such as sheep and goats, are important natural reservoirs of STEC O157. It isn't practical to try to exclude animals carrying STEC O157, because they usually don't show clinical symptoms, and shedding appears to be intermittent and transient. Colonization of cattle with STEC O157 typically lasts 2 months or less. The CDC recommends that animal parks provide adequate handwashing stations and post guidelines telling visitors to wash their hands after leaving animal areas. Anna drinks plenty of fluids and recovers in 5 days.

Study Outline

Introduction (p. 728)

1. Diseases of the digestive system are the second most common illnesses in the United States.
2. Diseases of the digestive system usually result from ingesting microorganisms or their toxins in food and water.
3. The fecal–oral cycle of transmission can be broken by the proper disposal of sewage, the disinfection of drinking water, and proper food preparation and storage.

Structure and Function of the Digestive System

(p. 729)

1. The digestive canal consists of the mouth, pharynx, esophagus, stomach, small intestine, and large intestine.
2. In the digestive canal, with mechanical and chemical help from the accessory structures, large food molecules are broken down into smaller molecules that can be transported by blood or lymph to cells.
3. Feces, the solids remaining after digestion and absorption, are eliminated through the anus.
4. GALT is part of the immune system.

Normal Microbiota of the Digestive System

(pp. 729–730)

1. Large numbers of bacteria colonize the mouth.
2. The stomach and small intestine have few resident microorganisms.
3. Bacteria in the large intestine assist in degrading food and synthesizing vitamins.
4. Up to 40% of fecal mass is microbial cells.

Bacterial Diseases of the Mouth (pp. 731–734)

Dental Caries (Tooth Decay) (pp. 731–733)

1. Dental caries begin when tooth enamel and dentin are eroded and the pulp is exposed to bacterial infection.
2. *S. mutans*, found in the mouth, uses sucrose to form dextran from glucose and lactic acid from fructose.
3. Bacteria adhere to teeth by the sticky dextran, forming dental plaque.
4. Acid produced during carbohydrate fermentation destroys tooth enamel at the site of the plaque.
5. Gram-positive rods and filamentous bacteria can penetrate into dentin and pulp.
6. Carbohydrates such as starch, mannitol, sorbitol, and xylitol are not used by cariogenic bacteria to produce dextran and do not promote tooth decay.

Periodontal Disease (pp. 733–734)

7. Caries of the cementum and gingivitis are caused by streptococci, actinomycetes, and anaerobic gram-negative bacteria.
8. Chronic gum disease (periodontitis) can cause bone destruction and tooth loss; periodontitis is due to an inflammatory response to a variety of bacteria growing on the gums.
9. Acute necrotizing ulcerative gingivitis is often caused by *P. intermedia*.

Bacterial Diseases of the Lower Digestive System

(pp. 734–746)

1. A gastrointestinal infection is caused by the growth of a pathogen in the intestines.
2. Incubation times range from 12 hours to 2 weeks. Symptoms of infection generally include a fever.
3. A bacterial intoxication results from ingesting preformed bacterial toxins.
4. Symptoms appear 1 to 48 hours after ingestion of the toxin. Fever is not usually a symptom of intoxication.
5. Infections and intoxications cause diarrhea, dysentery, or gastroenteritis.
6. These conditions are usually treated with fluid and electrolyte replacement.

Staphylococcal Food Poisoning (Staphylococcal Enterotoxicosis) (p. 735)

7. Staphylococcal food poisoning is caused by the ingestion of an enterotoxin produced in improperly stored foods.
8. *S. aureus* is inoculated into foods during preparation. The bacteria grow and produce enterotoxin in food stored at room temperature.
9. Boiling for 30 minutes is not sufficient to denature the exotoxin.
10. Foods with high osmotic pressure and those not cooked immediately before consumption are most often the source of staphylococcal enterotoxicosis.
11. Laboratory identification of *S. aureus* isolated from foods is used to trace the source of contamination.

Shigellosis (Bacillary Dysentery) (pp. 735–736)

12. Shigellosis is caused by any of four species of *Shigella*.
13. Symptoms include blood and mucus in stools, abdominal cramps, and fever. Infections by *S. dysenteriae* result in ulceration of the intestinal mucosa.

Salmonellosis (*Salmonella* Gastroenteritis) (pp. 736–739)

14. Salmonellosis, or *Salmonella* gastroenteritis, is caused by many *S. enterica* serovars.
15. Symptoms include nausea, abdominal pain, and diarrhea and begin 12 to 36 hours after consuming large numbers of *Salmonella*. Septic shock can occur in infants and in the elderly.
16. Mortality is lower than 1%, and recovery can result in a carrier state.

Typhoid Fever and Paratyphoid Fever (p. 739)

17. *Salmonella* Typhi causes typhoid fever; *Salmonella* Paratyphi causes paratyphoid fever. The bacteria are transmitted by contact with human feces.
18. Fever and malaise occur after a 2-week incubation period. Symptoms last 2 to 3 weeks.
19. *Salmonella* Typhi is harbored in the gallbladder of carriers.
20. Vaccines are available for high-risk people and travelers.

Cholera (pp. 739–740)

21. *V. cholerae* O:1 and O:139 produce an exotoxin that alters the membrane permeability of the intestinal mucosa; the resulting vomiting and diarrhea cause loss of body fluids.
22. The symptoms last for a few days. Untreated cholera has a 50% mortality rate.

Noncholera Vibrios (p. 740)

23. Ingestion of other *V. cholerae* serotypes can result in mild diarrhea.
24. *Vibrio* gastroenteritis can be caused by *V. parahaemolyticus*.
25. These diseases are contracted by eating contaminated crustaceans or contaminated mollusks.

***Escherichia coli* Gastroenteritis** (pp. 740–744)

26. Enterotoxigenic, enteroinvasive, and enteroaggregative strains of *E. coli* cause diarrhea.
27. Enterohemorrhagic *E. coli*, such as *E. coli* O157:H7, produces Shiga-like toxins that cause inflammation and bleeding of the colon, including hemorrhagic colitis and hemolytic uremic syndrome.

Traveler's Diarrhea (p. 744)

28. The most common causes of traveler's diarrhea are enterotoxigenic and enteroaggregative *E. coli*.

Campylobacteriosis (*Campylobacter* Gastroenteritis) (p. 744)

29. *Campylobacter* is a common cause of diarrhea; more than 1 million cases of campylobacteriosis are estimated to occur in the United States annually.
30. *Campylobacter* is transmitted in chicken and unpasteurized milk.

***Helicobacter* Peptic Ulcer Disease** (pp. 744–745)

31. *H. pylori* produces ammonia, which neutralizes stomach acid; the bacteria colonize the stomach mucosa and cause peptic ulcer disease.
32. Bismuth and several antibiotics may be useful in treating peptic ulcer disease.

***Yersinia* Gastroenteritis** (p. 745)

33. *Y. enterocolitica* and *Y. pseudotuberculosis* are transmitted in undercooked pork.
34. *Yersinia* can grow at refrigeration temperatures.

***Clostridium perfringens* Gastroenteritis** (pp. 745–746)

35. *C. perfringens* causes a self-limiting gastroenteritis.
36. Endospores survive heating and germinate when foods (usually meats) are stored at room temperature.
37. Exotoxin produced when the bacteria grow in the intestines is responsible for the symptoms.

***Clostridioides difficile*–Associated Diarrhea** (p. 746)

38. Growth of *C. difficile* following antibiotic therapy can result in mild diarrhea or colitis.
39. The condition is usually associated with health care environments and day-care centers.

***Bacillus cereus* Gastroenteritis** (p. 746)

40. Ingesting food contaminated with the soil saprophyte *B. cereus* can result in diarrhea, nausea, and vomiting.

Viral Diseases of the Digestive System

(pp. 746–754)

Mumps (pp. 746–747)

1. Mumps virus enters and exits the body through the respiratory tract.
2. About 16 to 18 days after exposure, the virus causes inflammation of the parotid glands, fever, and pain during swallowing. About 4 to 7 days later, orchitis may occur.
3. After onset of the symptoms, the virus is found in the blood, saliva, and urine.
4. A measles, mumps, rubella (MMR) vaccine is available.

Hepatitis (pp. 747–752)

5. Inflammation of the liver is called hepatitis. Symptoms include loss of appetite, malaise, fever, and jaundice.
6. Viral causes of hepatitis include hepatitis viruses, *Lymphocryptovirus*, and *Cytomegalovirus*.
7. Hepatitis A virus (HAV) is transmitted via the fecal–oral route.
8. Hepatitis B virus (HBV) is transmitted via blood and semen.
9. Hepatitis C virus (HCV) is transmitted via blood.
10. Hepatitis D virus (HDV) occurs as a superinfection or coinfection with hepatitis B virus.
11. Hepatitis E virus (HEV) is spread by the fecal–oral route.

Viral Gastroenteritis (pp. 752–754)

12. Viral gastroenteritis is most often caused by a *Rotavirus* or *Norovirus*.
13. The incubation period is 2 to 3 days; diarrhea lasts up to 1 week.

Fungal Diseases of the Digestive System (p. 754)

1. Mycotoxins are toxins produced by some fungi.
2. Mycotoxins affect the blood, nervous system, kidneys, or liver.
3. Cereal grains are the crop most often contaminated with ergot, the *Claviceps* mycotoxin.
4. Peanuts are the crop most often contaminated with aflatoxin-producing *A. flavus*.

Protozoan Diseases of the Digestive System

(pp. 754–758)

Giardiasis (p. 756)

1. *G. duodenalis* grows in the intestines of humans and wild animals and is transmitted in contaminated water.
2. Symptoms of giardiasis are malaise, nausea, flatulence, weakness, and abdominal cramps that persist for weeks.

Cryptosporidiosis (pp. 756–757)

3. *Cryptosporidium* spp. cause diarrhea; in immunosuppressed patients, the disease is prolonged for months.
4. The pathogen is transmitted in contaminated water.

Cyclosporiasis (p. 757)

5. *C. cayetanensis* causes diarrhea; the protozoan was first identified in 1993.
6. It is transmitted in contaminated produce.

Amebic Dysentery (Amebiasis) (pp. 757–758)

7. Amebic dysentery is caused by *E. histolytica* growing in the large intestine.
8. The ameba feeds on red blood cells and intestinal tract tissues. Severe infections result in abscesses.

Helminthic Diseases of the Digestive System

(pp. 758–762)

Tapeworms (pp. 758–759)

1. Tapeworms are contracted by the consumption of undercooked beef, pork, or fish containing encysted larvae (cysticerci).
2. The scolex attaches to the intestinal mucosa of humans (the definitive host) and matures into an adult tapeworm.
3. Eggs are shed in the feces and must be ingested by an intermediate host.
4. Neurocysticercosis in humans occurs when the pork tapeworm larvae encyst in humans.

Hydatid Disease (pp. 759–760)

5. Humans infected with the tapeworm *E. granulosus* might have hydatid cysts in their lungs or other organs.
6. Dogs are usually the definitive hosts, and sheep are the intermediate hosts for *E. granulosus*.

Nematodes (pp. 760–762)

7. Humans are the definitive host for pinworms, *E. vermicularis*.
8. Hookworm larvae bore through skin and migrate to the intestine to mature into adults.
9. *A. lumbricoides* adults live in human intestines.
10. Ingested *T. trichiura* eggs hatch in the large intestine. Larvae live attached to the intestinal lining.
11. *T. spiralis* larvae encyst in muscles of humans and other mammals to cause trichinellosis.

Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

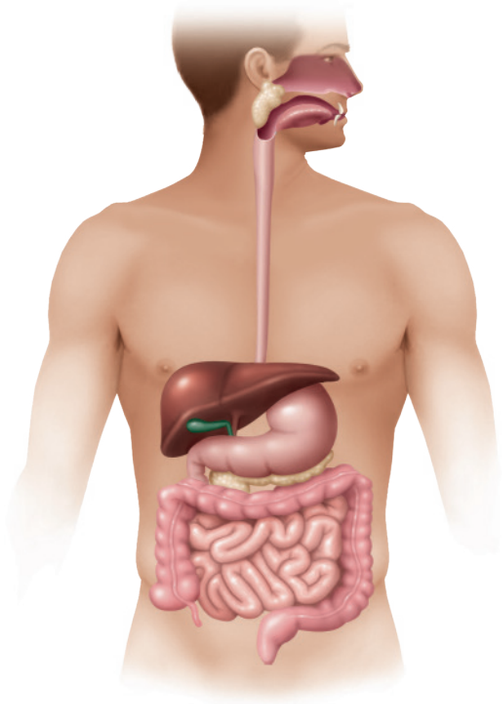
1. Complete the following table:

Disease	Causative Agent	Method of Transmission	Symptoms	Treatment
Aflatoxin poisoning				
Cryptosporidiosis				
Pinworms				
Whipworms				

2. Complete the following table:

Causative Agent	Suspect Foods	Treatment	Prevention
Vibrio parahaemolyticus			
V. cholerae			
E. coli O157			
Campylobacter jejuni			
Yersinia enterocolitica			
Clostridium perfringens			
Bacillus cereus			
Staphylococcus aureus			
Salmonella enterica			
Shigella spp.			

3. DRAW IT Identify the site colonized by the following organisms: *E. granulosus*, *E. vermicularis*, *Giardia*, *H. pylori*, hepatitis B virus, mumps virus, *Rotavirus*, *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, *Streptococcus mutans*, *Trichinella spiralis*, *Trichuris*.



4. *E. coli* bacteria are part of the normal microbiota of the intestines and can cause gastroenteritis. Explain why this one species is both beneficial and harmful.
5. Define *mycotoxin*. Give an example of a mycotoxin.
6. Explain how the following diseases differ and how they are similar: giardiasis, amebic dysentery, cyclosporiasis, and cryptosporidiosis.
7. Differentiate among the following factors of bacterial intoxication and bacterial infection: prerequisite conditions, causative agents, onset, duration of symptoms, and treatment.
8. Complete the following table:

Disease	Causative Agent	Mode of Transmission	Site of Infection	Symptoms	Prevention
Mumps					
Hepatitis A					
Hepatitis B					
Viral gastro-enteritis					

9. Look at life cycle diagrams for human tapeworm and trichinellosis. Indicate stages in the life cycles that could be easily broken to prevent these diseases.
10. NAME IT Cysts of this flagellated organism survive in water; when ingested, the trophozoite grows in the intestine, causing diarrhea.

Multiple Choice

1. All of the following can be transmitted by recreational (i.e., swimming) water sources *except*
   a. amebic dysentery.
   b. cholera.
   c. giardiasis.
   d. hepatitis B.
   e. salmonellosis.
2. A patient with nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea within 5 hours after eating most likely has
   a. shigellosis.
   b. cholera.
   c. *E. coli* gastroenteritis.
   d. salmonellosis.
   e. staphylococcal food poisoning.
3. Isolation of *E. coli* from a stool sample is diagnostic proof that the patient has
   a. cholera.
   b. *E. coli* gastroenteritis.
   c. salmonellosis.
   d. typhoid fever.
   e. none of the above
4. Gastric ulcers are caused by
   a. stomach acid.
   b. *H. pylori*.
   c. spicy food.
   d. acidic food.
   e. stress.
5. Microscopic examination of a patient's fecal culture shows comma-shaped bacteria. These bacteria require 2–4% NaCl to grow. The bacteria probably belong to the genus
   a. *Campylobacter*.
   b. *Escherichia*.
   c. *Salmonella*.
   d. *Shigella*.
   e. *Vibrio*.
6. A cholera epidemic in Peru had all of the following characteristics. Which one *led* to the others?
   a. eating raw fish
   b. sewage contamination of water
   c. catching fish in contaminated water
   d. *Vibrio* in fish intestine
   e. including fish intestines with edibles

Use the following choices to answer questions 7–10:
a. *Campylobacter*
b. *Cryptosporidium*
c. *Escherichia*
d. *Salmonella*
e. *Trichinella*

7. Identification is based on the observation of oocysts in feces.
8. A characteristic disease symptom caused by this microorganism is swelling around the eyes.
9. Microscopic observation of a stool sample reveals gram-negative helical cells.
10. This microbe is frequently transmitted to humans via raw eggs.

Analysis

1. Complete the following table:

Disease	Conditions Necessary for Microbial Growth	Basis for Diagnosis	Prevention
Staphylococcal food poisoning			
Salmonellosis			
C. difficile diarrhea			

2. Match the foods in column A with the microorganism (column B) most likely to contaminate each:

Column A	Column B
_____ a. Beef	1. *Vibrio*
_____ b. Delicatessen meats	2. *Campylobacter*
_____ c. Chicken	3. *E. coli* O157:H7
_____ d. Milk	4. *Listeria*
_____ e. Oysters	5. *Salmonella*
_____ f. Pork	6. *Trichinella*

What disease does each microbe cause? How can these diseases be prevented?

3. Why is a human infection of *Trichinella* considered a dead end for the parasite?

4. Which diseases of the digestive canal can be acquired by swimming in a pool or lake? Why are these diseases not likely to be acquired while swimming in the ocean?

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. Five patients in New York City were seen for diarrhea. Patient A was hospitalized with a 2-day history of diarrhea. Patient B had onset of watery diarrhea on April 22. On April 24, three other people (patients C, D, and E) had onset of diarrhea. All three had vibriocidal antibody titers $\geq$ 640. In Ecuador on April 20, patient B had bought crabs that were boiled and shelled. After sharing the crabmeat with two people (F and G), patient B froze the remaining crab in a bag. Patient A returned to New York on April 21 with the bag of crabmeat in his suitcase. The bag was placed in a freezer overnight and thawed on April 22 in a double-boiler for 20 minutes. The crab was served 2 hours later in a crab salad. The crab was consumed during a 6-hour period by A, C, D, and E. Individuals F and G did not become ill. What is the etiology of this disease? How was it transmitted, and how could it have been prevented?
2. The 2130 students and employees of a public school system developed diarrheal illness on April 2. The cafeteria served chicken that day. On April 1, part of the chicken was placed in water-filled pans and cooked in an oven for 2 hours at a dial setting of 177°C. The oven was turned off, and the chicken was left overnight in the warm oven. The remainder of the chicken was cooked for 2 hours in a steam cooker and then left in the device overnight at the lowest possible setting (43°C). Two serotypes of gram-negative, cytochrome oxidase-negative, lactose-negative rods were isolated from 32 patients. What is the pathogen? How could this outbreak have been prevented?
3. A 31-year-old man became feverish 4 days after arriving at a vacation resort in Idaho. During his stay, he ate at two restaurants that were not associated with the resort. At the resort, he drank soft drinks with ice, used the hot tub, and went fishing. The resort is supplied by a well that was dug 3 years ago. He went to the hospital when he developed vomiting and bloody diarrhea. Gram-negative, lactose-negative bacteria were cultured from his stool. The patient recovered after receiving intravenous fluids. What microorganism most likely caused his symptoms? How is this disease transmitted? What is the most likely source of his infection, and how would you verify the source?
4. Three to 5 days after eating Thanksgiving dinner at a restaurant, 112 people developed fever and gastroenteritis. All the food had been consumed except for five "doggie" bags. Bacterial analysis of the mixed contents of the bags (containing roast turkey, giblet gravy, and mashed potatoes) showed the same bacterium that was isolated from the patients. The gravy had been prepared from giblets of 43 turkeys that had been refrigerated for 3 days prior to preparation. The uncooked giblets were ground in a blender and added to a thickened hot stock mixture. The gravy was not reboiled and was stored at room temperature throughout Thanksgiving Day. What was the source of the illness? What was the most likely etiologic agent? Was this an infection or an intoxication?

26 Microbial Diseases of the Urinary and Genital Systems

The **urinary system** is composed of organs that regulate the chemical composition and volume of the blood and as a result excrete mostly nitrogenous waste products and water. Because it provides an opening to the outside environment, the urinary system is prone to infections from external contacts. The mucosal membranes that line the urinary system are moist and, compared to skin, more supportive of bacterial growth. The *Leptospira interrogans* bacteria shown in the photo infect the kidneys (leptospirosis) but enter through a cut or mucous membranes of the nose or mouth. Leptospirosis is the subject of the Clinical Case in this chapter.

The **genital (reproductive) system** shares several organs with the urinary system. Its function is to produce gametes that propagate the species and, in the female system, to support and nourish the developing embryo and fetus. In the same fashion as the urinary system, it provides openings to the external environment and is therefore prone to infections. This is especially true because intimate sexual contact can promote exchange of microbial pathogens between individuals. It isn't surprising, therefore, that certain pathogens have adapted to this environment and a sexual mode of transmission. As a result, they are often no longer able to survive in more rigorous environments.

▶ ***Leptospira interrogans*** **bacteria are transmitted in urine of infected animals.**

In the Clinic

You are a nurse in a community sexual health clinic. Your first patient today is Kylin, a 20-year-old college student who dropped in for her first pelvic exam. She has had two sexual partners in the past year. She has not noticed vaginal discharge, sores, or painful urination. During her pelvic examination, you observe that her cervix appears inflamed and that a watery discharge is present. **What are the most likely microbial infections? What laboratory tests would confirm a diagnosis?**

Hint: Read about bacterial diseases of the genital systems ahead.

Structure and Function of the Urinary System

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

26-1 List the antimicrobial features of the urinary system.

The **urinary system** consists of two *kidneys*, two *ureters*, a single *urinary bladder*, and a single *urethra* (Figure 26.1). Certain wastes, collectively called *urine*, are removed from the blood as it circulates through the kidneys. The urine passes through the ureters into the urinary bladder, where it is stored prior to elimination from the body through the urethra. The female urethra conveys only urine to the exterior. The male urethra is a common tube for both urine and seminal fluid.

Where the ureters enter the urinary bladder, physiological valves prevent the backflow of urine to the kidneys. This mechanism helps shield the kidneys from lower urinary tract infections. In addition, the urea in urine has some antimicrobial properties. The flushing action of urine during urination also tends to remove potentially infectious microbes.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

26-1 How can the flow of urine help prevent infection?

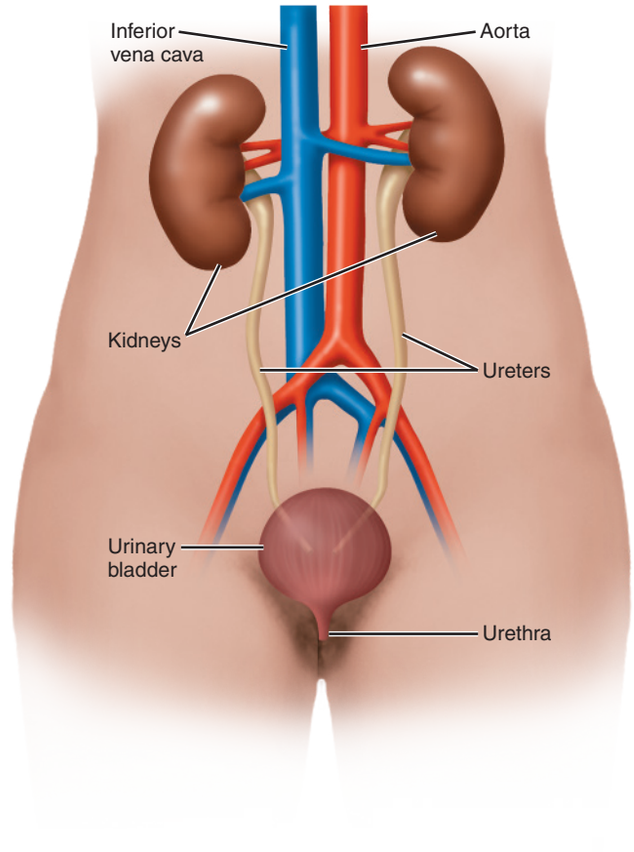


Figure 26.1 Organs of the human urinary system; shown here is the female urinary system.

Q What features of the urinary system help prevent colonization by microbes?

Structure and Function of the Genital Systems

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

26-2 Identify the portals of entry for microbes into the female and male genital systems.

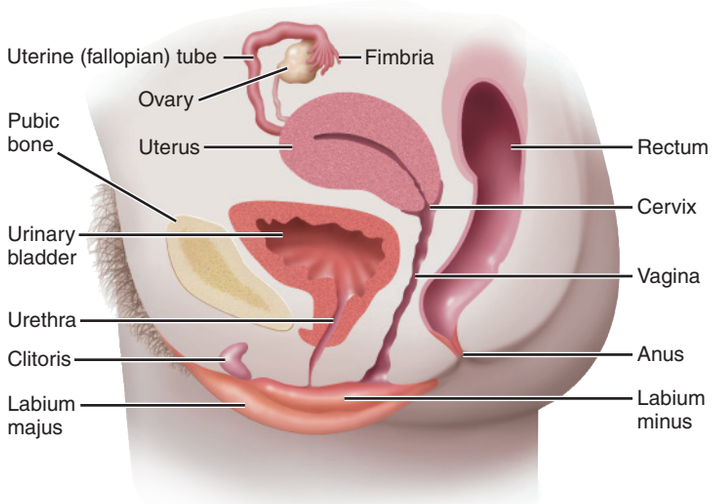
The **female genital system** consists of two *ovaries*, two *uterine (fallopian) tubes*, the *uterus*, including the *cervix*, the *vagina*, and *external genitals* (Figure 26.2). The ovaries produce female sex hormones and ova (eggs). When an ovum is released during the process of ovulation, it enters a uterine tube, where fertilization may occur if viable sperm are present. The fertilized ovum (zygote) descends the tube and enters the uterus. It implants in the inner wall of the uterus and remains there while it develops into an embryo and, later, a fetus. The external genitals (*vulva*) include the clitoris, labia, and glands that produce a lubricating secretion during copulation.

The **male genital system** consists of two *testes*, a system of *ducts*, *accessory glands*, and the *penis* (Figure 26.3). The testes produce male sex hormones and sperm. To exit the body, sperm cells pass through a series of ducts: the epididymis, ductus (vas) deferens, ejaculatory duct, and urethra.

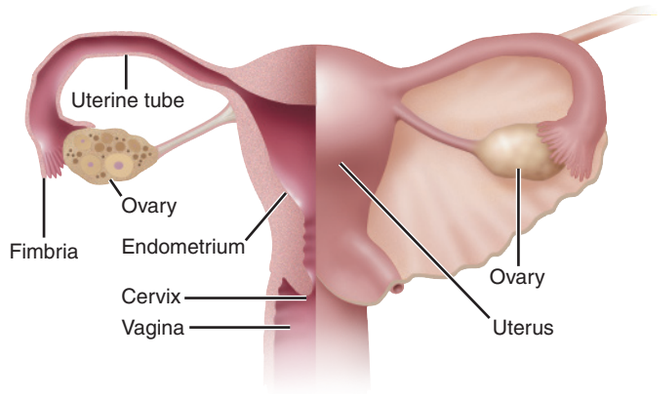
CLINICAL CASE Swimming Upstream

Maricel Quimuyog, a 25-year-old professional freestyle kayaker, is having difficulties training for her next kayaking event. Although Maricel normally enjoys her outdoor activities and is in good physical shape, she hasn't been feeling well. Thinking at first her headache, fever, and muscle pain are simply the flu, Maricel tries to take it easy. But when her skin and the whites of her eyes start to look jaundiced and she has trouble catching her breath, Maricel becomes concerned and goes to her physician. On physical examination, Maricel is alert and her lungs are clear. Her physician sends blood and urine samples to a local laboratory for blood counts (see the Big Picture in Chapter 16) and cultures; the blood count shows 9500 leukocytes/mm^3 (88% neutrophils, 10% lymphocytes, and 2% monocytes). Maricel's 24-hour urine output, however, is nearly double the normal amount. Maricel's physician is concerned because of the dehydration and loss of sodium and magnesium in the urine.

What is causing Maricel's symptoms? Read on to find out.



(a) Side view section of female pelvis showing genital organs



(b) Front view of female genital organs, with the uterine tube and ovary to the left in the sectioned drawing. Movement of the fimbriae causes fluid to flow, propelling the egg into the uterine tube.

Figure 26.2 Female reproductive organs.

Q Where are normal microbiota found in the female genital system?

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

26-2 Look at Figure 26.2. If a microbe enters the female genital system (the uterus, etc.), does it also necessarily enter the urinary bladder, causing cystitis?

Normal Microbiota of the Urinary and Genital Systems

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

26-3 Describe the normal microbiota of the upper urinary tract, the male urethra, and the female urethra and vagina.

Normal urine is not sterile; in fact, the normal microbiota of the urinary tract is currently being studied (see the **Exploring the Microbiome** box). Urine may become contaminated with microbiota of the skin near the end of its passage through the urethra. Therefore, urine collected directly from the urinary bladder has fewer microbial contaminants than voided urine.

The predominant bacteria in the vagina are the lactobacilli. These bacteria produce lactic acid, which maintains the acidic pH (3.8 to 4.5) of the vagina, inhibiting the growth of most other microbes. Most vaginal lactobacilli produce hydrogen peroxide, which also inhibits growth of other bacteria. Estrogens (sex hormones) promote the growth of lactobacilli by enhancing the production of glycogen by vaginal epithelial cells. The glycogen quickly breaks down into glucose, which the lactobacilli metabolize into lactic acid.

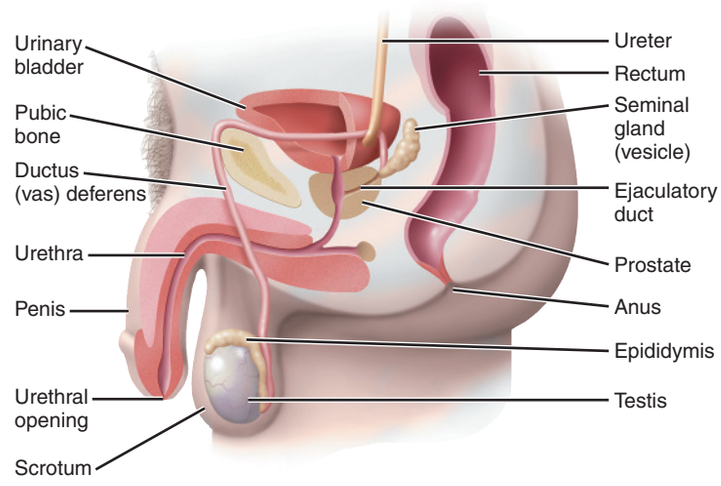
Other bacteria, such as streptococci, various anaerobes, and some gram-negatives, are also found in the vagina. Research indicates that the yeastlike fungus *Candida albicans* is part of the normal microbiota of 10–25% of vaginas, including in many people who are asymptomatic.

Pregnancy and menopause are often associated with higher rates of urinary tract infections. The reason is that estrogen levels are lower, resulting in lower populations of lactobacilli and therefore less vaginal acidity.

Semen picks up bacteria from the urethra; however, the recently discovered microbiome of the seminal gland (vesicle), including *Propionibacterium*, *Prevotella*, and *Lactobacillus*, may affect sperm production. In one study, increased *Prevotella* was associated with abnormal sperm motility, whereas normal sperm were associated with increased *Lactobacillus*.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

26-3 What is the association between estrogens and the microbiota of the vagina?



Side view section of male pelvis

Figure 26.3 Male genital and urinary organs.

Q What factors protect the male urinary and genital systems from infection?

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

Resident Microbes of the Urinary System

Contrary to common belief, urine is not sterile. This idea probably arose before clean water and antibiotics were widely available, when urine was used to clean wounds. The notion was then reinforced by the fact that clinical cultures of urine used to identify pathogens favor finding fast-growing bacteria such as *Escherichia coli*. Standard clinical techniques are generally not designed to grow the slow-growing or fastidious bacteria that may be present in urine.

Using anaerobic culture techniques and genetic analysis, researchers are now studying the urinary microbiome in earnest. Urine samples are collected midstream to reduce contamination by skin microbiota. So far, 35 different genera have been identified in the urinary tract. These bacteria differ from those normally found on the skin and in the intestine.

The most prevalent genera in urine are *Lactobacillus, Corynebacterium, Streptococcus, Actinomyces*, and *Staphylococcus*. Urine from females contains greater species diversity, with more Actinobacteria and Bacteroidetes than found in male urine.

Urine from patients with urgency incontinence (overactive bladder) has lower bacterial diversity than urine from healthy volunteers. One study found an increase in *Gardnerella* and a decrease in *Lactobacillus* species in patients with overactive bladder versus people without the disorder. The urinary bladder microbiota may play some role in the normal coordination of neurotransmitters, nerves, and urinary bladder muscles that is disrupted in overactive bladder; however, it's uncertain whether loss of bacterial diversity might be a cause or a result of the condition. Still, research is ongoing and may one day lead to new treatments.

Study of urine microbiota is still in its early days.

Diseases of the Urinary System

The urinary system normally contains few microbes, but it's subject to opportunistic infections that can be quite troublesome. Almost all such infections are bacterial, although occasional infections by schistosome parasites, protozoa, and fungi occur. In addition, as we will see in this chapter, sexually transmitted infections often affect the urinary system as well as the genital systems.

Bacterial Diseases of the Urinary System

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

26-4 Describe the modes of transmission for urinary system infections.

26-5 List the microorganisms that cause cystitis, pyelonephritis, and leptospirosis, and name the predisposing factors for these diseases.

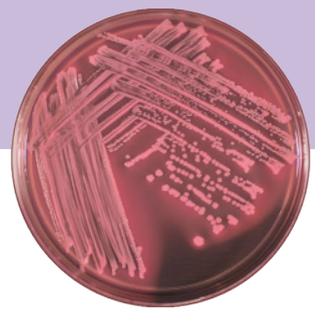
Urinary system infections are most frequently initiated by an inflammation of the urethra, or *urethritis*. Infection of the urinary bladder is called *cystitis*, and infection of the ureters is *ureteritis*. The most significant danger from lower urinary tract infections is that they may move up the ureters and affect the kidneys, causing *pyelonephritis*. Occasionally the kidneys are affected by systemic bacterial diseases, such as *leptospirosis*. The pathogens causing these diseases are found in excreted urine.

Bacterial infections of the urinary system are usually caused by microbes that enter the system from external sources. In the United States, over 7 million urinary tract infections occur each year. About 100,000 cases are healthcare-associated, and 75% of these are associated with urinary catheters. Because of the proximity of the anus to the urinary opening, intestinal bacteria predominate in urinary tract infections. Most infections of the urinary tract are caused by *E. coli*. Infections by *Pseudomonas*, because of their natural resistance to antibiotics, are especially troublesome.

Diseases of the urinary system are summarized in **Diseases in Focus 26.1**.

DISEASES IN FOCUS 26.1 Bacterial Diseases of the Urinary System

A 20-year-old woman feels a stinging sensation when urinating and feels an urgent need to urinate, even if very little urine is excreted. Lactose-fermenting, gram-negative rods are cultured from her urine (see the photo). Use the following table to identify infections that could cause these symptoms.



MacConkey agar culture from the patient's urine. This medium is designed to selectively grow gram-negative bacteria and differentiate them by their ability to ferment lactose.

Disease	Pathogen	Signs and Symptoms	Diagnosis	Treatment
Cystitis (urinary bladder infection)	*E. coli*, *Staphylococcus saprophyticus*	Difficulty or pain in urination	$>10^3$ CFU/ml of one species and + LE test	Nitrofurantoin
Pyelonephritis (kidney infection)	Primarily *E. coli*	Fever; back or flank pain	$>10^5$ CFU/ml of one species and + LE test	Cephalosporin
Leptospirosis (kidney infection)	*L. interrogans*	Headaches, muscular aches, fever; kidney failure a possible complication	Serological test	Doxycycline

Cystitis

Cystitis is a common inflammation of the urinary bladder in females. Symptoms often include *dysuria* (difficult, painful, urgent urination) and *pyuria* (pus in the urine).

The female urethra is less than 2 inches long, and microorganisms traverse it readily. It's also closer than the male urethra to the anal opening and its contaminating intestinal bacteria. These considerations are reflected in the fact that the rate of urinary tract infections in women is eight times that of men. In either gender, most cases are due to infection by *E. coli*, which can be identified by cultivation on differential media such as MacConkey's agar. Another frequent bacterial cause is the coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus saprophyticus* (sa-prō-FI-ti-kus).

As a general rule, a urine sample with more than 100 colony-forming units (CFU) per milliliter of a single species indicates cystitis. The diagnosis should also include a positive urine test for *leukocyte esterase* (LE), an enzyme produced by neutrophils—which indicates an active infection. Nitrofurantoin usually clears cases of cystitis quickly. A fluoroquinolone is often successful if drug resistance is encountered.

Pyelonephritis

In 25% of untreated cases, cystitis may progress to **pyelonephritis**, an inflammation of one or both kidneys. Symptoms are fever and flank or back pain. In females, it's often a complication of lower urinary tract infections. The causative agent in about 75% of the cases is *E. coli*. Pyelonephritis generally results in bacteremia; blood cultures and a Gram stain of the urine for bacteria are useful for diagnosis. A urine sample of more than 100,000 CFUs/ml of a single species indicates pyelonephritis. If pyelonephritis becomes chronic, scar tissue forms in the kidneys and severely impairs their function. Because pyelonephritis is a potentially life-threatening condition, treatment usually begins with intravenous, extended-term administration of a broad-spectrum antibiotic, such as a second- or third-generation cephalosporin.

Leptospirosis

Leptospirosis is primarily a disease of domestic or wild animals, but it can be passed to humans and sometimes causes severe kidney or liver disease. The causative agent is the spirochete *L. interrogans* (in-TER-ah-ganz′), shown in **Figure 26.4**. *Leptospira* has a characteristic shape: an exceedingly fine (*lepto-*)

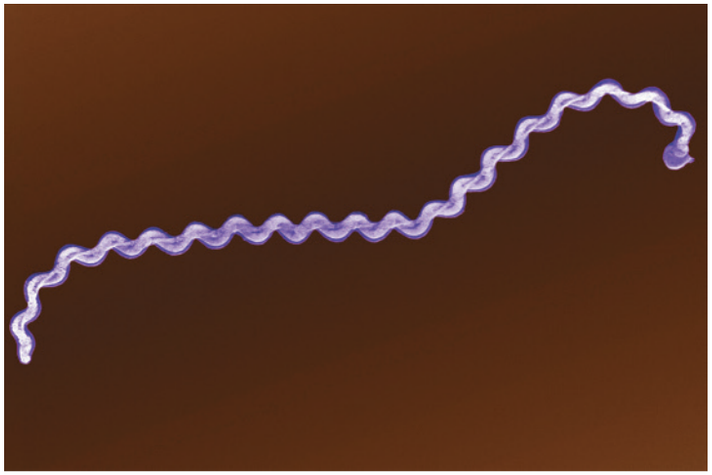


Figure 26.4 ***Leptospira interrogans*, the cause of leptospirosis.**

Q On what basis is *L. interrogans* named?

spiral (*-spira*), only about 0.1 μm in diameter, wound so tightly that it is barely discernible under a darkfield microscope. Like other spirochetes, *L. interrogans* (so named because the hooked ends suggest a question mark) stains poorly and is difficult to see under a normal light microscope. It's an obligate aerobe that can be grown in a variety of artificial media supplemented with rabbit serum.

Animals infected with the spirochete shed the bacteria in their urine for extended periods. In rats, the bacteria inhabit renal tubules, an immunologically privileged site, where they continue to reproduce and are shed, copiously, in urine for months. Worldwide, leptospirosis is probably the most common zoonosis; it's endemic in temperate and tropical environments. Outbreaks occur after heavy rainfall and flooding in endemic areas. Most of the 100 to 150 cases in the United States occur in Puerto Rico and Hawaii. Humans become infected by contact with urine-contaminated water from freshwater lakes or streams, soil, or sometimes with animal tissue. People whose occupations expose them to animals or animal products are most at risk. Infections have also been associated with recreational water sports. Usually the pathogen enters through minor abrasions in the skin or mucous membranes. When ingested, it enters through the mucosa of the mouth. In the United States, dogs and rats are the most common sources. Domestic dogs have a sizable rate of infection; even when immunized, they may continue to shed leptospira.

After an incubation period of 1 to 2 weeks, headaches, muscular aches, chills, and fever abruptly appear. Several days later, the acute symptoms disappear, and the temperature returns to normal. A few days later, however, a second episode of fever may occur. Leptospires are observed within nonphagocytic cells of infected patients. It's uncertain how the pathogens enter host cells, but they use this as a mechanism to spread to target organs and evade the immune system. Because of this, the immune response is delayed long enough (1 or 2 weeks) for the population in the blood and tissues to reach enormous numbers.

In a small number of cases the kidneys and liver become seriously infected (*Weil's disease*); kidney failure is the most common cause of death. An emerging form of leptospirosis, *pulmonary hemorrhagic syndrome*, has appeared globally. Affecting the lungs with massive bleeding, it has a fatality rate of more than 50%. Recovery results in a solid immunity, but only to the particular serovar involved. There are usually about 50 cases of Weil's disease reported each year in the United States, but because the clinical symptoms are not distinctive, many cases are probably never diagnosed.

Most cases of leptospirosis are diagnosed by a serological test that is complicated and usually done by central laboratories. However, a number of rapid serological tests are available for a preliminary diagnosis. Also, a diagnosis can be made by sampling blood, urine, or other fluids for the organism or its DNA. Doxycycline (a tetracycline) is the recommended antibiotic for treatment; however, administration of antibiotics in later stages is often unsatisfactory. That immune reactions are responsible for pathogenesis in later stages may be an explanation.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **26-4** Why is urethritis, an infection of the urethra, frequently preliminary to further infections of the urinary tract?
- **26-5** Why is *E. coli* the most common cause of cystitis, especially in female patients?

CLINICAL CASE

Maricel's physician receives the results of her blood and urine cultures. The serological tests for STIs and HIV are negative. In response to her physician's questions about possible travel exposure, Maricel reports that she had been on a 2-week kayaking trip in Costa Rica the previous month. Maricel had enjoyed the excursion because it included kayaking in streams near isolated rural villages, which she then visited.

What should Maricel's physician test for next?

Diseases of the Genital Systems

Microbes causing infections of the genital systems are usually very sensitive to environmental stresses and require intimate contact for transmission.

Most diseases of the genital systems transmitted by sexual activity have been called **sexually transmitted diseases (STDs)**. In recent years, this term has been replaced with **sexually transmitted infections (STIs)**. The reason is that the concept of "disease" implies obvious signs and symptoms. Because many persons infected by the more common sexually transmitted pathogens don't have apparent signs or symptoms, the term *STI* often seems more appropriate and is used in this book. More than 30 bacterial, viral, or parasitic infections have been identified as sexually transmitted. In the United States, over 60 million new cases of STIs are estimated to occur annually, half of which occur in 15- to 24-year-olds. Most bacterial STIs can be prevented by the use of condoms. For information on new diagnostic options, see the **Big Picture** on STI home kits.

Bacterial Diseases of the Genital Systems

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

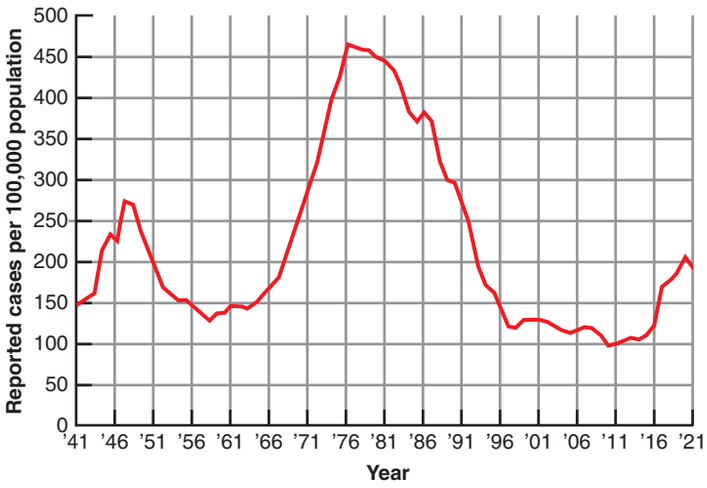
26-6 List the causative agents, signs and symptoms, methods of diagnosis, and treatments for gonorrhea, nongonococcal urethritis (NGU), pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), syphilis, lympho-granuloma venereum (LGV), chancroid, and bacterial vaginosis.

Bacteria are the causative agents in about 20% of all STIs. Most bacterial STIs will not cause harm; however, some have the potential to cause serious health problems if not diagnosed and treated early. Bacterial STIs can be successfully treated with antibiotics.

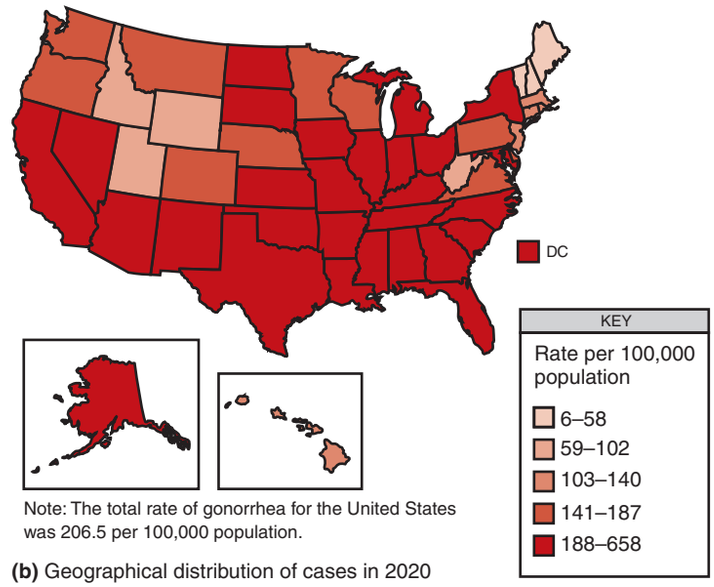
Gonorrhea

One of the most common reportable, or notifiable, communicable diseases in the United States is **gonorrhea**, an STI caused by the gram-negative, capnophilic diplococcus *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. An ancient disease, gonorrhea was described and given its present name by the Greek physician Galen in 150 c.e. (*gon* = semen + *rhea* = flow; a flow of semen—apparently, he confused pus with semen). The incidence of gonorrhea in the United States has increased from a low of 98.1 cases per 100,000 people in 2009 to 206.5 cases per 100,000 in 2020 (Figure 26.5a). The true number of cases is probably two or three times those reported (Figure 26.5b). More than 60% of patients with gonorrhea are ages 15 to 24.

Increased sexual activity with multiple partners, and the fact that in women the disease may go unrecognized, contributed



(a) Incidence of gonorrhea in the United States, 1941–2021



(b) Geographical distribution of cases in 2020

Figure 26.5 The U.S. incidence and distribution of gonorrhea.

Source: CDC, 2022.

Q How do gonococci attach to mucosal epithelial cells?

considerably to the increased incidence of gonorrhea and other STIs during the 1960s and 1970s (see Figure 26.5a). The widespread use of oral contraceptives also contributed to the increase, because they typically replaced condoms and spermicides, which help prevent disease transmission.

Pathophysiology of Gonorrhea

To infect, the gonococcus must attach to the mucosal cells of the epithelial wall by means of fimbriae. The pathogen invades the spaces separating columnar epithelial cells, which are found in the oral-pharyngeal area, the eyes, rectum, urethra, opening of the cervix, and the external genitals of prepubertal females. The invasion sets up an inflammation and, when leukocytes move into the inflamed area, the characteristic pus forms. In men, a single unprotected exposure results in infection with gonorrhea 20–35% of the time. Women become infected 60–90% of the time from a single exposure.

Men become aware of a gonorrheal infection by painful urination and a discharge of pus-containing material from the urethra (Figure 26.6). About 80% of infected men show these obvious symptoms after an incubation period of only a few days; most others show symptoms in less than a week. In the days before antibiotic therapy, symptoms persisted for weeks. A common complication is urethritis, although this is more likely to be the result of coinfection with *Chlamydia*, which will be discussed shortly. An uncommon complication is *epididymitis*, an infection of the epididymis. Usually only unilateral, this is a painful condition resulting from the infection ascending along the urethra and the ductus deferens (see Figure 26.3).

In women, the disease is more insidious. Only the cervix, which contains columnar epithelial cells, is infected. The vaginal walls are composed of stratified squamous epithelial cells, which are not colonized. Very few women are aware of the infection. Later in the course of the disease, there might be abdominal pain from complications such as pelvic inflammatory disease (discussed later).

Figure 26.6 **Pus-containing discharge from the urethra of a man with an acute case of gonorrhea.**

Q What causes pus formation in gonorrhea?

Untreated gonorrhea can disseminate and become a serious, systemic infection. Complications of gonorrhea can involve the joints, heart (*gonorrheal endocarditis*), meninges (*gonorrheal meningitis*), eyes, pharynx, or other parts of the body. *Gonorrheal arthritis*, which is caused by the growth of the gonococcus in fluids in joints, occurs in about 1% of gonorrhea cases. Joints commonly affected include the wrist, knee, and ankle.

If infection occurs during pregnancy, the eyes of the infant can become infected during passage through the birth canal. This condition, **ophthalmia neonatorum**, can result in blindness. Because of the seriousness of this condition and the difficulty of being sure the mother is free of gonorrhea, antibiotic drops, usually erythromycin, are placed in the eyes of all newborn infants. If the mother is known to be infected, an intramuscular injection of antibiotic is also administered to the infant. Some sort of prophylaxis is required by law in most states. Gonorrheal infections can also be transferred by hand contact from infected sites to the eyes of adults.

Gonorrheal infections can be acquired at any point of sexual contact; pharyngeal and anal gonorrhea are not uncommon. The symptoms of **pharyngeal gonorrhea** often resemble those of the usual septic sore throat. **Anal gonorrhea** can be painful and accompanied by discharges of pus. In most cases, however, the symptoms are limited to itching.

There is no effective adaptive immunity to gonorrhea. The conventional explanation is that the gonococcus exhibits extraordinary antigenic variability—which is true. Lately, though, an alternative hypothesis has appeared that provides an additional mechanism. The gonococcus has certain proteins, Opa proteins (see Chapter 15), that are essential for it to bind to the cells lining the host's urinary and genital tracts. Recent research has shown that an Opa protein variant binds to a certain receptor (CD66) on $CD4^+$ T cells that is needed for activation and proliferation of the cells. This inhibits the development of an immunological memory response against the gonococcus. Almost all clinical isolates of the gonococcus have been found to carry this Opa protein variant. This suppression of immunity may also explain why people with gonorrhea are more susceptible to other STIs, including HIV.

Diagnosis of Gonorrhea

Gonorrhea in men is diagnosed by finding gonococci in a stained smear of pus from the urethra. The typical gram-negative diplococci within the phagocytic leukocytes are readily identified (Figure 26.7). It's uncertain whether these intracellular bacteria are in the process of being killed or whether they survive indefinitely. Probably at least a fraction of the bacterial population remains viable. Gram staining of exudates isn't as reliable with women. Usually, a culture is taken from within the cervix and grown on special media. Cultivation of the nutritionally fastidious bacterium requires an atmosphere enriched in carbon dioxide. The gonococcus is very sensitive

STI Home Test Kits

Millions of STI cases go undiagnosed every year. Home test kits can speed diagnosis and treatment, allowing individuals who might otherwise avoid the health clinic to privately begin the screening process.

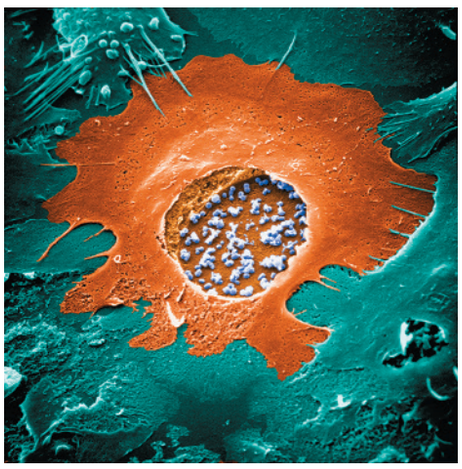
At-Home Test for Sexually Transmitted Infections

Sexually transmitted infections (STIs) are a major public health concern throughout the world and are at record-high numbers in the United States. Over 2 million new cases of STIs were reported in 2020, but the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) estimates that many more undiagnosed infections occur annually.

In the hope of discovering and treating more STIs, researchers at Johns Hopkins School of Medicine created "I Want the Kit," a self-administered screening currently available to residents of Maryland, Oklahoma, Arizona, and Alaska.

Users collect samples at home and mail them to a lab, where nucleic acid amplification testing (NAAT) screens for chlamydial infection, gonorrhea, and trichomoniasis. The user can obtain results in 1–2 weeks using a password over the phone or online. People with positive tests receive referrals to nearby clinics for counseling and treatment options. There is also an option on the website allowing the user to anonymously notify sexual partners that they may also be infected. Planned Parenthood has similar kits to test for *Chlamydia* and gonorrhea available to residents of California, Minnesota, Idaho, and Washington.

A recent study indicated that home or pharmacy testing is feasible. At present, the FDA has approved at-home test kits only for hepatitis C, HIV, and UTIs.



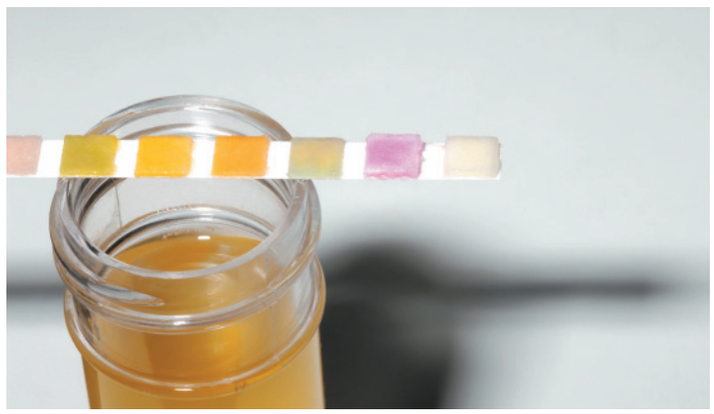
***Chlamydia* (blue) replicating inside vesicle within a cell**

Female test kit contents for "I Want the Kit"

Other Home Test Options for HIV and Urinary Tract Infections

In 2012, the FDA approved OraQuick®, an HIV oral testing kit. The OraQuick strip is similar to an indirect ELISA test. Priced at about $40 per test, it uses an HIV antigen and enzyme indicator to test the oral mucosa for antibodies against HIV. Clinical studies showed this test produces about one false positive in every 5000 individuals who are not infected, and one false negative in every 12 individuals who are.

At-home testing for UTIs is also available. A dipstick is held in the urine stream, and the test strip then indicates presence of nitrites, which are usually produced by bacteria that cause UTIs. These tests also look for presence of leukocytes, which indicate an immune response to an infection.



Uritest, a home test for urinary tract infection

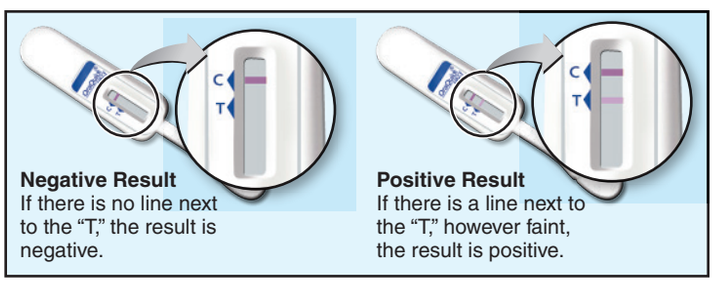
Are At-Home Test Kits a Good Public Health Strategy?

Pros of At-Home Testing

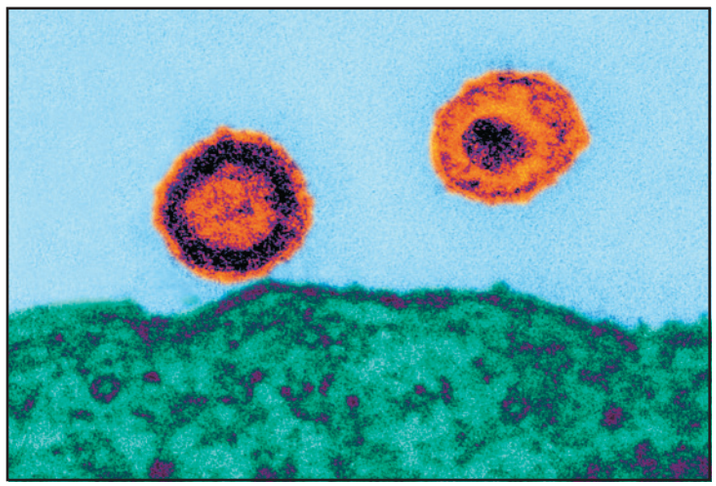
- **More Cases Diagnosed** In a 5-year period, the "I Want the Kit" initiative detected more chlamydial infections than traditional clinics did in the areas where it was available. Its creators estimate that this method of testing would save about $41,000 in direct medical costs per 10,000 women, when compared with clinic-based screening.
- **Better Access for Patients** Home testing kits can also be very helpful for people with limited transportation or for residents of rural areas who live far from medical facilities. Most home test kits are available at drugstores or can be ordered online or over the phone.
- **Quicker Treatment** Providing a screening method that works for people who are reluctant or unable to visit a clinic means more diagnoses and quicker treatment. It can also lead to fewer complications and better prognosis. For example, a positive result from a UTI home test kit may prompt health care providers to prescribe antibiotics without requiring patients to first provide a urine sample for culturing. In this case, faster treatment results in less discomfort and downtime for patients and could prevent a UTI from progressing to a kidney infection.

Some Cons of At-Home Testing

- **Cost** Although home test kits reduce public health costs, they increase consumer costs because they are typically not covered by health insurance plans.
- **Privacy Concerns** Allowing access to test information through a hotline or website raises concerns that results may fall into the hands of someone other than the patient. People using home kits should be mindful of keeping PINs or other test-related paperwork away from prying eyes.
- **Concerns about Accuracy** Unfortunately, not every home test kit sold online today is necessarily effective. Users should seek kits that are FDA approved. And regardless of test results, a person with persistent or worsening symptoms should always see a health care provider.



A positive OraQuick® HIV test contains a synthetic HIV gp-41 protein. If the sample contains antibodies against gp-41, an enzyme reaction causes the T strip to change color.



HIVs (human immunodeficiency viruses) infecting a cell

Home screening tests provide an alternative for people without easy access to clinics.

KEY CONCEPTS

- Certain gram-negative organisms convert nitrates to nitrites, so the presence of nitrites in urine can indicate urinary tract infection. **(See Chapter 5, "Anaerobic Respiration.")**
- Nucleic acid amplification is used to screen for chlamydiasis, gonorrhea, and trichomoniasis infections. **(See Chapter 9, "Polymerase Chain Reaction.")**
- Some home tests for HIV such as OraQuick, are similar to indirect ELISA tests. **(See Chapter 18, "Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbent Assay," and Figures 18.13 and 18.14.)**

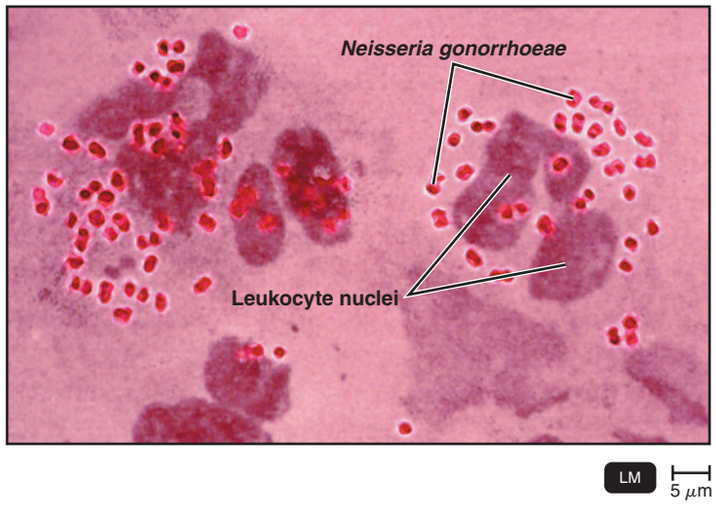


Figure 26.7 A smear of pus from a patient with gonorrhea.
The *N. gonorrhoeae* bacteria are contained within phagocytic leukocytes. These gram-negative bacteria are visible here as pairs of cocci. The large, stained bodies are the nuclei of the leukocytes.

Q How is gonorrhea diagnosed?

to adverse environmental influences (desiccation and temperature) and survives poorly outside the body. It even requires special transporting media to keep it viable for short intervals before the cultivation is under way. Nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) of urine, (male) urethral, or vaginal samples can be used to diagnose gonorrhea. However, bacterial cultures are necessary to determine antibiotic susceptibility of the bacteria.

Treatment of Gonorrhea

The guidelines for treating gonorrhea require constant revision as resistance appears (see the **Clinical Focus** box). Because of increasing multi-drug resistance, the only recommended treatment for all forms of gonorrhea (cervical, urethral, rectal, pharyngeal) is 500 mg of ceftriaxone. Unless a coinfection by *Chlamydia trachomatis* (see the discussion of nongonococcal urethritis, following) can be ruled out, the patient should also be treated for this organism. It's also standard practice to treat sex partners of patients to decrease the risk of reinfection and to decrease the incidence of STIs in general.

Nongonococcal Urethritis (NGU)

Nongonococcal urethritis (NGU), also known as **nonspecific urethritis (NSU)**, refers to any inflammation of the urethra not caused by *N. gonorrhoeae*. Symptoms include painful urination and a watery discharge.

Chlamydia trachomatis

The most common pathogen associated with NGU is *Chlamydia trachomatis* (see Figure 11.15). More than 1.5 million cases are reported annually in the United States. Many people with gonorrhea are coinfected with *C. trachomatis*, which infects the same columnar epithelial cells as the gonococcus. *C. trachomatis* is also responsible for the STI lymphogranuloma venereum and trachoma. Of special importance is the fact that twice as many cases are reported in women as in men. In women, it is responsible for many cases of pelvic inflammatory disease, plus eye infections and pneumonia in infants born to infected mothers. Untreated genital chlamydial infections are also associated with an increased risk of cervical cancer. *Chlamydia*-infected cells may be more susceptible to infection with human papillomavirus.

Because the symptoms are often mild in men and because women are usually asymptomatic, many cases of NGU go untreated. Although complications are not common, they can be serious. Men may develop inflammation of the epididymis. In women, inflammation of the uterine tubes may cause scarring, leading to sterility. As many as 60% of such cases may be from chlamydial rather than gonococcal infection. It's estimated that about 50% of men and 70% of women are unaware of their chlamydial infection.

NAATs are the most reliable methods of diagnosis, and they can be done quickly. Urine samples can be used, but the sensitivity is lower than with swabs. Swab specimens (urethral or vaginal, as the case might be) collected by the patients themselves are often used.

Screening for *C. trachomatis* has reduced the incidence of pelvic inflammatory disease (discussed next). It's recommended that physicians routinely screen sexually active women 25 years of age and younger for infection. Screening is also recommended for other higher-risk groups, such as persons who have a new sex partner, a sex partner with an STI, or multiple sexual partners.

Other Bacteria Implicated in NGU

Bacteria other than *C. trachomatis* can also be implicated in NGU. *Mycoplasma genitalium* (mī-kō-PLAZ-mah jen-i-TAL-ē-um) causes up to 30% of urethritis cases in males. This bacterium may cause cervicitis in women. Another cause of urethritis is *Ureaplasma urealyticum* (u′rē-ah-PLAZ-mah u′rē-ah-LIT-i-kum). This pathogen is a member of the mycoplasma (bacteria without a cell wall).

CLINICAL CASE

The physician requests an anti-leptospira antibody test on Maricel's blood. The result is a titer of 100, which indicates that Maricel is or has been infected with *L. interrogans* bacteria. Now, at day 15 of Maricel's illness, the physician draws another blood sample for a second microscopic agglutination test. The titer is now 800.

Why is a second serological test necessary?

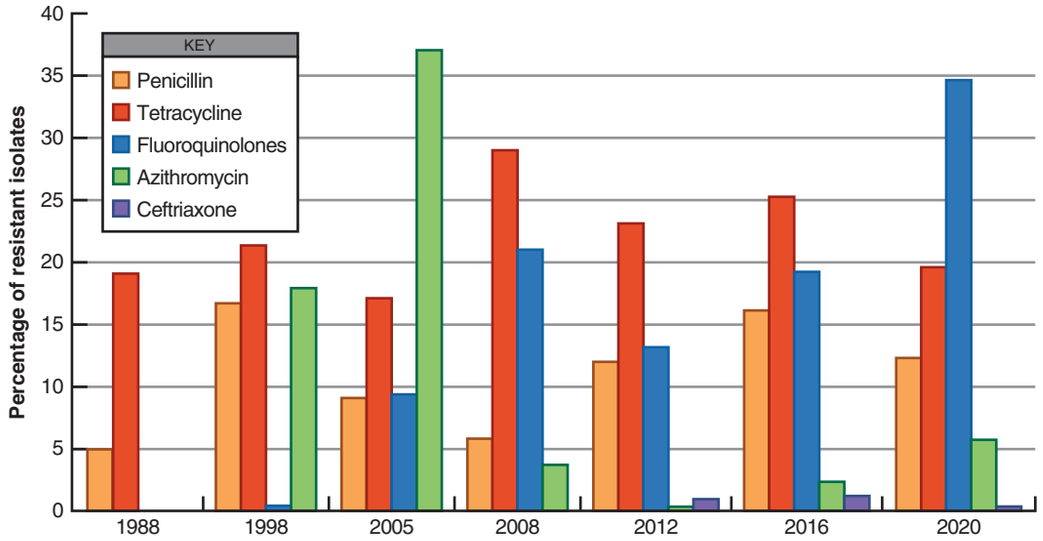
CLINICAL FOCUS Survival of the Fittest

As you read through this problem, you will see questions that health care providers ask themselves and each other as they solve a clinical problem. Try to answer each question.

1. On May 24, Jason, a 35-year-old man, goes to a Denver STI clinic with a history of painful urination and urethral discharge of approximately 1 month's duration.
   What other information do you need about Jason's history?
2. On March 11, Jason returned from a "dating tour" in Thailand, during which he paid for sexual contact with seven or eight women; he denies having had any sexual contact since returning to the United States.
   What sample should be taken, and how should it be tested?
3. *N. gonorrhoeae* is identified by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) of urethral discharge. Jason is treated with a single 250-mg dose of ceftriaxone orally.
   What is the advantage of PCR or enzyme immunoassay (EIA) over cultures for diagnosis?
4. PCR and EIA provide results within a few hours, eliminating the need for the patient to return for treatment. Jason returns to the clinic on June 7 with continuing symptoms. *N. gonorrhoeae* is again detected in urethral discharge. Jason denies having had any sexual contact since the previous visit. The attending physician requests antimicrobial susceptibility testing of the *N. gonorrhoeae* isolates.
   Why would the physician be interested in antimicrobial susceptibility test results on this patient's specimen?
5. One reason for Jason's failure to respond to ceftriaxone may be infection with a resistant *N. gonorrhoeae.* Susceptibility testing would be helpful to explore this possibility.

   The treatment and control of gonorrhea has been complicated by the ability of *N. gonorrhoeae* to develop resistance to antimicrobial agents (see the graph).
   How does antibiotic resistance emerge?
6. In an environment filled with antibiotics, bacteria that have mutations for antibiotic resistance will have a selective advantage and be the "fittest" to survive.
   How is antibiotic susceptibility determined?
7. *N. gonorrhoeae* must be grown in culture for disk-diffusion or broth dilution tests for antimicrobial susceptibility. The increasing use of nonculture methods for gonorrhea diagnosis such as PCR and EIA is a major challenge to monitoring antimicrobial resistance in *N. gonorrhoeae.*

Source: Data from CDC. *Sexually Transmitted Disease Surveillance 2020.*



Antibiotic resistance in *N. gonorrhoeae.*

Both chlamydia and mycoplasma are sensitive to azithromycin and doxycycline.

Pelvic Inflammatory Disease (PID)

Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) is a collective term for any extensive bacterial infection of the female pelvic organs, particularly the uterus, cervix, uterine tubes, or ovaries. During their reproductive years, one in ten women develops PID, and one in four of these will have serious complications, such as infertility or chronic pain.

Pelvic inflammatory disease is considered a *polymicrobial infection*—that is, a number of different pathogens might be the cause, including coinfections. The two most common microbes are *N. gonorrhoeae* and *C. trachomatis.* The onset of chlamydial PID is relatively more insidious, with fewer initial inflammatory symptoms than when caused by *N. gonorrhoeae.* However, the damage to the uterine tube may be greater with chlamydia, especially with repeated infections.

The bacteria may attach to sperm cells and be transported by them from the cervical region to the uterine tubes. Women who use barrier contraceptives, especially with spermicides, have a significantly lower rate of PID.

Infection of the uterine tubes, or **salpingitis**, is the most serious form of PID (Figure 26.8). Salpingitis can result in scarring that blocks the passage of ova from the ovary to the uterus, possibly causing infertility. One episode of salpingitis causes infertility in 10–15% of women; 50–75% become infertile after three or more such infections.

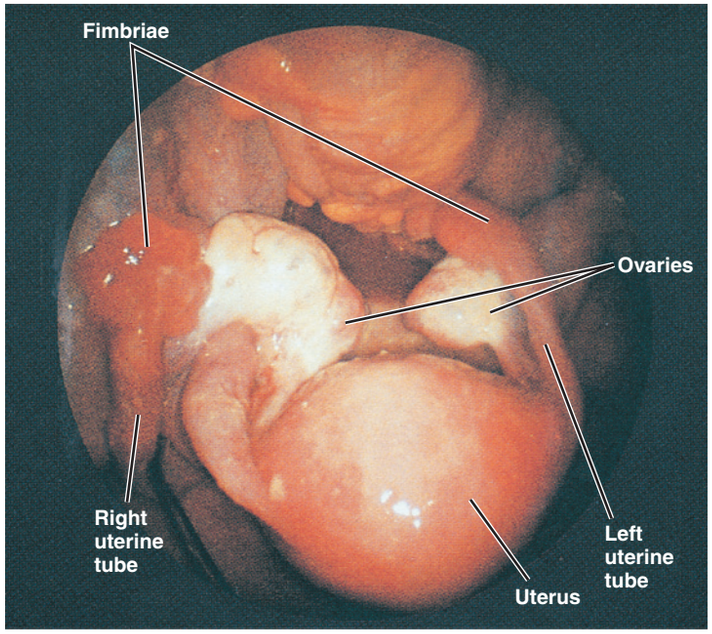


Figure 26.8 Salpingitis. This photograph, taken through a laparoscope (a specialized endoscope), shows an acutely inflamed right uterine tube and inflamed, swollen fimbriae and ovary, caused by salpingitis. The left tube is only mildly inflamed. The use of a laparoscope is the most reliable diagnostic method for PID.

Q What is PID?

A blocked uterine tube may cause a fertilized ovum to be implanted in the tube rather than the uterus. This is called an *ectopic* (or *tubal*) *pregnancy,* and it is life-threatening because of the possibility of rupture of the tube and resulting hemorrhage. The reported cases of ectopic pregnancies have been increasing steadily, corresponding to the increasing occurrence of PID.

A diagnosis of PID depends strongly on signs and symptoms, in combination with laboratory indications of a gonorrheal or chlamydial infection of the cervix. The recommended treatment for PID is the simultaneous administration of ceftriaxone, doxycycline, and metronidazole. This combination is active against both the gonococcus and chlamydia. Such recommendations are constantly being reviewed.

Syphilis

The causative agent of **syphilis** is a gram-negative, microaerophilic spirochete, *Treponema pallidum pallidum* (Figure 26.9). Thin and tightly coiled, *T. pallidum* stains poorly with the usual bacterial stains. (The bacterial name is derived from the Greek words for twisted thread and pale.)

The earliest reports of syphilis date back to the end of the fifteenth century in Europe, when the return of Columbus from the Americas gave rise to a hypothesis that syphilis was introduced to Europe by his men. One English description of the "Morbus Gallicus" (French disease) seems to clearly describe syphilis as early as 1547 and ascribes its transmission in these terms: ". . . It is taken when one pocky person doth synne in lechery one with another."

A subspecies of *T. pallidum* (*T. p. pertenue*) is responsible for *yaws*, a tropically endemic skin disease. This is not sexually transmitted. However, there is evidence of a probable historical association with syphilis. Current research based on genetic analysis of *Treponema* spp. indicates that a pathogen of yaws found in South America adjacent to the Caribbean mutated into a sexually transmitted disease on contact with European explorers.

Several decades ago, prompt diagnosis and treatment had reduced the incidence of syphilis, and several states discontinued the requirements for premarital syphilis tests because so few cases were detected. However, the number of new syphilis cases in the United States has increased almost every year since 2001 (Figure 26.10). Although the population most at risk is men having sex with men, the incidence has increased throughout the U.S. population. In 2020, for example, the rate of syphilis increased 24% among women ages 15–44 years. The CDC recommends testing during pregnancy because of the risk of congenital syphilis (discussed following).

Pathophysiology of Syphilis

T. pallidum lacks the enzymes necessary to build many complex molecules; therefore, it relies on the host for many of the compounds necessary for life. Outside the mammalian host, the organism loses infectiveness within a short time. For research purposes the bacteria are usually propagated in rabbit epithelial cell culture, but they grow slowly, with a generation time of 30 hours or more.

T. pallidum has no obvious virulence factors such as toxins, but it produces several lipoproteins that induce an inflammatory immune response. This is what apparently causes the

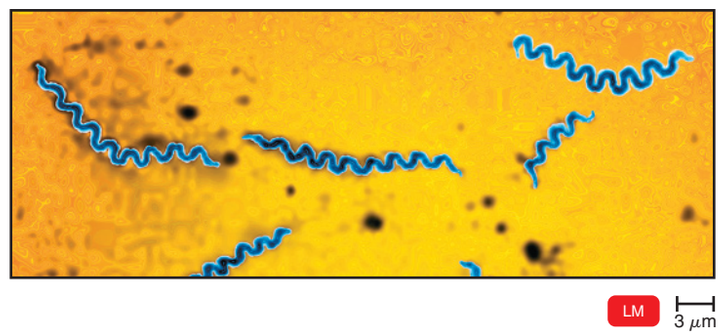
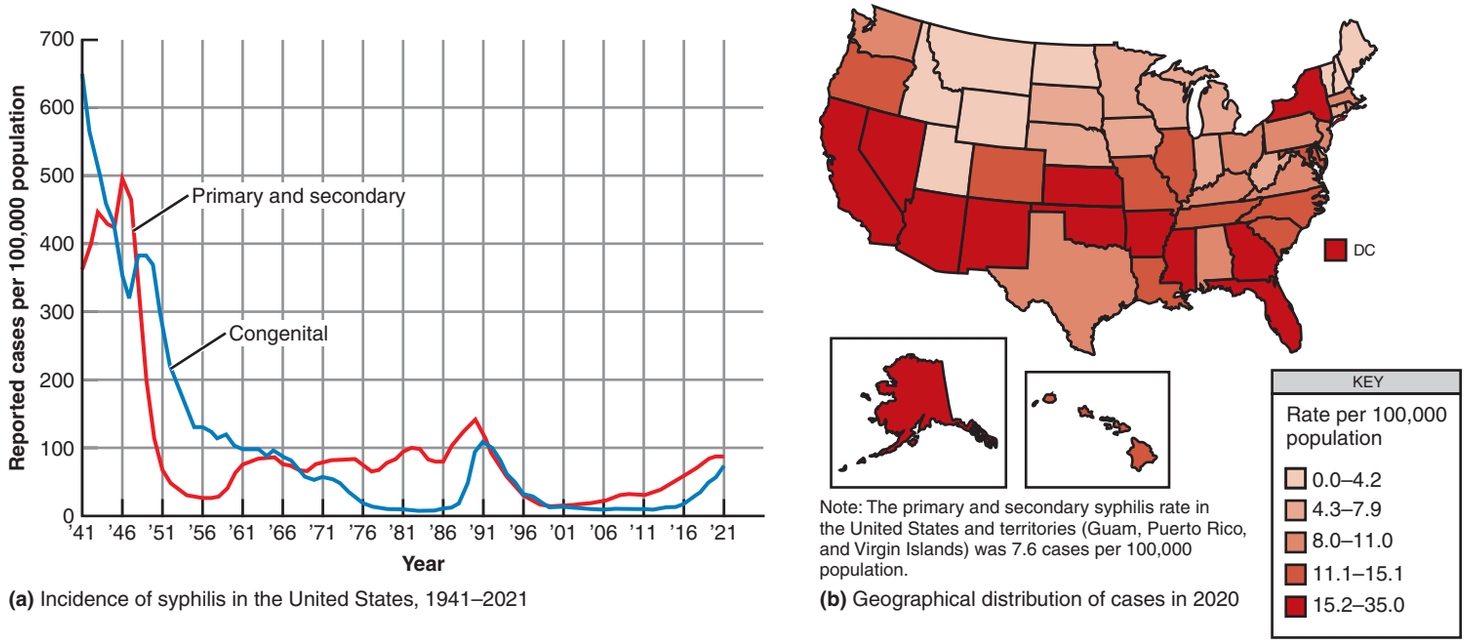


Figure 26.9 *Treponema pallidum*, the cause of syphilis. The microbes are made more visible in this brightfield micrograph by merging multiple photos.

Q A diagnostic method for syphilis is the darkfield microscope. Why not use a brightfield microscope?



(a) Incidence of syphilis in the United States, 1941–2021

(b) Geographical distribution of cases in 2020

Figure 26.10 The U.S. incidence and distribution of syphilis.

Source: CDC, 2022.

Q How is syphilis diagnosed?

tissue destruction of the disease. Almost immediately on infection, the organisms rapidly enter the bloodstream and invade deeper tissues, easily crossing the junctions between cells. They have a corkscrew-like motility that allows them to swim readily in gel-like tissue fluids.

Syphilis is transmitted by sexual contact of all kinds via syphilitic infections of the genitals or other body parts. The incubation period averages 3 weeks but can range from 2 weeks to several months. The disease progresses through several recognized stages.

Primary Stage Syphilis

In the *primary stage* of the disease, the initial sign is a small, hard-based **chancre**, or sore, which appears at the site of infection 10 to 90 days following exposure—on average, about 3 weeks (Figure 26.11a). The chancre is painless, and an exudate of serum forms in the center. This fluid is highly infectious, and examination with a darkfield microscope shows many spirochetes. In a couple of weeks, this lesion disappears. None of these symptoms causes any distress. In fact, many women are entirely unaware of the chancre, which is often on the cervix. In men, the chancre sometimes forms in the urethra and isn't visible. During this stage, bacteria enter the bloodstream and lymphatic system, which distribute them widely in the body.

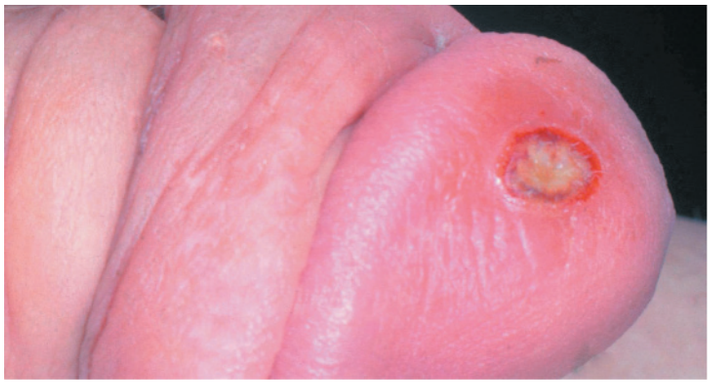
Secondary Stage Syphilis

Several weeks after the primary stage (the exact length of time varies and may overlap), the disease enters the *secondary stage*, characterized mainly by oral sores and skin rashes of varying appearance. The rash is widely distributed on the skin and mucous membranes and is especially visible on the palms and on the soles (Figure 26.11b). The damage done to tissues at this stage and the later tertiary stage is caused by an inflammatory response to circulating immune complexes that lodge at various body sites. Other symptoms often observed are the loss of patches of hair, malaise, and mild fever. A few people may exhibit neurological symptoms.

At this stage, the lesions of the rash contain many spirochetes and are very infectious. Transmission from sexual contact occurs during the primary and secondary stages. Dentists and other health care workers coming into contact with fluid from these lesions can become infected by the spirochete entering through minute breaks in the skin. Such nonsexual transmission is possible, but the microbes don't survive long on environmental surfaces and are very unlikely to be transmitted via such objects as toilet seats. Secondary syphilis is a subtle disease; at least half of the patients diagnosed with this stage can recall no lesions at all. Symptoms usually resolve with or without treatment within 3 months.

Latent Period

Once the symptoms of secondary syphilis go away, the disease enters a *latent period*. During this period, no new symptoms arise. After 2 to 4 years of latency, the disease is not normally infectious, except for transmission across the placenta to a fetus. The majority of cases don't progress beyond the latent stage, even without treatment.



(a) Chancre of primary stage on a male in genital area

(b) Lesions of secondary syphilis rash on hands; any surface of the body may be afflicted with such lesions.

(c) Gummas of tertiary stage on the back of a forearm; gummas such as these are rarely seen today in the era of antibiotics.

Figure 26.11 Characteristic lesions associated with various stages of syphilis.

Q How are the primary, secondary, and tertiary stages of syphilis distinguished?

Tertiary Stage Syphilis

Because the symptoms of primary and secondary syphilis aren't disabling, people may enter the latent period without having received medical attention. In up to 25% of untreated cases, the disease reappears in a *tertiary stage*. This stage occurs only after an interval of many years from the onset of the latent phase.

T. pallidum has an outer layer of lipids that stimulates little effective immune response, especially from cell-destroying complement reactions. It has been described as a "Teflon pathogen." Nonetheless, most of the symptoms of tertiary syphilis are probably due to the body's immune reactions (of a cell-mediated nature) to surviving spirochetes.

Tertiary, or late-stage, syphilis can be classified generally by affected tissues or type of lesion. *Gummatous syphilis* is characterized by **gummas**, which are a form of progressive inflammation that appear as rubbery masses of tissue (Figure 26.11c) in various organs (most commonly the skin, mucous membranes, and bones) after about 15 years. There they cause local destruction of these tissues but usually not incapacitation or death.

Cardiovascular syphilis results most seriously in a weakening of the aorta. In preantibiotic days, it was one of the more common consequences of syphilis; it is now rare.

Few, if any, pathogens are found in the lesions of the tertiary stage, and they are not considered very infectious. Today, it is rare for cases of syphilis to be allowed to progress to this stage.

Complications of untreated syphilis involving the eyes or central nervous system can occur during any stage of the disease. *Ocular syphilis* causes blurred vision and permanent blindness. Symptoms of *neurosyphilis* can vary widely. The patient can experience personality changes and other signs of dementia (*paresis*), seizures, loss of coordination of voluntary movement (*tabes dorsalis*), partial paralysis, loss of ability to use or comprehend speech, loss of sight or hearing, or loss of bowel and bladder control.

Congenital Syphilis

One of the most distressing and dangerous forms of syphilis, called **congenital syphilis**, is transmitted across the placenta to the fetus. Damage to the developing brain is among the more serious consequences. This type of infection is most common when pregnancy occurs during the latent period of the disease. A pregnancy during the primary or secondary stage is likely to produce a stillbirth. Since 2013, the rate of congenital syphilis has increased each year. In 2020, 2,148 cases of congenital syphilis were reported, including 149 congenital syphilis-related stillbirths and infant deaths. Treating the pregnant parent with antibiotics during the first two trimesters (6 months) will usually prevent congenital transmission.

Diagnosis of Syphilis

Diagnosis of syphilis is complex because each stage of the disease has unique requirements. Tests fall into three general groups: visual microscopic inspection, nontreponemal serological tests, and treponemal serological tests. For preliminary screening, laboratories use either nontreponemal serological tests or microscopic examination of exudates from lesions when these are present. If a screening test is positive, the results are confirmed by treponemal serological tests.

Microscopic tests are important for screening for primary syphilis because serological tests for this stage are not reliable; antibodies take 1 to 4 weeks to form. The spirochetes can be detected in exudates of lesions by microscopic examination with a darkfield microscope (see Figure 3.4b). A darkfield microscope is necessary because the bacteria stain poorly and are only about 0.2 μm in diameter, near the lower limit of resolution for a brightfield microscope. Similarly, a **direct fluorescent-antibody test (DFA-TP)** using monoclonal antibodies (see Figure 18.10a) will both show and identify the spirochete. Figure 26.9 shows *T. pallidum* under brightfield illumination made possible by a computer enhancing technique.

At the secondary stage, when the spirochete has invaded almost all body organs, serological tests are reactive. *Nontreponemal serological tests* are so called because they are nonspecific; they detect *reagin-type antibodies*, not the antibodies produced against the spirochete itself. Generally, these tests are used for screening. Reagin-type antibodies are apparently a response to lipid materials the body forms as an indirect reaction to infection by the spirochete. The antigen used in such tests is thus not the syphilis spirochete but an extract of beef heart (cardiolipin) that seems to contain lipids similar to those that stimulated the reagin-type antibody production. These tests will detect only about 70–80% of primary syphilis cases, but they will detect 99% of secondary syphilis cases. An example of nontreponemal tests is the slide agglutination **VDRL test** (for Venereal Disease Research Laboratory, see Serology in Chapter 10). Also used are modifications of the **rapid plasma reagin (RPR) test**, which is similar. The newest nontreponemal test is an ELISA test that uses the VDRL antigen.

ELISA treponemal tests can be done in many laboratories and offer high-throughput screening. There are also simple **rapid diagnostic tests (RDTs)** of this type that can be done from a finger-prick blood sample in a physician's office. Neither of these groups of tests will distinguish a prior from an active infection; confirmatory tests, which usually must be done at a central reference laboratory, are required.

Only treponemal-type tests are used for confirmatory testing. An example is the **fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption test,** or **FTA-ABS test**, an indirect fluorescent-antibody test (see Figure 18.10b). Treponemal tests are not used for screening because about 1% of the results will be false positives, but a positive test with both treponemal and nontreponemal types is highly specific.

Treatment of Syphilis

Benzathine penicillin, a long-acting formulation that remains effective in the body for about 2 weeks, is the usual antibiotic treatment of syphilis. The serum concentrations achieved by this formulation are low, but the spirochete has remained very sensitive to this antibiotic.

For penicillin-sensitive people, several other antibiotics, such as azithromycin, doxycycline, and tetracycline, have also proven effective.

Lymphogranuloma Venereum (LGV)

Several STIs that are uncommon in the United States occur frequently in the tropical areas of the world. For example, *C. trachomatis*, the cause of the eye infection trachoma and a major cause of NGU, is also responsible for **lymphogranuloma venereum (LGV)**, a disease found in tropical and subtropical regions. It is apparently caused by serovars of *C. trachomatis* that are invasive and tend to infect lymphoid tissue. In the United States, there are usually 200 to 400 cases each year, mostly in men who have sex with men, many of whom are also HIV-positive.

The microorganisms invade the lymphatic system, and the regional lymph nodes become enlarged and tender. Suppuration (a discharge of pus) may also occur. Inflammation of the lymph nodes results in scarring, which occasionally obstructs the lymph vessels. This blockage sometimes leads to massive enlargement of the external genitals in men. In women, involvement of the lymph nodes in the rectal region leads to narrowing of the rectum. These conditions may eventually require surgery.

Treatment is started based on the presence of signs and symptoms of LGV. Diagnosis is made by direct NAAT for *C. trachomatis*. The drug of choice for treatment is doxycycline.

Chancroid (Soft Chancre)

The STI known as **chancroid (soft chancre)** occurs most frequently in tropical areas, where it is seen more often than syphilis. The number of reported cases in the United States has been declining from a peak of 5000 cases in 1988. Because many physicians are unfamiliar with chancroid and it is difficult to diagnose, it's probably underreported in the United States. It's very common in Africa, Asia, and the Caribbean.

In chancroid, a swollen, painful ulcer that forms on the genitals involves an infection of the adjacent lymph nodes. Infected lymph nodes in the groin area sometimes even break through and discharge pus to the surface. Such lesions are an important factor in the sexual transmission of HIV, especially in Africa. Lesions might also occur on such diverse areas as the tongue and lips. The causative agent is *Haemophilus ducreyi* (hē-MAH-fil-us doo-KRĀ-ē), a small gram-negative rod that can be isolated from exudates of lesions. This bacterium is identified by its requirement for X factor (see Chapter 11). Symptoms and the culture of these bacteria are the primary means of diagnosis. The recommended antibiotics include single doses of azithromycin or ceftriaxone.

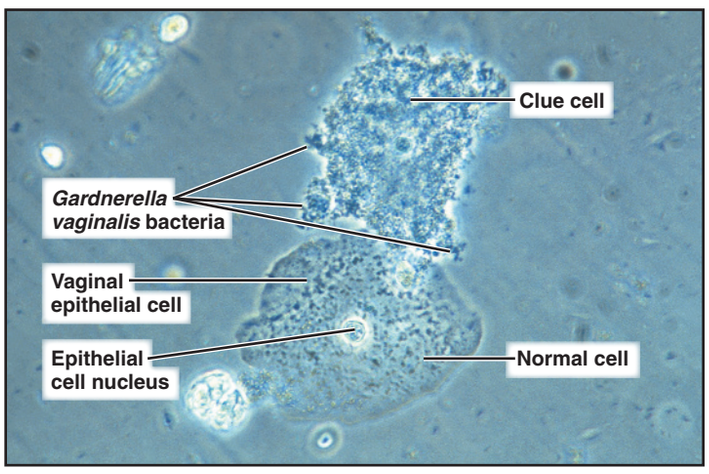
Bacterial Vaginosis

Inflammation of the vagina due to infection, or **vaginitis**, is the most common cause of vaginal symptoms. Vaginitis is commonly caused by the fungus *Candida albicans* (KAN-dē-dah AL-bi-kanz) or the protozoan *Trichomonas vaginalis* (TRIK-ō-mō-nas va-ji-NA-lis). The most common bacterial pathogen is *Gardnerella vaginalis*, a small, facultatively anaerobic, pleomorphic, gram-variable rod (see Diseases in Focus 26.2). Other bacterial culprits include *Atopobium vaginae* (at-ō-PŌ-bē-um va-JEYE-nē) and *Megasphaera* sp. (me-ga-SFER-ah). Cases involving bacterial pathogens are termed **bacterial vaginosis**. (Because there is no sign of inflammation, the term *vaginosis* is preferred to *vaginitis*).

The condition is something of an ecological mystery. It's believed that bacterial vaginosis is precipitated by some event that decreases the number of vaginal *Lactobacillus* bacteria that normally produce hydrogen peroxide. This competitive change allows bacteria, especially *G. vaginalis*, to proliferate, producing amines that contribute to a further rise in pH. These various bacteria, most of which are commonly found in the vaginas of asymptomatic women, are assumed to be metabolically interdependent. This situation does not lend itself to the application of Koch's postulates to determine a specific cause. There is no corresponding disease condition in men, but *G. vaginalis* is often present in their urethras. Therefore, the condition may be sexually transmitted, but it also occurs occasionally in women who have never been sexually active. The prevalence of vaginosis among women between 14 and 49 years of age is about 30%.

Bacterial vaginosis is characterized by a vaginal pH above 4.5 and a copious, frothy vaginal discharge. When tested with a potassium hydroxide solution, these vaginal secretions emit a fishy odor from amines produced by *G. vaginalis*. Diagnosis is based on the vaginal pH, fishy odor (the *whiff test*), and microscopic observation of *clue cells* in the discharge. These clue cells are sloughed-off vaginal epithelial cells covered with a biofilm of bacteria, mostly *G. vaginalis* (Figure 26.12). NAAT for *G. vaginalis*, *A. vaginae*, and *Megasphera* are also used for diagnosis. The disease has been considered more of a nuisance than a serious infection, but it's now seen as a factor in many premature births and low-birth-weight infants.

Treatment is primarily by metronidazole, a drug that eradicates the anaerobes essential to continuation of the disease but allows the normal lactobacilli to repopulate the vagina. Treatments designed to restore the normal population of lactobacilli, such as application of acetic acid gels and even yogurt, have not been shown conclusively to be effective.



Normal vaginal epithelial cell and clue cell LM 9 μm

Figure 26.12 Clue cell. *Gardnerella* bacteria coat the surface of a vaginal epithelial cell.

Q What symptoms would cause you to look for clue cells?

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

IgG antibodies against *L. interrogans* can persist for years, and their presence may only indicate a previous exposure. The rise in titer on the second test indicates a current infection. Maricel is treated with doxycycline for leptospirosis and is soon able to resume training for her next kayaking event.

Occupational exposure most likely accounts for 30–50% of human cases of leptospirosis. The main occupational groups at risk include farm workers, veterinarians, pet shop owners, plumbers and sewer workers, meat handlers and slaughterhouse workers, and military troops. However, since 1970 leptospirosis has been increasingly associated with recreational activities. Prolonged water exposure from swimming or kayaking in freshwater lakes or streams, for example, has been associated with *L. interrogans* infection.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 **Part 4**

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

26-6 Why is the disease condition of the female genital system principally featuring growth of *G. vaginalis* termed *vaginosis* rather than *vaginitis*?

Viral Diseases of the Genital Systems

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

26-7 Discuss the epidemiology of genital herpes and genital warts.

Viral diseases of the genital system are difficult to treat, and so they represent an increasing health problem.

Genital Herpes

A much publicized STI is **genital herpes**, usually caused by *Simplexvirus* HSV-2. In the United States, one in four persons over the age of 30 is infected with HSV-2—but most are unaware

Figure 26.13 **Vesicles of genital herpes on a penis.**

Q What microbe causes genital herpes?

they are infected. *Simplexvirus* HSV-1 is primarily responsible for oral cold sores (see Chapter 21), but is causing an increasing number of genital herpes infections, which are usually acquired by oral–genital contact. This now constitutes about half of cases of genital herpes in the United States.

Genital herpes lesions appear after an incubation period of up to 1 week and cause a burning sensation. After this, vesicles appear (Figure 26.13). Urination can be painful, and walking is quite uncomfortable; the patient is even irritated by clothing. Usually, the vesicles heal in a couple of weeks.

The vesicles contain infectious fluid, but many times the disease is transmitted when no lesions or symptoms are apparent. Semen may contain the virus. Condoms may not provide protection because in women the vesicles are usually on the external genitals (seldom on the cervix or within the vagina), and in men the vesicles may be on the base of the penis.

One of the most distressing characteristics of genital herpes is the possibility of recurrences. As in other herpes infections, such as cold sores or chickenpox-shingles, the virus enters a lifelong latent state in nerve cells. Some people have several recurrences a year; for others, recurrence is rare. Men are more likely to experience recurrences than women. Reactivation appears to be triggered by factors that lower the immune system, including menstruation, emotional stress, illness, and being "run down" (factors that are also involved in the appearance of cold sores). About 90% of patients with HSV-2 and about 50% of those with HSV-1 will have recurrences. Recurrence rates decrease over time, regardless of treatment. Low numbers of viruses may be produced at any time during latency; thus, the virus can be transmitted even in the absence of visible symptoms.

Diagnosis of genital herpes can be done by culture of the virus taken from a vesicle; however, serological tests for HSV antibodies and PCR testing of samples have proven more sensitive and are faster. If there are no lesions to be sampled, serological testing can identify HSV infections or confirm clinical diagnosis by symptoms.

There is no cure for genital herpes, although research on its prevention and treatment is intensive. Discussions of chemotherapy use terms such as *suppression* or *management* rather than *cure*. Currently, the antiviral drugs acyclovir, famciclovir, and valacyclovir are recommended for treatment. They are fairly effective in alleviating the symptoms of a primary outbreak; there is some relief of pain and slightly faster healing. Taken over several months, they lower the chances of recurrence during that time.

Neonatal Herpes

Neonatal herpes is a serious consideration during pregnancy. HSV can cross the placental barrier and affect the fetus, causing spontaneous abortion or serious fetal damage. If untreated, a survival rate of only about 40% can be expected, and even treated survivors will have considerable disability. Herpes infection of the newborn is most likely to have serious consequences when the mother acquires the initial herpes infection during the pregnancy. Exposure to recurrent or asymptomatic herpes is much less likely to damage the fetus, most likely because of protective maternal antibodies. If tests show a pregnant patient has no antibodies against herpes viruses, counseling may be helpful in avoiding an initial infection.

Most infections of the newborn occur from exposure to HSV during delivery. HSV-2 infections are likely to be more serious than HSV-1 infections. If genital sores that might be caused by herpes infection are present, a sample can be taken and isolates tested to determine whether they are HSV-1 or HSV-2. If the culture is negative but a herpes infection is still suspected, a PCR test for viral DNA can be done. During pregnancy, asymptomatic shedding of HSV-2 is common. Delivery by caesarian section is recommended if genital sores that might be caused by herpes infection are present at the time of delivery.

Fewer than 1% of newborns develop neonatal herpes. Some infections are confined to the skin, mucous membranes, and eyes. With proper treatment, the outcome of these cases is usually good. However, about 30% of the cases are associated with damage to the central nervous system that may include developmental delays, blindness, hearing loss, or epilepsy. Disseminated viral infections can result in death of the newborn.

Culture and identification of the virus take a few days, but fluorescent antibody tests can quickly detect viral protein, or PCR tests can detect the presence of viral DNA. Treatment usually involves intravenous administration of acyclovir. No vaccine is currently available.

Genital Warts

Warts are an infectious disease caused by species of *Alphapapillomavirus*. (See Chapter 21 for more-familiar, skin-associated, warts.) Many papillomaviruses have a predilection for growth not on the skin, but on the mucous membranes that line organs such as the respiratory tract, mouth, anus, and genitalia. Such **genital warts** (or *condyloma acuminata*) are usually transmitted sexually and are an increasing problem. About 350,000 new cases occur in the United States each year. Genital warts is the most common STI in the United States.

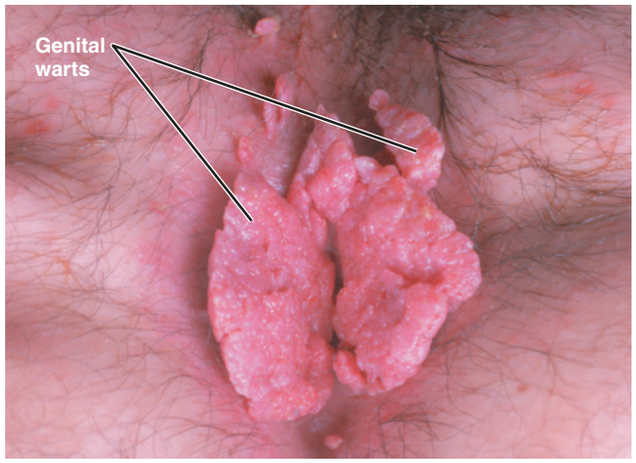


Figure 26.14 Genital warts on a vulva.

Q What is the relationship between genital warts and cervical cancer?

There are more than 60 types of human papillomaviruses (HPV), and certain serotypes tend to be linked with certain forms of genital warts. For example, some genital warts are extremely large, resembling a cauliflower with multiple fingerlike projections, whereas others are relatively smooth or flat (Figure 26.14).

Penile lesions are often flat and quite inapparent, an important factor in male to female transmission. The incubation period is usually a matter of a few weeks or months. Visible genital warts are most often caused by species 6 and 11. These species rarely cause cancer, which is the most serious concern with these infections. The species most likely to cause cancer are 7 and 9, but these have a relatively low prevalence. Even so, cervical cancer caused by HPV kills at least 4000 women annually in the United States. Oral, anal, and penile cancers are also attributed to HPV infections.

The vaccine protects against species 7 serotypes 18 and 45; species 9 serotypes 16, 31, 33, 52, and 58; and species 10 serotypes 6 and 11. The vaccine is recommended for adolescents ages 11 and 12 years. The immune response to the vaccines is much more effective than that resulting from a natural infection, which is relatively weak.

Warts can be treated but not cured (see the discussion in Chapter 21), but approximately 90% of cases clear spontaneously within 2 years. The available methods used for warts, such as surgery or cryotherapy, are not as effective against genital warts. Two patient-applied gels, podofilox and imiquimod, are often useful treatments. Imiquimod stimulates the body to produce interferon (Chapter 16), which appears to account for its antiviral activity.

AIDS

AIDS, or HIV infection, is a viral disease that is frequently transmitted by sexual contact. However, its pathogenicity is based on damage to the immune system, so it is discussed in Chapter 19. It's important to remember that the lesions resulting from many of the diseases of bacterial and viral origin facilitate the transmission of HIV.

*****

There are other sexually transmitted viruses that do not infect the genitourinary system. Like HIV, these viruses carry out their pathogenicity in other organ systems. These viruses are listed in Diseases in Focus 26.3.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

26-7 Both genital herpes and genital warts are caused by viruses; which one is the greater danger to a pregnancy?

Fungal Disease of the Genital Systems

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

26-8 Discuss the epidemiology of candidiasis.

The fungal disease described here is the well-known *yeast infection* for which over-the-counter treatments are available.

Candidiasis

Vaginal infections by yeastlike fungi of the genus *Candida*—called **vulvovaginal candidiasis**—are the most common cause of vaginitis. A study among female college students found that, by the time they reach the age of 25, an estimated half will have had at least one physician-diagnosed episode. About 75% of all women experience at least one episode. Antifungal therapies to treat these infections are among the best-selling over-the-counter products in the United States.

C. albicans is the species most commonly responsible for candidiasis; it causes 85–90% of cases. Infections by other species, such as *C. glabrata*, are more likely to be resistant to antifungals and to be chronic or recurrent.

C. albicans often grows on mucous membranes of the mouth, intestinal tract, and genitourinary tract (Figure 26.15; see also Figure 21.17). Infections are usually a result of opportunistic overgrowth when the competing microbiota are suppressed by antibiotics or other factors. In addition to causing vulvovaginal candidiasis, *C. albicans* causes **oral candidiasis**, or thrush (see Chapter 21). It's also responsible for occasional cases of NGU in men.

The lesions of vulvovaginal candidiasis resemble those of thrush but produce more irritation: severe itching; a thick, yellow, cheesy discharge; and yeasty or no odor. *C. albicans* is an opportunistic pathogen. Predisposing conditions include the use

DISEASES IN FOCUS 26.2 Characteristics of the Most Common Types of Vaginitis and Vaginosis

Vaginitis, or inflammation of the vagina, often accompanies vaginal infections. Vaginitis may be caused by microbial infections. The cause of vaginitis cannot be determined on the basis of symptoms or physical examination alone. Usually, diagnosis involves examining a specimen of vaginal fluid under a microscope (see the photo). Use the following table to identify the infection caused by the organism in the figure.

Epithelial cells covered with rod-shaped bacteria from a vaginal swab.

Disease	Pathogen	Signs and Symptoms				Diagnosis	Treatment
		Odor, Color, and Consistency of Discharge	Amount of Discharge	Appearance of Vaginal Mucosa	pH (normal pH is 3.8–4.2)		
Bacterial Vaginosis	Bacterium. *G. vaginalis, A. vaginae, Megasphaera*	Fishy; gray-white, thin, frothy	Copious	Pink	>4.5	Presence of clue cells	Metronidazole
Candidiasis	Fungus. *C. albicans*	Yeasty or none, white, curdy	Varies	Dry, red	<4	Microscopic exam	Clotrimazole, miconazole
Trichomoniasis	Protozoan. *T. vaginalis*	Foul, greenish-yellow; frothy	Copious	Tender, red	5–6	Microscopic exam; DNA probes; monoclonal antibody	Metronidazole

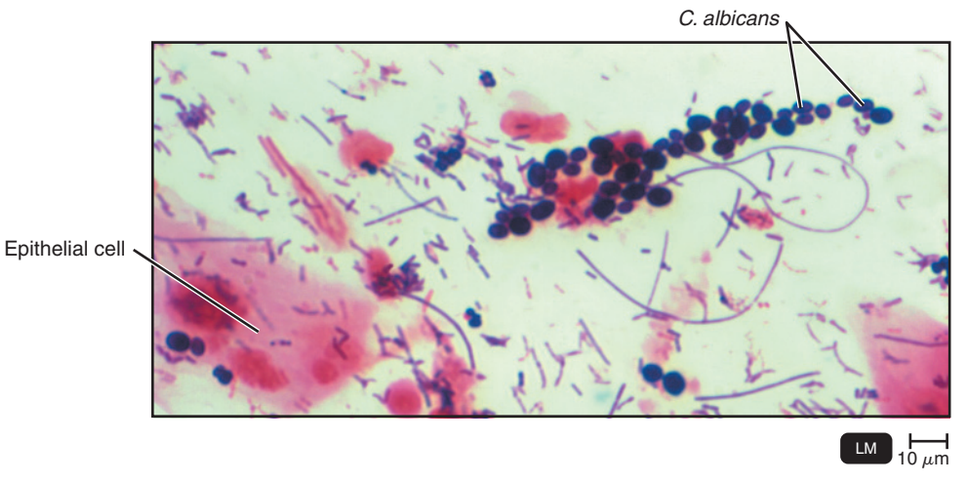


Figure 26.15 Gram-stained smear of vaginal discharge used to diagnose candidiasis.
Rod-shaped bacteria are also visible.

Q ***C. albicans*** **is part of the normal microbiome. What conditions favor its overgrowth and disease?**

of oral contraceptives and pregnancy, which cause an increase of glycogen in the vagina (see the discussion of the normal vaginal microbiota). Hormones are probably a factor; candidiasis is much less common in girls before puberty or in women after menopause. Yeast infections are a frequent symptom in women with uncontrolled diabetes. Thus, diabetes and antibiotic therapy are predisposing factors to *C. albicans* vaginitis.

A yeast infection is diagnosed by microscopic identification of the fungus in scrapings of lesions and by isolation of the fungus in culture. Treatment usually consists of topical application of nonprescription antifungal drugs such as clotrimazole and miconazole. An alternative treatment is a single dose of oral fluconazole.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

26-8 What changes in the vaginal bacterial microbiota tend also to favor the growth of the yeast *C. albicans*?

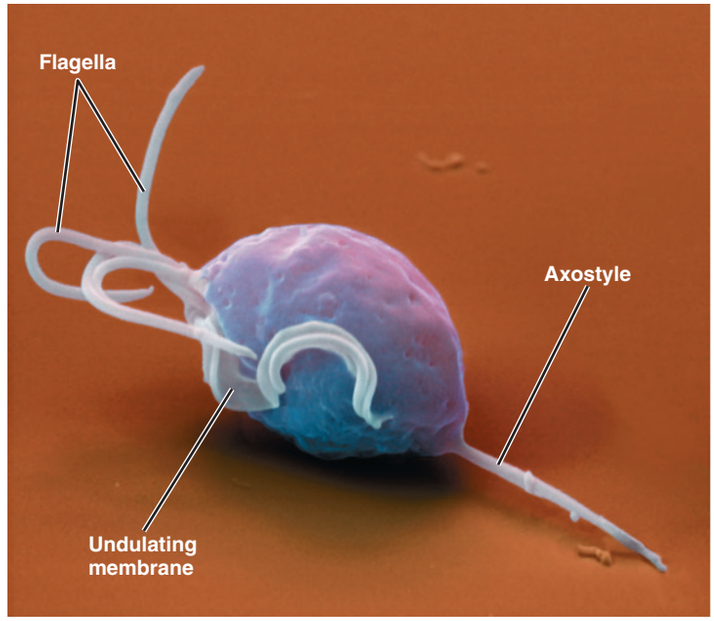


Figure 26.16 ***Trichomonas vaginalis*.** The flagella and undulating membrane provide motility. The axostyle, composed of microtubules, attaches the protozoan to vaginal cells.

Q Are there any harmful effects from infection by this protozoan?

Protozoal Disease of the Genital Systems

LEARNING OBJECTIVE

26-9 Discuss the epidemiology of trichomoniasis.

The only STI caused by a protozoan affects mostly young, sexually active women. It may be the most common nonviral STI—affecting 2.8 million women in the United States—but it isn't widely known. Its prevalence in certain STI clinics is 25% or higher.

Trichomoniasis

The anaerobic protozoan *T. vaginalis* is frequently a normal inhabitant of the vagina and of the male urethra (Figure 26.16). It's usually sexually transmitted. If the normal acidity of the vagina is disturbed, the protozoan may overgrow the normal microbial population of the genital mucosa and cause **trichomoniasis**. (Men rarely have any symptoms resulting from the presence of the protozoan.) The infection is often accompanied by a coinfection with gonorrhea. In response to the protozoan infection, the body accumulates leukocytes at the infection site. The resulting discharge is profuse, greenish yellow, and characterized by a foul odor. This discharge is accompanied by irritation and itching. Up to half the cases, however, are asymptomatic.

The incidence of trichomoniasis is higher than that of gonorrhea or chlamydia, but it is considered relatively benign and is not a reportable disease. It's known, however, to cause preterm delivery and associated problems, such as low birth weight.

Diagnosis is usually made by microscopic examination and identification of the organisms in the discharge. They can also be isolated and grown on laboratory media. The pathogen can be found in semen or urine of male carriers. New rapid tests making use of DNA probes and monoclonal antibodies are now available. Treatment is by oral metronidazole, administered to both sex partners, which readily clears the infection.

The major microbial diseases of the urinary and genital systems are summarized in Diseases in Focus 26.3.

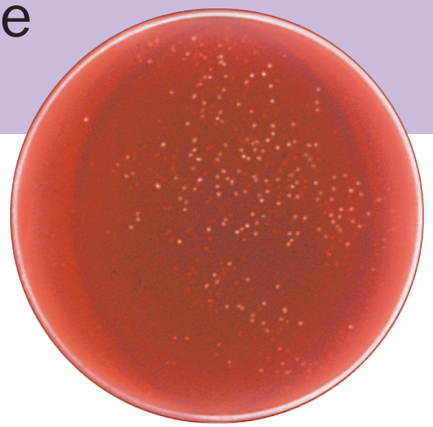
We have seen in this and previous chapters that a number of diseases can cause serious infections or birth defects in newborns when they occur during pregnancy. For a full discussion, see the Big Picture in Chapter 22.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

26-9 What are the symptoms of the presence of *T. vaginalis* in the male genital system?

DISEASES IN FOCUS 26.3 Microbial Diseases of the Genital Systems

A 26-year-old woman has abdominal pain, painful urination, and fever. Cultures grown in a high-CO_2 environment reveal gram-negative diplococci. Use the following table to identify infections that could cause these symptoms.



Gram-negative diplococci on Thayer-Martin agar, which is a blood-containing medium with antibiotics to encourage the growth of this pathogen and inhibit the growth of unwanted microbes.

Disease	Pathogen	Signs and Symptoms	Treatment
BACTERIAL DISEASES			
Gonorrhea	*N. gonorrhoeae*	Men: painful urination and discharge of pus. Women: few symptoms but possible complications, such as PID.	Ceftriaxone
Nongonococcal Urethritis (NGU)	*C. trachomatis, M. genitalium*	Painful urination and watery discharge. In women, possible complications, such as PID.	Doxycycline. azithromycin
Pelvic Inflammatory Disease (PID)	*N. gonorrhoeae, C. trachomatis*	Chronic abdominal pain; possible infertility	Doxycycline and cefotetan
Syphilis	*T. pallidum*	Initial sore at site of infection, later skin rashes and mild fever; final stages may be severe lesions, damage to cardiovascular and nervous systems.	Benzathine penicillin
Lymphogranuloma Venereum (LGV)	*C. trachomatis*	Swelling in lymph nodes in groin	Doxycycline
Chancroid (Soft Chancre)	*H. ducreyi*	Painful ulcers of genitals; swollen lymph nodes in groin	Erythromycin; ceftriaxone
Bacterial Vaginosis	See Diseases in Focus 26.2		
VIRAL DISEASES			
Genital Herpes	*Simplexvirus* HSV type 2; HSV type 1	Painful vesicles in genital area	Acyclovir
Genital Warts	*Alphapapillomavirus* spp.	Warts in genital area	Podofilox, imiquimod Prevention: HPV vaccine
MPOX	See Chapter 21		
VIRAL STIs WITHOUT GENITOURINARY PATHOGENICITY			
AIDS	See Chapter 19		
Hepatitis B	See Chapter 25		
Hepatitis C	See Chapter 25		
Zika virus disease	See Chapter 22		
FUNGAL DISEASE			
Candidiasis	See Diseases in Focus 26.2		
PROTOZOAN DISEASE			
Trichomoniasis	See Diseases in Focus 26.2		

Study Outline

Introduction (p. 768)

1. The urinary system regulates the chemical composition and volume of the blood and excretes nitrogenous waste and water.
2. The genital system produces gametes for reproduction and, during pregnancy, supports the growing embryo and fetus.
3. Microbial diseases of these systems can result from infection from an outside source or from opportunistic infection by members of the normal microbiota.

Structure and Function of the Urinary System (p. 769)

1. Urine is transported from the kidneys through ureters to the urinary bladder and is eliminated through the urethra.
2. Valves prevent urine from flowing back to the urinary bladder and kidneys.
3. The flushing action of urine and normal urine itself have some antimicrobial value.

Structure and Function of the Genital Systems (pp. 769–770)

1. The female genital system consists of two ovaries, two uterine tubes, the uterus, the cervix, the vagina, and the external genitals.
2. The male genital system consists of two testes, ducts, accessory glands, and the penis; seminal fluid leaves the male body through the urethra.

Normal Microbiota of the Urinary and Genital Systems (pp. 770–771)

1. Gram-positive bacteria predominate in the urinary tract.
2. Lactobacilli dominate the vaginal microbiota; actinobacteria dominate the microbiome of the seminal gland.

Diseases of the Urinary System (pp. 771–773)

Bacterial Diseases of the Urinary System (pp. 771–773)

1. Urethritis, cystitis, and ureteritis are inflammations of tissues of the lower urinary tract.
2. Pyelonephritis can result from lower urinary tract infections or from systemic bacterial infections.
3. Opportunistic gram-negative bacteria from the intestines often cause urinary tract infections.
4. Healthcare-associated infections of the urinary system can occur following catheterization.
5. Treatment of urinary tract infections depends on isolation and antibiotic sensitivity testing of the causative agents.

Cystitis (p. 772)

6. Inflammation of the urinary bladder, or cystitis, is common in females.
7. The most common etiologies are *E. coli* and *S. saprophyticus*.

Pyelonephritis (p. 772)

8. Inflammation of the kidneys, or pyelonephritis, is usually a complication of lower urinary tract infections.
9. About 75% of pyelonephritis cases are caused by *E. coli*.

Leptospirosis (pp. 772–773)

10. The spirochete *L. interrogans* is the cause of leptospirosis.
11. The disease is transmitted to humans by urine-contaminated water.
12. Leptospirosis is characterized by chills, fever, headache, and muscle aches.

Diseases of the Genital Systems (pp. 774–789)

1. Most infections of the genital system are sexually transmitted infections (STIs).
2. Most STIs can be prevented by the use of condoms.

Bacterial Diseases of the Genital Systems (pp. 774–784)

Gonorrhea (pp. 774–778)

1. *N. gonorrhoeae* causes gonorrhea.
2. Gonorrhea is a common reportable communicable disease in the United States.
3. *N. gonorrhoeae* attaches to mucosal cells of the oral-pharyngeal area, genitals, eyes, and rectum by means of fimbriae.
4. Symptoms in men are painful urination and pus discharge. Blockage of the urethra and sterility are complications of untreated cases.
5. Women might be asymptomatic unless the infection spreads to the uterus and uterine tubes (see pelvic inflammatory disease).
6. Gonorrheal endocarditis, gonorrheal meningitis, and gonorrheal arthritis are complications that can affect anyone with an untreated gonorrheal infection.
7. Ophthalmia neonatorum is an eye infection acquired by newborns during passage through the birth canal of an infected mother.
8. Gonorrhea is diagnosed by NAATS.

Nongonococcal Urethritis (NGU) (pp. 778–779)

9. Most cases of nongonococcal urethritis (NGU), or nonspecific urethritis (NSU), are caused by *C. trachomatis*.
10. *C. trachomatis* infection is the most common NGU.

11. Symptoms of NGU are often mild or lacking, although uterine tube inflammation and sterility may occur.
12. *C. trachomatis* can be transmitted to a newborn's eyes at birth.
13. Diagnosis is based on detection of chlamydial DNA in urine.
14. *U. urealyticum* and *M. genitalium* also cause NGU.

Pelvic Inflammatory Disease (PID) (pp. 779–780)

15. Extensive bacterial infection of the female pelvic organs, especially of the genital system, is called pelvic inflammatory disease (PID).
16. PID is caused by *N. gonorrhoeae, C. trachomatis*, and other bacteria. Infection of the uterine tubes is called salpingitis.

Syphilis (pp. 780–783)

17. Syphilis is caused by *T. pallidum*, a spirochete that has not been cultured in vitro. Laboratory cultures are grown in rabbits or cell cultures.
18. The primary lesion is a small, hard-based chancre at the site of infection. The bacteria then invade the blood and lymphatic system, and the chancre spontaneously heals.
19. The appearance of a widely disseminated rash on the skin and mucous membranes marks the secondary stage. Spirochetes are present in the lesions of the rash.
20. The patient enters a latent period after the secondary lesions spontaneously heal.
21. At least 10 years after the secondary lesion, tertiary lesions called gummas can appear on many organs.
22. Congenital syphilis, resulting from *T. pallidum* crossing the placenta during the latent period, can cause neurological damage in the newborn.
23. *T. pallidum* is identifiable through darkfield microscopy of fluid from primary and secondary lesions.
24. Many serological tests, such as VDRL, RPR, and FTA-ABS, can be used to detect the presence of antibodies against *T. pallidum* during any stage of the disease.

Lymphogranuloma Venereum (LGV) (p. 783)

25. *C. trachomatis* causes lymphogranuloma venereum (LGV), which is primarily a disease of tropical and subtropical regions.
26. The bacteria are spread in the lymph system and cause enlargement of the lymph nodes, obstruction of lymph vessels, and swelling of the external genitals.
27. Diagnosis is by ELISA or NAAT.

Chancroid (Soft Chancre) (p. 783)

28. Chancroid, a swollen, painful ulcer on the mucous membranes of the genitals, is caused by *H. ducreyi*.

Bacterial Vaginosis (p. 784)

29. Bacterial vaginosis is an infection without inflammation caused by *G. vaginalis, A. vaginae*, or *Megasphaera* sp.
30. Diagnosis of *G. vaginalis* is based on the presence of clue cells. NAATs are used to identify *A. vaginae* or *Megasphaera* sp.

Viral Diseases of the Genital Systems (pp. 784–786)

Genital Herpes (pp. 784–785)

1. Herpes simplex viruses (HSV-1 and HSV-2) cause genital herpes.
2. Symptoms of the infection are painful urination, genital irritation, and fluid-filled vesicles.
3. The virus might enter a latent stage in nerve cells. Vesicles reappear following trauma and hormonal changes.
4. Neonatal herpes is contracted during fetal development or birth. It can result in neurological damage or infant fatalities.

Genital Warts (pp. 785–786)

5. Human papillomaviruses cause warts.
6. Some human papillomaviruses that cause genital warts cause cancer.

AIDS (p. 786)

7. AIDS is a sexually transmitted disease of the immune system (see Chapter 19).
8. Other viral STIs that do not infect the genitourinary system include Zika virus disease, hepatitis B, and hepatitis C (see Chapter 22 and Chapter 25).

Fungal Disease of the Genital Systems (pp. 786–788)

Candidiasis (pp. 786–788)

1. *C. albicans* causes NGU in men and vulvovaginal candidiasis, or yeast infection, in women.
2. Vulvovaginal candidiasis is characterized by lesions that produce itching and irritation.
3. Predisposing factors are pregnancy, diabetes, and broad-spectrum antibacterial chemotherapy.
4. Diagnosis is based on observation of the fungus and its isolation from lesions.

Protozoal Disease of the Genital Systems (pp. 788–789)

Trichomoniasis (pp. 788–789)

1. *T. vaginalis* causes trichomoniasis when the pH of the vagina increases.
2. Diagnosis is based on observation of the protozoa in purulent discharges from the site of infection.

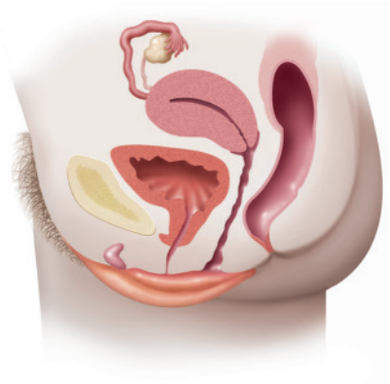
Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. DRAW IT Diagram the pathway taken by *E. coli* to cause cystitis. Do the same for pyelonephritis. Diagram the pathway taken by *N. gonorrhoeae* to cause PID.



2. How are urinary tract infections acquired?
3. Explain why *E. coli* is frequently implicated in cystitis in females.
4. Name one organism that causes pyelonephritis. What are the portals of entry for microbes that cause pyelonephritis?
5. Complete the following table:

Disease	Causative Agent	Symptoms	Method of Diagnosis	Treatment
Bacterial vaginosis				
Gonorrhea				
Syphilis				
PID				
NGU				
LGV				
Chancroid				

6. Describe the symptoms of genital herpes. What is the causative agent? When is this infection least likely to be transmitted?
7. Name one fungus and one protozoan that can cause genital system infections. What symptoms would lead you to suspect these infections?
8. List the genital infections that cause congenital and neonatal infections. How can transmission to a fetus or newborn be prevented?
9. NAME IT Intracellular reticulate bodies of this gram-negative bacterium convert to elementary bodies that can infect a new host cell.

Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following is usually transmitted by contaminated water?
   a. *Chlamydia*
   b. leptospirosis
   c. syphilis
   d. trichomoniasis
   e. none of the above

Use the following choices to answer questions 2–5:
   a. *Candida*
   b. *Chlamydia*
   c. *Gardnerella*
   d. *Neisseria*
   e. *Trichomonas*

2. Microscopic examination of vaginal smear shows flagellated eukaryotes.
3. Microscopic examination of vaginal smear shows ovoid eukaryotic cell.
4. Microscopic examination of vaginal smear shows epithelial cells covered with bacteria.
5. Microscopic examination of vaginal smear shows gram-negative cocci in phagocytes.

Use the following choices to answer questions 6–8:
   a. candidiasis
   b. bacterial vaginosis
   c. genital herpes
   d. lymphogranuloma venereum
   e. trichomoniasis

6. Difficult to treat with chemotherapy
7. Fluid-filled vesicles
8. Frothy, fishy discharge

Use the following choices to answer questions 9 and 10:
   a. *C. trachomatis*
   b. *E. coli*
   c. *Mycobacterium hominis*
   d. *S. saprophyticus*

9. The most common cause of cystitis
10. In cases of NGU, diagnosis is made using PCR to detect microbial DNA.

Analysis

1. The tropical skin disease called yaws is transmitted by direct contact. Its causative agent, *Treponema pallidum pertenue*, is indistinguishable from *T. pallidum pallidum*. Syphilis epidemics in Europe coincided with the return of Columbus from the Americas. How might *T. pallidum pertenue* have evolved into *T. pallidum pallidum* in the temperate climate of Europe?
2. Why can frequent douching be a predisposing factor to bacterial vaginosis, vulvovaginal candidiasis, or trichomoniasis?
3. *Neisseria* is cultured on Thayer-Martin media, consisting of chocolate agar and nystatin, incubated in a 5% CO_2 environment. How is this selective for *Neisseria*?

4. The following list is a key to selected microorganisms that cause genitourinary infections. Complete this key by listing genera discussed in this chapter in the blanks that correspond to their respective characteristics.

Gram-negative bacteria
- Spirochete
  - Aerobic: a. _____
  - Microaerophilic: b. _____
- Coccus
  - Oxidase-positive: c. _____
- Bacillus, nonmotile
  - Requires X factor: d. _____

Gram-positive wall: e. _____

Obligate intracellular parasite: f. _____

Lacking cell wall
- Urease-positive: g. _____
- Urease-negative: h. _____

Fungus
- Pseudohyphae: i. _____

Protozoa
- Flagella: j. _____

No organism observed/cultured from patient: k. _____

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. A previously healthy 19-year-old cisgender woman was admitted to a hospital after 2 days of nausea, vomiting, headache, and neck stiffness. Cerebrospinal fluid and cervical cultures showed gram-negative diplococci in leukocytes; a blood culture was negative. What disease did she have? How was it probably acquired?
2. A 28-year-old woman was admitted to a Wisconsin hospital with a 1-week history of arthritis of the left knee. Four days later, a 32-year-old man was examined for a 2-week history of urethritis and a swollen, painful left wrist. A 20-year-old woman seen in a Philadelphia hospital had pain in the right knee, left ankle, and left wrist for 3 days. Pathogens cultured from synovial fluid or urethral culture were gram-negative diplococci that required proline to grow. Antibiotic sensitivity tests gave the following results:

Antibiotic	MIC Tested (μg/ml)	Susceptible MIC (μg/ml)
Cefoxitin	0.5	≤2
Penicillin	8	≤0.06
Spectinomycin	64	≤32
Tetracycline	4	≤0.25

What is the pathogen, and how is this disease transmitted? Which of the antibiotics should be used for treatment? What is the evidence that these cases are related?

3. Using the following information, determine what the disease is and how the infant's illness might have been prevented:

May 11:	A 23-year-old woman has her first prenatal examination. She is $4\frac{1}{2}$ months pregnant. Her VDRL results are negative.
June 6:	The woman returns to her physician complaining of a labial lesion of a few days' duration. A biopsy is negative for malignancy, and herpes test results are negative.
July 1:	The woman returns to her physician because the labial lesion continues to cause some discomfort.
Sept. 15:	The baby's father has multiple penile lesions and a generalized body rash.
Sept. 25:	The woman delivers her baby. Her RPR is 32, and the infant's is 128.
Oct. 1:	The woman takes her infant to a pediatrician because the baby is lethargic. She is told the infant is healthy and not to worry.
Oct. 2:	The baby's father has a persistent body rash and plantar and palmar rashes.
Nov. 8:	The infant becomes acutely ill with pneumonia and is hospitalized. The admitting physician finds signs of osteochondritis.

27 Environmental Microbiology

Microbes, especially those that belong to the Domains Bacteria and Archaea, make up the **Earth microbiome**. Microbes live on plant leaves and roots, in insects, and in the most widely varied habitats on Earth. They are found in boiling hot springs, and as many as 5000 bacteria have been isolated from each milliliter of snow at the South Pole. Microbes have been recovered from minute openings in rocks a kilometer (0.62 mile) or more below the planet surface. Explorations of the deepest ocean have revealed large numbers of microbes living there, in eternal darkness and subject to incredible pressures. Microbes are also found in clear mountain streams flowing from a melting glacier and in waters nearly saturated with salts, such as those of the Dead Sea.

In previous chapters, we focused primarily on the disease-causing capabilities of microorganisms. Controlling infectious disease is one aspect of environmental microbiology; for example, environmental health microbiologists test drinking water regularly to ensure that it is free of pathogens. One such pathogen, *Vibrio cholerae,* shown in the photo, is the topic of the Clinical Case in this chapter. In this chapter you will also learn about many of the positive functions microbes perform in the environment. The ecological services provided by the Earth microbiome, such as recycling nitrogen and removing pollutants, are essential for maintaining life on Earth.

▶ ***Vibrio cholerae*** **bacteria are curved cells with a single flagellum.**

In the Clinic

As an environmental nurse, you have been assigned by the Centers of Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) to assist with the newly formed National Wastewater Surveillance System (NWSS) program. The mission of the NWSS is to work with local authorities to monitor wastewater for the presence of the virus responsible for COVID-19. **What is the benefit of wastewater surveillance? What diseases, in addition to COVID-19, are monitored using this approach?**

Hint: Read about water purity tests later in this chapter.

Microbial Habitats and Symbiosis

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

27-1 Define *extremophile*, and identify two "extreme" habitats.

27-2 Define *symbiosis*.

27-3 Define *mycorrhiza*, differentiate endomycorrhizae from ectomycorrhizae, and give an example of each.

The diversity of microbial populations indicates that they take advantage of any niches found in their environment. Different amounts of oxygen, light, or nutrients may exist within a few millimeters in the soil. As a population of aerobic organisms uses up the available oxygen, anaerobes are able to grow. If the soil is disturbed by plowing, earthworms, or other activity, the aerobes will again be able to grow to repeat this succession.

ASM: Because the true diversity of microbial life is largely unknown, its effects and potential benefits have not been fully explored.

Microbes that live in extreme conditions of temperature, acidity, alkalinity, or salinity are called **extremophiles**. Most are members of the Archaea. The enzymes (**extremozymes**) that make growth possible under these conditions have been of great interest to industries because they can tolerate extremes of temperature, salinity, and pH that would inactivate other enzymes.

Microorganisms live in an intensely competitive environment and must exploit any advantage they can. They may metabolize common nutrients more rapidly or use nutrients that competing organisms cannot metabolize. Some, such as the lactic acid bacteria that are so useful in making dairy products, are able to make an environmental niche inhospitable to competing organisms. The lactic acid bacteria are unable to use oxygen as an electron acceptor and are able to ferment sugars only to lactic acid, leaving most of the energy unused. However, the acidity inhibits the growth of more efficient, competing microbes.

Symbiosis is a close association between two unlike organisms (see Chapter 14). Economically, one of the most important examples of an animal–microbe symbiosis is that of the ruminants, animals that have a tanklike digestive organ called a *rumen*. Ruminants, such as cattle and sheep, graze on cellulose-rich plants. Bacteria in the rumen ferment the cellulose into compounds that are absorbed into the animal's blood and subsequently are used for carbon and energy. Rumen protozoa keep the bacterial population under control by eating bacteria. Similarly, wood-eating insects such as termites harbor cellulose-degrading bacteria in their digestive tracts.

Another important example of symbiosis is the relationship between plant roots and certain fungi, called **mycorrhizae**, or mycorrhizal symbionts (*myco* = fungus; *rhiza* = root). There are two primary types of these fungi: *endomycorrhizae*, also known as *arbuscular mycorrhizae*, which penetrate plant root cells; and *ectomycorrhizae* that wrap around plant roots. Both types function like root hairs on plants; that is, they extend the surface area through which the plant can absorb nutrients, especially phosphorus, which is not very mobile in soil.

(a) Mycorrhizal infection influences the growth of many plants. The corn plant on the right was inoculated with mycorrhizae; the plant on the left was not.

(b) Truffles. An ectomycorrhiza, usually of oak trees.

Figure 27.1 Mycorrhizae and their considerable commercial value.

Q Why are mycorrhizae valuable for the uptake of phosphorus?

Most grasses and other plants are surprisingly dependent on these fungi for proper growth, and their presence is nearly universal in the plant kingdom. Managers of commercial pine tree farms, for example, must ensure that seedlings are inoculated with soil containing effective mycorrhizae (Figure 27.1a).

Truffles, known as a food delicacy, are ectomycorrhizae, usually of oak trees (Figure 27.1b). These "underground mushrooms" have developed a different, nonaerial method of distributing their spores. This distribution depends upon the truffles' ability to attract the attention of animals that will ingest them and then deposit undigested spores into new locations.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **27-1** Identify two habitats for extremophile organisms.
- **27-2** What is the definition of *symbiosis*?
- **27-3** Is a truffle an endomycorrhiza or an ectomycorrhiza?

Soil Microbiology and Biogeochemical Cycles

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

27-4 Define *biogeochemical cycle*.

27-5 Outline the carbon cycle, and explain the roles of microorganisms in this cycle.

27-6 Outline the nitrogen cycle, and explain the roles of microorganisms in this cycle.

27-7 Define *ammonification*, *nitrification*, *denitrification*, and *nitrogen fixation*.

27-8 Outline the sulfur cycle, and explain the roles of microorganisms in this cycle.

27-9 Describe how an ecological community can exist without light.

27-10 Compare and contrast the carbon cycle and the phosphorus cycle.

27-11 Give two examples of the use of bacteria to remove pollutants.

27-12 Define *bioremediation*.

The soil microbiome consists of billions of microbes. Typical soil has millions of bacteria in each gram. The microbial population of soil is largest in the top few centimeters and declines rapidly with depth. The most numerous organisms in soil are bacteria. Although actinomycetes are bacteria, they are usually considered separately.

ASM: Microorganisms and their environment interact with and modify each other.

Bacterial soil populations are usually estimated using plate counts on nutrient media (see Chapter 6), and the actual numbers are probably greatly underestimated by this method. No single nutrient medium or growth condition can possibly meet all the nutritional and other requirements of soil microorganisms. Metagenomics (see Chapter 9) is currently being used to look at soil microbiomes. This technique looks for rRNA genes in soil samples. Using metagenomics, microbiologists have discovered more new microorganisms in the twenty-first century than at any time since van Leeuwenhoek first saw microorganisms. However, these methods provide only limited information on the metabolic activities of the microorganisms in soil and can't differentiate between DNA in live and dead bacteria, so there is much left to discover.

We can think of soil as a "biological fire." A leaf falling from a tree is consumed by this fire as microbes in the soil metabolize its organic matter. Elements in the leaf enter the **biogeochemical cycles** for carbon, nitrogen, and sulfur that we will discuss in this chapter. In biogeochemical cycles, elements are oxidized and reduced by microorganisms to meet their metabolic needs. (See the discussion of oxidation-reduction in Chapter 5.) Without biogeochemical cycles, life on Earth would cease to exist.

The Carbon Cycle

The primary biogeochemical cycle is the **carbon cycle** (Figure 27.2). All organisms, including plants, microbes, and animals, contain large amounts of carbon in the form of organic compounds such as cellulose, starches, fats, and proteins. Let's take a closer look at how these organic compounds are formed.

Recall from Chapter 5 that autotrophs perform an essential role for all life on Earth by reducing carbon dioxide to form organic matter. When you look at a tree, you might think that its mass has come from the soil where it grows. In fact, its great mass of cellulose is derived from the 0.04% of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere. This occurs as a result of photosynthesis, the first step of the carbon cycle in which photoautotrophs *fix* (incorporate) carbon dioxide into organic matter using energy from sunlight.

In the next step of the cycle, chemoheterotrophs such as animals, protozoa, and bacteria eat autotrophs and may in turn be eaten by other heterotrophs. Thus, as the organic compounds of the autotrophs are digested and resynthesized, the carbon atoms of carbon dioxide are transferred from organism to organism up the food chain.

Chemoheterotrophs, including animals, use some of the organic molecules to satisfy their energy requirements. When this energy is released through respiration, carbon dioxide immediately becomes available to start the cycle over again. Much of the carbon remains within the organisms until they excrete it as wastes or die. When plants and animals die, these organic compounds are decomposed by bacteria and fungi. During decomposition, the organic compounds are oxidized, and CO_2 is returned to the cycle.

Carbon is stored in rocks, such as limestone ($CaCO_3$), and is dissolved as carbonate ions (CO_3^{2-}) in oceans. Vast deposits of fossil organic matter exist in the form of fossil fuels, such as coal and petroleum. Burning these fossil fuels releases CO_2, increasing the amount of CO_2 in the atmosphere. The Big Picture later in this chapter describes how increased atmospheric carbon dioxide is causing **global warming**.

An interesting aspect of the carbon cycle is methane (CH_4) gas. Sediments on the ocean floor contain an estimated 10 trillion tons of methane, about twice as much as the Earth's deposits of fossil fuels such as coal and petroleum. Furthermore, methanogenic bacteria in the ocean's depths are constantly producing more. Methane is 25 times more potent as a greenhouse gas than is carbon dioxide, and the Earth's environment would be dangerously altered if all this gas were to escape into the atmosphere.

CLINICAL CASE Clean Water—A Matter of Life and Death

Two days ago, Charity, a 48-year-old journalist from Miami, returned to the United States from a 6-week trip to several countries for a story she is writing on recovery progress after major earthquakes. When she first came home, Charity began to experience diarrhea, which became worse as the day progressed. After the second day of severe diarrhea and the beginning of leg pain, Charity seeks care at a local outpatient health care facility. She reports no vomiting or fever but has 10 watery stools per day without visible blood or mucus.

What immediate treatment does Charity need? Read on to find out.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

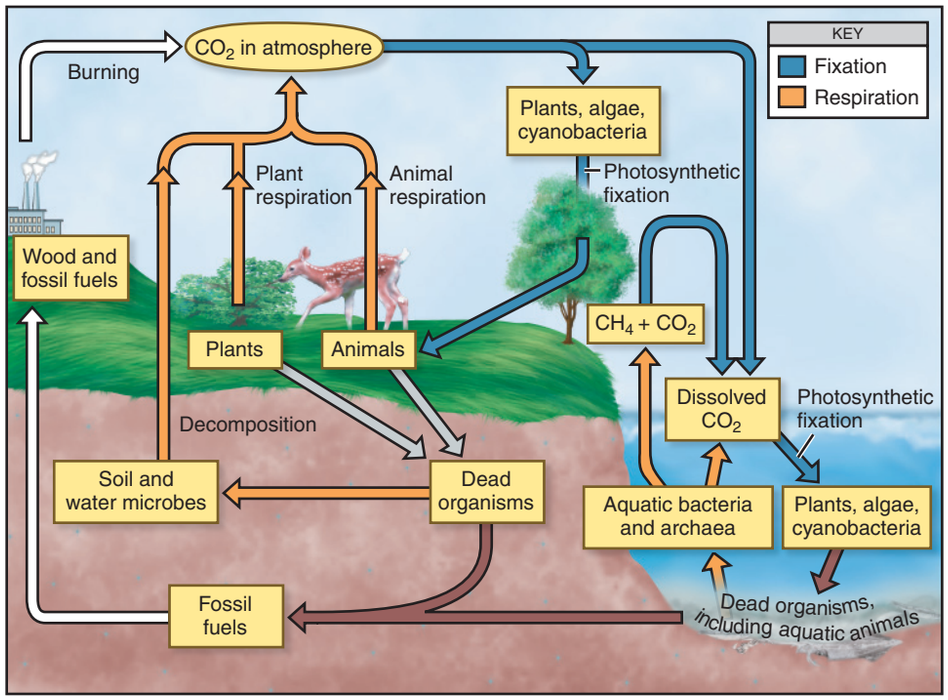


Figure 27.2 The carbon cycle. On a global scale, the return of CO_2 to the atmosphere by respiration closely balances its removal by fixation. However, the burning of wood and fossil fuels adds more CO_2 to the atmosphere. The destruction of forests and wetlands removes CO_2-fixing organisms; as a result, the amount of atmospheric CO_2 is steadily increasing.

Q How does the accumulation of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere affect Earth's climate?

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **27-4** What biogeochemical cycle is much publicized as contributing to global warming?
- **27-5** What is the main source of the carbon in the cellulose forming the mass of a forest?

The Nitrogen Cycle

The **nitrogen cycle** is shown in Figure 27.3. All organisms need nitrogen to synthesize protein, nucleic acids, and other nitrogen-containing compounds. Molecular nitrogen (N_2) makes up almost 80% of the Earth's atmosphere. For plants to assimilate and use nitrogen, it must be fixed, that is, taken up and combined into organic compounds. The activities of specific microorganisms are important to the conversion of nitrogen to usable forms.

Ammonification

Almost all the nitrogen in the soil exists in organic molecules, primarily in proteins. When an organism dies, the process of microbial decomposition results in the hydrolytic breakdown of proteins into amino acids. In a process called **deamination**, the amino groups of amino acids are removed and converted into ammonia (NH_3). This release of ammonia is called **ammonification** (see Figure 27.3). Ammonification, brought about by numerous bacteria including *Bacillus* and *Proteus*, can be represented as follows:

$$\text{Proteins from dead cells and waste products} \xrightarrow{\text{Microbial decomposition}} \text{Amino acids}$$

$$\text{Amino acids} \xrightarrow{\text{Microbial decomposition}} \text{Ammonia } (NH_3)$$

Microbial growth releases extracellular proteolytic enzymes that decompose proteins. The resulting amino acids are transported into the microbial cells, where ammonification occurs. The fate of the ammonia produced by ammonification depends on soil conditions (see the discussion of denitrification, which follows). Because ammonia is a gas, it rapidly disappears from dry soil, but in moist soil it becomes solubilized in water, and ammonium ions (NH_4^+) are formed:

$$NH_3 + H_2O \longrightarrow NH_4OH \longrightarrow NH_4^+ + OH^-$$

Ammonium ions from this sequence of reactions are used by bacteria and plants for amino acid synthesis.

Nitrification

The next sequence of reactions in the nitrogen cycle involves the oxidation of the nitrogen in the ammonium ion to produce nitrate, a process called **nitrification**. Living in the soil are autotrophic nitrifying bacteria, such as those of the genera *Nitrosomonas* and *Nitrobacter*. These microbes obtain energy by oxidizing ammonia or nitrite. In the first stage, *Nitrosomonas* oxidizes ammonium to nitrites:

$$\underset{\text{Ammonium ion}}{NH_4^+} \xrightarrow{\text{Nitrosomonas}} \underset{\text{Nitrite ion}}{NO_2^-}$$

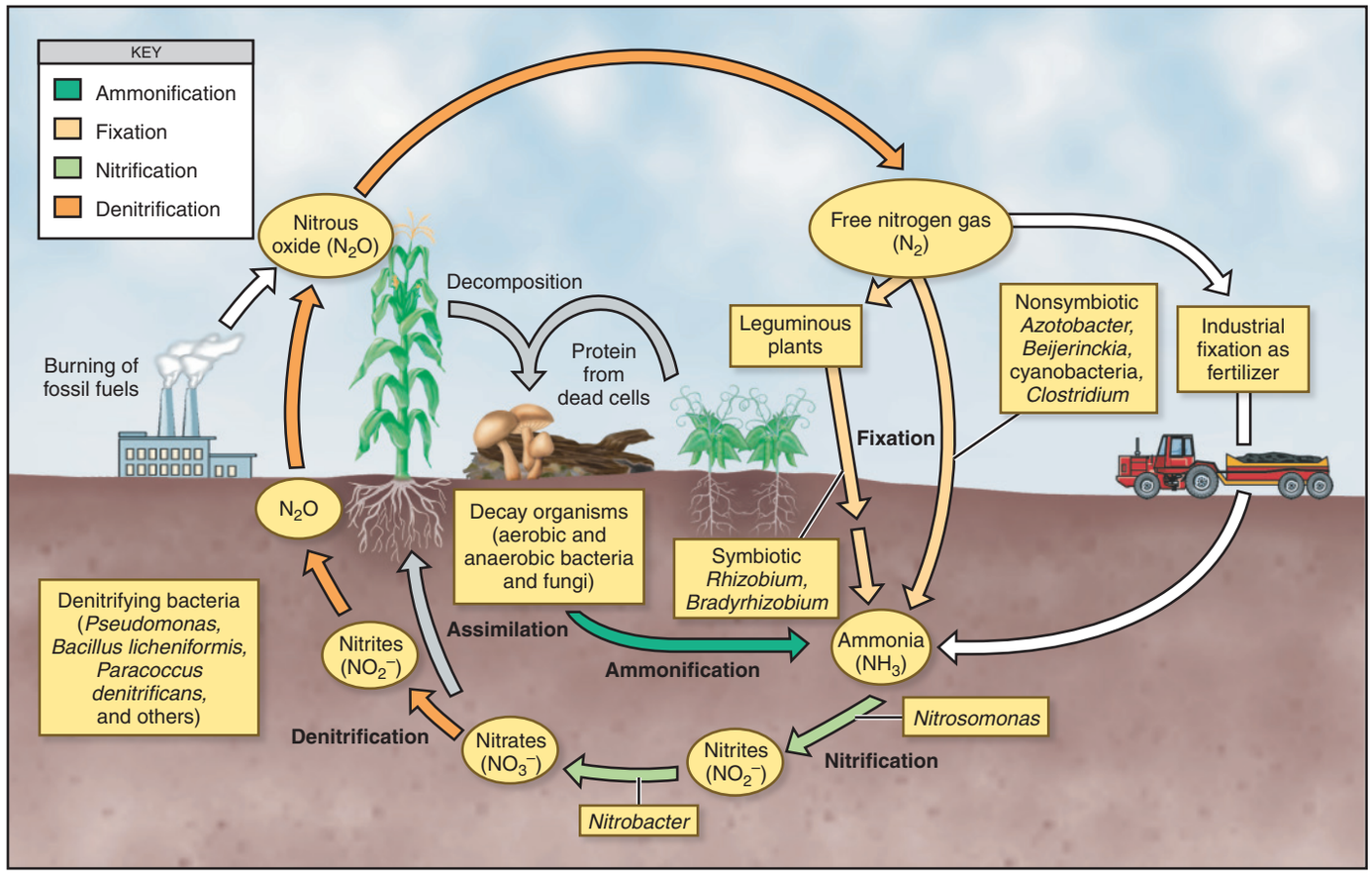


Figure 27.3 The nitrogen cycle. In general, nitrogen in the atmosphere goes through fixation, nitrification, and denitrification. Nitrates assimilated into plants and animals after nitrification go through decomposition, ammonification, and then nitrification again.

Q Which processes are performed exclusively by bacteria?

In the second stage, such organisms as *Nitrobacter* oxidize nitrites to nitrates:

$$\underset{\text{Nitrite ion}}{NO_2^-} \xrightarrow{\textit{Nitrobacter}} \underset{\text{Nitrate ion}}{NO_3^-}$$

Plants tend to use nitrate as their source of nitrogen for protein synthesis because nitrate is highly mobile in soil and is more likely than ammonium to encounter a plant root. Ammonium ions would actually make a more efficient source of nitrogen because they require less energy to incorporate into protein, but these positively charged ions are usually bound to negatively charged clays in the soil, whereas the negatively charged nitrate ions are not bound.

Denitrification

The form of nitrogen resulting from nitrification is fully oxidized and no longer contains any biologically usable energy. However, it can be used as an electron acceptor by microbes metabolizing other organic energy sources in the absence of atmospheric oxygen (see the discussion of anaerobic respiration in Chapter 5). This process, called **denitrification**, can lead to a loss of nitrogen to the atmosphere, especially as nitrogen gas. Denitrification can be represented as follows:

$$\underset{\text{Nitrate ion}}{NO_3^-} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Nitrite ion}}{NO_2^-} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Nitrous oxide}}{N_2O} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Nitrogen gas}}{N_2}$$

Denitrification occurs in waterlogged soils, where little oxygen is available. In the absence of oxygen as an electron acceptor, denitrifying bacteria substitute the nitrates of agricultural fertilizer. This converts much of the valuable nitrate into gaseous nitrogen that enters the atmosphere and represents a considerable economic loss.

Nitrogen Fixation

We live at the bottom of an ocean of nitrogen gas. The air we breathe is about 79% nitrogen, and above every acre of soil (the area of an American football field from the goal line to the opposite 10-yard line, or 50.6 × 80 meters) stands a column of nitrogen weighing about 32,000 tons. But only a few species of

bacteria, including cyanobacteria, can use it directly as a nitrogen source. The process by which they convert nitrogen gas to ammonia is known as **nitrogen fixation**.

Bacteria that are responsible for nitrogen fixation all rely on the same enzyme, *nitrogenase*. It is estimated that Earth's entire supply of this essential enzyme could fit into a single large bucket. Nitrogenase is inactivated by oxygen. Therefore, it probably evolved early in the history of the planet, before the atmosphere contained much molecular oxygen and before nitrogen-containing compounds were available from decaying organic matter. Nitrogen fixation is brought about by two types of microorganisms: free-living and symbiotic. (Agricultural fertilizers are made up of nitrogen that has been fixed by industrial physical–chemical processes.)

Free-Living Nitrogen-Fixing Bacteria Free-living nitrogen-fixing bacteria are found in particularly high concentrations in the *rhizosphere*, a region roughly 2 millimeters from the plant root. The rhizosphere represents something of a nutritional oasis in the soil, especially in grasslands. Among the free-living bacteria that can fix nitrogen are aerobic species such as *Azotobacter*. These aerobic organisms apparently shield the anaerobic nitrogenase enzyme from oxygen by, among other things, having a very high rate of oxygen use that minimizes the diffusion of oxygen into the interior of the cell, where the enzyme is located.

Another free-living obligate aerobe that fixes nitrogen is *Beijerinckia* (bī-yer-INK-ē-ah). Some anaerobic bacteria, such as certain species of *Clostridium* (klos-TRID-ē-um), also fix nitrogen. The bacterium *C. pasteurianum* (PAS-tyer-ē-ā-num), an obligately anaerobic, nitrogen-fixing microorganism, is a prominent example.

Many species of aerobic, photosynthesizing cyanobacteria fix nitrogen. Because their energy supply is independent of carbohydrates in soil or water, they are especially useful suppliers of nitrogen to the environment. Cyanobacteria usually carry their nitrogenase enzymes in specialized structures called **heterocysts** that provide anaerobic conditions for fixation (Figure 27.4).

Most of the free-living nitrogen-fixing bacteria are capable of fixing large amounts of nitrogen under laboratory conditions. However, in the soil there is usually a shortage of usable carbohydrates to supply the energy needed to reduce nitrogen to ammonia, which is then incorporated into protein. Nevertheless, these nitrogen-fixing bacteria make important contributions to the nitrogen economy of such areas as grasslands, forests, and the arctic tundra.

Symbiotic Nitrogen-Fixing Bacteria Symbiotic nitrogen-fixing bacteria play an even more important role in plant growth for crop production. Members of the genera *Rhizobium*, *Bradyrhizobium*, and others infect the roots of leguminous plants, such as soybeans, beans, peas, peanuts, alfalfa, and clover. (These agriculturally important plants are only a few of the thousands

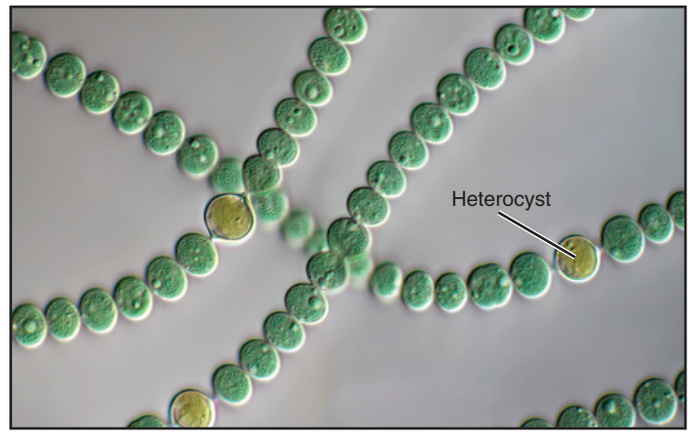


Figure 27.4 ***Anabaena*.** This cyanobacterium fixes significant amounts of nitrogen in rice paddies. Nitrogen fixation occurs in the heterocysts.

Q What is the major contribution of cyanobacteria as symbionts?

of known leguminous (Fabaceae) species, many of which are bushy plants or small trees found in poor soils in many parts of the world.) Rhizobia, as these bacteria are commonly known, are specially adapted to particular leguminous plant species, on which they form **root nodules** (Figure 27.5). Nitrogen is then fixed by a symbiotic process of the plant and the bacteria. The plant furnishes anaerobic conditions and growth nutrients for the bacteria, and the bacteria fix nitrogen that can be incorporated into plant protein.

There are similar examples of symbiotic nitrogen-fixing *Frankia* in nonleguminous plants, such as alder trees. The growth of 1 acre of alder trees can fix about 50 kg of nitrogen each year; the trees thus make a valuable addition to the forest economy.

Another important contribution to the nitrogen economy of forests is made by **lichens**, which are a combination of fungus and an alga or a cyanobacterium in a mutualistic relationship (see Figure 12.11). When one symbiont is a nitrogen-fixing cyanobacterium, the product is fixed nitrogen that eventually enriches the forest soil. Free-living cyanobacteria can fix significant amounts of nitrogen in desert soils after rains and on the surface of arctic tundra soils. Rice paddies can accumulate heavy growths of such nitrogen-fixing organisms. The cyanobacteria also form a symbiosis with a small floating fern, *Azolla*, which grows thickly in rice paddy waters.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **27-6** What is the common name for the group of microbes that oxidize soil nitrogen into a form that is mobile in soil and likely to be used by plants for nutrition?
- **27-7** Bacteria of the genus *Pseudomonas*, in the absence of oxygen, will use fully oxidized nitrogen as an electron acceptor, a process in the nitrogen cycle that is given what name?

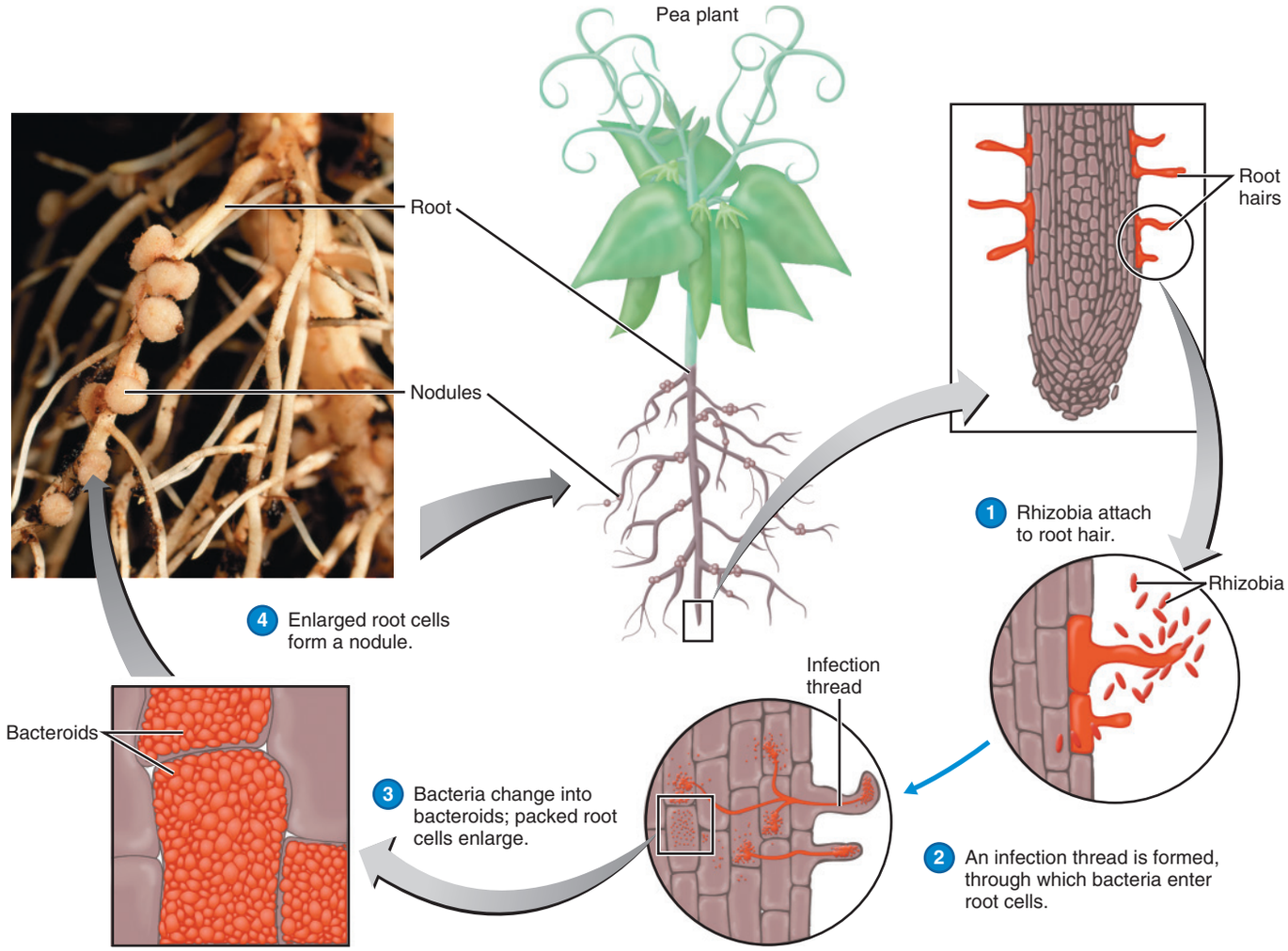


Figure 27.5 The formation of a root nodule. Members of the nitrogen-fixing genera *Rhizobium* and *Bradyrhizobium* form these nodules on legumes. This mutualistic association is beneficial to both the plant and the bacteria.

Q **In nature, are leguminous plants more likely to be valuable in rich agricultural soils or in poor desert soils?**

The Sulfur Cycle

The **sulfur cycle** (Figure 27.6) and nitrogen cycle resemble each other in the sense that they represent numerous oxidation states of these elements. The most reduced forms of sulfur are the sulfides, such as the odorous gas hydrogen sulfide (H_2S). Like the ammonium ion of the nitrogen cycle, this is a reduced compound that generally forms under anaerobic conditions. In turn it represents a source of energy for autotrophic bacteria. These bacteria convert the reduced sulfur in H_2S into elemental sulfur (S^0) granules and fully oxidized sulfates (SO_4^{2-}).

Several phototrophic bacteria, such as the green and purple sulfur bacteria, also oxidize H_2S, forming internal sulfur granules (see Figure 11.14). It is important to recognize that these organisms are using light for energy; the hydrogen sulfide is used to reduce CO_2 (see Chapter 5). Like chemoautotrophic *Thiomargarita*, they can further oxidize the sulfur to sulfate ions (see Figure 11.28).

Plants and bacteria incorporate sulfates to become part of sulfur-containing amino acids for humans and other animals. There, they form disulfide links that give structure to proteins. As proteins are decomposed, in a process called **dissimilation**, the sulfur is released as hydrogen sulfide to reenter the cycle.

Life without Sunshine

Interestingly, it is possible for entire biological communities to exist without photosynthesis by exploiting the energy in H_2S. Chemoautotrophs oxidize H_2S to produce NADH (Figure 5.10), which goes to the electron transport chain. Such communities occur, for example, around deep-sea vents. See **Exploring the Microbiome**. Deep caves, totally isolated from sunlight, have been

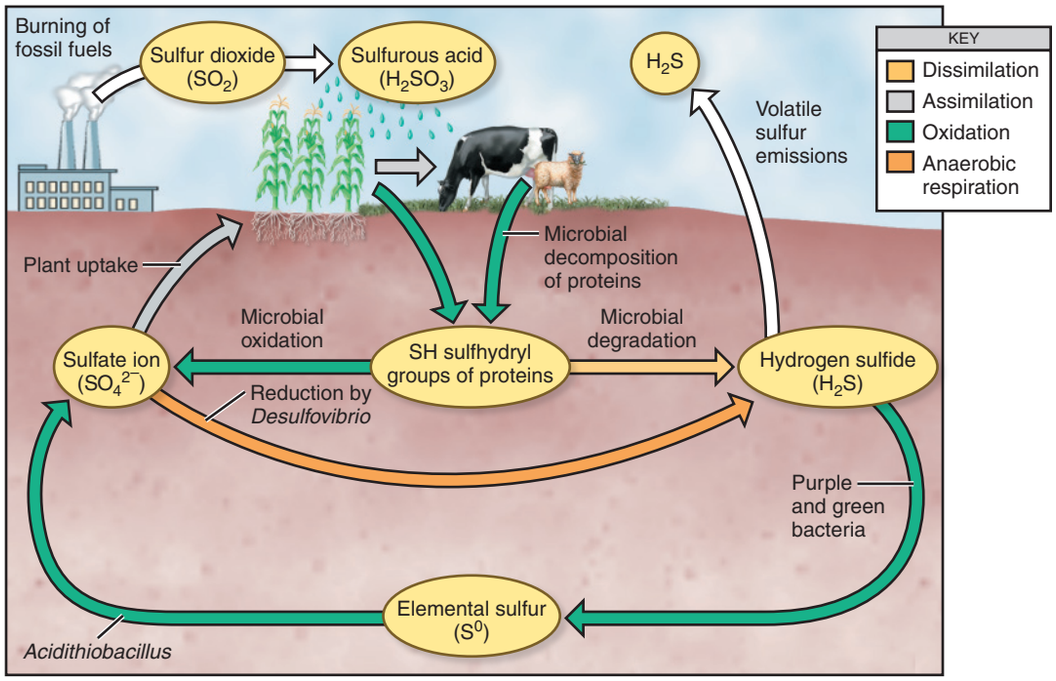


Figure 27.6 The sulfur cycle. Reduced forms of sulfur such as H_2S and elemental sulfur (S^0) are energy sources for some microbes under aerobic or anaerobic conditions. Under anaerobic conditions, H_2S can be used as a substitute for H_2O in photosynthesis by purple and green bacteria (see Chapter 11) to produce S^0. Oxidized forms of sulfur, such as sulfates (SO_4^{2-}), are used as electron acceptors, as a substitute for oxygen, under anaerobic conditions by certain bacteria. Many organisms assimilate sulfates to make the —SH groups of proteins.

Q **Why is a source of sulfur necessary for all organisms?**

discovered that also support entire biological communities. The **primary producers** in these systems are chemoautotrophic bacteria rather than photoautotrophic plants or microbes.

Another microbial ecosystem operating far from sunlight has been discovered over 1 km deep within rocks, including shales, granites, and basalts. Such bacteria are called **endoliths** (inside rocks), which must grow in the near absence of oxygen and with minimal nutrient supplies. Carbon dioxide dissolved in the water serves as a carbon source, and cellular organic matter is produced. Some is excreted, or is released upon the death and lysis of the microbe, and becomes available for the growth of other microbes. Nutrient inputs, especially nitrogen, are very small in this environment, and generation times may be measured in many years.

The Phosphorus Cycle

Another important nutritional element that is part of a biogeochemical cycle is phosphorus. The availability of phosphorus may determine whether plants and other organisms can grow in an area. The problems associated with excess phosphorus (eutrophication) are described later in the chapter.

Phosphorus exists primarily as phosphate ions (PO_4^{3-}) and undergoes very little change in its oxidation state. The **phosphorus cycle** instead involves changes from soluble to insoluble forms and from organic to inorganic phosphate, often in relation to pH. For example, phosphate in rocks can be solubilized by the acid produced by bacteria such as *Acidithiobacillus*. Unlike the other cycles, there is no volatile phosphorus-containing product to return phosphorus to the atmosphere in the way carbon dioxide, nitrogen gas, and sulfur dioxide are returned. Therefore, phosphorus tends to accumulate in the seas. It can be retrieved by mining the above-ground sediments of ancient seas, mostly as deposits of calcium phosphate [$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$]. Seabirds also mine phosphorus from the sea by eating phosphorus-containing fish and depositing it as guano (bird droppings). Certain small islands inhabited by such birds have long been mined for these deposits as a source of phosphorus for fertilizers.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **27-8** Certain nonphotosynthetic bacteria accumulate granules of sulfur within the cell; are the bacteria using hydrogen sulfide or sulfates as an energy source?
- **27-9** What chemical usually serves as an energy source for organisms that survive in darkness?
- **27-10** Why does phosphorus tend to accumulate in the seas?

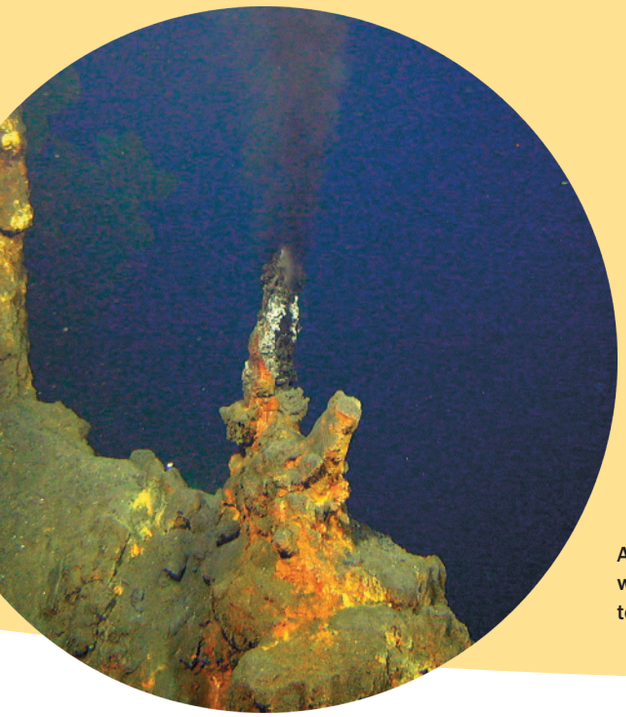
The Degradation of Synthetic Chemicals in Soil and Water

We take for granted that soil microorganisms will degrade materials entering the soil. Natural organic matter, such as falling leaves or animal residues, is in fact readily degraded. However, in this industrial age many chemicals that do not occur in nature (**xenobiotics**), such as plastics, enter the soil in large amounts. In fact, plastics comprise about a fourth of all municipal wastes. A proposed solution to the problem is to develop biodegradable plastics made from polylactide (PLA) produced

EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

Resident Microbes of Earth's Most Extreme Environments

Until humans explored the deep-ocean floor, scientists believed that only a few forms of life could survive in that high-pressure, completely dark, oxygen-poor environment. Then, in 1977, *Alvin*, the deep-sea submersible, carried two scientists 2600 meters below the surface at the Galápagos Rift (about 350 km northeast of the Galápagos Islands). There, amid the vast expanse of barren basalt rocks, the scientists found unexpectedly rich oases of life. Superheated water from beneath the seafloor was rising through fractures in the Earth's crust called vents. They discovered that mats of bacteria were growing along the sides of the vents, where temperatures exceeded 100°C (see the figure).



A microbial biofilm is visible on this deep-sea hydrothermal vent. Water with black sulfide particles is being emitted through the ocean floor at temperatures above 100°C.

Ecosystem of the Hydrothermal Vents

Life at the surface of the world's oceans depends on photosynthetic organisms, such as plants and algae, which harness the sun's energy to fix carbon dioxide (CO_2) to make carbohydrates. At the deep-ocean floor, where no light penetrates, photosynthesis is not possible. The scientists found that the primary producers at the ocean floor are chemoautotrophic bacteria. Using chemical energy from hydrogen sulfide (H_2S) as a source of energy to fix CO_2, the chemoautotrophs create an environment that supports higher life forms. Hydrothermal vents in the seafloor supply the H_2S and CO_2.

New Products from Hydrothermal Vents

Terrestrial fungi and bacteria have had a major impact on the development of biotechnology. Hydrothermal vents are the next frontier in the hunt for new products. A peptide produced by *Thermovibrio ammonificans* was shown to induce apoptosis (cell death) and thus is being studied for its potential anticancer activity. Researchers are growing *Pyrococcus furiosus* because it produces alternative fuels, hydrogen gas and butanol. DNA polymerases (enzymes that synthesize DNA) isolated from two archaea living near deep-sea vents are being used in the polymerase chain reaction (PCR), a technique for making many copies of DNA. In PCR, single-stranded DNA is made by heating a chromosome fragment to 98°C and cooling it so that DNA polymerase can copy each strand. DNA polymerases from *Thermococcus litoralis*, called Vent®, and from *Pyrococcus*, called Deep Vent®, are not denatured at 98°C. These enzymes can be used in automatic thermalcyclers to repeat the heating and cooling cycles, allowing many copies of DNA to be made easily and quickly.

by lactic acid fermentation. When composted (see Figure 27.8), PLA plastic degrades in a few weeks. PLA-based plastics are appearing in a number of commercial products, such as disposable water bottles and drinking cups. Another version of biodegradable plastic, also made by bacterial fermentation, is called polyhydroxyalkanoate, or PHA. Products made of PHA degrade more easily and can stand higher temperatures in use, but they are more expensive than PLA.

Many synthetic chemicals, such as pesticides, are highly resistant to degradation by microbial attack. A well-known example is the insecticide DDT, which proved so resistant that it accumulated to damaging levels in the environment.

Small differences in chemical structure can make large differences in biodegradability. The classic example is that of two herbicides: 2,4-D (the common chemical used to kill lawn weeds) and 2,4,5-T (used to kill shrubs); both were components of Agent Orange, which was used to defoliate jungles during the Vietnam war. The addition of a single chlorine atom to the structure of 2,4-D extends its life in soil from a few days to an indefinite period.

A growing problem is the leaching into groundwaters of toxic materials that are not biodegradable or that degrade very slowly. The sources of these materials may include landfills, illegal industrial dumps, or pesticides applied to agricultural crops.

Bioremediation

The use of microbes to detoxify or degrade pollutants is called **bioremediation**. Oil spills from wrecked tankers and drilling accidents represent some of the most dramatic examples of chemical pollution. Bioremediation occurs naturally as microbes attack the petroleum if conditions are aerobic. However, microbes usually obtain their nutrients in aqueous solution, and oil-based products are relatively nonsoluble. Also,

(a) Oily rocks after the Exxon Valdez oil spill

(b) One month after addition of nitrogen-phosphorous fertilizer

Figure 27.7 Bioremediation of oil.

Q All living organisms require the chemical elements represented in the acronym CHONPS. Which elements can a bacterium obtain from petroleum?

petroleum hydrocarbons are deficient in essential elements, such as nitrogen and phosphorus. Bioremediation of oil spills is greatly enhanced if the resident bacteria are provided with "fertilizer" containing nitrogen and phosphorus (Figure 27.7).

One of the most promising successes for bioremediation occurred on an Alaskan beach following the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill in 1989. Scientists hit on a very simple way to speed up the process: they simply dumped ordinary nitrogen and phosphorus plant fertilizers (**bioenhancers**) onto a test beach. The number of oil-degrading bacteria increased compared with that on unfertilized control beaches, and oil was quickly cleared from the test beach. This technique works on land, but keeping fertilizer near oil in open water oil spills, such as the 2010 well blowout in the Gulf of Mexico, is proving difficult.

Bioremediation may also make use of microbes that have been selected for growth on a certain pollutant or of genetically modified bacteria that are specially adapted to metabolize petroleum products. The addition of such specialized microbes is called **bioaugmentation**.

Solid Municipal Waste

Solid municipal waste (garbage) is most frequently placed into large compacted landfills. Conditions are largely anaerobic, and even presumably biodegradable materials such as paper are not very effectively attacked by microorganisms. In fact, recovering a 20-year-old newspaper in readable condition is not at all unusual. But such anaerobic conditions promote activity of the same methanogens used in the operation of anaerobic sludge digesters to treat sewage (discussed later in this chapter). The methane produced can be tapped with drill holes and burned to generate electricity or purified and introduced into natural gas pipeline systems (see Figure 28.13). Such systems are part of the design of many large landfills in the United States, some of which provide energy for industrial plants and homes.

Composting is a process gardeners use to convert plant remains into the equivalent of natural humus (decomposing organic matter in soil). A pile of leaves or grass clippings will undergo microbial degradation. Under favorable conditions, thermophilic bacteria will raise the temperature of the compost to 55–60°C in a couple of days. After the temperature declines, the pile can be turned to renew the oxygen supply, and a second temperature rise will occur. Over time, the thermophilic microbial populations are replaced by mesophilic populations that slowly continue the conversion to a stable material similar to humus. Municipal wastes are composted in windrows (long, low piles). Municipal waste disposal now also makes increasing use of composting methods (Figure 27.8). Farmers then use the compost in their fields.

Microbial Recycling of E-Waste

Electronic waste, also called e-waste, includes discarded televisions, computers, cell phones, and other electronic devices that go to landfills. In 2019, over 40 million tons of e-waste was taken to landfills. The metals contained in these materials are toxic and leach out of the landfill, but they are also valuable and could be reused. Bacteria may be able to recover these metals; they are currently used to extract metals such as gold and copper from the Earth (see Figure 28.12). Research is underway to use *Chromobacterium violaceum* and *Cupriavidus metallidurans* (koo-prē-AH-vid-us me-tal-li-DUR-anz) to extract gold, palladium, and rare earth metals from e-waste. While growing, *Cupriavidus* can accumulate gold ions, making tiny gold nuggets.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **27-11** Why are petroleum products naturally resistant to metabolism by most bacteria?
- **27-12** What is the definition of the term *bioremediation*?

Solid municipal wastes being turned by a specially designed machine

Figure 27.8 Composting municipal wastes.

Q A compost pile of grass and leaves is very high in carbon; does it have much nitrogen?

Aquatic Microbiology and Sewage Treatment

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

27-13 Describe the freshwater and seawater habitats of microorganisms.

27-14 Explain how wastewater pollution is a public health problem and an ecological problem.

27-15 Discuss the causes and effects of eutrophication.

27-16 Explain how water is tested for bacteriological purity.

27-17 Describe how pathogens are removed from drinking water.

27-18 Compare primary, secondary, and tertiary sewage treatment.

27-19 List some of the biochemical activities that take place in an anaerobic sludge digester.

27-20 Define *biochemical oxygen demand (BOD)*, *activated sludge system*, *trickling filter*, *septic tank*, and *oxidation pond*.

Aquatic microbiology refers to the study of microorganisms and their activities in natural waters, such as lakes, ponds, streams, rivers, estuaries, and oceans.

Aquatic Microorganisms

Large numbers of microorganisms in a body of water generally indicate high nutrient levels in the water. Water contaminated by inflows from sewage systems or from biodegradable industrial organic wastes is relatively high in bacterial numbers. Similarly, ocean estuaries (fed by rivers) have higher nutrient levels and therefore larger microbial populations than other shoreline waters.

In water, particularly with low nutrient concentrations, microorganisms tend to grow on stationary surfaces and on particulate matter. In this way, a microorganism has contact with more nutrients than if it were randomly suspended and floating freely with the current. Many bacteria whose main habitat is water often have appendages and holdfasts that attach to various surfaces. One example is *Caulobacter* (see Figure 11.2).

Freshwater Microbiota

A typical lake or pond serves as an example of the various zones and the kinds of microbiota found in a body of water. The **littoral zone** along the shore has considerable rooted vegetation, and light penetrates throughout it. The **limnetic zone** consists of the surface of the open water area away from the shore. The **profundal zone** is the deeper water under the limnetic zone. The **benthic zone** contains the sediment at the bottom.

Microbial populations of freshwater bodies tend to be affected mainly by the availability of oxygen and light. In many ways, light is the more important resource because photosynthetic algae are the main source of organic matter, and hence of energy, for the lake. These organisms are the primary producers of a lake that support a population of bacteria, protozoa, fish, and other aquatic life. Photosynthetic algae are located in the limnetic zone.

Oxygen does not diffuse into water very well, as any aquarium owner knows. Microorganisms growing on nutrients in stagnant water quickly use up the dissolved oxygen in the water. In the oxygenless water, fish die, and anaerobic activity produces odors. Wave action in shallow layers, or water movement in rivers, tends to increase the amount of oxygen throughout the water and aid in the growth of aerobic populations of bacteria. Movement thus improves the quality of water and aids in the degradation of polluting nutrients.

Deeper waters of the profundal and benthic zones have low oxygen concentrations and less light. As light passes through the water column, longer wavelengths are absorbed by the water. It is not unusual for photosynthetic microbes in deeper zones to use different wavelengths of light from those used by surface-layer photosynthesizers (see Figure 12.12a).

Purple and green sulfur bacteria are found in the benthic zone. These bacteria are anaerobic photosynthetic organisms that metabolize H_2S to sulfur and sulfate in the bottom sediments of the benthic zone.

The sediment in the benthic zone includes bacteria such as *Desulfovibrio* that use sulfate (SO_4^{2-}) as an electron acceptor and reduce it to H_2S. Methane-producing bacteria are also part of these anaerobic benthic populations. In swamps, marshes, or bottom sediments, they produce methane gas. *Clostridium* species are common in shallow-bottom sediments and may include botulism organisms, particularly those causing outbreaks of botulism in waterfowl. The clostridia grow on animal carcasses, and their toxin is concentrated in maggots feeding on the carcasses. Birds eating the maggots then ingest the toxin. This carcass–maggot cycle can kill millions of birds in a season.

Seawater Microbiota

As knowledge of the microbial life of the oceans expands, largely identified by ribosomal RNA methods (see the discussion of FISH in Chapter 10), biologists are becoming more conscious of the importance of oceanic microbes. Seafloor sediments have been found to have large populations of prokaryotes. These organisms are mostly archaea, which are well adapted to environmental stresses and have low energy requirements. One conclusion, so far, has been that nearly a third of all life on the planet consists of microbes that live, not in ocean waters, but under the seafloor. These microbes make immense amounts of methane gas that could be environmentally damaging if it were to be released into the atmosphere. See the Big Picture.

In the upper, relatively sunlit waters of the ocean, photosynthetic cyanobacteria of the genera *Synechococcus* (si-nek-ō-KOK-kus) and *Prochlorococcus* (prō-KLŌR-ō-kok-kus) are abundant. Populations of different strains vary at different depths according to their adaptations to available sunlight. A drop of seawater might contain 20,000 cells of *Prochlorococcus*, a tiny

sphere less than 0.7 μm in diameter. This unseen population of microscopic organisms fills the upper 100 meters of ocean and exerts a profound influence on life on Earth. The support of oceanic life depends largely on such photosynthetic microscopic life, the marine **phytoplankton** (a term derived from the Greek for wandering plants). Marine phytoplankton produce 50–80% of the O_2 in the atmosphere.

Photosynthetic bacteria such as these form the basis of the oceanic food chain. Billions in every liter of seawater double in number every few days and are consumed at about the same rate by microscopic predators. They fix carbon dioxide to form organic matter that eventually dissolves into the ocean, where it is used by the ocean's heterotrophic bacteria. A cyanobacterium, *Trichodesmium* (trik-ō-DES-mē-um), fixes nitrogen and helps replenish the nitrogen that is lost as organisms sink to oceanic depths. Immense populations of another bacterium, *Pelagibacter ubique*, metabolize the waste products of these photosynthetic populations (see Chapter 11).

In waters below about 100 meters, members of the Archaea begin to dominate microbial life. Planktonic members of this group of the genus *Crenarchaeota* (kren-ar-KĒ-ō-tah) account for much of the microbial biomass of the oceans. These organisms are well adapted to the cool temperatures and low oxygen levels of oceanic depths. Their carbon is primarily derived from dissolved CO_2.

Microbial **bioluminescence**, or light emission, is an interesting aspect of deep-sea life. Many bacteria are luminescent, and some have established symbiotic relationships with benthic-dwelling fish. These fish sometimes use the glow of their resident bacteria as an aid in attracting and capturing prey in the complete darkness of the ocean depths (Figure 27.9). These bioluminescent organisms have an enzyme called *luciferase* that picks up electrons from flavoproteins in the electron transport chain and then emits some of the electron's energy as a photon of light.

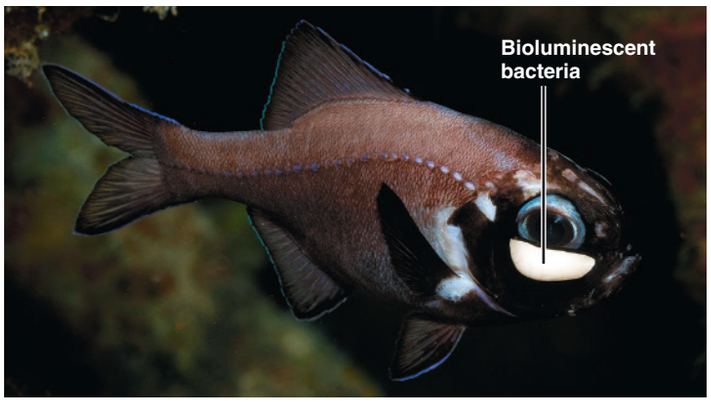


Figure 27.9 Bioluminescent bacteria as light organs in fish. This is a deep-sea flashlight fish (*Photoblepharon palpebratus*). *Aliivibrio fischeri* bacteria in the organ under the eye produce light.

Q What enzyme is responsible for bioluminescence?

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

27-13 Purple and green sulfur bacteria are photosynthetic organisms, but they are generally found deep in freshwater rather than at the surface. Why?

The Role of Microorganisms in Water Quality

Water in nature is seldom totally pure. Even rainfall is contaminated as it falls to Earth.

Water Pollution

The form of water pollution that is our primary interest is microbial pollution, especially by pathogenic organisms.

The Transmission of Infectious Diseases Water that moves below the ground's surface undergoes a filtering that removes most microorganisms. For this reason, water from springs and deep wells is generally of good quality. The most dangerous form of water pollution occurs when feces enter the water supply. Many diseases are perpetuated by the fecal–oral route of transmission, in which a pathogen is shed in human or animal feces, contaminates water, and is ingested (see Chapter 25). Globally, it is estimated that waterborne diseases are responsible for over 800,000 deaths each year, mostly among children under the age of 5.

Examples of such diseases are typhoid fever and cholera, caused by bacteria that are shed only in human feces. Improvements in sanitation, including the use of sand filter beds, in developed nations have greatly reduced incidence.

Chemical Pollution Preventing chemical contamination of water is a difficult problem. Industrial and agricultural chemicals leached from the land enter water in great amounts and in forms that are resistant to biodegradation. Rural waters often have excessive amounts of nitrate from agricultural fertilizers. When ingested, the nitrate is converted to nitrite by bacteria in the intestines. Nitrite competes with oxygen, reducing oxygen uptake by hemoglobin. This is especially likely to harm infants.

An example of chemical pollution was brought about by the synthetic detergents developed immediately after World War II. These rapidly replaced many of the soaps then in use. Because these new detergents were not biodegradable, they rapidly accumulated in the waterways. In some rivers, large rafts of detergent suds could be seen traveling downstream. These detergents were replaced by biodegradable synthetic formulations.

Biodegradable detergents, however, still present a major environmental problem because they can contain phosphates. Unfortunately, phosphates pass almost unchanged through sewage systems and can lead to **eutrophication**, which is caused by an overabundance of nutrients in lakes and streams.

To understand the concept of eutrophication, recall that algae and cyanobacteria get their energy from sunlight and their

carbon from carbon dioxide dissolved in water. In most waters, however, nitrogen and phosphorus supplies are inadequate for algal growth. When these nutrients enter water from domestic, farm, and industrial wastes, as occurs when waste treatment is absent or inefficient, they cause dense aquatic growths called **algal blooms**. (The term *algal bloom* includes eukaryotic algae and cyanobacteria.) Because many cyanobacteria can fix nitrogen from the atmosphere, these photosynthesizing organisms require only traces of phosphorus to initiate blooms. Once eutrophication results in blooms of algae or cyanobacteria, the eventual effect is the same as adding biodegradable organic matter. In the short run, these algae and cyanobacteria produce oxygen. However, they eventually die and are degraded by bacteria. During the degradation process, the oxygen in the water is used up, killing the fish. Undegraded remnants of organic matter settle to the bottom and hasten the filling of the lake.

CLINICAL CASE

The physician prescribes a single dose of doxycycline and tells Charity to drink plenty of liquids. He also asks what countries Charity had visited. She tells him that she had been to China, the Philippines, Haiti, Chile, and Indonesia. Before she became ill, Charity had been in good health. Just before leaving Haiti to go home, Charity had eaten fried shrimp and prawns purchased from a local market and prepared by a local family. She also recalled drinking a half glass of water with her dinner; she did not know whether it was bottled water.

What should the physician suspect to be the cause of Charity's severe diarrhea?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

Blooms of toxin-producing phytoplankton (Figure 27.10), which were discussed in Chapter 15 (Algae), are probably caused by excessive nutrients from oceanic upwellings or terrestrial wastes. Toxin-producing cyanobacteria, most commonly *Microcystis*, may also be present in algal blooms. In addition to eutrophication effects, harmful algal blooms can affect human health. Seafood, especially clams or similar mollusks, that ingest these plankton become toxic to humans. *Microcystis* produces a hepatotoxin that can cause liver damage.

Municipal waste containing detergents is likely to be the main source of phosphates in lakes and streams. As a result, phosphate-containing detergents and lawn fertilizers are banned in many places.

Water Purity Tests

Historically, most of our concern about water purity has been related to the transmission of disease. Therefore, tests have been developed to determine the safety of water; many of these tests are also applicable to foods.

Figure 27.10 A red tide. These blooms of aquatic growth are caused by excess nutrients in water. The color is from the pigmentation of the dinoflagellates.

Q What is the primary energy source of the dinoflagellates that cause such aquatic blooms?

It is not practical, however, to look only for pathogens in water supplies. For one thing, if we were to find the pathogens causing typhoid or cholera in the water system, the discovery would already be too late to prevent an outbreak of the disease. Moreover, such pathogens would probably be present only in small numbers and might not be included in tested samples.

The tests for water purity in use today are aimed instead at detecting particular **indicator organisms**. There are several criteria for an indicator organism. The most important criterion is that the microbe be consistently present in human feces in substantial numbers so that its detection is a good indication that human wastes are entering the water. The indicator organisms should also survive in the water at least as well as the pathogens would. The indicator organisms must be detectable by simple tests that can be carried out by people with relatively little training in microbiology.

In the United States, the usual indicator organisms in freshwater are the *coliform bacteria*.* **Coliforms** are defined as aerobic or facultatively anaerobic, gram-negative, non–endospore-forming, rod-shaped bacteria that ferment lactose to form gas within 48 hours of being placed in lactose broth at 35°C. Because some coliforms are not solely enteric bacteria but are more commonly found in plant and soil samples, many standards for food and water specify the identification of *fecal coliforms*. The predominant fecal coliform is *E. coli*, which constitutes a large proportion of the human intestinal population. Tests to distinguish fecal coliforms from nonfecal

*The presence of coliforms does not always indicate recent fecal contamination; because coliforms can colonize in waterways, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) recommends the use of *Enterococcus* bacteria as a safety indicator for waters in oceans and bays. Populations of the enterococci decrease more uniformly than coliforms in both freshwater and seawater.

coliforms are incubated at 45.5°. Note that coliforms are not themselves pathogenic under normal conditions, although certain strains can cause diarrhea (see Chapter 25) and opportunistic urinary tract infections (see Chapter 26).

The methods for determining the presence of coliforms in water are based largely on the lactose-fermenting ability of coliform bacteria. The multiple-tube method can be used to estimate coliform numbers by the most probable number (MPN) method (see Figure 6.21). The membrane filtration method is a more direct method of determining the presence and numbers of coliforms. This is possibly the most widely used method in North America and Europe. It makes use of a filtration apparatus similar to that shown in Figure 7.4. In this application, though, the bacteria collected on the surface of a removable membrane filter are placed on an appropriate medium and incubated. Coliform colonies have a distinctive appearance and are counted (see Figure 6.20). This method is suitable for low-turbidity waters that do not clog the filter and have relatively few noncoliform bacteria that would mask the results.

A more convenient method of detecting coliforms, specifically the fecal coliform *E. coli*, makes use of media containing the two substrates *o*-nitrophenyl-β-D-galactopyranoside (ONPG) and 4-methylumbelliferyl-β-D-glucuronide (MUG). Coliforms produce the enzyme β-galactosidase, which acts on ONPG and forms a yellow color, indicating their presence in the sample. *E. coli* is unique among coliforms in almost always producing the enzyme β-glucuronidase, which acts on MUG to form a fluorescent compound that glows blue when illuminated by long-wave UV light. It can also be applied to solid media, such as in the membrane filtration method. The colonies fluoresce under UV light. These simple tests, or variants of them, can detect the presence or absence of coliforms or *E. coli* and can be combined with the multiple-tube method to enumerate them.

Coliforms have been very useful as indicator organisms in water sanitation, but they have limitations. One problem is the growth of coliform bacteria embedded in biofilms on the inner surfaces of water pipes. These coliforms do not, then, represent external fecal contamination of the water, and they are not considered a threat to public health. Standards governing the presence of coliforms in drinking water require that any positive water sample be reported, and occasionally these indigenous coliforms have been detected. This has led to unnecessary community orders to boil water.

A more serious problem is that some pathogens, especially viruses and protozoan cysts and oocysts, are more resistant than coliforms to chemical disinfection. Through the use of sophisticated methods of detecting viruses, it has been found that chemically disinfected water samples that are free of coliforms are often still contaminated with enteric viruses. The cysts of *Giardia intestinalis* and oocysts of *Cryptosporidium* are so resistant to chlorination that completely eliminating them by this method is probably impractical; mechanical methods such as filtration are necessary. A general rule for chlorination is that viruses are more resistant to treatment than is *E. coli* and that the cysts of *Cryptosporidium* and *Giardia* are 100 times more resistant than viruses.

Wastewater-based surveillance (WBS) can be used to monitor prevalence of pathogens to determine whether transmission is occurring in a community. WBS is being used in some communities to detect the prevalence of poliovirus, MPOX virus, and COVID-19 virus in the population. Limitations of WBS include cost and specificity of tests. Positive samples from the environment alert public health officials only that transmission is happening.

CLINICAL CASE

The physician suspects cholera, and he sends a stool sample to a local laboratory. The stool culture yields colonies suspected of being *V. cholerae*. This result is confirmed by the county public health laboratory. Latex agglutination tests in the state public health laboratory confirm that the colonies are producing cholera toxin. Further testing at the CDC identifies the isolate as the El Tor biotype of *V. cholerae* O:1. DNA fingerprinting shows that this is the same strain of *V. cholerae* that is causing an epidemic in Haiti.

How is cholera transmitted? How does an earthquake promote transmission?

Part 1 Part 2 **Part 3** Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **27-14** Which disease is more likely to be transmitted by polluted water, cholera or influenza?
- **27-15** Name a microorganism that will grow in water even if there is no source of organic matter for energy or a nitrogen source—but does require small inputs of phosphorus.
- **27-16** Coliforms are the most common bacterial indicator of health-threatening water pollution in the United States. Why is it usually necessary to specify *fecal* coliforms?

Water Treatment

When water is obtained from uncontaminated reservoirs fed by clear mountain streams or from deep wells, it requires minimal treatment to make it safe to drink. Many cities, however, obtain their water from badly polluted sources, such as rivers that have received municipal and industrial wastes upstream. The steps used to purify this water are shown in **Figure 27.11**. Water treatment is not intended to produce sterile water, but rather water that is free of disease-causing microbes.

Coagulation and Filtration

Very turbid (cloudy) water is allowed to stand in a holding reservoir for a time to allow as much particulate suspended matter as possible to settle out. The water then undergoes **flocculation**, the removal of colloidal materials such as clay,

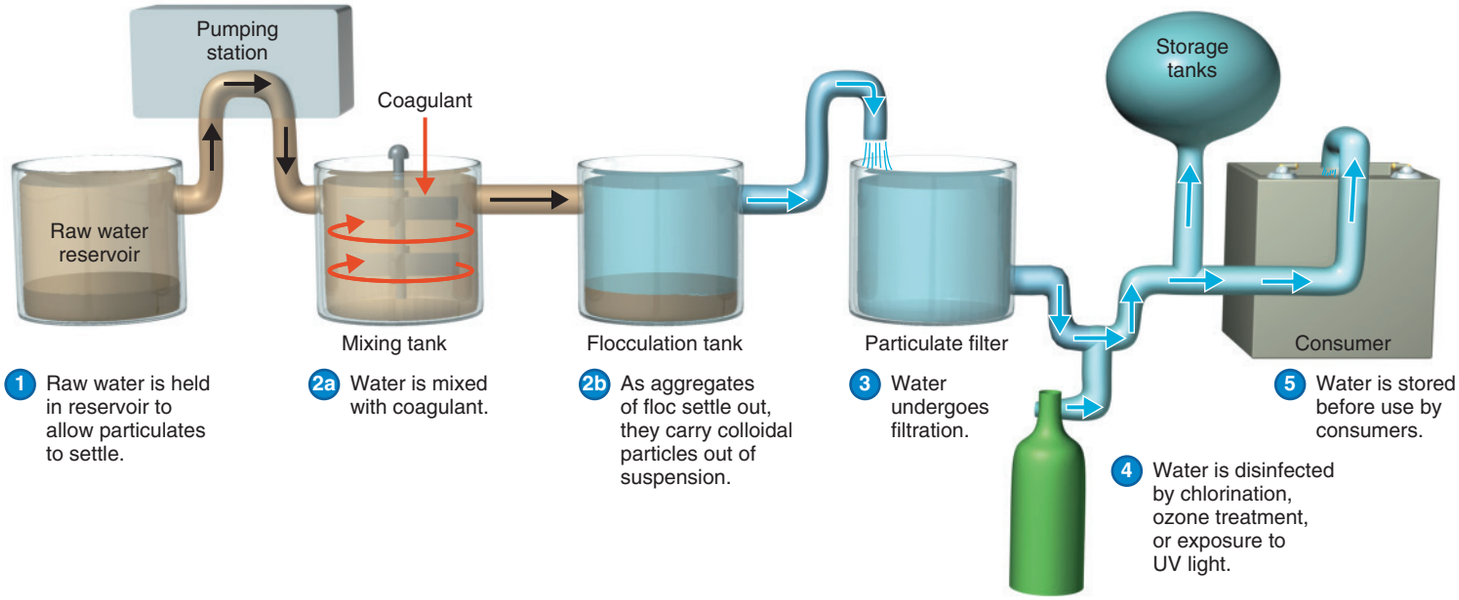


Figure 27.11 The steps involved in water treatment in a typical municipal water purification plant.

Q Does removal of "colloidal particles" by flocculation involve living organisms?

which is so small (smaller than 10 μm) that it would otherwise remain in suspension indefinitely. A coagulating chemical, such as aluminum potassium sulfate (alum), forms aggregations of fine suspended particles called *floc*. As these aggregations slowly settle out, they entrap colloidal material and carry it to the bottom. Large numbers of viruses and bacteria are also removed this way. Alum was used to clear muddy river water during the first half of the nineteenth century in the military forts of the American West, long before the germ theory of disease was developed.

After flocculation, the water is treated by **filtration**—that is, passing it through beds of 2 to 4 feet of fine sand or crushed anthracite coal. As mentioned previously, some protozoan cysts and oocysts are removed from water only by such filtration treatment. The microorganisms are trapped mostly by surface adsorption onto the sand particles. They do not penetrate the tortuous routing between the particles, even though the openings might be larger than the microbes that are filtered out. These filters are periodically backflushed to clear them of accumulations. Water systems of cities that have an exceptional concern for toxic chemicals supplement sand filtration with filters of activated carbon (heated charcoal). Charcoal removes not only particulate matter but also most dissolved organic chemical pollutants. A properly operated water treatment plant will remove viruses (which are harder to remove than bacteria and protozoa) with an efficiency of about 99.5%. Low-pressure *membrane filtration systems* are now coming into use. These systems have pore openings as small as 0.2 μm and are more reliable for removal of *Giardia* and *Cryptosporidium*.

Disinfection

Before entering the municipal distribution system, the filtered water is chlorinated. Because organic matter neutralizes chlorine, the plant operators must pay constant attention to maintaining effective levels of chlorine.

As noted in Chapter 7, another disinfectant for water is ozone treatment. Ozone (O_3) is a highly reactive form of oxygen that is formed by electrical spark discharges and UV light. (The fresh odor of air following an electrical storm or around a UV light bulb is from ozone.) Ozone for water treatment is generated electrically at the site of treatment. Ozone treatment is also valued because it leaves no taste or odor. Because it has little residual effect, ozone is usually used as a primary disinfectant treatment and is followed by chlorination. The use of UV light is also a supplement or alternative to chemical disinfection. Ultraviolet tube lamps are arranged so that water flows close to them. This is necessary because of the low penetrating power of UV radiation.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

27-17 How do coagulating chemicals such as alum remove colloidal impurities, including microorganisms, from water?

Sewage (Wastewater) Treatment

Sewage, or wastewater, includes all the water from a household that is used for washing and toilet wastes. Rainwater flowing into street drains and some industrial wastes enter the sewage

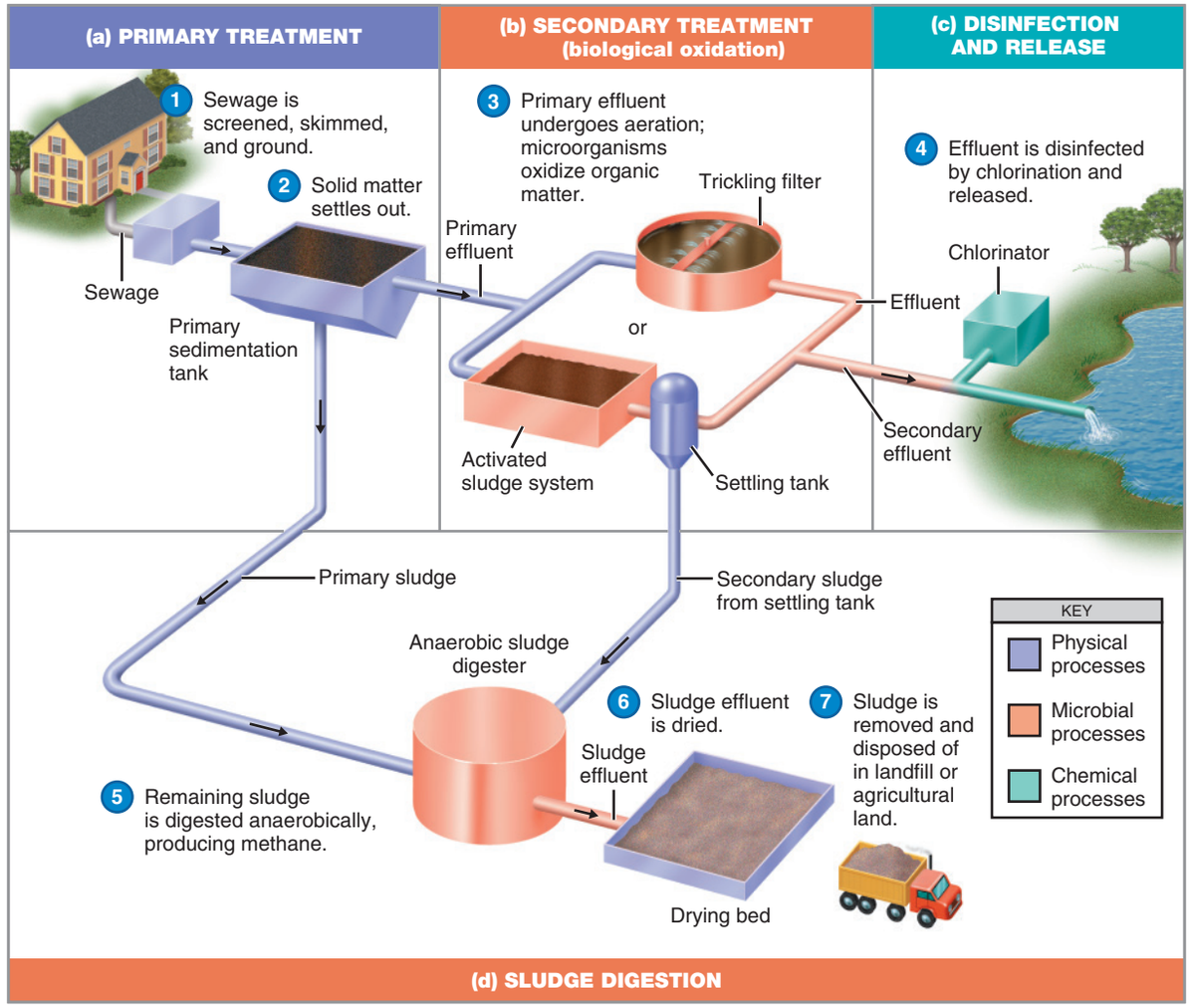


Figure 27.12 The stages in typical sewage treatment. Microbial activity occurs aerobically in trickling filters or activated sludge aeration tanks and anaerobically in the anaerobic sludge digester. A particular system would use either activated sludge aeration tanks or trickling filters, not both, as shown in this figure. Methane produced by sludge digestion is burned off or used to power heaters or pump motors.

Q Which processes require oxygen?

system in many cities. Sewage is mostly water and contains little particulate matter, perhaps only 0.03%. Even so, in large cities the solid portion of sewage can total more than 1000 tons of solid material per day.

Until environmental awareness intensified, a surprising number of large American cities had only a rudimentary sewage treatment system or no system at all. Raw sewage, untreated or nearly so, was simply discharged into rivers or oceans. A flowing, well-aerated stream is capable of considerable self-purification. Therefore, until expanding populations and their wastes exceeded this capability, this casual treatment of municipal wastes did not cause problems. In developed countries, most cases of simple discharge have been improved. But this is not true in much of the world. Many of the communities bordering the Mediterranean dump their unprocessed sewage into the sea.

Primary Sewage Treatment

The usual first step in sewage treatment is called **primary sewage treatment** (Figure 27.12a). In this process, large floating materials in incoming wastewater are screened out, the sewage is allowed to flow through settling chambers to remove sand and similar gritty material, skimmers remove floating oil and grease, and floating debris is shredded and ground. After this step, the sewage passes through sedimentation tanks, where more solid matter settles out. Sewage solids collecting on the bottom are called **sludge**—at this stage, *primary sludge*. About 40–60% of suspended solids are removed from sewage by this

settling treatment, and flocculating chemicals that increase the removal of solids are sometimes added at this stage. Biological activity is not particularly important in primary treatment, although some digestion of sludge and dissolved organic matter can occur during long holding times. The sludge is removed on either a continuous or an intermittent basis, and the effluent (the liquid flowing out) then undergoes secondary treatment.

Biochemical Oxygen Demand

An important concept in sewage treatment and in the general ecology of waste management is **biochemical oxygen demand (BOD)**, a measure of the biologically degradable organic matter in water. Primary treatment removes about 25–35% of the BOD of sewage.

BOD is determined by the amount of oxygen required by bacteria to metabolize the organic matter. The classic method of measurement is the use of special bottles with airtight stoppers. Each bottle is first filled with test water or dilutions. The water is initially aerated to provide a relatively high level of dissolved oxygen and is seeded with bacteria if necessary. The filled bottles are incubated in the dark for 5 days at 20°C, and the decrease in dissolved oxygen is determined by a chemical or electronic testing method. The more oxygen that is used up as the bacteria degrade the organic matter in the sample, the greater the BOD, which is usually expressed in milligrams of oxygen per liter of water. The amount of oxygen that normally can be dissolved in water is only about 10 mg/liter; typical BOD values of wastewater may be 20 times this amount. If this wastewater enters a lake, for example, bacteria in the lake begin to consume the organic matter responsible for the high BOD, rapidly depleting the oxygen in the lake water. (See the discussion of eutrophication earlier in this chapter.)

Secondary Sewage Treatment

After primary treatment, the greater part of the BOD remaining in the sewage is in the form of dissolved organic matter. **Secondary sewage treatment,** which is predominantly biological, is designed to remove most of this organic matter and reduce the BOD (Figure 27.12b). In this process, the sewage undergoes strong aeration to encourage the growth of aerobic bacteria and other microorganisms that oxidize the dissolved organic matter to carbon dioxide and water. Two commonly used methods of secondary treatment are activated sludge systems and trickling filters.

In the aeration tanks of an **activated sludge system**, air or pure oxygen is passed through the effluent from primary treatment (Figure 27.13). The name is derived from the practice of adding some of the sludge from a previous batch to the incoming sewage. This inoculum is termed *activated sludge* because it contains large numbers of sewage-metabolizing microbes. The activity of these aerobic microorganisms oxidizes much of the sewage organic matter into carbon dioxide and water. Especially important members of this microbial community

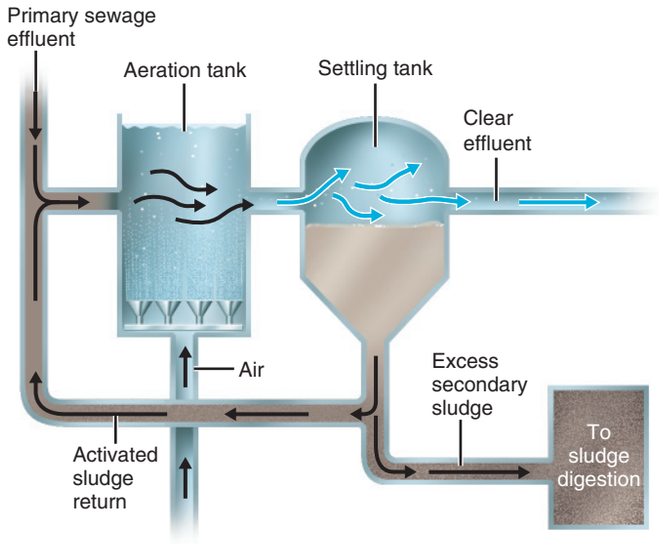


Figure 27.13 An activated sludge system of secondary sewage treatment.

Q What are the similarities between winemaking and activated sludge sewage treatment?

are species of *Zoogloea* bacteria, which form bacteria-containing floc, or *sludge granules*, in the aeration tanks. Soluble organic matter in the sewage is incorporated into the floc and its microorganisms. Aeration is discontinued after 4 to 8 hours, and the contents of the tank are transferred to a settling tank, where the floc settles out, removing much of the organic matter. These solids are subsequently treated in an anaerobic sludge digester, which will be described shortly. Probably more organic matter is removed by this settling-out process than by the relatively short-term aerobic oxidation by microbes. The clear effluent is disinfected and discharged. Activated sludge systems are quite efficient: they remove 75–95% of the BOD from sewage.

Occasionally, the sludge will float rather than settle out; this phenomenon is called **bulking**. When this happens, the organic matter in the floc flows out with the discharge effluent, resulting in local pollution. Bulking is caused by the growth of filamentous bacteria of various types; *Sphaerotilus natans* and *Nocardia* species are frequent offenders.

Trickling filters are the other commonly used method of secondary treatment. In this method, the sewage is sprayed over a bed of rocks or molded plastic (Figure 27.14). The components of the bed must be large enough so that air penetrates to the bottom but small enough to maximize the surface area available for microbial activity. A biofilm (see Chapter 6) of aerobic microbes grows on the rock or plastic surfaces. Because air circulates throughout the rock bed, these aerobic microorganisms in the slime layer can oxidize much of the organic matter trickling over the surfaces into carbon dioxide and water. Trickling filters remove 80–85% of the BOD, so they are generally

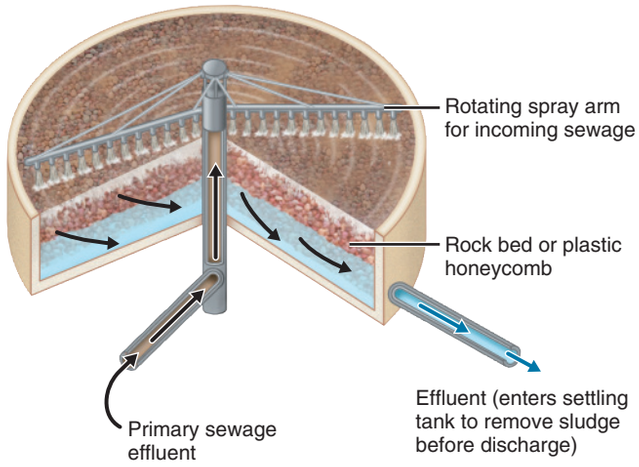


Figure 27.14 A trickling filter of secondary sewage treatment. The sewage is sprayed from the system of rotating pipes onto a bed of rocks or plastic honeycomb designed to have a maximum surface area and to allow oxygen to penetrate deeply into the bed.

Q **Which would make the more efficient bed for a trickling filter system, fine sand or golf balls?**

less efficient than activated sludge systems. However, they are usually less troublesome to operate and have fewer problems from overloads or toxic sewage. Note that sludge is also a product of trickling filter systems.

Another biofilm-based design for secondary sewage treatment is the **rotating biological contactor** system. This is a series of disks several feet in diameter, mounted on a shaft. The disks rotate slowly, with their lower 40% submerged in wastewater. Rotation provides aeration and contact between the biofilm on the disks and the wastewater. The rotation also tends to cause the accumulated biofilm to slough off when it becomes too thick. This is about the equivalent of floc accumulation in activated sludge systems.

Disinfection and Release

Treated sewage is disinfected, usually by chlorination, before being discharged (Figure 27.12c). The discharge is usually into an ocean or into flowing streams. The treated wastewater can be used to irrigate orchards, vineyards, and nonfood crops to avoid phosphorous and nitrogen contamination of waterways and to conserve freshwater. The soil to which this water is applied acts as a trickling filter to remove chemicals and microorganisms before the water reaches groundwater and surface water supplies.

Sludge Digestion

Primary sludge accumulates in primary sedimentation tanks; sludge also accumulates in activated sludge and in trickling filter secondary treatments. For further treatment, these sludges are often pumped to **anaerobic sludge digesters** (Figure 27.12d and Figure 27.15). The process of sludge digestion is carried out in large tanks from which oxygen is almost completely excluded.

In secondary treatment, emphasis is placed on maintaining aerobic conditions so that organic matter is converted to carbon dioxide, water, and solids that can settle out. An anaerobic sludge digester, however, is designed to encourage the growth of anaerobic bacteria, especially methane-producing bacteria that decrease these organic solids by degrading them to soluble substances and gases, mostly methane (60–70%) and carbon dioxide (20–30%). Methane and carbon dioxide are relatively innocuous end-products, comparable to the carbon dioxide and water from aerobic treatment. The methane is routinely used as a fuel for heating the digester and is also frequently used to run power equipment in the plant.

CLINICAL CASE

V. cholerae is transmitted by the fecal–oral route. Prior to the earthquake, only 63% of Haiti's population had access to an improved drinking water source (a closed well, chlorine, or filtration and safe storage containers), and only 17% had access to adequate sanitation. Many people used springs for their drinking water. Cholera spread rapidly across Haiti 9 months after the 2010 earthquake because of the lack of safe water and sanitation and the large numbers of displaced people. The fatality rate from cholera in Haiti is 3.3%.

Charity recovers uneventfully; why is the case fatality rate so high in Haiti?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 **Part 4** Part 5 Part 6

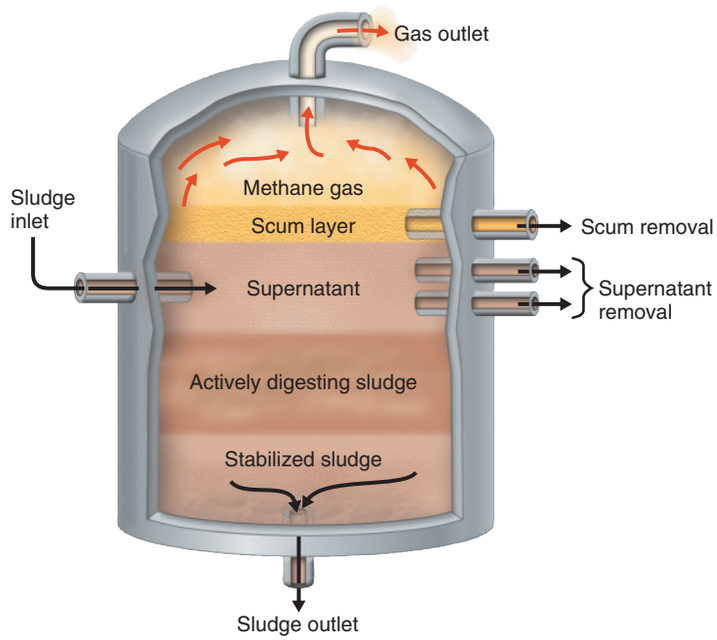


Figure 27.15 Sludge digestion.

Q **What might be some uses for the stabilized sludge?**

There are essentially three stages in the activity of an anaerobic sludge digester. The first stage is the production of carbon dioxide and organic acids from anaerobic fermentation of the sludge by various anaerobic and facultatively anaerobic microorganisms. In the second stage, the organic acids are metabolized to form hydrogen and carbon dioxide, as well as organic acids such as acetic acid. These products are the raw materials for a third stage, in which the methane-producing bacteria produce methane (CH_4). Most of the methane is derived from the energy-yielding reduction of carbon dioxide by hydrogen gas:

$$CO_2 + 4H_2 \longrightarrow CH_4 + 2H_2O$$

Other methane-producing microbes split acetic acid (CH_3COOH) to yield methane and carbon dioxide:

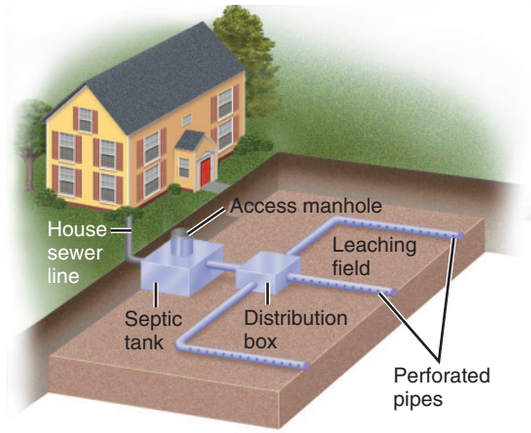
$$CH_3COOH \longrightarrow CH_4 + CO_2$$

After anaerobic digestion is completed, large amounts of undigested sludge still remain, although it is relatively stable and inert. To reduce its volume, this sludge is pumped to shallow drying beds or water-extracting filters. Following this step, the sludge can be incinerated or used for landfill or as a soil conditioner, sometimes under the name *biosolids*. Sludge is assigned to two classes: class A sludge contains no detectable pathogens, and class B sludge is treated only to reduce numbers of pathogens below certain levels. Most sludge is class B, and public access to application sites is limited. Sludge has about one-fifth the growth-enhancing value of normal commercial lawn fertilizers but has desirable soil-conditioning qualities, much as do humus and mulch (decomposing plant matter spread on soil). A potential problem is contamination with heavy metals that are toxic to plants.

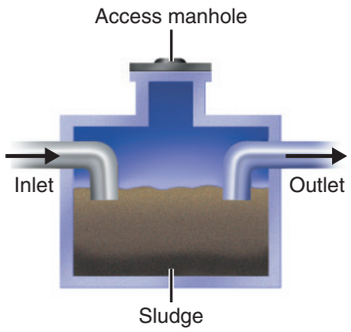
Septic Tanks

Homes and businesses in areas of low population density that are not connected to municipal sewage systems often use a **septic tank**, a device whose operation is similar in principle to primary treatment (Figure 27.16). Sewage enters a holding tank, and suspended solids settle out. The sludge in the tank must be pumped out periodically and disposed of. The effluent flows through a system of perforated piping into a leaching (soil drainage) field. The effluent entering the soil is decomposed by soil microorganisms. The microbial action necessary for proper functioning of a septic tank can be impaired by excessive amounts of products such as antibacterial soaps, drain cleaners, medications, "every flush" toilet bowl cleaners, and bleach.

These systems work well when not overloaded and when the drainage system is properly sized to the load and soil type.



(a) Overall plan. Most soluble organic matter is disposed of by percolation into the soil.



(b) A section of a septic tank

Figure 27.16 A septic tank system.

Q Which type of soil would require the larger drainage area, clay or sandy?

CLINICAL CASE

When cholera is recognized early and appropriate rehydration treatment (see Chapter 25) is initiated rapidly, the fatality rate is less than 1%. The underlying nutritional status of the people affected and their access to safe water for rehydration therapy strongly influences the mortality rate. In Haiti, epidemic cholera had not been reported before the 2010 earthquake; consequently, the population was immunologically naïve and therefore highly susceptible to infection with *V. cholerae*.

Using these data from Haiti, what would you recommend?

Types of Water	Coliforms per 100 ml
Raw (untreated) water	323
Water treated with chlorine (2 drops of household bleach/liter; wait 30 min)	0
Water treated with ceramic filtration	0

Heavy clay soils require extensive drainage systems because of the soil's poor permeability. The high porosity of sandy soils can result in chemical or bacterial pollution of nearby water supplies.

Oxidation Ponds

Many industries and small communities use **oxidation ponds**, also called *lagoons* or *stabilization ponds*, for water treatment. These are inexpensive to build and operate but require large areas of land. Designs vary, but most incorporate two stages. The first stage is analogous to primary treatment; the sewage pond is deep enough that conditions are almost entirely anaerobic. Sludge settles out in this stage. In the second stage, which roughly corresponds to secondary treatment, effluent is pumped into an adjoining pond or system of ponds shallow enough to be aerated by wave action. Because it is difficult to maintain aerobic conditions for bacterial growth in ponds with so much organic matter, the growth of algae is encouraged to produce oxygen. Bacterial action in decomposing the organic matter in the wastes generates carbon dioxide. Algae, which use carbon dioxide in their photosynthetic metabolism, grow and produce oxygen, which in turn encourages the activity of aerobic microbes in the sewage. Large amounts of organic matter in the form of algae accumulate, but this is not a problem because the oxidation pond, unlike a lake, already has a large nutrient load.

Some small sewage-producing operations, such as isolated campgrounds and highway rest stop areas, use an *oxidation ditch* for sewage treatment. In this method, a small oval channel in the shape of a racetrack is filled with sewage water. A paddle wheel propels the water in a self-contained flowing stream aerated enough to oxidize the wastes.

Tertiary Sewage Treatment

The effluent from secondary treatment plants contains some residual BOD. It also contains about 50% of the original nitrogen and 70% of the original phosphorus, which can greatly affect an aquatic ecosystem when discharged into small streams or recreational lakes. Sewage can be treated to a level of purity that allows its use as drinking water—winningly termed "toilet to tap." This **tertiary sewage treatment** is the practice now in some arid-area cities in the United States and may be expanded. Lake Tahoe in the Sierra Nevada, surrounded by extensive development, is the site of one of the best-known tertiary sewage treatment systems. Similar systems are used to treat wastes entering the southern portion of San Francisco Bay and in eastern Australia.

Tertiary treatment is designed to remove essentially all the BOD, nitrogen, and phosphorus. Tertiary treatment depends less on biological treatment than on physical and chemical treatments. Phosphorus is precipitated out by combining with such chemicals as lime, alum, and ferric chloride. Filters of fine sands and activated charcoal remove small particulate matter and dissolved chemicals. Nitrogen is converted to ammonia and discharged into the air in stripping towers. Some systems encourage denitrifying bacteria to form volatile nitrogen gas. Finally, the purified water is disinfected.

Again, tertiary treatment provides water that is suitable for drinking. The water may also be discharged into waterways, used to recharge groundwater, or used on crops. And the recovered phosphorous and ammonia can be used for fertilizer.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **27-18** Which type of sewage treatment is designed to remove almost all phosphorus from sewage?
- **27-19** What metabolic group of anaerobic bacteria is especially encouraged by operation of a sludge digestion system?
- **27-20** What is the relationship between BOD and the welfare of fish?

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

Improvements in water quality and sanitation are necessary to reduce transmission of cholera. Because cholera can progress quickly to severe dehydration, shock, and death, rapid rehydration is the mainstay of cholera treatment. However, rehydration therapy requires clean water, and water treatment must be inexpensive.

BIG PICTURE

Microbial Solutions to Climate Change

Microbial recycling of elements helps regulate Earth's temperature.

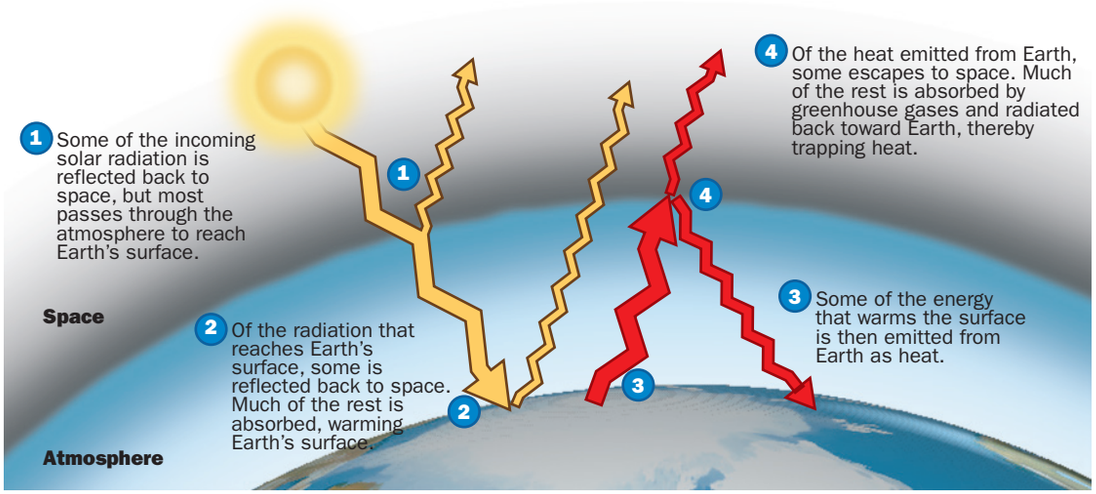
Pasteur said, "Life would not long remain possible in the *absence* of microbe." Bacteria, archaea, and fungi recycle the carbon and other elements in dead plants and animals and animal excrement. Without their activities, carbon, nitrogen, and other elements would not be available for plants and algae. Human activities are disturbing these natural cycles of elements.

Greenhouse Gases play a role in global temperature

The average surface temperature of the Earth is 15°C. In 1827, the French physicist Joseph Fourier determined that the average surface temperature of the Earth should be −18°C. Something was keeping it warmer—akin to a glass-enclosed plant greenhouse. This greenhouse effect made the temperature of the Earth suitable for life.

Much of the solar radiation that strikes the Earth is emitted toward space as infrared radiation (heat). In 1896, the Swedish scientist Svante Arrhenius determined that the average temperature of the Earth was about 15°C because of the absorption of this infrared radiation by atmospheric gases. The most important gases are water vapor and carbon dioxide.

Water vapor is the strongest greenhouse gas. However, its concentration depends on the temperature of the atmosphere. It is the only greenhouse gas whose concentration increases when the atmosphere is warming—and causes it to warm even more. In his 1896 paper describing his work, Arrhenius showed that CO_2 also influences the Earth's temperature and predicted that increased CO_2 from burning fossil fuels (coal) would cause an increase in temperature.



Atmospheric gases absorb heat emitted from Earth's surface and radiate it back to Earth.

The most important greenhouse gases emitted by human activities are CO_2, methane (CH_4), and nitrous oxide (N_2O). CO_2 has a global warming potential of 1, because it is used as the reference. Methane has a warming potential of 25 (that is, 1 g of CH_4 has the same effect as 25 g of CO_2), and N_2O's warming potential is 300. Since the Industrial Revolution, CO_2 has increased 50% and CH_4 has increased 162%.

According to the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, the most important sources of anthropogenic (human-caused) greenhouse gases are

CO_2

- burning fossil fuels

CH_4

- livestock (rumen archaea and manure management)
- leakage from natural gas distribution pipes
- landfills
- coal mining
- rice paddies

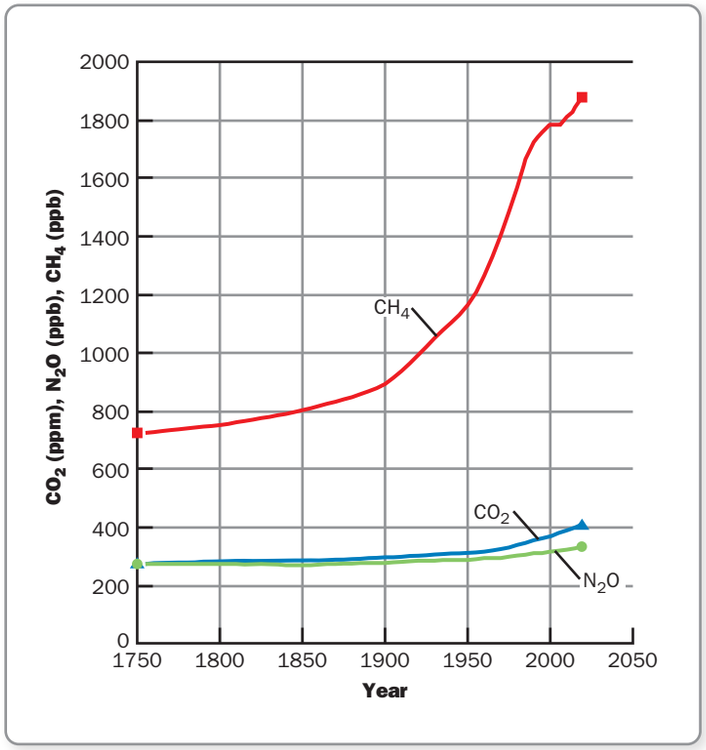
N_2O

- burning fossil fuels
- agricultural fertilizer

Potential Climate Remediation via Microbes

Microbes produce CO_2 in aerobic respiration, but photoautotrophic and chemoautotrophic bacteria in freshwater and marine sediments fix CO_2 to form vegetative tissues and products. These bacteria could be cultivated in tanks and artificial lakes where they would use CO_2 from the air. The cells would then be harvested for use as fuel (biomass).

Historically, prokaryotes have regulated the amount of methane in the atmosphere. Methanogenic archaea reduce carbon dioxide to methane in anerobic respiration. ATP is produced by oxidative phosphorylation. These microbes, found in freshwater and marine sediments and as symbionts in protists and animals, produce two-thirds of the methane in the atmosphere. Methanotrophic bacteria and archaea in those freshwater and marine sediments use methane. The CH_4 is added to glycine and ultimately made into



Greenhouse gases have increased since the Industrial Revolution.
(Data sources: NOAA)

pyruvic acid. Approximately 40–60% of the methane produced is consumed by methanotrophs in wetland environments. However, atmospheric methane has been increasing since the Industrial Revolution because of the activities of humans. Researchers are investigating the use of methanotrophs in agricultural soil and landfills to reduce atmospheric methane levels. Methanogens can also be used to produce methane for fuel from compost and domestic wastewater. This will not add more carbon to the atmosphere because the methanogens are using carbon sources already in the atmosphere.

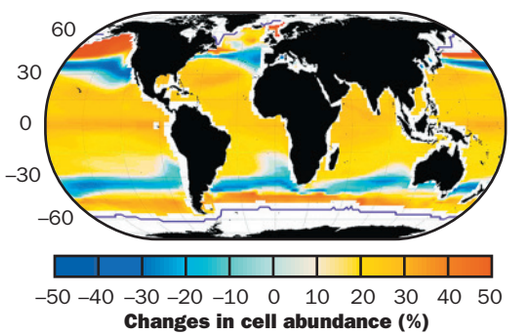
Methanogens growing underwater in rice paddies produce 12% of anthropogenic methane emissions. Draining paddies in mid-growing season reduces methane production and increases rice yield.

Several proteobacteria (e.g., *Pseudomonas stutzeri*) produce nitrous oxide reductase. This is the final enzyme in the bacteria's anaerobic electron transport chain, in which electrons are transferred to the N, reducing N_2O to N_2. Research has shown that certain agricultural practices can increase the numbers of these bacteria in the soil, thereby reducing the N_2O released to the atmosphere.

How will global warming affect microbial growth?

Microbes play key roles in greenhouse gas consumption and emission. As arctic ice and tundra melt, bacteria and archaea will be able to grow on organic matter that was previously frozen. This could increase the amount of greenhouse gases. As the Earth's temperature and atmospheric composition change, many microbes will adapt—either metabolically or genetically. We do not yet understand all of the Earth's microbiomes, but researchers are making models to predict the effect of climate change on microbes.

Microbiologists are studying the microbial diversity on a Norwegian island in the Arctic Ocean.



This model of *Synechococcus* populations in the oceans predicts an increase in cyanobacterial blooms by the year 2100.

KEY CONCEPTS

- Microorganisms produce and consume greenhouse gases. **(See Chapter 27, "Biogeochemical Cycles.")**
- Sewage treatment and composting produce methane and biomass that can be used for fuels **(Chapter 27 and Figure 28.13)**.
- Methane is produced by anaerobic respiration **(Chapter 5)**.
- CO_2 fixation by photo- and chemoautotrophs removes CO_2 from the atmosphere. **(See Chapter 5, "The Calvin-Benson Cycle.")**

Study Outline

Microbial Habitats and Symbiosis (p. 795)

1. Microorganisms make up the Earth's microbiome. They live in a wide variety of habitats because of their ability to use a variety of carbon and energy sources and to grow under different physical conditions.
2. Extremophiles live in extreme conditions of temperature, acidity, alkalinity, or salinity.
3. Symbiosis is a relationship between two different organisms or populations.
4. Symbiotic fungi called mycorrhizae live in and on plant roots; they increase the surface area and nutrient absorption of the plant.

Soil Microbiology and Biogeochemical Cycles (pp. 795–803)

1. In biogeochemical cycles, certain chemical elements are recycled.
2. Microorganisms in the soil decompose organic matter and transform carbon-, nitrogen-, and sulfur-containing compounds into usable forms.
3. Microbes are essential to the continuation of biogeochemical cycles.
4. Elements are oxidized and reduced by microorganisms during these cycles.

The Carbon Cycle (pp. 796–797)

5. Carbon dioxide is incorporated, or fixed, into organic compounds by photoautotrophs and chemoautotrophs.
6. These organic compounds provide nutrients for chemoheterotrophs.
7. Chemoheterotrophs release CO_2 that is then used by photoautotrophs.
8. Carbon is removed from the cycle when it is in $CaCO_3$ and fossil fuels.

The Nitrogen Cycle (pp. 797–800)

9. Microorganisms decompose proteins from dead cells and release amino acids.
10. Ammonia is liberated by microbial ammonification of amino acids.
11. The nitrogen in ammonia is oxidized to produce nitrates for energy by nitrifying bacteria.
12. Denitrifying bacteria reduce the nitrogen in nitrates to molecular nitrogen (N_2).
13. N_2 is converted into ammonia by nitrogen-fixing bacteria including free-living genera such as *Azotobacter* and cyanobacteria, and the symbiotic bacteria *Rhizobium* and *Frankia*.
14. Ammonium and nitrate are used by bacteria and plants to synthesize amino acids that are assembled into proteins.

The Sulfur Cycle (p. 800)

15. Hydrogen sulfide (H_2S) is oxidized by autotrophic bacteria to form S^0 or SO_4^{2-}.
16. Plants, algae, and bacteria can reduce SO_4^{2-} to make certain amino acids. These amino acids are in turn used by animals.
17. H_2S is released by decay or dissimilation of these amino acids.

Life without Sunshine (pp. 800–801)

18. Chemoautotrophs are the primary producers in deep-sea vents and within deep rocks.

The Phosphorus Cycle (p. 801)

19. Phosphorus in the form of phosphate ions (PO_4^{3-}) is found in rocks and bird guano.
20. When solubilized by microbial acids, the PO_4^{3-} is available for plants and microorganisms.

The Degradation of Synthetic Chemicals in Soil and Water (pp. 801–803)

21. Many synthetic chemicals, such as pesticides, are resistant to degradation by microbes.
22. The use of microorganisms to remove pollutants is called bioremediation.
23. Municipal landfills prevent decomposition of solid wastes because they are dry and anaerobic.
24. In some landfills, methane produced by methanogens can be recovered for an energy source.
25. Bacteria can be used to recover metals from electronic waste.

Aquatic Microbiology and Sewage Treatment (pp. 804–815)

Aquatic Microorganisms (pp. 804–805)

1. The study of microorganisms and their activities in natural waters is called aquatic microbiology.
2. Natural waters include lakes, ponds, streams, rivers, estuaries, and the oceans.
3. The concentration of bacteria in water is proportional to the amount of organic material in the water.
4. Most aquatic bacteria tend to grow on surfaces rather than in a free-floating state.
5. The number and location of freshwater microbiota depend on the availability of oxygen and light.
6. Photosynthetic algae are the primary producers of a lake; they are found in the limnetic zone.
7. Microbes in stagnant water use available oxygen and can cause odors and the death of fish.
8. Purple and green sulfur bacteria are found in the profundal zone, which contains light and H_2S but no oxygen.
9. *Desulfovibrio* reduces SO_4^{2-} to H_2S in benthic mud.
10. Methane-producing bacteria are also found in the benthic zone.
11. Phytoplankton are the primary producers of the open ocean.
12. *Pelagibacter ubique* is a decomposer in ocean waters.
13. Archaea predominate below 100 m.
14. Some algae and bacteria are bioluminescent. They possess the enzyme luciferase, which can emit light.

The Role of Microorganisms in Water Quality (pp. 805–807)

15. Microorganisms are filtered from water that percolates into groundwater supplies.

16. Some pathogenic microorganisms are transmitted to humans in drinking and recreational waters.
17. Resistant chemical pollutants may be concentrated in animals in an aquatic food chain.
18. Nutrients such as phosphates cause algal blooms, which can lead to eutrophication of aquatic ecosystems.
19. Tests for the bacteriological quality of water are based on the presence of indicator organisms, the most common of which are coliforms.
20. Coliforms are aerobic or facultatively anaerobic, gram-negative, non–endospore-forming rods that ferment lactose with the production of gas within 48 hours of being placed in a medium at 35°C.
21. Fecal coliforms, predominantly *E. coli*, are used to indicate the presence of human feces.
22. Wastewater-based surveillance can provide warning of a potential disease outbreak in a community.

Water Treatment (pp. 807–808)

23. Drinking water is held in a holding reservoir long enough that suspended matter settles.
24. Flocculation treatment uses a chemical such as alum to coalesce and then settle colloidal material.
25. Filtration removes protozoan cysts and other microorganisms.
26. Drinking water is disinfected with chlorine to kill remaining pathogenic bacteria.

Sewage (Wastewater) Treatment (pp. 808–815)

27. Domestic wastewater is called sewage; it includes household water, toilet wastes, and rainwater.
28. Primary sewage treatment is the removal of solid matter called sludge.
29. Biological activity is not very important in primary treatment.
30. Biochemical oxygen demand (BOD) is a measure of the biologically degradable organic matter in water.
31. Primary treatment removes about 25–35% of the BOD of sewage.
32. BOD is determined by measuring the amount of oxygen bacteria require to degrade the organic matter.
33. Secondary sewage treatment is the biological degradation of organic matter after primary treatment.
34. Activated sludge systems, trickling filters, and rotating biological contactors are methods of secondary treatment.
35. Microorganisms degrade the organic matter aerobically.
36. Secondary treatment removes up to 95% of the BOD.
37. Treated sewage is disinfected, usually by chlorination, before discharge onto land or into water.
38. Sludge is placed in an anaerobic sludge digester; bacteria degrade organic matter and produce simpler organic compounds, methane, and CO_2.
39. The methane produced in the digester is used to heat the digester and operate other equipment.
40. Excess sludge is periodically removed from the digester, dried, and disposed of (as landfill or soil conditioner) or incinerated.
41. Septic tanks can be used in rural areas to provide primary treatment of sewage.
42. Small communities can use oxidation ponds for secondary treatment.
43. These require a large area in which to build an artificial lake.
44. Tertiary sewage treatment uses physical filtration and chemical precipitation to remove all the BOD, nitrogen, and phosphorus from water.
45. Tertiary treatment provides drinkable water, whereas secondary treatment provides water usable only for irrigation.

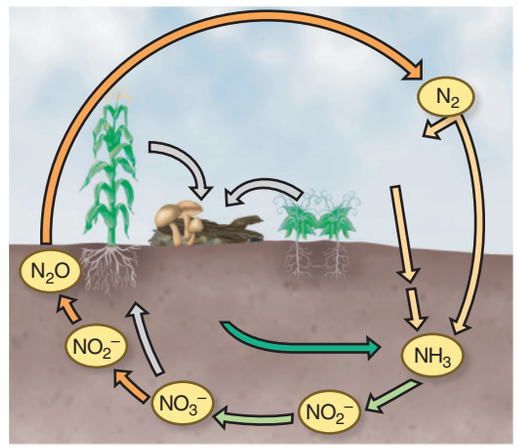
Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. The koala is a leaf-eating animal. What can you infer about its digestive system?
2. Give one possible explanation of why *Penicillium* would make penicillin, given that the fungus does not get bacterial infections.
3. In the sulfur cycle, microbes degrade organic sulfur compounds, such as (a) _____, to release H_2S, which can be oxidized by *Acidithiobacillus* to (b) _____. This ion can be assimilated into amino acids by (c) _____ or reduced by *Desulfovibrio* to (d) _____. H_2S is used by photoautotrophic bacteria as an electron donor to synthesize (e) _____. The sulfur-containing by-product of this metabolism is (f) _____.
4. Why is the phosphorus cycle important?
5. DRAW IT Identify where the following processes occur: ammonification, decomposition, denitrification, nitrification, nitrogen fixation. Name at least one organism responsible for each process.



6. The following organisms have important roles as symbionts with plants and fungi; describe the symbiotic relationship of each organism with its host: cyanobacteria, mycorrhizae, *Rhizobium*, *Frankia*.
7. Outline the treatment process for drinking water.
8. The following processes are used in wastewater treatment. Match the stage of treatment with the processes. Each choice can be used once, more than once, or not at all.

Processes	Treatment Stage
_____ a. Leaching field	1. Primary
_____ b. Removal of solids	2. Secondary
_____ c. Biological degradation	3. Tertiary
_____ d. Activated sludge system	
_____ e. Chemical precipitation of phosphorus	
_____ f. Trickling filter	
_____ g. Results in drinking water	

9. *Bioremediation* refers to the use of living organisms to remove pollutants. Describe three examples of bioremediation.
10. NAME IT These nitrogen-fixing prokaryotes provide nitrogen fertilizer in rice paddies; they live symbiotically in the cells of the freshwater plant *Azolla*.

Multiple Choice

For questions 1–4, answer whether
- **a.** the process takes place under aerobic conditions.
- **b.** the process takes place under anaerobic conditions.
- **c.** the amount of oxygen doesn't make any difference.

1. Activated sludge system
2. Denitrification
3. Nitrogen fixation
4. Methane production
5. The water used to prepare intravenous solutions in a hospital contained endotoxins. Infection control personnel performed plate counts to find the source of the bacteria. Their results:

	Bacteria/100 ml
Municipal water pipes	0
Boiler	0
Hot water line	300

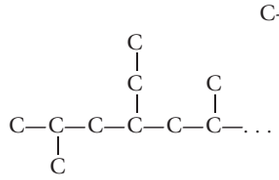
All of the following conclusions about the bacteria can be drawn *except* which one?
- **a.** They were present as a biofilm in the pipes.
- **b.** They are gram-negative.
- **c.** They come from fecal contamination.
- **d.** They come from the city water supply.
- **e.** none of the above

Use the following choices to answer questions 6–8:
- **a.** aerobic respiration
- **b.** anaerobic respiration
- **c.** anoxygenic photosynthesis
- **d.** oxygenic photosynthesis

6. $CO_2 + H_2S \xrightarrow{\text{Light}} C_6H_{12}O_6 + S^0$
7. $SO_4^{2-} + 10H^+ + 10e^- \longrightarrow H_2S + 4H_2O$
8. $CO_2 + 8H^+ + 8e^- \longrightarrow CH_4 + 2H_2O$
9. All of the following are effects of water pollution *except*
   - **a.** the spread of infectious diseases.
   - **b.** increased eutrophication.
   - **c.** increased BOD.
   - **d.** increased growth of algae.
   - **e.** none of the above; all of these are effects of water pollution.
10. Coliforms are used as indicator organisms of sewage pollution because
    - **a.** they are pathogens.
    - **b.** they ferment lactose.
    - **c.** they are abundant in human intestines.
    - **d.** they grow within 48 hours.
    - **e.** all of the above

Analysis

1. Here are the formulas of two detergents that have been manufactured:



Which of these would be resistant, and which would be readily degraded by microorganisms? (*Hint:* Refer to the degradation of fatty acids in Chapter 5.)

2. Explain the effect of dumping each of the following into a pond on the eutrophication of the pond.
   - **a.** Untreated sewage
   - **b.** Sewage that has primary treatment
   - **c.** Sewage that has secondary treatment

   Contrast your previous answers with the effect of each type of sewage on a fast-moving river.

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. Flooding after 2 weeks of heavy rainfall in Tooele, Utah, preceded a high rate of diarrheal illness. *Giardia intestinalis* was isolated from 25% of the patients. A comparison study of a town 65 miles away revealed diarrheal illness in 2.9% of the 103 people interviewed. Tooele has a municipal water system and a municipal sewage treatment plant. Explain the probable cause of this epidemic and method(s) of stopping it. What would a fecal coliform test have shown?
2. The bioremediation process shown in the photograph is used to remove benzene and other hydrocarbons from soil contaminated by petroleum. The pipes are used to add nitrates, phosphates, oxygen, or water. Why are each of these added? Why is it not always necessary to add bacteria?

Applied and Industrial Microbiology 28

In Chapter 27, we saw that microbes are an essential factor in many natural phenomena that make life possible on Earth. In this chapter we will look at how microorganisms are harnessed in such useful applications as the making of food and industrial products. Many of these processes—especially baking, winemaking, brewing, and cheesemaking—have origins long lost in history.

Modern civilization, with its large urban populations, could not be supported without methods of preserving food. In fact, civilization arose only after agriculture produced a year-round, stable food supply so that people were able to give up a nomadic hunting-and-gathering way of life.

In Chapter 9, we discussed industrial applications of genetically modified microorganisms that are at the cutting edge of our knowledge of molecular biology. Many of these applications are now essential to modern industry. With an increasing need for new antibiotics and environmentally safe production of chemicals, researchers are exploring the Earth microbiome for bacteria and fungi that produce useful products without genetic modification. In this chapter, we will explore the microbial production of foods, drugs, and chemicals.

The Clinical Case shows the role of microbiologists in ensuring that pathogens such as *Salmonella* (in the photo) are not in foods.

◀ ***Salmonella enterica*** **serovars are frequent causes of foodborne illness.**

In the Clinic

As a nurse with the CDC's Epidemic Intelligence Service, you are notified of two Minnesota patients with botulism. You query the database and find three more cases in Illinois, Indiana, and Ohio. You confirm that all five individuals involved had eaten canned asparagus from the same manufacturer. **What causes botulism? How can canned food cause botulism?**

Hint: Read about food microbiology in this chapter.

Food Microbiology

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

28-1 Describe thermophilic anaerobic spoilage and flat sour spoilage by mesophilic bacteria.

28-2 Compare and contrast food preservation by industrial food canning, aseptic packaging, radiation, and high pressure.

28-3 Name four beneficial activities of microorganisms.

Many of the methods of food preservation used today were probably discovered by chance in centuries past. People in early cultures observed that dried meat and salted fish resisted decay. Farmers learned that if grains were kept dry, they did not become moldy. Nomads must have noticed that soured animal milk resisted further decomposition and was still palatable. Moreover, if the curd of the soured milk was pressed to remove moisture and allowed to ripen (in effect, cheesemaking), it was even more effectively preserved and tasted better. And some plants, such as olives and cocoa, were found to be more palatable after "spoilage" (fermentation).

The foods listed in Table 28.1 will give you an idea of the worldwide use of fermentation to preserve foods or make them edible.

Foods and Disease

As more food products are being prepared at central facilities and widely distributed, it is becoming more likely that food, like municipal water supplies, might be a source of widespread disease outbreaks. To minimize the potential for disease outbreaks, communities have established local agencies whose role is to inspect dairies and restaurants. The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) also maintain a system of inspectors at ports and central processing locations. The **Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP)** system is designed to prevent contamination by identifying points at which foods are most likely to be contaminated with harmful microbes. Monitoring of these control points can prevent such microbes from being introduced or, if they are present, arrest their proliferation.

TABLE 28.1 Some Fermented Foods

Dairy Products		
Cheeses (ripened)	Milk curd	*Streptococcus* spp., *Leuconostoc* spp., *Propionibacterium* spp.
Kefir	Milk	*Streptococcus lactis, Lactobacillus bulgaricus, Candida* spp.
Kumiss	Mare's milk	*L. bulgaricus, L. leichmannii, Candida* spp.
Yogurt	Milk, milk solids	*Streptococcus thermophilus, L. bulgaricus*
Meat and Fish Products		
Country-cured hams	Pork hams	*Aspergillus, Penicillium* spp.
Dry sausages	Pork, beef	*Pediococcus cerevisiae*
Fish sauces	Small fish	Halophilic *Bacillus* spp.
Nonbeverage Plant Products		
Cocoa beans (chocolate)	Cacao fruits (pods)	*Candida krusei, Geotrichum* spp.
Coffee beans	Coffee cherries	*Erwinia dissolvens, Saccharomyces* spp.
Kimchi	Cabbage and other vegetables	Lactic acid bacteria
Miso	Soybeans	*Aspergillus oryzae, Zygosaccharomyces rouxii*
Olives	Green olives	*Leuconostoc mesenteroides, Lactobacillus plantarum*
Poi	Taro roots	Lactic acid bacteria
Sauerkraut	Cabbage	*Leuconostoc mesenteroides, Lactobacillus plantarum*
Soy sauce	Soybeans	*A. oryzae* or *A. sojae, Z. rouxii, Lactobacillus delbrueckii*
Breads		
Bread	Flour from wheat and other grains	*Saccharomyces cerevisiae*
San Francisco sourdough bread	Wheat flour	*Saccharomyces exiguus, Lactobacillus sanfranciscensis*

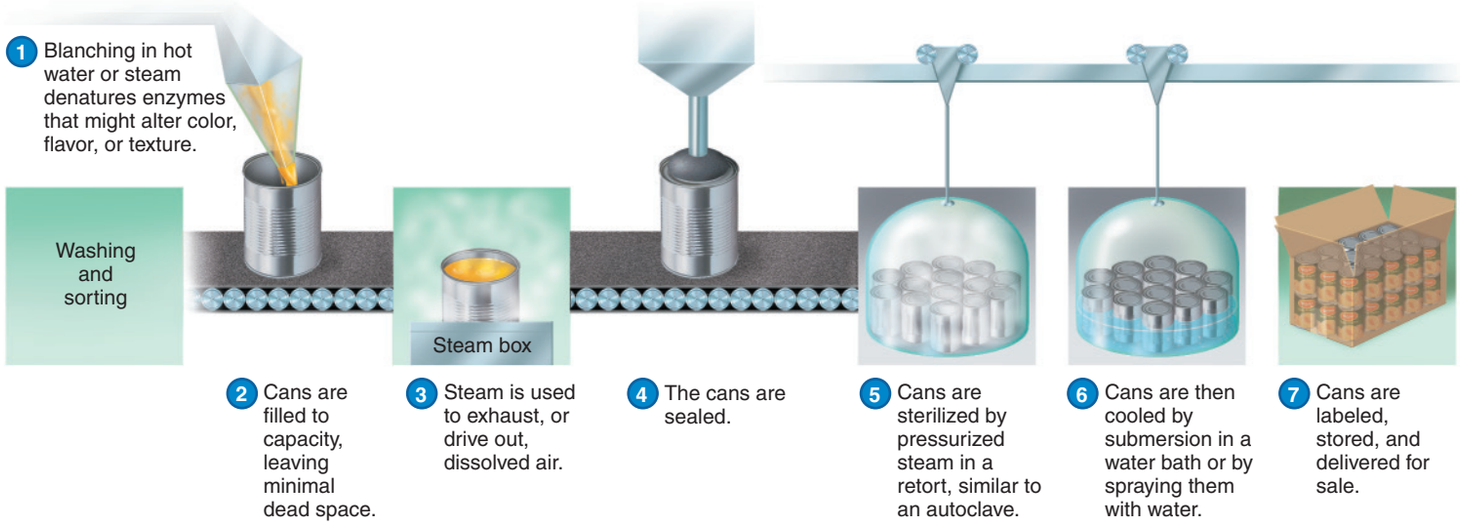


Figure 28.1 The commercial sterilization process in industrial canning.

Q How does commercial sterilization differ from complete sterilization?

For example, the HACCP system can identify steps during processing at which meats or fresh produce are likely to become contaminated. The HACCP system also requires monitoring of adequate temperatures to kill pathogens during processing and adequate storage temperatures to prevent their reproduction.

After harvest, foods must be preserved to prevent spoilage and growth of pathogens. One bacteriocin produced by *Lactococcus lactis*, nisin, is widely used as a food preservative. Canning (discussed next), drying, and refrigeration (Chapter 7) are other common methods of preserving food.

Industrial Food Canning

In Chapter 7, you learned that preserving foods by heating a properly sealed container, as in home canning, is not difficult. The challenge in commercial canning is to use the right amount of heat necessary to kill spoilage organisms and dangerous microbes, such as the endospore-forming *Clostridium botulinum*, without degrading the appearance and palatability of food. Thus, much research is applied to determining the exact minimum heat treatment that will accomplish both these goals.

Industrial Canning Process

Industrial food canning is much more technically sophisticated than home canning (Figure 28.1). Industrially canned goods undergo **commercial sterilization** by steam under pressure in a large **retort**, which operates on the same principle as an autoclave (see Figure 7.2). Commercial sterilization is intended to destroy *C. botulinum* endospores and is not as rigorous as complete sterilization. The reasoning is that if *C. botulinum* endospores are destroyed, then any other significant spoilage or pathogenic bacteria will also be destroyed.

To ensure commercial sterilization, enough heat is applied for the **12D treatment** (12-decimal reductions, or *botulinal cook*), by which a theoretical population of *C. botulinum* endospores would be decreased by 12 logarithmic cycles. (See Figure 7.1 and Table 7.2.) What this means is that if there were 10^{12} (1,000,000,000,000) endospores in a can, after treatment there would be only one survivor. Because 10^{12} is an improbably large population, this treatment is considered quite safe. Certain thermophilic endospore-forming bacteria have endospores that are more resistant to heat treatment than those of *C. botulinum*. However, these bacteria are obligate thermophiles and generally remain dormant at temperatures lower than about 45°C. Therefore, they are not a spoilage problem at normal storage temperatures.

Spoilage of Canned Food

If canned foods are incubated at high temperatures, such as in a truck in the hot sun or next to a steam radiator, the thermophilic bacteria that often survive commercial sterilization can germinate and grow. **Thermophilic anaerobic spoilage** is

CLINICAL CASE Dr. Chang and the Chocolate Factory

Dr. Derrick Chang of the CDC is alerted by PulseNet, the national molecular subtyping network for foodborne disease surveillance. PulseNet has identified an increase of genetically identical *Salmonella* Typhimurium in the United States. This increase shows 120 isolates from 23 states in the last 60 days.

What is causing this outbreak? Read on to find out.

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

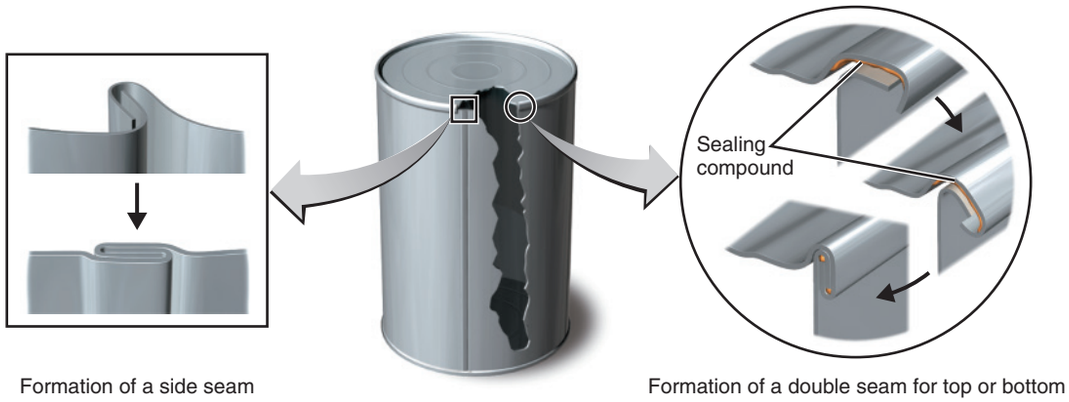


Figure 28.2 The construction of a metal can. Notice the seam construction, which was introduced about 1904. During cooling after sterilization (see Figure 28.1, step 6), the vacuum formed in the can may actually force contaminating organisms into the can along with water.

Q Why isn't the can sealed before it is placed in the steam box?

therefore a fairly common cause of spoilage in low-acid canned foods. The can usually swells from gas, and the contents have a lowered pH and a sour odor. A number of thermophilic species of *Clostridium* can cause this type of spoilage. When thermophilic spoilage occurs but the can is not swollen by gas production, the spoilage is termed **flat sour spoilage**. This type of spoilage is caused by thermophilic organisms such as *Geobacillus stearothermophilus* (jē-ō-bah-SIL-lus ste-rō-ther-MAH-fil-us), which is found in the starch and sugars used in food preparation. Many industries have standards for the numbers of such thermophilic bacteria permitted in raw materials. Both types of spoilage occur only when the cans are stored at higher-than-normal temperatures, which permits the growth of bacteria whose endospores are not destroyed by normal processing.

Mesophilic bacteria can spoil canned foods if the food is underprocessed or if the can leaks. Underprocessing is more likely to result in spoilage by endospore formers; the presence of non–endospore-forming bacteria strongly suggests that the can leaks. Leaking cans are often contaminated during the cooling of cans after processing by heat. The hot cans are sprayed with cooling water or passed through a trough filled with water. As the can cools, a vacuum is formed inside, and external water can be pushed through a leak past the heat-softened sealant in the crimped lid (Figure 28.2). Contaminating bacteria in the cooling water are drawn into the can with the water. Spoilage from underprocessing or can leakage is likely to produce odors of putrefaction, at least in high-protein foods, and occurs at normal storage temperatures. In such types of spoilage, there is always the potential that botulinal bacteria will be present.

Some acidic foods, such as tomatoes or other fruits, are preserved by processing temperatures of 100°C or lower. The reasoning is that the only spoilage organisms that will grow in such acidic foods are easily killed by even 100°C temperatures. Primarily, these would be molds, yeasts, and certain vegetative bacteria.

Occasional problems in acidic foods develop from a few microorganisms that are both heat resistant and acid tolerant. Examples of heat-resistant fungi are the mold *Byssochlamys fulva* (bis-sō-KLA-mis FUL-vah), which produces a *heat-resistant ascospore*, and a few species of *Aspergillus* (as-per-JIL-lus), that sometimes produce specialized resistant bodies called *sclerotia*. A spore-forming bacterium, *Bacillus coagulans* (bah-SIL-lus kō-AG-ū-lanz), is unusual in that it is capable of growth at a pH of almost 4.0.

Aseptic Packaging

The use of **aseptic packaging** to preserve food has been increasing. Packages are usually made of some material that cannot tolerate conventional heat treatment, such as laminated paper or plastic. The packaging materials come in continuous rolls that are fed into a machine that sterilizes the material with a hot hydrogen peroxide solution, sometimes aided by ultraviolet (UV) light. Metal containers can be sterilized with superheated steam or other high-temperature methods. High-energy electron beams can also be used to sterilize the packaging materials. While still in the sterile environment, the material is formed into packages, which are then filled with liquid foods that have been conventionally sterilized by heat. The filled package is not sterilized after it is sealed.

Radiation and Industrial Food Preservation

It has long been recognized that irradiation is lethal to microorganisms; in fact, a patent was issued in Great Britain in 1905 for the use of ionizing radiation to improve the condition of foodstuffs. X rays were specifically suggested in 1921 as a way to inactivate the larvae in pork that are the cause of

TABLE 28.2 Approximate Doses of Radiation Needed to Kill Various Organisms (Prions Are Not Affected)

Organisms	Dose (kGy)*
Higher animals (whole body)	0.005–0.1
Insects	0.01–1
Non–endospore-forming bacteria	0.5–10
Bacterial endospores	10–50
Viruses	10–200

*Gray is a measure of ionizing irradiation; kGy is 1000 Grays.

Source: J. Farkas, "Physical Methods of Food Preservation," in *Food Microbiology: Fundamentals and Frontiers*, 2d ed., M. P. Doyle et al. (Eds.) (Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2001).

trichinellosis. Ionizing irradiation inhibits DNA synthesis and effectively prevents microorganisms, insects, and plants from reproducing. The ionizing irradiation is usually X rays or the gamma rays produced by radioactive cobalt-60. Up to certain energy levels, high-energy electrons produced by electron accelerators are also used. The main practical difference is in penetration capabilities. These sources inactivate the target organisms and do *not* induce radioactivity in the food or packaging material. The relative doses of radiation needed to kill various organisms are presented in Table 28.2. Radiation is measured in *Grays*, named for a British physicist who studied effects of radiation on living tissue—often in terms of thousands of Grays, abbreviated as kGy.

- *Low doses of irradiation (less than 1 kGy)* are used to kill insects (disinfestation) and inhibit sprouting, as in stored potatoes. Similarly, it can delay ripening of fruits during storage.
- *Pasteurizing doses (1 to 10 kGy)* can be used on meats and poultry to eliminate or critically reduce the numbers of specific bacterial pathogens.
- *High doses (more than 10 kGy)* are used to sterilize, or at least greatly lower, the bacterial populations in many spices. Spices are often contaminated with 1 million or more bacteria per gram, although these are not considered to be normally hazardous to health.

A specialized use of irradiation has been to sterilize meats eaten by American astronauts, and a few health facilities have selectively used irradiation to sterilize foods ingested by immunocompromised patients. Millions of implanted medical devices, such as pacemakers, have been irradiated. Irradiated food is marked in the United States with a radura symbol ( ) and a printed notice. Unfortunately, this symbol has often been interpreted as a warning rather than the description of an approved processing treatment or preservative. In fact, irradiated foods are not radioactive; consider that the X-ray table in a hospital does not become radioactive from repeated daily exposure to ionizing radiation. Recently, the FDA has allowed, upon special approval, substitution of language such as "electronically pasteurized" rather than "irradiated."

When deep penetration is a requirement, the preferred method for irradiation is gamma rays produced by cobalt-60. However, this type of treatment requires several hours of exposure in isolation behind protective walls (Figure 28.3).

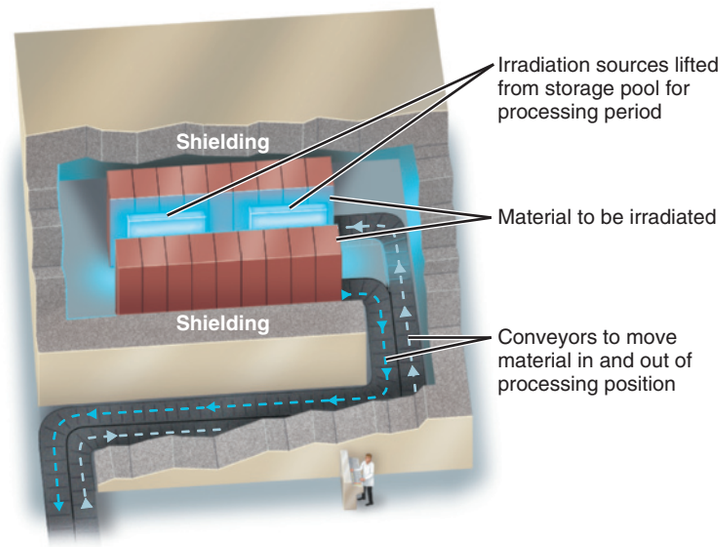


Figure 28.3 A gamma-ray irradiation facility. Shown is the path of the material to be irradiated.

Q Can microwaves be used to sterilize foods?

CLINICAL CASE

Dr. Chang initiates a case-control study with representatives of the state health departments that had reported *Salmonella* Typhimurium infections. Fifteen items, suspected as possible vehicles of infection on the basis of the individual case investigations, are listed. State officials determine whether each suspect item was used or consumed by the infected person within the 3 days before onset of illness. The family of each patient identifies two neighborhood controls of the same age and sex as the patient. Controls were asked the same questions as patients, except that they were questioned about the use or consumption of the 15 suspect items during the previous month. Some of the data collected are shown in the table.

Foil-Wrapped Chocolate Balls	Cases	Controls
Ate	38	12
Did not eat	7	79

Calculate the odds ratio for this food item. (*Hint:* See the Clinical Focus box in Chapter 25.)

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

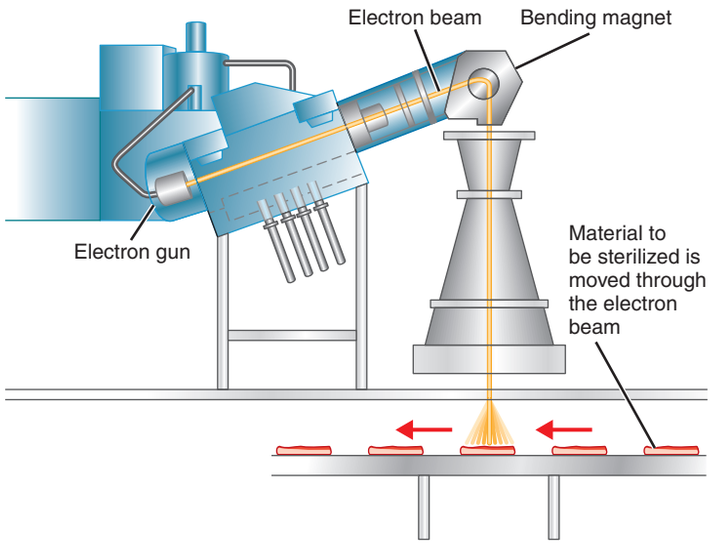


Figure 28.4 Electron-beam accelerator. These machines generate an electron stream that is accelerated down a long tube by electromagnets of the opposite charge. In the drawing, the electron beam is bent by a "bending magnet." This serves to filter out electrons of unwanted energy levels, providing a beam of uniform energy. The vertical beam is swept back and forth over the target as it is moved past the beam. The penetrating power of the beam is limited: if the target substance is expressed as an equivalent thickness of water, the maximum is about 3.9 cm (1.5 in). In contrast, X rays will penetrate about 23 cm (9 in).

Q Are high-energy electrons ionizing radiation?

High-energy electron accelerators (Figure 28.4) are much faster and sterilize in a few seconds, but this treatment has low penetrating power and is suitable only for sliced meats, bacon, or similar thin products. Also, plasticware used in microbiology is usually sterilized in this way. Another recent application is to irradiate mail to kill possible bioterrorism agents that it might contain, such as anthrax endospores.

High-Pressure Food Preservation

In the 1990s, the food industry started using a high-pressure processing technique (*pascalization*). Prewrapped foods such as fruits, deli meats, and precooked chicken strips are submerged into tanks of pressurized water. The pressure can reach 87,000 pounds per square inch (psi)—which has been compared to the equivalent of about three elephants standing on a dime. This process kills many bacteria, such as *Salmonella*, *Listeria*, and pathogenic strains of *Escherichia coli*, by disrupting many cellular functions. It also kills nonpathogenic microorganisms that tend to shorten the shelf life of such products.

Because the process does not require additives, it does not require regulatory approval. It has the advantage of preserving colors and tastes of foods better than many other methods and does not provoke the concerns of irradiation.

The Role of Microorganisms in Food Production

In the latter part of the nineteenth century, microbes used in food production were grown in pure culture for the first time. This development quickly led to an improved understanding of the relationships between specific microbes and their products and activities. This period can be considered the beginning of industrial food microbiology. For example, once it was understood that a certain yeast grown under certain conditions produced beer and that certain bacteria could spoil the beer, brewers were better able to control the quality of their products. Specific industries became active in microbiological research and selected certain microbes for their special qualities. The brewing industry extensively investigated the isolation and identification of yeasts and selected those that could produce more alcohol. In this section, we will discuss the role of microorganisms in the production of several common foods.

Cheese

The United States leads the world in the making of cheese, producing millions of tons every year. Although there are many types of cheeses, all require the formation of a **curd**, which can be separated from the main liquid fraction, or **whey** (Figure 28.5). The curd is made up of a protein, **casein**, and is usually formed by the action of an enzyme, **rennin** (or chymosin), which is aided by acidic conditions provided by certain lactic acid–producing bacteria. These inoculated lactic acid bacteria also provide the characteristic flavors and aromas of fermented dairy products during the ripening process. The curd undergoes a microbial ripening process, except in the case of a few unripened cheeses, such as ricotta and cottage cheese.

The milk has been coagulated by the action of rennin (forming curd) and is inoculated with bacteria for flavor and acidity. The curd is being cut to allow whey to drain out.

Figure 28.5 Making cheddar cheese.

Q Are there living bacteria in the final cheese product?

Cheeses are generally classified by their hardness, which is produced in the ripening process. The more moisture lost from the curd and the more the curd is compressed, the harder the cheese.

The hard cheddar and Swiss cheeses are ripened by lactic acid bacteria growing anaerobically in the interior. Such hard, interior-ripened cheeses can be quite large. The longer the incubation time, the higher the acidity and the sharper the taste of the cheese. A *Propionibacterium* (prō-pē'ron-ē-bak-TI-rē-um) species produces carbon dioxide, which forms the holes in Swiss cheese. Semisoft cheeses, such as Limburger, are ripened by bacteria and other contaminating organisms growing on the surface. Blue and Roquefort cheeses are ripened by *Penicillium* molds inoculated into the cheese. The texture of the cheese is loose enough that adequate oxygen can reach the aerobic molds. The growth of the *Penicillium* molds is visible as blue-green clumps in the cheese. Camembert, a soft cheese, is ripened in small packets so that the enzymes of *Penicillium* mold growing aerobically on the surface will diffuse into the cheese for ripening.

Other Dairy Products

Butter is made by churning cream until the fatty globules of butter separate from the liquid *buttermilk*. The typical flavor and aroma of butter and buttermilk are from *diacetyls*, a combination of two acetic acid molecules that is a metabolic end-product of fermentation by some lactic acid bacteria. Today, commercially sold buttermilk is usually not a by-product of butter-making but is made by inoculating skim milk with bacteria that form lactic acid and the diacetyls. *Cultured sour cream* is made from cream inoculated with microorganisms similar to those used to make buttermilk.

Yogurt, a slightly acidic dairy product, is found around the world and is popular in the United States. Commercial yogurt is made from milk, from which at least one-fourth of the water has been evaporated in a vacuum pan. The resulting thickened milk is inoculated with a mixed culture of *Streptococcus thermophilus*, primarily for acid production, and *Lactobacillus delbrueckii bulgaricus* (bul-GAR-i-kus), to contribute flavor and aroma. The temperature of the fermentation is about 45°C for several hours, during which time *S. thermophilus* outgrows *L. d. bulgaricus*. Maintaining the proper balance between the flavor-producing and the acid-producing microbes is the secret of making yogurt.

Kefir and *kumiss* are fermented milk beverages that are popular in eastern Europe. The usual lactic acid–producing bacteria are supplemented with a lactose-fermenting yeast to give these drinks an alcohol content of 1–2%.

Nondairy Fermentations

Historically, milk fermentation allowed dairy products to be stored and then consumed much later. Other microbial fermentations were used to make certain plants edible. For example, pre-Columbian people in Central and South America learned to ferment cacao beans before consumption. The microbial products released during fermentation produce the chocolate flavor.

Microorganisms are also used in baking, especially for leavened bread (bread made with a rising agent). The sugars in bread dough are fermented by yeasts. The species of yeast used in baking is *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. This same species of yeast is also used in the brewing of beer from grains and the fermentation of wines from fruits. (At one time *S. cerevisiae* was classified as multiple species, such as *S. pastorianus*, *S. uvarum*, and *S. c. ellipsoideus*; these and a few other species names are often encountered in older literature.) *S. cerevisiae* will grow readily under both aerobic and anaerobic conditions, although, unlike facultatively anaerobic bacteria such as *E. coli*, it cannot grow anaerobically indefinitely. Various strains of *S. cerevisiae* have been developed over the centuries and are highly adapted to certain fermentation uses.

Anaerobic conditions for producing ethanol by the *S. cerevisiae* are mandatory for producing alcoholic beverages. In baking, carbon dioxide forms the typical bubbles of leavened bread. Aerobic conditions favor carbon dioxide production and are encouraged as much as possible. This is the reason bread dough is kneaded repeatedly. Whatever ethanol is produced evaporates during baking. In some breads, such as rye or sourdough, the growth of lactic acid bacteria produce the typical tart flavor.

Fermentation is also used in the production of such foods as *sauerkraut*, *pickles*, *olives*, and even salami and coffee, in which the beans undergo a fermentation step.

Alcoholic Beverages and Vinegar

Microorganisms are involved in the production of almost all alcoholic beverages. Beer is the product of grain starches fermented by yeast. Lager is fermented slowly with yeast strains that remain on the bottom (*bottom yeasts*). Ale is fermented relatively rapidly, at a higher temperature, with yeast strains that usually form clumps that are buoyed to the top by CO_2 (*top yeasts*). Because yeasts are unable to use starch directly, the starch from grain must be converted to glucose and maltose, which the yeasts can ferment into ethanol and carbon dioxide. In this conversion, called **malting**, starch-containing grains, such as malting barley, are allowed to sprout and then are dried and ground. This product, called **malt**, contains the plant's starch-degrading enzymes (amylases) that convert cereal starches into carbohydrates that can be fermented by yeasts. Light beers use amylases or selected strains of yeast to convert more of the starch to fermentable glucose and maltose, resulting in fewer carbohydrates and more alcohol. The beer is then diluted to arrive at an alcohol percentage in the usual range. **Sake**, the Japanese rice wine (which is actually a beer), is made from rice without malting

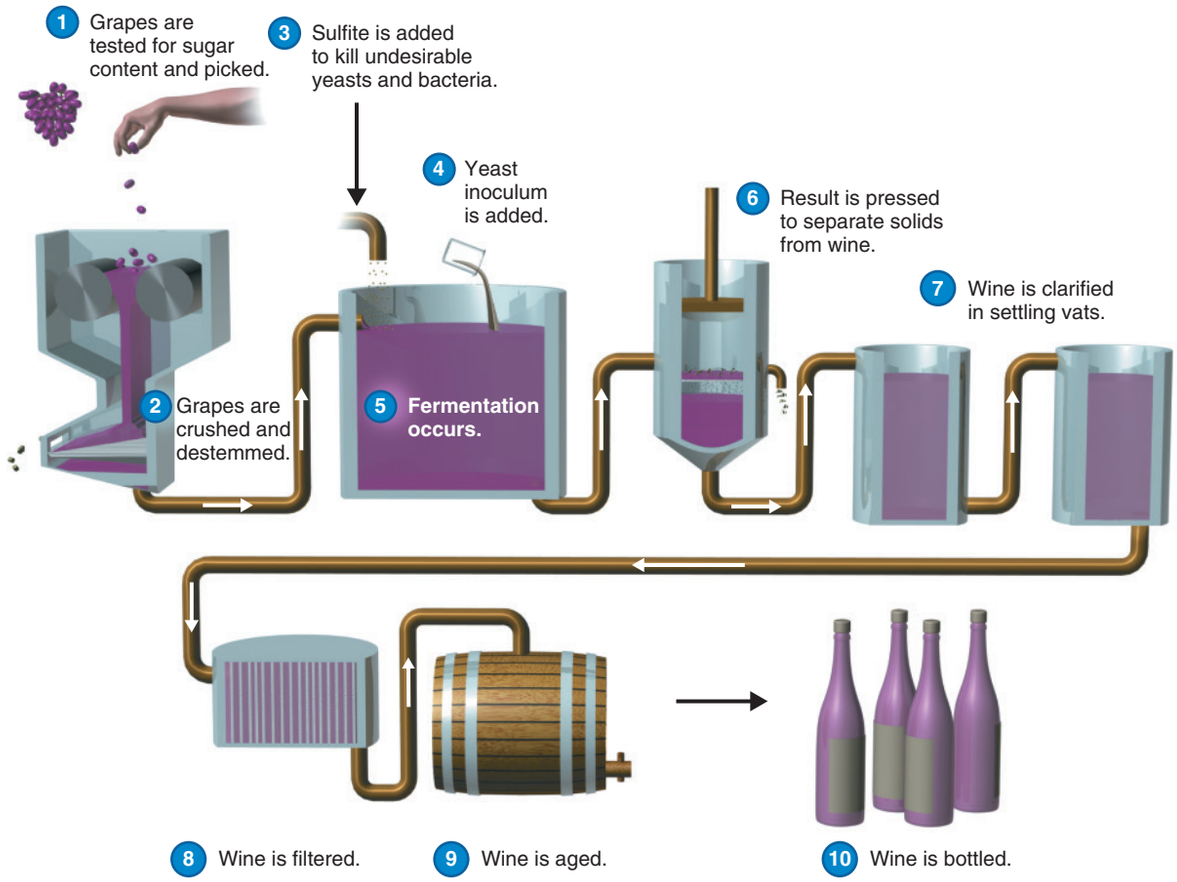


Figure 28.6 The basic steps in making red wine. For white wines, the pressing precedes fermentation so that the color is not extracted from the solid matter.

Q What happens if air enters at step 5? At step 10?

because the mold *Aspergillus* is first used to convert the rice's starch to sugars that can be fermented. (See the discussion of koji under "Enzymes.") For *distilled spirits*, such as *whiskey, vodka*, and *rum*, carbohydrates from cereal grains, potatoes, and molasses are fermented to alcohol. The alcohol is then distilled to make a concentrated alcoholic beverage.

Wines are made from fruits, typically grapes, that contain sugars that yeasts can use directly for fermentation; malting is unnecessary in winemaking. Grapes usually need no additional sugars, but other fruits might be supplemented with sugars to ensure enough alcohol production. The steps of winemaking are shown in Figure 28.6. Lactic acid bacteria are important when wine is made from grapes that are especially acidic from high concentrations of malic acid. These bacteria convert the malic acid to the weaker lactic acid in a process called **malolactic fermentation**. The result is a less acidic, better-tasting wine than would otherwise be produced.

Long ago, wine producers who allowed wine to be exposed to air found that it soured from the growth of aerobic bacteria that converted the ethanol in the wine to acetic acid. The result was *vinegar* (*vin* = wine; *aigre* = sour). The process is now used deliberately to make vinegar. Ethanol is first produced by anaerobic fermentation of carbohydrates by yeasts. The ethanol is then aerobically oxidized to acetic acid by acetic acid–producing bacteria of the genera *Acetobacter* and *Gluconobacter*.

CLINICAL CASE

Illness due to *Salmonella* Typhimurium infection has a high association with consumption of foil-wrapped chocolate balls (odds ratio = 35.7). Dr. Chang initiates environmental testing and traceback to locate the source of contamination. From questioning families and examining store invoices, investigators identify the specific chocolate item (identified by the manufacturer's code number). State health department laboratories find that at least 22 of these chocolate samples contain *Salmonella* Typhimurium.

How will Dr. Chang find the source of contamination?

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **28-1** Is botulism a greater danger in spoilage of canned goods under thermophilic or under mesophilic conditions?
- **28-2** Canned foods are usually in metal cans. What sorts of containers are used for aseptically packaged foods?
- **28-3** Roquefort and other blue cheeses are characterized by blue-green clumps. What are these?

Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

28-4 Define *industrial fermentation* and *bioreactor*.

28-5 Differentiate primary from secondary metabolites.

28-6 Describe the role of microorganisms in the production of industrial chemicals and pharmaceuticals.

28-7 Define *bioconversion*, and list its advantages.

28-8 List biofuels that can be made by microorganisms.

The word **biotechnology** was first used in 1918 to describe the use of living organisms to produce products—in reference to combining agriculture and technology. The industrial uses of microorganisms had their beginnings in large-scale food fermentations that produced lactic acid from dairy products and ethanol from brewing. These two chemicals also proved to have many industrial uses unrelated to foods. During World Wars I and II, microbial fermentation and similar technologies were used in the production of armament-related chemical compounds, such as butanol and acetone. Present industrial microbiology dates largely from the technology developed to produce antibiotics following World War II. There is renewed interest in some of these classic microbial fermentations, especially if they can be used as feedstocks, can be used for products that are renewable, or, ideally, use products that would otherwise be wasted.

In recent years, biotechnology has been revolutionized by the application of genetically modified organisms. In Chapter 9, we discussed the methods for making these modified organisms using recombinant DNA technology and described some of the products derived from them.

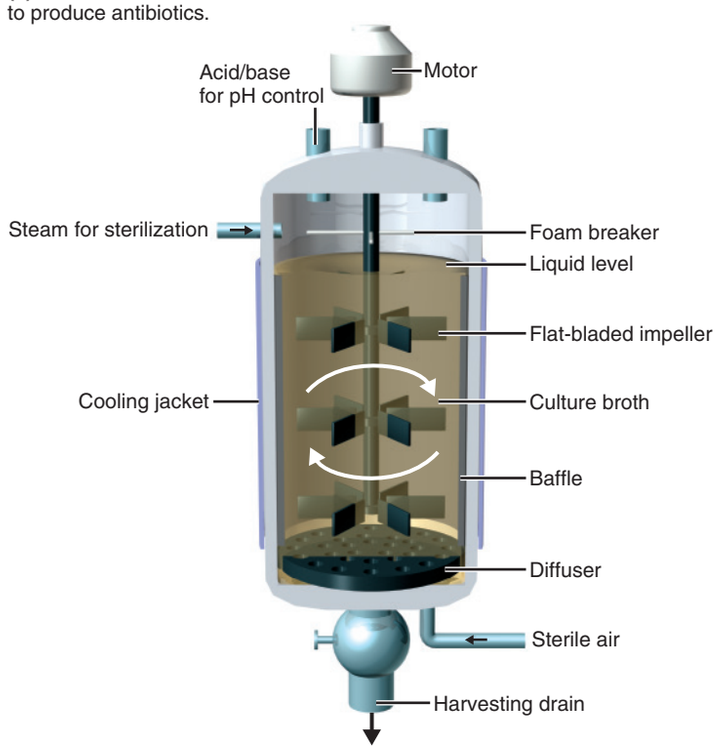
Fermentation Technology

The industrial production of microbial products usually involves fermentation. *Industrial fermentation* is the large-scale cultivation of microbes or other single cells to produce a commercially valuable substance. We have just discussed the most familiar examples: the anaerobic food fermentations used in the dairy, brewing, and winemaking industries. Much of the same technology, with the frequent addition of aeration, has been adapted to make other industrial products, such as insulin and human growth hormone, from genetically modified microorganisms. Industrial fermentation is also used in biotechnology to obtain useful products from genetically modified plant and animal cells (see Table 9.2). For example, animal cells are used to make monoclonal antibodies (see Chapter 18).

Bioreactors

Vessels for industrial fermentation are called **bioreactors** (Figure 28.7a); they are designed with close attention to aeration, pH control, and temperature control. There are many

(a) Bioreactors like this are used to produce antibiotics.



(b) Section of a continuously stirred bioreactor for industrial fermentations.

Figure 28.7 Bioreactors are used for large-scale growth of microorganisms. Environmental conditions such as pH and aeration can be adjusted to maximize the desired product made by the microbe.

Q **Identify one essential difference between the bioreactor illustrated and a vat for making wine.**

different designs, but the most widely used bioreactors are of the continuously stirred type (Figure 28.7b). The air is introduced through a diffuser at the bottom (which breaks up the incoming airstream to maximize aeration), and a series of impeller paddles and stationary wall baffles keep the microbial suspension agitated. Oxygen is not very soluble in water, and keeping the heavy microbial suspension well aerated is difficult. Highly sophisticated designs have been developed to achieve maximum efficiency in aeration and other growth requirements, including medium formulation. The high value of the products of genetically modified microorganisms and eukaryotic cells has stimulated the development of newer types of bioreactors and computerized controls for them.

Bioreactors are sometimes very large, holding as much as 500,000 liters. When the product is harvested at the completion of the fermentation, the process is known as *batch production*. There are other designs of fermentors. For *continuous flow production*, in which the substrates (usually a carbon source) are fed continuously past immobilized enzymes or into a culture of growing cells, spent medium and desired product are continuously removed.

Primary and Secondary Metabolites

Generally speaking, the microbes in industrial fermentation produce either primary metabolites, such as ethanol, or secondary metabolites, such as penicillin. A **primary metabolite** is formed essentially at the same time as the new cells, and the production curve follows the cell population curve almost in parallel, with only minimal lag. **Secondary metabolites** are not produced until the microbe has largely completed its logarithmic growth phase, known as the **trophophase**, and has entered the stationary phase of the growth cycle. The following period, during which most of the secondary metabolite is produced, is known as the **idiophase**. The secondary metabolite may be a microbial conversion of a primary metabolite. Alternatively, it may be a metabolic product of the original growth medium that the microbe makes only after considerable numbers of cells and a primary metabolite have accumulated. Cellular metabolism leaves behind small-molecule chemical fingerprints of the cellular processes: a metabolic profile. The use of these chemical fingerprints to study cellular processes involving metabolites is termed **metabolomics**.

Strain Improvement

Strain improvement is also an ongoing activity in industrial microbiology. (A microbial **strain** differs physiologically in some significant way. For example, it has an enzyme to carry out some additional activity or lacks such an ability, but this difference is not enough to change its species identity.) A well-known example is that of the mold used for penicillin production. The original culture of *Penicillium* did not produce penicillin in large enough quantities for commercial use. A more efficient culture was isolated from a moldy cantaloupe from a Peoria, Illinois, supermarket. This strain was treated variously with UV light, X rays, and nitrogen mustard (a chemical mutagen). Selections of mutants, including some that arose spontaneously, quickly increased the production rates by a factor of more than 100. Today, the original penicillin-producing molds produce, not the original 5 mg/L, but 60,000 mg/L. Improvements in fermentation techniques have nearly tripled even this yield.

Immobilized Enzymes and Microorganisms

In many ways, microbes are packages of enzymes. Industries are increasing their use of free enzymes isolated from microbes to manufacture many products, such as high-fructose corn syrup, paper, and textiles. The demand for such enzymes is high because they are specific and do not produce costly or toxic waste products. And, unlike traditional chemical processes that require heat or acids, enzymes work under moderate conditions and are safe and biodegradable. For most industrial purposes, the enzyme must be immobilized on the surface of some solid support or otherwise manipulated so that it can convert a continuous flow of substrate to product without being lost.

Continuous flow techniques have also been adapted to live whole cells and sometimes even to dead cells (Figure 28.8). Whole-cell systems are difficult to aerate, and they lack the single-enzyme specificity of immobilized enzymes. However, whole cells are advantageous if the process requires a series of steps that can be carried out by one microbe's enzymes. They also have the advantage of allowing continuous flow processes with large cell populations operating at high reaction rates. Immobilized cells, which are usually anchored to microscopically small spheres or fibers, are currently used to make high-fructose corn syrup, aspartic acid, and numerous other products of biotechnology.

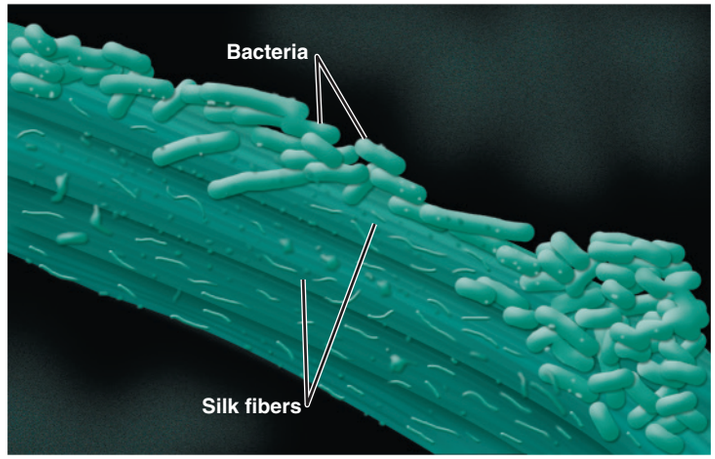


Figure 28.8 Immobilized cells. In some industrial processes, the cells are immobilized on surfaces such as the silk fibers shown here. The substrate flows past the immobilized cells.

Q How does this process resemble the action of a trickling filter in sewage treatment?

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- **28-4** Do bioreactors operate aerobically or anaerobically?
- **28-5** Penicillin is produced in its greatest quantities after the trophophase of fermentation. Does that make it a primary or secondary metabolite?

Industrial Products

As mentioned earlier, cheesemaking produces an organic waste called whey. The whey must be disposed of as sewage or dried and burned as solid waste. Both of these processes are costly and ecologically problematic. However, microbiologists have discovered an alternative use for whey. A research team working with the USDA used an enrichment technique to isolate a plant pathogen, *Xanthomonas campestris* (zan'thō-MŌ-nas kam-PES-tris) bacterium, that uses the lactose in whey and produces xanthan. First, they inoculated a whey medium with *X. campestris* and incubated it for 24 hours. Then they transferred an inoculum of this culture to a flask of lactose broth, to select a lactose-utilizing cell. The strain did not have to make xanthan from this broth; it only had to grow and use lactose. A lactose-utilizing strain was isolated through serial transfers, selecting for the strain with the best ability to grow. After incubation for 10 days, an inoculum was transferred to another flask of lactose broth, and the procedure was repeated two more times. When transferred to a flask of whey medium, the final lactose-utilizing bacteria grew in the whey and produced xanthan. The bacterium can convert 40 g/L of whey powder into 30 g/L of xanthan gum (Figure 28.9). The xanthan gum is used to thicken a wide variety of products from salad dressing to shampoo.

In this way, microbiologists are devising uses for wastes and creating new products. In this section, we will discuss some of the more important commercial microbial products and the growing alternative energy industry.

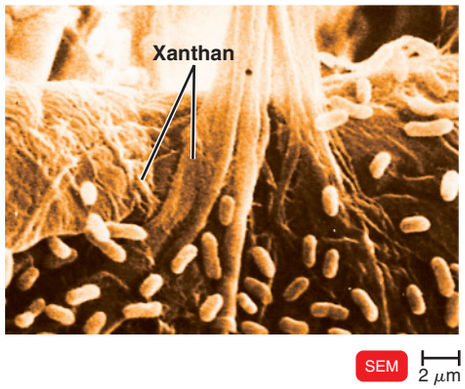


Figure 28.9 ***Xanthomonas campestris*, producing gooey xanthan.**

Q What product can you find at home or in the supermarket that contains xanthan?

Amino Acids

Amino acids have become a major industrial product from microorganisms. For example, over 1 million tons of *glutamic acid* (L-glutamate), used to make the flavor enhancer monosodium glutamate, are produced every year. Certain amino acids, such as *lysine* and *methionine*, cannot be synthesized by animals and are present only at low levels in the normal diet. Therefore, the commercial synthesis of lysine and some of the other essential amino acids as cereal food supplements is an important industry. More than 250,000 tons each of lysine and methionine are produced every year.

Two microbially synthesized amino acids, *phenylalanine* and *aspartic acid* (L-aspartate), have become important as ingredients in the sugar-free sweetener aspartame (NutraSweet®). Some 7000 to 8000 tons of each of these amino acids are produced annually in the United States. Because only the L-isomer of an amino acid is desired, microbial production, which forms only the L-isomer, has an advantage over chemical production, which forms both the **D-isomer** and the **L-isomer** (see Figure 2.13).

In nature, microbes rarely produce amino acids in excess of their own needs because feedback inhibition prevents wasteful production of primary metabolites (see Chapter 5). Commercial microbial production of amino acids depends on specially selected mutants and sometimes on ingenious manipulations of metabolic pathways.

Citric Acid

Citric acid is a constituent of citrus fruits, such as oranges and lemons, and at one time these were its only industrial source. However, over 100 years ago, citric acid was identified as a product of mold metabolism. This discovery was first used as an industrial process when World War I interfered with the picking of the Italian lemon crop. Citric acid has an extraordinary range of uses beyond the obvious ones of giving tartness and flavor to foods. It is an antioxidant and pH adjuster in many foods, and in dairy products it often serves as an emulsifier. Over 1.6 million tons of citric acid are produced every year worldwide. Much of it is produced by a mold, *Aspergillus niger* (NĪ-jer), with molasses used as a substrate.

Enzymes

Enzymes are widely used in different industries. For example, fabric, especially denim, is treated with fungal cellulase to achieve softness and a faded look. *Amylases* are used in the production of syrups from cornstarch, in the production of fabric and paper sizing (a coating for smoothness, as on this page), and in the production of glucose from starch. The microbiological production of amylase is considered to be the first biotechnology patent issued in the United States, which was given to the Japanese scientist Jokichi Takamine. The basic process by which molds were used to make an enzyme preparation known as **koji** had been used for centuries in Japan to make fermented soy

products. Koji is an abbreviation of a Japanese word meaning bloom of mold, reflecting the infiltration of a cereal substrate, either rice or a wheat-soybean mixture, with a filamentous fungus (*Aspergillus*). Primarily, the amylases in koji change starch into sugars, but koji preparations also contain proteolytic enzymes that convert the protein in soybeans into a more digestible and flavorful form. It is the basis of soybean fermentations that are staples of the Japanese diet, such as *soy sauce* and *miso* (a fermented paste of soybeans with a meaty flavor). *Sake*, the well-known Japanese rice wine, makes use of amylases of koji to change the carbohydrates of rice into a form that yeasts can use to produce alcohol. This is roughly the equivalent of the barley malt used in beer brewing, discussed earlier in this chapter.

Glucose isomerase is an important enzyme; it converts the glucose that amylases form from starches into fructose, which is used in place of sucrose as a sweetener in many foods. Probably half of the bread baked in this country is made with the aid of *proteases*, which adjust the amount of glutens (protein) in wheat so that baked goods are improved or made uniform. Other proteolytic enzymes are used as meat tenderizers or in detergents as an additive to remove proteinaceous stains. About a third of all industrial enzyme production is for this purpose. *Rennin*, the enzyme mentioned earlier that forms curds in milk, is usually produced commercially by fungi but more recently by genetically modified bacteria.

Vitamins

Individual and multivitamins are sold in large quantities in tablet, chewable, and liquid forms as dietary supplements. Microbes can provide an inexpensive source of some vitamins. *Vitamin* B_{12} is produced by *Pseudomonas* and *Propionibacterium* species. *Riboflavin* (B_2) is another vitamin produced by fermentation, mostly by fungi such as *Eremothecium* (Ashbya) *gossypii* (air-e-mō-THĒ-sē-um gos-SIP-ē-e-). *Vitamin C* (ascorbic acid) is produced at the rate of 60,000 tons per year by a complicated modification of glucose by *Acetobacter* species.

Pharmaceuticals

Modern pharmaceutical microbiology developed after World War II, when production of antibiotics was introduced. All antibiotics were originally the products of microbial metabolism. Most are still produced by microbial fermentations, and work continues on the selection of more productive mutants by nutritional and genetic manipulations. Since Fleming's discovery of penicillin, researchers have focused on culturing soil bacteria to identify new antibiotics. However, most of the Earth microbiome is unculturable. In 2015, researchers at Northeastern University developed the **isolation chip (iChip)** to grow bacteria in their natural environment (Figure 28.10). Bacteria are placed in a chamber with pores that let nutrients in and wastes out but are small enough to contain bacteria. The chamber is then put in a soil slurry, seawater, or whatever the bacterium's natural environment is. Bacteria that grow in the chamber and their metabolic products can be studied. The new antibiotic teixobactin was discovered using the iChip.

CLINICAL CASE

The following ingredients are combined in the manufacturing of milk chocolate: cacao beans, cocoa butter (fat pressed out of the cacao bean), sugar, lecithin, vanillin, and salt. Cacao beans from Ghana, Nigeria, Brazil, and Ecuador are blended and roasted for 30 minutes at 125°C. The beans are then air cooled and ground. In the mixing room, the dry ingredients (salt, sugar, and ground beans) are blended and then mixed with the Brazilian cocoa butter in 3-ton batches for molding.

The factory microbiologist is responsible for ensuring that the raw ingredients are free of pathogens when they enter the factory. In the past, she has rejected coconut milk and eggs that tested positive for *Salmonella*. She recently rejected a peanut shipment that tested positive for mycotoxins. Dr. Chang asks the factory microbiologist to culture selected items in the production line. Her results are shown in the table.

	Number of Samples	Number Positive for *Salmonella* Typhimurium
Raw material storage area	56	0
Bean roasting room	16	2
Beans	14	0
Cocoa butter	9	0
Lecithin	7	0
Vanillin	1	0
Raw bean room	11	2
Mixing room	14	0
Trash room	7	0
Janitorial equipment	10	0
Chocolate molds	62	2
Tap water	5	0
Production line chocolate samples	25	0

Now where will Dr. Chang look?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 **Part 4** Part 5 Part 6

At least 6000 antibiotics have been described. One organism, *Streptomyces hygroscopicus*, has different strains that make almost 200 different antibiotics. Antibiotics are typically made industrially in large bioreactors (see Figure 28.7b).

Vaccines are a product of industrial microbiology. Many antiviral vaccines are mass-produced in microbial or cell cultures. The production of vaccines against bacterial diseases usually requires the growth of large amounts of the bacteria. Recombinant DNA technology is increasingly important in the development and production of subunit vaccines (see Chapter 18).

Figure 28.10 iChip. The isolation chip (iChip) allows researchers to grow bacteria in their natural environment. There are about 400 chambers on this iChip, and a different bacterium can be grown in each.

Q What is the advantage of an iChip over a flask containing nutrient broth?

Steroids are a very important group of chemicals that include *cortisone*, which is used as an anti-inflammatory drug, and *estrogens* and *progesterone*, which are used in oral contraceptives. Recovering steroids from animal sources or chemically synthesizing them is difficult, but microorganisms can synthesize steroids from sterols or from related, easily obtained compounds. For example, Figure 28.11 illustrates the conversion of a sterol into a valuable steroid.

Other Chemicals

Traditional chemical companies are turning to microbiology to develop environmentally sound production methods that minimize toxic wastes and the associated costs. Chemical synthesis of indigo, for example, requires a high pH and produces waste that explodes on contact with air. However, *Pseudomonas putida* (poo-TĒ-dah) produces an enzyme that converts the bacterial by-product indole to indigo.

Microbes can even make plastic. Over 25 bacteria make polyhydroxyalkanoate (PHA) inclusion granules as a food reserve. PHAs are similar to common plastics, and because they are made by bacteria, they are also readily degraded by many bacteria. PHAs could provide a biodegradable alternative to conventional plastic, which is made from petroleum.

Metal Extraction by Bioleaching

Acidithiobacillus ferrooxidans is used in a process called **bioleaching** to recover otherwise unprofitable grades of metal ore, which sometimes contain as little as 0.1% metal. Bioleaching is used to recover copper, zinc, uranium, gold, and other metals. At least 25% of the world's copper is produced this way. *Acidithiobacillus* bacteria get their energy from the oxidation of a reduced form of iron (Fe^{2+}) in ferrous sulfide to an oxidized form (Fe^{3+}) in ferric sulfate. Sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) is also a product of the reaction. The acidic solution of Fe^{3+}-containing water is applied by sprinklers and allowed to percolate downslope through the ore body (Figure 28.12). The ferrous iron, Fe^{2+}, and *A. ferrooxidans* are normally present in the ore and continue to contribute to the reactions. The Fe^{3+} in the sprinkling water reacts with insoluble copper (Cu^{+}) in *copper sulfides* in the ore to form soluble copper (Cu^{2+}), which takes the form of *copper sulfates* ($CuSO_4$). The soluble copper sulfate moves downslope to collection tanks, where it contacts metallic scrap iron. The copper sulfates react chemically with the iron and precipitate out as metallic copper (Cu^0). In this reaction, the metallic iron (Fe^0) is converted into ferrous iron (Fe^{2+}) that is recycled to an aerated oxidation pond, where *Acidithiobacillus* bacteria use it for energy to renew the cycle.

Microorganisms as Industrial Products

Microorganisms themselves sometimes constitute an industrial product. *Baker's yeast (S. cerevisiae)* is produced in large, aerated fermentation tanks. At the end of the fermentation, the contents of the tank are about 4% yeast solids. The cells are harvested by continuous centrifuges and are pressed into the familiar yeast cakes or packets sold for home baking. Wholesale bakers purchase yeast in 50-lb boxes.

Other important microbes that are sold industrially are the symbiotic nitrogen-fixing bacteria *Rhizobium* and *Bradyrhizobium*. These organisms are usually mixed with peat moss to preserve moisture; the farmer mixes the peat moss and bacterial inoculum with the seeds of legumes to ensure infection of the plants with efficient nitrogen-fixing strains (see Chapter 27, "Nitrogen Fixation"). For many years, gardeners have used the insect pathogen *Bacillus thuringiensis* to control leaf-eating insect larvae. This

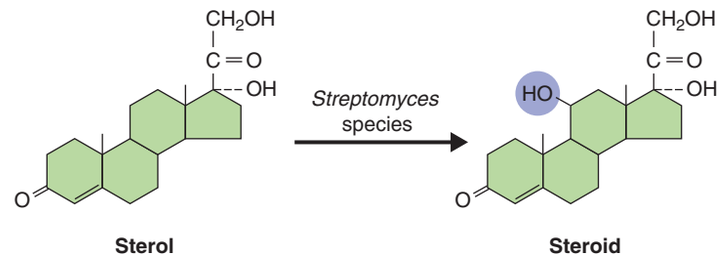
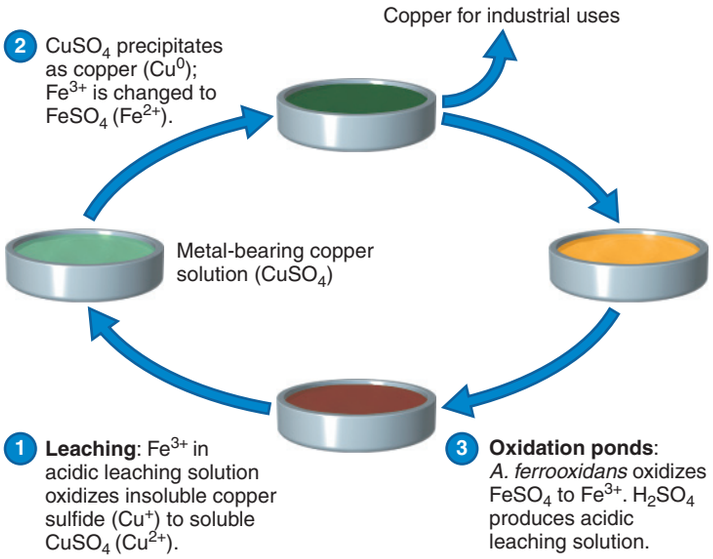


Figure 28.11 The production of steroids. Shown here is the conversion of a precursor compound such as a sterol into a steroid by *Streptomyces*. The addition of a hydroxyl group (highlighted in purple on the steroid) to carbon number 11 might require more than 30 steps by chemical means, but the microorganism can add it in only one step.

Q Name a commercial product that is a steroid.



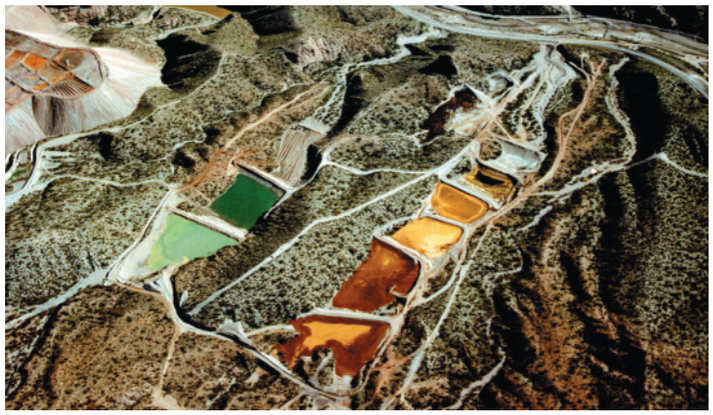


Figure 28.12 Bioleaching of copper ores. The chemistry of the process is much more complicated than shown here. Essentially, *A. ferrooxidans* bacteria are used in a biological/chemical process that changes insoluble copper in the ore into soluble copper that leaches out and is precipitated as metallic copper. The solutions are continuously recirculated.

Q Name another metal that is recovered by a similar process.

bacterium produces a toxin (Bt-toxin) that kills certain moths, beetles, and flies when ingested by their larvae. *B. thuringiensis* subspecies *israelensis* produces Bt-toxin that is especially active against mosquito larvae and is widely used in municipal control programs. Commercial preparations containing Bt-toxin and endospores of *B. thuringiensis* are available at almost any gardening supply store. A new approach to insect control using the insect microbiome is described in the Exploring the Microbiome box.

Microbes have been used for food for centuries. The Aztecs ate *Spirulina* cyanobacteria ("pond scum") harvested from lakes. *Spirulina* continues to be used as a nutritional supplement in many countries and by NASA astronauts. Yeast grown on molasses were used for protein during World War I. In the 1970s, yeast was grown on liquefied paraffin for animal food. Today, methanotrophs grown on methane are used for animal food.

Single-cell protein (SCP) describes protein from bacteria, fungi, or algae. Its use has become important in the fight against climate change. Raising animals for meat requires land and water to grow their food and generates methane from their digestion or manure storage. (See the Big Picture in Chapter 27.) Currently, SCP is providing tasty and nutritional alternatives to meat. Commercial meatless or "veggie" meat products are produced by a variety of companies. The desired microbes are grown in large-scale bioreactors (Figure 28.7). The microbes produce the flavor proteins, such as heme, of meat. The microbes used to produce meatless products include

- *Komagataella* (Pichia) *pastoris* yeast (kō-mah-GAH-ta-el-la PAS-tor-is)
- Hydrogenotrophs that use carbon dioxide and hydrogen for their carbon and energy
- *Fusarium flavolapis* mold

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

28-6 At one time, citric acid was extracted on an industrial scale from lemons and other citrus fruits. What organism is used to produce it today?

CLINICAL CASE

The cacao beans seem to be the most likely source of the bacteria. Dr. Chang asks how the beans are harvested and stored. He is told that after harvest, cacao beans are fermented at the farm in wooden boxes that are often covered with banana leaves. He is also told there has been only one recorded incident of *Salmonella* contamination of the raw beans. Hearing this, Dr. Chang suspects that contamination must have occurred in the room at the factory where the raw beans are kept. Looking at the room, Dr. Chang spots a discolored area on an overhead pipe in the bean room. No one has noticed the leak. The quality control microbiologist swabs the discolored area, which grows *Salmonella*.

What characteristics of chocolate prevent microbial growth?

Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4 Part 5 Part 6

Alternative Energy Sources Using Microorganisms

As our supplies of fossil fuels diminish and as atmospheric CO_2 increases, interest in the use of renewable energy resources is increasing. Prominent among these is **biomass**, the collective organic matter produced by living organisms, including crops, trees, and municipal wastes. Microbes can be used for **bioconversion**, the process of converting biomass into alternative energy sources. Bioconversion can also decrease the amount of waste materials requiring disposal.

Methane is one of the most convenient energy sources produced from bioconversion. Many communities capture useful amounts of methane from wastes in landfill sites, thereby preventing the methane from escaping into the atmosphere (Figure 28.13).

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

✓ **28-7** Landfills are the site of a major form of bioconversion—what is the product?

Biofuels

Biofuels are energy sources produced from living organisms, rather than from fossils of organisms that lived over 300 million years ago. Therefore, the CO_2 produced from burning biofuels is carbon that is currently in the carbon cycle. Interest in renewable biofuels is increasing because they can provide clean, sustainable energy sources. The initial interest has focused on **ethanol**, which is already widely used as a supplement to gasoline (90% gasoline + 10% ethanol), and the technology is well established. Brazil, for example, produces large amounts of ethanol from sugarcane, about a third of its transportation fuel. Ethanol has, however, a number of deficiencies: it cannot be transported by conventional pipelines (because it absorbs water so avidly), and it has 30% less energy content than gasoline.

These drawbacks have increased interest in biofuels derived from cellulosic materials, such as cornstalks, wood, and wastepaper, and from exotic nonfood plants such as jatropha, camelina, and miscanthus. In the United States there is special interest in switchgrass—which once carpeted the prairies of the Midwest. Such grasses are perennials and require little more attention than harvesting.

The technology for producing ethanol from cellulose is less well known and more expensive than that from corn or sugarcane. The sugar molecules that make up cellulose may be broken apart by enzymes—in fact, genes to synthesize these enzymes have been genetically introduced into *E. coli*. Cellulose sources also contain significant amounts of a similar component, *hemicellulose*, which will require organisms capable of digesting it—probably genetically modified microbes. Another cellulose component, *lignin*, resists digestion, but could be burned to heat early steps in fermentation processing.

"Higher" alcohols such as butanol, which have longer carbon chains, and especially branched alcohols such as isobutanol and isobutyraldehyde, have advantages over conventional ethanol for use as biofuels. They have less capacity to absorb water and have a higher energy content. Bacteria have been genetically modified to produce several forms of higher alcohols from glucose. A basic problem in microbial production of these biofuels is that we want the microbe to excrete fuel so that we eliminate the expensive step of harvesting the microbes periodically.

A theoretically attractive alternative organism for producing biofuels is algae. Algae offer a number of advantages; for one, they do not take up valuable farmland needed for food production. Also, algae produce 40 times the energy per acre that corn produces—and the land the algae grow on can be agriculturally nonproductive as long as it has abundant sunlight. Experimental algal production sites have even used the carbon dioxide emissions from power plants to accelerate growth. The algae can be harvested on an almost daily basis. Oils squeezed from them can be turned into biodiesel fuel and possibly jet fuel: typical algae yield 20% of their weight in oil, and some even more. After oil extraction, the remainder, rich in carbohydrates and proteins, can be used to produce ethanol or as animal feed.

Hydrogen is another attractive candidate as a replacement for fossil fuels, especially if it can be produced by splitting water. It can be used in fuel cells to generate electricity and, if burned to generate energy, does not produce harmful residues. Most research into the production of hydrogen has concentrated on physical and chemical methods, but it is also potentially possible to use bacteria or algae to produce hydrogen from the fermentation of various waste products or by modifications of photosynthesis.

Electron transfer in microorganisms is also being explored as a source of electricity. Bacteria or algae that can generate an electric current are called *exoelectrogens*. In **microbial fuel cells**, exoelectrogens are grown in a nutrient medium such as soil or

Figure 28.13 Methane production from solid wastes in landfills. Methane accumulates in landfills and can be used for energy. Methane is collected and burned to run turbines and generate electricity. This also prevents methane from escaping into the atmosphere.

Q How is methane produced in a landfill?

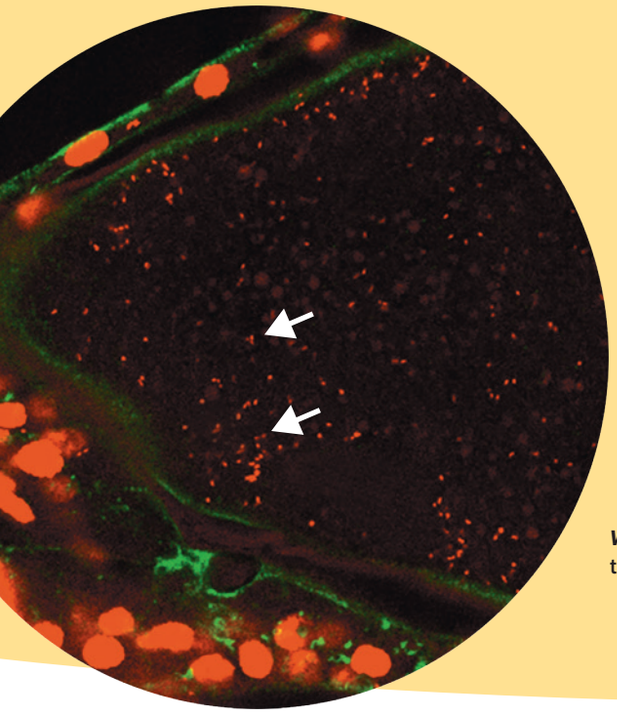
EXPLORING THE MICROBIOME

Using Bacteria to Stop the Spread of Zika Virus

Wolbachia is quite possibly the most common bacterial genus on Earth. Members of this gram-negative genus commonly live in arthropods, most notably in insects, including mosquitoes. In some cases they behave as commensal microbes in insects, and in other cases their behavior classifies them as parasites.

In some insects, *Wolbachia* destroys males of its host species. *Wolbachia* can turn males into females by interfering with the male hormone. In mosquitoes, if only the male is infected, the mating pair create eggs that fail to hatch. If the female (or both partners) are infected, the next generation of mosquitoes is born infected with the bacteria. The infected new generation mount an immune response against the bacteria that makes the mosquitoes less-than-optimum hosts for arthropod-borne viruses that can transmit to humans too.

Now areas of Mexico, Australia, southeast Asia, Texas, and California are starting to tap this bacteria as a tool in the fight against Zika infections. *Wolbachia*-infected mosquitoes raised in a lab, called symbiotically modified organisms (SMOs), are released into areas where people live among *Aedes aegypti* mosquitoes. This mosquito is associated with Zika transmission to humans. When wild, uninfected females mate with male SMOs, the nonviable eggs that result help reduce the overall mosquito population. The female SMOs mate and pass their *Wolbachia* infections on to a new generation in the wild—but the young mosquitoes will not transmit the Zika virus. Additionally, this procedure reduces transmission of viruses that cause chikungunya and dengue by 67% and 37%, respectively.



Wolbachia **are small red cells inside the cells of this fruit fly embryo.**

wastewater. Electrons generated in the electron transport chain are transferred to an electrode and then to a wire.

The technologies outlined here will require time to reach their potential. Currently, science is in the early phases of the learning curves that all new technologies face.

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

28-8 How can microbes provide fuels for cars and electricity?

Industrial Microbiology and the Future

Microbes have always been exceedingly useful to humankind, even when their existence was unknown. They will remain an essential part of many basic food-processing technologies. The development of recombinant DNA technology has further intensified interest in industrial microbiology by expanding the potential for new products and applications. As the supplies of fossil energy become scarcer, interest in renewable energy sources, such as hydrogen and ethanol, will increase. The use of specialized microbes to produce such products on an industrial scale will probably become more important. As new biotechnology applications and products enter the marketplace, they will affect our lives and well-being in ways that we can only speculate about today.

CLINICAL CASE Resolved

The low moisture, high fat, and high sugar content of chocolate does not favor bacterial growth, but it does significantly increase the heat resistance of bacteria. Consequently, bacteria may survive roasting.

To address the risk posed by *Salmonella*, all food safety agencies have pursued an ongoing strategy to reduce the prevalence of the pathogen in the food chain. However, despite all the efforts, the number of salmonellosis cases remains high.

Study Outline

Food Microbiology (pp. 820–827)

1. The earliest methods of preserving foods were drying, the addition of salt or sugar, and fermentation.

Foods and Disease (pp. 820–821)

2. Food safety is monitored by the FDA and USDA and also by use of the HACCP system.

Industrial Food Canning (pp. 821–822)

3. Commercial sterilization of food is accomplished by steam under pressure in a retort.
4. Commercial sterilization heats canned foods to the minimum temperature necessary to destroy *C. botulinum* endospores while minimizing alteration of the food.
5. The commercial sterilization process uses sufficient heat to reduce a population of *C. botulinum* by 12 logarithmic cycles (12D treatment).
6. Endospores of thermophiles can survive commercial sterilization.
7. Canned foods stored above 45°C can be spoiled by thermophilic anaerobes.
8. Thermophilic anaerobic spoilage is sometimes accompanied by gas production; if no gas is formed, the spoilage is called flat sour spoilage.
9. Spoilage by mesophilic bacteria is usually from improper heating procedures or leakage.
10. Acidic foods can be preserved by heat of 100°C because microorganisms that survive are not capable of growth in a low pH.
11. *Byssochlamys*, *Aspergillus*, and *Bacillus coagulans* are acid-tolerant and heat-resistant microbes that can spoil acidic foods.

Aseptic Packaging (p. 822)

12. Presterilized materials are assembled into packages and aseptically filled with heat-sterilized liquid foods.

Radiation and Industrial Food Preservation (pp. 822–824)

13. Gamma and X-ray radiation can be used to sterilize food, kill insects and parasitic worms, and prevent the sprouting of fruits and vegetables.

High-Pressure Food Preservation (p. 824)

14. Pressurized water (pascalization) is used to kill bacteria in fruit and meat.

The Role of Microorganisms in Food Production (pp. 824–827)

15. The milk protein casein curdles because of the action by lactic acid bacteria or the enzyme rennin.
16. Old-fashioned buttermilk was produced by lactic acid bacteria growing during the butter-making process.
17. Sugars in bread dough are fermented by yeast to ethanol and CO_2; the CO_2 causes the bread to rise.
18. Carbohydrates obtained from grains, potatoes, or molasses are fermented by yeasts to produce ethanol in the production of beer, wine, and distilled spirits.

Industrial Microbiology and Biotechnology (pp. 827–834)

1. Microorganisms produce alcohols and acetone that are used in industrial processes.
2. Industrial microbiology has been revolutionized by the ability of genetically modified cells to make many new products.
3. Biotechnology is a way of making commercial products by using living organisms.

Fermentation Technology (pp. 827–829)

4. The growth of cells on a large scale is called industrial fermentation.
5. Industrial fermentation is carried on in bioreactors, which control aeration, pH, and temperature.
6. Primary metabolites such as ethanol are formed as the cells grow (during the trophophase).
7. Secondary metabolites such as penicillin are produced during the stationary phase (idiophase).
8. Mutant strains that produce a desired product can be selected.
9. Enzymes or whole cells can be bound to solid spheres or fibers. When substrate passes over the surface, enzymatic reactions change the substrate to the desired product.

Industrial Products (pp. 829–832)

10. Microbes produce xanthan, amino acids, vitamins, and citric acid used in foods and medicine.
11. Enzymes used in manufacturing foods, medicines, and other goods are produced by microbes.
12. Vaccines, antibiotics, and steroids are products of microbial growth.
13. The metabolic activities of *A. ferrooxidans* can be used to recover uranium and copper ores.
14. Yeasts are grown for wine- and breadmaking; other microbes (*Rhizobium*, *Wolbachia*, and *B. thuringiensis*) are grown for agricultural use.
15. Bacteria and fungi are grown to produce single-cell proteins for animal and human consumption.

Alternative Energy Sources Using Microorganisms (pp. 832–833)

16. Organic waste, called biomass, can be converted by microorganisms into the alternative fuel methane, a process called bioconversion.
17. Fuels produced by microbial fermentation are methane, ethanol, and hydrogen.

Biofuels (pp. 833–834)

18. Biofuels include alcohols and hydrogen (from microbial fermentation) and oils (from algae).

Industrial Microbiology and the Future (p. 834)

19. Recombinant DNA technology will continue to enhance the ability of industrial microbiology to produce medicines and other useful products.

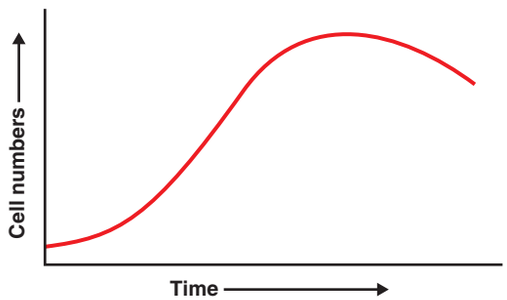
Study Questions

For answers to the Knowledge and Comprehension questions, turn to the Answers tab at the end of the textbook.

Knowledge and Comprehension

Review

1. What is industrial microbiology? Why is it important?
2. How does commercial sterilization differ from sterilization procedures used in a hospital or laboratory?
3. Why is a can of blackberries preserved by commercial sterilization typically heated to 100°C instead of at least 116°C?
4. Outline the steps in the production of cheese, and compare the production of hard and soft cheeses.
5. Beer is made with water, malt, and yeast; hops are added for flavor. What is the purpose of the water, malt, and yeast? What is malt?
6. Why is a bioreactor better than a large flask for industrial production of an antibiotic?
7. The manufacture of paper includes the use of bleach and formaldehyde-based glue. The microbial enzyme xylanase whitens paper by digesting dark lignins. Oxidase causes the fibers to stick together, and cellulase will remove ink. List three advantages of using these microbial enzymes over traditional chemical methods for making paper.
8. Describe an example of bioconversion. What metabolic processes can result in fuels?
9. DRAW IT Label the trophophase and idiophase in this graph. Indicate when primary and secondary metabolites are formed.



10. NAME IT Van Leeuwenhoek was the first to see this budding microbe with a nucleus and cell wall; although humans have used it since before the beginning of recorded history, Louis Pasteur was the first to figure out what it does.

Multiple Choice

1. Foods packed in plastic for microwaving are
   a. dehydrated.
   b. freeze-dried.
   c. packaged aseptically.
   d. commercially sterilized.
   e. autoclaved.
2. *Acetobacter* is necessary for only one of the steps of vitamin C manufacture. The easiest way to accomplish this step would be to
   a. add substrate and *Acetobacter* to a test tube.
   b. affix *Acetobacter* to a surface and run substrate over it.
   c. add substrate and *Acetobacter* to a bioreactor.
   d. find an alternative to this step.
   e. none of the above

Use the following choices to answer questions 3–5:

a. *Bacillus coagulans*
b. *Byssochlamys*
c. flat sour spoilage
d. *Lactobacillus*
e. thermophilic anaerobic spoilage

3. The spoilage of canned foods due to inadequate processing, accompanied by gas production.
4. The spoilage of canned foods caused by *G. stearothermophilus*.
5. A heat-resistant fungus that causes spoilage in acidic foods.
6. The term *12D treatment* refers to
   a. heat treatment sufficient to kill 12 bacteria.
   b. the use of 12 different treatments to preserve food.
   c. a 10^{12} reduction in *C. botulinum* endospores.
   d. any process that destroys thermophilic bacteria.
7. Which one of the following is *not* a fuel produced by microorganisms?
   a. algal oil
   b. ethanol
   c. hydrogen
   d. methane
   e. uranium
8. Which type of radiation is used to preserve foods?
   a. ionizing
   b. nonionizing
   c. radiowaves
   d. microwaves
   e. all of the above
9. Which of the following reactions is undesirable in winemaking?
   a. Sucrose → ethanol
   b. Ethanol → acetic acid
   c. Malic acid → lactic acid
   d. Glucose → pyruvic acid
10. Which of the following reactions is an oxidation carried out by *A. ferrooxidans*?
    a. $Fe^{2+} \rightarrow Fe^{3+}$
    b. $Fe^{3+} \rightarrow Fe^{2+}$
    c. $CuS \rightarrow CuSO_4$
    d. $Fe^{0} \rightarrow Cu^{0}$
    e. none of the above

Analysis

1. Which bacteria seem to be most frequently used in the production of food? Propose an explanation for this.
2. *Methylophilus methylotrophus* can convert methane (CH_4) into proteins. Amino acids are represented by this structure:

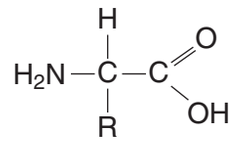
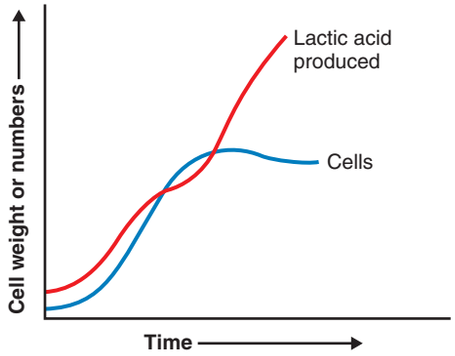


   Diagram a pathway illustrating the production of at least one amino acid. (*Hint*: See Chapter 5.)
3. Faded, worn-look denim is produced with cellulase. How does cellulase accomplish the look and feel of scores of washings? What is the source of the cellulase?

Clinical Applications and Evaluation

1. Suppose you are culturing a microorganism that produces enough lactic acid to kill itself in a few days. The following graph shows conditions in the bioreactor:



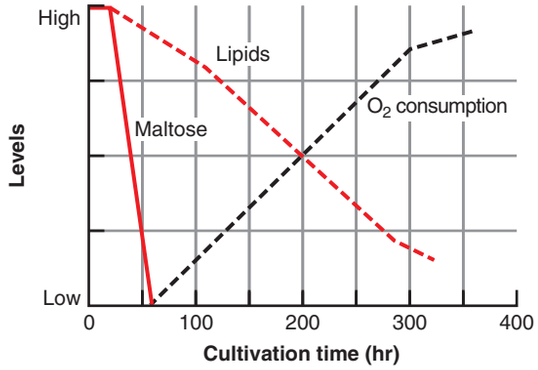
   a. How can the use of a bioreactor help you maintain the culture for weeks or months?
   b. If your desired product is a secondary metabolite, when can you begin collecting it?
   c. If your desired product is the cells themselves and you want to maintain a continuous culture, when can you begin harvesting?

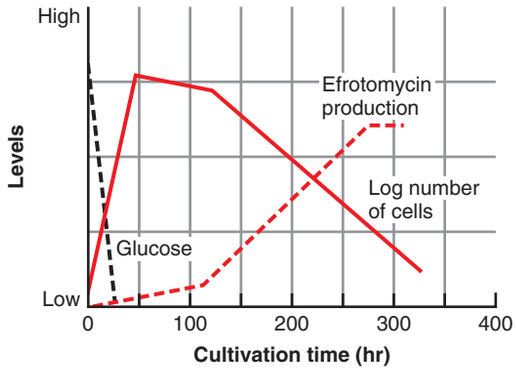
2. Researchers at the CDC inoculated apple cider with 10^5 *E. coli* O157:H7 cells/ml to determine the fate of the bacteria in apple cider (pH 3.7). They obtained the following results:

	***E. coli* O157:H7 CFU/ml after 25 days**
Apple cider at 25°C	10^4 (mold growth evident by 10 days)
Apple cider with potassium sorbate at 25°C	10^3
Apple cider at 8°C	10^2

   What conclusions can you reach from these data? What disease is caused by *E. coli* O157:H7? (*Hint:* See Chapter 25.)

3. The antibiotic efrotomycin is produced by *Streptomyces lactamdurans*. *S. lactamdurans* was grown in 40,000 liters of medium. The medium consisted of glucose, maltose, soybean oil, $(NH_4)_2SO_4$, NaCl, KH_2PO_4, and Na_2HPO_4. The culture was aerated and maintained at 28°C. The following results were obtained from analyses of the culture medium during cell growth:





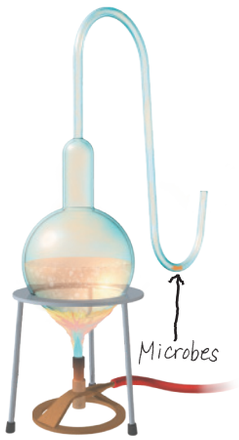
   a. Under what conditions is the most efrotomycin produced? Is it a primary or secondary metabolite?
   b. Which is used first, maltose or glucose? Suggest a reason for this.
   c. What is the purpose of each ingredient in the growth medium? (*Hint:* See Chapter 6.)
   d. What is *Streptomyces*? (*Hint:* See Chapter 11.)

This page intentionally left blank

Answers to Knowledge and Comprehension Study Questions

Chapter 1

Review

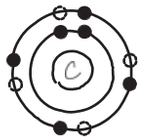
1. People came to believe that living organisms arise from nonliving matter because they would see flies coming out of manure, maggots coming out of dead animals, and microorganisms appearing in liquids after a day or two.
2. **a.** Certain microorganisms cause diseases in insects. Microorganisms that kill insects can be effective biological control agents because they are specific for the pest and do not persist in the environment.
   b. Carbon, oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur, and phosphorus are required for all living organisms. Microorganisms convert these elements into forms that are useful for other organisms. Many bacteria decompose material and release carbon dioxide into the atmosphere, which plants use. Some bacteria can take nitrogen from the atmosphere and convert it into a form that plants and other microorganisms can use.
   c. Normal microbiota are microorganisms that are found in and on the human body. They do not usually cause disease and can be beneficial.
   d. Organic matter in sewage is decomposed by bacteria into carbon dioxide, nitrates, phosphates, sulfate, and other inorganic compounds in a wastewater treatment plant.
   e. Recombinant DNA techniques have resulted in insertion of the gene for insulin production into bacteria. These bacteria can produce human insulin inexpensively.
   f. Microorganisms can be used as vaccines. Some microbes can be genetically modified to produce components of vaccines.
   g. Biofilms are aggregated bacteria adhering to each other and to a solid surface.
3. **a.** 1, 3 **c.** 1, 4, 5 **e.** 5 **g.** 6
   b. 8 **d.** 2 **f.** 3 **h.** 7
4. **a.** 7 **c.** 3 **e.** 6 **g.** 1
   b. 4 **d.** 2 **f.** 5
5. **a.** 11 **e.** 3 **i.** 1 **m.** 7 **q.** 13
   b. 14 **f.** 9 **j.** 12 **n.** 5 **r.** 16
   c. 15 **g.** 10 **k.** 18 **o.** 6
   d. 17 **h.** 2 **l.** 4 **p.** 8
6. **a.** *B. thuringiensis* is sold as a biological insecticide.
   b. *Saccharomyces* is the yeast sold for making bread, wine, and beer.
7. Bacterium
8. 

Multiple Choice

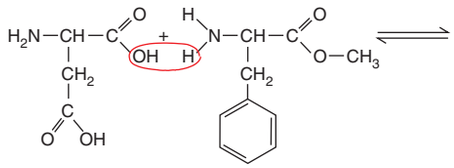
1. a
2. c
3. d
4. c
5. b
6. e
7. c
8. a
9. c
10. a

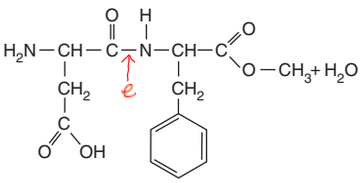
Chapter 2

Review

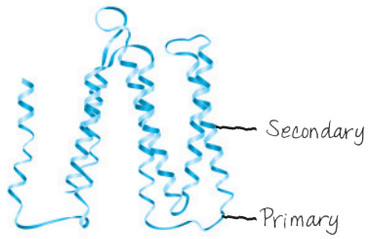
1. Atoms with the same atomic number and chemical behavior are classified as chemical elements.
2. 

3. **a.** Ionic **c.** Double covalent bonds
   b. Single covalent bond **d.** Hydrogen bond
4. **a.** Synthesis reaction, condensation, or dehydration
   b. Decomposition reaction, digestion, or hydrolysis
   c. Exchange reaction
   d. Reversible reaction
5. The enzyme speeds up this decomposition reaction.
6. **a.** Lipid **c.** Carbohydrate
   b. Protein **d.** Nucleic acid
7. **a.** Amino acids
   b. Right to left
   c. Left to right

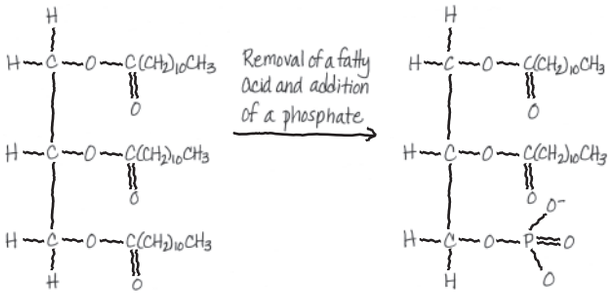




8. The entire protein shows tertiary structure, held by disulfide bonds. No quaternary structure.



9.



10. Fungus

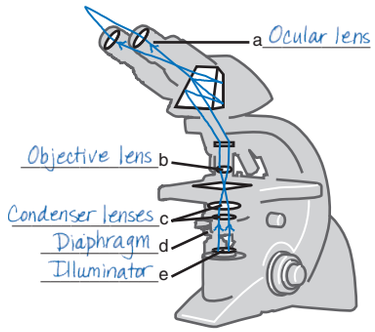
Multiple Choice

1. c
2. b
3. b
4. e
5. b
6. c
7. a
8. a
9. b
10. c

Chapter 3

Review

1. **a.** 10^{-6} m **b.** 1 nm **c.** 10^{3} nm
2. **a.** Compound light microscope
   b. Darkfield microscope
   c. Phase-contrast microscope
   d. Fluorescence microscope
   e. Electron microscope
   f. Differential interference contrast microscope
3.



4.

Ocular Lens Magnification	×	Oil Immersion Lens Magnification	=	Total Magnification of Specimen
10×		100×		1000×

5. **a.** 1500×
   b. 10,000,000×
   c. 0.2 μm
   d. 10 pm
   e. Seeing three-dimensional detail.
6. In a Gram stain, the mordant combines with the basic dye to form a complex that will not wash out of gram-positive cells. In a flagella stain, the mordant accumulates on the flagella so that they can be seen with a light microscope.
7. A counterstain stains the colorless non–acid-fast cells so that they are easily seen through a microscope.
8. In the Gram stain, the decolorizer removes the color from gram-negative cells. In the acid-fast stain, the decolorizer removes the color from non–acid-fast cells.
9. **a.** Purple **e.** Purple
   b. Purple **f.** Purple
   c. Purple **g.** Colorless
   d. Purple **h.** Red
10. An acid-fast bacterium *(Mycobacterium)*

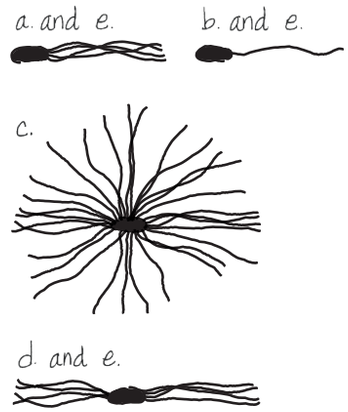
Multiple Choice

1. c
2. d
3. b
4. a
5. a
6. e
7. d
8. b
9. a
10. c

Chapter 4

Review

1.



2. **a.** sporogenesis
   b. certain adverse environmental conditions
   c. germination
   d. favorable growth conditions
3.

4. **a.** 3 **c.** 1 **e.** 1, 4 **g.** 7
   b. 5 **d.** 2 **f.** 2, 8 **h.** 6
5. An endospore is called a resting structure because it provides a method for one cell to "rest," or survive, as opposed to grow and reproduce. The protective endospore wall allows a bacterium to withstand adverse conditions in the environment.
6. **a.** Both allow materials to cross the plasma membrane from a high concentration to a low concentration without expending energy. Facilitated diffusion requires carrier proteins.
   b. Both require enzymes to move materials across the plasma membrane. In active transport, energy is expended.
   c. Both move materials across the plasma membrane with an expenditure of energy. In group translocation, the substrate is changed after it crosses the membrane.
7. **a.** Diagram (a) refers to a gram-positive bacterium because the lipopolysaccharide–phospholipid–lipoprotein layer is absent.
   b. The gram-negative bacterium initially retains the violet stain, but it is released when the outer membrane is dissolved by the decolorizing agent. After the dye–iodine complex enters, it becomes trapped by the peptidoglycan of gram-positive cells.
   c. The outer layer of the gram-negative cells prevents penicillin from entering the cells.
   d. Essential molecules diffuse through the gram-positive wall. Porins and specific channel proteins in the gram-negative outer membrane allow passage of small water-soluble molecules.
   e. Gram-negative.

8. An extracellular enzyme (amylase) hydrolyzes starch into disaccharides (maltose) and monosaccharides (glucose). A carrier enzyme (maltase) hydrolyzes maltose and moves one glucose into the cell. Glucose can be transported by group translocation as glucose-6-phosphate.

9. **a.** 3 **b.** 4 **c.** 7 **d.** 1 **e.** 6 **f.** 2 **g.** 5

10. Actinomycetes

Multiple Choice

1. e
2. d
3. b
4. a
5. d
6. e
7. b
8. e
9. a
10. b

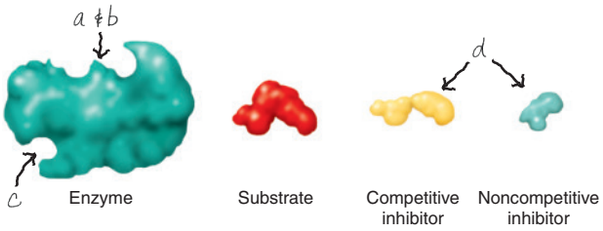
Chapter 5

Review

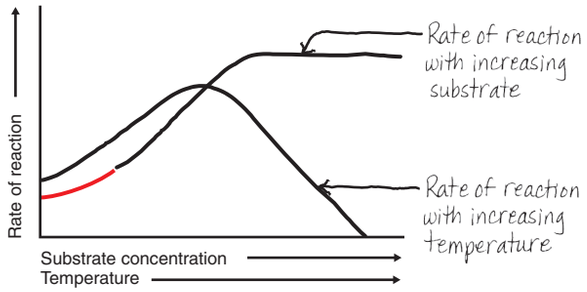
1. **(a)** is the Calvin-Benson cycle, **(b)** is glycolysis, and **(c)** is the Krebs cycle.
   a. Glycerol is catabolized by pathway (b) as dihydroxyacetone phosphate. Fatty acids by pathway (c) as acetyl groups.
   b. In pathway (c) at α-ketoglutaric acid.
   c. Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate from the Calvin-Benson cycle enters glycolysis. Pyruvic acid from glycolysis is decarboxylated to produce acetyl for the Krebs cycle.
   d. In (a) at steps 2 and 6. In (b), between glucose and glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate.
   e. The conversion of pyruvic acid to acetyl, isocitric acid to α-ketoglutaric acid, and α-ketoglutaric acid to succinyl CoA.
   f. By pathway (c) as acetyl groups.
   g.

	Uses	Produces
Calvin-Benson cycle	6 NADPH	
Glycolysis		2 NADH
Pyruvic acid → acetyl		1 NADH
Isocitric acid → α-ketoglutaric acid		1 NADH
α-ketoglutaric acid → Succinyl CoA		1 NADH
Succinic acid → Fumaric acid		1 $FADH_2$
Malic acid → Oxaloacetic acid		1 NADH

   h. Dihydroxyacetone phosphate; acetyl; oxaloacetic acid; α-ketoglutaric acid.

2. 

e. When the enzyme and substrate combine, the substrate molecule will be transformed.
When the competitive inhibitor binds to the enzyme, the enzyme will not be able to bind with the substrate.
When the noncompetitive inhibitor binds to the enzyme, the active site of the enzyme will be changed so the enzyme cannot bind with the substrate.

3. 

4. Oxidation-reduction: A coupled reaction in which one substance loses electrons and another gains electrons.
   a. The final electron acceptor in aerobic respiration is molecular oxygen; in anaerobic respiration, it is another inorganic molecule.
   b. In fermentation, the final acceptor for electrons released from oxidation are accepted by a molecule in the cell (e.g., pyruvate). In respiration, the final electron acceptor is from the environment (e.g., O_2).
   c. In cyclic photophosphorylation, electrons are returned to chlorophyll. In noncyclic photophosphorylation, chlorophyll receives electrons from hydrogen atoms.

5. **a.** Photophosphorylation
   b. Oxidative phosphorylation
   c. Substrate-level phosphorylation

6. oxidation

7. **a.** CO_2 **b.** Light **c.** Organic molecules **d.** Light **e.** CO_2 **f.** Inorganic molecules **g.** Organic molecules **h.** Organic molecules

8. Protons are pumped from one side of the membrane to the other; transfer of protons back across the membrane generates ATP. **a** and **b.** Outer portion is acidic and has a positive electrical charge. **c.** Energy-conserving sites are the three loci where protons are pumped out. **d.** Kinetic energy is realized at ATP synthase.

9. NAD^+ is needed to pick up more electrons. NADH is usually reoxidized in respiration. NADH can be reoxidized in fermentation.

10. Chemoautotroph

Multiple Choice

1. a
2. d
3. b
4. c
5. c
6. b
7. b
8. a
9. c
10. b

Chapter 6

Review

1. In binary fission, the cell elongates, and the chromosome replicates. Next, the nuclear material is evenly divided. The plasma membrane invaginates toward the center of the cell. The cell wall thickens and grows inward between the membrane invaginations; two new cells results.

2. **C**arbon: synthesis of molecules that make up a living cell. **H**ydrogen: source of electrons and component of organic molecules. **O**xygen: component of organic molecules; electron acceptor in aerobes. **N**itrogen: component of amino acids. **P**hosphorus: in phospholipids and nucleic acids. **S**ulfur: In some amino acids.

3. **a.** Catalyzes the breakdown of H_2O_2 to O_2 and H_2O.
   b. H_2O_2; peroxide ion is O_2^{2-}.
   c. Catalyzes the breakdown of H_2O_2;

$$2H^+ + H_2O_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Peroxidase}} 2H_2O$$

   d. O_2^-; this anion has one unpaired electron.

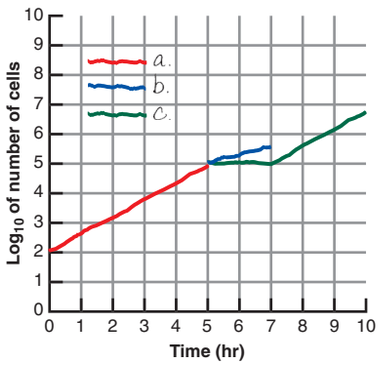
e. Converts superoxide to O_2 and H_2O_2;

$$2O_2^- + 2H^+ \xrightarrow{\text{Superoxide dismutase}} O_2 + H_2O_2$$

The enzymes are important in protecting the cell from the strong oxidizing agents, peroxide and superoxide, that form during respiration.

4. Direct methods are those in which the microorganisms are seen and counted. Direct methods are direct microscopic count, plate count, filtration, and most probable number. Growth is inferred by indirect methods: turbidity, metabolic activity, and dry weight.
5. The growth rate of bacteria slows down with decreasing temperatures. Mesophilic bacteria will grow slowly at refrigeration temperatures and will remain dormant in a freezer. Bacteria will not spoil food quickly in a refrigerator.
6. Number of cells $\times$ $2^{\text{n generations}}$ = Total number of cells

$$6 \times 2^7 = 768$$

7. Petroleum can meet the carbon and energy requirements for an oil-degrading bacterium; however, nitrogen and phosphate are usually not available in large quantities. Nitrogen and phosphate are essential for making proteins, phospholipids, nucleic acids, and ATP.
8. A chemically defined medium is one in which the exact chemical composition is known. A complex medium is one in which the exact chemical composition is not known.
9. 

10. Cold, salty, aerobic

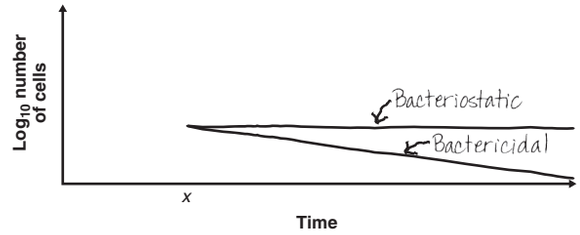
Multiple Choice

1. c
2. a
3. c
4. a
5. c
6. d
7. e
8. c
9. b
10. b

Chapter 7

Review

1. Autoclave. Because of the high specific heat of water, moist heat is readily transferred to cells.
2. Pasteurization destroys most organisms that cause disease or rapid spoilage of food.
3. Variables that affect determination of the thermal death point are
   - The innate heat resistance of the strain of bacteria
   - The past history of the culture, whether it was freeze-dried, wetted, etc.
   - The clumping of the cells during the test
   - The amount of water present
   - The organic matter present
   - Media and incubation temperature used to determine viability of the culture after heating
4. **a.** the ability of ionizing radiation to break DNA directly. However, because of the high water content of cells, free radicals (H · and OH ·) that break DNA strands are likely to form.
   b. formation of thymine dimers.
5. All cells do not die at once.



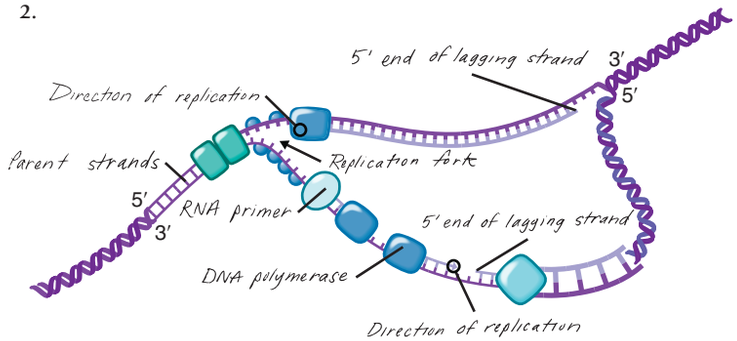
6. All three processes kill microorganisms; however, as moisture and/or temperatures are increased, less time is required to achieve the same result.
7. Salts and sugars create a hypertonic environment. Salts and sugars (as preservatives) do not directly affect cell structures or metabolism; instead, they alter the osmotic pressure. Jams and jellies are preserved with sugar; meats are usually preserved with salt. Molds are more capable of growth in high osmotic pressure than are bacteria.
8. Disinfectant B is preferable because it can be diluted more and still be effective.
9. Quaternary ammonium compounds are most effective against gram-positive bacteria. Gram-negative bacteria that were stuck in cracks or around the drain of the tub would not have been washed away when the tub was cleaned. These gram-negative bacteria could survive the washing procedure. Some pseudomonads can grow on quats that have accumulated.
10. Pseudomonads (*Pseudomonas* and *Burkholderia*)

Multiple Choice

1. d
2. b
3. d
4. d
5. a
6. A
7. b
8. b
9. b
10. b

Chapter 8

Review

1. DNA consists of a strand of alternating sugars (deoxyribose) and phosphate groups with a nitrogenous base attached to each sugar. The bases are adenine, thymine, cytosine, and guanine. DNA exists in a cell as two strands twisted together to form a double helix. The two strands are held together by hydrogen bonds between their nitrogenous bases. The bases are paired in a specific, complementary way: A-T and C-G. The information held in the sequence of nucleotides in DNA is the basis for synthesis of RNA and proteins in a cell.
2. 

3. **a.** 2
   b. 4
   c. 3
   d. 1
   e. 5

4. **a.** ATATTACTTTGCATGGACT
   b. met-lys-arg-thr-(end)
   c. TATAATGAAACGTTCCTGA
   d. No change
   e. Cysteine substituted for arginine
   f. Proline substituted for threonine (missense mutation)
   g. Frameshift mutation
   h. Adjacent thymines might polymerize
   i. ACT
5. Iron deficiency could stimulate miRNA that is complementary to RNA encoding iron-requiring proteins.
6. **a.** After translation **c.** Before transcription
   b. After transcription **d.** Before transcription
7. CTTTGA. Endospores and pigments offer protection against UV radiation. Additionally, repair mechanisms can remove and replace thymine polymers.
8. **a.** Culture 1 will remain the same. Culture 2 will convert to F^+ but will have its original genotype.
   b. The donor and recipient cells' DNA can recombine to form combinations of $A^+B^+C^+$ and $A^-B^-C^-$. If the F plasmid also is transferred, the recipient cell may become F^+.
9. Mutation and recombination provide genetic diversity. Environmental factors select for the survival of organisms through natural selection. Genetic diversity is necessary for the survival of some organisms through the processes of natural selection. Organisms that survive may undergo further genetic change, resulting in the evolution of the species.
10. *Escherichia coli*

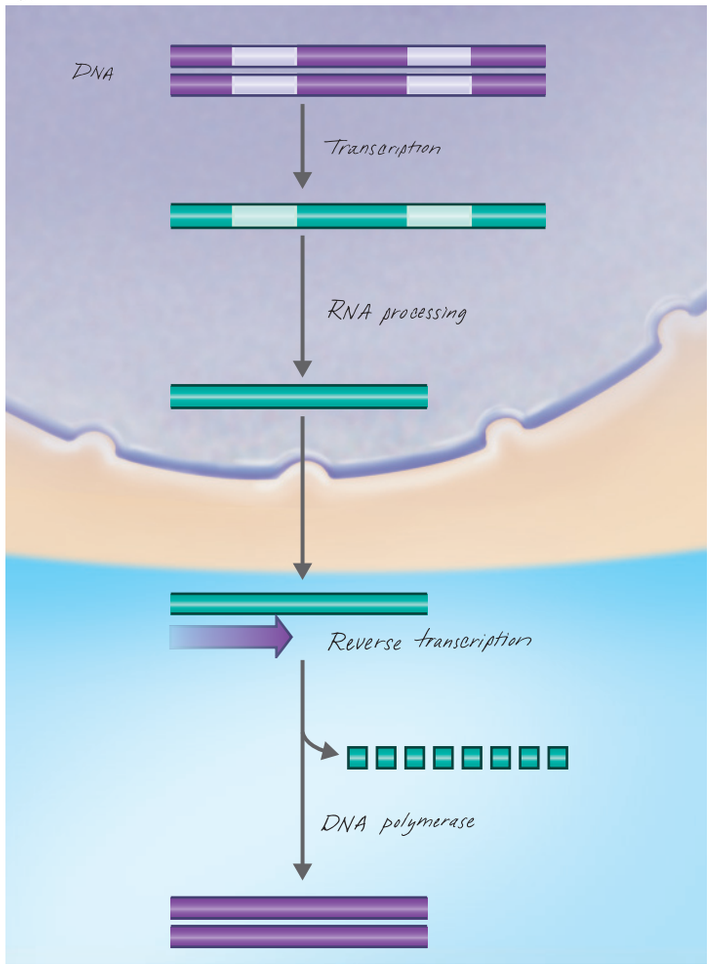
Multiple Choice

1. c	4. d	7. a	9. d
2. d	5. c	8. c	10. a
3. c	6. b		

Chapter 9

Review

1. **a.** Both are DNA. cDNA is a segment of DNA made by RNA-dependent DNA polymerase (reverse transcriptase). It is not necessarily a gene; a gene is a transcribable unit of DNA that encodes a protein or RNA.
   b. Both are DNA. A DNA probe is a short, single-stranded piece of DNA. It is not a gene; a gene is a transcribable unit of DNA that codes for protein or RNA.
   c. Both are enzymes. DNA polymerase synthesizes DNA one nucleotide at a time using a DNA or RNA template; DNA ligase joins pieces (strands of nucleotides) together.
   d. Both are DNA. Recombinant DNA results from joining DNA from two different sources; cDNA results from copying a strand of RNA.
   e. The proteome is the expression of the genome. An organism's genome is one complete copy of its genetic information. The proteins encoded by this genetic material comprise the proteome.
2. In protoplast fusion, two wall-less cells fuse together to combine their DNA. A variety of genotypes can result from this process. In b, c, and d, specific genes are inserted directly into the cell.
3. **a.** *Bam*HI, *Eco*RI, and *Hin*dIII make sticky ends.
   b. Fragments of DNA produced with the same restriction enzyme will spontaneously anneal to each other at their sticky ends.
4. The gene can be spliced into a plasmid and inserted into a bacterial cell. As the cell grows, the number of plasmids will increase.

   The polymerase chain reaction can make copies of a gene using DNA polymerase and a primer for the gene.
5. 

6. In a eukaryotic cell, RNA polymerase copies DNA; RNA processing removes the introns, leaving the exons in the mRNA. cDNA can be made from the mRNA by reverse transcriptase.
7. See Tables 9.2 and 9.3.
8. You probably used a few plant cells in a Petri plate for your experiment. You can grow these cells on plant-cell culture media with tetracycline. Only the cells with the new plasmid will grow.
9. In RNAi, siRNA binds mRNA, creating double-stranded RNA, which is enzymatically destroyed.
10. Retroviridae

Multiple Choice

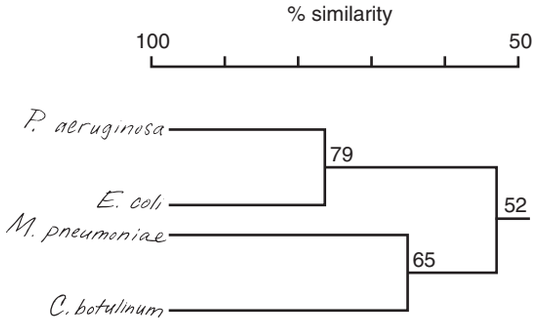
1. b	4. b	7. c	9. e
2. b	5. c	8. b	10. a
3. b	6. d		

Chapter 10

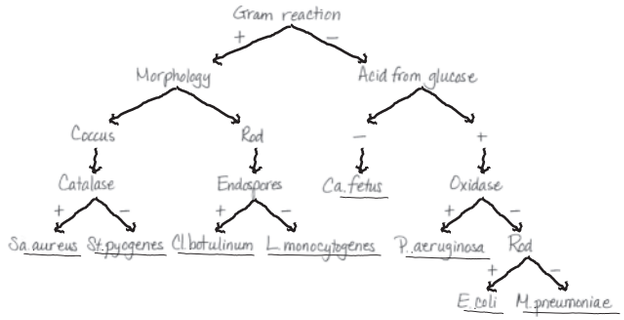
Review

1. A and D appear to be most closely related because they have similar GC moles %. No two are the same species.
2. A and D are most closely related.
3. The purpose of a cladogram is to show the degree of relatedness between organisms. A dichotomous key can be used for identification but doesn't show relatedness like the cladogram. *Mycoplasma* and *Escherichia* are on

one branch in the key, but the cladogram indicates *Mycoplasma* is more closely related to *Clostridium*.



4. One possible key is shown below. Alternative keys could be made starting with morphology or glucose fermentation.



5. *Brucella abortus*

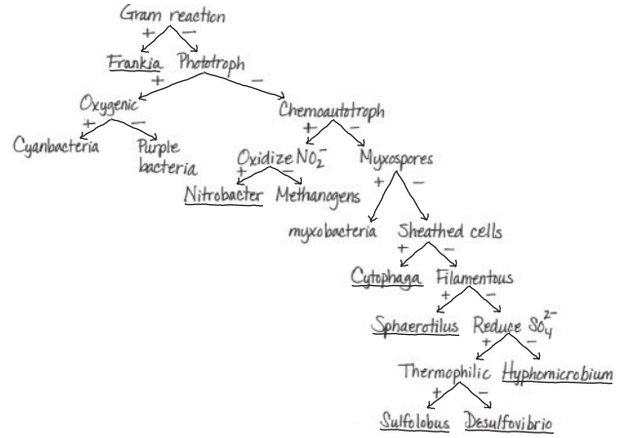
Multiple Choice

1. b
2. e
3. d
4. b
5. e
6. a
7. a
8. e
9. a
10. b

Chapter 11

Review

1. **a.** *Clostridium*
   b. *Bacillus*
   c. *Streptomyces*
   d. *Mycobacterium*
   e. *Streptococcus*
   f. *Staphylococcus*
   g. *Treponema*
   h. *Spirillum*
   i. *Pseudomonas*
   j. *Escherichia*
   k. *Mycoplasma*
   l. *Rickettsia*
   m. *Chlamydia*
2. **a.** Both are oxygenic photoautotrophs. Cyanobacteria are prokaryotes; algae are eukaryotes.
   b. Both are chemoheterotrophs capable of forming mycelia; some form conidia. Actinomycetes are prokaryotes; fungi are eukaryotes.
   c. Both are large rod-shaped bacteria. *Bacillus* forms endospores; *Lactobacillus* is a fermentative non–endospore-forming rod.
   d. Both are small rod-shaped bacteria. *Pseudomonas* has an oxidative metabolism; *Escherichia* is fermentative. *Pseudomonas* has polar flagella; *Escherichia* has peritrichous flagella.
   e. Both are helical bacteria. *Leptospira* (a spirochete) has an axial filament. *Spirillum* has flagella.
   f. Both are gram-negative, rod-shaped bacteria. *Escherichia* bacteria are facultative anaerobes, and *Bacteroides* bacteria are anaerobes.
   g. Both are obligatory intracellular parasites. *Rickettsia* are transmitted by ticks; *Chlamydia* have a unique developmental cycle.
   h. Both are atypical gram-positive bacteria. *Mycobacterium* is a high G+C, acid-fast genus. *Mycoplasma* is a low G+C genus that lacks cell walls.
3. There are many ways to draw a key. Here is one example.



4. Methanogens

Multiple Choice

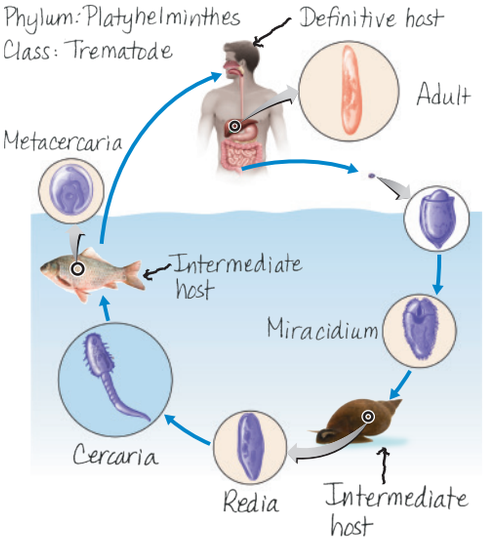
1. b
2. b
3. e
4. a
5. b
6. c
7. e
8. b
9. b
10. a

Chapter 12

Review

1. **a.** Systemic
   b. Subcutaneous
   c. Cutaneous
   d. Superficial
   e. Systemic
2. **a.** *E. coli*
   b. *P. chrysogenum*
3. Arthroconidia *(Trichophyton)*
4. As the first colonizers on newly exposed rock or soil, lichens are responsible for the chemical weathering of large inorganic particles and the consequent accumulation of soil. Algae are primary producers in aquatic food chains and are important oxygen-producers.
5. Cellular slime molds exist as individual ameboid cells. Plasmodial slime molds are multinucleate masses of protoplasm. Both survive adverse environmental conditions by forming spores.
6. **a.** Flagella
   b. *Giardia*
   c. None
   d. *Nosema*
   e. Pseudopods
   f. *Entamoeba*
   g. None
   h. *Plasmodium*
   i. Cilia
   j. *Balantidium*
   k. Flagella
   l. *Trypanosoma*
   m. Flagella
   n. *Trichomonas*
7. *Trichomonas* cannot survive for long outside a host because it does not form a protective cyst. *Trichomonas* must be transferred from host to host quickly.
8. Ingestion
9. The male reproductive organs are in one individual, and the female reproductive organs in another. Roundworms belong to the Phylum Nematoda.

10. Phylum: Platyhelminthes
Class: Trematode



Multiple Choice

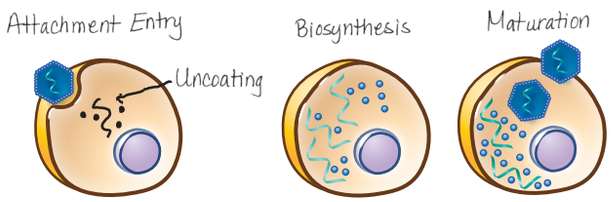
1. d
2. b
3. b
4. a
5. a
6. d
7. b
8. d
9. a
10. c

Chapter 13

Review

1. Viruses absolutely require living host cells to multiply.
2. A virus
   - contains DNA or RNA;
   - has a protein coat surrounding the nucleic acid;
   - multiplies inside a living cell using the synthetic machinery of the cell; and
   - causes the synthesis of virions.

   A virion is a fully developed virus particle that transfers the viral nucleic acid to another cell and initiates multiplication.
3. Polyhedral (Figure 13.2); helical (Figure 13.4); enveloped (Figure 13.3); complex (Figure 13.5).
4.



5. Both produce double-stranded RNA, with the - strand being the template for more + strands. + strands act as mRNA in both virus groups.
6. Antibiotic treatment of *S. aureus* can activate phage genes that encode P-V leukocidin.
7. **a.** Viruses cannot easily be observed in host tissues. Viruses cannot easily be cultured in order to be inoculated into a new host. Additionally, viruses are specific for their hosts and cells, making it difficult to substitute a laboratory animal for the third step of Koch's postulates.
   b. Some viruses can infect cells without inducing cancer. Cancer may not develop until long after infection. Cancers do not seem to be contagious.
8. **a.** subacute sclerosing panencephalitis
   b. common viruses
   c. Answers will vary. One example of a possible mechanism is latent, in an abnormal tissue.
9. **a.** of the rigid cell walls
   b. vectors such as sap-sucking insects
   c. plant protoplasts and insect cell cultures
10. Herpesviridae

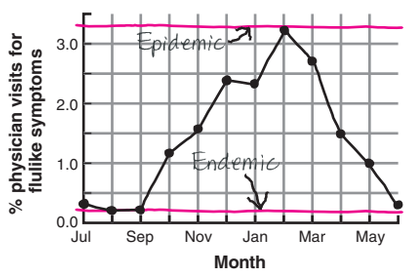
Multiple Choice

1. e
2. c
3. b
4. a
5. b
6. e
7. c
8. d
9. d
10. c

Chapter 14

Review

1. **a.** Etiology is the study of the cause of a disease, whereas pathogenesis is the manner in which the disease develops.
   b. *Infection* refers to the colonization of the body by a microorganism. Disease is any change from a state of health. A disease may, but does not always, result from infection.
   c. A communicable disease is a disease that is spread from one host to another, whereas a noncommunicable disease is not transmitted from one host to another.
2. *Symbiosis* refers to unlike organisms living together. Commensalism—one of the organisms benefits and the other is unaffected; e.g., corynebacteria living on the surface of the eye. Mutualism—both organisms benefit; e.g., *E. coli* receives nutrients and a constant temperature in the large intestine and produces vitamin K and certain B vitamins that are useful for the human host. Parasitism—one organism benefits while the other is harmed; e.g., *Salmonella enterica* receives nutrients and warmth in the large intestine, and the human host experiences gastroenteritis or typhoid fever.
3. **a.** Acute
   b. Chronic
   c. Subacute
4. Hospital patients may be in a weakened condition and therefore predisposed to infection. Pathogenic microorganisms are generally transmitted to patients by contact and airborne transmission. The reservoirs of infection are the hospital staff, visitors, and other patients.
5. Changes in body function that the patient feels are called *symptoms*. Symptoms such as weakness or pain are not measurable by a physician. Objective changes that the physician can observe and measure are called *signs*.
6. When microorganisms causing a local infection enter a blood or lymph vessel and are spread throughout the body, a systemic infection can result.
7. Mutualistic microorganisms are providing a chemical or environment that is essential for the host. Commensal organisms are not essential; another microorganism might serve the function as well.
8. Incubation period, prodromal period, period of illness, period of decline (may be crisis), period of convalescence.
9. *Escherichia coli*
10.



Multiple Choice

1. a
2. b
3. a
4. d
5. d
6. a
7. c
8. a
9. c
10. b

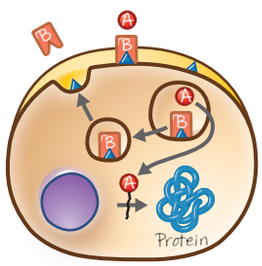
Chapter 15

Review

1. The ability of a microorganism to produce a disease is called *pathogenicity*. The degree of pathogenicity is *virulence*.
2. Encapsulated bacteria can resist phagocytosis and continue growing. *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* produce capsules that are related to their virulence. M protein found in the cell walls of *Streptococcus pyogenes* and mycolic acid in the cell walls of *Mycobacterium* help these bacteria resist phagocytosis.
3. Hemolysins lyse red blood cells; hemolysis might supply nutrients for bacterial growth. Leukocidins destroy neutrophils and macrophages that are active in phagocytosis; this decreases host resistance to infection. Coagulase causes fibrinogen in blood to clot; the clot may protect the bacterium from phagocytosis and other host defenses. Bacterial kinases break down fibrin; kinases can destroy a clot that was made to isolate the bacteria, thus allowing the bacteria to spread. Hyaluronidase hydrolyzes the hyaluronic acid that binds cells together; this could allow the bacteria to spread through tissues. Siderophores take iron from host iron-transport proteins, thus allowing bacteria to get iron for growth. IgA proteases destroy IgA antibodies; IgA antibodies protect mucosal surfaces.
4. **a.** Would inhibit bacteria.
   b. Would prevent adherence of *N. gonorrhoeae*.
   c. *S. pyogenes* would not be able to attach to host cells and would be more susceptible to phagocytosis.
5.

	Exotoxin	Endotoxin
Bacterial source	Gram +	Gram −
Chemistry	Proteins	Lipid A
Toxigenicity	High	Low
Pharmacology	Destroy certain cell parts or physiological functions	Systemic, fever, weakness, aches and shock
Example	Botulinum toxin	Salmonellosis

6.



7. Pathogenic fungi do not have specific virulence factors; capsules, metabolic products, toxins, and allergic responses contribute to the virulence of pathogenic fungi. Some fungi produce toxins that, when ingested, produce disease. Protozoa and helminths elicit symptoms by destroying host tissues and producing toxic metabolic wastes.
8. *Legionella*
9. Viruses avoid the host's immune response by growing inside host cells; some can remain latent in a host cell for prolonged periods. Some protozoa avoid the immune response by mutations that change their antigens.
10. *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*

Multiple Choice

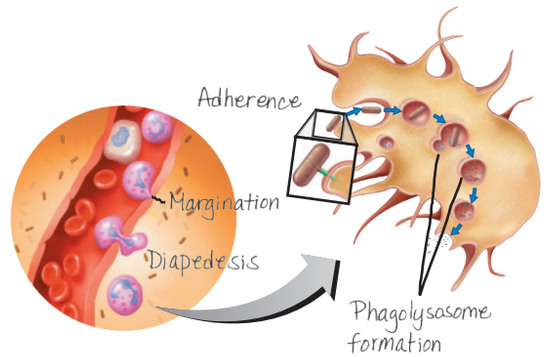
1. d
2. c
3. d
4. a
5. c
6. a
7. b
8. a
9. d
10. c

Chapter 16

Review

1. Physical: fluid flows out; Chemical: lysozome; acids

   Physical: fluids and secretions flow out; Chemical: acidic environment in female
2. Inflammation is the body's response to tissue damage. The characteristic symptoms of inflammation are pain, redness, immobility, swelling, and heat.
3. Interferons are defensive proteins. IFN-α and IFN-β cause uninfected cells to produce antiviral proteins. IFN-γ is produced by lymphocytes and activates phagocytosis to kill bacteria.
4. Endotoxin binds C3b by the alternative pathway, which activates C5–C9 to cause cell lysis. This can result in free cell wall fragments, which bind more C3b, resulting in C5–C9 damage to host-cell membranes.
5. Toxic oxygen products can kill pathogens.
6. The recipient's antibodies combine with donor antigens and fix complement; the activated complement causes hemolysis.
7. Inhibit formation of C3b; prevent MAC formation; hydrolyze C5a.
8.



9. **a. TLRs:** Innate. Facilitate adherence of phagocyte and pathogen.
   b. Transferrins: Innate. Bind iron.
   c. Antimicrobial peptides: Innate. Kill or inhibit bacteria.
10. Monocyte (macrophage)

Multiple Choice

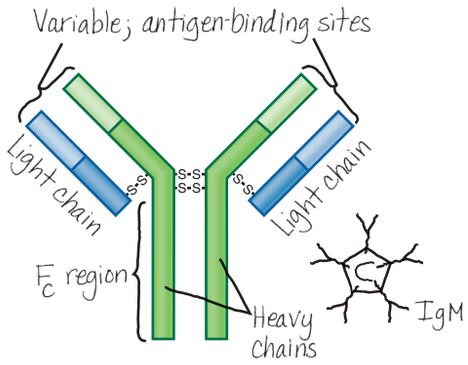
1. a
2. d
3. c
4. d
5. e
6. a
7. c
8. b
9. d
10. e

Chapter 17

Review

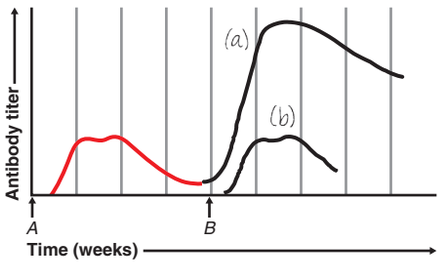
1. **a.** Adaptive immunity is the resistance to infection obtained during the life of the individual; it results from the production of antibodies and T cells. Innate immunity refers to the resistance of species or individuals to certain diseases that is not dependent on antigen-specific immunity.
   b. Humoral immunity is due to antibodies (and B cells). Cellular immunity is due to T cells.
   c. Active immunity refers to antibodies produced by the individual who carries them. Passive immunity refers to antibodies produced by another source and then transferred to the individual who needs the antibodies.
   d. T_H1 cells produce cytokines that activate T cells. Cytokines produced by T_H2 cells activate B cells.
   e. Natural immunity is acquired naturally, i.e., from mother to newborn or following an infection. Artificial immunity is acquired from medical treatment, i.e., by injection of antibodies or by vaccination.
   f. T-dependent antigens: Certain antigens must combine with self-antigens to be recognized by T_H cells and then by B cells. T-independent antigens can elicit an antibody response without T cells.
   g. Immunoglobins = antibodies; TCRs = antigen receptors on T cells.

2. The major histocompatibility complex (MHC) are self-antigens. CTL cells react with MHC I; T_H cells react with MHC II.

3. 

4. See Figure 17.19.

5. CTLs destroy target cells on contact. T_H cells interact with an antigen to "present" it to a B cell for antibody formation. T_R cells suppress the immune response. Cytokines are chemicals released by cells that initiate a response by other cells.

6. 

7. Both would prevent attachment of the pathogen; (a) interfere with the attachment site on the pathogen and (b) interfere with the pathogen's receptor site.

8. The person recovered because he or she produced antibodies against the pathogen. The memory response will continue to protect the person against that pathogen.

9. Dendritic cell

10. Rearrangement of the V-region genes during embryonic development produces B cells with different antibody genes.

Multiple Choice

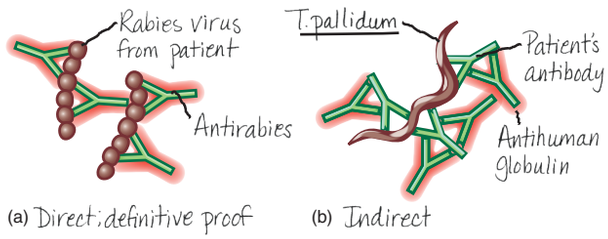
1. d	4. c	7. c	10. d
2. e	5. d	8. d	
3. b	6. d	9. d	

Chapter 18

Review

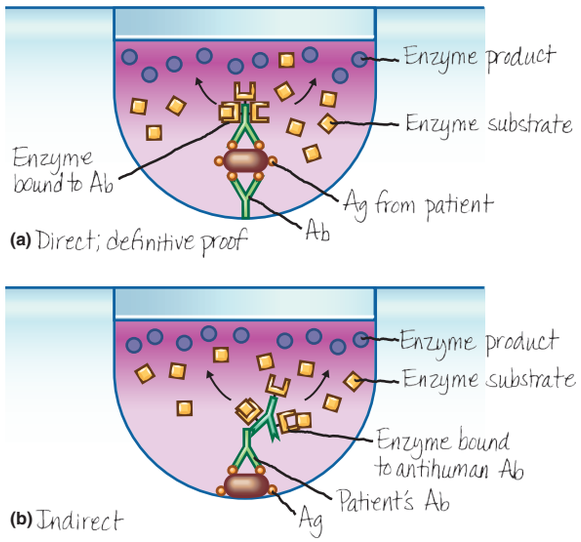
1. **a.** Whole-agent. Live, avirulent virus that can cause the disease if it mutates back to its virulent state.
   b. Whole-agent; (heat-) killed bacteria.
   c. Subunit; (heat- or formalin-) inactivated toxin.
   d. Subunit
   e. Subunit
   f. Conjugated
   g. Nucleic acid

2. **a.** Some viruses are able to agglutinate red blood cells. This reaction is used to detect the presence of large numbers of virions capable of causing hemagglutination (e.g., *Influenzavirus*).
   b. Antibodies produced against viruses that are capable of agglutinating red blood cells will inhibit the agglutination. Hemagglutination inhibition can be used to detect the presence of antibodies against these viruses.
   c. This is a procedure to detect antibodies that react with soluble antigens by first attaching the antigens to insoluble latex spheres. This procedure may be used to detect the presence of antibodies that develop during certain mycotic or helminthic infections.

3. 

4. See Figure 18.2.

5. If excess antibody is present, an antigen will combine with several antibody molecules. If excess antigen is present, an antibody will combine with several antigens. Refer to Figure 18.3.

6. 

7. Particulate antigens react in agglutination reactions. The antigens can be cells or soluble antigens bound to synthetic particles. Soluble antigens take part in precipitation reactions.

8. **a.** 5
   b. 4, 6
   c. 1
   d. 3
   e. 6
   f. 2, 4

9. **a.** 5
   b. 3
   c. 1
   d. 6
   e. 2
   f. 4

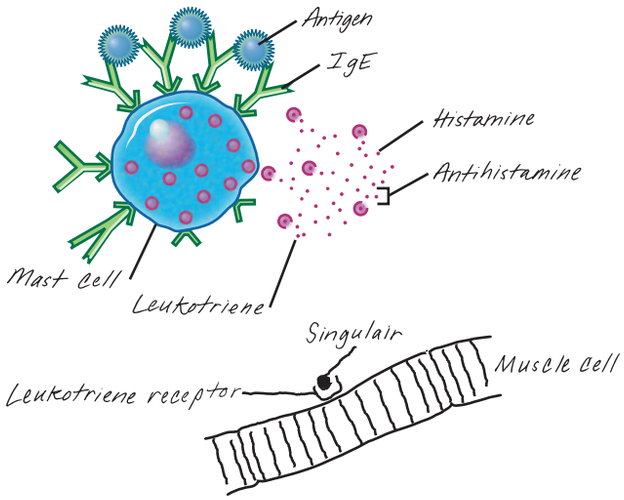
10. Positive tuberculin skin test; the person has antibodies against *M. tuberculosis*.

Multiple Choice

1. c	4. c	7. c	9. b
2. d	5. a	8. a	10. c
3. b	6. b		

Chapter 19

Review

1. 

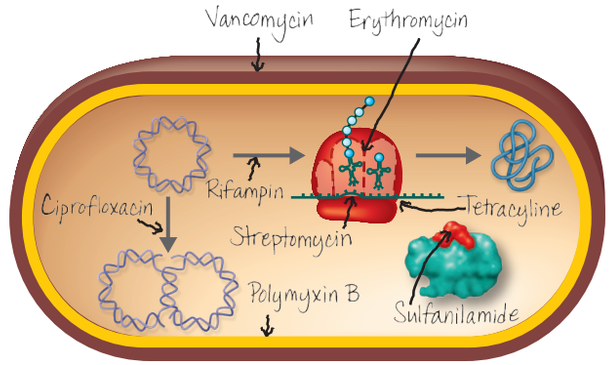
2. Recipient's serum contains complement; activated complement causes hemolysis.
3. Recipient's antibodies will react with donor's tissues.
4. Refer to Figure 19.8.
   a. The observed symptoms are due to lymphokines.
   b. When a person contacts poison oak initially, the antigen (catechols on the leaves) binds to tissue cells, is phagocytized by macrophages, and is presented to receptors on the surface of T cells. Contact between the antigen and the appropriate T cell stimulates the T cell to proliferate and become sensitized. With subsequent exposure to the antigen, sensitized T cells release lymphokines, and a delayed hypersensitivity occurs.
   c. Small repeated doses of the antigen are believed to cause the production of IgG (blocking) antibodies.
5. Lupus patients have antibodies directed at their own DNA.
6. Cytotoxic: Antibodies react with cell-surface antigens.
   Immune complex: Antibody–complement complexes deposit in tissues.
   Cell-mediated: T cells destroy self cells. See Table 19.1.
7. Natural
   Inherited
   Viral infections, most notably HIV
   Artificial
   Induced by immunosuppression drugs
   Result: Increased susceptibility to various infections depending on the type of immune deficiency.
8. Tumor cells have tumor-specific antigens. CTL cells may react with tumor-specific antigens, initiating lysis of the tumor cells.
9. Some malignant cells can escape the immune system by antigen modulation or immunological enhancement. Immunotherapy might trigger immunological enhancement. The body's defense against cancer is cell-mediated and not humoral. Transfer of lymphocytes could cause graft-versus-host disease.
10. IgE antibody

Multiple Choice

1. b	4. a	7. a	9. c
2. b	5. d	8. d	10. b
3. b	6. e		

Chapter 20

Review

1. 

2. The drug (1) should exhibit selective toxicity; (2) should have a broad spectrum; (3) should not produce hypersensitivity in the host; (4) should not produce drug resistance; and (5) should not harm normal microbiota.
3. Because a virus uses the host cell's metabolic machinery, it is difficult to damage the virus without damaging the host. Fungi, protozoa, and helminths possess eukaryotic cells. Therefore, antiviral, antifungal, antiprotozoan, and antihelminthic drugs must also affect eukaryotic cells.
4. Drug resistance is the lack of susceptibility of a microorganism to a chemotherapeutic agent. Drug resistance may develop when microorganisms are constantly exposed to an antimicrobial agent. Ways to minimize the development of drug-resistant microorganisms include judicious use of antimicrobial agents; following directions on the prescription; or administering two or more drugs simultaneously.
5. Simultaneous use of two agents can prevent the development of resistant strains of microorganisms, take advantage of the synergistic effect, provide therapy until a diagnosis is made, and lessen the toxicity of individual drugs by reducing the dosage of each in combination. One problem that can result from simultaneous use of two agents is an antagonistic effect.
6. **a.** Like polymyxin B, causes leaks in the plasma membrane.
   b. Interferes with translation.
7. **a.** Inhibits formation of peptide bond.
   b. Prevents translocation of ribosome along mRNA.
   c. Interferes with attachment of tRNA to mRNA-ribosome complex.
   d. Changes shape of 30S portion of ribosome, resulting in misreading mRNA.
   e. Prevents 70S ribosomal subunits from forming.
   f. Prevents release of peptide from ribosome.
8. DNA polymerase adds bases to the 3′–OH.
9. **a.** Penicillin inhibits bacterial cell wall synthesis. Echinocandin inhibits fungal cell wall synthesis.
   b. Imidazole interferes with fungal plasma membrane synthesis. Polymyxin B disrupts any plasma membrane.
10. Human immunodeficiency virus

Multiple Choice

1. b	4. b	7. e	9. c
2. a	5. a	8. b	10. c
3. a	6. d		

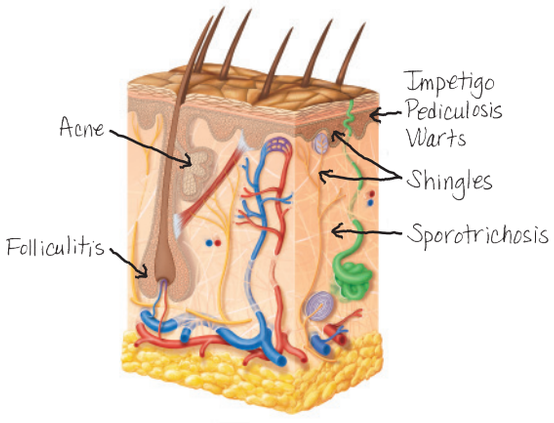
Chapter 21

Review

1. Bacteria usually enter through inapparent openings in the skin. Fungal pathogens (except subcutaneous) often grow on the skin itself. Viral infections of the skin (except warts and herpes simplex) most often gain access to the body through the respiratory tract.

2. *Staphylococcus aureus; Streptococcus pyogenes*

3.



4.

Etiologic Agent	Clinical Symptoms	Mode of Transmission
Cutibacterium acnes	Infected oil glands	Direct contact
S. aureus	Infected hair follicles	Direct contact
Alphapapillomavirus spp., *Betapapillomavirus* spp.	Benign tumor	Direct contact
Varicellovirus (HHV-3)	Vesicular rash	Respiratory route
Enterovirus spp.	Flat or raised rash	Direct contact
Morbillivirus measles morbillivirus	Papular rash, Koplik's spots	Respiratory route
Rubivirus rubellae	Macular rash	Respiratory route

5. The test determines the woman's susceptibility to rubella. If the test is negative, she is susceptible to the disease. If she acquires the disease during pregnancy, the fetus could become infected. A susceptible woman should be vaccinated.

6.

Symptoms	Disease
Koplik's spots	Measles or rubeola
Macular rash	Measles
Vesicular rash	Chickenpox
Small, spotted rash	German measles
"Blisters"	HHV-1 or HHV-2 infection
Corneal ulcer	Herpetic keratitis

7. The central nervous system can be invaded following herpetic keratitis; this results in encephalitis.

8. Attenuated measles, mumps, and rubella viruses.

9. The patient has scabies, an infestation of mites in the skin. It is treated with permethrin insecticide or gamma benzene hexachloride. The presence of a six-legged arthropod (insect) indicates pediculosis (lice).

10. *Cutibacterium acnes*

Multiple Choice

1. c
2. d
3. b
4. c
5. d
6. d
7. e
8. d
9. a
10. d

Chapter 22

Review

1. The symptoms of tetanus are due to neurotoxin, not to bacterial growth (infection and inflammation).

2. **a.** Vaccination with tetanus toxoid.
b. Immunization with antitetanus toxin antibodies.

3. "Improperly cleaned" because *C. tetani* is found in soil that might contaminate a wound. "Deep puncture" because it is likely to be anaerobic. "No bleeding" because a flow of blood ensures an aerobic environment and some cleansing.

4. Etiology—Picornavirus (poliovirus).
Transmission—Ingestion of contaminated water.
Symptoms—Headache, sore throat, fever, nausea; rarely, paralysis.
Prevention—Sewage treatment.
These vaccinations provide artificially acquired active immunity because they cause the production of antibodies, but they do not prevent or reverse damage to nerves.

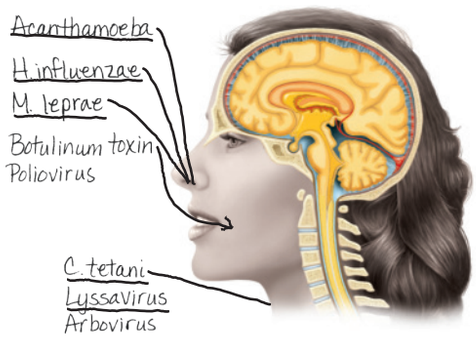
5.

Causative Agent	Susceptible Population	Transmission	Treatment
N. meningitidis	Children; dormitory residents	Respiratory	Penicillin
H. influenzae	Children	Respiratory	Rifampin
S. pneumoniae	Children; elderly	Respiratory	Penicillin
L. monocytogenes	Anyone	Foodborne	Penicillin
C. neoformans	Immunosuppressed individuals	Respiratory	Amphotericin B

6.

Disease	Etiology	Transmission	Symptoms	Treatment
Arboviral encephalitis	See Diseases in Focus 22.2	Mosquitoes	Headache, fever, coma	None
African trypanosomiasis	*T. b. gambiense, T. b. rhodesiense*	Tsetse fly	Decreased physical activity and mental acuity	Suramin, melarsoprol, eflornithine
Botulism	*C. botulinum*	Ingestion	Flaccid paralysis	Antitoxin
Leprosy	*M. leprae*	Direct contact	Areas of sensation loss in skin	Dapsone

7.



8. Postexposure treatment—Passive immunization with antibodies followed by active immunization with HDCV. Preexposure treatment—Active immunization with HDCV.

Following exposure to rabies, antibodies are needed immediately to inactivate the virus. Passive immunization provides these antibodies. Active immunization will provide antibodies over a longer period of time, but they are not formed immediately.

9. The causative agent of Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD) is transmissible. Although there is some evidence for an inherited form of the disease, it has been transmitted by transplants. Similarities with viruses are (1) the prion cannot be cultured by conventional bacteriological techniques and (2) the prion is not readily seen in patients with CJD.

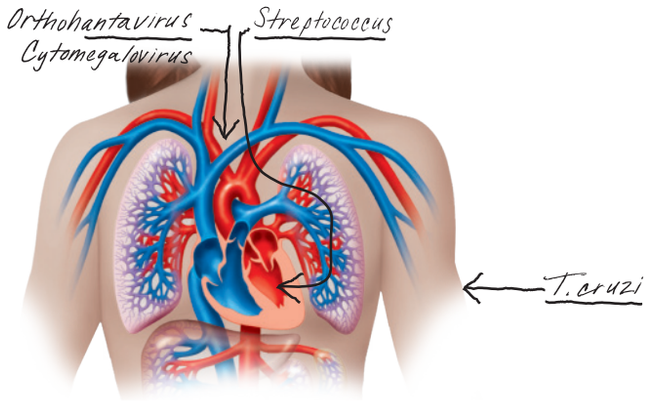
10. *Cryptococcus neoformans*

Multiple Choice

1. a
2. c
3. a
4. b
5. a
6. c
7. b
8. a
9. c
10. a

Chapter 23

Review

1. 

2.

Disease	Causative Agent	Predisposing Conditions
p.s.	*Str. pyogenes*	Abortion or childbirth
s.b.e.	alpha-hemolytic strep.	Preexisting lesions
a.b.e.	*Sta. aureus*	Abnormal heart valves
r.f.	*Str. pyogenes*	Autoimmune

3. All are vectorborne rickettsial diseases. They differ from each other in (1) etiologic agent, (2) vector, (3) severity and mortality, and (4) incidence (e.g., epidemic, sporadic).

4.

Causative Agent	Vector	Treatment
Plasmodium	*Anopheles*	Quinine derivative
Flavivirus	*Aedes aegypti*	None
Flavivirus	*Aedes aegypti*	None
Borrelia	Soft ticks	Tetracycline
Leishmania	Sandflies	Amphotericin B, paromomycin, meglumine antimoniate

5.

Disease	Causative Agent	Transmission	Reservoir
Tularemia	*Francisella tularensis*	Skin abrasions, ingestion, inhalation, bites	Rabbits
Brucellosis	*Brucella* spp.	Ingestion of milk, direct contact	Cattle
Anthrax	*Bacillus anthracis*	Skin abrasions, inhalation, ingestion	Soil, cattle
Lyme disease	*Borrelia burgdorferi*	Tick bites	Deer, mice
Ehrlichiosis	*Ehrlichia* spp.	Tick bites	Deer
Cytomegalic inclusion disease	HHV-5	Saliva, blood	Humans
Plague	*Yersinia pestis*	Flea bites, inhalation	Rodents

6.

Disease	Causative Agent	Transmission	Reservoir	Endemic Area
Schistosomiasis	*Schistosoma* spp.	Penetrate skin	Aquatic snail	Asia, South America
Toxoplasmosis	*Toxoplasma gondii*	Ingestion, inhalation	Cats	United States
Chagas disease	*Trypanosoma cruzi*	"Kissing bug"	Rodents	Central America

7.

	Reservoir	Etiology	Transmission	Symptoms
Cat-scratch disease	Cats	*Bartonella henselae*	Scratch; touching eyes, fleas	Swollen lymph nodes, fever, malaise
Toxoplasmosis	Cats	*Toxoplasma gondii*	Ingestion	None, congenital infections, neurologic damage

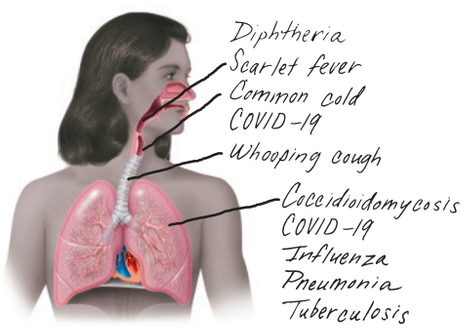
8. Gangrenous tissue is anaerobic and has suitable nutrients for *C. perfringens*.
9. Infectious mononucleosis is caused by EB virus and is transmitted in oral secretions.
10. Rubella virus

Multiple Choice

1. a
2. e
3. d
4. c
5. a
6. e
7. a
8. c
9. c
10. c

Chapter 24

Review

1. 

2. Mycoplasmal pneumonia is caused by *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* bacteria. Viral pneumonia can be caused by several different viruses. Mycoplasmal pneumonia can be treated with tetracyclines, whereas viral pneumonia cannot.

3.

Disease	Causative Agent	Symptoms
Upper Respiratory System		
Common cold	Coronaviruses, rhinoviruses, EV-D68	Sneezing, excessive nasal secretions, congestion
Lower Respiratory System		
Viral pneumonia	Several viruses	Fever, shortness of breath, chest pains
Influenza	*Influenzavirus*	Chills, fever, headache, muscular pains
RSV	Respiratory syncytial virus	Coughing, wheezing

Zanamivir and oseltamivir are used to treat influenza; palivizumab, for life-threatening RSV.

4.

Disease	Symptoms
Streptococcal pharyngitis	Pharyngitis and tonsillitis
Scarlet fever	Rash and fever
Diphtheria	Membrane across throat
Whooping cough	Paroxysmal coughing
Tuberculosis	Tubercles, coughing
Pneumococcal pneumonia	Reddish lungs, fever
H. influenzae pneumonia	Similar to pneumococcal pneumonia
Chlamydial pneumonia	Low fever, cough, and headache
Otitis media	Earache
Legionellosis	Fever and cough
Psittacosis	Fever and headache
Q fever	Chills and chest pain
Epiglottitis	Inflamed, abscessed epiglottis
Melioidosis	Pneumonia

Refer to Diseases in Focus 24.1, 24.2, and 24.3 to complete the table.

5. Inhalation of large numbers of spores from *Aspergillus* or *Rhizopus* can cause infections in individuals with impaired immune systems, cancer, and diabetes.

6. No. Many different organisms (gram-positive bacteria, gram-negative bacteria, and viruses) can cause pneumonia. Each of these organisms is susceptible to different antimicrobial agents.

7.

Disease	Endemic Areas in the United States
Histoplasmosis	States adjoining the Mississippi and Ohio rivers
Coccidioidomycosis	American Southwest
Blastomycosis	Mississippi river valleys and Great Lakes area
Pneumocystis pneumonia	Ubiquitous

Refer to Diseases in Focus 24.3 to complete the table.

8. In the tuberculin test, purified protein derivative (PPD) from *M. tuberculosis* is injected into the skin. Induration and reddening of the area around the injection site indicate an active infection or immunity to tuberculosis.

9. **a.** *Staphylococcus aureus*
b. *Streptococcus pyogenes*
c. *S. pneumoniae*
d. *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*
e. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*
f. *Moraxella catarrhalis*
g. *Bordetella pertussis*
h. *Burkholderia pseudomallei*
i. *Legionella pneumophila*
j. *Haemophilus influenzae*
k. *Chlamydophila psittaci*
l. *Coxiella burnetii*
m. *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*

10. *Bordetella pertussis*

Multiple Choice

1. a	4. a	7. a	9. b
2. d	5. c	8. e	10. d
3. e	6. b		

Chapter 25

Review

1.

	Causative Agent	Method of Transmission
Aflatoxin poisoning	*Aspergillus flavus*	Ingestion of toxin
Cryptosporidiosis	*Cryptosporidium hominis*	Ingestion
Pinworms	*Enterobius vermicularis*	Ingestion
Whipworms	*Trichuris trichiura*	Ingestion

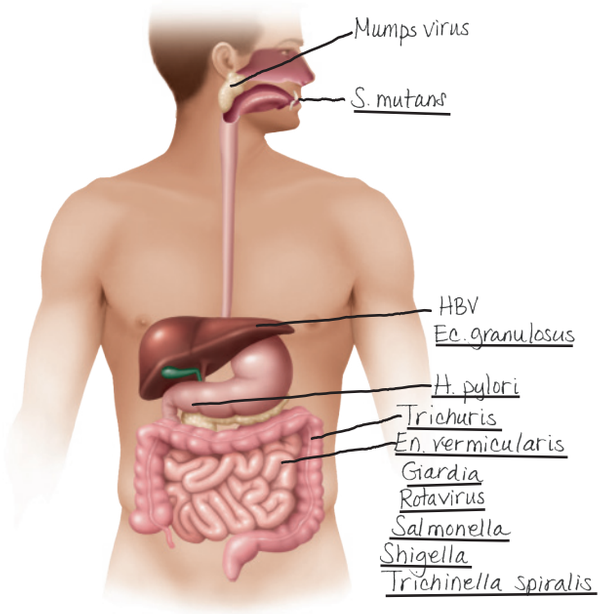
Refer to Diseases in Focus 25.5 to complete the table.

2.

Causative Agent	Suspect Foods	Prevention
V. parahaemolyticus	Oysters, shrimp	Cooking
V. cholerae	Water	
E. coli O157	Water, vegetables, ground beef	Cooking
C. jejuni	Chicken	Cooking
Y. enterocolitica	Meat, milk	Cooking
C. perfringens	Meat	Refrigeration after cooking
B. cereus	Rice dishes	Refrigeration after cooking
S. aureus	Creamy, salty	Refrigerating food
S. enterica	Eggs, poultry, vegetables	Cooking
Shigella spp.	Water, environmental fecal contamination	Disinfection

Refer to Diseases in Focus 25.2 to complete the table.

3.



4. Certain strains of *E. coli* may produce an enterotoxin or invade the epithelium of the large intestine. *E. coli* bacteria produce vitamin K and folic acid that can be used by humans and produce bacteriocins that inhibit pathogens.

5. Toxin produced by fungi.

6. All four are caused by protozoa. The infections are acquired by ingesting protozoa in contaminated water. Giardiasis is a prolonged diarrhea. Amebic dysentery is the most severe dysentery, with blood and mucus in the stools. *Cryptosporidium* and *Cyclospora* produce severe diseases in persons with immunodeficiencies.

7. **Bacterial intoxication:** Microorganisms must be allowed to grow in food from the time of preparation to the time of ingestion. This usually occurs when foods are stored unrefrigerated or improperly canned. The etiologic agents (*Staphylococcus aureus* or *Clostridium botulinum*) must produce an exotoxin. Onset: 1 to 48 hours. Duration: A few days. Treatment: Antimicrobial agents are ineffective. The patient's symptoms may be treated.

Bacterial infection: Viable microorganisms must be ingested with food or water. The organisms could be present during preparation and survive cooking or be inoculated during later handling. The etiologic agents are usually gram-negative organisms (*Salmonella, Shigella, Vibrio,* and *Escherichia*) that produce endotoxins. *Clostridium perfringens* is a gram-positive bacterium that causes food infection. Onset: 12 hours to 2 weeks. Duration: Longer than intoxication because the microorganisms are growing in the patient. Treatment: Rehydration.

8.

Disease	Site	Symptoms
Mumps	Parotid glands	Inflammation of the parotid glands and fever
Hepatitis A	Liver	Anorexia, fever, diarrhea
Hepatitis B	Liver	Anorexia, fever, joint pains, jaundice
Viral gastroenteritis	Lower GI tract	Nausea, diarrhea, vomiting

Refer to Diseases in Focus 25.3 and 25.4 to complete this question.

9. Cook meat thoroughly. Eliminate the source of contamination to cattle and pigs.
10. *Giardia*

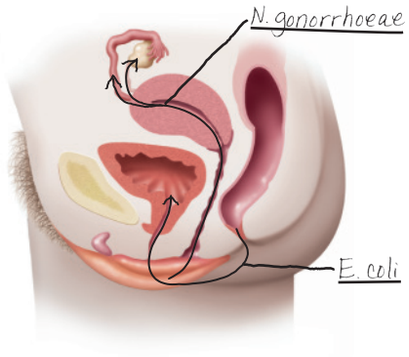
Multiple Choice

1. d
2. e
3. e
4. b
5. e
6. b
7. b
8. e
9. a
10. d

Chapter 26

Review

1.



2. Urinary tract infections may be acquired by improper personal hygiene and contamination during medical procedures. They are often caused by opportunistic pathogens.
3. The proximity of the anus to the urethra and the relatively short length of the urethra can allow contamination of the urinary bladder in females. Gastrointestinal infections are also a predisposing factor for cystitis in females.
4. *Escherichia coli* causes about 75% of the cases. Portals of entry are from the lower urinary tract or systemic infections.
5.

Disease	Symptoms	Diagnosis
Bacterial vaginosis	Fishy odor	Odor, pH, clue cells
Gonorrhea	Painful urination	Isolation of *Neisseria*
Syphilis	Chancre	FTA–ABS
PID	Abdominal pain	Culture of pathogen
NGU	Urethritis	Absence of *Neisseria*
LGV	Lesion, lymph node enlargement	Observation of *Chlamydia* in cells
Chancroid	Swollen ulcer	Isolation of *Haemophilus*

Refer to Diseases in Focus 26.2 and 26.3 to complete table.

6. Symptoms—Burning sensation, vesicles, painful urination. Etiology—Herpes simplex virus type 2 (sometimes type 1). When the lesions are not present, the virus is latent and transmissible.
7. *Candida albicans*—Severe itching; thick, yellow, cheesy discharge.
Trichomonas vaginalis—Profuse yellow discharge with disagreeable odor.
8.

Disease	Prevention of Congenital Disease
Gonorrhea	Treatment of newborn's eyes
Syphilis	Prevention and treatment of mother's disease
NGU	Treatment of newborn's eyes
Genital herpes	Cesarean delivery during active infection

9. *Chlamydia trachomatis*

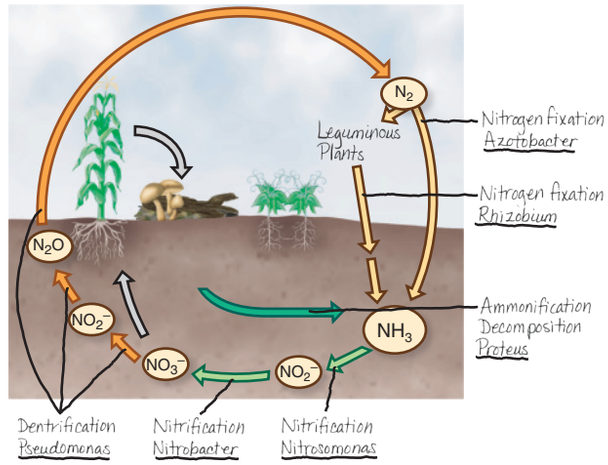
Multiple Choice

1. b
2. e
3. a
4. c
5. d
6. c
7. c
8. b
9. b
10. a

Chapter 27

Review

1. The koala should have an organ housing a large population of cellulose-degrading microorganisms.
2. *Penicillium* might make penicillin to reduce competition from faster-growing bacteria.
3. **a.** amino acids
b. SO_4^{2-}
c. plants and bacteria
d. H_2S
e. NADH, which is needed for synthesis of carbohydrates and other macromolecules
f. S^0
4. Phosphorus must be available for all organisms.
5.



6. Cyanobacteria: With fungi, cyanobacteria act as the photoautotrophic partner in a lichen; they may also fix nitrogen in the lichen. With *Azolla*, they fix nitrogen.
Mycorrhizae: Fungi that grow in and on the roots of higher plants; increase absorption of nutrients.
Rhizobium: In root nodules of legumes; fix nitrogen.
Frankia: In root nodules of alders, roses, and other plants; fix nitrogen.
7. Settling
Flocculation treatment
Sand filtration (or activated charcoal filtration)
Chlorination
The amount of treatment prior to chlorination depends on the amount of inorganic and organic matter in the water.
8. **a.** 2
b. 1
c. 2
d. 2
e. 3
f. 2
g. 3

9. Biodegradation of sewage, herbicides, oil, or PCBs.
10. Cyanobacteria (*Anabaena*)

Multiple Choice

1. a	4. b	7. b	9. e
2. b	5. c	8. b	10. c
3. b	6. c		

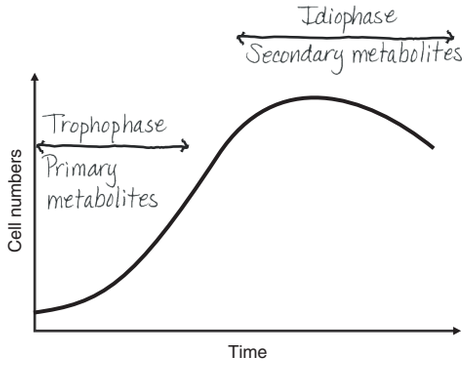
Chapter 28

Review

1. Industrial microbiology is the science of using microorganisms to produce products or accomplish a process. Industrial microbiology provides (1) chemicals such as antibiotics that would not otherwise be available, (2) processes to remove or detoxify pollutants, (3) fermented foods that have desirable flavors or enhanced shelf life, and (4) enzymes for manufacturing a variety of goods.
2. The goal of commercial sterilization is to eliminate spoilage and disease-causing organisms. The goal of hospital sterilization is complete sterilization.
3. The acid in the berries will prevent the growth of some microbes.
4. $\text{Milk} \xrightarrow{\text{Lactic Acid Bacteria}} \text{Curd} + \text{Whey}$

   $\downarrow \qquad \downarrow$

   $\text{Cheese} \qquad \text{Waste}$

   Hard cheese is ripened by lactic acid bacteria growing anaerobically in the interior of the curd. Soft cheese is ripened by molds growing aerobically on the outside of the curd.
5. Nutrients must be dissolved in water; water is also needed for hydrolysis. Malt is the carbon and energy source that the yeast will ferment to make alcohol. Malt contains glucose and maltose from the action of amylases on starch in seeds (e.g., barley).
6. A bioreactor provides the following advantages over simple flask containers:
   - Larger culture volumes can be grown.
   - Process instrumentation for monitoring and controlling critical environmental conditions such as pH, temperature, dissolved oxygen, and aeration can be used.
   - Sterilization and cleaning systems are designed in place.
   - It offers aseptic sampling and harvest systems for in-process sampling.
   - Improved aeration and mixing characteristics result in improved cell growth and high final cell densities.
   - A high degree of automation is possible.
   - Process reproducibility is improved.
7. (1) Enzymes don't produce hazardous wastes. (2) Enzymes work under reasonable conditions; for example, they don't require high temperatures or acidity. (3) Use of enzymes eliminates the need to use petroleum in chemical syntheses of solvents such as alcohol and acetone. (4) Enzymes are biodegradable. (5) Enzymes are not toxic.
8. The production of ethyl alcohol from corn; or methane from sewage. Alcohols and hydrogen are produced by fermentation; methane is produced by anaerobic respiration.
9. 

10. *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*

Multiple Choice

1. c	4. c	7. e	9. b
2. b	5. b	8. a	10. a
3. e	6. c		

This page intentionally left blank

Appendix A

Metabolic Pathways

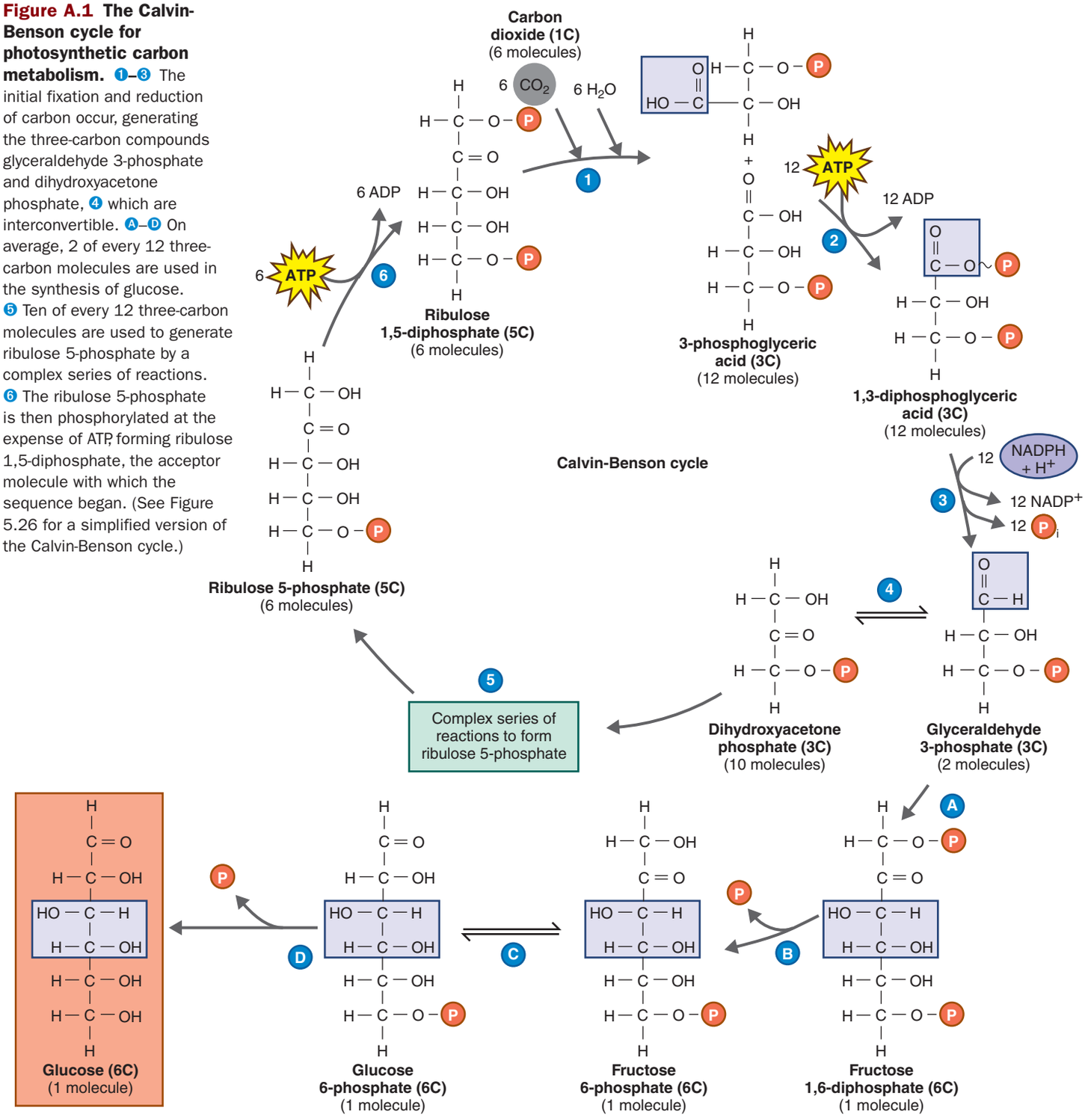


Figure A.1 The Calvin-Benson cycle for photosynthetic carbon metabolism. 1–3 The initial fixation and reduction of carbon occur, generating the three-carbon compounds glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate and dihydroxyacetone phosphate, 4 which are interconvertible. A–D On average, 2 of every 12 three-carbon molecules are used in the synthesis of glucose. 5 Ten of every 12 three-carbon molecules are used to generate ribulose 5-phosphate by a complex series of reactions. 6 The ribulose 5-phosphate is then phosphorylated at the expense of ATP, forming ribulose 1,5-diphosphate, the acceptor molecule with which the sequence began. (See Figure 5.26 for a simplified version of the Calvin-Benson cycle.)

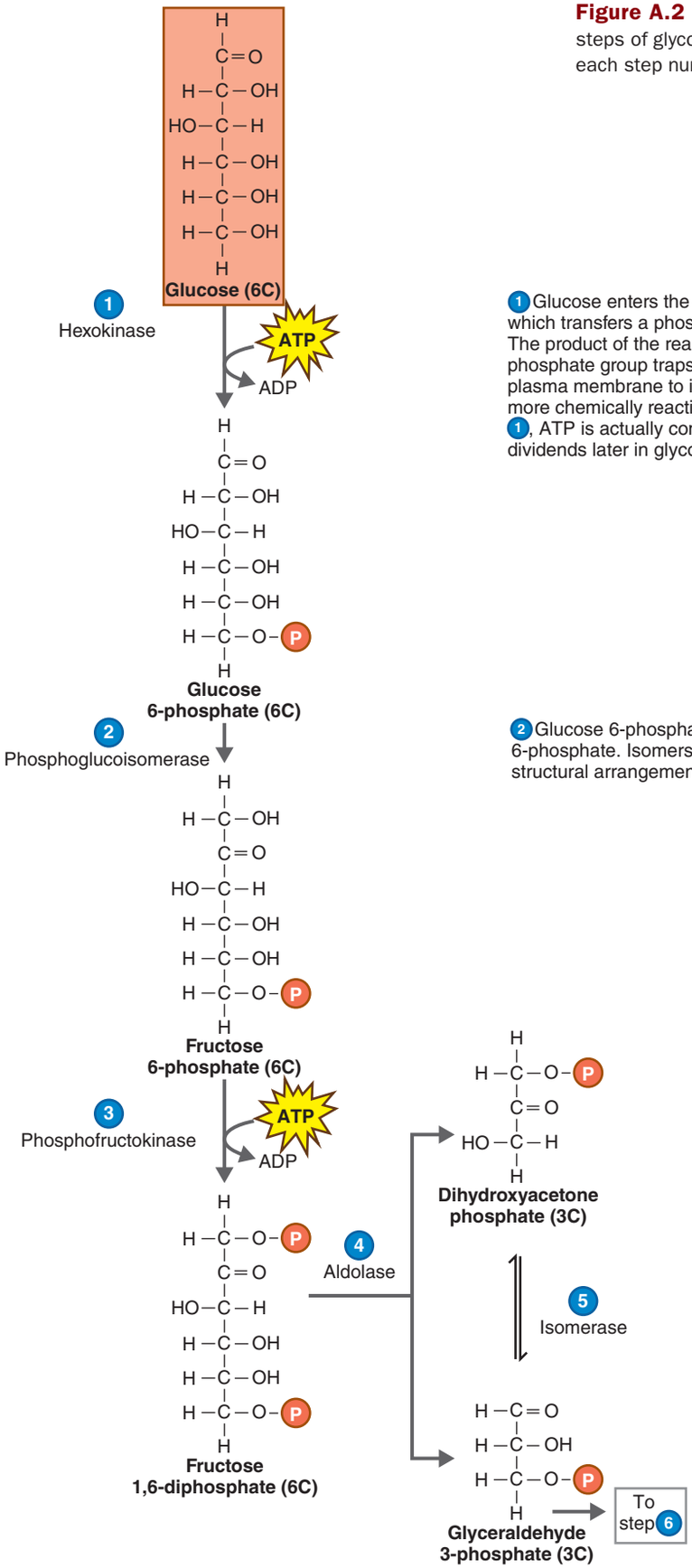


Figure A.2 Glycolysis (Embden-Meyerhof pathway). Each of the ten steps of glycolysis is catalyzed by a specific enzyme, which is named under each step number. (See Figure 5.12 for a simplified version of glycolysis.)

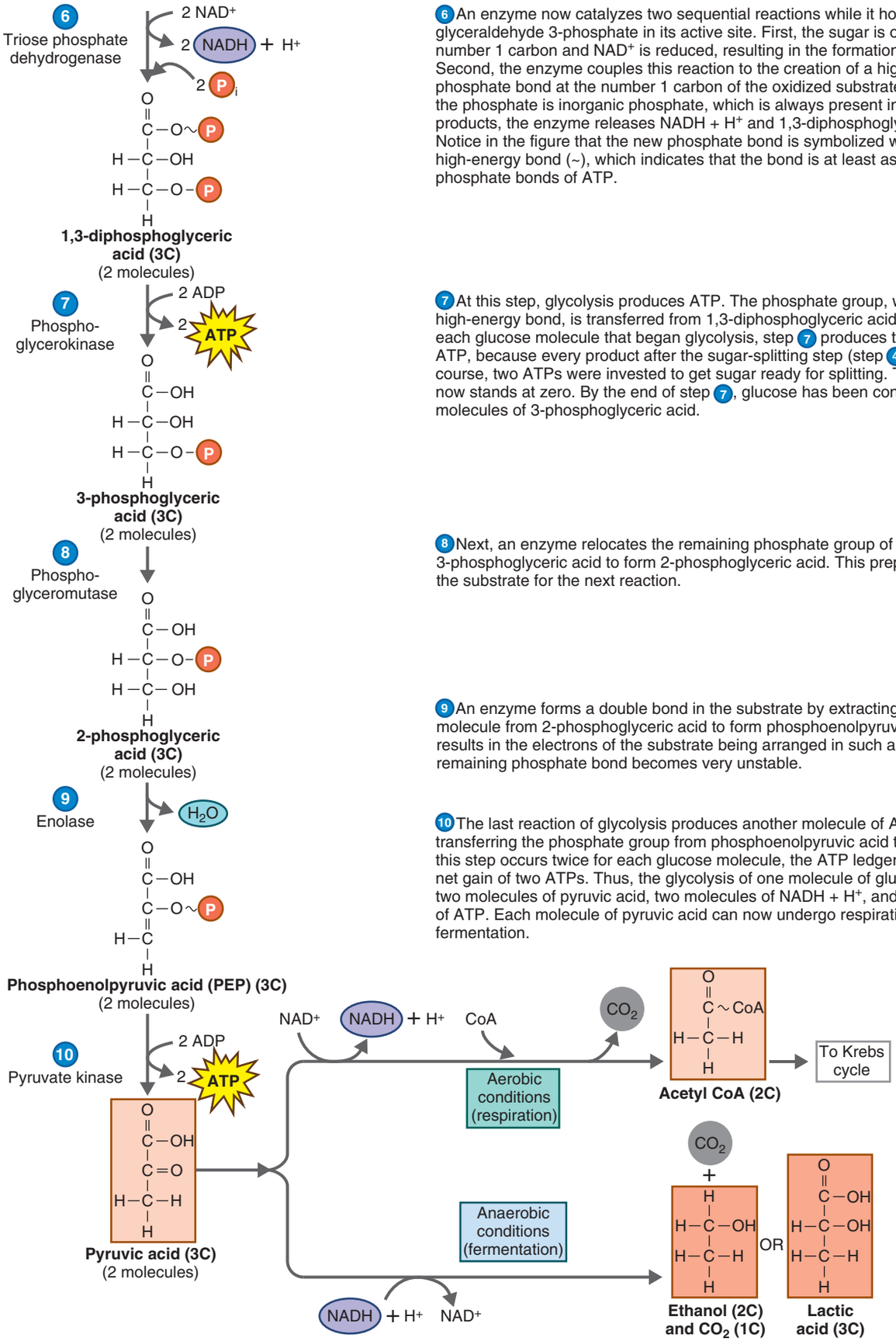
1 Glucose enters the cell and is phosphorylated by the enzyme hexokinase, which transfers a phosphate group from ATP to the number 6 carbon of the sugar. The product of the reaction is glucose 6-phosphate. The electrical charge of the phosphate group traps the sugar in the cell because of the impermeability of the plasma membrane to ions. Phosphorylation of glucose also makes the molecule more chemically reactive. Although glycolysis is supposed to *produce* ATP, in step 1, ATP is actually consumed—an energy investment that will be repaid with dividends later in glycolysis.

2 Glucose 6-phosphate is rearranged to convert it to its isomer, fructose 6-phosphate. Isomers have the same number and types of atoms but in different structural arrangements.

3 In this step, still another molecule of ATP is invested in glycolysis. An enzyme transfers a phosphate group from ATP to the sugar, producing fructose 1,6-diphosphate.

4 This is the reaction from which glycolysis gets its name ("sugar splitting"). An enzyme cleaves fructose 1,6-diphosphate into two different three-carbon sugars: glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate and dihydroxyacetone phosphate. These two sugars are isomers.

5 The enzyme isomerase interconverts the three-carbon sugars. The next enzyme in glycolysis uses only glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate as its substrate. This pulls the equilibrium between the two three-carbon sugars in the direction of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate, which is removed as fast as it forms.



6 An enzyme now catalyzes two sequential reactions while it holds glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate in its active site. First, the sugar is oxidized at the number 1 carbon and NAD^+ is reduced, resulting in the formation of NADH + H^+. Second, the enzyme couples this reaction to the creation of a high-energy phosphate bond at the number 1 carbon of the oxidized substrate. The source of the phosphate is inorganic phosphate, which is always present in the cell. As products, the enzyme releases NADH + H^+ and 1,3-diphosphoglyceric acid. Notice in the figure that the new phosphate bond is symbolized with a high-energy bond (~), which indicates that the bond is at least as energetic as the phosphate bonds of ATP.

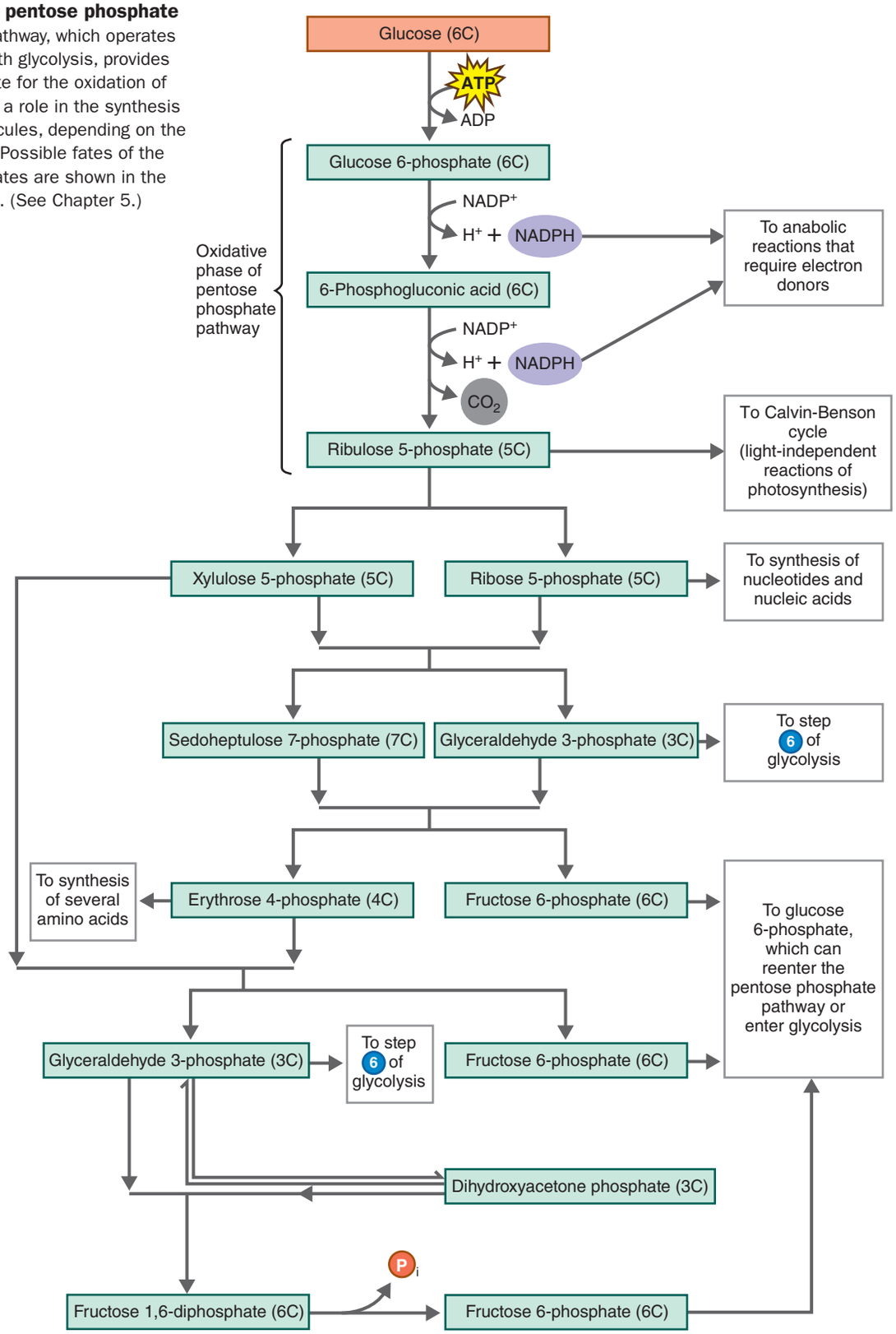
7 At this step, glycolysis produces ATP. The phosphate group, with its high-energy bond, is transferred from 1,3-diphosphoglyceric acid to ADP. For each glucose molecule that began glycolysis, step 7 produces two molecules of ATP, because every product after the sugar-splitting step (step 4) is doubled. Of course, two ATPs were invested to get sugar ready for splitting. The ATP ledger now stands at zero. By the end of step 7, glucose has been converted to two molecules of 3-phosphoglyceric acid.

8 Next, an enzyme relocates the remaining phosphate group of 3-phosphoglyceric acid to form 2-phosphoglyceric acid. This prepares the substrate for the next reaction.

9 An enzyme forms a double bond in the substrate by extracting a water molecule from 2-phosphoglyceric acid to form phosphoenolpyruvic acid. This results in the electrons of the substrate being arranged in such a way that the remaining phosphate bond becomes very unstable.

10 The last reaction of glycolysis produces another molecule of ATP by transferring the phosphate group from phosphoenolpyruvic acid to ADP. Because this step occurs twice for each glucose molecule, the ATP ledger now shows a net gain of two ATPs. Thus, the glycolysis of one molecule of glucose results in two molecules of pyruvic acid, two molecules of NADH + H^+, and two molecules of ATP. Each molecule of pyruvic acid can now undergo respiration or fermentation.

Figure A.3 The pentose phosphate pathway. This pathway, which operates simultaneously with glycolysis, provides an alternative route for the oxidation of glucose and plays a role in the synthesis of biological molecules, depending on the needs of the cell. Possible fates of the various intermediates are shown in the boxes on the right. (See Chapter 5.)



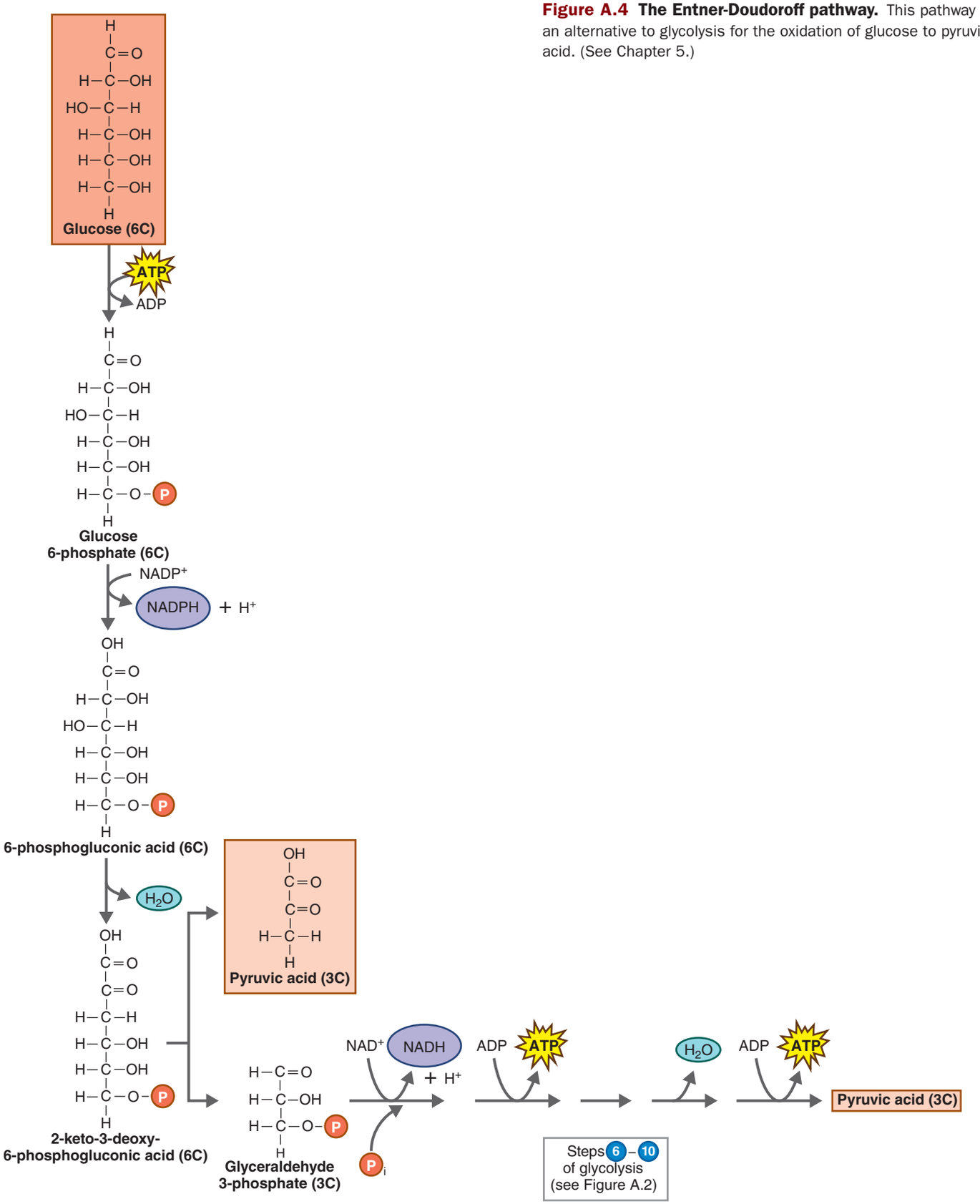
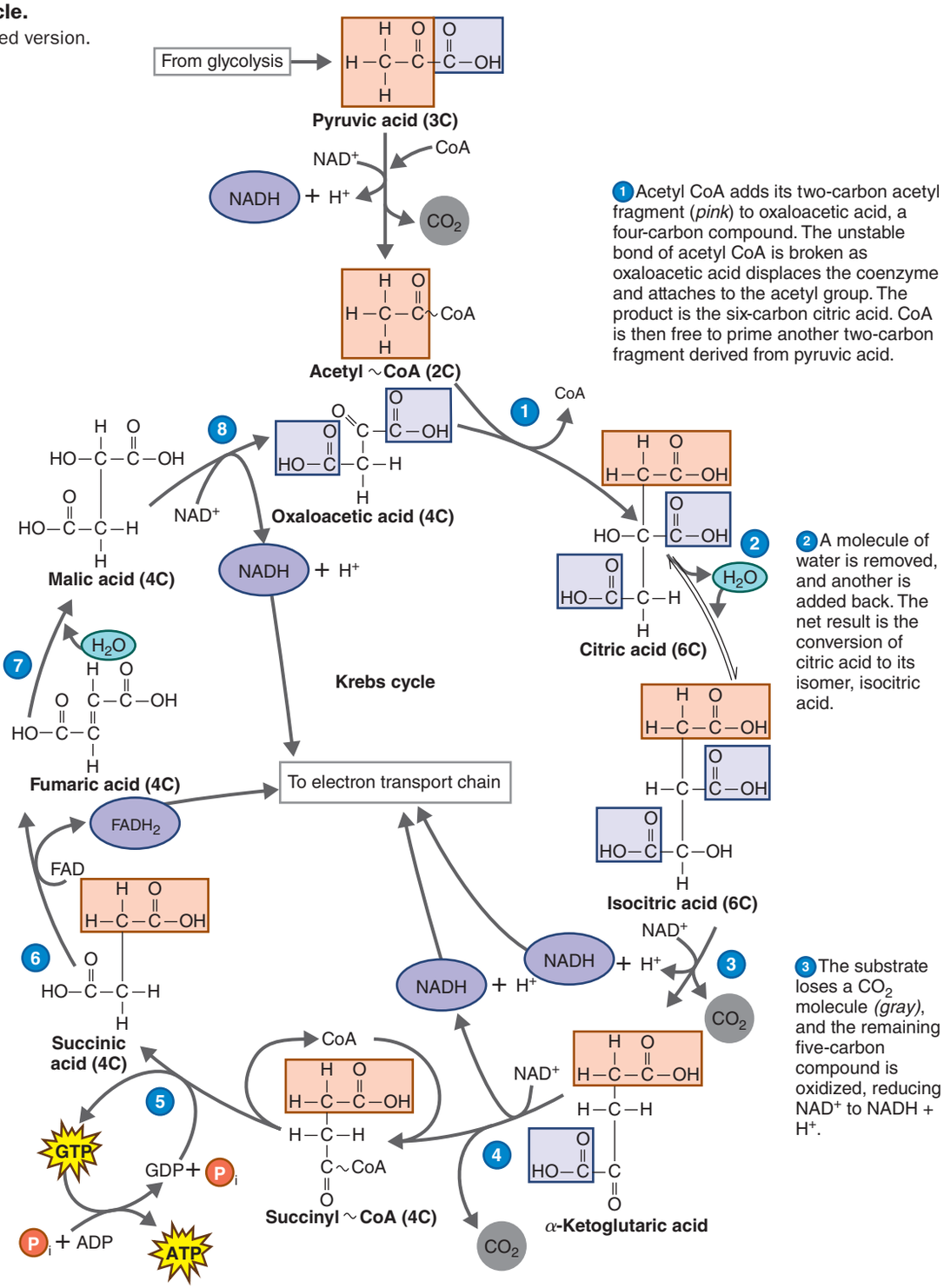


Figure A.4 The Entner-Doudoroff pathway. This pathway is an alternative to glycolysis for the oxidation of glucose to pyruvic acid. (See Chapter 5.)

Figure A.5 The Krebs cycle.
See Figure 5.13 for a simplified version.



Appendix B

Exponents, Exponential Notation, Logarithms, and Generation Time

Exponents and Exponential Notation

Very large and very small numbers, such as 4,650,000,000 and 0.00000032, are cumbersome to work with. It is more convenient to express such numbers in exponential notation—that is, as a power of 10. For example, 4.65×10^9 is in standard exponential notation, or **scientific notation**: 4.65 is the *coefficient*, and 9 is the power or *exponent*. In standard exponential notation, the coefficient is always a number between 1 and 10, and the exponent can be positive or negative.

To change a number into exponential notation, follow two steps. First, determine the coefficient by moving the decimal point so there is only one nonzero digit to the left of it. For example,

The coefficient is 3.2. Second, determine the exponent by counting the number of places you moved the decimal point. If you moved it to the left, the exponent is positive. If you moved it to the right, the exponent is negative. In the example, you moved the decimal point seven places to the right, so the exponent is −7. Thus,

$$0.00000032 = 3.2 \times 10^{-7}$$

Now suppose you are working with a larger number instead of a very small number. The same rules apply, but the exponential value will be positive rather than negative. For example,

$$4{,}650{,}000{,}000 = 4.65 \times 10^9$$

To multiply numbers written in exponential notation, multiply the coefficients and *add* the exponents. For example,

$$(3 \times 10^4) \times (2 \times 10^3) =$$
$$(3 \times 2) \times (10^{4+3}) = 6 \times 10^7$$

To divide, divide the coefficient and *subtract* the exponents. For example,

$$\frac{3 \times 10^4}{2 \times 10^3} = \frac{3}{2} \times 10^{4-3} = 1.5 \times 10^1$$

Microbiologists use exponential notation in many situations. For instance, exponential notation is used to describe the number of microorganisms in a population. Such numbers are often very large (see Chapter 6). Another application of exponential notation is to express concentrations of chemicals in a solution—chemicals such as media components (Chapter 6), disinfectants (Chapter 7), or antibiotics (Chapter 20). Such numbers are often very small. Converting from one unit of measurement to another in the metric system requires multiplying or dividing by a power of 10, which is easiest to carry out in exponential notation.

Logarithms

A **logarithm (log)** is the power to which a base number is raised to produce a given number. Usually we work with logarithms to the base 10, abbreviated $\log_{10}$. The first step in finding the $\log_{10}$ of a number is to write the number in standard exponential notation. If the coefficient is exactly 1, the $\log_{10}$ is simply equal to the exponent. For example,

$$\log_{10} 0.00001 = \log_{10} (1 \times 10^{-5})$$
$$= -5$$

If the coefficient is not 1, as is often the case, the logarithm function on a calculator must be used to determine the logarithm.

Microbiologists use logs for calculating pH levels and for graphing the growth of microbial populations in culture (see Chapter 6).

Calculating Generation Time

As a cell divides, the population increases exponentially. Numerically this is equal to 2 (because one cell divides into two) raised to the number of times the cell divided (generations);

$$2^{\text{number of generations}}$$

To calculate the final concentration of cells:

$$\text{Initial number of cells} \times 2^{\text{number of generations}} = \text{Number of cells}$$

For example, if 5 cells were allowed to divide 9 times, this would result in

$$5 \times 2^9 = 2560 \text{ cells}$$

To calculate the number of generations a culture has undergone, cell numbers must be converted to logarithms. Standard logarithm values are based on 10. The log of 2(0.301) is used because one cell divides into two.

$$\text{Number of generations} = \frac{\log \text{number of cells (end)} - \log \text{number of cells (beginning)}}{0.301}$$

To calculate the generation of time for a population:

$$\frac{60 \text{ min/hr} \times \text{hours}}{\text{number of generations}} = \textit{minutes/generation}$$

As an example, we will calculate the generation time if 100 bacterial cells growing for 5 hours produced 1,720,320 cells:

$$\frac{\log 1{,}720{,}320 - \log 100}{0.301} = 14 \text{ generations}$$

$$\frac{60 \text{ min/hr} \times 5 \text{ hours}}{14 \text{ generations}} = 21 \text{ minutes/generation}$$

A practical application of the calculation is determining the effect of a newly developed food preservative on the culture. Suppose 900 of the same species were grown under the same conditions as the previous example, except that the preservative was added to the culture medium. After 15 hours, there were 3,276,800 cells. Calculate the generation time, and decide whether the preservative inhibited growth.

Answer: 75 minutes/generation. The preservative did inhibit growth.

Appendix C

Methods for Taking Clinical Samples

To diagnose a disease, it is often necessary to obtain a sample of material that may contain the pathogenic microorganism. Samples must be taken aseptically. The sample container should be labeled with the patient's name, room number (if hospitalized), date, time, and medications being taken. Samples must be transported to the laboratory immediately for culture. Delay in transport may result in the growth of some organisms, and their toxic products may kill other organisms. Pathogens tend to be fastidious and die if not kept in optimum environmental conditions.

In the laboratory, samples from infected tissues are cultured on differential and selective media in an attempt to isolate and identify any pathogens or organisms that are not normally found in association with that tissue.

Universal Precautions*

The following procedures should be used by all health care workers, including students, whose activities involve contact with patients or with blood or other body fluids. These procedures were developed to minimize the risk of transmitting HIV or AIDS in a health care environment, but adherence to these guidelines will minimize the transmission of *all* healthcare-associated infections.

1. Wear gloves when touching blood and body fluids, mucous membranes, and nonintact skin and when handling items or surfaces soiled with blood or body fluids. Change gloves after contact with each patient.
2. Wash hands and other skin surfaces immediately and thoroughly if contaminated with blood or other body fluids. Wash hands immediately after gloves are removed.
3. Wear masks and protective eyewear or face shields during procedures that are likely to generate droplets of blood or other body fluids.
4. Wear gowns or aprons during procedures that are likely to generate splashes of blood or other body fluids.
5. To prevent needlestick injuries, needles should not be recapped, purposely bent or broken, or otherwise manipulated by hand. After disposable syringes and needles, scalpel blades, and other sharp items are used, place them in puncture-resistant containers for disposal.
6. Although saliva has not been implicated in HIV transmission, mouthpieces, resuscitation bags, and other ventilation devices should be available for use in areas in which the need for resuscitation is predictable. Emergency mouth-to-mouth resuscitation should be minimized.
7. Health care workers who have exudative lesions or weeping dermatitis should refrain from all direct patient care and from handling patient-care equipment.
8. Pregnant health care workers are not known to have a greater risk of contracting HIV infection than health care workers who are not pregnant; however, if a health care worker develops HIV infection during pregnancy, the infant is at risk of infection. Because of this risk, pregnant health care workers should be especially familiar with, and strictly adhere to, precautions to minimize the risk of HIV transmission.

Instructions for Specific Sampling Procedures

Wound or Abscess Culture

1. Cleanse the area with a sterile swab moistened in sterile saline.
2. Disinfect the area with 70% ethanol or iodine solution.
3. If the abscess has not ruptured spontaneously, a physician will open it with a sterile scalpel.
4. Wipe the first pus away.
5. Touch a sterile swab to the pus, taking care not to contaminate the surrounding tissue.
6. Replace the swab in its container, and properly label the container.

Ear Culture

1. Clean the skin and auditory canal with 1% tincture of iodine.
2. Touch the infected area with a sterile cotton swab.
3. Replace the swab in its container.

Eye Culture

This procedure is often performed by an ophthalmologist.

1. Anesthetize the eye with topical application of a sterile anesthetic solution.
2. Wash the eye with sterile saline solution.
3. Collect material from the infected area with a sterile cotton swab. Return the swab to its container.

Blood Culture

1. Close the room's windows to avoid contamination.
2. Clean the skin around the selected vein with 2% tincture of iodine on a cotton swab.
3. Remove dried iodine with gauze moistened with 80% isopropyl alcohol.
4. Draw a few milliliters of venous blood.
5. Aseptically bandage the puncture.

Urine Culture

1. Provide the patient with a sterile container.
2. Instruct the patient to first void a small volume from the urinary bladder before collection (to wash away extraneous bacteria of the skin microbiota) and then to collect a midstream sample.
3. A urine sample may be stored under refrigeration (4–6°C) for up to 24 hours.

Fecal Culture

For bacteriological examination, only a small sample is needed. This may be obtained by inserting a sterile swab into the rectum or feces. The swab is then placed in a tube of sterile enrichment broth for transport to the laboratory. For examination for parasites, a small sample may be taken from a morning stool. The sample is placed in a preservative (polyvinyl alcohol, buffered glycerol, saline, or formalin) for microscopic examination for eggs and adult parasites.

Sputum Culture

1. A morning sample is best because microorganisms will have accumulated while the patient is sleeping.
2. The patient should rinse his or her mouth thoroughly to remove food and normal microbiota.
3. The patient should cough deeply from the lungs and expectorate into a sterile glass wide-mouth jar.
4. Care should be taken to avoid contaminating health care workers.
5. If there is little sputum (for example, in a patient with tuberculosis), stomach aspiration may be necessary.
6. Infants and children tend to swallow sputum. A fecal sample may be of some value in these cases.

*Source: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and National Institutes of Health. *Biosafety in Microbiological and Biomedical Laboratories*.

Appendix D

Pronunciation Rules and Word Roots

Rules for Pronouncing Scientific Names

The easiest way to learn new material is to talk about it, and that requires saying scientific names. Scientific names may look difficult at first glance, but keep in mind that generally every *syllable* is pronounced. The primary requirement in saying a scientific name is to communicate it.

The rules for the pronunciation of scientific names depend, in part, on the derivation of the root word and its vowel sounds. We have provided some general guidelines here. Pronunciations frequently do not follow the rules because a common usage has become "accepted" or the derivation of the name cannot be determined. For many scientific names there are alternative correct pronunciations.

Vowels

Pronounce all the vowels in scientific names. Vowels marked with a line above the letter are pronounced with a long sound, as in *rate (rāt)*. Vowels not marked by a line above the letter are pronounced as a short sound, as in *rat*. Two vowels written together and pronounced as one sound are called a *diphthong* (for example, the *ou* in *sound*). A special comment is needed about the pronunciation of the vowel endings *-i* and *-ae:* There are two alternative ways to pronounce each of these. In this book, we usually give the pronunciation of a long *e (ē)* to the *-i* ending, and a long *i (ī)* to the *-ae* ending. However, the reverse pronunciations are also correct and in some cases are preferred. For example, *coli* is usually pronounced KŌ-lī. Other vowel sounds are *oy* as in *oil* and *oo* as in *boot*.

Consonants

When *c* or *g* is followed by *ae, e, oe, i,* or *y,* it has a soft sound. Examples of words with soft *c* and *g* include *circus* and *giraffe*. When *c* or *g* is followed by *a, o, oi,* or *u,* it has a hard sound. When a double *c* is followed by *e, i,* or *y,* it is pronounced as *ks* (e.g., *cocci*).

Accent

The accented syllable is usually the next-to-last or third-to-last syllable. The most strongly accented syllable appears in capital letters. A secondary accent is noted with a prime (´), as in *Staphylococcus* (STAF-i-lō-kok´kus).

1. The accent is on the next-to-last syllable:
   - **a.** When the name contains only two syllables. Example: *Y. pestis* (PES-tis).
   - **b.** When the next-to-last syllable is a diphthong. Example: *Acanthamoeba* (ah-kan-thah-MĒ-bah).
   - **c.** When the vowel of the next-to-last syllable is long. Example: *Treponema* (trep-ō-NĒ-mah). The vowel in the next-to-last syllable is long in words ending in the following suffixes:

Suffix	Example
-ota	Phyla such as Pseudomonadota
-ales	Orders such as Eubacteriales
-ina	*Sarcina*
-anus, -anum	*pasteurianum*
-uta	*diminuta*

   - **d.** When the word ends in one of the following suffixes:

Suffix	Example
-atus, -atum	*caudatum*
-ella	*Salmonella*

2. The accent is on the third-to-last syllable in family names. Families end in *-aceae,* which is always pronounced -Ā-sē-ē. The most strongly accented syllable appears in capital letters. A secondary accent is noted with a prime (´). For example *Staphylococcus* (STAF-i-lō-kok´kus).

Pronunciation Key for This Text

a	hat	g	go	ō	go	u	cup
ā	age	i	sit	or	order	ū	use
ah	father	ī	ice	oo	boot	x	zero
ch	child	ks	tax	oy	oil	z	zero
ē	let	kw	quiz	ou	out	zh	seizure
e-	see	ng	long	sh	she		
er	term	o	hot	th	thin		

Word Roots Used in Microbiology

The Latin rules of grammar pertain to singular and plural forms of scientific names.

	Gender		
	Feminine	Masculine	Neuter
Singular	-a	-us	-um
Plural	-ae	-i	-a
Examples	alga, algae	fungus, fungi	bacterium, bacteria

a-, an- absence, lack. Examples: abiotic, in the absence of life; anaerobic, in the absence of air.
-able able to, capable of. Example: viable, having the ability to live or exist.
actino- ray. Example: actinomycetes, bacteria that form star-shaped (with rays) colonies.
aer- air. Examples: aerobic, in the presence of air; aerate, to add air.
albo- white. Example: *Streptomyces albus* produces white colonies.
ameb- change. Example: ameboid, movement involving changing shapes.
amphi- around. Example: amphitrichous, tufts of flagella at both ends of a cell.
amyl- starch. Example: amylase, an enzyme that degrades starch.
ana- up. Example: anabolism, building up.
ant-, anti- opposed to, preventing. Example: antimicrobial, a substance that prevents microbial growth.
archae- ancient. Example: archaeobacteria, "ancient" bacteria, thought to be like the first form of life.
asco- bag. Example: ascus, a baglike structure holding spores.
aur- gold. Example: *Staphylococcus aureus,* gold-pigmented colonies.
aut-, auto- self. Example: autotroph, self-feeder.
bacillo- a little stick. Example: bacillus, rod-shaped.
basid- base, pedestal. Example: basidium, a cell that bears spores.
bdell- leech. Example: *Bdellovibrio,* a predatory bacterium.

bio- life. Example: biology, the study of life and living organisms.
blast- bud. Example: blastospore, spores formed by budding.
bovi- cattle. Example: *Mycobacterium bovis,* a bacterium found in cattle.
brevi- short. Example: *Lactobacillus brevis,* a bacterium with short cells.
butyr- butter. Example: butyric acid, formed in butter, responsible for rancid odor.
campylo- curved. Example: *Campylobacter,* curved rod.
carcin- cancer. Example: carcinogen, a cancer-causing agent.
caseo- cheese. Example: caseous, cheeselike.
caul- a stalk. Example: *Caulobacter,* appendaged or stalked bacteria.
cerato- horn. Example: keratin, the horny substance making up skin and nails.
chlamydo- covering. Example: chlamydoconidia, conidia formed inside hypha.
chloro- green. Example: chlorophyll, green-pigmented molecule.
chrom- color. Examples: chromosome, readily stained structure; metachromatic, intracellular colored granules.
chryso- golden. Example: *Streptomyces chryseus,* golden colonies.
-cide killing. Example: bactericide, an agent that kills bacteria.
cili- eyelash. Example: cilia, a hairlike organelle.
cleisto- closed. Example: cleistothecium, completely closed ascus.
co-, con- together. Example: concentric, having a common center, together in the center.
cocci- a berry. Example: coccus, a spherical cell.
coeno- shared. Example: coenocyte, a cell with many nuclei not separated by septa.
col-, colo- colon. Examples: colon, large intestine; *Escherichia coli,* a bacterium found in the large intestine.
conidio- dust. Example: conidia, spores developed at the end of aerial hypha, never enclosed.
coryne- club. Example: *Corynebacterium,* club-shaped cells.
-cul small form. Example: particle, a small part.
-cut the skin. Example: Firmicutes, bacteria with a firm cell wall, gram-positive.
cyano- blue. Example: cyanobacteria, blue-green pigmented organisms.
cyst- bladder. Example: cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder.
cyt- cell. Example: cytology, the study of cells.
de- undoing, reversal, loss, removal. Example: deactivation, becoming inactive.
di-, diplo- twice, double. Example: diplococci, pairs of cocci.
dia- through, between. Example: diaphragm, the wall through or between two areas.
dys- difficult, faulty, painful. Example: dysfunction, disturbed function.
ec-, ex-, ecto out, outside, away from. Example: excrete, to remove materials from the body.
en-, em- in, inside. Example: encysted, enclosed in a cyst.
entero- intestine. Example: *Enterobacter,* a bacterium found in the intestine.
eo- dawn, early. Example: *Eobacterium,* a 3.4-billion-year-old fossilized bacterium.
epi- upon, over. Example: epidemic, number of cases of a disease over the normally expected number.
erythro- red. Example: erythema, redness of the skin.
eu- well, proper. Example: eukaryote, a proper cell.
exo- outside, outer layer. Example: exogenous, from outside the body.
extra- outside, beyond. Example: extracellular, outside the cells of an organism.
firmi- strong. Example: *Bacillus firmus* forms resistant endospores.
flagell- a whip. Example: flagellum, a projection from a cell; in eukaryotic cells, it pulls cells in a whiplike fashion.
flav- yellow. Example: *Flavobacterium* cells produce yellow pigment.
fruct- fruit. Example: fructose, fruit sugar.
-fy to make. Example: magnify, to make larger.
galacto- milk. Example: galactose, monosaccharide from milk sugar.
gamet- to marry. Example: gamete, a reproductive cell.
gastr- stomach. Example: gastritis, inflammation of the stomach.
gel- to stiffen. Example: gel, a solidified colloid.
-gen an agent that initiates. Example: pathogen, any agent that produces disease.
-genesis formation. Example: pathogenesis, production of disease.
germ, germin- bud. Example: germ, part of an organism capable of developing.
-gony reproduction. Example: schizogony, multiple fission producing many new cells.
gracili- thin. Example: *Aquaspirillum gracile,* a thin cell.
halo- salt. Example: halophile, an organism that can live in high salt concentrations.
haplo- one, single. Example: haploid, half the number of chromosomes or one set.
hema-, hemato-, hemo- blood. Example: *Haemophilus,* a bacterium that requires nutrients from red blood cells.
hepat- liver. Example: hepatitis, inflammation of the liver.
herpes creeping. Example: herpes, or shingles, lesions appear to creep along the skin.
hetero- different, other. Example: heterotroph, obtains organic nutrients from other organisms; other feeder.
hist- tissue. Example: histology, the study of tissues.
hom-, homo- same. Example: homofermenter, an organism that produces only lactic acid from fermentation of a carbohydrate.
hydr-, hydro- water. Example: dehydration, loss of body water.
hyper- excess. Example: hypertonic, having a greater osmotic pressure in comparison with another.
hypo- below, deficient. Example: hypotonic, having a lesser osmotic pressure in comparison with another.
im- not, in. Example: impermeable, not permitting passage.
inter- between. Example: intercellular, between the cells.
intra- within, inside. Example: intracellular, inside the cell.
io- violet. Example: iodine, a chemical element that produces a violet vapor.
iso- equal, same. Example: isotonic, having the same osmotic pressure when compared with another.
-itis inflammation of. Example: colitis, inflammation of the large intestine.
-karyo, -caryo a nut. Example: eukaryote, a cell with a membrane-enclosed nucleus.
kin- movement. Example: streptokinase, an enzyme that lyses or moves fibrin.
lacti- milk. Example: lactose, the sugar in milk.
lepis- scaly. Example: leprosy, disease characterized by skin lesions.
lepto- thin. Example: *Leptospira,* thin spirochete.
leuko- whiteness. Example: leukocyte, a white blood cell.
lip-, lipo- fat, lipid. Example: lipase, an enzyme that breaks down fats.
-logy the study of. Example: pathology, the study of changes in structure and function brought on by disease.
lopho- tuft. Example: lophotrichous, having a group of flagella on one side of a cell.
luc-, luci- light. Example: luciferin, a substance in certain organisms that emits light when acted upon by the enzyme luciferase.
lute-, luteo- yellow. Example: *Micrococcus luteus,* yellow colonies.
-lysis loosening, to break down. Example: hydrolysis, chemical decomposition of a compound into other compounds as a result of taking up water.
macro- largeness. Example: macromolecules, large molecules.
mendosi- faculty. Example: mendosicutes, archaeobacteria lacking peptidoglycan.
meningo- membrane. Example: meningitis, inflammation of the membranes of the brain.
meso- middle. Example: mesophile, an organism whose optimum temperature is in the middle range.
meta- beyond, between, transition. Example: metabolism, chemical changes occurring within a living organism.
micro- smallness. Example: microscope, an instrument used to make small objects appear larger.

-mnesia memory. Examples: amnesia, loss of memory; anamnesia, return of memory.
molli- soft. Example: Mollicutes, a class of wall-less eubacteria.
-monas a unit. Example: *Methylomonas,* a unit (bacterium) that utilizes methane as its carbon source.
mono- singleness. Example: monotrichous, having one flagellum.
morpho- form. Example: morphology, the study of the form and structure of organisms.
multi- many. Example: multinuclear, having several nuclei.
mur- wall. Example: murein, a component of bacterial cell walls.
mus-, muri- mouse. Example: murine typhus, a form of typhus endemic in mice.
mut- to change. Example: mutation, a sudden change in characteristics.
myco-, -mycetoma, -myces a fungus. Example: *Saccharomyces,* sugar fungus, a genus of yeast.
myxo- slime, mucus. Example: Myxobacteriales, an order of slime-producing bacteria.
necro- a corpse. Example: necrosis, cell death or death of a portion of tissue.
-nema a thread. Example: *Treponema* has long, threadlike cells.
nigr- black. Example: *Aspergillus niger,* a fungus that produces black conidia.
ob- before, against. Example: obstruction, impeding or blocking up.
oculo- eye. Example: monocular, pertaining to one eye.
-oecium, -ecium a house. Examples: perithecium, an ascus with an opening that encloses spores; ecology, the study of the relationships among organisms and between an organism and its environment (household).
-oid like, resembling. Example: coccoid, resembling a coccus.
oligo- small, few. Example: oligiosaccharide, a carbohydrate composed of a few (7–10) monosaccharides.
-oma tumor. Example: lymphoma, a tumor of the lymphatic tissues.
-ont being, existing. Example: schizont, a cell existing as a result of schizogony.
ortho- straight, direct. Example: orthomyxovirus, a virus with a straight, tubular capsid.
-osis, -sis condition of. Examples: lysis, the condition of loosening; symbiosis, the condition of living together.
pan- all, universal. Example: pandemic, an epidemic affecting a large region.
para- beside, near. Example: parasite, an organism that "feeds beside" another.
peri- around. Example: peritrichous, projections from all sides.
phaeo- brown. Example: Phaeophyta, brown algae.
phago- eat. Example: phagocyte, a cell that engulfs and digests particles or cells.
philo-, -phil liking, preferring. Example: thermophile, an organism that prefers high temperatures.
-phore bears, carries. Example: conidiophore, a hypha that bears conidia.
-phyll leaf. Example: chlorophyll, the green pigment in leaves.
-phyte plant. Example: saprophyte, a plant that obtains nutrients from decomposing organic matter.
pil- a hair. Example: pilus, a hairlike projection from a cell.
plankto- wandering, roaming. Example: plankton, organisms drifting or wandering in water.
plast- formed. Example: plastid, a formed body within a cell.
-pnoea, -pnea breathing. Example: dyspnea, difficulty in breathing.
pod- foot. Example: pseudopod, a footlike structure.
poly- many. Example: polymorphism, many forms.
post- after, behind. Example: posterior, a place behind a (specific) part.
pre-, pro- before, ahead of. Examples: prokaryote, a cell with the first nucleus; pregnant, before birth.
pseudo- false. Example: pseudopod, false foot.
psychro- cold. Example: psychrophile, an organism that grows best at low temperatures.
-ptera wing. Example: Diptera, the order of true flies, insects with two wings.
pyo- pus. Example: pyogenic, pus-forming.
rhabdo- stick, rod. Example: rhabdovirus, an elongated, bullet-shaped virus.
rhin- nose. Example: rhinitis, inflammation of mucous membranes in the nose.
rhizo- root. Examples: *Rhizobium,* a bacterium that grows in plant roots; mycorrhiza, a fungus that grows in or on plant roots.
rhodo- red. Example: *Rhodospirillum,* a red-pigmented, spiral-shaped bacterium.
rod- gnaws. Example: rodents, the class of mammals with gnawing teeth.
rubri- red. Example: *Clostridiium rubrum,* red-pigmented colonies.
rumin- throat. Example: *Ruminococcus,* a bacterium associated with a rumen (modified esophagus).
saccharo- sugar. Example: disaccharide, a sugar consisting of two simple sugars.
sapr- rotten. Example: *Saprolegnia,* a fungus that lives on dead animals.
sarco- flesh. Example: sarcoma, a tumor of muscle or connective tissues.
schizo- split. Example: schizomycetes, organisms that reproduce by splitting and an early name for bacteria.
scolec- worm. Example: scolex, the head of a tapeworm.
-scope, -scopic watcher. Example: microscope, an instrument used to watch small things.
semi- half. Example: semicircular, having the form of half a circle.
sept- rotting. Example: septic, presence of bacteria that could cause decomposition.
septo- partition. Example: septum, a cross-wall in a fungal hypha.
serr- notched. Example: serrate, with a notched edge.
sidero- iron. Example: *Siderococcus,* a bacterium capable of oxidizing iron.
siphon- tube. Example: Siphonaptera, the order of fleas, insects with tubular mouths.
soma- body. Example: somatic cells, cells of the body other than gametes.
speci- particular things. Examples: species, the smallest group of organisms with similar properties; specify, to indicate exactly.
spiro- coil. Example: spirochete, a bacterium with a coiled cell.
sporo- spore. Example: sporangium, a structure that holds spores.
staphylo- grapelike cluster. Example: *Staphylococcus,* a bacterium that forms clusters of cells.
-stasis arrest, fixation. Example: bacteriostasis, cessation of bacterial growth.
strepto- twisted. Example: *Streptococcus,* a bacterium that forms twisted chains of cells.
sub- beneath, under. Example: subcutaneous, just under the skin.
super- above, upon. Example: superior, the quality or state of being above others.
sym-, syn- together, with. Examples: synapse, the region of communication between two neurons; synthesis, putting together.
-taxi to touch. Example: chemotaxis, response to the presence (touch) of chemicals.
taxis- orderly arrangement. Example: taxonomy, the science dealing with arranging organisms into groups.
tener- tender. Example: Tenericutes, the phylum containing wall-less eubacteria.
thallo- plant body. Example: thallus, an entire macroscopic fungus.
therm- heat. Example: *Thermus,* a bacterium that grows in hot springs (to 75°C).
thio- sulfur. Example: *Thiobacillus,* a bacterium capable of oxidizing sulfur-containing compounds.
-thrix See trich-.
-tome, -tomy to cut. Example: appendectomy, surgical removal of the appendix.
-tone, -tonic strength. Example: hypotonic, having less strength (osmotic pressure).
tox- poison. Example: antitoxin, effective against poison.
trans- across, through. Example: transport, movement of substances.
tri- three. Example: trimester, three-month period.
trich- a hair. Example: peritrichous, hairlike projections from cells.
-trope turning. Example: geotropic, turning toward the Earth (pull of gravity).
-troph food, nourishment. Example: trophic, pertaining to nutrition.
-ty condition of, state. Example: immunity, the condition of being resistant to disease or infection.

undul- wavy. Example: undulating, rising and falling, presenting a wavy appearance.
uni- one. Example: unicellular, pertaining to one cell.
vaccin- cow. Example: vaccination, injection of a vaccine (originally pertained to cows).
vacu- empty. Example: vacuoles, an intracellular space that appears empty.
vesic- bladder. Example: vesicle, a bubble.
vitr- glass. Example: in vitro, in culture media in a glass (or plastic) container.
-vorous eat. Example: carnivore, an animal that eats other animals.
xantho- yellow. Example: *Xanthomonas*, produces yellow colonies.
xeno- strange. Example: axenic, sterile, free of strange organisms.
xero- dry. Example: xerophyte, any plant that tolerates dry conditions.
xylo- wood. Example: xylose, a sugar obtained from wood.
zoo- animal. Example: zoology, the study of animals.
zygo- yoke, joining. Example: zygospore, a spore formed from the fusion of two cells.
-zyme ferment. Example: enzyme, any protein in living cells that catalyzes chemical reactions.

Appendix E

Classification of Prokaryotes According to *Bergey's Manual**

Domain: Archaea
- **Phylum Thermoproteota (Crenarchaeota)**
  - Class: Thermoprotei
    - Order: Desulfurococcales
      - Family: Pyrodictiaceae
        - *Pyrodictium*
    - Order: Sulfolobales
      - Family: Sulfolobaceae
        - *Sulfolobus*
- **Phylum Euryarchaeota**
  - Class: Methanococci
    - Order: Methanosarcinales
      - Family: Methanosarcinaceae
        - *Methanosarcina*
  - Class: Halobacteria
    - Order: Halobacteriales
      - Family: Halobacteriaceae
        - *Halobacterium*
        - *Haloarcula*
  - Class: Thermococci
    - Order: Thermococcales
      - Family: Thermococcaceae
        - *Pyrococcus*
        - *Thermococcus*

Domain: Bacteria
- **Phylum Thermotogota**
  - Class: Thermotogae
    - Order: Thermotogales
      - Family: Thermotogaceae
        - *Thermotoga*
- **Phylum Aquificota**
  - Class: Aquificae
    - Order: Desulfurobacteriales
      - Family: Desulfurobacteriaceae
        - *Thermovibrio*
- **Phylum Deinococcota**
  - Class: Deinococci
    - Order: Deinococcales
      - Family: Deinococcaceae
        - *Deinococcus*
    - Order: Thermales
        - *Thermus*
- **Phylum Chloroflexota**
  - Class: Chloroflexi
    - Order: Chloroflexales
      - Family: Chloroflexaceae
        - *Chloroflexus*
- **Phylum Cyanobacteria**
  - Class: Cyanobacteria
        - *Anabaena*
        - *Microcystis*
        - *Prochlorococcus*
        - *Synechococcus*
        - *Spirulina*
        - *Trichodesmium*
- **Phylum Chlorobiota**
  - Class: Chlorobia
    - Order: Chlorobiales
      - Family: Chlorobiaceae
        - *Chlorobium*
- **Phylum Pseudomonadota (Proteobacteria)**
  - Class: Alphaproteobacteria
    - Order: Rhodospirillales
      - Family: Rhodospirillaceae
        - *Azospirillum*
        - *Magnetospirillum*
        - *Rhodospirillum*
      - Family: Acetobacteraceae
        - *Acetobacter*
        - *Gluconobacter*
        - *Granulibacter*
        - *Stella*
    - Order: Rickettsiales
      - Family: Rickettsiaceae
        - *Rickettsia*
      - Family: Anaplasmataceae
        - *Anaplasma*
        - *Ehrlichia*
        - *Wolbachia*
    - Order: Pelagibacterales
      - Family: Pelagibacteraceae
        - *Pelagibacter*
    - Order: Caulobacterales
      - Family: Caulobacteraceae
        - *Caulobacter*
    - Order: Hyphomicrobiales
      - Family: Rhizobiaceae
        - *Agrobacterium*
        - *Rhizobium*
      - Family: Bartonellaceae
        - *Bartonella*
      - Family: Brucellaceae
        - *Brucella*
      - Family: Beijerinckiaceae
        - *Beijerinckia*
      - Family: Hyphomicrobiaceae
        - *Hyphomicrobium*
      - Family: Methylobacteriaceae
        - *Microvirga*
      - Family: Nitrobacteraceae
        - *Bradyrhizobium*
        - *Nitrobacter*
        - *Rhodopseudomonas*
  - Class: Betaproteobacteria
    - Order: Burkholderiales
      - Family: Burkholderiaceae
        - *Burkholderia*
        - *Cupriavidus*
        - *Ralstonia*
      - Family: Alcaligenaceae
        - *Bordetella*
      - Family: Comamonadaceae
        - *Sphaerotilus*
      - Unclassified
        - *Eleftheria*
    - Order: Acidithiobacillales
      - Family: Acidithiobacillaceae
        - *Acidithiobacillus*
    - Order: Methylophilales
      - Family: Methylophilaceae
        - *Methylophilus*
    - Order: Neisseriales
      - Family: Neisseriaceae
        - *Neisseria*
        - *Chromobacterium*
    - Order: Nitrosomonadales
      - Family: Nitrosomonadaceae
        - *Nitrosomonas*
      - Family: Spirillaceae
        - *Spirillum*
    - Order: Rhodocyclales
      - Family: Zoogloeaceae
        - *Zoogloea*
  - Class: Gammaproteobacteria
    - Order: Chromatiales
      - Family: Chromatiaceae
        - *Chromatium*
      - Family: Ectothiorhodospiraceae
        - *Ectothiorhodospira*
    - Order: Xanthomonadales
      - Family: Xanthomonadaceae
        - *Xanthomonas*
    - Order: Thiotrichales
      - Family: Thiotrichaceae
        - *Beggiatoa*
        - *Thiomargarita*
      - Family: Francisellaceae
        - *Francisella*
    - Order: Legionellales
      - Family: Legionellaceae
        - *Legionella*
      - Family: Coxiellaceae
        - *Coxiella*
    - Order: Pseudomonadales
      - Family: Pseudomonadaceae
        - *Azomonas*
        - *Azotobacter*
        - *Pseudomonas*
      - Family: Moraxellaceae
        - *Acinetobacter*
        - *Moraxella*
    - Order: Vibrionales
      - Family: Vibrionaceae
        - *Aliivibrio*
        - *Vibrio*

**Bergey's Manual of Systematics of Archaea and Bacteria,* is the reference for classification. *Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology,* 9th ed. (1994), should be used for identifying culturable bacteria and archaea.

- Order: Enterobacteriales
  - Family: Enterobacteriaceae
    - *Citrobacter*
    - *Cronobacter*
    - *Enterobacter*
    - *Erwinia*
    - *Escherichia*
    - *Klebsiella*
    - *Pantoea*
    - *Plesiomonas*
    - *Proteus*
    - *Salmonella*
    - *Serratia*
    - *Shigella*
    - *Yersinia*
  - Order: Pasteurellales
    - Family: Pasteurellaceae
      - *Haemophilus*
      - *Pasteurella*
  - Order: Oceanospirillales
    - Family: Halomonadaceae
      - *Carsonella*
- Class: Deltaproteobacteria
  - Order: Desulfovibrionales
    - Family: Desulfovibrionaceae
      - *Desulfovibrio*
  - Order: Bdellovibrionales
    - Family: Bdellovibrionaceae
      - *Bdellovibrio*
  - Order: Myxococcales
    - Family: Myxococcaceae
      - *Myxococcus*
- Class: Epsilonproteobacteria
  - Order: Campylobacterales
    - Family: Campylobacteraceae
      - *Campylobacter*
    - Family: Helicobacteraceae
      - *Helicobacter*

Phylum Bacillota (Firmicutes)

- Class: Bacilli
  - Order: Bacillales
    - Family: Bacillaceae
      - *Bacillus*
      - *Geobacillus*
      - *Lysinibacillus*
      - *Niallia*
    - Family: Listeriaceae
      - *Listeria*
    - Family: Paenibacillaceae
      - *Paenibacillus*
    - Family: Staphylococcaceae
      - *Staphylococcus*
    - Family: Thermoactinomycetaceae
      - *Thermoactinomyces*
  - Order: Lactobacillales
    - Family: Lactobacillaceae
      - *Lactobacillus*
      - *Pediococcus*
    - Family: Enterococcaceae
      - *Enterococcus*
    - Family: Leuconostocaceae
      - *Leuconostoc*
    - Family: Streptococcaceae
      - *Lactococcus*
      - *Streptococcus*
- Class: Clostridia
  - Order: Eubacteriales
    - Family: Clostridiaceae
      - *Clostridium*
      - *Clostridioides*
    - Family: Veillonellaceae
      - *Megasphaera*
      - *Veillonella*
    - Family: Lachnospiraceae
      - *Epulopiscium*
      - *Lachnospira*

Phylum Mycoplasmatota (Tenericutes)

- Order: Mycoplasmatales
  - Family: Mycoplasmataceae
    - *Mycoplasma*
    - *Ureaplasma*

Phylum Actinomycetota (Actinobacteria)

- Class: Actinobacteria
  - Order: Actinomycetales
    - Family: Actinomycetaceae
      - *Actinomyces*
  - Order: Micrcoccales
    - Family: Micrococcaceae
      - *Micrococcus*
    - Family: Brevibacteriaceae
      - *Brevibacterium*
    - Family: Cellulomonadaceae
      - *Tropheryma*
  - Order: Coriobacteriales
    - Family: Atopobiaceae
      - *Atopobium*
  - Order: Corynebacteriales
    - Family: Corynebacteriaceae
      - *Corynebacterium*
    - Family: Mycobacteriaceae
      - *Mycobacterium*
    - Family: Nocardiaceae
      - *Nocardia*
      - *Rhodococcus*
    - Family: Micromonosporaceae
      - *Micromonospora*
  - Order: Propionibacteriales
    - Family: Propionibacteriaceae
      - *Cutibacterium*
      - *Propionibacterium*
  - Order: Streptomycetales
    - Family: Streptomycetaceae
      - *Streptomyces*
  - Order: Frankiales
    - Family: Frankiaceae
      - *Frankia*
  - Order: Bifidobacteriales
    - Family: Bifidobacteriaceae
      - *Bifidobacterium*
      - *Gardnerella*

Phylum Planctomycetota

- Order: Planctomycetales
  - Family: Planctomycetaceae
    - *Gemmata*
    - *Planctomyces*

Phylum Chlamydiota

- Order: Chlamydiales
  - Family: Chlamydiaceae
    - *Chlamydia*

Phylum Spirochaetota

- Class: Spirochaetes
  - Order: Spirochaetales
    - Family: Treponemataceae
      - *Treponema*
    - Family: Borreliaceae
      - *Borrelia*
      - *Borreliella*
    - Family: Leptospiraceae
      - *Leptospira*

Phylum Bacteroidota

- Class: Aquificae
  - Order: Aquificales
    - Family: Aquificeae
      - *Aquifex*
- Class: Bacteroidetes
  - Order: Bacteroidales
    - Family: Bacteroidaceae
      - *Bacteroides*
    - Family: Porphyromonadaceae
      - *Porphyromonas*
    - Family: Prevotellaceae
      - *Prevotella*
- Class: Cytophagia
  - Order: Cytophagales
    - Family: Cytophagaceae
      - *Cytophaga*
- Class: Flavobacteria
    - Family: Flavobacteriaceae
      - *Capnocytophaga*
      - *Elizabethkingia*
      - *Zobellia*

Phylum Fusobacteriota

- Class: Fusobacteria
  - Order: Fusobacteriales
    - Family: Fusobacteriaceae
      - *Fusobacterium*
    - Family: Leptotrichiaceae
      - *Streptobacillus*

Glossary

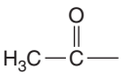
9 + 2 array Attachment of microtubules in eukaryotic flagella and cilia; 9 pairs of microtubules plus two microtubules.

12D treatment A sterilization process that would result in a decrease of the number of *Clostridium botulinum* endospores by 12 logarithmic cycles.

ABO blood group system The classification of red blood cells based on the presence or absence of A and B carbohydrate antigens.

abscess A localized accumulation of pus.

A-B toxin Bacterial exotoxins consisting of two polypeptides.

acetyl group 

acid A substance that dissociates into one or more hydrogen ions (H^+) and one or more negative ions.

acid-fast stain A differential stain used to identify bacteria that are not decolorized by acid-alcohol.

acidic dye A salt in which the color is in the negative ion; used for negative staining.

acidophile A bacterium that grows below pH 4.

acquired immunodeficiency (secondary immunodeficiency) The inability, obtained during the life of an individual, to produce specific antibodies or T cells, due to drugs or disease.

Actinobacteria A phylum of gram-positive, chemoheterotrophic bacteria with a high G + C ratio and a signature rRNA sequence.

activated macrophage A macrophage that has increased phagocytic ability and other functions after exposure to mediators released by T cells after stimulation by antigens.

activated sludge system A process used in secondary sewage treatment in which batches of sewage are held in highly aerated tanks; to ensure the presence of microbes efficient in degrading sewage, each batch is inoculated with portions of sludge from a precious batch.

activation energy The minimum collision energy required for a chemical reaction to occur.

active site A region on an enzyme that interacts with the substrate.

active transport Net movement of a substance across a membrane against a concentration gradient; requires the cell to expend energy.

acute disease A disease in which symptoms develop rapidly but last for only a short time.

acute inflammation The signs and symptoms of inflammation develop rapidly.

acute-phase proteins Serum proteins whose concentration changes by at least 25% during inflammation.

adaptive immunity The ability, obtained during the life of the individual, to produce specific antibodies and T cells.

adenocarcinoma Cancer of glandular epithelial tissue.

adenosine diphosphate (ADP) The substance formed when ATP is hydrolyzed and energy is released.

adenosine triphosphate (ATP) An important intracellular energy source.

adherence Attachment of a microbe or phagocyte to another's plasma membrane or other surface.

adhesion *See* adherence.

adhesin A carbohydrate-specific binding protein that projects from prokaryotic cells; used for adherence, also called a ligand.

adjuvant A substance added to a vaccine to increase its effectiveness.

activation of the complex system *See* complement activation.

aerobe An organism requiring molecular oxygen (O_2) for growth.

aerobic respiration Respiration in which the final electron acceptor in the electron transport chain is molecular oxygen (O_2).

aerotolerant anaerobe An organism that does not use molecular oxygen (O_2) but is not affected by its presence.

affinity In immunology, refers to strength of the interactions between antigen and antibody.

aflatoxin A carcinogenic toxin produced by *Aspergillus flavus*.

agar A complex polysaccharide derived from a marine alga and used as a solidifying agent in culture media.

agglutination A joining together or clumping of cells.

aggregated lymphoid follicles Lymphoid organs on the intestinal wall; Peyer's patches.

agranulocyte A leukocyte without visible granules in the cytoplasm when viewed through a light microscope; includes monocytes and lymphocytes.

agranulocytosis Immune-caused destruction of granulocytic white cells.

airborne transmission Refers to transmission of pathogens via air.

alarmone A chemical signal that promotes a cell's response to environmental stress.

alcohol An organic molecule with the functional group —OH.

alcohol fermentation A catabolic process, beginning with glycolysis, that produces ethyl alcohol to reoxidize NADH.

aldehyde An organic molecule with the functional group

alga (plural: **algae)** A photosynthetic eukaryote; may be unicellular, filamentous, or multicellular but lack the tissues found in plants.

algal bloom An abundant growth of microscopic algae producing visible colonies in nature.

algin A sodium salt of mannuronic acid ($C_6H_8O_6$); found in brown algae.

allergen An antigen that evokes a hypersensitivity response.

allergy *See* hypersensitivity.

allograft A tissue graft that is not from a genetically identical donor (i.e., not from self or an identical twin).

allosteric inhibition The process in which an enzyme's activity is changed because of binding to the allosteric site.

allosteric site The site on an enzyme at which a noncompetitive inhibitor binds.

allylamines Antifungal agents that interfere with sterol synthesis.

alpha interferon (IFN-α) *See* interferon.

alternative pathway *See* complement activation.

amanitin A polypeptide toxin produced by *Amanita* spp., inhibits RNA polymerase.

amebae Protozoa characterized by the presence of pseudopods.

Ames test A procedure using bacteria to identify potential carcinogens.

amination The addition of an amino group.

amino acid An organic acid containing an amino group and a carboxyl group. In alpha-amino acids the amino and carboxyl groups are attached to the same carbon atom called the alpha-carbon.

aminoglycoside An antibiotic consisting of amino sugars and an aminocyclitol ring; for example, streptomycin.

amino group $—NH_2$.

ammonification The release of ammonia from nitrogen-containing organic matter by the action of microorganisms.

amphibolic pathway A pathway that is both anabolic and catabolic.

amphitrichous Having flagella at both ends of a cell.

anabolism All synthesis reactions in a living organism; the building of complex organic molecules from simpler ones.

anaerobe An organism that does not require molecular oxygen (O_2) for growth.

anaerobic respiration Respiration in which the final electron acceptor in the electron transport chain is an inorganic molecule other than molecular oxygen (O_2); for example, a nitrate ion or CO_2.
anaerobic sludge digester Anaerobic digestion used in secondary sewage treatment.
anal pore A site in certain protozoa for elimination of waste.
analytical epidemiology Comparison of a diseased group and a healthy group to determine the cause of the disease.
anamnestic response *See* memory response.
anaphylaxis A hypersensitivity reaction involving IgE antibodies, mast cells, and basophils.
Angstrom (Å) A unit of measurement equal to 10^{-10} m, or 0.1 nm.
Animalia The kingdom composed of multicellular eukaryotes lacking cell walls.
anion An ion with a negative charge.
anoxygenic Not producing molecular oxygen; typical of cyclic photophosphorylation.
antagonism Active opposition; (1) When two drugs are less effective than either one alone. (2) Competition among microbes.
antibiogram Report of antibiotic susceptibility of a bacterium.
antibiotic An antimicrobial agent, usually produced naturally by a bacterium or fungus.
antibiotic resistance Formerly effective antibiotics have less effect against bacteria.
antibody A protein produced by the body in response to an antigen, and capable of combining specifically with that antigen.
antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) The killing of antibody-coated cells by natural killer cells and leukocytes.
antibody titer The amount of antibody in serum.
anticodon The three nucleotides by which a tRNA recognizes an mRNA codon.
antigen Any substance that causes antibody formation; also called an immunogen.
antigen–antibody complex The combination of an antigen with the antibody that is specific for it; the basis of immune protection and many diagnostic tests.
antigen-binding site A site on an antibody that binds to an antigenic determinant.
antigenic determinant A specific region on the surface of an antigen against which antibodies are formed; also called epitope.
antigenic drift A minor variation in the antigenic makeup of influenza viruses that occurs with time.
antigenic shift A major genetic change in influenza viruses causing changes in H and N antigens.
antigenic variation Changes in surface antigens that occur in a microbial population.
antigen-presenting cell (APC) A macrophage, dendritic cell, or B cell that engulfs an antigen and presents fragments to T cells.
anti-human immune serum globulin (anti-HISG) An antibody that reacts specifically with human antibodies.
antimetabolite A competitive inhibitor.
antimicrobial peptide (AMP) An antibiotic that is bactericidal and has a broad spectrum of activity; *see* bacteriocin.
antiretroviral A drug used to treat HIV infection.
antisense DNA DNA that is complementary to the DNA encoding a protein; the antisense RNA transcript will hybridize with the mRNA encoding the protein and inhibit synthesis of the protein.
antisense strand (– strand) Viral RNA that cannot act as mRNA.
antisepsis A chemical method for disinfection of the skin or mucous membranes; the chemical is called an antiseptic.
antiserum A blood-derived fluid containing antibodies.
antitoxin A specific antibody produced by the body in response to a bacterial exotoxin or its toxoid.
antiviral protein (AVP) A protein made in response to interferon that blocks viral multiplication.
Apicomplexa A phylum of protozoa characterized by specialized apical organelles.
apoenzyme The protein portion of an enzyme, which requires activation by a coenzyme.
apoptosis The natural programmed death of a cell; the residual fragments are disposed of by phagocytosis.
aquatic microbiology The study of microorganisms and their activities in natural waters.
archaea Domain of prokaryotic cells lacking peptidoglycan; one of the three domains.
archaellum (plural: **archaella)** A thin appendage from the surface of an archeon; used for cellular locomotion; composed of archaellin. *See also* flagella.
arthroconidia An asexual fungal spore formed by fragmentation of a septate hypha.
Arthus reaction Inflammation and necrosis at the site of injection of foreign serum, due to immune complex formation.
artificially acquired active immunity The production of antibodies by the body in response to a vaccination.
artificially acquired passive immunity The transfer of humoral antibodies formed by one individual to a susceptible individual, accomplished by the injection of antiserum.
artificial selection Choosing one organism from a population to grow because of its desirable traits.
ascospore A sexual fungal spore produced in an ascus, formed by the ascomycetes.
ascus A saclike structure containing ascospores; found in the ascomycetes.
asepsis The absence of contamination by unwanted organisms.
aseptic packaging Commercial food preservation by filling sterile containers with sterile food.
aseptic surgery Techniques used in surgery to prevent microbial contamination of the patient.
aseptic techniques Laboratory techniques used to minimize contamination.
asexual spore A reproductive cell produced by mitosis and cell division (eukaryotes) or binary fission (actinomycetes).
asymptomatic carrier A person carrying a pathogen with no signs or symptoms of infection, may never show signs or symptoms.
asymptomatic infection There are no signs or symptoms.
A (amino) site During protein synthesis, the first binding site on a ribosome for a tRNA attached to an amino acid.
atom The smallest unit of matter that can enter into a chemical reaction.
atomic force microscopy (AFM) *See* scanned-probe microscopy.
atomic number The number of protons in the nucleus of an atom.
atomic mass The total number of protons and neutrons in the nucleus of an atom.
atomic mass unit (amu) Unit of mass for atoms, ions, or molecules; equals 1g/mole.
atrichous Bacteria that lack flagella.
attenuated vaccine A vaccine containing live, attenuated (weakened) microorganisms.
autoclave Equipment for sterilization by steam under pressure, usually operated at 15 psi and 121°C.
autograft A tissue graft from one's self.
autoimmune disease Damage to one's own organs due to action of the immune system.
autotroph An organism that uses carbon dioxide (CO_2) as its principal carbon source; chemoautotroph, photoautotroph.
auxotroph A mutant microorganism with a nutritional requirement that is absent in the parent.
axial filament The structure for motility found in spirochetes; also called endoflagellum.
azole Antifungal agents that interfere with sterol synthesis.

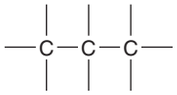
bacillus (plural: **bacilli)** (1) Any rod-shaped bacterium. (2) When written as a genus *(Bacillus)* refers to rod-shaped, endospore-forming, facultatively anaerobic, gram-positive bacteria.
bacteremia A condition in which there are bacteria in the blood.
bacteria Domain of prokaryotic organisms, characterized by peptidoglycan cell walls; **bacterium** (singular) when referring to a single organism.

bacterial growth curve A graph indicating the growth of a bacterial population over time.
bactericide A substance capable of killing bacteria.
bacteriocin An antimicrobial peptide produced by bacteria that kills other bacteria.
bacteriochlorophyll A photosynthetic pigment that transfers electrons for photophosphorylation; found in anoxygenic photosynthetic bacteria.
bacteriology The scientific study of prokaryotes, including bacteria and archaea.
bacteriophage (phage) A virus that infects bacterial cells.
bacteriostasis A treatment capable of inhibiting bacterial growth.
base A substance that dissociates into one or more hydroxide ions (OH^-) and one or more positive ions.
base pairs The arrangement of nitrogenous bases in nucleic acids based on hydrogen bonding; in DNA, base pairs are A-T and G-C; in RNA, base pairs are A-U and G-C.
base substitution The replacement of a single base in DNA by another base, causing a mutation; also called point mutation.
basic dye A salt in which the color is in the positive ion; used for bacterial stains.
basidiospore A sexual fungal spore produced in a basidium, characteristic of the basidiomycetes.
basidium A pedestal that produces basidiospores; found in the basidiomycetes.
basophil A granulocyte (leukocyte) that readily takes up basic dye and is not phagocytic; has receptors for IgE Fc regions.
batch production An industrial process in which cells are grown for a period of time after which the product is collected.
B lymphocyte (B cell) A type of lymphocyte; differentiates into antibody-secreting plasmocytes and memory cells.
BCG vaccine A live, attenuated strain of *Mycobacterium bovis* used to provide immunity to tuberculosis.
bacterial chromosome A DNA molecule, usually circular.
beer Alcoholic beverage produced by fermentation of starch.
benthic zone The sediment at the bottom of a body of water.
Bergey's Manual *Bergey's Manual of Systematics of Archaea and Bacteria,* the standard taxonomic reference on bacteria; also refers to *Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology,* the standard laboratory identification reference on bacteria.
β-lactam Core structure of penicillins.
beta interferon (INF-β) *See* interferon.
beta oxidation The removal of two carbon units from a fatty acid to form acetyl CoA.
binary fission Prokaryotic cell reproduction by division into two daughter cells.
binomial nomenclature The system of having two names (genus and specific epithet) for each organism; also called scientific nomenclature.
bioaugmentation The use of pollutant-acclimated microbes or genetically engineered microbes for bioremediation.
biochemical oxygen demand (BOD) A measure of the biologically degradable organic matter in water.
biocide A substance capable of killing microorganisms.
bioconversion Changes in organic matter brought about by the growth of microorganisms.
bioenhancer Nutrients such as nitrate and phosphate that promote microbial growth.
biofilm A microbial community that usually forms as a slimy layer on a surface.
biofuels Energy resources made by living organisms, usually from biomass, e.g., ethanol, methane.
biogenesis The theory that living cells arise only from preexisting cells.
biogeochemical cycle The recycling of chemical elements by microorganisms for use by other organisms.
bioinformatics The science of determining the function of genes through computer-assisted analysis.
bioleaching The use of microbes' metabolism to extract minerals.
biological transmission The transmission of a pathogen from one host to another when the pathogen reproduces in the vector.
bioluminescence The emission of light from the electron transport chain; requires the enzyme luciferase.
biomass Organic matter produced by living organisms and measured by weight.
bioreactor A fermentation vessel with controls for environmental conditions, e.g., temperature and pH.
bioremediation The use of microbes to remove an environmental pollutant.
biosafety level (BSL) Safety guidelines for working with live microorganisms in a laboratory; four levels called BSL-1 through BSL-4.
biotechnology The industrial application of microorganisms, cells, or cell components to make a useful product.
bioterrorism Use of a living organism or its product to intimidate.
biotype *See* biovar.
biovar A subgroup of a serovar based on biochemical or physiological properties; also called biotype.
bisphenol Phenolic that contains two phenol groups connected by a bridge.
blade A flat leaflike structure of multicellular algae.
blastoconidium An asexual fungal spore produced by budding from the parent cell.
blebbing Bulging of plasma membrane as a cell dies.
blood–brain barrier Cell membranes that allow some substances to pass from the blood to the brain but restrict others.
blood plasma The liquid portion of blood in which the formed elements are suspended.
blunt ends DNA fragments resulting from a restriction endonuclease cutting both strands of the double helix at the same place.
brightfield illumination *See* brightfield microscope.
brightfield microscope A microscope that uses visible light for illumination; the specimens are viewed against a white background.
broad-spectrum antibiotic An antibiotic that is effective against a wide range of both gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria.
bronchiolitis Infection of the bronchioles.
bronchitis Infection of the bronchi.
broth dilution test A method of determining the minimal inhibitory concentration by using serial dilutions of an antimicrobial drug.
bubo An enlarged lymph node caused by inflammation.
budding (1) Asexual reproduction beginning as a protuberance from the parent cell that grows to become a daughter cell. (2) Release of an enveloped virus through the plasma membrane of an animal cell.
budding yeast Following mitosis, a yeast cell that divides unevenly to produce a small cell (bud) from the parent cell.
buffer A substance that tends to stabilize the pH of a solution.
bulking A condition arising when sludge floats rather than settles in secondary sewage treatment.
bullae (singular: **bulla)** Large serum-filled vesicles in the skin.
bursa of Fabricius An organ in chickens responsible for maturation of the immune system.

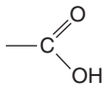
Calvin-Benson cycle The fixation of CO_2 into reduced organic compounds; used by autotrophs.
capnophile A microorganism that grows best at relatively high CO_2 concentrations.
capsid The protein coat of a virus that surrounds the nucleic acid.
capsomere A protein subunit of a viral capsid.
capsule An outer, viscous covering on some bacteria composed of a polysaccharide or polypeptide.
carbapenems Antibiotics that contain a β-lactam antibiotic and cilastatin.
carbohydrate An organic compound composed of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, with the hydrogen and oxygen present in a 2:1 ratio; carbohydrates include starches, sugars, and cellulose.
carbohydrate catabolism Breakdown of carbohydrates.
carbon cycle The series of processes that converts CO_2 to organic substances and back to CO_2 in nature.

carbon fixation The synthesis of sugars by using carbons from CO_2. *See also* Calvin-Benson cycle.

carbon skeleton The basic chain or ring of carbon atoms in a molecule; for example,



carboxyl group



carboxysome A prokaryotic inclusion containing ribulose 1,5-diphosphate carboxylase.

carbuncle Inflammation of tissue under the skin, due to infection.

carcinogen Any cancer-causing substance.

cardiovascular system Organ system consisting of heart, blood, and blood vessels.

carrier Organism (usually refers to humans) that harbors pathogens and transmits them to others.

carrying capacity The number of organisms that an environment can support.

casein Milk protein.

case fatality ratio (CFR) The proportion of individuals diagnosed with a disease who die from that disease within a certain period of time.

catabolism All decomposition reactions in a living organism; the breakdown of complex organic compounds into simpler ones.

catabolite repression Inhibition of the metabolism of alternative carbon sources by glucose.

catalase An enzyme that breaks down hydrogen peroxide: $2H_2O_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O + O_2$

catalyst A substance that increases the rate of a chemical reaction but is not altered itself.

cation A positively charged ion.

CD (cluster of differentiation) Number assigned to an epitope on a single antigen, for example, CD4 protein, which is found on T helper cells.

cDNA (complementary DNA) DNA made in vitro from an mRNA template.

cell culture Eukaryotic cells grown in culture media; also called tissue culture.

cell theory All living organisms are composed of cells and arise from preexisting cells.

cellular immunity (cell-mediated immunity) An immune response that involves T cells binding to antigens presented on antigen-presenting cells; T cells then differentiate into several types of effector T cells.

cellular respiration *See* respiration.

cellular slime molds Slime molds that live vegetatively as amebae and aggregate to form spores.

cell wall The outer covering of most bacterial, fungal, algal, and plant cells; in bacteria, it consists of peptidoglycan.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) A branch of the U.S. Public Health Service that serves a central source of epidemiological information.

central dogma In biology, used to describe the flow of genetic information from gene to protein.

central nervous system (CNS) The brain and the spinal cord. *See also* peripheral nervous system.

centriole A structure consisting of nine microtubule triplets, found in eukaryotic cells.

centrosome Region in a eukaryotic cell consisting of a pericentriolar area (protein fibers) and a pair of centrioles; involved in formation of the mitotic spindle.

cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) Liquid circulating in the brain and spinal cord between the pia mater and arachnoid mater.

cercaria A free-swimming larva of trematodes.

CFU (colony-forming unit) Visible bacterial colonies on solid media.

chancre A hard sore, the center of which ulcerates.

chemical bond An attractive force between atoms forming a molecule.

chemical element A fundamental substance composed of atoms that have the same atomic number and behave the same way chemically.

chemical reaction The process of making or breaking bonds between atoms.

chemically defined medium A culture medium in which the exact chemical composition is known.

chemiosmosis A mechanism that uses a proton gradient across a cytoplasmic membrane to generate ATP.

chemistry The science of the interactions between atoms and molecules.

chemoautotroph An organism that uses an inorganic chemical as an energy source and CO_2 as a carbon source.

chemoheterotroph An organism that uses organic molecules as a source of carbon and energy.

chemokine A cytokine that induces, by chemotaxis, the migration of leukocytes into infected areas.

chemotaxis Movement in response to the presence of a chemical.

chemotherapy Treatment of disease with chemical substances.

chemotroph An organism that uses oxidation-reduction reactions as its primary energy source.

chimeric monoclonal antibody A genetically engineered antibody made of human constant regions and mouse variable regions.

chlamydoconidium An asexual fungal spore formed within a hypha.

chlorophyll *a* A photosynthetic pigment that transfers electrons for photophosphorylation; found in plant, algae, and cyanobacteria.

chloroplast The organelle that performs photosynthesis in photoautotrophic eukaryotes.

chlorosome Plasma membrane folds in green sulfur bacteria containing bacteriochlorophylls.

chromatin Threadlike, uncondensed DNA in an interphase eukaryotic cell.

chromatophore An infolding in the plasma membrane where bacteriochlorophyll is located in photoautotrophic bacteria; also known as thylakoids.

chromosome The structure that carries hereditary information, chromosomes contain genes.

chronic carriers Individuals who have become infected and recover from a disease but can still spread the disease for a long period of time.

chronic infection An illness that develops slowly and is likely to continue or recur for long periods.

chronic inflammation The signs and symptoms of inflammation develop slowly and can last for up to several months or years.

ciliary escalator Ciliated mucosal cells of the lower respiratory tract that move inhaled particulates away from the lungs.

ciliates Members of a protozoan phylum characterized by the presence of cilia.

cilium (plural: **cilia)** A relatively short cellular projection from some eukaryotic cells, composed of nine pairs plus two microtubules. *See* flagellum.

circRNA Circular molecules of RNA formed by excised introns during RNA processing.

cis Hydrogen atoms on the same side across a double bond in a fatty acid. *See* trans.

cistern A flattened membranous sac in endoplasmic reticulum and the Golgi complex.

clade A group of organisms that share a particular common ancestor; a branch on a cladogram.

cladogram A dichotomous phylogenetic tree that branches repeatedly, suggesting the classification of organisms based on the time sequence in which evolutionary branches arose.

class A taxonomic group between phylum and order.

class switching Ability of a B cell to produce a different class of antibody against one antigen.

classical pathway *See* complement activation.

clinical trial Research to determine whether a treatment is effective and safe for humans.

clonal deletion The elimination of B and T cells that react with self.

clonal expansion The proliferation of B cells subsequent to clonal selection.

clonal selection Activation of clones of lymphocytes in response to specific antigen-receptor binding.

clone A population of cells arising from a single parent cell.

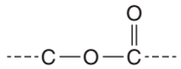
clue cells Sloughed-off vaginal cells covered with *Gardnerella vaginalis*.
coagulase A bacterial enzyme that causes blood plasma to clot.
coccobacillus (plural: **coccobacilli)** A bacterium that is an oval rod.
coccus (plural: **cocci)** A spherical or ovoid bacterium.
codon A sequence of three nucleotides in mRNA that specifies the insertion of an amino acid into a polypeptide.
coenocytic hypha A fungal filament that is not divided into uninucleate cell-like units because it lacks septa.
coenzyme A nonprotein substance that is associated with and that activates an enzyme.
coenzyme A (CoA) A coenzyme that functions in decarboxylation.
coenzyme Q *See* ubiquinone.
cofactor (1) The nonprotein component of an enzyme. (2) A microorganism or molecule that acts with others to synergistically enhance or cause disease.
coliforms Aerobic or facultatively anaerobic, gram-negative, non–endospore-forming, rod-shaped bacteria that ferment lactose with acid and gas formation within 48 hours at 35°C.
collagenase An enzyme that hydrolyzes collagen.
collision theory The principle that chemical reactions occur because energy is gained as particles collide.
colony A visible mass of microbial cells arising from one cell or from a group of the same microbes.
colony hybridization The identification of a colony containing a desired gene by using a DNA probe that is complementary to that gene.
commensalism A symbiotic relationship in which two organisms live in association and one is benefited while the other is neither benefited nor harmed.
commercial sterilization A process of treating canned goods aimed at destroying the endospores of *Clostridium botulinum*.
communicable disease Any disease that can be spread from one host to another.
community-acquired infection Infection contracted outside the health care setting.
competent Characteristic of the physiological state in which a recipient cell can take and incorporate a large piece of donor DNA.
competitive exclusion Growth of some microbes prevents the growth of other microbes.
competitive inhibitor A chemical that competes with the normal substrate for the active site of an enzyme. *See also* noncompetitive inhibitor.
complement A group of serum proteins involved in phagocytosis and lysis of bacteria.
complement activation The splitting of inactive complement proteins into active fragments results from events within one of three pathways. *See also* complement.
complementary DNA (cDNA) DNA made in vitro from an mRNA template.
complement fixation The process in which complement combines with an antigen–antibody complex.
complex medium A culture medium in which the exact chemical composition is not known.
complex virus A virus with a complicated structure, such as a bacteriophage.
composting A method of solid waste disposal, usually plant material, by encouraging its decomposition by microbes.
compound A substance composed of two or more different chemical elements.
compound light microscope (LM) An instrument with two sets of lenses that uses visible light as the source of illumination.
compromised host A host whose resistance to infection is impaired by another condition.
condensation reaction A chemical reaction in which a molecule of water is released; also called dehydration synthesis.
condenser A lens system located below the microscope stage that directs light rays through the specimen.
confocal microscopy A light microscope that uses fluorescent stains and laser to make two- and three-dimensional images.
congenital Refers to a condition existing at birth; may be inherited or acquired in utero.
congenital immunodeficiency (primary immunodeficiency) The inability, due to an individual's genotype, to produce specific antibodies or T cells.
conidiophore An aerial hypha bearing conidiospores.
conidiospore *See* conidium.
conidium An asexual spore produced in a chain from a conidiophore.
conjunctivitis Mucosa that lines the eyelids and covers the outer white surface of the eyeball.
conjugated vaccine A vaccine consisting of the desired antigen and other proteins.
conjugation The transfer of genetic material from one cell to another involving cell-to-cell contact.
conjugative plasmid A prokaryotic plasmid that carries genes for sex pili and for transfer of the plasmid to another cell.
constitutive gene A gene that is produced continuously.
contact inhibition The cessation of animal cell movement and division as a result of contact with other cells.
contact transmission The spread of disease by direct or indirect contact or via droplets.
contagious disease A disease that is easily spread from one person to another.
continuous cell line Animal cells that can be maintained through an indefinite number of generations in vitro.
continuous flow An industrial fermentation in which cells are grown indefinitely with continual addition of nutrients and removal of waste and products.
convalescent carrier A person carrying a pathogen during the convalescent period.
core polysaccharide Sugar component of the gram-negative outer membrane.
corepressor A molecule that binds to a repressor protein, enabling the repressor to bind to an operator.
cortex The protective fungal covering of a lichen.
counterstain A second stain applied to a smear, provides contrast to the primary stain.
covalent bond A chemical bond in which the electrons of one atom are shared with another atom.
crisis The phase of a fever characterized by vasodilation and sweating.
CRISPR (clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats) Repeating sequences of DNA targeted in gene editing using a CRISPR-associated nuclease (CAS) to cut out specific pieces of DNA.
cross-contamination Transfer of pathogens from one fomite to another.
crossing over The process by which a portion of one chromosome is exchanged with a portion of another chromosome.
CTL (cytotoxic T lymphocyte) An activated $CD8^+$ T cell; kills cells presenting endogenous antigens.
culture Microorganisms that grow and multiply in a container of culture medium.
culture medium The nutrient material prepared for growth of microorganisms in a laboratory.
curd The solid part of milk that separates from the liquid (whey) in the making of cheese, for example.
cutaneous mycosis A fungal infection of the epidermis, nails, or hair.
cuticle The outer covering of helminths.
cyanobacteria Oxygen-producing photoautotrophic prokaryotes.
cyclic AMP (cAMP) A molecule derived from ATP, in which the phosphate group has a cyclic structure; acts as a cellular messenger.
cyclic photophosphorylation The movement of an electron from chlorophyll through a series of electron acceptors and back to chlorophyll; anoxygenic; purple and green bacterial photophosphorylation.
cyst A sac with a distinct wall containing fluid or other material; also, a protective capsule of some protozoa.
cysticercus An encysted tapeworm larva.
cystitis Inflammation of the urinary bladder, often caused by infection.
cytochrome A protein that functions as an electron carrier in cellular respiration and photosynthesis.
cytokine A small protein released from human cells that regulates the immune response; directly or indirectly may induce fever, pain, or T cell proliferation.

cytokine storm Overproduction of cytokines; can cause damage to the human body.
cytolysis The destruction of cells, resulting from damage to their cell membrane, that causes cellular contents to leak out.
cytopathic effect (CPE) A visible effect on a host cell, caused by a virus, that may result in host cell damage or death.
cytoplasm In a prokaryotic cell, everything inside the plasma membrane; in a eukaryotic cell, everything inside the plasma membrane and external to the nucleus.
cytoplasmic streaming The movement of cytoplasm in a eukaryotic cell.
cytoskeleton Microfilaments, intermediate filaments, and microtubules that provide support and movement for eukaryotic cytoplasm.
cytosol The fluid portion of cytoplasm.
cytostome The mouthlike opening in some protozoa.
cytotoxin A bacterial toxin that kills host cells or alters their functions.

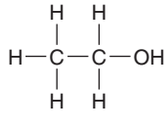
dalton (da) Dalton (da.) *See* atomic mass unit.
darkfield microscope A microscope that has a device to scatter light from the illuminator so that the specimen appears white against a black background.
deamination The removal of an amino group from an amino acid to form ammonia. *See also* ammonification.
death phase The period of logarithmic decrease in a bacterial population; also called logarithmic decline phase.
debridement Surgical removal of necrotic tissue.
decarboxylation The removal of –COOH from an organic acid, releases CO_2.
decimal reduction time (DRT) The time (in minutes) required to kill 90% of a bacterial population at a given temperature; also called D value.
decolorizing agent A solution used in the process of removing a stain.
decomposition reaction A chemical reaction in which bonds are broken to produce smaller parts from a large molecule.
deep-freezing Preservation of bacterial cultures at −50°C to −95°C.
defecation Discharge of feces (large intestine contents).
defensins Small peptide antibiotics made by human cells.
definitive host An organism that harbors the adult, sexually mature form of a parasite.
degeneracy Redundancy of the genetic code; that is, most amino acids are encoded by several codons.
degerming The removal of microorganisms in an area; also called degermation.
degranulation The release of contents of secretory granules from mast cells or basophils during anaphylaxis.
dehydration synthesis *See* condensation reaction.
dehydrogenation The loss of hydrogen atoms from a substrate.
delayed cell-mediated reactions *See* delayed hypersensitivity.
delayed hypersensitivity Cell-mediated hypersensitivity.
denaturation A change in the molecular structure of a protein, usually making it nonfunctional.
dendritic cell (DC) A type of antigen-presenting cell characterized by long fingerlike extensions; found in lymphoid tissue and skin.
denitrification The reduction of nitrogen in nitrate to nitrite or nitrogen gas.
dental caries Tooth cavity resulting from tooth decay-causing bacteria.
dental plaque A combination of bacterial cells, dextran, and debris adhering to the teeth.
deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) The nucleic acid of genetic material in all cells and some viruses.
deoxyribose A five-carbon sugar contained in DNA nucleotides.
dermatomycosis A fungal infection of the skin; also known as tinea or ringworm.
dermatophyte A fungus that causes a cutaneous mycosis.
dermis The inner portion of the skin.
descriptive epidemiology The collection and analysis of all data regarding the occurrence of a disease to determine its cause.
desensitization The prevention of allergic inflammatory responses.
desulfurization Removal of sulfur from an organic compound.
desiccation The removal of water.
diapedesis The process by which phagocytes move out of blood vessels.
diarrhea Loose, watery feces.
dichotomous key An identification scheme based on successive paired questions; answering one question leads to another pair of questions, until an organism is identified.
differential interference contrast (DIC) microscope An instrument that provides a three-dimensional, magnified image.
differential medium A solid culture medium that makes it easier to distinguish colonies of the desired organism.
differential stain A stain that distinguishes objects on the basis of reactions to the staining procedure.
differential white blood cell count The number of each kind of leukocyte in a sample of 100 leukocytes.
diffusion The net movement of molecules or ions from an area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration.
digestive system Organ system including the digestive canal and liver, gall bladder, and other accessory structures.
dimorphism The property of having two forms of growth. *See also* sexual dimorphism.
dioecious Referring to organisms in which organs of different sexes are located in different individuals.
diplobacilli (singular: **diplobacillus)** Rods that divide and remain attached in pairs.
diplococci (singular: **diplococcus)** Cocci that divide and remain attached in pairs.
diploid cell A cell having two sets of chromosomes; diploid is the normal state of a eukaryotic cell.
diploid cell line Eukaryotic cells grown in vitro.
direct agglutination test The use of known antibodies to identify an unknown cell-bound antigen.
direct contact transmission A method of spreading infection from one host to another through some kind of close association between the hosts.
direct fluorescent-antibody (DFA) test A fluorescent-antibody test to detect the presence of an antigen.
direct microscopic count Enumeration of cells by observation through a microscope.
disaccharide A sugar consisting of two simple sugars, or monosaccharides.
disease An abnormal state in which part or all of the body is not properly adjusted or is incapable of performing normal functions; any change from a state of health.
disinfection Any treatment used on inanimate objects to kill or inhibit the growth of microorganisms; a chemical used is called a disinfectant.
disk-diffusion method An agar-diffusion test to determine microbial susceptibility to chemotherapeutic agents; also called Kirby-Bauer test.
D-isomer Arrangement of four different atoms or groups around a carbon atom. *See* L-isomer.
dissimilation A metabolic process in which nutrients are not assimilated but are excreted as ammonia, hydrogen sulfide, and so on.
dissimilation plasmid A plasmid containing genes encoding production of enzymes that trigger the catabolism of certain unusual sugars and hydrocarbons.
dissociation The separation of a compound into positive and negative ions in solution. *See also* ionization.
disulfide bond A covalent bond that holds together two atoms of sulfur.
distillation The process of purifying a liquid, e.g., water or alcohol, by evaporating and condensing.
DNA base composition The moles-percentage of guanine plus cytosine in an organism's DNA.
DNA chip ("microarray") A silica wafer that holds DNA probes; used to recognize DNA in samples being tested.
DNA-DNA hybridization Process in which two complementary single-stranded DNA molecules complementary base-pair to form a double-stranded molecule.
DNA fingerprinting Analysis of DNA by electrophoresis of restriction enzyme fragments of the DNA.
DNA polymerase Enzyme that synthesizes DNA by copying a DNA template.
DNA probe A short, labeled, single strand of DNA or RNA used to locate its complementary strand in a quantity of DNA.

DNA vaccine Injection of DNA into animal cells so that the cells produce the antigen that will stimulate the immune system.
domain A taxonomic classification based on rRNA sequences; above the kingdom level.
domoic acid toxicosis Amnesic shellfish poisoning due to *Pseudo-nitzschia* toxin.
donor cell A cell that gives DNA to a recipient cell during genetic recombination.
double helix Refers to two adjacent, antiparallel strands of DNA sound into a spiral.
droplet transmission The transmission of infection by small liquid droplets carrying microorganisms.
DTaP vaccine A combined vaccine used to provide active immunity, containing diphtheria and tetanus toxoids and *Bordetella pertussis* cell fragments.
dual system In immunology, used to describe the roles of humoral and cellular components in adaptive immunity.
duration In reference to infection, is the average time that individuals have the disease from diagnosis until they are either cured or die.
D value *See* decimal reduction time.
dysbiosis An imbalance of microbiome in the human body (such as the gastrointestinal tract), leading to adverse health conditions.
dysentery A disease characterized by frequent, watery stools containing blood and mucus.

Earth microbiome Microbial life on Earth.
earwax Wavy substance secreted into the ear canal.
eclipse period The time during viral multiplication when complete, infective virions are not present.
ecology The study of the interrelationships between organisms and their environment.
edema An abnormal accumulation of interstitial fluid in tissues, causing swelling.
electron A negatively charged particle in motion around the nucleus of an atom.
electronic configuration The arrangement of electrons in shells or energy levels in an atom.
electron microscope A microscope that uses electrons instead of light to produce an image.
electron shell A region of an atom where electrons orbit the nucleus, corresponding to an energy level.
electron transport chain, electron transport system A series of compounds that transfer electrons from one compound to another, generating ATP by oxidative phosphorylation.
electroporation A technique by which DNA is inserted into a cell using an electrical current.
elementary body The infectious form of chlamydiae.
ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay) A group of serological tests that use enzyme reactions as indicators.
embryonic stem cell (ESC) A cell from an embryo that has the potential to become a wide variety of specialized cell types.
emerging infectious disease (EID) A new or changing disease that is increasing or has the potential to increase in incidence in the near future.
Embden-Meyerhof pathway *See* glycolysis.
emulsification Making a suspension of two liquids such as oil and water.
enanthem Rash on mucous membranes. *See also* exanthem.
encephalitis Infection of the brain.
endemic disease A disease that is constantly present in a certain population.
endergonic reaction A chemical reaction that requires energy.
endocarditis Infection of the lining of the heart (endocardium).
endocytosis The process by which material is moved into a eukaryotic cell.
endoflagellum *See* axial filament.
endogenous Produced from within an organism, e.g., infection caused by an opportunistic pathogen from an individual's own normal microbiota.
endolith An organism that lives inside rock.
endoplasmic reticulum (ER) A membranous network in eukaryotic cells connecting the plasma membrane with the nuclear membrane.
endospore A resting structure formed inside some bacteria.
endosymbiotic theory A model for the evolution of eukaryotes which states that organelles arose from prokaryotic cells living inside a host prokaryote.
endotoxic shock *See* gram-negative sepsis.
endotoxin Part of the outer portion of the cell wall (lipid A) of most gram-negative bacteria; released on destruction of the cell.
end-product The final chemical after a series of enzymatic reactions.
end-product inhibition *See* feedback inhibition.
energy level Potential energy of an electron in an atom. *See also* electron shell.
enrichment culture A culture medium used for preliminary isolation that favors the growth of a particular microorganism.
enteric The common name for a bacterium in the family Enterobacteriaceae.
enterotoxin An exotoxin that causes gastroenteritis, such as those produced by *Staphylococcus*, *Vibrio*, and *Escherichia*.
Entner-Doudoroff pathway An alternative pathway for the oxidation of glucose to pyruvic acid.
entry inhibitor Antiviral agent that binds the virus or receptor preventing entry into a host cell.
envelope An outer covering surrounding the capsid of some viruses.
enzyme A molecule that catalyzes biochemical reactions in a living organism, usually a protein. *See also* ribozyme.
enzyme immunoassay (EIA) *See* ELISA.
enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay *See* ELISA.
enzyme–substrate complex A temporary union of an enzyme and its substrate.
eosinophil A granulocyte whose granules take up the stain eosin.
epidemic disease A disease acquired by many hosts in a given area in a short time.
epidemiology The science that studies when and where diseases occur and how they are transmitted.
epidermis The outer portion of the skin.
epiglottis Cartilage flap that covers the trachea during eating.
epiglottitis Infection of the epiglottis.
epitope *See* antigenic determinant.
equivalent treatments Different methods that have the same effect on controlling microbial growth.
ergot A toxin produced in sclerotia by the fungus *Claviceps purpurea* that causes ergotism.
erythrocyte A blood cell that contains hemoglobin, also called red blood cell.
E (exit) site During protein synthesis, the final binding site for tRNA from which the tRNA leaves the ribosome.
essential oils (EOs) Volatile oils extracted from plants; smell like the plant.
ester linkage Bonding between fatty acids and glycerol in bacterial and eukaryotic phospholipids:



E test An agar diffusion test to determine antibiotic sensitivity using a plastic strip impregnated with varying concentrations of an antibiotic.
ethambutol A synthetic antimicrobial agent that interferes with the synthesis of RNA.
ethanol



ether linkage Bonding between fatty acids and glycerol in archaeal phospholipids: ---- C—O—C-----
etiology The study of the cause of a disease.
euglenoids Protozoa, like *Euglena*, with two flagella emerging from an anterior pocket.
Euglenozoa A phylum of flagellated protozoa that includes heterotrophs and autotrophs.
eukarya All eukaryotes (animals, plants, fungi, and protists); members of the Domain Eukarya.

eukaryote A cell having DNA inside a distinct membrane-enclosed nucleus.
eukaryotic species A group of closely related organisms that can interbreed.
eutrophication The addition of organic matter and subsequent removal of oxygen from a body of water.
exanthem Skin rash. *See also* enanthem.
exchange reaction A chemical reaction that has both synthesis and decomposition components.
exergonic reaction A chemical reaction that releases energy.
exon A region of a eukaryotic chromosome that encodes a protein.
exotoxin A protein toxin released from living, mostly gram-positive bacterial cells.
experimental epidemiology The study of a disease using controlled experiments.
exponential growth phase *See* log phase.
expressed In genetics, refers to production of RNA and/or a protein from a gene.
extensively drug-resistant (XDR) *M. tuberculosis* strains resistant to isoniazid, rifampin, fluoroquinolones, and at least one more drug.
extracellular polymeric substance (EPS) A glycocalyx that permits bacteria to attach to various surfaces.
extracellular vesicle (EV) Enzyme-containing structure made from the gram-positive plasma membrane, secreted to the environment.
extreme halophile *See* halophile.
extreme thermophile *See* hyperthermophile.
extremophile A microorganism that lives in environmental extremes of temperature, acidity, alkalinity, salinity, or pressure.
extremozymes Enzymes produced by extremophiles.

facilitated diffusion The movement of a substance across a plasma membrane from an area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration, mediated by transporter proteins.
facultative anaerobe An organism that can grow with or without molecular oxygen (O_2).
facultative halophile An organism capable of growth in, but not requiring, 1–2% salt.
FAD Flavin adenine dinucleotide; a coenzyme that functions in the removal and transfer of hydrogen ions (H^1) and electrons from substrate molecules.
FAME Fatty acid methyl ester; identification of microbes by the presence of specific fatty acids.
family A taxonomic group between order and genus.
fecal-oral cycle Refers to pathogens shed in feces and ingested through someone's mouth.
fecal-oral transmission *See* fecal-oral cycle.
feedback inhibition Inhibition of an enzyme in a particular pathway by the accumulation of the end-product of the pathway; also called end-product inhibition.
female genital (reproductive) system Organ system that includes the ovaries, uterine tubes, uterus, and vagina.
fermentation The enzymatic degradation of carbohydrates in which the final electron acceptor is an organic molecule, ATP is synthesized by substrate-level phosphorylation, and O_2 is not required.
fermentation test Method used to determine whether a bacterium or yeast ferments a specific carbohydrate; usually performed in a peptone broth containing the carbohydrate, a pH indicator, and an inverted tube to trap gas.
ferritin One of several human iron-binding proteins that reduce iron available to a pathogen.
fever An abnormally high body temperature.
F factor (fertility factor) A plasmid found in the donor cell in bacterial conjugation.
fibrinolysin A kinase produced by streptococci.
filtration The passage of a liquid or gas through a screenlike material; a 0.45-μm filter removes most bacteria.
fimbria (plural: **fimbriae)** An appendage on a bacterial cell used for attachment.
Bacillota A phylum of gram-positive bacteria with a low G + C ratio that possess a signature rRNA sequence.
first-line drug A drug that is the first choice for treating an infection.
FISH Fluorescent in situ hybridization; use of rRNA probes to identify microbes without culturing.
fission yeast Following mitosis, a yeast cell that divides evenly to produce two new cells.
fixed macrophage *See* resting macrophage.
fixing (1) In slide preparation, the process of attaching a specimen to a slide. (2) Regarding chemical elements, combining elements so that a critical element can enter the food chain. *See also* Calvin-Benson cycle; nitrogen fixation.
flagellum (plural: **flagella)** A thin appendage from the surface of a cell; used for cellular locomotion; composed of flagellin in bacterial cells, composed of 9 + 2 microtubules in eukaryotic cells. *See also* archaellum.
flavin adenine dinucleotide *See* FAD.
flavin mononucleotide (FMN) *See* FMN.
flaming The process of sterilizing an inoculating loop by holding it in an open flame.
flat sour spoilage Thermophilic spoilage of canned goods not accompanied by gas production.
flatworm An animal belonging to the phylum Platyhelminthes.
flavoprotein A protein containing the coenzyme flavin; functions as an electron carrier in electron transport chains.
flocculation The removal of colloidal material during water purification by adding a chemical that causes colloidal particles to coalesce.
flow cytometry A method of counting cells using a flow cytometer, which detects cells by the presence of a fluorescent tag on the cell surface.
fluid mosaic model A way of describing the dynamic arrangement of phospholipids and proteins comprising the plasma membrane.
fluke A flatworm belonging to the class Trematoda.
fluorescence The ability of a substance to give off light of one color when exposed to light of another color.
fluorescence-activated cell sorter (FACS) A modification of a flow cytometer that counts and sorts cells labeled with fluorescent antibodies.
fluorescence microscope A microscope that uses an ultraviolet light source to illuminate specimens that will fluoresce.
fluorescent-antibody (FA) technique A diagnostic tool using antibodies labeled with fluorochromes and viewed through a fluorescence microscope; also called immunofluorescence.
fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption test *See* FTA-ABS test.
fluorescence-flow cytometry *See* flow cytometry.
FMN Flavin mononucleotide; a coenzyme that functions in the transfer of electrons in the electron transport chain.
focal infection A systemic infection that began as an infection in one place.
folliculitis An infection of hair follicles, often occurring as pimples.
fomite A nonliving object that can spread infection.
foodborne transmission Refers to transmission of pathogens via food.
forensic microbiology Analyzing microbes in the course of a criminal investigation.
formed elements In reference to blood, the erythrocytes, leukocytes, and platelets.
frameshift mutation A mutation caused by the addition or deletion of one or more bases in DNA.
free macrophage *See* wandering macrophage.
freeze-drying *See* lyophilization.
FTA-ABS test (fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption test) A test using a fluorescent dye-labelled antibody to detect antibodies against *T. pallidum* in a patient's blood.
fully human antibodies Monoclonal antibodies produced in genetically modified mice that have human immunoglobin genes.
functional group An arrangement of atoms in an organic molecule that is responsible for most of the chemical properties of that molecule.
fungus (plural: **fungi)** An organism that belongs to the Kingdom Fungi; a eukaryotic absorptive chemoheterotroph.
furuncle An infection of a hair follicle.
fusion The merging of plasma membranes of two different cells, resulting in one cell containing cytoplasm from both original cells.
fusion inhibitor *See* entry inhibitor.

gamete A male or female reproductive cell.
gametocyte A male or female protozoan cell.
gamma interferon (INF-γ) *See* interferon.
gamma globulin The serum fraction containing immunoglobulins (antibodies); also called immune serum globulin.
gangrene Death of soft tissue resulting from the loss of blood supply.
gastric juice Digestive fluid secreted by stomach cells.
gastroenteritis Inflammation of the stomach and intestine.
gas vacuole A prokaryotic inclusion for buoyancy compensation.
gel electrophoresis The separation of substances (such as serum proteins or DNA) by their rate of movement through an electrical field.
gene A segment of DNA (a sequence of nucleotides in DNA) encoding a functional product.
gene editing A technique to add, delete, or insert DNA in a chromosome using bacterial enzymes.
gene silencing A mechanism to inhibit gene expression. *See* RNAi.
gene therapy Treating a disease by replacing abnormal genes.
genetic resistance An inherited trait in a person that provides resistance to a disease.
generalized transduction The transfer of bacterial chromosome fragments from one cell to another by a bacteriophage.
generation time The time required for a cell or population to double in number.
genetic code The mRNA codons and the amino acids they encode.
genetic recombination The process of joining pieces of DNA from different sources.
genetics The science of heredity and gene function.
genetic testing Techniques for determining which genes are in a cell's genome.
genital (reproductive) system *See* female genital system, male genital system.
genome One complete copy of the genetic information in a cell.
genomic library A collection of cloned DNA fragments created by inserting restriction enzyme fragments in a bacterium, yeast, or phage.
genomics The study of genes and their function.
genotoxin A chemical that damages DNA or RNA.
genotype The genetic makeup of an organism.
genus (plural: **genera)** The first name of the scientific name (binomial); the taxon between family and species.
germicide *See* biocide.
germination The process of starting to grow from a spore or endospore.
germ theory of disease The principle that microorganisms cause disease.
gingivitis Mild infection of the gums. *See* periodontitis.
gliding motility Motility associated with pili.
global warming Retention of solar heat by gases in the atmosphere.
glycocalyx A gelatinous polymer surrounding a cell.
glycolysis The main pathway for the oxidation of glucose to pyruvic acid; also called Embden-Meyerhof pathway.
glycolipid A lipid with one or more carbohydrates attached.
glycoprotein A protein with one or more carbohydrates attached.
Golgi complex An organelle involved in the secretion of certain proteins.
gp41 Glycoprotein spike on HIV's envelope, attached to gp120.
gp120 Glycoprotein spike on HIV's envelope, attached to gp41.
graft Transfer of a tissue from one part of the body to another, or from one person to another.
graft-versus-host (GVH) disease A condition that occurs when a transplanted tissue has an immune response to the tissue recipient.
gram-negative bacteria Bacteria that lose the crystal violet color after decolorizing by alcohol; they stain red after treatment with safranin.
gram-positive bacteria Bacteria that retain the crystal violet color after decolorizing by alcohol; they stain dark purple.
Gram stain A differential stain that classifies bacteria into two groups, gram-positive and gram-negative.
granulocyte A leukocyte with visible granules in the cytoplasm when viewed through a light microscope; includes neutrophils, basophils, and eosinophils.
granuloma A lump of inflamed tissue containing macrophages.
granum (plural: **grana)** Stack of thylakoid membrane.
granzymes Proteases that induce apoptosis.
green nonsulfur bacteria Gram-negative, nonproteobacteria; anaerobic and phototrophic; use reduced organic compounds as electron donors for CO_2 fixation.
green sulfur bacteria Gram-negative, nonproteobacteria; strictly anaerobic and phototrophic; no growth in dark; use reduced sulfur compounds as electron donors for CO_2 fixation.
group translocation In prokaryotes, active transport in which a substance is chemically altered during transport across the plasma membrane.
gumma A rubbery mass of tissue characteristic of tertiary syphilis.

HAART (highly active antiretroviral therapy) A combination of drugs used to treat HIV infection.
halogen One of the following elements: fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, or astatine.
halophile An organism that requires a high salt concentration for growth.
H antigen Flagella antigens of enterics, identified by serological testing.
hapten A substance of low molecular mass that does not cause the formation of antibodies by itself but does so when combined with a carrier molecule.
HA (hemagglutinin) spike Antigenic projections from the outer lipid bilayer of *Influenzavirus*.
harmful algal blooms Rapid growth of toxin-producing algae or cyanobacteria.
Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP) System of prevention of hazards, for food safety.
healthcare-associated infection (HAI) An infection that develops during a stay at a health care facility and was not present at the time the patient was admitted.
heartworm *Dirofilaria immitis* nematode.
helminth A parasitic roundworm or flatworm.
hemagglutination The clumping of red blood cells.
hematopoiesis The formation of blood cells.
hematopoietic cytokines Proteins that regulate differentiation of blood stem cells.
hemoflagellate A parasitic flagellate found in the circulatory system of its host.
hemoglobin O_2-carrying protein, found in red blood cells.
hemolysin An enzyme that lyses red blood cells.
hepatitis Inflammation of the liver.
herd immunity The presence of immunity in most of a population.
hermaphroditic Having both male and female reproductive capacities.
heterocyst A large cell in certain cyanobacteria; the site of nitrogen fixation.
heterolactic Describing an organism that produces lactic acid and other acids or alcohols as end-products of fermentation; e.g., *Escherichia*.
heterotroph An organism that requires an organic carbon source; also called organotroph.
Hfr cell A bacterial cell in which the F factor has become integrated into the chromosome; Hfr stands for high frequency of recombination.
high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filter A screenlike material that removes particles larger than 0.3 μm from air.
high-temperature short-time (HTST) pasteurization Pasteurizing at 72°C for 15 seconds.
histamine A substance released by tissue cells that causes vasodilation, capillary permeability, and smooth muscle contraction.
histocyte *See* resting macrophage.
histocompatibility antigen An antigen on the surface of human cells.
histone A protein associated with DNA in eukaryotic chromosomes.
holdfast The branched base of an algal stipe.
holoenzyme An enzyme consisting of an apoenzyme and a cofactor.
homolactic Describing an organism that produces only lactic acid from fermentation; e.g., *Streptococcus*.
hookworm A parasite nematode in the genera *Necator* or *Ancylostoma*.
horizontal gene transfer Transfer of genes between two organisms in the same generation. *See also* vertical gene transfer.
host An organism infected by a pathogen. *See also* definitive host; intermediate host.

host range The spectrum of species, strains, or cell types that a pathogen can infect.
hot-air sterilization Sterilization by the use of an oven at 170°C for approximately 2 hours.
human diploid cell vaccine (HDCV) Vaccine produced from rabies virus grown in human cell culture.
human leukocyte antigen (HLA) complex Human cell surface antigens. *See also* major histocompatibility complex.
Human Microbiome Project A project to characterize the microbial communities found on the human body.
human rabies immune globulin (RIG) Serum from people who have been vaccinated against rabies.
humanized antibody Human antibodies produced by genetically modified mice.
humoral immunity Immunity produced by antibodies dissolved in body fluids, mediated by B cells; also called antibody-mediated immunity.
hyaluronidase An enzyme secreted by certain bacteria that hydrolyzes hyaluronic acid and helps spread microorganisms from their initial site of infection.
hybridoma A cell made by fusing an antibody-producing B cell with a cancer cell.
hydatid cyst *Echinococcus* cysts containing new scolexes formed in humans.
hydrogen bond A bond between a hydrogen atom covalently bonded to oxygen or nitrogen and another covalently bonded oxygen or nitrogen atom.
hydrolysis A decomposition reaction in which chemicals react with the H^+ and OH^- of a water molecule.
hydroxide OH^-; the anion that forms a base.
hydroxyl —OH; covalently bonded to a molecule forms an alcohol.
hydroxyl radical A toxic form of oxygen (OH•) formed in cytoplasm by ionizing radiation and aerobic respiration.
hyperacute rejection Very rapid rejection of transplanted tissue, usually in the case of tissue from nonhuman sources.
hyperbaric chamber An apparatus to hold materials at pressures greater than 1 atmosphere.
hypersensitivity An altered, enhanced immune reaction leading to pathological changes; also called allergy.
hyperthermophile An organism whose optimum growth temperature is at least 80°C; also called extreme thermophile.
hypertonic solution A solution that has a higher concentration of solutes than an isotonic solution.
hypha A long filament of cells in fungi or actinomycetes.
hypotonic solution A solution that has a lower concentration of solutes than an isotonic solution.

ID_{50} The number of microorganisms required to produce a demonstrable infection in 50% of the test host population.
idiophase The period in the production curve of an industrial cell population in which secondary metabolites are produced; a period of stationary growth following the phase of rapid growth. *See also* trophophase.
IgA The class of antibodies found in secretions.
IgD The class of antibodies found on B cells.
IgE The class of antibodies involved in hypersensitivities.
IgG The most abundant class of antibodies in serum.
IgM The first class of antibodies to appear after exposure to an antigen.
illuminator A light source, such as for a microscope.
immune complex A circulating antigen-antibody aggregate capable of fixing complement.
immune serum globulin *See* gamma globulin.
immune surveillance The body's immune response to cancer.
immunity *See* adaptive immunity, innate immunity.
immunization *See* vaccination.
immunodeficiency The absence of an adequate immune response; may be congenital or acquired.
immunodiffusion test A test consisting of precipitation reactions carried out in an agar gel medium.
immunoelectrophoresis The identification of proteins by electrophoretic separation followed by serological testing.
immunofluorescence *See* fluorescent-antibody technique.
immunogen *See* antigen.
immunoglobulin (Ig) A protein (antibody) formed in response to an antigen and can react with that antigen. *See also* globulin.
immunology The study of a host's defenses to a pathogen.
immunopathology The study of hypersensitivities.
immunotherapy Making use of the immune system to attack tumor cells, either by enhancing the normal immune response or by using toxin-bearing specific antibodies. *See also* immunotoxin.
immunotoxin An immunotherapeutic agent consisting of a poison bound to a monoclonal antibody.
inactivated vaccine A vaccine consisting of whole, killed microbes.
incidence The fraction of the population that contracts a disease during a particular period of time.
inclusion Material held inside a cell, often consisting of reserve deposits.
inclusion body A granule or viral particle in the cytoplasm or nucleus of some infected cells; important in the identification of viruses that cause infection.
incubating carrier A person carrying a pathogen that is in the incubation phase.
incubation period The time interval between the actual infection and first appearance of any signs or symptoms of disease.
indicator organism A microorganism, such as a coliform, whose presence indicates conditions such as fecal contamination of food or water.
indirect (passive) agglutination test An agglutination test using soluble antigens attached to latex or other small particles.
indirect contact transmission The spread of pathogens by fomites (nonliving objects).
indirect FA test A fluorescent-antibody test to detect the presence of specific antibodies.
induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs) Embryonic stem cells produced from adult stem cells stimulated with growth factors.
inducible operon An operon whose gene expression increases in the presence of an inducer.
induction *See* prophage induction.
infection The growth of microorganisms in the body.
infectious disease A change in the state of health when a pathogen grows in a host.
infection fatality ratio (IFR) Calculated by dividing the number of deaths attributed to a disease by the total number of infected individuals.
inflammation A host response to tissue damage characterized by redness, pain, heat, and swelling; and sometimes loss of function.
ingestion The first stage of digestion, taking in food particles through an opening such as mouth, pseudopods, or cytostome.
innate immunity Host defenses that afford protection against any kind of pathogen. *See also* adaptive immunity.
inoculum Microbes introduced into a culture medium to initiate growth.
inorganic compound A small molecule that does not contain carbon and hydrogen.
insertion sequence (IS) The simplest kind of transposon.
interferon (IFN) A specific group of cytokines. Alpha- and beta-IFNs are antiviral proteins produced by certain animal cells in response to a viral infection. Gamma-IFN stimulates macrophage activity.
interleukin (IL) A chemical that causes T-cell proliferation. *See also* cytokine.
intermediate host An organism that harbors the larval or asexual stage of a helminth or protozoan.
intoxication A condition resulting from the ingestion of a microbially produced toxin.
intron A region in a eukaryotic gene that does not code for a protein or mRNA.
invasin A surface protein produced by *Salmonella Typhimurium* and *Escherichia coli* that rearranges nearby actin filaments in the cytoskeleton of a host cell.
iodophor A complex of iodine and a detergent.
ion A negatively or positively charged atom or group of atoms.
ionic bond A chemical bond formed when atoms gain or lose electrons in the outer energy levels.

ionization The separation (dissociation) of a molecule into ions.
ionizing radiation High-energy radiation with a wavelength less than 1 nm; causes ionization. X rays and gamma rays are examples.
iron-binding protein Iron-binding protein. *See also* ferritin, hemoglobin, transferrin siderophore.
ischemia Localized decreased blood flow.
isograft A tissue graft from a genetically identical source (i.e., from an identical twin).
isolation chip (iChip) A chamber composed of a plastic membrane that allows molecules to pass through; used to grow bacteria in their natural environment.
isomer One or two molecules with the same chemical formula but different structures.
isotonic solution A solution in which, after immersion of a cell, osmotic pressure is equal across the cell's membrane.
isotope A form of a chemical element in which the number of neutrons in the nucleus is different from the other forms of that element.

karyogamy Fusion of the nuclei of two cells; occurs in the sexual stage of a fungal life cycle.
keratin A protein found in epidermis, hair, and nails.
ketolide Semisynthetic macrolide antibiotic; effective against macrolide-resistant bacteria
kinase (1) An enzyme that removes a P from ATP and attaches it to another molecule. (2) A bacterial enzyme that breaks down fibrin (blood clots).
kingdom A taxonomic classification between domain and phylum.
kinin A substance released from tissue cells that causes vasodilation.
Kirby-Bauer test *See* disk-diffusion method.
Koch's postulates Criteria used to determine the causative agent of infectious diseases.
koji A microbial fermentation on rice; usually *Aspergillus oryzae;* used to produce amylase.
Krebs cycle A pathway that converts two-carbon compounds to CO_2, transferring electrons to NAD^+ and other carriers; also called tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle or critic acid cycle.

lactic acid fermentation A catabolic process, beginning with glycolysis, that produces lactic acid to reoxidize NADH.
lactoferrin One of several human iron-binding proteins that reduce iron available to a pathogen.
lacrimal apparatus Glands and ducts involved in tear formation.
lag phase The time interval in a bacterial growth curve during which there is no growth.
larva The sexually immature stage of a helminth or arthropod.
laryngitis Infection of the larynx.
latent disease A disease characterized by a period of no symptoms when the pathogen is inactive.
latent infection A condition in which a pathogen remains in the host for long periods without producing disease.
LD_{50} The lethal dose for 50% of the inoculated hosts within a given period.
lectin Carbohydrate-binding proteins on a cell, not an antibody.
lectin pathway *See* complement activation.
leukocidins Substances produced by some bacteria that can destroy neutrophils and macrophages.
leukocyte A white blood cell.
leukotriene A substance produced by mast cells and basophils that causes increased permeability of blood vessels and helps phagocytes attach to pathogens.
L form Prokaryotic cells that lack a cell wall; can return to walled state.
lichen A mutualistic relationship between a fungus and an alga or a cyanobacterium.
ligand *See* adhesin.
light-dependent (light) reaction The process by which light energy is used to convert ADP and phosphate to ATP. *See also* photophosphorylation.
light-independent (dark) reactions The process by which electrons and energy from ATP are used to reduce CO_2 to sugar. *See also* Calvin-Benson cycle.
light microscopy A microscope that uses visible light to visualize an object.
lignin Phenolic polymer in plant cell walls, found in wood.
limnetic zone The surface zone of an inland body of water away from the shore.
Limulus amebocyte lysate (LAL) assay A test to detect the presence of bacterial endotoxins.
lipase An enzyme that breaks down triglycerides into their component glycerol and fatty acids.
lipid A non–water-soluble organic molecule, including triglycerides, phospholipids, and sterols.
lipid A A component of the gram-negative outer membrane; endotoxin.
lipid inclusion *See* inclusion.
lipopolysaccharide (LPS) A molecule consisting of a lipid and a polysaccharide, forming the outer membrane of gram-negative cell walls.
L-isomer Arrangement of four different atoms or groups around a carbon atom. *See* D-isomer.
littoral zone The region along the shore of the ocean or a large lake where there is considerable vegetation and where light penetrates to the bottom.
local infection An infection in which pathogens are limited to a small area of the body.
localized anaphylaxis An immediate hypersensitivity reaction that is restricted to a limited area of skin or mucous membrane; for example, hayfever, a skin rash, or asthma. *See also* systemic anaphylaxis.
logarithmic decline phase *See* death phase.
log phase The period of bacterial growth or logarithmic increase in cell numbers; also called exponential growth phase.
lophotrichous Having two or more flagella at one end of a cell.
lower respiratory system Organ system consisting of the trachea, bronchial tubes, and pulmonary alveoli.
luciferase An enzyme that accepts electrons from flavoproteins and emits a photon of light in bioluminescence.
lymph plasma Fluid found in lymph vessels that is picked up from tissues.
lymphangitis Inflammation of lymph vessels.
lymphocyte A leukocyte involved in specific immune responses.
lymphoid system Mammalian system consisting of lymph vessels, lymph nodes, and lymphoid tissue.
lyophilization Freezing a substance and sublimating the ice in a vacuum; also called freeze-drying.
lysis (1) Destruction of a cell by the rupture of the plasma membrane, resulting in a loss of cytoplasm. (2) In disease, a gradual period of decline.
lysogenic conversion The acquisition of new properties by a host cell infected by a lysogenic phage.
lysogenic cycle Stages in viral development that result in the incorporation of viral DNA into host DNA.
lysogeny A state in which phage DNA is incorporated into the host cell without lysis.
lysosome An organelle containing digestive enzymes.
lysozyme An enzyme capable of hydrolyzing bacterial cell walls.
lytic cycle A mechanism of phage multiplication that results in host cell lysis.

macrolide An antibiotic that inhibits protein synthesis; for example, erythromycin.
macromolecule A large organic molecule.
macrophage A phagocytic cell; a mature monocyte. *See* resting macrophage, wandering macrophage.
macropinocytosis Taking in molecules by infolding of the plasma membrane due to actin, in eukaryotes. *See* pinocytosis, receptor-mediated endocytosis.
macule A flat, reddened skin lesion.
magnetosome An iron oxide inclusion, produced by some gram-negative bacteria, that acts like a magnet.
major histocompatibility complex (MHC) The genes that code for histocompatibility antigens; also known as human leukocyte antigen (HLA) complex.
male genital (reproductive) system Organ system that includes the testes and urethra.

malolactic fermentation The conversion of malic acid to lactic acid by lactic acid bacteria.
malt Germinated barley grains containing maltose, glucose, and amylase.
malting The germination of starchy grains resulting in glucose and maltose production.
mannose-binding lectin A protein that binds to mannose.
margination The process by which phagocytes stick to the lining of blood vessels.
mast cell A type of cell found throughout the body that contains histamine and other substances that stimulate vasodilation.
maturation inhibitor An antiviral agent that prevents final assembly of virions.
maximum growth temperature The highest temperature at which a species can grow.
M cell Cells that take up and transfer antigens to lymphocytes, on aggregated lymphoid follicles.
mechanical transmission The process by which arthropods transmit infections by carrying pathogens on their feet and other body parts.
medulla A lichen body consisting of algae (or cyanobacteria) and fungi.
meiosis A eukaryotic cell replication process that results in cells with half the chromosome number of the original cell.
membrane attack complex (MAC) Complement proteins C5–C9, which together make lesions in cell membranes that lead to cell death.
membrane-disrupting toxins Bacterial toxins that disrupt host cell membranes.
membrane filter A screenlike material with pores small enough to retain microorganisms; a 0.45-μm filter retains most bacteria.
memory cell A long-lived B or T cell responsible for the memory, or secondary, response.
memory response A rapid rise in antibody titer following exposure to an antigen after the primary response to that antigen; also called anamestic response or secondary response.
meningitis Inflammation of the meninges, the three membranes covering the brain and spinal cord.
meningoencephalitis Infection of the meninges and brain.
merozoite A trophozoite of *Plasmodium* found in red blood cells or liver cells.
mesophile An organism that grows between about 10°C and 50°C; a moderate-temperature–loving microbe.
mesosome An irregular fold in the plasma membrane of a prokaryotic cell that is an artifact of preparation for microscopy.
messenger RNA (mRNA) The type of RNA molecule that directs the incorporation of amino acids into proteins.
metabolic pathway A sequence of enzymatically catalyzed reactions occurring in a cell.
metabolism The sum of all the chemical reactions that occur in a living cell.
metabolomics The study of small molecules in and around growing cells.
metacercaria The encysted stage of a fluke in its final intermediate host.
metachromatic granule A granule that stores inorganic phosphate and stains red with certain blue dyes; characteristic of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*. Collectively known as volutin.
metagenomics The study of the genomes of uncultured organisms by the collection and sequencing of DNA from environmental samples.
methane The hydrocarbon CH_4, a flammable gas formed by the microbial decomposition of organic matter; natural gas.
methylase An enzyme that attaches methyl groups (—CH_3) to a molecule; methylated cytosine is protected from digestion by restriction enzymes.
methylate Addition of a methyl (—CH_3) group to a compound.
microaerophile An organism that grows best in an environment with less molecular oxygen (O_2) than is normally found in air.
microarray DNA probes attached to a glass surface, used to identify nucleotide sequences in a sample of DNA.
microbial antagonism *See* competitive exclusion.
microbial fuel cell A system used to grow bacteria and transfer electrons from their electron transport systems to a wire (electricity).
microbiome All the microorganisms in an environment.
microbiota The collection of microbes living in or on an organism or an environment.
microfold cell *See* M cell.
microinjection Use of a thin glass pipette to inject directly into a cell.
micrometer (μm) A unit of measurement equal to 10^{-6} m.
microorganism A living organism too small to be seen with the naked eye; includes bacteria, fungi, protozoa, and microscopic algae; also includes viruses.
micropinocytosis *See* pinocytosis.
microRNA (miRNA) Small, single-stranded RNA that prevent translation of a complementary mRNA.
Microsporidia A phylum of fungi that lack mitochondria and are obligate intracellular parasites.
microtubule A hollow tube made of the protein tubulin; the structural unit of eukaryotic flagella and centrioles.
microwave Electromagnetic radiation with wavelength between 10^{21} and 10^{-3} m.
minimal bactericidal concentration (MBC) The lowest concentration of chemotherapeutic agent that will kill test microorganisms.
minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC) The lowest concentration of a chemotherapeutic agent that will prevent growth of the test microorganisms.
minimum growth temperature The lowest temperature at which a species will grow.
miracidium The free-swimming, ciliated larva of a fluke that hatches from the egg.
mismatch repair Removal and replacement of an incorrect nucleotide in DNA.
missense mutation A mutation that results in the substitution of an amino acid in a protein.
mitochondrial crista (plural: **cristae)** Folding of the inner mitochondrial membrane.
mitochondrial matrix Fluid in mitochondria.
mitochondrion (plural: **mitochondria)** An organelle containing Krebs cycle enzymes and the electron transport chain.
mitosis A eukaryotic cell replication process in which the chromosomes are duplicated; usually followed by division of the cytoplasm of the cell.
MMWR *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report;* a CDC publication containing data on notifiable diseases and topics of special interest.
mobile genetic elements Segments of DNA (e.g., plasmids) that can move between chromosomes or between cells.
mole An amount of a chemical equal to the atomic masses of all the atoms in a molecule of the chemical.
molecular biology The science dealing with DNA and protein synthesis of living organisms.
molecular clock An evolution timeline based on nucleotide sequences in organisms.
molecular mass The sum of the atomic masses of all atoms making up a molecule.
molecule A combination of atoms forming a specific chemical compound.
monoclonal antibody (Mab) A specific antibody produced in vitro by a clone of B cells hybridized with cancerous cells.
monocyte A leukocyte that is the precursor of a macrophage.
monoecious Having both male and female reproductive capacities.
monomer A small molecule that collectively combines to form polymers.
monomorphic Having a single shape; most bacteria always present with a genetically determined shape. *See also* pleomorphic.
mononuclear phagocytic system A system of resting macrophages located in the spleen, liver, lymph nodes, and red bone marrow.
monosaccharide A simple sugar consisting of 3–7 carbon atoms.
monotrichous Having a single flagellum.
morbidity (1) The incidence of a specific disease. (2) The condition of being diseased.
morbidity rate The number of people affected by a disease in a given period of time in relation to the total population.
mordant A substance added to a staining solution to make it stain more intensely.
mortality The number of deaths from a specific notifiable disease.
mortality rate The number of deaths resulting from a disease in a given period of time in relation to the total population.

most probable number (MPN) method A statistical determination of the number of coliforms per 100 ml of water or 100 g of food.
motility The ability of an organism to move by itself.
M protein A heat- and acid-resistant protein of streptococcal cell walls and fibrils.
mRNA vaccine Injection of mRNA into animal cells in order to cause the cells to produce an antigen that will stimulate the immune system.
mucosa *See* mucous membranes.
mucous membranes Epithelial cells that line body openings, including the intestinal tract, open to the exterior; also called mucosa.
mucus Watery substance containing polysaccharides and glycoproteins, produced by mucous membranes.
multi-drug-resistant (MDR) *M. tuberculosis* strains resistant to isoniazid and rifampin.
mutagen An agent in the environment that brings about mutations.
mutation Any change in the nitrogenous base sequence of DNA.
mutation rate The probability that a gene will mutate each time a cell divides.
mutualism A type of symbiosis in which both organisms or populations are benefited.
mycelium A mass of long filaments of cells that branch and intertwine, typically found in molds.
mycolic acid Long-chained, branched fatty acids characteristic of members of the genus *Mycobacterium*.
mycology The scientific study of fungi.
mycorrhiza A fungus growing in symbiosis with plant roots.
mycosis A fungal infection.
mycotoxin A toxin produced by a fungus.

NAD^+ A coenzyme that functions in the removal and transfer of hydrogen ion (H^-) and electrons from substrate molecules.
$NADP^+$ A coenzyme similar to NAD^+.
nanometer (nm) A unit of measurement equal to 10^{-9} m, 10^{-3} μm.
nanotechnology Making molecular- or atomic-sized products.
NA (neuraminidase) spikes Antigenic projections from the outer lipid bilayer of *Influenzavirus*.
National Microbiome Initiative (NMI) A project to characterize the microbial communities found in different environments, e.g., soil, water, human body.
natural killer (NK) cell A lymphoid cell that destroys tumor cells and virus-infected cells.
naturally acquired active immunity Antibody production in response to an infectious disease.
naturally acquired passive immunity The natural transfer of humoral antibodies, for example, transplacental transfer.
natural selection Process by which organisms with certain inherited characteristics are more likely to survive and reproduce than organisms with other characteristics.
necrosis Tissue death.
negative (indirect) selection The process of identifying mutations by selecting cells that do not grow using replica plating.
negative staining A procedure that results in colorless bacteria against a stained background.
neutralization An antigen–antibody reaction that inactivates a bacterial exotoxin or virus.
neutron An uncharged particle in the nucleus of an atom.
neutrophil A highly phagocytic granulocyte; also called polymorphonuclear leukocyte (PMN) or polymorph.
nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide *See* NAD^+.
nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate *See* $NADP^+$.
nitrification The oxidation of nitrogen in ammonia to produce nitrate.
nitrogen cycle The series of processes that converts nitrogen (N_2) to organic substances and back to nitrogen in nature.
nitrogen fixation The conversion of nitrogen (N_2) into ammonia.
nitrosamine A carcinogen formed by the combination of nitrite and amino acids.
noncommunicable disease A disease that is not transmitted from one person to another.
noncompetitive inhibitor An inhibitory chemical that does not compete with the substrate for an enzyme's active site. *See also* allosteric inhibition; competitive inhibitor.
noncyclic photophosphorylation The movement of an electron from chlorophyll to NAD^+; plant and cyanobacterial photophosphorylation.
nonenveloped viruses Virus without a lipid envelope.
nonionizing radiation Short-wavelength radiation that does not cause ionization; ultraviolet (UV) radiation is an example.
non-nucleoside inhibitor A drug that binds with and inhibits the action of the HIV reverse transcriptase enzyme.
nonsense codon A codon that does not encode any amino acid.
nonsense mutation A base substitution in DNA that results in a nonsense codon.
normal microbiota The microorganisms that colonize a host without causing disease; also called normal flora.
nosocomial infection *See* healthcare-associated infection.
notifiable infectious disease A disease that physicians must report to the U.S. Public Health Service; also called reportable disease.
nuclear envelope The double membrane that separates the nucleus from the cytoplasm in a eukaryotic cell.
nuclear pore An opening in the nuclear envelope through which materials enter and exit the nucleus.
nucleic acid A macromolecule consisting of nucleotides; DNA and RNA are nucleic acids.
nucleic acid amplification test (NAAT) Test to identify an organism without culturing by making copies (amplifying) nucleic acid sequences that are specific for the organism being detected.
nucleic acid hybridization The process of combining single complementary strands of DNA or RNA.
nucleic acid vaccine A vaccine made up of DNA or mRNA, usually in the form of a plasmid.
nucleoid The region in a bacterial cell containing the chromosome.
nucleolus (plural: **nucleoli**) An area in a eukaryotic nucleus where rRNA is synthesized.
nucleoside A compound consisting of a purine or pyrimidine base and a pentose sugar.
nucleotide A compound consisting of a purine or pyrimidine base, a five-carbon sugar, and a phosphate.
nucleotide (or nucleoside) analog A chemical that is structurally similar to the normal nucleotide or nucleoside in nucleic acids but with altered base-pairing properties.
nucleotide excision repair The repair of DNA involving removal of defective nucleotides and replacement with functional ones.
nucleus (1) The part of an atom consisting of the protons and neutrons. (2) The part of a eukaryotic cell that contains the genetic material.
numerical identification Bacterial identification schemes in which test values are assigned a number.
nutrient agar Nutrient broth containing agar.
nutrient broth A complex medium made of beef extract and peptone.

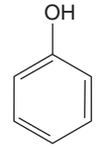
O antigen Polysaccharide antigens in the outer membrane of gram-negative bacteria, identified by serological testing.
O polysaccharide Sugars extending out from the gram-negative outer membrane.
objective lenses In a compound light microscope, the lenses closest to the specimen.
obligate aerobe An organism that requires molecular oxygen (O_2) to live.
obligate anaerobe An organism that does not use molecular oxygen (O_2) and is killed in the presence of O_2.
obligate halophile An organism that requires high osmotic pressures such as high concentrations of NaCl.
obligatory intracellular parasite Microbe, that can only reproduce in a host cell, usually refers to a virus, *Rickettsia*, *Ehrlichia*, or Microsporidia.
ocular lens In a compound light microscope, the lens closest to the viewer; also called the eyepiece.
Okazaki fragments Short strands of DNA made by copying the lagging strand during DNA synthesis.

oligodynamic action The ability of small amounts of a heavy metal compound to exert antimicrobial activity.
oligosaccharide A carbohydrate consisting of 2 to approximately 20 monosaccharides.
oncogene A mutated proto-oncogene that can bring about malignant transformation.
oncogenic virus A virus that is capable of producing tumors; also called oncovirus.
oncolytic virus Virus that infects and kills tumor cells or causes an immune response against tumor cells.
one-step growth curve A method of studying a virus life cycle by infecting all the cells in a culture and following them through one infectious cycle.
oocyst An encysted apicomplexan zygote in which cell division occurs to form the next infectious stage.
Opa A bacterial outer membrane protein; cells with Opa form opaque colonies.
operator The region of DNA adjacent to structural genes that controls their transcription.
operon The operator and promoter sites and structural genes they control.
opportunistic pathogen A microorganism that does not ordinarily cause a disease but can become pathogenic under certain circumstances.
opsonization The enhancement of phagocytosis by coating microorganisms with certain serum proteins (opsonins); also called immune adherence.
optimum growth temperature The temperature at which a species grows best.
order A taxonomic classification between class and family.
organelle A membrane-enclosed structure within eukaryotic cells.
organic compound A molecule that contains carbon and hydrogen.
organic growth factor An essential organic compound that an organism is unable to synthesize.
osmosis The net movement of solvent molecules across a selectively permeable membrane from an area of lower solute concentration to an area of higher solute concentration.
osmotic lysis Rupture of the plasma membrane resulting from movement of water into the cell.
osmotic pressure The force with which a solvent moves from a solution of lower solute concentration to a solution of higher solute concentration.
outer membrane vesicle (OMV) Enzyme-containing structure made from the gram-negative outer membrane.
oxidase test Test for an enzyme that oxidizes cytochrome *c*.
oxidation The removal of electrons from a molecule.
oxidation pond A method of secondary sewage treatment by microbial activity in a shallow standing pond of water.
oxidation-reduction A coupled reaction in which one substance is oxidized and one is reduced; also called redox reaction.
oxidative phosphorylation The synthesis of ATP coupled with electron transport.
oxygenic Producing oxygen, as in plant and cyanobacterial photosynthesis.
ozone O_3.

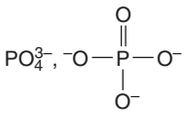
PAMP (pathogen-associated molecular patterns) Molecules present on pathogens and not self.
pandemic disease An epidemic that occurs worldwide.
papule Small, solid elevation of the skin.
paralytic shellfish poisoning Intoxication caused by eating mollusks containing saxitoxins.
parasite An organism that derives nutrients from a living host.
parasitism A symbiotic relationship in which one organism (the parasite) exploits another (the host) without providing any benefit in return.
parasitology The scientific study of parasitic protozoa and worms.
parenteral route A portal of entry for pathogens by deposition directly into tissues beneath the skin and mucous membranes.
passive carriers Individuals who may become contaminated because of contact with patients or body fluids.
pasteurization The process of mild heating to kill particular spoilage microorganisms or pathogens.
pathogen A disease-causing organism.
pathogenesis The manner in which a disease develops.
pathogenicity The ability of a microorganism to cause disease by overcoming the defenses of a host.
pathology The scientific study of disease.
pellicle (1) The flexible covering of some protozoa. (2) Scum on the surface of a liquid medium.
penicillins A group of antibiotics produced either by *Penicillium* (natural penicillins) or by adding side chains to the β-lactam ring (semisynthetic penicillins).
pentose phosphate pathway A metabolic pathway that can occur simultaneously with glycolysis to produce pentoses and NADH without ATP production; also called hexose monophosphate shunt.
peptide bond A bond joining the amino group of one amino acid to the carboxyl group of a second amino acid with the loss of a water molecule.
peptidoglycan The structural molecule of bacterial cell walls consisting of the molecules N-acetylglucosamine, N-acetylmuramic acid, tetrapeptide side chain, and peptide side chain.
perforin Protein that makes a pore in a target cell membrane, released by cytotoxic T lymphocytes.
pericarditis Inflammation of the pericardium, the sac around the heart.
period of convalescence The recovery period, when the body returns to its predisease state.
period of decline Time when signs and symptoms disappear.
period of illness Time when disease is most severe.
periodontal disease *See* periodontitis.
periodontitis Infection of the gums. *See* gingivitis.
peripheral nervous system (PNS) The nerves that connect the outlying parts of the body with the central nervous system.
periplasm The region of a gram-negative cell wall between the outer membrane and the cytoplasmic membrane.
peristalsis Wave-like constriction and relaxation of muscles of the intestine.
peritrichous Having flagella distributed over the entire cell.
peroxidase An enzyme that destroys hydrogen peroxide:

$$H_2O_2 + 2\ H^+\ 2\ H_2O.$$

peroxide anion An oxygen anion consisting of two atoms of oxygen (O_2^{-2}).
peroxisome Organelle that oxidizes amino acids, fatty acids, and alcohol.
peroxygen A class of oxidizing-type sterilizing disinfectants.
persistent viral infection A disease process that occurs gradually over a long period.
persister cells Bacterial cells in a population that avoid being killed by antibiotics because they are dormant, not because they are mutants.
perspiration Fluid secreted by sweat glands.
pH The symbol for hydrogen ion (H^1) concentration; a measure of the relative acidity or alkalinity of a solution.
phage *See* bacteriophage.
phage conversion Genetic change in the host cell resulting from infection by a bacteriophage.
phage lysozyme *See* lysozyme.
phage therapy Use of bacteriophage to treat bacterial infections.
phage typing A method of identifying bacteria using specific strains of bacteriophages.
phagocyte A cell capable of engulfing and digesting particles that are harmful to the body.
phagocytosis The ingestion of particles by eukaryotic cells.
phagolysosome A digestive vacuole.
phagosome A food vacuole of a phagocyte; also called a phagocytic vesicle.
phalloidin A peptide toxin produced by *Amanita phalloides*, affects plasma membrane function.
pharyngitis Infection of the pharynx.
phase-contrast microscope A compound light microscope that allows examination of structures inside cells through the use of a special condenser.
phenol Also called carbolic acid.



phenolic A derivative of phenol used as a disinfectant.
phenotype The external manifestations of an organism's genotype, or genetic makeup.
phosphate group A portion of a phosphoric acid molecule attached to some other molecule, P,



phospholipid A complex lipid composed of glycerol, two fatty acids, and a phosphate group.
phosphorus cycle The various solubility stages of phosphorus in the environment.
phosphorylation The addition of a phosphate group to an organic molecule.
photoautotroph An organism that uses light as its energy source and carbon dioxide (CO_2) as its carbon source.
photoheterotroph An organism that uses light as its energy source and an organic carbon source.
photolyase An enzyme that splits thymine dimers in the presence of visible light.
photophosphorylation The production of ATP in a series of redox reactions; electrons from chlorophyll initiate the reactions.
photosynthesis The conversion of light energy from the sun into chemical energy; the light-fueled synthesis of carbohydrate from carbon dioxide (CO_2).
photosystems Light capturing systems in thylakoid membranes, or plasma membrane of some prokaryotes,.
phototaxis Movement in response to the presence of light.
phototroph An organism that uses light at its primary energy source.
phylogeny The evolutionary history of a group of organisms; phylogenetic relationships are evolutionary relationships.
phylum A taxonomic classification between kingdom and class.
phytoplankton Free-floating photoautotrophs.
pilus (plural: **pili**) An appendage on a bacterial cell used for conjugation and gliding motility.
pinocytosis Taking in molecules by infolding of the plasma membrane, in eukaryotes. *See* receptor-mediated endocytosis**,** micropinocytosis.
pinworm A parasitic nematode in the genus *Enterobius*.
plankton Free-floating aquatic organisms.
Plantae The kingdom composed of multicellular eukaryotes with cellulose cell walls.
plaque A clearing in a bacterial lawn resulting from lysis by phages. *See also* dental plaque.
plaque-forming units (PFU) Visible clearing in a bacterial culture caused by lysis of bacterial cells by bacteriophages.
plasma Excited gases used for sterilizing. *Also see* blood plasma, lymph plasma.
plasma viral load (PVL) Tests detect viral nucleic acid, are used to quantify HIV in blood.
plasmocyte A cell into which an activated B cell differentiates; **plasmocytes** manufacture specific antibodies. Also called plasma cell.
plasma (cytoplasmic) membrane The selectively permeable membrane enclosing the cytoplasm of a cell; the outer layer in animal cells, internal to the cell wall in other organisms.
plasmid A small circular DNA molecule that replicates independently of the chromosome.
plasmodial slime molds Slime molds that live vegetatively as a multinucleated cells, produce spores.
plasmodium (1) A multinucleated mass of protoplasm, as in plasmodial slime molds. (2) When written as a genus, refers to the causative agent of malaria.
plasmogamy Fusion of the cytoplasm of two cells; occurs in the sexual stage of a fungal life cycle.
plasmolysis Loss of water from a cell in a hypertonic environment.
plate count A method of determining the number of bacteria in a sample by counting the number of colony-forming units on a solid culture medium.
platelet A cytoplasmic fragment of specialized bone marrow cells; circulate in the blood and are responsible for blood clotting.
pleomorphic Having many shapes, characteristic of certain bacteria.
pluripotent A cell that can differentiate into many different types of tissue cells.
pneumonia Inflammation of the lungs.
point mutation *See* base substitution.
polar flagella Having flagella at one or both ends of a cell.
polar molecule A molecule with an unequal distribution of charges.
polymer A molecule consisting of a sequence of similar molecules, or monomers.
polymerase chain reaction (PCR) A technique using DNA polymerase to make multiple copies of a DNA template in vitro. *See also* cDNA.
polymorphonuclear leukocyte (PMN) *See* neutrophil.
polypeptide (1) A chain of amino acids. (2) A group of antibiotics.
polysaccharide A carbohydrate consisting of 8 or more monosaccharides joined through dehydration synthesis.
polysaccharide granules Intracellular energy storage.
polysaccharide vaccine Vaccine consisting of a microbe's polysaccharide capsule.
porins A type of protein in the outer membrane of gram-negative cell walls that permits the passage of small molecules.
portal of entry The avenue by which a pathogen gains access to the body.
portal of exit The route by which a pathogen leaves the body.
positive (direct) selection A procedure for picking out mutant cells by growing them.
postexposure prophylaxis (PEP) Medication or antibodies given after potential exposure to a pathogen or toxin.
pour plate method A method of inoculating a solid nutrient medium by mixing bacteria in the melted medium and pouring the medium into a Petri dish to solidify.
prebiotics Chemicals that promote growth of beneficial bacteria in the body.
precipitation reaction A reaction between soluble antigens and multivalent antibodies to form visible aggregates.
precipitin ring test A precipitation test performed in a capillary tube.
predisposing factor Anything that makes the body more susceptible to a disease or alters the course of a disease.
preexposure prophylaxis (PrEP) Antiviral agents to prevent infection, usually refers to HIV.
prevalence The fraction of a population having a specific disease at a given time.
primary cell line Human tissue cells that grow for only a few generations in vitro.
primary infection An acute infection that causes the initial illness.
primary metabolite A product of an industrial cell population produced during the time of rapid logarithmic growth. *See also* secondary metabolite.
primary producer An autotrophic organism, either chemotroph or phototroph, that converts carbon dioxide into organic compounds.
primary response Antibody production in response to the first contact with an antigen. *See also* memory response.
primary sewage treatment The removal of solids from sewage by allowing them to settle out and be held temporarily in tanks or ponds.
primary stain The first stain used in multi-stain technique such as the Gram stain.
prion An infectious agent consisting of a self-replicating protein, with no detectable nucleic acids.
PRISH Characteristics of inflammation: by *p*ain, *r*edness, *i*mmobility, *s*welling, and *h*eat.
privileged site (tissue) An area of the body (or a tissue) that does not elicit an immune response.
probiotics Microbes inoculated into a host to occupy a niche and prevent growth of pathogens.
prodromal period The time following the incubation period when the first symptoms of illness appear.
profundal zone The deeper water under the limnetic zone in an inland body of water.

proglottid A body segment of a tapeworm containing both male and female organs.
prokaryote A cell whose genetic material is not enclosed in a nuclear envelope.
prokaryotic species A population of cells that share certain rRNA sequences; in conventional biochemical testing, it is a population of cells with similar characteristics.
promoter The starting site on a DNA strand for transcription of RNA by RNA polymerase.
prophage Phage DNA inserted into the host cell's DNA.
prophage induction Excision of prophage DNA from a host chromosome.
prophylactic Anything used to prevent disease.
prostaglandin A hormonelike substance that is released by damaged cells, intensifies inflammation.
prostheca A stalk or bud protruding from a prokaryotic cell.
protease An enzyme that digests protein (proteolytic enzymes).
protein A large molecule containing carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen (and sulfur); some proteins have a helical structure and others are pleated sheets.
proteomics The science of determining all of the proteins expressed in a cell.
protist Term used for unicellular and simple multicellular eukaryotes; usually protozoa and algae.
proton A positively charged particle in the nucleus of an atom.
proto-oncogene A normal eukaryotic gene involved in growth and cell division. *See* oncogene.
protoplast A gram-positive bacterium or plant cell treated to remove the cell wall.
protoplast fusion A method of joining two cells by first removing their cell walls; used in genetic engineering.
protozoan (plural: **protozoa)** Unicellular eukaryotic organisms; usually chemoheterotrophic.
provirus Viral DNA that is integrated into the host cell's DNA.
pseudohypha A short chain of fungal cells that results from the lack of separation of daughter cells after budding.
Pseudomonadota A phylum containing gram-negative, chemoheterotrophic bacteria that possess a signature rRNA sequence.
pseudopod An extension of a eukaryotic cell that aids in locomotion and feeding.
P (peptide) site During protein synthesis, the second binding site on a ribosome for tRNA, which is linked to the growing polypeptide chain.
psychrophile An organism that grows best at about 15°C and does not grow above 20°C; a cold-loving microbe.
psychrotroph An organism that is capable of growth between about 0°C and 30°C.
purines The class of nucleic acid bases that includes adenine and guanine.
purple nonsulfur bacteria Alphaproteobacteria; strictly anaerobic and phototrophic; grow on yeast extract in dark; use reduced organic compounds as electron donors for CO_2 fixation.
purple sulfur bacteria Gammaproteobacteria; strictly anaerobic and phototrophic; use reduced sulfur compounds as electron donors for CO_2 fixation.
pus An accumulation of dead phagocytes, dead bacterial cells, and fluid.
pustule A small pus-filled elevation of skin.
pyelonephritis Infection of the kidney.
pyocyanin A blue-green pigment produced by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*.
pyrimidines The class of nucleic acid bases that includes uracil, thymine, and cytosine.

quaternary ammonium compound (quat) A cationic detergent with four organic groups attached to a central nitrogen atom; used as a disinfectant.
quorum sensing The ability of bacteria to communicate and coordinate behavior via signaling molecules.

R Used to represent nonfunctional groups of a molecule. *See also* resistance factor.
R_0 Reproductive number; the average number of people who will contract a disease from one infected individual.

radura Symbol indicating that a food has been irradiated, .
rapid diagnostic test (RDT) A test that allows diagnosis of a disease within a few minutes.
rapid identification methods Bacterial identification tools that perform several biochemical tests simultaneously.
rapid immunohistochemical test (RIT) Uses monoclonal antibodies to detect rabies virus nucleoproteins in brain tissue.
rapid plasma reagin (RPR) test A serological test for syphilis.
rapidly growing mycobacteria *Mycobacterium* spp. with a generation time of 4–8 hours, producing colonies in 3–4 days.
r-determinant A group of genes for antibiotic resistance carried on R factors.
reaction rate Speed of a chemical reaction.
receptor An attachment for a pathogen on a host cell.
receptor-mediated endocytosis A type of pinocytosis in which molecules bound to proteins on the plasma membrane are taken in by infolding of the membrane.
recipient cell A cell that receives DNA from a donor cell during genetic recombination.
recombinant DNA (rDNA) A DNA molecule produced by combining DNA from two different sources.
recombinant DNA (rDNA) technology Manufacturing and manipulating genetic material in vitro; also called genetic engineering.
recombinant vaccine A vaccine made by recombinant DNA techniques.
recombinant vector vaccine DNA vaccine delivered by a recombinant virus.
red blood cells (RBCs) *See* erythrocyte.
redia A trematode larval stage that reproduces asexually to produce cercariae.
redox reaction *See* oxidation-reduction.
red tide A bloom of planktonic dinoflagellates.
reducing medium A culture medium containing ingredients that will remove dissolved oxygen from the medium to allow the growth of anaerobes.
reduction The addition of electrons to a molecule.
refraction The light-bending ability of a medium.
refractive index A number that gives the light-bending ability of a substance.
rennin An enzyme that forms curds as part of any dairy fermentation product; originally from calves' stomachs, now produced by molds and bacteria.
replica plating A method of inoculating a number of solid minimal culture media from an original plate to produce the same pattern of colonies on each plate.
repressible operon An operon in which transcription is prevented by a repressor.
reservoir of infection A continual source of infection.
resistance The ability to ward off diseases through innate and adaptive immunity.
resistance (R) factor A bacterial plasmid carrying genes that determine resistance to antibiotics.
resistance transfer factor (RTF) A group of genes for replication and conjugation on the R factor.
resolution The ability to distinguish fine detail with a magnifying instrument; also called resolving power.
respiration A series of redox reactions in a membrane that generates ATP; the final electron acceptor is usually an inorganic molecule.
resting macrophage A macrophage that is located in a certain organ or tissue (e.g., liver, lungs, spleen, or lymph nodes); also called a histiocyte.
restriction enzyme An enzyme that cuts double-stranded DNA at specific sites between nucleotides.
reticulate body The intracellular growing stage of chlamydiae.
reticuloendothelial system *See* mononuclear phagocytic system.
retort A device for commercially sterilizing canned food by using steam under pressure; operates on the same principle as an autoclave but is much larger.
reverse genetics Genetic analysis that begins with a piece of DNA and proceeds to find out what it does.
reverse transcriptase An RNA-dependent DNA polymerase; an enzyme that synthesizes a complementary DNA from an RNA template.
reversible reaction A chemical reaction in which the end-products can readily revert to the original molecules.

Rh factor An antigen on red blood cells of rhesus monkeys and most humans; possession makes the cells Rh^+.
rhizine A rootlike hypha that anchors a fungus to a surface.
rhizobia Members of the Pseudomonadota that fox nitrogen in root nodules in legumes.
ribonucleic acid (RNA) The class of nucleic acids that comprises messenger RNA, ribosomal RNA, and transfer RNA.
ribose A five-carbon sugar that is part of ribonucleotide molecules and RNA.
ribosomal RNA (rRNA) The type of RNA molecule that forms ribosomes.
ribosomal RNA (rRNA) sequencing Determination of the order of nucleotide bases in rRNA.
ribosome The site of protein synthesis in a cell, composed of RNA and protein.
riboswitch Part of an mRNA molecule that binds to a substrate; can change the mRNA structure and regulates synthesis of the mRNA.
ribotyping Classification or identification of bacteria based on rRNA genes.
ribozyme An enzyme consisting of RNA that specifically acts on strands of RNA to remove introns and splice together the remaining exons.
ring stage A young *Plasmodium* trophozoite that looks like a ring in a red blood cell.
RNAi RNA interference; stops gene expression at transcription by using a short interfering RNA to make double-stranded RNA.
RNA-dependent RNA polymerase Viral enzyme that copies RNA to make complementary RNA.
RNA-induced silencing complex (RISC) A complex consisting of a protein and siRNA or miRNA that binds complementary mRNA, preventing transcription of the mRNA.
RNA interference *See* RNAi.
RNA primer A short strand of RNA used to start synthesis of the lagging strand of DNA, and to start the polymerase chain reaction.
root nodule A tumorlike growth on the roots of certain plants containing symbiotic nitrogen-fixing bacteria.
rotating biological contactor A method of secondary sewage treatment in which large disks are rotated while partially submerged in a sewage tank exposing sewage to microorganisms and aerobic conditions.
rough ER Endoplasmic reticulum with ribosomes on its surface.
roundworm An animal belonging to the phylum Nematoda.

S (Svedberg unit) Notes the relative rate of sedimentation during ultra-high speed centrifugation.
sake Alcoholic beverage from fermentation of rice.
saliva Fluid, mostly water, produced by the salivary glands.
salt A substance that dissolves in water to cations and anions, neither of which is H^+ or OH^-.
sanitization The removal of microbes from eating utensils and food preparation areas.
saprophyte An organism that obtains its nutrients from dead organic matter.
sarcina (plural: **sarcinae)** (1) A group of eight bacteria that remain in a packet after dividing. (2) When written as a genus, refers to gram-positive, anaerobic cocci.
sarcoma Cancer of soft-tissue (e.g., muscles).
saturation (1) The condition in which the active site on an enzyme is occupied by the substrate or product at all times. (2) In a fatty acid, having no double bonds.
saxitoxin A neurotoxin produced by some dinoflagellates.
scanned-probe microscopy Microscopic technique used to obtain images of molecular shapes, to characterize chemical properties, and to determine temperature variations within a specimen.
scanning acoustic microscope (SAM) A microscope that uses high-frequency ultrasound waves to penetrate surfaces.
scanning electron microscope (SEM) An electron microscope that provides three-dimensional views of the specimen magnified 1000–10,000×.
scanning tunneling microscopy (STM) *See* scanned-probe microscopy.
schizogony The process of multiple fission, in which one organism divides to produce many daughter cells.
scientific nomenclature *See* binomial nomenclature.
sclerotia The compact mass of hardened mycelia of the fungus *Claviceps purpurea* that fills infected rye flowers; produces the toxin ergot.
scolex The head of a tapeworm, containing suckers and possibly hooks.
sebum Oily substance secreted by sebaceous (oil) glands.
secondary infection An infection caused by an opportunistic microbe after a primary infection has weakened the host's defenses.
secondary metabolite A product of an industrial cell population produced after the microorganism has largely completed its period of rapid growth and is in a stationary phase of the growth cycle. *See also* primary metabolite.
secondary response *See* memory response.
secondary sewage treatment Biological degradation of the organic matter in wastewater following primary treatment.
second-line drug A drug used to treat drug-resistant *M. tuberculosis*.
secretory vesicle A membrane-enclosed sac produced by the endoplasmic reticulum (ER); transports synthesized material into cytoplasm.
selective medium A culture medium designed to suppress the growth of unwanted microorganisms and encourage the growth of desired ones.
selective permeability The property of a plasma membrane to allow certain molecules and ions to move through the membrane while restricting others.
selective toxicity The property of some antimicrobial agents to be toxic for a microorganism and nontoxic for the host.
self-tolerance The ability of the immune system to recognize antigens produced by the body's cells.
semiconservative replication The process of DNA replication in which each double-stranded DNA molecule contains one original strand and one new strand.
sense codon A codon that codes for an amino acid.
sense strand (+strand) Viral RNA that can act as mRNA.
sensitivity Percentage of positive samples correctly detected by a diagnostic test.
sepsis The presence of a toxin or pathogenic organism in blood and tissue.
septate hypha A hypha consisting of uninucleate cell-like units.
septicemia The proliferation of pathogens in the blood, accompanied by fever; sometimes causes organ damage.
septic shock A sudden drop in blood pressure induced by bacterial toxins.
septic tank An underground tank for primary sewage treatment, used in rural areas.
septum A cross-wall in a fungal hypha.
serial dilution The process of diluting a sample several times.
seroconversion A change in a person's response to an antigen in a serological test.
serological testing Techniques for identifying a microorganism based on its reaction with antibodies.
serology The branch of immunology that studies blood serum and antigen–antibody reactions in vitro.
serotype *See* serovar.
serovar A variation within a species; also called serotype.
serum The liquid remaining after blood plasma is clotted; contains antibodies (immunoglobulins).
severity Of a disease refers to its presence and extensiveness in the body.
sexual dimorphism The distinctly different appearance of adult male and female organisms.
sexual spore A spore formed by sexual reproduction.
sexually transmitted infection (STI) Infections transmitted by sexual contact. Formerly called sexually transmitted diseases (STD).
Shiga toxin An exotoxin produced by *Shigella dysenteriae* and enterohemorrhagic *E. coli*.
shock Any life-threatening loss of blood pressure. *See also* septic shock.
short tandem repeats (STRs) Repeating sequences of two to five nucleotides.
shotgun sequencing A technique for determining the nucleotide sequence in an organism's genome.
shuttle vector A plasmid that can exist in several different species; used in genetic engineering.
siderophore Bacterial iron-binding proteins.
sign A change due to a disease that a person can observe and measure.
simple diffusion *See* diffusion.

simple stain A method of staining microorganisms with a single basic dye.
single bacilli Refers to a rod-shaped cell that usually occurs as one cell. *See also* bacillus.
single-cell protein Proteins derived from microorganisms and produced for consumption by humans and other animals.
singlet oxygen Highly reactive molecular oxygen (O_2^-).
sinusitis Infection of the sinuses.
siRNA Small interfering RNA; An intermediate in the RNAi process in which the long double-stranded RNA has been cut up into short (~21 nucleotides) double-stranded RNA.
site-directed mutagenesis Techniques used to modify a gene in a specific location to produce the desired polypeptide.
slide agglutination test A method of identifying an antigen by combining it with a specific antibody on a slide.
slime layer A glycocalyx that is unorganized and loosely attached to the cell wall.
slime mold Protozoa that resemble amebae but have complex life cycles. *See* cellular slime mold, plasmodial slime mold.
slowly growing mycobacteria *Mycobacterium* spp. with a generation time of 20+ hours, taking weeks to produce colonies.
sludge Solid matter obtained from sewage.
smear A thin film of material containing microorganisms, spread over the surface of a slide.
smooth ER Endoplasmic reticulum without ribosomes.
snRNP Small nuclear ribonucleoprotein (pronounced "snurp"). Short RNA transcript plus protein that combines with pre-mRNA to remove introns and join exons together.
solute A substance dissolved in another substance.
solvent A dissolving medium.
Southern blotting A technique that uses DNA probes to detect the presence of specific DNA in restriction fragments separated by electrophoresis.
specialized transduction The process of transferring a piece of cell DNA adjacent to a prophage to another cell.
species The most specific level in the taxonomic hierarchy. *See also* bacterial species; eukaryotic species; viral species.
special stain Techniques to stain specific parts of a cell, e.g., endospore, flagella.
specific epithet The second or species name in a scientific binomial. *See also* species.
specificity Percentage of false positive results given by a diagnostic test.
spectrum of microbial activity The range of distinctly different types of microorganisms affected by an antimicrobial drug; a wide range is referred to as a broad spectrum of activity.
spheroplast A gram-negative bacterium treated to damage the cell wall, resulting in a spherical cell.
spice Plant part, such as seed or bark, used for flavoring or preserving food.
spicule One of two external structures on the male roundworm used to guide sperm.
spike A carbohydrate-protein complex that projects from the surface of certain viruses.
spiral *See* spirillum and spirochete.
spirillum (plural: **spirilla)** (1) A helical or corkscrew-shaped bacterium. (2) When written as a genus, refers to aerobic, helical bacteria with clumps of polar flagella.
spirochete A corkscrew-shaped bacterium with axial filaments.
spontaneous generation The idea that life could arise spontaneously from nonliving matter.
spontaneous mutation A mutation that occurs without a mutagen.
sporadic disease A disease that occurs occasionally in a population.
sporangiophore An aerial hypha supporting a sporangium.
sporangiospore An asexual fungal spore formed within a sporangium.
sporangium A sac containing one or more spores.
spore A reproductive structure formed by fungi and actinomycetes. *See also* endospore.
sporogenesis *See* sporulation.
sporozoite A trophozoite of *Plasmodium* found in mosquitoes, infective for humans.
sporulation The process of spore and endospore formation; also called sporogenesis.
spread plate method A plate count method in which inoculum is spread over the surface of a solid culture medium.
staining Colorizing a sample with a dye to view through a microscope or to visualize specific structures.
standard precautions Minimum precautions, such as handwashing, to prevent transmission of infection.
staphylococci (singular: **staphylococcus)** Cocci in a grapelike cluster or broad sheet.
stationary phase The period in a bacterial growth curve when the number of cells dividing equals the number dying.
stem cell An undifferentiated cell that gives rise to a variety of specialized cells.
stereoisomers Two molecules consisting of the same atoms, arranged in the same manner but differing in their relative positions; mirror images; also called D-isomer and L-isomer.
sterilant A sterilizing agent.
sterile Free of microorganisms.
sterilization The removal of all microorganisms, including endospores.
steroid A specific group of lipids, including cholesterol and hormones.
sticky ends DNA fragments resulting from a restriction endonuclease cutting both strands of the double helix at the different places.
stipe A stemlike supporting structure of multicellular algae and basidiomycetes.
storage vesicle Organelles that form from the Golgi complex; contain proteins made in the rough ER and processed in the Golgi complex.
strain Genetically different cells within a clone. *See* serovar.
streak plate method A method of isolating a culture by spreading microorganisms over the surface of a solid culture medium.
streptobacilli (singular: **streptobacillus)** Rods that remain attached in chains after cell division.
streptococci (singular: **streptococcus)** (1) Cocci that remain attached in chains after cell division. (2) When written as a genus, refers to gram-positive, catalase-negative bacteria.
streptolysin A hemolytic enzyme, produced by streptococci.
sty Infected eyelash follicle.
subacute disease A disease with symptoms that are intermediate between acute and chronic.
subclinical infection An infection that does not cause a noticeable illness; also called inapparent infection.
subcutaneous allergen-specific immunotherapy *See* desensitization.
subcutaneous mycosis A fungal infection of tissue beneath the skin.
substrate Any compound with which an enzyme reacts.
substrate-level phosphorylation The synthesis of ATP by direct transfer of a high-energy phosphate group from an intermediate metabolic compound to ADP.
subunit vaccine A vaccine consisting of an antigenetic fragment.
sulfhydryl group —SH.
sulfur cycle The various oxidation and reduction stages of sulfur in the environment, mostly due to the action of microorganisms.
sulfur granule *See* inclusion.
superantigen An antigen that activates many different T cells, thereby eliciting a large immune response.
superbug Bacterium resistant to a large number of antibiotics.
superficial mycosis A fungal infection localized in surface epidermal cells and along hair shafts.
superinfection The growth of a pathogen that has developed resistance to an antimicrobial drug being used; the growth of an opportunistic pathogen.
superoxide anion *See* superoxide radical.
superoxide dismutase (SOD) An enzyme that destroys superoxide:

$$O_2^- + O_2^- + 2H^+ \rightarrow H_2O_2 + O_2$$

superoxide radical A toxic anion (O_2^-) with an unpaired electron.
super-resolution light microscopy Uses laser light to achieve higher resolution than regular light microscopy.
surface-active agent Any compound that decreases the tension between molecules lying on the surface of a liquid; also called surfactant.

surfactant *See* surface-active agent.
susceptibility The lack of resistance to a disease.
symbiosis The living together of two different organisms or populations.
symptom A change in body function that is felt by a patient as a result of a disease.
syncytium A multinucleated giant cell resulting from certain viral infections.
syndrome A specific group of signs or symptoms that accompany a disease.
synergism The principle whereby the effectiveness of two drugs used simultaneously is greater than that of either drug used alone.
synthesis reaction A chemical reaction in which two or more atoms combine to form a new, larger molecule.
synthetic drug A chemotherapeutic agent that is prepared from chemicals in a laboratory.
systematics The science organizing groups of organisms into a hierarchy.
systemic anaphylaxis A hypersensitivity reaction causing vasodilation and resulting in shock; also called anaphylactic shock.
systemic (generalized) infection An infection throughout the body.
systemic mycosis A fungal infection in deep tissues.

tachyzoite A rapidly growing trophozoite form of a protozoan.
T antigen An antigen in the nucleus of a tumor cell.
tapeworm A flatworm belonging to the class Cestoda.
taxa Subdivisions used to classify organisms, e.g., domain, kingdom, phylum.
taxis Movement in response to an environmental stimulus.
taxonomy The science of the classification of organisms.
T lymphocyte (T cell) A type of lymphocyte, which develops from a stem cell processed in the thymus gland, that is responsible for cell-mediated immunity. *See also* CTL (cytotoxic T lymphocyte), T helper cells, T regulatory cells.
TCRs (T cell receptors) Molecules on T cells that recognize antigens.
T helper (T_H) cell A specialized T cell that often interacts with an antigen before B cells interact with the antigen.
T regulatory (T_{reg}) cells Lymphocytes that appear to suppress other T cells.
T-dependent antigen An antigen that will stimulate the formation of antibodies only with the assistance of T helper cells. *See also* T-independent antigen.
teichoic acid A polysaccharide found in gram-positive cell walls.
telomere Noncoding regions of DNA at the ends of eukaryotic chromosomes.
temperate phage A phage capable of lysogeny.
temperature abuse Improper food storage at a temperature that allows bacteria to grow.
terminator The site on a DNA strand at which transcription ends.
tertiary sewage treatment A method of waste treatment that follows conventional secondary sewage treatment; nonbiodegradable pollutants and mineral nutrients are removed, usually by chemical or physical means.
tetherins An antiviral agent that prevents release of viruses from an infected cell.
tetrad A group of four cocci.
thallus The entire vegetative structure or body of a fungus, lichen, or alga.
thermal death point (TDP) The temperature required to kill all the bacteria in a liquid culture in 10 minutes.
thermal death time (TDT) The length of time required to kill all bacteria in a liquid culture at a given temperature.
thermoduric Heat resistant.
thermophile An organism whose optimum growth temperature is between 50°C and 60°C; a heat-loving microbe.
thermophilic anaerobic spoilage Spoilage of canned foods due to the growth of thermophilic bacteria.
thylakoid A chlorophyll-containing membrane in a chloroplast. A bacterial thylakoid is also known as a chromatophore.
thymic selection Elimination of T cells that don't recognize self antigens (major histocompatibility complex).
tincture A solution in aqueous alcohol.
T-independent antigen An antigen that will stimulate the formation of antibodies without the assistance of T helper cells. *See also* T-dependent antigen.
Ti plasmid A tumor-inducing plasmid that can be incorporated into a host plant chromosome; found in *Agrobacterium*.
tissue engineering Growing organs from a person's cells.
titer An estimate of the amount of antibodies or viruses in a solution; determined by serial dilution and expressed as the reciprocal of the dilution.
TLR (Toll-like receptor) Transmembrane protein of immune cells that recognizes pathogens and activates an immune response directed against those pathogens.
tonsillitis Infection of the tonsils.
total magnification The magnification of a microscopic specimen, determined by multiplying the ocular lens magnification by the objective lens magnification.
toxemia The presence of toxins in the blood.
toxigenicity The capacity of a microorganism to produce a toxin.
toxin Any poisonous substance produced by a microorganism.
toxoid An inactivated toxin.
T plasmid An *Agrobacterium* plasmid carrying genes for tumor induction in plants.
trace element A chemical element required in small amounts for growth.
trans Hydrogen atoms on opposite side across a double bond in a fatty acid. *See* cis.
transamination The transfer of an amino group from an amino acid to another organic acid.
transcription The process of synthesizing RNA from a DNA template.
transduction The transfer of DNA from one cell to another by a bacteriophage. *See also* generalized transduction; specialized transduction.
transferrin One of several human iron-binding proteins that reduce iron available to a pathogen.
transfer RNA (tRNA) The type of RNA molecule that brings amino acids to the ribosomal site where they are incorporated into proteins.
transfer vesicle Membrane-bound sacs that move proteins from the Golgi complex to specific areas in the cell.
transformation (1) The process in which genes are transferred from one bacterium to another as "naked" DNA in solution. (2) The changing of a normal cell into a cancerous cell.
transient microbiota The microorganisms that are present in an animal for a short time without causing a disease.
translation The use of mRNA as a template in the synthesis of protein.
transmission-based precautions Precautions used to prevent transmission of infection from individuals with a known or suspected infection.
transmission electron microscope (TEM) An electron microscope that provides high magnifications (10,000–100,000×) of thin sections of a specimen.
transport media Media used to keep microorganisms alive between sample collection and laboratory testing; usually used for clinical samples.
transport vesicle Membrane-bound sacs that move proteins from the rough ER to the Golgi complex.
transporter protein A carrier protein in the plasma membrane.
transposon A small piece of DNA that can move from one DNA molecule to another.
trickling filter A method of secondary sewage treatment in which sewage is sprayed out of rotating arms onto a bed of rocks or similar materials, exposing the sewage to highly aerobic conditions and microorganisms.
trophophase The period in the production curve of an industrial cell population in which the primary metabolites are formed; a period of rapid, logarithmic growth. *See also* idiophase.
trophozoite The vegetative form of a protozoan.
tuberculin skin test A skin test used to detect the presence of antibodies to *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*.
tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α) A polypeptide released by phagocytes in response to bacterial endotoxins.
tumor-specific transplantation antigen (TSTA) A viral antigen on the surface of a transformed cell.
turbidity The cloudiness of a suspension.
turnover number The number of substrate molecules acted on per enzyme molecule per second.
twitching motility Short movements associated with pili.
two-photon microscope A light microscope that uses fluorescent stains and long wavelength light.

type I reactions *See* anaphylaxis.
type II (cytotoxic) reactions Allergic reaction involving cell-bound antigen, antibody, and complement.
type III reactions Allergic reaction involving soluble antigen, antibody, and complement.

ubiquinone A low–molecular mass, nonprotein carrier in an electron transport chain; also called coenzyme Q.
ultra-high-temperature (UHT) treatment A method of treating food with high temperatures (140–150°C) for very short times to make the food sterile so that it can be stored at room temperature.
uncoating The separation of viral nucleic acid from its protein coat.
undulating membrane A highly modified flagellum on some protozoa.
universal precautions Procedures used to reduce transmission of microbes in health care settings and residential settings.
unsaturated A fatty acid with one or more double bonds.
upper respiratory system Organ system consisting of the trachea, bronchial tubes, pulmonary alveoli, middle ear, and auditory tubes.
urinary system Organ system consisting of the kidneys, ureters, urinary blacker, and urethra.
urine Nitrogen waste, salts, and water in the urinary bladder.
use-dilution test A method of determining the effectiveness of a disinfectant using serial dilutions.

vaccination The process of conferring immunity by administering a vaccine; also called immunization.
vaccine Antigen preparation that induces artificially acquired active immunity, without producing disease.
vacuole An intracellular inclusion, in eukaryotic cells, surrounded by a plasma membrane; in prokaryotic cells, surrounded by a proteinaceous membrane.
vaginal secretions Fluid and cells shed from the vagina.
valence The combining capacity of an atom or a molecule.
variolation An early method of vaccination using infected material from a patient.
vasoactive mediators Compounds that cause vasodilation and the increase in permeability of blood vessels
vasodilation Dilation or enlargement of blood vessels.
VDRL test A rapid screening test to detect the presence of antibodies against *Treponema pallidum*. (VDRL stands for Venereal Disease Research Laboratory.)
vector (1) A plasmid or virus used in genetic engineering to insert genes into a cell. (2) An arthropod that carries disease-causing organisms from one host to another.
vegetative Referring to cells involved with obtaining nutrients, as opposed to reproduction.
vehicle transmission The transmission of a pathogen by an inanimate reservoir.
vertical gene transfer Transfer of genes from an organism or cell to its offspring.
vesicle (1) A small serum-filled elevation of the skin. (2) Smooth oval bodies formed in plant roots by mycorrhizae.
V factor NAD^+ or $NADP^+$.
vibrio (1) A curved or comma-shaped bacterium. (2) When written as a genus (*Vibrio*), a gram-negative, motile, facultatively anaerobic curved rod.
viral hemagglutination The ability of certain viruses to cause the clumping of red blood cells in vitro.
viral hemagglutination inhibition test A neutralization test in which antibodies against particular viruses prevent the viruses from clumping red blood cells in vitro.
virus-like particle Vaccine consisting of viral proteins assembled into a capsid without nucleic acid.
viral species A group of viruses sharing the same genetic information and ecological niche.
viremia The presence of viruses in the blood.
virion A complete, fully developed viral particle.
viroid Infectious RNA.
virology The scientific study of viruses.
virulence The degree of pathogenicity of a microorganism.
virus An intracellularparasitic, filterable agent consisting of a nucleic acid surrounded by a protein coat.
virusoid A viroid enclosed in a protein coat.
volutin Stored inorganic phosphate in a prokaryotic cell. *See also* metachromatic granule.
vomiting Expelling stomach contents through the mouth.

wandering macrophage A macrophage that leaves the blood and migrates to infected tissue.
wastewater-based surveillance (WBS) Sampling untreated wastewater for a specific pathogen to determine whether infections are increasing or decreasing in an area.
waterborne transmission Refers to transmission of pathogens via drinking water or water contact.
Western blotting A technique that uses antibodies to detect the presence of specific proteins separated by electrophoresis.
whey The fluid portion of milk that separates from curd.
whipworm A parasite nematode, *Trichuris trichiura*.
white blood cells (WBCs) *See* leukocyte.

xenobiotics Synthetic chemicals that are not readily degraded by microorganisms.
xenograft (xenotransplantation product) A tissue graft from another species.
X factor Substances from the heme fraction of blood hemoglobin.

yeast Nonfilamentous, unicellular fungi.
yeast infection Disease caused by growth of certain yeasts in a susceptible host.

zone of inhibition The area of no bacterial growth around an antimicrobial agent in the disk-diffusion method.
zoonosis A disease that occurs primarily in wild and domestic animals but can be transmitted to humans.
zoospore An asexual algal spore; has two flagella.
zygospore A sexual fungal spore characteristic of the zygomycetes.
zygote A diploid cell produced by the fusion of two haploid gametes.

Credits

Text and Illustration Credits

All text credits are on page unless otherwise noted.

All illustrations by Imagineering STA Media Services unless otherwise noted.

Fig 8.7: *Dealing with Genes* by Paul Berg and Maxine Singer. Reprinted by permission of University Science Books, © 1992.

Fig 25.20: Data from Soil-transmitted helminth infections. Fact sheet No 366. April, 2014. Reprinted by permission of World Health Organization.

Photo Credits

Chapter 1 Opener: Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Alohaflaminggo/Shutterstock; **Fig 1.1:** Scimat/Science Source; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Premaphotos/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 1.2a:** Juergen Berger/Science Source; **Fig 1.2b:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 1.2c:** Andrew Syred/Science Source; **Fig 1.2d:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 1.2e:** BSIP SA/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 1.3a:** Mary Evans Picture Library/Chronicle/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 1.3b:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 1.3c:** INTERFOTO/ Personalities/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 1.4:** Tek Image/Science Source; **Fig 1.5 (top to bottom):** The History of Medicine (NLM); KRUIF, Paul de. Mikrobenjäger. Orell Füssli, Zürich, 1927; Performing an 1871 surgery in the Lister Surgery Theatre, Edinburgh, Scotland; **Fig 1.6:** St. Mary's Hospital Medical School/Science Source; **Fig 1.7 (top to bottom):** Bettmann/Getty Images; Philippe Wojazer/Reuters; Jin Liwang/Xinhua/Alamy Stock Photo; dpa picture alliance/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 1.8a:** Melian/Erin Silversmith/Rama; **Fig 1.8b:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 1.9:** Rockefeller Archive Center; **Fig 1.10:** Scimat/Science Source.

Chapter 2 Opener: Eye of Science/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** MBI/ Shutterstock; **Exploring the Microbiome:** HZI/Manfred Rohde.

Chapter 3 Opener: Juergen Berger/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Alex Judik/123RF; **Fig 3.1a:** Vereshchagin Dmitry/Shutterstock; **Clinical Case:** From: Discovery by Jaworski of Helicobacter pylori and its pathogenetic role in peptic ulcer, gastritis and gastric cancer, JW Konturek. *Journal of Physiology and Pharmacology*, 2003 Dec; 54 Suppl 3:23–41; **Fig 3.2 (left to right)**: BugGuide/ Tom Murray; Dr. Tony Brain/Science Source; Scimat/Science Source; Eye of Science/Science Source; Torunn Berge/Science Source; **Fig 3.4:** L. Brent Selinger/ Pearson Education; **Fig 3.5:** M. I. Walker/Science Source; **Fig 3.6:** Hans L Rieder/ Tuberculosis Consultant Services; **Fig 3.7b:** CDC; **Fig 3.8:** Anne Aubusson-Fleury, Centre de Génétique Moléculaire, CNRS; **Fig 3.9:** Anne Aubusson-Fleury, Centre de Génétique Moléculaire, CNRS; **Fig 3.10:** Anne Aubusson-Fleury, Centre de Génétique Moléculaire, CNRS; **Fig 3.11:** Good, MS; Wend, CF; Bond, LJ; McLean, JS; Panetta, PD; Ahmed, S; Crawford, SL; Daly, DS. "An estimate of biofilm properties using an acoustic microscope." *Ultrasonics, Ferroelectrics and Frequency Control, IEEE Transactions*, Volume 53, Issue 9, Sept. 2006 Page(s): 1637–1648. Figure 5B, page 1642; **Fig 3.12a:** Douglas Bray/Pearson Education; **Fig 3.12b:** Andrew Syred/Science Source; **Clinical Case:** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Fig 3.13a:** Torunn Berge/Science Source; **Fig 3.13b:** Courtesy of Zhifeng Shao, Shanghai Jiao Tong University; **Table 3.2 (top to bottom):** L. Brent Selinger/Pearson Education; M. I. Walker/Science Source; CDC; Anne Aubusson-Fleury, Centre de Génétique Moléculaire, CNRS; Good, MS; Wend, CF; Bond, LJ; McLean, JS; Panetta, PD; Ahmed, S; Crawford, SL; Daly, DS. "An estimate of biofilm properties using an acoustic microscope." *Ultrasonics, Ferroelectrics and Frequency Control, IEEE Transactions*, Volume 53, Issue 9, Sept. 2006 Page(s): 1637–1648. Figure 5B, page 1642; Douglas Bray/Pearson Education; Andrew Syred/Science Source; Torunn Berge/Science Source; Courtesy of Zhifeng Shao, Shanghai Jiao Tong University; **Fig 3.14b:** ASM/Science Source; **Clinical Case:** Francis Mégraud; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Audrey Borg, AP-HM, IHU Méditerranée Infection, Marseille/France; **Fig 3.15:** Richard J. Green/Science Source; **Fig 3.16a:** L. Brent Selinger/Pearson Education; **Fig 3.16b:** CDC/ Courtesy of Larry Stauffer, Oregon State Public Health Laboratory; **Fig 3.16c:** CDC/Dr. W.A. Clark; **Study Questions:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source.

Chapter 4 Opener: Scimat/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Maxim ibragimov/ Shutterstock; **Fig 4.1a:** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Fig 4.1b:** Gopal Murti/ Science Source; **Fig 4.1c:** Scimat/Science Source; **Fig 4.1d:** David McCarthy/ Science Source; **Fig 4.2a, b:** PR Courtieu/BSIP SA/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 4.2c:** CNRI/Science Source; **Fig 4.2d:** Gary Gaugler/Science Source; **Fig 4.3:** Dr. James Feeley/CDC; **Fig 4.4a:** London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine/Science Source; **Fig 4.4b:** Dr. Gary Gaugler/Science Source; **Fig 4.4c:** Stem Jems/Science Source; **Fig 4.5a:** Horst Volker & Heinz Schlesner/Institut fur Allgemeine Mikrobiologie, Kiel; **Fig 4.5b:** H. W. Jannasch/Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution; **Fig 4.6:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 4.7a:** Hazel Appleton/Health Protection Agency Centre for Infections/Science Source; **Fig 4.7b:** Kwangshin Kim/Science Source; **Fig 4.7c:** Laboratory of Molecular Biophysics, University of Oxford/Science Source; **Fig 4.7d:** Michael Abbey/ Science Source; **Fig 4.9b:** Lee D. Simon/ Science Source; **Fig 4.9c:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 4.10a:** Cnri/Pixels.com; **Fig 4.11:** Kwangshin Kim/ Science Source; **Table 4.1:** L. Brent Selinger/Pearson Education; **Fig 4.14a:** Dr. Kari Lounatmaa/Science Source; **Fig 4.15:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 4.16b:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 4.20:** Courtesy of Richard Frankel; **Fig 4.21b:** Dr. Tony Brain/Science Source; **Exploring the Microbiome:** CDC/Dr. Mae Melvin; **Fig 4.22b:** Science History Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 4.22c:** Scott Camazine/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 4.23a:** David M. Phillips/ Science Source; **Fig 4.23b:** Aaron J. Bell/Science Source; **Fig 4.24a:** David M. Phillips/Science Source; **Fig 4.25a (top to bottom):** Don W. Fawcett/Science Source; David M. Phillips/Science Source; **Fig 4.26a:** Biophoto Associates/ Science Source; **Fig 4.27a:** Don W. Fawcett/Science Source; **Fig 4.28a:** Dr. Jeremy Burgess/Science Source.

Chapter 5 Opener: Steve Gschmeissner/Science Photo Library/Getty Images; **In the Clinic:** Tmcphotos/Shutterstock; **Big Picture (clockwise from top left):** Garry DeLong/Science Source (inset) Scimat/Science Source; Roman Sigaev/Alamy Stock Photo (inset) Eye of Science/Science Source; Graficart.net/ Alamy Stock Photo (inset) Biophoto Associates/Science Source; Martin Bond/ Science Source (inset) Eye of Science/Science Source; **Fig 5.11:** Jovan Nikolic/ Shutterstock; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Scimat/Science Source; **Fig 5.22:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 5.23:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 5.24:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Clinical Focus:** Christine Case/Skyline College.

Chapter 6 Opener: Scimat/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Juan Carlos Tinjaca/ Shutterstock; **Fig 6.5:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 6.7:** Janice Haney Carr/CDC; **Fig 6.9:** Anaerobe Systems (www.anaerobesystems.com); **Fig 6.10:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 6.11:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 6.12:** James Gathany/CDC; **Clinical Case:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 6.13:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 6.14b:** Dr. Karl Lounatmaa/Science Source; **Fig 6.17:** Patrick Polito; microbiologist, Moog Medical Devices Group; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Scimat/Science Source; **Fig 6.18:** Christine Case/ Skyline College; **Fig 6.20a:** Kevin M. Rosso; **Fig 6.20b:** Christine Case/Skyline College.

Chapter 7 Opener: Charles D. Humphrey/CDC; **In the Clinic:** Lisa F. Young/Shutterstock; **Fig 7.1 (top to bottom):** Dmitry Zimin/Shutterstock; Donatas1205/Shutterstock; **Fig 7.3:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 7.6:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Christine Case/ Skyline College; **Fig 7.8**: CDC; **Clinical Focus:** Todd Parker, Ph.D., Assoc Director for Laboratory Science, Div of Preparedness and Emerging Infections at CDC.

Chapter 8 Opener: Gopal Murti/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Tyler Olson/ Shutterstock; **Big Picture (top to bottom, left to right):** Torunn Berge/Science Source; James Cavallini/Science Source; Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; Science Source; Leonard Lessin/Science Source; **Fig 8.1:** Dr. Gopal Murti/Science Source; **Fig 8.6a:** Biology Pics/Science Source; **Fig 8.7:** Photo Researchers/Science History Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 8.10:** Professor Oscar Miller/Science Source; **Clinical Focus:** Cynthia Goldsmith/CDC; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Dr. L. Caro/Science Source; **Fig 8.25b:** Dr. Gopal Murti/Science Source; **Clinical Case:** L. Brent Selinger/Pearson Education; **Fig 8.29a:** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Fig 8.29b:** Omikron/Science Source.

Chapter 9 Opener: Chris Bjornberg/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Anyaivanova/Shutterstock; **Fig 9.1 (left to right):** Marga Werner/Pixtal/AGE Fotostock; SOPA Images Limited/Alamy Stock Photo; Gvictoria/Shutterstock; Tim Tadder/Corbis/Getty Images; **Clinical Case:** Jon Wilson/Science Source; **Fig 9.6:** Edwin Remsberg/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 9.7:** Claude Cortier/AGE Fotostock; **Fig 9.10:** Hank Morgan/Science Source; **Fig 9.13:** CNRI/Science Source; **Fig 9.17:** © 2020 Meza-Robles et al.; **Fig 9.18:** Ronald S. Oremland/US Geological Survey; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Scimat/Science Source;

Fig 9.19: Nigel Cattlin/Alamy Stock Photo; **Clinical Focus Fig B:** Republished with permission of American Society for Microbiology-Journals, from Waterborne Outbreak of Gastroenteritis Associated with a Norovirus, Parshionikar SU, Willian-True S, Fout GS, Robbins DE, Seys SA, Cassady JD, Harris R., *Applied and Environmental Microbiology*; 69 (9); pp. 5263–68 © 2003; **Study Questions:** Christine Case/Skyline College.

Chapter 10 Opener: Steve Gschmeissner/Brand X Pictures/Science Photo Library/Getty Images; **In the Clinic:** Budimir Jevtic/Shutterstock; **Table 10.1 (left to right):** Eye of Science/Science Source; Scimat/Science Source; micro_photo/Getty Images; **Fig 10.3:** Jerome Pickett Heaps/Science Source; **Fig 10.4a:** Georgette Douwma/Nature Picture Library; **Fig 10.4b:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 10.4c:** Philippe Plailly/Science Source; **Fig 10.9:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 10.10:** BSIP/Science Source; **Fig 10.11:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 10.12a:** Sinclair Stammers/Science Source; **Fig 10.12b:** BSIP/Newscom; **Fig 10.13:** Calvin Chan Wai Meng/Moment/Getty Images; **Fig 10.14:** Chris Jones/University of Leeds/John Heritage; **Fig 10.16:** Amini, R., Jahanshiri, F., Amini, Y. et al. Detection of human coronavirus strain HKU1 in a 2 year old girl with asthma exacerbation caused by acute pharyngitis. *Virol J* 9, 142 (2012). https://doi.org/10.1186/1743-422X-9-142; **Fig 10.18a:** Arno Massee/Science Source; **Fig 10.18d:** Jonathan Frye, USDA; **Clinical Case:** NCI/Daniel Sone/Science Source; **Fig 10.19:** Romero-Lastra P, Sánchez MC, Llama-Palacios A, Figuero E, Herrera D, Sanz M (2019) Gene expression of Porphyromonas gingivalis ATCC 33277 when growing in an in vitro multispecies biofilm. *PLoS ONE* 14(8): e0221234. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0221234; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Christine Case/Skyline College.

Chapter 11 Opener: Eye of Science/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** ChaNaWiT/Shutterstock; **Fig 11.1:** USDA/APHIS Animal And Plant Health Inspection Service; **Fig 11.2b:** Biology Pics/Science Source; **Fig 11.3:** J. R. Factor/Science Source; **Fig 11.4:** Nobeastsofierce Science/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 11.6:** SCIENCE PHOTO LIBRARY/Science Source; **Fig 11.7:** Dr. Linda M. Stannard/University of Cape Town/Science Source; **Fig 11.8:** James Cavallini/Science Source; **Fig 11.9a:** A. Barry Dowsett/Science Source; **Fig 11.9b:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 11.10:** ALFRED PASIEKA/Science Source; **Fig 11.11b:** Heinrich Lünsdorf/Helmholtz Center for Infection Research, Germany; **Fig 11.12:** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Fig 11.13a:** L. Brent Selinger/Pearson Education; **Fig 11.13b:** Claire Ting/Science Source; **Fig 11.14:** M. I. Walker/Science Source; **Fig 11.15b:** Biomedical Imaging Unit, Southampton General Hospital/Science Source; **Fig 11.16:** Jenny Wang, Cheryl Jenkins, Richard I. Webb, and John A. Fuerst. Isolation of Gemmata-Like and Isosphaera-Like Planctomycete Bacteria from Soil and Freshwater. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology*, January 2002, pp. 417–422, Vol. 68, No. 1, Fig. 1c; **Fig 11.17:** Chris Bjornberg/ Science Source; **Fig 11.18a:** © 2002 National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.; **Fig 11.19:** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Fig 11.20:** Esther R. Angert/Cornell University; **Fig 11.21:** Neil Crickmore; **Fig 11.22:** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Fig 11.23:** Scimat/Science Source; **Clinical Case:** Kate Curran/The Clinical Chemistry and Hematology Laboratory; **Fig 11.24:** BSIP SA/Alamy Stock Photo; **Clinical Case:** Michael Abbey/Science Source; **Fig 11.25b:** Dr. Jeremy Burgess/Science Source; **Clinical Case:** Kate Curran/The Clinical Chemistry and Hematology Laboratory; **Fig 11.26:** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **Fig 11.27:** Courtesy of Karl O. Stetter; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Juergen Berger/Science Source; **Fig 11.28:** National Library of Medicine.

Chapter 12 Opener: E. Gueho/CNRI/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Avatar_023/Shutterstock; **Fig 12.1 (top to bottom):** James Gathany/CDC; Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; Eye of Science/Science Source; Sarah Spaulding/USGS; Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 12.3:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 12.4:** SPLScience Source; **Fig 12.5:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 12.6a:** BSIP/Science Source; **Fig 12.6b:** Meredith Carlson/Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 12.6c:** David M. Phillips/Science Source; **Fig 12.6d:** David M. Phillips/Science Source; **Fig 12.6e:** Dr. Jeremy Burgess/Science Source; **Fig 12.7:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 12.8:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 12.9 (left to right):** George L. Barron/University of Guelph; Penicillium araracuarense sp. nov., Penicillium elleniae sp. nov., Penicillium penarojense sp. nov., Penicillium vanderhammenii sp. nov. and Penicillium wotroi sp. nov., isolated from leaf litter Free Jos Houbraken1, Carlos A. López-Quintero2, Jens C. Frisvad3, Teun Boekhout1, Bart Theelen1, Ana Esperanza Franco-Molano2, Robert A. Samson1 View Affiliations Published: 01 June 2011 https://doi.org/10.1099/ijs.0.025098-0; **Fig 12.10:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Clinical Case (left to right):** Lucille K. Georg/CDC; Connie Nichols, Duke University Medical Center; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **Fig 12.11a:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 12.12:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 12.13a:** Vincent van Ginneken and Evert de Vries/Scientific Research Publishing Inc.; **Fig 12.14a:** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **Fig 12.16 (left to right):** Chad Bischoff; Noble Proctor/Science Source; Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 12.17:** M. I. Walker/Science Source; **Fig 12.18a:** Dr. Tony Brain/Science Source; **Fig 12.18b:** David M. Phillips/Science Source; **Fig 12.18c:** Wim Van Egmond/Science Source; **Fig 12.19b:** CDC/Dr. Mae Melvin; Dr. Greene; **Fig 12.21b:** Eric V. Grave/Science Source; **Fig 12.22:** Dave Pressland/FLPA/Science Source; **Fig 12.23:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 12.24:** D. O. Rosenberry, 2001, *Malformed Frogs in Minnesota: An Update: USGS Water Fact Sheet* FS-043-01. Photo by David Hoppe; **Fig 12.25b:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 12.26 (top to bottom):** Drbimages/Getty Images; Masalski Maksim/Shutterstock; Eric Isselee/Shutterstock; **Clinical Focus Fig A:** CDC/DPDx; **Fig 12.27:** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **Fig 12.28 (clockwise from top right)**: Gareth Boden/Pearson Education Ltd.; James Pierce/Shutterstock; CDC/ Dr. Peter Schantz; LazyFocus/Shutterstock; CDC/Dr. Healy; **Fig 12.29a:** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **Fig 12.30:** Nnehring/E+/Getty Images; **Fig 12.31a:** James Gathany/CDC; **Fig 12.31b:** Himagine/E+/Getty Images; **Study Questions (left to right):** Lucille K. Georg/CDC; SeDmi/Shutterstock; Eric Isselee/Shutterstock; Pascal Goetgheluck/Science Source.

Chapter 13 Opener: Hazel Appleton/Health Protection Agency Centre for Infections/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Li Chaoshu/Shutterstock; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Fig 13.2b:** James Cavallini/Science Source; **Fig 13.3b:** Dr Linda Stannard, UCT/Science Source; **Fig 13.4b:** Nixxphotography/iStock /Getty Images; **Fig 13.5:** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Fig 13.6:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 13.9a:** CNRI/Science Source; **Fig 13.9b:** Dr. E. Walker/Science Source; **Fig 13.14a:** © Meier et al., 2002; **Fig 13.14b:** Miriam Becker, Melissa Dominguez, Lilo Greune, Laura Soria-Martinez, Moritz M. Pfleiderer, Rachel Schowalter, Christopher B. Buck, Bärbel S. Blaum, M. Alexander Schmidt, Mario Schelhaas *bioRxiv* 456673; doi: https://doi.org/10.1101/456673; **Fig 13.16a:** C. Garon and J.Rose/CDC; **Fig 13.16b:** Dr. Linda M. Stannard/University of Cape Town/Science Source; **Fig 13.18a:** NIAID; **Fig 13.18a:** Dr. Linda M. Stannard/University of Cape Town/Science Source; **Fig 13.20b:** NIBSC/Science Source; **Fig 13.22:** Agricultural Research Service Honey Bree/USDA.

Chapter 14 Opener: Biomedical Imaging Unit, Southampton General Hospital/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Aijiro/Shutterstock; **Exploring the Microbiome:** PeopleImages/E+/Getty Images; **Fig 14.1a:** Juergen Berger/Science Source; **Fig 14.1b:** David M. Phillips/Science Source; **Fig 14.1c:** Stephanie Schuller/Science Source; **Fig 14.2a:** David Spears Frps Frms/Corbis Documentary/Getty Images; **Fig 14.2b:** Stephanie Schuller/Steven Lewis/Science Source; **Fig 14.2c:** Nibsc/Science Source; **Fig 14.6a:** MBI/Shutterstock; **Fig 14.6b:** Levent Konuk/Shutterstock; **Fig 14.6c:** George Doyle/Stockbyte/Getty Images; **Fig 14.6d:** CDC/James Gathany; **Fig 14.7a:** Marlas111/iStock/Getty Images; **Fig 14.7b:** Alfaguarilla/Shutterstock; **Fig 14.7c:** Slawomir Fajer/Shutterstock; **Fig 14.8:** Harald Theissen/ImageBroker/Alamy Stock Photo; **Clinical Focus Fig A:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Clinical Focus Fig B:** Bork/Shutterstock.

Chapter 15 Opener: Eye of Science/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Fotoluminate LLC/Shutterstock; **Clinical Case:** National Eye Institute; **Fig 15.1b:** Professor Pietro M. Motta et al/Science Source; **Fig 15.1c:** Gillete Corporation/Science Source; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Ami Images/Science Source; **Fig 15.2:** National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases/Science Source; **Fig 15.4 (left to right):** Dr. Gary Gaugler/Science Source; Janice Haney Carr/CDC; **Fig 15.7a:** CDC/Dr. Daniel P. Perl; **Fig 15.7b:** CDC/Dr. Edwin P. Ewing, Jr.; **Fig 15.8:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Clinical Case:** CDC/Janice Carr (inset) CDC/Dr. W. A. Clark; **Fig 15.9 (left to right):** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; Dr. Cecil H. Fox/Science Source; CDC/C. S. Goldsmith and A. Balish.

Chapter 16 Opener: SPL/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Vilevi/Shutterstock; **Big Picture (left to right):** PeopleImages/iStock/Getty Images; NIBSC/Science Source; **Fig 16.1:** Ed Reschke/Stone/Getty Images; **Fig 16.3a:** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Fotografixx/iStock/Getty Images; **Fig 16.4:** Science Photo Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **Table 16.1 (left, top to bottom):** NIAID; Jarun Ontakrai/Shutterstock; Biophoto Associates/Science Source; Alvin Telser/Science Source **(right, top to bottom):** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; Jarun011/iStock/Getty Images; Republished with permission of American Society of Hematology, from Manipulating dendritic cell biology for the active immunotherapy of cancer, David W. O'Neill, Sylvia Adams, Nina Bhardwaj, 104(8), 2004; Dr. Mae Melvin/CDC; Biophoto Associates/Science Source; Alvin Telser/Science Source; **Fig 16.7:** SPL/Science Source; **Fig 16.8:** SPL/Science Source; **Fig 16.11:** Republished with permission of Rockefeller University Press, from Cytolysis caused by complement via the classical pathway, RD Schreiber, DC Morrison, ER Podack and HJ Muller-Eberhard, *Journal of Experimental Medicine*. 1979; 149:870–82.

Chapter 17 Opener: Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** MBI/Shutterstock; **Clinical Case:** Billie Ruth Bird/CDC; **Fig 17.9a:** SPL/Science Source; **Fig 17.10:** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Photo Library/Alamy Stock

Photo; **Fig 17.11:** A. Barry Dowsett/Camr/Science Source; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Fig 17.15:** Dr. Gopal Murti/Science Source.

Chapter 18 Opener: Gary D. Gaugler/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Creativa Images/Shutterstock; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Scimat/Science Source; **Fig 18.4b:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 18.6:** Daniela Beckmann/Science Source; **Fig 18.10a:** Michael Abbey/Science Source; **Fig 18.10b:** Scott Camazine/Alamy Stock Photo; **Big Picture (top to bottom):** CDC; VEM/BSIP SA/Alamy Stock Photo.

Chapter 19 Opener: Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Alice-photo/Shutterstock; **Fig 19.1b:** Lennart Nilsson/TT/Science Photo Library; **Fig 19.2a:** Mediscan/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 19.2b:** Andrew Syred/Science Source; **Big Picture:** Biomedical Imaging Unit, Southampton General Hospital/Science Source; Gastrolab/Science Source; Jeff McIntosh/The Canadian Press/AP Images; Someone25/iStock/Getty Images; **Fig 19.3:** Joseph Songco/Alamy Stock Photo; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Scimat/Science Source; **Fig 19.4:** Photo Researchers/Science History Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 19.9:** Blickwinkel/Czepluch/Alamy Stock Photo; **Clinical Focus:** Dr P. Marazzi/Science Source; **Fig 19.12:** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **Fig 19.13:** Hank Morgan/Science Source; **Fig 19.15:** MedicalRF/Science Source.

Chapter 20 Opener: Juergen Berger/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Flashpop/Iconica/Getty Images; **Fig 20.1:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 20.3:** CNRI/Science Source; **Fig 20.17:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 20.18:** 10174593_258/iStock/Getty Images; **Fig 20.19:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 20.20:** Vichie81/Shutterstock; **Fig 20.22:** Degas Jean Pierre/Hemis/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 20.23:** AnaLysiSStudiO/Shutterstock; **Clinical Focus Fig A:** Acquisition of Resistance to Extended-Spectrum Cephalosporins by Salmonella enterica subsp. enterica Serovar Newport and Escherichia coli in Turkey Poult Intestinal Tract. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology*. March 2005, Vol 71, No. 3, pages 1183 to 1192: Figure 1. Public Health Agency of Canada, 2005. Adapted and reproduced with permission from the Minister of Health, © 2017 All rights reserved; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Christine Case/Skyline College.

Chapter 21 Opener: Stem Jems/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Wavebreakmedia/Shutterstock; **Fig 21.3:** Zhai H, Pan J, Pang E, Bai B (2014) Lavage with Allicin in Combination with Vancomycin Inhibits Biofilm Formation by *Staphylococcus epidermidis* in a Rabbit Model of Prosthetic Joint Infection. *PLoS ONE* 9(7): e102760. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0102760; **Fig 21.4:** Dr P. Marazzi/Science Source; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 21.5:** BSIP SA/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 21.6:** Reprinted from Publication Clinica Chimica Acta, 411(17–18), Sonja Oehmcke, Oonagh Shannon, Matthias Mörgelin, Heiko Herwald, *Streptococcal M proteins and their role as virulence determinants*, pp. 1172–1180, © 2010, with permission from Elsevier; **Fig 21.7:** CNRI/Science Source; **Table 21.1:** CDC; **Table 21.2:** Natrow Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 21.8:** Mid Essex Hospital Services NHS Trust/Science Source; **Table 21.3:** Dr. P. Marazzi/Science Source; **Clinical Focus Fig A:** Stephen Tristram; **Clinical Focus Fig B:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Clinical Focus Fig C:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 21.9:** John F. Wilson, MD/Science Source; **Fig 21.10:** James Hicks/CDC; **Fig 21.11a:** Gilbert S. Grant/Science Source; **Fig 21.11b:** Dr P. Marazzi/Science Source; **Fig 21.12:** John Watney/Science Source; **Fig 21.14:** Mediacolor's/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 21.15:** Pr. Ph. Franceschini/Science Source; **Fig 21.16a:** P R Bouree/Science Source; **Fig 21.16b:** Dr P. Marazzi/Science Source; **Clinical Case:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 21.17a:** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Fig 21.17b:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 21.18:** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Fig 21.19a:** PIR/BSIP SA/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 21.19b:** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Table 21.4:** SPL/Science Source; **Fig 21.20a:** Susan Lindsley/CDC; **Fig 21.20b:** Arztsamui/Fotosearch LBRF/AGE Fotostock; **Big Picture (top to bottom):** Andy Crump,Tdr, World Health Organization/Science Source; Jake Lyell/Alamy Stock Photo; Georg Gerster/Science Source.

Chapter 22 Opener: Dr. George R. Healy/CDC; **In the Clinic:** Pressmaster/Shutterstock; **Fig 22.3:** D. S. Stephens, Emory University School of Medicine; **Fig 22.5:** Republished with permission of Rockefeller University Press, from *The cell biology of Listeria monocytogenes infection*, Daniel A. Portnoy, Victoria Auerbuch, Ian J. Glomski, Vol 158, issue 3, 2002, pp. 409–414; **Fig 22.6:** C. Bell, London, 1865, *Images from the History of Medicine* (NLM); **Clinical Case:** Dr. George R. Healy/CDC; **Table 22.1:** Brodsky/CDC; **Fig 22.7:** C. E. Dolman, "Botulism as a World Health Problem," in *Botulism: Proceedings of a Symposium*, edited by K. H. Lewis and K. Cassel, American Public Health Service Publication No. 999-FP-1, 1964; **Fig 22.9:** FDA; **Fig 22.10a:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 22.10b:** Gregory Pourtier/AFP/Getty Images; **Fig 22.11:** Bettmann/Getty Images; **Fig 22.12:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Big Picture (top to bottom):** CDC; James Cavallini/Science Source; Dr. Linda M. Stannard/University of Cape Town/Science Source; James Cavallini/Science Source; Mario Tama/Getty Images; Ian Miles/Flashpoint Pictures/Alamy Stock Photo; Tom Grill/JGI/Blend Images/Getty Images; **Clinical Focus Fig A:** Frederick A Murphy/University of Texas Medical Branch; **Clinical Focus Fig B:** Martha Harrison/NPS; **Fig 22.15:** Dr. Lenore Haley/CDC; **Table 22.2:** Jim Gathany/CDC; **Fig 22.17:** © 2009 Bruno da Rocha-Azevedo et al.; **Clinical Case:** CDC; **Fig 22.18a:** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Fig 22.18b:** Ralph Eagle Jr./Science Source; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Dr. Holdeman/CDC; **Table 22.3:** CDC.

Chapter 23 Opener: London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Michaeljung/Shutterstock; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **Fig 23.3:** SPL/Science Source; **Fig 23.4:** Dr. Edwin P. Ewing, Jr./CDC; **Fig 23.5:** National Museum of Health and Medicine/Armed Forces Institute of Pathology; **Fig 23.7:** CDC/Science Source; **Table 23.1:** Richard J. Green/Science Source; **Clinical Focus:** Larry Stauffer, Oregon State Public Health Laboratory/CDC; **Fig 23.8:** P. Marazzi/Science Source; **Fig 23.9:** *Intraerythrocytic Presence of Bartonella henselae* by Dorsey L. Kordick and Edward B. Breitschwerdt, 33(6), p. 1656 © 1995; **Table 23.2:** Dr. Thomas F. Sellers; Emory University/CDC; **Fig 23.10:** Christina Nelson, MD, MPH/CDC; **Table 23.3:** Dr. A.J. Sulzer/CDC; **Fig 23.13 (clockwise from top):** Eric Isselee/Shutterstock; Bonzo Dog/Shutterstock; Juergen Berger/Science Source; Bmcent1/iStock/Getty Images; Alex Helin/Shutterstock; **Fig 23.14:** James Gathany/CDC; **Fig 23.16 (left to right):** ASDF_MEDIA/Shutterstock; Zhukov Oleg/Shutterstock; **Fig 23.17:** Science Source; **Fig 23.18:** Dr. M. A. Ansary/Science Source; **Fig 23.20:** Joaquin Carrillo-Farga/Science History Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **Big Picture (top to bottom):** James Gathany/CDC; Dr Klaus Boller/Science Source; MBR/MCT/Newscom; **Fig 23.21:** Dr. Thomas W. Geisbert; **Fig 23.22:** Oliver Meckes/Science Source; **Table 23.4:** CDC/Frederick Murphy; **Fig 23.23 (clockwise from top):** Eric Isselee/Shutterstock; Karen H. Ilagan/Shutterstock; Catherine Murray/Shutterstock; John Foxx/Stockbyte/Getty Images; Primo Piano/Shutterstock; CDC/Dr. L.L. Moore, Jr.; Herman Zaiman and the H.W. Manter Laboratory of Parasitology; Radius Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 23.25a:** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Fig 23.25b:** CDC; **Fig 23.26:** Walter Reed Army Institute of Research, USDA; **Table 23.5:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 23.27 (clockwise from top):** Eric Isselee/Shutterstock; Ami Images/Science Source; EcoPrint/Shutterstock; **Fig 23.28:** Herman Zaiman and the H.W. Manter Laboratory of Parasitology.

Chapter 24 Opener: Eye of Science/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Michaeljung/Shutterstock; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Juergen Berger/Science Source; **Fig 24.3:** P. Marazzi/Science Source; **Fig 24.4:** CDC/ Dr. P.B. Smith; **Fig 24.5:** Tony Wright/Institute of Laryngology and Otology/Science Source; **Table 24.1:** Mediscan/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 24.6:** NIBSC/Science Source; **Fig 24.7:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Big Picture 1:** Scaliger/iStock/Getty Images; Eye of Science/Science Source; Cavallini James/BSIP SA/Alamy Stock Photo; Frederick A. Murphy/CDC; Staff/MCT/Newscom; MaluStudio/Shutterstock; ADVNT Biotechnologies, LLC; FBI/Zuma Press/Newscom; **Fig 24.9:** Donald Kopanoff/CDC; **Fig 24.11:** BSIP SA/Alamy Stock Photo; **Table 24.2:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **24.13a:** Moredun Animal Health Ltd/SPL/Science Source; **24.13b:** Pasieka/Science Source; **Clinical Focus:** CDC; **Fig 24.14:** NIAID; **Fig 24.15:** Hazel Appleton, Health Protection Agency Centre for Infections/Science Source; **Fig 24.16:** Libero Ajello/CDC; **Fig 24.18 (left to right):** Dr. George R. Healy/CDC; Dr. Lucille K. Georg/CDC; **Fig 24.20:** Francis W. Chandler, DVM, PhD/CDC; **Table 24.3:** Dr. Lenore Haley/CDC.

Chapter 25 Opener: David M. Phillips/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** JGI/Blend Images/Getty Images; **Exploring the Microbiome:** CNRI/Science Source; **Fig 25.3:** Republished with permission of American Society for Microbiology, from *Biology, Immunology, and Cariogenicity of Streptococcus Mutans*; S Hamada, H D Slade,44(2), p. 343; 1980; **Table 25.1:** Dr. V.R. Dowell, Jr./CDC; **Clinical Focus:** CDC; **Fig 25.10:** Cavallini James/BSIP SA/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 25.11:** SPL/Science Source; SIPA/Newscom; Ami Images/Science Source; Sean Sprague/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 25.12:** SPL/Science Source; **Fig 25.13:** Dr. P. Marazzi/Science Source; **Table 25.2:** Mauro Rodrigues/Shutterstock; **Fig 25.14:** Photo Researchers/Science History Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **Table 25.3:** Martin M. Rotker/Science Source; **Fig 25.15:** James Cavallini/Science Source; **Table 25.4:** E. L. Palmer/CDC; **Table 25.5:** Melanie Moser/CDC; **Fig 25.16a:** Mary Anne Harrington, TML/MSH Shared Microbiology Service; **Fig 25.16b:** Melanie Moser/DPDx/CDC; **Fig 25.17:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 25.18a:** Michael Abbey/Science Source; **Fig 25.18b:** DPDx-Melanie Moser/CDC; **Fig 25.19:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 25.21:** Herman Zaiman and the H.W. Manter Laboratory of Parasitology; **Fig 25.22a:** Dr. Mae Melvin/CDC; **Fig 25.22b, d, e:** CDC; **Fig 25.22c:** B.G. Partin/Dr. Moore/CDC; **Fig 25.22f:** Mae Melvin/CDC; **Fig 25.23:** Zephyr/Science Source; **Fig 25.24:** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Fig 25.25:** Sinclair Stammers/Science Source; **Fig 25.26 (clockwise from top):** KariDesign/Shutterstock; Eric Isselee/Shutterstock; Dickson Despommier/despommierphotoart.

Chapter 26 Opener: Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Wavebreakmedia/Shutterstock; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Jean-Paul Chassenet/123RF; **Table 26.1:** Christine Case/Skyline College; **Fig 26.4:** Omikron/Science Source; **Fig 26.6:** Dr P. Marazzi/Science Source; **Big Picture:** David M. Phillips/Science Source; Buzuki Muhamed/Reuters; Dr. P. Marazzi/Science Source; Dr. Klaus Boller/Science Source; Erproductions Ltd/Blend Images/Getty Images; **Fig 26.7:** James Cavallini/Science Source; **Fig 26.8:** David Soper; **Fig 26.9:** James Cavallini/Science Source; **Fig 26.11a:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 26.11b:** Clinical Photography, Central Manchester University Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust, UK/Science Source; **Fig 26.11c:** CDC; **Fig 26.12:** M. Rein/CDC; **Fig 26.13:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Fig 26.14:** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Table 26.2:** M. Rein/CDC; **Fig 26.15:** CDC/Joe Miller; **Fig 26.16:** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Table 26.3:** Renelle Woodall/CDC.

Chapter 27 Opener: James Cavallini/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** Fstop Images/Getty Images; **Fig 27.1a:** Courtesy of Mycorrhizal Applications; **Fig 27.1b:** Luri/Shutterstock; **Fig 27.4:** Nigel Cattlin/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 27.5:** Frank Fox/Science Source; **Exploring the Microbiome:** New Zealand-American Submarine Ring of Fire 2005 Exploration; NOAA Vents Program; **Fig 27.7a:** US Coast Guard Photo/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 27.7b:** The Color Archives/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 27.8:** Nancy Pierce/Science Source; **Fig 27.9:** Water Frame fur/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 27.10:** G.C. Pitcher, S. Bernard and J. Ntuli (Oceanography 2008)/ESA; **Big Picture:** Christine Case/Skyline College; Kertu Liis Krigul; **Study Questions:** Randall Von Wedel, CytoCulture Int'l.

Chapter 28 Opener: Dr. Tony Brain/Science Source; **In the Clinic:** MBI/Shutterstock; **p.** 824**:** Lack-O'Keen/Shutterstock; **Fig 28.5:** Neil Phillips/Cephas Picture Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **Fig 28.7a:** Maximilian Stock Ltd/Science Source; **Fig 28.9:** CP Kelco U.S., Inc.; **Fig 28.10:** Slava Epstein, Northeastern University, Boston USA; **Fig 28.13:** ValterCunha/iStock/Getty Images Plus; **Exploring the Microbiome:** Ferree PM, Frydman HM, Li JM, Cao J, Wieschaus E, Sullivan W (2005) Wolbachia Utilizes Host Microtubules and Dynein for Anterior Localization in the Drosophila Oocyte. *PLoS Pathog* 1(2): e14. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.ppat.0010014.

Trademark Attributions

Chapter 2 NutraSweet®

Chapter 4 MacroBID®

Chapter 6 OxyPlate™

Chapter 7 Lysol®; pHisoHex®; Betadine®; Clorox®; Chlor-Floc®; Purell®; Germ-X®; Zephiran®; Surfacine®; Xgel; Cē-pacol®; Cidex®; Bioquell

Chapter 9 Glybera®; Flavr Savr™; GloFish®

Chapter 13 Imylgic™

Chapter 16 Intron® A; Betaseron®; Actimmune®

Chapter 18 Nanopatch™; Herceptin®; Rotarix®; Rota Teq®

Chapter 19 Xolair®; Singulair®; RhoGAM®; Yulex®; Herceptin®; Adcetris®; OraQuick®; APTIMA®; Truvada®; Atripla®

Chapter 20 Augmentin®; Primaxin®; MacroBID®; Synercid®; Cipro®; Relenza®; Tamiflu®; Truvada®

Chapter 21 CLEARLight®; Smoothbeam®; ThermaClear®; Accutane®; Roaccutane®; LiceMD®

Chapter 22 BabyBIG®; Botox®

Chapter 25 Lomotil®; Pepto-Bismol®

Chapter 26 OraQuick®; Uritest

Chapter 27 $Vent_R$®; Deep $Vent_R$™

Chapter 28 NutraSweet®

This page intentionally left blank

Taxonomic Guide to Diseases

Bacteria and the Diseases They Cause

Pseudomonadota

Alphaproteobacteria		Chapter
Anaplasmosis	*Anaplasma phagocytophilum*	23
Brucellosis	*Brucella* spp.	23
Cat-scratch disease	*Bartonella henselae*	23
Ehrlichiosis	*Ehrlichia* spp.	23
Endemic (murine) typhus	*Rickettsia typhi*	23
Spotted fever rickettsiosis	*Rickettsia* spp.	23
Typhus fever	*R. prowazekii*	23
Betaproteobacteria		
Gonorrhea	*Neisseria gonorrhoeae*	26
Melioidosis	*Burkholderia pseudomallei*	24
Meningitis	*N. meningitidis*	22
Healthcare-associated infections	*Burkholderia* spp.	15
Ophthalmia neonatorum	*N. gonorrhoeae*	21
Pelvic inflammatory disease	*N. gonorrhoeae*	26
Rat-bite fever	*Spirillum minor*	23
Pertussis (Whooping cough)	*Bordetella pertussis*	24
Gammaproteobacteria		
Animal bites	*Pasteurella multocida*	23
Chancroid	*Haemophilus ducreyi*	26
Cholera	*Vibrio cholerae*	25
Conjunctivitis	*H. influenzae*	21
Cystitis	*Escherichia coli*	26
Dermatitis	*Pseudomonas aeruginosa*	21
Epiglottitis	*H. influenzae*	24
Gastroenteritis	*E. coli*	25
Gastroenteritis	*V. parahaemolyticus*	25
Gastroenteritis	*Yersinia enterocolitica*	25
Gastroenteritis	*Y. pseudotuberculosis*	25
Legionellosis	*Legionella pneumophila*	24
Meningitis	*H. influenzae*	22
Otitis externa	*Pseudomonas aeruginosa*	21
Otitis media	*H. influenzae*	24
Otitis media	*Moraxella catarrhalis*	24
Paratyphoid fever	*Salmonella enterica* Paratyphi	25
Plague	*Y. pestis*	23
Pneumonia	*H. influenzae*	24
Pyelonephritis	*E. coli*	26
Q fever	*Coxiella burnetii*	24
Salmonellosis	*Salmonella enterica*	25
Shigellosis (Bacillary dystentery)	*Shigella* spp.	25
Tularemia	*Francisella tularensis*	23
Typhoid fever	*Salmonella enterica* Typhi	25

Campylobacterota

Campylobacteriosis	*Campylobacter jejuni*	25
Gastritis, peptic ulcers	*Helicobacter pylori*	25

Taxonomic Guide to Diseases (continued)

Bacillota

Clostridia

Botulism	*Clostridium botulinum*	22
Gangrene	*Clostridium perfringens*	23
Gastroenteritis	*Clostridioides difficile*	25
Gastroenteritis	*Clostridium perfringens*	25
Tetanus	*Clostridium tetani*	22

Bacilli

Anthrax	*Bacillus anthracis*	23
Bacterial endocarditis	*Staphylococcus aureus*	23
Cystitis	*Staphylococcus saprophyticus*	26
Dental caries	*Streptococcus mutans*	25
Endocarditis	Alpha-hemolytic streptococci	23
Erysipelas	*Streptococcus pyogenes*	21
Folliculitis	*Staphylococcus aureus*	21
Food poisoning	*Staphylococcus aureus*	25
Gastroenteritis	*B. cereus*	25
Impetigo	*Staphylococcus. aureus, Streptococcus pyogenes*	21
Listeriosis	*Listeria monocytogenes*	22
Meningitis	*Streptococcus agalactiae*	23
Meningitis	*Streptococcus pneumoniae*	22
MRSA infections	*Staphylococcus aureus*	21
Necrotizing fasciitis	*Streptococcus pyogenes*	21
Otitis media	*S. pneumoniae*	24
Pericarditis	*S. pyogenes*	23
Pneumonia	*S. pneumoniae*	24
Puerperal sepsis	*S. pyogenes*	23
Rheumatic fever	*S. pyogenes*	23
Scalded skin syndrome	*Staphylococcus aureus*	21
Scarlet fever	*Streptococcus pyogenes*	24
Gram-negative sepsis	*Klebsiella, Pseudomonas aeruginosa*	23
Gram-positive sepsis	*Streptococcus agalactiae, Enterococcus* spp.	23
Strep throat	*S. pyogenes*	24
Toxic shock syndrome	*Staphylococcus aureus, Streptococcus pyogenes*	21
Vaginosis	*Megasphaera* sp.	26

Mycoplasmatota

Pneumonia	*Mycoplasma pneumoniae*	24
Urethritis	*Chlamydia trachomatis, Mycoplasma genitalium*	26

Actinomycetota

Abscess	*Mycobacterium abscessus*	5
Acne	*Cutibacterium acnes*	21
Buruli ulcer	*M. ulcerans*	21
Diphtheria	*Corynebacterium diphtheriae*	24
Leprosy	*M. leprae*	22
Pneumonitis	Rapidly growing mycobacteria	24
Tuberculosis	*M. tuberculosis. M. bovis*	24
Vaginosis	*Gardnerella vaginalis, Atopobium vaginae*	26

Taxonomic Guide to Diseases (continued)

Chlamydiota

Inclusion conjunctivitis	*Chlamydia trachomatis*	21
Lymphogranuloma venereum	*C. trachomatis*	26
Pelvic inflammatory disease	*C. trachomatis*	26
Pneumonia	*C. pneumoniae*	24
Psittacosis	*C. psittaci*	24
Trachoma	*C. trachomatis*	21
Urethritis	*C. trachomatis*	26

Spirochaetota

Leptospirosis	*Leptospira interrogans*	26
Lyme disease	*Borreliella burgdorferi, B. mayonii*	23
Relapsing fever	*Borrelia* spp.	23
Syphilis	*Treponema pallidum*	21, 26

Bacteroidota

Acute necrotizing gingivitis	*Prevotella intermedia*	25
Gram-negative sepsis	*Elizabethkingia* spp.	23
Periodontal disease	*Porphyromonas* spp.	25
Septic shock	*Capnocytophaga canimorsus*	17

Fusobacteriota

Rat-bite fever	*Streptobacillus moniliformis*	23

Fungi and the Diseases They Cause

Mucoromycota

Opportunistic infections	*Mucor, Rhizopus*	24

Microsporidia

Opportunistic infections	*Encephalitozoon intestinalis*	Figure 12.8

Ascomycota

Aflatoxin poisoning	*Aspergillus flavus*	25
Aspergillosis	*Aspergillus fumigatus*	24
Blastomycosis	*Blastomyces dermatitidis*	24
Candidiasis	*Candida albicans*	21, 26
Coccidioidomycosis	*Coccidioides immitis*	24
Ergot poisoning	*Claviceps purpurea*	25
Histoplasmosis	*Histoplasma capsulatum*	24
Pneumocystis pneumonia	*Pneumocystis jirovecii*	24
Ringworm, athlete's foot	*Microsporum, Trichophyton, Epidermophyton*	21
Sepsis	*Candida auris*	23
Sporotrichosis	*Sporothrix schenckii*	21

Basidiomycota

Dandruff	*Malassezia furfur*	21
Meningitis	*Cryptococcus* spp.	22
Mycotoxins		25

Taxonomic Guide to Diseases (continued)

Protozoa and the Diseases They Cause

Diplomonads		
Giardiasis	*Giardia duodenalis*	25
Parabasilids		
Trichomoniasis	*Trichomonas vaginalis*	26
Euglenozoa		
African trypanosomiasis	*Trypanosoma brucei*	22
Chagas disease	*T. cruzi*	23
Leishmaniasis	*Leishmania* spp.	23
Meningoencephalitis	*Naegleria fowleri*	22
Apicomplexa		
Babesiosis	*Babesia microti*	23
Cryptosporidiosis	*Cryptosporidium* spp.	25
Cyclosporiasis	*Cyclospora cayetanensis*	25
Cystoisosporiasis	*Cystoisospora belli*	19
Malaria	*Plasmodium* spp.	23
Toxoplasmosis	*Toxoplasma gondii*	23
Amoebozoa		
Amebic dysentery	*Entamoeba histolytica*	25
Granulomatous amebic encephalitis	*Acanthamoeba* spp., *Balamuthia mandrillaris*	22
Keratitis	*Acanthamoeba* spp.	21
Ciliophora		
Dysentery	*Balantidium coli*	12

Algae and the Diseases They Cause

Diatoms and Dinoflagellates		
Amnesic shellfish poisoning	*Pseudo-nitzschia*	15
Ciguatera	*Gambierdiscus toxicus*	15
Paralytic shellfish poisoning	*Alexandrium*	15, Figure 27.10
Pfiesteria-human illness syndrome	*Pfiesteria*	12
Oomycota		
Potato blight	*Phytophthora*	12
Saprolegniasis	*Saprolegnia*	Figure 12.16

Helminths and the Diseases They Cause

Platyhelminths		
Hydatid disease	*Echinococcus granulosus*	25
Lung fluke	*Paragonimus* spp.	Figure 12.26
Schistosomiasis	*Schistosoma* spp.	23
Tapeworm infections	*Diphyllobothrium latum*, *Taenia* spp.	25
Nematoda		
Ascariasis	*Ascaris lumbricoides*	25
Hookworms	*Necator americanus*, *Ancylostoma duodenale*	25
Lymphatic filariasis	*Wuchereria bancrofti*	15
Pinworms	*Enterobius vermicularis*	25
River blindness	*Onchocerca volvulus*	21
Trichinellosis	*Trichinella spiralis*	25
Whipworm	*Trichuris trichiura*	25

Taxonomic Guide to Diseases (continued)

Arthropods and the Diseases They Cause

Pediculosis	*Pediculus humanus*	21
Scabies	*Sarcoptes scabiei*	21

Viruses and the Diseases They Cause

Double-stranded DNA Viruses

Adenoviridae

Common cold	*Mastadenovirus human mastadenovirus*	21
Conjunctivitis	*Mastadenovirus human mastadenovirus*	21

Herpesviridae

Burkitt's lymphoma	*Lymphocryptovirus human gammaherpesvirus 4*	23
Chickenpox	*Varicellovirus human alphaherpesvirus 3*	21
Cold sores	*Simplexvirus human alphaherpesvirus 1*	21
Cytomegalovirus infections	*Cytomegalovirus human betaherpesvirus 5*	23
Genital herpes	*Simplexvirus human alphaherpesvirus 2*	26
Kaposi's sarcoma	*Rhadinovirus human gammaherpesvirus 8*	19
Infectious mononucleosis	*Lymphocryptovirus human gammaherpesvirus 4*	23
Keratitis	*Simplexvirus human alphaherpesvirus 1*	21
Neonatal herpes	*Simplexvirus human alphaherpesvirus 1* or *2*	26
Roseola	*Roseolovirus betaherpesvirus* 6 and 7	21
Shingles	*Varicellovirus human alphaherpesvirus 3*	21
Smallpox	*Orthopoxvirus variola virus*	21

Papovaviridae

Genital warts	*Alphapapillomavirus species 10*	26
Warts	*Alphapapillomavirus species 10*	21

Poxviridae

Molluscum contagiosum	*Molluscipoxvirus molluscum contagiosum virus*	21
MPOX	*Orthopoxvirus mpxv*	21
Smallpox	*Orthopoxvirus variola virus*	21

Single-stranded DNA

Parvoviridae

Fifth disease	*Erythroparvovirus primate erythroparvovirus 1*	21

Double-stranded DNA uses reverse transcriptase

Hepatitis B	*Orthohepadnavirus hepatitis B virus*	25

Double stranded, RNA Viruses

Reoviridae

Gastroenteritis	*Rotavirus* spp.	25

Single stranded, + strand RNA Viruses

Coronaviridae

Common cold	*Coronavirus* spp.	24
COVID-19	*Coronavirus SARS coronavirus 2*	24
Middle East Respiratory Syndrome	*Coronavirus Middle East respiratory syndrome-related coronavirus*	24
SARS	*Coronavirus Severe acute respiratory syndrome-related coronavirus*	24

Caliciviridae

Gastroenteritis	*Norovirus*	25

Taxonomic Guide to Diseases (continued)

Flaviviridae		
Dengue	*Flavivirus dengue virus*	23
Encephalitis	*Flavivirus* spp.	22
Hepatitis C	*Hepacivirus hepacivirus C*	25
Yellow fever	*Flavivirus yellow fever virus*	23
Zika virus disease	*Flavivirus zika virus*	22
Hepeviridae		
Hepatitis E	*Orthohepevirus orthohepevirus A*	25
Matonaviridae		
Rubella	*Rubivirus rubellae*	21
Picornaviridae		
Acute flaccid myelitis	*Enterovirus enterovirus D*	24
Common cold	*Enterovirus rhinovirus*	24
Hand-foot-mouth disease	*Enterovirus enterovirus A*	21
Hepatitis A	*Hepatovirus hepatovirus A*	25
Poliomyelitis	*Enterovirus enterovirus C*	22
Togaviridae		
Chikungunya	*Alphavirus chikungunya virus*	22
Encephalitis	*Alphavirus* spp.	22
Single stranded, – strand RNA Viruses		
Lyssavirus encephalitis	*Lyssavirus* spp.	22
Rabies	*Lyssavirus rabies lyssavirus*	22
Single stranded RNA Viruses, Produce DNA		
Retroviridae		
AIDS	*Lentivirus HIV 1, Lentivirus HIV 2*	19
Virusoids and the Diseases They Cause		
Hepatitis D	*Deltavirus*	25
Prions and the Diseases They Cause		
Transmissible spongiform encephalopathies		22

Index

Note: The letter *t* following a page number indicates tabular material, *f* indicates a figure or illustration, *c* indicates a Clinical Case, and a page number in **boldface** indicates a definition.

A
A (amino) site, **215,** 216*f*
A-B toxins, **435,** 437*f,* 438*t*
abdominal cramps, 734
ABO blood group antigens, 486, **535**–538, 535*t,* 537*f,* 538*f*
abortion
  C. perfringens, gas gangrene, 664
  Campylobacter, 308
  Listeria monocytogenes, 431, 627
  neonatal herpes, 785
  puerperal sepsis, 417, **658**
abscess, 465*f,* **466, 597**
  brain, 346
  dental, 311, 732
  furncle (boil), 597
  intestinal wall, 736*f,* 755*t*
  Pseudomonas, 303
absorbance, 173, 174*f*
absorption, digestive system, 729
Acanthamoeba, 345–346, 348*t,* 629*t,* 645
Acanthamoeba keratitis, 614*t,* **615**
acetic acid, fermentation, 132*t*
Acetobacter, 132*t,* 134, 261, 298*f,* 299, 826, 830
acetone
  fermentation, 130*t,* 132*t*
  industrial production of, 2, 132*t,* 243, 827
acetyl CoA, 120–121, 120*f*
  amino acid biosynthesis, 143, 143*f*
  Krebs cycle and, 123, 124*f,* 128*t*
  lipid biosynthesis, 142–143, 142*f*
  nucleotide biosynthesis, 143, 144*f*
acetyl group, 123
acid, **32,** 32*f*
  enzymes, effect on, 114–115, 115*f*
  gastric juices, 456
  pH scale, 32–33, 33*f*
acid-anionic sanitizer, 195, 200*t*
acid-base balance, 32–33, 33*f*
acid-fast cell wall, 83
acid-fast stain, **66,** 67*f,* 68*t,* 701
acid fuchsin, 65
acidic dyes, **64**
Acidithiobacillus, 91, 302
  A. ferroxidans, 33, 140, 831, 832*f*
  A. thioxidans, 140
acidophiles, **154**
Acinetobacter, 198, 302, 303
  A. baumannii, 198, 205, 303, 412*t,* 572, 582
  antibacterial drugs for, 567*t,* 572
  antibiotic resistance, 205, 582
  gene transformation, 235
  skin microbiota, 398*t,* 594
ACME (arginine catabolic mobile element), 431
acne, 317, 456, **601**–602, 603*t,* 604, 604*f*
  visible blue light treatment, 188, 188*t*
acquired immunodeficiencies, **548**–556, 548*ft*
acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)
  antiviral drugs, 226, 577–578, 578*f*
  case reporting, 419, 421*t*
  Clinical Case, HIV tracking, 244*c,* 250*c,* 253*c,* 255*c,* 257*c*
  Foundation Figure, HIV infection progression, 552, 552*f*
  HIV, host cell penetration, 433
  HIV, isolation and study, 373
  HIV, T cells and, 453*f*
  HIV cytopathology, 442*t*
  HIV diagnostic methods, 553
  HIV host defense evasion, 440–441
  HIV infection, overview of, 549–556, 550*f,* 551*t,* 552*f,* 554*f,* 555*f*
  HIV transmission, 553–554, 554*f,* 786
  incidence and prevalence of disease, 402
  opportunistic pathogens, **334**–335, 337, 400, 551, 551*t,* 721–722, 721*f*
  origin of, 549
  prevention and treatment, 554–556, 555*f*
  retrovirus biosynthesis, 383*f,* 384, 385*f*
  serological testing, 284, 524
  vaccine development, 373, 508, 556
  variations in HIV exposure response, 553–554
  worldwide incidence, 554, 554*f*
Acremonium chrysogenum, 336
actin, 433
Actinobacter, 297*t,* 594
Actinobacteria, 297*t,* 771
Actinomyces, 317, 318, 319*f,* 732, 771
  A. israelii, 318
  adherence, 430
  dental plaque, 430, 732
  normal microbiota, 398*t,* 771
actinomycetes, 317
  antibiotics from, 562, 562*t*
  conidiospores, 166
  dry weight measurements, 175
  G+C content, 313
  gingivitis, 733
  soil microbiome, 796
  Streptomyces, 318
Actinomycetota, 317–318, 318*f,* 319*f*
actinomycosis, 318
activated charcoal filters, 808
activated macrophages, **492,** 492*f*
activated sludge system, **810,** 810*f*
activation energy, **111**
activation of complement system, **489,** 490*f*
active site, 112–113, 112*f*
  denaturation and, 114, 115*f*
  inhibitors, 115–116, 116*f*
active transport, **89**–90, 97
ACTs (Artemisinin-based combination therapies), 579
acute bacterial endocarditis, **659,** 659*f*
acute disease, **403**
acute flaccid myelitis (AFM), **648**
acute inflammation, **465**–467, 465*f,* 466*t. See also* inflammation
acute necrotizing ulcerative gingivitis, **733,** 733*f,* 734*t*
acute-phase proteins, **465**–467, 465*f,* 466*t*
acyclovir, 577, 578*f*
acyldepsipeptides, 570
adaptive immunity, **451,** 452*f,* 480, **481**. *See also* vaccines
  antibodies, **484**–486, 485*f,* 485*t*
  antigen-antibody complex, **489,** 490*f*
  antigen-presenting cells (APCs), **491**–492, 492*f,* 493*f*
  antigenic variation, **432**–433
  antigens, **483**–484, 484*f*
  cellular immune response, 490–496, 491*f,* 492*f,* 493*f,* 494*f,* 496*f,* 497*t*
  Clinical Case, sepsis, 483*c,* 486*c,* 489*c,* 492*c,* 496*c*
  cytokines, **482**–483, 482*t*
  digestive system and, 729, 730
  dual system, humoral and cellular, **481**–482, 482*f*
  Foundation Figure, 499*f*
  humoral immune response, 487–488, 487*f,* 488*f,* 489*f*
  hypersensitivity, **529**–540, 529*t,* 530*f,* 531*f,* 534*f*
  immunological memory, 497–498, 497*f*
  lymphoid (lymphatic) system, structure and function, 654–**655,** 655*f,* 656*f*
  nonspecific and extracellular killing, 496–497, 496*f,* 497*t*
  self and nonself recognition, 480, 481, 494, 496–497, 499*f,* 540, 542, 546, 549*c,* 556*c*
  serology, **282,** 284*f,* 285*f*
  skin microbiota and, 495
  superantigens, 437
  types of, 498, 498*f*
ADCC (antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity), **489,** 490*f,* 496*f,* **497,** 497*t*
adefovir dipivoxil, 576*t*
adenine (A)
  DNA base pairs, **208**
  nucleic acids, overview, 44–46, 45*f,* 46*f,* 47*t*
  protein synthesis, 213–218, 214*f,* 215*f,* 216*f,* 217*f*
adenine nucleoside, 224, 225*f*
adenocarcinoma, **386**
adenosine deaminase (ADA) deficiency, 16
adenosine diphosphate (ADP), **46,** 46*f*
  metabolic reactions, 110–111, 110*f*
  metabolic reactions, energy production overview, 117–119, 118*f*
  respiration and fermentation, 120–121, 120*f*
adenosine diphosphoglucose (ADPG), 142, 142*f*
adenosine triphosphate (ATP), **46,** 46*f*
  active transport, **89**–90
  cellular respiration, 123–128, 124*f,* 125*f,* 126*f,* 127*f,* 128*t,* 133*t*
  chemiosmosis, **126**–127, 126*f,* 127*f*
  DNA replication, energy for, 212–213, 212*f,* 213*f*
  energy production, summary, 138, 138*f*
  fermentation, 128–132, 129*f,* 130*f,* 131*f,* 132*t,* 133*t*
  glycolysis, 120*f,* 121, 122*f*
  inorganic phosphate reserves, 91
  metabolic pathways, overview, 140–142, 142*f*
  metabolic reactions, 108, 110–111, 110*f*
  metabolic reactions, energy production overview, 117–119, 118*f*
  microbial nutrient needs, 155
  mitochondria, 101
  photosynthesis, 135–137, 136*f,* 137*f*
  respiration and fermentation, 120–121, 120*f*
Adenoviridae, 370*t,* 442*t*
  attachment to host, 379, 379*t*
  biosynthesis of, 380, 380*t,* 381*f*
  conjunctivitis, **613,** 614*t*
  gene therapy, 248, 256
  inclusion bodies, 441–442, 441*f*
  morphology, 366*f,* 368
  oncogenic viruses, 387
  resistance to antiviral proteins, 473
  vaccines, 508
adenoviruses
  attachment, 379
  biosynthesis, 380
  conjunctivitis, 613, 614*t*
  cytopathic effects, 442*t*
  gene therapy, 256
  inclusion bodies, 441–442
  interferon resistance, 473
  morphology, 366*f,* 368, 381*f*
  vaccines, 508, 509
  vectors, 248
adherence, **430**–431, 430*f,* **462,** 463*f*
adhesins, **430**–431, 430*f*
adhesion, **430**–431, 430*f*
adjuvants, **508**
ADPG (adenosine diphosphoglucose), 142, 142*f*
adsorption, bacteriophage, 375, 376*f*
adult stem cells, **544**
Aedes
  arboviral encephalitis, 643*t*
  chikungunya, **675,** 676–677
  climate change and, 676–677
  as disease arthropod vector, 359*t,* 410*t,* 668*t*
  emerging infectious diseases, 416
  trichinellosis, 356–357
  Zika virus disease, 18, **639,** 640, 640*f,* 641*f,* 642, 834
  zoonoses of, 408*t*
Aedes aegypti
  chikungunya, **675,** 676–677
  climate change and, 676–677
  dengue, 688*c*
  emerging infectious diseases, 416
  rDNA products, 263*t,* 301
  viral hemorrhagic fever, 680*t*
  Zika virus, 834

Aedes albopictus, dengue, 678
aerial hypha, 327–328, 328*f*
aerobe, **123**
  culture media for, 156–157, 156*t*
  habitats of, 795
  obligate aerobes, **156**
aerobic respiration, **123**–128, 124*f*, 125*f*, 126*f*, 127*f*, 128*t*, 133*t*, 138*f*
Aeromonas hydrophila, 281*f*
aerotolerant anaerobes, 156*t*, **157**
aflatoxin, 226, **443**
aflatoxin poisoning, **754,** 755*t*
AFM (atomic force microscopy), **61,** 61*f*, 64*t*
African trypanosomiasis, 410*t*, 444, 616–617, **644,** 644*f*, 649*t*
agammaglobulinemia, 514
agar, 9*f*, **160,** 161*t*, 341. *See also* culture media
  bismuth sulfite agar, 162, 282*c*, 284*c*
  blood agar, 162, 163*f*
  gel electrophoresis, 259
  immunoelectrophoresis, **514**
  industrial uses, 341
  MacConkey's agar, 772
  mannitol salt agar, 163, 163*f*, 420, 420*f*
  master plate, 227, 228*f*
  nutrient agar, **161,** 161*t*
  peptone iron agar, 135*f*
  plaque method, 372–373, 372*f*
  pour plates and spreads, 171, 171*f*
  Thayer-Martin agar, 789
age, disease and, 405, 474
agglutination, **489,** 490*f*, **515**–516, 515*f*, 516*f*
agranulocytes, 459*t*, **460**
agranulocytosis, **538,** 538*f*
agriculture. *See also* soil microbiology
  algae, crop damage from, 342–343, 342*f*
  anthrax vaccines, 663
  antibiotic use in, 584, 586, 586*f*
  biotechnology, safety and ethics, 264
  biotechnology applications, 261–263, 262*f*, 263*t*
  climate change and, 814–815
  fungi, economic effects of, 336
  Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP), **820**–821, 821*f*
  nitrogen fixation, 798–799, 799*f*, 800*f*
  plant parasites, 342
  recombinant DNA technology and, 16
  water pollution, 805–806
Agrobacterium, 121, 232, 298*f*, 300
  A. tumefaciens, 261–263, 262*f*, 263*f*, 300
AIDS. *See* acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)
airborne precautions, 413–414
airborne transmission, disease, **409,** 409*f*, 715
  SARS-CoV-2 (COVID-19) virus, **715**
alanine (Ala, A), 41*t*, 215*f*
alarmone, 220
albendazole, 579
alcohol, **193**
  beverage production, 825–826, 826*f*
  enzymes, effect on, 101, 114, 115*f*
  Gram stain, 65–66, 65*f*, 83
  microbial control, 193, 193*t*, 199*t*, 200*t*
  plasma membrane, effect on, 87
alcohol fermentation, **131**
alcohol functional group, 34–35, 34*t*
aldehyde functional group, 34–35, 34*t*
aldehydes, microbial control, **196,** 200*t*
Alexandrium, 348*t*, 444
alexidine, 191
algae, **5**–6. *See also* cyanobacteria; eukaryotes
  algicide, 194
  biofilms, 430, 740
  as biofuel, 833
  brown algae, 339–341, 340*f*
  carbon cycle and, 15, 343, 797*f*
  cell wall, 36, 80, 96–97
  characteristics, 338–343, 339*t*
  chloroplasts, 101, 102*f*
  classification, 6, 271, 272*f*, 338–339, 339*t*
  crop damage from, 342–343
  diatoms, 341, 341*f*, 342, 343
  digestion of, microbiome, 3
  dinoflagellates, 341–342, 341*f*, 343
  eutrophication, **805**–806, 806*f*
  extreme environments, 802
  flagella, 96
  food chain, role in, 343
  green algae, 340*f*, 341
  habitats, 340*f*
  harmful algal blooms, 444
  industrial uses, 341
  lichen, **337**–338, 338*f*
  metachromatic granules, 91
  nutrition, 339
  oomycotes, 342–343, 342*f*
  pathogenic eukaryotes, 326*f*
  pathogenicity mechanisms, 444
  petroleum reserves, 343
  photoautotrophs, **139,** 139*f*, 140*t*
  photosynthesis, 135–137, 136*f*, 137*f*, 339
  red algae, 340*f*, 341
  reproduction, 93, 338–343, 340*f*, 341*f*, 342*f*
  role in nature, 343, 804
  as symbionts, 343
  toxins, 342–343, 444
  water molds, 342–343, 342*f*
  water treatment, oxidation ponds, 813
  Zobelilia galactanivorans, 3
algal blooms, **343, 806**
algin, **341**
Aliivibrio fischeri, 805*f*
alimentary canal. *See* digestive system
alkalinity, pH scale, 32–33, 33*f*
alkylation, 197
allergen, **529**
allergic contact dermatitis, **539**–540, 539*f*, 540*f*
allergic reactions
  haptens, 484, 484*f*
  type I (anaphylactic) reactions, **529**–534, 529*t*, 530*f*, 531*f*, 534*f*
  type II (cytotoxic) reactions, 529*t*, **535**–538, 535*t*, 537*f*, 538*f*
  type III (immune complex) reactions, **538**–539, 538*f*
  type IV (delayed cell-mediated) reactions, **539**–540, 539*f*, 540*f*
allograft, **545**
allosteric inhibition, **116,** 116*f*
allosteric site, **116,** 116*f*
allylamines, **575,** 576*t*
alpha amino acids, 40
alpha-hemolytic streptococci, 315–316
alpha interferon (IFN-α), **472**–473, 473*f*, 578
alpha (α)-ketoglutaric acid, 123, 124*f*
Alphacoronavirus, 699, 699*t*
Alphainfluenzavirus, 367, 432–433, 441
Alphapapillomavirus, 380*t*, 382
Alphaproteobacteria, 298–301, 299*f*, 300*f*
Alphavirus, 382, 410*t*
Alphavirus EEE, 638
alternative energy, microbes and, 832–834
alternative pathway, complement, **469**–470, 469*f*
alum, 508
alveolar macrophages, 462, 694
Alzheimer's disease, 472, 508
Amanita phalloides, 443
amanitin, **443**
amantadine, 577
amastigote, 685
Amblyomma americanum, 670
Amblyomma maculatum, 672
amebae, 5, 5*f*, **345**–346, 345*f*
amebiasis, 755*t*, **757**–758, 758*f*
amebic dysentery, 345, 755*t*, **757**–758, 758*f*
amebic encephalitis, 579
amebic meningoencephalitis, 629*t*, **645,** 645*f*
amebocytes, 439
American trypanosomiasis, 668*t*, **679**–681, 681*f*
Ames test, **228**–229, 229*f*, 235*c*
amination, **143,** 143*f*
amino (A) site, **215,** 216*f*
amino acids, **40**
  atypical cell walls, 83
  biosynthesis, 143, 143*f*
  functional groups, 34*t*, 35
  genetic code, 215, 215*t*
  industrial production, 829
  isomers, 829
  microbial nutrient needs, 155
  nitrogen cycle, **797**–799, 798*f*, 799*f*, 800*f*
  peptidoglycan, 81, 81*f*
  proteins, structure of, 40–44, 40*f*, 41*t*, 42*f*, 43*f*
  RNA and protein synthesis, 213–218, 214*f*, 215*f*, 216*f*, 217*f*
amino functional group, 34–35, 34*t*, 40
aminoglycosides, 567*t*, **571**
aminopenicillins, 569
2-aminopurine nucleoside, 225, 225*f*
ammonification, **797,** 798*f*
amnesic shellfish poisoning, 444
amoeba. *See* amebae
Amoebozoa, 348*t*
amordant, **65**
Amorphea, 348*t*
amoxicillin, 566*t*, 569
amp gene, 253–254
amphibolic pathways, **144,** 145*f*
amphitrichous, **77,** 77*f*
ampicillin, 253, 566*t*, 569
AMPs (antimicrobial peptides), **474,** 587, 730
amylase, 36, 456, 829
amylopectin, 37
amylose, 37
anabolic pathways, 108, 110–111, 110*f*
  amphibolic pathways, 144, 145*f*
anabolism, **30, 110**
anaerobe, 65, **123**
anaerobic chamber, 162, 162*f*
anaerobic growth media and methods, 161–162, 161*f*, 162*f*
anaerobic respiration, **123,** 128, 133*t*, 138*f*
anaerobic sludge digesters, **811**–812, 811*f*
anal gonorrhea, **775**
anal pore, **344**
analytical epidemiology, **419**
anamnestic response, **497**–498, 497*f*
anaphylactic shock, **530**–531
anaphylactic (type I) reactions, **529**–534, 529*t*, 530*f*, 531*f*, 534*f*
anaphylaxis, **529**–534, 529*t*, 530*f*, 531*f*, 534*f*
Anaplasma phagocytophilum, 670
anaplasmosis, 668*t*, **670**
Ancylostoma duodenale, 356, 760, 760*f*
anemia
  aplastic anemia, 571
  Babesia microti, 347, 348*t*
  fifth disease, 609
  hemolytic anemia, 538
  hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDNB), **537**
  hookworms, 755*t*, 760
  human parvovirus, 370*t*
  malignant malaria, 683
  rDNA products for, 258*t*
  trichuriasis, 761
Angiostrongylus cantonensis, 416
animal feed
  algae as, 833
  antibiotics in, 584, 586, 586*f*
animal hides, *Bacillus anthracis*, 25*c*, 42*c*, 44*c*, 46*c*
animal viruses. *See also* viruses; specific virus names
  characteristics of, 364, 366
  cytopathic effects, **441**–442, 441*f*, 442*ft*
  DNA viruses, 380–384, 380*t*, 381*f*, 383*f*
  growing in laboratory, 373–374, 373*f*, 374*f*
  latency, 379*t*
  multiplication of, 375, 375*f*, 379–386, 379*t*, 380*ft*, 381*f*, 383*f*, 384*f*, 385*f*, 386*f*
  RNA viruses, 384, 385*f*, 386*f*
Animalia, Kingdom of, 277
animals
  animal cells, 94–96, 95*f*, 96*t* (*See also* eukaryotes)
  bites and scratches, 664–665, 666*t*
  use in virus cultures, 373–374, 373*f*, 374*f*
  zoonoses, **407,** 408*t*
anions, **27,** 28*f*
anisakines, 357
Anopheles
  malaria, **682**–684, 682*f*, 683*f*
  Plasmodium infection, 346–347, 346*f*, 348*t*, 357, 359*t*, 408*t*, 410*t*, 668*t*
anoxygenic, **139,** 139*f*, 140*t*
antagonism, drug actions, **585**
antagonism, microbial, 398*t*, **399**
anthrax, **661,** 661*f*, 663, 666*t*
  B. anthracis, characteristics, 314, 314*f*
  bioterrorism, 24, 24*f*, 259, 702–703
  capsule, 77, 432
  Clinical Case, 25*c*, 42*c*, 44*c*, 46*c*
  endospores, **92**–94, 93*f*, 197
  host cell penetration, 432
  ID_{50}, **429**–430
  Koch's postulates, 10, 400–401, 401*f*

Index

portal of entry, 429*t*
toxin, mechanism of action, 231, 438*t*
zoonoses, 408*t*
anti-human immune serum globulin (anti-HISG), **518**–519, 519*f*
antibacterial products, 19
antibiogram, **581**
antibiosis, 561, 561*f*
antibiotic resistance, 12, **562,** 581–585, 582*f,* 583*f,* 584*f*
Clinical Case, antibiotic resistance, 561*c,* 571*c,* 581*c,* 584*c,* 588*c*
Clinical Case, MRSA (methicillin-resistant *S. aureus*), 3*c,* 16*c,* 18*c,* 19*c,* 20*c*
Foundation Figure, drug resistance, 582, 582*f*
MRSA (methicillin-resistant *S. aureus*), 1, **18,** 205, 207, 431, **569,** 582–583
resistance transfer factor (RTF), 232
vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus,* 205
antibiotics, **11,** 196
activity spectrum, narrow or broad, 562–563, 564*t*
allergic reactions, 541
aminoglycosides, 571
antifungal drugs, 575–577, 575*f*
blood-brain barrier, 623
cell wall synthesis inhibition, 563, 564*f,* 566–570, 566*t,* 568*f,* 569*f,* 570*f*
chemotherapy, tests for, 579–581, 580*f,* 581*f*
chloramphenicol, 571
Clinical Focus, use in agriculture, 586, 586*f*
commonly used, summary table, 566*t*–567*t*
drug combinations, 585
eukaryote cell wall and, 97
Foundation Figure, mechanism of action, 563, 563*f*
future directions, 585, 587–588
glycyclines, **572**
healthcare-associated infections (HAIs), **411**–414, 411*f,* 412*t*
history of, 11–13, 11*f,* 12*f,* 561–562, 561*f,* 562*t*
horizontal gene transfer and antibiotic use, 232
industrial production, 830
macrolides, **572,** 572*f*
mechanism of action, 85, 88–89
metabolite synthesis inhibition, 564–565, 567*t,* 574, 574*f*
microbiota, effect on, 399, 400
MODS (Microscopic-Observation Drug-Susceptibility Assay), 706
nitrofurantoin, 571
nucleic acid synthesis inhibition, 567*t,* 573
oxazolidinones, **573**
penicillin, **566,** 568–569, 568*f,* 569*f*
peptic ulcer disease, 744
plasma membrane injury, 564, 565*f,* 567*t*
pleuromutilins, **573**
protein synthesis inhibition, 563–564, 565*f,* 567*t,* 571–573, 571*f,* 572*f*
quinolones and fluoroquinolones, **573**–574
ribosomes, action on, 91, 91*f*
rifamycin, **573**
safety concerns, 585
streptogramins, **572**
tetracycline, **571**–572, 572*f*
for tuberculosis, 705–706
for typhoid fever, 739
antibodies, **57, 481, 484**–486, 485*f,* 485*t*. *See also* diagnostic immunology; immunity, adaptive; vaccines
ABO blood group antigens, 486
antigen-antibody complex, **489,** 490*f*
blocking antibodies, 534
complement activation, **468**–470, 469*f*
ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay), **284,** 284*f*
fluorescent-antibody (FA) technique, **57**–58, 57*f*
HIV antigens and, 441
humoral immune response, 487–488, 487*f,* 488*f,* 489*f*
hypersensitivity responses, **529**–540, 529*t,* 530*f,* 531*f,* 534*f*
monoclonal antibodies, **512**–513, 513*f*
proteins, 40
reagin-type antibodies, 783
serotype, 304
viruses and, 367
antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC), **489,** 490*f,* 496*f,* **497,** 497*t*
antibody enhancement, 678
antibody titer, **497**–498, 497*f*
anticodon, **215**
antifungal drugs, 575–577, 575*f,* 576*t*
antigen-antibody complex, **489,** 490*f*
immune complex (type III) hypersensitivity reactions, **538**–539, 538*f*
precipitation reactions, **514,** 514*f*
antigen-presenting cells (APCs), 487, **491**–492, 492*f,* 493*f*
antigenic determinants, **483,** 484*f*
antigenic drift, **367,** 414, 717
in SARS-CoV-2 (COVID-19) virus, 714–715
antigenic shifts, 369, 414, **717**
antigenic variation, **432**–433, 444, 445*f*
antigens, **57, 481, 483**–484, 484*f*. *See also* diagnostic immunology; immunity, adaptive; vaccines
ABO blood group antigens, 486, **535**–538, 535*t,* 537*f,* 538*f*
cellular immune response, 490–496, 491*f,* 492*f,* 493*f,* 494*f,* 496*f,* 497*t*
crossing species barrier, 369
fluorescent-antibody (FA) technique, **57**–58, 57*f*
H antigen, 78
hepatitis B surface antigen, 749, 749*f,* 751
humoral immune response, 487–488, 487*f,* 488*f,* 489*f*
hypersensitivity, **529**–540, 529*t,* 530*f,* 531*f,* 534*f*
influenza virus, 369, 716–717, 716*f*
monoclonal antibodies, **512**–513, 513*f*
Rh factor, **536**–537, 537*f*
serology, **282**–284, 284*f,* 285*f*
serotype, 304
superantigens, **437**
tumor-specific transplantation antigen (TSTA), **387**
viruses, 367, 440–441
antimicrobial drugs, **561**. *See also* disinfectants; microbial control
activity spectrum, narrow or broad, 562–563, 564*t*
aminoglycosides, 571
antifungal drugs, 575–577, 575*f,* 576*t*
antihelminthic drugs, 576*t,* 579
antiprotozoan drugs, 576*t,* 578–579
antiviral drugs, 576*t,* 577–578, 578*f*
bacteriocidal and bacteriostatic, **563,** 563*f*
cell wall, eukaryotes, 97
cell wall, prokaryotes, 83–85, 88–89
cell wall synthesis inhibition, 563, 564*f,* 566–570, 566*t,* 568*f,* 569*f,* 570*f*
chemotherapy, tests for, 579–581, 580*f,* 581*f*
chloramphenicol, 571
Clinical Focus, use in agriculture, 586, 586*f*
commonly used, summary table, 566*t*–567*t,* 576*t*
drug combinations, 585
Foundation Figure, mechanism of action, 563, 563*f*
Foundation Figure, resistance, 582, 582*f*
future directions, 585, 587–588
glycylcyclines, **572**
history of, 561
influenza, 718
lipopeptides, **573**
macrolides, **572,** 572*f*
metabolite synthesis inhibition, 564–565, 567*t,* 574, 574*f*
MODS (Microscopic-Observation Drug-Susceptibility Assay), 706
nitrofurantoin, 571
nucleic acid synthesis inhibition, 567*t,* 573
oxazolidinones, **573**
penicillin, **566,** 568–569, 568*f,* 569*f*
plasma membrane and, 87, 564, 565*f,* 567*t,* 573
pleuromutilins, **573**
protein synthesis inhibition, 563–564, 565*f,* 567*t,* 571–573, 571*f,* 572*f*
quinolones and fluoroquinolones, **573**–574
resistance to, 581–585, 582*f,* 583*f,* 584*f*
ribosomes, action on, 91, 91*f*
rifamycin, **573**
safety concerns, 585
soaps, 191, 191*f,* 192
streptogramins, **572**
sulfonamides (sulfa drugs), **574,** 574*f*
tetracycline, **571**–572, 572*f*
antimicrobial peptides (AMPs), **474,** 476*t,* 587, 730
antimycobacterial antibiotics, 566*t,* 570
antiretroviral, **554, 578**
antiretroviral therapy, **554**–556, 555*f*
antisense strand (-strand), **382,** 383*f*
antisepsis, **180,** 181*t*
antiseptic, 180
antiserum, **283**–284, 284*f,* 285*f,* 629
antitoxins, **435,** 439, 516, 517*f,* 632
antiviral drugs, 11, 577–578, 578*f*
antiretroviral therapy, **554**–556, 555*f,* **578**
for influenza, 718
for shingles, 607
summary of drug types, 576*t*
antiviral proteins (AVPs), **472**–473, 473*f*
Apicomplexa, 343, **346**–347, 346*f,* 348*t*
Babesia microti, 347, 348*t*
Cryptosporidium, 347
Cyclospora cayetanesis, 347
Plasmodium, 346–347, 346*f*
Toxoplasma gondii, 347
aplastic anemia, 571
apoenzyme, **113**–114, 113*f,* 114*t*
apoptosis, 442, 460, **495,** 496*f*
applied microbiology, 109, 819
alternative energy sources, 832–834
amino acid production, 829
biofuels, **832**–834
biotechnology, **827**
citric acid production, 829
copper extraction, leaching, 831, 832*f*
enzyme production, 829–830
fermentation technology, 132*t,* 827–828, 827*f,* 828*f*
food canning, 821–822, 821*f,* 822*f*
food microbiology, 820–826, 820*t,* 821*f,* 822*f,* 823*ft,* 824*f,* 826*f*
future trends, 834
Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP), **820**–821, 821*f*
hormone production, 14, 244–245, 245*f,* 256, 258*t,* 827
microorganisms as products, 831–832
pharmaceutical production, 830–831
vitamin production, 830
aquaporins, 88
aquatic microbiology, **804**–805. *See also* water quality
aqueous solutions, acid-base balance, 32–33, 33*f*
Arachnida, 357, 359*t*
arachnoid mater, 623, 624*f*
arboviral encephalitis, 637–639, 639*f,* 643*t*
arbovirus, 219
arbuscular mycorrhizae, 795, 795*f*
Arcanobacterium phocae, 281
Archaea domain, **5, 271**–274, 272*f,* 273*t,* 274*f,* **297,** 319–320, 319*f*. *See also* classification of microbes
atypical cell walls, 83
extreme thermophiles, 154
microbial diversity, 320–322
summary table, 297*t*
archaella, **78**–79
Arenaviridae, 371*t*
Argentine hemorrhagic fever, **679**
arginine (Arg, R), 41*t,* 215*f*
arginine catabolic mobile element (ACME), 431
arithmetic plotting, 182*f*
Arrhenius, Svante, 814
artemisinin-based combination therapies (ACTs), 579
arthritis, psoriatic, **542,** 542*t*
arthritis, rheumatoid, **541,** 542*t*
arthroconidia, **329**–330, 330*f,* 720, 720*f*
arthropod-borne encephalitis, 410*t,* 637–639, 639*f*
arthropod vectors, 219, 326*f,* **357,** 357*f,* 358*f,* 359*t*
Arthus reaction, **539**
artificial selection, **246**
artificial sweeteners, 132
artificially acquired immunity, **498,** 498*f*
artificially acquired passive immunity, **498,** 498*f*

ascariasis, **760**–761, 761*f*
Ascaris, 355, 358*t,* 758*f,* 759*f*
A. lumbricoides, 355, 358*t,* 755*t,* **760**–761, 761*f*
Asclepius, 13, 13*f*
Ascomycota, 277*f,* 332, 333, 333*f,* 335*t*
ascorbic acid, 161
ascospore, **332,** 333*f*
ascus, **332,** 333*f*
asepsis, **180**
aseptic, defined, 180
aseptic packaging, **822**
aseptic techniques, **9,** 180, 411
asexual reproduction
algae, 5–6, 338–343, 341*f*
binary fission, 5
diatoms, 341*f*
flukes, 352*f*
fungi, 5, 329–330, 330*f,* 335*t*
Mucoromycota, 331–332, 331*f*
schizogony, **343**–344
slime molds, 348–349, 349*f*
tapeworms, 355*f*
water molds, 342, 342*f*
asexual spores, **329**–330, 330*f*
asparagine (Asn, N), 41*t,* 215*f*
aspartic acid (Asp, D), 41*t*
aspergillosis, 335, **722**
Aspergillus, 450*f*
A. flavus, 226
A. flavus, aflatoxin poisoning, 443, **754,** 755*t*
A. fumigatus, 722
A. niger, 328*f,* 330*f,* 335
characteristics, summary of, 335*t*
Clinical Case, 454*c,* 460*c,* 464*c,* 468*c,* 474*c,* 475*c*
drugs used for, 575
economic effects of fungi, 336
eye disease, 614
fermented food and beverage, 820*t,* 826
food safety and, 822
industrial uses of, 132*t,* 829, 830
opportunistic mycosis, 335
spores, 329, 330*f,* 450*f*
assembly, antiviral drugs, 576*t,* 577–578
asthma, 459, 512, 531–532
asymptomatic carriers, **407**
atazanavir, 555*f,* 556
athlete's foot, 610, 610*f*
atomic force microscopy (AFM), **61,** 61*f,* 64*t*
atomic mass, **25,** 26*t*
atomic number, **25,** 26*t*
atoms, **25**
chemical bonds, 27–29, 28*f,* 29*f,* 30*t*
structure of, 25–26, 25*f,* 26*t*
atovaquone, 684
ATP. *See* adenosine triphosphate (ATP)
ATP synthase, 126–127, 126*f,* 127*f*
atrichous, **77,** 77*f*
attachment, animal viruses, 379, 379*t*
attachment, bacteriophage, 375, 376*f*
attenuated vaccines, **505**
attractant, 78
atypical pneumonia, 708
auditory tube, 694*f*
Australian bat lyssavirus (ABLV), 637
autoclave, 183–184, 184*ft,* 185*f,* 189*t*
autograft, **545**
autoimmune disease, **540**–542, 542*t*
Clinical Case, DiGeorge syndrome, 530*c,* 534*c,* 546*c,* 549*c,* 556*c*
diabetes mellitus, 542
Graves' disease, 541
human microbiome and, 94, 529
hygiene hypothesis, 532–533
inflammatory reactions, 483
multiple sclerosis, 540
myasthenia gravis, 541
psoriasis, psoriatic arthritis, 542
rheumatoid arthritis, 541
systemic lupus erythematosus, 541
T-dependent antigens, 487
T regulatory cells, 494
T_H17 cells, **494,** 494*f*
white blood cell counts, 453
autoinoculation, 597, 597*f*
autotroph, **138**
auxotroph, **227,** 228*f*
Avery, Oswald, 14, 44, 234
avian influenza A (H5N1), **18,** 369
avirulent, 11
AVPs (antiviral proteins), **472**–473, 473*f*
axial filaments, **79,** 79*f,* 311
azidothymidine (AZT), 226
azithromycin, 567*t,* 572
azoles, **575,** 575*f,* 576*t*
azolocillin, 569
Azomonas, 302, 303
Azospirillum, 298–299
Azotobacter, 91, 302, 303, 798*f,* 799
AZT (azidothymidine), 226
aztreonam, 566*t,* 569

B

B cells, 458*f,* 459*t,* **460, 481**
bone marrow transplants, 544–545
cellular immune response, 490–496, 491*f,* 492*f,* 493*f,* 494*f,* 496*f,* 497*t*
Foundation Figure, 499*f*
function of, 451, 452*t*
humoral immune response, 487–488, 487*f,* 488*f,* 489*f*
lymphoid (lymphatic) system, 460, 654–655, 655*f,* 656*f*
memory response, 497–498, 497*f*
monoclonal antibodies (Mabs), **512**–513, 513*f*
transplant rejection prevention, 546
B lymphocytes, **481**. *See also* B cells
Babesia microti, 347, 348*t*
babesiosis, 668*t,* **685**–686
Bacillales, 314, 314*f*
bacillary dysentery, 735–**736,** 736*f*
Bacillus, 314, 314*f*
anaerobic respiration, **128**
antibiotic sources, 561, 562*t,* 570
bioremediation, 15
endospores, **92**–94, 93*f*
fermentation end products, 130*f*
fermented foods, 820*t*
food preservation, 196
Gram stain and, 83, 313
lipid inclusions, 91
nitrogen cycle, organisms in, 798*f*
rDNA technology, 246*t,* 255, 287
transformation, 235
Bacillus anthracis, 285
anthrax, **661,** 661*f,* 663, 666*t*
bioterrorism, 24, 24*f,* 259, 702–703
capsule of, 77, 432
characteristics of, 314, 314*f*
Clinical Case, 25*c,* 42*c,* 44*c,* 46*c*
endospores, **92**–94, 93*f,* 197
fluorochromes, 57
host cell penetration, 432
ID_{50}, **429**–430
Koch's postulates, 10, 400–401, 401*f*
portal of entry, 429*t*
staining techniques, 57, 68*f,* 74*f*
toxins, 231, 438*t*
zoonoses, 408*t*
Bacillus cereus, 153*f,* 314, 314*f,* 746, 748*t*
Bacillus cereus gastroenteritis, **746,** 748*t*
Bacillus coagulans, 822
Bacillus pumilus, 68*f*
bacillus shape, 4–5, 5*f,* **73**–75 74*f*
Bacillus subtilis, 93*f,* 121, 255, 562*t*
Bacillus thuringiensis, 15
Bt-toxin, 263, 263*t,* 264, 831–832
as insect pathogen, 314, 314*f,* 677
bacitracin, 566*t,* 570, 573
bacteremia, **404**
bacteria, **4**–5. *See also* classification of microbes; disease principles; specific organism names
Ames test for carcinogens, 228–229, 229*f*
anatomy, 76*f*
cell wall, 80–85, 81*f,* 82*f,* 84*t*
cell wall, damage to, 83–85
plasma membrane, 85–87, 86*f,* 87*f*
plasma membrane, damage to, 87
size, shape, and arrangement, 73–75, 74*f,* 75*f*
structures external to cell wall, 75–77, 76*f,* 77*f*
structures internal to cell wall, 76*f,* 85–94
antibiotic resistance (*See* antibiotic resistance)
beneficial activities of, 14–16
biochemical identification tests, 134–135, 134*f,* 135*f* (*See also* culture media)
biogenesis, 8–9
cardiovascular and lymphoid diseases, 656–672
cell theory, 6–7
chemical mutagens, 224–235
digestive system, diseases of, 734–746
disease, role in, 14, 16–19 (*See also* specific organism and disease names)
Diseases in Focus, human-reservoir infections, 662*t*
emerging infectious diseases (EIDs), **414**–416, 415*t*
endospores, 92–94, 93*f* (*See also* endospore)
eye diseases, 613–614, 614*t,* 615*f*
flagella and archaella, 77–79, 77*f,* 78*f,* 79*f* (*See also* flagella)
vs. fungi, 327*t*
genetic material, conjugative plasmids, 235–236, 236*f* (*See also* genetics)
genetic material, transduction, 236, 238*f*
genetic mutations, 223–229, 223*f,* 224*f,* 225*f,* 228*f,* 229*f*
genetic recombination, 210*f,* 230–233
genetic transformation, 233–235, 234*f,* 235*f*
genital (reproductive) system, diseases of, 774–784, 787*t,* 789*t*
germ theory of disease, 10
glycocalyx, 75–77, 76*f,* 77*f*
Gram-negative cell walls, 81–83, 82*f* (*See also* Gram-negative bacteria)
Gram-positive cell walls, 81, 82*f* (*See also* Gram-positive bacteria)
Gram stain, 65–66, 65*f*
growth of (*See* microbial growth)
identification methods, 278–279
biochemical tests for, 279–282, 282*f,* 283*f*
cladograms, 290, 290*f*
dichotomous keys, 289
differential staining, 279
DNA fingerprinting, 287
DNA sequencing, 286
fatty acid profiles, 285–286
flow cytometry, 286
morphological characteristics, 279
nucleic acid hybridization, 286–289, 287*f,* 288*f,* 289*f*
phage typing, 284–285, 285*f*
serology, 282–284, 284*f,* 285*f*
membrane transport, 87–90, 87*f,* 88*f,* 89*f*
metachromatic granules, 91
microbiome (*See* microbiome; microbiome, human)
neglected tropical diseases (NTDs), 616–617
nervous system diseases, 624–634, 629*t*
pneumonias, 707–713, 708*f,* 709*t,* 710*f,* 711*f*
quorum sensing, **158**
radiation, effects of, 226, 226*g*
respiratory system diseases, 695–698, 697*f,* 698*f,* 699*t,* 700–701, 704–713, 709*t*
scientific nomenclature, 4, 4*t,* 275–276
shapes of, 4–5, 5*f*
skin, diseases of, 594–604, 603*t*
smear preparation, 64–65
spontaneous generation debate, 7–9, 8*f*
staining of, 65–69, 65*f,* 67*f,* 68*ft,* 81–83, 84*t*
vertical transmission, mother to child, 640–641, 640*f,* 641*f*
vs. viruses, 364*t*
wastewater-based surveillance (WBS), 807
zoonoses, 408*t*
Bacteria domain, 271–274, 272*f,* 273*t,* 274*f,* **297,** 297*t,* 320–322
gram-negative nonproteobacteria, 308–312
gram-negative proteobacteria, 298–308
gram-positive, 313–319, 313*f,* 314*f,* 315*f,* 318*f,* 319*f*
gram-positive Actinomycetota, 317–318, 318*f,* 319*f*
gram-positive Deinococcota, 318–319
bacterial chromosome, **90**
bacterial growth curve, **167**–169, 168*f*
bacterial meningitis, **625**–628, 625*f,* 627*f*
Clinical Case, 298*c,* 316*c,* 318*c,* 319*c,* 320*c*
diagnosis and treatment, 626, 627*f*
Haemophilus influenzae, 625
listeriosis, 626–628, 627*f*
meningococcal meningitis, 625–626, 625*f*
pneumococcal meningitis, 626
bacterial pneumonia, 707–708, 709*t*
capsules and host penetration, 432
Chlamydial pneumonia, **711**
Haemophilus influenzae, 708
Legionellosis, 709*t,* **710,** 713

melioidosis, 712
mycoplasmal pneumonia, 708–709, 710*f*
pneumococcal pneumonia, 708, 708*f*
psittacosis (ornithosis), **710**–711
Q fever, **711**–712, 711*f*
summary table of, 709*t*
bacterial vaginosis, **784,** 784*f,* 787*t,* 789*t*
bacteriochlorophylls, 136–137, 136*f,* 137*f,* 139, 139*f,* 140*t*
bacteriocidal, **563,** 563*f*
bacteriocins, 40, **231,** 304, 399, 456, 588
bacteriology, 13
bacteriophage, **236,** 238*f,* **364**. *See also* viruses
culture techniques, 372–373, 372*f*
human virome, 366
lysogenic conversion, 440
microscopy, 54*f*
morphology, **368,** 368*f*
multiplication of, 375–378, 375*f,* 376*f,* 377*f,* 378*f,* 379*t*
phage conversion, **378,** 378*f*
phage therapy, 377, **588**
phage typing, **284**–285, 285*f,* 735
size of, 365, 365*f*
bacteriostasis, **180**
bacteriostatic, **563,** 563*f*
Bacteroides, 310, 730
artificial sweeteners, 132
classification, 278*f*
in digestive system, 3, 730
microbiome, 3, 132, 397, 398*t,* 730
microbiome and nervous system, 647
baker's yeast, 831–832
Balamuthia, 346, 348*t*
B. mandrillaris, 629*t,* 645
balamuthiasis, 645
Balantidium coli, 348
Baloxavir, 578
Baltimore, David, 368
*Bam*HI, 246*t*
Bandavirus, 639, 643*t*
Bang, Olaf, 386
Barr, Yvonne, 387
Barré-Sinoussi, Françoise, 12*f*
Bartonella, 298*f,* 300
B. henselae, 300, 408*t,* 415*t,* 664–665, 665*f,* 666*t*
basal body, flagellum, 77–78, 78*f,* 95*f*
base, **32,** 32*f*
pH scale, 32–33, 33*f*
base, microscope, 53*f*
base pairs, **208**
DNA, 44–46, 45*f,* 46*f,* 47*t*
DNA mutations, types of, 223–224, 223*f,* 224*f*
DNA replication, 209–213, 211*f*
mutagens, **224**–226, 225*f,* 226*f*
base substitution mutations, **206,** **223**–224, 223*f,* 224*f*
basement membrane, 593, 593*f*
bases, enzymes, effect on, 114–115, 115*f*
basic dyes, **64**
Basidiomycota, 332–333, 334*f,* 335*t*
basidiospores, **332**–333, 334*f*
basidium, **333,** 334*f*
basiliximab, 546
basophils, 452*t,* 453, 458, 458*f,* **459,** 459*t,* **529,** 530*f*
Bassi, Agostino, 10
batch production, 828
bats
as animal reservoir, 407, 408*t*
Ebola virus, 19
histoplasmosis, 719
Marburg virus, **19**
rabies, **635**–637, 635*f,* 637*f,* 638
SARS-associated coronavirus, 714
viral hemorrhagic fevers, 680*t*
zoonoses, **407,** 408*t*
Baylisascaris procyonis, 355–356
BCG vaccine, **706**
Bdellovibrio, 306
Beadle, George W., 14
beef
cardiolipin, syphilis tests, 783
food safety, storage recommendations, 739
measly beef, 354
prions, mad cow disease, 391
Taenia saginata (tapeworms), 354, 358*t,* 755*t,* 758, 758*f*
Toxoplasma gondii, 348*t*
beer, 109, 825–826, 826*f*
Beggiatoa, 140, 302, 307
behavior, disease and, 405
Beijerinckia, 799
Bell's palsy, **648**
benthic zone, **804**
benzalkonium chloride, 195, 195*f*
benzathine penicillin, 568
benzoate, 196
benzopyrene, 226
benzoyl peroxide, 157, 198, 602
Berg, Paul, 14
Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology, 279
Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology, 276, 296, 297
beta-hemolytic streptococci, 315, 599. *See also Streptococcus*
beta interferon (IFN-β), **472**–473, 473*f*
beta-lactam ring, 570, 570*f*
beta-lactamases, 568
beta (β)-galactosidase, 253–254, 256
Betacoronavirus, 699, 699*t*
Betacoronavirus SARS-CoV-2. *See* SARS-CoV-2 (COVID-19) virus
Betadine, 192
betaproteobacteria, 301–302, 301*f,* 302*f*
Betzig, Eric, 59
Bifidobacterium, 536*f*
blood type and, 536
diabetes and, 132
intestinal microbiome, 398*t*
neurotransmitters and, 647
oral vaccine response and, 509
biguanides, 191, 200*t*
binary fission, 5, **73, 166,** 166*f*
binomial nomenclature, **275**–276
bioaugmentation, **803**
biochemical oxygen demand (BOD), 810
biochemical tests
for enterics, 304
identifying microbes, 279–282, 281*f,* 282*f,* 283*f*
biocide, **180,** 181, 199
bioconversion, **832**
biodegradability, 801–802
bioenhancers, **803**
biofilms, **16,** 17*f,* **158**–159, 158*f*
adherence, **430**–431
biocides, effectiveness of, 181, 194
Clinical Case, 153*c,* 165*c,* 173*c,* 175*c,* 428*c,* 435*c,* 440*c,* 443*c,* 445*c*
clue cells, bacterial vaginosis, 784
cystic fibrosis, 600
dental plaque, 107*f,* 207*f,* 431, **731**–733, 731*f,* 732*f*
drug resistance, 587
epigenetics and, 221
extreme environments, 802
fimbriae and pili, 79–**80,** 80*f*
gene expression and, 207
glycocalyx and, 76*f,* 77
host cell penetration, 433
Legionella, 710
microbial growth in space, 321
microbiome, crime scene investigation, 262
microscopy of, 59*f,* 63*f*
phagocyte evasion, 433
plague, 665
quorum sensing, **158**
Serratia, 72*f*
Serratia marcescens, 151, 151*f*
sewage treatment, 810–811
skin infections, 595, 596*f,* 600
Vibrio, 740
water quality, 807
biofuels, **832**–834
biogenesis, **8**
biogeochemical cycles, **796**
carbon cycle, **796,** 797*f*
nitrogen cycle, **797**–799, 798*f,* 799*f,* 800*f*
phosphorus cycle, **801**
sulfur cycle, **800,** 801*f*
bioinformatics, **259**
biological safety cabinets, 163–164, 164*f*
biological transmission, disease, **410,** 410*ft*
bioluminescence, **805,** 805*f*
biomass, **832**
bioreactors, **827**–828, 827*f,* 828*f*
bioremediation, **15, 802**–803, 803*f*
biosafety level 4 (BSL-4), 163–164, 164*f*
biosynthesis, bacteriophage lytic cycle, 375, 376*f*
biosynthetic reactions. *See* anabolic pathways
biotechnology, 15–**16, 827**
agriculture applications, 261–263, 262*f,* 263*t*
amino acid production, 829
citric acid production, 829
Clinical Case, 244*c,* 250*c,* 253*c,* 255*c,* 257*c*
Clinical Focus, norovirus source, 265, 265*f*
clone selection, 253–254, 253*f,* 254*f*
copper extraction, leaching, 831, 832*f*
enzyme production, 829–830
fungi, uses of, 336
future trends, 834
gene products, 207, 254–255, 255*f*
genome projects, 257–259, 258*f*
genomic libraries, 251–252, 251*f,* 252*f*
industrial fermentation, 827–828, 827*f*
inserting foreign DNA into cells, 250, 250*f,* 251*f*
overview of, 243, 244
pharmaceutical production, 830–831
plasmid DNA, uses of, 90
polymerase chain reaction (PCR), 243, **248**–249, 249*f*
proteomics, **259**
recombinant DNA technology, overview, 244–245, 245*f*
restriction enzymes, 246–247, 246*t,* 247*f*
reverse genetics, **259**
safety and ethics, 264
scientific applications, 259–261, 260*f,* 261*f*
selection and mutation, 246
synthetic DNA, 252–253, 252*f*
therapeutic applications, 256–257, 257*f,* 258*t*
vectors, 247–248, 248*f*
vitamin production, 830
bioterrorism, **416**
anthrax, 24, 24*f,* 259, 702–703
Big Picture, 702–703
brucellosis (undulant fever), **660**–661
smallpox, **604**–605, 605*f*
biotin, 114*t*
biotypes, **305**
biovars, **283**–284, **305**
bird (avian) flu, 717
bird flu, **18,** 369
birds
as animal reservoir, 407
antimicrobial peptides, 587
arboviral encephalitis and, 638, 639, 639*f,* 643*t*
avian influenza A (H5N1), **18**
Clinical Case, *Chlamydophila psittaci,* 694*c,* 712*c,* 717*c,* 718*c,* 722*c*
Clostridium, 804
Cryptococcus, 335*t,* **642,** 642*f*
cyclosporiasis, 755*t,* **757,** 757*f*
domoic acid toxicosis, 341
Escherischia albertii, 304
histoplasmosis, 719
influenza, crossing the species border, 369, 718, 723*t*
malignant malaria, 683
phosphorus cycle, 801
psittacosis (ornithosis), 709*t,* **710**–711
zoonoses, 408*t*
birth, microbiome and, 397
birth defects
congenital syphilis, **782**
congenital transmission, **407**–408
cytomegalovirus, 662*t,* **674**–675
vertical transmission, mother to child, 640–641
Zika virus, 18, 287, **639,** 640, 640*f,* 641*f,* 642
Bishop, J. Michael, 387
bismuth sulfite agar, 162, 282*c,* 284*c*
bisphenol, **191,** 191*f,* 199*t,* 200*t*
bites and scratches, animal, 664–665
black bread mold, 331–332, 331*f*
Black Death, 305–306, **665**–667, 667*f*
blades, **339,** 340*f*
blastoconidia, **329**–330, 330*f*
blastomycosis, **722,** 722*f,* 723*t*
bleach, 198
antibacterial properties, 19, 193, 464
chlorine compounds, 193, 464
legionellosis, disinfection, 713
norovirus, disinfection for, 201*c,* 753
pH of, 33*f*
septic systems, 812, 812*f*
blebbing, 495, 496*f*

blindness
Acanthamoeba, 345–346
Chlamydia trachomatis (trachoma), 310, **613**
cytomegalovirus, 551*t*
measles, 510
neonatal herpes, 785
ocular syphilis, 782
ophthalmia neonatorum, **613, 775**
river blindness (onchocerciasis), 616, 616*t*
blocking antibodies, 534
blood. *See also* cardiovascular system; diagnostic immunology; lymphoid (lymphatic) system
ABO antigens, 486, **535**–538, 535*t*, 537*f*, 538*f*
bacteremia, **404**
blood type and intestinal microbiome, 536
Clinical Focus, serum collection, 475, 475*f*
Diseases in Focus, human-reservoir infections, 662*t*
endotoxins, blood clotting and, **437**–439, 438*f*, 439*t*
Exploring the Microbiome, 657
formed elements, **458**–460, 458*f*, 459*t*
hemagglutination, **516,** 516*f*
hemolytic anemia, **538,** 538*f*
malaria, **682**–684, 682*f*, 683*f*
plasma viral load, **553**
sepsis and septicemia, **656**–658, 657*f*
sickle cell disease, 224
thrombocytopenic purpura, **538,** 538*f*
toxemia, **404**
viremia, 634, 747
blood agar, 162, 163*f*
blood-brain barrier, 439, **623,** 624*f*
blood cell counts, 453, 462
blood clotting, 465, 465*f*
blood fluke, 352
blood plasma, **458**
blue-green algae. *See* cyanobacteria
blue light, visible, 188, 188*t*
blue-white screening, 253–254, 253*f*
blunt ends, 246*f*, **247,** 247*t*
boceprevir, 578
BOD (biochemical oxygen demand), 810
body tube, microscope, 53*f*
boil (furuncle), **597**
boiling, 183, 189*t*
Bolivian hemorrhagic fever, **679**
bonds, chemical, **27**–29, 29*f*, 30*t*
bone marrow, 458*f*, 460, 461*f*
bone marrow transplants, 544–545
Bordetella, 297*t*, 301
Bordetella bronchiseptica, 281*f*
Bordetella pertussis, 503*f*, **700**–701, 701*f*, 723*t*
carriers, **407**
Clinical Case, 505*c*, 508*c*, 510*c*, 514*c*, 519*c*, 524*c*
complement evasions, 472
emerging infectious diseases, 415*t*
portal of entry, 429*t*
Borrelia, 312
arthropod vectors, 410*t*, 668*t*
B. mayonii, 667–670, 668*t*, 669*f*, 670*f*
B. miyamotoi, 667–670, 668*t*, 669*f*, 670*f*
relapsing fever, 410*t*, **667,** 668*t*
Borrelia burgdorferi
arthropod vectors, 410*t*, 668*t*
axial filaments, **79**
Lyme disease (borreliosis), **667**–670, 668*t*, 669*f*, 670*f*
zoonoses, 408*t*
botulism, 438*t*, **630**–632, 631*f*, 649*t*
bioterrorism, overview of, 702–703
botulinum toxin, 430, 435
Clostridium botulinum, 313
endospores, **92**–94, 93*f*
toxin binding, 86, 86*f*
bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE), **646**–648, 646*f*, 648*t*, 649*t*
bovine tuberculosis, **701**
Bradyrhizobium, 300, 798*f*, 799, 800*f*, 831
bradyzoites, 682
brain, 623, 623*f*, 624*f*. *See also* encephalitis; meningitis; nervous system
microcephaly, 641*f*, **642**
neurocysticercosis, **758**
prions, 365*f*, 390–**391,** 390*f*, 646–648, 646*f*, 648*t*, 649*t*
rabies, **635**–637, 635*f*, 637*f*, 638
bread
food microbiology, 820*t*, 825, 830
fungi, growth of, 5, 5*f*, 196
fungistats, 196, 200*t*
mold, growth of, 275
Mucoromycota, 331–332, 331*f*
yeast fermentation, 131, 132*t*, 327, 329, 336
breakthrough infections, 715
breakthrough varicella, **607**
brightfield illumination, **55,** 56*f*, 62*t*
broad-spectrum antibiotics, **562**–563, 564*t*. *See also* antibiotic resistance; antibiotics
bromocresol purple, 134*f*
5-bromouracil nucleoside, 225, 225*f*
bronchiolitis, **700**
bronchitis, **700**
Haemophilus influenzae, 306
broth dilution test, **580**–581, 581*f*
brown algae, 339–341, 340*f*. *See also* algae
Brucella, 281*f*, 298*f*, 300
B. abortus, 660
B. melitensis, 660
marine mammal deaths, 281
portals of entry, 429*t*
brucellosis (undulant fever), **660**–661
animal reservoirs, 666*t*
direct agglutination test, **515**–516, 515*f*
host penetration, 433
leukopenia, 460
notifiable infectious disease, 421*t*
obligate parasites, 300
portal of entry, 429*t*
portal of exit, 444
zoonoses, 408*t*
BSE (bovine spongiform encephalopathy), **646**–648, 646*f*, 648*t*, 649*t*
Bt toxin *(Bacillus thuringinesis)*, 263, 831–832
buboes, **655**
bubonic plague, **665**–667, 667*f*, 668*t*
budding, **166,** 166*f*, 298, 299, 300*f*, 384, 386*f*
budding yeasts, **328**–329, 329*f*
buffers, **33,** 33*f*
bulking, **810**
bullae, **594,** 594*f*
bullous impetigo, 597, 597*f*
Bunyaviridae
arborviral encephalitis, 643*t*
Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome, **679,** 680*t*
Heartland virus disease, 639
Burkholderia, 301, 427*f*, 712
B. cepacia, 301
B. pseudomallei, 276, 301, 712, 723*t*
biocide resistance, 199
classification, 297*t*
Clinical Case, 428*c*, 435*c*, 440*c*, 443*c*, 445*c*
healthcare-associated infections, 303
melioidosis, 712, 723*t*
Burkitt's lymphoma, 387, 662*t*, **673,** 673*f*
burn patients, 600
bursa of Fabricius, 481
Buruli ulcer, **600**–601, 603*t*, 616–617
butanol, 132*t*, 833
butter, 825
buttermilk, 825
butyrate, 37
Byssochlamys fulva, 822

C
C-reactive protein, 465
C-section birth, microbiome and, 397
cachectin, 439
cadherin, 433
calcium hypochlorite, 193
calcium propionate, 195–196
Caliciviridae, 371*t*
California encephalitis virus, 371*t*, 639, 643*t*
Calvin-Benson cycle, **137,** 137*f*, 139*f*, 140
cAMP (cyclic AMP), **220**–221, 221*f*, 222*f*
Campylobacter, 308
antibiotic resistance, animal feed and, 586, 586*f*
C. jejuni, 586, 586*f*, 748*t*
classification, 297*t*
culture techniques, 162
food safety, 584, 586, 744
notifiable infectious disease, 421*t*
traveler's diarrhea, **744**
Campylobacter gastroenteritis, **744**
campylobacteriosis, 421*t*, **744,** 748*t*
Canarypox, 258*t*
cancer
acquired immunodeficiencies, **548,** 548*t*
activated macrophages, 492, 497*t*
Alphapapillomavirus, 382, 387
Ames test, 229, 229*f*
breast cancer, 259
Burkitt's lymphoma, 370*t*, 387, **673,** 673*f*
carcinogens, identification of, 227–228, 229*f*
cervical cancer vaccine, 258*t*, 522
cervical cancer virus, 370*t*, 374*f*, 387, 389*t*, 604
chimeric antigen receptor T cells (CAR-T) therapy, 256
colon cancer, 37, 208*c*, 225*c*, 228*c*, 235*c*
continuous (immortal) cell lines, **374**
cytotoxic T cells, 493*f*, 546, 547*f*
Epstein-Barr virus, 387
exotoxins, 438*t*
formalin and, 196
gene silencing, 256, 257*f*
genetic testing, 259
genetically modified plants, 255
genital warts and, **785**–786, 786*f*
genotoxins, 435, 437*f*
Helicobacter pylori, 60*c*, 308, 308*f*, 435, 438*t*
hepatitis B virus, 387, 389*t*
herpesvirus, 402
HIV/AIDs associated infections, 551*t*, 552*f*
Hodgkin's lymphoma, 543*t*
human T cell leukemia virus, 387
immortal cell lines, 374
immune system response to, 452, 480*f*, 490, 492, 528*f*, 546–547
immunotherapy for, **546**–547
interferons, 473, 473*f*, 483
interleukins, 258*t*, 482
intestinal bacteria and, 37
Kaposi's sarcoma, 473, 551*t*
latent viruses and, 378, 389*t*
liver, 389*t*, 749, 750, 751
lung cancer, 336
microbiome and, 37, 235*c*
microscopy techniques, 59, 63*f*
monoclonal antibodies, production and use, 512, 513*f*, 547
monoclonal antibody technology, 512
mutations and, 225*c*
mycobiome, 337
natural killer (NK) cells, **496**–497, 496*f*, 497*t*
nitrites and nitrosamines, 196
nucleoside analogs, treatment with, 225*f*
oncogenes, 12*f*, 442
oncogenic viruses, 386–390
oncolytic viruses, **388**
ovarian cancer, 258*t*
Papillomavirus, 370*t*, 389*t*, 522, 604
peptic ulcer disease and, **744**
retroviruses, 387–388
skin cancer, 188, 188*f*
stomach cancer, 60*c*, 308, 435, 438*t*
taxol, 258*t*, 336
ultraviolet (UV) light, 188, 188*f*
vaccines, 508, 522, 547
viruses and, 386–388, 442, 674
white blood cell counts, 453
Candida
fermented foods, 820*t*
human mycobiome and, 337
Candida albicans, 328, 456, 572
candidiasis, **610,** 610*f*, **786**–788, 787*f*, 787*t*
drugs for, 575, 577
microbiota, 399, 563
mycobiome, 337
pathogenicity mechanisms, 443
spores, 329, 330*f*
vaginal microbiota, 770
vaginitis, **784,** 784*f*
yeast infection, **335**
candidiasis, 335, **610,** 610*f*, **786**–788, 787*f*, 787*t*
candle jars, 162
canine distemper vaccine, 258*t*
canine distemper virus, 281
canker sore, **607**–608, 607*f*
Cano, Raul, 274, 287
capillaries, blood-brain barrier, 623, 624*f*
capnophiles, **162**
capsid, **366**–367, 366*f*, 367*f*, 381*f*, 382, 383*f*, 384, 384*f*, 386*f*
capsomeres, **366**–367, 366*f*, 367*f*

capsules, 76*f*, **77**
  negative stain for, **67,** 68*ft*
  pathogen penetration of, 431–432
  prokaryotes, 76*f*
  vaccines for, 505*t*, 507
CAR-T (chimeric antigen receptor T cells), 256
carbapenems, 205, 566*t*, **569**
carbenicillin, 569
carbohydrate catabolism, **119**–121, 120*f*
  cellular respiration, 123–128, 124*f*, 125*f*, 126*f*, 127*f*, 128*t*
  fermentation, 128–132, 129*f*, 130*f*, 131*f*, 132*t*, 133*t*
  fermentation test, 134–135, 134*f*, 135*f*
  glycolysis, 120*f*, 121, 122*f*
carbohydrates, **35**–36, 35*f*, 142, 142*f*
carbolfuschin, 65, 83, 701
carbolic acid, 190–191, 191*f*
carbon (C)
  atomic number and mass, 26*t*
  fatty acids, 37–39, 38*f*
  microbial growth and, 155
  organic compounds, overview, **34**–35, 34*t*
carbon cycle, **796,** 797*f*
carbon dioxide. *See also* photosynthesis
  biochemical tests, 134–135, 134*f*, 135*f*
  chemoautotrophs, 139*f*, **140**
  climate change and, 814–815
  Krebs cycle, 123, 124*f*
carbon dioxide incubators, 162
carbon fixation, **135**–137, 136*f*, 137*f*
carbon skeleton, **34**–35, 34*t*
carboxyl functional group, 34–35, 34*t*, 37–39, 38*f*, 40
carboxysomes, **91**–92
carbuncle, **597**
carcinogens, **227**–228, 229*f*
cardiotoxins, 435
cardiovascular syphilis, 782
cardiovascular system
  animal bites and scratches, 664–665
  brucellosis, **660**–661
  endocarditis, **658**–659, 659*f*
  gangrene, **663**–664, 664*f*
  hemorrhagic fevers, 675, 678–679, 679*f*
  Kawasaki syndrome, **688**
  Lyme disease, **667**–670, 668*t*, 669*f*, 670*f*
  plague, **665**–667, 667*f*, 668*t*
  protozoan diseases, 679–686
  rheumatic fever, **659,** 659*f*
  schistosomiasis, **686**–688, 687*f*
  sepsis and septicemia, **656**–658, 657*f*
  structure and function, 654–**655,** 655*f*, 656*f*
  tularemia, **660,** 660*f*
carotene, 339*t*
carrageenan, 341
carriers, infection, **407**
carrying capacity, **168,** 169
Carsonella ruddi, 321
carvacrol, 191, 191*f*
case control method, 419
case fatality ratio (CFR), **404**
case reporting, 419, 421*t*
casein, **824**–825, 824*f*
Caspian seals, 281
caspofungin, 575
cat-scratch disease, 408*t*, **664**–665, 665*f*, 666*t*
catabolic activator protein (CAP), 220–221, 221*f*, 222*f*
catabolism, **30, 110**
  amphibolic pathways, 144, 145*f*
  carbohydrates, 119–121, 120*f*
  catabolic pathways, 108, 110–111, 110*f*
  energy from, 118, 118*f*
  fermentation, 128–132, 129*f*, 130*f*, 131*f*, 132*t*, 133*t*
  lipids and proteins, 133, 133*f*, 134*f*
catabolite repression, **220**–221
catalase, 101, **157,** 157*f*
catalysts, **111**–112, 111*f*, 112*f*
catarrhal stage, pertussis, 700–701
cathelicidins, 474
cations, **27,** 28*f*
Caulimoviridae, 389*t*
Caulobacter, 299, 300*f*
CD59 protein, 471
cDNA (complementary DNA), **252**
ceftaroline, 566*t*
cell-cell fusion, 551
cell culture, **373**–374, 373*f*, 374*f*
  vaccine techniques, 718
cell defense mechanisms, 431–433, 433*f*
cell division
  centrosome, 102
  eukaryotes, 96*t*
  fungi, 327*t*
  prokaryotes, 96*t*
  yeasts, 328–329, 329*f*
cell entry inhibitors, 554–555, 555*f*
cell-mediated immunity, **481**–482, 482*f*. *See also* immunity, adaptive
cell membrane. *See* cytoplasmic (plasma) membrane
cell theory, **6**–7, 7*f*
cell wall, **80**
  acid-fast cell walls, 83
  acid-fast stain, 66, 67*f*
  algae, 5–6, 339*t*
  antifungal drugs, 575, 576*t*
  antimicrobial drugs, action of, 563, 564*f*, 566–570, 566*t*, 568*f*, 569*f*, 570*f*
  antimicrobial peptides (AMPs), **474**
  archaea, 5
  bacteria, 4–5, 5*f*, 327*t*
  budding yeasts, 328–329, 329*f*
  complex lipids in, 38–39, 39*f*
  endotoxins, **437**–439, 438*f*, 439*t*
  eukaryotes, 95*f*, 96–97, 96*t*
  fungi, 5, 327*t*
  Gram stain, 65–66, 65*f*, 83, 84*t*
  lysozyme, 456
  pathogen penetration of, 432
  phage lysozyme, **375,** 376*f*
  prokaryotes, 76*f*, 80–85, 81*f*, 82*f*, 84*t*, 96*t*
  proteins in, 40
  pseudomonads and, 303
  water molds, 342
cellular immunity, **481**. *See also* immunity, adaptive
  Foundation Figure, 499*f*
  response process, 490–496, 491*f*, 492*f*, 493*f*, 494*f*, 496*f*, 497*t*
cellular respiration, 119–121, 120*f*, **123**–128, 124*f*, 125*f*, 126*f*, 127*f*, 128*t*
cellular slime molds, **348**–349, 349*f*
cellulase, 36, 336
cellulose, 833
  algae, cell walls of, 5–6
  eukaryote cell wall, 96–97
  polysaccharides, 36
cementum, 733, 733*f*
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), **419,** 421
  antibiotic resistant organisms, 205
  autoclaving recommendations, 199
  biofilms and infections, 159
  diphtheria disease incidence data, 522*f*
  DNA fingerprinting, 260, 289*c*
  emerging infectious diseases (EIDs), 416
  experimental drug requests, 578
  foodborne disease rates, 728
  healthcare-associated infection rates, 411
  Measles Initiative, 510, 510*f*
  nationally notifiable infectious disease list, 421*t*
  neglected tropical diseases, 616
  rubella cases, 522
  sexually transmitted infection rates, 776
  vaccine recommendations, 505*t*, 506*t*
central dogma, 206–207, **208**
central nervous system (CNS), **623,** 623*f*, 624*f*. *See also* nervous system
centriole, 95*f*, 102
centrosome, 95*f*, **102**
cephalosporin, 566*t*, 567*t*, **570,** 586
cephalosporin-resistance, 205
Cephalosporium, 561
cephalothin, 566*t*
Ceratocystis ulmi, 330*f*, 336
cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), 622, **623,** 624*f*, 629*f*
cervical cancer, 258*t*
cervix, 769, 770*f*, 779–780, 780*f*
cestodes, 352–354, 352*f*, 354*f*, 355*f*, 358*t*
cetacean morbillivirus, 281
cetylpyridinium chloride, 195
CFR (case fatality ratio), **404**
CFUs (colony-forming units), **170,** 170*f*
Chagas, Carols, 679–680
Chagas' disease, 345, 410*t*, 436, 521, 616–617, 668*t*, **679**–681, 681*f*
chain of transmission, 412–413
chancre, **781**
chancroid (soft chancre), **783,** 789*t*
charcoal filters, 808
cheese production, **824**–825, 824*f*
chemical bonds, **27**
  covalent bond, **27**–28, 29*f*, 30*t*
  hydrogen bond, 28–29, 29*f*, 30*t*
  ionic bond, 27, 28*f*, 30*t*
chemical elements, **25**–26, 25*f*, 26*t*
chemical mutagens, **224**–226, 225*f*, 226*f*
chemical pollution, water, 805–806, 806*f*
chemical reactions, **30**
  decomposition reaction, 30
  dehydration synthesis, 35, 35*f*
  exchange reaction, **30**
  reversible reaction, 30–31
  synthesis reaction, 30
chemical sterilization, 196–197
chemically defined media, **160**–161, 160*t*, 164*t*
chemiosmosis, **119, 126**–127, 126*f*, 127*f*
chemistry, **25**–26, 25*f*, 26*t*, 30–31. *See also* inorganic compounds; organic compounds
chemoautotrophs, 139*f*, **140**
chemoheterotrophs, 139*f*, **140,** 796, 797*f*
  algae, 341
  carbon sources, 155
  fungi, 330–331
chemokines, 466–467, **482**–483, 482*t*
chemotaxis, **78, 462,** 463*f*, 466–467, 482
chemotherapy, **11, 561,** 579–581
chemotrophs, **138**
Chernobyl nuclear disaster, 338
chestnut tree blight, 336
chickenpox, 380*t*, 382, 388, 388*f*, 506*t*, 602*t*, **605**–606, 606*f*
chikungunya, 416, 668*t*, **675,** 676–677
childbirth fever, **658**
chimeric antigen receptor T cells (CAR-T), 256
chimeric monoclonal antibodies, **512**–513, 513*f*
chitin, 5, 36, 96
Chlamydia, 310, 311*f*, 789*t*
  vs. viruses, 364*t*
  cervical cancer, 778
  classification of, 278*f*, 296, 299
  coinfections, 775, 778
  culture techniques, 162, 310
  diagnostic tests, 783
  drugs for, 564*t*, 567*t*, 571, 572, 613, 779
  elementary body, 310, 310*f*, 365*f*, 693*f*
  host cell penetration, 433
  identification of, 711
  life cycle, 311*f*
  normal microbiota and, 456
  phagocytes and, 433
  portal of entry, 428, 429*t*
  sexually transmitted infections, test kits, 776–777
Chlamydia pneumoniae, 709*t*, **711**
Chlamydia trachomatis, 310, 456, **778**–779, 789*t*
  cervical cancer, 778
  coinfections, 775, 778
  diagnostic tests, 783
  drugs for, 564*t*, 567*t*, 571, 572, 613, 779
  inclusion conjunctivitis, **613,** 614*t*
  lymphogranuloma venereum (LGV), **783**
  nationally notifiable infectious diseases, 421*t*
  normal microbiota and, 456
  pelvic inflammatory disease, **779**–780, 780*f*
  phagocytes and, 433
  portal of entry, 428, 429*t*
  toxin, 259
  trachoma, **613**–614, 614*t*, 615*f*
Chlamydiae, 297*t*, 310
chlamydial pneumonia, 709*t*, **711**
chlamydoconidium, **329**–330, 330*f*
Chlamydomonas, 340*f*
Chlamydophila, 310, 311*f*
  C. pneumoniae, 310, 711
Chlamydophila psittaci, 310, 311*f*, 709*t*, **710**–711
  bioterrorism, 702–703
  Clinical Case, 694*c*, 712*c*, 717*c*, 718*c*, 722*c*
  elementary bodies, **710**
chloramine, 193
chloramphenicol, 91, 91*f*, 564, 565*f*, 567*t*, 571, 571*f*
chlorhexidine, 198

chloride of lime, 193
chlorine (Cl), 26*t*, 192–193, 199*t*
  as disinfectant, 189–190
  evaporation rate of, 198
chlorine dioxide, 197
Chlorobi, 309–310, 309*t*
Chlorobia, 297*t*
chlorobium vesicles, 139
Chloroflexus, 139*f*, 140, 140*t*, 309–310, 309*t*
chlorohexidine, 191, 199*t*
chlorophyll, 101, 102*f*, 136–137, 136*f*, 137*f*, 339*t*, 341. *See also* photosynthesis
chloroplasts, 95*f*, 98, **101,** 102, 102*f*
  evolution and, 274*f*
chloroquine, 578–579, 684
chlorosomes, 139
chlortetracycline, 567*t*, 572, 572*f*
cholera, 438*t*, **739**–740, 739*f*, 748*t*
  bioterrorism, overview of, 702–703
  blood type and disease severity, 536
  Clinical Case, 796*c*, 806*c*, 807*c*, 811*c*, 812*c*, 813*c*
  effects of, 427
  emerging infectious diseases, 17
  epidemiology, 417
  exotoxin, 435, 438*t*, 440
  fowl cholera, 306
  ID_{50}, **429**–430
  lysogenic phages, 440
  medications for, 587
  nationally notifiable infectious diseases, 421*t*
  natural disasters and, 742–743, 742*f*, 743*f*, 811*c*
  nonliving reservoirs, 407
  organism attachment, 77
  portal of entry, 428, 429*t*
  portal of exit, 444
  sanitation and, 17, 407, 504, 740, 743
  serovars, 414, 415*t*
  toxin binding, 85–86, 86*f*
  treatment for, 740, 812*c*
  vaccine, 11, 505, 508, 509
  water purity tests, 806
  waterborne transmission, **409**
cholesterol, 39–40, 39*f*, 142–143, 142*f*
chromatin, **98,** 99*f*
Chromatium, 309–310, 310*f*
chromatophores, **87,** 87*f*, 139
Chromobacterium violaceum, 803
chromophore, 64
chromosomes, **98, 208**. *See also* genetics
  DNA replication, 209–213, 211*f*, 212*f*, 213*f*
  endospores, **92,** 93*f*
  eukaryotes, 96*t*, 98–99, 99*f*
  gene therapy, 16
  genetic map, *E. coli*, 238*f*
  genetic transfer and recombination, overview, 230, 230*f*
  nucleoid, 90
  overview of, 209, 209*f*
  plasmids, 230–232, 232*f*
  prokaryotes, 96*t*
chronic carriers, **407,** 739
chronic disease, **403**
chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS), **648**
chronic inflammation, **465,** 465*f*
chronic viral infection, **388,** 388*f*, 389*t*
chronic wasting disease, **646**–648, 646*f*, 648*t*, 649*t*
cidofovir, 577, 578*f*
ciguatera, 342
cilastatin, 569
cilgavimab, 512
cilia, 5, 96, 97*f*, **455**
ciliary escalator, **455,** 455*f*, 694, 700
ciliates, **347**–348, 347*f*, 348*t*
ciprofloxacin, 567*t*, 573
circadian rhythms, microbial growth and, 169
cisternae, **99**–100, 99*f*, 100*f*
citric acid
  fermentation, 132*t*
  industrial production, 829
citric acid cycle, **123,** 124*f*, 128*t*
Citrobacter freundii, 283*f*
CJD (Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease), 391, **646**–648, 646*f*, 648*t*, 649*t*
clades, **276**
cladograms, **290,** 290*f*
Cladosporium, 337
clarithromycin, 567*t*, 572
class, **276,** 277*f*
class switching, 497–498, 497*f*
classic (furious) rabies, **635**–637, 635*f*, 637*f*, 638
classical pathway, complement, **469,** 469*f*
classification of microbes, 4–6, 4*t*, 5*f*. *See also* algae; Archaea domain; Bacteria domain; fungi; protozoa
  biochemical tests, 279–282, 281*f*, 282*f*, 283*f*
  cladograms, **290,** 290*f*
  Clinical Case, 272*c*, 282*c*, 287*c*, 289*c*, 291*c*
  dichotomous keys, **289**
  differential staining, 279
  DNA base composition, **286**
  DNA fingerprints, 287
  eukaryotes, 326*f*
  fatty acid profiles, 285–286
  flow cytometry, **286**
  Foundation Figure, 3-Domain System, 272*f*
  identifying microbiome members, 291
  methods, overview of, 279, 282*f*
  microbial diversity, 320–322
  morphological characteristics, 279
  nucleic acid hybridization, **286**–289, 287*f*, 288*f*, 289*f*, 290*f*
  overview of, 270
  phage typing, **284**–285, 285*f*
  phylogenetic relationships, 271–275, 272*f*, 273*t*, 274*f*, 275*f*
  prokaryotes, 276, 278*f*, 296, 297, 297*t*
  scientific nomenclature, 275–276
  serology, **282**–284, 284*f*, 285*f*
  taxonomic hierarchy, 276, 277*f*
  viruses, 278, 368, 370*t*, 371*t*, 372*t*
Claviceps purpurea, 443, 754, 755*t*
clavulanic acid (potassium clavulanate), 569
climate, disease rate and, 405, 416, 676–677
climate change, microbial solutions, 814–815
clindamycin, 571
Clinical Case
  Bacillus anthracis, 25*c*, 42*c*, 44*c*, 46*c*
  Burkholderia, 428*c*, 435*c*, 440*c*, 443*c*, 445*c*
  Chlamydophila psittaci, 694*c*, 712*c*, 717*c*, 718*c*, 722*c*
  cholera, 796*c*, 806*c*, 807*c*, 811*c*, 812*c*, 813*c*
  Clostridioides difficile, 397*c*, 411*c*, 414*c*, 416*c*, 422*c*
  Cryptococcus gattii, 327*c*, 336*c*
  dengue virus, 655*c*, 672*c*, 678*c*, 683*c*, 688*c*
  dental caries, 110*c*, 131*c*, 135*c*, 137*c*
  DiGeorge syndrome, 530*c*, 534*c*, 546*c*, 549*c*, 556*c*
  DNA, colon cancer screening, 208*c*, 225*c*, 228*c*, 235*c*
  Helicobacter pylori, 53*c*, 60*c*, 66*c*, 67*c*
  hepatitis, 365*c*, 384*c*, 386*c*, 387*c*
  HIV, tracking of, 244*c*, 250*c*, 253*c*, 255*c*, 257*c*
  hospital-acquired infections, source of, 73*c*, 83*c*, 85*c*, 91*c*, 94*c*
  immune response, sepsis and, 483*c*, 486*c*, 489*c*, 492*c*, 496*c*
  innate immunity, 454*c*, 460*c*, 464*c*, 468*c*, 474*c*, 475*c*
  Klebsiella pneumoniae, 73*c*, 83*c*, 85*c*, 91*c*, 94*c*
  leptospirosis, 769*c*, 773*c*, 778*c*, 784*c*
  meningitis, group B *Streptococcus*, 298*c*, 316*c*, 318*c*, 319*c*, 320*c*
  MRSA (methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*), 3*c*, 16*c*, 18*c*, 19*c*, 20*c*
  Naegleria meningoencephalitis, 624*c*, 628*c*, 630*c*, 645*c*, 647*c*, 648*c*
  norovirus, 180*c*, 196*c*, 198*c*, 201*c*
  pertussis, 505*c*, 508*c*, 510*c*, 514*c*, 519*c*, 524*c*
  Pseudomonas aeruginosa, 561*c*, 571*c*, 581*c*, 584*c*, 588*c*, 594*c*, 602*c*, 610*c*, 612*c*, 615*c*
  Pseudomonas fluorescens, 153*c*, 165*c*, 173*c*, 175*c*
  Salmonella outbreak, 272*c*, 282*c*, 287*c*, 289*c*, 291*c*, 821*c*, 823*c*, 826*c*, 830*c*, 832*c*, 834*c*
  Shiga toxin, *E. coli*, 728, 730*c*, 740*c*, 746*c*, 753*c*, 762*c*
Clinical Focus
  antibiotic allergy, 541
  antibiotic use in agriculture, 586, 586*f*
  foodborne infection, 738
  gonorrhea, 779
  healthcare-associated infections, 420
  human tuberculosis, 141
  infection and improper disinfection, 198
  infections in gym, 598
  influenza, crossing species barrier, 369
  legionellosis, 713
  mass death of marine mammals, 281
  measles, world health problem, 510, 510*f*
  neurological disease, 638
  norovirus, tracing source of, 265, 265*f*
  serum collection, 475, 475*f*
  tracking Zika virus, 219
  tularemia, 663
  waterborne diarrhea, 353, 353*f*
clinical trial, **419**
clitoris, 769, 770*f*
clonal deletion, **488**
clonal expansion, **487**–488, 487*f*, 488*f*, 489*f*
clones, **244, 276**. *See also* biotechnology
  genomic libraries, 252, 252*f*
  selection of, 253–254, 253*f*, 254*f*
  synthetic DNA, 252–253, 252*f*
cloning vectors, 244. *See also* biotechnology
Clonorchis sinensis, 351
Clostridioides difficile, 18, 179, 395*f*, 438*t*, 456, 533, 571, 572, 588, 748*t*
  Clinical Case, 397*c*, 411*c*, 414*c*, 416*c*, 422*c*
  fecal transplants, 533, 533*f*
  healthcare-associated infections (HAIs), **411**–414, 411*f*, 412*t*, 413*f*
  intestinal bacteria and, 37
  microbiota, 37, 399
  mycobiome and, 337
Clostridioides difficile-associated diarrhea, **746**
Clostridium, 313, 313*f*
  anaerobes, 156
  endospores, **92**–94, 93*f*, 313, 313*f*
  fermentation end products, 130*f*
  freshwater microbiota, 804
  gangrene, **663**–664, 664*f*
  Gram stain and, 83
  nitrogen fixation, 799
Clostridium botulinum, 196, 313, 438*t*, 456, **630**–632, 631*f*, 649*t*
  bioterrorism, overview of, 702–703
  commercial sterilization, **821**–822, 821*f*, 822*f*
  phage conversion, 378, 378*f*
Clostridium perfringens, 313, 438*t*
  gangrene, **663**–664, 664*f*
  gastroenteritis, **745**–746, 748*t*
  toxins, 436
Clostridium tetani, 231, 313, 313*f*, 438*t*, **628**–630, 628*f*, 649*t*
clotrimazole, 575
club fungi, 332–333, 334*f*
clue cells, 784, 784*f*
clusters of differentiation (CD), T cells, **492**–495, 493*f*, 494*f*, 497*t*
CMV (cytomegalovirus), 442*t*, **674**–675
coagulase, **432, 594**
coagulase-positive bacteria, 735
coagulation, water treatment, 807–808
coarse focus knob, microscope, 53*f*
Coccidioides immitis, 13, 329, 330*f*, 719–721, 720*f*, 723*t*
coccidioidomycosis, 416
coccidiomycosis, **719**–721, 720*f*, 723*t*
coccobacilli, **74,** 74*f*
coccus, shape of, 4–5, 5*f*, **73**–74 74*f*
codons, **215,** 215*f*
coenocytic hyphae, **327,** 328*f*
coenzyme, **113**–114, 113*f*, 114*t*, 157
coenzyme A (CoA), **114,** 114*t*
coenzyme Q, **124,** 127*f*
  chemiosmosis, **126**–127, 126*f*, 127*f*
coevolution, 427
cofactors, 108, **113**–114, 113*f*, 114*t*
  microbial nutrient needs, 155
  organic growth factors, 157
cohort groups, 419
cohort method, 419
cold sores, **607,** 607*f*
Coley, William, 547
colibactin, 435
coliforms, **806**–807
colistin, 573
colitis, 337
collagenase, **432**
collision theory, **111**
colon cancer
  Clinical Case, 208*c*, 225*c*, 228*c*, 235*c*
  intestinal bacteria and, 37

colony, **151,** 164–165, 165*f*. *See also* microbial growth
colony-forming units (CFUs), **170,** 170*f*
colony hybridization, **254,** 254*f*
colony-stimulating factor (CSF), 255, 483
colostrum, 498, 498*f*
comedonal (mild) acne, **601**–602
commensalism, **399**–400, 399*f*, **456**–457
commercial applications of microbiology, 109, 819
  alternative energy sources, 832–834
  amino acid production, 829
  biofuels, **832**–834
  biotechnology, **827**
  citric acid production, 829
  copper extraction, leaching, 831, 832*f*
  enzyme production, 829–830
  fermentation technology, 132*t*, 827–828, 827*f*, 828*f*
  food canning, 821–822, 821*f*, 822*f*
  food microbiology, 820–826, 820*t*, 821*f*, 822*f*, 823*ft*, 824*f*, 826*f*
  future trends, 834
  Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP), **820**–821, 821*f*
  hormone production, 14, 244–245, 245*f*, 256, 258*t*, 827
  microorganisms as products, 831–832
  pharmaceutical production, 830–831
  vitamin production, 830
commercial sterilization, **180,** 181*t*, 185–186, 189*t*, **821**–822, 821*f*, 822*f*
common cold, **698**–700, 699*t*
communicable disease, **402**
competence, **235**
competitive exclusion, **399,** 456
competitive inhibitors, **115**–116, 116*f*
complement activation, **468**–472, 469*f*, 470*f*, 471*f*, 472*f*, **489,** 490*f*
  Clinical Focus, serum collection, 475, 475*f*
  cytotoxic (type II) hypersensitivity reactions, **535**–538, 535*t*, 537*f*, 538*f*
  immune complex (type III) hypersensitivity reactions, **538**–539, 538*f*
complement fixation, **517**–518, 518*f*
complement system, 466*t*, **468**–472, 469*f*, 470*f*, 471*f*, 472*f*, 476*t*
complementary bases, 46, 208
complementary DNA (cDNA), **252**
complex lipids, 38–39, 39*f*
complex media, **161,** 161*t*, 164*t*
complex viruses, **368,** 368*f*
composting, **803**
compound light microscope (LM), **52**–55, 53*f*, 54*f*, 55*f*, 56*f*
compounds, chemical bonds, 27–29, 28*f*, 29*f*, 30*t*
compromised host, 406, 411, 411*f*, **412**
concentration
  chemiosmosis, **126**–127, 126*f*, 127*f*
  enzymes, effect on, 115
condensation reaction, **35,** 35*f*
condenser, microscope, **53,** 53*f*
confocal microscopy, **58,** 58*f*, 63*t*
congenital cytomegalovirus (CMV), 442*t*, **674**–675
congenital rubella syndrome, **609**
congenital syphilis, **782**
congenital transmission, **407**–408, 640–641, 640*f*, 641*f*, 682
conidia, 719, 719*f*
conidiophore, **329**–330, 330*f*, 332, 333*f*
conidiospores, 166, **329**–330, 330*f*
conidium, **329**–330, 330*f*
Coniothyrium minitans, 336
conjugated proteins, 44
conjugated vaccines, **507**. *See also* vaccines
conjugation, **235**–236, 236*f*, 237*f*, 238*f*
  fungi, 331–332, 331*f*
  in protozoa, **343**–344, 344*f*
conjugation (sex) pili, **80, 235,** 236*f*
conjugative plasmid, **231,** 235–236, 236*f*, 237*f*
conjunctiva, portal of entry, **428**–429
conjunctivitis, 332, **613,** 614*t*
conserved protein, 718
constant (C) region, antibodies, 484, 485*f*
constitutive gene, 218
contact inhibition, **442,** 442*f*
contact precautions, 413–414
contact transmission, **407**–410, 409*f*
contagious disease, **402**
contagium vivum fluidum, 364
continuous cell lines, **374,** 374*f*
continuous flow production, 828
contrast dyes, electron microscopy, 60, 60*f*
convalescent carriers, **407**
copper, e-waste recovery, 803
copper, microbial control, 193–194, 194*f*
copper 8-hydroxyquinoline, 194
copper extraction, industrial microbiology, 831, 832*f*
copper sulfate, 194
core polysaccharide, 82*f*, **83**
corepressor, **220,** 221*f*
Coronaviridae, 363, 365*f*, 371*t*, 382, 384*f*, 699
Coronavirus disease-2019. *See* COVID-19
cortex, lichens, **337**–338, 338*f*
Corynebacterium
  animal bites, diseases from, 664
  characteristics of, 317
  G+C content, 313, 317
  normal microbiota, 398*t*, 594, 771
  pleomorphic shape, 75
  urinary system, 771
Corynebacterium diphtheriae, **697**–698, 697*f*, 699*t*
  antitoxin, 435, 516
  characteristics of, 317
  emerging infectious diseases, 415*t*
  exotoxin, 435, 438*t*
  metachromatic granules, 91
  phage-coded toxins, 236, 378, 378*f*, 440
  vaccine, 505*t*
Corynebacterium xerosis, 594
Coulter counters, 172
counterstain, **66,** 83
coupled reactions, 110–111, 110*f*
covalent bond, **27**–28, 29*f*, 30*t*
COVID-19 (Coronavirus disease-2019), **17,** 415*t*, 421*t*, **714**–715, 714*f*, 723*t*
  antigenic drift in, 714–715
  antivirals, treatment with, 576*t*, 577, 578, 715
  biosynthesis of virus, 382, 384*f*
  ciliary escalator, effect on, 455
  conjunctivitis and, 615
  cytokine storm, 441, 466, 472, 483
  cytopathic effects, 441–442, 442*t*
  diagnosis of, 715
  disinfectants and sanitizers, use of, 192
  epidemiology of, 418
  healthcare-associated infections, 413
  host penetration, 433
  incidence and prevalence of, 402–403, 403*f*
  interferons, blocking of, 442
  long COVID, 715
  monoclonal antibody technology and, 512
  multisystem inflammatory syndrome in children, 688
  mutation rate, 414, 441
  origin and strains, tracking of, 275
  portal of entry, 428, 429*t*
  portal of exit, 444
  predisposing factors, 405
  SARS-CoV-2 virus, 5*f*, 368
  screening, fever and, 468
  severity and duration of disease, 403–404
  signs and symptoms of, 715
  spike proteins, 382, 384*f*, 430, 472, 507–508, 507*f*, 714, 714*f*, 715
  spikes, attachment by, 367, 379, 593
  tests for, 249, 261*f*, 284, 285*f*, 287, 287*f*, 521
  transmission and incubation, 407
  transmission-based precautions, 413
  UV radiation as disinfectant, 188, 188*t*
  vaccines for, 243, 257, 504, 505, 506*t*, 507–508, 507*f*, 509, 715
  ventilator-associated pneumonia, 198
  virulence, 430
  virus morphology, 368
  virus surface proteins, mutations in, 367
cowpox, 10–11, 504
Coxiella, 299
Coxiella burnetii, 304
  culture techniques, 712
  diagnostic tests for, 712
  endospores, 92
  phagocytes, survival in, 433
  Q fever, 709*t*, **711**–712, 711*f*
CPE (cytopathic effect), **373,** 374*f*, **441**–442, 441*f*, 442*ft*
cranial nerves, 623. *See also* nervous system
Crenarchaeota, 805
cresols, 191, 191*f*
Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD), 391, **646**–648, 646*f*, 648*t*, 649*t*
crevicular fluid, 731*f*, 732
Crick, Francis, 14, 44, 208
crisis, **467**
CRISPR, 256
cristae, **101,** 101*f*
Crohn's disease, 533, 533*f*
Cronobacter, 306
cross-contamination, 409*f*, **410**
crossing over, **230,** 230*f*
crown gall, 300
crustose lichens, 337, 338*f*
Crypthonectria parasitica, 336
cryptococcosis, 629*t*, **642,** 642*f*
Cryptococcus
  characteristics of, 335*t*
  drugs for, 575, 576*t*, 577
  meningitis and encephalitis, 629*t*
  opportunistic infections, 335
  spores, 329, 330*f*
Cryptococcus gattii, 325, 325*f*
  Clinical Case, 327*c*, 336*c*
  meningitis and encephalitis, 629*t*, 642
Cryptococcus grubii, 629*t*, 642
Cryptococcus neoformans, 629*t*, **642,** 642*f*
  AIDS-associated infections, 551*t*
  meningitis and encephalitis, 629*t*
  virulence factors, 443
cryptosporidiosis, 755*t*, **756**–757, 756*f*
Cryptosporidium, 347, 353, 353*f*, 755*t*, 756–757, 756*f*, 807
Cryptosporidium hominis, 579
crystal violet, 64, 65–66, 65*f*, 83
crystal violet iodine, 83
CSF (colony-stimulating factor), 255, 483
CTL (cytotoxic T lymphocyte), 452*t*
Culex, 638
culture, **160**
  animal viruses, 373–374, 373*f*, 374*f*
  bacteriophages, 372–373, 372*f*
  cell culture, **373**–374, 373*f*, 374*f*
  gene products, making of, 254–255
  preserving bacterial cultures, 165
  temperature and microbial growth, 153–154
culture media, **160**. *See also* agar; microbial growth
  aerotolerant anaerobes, 157
  Ames test, 228–229, 229*f*
  anaerobic growth media and methods, 161–162, 161*f*, 162*f*
  chemically defined media, 160–161, 160*t*, 164*t*
  complex media, 161, 161*t*, 164*t*
  enrichment media, 163, 164*t*
  for fecal coliforms, 807
  fermentation test, 134–135, 134*f*, 135*f*
  microaerophiles, 157
  obtaining pure cultures, 164–165, 165*f*
  osmotic pressure and, 155
  pH buffers, 33, 154
  reducing media, 164*t*
  replica plating, 227, 228*f*
  selective and differential media, **162**–163, 163*f*, 164*t*, 282, 283*f*
  for Shiga-toxin-producing *E. coli* (STEC), 741
  for staphylococcal food poisoning organisms, 735
  transport media, **279**
cultured sour cream, 825
Cupriavidus, 140
Cupriavidus metallidurans, 803
curd, **824**–825, 824*f*
cutaneous anthrax, **661,** 661*f*, 663
cutaneous diphtheria, **698**
cutaneous leishmaniasis, **685,** 685*f*
cutaneous mycoses, **334**
Cutibacterium acnes, 317, 594
cuticle, fluke, **351**
cyanide, 116

cyanobacteria
  algal blooms, 806, 806*f*
  carbon cycle, 797*f*
  carboxysomes, 92
  characteristics of, 308–309, 309*f*, 309*t*
  classification of, 272*f*, 278*f*, 297*t*
  endosymbiosis, 274, 274*f*
  eutrophication, **805**–806
  gas vacuoles, 92
  habitats of, 340*f*
  heterocysts, 308, 308*f*
  lichen, **337**–338, 338*f*
  microbial ecology, 15
  nitrogen cycle, 798*f*
  nitrogen fixation, **155,** 308, 799, 799*f*
  nutritional classification of, 139*f*
  pH, growth conditions, 33
  photoautotrophs, 139
  photosynthesis, 127, 135–137, 136*f*, 137*f*, 140*t*, 309–310, 309*t*
  seawater microbiota, 804
  sewage treatment, 109
  symbiosis, 799, 799*f*
  toxins, 308, 439*t*
cyanocobalamin (vitamin B_{12}), 114*t*
Cyanophora paradoxa, 274, 274*f*
cyclic amino acids, 40
cyclic AMP (cAMP), **220**–221, 221*f*, 222*f*
cyclic photophosphorylation, **136**–137, 137*f*
Cyclospora cayetanensis, 347
cyclosporiasis, 755*t*, **757,** 757*f*
cyclosporine, 336, 545
cyst, 198, **344,** 345, 346, 807
cysteine (Cys, C), 41*t*, 43, 215*f*
cystic acne, 456
cystic fibrosis
  aminoglycosides, 571
  biofilms, 159, 600
  common infections, 301, 303
  gene therapy, 16
  microbiome of lung, 696
  rDNA products, 258*t*
  Southern blotting, 259
cysticerci, **354**
cysticercosis, 616–617, **758,** 759*f*
cystitis, **772,** 772*t*
cytochrome c oxidase, 135
cytochromes, **124**–126, 125*f*, 127*f*
cytocidal effects, **441**–442, 441*f*, 442*ft*
cytokine storm, **466,** 482*t*, **483,** 717
cytokines, 437, **451,** 465*f*, 466–477, 466*t*, **482**–483, 482*t*
  endotoxins, **437**–439, 438*f*, 439*t*
  fever response, **467**–468
  T helper cells and, 493, 493*f*
cytolethal distending toxin, 435
cytolysis, **460,** 470, 471*f*
cytomegalic inclusion disease (CID), **674**–675
Cytomegalovirus (CMV), 370*t*, 380*t*, 382, 442*t*, 640–641, 640*f*, 641*f*, 662*t*, **674**–675, 747
cytomegalovirus retinitis, 675
cytopathic effect (CPE), **373,** 374*f*, **441**–442, 441*f*, 442*ft*
Cytophaga, 310
cytoplasm, **90, 98**
  eukaryotes, 96*t*
  prokaryotes, 76*f*, 96*t*
cytoplasmic (plasma) membrane, **85**–87, 86*f*, 87*f*
  antimicrobial agents, action of, 87, 182, 564, 565*f*, 567*t*, 573
  bacteria, 327*t*
  eukaryotes, 95*f*, 96*t*, 97
  fungi, 327*t*
  lipids, function of, 37–39, 38*f*, 39*f*
  membrane-disrupting toxins, **435**–436
  movement across, 87–90, 87*f*, 88*f*, 89*f*, 97
  prokaryotes, 76*f*, 96*t*
  proteins in, 40
  steroids, 39–40, 39*f*
  sterols, 83
  virus release methods, 384, 386, 386*f*
cytoplasmic streaming, **98, 349,** 350*f*
cytosine (C)
  DNA base pairs, **208**
  nucleic acids, overview, 44–46, 45*f*, 46*f*, 47*t*
  RNA and protein synthesis, 213–218, 214*f*, 215*f*, 216*f*, 217*f*
cytoskeleton, **90, 98**
cytosol, **98**
cytosome, **344**
cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL), **494**–495, 495*f*, 497*t*
  function of, 452*t*
  type IV hypersensitivity reactions, 539–540, 539*f*, 540*f*
cytotoxic (type II) hypersensitivity reactions, 529*t*, **535**–538, 535*t*, 537*f*, 538*f*
cytotoxins, 435

D

D-isomer, **40,** 40*f*, 42, 829
dairy products, 824–825
dalfopristin, 567*t*, 572
dalton (da), **29**
dandruff, 594
Dane particle, 749
daptomycin, 567*t*, 573
darkfield microscope, **55,** 56*f*, 62*t*
daughter cells
  budding yeasts, 328–329, 329*f*
  DNA replication, 90
deamination, **133,** 133*f*, 134*f*, **797,** 798*f*
death curve, microbial, 181, 181*t*, 182*f*
death phase, 168*f*, **169**
deathcap mushroom, 443
debridement, **630**
decarboxylation, **123,** 133, 133*f*, 134, 134*f*
decimal reduction time (DRT), **183**
decolorizing agent, **65**–66, 65*f*
decomposition reaction, **30**
deep-freezing, **165**
deer fly, 358*f*, 359*t*
deer fly fever, 660, 660*f*
deer ticks, 17, 667–670, 668*t*, 669*f*, 670*f*
defecation, **455**
defensins, 474, 730
definitive host, **347**
degeneracy, **215**
degenerative disease, 400
degenerative evolution, 317
degerming, **180,** 181*t*
degradative reactions. *See* catabolism
degranulation, **530,** 530*f*
dehydration synthesis reaction, **35,** 35*f*, 110, 142–143, 142*f*
dehydrogenation, **118,** 118*f*
Deinococcota, 318–319
Deinococcus radiodurans, 318
delayed cell-mediated (type IV) hypersensitivity reactions, 529*t*, **539**–540, 539*f*, 540*f*
deltaproteobacteria, 306–307, 307*f*
Deltaviridae, 371*t*
Deltavirus (HDV), 750*t*, 752
denaturation, **43**–44, **114,** 115*f*
dendritic cells, 451, 452*t*, 458*f*, 459*t*, 460, **460, 491**–492, 491*f*
dengue, 410*t*, 416, 506*t*, 616–617, 654, 654*f*, **678,** 680*t*
  Clinical Case, 655*c*, 672*c*, 678*c*, 683*c*, 688*c*
denitrification, **798,** 798*f*
dental calculus, 732, 732*f*
dental caries, 110*c*, 135, 137, 430, **731**–733, 731*f*, 732*f*, 734*t*
  Clinical Case, 110*c*, 131*c*, 135*c*, 137*c*
dental plaque, 107*f*, **731**–733, 731*f*, 732*f*
dentin, 731*f*, 732, 732*f*
deoxyribonuclease, 599
deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), **44**–46, 45*f*, 46*f*, 47*t*. *See also* biotechnology; genetics; human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
  biotechnology, overview of, 16
  carcinogens, identifying, **227**–228, 229*f*
  central dogma, 206–207
  Clinical Case, cancer screening, 208*c*, 225*c*, 228*c*, 235*c*
  conjugation, 80, 235–236, 236*f*, 237*f*, 238*f*
  DNA fingerprints, 259–261, 261*f*, 287
  endospores, 93, 93*f*
  eukaryotes, 96*t*, 98–99, 99*f*, 273*t*
  exons and introns, **216,** 218*f*
  fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH), **288**–289, 290*f*
  genes, overview of, 208
  genes and evolution, 238, 238*f*
  genetic transfer and recombination, overview, 230, 230*f*
  microbial control agents and, 182
  microbial nutrient needs, 155
  microscopy, 54*f*
  molecular genetics, overview of, 14
  multiplication of animal viruses, 375, 375*f*, 379–386, 379*t*, 380*ft*, 381*f*, 383*f*, 384*f*, 385*f*, 386*f*
  multiplication of bacteriophages, 375–378, 375*f*, 376*f*, 377*f*, 378*f*, 379*t*
  mutagens, **224**–226, 225*f*, 226*f*
  mutants, identification of, 227, 228*f*
  mutation rate, 227
  mutation types, 223–224, 223*f*, 224*f*
  nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs), **287**
  nucleic acid hybridization, **286**–289, 287*f*, 288*f*, 289*f*, 290*f*
  nucleoid, 90
  nucleotide biosynthesis, 143, 144*f*
  plasmids, 90
  plasmids, gene transfer and, 230–232, 232*f*
  prokaryotes, 76*f*, 96*t*, 273*t*
  replication of, 209–213, 211*ft*, 212*f*, 213*f*
  RNA transcription and translation, 213–218, 214*f*, 215*f*, 216*f*, 217*f*, 218*f*
  synthetic DNA, 252–253, 252*f*
  transduction, 236, 238*f*
  transformation in bacteria, 233–235, 234*f*, 235*f*
  transposons, 232–233, 233*f*
  ultraviolet (UV) light and, 188, 188*f*
  vertical gene transfer, 209, 210*f*
  viruses, 6, **364,** 365–366
  viruses, taxonomy of, 368, 370*t*, 371*t*, 372*t*
deoxyribose, 36, 44–46, 45*f*, 46*f*, 47*t*, 208
Dermacentor andersoni, 671
Dermacentor occidentalis, 672
Dermacentor variabilis, 671
dermatitis, 603*t*
dermatomycoses, 334, **610,** 610*f*
dermatophytes, **334, 610,** 610*f*
dermicidin, 474
dermis, **454, 593,** 593*f*
descriptive epidemiology, **418**–419
desensitization immunotherapy, **534**
desiccation, **187,** 189*t*
Desulfovibrio, 128, 307, 804
desulfurization, **133,** 133*f*, 134*f*
detergents, 81, 82*f*, 200*t*
  eutrophication and, **805**–806
Deuteromycota, 333
dextran, 36, 731
dextrose agar, 162
diabetes mellitus, 132, **542,** 542*t*
  human microbiome and, 192
diacetyls, 825
diagnostic immunology, 511–512
  agglutination, **515**–516, 515*f*, 516*f*
  complement fixation, **517**–518, 518*f*
  ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay), **520,** 521*f*
  fluorescent-antibody (FA) techniques, **518**–519, 519*f*, 520*f*
  future trends, 521, 524
  monoclonal antibodies, **512**–513, 513*f*
  neutralization reactions, **516**–517, 517*f*
  precipitation reactions, **514,** 514*f*
diapedesis, 465*f*, **466**
diaphragm, microscope, 53*f*
diarrhea, **455**
  amebic dysentery, 345, 755*t*, **757**–758, 758*f*
  Bacillus cereus gastroenteritis, **746**
  cholera, **739**–740, 739*f*
  cholera after natural disasters, 742–743, 742*f*, 743*f*
  Clinical Case, *C. difficile*, 397*c*, 411*c*, 414*c*, 416*c*, 422*c*
  Clinical Case, norovirus, 180*c*, 196*c*, 198*c*, 201*c*
  Clinical Case, *Salmonella*, 272*c*, 282*c*, 284*c*, 287*c*, 289*c*, 291*c*
  Clinical Case, Shiga toxin, *E. coli*, 728, 730*c*, 740*c*, 746*c*, 753*c*, 762*c*
  Clinical Focus, waterborne sources, 353, 353*f*
  Clostridioides difficile-associated diarrhea, **746**
  cryptosporidiosis, 755*t*, **756**–757, 756*f*
  Cryptosporidium, 347
  Cyclospora cayetanensis, 347
  cyclosporiasis, 755*t*, **757,** 757*f*
  digestive system diseases, overview, 734
  Disease in Focus, bacterial diseases, 748*t*
  enteroaggregative *E. coli* (EAEC), **741**
  enterohemorrhagic *E. coli* (EHEC), **741,** 741*f*
  enteroinvasive *E. coli* (EIEC), **741**
  enteropathogenic *E.coli* (EPEC), **741**
  enterotoxigenic *E. coli* (ETEC), **744**

Index

giardiasis, 755*t*, **756,** 756*f*, 757
hepatitis A, **747**
Microsporidia, 332, 332*f*
Norovirus, **753**
oral rehydration therapy, 734
probiotics and, 457
Rotavirus, **752**–753, 752*f*
Shiga-toxin-producing *E. coli* (STEC), **741**
shigellosis (bacillary dysentery), 735–**736,** 736*f*
toxins, 438*t*
yersiniosis, **745**
diatoms, 341, 341*f*, 444. *See also* algae
DIC (disseminated intravascular coagulation), 437
Clinical Case, 483*c*, 486*c*, 489*c*, 492*c*, 496*c*
dichotomous key, **289,** 298, 298*f*
differential diagnosis, 629*t*, 662
differential interference contrast (DIC) microscopy, **56,** 57*f*, 62*t*
differential media, **162**–163, 163*f*, 164*t*, 282, 283*f*
differential stains, **65**–66, 65*f*
differential white blood cell count, **460**
diffraction, 55–56, 56*f*
diffusely adherent *E. coli*, 741
diffusion tests, 580, 580*f*
DiGeorge syndrome, 530*c*, 534*c*, 546*c*, 549*c*, 556*c*
digestive system
amebic dysentery, 755*t*, **757**–758, 758*f*
Bacillus cereus gastroenteritis, **746**
campylobacteriosis, **744**
cholera and natural disasters, 742–743, 742*f*, 743*f*
Clostridioides difficile-associated diarrhea, **746**
Clostridium perfringens gastroenteritis, **745**–746
cryptosporidiosis, 755*t*, **756**–757, 756*f*
cyclosporiasis, 755*t*, **757,** 757*f*
Disease in Focus, bacterial diseases, 748*t*
Diseases in Focus, viral diseases, 755*t*
E. coli gastroenteritis, 740–741, 741*f*, 744
fecal-oral cycle, **728**
fungal diseases, 754, 755*t*
giardiasis, 755*t*, **756,** 756*f*, 757
helminthic diseases, 755*t*, 758–762, 758*f*, 759*f*, 760*f*, 761*f*, 762*f*
hepatitis, **747,** 749–752, 749*f*, 750*t*
lower digestive system diseases, 734–746
mouth, diseases of, 731–734, 731*f*, 732*f*, 733*f*
mumps, **746**–747, 747*f*
noncholera *Vibrio* infections, 740
normal microbiota, 729–730
Norovirus, **753**
peptic ulcer disease, **744,** 745*f*
pinworms, **760**
portal of entry, **428**–429, 429*t*
portal of exit, **444**–445, 445*f*
protozoan diseases, 755*t*
Rotavirus, **752**–753, 752*f*
salmonellosis, **736**–739, 737*f*
shigellosis (bacillary dysentery), 735–**736,** 736*f*
staphylococcal food poisoning, **735,** 735*f*
structure and function, **729,** 729*f*
tapeworms, 755*t*, **758**–760, 759*f*
traveler's diarrhea, **744**
typhoid fever, **739**
Yersinia gastroenteritis, **745**
diglyceride, 37–39, 38*f*
diiodohydroxyquin, 579
dimer, 211*t*, 486
dimorphism, **329,** 329*f*
dinoflagellates, 341–342, 341*f*, 348*t*, 444. *See also* algae
dioecious, **351**
dipeptide, 42, 42*f*
1,3-diphosphoglyceric acid, 120*f*, 121, 122*f*
diphtheria, 416, **697**–698, 697*f*, 699*t*
antitoxin, 435, 516
characteristics of, 317
emerging infectious diseases, 415*t*
exotoxin, 435, 438*t*
phage-coded toxins, 236, 378, 440
vaccine, 505*t*, 509
diphtheroids, 594
Diphyllobothrium latum, 755*t*, 758–759
dipicolinic acid (DPA), 93
diplobacilli, **74,** 74*f*
diplococci, **74,** 74*f*
diploid cell lines, **374**
Diplomonads, 348*t*
direct agglutination, **515**–516, 515*f*
direct fluorescent-antibody (DFA) tests, **518**–519, 519*f*, **636, 783**
direct microscopic count, **171,** 174*f*
direct (positive) selection, **227**
Dirofilaria immitis, 356–357, 357*f*
disaccharides, **36**
disease, **396**
disease principles. *See also* epidemiology; pathogenicity, mechanisms of
classifying infectious disease, 402–405, 403*f*
emerging infectious diseases (EIDs), **414**–416, 415*t*
etiology, Koch's postulates, 400–**401,** 401*f*
healthcare-associated infections (HAIs), **411**–414, 411*f*, 412*t*, 413*f*
human microbiome, 396–400, 398*ft*, 399*f*
pathology, infection, and disease, 396
patterns of disease, 405–406, 406*f*
reservoirs of infection, **407,** 408*t*
transmission routes, 407–410, 409*f*, 410*ft*
vertical transmission, mother to child, 640–641, 640*f*, 641*f*
disinfectants, 180
chlorine compounds, 193, 464
disinfection, principles of, 189–190
evaluation of, 190, 190*f*
infection following improper disinfection, 198
phenol and phenolics, 190–191, 191*f*
water treatment, 808, 808*f*
disinfection, **180,** 181*t*
bleach, antibacterial properties, 19, 193, 464
legionellosis, disinfection, 713
norovirus, disinfection for, 201*c*, 753
sewage treatment, 808, 809*f*, 811
disk-diffusion method, **190,** 190*f*, **580,** 580*f*
disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), 437
Clinical Case, 483*c*, 486*c*, 489*c*, 492*c*, 496*c*
dissimilation, **800**
dissimilation plasmid, **231**
dissociation, **31**–32, 32*f*
disulfide bridges, 43
DNA. *See* deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)
DNA base composition, **286**
DNA chip, **288,** 289*f*
DNA fingerprinting, 259–261, 261*f*, 287
DNA gyrase, 211*t*
DNA ligase, 211*t*, 212*f*
DNA polymerase, **210,** 211*ft*, 212*f*
DNA probes, **254,** 254*f*, **287,** 288*f*
DNA vaccines, **257, 507**–508, 507*f*. *See also* vaccines
DNA viruses, 380–382, 380*t*, 381*f*, 387
dogs
animal reservoirs, 407
bites and scratches, disease from, 664
Clinical Case, *Capnocytophaga canimorsus*, 483*c*, 486*c*, 489*c*, 492*c*, 496*c*
Cryptosporidium, 347
hydatid disease, 755*t*, **759**–760, 760*f*
leptospirosis, 312, 408*t*, 773
Lyme disease, 670
rabies, 408*t*, **635**–637, 635*f*, 637*f*, 638
ringworm, 610
roundworms, 355–356
tapeworms, *Echinococcus granulosus*, 354, 354*f*, 358*t*, 755*t*, **759**–760, 760*f*
Toxocara canis, 356, 358*t*
trichinellosis, 356–357, 357*f*
zoonoses, **407**
dolphins, 281
dolutegravir, 555*f*, 556
domains, 271–274, 272*f*, 273*t*, 274*f*, **276,** 277*f*, **297**. *See also* Archaea domain; Bacteria domain
domoic acid, 341, 444
domoic acid toxicosis, **341**
donor cell, **230,** 230*f*
dopamine, 647
doripenem, 569
double blind test, 419
double covalent bond, 28, 29*f*
double helix, DNA, **44**–46, 45*f*, 46*f*, 47*t*
doxycline, 572, 572*f*
dracunculiasis, 616–617
Drew, Charles, 535, 537*f*
droplet precautions, 413–414
droplet transmission, **408**–409
drug synergism, 574, 574*f*
drugs
activity spectrum, narrow or broad, 562–563, 564*t*
AIDS and HIV treatment, 554–556, 555*f*
aminoglycosides, 571
antibiotic resistance, 12, 18–19, 207, 232, **562,** 581–585, 582*f*, 583*f*, 584*f*
antibiotics, discovery of, 11–12, 11*f*
antifungals, 575–577, 575*f*, 576*t*
antihelminthic drugs, 579
antimicrobial drugs, commonly used, 566*t*–567*t*, 576*t*
antimicrobial drugs, overview of, 561–562, 561*f*, 562*t*
antiprotozoan drugs, 578–579
antiviral drugs, 11, 577–578, 578*f*
bacteriocidal and bacteriostatic, **563,** 563*f*
biotechnology, applications of, 256–257, 258*t*
blood-brain barrier, 623
cell wall synthesis inhibition, 563, 564*f*, 566–570, 566*t*, 568*f*, 569*f*, 570*f*
chemotherapy, tests for, 579–581, 580*f*, 581*f*
chloramphenicol, 571
Clinical Case, antibiotic resistance, 561*c*, 571*c*, 581*c*, 584*c*, 588*c*
Clinical Focus, use in agriculture, 586, 586*f*
combinations, effects of, 585
Foundation Figure, antimicrobial mechanisms, 563, 563*f*
Foundation Figure, antimicrobial resistance, 582, 582*f*
future directions, 585, 587–588
glycyclines, **572**
horizontal gene transfer and antibiotic use, 232
immunotoxins, **547**
industrial production, 830–831
influenza, 718
interferons, 473
lipopeptides, **573**
macrolides, **572,** 572*f*
malaria, 684
metabolite synthesis inhibition, 564–565, 567*t*, 574, 574*f*
microbes in industry, 109
MODS (Microscopic-Observation Drug-Susceptibility Assay), 706
monoclonal antibodies (Mabs), **512**–513, 513*f*
nitrofurantoin, 571
nucleic acid synthesis inhibition, 567*t*, 573
oxazolidinones, **573**
penicillin, **566,** 568–569, 568*f*, 569*f*
peptic ulcer disease, 744
plasma membrane injury, 564, 565*f*, 567*t*, 573
pleuromutilins, **573**
protein synthesis inhibition, 563–564, 565*f*, 567*t*, 571–573, 571*f*, 572*f*
quinolones and fluoroquinolones, **573**–574
rifamycin, **573**
safety concerns, 585
streptogramins, **572**
sulfonamides (sulfa drugs), **574,** 574*f*
tetracycline, **571**–572, 572*f*
transplant rejection prevention, 545–546
for tuberculosis, 705–706
dry heat sterilization, 186, 189*t*
dry weight, growth measurement and, 175
DTap vaccine, **697**–698, 697*f*
dual system, **481**
ductus (vas) deferens, 769, 770*f*
dumb (paralytic) rabies, **635**–637, 635*f*, 637*f*, 638
duodenum, ulcers of, 744, 745*f*
dura mater, 623, 624*f*
Dutch elm disease, 336
dysbiosis, 169, **532**–533

dysentery, **734**
dysuria, 772

E
E (exit) site, **215,** 216*f*
E test, **580,** 580*f*
e-waste (electronic waste), 803
EAEC (enteroaggregative *E. coli*), **741**
eardrum, 698, 698*f*
earth microbiome, **794**. *See also* environmental microbiology
earwax, **455, 456**
Eastern equine encephalitis (EEE), 638, 643*t*, 675
Ebola virus disease (EVD), **19, 678**–679, 679*f*, 680*t*
  bat reservoirs, 637*n*, 678
  biosafety precautions, 163–164
  bioterrorism, 702–703
  cytokine storm, 483
  emerging infectious diseases, 415*t*
  size of virus, 365*f*, 371*t*
  vaccines, 508, 678–679
  virus morphology, 367, 367*f*, 371*t*
echinocandins, **575,** 576*t*
echinococcosis, 616–617
Echinococcus granulosus, 354, 354*f*, 755*t*, **759**–760, 760*f*
eclipse period, **376,** 376*f*
*Eco*RI, 246*t*
ectomycorrhizae, 795, 795*f*
ectopic (tubal) pregnancy, 780
Eddy, Bernice, 386
edema, 465*f*, **466**
EDTA (ethylenediaminotetraacetic acid), 84
eggs, food safety, 737
eggs, growing viruses in, 373, 373*f*, 505, 508, 636, 718
EHEC (enterohemorrhagic *E. coli*), **741,** 741*f*
Ehrlich, Paul, 11, 561, 579
Ehrlichia, 299
Ehrlichia chafeensis, 670
ehrlichiosis, 408*t*, 410*t*, 668*t*, **670**
EIEC (enteroinvasive *E. coli*), **741**
ejaculatory duct, 769, 770*f*
electrochemical gradient, 126–127, 126*f*, 127*f*
electron-beam accelerator, 824, 824*f*
electron microscope, **59**–61, 60*f*, 63*t*–64*t*
electron shells, **25**–26, 25*f*, **26,** 26*f*, 26*t*
  chemical bonds, 27–29, 28*f*, 29*f*, 30*t*
electron transport chain (system), **119,** 120–121, 120*f*, **123**–126, 125*f*, 127*f*, 128*t*
  energy production, summary, 138, 138*f*
  oxidase test, 135
  photophosphorylation, 136–137, 136*f*, 137*f*
electronic cell counters, 172
electronic configuration, **26,** 26*f*
electronic waste (e-waste), 803
electrons, **25**–26, 25*f*, 26*t*
  anaerobic respiration, 128
  chemical bonds, 27–29, 28*f*, 29*f*, 30*t*
  coenzymes, 113*f*, 114
  fermentation, 128–132, 129*f*, 130*f*, 131*f*, 132*t*, 133*t*
  oxidation-reduction reactions, 117–118, 118*f*
electroporation, **250,** 250*f*, 251*f*
Eleftheria terrae, 570
elementary body, **310,** 311*f*, **710**
ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay), **284,** 284*f*, **520,** 521*f*
Elizabethkingia, 310, 641, 658
Ellerman, Wilhelm, 386
elvitegravir, 555*f*, 556, 577
Embden-Meyerhof pathway, 120*f*, 121, 122*f*
embryo, 769, 770*f*
embryonic stem cells (ESCs), **544,** 544*f*
emerging infectious diseases (EIDs), **17**–20, 205, **414**–416, 415*t*, 678–679, 679*f*
emtricitabine, 555, 555*f*
emulsification, 194–195
enamel, tooth, 731*f*, 732, 732*f*
enanthem, **594**
encephalitis, **623**
  AIDS-associated diseases, 551*t*
  amebic encephalitis, 346, 576*t*, 579, 622*f*, 629*t*
  amebic meningoencephalitis, 643*t*, **645,** 645*f*
  arboviral encephalitis, 348*t*, 637–639, 639*f*
  arthropod vectors, 410*t*
  Balamuthia, 348*t*
  bovine spongiform encephalitis, 415*t*
  California encephalitis, 371*t*, 639, 643*t*
  Canyon strain, 643*t*
  chickenpox (varicella), 605
  Clinical Case, *Naegleria*, 624*c*, 628*c*, 630*c*, 645*c*, 647*c*, 648*c*
  Clinical Focus, 641
  diagnostic tests for, 639
  Diseases in Focus, 629*t*, 643*t*
  Eastern equine encephalitis, 371*t*, 638, 643*t*, 675
  emerging infectious diseases, 415*t*
  granulomatous amebic encephalitis, 629*t*, **645**
  hand-foot-and-mouth disease, 609
  Heartland virus disease, **639,** 643*t*
  Hendra virus, 415*t*
  herpes encephalitis, **608**
  human Powassan virus, **639,** 643*t*
  Japanese encephalitis, 639
  La Cross strain, 643*t*
  Lyme disease, 670
  Lyssavirus, **635**–637, 635*f*, 637*f*, 638
  measles (rubeola), 510, 608, 608*f*
  melioidosis, 712
  meningoencephalitis, **623,** 629*t*, 643*t*, **645,** 645*f*
  Naegleria fowleri, 348*t*, 622, 622*f*, 629*t*, **645,** 645*f*
  Nipah virus, 415*t*
  persistent latent infections, **388,** 389*t*
  primary amebic meningoencephaliltis, 643*t*, **645,** 645*f*
  protozoa, pathogenic, 348*t*
  rabies, **635**–637, 635*f*, 637*f*, 638
  racoon roundworm encephalitis, 415*t*
  reservoirs, 643*t*
  rubella virus, 389*t*, 608
  St. Louis encephalitis, 639, 643*t*
  subacute panencephalitis (SSPE), 608
  subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (SSPE), 388, 389*t*
  toxoplasmosis, 682
  vaccines, 508
  vectors, 643*t*
  West Nile encephalitis, 371*t*, 408*t*, 415*t*, 639, 639*f*, 643*t*
  Western equine encephalitis, 371*t*, 638, 643*t*, 675
Encephalitozoon, 332*f*
encystment, 344
end-product, **116,** 117*f*
end-product inhibition, **116,** 117*f*
endemic disease, **403**
endemic murine typhus, 410*t*, 668*t*, **671**
endemic typhus, 408*t*
endergonic reaction, **30,** 110
endocarditis, 16, 662*t*
endocytosis, **97**
endoflagella, **79,** 79*f*
endogenous antigens, 493*f*
endoliths, **801**
endomycorrhizae, 795, 795*f*
endonuclease, 211*t*
endoplasmic reticulum (ER), 95*f*, **99**–100, 99*f*
  RNA virus biosynthesis, 382, 383*f*
endospore, **68, 92**–94, 93*f*
  Bacillus, 314, 314*f*
  Bacillus anthracis (anthrax), 92–94, 93*f*, 197, **661,** 661*f*, 663
  Bacillus cereus gastroenteritis, **746**
  bacteria, overview of, 327*t*
  botulism, **630**–632, 631*f*
  chemical sterilization, 197
  Clinical Case, *Bacillus anthracis*, 25*c*, 42*c*, 44*c*, 46*c*
  Clostridium, 313, 313*f*
  commercial sterilization, **821**–822, 821*f*, 822*f*
  desiccation, 187, 189*t*
  halogens, microbial control and, 192–193
  microbial control, 186, 187, 189*t*, 195, 199, 199*t*, 200*t*
  moist heat sterilization and, 183–184, 184*ft*, 189*t*
  peroxygens, 197–198
  staining of, 68–69, 68*ft*, 68*t*
  temperature and, 154
endosymbiosis, *Wolbachia*, 301
endosymbiotic theory, **102,** 274*f*
endotoxic shock, 439, 474, 657–658
endotoxins, 436*f*, **437**–439, 438*f*, 439*t*
  antitoxins, 439
  bacterial meningitis, 625
  Clinical Case, 85*c*, 91*c*, 94*c*, 428*c*, 435*c*, 440*c*, 443*c*, 445*c*
  Coley's toxins, 547
  diagnostic tests for, 439
  disseminated intravascular coagulation, 437
  E. coli, 254, 255*f*
  fever, 437, 438*f*, 439
  gene products, making of, 254–255, 255*f*
  Gram-negative bacteria, characteristics, 84*t*
  Gram-negative sepsis, 657–658, 657*f*
  intoxication, 435
  lipid A, 82*f*, 83
  meningococcal meningitis, 626
  pathogenicity mechanisms, 445*f*
  Pseudomonas aeruginosa, 600
  salmonellosis, 748*t*
  septic shock, **439**
  Shigellosis, 748*t*
  shock, **439**
  typhoid fever, 748*t*
  Yersinia gastroenteritis, **745,** 748*t*
  yersiniosis, **745**
energy
  active transport, **89**–90
  ADP (adenosine diphosphate), 46, 46*f*
  amphibolic pathways, 144, 145*f*
  ATP (adenosine triphosphate), 46, 46*f*
  biofuels, **832**–834
  carbohydrates, 35–36, 35*f*
  cellular respiration, 123–128, 124*f*, 125*f*, 126*f*, 127*f*, 128*t*, 133*t*
  chemical reactions, 30
  chemiosmosis, **126**–127, 126*f*, 127*f*
  collision theory, 111
  for DNA replication, 212–213, 212*f*, 213*f*
  electron transport chain (system), **123**–126, 125*f*, 127*f*, 128*t*
  fermentation, 128–132, 129*f*, 130*f*, 131*f*, 132*t*, 133*t*
  lipid and protein catabolism, 133, 133*f*, 134*f*
  metabolic pathways of energy production, 119
  metabolic pathways of energy use, 140, 142–143, 142*f*, 143*f*, 144*f*
  metabolic reactions, 108, 110–111, 110*f*, 117–119, 118*f*
  mitochondria, 101
  respiration and fermentation, 120–121, 120*f*
  sulfur granules, 91–92
energy levels, **26,** 26*f*
enfuvirtide, 555, 555*f*, 577
enrichment media, **163,** 164*t*
Entamoeba histolytica, 345–346, 345*f*, 755*t*, **757**–758, 758*f*
enteric bacteria, 282*f*
Enterics, **304**–306, 305*f*
enteroaggregative *E. coli* (EAEC), **741**
Enterobacter, 130*f*, 306
Enterobacteriaceae, 582
Enterobacteriales, 304–306, 305*f*
Enterobius vermicularis, 356, 356*f*, 760
Enterococcus, 316
  antibiotic resistance, 411, 586
  drugs for, 587
  G+C ratio, 313
  healthcare-associated infections, 412*t*
  human virome and, 366
  Lactobacillus, 315
  normal microbiota, 398*t*
Enterococcus faecalis, 231, 233, 316, 658
  antibiotic resistance, 231
  classification of, 276
  gram-positive sepsis, 658
  opportunistic pathogens, 457
  pentose phosphate pathway, 121
  transposons, 233
Enterococcus faecium, 316, 658
enterohemorrhagic *E. coli* (EHEC), **741,** 741*f*
enteroinvasive *E. coli* (EIEC), **741**
Enteromonas hominis, 94
enteropathogenic *E.coli* (EPEC), **741**
enterotoxigenic *E. coli* (ETEC), **744**
enterotoxin
  bacterial transposons, 233
  C. difficile, 438*t*
  enterotoxigenic *E. coli* (ETEC), **744**
  food poisoning, 438*t*
  heat stability, 439*t*
  naming of, 435
  plasmid genes, 440
  staphylococcal food poisoning, **735,** 735*f*, 748*t*
  Staphylococcus, 594

toxin potency, 430
traveler's diarrhea, 304, 438*t*
Vibrio cholerae, 207, 438*t*, 748*t*
Enterovirus, 370*t*, 625, 699, 699*t*
Enterovirus D68 (EV-D68), 699*t*, 700
Entner-Doudoroff pathway, **121**
entry, animal virus, 379, 380*f*
entry inhibitors, antiviral drugs, 576*t*, **577**
envelope, viral, 6, **366**–367, 367*f*
enveloped helical viruses, 368
enveloped polyhedral viruses, 368
environment, pH and growth effects, 33
environmental diseases, 405
environmental microbiology
aquatic microbiology, **804**–805
bioaugmentation, **803**
bioenhancers, **803**
biogeochemical cycles, **796**
bioremediation, **802**–803
carbon cycle, **796,** 797*f*
Clinical Case, cholera, 796*c*, 806*c*, 807*c*, 811*c*, 812*c*, 813*c*
earth microbiome, **794**
endoliths, **801**
extreme environments, 802
global warming, 796, 797*f*
microbial diversity and habitats, 795
nitrogen cycle, **797**–799, 798*f*, 799*f*, 800*f*
phosphorus cycle, **801**
primary producers, **801**
sewage treatment, 808–813, 809*f*, 810*f*, 811*f*, 812*f*
soil microbiology, 795–796
solid municipal waste, 803
sulfur cycle, **800,** 801*f*
water pollution, 805–806, 806*f*
water purity tests, 806–807
water treatment, 807–808, 808*f*
xenobiotics, **801**–803, 803*f*
enzyme immunoassay (EIA) tests, **783**
enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), **284,** 284*f*, **520,** 521*f*
enzyme-substrate complex, **112,** 112*f*
enzymes, 40, **111**–112, 111*f*, 112*f*. *See also* biotechnology; specific enzyme names
activation energy, 111
amylase, 36
cellulase, 36
collision theory, 111
components of, 113–114, 113*f*, 114*t*
concentration, effect on, 115
of DNA replication, 209–213, 211*ft*, 212*f*, 213*f*
endoplasmic reticulum and, 99–100, 99*f*
extracellular enzymes, 88
extremozymes, 795
feedback inhibition, 116, 117*f*
gene expression, regulation of, 218–222, 220*f*, 221*f*, 222*f*
Golgi complex, 100, 100*f*
industrial applications, 828, 828*f*
industrial production, 828, 829–830
inhibitors, 115–116, 116*f*
lysosome, 100
metabolic reactions, 108
microbial control agents and, 182
naming of, 113, 113*t*
pathogen penetration mechanisms, 432
peroxisomes, 101
pH, effect on, 115, 115*f*
protein structure and, 42–44, 43*f*
restriction enzymes, 246–247, 246*t*, 247*f*
ribozymes, 116–117
specificity and efficiency, 112–113
temperature, effects of, 114, 115*f*
viruses, **364**
enzymes poisons, 116
eosin, 65
eosinophilic asthma, 459
eosinophils, 452*t*, 453, 458, 458*f*, **459,** 459*t*
EPEC (enteropathogenic *E.coli*), **741**
epidemic louseborne typhus, **671**
epidemic typhus, 410*t*
epidemics
cholera after natural disasters, 742–743, 742*f*, 743*f*
Clinical Focus, norovirus source, 265, 265*f*
epidemic disease, defined, **403**
influenza, 369, 717–718
meningococcal meningitis, 626
Zika, tracking of, 219
epidemiology, **417**–421, 418*f*, 421*t*. *See also* disease principles
analytical epidemiology, **419**
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), **419,** 421
Clinical Focus, healthcare-associated infections, 420
descriptive epidemiology, **418**–419
experimental epidemiology, **419**
foodborne infections, 738
influenza, 717–718
notifiable infectious diseases, **419,** 421*t*
polio eradication program, 635
epidermal growth factor (EGF), 258*t*
epidermis, **454, 593,** 593*f*
Epidermophyton, 603*t*, 610
epididymis, 769, 770*f*
epididymitis, 775
epigenetic inheritance, 221
epiglotitis, 694*f*, **695,** 699*t*
epiglottis, **455**
epitopes, **483,** 484*f*
EPS (extracellular polymeric substance), **77,** 433
Epstein, Michael, 387
Epstein-Barr virus, 387, 540
Burkitt's lymphoma, **673,** 673*f*
infectious mononucleosis, **674,** 674*f*
Epulopiscium, 313, 314*f*, 320
equilibrium, 87
equine encephalitis viruses, 638, 643*t*, 675
equivalent treatments, **186**
ergot, **443**
ergot poisoning, **754,** 755*t*
ergotism, 443
Erwinia, 306, 820*t*
erysipelas, **599,** 599*f*, 603*t*
Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae, 281*f*
erythema infectiosum, **609**
erythroblastosis fetalis, 537
erythrocytes, **458**–460, 458*f*, 459*t*
erythrolitmin, 338
erythromycin, 91, 91*f*, 564, 565*f*, 567*t*, 572
erythropoietin (EPO), 258*t*
Escherich, Theodor, 4
Escherichia
fermentation end products, 130*f*
oxidase test, 135
Escherichia coli, 456
adhesins, 430
characteristics and classification, 304
Clinical Case, Shiga toxin, 728, 730*c*, 740*c*, 746*c*, 753*c*, 762*c*
culture media for, 160*t*
disinfectants and sanitizers, use of, 192
DNA replication, 212–213, 212*f*, 213*f*
enteroaggregative *E. coli* (EAEC), **741**
enterohemorrhagic *E. coli* (EHEC), **741,** 741*f*
enteroinvasive *E. coli* (EIEC), **741**
enteropathogenic *E.coli* (EPEC), **741**
enterotoxigenic *E. coli* (ETEC), **744**
facultative anaerobes, 156
fimbriae and pili, 72, **80,** 80*f*
gene products, making of, 244–245, 245*f*, 254–255, 255*f*
genetic map of chromosome, 238*f*
horizontal gene transfer and antibiotic use, 232
host cell penetration, 433
human microbiome, 2, 2*f*
isoleucine synthesis, 116
microbiota, 398*f*, 399, 400
microscopy, 54*f*
plasmid-encoded toxins, 231
serovar antigens, 83
Shiga-toxin-producing *E. coli* (STEC), 209, **741**
urinary tract infections, 772
water purity tests, 806–807
Escherichia coli gastroenteritis, 748*t*
Escherischia albertii, 304
esophagus, digestive system function, **729,** 729*f*
essential oils, **191**–192
ester functional group, 34–35, 34*t*
ester linkage, 37–39, 38*f*
estrogen, 770, 831
ETEC (enterotoxigenic *E. coli*), **744**
ethambutol, 566*t*, **570**
ethanol, **832**–834
alcohol production, 825–826, 826*f*
fermentation, 128–132, 129*f*, 130*f*, 131*f*, 132*t*, 133*t*
microbial control and, 193, 193*t*
yeast fermentation, 328
ether functional group, 34–35, 34*t*
ethics, biotechnology applications and, 264
ethics, human subjects, 402
ethylene oxide, 196–197, 200*t*
etiology, **396**
Koch's postulates and, 400–**401,** 401*f*
Euglena, 5, 96, 97*f*
euglenoids, 341
Euglenozoa, **344**–345, 348*t*
Eukarya domain, 271–274, 272*f*, 273*t*, 274*f*, 276, 326*f*. *See also* algae; fungi; protozoa
eukaryotes, **5, 73,** 94–96, 95*f*, 96*t*
cell wall, 96–97
centrosome, 102
chloroplasts, 101, 102*f*
classification of, 271–274, 272*f*, 273*t*, 274*f*, 276, 326*f*
cytoplasm, 98
endoplasmic reticulum (ER), 99–100, 99*f*
endosymbiotic theory, **102**–103
Eukarya domain, 271–274, 272*f*, 273*t*, 274*f*
flagella, 78
Foundation Figure, pathogens, 326*f*
glycocalyx, 96–97
Golgi complex, 100, 100*f*
lysosome, 100
microbiota and, 94
mitochondria, 101, 101*f*
peroxisomes, 101
plasma (cytoplasmic) membrane, 85, 90
ribosomes, 91, 91*f*, 98
RNA and protein synthesis, 216, 218*f*
vacuoles, 100–101
eukaryotic species, **276,** 277*f*
Eunotia serra, 341*f*
European bat lyssavirus (EBLV), 637
Euryarchaeota, 297*t*
eustachian tube, 694*f*
eutrophication, **805**–806
evolution
blood DNA, 657
cladograms, 290, 290*f*
coevolution, 427
degenerative evolution, 317
emerging infectious diseases, 17, 414–416, 415*t*
endosymbiotic theory, **102**–103
Epulopiscium, spore formation, 313
genes and evolution, 238, 238*f*
genetic transfer and recombination, overview, 230, 230*f*
genetically modified organisms, impact of, 264
mutation rate, **227,** 427
phylogenetic relationships, 271–275, 272*f*, 273*t*, 274*f*, 275*f*
ribosomes, 98
ribotyping, ribosomal RNA, 288
symbiosis and, 321
taxonomic relationships, 276, 278*f*
transposons, 233
viral mutations, 717
virus classification, 278
of viruses, 278
exanthem, **594**
Excavata, 344–345, 345*f*, 348*t*
exchange reaction, **30**
exelectorogens, 834
exergonic reaction, **30,** 110
exfoliation, 597, 597*f*
exit (E) site, **215,** 216*f*
exons, 211*t*, **216,** 218*f*, **251,** 252*f*
exonuclease, 211*t*
exoskeletons, 96–97
exotoxins, 40, **435**–437, 436*f*, 438*t*, 439*t*
A-B toxins, 435, 437*f*, 438*t*
anthrax, **661,** 661*f*, 663
antitoxin, 516, 517*f*
botulism, 630
cholera, **739**–740, 739*f*, 748*t*
Clostridioides difficile-associated diarrhea, **746,** 748*t*
Clostridium perfringens gastroenteritis, **745**–746, 748*t*
diphtheria, 697
disease summary, 438*t*, 748*t*
E. coli gastroenteritis, 748*t*
Gram-positive and -negative bacteria, 84*t*
hemolysins, 436
leukocidins, 436
membrane-disrupting toxins, 435–436
naming of, 435
neutralization reactions, 516
pathogenicity mechanism, 445*f*
Pseudomonas, 600
scalded skin syndrome, 597, 597*f*
scarlet fever, 699*t*
Shiga toxin, 748*t*
streptolysins, 436
superantigens, 437
toxic shock syndrome, 658

experimental epidemiology, **419**
exponential growth phase, **168,** 168*f*
expressed gene, **208**
extensively drug-resistant (XDR), **706**
external genitals, 769, 770*f*
extracellular enzymes, 88
extracellular polymeric substance (EPS), **77,** 433
extreme halophiles, 5, **155,** 271, 272*f,* 273*t*
extreme thermophiles, 5, **154**
extremophiles, **319**–320, 319*f,* **795,** 802
extremozymes, **795**
eyes, 398*t*
  Acanthamoeba, 345–346
  Chlamydia trachomatis (trachoma), 310, **613**
  cytomegalovirus, 551*t*
  diseases of, 613–617, 614*t,* 615*f*
  lacrimal apparatus, **454,** 455*f*
  measles, 510
  neonatal herpes, 785
  ocular syphilis, 782
  ophthalmia neonatorum, **613,** 614*t,* **775**
  ophthalmic cysticercosis, **758,** 759*f*
  river blindness (onchocerciasis), 616, 616*t*
eyespot, 341

F

F factor (fertility factor), **235**–236, 236*f*
facilitated diffusion, **87**–88, 88*f,* 97
FACS (fluorescence-activated cell sorter), **519,** 520*f*
facultative anaerobes, **156**–157, 156*t,* 328
facultative halophiles, **155**
FAD. *See* flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD)
fallopian tubes, 769, 770*f,* 779–780, 780*f*
famciclovir, 577, 578*f*
FAME (fatty acid methyl ester), **285**
family, **276,** 277*f*
fascioliasis, 616–617
fastidious organisms, 160–161
fats, structure and function, 37–39, 38*f*
fatty acid profiles, 285–286
fatty acids
  lipid and protein catabolism, 133, 133*f,* 134*f*
  lipid biosynthesis, 142–143, 142*f*
  plasma (cytoplasmic) membrane, 85, 86*f*
  structure and function, 37–38, 38*f*
  triclosan and, 191, 191*f*
Fc region, antibodies, 484, 485*f*
fecal coliforms, 806–807
fecal-oral cycle, **728**
fecal-oral transmission, **410**
fecal transplant, 533, 533*f*
feces, 729
feedback inhibition, **116,** 117*f*
feeding grooves, protozoa, 344, 344*f*
feline AIDS, 373
feline leukemia virus, 258*t,* 387
female reproductive system, **769**–770, 770*f. See also* sexually transmitted infections (STIs)
fermentation, 119–121, 120*f,* **128**–132, 129*f,* 130*f,* 131*f,* 132*t,* 133*t*
  food and beverage production, 825–826, 826*f*
  history of microbiology, 9*f,* **10**
  yeasts, 328
fermentation technology, 827–828, 827*f,* 828*f*
fermentation test, **134**–135, 134*f,* 135*f*
fermented foods, 820, 820*t*
ferritin, **474**
fertility factor (F factor), **235**–236, 236*f*
fetus
  acne medications, 604
  C. perfringens, gas gangrene, 664
  chickenpox (varicella), **605**
  Clinical Case, group B *Streptococcus,* 298*c,* 316*c,* 318*c,* 319*c,* 320*c*
  congenital syphilis, **782**
  congenital transmission, **407**–408
  cytomegalovirus, 662*t,* **674**–675
  group B streptococci (GBS), **658**
  immune system, fetal tissue protection, 544
  Listeria monocytogenes, 431, 627
  microbiome and innate immunity, 457
  neonatal herpes, 785
  passive immunity, 498, 498*f*
  puerperal sepsis, 417, 658
  Rh factor, **536**–537, 537*f*
  rubella, **608**–609
  TORCH screen tests, 641
  toxoplasmosis, 666*t,* **681**–682, 681*f*
  vertical transmission, mother to child, 640–641, 640*f,* 641*f*
  Zika virus, 18, **639,** 640, 640*f,* 641*f,* 642
fever, 437, 438*f,* 439, **467**–468, 476*t*
fever blister, **607,** 607*f*
fibrin, 432
fibrinogen, 432, 465
fibrinolysin, 432
fibrosis, 467
fidaxomicin, 572
fifth disease, **609**
filament, flagellum, 77–78, 78*f*
filamentous particles, hepatitis B virus, 749, 749*f*
Filoviridae, 371*t*
Filovirus, 371*t*
filtration, microbial control, 186, 186*f,* 189*t*
filtration, water treatment, **807**–808
filtration method, **172,** 172*f*
fimbriae, 79–**80,** 80*f,* 432
  adherence, 72, 430–431
  as antigenic site, 483
  enterics and, 304
  M protein, 432, 599, 599*f*
  Neisseria gonorrhoeae, 302*f,* 431, 775
  prokaryotes, 76*f*
  uterine tubes, 770*f,* 780*f*
  virus host range, 364
fine focus knob, microscope, 53*f*
fire ants, 343
Firmicutes, 297*t,* 316
First Golden Age of Microbiology, 9–11, 9*f*
first-line drugs, **706**
first line of defense, immunity, 451–457, 454*f,* 455*f,* 476*t. See also* immunity, innate
fish, toxin accumulation in, 444
FISH (fluorescent in situ hybridization), **288**–289, 290*f*
fission, protozoa, 343
fission yeasts, **328**
fixed, smear preparation, **64**
fixed macrophages, **462**–464, 462*f,* 463*f*
flaccid paralysis, 630
flagella, 5, **69, 77**
  bacteria, overview of, 5
  dinoflagellates, 341*f*
  eukaryotes, 78, 95*f,* 96, 96*t,* 97*f*
  Excavata, protozoa, 344–345, 345*f*
  prokaryotes, 77–79, 77*f,* 78*f,* 79*f,* 96*t*
  spiral bacteria, 75, 75*f*
  staining of, 68*ft,* 69
  zoospores, 342, 342*f*
flagellin, 77, 78*f*
flaming, **186,** 189*t*
flat sour spoilage, **822,** 822*f*
flatus, 729
flatworms, **351**–354, 351*f,* 352*f,* 354*f*
flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD), **114,** 114*t*
  chemiosmosis, 125, 126*f,* 127*f,* 129*f*
  as electron carrier, 108, 138, 138*f*
  electron transport chain, 125, 125*f,* 127*f,* 129*f*
  Krebs cycle, 123, 124*f,* 128*t,* 129*f*
  oxidative phosphorylation, 119
  respiration and fermentation, 120–121, 120*f,* 127*f,* 128*t,* 129*f*
flavin mononucleotide (FMN), **114,** 114*t,* 124–126, 125*f,* 127*f*
Flaviviridae, 219, 371*t,* 384*c. See also* Zika virus disease (ZVD)
Flavivirus SLE, 638
Flavivirus WEE, 638
Flavivirus West Nile virus (WNV), 638
flavoproteins, **124**–126, 125*f*
fleas, 358*f,* 359*t*
  plague, **665**–667, 667*f,* 668*t*
Fleming, Alexander, 11, 456, 561
flesh-eating bacteria, 599–600, 600*f*
flocculation, **807**–808
flow cytometry, **286,** 518–519, 520*f*
flu. *See* influenza
fluconazole, 575
flucytosine, 575, 577
fluid mosaic model, **86,** 86*f*
flukes, **351**–352, 351*f,* 352*f,* 686–688, 687*f,* 758*f*
fluorescence, **56**–58, 57*f,* 286
fluorescence-activated cell sorter (FACS), **519,** 520*f*
fluorescence microscopy, **56**–58, 57*f,* 62*t*
fluorescent-antibody (FA) techniques, **57**–58, 57*f,* **518**–519, 519*f,* 520*f*
fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH), **288**–289, 290*f*
fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption (FTA-ABS) test, **783**
fluoride (F), enzyme inhibition and, 116
fluoroquinolone-resistant *C. jejuni,* 586
fluoroquinolones, 567*t,* **573**–574
FMN. *See* flavin mononucleotide (FMN)
folic acid, 114*t,* 116
foliose lichens, 337, 338*f*
folliculitis, **597,** 603*t*
fomite, **407**
Food and Drug Administration, 820–821, 821*f*
food chain, 2
food intolerances and allergies, 531, 532*f,* 534
food microbiology
  alcoholic beverages, 825–826, 826*f*
  aseptic packaging, **822**
  butter, buttermilk, and sour cream, 825
  cheese production, 824–825, 824*f*
  fermentation technology, 827–828, 827*f*
  food canning, 821–822, 821*f,* 822*f*
  fungi, uses of, 336
  Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP), **820**–821, 821*f*
  industrial fermentation, 827–828, 827*f,* 828*f*
  kefir and kumiss, 825
  metabolic reactions and, 109
  microbe use in, 2
  nondairy fermentations, 825
  radiation and preservation, 187–188, 188*f,* 189*t,* 822–824, 823*ft,* 824*f*
  vinegar, 825–826, 826*f*
  yogurt, 825
foodborne diseases and food safety, 409*f,* **410**
  aerotolerant anaerobes, 157
  Bacillus cereus gastroenteritis, **746**
  botulism, **630**–632, 631*f*
  bovine tuberculosis, **701**
  campylobacteriosis, **744**
  chemical preservatives, 195–196
  chemical sterilization, 197
  Clinical Case, *Salmonella,* 821*c,* 823*c,* 826*c,* 830*c,* 832*c,* 834*c*
  Clinical Focus, 738
  Clostridium, 313, 313*f,* 630–632, 631*f,* 745–746
  Disease in Focus, bacterial disease, 748*t*
  E. coli gastroenteritis, 741
  endospores, **92**–94, 93*f*
  forensic microbiology, 259, 260
  fungi, effect of, 336
  Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP), **820**–821, 821*f*
  hepatitis A, **747**
  home canning, 184–185, 184*ft*
  illness, tracking of, 259
  intoxication, 435
  listeriosis, **626**–628, 627*f*
  low temperature microbial control, 186–187, 189*t*
  microbial control, terminology, 180, 181*t*
  pasteurization, 185, 189*t*
  preservatives, osmotic pressure and, 154*f,* 155
  pseudomonads and, 303
  rates of, 728
  salmonellosis, 737
  staphylococcal food poisoning, **735,** 735*f*
  sterilization, 185–186, 189*t*
  temperature and microbial growth, 152–154, 152*f,* 153*f*
  trichinellosis, **761**–762, 762*f*
  yersiniosis, **745**
forensic microbiology, 243, **259**–261, 261*f,* 262
forespore, 92, 93*f*
formaldehyde gas, 196
formalin, 196
formed elements, **458**–460, 458*f,* 459*t*
fossil fuels, 814
Fourier, 814
frameshift mutagen, 226
frameshift mutation, **206, 224,** 224*f*
Francisella, 302
Francisella tularensis, 302, 660, 660*f,* 663
  animal reservoirs, 666*t*
  bioterrorism, overview of, 702–703
Frankia, 318, 799

Franklin, Rosalind, 44
free-living nitrogen-fixing bacteria, 799
free ribosomes, 98
free (wandering) macrophages, **462**–464, 462*f*, 463*f*, 467
freeze-drying, **165,** 187, 189*t*
freshwater microbiota, 804
fructose, 36
fructose 1,6-diphosphate, 121, 122*f*
fructose 6-phosphate, 121, 122*f*
fruticose lichens, 337, 338*f*
FTA-ABS (fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption) test, **783**
fuel cells, microbial, **834**
fully human antibodies, **512**–513, 513*f*
fulminant hepatitis, 750
fulminating disease, 611
functional group, **34**–35, 34*t*
functional group, amino acids, 40
fungi, **5**. *See also* classification of microbes; specific organism names
  vs. bacteria, 327*t*
  aflatoxin poisoning, **754,** 755*t*
  antifungal drugs, 575–577, 575*f*
  Ascomycota, 332, 333*f*, 335*t*
  Basidiomycota, 332–333, 334*f*, 335*t*
  biofilms, 159
  characteristics of, 327–331, 327*t*, 328*f*, 329*f*, 330*f*
  Clinical Case, 327*c*, 336*c*
  COVID-19 and fungal infection, 715
  cryptococcosis, 629*t*, **642,** 642*f*
  digestive system diseases, 754, 755*t*
  dimorphism, 329, 329*f*
  economic effects of, 336
  emerging infectious diseases (EIDs), **414**–416, 415*t*
  ergot poisoning, **754,** 755*t*
  food safety and spoilage, 196
  fungal disease, types of, 333–335, 335*t*
  hyphae, 5*f*, 327–328, 328*f*
  infection incidence, 326
  lichen, **337**–338, 338*f*
  life cycle, 329
  metachromatic granules, 91
  microbial control, 195, 562*t*
  Microsporidia, **332,** 332*f*, 335*t*
  molds, 327–328, 328*f*
  Mucoromycota, 331–332, 331*f*
  mycobiome, 337
  mycology, 13
  mycorrhizae, **795,** 795*f*
  nutritional adaptations, 330–331
  pathogenicity mechanisms, 443
  pathogens, summary table, 333, 335*t*
  respiratory system diseases, 719–722, 719*f*, 720*f*, 721*f*, 722*f*, 723*t*
  skin conditions, 603*t*, 610–611, 610*f*, 611*f*
  uses and study of, 327, 327*t*
  vaginitis, **784,** 784*f*
  yeasts, 328–329, 329*f*
  zoonoses, 408*t*
  Zygomycota, 335*t*
Fungi, Kingdom of, 277, 326*f*
fungistats, 196
furious (classic) rabies, **635**–637, 635*f*, 637*f*, 638
furuncle, **597**
Fusarium, 443
fusion, **379,** 380*f*
fusion inhibitors, antiviral drugs, 576*t*, **577**
Fusobacteria, 297*t*, 311, 312*f*

G
G-CSF (granulocyte colony-stimulating factor), 483
galactose, 36
gallbladder, **729,** 729*f*
GALT (gut-associated lymphoid tissue), 729
Gambierdiscus toxicus, 342, 444
gametes, **344**
  fungi, 331*f*
  green algae, 340*f*
  human reproduction, 768
  Phytophthora infestans, 343
  plasmodial slime mold, 350*f*
  protozoa, 344, 344*f*
gamma globin, 486
gamma interferon (IFN-γ), **472**–473, 473*f*
gamma rays, 187–188, 188*f*, 189*t*, 226
gamma (γ)-aminobutyric acid (GABA), 262
gammaproteobacteria, 302–306, 303*f*, 304*f*, 305*f*
ganciclovir, 577, 578*f*
gangrene, **663**–664, 664*f*, 686*t*
  Clostridium, 313, 438*t*, 745
  collagenase, 430
  endospores, **92**–94, 93*f*
  ergot, 443, 754
  hyaluronidase, 432
  organism transmission routes, 428, 429*t*
  wound botulism, 632
Gardnerella
  G. vaginalis, 318, 456, 784, 784*f*
  urinary system, 771
Gardnerella vaginalis, 456
gas gangrene, 313, 432, 438*t*, **663**–664, 664*f*, 745. *See also* gangrene
GAS (group A streptococci), **599**
  strep throat, **696**–697, 697*f*
gas vacuoles, **92**
gastric juice, **456**
gastroenteritis, **734**
  Bacillus cereus gastroenteritis, **746**
  Campylobacter gastroenteritis, **744**
  Clinical Case, norovirus, 180*c*, 196*c*, 198*c*, 201*c*
  Clostridium perfringens gastroenteritis, **745**–746
  Cryptosporidium, 353
  Disease in Focus, bacterial diseases, 748*t*
  E. coli gastroenteritis, 740–741, 741*f*, 744
  hepatitis E, 371*t*
  Norovirus, 265, 371*t*, **753**
  Rotavirus, **752**–753, 752*f*
  Salmonella gastroenteritis, **736**–739, 737*f*
  staphylococcal food poisoning, **735,** 735*f*
  summary table, 748*t*, 755*t*
  Vibrio, 304, 304*f*
  Yersinia gastroenteritis, **745**
gastrointestinal anthrax, **661,** 661*f*, 663
gastrointestinal tract. *See* digestive system
GBS (group B streptococci), 625, 626, 641, **658,** 662*t*
  Clinical Case, 298*c*, 316*c*, 318*c*, 319*c*, 320*c*
GDP (guanosine diphosphate), 123, 124*f*
gel electrophoresis, **259**
  immunoelectrophoresis, **514**
  nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs), **287**
  polymerase chain reaction, 248
  Southern blotting, 259, 260*f*
gemifloxacin, 573
Gemmata obscuriglobus, 73, 274, 310, 312*f*
GenBank, 259
gene-cloning vectors, 244
gene editing, **256**
gene gun, 250, 251*f*
gene products, making of, 254–255, 255*f*
gene silencing, **256**
gene therapy, **16,** 256, **256,** 264
genera, **4**
generalized (systemic) infection, **404**
generalized transduction, **236,** 238*f*, 378
generation time, **166,** 166*f*
genes, **208**. *See also* biotechnology; genetics; genomics
  constitutive gene, 218
  DNA and, 44–46, 45*f*, 46*f*, 47*t*
  evolution and, 238, 238*f*
  expression, quorum sensing, 158
  expression, regulation of, 218–222, 220*f*, 221*f*, 222*f*
  genetic transfer and recombination, overview, 230, 230*f*
  horizontal gene transfer, 3
  methylated genes, 221
  mobile genetic elements, 431
  oncogenes, 386–387
  plasmids and, 90, 230–232, 232*f*
  structural genes, 218–219
  transduction, 236, 238*f*
  vertical gene transfer, 209, 210*f*
genetic code, **208**
genetic diseases, 400
  Clinical Case, DiGeorge syndrome, 530*c*, 534*c*, 546*c*, 549*c*, 556*c*
  complement system, 472
  ethics of DNA technology, 264
  gene alterations, 206–207
  gene editing, **256**
  gene therapy, **16,** 256, **256**
  genetic counseling, 264
  genetic testing, **259**
  Human Proteome Project, 259
  immunodeficiencies, **548,** 548*ft*
genetic modification. *See* biotechnology
genetic recombination, **230**–232, 230*f*, 232*f*. *See also* recombinant DNA (rDNA) technology
genetic resistance, **474**
genetic testing, **259,** 264
genetics, **14, 208**. *See also* biotechnology; genes
  antibiotic resistance, 205, 581–582
  Big Picture, central dogma, 206–207
  carcinogens, identifying, **227**–228, 229*f*
  conjugation, **235**–236, 236*f*, 237*f*, 238*f*
  DNA and chromosomes, 209, 209*f*
  DNA replication, 209–213, 211*ft*, 212*f*, 213*f*
  gene expression, regulation of, 218–222, 220*f*, 221*f*, 222*f*
  genes and evolution, 238, 238*f*
  genetic transfer and recombination, overview, 230, 230*f*
  genotype and phenotype, **208–209**
  molecular genetics, overview of, 14
  mutagens, **224**–226, 225*f*, 226*f*
  mutants, identification of, 227, 228*f*
  mutation rate, 227
  mutation types, 223–224, 223*f*, 224*f*
  operons, inducible and repressible, 206
  plasmids, 230–232, 232*f*
  RNA and protein synthesis, 213–218, 214*f*, 215*f*, 216*f*, 217*f*
  transduction, 236, 238*f*
  transformation in bacteria, 233–235, 234*f*, 235*f*
  transposons, 232–233, 233*f*
  vertical gene transfer, 209, 210*f*
genital herpes, **784**–785, 785*f*, 789*t*
genital (reproductive) system, human, **768**. *See also* pregnancy
  candidiasis, **786**–788, 787*f*, 787*t*
  chancroid (soft chancre), **783**
  Diseases in Focus, overview, 789*t*
  Diseases in Focus, vaginitis and vaginosis, 787*t*
  genital herpes, **784**–785, 785*f*
  genital warts, **785**–786, 786*f*
  gonorrhea, **774**– 775, 774*f*, 775*f*, 778, 778*f*
  home test kits, STIs, 776–777
  lymphogranuloma venereum (LGV), **783**
  microbiota, 397, 398*ft*
  nongonococcal urethritis (NGU), **778**–779
  normal microbiota, 770, 771
  pelvic inflammatory disease, **779**–780, 780*f*
  portal of entry, **428**–429, 429*t*
  portal of exit, **444**–445, 445*f*
  sexually transmitted infections (STIs), **774**
  structure and function, **769**–770, 770*f*
  syphilis, **780**–783, 780*f*, 781*f*, 782*f*
  trichomoniasis, **788,** 788*f*, 789*t*
genital warts, 442*t*, **785**–786, 786*f*, 789*t*
genitourinary tract. *See* urinary system
genome, **208**
genomics, **14, 209**
  disease outbreak monitoring, 259, 742–743
  forensic microbiology, 261
  GenBank, 259
  genome projects, 257–259, 258*f*
  genomic library, overview of, 251–252, 251*f*, 252*f*
  metagenomics, 259, 796
  Minimal Genome Project, 259
  viruses, 365–366, 368
genotoxins, **435,** 437*f*
genotype, **208**–209, 223–224, 223*f*, 224*f*
gentamicin, 567*t*, 571
genus, **4, 275**–276
Geobacillus stearothermophilus, 822
geosmin, 318
germ theory of disease, 9*f*, **10**
German measles, **608**–609, 609*f*
germicidal lamp, 188
germicide, **180**
germination, **93**
germs, 2
Gerstmann-Sträussler-Scheinker syndrome, 391

Giardia, 94
G. duodenalis, 344, 345*f*
G. intestinalis, 344, 345*f*, 444, 755*t*, 756, 756*f*, 757
G. lamblia, 344, 345*f*
mitochondria, 101
water purity tests, 807
giardiasis, 344, 345*f*, 755*t*, **756,** 756*f*, 757, 807
gingivitis, **733,** 733*f*, 734*t*
gliding motility, **80**
global warming, **796**
glucan, 96–97
Gluconobacter, 299
glucose, 35–36, 35*f*, 36
catabolism of, 119–121, 120*f*
cellular respiration, 123–128, 124*f*, 125*f*, 126*f*, 127*f*, 128*t*
energy from, 118, 118*f*
fermentation, 128–132, 129*f*, 130*f*, 131*f*, 132*t*, 133*t*
glycolysis, 120*f*, 121, 122*f*
polysaccharide biosynthesis, 142, 142*f*
glucose 6-phosphate, 113, 121, 122*f*
glucose effect, 221
glucose isomerase, 830
glutamic acid (Glu, E), 41*t*, 215*f*
glutamine (Gln, Q), 41*t*
glutaraldehyde, 196, 199*t*
glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate, 121, 122*f*
glycerol
lipid and protein catabolism, 133, 133*f*, 134*f*
lipid biosynthesis, 142–143, 142*f*
structure and function, 37–39, 38*f*
glycine (Gly, G), 41*t*, 215*f*
glycocalyx, **75,** 76*f*, 77, **97**
eukaryotes, 96–97, 96*t*
prokaryotes, 96*t*
glycogen
metabolism, overview of, 145
polysaccharide biosynthesis, 142, 142*f*
polysaccharide granules, 91
polysaccharides, 36
vaginal epithelial cells, 456, 770, 788
glycolipids, **85,** 86*f*, 97
glycolysis, 119–**121,** 120*f*, 122*f*
glycoproteins, 44, **85,** 86*f*, 97
glycylcyclines, 567*t*, **572**
glyphosate, 262
GM-CSF (granulocyte macrophage colony-stimulating factor), 483
gold, 803
Golgi complex, 95*f*, **100,** 100*f*
gonorrhea, 80, 135, **774**– 775, 774*f*, 775*f*, 778, 778*f*, 779
gonorrheal arthritis, 775
gonorrheal endocarditis, 775
gonorrheal meningitis, 775
Gould, Stephen Jay, 14
Gracilaria, 341
graft, **545**
graft-*versus*-host (GVH) disease, **545**
Gram, Hans Christian, 65
gram-negative bacteria, 65*f*, **66**
cytolysis, 470
endotoxin, **437**–439, 438*f*, 439*t*
fimbriae and pili, 79–**80,** 80*f*
flagella and, 77, 78*f*
nonproteobacteria, 308–313
prokaryote cell wall, 81–83, 82*f*, 84*t*
Pseudomonadota (Proteobacteria), 298–308
gram-negative sepsis, 657–658, 657*f*
gram-positive bacteria, **65,** 65*f*
Actinomycetota, 317–318, 318*f*, 319*f*
Bacillota, 313–316, 313*f*, 314*f*, 315*f*
cytolysis, 470
Deinococcota, 318–319
flagella and, 77–78, 78*f*
prokaryote cell wall, 81, 82*f*, 84*t*
gram-positive sepsis, 658
Gram stain, **65**–66, 65*f*, 68*t*
acid-fast cell walls, 83
atypical cell walls, 83
cell wall structures and, 83, 84*t*
classification of microbes, 279
Gram-variable, 67, 83
grana, **101,** 102*f*
Granulibacter, 299
granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF), 483
granulocyte macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF), 483
granulocytes, **458**
granulomas, **686,** 688*f*
granulomatous amebic encephalitis, 629*t*, **645**
granzymes, **460, 495**
grappling hook model, motility, 80
Graves' disease, **541,** 542*t*, 543*t*
green algae, 340*f*, 341. *See also* algae
lichen, **337**–338, 338*f*
green bacteria, 139, 139*f*, 140*t*
green nonsulfur bacteria, 139*f*, **140,** 140*t*, **309**–310, 309*t*
green sulfur bacteria, **139,** 139*f*, 140*t*, **309**–310, 309*t*
greenhouse gases, 796, 797*f*, 814–815
Griffith, Frederick, 233
griseofulvin, 577
group A streptococci (GAS), **599**. *See also Streptococcus*
strep throat, **696**–697, 697*f*
group B streptococci (GBS), 625, 626, 641, **658,** 662*t*. *See also Streptococcus*
Clinical Case, 298*c*, 316*c*, 318*c*, 319*c*, 320*c*
group translocation, **90,** 97
growth. *See* microbial growth
growth curve, one-step, **375,** 375*f*
GTP (guanosine triphosphate), 123, 124*f*
guanine (G)
DNA base pairs, **208**
nucleic acids, overview, 44–46, 45*f*, 46*f*, 47*t*
RNA and protein synthesis, 213–218, 214*f*, 215*f*, 216*f*, 217*f*
guanosine diphosphate (GDP), 123, 124*f*
guanosine triphosphate (GTP), 123, 124*f*
Guillain-Barré syndrome, 636, 642, 744
Guinea worm disease, 13*f*, 616–617
gummas, **782,** 782*f*
gummatous syphilis, 782, 782*f*
gums, diseases of, **733,** 733*f*, 734*t*
gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT), 729
gyrase, 211*t*

H

H antigen, **78**
HAART (highly active antiretroviral therapy), **554**–556, 555*f*
HACCP (Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point), **820**–821, 821*f*
Haeckel, Ernst, 271
*Hae*III, 246*t*, 247
Haemophilus, 306
A-B toxins, 435, 437*f*
culture techniques, X and V factors, 306
normal microbiota, 398*t*
recombinant DNA technology, 246*t*
transformation, 235
Haemophilus ducreyi, 306, 783
Haemophilus influenzae, 5*f*
capsule, 432
conjunctivitis, 613, 614*t*
culture techniques, X and V factors, 306
endotoxin, 439, 439*t*
epiglotitis, 695, 699*t*
genome sequencing, 257
host cell penetration, 432
meningitis, 505*t*, 625, 629*t*
nationally notifiable infectious diseases, 421*t*
otitis media, 699*t*
pneumonia, 708, 709*t*
septic shock, 439
vaccine for, 505*t*, 507, 508, 509, 708
hair, **455**
hairy cell leukemia, 473
HAIs. *See* healthcare-associated infections (HAIs)
halitosis, 733
Haloarcula, 75*f*
Halobacterium, 320
halogens, **192**–193, 200*t*
halophiles, 319–320
classification of, 271, 272*f*, 273*t*
extreme halophiles, 5
hand-foot-and-mouth disease, **609**
hand hygiene, 198
hand sanitizer, 192, 193, 193*t*, 198
handwashing, universal precautions, 413–414
Hansen, Gerhard A., 632
Hansen's disease, 616–617, **632**–634, 633*f*
Hantavirus, 408*t*, 416
Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome, **679,** 680*t*
haptens, **484,** 484*f*
harbor seals, 281
harmful algal blooms, **444**
Haverhill fever, 665
Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP), **820**–821, 821*f*
HDNB (hemolytic disease of the newborn), 536–**537,** 537*f*
healthcare-associated infections (HAIs), **411**–414, 411*f*, 412*t*, 413*f*
Acinetobacter baumannii, 303
airborne precautions, 413
antimicrobial soap, use of, 192
biofilms and, 151, 158–159, 595, 596*f*
CDC list of common organisms, 412*t*
chain of transmission, 412–413
Clinical Case, MRSA, 3*c*, 16*c*, 18*c*, 19*c*, 20*c*
Clinical Case, *Pseudomonas*, 153*c*, 165*c*, 173*c*, 175*c*
Clinical Case, source tracking, 73*c*, 83*c*, 85*c*, 91*c*, 94*c*
Clinical Focus, 420
compromised hosts, 412
contact precautions, 413
DNA fingerprinting, 287
droplet precautions, 413
Elizabethkingia, 310
Enterobacter, 306
Enterococcus, 316
genetics, antibiotic resistance and, 207
Gram-positive sepsis, 658
microbial control, overview, 179
microorganisms in hospitals, 411–412, 412*t*
MRSA (methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*), 583
Mycobacterium abscessus, 141
Pseudomonas, 303, 600
standard precautions, 413
Staphylococcus skin infection, 594–595, 596*f*
transmission-based precautions, 413
universal precautions, **413**–414
urinary system infections, 771
vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE), **570**
heart
endocarditis, 16, **658**–659, 659*f*
Kawasaki syndrome, **688**
rheumatic fever, **659,** 659*f*
Heartland virus disease, **639,** 643*t*
heartworm, **356**–357, 357*f*
heat, 110–111, 110*f*
heat-resistant ascospore, 822
heavy chain, antibodies, 484, 485*f*
heavy metals
e-waste, 803
enzymes, effect on, 114, 115*f*
microbial control, 193–194, 194*f*, 199*t*, 200*t*
HeLa cell line, 374
helical viruses, 367, 367*f*
helicase, 209, 211*ft*
helices, 42, 43*f*
Helicobacter, 308, 308*f*
genotoxins, 435, 437*f*
H. pylori, 51, 51*f*, 308, 308*f*, 748*t*
Clinical Case, 53*c*, 60*c*, 66*c*, 67*c*
peptic ulcer disease, **744,** 745*f*
stomach acid and, 456
Hell, Stefan, 59
helminths, **6, 350**
antihelminthic drugs, 576*t*, 579
ascariasis, 755*t*, **760**–761, 761*f*
characteristics of, 350–351
In the Clinic, 327*c*
Crohn's disease, 533
digestive system diseases, 755*t*, 758–762, 758*f*, 759*f*, 760*f*, 761*f*, 762*f*
emerging infectious diseases (EIDs), **414**–416, 415*t*
eukaryotic pathogens, 326*f*
flatworms, Platyhelminthes, **351**–354, 351*f*, 352*f*, 354*f*
hookworm, 759*f*, **760,** 760*f*
hydatid disease, 755*t*, **759**–760, 760*f*
infection rates, 325
neglected tropical diseases (NTDs), 616–617
pathogenicity mechanisms, 444
pinworms, **760**
roundworms, Nematoda, **354**–357, 356*f*, 357*f*
schistosomiasis, **686**–688, 687*f*
summary table, 358*t*
tapeworms, 755*t*, **758**–760, 759*f*
tapeworms, Cestodes, **352**–354, 354*f*
whipworm, 755*t*, **761**
zoonoses, 408*t*

hemagglutination, 367, **516,** 516*f*, 717
hemagglutinin (HA) spikes, 369, 716–717, 716*f*
hematopoiesis, **458**
hematopoietic cytokines, 482*t*, **483**
hematopoietic stem cell transplants, 544–545
heme
  cytochromes, **124**–126, 125*f*
  X factor, **306**
hemicellulose, 833
hemoflagellates, **344**
hemoglobin
  iron-binding proteins, 473–474
  sickle cell disease, 224
hemolysins, **436,** 474, 599
hemolytic anemia, **538,** 538*f*
hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDNB), 536–**537,** 537*f*
hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), 741
hemophilia, gene therapy, 256
hemorrhagic colitis, 741
hemorrhagic fever with renal syndrome, **679**
hemorrhagic fevers, 19, 675, 678–679, 679*f*, 680*t*
Hepacivirus (HCV), 750*t*, 751–752
Hepadnaviridae, 372*t*, 382, 384*c*, 387
hepatitis, 363, **747,** 749–752, 749*f*, 750*t*
  Clinical Case, 365*c*, 384*c*, 386*c*, 387*c*
  defined, 384*c*
  Diseases in Focus, 750*t*
  interferons, 473
  vaccines for, 506, 506*t*
  virus replication, 382
hepatitis A, 363*f*, 370*t*, 506*t*, **747,** 749, 750*t*
  Clinical Case, 365*c*, 384*c*, 386*c*, 387*c*
hepatitis B, 258*t*, 372*t*, 387, 506, 506*t*, 748*t*, **749**–751, 749*f*, 750*t*
hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIG), 751
hepatitis B surface antigen (HB_sAg), 749, 749*f*, 751
hepatitis C, 371*t*, 750*t*, **751**–752
hepatitis D, 371*t*, 750*t*, **752**
hepatitis E (HEV), 371*t*, 750*t*, **752**
hepatotoxins, 435
Hepeviridae, 371*t*
heptoses, 36
HER2 gene, 259
herd immunity, **404, 504**
hermaphroditic, **351**
herpes, genital, **784**–785, 785*f*
herpes encephalitis, **608**
herpes gladiatorum, **607**
herpes simplex virus (HSV-1, HSV-2), 441, **607,** 607*f*. *See also* Herpesviridae
  AIDS, common infections of, 551*t*
  Bell's palsy (HSV-1), **648**
  genital herpes (HSV-1, HSV-2), **784**–785, 785*f*, 789*t*
  herpetic keratitis (HSV-1), **615**
  rashes (HSV-1), 602*t*
  vertical transmission, mother to child, 640–641, 640*f*, 641*f*
herpes zoster, 506*t*, 602*t*, **605**–607, 606*f*
Herpesviridae, 370*t*, 380*t*, 382. *See also* herpes simplex virus (HSV-1, HSV-2)
  Bell's palsy, **648**
  Burkitt's lymphoma (HHV-4), **673,** 673*f*
  chickenpox (varicella) (HHV-3), 370*t*, 380*t*, 382, 388, 388*f*, 602*t*, **605**–606, 606*f*
  Cytomegalovirus (HHV-5), **674**–675
  gene therapy, 248
  inclusion bodies, 442
  interferons, blocking of, 442
  latent viral infection, 388
  oncogenic viruses, 387
  portal of entry, 429*t*
  roseola (HHV-6), 609
  shingles (herpes zoster) (HHV-3), **606**–607, 606*f*
  taxonomy, 368, 380*t*
  vertical transmission, mother to child, 640–641, 640*f*, 641*f*
  virus structure, 381*f*
herpetic keratitis, 614*t*, **615**
herpetic whitlow, **607**
heterocyclic amino acids, 40
heterocysts, **308,** 308*f*, **799,** 799*f*
heterofermentative, 131
heterolactic, **131**
heterotrophs, **138**
hexachlorophene, 191, 191*f*
hexose monophosphate shunt, 121
Hfr cell (high frequency of recombination), **236**
HGA (human granulocytic anaplasmosis), **670**
hGH (human growth hormone), 244–245, 245*f*, 258*t*
HHV. *See* Herpesviridae
high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filter, **186,** 186*f*
high-energy electron beams, 187–188, 188*f*
high-pressure food preservation, 824
high-temperature short-time (HTST) pasteurization, **185**
highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART), **554**–556, 555*f*
*Hind*III, 246*t*
histamine, 465*f*, **466,** 466*t*, **530**
  anaphylactic reactions, **529**–534, 529*t*, 530*f*, 531*f*, 534*f*
histidine (His, H), 41*t*, 215*f*
histiocytes, 462
histocompatibility antigens, **542**–546, 543*f*, 545*f*
histones, **98,** 99*f*, 273*t*
Histoplasma capsulatum, 719, 719*f*, 723*t*
histoplasmosis, **719,** 719*f*, 723*t*
HIV. *See* human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
HLA typing, 542, 543*t*
HME (human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis), **670**
H1N1 influenza, **18,** 369, 717, 718
H1N2 influenza, 369
H3N2 influenza, 369
Hodgkin's lymphoma, 547, **674**
holdfasts, **339**
Holmes, Oliver Wendell, 658
holoenzyme, **113**–114, 113*f*, 114*t*
Home Microbiome Project, 262
home testing kits, STIs, 776–777
homofermentive, **131**
homolactic, **131**
honey, infant botulism, **631**
hook, flagellum, 77–78, 78*f*
Hooke, Robert, 6
hookworm, 355, 356, 358*t*, 758*f*, 759*f*, **760,** 760*f*
horizontal gene transfer, 3, **230,** 230*f*, 232
hormones
  acne and, 601
  autoimmune disease and, 540
  human growth hormone (hGH), 244–245, 245*f*, 258*t*
  human reproductive system, 769, 770, 788
  industrial production of, 14, 244–245, 245*f*, 256, 258*t*, 827
  insulin, 132, 256
  pregnancy tests, 512, 521*f*
  proteins as, 40
  thyroid, Graves' disease, 541, 542*t*, 543*t*
  Wolbachia, effects of, 834
horses
  anthrax, 314
  antisera production, 629
  antitoxin production, 632
  encephalitis viruses, 638, 643*t*, 675
  glanders, melioidosis and, 712
  influenza virus, 18, 369
  West Nile encephalitis, 408*t*
hospital-acquired infections, **411**–414, 411*f*, 412*t*, 413*f*
  Acinetobacter baumannii, 303
  airborne precautions, 413
  antimicrobial soap, use of, 192
  biofilms and, 158–159, 595, 596*f*
  CDC list of common organisms, 412*t*
  chain of transmission, 412–413
  Clinical Case, MRSA, 3*c*, 16*c*, 18*c*, 19*c*, 20*c*
  Clinical Case, *Pseudomonas*, 153*c*, 165*c*, 173*c*, 175*c*
  Clinical Case, source tracking, 73*c*, 83*c*, 85*c*, 91*c*, 94*c*
  Clinical Focus, 420
  compromised hosts, 412
  contact precautions, 413
  DNA fingerprinting, 289*c*
  droplet precautions, 413
  Elizabethkingia, 310
  Enterobacter, 306
  Enterococcus, 316
  genetics, antibiotic resistance and, 207
  Gram-positive sepsis, 658
  microbial control, overview, 179
  microorganisms in hospitals, 411–412, 412*t*
  MRSA (methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*), 583
  Pseudomonas, 303, 600
  standard precautions, 413
  Staphylococcus skin infection, 594–595, 596*f*
  transmission-based precautions, 413
  universal precautions, **413**–414
  urinary system infections, 771
  vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE), **570**
host range, 246, **364**
hosts. *See also* pathogenicity, mechanisms of; pathogens; specific organism names
  circadian rhythms, effect of, 169
  definitive host, 352*f*, 354, 355*f*
  drugs, host protection and, 11–12, 560, 561
  endosymbiotic theory, 102, 272, 273*t*, 274, 274*f*
  fungi, overview of, 5, 333 (*See also* fungi)
  gene therapy, 16
  graft-*versus*-host (GVH) disease, **545**
  helminths, overview, 351, 351*f* (*See also* helminths)
  host defense penetration methods, 431–433, 433*f*
  intermediate host, 352, 352*f*, 354, 355*f*
  mesophiles, 153
  obligatory intracellular parasites, **364**
  opportunistic pathogens, **334**
  parasites and, 5, 218, 343 (*See also* parasites)
  pathogen damage mechanisms, 434–440, 436*f*, 437*f*, 438*ft*, 439*t*
  plasmid vectors, 248, 250, 250*f*, 251*f*
  resistance factors (R factors), 232
  transduction, **236,** 238*f*
  viruses, overview of, 5, 278, 364 (*See also* viruses)
  Wolbachia, 301, 834
hot-air sterilization, **186,** 189*t*
hot zone, 163–164
HPV (human papilloma virus), 387, 506*t*, 522, 786, 786*f*
HSV. *See* herpes simplex virus (HSV-1, HSV-2)
HTST (high-temperature short-time) pasteurization, **185**
human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG), 520, 521*f*
human diploid cell vaccine (HDCV), **636**
human disease, overview of, 16–19, 17*f*. *See also* disease principles; specific disease names
human genome
  gene editing, 256
  genome projects, 257–259, 258*f*
  retrovirus genetic material in, 366
human granulocytic anaplasmosis (HGA), **670**
human growth hormone (hGH), 244–245, 245*f*, 258*t*
human herpesviruses (HHV), 380*t*, 382. *See also* Herpesviridae
human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), 363, 372*t*, 777*f*
  antiviral drugs, 226, 577–578, 578*f*
  case reporting, 419, 421*t*
  Clinical Case, tracking of, 244*c*, 250*c*, 253*c*, 255*c*, 257*c*
  cytopathology, 442*t*
  diagnostic methods, 553
  Foundation Figure, infection progression, 552, 552*f*
  home testing kits, 776–777
  host cell penetration, 433
  infection, stages of, 549–556, 550*f*, 551*t*, 552*f*, 554*f*, 555*f*
  isolation and study, 373
  opportunistic pathogens, **334**–335, 337, 400, 551, 551*t*
  origin of, 549
  prevention and treatment, 554–556, 555*f*
  Retroviridae, 372*t*
  retrovirus biosynthesis, 383*f*, 384, 385*f*
  serological testing, **282**–284
  T cells and, 453*f*
  transmission of, 553–554, 554*f*, 786
  vaccines, 373, 508, 556
  variations in exposure response, 553–554
  virus host defense evasion, 440–441
  worldwide incidence, 554, 554*f*

Index

human leukocyte antigen (HLA) complex, **542**–546, 543*ft*, 545*f*
human louse, 358*f*, 359*t*
human microbiome. *See* microbiome, human
Human Microbiome Project, **3, 396**
human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis (HME), **670**
human papilloma virus (HPV), 387, 506*t*, 522, 786, 786*f*
human parvovirus B19, 370*t*
human Powassan virus (POW), 17, **639,** 643*t*
human-reservoir infections, 662*t*
human virome, 366
humanized antibodies, **512**–513, 513*f*
humoral immunity, **481,** 499*f*. *See also* immunity, adaptive
HUS (hemolytic uremic syndrome), 741
hyaluronidase, **432,** 599
hybridoma, **512**
hydatid cyst, **354, 759**–760, 760*f*
hydrogel, 158
hydrogen bonds, **28**–29, 29*f*, 30*t*
hydrogen (H), 26*t*
hydrogen ion (H^+)
  chemiosmosis, **126**–127, 126*f*, 127*f*
  oxidation-reduction reactions, **117**–118, 118*f*
  pH scale, 32–33, 33*f*
hydrogen peroxide, 101, 157, 197–198, 770
hydrolase, 113, 113*t*
hydrolysis, 35, 35*f*, **36**
hydrolytic reactions, 110
hydrophilic
  phospholipids, 38–39, 39*f*
  plasma (cytoplasmic) membrane, 85, 86*f*
hydrophobia, rabies and, 636
hydrophobic
  phospholipids, 38–39, 39*f*
  plasma (cytoplasmic) membrane, 85, 86*f*
hydrophobic interaction, proteins, 43
hydrothermal vents, 802
hydroxide ion (OH^-), pH scale, 32–33, 33*f*
hydroxyl group (—OH)
  fatty acids, 37–39, 38*f*
  functional groups, 34–35, 34*t*
hydroxyl radical, **157,** 187–188, 188*f*
hygiene hypothesis, 397, 529, 531–533
hyperacute rejection, **545**
hyperbaric chamber, **664**
hypersensitivity reactions
  hygiene hypothesis, 532–533
  type I (anaphylactic) reactions, **529**–534, 529*t*, 530*f*, 531*f*, 534*f*
  type II (cytotoxic) reactions, 529*t*, **535**–538, 535*t*, 537*f*, 538*f*
  type III (immune complex) reactions, **538**–539, 538*f*
  type IV (delayed cell-mediated) reactions, **539**–540, 539*f*, 540*f*
hyperthermophiles, **154,** 271, 272*f*, 273*t*
hypertonic solution, 89, 89*f*, 154–155, 154*f*
hyphae, 5, 5*f*, 277, 318, 318*f*, **327**–328, 328*f*, 337, 338*f*
Hyphomicrobium, 299, 300*f*
hypochlorite ions, 198, 464
hypochlorous acid (HOCl), 192–193
hypothalamus, 467
hypotonic solution, **89,** 89*f*

I

I gene, 220, 220*f*
iChip, 570, 831, 831*f*
ID_{50} (infectious dose), **429**–430
identifying microbes. *See* classification of microbes
idiophase, **828**
IFR (infection fatality ratio), **404**
Ig (immunoglobins). *See* immunity, adaptive; immunoglobins (Ig)
IgA, 485*t*, **486**. *See also* immunity, adaptive
  memory response, 497–498, 497*f*
  oral vaccine response and, 509
  respiratory secretions, 694
  in saliva, 456
IgA protease, **432**
IgD, 485*t*, **486**. *See also* immunity, adaptive
IgE, 485*t*, **486**. *See also* immunity, adaptive
  anaphylactic reactions, **529**–534, 529*t*, 530*f*, 531*f*, 534*f*
  memory response, 497–498, 497*f*
IgG, 484, 485*t*, **486,** 489, 490*f*. *See also* immunity, adaptive
  cytotoxic (type II) hypersensitivity reactions, **535**–538, 535*t*, 537*f*, 538*f*
  direct agglutination tests, 516
  hypersensitivity reactions, 529*t*
  memory response, 497–498, 497*f*
  precipitation reactions, **514,** 514*f*
  rheumatoid factors, 541
IgM, 484, 485*t*, **486,** 489, 490*f*. *See also* immunity, adaptive
  cytotoxic (type II) hypersensitivity reactions, **535**–538, 535*t*, 537*f*, 538*f*
  direct agglutination tests, 516
  hypersensitivity reactions, 529*t*
  oral vaccine response and, 509
  precipitation reactions, **514,** 514*f*
  rheumatoid factors, 541
illuminator, microscope, **52**–53, 53*f*
imidazoles, **575,** 575*f*
imipenem, 566*t*, 569
imiquimod, 578
immobilized enzymes and microorganisms, 828, 828*f*
immortal cell lines, 374
immune complex (type III) hypersensitivity reactions, 529*t*, **538**–539, 538*f*
immune surveillance, **546**
immune system. *See* immunity, adaptive; immunity, innate; vaccines
immune system disorders. *See also* acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS); human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
  autoimmune diseases, **540**–542, 542*t*
  candidiasis, 611
  Clinical Case, DiGeorge syndrome, 530*c*, 534*c*, 546*c*, 549*c*, 556*c*
  complement and, 472
  cryptococcosis, **642,** 642*f*
  gene therapy for, 16
  hygiene hypothesis, 531–533
  hypersensitivity reactions, **529**–540, 529*t*, 530*f*, 531*f*, 534*f*, 535*t*, 537*f*, 538*f*, 539*f*, 540*f*
  immunodeficiencies, **547**–556, 548*ft*
  listeriosis, **626**–628, 627*f*
  microbiome and, 495
  opportunistic pathogens, **334**–335, 337
  transplantation reactions, 542–546, 543*ft*, 545*f*
  vaccines and, 505
immunity, **10**–11, **451**
immunity, adaptive, **451,** 452, 480, **481**. *See also* vaccines
  antibodies, **484**–486, 485*f*, 485*t*
  antigen-antibody complex, **489,** 490*f*
  antigen-presenting cells (APCs), **491**–492, 492*f*, 493*f*
  antigenic variation, **432**–433
  antigens, **483**–484, 484*f*
  cellular immune response, 490–496, 491*f*, 492*f*, 493*f*, 494*f*, 496*f*, 497*t*
  Clinical Case, sepsis, 483*c*, 486*c*, 489*c*, 492*c*, 496*c*
  cytokines, **482**–483, 482*t*
  digestive system and, 729, 730
  dual system, humoral and cellular, **481**–482, 482*f*
  Foundation Figure, 499*f*
  humoral immune response, 487–488, 487*f*, 488*f*, 489*f*
  hypersensitivity, **529**–540, 529*t*, 530*f*, 531*f*, 534*f*
  immunological memory, 497–498, 497*f*
  lymphoid (lymphatic) system, structure and function, 654–**655,** 655*f*, 656*f*
  nonspecific and extracellular killing, **496**–497, 496*f*, 497*t*
  self and nonself recognition, 480, 481, 495, 496–497, 499*f*, 540, 542, 546, 549*c*, 556*c*
  serology, **282**–284, 284*f*, 285*f*
  skin microbiota and, 495
  superantigens, 437
  types of, 498, 498*f*
immunity, humoral, **481**. *See also* immunity, adaptive
immunity, innate, **451,** 452, 476*t*
  age, impact of, 474
  Clinical Case, 454*c*, 460*c*, 464*c*, 468*c*, 474*c*, 475*c*
  first line of defense
    lysozyme, role of, 84
    normal microbiome and, 456–457
    skin and membranes, 451–456, 454*f*, 455*f*
  Foundation Figure, complement activation, 471*f*
  Foundation Figure, phagocytosis, 463*f*
  second line of defense
    antimicrobial peptides (AMPs), **474**
    complement system, **468**–472, 469*f*, 470*f*, 471*f*, 472*f*
    fever, **467**–468
    formed elements in blood, **458**–460, 458*f*, 459*t*
    genetic resistance, **474**
    inflammation, **464**–467, 465*f*, 466*t*
    interferons (IFNs), **472**–473, 473*f*
    iron-binding proteins, **473**–474
    lymphoid system, **460**–461, 461*f*
    phagocytes and phagocytosis, **462**–464, 462*f*, 463*f*
  small intestine defenses, 729, 730
immunizations, 481, **498,** 498*f*. *See also* vaccines
immunoblotting, 520–521
immunodeficiencies, **547**–556, 548*ft*. *See also* acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS); human immunodeficiency virus (HIV); immune system disorders
immunodiffusion test, **514,** 514*f*
immunoelectrophoresis, **514**
immunofluorescence, **57**–58, 57*f*
immunogens, 483, 484*f*
immunoglobins (Ig), **481**. *See also* IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, IgM; immunity, adaptive
  humoral immune response, 487–488, 487*f*, 488*f*, 489*f*
  immunoglobulin classes, **484**–486, 485*f*, 485*t*
  tetanus immune globulin (TIG), 629
immunologic tolerance, 751
immunology, **13,** 13*f*
immunology, diagnostic, 511–512
  agglutination, **515**–516, 515*f*, 516*f*
  complement fixation, **517**–518, 518*f*
  ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay), **520,** 521*f*
  fluorescent-antibody (FA) techniques, **518**–519, 519*f*, 520*f*
  future trends, 521, 524
  monoclonal antibodies, **512**–513, 513*f*
  neutralization reactions, **516**–517, 517*f*
  precipitation reactions, **514,** 514*f*
immunopathology, **529**
immunosenescence, 546
immunosuppression, transplant rejection prevention, 545–546. *See also* immune system disorders
immunotherapy, **546**–547
immunotoxin, **547**
impetigo, **597,** 597*f*, 602*t*
in vitro neutralization tests, 516, 517*f*
inactivated killed vaccines, **505**–506
inactivated polio vaccines (IVPs), 635
inapparent infection, 405, 498, 498*f*
incidence of disease, **402**
incineration, 186, 189*t*
inclusion bodies, 441–442
inclusion conjunctivitis, **613,** 614*t*
inclusions, 76*f*, **91**–92, 92*f*
increased permeability, **466,** 466*f*, 466*t*
incubating carriers, **407**
incubation period, **406,** 406*f*
indicator organism, **806**–807
indinavir, 555*f*, 556
indirect contact transmission, **408,** 409*f*
indirect fluorescent-antibody (FA) tests, **518**–519, 519*f*
indirect (negative) selection, **227**
indirect (passive) agglutination tests, **516,** 516*f*
induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs), **544**
inducer, quorum sensing, 158–159
inducible operon, 206, **218,** 220*f*

industrial microbiology, 109, 819
  alternative energy sources, 832–834
  amino acid production, 829
  biofuels, **832**–834
  biotechnology, **827**
  citric acid production, 829
  copper extraction, leaching, 831, 832*f*
  enzyme production, 829–830
  fermentation technology, 132*t*, 827–828, 827*f*, 828*f*
  food canning, 821–822, 821*f*, 822*f*
  food microbiology, 820–826, 820*t*, 821*f*, 822*f*, 823*ft*, 824*f*, 826*f*
  future trends, 834
  Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP), **820**–821, 821*f*
  hormone production, 14, 244–245, 245*f*, 256, 258*t*, 827
  microorganisms as products, 831–832
  pharmaceutical production, 830–831
  vitamin production, 830
infant botulism, **631**–632, 649*t*
infants. *See also* birth defects
  bacterial vaginosis, 784
  botulism, 631, 649*t*
  candidiasis, **611**
  Chlamydia trachomatis, 778
  Clinical Case, group B *Streptococcus*, 298*c*, 316*c*, 318*c*, 319*c*, 320*c*
  Clinical Case, pertussis, 505*c*, 508*c*, 510*c*, 514*c*, 519*c*, 524*c*
  congenital syphilis, **782**
  congenital transmission, **407**–408
  cytomegalovirus (CMV), **674**–675
  dengue, 678
  diarrhea and, 231, 734, 737, 740
  enteropathogenic *E.coli* (EPEC), **741**
  group B streptococci (GBS), **658**
  hepatitis, 749, 751
  HIV exposure, 554
  immune system development, 488
  inclusion conjunctivitis, **613**
  listeriosis, 627
  measles, 608
  meningitis, 306, 626
  microbiome, 397, 457, 495, 509, 730
  neonatal herpes, 785
  nitrite pollution, 805
  ophthalmia neonatorum, 194, **775**
  passive immunity, 486, 498, 498*f*
  pertussis, 453*f*, 701
  Pneumocystis pneumonia, 721
  polio, 634
  rashes, 382
  respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), **715**–716, 723*t*
  Rh blood group, 536–537, 537*f*
  salmonellosis, 737
  tetanus, 629
  vaccines for, 506*t*, 508, 509, 511, 626, 751
  vertical transmission, mother to child, 640–641, 640*f*, 641*f*
  Zika virus, 18, **639,** 640, 640*f*, 641*f*, 642
infection, **396, 734**
infection fatality ratio (IFR), **404**
infectious disease, **17, 386**. *See also* disease principles
  classification of, 402–405, 403*f*
infectious dose (ID_{50}), **429**–430
infectious mononucleosis, 380*t*, 382, 662*t*, **674,** 674*f*
inflammation, 451, **464**–467, 465*f*, 466*t*, 476*t*
  brain and meninges, 623
  complement stimulation of, 468, 470, 471*f*, 472*f*
  monoclonal antibodies, use of, 512
  SIRS (systemic inflammatory response syndrome), 657–658, 657*f*
  T_H17 cells, **494,** 494*f*
inflammatory bowel disease, 532–533, 533*f*
inflammatory (moderate) acne, **602,** 604
infliximab, 512
influenza, 18, 578, **716**–718, 716*f*, 723*t*
  antigenic variation, **432**–433
  complement evasions, 472
  harbor seal deaths, 281
  plasma membrane binding, 85–86, 86*f*
  species barrier, crossing of, 369
  vaccine for, 258*t*, 505*t*, 506*t*, 509
  viral antigens, 367
  zoonoses, 408*t*
influenza virus, 367, 371*t*, 379, 399*f*
ingestion, phagocytes, 463*f*, **464**
inhalational (pulmonary) anthrax, **661,** 661*f*, 663
inherited (genetic) disease, 400
innate immunity. *See* immunity, innate
inner membrane. *See* plasma (cytoplasmic) membrane
inoculum, **160**
inorganic cofactors, 108
inorganic compounds, **31**
  acids, bases, and salts, 32, 32*f*
  pH and acid-base balance, 32–33, 33*f*
  water, 31–32, 32*f*
insect pest control, 15
Insecta, 357, 357*f*, 358*f*, 359*t*
insects, as vectors, 357, 357*f*, 358*f*, 359*t*
insertion sequences (IS), **232**–233, 233*f*
insulin
  microbiome and, 132
  production of, 2, 207, 244, 253, 256, 258*t*, 827
insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, **542,** 542*t*
insulin resistance, 132
integral proteins, 85, 86*f*, 87–88, 88*f*
integrase inhibitors, 555*f*, 556, 577
interferons (IFNs), 13, 253, 258*t*, 442, **442, 472**–473, 473*f*, 476*t*, 482*t*, **483**
  antiviral drugs, 576*t*, 578
  viral infections, 442
interleukin-1 (IL-1), 438*f*, 467
interleukin-2 (IL-2), 545
interleukin-12 (IL-12), 442
interleukins (ILs), 258*t*, **482**–483, 482*t*, 494, 494*f*
intermediate host, **347**
International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses, 368
interstitial fluid, 655, 656*f*
interstitial spaces, 655
intestinal gas, 729
intestinal microbiome. *See also* microbiome, human
  blood type and, 536
  central nervous system and, 647
  eukaryotes and, 94
  horizontal gene transfer and antibiotic use, 231, 232
  identification of organisms, 67, 291
  mycobiome, 337
  normal microbiome, 729–730
  oral vaccine response, 509
  starch and, 37
intestines, digestive system function, **729,** 729*f*
intoxication, 435, **435, 734,** 735, 735*f*. *See also* toxins
introns, 211*t*, **216,** 218*f*, **251,** 252*f*, 259
invasins, **433**
iodine (I), 65–66, 65*f*
  atomic number and mass, 26*t*
  Gram stain, 83
  microbial control and, 192–193, 199*t*
  polysaccharide granule stains, 91
iodophor, **192**–193
iodoquinol, 579
ion, **27,** 28*f*
ionic bond, **27,** 28*f*, 30*t*
ionizing radiation, **187**–188, 188*f*, 189*t*
  food safety, 822–824, 823*ft*, 824*f*
iPSCs (induced pluripotent stem cells), **544**
Irish moss, 341
Irish potato famine, 343
iron-binding proteins, **473**–474, 476*t*
iron (Fe)
  atomic number and mass, 26*t*
  cyanide and, 116
  cytochromes, **124**–126, 125*f*
  fever response and, 468
  siderophores, **434,** 434*f*
iron oxide, magnetosomes, 92, 92*f*
irradiated foods, 822–824, 823*ft*, 824*f*
ischemia, **663**–664, 664*f*
isocitric acid, 123, 124*f*
isograft, **545**
isolation chip (iChip), 570, 830, 831*f*
isoleucine (Ile, I), 41*t*, 116, 215*f*
isomerase, 113, 113*t*
isomers, **36,** 829
isoniazid (INH), 566*t*, **570,** 573
isopropanol, 193, 193*t*
isoretinoin, 456
isotonic solution, **88**–89, 89*f*
isotopes, **25**
itraconazole, 575
ivermectin, 579
Iwanowski, Dmitri, 14, 363
Ixodes pacificus, 669
Ixodes scapularis, 347, 669, 669*f*, 670

J

Jacob, François, 14, 218
Japanese encephalitis, **639**
Jenner, Edward, 10–11, 504
jock itch, 610
joining (J) chain, immunoglobins, 485*t*, 486

K

Kaposi's sarcoma, 380*t*, 382, 473, 551, 551*t*
Karenia brevis, 342
karyogamy, **330**
Kauffmann-White scheme, naming serovars, 305
Kawasaki syndrome, 662*t*, **688**
kefir, 825
kelp, 338, 339–341, 339*t*
keratin, **334, 454, 593,** 593*f*
ketoconazole, 575
ketolides, **572**
ketone functional group, 34–35, 34*t*
kidneys, 769, 769*f*
  aminoglycosides, **571**
  carbapenems, **569**
  compromised hosts, **412**
  dialysis, infection and, 658
  diphtheria, 698
  endocarditis and, 659
  endotoxins, 439
  exotoxins, 438*t*
  hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), 741
  hemorrhagic fever with renal syndrome, **679**
  hepatitis A, 747
  interferons, 473
  kidney transplant, 467, 545, 546
  leptospirosis, **772**–773, 773*f*
  malaria, 683
  monoclonal antibody use, 512
  nitrofurantoin, 571
  polyenes, **575**
  pyelonephritis, 771, **772,** 772*t*
  Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 671
  septic shock, **439**
  systemic lupus erthematosus, **541**
  toxic shock syndrome, **597**–598
  visceral leishmaniasis, **685,** 685*f*
kinase, **432**
kingdom, **276,** 277, 277*f*
kinins, 465*f*, 466, **466,** 466*t*
Kirby-Bauer test, 580, 580*f*
kissing bug, 345, 348*t*, 358*f*, 680
Klebsiella, 77, 305
Klebsiella pneumoniae, 205, 281*f*, 432
Koch, Robert, 9, 9*f*, 10, 400–401, 401*f*, 511
Koch's postulates, **10,** 400–**401,** 401*f*
koji, **829**–830
Krebs cycle, 120–121, 120*f*, **123,** 124*f*, 128*t*
kumiss, 825
Kupffer's cells, 462
kuru, **646,** 649*t*

L

L forms, **84**
L-isomer, **40,** 40*f*, 42, 829
LAB. *See* lactic acid bacteria (LAB)
labia, 769, 770*f*
lac operon, 218–220, 220*f*, 221*f*
lac permease, 218–220, 220*f*, 221*f*
Lachnospira, 37
Lachnospiraceae, 192
Lacks, Henrietta, 374
lacrimal apparatus, **454,** 455*f*
lactic acid
  aerotolerant anaerobes, 157
  fermentation, 128–132, 129*f*, 130*f*, 131*f*, 132*t*, 133*t*
  tooth decay, 731–732, 732*f*
lactic acid bacteria (LAB), 457. *See also* Lactobacillus; Streptococcus
  central nervous system and, 659
  cheese and other dairy products, 824–825, 824*f*
  competing organisms, defense against, 795
  fermented food products, 820*t*
  nondairy fermentation, 825
  winemaking, 826, 826*f*
lactic acid fermentation, 129*f*, **130**–132, 130*f*, 131*f*, 132*t*, 133*t*

Lactobacillus, 169*f*, 315, 456
artificial sweeteners and, 132
chemically modified growth media, 161
circadian rhythm and microbiome, 169
dental caries, 732
in digestive system, 730
fermentation end products, 130*f*
G+C ratio, 313
homolactic, 131
industrial fermentation, uses of, 132*t*, 315, 820*t*
infant microbiome, 397
microbiome and nervous system, 647
normal microbiome, 398*t*, 730
oral vaccine response and, 509
probiotics, 132
reproductive system, 770
urinary system, 771
vaginal secretions, antimicrobial activity, 456, 587
vaginitis, **784,** 784*f*
yogurt production, 825
Lactobacillus acidophilus, 132, 132*f*
Lactobacillus bulgaricus, 647, 820*t*, 825
Lactobacillus delbrueckii, 132*t*, 820*t*, 825
Lactobacillus gasseri, 587
Lactobacillus lactis, 647
Lactobacillus plantarum, 132*t*, 820*t*
Lactobacillus sanfranciscensis, 820*t*
Lactococcus lactis, 821
lactoferrin, **474,** 737
lactose, 36, 218–220, 220*f*, 221*f*
lacZ gene, 253–254
lag phase, **168,** 168*f*
Lagevrio (molnupiravir), 576*t*, 577, 578
lagging strand, 210, 211*f*, 212*f*
lagoons, 813
LAL (Limulus amebocytes lysate) assay, **439**
Lambda (λ) bacteriophage, 377–378, 377*f*, 378*f*, 379*t*
Lambdavirus. *See* Lambda (λ) bacteriophage
Laminaria japonica, 341
lamivudine, 577, 578*f*
Lancefield, Rebecca, 13, 13*f*, 284
Landsteiner, Karl, 535, 536
Langerhans cells, 492, 492*f*
large intestine, 461*f*
digestive system function, **729,** 729*f*
microbiota, 398*ft*, 729–730
larva migrans, 356
larval stage, **351**
laryngitis, **695**
larynx, 694*f*
Lassa fever, **678,** 680*t*
latent disease, **403,** 407
latent infection, **388,** 388*f*, 389*t*
antiretroviral medication, **554**–556, 555*f*
herpes virus, 602*t*, 605–608, 606*f*, 607*f*, 614*t*, 615, 674–675, 784–785, 785*f*
HIV infection mechanism, 549–556, 550*f*, 551*t*, 552*f*, 554*f*, 555*f*
human virome, 366
latent tuberculosis (TB), 704*f*, **705,** 706
lysogenic cycle, 377–378, 377*f*, 440
provirus, 550, 550*f*
retroviruses, 383*f*, 384, 385*f*
shingles, 388, 388*f*, 602*t*, **606**–607, 606*f*
syphilis, 781–782
vaccine development, 556
latent TB (tuberculosis), 704*f*, **705,** 706
latex agglutination tests, **516,** 516*f*
latex allergies, 540, 540*f*
lattices, 514
LD_{50} (lethal dose), **430**
LDL-receptor deficiency, 16
leaching, copper extraction, 831, 832*f*
leading strand, 210, 211*f*, 212*f*
lectin pathway, complement, 469*f*, **470**
lectins, 469*f*, **470**
Lederberg, Joshua, 14
Legionella, 303–304, 713
Legionella pneumophila, 44, 709*t*, **710,** 713
Legionellosis, 709*t*, **710,** 713
Legionnaires' disease, 401, 709*t*, **710,** 713
Leishmania, 641
Leishmania braziliensis, 685
Leishmania donovani, 685
Leishmania tropica, 685
leishmaniasis, 433, 521, 668*t*, **685,** 685*f*
Lentivirus, 372*t*, 373, 383*f*, 384, 549
Lentivirus human immunodeficiency virus, 549
Lentivirus simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV), 549
lepromatous (progressive) form, leprosy, 633–634, 633*f*
leprosy, 616–617, **632**–634, 633*f*, 649*t*
Leptospira, 312
Leptospira interrogans, 768*f*, **772**–773, 773*f*
leptospirosis, 281, 408*t*, 768*f*, 771, **772**–773, 772*t*, 773*f*
Clinical Case, 769*c*, 773*c*, 778*c*, 784*c*
lethal dose (LD_{50}), **430**
leucine (Leu, L), 41*t*, 215*f*
Leuconostoc, 820*t*
Leuconostoc mesenteroides, 160*t*, 161
leukocidins, **436**
leukocyte esterase (LE), 772
leukocytes, **458**–460, 458*f*, 459*t*
blood, normal ranges, 453
leukopenia, 460
leukotoxins, 435
leukotrienes, 465*f*, **466,** 466*t*, **530**
LGV (lymphogranuloma venereum), **783,** 789*t*
lice (pediculosis), 603*t*, **612**–613, 612*f*
lichen, **337**–338, 338*f*, **799**
lifestyle, disease and, 405
ligands, 97, **430**–431, 430*f*
ligase, 113, 113*t*
light, photosynthesis, 135–137, 136*f*, 137*f*
light chain, antibodies, 484, 485*f*
light-dependent reactions, **136**–137, 136*f*, 137*f*
light-independent (dark) reactions, **136**–137, 136*f*, 137*f*
light microscope (LM), image icon use, 5*f*
light microscopy, **52,** 62*t*
compound light microscope (LM), 52–55, 53*f*, 54*f*, 55*f*, 56*f*
confocal microscopy, 58, 58*f*
darkfield microscope, 55, 56*f*
differential interference contrast (DIC) microscopy, 56, 57*f*
fluorescence microscopy, 56–58, 57*f*
phase-contrast microscopy, 55–56, 56*f*
limnetic zone, **804**
limonene, 191, 191*f*
Limulus amebocytes lysate (LAL) assay, **439**
line of vision, microscope, 53*f*
linezolid, 567*t*, 573
Linnaeus, Carolus, 271
lipases, 133, 133*f*, 134*f*
lipid A, 81–83, 82*f*, 436*f*, **437,** 439*t*, 508
lipid bilayer, 85, 86*f*
lipid inclusions, **91**
lipids
alcohol, microbial control and, 193, 193*t*
biosynthesis of, 142–143, 142*f*
catabolism of, 133, 133*f*, 134*f*
triclosan and, 191, 191*f*
types and functions, **36**–40, 38*f*, 39*f*
Liponyssoides sanguines, 672
lipopeptides, 567*t*, **573**
lipopolysaccharide (LPS), 81–83, 82*f*
complement evasions, 472
endotoxic shock, 657–658
endotoxins, **437**–439, 438*f*, 439*t*
fever response, **467**–468
Gram stain, 65–66, 65*f*
lipoprotein lipase deficiency, 256
lipoproteins, cell wall, 81–83, 82*f*
lipoteichoic acid, 81, 82*f*
Lister, Joseph, 9*f*, 10, 179, 411
Listeria, 315, 316
detection in food, 286
food safety, high-pressure preservation, 824
microbial control, 186–187
Listeria monocytogenes, 315, 316
adhesins, 431
congenital infection, 641
food safety, high-pressure preservation, 824
host cell penetration, 433
immune system response, 481
listeriosis, **626**–628, 627*f*, 629*t*
opportunistic pathogens, 625
toxins, 436
vertical transmission, mother to child, 640–641, 640*f*, 641*f*
listeriosis, 436, **626**–628, 627*f*, 629*t*
lithotrophs, 138
littoral zone, **804**
liver
acute-phase proteins, **465**
aflatoxin poisoning, **754,** 755*t*
amebic dysentery, **757**
cancer of, 387, 389*t*, 749, 750, 751
Clinical Case, hepatitis A, 365*c*, 384*c*, 386*c*, 387*c*
complement system, 468
digestive system function, **729,** 729*f*
Echinococcus granulosus, 354, 354*f*
endoplasmic reticulum, 100
endotoxins, 437
ferritin, 474
fibrinogen, 432
hepatitis, 372*t*, 387, 389*t*, **747,** 749–752, 749*f*, 750*t*
hepatotoxins, 435
immune system, fetal development, 481, 482*f*
interferons, 473
lectin pathway, 470
Leishmania donovani, 685
leptospirosis, **772**–773, 773*f*
listeriosis, **627**
macrolides, 572
macrophages (Kupffer's cells), 462
malaria, 683, 684
mitochondria, 101
Plasmodium, 346, 346*f*
schistosomiasis, **686**–688, 687*f*
tetracycline, 572
tissue repair, 467
transplant, 545
typhoid fever, **739**
yellow fever, **675**
liver fluke, 351, 351*f*
LM (light microscope), image icon use, 5*f*
local infection, **404**
localized anaphylaxis, **531,** 533*f*, 534
lockjaw, 628–630, 628*f*
log phase, **168,** 168*f*
logarithmic decline phase, **168,** 168*f*
logarithmic plotting, 182*f*
logarithmic representation, populations, 166–167, 167*f*
lophotrichous, **77,** 77*f*
lower respiratory system, **694,** 694*f*, 695*f*. *See also* respiratory system
bacterial diseases, 700–701, 704–713, 709*t*
COVID-19, overview of, **714**–715, 714*f*
viral diseases, 713–718
LPS. *See* lipopolysaccharide (LPS)
LSD (lysergic acid diethylamide), **443**
luciferase, 805, 805*f*
lumbar puncture (spinal tap), 626, 627*f*
lung fluke, 351–352, 352*f*, 358*t*, 758*f*
lungs. *See also* respiratory system
aminoglycosides, 571
cardiovascular system, 655, 655*f*, 656*f*
Clinical Case, *Aspergillus*, 454*c*, 460*c*, 464*c*, 468*c*, 474*c*, 475*c*
Clinical Case, *Chlamydophila psittaci*, 694*c*, 712*c*, 717*c*, 718*c*, 722*c*
Clinical Case, *Cryptococcus gattii*, 327*c*, 336*c*
COVID-19, overview of, **714**–715, 714*f*
cystic fibrosis, 16, 159, 258*t*, 301, 303, 600
Diseases in Focus, 699*t*, 709*t*, 723*t*
fungal diseases, 719–722, 719*f*, 720*f*, 721*f*, 722*f*, 723*t*
hydatid cyst, **759**–760, 760*f*
influenza, **716**–718, 716*f*
lower respiratory system diseases, bacterial, 700–701, 704–713, 709*t*
lower respiratory system diseases, viral, 713–718
macrophages, 462
microbiome, 696
neglected tropical diseases, 616–617
opportunistic pathogens, **334**–335
pneumonia, bacterial, 707–713, 708*f*, 709*t*, 710*f*, 711*f*
pulmonary hemorrhagic syndrome, 773
tuberculosis, 18, 67*f*, 141, 539, **701,** 701*f*, 704–707, 704*f*, 705*f*, 707*f*, 723*t*
lyase, 113, 113*t*
Lyme borreliosis (Lyme disease), 667–670, 668*t*, 669*f*, 670*f*
Lyme disease (Lyme borreliosis), 17, 408*t*, 410*t*, 418*f*, 668*t*
lymph, 460, 461*f*, 655
lymph capillaries, 655
lymph nodes, 460, 461*f*, 655
lymphangitis, **657,** 657*f*
lymphatic capillaries, 461, 461*f*
lymphatic filariasis, 616–617
lymphatic vessel, 460–461, 461*f*
lymphatics, 655

Lymphocryptovirus (HHV-4), 370*t*, 380*t*, 382, 472, 747
lymphocytes, **460,** 461, 480*f*. *See also* B cells; T cells
  blood, normal ranges, 453
lymphogranuloma venereum (LGV), **783,** 789*t*
lymphoid (lymphatic) system, 441*f*, **460**–461, 461*f*
  animal bites and scratches, 664–665
  anthrax, **661,** 661*f*, 663
  antigen-presenting cells (APCs), **491**–492, 492*f*, 493*f*
  brucellosis, **660**–661
  Burkitt's lymphoma, **673,** 673*f*
  infectious mononucleosis, **674,** 674*f*
  protozoan diseases, 679–686
  schistosomiasis, **686**–688, 687*f*
  sepsis and septicemia, **656**–658, 657*f*
  structure and function, 654–**655,** 655*f*, 656*f*
  tularemia, **660,** 660*f*
lymphoid stem cell, 458*f*
lymphoid tissue, 460, 461*f*, 734
lymphoma, 256
lyophilization, **165,** 187, 189*t*
lysine (Lys, K), 41*t*, 215*f*
Lysini-bacillus sphaericus, 274
lysis, **81,** 97, **375,** 376*f*
lysogenic cells, 377–378, 377*f*
lysogenic conversion, **440**
lysogenic cycle, **375,** 377–378, 377*f*
lysogenic phages, 377–378, 377*f*
lysogeny, **377**–378, 377*f*, 440
lysosome, 95*f*, **100,** 441, 463*f*, 464
lysozyme, **456,** 593, 593*f*, 730
  prokaryote cell wall damage, 84–85
  tooth decay, 732, 732*f*
Lyssavirus, 371*t*, 382, 442*t*, **635**–637, 635*f*, 637*f*, 638, 649*t*
lytic cycle, **375**–377, 376*f*
lytic granules, 460

M

M cells (microfold cells), **491,** 491*f*, **734,** 736, 736*f*, 741
M protein, 315, **432,** 599, 599*f*, 600, 659
Mabs. *See* monoclonal antibodies (Mabs)
MAC (membrane attack complex), **470,** 470*f*
MAC resistant, 470
MacConkey's agar, 772
MacLeod, Colin, 14, 44, 234
macroconidia, 719, 719*f*
Macrocystis porifera, 340*f*
macrolides, 567*t*, **572,** 572*f*
macromolecules, **35,** 36
macrophages, 458*f*, 459*t*, **460, 492,** 492*f*
  activated macrophages, **492,** 492*f*
  adaptive immunity and, 496*f*, 497, 499*f*
  alveolar macrophages, 694, 704, 704*f*
  anthrax, **661,** 661*f*, 663
  antigen presentation, 484, 491–492
  antimicrobial peptides, 474
  cancer cells, 546, 547
  Clinical Case, dengue virus, 655*c*, 672*c*, 678*c*, 683*c*, 688*c*
  complement, 472, 472*f*
  cytokines, 482*t*
  delayed cell-mediated reactions, **539**
  dengue, 654
  endotoxins, **437**–439, 438*f*, 439*t*
  fixed and free (wandering) macrophages, **462**
  function of, 451, 462
  granulocyte macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF), 483
Histoplasma capsulatum, 719
HIV infections, 550, 553
inflammation, **464**–466, 465*f*, 467
innate immunity, 451
interferon, 472–473
lectin pathway, 469*f*, **470**
Legionnaires' disease, 710
leprosy, 632
leukocidins, **436**
Listeria monocytogenes, 627*f*
lymphoid (lymphatic) system, 461, **655,** 656*f*
monocyte precursors, 452*f*, 458*f*, 459*t*, 460
mononuclear phagocytic (reticuloendothelial) system, **462**
multiple sclerosis, **540,** 542*t*
ovoid cells, 668*f*
phagocytosis, **462**–464, 462*f*, 463*f*
Q fever, *C. burnettii*, 712
Salmonella, 737
Shigella, 736
in spleen, 461
Staphylococcus aureus, 595
superantigens, **437**
T helper cells, 493, 493*f*, 494*f*, 497*t*
Toxoplasma, attachment of, 443
tuberculosis, 570, 573, 704, 704*f*, 705, 706
tularemia, **660**
type II (cytotoxic) reactions, **535**
macropinocytosis, **379**
macule, **594,** 594*f*
mad cow disease, 391, **646**–648, 646*f*, 648*t*, 649*t*
magainins, 588
magnesium (Mg), 26*t*, 113*f*, 114
magnetosomes, **92,** 92*f*
Magnetospirillum magnetotacticum, 92, 92*f*
magnification, microscope, **53,** 53*f*, 54*f*, 55, 55*f*
major histocompatibility complex (MHC), **487,** 487*f*, **542**–546, 543*f*, 545*f*
  T cells, classes of, **492**–495, 493*f*, 494*f*
malachite green, 64
malaria, 668*t*, **682**–684, 682*f*, 683*f*
  Burkitt's lymphoma and, **673,** 673*f*
  diagnosis of, 347, 524, 683, 683*f*, 684
  emerging infectious diseases, 415*t*, 416
  epidemiology, 421*t*
  eradication efforts, 17, 684
  genetic resistance, **474**
  host cell penetration, 433, 443
  infection and death rates, 325, 343, 346
Plasmodium, 346–347, 346*f*, 348*t*, 443
  portal of entry, 429*t*
  predisposing factors, 536
  treatment for, 11, 12*f*, 564*t*, 576*t*, 578–579, 588, 684, 712
  vaccines, 504, 508, 684
  vectors, 357*f*, 359*t*, **410,** 410*t*, 668*t*
  zoonoses, 408*t*
Malassezia, 337
Malassezia furfur, 594
male reproductive system, **769**–770, 770*f*. *See also* sexually transmitted infections (STIs)
malignant melanoma, 473
Mallon, Mary, 739
malolactic fermentation, **826,** 826*f*
malt, **825**–826, 826*f*
malting, **825**–826, 826*f*
mammalian cells
  antibiotics, targets of action, 566, 570
  antifungals, targets of action, 575
  cell cultures, 255, 258*t*
  Rickettsia, 299
  shuttle vectors, **248**
Mammarenavirus, 679
mannan, 96–97
Mannheimia haemolytica, 281*f*
mannitol, 163, 163*f*, 733
mannitol salt agar, 163, 163*f*, 420, 420*f*
mannose, 430
mannose-binding lectin (MBL), 465, 469*f*, **470**
Mantoux test, 705, 705*f*
maraviroc, 555, 555*f*, 577
Marburg virus, **19, 678,** 680*t*
Marburgvirus, 368
margination, 465*f*, **466**
Margulis, Lynn, 102
marine mammals, mass deaths of, 281
mast cells, 458*f*
  anaphylactic reactions, **529**–534, 529*t*, 530*f*, 531*f*, 534*f*
  antimicrobial peptides, 474
  complement activation, 470, 471*f*, 472*f*
  degranulation, **530,** 530*f*
  function of, 452*t*
  IgE and, 486, 494*f*, 512, 529, 530*f*
  inflammation, 465*f*, 466, 466*t*
Mastadenovirus, 366*f*, 370*t*, 442*t*, 699, 699*t*
matrix, mitochondria, **101,** 101*f*
maturation, bacteriophage lytic cycle, 375–377, 376*f*
maturation, virus biosynthesis, 384, 386, 386*f*
maturation inhibitors, **556**
maximum growth temperature, **152,** 152*f*
Mayer, Adolf, 363
MBL (mannose-binding lectin), 469*f*, **470**
McCarty, Maclyn, 14, 44, 234
McClintock, Barbara, 232
measles virus, 371*t*, 388, 442, 442*t*, **608,** 608*f*
  Clinical Focus, world health problem, 510, 510*f*
  vaccine for, 506*t*, 508, 522–523
measly beef, 354
measurement
  antimicrobial serum concentration, 581
  biochemical oxygen demand (BOD), 810
  dry weight measurement, 175
  of microbial growth, 169–175, 170*f*, 171*f*, 172*f*, 173*f*, 174*f*
  units of, 52, 52*t*
mebendazole, 579
mechanical transmission, disease, **410,** 410*ft*
medical discoveries, 9*f*, 12*f*
medulla, lichens, **337,** 338*f*
megacolon, 680
megaesophagus, 680
meiosis, 96*t*, 99, **330,** 331*f*, 333*f*, 334*f*, 340*f*
melanoma, 258*t*, 388, 473
melioidosis, 276, **712,** 723*t*
Melo, Adriana, 219
membrane attack complex (MAC), **470,** 470*f*
membrane-bound ribosomes, 98
membrane-disrupting toxins, **435**–436
membrane filters, **186,** 186*f*, 807, 808
membrane ruffling, 433
membrane transport
  active transport, **89**–90
  eukaryotes, 97
  passive processes, 87–89, 87*f*, 88*f*, 89*f*
memory response, **497**–498, 497*f*
memory T cells, 493–494, 493*f*, 494*f*
meninges, 623, 624*f*
meningitis, **623,** 624*f*
  AIDs, common diseases, 551*t*
  anthrax, 702*t*
  bacterial meningitis, 625–628, 625*f*, 627*f*
  Clinical Case, 298*c*, 316*c*, 318*c*, 319*c*, 320*c*
  Cronobacter, 306
  cryptococcosis, **642,** 642*f*
  Cryptococcus neoformans, 443
  diagnosis and treatment, 626, 627*f*
  Diseases in Focus, 629*t*
  droplet precautions, 413
  gonorrheal meningitis, 775
  Haemophilus influenzae, 306, 432, 625
  hand-foot-and-mouth disease, 609
  leukocyte count, 460
  Listeria monocytogenes, 431, 626–628, 627*f*
  Lyme disease, 670
  meningococcal meningitis, **625**–626
  mumps, 747
  Neisseria meningitidis, 302, 432, 439, 625–626, 625*f*
  opportunistic pathogens, 400
  pneumococcal meningitis, 626
  Pseudomonas, 302–303
  Streptococcus pneumoniae, 626, 708, 708*f*
  vaccine for, 505*t*, 625, 626
  viral meningitis, **625**
meningococcal meningitis, **625**–626, 629*t*
meningococcus, **625**–626
meningoencephalitis, **623,** 625*f*
  Clinical Case, 624*c*, 628*c*, 630*c*, 645*c*, 647*c*, 648*c*
mercuric chloride, 194
mercury, microbial control, 193–194, 194*f*
merozoites, **346**–347, 346*f*, 683
MERS-CoV (Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus), **17, 714**
MERS (Middle East respiratory syndrome), **17**
mesophiles, **152,** 152*f*, 153–154, 822
mesosomes, **87**
messenger RNA (mRNA), **46,** 47*t*
  central dogma, 206–207
  complementary DNA (cDNA), 252
  gene expression, regulation of, 218–222, 220*f*, 221*f*, 222*f*
  genetic code and, **208**
  transcription, **213**–214, 214*f*, 216, 217*f*, 218*f*
  viruses, taxonomy of, 368, 370*t*, 371*t*, 372*t*
metabolic activity, growth measurement and, 175

metabolic pathways, **111,** 140, 142
  amino acid and protein biosynthesis, 143, 143*f*
  amphibolic pathways, 144, 145*f*
  of energy production, 119
  lipid biosynthesis, 142–143, 142*f*
  polysaccharide biosynthesis, 142, 142*f*
  purine and pyrimidine biosynthesis, 143, 144*f*
metabolism (microbial), 107–109, **110**
  amino acid and protein biosynthesis, 143, 143*f*
  amphibolic pathways, 144, 145*f*
  of bacteria, overview, 327*t*
  biochemical test, bacterial identification, 134–135, 134*f*, 135*f*
  carbohydrate catabolism, overview, 119–121, 120*f*
  catabolic and anabolic reactions, 110–111, 110*f*
  cellular respiration, 123–128, 124*f*, 125*f*, 126*f*, 127*f*, 128*t*
  energy production, 117–119, 118*f*, 138*f*
  enzymes and, 111–117, 111*f*, 112*f*, 113*ft*, 114*t*, 115*f*, 116*f*, 117*f*
  fermentation, 128–132, 129*f*, 130*f*, 131*f*, 132*t*, 133*t*
  of fungi, overview, 327*t*
  glycolysis, 120*f*, 121, 122*f*
  lipid and protein catabolism, 133, 133*f*, 134*f*
  lipid biosynthesis, 142–143, 142*f*
  metabolic diversity, overview, 138–140, 139*f*
  photosynthesis, 135–137, 136*f*, 137*f*
  polysaccharide biosynthesis, 142, 142*f*
  purine and pyrimidine biosynthesis, 143, 144*f*
metabolites, antimicrobial drug action and, 564–565, 567*t*, 574, 574*f*
metabolomics, **828**
metachromatic granules, **91**
metagenomics, **259**
metal ion cofactors, 113–114, 113*f*, 114*t*
methane, 132*t*, 796, **833,** 833*f*, 814–815
methanogens, 5, 271, 272*f*, 273*t*, 320, 814–815, 815*f*
methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA), **18, 569**
  antibiotic resistance, 1, 192, 205, 207, 582–583
  Clinical Case, 3*c*, 16*c*, 18*c*, 19*c*, 20*c*
  Clinical Focus, 598
  exotoxins, 438*t*
  fomite transmission, 408
  healthcare-associated infections, 420
  skin microbiota and, 431
  superbugs, 582–583
  treatment of, 566*t*, 567*t*, 569, 572, 573, 587
methionine (Met, M), 41*t*
methyl functional group, 34–35, 34*t*
methylase, 211*t*, **227**
methylated genes, 221
methylates, **246**–247, 246*t*, 247*f*
methylene blue, 64, 65, 91
metric units, 52, 52*t*
metronidazole, 571, 579
mezlocillin, 569
MF59 adjuvant, 508
MHC (major histocompatibility complex), 487*f*, **542**–546, 543*f*, 545*f*
  T cells, classes of, **492**–495, 493*f*, 494*f*
MIC (minimal inhibitory concentration), **580**–581, 580*f*, 581*f*
miconazole, 575, 575*f*
microaerophiles, 156*t*, **157**
microarray, **288,** 289*f*
microbes/microorganisms, **2**
  bioremediation, 15
  in biotechnology, 15–16
  classification and naming, 4–6, 4*t*, 5*f*
  functions and applications of, 2
  human disease, overview of, 16–19, 17*f*
  insect pest control with, 15
  microbial ecology and, 15
  sewage treatment with, 15
  types of, 4–6, 5*f*
microbial antagonism, **399**
microbial control, 179
  alcohols, 193, 193*t*
  aldehydes, 196
  antibiotics, 196
  biguanides, 191
  chemical food preservatives, 195–196
  chemical sterilization, 196–197
  desiccation, 187, 189*t*
  disinfectants, evaluation of, 190, 190*f*
  disinfection, principles of, 189–190
  filtration, 186, 186*f*
  halogens, 192–193
  heat, use of, 183–186, 184*ft*, 185*ft*, 189*t*
  heavy metals, 193–194, 194*f*
  high pressure methods, 187, 189*t*
  low temperature, 186–187, 189*t*
  microbial death curve, 181, 181*t*, 182*f*
  osmotic pressure, 187, 189*t*
  pasteurization, 185, 189*t*
  peroxygens, 197–198
  phenol and phenolics, 190–191, 191*f*
  physical methods, summary chart, 189*t*
  plasma, 197
  radiation, 187–188, 188*f*, 189*t*
  summary of, 199, 199*t*, 200*t*
  supercritical fluids, 197
  surface-active agents (surfactants), 194–195, 195*f*
  terminology, 180, 181*t*
  types of actions, 181–182
microbial diversity, 320–322
microbial ecology, **15**
microbial fuel cells, **834**
microbial genetics, **14**. *See also* genetics
microbial growth
  aerotolerant anaerobes, 157
  Ames test, 228–229, 229*f*
  anaerobic growth media and methods, 161–162, 161*f*, 162*f*
  bacterial division, 166, 166*f*
  bacterial growth curve, 167–169, 168*f*
  biofilms, **158**–159, 158*f*
  chemical requirements, 155–157, 156*t*
  chemically defined media, 160–161, 160*t*, 164*t*
  complex media, 161, 161*t*, 164*t*
  culture media, **160**
  culture media, Shiga-toxin-producing *E. coli* (STEC), 741
  culture media, staphylococcal food poisoning organisms, 735
  direct measurement of, 169–172, 170*f*, 171*f*, 172*f*, 173*f*, 174*f*
  dry weight measurement, 175
  enrichment media, 163, 164*t*
  fecal coliforms, 807
  fermentation test, 134–135, 134*f*, 135*f*
  generation time, 166, 166*f*
  indirect measurement of, 173–175, 174*f*
  logarithmic representation of population, 166–167, 167*f*
  microaerophiles, 157
  microbial death curve, 181, 181*t*, 182*f*
  obtaining pure cultures, 164–165, 165*f*
  osmotic pressure, 154–155, 154*f*
  overview of, 151
  pH buffers, 33, 154
  reducing media, 164*t*
  replica plating, 227, 228*f*
  selective and differential media, **162**–163, 163*f*, 164*t*, 282, 283*f*
  temperature and, 152–154, 152*f*, 153*f*
  transport media, **279**
microbial identification. *See* classification of microbes
microbiological assay, 161
microbiology, history of, 6–14, 7*f*, 8*f*, 9*f*, 11*f*, 12*f*, 13*f*
microbiome
  earth microbiome, **794**
  extreme environments, 802
  freshwater microbiota, 804
  methanogens, 320
  seawater microbiota, 804–805, 805*f*
microbiome, human, 1, **2**–3, 2*f*
  acquisition and function in humans, 396–399, 398*ft*
  anaerobes, identifying, 65
  antibiotics and superinfections, **562**–563
  blood, sterility of, 657
  blood type and intestinal microbiome, 536
  central nervous system and, 647
  circadian rhythms and, 169
  cooperation between organisms, 400
  crime scene investigations and, 261, 262
  diabetes mellitis and, 132
  digestive system, 729–730
  disinfectants and sanitizers, use of, 192, 192*f*
  eukaryome, 94
  horizontal gene transfer and antibiotic use, 232
  host relationships, 399–400, 399*f*
  human microbiome in space, 321
  Human Microbiome Project, **3, 396**
  human virome, 366
  immune cells and skin microbiota, 495
  innate immunity and, 456–457
  mycobiome, 337
  new antibiotics and, 587
  opportunistic organisms, 400
  oral vaccine response and, 509
  respiratory system, 695, 696
  skin, 495, 594, 597
  techniques for identifying organisms, 67, 291
  urinary and reproductive systems, 770, 771
microbiota, **2**–3, 2*f*. *See also* microbiome; microbiome, human
microcephaly, 219, 641*f*, **642**
Microcladia, 340*f*
Micrococcus luteus, 192, 192*f*
microconidia, 719, 719*f*
microfilament, 95*f*
microfold cells (M cells), **491,** 491*f*, **734,** 736, 736*f*, 741
microglial cells, 462
microinjection, **250,** 251*f*
micrometer (μm), **52,** 52*t*
Micromonospora, 571
microorganisms, **2**. *See also* disease principles; microbes/microorganisms
microRNAs (miRNAs), **221**–222, 222*f*
Microscopic-Observation Drug-Susceptibility Assay (MODS), 706
microscopy
  acid-fast stain, 66, 67*f*
  capsule staining, 67, 68*ft*
  compound light microscope, 52–55, 53*f*, 54*f*, 55*f*, 56*f*
  confocal microscopy, 58, 58*f*
  darkfield microscope, 55, 56*f*
  differential interference contrast (DIC) microscopy, 56, 57*f*
  differential stains, 65–66, 65*f*
  electron microscope, 59–61, 60*f*, 61*f*
  endospore staining, **68**–69, 68*ft*
  fluorescence microscopy, 56–58, 57*f*
  Foundation Figure, 54, 54*f*
  obligate anaerobes, identifying, 65
  phase-contrast microscopy, 55–56, 56*f*
  scanned-probe microscopy, 61, 61*f*
  scanning acoustic microscopy (SAM), 59, 59*f*
  simple stains, 65
  smear preparation, 64–65
  staining, summary table, 68*t*
  summary table of, 62*t*–64*t*
  super-resolution light microscopy, 58–59, 59*f*
  text icon use, 5*f*
  two-photon microscopy (TPM), 58, 58*f*
Microsporidia, **332,** 332*f*, 335*t*
Microsporum, 603*t*, 610
microtiter plates, 515–516, 515*f*
microtubule, 58*f*, 95*f*, **96,** 96*t*
  antifungal medications, 577
  antihelminthic medications, 579
  centrosome and, 102
  cytoskeleton, 90, 98
  flagella, 96, 97*f*
  mitosis, 576*t*
Microvirga, 65
microwaves, **188,** 188*f*
Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus (MERS-CoV), **17, 714**
Middle East respiratory syndrome (MERS), **17**
Milstein, César, 12*f*
miltefosine, 579
minimal bactericidal concentration (MBC), **580**–581, 581*f*
Minimal Genome Project, 259
minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC), **580,** 580*f*
minimum growth temperature, **152,** 152*f*
minocyline, 572, 572*f*
miRNAs (microRNAs), **221**–222, 222*f*
miscarriage. *See* abortion
miso, 830
missense mutation, **224,** 224*f*
mites, as vectors, 357, 358*f*, 359*t*
mitochondria
  antibiotics, mechanism of action, 564, 571
  antihelminthic medication, 576*t*
  antiprotozoan medications, 579

Index

bacteria, 272*f*
DNA in, 98
electron transport chain (system), **123**–127, 125*f*, 127*f*, 128*t*
endosymbiotic theory, 102, 274*f*
Euglenozoa, 344
eukaryotes, 73, 95*f*, 96*t*, **101,** 101*f*, 273*t*
Giardia, 344
microsporidia, **332**
oxidative phosphorylation, **119**
protozoa, 344
ribosomes, 98
Trichomonas, 344
mitosis
algae, 339, 340*f*
asexual spores, 329
centrosome, 102
eukaryotic reproduction, 73, 96*t*, 99, 273*t*
fungi, 333*f*, 577
virus, cytopathic effects, 441
mitotic spindle, centrosome, 102
M cells (microfold cells), 736
mobile genetic elements, **230**
MODS (Microscopic-Observation Drug-Susceptibility Assay), 706
Moerner, William, 59
moist heat sterilization, 183–184, 184*ft*, 185*f*, 189*t*
molds, 5. *See also* fungi
aflatoxin, 226, 443, **754**
Ascomycota, 332, 333*f*
characteristics of, 327, 330
cheese production, 825
citric acid, industrial production, 829
classification, 6, 272*f*, 277
cyclosporine, 545
dimorphism, 329, 329*f*
dry weight measurement, 175
economic effects, 336
enzymes, industrial production, 829–830
food safety and spoilage, 153, 187, 196, 226, 336, 630, 822
life cycle, 329–331, 330*f*
microbial control, 187, 189*t*, 200*t*
Mucoromycota, 331–332, 331*f*
mycelia, 5
nutritional adaptations, 330–331
osmotic pressure, 187
penicillin, 11–12, 11*f*, 561, 562, 569, 828
pH and microbial growth, 154
pulmonary infections, 722
Sake production, **825**–826
saprophytic molds, 330
slime molds, 5, **348**–349, 349*f*, 350*f*
spores, 329
taxonomy, 275
water molds, 339*t*, 342–343, 342*f*
mole, **29**
molecular biology, **14**
molecular clock, **274**–275
molecular mass, **29**
molecules, **25,** 25*f*, 26*t*
chemical bonds, 27–29, 28*f*, 29*f*, 30*t*
Molluscipoxvirus, 370*t*
molnupiravir (Lagevrio), 576*t*, 577, 578
monkeypox. *See* MPOX (monkeypox)
monkeys
malaria, 408*t*
Marburg virus, 19, 678
Rh factor, 536
Shigella, 736
simian AIDS, 373, 549
viral hemorrhagic fevers, 678–679
yellow fever, 675, 680*t*
Zika virus, 219, **639,** 640, 640*f*, 641*f*, 642
monobactam, 566*t*, **569**–570
monoclonal antibodies (Mabs), **512**–513, 513*f*
anthrax toxin, 661
autoimmune disorders, 542, 549*c*, 556*c*
cancer treatment and, 547
chimeric monoclonal antibodies, **512**
direct fluorescent-antibody (DFA) tests, **783**
ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay), **520,** 521*f*
fully human antibodies, **512**
future trends, 521, 524
history of, 12*f*
home pregnancy tests, 520, 521*f*
humanized antibodies, **512**
immunosuppressive agents, 546
indirect (passive) agglutination tests, **516,** 516*f*
multiple sclerosis, 540
pharmaceutical products, 258*t*, 379, 465, 483, 531, 716
production of, 513*f*
for SARS-CoV-2 (COVID-19) virus, 379
tissue typing, 542
monocytes, 458*f*, **459,** 459*t*
blood, normal ranges, 453
function of, 452*t*
inflammation, **464**–467, 465*f*
Monod, Jacques, 14, 218
monoecious, **351**
monoglyceride, 37–38, 38*f*
monomer, antibodies, **484,** 485*f*
monomers, **35**
monomorphic, **75**
mononuclear phagocytic (reticuloendothelial) system, **462**
mononucleosis, infectious, 380*t*, 382
monophosphoryl lipid A, 508
monosaccharides, **36**
monotrichous, **77,** 77*f*
Montagu, Lady Mary, 504
Moraxella, 303
morbidity, **419,** 421
Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (MMWR), **419,** 421
morbidity rate, **419,** 421
Morbillivirus, 371*t*, 442*t*
morphology, classification and, 279
mortality, **419,** 421
mortality rate, **419,** 421
morulae, 670
mosquitoes
arboviral encephalitis, 637–639, 639*f*, 643*t*
chikungunya, **675,** 676–677
climate change and disease, 676–677
control efforts, 676–677
dengue, **678**
heartworm, **356**–357
malaria, **682**–684, 682*f*, 683*f*
Plasmodium and, 346–347, 346*f*
as vectors, 357, 357*f*, 359*t*
yellow fever, **675**
Zika virus, 18, **639,** 640, 640*f*, 641*f*, 642, 834
zoonoses, 408*t*
most probable number (MPN) method, **172,** 173*f*, 807
motility, **78**
axial filaments, 79, 79*f*
eukaryotes, 96, 97*f*
flagella, 77–79, 77*f*, 78*f*, 79*f*
gliding motility, 80
protozoa, overview of, 5
slime molds, 348–349, 350*f*
twitching motility, 80
mouth
bacterial diseases of, 731–734, 731*f*, 732*f*, 733*f*, 734*t*
digestive system function, **729,** 729*f*
moxifloxacin, 573
MPN (most probable number) method, **172,** 173*f*, 807
MPOX (monkeypox), 17, 415*t*, 602*t*, **605,** 702*t*
mRNA vaccines, **257**
MRSA. *See* methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)
mucocutaneous leishmaniasis, 685
Mucor, 5*f*, 329*f*, 335
mucoromycosis, 335, 715
Mucoromycota, 331–332, 331*f*
mucosa, **593,** 593*f*
mucous membranes, **454, 593,** 593*f*
chemical defenses, 455–456
ciliary escalator, 455, 455*f*, 700
gastrointestinal tract, 455
human virome, 366
as physical defense, 398*t*, 451–455, 454*f*, 455*f*
portal of entry, **428**–429, 429*t*
portal of exit, **444**–445, 445*f*
respiratory system, 397, 398*t*, 455, 693, 694
stomach, 456, 744, 745*f*
urinary and reproductive systems, 398*t*, 456
mucus, **455**
amebic dysentery, 757
blood antigens, 536
cholera, 739
cold viruses, 699
cystic fibrosis, 259
droplet transmission, 408, 444
dysentery, 734
histamine, response to, 530
human virome, 366
IgA, 485*t*, 486
lactoferrin, 474
lysozyme, 84
myxobacteria, 307
pertussis, **700**–701, 701*f*
physical defenses, 476*t*
sinusitis, 695
stomach, 456, 744, 745*f*
muktuk, 631
multi-drug resistant (MDR), **706**
multiple myeloma, 514
multiple sclerosis (MS), 473, 512, **540,** 542*t*, **674**
multiple-tube method, 807
multisystem inflammatory syndrome in children (MIS-C), 688
multivalent vaccines, 718
mumps, **746**–747, 747*f*, 754*t*
epidemiology, 421*t*
Paramyxovirus, 371*t*
portal of exit, 444
Rubulavirus, 429*t*
syncytium, **442**
TORCH screen test, 641
vaccine for, 506*t*, 511, 608, 747, 751
viral hemagglutination, 516*f*, **517**
viral meningitis, 625
murein, 80–81, 81*f*
Murray, Robert G. E., 271
muscles, tetanus and, 628–630, 628*f*
mushrooms, 332–333, 334*f*
mussels, 341
mutagens, **224**–226, 225*f*, 226*f*
carcinogens, **227**–228, 229*f*
mutants, identification of, 227, 228*f*
mutation rate, **227**
mutations, genetic. *See also* genetic diseases; genetics
base substitutions, 206
biotechnology tools, 246
frameshift mutations, 206
mutagens, **224**–226, 225*f*, 226*f*
rate of, 227
types of, **223**–224, 223*f*, 224*f*
mutilin, 567*t*
mutualism, 337–338, 338*f*, **399,** 399*f*
myasthenia gravis, **541,** 542*t*
mycelium, 5, **328,** 328*f*
mycetoma, 318
Mycobacterium, 317
acid-fast stain, 66, 67*f*, 68*t*, 83
Actinomycetota, 317
antimycobacterial antibiotics, 564*t*, 566*t*–567*t*, 570, 573
cell wall, 38–39, 39*f*, 83, 191, 432
disinfectants, evaluation of, 190, 190*f*, 191, 199, 199*t*
Koch, identification of, 401
lipid inclusions, 91
pathogenicity, mechanism of, 445*f*
rapidly growing mycobacteria, 141, **701**
saprophytic mycobacteria, 399
Mycobacterium abscessus, 141
Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare, 723*t*
Mycobacterium bovis, 701, 723*t*
Mycobacterium leprae, 66, 162, 317, 401, **632**–634, 633*f*, 649*t*
Mycobacterium lepromatosis, **632**–634, 633*f*
Mycobacterium tuberculosis, 9*f*, 285, 317, 402
acid-fast stain, 66, 67*f*, 68*t*, 83
Actinomycetota, 317
AIDS, common diseases of, 551*t*, 701
antimycobacterial antibiotics, 564*t*, 566*t*–567*t*, 570, 573
biocides, 190, 190*f*, 191, 199, 199*t*
cell wall, 38–39, 39*f*, 83, 191, 432
Clinical Focus, 141
delayed hypersensitivity reactions, 539
fluorochromes, 57, 57*f*
host cell penetration, 432, 433
identification tests, 141, 249
portal of entry, 429*t*
tuberculosis, **701,** 701*f*, 704–707, 704*f*, 705*f*, 707*f*, 723*t*
Mycobacterium ulcerans, 415*t*, 600, 603*t*
mycolactone, 600
mycolic acid, **83,** 317, **432**
mycology, 13, **327**
mycophenolate, 546
Mycoplasma, 316–317, 316*f*
cell wall, atypical, 83
M. genitalium, 778
M. mycoides, 259
plasma (cytoplasmic) membrane, 85
Mycoplasma pneumoniae, 316–317, 316*f*, **708**–709, 709*t*, 710*f*
mycoplasmal pneumonia, **708**–709, 709*t*, 710*f*
Mycoplasmatota, 316–317, 316*f*
mycorrhizae, **327, 795,** 795*f*

mycoses, **333**–335, 335*t*, **610**. *See also* fungi
coccidiomycosis, **719**–721, 720*f*, 723*t*
cutaneous mycoses, 334–335
dermatomycoses, 334–335
histoplasmosis, **719,** 719*f*, 723*t*
mucoromycosis, 335
opportunistic pathogens, **334**–335
skin diseases, 610–611, 610*f*, 611*f*
subcutaneous mycoses, **334**
superficial mycoses, **334**
systemic mycoses, **334**
myeloid stem cell, 458*f*
myeloma, 256
myeloperoxidase, 464
Myxococcales, 307, 307*f*
Myxococcus, 307, 307*f*
Myxococcus xanthus, 158, 307, 307*f*
myxospores, 307, 307*f*

N
N-acetylglucosamine (NAG), 81, 81*f*, 82*f*, 96–97
N-acetylmuramic acid (NAM), 81, 81*f*, 82*f*
N-acetyltalosaminuronic acid, 83
NAATs (nucleic acid amplification tests), **287,** 287*f*
NAD. *See* nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+)
NADP. *See* nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate ($NADP^+$)
Naegleria, 622, 622*f*
Clinical Case, 624*c*, 628*c*, 630*c*, 645*c*, 647*c*, 648*c*
Naegleria fowleri, 629*t*, **645,** 645*f*
naftifine, 575
NAG (N-acetylglucosamine), 81, 81*f*, 82*f*, 96–97
Nägeli, Carl von, 271
naive T cells, 492
nalidixic acid, 567*t*, 573, 588
NAM (N-acetylmuramic acid), 81, 81*f*, 82*f*
nanometer (nm), **52,** 52*t*
nanotechnology, **261,** 261*f*
narrow spectrum of microbial activity, 562–563, 564*t*
nasopharyngeal cancer, **674**
natamycin, 196
National Institutes of Health (NIH), 416
National Microbiome Initiative (NMI), **3**
natural killer (NK) cells, 458*f*, 459*t*, **460,** 476*t*, **496**–497, 496*f*, 497*t*
function of, 451, 452*t*
interferons and, 472–473, 473*f*
natural penicillins, 566, **568**–569, 568*f*, 569*f*
natural selection, **223**
naturally acquired immunity, **498,** 498*f*
naturally acquired passive immunity, **498,** 498*f*
nausea, 734
Necator americanus, 356, 760
necrotizing enterocolitis, 306
necrotizing fasciitis, 599–**600,** 600*f*, 603*t*
Needham, John, 7
negative (indirect) selection, **227**
negative staining, **64,** 68*t*
negative staining, electron microscopy, 60, 60*f*
neglected tropical diseases (NTDs), 616–617
Negri bodies, 638, 638*f*
Neisseria, 235, 302, 302*f*
Neisseria gonorrhoeae, 302, 302*f*, **774**– 775, 774*f*, 775*f*, 778, 778*f*
adhesins, 431
antibiotic resistance, 232
antigenic variation, **432**–433
complement evasions, 472
host cell penetration, 432
motility, 80
ophthalmia neonatorum, **613**
oxidase test, 135
pelvic inflammatory disease, **779**–780, 780*f*
Neisseria meningitidis, 474, **625**–626, 625*f*, 629*t*
Clinical Case, 298*c*, 316*c*, 318*c*, 319*c*, 320*c*
opportunistic pathogens, 400
vaccine for, 505*t*, 507
Nematoda, 354–357, 356*f*, 357*f*, 358*t*
neomycin, 567*t*, 571, 573
neonatal herpes, 640–641, 640*f*, 641*f*, 785
neonatal sepsis, 658
nervous system
acute flaccid myelitis, **648**
African trypanosomiasis, **644,** 644*f*, 649*t*
arboviral encephalitis, 637–639, 639*f*
bacterial meningitis, 625–628, 625*f*, 627*f*
Bell's palsy, **648**
botulism, **630**–632, 631*f*, 649*t*
chronic fatigue syndrome, **648**
Clinical Case, *Naegleria* meningoencephalitis, 624*c*, 628*c*, 630*c*, 645*c*, 647*c*, 648*c*
Clinical Focus, neurological disease, 638
cryptococcosis, 629*t*
Diseases in Focus, arboviral encephalitis, 643*t*
Diseases in Focus, meningitis and encephalitis, 629*t*
Diseases in Focus, neurological symptoms or paralysis, 649*t*
granulomatous amebic encephalitis, 629*t*, **645**
leprosy, **632**–634, 633*f*, 649*t*
listeriosis, **626**–628, 627*f*
microbiome and, 647
poliomyelitis (polio), **634**–635, 634*f*, 649*t*
primary amebic meningoencephalitis, 629*t*, **645,** 645*f*
prions, 365*f*, 390–**391,** 390*f*, 646–648, 646*f*, 648*t*, 649*t*
rabies, **635**–637, 635*f*, 637*f*, 638, 649*t*
structure and function, 623, 623*f*, 624*f*, 625*f*
tetanus, **628**–630, 628*f*, 649*t*
vertical transmission, mother to child, 640–641, 640*f*, 641*f*
viral meningitis, **625**
neural (tuberculoid) form, leprosy, 633–634, 633*f*
neuraminidase (NA) spikes, 578, 716–717, 716*f*
neurocysticercosis, **758**
neurominidase proteins, 369
neurosyphilis, 782
neurotoxins
algae, 444
bacteriophage genes, 440
botulism, 438*t*, **630**–632, 631*f*
dinoflagellates, 342
fungi, 443
mycotoxins, 443
naming of toxins, 435
plasmid-encoded toxins, 231, 440
saxitoxin, **444**
tetanus, 438*t*, **628**–630, 628*f*
neurotransmitters, microbiome and, 647
neutralization, adaptive immunity, **489,** 490*f*
neutralization reactions, **516**–517, 517*f*
neutrons, **25**–26, 25*f*, 26*t*
neutrophils, 450*f*, **458**–459, 458*f*, 459*t*
blood, normal ranges, 453
function of, 451, 452*t*
inflammation, **464**–467, 465*f*, 466*t*
next-generation sequencing, 257–259, 258*f*, 286
NGU (nongonococcal urethritis), **778**–779
niacin (nicotinic acid), 114*t*
Niallia circulans, 287
niclosamide, 579
nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+), **114,** 114*t*
dehydrogenation reactions, 118, 118*f*
fermentation, 128–132, 129*f*, 130*f*, 131*f*, 132*t*, 133*t*
glycolysis, 120*f*, 121, 122*f*
Krebs cycle, 123, 124*f*
respiration and fermentation, 120–121, 120*f*
nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate ($NADP^+$), **114,** 114*t*
nicotinic acid (niacin), 114*t*
Nightingale, Florence, 417, 419
nigrosin, 65
nirmatrelvir, 576*t*, 577, 578
nisin, 196, 821
nitazoxanide, 579
nitrate ion (NO_3^-)
anaerobic respiration, **128**
microbial control and, 200*t*
nitrification, 300, **797**–798, 798*f*
nitrifying archaea, 320
nitrite, 196
nitrite, food safety and, 630
Nitrobacter, 140, 300, 797–798, 798*f*
nitrofurantoin, 567*t*, 571
nitrogen cycle, 109, **797**–799, 798*f*, 799*f*, 800*f*
nitrogen fixation, **155,** 308, 308*f*, **798**–799, 798*f*, 799*f*, 800*f*
Alphaproteobacteria, 298
Azospirillum, 298–299
nitrogen (N)
atomic number and mass, 26*t*
eutrophication, **805**–806
microbial growth and, 155
pseudomonads and, 303
nitrogenase, 799
nitrogenous base, 44–46, 45*f*, 46*f*, 47*t*, 208
nitrosamines, **196**
Nitrosomonas, 140, 300, 797–798, 798*f*
nitrous acid, 224
nitrous oxide, 814–815
NK cells. *See* natural killer (NK) cells
Nocardia, 317
acid-fast stain, 66, 68*t*, 83
N. asteroides, 281*f*, 317
nodular cystic (severe) acne, 604, 604*f*
nomenclature, 4, 4*t*
non-nucleoside inhibitors, **577**
non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs), 555
nonbullous impetigo, 597, 597*f*
noncommunicable disease, **402**
noncompetitive inhibitor, **116,** 116*f*
noncyclic photophosphorylation, **137,** 137*f*
noncytocidal effects, 441
nonenveloped viruses, **367**
nongonococcal urethritis (NGU), **778**–779
nonionizing radiation, **188,** 188*f*
nonsense codons, **215**
nonsense mutations, **224,** 224*f*
nonspecific urethritis (NSU), **778**–779
nonsulfur bacteria, 309–310, 309*t*
nontreponemal serological tests, 783
nontypable strains, 625
nontyphoidal salmonellae, **736**–739, 737*f*
normal flora, 396. *See also* microbiome, human
normal microbiota, **2**–3, 2*f*, **396**. *See also* microbiome, human
Norovirus, 179*f*, 198, 371*t*, **753,** 754*t*
Clinical Case, 180*c*, 196*c*, 198*c*, 201*c*
Clinical Focus, 265, 265*f*
North American blastomycosis, **722,** 722*f*, 723*t*
Norwalk viruses, 753. *See also Norovirus*
nose, microbiota, 398*ft*. *See also* respiratory system
nosocomial infections, **411**–414, 411*f*, 412*t*, 413*f*
notifiable infectious diseases, **419,** 421*t*
NRTIs (nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors), 555
NSU (nonspecific urethritis), **778**–779
NTDs (neglected tropical diseases), 616–617
nuclear envelope, **98**
nuclear membrane, 5
nuclear pore, **98,** 99*f*
nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs), **287,** 776, 778
nucleic acid (DNA, mRNA) vaccines, **507**–508, 507*f*. *See also* vaccines
nucleic acid hybridization, **286**–289, 287*f*, 288*f*, 289*f*, 290*f*
nucleic acids, **44**–46, 45*f*, 46*f*, 47*t*. *See also* deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA); ribonucleic acid (RNA)
antimicrobials, actions of, 567*t*, 573, 575–577, 576*t*
microbial control agents and, 182
multiplication of animal viruses, 375, 375*f*, 379–386, 379*t*, 380*ft*, 381*f*, 383*f*, 384*f*, 385*f*, 386*f*
multiplication of bacteriophages, 375–378, 375*f*, 376*f*, 377*f*, 378*f*, 379*t*
viruses, 6, **364,** 365–366
nucleoid, 76*f*, **90**
nucleolus, 95*f*, **98,** 99*f*
nucleoplasm, 102
nucleoside, **44**–46, 45*f*, 46*f*, 47*t*
nucleoside analog, **224**–226, 225*f*, 226*f*
nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs), 555
nucleosome, 98
nucleotide, **44**–46, 45*f*, 46*f*, 47*t*, 208
biosynthesis, 143, 144*f*
DNA mutations, types of, 223–224, 223*f*, 224*f*
DNA replication, 209–213, 211*f*
mutagens, **224**–226, 225*f*, 226*f*
RNA and protein synthesis, 213–218, 214*f*, 215*f*, 216*f*, 217*f*

Index

nucleotide excision repair, **226,** 226*f*
nucleus, atom, **25**–26, 25*f,* 26*t*
nucleus, cell, **98**
  centrosome, 102
  eukaryotes, 5, 95*f,* 96*t,* 98–99, 99*f*
  prokaryotes, 96*t*
numb (paralytic) rabies, **635**–637, 635*f,* 637*f,* 638
numerical identification, **282,** 283*f*
nutrient agar, **161,** 161*t*
nutrient broth, **161**
nutrients, eutrophication, **805**–806
nutrition
  algae, overview of, 5–6, 339
  bacteria, overview of, 5
  fungi, 5, 330–331
  patterns of disease and, 405
  protozoa, overview of, 5, 344
  selective and differential media, 282, 283*f*
  siderophores, **434,** 434*f*
nystatin, 575, 575*f*

O
O-phenylphenol, 191, 191*f*
O polysaccharide, 82*f,* **83**
oak trees, 343
obesity, human microbiome and, 192
objective lens, microscope, **53,** 53*f*
obligate aerobes, **156**–157, 156*t*
obligate anaerobes, **156**–157, 156*t*
obligate halophiles, **155**
obligatory intracellular parasites, **364**
ocular lens, microscope, **53,** 53*f*
ocular syphilis, 614*t,* 782
oil immersion, microscopy, 55, 55*f*
oil-refining, 140
oil spills, bioremediation, 802–803, 803*f*
Okazaki fragments, **210,** 211*ft,* 212*f*
oligoadenylate synthetase, 472
oligodynamic action, **194,** 194*f*
oligonucleotide, 252
olives, 825
omab, 512
omalizumab, 512
onchocerciasis, 616–617
oncogenes, **386**–387, 442
oncogenic viruses (oncoviruses), 372*t,* **387**
  DNA viruses, 387
  latent infections, **387**
  oncogenic retrovirus, 384
  RNA viruses, 387–388
oncolytic viruses, **388**
one-step growth curve, **375,** 375*f*
oocyst, **344, 347,** 682
  microbial control, 198
  water purity tests, 807
oomycotes, 339, 342, 342*f*
Opa protein, **432,** 775
open reading frames, 209
operator, **219**
operon, **218**–220, 220*f,* 221*f*
operon model of gene expression, 218–220, 220*f,* 221*f*
ophthalmia neonatorum, **613,** 614*t,* **775**
ophthalmic cysticercosis, **758,** 759*f*
opisthotonos, 628–630, 628*f*
opportunistic pathogens, **334**–335, **400**
  Acinetobacter, 303
  antibiotic use and, 562
  bacterial meningitis, 625
  candidiasis, 611, 786–788, 787*f,* 787*t*
  Clinical Case, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa,* 594*c,* 602*c,* 610*c,* 612*c,* 615*c*
  commensalism, 457
  Cytomegalovirus (CMV), **674**–675
  epiglottitis, 695
  healthcare-associated infections (HAIs), **411**–414, 411*f,* 412*t,* 413*f*
  HIV/AIDS and, 551, 551*t,* 721–722, 721*f*
  listeriosis, **626**–628, 627*f*
  mycobiome, 337
  Pseudomonas, 600
  secondary infection, 405
opsonization, **462,** 470, 471*f,* 489, 490*f*
optical density (OD), 173, 174*f*
optimum growth temperature, **152,** 152*f*
oral candidiasis, **786**–788, 787*f,* 787*t*
oral polio vaccine (OPV), 635
oral rehydration therapy, 734, 737, 743
oral vaccines, 508, 509
orchitis, 747
order, **276,** 277*f*
organ transplants, 542–546, 543*ft,* 545*f*
organelles, 73, 96*t,* **98**
organic acids, microbial control and, 200*t*
organic cofactors, 108
organic compounds, **31**
  carbohydrates, 35–36, 35*f*
  lipids, 36–40, 38*f,* 39*f*
  nucleic acids, 44–46, 45*f,* 46*f,* 47*t*
  proteins, 40–44, 40*f,* 41*t,* 42*f,* 43*f*
  steroids, 39–40, 39*f*
  structure and chemistry of, 34–35, 34*t*
organic growth factors, **157**
organotrophs, 138
organs, tissue engineering of, **544**
ornithosis, 408*t,* 709*t,* **710**–711
orphan virus, 382
ortho-phthalaldehyde (OPA), 196
Orthobunyavirus CE, 638, 643*t*
Orthohantavirus, 679, 680*t*
Orthohepadnavirus (HBV), 749, 750*t*
Orthomyxoviridae, 371*t,* 384, 386*f*
Orthopoxvirus, 17, 368*f,* 370*t,* 504, 604
oseltamivir, 578
osmosis, **88**–89, 89*f,* 97
osmotic lysis, **84,** 88–89
osmotic pressure, **88**–89, 89*f*
  microbial control and, 187, 189*t*
  microbial growth and, 154–155, 154*f*
otitis externa, **600,** 603*t*
otitis media, **698,** 698*f,* 699*t*
outer membrane, 81, 82*f*
ovaries, 769, 770*f,* 779–780, 780*f*
ovulation, 769, 770*f*
ovum, 769, 770*f*
oxacillin, 566*t*
oxazolidinones, 567*t,* **573,** 588
oxidase test, 135
oxidation, **117**–118, 118*f*
oxidation ditch, 813
oxidation ponds, **813**
oxidation-reduction reaction, **117**–118, 118*f*
oxidative burst, 464
oxidative phosphorylation, **119,** **126**–127, 126*f,* 127*f*
oxidoreductase, 113, 113*t*
oxygen (O)
  algal blooms, **806**
  atomic number and mass, 26*t*
  biochemical oxygen demand (BOD), 810
  isotopes, 25
  microbial growth and, 155–157, 156*t*
oxygenic, **139,** 139*f,* 140*t*
oxyrase, 162
oxytetracycline, 567*t,* 572, 572*f*
ozone, 198
  water treatment, 808, 808*f*

P
P (peptide) site, **215,** 216*f*
PABA (para-aminobenzoic acid), 116, **565**
Pacific Coast tick fever, 672
palladium, 803
PAMPs (pathogen-associated molecular patterns), **451,** 462, 463*f*
pancreas, digestive system function, **729,** 729*f*
pandemic disease, 17–18, 508. *See also* Coronavirus disease-2019 (COVID-19)
  cholera, 740
  defined, **403**
  influenza, 369, 625, 717–718
  plague, 666–667, 667*f*
  species barrier and, 369
  tuberculosis, 706–707, 707*f*
Paneth cells, 730
pantothenic acid, 114*t*
papillomas, **604**
Papillomavirus, 370*t,* 442*t,* 603*t*
Papovaviricetes, 380*t,* 381*f,* 382
papules, **594,** 594*f*
para-aminobenzoic acid (PABA), 116, **565,** 574, 574*f*
Parabasalids, 348*t*
Paragonimus, 351–352, 352*f*
paralytic (dumb or numb) rabies, **635**–637, 635*f,* 637*f,* 638
paralytic shellfish poisoning (PSP), 341, 342, 348*t,* 444
Paramecium, 57*f,* 58*f,* 60*f,* 62*t,* 343–344, 344*f,* 347*f*
Paramyxoviridae, 371*t,* 384, 386*f*
parasites, 5, 139*f,* **140**
  Apicomplexa, **346**–347, 346*f*
  arthropod vectors, 357, 357*f,* 359*t*
  ciliates, **347**–348, 347*f*
  coevolution, 427
  disease rates, 325
  emerging infections diseases, 416
  eosinophils and, 459
  Epstein-Barr virus, 673, 673*f*
  flatworms, Platyhelminthes, **351**–354, 351*f,* 352*f,* 354*f,* 355*f*
  Giardia intestinalis, 344, 345*f*
  helminthic disease, digestive system, 755*t,* 758–762, 758*f,* 759*f,* 760*f,* 761*f,* 762*f*
  helminths, overview of, 6, **350**–351, 358*t*
  hemoflagellates, **344**
  hookworm, 759*f,* **760,** 760*f*
  malaria, **682**–684, 682*f,* 683*f*
  Microsporidia, **332,** 332*f*
  natural killer (NK) cells, **496**–497, 496*f,* 497*t*
  obligatory intracellular parasites, **364**
  parasitology, 13
  Q fever, **711**–712, 711*f*
  Rickettsia, 299, 299*f*
  skin conditions, 603*t,* 611–613, 612*f*
  typhus, **671**
  viruses as, 6
  water molds, 342
parasitism, 399*f,* **400**
parasitology, 13
parenchyma, 467
parenteral route of entry, **428**–429, 429*t*
paresis, 782
Parkinson's disease, 632, 647
parotid glands, 746–747, 747*f*
Parvoviridae, 370*t*
parvovirus B19, 379
pascalization, 824
passive carriers, **407**
passive immunity, **498,** 498*f*
passive (indirect) agglutination tests, **516,** 516*f*
passive processes, membrane transport, 87–89, 87*f,* 88*f,* 89*f*
Pasteur, Louis, 8–10, 8*f,* 9*f,* 11, 185, 504
Pasteurella multocida, 281*f,* 664
Pasteurellales, 306
pasteurization, 9*f,* **10, 185,** 189*t*
Pasturella, 306
pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs), **451,** 462, 463*f*
pathogenesis, **396**
pathogenic, **2**
pathogenicity, mechanisms of, 427, **428**
  adherence, **430**–431, 430*f*
  algae, 444
  Clinical Case, 428*c,* 435*c,* 440*c,* 443*c,* 445*c*
  Foundation Figure, 445*f*
  Foundation Figure, toxins, 436*f*
  fungi, 443
  helminths, 444
  host defense penetration methods, 431–433, 433*f*
  ID_{50} and LD_{50}, microbe numbers, **429**–**430**
  plasmids and lysogeny, 440
  portals of entry, **428**–429, 429*t*
  portals of exit, **444**–445, 445*f*
  protozoa, 443–444
  siderophores, **434,** 434*f*
  toxins, endotoxins, **437**–439, 438*f,* 439*t*
  toxins, exotoxins, **435**–437, 436*f,* 438*t*
  toxins, overview, **434**–435, 436*f*
  viral host defense evasion, 440–441
  viruses, cytopathic effects (CPE), **441**–442, 441*f,* 442*ft*
pathogens, **395**. *See also* disease principles; specific pathogen types and names
  arthropod vectors, **357,** 357*f,* 359*t*
  emerging infectious diseases (EIDs), **414**–416, 415*t*
  eukaryotic pathogens, overview, 326*f*
  human disease, overview of, 16–19, 17*f*
  opportunistic pathogens, **400**
pathology, **396**
paucibacillary leprosy, 633–634, 633*f*
Paxlovid (ritonavir), 576*t,* 577, 578
PCR. *See* polymerase chain reaction (PCR)
PCR microarrays, 260–261, 261*f*
pediculosis, 603*t,* **612**–613, 612*f*
Pediculus humanus capitus, 603*t*
Pelagibacter, 288–289, 298, 298*f*
  P. ubique, 805
pellicle, 97
pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), 775, **779**–780, 780*f,* 789*t*
pemphigus neonatorum, 597, 597*f*
penetration, bacteriophage, 375, 376*f*

penicillin, 563, 564*f*, **566,** 566*t*, 568–569, 568*f*, 569*f*
  allergy to, 541
  discovery of, 11–12, 11*f*
  mechanism of action, 81, 81*f*, 85, 88–89
  resistance to, 18, 207
  site-directed mutagenesis, **246**
penicillin G, 572
penicillinases, 568
Penicillium, 561, 820*t*
  cheese production, 825
  opportunistic infections, 335
  P. chrysogenum, 4*t*, 11, 336, 561
  spores, 329, 330*f*
penis, 769, 770*f*. *See also* sexually transmitted infections (STIs)
pentamidine, 577
Pentatrichomonas hominis, 94
pentose phosphate pathway, **121,** 468*c*
pentose sugars, 208
pentoses, 36
PEP (phosphoenolpyruvic acid), 90, 121, 122*f*
PEP (postexposure prophylaxis), **554, 636**
peptic ulcer disease, **744,** 745*f*, 748*t*
peptidases, 133, 133*f*, 134*f*
peptide, 42, 42*f*
peptide bonds, **42,** 42*f*
peptide cross-bridge, 81, 81*f*
peptide (P) site, **215,** 216*f*
peptidoglycan, **80**–81, 81*f*, 563, 564*f*
  acid-fast cell walls, 83
  atypical cell walls, 83
  bacterial cell walls, 4–5, 5*f*
  eukaryote cell wall, 97
  Gram stain, 65–66, 65*f*, 83
  lysozyme, 84
peptones, 161
peracetic acid, 197–198
peramivir, 578
percentage of transmission, 173, 174*f*
perforin, **460, 495**
Peribunyaviridae, 371*t*
pericarditis, **659,** 659*f*, 662*t*
pericentriolar material, 95*f*, 102
Peridinium, 341*f*
period of convalescence, **406,** 406*f*
period of decline, **406,** 406*f*
period of illness, **406,** 406*f*
periodontal disease, **733,** 733*f*, 734*t*
periodontal pockets, 733, 733*f*
periodontitis, **733,** 733*f*
peripheral nervous system (PNS), **623,** 623*f*, 624*f*. *See also* nervous system
peripheral proteins, 85, 86*f*
periplasm, 81, 82*f*
peristalsis, **455**
peritoneal macrophages, 462
peritonitis, 658
peritrichous, **77,** 77*f*
permeases, 87–88, 88*f*
peroxidase, **157**
peroxide anion, **157**
peroxisomes, 95*f*, **101**
peroxyacetic acid, 197–198
peroxygens, **197**–198, 200*t*
persistent viral infection, **388,** 388*f*, 389*t*
persister cells, **581**
person-to-person transmission, 407, 409*f*
perspiration, **456,** 593, 593*f*
pertussis, 453*f*, 503, 503*f*, **700**–701, 701*f*, 723*t*
  Clinical Case, 505*c*, 508*c*, 510*c*, 514*c*, 519*c*, 524*c*
  vaccine for, 505*t*, 509
pertussis toxin, 700
pest control, fungi and, 336
pesticides, 802
Petroff-Hausser cell counter, 172, 174*f*
petroleum, 343
Peyer's patches, 461, 461*f*, **491,** 491*f*
Pfiesteria, 348*t*, 444
PFU (plaque-forming units), 372*f*, **373**
pH
  disinfection and, 189–190
  enzymes, effect on, 115, 115*f*
  fermentation test, 134–135, 134*f*, 135*f*
  food safety and spoilage, 196
  microbial growth and, 154
  pH scale, 32–33, 33*f*
phage, **236,** 238*f*, **364**. *See also* viruses
  culture techniques, 372–373, 372*f*
  human virome, 366
  lysogenic conversion, 440
  microscopy, 54*f*
  morphology, **368,** 368*f*
  multiplication of, 375–378, 375*f*, 376*f*, 377*f*, 378*f*, 379*t*
  phage typing, **284**–285, 285*f*
  size of, 365, 365*f*
phage conversion, **378,** 378*f*
phage lysozyme, **375,** 376*f*
phage therapy, 377, **588**
phage typing, **284**–285, 285*f*, 735
phagocytes, **462**–464, 462*f*, 463*f*, 476*t*
  antigen-antibody interactions, 489, 490*f*
  biofilms and, 433
  cell death and, 495
  chemotaxis, 466–467
  Clinical Case, *B. anthracis*, 25*c*, 42*c*, 44*c*, 46*c*
  Clostridium perfringens, 436
  congenital immunodeficiency, 548
  endocarditis, 658
  fever response, 467
  host cell penetration, 433
  inflammation, 465, 465*f*, 466–467, 466*t*, 470, 471*f*, 472*f*
  leukocidins, 436
  Listeria monocytogenes, 436, 627, 627*f*
  M. tuberculosis, 432
  macrophages, 492
  microbe evasion of, 433, 436, 472
  opsonization, 470, 471*f*
  pore-forming toxins, 436
  Pseudomonadota (Proteobacteria), 298
  as second-line immune defense, 451
  tumor necrosis factor, 438*f*, 439
phagocytosis, 450*f*, 462, **462**–464, 462*f*, 463*f*
  agranulocytosis, **538**
  bacterial capsules and, 76*f*, **77**
  bacterial cell wall and, 81, 82*f*
  eukaryotes, 97
  toxic forms of oxygen and, 157
phagolysosome, 463*f*, **464**
phagosome, 463*f*, **464**
phalloidin, **443**
pharmaceuticals. *See* drugs
pharyngeal gonorrhea, **775**
pharyngitis, **695**
pharynx, digestive system, **729,** 729*f*
phase-contrast microscopy, **55**–56, 56*f*, 62*t*
phenol, **190**–191, 191*f*, 199*t*, 200*t*
phenolics, **191,** 191*f*, 199*t*, 200*t*
phenotype, **209**
phenylalanine (Phe, F), 41*t*, 215*f*
phosphatase test, 185
phosphate functional group, 34–35, 34*t*, 208
phosphate salts, buffers and, 154
phosphoenolpyruvic acid (PEP), 90, 121, 122*f*
2-phosphoglyceric acid, 121, 122*f*
3-phosphoglyceric acid, 121, 122*f*
phospholipids, 38–39, 39*f*
  cell wall, 81, 82*f*
  microbial nutrient needs, 155
  plasma (cytoplasmic) membrane, 85, 86*f*
phosphoproteins, structure and function, 44
phosphorus cycle, **801**
phosphorus (P)
  atomic number and mass, 26*t*
  eutrophication, **805**–806
  microbial growth and, 155
phosphorylation, **118**
photoautotrophs, **139,** 139*f*, 140*t*, 796, 797*f*. *See also* algae
  carbon sources, 155
  Euglenozoa, **344,** 345*f*
Photoblepharon palpebratus, 805*f*
photoheterotrophs, 139*f*, **140,** 140*t*
photolyase, 211*t*, **226**
photophosphorylation, **119, 136**–137, 136*f*, 137*f*
photosynthesis, 119, **135**–137, 136*f*, 137*f*
  algae, 5–6, 338, 339, 339*t*, 343
  carboxysomes, 92
  Chlorobi and Chloroflexi, 309–310, 309*t*
  cyanobacteria, 308, 308*f*
  freshwater microbiota, 804
  microbes role in, 2
  nitrogen fixation, 155
  phototrophs, 139–140, 139*f*, 140*t*
  seawater microbiota, 804–805
photosystems, **136**–137, 136*f*, 137*f*
phototaxis, **78**
phototrophs, **138,** 139–140, 139*f*, 140*t*
phycobiliproteins, 339*t*
phylogenetic relationships, 271–275, 272*f*, 273*t*, 274*f*, 275*f*
phylogenetic tree, 274–275, 275*f*
phylogeny, **271**
phylum, **276,** 277*f*
Physarum, 350*f*
Phytophthora infestans, 343
Phytophthora ramorum, 343
phytoplankton, **804,** 806
pia mater, 623, 624*f*
Pichia, 337
pickles, 825
Picornaviridae, 370*t*, 380*t*
PID (pelvic inflammatory disease), 775, **779**–780, 780*f*, 789*t*
pigs
  botulism, 630
  Clinical Focus, influenza species barrier, 369
  heart valve transplantation, 544
  influenza virus, 18, 369, 718
  tapeworm, 354, 758*f*
  trichinellosis, **761**–762, 762*f*
  whipworm, Crohn's disease and, 533, 533*f*
pili, 79–**80,** 80*f*
pilin, 79–80, 80*f*
pilot whales, 281
pimple-like conditions, 603*t*
pine oil, 191–192
pinkeye, **613**
pinocytosis, 97
pinworms, **760**
placebo, 419
placenta. *See also* fetus
  vertical transmission, mother to child, 640–641, 640*f*, 641*f*
plague, 305–306, 408*t*, 410*t*, **665**–667, 667*f*, 668*t*
  bioterrorism, overview of, 702–703
Planctomycetes, 310, 312*f*
Planctomycetota, 297*t*
plankton, **341**–342, 341*f*
Plantae, Kingdom of, 277
plants. *See also* biogeochemical cycles
  biotechnology applications, 261–263, 262*f*, 263*t*
  composting, **803**
  gene products, making of, 255
  nitrogen cycle, 109
  photosynthesis, 135–137, 136*f*, 137*f*
  tobacco mosaic disease, 363, 364
  vaccine production and, 508
  viruses and viroids, 388–390, 389*t*, 390*f*
plants cells, 94–96, 95*f*, 96*t*, 100, 101, 102*f*. *See also* eukaryotes
plaque-forming units (PFU), 372*f*, **373**
plaque method, culture, 372–373, 372*f*
plaques, 285, **372**–373, 372*f*
plasma cells, 452*t*, **458**–460, 458*f*, 459*t*
plasma (cytoplasmic) membrane, **85**–87, 86*f*, 87*f*
  antifungal drugs, 576*t*
  antimicrobial agents and, 87, 182, 564, 565*f*, 567*t*, 573
  bacteria, 327*t*
  eukaryotes, 95*f*, 96*t*, 97
  fungi, 327*t*
  lipids, functions of, 36–39, 38*f*, 39*f*
  membrane-disrupting toxins, **435**–436
  movement across, 87–90, 87*f*, 88*f*, 89*f*, 97
  prokaryotes, 76*f*, 96*t*
  proteins, 40
  steroids, 39–40, 39*f*
  sterols, 83
  virus release methods, 384, 386, 386*f*
plasma sterilization, **197,** 200*t*
plasma viral load, **553**
plasmid, **90,** 230–232, 232*f*. *See also* biotechnology
  Agrobacterium tumefaciens, 300
  antibiotic resistance and, 205, 205*f*
  blue-white screening, 253–254, 253*f*
  conjugative plasmid, 235–236, 236*f*, 237*f*
  pathogenicity and, 440
  prokaryotes, 76*f*
  Ti plasmid, **261**–263, 262*f*
plasmid vectors, 247–248, 248*f*
plasmodial slime molds, **348**–349, 350*f*
Plasmodium, 346–347, 346*f*, **348**–349, 350*f*, 579, 641. *See also* malaria
plasmogamy, **330**
plasmolysis, **154**–155, 154*f*
plasmolyze, 89
plastic, degradation of, 801–802, 831
plate counts, **170,** 170*f*
platelets, **458,** 458*f*, 459*t*
Platyhelminths, 351–354, 351*f*, 352*f*, 354*f*, 355*f*, 358*t*. *See also* helminths
pleated sheets, 42, 43*f*
pleomorphic, **75**
pleura, 694
pleuromutilins, 567*t*, **573**
pluripotent stem cells, 544

PMNs (polymorphonuclear leukocytes), 458–459, 458*f*, 459*t*
pneumococcal meningitis, 626, 629*t*
pneumococcal pneumonia, **708,** 708*f*, 709*t*
Pneumocystis
  morphology, 279
  opportunistic pathogens, **334**–335, 335*t*, 400, 405
Pneumocystis jirovecii, 279, 400, 415*t*, 551*t*, 577, 721–722, 721*f*, 723*t*
Pneumocystis pneumonia (PCP), 279, 400, 405, 549, 551*t*, 577, **721**–722, 721*f*, 723*t*
pneumonia, **700**. *See also Pneumocystis* pneumonia (PCP); respiratory system
  bacterial infections, 707–713, 708*f*, 709*t*, 710*f*, 711*f*
  blastomycosis, 722, 722*f*
  Chlamydia trachomatis, 778
  chlamydial pneumonia, **711**
  Chlamydiophila, 310
  Clinical Case, *B. anthrax*, 25*c*, 42*c*, 44*c*, 46*c*
  Cytomegalovirus (CMV), **674**–675
  droplet transmission, 409
  emerging infectious disease, 415*t*
  Haemophilus influenzae, 5*f*, 306, 625, 708
  Hantavirus, 680*t*
  healthcare-associated infections, 413
  Klebsiella, 305
  Legionella, 303, 709*t*, **710,** 713
  measles and, 608
  medications for, 572, 573, 577
  melioidosis, 712
  Mycoplasma pneumoniae, 317, 708–709, 710*f*
  opportunistic infections, **400,** 412
  Pasteurella, 306, 664, 666*t*
  polysaccharide capsules, 432
  portal of entry, 429, 429*t*
  portal of exit, 444
  predisposing factors, **405**
  psittacosis (ornithosis), **710**–711
  Q fever, **711**–712
  respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), 715
  Staphylococcus aureus, 18
  Streptococcus pneumoniae, 77, 316, 432, 626, 698, 708
  summary table, 709*t*
  tularemia, 660, 666*t*
  vaccine for, 5, 505, 505*t*, 507, 708
  ventilator-associated, 198
  viral pneumonia, **713**–714
  virulence, Frederick Griffith experiment, 233–234, 234*f*
pneumonic plague, **666**
point mutation, 223–224, 223*f*, 224*f*
polar flagella, **77**–78, 77*f*
polar heads, plasma membrane, 85, 86*f*
polar molecule, **31**–32, 32*f*
poliomyelitis (polio), **634**–635, 634*f*
poliovirus, 365*f*, 370*t*, 442*t*, 634
  vaccine for, 505, 506*t*, 509, 522–523
pollution
  bioremediation, 15, 802–803
  degradation of synthetic chemicals, 801–802
  lichens and, 338
  water pollution, 805–806, 806*f*
poly-β-hydroxybutyric acid, 91
polyenes, **575,** 575*f*, 576*t*
polygalacturonase, 263
polyhedral viruses, 368
polylactide (PLA), 801–802
polymerase chain reaction (PCR), **248**–249, 249*f*, 322
  forensic uses of, 243, 259–261
  HLA typing, 542, 543*t*
  nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs), **287**
  PCR microarrays, 260–261, 261*f*
  PCR test, 243
polymers, **35**
polymicrobial infection, 779
polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMNs), 458–459, 458*f*, 459*t*
polymorphs, 458, 458*f*, 459*t*
polymyxin B, 573
polymyxin E, 573
polymyxins, 87, 567*t*
Polyomaviridae, 387
polypeptide, 42, 42*f*, **81,** 81*f*
polypeptide antibiotics, 566*t*, 570
polysaccharide granules, **91**
polysaccharide vaccines, **507**. *See also* vaccines
polysaccharides, **36,** 83
Pontiac fever, **710**
pore-forming toxins, 436
Porphyromonas, 733, 734*t*
portals of entry, **428**–429, 429*t*
portals of exit, **444**–445, 445*f*
posaconazole, 575
positive (direct) selection, **227**
positive staining, electron microscopy, 60, 60*f*
post-polio syndrome, 634
postexposure prophylaxis (PEP), **554, 636**
postherpetic neuralgia, 607
potassium clavulanate (clavulanic acid), 569
potassium (K), 26*t*
potassium sorbate, 195–196
potato blight, 343
pour plate method, **171,** 171*f*
povidone-iodine, 192
Powassan virus (POWV), 17, **639,** 643*t*
Poxiviridae, 370*t*, 380*t*, 382
praziquantel, 579
prebiotics, 457
precipitation reactions, **514,** 514*f*
precipitin test, **514,** 514*f*
predisposing factors, **405**–406, 406*f*
preemergent flagellum, 341
preexposure prophylaxis (PrEP), **554**
pregnancy
  acne medications, 604
  antibiotics, use of, 572, 585
  C. perfringens, gas gangrene, 664
  chickenpox (varicella), **605**
  Clinical Case, group B *Streptococcus*, 298*c*, 316*c*, 318*c*, 319*c*, 320*c*
  congenital syphilis, **782**
  congenital transmission, **407**–408
  cytomegalovirus, 662*t*, **674**–675
  ectopic pregnancy, 780
  group B streptococci (GBS), **658**
  hepatitis E, 750*t*, 752
  immune system, fetal tissue protection, 544
  Listeria monocytogenes, 431, 627
  malaria, 683–684
  microbiome and immunity, 457
  neonatal herpes, 785
  puerperal sepsis, 417, 658
  Rh factor, **536**–537, 537*f*
  rubella, 506*t*, **608**–609
  tests for, 512, 520, 521*f*
  TORCH screen tests, 641
  toxoplasmosis, 666*t*, **681**–682, 681*f*
  urinary tract infections, 770
  vertical transmission, mother to child, 640–641
  Zika virus, 18, **639,** 640, 640*f*, 641*f*, 642
PrEP (preexposure prophylaxis), **554**
preservatives, food, 735, 822–824, 823*ft*, 824*f*
pressure
  autoclave and, 183–184, 184*ft*, 185*f*, 189*t*
  microbial control, 187, 189*t*
  osmotic pressure, **88**–89, 89*f*, 154–155, 154*f*, 187, 189*t*
  temperature and, 184*t*
prevalence of disease, **402**
Prevotella, 37, 310, 321, 647, 734*t*
Prevotella intermedia, 733
primary amebic meningoencephalitis, 629*t*, **645,** 645*f*
primary atypical pneumonia, 709
primary cell lines, **374**
primary immunodeficiencies, **548,** 548*ft*
primary infection, **404**–405
primary metabolite, **828**
primary producers, **801**
primary response, adaptive immunity, 481
primary sewage treatment, **809**–810, 809*f*
primary stain, **65**–66, 65*f*
primary structure, protein, 42, 43*f*
primase, 211*t*, 212*f*
primers, polymerase chain reaction, 248–249, 249*f*
prions, 365*f*, 390–**391,** 390*f*, 646–648, 646*f*, 648*t*, 649*t*
PRISH, **464,** 465*f*, 466*t*
privileged site, **543**–544
privileged tissue, **544**
probiotics, 132, **457,** 509
procaine penicillin, 568
Prochlorococcus, 308*f*, 309, 804
prodromal period, **406,** 406*f*
products, metabolic reactions, 108
profundal zone, **804**
progesterone, industrial production, 831
proglottids, **352**–353, 354*f*
programmed cell death (apoptosis), 442, 460, **495,** 496*f*
progressive (lepromatous) form, leprosy, 632–634, 633*f*. *See also* leprosy
prokaryotes, **4**–5, **73,** 76*f*. *See also* Archaea domain; Bacteria domain
  acidic environments, 33
  aerobic respiration, 129*f*, 133*t*
  antibiotics, action of, 83–85, **562**–565, 563*f*, 564*ft*, 565*f*, 571, 575
  archaella, **78**–79
  axial filaments (endoflagella), **79,** 79*f*
  cell size, shape, and arrangement, 73–75, 74*f*, 75*f*
  cell wall, 76*f*, 80–85, 81*f*, 82*f*, 84*t*
  cell wall, atypical, 83
  chemiosmosis, 126–127, 126*f*, 127*f*
  chromosomes, 209*f*
  classification of, 271–275, 272*f*, 273*t*, 274*f*, **276,** 279, 296, 297, 297*t*
  cytoplasm, 90
  cytoskeleton, **90**
  electron transport chain, **123**–128, 124*f*, 125*f*, 126*f*, 127*f*, 128*t*
  endospores, **92**–94, 93*f*
  fimbriae and pili, 79–**80,** 80*f*
  flagella, **77**–78, 78*f*
  genetic change, plasmids and transposons, 230–233, 232*f*, 233*f*
  genome projects, 257, 275
  glycocalyx (capsule), **75,** 76*f*, **77**
  Gram stain mechanism, 83, 84*t*
  human microbiome, 67
  inclusions, **91**–92, 92*f*
  metabolic pathways, 142
  microbial diversity, 320–322, 321*f*
  nucleoid, 76*f*, 90
  oxidative phosphorylation, **119**
  photosynthesis, 139, 140*t*
  plasma membrane, movement across, 87–90, 87*f*, 88*f*, 89*f*
  plasma membrane, structure and function, 85–87, 86*f*, 87*f*
  ribosomes, 90–91, 91*f*
  riboswitch, **221**–222, 222*f*
  transcription, **213**–214, 214*f*
  translation, **215**–218, 215*f*, 216*f*, 217*f*
  use of term, 271
prokaryotic species, **276,** 278*f*
proline (Pro, P), 41*t*, 215*f*
promastigote, 685
promoter, **214,** 214*f*
Prontosil Red, 561
prophage, **377,** 377*f*, 440
prophylactic vaccine, 547
Propionibacterium, 317
  cardiovascular disease and, 657
  cheese production, 825
  fermentation end products, 130*f*
  fermentation test, 134
  microbiome and nervous system, 647
Propionibacterium acnes, 33, 594, 602, 603*t*
propionic acid, fermentation, 132*t*
proprionate, 196
Proprionibacterium, 820*t*, 830
prospective studies, 418–419
prostaglandins, 465*f*, **466,** 466*t*, **530**
  endotoxin and, 438*f*
  fever response, **467**–468
prosthecae, **298**
protease inhibitors, 556, **578**
proteases, 133, 133*f*, 134*f*, 830
protein, **40**
  alcohol, microbial control and, 193, 193*t*
  antimicrobial drugs, action of, 563–564, 565*f*, 567*t*, 571–573, 571*f*, 572*f*
  biosynthesis, 143, 143*f*
  catabolism of, 133, 133*f*, 134*f*
  conserved protein, 718
  denaturation, 114, 115*f*
  eukaryote protein synthesis, 98, 273*t*
  facilitated diffusion and, **87**–88, 88*f*
  gene expression, regulation of, 218–222, 220*f*, 221*f*, 222*f*
  microbial control agents and, 182
  microbial nutrient needs, 155
  nitrogen cycle, **797**–799, 798*f*, 799*f*, 800*f*
  phenotype and, **209**
  plasma (cytoplasmic) membrane, 85, 86*f*
  plasma (cytoplasmic) membrane transport, 89–90
  prions, 365*f*, 390–**391,** 390*f*, 646–648, 646*f*, 648*t*, 649*t*
  prokaryotic protein synthesis, 273*t*
  proteomics, **259**
  ribosomes, structure and function, 90–91, 91*f*
  RNA and protein synthesis, 213–218, 214*f*, 215*f*, 216*f*, 217*f*, 218*f*
  structure and functions, 40–44, 40*f*, 41*t*, 42*f*, 43*f*
protein kinase, 472

Proteobacteria. *See* Pseudomonadota
proteomics, **259**
Proteus, 78, 79*f*, 84, 305, 305*f*, 439
Protista, 276
protists
  classification, 6, 271, 272*f*, 274, 276
  microsporidia, **332,** 332*f*
  use of term, 276
proto-oncogenes, **386**–387
proton motive force, 126–127, 126*f*, 127*f*
proton pumps, 126–127, 126*f*, 127*f*
protons, **25**–26, 25*f*, 26*t*
  chemiosmosis, **126**–127, 126*f*, 127*f*
  oxidation-reduction reactions, 117–118, 118*f*
protoplast, **84, 250,** 250*f*
protoplast fusion, **250,** 250*f*
protozoa, **5**. *See also* classification of microbes
  African trypanosomiasis, 410*t*, 444, 616–617, **644,** 644*f*, 649*t*
  amebae, **345**–346, 345*f*, 348*t*
  amebic meningoencephalitis, 629*t*, **645,** 645*f*
  antiprotozoan drugs, 576*t*, 578–579
  Apicomplexa, **346**–347, 346*f*, 348*t*
  babesiosis, **685**–686
  Chagas' disease, **679**–681, 681*f*
  characteristics of, 343–348, 348*t*
  ciliates, **347**–348, 347*f*
  cryptosporidiosis, 755*t*, **756**–757, 756*f*
  cyclosporiasis, 755*t*, **757,** 757*f*
  emerging infectious diseases (EIDs), **414**–416, 415*t*
  Euglenozoa, 344, 348*t*
  eye diseases, 614*t*
  feeding grooves, 344
  flagella, 96, 97*f*
  giardiasis, 755*t*, **756,** 756*f*, 757
  granulomatous amebic encephalitis, 629*t*, **645**
  infection rates, 325
  Leishmaniasis, **685,** 685*f*
  life cycle, 343–344, 343*f*
  malaria, **682**–684, 682*f*, 683*f* (*See also* malaria)
  meningitis and encephalitis, 629*t*
  metachromatic granules, 91
  microbial control, 198
  microbiota and, 94
  neglected tropical diseases (NTDs), 616–617
  pathogenic eukaryotes, 326*f*
  pathogenicity mechanisms, 443–444
  pathogens, summary table, 348*t*
  pellicle, 97
  rumen protozoa, 795
  slime molds, **348**–349, 349*f*, 350*f*
  toxoplasmosis, **681**–682, 681*f*
  trichomoniasis, **788,** 788*f*, 789*t*
  water purity tests, 807
  zoonoses, 408*t*
provirus, **384,** 385*f*, 550
Prusiner, Stanley, 390
Pseudo-nitzschia, 444
pseudohypha, 328
Pseudomonadales, 302–303, 302*f*
Pseudomonadota, 297*t*, **298**
  alphaproteobacteria, 298–301, 299*f*, 300*f*
  betaproteobacteria, 301–302, 301*f*, 302*f*
  deltaproteobacteria, 306–307, 307*f*
  gammaproteobacteria, 302–306, 302*f*, 304*f*, 305*f*
Pseudomonas, 302–303, 302*f*, 830
  anaerobic respiration, **128**
  Clinical Case, *P. aeruginosa*, 561*c*, 571*c*, 581*c*, 584*c*, 588*c*, 594*c*, 602*c*, 610*c*, 612*c*, 615*c*
  Clinical Case, *P. fluorescens*, 153*c*, 165*c*, 173*c*, 175*c*
  Entner-Doudoroff pathway, 121
  microbial control, 198
  oxidase test, 135
  plasmids and energy metabolism, 231
  quaternary ammonium compounds, 195, 195*f*
Pseudomonas aeruginosa, 80, 302, 320, 560*f*, 582, 592*f*
  Clinical Case, 561*c*, 571*c*, 581*c*, 584*c*, 588*c*, 594*c*, 602*c*, 610*c*, 612*c*, 615*c*
  disinfectants and sanitizers, use of, 192
  healthcare-associated infections (HAIs), **411**–414, 411*f*, 412*t*, 413*f*
  sepsis, 658
  skin conditions, 603*t*
Pseudomonas carboxydohydrogena, 140
Pseudomonas dermatitis, **600**
Pseudomonas fluorescens, 153*c*, 165*c*, 173*c*, 175*c*, 262–263
Pseudomonas putida, 831
Pseudomonas stutzeri, 815
pseudomurein, 83
pseudopods, 5, 5*f*, 97, **345,** 345*f*, 463*f*, **464**
psittacosis, 408*t*, 702–703, 709*t*, **710**–711
psoriasis, **542,** 542*t*
psoriatic arthritis, **542,** 542*t*
psychrophiles, **152,** 152*f*
psychrotrophs, **152**–153, 152*f*, 186–187, 189*t*
puerperal sepsis (fever), 417, **658,** 662*t*
pulmonary alveoli, 694
pulmonary hemorrhagic syndrome, 773
pulmonary (inhalational) anthrax, **661,** 661*f*, 663
pulp, tooth, 731*f*, 732, 732*f*
PulseNet, 260
purines, **44**–46, 45*f*, 46*f*, 47*t*, 143, 144*f*
purple nonsulfur bacteria, 139*f*, **140,** 140*t*, **309**–310, 309*t*
purple sulfur bacteria, **139,** 139*f*, 140*t*, **309**–310, 309*t*, 310*f*
pus, 465*f*, **466,** 467
pustular rashes, 602*t*
pustule, **594,** 594*f*
pyelonephritis, 771, **772,** 772*t*
pyocyanin, **600**
pyridoxine (vitamin B_6), 114*t*
pyrimidines, **44**–46, 45*f*, 46*f*, 47*t*, 143, 144*f*, 211*t*
Pyrococcus furiosus, 802
Pyrodictium abyssi, 319*f*
pyruvic acid, 120–121, 120*f*
  fermentation, 128–132, 129*f*, 130*f*, 131*f*, 132*t*, 133*t*
  glycolysis, 120*f*, 121, 122*f*
  Krebs cycle, 123, 124*f*
pyuria, 772

Q
Q fever, 92, **711**–712, 711*f*
quadruple reassortment, 369
quantitative PCR (qPCR), 248–249, 249*f*
quaternary ammonium compounds (quats), 87, **195,** 195*f*, 199*t*, 200*t*
quaternary structure, proteins, 43
quinacrine, 579
quinine, 11, 578–579
quinolones, 567*t*, **573**–574
quinuprisin, 567*t*, 572
quorum sensing, **158**

R
r-determinant, **232,** 232*f*
R factors (resistance factors), **231**–232, 232*f*, 440
rabbit fever, 660, 660*f*
rabies, 365*f*, 371*t*, 408*t*, 441*f*, 616–617, **635**–637, 635*f*, 637*f*, 638, 649*t*
rabies vaccine, 374, 506*t*, 508
raccoon roundworm, 355–356
raccoons
  Heartland encephalitis, 643*t*
  rabies, 408*t*, 637, 637*f*
  roundworm infections, 355–356, 358*t*, 415*t*
radiation
  food safety, 822–824, 823*ft*, 824*f*
  microbial control, 187–188, 188*f*, 189*t*
  as mutagen, 226
radioimmunotherapy, 547
raltegravir, 555*f*, 556, 577
rapid antigen tests, 521
rapid diagnostic tests (RDTs), **783**
rapid identification methods, **282,** 283*f*
rapid immunohistochemical test (RIT), **636**
rapid plasma reagin (RPR) test, **783**
rapidly growing mycobacterium (RGM), 141, **701**
rashes. *See also* skin
  acne, 603*t*
  anaphylaxis, systemic, 530
  Buruli ulcer, 603*t*
  candidiasis, 601*t*
  chickenpox, 602*t*, 605–606, 606*f*
  chikungunya, 675
  Clinical Case, 530*c*, 534*c*, 546*c*, 549*c*, 556*c*
  Clinical Case, *P. aeruginosa*, 594*c*, 602*c*, 610*c*, 612*c*, 615*c*
  Clinical Focus, antibiotic reactions, 541
  dengue, 680*t*
  descriptive terms for, 594
  Diseases in Focus, macular rashes, 601*t*
  Diseases in Focus, patchy redness, pimple-like conditions, 603*t*
  Diseases in Focus, vesicular and pustular rashes, 602*t*
  erysipelas, 603*t*
  fifth disease, 601*t*, 609
  folliculitis, 603*t*
  hand-foot-and-mouth disease, 601*t*, 609
  herpes simplex, 602*t*
  IgE antibodies, 486
  impetigo, 602*t*
  Kawasaki syndrome, 662*t*, 688
  Lyme disease, **667**–670, 668*t*, 669*f*, 670*f*
  measles (rubeola), 510, 601*t*, 608, 608*f*
  meningococcal meningitis, 626
  monoclonal antibodies, reactions to, 512
  MPOX (monkeypox), **605**, 602*t*, 702*t*
  necrotizing fasciitis, 603*t*
  nematodes, 356
  otitis externa, 603*t*
  pediculosis, 603*t*
  Pseudomonas, 603*t*
  rat-bite fever, 665
  rickettsial infection, 299, 668*t*, 671–672, 671*f*, 672*f*
  ringworm, 603*t*
  Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 668*t*, **671**–672, 671*f*, 672*f*
  roseola, 609
  Roseolovirus, 382
  rubella (German measles), 601*t*, 608–609, 609*f*
  scabies, 603*t*
  scarlet fever, 697
  shingles, 388, 602*t*, **606**–607, 606*f*
  smallpox, 602*t*, 605, 605*f*
  sporotrichosis, 603*t*
  streptococcal toxic shock, **600**
  syphilis, 781, 782*f*
  toxic shock syndrome (TSS), **597**–598, 603*t*
  typhus, 668*t*, 671
  vaccine reactions, 511
  vesicular and pustular rashes, 602*t*
  Zika virus disease, 18, 219, 642
rat-bite fever, **665,** 666*t*
rat flea, 358*f*, 359*t*
rats, plague and, **665**–667, 667*f*, 668*t*
reaction rate, **111**
reagin-type antibodies, 783
real-time PCR, 248–249, 249*f*
reassortment, viral genes, 369, 717
receptor-mediated endocytosis, 97, **379,** 380*f*
receptor sites, viral attachment, 379, 379*t*
receptors, host cells, **430**–431, 430*f*
recipient cell, **230,** 230*f*
recognition sites, 232–233, 233*f*
recombinant DNA (rDNA), **14,** 230, 230*f*
recombinant DNA (rDNA) technology, **14, 244**
  applications, agricultural, 261–263, 262*f*, 263*f*, 263*t*
  applications, genome projects, 257–259, 258*f*
  applications, scientific, 259–261, 260*f*
  applications, therapeutic, 256–257, 258*t*
  biotechnology, overview of, 15–16
  biotechnology applications of, 244–245, 245*f*
  clone selection, 253–254, 253*f*
  forensic microbiology, 259–261, 261*f*
  gene modification process, 245*f*
  gene products, making of, 254–255, 254*f*, 255*f*
  inserting foreign DNA into cell, 250, 250*f*, 251*f*
  nanotechnology, **261**
  obtaining DNA, 251–253, 251*f*, 252*f*
  polymerase chain reaction (PCR), **248**–249, 249*f*
  restriction enzymes, **246**–247, 246*t*, 247*f*
  safety and ethics of technology, 264
  site-directed mutagenesis, **246**
  vectors, 247–248, 248*f*
recombinant interferons (rIFNs), 473
recombinant vaccines, **506**. *See also* vaccines
recombinant vector vaccines, **507**–508
red algae, 340*f*, 341. *See also* algae
red blood cells (RBCs), **458**–461, 458*f*, 459*t*
  Clinical Focus, serum collection, 475, 475*f*

microscopy, 54*f*
sickle cell disease, 224
red bone marrow, 458, 458*f*, 461*f*, 481
red eye, **613**
red tide, 343, **444**
Redi, Francesco, 7
redox reaction, **117**–118, 118*f*
reducing media, **161**–162, 161*f*, 162*f*, 164*t*
reduction, **117**–118, 118*f*
refractive index, microscope, **54**–55, 55*f*
refrigeration
food spoilage and, 153, 153*f*
microbial control methods, 186–187, 189*t*
preserving bacterial cultures, 165
relapsing fever, 410*t*, **667,** 668*t*
relaxin, 258*t*
release, bacteriophage lytic cycle, 376*f*, 377
remdesivir, 577
rennin, **824**–825, 824*f*, 830
Reoviridae, 370*t*, 380*t*, 382–383, 384, 389*t*
repellent, 78
replica plating, **227,** 228*f*
replication fork, 210, 211*f*, 212*f*
repressible operons, 206, **218,** 220, 220*f*, 221*f*
reproduction
algae, 5–6, 338–343, 339*t*, 340*f*, 341*f*, 342*f*
animal virus multiplication, 375, 375*f*, 379–386, 379*t*, 380*ft*, 381*f*, 383*f*, 384*f*, 385*f*, 386*f*
Apicomplexa, protozoa, 346–347, 346*f*
Ascomycota, 332, 333*f*
bacteria, overview, 327*t*
bacteriophage multiplication, 375–378, 375*f*, 376*f*, 377*f*, 378*f*, 379*t*
binary fission, 5, 166, 166*f*
centrosome and, 102
diatoms, 341*f*
endospores, 93
Epulopiscium, 313, 314*f*
eukaryotes, 96*t*
flukes, 352*f*
fungi, 5, 327–328, 327*t*, 328*f*, 329, 335*t*
generation time, 166, 166*f*
helminths, 351
Mucoromycota, 331–332, 331*f*
prokaryotes, 90, 96*t*
roundworms, 355–356, 356*f*
schizogony, **343**
slime molds, 349, 349*f*, 350*f*
tapeworms, 355*f*
viruses, 6
water molds, 342, 342*f*
yeasts, 328–329, 329*f*
reproductive hypha, 327–328, 328*f*
reproductive number (R_0), 417–418, 418*f*
reproductive system. *See* genital (reproductive) system, human
reptiles, salmonellosis, 737
reservoirs of infection, **407,** 408*t*
residual body, 464
resistance, **16, 451**
resistance, antimicrobial drugs, 581–585, 582*f*, 583*f*, 584*f*
resistance factors (R factors), **231**–232, 232*f*
resistance transfer factor (RTF), **232,** 232*f*
resistant mutants, 583
resolution power, microscope, **53**–54, 54*f*
resolving power, microscope, **53**–54, 54*f*
respiration, cellular, 119–121, 120*f*, **123**–128, 124*f*, 125*f*, 126*f*, 127*f*, 128*t*
respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), **715**–716, 723*t*
respiratory system
cardiovascular system, 655, 655*f*, 656*f*
Clinical Case, *Aspergillus*, 454*c*, 460*c*, 464*c*, 468*c*, 474*c*, 475*c*
Clinical Case, *Chlamydophila psittaci*, 694*c*, 712*c*, 717*c*, 718*c*, 722*c*
Clinical Case, *Cryptococcus gattii*, 327*c*, 336*c*
COVID-19, overview of, **714**–715, 714*f*
cystic fibrosis, 16, 159, 258*t*, 301, 303, 600
Diseases in Focus, 699*t*, 709*t*, 723*t*
fungal diseases, 719–722, 719*f*, 720*f*, 721*f*, 722*f*, 723*t*
hydatid cyst, **759**–760, 760*f*
influenza, **716**–718, 716*f*
lower respiratory system diseases, bacterial, 700–701, 704–713, 709*t*
lower respiratory system diseases, viral, 713–718
lung fluke, 351–352, 352*f*, 358*t*, 758*f*
neglected tropical diseases, 616–617
normal microbiota, 695, 696
opportunistic pathogens, **334**–335
pneumonia, bacterial, 707–713, 708*f*, 709*t*, 710*f*, 711*f*
portal of exit, **444**–445, 445*f*
portals of entry, **428**–429, 429*t*
pulmonary hemorrhagic syndrome, 773
structure and function, 693–**694,** 694*f*, 695*f*
tuberculosis, 18, 67*f*, 141, 539, **701,** 701*f*, 704–707, 704*f*, 705*f*, 707*f*, 723*t*
upper respiratory system diseases, 695–700, 697*f*, 698*f*, 699*t*
restriction enzymes, **246**–247, 246*t*, 247*f*, 259
restriction fragment length polymorphisms (RLFPs), 260*f*
retapamulin, 567*t*, 573
reticular fibers, 460
reticuloendothelial (mononuclear phagocytic) system, **462**
retort, 184, 184*ft*, **821,** 821*f*
Retortamonas intestinalis, 94
retrospective studies, 418–419
Retroviridae, 372*t*, 380*t*, 383*f*, 384, 385*f*. *See also* human immunodeficiency virus (HIV); viruses
biosynthesis of, 383*f*, 384, 385*f*
gene therapy, 248, 256
human virome, 366
oncogenic viruses, 387
reverse genetics, **259**
reverse transcriptase, **252,** 383*f*, **384**
reverse transcriptase inhibitors, 555, 555*f*
reverse-transcription PCR (RT-PCR), 248–249, 249*f*
reversible reaction, 30–**31**
reversions, 227–228, 229*f*
Reye's syndrome, **605**
RFLPs (restriction fragment length polymorphisms), 260*f*
RGM (rapidly growing mycobacterium), 141
Rh factor, **536**–537, 537*f*
Rhabdoviridae, 371*t*, 380*t*, 382, 384*f*, 389*t*
Rhadinovirus (HHV-8), 370*t*, 380*t*, 382
rheumatic fever, **659,** 659*f*, 662*t*
rheumatoid arthritis, **541,** 542*t*
rheumatoid factors, 541
Rhinovirus, 365*f*, 370*t*, 699–700, 699*t*
rhizines, **337,** 338*f*
rhizobia, **300**
Rhizobium, 75, 109, 121, 300, 799, 800*f*, 831
Rhizopus, 335
Rhizopus stolonifer, 330*f*, 331–332, 331*f*
Rhodococcus erythropolis, 140
Rhodopseudomonas, 139*f*, 140, 140*t*
RhoGAM, 537
riboflavin (vitamin B_2), 114*t*, 124–126, 125*f*
ribonucleic acid (RNA), **44**–46, 45*f*, 46*f*, 47*t*. *See also* human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
central dogma, 206
endospores, 93, 93*f*
eukaryotes, 98–99, 99*f*
genes, overview of, 208
microbial control agents and, 182
microbial nutrient needs, 155
molecular genetics, overview of, 14
multiplication of animal viruses, 375, 375*f*, 379–386, 379*t*, 380*ft*, 381*f*, 383*f*, 384*f*, 385*f*, 386*f*
multiplication of bacteriophages, 375–378, 375*f*, 376*f*, 377*f*, 378*f*, 379*t*
nucleotide biosynthesis, 143, 144*f*
protein synthesis and, 213–218, 214*f*, 215*f*, 216*f*, 217*f*, 218*f*
RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, **382,** 383*f*
RNA-induced silencing complex (RISC), **256,** 257*f*
RNA interference (RNAi), **256**
RNA polymerase, 211*t*, 214, 214*f*, 218*f*, 219
viruses, overview of, 6, **364,** 365–366
viruses, taxonomy of, 368, 370*t*, 371*t*, 372*t*
ribose, 44–46, 45*f*, 46*f*, 47*t*
ribosomal RNA (rRNA), **46,** 47*t*, 91, 91*f*
eukaryotes, 98–99, 99*f*
transcription, **213**–214, 214*f*, 216, 217*f*, 218*f*
ribosomes
antimicrobial drugs, action of, 564, 565*f*
classification systems, 271
endoplasmic reticulum (ER), 99–100, 99*f*
endospores, 93, 93*f*
eukaryotes, 95*f*, 96*t*, **98,** 99*f*, 273*t*
mitochondria, 101
prokaryotes, 76*f*, **90**–91, 91*f*, 96*t*, 273*t*
ribotyping, **288**
RNA translation, 215–218, 216*f*, 217*f*, 218*f*
riboswitch, **221**–222, 222*f*
ribotyping, **288**
ribozymes, 116–**117,** 211*t*
ribulose 1, 5-bisphosphate carboxylase, 92
rice water stools, 739
Rickettsia, 299, 299*f*
classification of, 296, 297*t*
host cell penetration, 433
R. parkeri, 671–672
Rocky Mountain spotted fever, **671**–672, 671*f*, 672*f*
typhus fever, **671**
rickettsialpox, 672
rifampin, 567*t*, 573
rifamycins, 567*t*, **573**
rimantadine, 577
rinderpest, 504
ring stage, **346**–347, 346*f*
ringworm, 408*t*, 603*t*, 610, 610*f*
ritonavir (Paxlovid), 576*t*, 577, 578
river blindness, 579, 616–617
RNA. *See* ribonucleic acid (RNA)
RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, **382,** 383*f*
RNA-induced silencing complex (RISC), **256,** 257*f*
RNA interference (RNAi), **256**
RNA polymerase, 211*t*, 214, 214*f*, 218*f*, 219
antivirals, mechanism of action, 577
RNA viruses, 380*t*. *See also* SARS-CoV-2 (COVID-19) virus
biosynthesis of, 382–384, 383*f*, 385*f*, 386*f*
oncogenic viruses, 387–388
rabies, **635**–637, 635*f*, 637*f*, 638
Zika, tracking of, 219
Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 299, 408*t*, 410*t*, 433, 668*t*, **671**–672, 671*f*, 672*f*
Roosevelt, Eleanor, 701
root, tooth, 731*f*, 732, 732*f*
root nodules, **799,** 800*f*
roseola, 380*t*, 382, **609**
Roseolovirus (HHV-6 and -7), 370*t*, 380*t*, 382
rotating biological contractor, **811**
Rotavirus, 370*t*, 506*t*, 509, **752**–753, 752*f*
rough endoplasmic reticulum (ER), 95*f*, **99**–100, 99*f*
roundworms, **354**–357, 356*f*, 357*f*
Rous, F. Peyton, 386
Rous sarcoma virus, 442*f*
rRNA. *See* ribosomal RNA (rRNA)
RSV (respiratory syncytial virus), **715**–716, 723*t*
RTF (resistance transfer factor), **232,** 232*f*
rubella virus, 371*t*, 506*t*, 522–523, **608**–609, 609*f*
rubeola, **608,** 608*f*
Rubivirus, 371*t*
ruminants, 795

S

Sabin vaccine, 635
Sabouraud's dextrose agar, 162
sac fungi, 332, 333*f*
Saccharomyces boulardii, 337
Saccharomyces cerevisiae, 109, 820*t*, 831
alcohol fermentation, 131
budding, 328, 329*f*
classification of, 4*t*
fermentation end products, 130*f*
gene products, making of, 255
nondairy food fermentation, 825
uses of, 336
safranin, 64, 65, 66, 83
sake, **825**–826, 826*f*, 830
saliva, **454, 456,** 731–732, 732*f*
salivary gland, **729,** 729*f*

Salk, Jonas, 635
Salk vaccine, 635
Salmonella, 304–305, 337, 456
  Clinical Case, 272*c*, 282*c*, 284*c*, 287*c*, 289*c*, 291*c*, 821*c*, 823*c*, 826*c*, 830*c*, 832*c*, 834*c*
  complement evasions, 472
  fermentation end products, 130*f*
  host cell penetration, 433
  hydrogen sulfide test, 135
Salmonella enterica, 4*t*, 270, 270*f*, 586, 819*f*
Salmonella gastroenteritis, **736**–739, 737*f*
Salmonella typhi, 162, 739
salmonellosis, 408*t*, 735–736, **736**–739, 736*f*, 737*f*, 748*t*
salpingitis, **779**–780, 780*f*
salt, **32,** 32*f*
  food preservation and, 154*f*, 155
  halophiles, 5, 155
salvarsan, 11
SAM (scanning acoustic microscopy), **59,** 59*f*, 63*t*
San Joaquin fever, 720, 720*f*
sandflies, Leishmaniasis, **685,** 685*f*
Sanger, Frederick, 286
sanitization, **180,** 181*t*
saprophytes, 139*f*, **140,** 334
saquinavir, 555*f*, 556, 578
sarcinae, **74,** 74*f*
sarcoma, **386**
sarcoma viruses, 387
Sarcoptes scabiei, 603*t*, 611–612, 612*f*
SARS-associated coronavirus, 363, 472, **714**
SARS-CoV-2 (COVID-19) virus, 5*f*, 17, 415*t*, 421*t*, **714**–715, 714*f*, 723*t*
  antigenic drift in, 714–715
  antivirals, treatment with, 576*t*, 577, 578, 715
  biosynthesis of, 382, 384*f*
  ciliary escalator, effect on, 455
  classification and description of, 714–715, 714*f*
  conjunctivitis and, 615
  cytokine storm, 441, 466, 472, 483
  cytopathic effects, 441–442, 442*t*
  diagnosis of, 715
  disinfectants and sanitizers, use of, 192
  epidemiology of, 418
  healthcare-associated infections, 413
  host penetration, 433
  incidence and prevalence of, 402–403, 403*f*
  interferons, blocking of, 442
  long COVID, 715
  monoclonal antibody technology and, 512
  morphology of, 368
  multisystem inflammatory syndrome in children, 688
  mutation rate, 414, 441
  origin and strains, tracking of, 275
  portal of entry, 428, 429*t*
  portal of exit, 444
  predisposing factors, 405
  screening, fever and, 468
  severity and duration of disease, 403–404
  signs and symptoms of COVID-19, 715
  spike proteins, 382, 384*f*, 430, 472, 507–508, 507*f*, 714, 714*f*, 715
  spikes, attachment by, 367, 379, 593
  surface proteins, mutations in, 367
  tests for, 249, 261*f*, 284, 285*f*, 287, 287*f*, 521
  transmission and incubation, 407
  transmission-based precautions, 413
  UV radiation as disinfectant, 188, 188*t*
  vaccines for, 243, 257, 504, 505, 506*t*, 507–508, 507*f*, 509, 715
  virulence, 430
SARS (severe acute respiratory syndrome), **17**
saturated fatty acids, 37–38, 39*f*
saturation, **115**
sauerkraut, 825
saxitoxin, **444**
scab, 465*f*
scabies, 603*t*, **611**–612, 612*f*
scalded skin syndrome, 438*t*, **597,** 597*f*
scanned-probe microscopy, **61,** 61*f*, 64*t*
scanning acoustic microscopy (SAM), **59,** 59*f*, 63*t*
scanning electron microscope (SEM), 5*f*, **61,** 61*f*, 64*t*
scanning tunneling microscopy (STM), **61,** 61*f*, 64*t*
scar tissue, 465*f*, 467
scarlet fever, **697**
Schaeffer-Fulton endospore stain, 68–69, 68*ft*
Schistosoma, 352
schistosomes, infection rates, 758*f*
schistosomiasis, 352, 579, 616–617, **686**–688, 686*t*, 687*f*
schizogony, **343,** 683
Schizosaccharomyces, 328
Schulz, Heide, 13
scientific nomenclature, 4–6, 4*t*, 5*f*, 275–276
sclerotia, **443,** 822
scolex, **352,** 354*f*
scrapie, 391
seals, harbor, 281
seawater microbiota, 804–805, 805*f*
sebum, **456,** 593, 593*f*
Second Golden Age of Microbiology, 11–14, 12*f*, 13*f*
second-line drugs, **706**
second line of defense, immunity, 458–475, 458*f*, 459*t*, 461*f*, 462*f*, 463*f*, 465*f*, 466*t*, 476*t*. *See also* immunity, innate
secondary immunodeficiencies, **548,** 548*ft*
secondary infection, **405**
secondary metabolite, **828**
secondary response, adaptive immunity, 481, **497**–498, 497*f*
secondary sewage treatment, 809*f*, **810**–811, 810*f*
secondary structure, protein, 42, 43*f*
secretory component, 486
secretory IgA, 485*t*, **486**
secretory vesicle, 100, 100*f*
sedimentation rate, ribosomes, 91, 91*f*
selective media, **162**–163, 163*f*, 164*t*, 282, 283*f*. *See also* culture media
selective permeability, **86**
selective toxicity, 560, **561**
self-tolerance, **540**–542, 542*t*
SEM (scanning electron microscope), 5*f*, **61,** 61*f*, 64*t*
semiconservative replication, **210,** 211*f*
semipermeability, 86
semisynthetic penicillin, **569**
Semmelweis, Ignaz, 10, 179, 411, 417, 658
sense codons, **215**
sense strand (+ strand), **382,** 383*f*
sensitivity, diagnostic tests, **511**
sentinel animals, 637
sepsis, **180, 404,** 599, **656**–658, 657*f*
  Clinical Case, 483*c*, 486*c*, 489*c*, 492*c*, 496*c*
septa, mold hyphae, **327,** 328*f*
septate hyphae, **327,** 328*f*
septic shock, **439, 657,** 662*t*
septic tank, **812,** 812*f*
septicemia, **404, 656**–658, 657*f*
septicemic plague, **665**–667, 667*f*
serial dilution, **170**–171, 170*f*
serine (Ser, S), 41*t*, 215*f*
seroconversion, **516, 553**
serological testing, **283**–284, 284*f*, 304–305, 783
serology, **282**–284, 284*f*, 285*f*
serotypes, **283**–284, 284*f*, **304,** 516, 740
serovars, **78, 283**–284, 284*f*, **304,** 515–516, 515*f*
Serratia marcescens, 72, 151, 151*f*, 305
serum collection, 475, 475*f*
serum concentration, 581
serum IgA, 485*t*, **486**
serum sickness, 539, 632
severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS), **17,** 404. *See also* SARS-CoV-2 (COVID-19) virus
severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID), 16, 256
severe dengue, **678**
severe sepsis, **657**
sewage treatment, 15, 109, 808–813, 809*f*, 810*f*, 811*f*, 812*f*
sex (conjugation) pili, **80, 235**–236, 236*f*
sexual dimorphism, **355**
sexual recombination, 96*t*
sexual reproduction. *See also* genital (reproductive) system, human
  algae, 5–6, 338–343, 339*t*, 340*f*, 341*f*, 342*f*
  flukes, 352*f*
  fungi, 5, 329–330, 330*f*, 335*t*
  Mucoromycota, 331–332, 331*f*
  slime molds, 350*f*
  tapeworms, 355*f*
sexual spores, **329,** 330
sexually transmitted infections (STIs), **774**. *See also* human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
  chancroid (soft chancre), **783**
  Disease in Focus, overview, 789*t*
  Diseases in Focus, vaginitis and vaginosis, 787*t*
  genital herpes, **784**–785, 785*f*
  genital warts, **785**–786, 786*f*
  gonorrhea, **774**– 775, 774*f*, 775*f*, 778, 778*f*
  home testing kits, 776–777
  lymphogranuloma venereum (LGV), **783**
  nongonococcal urethritis (NGU), **778**–779
  pelvic inflammatory disease, **779**–780, 780*f*
  portals of entry, **428**–429, 429*t*
  syphilis, **780**–783, 780*f*, 781*f*, 782*f*
  trichomoniasis, **788,** 788*f*, 789*t*
shadow casting, electron microscopy, 60, 60*f*
sheep scrapie, **646**–648, 646*f*, 648*t*, 649*t*
shellfish, as vectors, 357, 358*t*
Shiga, Kiyoshi, 736
Shiga toxin, 209, 440, 736
Shiga-toxin-producing *E. coli* (STEC), **741,** 748*t*
  adherence, 430
  Clinical Case, 728, 730*c*, 740*c*, 746*c*, 753*c*, 762*c*
Shigella, 305, 337, 456
  adhesins, 430
  biochemical tests for, 135
  host cell penetration, 433
shigellosis, 735–**736,** 736*f*, 748*t*
shingles, 388, 388*f*, 602*t*, **606**–607, 606*f*
shock, **439, 657**
short tandem repeats (STRs), **209,** 259
shotgun sequencing, **257**–259, 258*f*
shuttle vectors, **248**
sickle cell disease, 42, 224, 474
  gene therapy and gene editing, 256
siderophores, **434,** 434*f*, **474**
signs, disease, **402**
silver, microbial control, 193–194, 194*f*, 199*t*
silver nitrate solution, 194, 613
silver sulfadiazine, 194, 574
simple diffusion, **87,** 87*f*, 88*f*, 97
simple lipids, 37–38, 38*f*
simple proteins, 44
simple stains, **65,** 68*t*
simplexvirus (HHV-1 and -2). *See* herpes simplex virus (HSV-1, HSV-2)
single bacilli, **74,** 74*f*
singlet oxygen, **156**
sinusitis, **695**
siRNAs (small interfering RNAs), **256**
sirolimus, 546
SIRS (systemic inflammatory response syndrome), 657–658, 657*f*
site-directed mutation, **246**
skin, **451**
  acne, **601**–602, 604, 604*f*
  allergic contact dermatitis, **539**–540, 539*f*, 540*f*
  animal bites and scratches, 664–665
  Buruli ulcer, **600**–601
  chemical defenses, 455–456
  chickenpox and shingles, **605**–607, 606*f*
  Clinical Case, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, 594*c*, 602*c*, 610*c*, 612*c*, 615*c*
  damage and repair of, 465–467, 465*f*
  fifth disease, **609**
  fungal conditions, 610–611, 610*f*, 611*f*
  hand-foot-and-mouth disease, **609**
  herpes simplex virus (HSV), **607**–608, 607*f*
  immune cells and skin microbiota, 495
  lesions, types of, 594*f*
  measles (rubeola), **608,** 608*f*
  microbiota, 398*ft*, 495, 594
  parasitic infections, 611–613, 612*f*
  patchy redness conditions, 603*t*
  as physical defense, 451–455, 454*f*, 455*f*
  pimple-like conditions, 603*t*
  portal of exit, **444**–445, 445*f*
  portals of entry, **428**–429, 429*t*
  pseudomonal infections, 600, 603*t*
  psoriasis, **542,** 542*t*
  roseola, **609**
  rubella (German measles), **608**–609, 609*f*
  smallpox, **604**–605, 605*f*
  staphylococcal infections, 594–598, 596*f*, 597
  streptococcal infections, 598–600, 599*f*, 600*f*

structure and function, 593, 593*f*
vesicular and pustular rashes, 602*t*
warts, **604**
skin, microbiota, 399
skin patch vaccine delivery, 509
sleeping sickness, African trypanosomiasis, 410*t*, 444, 616–617, **644,** 644*f*
slide agglutination test, **283,** 284*f*
slime layer, **77**
slime molds, 5, 307, 307*f*, **348**–349, 349*f*, 350*f*
sludge, **809**–810, 809*f*, 811
sludge granules, 810
small interfering RNAs (siRNAs), **256**
small intestine, 461*f*
digestive system function, **729,** 729*f*
normal microbiome, 729–730
small nuclear ribonucleoproteins (snRNPs), 211*t*, **216,** 218*f*
smallpox, 10–11, 368*f*, 370*t*, 380*t*, 382, 442, 504, 506*t*, 602*t*, **604**–605, 605*f*
smear preparation, microscopy, 61, 64–65
Smith, Hamilton, 213
Smith, Theobald, 685
smooth endoplasmic reticulum (ER), 95*f*, 99–**100,** 99*f*
smut, 754, 755*t*
snails, 416
Snow, John, 417
snRNPs (small nuclear ribonucleoproteins), 211*t*, **216,** 218*f*
soap, 194–195, 195*f*, 198, 200*t*
sodium benzoate, 195–196
sodium hypochlorite, 193
sodium (Na), 26*t*
sodium nitrate, 196
sodium nitrite, 196
sodium thioglycolate, 161
soft chancre (chancroid), **783,** 789*t*
soil microbiology, 795–796
carbon cycle, **796,** 797*f*
composting, **803**
nitrogen cycle, **797**–799, 798*f*, 799*f*, 800*f*
phosphorus cycle, **801**
soil organisms, 686*t*
sulfur cycle, **800,** 801*f*
xenobiotics, **801**–803, 803*f*
solid municipal waste, 803
solute, **32**
solutions
acid-base balance, pH and, 32–33, 33*f*
iso-, hypo-, and hypertonic, 88–89, 89*f*
osmosis, **88**–89, 89*f*
solvent, **31**
water as, 31–32, 32*f*
somatostatin, 253, 256
sorbate, 196
sorbic acid, 196
sorbitol, 733
sorbose, fermentation, 132*t*
Southern, Ed, 259
Southern blotting, **259,** 260*f*, **287**
Southern tick-associated rash illness (STARI), 670
soy sauce, 830
Spallanzani, Lazzaro, 7
special stains, **66**–69, 68*ft*
specialized transduction, **236,** 238*f*, **378,** 378*f*
species, **4**
species name (specific epithet), **4,** **275**–276
specificity, diagnostic tests, **511**
specimens
acid-fast stain, 66, 67*f*
differential stains, 65–66, 65*f*
microscopy preparation, 61, 64–65
simple stains, 65
spectrophotometer, turbidity measures, 173, 174*f*
sperm, 769, 770, 770*f*
Sphaerotilus, 301, 301*f*
spherical particles, hepatitis B virus, 749, 749
spheroplast, **84**
spherule, 720, 720*f*
spicules, **354,** 356*f*
spiders, as vectors, 357, 359*t*
spikes, **367,** 379
influenza virus, 716–717, 716*f*
SARS-CoV-2 (COVID-19) virus, 367, 379, 382, 384*f*, 430, 472, 507–508, 507*f*, 593, 714, 714*f*, 715
spinal nerves, 623, 623*f*. *See also* nervous system
spinal tap (lumbar puncture), 626, 627*f*
spiral, bacterial shapes, 4–5, 5*f*, **73**–74 75*f*
spirillar fever, 665
Spirillum, 91, 301, 301*f*
S. minus, 665
spirillum, bacterial shapes, **75,** 75*f*
Spirochaetes, 311–312, 312*f*
Spirochaetota, 297*t*
spirochete, **75,** 75*f*
spleen, 461, 461*f*
Clinical Case, sepsis, 483*c*, 486*c*, 489*c*, 492*c*, 496*c*
splenic macrophages, 461
spoilage, canned foods, 821–822, 821*f*, 822*f*. *See also* foodborne diseases and food safety
spongiform encephalopathies, **646**–648, 646*f*, 648*t*, 649*t*
spontaneous abortion. *See* abortion
spontaneous generation, **7**–9, 8*f*
spontaneous mutations, **224,** 224*f*
sporadic disease, **403**
sporangiophore, **330,** 330*f*
sporangiospore, **330,** 330*f*, 331–332, 331*f*
sporangium, **330,** 330*f*
spore coat, 92, 93*f*
spore septum, 92, 93*f*
spores, **329**
ascospores, 332, 333*f*
asexual and sexual, **329**–330, 330*f*
Aspergillus, 329, 330*f*
Bacillus, 314, 314*f*
Bacillus anthracis (anthrax), 92–94, 93*f*, 197, **661,** 661*f*, 663
Bacillus cereus gastroenteritis, **746**
bacteria, overview of, 327*t*
basidiospores, **332**–333, 334*f*
botulism, **630**–632, 631*f*
chemical sterilization, 197
Clinical Case, *Bacillus anthracis*, 25*c*, 42*c*, 44*c*, 46*c*
Clostridium, 313, 313*f*
commercial sterilization, **821**–822, 821*f*, 822*f*
conidiospores, 166, **329**–330, 330*f*
desiccation, 187, 189*t*
endospore, **68, 92**–94, 93*f*
food canning and, 821–822, 821*f*, 822*f*
fungi, 327*t*, 328, 328*f*, 329, 335*t*
halogens, microbial control and, 192–193
microbial control, 187, 189*t*, 195, 199, 199*t*, 200*t*
microsporidia, 332, 332*f*
moist heat sterilization and, 183–184, 184*ft*, 189*t*
peroxygens, 197–198
slime molds, 349, 349*f*, 350*f*
staining of, 68–69, 68*ft*
temperature and, 154
zoospores, 342, 342*f*, 343
zygospores, 331*f*, 332
sporogenesis, **92,** 93*f*
sporotrichosis, 603*t*, **611**
sporozoites, 682
sporulation, **92,** 93*f*
spotted fever group, 299
spread plate method, **171,** 171*f*
squalamine, 588
St. Louis encephalitis, 639, 643*t*
stabilization ponds, 813
Stachybotrys, 335, 443
stage, microscope, 53*f*
staining, smear preparation, 61, **64**–65
acid-fast stain, 66, 67*f*
differential stains, 65–66, 65*f*
endospore staining, **68**–69, 68*ft*
flagella staining, 68*f*, 69
negative stain, capsules, 67, 68*ft*
simple stains, 65
stains
classification of microbes, 279
for lipid inclusions, 91
for metachromatic granules, 91
for polysaccharide granules, 91
standard precautions, **413**–414
Stanley, Wendell, 14, 364
staph infection. *See* Staphylococcus aureus
staphylococcal enterotoxin, LD_{50} (lethal dose), **430**
staphylococcal food poisoning, **735,** 735*f*, 748*t*
staphylococci, **74,** 74*f*
Staphylococcus, 314, 315*f*
skin infections, 594–598, 596*f*, 597*f*, 603*t*
transformation, 235
urinary system, 771
Staphylococcus aureus, 1, 1*f*, 314, 315*f*
adhesins, 431
antibiotic resistance, 12, 192, 207, 420
antimicrobial soaps and, 192
Clinical Case, MRSA (methicillin-resistant *S. aureus*), 3*c*, 16*c*, 18*c*, 19*c*, 20*c*
culture media for, 162–163, 163*f*
digestive system diseases, 734
endocarditis, **659,** 659*f*
exotoxins, 438*t*
fomite transmission, 408
healthcare-associated infections (HAIs), **411**–414, 411*f*, 412*t*, 413*f*, 420
horizontal gene transfer and antibiotic use, 232
identification of, 281*f*
methicillin-resistant (MRSA), **18,** 205, 207, 431, **569,** 582–583, 598
MRSA, treatment of, 566*t*, 567*t*, 570, 572, 573, 587
plasmid-encoded toxins, 231
skin infections, 594–598, 596*f*, 597*f*
staphylococcal food poisoning, **735,** 735*f*
superbugs, 582–583
toxins, 436, 438*t*, 456
Staphylococcus epidermidis, 399, 399*f*, 495, 595, 596, 596*f*
Staphylococcus pyogenes, 296, 296*f*
Staphylococcus saprophyticus, 772
starch, 35–36, 35*f*
stationary phase, **168,** 168*f*
steam, sterilization and, 183–184, 184*ft*, 189*t*
STEC (Shiga-toxin-producing *E. coli*), 430, 741, 748*t*
Clinical Case, 728, 730*c*, 740*c*, 746*c*, 753*c*, 762*c*
Stella, 75*f*
stem cells, **544,** 544*f*
stereoisomers, **40,** 40*f*, 42
sterilant, **180,** 181*t*
sterile, **160**
sterilization, **180,** 181*t*, 184*ft*, 185–186, 185*f*, 189*t*
steroids, **39**–40, 39*f*, 831
sterols, 39–40, 39*f*, 83, 97, 575
Stewart, Sarah, 386
sticky ends, 246*f*, **247,** 247*t*
stipes, **339,** 340*f*
STM (scanning tunneling microscopy), **61,** 61*f*, 64*t*
stomach, **729,** 729*f*, **744,** 745*f*
storage vesicle, 100, 100*f*
STR (short tandem repeats), **209,** 259
strain, **276,** 625, **828**
Stramenopila, Kingdom of, 339*t*
stratum corneum, 593, 593*f*
streak plate method, **164,** 165*f*
strep throat, **696**–697, 697*f*, 699*t*
streptobacillary rat-bite fever, **665**
streptobacilli, **74,** 74*f*
Streptobacillus moniliformis, 665
streptococcal pharyngitis (strep throat), **696**–697, 697*f*, 699*t*
streptococcal toxic shock syndrome, **600**
streptococci, **74,** 74*f*
Streptococcus, 315–316, 315*f*
antibiotic resistance, 232
Clinical Case, dental caries, 110*c*, 131*c*, 135*c*, 137*c*
Clinical Case, group B streptococci (GBS), 298*c*, 316*c*, 318*c*, 319*c*, 320*c*
endocarditis, **658**–659, 659*f*
fermented foods, 820*t*
group A streptococci (GAS), **599**
group A streptococci (GAS), strep throat, **696**–697, 697*f*
group B streptococci (GBS), 625, 626, 641, **658,** 662*t*
skin infections, 598–600, 599*f*, 600*f*, 603*t*
urinary system, 771
vertical transmission, mother to child, 640–641, 640*f*, 641*f*
Streptococcus agalactiae, 315
Clinical Case, meningitis, 298*c*, 316*c*, 318*c*, 319*c*, 320*c*
Streptococcus mutans, 315
adhesins, 430
attachment to surfaces, 77
dental caries, **731**–733, 731*f*, 732*f*, 734*t*
fermentation end products, 130*f*
Streptococcus pneumoniae, 316
capsule of, **77**
Clinical Case, 298*c*, 316*c*, 318*c*, 319*c*, 320*c*
host cell penetration, 432
meningitis, 626, 629*t*
opportunistic pathogens, 400
pneumonia, **708,** 708*f*, 709*t*
transformation, 233–234, 234*f*
vaccine for, 505*t*, 507, 625

Streptococcus pyogenes, 315
blood agar cultures, 162, 163*f*
classification of, 4*t*
disease of, 402
hemolysin, 474
host cell penetration, 432
puerperal sepsis, **658**
rheumatic fever, **659,** 659*f*
scarlet fever, **697**
strep throat, **696**–697, 697*f*
Streptococcus thermophilus, 825
streptogramins, 567*t*, **572**
streptokinase, 432, 599, 696
streptolysins, **436,** 599, 696
Streptomyces, 318, 318*f*, 561, 561*f*, 571
Streptomyces avermectinius, 579
Streptomyces hygroscopicus, 830
Streptomyces natalensis, 196
Streptomyces roseosporus, 573
streptomycin, 91, 91*f*, 205, 564, 565*f*, 567*t*, 571
stroma, 467
Strongyloides, 356
structural genes, 218–219
sty, **597**
subacute bacterial endocarditis, **658**–659, 659*f*
subacute disease, **403**
subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (SSPE), 388, **608**
subarachnoid space, 623, 624*f*
subclinical infection, **405,** 498, 498*f*
subcutaneous allergen-specific immunotherapy, **534**
subcutaneous mycoses, **334, 610**–611
substrate-level phosphorylation, **118**
substrates, 108, **111**–112, 111*f*, 112*f*
feedback inhibition, 116, 117*f*
subunit vaccines, **257, 506**
sucrose, 35–36, 35*f*, 36, 732–733, 732*f*
Sudan dyes, 91
sugar alcohols, 733
sugar-phosphate backbone, 208
sugars
carbohydrates, overview of, 35–36, 35*f*
food preservation and, 154*f*, 155
sulfa drugs, 561
sulfadiazine, 194
sulfamethoxazole-trimethoprim, 567*t*, 574, 574*f*
sulfanilamide, 116
sulfhydryl functional group, 34–35, 34*t*, 43
sulfite allergy, 531
Sulfolobus, 320
sulfonamides (sulfa drugs), 11, 567*t*, **574,** 574*f*
sulfur bacteria, 309–310, 309*t*
sulfur cycle, **800,** 801*f*
sulfur dioxide, food preservatives, 195–196
sulfur granules, 91–**92**
sulfur (S)
atomic number and mass, 26*t*
Desulfovibrionales, 306–307
green sulfur bacteria, 139, 139*f*, 140*t*
microbial growth and, 155
purple sulfur bacteria, 139, 139*f*, 140*t*
super-resolution light microscopy, 58–**59,** 59*f*, 63*t*
superantigens, **437,** 438*t*, 597, 598, 600
superbugs, **582**
supercritical fluids, 197, 200*t*
superficial mycoses, **334**
superinfection, **563**
superoxide anions, **156**
superoxide dismutase (SOD), **156,** 258*t*
superoxide radicals, **156**
superspreading, 715
surface-active agents, **194**–195, 195*f*
Surfacine, 194
surfactants, **194**–195, 195*f*
susceptibility, **451**
Svedberg units, 91, 91*f*
swarmer cells, 305, 305*f*
swimmer's ear, 600
swine flu, 18, 369
Sydenham's chorea, **659**
symbiosis, 102, **399**–400, 399*f*, **795,** 795*f*
algae and, 343
nitrogen fixation, 155, **798**–799, 799*f*, 800*f*
rhizobia, 300
symptoms, disease, **402**
syncytium, 441*f*, **442**
syndrome, **402**
Synercid, 572
synergism, **585**
synthesis reaction, **30**
synthetic drugs, **11**–13, 11*f*, 12*f*
syphilis, 640–641, 640*f*, 641*f*, **780**–783, 780*f*, 781*f*, 782*f*, 789*t*
systematics, **271**
systemic anaphylaxis, **530**–531
systemic (generalized) infection, **404**
systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), 657–658, 657*f*
systemic lupus erythematosus, **541,** 542*t*
systemic mycoses, **334**

T
T cell leukemia viruses, 387
T cell receptors (TCRs), **481**–482, 482*f*
T cells, 458*f*, 459*t*, **460, 481**–482, 482*f*. *See also* human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
bone marrow transplants, 544–545
cancer cells, response to, 546–547
cellular immune response, 490–496, 491*f*, 492*f*, 493*f*, 494*f*, 496*f*, 497*t*
chemotaxis, 466–467
chimeric antigen receptor T cells (CAR-T), 256
classes of, 492–495, 493*f*, 494*f*
Clinical Case, DiGeorge syndrome, 530*c*, 534*c*, 546*c*, 549*c*, 556*c*
Foundation Figure, 499*f*
function of, 451, 452*t*
HIV, action of, 441, 453*f*
humoral immune response, 487–488, 487*f*, 489*f*
lymphoid (lymphatic) system, 461, 654–655, 655*f*, 656*f*
microbiome and, 495
psoriasis, **542,** 542*t*
superantigens, **437**
transplant rejection prevention, 546
type IV (delayed cell-mediated) hypersensitivity reactions, 539–540, 539*f*, 540*f*
T-dependent antigen, **487**–488, 489*f*
T-even bacteriophage, 54*f*, 368*f*, 375–377, 376*f*, 377*f*
T helper cells (T_H), 452*t*, **487**–488, 489*f*, **492**–494, 493*f*, 494*f*
T-independent antigens, **487**–488, 489*f*
T lymphocytes. *See* T cells
T regulatory cell (T_{reg}), 452*t*, **494**–495
tabes dorsalis, 782
tachyzoites, **347,** 682
tacrolimus, 545–546
Taenia
infection rates, 758*f*
T. saginata, 354, 755*t*, **758,** 759*f*
T. solium, 354
Taeniasis, 755*t*, **759,** 759*f*
tapeworms, **352**–354, 354*f*, 355*f*, 408*t*, 755*t*, **758**–760, 759*f*
Taq polymerase, 319
target theory of damage, radiation, 187–188, 188*f*
Tatum, Edward L., 14
taxa, **271**
taxis, **78**
taxol, 258*t*, 336
Taxomyces, 336
taxonomy, 4–6, 4*t*, 5*f*, 270, **271**. *See also* classification of microbes
phylogenetic relationships, 271–275, 272*f*, 273*t*, 274*f*, 275*f*
taxonomic hierarchy, 276, 277*f*
viruses, 368, 370*t*, 371*t*, 372*t*
tea tree oil, 191–192
teeth
anatomy of, 731, 731*f*
digestive system function, **729,** 729*f*
periodontal disease, **733,** 733*f*
tooth decay, 110*c*, 135, 137, 430, **731**–733, 731*f*, 732*f*, 734*t*
teichoic acid, 81, 82*f*
teixobactin, 570
telaprevir, 578
telithromycin, 567*t*, 572
telomeres, 259
TEM (transmission electron microscope), **59**–61, 60*f*, 63*t*
temperate phages, 377–378, 377*f*
temperature
enzymes, effect on, 114, 115*f*
food safety and, 735
microbial control methods, 183–187, 184*ft*, 185*ft*, 189*t*
microbial growth requirement, 152–154, 152*f*, 153*f*
preserving bacterial cultures, 165
pressure and, 184*t*
temperature abuse, **735,** 735*f*
tenofovir, 554, 555*f*
Tequatrovirus. *See* T-even bacteriophage
teratogenic, 604
Terbinafine, 575
terminator, **214,** 214*f*
terpenes, 191–192, 200*t*
terrorism. *See* bioterrorism
tertiary sewage treatment, **813**
tertiary structure, proteins, 42–43, 43*f*
testes, 769, 770*f*
tetanospasmin, 628, 628*f*
tetanus, 313, 313*f*, 438*t*, **628**–630, 628*f*, 649*t*
endospores, **92**–94, 93*f*
vaccines, 435, 505*t*, 509
tetanus immune globulin (TIG), 629
tetherins, **556**
tetracycline, 564, 565*f*, 567*t*, **571**–572, 572*f*
tetracycline resistance, 205
tetrads, **74,** 74*f*
Tetrahymena, 96, 97*f*
tetrapeptide side chain, 81, 81*f*
tetroses, 36
T_H1 cells, **493**–494, 493*f*, 494*f*
T_H2 cells, **493**–494, 493*f*, 494*f*
T_H17 cells, 493–**494,** 493*f*, 494*f*
thallus, **327**
Thayer-Martin agar, 789
therapeutic vaccine, 547
thermal cycler, 248–249, 249*f*
thermal death point (TDP), **183**–186, 184*ft*, 185*ft*
thermal death time (TDT), **183**–186, 184*ft*, 185*ft*
Thermoactinomyces vulgaris, 92
Thermococcus litoralis, 802
thermoduric, **185**
thermophiles, 5, **152,** 152*f*, 154, 271, 272*f*, 274*f*, 802
thermophilic anaerobic spoilage, **821**–822, 822*f*
Thermotoga, 270
Thermovibrio ammonificans, 802
Thermus aquaticus, 248–249, 249*f*, 319
thiamine (vitamin B_1), 114*t*
Thiomargarita, 800
Thiomargarita namibiensis, 13, 302, 320, 321*f*
Third Golden Age of Microbiology, 12*f*, 14
thoracic duct, 461, 461*f*
threonine (Thr, T), 41*t*, 215*f*
throat, digestive system function, **729,** 729*f*
throat, microbiota, 398*ft*
thrombocidin, 474
thrombocytopenic purpura, **538,** 538*f*
thrush, 335, **611,** 611*f*
thylakoids, **101,** 102*f*, 136–137, 136*f*, 137*f*
thymic selection, **491,** 540
thymine dimers, 188, 226
thymine nucleoside, 225*f*
thymine (T)
DNA base pairs, **208**
nucleic acids, overview, 44–46, 45*f*, 46*f*, 47*t*
RNA and protein synthesis, 213–218, 214*f*, 215*f*, 216*f*, 217*f*
thymus, 461, 461*f*, 482
Clinical Case, DiGeorge syndrome, 530*c*, 534*c*, 546*c*, 549*c*, 556*c*
thyroid, Graves' disease, **541,** 542*t*, 543*t*
thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), 541
Ti plasmid, **261**–263, 262*f*
tiacarcillin, 569
ticks, 17, 347
anaplasmosis, **670**
babesiosis, **685**–686
ehrlichiosis, **670**
Lyme disease, **667**–670, 668*t*, 669*f*, 670*f*
Q fever, **711**–712, 711*f*
typhus, **671**
as vectors, 357, 357*f*, 359*t*
tigecycline, 567*t*, 572
tincture, **192**–193
tinea capitis, **610,** 610*f*
tinea cruris, **610,** 610*f*
tinea pedis, **610,** 610*f*
tinea unguium, **610,** 610*f*
tinidazole, 579
tissue cyst, 682
tissue damage and repair, 465–467, 465*f*
tissue engineering, **544,** 544*f*
tissue plasminogen activator, 258*t*
tissue typing, 542, 543*f*
titer, **515**–516, 515*f*
tixagevimab, 512
TLRs (toll-like receptors), **451,** 462, 463*f*
TNF (tumor necrosis factor), 438*f*, 439, 465, 467, 482*t*, 483
tobacco mosaic disease (TMD), 363, 364

Index

tobacco mosaic virus (TMV), 14, 365*f*
tobramycin, 571
Togaviridae, 371*t*, 380*t*, 382
toll-like receptors (TLRs), **451,** 462, 463*f*, 465, 474, 508
tolnaftate, 577
Tolypocladium inflatum, 336
tongue, digestive system function, **729,** 729*f*
tonoplast, 100
tonsillitis, **695**
tonsils, 461*f*, 694*f*
tooth decay, 110*c*, 135, 137, 430, **731**–733, 731*f*, 732*f*, 734*t*
topoisomerase, 209, 211*ft*, 212–213, 212*f*, 213*f*
TORCH screen tests, 641
total magnification, microscope, **53,** 53*f*
toxemia, **404, 435**
toxic shock syndrome (TSS), 378, 438*t*, **597**–598, 603*t*, 658
toxins, 40, **434**–435, 436*f*
  aflatoxin, 226
  algae, 342–343, 444
  anthrax, **661,** 661*f*, 663
  antitoxins, **435,** 439, 516, 517*f*, 632
  Bacillus cereus gastroenteritis, **746**
  Bordetella pertussis, **700**–701, 701*f*
  Bt toxin, 263
  digestive system diseases, 734
  dinoflagellates, 342
  electronic waste (e-waste), 803
  endotoxins, 436*f*, **437**–439, 438*f*, 439*t*
    antitoxins, 439
    bacterial meningitis, 625
    Clinical Case, 85*c*, 91*c*, 94*c*, 428*c*, 435*c*, 440*c*, 443*c*, 445*c*
    Coley's toxins, 547
    diagnostic tests for, 439
    disseminated intravascular coagulation, 437
    E. coli, 254, 255*f*
    fever, 437, 438*f*, 439
    gene products, making of, 254–255, 255*f*
    Gram-negative bacteria, characteristics, 84*t*
    Gram-negative sepsis, 657–658, 657*f*
    intoxication, 435
    lipid A, 82*f*, 83
    meningococcal meningitis, 626
    pathogenicity mechanisms, 445*f*
    Pseudomonas aeruginosa, 600
    salmonellosis, 748*t*
    septic shock, **439**
    Shigellosis, 748*t*
    shock, **439**
    typhoid fever, 748*t*
    Yersinia gastroenteritis, **745,** 748*t*
    yersiniosis, **745**
  enterotoxigenic *E. coli* (ETEC), **744**
  exotoxins, 40, **435**–437, 436*f*, 438*t*, 439*t*
    A-B toxins, 435, 437*f*, 438*t*
    anthrax, **661,** 661*f*, 663
    antitoxin, 516, 517*f*
    botulism, **630**–632, 631*f*
    cholera, **739**–740, 739*f*, 748*t*
    Clostridioides difficile-associated diarrhea, **746,** 748*t*
    Clostridium perfringens gastroenteritis, 746, 748*t*
    diphtheria, **697**–698, 697*f*
    disease summary, 438*t*, 748*t*
    E. coli gastroenteritis, 748*t*
    Gram-positive and -negative bacteria, 84*t*
    hemolysins, 436
    leukocidins, 436
    membrane-disrupting toxins, 435–436
    naming of, 435
    neutralization reactions, 516, 517*f*
    pathogenicity mechanism, 445*f*
    Pseudomonas, 600
    scalded skin syndrome, 597, 597*f*
    scarlet fever, 699*t*
    Shiga toxin, 736, 748*t*
    streptolysins, 436
    superantigens, 437
    toxic shock syndrome, **597**–598, 658
  fungi, 443
  gangrene, **663**–664, 664*f*
  gene products, making of, 254–255, 255*f*
  intoxication, **734**
  LD_{50} (lethal dose), **430**
  mycolactone, 600
  peroxisomes and, 101
  phage conversion, 378, 378*f*
  plasma membrane binding, 85–86, 86*f*
  plasmids and, **231**
  resistance transfer factor, 232
  scaled skin syndrome, **597,** 597*f*
  Shiga toxin, 736, 748*t*
  Shiga toxin, Clinical Case, 728, 730*c*, 740*c*, 746*c*, 753*c*, 762*c*
  Shiga-toxin-producing *E. coli* (STEC), **741**
  staphylococcal food poisoning, **735,** 735*f*
  tetanus, **628**–630, 628*f*
  toxemia, **404**
  toxic shock syndrome (TSS), **597**–598, 658
Toxocana canis, 356
Toxocana cati, 356
toxoid vaccine, **506,** 628–630
toxoids, **435**
Toxoplasma, 443
  T. gondii, 347, 641, 675, 681–682, 681*f*
toxoplasmosis, 348*t*, 408*t*, 551, 641, 666*t*, **681**–682, 681*f*
TPM (two-photon microscopy), **58,** 58*f*, 63*t*
trace elements, **155**
tracheal cytotoxin, 700
trachoma, **613,** 614*t*, 615*f*, 616–617
transacetylase, 218–220, 220*f*
transamination, **143,** 143*f*
transcription, **213**–218, 214*f*, 216*f*, 218*f*
  gene expression, regulation of, 218–222, 220*f*, 221*f*, 222*f*
transduction, **236,** 238*f*
transfer RNA (tRNA), **46,** 47*t*, **215**
  gene expression, regulation of, 218–222, 220*f*, 221*f*, 222*f*
transfer vesicle, 100, 100*f*
transferase, 113, 113*t*
transferrin, **474**
transformation, **233**–235, 234*f*, 235*f*, **250,** 250*f*, 251*f*, **387**
transfusion reactions, 535–538, 535*t*, 537*f*, 538*f*
transient microbiota, **2**–3, 2*f*, **396**
translation, **215**–218, 215*f*, 216*f*, 217*f*
  gene expression, regulation of, 221–222, 222*f*
transmembrane proteins, 85, 86*f*
transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSE), 391, **646**–648, 646*f*, 648*t*, 649*t*
transmission-based precautions, **413**–414
transmission-blocking vaccine, 684
transmission electron microscope (TEM), **59**–61, 60*f*, 63*t*
transmission routes, disease, 407–410, 409*f*, 410*ft*
transovarian passage, 671, 672*f*
transplacental transfer, 498, 498*f*
transplant rejections, 258*t*, 336, 539–540, 539*f*, 540*f*
transplantation reactions, 542–546, 543*ft*, 545*f*
transport media, **279**
transport vesicle, 100, 100*f*
transporter proteins, 40, 87–88, 88*f*
  active transport, **89**–90
transposase, 211*t*, 232–233, 233*f*
transposons, 205, **232**–233, 233*f*, 259
traveler's diarrhea, 438*t*, 736, **744**
tree blight, 336, 343
trematodes, 350*f*, 351–352, 351*f*, 352*f*
trench mouth, **733,** 733*f*
Treponema pallidum, 57*f*, 62*t*, 312, 401
  adhesins, 431
  microscopy, 55
  motility, 79, 79*f*
  syphilis, **780**–783, 780*f*, 781*f*, 782*f*
  vertical transmission, mother to child, 640–641, 640*f*, 641*f*
Triatoma, 680
triazole, **575,** 681
tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle, **123,** 124*f*, 128*t*
Tricharis trichiura, 356
trichiasis, 613, 613*f*
Trichinella spiralis, **761**–762, 762*f*
trichinellosis, 356–357, 357*f*, 408*t*, **761**–762, 762*f*
Trichoderma, 36, 336
Trichodesmium, 805
Trichomonas vaginalis, 344, 345*f*, 579, 784, 784*f*
trichomoniasis, 325, 787*t*, **788,** 788*f*, 789*t*
Trichophyton, 443, 603*t*, 610
Trichothecenes, 443
trichuriasis, 761
Trichuris
  infection rates, 758*f*
  T. trichiura, 761
trickling filters, **810**
triclosan, 191, 191*f*, 573
Tridacna, 343
triglycerides, structure and function, 37–38, 38*f*
trioses, 36
tripeptide, 42, 42*f*
triple covalent bond, 28, 29*f*
triple reassortment, 369
Tropheryma whipplei, 287
trophophase, **828**
trophozoite, **343,** 347, 348, 682
tropical diseases, 616–617
truffles, 795, 795*f*
Trypanosoma, 345, 444, 641, **644,** 644*f*, 649*t*
  antigenic variation, **432**–433
  Chagas disease, **679**–681, 681*f*
Trypanosoma cruzi, 4*t*, 218, 325, 436
trypanosomiasis, 579, 668*t*
tryptophan (Trp, W), 41*t*, 215*f*, 220, 221*f*
tsetse fly, 644, 644*f*
TSTA (tumor-specific transplantation antigen), **387**
Tu, Youyou, 12*f*
tubal (ectopic) pregnancy, 780
tuberculin skin test, **705,** 705*f*
tuberculoid (neural) form, leprosy, 633–634, 633*f*
tuberculosis (TB), 18, 67*f*, 141, 418*f*, 521, **701,** 701*f*, 704–707, 704*f*, 705*f*, 707*f*, 723*t*
  skin test, 539
tubulin, 96
tularemia, 302, **660,** 660*f*, 663, 666*t*, 702–703
tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α), 258*t*, 467, 482*t*, **483**
tumor necrosis factor (TNF), 438*f*, 439, 465, 512
tumor-specific transplantation antigen (TSTA), **387**
tumors, natural killer (NK) cells, **496**–497, 496*f*, 497*t*
turbidity, **173,** 174*f*
turnover number, **113**
12D treatment, **821**
twitching motility, **80**
two-photon microscopy (TPM), **58,** 58*f*, 63*t*
Type A, B, and E toxins, botulism, 630–631, 632
type I (anaphylactic) reactions, **529**–534, 529*t*, 530*f*, 531*f*, 534*f*
type II (cytotoxic) hypersensitivity reactions, 529*t*, **535**–538, 535*t*, 537*f*, 538*f*
type III (immune complex) hypersensitivity reactions, 529*t*, **538**–539, 538*f*
type IV (delayed cell-mediated) hypersensitivity reactions, 529*t*, **539**–540, 539*f*, 540*f*
typhoid fever, 305, 509, 737*f*, **739,** 748*t*
Typhoid Mary, 739
typhoid salmonellae, **736**–739, 737*f*
typhus, 299, 408*t*, 410*t*, 433, 668*t*, **671**
typical pneumonia, 707
tyrosine (Tyr, Y), 41*t*, 215*f*

U

ubiquinones, **124**
UDP-N-acetylglucosamine (UDPNAc), 142, 142*f*
ultra-high-temperature (UHT) treatments, **185**–186, 189*t*
ultraviolet (UV) radiation
  enzymes, effect on, 114, 115*f*
  microbial control, 188, 188*f*
  as mutagen, 226
  water treatment, 808, 808*f*
umab, 512
umbilical cord blood, 545
uncoating, **379**–380
uncoating, antiviral drugs, 576*t*, 577, 578*f*
undecylenic acid, 577
undulant fever, **660**–661
undulating membrane, **344,** 345*f*
units, metric units and conversions, 52, 52*t*
universal precautions, 198, **413**–414
unsaturated fatty acids, 38, 39*f*
upper respiratory system, **694,** 694*f*, 695*f*. *See also* respiratory system
  diseases of, 695–700, 697*f*, 698*f*, 699*t*
uracil (U)
  nucleic acids, overview, 44–46, 45*f*, 46*f*, 47*t*
  RNA and protein synthesis, 213–218, 214*f*, 215*f*, 216*f*, 217*f*

urea, 769
urea breath test, 744
Ureaplasma urealyticum, 778
urease test, 141
urethra, 769, 769*f*
urethritis, 771, 775, 778–779
uric acid, 456
uridine diphosphoglucose (UDPG), 142, 142*f*
uridine triphosphate (UTP), 142, 142*f*
urinary bladder, 769, 769*f*, 771
urinary system, **768**
  bacterial diseases, 771–773, 772*t*
  Clinical Case, leptospirosis, 769*c*, 773*c*, 778*c*, 784*c*
  microbiota, 398*ft*, 770, 771
  portal of entry, **428**–429, 429*t*
  portal of exit, **444**–445, 445*f*
  structure and function, **769,** 769*f*
urine, **455, 456,** 769, 769*f*, 771
use-dilution test, **190**
usinic acid, 338
uterine tubes, 769, 770*f*
  pelvic inflammatory disease, **779**–780, 780*f*
uterus, 769, 770*f*
  pelvic inflammatory disease, **779**–780, 780*f*

V
V factor, **306**
vaccination, 405–406
vaccines, **498,** 498*f*, **504**
  adaptive immune system and, 481
  adjuvants, **508**
  anthrax, 663
  Arthus reaction, **539**
  attenuated, **505**
  bacterial meningitis, 625, 626
  BCG vaccine, tuberculosis, **706**
  bioterrorism, overview of, 703
  breakthrough infections, 715
  cancer and, 547
  cholera, 743
  Clinical Case, pertussis, 505*c*, 508*c*, 510*c*, 514*c*, 519*c*, 524*c*
  Clinical Focus, measles, 510, 510*f*
  conjugated vaccines, **507**
  COVID-19 (SARS-CoV-2) virus, 243, 257, 504, 505, 506*t*, 507–508, 507*f*, 715
  diphtheria, **697**–698, 697*f*
  DNA vaccines, 257
  eggs, use of, 373, 373*f*
  herd immunity, **404**
  history of, 10–11
  for HIV/AIDS, 373, 556
  human papilloma virus (HPV), 786
  immunology, 13
  inactivated killed vaccines, **505**–506
  industrial production, 830
  influenza, 718
  leprosy, 634
  malaria, 684
  measles (rubeola), **608,** 608*f*
  mRNA vaccines, 257, 504, 507–508, 507*f*
  multivalent vaccines, 718
  mumps, 747
  nucleic acid (DNA, mRNA) vaccines, **507**–508, 507*f*
  pneumococcal vaccine, 708
  polio, 635
  polysaccharide vaccines, **507**
  production and delivery methods, 508–509
  rabies vaccine, 374, 636–637
  recombinant vector vaccines, **507**–508
  safety of, 511
  subunit vaccines, 257, **506**
  tetanus, 628–630
  toxoid vaccines, **435,** 506
  transmission-blocking vaccine, 684
  typhoid fever, 739
  vaccination, principles and effects of, 481, 504–505
  vaccine-preventable diseases, 522–523
  varicella (chickenpox), 607
  virus-like particle (VLP) vaccines, 507
vaccinia virus, 365*f*, 370*t*, 442
vacuole, 95*f*, **100**–101, **344**
vagina, 769, 770, 770*f*, **786**–788, 787*f*, 787*t*. *See also* sexually transmitted infections (STIs)
vaginal birth, microbiome and, 397
vaginal secretions, **455, 456**
vaginitis, **784,** 784*f*, 787*t*
valence, **27**
valence, antibodies, **484,** 485*f*
valine (Val, V), 41*t*, 215*f*
Valley fever, 720, 720*f*
van Leeuwenhoek, Anton, 6–7, 7*f*
vancomycin, 566*t*, 570, 572, 658
vancomycin-intermediate *Staphylococcus aureus* (VISA), **18,** 205
vancomycin resistance, 231, 233
vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE), **570,** 586
vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (VRSA), 12, **18,** 420
variable (V) region, antibodies, 484, 485*f*
Varicellovirus (HHV-3), 370*t*, 380*t*, 382, 388, 388*f*, 403, 602*t*, **605**–606, 606*f*
variola major and minor (smallpox), **604**–605, 605*f*
variola virus, 368*f*, 602*t*
variolation, **504**
Varmus, Harold E., 387
vas deferens, 769, 770*f*
vasoactive mediators, 465*f*, **466,** 466*t*
vasodilation, **465**–466, 465*f*, 466*t*
  fever response, **467**–468
VDRL test, **783**
vectors, **244, 357,** 357*f*, 358*f*, 359*t*, **410,** 410*ft*. *See also* biotechnology
  African trypanosomiasis, **644,** 644*f*, 649*t*
  arthropods, overview, 326*f*, 407, 410
  babesiosis, **685**–686
  biotechnology tools, 244, 245*f*, 247–248, 248*f*
  Burkitt's lymphoma, **673,** 673*f*
  Chagas disease, **679**–681, 681*f*
  climate change and disease, 676–677
  Clinical Case, dengue, 655*c*, 672*c*, 678*c*, 683*c*, 688*c*
  dengue, **678**
  Diseases in Focus, vector transmitted infection, 668*t*
  ehrlichiosis, **670**
  emerging infectious diseases (EIDs), **414**–416, 415*t*
  encephalitis, 637–639, 639*f*, 643*t*
  Leishmaniasis, **685,** 685*f*
  Lyme disease, **667**–670, 668*t*, 669*f*, 670*f*
  malaria, **682**–684, 682*f*, 683*f*
  neglected tropical diseases, 616–617
  plague, **665**–667, 667*f*, 668*t*
  plants, plasmids and, 300
  Q fever, **711**–712, 711*f*
  recombinant vector vaccines, **507**–508
  relapsing fever, **667**
  Rocky Mountain spotted fever, **671**–672, 671*f*, 672*f*
  typhus, **671**
vegetative hyphae, 327–328, 328*f*
vegetative structures, **327**
vehicle transmission, disease, **409**–410, 409*f*
Venezuelan hemorrhagic fever, 416
ventilator-associated pneumonia, 198, 573
vertical gene transfer, **209,** 210*f*, **230,** 230*f*
vertical transmission, mother to child, 640–641, 640*f*, 641*f*
vesicle, skin lesions, **594,** 594*f*
vesicles, Golgi complex, 100, 100*f*
vesicular rashes, 602*t*
vesicular stomatitis virus, 371*t*, 384*f*
Vesiculovirus, 371*t*
veterinary microbiology, 281
Vibrio
  enterotoxin, 207, 435
  noncholera infections, 740
vibrio, bacterial shape, **75,** 75*f*
Vibrio cholerae, 304, 304*f*, 438*t*, 794*f*
  attachment, glycocalyx, 77
  bioterrorism, overview of, 702–703
  blood type and disease severity, 536
  cholera, **739**–740, 739*f*
  cholera after natural disasters, 742–743, 742*f*, 743*f*, 811*c*
  chromosomes of, 73
  Clinical Case, 796*c*, 806*c*, 807*c*, 811*c*, 812*c*, 813*c*
  coevolution, 427
  enterotoxin, 207
  epidemiology, 417
  exotoxin, 435, 438*t*, 440
  glycocalyx, 77
  ID_{50}, **429**–430
  LD_{50} (lethal dose), 430
  lysogenic phages, 440
  medications for, 587
  nationally notifiable infectious diseases, 421*t*
  nonliving reservoirs, 407
  plasma membrane, 86*f*
  portal of entry, 428, 429*t*
  portal of exit, 444
  sanitation and, 504, 740, 743
  serovars, 414, 415*t*
  serovars, naming of, 304–305
  treatment for, 740, 812*c*
  vaccine, 505, 508, 509
  water purity tests, 806
  waterborne transmission, **409**
Vibrio parahaemolyticus, 304, 740, 748*t*
Vibrionales, 304, 304*f*
Vincent's disease, **733,** 733*f*
vinegar, 825–826, 826*f*
viral envelope, 6
viral hemagglutination, **517,** 517*f*
viral hemagglutination test, **517,** 517*f*
viral meningitis, **625**
viral pneumonia, **713**–714
viral species, **278, 370,** 370*t*, 371*t*, 372*t*
Virchow, Rudolf, 8
viremia, **404,** 747, 634631
Virgaviridae, 389*t*
viridans streptococci, 316
virion, **365**
viroid, 365*f*, **390,** 390*f*
virology, **14**
virome, 366
virucide, 180, 195
virulence, 11, **428**. *See also* pathogenicity, mechanisms of
  capsules and, 76*f*, **77**
  ID_{50}, **429**–430
virus-like particle (VLP) vaccines, **507**. *See also* vaccines
viruses, 5*f*, **6,** 363, **364**. *See also* Coronavirus disease-2019 (COVID-19); disease principles; human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
  alcohol, microbial control and, 193, 193*t*
  antigenic drift and shift, **367,** 369, **717**
  antiviral drugs, 11, 577–578, 578*f*, 607
  antiviral proteins (AVPs), **472**–473, 473*f*
  cancer and, 386–388, 442, 674
  capsid and envelope, **366**–367, 366*f*, 367*f*
  cardiovascular and lymphoid diseases, 673–679
  characteristics, 364, 364*t*
  classification of, 278
  Clinical Case, dengue virus, 655*c*, 672*c*, 678*c*, 683*c*, 688*c*
  common cold, **698**–700
  complement evasions, 472
  COVID-19, overview of, **714**–715, 714*f*
  cultures, animal viruses, 373–374, 373*f*, 374*f*
  cultures, bacteriophages, 372–373, 372*f*
  cytopathic effects (CPE), **441**–442, 441*f*, 442*ft*
  desiccation and, 187, 189*t*
  digestive system diseases, 746–753, 754*t*
  Diseases in Focus, hemorrhagic fevers, 680*t*
  Diseases in Focus, hepatitis, 750*t*
  Diseases in Focus, human-reservoir infections, 662*t*
  DNA viruses, overview of, 380–382, 380*t*, 381*f*
  Ebola virus disease, 19
  emerging infectious diseases (EIDs), **414**–416, 415*t*
  eye diseases, 614*t*
  genes, 208
  genital (reproductive) system diseases, 784–786, 785*f*, 786*f*, 789*t*
  halogens, microbial control and, 192–193
  hemorrhagic fevers, 675, 678–679, 679*f*
  host defense mechanism evasion, 440–441
  host range, **364**
  identification, 374
  influenza, overview of, 18, **716**–718, 716*f*
  interferons and, 472–473, 473*f*
  latent infection, 388, 388*f*
  Marburg virus, **19**
  microbial control, 195
  moist heat sterilization and, 183–184, 184*ft*, 189*t*
  morphology, 367–368, 367*f*, 368*f*

multiplication of animal viruses, 375, 375*f*, 379–386, 379*t*, 380*ft*, 381*f*, 383*f*, 384*f*, 385*f*, 386*f*
multiplication of bacteriophages, 375–378, 375*f*, 376*f*, 377*f*, 378*f*, 379*t*
mutations of, 17
natural killer (NK) cells, **496**–497, 496*f*, 497*t*
neglected tropical diseases (NTDs), 616–617
nervous system diseases, 634–642
nucleic acids, 365–366
oncolytic viruses, **388**
orphan virus, 382
persistent (chronic) infection, 388, 388*f*, 389*t*
plant viruses and viroids, 388–390, 389*t*, 390*f*
plasma membrane binding, 85–86, 86*f*
plasma viral load, **553**
poliovirus, poliomyelitis, **634**–635, 634*f*, 649*t*
provirus, 383*f*, **384**
rabies, **635**–637, 635*f*, 637*f*, 638, 649*t*
respiratory system diseases, 698–700, 713–718
RNA viruses, 380*t*
skin conditions, 602*t*, 603*t*, 604–609, 605*f*, 606*f*, 607*f*, 608*f*, 609*f*
structure of, 367–368, 381*f*, 550*f*
taxonomy of, 368, 370*t*, 371*t*, 372*t*
vaccines for, 506*t* (*See also* vaccines)
vertical transmission, mother to child, 640–641, 640*f*, 641*f*
viral size, 365, 365*f*
wastewater-based surveillance (WBS), 807
zoonoses, 408*t*
virusoids, **390,** 390*f*
VISA (vancomycin-intermediate *Staphylococcus aureus*), **18,** 205
visceral leishmaniasis, 685
visible blue light, 188, 188*t*
vision. *See* eyes
vitamins
as coenzymes, 114, 114*t*
industrial production, 830
microbiota and, 399
organic growth factors, 157
vitamin B_{12} (cyanocobalamin), 114*t*
vitamin B_6 (pyridoxine), 114*t*
vitamin B_2 (riboflavin), 114*t*, 124–126, 125*f*
vitamin B_1 (thiamine), 114*t*
vitamin E, 114*t*
vitamin K, 114*t*, 399
VLP (virus-like particle) vaccines, **507**. *See also* vaccines
volutin, **91**
vomiting, **455,** 734
Vorticella, 347*f*
VRE (vancomycin-resistant enterococci), **570**
VRSA (vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*), 12, **18,** 420
vulva, 769, 770*f*
vulvovaginal candidiasis, 335, **786**–788, 787*f*, 787*t*

W
walking pneumonia, 709
wall teichoic acid, 81, 82*f*
wandering (free) macrophages, **462**–464, 462*f*, 463*f*
wart virus, 370*t*, 380*t*, 382, 603*t*
warts, **604**
Wassermann test, 518, 518*f*
wastewater-based surveillance (WBS), 807
water, properties and functions, 31–32, 32*f*
water molds, 341, 342–343, 342*f*. *See also* algae
water quality
aquatic microbiology, **804**–805
chlorine, microbial control and, 193
cholera outbreaks, 742–743
Clinical Case, cholera, 796*c*, 806*c*, 807*c*, 811*c*, 812*c*, 813*c*
cryptosporidiosis, 755*t*, **756**–757, 756*f*
cyclosporiasis, 755*t*, **757,** 757*f*
Diseases in Focus, infection transmission, 686*t*
giardiasis, 757
purity tests, 806–807
sewage treatment, 15, 808–813, 809*f*, 810*f*, 811*f*, 812*f*
wastewater-based surveillance (WBS), 807
wastewater treatment, 808–813, 809*f*, 810*f*, 811*f*, 812*f*
water pollution, 805–806, 806*f*
water treatment, 807–808, 808*f*
xenobiotics, **801**–803, 803*f*
water vapor, as greenhouse gas, 814–815
waterborne transmission, disease, **409,** 409*f*. *See also* water quality
Watson, James, 14, 44
waxes, lipid biosynthesis, 142–143, 142*f*
waxy lipid, **432**
weather, disease rate and, 405
Weil's disease, 773
Weizmann, Chaim, 2
West Nile encephalitis, 408*t*, 639, 639*f*, 643*t*
Western blotting, **520**–521
Western equine encephalitis (WEE), 638, 643*t*, 675
whey, **824**–825, 824*f*
Whipple, George, 287
Whipple's disease, 287
whipworm, 355, 356, 358*t*, 533, 533*f*, **761**
white blood cells (WBCs), **458**–460, 458*f*, 459*t*
blood counts, 453
Whitewater Arroyo virus, 679
Whittaker, Robert H., 271
whooping cough, **700**–701, 701*f*, 723*t*
Wiener, Alexander, 536
Wilkins, Maurice, 44
wine, 825–826, 826*f*
Woese, Carl, 6, 271
Wolbachia, 301, 357, 834
World Health Organization (WHO)
emerging infectious diseases (EIDs), 416
multidrug-resistant tuberculosis, 18
polio eradication, 635
on vaccines, 404, 509
wound botulism, **632**
wound care, tetanus and, 628–630
wound repair, 465*f*, 467
wriggly worms, 357
Wuchereria bancrofti, 444

X
X factor, **306**
X rays, 187–188, 188*f*, 189*t*, 226
xanthan, 829, 829*f*
xanthin, 339*t*
Xanthomonas campestris, 829, 829*f*
xanthophylls, 339*t*
xenobiotics, **801**–803, 803*f*
Xenopsylla cheopis, 671
xenotransplantation products, **545,** 711
ximab, 512
xylitol, 733

Y
yaws, 616–617, **780**
yeast, **328**–329, 329*f*
alcohol and vinegar production, 825–826, 826*f*
Ascomycota, 332, 333*f*
bread and, 825
candidiasis, **786**–788, 787*f*, 787*t*
cell wall, 96–97
facultative anaerobes, 156
fermentation end products, 130*f*, 328
food and beverage applications, 109
gene products, making of, 255
microbial control, 187
nutritional adaptations, 330–331
overview of, 5
pH and microbial growth, 154
vaginal, normal microbiota, 770
yeast infection, **335**
yellow fever, 410*t*, 416, **675,** 678, 680*t*
Yersinia enterocolitica, 281*f*
Yersinia gastroenteritis, **745,** 748*t*
Yersinia pestis, 285, 305–306, 429
bioterrorism, overview of, 702–703
plague, **665**–667, 667*f*, 668*t*
yersiniosis, **745**
yogurt, 825

Z
zanamivir, 578
Zephiran, 195, 195*f*
Zika virus disease (ZVD), 275, 416, 504, 508, **639,** 640, 640*f*, 641*f*, 642
Zika virus (ZikV), 18
Clinical Focus, tracking Zika, 219
DNA vaccines, 257
stopping spread of, 834
vertical transmission, mother to child, 640–641, 640*f*, 641*f*
zinc, microbial control, 194
Zobelilia galactanivorans, 3
zone of inhibition, **580,** 580*f*
Zoogloea, 302, 810
zoonoses, **407,** 408*t*. *See also* specific disease names
zoospores, **342,** 342*f*, 343
Zoster (shingles), 506*t*, **606**–607, 606*f*
zumab, 512
Zygomycota, 335*t*
Zygosaccharomyces, 820*t*
zygospore, 331*f*, **332**
zygote, 769, 770*f*